

ESSENTIAL MED NOTES 2015



COMPREHENSIVE MEDICAL REFERENCE & REVIEW FOR USMLE II AND MCCQE
Editors-in-Chief: Justin Hall and Azra Premji

2015 Essential Med Notes

Comprehensive medical reference and review for the
United States Medical Licensing Exam Step 2 and
the Medical Council of Canada Qualifying Exam Part I

31st Edition

Editors-in-Chief:
Justin Hall and Azra Premji

*Wherever the art of medicine is loved,
there is also a love of humanity.*

– Hippocrates



Toronto Notes for Medical Students, Inc.
Toronto, Ontario, Canada

Thirty-first Edition

Copyright © 2015 – Toronto Notes for Medical Students, Inc.

Toronto, Ontario, Canada.

Typeset and production by Type & Graphics Inc.

ISBN 978-1-927363-20-1 (31st ed.)

All rights reserved. Printed in Toronto, Ontario, Canada. *Essential Med Notes 2015* is provided for the sole use of the purchaser. It is made available on the condition that the information contained herein will not be sold or photocopied. No part of this publication may be used or reproduced in any form or by any means without prior written permission from the publisher. Every effort has been made to obtain permission for all copyrighted material contained herein. Previous editions copyright © 2012 to 2015.

Cover design: Ashley Hui and Kateryna Procnier

Illustrations: Biomedical Communications, University of Toronto

Notice:

THIS PUBLICATION HAS NOT BEEN AUTHORED, REVIEWED, OR OTHERWISE SUPPORTED BY THE MEDICAL COUNCIL OF CANADA NOR DOES IT RECEIVE ENDORSEMENT BY THE MEDICAL COUNCIL AS REVIEW MATERIAL FOR THE MCCQE PART I. THIS PUBLICATION HAS NOT BEEN AUTHORED, REVIEWED, OR OTHERWISE SUPPORTED BY THE NATIONAL BOARD OF MEDICAL EXAMINERS U.S.A. NOR DOES IT RECEIVE ENDORSEMENT BY THE NATIONAL BOARD AS REVIEW MATERIAL FOR THE USMLE.

The editors of this edition have taken every effort to ensure that the information contained herein is accurate and conforms to the standards accepted at the time of publication. However, due to the constantly changing nature of the medical sciences and the possibility of human error, the reader is encouraged to exercise individual clinical judgement and consult with other sources of information that may become available with continuing research. The authors, editors, and publisher are not responsible for errors or omissions or for any consequences from application of the information in this textbook, atlas, or software and make no warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the currency, completeness, or accuracy of the contents of the publication. In particular, the reader is advised to check the manufacturer's insert of all pharmacologic products before administration.

FEEDBACK AND ERRATA

We are constantly trying to improve the *Essential Med Notes* and welcome your feedback. If you have found an error in this edition please do not hesitate to contact us. As well, we look forward to receiving any comments regarding any component of the *Essential Med Notes* package and website.

Please send your feedback to: feedback@torontonotes.ca

Alternatively, send mail to: Toronto Notes for Medical Students
Editors-in-Chief
c/o The Medical Society
1 King's College Circle, Room 2260
Toronto, Ontario M5S 1A8
Canada
email: torontonotes2015@gmail.com
Tel: 1-416-946-3047 Fax: 1-416-978-8730

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data is available upon request

*Dedicated to all
past and present contributors
and
supporters of Essential Med Notes
who have made the production of the 2015 edition possible!*



The *Essential Med Notes* is dedicated to helping fund many charitable endeavors and medical student initiatives at the University of Toronto's Faculty of Medicine. Programs that have received *Essential Med Notes* funding include:

Community Affairs Projects

- Saturday Program for Inner City High School and Grade 8 students
- St. Felix Mentorship Program for Inner City children
- Parkdale Mentorship Program for Grade 10-12 students
- WoodGreen Community Centre
- Let's Talk Science
- Growing Up Healthy

Annual Faculty Showcase Events

- Bruce Tovee Lecture Series
- Daffydil, in support of the Canadian Cancer Society
- Earthtones Benefit Concert
- Convocation and Ceremonies

Medical School Clubs

- Books with Wings
- Women in Medicine
- University of Toronto International Health Program
- Complementary and Alternative Medicine
- Peer Support for Students
- History of Medicine Society
- Faculty of Medicine Yearbook

Scholarships and Bursaries

- Nishant Fozdar Memorial Award
- Graduating Medical Class Scholarships and Bursaries

NOTE:

Many of you have wondered about the *Toronto Notes* logo, which is based on the rod of Asclepius, the Greek god of medicine. The rod of Asclepius consists of a single serpent entwined around a staff. This icon symbolizes both rebirth, by way of a snake shedding its skin, and also authority, by way of the staff.

In ancient Greek mythology, Asclepius was the son of Apollo and a skilled practitioner of medicine who learned the medical arts from the centaur Chiron. Asclepius' healing abilities were so great that he was said to be able to bring back people from the dead. These powers displeased the gods, who punished Asclepius by placing him in the sky as the constellation Orphiuchus.

The rod of Asclepius is at times confused with the caduceus, or wand, of Hermes, a staff entwined with two serpents and often depicted with wings. The caduceus is often used as a symbol of medicine or medical professionals, but there is little historical basis for this symbolism.

As you may have guessed, our logo uses the rod of Asclepius that is modified to also resemble the CN Tower – our way of recognizing the university and community in which we have been privileged to learn the art and science of medicine.

Thomas O'Brien, MD
Class of 2009
M.D. Program, University of Toronto

Preface – From the Editors

Dear Readers,

As Editors-in-Chief of *Essential Med Notes 2015*, we are proud to present the current edition.

First produced in 1985 from a set of study notes drafted by medical students at the University of Toronto, *Toronto Notes* and its international version, *Essential Med Notes*, have grown to be one of the premier study resources for generations of medical graduates in Canada and abroad. This rich history is rooted in our commitment to publish a student-edited, comprehensive study resource to serve students across clinical rotations and in preparation for the USMLE Step 2 and the Canadian MCCQE Part I.

For 30 years, we have remained committed to our original vision. With each successive edition, we strive to enhance the features of our print and online resources by listening to the feedback of our users. The focus of *Essential Med Notes 2015* is to make medical knowledge accessible and retainable by distilling information into high-quality figures, tables, algorithms, and clinical pearls. This edition of *Essential Med Notes* offers new and exciting changes. We feature a consistent and easy-to-view layout across 30 chapters including the new Vascular Surgery chapter. Moreover, we have updated the text to reflect current best practice guidelines and clinically-relevant advances in medical research. As well, the text has been revised to reflect the new DSM-5 clinical guidelines. We are particularly excited to present the new accompanying *Essential Med Notes Handbook*. In response to user feedback, the Handbook has been streamlined to provide you with the most essential and up-to-date information on clinical scenarios commonly encountered while on the ward, in the clinic, or in the operating room. Finally, we have enhanced the *Essential Med Notes eBook* to include additional high-quality color images for a superior mobile learning experience.

Essential Med Notes 2015 is produced by Toronto Notes for Medical Students Inc., a non-for-profit organization supporting various medical student initiatives including community outreach programs and medical school clubs through the

University of Toronto Medical Society, charitable events, and student bursaries and scholarships.

The production of this text would not have been possible without the commitment, energy, and passion of our dedicated team of over 150 students, artists, and faculty members at the University of Toronto's Faculty of Medicine as well as numerous faculty members at top-ranked U.S. institutions. We are grateful for the dedication and significant contributions of our lead editors: Amin Bahubeshi, Jillian Bardsley, Mandeep Pinky Gaidhu, Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, Vahagn Karapetyan, Evan Lilly, Khaled Ramadan, and Karim Virani. We would also like to thank our Production Managers, Charles He and Ilya Mukovozov, for their hard work and efforts toward making this year's edition a success. Our website team has been invaluable in improving our online resources to offer our users an enhanced electronic experience. We appreciate the creativity put forth by the Biomedical Communications artists in conceptualizing and developing numerous new illustrations as well as the innovative three-dimensional cover rendering. We would also like to acknowledge our partners at Type & Graphics, particularly Enrica Aguilera, for their continued guidance in the production of this text. Finally we would like to express our deepest gratitude to all previous Editors-in-Chief of *Essential Med Notes*.

We hope you find *Essential Med Notes* to be an indispensable resource. We encourage your feedback and place tremendous importance on making changes based on the user experience. On behalf of the 2015 editorial team, we wish you the best in your studies and hope that you will find *Essential Med Notes 2015* a valuable asset to your success.

Sincerely,

Justin Hall, MSc, MPH and Azra Premji, MSc, RRT
Editors-in-Chief, *Essential Med Notes 2015*
MD Program, University of Toronto

Acknowledgements

We would like to acknowledge the exceptional work of all previous *Essential Med Notes* and *Toronto Notes* (formerly MCCQE Notes) Editors-in-Chief and their editorial teams. The 2015 edition of this text was made possible with their contributions.

2014 (30th ed.): Miliana Vojvodic and Ann Young
2013 (29th ed.): Curtis Woodford and Christopher Yao
2012 (28th ed.): Jesse M. Klostranec and David L. Kolin
2011 (27th ed.): Yingming Amy Chen and Christopher Tran
2010 (26th ed.): Simon Baxter and Gordon McSheffrey
2009 (25th ed.): Sagar Dugani and Danica Lam
2008 (24th ed.): Rebecca Colman and Ron Somogyi
2007 (23rd ed.): Marilyn Heng and Joseph Ari Greenwald
2006 (22nd ed.): Carolyn Jane Shiau and Andrew Jonathan Toren
2005 (21st ed.): Blair John Normand Leonard and Jonathan Chi-Wai Yeung
2004 (20th ed.): Andrea Molckovsky and Kashif S. Pirzada
2003 (19th ed.): Prateek Lala and Andrea Waddell
2002 (18th ed.): Neety Panu and Sunny Wong
2001 (17th ed.): Jason Yue and Gagan Ahuja
2000 (16th ed.): Marcus Law and Brian Rotenberg
1999 (15th ed.): Sofia Ahmed and Matthew Cheung
1998 (14th ed.): Marilyn Abraham and M Appleby
1997 (13th ed.): William Harris and Paul Kurdyak
1996 (12th ed.): Michael B. Chang and Laura J. Macnow
1995 (11th ed.): Ann L. Mai and Brian J. Murray
1994 (10th ed.): Kenneth Pace and Peter Ferguson
1993 (9th ed.): Joan Cheng and Russell Goldman
1992 (8th ed.): Gideon Cohen-Nehemia and Shanthi Vasudevan
All former Chief Editors from 1991 (7th ed.) to 1985 (1st ed.)

Student Contributors

Editors-in-Chief

Justin Hall
Azra Premji

Production Managers

Charles He
Ilya Mukovozov

Clinical Handbook Editors

Amin Bahubeshi
Mandeep Pinky Gaidhu

Atlas Editor and Medical Imaging

Jacob Rullo

Website and Special Ops

Vishaal Gupta

Copy Editors

Fiona Almeida
Alfred Basiliou
Zack Bordman
Shawn Chhabra
Justin Hall
Amanda Huynh
Jessica Huynh

Joanne Jiang
Alex Leung
Evan Lilly
David MacLean
Sabrina Nurmohamed
Ryan Pratt
Azra Premji

Erika Reiser
Christine Tenedero
Karim Virani
David Wang
Fanyu Yang
Gary Yang

Associate Editor – Essential Med Notes

Vahagn Karapetyan

BMC Production Editors

Naveen Devasagayam
Ashley Hui

PRIMARY AND OTHER SPECIALTIES

Associate Editors

Jillian Bardsley
Evan Lilly

EBM Editor

Ilya Mukovozov

MEDICINE

Associate Editors

Amanda Huynh
Jessica Huynh

EBM Editor

Tina Hu

SURGERY

Associate Editors

Khaled Ramadan
Karim Virani

EBM Editor

Alexa Bramall

Chapter Editors

**Ethical, Legal, and
Organizational Medicine**
Melanie Bechard
Christine Desjardins

**Anesthesia and
Perioperative Medicine**
Hilary Felice
Spencer Heffernan
Rohan Kothari

Clinical Pharmacology
Tara He
Vivian Wang

Dermatology
Robin Kaloty
Annie Liu
Sheila Wang

Emergency Medicine
Jonathan Hsu
Caroline O'Shaughnessy
Bo Zheng

Family Medicine
Nadia Salvo
Giorgia Tropini
Andrew Xiao

Medical Imaging
Shawn Bailey
Gurnaam Kasbia
Ryan Lo

Pediatrics
Julia DiLabio
David Kodama
Josip Marcinko
Allison Yantzi

**Population Health
and Epidemiology**
Eva Ouyang
Carla Rosario

Psychiatry
Sarah Levitt
Marty Rotenberg
Robyn Thom

Chapter Editors

**Cardiology and
Cardiac Surgery**
Adrianna Douvris
Michael Fridman
Gary Yang

Endocrinology
Liana Kaufman
Derek Smith
Heather Sawula

Gastroenterology
Nicola Goldberg
Nicole Kraus
Stephanie Tung

Geriatric Medicine
Farah Pabani
Esther Rosenthal

Hematology
Lucy Duan
James England
Rebecca Smith

Infectious Diseases
Julie Caron
Lucas Djelic
Sameer Rawal

Nephrology
Shayna Bejaimal
Vlad Dragan
Alisa Loo

Neurology
Ayan Dey
Louise Guolla
Nardin Samuel

Respirology
Kaustubh Bal
Justin Chow
Eric Grayson

Rheumatology
Dylan Kelly
Lisa Liang
Bahar Moghaddam

Chapter Editors

General Surgery
Hala Muaddi
Maria Querques
Lina Roa

Gynecology
Kinsey Lam
Elizabeth Miazga
Lisa Zhang

Neurosurgery
Mostafa Fatehi
David Ben-Israel
Francois Mathieu

Obstetrics
Meg Casson
Anna Ly
Anna Mackenzie

Ophthalmology
Brian Ballios
Jeremy Goldfarb
Ritesh Gupta

Orthopedics
Thomas Gregory
Michel Saccone
Ian Whatley

Otolaryngology
Charnelle Carlos
Joel Davies
Laura Kim

Plastic Surgery
Mo Sabri
Neil D'Souza
Monica Yu

Urology
Udi Blankstein
Zachary Longarini

Vascular Surgery
Caleb Zavitz

BMC ILLUSTRATORS

Cassandra Cetlin
Nicole Clough
Natalie Cormier
Ashley Hui
Erin Kenzie

Jean Lin
Man-San Ma
Derek Ng
Priya Panchal

Kateryna Procnunier
Andrew Q Tran
Marissa Webber
Jerry Won

Faculty Contributors, U.S. and Canada

All contributing professors have been appointed to universities across the United States or Canada

David Adam, MD, FRCPC
Division of Dermatology
Department of Medicine
St. Michael's Hospital

Anne M. R. Agur, BSc, MSc, PhD
Division of Anatomy
Department of Surgery
University of Toronto

Iqbal Ike K. Ahmed, MD, FRCSC
Department of Ophthalmology
and Vision Sciences
Trillium Health Partners

Lori Albert, MD, FRCPC
Division of Rheumatology
Department of Medicine
University Health Network
Toronto Western Hospital

Ruby Alvi, MD, CCFP, MHSc
Department of Family and Community Medicine
University of Toronto

Meyer Balter, MD, FRCPC
Division of Respiratory Medicine
Department of Medicine
Mount Sinai Hospital

Nirit Bernhard, MSc, MD, FRCPC
Department of Pediatrics
Hospital for Sick Children

Nikolai A. Bildzukewicz, MD FACS
Division of Upper GI and General Surgery
Keck School of Medicine
University of Southern California

Matthew Binnie, MD
Division of Respiratory
University Health Network and
St. Michael's Hospital

Michael Blankstein, MD, MSc, FRCSC
Division of Orthopedics & Rehabilitation
The University of Vermont Medical Center

Andrea Boggild, MSc, MD, FRCPC
Tropical Disease Unit and
Division of Infectious Diseases
University Health Network
Toronto General Hospital

Esther Bui, MD, FRCPC
Division of Neurology and
Division of Obstetrical Medicine
Department of Medicine
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre

Susan Burgin, MD
Division of Dermatology
Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center

Chi-Ming Chow, MDCM, MSc, FRCPC
Division of Cardiology
Department of Medicine
St. Michael's Hospital

Maria Cino, HonBSc, MSc, MD, FRCPC
Division of Gastroenterology
University Health Network
Toronto Western Hospital

Isabella Devito, MD, FRCPC
Department of Anesthesia and
Pain Management
University Health Network and
Mount Sinai Hospital

Mark Freedman, MD, FRCPC
Department of Emergency Medicine
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre

Barry J. Goldlist, MD, FRCPC
Division of Geriatric Medicine
Department of Medicine
University Health Network

Philip C. Hébert, MA, PhD, MD, FCFPC
Department of Family and
Community Medicine
Joint Centre for Bioethics
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre

Sender Herschorn, MDCM, FRCSC
Division of Urology
Department of Surgery
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre and
Women's College Hospital

Jonathan C. Irish, MD, MSc, FRCSC
Department of Otolaryngology -
Head and Neck Surgery
University Health Network

Nasir Jaffer, MD, FRCPC
Division of Abdominal Imaging
Department of Medical Imaging
Joint Department of Medical Imaging
University of Toronto

David Juurlink, BPhM, MD, PhD, FRCPC
Division of Clinical Pharmacology
and Toxicology
Departments of Medicine and Pediatrics
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre

Gabor Kandel, MD, FRCPC
Division of Gastroenterology
Department of Medicine
St. Michael's Hospital

Sari L. Kives, MD, FRCSC
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
St. Michael's Hospital and
The Hospital for Sick Children

Wai-Ching Lam, MD, FRCSC
Department of Ophthalmology and
Vision Science
University Health Network
Toronto Western Hospital

Katherine Layton, MD
Division of Pediatrics
Assistant Medical Director, Children's National
Programs at Peninsula Regional Medical Center
The George Washington School of Medicine

Chloe Leon, MD, FRCPC
Division of Brain and Therapeutics
Department of Psychiatry
Centre for Addiction and Mental Health

Benjamin Levi, MD
Director, Burn Wound and Regenerative
Medicine Laboratory
Division of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery
University of Michigan

Armando Lorenzo, MD, FRCSC
Division of Urology, Department of Surgery
The Hospital for Sick Children

Julia Lowe, MBChB, MMedSci, FRCPC
Division of Endocrinology and Metabolism
Department of Medicine
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre

Catherine L. Mah, MD, FRCPC, PhD
Division of Community Health and Humanities
and Discipline of Paediatrics
Faculty of Medicine
Memorial University of Newfoundland
Division of Clinical Public Health
Dalla Lana School of Public Health
University of Toronto

Todd Mainprize, MD, FRCSC
Department of Neurosurgery
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre

Eric Massicotte, MD, MSc, FRCSC
Department of Neurosurgery
University Health Network
Toronto Western Hospital

Michael McDonald, MD, FRCPC
Division of Cardiology and
The Multi-Organ Transplant Program
Department of Medicine
University Health Network
Toronto General Hospital

Heather McDonald-Blumer, MD, MSc, FRCPC
Division of Rheumatology
Department of Medicine
Mount Sinai Hospital

Adam C. Millar, MD, MScCH
Division of Endocrinology and Metabolism
Department of Medicine
Mt. Sinai Hospital

Yvette Miller-Monthrope, MD, FRCPC
Division of Dermatology
Department of Medicine
Women's College Hospital

Azadeh Moaveni, MD, CCFP
Department of Family and
Community Medicine
University Health Network
Toronto Western Hospital

Eva Mocarski, MD, FRCSC
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
St. Michael's Hospital

Faculty Contributors, U.S. and Canada

Andrew Morris, MD, SM, FRCPC
Division of Infectious Diseases
Department of Medicine
Mount Sinai Hospital

Brian J. Murray, MD, FRCPC, D,ABSM
Division of Neurology and Sleep Medicine
Department of Medicine
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre

Melinda Musgrave, MD, PhD, FRCSC
Division of Plastic and Reconstructive Surgery
Department of Surgery
St. Michael's Hospital

Govind Nandakumar, MD, FACS, FASCRS
Division of General Surgery
Weill Cornell Medical College New York

Sharon Naymark, MD, FRCPC
Department of Pediatrics
St. Joseph's Health Centre

Nathaniel Nelms, MD
Division of Orthopedics & Rehabilitation
The University of Vermont Medical Center

Markku T. Nousiainen, MD, MSc, MEd, FRCSC
Division of Orthopedic Surgery
Department of Surgery
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre
Holland Orthopedic & Arthritic Centre

Melissa Nutik, MD, CCFP, FCFP
Department of Family and
Community Medicine
Mount Sinai Hospital

George Oreopoulos, MD, MSc, FRCSC
Division of Vascular Surgery
Department of Surgery
University Health Network

Andrea V. Page, MD, FRCPC
Division of Infectious Diseases
Department of Medicine
University Health Network

Phillip M. Pierorazio, MD
Department of Urology
James Buchanan Brady Urological Institute
Johns Hopkins Medicine

Susan Poutanen, MD, MPH, FRCPC
Department of Microbiology
University Health Network and
Mount Sinai Hospital

Ramesh Prasad, MBBS, MSc, FRCPC
Division of Nephrology
Department of Medicine
St. Michael's Hospital

Evan Propst, MD, MSc, FRCSC
Division of Head and Neck Surgery
Department of Otolaryngology
The Hospital for Sick Children

Angela Punnett, MD, FRCPC
Department of Pediatrics
The Hospital for Sick Children

Graham Roche-Nagle,
MD, MBA, FRCSC, EBSQ-VASC
Division of Vascular Surgery
University Health Network
Toronto General Hospital

Gary John Schiller, MD
Hematological Malignancy/
Stem Cell Transplant Unit
David Geffen School of Medicine
University of California - Los Angeles

Fran E. Scott, MD, CCFP, FRCPC, MSc
Division of Epidemiology
Dalla Lana School of Public Health

Phillip Segal, MD, FRCPC
Division of Endocrinology and Metabolism
Department of Medicine
University Health Network
Toronto General Hospital

Amanda Selk, MD, FRCSC
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Mount Sinai Hospital

Rajiv Shah, MD, MSc, FRCSC
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
St. Michael's Hospital

Marisa Sit, MD, FRCSC
Department of Ophthalmology
and Vision Science
University Health Network
Toronto Western Hospital

Sri Sivalingam MD, MSc, FRCSC
Center for Endourology & Stone Disease,
Lerner College of Medicine
Glickman Urological & Kidney Institute
Cleveland Clinic

Gideon Smith, MD, PhD
Division of Dermatology
Director of Connective Tissue Diseases Clinic
MGH Dermatology
Massachusetts General Hospital

Diana Tamir, MD, FRCPC
Department of Anesthesia and
Pain Management
University Health Network

Darrell Tan, MD, PhD, FRCPC
Division of Infectious Diseases
St. Michael's Hospital

David Tang-Wai, MDCM, FRCPC
Division of Neurology and Geriatric Medicine
Department of Medicine
University Health Network

Piero Tartaro, MD, FRCPC
Division of Gastroenterology
Department of Medicine
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre

Fernando Teixeira, MD, FRCPC
Department of Emergency Medicine
St. Michael's Hospital

Margaret Thompson, MD, FRCPC, FACMT
Department of Emergency Medicine
St. Michael's Hospital and
The Hospital for Sick Children

Martina Trinkaus, MD, FRCPC
Division of Hematology
Department of Medicine
St. Michael's Hospital

Herbert P. von Schroeder, MD, MSc, FRCSC
Divisions of Orthopedic Surgery and
Plastic Surgery
Department of Surgery
University Health Network

Oshrit Wanono, MD, FRCPC
Division of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry
Department of Psychiatry
Centre for Addiction and Mental Health

Kyle R. Wanzel, MD, MEd, FRCSC
Division of Plastic Surgery
St Joseph's Health Centre

Richard Ward, MBBS, MRCP, FRCPath
Division of Hematology
Department of Medicine
University Health Network

Alice Wei, MD CM, MSc, FRCSC
Division of General Surgery
Department of Surgery
University Health Network

Gabrielle Weiler, MD, FRCPC
Department of Pediatrics
Children's Hospital of Eastern Ontario
University of Ottawa

Fay Weisberg, MD, FRCSC
Division of Reproductive Endocrinology
and Infertility
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Toronto

Michael Wiley, BSc, MSc, PhD
Division of Anatomy, Department of Surgery
University of Toronto

Anna Woo, MD CM, SM, DABIM, FRCPC
Division of Cardiology
Department of Medicine
University Health Network
Toronto General Hospital

Jensen Yeung, MD, FRCPC
Division of Dermatology
Department of Medicine
Women's College Hospital

Eugene Yu, MD, FRCPC
Division of Neuroradiology
Department of Medical Imaging
University Health Network

Alireza Zahirieh, MD, FRCPC
Division of Nephrology
Department of Medicine
Sunnybrook Health Sciences Centre

Table of Contents










Index Abbreviations

1. Common Unit Conversions	
2. Commonly Measured Laboratory Values	
3. Ethical, Legal, and Organizational Medicine	ELOAM
4. Anesthesia and Perioperative Medicine	A
5. Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery	C
6. Clinical Pharmacology	CP
7. Dermatology	D
8. Emergency Medicine	ER
9. Endocrinology	E
10. Family Medicine	FM
11. Gastroenterology	G
12. General Surgery	GS
13. Geriatric Medicine	GM
14. Gynecology	GY
15. Hematology	H
16. Infectious Diseases	ID
17. Medical Imaging	MI
18. Nephrology	NP
19. Neurology	N
20. Neurosurgery	NS
21. Obstetrics	OB
22. Ophthalmology	OP
23. Orthopedics	OR
24. Otolaryngology	OT
25. Pediatrics	P
26. Plastic Surgery	PL
27. Population Health and Epidemiology	PH
28. Psychiatry	PS
29. Respiriology	R
30. Rheumatology	RH
31. Urology	U
32. Vascular Surgery	VS
33. Index	

How to Use This Book

This book has been designed to remain as one book or to be taken apart into smaller booklets. Identify the beginning and end of a particular section, then carefully bend the pages along the perforated line next to the spine of the book. Then tear the pages out along the perforation.

The layout of *Essential Med Notes 2015* allows easy identification of important information. These items are indicated by icons interspersed throughout the text:

Icon	Icon Name	Significance
	Key Objectives	This icon is found next to headings in the text. It identifies key objectives and conditions as determined by the Medical Council of Canada or the National Board of Medical Examiners in the USA. If it appears beside a dark title bar, all subsequent subheadings should be considered key topics.
	Clinical Pearl	This icon is found in sidebars of the text. It identifies concise, important information which will aid in the diagnosis or management of conditions discussed in the accompanying text.
	Memory Aid	This icon is found in sidebars of the text. It identifies helpful mnemonic devices and other memory aids.
	Clinical Flag	This icon is found in sidebars of the text. It indicates information or findings that require urgent management or specialist referral.
	Cross-Reference	This icon is found in sidebars of the text. It indicates a cross-reference for information that is discussed in a separate chapter.
	Evidence Based Medicine	This icon is found in sidebars of the text. It identifies key research studies for evidence-based clinical decision making related to topics discussed in the accompanying text.
	Colour Photo Atlas	This icon is found next to headings in the text. It indicates topics that correspond with images found in the Colour Photo Atlas available online (www.torontonotes.ca).
	Radiology Atlas	This icon is found next to headings in the text. It indicates topics that correspond to images found in the Radiology Atlas available online (www.torontonotes.ca).
	Online Resources	This icon is found next to headings in the text. It indicates topics that correspond with electronic resources such as Functional Neuroanatomy or ECGs Made Simple, available online (www.torontonotes.ca).

Chapter Divisions

To aid in studying and finding relevant material quickly, each chapter is organized in the following general framework:

Basic Anatomy/Physiology Review

- features the high-yield, salient background information students are often assumed to have remembered from their early medical school education

Common Differential Diagnoses

- aims to outline a clinically useful framework to tackle the common presentations and problems faced in the area of expertise

Diagnoses

- the bulk of the book
- etiology, epidemiology, pathophysiology, clinical features, investigations, management, complications, and prognosis

Common Medications

- a quick reference section for review of medications commonly prescribed

Common Unit Conversions

To convert from the conventional unit to the SI unit, **multiply** by conversion factor

To convert from the SI unit to the conventional unit, **divide** by conversion factor

	Conventional Unit	Conversion Factor	SI Unit
ACTH	pg/mL	0.22	pmol/L
Albumin	g/dL	10	g/L
Bilirubin	mg/dL	17.1	μmol/L
Calcium	mg/dL	0.25	mmol/L
Cholesterol	mg/dL	0.0259	mmol/L
Cortisol	μg/dL	27.59	nmol/L
Creatinine	mg/dL	88.4	μmol/L
Creatinine clearance	mL/min	0.0167	mL/s
Ethanol	mg/dL	0.217	mmol/L
Ferritin	ng/mL	2.247	pmol/L
Glucose	mg/dL	0.0555	mmol/L
HbA1c	%	0.01	proportion of 1.0
Hemoglobin	g/dL	10	g/L
HDL cholesterol	mg/dL	0.0259	mmol/L
Iron, total	μg/dL	0.179	μmol/L
Lactate (lactic acid)	mg/dL	0.111	mmol/L
LDL cholesterol	mg/dL	0.0259	mmol/L
Leukocytes	x 10 ³ cells/mm ³	1	x 10 ⁹ cells/L
Magnesium	mg/dL	0.411	mmol/L
MCV	μm ³	1	fL
Platelets	x 10 ³ cells/mm ³	1	x 10 ⁹ cells/L
Reticulocytes	% of RBCs	0.01	proportion of 1.0
Salicylate	mg/L	0.00724	mmol/L
Testosterone	ng/dL	0.0347	nmol/L
Thyroxine (T ₄)	ng/dL	12.87	pmol/L
Total Iron Binding Capacity	μg/dL	0.179	μmol/L
Triiodothyronine (T ₃)	pg/dL	0.0154	pmol/L
Triglycerides	mg/dL	0.0113	mmol/L
Urea nitrogen	mg/dL	0.357	mmol/L
Uric acid	mg/dL	59.48	μmol/L
Celsius → Fahrenheit	F = (C x 1.8) + 32		
Fahrenheit → Celsius	C = (F – 32) x 0.5555		
Kilograms → Pounds	1 kg = 2.2 lbs		
Pounds → Ounces	1 lb = 16 oz		
Ounces → Grams	1 oz = 28.3 g		
Inches → Centimetres	1 in = 2.54 cm		

Commonly Measured Laboratory Values

Test	Conventional Units	SI Units
Arterial Blood Gases		
pH	7.35-7.45	7.35-7.45
PCO ₂	35-45 mmHg	4.7-6.0 kPa
PO ₂	80-105 mmHg	10.6-14 kPa
Serum Electrolytes		
Bicarbonate	22-28 mEq/L	22-28 mmol/L
Calcium	8.4-10.2 mg/dL	2.1-2.5 mmol/L
Chloride	95-106 mEq/L	95-106 mmol/L
Magnesium	1.3-2.1 mEq/L	0.65-1.05 mmol/L
Phosphate	2.7-4.5 mg/dL	0.87-1.45 mmol/L
Potassium	3.5-5.0 mEq/L	3.5-5.0 mmol/L
Sodium	136-145 mEq/L	136-145 mmol/L
Serum Nonelectrolytes		
Albumin	3.5-5.0 g/dL	35-50 g/L
ALP	35-100 U/L	35-100 U/L
ALT	8-20 U/L	8-20 U/L
Amylase	25-125 U/L	25-125 U/L
AST	8-20 U/L	8-20 U/L
Bilirubin (direct)	0-0.3 mg/dL	0-5 µmol/L
Bilirubin (total)	0.1-1.0 mg/dL	2-17 µmol/L
BUN	7-18 mg/dL	2.5-7.1 mmol/L
Cholesterol	<200 mg/dL	<5.2 mmol/L
Creatinine (female)	10-70 U/L	10-70 U/L
Creatinine (male)	25-90 U/L	25-90 U/L
Creatine Kinase – MB fraction	0-12 U/L	0-12 U/L
Ferritin (female)	12-150 ng/mL	12-150 µg/L
Ferritin (male)	15-200 ng/mL	15-200 µg/L
Glucose (fasting)	70-110 mg/dL	3.8-6.1 mmol/L
HbA1c	<6%	<0.06
LDH	100-250 U/L	100-250 U/L
Osmolality	275-300 mOsm/kg	275-300 mOsm/kg
Serum Hormones		
ACTH (0800h)	<60 pg/mL	<13.2 pmol/L
Cortisol (0800h)	5-23 µg/dL	138-635 nmol/L
Prolactin	<20 ng/mL	<20 ng/mL
Testosterone (male, free)	9-30 ng/dL	0.31-1 pmol/L
Thyroxine (T ₄)	5-12 ng/dL	64-155 nmol/L
Triiodothyronine (T ₃)	115-190 ng/dL	1.8-2.9 nmol/L
TSH	0.5-5 µU/mL	0.5-5 µU/mL
Hematologic Values		
ESR (female)	0-20 mm/h	0-20 mm/h
ESR (male)	0-15 mm/h	0-15 mm/h
Hemoglobin (female)	12.3-15.7 g/dL	123-157 g/L
Hemoglobin (male)	13.5-17.5 g/dL	140-174 g/L
Hematocrit (female)	36-46%	36-46%
Hematocrit (male)	41-53%	41-53%
INR	1.0-1.1	1.0-1.1
Leukocytes	4.5-11 x 10 ³ cells/mm ³	4.5-11 x 10 ⁹ cells/L
MCV	88-100 µm ³	88-100 fL
Platelets	150-400 x 10 ³ /mm ³	150-400 x 10 ⁹ /L
PTT	25-35 s	25-35 s
Reticulocytes	0.5-1.5% of RBC	20-84 x 10 ⁹ /L

ELOAM

Ethical, Legal, and Organizational
Medicine

Melanie Bechard and Christine Desjardins, chapter editors
Jillian Bardsley, Evan Lilly, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors
Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor
Dr. Philip C. Hébert, staff editor

Acronyms 2

The US Health Care System 2

Overview of US Health Care System

History

Health Care Reform

Health Care Expenditure and Delivery in the US

Access to Health Services

Ethical and Legal Issues in Medicine 4

Introduction to the Principles of Ethics

Confidentiality

Consent and Capacity

Negligence

Truth-Telling

Ethical Issues in Health Care

Reproductive Technologies

End-of-Life Care

Physician Competence and Professionalism

Research Ethics

Physician-Industry Relations

Resource Allocation

Conscientious Objection

References 15

American law applicable to medical practice varies between state jurisdictions and changes over time. Criminal law is nationwide, but non-criminal (civil) law varies between states. This section is meant to serve only as a guide. Students and physicians should ensure that their practices conform to local and current laws.

The US Health Care System

Acronyms

AE	adverse event
AMA	American Medical Association
ART	advanced reproductive technologies
OECD	Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development
POA	power of attorney
SDM	surrogate decision-maker

Overview of US Health Care System

- the United States health care system is primarily market-based
- it is funded and delivered by a mixture of the public, private, and voluntary sectors; private-for-profit is the prevailing method of delivery
- public funding is derived from taxes raised at both the federal and state government levels

History

- | | |
|-----------------|---|
| 1901 | American Medical Association established as the national organization of state and local medical groups |
| 1929 | Baylor Plan developed <ul style="list-style-type: none">• created by Dr. Justin Ford Kimball to ensure that teachers could pay their medical bills• teachers pay 50 cents/mo in exchange for guarantee of medical services for 21 d |
| 1930s | more hospitals adopt medical insurance plans as per the Baylor Plan |
| 1939 | Community hospitals work together to create health-care plans <ul style="list-style-type: none">• American Hospital Association (AHA) uses the term “Blue Cross” to describe health care plans that meet their standards• emergence of prepaid plans covering physician and surgeon services |
| 1946 | Blue Shield created and represents physician sponsored health-care plans, which became the official designation for AHA health care plans in 1960 |
| 1954 | Social Security coverage begins to include disability benefits |
| 1965 | Medicare and Medicaid programs introduced government funded health-care plans |
| 1970s/
1980s | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• emergence of Health Maintenance Organizations (HMOs)• HMOs offer managed care plans: health care packages that are provided by an HMO approved network of health care providers |
| 1993 | Universal health care system proposed but rejected by Congress |
| 1996 | <i>Mental Health Parity Act</i> passed <ul style="list-style-type: none">• invoked to decrease discrimination in health care coverage for mental health illnesses• aggregate annual and lifetime limits for mental health services must match aggregate annual and lifetime limits for medical and surgical services |
| 1996 | <i>Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act</i> passed <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Title 1: Health Care Access, Portability, and Renewability<ul style="list-style-type: none">• provides protection of health care coverage to employees and their families if they change or lose their job• Title 2: Preventing Health Care Fraud and Abuse; Administrative Simplification; Medical Liability Reform<ul style="list-style-type: none">• addresses and establishes national standards for electronic health care transactions and security and privacy of health data |
| 1997 | State Children's Health Insurance Program (SCHIP) created <ul style="list-style-type: none">• states extend health coverage to uninsured children |
| 1999 | <i>Ticket to Work and Work Incentives Improvement Act</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• enables people with disabilities to be employed without affecting their Medicaid or Medicare coverage |
| 2010 | <i>Affordable Care Act</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• reform to health care to improve access to affordable health coverage and creates regulations on activities of private health insurance providers |

Health Care Reform

- *Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act* and the *Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act* of 2010 are federal statutes signed into law in March 2010 that include a number of new health care provisions to be implemented over 8 yr
 - expand Medicaid eligibility, provide subsidies for insurance premiums and incentives for businesses to provide health care benefits, prohibit denial of coverage/claims for pre-existing conditions, and establish health-insurance exchanges
 - costs are offset by a number of health care related taxes, including a tax penalty for citizens with no health insurance (low income persons and persons from a recognized religious sect are exempt)

Health Care Expenditure and Delivery in the US

- health care spending in the US represents a large economic sector
 - health care comprises over 17.9% of the gross domestic product (GDP) (highest in the OECD), amounting to \$8,608 USD per capita in 2011
 - one advantage is the widespread availability of technology – the US has 4 times as many MRI machines per capita than Canada
- the US scores poorly on some indicators of population health, with a life expectancy below the OECD average and infant mortality above the OECD average; possible factors that account for this discrepancy are:
 - poor health of large uninsured population
 - high cost of health care administration
 - the provision of inefficient high-cost, high-intensity care
 - the higher-spending regions in the US do not provide any better quality of care, access to care, health outcomes, or satisfaction with care when compared to the lower-spending regions
- the US has the highest level of obesity of all OECD nations at 34.3%; this has major implications for future health care spending

Health Care Funding

- over 60% of healthcare provisions and spending come from universal programs such as Medicare, Medicaid, TRICARE, the Children's Health Insurance Program, and the Veterans Health Administration
- based on the total expenditure on health care, 31% goes to hospital care, 21% goes to physicians/clinical services, 10% to pharmaceuticals, 4% to dental, 6% to nursing homes, 3% to home health care, 3% for other retail products, 3% for government public health activities, 7% to administrative costs, 7% to investment, and 6% to other professional services

Health Care Delivery

- health care facilities are largely operated by the private sector
- it is estimated that approximately 62% of hospitals are non-profit, 20% are government owned, and 18% are for-profit

Access to Health Services

- 70% of Americans under the age of 65 have private health insurance, either employer-sponsored or individually purchased; 12% receive health care through public health insurance; 18%, mainly the poor, have no health insurance
- access to publicly funded health services occurs primarily through two programs, Medicare and Medicaid, which were created by the 1965 *Social Security Act*
- other federal government-funded health programs include the Military Health Services System, the Veterans Affairs Health Services System, the Indian Health Service, and the Prison Health Service

Table 1. Medicare and Medicaid Program Information

	Medicare	Medicaid
Eligibility	> 65 yr People with end stage renal disease People of any age meeting the Medicare definition of disability	People who receive funds through social assistance programs Pregnant women People with developmental disabilities Low-income children through the 1997 State Children's Health Insurance Program
Coverage	Basic "Part A" providing inpatient hospital care, home care, limited skilled nursing facility care, and hospice care Supplemental "Part B" covers outpatient physician and clinic services, and requires payment of a further monthly fee	Basic coverage involves inpatient and outpatient hospital care, laboratory and x-ray services, skilled nursing care, home care, physician services, dental services, and family planning Financing for Medicaid is provided jointly by the federal and state governments, and program details vary greatly between states
Co-payment	To help pay for out-of-pocket expenditures, and to cover many of the services not insured by Medicare, the majority of Medicare beneficiaries buy supplemental private health insurance	States may impose deductibles, coinsurance, or co-payments on some Medicaid recipients for certain services Medicaid is not health insurance – coverage is unreliable as improvement in an individual's financial status can lead to a loss of Medicaid eligibility

Source: Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. Available from <http://www.cms.gov>

Ethical and Legal Issues in Medicine

Introduction to the Principles of Ethics

- ethics addresses
 - 1) principles and values that help define what is morally right and wrong
 - 2) rights, duties, and obligations of individuals and groups

The practice of medicine assumes there is one code of professional ethics for all doctors and that they will be held accountable by that code and its implications

Table 2. The Four Principles of Medical Ethics

Principle	Definition
Autonomy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recognizes an individual's right and ability to decide for himself/herself according to his/her beliefs and values Not applicable in situations where informed consent and choice are not possible or may not be appropriate
Beneficence	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The patient-based 'best interests' standard that combines doing good, avoiding harm, taking into account the patient's values, beliefs, and preferences (so far as these are known) Autonomy should be integrated with the physician's conception of a patient's medically-defined best interests The aim is to minimize harmful outcomes and maximize beneficial ones Paramount in situations where consent/choice is not possible or may not be appropriate
Non-Maleficence	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Obligation to avoid causing harm; <i>primum non nocere</i> ("First, do no harm") A limit condition of the Beneficence principle
Justice	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fair distribution of benefits and harms within a community Concept of fairness: Is the patient receiving what he/she deserves – his/her fair share? Is he/she treated the same as equally situated patients? How do one set of treatment decisions impact on others? Respects basic human rights, such as freedom from persecution and the right to have one's interests considered and respected

- the AMA has a **Code of Medical Ethics**
 - articulates the values of medicine as a profession and defines medicine's integrity
 - source of the profession's authority to self-regulate
 - evolving document that changes as new questions arise; AMA policy positions ("AMA Policy") address current health care issues, the health care system, internal organizational structure, decision-making processes, and medical science and technology



Autonomy vs. Competence

Autonomy: the right that patients have to make decisions according to their beliefs and preferences

Competence: the ability or capacity to make a specific decision for oneself



Confidentiality

Overview of Confidentiality

- a full and open exchange of information between patient and physician is central to a therapeutic relationship
- privacy is the right of patients (which they may forego) while confidentiality is the duty of doctors (which they must respect barring patient consent or the requirements of the law)

- if inappropriately breached by a doctor, he/she can be sanctioned by the hospital, court, or regulatory authority
- based on the ethical principle of patient autonomy, patients have the right to the following:
 - control of their own information
 - the expectation that information concerning them will receive proper protection from unauthorized access by others (see *Privacy of Medical Records*)
 - confidentiality may be ethically and legally breached in certain circumstances (i.e. the threat of harm to others)
 - unlike the solicitor-client privilege, there is no 'physician-patient privilege' by which a physician, even a psychiatrist, can promise the patient absolute confidentiality
 - physicians failing to abide by such regulations could be subject to professional or civil actions

Statutory Reporting Obligations

- legislation has defined specific instances where public interest overrides the patient right to confidentiality. These vary by state, but often include the following:
 1. suspected child or elder abuse or neglect – report to local child welfare authorities
 2. fitness to drive a vehicle or fly an airplane – report to Department of Motor Vehicles
 3. communicable diseases – report to public health authority and identifiable people at risk
 4. improper conduct of other physicians or health professionals – report to college or regulatory body of the health professional
 5. gunshot and knife wounds – notify police
 6. vital statistics must be reported; reporting varies by jurisdiction
- physicians who fail to report in these situations in the manner prescribed by state jurisdiction are subject to prosecution and penalty, and may be liable if a third party has been harmed

Duty to Protect/Warn

- the physician has a duty to protect the public from a known (or potential) dangerous patient; this may involve taking appropriate clinical action (e.g. involuntary detainment of violent patients for clinical assessment), informing the police, or warning the potential victim(s) if a patient expresses an intent to harm
- first established by a Supreme Court of California decision in 1976; known as the Tarasoff decision
- concerns of breaching confidentiality should not prevent the MD from exercising the duty to protect; however, the disclosed information should not exceed that required to protect others
- applies in a situation where:
 1. there is a clear risk to identifiable person(s);
 2. there is a risk of serious bodily harm or death; and
 3. the danger is imminent (i.e. more likely to occur than not)

Disclosure for Legal Proceedings

- disclosure of health records can be compelled by a court order, warrant, or subpoena

Privacy of Medical Records

- privacy of health information is protected by professional codes of ethics, legislation, and the physician's fiduciary duty
- the legal duties of physicians involving patient confidentiality of medical records are outlined in the Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (HIPPA), which establishes principles for the collection, use, and disclosure of information that is part of commercial activity (i.e. physician practices, pharmacies, private labs)
- other aspects involving confidentiality are governed by state policy

Duties of Physicians with Regards to the Privacy of Health Information

- inform patients of information-handling practices through various means (i.e. posting notices, brochures and pamphlets, and/or through discussions with patients)
- obtain the patient's expressed consent to disclose information to third parties
- provide the patient with access to their entire medical record; exceptions include instances where there is potential for serious harm to the patient or a third party
- provide secure storage of information and implement measures to limit access to patient records
- ensure proper destruction of information that is no longer necessary



Physicians should seek advice from their local health authority or the American Medical Association before disclosing the status of a patient to someone else



Reasons to Breach Confidentiality

- Child abuse
- Fitness to drive
- Communicable disease
- Coroner report
- Duty to inform/warn



When confidentiality is breached in the interest of the public welfare, the minimum relevant information should be disclosed, and the number of persons privy to the information should be kept at a minimum



Reports of possible cases of violence should include information pertaining to the threat, the situation, the physician's opinion and the information upon which it is based

Consent and Capacity



Ethical Principles Underlying Consent and Capacity

- consent is the autonomous authorization of a medical intervention by a patient
- usually, the principle of respect for patient autonomy overrides the principle of beneficence
- where a patient cannot make an autonomous decision (i.e. incapable), it is the duty of the SDM (or the physician in an emergency) to act on the patient's known prior wishes or, failing that, to act in the patient's best interests

- there is a duty to discover, if possible, what the patient would have wanted when capable
- central to determining best interests is understanding the patient's values, beliefs, and cultural or religious background
- more recently expressed wishes take priority over remote ones
- patient wishes may be verbal or written
- patients found incapable to make a specific decision should still be involved in that decision as much as possible
- agreement or disagreement with medical advice does not determine findings of capacity/incapacity
- however, patients opting for care that puts them at risk of serious harm that most people would want to avoid should have their capacity carefully assessed

Four Basic Requirements of Valid Consent

1. Voluntary

- consent must be given free of coercion or pressure (i.e. from parents or other family members who might exert 'undue influence')
- the physician must not deliberately mislead the patient about the proposed treatment

2. Capable

- the patient must be able to understand and appreciate the nature and effect of the proposed treatment

3. Specific

- the consent provided is specific to the procedure being proposed and to the provider who will carry out the procedure (i.e. the patient must be informed if students will be involved in providing the treatment)

4. Informed

- sufficient information and time must be provided to allow the patient to make choices in accordance with their wishes; information should include:
 - ♦ the nature of the treatment or investigation proposed and its expected effects
 - ♦ all significant risks and special or unusual risks
 - ♦ alternative treatments or investigations and their anticipated effects and significant risks
 - ♦ the consequences of declining treatment
 - ♦ risks that are common sense need not be disclosed (i.e. bruising after venipuncture)
 - ♦ answers to any questions the patient may have
- the reasonable person test – the physician must provide all information that would be needed "by a reasonable person in the patient's position" to be able to make a decision
- disclose common adverse events (>1/200 chance of occurrence) and serious risks (e.g. death) even if remote
- it is the physician's responsibility to make reasonable attempts to ensure that the patient understands the information
- physicians should not withhold information about a legitimate therapeutic option based on personal conscience (i.e. not discussing the option of emergency contraception)



4 Basic Elements of Consent

- Voluntary
- Capable
- Specific
- Informed

Obtaining Legal Consent

- consent of the patient must be obtained before any medical intervention is provided; consent can be:
 - verbal or written, although written is usually preferred
 - ♦ a signed consent form is only evidence of consent – it does not replace the process for obtaining valid consent
 - ♦ what matters is what the patient understands and appreciates, not what the signed consent form states
 - implied (e.g. a patient holding out their arm for an immunization) or expressed
- consent is an ongoing process and can be withdrawn or changed after it is given, unless stopping a procedure would put the patient at risk of serious harm

Exceptions to Consent

1. Emergencies

- treatment can be provided without consent where a patient is experiencing severe suffering, or where a delay in treatment would lead to serious harm or death and consent cannot be obtained from the patient or their surrogate decision-maker (SDM)
- emergency treatment should not violate a prior expressed wish of the patient (i.e. a signed Jehovah's Witness card)
- if patient is incapable, MD must document reasons for incapacity and why situation is emergent
- patients have a right to challenge a finding of incapacity as it removes their decision-making ability
- if a SDM is not available, MD can treat without consent until the SDM is available or the situation is no longer emergent



Major Exceptions to Consent

- Emergencies
- Communicable diseases
- Mental health legislation

2. Legislation

- mental health legislation allowing for involuntary commitment is state governed. In general, an individual may be detained if he/she poses a threat to the self or others
- public health legislation allows medical officers of health to detain, examine, and treat patients without their consent (e.g. a patient with TB refusing to take medication) to prevent transmission of communicable diseases (see [Population Health and Epidemiology, PH19](#))

3. Special Situations

- public health emergencies (i.e. an epidemic or communicable disease treatment)
- warrant for information by police

Consequences of Failure to Obtain Valid Consent

- treatment without consent is battery (an offense in tort), even if the treatment is life-saving (excluding situations outlined in exceptions section above)
- treatment of a patient on the basis of poorly informed consent may constitute negligence, also an offense in tort
- the onus of proof that valid consent was not obtained rests with the plaintiff (usually the patient)

Consent

- treatment without consent = battery, including if NO consent or if WRONG procedure
- treatment with poor or invalid consent = negligence

Overview of Capacity

- capacity is the ability to
 - understand information relevant to a treatment decision
 - appreciate the reasonably foreseeable consequences of a decision or lack of a decision
- capacity is specific for each decision (i.e. a person may be capable to consent to having a chest x-ray, but not for a bronchoscopy)
- capacity can change over time (i.e. temporary incapacity secondary to delirium)
- a person is presumed capable unless there is good evidence to the contrary
- capable patients are entitled to make their own decisions
- capable patients can refuse treatment even if it leads to serious harm or death; however, decisions that put patients at risk of serious harm or death require careful scrutiny

Assessment of Capacity

- capacity assessments must be conducted by a physician and, if appropriate, in consultation with other health care professionals (e.g. another physician, a mental health nurse)
- clinical capacity assessment may include:
 - specific capacity assessment (i.e. capacity specific to the decision at hand)
 1. effective disclosure of information and evaluation of patient's reason for decision
 2. understanding of:
 - his/her condition
 - the nature of the proposed treatment
 - alternatives to the treatment
 - the consequences of accepting and rejecting the treatment
 - the risks and benefits of the various options
 3. for the appreciation needed for decision making capacity, a person must:
 - acknowledge the condition that affects him/herself
 - be able to assess how the various options would affect him or her
 - be able to reach a decision and adhere to it, and make a choice, not based primarily upon delusional belief (test: are their beliefs responsive to evidence?)
- general impressions
- input from psychiatrists, neurologists, etc.
- employ "Aid to Capacity Evaluation"
 - a decision of incapacity may warrant further assessment by psychiatrist(s) or the courts

Table 3. Aid to Capacity Evaluation

Ability to understand the medical problem
Ability to understand the proposed treatment
Ability to understand the alternatives (if any) to the proposed treatment
Ability to understand the option of refusing treatment or of it being withheld or withdrawn
Ability to appreciate the reasonably foreseeable consequences of accepting the proposed treatment
Ability to appreciate the reasonably foreseeable consequences of refusing the proposed treatment
Ability to make a decision that is not substantially based on delusions or depression

Adapted from Etchells E, et al. *CMAJ* 1996;155:657-661



Administration of treatment for an incapable patient in an emergency situation is applicable if the patient is:

- Experiencing extreme suffering
- At risk of sustaining serious bodily harm if treatment is not administered promptly



Patients may also ask to waive the right to choice (e.g. "You know what's best for me, doctor") or delegate their right to choose to someone else (e.g. a family member)



Competency refers to a person's legal capacity (which is assessed by the courts) to make decisions and be held accountable by the court of law



Capacity is a medical term (assessed by the appropriate physician) that refers to an individual's ability to understand relevant information, the severity of the medical situation and its consequences, and be able to communicate a choice and his/her rationale about the decision being made

Treatment of the Incapable Patient in a Non-Emergent Situation

- obtain informed consent from SDM
- criteria for detaining a patient against his/her will to receive treatment are state specific. In most circumstances, the physician must:
 - document assessment by psychiatrist or other qualified agent in chart
 - notify patient and agent verbally or in writing of assessment
 - if the patient objects to the determination, healthcare professionals cannot override the patient's wishes without obtaining a court order

Surrogate Decision-Makers (SDM)

- SDM are appointed if no living will or POA exists and must follow the following principles when giving informed consent:
 - act in accordance with wishes previously expressed by the patient while capable
 - if wishes unknown, act in the patient's best interest, taking the following into account:
 1. values and beliefs held by the patient while capable
 2. whether well-being is likely to improve with vs. without treatment
 3. whether the expected benefit outweighs the risk of harm
 4. whether a less intrusive treatment would be as beneficial as the one proposed
 - the final decision of the SDM may and should be challenged by the MD if the MD believes the SDM is not abiding by the above principles

INSTRUCTIONAL ADVANCE DIRECTIVES

- allow patients to exert control over their care once they are no longer capable
- the patient sets out their decisions about future health care, including who they would allow to make treatment decisions on their behalf and what types of interventions they would want
- takes effect once the patient is incapable with respect to treatment decisions
- patients should be encouraged to review these documents with their family and physicians and to reevaluate them often to ensure they are current with their wishes

Powers of Attorney

- all Guardians and Attorneys have fiduciary duties for the dependent person

Definitions

- **Power of Attorney for Personal Care**
 - a legal document in which one person gives another the authority to make personal care decisions (health care, nutrition, shelter, clothing, hygiene, safety) on their behalf if they become mentally incapable
- **Guardian of the Person**
 - someone who is appointed by the Court to make decisions on behalf of an incapable person in some or all areas of personal care, in the absence of a POA for personal care
- **Continuing Power of Attorney for Property**
 - a legal document in which a person gives another the legal authority to make decisions about their finances if they become unable to make those decisions
- **Guardian of Property**
 - someone who is appointed by the Public Guardian and Trustee or the Courts to look after an incapable person's property or finances
- **Public Guardian and Trustee**
 - acts as a SDM of last resort on behalf of mentally incapable people who do not have another individual to act on their behalf
- **Pediatric Aspects of Capacity**
 - age of consent is state specific
 - physicians treating pediatric patients generally must obtain informed consent from a parent or a legal guardian
 - emancipated or mature minors may provide consent to their own medical care
 - infants and children are assumed to lack mature decision-making capacity for consent but they should still be involved (i.e. be provided with information appropriate to their comprehension level)
 - adolescents are usually treated as adults
 - preferably, assent should still be obtained from patient, even if not capable of giving consent
 - in the event that the physician believes the SDM is not acting in the child's best interest, an appeal must be made to the local child welfare authorities
 - under normal circumstances, parents have right of access to the child's medical record



When disagreements occur, institutional policies for timely conflict resolution should be followed, and may be followed by consultation with an ethics committee, pastoral service, or other counseling resource; resolution of disagreements in the courts should be pursued only as a last resort

Negligence

Ethical Basis

- the doctor-patient relationship is formed on trust, which is recognized in the concept of **fiduciary duty/responsibility** of physician towards patient
- negligence or malpractice is a form of failure on the part of the physician in fulfilling his/her fiduciary duty in providing appropriate care and leading to harm of the patient (and/or abuse of patient's trust)

Legal Basis

- physicians are legally liable to their patients for causing harm (tort) through a failure to meet the standard of care applicable under the circumstances
- standard/duty of care is defined as one that would reasonably be expected under similar circumstances of an ordinary, prudent physician of the same training, experience, specialization, and standing
- liability arises from physician's common law duty of care to his/her patients in the doctor/patient relationship
- action(s) in negligence (or civil liability) against a physician must be launched by a patient within a specific prescribed period required by the respective state in which the actions occurred



A fiduciary duty is a legal duty to act solely in another party's interest and may not profit from relationship with principals unless they have the principal's express consent



Four basic elements for action against a physician to succeed in negligence/malpractice

1. A duty of care owed to the patient (doctor/patient relationship must be established)
2. A breach of the duty of care
3. Some harm or injury to the patient
4. The harm or injury must have been caused by the breach of the duty of care

Truth-Telling

Ethical Basis

- helps to promote and maintain a trusting physician-patient relationship
- patients have a right to be told important information that physicians have regarding their care
- enables patients to make informed decisions about health care and their lives

Legal Basis

- required for valid patient consent (see *Consent and Capacity*, ELOAM5)
 - goal is to disclose information that a reasonable person in the patient's position would need in order to make an informed decision ("standard of disclosure")
- withholding information can be a breach of fiduciary duty and duty of care
- obtaining consent by using misleading information can be seen as negligent

Evidence about Truth-Telling

- most patients want to know what is wrong with them
- although many patients want to protect family members from bad news, they themselves would want to be informed in the same situation
- truth-telling improves compliance and health outcomes
- informed patients are more satisfied with their care
- negative consequences of truth-telling can include decreased emotional well-being, anxiety, worry, social stigmatization, and loss of insurability

Challenges in Truth-Telling

Medical Error

- medical error may be defined as 'preventable adverse events' caused by the patient's medical care and not the patient's underlying illness. Some errors may be identified before they harm the patient, so not all error is truly 'adverse'
 - serious adverse events (i.e. those resulting in death, hospitalization, or medical or surgical intervention) must be reported to the Food and Drug Administration (FDA)
- many jurisdictions and professional associations expect and require physicians to disclose medical error; that is, any event that harms or threatens to harm patients must be disclosed to the patient or the patient's family and reported to the appropriate health authorities
- physicians should disclose to patients the occurrence of adverse events or errors caused by medical management, but should not suggest that they resulted from negligence because:
 - negligence is a legal determination
 - error is not equal to negligence
- disclosure allows the injured patient to seek appropriate corrective treatment promptly
 - physicians should avoid simple attributions as to cause and sole responsibility of others or oneself
 - physicians should offer apologies or empathic expressions of regret ("I wish things had turned out differently") as these can increase trust and are not admissions of guilt or liability

Breaking Bad News

- 'bad news' may be any information that reveals conditions or illnesses threatening the patient's sense of well-being
- caution patients in advance of serious tests about possible bad findings



Adverse Event (AE)

An unintended injury or complication from health care management resulting in disability, death, or prolonged hospital stay



Protocol to Break Bad News: SPIKES

- S** Setting the scene and listening skills
- P** Patient's **p**erception of condition and seriousness
- I** Invitation from patient to give information
- K** Knowledge – giving medical facts
- E** Explore emotions and empathize
- S** Strategy and summary

Baile WF, Buckman R. 2000

- give warnings of impending bad news (see sidebar for example) and make sure you provide time for the patient
- poorly done disclosure may be as harmful as non-disclosure
- truth-telling may be a process requiring multiple visits
- adequate support should be provided along with the disclosure of difficult news
- SPIKES protocol was developed to facilitate “breaking bad news”

Arguments Against Truth-Telling

- may go against certain cultural norms and expectations
- may lead to patient harm and increased anxiety
- 10-20% of patients prefer not to be informed
- medical uncertainty may result in the disclosure of uncertain or inaccurate information

Exceptions to Truth-Telling

- patients may ‘waive’ the right to know: patient declines information that would normally be disclosed
- a patient may waive their right to know the truth about their situation when
 - the patient clearly declines to be informed
 - a strong cultural component exists that should be respected and acknowledged
 - the patient may wish others to be informed and make the medical decisions for him/her
- the more weighty the consequences for the patient from non-disclosure, the more carefully one must consider the right to ignorance
- ‘Emergencies’: an urgent need to treat may legitimately delay full disclosure; the presumption is that most people would want such treatment and the appropriate SDM cannot be found
- ‘therapeutic privilege’
 - withholding information by the clinician in the belief that disclosure of the information would itself lead to severe anxiety, psychological distress, or physical harm to the patient
 - clinicians should avoid invoking therapeutic privilege due to its paternalistic overtones and is a defense of non-disclosure that is rarely accepted anymore
 - it is often not the truth that is unpalatable; it is how it is conveyed that can harm the patient



Open Disclosure of AEs: Transparency and Safety in Health Care

Surg Clin North Am 2012;92(1):63-77

Health care providers have a fiduciary duty to disclose adverse events to their patients. Professional societies codify medical providers' ethical requirement to disclose adverse events to patients in accordance with the 4 principles of biomedical ethics. Transparency and honesty in relationships with patients create opportunities for learning that lead to systems improvements in health care organizations. Disclosure invariably becomes a component of broad systems improvement and is closely linked to improving patient safety.



Truth-Telling in Discussing Prognosis in Advanced Life-Limiting Illnesses

Palliat Med 2007;21(6):507-517

Many physicians express discomfort at having to broach the topic of prognosis, including limited life expectancy, and may withhold information or not disclose prognosis. A systematic review of 46 studies relating to truth-telling in discussing prognosis with patients with progressive, advanced life-limiting illnesses and their caregivers showed that although the majority of physicians believed that patients and caregivers should be told the truth about the prognosis, in practice, many either avoid discussing the topic or withhold information. Reasons include perceived lack of training, stress, no time to attend to the patient's emotional needs, fear of a negative impact on the patient, uncertainty about prognostication, requests from family members to withhold information, a feeling of inadequacy, or hopelessness regarding the unavailability of further curative treatment. Evidence suggests that patients can discuss the topic without it having a negative impact on them.

Ethical Issues in Health Care

Managing Controversial and Ethical Issues in Practice

- discuss in a non-judgmental manner
- ensure patients have full access to relevant and necessary information
- identify if certain options lie outside of your moral boundaries and refer to another physician if appropriate
- consult with appropriate ethics committees or boards
- protect freedom of moral choice for students or trainees

Reproductive Technologies

Overview of the Maternal-Fetal Relationship

- in general, maternal and fetal interests align
- in some situations, a conflict between maternal autonomy and the best interests of the fetus may arise

Ethical Issues and Arguments

- principle of reproductive freedom: women have the right to make their own reproductive choices
- coercion of a woman to accept efforts to promote fetal well-being is an unacceptable infringement of her personal autonomy

Legal Issues and Arguments

- the law upholds a woman's right to life, liberty, and security of person and does not recognize fetal rights; key aspects of the mother's rights include:
 - if a woman is competent and refuses medical advice, her decision must be respected even if the fetus will suffer
 - the fetus does not have legal rights until it is born alive and with complete delivery from the body of the woman



The fetus does not have legal rights until it is born alive and with complete delivery from the body of the woman

ART

- includes non-coital insemination, hormonal ovarian stimulation, and *in vitro* fertilization (IVF)
- topics with ethical concerns
 - donor anonymity vs. child-centered reproduction (i.e. knowledge about genetic medical history)
 - preimplantation genetic testing for diagnosis before pregnancy
 - use of new techniques without patients appreciating their experimental nature
 - access to ART
 - private vs. public funding of ART
 - social factors limiting access to ART (i.e. same-sex couples)
 - the 'commercialization' of reproduction

Fetal Tissue

- pluripotent stem cells can currently be derived from human embryonic and fetal tissue
- potential uses of stem cells in research
 - studying human development and factors that direct cell specialization
 - evaluating drugs for efficacy and safety in human models
 - cell therapy: using stem cells grown *in vitro* to repair or replace degenerated/destroyed/malignant tissues (e.g. Parkinson's disease)
 - genetic treatment aimed at altering somatic cells (i.e. myocardial or immunological cells) is acceptable and ongoing

ART: Ethically Appropriate Actions

- educate patients and address contributors to infertility (e.g. stress, alcohol, medications, etc.)
- investigate and treat underlying health problems causing infertility
- wait at least 1 yr before initiating treatment with ART (exceptions – advanced age or specific indicators of infertility)
- educate and prepare patients for potential negative outcomes of ART

Induced Abortion

- induced abortion: the active termination of a pregnancy before fetal viability
- fetal viability: fetus >500 g or >20 wk gestational age

Prenatal/Antenatal Genetic Testing

- uses
 - to confirm a clinical diagnosis
 - to detect genetic predisposition to a disease
 - allows preventative steps to be taken and helps patient prepare for the future
 - gives parents the option to terminate a pregnancy or begin early treatment
- ethical dilemmas arise because of the sensitive nature of genetic information. Important considerations of genetic testing include:
 - the individual and familial implications
 - its pertaining to future disease
 - its ability to identify disorders for which there are no effective treatments or preventive steps
 - its ability to identify the sex of the fetus
- ethical issues and arguments regarding the use of prenatal/antenatal genetic testing include:
 - obtaining informed consent is difficult due to the complexity of genetic information
 - doctor's duty to maintain confidentiality vs. duty to warn family members
 - risk of social discrimination (e.g. insurance) and psychological harm
- legal aspects
 - testing requires informed consent
 - no standard of care exists for clinical genetics but physicians are legally obligated to inform patients that prenatal testing exists and is available
 - where a genetic defect is found in the fetus, prospective parents may request or refuse an abortion
 - a physician is required to alert prospective parents when a potential genetic problem exists

Genetic Testing: Ethically Appropriate Actions

- thorough discussion and realistic planning with patient before testing is done
- genetic counseling for delivery of complex information



Once outside the mother's body, the neonate becomes a member of society with all the rights and protections other vulnerable persons receive.

- Non-treatment of a neonate born alive is only acceptable if <22 wk GA
- 23-25 wk GA: treatment should be a consensual decision between physician and parents
- 25 wk GA and more: neonate should receive full treatment unless major anomalies or conditions incompatible with life are present

Source: *Paed Child Health* 2012:443



AMA Principles of Medical Ethics do not prohibit a physician from performing an abortion in accordance with good medical practice and under circumstances that do not violate the law. Physicians should inform themselves of state laws surrounding the topic of abortions

End-of-Life Care

Overview of Palliative and End-of-Life Care

- focus of care is comfort and respect for person nearing death and maximizing quality of life for patient, family, and loved ones
- appropriate for any patient at any stage of a life-threatening illness
- may occur in a hospital, hospice, in the community, or at home
- often involves an interdisciplinary team of caregivers
- addresses the medical, psychosocial, and spiritual dimensions of care

Euthanasia and Physician-Assisted Suicide

- **euthanasia**: a deliberate act undertaken by one person with the intention of ending the life of another person to relieve that person's suffering where the act is the cause of death
- **physician-assisted suicide**: the act of intentionally killing oneself with the assistance of a physician who deliberately provides the knowledge and/or the means

Common ethical arguments/opinions

- patient has right to make autonomous choices about the time and manner of own death
- belief that there is no ethical difference between the acts of euthanasia/assisted suicide and foregoing life-sustaining treatments
- belief that these acts benefit terminally ill patients by relieving suffering
- patient autonomy has limits
- death should be the consequence of the morally justified withdrawal of life-sustaining treatments only in cases where there is a fatal underlying condition, and it is the condition (not the withdrawal of treatment) that causes death

Legal aspects

- in the United States, euthanasia is considered an illegal act
- physician-assisted suicide is currently only legal in the state of Oregon

Acceptable use of palliative and end-of-life care

- the use of palliative sedation with opioids in end-of-life care, knowing that death may occur as an unintended consequence (principle of double effect) is distinguished from euthanasia and assisted suicide where death is the primary intent
- the appropriate withdrawal of life-support is distinguished from euthanasia and assisted suicide as it is seen as allowing the underlying disease to take its 'natural course'
- refusals of care by the patient that may lead to death ought to be carefully explored by the physician to rule out any 'reversible factors' (poor palliation, depression, poverty, ill-education, isolation) that may be hindering authentic choice

Physician Responsibilities Regarding Death

- physicians are required by law to complete a medical certificate of death unless the coroner needs notification; failure to report death is a criminal offence
- coroner investigates these deaths, as well as deaths that occur in psychiatric institutions, jails, foster homes, nursing homes, hospitals to which a person was transferred from a facility, institution or home, etc.
- in consultation with forensic pathologists and other specialists, the coroner establishes:
 - the identity of the deceased
 - where and when the death occurred
 - the medical cause of death
 - the means of death (i.e. natural, accidental, suicide, homicide, or undetermined)
- coroners do not make decisions regarding criminality or legal responsibility
- in a number of jurisdictions, any death not certified by the person's physician must be referred to the medical examiner



Know the Difference

Palliative care assists patients who are dying, but unlike euthanasia or physician-assisted suicide, it does not aim directly at or intend to end the person's life



Euthanasia: Ethically Appropriate Actions

- Respect competent decisions to forego treatment
- Provide appropriate palliative measures
- Decline requests for euthanasia and assisted suicide
- Try to assess reasons for such requests from patients to see if there are 'reversible factors' (such as depression, pain, loneliness, anxiety)



Notify Coroner if Death Occurs due to:

- Violence, negligence, misconduct
- Pregnancy
- Sudden or unexpected causes
- Disease not treated
- Cause other than disease
- Suspicious circumstances

Physician Competence and Professionalism

Legal Considerations

- physicians' conduct and competence are legally regulated to protect patients and society via mandatory membership to governing bodies
- physicians are legally required to maintain a license with the appropriate authority and are thus legally bound to outlined policies on matters of conduct within his/her medical practice

Common Policies on Physician Conduct

- physicians must ensure that patients have access to continuous on-call coverage and are never abandoned

- sexual conduct with patients, even when consented to by the patient, is a serious matter that can lead to accusations of battery by the patient and college. Important notes on this topic include:
 - inappropriate sexual conduct includes intercourse, undue touching, references to sexual matters, sexual jokes, and physician presence when capable patients undress or dress
 - in specified situations physicians may have a personal relationship with a patient provided a year has passed since the last therapeutic contact
 - physicians are permanently prohibited from personal relationships with patients whom they saw for psychotherapy
- physicians must maintain adequate records for each patient, which include:
 - demonstration that care has been continuous and comprehensive
 - minimal standards for record-keeping, including diagnosis, differential diagnosis, appropriate tests and referrals, coherent patient record
 - records storage for 10 years in most jurisdictions
 - although the medical record is the property of the physician or an institution, the patient or the patient's delegate must be allowed full access to information in the medical record upon (usually written) request
- in the hospital, physicians must ensure their own competence, respect hospital by-laws and regulations, practice only within the limits of granted privileges, cooperate with other hospital personnel, and maintain adequate hospital records

AMA Guidelines for Impaired, Incompetent, or Unethical Colleagues

- **Impairment:** it may be necessary to report an impaired physician who continues to practice despite reasonable offers of assistance and referral to a hospital or state physician health program. The duty to report under such circumstances may entail reporting to the licensing authority
- **Incompetence:** initial reports of incompetence should be made to the appropriate clinical authority who would be empowered to assess the potential impact on patient welfare and to facilitate remedial action. The hospital peer review body should be notified where appropriate. Incompetence that poses an immediate threat to the health and safety of patients should be reported directly to the state licensing board
- **Unethical conduct:** unethical conduct that violates state licensing provision should be reported to the state licensing board. It is appropriate to report unethical conduct that potentially violates criminal statutes to law enforcement authorities



AMA Code of Medical Ethics

Physicians have an ethical obligation to report impaired, incompetent, and/or unethical colleagues in accordance with the legal requirements in each state

Research Ethics

- involves the systematic analysis of ethical dilemmas arising during research involving human subjects to ensure that:
 - study participants are protected
 - clinical research is conducted to serve the interests of the participants and/or society as a whole
- major ethical dilemmas arise when a physician's obligation to the patient comes into conflict with other obligations and incentives
- any exceptions to disclosure for therapeutic consent do not apply in an experimental situation



Ethical Considerations for Research Involving Human Subjects

- patient's participation in research should not put him/her at a known or probable disadvantage with respect to medical care
- participant's voluntary and informed choice is usually required
- participants should have access to the treatment that is considered standard
- scientists must employ a scientifically valid design to answer the research question
- scientists must demonstrate sufficient value to justify the risk posed to participants
- research must be conducted honestly (i.e. carried out as stated in the approved protocol)
- patients must not be enticed into risky research by the lure of money and investigators must not trade the interests of patients for disproportionate recompense by a sponsor



Informed Consent for Research

- Purpose of study
- Sum of funding
- Name and probability of harm and benefits
- Nature of physician's participation including compensation

Proposals for research must be submitted to a research ethics board

Physician-Industry Relations

- health care delivery in the United States involves collaboration between physicians and the pharmaceutical and health supply industries in the areas of research, education, and clinical evaluation packages (i.e. product samples)
- physicians have a responsibility to ensure that their participation in such collaborative efforts is in keeping with their duties to their patients and society
- AMA Guidelines on the acceptance of gifts or free products from industry include:
 - any gifts accepted by physicians should primarily entail a benefit to patients and should not be of substantial value (e.g. textbooks as they serve a genuine educational function)



The AMA Code of Medical Ethics has a number of opinions on "Practice Matters" including "Industry representatives in clinical settings," "Financial incentives and the practice of medicine," and "Gifts to physicians from industry," (see <http://www.ama-assn.org/ama/pub/physician-resources/medical-ethics/code-medical-ethics.shtml>)

- cash payments should not be accepted
- individual gifts on minimal value are acceptable as long as they are related to the physician's work
- appropriate disclosure of financial support or conflict of interest should be made at conferences and/or meetings
- subsidies to underwrite costs of continuing education conference or meetings are acceptable
- payments to defray costs of a conference should not be accepted directly by the physician attending a conference
- no gifts should be accepted if there are strings attached

Resource Allocation

Definition: the distribution of goods and services to programs and people

- physicians have the duty to inform patients about therapeutic options even if they are not available
- physicians must make health care resources available to patients in a manner which is fair and equitable, without bias or discrimination
 - need and benefit are morally relevant criteria for resource allocation
 - gender, sexual orientation, religion, level of education, or age alone are morally irrelevant criteria
- ethical dilemmas can arise when deciding how best to allocate resources. Common ethical dilemmas include:
 - fair chances vs. best outcome: best outcome generally favoured vs. giving all patients fair access to limited resources (e.g. transplant list prioritization)
 - priorities problem: how much priority should the sickest patients receive?
 - aggregation problem: modest benefits to many vs. significant benefits to few
 - democracy problem: when to rely on a fair democratic process to arrive at a decision

Guidelines for Appropriately Allocating Resources

- the physician's primary obligation is to
 - protect and promote the welfare and best interests of his or her patients
 - choose interventions known to be beneficial on the basis of evidence of effectiveness
 - seek the tests or treatments that will accomplish the diagnostic or therapeutic goal for the least cost
 - advocate for one's patients but avoid manipulating the system to gain unfair advantage for them
 - resolve conflicting claims for scarce resources justly, on the basis of morally relevant criteria such as need and benefit, using fair and publicly defensible procedures
 - inform patients of the impact of cost constraints on care, but in a sensitive way
 - seek resolution of unacceptable shortages at the level of hospital management or government

AMA Policy on Resource Allocation

- physicians have the "duty to do all that [they] can for the benefit of the individual patient"
- decisions regarding the allocation of limited resources among patients should consider ethically appropriate criteria, which includes:
 - likelihood of benefit
 - urgency of need
 - changes in quality of life
 - duration of benefit
 - the amount of resources required for successful treatment

Professional Considerations

Elderly Patient

- identify their resuscitation options (CPR or DNR), if applicable
- check for documentation of advance directives and POA where applicable
- for further details see [ELOAM8](#)

Pediatric Patient

- identify the primary decision-maker (parents, guardian, wards-of-state, emancipated)
- be wary of custody issues if applicable

Terminally Ill or Palliative Patient

- consider the SPIKES approach to breaking bad news
- what are their goals of care, i.e. disease vs. symptom management?
- identify advance directives, POA, or SDM, if applicable
- check for documentation of resuscitation options (CPR or DNR) and likelihood of success
- for further details, see [Geriatric Medicine](#), [GM12](#)

Incapable Patient

- if not already present, perform a formal capacity assessment
- identify if the patient has a SDM or who has their POA

**Recommendations for Working with Families Who Refuse Childhood Immunization**

Pediatrics 2011;128:S167-174

1. Provide clear information about the risks and benefits of immunization and the diseases targeted.
2. Inform parents when their beliefs are unsupported by evidence.
3. Physicians can discontinue professional services but must comply with legal and ethical requirements. Parents are entitled to refuse treatment that a physician recommends; not every disagreement should result in discharge from practice.
4. Vaccine education for Complementary and Alternative Medicine Providers.
5. Public education campaigns regarding immunization.
6. No-fault compensation for vaccine-related injury.

Conscientious Objection**Patients Refusing Treatment**

- in accordance with the principle of autonomy, it is acceptable for competent patients to refuse medical interventions for themselves or others; exceptions may occur
- if parents or SDMs make decisions that are clearly not in the “best interests” of an incapable child, thereby risking mortality or serious morbidity, physicians may seek a court order to provide treatment against parental wishes
- in emergent scenarios, physicians may initiate treatment on the basis of legal precedent if withholding treatment places child at serious health risk
- in lower risk scenarios, such as refusing childhood immunization in a developed nation, there is a stronger obligation to respect the autonomy of the decision-makers

Physicians Refusing to Provide Treatment

- physicians may refuse to provide treatment or discontinue relationships with patients, but must ensure these patients can access services elsewhere
- for example, a pediatrician who refuses to treat an unvaccinated child should refer the family to another practice. In this case, it is recommended the pediatrician continue working with the family in the hopes that further education might help parents to make more informed decisions regarding their child's health

References**Bioethics**

AMA Code of Medical Ethics, American Medical Association. Available from: <http://www.ama-assn.org/ama/pub/physician-resources/medical-ethics/code-medical-ethics.page?>

Etchells E, Sharpe G, Elliott C, et al. Bioethics for clinicians. *CMAJ* 1996;155:657-661.

Gilmour J, Harrison C, Asadi L, et al. Childhood immunization: when physicians and parents disagree. *Pediatrics* 2011;128:S167-174.

Hébert P. Doing right: a practical guide to ethics for physicians and medical trainees, 3rd ed. Toronto: Oxford University Press, 2014.

Hébert PC, Hoffmaster B, Glass KC, et al. Bioethics for clinicians. *CMAJ* 1997;156:225-228.

Yale Journal of Medicine and Law: an undergraduate publication. Available from: <http://yalemedlaw.com>.

Governing Organizations

American Medical Association. Available from: <http://www.ama-assn.org>.

Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services. Available from: <http://www.cms.hhs.gov>.

US Department of Health and Human Services. Available from: www.hhs.gov

WHO. World Health Report 2005. Available from: <http://www.who.int/whr/en>.

Health Care Delivery

Baile WF, Buckman R, Lenzi R, et al. SPIKES: a six-step protocol for delivering bad news: application to the patient with cancer. *Oncologist* 2000;5:302-311.

Fisher ES, Wennberg DE, Stukel TA, et al. The implications of regional variations in Medicare spending. Part 1: The content, quality, and accessibility of care. *Ann Intern Med* 2003;138:273-287.

Fisher ES, Wennberg DE, Stukel TA, et al. The implications of regional variations in Medicare spending. Part 2: Health outcomes and satisfaction with care. *Ann Intern Med* 2003;138:288-298.

Institute of Medicine. Care without coverage: too little, too late. Washington: The National Academies Press, 2002. Available from: <http://www.iom.edu>.

National Center for Health Statistics, Center for Disease Control and Prevention. Available from: <http://www.cdc.gov/nchs>.

OECD. Health Data. 2008. Available from: <http://www.oecd.org>.

PBS. Healthcare crisis: healthcare timeline. 2012. Available from: <http://www.pbs.org/healthcarecrisis/>.

The White House. Health care that works for americans. Available from: <http://www.whitehouse.gov/healthreform/healthcare-overview>.

Important Acts/Charters

Affordable Health Care for America Act (House bill – H.R. 3962).

America's Healthy Future Act (Baucus bill – S. 1796).

Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, 2010 (PL 111-148, 2010).

Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (PL 104-191).

Notes

Hilary Felice, Spencer Heffernan, and Rohan Kothari, chapter editors

Jillian Bardsley, Evan Lilly, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor

Dr. Isabella Devito and Dr. Diana Tamir, staff editors

Overview of Anesthesia	2	Extubation	18
Pre-Operative Assessment	2	Complications of Extubation	
History and Physical		Regional Anesthesia	19
Pre-Operative Investigations		Epidural and Spinal Anesthesia	
American Society of Anesthesiology		Peripheral Nerve Blocks	
Classification		Local Anesthesia	21
Pre-Operative Optimization	4	Local Anesthetic Agents	
Medications		Systemic Toxicity	
Hypertension		Local Infiltration	
Coronary Artery Disease		Topical Anesthetics	
Endocrine Disorders		Post-Operative Care	22
Respiratory Diseases		Common Post-Operative Anesthetic	
Obesity and Obstructive Sleep Apnea		Complications	
Hematological Disorders		Pain Management	23
Aspiration		Acute Pain	
Fasting Guidelines		Neuropathic Pain	
Monitoring	6	Chronic pain	
Airway Management	7	Obstetrical Anesthesia	24
Airway Anatomy		Pediatric Anesthesia	25
Methods of Supporting Airways		Uncommon Complications	26
Tracheal Intubation		Malignant Hyperthermia	
Difficult Airway		Abnormal Pseudocholinesterase	
Oxygen Therapy		Common Medications	27
Ventilation		Intravenous Induction Agents	
Intraoperative Management	11	Opioids	
Temperature		Volatile Inhalational Agents	
Heart Rate		Depolarizing Muscle Relaxants	
Blood Pressure		Non-Depolarizing Muscle Relaxants	
Fluid Balance and Resuscitation		Reversal Agents for Non-Depolarizing Relaxants	
IV Fluids		Local Anesthetic Agents	
Blood Products		Appendices	30
Types of Anesthesia	16	Difficult Tracheal Intubation in Unconscious	
Induction	16	Patient	
Routine Induction vs. Rapid Sequence Induction		Difficult Tracheal Intubation	
Induction Agents		Advanced Cardiac Life Support	
Muscle Relaxant and Reversing Agents		Guidelines	
Analgesia		References	34
Maintenance	18		

Acronyms

2,3-BPG	2,3-Bisphosphoglycerate	FFP	fresh frozen plasma	MAP	mean arterial pressure	RSI	rapid sequence induction
ACC	American College of Cardiology	FRC	functional residual capacity	MH	malignant hyperthermia	SABA	short-acting β -agonist
ACh	acetylcholine	GA	general anesthetic	MS	multiple sclerosis	SCh	succinylcholine
AChE	acetylcholinesterase	GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease	NMJ	neuromuscular junction	SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
ACV	assist-control ventilation	Hb(i)	initial hematocrit	NYHA	New York Heart Association	SNS	sympathetic nervous system
AHA	American Heart Association	Hb(f)	final hematocrit	OCS	oral corticosteroids	SV	stroke volume
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	Hct	hematocrit	OR	operating room	SVR	systemic vascular resistance
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome	HES	hydroxyethyl starch	P _a CO ₂	arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide	TBW	total body water
atm	atmosphere	ICP	intracranial pressure	P _a O ₂	arterial partial pressure of oxygen	TIVA	total intravenous anesthetic
CK	creatinine kinase	ICS	inhaled corticosteroids	PC	patient-controlled	TURP	transurethral resection of prostate
CO	cardiac output	IOP	intraocular pressure	PCA	patient controlled analgesia	V/Q	ventilation/perfusion
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid	LA	local anesthetic	PCV	pressure-controlled ventilation	VT	ventricular tachycardia
CVP	central venous pressure	LABA	long-acting β -agonist	PEEP	positive end-expiratory pressure	VTE	venous thromboembolism
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation	LES	lower esophageal sphincter	PNS	parasympathetic nervous system		
ET _{CO₂}	End-Tidal CO ₂	LMA	laryngeal mask airway	PONV	post-operative nausea and vomiting		
ETT	endotracheal tube	LOC	level of consciousness	PPV	positive pressure ventilation		
FiO ₂	fraction of oxygen in inspired air	MAC	minimum alveolar concentration				

Overview of Anesthesia

- anesthesia: lack of sensation/perception
- **approach to anesthesia**
 1. pre-operative assessment
 2. patient optimization
 3. plan anesthetic
 - various types of anesthesia
 - pre-medication
 - airway management
 - monitors
 - induction
 - maintenance
 - extubation
 4. post-operative care



6 As of General Anesthesia

Anesthesia
Anxiolysis
Amnesia
Areflexia (muscle relaxation not always required)
Autonomic stability
Analgesia

Pre-Operative Assessment



Purpose

- identify patient's medical and surgical issues
- arrange further investigations, consultations and treatments for patients not yet optimized
- plan and consent for anesthetic techniques

History and Physical

History

- age, gender
- indication for surgery
- surgical/anesthetic Hx: previous anesthetics, any complications, previous intubations, medications, drug allergies, post-operative N/V
- FHx: abnormal anesthetic reactions, malignant hyperthermia, pseudocholinesterase deficiency (see *Uncommon Complications, A26*)
- PMHx
 - CNS: seizures, TIA/strokes, raised ICP, spinal disease, aneurysm
 - CVS: angina/CAD, MI, CHF, HTN, valvular disease, dysrhythmias, peripheral vascular disease (PVD), conditions requiring endocarditis prophylaxis, exercise tolerance, CCS/NYHA class (see *Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C34* for NYHA classification)
 - respiratory: smoking, asthma, COPD, recent upper respiratory tract infection, sleep apnea
 - GI: GERD, liver disease, NPO status
 - renal: insufficiency, dialysis, chronic kidney disease
 - hematologic: anemia, coagulopathies, blood dyscrasias
 - MSK: conditions associated with difficult intubations – arthritides (e.g. rheumatoid arthritis), cervical tumors, cervical infections/abscesses, trauma to cervical spine, previous cervical spine surgery, Trisomy 21, scleroderma, conditions affecting neuromuscular junction (e.g. myasthenia gravis)
 - endocrine: diabetes, thyroid disorders, adrenal disorders
 - other: morbid obesity, pregnancy, ethanol/other drug use



Physical Exam

- weight, height, BP, pulse, respiratory rate
- focused physical exam of the CNS, CVS, and respiratory systems
- general assessment of nutrition, hydration, and mental status
- airway assessment
 - done to determine intubation difficulty (no single test is specific or sensitive)
 - cervical spine stability and neck movement – upper cervical spine extension, lower cervical spine flexion ("sniffing position")
 - Mallampati classification
 - "3-2-1 rule"
 - ♦ thyromental distance (distance of lower mandible in midline from the mentum to the thyroid notch); <3 finger breadths (<6 cm) is associated with difficult intubation
 - ♦ mouth opening (<2 finger breadths is associated with difficult intubation)
 - ♦ anterior jaw subluxation (<1 finger breadth is associated with difficult intubation)
 - tongue size
 - dentition, dental appliances/prosthetic caps, existing chipped/loose teeth – must inform patients of rare possibility of damage
 - nasal passage patency (if planning nasotracheal intubation)
 - assess difficulty of ventilation
- examination of anatomical sites relevant to lines and blocks
 - bony landmarks and suitability of anatomy for regional anesthesia (if relevant)
 - sites for IV, central venous pressure (CVP), and pulmonary artery (PA) catheters



Evaluation of Difficult Airway

LEMON

Look – obesity, beard, dental/facial abnormalities, neck, facial/neck trauma
Evaluate – 3-2-1 rule
Mallampati score
Obstruction – stridor, foreign bodies
Neck mobility



To Assess for Ventilation Difficulty

BONES

Beard
Obesity (BMI > 26)
No teeth
Elderly (age > 55)
Snoring Hx (sleep apnea)

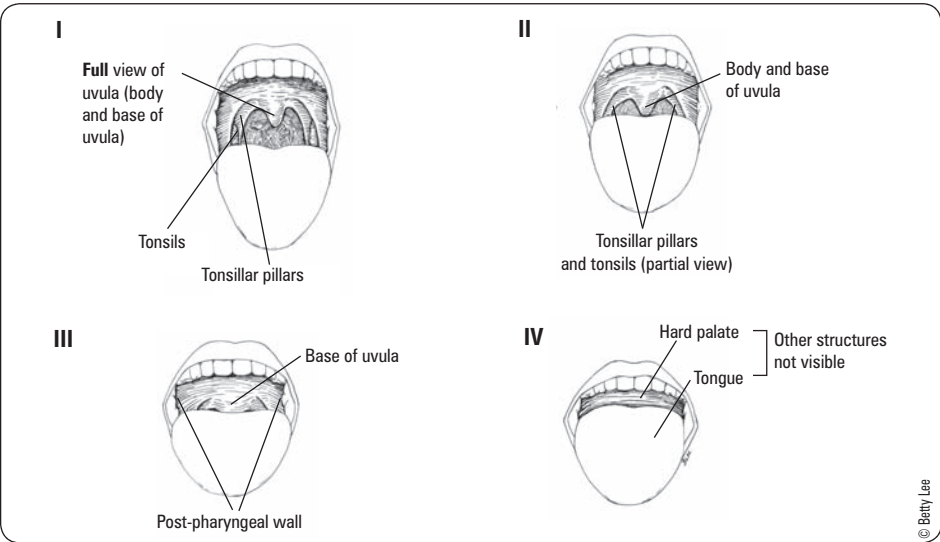


Figure 1. Mallampati classification of oral opening

Pre-Operative Investigations

- routine pre-operative investigations are only necessary if there are comorbidities, or certain indications

Table 1. Suggested Indications for Specific Investigations in the Pre-Operative Period

Test	Indications
CBC	Major surgery requiring group and screen or cross and match; chronic cardiovascular, pulmonary, renal, or hepatic disease; malignancy; known or suspected anemia; bleeding diathesis or myelosuppression; patient less than 1 yr of age
Sickle Cell Screen	Genetically predisposed patient (hemoglobin electrophoresis if screen is positive)
INR, aPTT	Anticoagulant therapy, bleeding diathesis, liver disease
Electrolytes and Creatinine	HTN, renal disease, diabetes, pituitary or adrenal disease; digoxin, diuretic, or other drug therapies affecting electrolytes
Fasting Glucose Level	Diabetes (repeat on day of surgery)
Pregnancy (β-hCG)	Women of reproductive age
ECG	Heart disease, diabetes, other risk factors for cardiac disease; subarachnoid or intracranial hemorrhage, cerebrovascular accident, head trauma
Chest Radiograph	Cardiac or pulmonary disease, malignancy

Guidelines to the Practice of Anesthesia Revised Edition 2013. Supplement to the Canadian Journal of Anesthesia, Vol 60, Dec. 2013. Reproduced with permission © Canadian Anesthesiologists' Society

American Society of Anesthesiology Classification

- common classification of physical status at the time of surgery
- a gross predictor of overall outcome, NOT used as stratification for anesthetic risk (mortality rates)
- ASA 1: a healthy, fit patient
- ASA 2: a patient with mild systemic disease
 - e.g. controlled type 2 diabetes mellitus (DM), controlled essential HTN, obesity, smoker
- ASA 3: a patient with severe systemic disease that limits activity
 - e.g. stable CAD, COPD, DM, obesity
- ASA 4: a patient with incapacitating disease that is a constant threat to life
 - e.g. unstable CAD, renal failure, acute respiratory failure
- ASA 5: a moribund patient not expected to survive 24 h without surgery
 - e.g. ruptured abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA), head trauma with increased ICP
- ASA 6: declared brain dead, a patient whose organs are being removed for donation purposes
- for emergency operations, add the letter E after classification (e.g. ASA 3E)



Impact of Anesthesia Management Characteristics on Severe Morbidity and Mortality
Anesth 2005;102:257-268
Study: Case-control study of patients undergoing anesthesia.
Patients: 807 cases and 883 controls were analyzed among a cohort of 869,483 patients undergoing anesthesia between 1995-1997. Cases were defined as patients who either remained comatose or died within 24 h of receiving anesthesia. Controls were defined as patients who neither remained comatose nor died within 24 h of receiving anesthesia.
Intervention: General, regional, or combined anesthesia to patients undergoing a surgical procedure.
Main Outcome: Coma or death within 24 h of receiving anesthesia.
Results: The incidence of 24 h post-operative death was 8.8 per 10,000 anesthetics (95% CI 8.2-9.5) and the incidence of coma was 0.5 (95% CI 0.3-0.6). Anesthesia management risk factors that were associated with a decreased risk of morbidity and mortality were equipment check with protocol and documentation, directly available anesthesiologist with no change during anesthesia, 2 persons present at emergence of anesthesia, reversal of muscle relaxation, and post-operative pain medication.

Pre-Operative Optimization

- in general, prior to elective surgery
 - any fluid and/or electrolyte imbalance should be corrected
 - extent of existing comorbidities should be understood and these conditions should be optimized prior to surgery
 - medications may need to be adjusted

Medications

- pay particular attention to cardiac and respiratory medications, opioids and drugs with many side effects and interactions
- **pre-operative medications to consider**
 - prophylaxis
 - ♦ risk of GE reflux: sodium citrate 30 mL PO or ranitidine 150-300 mg PO or metoclopramide 10 mg PO 30 min to 1 h pre-operatively
 - ♦ risk of infective endocarditis, GI/GU interventions: antibiotics
 - ♦ risk of adrenal suppression: steroid coverage
 - ♦ anxiety: consider benzodiazepines
 - ♦ COPD, asthma: bronchodilators
 - ♦ CAD risk factors: nitroglycerin and β -blockers
- **pre-operative medications to stop**
 - oral hypoglycemics: stop on morning of surgery
 - antidepressants: stop on morning of surgery
 - ACE inhibitors and angiotension receptor blockers: stop on morning of surgery
 - warfarin (consider bridging with heparin), anti-platelet agents (e.g. clopidogrel)
 - ♦ discuss perioperative use of ASA, NSAIDs with surgeon
 - ♦ in patients undergoing noncardiac surgery, starting or continuing low-dose aspirin in the perioperative period does not appear to protect against post-operative MI or death, but increases the risk of major bleeding
 - Note: this does not apply to patients with bare metal stents or drug-eluting coronary stents
- pre-operative medication to adjust
 - insulin (consider insulin/dextrose infusion or holding dose), prednisone, bronchodilators



Aspirin® in Patients Undergoing Non-Cardiac Surgery

NEJM 2014; 370:1494-1503

Purpose: This study evaluated the effect of low-dose ASA on the risk of death or non-fatal MI in 10,010 patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery. Patients were randomized into two groups in a double-blind process.

Method: RCT: ASA or placebo to be taken shortly before surgery and in the early post-operative period. The primary outcome was a composite of death or non-fatal MI.

Results: Death or non-fatal MI occurred in 7.0% in the ASA group and 7.1% in the placebo group. Major bleeding was more common in the ASA group than the placebo group.

Conclusion: Administration of ASA before surgery and throughout the early post-surgical period had no significant effect on the incidence of death or MI but increased the risk of major bleeding.



Effects of Extended-Release Metoprolol Succinate in Patients Undergoing Non-Cardiac Surgery (POISE Trial): A Randomized Controlled Trial

Lancet 2008;371:1839-1847

Purpose: To investigate the role of β -blockers (metoprolol) perioperatively in patients with known vascular disease undergoing non-cardiac surgery.

Methods: Patients from 190 centers in 23 countries were eligible if they were age >45 , undergoing non-cardiac surgery, and were known to have significant vascular disease. Patients were randomized to either the metoprolol group or placebo. Participants received metoprolol (or placebo) 100 mg 2-4 h prior to surgery, 6 h after surgery, and then 20 mg daily for 30 d. The primary endpoint was a composite of cardiovascular death, non-fatal myocardial infarction, and non-fatal cardiac arrest. Analysis was by intention to treat.

Results: 8,351 patients were recruited into the study, with 8,331 completing the 30 d course. Use of metoprolol was found to significantly reduce the risk of cardiovascular death, non-fatal MI, or non-fatal cardiac arrest vs. placebo (hazard ratio 0.84, $p<0.05$) but significantly increased the rate of stroke (hazard ratio 2.17, $p<0.01$) and overall risk of death (hazard ratio 1.33, $p<0.05$).

Conclusion: Use of perioperative β -blockers (metoprolol) in patients with known vascular disease provides both risks and benefits, and these must be considered for each patient individually.

Hypertension

- BP $<180/110$ is not an independent risk factor for perioperative cardiovascular complications
- target sBP <180 mmHg, dBP <110 mmHg
- assess for end-organ damage and treat accordingly

Coronary Artery Disease

- ACC/AHA Guidelines (2007) recommend postponing elective surgery 4-6 wk following an MI
 - this period carries an increased risk of reinfarction/death
- if operative procedure is essential and cannot be delayed, invasive intra- and post-operative ICU monitoring reduces the risk of reinfarction
- mortality with perioperative MI is 20-50%
- perioperative β -blockers
 - may \downarrow cardiac events and mortality (controversial, as recent data suggests \uparrow stroke risk)
 - continue β -blocker if patient is routinely taking it prior to surgery
 - consider initiation of β -blocker in:
 - ♦ patients with CAD or indication for β -blocker
 - ♦ intermediate risk surgery, especially vascular surgery

Endocrine Disorders

- diabetes mellitus
 - clarify type I vs. type II
 - assess glucose control with history and HbA1c; well controlled diabetics have more stable glucose levels intraoperatively
 - end organ damage: be aware of damage to CVS, renal, and nervous systems, including autonomic neuropathy
 - formulate intraoperative glucose management plan based on type (I vs. II), glucose control, and extent of end organ damage

- hyperthyroidism
 - can experience sudden release of thyroid hormone (thyroid storm)
 - treatment: β -blockers and pre-operative prophylaxis
- adrenocortical insufficiency (Addison's, exogenous steroid use)
 - consider intraoperative steroid supplementation

Respiratory Diseases

- smoking
 - adverse effects: altered mucus secretion and clearance, decreased small airway caliber, and altered immune response
 - abstain at least 8 wk pre-op if possible
 - if unable, abstaining even 24 h pre-operatively has shown benefit
- asthma
 - pre-operative management depends on degree of baseline asthma control
 - increased risk of bronchospasm from intubation, delivery of desflurane
 - ♦ administration of short course (up to 1 wk) pre-operative corticosteroids and inhaled β_2 -agonists decreases the risk of bronchospasm and does not increase the risk of infection, or delay wound healing
 - avoid non-selective β -blockers; cardioselective β -blockers (metoprolol, atenolol) do not increase risk of bronchospasm in the short-term
 - delay elective surgery for poorly controlled asthma (increased cough or sputum production, active wheezing)
 - delay elective surgery by a minimum of 6 wks if patient develops URTI
- COPD
 - anesthesia, surgery and analgesia predispose the patient to atelectasis, bronchospasm, pneumonia, prolonged need for mechanical ventilation, and respiratory failure
 - optimize with bronchodilators \pm ICS \pm antibiotics
 - pre-operative ABG for all COPD stage II and III patients to assess baseline respiratory acidosis and plan post-operative management of hypercapnea
 - cancel/delay elective surgery for acute exacerbation



β -blockers

- β_1 receptors are located primarily in the heart and kidneys
- β_2 receptors are located in the lungs
- Non-selective β -blockers block β_1 and β_2 receptors (labetalol, carvedilol, nadolol). Caution is required with non-selective β -blockers, particularly in patients with respiratory conditions where β_2 blockade can result in airway reactivity

Obesity and Obstructive Sleep Apnea

- assess for comorbid conditions in obese patient (independent risk factor for CVD, diabetes, OSA, cholelithiasis, HTN)
- previously undiagnosed conditions may require additional testing to characterize severity
- both obesity and OSA increase risk of difficult ventilation, intubation, and post-operative respiratory complications
 - risk may be magnified with both diseases present

Hematological Disorders

- history of congenital or acquired conditions (sickle cell anemia, factor VIII deficiency, ITP, liver disease)
- evaluate hemoglobin, hematocrit and coagulation profiles when indicated (Table 1)
- anemia
 - pre-operative treatments to increase hemoglobin (erythropoietin or pre-admission blood collection in certain populations)
- coagulopathies
 - discontinue or modify anticoagulation therapies (warfarin, clopidogrel, ASA) in advance of elective surgeries
 - administration of reversal agents if necessary: vitamin K, FFP, prothrombin complex concentrate, recombinant activated factor VII

Aspiration

- increased risk of aspiration with:
 - decreased LOC
 - trauma
 - meals within 8 h
 - suspected sphincter incompetence (GERD, hiatus hernia, nasogastric tube)
 - increased abdominal pressure (pregnancy, obesity, bowel obstruction, acute abdomen)
 - laryngeal mask vs. endotracheal tube (ETT)

- management
 - reduce gastric volume and acidity
 - delay inhibiting airway reflexes with muscular relaxants
 - employ rapid sequence induction (see *Rapid Sequence Induction*, A16)

Fasting Guidelines

Fasting Guidelines Prior to Surgery (American Society of Anesthesiologists)

- 8 h after a meal that includes meat, fried or fatty foods
- 6 h after a light meal (such as toast or crackers) or after ingestion of infant formula or non-human milk
- 4 h after ingestion of breast milk
- 2 h after clear fluids (water, black coffee, tea, carbonated beverages, juice without pulp)

Monitoring

Guidelines to the Practice of Anesthesia and Patient Monitoring

- an anesthetist present: "the only indispensable monitor"
- a completed pre-anesthetic checklist: including ASA class, NPO policy, Hx and investigations
- a perioperative anesthetic record: HR and BP every 5 min, dose and route of drugs and fluids
- continuous monitoring: see *Routine Monitors for All Cases*

Routine Monitors for All Cases

- pulse oximeter, apparatus to measure BP, electrocardiography, capnography and temperature monitoring are required for general anesthesia and sedation (Ramsey Sedation Scale 4-6), agent-specific anesthetic gas monitor when inhalational anesthetic agents are used
- the following must also be available: temperature probe, peripheral nerve stimulator, stethoscope, appropriate lighting, spirometer

Elements to Monitor

- anesthetic depth
 - inadequate: blink reflex present when eyelashes lightly touched, HTN, tachycardia, tearing or sweating
 - excessive: hypotension, bradycardia
- oxygenation: pulse oximetry, fraction of inspired O₂ (FiO₂)
- ventilation: verify correct position of ETT, chest excursions, breath sounds, ETCO₂ analysis, monitor inhaled and exhaled concentrations of inhaled anesthetics
- circulation: pulse, heart sounds, BP, telemetry, oximetry, CVP, pulmonary capillary wedge pressure
- temperature



Pre-Anesthetic Checklist

SAMMM

Suction: connected and working

Airways: laryngoscope and blades, ETT, syringe, stylet, oral and nasal airways, tape, bag, and mask

Machine: connected, pressures okay, all meters functioning, vaporizers full

Monitors: available, connected, and working

Medications: IV fluids and kit ready, emergency medicines in correct location and accessible

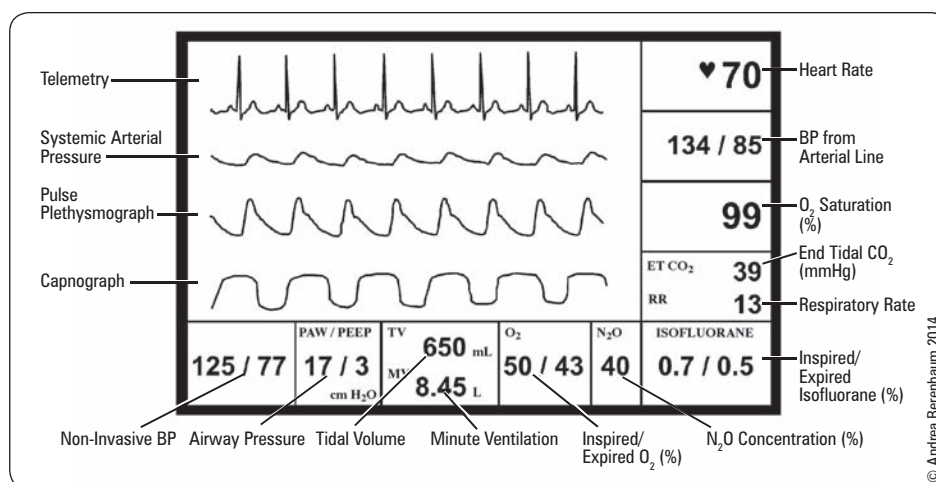
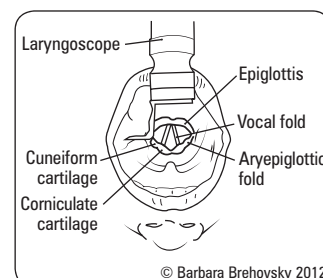


Figure 2. Typical anesthesia monitor

Airway Management

Airway Anatomy

- resistance to airflow through nasal passages accounts for approximately 2/3 of total airway resistance
- pharyngeal airway extends from posterior aspect of the nose to cricoid cartilage
- glottic opening (triangular space formed between the true vocal cords) is the narrowest segment of the laryngeal opening in adults
- the glottic opening is used as the space through which one visualizes proper placement of the ETT
- the trachea begins at the level of the thyroid cartilage, C6, and bifurcates into the right and left main bronchi at T4-T5 (approximately the sternal angle)



© Barbara Brehovsky 2012

Figure 3. Landmarks for intubation

Methods of Supporting Airways

1. Non-definitive airway (patent airway)
 - Jaw thrust/chin lift
 - Oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal airway
 - Bag mask ventilation
 - Laryngeal mask airway
2. Definitive airway (patent and protected airway)
 - Endotracheal tube
 - Surgical airway (cricothyrotomy or tracheostomy)

Table 2. Methods of Supporting the Airway

	Bag and Mask	Laryngeal Mask Airway (LMA)	Endotracheal Tube (ETT)
Advantages/Indications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Basic • Non-invasive • Readily available 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Easy to insert • Less airway trauma/irritation than ETT • Frees up hands (vs. face mask) • Primarily used in spontaneously ventilating patient 	Indications for intubation (5 Ps): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Patent airway • Protects against aspiration • Positive pressure ventilation • Pulmonary toilet (suction) • Pharmacologic administration also hemodynamic instability
Disadvantages/Contraindications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Risk of aspiration if decreased LOC • Cannot ensure airway patency • Inability to deliver precise tidal volume • Operator fatigue 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Risk of gastric aspiration • PPV <20 cm H₂O needed • Oropharyngeal/retropharyngeal pathology or foreign body • Does not protect against laryngospasm or gastric aspiration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insertion can be difficult • Muscle relaxant usually needed • Most invasive – see <i>Complications During Laryngoscopy and Intubation, A9</i>
Other	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Facilitate airway patency with jaw thrust and chin lift • Can use oropharyngeal/nasopharyngeal airway 	Sizing by body weight (approx): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 40-50 kg: 3 50-70 kg: 4 70-100 kg: 5 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auscultate to avoid endobronchial intubation • Sizing (approx): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Male: 8.0-9.0 mm Female: 7.0-8.0 mm Pediatric: (age/4) + 4 mm

Tracheal Intubation

Preparing for Intubation

- failed attempts at intubation can make further attempts more difficult due to tissue trauma
- plan, prepare, and assess for potential difficulties (see *Pre-Operative Assessment, A2*)
- ensure equipment is available and working (test ETT cuff, check laryngoscope light, machine check)
- pre-oxygenate/denitrogenate: patient breathes 100% O₂ for 3-5 min or for 4 vital capacity breaths
- may need to suction mouth and pharynx first

Proper Positioning for Intubation

- align the three axes (mouth, pharynx, and larynx) to allow visualization from oral cavity to glottis
 - “sniffing position”: flexion of lower C-spine (C5-C6), bow head forward, and extension of upper C-spine at atlanto-occipital joint (C1), nose in the air
 - contraindicated in known/suspected C-spine fracture/instability
- proper position for laryngoscope tip to visualize cords is in epiglottic vallecula

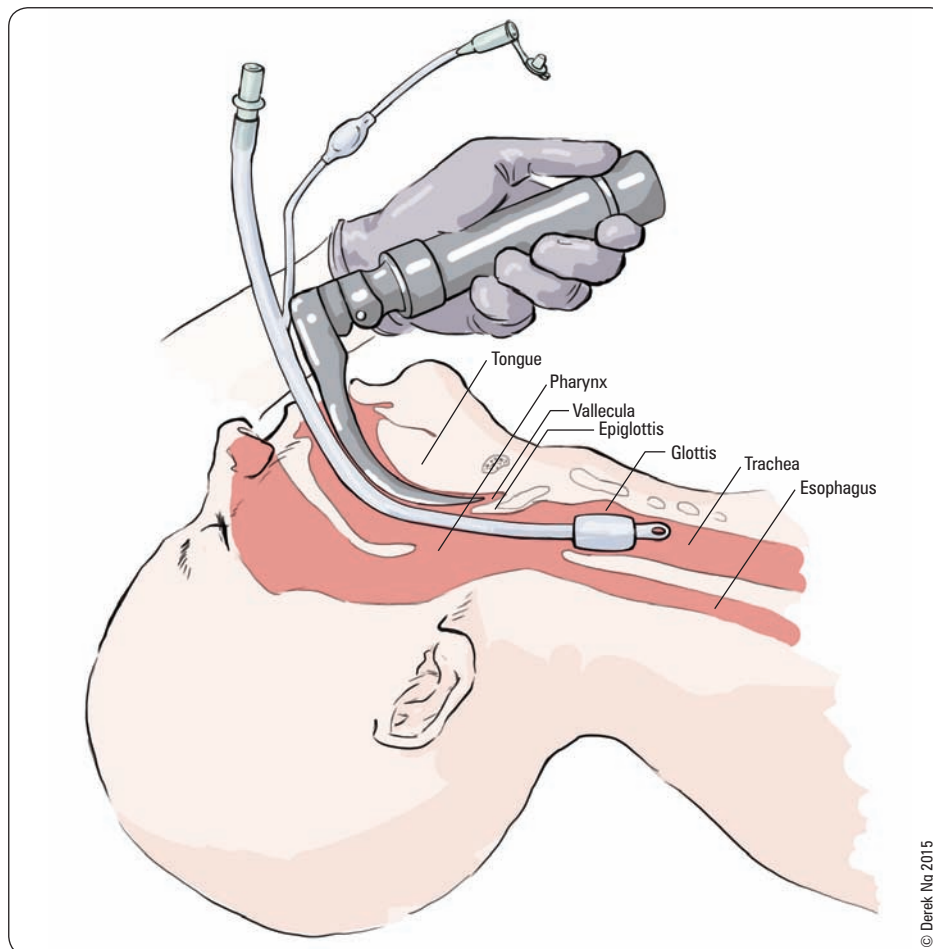


Figure 5. Sagittal view of airway with laryngoscope in vallecula

Tube Insertion

- ETT insertion can incite a significant sympathetic response due to a “foreign body reflex” in the trachea, including tachycardia, dysrhythmias, myocardial ischemia, increased BP, and coughing
- a malpositioned ETT is a potential hazard for the intubated patient
 - if too deep, may result in right endobronchial intubation, which is associated with left-sided atelectasis and right-sided tension pneumothorax
 - if too shallow, may lead to accidental extubation, vocal cord trauma, or laryngeal paralysis as a result of pressure injury by the ETT cuff
- the tip of ETT should be located at the midpoint of the trachea at least 2 cm above the carina and the proximal end of the cuff should be placed at least 2 cm below the vocal cords
 - approximately 20-23 cm mark at the right corner of the mouth for men and 19-21 cm for women

Confirmation of Tracheal Placement of ETT

- direct
 - visualization of ETT passing through cords
 - bronchoscopic visualization of ETT in trachea
- indirect
 - ET_{CO2} in exhaled gas measured by capnography
 - auscultate for equal breath sounds bilaterally and absent breath sounds over epigastrium
 - bilateral chest movement, condensation of water vapor in ETT visible during exhalation and no abdominal distention
 - refilling of reservoir bag during exhalation
 - CXR (rarely done): ETT tip at midpoint of thoracic inlet and carina (lateral CXR more sensitive and specific)
- esophageal intubation suspected when
 - ET_{CO2} zero or near zero on capnograph
 - abnormal sounds during assisted ventilation
 - impairment of chest excursion
 - hypoxia/cyanosis
 - presence of gastric contents in ETT
 - distention of stomach/epigastrium with ventilation

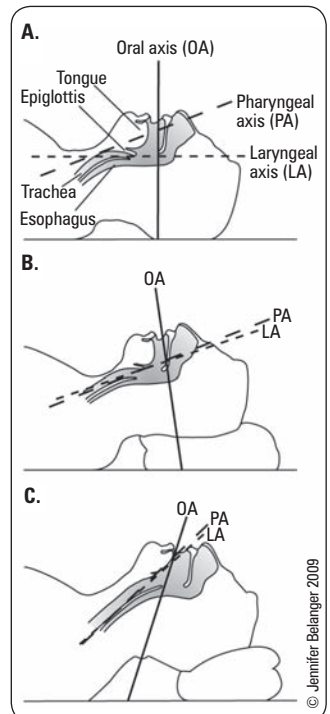


Figure 4. Anatomic considerations in laryngoscopy

- A. Neutral position
- B. C-spine flexion
- C. C-spine flexion with atlanto-occipital extension



Equipment for Intubation

MDSOLES

Monitors
Drugs
Suction
Oxygen source and self-inflating bag with oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal airways
Laryngoscope
Endotracheal tubes (appropriate size and one size smaller)
Stylet, Syringe for tube cuff inflation



Medications that can be Given Through the ETT

NAVEL

Naloxone
Atropine
Ventolin
Epinephrine
Lidocaine

Complications During Laryngoscopy and Intubation

- dental damage
- laceration (lips, gums, tongue, pharynx, esophagus)
- laryngeal trauma
- esophageal or endobronchial intubation
- accidental extubation
- insufficient cuff inflation or cuff laceration: results in leaking and aspiration
- laryngospasm (see *Extubation*, A18 for definition)
- bronchospasm



Differential Diagnosis of Poor Bilateral Breath Sounds after Intubation

DOPE

Displaced ETT
Obstruction
Pneumothorax
Esophageal intubation



Predicting Difficult Intubation in Apparently Normal Patients

Anesth 2005;103:429-437

Purpose: To assess widely available bedside tests and widely used laryngoscopic techniques in the prediction of difficult intubations.

Study: Meta-analysis.

Patients: 35 studies encompassing 50,760 patients.

Definitions: Difficult intubation was defined usually as Cormack-Lehane grade of 3 or greater, but some authors reported the requirement of a special technique, multiple unsuccessful attempts, or a combination of these as the accepted standard for difficult intubation.

Results: The overall incidence of difficult intubation was 5.8% (95% CI 4.5-7.5%) for the overall patient population, 6.2% (95% CI 4.6-8.3%) for normal patients excluding obstetric and obese patients, 3.1% (95% CI 1.7-5.5%) for obstetric patients, and 15.8% (95% CI 14.3-17.5%) for obese patients.

Mallampati score: SN:49% SP:86% PLR:3.7
NLR:0.5; thyromental distance: SN:20% SP:94% PLR:3.4 NLR:0.8; sternomental distance: SN:62% SP:82% PLR:5.7 NLR:0.5; mouth opening: SN:22% SP:97% PLR: 4.0 NLR:0.8; Wilson risk-sum: SN:46% SP:89% PLR:5.8 NLR:0.6; combination Mallampati and thyromental distance: SN:36% SP:87% PLR:9.9 NLR:0.6.

Conclusions: A combination of the Mallampati score and thyromental distance is the most accurate at predicting difficult intubation. The PLR (9.9) is supportive of the test as a good predictor of difficult intubation.

PLR: positive likelihood ratio; **NLR:** negative likelihood ratio; **SN:** sensitivity; **SP:** specificity

Difficult Airway

- difficulties with bag-mask ventilation, supraglottic airway, endotracheal intubation, infraglottic airway or surgical airway
- algorithms exist for difficult airways (*Can J Anesth* 2013;60:1119-1138; *Anesth* 2003;98:3273; *Anesth* 2013;118:251-270), see *Figures 14 and 15*, A30, A31
- pre-operative assessment (history of previous difficult airway, airway examination) and pre-oxygenation are important preventative measures
- if difficult airway expected, consider
 - awake intubation
 - intubating with bronchoscope, trachlight (lighted stylet), fiber optic laryngoscope, glidescope, etc.
- if intubation unsuccessful after induction
 1. CALL FOR HELP
 2. ventilate with 100% O₂ via bag and mask
 3. consider returning to spontaneous ventilation and/or waking patient
- if bag and mask ventilation inadequate
 1. CALL FOR HELP
 2. attempt ventilation with oral airway
 3. consider/attempt LMA
 4. emergency invasive airway access (e.g. rigid bronchoscope, cricothyrotomy, or tracheostomy)

Oxygen Therapy

- in general, the goal of oxygen therapy is to maintain arterial oxygen saturation (SaO₂) >90%
- small decrease in saturation below SaO₂ of 90% corresponds to a large drop in arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO₂)
- in intubated patients, oxygen is delivered via the ETT
- in patients not intubated, there are many oxygen delivery systems available; the choice depends on oxygen requirements (FiO₂) and the degree to which precise control of delivery is needed
- cyanosis can be detected at SaO₂ <85%, frank cyanosis at SaO₂ = 67%

Low Flow Systems

- acceptable if tidal volume 300-700 mL, respiratory rate (RR) <25, consistent ventilation pattern
- provide O₂ at flows between 0-10 L/min
- dilution of oxygen with room air results in a decrease in FiO₂
- an increase in minute ventilation (tidal volume x RR) results in a decrease in FiO₂
 - e.g. nasal cannula (prong)
 - well tolerated if flow rates <5-6 L/min; drying of nasal mucosa at higher flows
 - nasopharynx acts as an anatomic reservoir that collects O₂
 - delivered oxygen concentration (FiO₂) can be estimated by adding 4% for every additional liter of O₂ delivered
 - provides FiO₂ of 24-44% at O₂ flow rates of 1-6 L/min

Reservoir Systems

- use a volume reservoir to accumulate oxygen during exhalation thus increasing the amount of oxygen available for the next breath
- simple face mask
 - covers patient's nose and mouth and provides an additional reservoir beyond nasopharynx
 - fed by small bore O₂ tubing at a rate of at least 6 L/min to ensure that exhaled CO₂ is flushed through the exhalation ports and not rebreathed
 - provides FiO₂ of 55% at O₂ flow rates of 10 L/min
- non-rebreather mask
 - a reservoir bag and a series of one-way valves prevent expired gases from re-entering the bag
 - during the exhalation phase, the bag accumulates with oxygen
 - provides FiO₂ of 80% at O₂ flow rates of 10-15 L/min

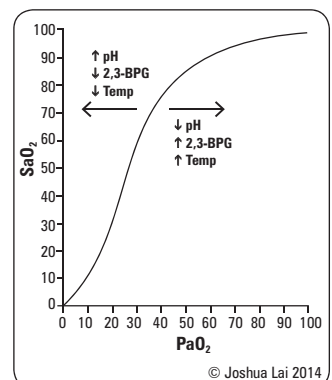


Figure 6. HbO₂ saturation curve



Composition of Air

78.1% nitrogen
20.9% oxygen
0.9% argon
0.04% carbon dioxide

High Flow Systems

- generate flows of up to 50-60 L/min
- meet/exceed patient's inspiratory flow requirement
- deliver consistent and predictable concentration of O₂
- Venturi mask
 - delivers specific FiO₂ by varying the size of air entrainment
 - oxygen concentration determined by mask's port and NOT the wall flow rate
 - enables control of gas humidity
 - FiO₂ ranges from 24-50%



Changes in peak pressures in ACV and tidal volumes in PCV may reflect changes in lung compliance and/or airway resistance – patient may be getting better or worse



Positive End Expiratory Pressure (PEEP)

- Positive pressure applied at the end of ventilation that opens up collapsed alveoli decreasing V/Q mismatch
- Used with all invasive modes of ventilation



Tracheostomy

- Tracheostomy should be considered in patients who require ventilator support for extended periods of time
- Shown to improve patient comfort and give patients a better ability to participate in rehabilitation activities



Monitoring Ventilatory Therapy

- Pulse oximetry, end-tidal CO₂ concentration
- Regular arterial blood gases
- Assess tolerance regularly



Management of pneumothorax in patients on mechanical ventilation → chest tube



Causes of Intraoperative Hypoxia

Inadequate oxygen supply: e.g. breathing system disconnection, obstructed or malpositioned ETT, leaks in the anesthetic machine, loss of oxygen supply

Hypoventilation

Ventilation-perfusion inequalities: e.g. atelectasis, pneumonia, pulmonary edema, pneumothorax

Reduction in oxygen carrying capacity: e.g. anemia, carbon monoxide poisoning, methemoglobinemia, hemoglobinopathy

Leftward shift of the hemoglobin-oxygen saturation curve: e.g. hypothermia, decreased 2,3-BPG, alkalosis, hypocarbia, carbon monoxide poisoning

Right-to-left cardiac shunt

Ventilation

- ventilation is maintained with PPV in patients given muscle relaxants
- assisted or controlled ventilation can also be used to assist spontaneous respirations in patients not given muscle relaxants as an artificial means of supporting ventilation and oxygenation

Mechanical Ventilation

- indications for mechanical ventilation
 - apnea
 - hypoventilation/acute respiratory acidosis
 - intraoperative positioning limiting respiratory excursion (e.g. prone, Trendelenburg)
 - required hyperventilation (to lower ICP)
 - deliver positive end expiratory pressure (PEEP)
 - increased intrathoracic pressure (e.g. laparoscopic procedure)
- complications of mechanical ventilation
 - airway complications
 - ♦ tracheal stenosis, laryngeal edema
 - ♦ alveolar complications
 - ♦ ventilator-induced lung injury, ventilator-associated pneumonia (nosocomial pneumonia), barotrauma, volutrauma, inflammation, auto-PEEP, patient-ventilator asynchrony
 - cardiovascular complications
 - ♦ reduced venous return (secondary to increased intrathoracic pressure), reduced cardiac output, hypotension
 - neuromuscular complications
 - ♦ muscle atrophy
 - ♦ increased intracranial pressure
 - metabolic
 - ♦ decreased CO₂ due to hyperventilation
 - ♦ alkalemia with over correction of chronic hypercarbia

Ventilator Strategies

- mode and settings are determined based on patient factors (e.g. ideal body weight, compliance, resistance) and underlying reason for mechanical ventilation
- hypoxemic respiratory failure: ventilator provides supplemental oxygen, recruits atelectatic lung segments, helps improve V/Q mismatch, and decreases intrapulmonary shunt
- hypercapnic respiratory failure: ventilator augments alveolar ventilation; may decrease the work of breathing, allowing respiratory muscles to rest

Modes of Ventilation

- assist-control ventilation (ACV)
 - every breath is delivered with a pre-set tidal volume and rate or minute ventilation
 - extra controlled breaths may be triggered by patient effort; if no effort is detected within a specified amount of time the ventilator will initiate the breath
- pressure control ventilation (PCV)
 - a minimum frequency is set and patient may trigger additional breaths above the ventilator
 - all breaths delivered at a preset constant inspiratory pressure
- synchronous intermittent mandatory ventilation (SIMV)
 - ventilator provides controlled breaths (either at a set volume or pressure)
 - patient can breathe spontaneously (these breaths may be pressure supported) between controlled breaths
- pressure support ventilation (PSV)
 - patient initiates all breaths and the ventilator supports each breath with a pre-set inspiratory pressure
 - useful for weaning off ventilator
- high-frequency oscillatory ventilation (HFOV)
 - high breathing rate (up to 900 breaths/min in an adult), very low tidal volumes
 - used commonly in neonatal and pediatric respiratory failure
 - used in adults when conventional mechanical ventilation is failing

- non-invasive positive pressure ventilation (NPPV)
 - achieved without intubation by using a nasal or face mask with
 - ♦ BiPAP: increased pressure (like PSV) on inspiration and lower constant pressure on expiration
 - ♦ CPAP: delivers constant pressure on both inspiration and expiration

Table 3. Causes of Abnormal CO₂ Levels

Hypocapnea (Decreased CO ₂)	Hypercapnea (Increased CO ₂)
Hyperventilation	Hypoventilation
Hypothermia (decreased metabolic rate)	Hyperthermia
Decreased pulmonary blood flow (decreased cardiac output)	Improved pulmonary blood flow after resuscitation or hypotension
Technical issues: Incorrect placement of sampling catheter Inadequate sampling volume	Technical issues: Water in capnography device Anesthetic breathing circuit error <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inadequate fresh gas flow • Rebreathing • Exhausted soda lime • Faulty circuit absorber valves
V/Q mismatch <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pulmonary thromboembolism • Incipient pulmonary edema • Air embolism 	Low bicarbonate



A Comparison of Four Methods of Weaning Patients from Mechanical Ventilation

NEJM 1995;332:345-350

Study: Prospective, randomized, multicenter trial.
Participants: 130 of 546 patients who received mechanical ventilation and were considered ready for weaning but had respiratory distress during a 2 h trial of spontaneous breathing.

Intervention: One of four weaning techniques following standardized protocol.

Outcome: Median duration of weaning.

Results: The median duration of weaning for intermittent mandatory ventilation, pressure-support ventilation, intermittent (multiple) trials of spontaneous breathing, and once-daily trial of spontaneous breathing was 5 d, 4 d, and 3 d, respectively. The rate of successful weaning was higher with once-daily trial of spontaneous breathing than with intermittent mandatory ventilation (rate ratio 2.83; 95%CI 1.36-5.89; $p < 0.006$) or pressure-support ventilation (ratio 2.05; 95%CI 1.04-4.04; $p < 0.04$). There was no significant difference in the rate of success between once-daily trials and multiple trials of spontaneous breathing.

Conclusions: Once-daily or multiple trials of spontaneous breathing led to extubation more quickly than intermittent mandatory or pressure-support ventilation.



Impact of Hypothermia (<36°C)

- **Increased** risk of wound infections due to impaired immune function
- **Increases** the period of hospitalization by delaying healing
- **Reduces** platelet function and impairs activation of coagulation cascade **increasing** blood loss and transfusion requirements
- **Tripled** the incidence of VT and morbid cardiac events
- **Decreases** the metabolism of anesthetic agents prolonging post-operative recovery

Intraoperative Monitoring

Temperature

Causes of Hypothermia (<36.0°C)

- intraoperative temperature losses are common (e.g. 90% of intraoperative heat loss is transcutaneous), due to:
 - OR environment (cold room, IV fluids, instruments)
 - open wound
- prevent with inflated warming blanket and warmed IV fluids

Causes of Hyperthermia (>37.5-38.3°C)

- drugs (e.g. atropine)
- blood transfusion reaction
- infection/sepsis
- medical disorder (e.g. thyrotoxicosis)
- malignant hyperthermia (see *Uncommon Complications*, A26)
- over-zealous warming efforts

Heart Rate

Intraoperative Tachycardia

- tachycardia = HR >150 bpm; divided into narrow complex supraventricular tachycardias (SVT) or wide complex tachycardias
- SVT: sinus tachycardia, atrial fibrillation/flutter, accessory pathway mediated tachycardia, paroxysmal atrial tachycardia
- wide complex tachycardia: VT, SVT with aberrant conduction
- causes of sinus tachycardia:
 - shock/hypovolemia/blood loss
 - anxiety/pain/light anesthesia
 - full bladder
 - anemia
 - febrile illness/sepsis
 - drugs (e.g. atropine, cocaine, dopamine, epinephrine, ephedrine, isoflurane, isoproterenol, pancuronium)
 - Addisonian crisis, hypoglycemia, transfusion reaction, malignant hyperthermia
- for management of tachycardia, see *ACLS Guidelines* (Figure 16), A32

Intraoperative Bradycardia

- bradycardia = HR <50 bpm; most concerning are 2nd degree (Type 2 Mobitz) and 3rd degree heart block, which can both degenerate into asystole
- causes of sinus bradycardia
 - increased parasympathetic tone vs. decreased sympathetic tone
 - must rule out hypoxemia
 - arrhythmias (see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C15](#))
 - baroreceptor reflex due to increased ICP or increased BP
 - vagal reflex (oculocardiac reflex, carotid sinus reflex, airway manipulation)
 - drugs (e.g. SCH, opioids, edrophonium, neostigmine, halothane, digoxin, β -blockers)
 - high spinal/epidural anesthesia
- for management of bradycardia, see [ACLS Guidelines \(Figure 16\)](#), A32



Cardiac Arrest

- pulseless arrest occurs due to 4 cardiac rhythms divided into shockable and non-shockable rhythms
 - shockable: ventricular fibrillation (VF) and ventricular tachycardia (VT)
 - non-shockable: asystole and pulseless electrical activity (PEA)
- for VF/VT, key to survival is good early CPR and defibrillation
- for asystole/PEA, key to survival is good early CPR and exclude all reversible causes
- reversible causes of PEA arrest (5 Hs and 5 Ts)
 - 5 Hs: hypothermia, hypovolemia, hypoxia, hydrogen ions (acidosis), hypo/hyperkalemia
 - 5 Ts: tamponade (cardiac), thrombosis (pulmonary), thrombosis (coronary), tension pneumothorax, toxins (overdose/poisoning)
- for management of cardiac arrest, see [ACLS Guidelines \(Figure 16\)](#), A32

Blood Pressure

Table 4. Assessment of Hemorrhagic Shock

	Class I	Class II	Class III	Class IV
Percentage Blood Loss	0-15%	15-30%	30-40%	> 40%
Percentage TBW Loss	0-3%	3-6%	6-9%	> 9%
Heart Rate	<100	>100	>120	>140
Blood Pressure	Normal	Normal	Decreased	Decreased
Treatment	Rapid infusion of 1-2 L of crystalloid (e.g. Ringer's lactate), maintenance fluids	Rapid infusion of 2 L of crystalloid and re-evaluate	Rapid infusion of 2 L of crystalloid, replace losses with crystalloid (1:3) or pRBCs, colloid (1:1)	Rapid infusion of 2 L of crystalloid, replace losses with crystalloid (1:3) or pRBCs, colloid (1:1)
Note			Goal is to maintain urine output at >0.5 mL/kg/h	Goal is to maintain urine output at >0.5 mL/kg/h

Causes of Intraoperative Hypotension/Shock

- shock: condition characterized by inability of cardiovascular system to maintain adequate end-organ perfusion
- a) hypovolemic/hemorrhagic shock
 - most common form of shock, due to decrease in intravascular volume
- b) obstructive shock
 - obstruction of blood into or out of the heart
 - increased JVP, distended neck veins, increased systemic vascular resistance, insufficient cardiac output (CO)
 - e.g. tension pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, pulmonary embolism
- c) cardiogenic shock
 - myocardial dysfunction
 - increased JVP, distended neck veins, increased systemic vascular resistance, decreased CO
 - e.g. dysrhythmias, ischemia/infarct, cardiomyopathy, acute valvular dysfunction
- d) septic shock
 - see [Infectious Diseases, ID22](#)
 - bacterial, viral, fungal, endotoxins/mediators cause vasodilation and capillary leakage
 - associated with contamination of open wounds, intestinal injury or penetrating trauma
 - signs: fever, decreased JVP, wide pulse pressure, increased CO, increased HR, decreased systemic vascular resistance \pm pressors
 - initial treatment: antibiotics, volume expansion
- e) spinal/neurogenic shock
 - decreased sympathetic tone
 - hypotension without tachycardia or peripheral vasoconstriction (warm skin)



Intraoperative Shock

SHOCKED

Sepsis or Spinal shock
Hypovolemic/Hemorrhagic
Obstructive
Cardiogenic
anaphylactic
Extra/other
Drugs



BP = CO x SVR, where CO = SV x HR

SV is a function of preload, afterload, and contractility



f) anaphylactic shock

- see [Emergency Medicine, ER30](#)
- acute/subacute generalized allergic reaction due to an inappropriate or excessive immune response (type I hypersensitivity)
- treatment of anaphylactic shock
 - ♦ moderate reaction: generalized urticaria, angioedema, wheezing, tachycardia
 - epinephrine (1:1000) 0.3-0.5 mg SC
 - antihistamines: diphenhydramine (Benadryl®) 25-50 mg IM
 - salbutamol (Ventolin®) 1 cc via MDI
 - ♦ severe reaction/evolution: severe wheezing, laryngeal/pulmonary edema, shock
 - ABCs, may need ETT due to airway edema
 - epinephrine (1:1000) 0.1-0.3 mg IV (or via ETT if no IV access) to start, repeat as needed
 - antihistamines: diphenhydramine (Benadryl®) 50 mg IV (~1 mg/kg)
 - steroids: hydrocortisone 100 mg IV (~1.5 mg/kg) or methylprednisolone (Solumedrol®) 1 mg/kg IV q6h x 24 h
 - large volumes of crystalloid may be required



g) drugs

- vasodilators, high spinal anesthetic interfering with sympathetic outflow

h) other

- transfusion reaction, Addisonian crisis, thyrotoxicosis, hypothyroid, aortocaval syndrome
- see [Hematology, H54](#) and [Endocrinology, E35, E22, E26](#)

**Causes of Intraoperative HTN**

- inadequate anesthesia causing pain and anxiety
- pre-existing HTN, coarctation or preeclampsia
- hypoxemia/hypercarbia
- hypervolemia
- drugs (e.g. ephedrine, epinephrine, cocaine, phenylephrine, ketamine)
- allergic/anaphylactic reaction
- hypermetabolic states: malignant hyperthermia, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, thyroid storm, pheochromocytoma (see [Endocrinology, E25, E36](#))



Fluid Balance and Resuscitation



- total requirement = maintenance + deficit + ongoing loss
- in surgical settings this formula must take into account multiple factors including pre-operative fasting/decreased fluid intake, increased losses during or before surgery, fluid shifting during surgery, fluids given with blood products and medications

What is the Maintenance?

- average healthy adult requires approximately 2500 mL water/d
 - 200 mL/d GI losses
 - 800 mL/d insensible losses (respiration, perspiration)
 - 1500 mL/d urine (beware of renal failure)
- 4:2:1 rule to calculate maintenance requirements (applies to crystalloids only)
 - 4 mL/kg/h first 10 kg
 - 2 mL/kg/h second 10 kg
 - 1 mL/kg/h for remaining weight >20 kg
- increased requirements with fever, sweating, GI losses (vomiting, diarrhea, NG suction), adrenal insufficiency, hyperventilation, and polyuric renal disease
- decreased requirements with anuria/oliguria, SIADH, highly humidified atmospheres, and CHF
- maintenance electrolytes
 - Na⁺: 3 mEq/kg/d
 - K⁺: 1 mEq/kg/d
- 50 kg patient maintenance requirements
 - fluid = 40 + 20 + 30 = 90 mL/h = 2160 mL/d = 2.16 L/d
 - Na⁺ = 150 mEq/d (therefore 150 mEq / 2.16 L/d ≈ 69 mEq/L)
 - K⁺ = 50 mEq/d (therefore 50 mEq / 2.16 L/d ≈ 23 mEq/L)
- above patient's requirements roughly met with 2/3 D5W, 1/3 NS
 - 2/3 + 1/3 at 100 mL/h with 20 mEq KCl per liter

What is the Deficit?

- patients should be adequately hydrated prior to anesthesia
- total body water (TBW) = 60% or 50% of total body weight for an adult male or female, respectively (e.g. for a 70 kg adult male TBW = 70 x 0.6 = 42 L)
- total Na⁺ content determines ECF volume; [Na⁺] determines ICF volume

- hypovolemia due to volume contraction
 - extra-renal Na^+ loss
 - ♦ GI: vomiting, NG suction, drainage, fistulae, diarrhea
 - ♦ skin/resp: insensible losses (fever), sweating, burns
 - ♦ vascular: hemorrhage
 - renal Na^+ and H_2O loss
 - ♦ diuretics
 - ♦ osmotic diuresis
 - ♦ hypoaldosteronism
 - ♦ salt-wasting nephropathies
 - renal H_2O loss
 - ♦ diabetes insipidus (central or nephrogenic)
 - hypovolemia with normal or expanded ECF volume
 - ♦ decreased CO
 - ♦ redistribution
 - hypoalbuminemia: cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome
 - capillary leakage: acute pancreatitis, rhabdomyolysis, ischemic bowel, sepsis, anaphylaxis
- replace water and electrolytes as determined by patient's needs
- with chronic hyponatremia, correction must be done gradually over >48 h to avoid central pontine myelinolysis

Table 5. Signs and Symptoms of Dehydration

Percentage of Body Water Loss	Severity	Signs and Symptoms
3%	Mild	Decreased skin turgor, sunken eyes, dry mucous membranes, dry tongue, reduced sweating
6%	Moderate	Oliguria, orthostatic hypotension, tachycardia, low volume pulse, cool extremities, reduced filling of peripheral veins and CVP, hemoconcentration, apathy
9%	Severe	Profound oliguria or anuria and compromised CNS function with or without altered sensorium

What are the Ongoing Losses?

- tubes
 - Foley catheter, NG, surgical drains
- third-spacing (other than ECF, ICF)
 - pleura, GI, retroperitoneal, peritoneal
 - evaporation via exposed viscera, burns
- blood loss
- ongoing loss due to surgical exposure and evaporative losses

IV Fluids

- replacement fluids include crystalloid and colloid solutions
- IV fluids improve perfusion but NOT O_2 carrying capacity of blood

Initial Distribution of IV Fluids

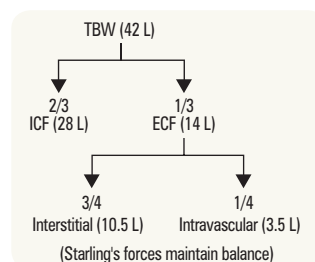
- H_2O follows ions/molecules to their respective compartments

Crystalloid Infusion

- salt-containing solutions that distribute within ECF
- maintain euolemia in patient with blood loss: 3 mL crystalloid infusion per 1 mL of blood loss for volume replacement (i.e. 3:1 replacement)
- if large volumes are to be given, use balanced fluids such as Ringer's lactate or Plasmalyte®, as too much normal saline (NS) may lead to hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis

Colloid Infusion

- includes protein colloids (albumin and gelatin solutions) and non-protein colloids (dextrans and starches e.g. hydroxyethyl starch [HES])
- distributes within intravascular volume
- 1:1 ratio (infusion: blood loss) only in terms of replacing intravascular volume
- HES colloids remain in intravascular space (metabolized by plasma serum amylase and renally excreted)
- the use of HES solutions is controversial because of recent RCTs and meta-analyses highlighting their renal and coagulopathic side effects, as well as a lack of specific indications for their use
 - colloids are being used based on mechanistic and experimental evidence but there is a paucity of definitive studies investigating their safety and efficacy; routine use of colloids should be avoided

**Figure 7. Total body water division in a 70 kg adult****Colloids vs. Crystalloids for Fluid Resuscitation in Critically Ill Patients**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;6:CD000567

Purpose: To evaluate the effects of colloids compared to crystalloids for fluid resuscitation, specifically when used in critically ill patients.

Methods: A meta-analysis was performed looking at randomized controlled trials comparing colloid vs. crystalloid use in patients requiring volume replacement. Pregnant women and neonates were excluded. Primary outcome was overall mortality.

Results: Results were broken down based on specific colloid. For albumin (or plasma protein fraction) the relative risk (RR) was 1.01 (95% CI 0.93-1.10) as compared to crystalloid. For hydroxyethyl starch the RR was 1.10 (95% CI 0.91-1.32). Modified gelatin had a RR of 0.91 (95% CI 0.49-1.72) and Dextran had a RR of 1.24 (95% CI 0.94-1.65). For colloids mixed in a hypertonic crystalloid as compared to isotonic crystalloid the RR was 0.88 (91% CI 0.71-1.06).

Conclusions: There is no evidence that use of colloids improves survival in trauma patients, burn patients, or post-operative patients when compared to crystalloid solutions. Given the increased cost of colloids as compared to crystalloids, it is recommended that crystalloids be the fluid of choice in these patients.

Table 6. IV Fluid Solutions

	ECF	Ringer's Lactate	0.9% NS	0.45% NS in D5W	D5W	2/3 D5W + 1/3 NS	Plasmalyte
mEq/L							
Na ⁺	142	130	154	77	-	51	140
K ⁺	4	4	-	-	-	-	5
Ca ²⁺	4	3	-	-	-	-	-
Mg ²⁺	3	-	-	-	-	-	3
Cl ⁻	103	109	154	77	-	51	98
HCO ₃ ⁻	27	28*	-	-	-	-	27
mOsm/L	280-310	273	308	154	252	269	294
pH	7.4	6.5	5.0	4.5	4.0	4.3	7.4

*Converted from lactate

Table 7. Colloid HES Solutions

	Concentration	Plasma Volume Expansion	Duration (h)	Maximum Daily Dose (mL/kg)
Hespan®	6%	1:1	4-6	33-50
Pentaspán®	10%	1:1.2-1.5	18-24	28

Blood Products

- see [Hematology, H52](#)

Red Blood Cells (RBCs)

- 1U RBCs (approx. 300 ml) increases Hb by 10 g/L in a 70 kg patient
- RBCs may be diluted with colloid/crystalloid to decrease viscosity
- decision to transfuse based on initial blood volume, premonitory Hb level, present volume status, expected further blood loss, patient health status, patient consent
- massive transfusion $\geq 1 \times$ blood volume/24 h

Autologous RBCs

- replacement of blood volume with one's own RBCs
- may decrease complications (infectious, febrile, etc.)
- alternative to homologous transfusion in elective procedures, but only if adequate Hb and no infection
- pre-operative phlebotomy prior to elective surgery (up to 3U collected 3-5 wk before surgery)
- intraoperative salvage and filtration (cell saver); contraindicated in contaminated (e.g. bowel, abscess) or cancer cases

Non-RBC Products

- fresh frozen plasma (FFP)
 - contains all plasma clotting factors and fibrinogen close to normal plasma levels
 - to prevent/treat bleeding due to coagulation factor depletion/deficiencies, liver impairment
- cryoprecipitate
 - contains Factors VIII and XIII, von Willebrand Factor (vWF), fibrinogen
- platelets
 - used in thrombocytopenia, massive transfusions, impaired platelet function
- albumin
 - selective intravascular volume expander
- erythropoietin
 - can be used pre-operatively to stimulate erythropoiesis

Complications Due to Transfusion

- infectious risks: HIV, hepatitis B/C, Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), cytomegalovirus (CMV), brucellosis, malaria, salmonellosis, measles, syphilis
- hypervolemia
- electrolyte changes: increased K⁺ in stored blood
- dilutional coagulopathy
- dilutional thrombocytopenia
- hypothermia
- citrate toxicity
- hypocalcemia
- iron overload
- transfusion-related immunosuppression: perioperative transfusion may be associated with increased risk of post-operative infection, increased short-term mortality and possible cancer recurrence
- see [Hematology, H54](#) for list of transfusion reactions



Calculating Acceptable Blood Losses (ABL)

- Blood volume
 - term infant 80 mL/kg
 - adult male 70 mL/kg
 - adult female 60 mL/kg
- Calculate estimated blood volume (EBV) (e.g. in a 70 kg male, approx. 70 mL/kg)

$$EBV = 70 \text{ kg} \times 70 \text{ mL/kg} = 4900 \text{ mL}$$
- Decide on a transfusion trigger, i.e. the Hb level at which you would begin transfusion, (e.g. 70 g/L for a person with Hb(i) = 150 g/L)

$$Hb(f) = 70 \text{ g/L}$$
- Calculate

$$ABL = \frac{Hct(Hi) - Hct(Hf)}{Hct(Hi)} \times EBV$$

$$= \frac{150 - 70}{150} \times 4900$$

$$= 2613 \text{ mL}$$
- Therefore in order to keep the Hb level above 70 g/L, RBCs would have to be given after approximately 2.6 L of blood has been lost



Transfusion Infection Risks

Virus	Risk per 1 unit pRBCs
HIV	1 in 8-12 million
Hepatitis C virus	1 in 5-7 million
Hepatitis B virus	1 in 1.1-1.7 million
HTLV	1 in 1-1.3 million
Syphilis	<1 in 100 million
West Nile virus	No cases since 2003

Transfusion and risk of infection in Canada: Update 2012. *Paediatr Child Health* 2012;17:e102-e111



A Multicenter, Randomized, Controlled Clinical Trial of Transfusion Requirements in Critical Care

NEJM 1999;340:409-417

Purpose: To determine whether a restrictive strategy of RBC transfusion and a liberal strategy produce equivalent results in critically ill patients.

Study: Randomized controlled trial with 60 d follow-up.

Patients: 838 critically ill patients with euvoolemia after initial treatment who had Hb concentrations of <90 g/L within 72 h after admission to the ICU. Mean age 57.5 yr, 62.5% male.

Intervention: Patients were randomly assigned to either a restrictive strategy of transfusion, in which RBCs were transfused if the Hb dropped <70 g/L and Hb concentrations were maintained between 70-90 g/L, or to a liberal strategy, in which transfusions were given when the Hb dropped <100 g/L and Hb concentrations were maintained between 100-120 g/L.

Main Outcomes: All cause mortality rates at 30 d and 60 d, mortality rates during the stay in ICU and hospitalization, survival times during the first 30 d, and rates of organ failure and dysfunction.

Results: Overall, 30 d mortality was similar in the two groups. However, the rates were significantly lower with the restrictive transfusion strategy among patients who were less acutely ill (8.7% vs. 16.1%) and who were less than 55 yr of age (5.7% vs. 13%), but not among patients with clinically significant cardiac disease. The mortality rate during hospitalization was significantly lower in the restrictive strategy group (22.2% vs. 28.1%).

Conclusions: With the possible exception of patients with acute MI and unstable angina, a restrictive strategy of RBC transfusion is as effective as, and possibly superior to, a liberal transfusion strategy in critically ill patients.

Types of Anesthesia

- **general**
 - general anesthesia (GA)
 - total IV anesthesia (TIVA)
- **regional**
 - spinal, epidural
 - peripheral nerve block
 - IV regional
- **local**
 - local infiltration
 - topical
- **sedation**
 - monitored anesthesia care
 - note that different types of anesthesia can be combined (general + regional)

General Anesthesia

- induction, maintenance and extubation



6 As of General Anesthesia
Anesthesia
Anxiolysis
Amnesia
Areflexia (muscle relaxation not always required)
Autonomic stability
Analgesia

Induction

Routine Induction vs. Rapid Sequence Induction

- routine induction is the standard in general anesthesia, however a RSI is indicated in patients at risk of regurgitation/aspiration (see *Aspiration, A5*)
- RSI uses pre-determined doses of induction drugs given at set times

Table 8. Comparison of Routine Induction vs. RSI

Steps	Routine Induction	RSI
1. Equipment Preparation	Check equipment, drugs, suction, and monitors; prepare an alternative laryngoscope blade and a second ETT tube one size smaller	
2. Pre-Oxygenation/Denitrogenation	100% O ₂ for 3 min or 4 vital capacity breaths	
3. Pre-Treatment Agents	Use agent of choice to blunt physiologic responses to airway manipulation 3 min prior to laryngoscopy	Use agent of choice to blunt physiologic responses to airway manipulation; if possible, give 3 min prior to laryngoscopy, but can skip this step in an emergent situation
4. Induction Agents	Use IV or inhalation induction agent of choice	Use pre-determined dose of fast acting induction agent of choice
5. Muscle Relaxants	Muscle relaxant of choice given after the onset of the induction agent	Pre-determined dose of fast acting muscle relaxant (e.g. SCH) given IMMEDIATELY after induction agent
6. Ventilation	Bag-mask ventilation	DO NOT bag ventilate – can increase risk of aspiration
7. Cricoid Pressure	Backwards upwards rightwards pressure (BURP) to assist visualization if indicated	Sellick maneuver, also known as cricoid pressure, to prevent regurgitation and assist in visualization (2 kg pressure with drowsiness, 3 kg with loss of consciousness)
8. Intubation	Intubate, inflate cuff, confirm ETT position	Intubate once paralyzed (~45 s after SCH given), inflate cuff, confirm ETT position; cricoid pressure maintained until ETT cuff inflated and placement confirmed
9. Secure Machines	Secure ETT, and begin manual/ machine ventilation	

Check equipment, drugs, suction, and monitors; prepare an alternative laryngoscope blade and a second ETT tube one size smaller

100% O₂ for 3 min or 4 vital capacity breaths

Secure ETT, and begin manual/ machine ventilation

Induction Agents

- induction in general anesthesia may be achieved with intravenous agents, volatile inhalation agents, or both

Intravenous Agents

- see Table 11, A27
- IV induction agents are non-opioid drugs used to provide amnesia and blunt reflexes
- these are initially used to draw the patient into the maintenance phase of general anesthesia rapidly, smoothly and with little adverse effects
 - examples include propofol, sodium thiopental (not available in North America), or ketamine
 - a continuous propofol infusion may also be used for the maintenance phase of GA



Solubility of Volatile Anesthetics in Blood Least Soluble to Most Soluble
Nitrous oxide < desflurane < sevoflurane < isoflurane < halothane

Volatile Inhalational Agents

- examples include sevoflurane, desflurane, isoflurane, enflurane, halothane, and nitrous oxide
- see Table 14, A28

MAC (Minimum Alveolar Concentration)

- the alveolar concentration of a volatile anesthetic at one atmosphere (atm) of pressure that will prevent movement in 50% of patients in response to a surgical stimulus (e.g. abdominal incision)
- 1.2-1.3 times MAC will often ablate response to stimuli in the general population
- potency of inhalational agents is compared using MAC
- MAC values are roughly additive when mixing N₂O with another volatile agent; however, this only applies to movement, not other effects such as BP changes (e.g. 0.5 MAC of a potent agent + 0.5 MAC of N₂O = 1 MAC of potent agent)
- MAC-intubation: the MAC of anesthetic that will inhibit movement and coughing during endotracheal intubation, generally 1.3 MAC
- MAC-block adrenergic response (MAC-BAR): the MAC necessary to blunt the sympathetic response to noxious stimuli, generally 1.5 MAC
- MAC-awake: the MAC of a given volatile anesthetic at which a patient will open their eyes to command, usually 0.3-0.4 of the usual MAC value



Determinants of Speed of Onset of Volatile Anesthetics

- **Solubility:** decrease solubility → increase rate of induction
- **Cardiac output (CO):** as CO increases, anesthetic uptake to blood increases and alveolar gas concentration decreases, thus delaying induction
- **Partial pressure difference between alveolar and venous blood:** increase gradient → decrease rate of induction
- **Inspired gas concentration:** increase inspired concentration → increase rate of induction
- **Alveolar ventilation:** increase alveolar ventilation → increase rate of induction
- **Second gas effect:** when 2 gases are administered together, uptake of the first gas (e.g. N₂O) increases the alveolar concentration of the second gas (e.g. desflurane), increasing rate of induction

Muscle Relaxants and Reversing Agents

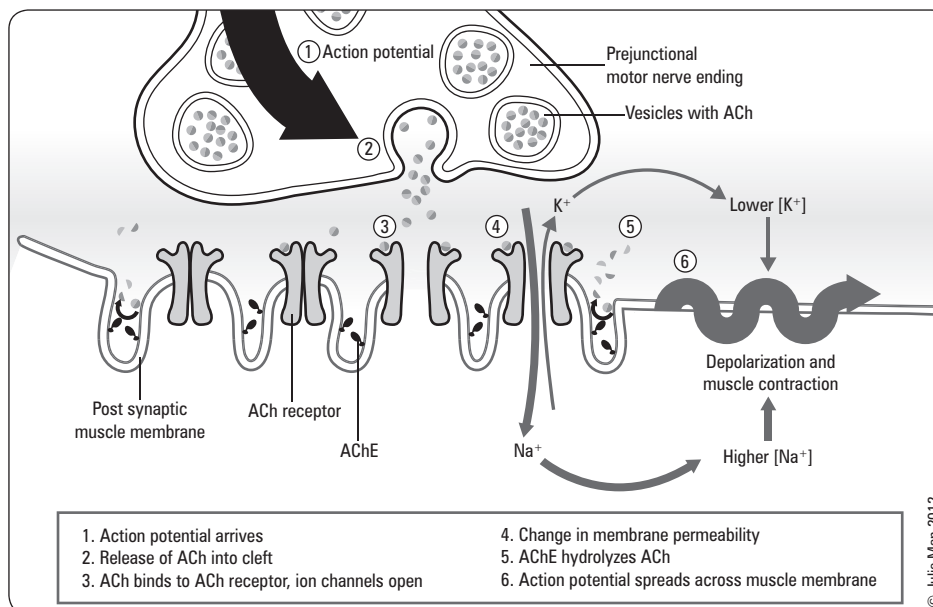


Figure 8. Review of anatomy and physiology of the neuromuscular junction (NMJ)

Muscle Relaxants

- two types of muscle relaxants
 1. depolarizing muscle relaxants: succinylcholine (SCh)
 2. non-depolarizing muscle relaxants: rocuronium, mivacurium, vecuronium, cisatracurium, pancuronium
- see Tables 15 and 16, A29 for more details including mechanism of action
- block nicotinic cholinergic receptors in NMJ
- provides skeletal muscle paralysis, including the diaphragm, but spares involuntary muscles such as the heart and smooth muscle
- never use muscle relaxants without adequate preparation and equipment to maintain airway and ventilation
- muscle relaxation produces the following desired effects
 1. facilitates intubation
 2. assists with mechanical ventilation
 3. prevents muscle stretch reflex and decreases muscle tone
 4. allows access to the surgical field (intracavitary surgery)
- nerve stimulator (i.e. train of four) is used intraoperatively to assess the degree of nerve block; no twitch response seen with complete neuromuscular blockade



Plasma Cholinesterase

Plasma cholinesterase is produced by the liver and metabolizes SCh, ester local anesthetics, and mivacurium. A prolonged duration of blockade by SCh occurs with:

- (a) decreased quantity of plasma cholinesterase, e.g. liver disease, pregnancy, malignancy, malnutrition, collagen vascular disease, hypothyroidism
- (b) abnormal quality of plasma cholinesterase, e.g. normal levels but impaired activity of enzymes, genetically inherited

Reversing Agents

- neostigmine, pyridostigmine, edrophonium (see Table 17, A30)
- reversal agents are acetylcholinesterase inhibitors
 - inhibits enzymatic degradation of ACh; increases amount of ACh at nicotinic and muscarinic receptors, displacing non-depolarizing muscle relaxant
 - administer reversal agents when there has been some recovery of blockade (i.e. muscle twitch)
 - can only reverse the effect of non-depolarizing muscle relaxants
- anticholinergic agents (e.g. atropine, glycopyrrolate) are simultaneously administered to minimize muscarinic effect of reversal agents (i.e. bradycardia, salivation and increased bowel peristalsis)

Analgesia

- options include opioids (e.g. morphine, fentanyl, hydromorphone), NSAIDs, acetaminophen, local, and regional anesthetic (see Table 12, A28)

Maintenance

- general anesthesia is maintained using volatile inhalation agents and/or IV agents (i.e. propofol infusion)
- analgesia (usually IV opioids) and muscle relaxants are also given as needed

Extubation

- criteria
 - patient must no longer have intubation requirements (see Table 2, A7)
 - patency: airway must be patent
 - protection: airway reflexes intact
 - patient must be oxygenating and ventilating spontaneously
- general guidelines
 - ensure patient has normal neuromuscular function (peripheral nerve stimulator monitoring) and hemodynamic status
 - ensure patient is breathing spontaneously with adequate rate and tidal volume
 - allow ventilation (spontaneous or controlled) with 100% O₂ for 3-5 min
 - suction secretions from pharynx
 - deflate cuff, remove ETT on inspiration (vocal cords abducted)
 - ensure patient is breathing adequately after extubation
 - ensure face mask for O₂ delivery available
 - proper positioning of patient during transfer to recovery room (supine, head elevated)

Complications of Extubation

- early extubation
 - aspiration
 - laryngospasm
- late extubation
 - transient vocal cord incompetence
 - edema (glottic, subglottic)
 - pharyngitis, tracheitis

Laryngospasm

- defined as forceful involuntary spasm of laryngeal muscles caused by stimulation of superior laryngeal nerve (by oropharyngeal secretions, blood, extubation)
- causes partial or total airway obstruction
- more likely to occur in semi-conscious patients
- prevention: extubate while patient is still deeply under anesthesia or fully awake
- treatment: bag-mask ventilation with 100% oxygen, low-dose propofol (0.5-1.0 mg/kg) optional, low-dose succinylcholine (0.25-1 mg/kg) and reintubation if hypoxia develops

Regional Anesthesia

- local anesthetic agent (LA) applied around a peripheral nerve at any point along the length of the nerve (from spinal cord up to, but not including, the nerve endings) for the purpose of reducing or preventing impulse transmission
- no CNS depression (unless overdose of local anesthetic); patient remains conscious
- regional anesthetic techniques categorized as follows:
 - epidural and spinal anesthesia (neuraxial anesthesia)
 - peripheral nerve blocks
 - IV regional anesthesia (e.g. Bier block)

Patient Preparation

- sedation may be indicated before block
- monitoring should be as extensive as for general anesthesia

Relative Indications for Regional Anesthesia

- patient preference
- superior postoperative analgesia
- decreased incidence of PONV
- shorter recovery and improved rehabilitation
- general anesthesia not available/contraindicated
- differential blockade (to block pain but preserve motor function)

Complications of Regional Anesthesia

- failure of technique/inadequate anesthesia
- unintentional total spinal anesthesia
- systemic drug toxicity due to overdose or intravascular injection (see *Local Anesthesia, A21*)
- injury to nerve root/spinal cord (nerve deficit), epidural vein (hematoma), peripheral nerve (intra-neural injection)
- infection (e.g. osteitis, epidural abscess, meningitis)

Epidural and Spinal Anesthesia

- most useful for surgeries performed below level of umbilicus

Anatomy of Spinal/Epidural Area

- spinal cord extends to L2, dural sac to S2 in adults
- nerve roots (cauda equina) from L2 to S2
- needle inserted below L2 should not encounter cord, thus L3-L4, L4-L5 interspace commonly used
- structures penetrated
 - skin
 - subcutaneous fat
 - supraspinous ligament
 - interspinous ligament
 - ligamentum flavum (last layer before epidural space)
 - dura + arachnoid for spinal anesthesia

Table 9. Epidural vs. Spinal Anesthesia

	Epidural	Spinal
Deposition Site	LA injected in epidural space (space between ligamentum flavum and dura) Initial blockade is at the spinal roots followed by some degree of spinal cord anesthesia as LA diffuses into the subarachnoid space through the dura	LA injected into subarachnoid space in the dural sac surrounding the spinal cord and nerve roots
Onset	Significant blockade requires 10-15 min Slower onset of side effects	Rapid blockade (onset in 2-5 min)
Effectiveness	Effectiveness of blockade can be variable	Very effective blockade
Difficulty	Technically more difficult; greater failure rate	Easier to perform due to visual confirmation of CSF flow
Patient Positioning	Position of patient not as important; specific gravity not an issue	Hyperbaric LA solution – position of patient important



Benefits of Regional Anesthesia

- Reduced perioperative pulmonary complications
- Reduced perioperative analgesia requirements
- Decreased PONV
- Reduced perioperative blood loss
- Ability to monitor CNS status during procedure
- Improved perfusion
- Lower incidence of VTE

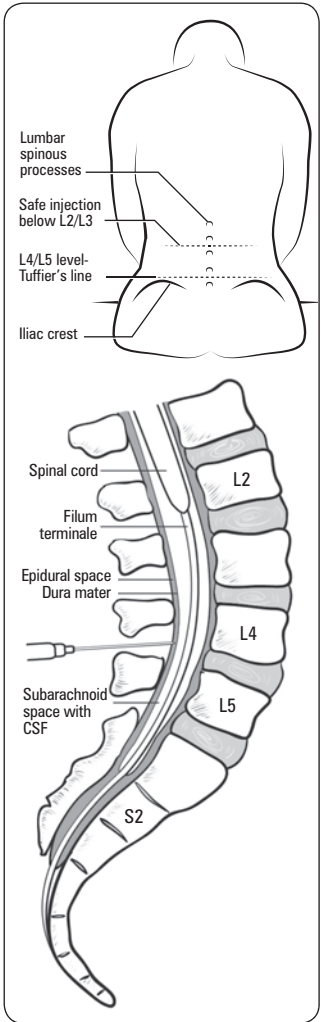


Figure 9. Landmarks for placement of epidural/spinal



Landmarking Epidural/Spinal Anesthesia

Spinous processes should be maximally flexed

L4 spinous processes found between iliac crests

Common sites of insertion are L3-L4 and L4-L5

Table 9. Epidural vs. Spinal Anesthesia (continued)

	Epidural	Spinal
Specific Gravity/Spread	Epidural injections spread throughout the potential space; specific gravity of solution does not affect spread	LA solution may be made hyperbaric (of greater specific gravity than the cerebrospinal fluid by mixing with 10% dextrose, thus increasing spread of LA to the dependent (low) areas of the subarachnoid space)
Dosage	Larger volume/dose of LA (usually > toxic IV dose)	Smaller dose of LA required (usually < toxic IV dose)
Continuous Infusion	Use of catheter allows for continuous infusion or repeat injections	None
Complications	Failure of technique Hypotension Bradycardia if cardiac sympathetics blocked (only if ~T2-4 block), e.g. "high spinal" Epidural or subarachnoid hematoma Accidental subarachnoid injection can produce spinal anesthesia (and any of the above complications) Systemic toxicity of LA (accidental intravenous) Catheter complications (shearing, kinking, vascular or subarachnoid placement) Infection Dural puncture	Failure of technique Hypotension Bradycardia if cardiac sympathetics blocked (only if ~T2-4 block), e.g. "high spinal" Epidural or subarachnoid hematoma Post-spinal headache (CSF leak) Transient paresthesias Spinal cord trauma, infection
Combined Spinal-Epidural	Combines the benefits of rapid, reliable, intense blockade of spinal anesthesia together with the flexibility of an epidural catheter	

Contraindications to Spinal/Epidural Anesthesia

- absolute contraindications
 - lack of trained personnel
 - lack of resuscitative drugs/equipment
 - patient refusal
 - allergy to local anesthetic
 - infection at puncture site or underlying tissues
 - coagulopathies/bleeding diathesis
 - raised ICP
 - sepsis/bacteremia
 - severe hypovolemia
 - cardiac lesion with fixed output states (e.g. severe mitral/aortic stenosis)
 - lack of IV access
- relative contraindications
 - pre-existing neurological disease (demyelinating lesions)
 - previous spinal surgery, severe spinal deformity
 - prolonged surgery
 - major blood loss or maneuvers that can compromise reaction

Peripheral Nerve Blocks

- deposition of LA around the target nerve or plexus
- ultrasound guidance and peripheral nerve stimulation (needle will stimulate target nerve/plexus) may be used to guide needle to target nerve while avoiding neural trauma or intraneural injection
- approximately 2-4 per 10,000 risk of late neurologic injury
- most major nerves or nerve plexi can be targeted (e.g. brachial plexus block, femoral nerve block, sciatic nerve block, etc.)
- performed with standard monitors
- resuscitation equipment must be available

Contraindications to Peripheral Nerve Blockade

- absolute contraindications
 - allergy to LA
 - patient refusal
- relative contraindications
 - certain types of pre-existing neurological dysfunction (e.g. ALS, MS, diabetic neuropathy)
 - local infection at block site
 - bleeding disorder

**Classic Presentation of Dural Puncture Headache**

- Onset 6 h-3 d after dural puncture
- Postural component (worse sitting)
- Occipital or frontal localization
- ± tinnitus, diplopia

**Reduction of Post-Operative Mortality and Morbidity with Epidural or Spinal Anaesthesia: Results from Overview of Randomized Trials**
BMJ 2000;321:1-12

Purpose: To obtain reliable estimates of the effects of neuraxial blockade with epidural or spinal anesthesia on post-operative morbidity and mortality after various surgeries with or without general anesthesia.

Study: Systematic review of all trials with randomization to intraoperative neuraxial blockade vs. control group.

Patients: 141 trials including 9,559 patients.

Main Outcomes: All cause mortality, MI, PE, DVT, transfusion requirements, pneumonia, other infections, respiratory depression, and renal failure.

Results: With neuraxial blockade, overall mortality was reduced by about one third. Neuraxial blockade reduced the risk of PE by 55%, DVT by 44%, transfusion requirements by 50%, pneumonia by 39%, and respiratory depression by 59%. There were also reductions in MI and renal failure. These mortality reductions are irrespective of surgical group, type of blockade (epidural or spinal), or whether neuraxial blocker was combined with general anesthetic.

Conclusions: Neuraxial blockade reduces post-operative mortality, and other serious complications.

Local Anesthesia

Local Anesthetic Agents

- see Table 18, A30 for list of LA agents

Definition and Mode of Action

- LA are drugs that block the generation and propagation of impulses in excitable tissues: nerves, skeletal muscle, cardiac muscle, brain
- LA bind to receptors on the cytosolic side of the Na⁺ channel, inhibiting Na⁺ flux and thus blocking impulse conduction
- different types of nerve fibers undergo blockade at different rates

Absorption, Distribution, Metabolism

- LA readily crosses the blood-brain barrier (BBB) once absorbed into the bloodstream
- ester-type LA (procaine, tetracaine) are broken down by plasma and hepatic esterases; metabolites excreted via kidneys
- amide-type LA (lidocaine, bupivacaine) are broken down by hepatic mixed-function oxidases (P450 system); metabolites excreted via kidneys

Selection of LA

- choice of LA depends on
 - onset of action: influenced by pKa (the lower the pKa, the higher the concentration of the base form of the LA, and the faster the onset of action)
 - duration of desired effects: influenced by protein binding (longer duration of action when protein binding of LA is strong)
 - potency: influenced by lipid solubility (agents with high lipid solubility penetrate the nerve membrane more easily)
 - unique needs (e.g. sensory blockade with relative preservation of motor function by bupivacaine at low doses)
 - potential for toxicity

Systemic Toxicity

- see Table 18, A30 for maximum doses, potency, and duration of action for common LA agents
- occurs by accidental intravascular injection, LA overdose, or unexpectedly rapid absorption
- CNS effects
 - CNS effects first appear to be excitatory due to initial block of inhibitory fibers, then subsequent block of excitatory fibers
 - effects in order of appearance
 - ♦ numbness of tongue, perioral tingling, metallic taste
 - ♦ disorientation, drowsiness
 - ♦ tinnitus
 - ♦ visual disturbances
 - ♦ muscle twitching, tremors
 - ♦ unconsciousness
 - ♦ convulsions, seizures
 - ♦ generalized CNS depression, coma, respiratory arrest
- CVS effects
 - vasodilation, hypotension
 - decreased myocardial contractility
 - dose-dependent delay in cardiac impulse transmission
 - ♦ prolonged PR, QRS intervals
 - ♦ sinus bradycardia
 - CVS collapse
- treatment of systemic toxicity
 - early recognition of signs, get help
 - 100% O₂, manage ABCs
 - diazepam or sodium thiopental may be used to increase seizure threshold
 - manage arrhythmias (see *ACLS Guidelines*, A32)
 - Intralipid® 20% to bind local anesthetic in circulation

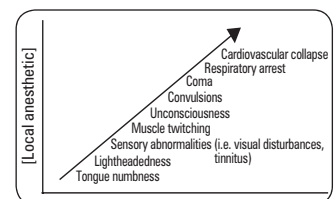


Figure 10. Local anesthetic systemic toxicity

Local Infiltration and Hematoma Blocks

Local Infiltration

- injection of tissue with LA, producing a lack of sensation in the infiltrated area due to LA acting on nerves
- suitable for small incisions, suturing, excising small lesions
- can use fairly large volumes of dilute LA to infiltrate a large area
- low concentrations of epinephrine (1:100,000-1:200,000) cause vasoconstriction, thus reducing bleeding and prolonging the effects of LA by reducing systemic absorption

Fracture Hematoma Block

- special type of local infiltration for pain control during manipulation of certain fractures
- hematoma created by fracture is infiltrated with LA to anesthetize surrounding tissues
- sensory blockade may only be partial
- no muscle relaxation



Where Not to Use LA with Epinephrine
"Ears, Fingers, Toes, Penis, Nose"

Topical Anesthetics

- various preparations of local anesthetics available for topical use, may be a mixture of agents (EMLA cream is a combination of 2.5% lidocaine and prilocaine)
- must be able to penetrate the skin or mucous membrane

Post-Operative Care

- pain management should be continuous from OR to post-anesthetic care unit (PACU) to hospital ward and home

Common Post-Operative Anesthetic Complications

Nausea and Vomiting

- hypotension and bradycardia must be ruled out
- pain and surgical manipulation also cause nausea
- often treated with dimenhydrinate (Gravol®), metoclopramide (Maxeran®; not with bowel obstruction), prochlorperazine (Stemetil®), ondansetron (Zofran®), granisetron (Kytril®)

Confusion and Agitation

- ABCs first – confusion or agitation can be caused by airway obstruction, hypercapnea, hypoxemia
- neurologic status (Glasgow Coma Scale, pupils), residual paralysis from anesthetic
- pain, distended bowel/bladder
- fear/anxiety/separation from caregivers, language barriers
- metabolic disturbance (hypoglycemia, hypercalcemia, hyponatremia – especially post-TURP)
- intracranial cause (stroke, raised intracranial pressure)
- drug effect (ketamine, anticholinergics)
- elderly patients are more susceptible to post-operative delirium

Respiratory Complications

- susceptible to aspiration of gastric contents due to PONV and unreliable airway reflexes
- airway obstruction (secondary to reduced muscle tone from residual anesthetic, soft tissue trauma and edema, or pooled secretions) may lead to inadequate ventilation, hypoxemia, and hypercapnia
- airway obstruction can often be relieved with head tilt, jaw elevation, and anterior displacement of the mandible. If the obstruction is not reversible, a nasal or oral airway may be used

Hypotension

- must be identified and treated quickly to prevent inadequate perfusion and ischemic damage
- reduced cardiac output (hypovolemia, most common cause) and/or peripheral vasodilation (residual anesthetic agent)
- first step in treatment is usually the administration of fluids ± inotropic agents

Hypertension

- pain, hypercapnia, hypoxemia, increased intravascular fluid volume, and sympathomimetic drugs can cause HTN
- sodium nitroprusside or beta-blocking drugs (e.g. esmolol and metoprolol) can be used to treat HTN



Risk Factors for Post-Operative Nausea and Vomiting (PONV)

- Young age
- Female
- History of PONV
- Non-smoker
- Type of surgery: ophtho, ENT, abdo/pelvic, plastics
- Type of anesthetic: N₂O, opioids, volatile agents



Drugs for Preventing Post-Operative Nausea and Vomiting

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2006;3:CD004125

Purpose: To evaluate the efficacy of antiemetics in preventing PONV.

Methods: A meta-analysis was performed looking at randomized controlled trials comparing an antiemetic to either a second antiemetic or placebo. Trials looking at dosing and/or timing of medication administration were also included. PONV was used as the primary outcome.

Results: 737 studies involving 103,237 patients. Eight drugs significantly reduced the occurrence of PONV, namely: droperidol, metoclopramide, ondansetron, tropisetron, dolasetron, dexamethasone, cyclizine, and granisetron. Relative risk (RR) vs. placebo varied between 0.60-0.80. Side effects included a significant increase in drowsiness for droperidol (RR 1.32) and headache for ondansetron (RR 1.16). The cumulative number needed to treat was 3.57.

Conclusion: Antiemetic medication is effective for reducing the occurrence of PONV. However, further investigation needs to be done to determine whether antiemetics can cause more severe (and likely rare) side effects, which could alter how liberally they are used.

Pain Management

Definitions

- pain: perception of nociception, which occurs in the brain
- nociception: detection, transduction, and transmission of noxious stimuli

Pain Classifications

- temporal: acute vs. chronic
- mechanism: nociceptive vs. neuropathic

Acute Pain

- pain of short duration (<6 wk) usually associated with surgery, trauma, or acute illness; often associated with inflammation
- usually limited to the area of damage/trauma and resolves with healing

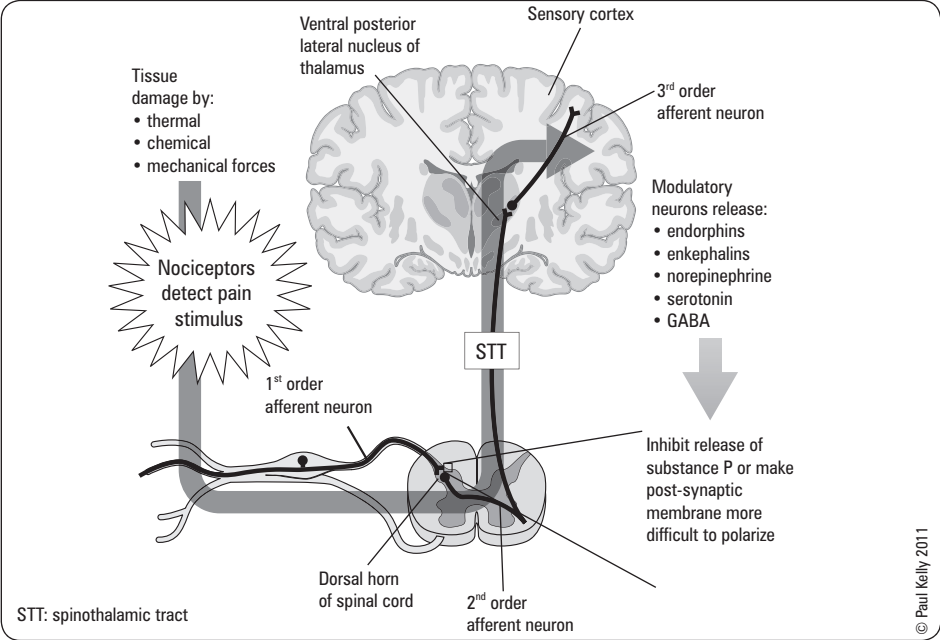


Figure 11. Acute pain mechanism

Pharmacological Management of Acute Pain

- ask the patient to rate the pain out of 10, or use visual analog scale, to determine severity
- pharmacological treatment guided by WHO analgesia ladder
- patient controlled analgesia (PCA)
 - involves the use of computerized pumps that can deliver a constant infusion as well as bolus breakthrough doses of parenterally-administered opioid analgesics
 - limited by lockout intervals
 - most commonly used agents: morphine and hydromorphone
 - see Table 13, A28 for suggested infusion rate, PCA dose and lockout intervals

Table 10. Commonly Used Analgesics

	Acetaminophen	NSAIDs	Opioids
Examples	• Tylenol®	• Aspirin®, ibuprofen, naproxen • ketorolac (IV)	• Oral: codeine, oxycodone, morphine, hydromorphone • Parenteral: morphine, hydromorphone, fentanyl
Indications	• First-line for mild acute pain	• Mild-moderate pain	• Oral: moderate acute pain • Parenteral: moderate-severe acute pain
Mechanism of Action	• Unclear, hypothesized cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibition • Unclear, hypothesized modulation of endogenous cannabinoid system	• Non-selective COX-1 and 2 inhibition reducing proinflammatory prostaglandin synthesis	• Dampens nociceptive transmission between 1st and 2nd order neurons in the dorsal horn • Activates ascending modulatory pathways resulting in release of inhibitory neurotransmitters • Inhibits peripheral inflammatory response and hyperalgesia • Affects mood and anxiety – alleviates the affective component of perceived pain



Opioid Conversion

	Parenteral (IV)	Equivalent Oral Dose
Morphine	10 mg	30 mg
Hydromorphone	2 mg	4 mg
Codeine	120 mg	200 mg
Oxycodone	N/A	20 mg
Fentanyl IV	100 mcg	N/A

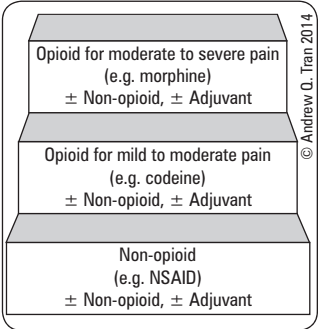


Figure 12. WHO analgesia ladder



Cautionary Use of NSAIDs in Patients with:

- Asthma
- Coagulopathy
- GI ulcers
- Renal insufficiency
- Pregnancy, 3rd trimester



Common Side Effects of Opioids

- N/V
- Constipation
- Sedation
- Pruritus
- Abdominal pain
- Urinary retention
- Respiratory depression

When prescribing opioids, consider:

- Breakthrough dose
- Anti-emetics
- Laxative



PCA Parameters

- Loading dose
- Bolus dose
- Lockout interval
- Continuous infusion (optional)
- Maximum 4 h dose (limit)



Advantages of PCA

- Improved patient satisfaction
- Fewer side effects
- Accommodates patient variability
- Accommodates changes in opioid requirements

Table 10. Commonly Used Analgesics (continued)

	Acetaminophen	NSAIDs	Opioids
Dosing/Administration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Limited by analgesic ceiling beyond which there is no additional analgesia Opioid-sparing Max dose of 4 g/24 h 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Limited by analgesic ceiling beyond which there is no additional analgesia Opioid-sparing Significant inter-individual variation in efficacy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No analgesic ceiling (except for codeine) Can be administered intrathecally (spinal block) or by continuous infusion
Side Effects/Toxicity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Considered relatively safe Liver toxicity in elevated doses 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gastric ulceration/bleeding Decreased renal perfusion Photosensitivity Premature closure of the ductus arteriosus in pregnancy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Respiratory depression Constipation and abdominal pain Sedation N/V Pruritus Confusion (particularly in the elderly) Dependence

Opioid Antagonists (naloxone, naltrexone)

- indication: opioid overdose (manifests primarily at CNS, e.g. respiratory depression)
- mechanism of action: competitively inhibit opioid receptors, predominantly μ receptors
 - naloxone is short-acting ($t_{1/2} = 1$ h); effects of narcotic may return when naloxone wears off; therefore, the patient must be observed closely following its administration
 - naltrexone is longer-acting ($t_{1/2} = 10$ h); less likely to see return of opioid effects
- side effects: relative overdose of naloxone may cause nausea, agitation, sweating, tachycardia, HTN, re-emergence of pain, pulmonary edema, seizures (essentially opioid withdrawal)

Neuropathic Pain

- pain caused by peripheral or central nervous system injury, often described as burning, lancinating, shooting, or tingling
- results in allodynia (pain in response to normally painless stimuli) or hyperalgesia (increased sensitivity to painful stimuli)
- consider adding anticonvulsants (gabapentin, pregabalin) or low-dose tricyclic antidepressant as opioids are ineffective

Chronic Pain

- chronic pain: greater than 3 mo, or recurrent pain that occurs at least 3 times throughout three month period
- pain of duration or intensity that persists beyond normal tissue healing and adversely affects functioning
- may have nociceptive and neuropathic components; dysregulation of analgesic pathways implicated
- in the perioperative period, consider continuing regular long-acting analgesics and augmenting with regional techniques, adjuvants, additional opioid analgesia, and non-pharmacological techniques

Obstetrical Anesthesia

Physiologic Changes in Pregnancy

- Airway
 - possible difficult airway as tissues become edematous and friable especially in labor
- Respiratory
 - decreased FRC and increased O_2 consumption \rightarrow desaturation occurs more quickly during apnea
- Cardiovascular system
 - increased blood volume $>$ increased RBC mass \rightarrow mild anemia
 - decreased SVR proportionately greater than increased CO \rightarrow decreased BP
 - prone to decreased BP due to aortocaval compression – therefore for surgery, a pregnant patient is positioned in left uterine displacement using a wedge under her right flank
- Central nervous system
 - decreased MAC due to hormonal effects
 - increased block height due to engorged epidural veins
- Gastrointestinal system
 - delayed gastric emptying
 - increased volume and acidity of gastric fluid
 - decreased LES tone
 - increased abdominal pressure
 - combined, these lead to an increased risk of aspiration – therefore for surgery, a pregnant patient is given sodium citrate 30 cc PO immediately before surgery to neutralize gastric acidity



Patient Controlled Opioid Analgesia vs. Conventional Opioid Analgesia for Post-Operative Pain

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2006;4:CD003348

Purpose: To evaluate the efficacy of patient controlled analgesia (PCA) as compared to conventional 'as-needed' analgesia administration providing pain relief in post-operative patients.

Methods: Meta-analyses of randomized controlled trials comparing PCA vs. conventional administration of opioid analgesia. Assessment employed a visual analog scale (VAS) for pain intensity along with overall analgesic consumption, patient satisfaction, length of stay, and adverse side effects.

Results: 55 studies with a total of 2,023 patients receiving PCA and 1,838 patients with standard as-needed opioid administration. PCA provided significantly better pain control through 72 h post-operatively, but patients consumed significantly more opioids (>7 mg morphine/24 h, $p < 0.05$). Significantly more patients reported pruritus in the PCA group compared to control with a number needed to harm of 13. No significant difference in overall length of stay in hospital, sedation level, N/V, or urinary retention.

Conclusions: PCA is more effective than standard as-needed administration for reducing post-operative pain. However, patients using PCA consume more opioids overall, and have more pruritus.



The Effect of Epidural Analgesia on Labor, Maternal, and Neonatal Outcomes: A Systematic Review

Am J Obstet Gynecol 2002;186:S69-77

Study: Meta-analysis of 14 studies with 4,324 women.

Selection Criteria: RCTs and prospective cohort studies between 1980-2001 comparing epidural analgesia to parenteral opioid administration during labor.

Types of Participants: Healthy women with uneventful pregnancies.

Intervention: Participants were randomized to either epidural analgesia or parenteral opioid administration during labor.

Outcomes and Results: Maternal – there were no differences between the 2 groups in first-stage labor length, incidence of Cesarean delivery, incidence of instrumented vaginal delivery for dystocia, nausea, or mid-to-low back pain post-partum. However, second-stage labor length was longer (mean = 15 min) and there were greater reports of fever and hypotension in the epidural group. Also, lower pain scores and greater satisfaction with analgesia were reported among the epidural group. There was no difference in lactation success at 6 wk and urinary incontinence was more frequent in the epidural group immediately post-partum, but not at 3 mo or 1 yr (evidence from PC studies only). Neonatal – there were no differences between the 2 groups for incidence of fetal heart rate abnormalities, intrapartum meconium, poor 5-min Apgar score, or low umbilical artery pH. However, the incidence of poor 1-min Apgar scores and need for neonatal naloxone were higher in the parenteral opioid group.

Conclusions: Epidural analgesia is a safe intrapartum method for labor pain relief and women should not avoid epidural analgesia for fear of neonatal harm, Cesarean delivery, breastfeeding difficulties, long-term back pain, or long-term urinary incontinence.

Options for Analgesia during Labor

- Psychoprophylaxis – Lamaze method
 - patterns of breathing and focused attention on fixed object
- Systemic medication
 - easy to administer, but risk of maternal or neonatal depression
 - opioids most commonly used if delivery is not expected within 4 h
- Inhalational analgesia
 - easy to administer, makes uterine contractions more tolerable, but does not relieve pain completely
 - 50% nitrous oxide
- Neuraxial anesthesia
 - provides excellent analgesia with minimal depressant effects
 - hypotension is the most common complication
 - maternal BP monitored q2-5 min for 15-20 min after initiation and regularly thereafter
 - epidural usually given as it preferentially blocks sensation, leaving motor function intact

Options for Caesarean Section

- neuraxial: spinal or epidural
- general: used if contraindications or time precludes regional blockade



Nociceptive Pathways in Labor and Delivery

Labor

- Cervical dilation and effacement stimulates visceral nerve fibers entering the spinal cord at T10-L1

Delivery

- Distention of lower vagina and perineum causes somatic nociceptive impulses via the pudendal nerve entering the spinal cord at S2-S4

Pediatric Anesthesia

Respiratory System

- in comparison to adults, anatomical differences in infants include:
 - large head, short trachea/neck, large tongue, adenoids, and tonsils
 - narrow nasal passages (obligate nasal breathers until 5 mo)
 - narrowest part of airway at the level of the cricoid vs. glottis in adults
 - epiglottis is longer, U shaped and angled at 45 degrees; carina is wider and is at the level of T2 (T4 in adults)
- physiologic differences include
 - faster RR, immature respiratory centers which are depressed by hypoxia/hypercapnea (airway closure occurs in the neonate at the end of expiration)
 - less oxygen reserve during apnea – decreased total lung volume, vital and functional reserve capacity together with higher metabolic needs
 - greater V/Q mismatch – lower lung compliance due to immature alveoli (mature at 8 yr)
 - greater work of breathing – greater chest wall compliance, weaker intercostals/diaphragm, and higher resistance to airflow

Cardiovascular System

- blood volume at birth is approximately 80 mL/kg; transfusion should be started if >10% of blood volume lost
- children have a high HR and low BP
- CO is dependent on HR, not stroke volume because of low heart wall compliance; therefore, bradycardia → severe compromise in CO

Temperature Regulation

- vulnerable to hypothermia
- minimize heat loss by use of warming blankets, covering the infant's head, humidification of inspired gases, and warming of infused solutions

Central Nervous System

- MAC of halothane is increased compared to the adult (0.75% adult, 1.2% infant, 0.87% neonate)
- NMJ is immature for the first 4 wk of life and thus there is an increased sensitivity to non-depolarizing relaxants
- parasympathetics mature at birth, sympathetics mature at 4-6 mo → autonomic imbalance
- infant brain is 12% of body weight and receives 34% of CO (adult: 2% body weight and 14% CO)

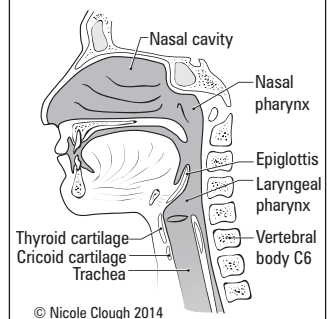
Glucose Maintenance

- infants less than 1 yr old can become seriously hypoglycemic during pre-operative fasting and post-operatively if feeding is not recommenced as soon as possible
- after 1 yr, children are able to maintain normal glucose homeostasis in excess of 8 h

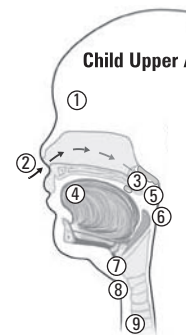
Pharmacology

- higher dose requirements because of higher TBW (75% vs. 60% in adults) and greater volume of distribution
- barbiturates/opioids more potent due to greater permeability of BBB
- muscle relaxants

Adult Upper Airway



Child Upper Airway



1. Large head
2. Newborns are obligate nasal breathers
3. Adenoid and tonsils
4. Larger tongue in proportion to mouth
5. Smaller pharynx
6. Larger and more flaccid epiglottis
7. Larynx is more superior and anterior
8. Narrowest point at cricoid cartilage
9. Trachea is more narrow and less rigid

Figure 13. Comparison of pediatric vs. adult airway



To increase alveolar minute ventilation in neonates, increase respiratory rate, not tidal volume.

Neonate: 30-40 breaths/min

Age 1-13: (24 – [age/2]) breaths/min

- non-depolarizing
 - ♦ immature NMJ, variable response
- depolarizing
 - ♦ must pre-treat with atropine or may experience profound bradycardia and/or sinus node arrest due to PNS > SNS (also dries oral secretions)
 - ♦ more susceptible to arrhythmias, hyperkalemia, rhabdomyolysis, myoglobinemia, masseter spasm and malignant hyperthermia

**ETT Sizing in Pediatrics**

Diameter (mm) of tracheal tube in children after 1 year = (age/4) + 4
 Length (cm) of tracheal tube = (age/2) + 12

Uncommon Complications

Malignant Hyperthermia

- hypermetabolic disorder of skeletal muscle due to an uncontrolled increase in intracellular Ca^{2+}
- pathogenesis: Genetic anomaly (autosomal dominant) of ryanodine receptor which regulates the Ca^{2+} channel in the sarcoplasmic reticulum of skeletal muscle
- incidence of 1-5 per 100,000; may be associated with skeletal muscle abnormalities such as dystrophy or myopathy
- anesthetic drugs triggering MH include:
 - all inhalational agents except nitrous oxide
 - depolarizing muscle relaxant – SCh

Clinical Picture

- onset: immediate or hours after contact with trigger agent
 - increased oxygen consumption
 - increased ET_{CO_2} on capnograph
 - tachycardia/dysrhythmia
 - tachypnea/cyanosis
 - diaphoresis
 - HTN
 - increased temperature (late sign)
- muscular symptoms
 - trismus (masseter spasm) common but not specific for MH (occurs in 1% of children given SCh with halothane anesthesia)
 - tender, swollen muscles due to rhabdomyolysis
 - trunk or total body rigidity

Complications

- coma
- DIC
- rhabdomyolysis
- myoglobinuric renal failure/hepatic dysfunction
- electrolyte abnormalities (e.g. hyperkalemia) and secondary arrhythmias
- ARDS
- pulmonary edema
- can be fatal if untreated

Prevention

- suspect MH in patients with a family history of problems/death with anesthetic
- avoid all trigger medications, use vapour free equipment, use regional anesthesia if possible
- central body temp and ET_{CO_2} monitoring

Malignant Hyperthermia Management (Based on Malignant Hyperthermia Association of the U.S. [MHAUS] Guidelines, 2008)

1. notify surgeon, discontinue volatile agents and succinylcholine, hyperventilate with 100% oxygen at flows of 10 L/min or more, halt the procedure as soon as possible
2. dantrolene 2.5 mg/kg IV, through large-bore IV if possible
 - repeat until there is control of signs of MH; sometimes up to 30 mg/kg is necessary
3. bicarbonate 1-2 mEq/kg if blood gas values are not available for metabolic acidosis
4. cool patients with core temperature $>39^\circ\text{C}$
 - lavage open body cavities, stomach, bladder, rectum; apply ice to surface; infuse cold saline IV
 - stop cooling if temperature is $<38^\circ\text{C}$ to prevent drift to $<36^\circ\text{C}$
5. dysrhythmias usually respond to treatment of acidosis and hyperkalemia
 - use standard drug therapy except Ca^{2+} channel blockers as they may cause hyperkalemia and cardiac arrest in presence of dantrolene

**Signs of Malignant Hyperthermia**

- Unexplained rise in ET_{CO_2}
- Increase in minute ventilation
- Tachycardia
- Rigidity
- Hyperthermia (late sign)

**Basic Principles of MH Management****"Some Hot Dude Better Get Iced Fluids Fast"**

Stop all triggering agents, give 100% O_2
 Hyperventilate
 Dantrolene 2.5 mg/kg every 5 min
 Bicarbonate
 Glucose and insulin
 IV fluids; cool patient to 38°C
 Fluid output; consider furosemide
 Tachycardia: be prepared to treat VT

6. hyperkalemia
 - treat with hyperventilation, bicarbonate, glucose/insulin, calcium
 - bicarbonate 1-2 mEq/kg IV, calcium chloride 10 mg/kg or calcium gluconate 10-50 mg/kg for life-threatening hyperkalemia and check glucose levels hourly
7. follow ET_{CO_2} , electrolytes, blood gases, creatine kinase (CK), core temperature, urine output/color with Foley catheter, coagulation studies
 - if CK and/or potassium rises persistently or urine output falls to <0.5 mL/kg/h, induce diuresis to >1 mL/kg/h urine to avoid myoglobinuric renal failure
8. maintain anesthesia with benzodiazepines, opioids, and propofol
9. transfer to ICU bed

Abnormal Pseudocholinesterase

- pseudocholinesterase hydrolyzes SCh and mivacurium
- individuals with abnormal pseudocholinesterase will have prolonged muscular blockade
- SCh and mivacurium are contraindicated in those with abnormal pseudocholinesterase
- if SCh or mivacurium are given accidentally, treat with mechanical ventilation until function returns to normal (do not use cholinesterase inhibitors)

Common Medications

Table 11. Intravenous Induction Agents

	Propofol (Diprivan®)	Thiopental (sodium thiopental, sodium thiopentone)	Ketamine (Ketalar®, Ketaject®)	Benzodiazepines (midazolam [Versed®], diazepam [Valium®], lorazepam [Ativan®])
Class	• Alkylphenol – hypnotic	• Ultra-short acting thiobarbiturate – hypnotic	• Phencyclidine (PCP) derivative – dissociative	• Benzodiazepines – anxiolytic
Action	• Inhibitory at GABA synapse • Decreased cerebral metabolic rate and blood flow, decreased ICP, decreased SVR, decreased BP, and decreased SV	• Decreased time Cl^- channels open, facilitating GABA and suppressing glutamic acid • Decreased cerebral metabolism and blood flow, decreased CPP, decreased CO , decreased BP, decreased reflex tachycardia, decreased respiration	• May act on NMDA, opiate, and other receptors • Increased HR, increased BP, increased SVR, increased coronary flow, increased myocardial O_2 uptake • CNS and respiratory depression, bronchial smooth muscle relaxation	• Causes increased glycine inhibitory neurotransmitter, facilitates GABA • Produces antianxiety and skeletal muscle relaxant effects • Minimal cardiac depression
Indications	• Induction • Maintenance • Total intravenous anesthesia (TIVA)	• Induction • Control of convulsive states	• Major trauma, hypovolemia, severe asthma because sympathomimetic	• Used for sedation, amnesia, and anxiolysis
Caution	• Allergy (egg, soy) • Patients who cannot tolerate sudden decreased BP (e.g. fixed cardiac output or shock)	• Allergy to barbiturates • Uncontrolled hypotension, shock, cardiac failure • Porphyria, liver disease, status asthmaticus, myxedema	• Ketamine allergy • TCA medication (interaction causes HTN and dysrhythmias) • History of psychosis • Patients who cannot tolerate HTN (e.g. CHF, increased ICP, aneurysm)	• Marked respiratory depression
Dosing	• IV induction: 2.5-3.0 mg/kg (less with opioids) • Unconscious <1 min • Lasts 4-6 min • $t_{1/2}$ = 55 min • Decreased post-operative sedation, recovery time, N/V	• IV induction: 3-5 mg/kg • Unconscious about 30 s • Lasts 5 min • Accumulation with repeat dosing – not for maintenance • $t_{1/2}$ = 5-10 h • Post-operative sedation lasts hours	• IV induction 1-2 mg/kg • Dissociation in 15 s, analgesia, amnesia, and unconsciousness in 45-60 s • Unconscious for 10-15 min, analgesia for 40 min, amnesia for 1-2 h • $t_{1/2}$ = ~3 h	• Onset less than 5 min if given IV • Duration of action long but variable/somewhat unpredictable
Additional Notes	• 0-30% decreased BP due to vasodilation • Reduce burning at IV site by mixing with lidocaine	• Combining with rocuronium causes precipitates to form	• High incidence of emergence reactions (vivid dreaming, out-of-body sensation, illusions) • Pretreat with glycopyrrolate to decrease salivation	• Antagonist: flumazenil (Romazicon®) competitive inhibitor, 0.2 mg IV over 15 s, repeat with 0.1 mg/min (max of 2 mg), $t_{1/2}$ of 60 min • Midazolam also has amnesic (antegrade) effect and decreased risk of thrombophlebitis

Table 12. Opioids

Agent	Relative Dose to 10 mg Morphine IV	Moderate Dose	Onset	Duration	Special Considerations
Codeine	200 mg PO	15-30 mg PO	Late (30-60 min)	Moderate (4-6 h)	Primarily post-operative use, not for IV use
Meperidine (Demerol®)	75 mg IV	2-3 mg/kg IV	Moderate (10 min)	Moderate (2-4 h)	Anticholinergic, hallucinations, less pupillary constriction than morphine, metabolite build up may cause seizures
Morphine	10 mg IV 20 mg PO	0.2-0.3 mg/kg IV 0.4-0.6 mg/kg PO	Moderate (5-10 min)	Moderate (4-5 h)	Histamine release leading to decrease in BP
Oxycodone Controlled Release	15 mg PO	10-20 mg PO (no IV)	Late (30-45 min)	Long (8-12 h)	Do not split, crush, or chew tablet
Oxycodone Regular Tablet	15 mg PO (no IV)	5-15 mg PO	Moderate (15 min)	Moderate (3-6 h)	Percocet® = oxycodone 5 mg + acetaminophen 325 mg
Hydromorphone (Dilaudid®)	2 mg IV 10 mg PO	40-60 µg/kg IV 2-4 mg PO	Moderate (15 min)	Moderate (4-5 h)	
Fentanyl	100 µg IV	2-3 µg/kg IV	Rapid (<5 min)	Short (0.5-1 h)	Transient muscle rigidity in very high doses
Remifentanyl	100 µg IV	0.5-1.5 µg/kg IV	Rapid (1-3 min)	Ultra short (<10 min)	Only use during induction and maintenance of anesthesia

In general, parenteral route is 2-3x more potent than oral

Table 13. Opioid PCA Doses

Agent	PCA Dose	PCA Lockout Interval	PCA 4 h Maximum
Morphine	1 mg	5 min	30 mg
Fentanyl	25-50 µg	5 min	400 µg
Hydromorphone	0.2 mg	5 min	6 mg

Table 14. Volatile Inhalational Agents

	Sevoflurane	Desflurane	Isoflurane	Enflurane	Halothane	Nitrous oxide (N ₂ O)*
MAC (% gas in O ₂)	2.0	6.0	1.2	1.7	0.8	104
CNS	Increased ICP	Increased ICP	Decreased cerebral metabolic rate Increased ICP	ECG seizure-like activity Increased ICP	Increased ICP and cerebral blood flow	—
Resp	Respiratory depression (severely decreased TV, increased RR), decreased response to respiratory CO ₂ reflexes, bronchodilation					—
CVS	Less decrease of contractility, stable HR	Tachycardia with rapid increase in concentration	Decreased BP and CO, increased HR, theoretical chance of coronary steal**	Stable HR, decreased contractility	Decreased BP, CO, HR, and conduction Sensitizes myocardium to epinephrine-induced arrhythmias	Can cause decreased HR in pediatric cases in those with existing heart disease
MSK	Muscle relaxation, potentiation of other muscle relaxants, uterine relaxation					

*Properties and Adverse Effects of N₂O

Due to its high MAC, nitrous oxide is combined with other anesthetic gases to attain surgical anesthesia. A MAC of 104% is possible in a pressurized chamber only
Second Gas Effect: see *Determinants of Speed of Onset of Volatile Anesthetics sidebar, A17*

Expansion of closed spaces: closed spaces such as a pneumothorax, the middle ear, bowel lumen and ETT cuff will markedly enlarge if N₂O is administered
Diffusion hypoxia: during anesthesia, the washout of N₂O from body stores into alveoli can dilute the alveolar [O₂], creating a hypoxic mixture if the original [O₂] is low

**Coronary steal: isoflurane causes small vessel dilation which may compromise blood flow to areas of the heart with fixed perfusion (e.g. stents, atherosclerosis)

Table 15. Depolarizing Muscle Relaxants (Non-Competitive): Succinylcholine (SCh)

Mechanism of Action	Mimics ACh and binds to ACh receptors causing prolonged depolarization; initial fasciculation may be seen, followed by temporary paralysis secondary to blocked ACh receptors by SCh
Intubating Dose	1-1.5 mg/kg
Onset	30-60 s – RAPID (fastest of all muscle relaxants)
Duration	3-5 min – SHORT (no reversing agent for SCh)
Metabolism	SCh is hydrolyzed by plasma cholinesterase (pseudocholinesterase), found only in plasma and not at the NMJ
Indications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Assist intubation • Increased risk of aspiration (need rapid paralysis and airway control) • Short procedures (e.g. full stomach), hiatus hernia, obesity, pregnancy, trauma • Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) • Laryngospasm
Side Effects	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SCh also stimulates muscarinic cholinergic autonomic receptors (in addition to nicotinic receptors) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • May cause bradycardia, dysrhythmias, sinus arrest, increased secretions of salivary glands (especially in children) 2. Hyperkalemia <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disruption of motor nerve activity causes proliferation of extrajunctional (outside NMJ) cholinergic receptors • Depolarization of an increased number of receptors by SCh may lead to massive release of potassium out of muscle cells • Patients at risk: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ 3rd degree burns 24 h-6 mo after injury ▪ Traumatic paralysis or neuromuscular diseases (e.g. muscular dystrophy) ▪ Severe intra-abdominal infections ▪ Severe closed head injury ▪ Upper motor neuron lesions 3. Can trigger MH 4. Increased ICP/intraocular pressure/intragastric pressure (no increased risk of aspiration if competent lower esophageal sphincter) 5. Fasciculations, post-operative myalgia – may be minimized if small dose of non-depolarizing agent given before SCh administration
Contraindications	
Absolute	Known hypersensitivity or allergy, positive history of malignant hyperthermia, myotonia (m. congenita, m. dystrophica, paramyotonia congenital), high risk for hyperkalemic response
Relative	Known history of plasma cholinesterase deficiency, myasthenia gravis, myasthenic syndrome, familial periodic paralysis, open eye injury

Table 16. Non-Depolarizing Muscle Relaxants (Competitive)

Mechanism of Action	Competitive blockade of postsynaptic ACh receptors preventing depolarization				
Classification	Short	Intermediate			Long
	Mivacurium	Rocuronium	Vecuronium	Cisatracurium	Pancuronium
Intubating Dose (mg/kg)	0.2	0.6-1.0	0.1	0.2	0.1
Onset (min)	2-3	1.5	2-3	3	3-5
Duration (min)	15-25	30-45	45-60	40-60	90-120
Metabolism	Plasma cholinesterase	Liver (major) Renal (minor)	Liver	Hofmann Eliminations	Renal (major) Liver (minor)
Indications	Assist intubation, assist mechanical ventilation in some ICU patients, reduce fasciculations and post-operative myalgias secondary to SCh				
Side Effects:					
Histamine Release	Yes	No	No	No	No
Other	—	—	—	—	Tachycardia
Considerations	Increased duration of action in renal or liver failure	Quick onset of rocuronium allows its use in rapid sequence induction Cisatracurium is good for patients with renal or hepatic insufficiency			Pancuronium if increased HR and BP desired

Table 17. Reversal Agents for Non-Depolarizing Relaxants

Cholinesterase Inhibitor	Neostigmine	Pyridostigmine	Edrophonium
Onset and Duration	Intermediate	Longest	Shortest
Mechanism of Action	Inhibits enzymatic degradation of ACh, increases ACh at nicotinic and muscarinic receptors, displaces non-depolarizing muscle relaxants Muscarinic effects of reversing agents include unwanted bradycardia, salivation, and increased bowel peristalsis*		
Dose	0.04-0.08 mg/kg	0.1-0.4 mg/kg	0.5-1 mg/kg
Recommended Anticholinergic	Glycopyrrolate	Glycopyrrolate	Atropine
Dose of Anticholinergic per mg	0.2 mg	0.05 mg	0.014 mg

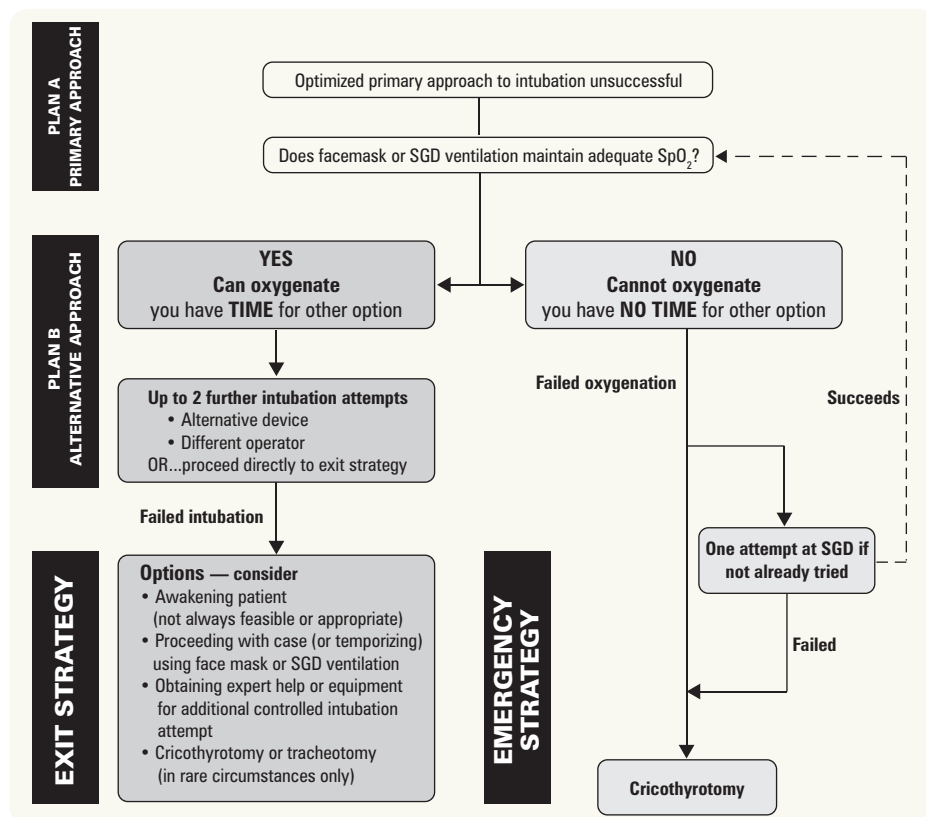
*Atropine and glycopyrrolate are anticholinergic agents administered during the administration of reversal agents to minimize muscarinic effects

Table 18. Local Anesthetic Agents

	Maximum Dose	Maximum Dose with Epinephrine	Potency	Duration
chlorprocaine	11 mg/kg	14 mg/kg	Low	15-30 min
lidocaine	5 mg/kg	7 mg/kg	Medium	1-2 h
bupivacaine	2.5 mg/kg	3 mg/kg	High	3-8 h
ropivacaine	2.5 mg/kg	3 mg/kg	High	2-8 h

Appendices

Difficult Tracheal Intubation in Unconscious Patient

**Figure 14. Difficult tracheal intubation encountered in the unconscious patient**

SGD = supraglottic device

Reprinted with permission. Law JA, et al. The difficult airway with recommendations for management – Part 1 – Difficult tracheal intubation encountered in an unconscious/induced patient. *Can J Anesth* 2013;60:1089–1118.

Difficult Tracheal Intubation

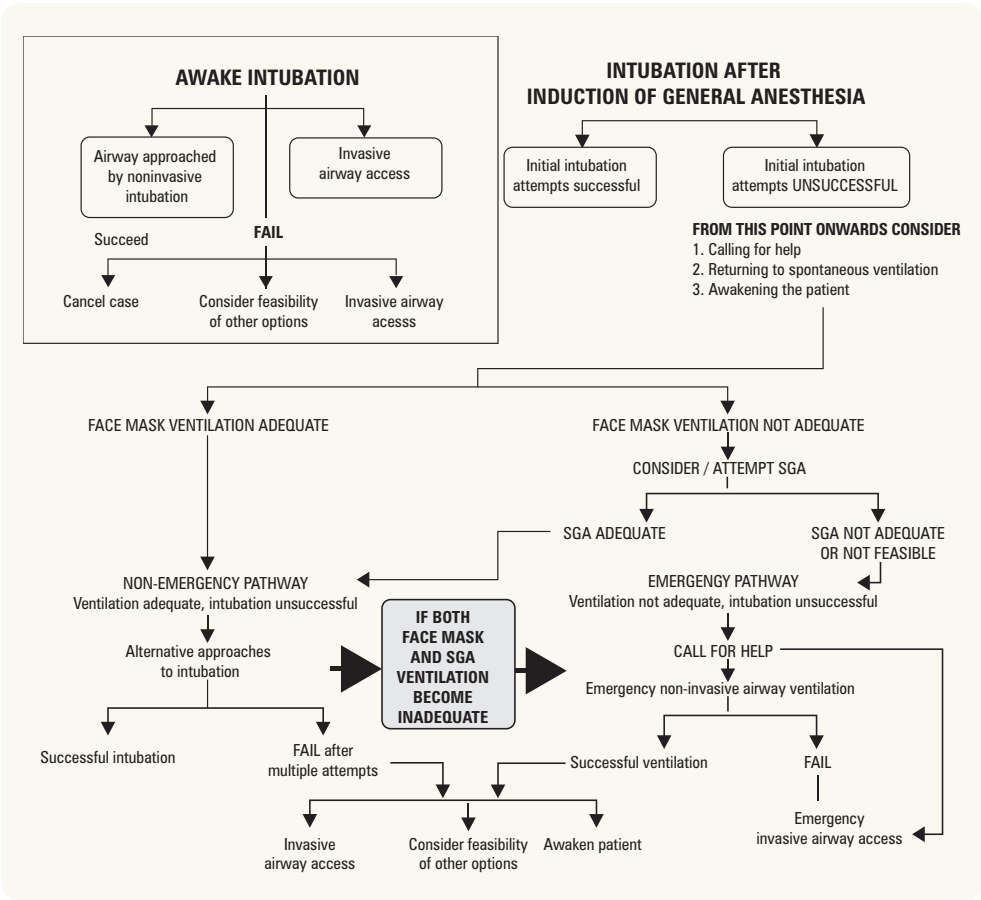


Figure 15. Anticipated difficult tracheal intubation

SGD = supraglottic device

Reprinted with permission. The American Society of Anesthesiology. Practice Guidelines for Management of the Difficult airway: An updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Management of the Difficult Airway. 118:2. Feb 2013.

Advanced Cardiac Life Support (ACLS) Guidelines

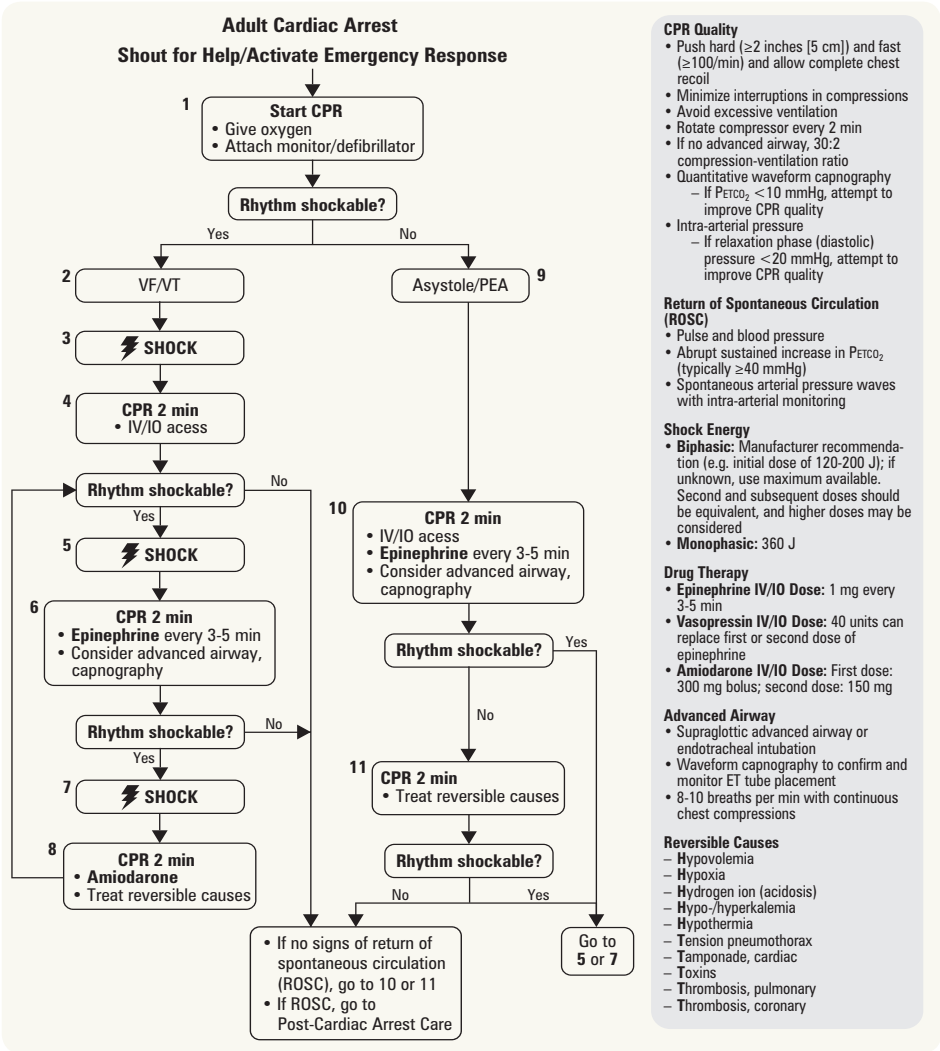


Figure 16. Adult cardiac arrest algorithm
Reprinted with permission: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care, Part 8: Adult Advanced Cardiovascular Life Support. Circulation 2010;122(suppl 3):S729-S767 ©2010 American Heart Association, Inc.

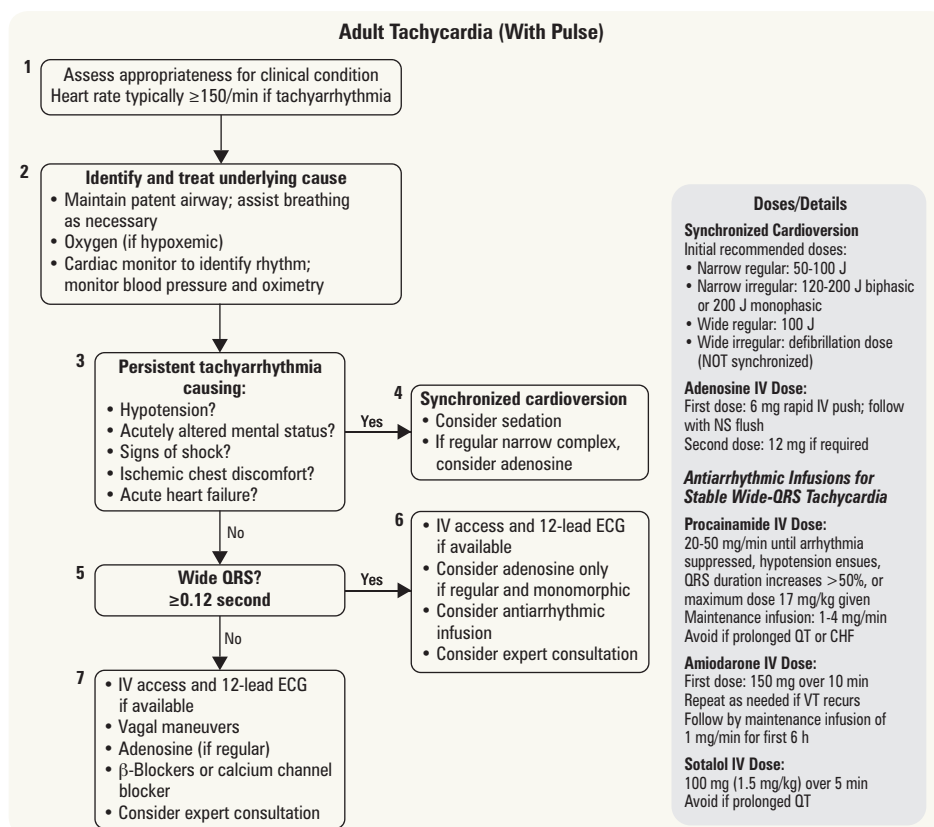


Figure 17. Adult tachycardia algorithm

Reprinted with permission: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care, Part 8: Adult Advanced Cardiovascular Life Support. Circulation 2010;122(suppl 3):S729-S767 ©2010 American Heart Association, Inc.

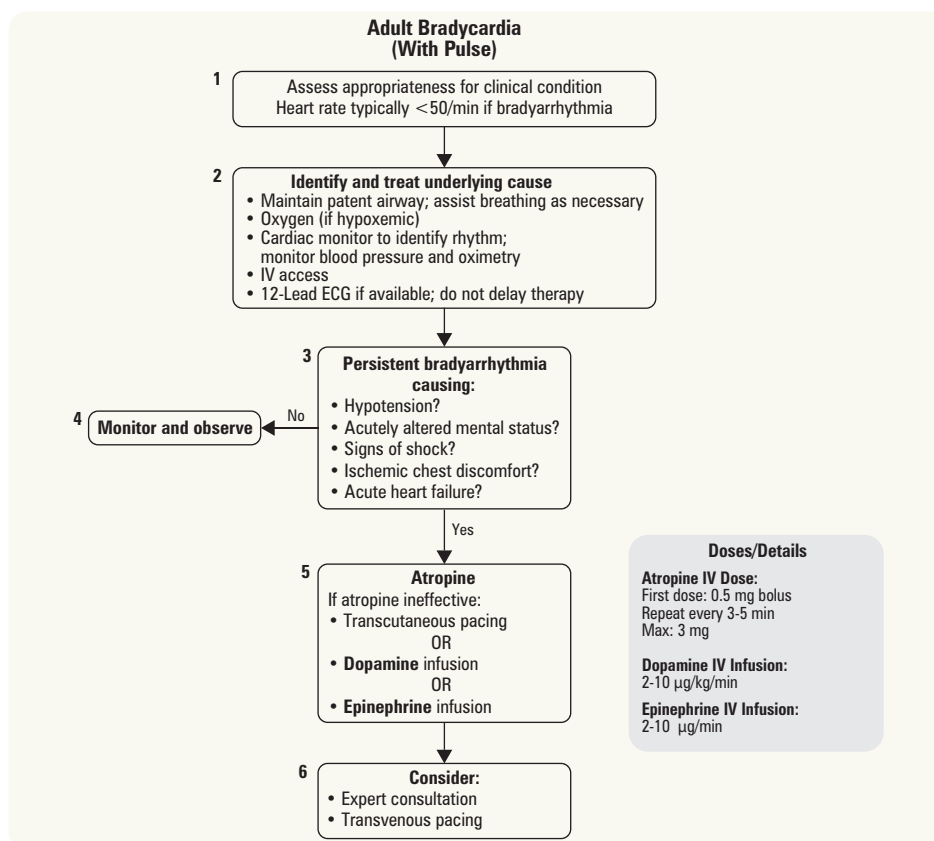


Figure 18. Adult bradycardia algorithm

Reprinted with permission: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care, Part 8: Adult Advanced Cardiovascular Life Support. Circulation 2010;122(suppl 3):S729-S767 ©2010 American Heart Association, Inc.

References

- Arbous MS, Meuring AE, van Kleef JW, et al. Impact of anesthesia management characteristics on severe morbidity and mortality. *Anesthesiology* 2005;102:257-268.
- Barash P, Cullen BF, Stoetling RK, et al. *Clinical anesthesia*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 2009.
- Bell RM, Dayton MT, Lawrence PF. *Essentials of surgical specialties*. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 2000. *Anesthesiology*; 1-67.
- Blanc VF, Tremblay NA. The complications of tracheal intubation: a new classification with review of the literature. *Anesth Analg* 1974;53:202-213.
- Carlisle J, Stevenson CA. Drugs for preventing post-operative nausea and vomiting. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2006;Issue 3.
- Collins VJ. *Physiologic and pharmacologic bases of anesthesia*. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 1996.
- Craft TM, Upton PM. *Key topics in anesthesia, clinical aspects*, 3rd ed. Oxford: BIOS Scientific, 2001.
- Duke J. *Anesthesia secrets*, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Mosby, 2010.
- Frank SM, Fleisher LA, Breslow MJ, et al. Perioperative maintenance of normothermia reduces the incidence of morbid cardiac events: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 1997;277:1127-1134.
- Fleisher LA, Beckman JA, Brown KA, et al. ACC/AHA 2007 Guidelines on perioperative cardiovascular evaluation for noncardiac surgery: executive summary. *Circulation* 2007;116:1971-1996.
- Hebert PC, Wells G, Blajchman MA, et al. A multicenter, randomized, controlled clinical trial of transfusion requirements in critical care. *NEJM* 1999;340:409-417.
- Henderson JJ, Popat MT, Latto IP, et al. Difficult Airway Society guidelines for management of the unanticipated difficult intubation. *Anaesthesia* 2004;59:675-694.
- Hudcova J, McNicol E, Quah C, et al. Patient controlled opioid analgesia vs. conventional opioid analgesia for post-operative pain. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2006;Issue 4.
- Kalant H, Grant D, Mitchell J. *Principles of medical pharmacology*, 7th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.
- Law JA, Broemling N, Cooper RM, et al. The difficult airway with recommendations for management –Part 1 – Difficult tracheal intubation encountered in an unconscious/induced patient. *Can J Anesth* 2013;60:1089–1118.
- Law JA, Broemling N, Cooper RM, et al. The difficult airway with recommendations for management –Part 2 – The anticipated difficult airway. *Can J Anesth* 2013;60:1119-1138.
- Lee A, Fan LTY. Stimulation of the wrist acupuncture point P6 for preventing post-operative nausea and vomiting. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2009;Issue 2.
- Leighton BL, Halpern SH. The effects of epidural analgesia on labour, meternal, and neonatal outcomes: a systemic review. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2002;186:569-577.
- Lette J, Waters D, Bernier H, et al. Preoperative and long-term cardiac risk assessment predictive value of 23 clinical descriptors, 7 multivariate scoring systems, and quantitative dipyridamole imaging in 360 patients. *Ann Surg* 1992;216:192-204.
- Levine WC, Allain RM, Alston TA, et al. *Clinical anesthesia procedures of the Massachusetts General Hospital*, 8th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 2010.
- Liccardi G, Salzillo A, DeBlasio F, et al. Control of asthma for reducing the risk of bronchospasm in asthmatics undergoing general anesthesia and/or intravascular administration of radiographic contrast media. *Curr Med Res Opin* 2009;25:1621-1630.
- MacDonald NE, O'Brien SF, Delage G. Canadian Paediatric Society Infectious Diseases and Immunization Committee: Transfusion and risk of infection in Canada Update 2012. *Paediatr Child Health* 2012;17:e102-e111.
- Malignant Hyperthermia Association of the United States. Available from <http://www.mhaus.org>.
- Mangano DT, Browner WS, Hollenberg M, et al. Long-term cardiac prognosis following noncardiac surgery. *JAMA* 1992;268:233-240.
- Mangano DT, Layug EL, Wallace A, et al. Effect of atenolol on mortality and cardiovascular morbidity after noncardiac surgery. *NEJM* 1996;335:1713-1720.
- Merchant R, Chartrand D, Dain S, et al. Guidelines to the practice of anesthesia - Revised edition 2014. *Can J Anaesth* 2014;61:46-59.
- Miller RD, Eriksson LJ, Fleisher LA, et al. *Miller's anesthesia*, 7th ed. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone, 2000.
- Morgan GE, Mikhail MS, Murray MJ. *Clinical anesthesiology*, 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical, 2005.
- Neumar RW, Otto CW, Link MS, et al. American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care science. *Circulation* 2010;122:5729-5760.
- Palda VA, Detsky AS. Perioperative assessment and management of risk from coronary artery disease. *Ann Intern Med* 1997;127:313-328.
- Perel P, Roberts I, Pearson M. Colloids vs. crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2012;Issue 4.
- POISE Study Group. Effects of extended-release metoprolol succinate in patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery (POISE Trial): a randomized controlled trial. *Lancet* 2008;371:1839-1847.
- Poldermans D, Boersma E, Bax JJ, et al. The effect of bisoprolol on perioperative mortality and myocardial infarction in high-risk patients undergoing vascular surgery. *NEJM* 1999;341:1789-1794.
- Posner KL, Van Norman GA, Chan V. Adverse cardiac outcomes after noncardiac surgery in patients with prior percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty. *Anesth Analg* 1999;89:553-560.
- Rao TL, Jacobs KH, El-Etr AA. Reinfarction following anaesthesia in patients with myocardial infarction. *Anesthesiology* 1983;59:499-505.
- Roberts JR, Spadafora M, Cone DC. Proper depth placement of oral endotracheal tubes in adults prior to radiographic confirmation. *Acad Emerg Med* 1995;2:20-24.
- Rodgers A, Walker N, Schug S, et al. Reduction of post-operative mortality and morbidity with epidural or spinal anesthesia: Results from overview of randomized trials. *BMJ* 2000;321:1-12.
- Salpeter SR, Ormiston TM, Salpeter EE. Cardioselective betablockers for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2005;Issue 4.
- Salpeter S, Ormiston T, Salpeter E. Cardioselective betablockers for reversible airway disease. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2002;Issue 4.
- Sessler DL. Complications and treatment of mild hypothermia. *Anesthesiology* 2001;95:531-543.
- Shiga T, Wajima Z, Inoue T, et al. Predicting difficult intubation in apparently normal patients. *Anesthesiology* 2005;103:429-437.
- Sullivan P. *Anesthesia for medical students*. Ottawa: Doculink International, 1999.
- Zwilling CW, Pierson DJ, Creagh CE, et al. Complications of assisted ventilation. *Am J Med* 1974;57:16.

Adrianna Douvris, Michael D. Fridman, and Gary K. Yang, chapter editors

Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Tina Hu, EBM editor

Dr. Chi-Ming Chow, Dr. Michael McDonald, and Dr. Anna Woo, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Heart Failure	33
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Congestive Heart Failure	
Coronary Circulation		Sleep-Disordered Breathing	
Cardiac Anatomy		Cardiac Transplantation	37
Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations	4	Ventricular Assist Devices	
Chest Pain		Myocardial Disease	38
Loss of Consciousness		Myocarditis	
Local Edema		Dilated Cardiomyopathy	
Generalized Edema		Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy	
Palpitations		Restrictive Cardiomyopathy	
Dyspnea		Valvular Heart Disease	41
Cardiac Diagnostic Tests	5	Infective Endocarditis	
Electrocardiography Basics		Rheumatic Fever	
Approach to ECGs		Valve Repair and Valve Replacement	
Classical Approach to ECGs		Choice of Valve Prosthesis	
Alternative PQRSTU Approach to ECGs		Summary of Valvular Disease	
Cardiac Biomarkers		Pericardial Disease	46
Ambulatory ECG		Acute Pericarditis	
Echocardiography		Pericardial Effusion	
Stress Testing		Cardiac Tamponade	
Exercise Testing		Constrictive Pericarditis	
Nuclear Cardiology		Vascular Disease	48
Stress Echocardiography		Common Medications	48
Indications for Stress Testing		Antiarrhythmics	
Cardiac Catheterization and Angiography		Landmark Cardiac Trials	51
Contrast-Enhanced CT Coronary Angiography		References	53
Magnetic Resonance Imaging			
CARDIAC DISEASE	15		
Arrhythmias	15		
Mechanisms of Arrhythmias			
Bradyarrhythmias			
AV Conduction Blocks			
Supraventricular Tachyarrhythmias			
Pre-Excitation Syndromes			
Ventricular Tachyarrhythmias			
Electrophysiology Studies			
Electrical Pacing			
Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillators			
Catheter Ablation			
Ischemic Heart Disease	25		
Chronic Stable Angina			
Variant Angina			
Syndrome X			
Acute Coronary Syndromes			
Management of Acute Coronary Syndromes			
Treatment Algorithm for Chest Pain			
Sudden Cardiac Arrest			
Coronary Revascularization			
Percutaneous Coronary Intervention			
Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery			
Off Pump Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery			

Acronyms

AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm	CXR	chest x-ray	LMWH	low molecular weight heparin	RA	right atrium
ABI	ankle-brachial index	DCM	dilated cardiomyopathy	LV	left ventricle	RAE	right atrial enlargement
ACEI	angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor	DM	diabetes mellitus	LVEF	left ventricular ejection fraction	RAO	right anterior oblique
ACS	acute coronary syndrome	DOAC	direct oral anticoagulant	LVB	left ventricular hypertrophy	RBB	right bundle branch
AFib	atrial fibrillation	DVT	deep vein thrombosis	MAT	multifocal atrial tachycardia	RBBB	right bundle branch block
AR	aortic regurgitation	ECASA	enteric coated ASA	MI	myocardial infarction	RBW	routine blood work
ARB	angiotensin receptor blocker	ECG	electrocardiogram	MPI	myocardial perfusion imaging	RV	right ventricle
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome	Echo	echocardiogram	MR	mitral regurgitation	RVH	right ventricular hypertrophy
AS	aortic stenosis	EPS	electrophysiology studies	MRA	MRI angiography	SA	sinoatrial
ASA	acetylsalicylic acid (Aspirin®)	EtOH	ethanol/alcohol	MS	mitral stenosis	SCD	sudden cardiac death
AV	atrioventricular	GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease	NSR	normal sinus rhythm	SEM	systolic ejection murmur
AVM	arteriovenous malformation	HCM	hypertrophic cardiomyopathy	NSTEMI	non-ST elevation myocardial infarction	SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
AVNRT	atrioventricular nodal re-entrant tachycardia	HFPEP	heart-failure with preserved ejection fraction	OS	opening snap	STEMI	ST elevation myocardial infarction
AVRT	atrioventricular re-entrant tachycardia	HTN	hypertension	PAC	premature atrial contraction	SV	stroke volume
BBB	bundle branch block	HR	heart rate	PCI	percutaneous coronary intervention	SVR	systemic vascular resistance
BNP	brain natriuretic peptide	ICD	implantable cardiac defibrillator	PCWP	pulmonary capillary wedge pressure	SVT	supraventricular tachycardia
BP	blood pressure	IE	infective endocarditis	PDA	patent ductus arteriosus	TAA	thoracic aortic aneurysm
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft	JVP	jugular venous pressure	PE	pulmonary embolism	TB	tuberculosis
CAD	coronary artery disease	LA	left atrium	PFO	patent foramen ovale	TEE	transesophageal echocardiography
CCB	calcium channel blocker	LAE	left atrial enlargement	PIV	posterior-interventricular artery	TIA	transient ischemic attack
CHF	congestive heart failure	LBB	left bundle branch	PMI	point of maximal impulse	TTE	transthoracic echocardiography
CI	cardiac index	LBBB	left bundle branch block	PND	paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea	UA	unstable angina
CO	cardiac output	LICS	left intercostal space	PUD	peptic ulcer disease	VAD	ventricular assist device
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease	LLSB	left lower sternal border	PVC	premature ventricular contraction	VFib	ventricular fibrillation
CTA	CT angiography			PVD	peripheral vascular disease	VT	ventricular tachycardia
CVD	cerebrovascular disease					VTE	venous thromboembolism
						WPW	Wolff-Parkinson-White

Basic Anatomy Review

Coronary Circulation

- conventional arterial supply to the heart arises from the right and left coronary arteries, which originate from the root of the aorta
 - right coronary artery (RCA)
 - acute marginal branches
 - atrioventricular (AV) nodal artery
 - posterior interventricular artery (PIV) = posterior descending artery (PD)
 - left main coronary artery (LCA): two major branches
 - left anterior descending artery (LAD)
 - septal branches
 - diagonal branches
 - left circumflex artery (LC)
 - obtuse marginal branches
- dominance of circulation
 - right-dominant circulation: PIV and at least one posterolateral branch arise from RCA (80%)
 - left-dominant circulation: PIV and at least one posterolateral branch arise from LC (15%)
 - balanced circulation: dual supply of posteroinferior LV from RCA and LC (5%)
- the sinoatrial (SA) node is supplied by the SA nodal artery, which may arise from the RCA (60%) or LCA (40%)
- most venous blood from the heart drains into the RA through the coronary sinus, although a small amount drains through Thebesian veins into all four chambers, contributing to the physiologic R-L shunt

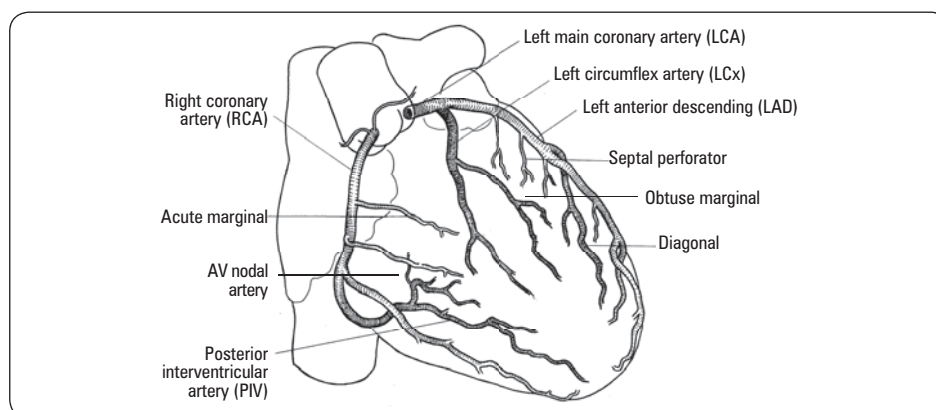


Figure 1. Anatomy of the coronary arteries (right anterior oblique projection)

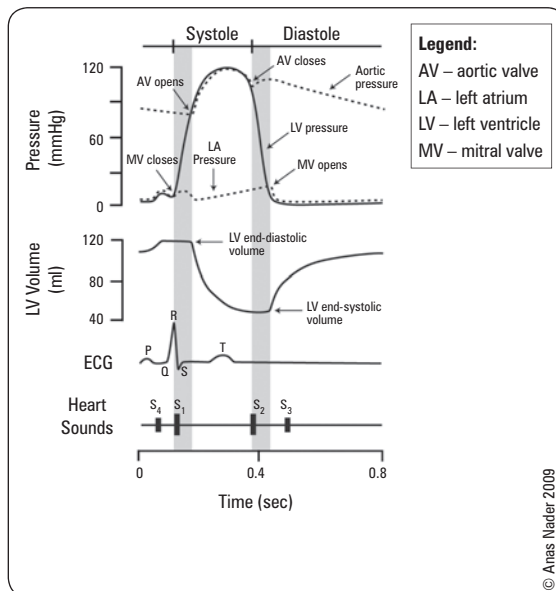


Figure 2a. Cardiac cycle
 Gray shaded bars indicate isovolumic contraction (left) and isovolumic relaxation (right)

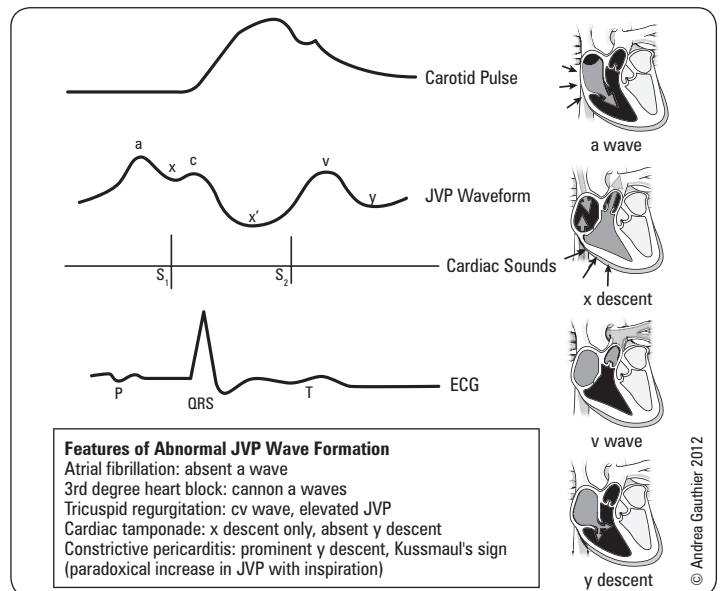


Figure 2b. JVP waveform

Cardiac Anatomy

• layers of the heart

- endocardium
- myocardium
- epicardium
- visceral pericardium
- pericardial cavity
- parietal pericardium

• valves

- semilunar valves: no subvalvular apparatus present
 - ♦ aortic valve, 3 valve leaflets: separates LV and ascending aorta
 - ♦ pulmonic valve, 3 valve leaflets: separates RV and main pulmonary artery (PA)
- atrioventricular valves: subvalvular apparatus present in the form of chordae tendinae and papillary muscles
 - ♦ tricuspid valve, 3 valve leaflets: separates RA and RV
 - ♦ mitral valve, 2 valve leaflets: separates LA and LV

• conduction system

- SA node governs pacemaking control
- anterior-, middle-, and posterior-internal nodal tracts carry impulses in the right atrium and along Bachmann's bundle in the left atrium
- atrial impulses converge at the AV node
 - ♦ the AV node is the only conducting tract from the atria to the ventricles because of electrical isolation by the annulus fibrosus (except when accessory pathways are present)
- the bundle of His bifurcates into left and right bundle branches (LBB and RBB)
- LBB further splits into anterior and posterior fascicles
- RBB and fascicles of LBB give off Purkinje fibers which conduct impulses into the ventricular myocardium

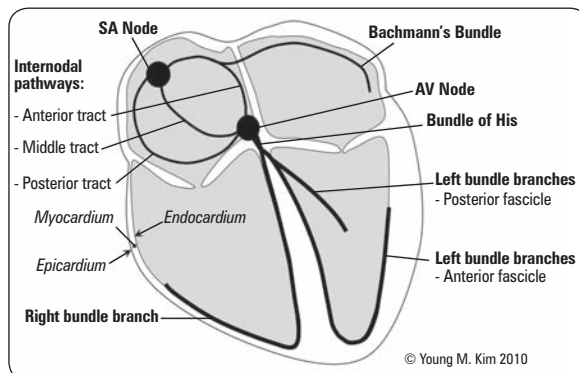


Figure 3. Conduction system of the heart

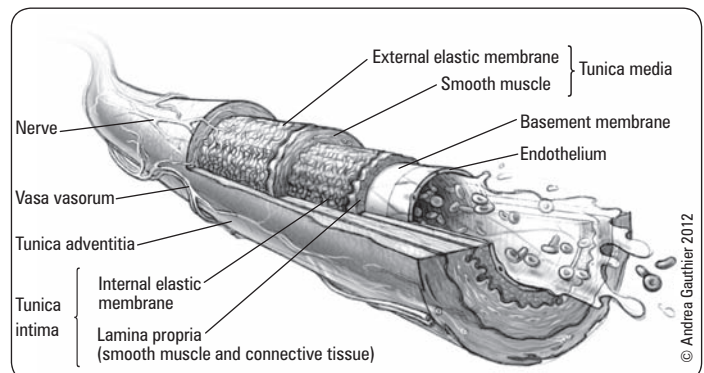


Figure 4. Blood vessel structure

- **cardiovascular innervation**

- sympathetic nerves
 - ♦ innervate the SA node, AV node, ventricular myocardium and vasculature
 - ♦ SA node (β_1) fibers increase pacemaking activity (chronotropy)
 - ♦ cardiac muscle (β_1) fibers increase contractility (inotropy) to help increase cardiac output
 - ♦ stimulation of β_1 - and β_2 -receptors in the skeletal and coronary circulation causes vasodilatation
- parasympathetic nerves
 - ♦ innervate the SA node, AV node, atrial myocardium but few vascular beds
 - ♦ basal vagal tone dominates the tonic sympathetic stimulation of the SA node and AV node resulting in slowing of pacemaker activity and conduction (i.e. reduced dromotropy – if only affecting AV node conduction)
 - ♦ parasympathetics have very little impact on total peripheral vascular resistance

Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations

Note: **bold** text indicates most common, underlined text indicates life threatening

Chest Pain

- cardiac
 - **MI/angina**
 - myocarditis
 - pericarditis/Dressler's syndrome
 - cardiac tamponade
- pulmonary
 - **pneumonia**
 - PE
 - pneumothorax/hemothorax, tension pneumothorax
 - empyema
 - pulmonary neoplasm
 - bronchiectasis
 - TB
- gastrointestinal
 - esophageal: spasm, **GERD**, esophagitis, ulceration, achalasia, neoplasm, Mallory-Weiss syndrome, esophageal rupture
- gastrointestinal
 - PUD
 - gastritis
 - pancreatitis
 - biliary colic
- mediastinal
 - lymphoma
 - thymoma
- vascular
 - dissecting aortic aneurysm
 - aortic rupture
- surface structures
 - costochondritis
 - rib fracture
 - skin (bruising, herpes zoster)
 - breast
- anxiety/psychosomatic

Loss of Consciousness

- **hypovolemia**
- cardiac
 - structural or obstructive causes
 - ♦ ACS
 - ♦ AS
 - ♦ HCM
 - ♦ cardiac tamponade, constrictive pericarditis
 - arrhythmias (see *Arrhythmias*, C15)
- respiratory
 - massive pulmonary embolism
 - pulmonary HTN
 - hypoxia
 - hypercapnia
- neurologic
 - stroke/TIA (esp. vertebrobasilar insufficiency)
 - migraine
 - seizure
- metabolic
 - **anemia**
 - **hypoglycemia**
- drugs
 - antihypertensives
 - antiarrhythmics
 - diuretics
- **vasovagal**
- autonomic dysfunction
 - diabetic neuropathy
- psychiatric
 - panic attack

Local Edema

- inflammation/infection
- venous or lymphatic obstruction
 - thrombophlebitis/deep vein thrombosis
 - venous insufficiency
 - chronic lymphangitis
 - lymphatic tumor infiltration
 - filariasis

Generalized Edema

- increased hydrostatic pressure/fluid overload
 - **heart failure**
 - pregnancy
 - drugs (e.g. CCBs)
 - **iatrogenic** (e.g. IV fluids)
- decreased oncotic pressure/hypoalbuminemia
 - nephrotic syndrome
- **liver cirrhosis**
 - malnutrition
- increased capillary permeability
 - severe sepsis
- hormonal
 - hypothyroidism
- exogenous steroids
 - pregnancy
 - estrogens

Palpitations

- cardiac
 - arrhythmias (PAC, PVC, SVT, VT)
 - valvular heart disease
 - HCM
- endocrine
 - thyrotoxicosis
 - pheochromocytoma
 - hypoglycemia
- systemic
 - fever
 - anemia
- drugs
 - stimulants and anticholinergics
- psychiatric
 - panic attack

Dyspnea

- cardiovascular
 - acute MI
 - CHF/LV failure
 - aortic/mitral stenosis
 - aortic/mitral regurgitation
 - arrhythmia
 - cardiac tamponade
 - constrictive pericarditis
 - left-sided obstructive lesions (e.g. left atrial myxoma)
 - elevated pulmonary venous pressure
- respiratory
 - airway disease
 - ♦ asthma
 - ♦ COPD exacerbation
 - ♦ upper airway obstruction (anaphylaxis, foreign body, mucus plugging)
 - parenchymal lung disease
 - ♦ ARDS
- pneumonia
 - ♦ interstitial lung disease
- pulmonary vascular disease
 - ♦ PE
 - ♦ pulmonary HTN
 - ♦ pulmonary vasculitis
- pleural disease
 - ♦ pneumothorax
 - ♦ pleural effusion
- neuromuscular and chest wall disorders
 - C-spine injury
 - polymyositis, myasthenia gravis, Guillain-Barré syndrome
 - kyphoscoliosis
- anxiety/psychosomatic
- hematological/metabolic
 - anemia, acidosis, hypercapnia

Cardiac Diagnostic Tests

Electrocardiography Basics

- the electrocardiogram (ECG) is a graphic representation of the electrical activity of the heart recorded from the surface of the body
- on the ECG graph
 - the horizontal axis represents time (at usual paper speed 25 mm/s)
 - ♦ 1 mm (1 small square) = 40 msec
 - ♦ 5 mm (1 large square) = 200 msec
 - the vertical axis represents voltage (at usual standard gain setting)
 - ♦ 1 mm (1 small square) = 0.1 mV
 - ♦ 10 mm (2 large squares) = 1 mV
- leads
 - standard 12-lead ECG
 - ♦ limb leads: I, II, III, aVL, aVR, aVF
 - ♦ precordial leads: V1-V6 (V1-V2 septal, V3-V4 anterior, V5-V6 lateral)
 - additional leads
 - ♦ right-sided leads: V3R-V6R (useful in RV infarction and dextrocardia)
 - lateral = I, aVL, V5, V6; inferior = II, III, aVF; anterior = V1-V4

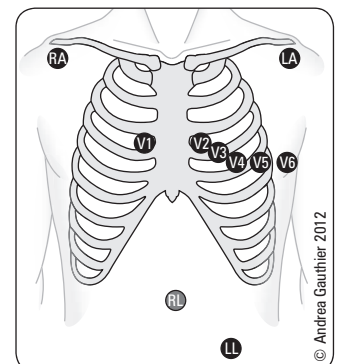


Figure 5. ECG lead placement

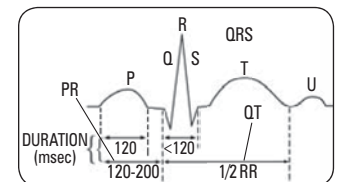


Figure 6. ECG waveforms and normal values

Approach to ECGs

Introduction

Historically, the electrocardiogram has been a tricky subject for medical students. For many years, the classical approach has been taught in medical schools, which has demystified the ECG. Below, we are presenting both the Classical Approach and the newer PQRSTU Approach to provide students with different ways to view the ECG. Despite methodological differences, the rigor and final result is the same. These two approaches should help you better understand the concepts of ECG interpretation and equip you with the necessary skills to interpret ECGs in exam scenarios and clinical practice.

Classical Approach to ECGs

RATE

- normal = 60-100 bpm (atrial rate: 150-250 bpm = paroxysmal tachycardia, 250-350 bpm = atrial flutter, >350 bpm = AFib)
- regular rhythm
 - to calculate the rate, divide 300 by number of large squares between 2 QRS complexes (there are 300 large squares in 1 min: $300 \times 200 \text{ msec} = 60 \text{ s}$)



Rate Calculations

- Examples, practice



Classical Approach to ECG

- Rate
- Rhythm
- Axis
- Conduction abnormalities
- Hypertrophy/chamber enlargement
- Ischemia/infarction
- Miscellaneous ECG changes



For more examples and practice visit www.ecgmadesimple.com

- or remember 300-150-100-75-60-50-43 (rate falls in this sequence with the number of large squares between 2 QRS complexes)
- irregular rhythm
 - rate = 6 x number of R-R intervals in 10 s (the “rhythm strips” are 10 s recordings)
 - types: wandering pacemaker, multifocal atrial tachycardia, AFib
- atrial escape = 60-80 bpm; junctional escape = 40-60 bpm; ventricular escape = 20-40 bpm

RHYTHM

- regular: R-R interval is the same across the tracing
- irregular: R-R interval varies across the tracing
- regularly irregular: repeating pattern of varying R-R intervals
- irregularly irregular: R-R intervals vary erratically
- normal sinus rhythm (NSR)
 - P wave precedes each QRS; QRS follows each P wave
 - P wave axis is normal (positive in leads I, aVF)
 - rate between 60-100 bpm

AXIS

- mean axis indicates the direction of the mean vector
- can be determined for any waveform (P, QRS, T)
- the standard ECG reported QRS axis usually refers to the mean axis of the frontal plane – it indicates the mean direction of ventricular depolarization forces
- QRS axis in the frontal plane
 - normal axis: -30° to 90° (i.e. positive QRS in leads I and II)
 - left axis deviation (LAD): axis $< -30^{\circ}$
 - right axis deviation (RAD): axis $> 90^{\circ}$
- QRS axis in the horizontal plane is not routinely calculated – it is directed posteriorly and to the left
 - transition from negative to positive is usually in lead V3

Table 1. Conduction Abnormalities

Left Bundle Branch Block (LBBB)	Right Bundle Branch Block (RBBB)
Complete LBBB <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • QRS duration > 120 msec • Broad notched or slurred R waves in leads I, aVL, and usually V5 and V6 • Deep broad S waves in leads V1-2 • Secondary ST-T changes (-ve in leads with broad R waves, +ve in V1-2) are usually present • LBBB can mask ECG signs of MI 	Complete RBBB <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • QRS duration > 120 msec • Positive QRS in lead V1 (rSR' or occasionally broad R wave) • Broad S waves in leads I, V5-6 (> 40 msec) • Usually secondary T wave inversion in leads V1-2

Left Anterior Fascicular Block (LAFB) (Left Anterior Hemiblock)	Left Posterior Fascicular Block (LPFB) (Left Posterior Hemiblock)	Bifascicular Block
Left Axis Deviation (-30° to -90°) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small q and prominent R in leads I and aVL • Small r and prominent S in leads II, III, and aVF 	Right Axis Deviation (110° to 180°) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small r and prominent S in leads I and aVL • Small q and prominent R in leads II, III, and aVF 	RBBB pattern <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small q and prominent R • The first 60 msec (1.5 small squares) of the QRS shows the pattern of LAFB or LPFB • Bifascicular block refers to impaired conduction in two of the three fascicles, most commonly a RBBB and left anterior hemiblock; the appearance on an ECG meets the criteria for both types of blocks

Nonspecific Intraventricular Block

- QRS duration > 120 msec
- absence of criteria for LBBB or RBBB



Differential Diagnosis for Left Axis Deviation

- Left anterior hemiblock
- Inferior MI
- WPW
- RV pacing
- Normal variant
- Elevated diaphragm
- Lead misplacement
- Endocardial cushion defect



Differential Diagnosis for Right Axis Deviation

- RVH
- Left post hemiblock
- PE
- COPD
- Lateral MI
- WPW
- Dextrocardia
- Septal defects

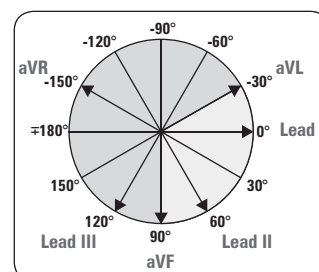


Figure 7. Axial reference system

Each lead contains a (+) area displayed by the bold arrows. Impulses traveling toward the positive region of the lead results in an upward deflection in that lead. Normal QRS axis is between -30° and $+90^{\circ}$

Table 2. Hypertrophy/Chamber Enlargement

Left Ventricular Hypertrophy (LVH)	Right Ventricular Hypertrophy (RVH)
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• S in V1 + R in V5 or V6 > 35 mm above age 40, (>40 mm for age 31-40, >45 mm for age 21-30)• R in aVL >11 mm• R in I + S in III >25 mm• Additional criteria:<ul style="list-style-type: none">▪ LV strain pattern (ST depression and T wave inversion in leads I, aVL, V4-V6)▪ Left atrial enlargement	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Right axis deviation• R/S ratio > 1 or qR in lead V1• RV strain pattern: ST segment depression and T wave inversion in leads V1-2
Left Atrial Enlargement (LAE)	Right Atrial Enlargement (RAE)
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Biphasic P wave with the negative terminal component of the P wave in lead V1 ≥1 mm wide and ≥1 mm deep• P wave > 120 msec, notched in lead II ("P mitrale")	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• P wave >2.5 mm in height in leads II, III, or aVF ("P pulmonale")

ISCHEMIA/INFARCTION

- look for the anatomic distribution of the following ECG abnormalities (see Table 3)
- ischemia
 - ST segment depression
 - T wave inversion (most commonly in V1-V6)
- injury
 - transmural (involving the epicardium)
 - ♦ ST elevation in the leads facing the area injured/infarcted
 - ♦ transient ST elevation may occur in patients with coronary artery spasm (e.g. Prinzmetal angina) which can be slight or prominent (>10 mm)
 - subendocardial
 - ♦ marked ST depression in the leads facing the affected area
 - ♦ may be accompanied by enzyme changes and other signs of MI
 - ♦ may also occur with angina

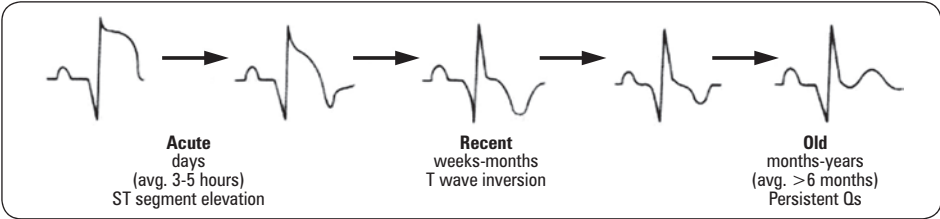


Figure 10. Typical ECG changes with infarction

- evolving infarction (ST elevation in contiguous leads = acute MI)
- "typical" sequential changes of evolving MI
 1. hyperacute T waves (tall, symmetric T waves) in the leads facing the infarcted area, with or without ST elevation
 2. ST elevation (injury pattern) in the leads facing the infarcted area
 - ♦ usually in the first hours post infarct
 - ♦ in acute posterior infarction, there is ST depression in V1-V3 (reciprocal to ST elevation in the posterior leads, that are not recorded in the standard 12-lead ECG)
 3. significant Q waves: >40 msec or >1/3 of the total QRS (hours to days post-infarct)
 4. inverted T waves (one day to weeks after infarction)
- this classical sequence does not always occur
 - ♦ Q waves of infarction may appear in the very early stages, with or without ST changes
 - ♦ non-Q wave infarction: there may be only ST or T changes despite clinical evidence of infarction
- completed infarction
 - abnormal Q waves (wide Q waves may be found in III and aVL in normal individuals)
 - ♦ duration >40 msec (>30 msec in aVF for inferior infarction)
 - ♦ Q/QRS voltage ratio is >33%
 - abnormal R waves (R/S ratio >1, duration >40 msec) in V1 and more frequently in V2 are found in posterior infarction (usually in association with signs of inferior and/or lateral infarction)

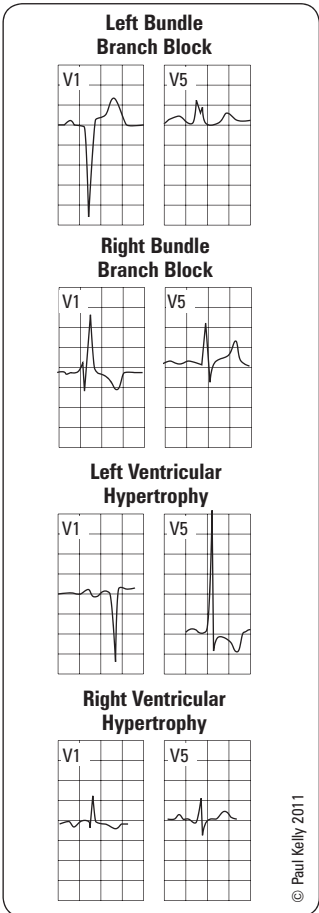


Figure 8. Complete LBBB, RBBB, LVH, and RVH (please see online examples for the full range of waveforms and the text for additional characteristics)

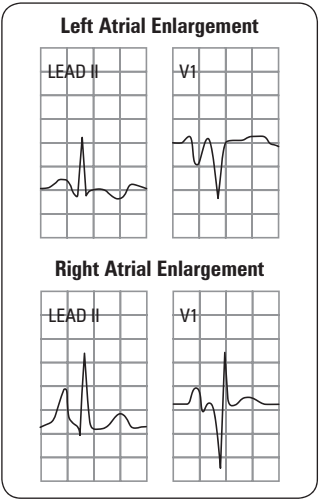


Figure 9. LAE, RAE (please see online examples and the text for characteristics)

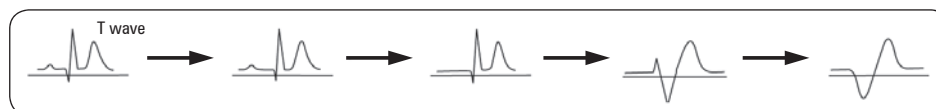
Table 3. Areas of Infarction(Q wave)/Ischemia (in right dominant anatomy)

Vessel Usually Involved	Infarct Area (LAD and LC)	Leads (LAD and LC)
Left anterior descending (LAD)	Anteroseptal	V1, V2
	Anterior	V3, V4
	Anterolateral	I, aVL, V3-6
	Extensive anterior	I, aVL, V1-6
Right coronary artery (RCA)	Inferior	II, III, aVF
	Right ventricle	V3R, V4R (right sided chest leads)
	Posterior MI (assoc. with inf. MI)	V1, V2 (prominent R waves)
Left circumflex (LCX)	Lateral	I, aVL, V5-6
	Isolated posterior MI	V1, V2 (prominent R waves)

MISCELLANEOUS ECG CHANGES

Electrolyte Disturbances

- hyperkalemia
 - mild to moderate (K^+ 5-7 mmol/L): tall peaked T waves
 - severe (K^+ >7 mmol/L): progressive changes whereby P waves flatten and disappear, QRS widens and may show bizarre patterns, axis shifts left or right, ST shift with tall T waves, eventually becomes a “sine wave” pattern
- hypokalemia
 - ST segment depression, prolonged QT interval, low T waves, prominent U waves ($U > T$)
 - enhances the toxic effects of digitalis
- hypercalcemia
 - shortened QT interval (more extracellular Ca^{2+} means shorter plateau in cardiac action potential)
- hypocalcemia
 - prolonged QT interval (less extracellular Ca^{2+} means longer plateau in cardiac action potential)

**Figure 11. Hyperkalemia****Figure 12. Hypokalemia**

Hypothermia

- sinus bradycardia
- when severe, prolonged QRS and QT intervals
- AFib with slow ventricular response and other atrial/ventricular dysrhythmias
- Osborne J waves: “hump-like” waves at the junction of the J point and the ST segment

Pericarditis

- early: diffuse ST segment elevation \pm PR segment depression, upright T waves
- later: isoelectric ST segment, flat or inverted T waves
- \pm tachycardia

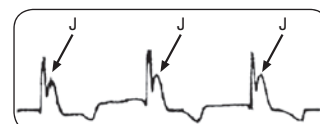
Drug Effects

- digitalis
 - therapeutic levels may be associated with “digitalis effect”:
 - ST downsloping or “scooping”
 - T wave depression or inversion
 - QT shortening \pm U waves
 - slowing of ventricular rate in AFib
 - toxic levels associated with
 - arrhythmias: paroxysmal atrial tachycardia (PAT) with conduction block, severe bradycardia in AFib, accelerated junctional rhythms, PVCs, ventricular tachycardia (see *Arrhythmias*, C15)
 - “regularization” of ventricular rate in AFib due to a junctional rhythm and AV dissociation
- amiodarone, quinidine, phenothiazines, tricyclic antidepressants, antipsychotics, some antihistamines, some antibiotics: prolonged QT interval, U waves



Low Voltage

- Definition: total QRS height in precordial leads <10 mm and/or limb leads <5 mm
- Differential diagnosis
 - Myocardial disease
 - Ischemia
 - Cardiomyopathy (usually infiltrative type), myocarditis
 - Pericardial effusion
 - Thick chest wall/barrel chest: COPD, obesity
 - Generalized edema
 - Hypothyroidism/myxedema
 - Inappropriate voltage standardization

**Figure 13. Osborne J waves of a hypothermic patient**

Digitalis Side Effects

Palpitations, fatigue, visual changes (yellow vision), decreased appetite, hallucinations, confusion, and depression



Pacemakers

- Demand pacemaker has discharge (narrow vertical spike on ECG strip) prior to widened QRS
- Atrial pacemaker has discharge prior to P wave
- Triggered pacemaker has discharge following the P wave but prior to the widened QRS
- Atrial and ventricular pacing have discharge before the P wave and widened QRS wave



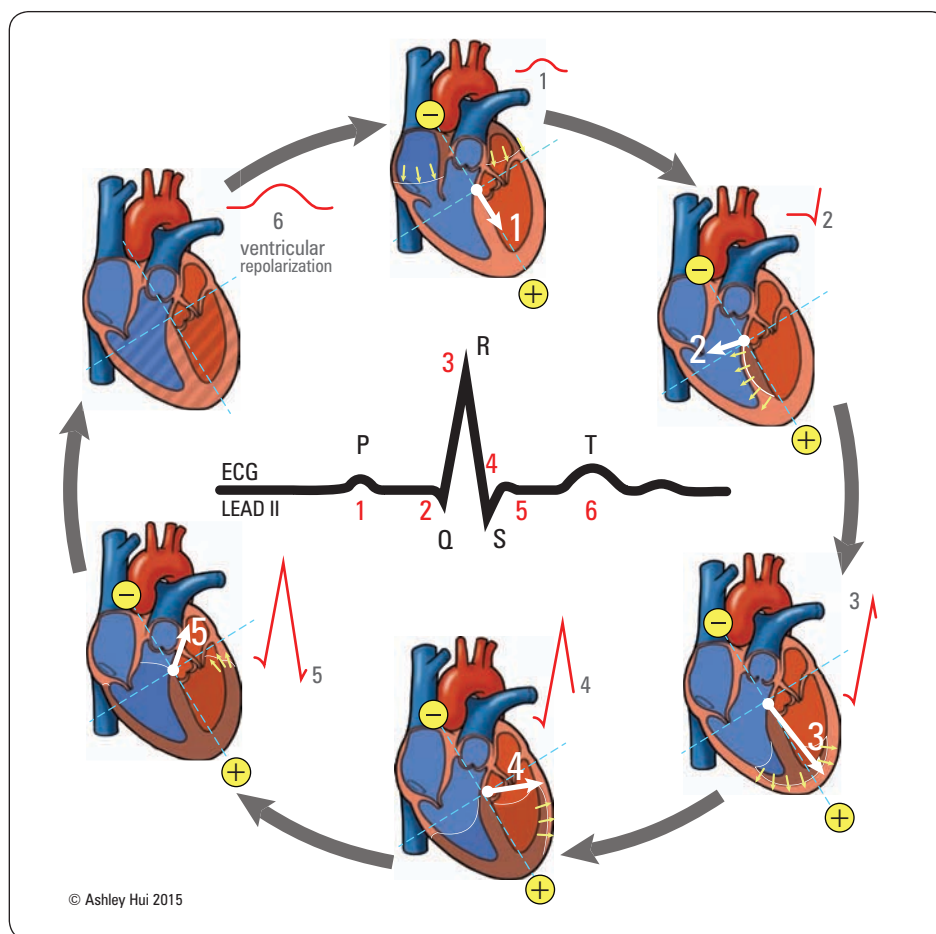
Figure 14. Atrial fibrillation, ST change due to digitalis ("digitalis effect")

Pulmonary Disorders

- cor pulmonale (often secondary to COPD)
 - low voltage, RAD, poor R wave progression
 - RAE and RVH with strain
 - multifocal atrial tachycardia (MAT)
- massive PE
 - sinus tachycardia and AFib/atrial flutter are the most common arrhythmias
 - RAD, RVH with strain – most specific sign is S1Q3T3 (S in I, Q and inverted T wave in III)

Alternative PQRSTU Approach to ECGs

Note: The information seen in this alternative approach – the PQRSTU Approach – is the same as the information in the Classical Approach. It is just organized in a slightly different way based on the Anatomy of the ECG.



PQRSTU approach to ECGs

P wave
P-R interval
QRS complex
ST segment
T wave
Q-T interval
U wave

Figure 15. ECG correlations with heart activity

P WAVE

- the P wave provides a view into the atria of the heart and represents atrial contraction
- the best leads to view the P waves are II and V1
- assess the P waves for rate (based on the P-P interval relative to the R-R interval), rhythm (rounded, flutter/sawtooth, fibrillation) and axis
- lead II: the P wave should be rounded, <120 msec and <2.5 mm in height
- lead V1: the P wave is biphasic with a negative phase slightly greater than the positive phase

Common P Wave Pathology

- atrial flutter: sawtooth P wave (HINT: flip the ECG upside-down to see it better if unclear)
- atrial fibrillation: absent P wave, may have fibrillatory wave, irregular rhythm
- right atrial enlargement: tall P wave (>2.5 mm) in II or V1 (P pulmonale)
- left atrial enlargement: negative deflection >1 mm deep or >1 mm wide in V1, wide (>120 msec) notched P wave in II (P mitrale)

P-R INTERVAL

- the P-R interval shows the delay between atrial and ventricular contraction that is mediated by the AV node; the magnitude of the delay is referred to as "dromotropy"
- positive dromotropy increases conduction velocity (e.g. epinephrine stimulation), negative dromotropy decreases velocity (e.g. vagal stimulation)
- P-R interval should be 120-200 msec
- long P-R interval (>200 msec)
 - heart block: first degree (fixed, prolonged P-R interval), second degree Mobitz I/Wenckebach (steadily prolonging to eventual dropped beat)
 - heart block
 - first degree: fixed, prolonged P-R interval
 - second degree Mobitz I/Wenckebach: steadily prolonging P-R interval to eventual dropped beat
 - second degree Mobitz II/Hay: fixed P-R interval with ratio of beat to dropped beat (e.g. for every 3 beats, there is one dropped beat [3:1])
 - third degree/complete: variable P-R intervals, P-P and R-R intervals individually constant but not in sync
 - atrial flutter
 - sinus bradycardia (normal to have long P-R if heart rate slow)
 - hypokalemia
 - trifascicular block
- short P-R interval (<120 msec)
 - pre-excitation syndrome (delta wave: upswinging of the P-R segment into the QRS complex indicating pre-excitation)
 - accessory pathways
 - WPW

QRS COMPLEX

- the QRS is where ventricular contraction is visualized
- rate: check the R-R interval to see if it matches the PP interval
- amplitude: check for hypertrophy (see Table 2, C7)
- narrow width (<120 msec) QRS means that the His-Purkinje system is being used
- wide width (>120 msec) QRS means that the His-Purkinje system is being bypassed or is diseased
 - BBB, VT, ventricular hypertrophy, cardiomyopathy, WPW, ectopic ventricular beat, hyperkalemia, drugs (e.g. TCAs, antiarrhythmics)
- Q wave: the first downward deflection of the QRS complex
 - significant Q wave: >40 msec or $>33\%$ of total QRS amplitude; indicate myocardial necrosis (new or historical)
- R and S wave abnormalities typically show pathology in terms of BBB or intraventricular abnormalities

ST SEGMENT

- one of the more famous ECG personas mostly due to its role in detecting MI
- located between QRS complex and the T wave
- corresponds to the completion of ventricular depolarization
- normally at the same level as "baseline/TP segment"
- ST elevation: at least 1 mm in 2 adjacent limb leads or at least 1-2 mm in adjacent precordial leads in STEMI (signifies occlusion and transmural ischemic injury) vs. diffuse pattern in early pericarditis
- ST depression: ischemia
 - ischemia which causes ST depression can result in myocardial damage (NSTEMI)
 - lateral wall ST depression (leads I, aVL, V5, V6) may actually indicate a STEMI in the right heart

T WAVE

- this is the repolarization phase of the ventricles (repolarization of the atria are obscured by the QRS complex)
- typically positive (except in aVR and V1) on ECG but normal isolated negative T waves may be present
- pathology when T wave variation occur in consecutive leads
 - inversion: BBB, ischemia, hypertrophy, drugs (e.g. digitalis), pulmonary embolism (lead III as part of S1Q3T3 sign)



Significant ECG Changes

- Look for ST changes starting at 60 msec from J point
- J point = the junction between the QRS complex and the ST segment
- ST elevation: at least 1 mm in 2 adjacent limb leads, or at least 1-2 mm in adjacent precordial leads
- ST depression: downsloping or horizontal
- Q Wave: pathological if Q wave ≥ 1 small square (≥ 40 msec) or $>33\%$ of the total QRS



Insignificant Q Wave

- Septal depolarization by the left bundle
- Seen in leads I, II, III, aVL, V5, V6
- <40 msec



Differential Diagnosis of ST Segment Changes

ST Elevation I HELP A PAL

Ischemia with reciprocal changes
Hypothermia (Osborne waves)
Early repolarization (normal variant, need old ECGs to confirm)
LBBB
Post-MI
Acute STEMI
Prinzmetal's (Vasospastic) angina
Acute pericarditis (diffuse changes)
Left/right ventricular aneurysm

ST Depression WAR SHIP

WPW syndrome
Acute NSTEMI
RBBB/LBBB
STEMI with reciprocal changes
Hypertrophy (LVH or RVH) with strain
Ischemia
Post-MI

- elevation: infarction (STEMI, Prinzmetal, hyperacute), hyperkalemia (wider, peaked)
- flattened: hypokalemia, pericarditis, drugs (e.g. digitalis), pericardial effusion
- variations: T wave alternans; beat-to-beat variations due to PVC overlap (R on T phenomenon which may precipitate VT or VFib)
- appropriate T wave discordance: in BBB, T wave deflection should be opposite to that of the terminal QRS deflection (i.e. T wave negative if ends with R or R'; positive if ends with S)
 - inappropriate T wave concordance suggests ischemia or infarction

Q-T INTERVAL

- this represents the duration of ventricular depolarization and repolarization and is often difficult to interpret
- corrected QT (QTc) is often used instead in practice to correct for the repolarization duration; $QTc = QT \div \sqrt{RR}$
- normal QTc is 360-450 msec for males and 360-460 for females
 - increased (>450 msec for males and >460 for females): risk of Torsades de Pointes (a lethal tachyarrhythmia)
 - ♦ genetic Long QT Syndrome (often a channelopathy)
 - ♦ drugs: antibiotics, SSRIs, antipsychotics, antiarrhythmics
 - ♦ electrolytes: low Ca^{2+} , low Mg^{2+} , low K^{+}
 - ♦ others: hypothyroidism, hypothermia, cardiomyopathy
 - decreased (<360 msec): risk of VFib
 - ♦ electrolytes: high Ca^{++}
 - ♦ drugs: digoxin
 - ♦ others: hyperthyroidism

U WAVE

- origin unclear but may be repolarization of Purkinje fibers or delayed/prolonged repolarization of the myocardium
- more visible at slower heart rates
- deflection follows T wave with <25% of the amplitude
- variations from norm could indicate pathologic conditions:
 - prominent (>25% of T wave): electrolyte (low K^{+}), drugs (digoxin, antiarrhythmics)
 - inverted (from T wave): ischemia, volume overload

Cardiac Biomarkers

- provide diagnostic and prognostic information in acute coronary syndromes and in heart failure

Table 4. Cardiac Enzymes

Enzyme	Peak	Duration Elevated	DDx of Elevation
Troponin I, Troponin T	1-2 d	Up to 2 wk	MI, CHF, AFib, acute PE, myocarditis, chronic renal insufficiency, sepsis, hypovolemia
CK-MB	1 d	3 d	MI, myocarditis, pericarditis, muscular dystrophy, cardiac defibrillation, chronic renal insufficiency, etc.

- check troponin I at presentation and 8 h later \pm creatine kinase-MB (CK-MB; depends on local laboratory protocol)
- new CK-MB elevation can be used to diagnose re-infarction
- other biomarkers of cardiac disease
 - AST and LDH also increased in MI (low specificity)
 - BNP and NT-proBNP: secreted by ventricles in response to increased end-diastolic pressure and volume
 - ♦ DDx of elevated BNP: CHF, AFib, PE, COPD exacerbation, pulmonary HTN

Ambulatory ECG

- indications for outpatient testing: palpitations, syncope, antiarrhythmic drug monitoring, arrhythmia surveillance in patients with documented or potentially abnormal rhythms, and surveillance of non-sustained arrhythmias that can lead to prophylactic intervention
- available technologies
 - Holter monitor
 - ♦ battery operated, continually records up to 3 leads for 24-48 h
 - ♦ symptoms recorded by patient on Holter clock for correlation with ECG findings
 - continuous loop recorder (diagnostic yield 66-83%)
 - ♦ worn continuously and can record data before and after patient activation for symptomatic episodes (usually worn for 2 wk)

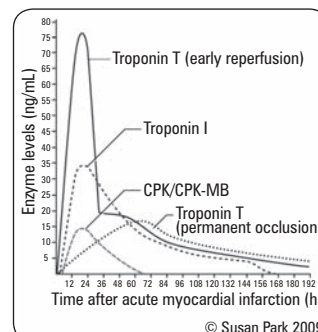


Figure 16. Cardiac enzymes



Use of B-Type Natriuretic Peptide in the Evaluation and Management of Acute Dyspnea (BASEL)

NEJM 2004;350:647-654

Study: Prospective, RCT.

Population: 452 patients (mean age 71 yr, 58% male) with acute dyspnea; patients with severe renal disease or cardiogenic shock were excluded.

Intervention: Assessment including measurement of B-type natriuretic peptide or standard assessment.

Outcome: Time to discharge and total cost of treatment.

Results: Median time to discharge was significantly shorter in the intervention group when compared with the control group (8.0 vs. 11.0 d, $p=0.001$). Total cost was also significantly lower in the intervention group (\$5,410 vs. \$7,264, $p=0.006$). In addition, the measurement of B-type natriuretic peptide significantly reduced the need for admission to hospital and intensive care. The 30-d mortality rates were similar (10% vs. 12%, $p=0.45$).

Conclusions: In patients with acute dyspnea, measurement of B-type natriuretic peptide improves clinical outcomes (need for hospitalization or intensive care) and reduces time to discharge and total cost of treatment.

- external and implantable devices
 - ♦ external devices can be transtelephonically downloaded
 - ♦ implantable loop recorder (ILR): cannot be transtelephonically downloaded; left in place for 14 to 18 mo

Echocardiography

Transthoracic Echocardiography

- ultrasound beams are directed across the chest wall to obtain images of the heart
- indications: evaluation of LVEF, wall motion abnormalities, myocardial ischemia and complications of MI, chamber size, wall thickness, valve morphology, proximal great vessel morphology, pericardial effusion, unexplained hypotension, murmurs, syncope, congenital heart disease
- use with Doppler to quantify degree of valvular stenosis or regurgitation

Transoesophageal Echocardiography

- ultrasound probe inserted into the esophagus to allow for better resolution of the heart and structures
- better visualization of posterior structures, including left atrium, mitral and aortic valves, interatrial septum
- invasive procedure used to complement transthoracic echocardiography
- indications: intracardiac thrombi, tumors, valvular vegetations (infective endocarditis), aortic dissection, aortic atheromas, prosthetic valve function, shunt, technically inadequate transthoracic study
- use with Doppler to quantify degree of valvular stenosis or regurgitation

Stress Echocardiography

- echocardiography in combination with either physiologic (exercise treadmill or bike testing) or pharmacologic (dobutamine infusion) stress
- validated in demonstrating myocardial ischemia and assessing viability
- provides information on the global left ventricular response to exercise
- used for valvular heart disease evaluation

Contrast Echocardiography

- contrast agents injected into the bloodstream to improve imaging of the heart
- conventional agent: agitated saline (contains microbubbles of air)
- allows visualization of right heart and intracardiac shunts, most commonly patent foramen ovale (PFO) and sometimes intrapulmonary shunt
- newer contrast agents are capable of crossing the pulmonary bed and achieving left heart opacification following intravenous injection; these contrast agents improve visualization of endocardial borders and enhance evaluation of LV ejection fraction, wall motion abnormalities, and intracardiac mass

Stress Testing

EXERCISE TESTING

- cardiovascular stress test that uses treadmill or bicycle exercise with electrocardiographic and blood pressure monitoring
- guidelines for use
 - patients with intermediate (10-90%) pretest probability of CAD based on age, gender, and symptoms
 - ST depression <1 mm at rest, no left bundle branch block, no digoxin or estrogen use
- exercise test results stratify patients into risk groups
 - low risk patients can be treated medically without invasive testing
 - intermediate risk patients may need additional testing in the form of exercise imaging studies or cardiac catheterization
 - high risk patients should be referred for cardiac catheterization

Indications for Terminating Exercise Stress Test

- drop in systolic blood pressure of >10 mmHg from baseline despite an increase in workload, when accompanied by other evidence of ischemia
- moderate to severe angina
- ST elevation (>1 mm) in leads without diagnostic Q-waves (other than V1 or aVR)
- increasing nervous system symptoms (e.g. ataxia, dizziness, or near syncope)
- signs of poor perfusion (cyanosis or pallor)
- technical difficulties in monitoring ECG or systolic blood pressure
- patient's desire to stop
- sustained ventricular tachycardia



Most Commonly Used Treadmill Stress Test Protocols

- **The Bruce Protocol:** 7 stage test with each stage lasting 3 min. With each successive stage, the treadmill increases in both speed (2.7 km/h to 9.6 km/h) and grade (10% with a 2% increase per stage up to 22%)
- **The Modified Bruce, Modified Naughton Protocol:** for older individuals or those with limited exercise capacity



Important Contraindications to Exercise Testing

- Acute MI, aortic dissection, pericarditis, myocarditis, PE
- Severe AS, arterial HTN
- Inability to exercise adequately

Interpretation

- the most commonly used ECG criteria for a positive exercise test: ≥ 1 mm of horizontal or downsloping ST-segment depression or elevation (at least 60-80 msec after the end of the QRS complex)

NUCLEAR CARDIOLOGY

- myocardial perfusion imaging (MPI) with ECG-gated single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT), using radiolabelled tracer
- evaluates myocardial viability, detects ischemia, and assesses perfusion and LV function simultaneously
- predicts the likelihood of further cardiac event rates independent of the patient's history, examination, resting ECG, and stress ECG
- often denoted as MIBI scan with reference to radiolabelled tracer (sestamibi)
- stress with either treadmill or IV vasodilator stress (dipyridamole [Persantine[®]], adenosine)
- images of the heart obtained during stress and at rest 3-4 h later
 - fixed defect: impaired perfusion at rest and during stress (infarcted/hibernating)
 - reversible defect: impaired perfusion only during stress (ischemic)
- tracers
 - thallium-201 (²⁰¹Tl, a K⁺ analogue)
 - technetium-99 (⁹⁹Tc)-labelled tracer (sestamibi/Cardiolite[®] or hexamibi/Myoview[®])

STRESS ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

- see *Stress Echocardiography*, C12

INDICATIONS FOR STRESS TESTING

- exercise ECG
 - initial evaluation in patients who are able to exercise
- exercise stress echo
 - when ECG is uninterpretable
 - intermediate pre-test probability with normal/equivocal exercise ECG
 - post-ACS when used to decide on potential efficacy of revascularization
 - to evaluate the clinical significance of valvular heart disease
- dobutamine stress echo (DSE)
 - pharmacologic stress for patients who are physically unable to exercise; same indications as exercise stress echo
 - low dose DSE can be used to assess myocardial viability and for assessing aortic stenosis with LV systolic dysfunction
- exercise MPI
 - when ECG is uninterpretable
 - intermediate pre-test probability with normal/equivocal exercise ECG
 - in patients with previous imaging whose symptoms have changed
 - to diagnose ischemia
- dipyridamole/adenosine MPI
 - to diagnose CAD in possible ACS patients with non-diagnostic ECG and negative serum biomarkers
 - when ECG is uninterpretable due to LBBB or V-paced rhythm
 - among patients unable to exercise, with the same indications as exercise MPI

**Important Prognostic Factor
Duke Treadmill Score (DTS)****Weighted Index Score:**

- Treadmill exercise time using standard Bruce protocol
- Maximum net ST segment deviation (depression or elevation)
- Exercise-induced angina provides diagnostic and prognostic information (such as 1 yr mortality)

DTS = exercise time – (5 x MaxST) – (4 x angina index)

Angina index: 0 (no angina), 1 (angina but not exercise-limiting), 2 (exercise-limiting angina)

DTS ≥ 5 : 0.25% 1 yr mortality

DTS 4 to -10: 1.25% 1 yr mortality

DTS ≤ -11 : 5.25% 1 yr mortality

Ann Intern Med 1987;106:793-800



Patients with normal imaging (nuclear perfusion or stress echo) studies at peak stress have a <1%/yr incidence of death or nonfatal MI and are thus often spared further invasive evaluation

Cardiac Catheterization and Angiography

- risks of procedure related complications: vascular injury (including dissection), renal failure, stroke, MI
- mortality rate 0.1-0.2%
- invasive: catheters are introduced percutaneously into arterial and venous circulation under conscious sedation and contrast is injected
- arterial access most commonly through the femoral artery; radial approach gaining favor especially for obese patients and outpatients dependent on driving and ambulation
- venous access through the femoral vein or internal jugular vein (for patients also undergoing right heart catheterization)
- same day procedure as outpatient
 - indications for prehospitalization: anticoagulation, renal failure, diabetes, contrast allergy
- catheterization permits direct measurement of intracardiac pressures, transvalvular and mean peak pressure gradients, valve areas, cardiac output, shunt data, oxygen saturations, and visualization of coronary arteries, cardiac chambers, and great vessels
- angiography may provide valuable information regarding lesion severity, complexity, location, and prognosis

Right Heart Catheterization (Swan-Ganz Catheter)

- right atrial, right ventricular, and pulmonary artery pressures are recorded
- can also be used to measure the Cardiac Index (CI)
 - $CI = CO / \text{Body Surface Area}$
 - cardiac index is a measure of cardiac function
 - ♦ $<1.8 \text{ L/min/m}^2$ usually means cardiogenic shock
 - ♦ $2.6\text{--}4.2 \text{ L/min/m}^2$ is considered normal
- pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP)
 - obtained by advancing the catheter to wedge in the distal pulmonary artery
 - ♦ records pressure measured from the pulmonary venous system
 - ♦ in the absence of pulmonary venous disease reflects left atrial pressure

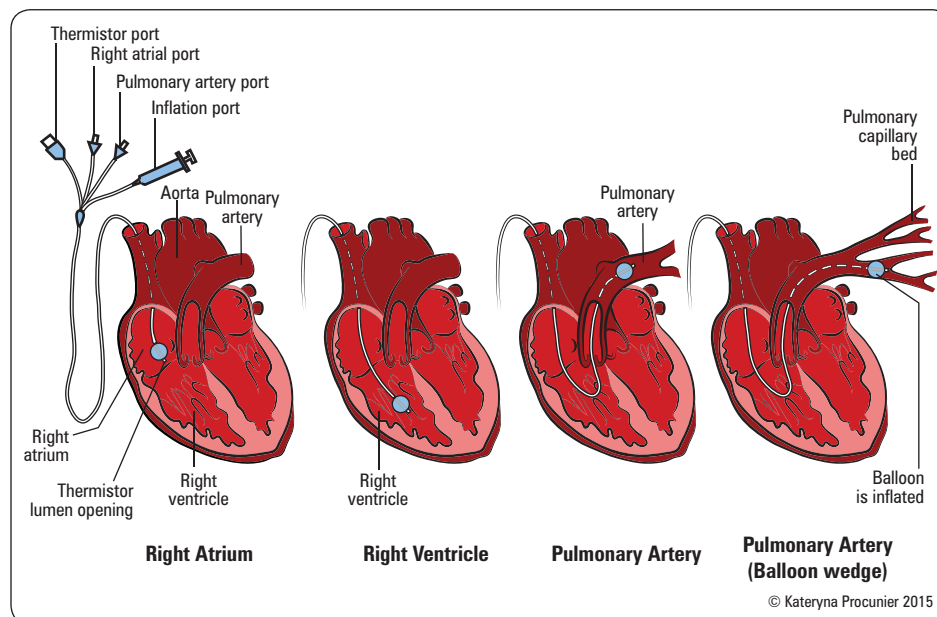


Figure 17. Swan-Ganz catheter placement

Left Heart Catheterization

- systolic and end-diastolic pressure tracings recorded
- LV size, wall motion and ejection fraction can be assessed by injecting contrast into the LV (left ventriculography) via femoral/radial artery catheterization
- cardiac output (measured by the Fick oxygen method or the indicator dilution method)

Coronary Angiography

- coronary vasculature accessed via the coronary ostia
- contraindicated in severe renal failure (due to contrast agent toxicity) – must check renal status

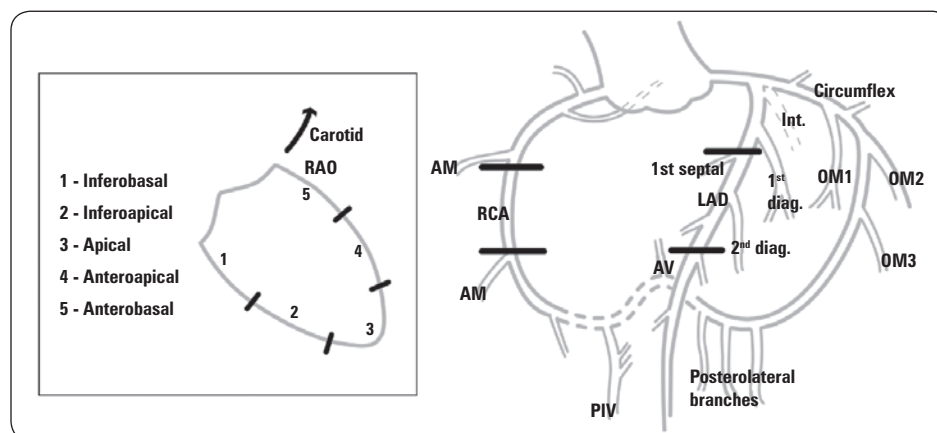


Figure 18. Coronary angiogram schematic

AM = acute marginal; LAD = left anterior descending; OM = obtuse marginal; RCA = right coronary artery



Chambers	Pressure (systolic; mmHg)
Right atrium/central venous	1-8
Right ventricle	1-8 (15-30)
Pulmonary artery	4-12 (15-30)
Left atrium/pulmonary capillary wedge	4-12
Left ventricle end diastolic	4-12



ACC/AHA 2011 Recommended Indications for Coronary Angiography

- Disabling (CCS classes III and IV) chronic stable angina despite medical therapy
- High-risk criteria on clinical assessment or non-invasive testing
- Serious ventricular arrhythmia or CHF
- Uncertain diagnosis or prognosis after non-invasive testing
- Inability to undergo non-invasive testing



Coronary Angiography

Gold standard for localizing and quantifying CAD



Hemodynamically significant stenosis is defined as 70% or more narrowing of the luminal diameter

Diagnostic Catheterization

- complications for diagnostic catheterization <1%
- inadequate diagnostic procedures occur in fewer than 1% of cases
- provocative pharmacological agents can be used to unmask pathology
 - fluid loading may unmask latent pericardial constriction
 - afterload reduction or inotropic stimulation may be used to increase the outflow tract gradient in HCM
 - coronary vasoreactive agents (e.g. methylergonovine, acetylcholine)
 - a variety of pulmonary vasoreactive agents in primary pulmonary HTN (e.g. oxygen, calcium channel blockers, adenosine, nitric oxide, or prostacyclin)

Contrast-Enhanced CT Coronary Angiography

- fast ECG-synchronized multi-slice CT image acquisition in the heart has enabled non-invasive imaging of the coronary arterial tree
- often used to assess coronary artery and previous graft stenosis/viability that could not be seen during coronary angiography
- sensitivity = 85%, specificity = 90% for the diagnosis of obstructive coronary disease with >50% stenosis

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

- offers high spatial resolution, eliminates the need for iodinated contrast, and does not involve exposure to ionizing radiation
- valuable in assessment of congenital cardiac anomalies, abnormalities of the aorta, and assessment of viable myocardium

CARDIAC DISEASE**Arrhythmias****Mechanisms of Arrhythmias****(I) Alterations in Impulse Formation****A. Abnormal Automaticity**

- automaticity is a property of certain cardiomyocytes to spontaneously depolarize to their threshold voltage to generate action potentials in a rhythmic fashion
- under normal circumstances only cells in the specialized conduction system (SA node, AV node, and ventricular conduction system) exhibit natural automaticity. These cells are pacemaking cells. The automaticity of these cells can become abnormally increased or decreased
- in disease (e.g. post-MI ventricular ischemia) cells in the myocardium outside the conduction system may inappropriately acquire the property of automaticity and contribute to abnormal depolarization. If these ectopic generators depolarize at a rate that is greater than the SA node, they assume pacemaking control and become the source of abnormal rhythm
- automaticity can be influenced by:
 - ♦ neurohormonal tone (sympathetic and parasympathetic stimulation)
 - ♦ abnormal metabolic conditions (hypoxia, acidosis, hypothermia)
 - ♦ electrolyte abnormalities
 - ♦ drugs (e.g. digitalis)
 - ♦ local ischemia/infarction
 - ♦ other cardiac pathology
- this mechanism is responsible for the accelerated idioventricular rhythm and ventricular tachycardia that often occurs 24-72 h post MI

B. Triggered Activity due to Afterdepolarizations**1. Early Afterdepolarizations**

- occur in the context of action potential prolongation
- consequence of the membrane potential becoming more positive during repolarization (e.g. not returning to baseline)
- result in self-maintaining depolarizing oscillations of action potential, generating a tachyarrhythmia (e.g. new baseline voltage is greater than threshold, which automatically triggers a new action potential after the refractory period ends)
- basis for the degeneration of QT prolongation, either congenital or acquired, into Torsades de Pointes

2. Delayed Afterdepolarizations

- occur after the action potential has fully repolarized, but before the next usual action potential, thus called a delayed afterdepolarization
- commonly occurs in situations of high intracellular calcium (digitalis intoxication, ischemia) or during enhanced catecholamine stimulation (e.g. "twitchy" pacemaker cells)

(II) Alterations in Impulse Conduction

A. Re-Entry Circuits

- the presence of self-sustaining re-entry circuit causes rapid repeated depolarizations in a region of myocardium (see Figure 26, C21, for an example in the context of AV nodal re-entrant tachycardia)
 - e.g. myocardium that is infarcted/ischemic will consist of non-excitable and partially excitable zones which will promote the formation of re-entry circuits

B. Conduction Block

- ischemia, fibrosis, trauma, and drugs can cause transient, permanent, unidirectional or bidirectional block
- most common cause of block is due to refractory myocardium (cardiomyocytes are in refractory period or zone of myocardium unexcitable due to fibrosis)
- if block occurs along the specialized conduction system distal zones of the conduction system can assume pacemaking control
- conduction block can lead to bradycardia or tachycardia when impaired conduction leads to re-entry phenomenon

C. Bypass Tracts

- normally the only conducting tract from the atria to the ventricles is the AV node into the His-Purkinje system
- congenital/acquired accessory conducting tracts bypass the AV node and facilitate premature ventricular activation before normal AV node conduction
- see *Pre-Excitation Syndromes*, C21

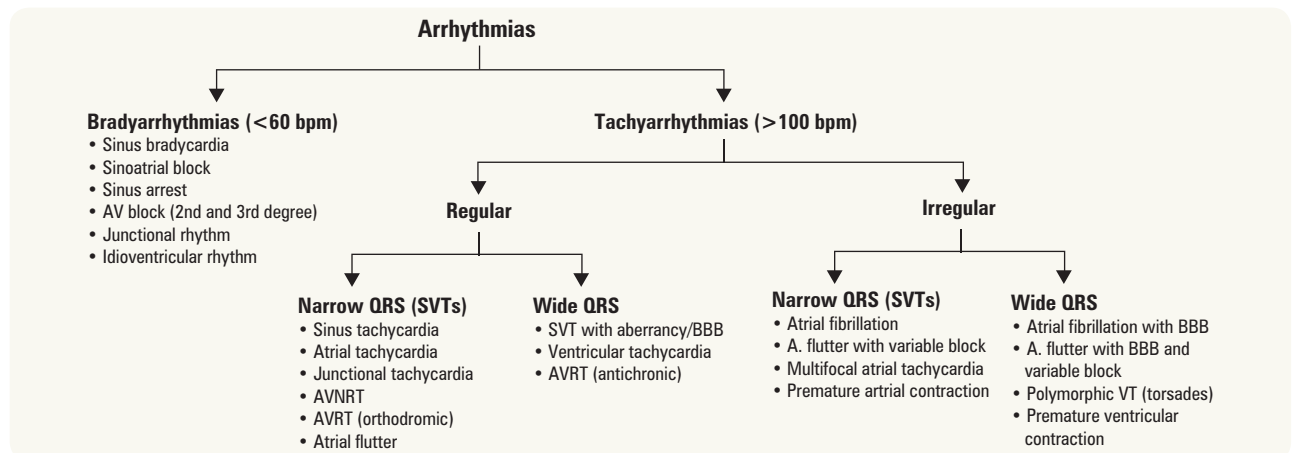


Figure 19. Clinical approach to arrhythmias

Bradyarrhythmias

SA NODAL DYSFUNCTION

Sinus Bradycardia

- P axis normal (P waves positive in I and aVF)
- rate <60 bpm
- marked sinus bradycardia (<50 bpm) may be seen in normal adults, particularly athletes, and in elderly individuals
- caused by
 - increased vagal tone or vagal stimulation
 - vomiting
 - episodes of myocardial ischemia or infarction (inferior MI)
 - sick sinus syndrome
 - increased intracranial pressure
 - hypothyroidism
 - hypothermia
 - drugs (β-blockers, calcium channel blockers, etc.)



Bradyarrhythmias
• Examples

- treatment: if symptomatic, atropine during acute episodes; pacing for sick sinus syndrome; if drug-induced, reduction or withdrawal of drugs

Sinus Block, Pause, and Arrest

- three disorders involving the SA node in which the sinus pacemaker fires but the impulse fails to depolarize the atrial myocardium resulting in no initial P wave (and consequently no QRS complex, ST segment, or T wave)
- sinus block (SA block): a complete block or failure of the sinus node to depolarize the atria; the block can last one or more cardiac cycles and is a multiple of the normal P-P interval
- sinus pause: a delay in the formation of a sinus impulse in the SA node resulting in a temporary pause (usually >3 s)
- sinus arrest: a longer delay in the formation of a sinus impulse in the SA node
 - there is no clear cut-off between sinus pause vs. arrest – if the pause lasts greater than 3x the normal P-P interval then it may be called an arrest
 - the P-P prolongation is not phasic or gradual (unlike sinus arrhythmia) and is not a multiple of the normal P-P interval (unlike sino-atrial block)
- escape beats or rhythm may occur:
 - atrial escape: P waves with abnormal morphology
 - junctional escape: P waves not seen, or follow the QRS (retrograde P), rate 40-60 bpm
 - ventricular escape: no P wave; wide, abnormal QRS; slow rate 20-40 bpm

Sick Sinus Syndrome

- characterized by sinus node dysfunction (marked bradycardia, sinus pause/arrest, sinoatrial block), mainly in the elderly
 - when symptomatic, electronic pacemaker is indicated
- frequently associated with episodes of atrial tachyarrhythmias (“tachy-brady syndrome”)
- usually require a combination of a pacemaker for bradycardia and medications (β-blocker, calcium channel blocker, and/or digoxin, initiated after pacemaker insertion) for tachycardia



Sinus Arrhythmia (SA)

- Normal P waves, with variation of the P-P interval by >120 msec due to varying rate of SA node

Respiratory SA

- Seen more often in young adults (<30 yr old)
- Normal, results from changes in autonomic tone during respiratory cycle
- Rate increases with inspiration, slows with expiration

Non-Respiratory SA

- Seen more often in the elderly
- Can occur in the normal heart; if marked may be due to sinus node dysfunction (e.g. in heart disease, or after digitalis toxicity)
- Usually does not require treatment

AV Conduction Blocks

First Degree AV Block

- prolonged PR interval (>200 msec)
- frequently found among otherwise healthy adults
- no treatment required

Second Degree AV Block

- some of the atrial impulses are not conducted to the ventricles
- can describe block by ratio of number of P waves to number of QRS (e.g. 2:1, 3:1, 4:1 increases in severity)
- second degree AV block is further subdivided into Type I and Type II block:
 - Type I (Mobitz I) second degree AV block
 - ♦ a gradual prolongation of the PR interval precedes the failure of conduction of a P wave (Wenckebach phenomenon)
 - ♦ AV block is usually in AV node (proximal)
 - triggers (usually reversible): increased vagal tone (e.g. following surgery), RCA-mediated ischemia
 - not an indication for temporary or permanent pacing



Figure 20. Second degree AV block with Wenckebach phenomenon (Mobitz I) (4:3 conduction) (lead V₁)

- Type II (Mobitz II) second degree AV block
 - ♦ the PR interval is constant; there is an abrupt failure of conduction of a P wave
 - ♦ AV block is usually distal to the AV node (i.e. bundle of His)
 - ♦ increased risk of high grade or 3rd degree AV block

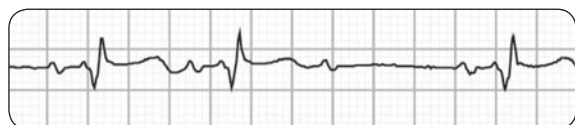


Figure 21. Second degree AV block (Mobitz II) (3:2 conduction) (lead V₁)

2:1 AV Block

- often not possible to determine whether the block is type I or type II
- prolonged or repeated recordings may clarify the diagnosis

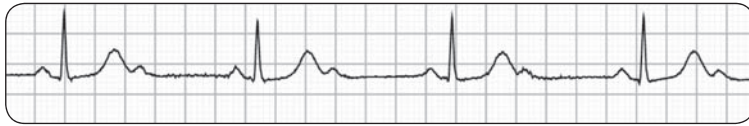


Figure 22. 2:1 AV block (lead II)

Third Degree AV Block

- complete failure of conduction of the supraventricular impulses to the ventricles
- ventricular depolarization initiated by an escape pacemaker distal to the block
- QRS can be narrow or wide (junctional vs. ventricular escape rhythm)
- P-P and R-R intervals are constant, variable PR intervals
- no relationship between P waves and QRS complexes (P waves “marching through”)
- management (see *Electrical Pacing*, C24)

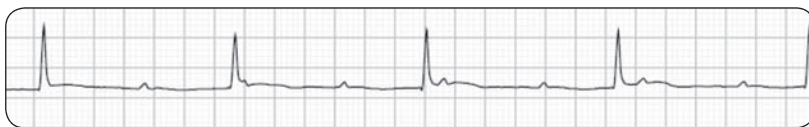


Figure 23. Third degree AV block (complete heart block) (lead II)

Supraventricular Tachyarrhythmias



Tachyarrhythmias
• Examples

Presentation for SVT (and pre-excitation syndromes)

- presentation can include: palpitations, dizziness, dyspnea, chest discomfort, presyncope/syncope
- may precipitate CHF, hypotension, or ischemia in patients with underlying disease
- untreated tachycardias can cause cardiomyopathy (rare, potentially reversible with treatment of SVTs)
- includes supraventricular and ventricular rhythms

Supraventricular Tachyarrhythmias

- tachyarrhythmias that originate in the atria or AV junction
- this term is used when a more specific diagnosis of mechanism and site of origin cannot be made
- characterized by narrow QRS, unless there is pre-existing bundle branch block or aberrant ventricular conduction (abnormal conduction due to a change in cycle length)

Sinus Tachycardia

- sinus rhythm with rate >100 bpm
- occurs in normal subjects with increased sympathetic tone (exercise, emotions, pain), alcohol use, caffeinated beverages, drugs (e.g. β -adrenergic agonists, anticholinergic drugs, etc.)
- etiology: fever, hypotension, hypovolemia, anemia, thyrotoxicosis, CHF, MI, shock, PE, etc.
- treatment: treat underlying disease; consider β -blocker if symptomatic, calcium channel blocker if β -blockers contraindicated

Premature Beats

- premature atrial contraction
 - ectopic supraventricular beat originating in the atria
 - P wave morphology of the PAC usually differs from that of a normal sinus beat
- junctional premature beat
 - ectopic supraventricular beat that originates in the vicinity of the AV node
 - P wave is usually not seen or an inverted P wave is seen and may be before or closely follow the QRS complex (referred to as a retrograde, or “traveling backward” P wave)
- treatment usually not required

Atrial Flutter

- rapid, regular atrial depolarization from a macro re-entry circuit within the atrium (most commonly the right atrium)
- atrial rate 250-350 bpm, usually 300 bpm
- AV block usually occurs; it may be fixed (2:1, 3:1, 4:1, etc.) or variable
- etiology: CAD, thyrotoxicosis, mitral valve disease, cardiac surgery, COPD, PE, pericarditis
- ECG: sawtooth flutter waves (most common type of flutter) in inferior leads (II, III, aVF); narrow QRS (unless aberrancy); commonly see HR of 150

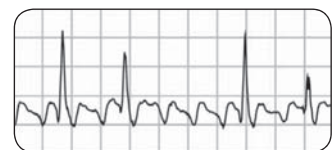


Figure 24. Atrial flutter with variable block

- in atrial flutter with 2:1 block, carotid sinus massage (first check for bruits), Valsalva maneuver, or adenosine may decrease AV conduction and bring out flutter waves
- treatment of acute atrial flutter
 - acute and if unstable (e.g. hypotension, CHF, angina): electrical cardioversion
 - if unstable (e.g. hypotension, CHF, angina): electrical cardioversion
 - if stable
 - (1) rate control: β -blocker, diltiazem, verapamil, or digoxin
 - (2) chemical cardioversion: sotalolol, amiodarone, type I antiarrhythmics, or electrical cardioversion
 - anticoagulation guidelines same as for patients with AFib
- treatment of long-term atrial flutter: antiarrhythmics, catheter radiofrequency (RF) ablation (success rate dependent on site of origin of atrial flutter – i.e. whether right-sided isthmus-dependent or left-sided origin)

Multifocal Atrial Tachycardia

- irregular rhythm caused by presence of 3 or more atrial foci (may mimic AFib)
- atrial rate 100-200 bpm – at least 3 distinct P wave morphologies and PR intervals vary, some P waves may not be conducted
- occurs more commonly in patients with COPD, and hypoxemia; less commonly in patients with hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, sepsis, theophylline, or digitalis toxicity
- treatment: treat the underlying cause; calcium channel blockers may be used (e.g. diltiazem, verapamil), β -blockers may be contraindicated because of severe pulmonary disease
- no role for electrical cardioversion, antiarrhythmics, or ablation

Atrial Fibrillation

- see 2014 AHA/ACC/HRS guideline for the management of patients with atrial fibrillation for details
- most common sustained arrhythmia
- incidence increases with age (10% of population >80 yr old)
- symptoms: palpitations, fatigue, syncope, may precipitate or worsen heart failure
- classification
 - chronic/permanent: continuous atrial fibrillation that is unresponsive to cardioversion; cardioversion will not be reattempted
 - persistent: atrial fibrillation sustained for more than 7 d or atrial fibrillation that terminates only with cardioversion
 - paroxysmal: episodes that terminate spontaneously or with intervention within 7 d of onset; may recur with variable frequency
 - nonvalvular: not caused by valvular disease, prosthetic heart valves, or valve repair
 - secondary: caused by a separate underlying condition or event (e.g. myocardial infarction, cardiac surgery, pulmonary disease, hyperthyroidism)
 - may be associated with thromboembolic events (stroke risk can be assessed by CHADS2 score in nonvalvular AFib)
- initiation
 - single circuit re-entry and/or ectopic foci act as aberrant generators producing atrial tachycardia (350-600 bpm)
 - impulses conduct irregularly across the atrial myocardium to give rise to fibrillation
 - in some cases, ectopic foci have also been mapped to the pulmonary vein ostia and can be ablated
- maintenance
 - the tachycardia causes atrial structural and electrophysiological remodelling changes that further promote AFib; the longer the patient is in AFib the more difficult it is to convert back to sinus rhythm
- consequences
 - the AV node irregularly filters incoming atrial impulses producing an irregular ventricular response of <200 bpm and the tachycardia leads to suboptimal cardiac output
 - fibrillatory conduction of the atria promotes blood stasis increasing the risk of thrombus formation – AFib is an important risk factor for stroke

Table 5. CHADS2 Risk Prediction for Non-Valvular AFib and Refer to AHA/ACC/HRS AFib Guidelines 2014 for more details

Risk Factor	Points	CHADS2 Score	Stroke Risk (%/Yr)	Anticoagulation Recommendation
Congestive Heart Failure	1	0	1.9 (low)	ASA 81-325 mg OD
HTN	1	1	2.8 (low-mod)	oral anticoagulants*
Age >75	1	2-3	4.0-5.9 (mod)	oral anticoagulants*
Diabetes	1	4-6	8.5-18.2 (high)	oral anticoagulants*
Stroke/TIA (prior)	2			

JAMA 2001;285:2864-70 and Can J Cardiol 2012;28:125-136

Oral anticoagulants *currently includes warfarin (INR 2-3) and direct oral anticoagulants (DOACs) e.g. apixaban, dabigatran, rivaroxaban



CHA2DS2-VASc Score

The European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and the Canadian Cardiovascular Society (CCS) have incorporated the Birmingham 2009 schema (CHA2DS2-VASc) for the prediction of stroke risk in latest guidelines. The CHADS2 (Table 5) score is to be applied first; followed by the VASc schema if the score is <2 to further grade the risk of stroke in patients at low risk. A score of 0 indicates the patient is very low risk of stroke and may require either ASA alone or no antithrombotic therapy, with the latter preferred. A score of 1 indicates the utility of either ASA or an oral anticoagulant, with the latter preferred. A patient with a score of ≥ 2 should receive an oral anticoagulant. For more information, please see Focused 2012 Update of the CCS AFib Guidelines, Can J Cardiol 2012;28:125-136.



Rivaroxaban for Stroke Prevention in AFib – ROCKET-AF Trial

NEJM 2011;365:883-891

Study: Prospective, non-inferiority, double blind, RCT, median follow-up of 1.9 yr.

Population: 14,264 patients with AFib (mean CHADS2 = 3.5). Patients either had previous thromboembolism or ≥ 3 risk factors.

Intervention: Patients were randomized to receiving rivaroxaban or warfarin.

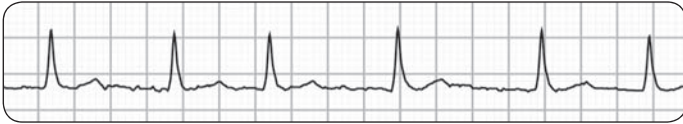
Outcome: Composite of strokes and systemic thromboembolic event (STE).

Results: The hazard ratio of the primary outcome for rivaroxaban compared to warfarin was 0.88; 95% CI 0.74-1.03; $p < 0.001$ for noninferiority; $p = 0.12$ for superiority. Furthermore, the hazard ratio for major and non-major, but clinically relevant, bleeding was 1.03; 95% CI 0.96-1.11; $p = 0.44$. There were also significant reductions in intracranial hemorrhage (0.5% vs. 0.7%, $p = 0.02$) and fatal bleeding (0.2% vs. 0.5%, $p = 0.003$) for rivaroxaban.

Conclusions: In patients with AFib, rivaroxaban is non-inferior to warfarin for stroke prevention and major and non-major bleeding.

AFib on ECG

- no organized P waves due to rapid atrial activity (350-600 bpm) causing a chaotic fibrillatory baseline
- irregularly irregular ventricular response (typically 100-180 bpm), narrow QRS (unless aberrancy or previous BBB)
- wide QRS complexes due to aberrancy may occur following a long-short cycle sequence ("Ashman phenomenon")
- loss of atrial contraction, thus no "a" wave seen in JVP, no S4 on auscultation

**Figure 25. Atrial fibrillation (lead II)****Management**

Major objectives (RACE): all patients with AF (paroxysmal, persistent, or permanent), should be stratified using a predictive index for stroke risk and for the risk of bleeding, and most patients should receive either an oral anticoagulant or ASA (see Table 5)

1. **Rate control:** β -blockers, diltiazem, verapamil (in patients with heart failure: digoxin, amiodarone)
2. **Anticoagulation:** use either warfarin or direct oral anticoagulant (DOACs) e.g. apixaban, dabigatran, rivaroxaban, to prevent thromboembolism
3. **Cardioversion (electrical)**
 - if AFib <24-48 h, can usually cardiovert without anticoagulation if at low thromboembolic risk
 - if AFib >24-48 h, anticoagulate for 3 wk prior and 4 wk after cardioversion due to risk of unstable intra-atrial thrombus
 - if patient unstable (hypotensive, active angina due to tachycardia, uncontrolled heart failure) should cardiovert immediately
4. **Etiology**
 - HTN, CAD, valvular disease, pericarditis, cardiomyopathy, myocarditis, ASD, post-operative, PE, COPD, thyrotoxicosis, sick sinus syndrome, alcohol ("holiday heart")
 - may present in young patients without demonstrable disease ("lone AFib") and in the elderly without underlying heart disease

Additional Management Points Regarding AFib

- studies of patients with AFib suggest that there is no difference in long-term survival when treating patients with a rhythm-control vs. rate-control strategy
- however, many patients with a significant underlying structural heart lesion (e.g. valve disease, cardiomyopathy) will not tolerate AFib well (since may be dependent on atrial kick) and these patients should be cardioverted (chemical or electrical) as soon as possible

Newly Discovered AFib

- anticoagulants may be beneficial if high risk for stroke
- if the episode is self-limited and not associated with severe symptoms, no need for antiarrhythmic drugs
- if AFib persists, 2 options
 1. rate control and anticoagulation (as indicated above)
 2. cardioversion (as above)

Recurrent AFib/Permanent AFib

- if episodes are brief or minimally symptomatic, antiarrhythmic drugs may be avoided; rate control and anticoagulation are appropriate
- patients who have undergone at least one attempt to restore sinus rhythm may remain in AFib after recurrence; permanent AFib may be accepted (with rate control and antithrombotics as indicated by CHADS2 score) in certain clinical situations
- if symptoms are bothersome or episodes are prolonged, antiarrhythmic drugs should be used
 - no or minimal heart disease: flecainide, propafenone, or sotalol
 - LV dysfunction: amiodarone
 - CAD: β -blockers, amiodarone

AV Nodal Re-Entrant Tachycardia

- re-entrant circuit using dual pathways (fast conducting β -fibers and slow conducting α -fibers) within or near the AV node; often found in the absence of structural heart disease – cause is commonly idiopathic, although familial AVNRT has been reported
- sudden onset and offset
- fast regular rhythm: rate 150-250 bpm
- usually initiated by a supraventricular or ventricular premature beat

**Atrial Fibrillation – AFFIRM Trial**

NEJM 2002;347:1825-1833

Study: Randomized, multicenter trial with mean follow-up of 3.5 yr.

Population: 4,060 patients (mean age 70 yr, 61% male, 89% white) with AF and a high risk of stroke or death.

Intervention: Rate control (β -blockers, calcium channel blockers, or digoxin alone or in combination) vs. rhythm control (antiarrhythmic drug chosen by the treating physician).

Primary Outcome: All cause mortality.

Results: There was no difference in mortality or disabling stroke, anoxic encephalopathy, major bleeding, and cardiac arrest between the two groups. There were more incidents of hospitalizations (80.1% vs. 73%, $p < 0.001$) and adverse events (Torsades de Pointes (12 vs. 2, $p = 0.007$), pulseless or bradycardic arrest (9 vs. 1, $p = 0.01$), pulmonary event (108 vs. 24, $p < 0.001$), gastrointestinal event (127 vs. 35, $p < 0.001$), prolonged QT interval (31 vs. 4, $p \leq 0.001$), bradycardia (105 vs. 64, $p = 0.001$) in the rhythm-control group.

Conclusion: Rate-control was as effective as rhythm-control in AF and was better tolerated. There were more hospitalization incidents in the rhythm-control group.

**Oral Anticoagulants vs. Antiplatelet Therapy for Preventing Stroke in Patients with Non-Valvular Atrial Fibrillation and No History of Stroke or Transient Ischemic Attacks**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;3:CD006186

Study: Cochrane DB Syst Rev 8 RCTs with mean 1.9 yr of follow-up.

Population: 9,598 total patients with non-valvular AF and no history of stroke or transient ischemic attack.

Intervention: Long-term adjusted-dose warfarin vs. ASA (dose ranging from 75-325 mg).

Outcome: All cause mortality, all stroke, vascular death, MIs.

Results: Dose-adjusted warfarin therapy significantly reduced all stroke (OR 0.68, 95% CI 0.54-0.85), ischemic stroke (OR 0.53, 95% CI 0.41-0.68), and systemic emboli risk (OR 0.48, 95% CI 0.25-0.90). There was no significant difference in disabling or fatal strokes, MI, vascular death, or all cause mortality. There was a significantly increased risk of intracranial hemorrhage with warfarin therapy vs. ASA (OR 1.98, 95% CI 1.20-3.28).

Conclusion: Long-term adjusted-dose warfarin significantly reduces all stroke and embolic risks but does not reduce risk of disability or mortality and carries a significant intracranial hemorrhage risk. The threshold of benefit for anticoagulation vs. antiplatelet therapy remains controversial.

- AVNRT accounts for 60-70% of all paroxysmal SVTs
- retrograde P waves may be seen but are usually lost in the QRS complex
- treatment
 - acute: Valsalva or carotid massage, adenosine is first choice if unresponsive to vagal maneuvers; if no response, try metoprolol, digoxin, diltiazem, electrical cardioversion if patient hemodynamically unstable (hypotension, angina, or CHF)
 - long-term: 1st line – β -blocker, diltiazem, digoxin; 2nd line – flecainide, propafenone; 3rd line – catheter ablation



The carotid massage is a constant pressure directed posteriorly against the carotid artery for 5-10 s; always listen for bruits before palpation

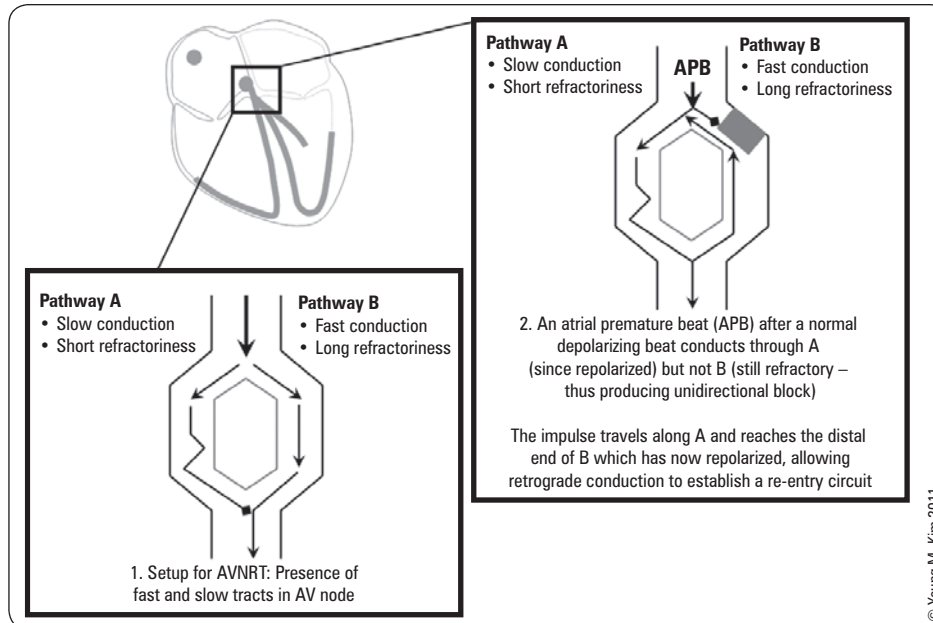


Figure 26. Mechanism for AVNRT

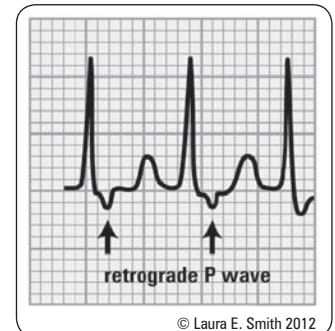


Figure 27. AVNRT

Pre-Excitation Syndromes

- refers to a subset of SVTs mediated by an accessory pathway which can lead to ventricular pre-excitation

Wolff-Parkinson-White Syndrome

- congenital defect present in 1.5-2/1,000 of the general population
- an accessory conduction tract (Bundle of Kent; can be in right or left atrium) abnormally allows early electrical activation of part of one ventricle
- impulses travel at a greater conduction velocity across the Bundle of Kent thereby effectively 'bypassing' AV node
- since the ventricles are activated earlier, the ECG shows early ventricular depolarization in the form of initial slurring of the QRS complex – the so-called "delta wave"
- atrial impulses that conduct to the ventricles through both the Bundle of Kent and the normal AV node/His-Purkinje system generate a broad "fusion complex"
- ECG features of WPW
 - PR interval <120 msec
 - delta wave: slurred upstroke of the QRS (the leads with the delta wave vary with site of bypass)
 - widening of the QRS complex due to premature activation
 - secondary ST segment and T wave changes
 - tachyarrhythmias may occur – most often AVRT and AFib

AFib in WPW Patients

- AFib is the index arrhythmia in up to 20% of patients with WPW syndrome
 - it is usually intermittent rather than persistent or permanent
- rapid atrial depolarizations in AFib are conducted through the bypass tract which is not able to filter impulses like the AV node can
- consequently the ventricular rate becomes extremely rapid (>200 bpm) and the QRS complex widens
- treatment: electrical cardioversion, IV procainamide, or IV amiodarone
 - do not use drugs that slow AV node conduction (digoxin, β -blockers) as this may cause preferential conduction through the bypass tract and precipitate VF
 - long-term: ablation of bypass tract if possible

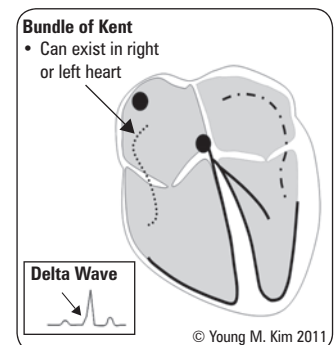


Figure 28. Accessory pathway conduction in WPW. Early ventricular activation leads to the appearance of a delta wave (slurred upstroke of the QRS) on the ECG before usual conduction across the AV node

AV Re-Entrant Tachycardia

- re-entrant loop via accessory pathway and normal conduction system
- initiated by a premature atrial or ventricular complex
- **orthodromic** AVRT: stimulus from a premature complex travels up the bypass tract (V to A) and down the AV node (A to V) with narrow QRS complex (no delta wave because stimulus travels through normal conduction system)
 - comprises 95% of the reentrant tachycardias associated with WPW syndrome
- **antidromic** AVRT: more rarely the stimulus goes up the AV node (V to A) and down the bypass tract (A to V); wide and abnormal QRS as ventricular activation is only via the bypass tract
- treatment
 - acute: similar to AVNRT except avoid long-acting AV nodal blockers, e.g. digoxin and verapamil
 - long-term: for recurrent arrhythmias ablation of the bypass tract is recommended
 - ♦ drugs such as flecainide and procainamide can be used

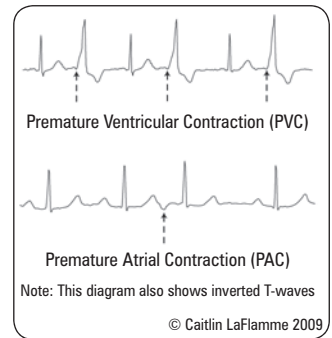


Figure 29. PVC (with bigeminy pattern) and PAC. Note the difference between the normal QRS/T wave and the PVC-generated QRS/T wave

Ventricular Tachyarrhythmias

Premature Ventricular Contraction (PVC) or Ventricular Premature Beat (VPB)

- QRS width >120 msec, no preceding P wave, bizarre QRS morphology
- origin: LBBB morphology of VT = RV origin; RBBB morphology of VT = LV origin
- PVCs may be benign but are usually significant in the following situations:
 - consecutive ($\geq 3 = VT$) or multiform (varied origin)
 - PVC falling on the T wave of the previous beat ("R on T phenomenon"): may precipitate ventricular tachycardia or VF

Accelerated Idioventricular Rhythm

- ectopic ventricular rhythm with rate 50-100 bpm
- more frequently occurs in the presence of sinus bradycardia and is easily overdriven by a faster supraventricular rhythm
- frequently occurs in patients with acute MI or other types of heart disease (cardiomyopathy, hypertensive, valvular) but it does not affect prognosis and does not usually require treatment

Ventricular Tachycardia

- 3 or more consecutive ectopic ventricular complexes
 - rate >100 bpm (usually 140-200)
 - ventricular flutter: if rate >200 bpm and complexes resemble a sinusoidal pattern
 - "sustained VT" if it lasts longer than 30 s
 - ECG characteristics: wide regular QRS tachycardia (QRS usually >140 msec)
 - AV dissociation; bizarre QRS pattern
 - also favor Dx of VT: left axis or right axis deviation, nonspecific intraventricular block pattern, monophasic or biphasic QRS in V1 with RBBB, QRS concordance in V1-V6
 - occasionally during VT supraventricular impulses may be conducted to the ventricles generating QRS complexes with normal or aberrant supraventricular morphology ("ventricular capture") or summation pattern ("fusion complexes")
- **monomorphic VT**
 - identical complexes with uniform morphology
 - more common than polymorphic VT
 - typically result from intraventricular re-entry circuit
 - potential causes: chronic infarct scarring, acute MI/ischemia, cardiomyopathies, myocarditis, arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia, idiopathic, drugs (e.g. cocaine), electrolyte disturbances
- **polymorphic VT**
 - complexes with constantly changing morphology, amplitude, and polarity
 - more frequently associated with hemodynamic instability due to faster rates (typically 200-250 bpm) vs. monomorphic VT
 - potential causes: acute MI, severe or silent ischemia, and predisposing factors for QT prolongation (see *Torsades de Pointes*, C23)
- treatment
 - sustained VT (>30 s) is an emergency, requiring immediate treatment
 - hemodynamic compromise: electrical cardioversion
 - no hemodynamic compromise: electrical cardioversion, lidocaine, amiodarone, type Ia agents (procainamide, quinidine)

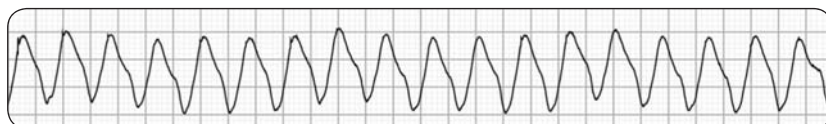


Figure 31. Ventricular tachycardia (monomorphic)

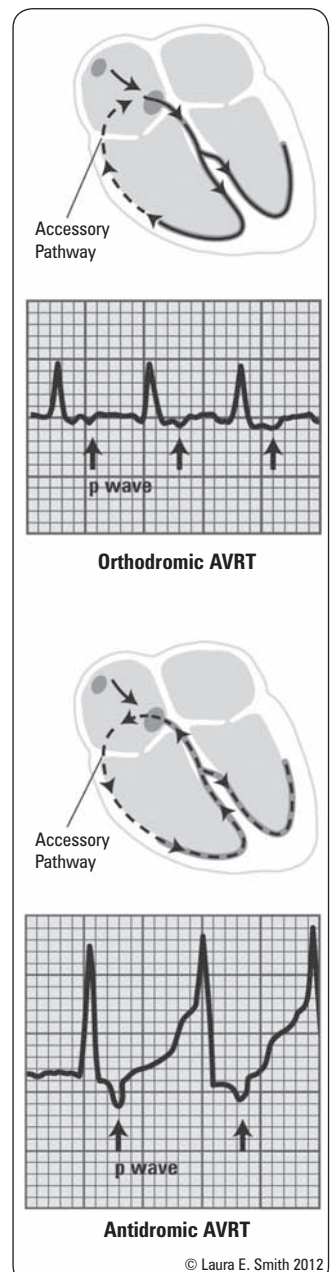


Figure 30. Orthodromic vs. antidromic AVRT

Table 6. Wide Complex Tachycardia: Clues for Differentiating VT vs. SVT with Aberrancy*

Clinical Clues		ECG Clues	
Presenting symptoms	Not helpful	AV dissociation	VT
History of CAD and previous MI	VT	Capture or fusion beats	VT
Physical exam		QRS width > 140 msec	VT
Cannon "a" waves Variable S1	VT	Extreme axis deviation (left or right superior axis)	VT
Carotid sinus massage/adenosine terminates arrhythmia	SVT**	Positive QRS concordance (R wave across chest leads)	VT
		Negative QRS concordance (S wave across chest leads)	May suggest VT
		Axis shift during arrhythmia	VT (polymorphic)

*If patient > 65 yr and previous MI or structural heart disease, then chance of VT > 95%

**May terminate VT in some patients with no structural heart disease



Arrhythmias that May Present as a Wide QRS Tachycardia

- VT
- SVT with aberrant conduction (rate related)
- SVT with preexisting BBB or nonspecific intraventricular conduction defect
- AV conduction through a bypass tract in WPW patients during an atrial tachyarrhythmia (e.g. atrial flutter, atrial tachycardia)
- Antidromic AVRT in WPW patients (see *Pre-Excitation Syndromes*, C21)

Torsades de Pointes

- a variant of polymorphic VT that occurs in patients with baseline QT prolongation – “twisting of the points”
- looks like usual VT except that QRS complexes “rotate around the baseline” changing their axis and amplitude
- ventricular rate > 100 bpm, usually 150-300 bpm
- etiology: predisposition in patients with prolonged QT intervals
 - congenital long QT syndromes
 - drugs: e.g. class IA (quinidine), class III (sotalol), phenothiazines (TCAs), erythromycin, quinolones, antihistamines
 - electrolyte disturbances: hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia
 - nutritional deficiencies causing above electrolyte abnormalities
- treatment: IV magnesium, temporary pacing, isoproterenol and correct underlying cause of prolonged QT, electrical cardioversion if hemodynamic compromise

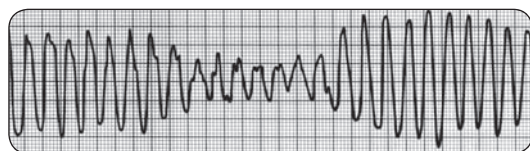


Figure 32. Torsades de pointes

Ventricular Fibrillation (VFib)

- chaotic ventricular arrhythmia, with very rapid irregular ventricular fibrillatory waves of varying morphology
- terminal event, unless advanced cardiac life-support (ACLS) procedures are promptly initiated to maintain ventilation and cardiac output, and electrical defibrillation is carried out
- most frequent cause of sudden death
- refer to ACLS algorithm for complete therapeutic guidelines

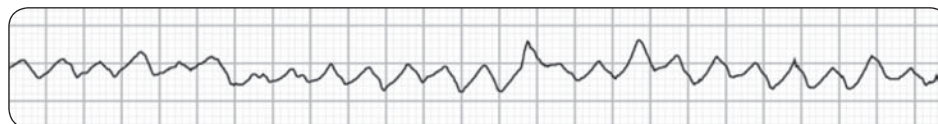


Figure 33. Ventricular fibrillation

Electrophysiology Studies

- invasive test for the investigation and treatment of cardiac rhythm disorders using intracardiac catheters
- provide detailed analysis of the arrhythmia mechanism and precise site of origin when ECG data are nondiagnostic or unobtainable
- bradyarrhythmias: define the mechanisms of SA node dysfunction and localize site of AV conduction block
- tachyarrhythmias: map for possible ablation or to assess inducibility of VT

Electrical Pacing

- the decision to implant a pacemaker usually is based on symptoms of a bradyarrhythmia or tachyarrhythmia in the setting of heart disease

Pacemaker Indications

- SA node dysfunction (most common): symptomatic bradycardia \pm hemodynamic instability
- common manifestations include: syncope, presyncope, or severe fatigue
- SA node dysfunction is commonly caused by: intrinsic disease within the SA node (e.g. idiopathic degeneration, fibrosis, ischemia, or surgical trauma), abnormalities in autonomic nervous system function, and drug effects
- AV nodal-infranodal block: Mobitz II, complete heart block

Pacemaker Complications

- complications related to surgical implantation include venous access (pneumothorax, hemothorax, air embolism), pacemaker leads (perforation, malposition), pocket hematomas and infection
- complications specific to the pacemaker include a failure to pace, failure to sense, pulse generator failure, pacemaker syndrome and pacemaker mediated tachycardia

Pacing Techniques

- temporary: transvenous (jugular, subclavian, femoral) or external (transcutaneous) pacing
- permanent: transvenous into RA, apex of RV, or both
- can sense and pace atrium, ventricle, or both
- new generation: rate responsive, able to respond to physiologic demand
- biventricular

Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillators

- sudden cardiac death (SCD) usually results from ventricular fibrillation (VFib), sometimes preceded by monomorphic or polymorphic ventricular tachycardia (VT)
- ICDs detect ventricular tachyarrhythmias and are highly effective in terminating VT/VFib and in aborting SCD
- mortality benefit vs. antiarrhythmics in secondary prevention
- benefit seen in patients with ischemic and non-ischemic cardiomyopathy, depressed left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF), prolonged QRS
- see *Heart Failure, C33* for current treatment recommendations

Catheter Ablation

Techniques

- radiofrequency (RF) energy: a low-voltage high-frequency form of electrical energy (similar to cautery); RF energy produces small, homogeneous, necrotic lesions approximately 5-7 mm in diameter and 3-5 mm in depth
- cryoablation: new technology which uses a probe with a tip that can decrease in temperature to -20°C and -70°C . Produces small, necrotic lesions similar to RF ablation. When brought to -20°C , the catheter tip reversibly freezes the area. Bringing the tip down to -70°C for 5 min permanently scars the tissue
 - advantage: can "test" areas before committing to an ablation
 - disadvantage: takes much longer than RF (5 min per cryoablation vs. 1 min per RF ablation)

Indications

- paroxysmal SVT
 - AVNRT: accounts for more than half of all cases
- accessory pathway (orthodromic reciprocating tachycardia): 30% of SVT
 - re-entrant rhythm, with an accessory AV connection as the retrograde limb
 - corrected by targeting the accessory pathway
- atrial flutter: flutter focus in RA
- AFib: potential role for pulmonary vein ablation
- ventricular tachycardia: focus arises from the right ventricular outflow tract and less commonly originates in the inferoseptal left ventricle near the apex (note: majority of cases of VT are due to scarring from previous MI and cannot be ablated)

Major Complications

- 1% of patients
- death: 0.1-0.2%



CCS Consensus Conference 2003: Assessment of the Cardiac Patient for Fitness to Drive and Fly – Executive Summary

Can J Cardiol 2004;20:1313-1323

In both primary and secondary prevention ICD patients with private driving licenses, no restrictions to drive directly following implantation or an inappropriate shock are warranted. However, following an appropriate shock these patients are at an increased risk to cause harm to other road users and therefore should be restricted to drive for a period of 2 and 4 mo, respectively. In addition, all ICD patients with commercial driving licenses have a substantial elevated risk to cause harm to other road users during the complete follow-up after both implantation and shock and should therefore be restricted to drive permanently.



Systematic Review: Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillators for Adults with Left Ventricular Systolic Dysfunction

Ann Intern Med 2007;147:251-262

Study: Meta-review of 12 RCTs used for ICD efficacy, 5 RCTs and 48 observational studies for effectiveness, and 21 RCTs and 43 observational studies for safety review.

Population: 8,516 patients for ICD efficacy, 26,840 patients for effectiveness, and 86,809 patients for safety review with left ventricular ejection fraction ≤ 0.35 .

Intervention: ICD implantation.

Outcomes: All-cause mortality and adverse events.

Results: ICDs reduced all-cause mortality by 20% (95% CI 10%-29%; $I^2=44.4\%$) with greatest reduction (54%) in sudden cardiac death (CI 37%-63%; $I^2=0\%$). Observational studies had a reduced relative risk of 0.54 for all-cause mortality vs. RCTs (CI 0.43-0.58, $I^2=60.4\%$). Rates of success of ICD implantation were 99% (CI 98.8%-99.3%) with a 1.2% (CI 0.9%-1.5%) chance of perimplantation death. Post-implantation complications (per 100 patient yr) were: 1.4 (CI 1.2-1.6) device malfunctions; 1.5 (CI 1.3-1.8) lead problems; 0.6 (CI 0.5-0.8) implant site infection and 19.1 (CI 16.5-22.0) inappropriate discharges in RCTs vs. a rate of 4.9 (CI 4.5-5.3) inappropriate discharges in observational studies.

Conclusion: ICDs are safe and effective in reducing mortality in adult patients with LV systolic dysfunction but carry significant risks of inappropriate discharges. Differences between RCTs and observational studies show that improved risk stratification of patients may further improve outcomes and reduce adverse events.

- cardiac: high grade AV block requiring permanent pacemaker (less risk with cryoablation), tamponade, pericarditis
- vascular: hematoma, vascular injury, thromboembolism, TIA/stroke
- pulmonary: PE

Ischemic Heart Disease

Epidemiology

- most common cause of cardiovascular morbidity and mortality
- atherosclerosis and thrombosis are the most important pathogenetic mechanisms
- M:F = 2:1 with all age groups included (Framingham study), 8:1 for age <40, 1:1 for age >70
 - according to the Framingham Heart Study, men develop coronary heart disease at a rate double that of women for age <60; incidence in women triples shortly after menopause
- peak incidence of symptomatic IHD is age 50-60 (men) and 60-70 (women)
- for primary prevention of ischemic heart disease please see [Family Medicine, FM7](#)



Table 7. Risk Factors and Markers for Atherosclerotic Heart Disease

Non-Modifiable Risk Factors	Modifiable Risk Factors	Markers of Disease
Age Male, postmenopausal female Family history (FHx) of MI* First degree male relative <55 First degree female relative <65	Hyperlipidemia* HTN* DM* Cigarette smoking* Metabolic syndrome Obesity Sedentary lifestyle Heavy alcohol intake	Elevated lipoprotein(a) Hyperhomocysteinemia Elevated high-sensitivity C-reactive protein (hsCRP) Coronary artery calcification

* Major risk factor

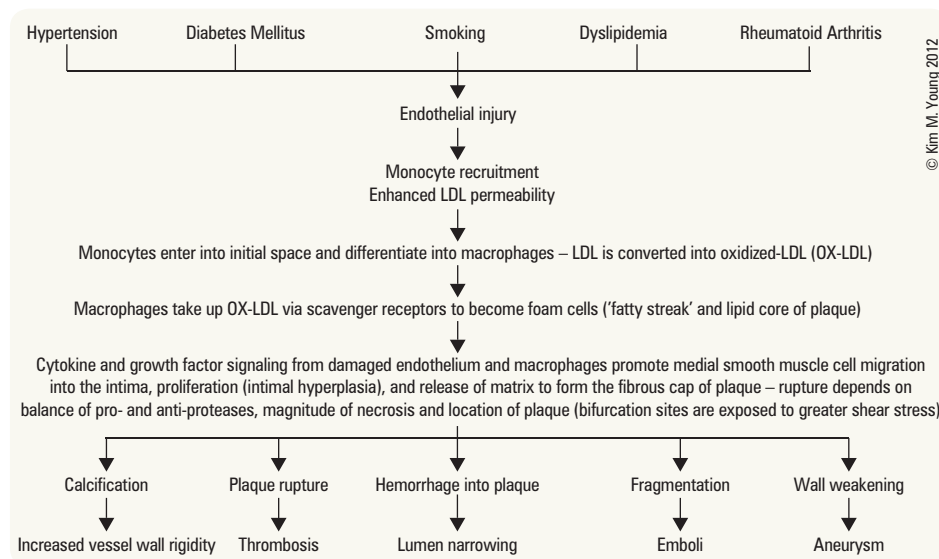


Figure 34. Pathophysiology of atherosclerosis

Chronic Stable Angina

Definition

- symptom complex resulting from an imbalance between oxygen supply and demand in the myocardium

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- factors that decrease myocardial oxygen supply
 - decreased luminal diameter: atherosclerosis, vasospasm
 - decreased duration of diastole: tachycardia (decreased duration of diastolic coronary perfusion)
 - decreased hemoglobin: anemia
 - decreased SaO₂: hypoxemia
 - congenital anomalies



Chronic stable angina is most often due to a fixed stenosis caused by an atheroma

Acute coronary syndromes are the result of plaque rupture

- factors that increase myocardial oxygen demand
 - increased heart rate: hyperthyroidism
 - increased contractility: hyperthyroidism
 - increased wall stress: myocardial hypertrophy, aortic stenosis

Signs and Symptoms

- typical: (1) retrosternal chest pain, tightness or discomfort radiating to left (\pm right) shoulder/arm/neck/jaw, associated with diaphoresis, nausea, anxiety; (2) predictably precipitated by the “3 Es”: exertion, emotion, eating; (3) brief duration, lasting <10-15 min and typically relieved by rest and nitrates
- atypical/probable angina (meets 2 of the above); non-cardiac chest pain (meets <1 of the above)
- Levine’s sign: clutching fist over sternum when describing chest pain
- anginal equivalents: dyspnea, acute LV failure, flash pulmonary edema

Clinical Assessment

- history including directed risk factor assessment and physical exam
- labs: Hb, fasting glucose, fasting lipid profile
- ECG (at rest and during episode of chest pain if possible)
- CXR (suspected heart failure, valvular disease, pericardial disease, aortic dissection/aneurysm, or signs or symptoms of pulmonary disease)
- stress testing (see *Cardiac Diagnostic Tests, C5*) or angiography
- echo
 - to assess systolic murmur suggestive of aortic stenosis, mitral regurgitation, and/or HCM
 - to assess LV function in patients with Hx of prior MI, pathological Q waves, signs or symptoms of CHF

Differential Diagnosis

- see *Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations, C4*

Treatment of Chronic Stable Angina

1. General measures

- goals: to reduce myocardial oxygen demand and/or increase oxygen supply
- lifestyle modification (diet, exercise)
- treatment of risk factors: statins (see *Endocrinology, E5, Family Medicine, FM9* for target lipid guidelines), antihypertensives, etc.
- pharmacological therapy to stabilize the coronary plaque to prevent rupture and thrombosis

2. Antiplatelet therapy (first-line therapy)

- ASA
- clopidogrel when ASA absolutely contraindicated

3. β -blockers (first-line therapy – improve survival in patients with HTN)

- increase coronary perfusion and decrease demand (HR, contractility) and BP (afterload)
- cardioselective agents preferred (e.g. metoprolol, atenolol) to avoid peripheral effects (inhibition of vasodilation and bronchodilation via β_2 receptors)
- avoid intrinsic sympathomimetics (e.g. acebutolol) which increase demand

4. Nitrates (symptomatic control, no clear impact on survival)

- decrease preload (venous dilatation) and afterload (arteriolar dilatation), and increase coronary perfusion
- maintain daily nitrate-free intervals to prevent tolerance (tachyphylaxis)

5. Calcium channel blockers (CCBs, second-line or combination)

- increase coronary perfusion and decrease demand (HR, contractility) and BP (afterload)
- caution: verapamil/diltiazem combined with β -blockers may cause symptomatic sinus bradycardia or AV block

6. ACE inhibitors (ACEI, not used to treat symptomatic angina)

- angina patients tend to have risk factors for CV disease which warrant use of an ACEI (e.g. HTN, DM, proteinuric renal disease, previous MI with LV dysfunction)
- benefit in all patients at high risk for CV disease (concomitant DM, renal dysfunction, or LV systolic dysfunction)
- angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs) can be used when ACEI contraindicated (e.g. hypersensitivity, angioedema)

7. Invasive strategies

- revascularization (see *Coronary Revascularization, C31* and *COURAGE trial sidebar*)

VARIANT ANGINA (Prinzmetal’s Angina)

- myocardial ischemia secondary to coronary artery vasospasm, with or without atherosclerosis
- uncommonly associated with infarction or LV dysfunction
- typically occurs between midnight and 8 AM, unrelated to exercise, relieved by nitrates
- typically ST elevation on ECG
- diagnosed by provocative testing with ergot vasoconstrictors (rarely done)
- treat with nitrates and CCBs

SYNDROME X

- typical symptoms of angina but normal angiogram
- may show definite signs of ischemia with exercise testing
- thought to be due to inadequate vasodilator reserve of coronary resistance vessels
- better prognosis than overt epicardial atherosclerosis



Canadian Cardiovascular Society (CCS) Functional Classification of Angina

- **Class I:** ordinary physical activity (walking, climbing stairs) does not cause angina; angina with strenuous, rapid, or prolonged activity
- **Class II:** slight limitation of ordinary activity: angina brought on at >2 blocks on level or climbing >1 flight of stairs or by emotional stress
- **Class III:** marked limitation of ordinary activity: angina brought on at <2 blocks on level or climbing <1 flight of stairs
- **Class IV:** inability to carry out any physical activity without discomfort; angina may be present at rest



Optimal Medical Therapy With or Without PCI for Stable Coronary Disease. COURAGE Trial

NEJM 2007;356:1503-1516

Study: Randomized, controlled trial with median follow-up of 4.6 yr.

Population: 2,287 patients who had objective evidence of myocardial ischemia and significant stable coronary artery disease.

Intervention: Patients were randomized to receive intensive pharmacologic therapy and lifestyle intervention with or without percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI).

Outcome: Primary outcome was all-cause mortality and nonfatal myocardial infarction (MI). Secondary outcome had additional events of stroke, all MI, and hospitalization for unstable angina with negative biomarkers.

Results: There was no significant difference in primary (unadjusted hazard ratio: 1.05; $p=0.62$) or secondary outcomes (hazard ratio: 1.05; $p=0.62$) between the PCI and non-PCI intervention groups. The PCI group had significantly lower rates of subsequent revascularization at 4.6 yr of follow-up (hazard ratio 0.60, $p<0.001$) and was more angina-free in the first 4 yr of follow-up.

Conclusions: PCI as an adjunct in initial management in patients with significant stable coronary artery disease does not reduce mortality, MI, stroke, or hospitalization for ACS, but does provide angina relief and reduced risk of revascularization.

Acute Coronary Syndromes

Definition

- ACS includes the spectrum of UA, NSTEMI, and STEMI; this distinction aids in providing the appropriate therapeutic intervention
 - MI** is defined by evidence of myocardial necrosis. It is diagnosed by a rise/fall of serum markers plus any one of:
 - symptoms of ischemia (chest/upper extremity/mandibular/epigastric discomfort; dyspnea)
 - ECG changes (ST-T changes, new BBB or pathological Q waves)
 - imaging evidence (myocardial loss of viability, wall motion abnormality, or intracoronary thrombus)
 - if biomarker changes are unattainable, cardiac symptoms combined with new ECG changes is sufficient
 - NSTEMI** meets criteria for myocardial infarction without ST elevation or BBB
 - STEMI** meets criteria for myocardial infarction characterized by ST elevation or new BBB
- UA** is clinically defined by any of the following:
 - accelerating pattern of pain: increased frequency, increased duration, decreased threshold of exertion, decreased response to treatment
 - angina at rest
 - new-onset angina
 - angina post-MI or post-procedure (e.g. percutaneous coronary intervention [PCI], coronary artery bypass grafting [CABG])

Investigations

- history and physical
 - note that up to 30% of MIs are unrecognized or "silent" due to atypical symptoms – more common in women, DM, elderly, post-heart transplant (because of denervation)
- ECG
- CXR
- labs
 - serum cardiac biomarkers for myocardial damage (repeat 8 h later) (see *Cardiac Biomarkers*, C11)
 - CBC, INR/PTT, electrolytes and magnesium, creatinine, urea, glucose, serum lipids
 - draw serum lipids within 24-48 h because values are unreliable from 2-48 d post-MI

MANAGEMENT OF ACUTE CORONARY SYNDROMES

1. General measures

- ABCs: assess and correct hemodynamic status first
- bed rest, cardiac monitoring, oxygen
- nitroglycerin SL followed by IV
- morphine IV

2. Anti-platelet and anticoagulation therapy

- ASA (81mg) chewed
- NSTEMI
 - ticagrelor in addition to ASA or if ASA contraindicated, subcutaneous low molecular weight heparin or IV unfractionated heparin (UFH) (LMWH preferable, except in renal failure or if CABG is planned within 24 h)
 - clopidogrel used if patient ineligible for ticagrelor
- if PCI is planned: ticagrelor or prasugrel and IV GP IIb/IIIa inhibitor (e.g. abciximab)
 - clopidogrel used if patient ineligible for ticagrelor and prasugrel
 - prasugrel contraindicated in those with a history of stroke/TIA, and avoidance of or lower dose is recommended for those >75 yr old or weighing <60 kg (TRITON-TIMI 38)
- anticoagulation options depend on reperfusion strategy
 - primary PCI: UFH during procedure; bivalirudin is a possible alternative
 - thrombolysis: LMWH (enoxaparin) until discharge from hospital; can use UFH as alternative because of possible rescue PCI
 - no reperfusion: LMWH (enoxaparin) until discharge from hospital
- continue LMWH or UFH followed by oral anticoagulation at discharge if at high risk for thromboembolic event (large anterior MI, AFib, severe LV dysfunction, CHF, previous DVT or PE, or echo evidence of mural thrombus)

3. β -blockers

- first dose IV followed by oral administration
- STEMI: contraindications include signs of heart failure, low output states, risk of cardiogenic shock, heart block, asthma or airway disease; initiate orally within 24 h of diagnosis when indicated



Is this Patient Having a Myocardial Infarction? From The Rational Clinical Examination

JAMA 2009; <http://www.jamaevidence.com/content/3484335>

Study: Systematic review of articles assessing the accuracy and precision of the clinical exam in the diagnosis of an acute myocardial infarction.

Results: In patients with normal or non-diagnostic ECG, no established CAD, and prolonged or recurrent chest pain typical of their usual discomfort, radiation of pain to the shoulder OR both arms had the highest positive likelihood ratio (+LR) of 4.1 (95% CI 2.5-6.5) and a negative likelihood ratio (-LR) of 0.68 (95% CI 0.52-0.89). Radiation to right arm had a +LR of 3.8 (95% CI 2.2-6.6) and -LR of 0.86 (95% CI 0.77-0.96), vomiting had a +LR of 3.5 (95% CI 2.0-6.2) and -LR of 0.87 (95% CI 0.79-0.97), while radiation to left arm only had a +LR of 1.3 (95% CI 0.93-1.8) and a -LR of 0.9 (95% CI 0.76-1.1).

Conclusions: The most compelling features that increase likelihood of an MI are ST-segment and cardiac enzyme elevation, new Q-wave, and presence of an S3 heart sound. In patients where the diagnosis of MI is uncertain, radiation of pain to the shoulder OR both arms, radiation to the right arm, and vomiting had the best predictive values, while radiation to the left arm is relatively non-diagnostic.



TIMI Risk Score for UA/NSTEMI

Characteristics	Points
Historical	
Age ≥ 65 yr	1
≥ 3 risk factors for CAD	1
Known CAD (stenosis $\geq 50\%$)	1
Aspirin [®] use in past 7 d	1
Presentation	
Recent (≤ 24 h) severe angina	1
ST-segment deviation ≥ 0.5 mm	1
Increased cardiac markers	1

Risk Score = Total Points

If TIMI risk score ≥ 3 , consider early LMWH and angiography

TIMI = thrombolysis in myocardial infarction

UA = unstable angina

JAMA 2000;284:835-842



Treatment of NSTEMI

BEMOAN

β -blocker

Enoxaparin

Morphine

O₂

ASA

Nitrates

- if β -blockers are contraindicated or if β -blockers/nitrates fail to relieve ischemia, non-dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers (e.g. diltiazem, verapamil) may be used as second-line therapy in the absence of severe LV dysfunction or pulmonary vascular congestion (calcium channel blockers do not prevent MI or decrease mortality)

4. Invasive strategies and reperfusion options

- UA/NSTEMI: early coronary angiography \pm revascularization if possible is recommended with any of the following high-risk indicators:
 - ♦ recurrent angina/ischemia at rest despite intensive anti-ischemic therapy
 - ♦ CHF or LV dysfunction
 - ♦ hemodynamic instability
 - ♦ high (≥ 3) TIMI risk score (tool used to estimate mortality following an ACS)
 - ♦ sustained ventricular tachycardia
 - ♦ dynamic ECG changes
 - ♦ high-risk findings on non-invasive stress testing
 - ♦ PCI within the previous 6 mo
 - ♦ repeated presentations for ACS despite treatment and without evidence of ongoing ischemia or high risk features
 - ♦ note: thrombolysis is NOT administered for UA/NSTEMI
- STEMI
 - ♦ after diagnosis of STEMI is made, do not wait for results of further investigations before implementing reperfusion therapy
 - ♦ goal is to re-perfuse artery: thrombolysis ("EMS-to-needle") within 30 min or primary PCI ("EMS-to-balloon") within 90 min (depending on capabilities of hospital and access to hospital with PCI facility)
 - ♦ thrombolysis
 - preferred if patient presents ≤ 12 h of symptom onset, and < 30 min after presentation to hospital, has contraindications to PCI, or PCI cannot be administered within 90 min
 - ♦ PCI
 - early PCI (≤ 12 h after symptom onset and < 90 min after presentation) improves mortality vs. thrombolysis with fewer intra-cranial hemorrhages and recurrent MIs
 - primary PCI: without prior thrombolytic therapy – method of choice for reperfusion in experienced centers (*JAMA* 2004;291:736-39)
 - rescue PCI: following failed thrombolytic therapy (diagnosed when following thrombolysis, ST segment elevation fails to resolve below half its initial magnitude and patient still having chest pain)



Enoxaparin vs. Unfractionated Heparin with Fibrinolysis for ST-Elevation Myocardial Infarction

NEJM 2006;354:1477-1488

Study: Prospective multicenter RCT.

Patients: 20,479 patients (median age 60 yr, 77% male) with STEMI who were scheduled to undergo fibrinolysis.

Intervention: Patients were randomized to receive either enoxaparin or weight based unfractionated heparin in addition to thrombolysis and standard therapies.

Primary Outcome: Death or recurrent nonfatal MI 30 d post-event.

Results: The composite primary outcome occurred less often in the enoxaparin group compared with those who received unfractionated heparin (9.9% vs. 12.0%, $p < 0.001$, NNT=47). Taken separately, there was a trend toward reduced mortality (6.9% vs. 7.5%, $p=0.11$) and a significant reduction in nonfatal reinfarction (3.0% vs. 4.5%, $p < 0.001$) in the enoxaparin group. The risk of major bleeding was significantly increased in the enoxaparin group (2.1% vs. 1.4%, $p < 0.001$, NNH=142).

Conclusion: In patients with STEMI receiving thrombolysis, enoxaparin is superior to unfractionated heparin in preventing recurrent nonfatal MI and may lead to a small reduction in mortality.

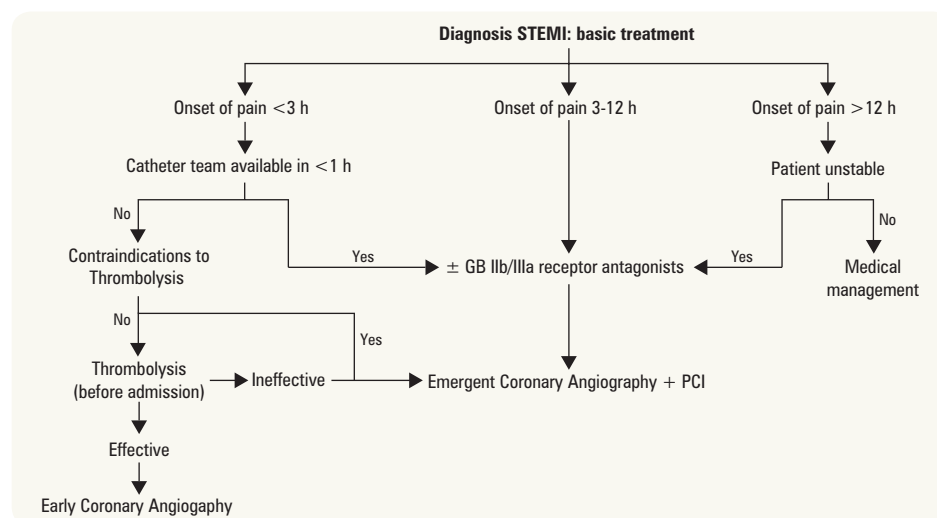


Figure 35. Reperfusion strategy in STEMI

Table 8. Contraindications to Thrombolysis in STEMI

Absolute	Relative
Prior intracranial hemorrhage	Chronic, severe, poorly controlled HTN
Known structural cerebral vascular lesion	Uncontrolled HTN (sBP > 180, dBP > 110)
Known malignant intracranial neoplasm	Current anticoagulation
Significant closed-head or facial trauma (≤ 3 mo)	Noncompressible vascular punctures
Ischemic stroke (≤ 3 mo)	Ischemic stroke (≥ 3 mo)
Active bleeding	Recent internal bleeding ($\leq 2-4$ wk)
Suspected aortic dissection	Prolonged CPR or major surgery (≤ 3 wk)
	Pregnancy
	Active peptic ulcer disease

Long-Term Management of ACS

- risk of progression to MI or recurrence of MI or death is highest within 1 mo
- at 1-3 mo after the acute phase, most patients resume a clinical course similar to that in patients with chronic stable coronary disease
- pre-discharge workup: ECG and echo to assess residual LV systolic function
- drugs required in hospital to control ischemia should be continued after discharge in all patients
- other medications for long-term management of ACS are summarized below

1. General Measures

- education
- risk factor modification

2. Antiplatelet and Anticoagulation Therapy

- ECASA 81 mg daily
- ticagrelor 90 mg twice daily or prasugrel 10 mg daily (at least 1 mo, up to 9-12 mo, if stent placed at least 12 mo)
- clopidogrel 75 mg daily can be used as alternatives to ticagrelor and prasugrel when indicated
- \pm warfarin x 3 mo if high risk (large anterior MI, LV thrombus, LVEF <30%, history of VTE, chronic AFib)

3. β -Blockers (e.g. metoprolol 25-50 mg bid or atenolol 50-100 mg daily)

4. Nitrates

- alleviate ischemia but do not improve outcome
- use with caution in right-sided MI patients who have become preload dependent

5. Calcium Channel Blockers (NOT recommended as first line treatment, consider as alternative to β -blockers)

6. Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme Inhibitors

- prevent adverse ventricular remodelling
- recommended for asymptomatic high-risk patients (e.g. diabetics), even if LVEF >40%
- recommended for symptomatic CHF, reduced LVEF (<40%), anterior MI
- use ARBs in patients who are intolerant of ACEI

7. \pm Aldosterone Antagonists

- if on ACEI and β -blockers and LVEF <40% and CHF or DM
- significant mortality benefit shown with eplerenone by 30 d

8. Statins (early, intensive, irrespective of cholesterol level; e.g. atorvastatin 80 mg daily)

9. Invasive Cardiac Catheterization if indicated (risk stratification)

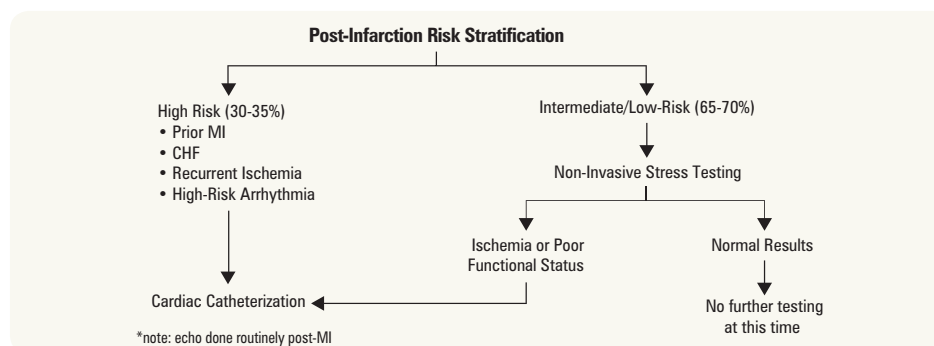


Figure 36. Post-MI risk stratification

Prognosis following STEMI

- 5-15% of hospitalized patients will die
 - risk factors
 - ♦ infarct size/severity
 - ♦ age
 - ♦ comorbid conditions
 - ♦ development of heart failure or hypotension
- post-discharge mortality rates
 - 6-8% within first year, half of these within first 3 mo
 - 4% per year following first yr
 - risk factors
 - ♦ LV dysfunction
 - ♦ residual myocardial ischemia
 - ♦ ventricular arrhythmias
 - ♦ history of prior MI



Intensive vs. Moderate Lipid Lowering with Statins after Acute Coronary Syndromes

NEJM 2004;350:1495-1504

Study: Prospective, double blind, RCT; mean follow-up of 2 yr.

Population: 4,162 patients who had been hospitalized for an ACS within the preceding 10 d.

Intervention: Patients were randomized to receiving pravastatin 40 mg or atorvastatin 80 mg daily.

Primary Outcome: Composite of death from any cause, myocardial infarction, documented unstable angina requiring rehospitalization, revascularization (performed at least 30 d after randomization), and stroke.

Results: High dose atorvastatin was associated with a 16% hazard ratio reduction ($p=0.005$; 95% CI 5-26%) in the primary outcome compared to standard dose pravastatin.

Conclusions: In patients who recently experienced an ACS, high dose statin therapy provides greater protection against death and major cardiovascular events than standard dose therapy.



Resting LVEF is a useful prognostic factor

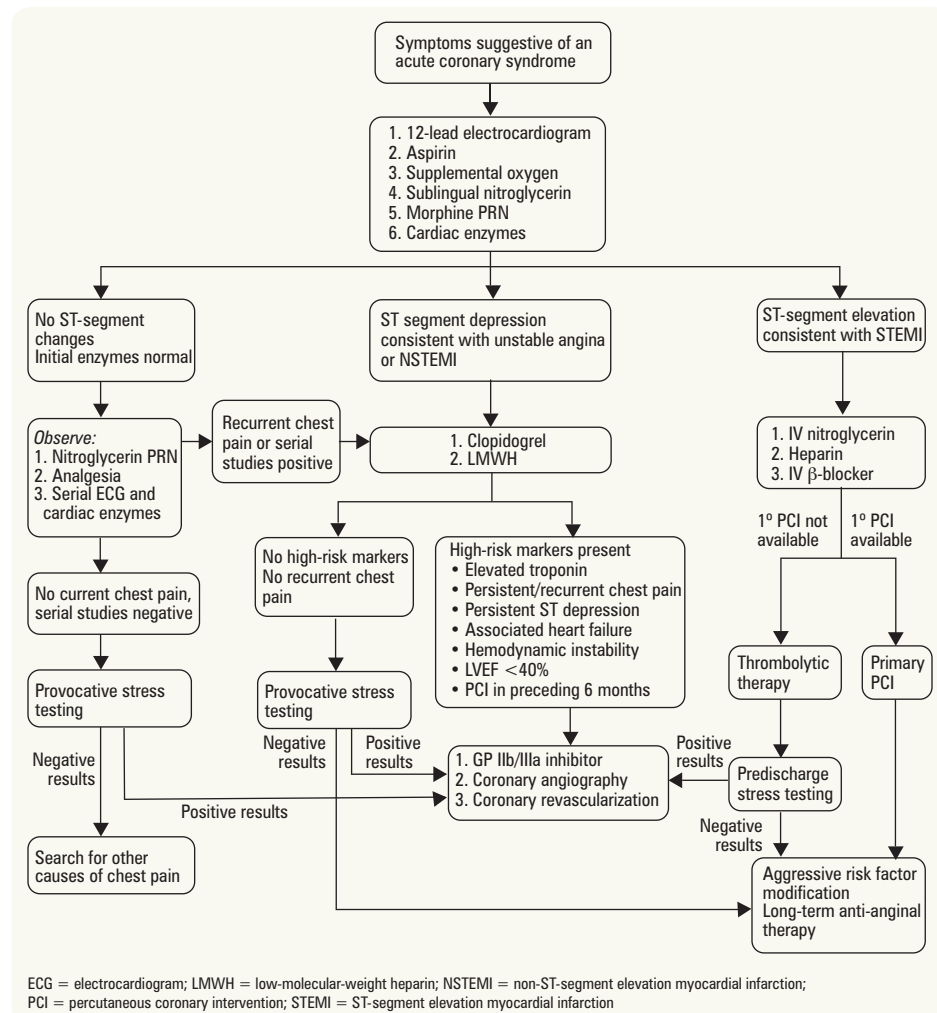
Table 9. Complications of Myocardial Infarction

Complication	Etiology	Presentation	Therapy
Arrhythmia 1. Tachycardia 2. Bradycardia	Sinus, AFib, VT, VFib Sinus, AV block	First 48 h First 48 h	See <i>Arrhythmias</i> , C15
Myocardial Rupture 1. LV free wall 2. Papillary muscle (→ MR) 3. Ventricular septum (→ VSD)	Transmural infarction Inferior infarction Septal infarction	1-7 d 1-7 d 1-7 d	Surgery Surgery Surgery
Shock/CHF	Infarction or aneurysm	Within 48 h	Inotropes, intra-aortic balloon pump
Post-Infarct Angina	Persistent coronary stenosis Multivessel disease	Anytime	Aggressive medical therapy PCI or CABG
Recurrent MI	Reocclusion	Anytime	Aggressive medical therapy PCI or CABG
Thromboembolism	Mural/apical thrombus DVT	7-10 d, up to 6 mo	Anticoagulation
Pericarditis	Inflammatory	1-7 d	ASA
Dressler's Syndrome	Autoimmune	2-8 wk	

**Complications of MI****CRASH PAD**

Cardiac Rupture
Arrhythmia
Shock
Hypertension/Heart failure
Pericarditis/Pulmonary emboli
Aneurysm
DVT

Treatment Algorithm for Chest Pain

**Figure 37. Treatment algorithm for patients with symptoms suggestive of an acute coronary syndrome**

Adapted from: Andreoli TE, et al. Cecil Essentials of Medicine, 8th ed. 2011. Elsevier. With permission from Elsevier

Sudden Cardiac Arrest

Definition

- unanticipated, non-traumatic cardiac death in a stable patient which occurs within 1 h of symptom onset; VFib is most common cause

Etiology

- primary cardiac pathology
 - ischemia/MI
 - LV dysfunction
 - severe ventricular hypertrophy
 - ♦ HCM
 - ♦ AS
 - long QT syndrome
 - congenital heart disease
 - mutations in cardiac ion channels

Management

- acute: resuscitate with prompt CPR and defibrillation
- investigate underlying cause (cardiac catheterization, electrophysiologic studies, echo)
- treat underlying cause
- antiarrhythmic drug therapy: amiodarone, β -blockers
- implantable cardioverter defibrillator (ICD)
- refer to ACLS guidelines (see [Anesthesia, A32](#))



Coronary Revascularization

PERCUTANEOUS CORONARY INTERVENTION

- interventional cardiology technique aimed at relieving significant coronary stenosis
- main techniques: balloon angioplasty, stenting
- less common techniques: rotational/directional/extraction atherectomy

Indications

- medically refractory angina
- NSTEMI/UA with high risk features (e.g. high TIMI risk score)
- primary/rescue PCI for STEMI

Balloon Angioplasty and Intracoronary Stenting

- coronary lesions dilated with balloon inflation
- major complication is restenosis (approximately 15% at 6 mo), felt to be due to elastic recoil and neointimal hyperplasia
- majority of patients receive intracoronary stent(s) to prevent restenosis
 - bare metal stent (BMS)
 - drug-eluting stent (DES)
 - ♦ coated with antiproliferative drugs (sirolimus, paclitaxel)
 - ♦ reduced rate of neointimal hyperplasia and restenosis compared to BMS (5% vs. 20%)
 - ♦ complication: late stent thrombosis (5 events per 1,000 stents implanted)

Adjunctive Therapies

- ASA and heparin decrease post-procedural complications
- further reduction in ischemic complications has been demonstrated using GPIIb/IIIa inhibitors (abciximab, eptifibatide, tirofiban) in coronary angiography and stenting
- following stent implantation
 - dual antiplatelet therapy (ASA and clopidogrel) for 1 mo with BMS or ≥ 12 mo with DES
 - ASA and prasugrel can be considered for those at increased risk of stent thrombosis

Procedural Complications

- mortality and emergency bypass rates $< 1\%$
- nonfatal MI: approximately 2-3%

CORONARY ARTERY BYPASS GRAFT SURGERY

- objective of CABG is complete reperfusion of the myocardium

Indications

- CABG
 - $\geq 50\%$ diameter stenosis in the left main coronary artery
 - $\geq 70\%$ diameter stenosis in three major coronary arteries
 - $\geq 70\%$ diameter stenosis in the proximal LAD artery plus one other major coronary artery



Safety and Efficacy of Drug-Eluting and Bare Metal Stents

Circulation 2009;119:3198-3206

Study: Meta-analysis of RCTs and observational studies. 22 RCTs and 34 observational studies.

Population: 9,470 and 182,901 patients in RCTs and observational studies respectively who underwent percutaneous coronary intervention.

Intervention: Drug-Eluting Stents (DES) vs. Bare Metal Stents (BMS).

Outcome: All-cause mortality, myocardial infarction (MI), and target vessel revascularization (TVR).

Results: No difference in mortality was found between DES vs. BMS by RCTs, while observational studies showed significantly lower mortality rates in DES-treated patients (hazard ratio (HR) 0.78, $p < 0.001$). No difference in MI incidence was found in RCTs, while lower incidences of MI were found in observational studies (HR 0.87, $p = 0.014$). DES has a significantly lower TVR rate in both RCT (HR 0.45, $p < 0.001$) and observational studies (HR 0.46, $p < 0.001$).

Conclusions: DES significantly reduces rates of TVR compared to BMS. Although there is no difference in mortality or MI incidence as found by RCTs, observational studies suggest lowered mortality and MI rates in patients with DES over BMS.

- survivors of sudden cardiac arrest with presumed ischemia-mediated VT caused by significant ($\geq 70\%$ diameter) stenosis in a major coronary artery
- other
 - $\geq 70\%$ diameter stenosis in two major coronary arteries (without proximal LAD disease) and evidence of extensive ischemia
 - $\geq 70\%$ diameter stenosis in the proximal LAD artery and evidence of extensive ischemia
 - multivessel CAD in patients with diabetes
 - LV systolic dysfunction (LVEF 35-50%) and significant multivessel CAD or proximal LAD stenosis where viable myocardium is present in the region of intended revascularization
- PCI
 - UA/NSTEMI if not a CABG candidate
 - STEMI when PCI can be performed more rapidly and safely than CABG
- CABG or PCI
 - one or more significant ($\geq 70\%$ diameter) coronary artery stenosis amenable to revascularization and unacceptable angina despite medical therapy

Table 10. Choice of Revascularization Procedure

	PCI	CABG
Advantages	Less invasive technique Decreased periprocedural morbidity and mortality Shorter periprocedural hospitalization	Greater ability to achieve complete revascularization Decreased need for repeated revascularization procedures
Indications	Single or double-vessel disease Inability to tolerate surgery	Triple-vessel or left main disease DM Plaque morphology unfavorable for PCI

Table 11. Conduits for CABG

Graft	Occlusion/Patency Rate	Considerations
Saphenous Vein Grafts (SVG)	At 10 yr, 50% occluded, 25% stenotic, 25% angiographically normal	Used when arterial grafts are not available or many grafts are required, such as triple or quadruple bypass
Left Internal Thoracic/Mammary Artery (LITA/LIMA) (LIMA to LAD)	90-95% patency at 15 yr	Most preferred option because of excellent patency Improved event-free survival (angina, MI) Decreased late cardiac events No increase in operative risk
Right Internal Thoracic/Mammary Artery (RITA/RIMA)	Pedicle RIMA patency comparable to LIMA Free RIMA patency less	Used in bilateral ITA/IMA grafting Patients receiving bilateral ITAs/IMAs have less risk of recurrent angina, late MI, angioplasty
Radial Artery (free graft)	85-90% patency at 5 yr	Prone to severe vasospasm post-operatively due to muscular wall
Right Gastroepiploic Artery	80-90% patency at 5 yr	Primarily used as an <i>in situ</i> graft to bypass the RCA Use limited because of the fragile quality of the artery, other technical issues, increased operative time (laparotomy incision), and incisional discomfort with associated ileus
Complete Arterial Revascularization		For younger patients (<60 yr of age) Is preferred due to longer term graft patency
Redo Bypass Grafting		Operative mortality 2-3x higher than first operation 10% perioperative MI rate Reoperation undertaken only in symptomatic patients who have failed medical therapy and in whom angiography has documented progression of the disease Increased risk with redo-sternotomy secondary to adhesions which may result in laceration to aorta, RV, IMA/ITA, and other bypass grafts

Operative Issues

- left ventricular (LV) function is an important determinant of outcome of all heart diseases
- patients with severe LV dysfunction usually have poor prognosis, but surgery can sometimes dramatically improve LV function
- assess viability of non-functioning myocardial segments in patients with significant LV dysfunction using delayed thallium myocardial imaging, PET scanning, or MRI

CABG and Antiplatelet Regimens

- please refer to 2011 ACCF/AHA Guideline for Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery for more information
- prior to CABG, clopidogrel and ticagrelor should be discontinued for 5 d and prasugrel for 7 d before surgery
- dual antiplatelet therapy should be continued for 12 mo in patients with ACS within 48-72 h after CABG
- ASA (81mg) continued indefinitely (can be started 6 h after surgery)
- patients requiring CABG after PCI should continue their dual antiplatelet therapy as recommended in the post-PCI guidelines



Percutaneous Coronary Intervention vs. Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting for Severe Coronary Artery Disease: The SYNTAX Trial
NEJM 2009;360:961-972

Study: Prospective RCT.

Population: 1,800 patients with untreated three-vessel or left main coronary artery disease and anatomically equivalent for both Percutaneous Intervention (PCI) and Coronary Artery Bypass Graft (CABG).

Intervention: PCI vs. CABG.

Outcome: Composite of death from any cause, stroke, MI, or repeat revascularization in 12 mo post-intervention.

Results: Incidence of primary outcome was lower in the CABG intervention vs. PCI (12.4% vs. 17.8%, $p=0.002$, NNT=19). PCI was associated with significantly higher rates of repeat revascularization (13.5% vs. 5.9%, $p<0.001$) and cardiac death (3.7% vs. 2.1%, $p=0.05$), while CABG had higher rates of stroke (2.2% vs. 0.6%, $p=0.03$).

Conclusions: In patients with three-vessel or left main coronary artery disease CABG is superior to PCI in preventing major adverse cardiovascular and cerebrovascular events within 12 mo of intervention.



Effect of Perioperative Glucose-Insulin-Potassium Infusions on Mortality and Atrial Fibrillation After Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis
Can J Cardiol 2010;26:178-184

Perioperative use of glucose-insulin-potassium or glucose-insulin infusions does not significantly reduce mortality or atrial fibrillation in patients undergoing CABG surgery. Unless future trial data in support of GIK/IGI infusions become available, the routine use of these treatments in patients undergoing CABG surgery should be discouraged because the safety of these infusions has not been systematically examined.

Table 12. Risk Factors for CABG Mortality and Morbidity (decreasing order of significance)

Risk Factors for CABG Mortality	Risk Factors for CABG Post-Operative Morbidity or Increased Length of Stay
Urgency of surgery (emergent or urgent)	Reoperation
Reoperation	Emergent procedure
Older age	Pre-operative intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP)
Poor left ventricular function (see below)	CHF
Female gender	CABG + valve surgery
Left main disease	Older age
Others include catastrophic conditions (cardiogenic shock, ventricular septal rupture, ongoing CPR), dialysis-dependent renal failure, end-stage COPD, DM, cerebrovascular disease, and peripheral vascular disease	Renal dysfunction
	COPD
	DM
	Cerebrovascular disease

Procedural Complications

- CABG using cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB)
 - stroke and neurocognitive defects (microembolization of gaseous and particulate matter)
 - immunosuppression
 - systemic inflammatory response leading to:
 - myocardial dysfunction
 - renal dysfunction
 - neurological injury
 - respiratory dysfunction
 - coagulopathies

OFF-PUMP CORONARY ARTERY BYPASS SURGERY**Procedure**

- avoids the use of CPB by allowing surgeons to operate on a beating heart
 - stabilization devices (e.g. Genzyme Immobilizer®) hold heart in place allowing operation while positioning devices (Medtronic Octopus® and Starfish® system) allow the surgeon to lift the beating heart to access the lateral and posterior vessels
 - procedure is safe and well tolerated by most patients; however, this surgery remains technically more demanding

Indications

- used in poor candidates for CPB who have: calcified aorta, poor LVEF, severe peripheral vascular disease (PVD), severe COPD, chronic renal failure, coagulopathy, transfusion objections (e.g. Jehovah's Witness), good target vessels, anterior/lateral wall revascularization, target revascularization in older, sicker patients
- absolute contraindications:** hemodynamic instability, poor quality target vessels including intramyocardial vessels, diffusely diseased vessels, and calcified coronary vessels
- relative contraindications:** cardiomegaly/CHF, critical left main disease, small distal targets, recent or current acute MI, cardiogenic shock, LVEF <35%

Outcomes

- OPCAB decreases in-hospital morbidity (decreased incidence of chest infection, inotropic requirement, supraventricular arrhythmia), blood product transfusion, ICU stay, length of hospitalization, and CK-MB and troponin I levels
- no significant difference in terms of survival at 2 yr, frequency of cardiac events (MI, PCI, CHF, recurrent angina, redo CABG), or medication usage compared to on-pump CABG

Heart Failure

Congestive Heart Failure

Definitions

- heart failure: a complex clinical syndrome, resulting from almost any cardiac disorder that impairs the ability of the ventricle to fill with or eject blood
- forward heart failure: heart unable to maintain adequate cardiac output to meet demand or is able to do so only by elevating filling pressure
- backward heart failure: heart unable to accommodate venous return resulting in elevated filling pressures and vascular congestion (systemic or pulmonary)
- heart failure can involve left side of heart (left heart failure), right side (right heart failure), or both (biventricular failure) (see Table 13)
- heart failure can also have components of ineffective ventricular filling (diastolic dysfunction) and/or contraction (systolic dysfunction)
- most cases associated with poor cardiac output (low-output heart failure); however, some cases of CHF not due to intrinsic cardiac disease but instead due to increased demand (high-output heart failure)

**Does this Dyspneic Patient in the Emergency Department have Congestive Heart Failure?**

JAMA 2005;294:1944-1956

	LR + (95% CI)	LR - (95% CI)
Initial clinical judgment	4.4 (1.8-10.0)	0.45 (0.28-0.73)
Past Medical History		
Heart failure	5.8 (4.1-8.0)	0.45 (0.38-0.53)
Myocardial infarction	3.1 (2.0-4.9)	0.69 (0.58-0.82)
Coronary artery disease	1.8 (1.1-2.8)	0.68 (0.48-0.96)
Symptoms		
Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea	2.6 (1.5-4.5)	0.7 (0.54-0.91)
Orthopnea	2.2 (1.2-3.9)	0.65 (0.45-0.92)
Dyspnea on exertion	1.3 (1.2-1.4)	0.48 (0.35-0.67)
Physical Exam		
Third heart sound	11 (4.9-25)	0.88 (0.83-0.94)
Jugular venous distension	5.1 (3.2-7.9)	0.66 (0.57-0.77)
Rales	2.8 (1.9-4.1)	0.51 (0.37-0.70)
Lower extremity edema	2.3 (1.5-3.7)	0.64 (0.47-0.87)
Chest Radiograph		
Pulmonary venous congestion	12 (6.8-21)	0.48 (0.28-0.83)
Interstitial edema	12 (5.2-27)	0.68 (0.54-0.85)
Cardiomegaly	3.3 (2.4-4.7)	0.33 (0.23-0.48)
ECG		
Atrial fibrillation	3.8 (1.7-8.8)	0.79 (0.65-0.96)
Any abnormal finding	2.2 (1.6-3.1)	0.64 (0.47-0.88)

Table 13. Signs and Symptoms of Left vs. Right Heart Failure

	Left Failure	Right Failure
Low Cardiac Output (Forward)	Fatigue Syncope Systemic hypotension Cool extremities Slow capillary refill Peripheral cyanosis Pulsus alternans Mitral regurgitation S3	Left failure symptoms if decreased RV output leads to LV underfilling Tricuspid regurgitation S3 (right-sided)
Venous Congestion (Backward)	Dyspnea, orthopnea, PND Cough Crackles	Peripheral edema Elevated JVP with abdominojugular reflux, and Kussmaul's sign Hepatomegaly Pulsatile liver

Pathophysiology

- primary insults (myocyte loss, overload) → pump dysfunction, which leads to:
 - remodeling (dilatation, hypertrophy)
 - neurohumoral activation → necrosis and apoptosis
- both pathways result in further damage (re-starting the cycle), edema, tachycardia, vasoconstriction, congestion
- compensatory response to myocardial stress (perpetuate disease process)
 - increased end-systolic ventricular pressure (pressure overload)
 - e.g. HTN, aortic stenosis → hypertrophy
 - increased end-diastolic ventricular volume (volume overload)
 - e.g. aortic regurgitation → cardiac dilatation
- systemic response to ineffective circulating volume
 - activation of sympathetic nervous and renin-angiotensin-aldosterone systems results in:
 - salt and water retention with intravascular expansion
 - increased heart rate and myocardial contractility
 - increased afterload

Systolic Dysfunction

- impaired myocardial contractile function → decreased LVEF and SV → decreased CO
- findings: apex beat displaced, S3, increased heart size on CXR, decreased LVEF, LV dilatation
- causes
 - ischemic (e.g. extensive CAD, previous MI)
 - non-ischemic
 - HTN
 - DM
 - alcohol (and other toxins)
 - myocarditis
 - dilated cardiomyopathy (multiple causes – see *Dilated Cardiomyopathy, C39*)

Heart Failure with Preserved Ejection Fraction

- previously known as “diastolic dysfunction”
- up to 1/2 of all HF patients have normal systolic function (i.e. normal ejection fraction) and the cause of heart failure is impaired diastolic filling; prevalence higher in older patients
- increased LV filling pressures produce venous congestion upstream (i.e. pulmonary and systemic venous congestion)
- findings: HTN, apex beat sustained, S4, normal-sized heart on CXR, LVH on ECG/echo, normal LVEF
- causes of decreased compliance:
 - transient: ischemia (relaxation of myocardium is active and requires ATP)
 - permanent
 - severe hypertrophy (HTN, aortic stenosis, HCM)
 - restrictive cardiomyopathy (e.g. amyloid)
 - MI

High-Output Heart Failure

- caused by demand for increased cardiac output
- often exacerbates existing heart failure or decompensates a patient with other cardiac pathology
- differential diagnosis: anemia, thiamine deficiency (beriberi), hyperthyroidism, A-V fistula or L-R shunting, Paget's disease, renal disease, hepatic disease

**Dichotomies of Heart Failure**

- Forward vs. backward
- Left-sided vs. right-sided
- Systolic vs. diastolic dysfunction
- Low output vs. high output

**Use Ejection Fraction to Grade LV Dysfunction**

- Grade I (EF > 60%) (Normal)
- Grade II (EF = 40-59%)
- Grade III (EF = 21-39%)
- Grade IV (EF ≤ 20%)



A Validated Clinical and Biochemical Score for the Diagnosis of Acute Heart Failure: the ProBNP Investigation of Dyspnea in the Emergency Department (PRIDE) Acute Heart Failure Score
Am Heart J 2006;151:48-54

Predictor	Possible Score
Age > 75 yr	1
Orthopnea present	2
Lack of cough	1
Current loop diuretic use (before presentation)	1
Rales on lung exam	1
Lack of fever	2
Elevated NT-proBNP (> 450 pg/mL if < 50 yr, > 900 pg/mL if > 50 yr)	4
Interstitial edema on chest x-ray	2
Total	/14
Likelihood of heart failure	
Low = 0-5	
Intermediate = 6-8	
High = 9-14	

Brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) is secreted by ventricles due to LV stretch and wall tension. Cardiomyocytes secrete BNP precursor that is cleaved into proBNP. After secretion into ventricles, proBNP is cleaved into the active C-terminal portion and the inactive NT-proBNP. The above scoring algorithm developed by Baggish et al. is commonly used. A score of < 6 has a negative predictive value of 98%, while scores ≥ 6 had a sensitivity of 96% and specificity of 84% (p < 0.001) for the diagnosis of acute heart failure.

**New York Heart Association (NYHA) Functional Classification of Heart Failure**

- Class I:** ordinary physical activity does not cause symptoms of HF
- Class II:** comfortable at rest, ordinary physical activity results in symptoms
- Class III:** marked limitation of ordinary activity; less than ordinary physical activity results in symptoms
- Class IV:** inability to carry out any physical activity without discomfort; symptoms may be present at rest

Etiologies of Primary Insults

- consider predisposing, precipitating, and perpetuating factors

Precipitants of Symptomatic Exacerbations

- consider natural progression of disease vs. new precipitant
- always search for reversible cause
- differential diagnosis can also be organized as follows:
 - new cardiac insult/disease: MI, arrhythmia, valvular disease
 - new demand on CV system: HTN, anemia, thyrotoxicosis, infection, etc.
 - failure to take medications as prescribed

Investigations

- identify and assess precipitating factors and treatable causes of CHF
- blood work: CBC, electrolytes (including calcium and magnesium), BUN, creatinine, fasting blood glucose, HbA1c, lipid profile, liver function tests, serum TSH, \pm ferritin, BNP, uric acid
- ECG: look for chamber enlargement, arrhythmia, ischemia/infarction
- CXR: cardiomegaly, pleural effusion, redistribution, Kerley B lines, bronchiolar-alveolar cuffing
- echo: LVEF, cardiac dimensions, wall motion abnormalities, valvular disease, pericardial effusion
- radionuclide angiography: LVEF
- myocardial perfusion scintigraphy (thallium or sestamibi SPECT)

Acute Treatment of Pulmonary Edema

- treat acute precipitating factors (e.g. ischemia, arrhythmias)
- **L** – Lasix® (furosemide) 40-500 mg IV
- **M** – morphine 2-4 mg IV: decreases anxiety and preload (venodilation)
- **N** – nitroglycerin: topical/IV/SL
- **O** – oxygen: in hypoxemic patients
- **P** – positive airway pressure (CPAP/BiPAP): decreases preload and need for ventilation when appropriate
- **P** – position: sit patient up with legs hanging down unless patient is hypotensive
- in ICU setting or failure of LMNOPP, other interventions may be necessary
 - nitroprusside IV
 - hydralazine PO
 - sympathomimetics
 - ♦ dopamine
 - low dose: selective renal vasodilation (high potency D1 agonist)
 - medium dose: inotropic support (medium potency β 1 agonist)
 - high dose: increases SVR (low potency β 1 agonist), which is undesirable
 - ♦ dobutamine
 - selective inotrope (β 1 agonist) and arterial vasodilator (β 1 antagonist)
 - ♦ phosphodiesterase inhibitors (milrinone)
 - inotropic effect and vascular smooth muscle relaxation (decreased SVR), similar to dobutamine
- consider pulmonary artery catheter to monitor pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP) if patient is unstable or a cardiac etiology is uncertain (PCWP >18 indicates likely cardiac etiology)
- mechanical ventilation as needed
- rarely used, but potentially life-saving measures:
 - intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP)
 - left or right ventricular assist device (LVAD/RVAD)
 - cardiac transplant

Long-Term Management

- note that most evidence-based management applies to HFPEF
- priorities in HFPEF focus on controlling systolic and diastolic HTN, as a risk factor control measure

Conservative Measures

- symptomatic measures: oxygen in hospital, bedrest, elevate the head of bed
- lifestyle measures: diet, exercise, DM control, smoking cessation, decrease alcohol consumption, patient education, sodium and fluid restriction
- multidisciplinary heart failure clinics: for management of individuals at higher risk, or with recent hospitalization



Five Most Common Causes of CHF

- CAD (60-70%)
- HTN
- Idiopathic (often dilated cardiomyopathy)
- Valvular (e.g. AS, AR, and MR)
- Alcohol (dilated cardiomyopathy)



Precipitants of Heart Failure

HEART FAILED

- Hypertension (common)
- Endocarditis/environment (e.g. heat wave)
- Anemia
- Rheumatic heart disease and other valvular disease
- Thyrotoxicosis
- Failure to take meds (very common)
- Arrhythmia (common)
- Infection/Ischemia/Infarction (common)
- Lung problems (PE, pneumonia, COPD)
- Endocrine (pheochromocytoma, hyperaldosteronism)
- Dietary indiscretions (common)



Various clinical guidelines, including the Acute Heart Failure Syndromes AHA 2010 Guidelines, and the 2012 Canadian Cardiovascular Society (CCS) Heart Failure Management Guidelines, indicate the current approach of acute heart failure exacerbation may be too homogenous. The CCS guidelines in particular offer several suggestions, including cautious use of oxygen in normoxic patients due to the possible risk of causing increased systemic resistance and reduced cardiac output, reserving the use of non-invasive ventilation for patients not responding to medical therapy, as well as preference for high dose rather than low dose diuretic therapy



The most common cause of right heart failure is left heart failure



Measuring NT-Pro BNP

BNP is secreted by ventricles due to LV stretch and wall tension. Cardiomyocytes secrete BNP precursor that is cleaved into proBNP. After secretion into ventricles proBNP is cleaved into the active C-terminal portion and the inactive NT-proBNP portion.

NT-proBNP levels (pg/mL)	
Age	HF very likely
<50	>450
50-75	>900
>75	>1800

Limitations: Age, body habitus, renal function, pulmonary embolism

Non-Pharmacological Management

- cardiac rehabilitation: participation in a structured exercise program for NYHA class I-III after clinical status assessment to improve quality of life (HF-ACTION trial)

Pharmacological Therapy

1. Vasodilators

- ACEI: standard of care – slows progression of LV dysfunction and improves survival
 - all symptomatic patients functional class II-IV
 - all asymptomatic patients with LVEF <40%
 - post-MI
- angiotensin II receptor blockers
 - second-line to ACEI if not tolerated, or as adjunct to ACEI if β -blockers not tolerated – hydralazine and nitrates
 - second-line to ACEI, decrease in mortality not as great as with ACEI
 - may consider in acute renal failure until creatinine stabilizes

2. β -blockers: slow progression and improve survival

- class I-III with LVEF <40%
- stable class IV patients
- note: should be used cautiously, titrate slowly because may initially worsen CHF**

3. Diuretics: symptom control, management of fluid overload

- furosemide (40-500 mg daily) for potent diuresis
- metolazone may be used with furosemide to increase diuresis
- furosemide, metolazone, and thiazides oppose the hyperkalemia that can be induced by β -blockers, ACEI, ARBs, and aldosterone antagonists

4. Mineralocorticoid receptor (aldosterone) antagonists: mortality benefit in symptomatic heart failure and severely depressed ejection fraction

- spironolactone for class IIIb and IV CHF already on ACEI and loop diuretic
- eplerenone may be considered if intolerable endocrine side effects
- note: potential for life threatening hyperkalemia**
 - monitor K^+ after initiation and avoid if $Cr > 2.9$ mg/dL or $K^+ > 5.2$ mEq/L

5. Digoxin and cardiac glycosides: digoxin improves symptoms and decreases hospitalizations, no effect on mortality

- indications: patient in sinus rhythm and symptomatic on ACEI, or CHF and AFib
- patients on digitalis glycosides may worsen if these are withdrawn

6. Antiarrhythmic drugs: for use in CHF with arrhythmia

- can use amiodarone, β -blocker, or digoxin

7. Anticoagulants: warfarin for prevention of thromboembolic events

- prior thromboembolic event or AFib, presence of LV thrombus on echo
- possible benefit in other patients with LVEF <30% (controversial)

Procedural Interventions

- resynchronization therapy: symptomatic improvement with biventricular pacemaker
 - consider if QRS >130 msec, LVEF <35%, and severe symptoms despite optimal therapy
 - greatest benefit likely with marked LV enlargement, mitral regurgitation, QRS >150 msec, high diuretic requirement
- ICD: mortality benefit in 1° prevention of sudden cardiac death
 - prior MI, optimal medical therapy, LVEF <30%, clinically stable
 - prior MI, non-sustained VT, LVEF 30-40%, EPS inducible VT
- LVAD/RVAD (see *Ventricular Assist Devices*, C38)
- cardiac transplantation (see *Cardiac Transplantation*, C37)
- valve repair if patient is surgical candidate and has significant valve disease contributing to CHF (see *Valvular Heart Disease*, C41)



Features of Heart Failure on CXR

HERB-B

Heart enlargement (cardiothoracic ratio >0.50)

Pleural Effusion

Re-distribution (alveolar edema)

Kerley B lines

Bronchiolar-alveolar cuffing



Patients on β -blocker therapy who have acute decompensated heart failure should continue β -blockers where possible (provided they are not in cardiogenic shock or in severe pulmonary edema)



Can the Clinical Examination Diagnose Left-Sided Heart Failure in Adults?

From The Rational Clinical Examination

JAMA 2009; <http://www.jamaevidence.com/content/3478992>

Study: Systematic review of articles assessing the accuracy and precision of the clinical exam in the diagnosis of CHF.

Results: The diagnosis of left ventricular dysfunction in patient after an MI based on the presence of radiographic pulmonary venous congestion with edema, raises one-third up the lung fields in the absence of a chronic pulmonary disease, or a 3rd heart sound had a positive likelihood ratio (+LR) of 3.1 (95% CI 1.7-5.8) and a negative likelihood ratio (-LR) of 0.62 (95% CI 0.46-0.83). In inpatients the combination of clinical findings, ECG, and CXR had a +LR of 2.0 (95% CI 1.6-2.5) and a -LR of 0.41 (95% CI 0.30-0.56). Female sex (+LR, 1.6 [95% CI 1.2-2.2]) and sBP ≥ 160 mmHg (+LR, 1.8 [95% CI 1.3-2.6]) were most indicative for diastolic dysfunction. Heart rate ≥ 100 /min (+LR 0.43 [95% CI 0.28-0.65]) and left atrial ECG abnormality (+LR 0.42 [95% CI 0.26-0.63]) were most indicative for systolic dysfunction.

Conclusions: Patients with signs, symptoms, and risk factors for systolic dysfunction should receive an ECG and CXR. Female sex and sBP ≥ 160 mmHg are suggestive of diastolic dysfunction; heart rate ≥ 100 /min and left atrial ECG abnormality suggest systolic dysfunction.



Chronic Treatment of CHF

- ACEI*
- β -blockers*
- \pm Mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists* (if severe CHF)
- Diuretic
- \pm Inotrope
- \pm Antiarrhythmic
- \pm Anticoagulant

*Mortality benefit

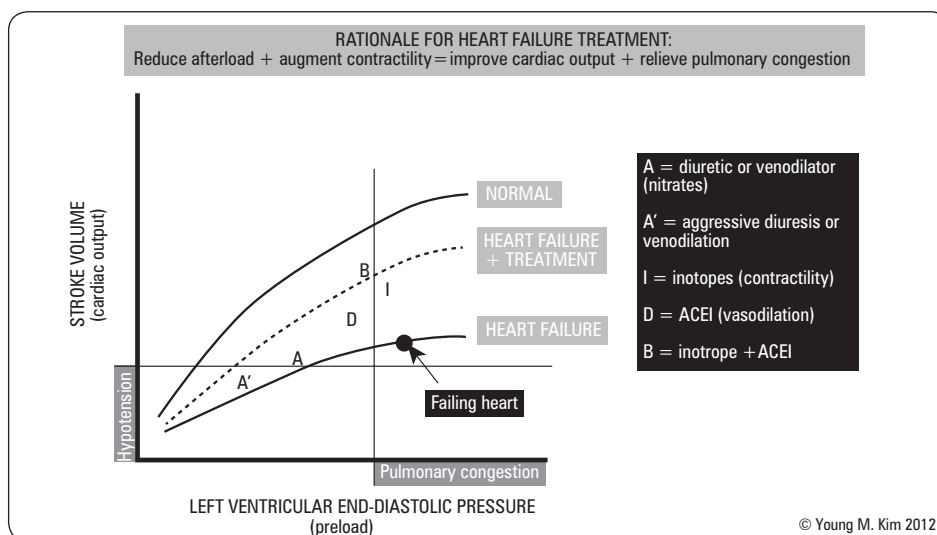


Figure 38. Effect of heart failure treatment on the Frank-Starling curve

Sleep-Disordered Breathing

- 45-55% of patients with CHF have sleep disturbances, including Cheyne-Stokes breathing and sleep apnea (central or obstructive)
- associated with a worse prognosis and greater LV dysfunction
- nasal continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) is effective in treating symptoms of sleep apnea with secondary beneficial effects in cardiac function and symptoms

Cardiac Transplantation

- treatment for end-stage heart disease; due to ischemic or non-ischemic cardiomyopathy
- worldwide 1 yr survival is 85-90%, 5 yr survival about 60%, annual mortality rate of 4%
- matching is according to blood type, body size and weight (should be within 25%), and HLA tissue matching (if time allows)

Indications for Surgery

- severe cardiac disability despite maximal medical therapy (recurrent hospitalizations for CHF, NYHA III or IV, peak metabolic oxygen consumption <14 mL/kg/min in absence of β -blocker)
- symptomatic cardiac ischemia refractory to conventional treatment (unstable angina not amenable to CABG or PCI with LVEF $<30\%$; recurrent, symptomatic ventricular arrhythmias)
- exclusion of all surgical alternatives to cardiac transplantation

Prerequisites

- emotionally stable with social support
- medically compliant and motivated
- relative contraindications: incurable malignancy, major systemic illness, irreversible major organ disease, active systemic infection (e.g. hepatitis C, HIV), obesity, irreversible pulmonary HTN (pulmonary vascular resistance [PVR] >6 Wood units), severe COPD ($FEV_1 <1$ L) or active drug addiction or alcoholism

Complications

- rejection
 - common, $<5\%$ have serious hemodynamic compromise
 - gold standard to detect rejection: endomyocardial biopsy
 - no noninvasive tests to detect rejection
 - risk of acute rejection is greatest during the first 3 mo after transplant
- infection
 - leading cause of morbidity and mortality after cardiac transplantation
 - risk peaks early during the first few months after transplantation and then declines to a low persistent rate
- allograft CAD
 - approximately 50% develop graft CAD within 5 yr of transplantation
 - most common cause of late death following transplantation
- malignancy
 - develops in 15% of cardiac transplant recipients due to immunosuppressive medication



Influence of Ejection Fraction on Cardiovascular Outcomes in a Broad Spectrum of Heart Failure Patients

Circulation 2005;112:3738-3744

Purpose: Understand the relationship between ejection fractions and cardiovascular risk in patients with heart failure.

Methods: 7,599 patients from the CHARM study (Candesartan in Heart failure: Assessment of Reduction in Mortality and morbidity; RCT comparing placebo vs. candesartan in patients with NYHA class II to IV). Compared LVEF to cardiovascular outcomes and causes of death.

Results: All-cause mortality increased by 39% per 10% reduction in LVEF below 45% (Hazard ratio 1.39, 95% CI 1.32-1.46). For LVEF $>45\%$, ejection fraction does not further contribute to assessment of cardiovascular risk in HF patients.

Conclusions: At LVEF $<45\%$, lower ejection fractions were associated with poorer cardiovascular outcomes.

LVEF	CHF Hospitalization	All-Cause Mortality
$\leq 22\%$	14.9%	15.4%
23-32%	10.9%	10.8%
33-42%	7.2%	7.4%
43-52%	5.7%	5.2%
$>52\%$	6.9%	5.7%



Higher New York Heart Association Classes and Increased Mortality and Hospitalization in Patients with Heart Failure and Preserved Left Ventricular Function

Am Heart J 2006;151:444-450

Purpose: To establish the association between NYHA class and outcomes with heart failure and preserved systolic function.

Methods: Retrospective follow-up study (median 38.5 mo) of 988 patients with heart failure with ejection fraction $>45\%$. Estimated risks of various outcomes using Cox proportional hazard models.

Results: Adjusted hazard ratio for all-cause mortality for NYHA class II, III, IV patients was 1.54, 2.56, and 8.46, respectively. Adjusted hazard ratio for all-cause hospitalization for NYHA class II, III, IV patients was 1.23, 1.71, and 3.4, respectively.

Conclusions: Higher NYHA classes were associated with poorer outcomes in patients with heart failure and preserved systolic function. Proportions of NYHA I, II, III, and IV patients who died of all causes during the study were 14.3%.

NYHA	Proportion of All-Cause Hospitalization	Proportion of All-Cause Mortality
I	60.7%	14.3%
II	65.2%	21.3%
III	77.7%	35.9%
IV	75.0%	58.3%



Effects of Donor Pre-Treatment with Dopamine on Survival After Heart Transplantation: A Cohort Study of Heart Transplant Recipients Nested in a Randomized Controlled Multicenter Trial

J Am Coll Cardiol 2010;58:1768-1777

Treatment of brain-dead donors with dopamine of 4 μ g/kg/min will not harm cardiac allografts but appears to improve the clinical course of the heart allograft recipient.

- second most common cause of late death following transplantation
- cutaneous neoplasms most common, followed by non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and lung cancer
- immunosuppressive medication side effects (prednisone, cyclosporine, tacrolimus, sirolimus)

Ventricular Assist Devices

- work to unload the ventricle while maintaining output; also results in decreased myocardial oxygen consumption permitting recovery of the myocardium that is not irreversibly injured
- can support the left (LVAD), right (RVAD), or both ventricles (BiVAD)
- indications
 - bridge to transplantation
 - post-operative mechanical support when unable to separate from cardiopulmonary bypass despite inotropic and intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP) support
 - ♦ IABP is a catheter based device inserted into the aorta via the femoral artery that decreases myocardial O₂ demand and increases blood flow to coronary arteries
 - post-operative cardiogenic shock

Myocardial Disease

Definition of Cardiomyopathy

- intrinsic or primary myocardial disease not secondary to congenital, hypertensive, coronary, valvular, or pericardial disease
- functional classification: dilated, hypertrophic, or restrictive
- LV dysfunction 2° to MI often termed "ischemic cardiomyopathy", is not a true cardiomyopathy (i.e. primary myocardial disorder) since the primary pathology is obstructive CAD

Table 14. Summary Table for CHF and Myocardial Disease

SYSTOLIC HEART FAILURE		DIASTOLIC HEART FAILURE		
Dilated Cardiomyopathy	Secondary Causes	Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy	Restrictive Cardiomyopathy	Secondary Causes
Idiopathic, infectious (e.g. myocarditis), alcohol, familial, collagen vascular disease, etc.	CAD, MI, DM, valvular (e.g. AR, MR)	Genetic disorder affecting cardiac sarcomeres (most common cause of sudden cardiac death in young athletes)	Amyloidosis, sarcoidosis, scleroderma, hemochromatosis, Fabry's, Pompe's Disease, Loeffler's, etc.	HTN, DM, valvular (e.g. AS), post-MI, transiently by ischemia, etc.



REMATCH Trial

NEJM 2001;345:1435-1443

Increased survival of 23% vs. 8% with LVAD vs. medical management of heart failure after 2 yr. Heartmate VAD has a biologic surface therefore does not require long-term anticoagulation but higher risk of infection.

Myocarditis

Definition

- inflammatory process involving the myocardium ranging from acute to chronic; an important cause of dilated cardiomyopathy

Etiology

- idiopathic
- infectious
 - viral (most common): parvovirus B19, influenza, coxsackie B, echovirus, poliovirus, HIV, mumps
 - bacterial: *S. aureus*, *C. perfringens*, *C. diphtheriae*, *Mycoplasma*, *Rickettsia*
 - fungi
 - spirochetal (Lyme disease – *Borrelia burgdorferi*)
 - Chagas disease (*Trypanosoma cruzi*), toxoplasmosis
- toxic: catecholamines, chemotherapy, cocaine
- hypersensitivity/eosinophilic: drugs (antibiotics, diuretics, lithium, clozapine), insect/snake bites
- systemic diseases: collagen vascular diseases (SLE, rheumatoid arthritis, others), sarcoidosis, autoimmune
- other: giant cell myocarditis, acute rheumatic fever

Signs and Symptoms

- constitutional symptoms
- acute CHF
- chest pain – due to pericarditis or cardiac ischemia
- arrhythmias
- systemic or pulmonary emboli
- sudden death



Cardiomyopathy

HARD

Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
Arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy
Restrictive cardiomyopathy
Dilated cardiomyopathy

Investigations

- ECG: non-specific ST-T changes \pm conduction defects
- blood work
 - increased CK, troponin, LDH, and AST with acute myocardial necrosis \pm increased WBC, ESR, ANA, rheumatoid factor, complement levels
 - blood culture, viral titres and cold agglutinins for *Mycoplasma*
- CXR: enlarged cardiac silhouette
- echo: dilated, hypokinetic chambers, segmental wall motion abnormalities
- cardiovascular magnetic resonance: functional and morphological abnormalities as well as tissue pathology (gadolinium enhancement)
- myocardial biopsy

Management

- supportive care
- restrict physical activity
- treat CHF
- treat arrhythmias
- anticoagulation
- treat underlying cause if possible

Prognosis

- usually self-limited and often unrecognized, many recover
- sudden death in young adults
- may progress to dilated cardiomyopathy

Dilated Cardiomyopathy

Definition

- unexplained dilation and impaired systolic function of one or both ventricles

Etiology

- idiopathic (presumed viral or idiopathic) ~50% of DCM
- alcohol
- familial/genetic
- uncontrolled tachycardia (e.g. persistent rapid AFib)
- collagen vascular disease: SLE, polyarteritis nodosa, dermatomyositis, progressive systemic sclerosis
- infectious: viral (coxsackie B, HIV), Chagas disease, Lyme disease, Rickettsial diseases, acute rheumatic fever, toxoplasmosis
- neuromuscular disease: Duchenne muscular dystrophy, myotonic dystrophy, Friedreich's ataxia
- metabolic: uremia, nutritional deficiency (thiamine, selenium, carnitine)
- endocrine: hyper/hypothyroidism, DM, pheochromocytoma
- peripartum
- toxic: cocaine, heroin, organic solvents
- drugs: chemotherapies (doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide), antiretrovirals, chloroquine, clozapine, TCA
- radiation

Signs and Symptoms

- may present as
 - CHF
 - systemic or pulmonary emboli
 - arrhythmias
 - sudden death (major cause of mortality due to fatal arrhythmia)

Investigations

- blood work: CBC, electrolytes, Cr, bicarbonate, BNP, CK, troponin, LFTs, TSH, TIBC
- ECG: variable ST-T wave abnormalities, poor R wave progression, conduction defects (e.g. BBB), arrhythmias (non-sustained VT)
- CXR: global cardiomegaly (globular heart), signs of CHF, pleural effusion
- echo: chamber enlargement, global hypokinesis, depressed LVEF, MR and TR, mural thrombi
- endomyocardial biopsy: not routine, used to rule out a treatable cause
- coronary angiography: in selected patients to exclude ischemic heart disease

Management

- treat underlying disease: e.g. abstinence from alcohol
- treat CHF: see [Heart Failure, C33](#)
- thromboembolism prophylaxis: anticoagulation with warfarin
 - indicated for: AFib, history of thromboembolism or documented thrombus
 - LVEF <30% (controversial)
- treat symptomatic or serious arrhythmias
- immunize against influenza and *S. pneumoniae*
- consider surgical options (e.g. LVAD, transplant, volume reduction surgery) in appropriate candidates with severe, drug refractory disease
- consider ICD among patients with a LVEF <30%



Major Risks Factors for DCM
Alcohol, cocaine, family history



Abnormal Labs in DCM
• High BNP
• High Cr
• High LFTs
• Low bicarbonate
• Low Na⁺

Prognosis

- depends on etiology
- better with reversible underlying cause, worst with infiltrative diseases, HIV, drug-induced
- cause of death usually CHF (due to pump failure) or sudden death 2° to ventricular arrhythmias
- systemic emboli are significant source of morbidity
- 20% mortality in 1st yr, 10% per year after

Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy

- see 2011 ACCF/AHA Guideline for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy for details

Definition

- defined as unexplained ventricular hypertrophy
- various patterns of HCM are classified, but most causes involve pattern of septal hypertrophy

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- histopathologic features include myocyte disarray, myocyte hypertrophy, and interstitial fibrosis
- cause is felt to be a genetic defect involving one of the cardiac sarcomeric proteins (>400 mutations associated with autosomal dominant inheritance, incomplete penetrance)
- prevalence of 1/500-1/1,000 in general population
- generally presents in early adulthood

Hemodynamic Classification

- hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy (HOCM): dynamic LV outflow tract (LVOT) obstruction, either at rest or with provocation, defined as LVOT gradient of at least 30 mmHg
- non-obstructive HCM: no LVOT obstruction
- many patients have diastolic dysfunction (impaired ventricular filling secondary to LV hypertrophy which decreases compliance)

Signs and Symptoms

- clinical manifestations: asymptomatic (common, therefore screening is important), SOB on exertion, angina, presyncope/syncope (due to LV outflow obstruction or arrhythmia), CHF, arrhythmias, SCD
- pulses: rapid upstroke, "spike and dome" pattern in carotid pulse (in HCM with outflow tract obstruction)
- precordial palpation: PMI localized, sustained, double impulse, 'triple ripple' (triple apical impulse in HOCM), LV lift
- precordial auscultation: normal or paradoxically split S2, S4, harsh systolic diamond-shaped murmur at LLSB or apex, enhanced by squat or Valsalva (murmur secondary to LVOT obstruction as compared to AS); often with pansystolic murmur due to mitral regurgitation

Investigations

- ECG/Holter monitor: LVH, high voltages across precordium, prominent Q waves (lead I, aVL, V5, V6), tall R wave in V1, P wave abnormalities
- transthoracic echocardiography and echo-Doppler study: asymmetric septal hypertrophy (less commonly apical), systolic anterior motion (SAM) of mitral valve and MR; LVOT gradient can be estimated by Doppler measurement
- genetic studies (\pm magnetic resonance imaging) can be helpful when echocardiography is inconclusive for diagnosis
- cardiac catheterization (only when patient being considered for invasive therapy)

Management

- avoid factors which increase obstruction (e.g. volume depletion)
 - avoidance of all competitive sports
- treatment of obstructive HCM
 - medical agents: β -blockers, disopyramide, verapamil (started only in monitored setting), phenylephrine (in setting of cardiogenic shock)
 - avoid nitrates, diuretics, and ACEI as they increase LVOT gradient and worsen symptoms
- patients with obstructive HCM and drug-refractory symptoms
 - surgical myectomy
 - ICD placement
 - septal ethanol ablation
 - dual chamber pacing (rarely done)
- treatment of ventricular arrhythmias: amiodarone or ICD
- first-degree relatives (children, siblings, parents) of patients with HCM should be screened (physical, ECG, 2D echo) every 12-18 mo during adolescence, then serially every 5 yr during adulthood

Prognosis

- potential complications: AFib, VT, CHF, sudden cardiac death (1% risk/yr; most common cause of SCD in young athletes)
 - major risk factors for sudden death (consider ICD placement)
 - history of survived cardiac arrest/sustained VT
 - family history of multiple premature sudden deaths
 - other factors associated with increased risk of sudden cardiac death
 - ♦ syncope (presumed to be arrhythmic in origin)
 - ♦ non-sustained VT on ambulatory monitoring
 - ♦ marked ventricular hypertrophy (maximum wall thickness ≥ 30 mm)
 - ♦ abnormal BP in response to exercise (in patients <40 yr old with HCM)

Restrictive Cardiomyopathy**Definition**

- impaired ventricular filling with preserved systolic function in a non-dilated, non-hypertrophied ventricle secondary to factors that decrease myocardial compliance (fibrosis and/or infiltration)

Etiology

- infiltrative: amyloidosis, sarcoidosis
- non-infiltrative: scleroderma, idiopathic myocardial fibrosis
- storage diseases: hemochromatosis, Fabry's disease, Gaucher's disease, glycogen storage diseases
- endomyocardial
 - endomyocardial fibrosis, Loeffler's endocarditis, or eosinophilic endomyocardial disease
 - radiation heart disease
 - carcinoid syndrome (may have associated tricuspid valve or pulmonary valve dysfunction)

Clinical Manifestations

- CHF (usually with preserved LV systolic function), arrhythmias
- elevated JVP with prominent x and y descents, Kussmaul's sign
- S3, S4, MR, TR
- thromboembolic events

Investigations

- ECG: low voltage, non-specific, diffuse ST-T wave changes \pm non-ischemic Q waves
- CXR: mild cardiac enlargement
- echo: LAE, RAE; specific Doppler findings with no significant respiratory variation
- cardiac catheterization: increased end-diastolic ventricular pressures
- endomyocardial biopsy: to determine etiology (especially for infiltrative RCM)

Management

- exclude constrictive pericarditis
- treat underlying disease: control HR, anticoagulate if AFib
- supportive care and treatment for CHF, arrhythmias
- heart transplant: might be considered for CHF refractory to medical therapy

Prognosis

- depends on etiology



RCM vs. Constrictive Pericarditis (CP)
Present similarly but CP is treatable with surgery

**Key Investigations**

- Echo: may show respiratory variation in blood flow in CP
- CT: may show very thickened pericardium and calcification in CP
- MRI: best modality to directly visualize pericardium and myocardium

Valvular Heart Disease

- see *Guidelines on the Management of Valvular Heart Disease. Eur Heart J 2012;33(19):2451-2496* for details

Infective Endocarditis

- see [Infectious Diseases, ID17](#)
- American Heart Association (AHA) 2007 guidelines recommend IE prophylaxis
 - only for patients with
 - ♦ prosthetic valve material
 - ♦ past history of IE
 - ♦ certain types of congenital heart disease
 - ♦ cardiac transplant recipients who develop valvulopathy
 - only for the following procedures
 - ♦ dental
 - ♦ respiratory tract
 - ♦ procedures on infected skin/skin structures/MSK structures
 - ♦ not GI/GU procedures specifically



Rheumatic Fever

- see [Pediatrics](#), P60

Prognosis

- acute complications: myocarditis (DCM/CHF), conduction abnormalities (sinus tachycardia, AFib), valvulitis (acute MR), acute pericarditis (not constrictive pericarditis)
- chronic complications: rheumatic valvular heart disease – fibrous thickening, adhesion, calcification of valve leaflets resulting in stenosis/regurgitation, increased risk of IE ± thromboembolism
- onset of symptoms usually after 10-20 yr latency from acute carditis of rheumatic fever
- mitral valve most commonly affected



Mitral Valve Repair vs. Replacement for Severe Ischemic Mitral Regurgitation

NEJM 2014;370:23-32

Purpose: Ischemic mitral regurgitation is associated with significant mortality risk. The purpose of this study was to compare the effectiveness and safety of repairing vs. replacing the mitral valve in patients with severe chronic ischemic mitral regurgitation.

Study Design: RCT with 251 patients with severe ischemic mitral regurgitation were randomly assigned to mitral valve repair or chordal-sparing replacement. The primary endpoint was the left ventricular end-systolic volume index (LVESVI) at 12 mo.

Results: There were no significant between-group differences in LVESVI, in the rate of major adverse cardiac or cerebrovascular events, in functional status, or in quality of life at 12 mo. The rate of moderate or severe mitral regurgitation recurrence at 12 mo was significantly higher in the repair group than in the replacement group (32.6% vs. 2.3%, respectively).

Conclusions: No significant difference in left ventricular reverse remodeling or survival at 12 mo between patients who underwent mitral valve repair or replacement. Replacement provided more durable correction of mitral regurgitation, but there were no significant differences in clinical outcomes.

Valve Repair and Valve Replacement

- indication for valve repair or replacement depends on the severity of the pathology; typically recommended when medical management has failed to adequately improve the symptoms or reduce the risk of morbidity and mortality
- pathologies that may require surgical intervention include congenital defects, infections, rheumatic heart disease as well as a variety of valve diseases associated with aging
- valve repair: balloon valvuloplasty, surgical valvuloplasty (commissurotomy, annuloplasty), chordae tendineae shortening, tissue patch
- valve replacement: typically for aortic or mitral valves only; repair is favored in younger individuals; percutaneous techniques being established

Choice of Valve Prosthesis

Table 15. Mechanical Valve vs. Bioprosthetic Valve

Mechanical Valve	Bioprosthetic Valve
Good durability	Limited long-term durability (mitral < aortic)
Less preferred in small aortic root sizes	Good flow in small aortic root sizes
Increased risk of thromboembolism (1-3%/yr); requires long-term anticoagulation with coumadin	Decreased risk of thromboembolism: long-term anticoagulation not needed for aortic valves
Target INR Aortic valves: 2.0-3.0 (mean 2.5) Mitral valves: 2.5-3.5 (mean 3.0)	Some recommendation for limited anticoagulation for mitral valves
Increased risk of hemorrhage: 1-2%/yr	Decreased risk of hemorrhage



A Bedside Clinical Prediction Rule for Detecting Moderate or Severe Aortic Stenosis

J Gen Intern Med 1998;13:699-704

Study Design: Blinded cross sectional study with 124 patients of an ambulatory cardiology clinic. Patients were examined for: 1) murmur over the right clavicle 2) murmur loudest at second right intercostal space 3) reduced intensity of S2 4) reduced volume of the carotid pulse 5) delayed carotid upstroke.

Methods: Patients were examined by blinded investigators and the clinical examination findings were compared to findings on subsequent echocardiography. Moderate to severe aortic stenosis was defined as a valve area <1.2 cm² or a peak intensity gradient of >25 mmHg.

Results: Absence of a murmur over the right clavicle ruled out aortic stenosis while presence of ≥3 of the 4 associated symptoms ruled in aortic stenosis (LR=40).

Conclusions: Bedside techniques can accurately rule in and rule out moderate to severe aortic stenosis.

Summary of Valvular Disease

Table 16. Valvular Heart Disease

Aortic Stenosis (AS)

Etiology

Congenital (bicuspid, unicuspid valve), calcification (wear and tear), rheumatic disease

Definition

Normal aortic valve area = 3–4 cm²

Mild AS 1.5 to 3 cm²

Moderate AS 1.0 to 1.5 cm²

Severe AS <1.0 cm²

Critical AS <0.5 cm²

Pathophysiology

Outflow obstruction → increased EDP → concentric LVH → LV failure → CHF, subendocardial ischemia

Symptoms

Exertional angina, syncope, dyspnea, PND, orthopnea, peripheral edema

Physical Exam

Narrow pulse pressure, brachial-radial delay, pulsus parvus et tardus, sustained PMI
Auscultation: crescendo-decrescendo SEM radiating to R clavicle and carotid, musical quality at apex (Gallavardin phenomenon), S₄, soft S₂ with paradoxical splitting, S₃ (late)

Investigations

ECG: LVH and strain, LBBB, LAE, AFib

CXR: post-stenotic aortic root dilatation, calcified valve, LVH, LAE, CHF

Echo: reduced valve area, pressure gradient, LVH, reduced LV function

Treatment

Asymptomatic: serial echos, avoid exertion

Symptomatic: avoid nitrates/arterial dilators and ACEI in severe AS

Surgery if: symptomatic or LV dysfunction

Surgical Options

Valve replacement: aortic rheumatic valve disease and trileaflet valve

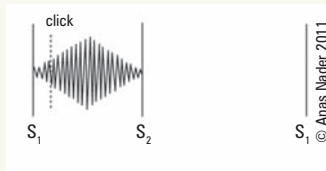
– prior to pregnancy (if AS significant)

– balloon valvuloplasty (in very young)

Interventional Options

Percutaneous valve replacement (transfemoral or transapical approach)

is an option in selected patients who are not considered good candidates for surgery



© Anas Nader 2011

Aortic Regurgitation (AR)

Etiology

Supravalvular: aortic root disease (Marfan's, atherosclerosis and dissecting aneurysm, connective tissue disease)

Valvular: congenital (bicuspid aortic valve, large VSD), IE

Acute Onset: IE, aortic dissection, trauma, failed prosthetic valve

Pathophysiology

Volume overload → LV dilatation → increased SV, high sBP and low dBP → increased wall tension → pressure overload → LVH (low dBP → decreased coronary perfusion)

Symptoms

Usually only becomes symptomatic late in disease when LV failure develops

Dyspnea, orthopnea, PND, syncope, angina

Physical Exam

Waterhammer pulse, bisferiens pulse, femoral-brachial sBP >20 (Hill's test wide pulse pressure), hyperdynamic apex, displaced PMI, heaving apex

Auscultation: early decrescendo diastolic murmur at LLSB (cusp pathology) or RLBB (aortic root pathology), best heard sitting, leaning forward, on full expiration, soft S₁, absent S₂, S₃ (late)

Investigations

ECG: LVH, LAE

CXR: LVH, LAE, aortic root dilatation

Echo/TTE: quantify AR, leaflet or aortic root anomalies

Cath: if >40 yr and surgical candidate – to assess for ischemic heart disease

Exercise testing: hypotension with exercise

Treatment

Asymptomatic: serial echos, afterload reduction (e.g. ACEI, nifedipine, hydralazine)

Symptomatic: avoid exertion, treat CHF

Surgery if: NYHA class III-IV CHF; LV dilatation and/or LVEF <50% with/without symptoms

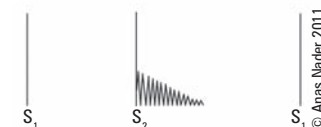
Surgical Options

Valve replacement: most patients

Valve repair: very limited role

Aortic root replacement (Bentall procedure):

– when ascending aortic aneurysm present, valved conduit used



© Anas Nader 2011

Mitral Stenosis (MS)

Etiology

Rheumatic disease most common cause, congenital (rare)

Definition

Severe MS is mitral valve area (MVA) <1.2 cm²

Pathophysiology

MS → fixed CO and LAE → increased LA pressure → pulmonary vascular resistance and CHF; worse with AFib (no atrial kick), tachycardia (decreased atrial emptying time) and pregnancy (increased preload)

Symptoms

SOB on exertion, orthopnea, fatigue, palpitations, peripheral edema, malar flush, pinched and blue facies (severe MS)

Physical Exam

AFib, no "a" wave on JVP, left parasternal lift, palpable diastolic thrill at apex

Auscultation: mid-diastolic rumble at apex, best heard with bell in left lateral decubitus position following exertion, loud S₁, OS following loud P₂ (heard best during expiration), long diastolic murmur and short A₂-OS interval correlate with worse MS

Investigations

ECG: NSR/AFib, LAE (P mitrale), RVH, RAD

CXR: LAE, CHF, mitral valve calcification

Echo/TTE: shows restricted opening of mitral valve

Cath: indicated in concurrent CAD if >40 yr (male) or >50 yr (female)

Treatment

Avoid exertion, fever (increased LA pressure), treat AFib and CHF, increase diastolic filling time (β-blockers, digitalis)

Surgery if: NYHA class III-IV CHF and failure of medical therapy

Invasive Options

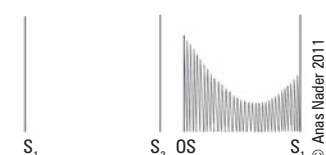
Percutaneous balloon valvuloplasty: young rheumatic pts and good leaflet morphology (can be determined by echo), asymptomatic pts with moderate-severe MS, pulmonary HTN

Contraindication: left atrial thrombus, moderate MR

Open Mitral Commissurotomy: if mild calcification + leaflet/chordal thickening

– restenosis in 50% pts in 8 yr

Valve replacement: indicated in moderate-severe calcification and severely scarred leaflets



© Anas Nader 2011

Mitral Regurgitation (MR)

Etiology

Mitral valve prolapse, congenital cleft leaflets, LV dilatation/aneurysm (CHF, DCM, myocarditis), IE abscess, Marfan's syndrome, HOCM, acute MI, myxoma, mitral valve annulus calcification, chordae/papillary muscle trauma/ischemia/rupture (acute), rheumatic disease

Pathophysiology

Reduced CO → increased LV and LA pressure → LV and LA dilatation → CHF and pulmonary HTN

Symptoms

Dyspnea, PND, orthopnea, palpitations, peripheral edema

Physical Exam

Displaced hyperdynamic apex, left parasternal lift, apical thrill

Auscultation: holosystolic murmur at apex, radiating to axilla ± mid-diastolic rumble, loud S₂ (if pulmonary HTN), S₃

Investigations

ECG: LAE, left atrial delay (bifid P waves), ± LVH

CXR: LVH, LAE, pulmonary venous HTN

Echo: etiology and severity of MR, LV function, leaflets

Swan-Ganz Catheter: prominent LA "v" wave

Treatment

Asymptomatic: serial echos

Symptomatic: decrease preload (diuretics), decrease afterload (ACEI) for severe MR and poor surgical candidates; stabilize acute MR with vasodilators before surgery

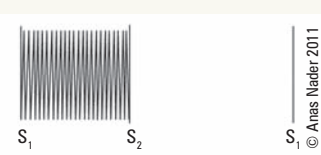
Surgery if: acute MR with CHF, papillary muscle rupture, NYHA class III-IV CHF, AF, increasing LV size or worsening LV function, earlier surgery if valve repairable (>90% likelihood) and patient is low-risk for surgery

Surgical Options

Valve repair: >75% of pts with MR and myxomatous mitral valve prolapse – annuloplasty rings, leaflet repair, chordae transfers/shorten/replacement

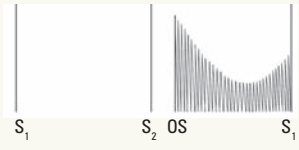
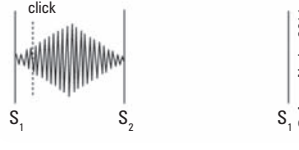
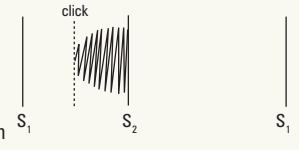
Valve replacement: failure of repair, heavily calcified annulus

Advantage of repair: low rate of endocarditis, no anticoagulation, less chance of re-operation



© Anas Nader 2011

Table 16. Valvular Heart Disease (continued)

<p>Tricuspid Stenosis (TS)</p> <p>Etiology Rheumatic disease, congenital, carcinoid syndrome, fibroelastosis; usually accompanied by MS</p> <p>Pathophysiology Increased RA pressure → right heart failure → decreased CO and fixed on exertion</p> <p>Symptoms Peripheral edema, fatigue, palpitations</p> <p>Physical Exam Prominent “a” waves in JVP, +ve abdominojugular reflux, Kussmaul’s sign, diastolic rumble 4th left intercostal space</p> <p>Investigations ECG: RAE CXR: dilatation of RA without pulmonary artery enlargement Echo: diagnostic</p> <p>Treatment Preload reduction (diuretics), slow HR Surgery if: only if other surgery required (e.g. mitral valve replacement)</p> <p>Surgical Options Valve Replacement: – if severely diseased valve – bioprosthesis preferred</p>	 <p>Tricuspid Regurgitation (TR)</p> <p>Etiology RV dilatation, IE (particularly due to IV drug use), rheumatic disease, congenital (Ebstein anomaly), carcinoid</p> <p>Pathophysiology RV dilatation → TR → further RV dilatation → right heart failure</p> <p>Symptoms Peripheral edema, fatigue, palpitations</p> <p>Physical Exam “cv” waves in JVP, +ve abdominojugular reflux, Kussmaul’s sign, holosystolic murmur at LLSB accentuated by inspiration, left parasternal lift</p> <p>Investigations ECG: RAE, RVH, AFib CXR: RAE, RV enlargement Echo: diagnostic</p> <p>Treatment Preload reduction (diuretics) Surgery if: only if other surgery required (e.g. mitral valve replacement)</p> <p>Surgical Options Annuloplasty (i.e. repair, rarely replacement)</p>
<p>Pulmonary Stenosis (PS)</p> <p>Etiology Usually congenital, rheumatic disease (rare), carcinoid syndrome</p> <p>Pathophysiology Increased RV pressure → RV hypertrophy → right heart failure</p> <p>Symptoms Chest pain, syncope, fatigue, peripheral edema</p> <p>Physical Exam Systolic murmur at 2nd left intercostal space accentuated by inspiration, pulmonary ejection click, right-sided S4</p> <p>Investigations ECG: RVH CXR: prominent pulmonary arteries enlarged RV Echo: diagnostic</p> <p>Treatment Balloon valvuloplasty if severe symptoms</p> <p>Surgical Options Percutaneous or open balloon valvuloplasty</p>	 <p>Pulmonary Regurgitation (PR)</p> <p>Etiology Pulmonary HTN, IE, rheumatic disease, tetralogy of Fallot (post-repair)</p> <p>Pathophysiology Increased RV volume → increased wall tension → RV hypertrophy → right heart failure</p> <p>Symptoms Chest pain, syncope, fatigue, peripheral edema</p> <p>Physical Exam Early diastolic murmur at LLSB, Graham Steell (diastolic) murmur 2nd and 3rd left intercostal space increasing with inspiration</p> <p>Investigations ECG: RVH CXR: prominent pulmonary arteries if pulmonary HTN; enlarged RV Echo: diagnostic</p> <p>Treatment Rarely requires treatment; valve replacement (rarely done)</p> <p>Surgical Options Pulmonary valve replacement</p>
<p>Mitral Valve Prolapse (MVP)</p> <p>Etiology Myxomatous degeneration of chordae, thick, bulky leaflets that crowd orifice, associated with Marfan’s syndrome, pectus excavatum, straight back syndrome, other MSK abnormalities; <3% of population</p> <p>Pathophysiology Mitral valve displaced into LA during systole; no causal mechanisms found for symptoms</p> <p>Symptoms Prolonged, stabbing chest pain, dyspnea, anxiety/panic, palpitations, fatigue, presyncope</p> <p>Physical Exam Auscultation: mid-systolic click (due to billowing of mitral leaflet into LA; tensing of redundant valve tissue); mid to late systolic murmur at apex, accentuated by Valsalva or squat-to-stand maneuvers</p> <p>Investigations ECG: non-specific ST-T wave changes, paroxysmal SVT, ventricular ectopy Echo: systolic displacement of thickened mitral valve leaflets into LA</p> <p>Treatment Asymptomatic: no treatment; reassurance Symptomatic: β-blockers and avoidance of stimulants (caffeine) for significant palpitations, anticoagulation if AFib</p> <p>Surgical Options Mitral valve surgery (repair favored over replacement) if symptomatic and significant MR</p>	

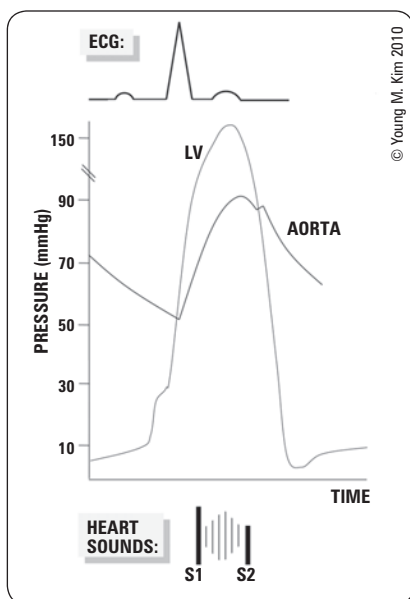


Figure 39. Hemodynamics of aortic stenosis

Stenosis across the aortic valve results in the generation of a significant pressure gradient between the left ventricle and the aorta and a crescendo-decrescendo murmur during systolic contraction. The stenosis decreases the intensity of aortic valve closure hence diminishing S2.

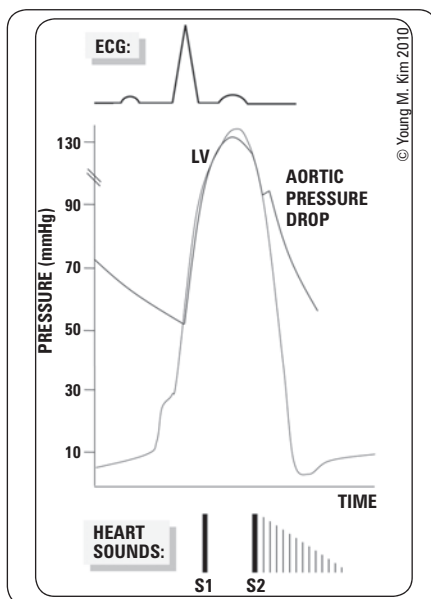


Figure 40. Hemodynamics of aortic regurgitation

Regurgitation across the aortic valve during diastole causes the aortic pressure to rapidly decrease and a decrescendo murmur can be heard at the onset of diastole (after S2 is audible). The presence of regurgitant blood from the aorta increases left-ventricular end-diastolic volume.

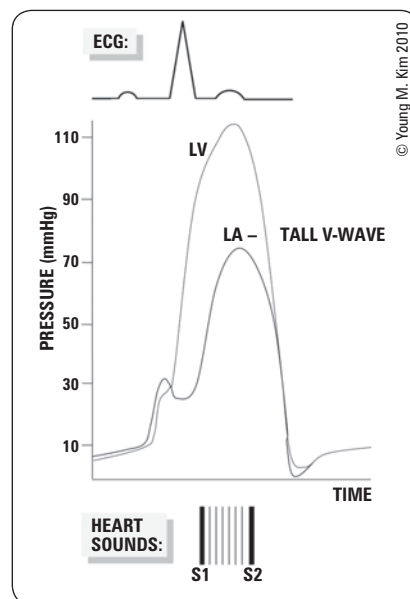


Figure 41. Hemodynamics of acute mitral regurgitation

During systolic contraction, blood regurgitates from the left ventricle into the left atrium across the incompetent mitral valve resulting in an audible holosystolic murmur between S1 and S2. The portion of left ventricular end diastolic volume that regurgitates into the left atrial myocardium increases left atrial pressures resulting in a tall V-wave (in the JVP).

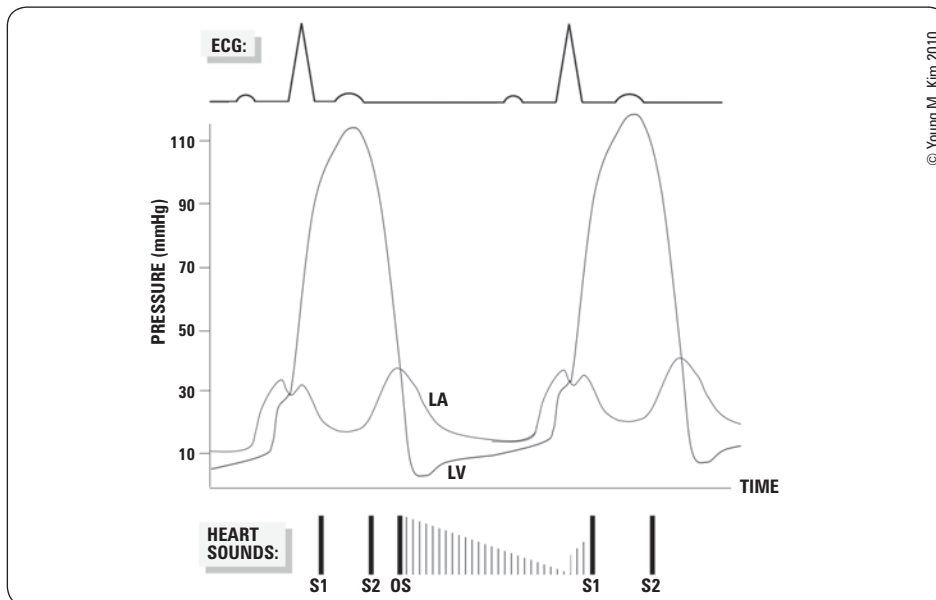


Figure 42. Hemodynamics of mitral stenosis

First note that the left atrial pressure exceeds the left ventricular pressure during diastole due to mitral stenosis and the consequent generation of a pressure gradient across the left atrium and left ventricle. In diastole the stenotic mitral valve opens which corresponds to the opening snap (OS) and the passage of blood across the mitral stenosis results in an audible decrescendo murmur. Left atrial contraction prior to S1 increases the pressure gradient resulting in accentuation of the murmur before S1 is audible.

Pericardial Disease

Acute Pericarditis

Etiology of Pericarditis/Pericardial Effusion

- idiopathic is most common: presumed to be viral
- infectious
 - viral: Coxsackie virus A, B (most common), echovirus
 - bacterial: *S. pneumoniae*, *S. aureus*
 - TB
 - fungal: histoplasmosis, blastomycosis
- post-MI: acute (direct extension of myocardial inflammation, 1-7 d post-MI), Dressler's syndrome (autoimmune reaction, 2-8 wk post-MI)
- post-cardiac surgery (e.g. CABG), other trauma
- metabolic: uremia (common), hypothyroidism
- neoplasm: Hodgkin's, breast, lung, renal cell carcinoma, melanoma
- collagen vascular disease: SLE, polyarteritis, rheumatoid arthritis, scleroderma
- vascular: dissecting aneurysm
- other: drugs (e.g. hydralazine), radiation, infiltrative disease (sarcoid)

Signs and Symptoms

- diagnostic triad: chest pain, friction rub, and ECG changes
- pleuritic chest pain: alleviated by sitting up and leaning forward
- pericardial friction rub: may be uni-, bi-, or triphasic
- \pm fever, malaise

Investigations

- ECG: initially diffuse elevated ST segments \pm depressed PR segment, the elevation in the ST segment is concave upwards \rightarrow 2-5 d later ST isoelectric with T wave flattening and inversion
- CXR: normal heart size, pulmonary infiltrates
- echo: performed to assess for pericardial effusion

Treatment

- treat the underlying disease
- anti-inflammatory agents (high dose NSAIDs/ASA, colchicine; steroids use controversial), analgesics

Complications

- recurrent episodes of pericarditis, atrial arrhythmia, pericardial effusion, tamponade, constrictive pericarditis



Acute Pericarditis Triad

- Chest pain
- Friction rub
- ECG changes

Pericardial Effusion

Etiology

- transudative (serous)
- CHF, hypoalbuminemia/hypoproteinemia, hypothyroidism
- exudative (serosanguinous or bloody)
 - causes similar to the causes of acute pericarditis
 - may develop acute effusion secondary to hemopericardium (trauma, post-MI myocardial rupture, aortic dissection)
- physiologic consequences depend on type and volume of effusion, rate of effusion development, and underlying cardiac disease

Signs and Symptoms

- may be asymptomatic or similar to acute pericarditis
- dyspnea, cough
- extra-cardiac (esophageal/recurrent laryngeal nerve/tracheo-bronchial/phrenic nerve irritation)
- JVP increased with dominant "x" descent
- arterial pulse normal to decreased volume, decreased pulse pressure
- auscultation: distant heart sounds \pm rub
- Ewart's sign

Investigations

- ECG: low voltage, flat T waves, electrical alternans
- CXR: cardiomegaly, rounded cardiac contour
- echo (procedure of choice): fluid in pericardial sac
- pericardiocentesis: definitive method of determining transudate vs. exudate, identify infectious agents, neoplastic involvement

Treatment

- mild: frequent observation with serial echos, treat underlying cause, anti-inflammatory agents
- severe: treat as in tamponade



Ewart's Sign

Bronchial breathing and dullness to percussion at the lower angle of the left scapula in pericardial effusion due to effusion compressing left lower lobe of lung

Cardiac Tamponade

Etiology

- major complication of rapidly accumulating pericardial effusion
- cardiac tamponade is a clinical diagnosis
- any cause of pericarditis but especially trauma, malignancy, uremia, proximal aortic dissection with rupture

Pathophysiology

- high intra-pericardial pressure → decreased venous return → decreased diastolic ventricular filling → decreased CO → hypotension and venous congestion

Signs and Symptoms

- tachypnea, dyspnea, shock, muffled heart sounds
- pulsus paradoxus (inspiratory fall in systolic BP >10 mmHg during quiet breathing)
- JVP “x” descent only, blunted “y” descent
- hepatic congestion/peripheral edema

Investigations

- ECG: electrical alternans (pathognomonic variation in R wave amplitude), low voltage
- echo: pericardial effusion, compression of cardiac chambers (RA and RV) in diastole
- cardiac catheterization

Treatment

- pericardiocentesis – echo-guided
- pericardiectomy
- avoid diuretics and vasodilators (these decrease venous return to already under-filled RV → decrease LV preload → decrease CO)
- IV fluid may increase CO
- treat underlying cause



Classic Quartet of Tamponade

- Hypotension
- Increased JVP
- Tachycardia
- Pulsus paradoxus



Beck's Triad

- Hypotension
- Increased JVP
- Muffled heart sounds



DDx Pulsus Paradoxus

- Constrictive pericarditis (rarely)
- Severe obstructive pulmonary disease (e.g. asthma)
- Tension pneumothorax
- PE
- Cardiogenic shock
- Cardiac tamponade

Constrictive Pericarditis

Etiology

- chronic pericarditis resulting in fibrosed, thickened, adherent, and/or calcified pericardium
- any cause of acute pericarditis may result in chronic pericarditis
- major causes are idiopathic, post-infectious (viral, TB), radiation, post-cardiac surgery, uremia, MI, collagen vascular disease

Signs and Symptoms

- dyspnea, fatigue, palpitations
- abdominal pain
- may mimic CHF (especially right-sided HF)
 - ascites, hepatosplenomegaly, edema
- increased JVP, Kussmaul's sign (paradoxical increase in JVP with inspiration), Friedreich's sign (prominent “y” descent)
- BP usually normal (and usually no pulsus paradoxus)
- precordial examination: ± pericardial knock (early diastolic sound)
- see Table 17 for differentiation from cardiac tamponade

Investigations

- ECG: non-specific – low voltage, flat T wave, ± AFib
- CXR: pericardial calcification, effusions
- echo/CT/MRI: pericardial thickening
- cardiac catheterization: equalization of end-diastolic chamber pressures (diagnostic)

Treatment

- medical: diuretics, salt restriction
- surgical: pericardiectomy (only if refractory to medical therapy)
- prognosis best with idiopathic or infectious cause and worst in post-radiation; death may result from heart failure

Table 17. Differentiation of Constrictive Pericarditis vs. Cardiac Tamponade

Characteristic	Constrictive Pericarditis	Cardiac Tamponade
JVP	“y” > “x”	“x” > “y”
Kussmaul's sign	Present	Absent
Pulsus paradoxus	Uncommon	Always
Pericardial knock	Present	Absent
Hypotension	Variable	Severe

Vascular Disease

- see [Vascular Surgery](#), VS2

Common Medications

Table 18. Commonly Used Cardiac Therapeutics

Drug Class	Examples	Mechanism of Action	Indications	Side Effects	Contraindications
ANGIOTENSIN CONVERTING ENZYME INHIBITORS (ACEI)					
	enalapril (Vasotec®), perindopril (Aceon®), ramipril (Altace®), lisinopril (Zestril®)	Inhibit ACE-mediated conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II (AT II), causing peripheral vasodilation and decreased aldosterone synthesis	HTN, CAD, CHF, post-MI, DM	Dry cough, 10% hypotension, fatigue, hyperkalemia, renal insufficiency, angioedema	Bilateral renal artery stenosis, pregnancy, caution in decreased GFR
ANGIOTENSIN II RECEPTOR BLOCKERS (ARBs)					
	candesartan, irbesartan, valsartan	Block AT II receptors, causing similar effects to ACEI	Same as ACEI, although evidence is generally less for ARBs; often used when ACEI are not tolerated	Similar to ACEI, but do not cause dry cough	Same as ACEI
DIRECT RENIN INHIBITORS (DRIs)					
	aliskiren	Directly blocks renin thus inhibiting the conversion of angiotensinogen to angiotensin I; this also causes a decrease in AT II	HTN (exact role of this drug remains unclear)	Diarrhea, hyperkalemia (higher risk if used with an ACEI), rash, cough, angioedema, reflux, hypotension, rhabdomyolysis, seizure	Pregnancy, severe renal impairment
β-BLOCKERS					
β1 antagonists	atenolol, metoprolol, bisoprolol	Block β-adrenergic receptors, decreasing HR, BP, contractility, and myocardial oxygen demand, slow conduction through the AV node	HTN, CAD, acute MI, post-MI, CHF (start low and go slow), AFib, SVT	Hypotension, fatigue, light-headedness, depression, bradycardia, hyperkalemia, bronchospasm, impotence, depression of counterregulatory response to hypoglycemia, exacerbation of Raynaud's phenomenon, and claudication	Sinus bradycardia, 2nd or 3rd degree heart block, hypotension, WPW Caution in asthma, claudication, Raynaud's phenomenon, and decompensated CHF
β1/β2 antagonists	propranolol				
α1/β1/β2 antagonists	labetalol, carvedilol				
β1 antagonists with intrinsic sympathomimetic activity	acebutalol				
CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS (CCBs)					
Benzothiazepines Phenylalkylamines (non-dihydropyridines)	diltiazem verapamil	Block smooth muscle and myocardial calcium channels causing effects similar to β-blockers Also vasodilate	HTN, CAD, SVT, diastolic dysfunction	Hypotension, bradycardia, edema Negative inotrope	Sinus bradycardia, 2nd or 3rd degree heart block, hypotension, WPW, CHF
Dihydropyridines	amlodipine (Norvasc®), nifedipine (Adalat®), felodipine (Plendil®)	Block smooth muscle calcium channels causing peripheral vasodilation	HTN	Hypotension, edema, flushing, headache, light-headedness	Severe aortic stenosis and liver failure
DIURETICS					
Thiazides	hydrochlorothiazide, chlorthalidone, metolazone	Reduce Na ⁺ reabsorption in the distal convoluted tubule (DCT)	HTN (drugs of choice for uncomplicated HTN)	Hypotension, hypokalemia, polyuria	Sulfa allergy, pregnancy
Loop diuretics	furosemide (Lasix®)	Blocks Na ⁺ /K ⁺ -ATPase in the loop of Henle	CHF, pulmonary or peripheral edema	Hypovolemia, hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis	Hypovolemia, hypokalemia
Aldosterone receptor antagonists	spironolactone, eplerenone	Antagonize aldosterone receptors	HTN, CHF, hypokalemia	Edema, hyperkalemia, gynecomastia	Renal insufficiency, hyperkalemia, pregnancy
INOTROPES					
	digoxin (Lanoxin®)	Inhibit Na ⁺ /K ⁺ -ATPase, leading to increased intracellular Na ⁺ and Ca ²⁺ concentration and increased myocardial contractility Also slows conduction through the AV node	CHF, AFib	AV block, tachyarrhythmias, bradyarrhythmias, blurred or yellow vision (van Gogh syndrome), anorexia, N/V	2nd or 3rd degree AV block, hypokalemia, WPW

Table 18. Commonly Used Cardiac Therapeutics (continued)

Drug Class	Examples	Mechanism of Action	Indications	Side Effects	Contraindications
ANTICOAGULANTS					
Coumarins	warfarin (Coumadin®)	Antagonizes vitamin K, leading to decreased synthesis of clotting factors II, VII, IX, and X	AFib, LV dysfunction, prosthetic valves	Bleeding (by far the most important side effect), paradoxical thrombosis, skin necrosis	Recent surgery or bleeding, bleeding diathesis, pregnancy
Heparins	Unfractionated heparin LMWHs: dalteparin, enoxaparin, tinzaparin	Antithrombin III agonist, leading to decreased clotting factor activity	Acute MI; when immediate anticoagulant effect needed	Bleeding, osteoporosis, heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (less in LMWHs)	Recent surgery or bleeding, bleeding diathesis, thrombocytopenia, renal insufficiency (for LMWHs)
Direct thrombin inhibitors	dabigatran, melagatran	Competitive, direct thrombin inhibitor; thrombin enables fibrinogen conversion to fibrin during the coagulation cascade, thereby preventing thrombus development	AFib	Bleeding, GI upset	Severe renal impairment, recent surgery, active bleeding
Direct Factor Xa inhibitors	rivaroxaban	Direct, selective and reversible inhibition of factor Xa in both the intrinsic and extrinsic coagulation pathways	AFib	Bleeding, GI upset, elevated liver enzymes	Hepatic disease, active bleeding, bleeding diathesis, pregnancy, lactation
ANTIPLATELETS					
Salicylates	ASA (Aspirin®)	Irreversibly acetylates platelet COX-1, preventing thromboxane A2-mediated platelet aggregation	CAD, acute MI, post-MI, post-PCI, CABG	Bleeding, GI upset, GI ulceration, impaired renal perfusion	Active bleeding or PUD
Thienopyridines	clopidogrel (Plavix®), ticlopidine (Ticlid®)	Block platelet ADP receptors	Acute MI, post-MI, post-PCI, CABG	Bleeding, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, neutropenia (ticlopidine)	Active bleeding or PUD
GPIIb/IIIa inhibitors	eptifibatide, tirofiban, abciximab	Block binding of fibrinogen to Gp IIb/IIIa	Acute MI, particularly if PCI is planned	Bleeding	Recent surgery or bleeding, bleeding diathesis
THROMBOLYTICS					
	alteplase, reteplase, tenecteplase, streptokinase	Convert circulating plasminogen to plasmin, which lyses cross-linked fibrin	Acute STEMI	Bleeding	See Table 8, C28
NITRATES					
	nitroglycerin	Relax vascular smooth muscle, producing venous and arteriolar dilation	CAD, MI, CHF (isosorbide dinitrate plus hydralazine)	Headache, dizziness, weakness, postural hypotension	Concurrent use of cGMP phosphodiesterase inhibitors, angle closure glaucoma, increased intracranial pressure
LIPID LOWERING AGENTS					
Statins	atorvastatin (Lipitor®), pravastatin (Pravachol®), rosuvastatin (Crestor®), simvastatin (Zocor®), lovastatin (Meracor®)	Inhibit HMG CoA reductase, which catalyzes the rate-limiting step in cholesterol synthesis	Dyslipidemia (1° prevention of CAD), CAD, post-MI	Myalgia, rhabdomyolysis, abdominal pain	Liver or muscle disease

Antiarrhythmics

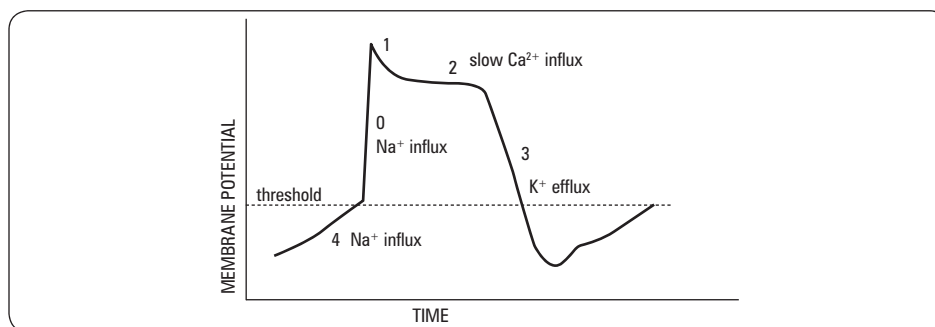


Figure 43. Representative cardiac action potential

Table 19. Antiarrhythmic* Drugs (Vaughan-Williams Classification)

Class	Agent	Indications	Side Effects	Mechanism of Action
Ia	quinidine procainamide disopyramide	SVT, VT	Torsades de Pointes (all Ia), diarrhea Lupus-like syndrome Anticholinergic effects	Moderate Na ⁺ channel blockade Slows phase 0 upstroke Prolongs repolarization, slowing conduction
Ib	lidocaine mexiletine	VT	Confusion, stupor, seizures GI upset, tremor	Mild Na ⁺ channel blockade Shortens phase 3 repolarization
Ic	propafenone flecainide encainide	SVT, VT AFib	Exacerbation of VT (all Ic) Negative inotropy (all Ic) Bradycardia and heart block (all Ic)	Marked Na ⁺ channel blockade Markedly slows phase 0 upstroke
II	propranolol metoprolol, etc.	SVT, AFib	Bronchospasm, negative inotropy, bradycardia, AV block, impotence, fatigue	β-blocker Decreases phase 4 depolarization
III	amiodarone** sotalol	SVT, VT AFib SVT, VT, AFib	Photosensitivity, pulmonary toxicity, hepatotoxicity, thyroid disease, increased INR Torsades de Pointes, bradycardia, heart block, β-blocker side effects	Blocks K ⁺ channel Prolongs phase 3 repolarization, which prolongs refractory period
IV	verapamil diltiazem	SVT AFib	Bradycardia, AV block Hypotension	Calcium channel blocker Slows phase 4 spontaneous depolarization, slowing AV node conduction

*All antiarrhythmics have potential to be proarrhythmic

**Amiodarone has class I, II, III, and IV properties



Antiarrhythmic Drug Classification

Some Block Potassium Channels

- I – Sodium channel blocker
- II – β-Blocker
- III – Potassium channel blocker
- IV – CCB

Table 20. Actions of α and β Adrenergic Receptors

Target System	α RECEPTORS		β RECEPTORS	
	α1	α2	β1	β2
Cardiovascular	Constriction of vascular smooth muscle Constriction of skin, skeletal muscle, and splanchnic vessels Increased myocardial contractility Decreased heart rate	Same as α1 Peripherally act to modulate vessel tone Vasoconstrict and dilate; oppose α1 vasoconstrictor activity	Increased myocardial contractility Accelerate SA node Accelerate ectopic pacemakers	Decreased vascular smooth muscle tone
Respiratory				Bronchodilation
Dermal	Pilomotor smooth muscle contraction Apocrine constriction			
Ocular	Radial muscle contraction		Ciliary muscle relaxation	
Gastrointestinal	Inhibition of myenteric plexus Anal sphincter contraction			
Genitourinary	Pregnant uterine contraction Penile and seminal vesicle ejaculation Urinary bladder contraction	Smooth muscle wall relaxation	Stimulation of renal renin release	Bladder wall relaxation Uterine relaxation
Metabolic	Stimulate liver gluconeogenesis and glycogenolysis at the liver	Same as α1 Fat cell lipolysis	Fat cell lipolysis Glycogenolysis	Gluconeogenesis Fat cell lipolysis

Adapted from the Family Practice Notebook (www.fpnotebook.com/NEU194.htm)

Table 21. Commonly Used Drugs that Act on α and β Adrenergic Receptors

Mechanism of Action	α RECEPTORS			β RECEPTORS		
	α_1	α_1 and α_2	α_2	β_1	β_1 and β_2	β_2
Agonist	Phenylephrine Methoxamine	Epinephrine Norepinephrine	Clonidine Methyldopa	Norepinephrine Dobutamine	Isoproterenol Epinephrine	Albuterol Terbutaline
Antagonist	Prazosin Phenoxybenzamine	Phentolamine	Yohimbine Mirtazapine	Metoprolol Acebutolol Alprenolol Atenolol Esmolol	Propranolol Timolol Nadolol Pindolol Carvedilol	Butoxamine

Adapted from the Family Practice Notebook (<http://www.fpnotebook.com/NEU194.htm>)

Landmark Cardiac Trials

Trial	Reference	Results
ISCHEMIC HEART DISEASE		
ASCOT-LLA	<i>Lancet</i> 2003; 361:1149-58	In hypertensive patients with risk factors for CHD and average or below-average cholesterol, atorvastatin reduced nonfatal MI, fatal CHD, fatal/nonfatal stroke, coronary events but not all-cause mortality
CAPRIE	<i>Lancet</i> 1996; 348:1329-39	In atherosclerotic vascular disease clopidogrel reduced the primary combined endpoint of stroke, MI, or vascular death and improved PAD compared to ASA
CARE	<i>NEJM</i> 1996; 335:1001-9	Pravastatin reduced MI and stroke in patients with previous MI and average cholesterol
COURAGE	<i>NEJM</i> 2007; 356:1503-16	Compared with optimal medical therapy alone PCI + medical therapy did not reduce all-cause mortality and non fatal MI, and it did not reduce the incidence of major cardiovascular events
CURE	<i>NEJM</i> 2001; 345:494-502	Clopidogrel plus ASA reduced death from CV causes, non fatal MI, or stroke but increased bleeding complications
EUROPA	<i>Lancet</i> 2003; 362:782-88	With stable CAD and no CHF perindopril reduced cardiovascular death, MI, and total mortality
HOPE	<i>NEJM</i> 2000; 342:154-60	In high-risk patients without low LVEF or CHF ramipril reduced rates of death, MI, stroke, revascularization, new diagnosis of DM and complications due to DM; vitamin E had no effect on outcomes
HPS	<i>Lancet</i> 2002; 360:7-22	In high-risk patients with various cholesterol values simvastatin reduced all-cause mortality, coronary deaths, and major vascular events
JUPITER	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 359:2195-2207	With low to normal LDL-C and elevated hsCRP treatment with rosuvastatin significantly reduced major cardiovascular events; NNT with rosuvastatin for 2 yr to prevent one primary endpoint = 95
SYNTAX	<i>NEJM</i> 2009; 360:961-972	CABG has lower rate of major cardiac or cerebrovascular events; the rate of stroke was increased with CABG, whereas the rate of repeat revascularization was increased with PCI
TNT	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 352:1425-35	Lipid-lowering therapy with atorvastatin 80 mg/d in patients with stable CHD provides clinical benefit beyond atorvastatin 10 mg/d
WHI	<i>JAMA</i> 2002; 288:321-333	Estrogen plus progestin therapy is associated with increased risks of cardiovascular disease and breast cancer but decreased risks of hip fracture and colorectal cancer in postmenopausal women
MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION		
BHAT	<i>JAMA</i> 1982; 247:1707-14	In acute MI propranolol reduced all-cause mortality, cardiovascular death, and sudden death from atherosclerotic heart disease
COURAGE	<i>NEJM</i> 2007; 356:1503-16	Compared with optimal medical therapy alone PCI + medical therapy did not reduce all-cause mortality and non fatal MI, and it did not reduce the incidence of major cardiovascular events
ISIS-2	<i>Lancet</i> 1988; 2:349-60	Early therapy with streptokinase and ASA in patients with MI individually and in combination significantly reduced all-cause mortality and in combination demonstrated additive effect
ISIS-4	<i>Lancet</i> 1995; 345:669-85	In patients with suspected or definite acute MI early treatment with captopril reduced all-cause mortality at 35 d and during long-term follow up
OASIS-5	<i>NEJM</i> 2006; 354:1464-76	Compared to enoxaparin, fondaparinux reduced mortality rates, major bleeds at 9 and MI at 30 and 180 d
PROVE IT – TIMI 22	<i>NEJM</i> 2004; 350:1495-1504	In patients hospitalized for ACS high-dose atorvastatin reduced all-cause mortality, MI, unstable angina, revascularization, and stroke compared with pravastatin



Useful app "CHF Trials" available on iTunes®

Trial	Reference	Results
HEART FAILURE		
AIRE	<i>Lancet</i> 1993; 342:821-8	Ramipril commenced 3-10 d after MI and continued for a mean 15-month period significantly reduced all-cause mortality in patients with non-severe CHF
CHARM	<i>Lancet</i> 2003; 362:759-66	Candesartan reduced overall mortality, cardiovascular death, and CHF hospitalizations
CIBIS II	<i>Lancet</i> 1999; 353:9-13	Bisoprolol reduced all-cause mortality, cardiovascular death, all-cause hospitalization, and CHF hospitalization
COMET	<i>Lancet</i> 2003; 362:7-13	Carvedilol was associated with a reduction in all cause mortality compared with metoprolol
CONSENSUS	<i>NEJM</i> 1987; 316:1429-35	Enalapril reduced all-cause mortality, death due to progression of heart failure
COPERNICUS	<i>NEJM</i> 2001; 344:1651-8	Carvedilol in addition to standard treatment significantly reduced the risk of death or hospitalization in patients with severe CHF
I-PRESERVE	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 359:2456-2467	In patients with CHF and normal LVEF treatment with ARB (irbesartan) did not improve mortality or cardiovascular morbidity compared to placebo
MERIT-HF	<i>Lancet</i> 1999; 353:2001-7	Metoprolol CR/XL daily in addition to optimum standard therapy improved survival in clinically stable patients equating to prevention of 1 death per 27 patients treated per year
RALES	<i>NEJM</i> 1999; 341:709-17	In severe CHF (class III/IV) and LVEF <35% spironolactone reduced all-cause mortality, sudden death, and death due to progression of heart failure
SAVE	<i>NEJM</i> 1992; 327:669-77	Patients with LV dysfunction post-MI long-term captopril over 3.5 yr reduced the risk of death due to cardiovascular causes, recurrent MI, development of severe CHF, and CHF hospitalization
SCD-HeFT	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 352:225-237	In mild-to-moderate CHF shock-only ICD significantly reduces risk of death; amiodarone had no benefit compared with placebo in treating patients with mild-to-moderate CHF
SOLVD	<i>NEJM</i> 1991; 325:293-302	In stable chronic CHF with decreased LVEF (<0.35) long-term enalapril reduced death due to all causes and death or hospitalization due to CHF
TRACE	<i>NEJM</i> 1995; 333:1670-6	In patients with LV dysfunction post-MI long-term trandolapril reduced the risk of death or progression to severe CHF and reduced risk of sudden death
V-HeFT II	<i>NEJM</i> 1991; 325:303-10	In chronic CHF enalapril reduced mortality more than hydralazine-isosorbide for at least 2 yr; treatment with either enalapril or hydralazine-isosorbide increased LVEF
DIABETES		
CARDS	<i>Lancet</i> 2004; 264:685-96	Atorvastatin reduces the risk of cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 DM
ONTARGET	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 358:1547-59	In patients with vascular disease or DM without CHF telmisartan is equally as effective as ramipril, with telmisartan causing a reduced risk of cough and angioedema, and an increased risk of hypotensive symptoms; combination therapy offers no advantage
ARRHYTHMIA		
AFFIRM	<i>NEJM</i> 2002; 347:1825-33	No significant difference in mortality rates between rate or rhythm control of AFib
AF-CHF	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 358:2667-77	In patients with AFib and CHF there is no significant difference in mortality rates from cardiovascular causes between rate and rhythm control
ROCKET-AF	<i>NEJM</i> 2011; 365:883-891	In patients with AFib rivoxabarin is non-inferior to warfarin for stroke prevention, and major and non-major bleeding
HYPERTENSION		
HYVET	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 358:1887-98	In hypertensive patients >80 yr treatment with indapamide, with or without perindopril, showed a trend towards reduced relative risk of fatal or non-fatal stroke
UKHDS (UKPDS)	<i>BMJ</i> 1998; 317:703-13	Hypertensive patients with DM and tight BP control at <150/85 mmHg by use of ACEI or β -blocker reduced risk of diabetic complications and death related to DM and reduced risk of end-organ damage
VALUE	<i>Lancet</i> 2004; 363:2022-2031	Valsartan group had higher incidence of MI than amlodipine group, whereas amlodipine had a higher incidence of new-onset DM

References

Ischemic Heart Disease

- Cannon CP, Braunwald E, McCabe CH, et al. Intensive vs. moderate lipid lowering with statins after acute coronary syndromes. *NEJM* 2004;350:1495-504.
- Lindahl B, Toss H, Siegbahn A, et al. Markers of myocardial damage and inflammation in relation to long-term mortality in unstable coronary artery disease. *NEJM* 2000;343:1139-1147.
- Pitt B, Remme W, Zannad F, et al. Eplerenone, a selective aldosterone blocker, in patients with left ventricular dysfunction after myocardial infarction. *NEJM* 2003;348:1309-1321.
- Rauch U, Osende JI, Fuster V, et al. Thrombus formation on the atherosclerotic plaques: pathogenesis and clinical consequences. *Ann Intern Med* 2001;134:224-238.
- Spinler S, Rees C. Review of prasugrel for the secondary prevention of atherothrombosis. *J Manag Care Pharm* 2009;15:383-95.
- The Arterial Revascularization Therapies Study Group. Comparison of coronary-artery bypass surgery and stenting for the treatment of multivessel disease. *NEJM* 2001;344:1117-1124.
- Turpie AGG, Antman EM. Low-molecular-weight heparins in the treatment of acute coronary syndromes. *Arch Intern Med* 2001;161:1484-1490.
- Yeghiazarians Y, Braunstein JB, Askari A, et al. Review article: unstable angina pectoris. *NEJM* 2000;342:101-114.

Nuclear Cardiology

- Lee TH, Boucher CA. Noninvasive tests in patients with stable coronary artery disease (review). *NEJM* 2000;344:1840-1845.

Cardiomyopathies

- Feldman AM, McNamara D. Myocarditis (review). *NEJM* 2000;343:1388-1398.

Guidelines

- 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of ST-elevation myocardial infarction. *JACC* 2013;61:e78-140.
- 2012 ACCF/AHA/ACP/AATS/PCNA/SCAI/STS Guideline for the diagnosis and management of patients with stable ischemic heart disease. *JACC* 2012;60:e44-e164.
- ACC/AHA guidelines for percutaneous coronary intervention. *Circulation* 2001;103:3019-3041.
- ACC/AHA 2002 guideline update for the management of patients with unstable angina and non-ST-segment elevation myocardial infarction. Available from: <http://www.acc.org>.
- ACCF/AHA 2009 focused update on the guidelines for the diagnosis and management of heart failure in adults. *Circulation* 2009;119:1977-2016.
- ACC/AHA guidelines for the management of patients with ST-elevation myocardial infarction: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Committee to Revise the 1999 Guidelines for the Management of Patients with Acute Myocardial Infarction). *Circulation* 2004;110:e82-292.
- American College of Cardiology (clinical guidelines, etc). Available from: <http://www.acc.org>.
- Antman EM, Anbe DT, Armstrong PW, et al. ACC/AHA guidelines for the management of patients with ST-elevation myocardial infarction – summary: a report of the American College of Canadian Cardiovascular Society (CCS) mobile guidelines. Available from: <http://www.ccs.ca/mobile>.
- Aurigemma GP, Gaasch WH. Clinical practice, diastolic heart failure. *NEJM* 2004;351:1097.
- Beard JD. Chronic lower limb ischemia. *BMJ* 2000;320:854-857.
- Canadian Cardiovascular Society 2005 Consensus Conference Peripheral Arterial Disease (Draft). Available from: <http://www.ccs.ca>.
- Cardiology. American Heart Association Task Force on practice guidelines. *Circulation* 2004;110:588.
- Cardiology Online. Available from: <http://www.theheart.org>.
- CCS focused 2012 update of the CCS atrial fibrillation guidelines: recommendations for stroke prevention and rate/rhythm control. *Can J Cardiol* 2012;28:125-136.
- CCS. The use of antiplatelet therapy in the outpatient setting: CCS guidelines. *Can J Cardiol* 2011;27:S1-S59.
- CCS. 2012 heart failure management guidelines update: Focus on acute and chronic heart failure. *Can J Cardiol* 2013;29:168-181.
- CCS. 2001 Canadian cardiovascular society consensus guideline update for the management and prevention of heart failure. *Can J Cardiol* 2001;17(suppl E):5-24.
- CCS 2000 Consensus Conference: Women and ischemic heart disease. *Can J Cardiol* 2000;17(suppl D).
- Harrington RA, Becker RC, Ezekowitz M, et al. Antithrombotic therapy for coronary artery disease: the seventh ACCP conference on antithrombotic and thrombolytic therapy. *Chest* 2004;126(3 suppl):513s-584s.
- Heart valve repair. Available from: <http://www.heartvalverepair.net>.
- May J, White GH, Harris JP. The complications and downside of endovascular therapies. *Adv Surg* 2001;35:153-172.
- Rutherford RB. Vascular surgery, 4th ed. Toronto: WB Saunders, 1995. Chapter: Atherogenesis and the medical management of atherosclerosis. p222-234.
- Schmieder FA, Comerota AJ. Intermittent claudication: magnitude of the problem, patient evaluation, and therapeutic strategies. *Am J Card* 2001;87(Suppl):3D-13D.
- Simpson C, Dorian P, Gupta A, et al. Assessment of the cardiac patient for fitness to drive and fly: executive summary. *Can J Cardiol* 2004;20:1313-1323.
- Task Force on the Diagnosis and Treatment of Peripheral Artery Diseases of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). *Eur Heart J* 2011;32:2851-2906.
- Thygesen K, Alpert JS, Jaffe AS, et al. Third universal definition of myocardial infarction. *Eur Heart J* 2012;33:2551-2567.
- Way LW, Doherty GM (editors). Current surgical diagnosis and treatment, 11th ed. Lange Medical Books/McGraw-Hill, 2004.
- Welsh RC, Travers A, Huynh T, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society Working Group: providing a perspective on the 2007 focused update of the ACC/AHA 2004 guidelines for the management of ST elevation myocardial infarction. *Can J Cardiol* 2009;25:25-32.
- Yang SC, Cameron DE (editors). Current therapy in thoracic and cardiovascular medicine. McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Ambulatory ECG

- Kadish AH, Buxton AE, Kennedy HL. ACC/AHA clinical competence statement on electrocardiography and ambulatory electrocardiography: a report of the ACC/AHA/ACP-ASIM task force on clinical competence. *Circulation* 2001;104:3169-3178.
- Krahn A, Klein G, Skane A, et al. Insertable loop recorder use for detection of intermittent arrhythmias. *Pacing and Clinical Electrophysiol* 2004;27:657-664.
- Zimetbaum P, Josephson M. The evolving role of ambulatory arrhythmia monitoring in general clinical practice. *Ann Intern Med* 1999;130:848-856.

Stress Testing

- Gibbons RJ, Balady GJ, Beasley JW, et al. ACC/AHA Guidelines for Exercise Testing. A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines (Committee on Exercise Testing). *JACC* 1997;30:260-315.

Echocardiography

- Cheitlin M. ACC/AHA/ASE 2003 guideline update for the clinical application of echocardiography: summary article. *J Am Soc Echocardiography* 2003;16:1091-1110.
- Gowda R, Khan I, Sacchi T, et al. History of the evolution of echocardiography. *Int J Cardiol* 2004;97:1-6.
- Heatlie G, Giles M. Echocardiography and the general physician. *Postgrad Med J* 2004;80:84-88.
- Picano E. Stress echocardiography: a historical perspective. *AJM* 2003;114:126-130.

Nuclear Cardiology

- Beller G, Zaret B. Contributions of nuclear cardiology to diagnosis and prognosis of patients with coronary artery disease. *Circulation* 2000;101:1465-1478.
- Sabharwal N, Lahiri A. Role of myocardial perfusion imaging for risk stratification in suspected or known coronary artery disease. *Heart* 2003;89:1291-1297.

MR

- Danias P, Roussakis A, Ioannidis J. Cardiac imaging diagnostic performance of coronary magnetic resonance angiography as compared against conventional x-ray angiography: a meta-analysis. *J Am Col Cardiol* 2004;44:1867-1876.
- Kim WY, Danias P, Stuber M, et al. Coronary magnetic resonance angiography for the detection of coronary stenoses. *NEJM* 2001;345:1863-1869.

CT

- Miller JM, Rochitte CE, Dewey M, et al. Diagnostic performance of coronary angiography by 64-row CT. *NEJM* 2008;359:2324-2336.
- Schoepf J, Becker C, Ohnesorge B, et al. CT of coronary artery disease. *Radiology* 2004;232:18-37.
- Somberg J. Arrhythmia therapy. *Am J Therapeutics* 2002;9:537-542.

Cath/EPs

- Conti J. ACC 2005 Annual session highlight. Cardiac arrhythmias. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2005;45:B30-B32.
- Hayes D, Furman S. Cardiac pacing: how it started, where we are, where we are going. *J Cardiovasc Electrophysiology* 2004;15:619-627.
- Keane D. New catheter ablation techniques for the treatment of cardiac arrhythmias. *Card Electrophysiol Rev* 2002;6:341-348.
- Packer D. Evolution of mapping and anatomic imaging of cardiac arrhythmias. *J Cardio Electrophysiol* 2004;15:839-854.
- Ryan TJ, Faxon DP, Gunnar RM, et al. Guidelines for percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty. A report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on assessment of diagnostic and therapeutic cardiovascular procedures (subcommittee on percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty). *Circulation* 1988;78:486-502.
- Skanes A, Klein G, Krahn A, et al. Cryoablation: potentials and pitfalls. *J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol* 2004;15:528-534.
- Wellens J. Cardiac arrhythmias: the quest for a cure. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2004;44:1155-1163.
- Zipes D. The year in electrophysiology. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2004;43:1306-1324.
- Zipes DP, DiMarco JP, Gillete PC, et al. ACC/AHA task force report guidelines for clinical intracardiac electrophysiological and catheter ablation procedures. *JACC* 1995;26:555-573.

Arrhythmias

- Bernstein AD. The NASPE/BPEG pacemaker code. *Tex Heart Inst J* 1991;18:299-300.
- Camm AJ, Kirchhof P, Lip GYH, et al. Task Force for the Management of Atrial Fibrillation of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). Guidelines for the management of atrial fibrillation. *Eur Heart J* 2010;31:2369-2429.
- Gutierrez C, Blanchard DG. Atrial fibrillation: diagnosis and treatment. *Am Fam Phys* 2011;83:61-68.
- Garcia TB, Miller GT. Arrhythmia Recognition: The Art of Interpretation. Sudbury: Jones & Bartlett, 2004.
- Thijssen J, Borleffs CJ, van Rees JB, et al. Driving restrictions after implantable cardioverter defibrillator implantation: an evidence-based approach. *Eur Heart J* 2011;32:2678-2687.
- Lip GYH, Nieuwlaat R, Pisters R, et al. Refining clinical risk stratification for predicting stroke and thromboembolism in atrial fibrillation using a novel risk factor-based approach: the Euro heart survey on atrial fibrillation. *Chest* 2010;137:263-72.
- Patel MR, Mahaffey KW, Garg J, et al. Rivaroxaban vs. warfarin in nonvalvular atrial fibrillation. *NEJM* 2011;365:883-891.
- Prystowsky EN, Topol EJ, Califf RM, et al. (editors). Textbook of cardiovascular medicine, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007. Chapter: Electrophysiology and pacing.

Percutaneous Angiography/PCI

- Baim D. New devices for percutaneous coronary intervention are rapidly making bypass surgery obsolete. *Curr Opin Cardiol* 2004;19:593-597.
- Bashore TM, Bates ER, Berger PB, et al. ACC/SCA&I expert consensus document. American College of Cardiology/Society for Cardiac Angiography and Interventions Clinical Expert Consensus Document on Cardiac Catheterization Laboratory Standards. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2001;37:2170-214.
- Guidelines for percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty: a report of the American College of Cardiology/Am Heart Association Task Force on Assessment of Diagnostic and Therapeutic Cardiovascular Procedures Subcommittee on percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 1988;12:529-545.
- O'Neil W, Dixon S, Grines C. The year in interventional cardiology. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2005;45:1117-1134.
- Serruys PW, Morice MC, Kappertain AP, et al. Percutaneous coronary intervention vs. coronary-artery bypass grafting for severe coronary artery disease. *NEJM* 2009;360:961-972.

Cardiovascular Surgery

- Alexander P, Giangola G. Deep venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism: diagnosis, prophylaxis, and treatment. *Ann Vasc Surg* 1999;13:318-327.
- American College of Cardiology. Available from: <http://www.acc.org>.
- Beard JD. Chronic lower limb ischemia. *BMJ* 2000;320:854-857.
- Bojar RM. Manual of perioperative care in cardiac surgery, 3rd ed. Massachusetts: Blackwell Science, 1999.
- Cardiology Online. Available from: <http://www.theheart.org>.
- Cheng DCH, David TE. Perioperative care in cardiac anesthesia and surgery. Austin: Landes Bioscience, 1999.
- Coulam CH, Rubin GD. Acute aortic abnormalities. *Semin Roentgenol* 2001;36:148-164.
- Crawford ES, Crawford JL, Veith FJ, et al. (editors). Vascular surgery: principles and practice, 2nd ed. Toronto: McGraw-Hill, 1994. Chapter: Thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm.
- Fuchs JA, Rutherford RB (editors). Vascular surgery, 4th ed. Toronto: WB Saunders, 1995. Chapter: Atherogenesis and the medical management of atherosclerosis. p222-234.
- Freischlag JA, Veith FJ, Hobson RW, et al. (editors). Vascular surgery: principles and practice, 2nd ed. Toronto: McGraw-Hill, 1994. Chapter: Abdominal aortic aneurysms.
- Hallett JW Jr. Abdominal aortic aneurysm: natural history and treatment. *Heart Dis Stroke* 1992;1:303-308.
- Hallett JW Jr. Management of abdominal aortic aneurysms. *Mayo Clin Proc* 2000;75:395-399.
- Harlan BJ, Starr A, Harwin FM. Illustrated handbook of cardiac surgery. New York: Springer-Verlag, 1996.
- Heart Valve Repair. Available from: <http://www.heartvalverepair.net>.
- Hiratzka LF, Bakris GL, Beckman JA, et al. 2010 ACCF/AHA/AATS/ACR/ASA/SCA/SCAI/SIR/STS/SVM guidelines for the diagnosis and management of patients with thoracic aortic disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2010;55:e27-e129.
- May J, White GH, Harris JP. The complications and downside of endovascular therapies. *Adv Surg* 2001;35:153-35172.
- Pitt MPI, Bonser RS. The natural history of thoracic aortic aneurysm disease: an overview. *J Card Surg* 1997;12(Suppl):270-278.
- Powell JT, Brown LC. The natural history of abdominal aortic aneurysms and their risk of rupture. *Adv Surg* 2001;35:173-185.
- Rabi D, Clement F, McAlister F, et al. Effect of perioperative glucose-insulin-potassium infusions on mortality and atrial fibrillation after coronary artery bypass grafting: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Can J Cardiol* 2010;26:178-184.
- Rosen CL, Tracy JA. The diagnosis of lower extremity deep venous thrombosis. *Em Med Clin N Am* 2001;19:895-912.
- Schmieder FA, Comerota AJ. Intermittent claudication: magnitude of the problem, patient evaluation, and therapeutic strategies. *Am J Card* 2001;87(Suppl):3D-13D.
- Verma S, Szmitko PE, Weisel RD, et al. Clinician update: should radial arteries be used routinely for coronary artery bypass grafting? *Circulation* 2004;110:e40-e46.
- Way LW, Doherty GM. Current surgical diagnosis and treatment, 11th ed. Lange Medical Books/McGraw-Hill, 2004.
- Yang SC, Cameron DE. Current therapy in thoracic and cardiovascular medicine. McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Tara He and Vivian Wang, chapter editors
 Jillian Bardsley and Evan Lilly, associate editors
 Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor
 Dr. David Juurlink, staff editor

General Principles	2	Pharmacodynamics	7
Drug Nomenclature		Dose-Response Relationship	
Phases of Clinical Testing		Efficacy	
Drug Administration		Potency	
		Effects of Drugs on Receptors	
Pharmacokinetics	3	Agonists	
Absorption		Antagonists	
Mechanisms of Drug Absorption		Effectiveness and Safety	
Factors Affecting the Rate and Extent of Drug Absorption		Therapeutic Indices	
Bioavailability			
First-Pass Effect		Therapeutic Drug Monitoring	9
Efflux Pump			
Distribution		Adverse Drug Reactions	9
Factors Affecting the Rate and Extent of Drug Distribution		Approach to Suspected ADRs	
Volume of Distribution			
Plasma Protein Binding		Variability in Drug Response	10
Depots			
Barriers		Drug Interactions	10
Metabolism (Biotransformation)			
Drug Metabolizing Pathways		Autonomic Pharmacology	10
Factors Affecting Drug Biotransformation		Parasympathetic Nervous System	
Elimination		Sympathetic Nervous System	
Routes of Drug Elimination			
Pharmacokinetic Calculation		Common Drug Endings	12
Time-Course of Drug Action			
Half-Life		References	12
Steady State			
Clearance			
Elimination Kinetics			

Acronyms

ACE	angiotensin converting enzyme	CSFa	certain safety factor	PD	pharmacodynamics
ACh	acetylcholine	CYP	cytochrome P450 protein	PDE	phosphodiesterase
ADR	adverse drug reaction	DIN	drug identification number	Pgp	p-glycoprotein
ARB	angiotensin receptor blocker	F	bioavailability	PK	pharmacokinetics
BBB	blood brain barrier	GFR	glomerular filtration rate	TBW	total body water
Cl	clearance	NDC	national drug code	TDM	therapeutic drug monitoring
Cr	creatinine	NE	norepinephrine	TI	therapeutic index
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid	P _{o/w}	partition coefficient of a drug	Vd	volume of distribution

General Principles

Drug Nomenclature

- **chemical name:** describes chemical structure; same in all countries (e.g. *N*-(4-hydroxyphenyl) acetamide is acetaminophen)
- **DIN or NDC:** DIN assigned by Health Canada; NDC assigned by FDA (US)
- **non-proprietary name:** approved name (post-phase III trial), official name (listed in pharmacopoeia), or generic name (off-patent) (e.g. acetaminophen)
- **proprietary (trade) name:** the brand name or registered trademark (e.g. Tylenol®)

Phases of Clinical Testing

- **phase I:** first administration to healthy human volunteers, following animal studies; to determine PK and PD
- **phase II:** first administration to patients, small sample sizes; to determine initial safety and effectiveness, dose range, PK, PD
- **phase III:** large sample sizes, often double-blind RCT; comparative (new drug vs. placebo or standard of care) to establish safety and efficacy
- **phase IV:** post-marketing surveillance, wide distribution; to determine rare ADRs, effects of long-term use, ideal dosing, effects in real world practice

Drug Administration

- choice of route of administration depends on: drug properties, local and systemic effects (limiting action or adverse events), desired onset and/or duration of action, patient characteristics

Table 1. Routes of Drug Administration

Route	Advantage	Disadvantage
Oral (PO)	Convenient, easy to administer Large surface area for absorption Inexpensive relative to parenteral administration	Drug metabolism by GI secretions Incomplete absorption Hepatic first-pass effect Potential GI irritation
Buccal/Sublingual (SL)	Rapid onset of action No hepatic first-pass effect	Must be lipid-soluble, non-irritating Short duration of action
Rectal (PR)	Almost no hepatic first-pass effect Use when NPO, vomiting, or unconscious	Inconvenient, irritation at site of application Erratic absorption
Intravenous (IV)	No hepatic first-pass effect Slow infusion or rapid onset of action Easy to titrate dose	Hard to remove once administered Risk of infection, bleeding, vascular injury, extravasation Expensive
Intramuscular (IM)	Depot storage if oil-based = slow release of drug Aqueous solution = rapid onset of action	Pain at site of injection
Subcutaneous (SC)	Non-irritating drugs, small volumes Constant, even absorption Alternative to IV	Pain at site of injection Smaller volumes than IM May have tissue damage from multiple injections
Intrathecal	Direct into CSF Bypass BBB and blood-CSF barrier	Risk of infection
Inhalation	Immediate (local) action in lungs Rapid delivery to blood (systemic action) No hepatic first-pass effect	Must be a gas, vapour, or aerosol
Topical	Easy to administer Localized (limited systemic absorption)	Effects are mainly limited to site of application
Transdermal	Drug absorption through intact skin No hepatic first-pass effect	Irritation at site of application Delayed onset of action Hydrophilic drugs are not easily absorbed
Others (intraperitoneal, intra-articular)	Local effect	Risk of infection



At the time of drug launch, only data from phases I-III are available; thus, true effectiveness (in contrast to efficacy) and safety may be unknown because real-world patients and usage patterns sometimes differ significantly from those in premarket phases



Common Latin Abbreviations

q	each, every
OD/bid/tid/qid	once/twice/three/four times a day
hs	at bedtime
ac/pc/cc	before/after/with meals
prn	as necessary
gtt	drops
ung	ointment
ud	as directed
od/os/ou	right/left/each eye
ad/as/au	right/left/each ear

Pharmacokinetics

- study of “what the body does to a drug”
- definition: relationship between drug administration, time-course/rate of absorption and distribution, concentration changes in the body compartments, and the drug's removal from the body



$P_{o/w}$

- Ratio of a drug's solubility in oil/lipid (e.g. cell membrane) as compared to water (e.g. extracellular fluid)
- A large $P_{o/w}$ (e.g. anesthetics) means that a drug is highly soluble in lipid and will cross membranes easily

Absorption

- definition: movement of the drug from the site of administration into plasma

Mechanisms of Drug Absorption

- most drugs are absorbed into the systemic circulation via passive diffusion
- other mechanisms: active transport, facilitated diffusion, pinocytosis/phagocytosis

Factors Affecting the Rate and Extent of Drug Absorption

- $P_{o/w}$ (i.e. its relative solubility in oil (lipid) vs. water)
- **local blood flow** at the site of administration (e.g. sublingual vessels facilitate rapid absorption of SL medications)
- **molecular size** (e.g. small molecular weight drugs absorb faster)
- **pH and drug ionization**
 - drugs are usually weak acids (e.g. ASA) or weak bases (e.g. ketoconazole) and thus have both ionized and non-ionized forms
 - body compartment pH and drug pK_a determine the ratio of ionized:non-ionized ratio (using the Henderson-Hasselbach equation)
 - non-ionized forms cross cell membranes much faster than ionized (charged) forms
- **total surface area for absorption**
 - small intestinal villi (large surface area) is the primary site of absorption for most oral drugs

Bioavailability

- definition: fraction of dose after administration that reaches systemic circulation in an unchanged state
- decreased by: drug absorption, gut metabolism, and hepatic first-pass effect
- IV dose has 100% bioavailability ($F = 1$)

First-Pass Effect

- definition: drug metabolism by the liver and sometimes the gut before it reaches systemic circulation, resulting in reduced F
- occurs with PO administration of a drug: GI tract (absorption) → portal vein to liver (first-pass metabolism) → systemic circulation
- occurs to much lesser extent with PR administration because drug absorbed in colon bypasses the portal system: colon (absorption) → internal pudendal veins → IVC → systemic circulation

Efflux Pump

- Pgp is a protein in the GI tract, renal epithelium, and elsewhere that acts as a multidrug efflux pump involved in the transport of drugs out of cells
- acts to oppose intestinal absorption and enhance renal elimination of certain drugs (e.g. digoxin, dabigatran, etexilate, etoposide, paclitaxel, tacrolimus, cyclosporine)
- some drugs (e.g. macrolide antibiotics) inhibit Pgp function, leading to increased levels of Pgp substrates; Pgp inducers (e.g. St. John's wort) do the opposite
- some tumors overexpress Pgp leading to multidrug resistance to chemotherapy agents

Distribution

- definition: movement of drugs between different body compartments and to the site of action
- major body fluid compartments: plasma, interstitial fluid, intracellular fluid, transcellular fluid (e.g. CSF, peritoneal, pleural)
- tissue compartments: fat, brain



Drug Ionization Reaction and the Henderson-Hasselbach Equation

using the body compartment pH and drug pK_a , can determine the ionized: non-ionized ratio

for a weak acid:
 $HA \rightleftharpoons A^- + H^+$; $pK_a = pH + \log [HA/A^-]$
 e.g. drug $pK_a = 4.4$ at a gastric pH of 1.4,
 non-ionized:ionized = $HA:A^- = 1:0.001$
 Thus, weak acids are mainly non-ionized and more readily absorbed in stomach

for a weak base:
 $BH^+ \rightleftharpoons B + H^+$; $pK_a = pH + \log [BH^+/B]$
 e.g. drug $pK_a = 8.0$ at an intestinal pH of 9.0
 ionized:non-ionized = $BH^+:B = 0.1:1$
 Thus, weak bases more readily absorbed (pH ~6.0-9.0)



Examples of Drugs with High First-Pass Effect (Hepatic Extraction)

- Levodopa
- Morphine
- Propranolol
- Lidocaine
- Organic nitrates



Examples of Drugs with Low First-Pass Effect

- Diazepam
- Digoxin
- Phenytoin
- Warfarin

Factors Affecting the Rate and Extent of Drug Distribution

- physiochemical properties of the drug (e.g. $P_{o/w}$)
- pH of fluid
- plasma protein binding
- binding within compartments (i.e. depots)
- regional blood flow

Volume of Distribution

- maximum actual V_d (anatomic fluid volume accessible to drug) = TBW (TBW ~40 L for average adult)
- V_d : the apparent volume of fluid into which a drug dissolves
 - a calculated value = amount of drug in body \div plasma drug concentration
 - a theoretical value that does not correspond to an anatomical space (i.e. can exceed TBW)
 - small V_d corresponds to a drug which concentrates in plasma and/or binds plasma proteins to a high degree
 - large V_d corresponds to a drug that distributes into tissues (fat, muscle, etc.); most is not in blood (measured) space, and it therefore “appears” to distribute in a large volume
 - V_d of plasma-protein bound drugs can be altered by liver and kidney disease
- example: amiodarone distributes into TBW (actual $V_d = 40$ L), but it also concentrates in fat tissues giving instead an apparent V_d of 400 L; therefore, to achieve a given plasma concentration of amiodarone, we dose as though the drug distributes into 400 L of body fluid

Plasma Protein Binding

- drug molecules in the blood exist in an equilibrium of two forms:
 1. bound to plasma protein: acidic drugs bind to albumin, basic drugs bind to α_1 -acid glycoprotein
 2. free or unbound: can leave the circulation to distribute into tissues and exert an effect, subject to metabolism and elimination
- bound fraction is determined by drug concentration, binding affinity, and plasma protein concentration (number of binding sites)
- reduced number of binding sites (e.g. hypoalbuminemia) or saturation of binding sites (e.g. competition/displacement) may result in an increased concentration of free drug, which is often metabolized with no harmful effects, although toxicity is possible

Depots

- a body compartment where drug molecules tend to be stored and released slowly over a long period of time
- fat is a depot for very lipid soluble drugs (e.g. diazepam)
- some oil-based medications are injected IM for slow release (e.g. depot medroxyprogesterone acetate q3mo; depot risperidone q2wk)

Barriers (Relative)

- body structures that limit or prevent diffusion of drug molecules, such as the placenta or BBB (a barrier composed of tight junctions between capillary endothelial cells and astrocytes)
- many of these barriers result, in part, from the activity of multidrug efflux pumps (e.g. Pgp), which serve as a natural defense mechanism against drugs and xenobiotics
- need to consider dosing route if drugs are meant to cross these barriers

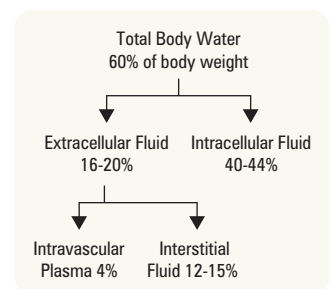


Figure 1. Distribution of total body water (TBW)



Special consideration must be given in dosing patients in **hypoalbuminemic** states (e.g. liver failure or nephrotic syndrome) to prevent drug toxicity. Highly protein-bound drugs (e.g. warfarin, digoxin, diazepam, furosemide, amitriptyline) will exert a greater effect in these patients than in healthy individuals because of higher levels of free drug



Multiple drugs and endogenous substances can **compete** for the same protein binding sites. For example, ASA displaces highly protein-bound acidic drugs such as phenytoin, thus increasing risk of toxicity, and sulfonamide displaces bilirubin, which could potentially lead to jaundice and kernicterus in neonates



Main Factors Governing Penetration of BBB

- Small molecular size (< 500 Da)
- High lipid solubility
- Active transport mechanisms (e.g. Pgp multidrug efflux pump)

Many Drugs Cross BBB:

- General anesthetics
- Alcohol
- Nicotine
- Caffeine
- L-dopa
- Opioids
- Psychotropic medications

Metabolism (Biotransformation)

- definition: chemical transformation of a drug *in vivo* to make it more hydrophilic to enhance renal elimination
- sites of biotransformation: liver (main), GI tract, lung, plasma, kidney
- as a result of the process of biotransformation
 - a pro-drug may be **activated** (e.g. tamoxifen to endoxifen; codeine to morphine)
 - a drug may be **changed** to another active metabolite (e.g. diazepam to oxazepam)
 - a drug may be **changed** to a toxic metabolite (e.g. meperidine to normeperidine)
 - a drug may be **inactivated** (most drugs)

Drug Metabolizing Pathways

• phase I (P450) reactions

- small molecular changes introduce or unmask polar chemical groups on a parent compound to increase its water solubility (e.g. oxidation-reduction, hydrolysis, hydroxylation); the change in $P_{o/w}$ is typically minimal compared to phase II, and often phase I places a polar 'handle' on a lipophilic drug to allow for phase II
- mediated by CYPs found in the endoplasmic reticulum
- product of the reaction can be excreted or undergo further phase II reactions

• phase II (conjugation) reactions

- conjugation with large polar endogenous substrates (e.g. glucuronidation, glutathione conjugation, sulfation)
- dramatically increases water solubility and renal elimination
- sometimes results in biologically active metabolites (e.g. glucuronides of morphine)
- can occur independently of phase I reactions

Factors Affecting Drug Biotransformation

• genetic polymorphism of metabolizing enzymes

- individual genotypes may determine rate of drug metabolism (e.g. poor, intermediate, extensive, or ultrarapid metabolizers)
- may lead to toxicity or ineffectiveness of a drug at a normal dose
 - tamoxifen and codeine are prodrugs activated by CYP2D6 (nonfunctional alleles reduce effectiveness, whereas overactive/duplicated alleles impart "ultrarapid metabolizer" phenotype)
 - warfarin is metabolized by CYP2C9 (nonfunctional alleles lead to greater effect and lower dose requirements)

• enzyme inhibition may sometimes be due to other drugs

- CYP inhibition leads to an increased concentration and bioavailability of the substrate drug (e.g. erythromycin [CYP3A4 inhibitor], can predispose patients to simvastatin toxicity [metabolized by CYP3A4])

• enzyme induction

- certain medications enhance gene transcription leading to an increase in the activity of a metabolizing enzyme
- a drug may induce its own metabolism (e.g. carbamazepine) or that of other drugs (e.g. phenobarbital can induce the metabolism of OCP and bilirubin) by inducing the CYP system

• liver dysfunction (e.g. hepatitis, alcoholic liver, biliary cirrhosis, or hepatocellular carcinoma) may decrease drug metabolism but this may not be clinically significant due to the liver's reserve capacity

• renal disease often results in decreased drug clearance

• extremes of age (neonates or elderly) have reduced biotransformation capacity, and doses should be adjusted accordingly

• nutrition: insufficient protein and fatty acid intake decreases CYP biotransformation, and vitamin/mineral deficiencies may also impact metabolizing enzymes

• alcohol: while acute alcohol ingestion inhibits CYP2E1, chronic consumption can induce CYP2E1 and increase the risk of hepatocellular damage from acetaminophen by increasing the generation of acetaminophen's toxic metabolite

• smoking can induce CYP1A2, thus increasing the metabolism of some drugs (e.g. theophylline)



Cytochrome P450 System

The CYPs are a superfamily of heme proteins that are grouped into families and subfamilies according to their amino acid sequence. These proteins are responsible for the metabolism of drugs, chemicals, and other substances

Nomenclature: CYP3A4

"CYP" = cytochrome P450 protein

1st number = family

letter = subfamily

2nd number = isoform

The CYP1, CYP2, and CYP3 families metabolize most drugs in humans. The most important isoforms are CYP3A4 and CYP2D6; therefore, anticipate drug interactions if prescribing drugs using these enzymes



Common Examples of CYP Inhibitors and Inducers

CYP Inhibitors "MINCE"

Metronidazole (CYP2C9)

Isoniazid (CYP2C9), Indinavir (CYP3A4)

Naringin or bergamottin (bioflavonoid in grapefruit) (CYP3A4)

Ciprofloxacin (CYP3A4, 1A2)

Erythromycin (macrolides) (CYP3A4)

CYP Inducers

Phenytoin (CYP3A4)

Dexamethasone (CYP3A4)

Phenobarbital (CYP3A4)

Rifampin (CYP2D6, 3A4)

Smoking (CYP1A2)

St. John's wort (CYP3A4, CYP2C19, pgp)

Note: The above list is not exhaustive



The **very** young and the **very** old are **very** sensitive to the actions of drugs



Avoid toxicity from drug or metabolite accumulation by adjusting a drug's dosage according to the elimination characteristics of the patient (e.g. in renal impairment)

Elimination

- definition: removal of drug from the body

Routes of Drug Elimination

• kidney (main organ of elimination): two mechanisms

1. glomerular filtration

- a passive process, so that only the free drug fraction can be filtered
- drug filtration rate depends on GFR, degree of protein binding of drug, and size of drug

2. tubular secretion

- an active process that is saturable, allowing both protein-bound and free drug fractions to be excreted
- distinct transport mechanisms for weak acids (e.g. penicillin, salicylic acid, probenecid, chlorothiazide) and weak bases (e.g. quinine, quaternary ammonium compounds such as choline)
- drugs may competitively block mutual secretion if both use the same secretion system (e.g. probenecid can be used to reduce the excretion of penicillin)

- **tubular reabsorption:** drugs can be passively reabsorbed back to the systemic circulation, countering elimination mechanisms
- **renal function** (decreases with age and is affected by many disease states) is assessed clinically using serum Cr levels
- **stool:** some drugs and metabolites are actively excreted in the bile (e.g. corticosteroids) or directly into the intestinal tract
 - enterohepatic reabsorption counteracts stool elimination, and thus can substantially prolong the drug's duration in the body
 - some glucuronic acid conjugates that are excreted in the bile will be hydrolyzed in the intestines by bacteria back to its original form that can be systemically reabsorbed
- **lungs:** elimination of anesthetic gases and vapours by exhalation
- **saliva:** saliva concentrations of some drugs parallel their plasma levels (e.g. rifampin)

Pharmacokinetic Calculation

- definition: the quantitative description of the rates of the various steps of drug disposition (i.e. how drugs move through the body)
- the pharmacokinetic principles of ADME (absorption, distribution, metabolism, and elimination) can be graphically represented on a concentration vs. time graph

Time-Course of Drug Action

- many kinetic parameters are measured using IV dosing, such that absorption is immediate and distribution for most drugs is rapid; thus elimination is the main process being measured
- the concentration axis is converted to a \log_{10} concentration to allow for easier mathematical calculations

Half-Life

- definition: time taken for the serum drug level to fall 50% during elimination
- drugs with first order kinetics require five half-lives to reach steady state with repeated dosing or for complete drug elimination once dosing is stopped

# of Half-Lives	1	2	3	3.3	4	5
% of Steady State Concentration	50%	75%	87.5%	90%	93.8%	96.9%

Steady State

- drug concentration stays constant when the same amount of drug entering the system is eliminated from the system
- appropriate timing is important for therapeutic monitoring since drug levels are reliable only when the drug has reached steady state
- special situations
 - use a loading dose for drugs with a long half-life and when there is clinical need to rapidly achieve therapeutic levels (e.g. amiodarone, digoxin, phenytoin)
 - use continuous infusion for drugs with a very short half-life and when there is need for a long-term effect and multiple or frequently repeated doses are too inconvenient (e.g. nitroprusside, insulin, unfractionated heparin)

Clearance

- a quantitative measurement of the body fluid volume from which a substance is removed per unit time
- $Cl = \text{rate of elimination of drug} \div \text{plasma drug concentration}$
- must consider Cl from a specific part of the body and total body Cl

Elimination Kinetics

- first-order kinetics (most common type)
 - constant fraction of drug eliminated per unit time
 - some drugs can follow first-order kinetics until elimination is saturated (usually at large doses) at which point the Cl decreases
 - becomes linear relationship when plotted on a $\log(\text{concentration})$ vs. time graph
- zero-order kinetics (less common, associated with toxicities, e.g. alcohol)
 - a constant rate of drug eliminated regardless of concentration; concept of half-life does not apply
 - the concentration axis is converted to a \log (concentration) to allow for easier mathematical calculations



The Cockcroft-Gault Equation can Estimate CrCl in Adults 20 yr of age and older

- For males

$$\text{CrCl (mL/min)} = \frac{[(140 - \text{age in yr}) \times \text{Weight (kg)}] \times 1.2}{\text{serum Cr } (\mu\text{mol/L})}$$
- For females, multiply above equation $\times 0.85$
- Only applies when renal function is at steady state



Principles of Pharmacokinetics

V_d = amount of drug in the body/plasma drug concentration

Cl = rate of elimination of drug/plasma drug concentration

Half-life ($t_{1/2}$) = $0.7 \times V_d / Cl$



For most drugs it takes 5 half-lives to reach steady state with repeated dosing or to eliminate a drug once dosing is stopped

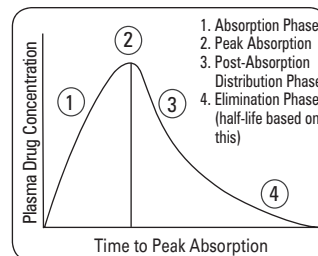


Figure 2. Time course of drug action

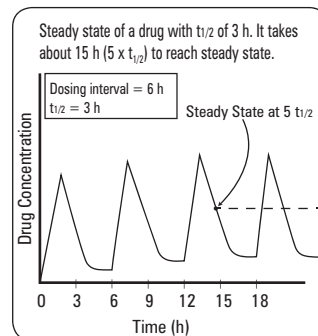


Figure 3. Steady state of a drug

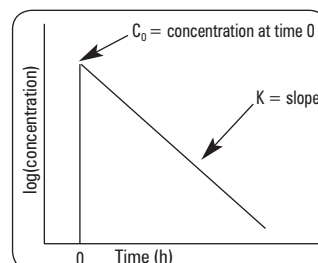


Figure 4. $\log(\text{concentration})$ vs. time graph (IV bolus dose) for first-order kinetics

Table 2. Loading vs. Maintenance Dosing

Loading Dose	Maintenance Dose
Use when you need an IMMEDIATE effect	After a loading dose OR beginning with maintenance doses
Often parenteral medication	Steady-state levels achieved after ~5 half-lives
Rationale: give large dose of medication to "fill up" the volume of distribution	Can be given as either a continuous infusion (relatively rare, short half-life drug) OR much more commonly as intermittent doses

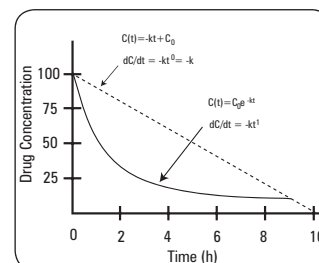


Figure 5. First and zero order kinetics

In first order kinetics (solid line), a constant fraction of the drug is eliminated per unit time; in zero order kinetics (dashed line), a constant amount of the drug is eliminated per unit time



Loading dose: large initial dose to "fill up" the volume of distribution; used for IMMEDIATE effect

Maintenance dose: after loading dose OR begin with maintenance dose; reaches steady state after 5 half-lives



For unit conversion factors, please see Appendix: Common Unit Conversions



Efficacy vs. Potency

- Efficacy measures the maximal effect of a drug
- Potency measures the concentration of a drug needed to produce a certain effect

Pharmacodynamics

Dose-Response Relationship

Efficacy

- the ability of a drug to produce a response after binding to its cognate receptor
- measured by E_{\max} (the maximal response that a drug can elicit in a RCT or under optimal circumstances)

Potency

- measured by EC_{50} (the concentration of a drug needed to produce 50% of E_{\max})
- a drug that reaches its EC_{50} at the lower dose is more potent

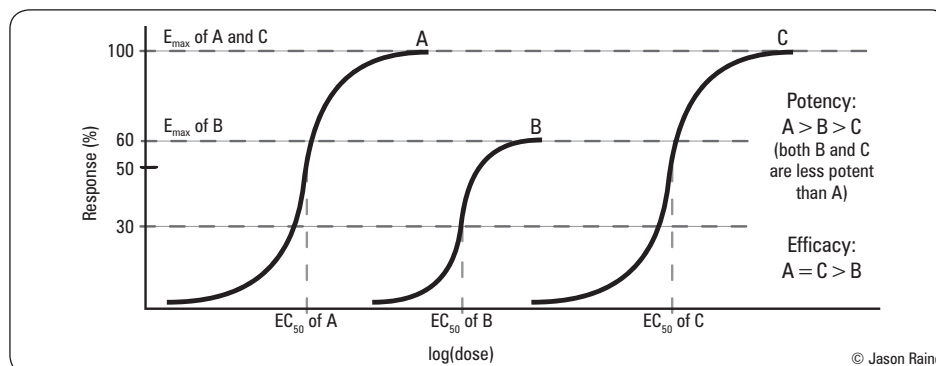


Figure 6. log(dose)-response curve illustrating efficacy and potency

Effects of Drugs on Receptors

Agonists

- drugs that have both affinity and efficacy for their cognate receptors
 - affinity:** the ability of the agonist to bind to the receptor (e.g. the β_2 -agonist salbutamol has greater affinity for β_2 -receptors than β_1 -receptors)
 - efficacy:** the ability to recapitulate endogenous response via the receptor interaction (e.g. binding of salbutamol to β_2 -receptors results in smooth muscle relaxation)
- full agonists:** can elicit a maximal effect at a receptor
- partial agonists:** can only elicit a partial effect, no matter how high the concentration (i.e. reduced efficacy compared to full agonists) at the receptor

Antagonists

- drugs that block the action of an agonist or of an endogenous ligand
- chemical antagonism:** direct chemical interaction between agonist and antagonist prevents agonist-receptor binding (e.g. chelating agents for removal of heavy metals)
- functional antagonism:** two agonists that act independently at different receptors and have opposite physiological effects (e.g. acetylcholine at the muscarinic receptor compared to epinephrine at the adrenergic receptor)
- reversible competitive and irreversible antagonism**
 - drugs that have affinity but no efficacy for their cognate receptors, and therefore, exert no effect upon binding
 - reversible competitive antagonists reversibly bind to the same receptor as the agonist, thus displacing it (e.g. naloxone is an antagonist to morphine or heroin)

- irreversible antagonists irreversibly bind to the same receptor as the agonist, blocking it from binding (e.g. phenoxybenzamine forms a permanent covalent bond with adrenergic receptors preventing adrenaline and NE from binding)
- non-competitive antagonism**
 - antagonist binds to an alternate site separate but near the agonist site, producing allosteric effects that change the ability of the agonist to bind (e.g. organophosphates irreversibly bind acetylcholinesterase)

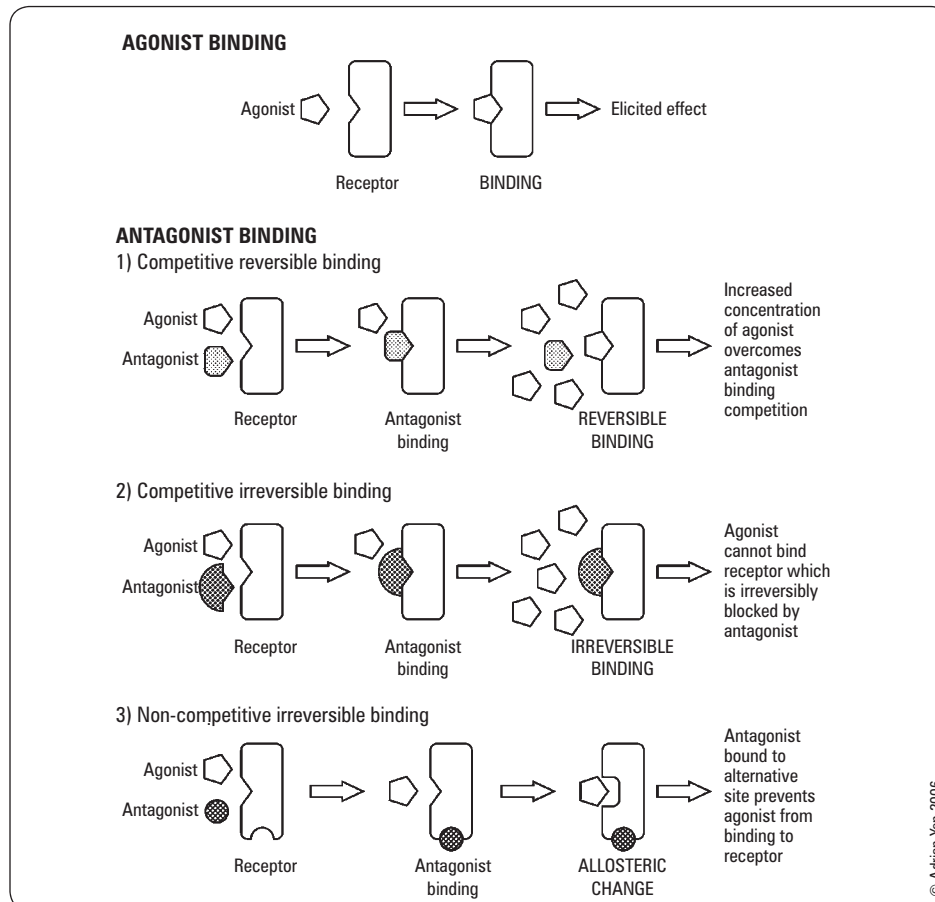


Figure 7. Mechanism of agonists and antagonists

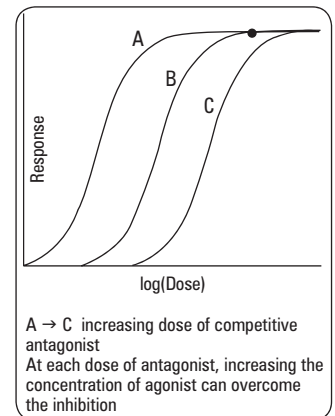


Figure 8. The log(dose)-response curve for competitive reversible antagonism

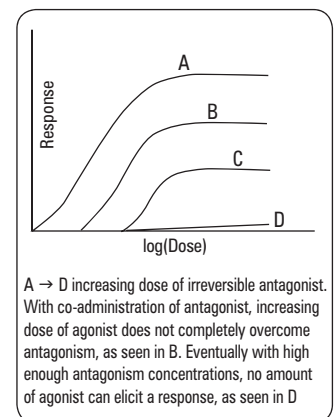


Figure 9. The log(dose)-response curve for irreversible antagonism



The two most clinically relevant properties of any drug are effectiveness and safety

Effectiveness and Safety

Effectiveness

- ED₅₀ (Effective Dose): the dose of a drug needed to cause a therapeutic effect in 50% of a test population of subjects

Safety

- LD₅₀ (Lethal Dose): the dose of a drug needed to cause death in 50% of a test population of subjects
- TD₅₀ (Toxic Dose): the dose needed to cause a harmful effect in 50% of a test population of subjects

Therapeutic Indices

Therapeutic Index: TD_{50}/ED_{50}

- reflects the “margin of safety” for a drug – the likelihood of a therapeutic dose to cause serious toxicity or death
- the larger the TI, the safer a drug (e.g. warfarin has a narrow TI and requires accurate therapeutic monitoring)
- factors that can change the TI
 - presence of interacting drugs
 - changes in drug absorption, distribution, metabolism, elimination

Certain Safety Factor: TD_1/ED_{99}

- CSFa >1 translates to a dose effective in at least 99% of the population and toxic in less than 1% of the population

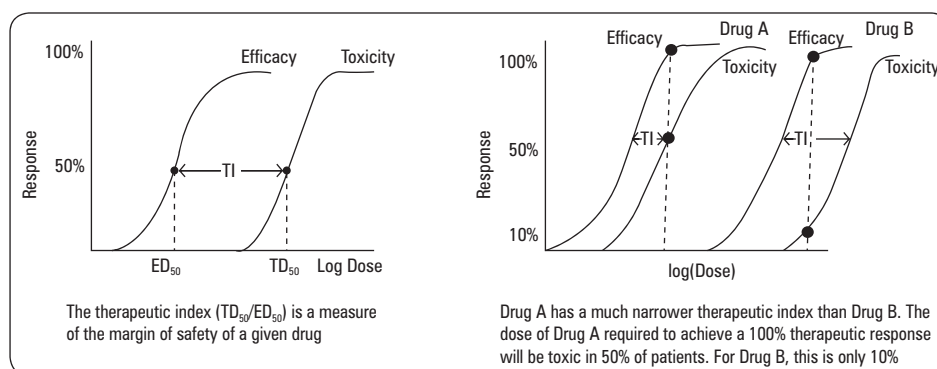


Figure 10. ED_{50} , TD_{50} , and the therapeutic index

Therapeutic Drug Monitoring

- definition: using serum drug concentration data to optimize drug therapy (e.g. dose adjustment, monitor compliance)
 - serum drug samples are usually taken when the drug has reached steady state (after approximately 5 half-lives)
- TDM is often used for drugs that have: narrow TIs, unpredictable dose-response relationships, significant consequences associated with therapeutic failure or toxicity, wide inter-patient pharmacokinetic variability

Adverse Drug Reactions

Table 3. Characteristics of Type A-E Adverse Drug Reactions

Classification	Definition	Characteristics
A (Augmented)	Dose related	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Predictable extension of drug's pharmacologic effect (e.g. β-blockers causing bradycardia) >80% of all ADRs
B (Bizarre)	Non-dose related	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reactions unrelated to the known pharmacological actions of the drug Examples include drug hypersensitivity syndromes, immunologic reactions (penicillin hypersensitivity) and idiosyncratic reactions (malignant hyperthermia)
C (Chronic)	Dose and time related	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Related to cumulative doses Effects are well-known and can be anticipated (e.g. femur fracture from bisphosphonates)
D (Delayed)	Time related	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Occurs some time after use of drug (e.g. carcinogen) May also be dose related
E (End of Use)	Withdrawal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Occurs after cessation of drug use (e.g. opiate withdrawal)



Drugs with a narrow TI have a high likelihood of causing toxicity and need close therapeutic monitoring



Examples of drugs whose levels need to be monitored: warfarin (via INR levels), digoxin, lithium, antiepileptics (e.g. phenytoin, carbamazepine)



In the US, 700,000 emergency department visits and 120,000 hospitalizations are due to ADRs annually



Adverse Events Related to Emergency Department Care

PLoS One 2013;8(9):e74214

Systematic review was performed, and studies were considered for inclusion if they examined a broad demographic group reflecting a significant proportion of ED patients and described the proportion of adverse events. Ten articles, representing eight observational studies, were included. Methodological quality was low to moderate with weaknesses in study group comparability, follow-up, and outcome ascertainment and reporting. There was substantial variation in the proportion of patients with adverse events related to ED care, ranging from 0.16% (n=9,308) to 6.0% (n=399). Similarly, the reported preventability of adverse events ranged from 36% (n=250) to 71% (n=24).

Approach to Suspected Adverse Drug Reactions

- history and physical exam: signs and symptoms of the reaction (e.g. rash, fever, hepatitis, anaphylaxis), timing, risk factors, detailed medication history including all drugs and timing, dechallenge (response when drug is removed) and rechallenge (response when drug is given again)
- differentiate between drug therapy vs. disease pathophysiology
- treatment: stop the drug, supportive care, symptomatic relief
- resources: check recent literature, FDA; contact the pharmaceutical company; call Poison Control (1-800-222-1222) if overdose or poisoning suspected; check with Motherisk (www.motherisk.org) in cases involving pregnant or breastfeeding women
- report all suspected ADRs that are: 1) unexpected, 2) serious, or 3) reactions to recently marketed drugs (on the market <5 yr) regardless of nature or severity
 - FDA Adverse Event Reporting System available for reporting

Variability in Drug Response

- recommended patient dosing is based on clinical research and represents mean values for a select population, but each person may be unique in their dosing requirements
- possible causes of individual variability in drug response include problems with:
 - ♦ intake: patient adherence
 - ♦ pharmacokinetics
 - absorption: vomiting, diarrhea or steatorrhea; first pass effect increased due to enzyme induction or decreased due to liver disease
 - drug interactions (e.g. calcium carbonate complexes with iron, thyroxine, and fluoroquinolones)
 - distribution: very high or low percentage body fat; intact or disrupted BBB; patient is elderly or a neonate, or has liver dysfunction
 - biotransformation and elimination: certain genetic polymorphisms or enzyme deficiencies related to drug metabolism (e.g. acetylcholinesterase deficiency, CYP polymorphism); kidney or liver dysfunction
 - ♦ pharmacodynamics: genetic variability in drug response (e.g. immune-mediated reactions); diseases that affect drug pharmacodynamics; drug tolerance or cross-tolerance

Drug Interactions

- concomitant prescriptions: one drug alters the effect of another by changing its PK and/or PD
- PK interactions involve
 - absorption: alterations in gastrointestinal pH, gastric emptying, intestinal motility, gut mucosal function
 - biotransformation: alterations in drug metabolizing enzymes
 - excretion: alterations in renal elimination
- PD interactions are due to two drugs that exert similar effects (additive) or opposing effects (subtractive)
- drug interactions can also involve herbal medications (e.g. St. John's wort) and food (e.g. grapefruit)

Autonomic Pharmacology

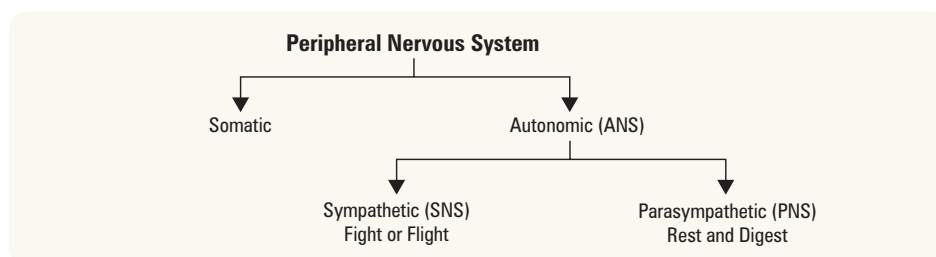


Figure 11. Subdivisions of the peripheral nervous system



Sample of Clinically Relevant Adverse Drug Reactions

Classification	Drug(s)	ADR
A	β-blockers	Bradycardia
A	ACEIs	Cough
A	NSAIDs	GI bleeding
A	Opiates	GI upset, constipation, urinary retention, respiratory depression
A	Acetaminophen	Hepatotoxicity
A	Vancomycin	Red Man syndrome
A	Aminoglycosides	Ototoxicity and nephrotoxicity
B	Sulfa Drugs	Stevens-Johnson syndrome Toxic epidermal necrolysis
B	Penicillins	Rash
B	Valproic acid, Chinese herbs	Hepatotoxicity



Sulfa-Containing Medications

- Sulfamethoxazole
- Sulfasalazine
- Dapsone



Examples of Clinically Relevant Drug Interactions

Interaction	Potential Effect
Warfarin plus ciprofloxacin, clarithromycin, erythromycin, metronidazole or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole	Increased effect of warfarin
Oral contraceptive pills plus rifampin, antibiotics	Decreased effectiveness of oral contraception
Sildenafil plus nitrates	Hypotension
SSRI plus St. John's wort, naratriptan, rizatriptan, sumatriptan, zolmitriptan	Serotonin syndrome
SSRI plus selegiline or non-selective MAO-I	Serotonin syndrome
Some HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors plus niacin, gemfibrozil, erythromycin or itraconazole	Possible rhabdomyolysis

- the autonomic nervous system is divided into sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions
- most organs are innervated by both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves which have opposing effects (see [Neurology, N6](#))
- ACh and NE are the main neurotransmitters of the autonomic NS
- ACh binds to cholinergic receptors, which include nicotinic and muscarinic receptors
- NE binds to adrenergic receptors, which include β_1 , β_2 , α_1 , and α_2
- ACh action is terminated by metabolism in the synaptic cleft by acetylcholinesterase and in the plasma by pseudocholinesterase
 - acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (donepezil, galantamine, rivastigmine) are used to increase ACh levels in conditions such as myasthenia gravis and Alzheimer's disease
- NE action is terminated by reuptake by the presynaptic membrane, diffusion from the synaptic cleft, and degradation by monoamine oxidase (MAO) and catechol-O-methyl transferase (COMT)



Parasympathetic Nervous System

- blood vessels, sweat glands, spleen capsule, and adrenal medulla do NOT have parasympathetic innervation
- parasympathetic pre-ganglionic fibers originate in the lower brainstem from cranial nerves III, VII, IX, X, and in the sacral spinal cord at levels S2-S4 and connect with post-ganglionic fibers via nicotinic receptors in ganglionic cells located near or within the target organ
- post-ganglionic fibers connect with effector tissues via:
 - M_1 muscarinic receptors located in the CNS
 - M_2 muscarinic receptors located in smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glandular epithelium

Sympathetic Nervous System

- sympathetic pre-ganglionic fibers originate in the spinal cord at spinal levels T1-L3
- pre-ganglionic fibers connect with post-ganglionic fibers via nicotinic receptors located in one of two groups of ganglia
 1. paravertebral ganglia (i.e. the sympathetic trunk) that lie in a chain close to the vertebral column
 2. pre-vertebral ganglia (i.e. celiac and mesenteric ganglia) that lie within the abdomen
- post ganglionic fibers connect with effector tissues via
 - β_1 receptors in cardiac tissue
 - β_2 receptors in smooth muscle of bronchi and GI tract
 - α_1 receptors in vascular smooth muscle
 - α_2 receptors in vascular smooth muscle
 - M_3 muscarinic receptors located in sweat glands

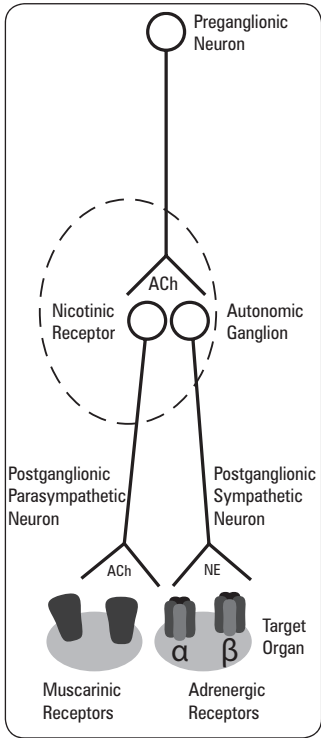


Figure 12. Autonomic nervous system efferent tracts

Table 4. Direct Effects of Autonomic Innervation on the Cardiorespiratory System

Organ	Sympathetic NS		Parasympathetic NS	
	Receptor	Action	Receptor	Action
Heart				
1. Sinoatrial	β_1	Increased HR	M	Decreased conduction
2. Atrioventricular node	β_1	Increased conduction	M	Decreased conduction
3. Atria	β_1	Increased contractility	M	Decreased conduction
4. Ventricles	β_1	Increased contractility	M	Decreased HR
Blood Vessels				
1. Skin, splanchnic	α_1, α_2	Constriction	M	Dilatation
2. Skeletal muscle	α	Constriction	M	Dilatation
	β_2 (large muscles)	Dilatation	M	Dilatation
3. Coronary	α_1, α_2	Constriction	M	Dilatation
	β_2	Dilatation	M	Dilatation
Lungs				
1. Bronchiolar smooth muscle	β_2	Relaxation	M	Constriction
2. Bronchiolar glands	α_1, β_2	Increased secretion	M	Stimulation

Common Drug Endings

Table 5. Common Drug Endings

Ending	Category	Example
-afil	5-PDE inhibitor	sildenafil
-ane	Inhaled general anesthetic	halothane
-azepam	Benzodiazepine	lorazepam
-azole	Antifungal	ketoconazole
-caine	Local anesthetic	lidocaine
-olol	β -blocker	propranolol
-prazole	Proton pump inhibitor	omeprazole
-pril	ACE inhibitor	captopril
-sartan	ARB	candesartan
-statin	HMG-CoA inhibitor	atorvastatin
-terol	β_2 agonist	albuterol
-tidine	H ₂ antagonist	cimetidine
-tropin	Pituitary hormone	somatotropin
-vir	Antiviral	acyclovir
-zosin	α_1 antagonist	prazosin

Note: Some medications are exceptions to the rule, e.g. methimazole (antithyroid)

References

Principles of Clinical Pharmacology

Hardman JG, Limbird LR. Goodman and Gilman's the pharmacological basis of therapeutics, 9th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1996.

Hardy B, Bedard M. Compendium of pharmaceuticals and specialties. Chapter: Serum drug concentration monitoring. Ottawa: Canadian Pharmacists Association, 2002.

Kalant H, Grant DM, Mitchell J. Principles of medical pharmacology, 7th ed. Essential Med: Elsevier Canada, 2007.

Katzung BG. Basic and clinical pharmacology, 8th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.

Rang H, Dale M, Ritter J. Pharmacology, 4th ed. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone, 1999.

Adverse Drug Reactions

Baker GR, Norton PG, Flintoft V, et al. The Canadian adverse events study: the incidence of adverse events among hospital patients in Canada. CMAJ 2004;170:1678-1686.

Budnitz DS, Pollock DA, Weidenbach KN, et al. National surveillance of emergency department visits for outpatient adverse drug events. JAMA 2006;296:1858-1866.

Lewis T. Using the NO TEARS tool for medication review. BMJ 2004;329:434.

Pirmohamed M, James S, Meakin S, et al. Adverse drug reactions as cause of admission to hospital: prospective analysis of 18820 patients. BMJ 2004;315-319.

Samoy LJ, Zed PJ, Wilbur K, et al. Drug-related hospitalizations in a tertiary care internal medicine service of a Canadian hospital: a prospective study. Pharmacotherapy 2006;26:1578-1586.

Drug Interactions

Ament PW, Bertolino JG, Liszewski JL. Clinically significant drug interactions. Am Fam Physician 2000;61:1745-1754.

Indiana University, Division of Clinical Pharmacology. P450 drug interaction table. Indiana University, 2009. Available from: <http://medicine.iupui.edu/clinpharm/DDIs/table.aspx>.

Roopinder Kaloty, Annie Liu, and Sheila Wang, chapter editors

Jillian Bardsley, Evan Lilly, and Vahagn Karapetyan associate editors

Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor

Dr. David Adam, Dr. Susan Burgin, Dr. Yvette Miller-Monthrope, Dr. Gideon Smith, and Dr. Jensen

Yeung, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Photosensitivity Eruptions	
Introduction to Skin	2	Serum Sickness-Like Reaction	
Skin Anatomy		Heritable Disorders	23
Skin Function		Ichthyosis Vulgaris	
Definitions	3	Neurofibromatosis	
Primary Lesions		Infections	24
Secondary Lesions		Bacterial Infections	
Arrangement and Distribution		Dermatophytoses	
Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations	5	Parasitic Infections	
Common Skin Lesions	5	Viral Infections	
Cysts		Yeast Infections	
Fibrous Lesions		Sexually transmitted diseases	
Hyperkeratotic and Hyperplastic Lesions		Pre-Malignant Skin Conditions	31
Pigmented Lesions and Pigmentary Disorders		Actinic Keratosis (Solar Keratosis)	
Vitiligo		Leukoplakia	
Vascular Lesions		Malignant Skin Tumors	32
Acneiform Eruptions	11	Non-Melanoma Skin Cancers	
Acne Vulgaris/Common Acne		Basal Cell Carcinoma	
Perioral Dermatitis		Squamous Cell Carcinoma	
Rosacea		Other Forms of Squamous Cell Carcinoma	
Dermatitis (Eczema)	13	Malignant Melanoma	
Asteatotic Dermatitis		Other Cutaneous Cancers	
Atopic Dermatitis		Cutaneous T-cell Lymphoma	
Contact Dermatitis		Alopecia (Hair Loss)	36
Dyshidrotic Dermatitis		Hair Growth	
Nummular Dermatitis		Non-Scarring (Non-Cicatricial) Alopecia	
Seborrheic Dermatitis		Scarring (Cicatricial) Alopecia	
Stasis Dermatitis		Nails and Disorders of the Nail Apparatus . .	37
Lichen Simplex Chronicus		Skin Manifestations of Systemic Disease . . .	38
Papulosquamous Diseases	17	Pediatric Exanthems	P57
Lichen Planus		Miscellaneous Lesions	39
Pityriasis Rosea		Angioedema and Urticaria	
Psoriasis		Erythema Nodosum	
Vesicobullous Diseases	19	Pruritus	
Bullous Pemphigoid		Wounds and Ulcers	
Pemphigus Vulgaris		Common Medications	41
Dermatitis Herpetiformis		Sunscreens and Preventative Therapy	
Porphyria Cutanea Tarda		Topical Steroids	
Drug Eruptions	21	Dermatologic Therapies	
Drug Hypersensitivity Syndrome		References	45
Erythema Multiforme			
Stevens-Johnson Syndrome			
Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis			
Exanthematous Eruptions (Maculopapular Eruptions/Morbilliform)			
Fixed Drug Eruptions			

Introduction to Skin

Skin Anatomy

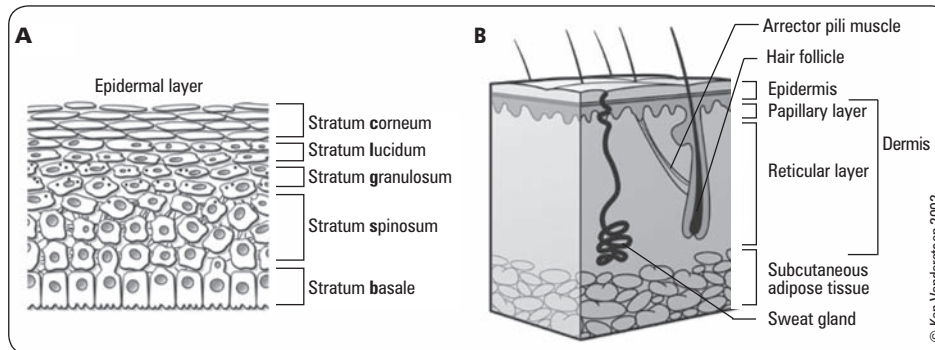


Figure 1. Histologic layers of the skin. Epidermal layer is detailed in A

Skin

- divided anatomically into epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous tissue
- epidermis**
 - avascular: receives its nutrition from the dermal capillaries
 - derived from keratinocytes with the youngest presenting at the stratum basale
 - cells progress from stratum basale to stratum corneum in about 4 wk
 - stratum basale (germinativum): displays mitotic figures that give rise to keratinocytes
 - stratum spinosum (prickle cells): junctions in this layer (tonofilaments) give the epidermis its strength
 - stratum granulosum: flat cells containing basophilic granules which characterize skin
 - stratum lucidum: comprised of transparent layers of packed dead cells
 - stratum corneum: flat scales of the water-resistant protein keratin
- dermis**: comprised of connective tissue divided into two regions
 - papillary: contains numerous capillaries that supply nutrients to the dermis and epidermis
 - reticular: provides a strong structure for skin; consists of collagen bundles woven together along with elastic fibers, fibroblasts, and macrophages
- subcutaneous tissue** (subdermal)
 - consists primarily of adipose cells, larger caliber vessels, nerves and fascia

Cells in Epidermis

- keratinocytes**: located in all layers of the epidermis, except the stratum corneum; connected to each other by desmosomes
- melanocytes**: located in the stratum basale; keratinocyte to melanocyte ratio in the basal layer is 10:1; melanocyte number is equal among races
- Langerhans cells**: important for immune surveillance
- Merkel cells**: involved in touch sensation

Skin Appendages

- epidermal in origin, can extend into the dermis; includes hair, nails, and cutaneous glands

Cutaneous Glands

- sebaceous gland**: part of pilosebaceous unit, produces sebum which is secreted into the hair follicle via the sebaceous duct, where it covers the skin surface (protective function)
 - sebum has some antifungal properties
 - these glands cover entire skin surface except palms and soles
- apocrine sweat gland**: apocrine duct empties into hair follicle above sebaceous gland
 - found in axillae and perineum
 - likely a vestigial structure, functions in other species to produce scent (e.g. pheromones)
- eccrine sweat gland**: not part of pilosebaceous unit
 - found over entire skin surface except lips, nail beds and glans penis
 - important in temperature regulation via secretion of sweat to cool skin surface



Layers of the Epidermis

"Californians Like Getting Sun Burns"
OR
"Canadians Like Good Sushi Boxes"

Acronyms

β-hCG	β-human chorionic gonadotropin
AAFP	American Academy of Family Physicians
AD	atopic dermatitis
AK	actinic keratosis
ASO	anti-streptolysin O
BCC	basal cell carcinoma
BSA	body surface area
BUN	blood urea nitrogen
CBC	complete blood count
CMV	cytomegalovirus
CNS	central nervous system
Cr	creatinine
CXR	chest X-ray
DLE	discoid lupus erythematosus
DM	diabetes mellitus
DRESS	drug reaction with eosinophilia and systemic symptoms
DVT	deep vein thrombosis
EM	erythema multiforme
Fe	iron
FTA-ABS	fluorescent treponemal antibody-absorption group A β-hemolytic <i>Streptococcus</i>
GAS	group A β-hemolytic <i>Streptococcus</i>
GVHD	graft-vs.-host disease
HHV	human herpes virus
HPA	hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal
HPV	human papillomavirus
HRT	hormone replacement therapy
HSV	herpes simplex virus
HZV	herpes zoster virus
IFN	interferon
IVIg	intravenous immunoglobulin
LFT	liver function test
MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor
MM	malignant melanoma
MMR	measles/mumps/rubella
MRSA	methicillin-resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>
MTP	metatarsal phalangeal
NB-UVB	narrow band ultraviolet wavelength B
NCN	neocellular nevus
Nd: Yag	neodymium-doped yttrium aluminum garnet
NMN	nevomelanocytic nevus
NMSC	nonmelanoma skin cancers
NSAID	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug
OCP	oral contraceptive pill
OTC	over-the-counter
PABA	para-aminobenzoic acid
PASI	Psoriasis Area and Severity Index
PPD	purified protein derivative
PURVA	psoralens and long wave ultraviolet radiation
RA	rheumatoid arthritis
SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
SHBG	sex hormone-binding globulin
SJS	Stevens-Johnson syndrome
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
SPF	sun protection factor
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
SSSS	staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome
STD	sexually transmitted disease
TB	tuberculosis
TEN	toxic epidermal necrolysis
TMP/SMX	trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
TSH	thyroid stimulating hormone
UC	ulcerative colitis
URTI	upper respiratory tract infection
UV	ultraviolet
UVA	ultraviolet wavelength A
UVB	ultraviolet wavelength B
UVC	ultraviolet wavelength C
VDRL	venereal disease research laboratory
VZV	varicella zoster virus

Skin Function

- **protection**
 - due to continuous recycling and avascularity of epidermis
 - barrier to UV radiation, mechanical/chemical insults, pathogens and dehydration
- **thermal regulation**
 - insulation to maintain body temperature in cool environments via peripheral vasoconstriction, hair, and subcutaneous adipose tissue
 - dissipation of heat in warm environments via increased activity of sweat glands and increased blood flow within dermal vascular networks
- **sensation**
 - touch, pain, and temperature sensation
- **metabolic function**
 - vitamin D synthesis
 - energy storage (mainly in the form of triglycerides)

Definitions

Primary Lesions

Definition

- a lesion that the body makes that has not been altered by trauma or manipulation and has not regressed

Types of Primary Lesions

- **macule**: flat lesion, size less than 5 mm; differs from surrounding skin with respect to its color only
- **patch**: used by some dermatologists to mean a large macule, and others to mean a thin plaque
- **papule**: raised lesion less than 5 mm; its substance consists of inflammatory cells, neoplastic cells or accumulations of metabolic by-products e.g. lipids
- **plaque**: raised lesion; usually greater than 2 cm; its surface is greater than its height
- **nodule**: similar to a papule but measures 5 mm-5cm. Are often deep and palpable
- **tumor**: a large nodule: > 5 cm; tumor in this context does not imply malignancy
- **vesicle**: small raised lesion that is fluid-filled, <5 mm
- **bulla**: larger vesicle; >5 mm
- **pustule**: an elevated lesion containing purulent fluid (white, grey, yellow, green)

Specific Types of Primary Lesions

- **cyst**: an epithelial-lined collection containing semi-solid or fluid material
- **wheel**: a special form of papule or plaque that is blanchable and transient, formed by edema in the dermis (e.g. urticaria)
- **comedones**: collection of sebum and keratin
 - open comedo (blackhead)
 - closed comedo (whitehead; differentiated from pustule)
- **petechiae**: small pinpoint extravasation of blood into dermis resulting in hemorrhagic lesions; non-blanchable, <3 mm in size
- **purpura**: larger than petechia, 3 mm-1 cm in size
- **ecchymoses**: larger than purpura, >1 cm in size, i.e. a "bruise"
- **telangiectasia**: dilated superficial blood vessels; blanchable

Secondary Morphological Lesions

Definition

- develop during the evolutionary process of skin disease, or created by manipulation, or due to complication of primary lesion (e.g. rubbing, scratching, infection)
- **crust**: dried fluid (serum, blood, or purulent exudate) (e.g. impetigo)
- **scale**: excess keratin (e.g. seborrheic dermatitis)
- **lichenification**: thickening of the skin and accentuation of normal skin markings (e.g. chronic atopic dermatitis)
- **fissure**: a linear slit-like cleavage of the skin
- **excoriation**: a scratch mark
- **atrophy**: histological decrease in size and number of cells or tissues, resulting in thinning or depression of the skin



Describe a Lesion with SCALDA

Size and Surface area

Color (e.g. hyperpigmented, hypopigmented, erythematous)

Arrangement (e.g. solitary, linear, reticulated, grouped, herpetiform)

Lesion morphology

Distribution (e.g. dermatomal, intertriginous, symmetrical/asymmetrical, follicular)

Always check hair, nails, mucous membranes and intertriginous areas



Skin Phototypes (Fitzpatrick)

Phototype	Color of Skin	Skin's Response to Sun Exposure (without SPF protection)
I	White	Always burns, never tans
II	White	Always burns, little tan
III	White	Slight burn, slow tan
IV	Pale brown	Slight burn, faster tan
V	Brown	Rarely burns, dark tan
VI	Dark brown or black	Never burns, dark tan



Patch: used by some dermatologists to mean a large macule, and others to mean a thin plaque

Papule: raised lesion less than 5mm. Its substance consists of inflammatory cells, neoplastic cells or accumulations of metabolic by-products e.g. lipids

- **erosion**: a disruption of the skin involving the epidermis alone; heals without scarring
- **ulcer**: a disruption of the skin that extends into the dermis or deeper; heals with scarring
- **scar**: replacement fibrosis of dermis and subcutaneous tissue (hypertrophic or atrophic)

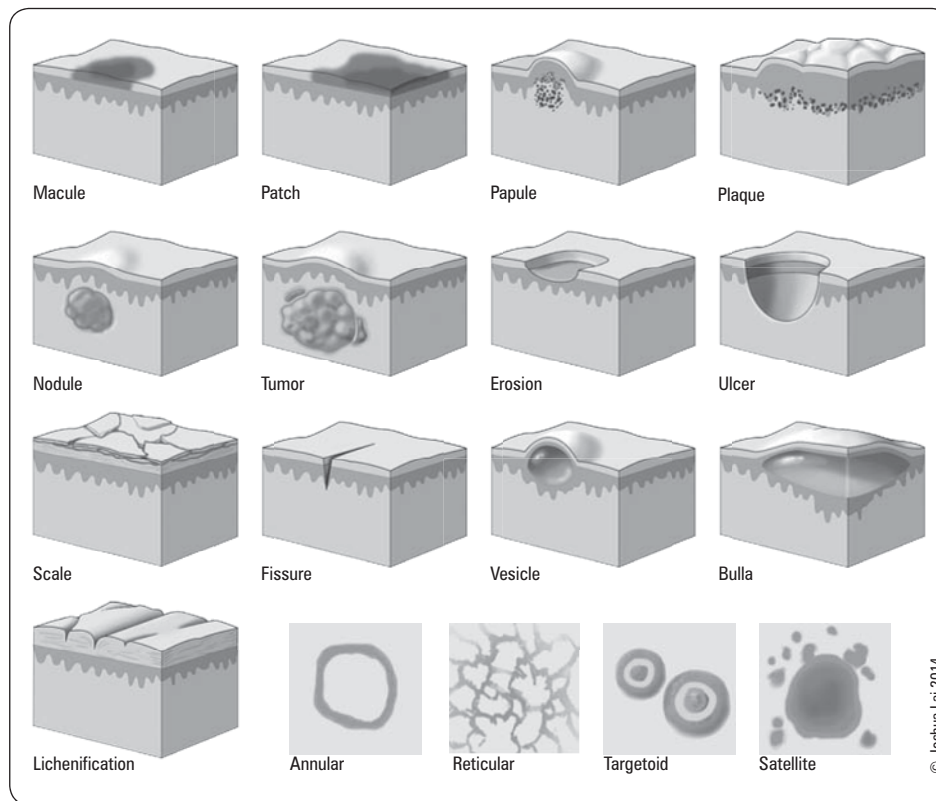


Figure 2. Examples of primary and secondary morphology and arrangement of lesions

Arrangement and Distribution

- **acral**: relating to the hands and feet (e.g. hand, foot and mouth disease)
- **annular**: ring-shaped (e.g. granuloma annulare)
- **follicular**: involving hair follicles (e.g. folliculitis)
- **guttate**: lesions following a “drop-like” pattern (e.g. guttate psoriasis)
- **Koebner phenomenon**: i.e. isomorphic response, appearance of lesions at an injury site (e.g. lichen planus, psoriasis, vitiligo); an isomorphic reaction that develops in areas of trauma after the traumatic event; usually linear
- **morbilliform**: a maculopapular rash resembling measles
- **reticular**: lesions following a net-like pattern (e.g. livedo reticularis)
- **satellite**: lesions scattered outside of primary lesion (e.g. candida diaper dermatitis)
- **serpiginous**: lesions following a snake-like pattern (e.g. cutaneous larva migrans)
- **target/targetoid**: concentric ring lesions, like a dartboard (e.g. erythema multiforme). “Target” refers to lesions with 3 different zones of color and “targetoid” refers to lesions with 2 zones of color
- **other descriptive terms**: discrete, clustered, linear, confluent, , indurated

Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations

Table 1. Differential Diagnosis of Common Presenting Problems

Lesion	Infectious	Inflammatory	Drug/Toxin	Miscellaneous
Brown Macule		Post-inflammatory hyper-pigmentation	UV radiation, actinic/solar lentigo, freckle (ephelide)	Congenital: café-au-lait spots, congenital nevus, epidermal/junctional nevus Neoplasia: lentigo maligna, MM, pigmented BCC Other: melasma/chloasma ("mask of pregnancy")
Discrete Red Papule	Folliculitis Furuncle Scabies	Acne vulgaris Lichen planus Rosacea Psoriasis Urticaria	Bites/stings	Vascular: hemangioma, pyogenic granuloma Other: dermatofibroma, milium rubra
Red Scales	Pityriasis rosea Secondary syphilis Tinea	Dermatitis (atopic, contact, nummular, seborrheic) Discoid lupus Lichen planus Psoriasis Pityriasis rosea	Lichen planus or psoriasis from a drug e.g. many antihypertensives may cause lichen planus; Beta-blockers may exacerbate psoriasis	Neoplastic: mycosis fungoides
Vesicle	Cat scratch disease Impetigo Viral: HSV, HZV, VZV, Molluscum, Coxsackie Scabies	Acute contact dermatitis Dyshidrotic eczema		Other: dermatitis herpetiformis, porphyria cutanea tarda
Bulla	Bullous impetigo	Acute dermatitis EM, SJS, TEN, SLE	Fixed drug eruption	Autoimmune: bullous pemphigoid, pemphigus vulgaris Other: dermatitis herpetiformis, porphyria cutanea tarda
Pustule	Candida Dermatophyte Impetigo Septic vasculitis Varicella	Acne vulgaris Rosacea Dyshidrotic dermatitis Pustular folliculitis Pustular psoriasis	Acute generalized exanthematous pustulosis (usually secondary to drug reaction)	Other: hidradenitis suppurativa
Oral Ulcer	Aspergillosis CMV Coxsackie Cryptococcosis HSV/HZV HIV, TB, Syphilis	Allergic stomatitis EM/SJS/TEN Lichen planus Seronegative arthropathies, SLE Recurrent aphthous stomatitis Behçet's disease	Chemotherapy Radiation therapy	Autoimmune: pemphigus vulgaris Congenital: XXY Hematologic: sickle cell disease Neoplasia: BCC, SCC
Skin Ulcer	Plaque Syphilis TB Tularemia	RA, SLE, vasculitis UC (pyoderma gangrenosum)		Autoimmune: necrobiosis lipoidica diabetorum (e.g. DM) Congenital: XXY Hematologic: sickle cell disease Neoplasia: SCC Vascular: arterial, neurotropic, pressure, venous, aphthous, leukoplakia, traumatic

Common Skin Lesions

Cysts



Table 2. Cysts

	Clinical Presentation	Pathophysiology	Epidemiology	Clinical Course	Management
Epidermal Cyst	Round, yellow/flesh-colored, slow growing, mobile, firm, fluctuant, nodule or tumor	Epithelial cells displaced into dermis, epidermal lining becomes filled with keratin and lipid-rich debris May be post-traumatic, rarely syndromic	Most common cutaneous cyst in youth – mid age	Central punctum may rupture (foul, cheesy odor, creamy color) and produce inflammatory reaction Increase in size and number over time, especially in pregnancy. May become inflamed or infected	Excise completely before it becomes infected
Pilar Cyst (Trichilemmal)	Single or multiple, hard, variable sized nodules under the scalp, lacks central punctum	Thick-walled cyst lined with stratified squamous epithelium and filled with dense keratin Idiopathic Post-trauma, often familial	2nd most common cutaneous cyst F > M	Rupture causes pain and inflammation	Excision
Dermoid Cyst	Most commonly found at lateral third of eyebrow or midline under nose	Rare, congenital hamartomas, which arise from inclusion of epidermis along embryonal cleft closure lines, creating a thick-walled cyst filled with dense keratin	Rare	If nasal midline, risk of extension into CNS	Excision
Digital Mucous Cyst	Usually solitary, translucent; a clear gelatinous viscous fluid may be extruded	Cystic lesion that originates from joint or tendon sheath, called a digital mucous cyst when found on fingertip Associated with osteoarthritis	Older age	Stable	Incision and expression of contents Laser ablation and electrodesiccation
Milium	1-2 mm superficial, white to yellow subepidermal papules occurring on eyelids, cheeks, and forehead	Small epidermal inclusion cyst, primarily arising from pluripotential cells in epidermal or adnexal epithelium	Any age 40-50% of infants	In newborns, spontaneously resolves in first 4 wk of life	Incision and expression of contents Laser ablation and electrodesiccation Multiple facial milia respond to topical retinoid therapy

Fibrous Lesions



DERMATOFIBROMA

Clinical Presentation

- button-like, firm dermal papule or nodule, skin-colored to red-brown coloring
- majority are asymptomatic but may be pruritic and/or tender
- site: legs > arms > trunk
- dimple sign: lateral compression causes dimpling of the lesion

Pathophysiology

- benign tumor due to fibroblast proliferation in the dermis

Etiology

- unknown; may be associated with history of minor trauma (e.g. shaving or insect bites)
- eruptive dermatofibromata can be associated with SLE

Epidemiology

- adults, F>M

Differential Diagnosis

- dermatofibrosarcoma protruberans, MM, Kaposi's sarcoma, blue nevus

Investigations

- biopsy if diagnosis is uncertain

Management

- no treatment required
- excision or cryosurgery if bothersome

SKIN TAGS

Clinical Presentation

- small (1-10 mm), soft, skin-colored or darker pedunculated papule, often polypoid
- sites: eyelids, neck, axillae, inframammary, and groin

Pathophysiology

- benign outgrowth of skin

Epidemiology

- middle-aged and elderly, F>M, obese, can increase in size and number during pregnancy

Differential Diagnosis

- pedunculated seborrheic keratosis, compound or dermal melanocytic nevus, neurofibroma, fibroepithelioma of Pinkus (rare variant of BCC)

Management

- excision, electrodesiccation, cryosurgery



Skin Tags are also known as...

- Acrochordons
- Fibroepithelial polyps
- Soft fibromas
- Pedunculated lipofibromas
- Cutaneous papillomas

Keloids

Clinical Presentation

- firm, shiny, skin-colored or red-bluish papules/nodules that most often arise from cutaneous injury (e.g. piercing, surgical scar, acne), but may appear spontaneously
- extends beyond the margins of the original injury, and may continue to expand in size for years with claw-like extensions
- can be pruritic and painful
- sites: earlobes, shoulders, sternum, scapular area

Pathophysiology

- excessive deposition of randomly organized collagen fibers following trauma to skin
- differentiated from a hypertrophic scar which is confined to the borders of the original injury

Epidemiology

- most common in black patients, followed by those of Asian descent (predilection for darker skin)
- M=F, all age groups



Keloids vs. Hypertrophic Scars

- **Keloids:** extend beyond margins of original injury with claw-like extensions
- **Hypertrophic Scars:** confined to original margins of injury

Management

- intralesional corticosteroid injections
- cryotherapy
- silicone compression

Hyperkeratotic and Hyperplastic Lesions

**SEBORRHEIC KERATOSIS****Clinical Presentation**

- well-demarcated waxy papule/plaque with classic “stuck on” appearance
- large variety in color, size and shape
- over time lesions appear more warty, greasy and pigmented
- sites: face, trunk, upper extremities (may occur at any site except palms or soles)

Pathophysiology

- very common benign epithelial tumor

Epidemiology

- unusual <30 yr old
- autosomal dominant inheritance

Differential Diagnosis

- MM (lentigo maligna, nodular melanoma), melanocytic nevi, pigmented BCC, solar lentigo, spreading pigmented AK

Investigations

- biopsy only if diagnosis uncertain

Management

- none required, for cosmetics only
- cryotherapy, curettage

ACTINIC KERATOSIS (SOLAR KERATOSIS)

- see *Pre-Malignant Skin Conditions*, D31

**KERATOACANTHOMA**

- see *Malignant Skin Tumors*, D32

CORNS**Clinical Presentation**

- firm papule with a central, translucent, cone-shaped, hard keratin core
- painful with direct pressure
- sites: most commonly on dorsolateral fifth toe and dorsal aspects of other toes

Pathophysiology

- localized hyperkeratosis induced by pressure on hands and feet

Epidemiology

- F>M, can be caused by chronic microtrauma

Differential Diagnosis

- tinea pedis, plantar warts

Management

- relieve pressure with padding or alternate footwear, orthotics
- paring, curettage

**Corns vs. Warts vs. Calluses**

- **Corns** have a whitish yellow central translucent keratinous core; painful with direct pressure
- **Warts** bleed with paring and have a black speckled central appearance due to thrombosed capillaries; plantar warts destroy dermatoglyphics (epidermal ridges)
- **Calluses** have layers of yellowish keratin revealed with paring; there are no thrombosed capillaries or interruption of epidermal ridges

Pigmented Lesions and Pigmentary Disorders

Table 3. Comparison of Pigmented Lesions

	Clinical Presentation	Pathophysiology	Epidemiology	Differential Diagnosis	Clinical Course and Management
Ephelides (Freckles)	Small (<5 mm) well-demarcated light brown macules Sites: sun-exposed skin	Increased melanin within basal layer keratinocytes secondary to sun exposure	Skin phototypes I-II	Junctional nevi Juvenile lentigines	No treatment required Multiply and darken with sun exposure, fade in winter Sunscreen may prevent the appearance of new freckles
Solar Lentigo (Liver Spot)	Well-demarcated brown/black irregular macules Sites: sun-exposed skin	Small increase in number of melanocytes in the basal layer and elongation of the rete ridges due to chronic sun exposure	Most common in Caucasians >40 yr Skin phototypes I-III	Lentigo maligna, seborrheic keratosis, pigmented solar keratosis	Laser therapy, shave excisions, cryotherapy
Dermal Melanocytosis (historically known as Mongolian Spot)	Congenital gray-blue solitary or grouped macules commonly on lumbosacral area	Ectopic melanocytes in dermis	99% occurs in Asian and Aboriginal infants	Ecchymosis	Usually fades in early childhood but may persist into adulthood
Becker's Nevus	Hairy, light brown macule/patch with a papular verrucous surface Sites: trunk and shoulders, onset in teen years	Pigmented hamartoma with increased melanin in basal cells	M>F Often becomes noticeable at puberty	Hairy congenital melanocytic nevus	Hair growth follows onset of pigmentation Cosmetic management (usually too large to remove)

NEVOMELANOCYTIC NEVI

- common mole
- be suspicious of new or changing pigmented lesions (signs of melanoma)
- average number of moles per person: 18-40 yr
- 3 stages of evolution
 - junctional NMN: macular; arise at dermal-epidermal junction
 - compound NMN: papular; nevus cells move into the papillary dermis
 - dermal NMN: skin colored papules (no longer hyperpigmented); nevus cells completely migrate into dermis

Table 4. Nevomelanocytic Nevus Classification

Type	Age of Onset	Clinical Presentation	Histology	Management
Congenital	Birth and early infancy	Sharply demarcated pigmented brown plaque with regular/irregular contours ± coarse hairs Consider meningeal involvement if very large or bathing suit distribution	Nevomelanocytes in epidermis (clusters) and dermis (strands)	Surgical excision if suspicious, due to increased risk of melanoma
Acquired	Early childhood to age 40 Involute by age 60	Benign neoplasm of pigment-forming nevus cell Well circumscribed, round, uniformly pigmented macules/papules <1.5 cm Classified according to site of nevus cells		Excisional biopsy can be considered if on scalp, soles, mucous membranes, anogenital area, or if varied colors, irregular borders, pruritic, bleeding, exposed to trauma
Junctional	Childhood Majority progress to compound nevus	Flat, irregularly bordered, uniformly tan-dark brown, sharply demarcated smooth macule	Melanocytes at dermal-epidermal junction above basement membrane	Same as above
Compound	Any age	Domed, regularly bordered, smooth, round, tan-dark brown papule Sites: face, trunk, extremities, scalp	Melanocytes at dermal-epidermal junction; migration into dermis	Same as above
Dermal	Adults	Soft, dome-shaped, skin-colored to tan/brown papules or nodules, often with telangiectasia Sites: face, neck	Melanocytes exclusively in dermis	Same as above
Atypical	Childhood	Variiegated macule/papule/plaque May be large, may have regular borders or be asymmetric. May have a "fried-egg" appearance (central papule with surrounding macule) People with many atypical nevi and/or a family history of melanoma are at higher risk of developing a melanoma themselves	Hyperplasia and proliferation of melanocytes extending beyond dermal compartment of the nevus Often with region of adjacent nests	For patients with many atypical nevi, follow with full body photographs for changes Excisional biopsy if lesion changing or highly atypical

* Note: Junctional, compound and dermal nevi may be congenital or acquired. They may be typical or atypical



DDx of Hyperpigmented Macules

- Purpura (e.g. solar, ASA, anti-coagulants, steroids, hemosiderin stain)
- Post-inflammatory
- Melasma
- Melanoma
- Fixed drug eruption



ABCDE of Melanoma

- Asymmetry
- Borders (irregular)
- Colour (variegated)
- Diameter (>6 mm)
- Evolution (changes are seen)



Other Nevi

- **Halo Nevus:** often a typical appearing nevus surround by a ring of depigmentation; not rare in children; uncommonly associated with vitiligo; no treatment required unless irregular color or borders
- **Blue Nevus:** round to oval macule/papule with homogenous blue to blue-black color; often appears in childhood and late adolescence; no treatment required unless atypical features are noted

MELASMA

Clinical Presentation

- even tan macules on sun-exposed areas of face (forehead, upper lip, cheeks, chin)
- usually symmetrical

Pathophysiology

- increase in number and activity of melanocytes
- associated with estrogen and progesterone
- classification determined by depth of hyperpigmentation in the skin (epidermal, dermal, mixed type)
- epidermal pigmentation is most common and can be diagnosed with Wood's light

Epidemiology

- F>>M
- common in pregnancy (chloasma = "mask of pregnancy") and women taking OCP and HRT
- risk factors include sun exposure and dark skin tone
- can occur with mild endocrine disturbances, antiepileptic medications and other photosensitizing drugs

Management

- bleaching cream (hydroquinone), retinoic acid, topical steroids or combination creams
- destructive modalities (chemical peels, laser treatment)
- camouflage make-up
- avoiding sun and using sunscreen are key to preventing melasma
- often fades over several months after stopping hormone treatment or delivering baby

Vitiligo

Clinical Presentation

- primary pigmentary disorder characterized by depigmentation
- acquired destruction of melanocytes characterized by sharply margined white patches
- associated with streaks of depigmented hair, chorioretinitis
- sites: extensor surfaces and periorificial areas (mouth, eyes, anus, genitalia)
- Koebner phenomenon, may be precipitated by trauma

Pathophysiology

- acquired autoimmune destruction of melanocytes

Epidemiology

- 1% incidence, polygenic
- 30% with positive family history

Investigations

- rule out associated autoimmune diseases: thyroid disease, pernicious anemia, Addison's disease, Type I DM
- Wood's lamp to detect lesions: illuminates UV light onto skin to detect amelanosis (porcelain white discoloration)

Management

- sun avoidance and protection
- topical calcineurin inhibitor (e.g. tacrolimus, pimecrolimus) or topical corticosteroids
- PUVA or Narrow band UVB
- make-up
- "bleaching" normal pigmented areas (i.e. monobenzyl ether of hydroquinone 20%) if widespread loss of pigmentation



Interventions for Vitiligo

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2010;1:CD003263

Study: Systematic review of randomized controlled trials.

Patients: 3,139 participants with vitiligo.

Intervention: Topical treatments, light therapies, oral treatments, surgical methods, and psychological therapies.

Outcome: > 75% repigmentation, adverse effects.

Results: Moderate evidence exists for the use of topical corticosteroids to induce repigmentation but, adverse effects are observed with long-term use. Topical use of non-steroidal immunomodulators (e.g. tacrolimus), especially in combination with light therapies, has also been shown to induce repigmentation, but long-term use may theoretically increase the risk for skin cancer. In general, combination therapy including some form of light therapy had the most significant improvement. Sustained repigmentation (>2 yr) has not been reported and thus results should be treated with caution.



Vascular Lesions

Table 5. Infantile Hemangiomas Compared to Vascular Malformations

	Infantile Hemangiomas	Vascular Malformations
Definition	Endothelial hyperplasia	Congenital malformation with normal endothelial turnover
Presence at Birth	Usually postnatal	100% at birth (not always obvious)
M:F	1:3-5	1:1
Natural History	Phases: • Proliferating • Involuting • Involved	Proportionate growth (can expand)

HEMANGIOMAS

Clinical Presentation

- red or blue subcutaneous mass that is soft/compressible, blanches with pressure; feels like a “bag of worms” when palpated

Pathophysiology

- benign vascular tumor
- includes: infantile hemangioma, capillary/infantile hemangioma, spider hemangioma



A spider angioma will blanch when a microscope slide is applied to the centre of the lesion



Pyogenic granuloma is a misnomer: it is neither pyogenic nor granulomatous

Table 6. Vascular Tumors

	Clinical Presentation	Pathophysiology	Epidemiology	Clinical Course	Management
Infantile Hemangioma	Hot, firm red to blue plaques or tumors	Benign vascular proliferation of endothelial lining	Appears shortly after birth; rarely may be congenital	Appears shortly after birth, increases in size over months, then regresses 50% of lesions resolve spontaneously by 5 yr	10% require treatment due to functional impairment (visual compromise, airway obstruction, high output cardiac failure) or cosmesis Consider treatment if not gone by school age; propranolol; systemic corticosteroids; laser treatment; surgery
Spider Angioma (Campbell Telangiectasia)	Central red arteriole with slender branches, faintly pulsatile, blanchable	Associated with hyperestrogenic state (e.g. in hepatocellular disease, pregnancy, OCP)		Increase in number over time	Electrodesiccation or laser surgery Systemic corticosteroids and IFN- α may be indicated for rapidly growing lesions
Cherry Angioma (Campbell De Morgan Spot)	Bright red to deep maroon, dome-shaped vascular papules, 1-5 mm Site: trunk Less friable compared to pyogenic granulomas	Benign vascular neoplasm	>30 yr old	Lesions do not fade in time Lesions bleed infrequently	Usually no treatment needed Laser or electrocautery for small lesions Excision of large lesions if necessary
Pyogenic Granuloma	Bright red, dome-shaped sessile or pedunculated friable nodule Sites: fingers, lips, mouth, trunk, toes DDx: glomus tumor, nodular MM, SCC, nodular BCC	Rapidly developing hemangioma Proliferation of capillaries with erosion of epidermis and neutrophilia	<30 yr old		Surgical excision with histologic examination Electrocautery; laser; cryotherapy

VASCULAR MALFORMATIONS

1. Nevus Flammeus (Port-Wine Stain)

Clinical Presentation

- red to blue macule present at birth that follows a dermatomal distribution, rarely crosses midline
- most common site: nape of neck

Pathophysiology

- congenital vascular malformation of dermal capillaries; rarely associated with Sturge-Weber syndrome (V1, V2 distribution)

Management

- laser or make-up

2. Nevus Simplex (Salmon Patch)

Clinical Presentation

- pink-red irregular patches
- midline macule on glabella known as “Angel Kiss”; on nuchal region known as “Stork Bites”
- present in 1/3 of newborns
- majority regress spontaneously

Pathophysiology

- congenital dilation of dermal capillaries

Management

- no treatment required



A combination of topical retinoids and topical erythromycin or clindamycin is more effective than either agent used alone



Intralesional Injections

Intralesional corticosteroid injections are effective in the treatment of individual acne nodules



Acne Myths Debunked

- Eating greasy food and chocolate does not cause or worsen acne
- Blackheads (comedones) are black because of oxidized fatty acids, not dirt
- Acne is not caused by poor hygiene; on the contrary, excessive washing of face can be an aggravator



Acne Exacerbating Factors

- Systemic medications: lithium, phenytoin, steroids, halogens, androgens, iodides, bromides, danazol, epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors e.g. cetuximab
- Topical agents: steroids, tars, ointments, oily cosmetics
- Mechanical pressure or occlusion, such as leaning face on hands
- Emotional stress



Accutane and Pregnancy

- Use of isotretinoin during pregnancy is associated with spontaneous abortion and major birth defects such as facial dysmorphism and cognitive impairment
- Pregnancy should be ruled out before starting isotretinoin
- Ideally, patients should use 2 forms of contraception while on isotretinoin
- Patients and their health care providers need to register with iPledge (www.ipledge.com) before isotretinoin can be prescribed and comply with mandated procedure for use of this medication



Treatment of Acne Scars

- Tretinoin creams
- Microdermabrasion for superficial scars
- Injectable fillers (collagen, hyaluronic acid)
- Fraxel laser



Antibiotics are used in inflammatory skin conditions since they also have anti-inflammatory properties (e.g. macrolides in acne). Topical antibiotics may also be used to treat secondary bacterial superinfections (e.g. impetigo)

Acneiform Eruptions

Acne Vulgaris/Common Acne

Clinical Presentation

- a common inflammatory pilosebaceous disease categorized with respect to severity
 - Type I: comedonal, sparse, no scarring
 - Type II: comedonal, papular, moderate ± little scarring
 - Type III: comedonal, papular, and pustular, with scarring
 - Type IV: nodulocystic acne, risk of severe scarring
- sites of predilection: face, neck, upper chest, and back

Pathophysiology

- hyperkeratinization, at the follicular ostia (opening), blocks the secretion of sebum (microcomedones)
- androgens stimulate sebaceous glands to produce sebum
- anaerobic diphtheroid *Propionibacterium acnes* bacteria contains lipase, which converts sebum to free fatty acids and produces pro-inflammatory mediators

Epidemiology

- age of onset in puberty (10-17 yr in females, 14-19 yr in males)
- in prepubertal children consider underlying hormonal abnormality (e.g. late onset congenital adrenal hyperplasia)
- more severe in males than in females
- incidence decreases in adulthood
- genetic predisposition: majority of individuals with cystic acne have parent(s) with history of severe acne

Differential Diagnosis

- folliculitis, keratosis pilaris (upper arms, face, thighs), perioral dermatitis, rosacea

Table 7. Management of Acne

Drug Name	Mechanism of Action	Notes
MILD ACNE: Topical Therapies Over-the-Counter		
Benzoyl peroxide (BPO)	Bactericidal agent (targets <i>P. acnes</i>) and comedolytic	Helps prevent <i>P. acnes</i> resistance, is a bactericidal agent (targets <i>P. acnes</i>) and is comedolytic
Salicylic acid	Comedolytic	Used when patients cannot tolerate a topical retinoid due to skin irritation
MILD ACNE: Prescription Topical Therapies		
Clindamycin phosphate	Lincosamide antibiotic; inhibits protein synthesis	High rate of resistance when used as monotherapy
Erythromycin	Macrolide antibiotic; inhibits protein synthesis	High rate of resistance when used as monotherapy
BenzaClin® gel	1% clindamycin and 5% benzoyl peroxide	See above
Erythromycin + benzoyl peroxide (Benzamycin®)	3% erythromycin and 5% benzoyl peroxide	See above
Adapalene (e.g. Differin®)	Comedolytic	Less irritating than tretinoin. Not photolabile
Tretinoin (e.g. Retin-A®)	Comedolytic	Photolabile and irritation
Adapalene + benzoyl peroxide (e.g. Epiduo®)	0.1% adapalene and 2.5% benzoyl peroxide	See above

Table 7. Management of Acne (continued)

Drug Name	Mechanism of Action	Notes
MODERATE ACNE: After topical treatments have failed, add oral antibiotics, such as doxycycline (100 mg po bid), minocycline (50 to 100 mg po bid), tetracycline (250 mg PO bid to 500 mg bid), or erythromycin (500 mg PO bid). Antibiotics require 3-6 mo of use before assessing efficacy. Consider hormonal therapy, including antiandrogens		
Tetracycline	Inhibits protein synthesis	Use caution with regard to drug interactions: do not use with isotretinoin. Sun sensitivity
Oral contraceptive pills (Ortho Tri-cyclen®, Estrostep® and Yaz® are FDA-approved for acne treatment)	Norgestimate, norethindrone, drospirone: possesses anti-androgenic, progestogenic and antigonadotrophic activity	After 35 yr of age, estrogen/progesterone should only be considered in exceptional circumstances, carefully weighing the risk/benefit ratio with physician guidance
Spironolactone (off-label use for acne)	Ethinyl estradiol: increases level of SHBG, reducing circulating plasma levels of androgens	May cause hyperkalemia at higher doses
SEVERE ACNE: Consider systemic retinoids after above treatments have failed or if significant scarring present		
Isotretinoin (Accutane®, Clarus®)	Retinoid that inhibits sebaceous gland function and regulates keratinization	See Table 25, D44 for full side effect profile Most adverse effects are temporary and will resolve when the drug is discontinued Baseline lipid profile (risk of hypertriglyceridemia), LFTs and β -hCG before treatment May transiently exacerbate acne before patient sees improvement Drug may be discontinued at 16-20 wk when nodule count has dropped by >70% A second course may be initiated after 2 mo pm Refractory cases may require multiple courses of isotretinoin

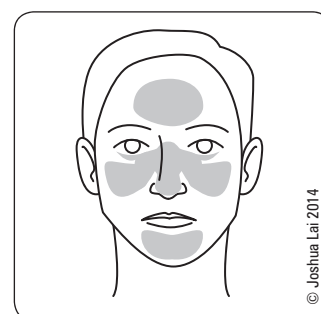


Figure 3. Rosacea distribution



Rosacea can be differentiated from acne by the absence of comedones, a predilection for the central face and symptoms of flushing



Guidelines for the Diagnosis of Rosacea

J Drugs Dermatol 2012;11(6):725-730

Presence of one or more of the following primary features:

- Flushing (transient erythema)
- Nontransient erythema
- Papules and pustules
- Telangiectasia

May include one or more of the following secondary features:

- Burning or stinging
- Dry appearance
- Edema
- Phymatous changes
- Ocular manifestations
- Peripheral location



Subtypes and Variants of Rosacea and Their Characteristics

N.B. the subtypes can all coexist and can be seen on a spectrum of severity

SUBTYPE

- **Erythematotelangiectatic**
 - Flushing, persistent central facial erythema \pm telangiectasia
- **Papulopustular**
 - Persistent central facial erythema
 - Transient central facial papules or pustules or both
- **Phymatous**
 - Thickening skin, irregular surface nodularities and enlargement
 - Nose most commonly, rarely occurs elsewhere (chin, forehead, cheeks or ears)
- **Ocular**
 - Foreign body sensation in the eye, burning or stinging, dryness, itching, ocular photosensitivity, blurred vision, telangiectasia of the sclera or other parts of the eye, or periorbital edema

VARIANT

- **Granulomatous**
 - Noninflammatory, hard, brown, yellow, or red cutaneous papules or nodules of uniform size

Perioral Dermatitis

Clinical Presentation

- discrete erythematous micropapules that often become confluent, forming inflammatory plaques on perioral, perinasal and periorbital skin
- commonly symmetrical, rim of sparing around vermillion border of lips

Epidemiology

- 15-40 yr old, occasionally in younger children
- predominantly females

Differential Diagnosis

- contact dermatitis, rosacea, acne vulgaris

Management

- avoid all topical steroids
- topical: metronidazole 0.75% gel or 0.75-1% cream to affected area bid
- systemic: tetracycline family antibiotic (utilized for its anti-inflammatory properties)

Rosacea

Clinical Presentation

- dome-shaped papules \pm pustules
- flushing, non-transient erythema and telangiectasia
- distribution: typically on central face including forehead, nose, cheeks and chin; rarely on scalp, neck and upper body
- characterized by remissions and exacerbations
- exacerbating factors: heat, cold, wind, sun, stress, drinking hot liquids, alcohol, caffeine, spices
- all forms of rosacea can progress from mild to moderate to severe
- rarely in longstanding rosacea, signs of thickening, induration and lymphedema in the skin can develop
- phyma: a distinct swelling caused by lymphedema and hypertrophy of subcutaneous tissue, particularly affecting the nose (rhinophyma)
- ocular manifestations: blepharoconjunctivitis, keratitis, iritis

Pathophysiology

- unknown

Epidemiology

- although found in all skin types, highest prevalence in fair-skinned people
- 30-50 yr old; F>M

Differential Diagnosis

- acne vulgaris, seborrheic dermatitis, perioral dermatitis, contact dermatitis

Management

- trigger avoidance is key to long-term management
- avoid topical corticosteroids
- telangiectasia: treated by physical ablation; electrical hyfrecators, vascular lasers, and intense pulsed light therapies
- phymas: treated by physical ablation or removal; paring, electrosurgery, cryotherapy, laser therapy (CO₂, argon, Nd:YAG)

Table 8. Specific Rosacea Treatments

1st Line	2nd Line	3rd Line
Oral tetracyclines family	Topical clindamycin	Oral retinoids
Topical metronidazole	Topical erythromycin 2% solution	Topical sulfur
Oral erythromycin (250-500 mg PO bid)	Topical benzoyl peroxide	
Topical azelaic acid	Ampicillin	



Important Controversies Associated with Isotretinoin Therapy for Acne

Am J Clin Dermatol 2013;14:71-76

Study: Review on isotretinoin and (1) depression and suicide, (2) inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), (3) pregnancy prevention programs.

Conclusions

1. The evidence on whether isotretinoin causes depression and suicide is inconsistent; however, numerous controlled studies have shown an improvement in anxiety and depression scores in those taking isotretinoin. In practice, for patients with a history of depression, their psychiatrist should be consulted prior to use.
2. There is no association between IBD and isotretinoin use. Only one study showed a significantly increased risk of UC. When considering using isotretinoin in a patient with IBD or with a strong family history, consider involving a gastroenterologist.

Dermatitis (Eczema)

Definition

- inflammation of the skin

Clinical Presentation

- symptoms include pruritus and pain
- acute dermatitis: papules, vesicles
- subacute dermatitis: scaling, crusting
- chronic dermatitis: lichenification, xerosis, fissuring

Asteatotic Dermatitis

Clinical Presentation

- diffuse, mild pruritic dermatitis secondary to dry skin
- very common in elderly, especially in the winter (i.e. “winter itch”) but starts in the fall
- shins predominate, looks like a “dried river bed”

Management

- skin rehydration with moisturizing routine ± mild corticosteroid creams

Atopic Dermatitis

Clinical Presentation

- subacute and chronic eczematous reaction associated with prolonged severe pruritus
- distribution depends on age
- inflammation, lichenification, excoriations are secondary to relentless scratching
- atopic palms: hyperlinearity of the palms (associated with ichthyosis vulgaris)
- associated with: keratosis pilaris (hyperkeratosis of hair follicles, “chicken skin”), xerosis, occupational hand dryness

Epidemiology

- frequently affects infants, children, and young adults
- almost 15% of children in developed countries under the age of 5 are affected
- associated with personal or family history of atopy (asthma, hay fever, anaphylaxis, eosinophilia)
- polygenic inheritance: one parent >60% chance for child; two parents >80% chance for child
- the earlier the onset, the more severe and persistent the disease
- long-term condition with 1/3 of patients continuing to show signs of AD into adulthood

Pathophysiology

- a T-cell driven process with epidermal barrier dysfunction

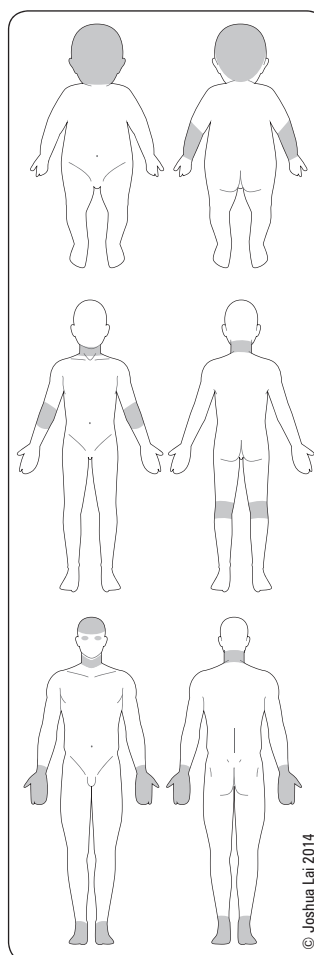


Figure 4. Atopic dermatitis distribution

The typical distribution of atopic dermatitis in infants <6 mo (top), children >18 mo (middle) and adults (bottom)



Triggers for Atopic Dermatitis

- Irritants (detergents, solvents, clothing, water hardness)
- Contact allergens
- Environmental aeroallergens (e.g. dust mites)
- Inappropriate bathing habits (e.g. long hot showers)
- Sweating
- Microbes (e.g. *S. aureus*)
- Stress

Investigations

- clinical diagnosis
- consider: skin biopsy, immunoglobulin serum levels (often elevated serum IgE level), patch testing, and skin prick tests

Management

- goal: reduce signs and symptoms, prevent or reduce recurrences/flares
- better outcome (e.g. less flare-ups, modified course of disease) if diagnosis made early and treatment plan individualized
- avoid triggers of AD
- **enhance barrier function of the skin**
 - regular application of moisturizers
 - emollients hydrate the skin and reduce pruritus
 - twice daily application is recommended even in absence of symptoms, especially after bathing or swimming
 - bathing followed by the application of moisturizers and occlusives (e.g. petroleum jelly) promotes hydration
- **anti-inflammatory therapies**
 - topical corticosteroids**
 - effective, rapid symptomatic relief of acute flares
 - best applied immediately after bathing
 - control inflammation with a potent topical steroid; a milder one following resolution of acute flare
 - systemic immunosuppression may be needed in severe cases
 - flares may respond to systemic anti-staphylococcal therapy
 - side effects: skin atrophy, purpura, striae, steroid acne, perioral dermatitis, and glaucoma when used around the eyes
 - topical immunomodulators**
 - long-term management
 - calcineurin inhibitors include pimecrolimus (Elidel®), tacrolimus (Protopic®)
 - side effects: skin burning, transient irritation
 - advantages of immunomodulators over long-term corticosteroid use: rapid, sustained effect in controlling pruritus; no skin atrophy; safe for the face and neck

Complications

- infections
 - treatment of infections
 - ♦ topical mupirocin
 - ♦ oral antibiotics (e.g. cloxacillin, cephalexin) for widespread *S. aureus* infections



The Diagnostic Value of Atopy Patch Testing and Prick Testing in Atopic Dermatitis: Facts and Controversies

Clin Dermatol 2010;28:38-44

Study: Systematic review.

Conclusions

Use of the atopy patch test (APT) is controversial:

- There is no gold standard for aeroallergen provocation, so APT is used without comparison to another method.
- APT findings are not consistent among children with atopic dermatitis.

APT may be valuable:

- May provide diagnostic information and may aid clinical decision making regarding the use of IgE-mediated sensitizations.

Future research is needed:

- Need standardized provocation and avoidance testing to determine the clinical relevance of obtaining a positive APT result.

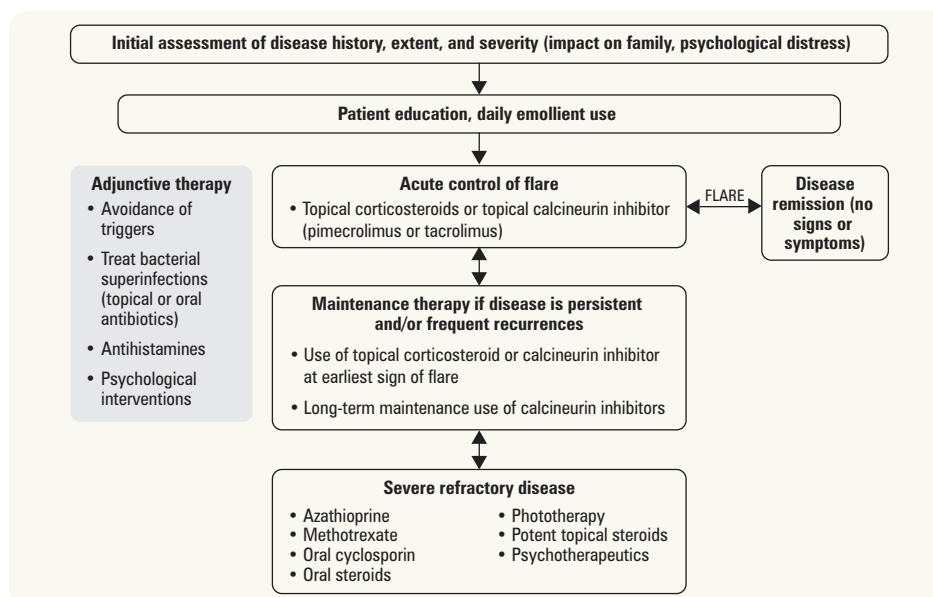


Figure 5. Atopic dermatitis treatment algorithm

Adapted from: Ellis C, et al. ICCAD II Faculty. International Consensus Conference on Atopic Dermatitis II (ICCAD II): clinical update and current treatment strategies. *Br J Dermatol* 2003;148(Suppl 63):3-10



Contact Dermatitis

Clinical Presentation

- cutaneous inflammation caused by an external agent(s)

Table 9. Contact Dermatitis

	Irritant Contact Dermatitis	Allergic Contact Dermatitis
Mechanism of Reaction	Toxic injury to skin; non-immune mechanism	Cell-mediated delayed (Type IV) hypersensitivity reaction (see Rheumatology, RH2)
Type of Reaction	Erythema, dryness, fine scale, burning Acute: quick reaction, sharp margins (e.g. from acid/alkali exposure) Cumulative insult: slow to appear, poorly defined margins (e.g. from soap), more common	Erythema with a papulovesicular eruption, swelling, pruritus
Frequency	Majority; will occur in anyone given sufficient concentration of irritants	Minority; patient acquires susceptibility to allergen that persists indefinitely
Distribution	Palmar surface of hand usually involved	Dorsum of hand usually involved; often discrete area of skin involvement
Examples	Soaps, weak alkali, detergents, organic solvents, alcohol, oils	(See sidebar) Many allergens are irritants, so may coincide with irritant dermatitis
Management	Avoidance of irritants Wet compresses with Burow's solution Barrier moisturizers Topical/oral steroids	Patch testing to determine specific allergen Avoid allergen and its cross-reactants Wet compresses soaked in Burow's solution (drying agent) Steroid cream (e.g. hydrocortisone 1%, betamethasone valerate 0.05% or 0.1% cream; bid) Systemic steroids prn (prednisone 1 mg/kg, taper over 2 wk)

Top Ten Allergens as Identified by The North American Contact Dermatitis Group

Test Substance	Allergic Reactions (%)	Common Uses
Nickel sulfate	14.2	Found in some jewelry, belt buckles
Neomycin sulfate	13.1	Most commonly used topical antibiotic
Balsam of Peru	11.8	Fragrance material
Fragrance mix	11.7	A mix of eight different fragrance components which was developed to allow for allergen testing in cosmetics
Thimerosal	10.9	A common preservative that is used in vaccines, contact lens solution, cosmetics
Sodium gold	9.5	Used in jewellery, dentistry, thiosulfate electronics
Formaldehyde	9.3	A colorless gas found in many workplaces, cosmetics, medications, textiles, resins, plastic bottles
Quaternium-15	9.0	A component in many shampoos, moisturizers, conditioners and soaps
Cobalt chloride	9.0	A hard metal found in cosmetics, jewellery, buttons, tools
Bacitracin	8.7	A topical antibiotic – one of the main ingredients in Polysporin®

Dyshidrotic Dermatitis

Clinical Presentation

- “tapioca pudding” papulovesicular dermatitis of hands and feet that coalesce into plaques, followed by painful fissuring
- acute stage often very pruritic
- secondary infection common
- lesions heal with desquamation and may lead to chronic lichenification
- sites: palms and soles ± dorsal surfaces of hands and feet

Pathophysiology

- NOT caused by hyperhidrosis (excessive sweating)
- emotional stress may precipitate the dermatitis

Management

- topical: high potency corticosteroid with plastic cling wrap occlusion to increase penetration
- intralesional triamcinolone injection
- systemic
 - prednisone in severe cases
 - antibiotics for secondary *S. aureus* infection

Nummular Dermatitis

Clinical Presentation

- annular, coin-shaped, pruritic, dry, scaly, erythematous plaques, can become lichenified
- often associated with atopic and dyshidrotic dermatitis
- secondary infection common

Pathophysiology

- little is known, but it is often accompanied by xerosis, which results from a dysfunction of the epidermal lipid barrier; this in turn can allow permeation of environmental agents, which can induce an allergic or irritant response

Management

- moisturization
- mid to high potency corticosteroid ointment bid

Seborrheic Dermatitis

Clinical Presentation

- greasy, erythematous, yellow, scaling, minimally elevated papules and plaques in areas rich in sebaceous glands, can look moist and superficially eroded in flexural regions
- infants: "cradle cap"
- children: may be generalized with flexural and scalp involvement
- adults: diffuse involvement of scalp margin with yellow to white flakes, pruritus, and underlying erythema
- sites: scalp, eyebrows, eyelashes, beard, glabella, post-auricular, over sternum, trunk, body folds, genitalia

Pathophysiology

- possible etiologic association with *Malassezia* spp. (yeast)

Epidemiology

- common in infants and adolescents
- increased incidence and severity in immunocompromised patients
- in adults, can cause dandruff (pityriasis sicca)

Management

- face: ketoconazole (Nizoral®) cream daily or bid + mild steroid cream daily or bid
- scalp: salicylic acid in olive oil or Derma-Smoother FS® oil (peanut oil, mineral oil, fluocinolone acetone 0.01%) to remove dense scales, 2% ketoconazole shampoo (Nizoral®), ciclopirox (Loprox®) shampoo, selenium sulfide (e.g. Selsun®) or zinc pyrithione (e.g. Head and Shoulders®) shampoo, steroid lotion (e.g. betamethasone valerate 0.1% lotion bid)

Stasis Dermatitis

Clinical Presentation

- chronic erythema, xerosis, scaling, pruritus, and brownish pigmentation in late stages
- site: lower legs

Pathophysiology

- chronic venous insufficiency leads to venous stasis
- surrounding soft tissue inflammation and fibrosis results

Investigations

- Doppler and color-coded Duplex sonography if suspicious for DVT
- culture for MRSA if there is crusting

Management

- compression stockings
- rest and elevate legs (above the level of the heart)
- moisturizer to treat xerosis
- mid-high potency topical corticosteroids to control inflammation

Complications

- ulceration (common at medial malleolus), secondary bacterial infections

Lichen Simplex Chronicus

Clinical Presentation

- well-defined plaque(s) of lichenified skin with decreased skin markings ± excoriations
- common sites: neck, scalp, lower extremities, urogenital area
- often seen in patients with atopy

Pathophysiology

- skin hyperexcitable to itch, continued rubbing/scratching of skin results
- eventually lichenification occurs

Investigations

- if patient has generalized pruritus, rule out systemic cause: CBC with differential count, transaminases, renal and thyroid function tests
- CXR if lymphoma suspected

Management

- treat pruritus to break the itch-scratch cycle: antipruritics (e.g. antihistamines, topical or intralesional glucocorticoids, Unna boot)

Papulosquamous Diseases

Lichen Planus

Clinical Presentation

- acute or chronic inflammation of mucous membranes or skin, especially on flexural surfaces
- small, polygonal, pruritic, flat-topped, shiny, violet papules; resolves into hyperpigmented macules
- common sites: wrists, ankles, mucous membranes in 60% (mouth, vulva, glans), nails, scalp
- distribution: symmetrical and bilateral
- Wickham's striae: reticulate white-gray lines over surface; pathognomonic but may not be present
- mucous membrane lesions: lacy, whitish reticular network, milky-white plaques/papules; increased risk of SCC in erosions and ulcers
- nails: longitudinal ridging; dystrophic; pterygium formation
- scalp: scarring alopecia with perifollicular hyperkeratosis
- spontaneously resolves but may last for weeks, months or years (mouth and skin lesions)
- rarely associated with hepatitis C
- Koebner phenomenon

Pathophysiology

- autoimmune, antigen unknown
- lymphocyte activation leads to keratinocyte apoptosis

Investigations

- biopsy
- hepatitis C serology if patient has risk factors

Management

- topical or intralesional corticosteroids
- short courses of oral prednisone (rarely)
- phototherapy for generalized or resistant cases
- oral retinoids for erosive lichen planus in mouth
- oral metronidazole or systemic immunosuppressants (e.g. azathioprine, methotrexate, cyclosporine)



The 6 Ps of Lichen Planus

Purple
Pruritic
Polygonal
Peripheral
Papules
Penis (i.e. mucosa)

Pityriasis Rosea

Clinical Presentation

- acute, self-limiting eruption characterized by red, oval plaques/patches with central scale that does not extend to edge of lesion
- long axis of lesions follows skin tension lines (i.e. Langer's Lines) parallel to ribs producing "Christmas tree" pattern on back
- varied degree of pruritus
- most start with a "herald" patch which precedes other lesions by 1-2 wk
- common sites: trunk, proximal aspects of arms and legs

Etiology

- suspected HHV-7 or HHV-6 reactivation

Investigations

- none required

Management

- none required; clears spontaneously in 6-12 wk
- symptomatic: topical glucocorticoids if pruritic



PSORIASIS: Presentation and Pathophysiology

Pink papules/Plaques/Pinpoint bleeding (Auspitz sign)/Physical injury (Koebner phenomenon)
Silver scale/Sharp margins
Onycholysis/Oil spots
Rete ridges with Regular elongation on pathology
Itching (sometimes)
Arthritis/Abscess (Munro) on pathology/
Autoimmune
Stratum corneum with nuclei
Immunologic
Stratum granulosum absent on pathology

Psoriasis

Classification

1. plaque psoriasis
2. guttate psoriasis
3. erythrodermic psoriasis
4. pustular psoriasis
5. inverse psoriasis

Pathophysiology

- not fully understood, genetic and immunologic factors
- shortened keratinocyte cell cycle leads to Th1- and Th17-mediated inflammatory response



PSORIASIS: Triggers

- Physical trauma (Koebner phenomenon)
- Infections (acute streptococcal infection precipitates guttate psoriasis)
- Stress (can be a major factor in flares)
- Drugs (rebound from stopping systemic glucocorticoids, lithium, antimalarial drugs, interferon)
- Smoking and heavy alcohol consumption

Differential Diagnosis

- AD, mycosis fungoides (cutaneous T-cell lymphoma), seborrheic dermatitis, tinea, nummular dermatitis, lichen planus

Investigations

- biopsy (if atypical presentation, rarely needed)

1. PLAQUE PSORIASIS

Clinical Presentation

- chronic and recurrent disease characterized by well-circumscribed erythematous papules/plaques with silvery-white scales
- often worse in winter (lack of sun and humidity)
- Auspitz sign: bleeds from minute points when scale is removed
- common sites: scalp, extensor surfaces of elbows and knees, trunk (especially buttocks), nails, pressure areas

Management

Table 10. Topical Treatment of Psoriasis

Treatment	Mechanism	Comments
Lubricants	Reduce fissure formation	Petrolatum is effective
Salicylic acid 1-12%	Remove scales	
Tar (LCD: liquor carbonis detergens) 20% coal tar solution	Inhibits DNA synthesis, increases cell turnover	Poor long-term compliance
Calcipotriene/calcipotriol (Dovonex [®] , Silkis [®])	Binds to skin 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D3 to inhibit keratinocyte proliferation	Can be used on face and skin folds
Betamethasone + calcipotriene (Dovobet [®])	See above	Not to be used on face and folds
Topical Corticosteroids	Reduce scaling and thickness	Use appropriate potency steroid in different areas for degree of psoriasis
Tazarotene (Tazorac [®]) (gel/cream)	Retinoid derivative, decreased scaling	Use on nails

Table 11. Systemic Treatment of Psoriasis

Treatment	Adverse Effects
Methotrexate	Bone marrow toxicity, hepatic cirrhosis, teratogenicity
PUVA	Pruritus, burning, cataracts, skin cancer
Acitretin	Alopecia, cheilitis, teratogenicity, epistaxis, xerosis, hypertriglyceridemia
Cyclosporine	Renal toxicity, HTN, immunosuppression
UVB and "Narrow band" UVB (311-312 nm)	Well tolerated

Table 12. Biologics Approved in US

Treatment	Route	Dosing Schedule	Effectiveness	Action
Etanercept (Enbrel [®])*	SC	Twice weekly initially	+++	Anti-TNF
Adalimumab (Humira [®])*	SC	Once every 2 wk	++++	Anti-TNF
Infliximab (Remicade [®])*	IV	~Every 2 mo	+++++	Anti-TNF
Ustekinumab (Stelara [®])	SC	Every 12 wk during maintenance	+++	Anti-IL 12/23

*Can also be used to treat psoriatic arthritis

- biologics under study for treatment of psoriasis: secukinumab, brodalumab, ixekizumab, tildrakizumab, guselkumab

2. GUTTATE PSORIASIS ("DROP-LIKE")

Clinical Presentation

- discrete, scattered salmon-pink small scaling papules
- sites: diffuse, usually on trunk and legs, sparing palms and soles
- often antecedent streptococcal pharyngitis



Topical Treatments for Chronic Plaque Psoriasis

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;2:CD005028

Study: Systematic review of randomized trials comparing treatments against placebo or against vitamin D.

Patients: 21,448 patients with chronic plaque psoriasis.

Intervention: Corticosteroids, dithranol, tarazotene, salicylic acid, retinoids, methotrexate, macrolactams, vitamin D, and vitamin D + corticosteroids.

Outcome: Investigator assessment of overall global improvement. Total severity scores. Psoriasis area and severity index. Patient assessment of overall global improvement.

Results: Corticosteroids, vitamin D, dithranol, and tazarotene performed better than placebo alone. A combination of corticosteroids and vitamin D were better than either vitamin D or corticosteroids alone.



Calcipotriol is a Vitamin D Derivative

Dovobet[®] = calcipotriene combined with betamethasone dipropionate and is considered to be one of the most potent topical psoriatic therapies.



Mechanism of Biologics

"-mab" = monoclonal antibody

"-cept" = receptor

Management

- UVB phototherapy, sunlight, lubricants
- penicillin V or erythromycin if Group A β -hemolytic Streptococcus on throat culture

3. ERYTHRODERMIC PSORIASIS**Clinical Presentation**

generalized erythema with fine desquamative scale on surface

- associated signs and symptoms: arthralgia, severe pruritus, dehydration, electrolyte imbalance
- may have history of mild plaque psoriasis
- aggravating factors: lithium, β -blockers, NSAIDs, antimalarials, phototoxic reaction, infection

Management

- hospitalization, bed rest, IV fluids, monitor fluids and electrolytes
- treat underlying aggravating condition, sun avoidance
- methotrexate, cyclosporine, UV, oral retinoids, biologics

4. PUSTULAR PSORIASIS**Clinical Presentation**

- sudden onset of erythematous macules and papules which evolve rapidly into pustules, very painful
- can be generalized or localized to palms/soles
- patient usually has history of psoriasis; may occur with sudden withdrawal from steroid therapy

Management

- methotrexate, cyclosporine, oral retinoids, biologics
- hospitalization if generalized

5. INVERSE PSORIASIS**Clinical Presentation**

- erythematous well-demarcated plaques on flexural surfaces such as axillae, inframammary folds, gluteal fold, inguinal folds
- lesions may be macerated

Management

- low potency topical corticosteroids
- topical vitamin D derivatives such as calcipotriene or calcitriol
- topical calcineurin inhibitors such as tacrolimus or pimecrolimus

6. PSORIATIC ARTHRITIS

- 5-30% of patients with psoriasis can also be suffering from psoriatic arthritis
- psoriatic patients with nail or scalp involvement are at a higher risk for developing psoriatic arthritis
- see [Rheumatology](#), RH23



Vesicobullous Diseases



Bullous Pemphigoid

**Clinical Presentation**

- chronic autoimmune bullous eruption characterized by pruritic, tense, subepidermal bullae on an erythematous or normal skin base
- sometimes presents as urticarial plaques without bullae
- common sites: flexor aspect of forearms, axillae, medial thighs, groin, abdomen, mouth in 33%

Pathophysiology

- IgG produced against dermal-epidermal basement membrane proteins (hemidesmosomes) leads to subepidermal bullae

Epidemiology

- mean age of onset: 60-80 yr old
- possible rare association with internal malignancy


Pemphigus Vulgaris vs. Bullous Pemphigoid

Vulgaris = Superficial, intraepidermal, flaccid lesions
 Pemphigoid = Deeper, tense lesions at the dermal-epidermal junction

Investigations

- immunofluorescence shows linear deposition of IgG and C3 along the basement membrane
- anti-basement membrane antibody (IgG) (pemphigoid antibody detectable in serum)

Prognosis

- heals without scarring, usually chronic
- rarely fatal

Management

- prednisone 0.5-1 mg/kg/d until clear, then taper \pm steroid-sparing agents (e.g. azathioprine, methotrexate)
- topical potent steroids (clobetasol) may be as effective as systemic steroids in limited disease
- tetracycline \pm nicotinamide is effective for some cases
- immunosuppressants such as azathioprine, mycophenolate mofetil, cyclosporine
- IVIg and plasmapheresis for refractory cases

Pemphigus Vulgaris

**Clinical Presentation**

- autoimmune blistering disease characterized by flaccid, non-pruritic intraepidermal bullae/vesicles on an erythematous or normal skin base
- may present with erosions and secondary bacterial infection
- sites: mouth (90%), scalp, face, chest, axillae, groin, umbilicus
- Nikolsky's sign: rubbing pressure on skin to cause bulla formation
- Asboe-Hansen sign: pressure applied to bulla causes it to extend laterally

Pathophysiology

- IgG against epidermal desmoglein-1 and -3 leads to intraepidermal bullae

Epidemiology

- 40-60 yr old, higher prevalence in Jewish, Mediterranean, Asian populations
- paraneoplastic pemphigus may be associated with thymoma, myasthenia gravis, malignancy, and use of D-penicillamine

Investigations

- immunofluorescence: shows IgG and C3 deposition intraepidermally
- circulating serum anti-desmoglein IgG antibodies

Prognosis

- begins with mouth lesions, followed by skin lesions
- lesions heal with hyperpigmentation but do not scar
- may be fatal unless treated with immunosuppressive agents

Management

- prednisone 1-2 mg/kg until no new blisters, then 1-1.5 mg/kg until clear, then taper \pm steroid-sparing agents (e.g. azathioprine, methotrexate, gold, cyclophosphamide, cyclosporine, IVIg, mycophenolate mofetil, rituximab)

**Pemphigus Foliaceus**

An autoimmune intraepidermal blistering disease that is more superficial than pemphigus vulgaris due to antibodies against desmoglein-1, a transmembrane adhesion molecule. Appears as crusted patches, erosions and/or flaccid bullae that usually start on the trunk. Localized disease can be managed with topical steroids. Active widespread disease is treated like pemphigus vulgaris

Dermatitis Herpetiformis

Clinical Presentation

- grouped papules/vesicles/urticarial wheals on an erythematous base, associated with intense pruritus, burning, stinging, excoriations
- lesions grouped, bilaterally symmetrical
- common sites: extensor surfaces of elbows/knees, sacrum, buttocks, scalp

Pathophysiology

- transglutaminase IgA deposits in the skin alone or in immune complexes leading to eosinophil and neutrophil infiltration
- 90% have HLA B8, DR3, DQWZ
- 90-100% associated with an often subclinical gluten-sensitive enteropathy (i.e. celiac disease)
- 30% have thyroid disease; increased risk of intestinal lymphoma in untreated comorbid celiac disease; iron/folate deficiency is common

Investigations

- biopsy
- immunofluorescence shows IgA deposits in perilesional skin

Epidemiology

- 20-60 yr old, M:F = 2:1

Management

- dapsone for pruritus (sulfapyridine if contraindicated or poorly tolerated)
- gluten-free diet for life

Porphyria Cutanea Tarda

Clinical Presentation

- tense vesicles/bullae in photoexposed areas subjected to trauma
- facial hypertrichosis, vesicles, and bullae in photodistribution (dorsum of hands and feet), milia, scarring
- common sites: light-exposed areas subjected to trauma, dorsum of hands and feet, nose, and upper trunk

Pathophysiology

- autosomal dominant or sporadic skin disorder associated with the presence of excess heme precursors
- associated with hemochromatosis, alcohol abuse, DM, drugs (estrogen therapy, NSAIDs), HIV, hepatitis C, increased iron indices

Epidemiology

- 30-40 yr old, M>F

Investigations

- urine + 5% HCl shows orange-red fluorescence under Wood's lamp (UV rays)
- 24 h urine for uroporphyrins (elevated)
- stool contains elevated coproporphyrins
- immunofluorescence shows IgE at dermal-epidermal junctions

Management

- discontinue aggravating substances (alcohol, estrogen therapy)
- phlebotomy to decrease body iron load
- low dose hydroxychloroquine

Drug Eruptions

Drug Hypersensitivity Syndrome

- fever followed by symmetrical bright red exanthematous eruption that may lead to internal organ involvement (e.g. hepatitis, arthralgia, nephritis, pneumonitis, lymphadenopathy, hematologic abnormalities, thyroid abnormalities)
- classically occurs approximately 7-10 d after first exposure to the drug
- may be elevated incidence of similar reactions in siblings
- most common causes: sulfonamides, allopurinol, and anticonvulsants (e.g. phenytoin, phenobarbital, carbamazepine, lamotrigine)
- 10% mortality if severe, undiagnosed, and untreated
- management: discontinue offending drug ± prednisone 0.5 mg-1 mg/kg/d, consider cyclosporine or other steroid-sparing agent in severe cases

**Drug Hypersensitivity Syndrome Triad**

- Fever
- Exanthematous eruption
- Internal organ involvement

Erythema Multiforme, Stevens-Johnson Syndrome, Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis



- disorders with varying presence of characteristic skin lesions, blistering and mucous membrane involvement

Table 13. Comparison of Erythema Multiforme, Stevens-Johnson Syndrome, Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis

	Lesion	Sites	Other Complications	Constitutional Symptoms	Etiology	Differential Diagnosis	Course and Prognosis	Management
Erythema Multiforme	Macules/papules with central vesicles Classic bull's-eye pattern of concentric light and dark rings (typical target lesions) Bilateral and symmetric All lesions appear within 72 h May show dermal edema Lesion "fixed" for at least 7 d	Dorsa of hands and forearms Mucous membrane involvement (lips, tongue, buccal mucosa) is possible Extremities with face > trunk Involvement of palms and soles	Burning and stinging Recurrences Secondary bacterial infection	Weakness, malaise	Infection: HSV, or <i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i>	Urticaria, granuloma annulare, mycosis fungoides, vasculitis	Lesions last 2 wk and heal without complications	Symptomatic treatment (oral antihistamines, oral antacids) Corticosteroids in severely ill (controversial) Prophylactic oral acyclovir for 6-12 mo for HSV-associated EM with frequent recurrences
Stevens-Johnson Syndrome	Cutaneous blistering with mucous membrane involvement (especially lips) "Atypical lesions": red circular patch with dark purple center (i.e. targetoid) "Sicker" (high fever) Sheet-like epidermal detachment in <10% of BSA (Nikolsky sign)	Prominent face and trunk involvement Palms and soles may be involved later on <10% body surface area involved by detached and detachable skin	Infection, scarring, contractures, eruptive NMN, corneal scarring, blindness, phimosis, and vaginal synechiae	Prodrome 1-14 d prior to eruption with fever and flu-like illness	Frequently drug-related (NSAIDs, anticonvulsants, sulfonamides, penicillins) Occurs up to 1-3 wk after drug exposure with more rapid onset upon rechallenge	Scarlet fever, phototoxic, eruption, GVHD, SSSS, exfoliative dermatitis, Kawasaki disease, paraneoplastic pemphigus	4-6 wk course 5% mortality	Prolonged hospitalization, admit to burn unit if significant denudation Withdraw suspect drug Intravenous fluids Infection prophylaxis Consider IVIg vs. cyclosporine (corticosteroids controversial)
Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis	Mucous membrane involvement, and severe blistering "Atypical lesions": 50% have no target lesions Diffuse erythema then necrosis and sheet-like epidermal detachment in >30% of BSA	Nails may also shed	Same as SJS PLUS electrolyte imbalance, dehydration, tubular necrosis and acute kidney injury, epithelial erosions of trachea, death	High fever >101°F	Same as SJS	Same as SJS	30% mortality due to fluid loss, regrowth of epidermis by 3 wk, secondary infection	Same as SJS Admit to burn unit Consider IVIg vs. cyclosporine

* SJS/TEN overlap is defined as the presence of 10-30% detached and detachable skin

Exanthematous Eruptions (Maculopapular Eruptions/Morbilliform)

- symmetrical, widespread, erythematous patches or plaques ± scales
- the "classic" and most common adverse drug reaction
- often starts on trunk
- may progress to generalized exfoliative dermatitis especially if the drug is continued
- most common causes: penicillin, sulfonamides, phenytoin
- management: discontinue offending drug ± oral antihistamines or topical/oral corticosteroids

Fixed Drug Eruptions

- sharply demarcated erythematous oval patches on the skin or mucous membranes
 - common sites: face, mucosa, genitalia, acral
 - recurs in same location upon subsequent exposure to the drug (fixed location)
- most common causes: antimicrobials (tetracycline, sulfonamides), anti-inflammatories, psychoactive agents (barbiturates), phenolphthalein
- management: discontinue offending drug ± prednisone 1mg/kg/d x 2 wk for generalized lesions ± potent topical corticosteroids for non-eroded lesions or antimicrobial ointment for eroded lesions

Photosensitivity Eruptions

- phototoxic reaction: "an exaggerated sunburn" confined to sun-exposed areas
- photoallergic reaction: an eczematous eruption that may spread to areas not exposed to light
- most common causes: chlorpromazine, doxycycline, thiazide diuretics, procainamide
- management: sun protection ± topical/oral corticosteroids



Intravenous Immunoglobulin Use in Patients with Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis and Stevens-Johnson Syndrome

Am J Clin Dermatol 2006;7:359-368

Study: Systematic review of 17 articles

(retrospective cohort studies were most common, no RCTs).

Patients: Individuals with a diagnosis of SJS/TEN treated with IVIg.

Intervention: Various doses and regimens of IVIg.

Outcomes: Time to disease cessation, time to healing.
Results: Eleven of 14 TEN studies reported positive results, while three studies did not observe a statistically significant improvement. Two of three SJS studies reported positive results, with one study observing no significant difference in mortality, or speed of healing.

Conclusion: IVIg appears to have a positive impact on TEN/SJS but results cannot be statistically analyzed as a whole due to variability and inconsistency in data presented from each study. However, it is considered the gold standard treatment.

Serum Sickness-Like Reaction

- a symmetric drug eruption resulting in fever, arthralgia, lymphadenopathy, and skin rash (urticaria)
- usually appears 5-10 d after drug exposure
- most common causes: cefaclor in kids; bupropion (Zyban®, Wellbutrin®) in adults
- management: discontinue offending drug ± topical/oral corticosteroids

Heritable Disorders

Ichthyosis Vulgaris

Clinical Presentation

- generalized hyperkeratosis leading to dry skin
- “fish-scale” appearance especially on extremities with sparing of flexural creases, palms and soles

Pathophysiology

- genetic deficiency in filaggrin protein leads to abnormal retention of keratinocytes (hyperkeratosis)
- scaling without inflammation

Epidemiology

- 1:300 incidence
- autosomal dominant inheritance
- associated with AD and keratosis pilaris

Investigations

- electron microscopy: keratohyalin granules

Management

- immersion in bath and oils followed by an emollient cream, humectant cream, or creams/oil containing urea or α - or β -hydroxy acids
- intermittent systemic retinoids for severe cases

Neurofibromatosis (Type I; von Recklinghausen's Disease)

Clinical Presentation

- diagnostic criteria includes 2 or more of the following
 1. more than 5 café-au-lait patches >1.5 cm in an adult or more than 5 café-au-lait macules >0.5 cm in a child under age 5 yr
 2. axillary or inguinal freckling
 3. iris hamartomas (Lisch nodules)
 4. optic gliomas
 5. neurofibromas
 6. distinctive bony lesion (sphenoid wing dysplasia or thinning of long bone cortex)
 7. first degree relative with neurofibromatosis type 1
- associated with pheochromocytoma, astrocytoma, bilateral acoustic neuromas, bone cysts, scoliosis, precocious puberty, developmental delay, and renal artery stenosis
- skin lesions less prominent in neurofibromatosis Type II (see [Pediatrics, P88](#))



Pathophysiology

- autosomal dominant disorder with excessive and abnormal proliferation of neural crest elements (Schwann cells, melanocytes), high incidence of spontaneous mutation
- linked to absence/truncation of neurofibromin (a tumour suppressor gene)

Epidemiology

- incidence 1:3,000

Investigations

- Wood's lamp examination to detect café-au-lait macules in patients with pale skin

Management

- refer to orthopedics, ophthalmology, plastics, and psychology for relevant management
- follow-up annually for brain tumors such as astrocytoma
- excise suspicious or painful lesions
- see [Pediatrics, P88](#)



Infections



Bacterial Infections

EPIDERMIS

IMPETIGO



Clinical Presentation

- acute purulent infection which appears micro-pustular; progresses to golden yellow “honey-crusted” lesions surrounded by erythema
- can present with bullae
- common sites: face, arms, legs, and buttocks



Etiology

- GAS, *S.aureus*, or both

Epidemiology

- preschool and young adults living in crowded conditions, poor hygiene, neglected minor trauma

Differential Diagnosis

- infected eczema, HSV, VZV

Investigations

- Gram stain and culture of lesion fluid or biopsy

Management

- remove crusts, use saline compresses and topical antiseptic soaks bid
- topical antibacterials such as 2% mupirocin or fusidic acid (Canada only) tid; continue for 7-10 d after resolution
- systemic antibiotics such as cloxacillin or cephalexin for 7-10 d

DERMIS

Table 14. Comparison of Erysipelas and Cellulitis

	Clinical Presentation	Etiology	Complications	Differential Diagnosis	Investigations	Management
Erysipelas	Involves upper dermis Confluent, erythematous, sharp raised edge, warm plaque, well demarcated Very painful (“St. Anthony’s fire”) Sites: face and legs Systemic symptoms: fever, chills, headache, weakness (if present, sign of more serious infection)	GAS	Scarlet fever, streptococcal gangrene, fat necrosis, coagulopathy Spreads via lymphatics	DVT (less red, less hot, smoother), superficial phlebitis, contact dermatitis, photosensitivity reaction, stasis dermatitis, panniculitis, vasculitis	Clinical diagnosis: rarely do skin/blood culture If suspect necrotizing fasciitis: do immediate biopsy and frozen section, histopathology	1st line: penicillin, cloxacillin or cefazolin 2nd line: clindamycin or cephalexin If allergic to penicillin, use erythromycin
Cellulitis	Involves lower dermis/subcutaneous fat Unilateral erythematous flat lesion, often with vesicles poorly demarcated, not uniformly raised Tender and warm to touch Sites: commonly on legs Systemic symptoms (uncommon): fever, leukocytosis, lymphadenopathy	GAS, <i>S. aureus</i> (large sized wounds), <i>H. influenzae</i> (periocular), <i>Pasteurella multocida</i> (dog/cat bite)	Uncommon	Same as erysipelas	Same as erysipelas	1st line: cloxacillin or cefazolin/cephalexin 2nd line: erythromycin or clindamycin Children: cefuroxime If DM (foot infections): TMP/SMX and metronidazole

COMMON HAIR FOLLICLE INFECTIONS

Table 15. Comparison of Superficial Folliculitis, Furuncles, and Carbuncles

	Clinical Presentation	Etiology	Management
Superficial Folliculitis	Superficial infection of the hair follicle (vs. pseudofolliculitis: inflammation of follicle due to friction, irritation, or occlusion or ingrowing hair) Acute lesion consists of a dome-shaped pustule at the mouth of hair follicle Pustule ruptures to form a small crust Sites: primarily scalp, shoulders, anterior chest, upper back, other hair-bearing areas	Normal non-pathogenic bacteria (<i>Staphylococcus</i> – most common; <i>Pseudomonas</i> – hot tub) <i>Pityrosporum</i>	Antiseptic (Hibiclens®) Topical antibacterial (fusidic acid, mupirocin, or erythromycin) Oral cloxacillin for 7-10 d
Furuncles (Boils)	Red, hot, tender, inflammatory nodules with central yellowish point, which forms over summit and ruptures Involves subcutaneous tissue that arises from a hair follicle Sites: hair-bearing skin (thigh, neck, face, axillae, perineum, buttocks)	<i>S. aureus</i>	Incise and drain large furuncles to relieve pressure and pain If afebrile: hot wet packs, topical antibiotic If febrile/cellulitis: culture blood and aspirate pustules (Gram stain and C&S) Cloxacillin for 1-2 wk (especially for lesions near external auditory canal/nose, with surrounding cellulitis, and not responsive to topical therapy)
Carbuncles	Deep-seated abscess formed by multiple coalescing furuncles Usually in areas of thicker skin Occasionally ulcerates Lesions drain through multiple openings to the surface Systemic symptoms may be associated	<i>S. aureus</i>	Same as for furuncles

Dermatophytoses



Clinical Presentation

- infection of skin, hair and nails caused by dermatophytes (fungi that live within the epidermal keratin or hair follicle and do not penetrate into deeper structures)

Pathophysiology

- digestion of keratin by dermatophytes results in scaly skin, broken hairs, crumbling nails/onycholysis

Etiology

- Trichophyton*, *Microsporum*, *Epidermophyton* species (*Pityrosporum* is a superficial yeast and not a dermatophyte)

Investigations

- skin scrapings, hair, and/or nail clippings analyzed with potassium hydroxide (KOH) prep to look for hyphae and mycelia Nails can also be sent to pathology for PAS staining

Management

- topicals as first line agents for tinea corporis/cruris and tinea pedis (interdigital type): clotrimazole, or terbinafine or ciclopirox olamine cream applied bid
- oral therapy is often indicated for onychomycosis or tinea capitis although ciclopirox nail lacquer bid x 6 mo is an option in those unable to take oral:
 - e.g. terbinafine (Lamisil® – liver toxicity, CYP2D6 inhibitor) or itraconazole (Sporanox® – CYP3A4 inhibitor, liver toxicity, CHF)

Table 16. Different Manifestations of Dermatophyte Infection

	Clinical Presentation	Differential Diagnosis	Investigations	Management
Tinea Capitis	Round, scaly patches of alopecia, possibly with broken off hairs; pruritic Sites: scalp, eyelashes, and eyebrows; involving hair shafts and follicles Kerion (boggy, elevated, purulent inflamed nodule/plaque) may form secondary to infection by bacteria and result in scarring May have occipital lymphadenopathy Affects children (mainly African American), immunocompromised adults Very contagious and may be transmitted from barber, hats, theatre seats, pets commonly amongst multiple family members	Alopecia areata, psoriasis, seborrheic dermatitis, trichotillomania, dissecting cellulitis of the scalp, acne keloidalis nuchae	Wood's light examination of hair: green fluorescence only for <i>Microsporum</i> infection Culture of scales/hair shaft Microscopic examination of KOH preparation of scales or hair shafts	Griseofulvin most common in US Terbinafine (Lamisil®) x 4 wk NB: oral agents are required to penetrate the hair root where dermatophyte resides Adjunctive antifungal shampoos or lotions may be helpful, and may prevent spread (e.g. selenium sulfide, ketoconazole, ciclopirox)
Tinea Corporis (Ringworm)	Pruritic, scaly, round/oval plaque with active erythematous margin and central clearing. Scale often more prominent at outer rim Site: trunk, limbs, face	Nummular dermatitis, granuloma annulare, pityriasis rosea, psoriasis, seborrheic dermatitis, SCLÉ	Microscopic examinations of KOH prep of scales shows hyphae Culture of scales	Topicals: 1% clotrimazole, 2% ketoconazole 2% miconazole, terbinafine or ciclopirox olamine cream bid for 2-4 wk Oral terbinafine, or itraconazole, or fluconazole, or ketoconazole if extensive

Table 16. Different Manifestations of Dermatophyte Infection (continued)

	Clinical Presentation	Differential Diagnosis	Investigations	Management
Tinea Cruris (“Jock Itch”)	Scaly patch/plaque with a well-defined, curved border and central clearing Pruritic, erythematous, dry/macerated Site: medial thigh	Candidiasis (involvement of scrotum and satellite lesions), contact dermatitis, erythrasma, inverse psoriasis, seborrheic dermatitis	Same as for tinea corporis	Same as for tinea corporis
Tinea Pedis (Athlete’s Foot)	Pruritic scaling and/or maceration of the web spaces and powdery scaling of soles Acute infection: interdigital (esp. 4th web space) red/white scales, vesicles, bullae, often with maceration Secondary bacterial infection may occur Chronic: non-pruritic, pink, scaling keratosis on soles and sides of feet May present as flare-up of chronic tinea pedis Predisposing factors: heat, humidity, occlusive footwear	Atopic dermatitis, contact dermatitis, dyshidrotic dermatitis, erythrasma, , palmoplantar psoriasis If only between 4th and 5th toes soft corn	Same as for tinea corporis	Same as for tinea corporis
Tinea Mannum	Primary fungal infection of the hand is rare; usually associated with tinea pedis Acute: blisters at edge of red areas on hands Chronic: single dry scaly patch	AD, contact dermatitis, granuloma annulare, psoriasis	Same as for tinea corporis	Same as for tinea corporis
Tinea Unguium (Onychomycosis)	Crumbling, distally dystrophic nails; yellowish, opaque with subungual hyperkeratotic debris Toenail infections usually precede fingernail infections <i>T. rubrum</i> (90% of all toenail infections)	Psoriasis, lichen planus, contact dermatitis, traumatic onychodystrophies, bacterial infections, chronic candidal infection	Microscopic examinations of KOH prep of scales from subungual scraping shows hyphae Culture of subungual scraping or nail clippings on Sabouraud’s agar PAS stain of nail clipping by pathology	Terbinafine (Lamisil®) (6 wk for fingernails, 12 wk for toenails) Itraconazole (Sporanox®) 7 d on, 3 wk off (2 pulses for fingernails, 3 pulses for toenails) Topical: ciclopirox (Penlac®); nail laquer (often ineffective)

Parasitic Infections



SCABIES



Clinical Presentation

- characterized by superficial burrows, intense pruritus (especially nocturnal), and secondary infection
- primary lesion: superficial linear burrows; inflammatory papules and nodules. Most common sites: finger webs, periumbilical and groin
- secondary lesion: small crusted papules, eczematous plaques, excoriations
- common sites: axillae, groin, buttocks, hands/feet (especially web spaces), sparing of head and neck (except in infants)

Pathophysiology

- scabies mite remains alive 2-3 d on clothing/sheets, however eggs can take 7 days to hatch
- incubation of 1 mo, then pruritus begins
- re-infection followed by hypersensitivity in 24 h

Etiology

- *Sarcoptes scabiei* (a mite)
- risk factors: sexual promiscuity, crowding, poverty, nosocomial, immunocompromised

Differential Diagnosis

- asteatotic eczema, dermatitis herpetiformis, lichen simplex chronicus (neurodermatitis)

Investigations

- microscopic examination of root and content of burrow and mineral oil mount for mite, eggs, feces
- skin biopsy may sometimes show scabies mite

Management

- bathe, then apply permethrin 5% cream (i.e. Nix®) from neck down to soles of feet (must be left on for 8-14 h and requires second treatment as it is not ovicidal)
- in pregnancy permethrin is not used due to neurotoxicity. Instead topical sulfur is considered safe
- change underwear and linens; wash twice with detergent in hot water cycle then machine dry
- treat family and close contacts
- pruritus may persist for 2 months after effective treatment due to prolonged hypersensitivity reaction
- mid potency topical steroids and antihistamines for symptom management

LICE (PEDICULOSIS)

Clinical Presentation

- intensely pruritic red excoriations, morbilliform rash, caused by louse (a parasite)
- scalp lice: nits (i.e. louse eggs) on hairs; red, excoriated skin with secondary bacterial infection, lymphadenopathy
- pubic lice: nits on hairs; excoriations
- body lice: nits and lice in seams of clothing; excoriations and secondary infection mainly on shoulders, belt-line and buttocks

Etiology

- *Phthirus pubis* (pubic), *Pediculus humanus capitis* (scalp), *Pediculus humanus humanus* (body): attaches to body hair and feeds
- can transmit infectious agents such as *Bartonella quintana* and *Rickettsia prowazekii*

Differential Diagnosis

- on scalp: bacterial infection of scalp, seborrheic dermatitis, on body: scabies

Diagnosis

- lice visible on inspection of affected area or clothing seams

Management

- permethrin 1% (Nix® cream rinse) (ovicidal) or permethrin 1% (RC & Cor®, Kwellada-P® shampoo)
- comb hair with fine-toothed comb using dilute vinegar solution to remove nits
- repeat in 7 d after first treatment
- shave hair if feasible, change clothing and linens; wash with detergent in hot water cycle then machine dry
- treat sexual contacts in case of pubic lice

BED BUGS (HEMIPTERA)

Clinical Presentation

- burning wheals, turning to firm papules, often in groups of three – “breakfast, lunch and dinner” – in areas with easy access (face, neck, arms, legs, hands)

Etiology

- caused by *Cimex lectularius*, a small insect that feeds mainly at night (hide in crevices in walls and furniture during the day)

Differential Diagnosis

- dermatitis herpetiformis, drug eruptions, ecthyma, other insect bites, scabies

Investigations

- none required, but lesional biopsy can confirm insect bite reaction

Management

- professional fumigation
- topical steroids and oral H1-antagonists for symptomatic relief
- definitive treatment is removal of clutter in home and application of insecticides to walls and furniture

Viral Infections



HERPES SIMPLEX



Clinical Presentation

- herpetiform (i.e. grouped) vesicles on an erythematous base on skin or mucous membranes
- transmitted via contact with erupted vesicles or via asymptomatic viral shedding
- **primary**
 - children and young adults
 - usually asymptomatic; may have high fever, regional lymphadenopathy, malaise
 - followed by antibody formation and latency of virus in dorsal nerve root ganglion
- **secondary**
 - recurrent form seen in adults; much more common than primary
 - prodrome: tingling, pruritus, pain
 - triggers for recurrence: fever, excess sun exposure, physical trauma, menstruation, emotional stress, URTI
- **potential complications**
 - dendritic corneal ulcer
 - Erythema Multiforme
 - herpes simplex encephalitis (infants at risk)

- HSV infection on atopic dermatitis causing Kaposi's varicelliform eruption (eczema herpeticum)
- two biologically and immunologically different subtypes: HSV-1 and HSV-2

Investigations

- Tzanck smear with Giemsa stain shows multinucleated giant epithelial cells most common investigation although diagnosis is usually clinical
- viral culture, electron microscopy, and direct fluorescence antibody test of specimen taken from the base of a relatively new lesion
- serologic testing for antibody for current or past infection if necessary rarely performed as expensive, and high prevalence of positives

HSV-1

- typically "cold sores" (grouped vesicles at the mucocutaneous junction which quickly burst)
- recurrent on face, lips and hard palate, but NOT on soft, non-keratinized mucous membranes (unlike aphthous ulcers)

Management

- treat during prodrome to prevent vesicle formation
- topical antiviral (Zovirax®) cream, apply 5-6x/d x 4-7 d for facial/genital lesions
- oral antivirals (e.g. acyclovir, famciclovir, valacyclovir) are far more effective and have an easier dosing schedule, can be used at first sign of prodrome or if frequent outbreaks as prophylactic suppression

HSV-2

- sexually transmitted; incubation 2-20 d
- gingivostomatitis: entire buccal mucosa involved with erythema and edema of gingiva
- vulvovaginitis: edematous, erythematous, extremely tender, profuse vaginal discharge
- urethritis: watery discharge in males
- recurrent on vulva, vagina, penis for 5-7 d
- ddx of genital ulcers: *Candida* balanitis, chancroid, syphilitic chancres

Management

- rupture vesicle with sterile needle if you wish to culture it
- wet dressing with aluminum subacetate solution, Burow's compression, or betadine solution
- 1st episode: acyclovir 200 mg PO 5 times a day x 10 d
 - maintenance: acyclovir 400 mg PO bid
- famciclovir and valacyclovir may be substituted and have better enteric absorption and less frequent dosing
- in case of herpes genitalis, look for and treat any other sexually-transmitted infections
- for active lesions in pregnancy, see [Obstetrics, OB20](#)

HERPES ZOSTER (SHINGLES)

Clinical Presentation

- unilateral dermatomal eruption occurring 3-5 d after pain and paresthesia of that dermatome; may be disseminated in immunosuppressed (eg HIV, organ transplant)
- vesicles, bullae, and pustules on an erythematous, edematous base
- lesions may become eroded/ulcerated and last days to weeks
- pain is can be pre-herpetic, synchronous with rash, or post-herpetic
- severe post-herpetic neuralgia often occurs in elderly and may be permanent
- Hutchinson's sign: involvement of tip of nose suggests eye involvement
- distribution: thoracic (50%), trigeminal (10-20%), cervical (10-20%); disseminated in HIV

Etiology

- caused by reactivation of VZV
- risk factors: immunosuppression, old age, occasionally associated with hematologic malignancy, stress

Differential Diagnosis

- before thoracic skin lesions occur, must consider other causes of chest pain
- contact dermatitis, localized bacterial infection, zosteriform HSV (more pathogenic for the eyes than VZV)

Investigations

- none required, but can do Tzanck test, direct fluorescence antibody test, or viral culture to rule out HSV

Management

- compress with normal saline, Burow's, or betadine solution
- analgesics (NSAIDs, amitriptyline)
- famciclovir or valacyclovir or acyclovir for 7 d; must initiate within 72 h to be of benefit; IV acyclovir for ophthalmic or disseminated involvement
- gabapentin 300-600 mg PO tid for post-herpetic neuralgia



Both HSV-1 and HSV-2 can occur on face or genitalia



Herpes zoster typically involves a single dermatome; lesions rarely cross the midline

MOLLUSCUM CONTAGIOSUM



Clinical Presentation

- discrete dome-shaped and umbilicated pearly, white papules caused by DNA Pox virus (*Molluscum contagiosum* virus); giant verrucous forms in advanced HIV
- common sites: eyelids, beard (likely spread by shaving), neck, axillae, trunk, perineum, buttocks

Etiology

- virus is spread via direct contact, auto-inoculation, sexual contact
- common in children and sexually active young adults (giant molluscum and severe cases can be seen in the setting of HIV)

Investigations

- none required, however can biopsy to confirm diagnosis

Management

- topical cantharidin (a vesicant)
- cryotherapy
- curettage
- topical retinoids
- Aldara® (imiquimod): immune modulator that produces a cytokine inflammation

WARTS (VERRUCA VULGARIS) (HUMAN PAPILLOMAVIRUS INFECTIONS)

Table 17. Different Manifestations of HPV Infection

	Definition and Clinical Features	Differential Diagnosis	Distribution	HPV Type
Verruca Vulgaris (Common Warts)	Hyperkeratotic, elevated discrete epithelial growths with papillated surface caused by HPV Paring or dermoscopic exam of surface reveals punctate, red-brown specks (thrombosed capillaries)	Molluscum contagiosum, seborrheic keratosis, SCC	Located at trauma sites: fingers, hands, knees of children and teens	At least 80 types are known
Verruca Plantaris (Plantar Warts) and Verruca Palmaris (Palmar Warts)	Hyperkeratotic, shiny, sharply margined growths Paring of surface reveals red-brown specks (capillaries), interruption of epidermal ridges	May need to scrape ("pare") lesions to differentiate wart from callus and corn (see sidebar, D7)	Located at pressure sites: metatarsal heads, heels, toes	Commonly HPV 1, 2, 4, 10
Verruca Planae (Flat Warts)	Multiple discrete, skin colored, flat topped papules grouped or in linear configuration Common in children	Syringoma, seborrheic keratosis, molluscum contagiosum, lichen planus	Sites: face, dorsa of hands, shins, knees	Commonly HPV 3, 10
Condyloma Acuminata (Genital Warts)	Skin-colored pinhead papules to soft cauliflower like masses in clusters Often occurs in young adults, infants, children Can be asymptomatic, lasting months to years Highly contagious, transmitted sexually and non-sexually (e.g. Koebner phenomenon via scratching, shaving), and can spread without clinically apparent lesions Investigations: acetowhiteness (subclinical lesions seen with 5% acetic acid x 5 min and hand lens) Complications: fairy-ring warts (satellite warts at periphery of treated area of original warts)	Condyloma lata (secondary syphilitic lesion, dark field strongly +ve), Molluscum contagiosum, SCC	Sites: genitalia and perianal areas	Commonly HPV 6 and 11 HPV 16, 18, 31, 33 cause cervical dysplasia, SCC and invasive cancer

- other viruses associated with skin changes, such as measles, roseola, fifth disease, etc.
- see [Pediatrics, P57](#)



Yeast Infections

CANDIDIASIS

Etiology

- many species of *Candida* (70-80% of infections are from *Candida albicans*)
- opportunistic infection in those with predisposing factors (e.g. trauma, malnutrition, immunodeficiency)

Candidal Paronychia

- painful red swellings of periungual skin
- management: topical agents not as effective; oral antifungals recommended

Candidal Intertrigo

- macerated/eroded erythematous patches that may be covered with papules and pustules, located in intertriginous areas often under breast, groin, or interdigitally
- peripheral "satellite" pustules



Treatment for Warts

- First line Therapies:** salicylic acid preparations (patches, solutions, creams, ointments), cryotherapy, topical cantharone
- Second Line Therapies:** topical imiquimod, topical 5-fluorouracil, topical tretinoin, podophyllotoxin
- Third Line Therapies:** curettage, cautery, surgery for non plantar warts, CO₂ laser, oral cimetidine (particularly children), intralesional bleomycin (plantar warts), trichloroacetic acid, diphencyprone

- predisposing factors: obesity, DM, systemic antibiotics, immunosuppression, malignancy
- starts as non-infectious maceration from heat, moisture and friction
- management: keep area dry, terbinafine, ciclopirox olamine, ketoconazole/clotrimazole cream bid until rash clears

PITYRIASIS (TINEA) VERSICOLOR



Clinical Presentation

- asymptomatic superficial fungal infection with finely scaling macules of various colors. In caucasian skin often red-brown to light brown, in darker skin tones often light brown to pale (thus versicolor)
- In Caucasians affected skin darker than surrounding skin in winter, lighter in summer (does not tan)
- common sites: upper chest and back

Pathophysiology

- microbe produces carboxylic acid → inflammatory reaction inhibiting melanin synthesis yielding variable pigmentation
- affinity for sebaceous glands; require fatty acids to survive

Etiology

- *Pityrosporum ovale* (*Malassezia furfur*)
- also associated with folliculitis and seborrheic dermatitis
- predisposing factors: summer, tropical climates, excessive sweating, Cushing's syndrome, prolonged corticosteroid use

Investigations

- clinical diagnosis but can perform microscopic examination, KOH prep of scales for hyphae and spores

Management

- ketoconazole shampoo or cream daily
- topical terbinafine or ciclopirox olamine bid
- systemic fluconazole or itraconazole for 7 d if extensive



Oral Terbinafine (Lamisil®) is not effective because it is not secreted by sweat glands



Natural History of Untreated Syphilis

- Inoculation
- Primary syphilis (10-90 d after infection)
- Secondary syphilis (simultaneous to primary syphilis or up to 6 mo after healing of primary lesion)
- Latent syphilis
- Tertiary syphilis (2-20 yr)



Latent Syphilis

70% of untreated patients will remain in this stage for the rest of their lives and are immune to new primary infection

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

SYPHILIS

Clinical Presentation

- characterized initially by a painless ulcer (chancere)
- following inoculation, systemic infection with secondary and tertiary stages

Etiology

- *Treponema pallidum*
- transmitted sexually, congenitally, or rarely by transfusion

Table 18. Stages of Syphilis

	Clinical Presentation	Investigations	Management
Primary Syphilis	Single red, indurated, painless chancre, that develops into painless ulcer with raised border and scanty serous exudate Chancre develops at site of inoculation after 3 wk of incubation and heals in 4-6 wk; chancre may also develop on lips or anus Regional non-tender lymphadenopathy appears <1 wk after onset of chancre DDx: chancroid (painful), HSV (multiple lesions)	CANNOT be based on clinical presentation alone VDRL negative – repeat weekly for 1 mo Fluorescent treponemal antibody-syphilis (FTA-ABS) test has greater sensitivity and may detect disease earlier in course Dark field examination – spirochete in chancre fluid or lymph node aspirate	Penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, single dose Notify public health authorities
Secondary Syphilis	Presents 2-6 mo after primary infection (patient may not recall presence of primary chancre) Associated with generalized lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, headache, chills, fever, arthralgias, myalgias, malaise, photophobia Lesions heal in 1-5 wk and may recur for 1 yr 3 types of lesions 1. Macules and papules: flat top, scaling, non-pruritic, sharply defined, circular/annular rash (DDx: pityriasis rosea, guttate psoriasis, tinea corporis, drug eruptions, lichen planus) 2. Condyloma lata: wart-like moist papules around genital/perianal region 3. Mucous patches: macerated patches mainly found in oral mucosa	VDRL positive FTA-ABS +ve; –ve after 1 yr following appearance of chancre Dark field +ve in all secondary	As for primary syphilis
Tertiary Syphilis	Extremely rare 3-7 yr after secondary Main skin lesion: 'Gumma' – a granulomatous non-tender nodule	As in primary syphilis, VDRL can be falsely negative	Treatment: penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM weekly x 3 wk Notify public health authorities

GONOCOCCEMIA**Clinical Presentation**

- disseminated gonococcal infection
- hemorrhagic, tender, pustules on a purpuric/petechial background
- common sites: distal aspects of extremities
- associated with fever, arthritis, urethritis, proctitis, pharyngitis, and tenosynovitis
- neonatal conjunctivitis if infected via birth canal

Etiology

- *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*

Investigations

- requires high index of clinical suspicion plays because tests are often negative
- bacterial culture of blood, joint fluid, and skin lesions
- joint fluid cell count and Gram stain

Management

- notify Public Health authorities
- screen for other STDs
- cefixime 400 mg PO (drug of choice) or ceftriaxone 125 mg IM

HSV

- see *Viral Infections*, D27

HPV

- see *Viral Infections*, D29

Pre-Malignant Skin Conditions

Actinic Keratosis (Solar Keratosis)

Clinical Presentation

- ill-defined, scaly erythematous papules or plaques on a background of sun-damaged skin (solar heliosis)
- sandpaper-like, gritty sensation felt on palpation, often easier to appreciate on palpation rather than inspection
- sites: areas of sun exposure (face, ears, scalp if bald, neck, sun-exposed limbs)

Pathophysiology

- UV radiation damage to keratinocytes from repeated sun exposure (especially UVB)
- risk of transformation of AK to SCC (~1/1,000), but higher likelihood if AK is persistent

Epidemiology

- common with increasing age, outdoor occupation, M>F
- skin phototypes I-III, rare in darker skin as melanin is protective

Differential Diagnosis

- SCC *in situ*, superficial BCC, seborrheic keratosis, cutaneous lupus erythematosus

Investigations

- biopsy lesions that are refractory to treatment

Management

- destructive: cryotherapy, electrodesiccation and curettage
- pharmacotherapy: 5-fluorouracil cream for 2-3 wk, imiquimod cream for 8-10 wk, photodynamic therapy
- excision

**Types of AK**

- Erythematous: typical AK lesion
- Hypertrophic: thicker, rough papule/plaque
- Cutaneous horn: firm hyperkeratotic outgrowth
- Actinic cheilitis: confluent AKs on the lip
- Pigmented: flat, tan-brown, scaly plaque
- Spreading pigmented
- Proliferative
- Conjunctival: pinguecula, pterygium

Leukoplakia

Clinical Presentation

- a morphologic term describing homogenous or speckled white plaques with sharply demarcated borders
- sites: oropharynx, most often floor of the mouth, soft palate, and ventral/lateral surfaces of the tongue

Pathophysiology

- precancerous or premalignant condition
- oral form is strongly associated with tobacco use and alcohol consumption, although also occurs in congenital disease eg dyskeratosis congenita

Epidemiology

- 1-5% prevalence in adult population after 30 yr of age; peak at age 50
- M>F, fair-skinned
- most common oral mucosal premalignant lesion

Differential Diagnosis

- lichen planus, oral hairy leukoplakia, mild oral candidiasis

Investigations

- biopsy is mandatory because it is premalignant

Management

- low risk sites on buccal/labial mucosal or hard palate: eliminate carcinogenic habits, follow-up
- moderate/dysplastic lesions: excision, cryotherapy

Malignant Skin Tumors



Non-Melanoma Skin Cancers



BASAL CELL CARCINOMA

Subtypes

- noduloulcerative (typical)
 - skin-colored papule/nodule with rolled, translucent (“pearly”) telangiectatic border and depressed/eroded/ulcerated center
- pigmented variant
 - flecks of pigment in translucent lesion with surface telangiectasia
 - may mimic malignant melanoma or seborrheic keratosis clinically
- superficial variant
 - flat, tan to red-brown plaque, often with scaly, pearly border and fine telangiectasia at margin
 - least aggressive subtype
- sclerosing (morpheaform) variant
 - flesh/yellowish-colored, shiny papule/plaque with indistinct borders, indurated

Pathophysiology

- malignant proliferation of basal keratinocytes of the epidermis
 - low grade cutaneous malignancy, locally aggressive (primarily tangential growth), rarely metastatic
 - usually due to UVB light exposure, therefore >80% on face
 - may also occur in previous scars, radiation, trauma, arsenic exposure, or genetic predisposition (Gorlin syndrome)

Epidemiology

- most common malignancy in humans
- 75% of all malignant skin tumors >40 yr, increased prevalence in the elderly
- M>F, skin phototypes I and II, chronic cumulative sun exposure

Differential Diagnosis

- benign: sebaceous hyperplasia, intradermal melanocytic nevus, dermatofibroma
- malignant: nodular MM, SCC

Management

- imiquimod 5% cream (Aldara®), 5-Fluorouracil (efudex) or cryotherapy is indicated for superficial BCCs on the trunk smaller than 2 cm



Workup/Investigations of BCC and Other NMSCs

- **History:** duration, growth rate, family/personal hx of skin cancer, prior therapy to the particular lesion
- **Physical:** location, size, whether circumscribed, tethering to deep structures, full skin exam, lymph node exam
- **Biopsy:** if shallow lesion, can do shave biopsy; otherwise punch or excisional biopsy may be more appropriate



Surgical Margins

- **Smaller Lesions:** electrodesiccation and curettage with 2-3 mm margin of normal skin
- **Deep Infiltrative Lesions:** surgical excision with 3-5 mm margins beyond visible and palpable tumor border, which may require skin graft or flap; or Mohs surgery, which conserves tissue and does not require margin control

- excision or electrodesiccation and curettage for most types of BCCs < 2 cm and not on face, not including morpheaform
- Mohs surgery: microscopically controlled, minimally invasive, stepwise excision for lesions on the face or in areas that are difficult to reconstruct or recurrent lesions
- radiotherapy used in advanced cases of BCC where surgical intervention is not an option
- life-long follow-up
- 95% cure rate if lesion <2 cm in diameter or if treated early
- vismodegib for metastatic disease

SQUAMOUS CELL CARCINOMA

Clinical Presentation

- indurated erythematous nodule/plaque with surface scale/crust \pm ulceration
- more rapid enlargement than BCC
- sites: face, ears, scalp, forearms, dorsum of hands

Pathophysiology

- malignant neoplasm of keratinocytes (primarily vertical growth)
- predisposing factors include: UV radiation, PUVA, ionizing radiation therapy/exposure, chemical carcinogens (such as arsenic, tar and nitrogen mustards), HPV 16, 18, immunosuppression
- may occur in previous scar (SCC more commonly than BCC)

Epidemiology

- second most common type of cutaneous neoplasm
- primarily on sun-exposed skin in the elderly, M>F, skin phototypes I and II, chronic sun exposure
- in organ transplant recipients SCC is most common cutaneous malignancy, with increased mortality as compared to non-immunocompromised population

Differential Diagnosis

- benign: nummular eczema, psoriasis, irritated seborrheic keratosis, wart
- malignant: keratoacanthoma, Bowen's disease, BCC

Management

- surgical excision with primary closure, skin flaps or grafting
- Mohs surgery
- lifelong follow-up (more aggressive treatment than BCC)

Prognosis

- good prognostic factors: early treatment, negative margins, and small size of lesion
- SCCs that arise from AK metastasize less frequently (~1%) than other SCCs arising de novo in old burns (2-5% of cases)
- overall control is 75% over 5 yr, 5-10% metastasize

OTHER FORMS OF SQUAMOUS CELL CARCINOMA (SCC)

BOWEN'S DISEASE (SQUAMOUS CELL CARCINOMA *IN SITU*)

Clinical Presentation

- sharply demarcated erythematous plaque with scale and/or crusting
- often 1-3 cm in diameter and found on the skin and mucous membranes
- evolves to SCC in 10-20% of cutaneous lesions and >20% of mucosal lesions

Management

- same as for BCC
- biopsy required for diagnosis
- topical 5-fluorouracil (Efudex®) or imiquimod (Aldara®) used if extensive and as a tool to identify margins of poorly defined tumors
- cryosurgery
- shave excision with electrodesiccation and curettage

KERATOACANTHOMA

Clinical Presentation

- rapidly growing, firm, dome-shaped, erythematous or skin-colored nodule with central keratin-filled crater, resembling an erupting volcano
- may spontaneously regress within a year, leaving a scar
- sites: sun-exposed skin

Pathophysiology

- epithelial neoplasm with atypical keratinocytes in epidermis
- low grade variant of SCC

Etiology

- HPV, UV radiation, chemical carcinogens (tar, mineral oil)

Epidemiology

- >50 yr, rare <20 yr

Differential Diagnosis

- treat as SCC until proven otherwise
- hypertrophic solar keratosis, verruca vulgaris

Management

- surgical excision or saucerization (shave biopsy) followed by electrodesiccation of the base, treated similarly to SCC

Malignant Melanoma

**Clinical Presentation**

- malignant characteristics of a mole: “ABCDE” mnemonic
- sites: skin, mucous membranes, eyes, CNS

Clinical Subtypes of Malignant Melanoma

- **lentigo maligna**
 - malignant melanoma *in situ* (normal and malignant melanocytes confined to the epidermis)
 - 2-6 cm, tan/brown/black uniformly flat macule or patch with irregular borders
 - lesion grows radially and produces complex colors
 - often seen in the elderly
 - 10% evolve to lentigo maligna melanoma
- **lentigo maligna melanoma** (15% of all melanomas)
 - malignant melanocytes invading into the dermis
 - associated with pre-existing solar lentigo, not pre-existing nevi
 - flat, brown, stain-like, gradually enlarging with loss of skin surface markings
 - with time, color changes from uniform brown to dark brown with black and blue
 - found on all skin surfaces, especially those often exposed to sun, such as the face and hands
- **superficial spreading melanoma** (60-70% of all melanomas)
 - atypical melanocytes initially spread laterally in epidermis then invade the dermis
 - irregular, indurated, enlarging plaques with red/white/blue discoloration, focal papules or nodules
 - ulcerate and bleed with growth
- **nodular melanoma** (30% of all melanomas)
 - atypical melanocytes that initially grow vertically with little lateral spread
 - uniformly ulcerated, blue-black, and sharply delineated plaque or nodule
 - rapidly fatal
 - may be pink or have no color at all, this is called an amelanotic melanoma
 - “EFG” Elevated, Firm, Growing
- **acrolentiginous melanoma** (5% of all melanomas)
 - ill-defined dark brown, blue-black macule
 - palmar, plantar, subungual skin
 - melanomas on mucous membranes have poor prognosis

Pathophysiology

- malignant neoplasm of pigment forming cells (melanocytes and nevus cells)

Epidemiology

- incidence 1/75 (Canada) 1/50 (US)
- risk factors: numerous moles, fair skin, red hair, positive personal/family history, large congenital nevi, familial dysplastic nevus syndrome, multiple dysplastic nevi
- most common sites: back (M), calves (F)
- worse prognosis if: male, on scalp, hands, feet, late lesion, no pre-existing nevus present

Differential Diagnosis

- benign: nevi, solar lentigo, seborrheic keratosis
- malignant: pigmented BCC

**Does this Patient have a Mole or Melanoma?****ABCDE checklist****Asymmetry****Border** (irregular and/or indistinct)**Color** (varied)**Diameter** (increasing or >6 mm)**Enlargement, elevation, evolution** (i.e. change in color, size, or shape)

Sensitivity 92% (CI 82-96%)

Specificity 100% (CI 54-100%)

JAMA 1998;279:696-701

**Risk Factors for Melanoma****no SPF is a SIN****Sun exposure****Pigment traits** (blue eyes, fair/red hair, pale complexion)**Freckling****Skin reaction to sunlight** (increased incidence of sunburn)**Immunosuppressive states** (e.g. renal transplantation)**Nevi** (dysplastic nevi; increased number of benign melanocytic nevi)

Management

- excisional biopsy preferable, otherwise incisional biopsy as staged by depth so shave will not be adequate
- remove full depth of dermis and extend beyond edges of lesion only after histologic diagnosis, except for small lesions (removed entirely at biopsy and additional incisional biopsy if positive)
- beware of lesions that regress – tumour is usually deeper than anticipated
- high dose IFN for stage II (regional), chemotherapy (cis-platinum, BCG) and high dose IFN for stage III (distant) disease
- newer chemotherapeutic, gene therapies and vaccines starting to be used in metastatic melanoma
- radiotherapy may be used as adjunctive treatment



Node Dissection for Lesions

>1 mm thick OR <1 mm and ulcerated
OR >1 mitoses/mm² (Stage IB or higher melanoma patients should be offered a sentinel lymph node biopsy)

- Assess sentinel node at time of wide excision

Table 19. American Joint Committee on Cancer Staging System Based on Breslow's Thickness of Invasion

Tumor Depth	Stage	Approximate 5 Year Survival
T1 <1.0 mm	Stage I T1a – T2a	5 yr survival 90%
T2 1.01-2.0 mm	Stage II T2b – T4b	5 yr survival 70%
T3 2.01-4.0 mm	Stage III any nodes	5 yr survival 45%
T4 >4.0 mm	Stage IV any mets	5 yr survival 10%

a = no ulceration; b = ulceration

Other Cutaneous Cancers

CUTANEOUS T-CELL LYMPHOMA

Clinical Presentation

- **Mycosis fungoides** (limited superficial type)
 - characterized by erythematous patches/plaques/nodules/tumors, which may be pruritic and poikilodermic (atrophy, telangiectasia, hyperpigmentation)
 - common sites include: trunk, buttocks, proximal limbs
 - mildly symptomatic, usually excellent prognosis for early disease
- **Sézary syndrome** (widespread systemic type)
 - rare variant characterized by erythroderma, lymphadenopathy, WBC >20 x 10⁹/L with Sézary cells
 - associated with intense pruritus, alopecia, palmoplantar hyperkeratosis, and systemic symptoms (fatigue, fever)
 - often fatal

Pathophysiology

- clonal proliferation of skin-homing CD4 T-cells

Epidemiology

- >50 yr old, M:F 2:1

Differential Diagnosis

- tinea corporis, nummular dermatitis, psoriasis, DLE, Bowen's disease

Investigations

- skin biopsy (histology, "lymphocyte antigen cell" markers, TcR gene arrangement), epidermotropism, atypical lymphocytes and loss of CD5 and CD7 markers
- blood smear looking for Sézary cells or flow cytometry (e.g. CD4:CD8 >10 is Sézary)
- imaging (for systemic involvement)

Management

- **Mycosis fungoides**
 - treatment is dependent on stage of disease
 - for patch stage: topical steroids and/or PUVA, narrow band (311-313 nm), UVB (NBUVB)
 - plaque stage: steroids, topical nitrogen mustard, bexarotene, IFN, chemotherapeutic agent)
- **Sézary syndrome**
 - oral retinoids and IFN
 - extra-corporeal photophoresis
 - may need radiotherapy for total skin electron beam radiation
 - may maintain on UV therapy
 - other chemotherapy agents

Alopecia (Hair Loss)



Hair Loss

TOP HAT

Telogen effluvium, tinea capitis

Out of Fe, Zn

Physical: trichotillomania, "corn-row" braiding

Hormonal: hypothyroidism, androgenic

Autoimmune: SLE, alopecia areata

Toxins: heavy metals, anticoagulants, chemotherapy, vitamin A, SSRIs



Non-Scarring Alopecia: intact hair follicles on exam → biopsy not required (but may be helpful)

Scarring Alopecia: absent hair follicles on exam → biopsy required



DDx of Non-Scarring (Non-Cicatricial) Alopecia

• Autoimmune

- Alopecia areata

• Endocrine

- Hypothyroidism
- Androgens

• Micronutrient deficiencies

- Iron
- Zinc

• Toxins

- Heavy metals
- Anticoagulants
- Chemotherapy
- Vitamin A

• Trauma to the hair follicle

- Trichotillomania
- 'Corn-row' braiding

• Other

- Syphilis
- Severe illness
- Childbirth



Precipitants of Telogen Effluvium

"SEND" hair follicles out of anagen and into telogen

Stress and Scalp disease (surgery)

Endocrine (hypothyroidism, post-partum)

Nutritional (iron and protein deficiency)

Drugs (citraetin, heparin, lithium, IFN, β -blockers, valproic acid, SSRIs)

Hair Growth

- hair grows in a cyclic pattern that is defined in 3 stages
 1. growth stage = anagen phase
 2. transitional stage = catagen stage
 3. resting stage = telogen phase
- total duration of the growth stage reflects the type and location of hair: eyebrow, eyelash, and axillary hairs have a short growth stage in relation to the resting stage
- growth of the hair follicles is also based on the hormonal response to testosterone and DHT; this response is genetically controlled

Non-Scarring (Non-Cicatricial) Alopecia

ANDROGENETIC ALOPECIA

Clinical Presentation

- male- or female-pattern alopecia
- males: fronto-temporal areas progressing to vertex, entire scalp may be bald
- females: widening of central part, "Christmas tree" pattern

Pathophysiology

- action of testosterone on hair follicles

Epidemiology

- males: early 20s-30s
- females: 40s-50s

Management

- minoxidil (Rogaine®) solution or foam to reduce rate of loss/partial restoration
- spironolactone in women (anti-androgenic effects), cyproterone acetate (Diane-35®)
- finasteride (Propecia®) (5- α -reductase inhibitor) 1 mg/d in men
- hair transplant

PHYSICAL

- trichotillomania: impulse-control disorder characterized by compulsive hair pulling with irregular patches of hair loss, and with remaining hairs broken at varying lengths
- traumatic (e.g. tight "corn-row" braiding of hair, wearing tight pony tails, tight tying of turbans)

TELOGEN EFFLUVIUM

Clinical Presentation

- uniform decrease in hair density secondary to hairs leaving the growth (anagen) stage and entering the resting (telogen) stage of the cycle

Pathophysiology

- variety of precipitating factors (see sidebar)
- hair loss typically occurs 2-4 mo after exposure to precipitant
- regrowth occurs within a few months but may not be complete

ANAGEN EFFLUVIUM

Clinical Presentation

- hair loss due to insult to hair follicle impairing its mitotic activity (growth stage)

Pathophysiology

- precipitated by chemotherapeutic agents (most common), other meds (bismuth, levodopa, colchicine, cyclosporine), exposure to chemicals (thallium, boron, arsenic)
- dose-dependent effect
- hair loss 7-14 d after single pulse of chemotherapy; most clinically apparent after 1-2 mo
- reversible effect; follicles resume normal mitotic activity few weeks after agent stopped

ALOPECIA AREATA

Clinical Presentation

- autoimmune disorder characterized by patches of complete hair loss often localized to scalp but can affect eyebrows, beard, eyelashes, etc.
- may be associated with dystrophic nail changes – fine stippling, pitting
- “exclamation mark” pattern (hairs fractured and have tapered shafts, i.e. looks like “!”)
- may be associated with pernicious anemia, vitiligo, thyroid disease, Addison’s disease
- spontaneous regrowth may occur within months of first attack (worse prognosis if young at age of onset and extensive loss)
- frequent recurrence often precipitated by emotional distress

Management

- generally unsatisfactory
- intralesional triamcinolone acetonide (corticosteroids) can be used for isolated patches
- UV or PUVA therapy
- immunomodulatory (diphencyprone)



Alopecia Areata Subtypes

Alopecia totalis: loss of all scalp hair and eyebrows

Alopecia universalis: loss of all body hair



DDx of Scarring (Cicatricial) Alopecia

Developmental/Hereditary Disorders

- Aplasia cutis congenita
- Epidermal nevi
- Romberg’s syndrome
- Generalized follicular hamartoma

Primary Causes

- Group 1: Lymphocytic
 - DLE
 - Lichen planopilaris
 - Central centrifugal cicatricial alopecia
 - Classic pseudopelade
- Group 2: Neutrophilic
 - Folliculitis decalvans
 - Dissecting scalp cellulitis
- Group 3: Mixed
 - Acne keloidalis nuchae

Secondary Causes

- Infectious agents
 - Bacterial (e.g. post-cellulitis)
 - Fungal (e.g. tinea capitis)
- Neoplasms (e.g. BCC, SCC, lymphomas, and metastatic tumors)
- Physical agents
 - Mechanical trauma
 - Burns
 - Radiotherapy
 - Caustic chemicals

Scarring (Cicatricial) Alopecia

Clinical Presentation

- irreversible loss of hair follicles with fibrosis

Etiology

- physical: radiation, burns
- infections: fungal, bacterial, TB, leprosy, viral (HZV)
- inflammatory
 - lichen planus (lichen planopilaris)
 - DLE (note that SLE can cause an alopecia unrelated to DLE lesions which are non-scarring)
 - morphea: “coup de sabre” with involvement of center of scalp
 - central centrifugal cicatricial alopecia: seen in up to 40% of black women, starting at central scalp; one of most commonly diagnosed scarring alopecias, may be associated with hair care practices in this population

Investigations

- biopsy from active border

Management

- infections: treat underlying infection
- inflammatory: topical/intralesional steroids, anti-inflammatory antibiotics, antimalarials, immunosuppressants, oral steroids, retinoids, thalidomide

Nails and Disorders of the Nail Apparatus



Table 20. Nail Changes in Systemic and Dermatological Conditions

Nail Abnormality	Definition/Etiology	Associated Disease
NAIL PLATE CHANGES		
Clubbing	Proximal nail plate has greater than 180 degree angle to nail fold, watch-glass nails, bulbous digits	Cyanotic heart disease, bacterial endocarditis, pulmonary disorders, GI disorders, etc.
Koilonychia	Spoon shaped nails	Iron deficiency, malnutrition, DM
Onycholysis	Separation of nail plate from nail bed	Psoriasis, dermatophytes, thyroid disease
Onychogryphosis	Hypertrophy of the nail plate and subungal hyperkeratosis	Poor circulation, chronic inflammation, tinea
Onychohemia	Subungal hematoma	Trauma to nail bed
Onychomycosis	Fungal infection of nail (e.g. dermatophyte, yeast, mold)	HIV, DM, peripheral arterial disease
Onychocryptosis (ingrown toenail)	Often hallux with congenital malalignment, painful inflammation, granulation tissue	Tight fitting shoes, excessive nail clipping
SURFACE CHANGES		
V-shaped nicking	Distal margin has v-shaped loss of the nail plate	Darier’s disease (follicular dyskeratosis)
Pterygium invs. unguium	Distal nail plate does not separate from underlying nail bed	Scleroderma
Pitting	Punctate depressions that migrate distally with growth	Psoriasis (random pattern), alopecia areata (geometric, gridshaped arrangement), eczema
Transverse ridging	Transverse depressions often more in central portion of nail plate	Serious acute illness slows nail growth (when present in all nails = Beau’s lines), eczema, chronic paronychia, trauma
Transverse white lines	Bands of white discoloration	Poisons, hypoalbuminemia (Muherke’s lines)

Table 20. Nail Changes in Systemic and Dermatological Conditions (continued)

Nail Abnormality	Definition/Etiology	Associated Disease
Color CHANGES		
Yellow		Tinea, jaundice, tetracycline, pityriasis rubra pilaris, yellow nail syndrome, psoriasis, tobacco use
Green		Pseudomonas
Black		Melanoma, hematoma
Brown		Nicotine use, psoriasis, poisons, longitudinal melanonychia (ethnic)
Splinter hemorrhages	Extravasation of blood from longitudinal vessels of nail bed, blood attaches to overlying nail plate and moves distally as it grows	Trauma, bacterial endocarditis, blood dyscrasias, psoriasis
Oil spots	Brown-yellow discoloration	Psoriasis
NAIL FOLD CHANGES		
Herpetic whitlow	HSV infection of distal phalanx	HSV infection
Paronychia	Local inflammation of the nail fold around the nail bed	Acute: painful infection Chronic: constant wetting (e.g. dishwashing, thumbsucking)
Nail fold telangiectasias	Cuticular hemorrhages, roughness, capillary changes	Scleroderma, SLE, dermatomyositis
Pterygium of nail fold	Skin overgrows nail plate	lichen planus

Skin Manifestations of Systemic Disease

**Table 21. Skin Manifestations of Internal Conditions**

Disease	Related Dermatoses
AUTOIMMUNE DISORDERS	
Behçet's disease	Painful aphthous ulcers in oral cavity ± genital mucous membranes, erythema nodosum, acneiform papules, pathergy
Buerger's disease	Superficial migratory thrombophlebitis, pallor, cyanosis, gangrene, ulcerations, digital resorptions
Dermatomyositis	Periorbital and extensor violaceous erythema, heliotrope with edema, Gottron's papules (violaceous flat-topped papules with atrophy), periungual erythema, telangiectasia, calcinosis cutis, shawl signs (erythema and poikiloderma V-sign of chest and upper back) holster sign (hips poikiloderma), photosensitivity, scalp burning
Polyarteritis nodosa	Subcutaneous nodules, stellate purpura, erythema, gangrene, splinter hemorrhages, livedo reticularis, ulceration
Rheumatic fever	Petechiae, urticaria, erythema nodosum, rheumatic nodules, evanescent rash
Scleroderma	Raynaud's, nonpitting edema, waxy/shiny/tense atrophic skin (morphea), fingertip pitting and ulcers, cutaneous calcification, periungual telangiectasia, acrosclerosis, salt-and-pepper leukoderma
Systemic lupus erythematosus	Malar erythema, discoid rash (erythematous papules or plaques with keratotic scale, follicular plugging, atrophic scarring on face, hands, and arms), hemorrhagic bullae, palpable purpura, urticarial purpura, patchy/diffuse alopecia, mucosal ulcers, photosensitivity, 'lupus hairs' (fragile hairs anterior hairline), panniculitis
Crohn's disease/UC	Pyoderma gangrenosum, erythema nodosum, Sweet's syndrome
ENDOCRINE DISORDERS	
Addison's disease	Generalized hyperpigmentation or limited to skin folds, buccal mucosa and scars
Cushing's syndrome	Moon facies, purple striae, acne, hyperpigmentation, hirsutism, atrophic skin with telangiectasia
DM	Infections (e.g. boils, carbuncles, <i>Candidiasis</i> , <i>S. aureus</i> , dermatophytoses, tinea pedis and cruris, infectious eczematoid dermatitis), pruritus, eruptive xanthomas, necrobiosis lipoidica diabetorum, granuloma annulare, diabetic foot, diabetic bullae, acanthosis nigricans, calciphylaxis
Hyperthyroidism	Moist, warm skin, seborrhea, acne, nail atrophy, hyperpigmentation, toxic alopecia, pretibial myxedema, acropachy, onycholysis
Hypothyroidism	Cool, dry, scaly, thickened, hyperpigmented skin; toxic alopecia with dry, coarse hair, brittle nails, myxedema, loss of lateral 1/3 eyebrows
HIV-RELATED	
Infections	Viral (e.g. HSV, HZV, HPV, CMV, molluscum contagiosum, oral hairy leukoplakia), bacterial (impetigo, acneiform folliculitis, dental caries, cellulitis, bacillary epithelioid angiomatosis, syphilis), fungal (candidiasis, histoplasmosis, cryptococcus, blastomycosis)
Inflammatory dermatoses	Seborrhea, psoriasis, , vasculitis, eosinophilic folliculitis
Malignancies	Kaposi's sarcoma, lymphoma, BCC, SCC, MM



Raynaud's Phenomenon DDx

COLD HAND

Cryoglobulins/Cryofibrinogens
Obstruction/Occupational
Lupus erythematosus, other connective tissue disease
DM/Drugs
Hematologic problems (polycythemia, leukemia, etc)
Arterial problems (atherosclerosis)
Neurologic problems (vascular tone)
Disease of unknown origin (idiopathic)



Acanthosis Nigricans

An asymptomatic dark thickened velvety hyperpigmentation of flexural skin most commonly around the neck. Associated with DM, obesity, and other endocrine disorders and malignancy. It is a cutaneous marker of tissue insulin resistance

Table 21. Skin Manifestations of Internal Conditions (continued)

Disease	Related Dermatoses
MALIGNANCY	
Adenocarcinoma	
Gastrointestinal	Peutz-Jeghers: pigmented macules on lips/oral mucosa
Cervix/anus/rectum	Paget's disease: eroding scaling plaques of perineum
Carcinoma	
Breast	Paget's disease: eczematous and crusting lesions of breast
GI	Palmoplantar keratoderma: thickened skin of palms/soles
Thyroid	Sipple's syndrome: multiple mucosal neuromas
Breast/lung/ovary	Dermatomyositis: heliotrope erythema of eyelids and violaceous plaques over knuckles
Lymphoma/Leukemia	
Hodgkin's	Ataxia Telangiectasia: telangiectasia on pinna, bulbar conjunctiva
Acute leukemia	Ichthyosis: generalized scaling especially on extremities, Sweet's syndrome
	Bloom's syndrome: butterfly erythema on face, associated with short stature
Multiple myeloma	Amyloidosis: large, smooth tongue with waxy papules on eyelids, nasolabial folds and lips, as well as facial petechiae
OTHERS	
Liver disease	Pruritus, hyperpigmentation, spider nevi, palmar erythema, white nails (Terry's nails), porphyria cutanea tarda, xanthomas, hair loss, jaundice
Renal disease	Pruritus, pigmentation, half and half nails, perforating dermatosis, calciphylaxis
Pruritic urticaria papules and plaques of pregnancy	Erythematous papules or urticarial plaques in distribution of striae distensae: buttocks, thighs, upper inner arms and lower backs although always spares umbilicus
Cryoglobulinemia	Palpable purpura in cold-exposed areas, Raynaud's, cold urticaria, acral hemorrhagic necrosis, bleeding disorders, associated with hepatitis C infection

Pediatric Exanthems

- see [Pediatrics](#), P57

Miscellaneous Lesions

Angioedema and Urticaria

Angioedema

- deeper swelling of the skin involving subcutaneous tissues; often involves the eyes, lips, and tongue
- may or may not accompany urticaria
- hereditary or acquired forms
- hereditary angioedema (does not occur with urticaria)
 - onset in childhood; 80% have positive family history
 - recurrent attacks; 25% die from laryngeal edema
 - triggers: minor trauma, emotional upset, temperature changes
- types of acquired angioedema
 - acute allergic angioedema (allergens include food, drugs, contrast media, insect venom, latex)
 - non-allergic drug reaction (drugs include ACE inhibitors)
 - acquired C1 inhibitor deficiency
- treatment
 - prophylaxis with danazol or stanozolol for hereditary angioedema
 - epinephrine pen to temporize until patient reaches hospital in acute attack

Urticaria

- also known as "hives"
- transient, red, pruritic well-demarcated wheals
- each individual lesion lasts less than 24 h
- second most common type of drug reaction
- results from release of histamine from mast cells in dermis
- can also result after physical contact with allergen
- treatment with oral antihistamines in high dosages, oral steroids, immunosuppressives (mycophenolate mofetil, imuran) or newly approved omalizumab



Wheal

- Typically erythematous flat-topped, palpable lesions varying in size with circumscribed dermal edema
- Individual lesion lasts <24 h
- Associated with mast cell release of histamine
- May be pruritic



Table 22. Classification of Urticaria

Type	Etiology
Acute Urticaria >2/3 of cases Attacks last <6 wk Individual lesions last <24 h	Drugs: especially ASA, NSAIDs Foods: nuts, shellfish, eggs, fruit Idiopathic (> 2/3 of patients) Infection Insect stings (bees, wasps, hornets) Percutaneous absorption: cosmetics, work exposures Stress Systemic diseases: SLE, endocrinopathy, neoplasm
Chronic Urticaria <1/3 of cases Attacks last >6 wk Individual lesion lasts <24 h	IgE-dependent: trigger associated Idiopathic (90% of chronic urticaria patients) Aeroallergens Drugs (antibiotics, hormones, local anesthetics) Foods and additives Insect stings Parasitic infections Physical contact (animal saliva, plant resins, latex, metals, lotions, soap) Direct mast cell release Opiates, muscle relaxants, radio-contrast agents Complement-mediated Serum sickness, transfusion reactions Infections, viral/bacterial (>80% of urticaria in pediatric patients) Urticarial vasculitis Arachidonic acid metabolism ASA, NSAIDs Physical Dermatographism (friction, rubbing skin), cold (ice cube, cold water), cholinergic (hot shower, exercise), solar, pressure (shoulder strap, buttocks), aquagenic (exposure to water), adrenergic (stress), heat Other Mastocytosis, urticaria pigmentosa In non-pruritic chronic urticaria, consideration should be given to Syndromes such as Schnitzler's, Muckle-Wells and Familial Cold Urticaria
Urticarial Vasculitis Individual lesions last >24 h Often painful, less likely pruritic, heals with bruise type lesions Requires biopsy	Idiopathic Infections Hepatitis Autoimmune diseases SLE Drug hypersensitivity Cimetidine and diltiazem

**DDx for Urticaria****DAM HIVES**

Drugs and foods

Allergic

Malignancy

Hereditary

Infection

Vasculitis

Emotions

Stings

**Approach to Urticaria**

- Thorough Hx and P/E
- **Acute:** no immediate investigations needed; consider referral for allergy testing
- **Chronic:** further investigations required: CBC and differential, urinalysis, ESR, TSH, LFTs to help identify underlying cause
- **Vasculitic:** biopsy of lesion and referral to dermatology

**Mastocytosis (Urticaria Pigmentosa)**

Rare disease due to excessive infiltration of the skin by mast cells. It manifests as many reddish-brown elevated plaques and macules. Friction to a lesion produces a wheal surrounded by intense erythema (Darier's sign), due to mast cell degranulation; this occurs within minutes



Erythema Nodosum

Clinical Presentation

- acute or chronic inflammation of subcutaneous fat (panniculitis)
- round, red, tender, poorly demarcated nodules
- sites: asymmetrically arranged on extensor lower legs, (typically shins) much less commonly knees, arms
- associated with arthralgia, fever, malaise

Etiology

- 40% are idiopathic
- drugs: sulfonamides, OCPs (also pregnancy), analgesics, trans retinoic acid
- infections: GAS, TB, histoplasmosis, *Yersinia*
- inflammation: sarcoidosis, Crohn's > UC
- malignancy: acute leukemia, Hodgkin's lymphoma

Epidemiology

- 15-30 yr old, F:M = 3:1
- lesions last for days and spontaneously resolve in 6 wk, although some patients will have chronic recurrence secondary to underlying conditions

Investigations

- chest X-ray (to rule out chest infection and sarcoidosis)
- throat culture, ASO titre, PPD skin test

Management

- symptomatic: bed rest, compressive bandages, wet dressings
- NSAIDs, intralesional steroids
- treat underlying cause
- super saturated potassium iodide with thyroid monitoring, dapsone and colchicine

**DDx of Erythema Nodosum****NODOSUM**

No cause (idiopathic) in 40%

Drugs (sulfonamides, OCP, etc.)

Other infections (GAS+)

Sarcoidosis

UC and Crohn's

Malignancy (leukemia, Hodgkin's

lymphoma)

Many Infections

Pruritus



Clinical Presentation

- a sensation provoking a desire to scratch, with or without skin lesions
- lesions may arise from the underlying disease, or from excoriation causing crusts, lichenified plaques, or wheals

Etiology

- dermatologic – generalized
 - asteatotic dermatitis (“winter itch” due to dry skin)
 - pruritus of senescent skin (may not have dry skin, any time of year)
 - infestations: scabies, lice
 - drug eruptions: ASA, antidepressants, opiates
 - psychogenic states
- dermatologic – local
 - atopic and contact dermatitis, lichen planus, urticaria, insect bites, dermatitis herpetiformis
 - infection: varicella, candidiasis
 - lichen simplex chronicus
 - prurigo nodularis
- systemic disease – usually generalized
 - hepatic: obstructive biliary disease, cholestatic liver disease of pregnancy
 - renal: chronic renal failure, uremia secondary to hemodialysis
 - hematologic: Hodgkin's lymphoma, multiple myeloma, leukemia, polycythemia vera, hemochromatosis, Fe deficiency anemia, cutaneous T-cell lymphoma
 - neoplastic: lung, breast, gastric (internal solid tumors), non-Hodgkin's lymphoma
 - endocrine: carcinoid, DM, hypothyroid/thyrototoxicosis
 - infectious: HIV, trichinosis, echinococcosis, hepatitis C
 - psychiatric: depression, psychosis
 - neurologic: post-herpetic neuralgia, multiple sclerosis



DDx of Pruritus

SCRATCHED

Scabies
Cholestasis

Renal
Autoimmune
Tumors

Crazies (psychiatric)

Hematology (polycythemia, lymphoma)

Endocrine (thyroid, parathyroid, ↓ Fe)

Drugs, Dry skin

Investigations

- detailed history
- complete physical, including rectal and pelvic examination
- blood work: CBC, ESR, Cr/BUN, LFT, TSH, fasting blood sugar, stool culture and serology for parasites, if on palms with no rash check bile acids, especially in pregnancy

Management

- treat underlying cause
- cool water compresses to relieve pruritus
- bath oil and emollient ointment (especially if xerosis is present)
- topical corticosteroid and antipruritics (e.g. menthol, camphor, phenol, mirtazapine, capsaicin)
- systemic antihistamines: H1 blockers are most effective, most useful for urticaria
- phototherapy with UVB or PUVA
- doxepin, amitriptyline
- gabapentin, pregabalin
- naloxone
- immunosuppressive agents if severe: steroids and steroid sparing

Wounds and Ulcers

- see [Plastic Surgery](#), PS8, PS15



- Consider biopsy of any nonhealing wound to rule out cancer



Common Medications

Sunscreens and Preventative Therapy



Sunburn

- erythema 2-6 h post UV exposure often associated with edema, pain and blistering with subsequent desquamation of the dermis, and hyperpigmentation
- chronic UVA, UVB exposure leads to photoaging, immunosuppression, photocarcinogenesis
- prevention: avoid peak UVR (10 am to 4 pm), wear appropriate clothing, wide-brimmed hat, sunglasses, and broad-spectrum sunscreen
- clothing with UV protection expressed as UV protection factor (UPF) is analogous to SPF of sunscreen



SPF = burn time with cream/burn time without cream

Sunscreens

- under ideal conditions an SPF of 10 means that a person who normally burns in 20 min will burn in 200 min following the application of the sunscreen but by definition SPF relates ONLY to UVB absorption

- topical chemical: absorbs UV light
 - requires application at least 15-60 min prior to exposure, should be reapplied every 2 h (more often if sweating, swimming)
 - UVB absorbers: PABA, salicylates, cinnamates, benzylidene camphor derivatives
 - UVA absorbers: benzophenones, anthranilates, dibenzoylmethanes, benzylidene camphor derivatives
- topical physical: reflects and scatters UV light
 - titanium dioxide, zinc oxide, kaolin, talc, ferric chloride, and melanin
 - ♦ all are effective against the UVA and UVB spectrum
 - less risk of sensitization than chemical sunscreens and waterproof, but may cause folliculitis or miliaria
- some sunscreen ingredients may cause contact or photocontact allergic reactions, but are uncommon

Management

- sunburn: if significant blistering present, consider treatment in hospital; otherwise, symptomatic treatment (cool wet compresses, oral anti-inflammatory, topical corticosteroids)
- antioxidants, both oral and topical are being studied for their abilities to protect the skin; topical agents are limited by their ability to penetrate the skin



UV Radiation

UVA (320-400 nm): Aging

- Penetrates skin more effectively than UVB or UVC
- Responsible for tanning, burning, wrinkling, photoallergy and premature skin aging
- Penetrates clouds, glass and is reflected off water, snow and cement

UVB (290-320 nm): Burning

- Absorbed by the outer dermis
- Is mainly responsible for burning and premature skin aging
- Primarily responsible for BCC, SCC
- Does not penetrate glass and is substantially absorbed by ozone

UVC (200-290 nm)

- Is filtered by ozone layer



Body Site

Relative Percutaneous Absorption

Forearm	1.0
Plantar foot	0.14
Palm	0.83
Back	1.7
Scalp	3.7
Forehead	6.0
Cheeks	13.0
Scrotum	42.0

Calculation of strength of steroid compared to hydrocortisone on forearm: relative strength of steroid x relative percutaneous absorption



Surface Area

30 g covers full adult body once. Children have a greater surface area/volume ratio and there are consequently greater side effects



Side Effects of Topical Steroids

- Local: atrophy, perioral dermatitis, steroid acne, rosacea, contact dermatitis, tachyphylaxis (tolerance)
- Systemic: suppression of HPA axis



Vehicles

- Ointment (water in oil): hydrate, greasy
- Cream (oil in water): hydrate, variable
- Lotion (powder in water): drying, cosmesis
- Solutions (water, alcohol, propylene glycol)
- Gel (solution that melts on contact with skin, alcohol): drying

Topical Steroids

Table 23. Potency Ranking of Topical Steroids

Relative Potency	Relative Strength	Generic Names	Trade Names	Usage
Weak	x1	hydrocortisone – 2.5% (1% available over-the-counter)	Emo Cort®	Intertriginous areas, children, face, thin skin
Moderate	x3	hydrocortisone 17-valerate – 0.2% desonide mometasone furoate	Westcort® Tridesilon® Elocom®	Arm, leg, trunk
Potent	x6	betamethasone – 0.1% 17-valerate – 0.1% amcinonide	Betnovate® Celestoderm – V® Cyclocort®	Body
Very Potent	x9	betamethasone dipropionate – 0.05% fluocinonide – 0.05% halcinonide	Diprosone® Lidex, Topsyn gel® Lyderm® Halog®	Palms and soles
Extremely Potent	x12	clobetasol propionate – 0.05% (most potent) betamethasone dipropionate ointment halobetasol propionate – 0.05%	Dermovate® Diprolene® Ultravate®	Palms and soles or for very limited time spans to trunk

Dermatologic Therapies

Table 24. Common Topical Therapies

Drug Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Comments
Calcipotriol (Dovonex®)	0.005% cream, ointment, scalp solution, apply bid For maintenance therapy apply OD	Psoriasis	Burning, itching, skin irritation, worsening of psoriasis Avoid face, mucous membranes, eyes; wash hands after application Maximum weekly dosage of cream by age: 2-5 yr – 25 g/wk 6-10 yr – 50 g/wk 11-14 yr – 75 g/wk >14 yr – 100 g/wk Inactivated by light (do not apply before phototherapy)
Calcitriol (vectical)	Ointment	Psoriasis	
Imiquimod (Aldara®)	5% cream applied 3x/wk Apply at bedtime, leave on 6-10 h, then wash off with mild soap and water Max duration 16 wk	Genital warts Cutaneous warts AK Superficial BCC	Avoid natural/artificial sun exposure Local skin and application site reactions Erythema, ulceration, edema, flu-like symptoms Works best for warts on mucosal surfaces May induce inflammation and erosion

Table 24. Common Topical Therapies (continued)

Drug Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Comments
Permethrin (Kwellada® P Lotion and Nix® Dermal Cream)	5% cream, applied once overnight to all skin areas from neck down, repeated one week later	Scabies (Kwellada-P Lotion, Nix® Dermal Cream) Pediculosis (Kwellada-P Crème Rinse®, Nix Crème Rinse®)	Do not use in children <2 yr old Hypersensitivity to drug, or known sensitivity to chrysanthemums Local reactions only (resolve rapidly); including burning, pruritus Low toxicity, excellent results Consider second application after 7 d
Pimecrolimus (Elidel®)	1.0% cream bid Use for as long as lesions persist and discontinue upon resolution of symptoms	AD (mild to moderate)	Burning Lacks adverse effects of steroids May be used on all skin surfaces including head, neck, and intertriginous areas Expensive
Tacrolimus Topical (Protopic®)	0.03% (children) or 0.1% (adults) ointment bid Continue for duration of disease PLUS 1 wk after clearing	AD (mild to moderate)	Burning Lacks adverse effects of steroids May be used on all skin surfaces including head, neck, and intertriginous areas Expensive

Table 25. Common Oral Therapies

Drug Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Comments
Acitretin (Soriatane®)	25-50 mg PO OD; maximum 75 mg/d	Severe psoriasis Other disorders of hyperkeratinization (ichthyosis, Darier's disease)	<u>Monitoring strategies</u> Monitor lipids, LFTs at baseline and q1-2wk until stable <u>Contraindications</u> Not given to women of childbearing age <u>Drug interactions</u> Other systemic retinoids, methotrexate, tetracyclines, certain contraceptives May be combined with PUVA phototherapy (known as re-PUVA)
Antivirals	famcyclovir (Famvir®) 250 mg PO tid x 7-10 d (for 1st episode of genital herpes) 125 mg PO bid x 5 d (for recurrent genital herpes)	Chickenpox Herpes zoster Genital herpes Acute and prophylactic to reduce transmission in infected patients Herpes labialis	<u>Side effects</u> Headache, nausea, diarrhea, abdominal pain Reduce dose if impaired renal function
	valacyclovir (Valtrex®) 1000 mg PO bid x 7-10 d (for 1st episode of genital herpes) 500 mg PO bid x 5 d (for recurrent genital herpes)		<u>Side effects</u> Dizziness, depression, abdominal pain Reduce dose if impaired renal function <u>Drug interactions</u> cimetidine
Cyclosporin (Neoral®)	2.5-4 mg/kg/d PO divided bid Max 4 mg/kg/d After 4 wk may increase by 0.5 mg/kg/d q2wks Concomitant dose of magnesium may protect the kidneys	Psoriasis May also be effective in: Lichen planus EM Recalcitrant urticaria Recalcitrant AD	<u>Monitoring strategies</u> Blood pressure, renal function <u>Contraindications</u> Abnormal renal function, uncontrolled HTN, malignancy (except NMSC), uncontrolled infection, immunodeficiency (excluding autoimmune disease), hypersensitivity to drug Long-term effects preclude use of cyclosporin for >2 yr; discontinue earlier if possible May consider rotating therapy with other drugs to minimize adverse effects of each drug
Dapsone	50-100-150 mg PO OD tapering to 25-50 mg PO OD to as low as 50 mg 2x/wk	Dermatitis herpetiformis, neutrophilic dermatoses	<u>Monitoring strategies</u> Obtain G6PD levels before initiating; in the initial two wk obtain methemoglobin levels and follow the blood counts carefully for the first few months <u>Side effects</u> Neuropathy Hemolysis (Vitamin C and E supplementation can help prevent this) <u>Drug interactions</u> Substrate of CYP2C8/9 (minor), 2C19 (minor), 2E1 (minor), 3A4 (major) Often a dramatic response within hours

Table 25. Common Oral Therapies (continued)

Drug Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Comments
Isotretinoin (Accutane®)	0.5-1 mg/kg/d given OD, to achieve a total dose of 120 mg/kg (20-24 wk)	Severe nodular and/or inflammatory acne Acne conglobata Recalcitrant acne Widespread comedonal acne	<u>Monitoring strategies</u> Baseline lipid profile and LFTs before treatment, β -hCG <u>Contraindications</u> Teratogenic – in sexually active females, 2 forms of reliable contraception necessary Generally regarded as unsafe in lactation <u>Side effects</u> Night blindness, decreased tolerance to contact lenses, dry mucous membranes May transiently exacerbate acne, dry skin Depression, myalgia <u>Drug interactions</u> Do not use at the same time as tetracycline or minocycline – both may cause pseudotumor cerebri Discontinue vitamin A supplements Drug may be discontinued at 16-20 wk when nodule count has dropped by >70%; a second course may be initiated after 2 mo pm Refractory cases may require >3 courses
Itraconazole (Sporanox®)	100-400 mg PO OD, depending on infection treated Tinea corporis/cruris: 200 mg PO OD x 7 d Tinea pedis: 200 mg PO bid x 7 d Tinea versicolor: 200 mg PO OD x 7 d Toenails with or without fingernail involvement: 200 mg PO bid x 7 d once per mo, repeated 3x Fingernail involvement only: 200 mg bid PO x 7 d once per mo, repeated 2x	Onychomycosis Tinea corporis, cruris, pedis, versicolor, capitis	<u>Contraindications</u> CHF <u>Side effects</u> Serious hepatotoxicity <u>Drug Interactions</u> Inhibits CYP3A4. Increases concentration of some drugs metabolized by this enzyme (i.e. statins, diabetic drugs) Give capsules with food, capsules must be swallowed whole
Ivermectin (Mectizan®, Stromectol®)	200-250 μ g/kg PO qweekly x 2 Take once as directed; repeat one wk later	Onchocerciasis Also effective for: scabies	No significant serious side effects Efficacious
Methotrexate (Trexall®)	10-25 mg qwk, PO, IM, or IV Max: 30 mg/wk To minimize side effects, administer with folic acid supplementation: 1-5 mg OD	Psoriasis AD Lymphomatoid papulosis May also be effective in: cutaneous sarcoidosis	<u>Monitoring strategies</u> Baseline renal, liver, and hematological studies <u>Contraindications</u> Pregnancy, lactation, alcohol abuse, liver dysfunction, immunodeficiency syndrome, blood dyscrasias, hypersensitivity to drug Restricted to severe, recalcitrant or disabling psoriasis not adequately responsive to other forms of therapy May be combined with cyclosporine to allow lower doses of both drugs
Minocycline (Minocin®)	50-100 mg PO bid Taper to 50 mg PO OD as acne lessens	Acne vulgaris Rosacea	<u>Contraindications</u> Caution if impaired renal or liver function <u>Drug interactions</u> Do not use with isotretinoin (Accutane®) <u>Side effects</u> Extensive; affects multiple organ systems including CNS, teeth, eyes, bones, renal, and skin (photosensitivity and blue pigmentation) Drug-induced lupus (check p-ANCA) Alternative to tetracycline
OCPs	TriCyclen Diane 35 Alesse All combined OCPs are helpful in acne but those listed above have undergone RCTs	Hormonal acne (chin, jawline) Acne associated with polycystic ovarian syndrome or other endocrine abnormalities	<u>Contraindications</u> Smoking, HTN, migraines with aura, pregnancy Routine gynecological health maintenance should be up to date
Spirolactone	50-100 mg PO OD alone or with OCPs	Hormonal acne (chin, jawline) Acne with endocrine abnormality	<u>Contraindications</u> Pregnancy <u>Side effects</u> Menstrual irregularities at higher doses if not on OCPs Breast tenderness, mild diuresis common Risk of hyperkalemia – counsel patients to reduce intake of potassium rich foods such as bananas
Terbinafine (Lamisil®)	250 mg PO OD x 2 wk Fingernails x 6 wk Toenails x 12 wk Confirm diagnosis prior to treatment	Onychomycosis Tinea corporis, cruris, pedis, capitis	<u>Contraindications</u> Pregnancy, chronic or active liver disease <u>Drug interactions</u> Potent inhibitor of CYP2D6; use with caution when also taking β -blockers, certain anti-arrhythmic agents, MAOI type B, and/or antipsychotics Drug concentrates rapidly in skin, hair, and nails at levels associated with fungicidal activity
Tetracycline	250-500 mg PO bid to tid Taken 1 h before or 2 h after a meal	Acne vulgaris Rosacea Bullous pemphigoid	<u>Contraindications</u> Severe renal or hepatic dysfunction

References

- Aoyama H, Tanaka M, Hara M, et al. Nummular eczema: An addition of senile xerosis and unique cutaneous reactivities to environmental aeroallergens. *Dermatology* 1999;199(2):135-139.
- Bolognia JL, Jorizzo JL, Rapini RP (editors). *Textbook of dermatology*. Vol. 1 and 2. Toronto: Mosby, 2003.
- Cribier B, Caille A, Heid E. Erythema nodosum and associated diseases. *Int J Dermatol* 1998;37:667-672.
- Cummings SR, Tripp MK, Hermann NB. Approaches to the prevention and control of skin cancer. *Cancer Metast Rev* 1997;16:309-327.
- deShazo RD, Kemp SF. Allergic reactions to drugs and biologic agents. *JAMA* 1997;278:1895-1906.
- Ellis C, Luger T, Abeck D, et al. International Consensus Conference on Atopic Dermatitis II (ICCAD II): clinical update and current treatment strategies. *Br J Dermatol* 2003;148(suppl 63):3-10.
- Faergemann J, Baron R. Epidemiology, clinical presentation, and diagnosis of onychomycosis. *Br J Dermatol* 2003;149(suppl 65):1-4.
- Fitzpatrick JE, Aeling JL. *Dermatology secrets*. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley & Belfus, 2001.
- Friedmann PS. Assessment of urticaria and angio-oedema. *Clin Exp Allergy* 1999;2(suppl 3):109-112.
- Goldsmith L, Katz S, Gilchrist B, et al. *Fitzpatrick's Dermatology in General Medicine*, 8th edition. New York: McGraw Hill, 2012.
- Goodheart H. *Goodheart's photoguide to common skin disorders: diagnosis and management*, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams and Wilkins, 2008.
- Gordon ML, Hecker MS. Care of the skin at midlife: diagnosis of pigmented lesions. *Geriatrics* 1997;52:56-67.
- Johnson RA, Suurmond D, Wolff K (editors). *Color atlas and synopsis of clinical dermatology*, 5th ed. New York: McGraw Hill, 2005.
- Krafchik BR. Treatment of atopic dermatitis. *J Cutan Med Surg* 1999;3(suppl 2):16-23.
- Lebwohl MG, Heymann WR, Berth-Jones J, et al. (editors). *Treatment of skin disease: comprehensive therapeutic strategies*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Mosby, 2006.
- Mastrolorenzo A, Urbano FG, Salimbeni L, et al. Atypical molluscum contagiosum in an HIV-infected patient. *Int J Dermatol* 1998;27:378-380.
- Ozkaya E. Adult-onset atopic dermatitis. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2005;52(4):579-582.
- Paller AS, Mancini AJ. *Hurwitz clinical pediatric dermatology: a textbook of skin disorders of childhood and adolescence*, 3rd ed. China: Elsevier, 2006.
- Price VH. Treatment of hair loss. *NEJM* 1999;341:964-973.
- Roujeau JC. Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis are severe variants of the same disease which differs from erythema multiforme. *J Dermatol* 1997;24:726-729.
- Sivamani RK, Goodarzi H, Garcia MS, et al. Biologic therapies in the treatment of psoriasis: a comprehensive evidence-based basic science and clinical review and a practical guide to tuberculosis monitoring. *Clin Rev Allergy Immu* 2013;44:121-140.
- Sterry W, Paus W, Burgdorf W (editors). *Thieme clinical companions: dermatology*, 5th ed. New York: Thieme, 2005.
- Ting PT, Banankin B. Can you identify this condition? Melasma. *Can Fam Physician* 2005;51:353-355.
- Walsh SRA, Shear NH. Psoriasis and the new biologic agents: interrupting a T-AP dance. *CMAJ* 2004;170:1933-1941.
- Whited JD, Grichnik JM. The rational clinical examination. Does this patient have a mole or a melanoma? *JAMA* 1998;279:696-701.
- Wilkin J, Dahl M, Detmar M, et al. Standard classification of rosacea: report of the National Rosacea Society Expert Committee on the classification and staging of rosacea. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2002;46:584-587.
- Wolff K, Johnson RA. *Fitzpatrick's colour atlas and synopsis of clinical dermatology*, 6th ed and 7th ed. New York: McGraw Hill, 2009.

Notes

Jonathan Hsu, Caroline O'Shaughnessy, and Bo Zheng, chapter editors

Jillian Bardsley, Evan Lilly, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor

Dr. Mark Freedman, Dr. Fernando Teixeira, and Dr. Margaret Thompson, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Gynecologic/Urologic Emergencies	39
Initial Patient Assessment/Management	2	Vaginal Bleeding	
Rapid Primary Survey		Pregnant Patient in the ED	
Resuscitation		Nephrolithiasis (Renal Colic)	
Secondary Survey		Ophthalmologic Emergencies	41
Ethical Considerations		Dermatologic Emergencies	42
Traumatology	7	Life-Threatening Dermatoses	
Considerations for Traumatic Injury		Environmental Injuries	43
Head Trauma		Heat Exhaustion and Heat Stroke	
Mild Traumatic Brain Injury		Hypothermia and Cold Injuries	
Spine and Spinal Cord Trauma		Burns	
Chest Trauma		Inhalation Injury	
Abdominal Trauma		Bites	
Genitourinary Tract Injuries		Near Drowning	
Orthopedic Injuries		Toxicology	48
Life and Limb Threatening Injuries		"ABCD ₃ EFG" of Toxicology	
Upper Extremity Injuries		D1 – Universal Antidotes	
Lower Extremity Injuries		D2 – Draw Bloods	
Wound Management		D3 – Decontamination and Enhanced Elimination	
Approach to Common ED Presentations	18	E – Expose and Examine the Patient	
Abdominal Pain		F – Full Vitals, ECG Monitor, Foley, X-Rays	
Acute Pelvic Pain		G – Give Specific Antidotes and Treatments	
Altered Level of Consciousness		Alcohol Related Emergencies	
Chest Pain		Approach to the Overdose Patient	
Epistaxis		Disposition from the Emergency Department	
Headache		Psychiatric Emergencies	55
Joint Pain		Approach to Common Psychiatric Presentations	
Otalgia		Acute Psychosis	
Seizures		Suicidal Patient	
Shortness of Breath		Common Pediatric ED Presentations	56
Syncope		Modified Glasgow Coma Score	
Sexual Assault		Respiratory Distress	
Medical Emergencies	30	Febrile Infant and Febrile Seizures	
Anaphylaxis and Allergic Reactions		Abdominal Pain	
Asthma		Common Infections	
Cardiac Dysrhythmias		Child Abuse and Neglect	
Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease		Common Medications	59
Congestive Heart Failure		References	60
Deep Vein Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism			
Diabetic Emergencies			
Electrolyte Disturbances			
Hypertensive Emergencies			
Stroke			

Acronyms

AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm	ED	emergency department	pRBC	packed red blood cells
ABG	arterial blood gas	EM	erythema multiforme	RBBB	right bundle branch block
ACS	acute coronary syndrome	ETT	endotracheal tube	ROM	range of motion
AED	automatic external defibrillator	FAST	focused abdominal sonogram for trauma	RPS	rapid primary survey
AFib	atrial fibrillation	FFP	fresh frozen plasma	RSI	rapid sequence induction
AG	anion gap	GCS	Glasgow Coma Scale	rt-PA	recombinant tissue plasminogen activator
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome	HI	head injury	SAH	subarachnoid hemorrhage
AVN	avascular necrosis	IBD	inflammatory bowel disease	SCI	spinal cord injury
AVPU	alert, voice, pain, unresponsive	IBS	irritable bowel syndrome	SJS	Stevens-Johnson syndrome
AXR	abdominal x-ray	ICP	intracranial pressure	SNS	sympathetic nervous system
Bi-PAP	bi-level positive airway pressure	ICS	level of consciousness	SOB	shortness of breath
BSA	body surface area	JVP	jugular venous pressure	SSSS	staphylococcal scalded skin syndrome
CAS	Children's Aid Society	LBDB	left bundle branch block	STEMI	ST elevation myocardial infarction
CPAP	continuous positive airway pressure	LOC	level of consciousness	TBI	traumatic brain injury
CPP	cerebral perfusion pressure	LP	lumbar puncture	TEN	toxic epidermal necrolysis
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid	LVH	left ventricular hypertrophy	TSS	toxic shock syndrome
CVA	costovertebral angle	MAP	mean arterial pressure	U/A	urinalysis
CXR	chest x-ray	MDI	metered dose inhaler	U/S	ultrasound
D&C	dilatation and curettage	MVC	motor vehicle collision	UTox	urine toxicology screen
DGI	disseminated gonococcal infection	NG	nasogastric	VBG	venous blood gas
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation	NS	normal saline	VFib	ventricular fibrillation
DKA	diabetic ketoacidosis	PE	pulmonary embolism	VTach	ventricular tachycardia
DRE	digital rectal exam	PID	pelvic inflammatory disease	VTE	venous thromboembolism
DT	delirium tremens	PNS	parasympathetic nervous system		
DVT	deep vein thrombosis	POG	plasma osmolar gap		

Initial Patient Assessment/Management



1. Rapid Primary Survey

- Airway maintenance with cervical spine (C-spine) control
- Breathing and ventilation
- Circulation (pulses, hemorrhage control)
- Disability (neurological status)
- Exposure (complete) and Environment (temperature control)
- continually reassessed during secondary survey
- **IMPORTANT:** always watch for signs of shock while doing primary survey

A. AIRWAY

- first priority is to secure airway
- assume a cervical injury in every trauma patient and immobilize with collar
- assess ability to breathe and speak
- can change rapidly, therefore reassess frequently

Airway Management

- permit adequate oxygenation and ventilation

1. Basic Airway Management

- protect the C-spine
- head-tilt (if C-spine injury not suspected) or jaw thrust to open the airway
- sweep and suction to clear mouth of foreign material

2. Temporizing Measures

- nasopharyngeal airway (if gag reflex present, i.e. conscious)
- oropharyngeal airway (if gag reflex absent, i.e. unconscious)
- "rescue" airway devices (e.g. laryngeal mask airway, Combitube®)
- transtracheal jet ventilation through cricothyroid membrane (last resort)

3. Definitive Airway Management

- ETT intubation with in-line stabilization of C-spine
 - orotracheal ± RSI preferred
 - nasotracheal may be better tolerated in conscious patient
 - ♦ relatively contraindicated with basal skull fracture
 - does not provide 100% protection against aspiration
- surgical airway (if unable to intubate using oral/nasal route and unable to ventilate)
 - cricothyroidotomy

Contraindications to Intubation

- supraglottic/glottic pathology that would preclude successful intubation



Approach to the Critically Ill Patient

1. Rapid Primary Survey (RPS)
2. Resuscitation (often concurrent with RPS)
3. Detailed Secondary Survey
4. Definitive Care



Noisy breathing is obstructed breathing until proven otherwise



Signs of Airway Obstruction

- Agitation, confusion, "universal choking sign"
- Respiratory distress
- Failure to speak, dysphonia
- Cyanosis



Medications that can be Delivered via ETT

NAVEL
 Naloxone (Narcan®)
 Atropine
 Ventolin® (salbutamol)
 Epinephrine
 Lidocaine

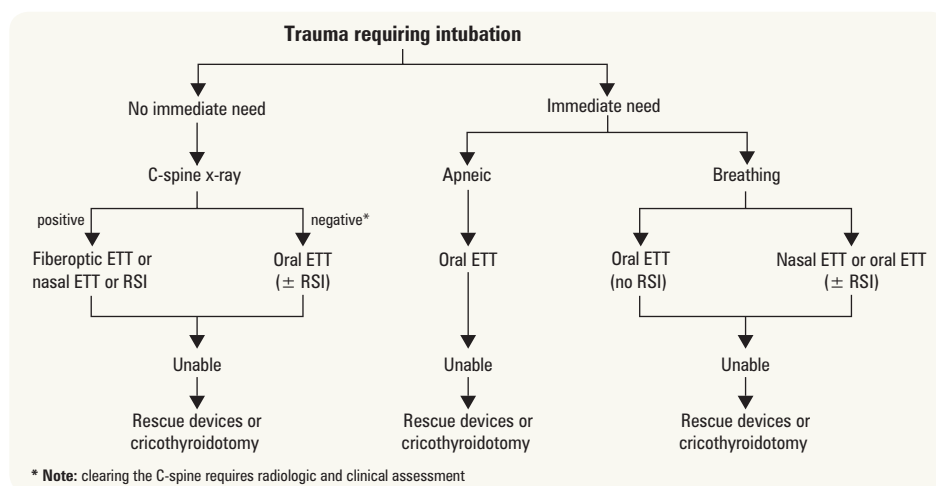


Figure 1. Approach to endotracheal intubation in an injured patient

B. BREATHING

• Look

- mental status (anxiety, agitation, decreased LOC), color, chest movement (bilateral vs. asymmetrical), respiratory rate/effort, nasal flaring

• Listen

- auscultate for signs of obstruction (e.g. stridor), breath sounds, symmetry of air entry, air escaping

• Feel

- tracheal shift, chest wall for crepitus, flail segments, sucking chest wounds, subcutaneous emphysema

Breathing Assessment

- objective measures of respiratory function: rate, oximetry, ABG, A-a gradient

Management of Breathing

- nasal prongs → simple face mask → non-rebreather mask → CPAP/BiPAP (in order of increasing F_iO_2)
- Venturi mask: used to precisely control O_2 delivery
- Bag-Valve mask and CPAP to supplement inadequate ventilation

C. CIRCULATION

Definition of Shock

- inadequate organ and tissue perfusion with oxygenated blood (brain, kidney, extremities)

Table 1. Major Types of Shock

Hypovolemic	Cardiogenic	Distributive (vasodilation)	Obstructive
Hemorrhage (external and internal)	Myocardial ischemia	Septic	Cardiac tamponade
Severe burns	Dysrhythmias	Anaphylactic	Tension pneumothorax
High output fistulas	CHF	Neurogenic (spinal cord injury)	PE
Dehydration (diarrhea, DKA)	Cardiomyopathies		Aortic stenosis
	Cardiac valve problems		Constrictive pericarditis

Clinical Evaluation

- early: tachypnea, tachycardia, narrow pulse pressure, reduced capillary refill, cool extremities, and reduced central venous pressure
- late: hypotension and altered mental status, reduced urine output

Table 2. Estimation of Degree of Hemorrhagic Shock

Class	I	II	III	IV
Blood loss	<750 cc	750-1,500 cc	1,500-2,000 cc	>2,000 cc
% of blood volume	<15%	15-30%	30-40%	>40%
Pulse	<100	>100	>120	>140
BP	Normal	Normal	Decreased	Decreased
Respiratory rate	20	30	35	>45
Capillary refill	Normal	Decreased	Decreased	Decreased
Urinary output	30 cc/h	20 cc/h	10 cc/h	None
Fluid replacement	Crystalloid	Crystalloid	Crystalloid + blood	Crystalloid + blood



Indications for Intubation

- Unable to protect airway (e.g. GCS <8; airway trauma)
- Inadequate oxygenation with spontaneous respiration (O_2 saturation <90% with 100% O_2 , or rising pCO_2)
- Profound shock
- Anticipatory: in trauma, overdose, CHF, asthma, COPD, and smoke inhalation injury
- Anticipated transfer of critically ill patients



Rescue Techniques in Intubation

- Bougie (used like a guidewire)
- Glidescope®
- Lighted stylet (use light through skin to determine if ETT in correct place)
- Fiberoptic intubation – indirect visualization using fiberoptic cable



Shock in a trauma patient is hemorrhagic until proven otherwise



Causes of Shock

SHOCKED

Septic, spinal/neurogenic, Hemorrhagic
 Obstructive (e.g. tension pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, PE)
 Cardiogenic (e.g. blunt myocardial injury, dysrhythmia, MI)
 anaphylactic
 Endocrine (e.g. Addison's, myxedema, coma)
 Drugs



Estimated Systolic Blood Pressure Based on Position of Most Distal Palpable Pulse

	sBP (mmHg)
Radial	>80
Femoral	>70
Carotid	>60

Management of Hemorrhagic Shock

- ABCs
- diagnose and manage underlying cause
- if bleeding externally, apply direct pressure and elevate extremities if possible
 - do not remove impaled objects as they tamponade hemorrhage
 - tourniquet as a last resort
- resuscitation
 - infuse 1-2 L of crystalloid with large bore IVs (warmed if possible)
 - if inadequate response, consider active internal bleeding (e.g. chest, abdomen, pelvis, femurs), will likely require surgical intervention
 - if severely hypotensive on arrival or if shock persists, consider pRBC transfusion
 - transfuse crossmatched (ideally) or type-specific blood if available
 - if unavailable, transfuse O-negative in children/women of childbearing age or O-positive in all others
 - with significant blood loss, early transfusion of platelets and FFP may improve outcomes

D. DISABILITY

- assess LOC using GCS
- pupils
 - assess equality, size, symmetry, reactivity to light
 - ♦ inequality/sluggish suggests local eye problem or lateralizing CNS lesion
 - ♦ relative afferent pupillary defect (swinging light test) – optic nerve damage
 - extraocular movements and nystagmus
 - fundoscopy (papilledema, hemorrhages)
 - reactive pupils + decreased LOC → metabolic or structural cause
 - non-reactive pupils + decreased LOC → structural cause (especially if asymmetric)

Glasgow Coma Scale

- for use in trauma patients with decreased LOC; good indicator of severity of injury and neurosurgical prognosis
- most useful if repeated; change in GCS with time is more relevant than the absolute number
- less meaningful for metabolic coma
- patient with deteriorating GCS needs immediate attention
- prognosis based on best post-resuscitation GCS
- reported as a 3 part score: Eyes + Verbal + Motor = Total
- if patient intubated, GCS score reported out of 10 + T (T = tubed, i.e. no verbal component)

Table 3. Glasgow Coma Scale

Eyes Open		Best Verbal Response		Best Motor Response	
Spontaneously	4	Answers questions appropriately	5	Obeys commands	6
To voice	3	Confused, disoriented	4	Localizes to pain	5
To pain	2	Inappropriate words	3	Withdraws from pain	4
No response	1	Incomprehensible sounds	2	Decorticate (flexion)	3
		No verbal response	1	Decerebrate (extension)	2
				No response	1

13-15 = mild injury, 9-12 = moderate injury, ≤8 = severe injury
See Table 32 for modified GCS for infants and children

E. EXPOSURE/ENVIRONMENT

- undress patient completely and assess entire body for injury; log roll to examine back
- DRE
- keep patient warm with a blanket ± radiant heaters; avoid hypothermia
- warm IV fluids/blood
- keep providers safe (contamination, combative patient)

2. Resuscitation

- done concurrently with primary survey
- attend to ABCs
- manage life-threatening problems as they are identified
- vital signs q5-15 min
- ECG, BP, and O₂ monitors
- Foley catheter and NG tube if indicated
- tests and investigations: CBC, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, glucose, amylase, INR/PTT, β-hCG, toxicology screen, cross and type



Fluid Resuscitation

- Give bolus until HR decreases, urine output increases, and patient stabilizes
- Maintenance: 4:2:1 rule
- 0-10 kg: 4 cc/kg/h
- 10-20 kg: 2 cc/kg/h
- Remaining weight: 1 cc/kg/h
- Replace ongoing losses and deficits (assume 10% of body weight)



3:1 Rule

Since only 30% of infused isotonic crystalloids remains in intravascular space, you must give 3x estimated blood loss



Initial Management of Any Patient in Shock

- ABCs
- IV fluids
- Oxygen
- Monitor (HR, BP, urine, mentation, O₂ saturation)
- Control hemorrhage



Unilateral, Dilated, Non-Reactive Pupil, Think:

- Focal mass lesion
- Epidural hematoma
- Subdural hematoma



Contraindications to Foley Insertion

- Blood at urethral meatus
- Scrotal hematoma
- High-riding prostate on DRE



NG Tube Contraindications

- Significant mid-face trauma
- Basal skull fracture

Table 4. 2010 AHA CPR Guidelines

Step/Action	Adult: >8 yr	Child: 1-8 yr	Infant: <1 yr
Airway	Head tilt-chin lift		
Breaths	2 breaths at 1 second/breath – stop once see chest rise		
Foreign-Body Airway Obstruction	Abdominal thrust		Back slaps and chest thrusts
Compressions			
Compression landmarks	In the center of the chest, between nipples		Just below nipple line
Compression method: push hard and fast, and allow for complete recoil	2 hands: heel of 1 hand with second hand on top	2 hands: heel of 1 hand with second on top, or 1 hand: heel of 1 hand only	2 fingers, or thumbs
Compression depth	At least 2 inches	About 1/3 to 1/2 the depth of the chest	
Compression rate	100/min		
Compression-ventilation ratio	30 compressions to 2 ventilations		
Compression-only CPR	Hands-only CPR is preferred if the bystander is not trained or does not feel confident in their ability to provide conventional CPR or if the bystander is trained but chooses to use compressions only		
Defibrillation	Immediate defibrillation for all rescuers responding to a sudden witnessed collapse Compressions (5 cycles/2 min) before AED is considered if unwitnessed arrest Manual defibrillators are preferred for children and infants but can use adult dose AED if a manual defibrillator is not available		

3. Secondary Survey

- done after rapid primary survey problems have been addressed
- identifies major injuries or areas of concern
- full physical exam and x-rays (C-spine, chest, pelvis – required in blunt trauma, consider T-spine and L-spine)

HISTORY

- “SAMPLE”: Signs and symptoms, Allergies, Medications, Past medical history, Last meal, Events related to injury

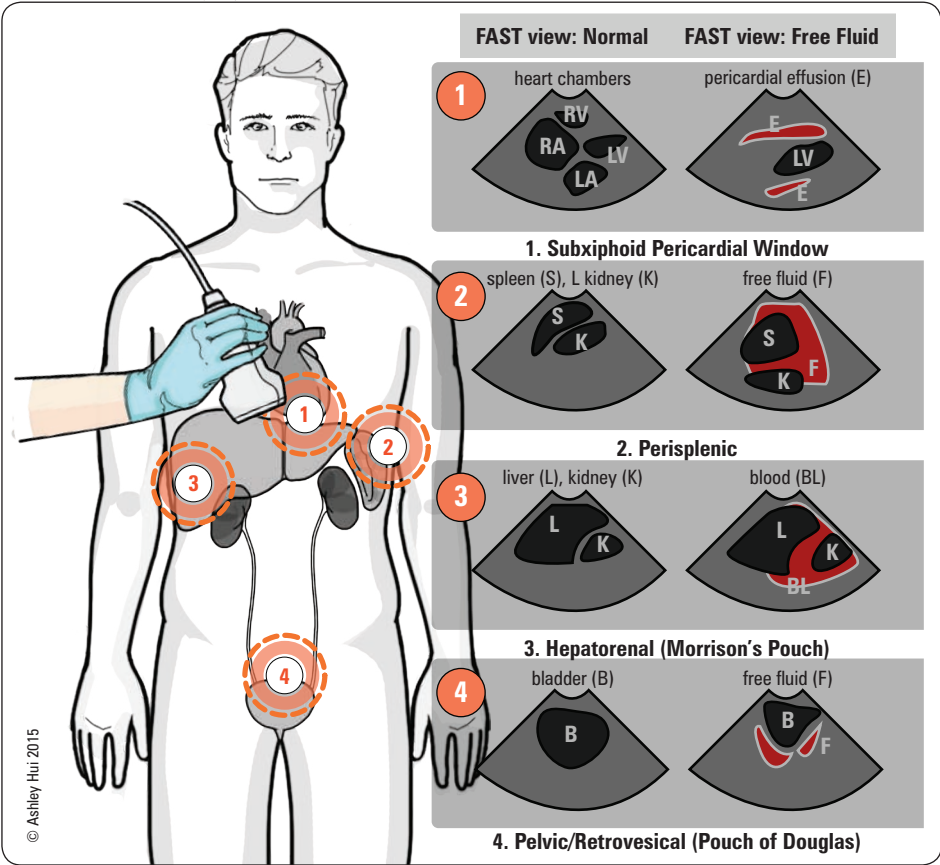


Figure 2. Four areas of a FAST

PHYSICAL EXAM

Head and Neck

- palpation of facial bones, scalp

Chest

- inspect for midline trachea, flail segment: ≥ 2 rib fractures in ≥ 2 places; if present look for associated hemothorax, pneumothorax, and contusions
- auscultate lung fields
- palpate for subcutaneous emphysema
- CXR

Abdomen

- assess for peritonitis, abdominal distention, and evidence of intra-abdominal bleeding
- FAST or CT (if stable)
- rectal exam for GI bleed, high riding prostate and anal tone (best to do during the log roll)
- bimanual exam in females as appropriate

Musculoskeletal

- examine all extremities for swelling, deformity, contusion, tenderness, ROM
- check for pulses and sensation in all injured limbs
- log roll and palpate thoracic and lumbar spines
- palpate iliac crests and pubic symphysis, pelvic stability (lateral, AP, vertical)
- pelvic x-ray

Neurological

- GCS
- full cranial nerve exam
- alterations of rate and rhythm of breathing are signs of structural or metabolic abnormalities
 - progressive deterioration of breathing pattern implies a failing CNS
- assess spinal cord integrity
 - conscious patient: assess distal sensation and motor
 - unconscious patient: response to painful or noxious stimulus applied to extremities



Non-contrast head CT is the best imaging modality for intracranial injury



Signs of Increased ICP

- Deteriorating LOC (hallmark)
- Deteriorating respiratory pattern
- Cushing reflex (high BP, low heart rate, irregular respirations)
- Lateralizing CNS signs (e.g. cranial nerve palsies, hemiparesis)
- Seizures
- Papilledema (occurs late)
- N/V and headache

Ethical Considerations

Consent to Treatment: Adults

- see [Ethical, Legal, and Organizational Medicine, ELOAM5](#)
- Emergency Rule: consent is not needed when a patient is at imminent risk from a serious injury AND obtaining consent is either: a) not possible, OR b) would increase risk to the patient
 - assumes that most people would want to be saved in an emergency
- any capable and informed patient can refuse treatment or part of treatment, even if it is life-saving
- exceptions to the Emergency Rule: treatment cannot be initiated if:
 - a competent patient has previously refused the same or similar treatment and there is no evidence to suggest the patient's wishes have changed
 - an advanced directive is available (e.g. do not resuscitate order)
 - NOTE: refusal of help in a suicide situation is NOT an exception; care must be given
- if in doubt, initiate treatment
 - care can be withdrawn if necessary at a later time or if wishes are clarified by family

Consent to Treatment: Children

- treat immediately if patient is at imminent risk
- parents/guardians have the right to make treatment decisions
- if parents refuse treatment that is life-saving or will potentially alter the child's quality of life, CAS must be contacted – consent of CAS is needed to treat

Other Issues of Consent

- need consent for HIV testing, as well as for administration of blood products
- however, if delay in substitute consent for blood transfusions puts patient at risk, transfusions can be given

Duty to Report

- law may vary depending on state
- examples: gunshot wounds, potential drunk drivers, suspected child abuse, various communicable diseases, medical unsuitability to drive, risk of substantial harm to others



Jehovah's Witnesses

- Capable adults have the right to refuse medical treatment
- May refuse whole blood, pRBCs, platelets, and plasma even if life-saving
- Should be questioned directly about the use of albumin, immunoglobulins, hemophilic preparations
- Do not allow autologous transfusion unless there is uninterrupted extra corporeal circulation
- Usually ask for the highest possible quality of care without the use of the above interventions (e.g. crystalloids for volume expansion, attempts at bloodless surgery)
- Patient will generally sign hospital forms releasing medical staff from liability
- Most legal cases involve children of Jehovah's Witnesses; if life-saving treatment is refused, contact CAS

Traumatology

- epidemiology
 - leading cause of death in patients <45 yr
 - 4th highest cause of death in North America
 - causes more deaths in children/adolescents than all diseases combined
- trimodal distribution of death
 - minutes: lethal injuries, death usually at the scene
 - early: death within 4-6 h – “golden hour” (decreased mortality with trauma care)
 - days-weeks: death from multiple organ dysfunction, sepsis, etc.
- injuries fall into two categories
 - blunt (most common): MVC, pedestrian-automobile impact, motorcycle collision, fall, assault, sports
 - penetrating (increasing in incidence): gunshot wound, stabbing, impalement

Considerations for Traumatic Injury

- important to know the mechanism of injury in order to anticipate traumatic injuries
- always look for an underlying cause (alcohol, medications, illicit substances, seizure, suicide attempt, medical problem)
- always inquire about head injury, loss of consciousness, amnesia, vomiting, headache, and seizure activity

Table 5. Mechanisms and Considerations of Traumatic Injuries

Mechanism of Injury	Special Considerations	Associated Injuries
Motor Vehicle Collision	Vehicle(s) involved: weight, size, speed, damage Location of patient in vehicle Use and type of seatbelt Ejection of patient from vehicle Entrapment of patient under vehicle Airbag deployment Helmet use in motorcycle collision	Head-on collision: head/facial, thoracic (aortic), lower extremity Lateral/T-bone collision: head, cervical spine, thoracic, abdominal, pelvic, and lower extremity Rear-end collision: hyper-extension of cervical spine (whiplash injury) Rollover
Pedestrian-Automobile Impact	High morbidity and mortality Vehicle speed is an important factor Site of impact on car	Children at increased risk of being run over (multisystem injuries) Adults tend to be struck in lower legs (lower extremity injuries), impacted against car (truncal injuries), and thrown to ground (HI)
Falls	1 storey = 12 ft = 3.6 m Distance of fall: 50% mortality at 4 storeys and 95% mortality at 7 storeys Landing position (vertical vs. horizontal)	Vertical: lower extremity, pelvic, and spine fractures; HI Horizontal: facial, upper extremity, and rib fractures; abdominal, thoracic, and HI



High Risk Injuries

- MVC at high speed, resulting in ejection from vehicle
- Motorcycle collisions
- Vehicle vs. pedestrian crashes
- Fall from height >12 ft (3.6 m)



Vehicle vs. Pedestrian Crash

In adults look for triad of injuries (Waddle's triad):

- Tibia-fibula or femur fracture
- Truncal injury
- Craniofacial injury



Cardiac Box: sternal notch, nipples, and xiphoid process; injuries inside this area should increase suspicion of cardiac injury



Always completely expose and count the number of wounds

Head Trauma

- see [Neurosurgery, NS29](#)
- 60% of MVC-related deaths are due to head injury

Specific Injuries

- fractures
 - Dx: non-contrast head CT and physical exam
- A. skull fractures
 - vault fractures
 - ♦ linear, non-depressed
 - most common
 - typically occur over temporal bone, in area of middle meningeal artery (commonest cause of epidural hematoma)
 - ♦ depressed
 - open (associated overlying scalp laceration and torn dura, skull fracture disrupting paranasal sinuses or middle ear) vs. closed
 - basal skull
 - ♦ typically occur through floor of anterior cranial fossa (longitudinal more common than transverse)
 - ♦ clinical diagnosis superior as poorly visualized on CT
- B. facial fractures (see [Plastic Surgery, PL28](#))
 - neuronal injury



Signs of Basal Skull Fracture

- Battle's sign (bruised mastoid process)
- Hemotympanum
- Raccoon eyes (periorbital bruising)
- CSF rhinorrhea/otorrhea



- beware of open fracture or sinus fractures (risk of infection)
- severe facial fractures may pose risk to airway from profuse bleeding
- **scalp laceration**
 - can be a source of significant bleeding
 - achieve hemostasis, inspect and palpate for skull bone defects ± CT head (rule-out skull fracture)
- **neuronal injury**
 - A. diffuse
 - mild TBI = concussion
 - ♦ transient alteration in mental status that may involve loss of consciousness
 - hallmarks of concussion: confusion and amnesia, which may occur immediately after the trauma or min later
 - loss of consciousness (if present) must be less than 30 min, initial GCS must be between 13-15, and post-traumatic amnesia must be less than 24 h
 - diffuse axonal injury
 - ♦ mild: coma 6-24 h, possibly lasting deficit
 - ♦ moderate: coma >24 h, little or no signs of brainstem dysfunction
 - ♦ severe: coma >24 h, frequent signs of brainstem dysfunction
 - B. focal injuries
 - contusions
 - intracranial hemorrhage (epidural, subdural, intracerebral)

ASSESSMENT OF BRAIN INJURY

History

- pre-hospital status
- mechanism of injury

Physical Exam

- assume C-spine injury until ruled out
- vital signs
 - shock (not likely due to isolated brain injury, except in infants)
 - Cushing's response to increasing ICP (bradycardia, HTN, irregular respirations)
- severity of injury determined by
 1. LOC
 - ♦ GCS ≤8 intubate, any change in score of 3 or more = serious injury
 - ♦ mild TBI = 13-15, moderate = 9-12, severe = 3-8
 2. pupils: size, anisocoria >1 mm (in patient with altered LOC), response to light
 3. lateralizing signs (motor/sensory)
 - ♦ may become more subtle with increasing severity of injury
- reassess frequently

Investigations

- labs: CBC, electrolytes, PT/PTT or INR/PTT, glucose, toxicology screen
- CT scan (non-contrast) to exclude intracranial mass lesions
- C-spine imaging, often with CT head and neck to exclude intracranial mass lesions

Management

- goal in ED: reduce secondary injury by avoiding hypoxia, ischemia, decreased CPP, seizure
- general
 - ABCs
 - ensure oxygen delivery to brain through intubation and prevent hypercarbia
 - maintain BP (sBP >90)
 - treat other injuries
- early neurosurgical consultation for acute and subsequent patient management
 - medical management
 - ♦ seizure treatment/prophylaxis
 - benzodiazepines, phenytoin, phenobarbital
 - steroids are of no proven value
 - ♦ treat suspected raised ICP → consider if head injury with signs of increased ICP
 - raise head of stretcher 20° if patient hemodynamically stable
 - intubate and hyperventilate (100% O₂) to a pCO₂ of 30-35 mmHg
 - mannitol 1 g/kg infused as rapidly as possible (contraindicated in shock and renal failure/anuria)
 - consider paralyzing medications if agitated/high airway pressures
 - maintenance of CPP is critical (CPP = MAP - ICP)

Disposition

- neurosurgical ICU admission for severe HI
- in hemodynamically unstable patient with other injuries, prioritize most life-threatening injuries and maintain cerebral perfusion
- for minor head injury not requiring admission, provide 24 h HI protocol to competent caregiver, follow-up with neurology as even seemingly minor HI may cause lasting deficits



Warning Signs of Severe Head Injury

- GCS <8
- Deteriorating GCS
- Unequal pupils
- Lateralizing signs

N.B. Altered LOC is a hallmark of brain injury



Canadian CT Head Rule

Lancet 2001;357:1391-1396

CT Head is only required for patients with minor head injuries with any one of the following:

High Risk (for neurological intervention)

- GCS score <15 at 2 h after injury.
- Suspected open or depressed skull fracture.
- Any sign of basal skull fracture (hemotympanum, "raccoon" eyes, CSF otorrhea/rhinorrhea, Battle's sign).
- Vomiting ≥2 episodes.
- Age ≥65 yr.

Medium Risk (for brain injury on CT)

- Amnesia before impact >30 min (i.e. cannot recall events just before impact).
- Dangerous mechanism (pedestrian struck by motor vehicle, occupant ejected from motor vehicle, fall from height >3 feet or five stairs).

Minor head injury is defined as witnessed loss of consciousness, definite amnesia, or witnessed disorientation in a patient with a GCS score of 13-15.
NB: Canadian CT Head Rule does not apply for non-trauma cases, for GCS <13, age <16, for patients on Coumadin® and/or having a bleeding disorder, or having an obvious open skull fracture.

Mild Traumatic Brain Injury

Epidemiology

- TBI results in 1.7 million deaths, hospitalizations, and ED visits each yr (US)
- 75% are estimated to be mild TBI; remainder are moderate or severe (see [Neurosurgery, NS31](#))
- highest rates in children 0-4 yr, adolescents 15-19 yr, and elderly >65 yr

Clinical Features

- somatic: headache, sleep disturbance, N/V, blurred vision
- cognitive dysfunction: attentional impairment, reduced processing speed, drowsiness, amnesia
- emotion and behavior: impulsivity, irritability, depression
- severe concussion: may precipitate seizure, bradycardia, hypotension, sluggish pupils

Etiology

- falls, MVC, and traffic accidents, struck by an object, assault, sports

Investigations

- neurological exam
- concussion recognition tool (see [thinkfirst.ca](#))
- imaging – CT as per Canadian CT Head Rules, or MRI if worsening symptoms despite normal CT

Treatment

- close observation and follow-up; for patients at risk of intracranial complications, give appropriate discharge instructions to patient and family, watch for changes to clinical features above, and if change, return to ED
- hospitalization with normal CT (GCS <15, seizures, bleeding diathesis), or with abnormal CT
- early rehabilitation to maximize outcomes
- pharmacological management of pain, depression, headache
- follow Return to Play guidelines

Prognosis

- most recover with minimal treatment
 - athletes with previous concussion are at increased risk of cumulative brain injury
- repeat TBI can lead to life-threatening cerebral edema or permanent impairment



Extent of retrograde amnesia correlates with severity of injury



Every Patient with One or More of the Following Signs or Symptoms should be Placed in a C-Spine Collar

- Midline tenderness
- Neurological symptoms or signs
- Significant distracting injuries
- Head injury
- Intoxication
- Dangerous mechanism
- History of altered LOC



Of the investigations, the lateral C-spine x-ray is the single most important film; 95% of radiologically visible abnormalities are found on this film



Cauda Equina Syndrome can occur with any spinal cord injury below T10 vertebrae; look for incontinence, anterior thigh pain, quadriceps weakness, abnormal sacral sensation, decreased rectal tone, and variable reflexes



The Canadian C-Spine Rule vs. the NEXUS Low-Risk Criteria in Patients with Trauma
NEJM 2003;349:2510-2518

Purpose: To compare the clinical performance of the Canadian C-Spine Rule (CCR) and the National Emergency X-Radiography Utilization Study (NEXUS) Low-Risk Criteria (NLC).

Study: Trauma patients (n=8,283) in stable condition were prospectively evaluated by both the CCR and NLC by 394 physicians before radiography. 2% of these patients had a C-spine injury.

Results: Compared to the NLC, the CCR was more sensitive (99.4 vs. 90.7%) and more specific (45.1 vs. 36.8%) after exclusion of indeterminate cases. The number of missed patients would be 1 for the CCR and 16 for the NLC. The ROM was not evaluated in some CCR cases likely because physicians were not comfortable with the procedure and this may slightly lower the sensitivity or specificity of the CCR in practice.

Summary: The CCR is superior to the NLC in alert and stable patients with trauma. The use of the CCR can result in lower radiography rates.

Spine and Spinal Cord Trauma

- assume cord injury with significant falls (>12 ft), deceleration injuries, blunt trauma to head, neck, or back
- spinal immobilization (cervical collar, spine board during patient transport only) must be maintained until spinal injury has been ruled out (Figure 3)
- vertebral injuries may be present without spinal cord injury; normal neurologic exam does not exclude spinal injury
- cord may be injured despite normal C-spine x-ray (SCIWORA = spinal cord injury without radiologic abnormality)
- injuries can include: complete/incomplete transection, cord edema, spinal shock

History

- mechanism of injury, previous deficits, SAMPLE
- neck pain, paralysis/weakness, paresthesia

Physical Exam

- ABCs
- abdominal: ecchymosis, tenderness
- neurological: complete exam, including mental status
- spine: maintain neutral position, palpate C-spine; log roll, then palpate T-spine and L-spine; assess rectal tone
 - when palpating, assess for tenderness, muscle spasm, bony deformities, step-off, and spinous process malalignment
- extremities: check cap refill, suspect thoracolumbar injury with calcaneal fractures

Investigations

- labs: CBC, electrolytes, Cr, glucose, coagulation profile, cross and type, toxicology screen
- imaging
 - full C-spine x-ray series for trauma (AP, lateral, odontoid)
- thoracolumbar x-rays
 - AP and lateral views
 - indications
 - ♦ patients with C-spine injury
 - ♦ unconscious patients (with appropriate mechanism of injury)
 - ♦ patients with neurological symptoms or findings

- ♦ patients with deformities that are palpable when patient is log rolled
- ♦ patients with back pain
- ♦ patients with bilateral calcaneal fractures (due to fall from height)
 - concurrent burst fractures of the lumbar or thoracic spine in 10% (T11-L2)
- consider CT (for subtle bony injuries), MRI (for soft tissue injuries) if appropriate

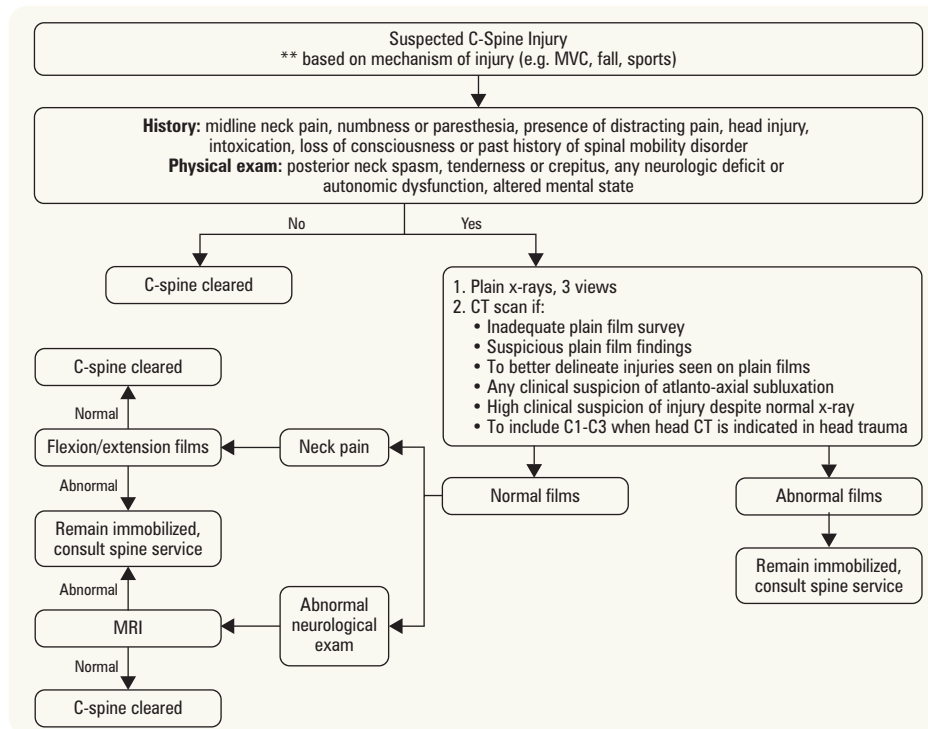


Figure 3. Approach to clearing the C-spine

Can Clear C-Spine if:

- oriented to person, place, time, and event
- no evidence of intoxication
- no posterior midline cervical tenderness
- no focal neurological deficits
- no painful distracting injuries (e.g. long bone fracture)

Management of Cord Injury

- immobilize
- evaluate ABCs
- treat shock (maintain sBP >100 mmHg)
- insert NG and Foley catheter
- high dose steroids: methylprednisolone 30 mg/kg bolus, then 5.4 mg/kg/h drip, start within 6-8 h of injury (controversial and recently has less support)
- complete imaging of spine and consult spine service if available
- continually reassess high cord injuries as edema can travel up cord
- if cervical cord lesion, watch for respiratory insufficiency
 - low cervical transection (C5-T1) produces abdominal breathing (phrenic innervation of diaphragm still intact)
 - high cervical cord injury (above C4) may require intubation and ventilation
- beware of hypotension (neurogenic shock)
- treatment: warm blanket, Trendelenburg position (occasionally), volume infusion, consider vasopressors

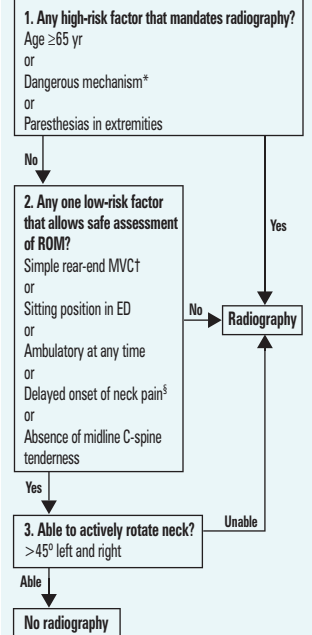
Approach to C-Spine X-Rays

- 3-view C-spine series is the screening modality of choice
 1. lateral C1-T1 ± swimmer's view
 - ♦ lateral view is best, identifies 90-95% of injuries
 2. odontoid view (open mouth or oblique submental view)
 - ♦ examine the dens for fractures
 - if unable to rule out fracture, repeat view or consider CT or plain film tomography
 - ♦ examine lateral aspects of C1 and spacing relative to C2

**The Canadian C-Spine Rule**

JAMA 2001;286:1841-1848

For Alert (GCS Score = 15) and Stable Trauma Patients where C-Spine Injury is a Concern



*Dangerous Mechanism:

- Fall from ≥1 meter/5 stairs
- Axial load to head (e.g. diving)
- MVC high speed (>100 km/h), rollover, ejection
- Motorized recreational vehicles
- Bicycle collision

†Simple rear-end MVC excludes:

- Pushed into oncoming traffic
- Hit by bus/large truck
- Rollover
- Hit by high-speed vehicle

‡Delayed: not immediate onset of neck pain

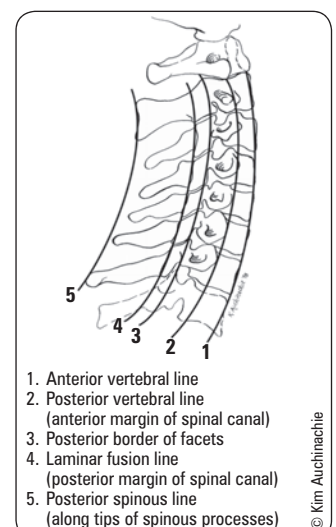


Figure 4. Lines of contour on a lateral C-spine x-ray



Prevertebral soft tissue swelling is only 49% sensitive for injury

3. AP view

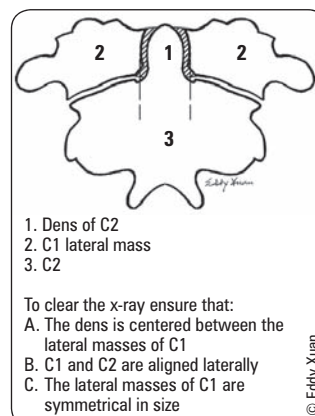
- ♦ alignment of spinous processes in the midline
- ♦ spacing of spinous processes should be equal
- ♦ check vertebral bodies and facet dislocations

Table 6. Interpretation of Lateral View: The ABCS

A Adequacy and Alignment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Must see C1 to C7-T1 junction; if not, downward traction of shoulders, swimmer's view, bilateral supine obliques, or CT scan needed • Lines of contour – in children <8 yr of age, can see physiologic subluxation of C2 on C3, and C3 on C4, but the spino-laminar line is maintained • Fanning of spinous processes suggests posterior ligamentous disruption • Widening of facet joints • Check atlanto-occipital joint • Line extending inferiorly from clivus should transect odontoid • Atlanto-axial articulation, widening of predental space (normal: <3 mm in adults, <5 mm in children) indicates injury of C1 or C2
B Bones	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Height, width, and shape of each vertebral body • Pedicles, facets, and laminae should appear as one – doubling suggests rotation
C Cartilage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Intervertebral disc spaces – wedging anteriorly or posteriorly suggests vertebral compression
S Soft Tissues	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Widening of retropharyngeal (normal: <7 mm at C1-4, may be wide in children <2 yr on expiration) or retrotracheal spaces (normal: <22 mm at C6-T1, <14 mm in children <5 yr)

Sequelae of C-Spine Fractures

- see [Neurosurgery, NS32](#)
- acute phase of SCI
 - spinal shock: absence of all voluntary and reflex activity below level of injury
 - ♦ decreased reflexes, no sensation, flaccid paralysis below level of injury, lasting days to months
 - neurogenic shock: loss of vasomotor tone, SNS tone
 - ♦ watch for: hypotension (lacking SNS), bradycardia (unopposed PNS), poikilothermia (lacking SNS so no shunting of blood from extremities to core)
 - ♦ occurs within 30 min of SCI at level T6 or above, lasting up to 6 wk
 - ♦ provide airway support, fluids, atropine (for bradycardia), vasopressors for BP support
- chronic phase of SCI
 - autonomic dysreflexia: in patients with an SCI at level T6 or above
 - ♦ signs and symptoms: pounding headache, nasal congestion, feeling of apprehension or anxiety, visual changes, dangerously increased sBP and dBP
 - ♦ common triggers
 - GU causes: bladder distention, urinary tract infection, and kidney stones
 - GI causes: fecal impaction or bowel distention
 - ♦ treatment: monitoring and controlling BP, prior to addressing causative issue

**Figure 5. C-spine x-ray; odontoid view****Supine Oblique Views**

- Rarely used
- Better visualization of posterior element fractures (lamina, pedicle, facet joint)
- Good to assess patency of neural foramina
- Can be used to visualize the C7-T1 junction



20% of C-spine fractures are accompanied by other spinal fractures, so ensure thoracic and lumbar spine x-rays are normal before proceeding to OR



Trauma to the chest accounts for 50% of trauma deaths



80% of all chest injuries can be managed non-surgically with simple measures such as intubation, chest tubes, and pain control

Chest Trauma

- two types: those found and managed in 1° survey and those found and managed in 2° survey

Table 7. Life-Threatening Chest Injuries Found in 1° Survey

	Physical Exam	Investigations	Management
Airway Obstruction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anxiety, stridor, hoarseness, altered mental status • Apnea, cyanosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not wait for ABG to intubate 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Definitive airway management • Intubate early • Remove foreign body if visible with laryngoscope prior to intubation
Tension Pneumothorax	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Respiratory distress, tachycardia, distended neck veins, cyanosis, asymmetry of chest wall motion • Tracheal deviation away from pneumothorax • Percussion hyperresonance • Unilateral absence of breath sounds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-radiographic diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Needle thoracostomy – large bore needle, 2nd ICS mid clavicular line, followed by chest tube in 5th ICS, anterior axillary line

Table 7. Life-Threatening Chest Injuries Found in 1° Survey (continued)

	Physical Exam	Investigations	Management
Open Pneumothorax • Air entering chest from wound rather than trachea	• Gunshot or other wound (hole >2/3 tracheal diameter) ± exit wound • Unequal breath sounds	• ABG: decreased pO ₂	• Air-tight dressing sealed on 3 sides • Chest tube • Surgery
Massive Hemothorax • >1,500 cc blood loss in chest cavity	• Pallor, flat neck veins, shock • Unilateral dullness • Absent breath sounds, hypotension	• Usually only able to do supine CXR – entire lung appears radioopaque as blood spreads out over posterior thoracic cavity	• Restore blood volume • Chest tube • Thoracotomy if: • >1,500 cc total blood loss • ≥200 cc/h continued drainage
Flail Chest • Free-floating segment of chest wall due to >2 rib fractures, each at 2 sites • Underlying lung contusion (cause of morbidity and mortality)	• Paradoxical movement of flail segment • Palpable crepitus of ribs • Decreased air entry on affected side	• ABG: decreased pO ₂ , increased pCO ₂ • CXR: rib fractures, lung contusion	• O ₂ + fluid therapy + pain control • Judicious fluid therapy in absence of systemic hypotension • Positive pressure ventilation • ± intubation and ventilation
Cardiac Tamponade • Clinical diagnosis • Pericardial fluid accumulation impairing ventricular function	• Penetrating wound (usually) • Beck's triad: hypotension, distended neck veins, muffled heart sounds • Tachycardia, tachypnea • Pulsus paradoxus • Kussmaul's sign (increased JVP with inspiration)	• Echocardiogram • FAST	• IV fluids • Pericardiocentesis • Open thoracotomy

Table 8. Potentially Life-Threatening Chest Injuries Found in 2° Survey

	Physical Exam	Investigations	Management
Pulmonary Contusion	• Blunt trauma to chest • Interstitial edema impairs compliance and gas exchange	• CXR: areas of opacification of lung within 6 h of trauma	• Maintain adequate ventilation • Monitor with ABG, pulse oximeter, and ECG • Chest physiotherapy • Positive pressure ventilation if severe
Ruptured Diaphragm	• Blunt trauma to chest or abdomen (e.g. high lap belt in MVC)	• CXR: abnormality of diaphragm/lower lung fields/NG tube placement • CT scan and endoscopy: sometimes helpful for diagnosis	• Laparotomy for diaphragm repair and associated intra-abdominal injuries
Esophageal Injury	• Usually penetrating trauma (pain out of proportion to degree of injury)	• CXR: mediastinal air (not always) • Esophagram (Gastrografin®) • Flexible esophagoscopy	• Early repair (within 24 h) improves outcome but all require repair
Aortic Tear • 90% tear at subclavian (near ligamentum arteriosum), most die at scene • Salvageable if diagnosis made rapidly	• Sudden high speed deceleration (e.g. MVC, fall, airplane crash), complaints of chest pain, dyspnea, hoarseness (frequently absent) • Decreased femoral pulses, differential arm BP (arch tear)	• CXR, CT scan, transesophageal echo, aortography (gold standard) • See sidebar for CXR features	• Thoracotomy (may treat other severe injuries first)
Blunt Myocardial Injury (rare)	• Blunt trauma to chest (usually in setting of multi-system trauma and therefore difficult to diagnose) • Physical exam: overlying injury, e.g. fractures, chest wall contusion	• ECG: dysrhythmias, ST changes • Patients with a normal ECG and normal hemodynamics never get dysrhythmias	• O ₂ • Antidysrhythmic agents • Analgesia

Other Potentially Life-Threatening Injuries Related to the Chest**Penetrating Neck Trauma**

- includes all penetrating trauma to the three zones of the neck
- management: injuries deep to platysma require further evaluation by angiography, contrast CT, or surgery
- do not explore penetrating neck wounds except in the OR

Airway Injuries

- always maintain a high index of suspicion

**3-way Seal for Open Pneumothorax (i.e. sucking chest wound)**

Allows air to escape during the expiratory phase (so that you do not get a tension pneumothorax) but seals itself to allow adequate breaths during the inspiratory phase



Pulsus Paradoxus: a drop in BP of >10 mmHg with inspiration; recall that BP normally drops with inspiration, but what's "paradoxical" about this is that it drops more than it should



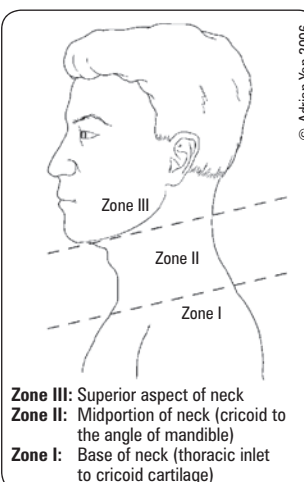
Ruptured diaphragm is more often diagnosed on the left side, as liver conceals right side defect

**Aortic Tear: ABC WHITE**

x-ray features of Aortic tear
depressed left mainstem Bronchus
pleural Cap
Wide mediastinum (most consistent)
Hemothorax
Indistinct aortic knuckle
Tracheal deviation to right side
Esophagus (NG tube) deviated to right
(Note: present in 85% of cases, but cannot rule out)

**If Penetrating Neck Trauma Present, DON'T:**

- Clamp structures (can damage nerves)
- Probe
- Insert NG tube (leads to bleeding)
- Remove weapon/impaed object

**Figure 6. Zones of the neck in trauma**

- larynx
 - history: strangulation, direct blow, blunt trauma, any penetrating injury involving platysma
 - triad: hoarseness, subcutaneous emphysema, palpable fracture, crepitus
 - other symptoms: hemoptysis, dyspnea, dysphonia
 - investigations: CXR, CT scan, arteriography (if penetrating)
 - management
 - ♦ airway: manage early because of edema
 - ♦ C-spine may also be injured, consider mechanism of injury
 - ♦ surgical: tracheotomy vs. repair
- trachea/bronchus
 - frequently missed
 - history: deceleration, penetration, increased intra-thoracic pressure, complaints of dyspnea, hemoptysis
 - examination: subcutaneous air, Hamman's sign (crunching sound synchronous with heart beat)
 - CXR: mediastinal air, persistent pneumothorax or persistent air leak after chest tube inserted for pneumothorax
 - management: surgical repair if >1/3 circumference

Abdominal Trauma

- two mechanisms
 - blunt: usually causes solid organ injury (spleen = most common, liver = 2nd)
 - penetrating: usually causes hollow organ injury or liver injury (most common)

BLUNT TRAUMA

- results in two types of hemorrhage: intra-abdominal and retroperitoneal
- adopt high clinical suspicion of bleeding in multi-system trauma

History

- mechanism of injury, SAMPLE history

Physical Exam

- often unreliable in multi-system trauma, wide spectrum of presentations
 - slow blood loss not immediately apparent
 - other injuries may mask symptoms
 - serial examinations are required
- abdomen
 - inspect: contusions, abrasions, seatbelt sign, distention
 - auscultate: bruits, bowel sounds
 - palpate: tenderness, rebound tenderness, rigidity, guarding
 - DRE: rectal tone, blood, bone fragments, prostate location
 - placement of NG, Foley catheter should be considered part of the abdominal exam
- other systems to assess: cardiovascular, respiratory (possibility of diaphragm rupture), genitourinary, pelvis, back/neurological

Investigations

- labs: CBC, electrolytes, coagulation, cross and type, glucose, Cr, CK, lipase, amylase, liver enzymes, ABG, blood EtOH, β -hCG, U/A, toxicology screen

Table 9. Imaging in Abdominal Trauma

Imaging	Strengths	Limitations
X-Ray	Chest (looking for free air under diaphragm, diaphragmatic hernia, air-fluid levels), pelvis, cervical, thoracic, lumbar spines	Soft tissue not well visualized
CT Scan	Most specific test	Radiation exposure 20x more than x-ray Cannot use if hemodynamic instability
Diagnostic Peritoneal Lavage (rarely used)	Most sensitive test Tests for intra-peritoneal bleed	Cannot test for retroperitoneal bleed or diaphragmatic rupture Cannot distinguish lethal from trivial bleed Results can take up to 1 h
U/S: FAST	Identifies presence/absence of free fluid in peritoneal cavity RAPID exam: less than 5 min Can also examine pericardium and pleural cavities	NOT used to identify specific organ injuries If patient has ascites, FAST will be falsely positive



Seatbelt Injuries may Cause:

- Retroperitoneal duodenal trauma
- Intraperitoneal bowel transection
- Mesenteric injury
- L-spine injury



Indications for Foley and NG Tube in Abdominal Trauma

Foley catheter: unconscious or patient with multiple injuries who cannot void spontaneously

NG tube: used to decompress the stomach and proximal small bowel



Criteria for Positive Lavage

- >10 cc gross blood
- Bile, bacteria, foreign material
- RBC count >100,000 x 10⁶/L
- WBC >500 x 10⁶/L
- Amylase >175 IU

- imaging must be done if
 - equivocal abdominal examination, altered sensorium, or distracting injuries (e.g. head trauma, spinal cord injury resulting in abdominal anesthesia)
 - unexplained shock/hypotension
 - multiple trauma patients who must undergo general anesthesia for orthopedic, neurosurgical, or other injuries
 - fractures of lower ribs, pelvis, spine
 - positive FAST

Management

- general: ABCs, fluid resuscitation, and stabilization
- surgical: watchful waiting vs. laparotomy
- solid organ injuries: decision based on hemodynamic stability, not the specific injuries
- hemodynamically unstable or persistently high transfusion requirements: laparotomy
- hollow organ injuries: laparotomy
- even if low suspicion of injury: admit and observe for 24 h

PENETRATING TRAUMA

- high risk of gastrointestinal perforation and sepsis
- history: size of blade, caliber/distance from gun, route of entry
- local wound exploration under direct vision may determine lack of peritoneal penetration (not reliable in inexperienced hands) with the following exceptions:
 - thoracoabdominal region (may cause pneumothorax)
 - back or flanks (muscles too thick)

Management

- general: ABCs, fluid resuscitation, and stabilization
- gunshot wounds → always require laparotomy



Laparotomy is mandatory if penetrating trauma and:

- Shock
- Peritonitis
- Evisceration
- Free air in abdomen
- Blood in NG tube, Foley catheter, or on rectal exam



"Rule of Thirds" for Stab Wounds:

- 1/3 do not penetrate peritoneal cavity
- 1/3 penetrate but are harmless
- 1/3 cause injury requiring surgery

Genitourinary Tract Injuries

- see [Urology, U31](#)

Etiology

- blunt trauma: often associated with pelvic fractures
 - upper tract
 - ♦ renal
 - contusions (minor injury – parenchymal ecchymoses with intact renal capsule)
 - parenchymal tears/laceration: non-communicating (hematoma) vs. communicating (urine extravasation, hematuria)
 - ♦ ureter: rare, at uretero-pelvic junction
 - lower tract
 - ♦ bladder
 - extraperitoneal rupture of bladder from pelvic fracture fragments
 - intraperitoneal rupture of bladder from trauma and full bladder
 - ♦ urethra
 - posterior urethral injuries: MVCs, falls, pelvic fractures
 - anterior urethral injuries: blunt trauma to perineum, straddle injuries/direct strikes
 - external genitalia
- penetrating trauma
 - damage to: kidney, bladder, ureter (rare), external genitalia
- acceleration/deceleration injury
 - renal pedicle injury: high mortality rate (laceration and thrombosis of renal artery, renal vein, and their branches)
- iatrogenic
 - ureter and urethra (from instrumentation)

History

- mechanism of injury
- hematuria (microscopic or gross), blood on underwear
- dysuria, urinary retention
- history of hypotension



Gross hematuria suggests bladder injury

Physical Exam

- abdominal pain, flank pain, CVA tenderness, upper quadrant mass, perineal lacerations
- DRE: sphincter tone, position of prostate, presence of blood
- scrotum: ecchymoses, lacerations, testicular disruption, hematomas
- bimanual exam, speculum exam
- extraperitoneal bladder rupture: pelvic instability, suprapubic tenderness from mass of urine or extravasated blood
- intraperitoneal bladder rupture: acute abdomen
- urethral injury: perineal ecchymosis, scrotal hematoma, blood at penile meatus, high riding prostate, pelvic fractures

Investigations

- urethra: retrograde urethrography
- bladder: U/A, CT scan, urethrogram ± retrograde cystoscopy, ± cystogram (distended bladder + post-void)
- ureter: retrograde ureterogram
- renal: CT scan (best, if hemodynamically stable), intravenous pyelogram

Management

- urology consult
- renal
 - minor injuries: conservative management
 - ♦ bedrest, hydration, analgesia, antibiotics
 - major injuries: admit
 - ♦ conservative management with frequent reassessments, serial U/A ± re-imaging
 - ♦ surgical repair (exploration, nephrectomy): hemodynamically unstable or continuing to bleed >48 h, major urine extravasation, renal pedicle injury, all penetrating wounds and major lacerations, infections, renal artery thrombosis
- ureter
 - ureteroureterostomy
- bladder
 - extraperitoneal
 - ♦ minor rupture: Foley drainage x 10-14 d
 - ♦ major rupture: surgical repair
 - intraperitoneal
 - ♦ drain abdomen and surgical repair
- urethra
 - anterior: conservative, if cannot void → Foley or suprapubic cystostomy and antibiotics
 - posterior: suprapubic cystostomy (avoid catheterization) ± surgical repair



In the case of gross hematuria, the GU system is investigated from distal to proximal (i.e. urethrogram, cystogram, etc.)

Orthopedic Injuries

- see [Orthopedics](#) (Shoulder OR11, Knee OR30, Wrist OR20, Ankle OR36)

Goals of ED Treatment

- diagnose potentially life/limb threatening injuries
- reduce and immobilize fractures (cast/splint) as appropriate
- provide adequate pain relief
- arrange proper follow-up if necessary

History

- use SAMPLE
- mechanism of injury may be very important

Physical Exam

- look (inspection): “SEADS” Swelling, Erythema, Atrophy, Deformity, Skin changes (e.g. bruises)
- feel (palpation): all joints/bones for local tenderness, swelling, warmth, crepitus, joint effusions, subtle deformity
- move: joints affected plus those above and below injury – active ROM preferred to passive
- neurovascular status: distal to injury (before and after reduction)



Description of Fractures

SOLARTAT

Site
Open vs. closed
Length
Articular
Rotation
Translation
Alignment/Angulation
Type e.g. Salter-Harris, etc.

LIFE- AND LIMB-THREATENING INJURIES

Table 10. Life- and Limb-Threatening Orthopedic Injuries

Life-Threatening Injuries (usually blood loss)	Limb-Threatening Injuries (usually interruption of blood supply)
Major pelvic fractures	Fracture/dislocation of ankle (talar AVN)
Traumatic amputations	Crush injuries
Massive long bone injuries (beware of fat emboli)	Compartment syndrome
Vascular injury proximal to knee/elbow	Open fractures
	Dislocations of knee/hip
	Fractures above knee/elbow

Open Fractures

- communication between fracture site and external surface of skin – increased risk of osteomyelitis
- remove gross debris, irrigate, cover with sterile dressing – formal irrigation and debridement often done in the OR
- control bleeding with pressure (no clamping)
- splint
- antibiotics (1st generation cephalosporin and aminoglycoside) and tetanus prophylaxis
- must secure definitive surgical care within 6-8 h

Vascular Injuries

- realign limb/apply longitudinal traction and reassess pulses (e.g. Doppler probe)
- surgical consult
- direct pressure if external bleeding

Compartment Syndrome

- increased interstitial pressure in an anatomical “compartment” (forearm, calf) with little room for expansion, resulting in decreased perfusion and potential muscle/nerve necrosis
- clinical diagnosis: maintain a high index of suspicion
 - pain out of proportion to the injury
 - pain worse with passive stretch
 - look for “the 6 Ps”
- requires prompt decompression: remove constrictive casts, dressings; fasciotomy may be needed emergently

UPPER EXTREMITY INJURIES

- anterior shoulder dislocation
 - axillary nerve (lateral aspect of shoulder) and musculocutaneous nerve (extensor aspect of forearm) at risk
 - seen on lateral view: humeral head anterior to glenoid
 - ♦ reduce (traction, scapular manipulation), immobilize in internal rotation, repeat x-ray, out-patient follow-up with orthopedics
 - ♦ with forceful injury, look for fracture
- Colles' fracture
 - distal radius fracture with dorsal displacement from “Fall on Outstretched Hand” (FOOSH)
 - AP film: shortening, radial deviation, radial displacement
 - lateral film: dorsal displacement, volar angulation
 - reduce, immobilize with splint, out-patient follow-up with orthopedics or immediate orthopedics referral if complicated fracture
 - if involvement of articular surface, emergent orthopedic referral
- scaphoid fracture
 - tenderness in anatomical snuff box, pain on scaphoid tubercle, pain on axial loading of thumb
 - negative x-ray: thumb spica splint, repeat x-ray in 1 wk ± bone scan
 - positive x-ray: thumb spica splint x 6-8 wk, repeat x-ray in 2 wk
 - risk of AVN of scaphoid if not immobilized
 - outpatient orthopedic follow-up

LOWER EXTREMITY INJURIES

- ankle and foot fractures
 - see Ottawa Ankle and Foot Rules
- knee injuries
 - see Ottawa Knee Rules



When Dealing with an Open Fracture, Remember “STAND”

Splint
Tetanus prophylaxis
Antibiotics
Neurovascular status (before and after)
Dressings (to cover wound)



Vascular injury/compartment syndrome is suggested by “**The 6 Ps**”:

Pulse discrepancies
Pallor
Paresthesia/hypoesthesia
Paralysis
Pain (especially when refractory to usual analgesics)
Polar (cold)

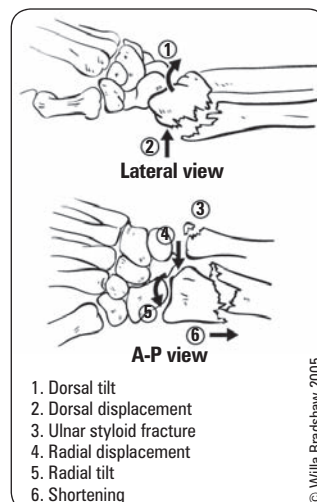


Figure 7. Colles' fracture

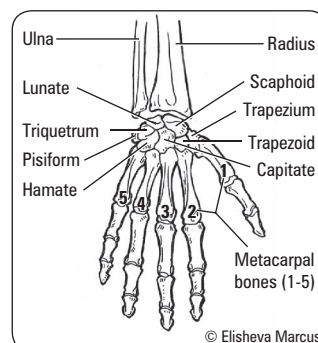


Figure 8. Carpal bones

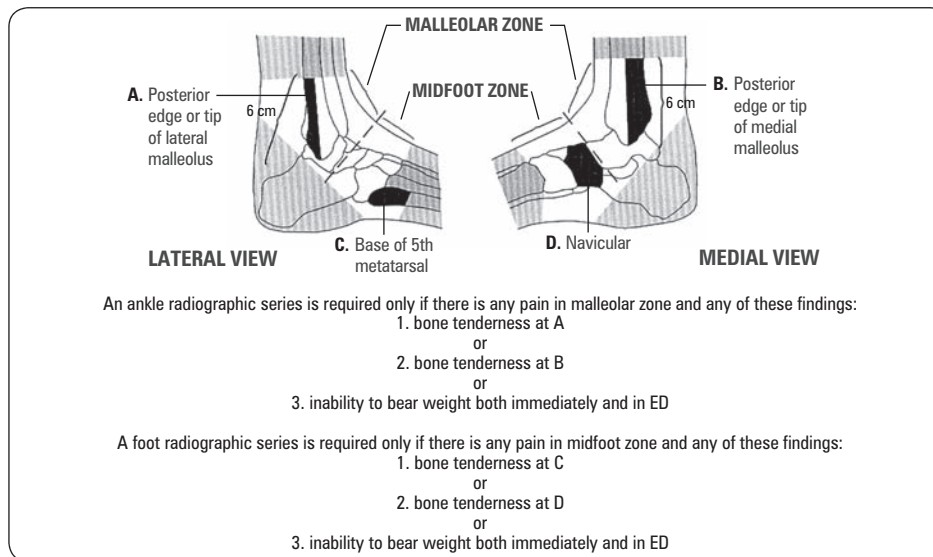


Figure 9. Ottawa ankle and foot rules

Adapted from: Stiell IG, et al. *JAMA* 1994;271:827-832

- avulsion of the base of 5th metatarsal
 - occurs with inversion injury
 - supportive tensor or below knee walking cast for 3 wk
- calcaneal fracture
 - associated with fall from height
 - associated injuries may involve ankles, knees, hips, pelvis, lumbar spin

A knee x-ray examination is required only for acute injury patients with one or more of:

- Age 55 yr or older
- Tenderness at head of fibula
- Isolated tenderness of patella
- Inability to flex to 90°
- Inability to bear weight both immediately and in the ED (four steps)

Figure 10. Ottawa knee rules

Adapted from: Stiell IG, et al. *JAMA* 1997;278:2075-2079

Wound Management

Goals of ED Treatment

- identify injuries and stop any active bleeding – direct pressure
- manage pain
- wound examination and exploration (history and physical)
- cleansing ± antibiotic and tetanus prophylaxis
- closure and dressing

Tetanus Prophylaxis

- both tetanus toxoid (Td) and immunoglobulin (TIG) are safe in pregnancy

Table 11. Guidelines for Tetanus Prophylaxis for Wounds

Immunization History	Non-Tetanus Prone Wounds		Tetanus Prone Wounds ¹	
	Td ²	TIG ³	Td	TIG
Uncertain or <3 doses	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
3 or more, none for >10 yr	Yes	No	Yes	No
3 or more, 5 to 10 yr ago	No	No	Yes	No
3 or more, <4 yr ago	No	No	No	No

¹ wounds >6 h old, >1 cm deep, puncture wounds, avulsions, wounds resulting from missiles, crush wounds, burns, frostbite, wounds contaminated with dirt, feces, soil, or saliva

² 0.5 mL IM tetanus and diphtheria toxoids (Td), adsorbed

³ tetanus immune globulin (TIG), 250 units deep IM

Source: *MMWR* 2001;50:418-427; *MMWR* 1991;40:1-52



Accuracy of Ottawa Ankle Rules to Exclude Fractures of the Ankle and Mid-Foot: Systematic Review

BMJ 2003;326:417

This systematic review and meta-analysis of 27 studies including 15,581 patients evaluated the sensitivity and specificity of the Ottawa Ankle Rules for excluding fractures of the ankle and mid-foot.

Results: The pooled likelihood ratio of a negative result (obtaining a false negative) among those with a fracture was determined to be 0.08 for both the ankle and mid-foot.

Conclusions: The Ottawa Ankle Rules provide an accurate instrument for excluding fractures of the ankle and mid-foot with a sensitivity of almost 100% and a specificity of 26%. The use of this instrument can reduce the number of unnecessary radiographs.



Acute Treatment of Contusions

RICE

Rest
Ice
Compression
Elevation



Suture Use and Duration

Suture to	Close with Nylon or Other Nonabsorbable Suture	Approx. Duration (Days)
Face	6-0	5
Not Joint	4-0	7
Joint	3-0	10
Scalp	4-0	7
Mucous Membrane	absorbable (vicryl)	N/A

N.B. Patients on steroid therapy may need sutures for longer periods of time

Bruises

- non-palpable = ecchymosis
- palpable collection (not swelling) = hematoma following blunt trauma
- assess for coagulopathy (e.g. liver disease), anticoagulant use

Abrasions

- partial to full thickness break in skin
- management
 - clean thoroughly with brush to prevent foreign body impregnation ± local anesthetic
 - antiseptic ointment (Polysporin® or Vaseline®) for 7 d for facial and complex abrasions
 - tetanus prophylaxis

Lacerations

- see [Plastic Surgery, PL8](#)
- consider every structure deep to a laceration injured until proven otherwise
- in hand injury patients, include the following in history: handedness, occupation, mechanism of injury, previous history of injury
- physical exam
 - think about underlying anatomy
 - examine tendon function actively against resistance and neurovascular status distally
 - clean and explore under local anesthetic; look for partial tendon injuries
 - x-ray or U/S wounds if a foreign body is suspected (e.g. shattered glass) and not found when exploring wound (remember: not all foreign bodies are radioopaque), or if suspect intra-articular involvement
- management
 - disinfect skin/use sterile techniques
 - irrigate copiously with NS
 - analgesia ± anesthesia
 - maximum dose of lidocaine:
 - ♦ 7 mg/kg with epinephrine
 - ♦ 5 mg/kg without epinephrine
- in children, topical anesthetics such as LET (lidocaine, epinephrine and tetracaine), and in selected cases a short-acting benzodiazepine (midazolam or other agents) for sedation and amnesia are useful
- secure hemostasis
- evacuate hematomas, debride non-viable tissue, remove hair and foreign bodies
- ± prophylactic antibiotics (consider for animal/human bites, intraoral lesion, or puncture wounds to the foot)
- suture unless: delayed presentation (>6-8 h), puncture wound, mammalian bite, crush injury, or retained foreign body
 - take into account patient and wound factors when considering suturing
- advise patient when to have sutures removed
- cellulitis and necrotising fasciitis, see [Plastic Surgery, PL14](#)



Alternatives to Sutures

- Tissue glue
- Steristrips®
- Staples



Where **NOT** to use local anesthetic with epinephrine:

Ears, Nose, Fingers, Toes, and Penis



High Risk Factors for Infection

Wound Factors

- Puncture wounds
- Crush injuries
- Wounds > 12 h old
- Hand or foot wounds
- Immunocompromised

Patient Factors

- Age > 50 yr
- Prosthetic joints or valves (risk of endocarditis)



Early wound irrigation and debridement are the most important factors in decreasing infection risk



Approach to Common ED Presentations

Abdominal Pain

Rule Out Life-Threatening Causes

- CVS: MI, aortic dissection (tearing pain), ruptured AAA
- GI: perforated viscus, hepatic/splenic injury, ischemic bowel (diffuse pain), strangulated hernia
- gynecologic: ectopic pregnancy

Additional Differential Diagnosis

- GI: appendicitis, diverticulitis, bowel obstruction, hepatitis, cholecystitis, pancreatitis
- urinary: pyelonephritis, ureteral calculi, cystitis
- genital
 - female: tubo-ovarian abscess, ovarian torsion, ovarian cyst, salpingitis, PID, endometriosis
 - male: testicular torsion, epididymitis, prostatitis
- other: DKA, herpes zoster virus, intra-abdominal abscess, pneumonia, lead poisoning, porphyria, sickle cell crisis, acute angle closure glaucoma, Addison's crisis, psychiatric

History

- pain: OPQRST
- broad differential, including GU, gynecological, GI, respiratory, and CV systems
- recent/remote abdominal trauma/surgeries
- most recent colonoscopy



Be vigilant in those at extremes of ages (very young, elderly) as they often present atypically

Old age, pregnancy (T3), and chronic corticosteroid use can blunt peritoneal findings, so have an increased suspicion of intra-abdominal process in these individuals



If elevated AST and ALT:
think hepatocellular injury
AST > ALT: alcohol-related
ALT > AST: viral, drug, toxin

If elevated ALP and GGT:
think biliary tree stones

Physical Exam

- vitals, abdominal (including DRE, CVA tenderness), pelvic/genital, respiratory, and CVS as indicated by history

Investigations

- do not delay consultation if patient unstable
- CBC, electrolytes, glucose, BUN/Cr, U/A \pm LFTs, lipase, β -hCG, ECG, troponins
- AXR: look for calcifications, free air, gas pattern, air fluid levels
- CXR upright: look for pneumoperitoneum (free air under diaphragm)
- U/S: biliary tract, ectopic pregnancy, AAA, free fluid
- CT: trauma, AAA, pancreatitis, nephro/urolithiasis, appendicitis, and diverticulitis

Management

- NPO, IV, NG tube, analgesics, consider antibiotics and anti-emetics
- growing evidence that small amounts of opioid analgesics improve diagnostic accuracy of physical exam of surgical abdomen
- consult as necessary: general surgery, vascular surgery, gynecology, etc.

Disposition

- admission: surgical abdomen, workup of significant abnormal findings, need for IV antibiotics or pain control
- discharge: patients with a negative lab and imaging workup who improve clinically during their stay; instruct the patient to return if severe pain, fever, or persistent vomiting develop



Unstable patients should not be sent for imaging

Acute Pelvic Pain

Etiology

- gynecological
 - 2nd most common gynecological complaint (after vaginal bleeding)
 - ovaries: ruptured ovarian cysts (most common cause of pelvic pain), ovarian abscess, ovarian torsion (rare, 50% will have ovarian mass)
 - fallopian tubes: salpingitis, tubal abscess, hydrosalpinx
 - uterus: leiomyomas (uterine fibroids) – especially with torsion of a pedunculated fibroid or in pregnant patient (degeneration), PID, endometriosis
 - other: ectopic pregnancy (ruptured/expanding/leaking), spontaneous abortion (threatened or incomplete), endometriosis and dysmenorrhea, sexual, or physical abuse
- non-gynecological
 - GI: appendicitis, constipation, bowel obstruction, gastroenteritis, diverticulitis, IBD, IBS
 - GU: cystitis, pyelonephritis, ureteric stone
 - other: porphyria, abdominal angina, aneurysm, hernia, zoster, psychological abuse/domestic violence



All women of childbearing age are assumed to be pregnant; every pregnancy is potentially ectopic. A β -hCG must be obtained.

**Gynecological Causes of Pelvic Pain:**

- Ovarian cyst
- Dysmenorrhea
- Mittelschmerz
- Endometriosis
- Ovarian torsion
- Uterine fibroids/neoplasm
- Adnexal neoplasm
- PID + cervicitis

History and Physical Exam

- pain: OPQRST
- associated symptoms: vaginal bleeding, bowel or bladder symptoms, radiation
- vitals
- gynecological exam: assess for cervical motion tenderness/“chandelier sign” (suggests PID)
- abdominal exam

Investigations

- blood work
 - β -hCG for all women of childbearing age
 - CBC and differential, electrolytes, glucose, BUN/Cr, G&S, PTT/INR
- imaging
 - pelvic and abdominal U/S: evaluate adnexa, look for free fluid or masses in the pelvis, evaluate thickness of endometrium, confirm intrauterine pregnancy if β -hCG positive
 - doppler flow studies for ovarian torsion



U/S is the preferred imaging modality in the assessment of acute pelvic pain

Management

- general: analgesia, determine if admission and consults are needed
- specific
 - ovarian cysts
 - ♦ unruptured or ruptured and hemodynamically stable: analgesia and follow-up
 - ♦ ruptured with significant hemoperitoneum: may require surgery
 - ovarian torsion: surgical detorsion or removal of ovary
 - uncomplicated leiomyomas, endometriosis, and secondary dysmenorrhea can usually be treated on an outpatient basis, discharge with gynecology follow-up
 - PID: requires broad spectrum antibiotics

Disposition

- referral: gynecological or obstetrical causes requiring surgical intervention, requiring admission, or oncological in nature
- admission: patients requiring surgery, IV antibiotics/pain management
- discharge: negative workup and resolving symptoms; give clear instructions for appropriate follow-up

Altered Level of Consciousness

Definitions

- altered mental status: collective, non-specific term referring to change in cognitive function, behavior, or attentiveness, including:
 - delirium (see [Psychiatry, PS16](#))
 - dementia (see [Psychiatry, PS17](#))
 - lethargy: state of decreased awareness and alertness (patient may appear wakeful)
 - stupor: unresponsiveness but arousable
 - coma: a sleep-like state, not arousable to consciousness
 - use the GCS to evaluate LOC (see [Initial Patient Assessment/Management, ER2](#))



Possible Causes of Coma

AEIOU TIPS

Acidosis/Alcohol
Epilepsy
Infection
Oxygen (hypoxia)/Opiates
Uremia
Temperature/Trauma (especially head)
Insulin (too little or too much)
Psychogenic/Poisoning
Stroke



In general, GCS <8, intubate, but ability to protect airway is primary consideration

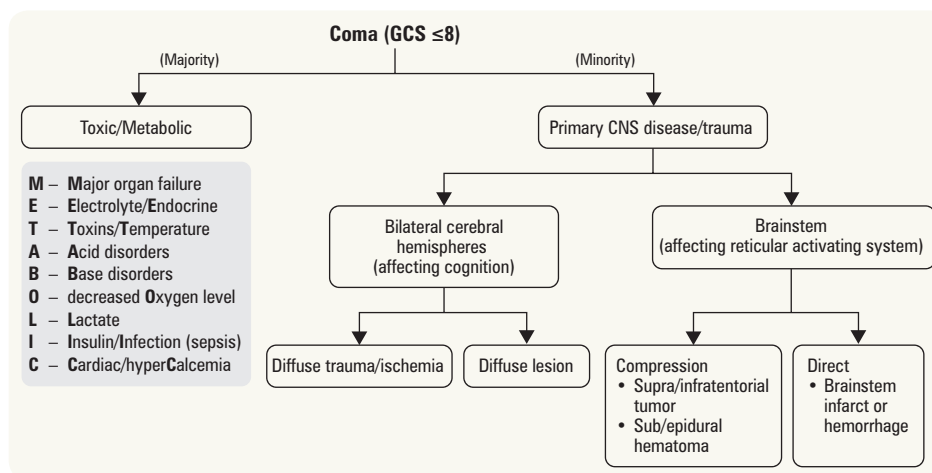


Figure 11. Etiology of coma

MANAGEMENT OF ALTERED LOC

History

- obtain collateral from family, friends, police, paramedics, old chart, etc.
- onset and progression
 - abrupt onset suggests CNS hemorrhage/ischemia or cardiac cause
 - progression over hours to days suggests progressive CNS lesion or toxic/metabolic cause
- preceding events
 - it is essential to determine patient's baseline LOC
 - antecedent trauma, seizure activity, fever
- past medical history (e.g. similar episode, depression, overdose)

Physical Exam

- ABCs, vitals including temperature, cardiac, chest, respiratory, abdominal exam
- complete neuro exam, in particular examination of the eyes (pupil size and reactivity), look for MedicAlert® bracelet

Investigations

- blood work
 - rapid blood sugar, CBC, electrolytes, Cr, BUN, LFTs, glucose, serum osmolality, VBG, PT/PTT/INR, troponins
 - serum EtOH, acetaminophen, and salicylate levels
- imaging
 - CXR, CT head
- other tests
 - ECG, U/A, UTox

Diagnosis

- administer appropriate universal antidotes
 - thiamine 100 mg IV if history of EtOH or patient looks malnourished
 - one ampule D50W IV if low blood sugar on finger-prick
 - naloxone 0.4-2 mg IV or IM if opiate overdose suspected
- distinguish between structural and toxic-metabolic coma
 - structural coma
 - ♦ pupils, extraocular movements, and motor findings, if present, are usually asymmetric
 - ♦ look for focal or lateralizing abnormalities
 - toxic-metabolic coma
 - ♦ dysfunction at lower levels of the brainstem (e.g. caloric unresponsiveness)
 - ♦ respiratory depression in association with an intact upper brainstem (e.g. equal and reactive pupils; see exceptions in Table 12)
 - ♦ extraocular movements and motor findings are symmetric or absent
- essential to re-examine frequently because status can change rapidly
- diagnosis may become apparent only with the passage of time
 - delayed deficit after head trauma suggestive of epidural hematoma (characteristic “lucid interval”)

Table 12. Toxic-Metabolic Causes of Fixed Pupils

Dilated	Dilated to Normal	Constricted
Anoxia	Hypothermia	Cholinergic agents (e.g. organophosphates)
Anticholinergic agents (e.g. atropine, TCAs)	Barbiturates	Opiates (e.g. heroin), except meperidine
Methanol (rare)	Antipsychotics	
Cocaine		
Opioid withdrawal		
Amphetamines		
Hallucinogens		

Disposition

- admission: if ongoing decreased LOC, admit to service based on tentative diagnosis, or transfer patient if appropriate level of care not available
- discharge: readily reversible alteration of LOC; ensure adequate follow-up care available

Chest Pain

Rule Out Life-Threatening Causes

- CVS: ACS, pericarditis, cardiac tamponade, aortic dissection
- respiratory: PE, pneumothorax (tension or spontaneous)
- GI: esophageal rupture, pneumomediastinum

Additional Differential Diagnosis

- cardiac: stable angina
- respiratory: pneumonia
- GI: peptic ulcer disease, pancreatitis, cholecystitis, esophagitis, reflux, esophageal spasm
- MSK: rib fractures, costochondritis, zoster, etc.
- psychogenic/anxiety (diagnosis of exclusion)

Initial Resuscitation and Management

- O₂, IV, cardiac monitoring, CXR (portable if unstable), ECG

History

- must evaluate cardiac risk factors (see [TIMI Score](#), [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery](#), C27)
- classic presentations (but presentation seldom classic)
 - aortic dissection: syncope with sudden severe tearing pain, often radiating to back ± focal pain/neurologic loss in extremities secondary to major vessel ischemia
 - PE: pleuritic chest pain (75%), dyspnea, anxiety, tachycardia, PERC Score
 - pericarditis: anterior precordial pain, pleuritic, relieved by sitting up and leaning forward
 - ACS: retrosternal squeezing/pressure pain, radiation to arm/neck, dyspnea, N/V, syncope
 - esophageal: frequent heartburn, acid reflux, dysphagia, relief with antacids
- ACS more likely to be atypical in females, diabetics, and >80 yr

Physical Exam

- vitals (BP in both arms, but unreliable indicator of dissection)
- palpate chest wall for tender points; present in 25% of acute MI, but may suggest MSK cause if symptoms fully reproduced and all serious etiologies have been ruled out
- cardiac, respiratory, and peripheral vascular exams



Life-Threatening Causes of Chest Pain

PET MAP

Pulmonary embolism
Esophageal rupture
Tamponade
MI/angina
Aortic dissection
Pneumothorax



Imaging is necessary for all suspected aortic dissections, regardless of blood pressure



Signs and Symptoms of MI

PULSE

Persistent chest pain
Upset stomach
Lightheadedness
Shortness of breath
Excessive sweating

Investigations

- blood work
 - CBC, electrolytes, BUN/Cr
 - CK-MB: if normal, does not rule out MI
 - troponin I: more sensitive (but positive later than CK-MB; can have false positives in renal failure; must follow for 8 h post onset of symptoms)
 - D-dimer: if negative, can rule out PE in low probability patients
- ECG
 - always compare with previous
 - PE and acute MI may have normal ECG in up to 50% of cases
 - consider 15-lead ECG if hypotensive or if ECG shows inferior MI or AV node involvement
- CXR
 - always compare with previous
 - PE (see *Deep Vein Thrombosis*, ER33)
 - ♦ 50% completely normal
 - ♦ atelectasis, elevated hemidiaphragm, pleural effusion
 - aortic dissection
 - ♦ change from previous CXR is the most accurate finding
 - ♦ widened mediastinum (most consistent finding)
 - ♦ CXR is normal in 20% of thoracic dissections
 - pneumothorax
 - ♦ may need inspiration and expiration views
 - ♦ if large, may see tracheal shift (away from tension pneumothorax, towards a non-tension pneumothorax)
- V/Q scan or CT, venous leg Doppler, required to rule out PE in patients with intermediate or high probability (see sidebar for Wells' Criteria for PE, ER33)

Disposition

- admission and monitoring: patients at risk of developing dysrhythmias
- consult: cardiology for patients with ACS; cardiothoracic surgery for patients with valvular lesions, esophageal rupture, or aortic dissection
- discharge: patients with a low probability of life-threatening illness due to resolving symptoms and negative workup; instruct the patient to return if they develop SOB or increased chest pain

Table 13. Common Life-Threatening ECG Changes

Pathology	ECG Findings
Dysrhythmia	
a) Torsades de pointes	Ventricular complexes in upward-pointing and downward-pointing continuum (250-350 bpm)
b) Ventricular tachycardia	6 or more consecutive premature ventricular beats (150-250 bpm)
c) Ventricular flutter	Smooth sine wave pattern of similar amplitude (250-350 bpm)
d) Ventricular fibrillation	Erratic ECG tracing, no identifiable waves
Conduction	
a) 2nd degree heart block (Mobitz Type II)	PR interval stable, some QRSs dropped
b) 3rd degree heart block	Total AV dissociation, but stable P-P and R-R intervals
c) Left bundle branch block	Prolonged QRS complex (>0.12 s) RSR' in V5 or V6 Monophasic I and V6 May see ST elevation Difficult to interpret, new LBBB is considered STEMI equivalent
Ischemia	
a) STEMI	ST elevation in leads associated with injured area of heart and reciprocal lead changes (depression)
Metabolic	
a) Hyperkalemia	Tall T waves P wave flattening QRS complex widening and flattening
b) Hypokalemia	U waves appear Flattened T waves
Digitalis Toxicity	Gradual downward curve of ST At risk for AV blocks and ventricular irritability
Syndromes	
a) Brugada	RBBB with ST elevation in V1, V2, and V3 Susceptible to deadly dysrhythmias, including ventricular fibrillation
b) Wellens	Marked T wave inversion in V2 and V3 Left anterior descending coronary stenosis
c) Long QT syndrome	QT interval longer than ½ of cardiac cycle Predisposed to ventricular dysrhythmias



Signs of PE on CXR

Westermark's sign: abrupt tapering of a vessel on chest film

Hampton's hump: a wedge-shaped infiltrate that abuts the pleura



It is important to look for reciprocal changes in STEMI in order to differentiate from pericarditis (diffuse elevations)



Addition of Clopidogrel to Aspirin® and Fibrinolytic Therapy for Myocardial Infarction with ST-Segment Elevation

NEJM 2005;352:1179-1191

Purpose: To assess the benefit of adding clopidogrel to Aspirin® and fibrinolytic therapy in ST-elevation MI.

Study Characteristics: Double-blind, RCT, following intention-to-treat analysis, with 3,491 patients and clinical follow-up at 30 d.

Participants: Individuals presenting within 12 h of onset of ST-elevation MI (mean age 57, 80.3% male, 50.3% smokers, 9.1% previous MI). Those presenting after 12 h, age >75, or with previous CABG, were excluded.

Intervention: Clopidogrel (300 mg loading dose followed by 75 mg OD until day of angiogram) or placebo, in addition to Aspirin®, a fibrinolytic agent, and heparin when appropriate.

Primary Outcome: Composite of occluded infarct-related artery on angiography (thrombosis in MI flow grade 0 or 1), or death or recurrent MI prior to angiography.

Results: Rates of primary end point were 21.7% in the placebo group and 15.0% in the clopidogrel group (95% CI 24-47%). Among the individual components of the primary end point, clopidogrel had a significant effect on the rate of an occluded infarct-related artery and the rate of recurrent MI, but no effect on the rate of death from any cause. At 30 d clinical follow-up, there was no difference in rate of death from cardiovascular causes, a significant reduction in the odds of recurrent MI, and a non-significant reduction in recurrent ischemia with need for urgent revascularization. The rates of major bleeding and intracranial hemorrhage were similar between the two groups.

Conclusion: Addition of clopidogrel improves the patency rate of infarct-related arteries and reduces ischemic complications, both of which are associated with improved long-term survival after MI. The trial was not powered to detect a survival benefit, and none was seen.

ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION

- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C27](#)

Management

- immediate stabilization
 - oxygen 4 L/min
 - IV access
 - cardiac monitors
 - STAT ECG
 - cardiac enzymes (CK, troponins)
- ASA 162-325 mg chewed
- nitroglycerin 0.3 mg SL q5min x 3 (IV for CHF, HTN, unresolved pain)
 - do not use if patient is hypotensive or in the setting of an inferior MI
- morphine 2-5 mg IV q5-30min if unresponsive to nitroglycerin
- low molecular weight heparin 1 mg/kg SC bid (30 mg IV STAT post TNK/tenecteplase infusion)
- thrombolytics (within 30 min) or primary percutaneous coronary intervention (within 90 min)
 - agents include rt-PA, streptokinase, and TNK
 - evaluate indications and contraindications prior to use
- other: antidysrhythmics, cardioversion, defibrillation, transthoracic pacing, angioplasty
- cardiology consult

**Immediate Treatment of Acute MI****BEMOAN**

β-blocker
Enoxaparin
Morphine
Oxygen
ASA
Nitroglycerin

Epistaxis

- see [Otolaryngology, OT27](#)
- 90% of nosebleeds stem from the anterior nasal septum (at Kiesselbach's plexus located in Little's area)
- can be life-threatening

Etiology

- most commonly caused by trauma (digital, blunt, foreign bodies)
- other causes: barometric changes, nasal dryness, chemicals (cocaine, Otrivin*), or systemic disease (coagulopathies, HTN, etc.)

Investigations

- blood work: CBC, PT/PTT (as indicated)
- imaging: x-ray, CT as needed

Treatment

- aim is to localize bleeding and achieve hemostasis
- first-aid: ABCs, clear clots by blowing nose or suctioning, lean forward, pinch cartilaginous portion of nose for 20 min twice
- assess blood loss: vitals, IV NS, cross match 2 units pRBC if significant
- if first aid measures fail twice, proceed to packing
- apply an anterior pack
 - clear nose of any clots
 - apply topical anesthesia/vasoconstrictors (lidocaine with epinephrine, cocaine, or soaked pledgets)
 - insert either a traditional Vaseline® gauze pack or a commercial nasal tampon or balloon
 - if bleeding stops, arrange follow-up in 48-72 h for reassessment and pack removal
 - prophylactic anti-staphylococcal antibiotics should be prescribed to prevent sinusitis or toxic shock syndrome
 - if bleeding is controlled with anterior pressure, cautery with silver nitrate can be performed if the site of bleeding is identified (one side of septum only because if both are cauterized this can lead to septal perforation)
- if suspect posterior bleed or anterior packing does not provide hemostasis, consult ENT for posterior packing and further evaluation
- posterior packing (ENT consult)
 - posterior packing requires monitoring because can cause significant vagal response and posterior bleeding source can lead to significant blood loss

Disposition

- discharge: discharged upon stabilization and appropriate follow-up; educate patients about prevention (e.g. humidifiers, saline spray, topical ointments, avoiding irritants, managing HTN)
- admission: severe cases of refractory bleeding



Thrombocytopenic patients – use resorbable packs to avoid risk of re-bleeding caused by pulling out the removable pack

**Complications of Nasal Packing**

- Hypoxemia
- Toxic-shock syndrome
- Aspiration
- Pharyngeal fibrosis/stenosis
- Alar/septal necrosis

Headache

- see [Neurology, N43](#)

Etiology

• the common

- common migraine (no aura)/classic migraine (with aura)
 - ♦ gradual onset, unilateral/bilateral, throbbing
 - ♦ N/V, photo/phonophobia
 - ♦ treatment: analgesics, antiepileptic drugs, vasoactive medications
- tension/muscular headache
 - ♦ never during sleep, gradual over 24 h
 - ♦ posterior/occipital
 - ♦ increased with stressors
 - ♦ treatment: modify stressor(s), local measures, NSAIDs, tricyclic antidepressants

• the deadly

- SAH (see [Neurosurgery, NS18](#))
 - ♦ sudden onset, increased with exertion
 - ♦ reaches maximum intensity within minutes, N/V, meningeal signs
 - ♦ diagnosis: CT, LP (5-10% of patients with SAH have negative initial CT)
 - sensitivity of CT decreases with time and is much less sensitive by 48-72 h
 - if CT done within 6 h of headache onset, no need for LP
 - ♦ management: urgent neurosurgery consult
- increased ICP
 - ♦ worse in morning, when supine or bending down, with cough or Valsalva
 - ♦ physical exam: neurological deficits, cranial nerve palsies, papilledema
 - ♦ diagnosis: CT scan
 - ♦ management: consult neurosurgery
- meningitis (see [Infectious Diseases, ID19](#))
 - ♦ flu-like presentation initially (fever, N/V, malaise), meningeal signs, purpuric rash
 - ♦ altered LOC and confusion
 - ♦ perform CT to rule out increased ICP then do LP for diagnosis
 - ♦ treatment: early empiric antibiotics (depending on age group), steroid therapy
- temporal arteritis (causes significant morbidity, blindness) (see [Ophthalmology, OP38](#))
 - ♦ unilateral scalp tenderness, jaw claudication, visual disturbances
 - ♦ labs: elevated ESR, CRP
 - ♦ temporal artery biopsy is gold standard for diagnosis
 - ♦ associated with polymyalgia rheumatica
 - ♦ treatment: high-dose steroids immediately if suspected

Disposition

- admission: if underlying diagnosis is critical or emergent, if there are abnormal neurological findings, if patient is elderly or immunocompromised (atypical presentation), or if pain is refractory to oral medications
- discharge: assess for risk of narcotic misuse, most patients can be discharged with appropriate analgesia and follow-up with their family physician; instruct patients to return for fever, vomiting, neurologic changes, or increasing pain

Joint Pain

- see [Rheumatology, RH3](#)

Rule Out Life-Threatening Causes

- septic joint (see [Orthopedics, OR10](#))

Differential Diagnosis

- articular pain
 - monoarticular
 - ♦ infectious: bacterial, viral, fungal
 - ♦ hemarthrosis: trauma/fracture, anticoagulants, bleeding diatheses
 - ♦ crystal induced: gout, calcium pyrophosphate deposition, hydroxyapatite
 - ♦ inflammatory: seropositive, seronegative
 - ♦ neoplasm
 - ♦ degenerative: osteoarthritis
 - polyarticular
 - ♦ infectious: Lyme disease, bacterial endocarditis, septicemia, gonococcus, viral
 - ♦ post-infectious: rheumatic fever, reactive arthritis, enteric infections
 - ♦ inflammatory: seropositive, seronegative
 - ♦ degenerative: osteoarthritis



Dexamethasone for Reduction of Migraine Recurrence
Emerg Med J 2013;30:165-166
 Shows that a single dose of IV dexamethasone may decrease recurrence of migraine within 24 h (NNT 10).



Note: up to 5% of patients with SAH have a normal CT scan; if suspect SAH with a negative CT, perform a LP



DDx Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

BATS

Berry aneurysm
 Arteriovenous malformation/Adult polycystic kidney disease
 Trauma
 Stroke



Meningitis

- Do not delay IV antibiotics for LP
- Deliver 1st dose of dexamethasone with or before 1st dose of antibiotic therapy



Ottawa SAH Rules

- For alert patients older than 15 yr with new severe non-traumatic headache reaching maximum intensity within 1 h
- Not for patients with new neurologic deficits, previous aneurysms, SAH, brain tumors, or history of recurrent headaches (≥3 episodes over the course of ≥6 mo)
- Investigate if ≥1 high-risk variables present:
 - Age ≥40 yr
 - Neck pain or stiffness
 - Witnessed loss of consciousness
 - Onset during exertion
 - Thunderclap headache (instantly peaking pain)
 - Limited neck flexion on examination



- non-articular
 - localized: tendonitis, bursitis, capsulitis, muscle sprain
 - generalized: fibromyalgia, polymyalgia rheumatica
- other
 - neurologic: spinal stenosis/spondylolisthesis, degenerative disc disease, cauda equina syndrome, neoplasm, thoracic outlet syndrome, Charcot joint
 - vascular: intermittent claudication

History and Physical Exam

- associated symptoms: fever, constitutional symptoms, skin lesions, conjunctivitis, urethritis
- patterns of joint involvement: polyarticular vs. monoarticular, symmetric vs. asymmetric
- inflammatory symptoms: prolonged morning stiffness, stiffness and pain ease through the day, midday fatigue, soft tissue swelling
- non-inflammatory symptoms: stiffness short lived after inactivity, short duration stiffness in the morning, pain increases with activity
- assess ROM, presence of joint effusion, warmth
- assess for localized joint pain, erythema, warmth, swelling with pain on active ROM, inability to bear weight, fever; may indicate presence of septic joint

Investigations

- blood work
 - CBC, ESR, CRP, WBC, INR/PTT, blood cultures, urate
- imaging
 - joint x-ray ± contralateral joint for comparison
- other investigations
 - joint aspirate → send for: WBC, protein, glucose, Gram stain, crystals

Management

- septic joint: IV antibiotics ± joint decompression and drainage
 - antibiotics can be started empirically if septic arthritis cannot be ruled out
- crystalline synovitis: NSAIDs at high dose, colchicine within first 24 h, corticosteroids
 - do not use allopurinol, as it may worsen acute attack
- acute polyarthritis: NSAIDs, analgesics (acetaminophen ± opioids), local or systemic corticosteroids
- osteoarthritis: NSAIDs, acetaminophen
- soft tissue pain: allow healing with enforced rest ± immobilization
 - non-pharmacologic treatment: local heat or cold, electrical stimulation, massage
 - pharmacologic: oral analgesics, NSAIDs, muscle relaxants, corticosteroid injections, topical agents



Hospitalization is required for joint pain in the presence of:

- Significant, concomitant internal organ involvement
- Signs of bacteremia, including vesiculopustular skin lesions, Roth spots, shaking chills, or splinter hemorrhages
- Systemic vasculitis
- Severe pain
- Severe constitutional symptoms
- Purulent synovial fluid in one or more joints
- Immunosuppression

Otalgia

Differential Diagnosis (see [Otolaryngology](#), OT6)

- local
 - infections: acute otitis externa, acute otitis media, otitis media with effusion, mastoiditis, myringitis, malignant otitis in diabetics, herpes simplex/zoster, auricular cellulitis, external canal abscess, dental disease
 - others: trauma, temporomandibular joint dysfunction, neoplasm, foreign body, cerumen impactions, trigeminal neuralgia, granulomatosis with polyangiitis

History

- OPQRST
- associated symptoms: aural fullness (feeling of pressure), otorrhea, hearing loss, tinnitus, vertigo, pruritis, fever
- risk factors: Q-tip use, hearing aids, headphones

Physical Exam

- observe for otorrhea, palpation of outer ear/mastoid, otoscope to see bulging erythematous tympanic membrane, perforation

Investigations

- consider audiogram if hearing loss
- C&S of ear canal discharge, if present
- CT head if suspicion of mastoiditis, malignant otitis media

Management

- debridement of cerumen or exudates
- antibiotics/antifungals/antivirals for respective infections



Seizures

- see [Neurology, N16](#)



Definition

- paroxysmal alteration of behavior and/or EEG changes resulting from abnormal, excessive activity of neurons
- status epilepticus: continuous or intermittent seizure activity for greater than 5 min without regaining consciousness

Categories

- generalized seizure (consciousness always lost): tonic/clonic, absence, myoclonic, atonic
- partial seizure (focal): simple partial, complex partial
- causes: primary seizure disorder, structural (trauma, intracranial hemorrhage, infection, increased ICP), metabolic disturbance (hypo/hyperglycemia, hypo/hyponatremia, hypocalcemia, hypomagnesemia, toxins/drugs)
- differential diagnosis: syncope, pseudoseizures, migraines, movement disorders, narcolepsy/cataplexy, myoclonus

History

- from patient and bystander: flaccid and unconscious, often with deep rapid breathing
- preceding aura, rapid onset, loss of bladder/bowel control, tongue-biting (sides of the tongue)
- timing: length of seizure

Physical Exam

- injuries to head and spine and bony prominences (e.g. elbows), tongue laceration, aspiration, urinary incontinence

Investigations

- known seizure disorder: antiepileptic drug levels
- Accu-Chek®
- first time seizure: CBC, serum glucose, electrolytes, BUN/Cr, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} ; consider prolactin, β -hCG, toxicology screen
- initial imaging: CT; x-ray if suspected extremity injuries; definitive imaging: MRI, EEG



Minimum Workup in an Adult with 1st Time Seizure

CBC and differential
Electrolytes including Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , PO_4^{3-}
Head CT

Table 14. Management of Status Epilepticus

Time (min)	Steps
0-5	Give oxygen; ensure adequate ventilation Monitor: vital signs, ECG, oximetry Establish IV access; obtain blood samples for glucose level, CBC, electrolytes, toxins, and antiepileptic drug levels
6-9	Give 50 mL 50% glucose (preceded by thiamine 100 mg IM in adults)
10-20	IV lorazepam 0.1 mg/kg at 2 mg/min or IV diazepam 0.2 mg/kg at 5 mg/min Diazepam can be repeated if seizures do not stop after 5 min; if diazepam is used to stop the status, then phenytoin should be administered promptly to prevent the recurrence of status
21-60	If status persists, administer 15-20 mg/kg of phenytoin intravenously no faster than 50 mg/min in adults and 1 mg/kg/min in children
>60	If status does not stop after 20 mg/kg of phenytoin, give additional doses of 5 mg/kg to a maximal dose of 30 mg/kg If status persists, then give 20 mg/kg of phenobarbital IV at 100 mg/min; when phenobarbital is given after a benzodiazepine, ventilatory assistance is usually required If status persists, then give general anesthesia (e.g. pentobarbital); vasopressors or fluid volume are usually necessary, EEG should be monitored; neuromuscular blockade may be needed

Adapted from: *Cecil Essentials of Medicine*, 7th edition, Table 125-7. Used with permission

Disposition

- the decision to admit or discharge should be based on the underlying disease process identified
 - if a patient has returned to baseline function and is neurologically intact, then consider discharge with outpatient follow-up
- first-time seizure patients being discharged should be referred to a neurologist for follow-up
- admitted patients should generally have a neurology consult
- patient should not drive until medically cleared (local regulations vary)
 - complete notification form to appropriate authority regarding ability to drive
- warn regarding other safety concerns (e.g. no swimming, bathing children alone, etc.)



If administering phenytoin, patient must be on a cardiac monitor as dysrhythmias and/or hypotension may occur

Shortness of Breath

- see [Respirology, R3](#) and [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C5](#)

Etiology

- categorized into one of two groups: respiratory or cardiovascular
- respiratory system dyspnea: disorders of the central controller (brain), the ventilatory pump (ventilatory muscles, peripheral nerves), and the gas exchanger (alveoli and pulmonary capillaries)
- cardiovascular system dyspnea: cardiac diseases (acute ischemia, heart failure, systolic dysfunction, valvular disorders, pericardial diseases, arrhythmias), anemia, and deconditioning

History and Physical Exam

- acute SOB is often due to a relatively limited number of conditions; associated symptoms and signs are key to the appropriate diagnosis
 - substernal chest pain with cardiac ischemia
 - fever, cough, and sputum with respiratory infections
 - urticaria with anaphylaxis
 - wheezing with acute bronchospasm
 - chest tightness may be indicative of bronchospasm
 - a sensation of rapid, shallow breathing may correspond to interstitial disease
 - a sense of heavy breathing is typical of deconditioning
 - ask about environmental or occupational exposures
- dyspnea may be the sole complaint and the physical exam may reveal few abnormalities (e.g. PE, pneumothorax)
- vitals including pulse oximetry
 - wheeze (airway) vs. crackles (parenchymal), JVP, and murmurs

Investigations

- blood work
 - CBC and differential (hematocrit to exclude anemia), electrolytes, consider VBG
 - serial cardiac enzymes and ECG if considering cardiac source
- imaging
 - CXR (hyperinflation and bullous disease suggestive of obstructive lung disease, or changes in interstitial markings consistent with inflammation, infection, or interstitial fluid)
 - CT chest usually is not indicated in the initial evaluation of patients with dyspnea, but can be valuable in patients with interstitial lung disease, occult emphysema, or chronic thromboembolic disease (i.e. PE)

Management of Life-Threatening Dyspnea NYD

- see [Primary and Secondary Surveys, ER2, ER5](#)
- treat underlying cause

Disposition

- the history and physical exam lead to accurate diagnoses in patients with dyspnea in approximately two-thirds of cases; the decision to admit or discharge should be based on the underlying disease process identified
 - consider intubation in CO₂ retainers (e.g. COPD)
- if the decision to discharge is chosen, provide appropriate discharge instructions to return in case of returning/worsening SOB



Causes of Acute Dyspnea

Cardiovascular: acute MI, CHF, cardiac tamponade, dysrhythmias

Respiratory: bronchospasm, PE, pneumothorax, infection (bronchitis, pneumonia), upper airway obstruction (aspiration, anaphylaxis)

Syncope

Definition

- sudden, transient loss of consciousness and postural tone with spontaneous recovery
- usually caused by generalized cerebral or reticular activating system hypoperfusion

Etiology

- cardiogenic: dysrhythmia, outflow obstruction (e.g. PE, tamponade, tension pneumothorax, pulmonary HTN), MI, valvular disease
- non-cardiogenic: peripheral vascular (hypovolemia), vasovagal, cerebrovascular disorders, CNS, metabolic disturbances (e.g. EtOH intoxication)

History

- gather details from witnesses, and clarify patient's experience (e.g. dizziness, ataxia, or true syncope)
 - two key historical features: prodrome and situation



5 Types of Syncope

- Vasomotor
- Cardiac
- CNS
- Metabolic
- Psychogenic

- distinguish between syncope and seizure (see [Neurology, N16](#))
 - some patients may have myoclonic jerks with syncope – NOT a seizure
 - signs and symptoms during presyncope, syncope, and postsyncope
 - past medical history, drugs
 - think anatomically in differential; pump (heart), blood, vessels, brain
- syncope is cardiogenic until proven otherwise if:
 - there is sudden loss of consciousness with no warning or prodrome
 - syncope is accompanied by chest pain

Physical Exam

- postural BP and HR
- cardiovascular, respiratory, and neurological exam
- physical findings in the elderly patient who falls (**I HATE FALLING**):
 - Inflammation of joints (or joint deformity)
 - Hypotension (orthostatic BP changes)
 - Auditory and visual abnormalities
 - Tremor (Parkinson's disease or other causes of tremor)
 - Equilibrium (balance) problem
 - Foot problems
 - Arrhythmia (dysrhythmia), heart block, or valvular disease
 - Leg-length discrepancy
 - Lack of conditioning (generalized weakness)
 - Illness
 - Nutrition (poor; weight loss)
 - Gait disturbance

Investigations

- ECG (tachycardia, bradycardia, blocks, Wolff-Parkinson White, long QT interval), bedside glucose
- blood work: CBC, electrolytes, BUN/Cr, ABGs, troponin, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , β -hCG
- consider toxicology screen

Management

- ABCs, IV, O_2 , monitor
- examine for signs of trauma caused by syncopal episode
- cardiogenic syncope: admit to medicine/cardiology
- low risk syncope: discharge with follow-up as indicated by cause (non-cardiogenic syncope may still be admitted)

Disposition

- decision to admit is based on etiology
- most patients will be discharged
- on discharge, instruct patient to follow up with family physician
 - educate regarding avoiding orthostatic or situational syncope
 - evaluate the patient for fitness to drive or work
 - patients with recurrent syncope should avoid high-risk activities (e.g. driving)



Causes of Syncope by System

HEAD, HEART, VeSSELS

Hypoxia/Hypoglycemia

Epilepsy

Anxiety

Dysfunctional brainstem

Heart attack

Embolism (PE)

Aortic obstruction

Rhythm disturbance

Tachycardia

Vasovagal

Situational

Subclavian steal

ENT (glossopharyngeal neuralgia)

Low systemic vascular resistance

Sensitive carotid sinus



San Francisco Syncope Rule: High risk of adverse outcomes in syncope patients if:

CHES

CHF: Hx of CHF

Hct: Low

ECG: Abnormal

SOB: Hx of dyspnea

SBP: sBP <90 at triage



Sexual Assault

Epidemiology

- 1 in 4 women and 1 in 10 men will be sexually assaulted in their lifetime
- it is estimated that only 7% of rapes are reported

General Approach

- ABCs, treat acute, serious injuries
- ensure patient is not left alone and provide ongoing emotional support
- set aside adequate time for exam (usually 1.5 h)
- obtain consent for medical exam and treatment, collection of evidence, disclosure to police (notify police as soon as consent obtained)
- Sexual Assault Kit (document injuries, collect evidence) if <72 h since assault
- label samples immediately and pass directly to police
- offer community crisis resources (e.g. shelter, hotline)
- do not report unless victim requests (legally required if <16 yr old)

History

- ensure privacy for the patient – others should be asked to leave
- questions to ask: who, when, where did penetration occur, what happened, any weapons or physical assault?



Legally required to report sexual assault if victim is <16 yr of age to CAS

- post-assault activities (urination, defecation, change of clothes, shower, douche, etc.)
- gynecologic history
 - gravidity, parity, last menstrual period
 - contraception use
 - last voluntary intercourse (sperm motile 6-12 h in vagina, 5 d in cervix)
- medical history: acute injury/illness, chronic diseases, psychiatric history, medications, allergies, etc.

Physical Exam

- evidence collection is always secondary to treatment of serious injuries
- never re-traumatize a patient with the examination
- general examination
 - mental status
 - sexual maturity
 - patient should remove clothes and place in paper bag
 - document abrasions, bruises, lacerations, torn frenulum/broken teeth (indicates oral penetration)
- pelvic exam and specimen collection
 - ideally before urination or defecation
 - examine for seminal stains, hymen, signs of trauma
 - collect moistened swabs of dried seminal stains
 - pubic hair combings and cuttings
 - speculum exam
 - ♦ lubricate with water only
 - ♦ vaginal lacerations, foreign bodies
 - ♦ Pap smear
 - ♦ oral/cervical/rectal culture for gonorrhea and chlamydia
 - ♦ posterior fornix secretions if present or aspiration of saline irrigation
 - ♦ immediate wet smear for motile sperm
 - ♦ air-dried slides for immotile sperm, acid phosphatase, ABO group
- others
 - fingernail scrapings
 - saliva sample from victim

Investigations

- VDRL: repeat in 3 mo if negative
- serum β -hCG
- blood for ABO group, Rh type, baseline serology (e.g. hepatitis, HIV)

Management

- involve local/regional sexual assault team
- medical
 - suture lacerations
 - tetanus prophylaxis
 - gynecology consult for foreign body, complex lacerations
 - assumed positive for gonorrhea and chlamydia
 - ♦ management: azithromycin 1 g PO x 1 dose (alt: doxycycline 100 mg PO bid x 7 d) and cefixime 800 mg PO x 1 dose (alt: ceftriaxone 1 g IM x 1 dose)
 - may start prophylaxis for hepatitis B and HIV
 - pre and post counseling for HIV testing
 - pregnancy prophylaxis offered
 - ♦ levonorgestrel 0.75 mg PO STAT, repeat within 12 h (Plan B®)
- psychological
 - high incidence of psychological sequelae
 - have victim change and shower after exam completed

Disposition

- discharge if injuries/social situation permit
- follow-up with physician in rape crisis center within 24 h
- best if patient does not leave ED alone

DOMESTIC VIOLENCE

- women are usually the victims, but male victimization also occurs
- identify the problem (need high index of suspicion)
 - suggestive injuries (bruises, sprains, abrasions, occasionally fractures, burns, or other injuries; often inconsistent with history provided)
 - somatic symptoms (chronic and vague complaints)
 - psychosocial symptoms
 - clinician impression (your 'gut feeling', e.g. overbearing partner that won't leave patient's side)
- if disclosed, be supportive and assess danger
- patient must consent to follow-up investigation/reporting (unless for children)



Risk of Sexually Transmitted Disease After Sexual Assault

- Gonorrhea: 6-18%
- Chlamydia: 4-17%
- Syphilis: 0.5-3%
- HIV: <1%



How do you get a patient who is accompanied by her partner alone without arousing suspicion; order an x-ray

Management

- treat injuries
- ask about sexual assault and children at home (encourage notification of police)
- document findings
- safety plan
- follow-up: family doctor/social worker

Medical Emergencies



Anaphylaxis and Allergic Reactions

Etiology

- anaphylaxis is an exaggerated immune mediated hypersensitivity reaction that leads to systemic histamine release, increased vascular permeability, and vasodilation; regardless of the etiology, the presentation and management of anaphylactic reactions are the same
 - allergic (re-exposure to allergen)
 - non-allergic (e.g. exercise induced)

Presentation

- classic presentation of anaphylaxis includes
 1. rapid onset and progression of symptoms
 2. life-threatening compromise of one or more of airway (breathing/swallowing difficulty, stridor, voice change), breathing (SOB, hypoxemia, wheezing, respiratory arrest), and circulation (tachycardia, hypotension, confusion, decreased urine output, chest pain)
 3. involvement of skin (erythema, urticaria, warmth) and/or mucosa (angioedema, obstruction, GI symptoms) not always present
- the presentation of anaphylaxis is diverse and there is no one specific symptom or sign for it
 - combinations of symptoms and signs will make anaphylaxis more likely
- life-threatening differentials for anaphylaxis include asthma and septic shock

Management

1. immediate initial management (call for help and perform concurrently)
 - give 0.5 mL of 1:1,000 epinephrine IM to lateral thigh (0.01 mL/kg up to 0.4 mL for children)
 - remove causative agent if possible
 - if severely compromised ABC or LOC, consult ICU immediately
 - otherwise, provide 100% O₂ through mask, give bolus 1,000 mL (20 mL/kg for children) crystalloid IV, then reassess; if IV access difficult, give fluid through intraosseous route
 - have continuous pulse oximetry and telemetry monitoring
 - frequently monitor BP
2. secondary treatment
 - diphenhydramine (Benadryl®) 50 mg IM or IV q4-6h
 - methylprednisolone 50-100 mg IV (dose depending on severity)
 - salbutamol (Ventolin®) via nebulizer if bronchospasm

Disposition

- monitor for 4-6 h in ED (minimum) and arrange follow-up with family physician in 24-48 h
- can have second phase (biphasic) reaction up to 48 h later, patient may need to be supervised (oral steroids on discharge may prevent this)
- educate patient on avoidance of allergens
- 3-day course of:
 - H1 antagonist (cetirizine 10 mg PO OD or Benadryl® 50 mg PO q4-6h)
 - H2 antagonist (ranitidine 150 mg PO OD)
 - corticosteroid (prednisone 50 mg PO OD) generally given for 5 d

Asthma

- see [Respirology, R7](#)
- chronic inflammatory airway disease with episodes of bronchospasm and inflammation resulting in reversible airflow obstruction

Investigations

- O₂ saturation
- peak flow meter
- ± ABG if in severe respiratory distress
- CXR if diagnosis in doubt or concerns of pneumonia, pneumothorax, etc.

**Most Common Triggers for Anaphylaxis**

- Foods (nuts, shellfish, etc.)
- Stings
- Drugs (penicillin, NSAIDs, ACEI)
- Radiographic contrast media
- Blood products
- Latex



Anaphylaxis should be suspected if airway, breathing, or especially circulation compromise is present after exposure to a known allergen



Beware of the silent chest in asthma exacerbations; this is a medical emergency and may require emergency intubation

Table 15. Asthma Assessment and Management

Classifications	History and Physical Exam	Management
Respiratory Arrest Imminent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exhausted, confused, diaphoretic, cyanotic Silent chest, ineffective respiratory effort Decreased HR, RR > 30, pCO₂ > 45 mmHg O₂ sat < 90% despite supplemental O₂ 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 100% O₂, cardiac monitor, IV access Intubate (consider induction with ketamine) β-agonist: nebulizer 5 mg continually Anticholinergics: nebulizer 0.5 mg x 3 IV steroids: methylprednisolone 125 mg
Severe Asthma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Agitated, diaphoretic, labored respirations Speaking in words No relief from β-agonist O₂ sat < 90%, FEV₁ < 50% 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anticipate need for intubation Similar to above management Magnesium sulphate 2 g IV O₂ to achieve O₂ sat > 92%
Moderate Asthma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> SOB at rest, cough, congestion, chest tightness Speaking in phrases Inadequate relief from β-agonist FEV₁ 50-80% 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> O₂ to achieve O₂ sat > 92% β-agonist: MDI or nebulizer q5min Steroids: prednisone 40-60 mg PO Anticholinergics (Atrovent) MDI or nebulizer x3
Mild Asthma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exertional SOB/cough with some nocturnal symptoms Difficulty finishing sentences FEV₁ > 80% 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> β-agonist Monitor FEV₁ Consider steroids (MDI or PO)

**5 Essential Elements on History**

- Cause of exacerbation
- Previous ER/ICU visits
- Previous intubations
- Timing of recent steroid use
- Frequency of asthma medication use

Disposition

- β-agonist MDI regular use (2-4 puffs q2-4h) until symptoms controlled, then prn
- prednisone 30-60 mg/d for 7-14 d with no taper
- counsel on medication adherence
- inhaled corticosteroids if not already prescribed
- follow-up with primary care physician

Cardiac Dysrhythmias

- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C15](#)

**Bradydysrhythmias and AV Conduction Blocks**

- AV conduction blocks
 - 1st degree: prolonged PR interval (>200 msec), no treatment required
 - 2nd degree
 - ♦ Mobitz I: gradual prolongation of PR interval then dropped QRS complex, usually benign
 - ♦ Mobitz II: PR interval constant with dropped QRS complex, can progress to 3rd degree AV block
 - 3rd degree: P wave unrelated to QRS complex, PP and RR intervals constant
 - ♦ atropine and transcutaneous pacemaker (atropine with caution)
 - ♦ if transcutaneous pacemaker fails consider dopamine, epinephrine IV
 - long-term treatment for Mobitz II and 3rd degree block – internal pacemaker
- sinus bradycardia (rate < 60 bpm)
 - can be normal (especially in athletes)
 - causes: vagal stimulation, vomiting, myocardial infarction/ischemia, increased ICP, sick sinus node, hypothyroidism, drugs (e.g. β-blockers, CCBs)
 - treat if symptomatic (hypotension, chest pain)
 - ♦ acute: atropine ± transcutaneous pacing
 - ♦ sick sinus: transcutaneous pacing
 - ♦ drug induced: discontinue/reduce offending drug

Supraventricular Tachydysrhythmias (narrow QRS)

- sinus tachycardia (rate > 100 bpm)
 - causes: increased sympathetic tone, drugs, fever, hypotension, anemia, thyrotoxicosis, MI, PE, emotional, pain, etc.
 - search for and treat underlying cause, consider β-blocker if symptomatic
- regular rhythm
 - vagal maneuvers (carotid massage, Valsalva), adenosine 6 mg IV push, if no conversion give 12 mg, can repeat 12 mg dose once
 - rhythm converts: probable re-entry tachycardia (AVNRT more common than AVRT)
 - ♦ monitor for recurrence
 - ♦ treat recurrence with adenosine or longer acting medications
 - rhythm does not convert: atrial flutter, ectopic atrial tachycardia, junctional tachycardia
 - ♦ rate control (diltiazem, β-blockers) and consult cardiology
- irregular rhythm
 - probable atrial fibrillation, atrial flutter, or multifocal atrial tachycardia
 - rate control (diltiazem, β-blockers)



If the patient with tachydysrhythmia is unstable, perform immediate synchronized cardioversion

Atrial Fibrillation

- most common sustained dysrhythmia; no organized P waves (atrial rate >300/min), irregularly irregular heart rate, narrow QRS (typically)
- etiology: HTN, CAD, thyrotoxicosis, EtOH (holiday heart), valvular disease, pericarditis, cardiomyopathy, sick sinus syndrome
- treatment principles: stroke prevention, treat symptoms, identify/treat underlying cause
- decreases cardiac output by 20-30% (due to loss of organized atrial contractions)
- acute management
 - if unstable: immediate synchronized cardioversion
 - if onset of AFib is >48 h: rate control, anticoagulate 3 wk prior to and 4 wk after cardioversion or do transesophageal echocardiogram to rule out clot
 - if onset <48 h: may cardiovert
 - ♦ electrical cardioversion: synchronized direct current (DC) cardioversion
 - ♦ chemical cardioversion: procainamide, flecainide, propafenone
- long-term management: rate or rhythm control, consider anticoagulation (CHADS2 score, see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C19](#))



If patient has Wolff-Parkinson-White and is in AFib use amiodarone or procainamide. Avoid AV nodal blocking agents (adenosine, digoxin, diltiazem, verapamil, β -blockers), as this can increase conduction through bypass tract, leading to cardiac arrest



Ventricular Tachydysrhythmias (wide QRS)

- VTach (rate usually 140-200 bpm)
 - definition: 3 or more consecutive ventricular beats at >100 bpm
 - etiology: CAD with MI is most common cause
 - treatment: sustained VTach (>30 s) is an emergency
 - ♦ hemodynamic compromise: synchronized DC cardioversion
 - ♦ no hemodynamic compromise: synchronized DC cardioversion, lidocaine, amiodarone, procainamide
- ventricular fibrillation: call a code blue, follow ACLS for pulseless arrest
- torsades de pointes
 - looks like VTach but QRS 'rotates around baseline' with changing axis and amplitude (twisted ribbon)
 - etiology: prolonged QT due to drugs (e.g. quinidine, TCAs, erythromycin, quinolones), electrolyte imbalance (hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia), congenital
 - treatment:
 - ♦ IV Mg^{2+} , temporary overdrive pacing, isoproterenol
 - ♦ correct cause of prolonged QT



Need to Rule Out with COPD Exacerbation

- Pneumothorax
- CHF exacerbation
- Acute MI
- Pneumonia and other infectious causes
- PE



Causes of CHF Exacerbation

FAILURE

Forgot medication
Arrhythmia (Dysrhythmia)/Anemia
Ischemia/Infarction/Infection
Lifestyle (e.g. too much salt)
Upregulation of cardiac output (pregnancy, hyperthyroidism)
Renal failure
Embolism (pulmonary)



Hospital Management Required if:

- Acute MI
- Pulmonary edema or severe respiratory distress
- Severe complicating medical illness (e.g. pneumonia)
- Anasarca
- Symptomatic hypotension or syncope
- Refractory to outpatient therapy
- Thromboembolic complications requiring interventions
- Clinically significant dysrhythmias
- Inadequate social support for safe outpatient management
- Persistent hypoxia requiring supplemental oxygen



CHF on CXR

- Pulmonary vascular redistribution
- Perihilar infiltrates
- Interstitial edema, Kerley B lines
- Alveolar edema, bilateral infiltrates
- May see cardiomegaly, pleural effusions



Acute Treatment of CHF

LMNOP

Lasix (furosemide)
Morphine
Nitroglycerine
Oxygen
Position (sit upright), Pressure (BiPAP)

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

- see [Respirology, R9](#)
- progressive development of irreversible airway obstruction, typically caused by smoking
- acute exacerbation: episode of increased dyspnea, coughing, increase in sputum volume or purulence



History and Physical Exam

- worsening dyspnea or tachypnea
- acute change in frequency, quantity, and color of sputum production
- triggers: pneumonia, urinary tract infection, PE, CHF, MI, drugs

Investigations

- CBC, electrolytes, ABG, CXR, ECG, PFTs

Management

- keep O_2 sat 88-92% (be aware when giving O_2 to chronic hypercapnic/ CO_2 retainers but do not withhold O_2 if hypoxic)
- apply BiPAP if severe distress, arterial pH <7.35, or hypercapnic
- ipratropium is anticholinergic agent of choice, add salbutamol
- steroids: ipratropium 40 mg PO for 5 d
- antibiotics: TMP-SMX, cephalosporins, respiratory quinolones (if acute change in frequency, quantity, and color of sputum production)
- if life-threatening, ICU admission for ventilation (chance of ventilation dependency)
- lower threshold to admit if comorbid illness

Disposition

- can use up to 4-6 puffs qid of ipratropium and salbutamol for exacerbations
- continue antibiotics if started and give tapering steroids

Congestive Heart Failure

- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C33](#)

Etiology

- decreased myocardial contractility: ischemia, infarction, cardiomyopathy, myocarditis
- pressure overload states: HTN, valve abnormalities, congenital heart disease
- restricted cardiac output: myocardial infiltrative disease, cardiac tamponade
- volume overload

Presentation

- left-sided heart failure
 - dyspnea, decreased exercise tolerance, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, orthopnea, nocturia, fatigue, possibly altered mental status, syncope, angina, systemic hypotension
 - hypoxia, decreased air entry to lungs, rales, S3 or S4, pulmonary edema on CXR, pleural effusion (usually right sided)
- right-sided heart failure
 - dependent bilateral pitting edema, JVP elevation, hepatic enlargement, ascites
- patients often present with a combination of right-sided and left-sided symptoms

Investigations

- labs: CBC, electrolytes, AST, ALT, bilirubin, Cr, BUN, cardiac enzymes, brain natriuretic peptide
- CXR (see [sidebar, ER32](#))
- ECG: look for MI, ischemia (ST elevation/depression, T-wave inversion)
 - in CHF: LVH, atrial enlargement, conduction abnormalities
- ABG: if severe or refractory to treatment
 - hypoxemia, hypercapnia and acidosis are signs of severe CHF
- echocardiogram: not usually used in emergency evaluation, previous results may aid in diagnosis
- may be precipitated by dysrhythmia (e.g. sudden onset AFib) – correct if new
- rule out serious differentials such as PE, pneumothorax, pneumonia/empyema, COPD exacerbation

Management (acute)

- ABC, may require intubation if severe hypoxia
- sit upright, cardiac monitoring and continuous pulse oximetry
- saline lock IV, Foley catheter (to follow effectiveness of diuresis)
- 100% O₂ by mask
 - if poor response, may require BiPAP or intubation
- drugs
 - nitroglycerin 0.3 mg SL q5min prn ± topical nitroglycerine patch (0.2-0.8 mg/h)
 - ♦ if not responding or ischemia: 10-200 µg/min IV, titrate
 - diuretic if volume overloaded (e.g. furosemide 40-80 mg IV), use caution if cause is valvulopathy
 - morphine 1-2 mg IV prn
 - ♦ if hypotensive: dobutamine (2.5 µg/kg/min IV) or dopamine (5-10 µg/kg/min IV), titrate up to sBP 90-100 mmHg
 - ASA 160 mg chew and swallow
- treat precipitating factor
- cardiology or medicine consult



Risk Factors for VTE

THROMBOSIS
 Trauma, travel
 Hypercoagulable, HRT
 Recreational drugs (IVDU)
 Old (age >60)
 Malignancy
 Birth control pill
 Obesity, obstetrics
 Surgery, smoking
 Immobilization
 Sickness (CHF, MI, nephrotic syndrome, vasculitis)



PERC Score

- Age >50 yr
- HR >100 bpm
- O₂ sat on RA <94%
- Prior history DVT/PE
- Recent trauma or surgery
- Hemoptysis
- Exogenous estrogen
- Clinical signs suggesting DVT

Score 1 for each question; a score 0/8 means patient has <1.6% chance having a PE and avoids further investigation. It is important to note that this clinical score cannot be applied to pregnant women



Wells' Criteria for PE

Previous Hx of DVT/emboli	+1.5
HR >100	+1.5
Recent immobility or surgery	+1.5
Clinical signs of DVT	+3
Alternate Dx less likely than PE	+3
Hemoptysis	+1
Cancer	+1

0-2: Low probability
 2-6: Intermediate probability
 >6: High probability

Deep Vein Thrombosis and Pulmonary Embolism

- see [Respirology, R18](#)

Risk Factors

- Virchow's triad
 - alterations in blood flow (venous stasis)
 - injury to endothelium
 - hypercoagulable state (including pregnancy, use of OCP, malignancy)
- clinical risk factors

Presentation

- DVT: calf pain, leg swelling/erythema/edema, palpable cord on exam; can be asymptomatic
- PE: dyspnea, pleuritic chest pain, hemoptysis, tachypnea, cyanosis, hypoxia, fever
- clinical signs/symptoms are unreliable for diagnosis and exclusion of DVT/PE; investigation often needed
- calculate the PERC (PE rule out criteria) score to assess the need for PE workup before assessing the likelihood of a PE (Wells' Criteria)



Investigations

- ECG and CXR are useful to look for other causes (e.g. ACS, pneumonia)
- D-dimer is only useful if it is negative in low risk patients (highly sensitive)
- U/S has high sensitivity and specificity for proximal clot but only 73% sensitivity for DVT below the knee (may need to repeat in 1 wk)
- CT angiography has high sensitivity and specificity for PE, may also suggest other etiology
- V/Q scan useful when CT angiography not available, or patient unable to tolerate IV contrast (e.g. renal failure, allergy)

Management of DVT/PE

- LMWH unless patient also has renal failure
 - dalteparin 200 IU/kg SC q24h or enoxaparin 1.5 mg/kg SC q24h
- warfarin started at same time as LMWH (5 mg PO OD initially)
- LMWH discontinued when INR has been therapeutic (2-3) for 2 consecutive days
 - early ambulation with analgesia is safe if appropriately anticoagulated
- rivaroxaban can be used in both acute management of symptomatic DVT or PE and extended treatment
 - 15 mg PO bid for first 21 days; 20 mg PO daily for remaining treatment (taken with food at approximately the same time each day)
- IVC filter or surgical thrombectomy considered if anticoagulation is contraindicated
- consider thrombolysis if extensive DVT or PE causing hemodynamic compromise
- often can be treated as outpatient, may require analgesia for chest pain (narcotic or NSAID)
- admit if hemodynamically unstable, require supplemental O₂, major comorbidities, lack of sufficient social supports, unable to ambulate, need invasive therapy
 - consider referral to medicine for coagulopathy and malignancy workup
- long-term anticoagulation
 - if reversible risk factor: 3-6 mo of warfarin
 - idiopathic VTE: may need longer term warfarin (5 yr or more)

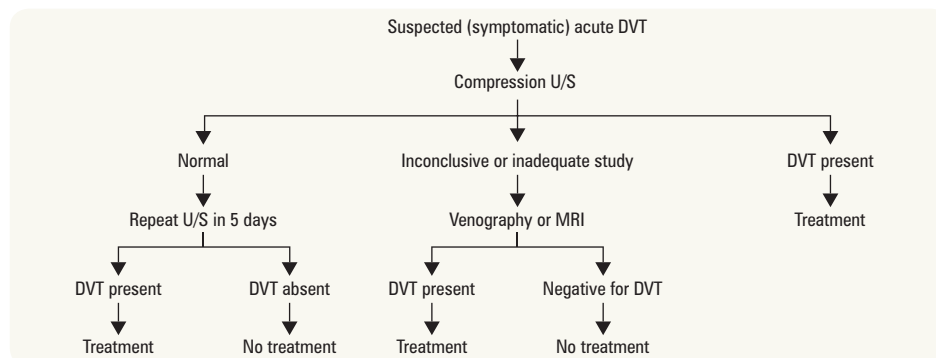


Figure 12. Approach to suspected DVT

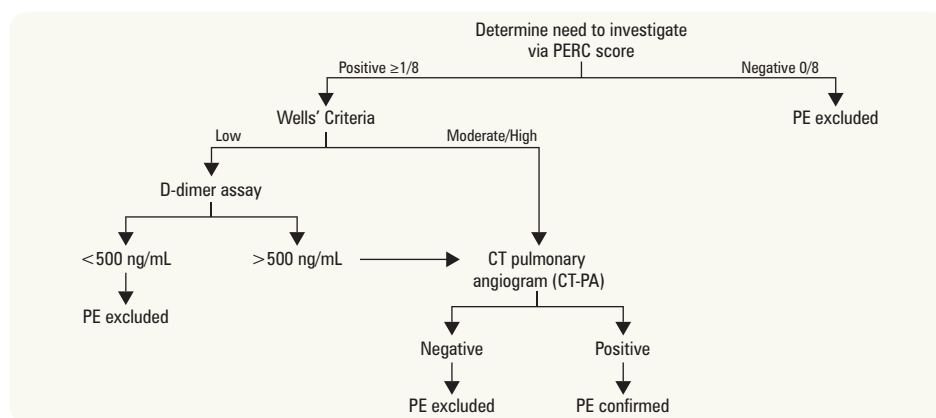


Figure 13. Approach to suspected PE



Oral Rivaroxaban for the Treatment of Symptomatic Pulmonary Embolism

NEJM 2012;366:1287-97

Background: A fixed-dose regimen of rivaroxaban, an oral factor Xa inhibitor, has been shown to be as effective as standard anticoagulant therapy for the treatment of DVT, without the need for laboratory monitoring.

Methods: A randomized, open-label, event-driven, non-inferiority trial involving 4,832 patients who had acute symptomatic PE with or without DVT, was undertaken to compare rivaroxaban (15 mg twice daily for 3 wk, followed by 20 mg once daily) with standard therapy with enoxaparin followed by an adjusted-dose vitamin K antagonist for 3, 6, or 12 mo. The primary efficacy outcome was symptomatic recurrent VTE.

Results: Rivaroxaban was non-inferior to standard therapy (non-inferiority margin, 2.0; $p=0.003$) for the primary efficacy outcome, with 50 events in the rivaroxaban group (2.1%) vs. 44 events in the standard-therapy group (1.8%) (hazard ratio, 1.12; 95% CI 0.75 to 1.68). The principal safety outcome occurred in 10.3% of patients in the rivaroxaban group and 11.4% of those in the standard-therapy group (hazard ratio, 0.90; 95% CI 0.76-1.07; $p=0.23$). Major bleeding was observed in 26 patients (1.1%) in the rivaroxaban group and 52 patients (2.2%) in the standard-therapy group (hazard ratio, 0.49; 95% CI 0.31-0.79; $p=0.003$). Rates of other adverse events were similar in the two groups.

Conclusions: A fixed-dose regimen of rivaroxaban alone was non-inferior to standard therapy for the initial and long-term treatment of PE and had a potentially improved benefit-risk profile.



Oral Rivaroxaban for the Treatment of Symptomatic Venous Thromboembolism

NEJM 2010;363:2499-510

Background: Rivaroxaban, an oral factor Xa inhibitor, may provide a simple, fixed-dose regimen for treating acute DVT and for continued treatment, without the need for laboratory monitoring.

Methods: An open-label, randomized, event-driven, non-inferiority study was conducted that compared oral rivaroxaban alone (15 mg twice daily for 3 wk, followed by 20 mg once daily) with subcutaneous enoxaparin followed by a vitamin K antagonist (either warfarin or acenocoumarol) for 3, 6, or 12 mo in patients with acute, symptomatic DVT. In parallel, a double-blind, randomized, event-driven superiority study was conducted to compare rivaroxaban alone (20 mg once daily) with placebo for an additional 6 to 12 mo in patients who had completed 6 to 12 mo of treatment for VTE. The primary efficacy outcome for both studies was recurrent VTE. The principal safety outcome was major bleeding or clinically relevant non-major bleeding in the initial-treatment study and major bleeding in the continued-treatment study.

Results: The study of rivaroxaban for acute DVT included 3,449 patients: 1,731 given rivaroxaban and 1,718 given enoxaparin plus a vitamin K antagonist. Rivaroxaban had non-inferior efficacy with respect to the primary outcome (36 events [2.1%], vs. 51 events with enoxaparin-vitamin K antagonist [3.0%]; hazard ratio, 0.68; 95% CI 0.44-1.04; $p<0.001$). The principal safety outcome occurred in 8.1% of the patients in each group. In the continued-treatment study, which included 602 patients in the rivaroxaban group and 594 in the placebo group, rivaroxaban had superior efficacy (8 events [1.3%], vs. 42 with placebo [7.1%]; hazard ratio, 0.18; 95% CI 0.09-0.39; $p<0.001$). Four patients in the rivaroxaban group had nonfatal major bleeding (0.7%), vs. none in the placebo group ($p=0.11$).

Conclusions: Rivaroxaban offers a simple, single-drug approach to the short-term and continued treatment of VTE that may improve the benefit-to-risk profile of anticoagulation.

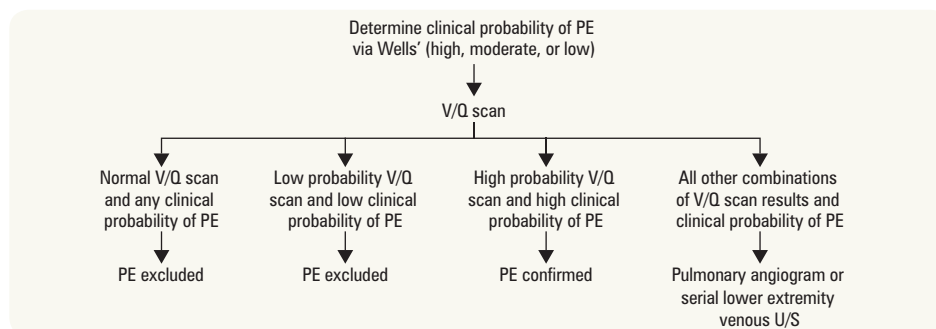


Figure 14. V/Q-based algorithm for suspected PE

**Pre-Test Probability for DVT (Wells' Score)**

Active cancer	+1
Paralysis or immobilization	+1
Recently bedridden >3 d or surgery within 4 wk	+1
Localized tenderness in deep vein system	+1
Entire leg swollen	+1
Calf swelling >3 cm asymptomatic side	+1
Pitting edema on affected side	+1
Superficial (non-varicose) veins	+1
Alternative dx more likely than DVT	-2

0-1: DVT unlikely

≥2: DVT likely

Adapted from: Wells PS, Anderson DR, Bormanis J, et al. Value of assessment of pretest probability of deep vein thrombosis in clinical management *Lancet* 2002;350:1795-1798



D-dimer is only useful if it is negative; negative predictive value >99%



50% of patients with symptomatic proximal DVT will develop PE, often within days to weeks of the event


Clinical Criteria to Prevent Unnecessary Diagnostic Testing in Emergency Department Patients with Suspected Pulmonary Embolism
J Thromb Haemost 2004;2:1247-1255

Purpose: To develop PE rule-out criteria (PERC) that can be used at the bedside, and prevents overtesting for PE, which includes the D-dimer test that frequently results in false positives.

Study: 21 variables were collected prospectively from 3,148 ER patients evaluated for possible PE to develop rule-out criteria. The application of the developed rules was investigated in 1,427 low-risk patients and 382 very low-risk patients.

Results: Eight variables were included in a block rule (age <50 yr, pulse <100 bpm, SaO₂ >94%, no unilateral leg swelling, no hemoptysis, no recent trauma or surgery, no prior PE or DVT, no hormone use), and a negative score was used to rule-out PE. In low-risk and very low-risk patients, the rule had a sensitivity of 96 and 100%, respectively and a specificity of 27 and 15%, respectively.

Summary: D-dimer testing for PE may not be favourable if all eight factors in the PERC are negative.

**Precipitating Factors in DKA**

The 5 Is
 Infection
 Ischemia
 Infarction
 Intoxication
 Insulin missed

Diabetic Emergencies

- see [Endocrinology](#), E11

Diabetic Ketoacidosis

- severe insulin deficiency resulting in hyperglycemia (200-1,000 mg/dL), dehydration, and electrolyte abnormalities
- history and physical exam – often young, type 1 DM, may be first presentation of undiagnosed DM (may occur in small percentage of type 2 DM patients)
 - early symptoms: polyuria, polydipsia, malaise, nocturia, weight loss
 - late signs and symptoms
 - ♦ anorexia, N/V, dyspnea (often due to acidosis), fatigue
 - ♦ abdominal pain
 - ♦ drowsiness, stupor, coma
 - ♦ Kussmaul's respiration
 - ♦ fruity acetone breath
- investigations
 - CBC, glucose, electrolytes, BUN/Cr, Ca²⁺, Mg²⁺, PO₄³⁻, urine glucose and ketones
 - ABG
 - ECG (MI possible precipitant; electrolyte disturbances may predispose to dysrhythmia)
- management
 - rehydration
 - ♦ bolus of NS, then high rate NS infusion (beware of overhydration and cerebral edema, especially in pediatric patients)
 - ♦ beware of a pseudohyponatremia due to hyperglycemia (add 3 Na⁺ per 18 glucose over 100 mg/dL)
 - potassium
 - ♦ essential to avoid hypokalemia: replace KCl (20 mEq/L if adequate renal function and initial K⁺ <5.5 mEq/L)
 - ♦ use cardiac monitoring if potassium levels normal or low
 - insulin
 - ♦ critical, as this is the only way to turn off gluconeogenesis/ketosis
 - ♦ do not give insulin if K⁺ <3.3 mEq/L
 - ♦ initial bolus of 5-10 U short-acting/regular insulin (or 0.2 U/kg) IV in adults (controversial – may just start with infusion)
 - ♦ followed by continuous infusion at 5-10 U (or 0.1 U/kg) per h
 - ♦ add D5W to IV fluids when blood glucose <270 mg/dL to prevent hypoglycemia
 - bicarbonate is not given unless patient is at risk of death or shock (typically pH <7.0)

Hyperosmolar Hyperglycemic State

- state of extreme hyperglycemia (800-2,400 mg/dL) due to relative insulin deficiency, increased counter-regulatory hormones, gluconeogenesis, and dehydration (due to osmotic diuresis) in type 2 DM, high mortality (5-20%)
- history and physical exam
 - mental disturbances, coma, delirium, seizures
 - polyuria
 - N/V
- investigations
 - CBC, electrolytes, Cr, BUN, glucose, Mg²⁺, PO₄³⁻, urine glucose and ketones
 - ABG
 - ECG
- management
 - rehydration with IV NS (total water deficit estimated at average 100 cc/kg body weight)
 - O₂ and cardiac monitoring, frequent electrolyte and glucose monitoring
 - insulin as required
 - identify and treat precipitant if present (the 5 Is)

Hypoglycemia

- very common ED presentation
- history and physical exam
 - last meal, known DM, prior similar episodes, drug therapy and compliance
 - liver/renal/endocrine/neoplastic disease
 - depression, alcohol or drug use
- management
 - IV access and rapid blood glucose measurement
 - D50W 50 mL IV push, glucose PO if mental status permits
 - ♦ if IV access not possible, glucagon 1-2 mg IM, repeat x 1 in 10-20 min
 - O₂, cardiac, frequent blood glucose monitoring
 - thiamine 100 mg IM
 - full meal as soon as mental status permits
 - if episode due to long-acting insulin, or sulfonylureas, watch for prolonged hypoglycemia due to long t_{1/2} (may require admission for monitoring)
 - search for cause (most often due to exogenous insulin, alcohol, or sulfonylureas)



4 Criteria for DKA Dx

- Hyperglycemia
- Metabolic acidosis
- Hyperketonemia
- Ketonuria



Cerebral edema may occur if hyperosmolality is treated too aggressively

Electrolyte Disturbances

- see [Nephrology](#), NP7 and [Endocrinology](#), E38



Table 16. Electrolyte Disturbances

Electrolyte Disturbance	Common Causes	Symptoms	Treatment	Special Considerations
Hypernatremia	Inadequate H ₂ O intake (elderly/disabled) or inappropriate excretion of H ₂ O (diuretics, Li, and DI)	Lethargy, weakness, irritability, and edema; seizures and coma occur with severe elevations of Na ⁺ levels (> 158 mEq/L)	Salt restrict and give free water	No more than 12 mEq/L in 24 h drop in Na ⁺ (0.5 mEq/L/h) due to risk of cerebral edema, seizures, death
Hyponatremia	Hypo-osmolar (dilutional e.g. CHF, cirrhosis, ascites) and hyper-osmolar (usually glucose)	Acute: Neurologic symptoms 2° to cerebral edema, headache, decreased LOC, depressed reflexes	Water restrict Acute: correct rapidly 3% NaCl 1-2 cc/kg/h Chronic: IV NS + furosemide	Limit total rise to 8 mEq/L in 24 h (0.5 mEq/L/h maximum) as patients are at risk of central pontine myelinolysis
Hyperkalemia	Rhabdomyolysis, insulin deficiency, metabolic acidosis	Nausea, palpitations, muscle stiffness, areflexia	Protect heart: calcium gluconate Shift K ⁺ into cells: insulin, NaHCO ₃ , salbutamol	ECG: peaked/narrow T wave, decreased P wave, prolonged PR interval, widening of QRS, AV block, ventricular fibrillation
Hypokalemia	Metabolic alkalosis, insulin, diuretics, anorexia, salbutamol	N/V, fatigue, muscle cramps, constipation	K-Dur®, K ⁺ sparing diuretics, IV solutions with 20-40 mEq/L over 3-4 h	ECG: U waves most important, flattened/inverted T waves, prolonged QT, depressed ST May need to restore Mg ²⁺
Hypercalcemia	Hyper-PTH and malignancy account for ~90% of cases	Multisystem including CVS, GI (groans), renal (stones), rheumatological, MSK (bones), psychiatric (moans)	Isotonic saline + furosemide if hypervolemic Bisphosphonates, dialysis, chelation (EDTA or oral PO ₄ ³⁻)	Patients with more severe or symptomatic hypercalcemia are usually dehydrated and require saline hydration as initial therapy
Hypocalcemia	Iatrogenic, low Mg ²⁺ , liver dysfunction, 1° hypo-PTH	Laryngospasm, hyperreflexia, paresthesia, tetany, Chvostek's and Trousseau's sign	Acute (ionized Ca ²⁺ <2.8 mg/dL) requires immediate treatment: IV calcium gluconate 1-2 g in 10-20 min followed by slow infusion	Prolonged QT interval can arise, leading to dysrhythmia as can upper airway obstruction

Hypertensive Emergencies

Hypertensive Emergency (Hypertensive Crisis)

Etiology

- essential HTN, emotional exertion, pain, use of sympathomimetic drugs (cocaine, amphetamine, etc.), MAOI use with ingestion of tyramine-containing food (cheese, red wine, etc.), pheochromocytoma, pregnancy

Presentation

- elevation of systolic and diastolic BP (irrespective of BP) with acute end-organ damage (CNS, renal, CVS, retinal)



HELLP Syndrome (seen only in preeclampsia/eclampsia)
Hemolytic anemia
Elevated Liver enzymes
Low Platelet count



Catecholamine-Induced Hypertensive Emergencies

Avoid use of non-selective β-blockers as they inhibit β-mediated vasodilation and leave α-adrenergic vasoconstriction unopposed

Table 17. Signs and Symptoms of Hypertensive Emergencies

	CNS	Retinal	Renal	Cardiac	Gastrointestinal
Complication	Stroke/TIA, headache, altered mental status, seizures, hemorrhage	Vision change, hemorrhage, exudates, papilledema	Nocturia, elevated Cr, proteinuria, hematuria, oliguria	Ischemia/angina, infarct, dissection (back pain), CHF	N/V, abdominal pain, elevated liver enzymes

Investigations

- CBC, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, U/A
- peripheral blood smear: to detect microangiopathic hemolytic anemia
- CXR: if SOB or chest pain
- ECG, troponins, CK: if chest pain
- CT head: if neurological findings or severe headache
- toxicology screen if sympathomimetic overdose suspected

Management

- in general, the strategy for management is to gradually and progressively reduce BP in 24-48 h
 - lower BP by 25% over the initial 60 min by initiating antihypertensive therapy (usually nitroprusside and labetalol) or adjusting antihypertensive
 - if preeclampsia, immediately consult OB/GYN (see **Obstetrics**, OB15)
 - transfer to ICU for further reduction in BP under monitored setting
- in case of ischemic stroke: do not rapidly reduce BP, maintain BP >150/100 for 5 d
- in case of aortic dissection: rapid reduction of sBP to 110-120 STAT (do not resuscitate with IV fluids)
- in case of excessive catecholamines: avoid β -blockers (except labetalol)
- in case of ACS: address ischemia initially, then BP

Hypertensive Urgency

- definition: severely elevated BP (usually sBP >180, dBP >115) with no evidence of end-organ damage
- most commonly due to non-adherence with medications
- treatment: initiate/adjust antihypertensive therapy, monitor in ED (up to 6 h) and discharge with follow up for 48-72 h
- goal: differentiate hypertensive emergencies from hypertensive urgencies

Table 18. Most Commonly Used Agents for the Treatment of Hypertensive Crisis

Drug	Dosage	Onset of Action	Duration of Action	Adverse Effects*	Special Indications
VASODILATORS					
Sodium Nitroprusside (vascular smooth muscle dilator) 1st line	0.25-10 μ g/kg/min	Immediate	3-5 min	N/V, muscle twitching, sweating, cyanide intoxication, coronary steal syndrome	Most hypertensive emergencies (especially CHF, aortic dissection) Use in combination with β -blockers (e.g. esmolol) in aortic dissection Caution with high ICP and azotemia
Nicardipine (CCB)	2 mg IV bolus, then 4 mg/kg/h IV	15-30 min	40 min	Tachycardia, headache, flushing, local phlebitis (e.g. encephalopathy, RF, eclampsia, sympathetic crisis)	Most hypertensive emergencies Caution with acute CHF
Fenoldopam Mesylate (dopamine receptor antagonist)	0.05-0.1 μ g/kg/min IV	<5 min	8-10 min	Tachycardia, headache, nausea, flushing (e.g. acute RF)	Most hypertensive emergencies Caution with glaucoma
Enalapril (ACEI)	0.625-1.25 mg IV q6h	15-30 min	12-24 h	Theoretical fall in pressure in high renin states not seen in studies	Acute LV failure Avoid in acute MI, pregnancy, acute RF
Nitroglycerin	5-20 μ g/min IV	1-2 min	3-5 min	Hypotension, bradycardia, headache, lightheadedness, dizziness	MI/pulmonary edema
Hydralazine	5-10 mg IV/IM q20min (max 20 mg)	5-20 min	2-6 h	Dizziness, drowsiness, headache, tachycardia, Na ⁺ retention	Eclampsia



Age-Adjusted D-Dimer Cutoff Levels to Rule Out Pulmonary Embolism: The ADJUST-PE Study

JAMA 2014;311(11):1117-1124

Background: D-dimer measurement is an important step in the diagnostic strategy of clinically suspected acute PE, but its clinical usefulness is limited in elderly patients.

Purpose: To prospectively validate whether an age-adjusted D-dimer cutoff, defined as age \times 10 in patients \geq 50 yr, is associated with an increased diagnostic yield of D-dimer in elderly patients with suspected PE.

Methods: A multicenter, multinational, prospective management outcome study was performed in 19 centers in Belgium, France, the Netherlands, and Switzerland between January 1, 2010 and February 28, 2013. All consecutive outpatients who presented to the ED with clinically suspected PE were assessed by a sequential diagnostic strategy based on the clinical probability assessed using either the simplified, revised Geneva score or the 2-level Wells' score for PE; highly sensitive D-dimer measurement; and CTPA.

Results: Of the 3,346 patients with suspected PE included, the prevalence of PE was 19%. Among the 2,898 patients with a non-high or an unlikely clinical probability, 817 patients (28.2%) had a D-dimer level lower than 500 μ g/L (95% CI 26.6%-29.9%) and 337 patients (11.6%) had a D-dimer between 500 μ g/L and their age-adjusted cutoff (95% CI 10.5%-12.9%). The 3 mo failure rate in patients with a D-dimer level higher than 500 μ g/L but below the age-adjusted cutoff was 1 of 331 patients (0.3% [95% CI 0.1%-1.7%]). Among the 766 patients \geq 75 yr, of whom 673 had a non-high clinical probability, using the age-adjusted cutoff instead of the 500 μ g/L cutoff increased the proportion of patients in whom PE could be excluded on the basis of D-dimer from 43 of 673 patients (6.4% [95% CI 4.8%-8.5%]) to 200 of 673 patients (29.7% [95% CI 26.4%-33.3%]), without any additional false-negative findings.

Conclusion: Compared with a fixed D-dimer cutoff of 500 μ g/L, the combination of pretest clinical probability assessment with age-adjusted D-dimer cutoff was associated with a larger number of patients in whom PE could be considered ruled out.



With CNS manifestations of severe HTN, it is often difficult to differentiate causal relationships (i.e. HTN could be secondary to a cerebral event with an associated Cushing reflex)

Table 18. Most Commonly Used Agents for the Treatment of Hypertensive Crisis (continued)

Drug	Dosage	Onset of Action	Duration of Action	Adverse Effects*	Special Indications
ADRENERGIC INHIBITORS					
Labetalol	20 mg IV bolus q10min or 0.5-2 mg/min	5-10 min	3-6 h	Vomiting, scalp tingling, burning in throat, dizziness, nausea, heart block, orthostatic hypotension	Most hypertensive emergencies (especially eclampsia) Avoid in acute CHF, heart block >1st degree
Esmolol	250-500 µg/kg/min 1 min, then 50 µg/kg/min for 4 min; repeat	1-2 min	10-20 min	Hypotension, nausea, bronchospasm	Aortic dissection, acute MI SVT dysrhythmias, perioperative HTN Avoid in acute CHF, heart block >1st degree
Phentolamine	5-15 mg q5-15min	1-2 min	3-10 min	Tachycardia, headache, flushing	Catecholamine excess (e.g. pheochromocytoma)

*Hypotension may occur with all of these agents

Stroke

- see [Neurology, N47](#)
- can be ischemic (80% of all strokes) or hemorrhagic



Presentation

- sudden onset persisting neurological deficits

Table 19. Signs and Symptoms of Stroke

	General	Language/Throat	Vision	Coordination	Motor	Sensation	Reflex
Signs/Symptoms	Decreased LOC, changed mental status, confusion, neglect	Dysarthria, aphasia, swallowing difficulty	Diplopia, eye deviation, asymmetric pupils, visual field defect	Ataxia, intention tremor, lack of coordination	Increased tone, loss of power, spasticity	Loss of sensation	Hyper-reflexia, clonus

- patients with hemorrhagic stroke can present with sudden onset thunderclap headache that is usually described as “worst headache of my life”
- constellation of neurological deficits can point to certain vascular territories
- stroke mimics: seizure, migraine, hypoglycemia, Todd's paralysis, peripheral nerve injury, Bell's palsy, tumor, syncope

Table 20. Stroke Syndromes

Region of Stroke	Stroke Syndrome
Anterior Cerebral Artery	Primarily frontal lobe function affected Altered mental status, impaired judgment, contralateral lower extremity weakness and hypoaesthesia, gait apraxia
Middle Cerebral Artery	Contralateral hemiparesis (arm and face weakness > leg weakness) and hypoaesthesia, ipsilateral hemianopsia, gaze preference to side of lesion ± agnosia, receptive/expressive aphasia
Posterior Cerebral Artery	Affects vision and thought Homonymous hemianopsia, cortical blindness, visual agnosia, altered mental status, impaired memory
Vertebrobasilar Artery	Wide variety of cranial nerve, cerebellar, and brainstem deficits: vertigo, nystagmus, diplopia, visual field deficits, dysphagia, dysarthria, facial hypoaesthesia, syncope, ataxia Loss of pain and temperature sensation in ipsilateral face and contralateral body

Investigations

- CBC, electrolytes, blood glucose, coagulation studies ± cardiac biomarkers ± toxicology screen
- non-contrast CT head: look for hemorrhage, ischemia
- ECG ± echocardiogram: rule out atrial fibrillation, acute MI as source of emboli
 - other imaging: carotid dopplers, CTA, MRA as appropriate



If patient presents within 4.5 h of onset of disabling neurological deficits greater than 60 min with no signs of resolution, they may be a candidate for thrombolysis; do brief assessment and order stat CT head

Exclusion Criteria for tPA:

- Suspected subarachnoid hemorrhage
- Previous intracranial hemorrhage
- Cerebral infarct or severe head injury within the past 3 mo
- Recent pericarditis
- Major surgery within the past 14 d
- GI or urinary hemorrhage within the past 21 d
- Recent LP or arterial puncture at noncompressible site
- Patient is pregnant
- BP > 185 mmHg systolic, or > 110 mmHg diastolic
- Bleeding diathesis
- Prolonged PTT (more than 40 s) or INR > 1.4
- Platelet count < 100,000
- Blood glucose < 50 or > 400 mg/dL
- Intracranial hemorrhage on CT or large volume infarct
- Seizure at onset causing deficit
- Previously ADL dependent (clinical judgment)



Differentiation of UMN Disease vs. LMN Disease

Category	UMN Disease	LMN Disease
Muscular deficit	Muscle groups	Individual muscles
Reflexes	Increased	Decreased/absent
Tone	Increased	Decreased
Fasciculations	Absent	Present
Atrophy	Absent/minimal	Present
Babinski	Upgoing	Downgoing

Management

- thrombolysis: immediate assessment for eligibility; need acute onset, <4.5 h from drug administration time AND compatible physical findings AND normal CT with no bleed
- intubation with RSI if GCS ≤ 8 , rapidly decreasing GCS, or inadequate airway protection reflexes
- elevating head of bed if risk of elevated ICP, aspiration, or worsening cardiopulmonary status
- NPO, IV \pm cardiac monitoring
 - judge fluid rate carefully to avoid overhydration (cerebral edema) as well as underhydration (underperfusion of the ischemic penumbra)
- BP control: only treat severe HTN (sBP >200, dBP >120, mean arterial BP >140) or HTN associated with hemorrhagic stroke transformation, cardiac ischemia, aortic dissection, or renal damage; use IV nitroprusside or labetalol
- glycemic control: keep fasting glucose <117 mg/dL in acute phase (5 d)
- cerebral edema control: hyperventilation, mannitol to decrease ICP if necessary
- consult neurosurgery, neurology, medicine as indicated

Medications

- acute ischemic stroke: thrombolytics (rt-PA, e.g. alteplase) if within 4.5 h of symptom onset with no evidence of hemorrhage on CT scan
- antiplatelet agents: prevent recurrent stroke or stroke after TIAs, e.g. Aspirin[®] (1st line); clopidogrel, Aggrenox[®] (2nd line)
- anticoagulation: DVT prophylaxis if immobile; treat atrial fibrillation if present

**7 Causes of Emboli from the Heart**

- Atrial fibrillation
- MI
- Endocarditis
- Valvular disease
- Dilated cardiomyopathy
- Left heart myxoma
- Prosthetic valves

Gynecologic/Urologic Emergencies

Vaginal Bleeding

- see [Gynecology](#), GY6 and [Obstetrics](#), OB21

Etiology

- pregnant patient
 - 1st/2nd trimester pregnancy: ectopic pregnancy, abortion (threatened, incomplete, complete, missed, inevitable, septic), molar pregnancy, implantation bleeding, friable cervix (most common cause)
 - 2nd/3rd trimester pregnancy: placenta previa, placental abruption, premature rupture of membranes, preterm labor
 - other: trauma, bleeding cervical polyp, passing of mucous plug
- postpartum
 - postpartum hemorrhage, uterine inversion, retained placental tissue, endometritis
- non-pregnant patients
 - dysfunctional uterine bleeding, uterine fibroids, pelvic tumors, trauma, endometriosis, PID, exogenous hormones



Vaginal bleeding can be life-threatening. Always start with ABCs and ensure your patient is stable



Vaginal bleeding (and its underlying causes) can be a very distressing event for patients; ensure appropriate support is provided

History

- characterize bleeding (frequency, duration, number of pads/tampons, cyclicity)
- pain, if present (OPQRSTU)
- menstrual history, sexual history, STD history, syncope/pre-syncope
- details of pregnancy, including gush of fluid and fetal movement (>20 wk)

Physical Exam

- ABC (especially noting postural BP/HR and mucous membrane)
- abdominal examination (peritoneal signs, tenderness, distention, mass)
- speculum examination (NOT IF 2nd/3rd trimester bleeding; perform only when placenta previa is ruled out with U/S)
 - look for active bleeding, trauma/anomaly, and cervical dilatation
 - use sterile speculum if pregnant
- bimanual examination (cervical tenderness, size of uterus, cervical length/dilatation)
 - sterile gloves if pregnant

Investigations

- β -hCG test for all patients with childbearing potential
- CBC, blood and Rh type, quantitative β -hCG, PTT, INR
- type and cross if significant blood loss
- transvaginal U/S (rule out ectopic pregnancy and spontaneous abortion)
- abdominal U/S (rule out placenta previa and fetal demise)
- postpartum
 - U/S for retained products
 - β -hCG if concerned about retained tissue



Need β -hCG $\geq 1,200$ to see intrauterine changes on transvaginal U/S



An ectopic pregnancy can be ruled out by confirming an intrauterine pregnancy by bedside U/S unless the patient is using IVF

Management

- ABCs
- pulse oximeter and cardiac monitors if unstable
- Rh immune globulin (Rhogam®) for vaginal bleeding in pregnancy and Rh-negative mother
- 1st/2nd trimester pregnancy
 - ectopic pregnancy: definitive treatment with surgery or methotrexate
 - intrauterine pregnancy, no concerns of coexistent ectopic: discharge patient with obstetrics follow-up
 - U/S indeterminate or β -hCG >1,000-2,000 IU: further workup and/or gynecology consult
 - abortions: if complete, discharge if stable; for all others, acquire gynecology consult
- 2nd/3rd trimester pregnancy
 - placenta previa or placental abruption: obstetrics consult for possible admission
- postpartum
 - manage ABCs: start 2 large bore IV rapid infusion, type and cross 4 units of blood, consult OB/GYN immediately
- non-pregnant
 - dysfunctional uterine bleeding (prolonged or heavy flow \pm breakthrough bleeding and without ovulation, a diagnosis of exclusion)
 - ♦ <35-40 yr of age: Provera® 10 mg PO OD x 10 d, warn patient of a withdrawal bleed, discharge if stable
 - ♦ if unstable, admit for IV hormonal therapy, possible D&C
 - ♦ >35-40 yr of age: uterine sampling necessary prior to initiation of hormonal treatment to rule out endometrial cancer, U/S for any masses felt on exam
 - ♦ tranexamic acid (Cyklokapron®) to stabilize clots
 - structural abnormalities: fibroids or uterine tumors may require excision for diagnosis/treatment, U/S for workup of other pelvic masses, Pap smear/biopsy for cervical lesions

Disposition

- the decision to admit or discharge should be based on the stability of the patient, as well as the nature of the underlying cause; consult gynecology for admitted patients
- if patient can be safely discharged, ensure follow up with family physician or gynecologist
 - instruct patient to return to ED for increased bleeding, presyncope



Classifying Miscarriage (Abortion)

- **Missed:** non-viable intrauterine pregnancy
- **Threatened:** viable intrauterine pregnancy with os closed
- **Inevitable:** os opened, no products of conception passed
- **Incomplete:** products of conception partially expelled
- **Complete:** products of conception completely expelled
- **Septic:** any of above with presence of infection (usually incomplete)
- **Recurrent:** >3 spontaneous abortions (recurrent pregnancy loss)

Pregnant Patient in the ED

Table 21. Complications of Pregnancy

Trimester	Fetal	Maternal
First 1-12 wk	Pregnancy failure <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spontaneous abortion • Fetal demise • Gestational trophoblastic disease 	Ectopic pregnancy Anemia Hyperemesis gravidarum UTI/pyelonephritis
Second 13-27 wk	Disorders of fetal growth <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IUGR • Oligo/polyhydramnios 	Gestational DM Rh incompatibility UTI/pyelonephritis
Third 28-41 wk	Vasa previa	Preterm labor/PPROM Preeclampsia/eclampsia Placenta previa Placental abruption Uterine rupture DVT

Nephrolithiasis (Renal Colic)

- see [Urology](#), U16

Epidemiology and Risk Factors

- 10% of population (twice as common in males)
- recurrence 50% at 5 yr
- peak incidence 30-50 yr of age
- 75% of stones <5 mm pass spontaneously within 2 wk, larger stones may require consultation

Clinical Features

- urinary obstruction \rightarrow upstream distention of ureter or collecting system \rightarrow severe colicky pain
- may complain of pain at flank, groin, testes, or tip of penis
- writhing, never comfortable, N/V, hematuria (90% microscopic), diaphoresis, tachycardia, tachypnea
- occasionally symptoms of trigonal irritation (frequency, urgency)
- fever, chills, rigors in secondary pyelonephritis
- peritoneal findings/anterior abdominal tenderness usually absent



Kidney Stones

- 80% Calcium oxalate
- 10% Struvite
- 10% Uric acid

Differential Diagnosis of Renal Colic

- acute ureteric obstruction
- acute abdomen: biliary, bowel, pancreas, AAA
- gynecological: ectopic pregnancy, torsion/rupture of ovarian cyst
- pyelonephritis (fever, chills, pyuria, vomiting)
- radiculitis (L1): herpes zoster, nerve root compression

Investigations

- screening
 - CBC → elevated WBC in presence of fever suggests infection
 - electrolytes, Cr, BUN → to assess renal function
 - U/A: R&M (WBCs, RBCs, crystals), C&S
- imaging
 - non-contrast spiral CT is the study of choice
 - abdominal U/S may demonstrate stone or hydronephrosis (consider in females of child-bearing age)
 - AXR will identify large radioopaque stones (calcium, struvite, and cystine stones), but may miss smaller stones, uric acid stones, or stones overlying bony structures; consider as an initial investigation in patients who have a history of radioopaque stones and similar episodes of acute flank pain (CT necessary if film is negative)
- strain all urine → stone analysis

Management

- analgesics: NSAIDs (usually ketorolac [Toradol*], preferable over opioids), antiemetics, IV fluids
- urology consult may be indicated, especially if stone >5 mm, or if patient has signs of obstruction or infection
- α-blocker (e.g. tamsulosin) helpful to increase stone passage in select cases

Disposition

- most patients can be discharged
- ensure patient is stable, has adequate analgesia, and is able to tolerate oral medications
- may advise hydration and limitation of protein, sodium, oxalate, and alcohol intake



Indications for Admission to Hospital

- Intractable pain
- Fever (suggests infection) or other evidence of pyelonephritis
- Single kidney with ureteral obstruction
- Bilateral obstructing stones
- Intractable vomiting
- Compromised renal function

Ophthalmologic Emergencies

- see [Ophthalmology](#), OP5, OP42

History and Physical Exam

- patient may complain of pain, tearing, itching, redness, photophobia, foreign body sensation, trauma
- mechanism of foreign body insertion – if high velocity injury suspected (welding, metal grinding, metal striking metal), must obtain orbital x-rays, U/S, or CT scan to exclude presence of intraocular metallic foreign body
- visual acuity in both eyes, pupils, extraocular structures, funduscopy, tonometry, slit lamp exam

Management of Ophthalmologic Foreign Body

- copious irrigation with saline for any foreign body
- remove foreign body under slit lamp exam with cotton swab or sterile needle
- antibiotic drops qid until healed
- patching may not improve healing or comfort – do not patch contact lens wearers
- limit use of topical anesthetic to examination only
- consider tetanus prophylaxis
- ophthalmology consult if globe penetration suspected

Table 22. Differential Diagnosis of Red Eye in the Emergency Department

Symptom	Possible Serious Etiology
Light sensitivity	Iritis, keratitis, abrasion, ulcer
Unilateral	Above + herpes simplex, acute angle closure glaucoma
Significant pain	Above + scleritis
White spot on cornea	Corneal ulcer
Blurred vision	All of the above
Non-reactive pupil	Acute glaucoma, iritis
Copious discharge	Gonococcal conjunctivitis
Blurred vision	All of the above



ALWAYS assess visual acuity in both eyes when a patient presents to the ER with an ophthalmologic complaint



Any etiology of red eyes may also present with blurred vision



Other Ophthalmologic Emergencies

Infectious: Red eye, endophthalmitis, hypopyon

Trauma: Globe rupture, orbital blow-out fractures, corneal injuries, eyelid laceration, hyphema, lens dislocation, retrobulbar hemorrhage

Painful vision loss: Acute iritis, corneal abrasion, globe rupture, lens dislocation, retrobulbar hemorrhage, optic neuritis, temporal arteritis, endophthalmitis, keratitis

Painless vision loss: Central retinal vein occlusion, amaurosis fugax, occipital stroke



Contraindications to Pupil Dilation

- Shallow anterior chamber
- Iris-supported lens implant
- Potential neurological abnormality requiring pupillary evaluation
- Caution with CV disease – mydriatics can cause tachycardia

Table 23. Select Ophthalmologic Emergencies

Condition	Signs and Symptoms	Management
Acute Angle Closure Glaucoma	Unilateral red, painful eye Decreased visual acuity, halos around lights Fixed, mid-dilated pupil N/V Marked increase in IOP (>40 mmHg) Shallow anterior chamber \pm cells	Ophthalmology consult for laser iridotomy Topical β -blockers, adrenergics, and cholinergics Systemic carbonic anhydrase inhibitors and hyperosmotic agents
Chemical Burn	Known exposure to acids or alkali (worse) Pain, decreased visual acuity Vascularization or defects of cornea Iris and lens damage	Irrigate at site of accident IV NS drip in ED with eyelid retracted Swab fornices Cycloplegic drops Topical antibiotics and patching
Orbital Cellulitis	Red, painful eye, decreased visual acuity Headache, fever Lid erythema, edema, and difficulty opening eye Conjunctival injection and chemosis Proptosis, ophthalmoplegia \pm RAPD	Admission, ophthalmology consult Blood cultures, orbital CT IV antibiotics (ceftriaxone+ vancomycin) Drainage of abscess
Retinal Artery Occlusion	Sudden, painless, monocular vision loss RAPD Cherry red spot and retinal pallor on fundoscopy	Restore blood flow <2 h Massage globe Decrease IOP (topical β -blockers, inhaled O_2/CO_2 mix, IV Diamox [®] , IV mannitol, drain aqueous fluid)
Retinal Artery Detachment	Flashes of light, floaters, and curtains of blackness/peripheral vision loss Painless Loss of red reflex, decreased IOP Detached areas are gray \pm RAPD	Ophthalmology consult for scleral buckle/pneumatic retinopexy

Dermatologic Emergencies

Life-Threatening Dermatoses

Rash Characteristics

A. Diffuse Rashes

- SSSS
 - ♦ caused by an exotoxin from infecting strain of coagulase-positive *S. aureus*
 - ♦ mostly occurs in children
 - ♦ prodrome: fever, irritability, malaise, and skin tenderness
 - ♦ sudden onset of diffuse erythema: skin is red, warm, and very tender
 - ♦ flaccid bullae that are difficult to see, then desquamate in large sheets
 - ♦ Nikolsky's sign: gentle lateral stroking of skin causes epidermis to separate
- TEN (>30% of BSA)
 - ♦ see [Dermatology, D21](#)
 - ♦ caused by drugs (e.g. phenytoin, sulfas, penicillins, and NSAIDs), bone marrow transplantation, and blood product transfusions
 - ♦ usually occurs in adults
 - ♦ diffuse erythema followed by necrosis
 - ♦ severe mucous membrane blistering
 - ♦ entire epidermis desquamation
 - ♦ high mortality (>50%)
- TSS
 - ♦ see [Infectious Diseases, ID24](#)
 - ♦ caused by superantigen from *S. aureus* or GAS activating T-cell and cytokines
 - ♦ patient often presents with onset of shock and multi-organ failure, fever
 - ♦ diffuse erythematous macular rash
 - ♦ at least 3 organ systems involved: CNS, respiratory, GI, muscular, mucous membranes, renal, liver, hematologic, and skin (necrotizing fasciitis, gangrene)
- vesicobullous lesions
 - EM
 - ♦ see [Dermatology, D21](#)
 - ♦ immunologic reaction to herpes simplex
 - ♦ viral prodrome 1-14 d before rash
 - ♦ "target lesion": central gray bulla or wheal surrounded by concentric rings of erythema and normal skin



- SJS (<10% of BSA)
 - ♦ see [Dermatology, D21](#)
 - ♦ related to drugs such as antiepileptics and biologic agents (e.g. infliximab)
 - ♦ EM with constitutional symptoms and mucous membrane involvement (milder mucous membrane involvement than TEN)



B. Discrete Lesions

- pyoderma gangrenosum
 - ♦ often associated with immunocompromised patients (HIV, leukemia, or lymphoma) with Gram-negative sepsis
 - ♦ often occurs in arms, hands, feet, or perineal region
 - ♦ usually begins as painless macule/vesicle → pustule/bulla on red/blue base → sloughing, leaving a gangrenous ulcer
- DGI
 - ♦ see [Dermatology, D31](#)
 - ♦ fever, skin lesions (pustules/vesicles on erythematous base ~5 mm in diameter), arthritis (joint swelling and tenderness), and septic arthritis (in larger joints, such as knees, ankles, and elbows)
 - ♦ most commonly in gonococcus positive women during menstruation or pregnancy
 - ♦ skin lesions usually appear in extremities and resolve quickly (<7 d)
- meningococcemia
 - ♦ flu-like symptoms of headache, myalgia, N/V
 - ♦ petechial, macular, or maculopapular lesions with gray vesicular centers
 - ♦ usually a few millimeters in size, but may become confluent and hemorrhagic
 - ♦ usually appear in extremities, but may appear anywhere
 - ♦ look for signs of meningeal irritation: Brudzinski, Kernig, nuchal rigidity, jolt accentuation



History and Physical Exam

- determine onset, course, and location of skin lesions
- fever, joint pain
- associated symptoms: CNS, respiratory, GU, GI, renal, liver, mucous membranes
- medication history
- vitals

Investigations

- immediate consultation if patient unstable
- CBC, electrolytes, Cr, AST, ALT, ALP, blood culture, skin biopsy, serum immunoglobulin levels (serum IgE)



Thorough dermatologic examinations are required; examination of asymptomatic skin may identify more lesions; ensure adequate draping during dermatologic examinations

Management

- general: judicious IV fluids and electrolyte control, consider vasopressors if hypotensive, prevention of infection
- determine if admission and consult needed: dermatology or infectious diseases
- specific management is determined by etiology
 - SSSS, TSS, DGI, and meningococcemia
 - ♦ IV antibiotics
 - EM, SJS, and TEN
 - ♦ stop precipitating medication
 - ♦ fluids
 - ♦ symptomatic treatment: antihistamines, antacids, topical corticosteroids, systemic corticosteroids (controversial), prophylactic oral acyclovir, consider IVIg
 - ♦ TEN: debride necrotic tissue

Disposition

- most cases will require urgent care and hospitalization
- TEN: early transfer to burn center improves outcome



Environmental Injuries

Heat Exhaustion and Heat Stroke

- predisposing factors: young persons who overexert themselves, older adults who cannot dissipate heat at rest (e.g. using anticholinergic drugs such as antihistamines or TCAs), and patients with schizophrenia who are using anticholinergic or antiepileptic medications

Heat Exhaustion

- clinical features relate to loss of circulating volume caused by exposure to heat stress
- “water depletion”: heat exhaustion occurs if lost fluid not adequately replaced
- “salt depletion”: heat exhaustion occurs when losses replaced with hypotonic fluid



Heat exhaustion may closely resemble heat stroke; heat exhaustion may eventually progress to heat stroke, so if diagnosis is uncertain treat as heat stroke

Heat Stroke

- life-threatening emergency resulting from failure of normal compensatory heat-shedding mechanisms
- divided into classical and exertional subtypes
- if patient does not respond relatively quickly to cooling treatments, consider other possible etiologies of hyperpyrexia (e.g. meningitis, thyroid storm, anticholinergic poisoning, delirium tremens, other infections)

Table 24. Heat Exhaustion vs. Heat Stroke

	Heat Exhaustion	Classical Heat Stroke	Exertional Heat Stroke
Clinical Features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-specific malaise, headache, fatigue • Body temp < 104.9°F (usually normal) • No coma or seizures • Dehydration (↑ HR, orthostatic hypotension) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Occurs in setting of high ambient temperatures (e.g. heat wave, poor ventilation) • Often patients are older, poor, and sedentary or immobile • Dry, hot skin • Temp usually > 104.9°F • Altered mental status, seizures, delirium, or coma • May have elevated AST, ALT 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Occurs with high endogenous heat production (e.g. exercise) that overwhelms homeostatic mechanisms • Patients often younger, more active • Skin often diaphoretic • Other features as for classical heat stroke, but may also have DIC, acute renal failure, rhabdomyolysis, marked lactic acidosis
Treatment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rest in a cool environment • IV NS if orthostatic hypotension; otherwise replace losses slowly PO 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cool body temperature with water mist (e.g. spray bottle) and standing fans • Ice water immersion also effective; monitor body temperature closely to avoid hypothermic overshoot • Secure airway because of seizure and aspiration risk • Give fluid resuscitation if still hypotensive after above therapy • Avoid α-agonists (e.g. epinephrine), peripheral vasoconstriction, and antipyretics (e.g. ASA) 	

Hypothermia and Cold Injuries



HYPOTHERMIA

- predisposing factors: extremes of age, lack of housing, drug overdose, EtOH ingestion, trauma (incapacitating), cold water immersion, outdoor sports
- treatment based on re-warming and supporting cardiorespiratory function
- complications: coagulopathy, acidosis, ventricular dysrhythmias (VFib), asystole, volume and electrolyte depletion
- labs: CBC, electrolytes, ABG, serum glucose, Cr/BUN, Mg²⁺, Ca²⁺, amylase, coagulation profile
- imaging: CXR (aspiration pneumonia, pulmonary edema are common)
- monitors: ECG, rectal thermometer, Foley catheter, NG tube, monitor metabolic status frequently

Table 25. Classification of Hypothermia

Class	Temp	Symptoms/Signs
Mild	89.6 - 94.8°F	Tachypnea, tachycardia, ataxia, dysarthria, shivering
Moderate	82.4 - 89.4°F	Loss of shivering, dysrhythmias, Osborne (J) waves on ECG, decreased LOC, combative behavior, muscle rigidity, dilated pupils
Severe	<82.4°F	Coma, hypotension, acidemia, VFib, asystole, flaccidity, apnea

Re-warming Options

- gentle fluid and electrolyte replacement in all (due to cold diuresis)
- Passive External Re-warming
 - suitable for most stable patients with core temperature >90°F
 - involves covering patient with insulating blanket; body generates heat and re-warms through metabolic process, shivering
- Active External Re-warming
 - involves use of warming blankets
 - beware of “afterdrop” phenomenon
 - safer when done in conjunction with active core re-warming
- Active Core Re-warming
 - generally for patients with core temperature <90°F, and/or with cardiovascular instability
 - avoids “afterdrop” seen with AER alone
 - re-warm core by using
 - ♦ warmed humidified oxygen, IV fluids
 - ♦ peritoneal dialysis with warm fluids
 - ♦ gastric/colonic/pleural irrigation with warm fluids
 - ♦ external circulation (cardiopulmonary bypass machine) is most effective and fastest



Afterdrop Phenomenon

Warming of extremities causes vasodilation and movement of cool pooled blood from extremities to core, resulting in a drop in core temperature leading to cardiac arrest

Approach to Cardiac Arrest in the Hypothermic Patient

- do all procedures gently or may precipitate VFib
- check pulse and rhythm for at least 1 min; may have profound bradycardia
- **if any pulse at all (even very slow) do NOT do CPR**
- if in VFib try to defibrillate up to maximum 3 shocks if core temperature $< 86^{\circ}\text{F}$
- intubate if required, ventilate with warmed, humidified O_2
- medications (vasopressors, antidysrhythmics) may not be effective at low temperatures
 - controversial; may try one dose
- focus of treatment is re-warming

FROSTBITE

Classification

- ice crystals form between cells
- classified according to depth – similar to burns (1st to 3rd degree)
- 1st degree
 - symptoms: initial paresthesia, pruritus
 - signs: erythema, edema, hyperemia, no blisters
- 2nd degree
 - symptoms: numbness
 - signs: blistering (clear), erythema, edema
- 3rd degree
 - symptoms: pain, burning, throbbing (on thawing); may be painless if severe
 - signs: hemorrhagic blisters, skin necrosis, edema, no movement

Management

- treat for hypothermia: O_2 , IV fluids, maintenance of body warmth
- remove wet and constrictive clothing
- immerse in $104\text{--}107.6^{\circ}\text{F}$ agitated water for 10–30 min (very painful; administer adequate analgesia)
- clean injured area and leave it open to air
- consider aspiration/debridement of blisters (controversial)
- debride skin
- tetanus prophylaxis
- consider penicillin G as frost bite injury at high risk of infection
- surgical intervention may be required to release restrictive eschars
- never allow a thawed area to re-chill/freeze



Burn Causes

- Thermal (flame, scald)
- Chemical
- Radiation (UV, medical/therapeutic)
- Electrical



Use palm of the patient's hand to estimate 1% of BSA affected

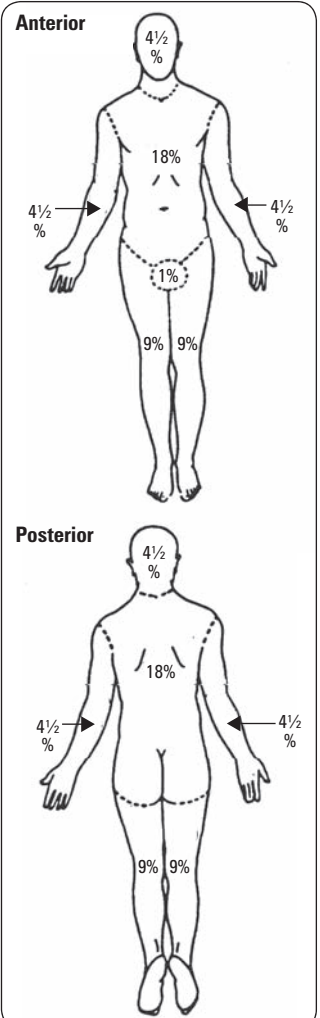


Figure 15. Rule of 9s for total BSA



Intubate early if you suspect inhalation injury, as airway can become obstructed due to edema

Burns

- see [Plastic Surgery, PL16](#)



Physical Exam

- burn size
 - rule of nines; does not include 1st degree burns
- burn depth
 - superficial: epidermis only (e.g. sunburn)
 - partial thickness: into superficial dermis or hair follicles, sweat glands
 - full thickness: all layers of the skin
 - deep: involvement of fat, muscle, even bone

Management

- remove noxious agent/stop burning process
- establish airway if needed (indicated with burns $> 40\%$ BSA or smoke inhalation injury)
- resuscitation for 2nd and 3rd degree burns (after initiation of 2 large bore IVs)
- fluid boluses if unstable
 - Parkland Formula: Ringer's lactate 4 cc/kg/% BSA burned; give half in first 8 h, half in next 16 h; maintenance fluids are also required if patient cannot tolerate PO hydration
 - urine output is best measure of resuscitation, should be 40–50 cc/h or 0.5 cc/kg/h; avoid diuretics
- pain relief: continuous morphine infusion with breakthrough bolus
- investigations: CBC, electrolytes, U/A, CXR, ECG, ABG, carboxyhemoglobin
- burn wound care: prevent infection, clean/debride with mild soap and water, sterile dressings
- escharotomy or fasciotomy for circumferential burns (chest, extremities)
- topical antibiotics, systemic antibiotics infrequently indicated
- tetanus prophylaxis if burn is deeper than superficial dermis

Disposition

- admit
 - 2nd degree burns $> 10\%$ BSA or any significant 3rd degree burns
 - 2nd degree burns on face, hands, feet, perineum, or across major joints
 - electrical, chemical burns, and inhalation injury
 - burn victims with underlying medical problems or immunosuppressed patients

Inhalation Injury

Etiology

- CO or cyanide poisoning
- direct thermal injury: limited to upper airway
- smoke causes bronchospasm and edema from particulate matter and toxic inhalants (tissue asphyxiates, pulmonary irritants, systemic toxins)

History and Physical Exam

- risk factors: closed space fires, period of unconsciousness, noxious chemicals involved
- cherry red skin (unreliable, usually post-mortem finding)
- singed nasal hairs, soot on oral/nasal membranes, sooty sputum
- hoarseness, stridor, dyspnea
- decreased LOC, confusion
- PO₂ normal but O₂ saturation low suggests CO poisoning

Investigations

- measure carboxyhemoglobin levels, co-oximetry
- ABG
- CXR ± bronchoscopy

Management

- CO poisoning: 100% O₂ ± hyperbaric O₂ (controversial)
- direct thermal injury: humidified oxygen, early intubation, pulmonary toilet, bronchodilators

Bites

MAMMALIAN BITES

- see [Plastic Surgery](#), PL10



History

- time and circumstances of bite, symptoms, allergies, tetanus immunization status, comorbid conditions, rabies risks, HIV/hepatitis risk (human bite)
- high morbidity associated with clenched fist injuries, “fight bites”

Physical Exam

- assess type of wound: abrasion, laceration, puncture, crush injury
- assess for direct tissue damage: skin, bone, tendon, neurovascular status

Investigations

- if bony injury or infection suspected, check for fracture and gas in tissue with x-rays
- get skull films in children with scalp bite wounds ± CT to rule out cranial perforation

Initial Management

- wound cleansing and copious irrigation as soon as possible
- irrigate/debride puncture wounds if feasible, but not if sealed or very small openings; avoid hydrodissection along tissue planes
- debridement is important in crush injuries to reduce infection and optimize cosmetic and functional repair
- culture wound if signs of infection (erythema, necrosis, or pus); obtain anaerobic cultures if wound foul smelling, necrotizing, or abscess; notify lab that sample is from bite wound

Prophylactic Antibiotics

- types of infections resulting from bites: cellulitis, lymphangitis, abscesses, tenosynovitis, osteomyelitis, septic arthritis, sepsis, endocarditis, meningitis
- a 3-5 d course of antibiotics is recommended for all bite wounds to the hand and should be considered in other bites if any high-risk factors present (efficacy not proven)
- dog and cat bites (pathogens: *Pasteurella multocida*, *S. aureus*, *S. viridans*)
 - 80% of cat bites, 5% of dog bites become infected
 - 1st line: amoxicillin + clavulanic acid
- human bites (pathogens: *Eikenella corrodens*, *S. aureus*, *S. viridans*, oral anaerobes)
 - 1st line: amoxicillin + clavulanic acid
- rabies (see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID21)
 - reservoirs: warm-blooded animals except rodents, lagomorphs (e.g. rabbits)
 - post-exposure vaccine is effective; treatment depends on local prevalence
- suturing
 - vascular structures (i.e. face and scalp) are less likely to become infected, therefore consider suturing
 - allow avascular structures (i.e. pretibial regions, hands, and feet) to heal by secondary intention
 - tetanus immunization if >10 yr or incomplete primary series



Consider Admission if:

- Moderate to severe infections
- Infections in immunocompromised patients
- Not responding to oral therapy
- Penetrating injuries to tendons, joints, CNS
- Open fractures



SNAKE BITES

- history, physical exam, investigations, and initial management similar to mammalian bites
- additional management issues
 - snake bites are rarely fatal, but proper precautions must be taken
 - supportive management, observe for compartment syndrome, analgesia, tetanus prophylaxis
 - contact State Poison Information Center for consultation
 - for the Massasauga rattlesnake ONLY: if no signs of local tissue damage AND an INR is normal at 6 h after the bite, the patient may be discharged
 - there is NO evidence that constriction bands are helpful AND can be harmful
- if envenomation present, administer antivenom as directed by local Poison Information Center

INSECT BITES

- bee stings
 - 5 types of reactions to stings (local, large local, systemic, toxic, unusual)
 - history and physical exam key to diagnosis; no lab test will confirm
 - investigations: CBC, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, glucose, ABGs, ECG
 - ABC management, epinephrine 0.1 mg IV over 5 min if shock, antihistamines, cimetidine 300 mg IV/IM/PO, steroids, β -agonists for SOB/wheezing 3 mg in 5 mL NS via nebulizer, local site management
- West Nile virus (see [Infectious Diseases, ID25](#))



Near Drowning

- most common in children <4 yr and teenagers
- causes lung damage, hypoxemia, and may lead to hypoxic encephalopathy
- must also assess for shock, C-spine injuries, hypothermia, and scuba-related injuries (barotrauma, air emboli, lung re-expansion injury)
- complications: volume shifts, electrolyte abnormalities, hemolysis, rhabdomyolysis, renal, DIC

Physical Exam

- ABCs, vitals: watch closely for hypotension
- lungs: rales (ARDS, pulmonary edema), decreased breath sounds (pneumothorax)
- CVS: murmurs, dysrhythmias, JVP (CHF, pneumothorax)
- H&N: assess for C-spine injuries
- neuro: GCS or AVPU, pupils, focal deficits

Investigations

- labs: CBC, electrolytes, ABGs, Cr, BUN, INR, PTT, U/A (drug screen, myoglobin)
- imaging: CXR (pulmonary edema, pneumothorax) \pm C-spine imaging
- ECG

Management

- ABCs, treat for trauma, shock, hypothermia
- cardiac and O₂ monitors, IV access
- intensive respiratory care
 - ventilator assistance if decreased respirations, pCO₂ >50 mmHg, or pO₂ <60 mmHg on maximum O₂
 - may require intubation for airway protection, ventilation, pulmonary toilet
 - high flow O₂/CPAP/BiPAP may be adequate but some may need mechanical ventilation with positive end-expiratory pressure
- dysrhythmias: usually respond to corrections of hypoxemia, hypothermia, and acidosis
- vomiting: very common, NG suction to avoid aspiration
- convulsions: usually respond to O₂; if not, diazepam 5-10 mg IV slowly
- bronchospasm: bronchodilators
- bacterial pneumonia: not necessary to prophylax with antibiotics unless contaminated water or hot-tub (*Pseudomonas*)
- always initiate CPR in drowning-induced cardiac arrest even if patient hypothermic; continue CPR until patient is fully rewarmed

Disposition

- non-significant submersion: discharge after short observation
- significant submersion (even if asymptomatic): long period of observation (24 h) as pulmonary edema may appear late
- CNS symptoms or hypoxemia: admit
- severe hypoxemia, decreased LOC: ICU

Toxicology



Principles of Toxicology

4 principles to consider with all ingestions:

- Resuscitation (ABCD₃EFG)
- Screening (toxidrome? clinical clues?)
- Decrease absorption of drug
- Increase elimination of drug

"ABCD₃EFG" of Toxicology

- basic axiom of care is symptomatic and supportive treatment
- address underlying problem only once patient is stable
 - A** Airway (consider stabilizing the C-spine)
 - B** Breathing
 - C** Circulation
 - D1** Drugs
 - ACLS as necessary to resuscitate the patient
 - universal antidotes
 - D2** Draw bloods
 - D3** Decontamination (decrease absorption)
 - E** Expose (look for specific toxidromes)/Examine the patient
 - F** Full vitals, ECG monitor, Foley, X-rays
 - G** Give specific antidotes and treatments
- go back and reassess
- call Poison Information Center
- obtain corroborative history from family, bystanders

D1 – Universal Antidotes

- treatments that will not harm patients and may be essential

Dextrose (glucose)

- give to any patient presenting with altered LOC
- measure blood glucose prior to glucose administration if possible
- adults: 0.5-1.0 g/kg (1-2 mL/kg) IV of D50W
- children: 0.25 g/kg (2-4 mL/kg) IV of D25W

Oxygen

- do not deprive a hypoxic patient of oxygen no matter what the antecedent medical history (i.e. even COPD with CO₂ retention)
- if depression of hypoxic drive, intubate and ventilate
- exception: paraquat or diquat (herbicides) inhalation or ingestion (oxygen radicals increase morbidity)

Naloxone (central μ -receptor competitive antagonist, shorter $t_{1/2}$ than naltrexone)

- antidote for opioids: administration is both diagnostic and therapeutic (1 min onset of action)
- used for the undifferentiated comatose patient
- loading dose
 - adults
 - ♦ response to naloxone can be drastic, so stepwise delivery of initial 2 mg bolus is recommended
 - ♦ draw up 2 mg to deliver IV/IM/SL/SC or via ETT (ETT dose = 2-2.5x IV dose)
 - 1st dose 0.4 mg
 - if no response, deliver 2nd dose 0.6 mg
 - if still no response, deliver remaining 1 mg
 - child
 - ♦ 0.01 mg/kg initial bolus IV/IO/ETT
 - ♦ 0.1 mg/kg if no response and opioid still suspected to max of 10 mg
- maintenance dose
 - may be required because half-life of naloxone (30-80 min) is much shorter than many opioids
 - ♦ hourly infusion rate at 2/3 of initial dose that produced patient arousal

Thiamine (Vitamin B1)

- 100 mg IV/IM with IV/PO glucose to all patients
- given to prevent/treat Wernicke's encephalopathy
- a necessary cofactor for glucose metabolism (may worsen Wernicke's encephalopathy if glucose given before thiamine), but do not delay glucose if thiamine unavailable
- must assume all undifferentiated comatose patients are at risk



Universal Antidotes

DONT

Dextrose

Oxygen

Naloxone

Thiamine (must give BEFORE dextrose)



Populations at Risk for Thiamine Deficiency

- Alcoholics
- Anorexics
- Hyperemesis of pregnancy
- Malnutrition states



Administration of naloxone can cause opioid withdrawal in chronic users:

Minor withdrawal may present as lacrimation, rhinorrhea, diaphoresis, yawning, piloerection, HTN, and tachycardia

Severe withdrawal may present as hot and cold flashes, arthralgias, myalgias, N/V, and abdominal cramps

D2 – Draw Bloods

- essential tests
 - CBC, electrolytes, BUN/Cr, glucose, INR/PTT, osmolality
 - ABGs, measure O₂ sat
 - ASA, acetaminophen, EtOH levels
- potentially useful tests
 - drug levels – this is NOT a serum drug screen
 - Ca²⁺, Mg²⁺, PO₄³⁻
 - protein, albumin, lactate, ketones, liver enzymes, CK – depending on drug and clinical presentation

Serum Drug Levels

- treat the patient, not the drug level
- negative toxicology screen does not rule out a toxic ingestion – signifies only that the specific drugs tested were not detectable in the specimen
- specific drugs available on general screen vary by institution; check before ordering
- urine screens also available (qualitative only)

Table 26. Toxic Gaps (see [Nephrology, NP14](#))

METABOLIC ACIDOSIS	
Increased AG: “MUDPILES CAT” (* = toxic)	Increased POG: “MAE DIE” (if it ends in “-ol”, it will likely increase the POG)
Methanol*	Methanol
Uremia	Acetone
Diabetic ketoacidosis/Starvation ketoacidosis	Ethanol
Phenformin*/Paraldehyde*	Diuretics (glycerol, mannitol, sorbitol)
Isoniazid, Iron, Ibuprofen	Isopropanol
Lactate (anything that causes seizures or shock)	Ethylene glycol
Ethylene glycol*	
Salicylates*	
Cyanide, CO*	
Alcoholic ketoacidosis	Note: normal POG does not rule out toxic alcohol; only an elevated gap is helpful
Toluene, theophylline*	
Decreased AG	Increased O₂ saturation gap
Electrolyte imbalance (increased Na ⁺ /K ⁺ /Mg ²⁺)	Carboxyhemoglobin
Hypoalbuminemia (50% fall in albumin ~5.5 mEq/L decrease in the AG)	Methemoglobin
Lithium, bromine elevation	Sulfmethemoglobin
Paraproteins (multiple myeloma)	
Normal AG	
High K ⁺ : pyelonephritis, obstructive nephropathy, renal tubular acidosis IV, TPN	
Low K ⁺ : small bowel losses, acetazolamide, renal tubular acidosis I, II	



Plasma Osmolar Gap

= (2 Na⁺ + glucose + urea) – plasma osmolality
 “2 salts and a sugar BUN”
 Normal POG <10 mOsm/kg



Anion Gap

= Na⁺ – Cl⁻ – HCO₃⁻
 Normal AG ≤12 mEq/L

Table 27. Use of the Clinical Laboratory in the Initial Diagnosis of Poisoning

Test	Finding	Selected Causes
ABG	Hypoventilation (↑ pCO ₂) Hyperventilation (↓ pCO ₂)	CNS depressants (opioids, sedative-hypnotic agents, phenothiazines, EtOH) Salicylates, CO, other asphyxiants
Electrolytes	↑ AG metabolic acidosis Hyperkalemia Hypokalemia	“MUDPILES CAT”: see Table 26 Digitalis glycosides, fluoride, potassium Theophylline, caffeine, β-adrenergic agents, soluble barium salts, diuretics, insulin
Glucose	Hypoglycemia	Oral hypoglycemic agents, insulin, EtOH, ASA
Osmolality and Osmolar Gap	Elevated osmolar gap	“MAE DIE”: see Table 26
ECG	Wide QRS complex Prolonged QT interval Atrioventricular block	TcAs, quinidine, other class Ia and Ic antidysrhythmic agents Terfenadine, astemizole, antipsychotics Ca ²⁺ antagonists, digitalis glycosides, phenylpropanolamine
Abdominal X-Ray	Radioopaque pills or objects	“CHIPES”: Calcium, Chloral hydrate, CCl ₄ , Heavy metals, Iron, Potassium, Enteric coated Salicylates, and some foreign bodies
Serum Acetaminophen	Elevated level (>140 mg/L or 1,000 μmol/L 4 h after ingestion)	May be only sign of acetaminophen poisoning

D3 – Decontamination and Enhanced Elimination

Ocular Decontamination

- saline irrigation to neutralize pH; alkali exposure requires ophthalmology consult

Dermal Decontamination (wear protective gear)

- remove clothing, brush off toxic agents, irrigate all external surfaces

Gastrointestinal Decontamination

- single dose activated charcoal
 - adsorption of drug/toxin to AC prevents availability
 - contraindications: caustics, small bowel obstruction, perforation
 - dose: 10 g/g drug ingested or 1g/kg body weight
 - odorless, tasteless, prepared as slurry with H₂O
- whole bowel irrigation
 - 500 mL/h (child) to 2,000 mL/h (adult) of polyethylene glycol solution by mouth until clear effluent per rectum
 - start slow (500 mL in an adult) and aim to increase rate hourly as tolerated
 - indications
 - ♦ awake, alert, can be nursed upright OR intubated and airway protected
 - ♦ delayed release product
 - ♦ drug/toxin not bound to charcoal
 - ♦ drug packages (if any evidence of breakage → emergency surgery)
 - ♦ recent toxin ingestion
 - contraindications
 - ♦ evidence of ileus, perforation, or obstruction
- surgical removal in extreme cases
 - indicated for drugs that are toxic, form concretions, or cannot be removed by conventional means
- no evidence for the routine use of cathartics (i.e. ipecac)

Urine Alkalinization

- may be used for: ASA, methotrexate, phenobarbital, chlorpropamide
- weakly acidic substances can be trapped in alkali urine (pH >7.5) to increase elimination

Multidose Activated Charcoal

- may be used for: carbamazepine, phenobarbital, quinine, theophylline
- for toxins which undergo enterohepatic recirculation
- removes drug that has already been absorbed by drawing it back into GI tract
- various regimens: 12.5 g (1/4 bottle) PO q1h or 25 g (1/2 bottle) PO q2h until non-toxic

Hemodialysis

- indications/criteria for hemodialysis
 - toxins that have high water solubility, low protein binding, low molecular weight, adequate concentration gradient, small volume of distribution, or rapid plasma equilibration
 - removal of toxin will cause clinical improvement
 - advantage is shown over other modes of therapy
 - predicted that drug or metabolite will have toxic effects
 - impairment of normal routes of elimination (cardiac, renal, or hepatic)
 - clinical deterioration despite maximal medical support
- useful for the following toxins
 - methanol
 - ethylene glycol
 - salicylates
 - lithium
 - phenobarbital
 - chloral hydrate (→ trichloroethanol)
- others include theophylline, carbamazepine, valproate, methotrexate



Substances NOT Adsorbed by Activated Charcoal

- Lithium
- Iron
- Lead
- Alcohols
- Caustics



Position Paper Update: Ipecac Syrup for Gastrointestinal Decontamination

Clin Toxicol 2013;51:134-139

Study: Systematic review of 12 new studies (2003-2011) and summary of older studies (animal studies, volunteer studies, marker studies, case reports).

Conclusions: There is debate in the literature as to whether or not the use of ipecac should be completely abandoned, or whether it may remain useful in certain special circumstances. Concerns regarding the use of ipecac include the variability of its effects depending on elapsed time of administration and its interference with other treatments such as activated charcoal. Furthermore, ipecac use has a number of side effects, such as diarrhea, drowsiness, and prolonged vomiting, as well as some rare side effects which may contribute to death. Despite these, ipecac has a high margin of safety. While routine administration of ipecac is not appropriate, it may be beneficial in certain circumstances. For example, its use may be considered when there is a substantial risk of serious toxicity, there are no contraindications (such as high risk of aspiration), no alternative treatment option exists (or when the administration of ipecac will have no effect on the alternative treatment option), and there can be timely delivery of ipecac (<90 min).

E – Expose and Examine the Patient

- vital signs (including temperature), skin (needle tracks, color), mucous membranes, pupils, odors, and CNS
- head-to-toe survey including
 - C-spine
 - signs of trauma, seizures (incontinence, “tongue biting”, etc.), infection (meningismus), or chronic alcohol/drug abuse (track marks, nasal septum erosion)
- mental status

Table 28. Specific Toxicidromes

Toxidrome	Overdose Signs and Symptoms	Examples of Drugs
Anticholinergic	Hyperthermia Dilated pupils Dry skin Vasodilation Agitation/hallucinations Ileus Urinary retention Tachycardia	“Hot as a hare” “Blind as a bat” “Dry as a bone” “Red as a beet” “Mad as a hatter” “The bowel and bladder lose their tone and the heart goes on alone” Antidepressants (e.g. TCAs) Cyclobenzaprine (Flexeril®) Carbamazepine Antihistamines (e.g. diphenhydramine) Antiparkinsonians Antipsychotics Antispasmodics Belladonna alkaloids (e.g. atropine)
Cholinergic	“DUMBELS” Diaphoresis, Diarrhea, Decreased BP Urination Miosis Bronchospasm, Bronchorrhea, Bradycardia Emesis, Excitation of skeletal muscle Lacrimation Salivation, Seizures	Natural plants: mushrooms, trumpet flower Anticholinesterases: physostigmine Insecticides (organophosphates, carbamates) Nerve gases
Extrapyramidal	Dysphonia, dysphagia Rigidity and tremor Motor restlessness, crawling sensation (akathisia) Constant movements (dyskinesia) Dystonia (muscle spasms, laryngospasm, trismus, oculogyric crisis, torticollis)	Major tranquilizers Antipsychotics
Hemoglobin Derangements	Increased respiratory rate Decreased LOC Seizures Cyanosis unresponsive to O ₂ Lactic acidosis	CO poisoning (carboxyhemoglobin) Drug ingestion (methemoglobin, sulfmethemoglobin)
Opioid, Sedative/ Hypnotic, EtOH	Hypothermia Hypotension Respiratory depression Dilated or constricted pupils (pinpoint in opioid) CNS depression	EtOH Benzodiazepines Opioids (morphine, heroin, fentanyl, etc.) Barbiturates Gamma hydroxybutyrate
Sympathomimetic	Increased temperature CNS excitation (including seizures) Tachycardia, HTN N/V Diaphoresis Dilated pupils	Amphetamines, caffeine, cocaine, LSD, phencyclidine Ephedrine and other decongestants Thyroid hormone Sedative or EtOH withdrawal
Serotonin Syndrome	Mental status changes, autonomic hyperactivity, neuromuscular abnormalities, hyperthermia, diarrhea, HTN	MAOI, TCA, SSRI, opiate analgesics Cough medicine, weight reduction medications

Note: ASA poisoning and hypoglycemia mimic sympathomimetic toxidrome



F – Full Vitals, ECG Monitor, Foley, X-Rays

G – Give Specific Antidotes and Treatments

Urine Alkalinization Treatment for ASA Overdose

- urine pH >7.5
- fluid resuscitate first, then 3 amps NaHCO₃/L of D5W @ 1.5 x maintenance
- add 20-40 mEq/L KCl if patient is able to urinate

Table 29. Protocol for Warfarin Overdose

INR	Management: Consider Prothrombin Complex Concentrate (Octaplex®, Beriplex®) for any elevated INR, AND either life-threatening bleeding, or a plan for the patient to undergo a surgical procedure within the next 6 h
<5.0	Cessation of warfarin administration, observation, serial INR/PT
5.1–9.0	If no risk factors for bleeding, hold warfarin x 1-2 d and reduce maintenance dose OR Vitamin K 1-2 mg PO if patient at increased risk of bleeding
9.1–20.0	Hold warfarin, vitamin K 2-4 mg PO, serial INR/PT, additional vitamin K if necessary
>20.0	Hold warfarin, vitamin K 10 mg IV over 10 min, increase vitamin K dosing (q4h) if needed

Table 30. Specific Antidotes and Treatments for Common Toxins*

Toxin	Treatment	Considerations
Acetaminophen	Decontaminate (activated charcoal) N-acetylcysteine	Often clinically silent; evidence of liver/renal damage delayed >24 h Toxic dose >200 mg/kg (>7.5 g adult) Monitor drug level 4 h post-ingestion; also liver enzymes, INR, PTT, BUN, Cr Hypoglycemia, metabolic acidosis, encephalopathy → poor prognosis
Acute Dystonic Reaction	Benztropine: 1-2 mg IM/IV then 2 mg PO x 3 d OR Diphenhydramine 1-2 mg/kg IV, then 25 mg PO qid x 3 d	Benzotropine (Cogentin®) has euphoric effect and potential for abuse
Anticholinergics	Decontaminate (activated charcoal) Supportive care	Special antidotes available; consult Poison Information Center
ASA	Decontaminate (activated charcoal) Alkalinize urine; want urine pH >7.5	Monitor serum pH and drug levels closely Monitor K ⁺ level; may require supplement for urine alkalinization Hemodialysis may be needed if intractable metabolic acidosis, very high levels, or end-organ damage (i.e. unable to diurese)
Benzodiazepines	Decontaminate (activated charcoal) Flumazenil Supportive care	
β-blockers	Decontaminate (activated charcoal) Consider high dose insulin euglycemia therapy Some dialyzable, some use intralipids	Consult Poison Information Center
Calcium Channel Blockers	Decontaminate (activated charcoal) CaCl ₂ 1-4 g of 10% solution IV if hypotensive Other: high dose insulin euglycemia, inotropes or intralipids	Order ECG, electrolytes (especially Ca ²⁺ , Mg ²⁺ , Na ⁺ , K ⁺)
Cocaine	Decontaminate (activated charcoal) if oral Aggressive supportive care	β-blockers are contraindicated in acute cocaine toxicity Intralipid for life-threatening symptoms
CO Poisoning	See <i>Inhalation Injury</i> , ER46 Supportive care 100% O ₂	
Cyanide	Hydroxocobalamin	
Digoxin	Decontaminate (activated charcoal) Digoxin-specific Ab fragments 10-20 vials IV if acute; 3-6 if chronic 1 vial (40 mg) neutralizes 0.5 mg of toxin	Use for life-threatening dysrhythmias unresponsive to conventional therapy, 6 h serum digoxin >9.4 ng/mL, initial K ⁺ >5 mEq/L, ingestion >10 mg (adult)/>4 mg (child) Common dysrhythmias include VFib, VTach, and conduction blocks
Ethanol	Thiamine 100 mg IM/IV Manage airway and circulatory support	Hypoglycemia very common in children Mouthwash = 70% EtOH; perfumes and colognes = 40-60% EtOH Order serum EtOH level and glucose level; treat glucose level appropriately
Ethylene Glycol/Methanol	Fomepizole (4-methylpyrazole) 15 mg/kg IV load over 30 min, then 10 mg/kg q12h OR Ethanol (10%) 10 mL/kg over 30 min, then 1.5 mL/h	CBC, electrolytes, glucose, ethanol level Consider hemodialysis
Heparin	Protamine sulfate 25-50 mg IV	For unfractionated heparin overdose only
Insulin IM/SC/Oral Hypoglycemic	Glucose IV/PO/NG tube Glucagon: 1-2 mg IM (if no access to glucose)	Glyburide carries highest risk of hypoglycemia among oral agents Consider octreotide for oral hypoglycemics (50-100 µg SC q6h) in these cases; consult local Poison Information Center
MDMA	Decontaminate (activated charcoal), supportive care	Monitor CK; treat rhabdomyolysis with high flow fluids; aggressive external cooling for hyperthermia
Opioids	See <i>Universal Antidotes</i> , ER48	
TCA's	Decontaminate (activated charcoal) Aggressive supportive care NaHCO ₃ bolus for wide QRS/seizures	Flumazenil antidote contraindicated in combined TCA and benzodiazepine overdose Also consider cardiac and hypotension support, seizure control Intralipid therapy (consult local Poison Information Center)

*Call local Poison Information Center for specific doses and treatment recommendations

Alcohol Related Emergencies

- see [Psychiatry](#), PS18

Acute Intoxication

- slurred speech, CNS depression, disinhibition, lack of coordination
- nystagmus, diplopia, dysarthria, ataxia → may progress to coma
- hypotension (peripheral vasodilation)
- if obtunded, rule out
 - head trauma/intracranial hemorrhage
 - associated depressants/street drugs, toxic alcohols
 - ♦ may also contribute to respiratory/cardiac depression
 - hypoglycemia (screen with bedside glucometer)
 - hepatic encephalopathy: confusion, altered LOC, coma
 - ♦ precipitating factors: GI bleed, infection, sedation, electrolyte abnormalities, protein meal
 - Wernicke's encephalopathy (ataxia, ophthalmoplegia, delirium)
 - post-ictal state, basilar stroke

Withdrawal

- beware of withdrawal signs
- treatment
 - diazepam 10-20 mg IV/PO or lorazepam 2-4 mg IV/PO q1h until calm
 - ♦ frequency of dosing may have to be increased depending on clinical response
 - may use CIWA protocol and give benzodiazepines as above until CIWA <10
 - thiamine 100 mg IM/IV then 50-100 mg/d
 - magnesium sulfate 4 g IV over 1-2 h (if hypomagnesemic)
 - admit patients with DT or multiple seizures

Table 31. Alcohol Withdrawal Signs

Time Since Last Drink	Syndrome	Description
6-8 h	Mild withdrawal	Generalized tremor, anxiety, agitation, but no delirium Autonomic hyperactivity (sinus tachycardia), insomnia, N/V
1-2 d	Alcoholic hallucinations	Visual (most common), auditory, and tactile hallucinations Vitals often normal
8 h-2 d	Withdrawal seizures	Typically brief generalized tonic-clonic seizures May have several within a few hours CT head if focal seizures have occurred
3-5 d	DT	5% of untreated withdrawal patients Severely confused state, fluctuating LOC Agitation, insomnia, hallucinations/delusions, tremor Tachycardia, hyperpyrexia, diaphoresis High mortality rate

Cardiovascular Complications

- HTN
- cardiomyopathy: SOB, edema
- dysrhythmias ("holiday heart")
 - AFib (most common), atrial flutter, SVT, VTach (especially Torsades if hypomagnesemic/hypokalemic)

Metabolic Abnormalities

- alcoholic ketoacidosis
 - AG metabolic acidosis, urine ketones, low glucose, and normal osmolality
 - history of chronic alcohol intake with abrupt decrease/cessation
 - malnourished, abdominal pain with N/V
 - treatment: dextrose, thiamine (100 mg IM/IV prior to dextrose), volume repletion (with NS)
 - generally resolves in 12-24 h
- other alcohols
 - ethylene glycol → CNS, CVS, renal findings
 - methanol
 - ♦ early: lethargy, confusion
 - ♦ late: headache, visual changes, N/V, abdominal pain, tachypnea
 - both ethylene glycol and methanol produce severe metabolic acidosis with anion gap (as the alcohol is metabolized) and osmolar gap (initially after ingestion but before metabolism)
 - EtOH co-ingestion is protective
 - treatment
 - ♦ urgent hemodialysis required
 - ♦ fomepizole 15 mg/kg IV bolus OR EtOH 10% IV bolus and infusion to achieve blood level of 100 mg/dL (EtOH loading may be done PO)



Alcohol levels correlate poorly with intoxication



Alcohol intoxication may invalidate informed consent



CIWA Withdrawal Symptoms

- N/V
- Tremor
- Paroxysmal sweats
- Anxiety
- Agitation
- Visual disturbances
- Tactile disturbances
- Auditory disturbances
- Headache
- Disorientation

10 symptoms each scored out of 7 except orientation is out of 4



Common Deficiencies

- Thiamine
- Niacin
- Folate
- Glycogen
- Magnesium
- Potassium

- ♦ consider folic acid for methanol, and pyridoxine and thiamine for ethylene glycol – both help reduce conversion to active metabolites
- other abnormalities associated with alcohol: hypomagnesemia, hypophosphatemia, hypocalcemia, hypoglycemia, hypokalemia

Gastrointestinal Abnormalities

- gastritis
 - common cause of abdominal pain and GI bleed in chronic alcohol users
- pancreatitis
 - serum amylase very unreliable in patients with chronic pancreatitis, may need serum lipase
 - hemorrhagic form (15%) associated with increased mortality
 - fluid resuscitation very important
- hepatitis
 - AST/ALT ratio >2 suggests alcohol as the cause as well as elevated GGT with acute ingestion
- peritonitis/spontaneous bacterial peritonitis
 - leukocytosis, fever, generalized abdominal pain/tenderness
 - occasionally accompanies cirrhosis
 - paracentesis for diagnosis (common pathogens: *E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Streptococcus*)
- GI bleeds
 - most commonly gastritis or ulcers, even if patient known to have varices
 - consider Mallory-Weiss tear secondary to retching
 - often complicated by underlying coagulopathies
 - minor: treat with antacids
 - severe or recurrent: endoscopy

Disposition

- before patient leaves ED ensure stable vital signs, can walk unassisted, fully oriented
- offer social services to find shelter or detox program
- ensure patient can obtain any medications prescribed and can complete any necessary follow-up

Approach to the Overdose Patient

History

- age, weight, underlying medical problems, medications
- substance and how much
- time and symptoms since exposure determines prognosis and need for decontamination
- route
- intention, suicidality

Physical Exam

- focus on: ABCs, LOC/GCS, vitals, pupils



Suspect Overdose when:

- Altered LOC/coma
- Young patient with life-threatening dysrhythmia
- Trauma patient
- Bizarre or puzzling clinical presentation

Disposition from the Emergency Department

- methanol, ethylene glycol
 - delayed onset, admit and watch clinical and biochemical markers
- TCAs
 - prolonged/delayed cardiotoxicity warrants admission to monitored (ICU) bed
 - if asymptomatic and no clinical signs of intoxication: 6 h ED observation adequate with proper decontamination and no ECG abnormalities
 - sinus tachycardia alone (most common finding) with history of OD warrants observation in ED
- hydrocarbons/smoke inhalation
 - pneumonitis may lag 6-8 h
 - consider observation for repeated clinical and radiographic examination
- ASA, acetaminophen
 - if borderline level, get second level 2-4 h after first
 - for ASA, must have at least 2 levels going down before discharge (3 levels minimum)
- oral hypoglycemics
 - admit all patients for minimum 24 h if hypoglycemic and 12 h after last octreotide dose
 - observe asymptomatic patient for at least 8 h

Psychiatric Consultation

- once patient medically cleared, arrange psychiatric intervention if required
- beware – suicidal ideation may not be expressed

Psychiatric Emergencies

Approach to Common Psychiatric Presentations

- see [Psychiatry, PS2](#)
- before seeing patient, ensure your own safety; have security/police available if necessary

History

- safety
 - assess suicidality: suicidal ideation (SI), intent, plan, lethal means, and past attempts
 - assess homicidality: homicidal ideation (HI), access to weapons, intended victim, and history of violence
 - driving and children
 - command hallucinations
- identify current stressors and coping strategies
- mood symptoms: manic, depressive
- anxiety: panic attacks, generalized anxiety, phobias, obsessive-compulsive disorder, post-traumatic stress disorder
- psychotic symptoms: delusions, hallucinations, disorganized speech, disorganized or catatonic behavior, negative symptoms (affective flattening, avolition, alogia)
- substance use history: most recent use, amount, previous withdrawal reactions
- past psychiatric history, medications, adherence with medications
- medical history: obtain collateral if available

Physical Exam

- complete physical exam focusing on: vitals, neurological exam, signs of head trauma, signs of drug toxicity, signs of metabolic disorder
- mental status exam: general appearance, behavior, cooperation, speech, mood and affect, thought content and form, perceptual disturbances, cognition (including MMSE if indicated), judgment, insight, reliability

Investigations

- investigations vary with age, established psychiatric diagnosis vs. first presentation, history and physical suggestive of organic cause
- as indicated: blood glucose, urine and serum toxicology screen, pregnancy test, electrolytes, TSH, AST/ALT, bilirubin, serum Cr, BUN, osmolality
- blood levels of psychiatric medications
- CT head if suspect neurological etiology
- LP if indicated



Key Functions of Emergency Psychiatric Assessment

- Is the patient medically stable?
- Rule out medical cause
- Is psychiatric consult needed?
- Are there safety issues (SI, HI)?
- Is patient certifiable? (must demonstrate risk [present/past test] and apparent mental illness [future test])



Psychiatric Review of Systems

MOAPS

Mood
Organic
Anxiety
Psychosis
Safety

Acute Psychosis



Differential Diagnosis

- primary psychotic disorder (e.g. schizophrenia)
- secondary to medical condition (e.g. delirium)
- drugs: substance intoxication or withdrawal, medications (e.g. steroids, anticholinergics)
- infectious (CNS)
- metabolic (hypoglycemic, hepatic, renal, thyroid)
- structural (hemorrhage, neoplasm)

Management

- violence prevention
 - remain calm, empathic, and reassuring
 - ensure safety of staff and patients, have extra staff and/or security on hand
 - patients demonstrating escalating agitation or overt violent behavior may require physical restraint and/or chemical tranquilization
- treat agitation: whenever possible, offer medication to patients as opposed to administering with force (helps calm and engage patient)
 - benzodiazepines: lorazepam 2 mg PO/IM/SL
 - antipsychotics: olanzapine 5 mg PO, haloperidol 5 mg PO/IM
- treat underlying medical condition
- psychiatry or Crisis Intervention Team consult

Suicidal Patient

Epidemiology

- attempted suicide F>M, completed suicide M>F
- second leading cause of death in people <24 yr

Management

- ensure patient safety: close observation, remove potentially dangerous objects from person and room
- assess thoughts (ideation), means, action (preparatory, practice attempts), previous attempts
- admit if there is evidence of intent and organized plan, access to lethal means, psychiatric disorder, intoxication (suicidal ideation may resolve with few days of abstinence)
- patient may require certification if unwilling to stay voluntarily
- do not start long-term medications in the ED
- psychiatry or Crisis Intervention Team consult



See [Psychiatry](#), PS2 for certification (involuntary assessment/admission) considerations



High Risk Patients

SAD PERSONS

Sex = male
Age >45 yr old
Depression
Previous attempts
Ethanol use
Rational thinking loss
Suicide in family
Organized plan
No spouse, no support system
Serious illness

Common Pediatric ED Presentations

Modified Glasgow Coma Score

Table 32. Modified GCS

Modified GCS for Infants		
Eye Opening	Verbal Response	Motor Response
4 – spontaneously	5 – coos, babbles	6 – normal, spontaneous movement
3 – to speech	4 – irritable cry	5 – withdraws to touch
2 – to pain	3 – cries to pain	4 – withdraws to pain
1 – no response	2 – moans to pain	3 – decorticate flexion
	1 – no response	2 – decerebrate extension
		1 – no response

Modified GCS for Children <4 yr		
Eye Opening	Verbal Response	Motor Response
4 – spontaneously	5 – oriented, social, speaks, interacts	6 – normal, spontaneous movement
3 – to speech	4 – confused speech, disoriented, consolable	5 – localizes to pain
2 – to pain	3 – inappropriate words, not consolable/aware	4 – withdraws to pain
1 – no response	2 – incomprehensible, agitated, restless, not aware	3 – decorticate flexion
	1 – no response	2 – decerebrate extension
		1 – no response



Any trauma or suspected trauma patient <1 yr of age with a large, boggy scalp hematoma requires U/S or CT

Respiratory Distress

- see [Pediatrics](#), P89

History and Physical Exam

- infants not able to feed, older children not able to speak in full sentences
- anxious, irritable, lethargic – may indicate hypoxia
- tachypnea >60 (>40 if preschool age, >30 if school age), retractions, tracheal tug
 - see [Pediatrics](#), P3 for age specific vital signs
- pulsus paradoxus
- wheezing, grunting, vomiting

Table 33. Stridorous Upper Airway Diseases: Diagnosis

Feature	Croup	Bacterial Tracheitis	Epiglottitis ¹
Age Range (yr)	0.5-4	5-10	2-8
Prodrome	Days	Hours to days	Minutes to hours
Temperature	Low grade	High	High
Radiography	Steeple sign	Exudates in trachea	Thumb sign
Etiology	Parainfluenza	<i>S. aureus</i> /GAS	<i>H. Influenzae</i> type b
Barky Cough	Yes	Yes	No
Drooling	Yes	No	Yes
Appear Toxic	No	Yes	Yes
Intubation/ICU	No	Yes	Yes
Antibiotics	No	Yes	Yes
NOTE	Oral exam	Oral exam	No oral exam, consult ENT

¹Now rare with Hib vaccine in common use



In Pediatric Respiratory Distress, Must also Rule Out:

- Anaphylaxis
- Foreign body
- Pneumonia
- Bronchiolitis

Management

- croup (usually laryngotracheitis caused by parainfluenza viruses)
 - humidified O₂ should not be given (no evidence for efficacy)
 - racemic epinephrine q1h x 3 doses, observe for 'rebound effects'
 - nebulized 1:1000 epi (racemic has limited availability)
 - dexamethasone x 1 dose
 - consider bacterial tracheitis/epiglottitis if unresponsive to croup therapy
- bacterial tracheitis
 - start croup therapy, but may have poor response
 - usually require intubation, ENT consult, ICU
 - start antibiotics (e.g. cloxacillin), pending C&S
- epiglottitis
 - 4 D's: drooling, dyspnea, dysphagia, dysphonia + tripod sitting
 - do not examine oropharynx or agitate patient
 - immediate anesthesia, ENT call – intubate
 - then IV fluids, antibiotics, blood cultures
- asthma
 - supplemental O₂ if saturation <90% or PaO₂ <60%
 - bronchodilator therapy: salbutamol (Ventolin®) 0.15 mg/kg by masks q20min x 3
 - add 250-500 µg ipratropium (Atrovent®) to first 3 doses salbutamol
 - give corticosteroid therapy as soon as possible after arrival (prednisolone 2 mg/kg, dexamethasone 0.3 mg/kg)
 - if critically ill, not responding to inhaled bronchodilators or steroids: give IV bolus, then infusion of MgSO₄
 - IV β₂-agonists if critically ill and not responding to above



Admission Criteria for Croup

- Stridor at rest or significant respiratory distress
- Relapse after 2 doses of epinephrine or incomplete response
- Comorbid respiratory or underlying condition



Admission Criteria for Asthma

- Respiratory distress 6 h after steroids
- Ventolin required >q3h
- Need for supplemental oxygen
- Consider if previous ICU admission
- Significant fatigue or lethargy

Febrile Infant and Febrile Seizures

FEBRILE INFANT

- see [Pediatrics, P54](#)
- for fever >100.4°F without obvious focus
 - <28 d
 - ♦ admit
 - ♦ full septic workup (CBC and differential, blood C&S, urine C&S, LP ± stool C&S, CXR if indicated)
 - ♦ treat empirically with broad spectrum IV antibiotics
 - 28-90 d
 - ♦ as above unless infant meets Rochester criteria (see sidebar), investigate as indicated by history and physical
 - >90 d
 - ♦ toxic: admit, treat, full septic workup
 - ♦ non-toxic and no focus: investigate as indicated by history and physical

FEBRILE SEIZURES

- see [Pediatrics, P86](#)

Etiology

- children aged 6 mo to 6 yr with fever or history of recent fever
- typical vs. atypical febrile seizures
- normal neurological exam afterward
- no evidence of intracranial infection or history of previous non-febrile seizures
- often positive family history of febrile seizures
- relatively well looking after seizure

Investigations and Management

- if it is a febrile seizure: treat fever and look for source of fever
- if not a febrile seizure: treat seizure and look for source of seizure
 - note: may also have fever but may not meet criteria for febrile seizure
- ± EEG (especially if first seizure), head U/S (if fontanelle open)

Table 34. Typical vs. Atypical Febrile Seizures

Characteristic	Typical	Atypical
Duration	<15 min	>15 min
Type of Seizure	Generalized	Focal features
Frequency	1 in 24 h	>1 in 24 h



Rochester Criteria for Febrile Infants Age 28-90 Days Old

- Non-toxic looking
- Previously well (>37 wk gestational age, home with mother, no hyperbilirubinemia, no prior antibiotics or hospitalizations, no chronic/underlying illness)
- No skin, soft tissue, bone, joint, or ear infection on physical exam
- WBC 5,000-15,000, bands <1,500, urine <10 WBC/HPF, stool <5 WBC/HPF



Abdominal Pain

- see [Pediatrics](#), P39

History

- nature of pain, associated fever
- associated GI, GU symptoms
- anorexia, decreased fluid intake

Physical Exam

- HEENT, respiratory, abdominal exam including DRE, testicular/genital exam

Table 35. Differential Diagnosis of Abdominal Pain in Infants/Children/Adolescents

Medical	Surgical
Colic	Malrotation with volvulus
UTI	Hirschsprung's disease
Constipation	Necrotizing enterocolitis
Gastroenteritis	Incarcerated hernia
Sepsis	Intussusception
Henoch-Schönlein purpura	Duodenal atresia
IBD	Appendicitis
Hemolytic uremic syndrome	Cholecystitis
Pneumonia	Pancreatitis
Strep throat	Testicular torsion
Sickle cell disease crisis	Ectopic pregnancy
DKA	Trauma
Functional	Pyloric stenosis

*Remember to keep an index of suspicion for child abuse



Red Flags for Abdominal Pain

- Significant weight loss or growth retardation (need growth chart)
- Fever
- Joint pain with objective physical findings
- Rash
- Rectal bleeding
- Rebound tenderness and radiation of pain to back, shoulders, or legs
- Pain wakes from sleep
- Severe diarrhea and encopresis

Common Infections

- see [Pediatrics](#), P54

Table 36. Antibiotic Treatment of Pediatric Bacterial Infections

Infection	Pathogens	Treatment
MENINGITIS SEPSIS		
Neonatal	GBS, <i>E. coli</i> , <i>Listeria</i> , Gram-negative bacilli	ampicillin + cefotaxime
1-3 mo	Same pathogens as above and below	ampicillin + cefotaxime + vancomycin
>3 mo	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i> type b (>5 yr), meningococcus	ceftriaxone + vancomycin
OTITIS MEDIA		
1st line	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i> type b, <i>M. catarrhalis</i>	amoxicillin 80-90 mg/kg per day
2nd line		clarithromycin 15 mg/kg/d bid (for penicillin allergy)
Treatment failure		90 mg/kg/d amoxicillin and 6.4 mg/kg/d clavulanate divided into bid dosage
STREP PHARYNGITIS		
	Group A β -hemolytic <i>Streptococcus</i>	penicillin/amoxicillin or erythromycin (penicillin allergy)
UTI		
	<i>E. coli</i> , <i>Proteus</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i> , <i>Pseudomonas</i> , <i>S. saprophyticus</i> , <i>Enterococcus</i> , GBS	Oral: cephalexin (older children) IV: ampicillin and aminoglycoside
PNEUMONIA		
1-3 mo	Viral, <i>S. pneumoniae</i> , <i>C. trachomatis</i> , <i>B. pertussis</i> , <i>S. aureus</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i>	cefuroxime \pm macrolide (erythromycin) OR ampicillin \pm macrolide
3 mo-5 yr	Viral, <i>S. pneumoniae</i> , <i>S. aureus</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i> , <i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i>	ampicillin/amoxicillin or cefuroxime
>5 yr	As above	ampicillin/amoxicillin + macrolide or cefuroxime + macrolide



Child Abuse and Neglect

- see [Pediatrics, P14](#)
- obligation to report any suspected/known case of child abuse or neglect to CAS yourself (do not delegate)
- document injuries
- consider skeletal survey x-rays (especially in non-ambulatory child), ophthalmology consult, CT head
- injury patterns associated with child abuse
 - HI: torn frenulum, dental injuries, bilateral black eyes, traumatic hair loss, diffuse severe CNS injury, retinal hemorrhage
 - Shaken Baby Syndrome: diffuse brain injury, subdural/SAH, retinal hemorrhage, minimal/no evidence of external trauma, associated bony fractures
 - skin injuries: bites, bruises/burns in shape of an object, glove/stocking distribution of burns, bruises of various ages, bruises in protected areas
 - bone injuries: rib fractures without major trauma, femur fractures age <1 yr, spiral fractures of long bones in non-ambulatory children, metaphyseal fractures in infants, multiple fractures of various ages, complex/multiple skull fractures
 - GU/GI injuries: chronic abdominal/perineal pain, injury to genitals/rectum, STD/pregnancy, recurrent vomiting or diarrhea



Presentation of Neglect

- Failure to thrive, developmental delay
- Inadequate or dirty clothing, poor hygiene
- Child exhibits poor attachment to parents



Procedures that may Require Sedation

- Setting fractures
- Reducing dislocations
- Draining abscesses
- Exploring wounds/ulcers/superficial infections
- Endoscopic examination
- Reduce patient anxiety/agitation for imaging/procedures

Common Medications

Table 37. Commonly Used Medications

Drug	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Comments
Acetaminophen	325-650 mg PO q4-6h prn	Pain control	Max 4 g daily
Activated charcoal	30-100 g PO in 250 mL H ₂ O	Poisoning/overdose	
ASA	325-650 mg PO q4h max 4g/d stroke/MI risk: 81-325 mg PO OD 160 mg chewed	Pain control Cardiac prevention ACS	
β-blockers (metoprolol)	5 mg slow IV q5min x 3 if no contraindications	Acute MI	
Diazepam	anxiety: 2-10 mg PO tid/qid alcohol withdrawal: 10-20 mg PO/IV q1h titrated to signs/symptoms	Anxiety Alcohol withdrawal	
Enoxaparin	1 mg/kg SC bid	Acute MI	
Epinephrine	anaphylaxis: 0.1-0.5 mg IM; can repeat q10-15min	Anaphylaxis	Max 1 mg/dose
Fentanyl	0.5-1.0 µg/kg IV	Procedural sedation	Very short acting narcotic (complication=apnea)
Flumazenil	0.3 mg IV bolus q5min x 3 doses	Reversal of procedural sedation	Benzodiazepine antagonist Can cause seizures/status epilepticus in chronic benzodiazepine users
Furosemide (Lasix®)	CHF: 40-80 mg IV HTN: 10-40 mg PO bid	CHF HTN	Monitor for electrolyte imbalances
Glucose	0.5-1.0 g/kg (1-2 mL/kg) IV of D50W	Hypoglycemia/DKA	
Haloperidol	2.5-5.0 mg PO/IM initial effective dose 6-20 mg/d	Psychosis	Monitor with Parkinson's; results in CNS depression
Ibuprofen	200-800 mg PO tid prn max 1,200 mg/d	Mild to moderate acute pain Analgesic and anti-inflammatory properties	
Insulin	bolus 5-10 U (0.2 U/kg) then 5-10 U (0.1 U/kg) per h	Hyperglycemia	Monitor blood glucose levels Consider K ⁺ replacement, also measure blood glucose levels before administration
Ipratropium bromide	2-3 puffs inhaled tid-qid, max 12 puffs/d	Asthma	Contraindicated with peanut/soy allergy Caution with narrow-angle glaucoma
Lidocaine with epi	max 7 mg/kg SC	Local anesthetic	Not to be used in fingers, nose, toes, penis, ears
Lidocaine w/o epi	max 5 mg/kg SC	Local anesthetic	
Lorazepam	anxiety: 0.5-2 mg PO/IM/IV q6-8h status epilepticus: 4 mg IV repeat up to q5min	Anxiety Status epilepticus	
Midazolam	50 µg/kg IV	Procedural sedation	Short acting benzodiazepine (complication=apnea when used with narcotic) Fentanyl and midazolam often used together for procedural sedation

Table 37. Commonly Used Medications (continued)

Drug	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Comments
Morphine	15-30 mg PO q8-12h 0.1-0.2 mg/kg max 15 mg IV q4h	Mild to moderate acute/chronic pain Prescribed in combination with NSAIDs or acetaminophen	GI and constipation side effects DO NOT CRUSH, CUT, or CHEW
Naloxone	0.5-2 mg or 0.01-0.02 mg/kg initial bolus IV/IM/SL/SC or via ETT (2-2.5x IV dose), increase dose by 2 mg until response/max 10 mg	Comatose patient Opioid overdose Reversal in procedural sedation	
Nitroglycerin	acute angina: 0.3-0.6 mg SL q5min, OR 5 µg/min IV increasing by 5-20 µg/min q3-5min	Angina Acute MI	Not to be used with other anti-hypertensives Not in right ventricular MI
Percocet 10/325®	1-2 tabs PO q6h prn	Moderate pain control	Oxycodone + acetaminophen Max 4 g acetaminophen daily
Phenytoin	Status epilepticus: see Table 14, ER26	Status epilepticus	Begin maintenance dose 12 h after loading dose Continuous ECG, BP monitoring mandatory
Polysporin®	Apply to affected area bid-tid	Superficial infections	
Propofol	0.25-1 mg/kg IV	Procedural sedation	Short acting Anesthetic/sedative (complication=apnea, decreased BP)
Salbutamol	2 puffs inhaled q4-6h (4 yr) max 12 puffs/d	Asthma	Caution with cardiac abnormalities
Thiamine	100 mg IV/IM initially, then 50-100 mg IM/IV/PO OD x 3d	To treat/prevent Wernicke's encephalopathy	Caution use in pregnancy
Tylenol #3®	1-2 tabs PO q4-6h prn	Pain control	Max 4 g acetaminophen daily

References

- American College of Emergency Physicians. Clinical policy for the initial approach to patients presenting with altered mental status. *Ann Emerg Med* 1999;33:251-280.
- Andreoli TE, Carpenter CJ, Griggs RC, et al. Cecil essentials of medicine, 8th ed. Saunders, 2010.
- Bachmann LM, Kolb E, Koller MT, et al. Accuracy of Ottawa ankle rules to exclude fractures of the ankle and mid-foot: systematic review. *BMJ* 2003;326:417.
- Barash PG, Cullen BF, Stoelting RK. Clinical anesthesia, 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 2005.
- Chu P. Blunt abdominal trauma: current concepts. *Curr Orthopaed* 2003;17:254-259.
- Dargan P, Wallace C, Jones AL. An evidence based flowchart to guide the management of acute salicylate (Aspirin®) overdose. *Emerg Med J* 2002;19:206-209.
- The EINSTEIN-PE Investigators. Oral rivaroxaban for the treatment of symptomatic pulmonary embolism. *NEJM* 2012;366:1287-1297.
- The EINSTEIN-PE Investigators. Oral rivaroxaban for the treatment of symptomatic venous thromboembolism. *NEJM* 2010;363:2499-2510.
- Elliott WJ. Hypertensive emergencies. *Crit Care Clin* 2001;17:435-451.
- Frampton A. Reporting of gunshot wounds by doctors in emergency departments: A duty or a right? Some legal and ethical issues surrounding breaking patient confidentiality. *Emerg Med J* 2005;22:84-86.
- Kalant H, Roschlau WH. Principles of medical pharmacology, 7th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2006.
- Keim S. Emergency medicine on call. McGraw Hill, 2004.
- Kline JA, Mitchell AM, Kabrhe C, et al. Clinical criteria to prevent unnecessary diagnostic testing in emergency department patients with suspected pulmonary embolism. *J Thromb Haemost* 2004;2:1247-1255.
- Marx J, Hockberger R, Walls R (editors). Rosen's emergency medicine: concepts and clinical practice, 8th ed. Mosby, 2013.
- Munro P. Management of eclampsia in the accident and emergency department. *Emerg Med J* 2000;7:7-11.
- Perry JJ, Stiell IG, Sivilotti MA, et al. Clinical decision rules to rule out subarachnoid hemorrhage for acute headache. *JAMA* 2013;310(12):1248-1255.
- Perry JJ, Stiell IG, Sivilotti MA, et al. Sensitivity of computed tomography performed within six hours of onset of headache for diagnosis of subarachnoid haemorrhage: prospective cohort study. *BMJ* 2011;343:d4277.
- Righini M, Van Es J, Den Exter PL, et al. Age adjusted d dimer cutoff levels to rule out pulmonary embolism: The ADJUST-PE Study. *JAMA* 2014;311(11):1117-1124.
- Roberts JR, Hedges JR. Clinical procedures in emergency medicine, 5th ed. WB Saunders, 2009.
- Sabatine MS, Cannon CP, Gibson M, et al. Addition of clopidogrel to Aspirin® and fibrinolytic therapy for myocardial infarction with ST-segment elevation. *NEJM* 2005;352:1179-1189.
- Schulman S, Kearon C, Kakkar AK, et al. Extended use of dabigatran, warfarin, or placebo in venous thromboembolism. *NEJM* 2013;368:709-718.
- Soar J, Humphrey R, Cant A, et al. Emergency treatment of anaphylactic reactions: guideline for healthcare providers. *Resuscitation* 2008;77:157-169.
- Stiell IG, Wells GA, Vandemheen KL, et al. The Canadian CT head rule for patients with minor head injury. *Lancet* 2001;357:1391-1396.
- Stiell IG, Wells GA, Vandemheen KL, et al. The Canadian C-spine rule for radiography in alert and stable trauma patients. *JAMA* 2001;286:1841-1848.
- Tintinalli JE, Kelen GE. Emergency medicine: a comprehensive study guide, 7th ed. McGraw-Hill, 2004.
- Varon J, Marik P. The diagnosis and management of hypertensive crises. *Chest* 2000;118:214-227.
- Vidt DG. Emergency room management of hypertensive urgencies and emergencies. *J Clin Hypertens* 2004;6:520-525.
- Warden CR, Zibulevsky J, Mace S, et al. Evaluation and management of febrile seizures in the out-of-hospital and emergency department settings. *Ann Emerg Med* 2003;41:215-222.
- Wells PS, Anderson DR, Rodger M, et al. Derivation of a simple clinical model to categorize patients probability of pulmonary embolism: increasing the models utility with the simpliRED d-dimer. *J Thromb Haemost* 2000;83:416-420.
- Wells PS, Anderson DR, Rodger M, et al. Excluding pulmonary embolism at the bedside without diagnostic imaging: management of patients with suspected pulmonary embolism presenting to the emergency department by using a simple clinical model. *Ann Int Med* 2000;135:98-107.

Liana Kaufman, Heather Sawula, and Derek Smith, chapter editors

Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Tina Hu, EBM editor

Dr. Julia Lowe, Dr. Adam C. Millar, and Dr. Phillip Segal, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Adrenal Cortex	29
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone	
Major Endocrine Organs		Adrenocortical Hormones	
Dyslipidemias	2	Adrenocortical Functional Workup	
Overview of Lipid Transport		Mineralocorticoid Excess Syndromes	
Hypercholesterolemia		Cushing's Syndrome	
Hypertriglyceridemia (Elevated Triglycerides)		Congenital Adrenal Hyperplasia	
Combined Hyperlipidemia		Hyperandrogenism	
Dyslipidemia and the Risk for Coronary Artery Disease		Adrenocortical Insufficiency	
Treatment of Dyslipidemias		Adrenal Medulla	36
Disorders of Glucose Metabolism	6	Catecholamine Metabolism	
Overview of Glucose Regulation		Pheochromocytoma	
Pre-Diabetes		Disorders of Multiple Endocrine Glands	36
Diabetes Mellitus		Multiple Endocrine Neoplasm	
Treatment of Diabetes		Calcium Homeostasis	38
Acute Complications		Hypercalcemia	
Macrovascular Complications		Hypocalcemia	
Microvascular Complications		Hyperphosphatemia	
Other Complications		Hypophosphotemia	
Hypoglycemia		Hypermagnesemia	
Metabolic Syndrome		Hypomagnesemia	
Obesity	FM7	Metabolic Bone Disease	42
Pituitary Gland	16	Osteoporosis	
Pituitary Hormones		Osteomalacia and Rickets	
Growth Hormone		Renal Osteodystrophy	
Prolactin		Paget's Disease of Bone	
Thyroid Stimulating Hormone		Male Reproductive Endocrinology	47
Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone		Androgen Regulation	
Luteinizing Hormone and Follicle Stimulating Hormone		Tests of Testicular Function	
Antidiuretic Hormone		Hypogonadism and Infertility	
Pituitary Pathology		Erectile Dysfunction	
Thyroid	20	Gynecomastia	
Thyroid Hormones		Female Reproductive Endocrinology	GY4
Tests of Thyroid Function and Structure		Paraneoplastic Syndrome	51
Thyrotoxicosis		Common Medications	52
Graves' Disease		Diabetes Medications	
Subacute Thyroiditis		Dyslipidemia Medications	
Toxic Adenoma/Toxic Multinodular Goiter		Thyroid Medications	
Thyrotoxic Crisis/Thyroid Storm		Metabolic Bone Disease Medications	
Hypothyroidism		Adrenal Medications	
Hashimoto's Thyroiditis		Landmark Endocrinology Trials	56
Myxedema Coma		References	57
Sick Euthyroid Syndrome			
Non-Toxic Goiter			
Thyroid Nodules			
Thyroid Malignancies			

Acronyms

[]	concentration	DHEA	dehydroepiandrosterone	HLA	human leukocyte antigen	POMC	pro-opiomelanocorticotropin
Ab	antibody	DI	diabetes insipidus	HMG-CoA	3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A	PRL	prolactin
ACR	albumin-creatinine ratio	DKA	diabetic ketoacidosis	HPA	hypothalamic pituitary adrenal	PTH	parathyroid hormone
ACTH	adrenocorticotropic hormone	DM	diabetes mellitus	hs-CRP	highly sensitive C-reactive protein	PTU	propylthiouracil
ADH	antidiuretic hormone	DXM	dexamethasone	ICF	intracellular fluid	RAAS	renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system
AG	anion gap	ECF	extracellular fluid	IDL	intermediate density lipoprotein	RH	releasing hormone
BG	blood glucose	EtOH	ethanol	IFG	impaired fasting glucose	T ₃	triiodothyronine
BMD	bone mineral density	FBG	fasting blood glucose	IGT	impaired glucose tolerance	T ₄	thyroxine
BMI	body mass index	FFA	free fatty acids	LCAT	lecithin-cholesterol acyltransferase	TBG	thyroid binding globulin
CAD	coronary artery disease	FNA	fine needle aspiration	LDL	low density lipoprotein	TC	total cholesterol
CAH	congenital adrenal hyperplasia	FSH	follicle stimulating hormone	LH	luteinizing hormone lipoprotein	TG	triglycerides
CHO	carbohydrates	GFR	glomerular filtration rate	MEN	multiple endocrine neoplasia	TRH	thyrotropin releasing hormone
CK	creatine kinase	GH	growth hormone	MMI	methimazole	TSH	thyroid stimulating hormone
CMV	cytomegalovirus	GHIH	growth hormone inhibiting hormone	MTC	medullary thyroid cancer	TSI	thyroid stimulating immunoglobulin
CrCl	creatinine clearance	GRH	gonadotropin releasing hormone	NS	normal saline	VLDL	very low density lipoprotein
CRH	corticotropin releasing hormone	Hb	hemoglobin	OGTT	oral glucose tolerance test	WC	waist circumference
CVD	cardiovascular disease	hCG	human chorionic gonadotropin	PAD	peripheral arterial disease		
DDAVP	desmopressin (1-deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin)	HDL	high density lipoprotein	PCOS	polycystic ovarian syndrome		
		HHS	hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state				

Basic Anatomy Review

Major Endocrine Organs

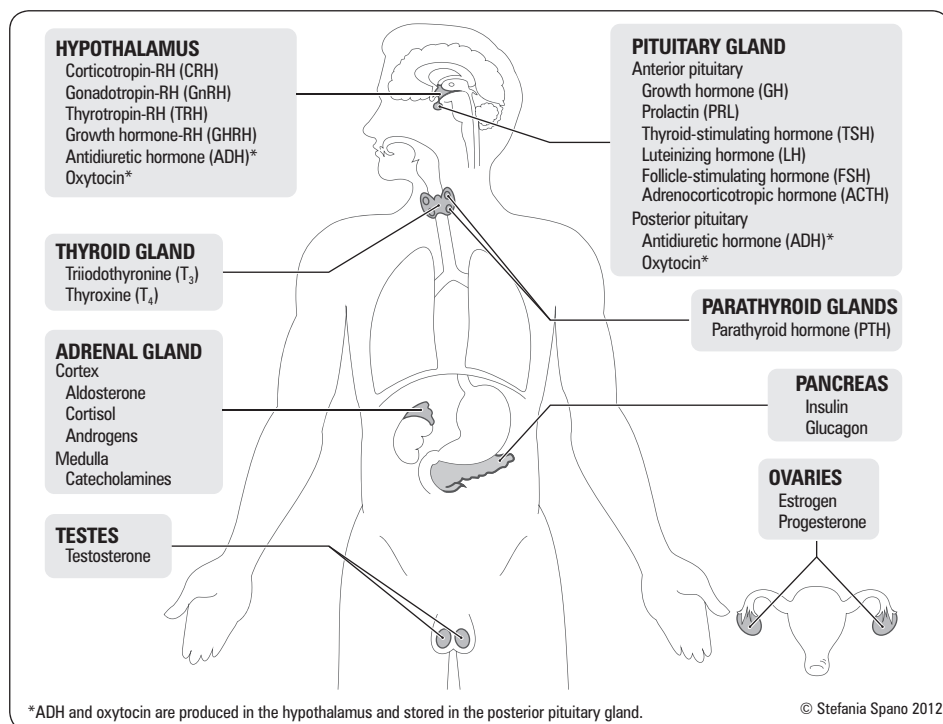


Figure 1. Endocrine system

Dyslipidemias

Definition

- metabolic disorders characterized by elevations of fasting plasma LDL-cholesterol, and/or triglycerides (TG), and/or low HDL-cholesterol

Overview of Lipid Transport

- lipoproteins are spherical complexes that consist of a lipid core surrounded by a shell of water-soluble cholesterol, apoproteins, and phospholipids
- lipoproteins transport lipids within the body
- apolipoproteins serve as enzyme co-factors, promote clearance of the particle by interacting with cellular receptors, and stabilize the lipoprotein micelle



GENERAL FUNCTION OF ORGANS

The Hypothalamic-Pituitary Axis

Information about cortical inputs, automatic function, environmental cues (light, temperature) and peripheral hormonal feedback is synthesized at the coordinating center of the endocrine system, the hypothalamus. The hypothalamus then sends signals to the pituitary to release hormones that affect the thyroid, adrenals, gonads, growth, milk production, and water balance.

Anatomy ↔ Function

Hypothalamic hormones: small peptides, non-binding protein → rapid degradation
High [] in pituitary-portal blood system
Low [] in peripheral circulation
Proximity of axis preserves the pulsatile output signals from the hypothalamic neurons.

Thyroid

Thyroid hormone is critical to 1) brain and somatic development in fetus and infants, 2) metabolic activity in adults, and 3) function of virtually every organ system.

Adrenal

Each gland, 6-8 g, has 1) a cortex with 3 layers that act like independent organs (zona glomerulosa → aldosterone, fasciculata → cortisol, reticularis → androgen and estrogen precursors), and 2) a medulla that acts like a sympathetic ganglion to store/synthesize adrenaline and noradrenaline.

Gonads

Bifunctional: sex steroid synthesis and gamete production.
Sex steroids control sexuality and affect metabolic and brain functions.

Parathyroid

Synthesize and secrete PTH, a principle regulator of ECF Ca²⁺, regulated by [Ca²⁺], [Mg²⁺], 1,25(OH)₂D (active metabolite of vit D), and phosphate.

Pancreas

Endocrine islet β-cells produce insulin: oppose glucose production (glycogenolysis, gluconeogenesis), increase glucose uptake into muscle and fat. Glucagon, epinephrine, cortisol, and GH are counterregulatory.

Table 1. Lipoproteins

Lipoprotein	Apolipoproteins	Function
Exogenous Pathway		
Chylomicron	B-48, C, E, A-I, A-II, A-IV	• Transports dietary TG from gut to adipose tissue and muscle
Endogenous Pathway		
VLDL	B-100, C, E	• Transports hepatic synthesized TG from liver to adipose tissue and muscle
IDL	B-100, E	• Product of hydrolysis of TG in VLDL by lipoprotein lipase resulting in depletion of TG core • Enriched in cholesterol esters
LDL	B-100	• Formed by further removal of residual TG from IDL core by hepatic lipase resulting in greater enriched particles with cholesterol esters • Transports cholesterol from liver to peripheral tissues (gonads, adrenals)
HDL	A-I, A-II, C, E	• Transports cholesterol from peripheral tissues to liver • Acts as a reservoir for apolipoproteins

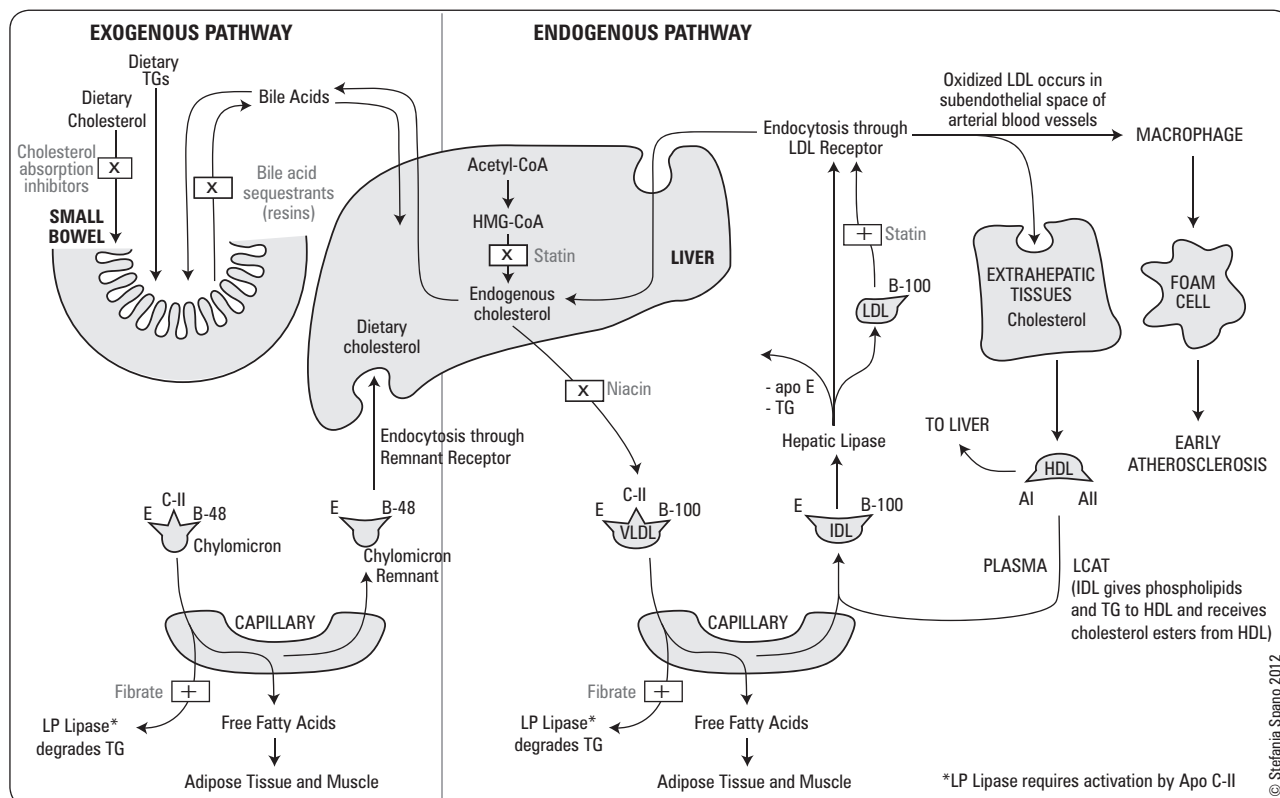


Figure 2. Exogenous and endogenous biosynthetic lipid pathways

Hypercholesterolemia

PRIMARY HYPERCHOLESTEROLEMIA

Table 2. Primary Hypercholesterolemias

Hypercholesterolemia	Etiology/Pathophysiology	Labs	Clinical Presentation	Treatment
Familial Hypercholesterolemia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1/500 in U.S. population Autosomal codominant with high penetrance More prevalent in French Canadian population Defect in the normal LDL receptor on cell membranes 	↑ LDL ↑ TC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tendinous xanthomatosis (Achilles, patellar, and extensor tendons of hand) Arcus cornealis Xanthelasmata Heterozygotes: premature CAD, 50% risk of MI in men by age 30 Homozygotes: manifest CAD and other vascular disease early in childhood and can be fatal (<20 yr) if untreated 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Heterozygotes: improvement of LDL with HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors, often in combination with niacin, ezetimibe, or bile acid sequestrants Homozygotes: partial control with portacaval shunt or LDL apheresis in conjunction with niacin; large dose atorvastatin is modestly effective
Polygenic Hypercholesterolemia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Most common Few mild inherited defects in cholesterol metabolism 	↑ TC ↑ LDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asymptomatic until vascular disease develops No xanthomata 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors, ezetimibe, niacin, bile acid sequestrant

SECONDARY HYPERCHOLESTEROLEMIA

Etiology

- endocrine: hypothyroidism
- renal: nephrotic syndrome
- immunologic: monoclonal gammopathy
- hepatic: cholestatic liver disease (e.g. primary biliary cirrhosis)
- nutritional: diet, anorexia nervosa
- drugs: cyclosporin, anabolic steroids, carbamazepine

Hypertriglyceridemia (Elevated Triglycerides)

PRIMARY HYPERTRIGLYCERIDEMIA

Table 3. Primary Hypertriglyceridemias

Hypertriglyceridemia	Etiology/Pathophysiology	Labs	Clinical Presentation	Treatment
Familial Lipoprotein Lipase Deficiency	• Autosomal recessive deficiency of lipoprotein lipase or its cofactor	↑ TG ↑ Chylomicrons Moderate ↑ in VLDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hepatosplenomegaly • Splenic infarct • Anemia, granulocytopenia, thrombocytopenia 2° to hypersplenism • Pancreatitis • Lipemia retinalis • Eruptive xanthomata 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Decrease dietary fat intake to <10% of total calories • Decrease dietary simple carbohydrates • Cook with medium chain fatty acids • Abstain from EtOH
Familial Hypertriglyceridemia	• Several genetic defects resulting in ↑ hepatic VLDL synthesis or ↓ removal of VLDL	↑ TG ↑ VLDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Possible premature CAD • Develop syndrome of obesity, hypertriglyceridemia, hyperinsulinemia, and hyperuricemia in early adulthood 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Decrease dietary simple carbohydrates and fat intake • Abstain from EtOH • Fibrates or niacin

SECONDARY HYPERTRIGLYCERIDEMIA

Etiology

- endocrine: obesity/metabolic syndrome, hypothyroidism (more for high LDL, not TG), acromegaly, Cushing's syndrome, DM
- renal: chronic renal failure, polyclonal and monoclonal hypergammaglobulinemia
- hepatic: chronic liver disease, hepatitis, glycogen storage disease
- drugs: alcohol, corticosteroids, estrogen, hydrochlorothiazide, retinoic acid, β-blockers without intrinsic sympathomimetic action (ISA), anti-retroviral drugs, atypical antipsychotics, oral contraceptive pills
- other: pregnancy

Combined Hyperlipidemia

Table 4. Primary Combined Hyperlipidemias

Hyperlipidemia	Etiology/Pathophysiology	Labs	Clinical Presentation	Treatment
Familial Combined Hyperlipidemia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Over-population of VLDL and associated ↑ LDL 2° to excess hepatic synthesis of apolipoprotein B • Autosomal dominant 	↑ TC + TG ↑ VLDL ↑ LDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Xanthelasma • CAD and other vascular disease 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight reduction • Decrease simple carbohydrates, fat, cholesterol, and EtOH in diet • HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins) • Niacin, fibrates, ezetimibe
Dysbetalipoproteinemia	• Abnormal apolipoprotein E	↑ TC + TG ↑ VLDL ↑ IDL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tuberous, eruptive, palmar xanthomata • Impaired glucose tolerance • CAD and PAD 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight reduction • Decrease fat, cholesterol, and EtOH in diet • HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors • Niacin, fibrates

Dyslipidemia and the Risk for Coronary Artery Disease

- increased LDL is a major risk factor for atherosclerosis and CAD as LDL is the major atherogenic lipid particle
- increased HDL is associated with decreased cardiovascular disease and mortality
- moderate hypertriglyceridemia (triglyceride level 2.3-9 mmol/L) is an independent risk factor for CAD, especially in people with DM and in post-menopausal women
- treatment of hypertriglyceridemia has not been shown to reduce CAD risk



Hypertriglyceridemia and Pancreatitis
Serum triglyceride levels >1,000 mg/dL increases the risk of developing pancreatitis



Low HDL
Common causes

- Obesity
- Physical inactivity
- Cigarette smoking
- Metabolic syndrome, type 2 DM



Side Effects of Atypical Antipsychotics
Increased risk of:

- Dyslipidemia
- HTN
- Metabolic syndrome
- Hyperglycemia

Screening

- screen men over age 40, women over age 50, or post-menopausal
- if following risk factors present, screen at any age
 - DM
 - cigarette smoking
 - HTN (sBP >140, dBP >90)
 - obesity
 - family history of premature CAD
 - clinical signs of hyperlipidemia (xanthelasma, xanthoma, arcus cornealis)
 - evidence of atherosclerosis
 - rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, psoriasis
 - HIV infection on highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART)
 - chronic kidney disease (estimated GFR <60 mL/min/1.73 m²)
 - erectile dysfunction
- screen children with a family history of hypercholesterolemia or chylomicronemia

Factors Affecting Risk Assessment

- metabolic syndrome
- apolipoprotein B (apo B)
 - each atherogenic particle (VLDL, IDL, LDL, and lipoprotein A) contains one molecule of apo B
 - serum [apo B] reflects the total number of particles and may be useful in assessing cardiovascular risk and adequacy of treatment in high risk patients and those with metabolic syndrome
- C-reactive protein (hs-CRP) levels
 - highly sensitive acute phase reactant
 - may be clinically useful in identifying those at a higher risk of cardiovascular disease than predicted by the global risk assessment



Treatment Effect

Each 40 mg/dL (1.0 mmol/L) decrease in LDL corresponds to 20-25% relative risk reduction in cardiovascular disease



6% Rule

If the dose of a statin is doubled there is approximately a 6% increase in the LDL lowering efficacy



For Statin Follow-Up

- Liver enzymes and lipid profile: liver enzymes measured at the beginning of treatment then once after therapy initiated; lipids (once stabilized) measured annually; order both if patient complains of jaundice, RUQ pain, dark urine
- CK at baseline and if patient complains of myalgia
- D/C statin if CK >10x upper limit of normal or patient has persistent myalgia



Intensive Lipid Lowering in CAD: TNT

NEJM 2005;352:1425-1435

Study: Multicenter, randomized, double-blinded trial with median follow-up of 4.9 yr.

Patients: 10,001 patients with CAD and LDL-C <3.4 mmol/L (<131.5 mg/dL).

Intervention: 80 mg vs. 10 mg atorvastatin daily.

Main Outcomes: Death from CAD, MI, cardiac arrest, or stroke.

Results: A primary event occurred in 8.7% of the patients receiving intensive therapy, compared to 10.9% of patients receiving standard therapy (RR 0.78, p<0.001). There was no difference in overall mortality. Incidence of persistent transaminase elevations was higher in the intensive therapy group (1.2% vs. 0.2%, p<0.001).

Conclusion: Intensive statin therapy is associated with lower rates of CAD events than standard therapy, but also a higher rate of transaminase elevation.



Simvastatin to Lower CAD Risk – The Heart Protection Study (HPS)

Lancet 2002;360:7-22

Study: Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial (median follow-up 5.0 yr).

Patients: 20,536 patients with coronary disease, other occlusive arterial disease or diabetes (aged 40-80 yr) who had a total cholesterol level of ≥3.5 mmol/L.

Intervention: Simvastatin 40 mg/d or placebo.

Main Outcomes: Mortality, fatal or non-fatal vascular events.

Results: The use of simvastatin significantly decreased total mortality (12.9 vs. 14.7, p=0.0003) and the first event rate of any cardiovascular event by 25% (p<0.0001).

Conclusion: Treatment with simvastatin improved survival and cardiovascular outcomes in high-risk CAD patients.

Treatment of Dyslipidemias

Approach to Treatment

For clinical guidelines see National Institutes of Health: Adult Treatment Panel III <https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/cholesterol/atglance.pdf>

- determine lipoprotein levels – obtain complete profile after 9 to 12 h fast
- identify presence of clinical atherosclerotic disease that confers high risk for CHD events
- If 2+ risk factors (other than LDL) are present without CHD or CHD risk equivalent estimate 10 yr risk of CAD using Framingham model
- establish treatment targets according to level of risk

Table 5. LDL Cholesterol Goals and Cutpoints for Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes (TLC) and Drug Therapy in Different Risk Categories

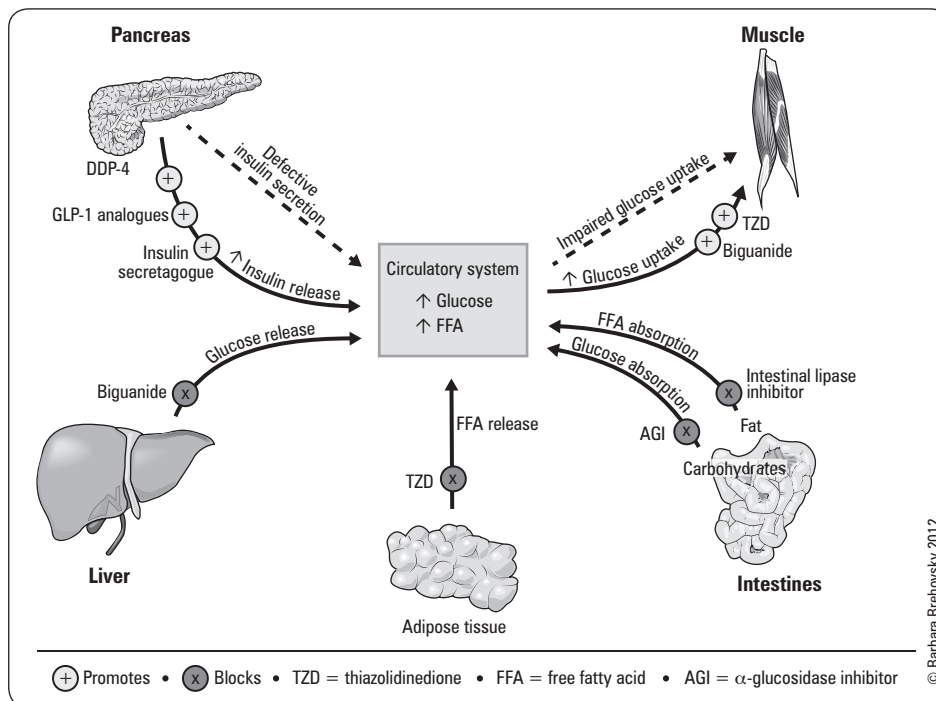
Risk Category	LDL Goal	LDL Level at which to Initiate Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes (TLC)	LDL Level at which to Consider Drug Therapy
CHD or CHD Risk Equivalents (10 yr risk >20%)	<100 mg/dL	≥100 mg/dL	130 mg/dL (100-129 mg/dL: drug optional)
2+ Risk Factors (10 yr risk ≤20%)	<130 mg/dL	≥130 mg/dL	10 yr risk 10-20% ≥130 mg/dL 10 yr risk <10%: ≥160 mg/dL
0-1 Risk Factor	<160 mg/dL	≥160 mg/dL	190 mg/dL (160-189 mg/dL: LDL-lowering drug optional)

Table 6. Treatment of Hypercholesterolemia and Hypertriglyceridemia

Treatment of Hypercholesterolemia	Treatment of Hypertriglyceridemia
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Conservative: 4-6 mo trial unless high risk group, in which case medical treatment should start immediately <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diet <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Decrease fat: <30% calories ▪ Decrease saturated fat: <10% calories ▪ Decrease cholesterol: <200 mg/d ▪ Increase fiber: >30 g/d • Decrease alcohol intake to ≤1-2 drinks/d • Smoking cessation • Aerobic exercise: ≥150 min/wk in bouts of ≥10 min • Weight loss: target BMI <25 • Medical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors, ezetimibe, bile acid sequestrants, niacin (see <i>Common Medications</i>, E53) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Conservative: 4-6 mo trial <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diet <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Decrease fat and simple carbohydrates ▪ Increase omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acid • Control blood sugars • Decrease alcohol intake to ≤1-2 drinks/d • Smoking cessation • Aerobic exercise: ≥150 min/wk in bouts of ≥10 min • Weight loss: target BMI <25 • Medical: fibrates, niacin (see <i>Common Medications</i>, E53) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Failed conservative measures ▪ TG >10 mmol/L (885 mg/dL) to prevent pancreatitis ▪ Combined hyperlipidemia

Disorders of Glucose Metabolism

Overview of Glucose Regulation



Glucose Related Emergencies

- DKA
- HHS
- Hypoglycemia

Figure 3. Antihyperglycemic agents

Pre-Diabetes (Impaired Glucose Tolerance/ Impaired Fasting Glucose)

- 1-5% per yr go on to develop DM
- 50-80% revert to normal glucose tolerance
- weight loss may improve glucose tolerance
- increased risk of developing macrovascular complications
- lifestyle modifications decrease progression to DM by 58%

Diagnostic Criteria

- impaired fasting glucose (IFG): fasting blood glucose (FBG) 110-125 mg/dL (6.1-6.9 mmol/L)
- impaired glucose tolerance (IGT): 2h 75 g oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) 140-200 mg/dL (7.8-11.0 mmol/L)

Diabetes Mellitus

Definition

- syndrome of disordered metabolism and inappropriate hyperglycemia secondary to an absolute/relative deficiency of insulin, or a reduction in biological effectiveness of insulin, or both

Diagnostic Criteria

- any one of the following is diagnostic
 - presence of classic symptoms of DM (polyuria, polydipsia, polyphagia, weight loss, blurry vision, nocturia, ketonuria) PLUS random blood glucose (BG) ≥ 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L)
 - on at least two separate occasions
 - ♦ FPG ≥ 126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L) (fasting = no caloric intake for at least 8 h) OR
 - ♦ 2 h 75 g OGTT ≥ 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) OR
 - ♦ random PG ≥ 200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) OR
 - ♦ HbA1c $\geq 6.5\%$



In the absence of symptomatic hyperglycemia, if a single laboratory test result is in the DM range, a repeat confirmatory laboratory test (FPG, A1c, 2hPG in a 75 g OGTT) must be done on another day

Etiology and Pathophysiology

Table 7. Etiologic Classification of Diabetes Mellitus

I. Type 1 DM (immune-mediated β cell destruction, usually leading to absolute insulin deficiency)
II. Type 2 DM (ranges from predominantly insulin resistance with relative insulin deficiency to a predominantly insulin secretory defect with insulin resistance 2° to β cell dysfunction)
III. Other specific causes of DM:
a. Genetic defects of β cell function (e.g. MODY – Maturity-Onset Diabetes of the Young) or insulin action
b. Diseases of the exocrine pancreas:
• Pancreatitis, pancreatectomy, neoplasia, cystic fibrosis, hemochromatosis (“bronze diabetes”)
c. Endocrinopathies:
• Acromegaly, Cushing’s syndrome, glucagonoma, pheochromocytoma, hyperthyroidism
d. Drug-induced:
• Glucocorticoids, thyroid hormone, β -adrenergic agonists, thiazides, phenytoin, clozapine
e. Infections:
• Congenital rubella, CMV, coxsackie
f. Genetic syndromes associated with DM:
• Down’s syndrome, Klinefelter’s syndrome, Turner’s syndrome
IV. Gestational Diabetes Mellitus (see Obstetrics , OB13)



Table 8. Comparison of Type 1 and Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus

	Type 1	Type 2
Onset	• Usually <30 yr of age	• Usually >40 yr of age • Increasing incidence in pediatric population 2° to obesity
Epidemiology	• More common in Caucasians • Less common in Asians, Hispanics, Aborigines, and Blacks • Accounts for 5-10% of all DM	• More common in Blacks, Hispanics, Aborigines, and Asians • Accounts for >90% of all DM
Etiology	• Autoimmune	• Complex and multifactorial
Genetics	• Monozygotic twin concordance is 30-40% • Associated with HLA class II DR3 and DR4, with either allele present in up to 95% of type 1 DM • Certain DQ alleles also confer a risk	• Greater heritability than type 1 DM • Monozygotic twin concordance is 70-90% • Polygenic • Non-HLA associated
Pathophysiology	• Synergistic effects of genetic, immune, and environmental factors that cause β cell destruction resulting in impaired insulin secretion • Autoimmune process is believed to be triggered by environmental factors (e.g. viruses, bovine milk protein, urea compounds) • Pancreatic cells are infiltrated with lymphocytes resulting in islet cell destruction • 80% of β cell mass is destroyed before features of DM present	• Impaired insulin secretion, peripheral insulin resistance (likely due to receptor and post receptor abnormality), and excess hepatic glucose production
Natural History	<p>• After initial presentation, honeymoon period often occurs where glycemic control can be achieved with little or no insulin treatment as residual cells are still able to produce insulin</p> <p>• Once these cells are destroyed, there is complete insulin deficiency</p>	<p>• Early on, glucose tolerance remains normal despite insulin resistance as β cells compensate with increased insulin production</p> <p>• As insulin resistance and compensatory hyperinsulinism continue, the β cells are unable to maintain the hyperinsulinemic state which results in glucose intolerance and DM</p>
Circulating Autoantibodies	• Islet cell Ab present in up to 60-85% • Most common islet cell Ab is against glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD) • Up to 60% have Ab against insulin	• <10%



Three Year Efficacy of Complex Insulin Regimens in Type 2 DM: 4T Trial

NEJM 2009;361:1736-1747

Study: Randomized unblinded trial with 3 yr of follow-up.

Population: 708 patients with type 2 DM, not on insulin or thiazolidinedione therapy on maximal metformin and sulfonylurea therapy.

Intervention: Thrice-daily prandial insulin aspart, vs. twice-daily biphasic insulin aspart, vs. once-daily basal insulin detemir. Sulfonylurea therapy was replaced with a secondary insulin regime specific to each arm if there was persistent hyperglycemia.

Primary Outcome: 3 yr hemoglobin HbA1c.

Results: Significant difference in rates of patient withdrawal from the study: 5.1% biphasic, 11.7% prandial, 8.5% basal regimens ($p=0.04$). There were no significant differences in median HbA1c levels between all three arms from yr 1 to 3. A smaller proportion of patients reached HbA1c <6.5% or <7.0% in the biphasic arm. The basal arm had least weight gain and least weight circumference increase, but highest rate of secondary insulin requirement. The basal arm had fewest severe hypoglycemic events per patient yr, while the biphasic had the most serious adverse effects.

Conclusion: Basal insulin regime provides the best glycemic control over a 3 yr study; with better HbA1c control, fewer hypoglycemic events, and less weight gain.



Blood Glucose Control in Type 2 DM – UKPDS 33

Lancet 1998;352:837-853

Study: Randomized controlled trial (mean follow-up 10 yr).

Patients: 3,867 patients with newly diagnosed type 2 DM (mean age 53 yr, 61% men, 81% white, mean fasting plasma glucose [FPG] 6.1-15.0 mmol/L) (236mg/dL – 580 mg/dL). Exclusions included severe cardiovascular disease, renal disease, retinopathy, and others.

Intervention: Intensive treatment with a sulfonylurea or insulin (target FPG <6 mmol/L (<232 mg/dL)) vs. conventional treatment with diet alone (target FPG <15 mmol/L (<580 mg/dL) without hyperglycemic symptoms).

Main Outcomes: DM-related endpoints (MI, angina, heart failure, stroke, renal failure, amputation, retinopathy, blindness, death from hyperglycemia or hypoglycemia), DM-related death, and all-cause mortality.

Results: Patients allocated to intensive treatment had lower median HbA1c levels ($p<0.001$).

Outcome	RRR % (p value)
DM-related endpoint	12 (0.029)
DM-related death	10 (0.34)
All-cause mortality	6 (0.44)

Patients allocated to intensive therapy had more hypoglycemic episodes and greater weight gain.

Conclusion: Intensive blood glucose control reduces microvascular, but not macrovascular complications in type 2 DM.

Table 8. Comparison of Type 1 and Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus (continued)

	Type 1	Type 2
Risk Factors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Personal history of other autoimmune diseases including Graves', myasthenia gravis, autoimmune thyroid disease, celiac disease, and pernicious anemia 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Age >40 yr Abdominal obesity/overweight First-degree relative with DM Race/ethnicity (Black, Aboriginal, Hispanic, Asian-American, Pacific Islander) Hx of IGT or IFG HTN Dyslipidemia PCOS Hx of gestational DM or macrosomic baby Schizophrenia Fatty liver Hyperuricemia
Body Habitus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Normal to thin 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Typically overweight with increased central obesity
Treatment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insulin 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lifestyle modification Oral antihyperglycemic agents Incretin therapy Insulin therapy
Acute Complication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) in severe cases 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hyperosmolar hyperglycemic state (HHS) DKA in severe cases
Screening	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subclinical prodrome can be detected in first and second-degree relatives of those with type 1 DM by the presence of pancreatic islet autoantibodies 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Screen individuals with risk factors



Targeting Intensive Glycemic Control vs. Targeting Conventional Glycemic Control for Type 2 DM

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2011;6:CD008143

Study: Systematic review of randomized clinical trials of glycemic control in adults with type 2 DM.

Patients: Twenty trials randomized 16,106 patients with type 2 DM to intensive control and 13,880 patients with type 2 DM to conventional glycemic control.

Intervention: Intensive glycemic control (HbA1c $\leq 6.5\%$) vs. conventional glycemic control (determined by local guidelines).

Primary Outcomes: All-cause mortality, composite macrovascular (death from cardiovascular cause, nonfatal MI, nonfatal stroke) and microvascular events (nephropathy, retinopathy).

Results: There was no significant difference between targeting intensive and conventional glycemic control for all-cause mortality or cardiovascular mortality. Targeting intensive glycemic control reduced the risk of amputation, the composite risk of microvascular disease, retinopathy, retinal photocoagulation, and nephropathy. The risks of both mild and severe hypoglycemia were increased with targeting intensive glycemic control.

Conclusions: Intensive glycemic control did not reduce all-cause mortality and cardiovascular mortality compared to conventional glycemic control. Intensive glycemic control reduced the risk of microvascular complications while increasing the risk of hypoglycemia. Intensive glycemic control may also reduce the risk of non-fatal MI in trials exclusively dealing with glycemic control in usual care settings.



American Diabetes Association (ADA) 2014 Guidelines

	Target
HbA1c	<7.0%
Fasting plasma glucose	
Pre-prandial glucose	70-130 mg/dL (4-7 mmol/L)
2h post-prandial glucose	<180 mg/dL (5-10 mmol/L)
	Post-prandial glucose measurement should be made 1-2 h after the beginning of a meal
Lipids	<100 mg/dL (<2.6 mmol/L) A lower LDL-C target of <70 mg/dL using a high dose of a statin may be appropriate in persons with overt CVD
Blood pressure	<140/<80 mmHg



Cardiovascular Effects of Intensive Lifestyle Intervention in Type 2 DM: the Look AHEAD Trial

NEJM 2013;369:145-154

Study: RCT, with 9.6 yr of median follow-up.

Population: 5,145 overweight or obese patients with type 2 DM.

Intervention: Intensive lifestyle intervention promoting weight loss through decreased caloric intake and increased physical activity (intervention) or diabetes support and education (control).

Primary Outcome: First occurrence of death from cardiovascular (CV) causes, non-fatal myocardial infarction, non-fatal stroke, or hospitalization for angina.

Results: Although the intensive lifestyle intervention produced greater weight loss and reductions in glycated hemoglobin, the intervention did not significantly reduce the risk of CV morbidity or mortality.

Conclusions: An intensive lifestyle intervention focusing on weight loss did not significantly reduce the rate of cardiovascular events in overweight or obese adults with type 2 DM.

Treatment of Diabetes

Glycemic Targets

- HbA1c reflects glycemic control over 3 mo and is a measure of patient's long-term DM control
- therapy in most individuals with type 1 or type 2 DM should be targeted to achieve a HbA1c $\leq 7.0\%$ in order to reduce the risk of microvascular and if implemented early in the course of disease, macrovascular complications
- more intensive glucose control, HbA1c <6.5%, may be targeted in patients with a shorter duration of DM with no evidence of significant CVD and longer life expectancy, to further reduce risk of nephropathy and retinopathy, provided this does not result in a significant increase in hypoglycemia
- less stringent HbA1c targets (7.1-8.5%) may be more appropriate in type 1 and type 2 patients with limited life expectancy, higher level of functional dependency, a history of recurrent severe hypoglycemia, multiple comorbidities, extensive CAD, or a failure to attain HbA1c <7.0% despite treatment intensification
- there may be harm associated with strategy to target HbA1c <6.0% in certain patients with type 2 DM (see [ACCORD trial](#), E9)

Diet

- daily carbohydrate intake 45-60% of energy, protein 15-20% of energy, and fat <35% of energy
- intake of saturated fats <7% and polyunsaturated fats <10% of total calories each
- limit sodium, alcohol, and caffeine intake
- type 1: carbohydrate counting is used to titrate insulin regimen
- type 2: weight reduction

Lifestyle

- regular physical exercise to improve insulin sensitivity, lower lipid concentrations and control blood pressure
- smoking cessation

Medical Treatment: Oral Antihyperglycemic Agents and/or Incretin Therapy (Type 2 DM)

- initiate oral antihyperglycemic therapy and/or incretin therapy within 2-3 mo if lifestyle management does not result in glycemic control
- if HbA1c >8.5%, initiate pharmacologic therapy immediately and consider combination oral therapy or insulin immediately
- see [Common Medications](#), E52 for details on antihyperglycemic agents

Medical Treatment: Insulin (Figure 5)

- used for type 1 DM at onset, may be used in type 2 DM at any point in treatment
- routes of administration: subcutaneous injections, continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion pump, IV infusion (regular insulin only)
- bolus insulins: short-acting (Insulin regular), rapid-acting analogue (Insulin aspart, Insulin lispro, Insulin glulisine)
- basal insulins: intermediate-acting (Insulin NPH), long-acting analogue (Insulin detemir, Insulin glargine)

- premixed insulins (% Humulin R and % NPH) 30/70; premixed insulin analogues (Biphasic Insulin aspart, Insulin lispro/lispro protamine)
- estimated total daily insulin requirement: 0.5-0.7 units/kg (often start with 0.3-0.5 units/kg/day)

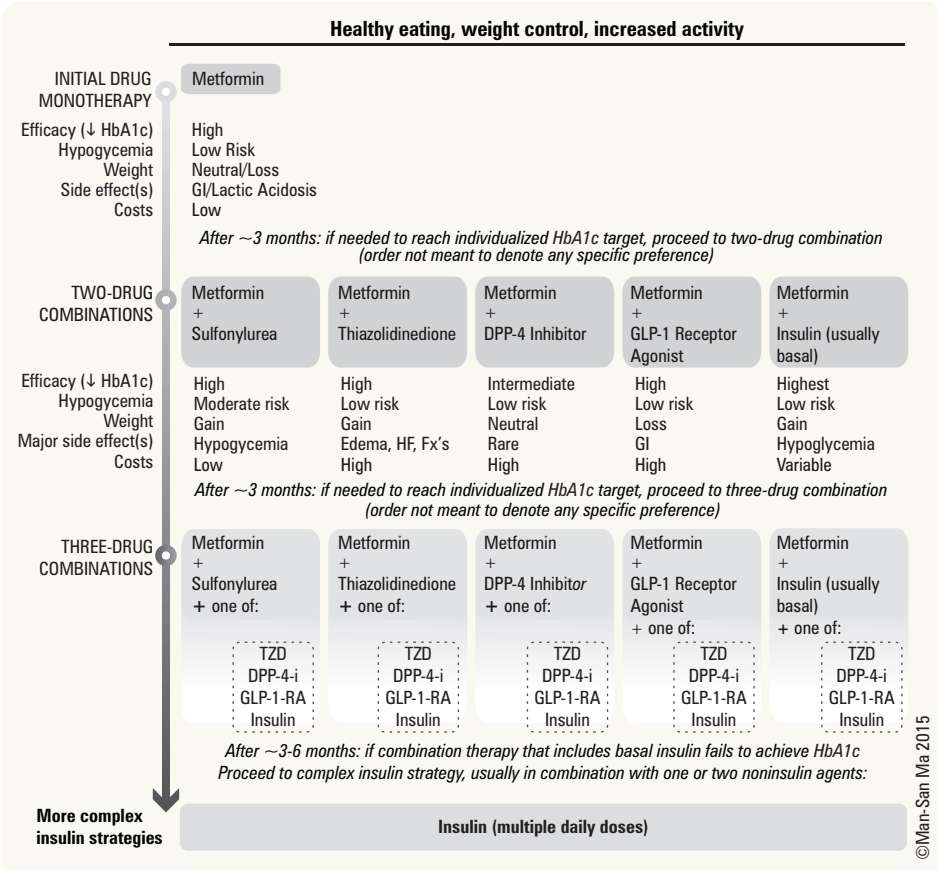


Figure 4. Approach to treatment of hyperglycemia in type 2 DM

Adapted from: Can J Diabetes 2008;32(suppl1):S56

Table 9. Available Insulin Formulations

Insulin Type (trade name)	Onset	Peak	Duration
PRANDIAL (BOLUS) INSULINS			
Rapid-acting insulin analogues			
• Insulin aspart (NovoRapid®)	10-15 min	1-1.5 h	3-5 h
• Insulin lispro (Humalog®)	10-15 min	1-2 h	3.5-4.75 h
• Insulin glulisine (Apidra®)	10-15 min	1-1.5 h	3-5 h
Short-acting insulins			
• Humulin R®	30 min	2-3 h	6.5 h
• Novolin Toronto®			
BASAL INSULINS			
Intermediate-acting			
• Humulin N®	1-3 h	5-8 h	Up to 18 h
• Novolin NPH®			
Long-acting basal insulin analogues			
Insulin detemir (Levemir®)	90 min	Not applicable	Up to 24 h (glargine 24 h, detemir 16-24 h)
Insulin glargine (Lantus®)			
PRE-MIXED INSULINS			
Premixed regular insulin – NPH			
• Humulin 30/70®			
• Novolin 30/70®			
Premixed insulin analogues			
• Biphasic insulin aspart (NovoMix 30®)			
• Insulin lispro/lispro protamine (Humalog Mix25® and Mix50®)			



Effects of Intensive Glucose Lowering in Type 2

DM: The ACCORD Trial

NEJM 2008;358:2545-2559

Study: Multicenter RCT.

Patients: 10,251 patients (mean age 62.2) with

type 2 DM, and cardiovascular risk factors.

Intervention: Intensive therapy targeting a HbA1c

level of less than 6.0% or standard therapy targeting

7.0 to 7.9%.

Outcomes: First occurrence of nonfatal MI, nonfatal

stroke, or death from CV causes.

Results: The intensive therapy arm was stopped

early (3.5 yr vs. 5.6 yr planned) due to evidence

of increased mortality. There was no difference in

primary outcome for either study arm. There was

a significant increase in all-cause mortality, CV

mortality, nonfatal MI, and CHF in the intensive

therapy group. There were increased rates of all

hypoglycemic events, any nonhypoglycemic serious

adverse events, fluid retention, and weight gain

>10 kg, but lower systolic and diastolic blood

pressure in the intensive therapy group. There

was an increased incidence of elevated ALT (>3

times upper limit) and ACE drug use in the standard

therapy group.

Conclusions: Intensive glucose lowering therapy in

type 2 DM does not improve clinic outcomes and

actually increases the risk of mortality with more

adverse events compared to standard therapy.

Additional research is required to discern the cause.



Effects of Intensive Blood Pressure Control in

Type 2 DM: The ACCORD Trial

NEJM 2010;362:1575-1585

Study: RCT, unblinded with 4.7 yr of mean

follow-up.

Population: 4,733 patients with type 2 DM, risk

factors for cardiovascular (CV) disease, systolic

blood pressure (sBP) between 130-180 mmHg.

Intervention: sBP control less than 120 mmHg

(intensive) or 140 mmHg (standard).

Primary Outcomes: Major CV event (composite

nonfatal MI, nonfatal stroke, or CV-related death).

Results: Mean number of medications at 1 yr for

intensive therapy was 3.4 (95% CI 3.4-3.5) vs. 2.1

(95%, 2.1-2.2) for standard therapy. There was a

significant increase in all serious adverse events

in the intensive treatment arm (3.3% vs. 1.27%,

p= <0.001); especially bradycardia or arrhythmia

(0.5% vs. 0.13%, p=0.02) and hyperkalemia (0.4%

vs. 0.04%, p=0.01). There was no significant

difference in primary outcomes in the two study

arms, or all-cause mortality. There was a significant

reduction in any stroke (0.32%/yr vs. 0.53%/yr,

p=0.01) and nonfatal stroke incidences (0.30%/yr

vs. 0.47%/yr, p=0.03) in the intensive therapy arm.

Conclusions: Intensive BP lowering to less than

120 mmHg vs. 140 mmHg in patients with

type 2 DM and CV risk factors does not reduce major

CV event risk reduction except for stroke events.



Effects of Combination Lipid Therapy in Type 2

DM: the ACCORD Trial

NEJM 2010;362:1563-1574

Study: RCT, double-blinded trial with 4.7 yr of mean

follow-up.

Population: 5,518 patients with type 2 DM.

Intervention: Statin with or without fibrate therapy.

Primary Outcome: Major cardiovascular (CV)

event (composite nonfatal MI, nonfatal stroke, or

CV-related death).

Results: No significant differences in primary

outcome between the two arms. No difference in

all MI, all stroke, or all-cause mortality between

study arms.

Conclusions: The addition of fibrate therapy to

statin therapy in patients with type 2 DM does not

reduce major CV event risk.

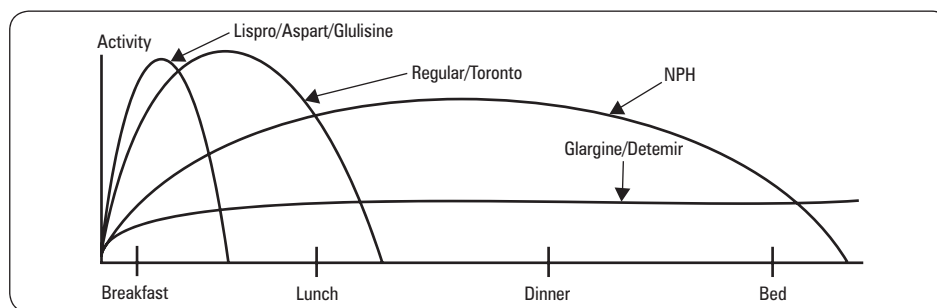


Figure 5. Duration of activity of different insulins

Insulin Regimens

Table 10. Insulin Regimens for Type 2 DM and Type 1 DM

Regimen	Administration
Type 2 DM Oral hypoglycemic agent + basal insulin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start with 10 units at bedtime of basal insulin Titrate up by 1 unit until FBG <7.0 mmol/L (126 mg/dL)
Type 1 DM Multiple daily injections (MDI)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Estimated total insulin requirement is 0.5-0.7 U/kg 40% is given as basal insulin at bedtime 20% is given as bolus insulin before breakfast, lunch, and dinner Continue metformin but discontinue secretagogue
Split-mixed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Estimated total insulin requirement is 0.5-0.7 U/kg 2/3 dose is given as pre-mixed insulin before breakfast 1/3 dose is given as pre-mixed insulin before dinner Continue metformin but discontinue secretagogue

*Bolus insulin: Aspart, Glulisine, Lispro

*Basal insulin: Glargine, Detemir, NPH

*Pre-mixed insulin: Humulin 30/70, Novolin 30/70, Novomix 30, Humalog Mix25, Humalog Mix50

Table 11. Titrating Insulin Doses

Hyperglycemic Reading	Insulin Correction
High AM sugar	Increase bedtime basal insulin
High lunch sugar	Increase AM rapid/regular insulin
High supper sugar	Increase lunch rapid/regular insulin, or Increase AM basal insulin
High bedtime sugar	Increase supper rapid/regular insulin

Variable Insulin Dose Schedule ("Sliding/Supplemental/Correction Scale")

- for patients on Basal-Bolus MDI regimen: patient takes usual doses of basal insulin but varies doses of bolus insulin based on BG reading at time of dose
- use baseline bolus insulin dose when within BG target range; add or subtract units when above or below target
- when used in hospital (including perioperative management of DM) patient should also receive basal insulin to prevent fluctuations in blood sugar levels or long periods of hyperglycemia without intervention
- construction of a supplemental sliding scale for a patient on anti-hyperglycemics
 - Correction Factor (CF) = $100/\text{Total Daily Dose of insulin (TDD)}$
 - BG <4: call MD and give 15 g carbohydrates
 - BG between 4 to 8: no additional insulin
 - BG between 8 to (8 + CF): give one additional unit
 - BG between (8 + CF) to (8 + 2CF): give two additional units
 - BG between (8 + 2CF) to (8 + 3CF): give three additional units

Insulin Pump Therapy (continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion [CSII])

- external battery-operated device provides continuous basal dose of rapid-acting insulin analogue (aspart, glulisine, or lispro) through small subcutaneous catheter
- at meals, patient programs pump to deliver insulin bolus
- provides improved quality of life and flexibility
- risk of DKA if pump is inadvertently disconnected



Effects of a Mediterranean Diet in Preventing Cardiovascular Events in Type 2 DM: the PREDIMED Trial

NEJM 2013;368:1279-1290

Study: RCT, with 4.8 yr of median follow-up.

Population: 7,447 patients with type 2 DM or other high cardiovascular risk factors.

Intervention: Mediterranean diet supplemented with extra-virgin olive oil, Mediterranean diet supplemented with mixed nuts, or control diet with advice to reduce dietary fat.

Primary Outcome: Major cardiovascular (CV) event (myocardial infarction, stroke, or death from CV causes).

Results: Both Mediterranean diets were associated with a reduced incidence of major CV events compared to the control diet.

Conclusions: A Mediterranean diet with extra-virgin olive oil or nuts reduces rates of myocardial infarction, stroke, and CV death in those at high risk for CV disease.



DPP-IV Inhibitors

- Antihyperglycemic agents (e.g. sitagliptin, saxagliptin, linagliptin) that inhibit DPP-IV, an enzyme that degrades endogenous incretin hormones like GLP-1
- Incretin hormones stimulate glucose-dependent insulin secretion and inhibit glucagon release from the pancreas

GLP-1 Analogues (Incretins)

- Human glucagon-like peptide-1 analogues: exenatide, liraglutide
- These activate GLP-1 causing increased insulin secretion, decreased inappropriate glucagon secretion, increased B-cell growth/replication, slowed gastric emptying, and decreased food intake
- Associated with weight loss
- Subcutaneous formulation



Treatment of DKA/HHS

- Fluids
- Insulin
- Potassium
- Search for and treat precipitant



Conversion Chart for Percentage HbA1c to Average Blood Sugar Control

Average blood sugar level (mmol/L)	Hemoglobin A1c (% HbA1c)
17	12%
16	11%
14	10%
12	9%
10	8%
8	7%
6	6%

Conversion chart adapted from Nathan DM, et al. The clinical information value of a glycosylated hemoglobin assay. NEJM 1984;310:341-346



The 8 Is Precipitating DKA

- Infection
- Ischemia or Infarction
- Iatrogenic (glucocorticoids)
- Intoxication
- Insulin missed
- Initial presentation
- Intra-abdominal process (e.g. pancreatitis, cholecystitis)
- Intraoperative/perioperative stress

Acute Complications

Table 12. Acute Complications of Diabetes Mellitus: Hyperglycemic Comatose States

	Diabetic Ketoacidosis (DKA)	Hyperosmolar Hyperglycemic State (HHS)
Pathophysiology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Usually occurs in type 1 DM Insulin deficiency with ↑ counterregulatory hormones (glucagon, cortisol, catecholamines, GH) Can occur with lack of insulin (non-adherence, inadequate dosage, 1st presentation) or increased stress (surgery, infection, exercise) Unrestricted hepatic glucose production → hyperglycemia → osmotic diuresis → dehydration and electrolyte disturbance → ↓ Na⁺ (water shift to ECF causing pseudohyponatremia) Fat mobilization → ↑ FFA → ketoacids → metabolic acidosis Severe hyperglycemia exceeds the renal threshold for glucose and ketone reabsorption → glucosuria and ketonuria Total body K⁺ depletion but serum K⁺ may be normal or elevated 2° to shift from ICF to ECF due to lack of insulin, ↑ plasma osmolality Total body PO₄³⁻ depletion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Occurs in type 2 DM Often precipitated by sepsis, stroke, MI, CHF, renal failure, trauma, drugs (glucocorticoids, immunosuppressants, phenytoin, diuretics), dialysis, recent surgery, burns Partial or relative insulin deficiency decreases glucose utilization in muscle, fat, and liver while inducing hyperglucagonemia and hepatic glucose production Presence of a small amount of insulin prevents the development of ketosis by inhibiting lipolysis Characterized by hyperglycemia, hyperosmolality, and dehydration without ketosis More severe dehydration compared to DKA due to more gradual onset and ↑ duration of metabolic decompensation plus impaired fluid intake which is common in bedridden or elderly Volume contraction → renal insufficiency → ↑ hyperglycemia, ↑ osmolality → shift of fluid from neurons to ECF → mental obtundation and coma
Clinical Features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Polyuria, polydipsia, polyphagia with marked fatigue, N/V Dehydration (orthostatic changes) LOC may be ↓ with ketoacidosis or with high serum osmolality (osm >330 mmol/L) Abdominal pain Fruity smelling breath Kussmaul's respiration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Onset is insidious → preceded by weakness, polyuria, polydipsia History of decreased fluid intake History of ingesting large amounts of glucose containing fluids Dehydration (orthostatic changes) ↓ LOC → lethargy, confusion, comatose due to high serum osmolality Kussmaul's respiration is absent unless the underlying precipitant has also caused a metabolic acidosis
Serum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ↑ BG (typically 200-1000 mg/dL, 11-55 mmol/L), ↓ Na⁺ (2° to hyperglycemia → for every ↑ in BG by 180 mg/dL (10 mmol/L) there is a ↓ in Na⁺ by 3 mEq/L) Normal or ↑ K⁺, ↓ HCO₃⁻, ↑ BUN, ↑ Cr, ketonemia, ↓ PO₄³⁻ ↑ osmolality 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ↑ BG (typically 800-2400 mg/dL, 44.4-133.2 mmol/L) In mild dehydration, may have hyponatremia (spurious 2° to hyperglycemia → for every ↑ in BG by 180 mg/dL (10 mmol/L) there is a ↓ in Na⁺ by 3 mEq/L) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> if dehydration progresses, may get hypernatremia Ketosis usually absent or mild if starvation occurs ↑ osmolality
ABG	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Metabolic acidosis with ↑ AG, possible 2° respiratory alkalosis If severe vomiting/dehydration there may be a metabolic alkalosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Metabolic acidosis absent unless underlying precipitant leads to acidosis (e.g. lactic acidosis in MI)
Urine	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> +ve for glucose and ketones 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> -ve for ketones unless there is starvation ketosis Glycosuria
Treatment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immediate resuscitation and emergency measures if patient is stuporous or comatose Monitor degree of ketoacidosis with AG, not BG or serum ketone level Rehydration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 L/h NS in first 2 h after 1st 2 L, 300-400 mL/h 0.45% NaCl (continue NS if corrected sodium is falling faster than 3 mosm/kg water/h) once BG reaches 250 mg/dL (13.9 mmol/L) then switch to D5W to maintain BG in the range of 250-300 mg/dL (13.9-16.6 mmol/L) Insulin therapy: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> critical to resolve acidosis, not hyperglycemia do not use with hypokalemia, until serum K⁺ is corrected to >3.3 mEq/L use only regular insulin (R) maintain on 0.1 U/kg/h insulin R infusion check serum glucose hourly K⁺ replacement: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> with insulin administration, hypokalemia may develop if serum K⁺ <3.3 mEq/L, hold insulin and give 40 mEq/L K⁺ replacement when K⁺ 3.5-5.0 mEq/L add KCL 20-40 mEq/L IV fluid to keep K⁺ in the range of 3.5-5 mEq/L HCO₃⁻: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> if pH <7.0 or if hypotension, arrhythmia, or coma is present with a pH of <7.1 give HCO₃⁻ in 0.45% NaCl do not give if pH >7.1 (risk of metabolic alkalosis) can give in case of life-threatening hyperkalemia ± mannitol (for cerebral edema) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Same resuscitation and emergency measures as DKA Rehydration: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> IV fluids: 1 L/h NS initially evaluate corrected serum Na⁺ if corrected serum Na⁺ high or normal, switch to 0.45% NaCl (4-14 mL/kg/h) if corrected serum Na⁺ low, maintain NS (4-14 mL/kg/h) when serum BG reaches 250 mg/dL (13.9 mmol/L) switch to D5W K⁺ replacement: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> less severe K⁺ depletion compared to DKA if serum K⁺ <3.3 mEq/L, hold insulin and give 40 mEq/L K⁺ replacement if K⁺ is 3.3-5.0, give KCl 20-30 mEq/L IV fluid if serum K⁺ ≥5.5 mEq/L, check K⁺ every 2 h Search for precipitating event Insulin therapy: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> use only regular insulin (R) initially load 0.1 U/kg body weight insulin R bolus maintenance 0.1 U/kg/h insulin R infusion or IM check serum glucose hourly in general lower insulin requirement compared to DKA
Prognosis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2-5% mortality in developed countries Serious morbidity from sepsis, hypokalemia, respiratory complications, thromboembolic complications, and cerebral edema (the latter in children) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Overall mortality approaches 50% primarily because of the older patient population and underlying etiology/precipitant



All Ketonemia is not DKA:
Consider starvation or alcohol ketosis

Macrovascular Complications

- increased risk of CAD, ischemic stroke, and peripheral arterial disease secondary to accelerated atherosclerosis
- CAD (see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C25](#))
 - risk of MI is 3-5x higher in those with DM compared to age-matched controls
 - CAD is the leading cause of death in type 2 DM
 - most patients with DM are considered “high risk” under the risk stratification for CAD (see [Dyslipidemias, E2](#))
- ischemic stroke (see [Neurology, N46](#))
 - risk of stroke is approximately 2.5x higher in those with DM
 - level of glycemia is both a risk factor for stroke and a predictor of a poorer outcome in patients who suffer a stroke
 - HbA1c level is a significant and independent predictor of the risk of stroke
- peripheral arterial disease (see [Vascular Surgery, VS2](#))
 - manifested by intermittent claudication in lower extremities, intestinal angina, foot ulceration
 - risk of foot gangrene is 30x higher in those with DM compared to age-matched controls
 - risk of lower extremity amputation is 15x higher in those with DM
- treatment
 - tight blood pressure control (<130/80 mmHg); especially for stroke prevention
 - tight glycemic control in early DM without established CVD (refer to ACCORD, VADT, ADVANCE, DCCT, EDIC, UKPDS extension studies)
 - tight low density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol control (LDL 77 mg/dL [<2.0 mmol/L])
 - ACEI or angiotensin receptor blocker in high-risk patients
 - smoking cessation



Average fluid loss runs at 3-6 L in DKA, and 8-10 L in HHS



Laboratory Testing: Ketones

The nitroprusside test for ketones identifies acetone and acetoacetate but does NOT detect β -hydroxybutyrate (BHB), the ketone most frequently in excess; this has two clinical consequences:

- Be wary of a patient with a clinical picture of DKA but negative serum or urinary ketones; these could be false negatives because of the presence of BHB.
- As DKA is treated, BHB is converted to acetone and acetoacetate; serum or urinary ketones may therefore rise, falsely suggesting that the patient is worsening when in fact they are improving.

Microvascular Complications

DIABETIC RETINOPATHY (see [Ophthalmology, OP35](#))



Epidemiology

- type 1 DM: 25% affected at 5 yr, 100% at 20 yr
- type 2 DM: 25% affected at diagnosis, 60% at 20 yr
- leading cause of blindness in North America between the ages of 20-74
- most important factor is disease duration

Clinical Features

- nonproliferative
 - asymptomatic but if macular involvement occurs vision may be impaired
 - microaneurysms, hard exudates, dot-blot and flame hemorrhages
- preproliferative
 - macular edema, cotton wool spots, venous shunts and beading, intra-retinal microvascular abnormalities (IRMA)
- proliferative
 - with neovascularization and fibrous scarring; great risk for loss of vision secondary to vitreous hemorrhage (floaters) and/or retinal detachment

Treatment and Prevention

- tight glycemic control (delays onset, decreases progression), tight lipid control, manage HTN, smoking cessation
- pan-retinal laser photocoagulation for treatment of neovascularization
- vitrectomy
- annual follow-up visits with an optometrist or ophthalmologist examination through dilated pupils whether symptomatic or not (immediate referral after diagnosis of type 2 DM; 5 yr after diagnosis of type 1 DM)
- interval for follow-up should be tailored to severity of retinopathy



Effect of a Multifactorial Intervention on Mortality in Type 2 DM: The Steno-2 Study

NEJM 2008;358:580-591

Study: Single center RCT.

Patients: Patients (n=160) with type 2 DM and persistent microalbuminuria.

Intervention: Random assignment to receive either conventional multifactorial treatment or intensified, target-driven therapy involving a combination of medications and focused behavior modification. Targets included an HbA1c level of $<6.5\%$, a fasting serum total cholesterol level of <4.5 mmol/L, a fasting serum triglyceride level of <1.7 mmol/L, a sBP of <130 mmHg, and a dBP of <80 mmHg. Patients were treated with blockers of the renin-angiotensin system because of their microalbuminuria, regardless of blood pressure, and received low-dose Aspirin[®] as primary prevention.

Outcomes: The primary end point was the time to death from any cause. Other endpoints examined were death from CV causes and various CV events along with diabetic neuropathy, nephropathy, and retinopathy.

Results: Twenty-four patients in the intensive-therapy group died, as compared with 40 in the conventional-therapy group (hazard ratio, 0.54; 95% confidence interval [CI], 0.32-0.89; $p=0.02$). Intensive therapy was associated with a lower risk of death from CV causes (hazard ratio, 0.43; 95% CI 0.19-0.94; $p=0.04$) and of CV events (hazard ratio, 0.41; 95% CI 0.25-0.67; $p<0.001$). One patient in the intensive-therapy group had progression to end-stage renal disease, as compared with six patients in the conventional-therapy group ($p=0.04$). Fewer patients in the intensive-therapy group required retinal photocoagulation (relative risk, 0.45; 95% CI 0.23-0.86; $p=0.02$).

Conclusions: In at-risk patients with type 2 DM, intensive intervention with multiple drug combinations and behavior modification had sustained beneficial effects with respect to vascular complications and on rates of death from any cause and from CV causes.

DIABETIC NEPHROPATHY (see [Nephrology, NP28](#))**Epidemiology**

- DM-induced renal failure is the most common cause of renal failure in North America
- 20-40% of persons with type 1 DM (after 5-10 yr) and 4-20% with type 2 DM have progressive nephropathy

Pathophysiology

- thickening of capillary basement membrane and glomerular mesangium resulting in glomerulosclerosis and renal insufficiency
- diffuse glomerulosclerosis is more common than nodular intercapillary glomerulosclerosis (Kimmelstiel-Wilson lesions)

Screening

- serum creatinine
- random urine test for albumin to creatinine ratio (ACR) plus urine dipstick test for all type 2 DM patients at diagnosis, then annually, and for postpubertal type 1 DM patients with ≥ 5 yr duration of DM

Clinical Features

- initial changes include microalbuminuria, increased GFR (up to 140%) from hyperfiltration, enlarged kidneys
- microalbuminuria: 30 $\mu\text{g}/\text{mg}$
- macroalbuminuria: 300 $\mu\text{g}/\text{mg}$
- progression over 15 yr to cause HTN, persistent proteinuria (macroalbuminuria), nephrotic syndrome, and renal failure
- elevated HbA1c is an independent risk factor for progression to microalbuminuria

Treatment and Prevention

- tight glycemic control
- tight blood pressure control (<130/80 mmHg): can use either ACEI or ARB (often used first line for their CVD protection)
- even in the absence of glycemic control ACEIs or ARBs reduce the level of albuminuria and the rate of progression of renal disease in normotensive and hypertensive patients with type 1 or type 2 DM
- type 1 DM \rightarrow CKD with either HTN or albuminuria \rightarrow ACEIs 1st line; ARBs 2nd line
- type 2 DM \rightarrow CKD with HTN and albuminuria \rightarrow ACEIs or ARBs (dose adjust if creatinine clearance (CrCl) <60 mL/min)
- consider use of non-dihydropyridine calcium channel blocker (e.g. diltiazem) in those unable to tolerate both ACEIs and ARBs
- limit use of nephrotoxic drugs and dyes
- renal failure may necessitate hemodialysis and renal transplant

DIABETIC NEUROPATHY (see [Neurology, N42](#))**Epidemiology**

- approximately 50% of patients within 10 yr of onset of type 1 DM and type 2 DM

Pathophysiology

- can have peripheral sensory neuropathy, motor neuropathy, or autonomic neuropathy
- mechanism poorly understood
- acute cranial nerve palsies and diabetic amyotrophy are thought to be due to ischemic infarction of peripheral nerve
- the more common motor and sensory neuropathies are thought to be related to metabolic or osmotic toxicity secondary to increased sorbitol and/or decreased myoinositol (possible mechanisms include accumulation of advanced glycation endproducts [AGE], oxidative stress, protein kinase C, nerve growth factor deficiency)

Screening

- 128 Hz tuning fork or 10 g monofilament at diagnosis and annually in people with type 2 DM and after 5 yr duration of type 1 DM

**Management of Diabetic Retinopathy: A Systematic Review**

JAMA 2007;298:902-916

Purpose: To review the best evidence for primary and secondary interventions in the management of diabetic retinopathy (DR), including diabetic macular edema.

Study Selection: English-language RCTs with more than 12 mo of follow-up and meta-analyses were included.

Results: Forty-four studies (including 3 meta-analyses) met the inclusion criteria. Tight glycemic and blood pressure control reduces the incidence and progression of DR. Pan-retinal laser photocoagulation reduces the risk of moderate and severe visual loss by 50% in patients with severe nonproliferative and proliferative retinopathy. Focal laser photocoagulation reduces the risk of moderate visual loss by 50-70% in eyes with macular edema. Early vitrectomy improves visual recovery in patients with proliferative retinopathy and severe vitreous hemorrhage. Intravitreal injections of steroids may be considered in eyes with persistent loss of vision when conventional treatment has failed.

Conclusions: Tight glycemic and blood pressure control remains the cornerstone in the primary prevention of DR. Pan-retinal and focal retinal laser photocoagulation reduces the risk of visual loss in patients with severe DR and macular edema, respectively. There is currently insufficient evidence to recommend routine use of other treatments.



Clinical Features

Table 13. Clinical Presentation of Diabetic Neuropathies

Peripheral Sensory Neuropathy	Motor Neuropathy	Autonomic Neuropathy
Paresthesias (tingling, itching), neuropathic pain, radicular pain, numbness, decreased tactile sensation	Less common than sensory neuropathy	Postural hypotension, tachycardia, decreased cardiovascular response to Valsalva maneuver
Bilateral and symmetric with decreased perception of vibration and pain/temperature; especially true in the lower extremities but may also be present in the hands	Delayed motor nerve conduction and muscle weakness/atrophy	Gastroparesis and alternating diarrhea and constipation
Decreased ankle reflex	May involve one nerve trunk (mononeuropathy) or more (mononeuritis multiplex)	Urinary retention and erectile dysfunction
Symptoms may first occur in entrapment syndromes e.g. carpal tunnel	Some of the motor neuropathies spontaneously resolve after 6-8 wk	
May result in neuropathic ulceration of foot	Reversible CN palsies: III (ptosis/ophthalmoplegia, pupil sparing), VI (inability to laterally deviate eye), and VII (Bell's palsy)	
	Diabetic amyotrophy: refers to pain, weakness, and wasting of hip flexors or extensors	

Treatment and Management

- tight glycemic control
- for neuropathic pain syndromes: tricyclic antidepressants (e.g. amitriptyline), pregabalin, duloxetine, anti-epileptics (e.g. carbamazepine, gabapentin), and capsaicin
- foot care education
- Jobst® fitted stocking and tilting of head of bed may decrease symptoms of orthostatic hypotension
- treat gastroparesis with domperidone and/or metoclopramide (dopamine antagonists), erythromycin (stimulates motilin receptors)
- medical, mechanical, and surgical treatment for erectile dysfunction (see [Urology](#), U30)



Effects of Treatments for Symptoms of Painful Diabetic Neuropathy: Systematic Review

BMJ 2007;335:87

Purpose: To evaluate the effects of treatments for the symptoms of painful diabetic neuropathy.

Study Selection: RCTs comparing topically applied and orally administered drugs with a placebo in adults with painful diabetic neuropathy.

Results: 25 included reports compared anticonvulsants (n=1,270), antidepressants (94), opioids (329), ion channel blockers (173), NMDA antagonist (14), duloxetine (805), capsaicin (277), and isosorbide dinitrate spray (22) with placebo. The odds ratios in terms of 50% pain relief were 5.33 (95% CI 1.77-16.02) for traditional anticonvulsants, 3.25 (95% CI 2.27-4.66) for newer generation anticonvulsants, and 22.24 (95% CI 5.83-84.75) for tricyclic antidepressants. The odds ratios in terms of withdrawals related to adverse events were 1.51 (95% CI 0.33-6.96) for traditional anticonvulsants, 2.98 (95% CI 1.75-5.07) for newer generation anticonvulsants, and 2.32 (95% CI 0.59-9.69) for tricyclic antidepressants.

Conclusion: Anticonvulsants and antidepressants are still the most commonly used options to manage diabetic neuropathy. Tricyclic antidepressants and traditional anticonvulsants are better for short-term pain relief than newer anticonvulsants. Evidence of the long-term effects of antidepressants and anticonvulsants is lacking. Further studies are needed on opioids, NMDA antagonists, and ion channel blockers.



Other Complications

Dermatologic

- diabetic dermopathy: atrophic brown spots commonly in pretibial region known as “shin spots”, secondary to increased glycosylation of tissue proteins or vasculopathy
- eruptive xanthomas secondary to increased triglycerides
- necrobiosis lipidica diabetorum: rare complication characterized by thinning skin over the shins allowing visualization of subcutaneous vessels

Bone and Joint Disease

- juvenile cheiroarthropathy: chronic stiffness of hand caused by contracture of skin over joints secondary to glycosylated collagen and other connective tissue proteins
- Dupuytren's contracture
- bone demineralization: bone density 10-20% below normal
- adhesive capsulitis (“frozen shoulder”)

Cataracts

- subcapsular and senile cataracts secondary to glycosylated lens protein or increased sorbitol causing osmotic change and fibrosis

Infections

- see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID16

Hypoglycemia

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- hypoglycemia occurs most frequently in people with DM receiving insulin or certain antihyperglycemic therapies (insulin secretagogues)
- in people without DM, care must be taken to distinguish fasting from post-prandial hypoglycemia as each invokes separate differential diagnoses



Other Players in Glucose Homeostasis

These hormones act to increase blood glucose levels

- Glucagon
- Epinephrine
- Cortisol
- Growth hormone



C-Peptide

A short peptide released into the circulation when proinsulin is cleaved to insulin

Table 14. Common Causes of Hypoglycemia

Fasting		Post-Prandial (Nonfasting, Reactive)
Hyperinsulinism	Without Hyperinsulinism	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Exogenous insulin Sulfonylurea or meglitinide reaction Autoimmune hypoglycemia (autoantibodies to insulin or insulin receptor) Pentamidine Pancreatic β cell tumor – insulinoma 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Severe hepatic dysfunction Chronic renal insufficiency Hypocortisolism Alcohol use Non-pancreatic tumors Inborn error of carbohydrate metabolism, glycogen storage disease, gluconeogenic enzyme deficiency 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alimentary Functional Noninsulinoma pancreatogenous hypoglycemic syndrome Occult DM Leucine sensitivity Hereditary fructose intolerance Galactosemia Newborn infant of diabetic mother

Clinical Features

- Whipple's triad
 - serum glucose 45 mg/dL (<2.5 mmol/L) in males and 40 mg/dL (<2.2 mmol/L) in females
 - neuroglycopenic symptoms
 - rapid relief provided by administration of glucose
- adrenergic symptoms (typically occur first; caused by autonomic nervous system activity)
 - palpitations, sweating, anxiety, tremor, tachycardia
- neuroglycopenic symptoms (caused by decreased activity of CNS)
 - dizziness, headache, clouding of vision, mental dullness, fatigue, confusion, seizures, coma

Investigations

- electrolytes, creatinine, LFTs, drugs/toxins, cortisol
- if concerned about possible insulinoma:
 - blood work to be drawn when patient is hypoglycemic (e.g. during hospitalized 72 h fast) for glucose, serum ketones, insulin, pro-insulin, C-peptide, insulin antibodies

Treatment

- for fasting hypoglycemia, must treat underlying cause
- for post-prandial (reactive) hypoglycemia, frequent small feeds
- see [Emergency Medicine, ER36](#)
- treatment of hypoglycemic episode in the unconscious patient or patient NPO
 - D50W 50 mL (1 ampule) IV or 1 mg glucagon SC (if no IV available)
 - may need ongoing glucose infusion once BG > 90 mg/dL (5 mmol/L)



Metabolic Syndrome

- several definitions, most widely used are National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP/ATP III, updated by American Heart Association) and International Diabetes Federation (IDF) definitions
- postulated syndrome related to insulin resistance associated with hyperglycemia, hyperinsulinemia, HTN, central obesity, and dyslipidemia
- obesity aggravates extent of insulin resistance
- complications include DM, atherosclerosis, CAD, MI, and stroke
- women with PCOS are at increased risk for developing insulin resistance, hyperlipidemia, and metabolic syndrome
- not to be confused with syndrome X related to angina pectoris with normal coronary arteries (Prinzmetal angina)

Obesity

- see [Family Medicine, FM7](#)



Use C-peptide Levels to Distinguish between Exogenous and Endogenous Source of Hyperinsulinemia
 Increased = endogenous
 Decreased or normal = exogenous



Treatment of Acute Hypoglycemic Episode (Blood Glucose <72 mg/dL) in the Awake Patient (e.g. able to self-treat)

- Eat 15 g of carbohydrates (CHO)
(e.g. 3 packets sugar dissolved in water; 3/4 cup of juice)
- Wait 15 min
- Retest Blood Glucose (BG)
- Repeat steps 1-3 until BG > 90 mg/dL
- Eat next scheduled meal. If next meal is > 1 h away, eat snack including 15 g of CHO and protein.



Hypoglycemia Unawareness: (Type 1 DM >>> Type 2 DM)

Patient remains asymptomatic until severely hypoglycemic levels are reached

Causes:

- Decreased glucagon/epinephrine response
- History of repeated hypoglycemia or low HbA1c
- Autonomic neuropathy
- Not safe to drive



Suggest that patient obtain a Medic-Alert bracelet if at risk for hypoglycemia, especially with hypoglycemia unawareness

**Features of Metabolic Syndrome**

Risk Factor	IDF (2005): to make diagnosis requires abdominal obesity + ≥ 2 additional risk factors	ATP III (2005): requires $\geq 2-3$ risk factors
Abdominal Obesity		
Men	WC ≥ 37 inches (94 cm)	WC ≥ 40 inches (102 cm)
Women	WC ≥ 31.5 inches (80 cm)	WC ≥ 35 inches (88 cm)
Triglyceride Level		
	≥ 150 mg/dL (1.7 mmol/L)	≥ 150 mg/dL (1.7 mmol/L)
HDL-C Level		
Men	< 40 mg/dL (1.0 mmol/L)	< 40 mg/dL (1.0 mmol/L)
Women	< 50 mg/dL (1.3 mmol/L)	< 50 mg/dL (1.3 mmol/L)
Blood Pressure		
	$\geq 130/85$ mmHg	$\geq 130/85$ mmHg
Fasting Glucose Level		
	> 100 mg/dL (≥ 5.6 mmol/L)	> 100 mg/dL (≥ 5.6 mmol/L)

WC = waist circumference

Pituitary Gland

Pituitary Hormones

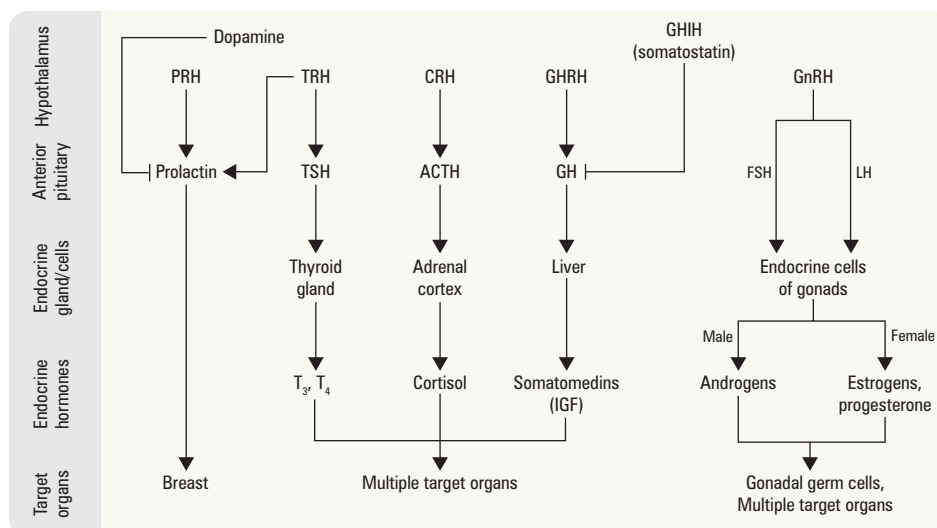


Figure 6. Hypothalamic-pituitary hormonal axes

CRH = corticotropin-releasing hormone; GnRH = gonadotropin-releasing hormone; GHIH = growth hormone-inhibiting hormone; GHRH = growth hormone-releasing hormone; PRH = prolactin-releasing hormone; TRH = thyrotropin-releasing hormone

Hypothalamic Control of Pituitary

- trophic and inhibitory factors control the release of pituitary hormones
- most hormones are primarily under trophic stimulation except prolactin which is primarily under inhibitory control by dopamine, as well as GH and TSH which are inhibited by SS (somatostatin)
- transection of the pituitary stalk (i.e. dissociation of hypothalamus and pituitary) leads to pituitary hypersecretion of prolactin and hyposecretion of all remaining hormones

Anterior Pituitary Hormones

- growth hormone (GH), luteinizing hormone (LH), follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH), and prolactin (PRL)

Posterior Pituitary (Hypothalamic) Hormones

- antidiuretic hormone (ADH) and oxytocin
- peptides synthesized in the supraoptic and paraventricular nuclei of the hypothalamus
- although ADH and oxytocin are produced in the hypothalamus these hormones are stored and released from the posterior pituitary

Table 15. The Physiology and Action of Pituitary Hormones

Hormone	Function	Physiology	Inhibitory Stimulus	Secretory Stimulus
ACTH	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stimulates growth of adrenal cortex and secretion of its hormones 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Polypeptide • Pulsatile and diurnal variation (highest in AM, lowest at midnight) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dexamethasone • Cortisol 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CRH • Metyrapone • Insulin-induced hypoglycemia • Vasopressin • Fever, pain, stress
GH	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Needed for linear growth • IGF-1 stimulates growth of bone and cartilage 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Polypeptide • Acts indirectly through serum factors synthesized in the liver: IGF-1 (somatomedin-C) • Serum GH undetectable for most of the day and suppressed after meals high in glucose • Sustained rise during sleep 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Glucose challenge • Glucocorticoids • Hypothyroidism • Somatostatin • Dopamine D2 receptor agonists • IGF-1 (long-loop) • Tonicity by dopamine 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GHRH • Insulin-induced hypoglycemia • Exercise • REM sleep • Arginine, clonidine, propranolol, L-dopa

Table 15. The Physiology and Action of Pituitary Hormones (continued)

Hormone	Function	Physiology	Inhibitory Stimulus	Secretory Stimulus
LH/FSH	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stimulate gonads via cAMP Ovary: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LH: production of androgens (thecal cells) which are converted to estrogens (granulosa cells); induces luteinization in follicles FSH: growth of granulosa cells in ovarian follicle; controls estrogen formation Testes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> LH: production of testosterone (Leydig cells) FSH: production of spermatozoa (Sertoli cells) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Polypeptide Glycoproteins (similar α subunit as TSH and hCG) Secreted in pulsatile fashion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Estrogen Progesterone Testosterone Inhibin Continuous (i.e. non-pulsatile) GnRH infusion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pulsatile GnRH
Prolactin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Promotes milk production Inhibits GnRH secretion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Polypeptide Episodic secretion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dopamine 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sleep Stress, hypoglycemia Pregnancy, breastfeeding Mid-menstrual cycle Sexual activity TRH Drugs: psychotropics, antihypertensives, dopamine antagonists, opiates, high dose estrogen
TSH	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stimulates growth of thyroid and secretion of T_3 and T_4 via cAMP 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Glycoprotein 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Circulating thyroid hormones (T_3, T_4) Opiates, dopamine 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> TRH Epinephrine Prostaglandins
ADH	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acts at renal collecting ducts on V2 receptors to cause insertion of aquaporin channels and increases water reabsorption thereby concentrating urine 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Octapeptide Secreted by posterior pituitary Osmoreceptors in hypothalamus detect serum osmolality Contracted plasma volume detected by baroreceptors is a more potent stimulus than \uparrow osmolality 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> \downarrow serum osmolality 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hypovolemia or \downarrow effective circulatory volume \uparrow serum osmolality Stress, pain, fever, paraneoplastic Lung or brain pathology
Oxytocin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Causes uterine contraction Breast milk secretion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not a peptide Secreted by posterior pituitary 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> EtOH 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Suckling Distention of female genital tract during labor via stretch receptors

Growth Hormone



GH DEFICIENCY

- cause of short stature in children (see [Pediatrics](#), P27)
- controversial significance in adults; often not clinically apparent, may present as fatigue



GH EXCESS

- in children (before epiphyseal fusion) leads to gigantism
- in adults (after epiphyseal fusion) leads to acromegaly



Signs and Symptoms of Acromegaly:

ABCDEF

Arthralgia/Arthritis
 Blood pressure raised
 Carpal tunnel syndrome
 Diabetes
 Enlarged organs
 Field defect (visual)

Etiology

- GH secreting pituitary adenoma, carcinoid or pancreatic islet tumors secreting ectopic GHRH resulting in excess GH

Pathophysiology

- normally GH is a catabolic hormone that acts to increase blood glucose levels
- in growth hormone excess states secretion remains pulsatile but there is loss of hypoglycemic stimulation, glucose suppression, and the nocturnal surge
- proliferation of bone, cartilage, soft tissues, organomegaly
- insulin resistance and IGT

Clinical Features

- enlargement of hands and feet, coarsening of facial features, thickening of calvarium, prognathism, thickening of skin, increased sebum production, sweating, acne, sebaceous cysts, fibromata mollusca, acanthosis nigricans, arthralgia, carpal tunnel syndrome, degenerative osteoarthritis, thyromegaly, renal calculi, HTN, cardiomyopathy, obstructive sleep apnea, colonic polyps, and DM

Investigations

- glucose suppression test is the most specific test (75 g of glucose PO suppresses GH levels in healthy individuals but not in patients with acromegaly)
- elevated serum insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1) is usually first line diagnostic test

Treatment

- surgery, octreotide (somatostatin analogue), dopamine agonist (bromocriptine/cabergoline), growth hormone receptor antagonist (pegvisomant), radiation

Prolactin

HYPERPROLACTINEMIA**Etiology**

- pregnancy and breastfeeding
- prolactinoma: most common pituitary adenoma (prolactin-secreting tumors may be induced by estrogens and grow during pregnancy)
- pituitary masses with pituitary stalk compression causing reduced dopamine inhibition of prolactin release
- primary hypothyroidism (increased TRH)
- decreased clearance due to chronic renal failure or severe liver disease (prolactin is metabolized by both the kidney and liver)
- medications with anti-dopaminergic properties are a common cause of high prolactin levels: antipsychotics (common), antidepressants, antihypertensives, anti-migraine agents (triptans/ergotamines), bowel motility agents (metoclopramide/domperidone), H₂-blockers (ranitidine)
- macroprolactinemia (high molecular weight prolactin also known as big big prolactin)

Clinical Features

- galactorrhea (secretion of breast milk in women and, in rare cases, men), infertility, hypogonadism, amenorrhea, erectile dysfunction

Investigations

- serum PRL, TSH, liver enzyme tests, creatinine
- MRI of the sella turcica

Treatment

- long-acting dopamine agonist: bromocriptine, cabergoline, or quinagolide (Norprolac®)
- surgery ± radiation (rare)
- prolactin-secreting tumors are very slow-growing and sometimes require no treatment
- if medication-induced, consider stopping medication if possible
- in certain cases if microprolactinoma and not planning on becoming pregnant, may consider OCP

**Approach to Nipple Discharge**

- Differentiate between galactorrhea (fat droplets present) vs. breast discharge (usually unilateral, may be bloody or serous)
- If galactorrhea, determine if physiologic (e.g. pregnancy, lactation, stress) vs. pathologic
- If abnormal breast discharge, must rule out a breast malignancy

Thyroid Stimulating Hormone

- see *Thyroid*, E20



Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone

- see *Adrenal Cortex*, E29



Luteinizing Hormone and Follicle Stimulating Hormone

- see *Gynecology*, GY4

**HYPOGONADOTROPIC HYPOGONADISM****Clinical Features**

- hypogonadism, amenorrhea, erectile dysfunction (see *Urology*, U30), loss of body hair, fine skin, testicular atrophy, failure of pubertal development

**Treatment**

- Pergonal® (combined FSH/LH hormone therapy), hCG, or pulsatile GnRH analogue if fertility desired
- symptomatic treatment with estrogen/testosterone

HYPERGONADOTROPIC HYPOGONADISM

- 2° hypersecretion in gonadal failure (e.g. in menopause)

Antidiuretic Hormone

DIABETES INSIPIDUS

Definition

- disorder of ineffective ADH (decreased production or peripheral resistance) resulting in passage of large volumes of dilute urine

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- central DI: insufficient ADH due to pituitary surgery, tumors, idiopathic/autoimmune, stalk lesion, hydrocephalus, histiocytosis X, trauma, familial central DI
- nephrogenic DI: collecting tubules in kidneys resistant to ADH due to drugs (e.g. lithium), hypercalcemia, hypokalemia, chronic renal disease, hereditary nephrogenic DI
- psychogenic polydipsia and osmotic diuresis must be ruled out

Clinical Features

- passage of large volumes of dilute urine, polydipsia, and dehydration; hypernatremia can develop with inadequate water consumption or secondary to an impaired thirst mechanism

Diagnostic Criteria

- fluid deprivation will differentiate true DI (high urine output persists, urine osmolality < plasma osmolality) from psychogenic DI (psychogenic polydipsia)
- response to exogenous ADH (DDAVP) will distinguish central from nephrogenic DI

Treatment

- DDAVP/vasopressin for central DI
- chlorpropamide, clofibrate, thiazides, NSAIDs, or carbamazepine as second line or for partial DI
- nephrogenic DI treated with solute restriction NSAIDs and thiazide diuretics; DDAVP (if partial)



Diagnosing Subtypes of DI with DDAVP Response

Concentrated urine = Central
No effect = Nephrogenic

SYNDROME OF INAPPROPRIATE ADH SECRETION

Diagnostic Criteria

- hyponatremia with corresponding plasma hypo-osmolality, urine sodium concentration above 40 mEq/L, urine less than maximally diluted (>100 mOsm/kg), euvolemia (edema absent), and absence of adrenal, renal, or thyroid insufficiency

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- stress (pain, nausea, post-surgical)
- malignancy (lung, pancreas, lymphoma)
- CNS disease (inflammatory, hemorrhage, tumor, Guillain-Barré syndrome)
- respiratory disease (TB, pneumonia, empyema)
- drugs (SSRIs, vincristine, chlorpropamide, cyclophosphamide, carbamazepine, nicotine, morphine, DDAVP, oxytocin)

Treatment

- treat underlying cause, fluid restriction (800-1000 mL/day), vasopressin receptor antagonists (e.g. tolvaptan, conivaptan), and demeclocycline (antibiotic with anti-ADH properties, rarely-used) fludrocortisone, furosemide



SIADH vs. Cerebral Salt Wasting (CSW)
CSW can occur in cases of subarachnoid hemorrhage; Na^+ is excreted by malfunctioning renal tubules, mimicking findings of SIADH; hallmark is hypovolemia



Presentations of Pituitary Lesions

- Mass effect (visual field deficits, diplopia, ptosis, headaches, CSF leak)
- Hyperfunction
- Hypofunction



Important Deficiencies to Recognize are:

- Adrenal insufficiency
- Hypothyroidism

Concurrent adrenal insufficiency and hypothyroidism should be treated with glucocorticoids first and then with thyroid hormone to avoid adrenal crisis

Pituitary Pathology

PITUITARY ADENOMA (see [Neurosurgery, NS13](#))

Clinical Features

- local mass effects
 - visual field defects (bitemporal hemianopsia due to compression of the optic chiasm), diplopia (due to oculomotor nerve palsies), headaches; increased ICP is rare
- hypofunction
 - hypopituitarism
- hyperfunction
 - PRL (galactorrhea), GH (acromegaly in adults, gigantism in children), ACTH (Cushing's disease = Cushing's syndrome caused by a pituitary tumor)
 - tumors secreting LH, FSH, and TSH are rare

Investigations

- radiological evaluation (MRI is imaging procedure of choice)
- formal visual field testing
- hypothalamic-pituitary hormonal function

HYPOPITUITARISM

Etiology (the eight Is)

- Invasive
 - pituitary tumors, craniopharyngioma, cysts (Rathke's cleft, arachnoid, or dermoid), metastases
- Infarction/hemorrhage
 - Sheehan's syndrome (pituitary infarction due to excessive post-partum blood loss and hypovolemic shock)
 - pituitary apoplexy (acute hemorrhage/infarction of a pituitary tumor; presents with sudden loss of pituitary hormones, severe headache, and altered level of consciousness; can be fatal if not recognized and treated early)
- Infiltrative/inflammatory
 - sarcoidosis, hemochromatosis, histiocytosis
- Infectious
 - syphilis, TB, fungal (histoplasmosis), parasitic (toxoplasmosis)
- Injury
 - severe head trauma
- Immunologic
 - autoimmune destruction
- Iatrogenic
 - following surgery or radiation
- Idiopathic
 - familial forms, congenital midline defects

Investigations

- triple bolus test
 - stimulates release of all anterior pituitary hormones in normal individuals
 - rapid sequence of IV infusion of insulin, GnRH, and TRH
 - insulin (usual dose 0.1 unit/kg of human regular insulin) → hypoglycemia → increased GH and ACTH
 - GnRH (100 µg IV push) → increased LH and FSH
 - TRH (200 µg IV push over 120 s) → increased TSH and PRL (no longer available)



The Pituitary Hormones

Order they are usually lost with compression by a mass:

"Go Look For The Adenoma Please"

GH, LH, FSH, TSH, ACTH, PRL + posterior pituitary hormones: ADH and oxytocin



Thyroid

Thyroid Hormones

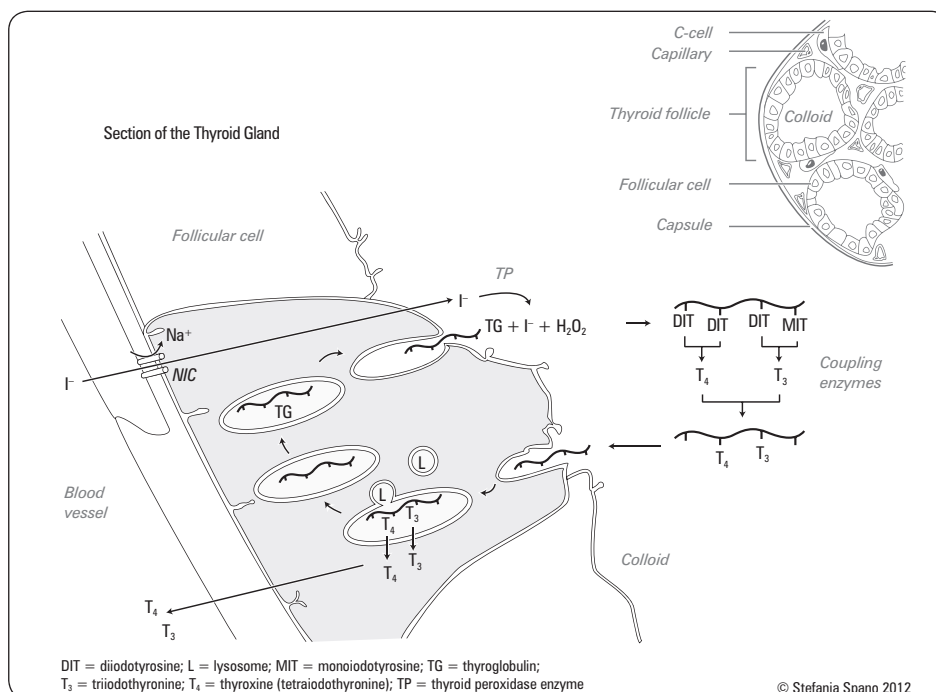


Figure 7. Thyroid hormone synthesis

Synthetic Function of Thyroid Gland

- the synthesis of thyroid hormones T₄ (thyroxine) and T₃ (triiodothyronine) by the thyroid gland involves trapping and oxidation of iodide, iodination of thyroglobulin, and release of T₃ and T₄

- free T_4 (0.03%) and free T_3 (0.3%) represent the hormonally active fraction of thyroid hormones
 - the remaining fraction is bound to thyroxine binding globulin (TBG) and albumin and is biologically inactive
- T_3 is more biologically active (3-8x more potent), but T_4 has a longer half-life
- 85% of T_4 is converted to T_3 or reverse T_3 (RT3) in the periphery by deiodinases
- RT3 is metabolically inactive but produced in times of stress to decrease metabolic activity
- most of the plasma T_3 pool is derived from the peripheral conversion of T_4
- calcitonin, a peptide hormone, is also produced in the thyroid, by the parafollicular cells or C cells
 - it functions by inhibiting osteoclast activity and increasing renal calcium excretion

Role of Thyroid Hormones

- thyroid hormones act primarily through modifying gene transcription by binding to nuclear receptors
- action of these hormones is diffuse, effecting nearly every organ system
- they produce an increase in basal metabolic rate including: increased Na^+/K^+ ATPase activity, increased O_2 consumption, increased respiration, heat generation, and increased cardiovascular activity
- also play crucial role during fetal life in both neurological and somatic development

Regulation of Thyroid Function

- extrathyroid
 - stimulation of thyroid by TSH, epinephrine, prostaglandins (cAMP stimulators)
 - T_3 negatively feeds back on anterior pituitary to inhibit TSH and on hypothalamus to inhibit TRH
- intrathyroid (autoregulation)
 - synthesis (Wolff-Chaikoff effect, Jod-Basedow effect)
 - there is varying thyroid sensitivity to TSH in response to iodide availability
 - increased ratio of T_3 to T_4 in iodide deficiency
 - increased activity of peripheral 5' deiodinase in hypothyroidism increases T_3 production despite low T_4 levels

Tests of Thyroid Function and Structure

TSH

- sensitive TSH (sTSH) is the best test for assessing thyroid function
- hyperthyroidism
 - primary: TSH is low because of negative feedback from increased levels of circulating T_3 and T_4
 - secondary: increased TSH results in increased T_3 and T_4
- hypothyroidism
 - primary: increased TSH (most sensitive test) because of less negative feedback from T_3 and T_4
 - secondary: TSH is low or normal with variable response to TRH depending on the site of the lesion (pituitary or hypothalamic)

Free T_3 and Free T_4

- standard assessment of thyroid function measures TSH and if necessary free T_4 , free T_3 should be measured if TSH is suppressed and free T_4 is normal to rule out T_3 toxicosis

Thyroid Autoantibodies

- anti-thyroglobulin antibodies (TgAb), anti-thyroid peroxidase antibodies, anti-TSH receptor inhibiting antibodies
 - increased in Hashimoto's disease; normal variant in 10-20% of individuals
- thyroid stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI)/TSH receptor stimulating antibodies

Plasma Thyroglobulin

- used to monitor for residual thyroid tissue post-thyroidectomy, e.g. tumor marker for thyroid cancer recurrence
- normal or elevated levels may suggest persistent, recurrent, or metastatic disease

Serum Calcitonin

- not routinely done to investigate thyroid nodules
- ordered if suspicion of medullary thyroid carcinoma or family history of MEN IIa or IIb syndromes
 - used to monitor for residual or recurrent medullary thyroid cancer

Thyroid Imaging/Scans

- normal gland size 15-20 g (estimated by palpation)
- thyroid U/S
 - to measure size of gland, solid vs. cystic nodule, facilitate fine needle aspirate biopsy (FNAB)
- radioisotope thyroid scan (Technetium-99)
 - *test of structure*: order if there is a thyroid nodule and patient is hyperthyroid with low TSH
 - differentiates between hot (functioning → excess thyroid hormone production) and cold (non-functioning) nodules
 - ♦ hot nodule → very low chance malignancy; treat hyperthyroidism
 - ♦ cold nodule → ~5% chance malignancy; further workup required (U/S and FNAB)



Thyroid Assessment

- Serum thyroid hormones (TSH, T_3 , T_4)
- Antibodies
- Thyroglobulin (to monitor thyroid cancer)
- Thyroid U/S
- Nuclear uptake and scan (for hyperthyroidism)
- Biopsy (FNA)



Patterns of Hormone Levels

	TSH	T_3 , T_4
1° Hyper	↓	↑
2° Hyper	↑	↑
1° Hypo	↑	↓
2° Hypo	↓	↓



Does this Patient have a Goiter?

From The Rational Clinical Examination

JAMA 2009; <http://www.jamaevidence.com/content/3480618>

Study: Systematic review of articles assessing the accuracy and precision of the clinical exam in the diagnosis of a goiter.

Results: Clinical diagnosis was based on degree of lateral prominence, visibility, and palpability of the thyroid gland. No evidence exists to support the superiority of any one method.

The combined results of 4 studies detail the predictive utility of assessing grades of thyroid gland weight:

Weight	Reference	LR+	95% CI
0-20 g	normal	0.15	(0.10-0.21)
20-40 g	1-2x	1.9	(1.1-3.0)
>40 g	>2x	25.0	(2.6-175)

Alternatively, defining a goiter as mass larger than the distal phalanx of the thumb has been shown to have an LR+ of 3.0 (95% CI 2.5-3.5) and LR- of 0.30 (95% CI 0.24-0.37) in children, and an LR+ of 4.7 (95% CI 3.6-6.0) and LR- of 0.08 (95% CI 0.02-0.27) for the presence of a goiter.

Conclusions: Use of weight of thyroid tissue is an appropriate method of diagnosing a goiter, while comparing the size of thyroid mass to the distal phalanx of the thumb may be a useful alternative.

- radioactive iodine uptake (RAIU)
 - test of function*: order if patient is thyrotoxic
 - RAIU measures the turnover of iodine by thyroid gland *in vivo*
 - if ↑ uptake (i.e. incorporated) → gland is overactive (hyperthyroid)
 - if ↓ uptake (i.e. not incorporated) → gland is leaking thyroid hormone (e.g. thyroiditis), exogenous thyroid hormone use, or excess iodine intake (e.g. amiodarone or contrast dye, which has high iodine content)
- see Figure 8, *Approach to the Evaluation of a Thyroid Nodule*, E29 for further information regarding the utility of these scans

Thyroid Biopsy

- fine needle aspiration (FNA) for cytology
 - differentiates between benign and malignant disease
 - best done under U/S guidance
 - accuracy decreased if nodule is greater than 50% cystic, or if nodule located posteriorly in the gland

Table 16. Summary of Diagnostic Testing in Hyperthyroidism and Hypothyroidism

	Hyperthyroidism	Hypothyroidism
TSH	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decreased in 1° hyperthyroidism Increased in 2° hyperthyroidism 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased in 1° hypothyroidism Decreased in 2° hypothyroidism
Free T₄	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased in 1° hyperthyroidism Increased in 2° hyperthyroidism 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decreased in 1° hypothyroidism Decreased in 2° hypothyroidism
Antibodies	Graves': thyroid stimulating Ig (TSI)	Hashimoto's: antithyroid peroxidase (TPO)
RAIU	Increased uptake: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Graves' Toxic multinodular goiter Toxic adenoma 	Decreased uptake <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Subacute thyroiditis Recent iodine load Exogenous thyroid hormone
Radioisotope Thyroid Scan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Graves': homogenous diffuse uptake Multinodular goiter: heterogenous uptake Toxic adenoma: single intense area of uptake with suppression elsewhere 	



Caution with Amiodarone

Amiodarone-Induced Hypothyroidism (AIH): AIH occurs more often in iodine-sufficient areas, and is more common in populations with a higher prevalence of autoimmune thyroid disease, such as women and the elderly. AIH can also occur in patients without pre-existing thyroid dysfunction.

Amiodarone-Induced Thyrotoxicosis (AIT): AIT occurs more often in iodine-deficient areas. It may occur in patients with pre-existing thyroid deficiencies, as an iodine load on an already dysfunctional thyroid may result in excessive thyroid hormone synthesis and release. AIT may also occur in patients without thyroid abnormalities through a cytotoxic mechanism that results in leakage of thyroid hormone into the systemic circulation.



Common Etiologies

Thyrotoxicosis	Hypothyroidism
Graves' Disease	Hashimoto's
Toxic Nodular Goiter	Congenital
Toxic Nodule	Iatrogenic (thionamides, radioactive iodine, or surgery)
Thyroiditis	Hypothyroid phase of thyroiditis

Thyrotoxicosis

Definition

- clinical, physiological, and biochemical findings in response to elevated thyroid hormone

Epidemiology

- 1% of general population have hyperthyroidism
- F:M = 5:1

Etiology and Pathophysiology

Table 17. Differential Diagnosis of Thyrotoxicosis

Disorder	TSH	Free T ₄ /T ₃	Thyroid Antibodies	RAIU	Other
HYPERTHYROIDISM					
Graves' Disease	Decreased	Increased	TSI	Increased	Heterogeneous uptake on scan
Toxic Nodular Goiter	Decreased	Increased	None	Increased	Heterogeneous uptake on scan
Toxic Nodule	Decreased	Increased	None	Increased	Intense uptake in hot nodule on scan with no uptake in the rest of the gland
THYROIDITIS					
Subacute, Silent, Postpartum	Decreased	Increased	Up to 50% of cases	Decreased (becomes increased once entering hypothyroid phase, when TSH rises)	In classical subacute painful thyroiditis, ESR increased
EXTRATHYROIDAL SOURCES OF THYROID HORMONE					
Endogenous (struma ovariae, ovarian teratoma, metastatic follicular carcinoma)	Decreased	Increased	None	Decreased	
Exogenous (drugs)	Decreased	Increased (T ₄ would be decreased if taking T ₃)	None	Decreased	

Table 17. Differential Diagnosis of Thyrotoxicosis (continued)

Disorder	TSH	Free T ₄ /T ₃	Thyroid Antibodies	RAIU	Other
EXCESSIVE THYROID STIMULATION					
Pituitary thyrotrophoma	Increased	Increased	None	Increased	
Pituitary thyroid hormone receptor resistance	Increased	Increased	None	Increased	
Increased hCG (e.g. pregnancy)	Decreased	Increased	None	Increased DO NOT DO THIS TEST IN PREGNANCY	

Clinical Features**Table 18. Clinical Features of Thyrotoxicosis**

General	Fatigue, heat intolerance, irritability, fine tremor
CVS	Tachycardia, atrial fibrillation, palpitations Elderly patients may have only cardiovascular symptoms, commonly new onset atrial fibrillation
GI	Weight loss with increased appetite, thirst, increased frequency of bowel movements (hyperdefecation)
Neurology	Proximal muscle weakness, hypokalemic periodic paralysis (more common in Asians)
GU	Oligomenorrhea, amenorrhea, decreased fertility
Dermatology	Fine hair, skin moist and warm, vitiligo, soft nails with onycholysis (Plummer's nails), palmar erythema, pruritis Graves' disease: clubbing (acropachy), pretibial myxedema (rare)
MSK	Decreased bone mass, proximal muscle weakness
Hematology	Graves' disease: leukopenia, lymphocytosis, splenomegaly, lymphadenopathy (occasionally)
Eye	Graves' disease: lid lag, retraction, proptosis, diplopia, decreased acuity, puffiness, conjunctival injection

Treatment

- thionamides: PTU or MMI; MMI recommended (except in first trimester pregnancy)
- β -blockers for symptom control
- radioactive iodine thyroid ablation for Graves' disease
- surgery in the form of hemi, sub-total, or complete thyroidectomy

**Signs and Symptoms of HYPERthyroidism**

Tremor
Heart rate up
Yawning (fatigued)
Restlessness
Oligomenorrhea/amenorrhea
Intolerance to heat
Diarrhea
Irritability
Sweating
Muscle wasting/weight loss

**Caution with Thionamides**

These drugs are effective in controlling hyperthyroidism and induce permanent remission in 20-30% of patients with Graves' disease. They inhibit thyroid hormone synthesis. They are most often employed to achieve a euthyroid state before definitive treatment. Adverse effects include teratogenicity, agranulocytosis, hepatotoxicity, and ANCA-positive vasculitis.

**Graves' Disease****Definition**

- an autoimmune disorder characterized by autoantibodies to the TSH receptor that leads to hyperthyroidism

Epidemiology

- most common cause of thyrotoxicosis
- occurs at any age with peak in 3rd and 4th decade
- F>M = 7:1, 1.5-2% of U.S. women
- familial predisposition: 15% of patients have a close family member with Graves' disease and 50% have family members with positive circulating antibodies
- association with HLA B8 and DR3
- may be associated with other inherited autoimmune disorders (e.g. pernicious anemia, Hashimoto's disease)

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- autoimmune disorder due to a defect in T-suppressor cells
- B lymphocytes produce TSI that binds and stimulates the TSH receptor and stimulates the thyroid gland
- immune response can be triggered by postpartum state, iodine excess, lithium therapy, viral or bacterial infections, glucocorticoid withdrawal
- ophthalmopathy (thyroid associated orbitopathy) a result of increased tissue volume due to inflammation and accumulation of glycosaminoglycans, stimulated by TSI, that increase osmotic pressure within the orbitis leads to fluid accumulation and displacement of the eye ball forward
- dermopathy may be related to cutaneous glycosaminoglycan deposition

Clinical Features

- signs and symptoms of thyrotoxicosis
- diffuse thyroid goiter \pm thyroid bruit secondary to increased blood flow through the gland
- ophthalmopathy: proptosis, diplopia, conjunctival injection, corneal abrasions, periorbital puffiness, lid lag, decreased visual acuity if Graves' (plus signs of hyperthyroidism: lid retraction, characteristic stare)

**Graves' Ophthalmopathy****NO SPECS (in order of changes usually)**

No signs
Only signs: lid lag, lid retraction
Soft tissue: periorbital puffiness, conjunctival injection, chemosis
Proptosis/exophthalmos
Extraocular (diplopia)
Corneal abrasions (since unable to close eyes)
Sight loss

- dermatopathy (rare): pretibial myxedema (thickening of dermis that manifests as *non-pitting* edema)
- acropachy: clubbing and thickening of distal phalanges

Investigations

- low TSH
- increased free T_4 (and/or increased T_3)
- positive for TSI
- increased radioactive iodine (I^{131}) uptake
- homogeneous uptake on thyroid scan (only do this test in the presence of nodule)

Treatment

- thionamides
 - propylthiouracil (PTU) or methimazole (MMI)
 - inhibit thyroid hormone synthesis by inhibiting peroxidase-catalyzed reactions, thereby inhibiting organification of iodide, blocking the coupling of iodotyrosines
 - PTU also inhibits peripheral deiodination of T_4 to T_3
 - continue treatment until remission occurs (20-40% of patients achieve spontaneous remission at 6-18 mo of treatment)
 - small goiter and recent onset are good indicators for long-term remission with medical therapy
 - major side effects: hepatitis, agranulocytosis, and fever/arthritis
 - minor side effects: rash
 - iodinated contrast agents: sodium ipodate and iopanoic acid can inhibit conversion of T_4 to T_3 and are especially effective in combination with MMI
 - MMI preferred vs. PTU due to longer duration of action (once daily for most), more rapid efficacy, and lower incidence of side effects
 - MMI contraindicated in pregnancy (teratogenic), use PTU
- symptomatic treatment with β -blockers
- thyroid ablation with radioactive ^{131}I if PTU or MMI trial does not produce disease remission
 - high incidence of hypothyroidism after ^{131}I requiring lifelong thyroid hormone replacement
 - contraindicated in pregnancy
 - may worsen ophthalmopathy
- subtotal or total thyroidectomy (indicated rarely for large goiters, suspicious nodule for CA, if patient is intolerant to thionamides and refusing RAI ablation)
 - risks include hypoparathyroidism and vocal cord palsy
- ophthalmopathy/orbitopathy
 - smoking cessation is most important
 - prevent drying
 - high dose prednisone in severe cases
 - orbital radiation, surgical decompression

Prognosis

- course involves remission and exacerbation unless gland is destroyed by radioactive iodine or surgery
- lifetime follow-up needed
- risk of relapse is 37%, 21%, 6% in thionamides, radioiodine ablation, and surgery groups, respectively



Radioiodine Therapy for Graves' Disease and the Effect on Ophthalmopathy: A Systematic Review

Clin Endocrinol 2008;69:943-950

Purpose: To assess whether radioiodine therapy (RAI) for Graves' disease (GD) is associated with increased risk of ophthalmopathy compared with antithyroid drugs (ATDs) or surgery. To assess the efficacy of glucocorticoid prophylaxis in the prevention of occurrence or progression of Graves' ophthalmopathy (GO), when used with RAI.

Study Selection: Randomized controlled trials regardless of language or publication status.

Results: RAI was associated with an increased risk of GO compared with ATD (Relative Risk (RR) 4.23, 95% confidence interval (CI): 2.04-8.77) but compared with thyroidectomy, there was no statistically significant increased risk (RR 1.59, 95% CI 0.89-2.81). The risk of severe GO was also increased with RAI compared with ATD (RR 4.35, 95% CI 1.28-14.73). Prednisolone prophylaxis for RAI was highly effective in preventing the progression of GO in patients with pre-existing GO (RR 0.03; 95% CI 0.00-0.24). The use of adjunctive ATD with RAI was not associated with any significant benefit on the course of GO.

Conclusions: RAI therapy for GD is associated with a small but definite increased risk of development or worsening of GO compared with ATDs. Steroid prophylaxis is beneficial for patients with pre-existing GO.



Other Medications Used in the Treatment of Graves'

Glucocorticoids have been useful in the treatment of severe Graves' hyperthyroidism and thyroid storm, by inhibiting the conversion of peripheral T_4 to T_3

Lithium is also used to treat Graves' hyperthyroidism; it acts by blocking thyroid hormone release, but its toxicity has limited its use in practice

Subacute Thyroiditis (Thyrotoxic Phase)

Definition

- acute inflammatory disorder of the thyroid gland characterized by an initial thyrotoxic state followed by hypothyroidism eventually followed by euthyroidism in most cases
- two subtypes: painful and painless

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- acute inflammation of the thyroid gland characterized by giant cells and lymphocytes
- disruption of thyroid follicles by inflammatory process results in the release of stored hormone rather than excessive production of new thyroid hormone
- painful = viral (usually preceded by URTI), De Quervain's (granulomatous thyroiditis)
- painless = postpartum, auto-immune, lymphocytic
 - occurs in 5-10% of postpartum mothers and is symptomatic in 1/3 of patients

Clinical Features

- two forms
 - painful ("De Quervain's") thyroid, ears, jaw, and occiput
 - painless ("Silent")

- fever and malaise may be present, especially in De Quervain's
- postpartum: thyrotoxicosis 2-3 mo postpartum with a subsequent hypothyroid phase at 4-8 mo postpartum
- may be mistakenly diagnosed as postpartum depression

Laboratory Investigations

- initial elevated free T_4 , T_3 , low TSH, RAIU markedly reduced
- marked elevation of ESR in painful variety only
- as disease progresses values consistent with hypothyroidism may appear

Treatment

- painful – high dose NSAIDs, prednisone may be required for severe pain, fever, or malaise
- iodinated contrast agents (e.g. iopanoic acid, ipodate) to inhibit peripheral conversion of T_4 to T_3
- β -adrenergic blockade is usually effective in reversing most of the hypermetabolic and cardiac symptoms in both subtypes
- if symptomatically hypothyroid, may treat short-term with thyroxine

Prognosis

- full recovery in most cases, but permanent hypothyroidism in 10% of painless thyroiditis
- postpartum: most resolve spontaneously without need for supplementation, however may recur with subsequent pregnancies

Toxic Adenoma/Toxic Multinodular Goiter

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- autonomous thyroid hormone production from a functioning adenoma that is hypersecreting T_3 and T_4
- may be singular (toxic adenoma) or multiple (toxic multinodular goiter [Plummer's disease])

Clinical Features

- goiter with adenomatous changes
- tachycardia, heart failure, arrhythmia, weight loss, nervousness, weakness, tremor, and sweats
- seen most frequently in elderly people, often with presentation of atrial fibrillation

Investigations

- low TSH, high T_3 and T_4
- thyroid scan with increased uptake in nodule(s) and suppression of the remainder of the gland

Treatment

- initiate therapy with PTU or MMI to attain euthyroid state
- use high dose radioactive iodine (I^{-131}) to ablate hyperfunctioning nodules
- β -blockers often necessary for symptomatic treatment prior to definitive therapy
- surgical excision may also be used as 1st line treatment

Thyrotoxic Crisis/Thyroid Storm

Definition

- acute exacerbation of all of the symptoms of thyrotoxicosis presenting in a life-threatening state secondary to uncontrolled hyperthyroidism – medical emergency
- rare, but serious with mortality rate between 20-30%

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- often precipitated by infection, trauma, or surgery in a hyperthyroid patient

Differential Diagnosis

- sepsis, pheochromocytoma, malignant hyperthermia, drug overdose, neuroleptic malignant syndrome

Clinical Features

- hyperthyroidism
- extreme hyperthermia, tachycardia, vomiting, diarrhea, vascular collapse, hepatic failure with jaundice, and confusion
- tachyarrhythmia, CHF, shock
- mental status changes ranging from delirium to coma

Laboratory Investigations

- increased free T_3 and T_4 , undetectable TSH
- \pm anemia, leukocytosis, hyperglycemia, hypercalcemia, elevated LFTs

General Measures

- fluids, electrolytes, and vasopressor agents should be used as indicated
- a cooling blanket and acetaminophen can be used to treat the pyrexia
- propranolol or similar agents for beta-adrenergic blockade is used, which additionally causes decreased peripheral conversion of $T_4 \rightarrow T_3$
 - use with caution in CHF patients as it may worsen condition

Specific Measures

- PTU is the anti-thyroid drug of choice and is used in high doses
- Give iodide, which acutely inhibits the release of thyroid hormone, 1 h after the first dose of PTU is given
 - Sodium iodide 1 gm IV drip over 12h q12h
 - OR
 - Lugol's solution 2-3 drops q8h
 - OR
 - Potassium iodide (SSKI) 5 drops q8h
- dexamethasone 2-4 mg IV q6h for the first 24-48 h lowers body temperature and inhibits peripheral conversion of $T_4 \rightarrow T_3$

Prognosis

- probably <20% mortality rate if rapidly recognized and treated

Hypothyroidism

Definition

- clinical syndrome caused by cellular responses to insufficient thyroid hormone production

Epidemiology

- 2-3% of general population
- F:M = 10:1
- 10-20% of women over age 50 have subclinical hypothyroidism (normal T_4 , TSH mildly elevated)
- iodine deficiency most common cause worldwide, but not in North America

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- primary hypothyroidism (90%)
 - inadequate thyroid hormone production secondary to intrinsic thyroid defect
 - iatrogenic: post-ablative (^{131}I or surgical thyroidectomy)
 - autoimmune: Hashimoto's thyroiditis, chronic thyroiditis, idiopathic, burnt out Graves'
 - hypothyroid phase of subacute thyroiditis
 - drugs: goitrogens (iodine), PTU, MMI, lithium
 - infiltrative disease (progressive systemic sclerosis, amyloid)
 - iodine deficiency
 - congenital (1/4,000 births)
 - neoplasia
- secondary hypothyroidism: pituitary hypothyroidism
 - insufficiency of pituitary TSH
- tertiary hypothyroidism: hypothalamic hypothyroidism
 - decreased TRH from hypothalamus (rare)
- peripheral tissue resistance to thyroid hormone (Refetoff syndrome)

Table 19. Interpretation of Serum TSH and Free T_4 in Hypothyroidism

	Serum TSH	Free T_4
Overt Primary Hypothyroidism	Increased	Decreased
Subclinical Primary Hypothyroidism	Increased	Normal
Secondary Hypothyroidism	Decreased or not appropriately elevated	Decreased



Thyroid Hormone Replacement for Subclinical Hypothyroidism

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2007;3:CD003419

Purpose: To assess the effects of thyroid hormone replacement for subclinical hypothyroidism.

Study Selection: RCTs comparing thyroid hormone replacement with placebo in adults with subclinical hypothyroidism. Minimum duration of follow-up was 1 mo.

Results: No trial assessed (cardiovascular) mortality or morbidity. Seven studies evaluated symptoms, mood, and quality of life with no statistically significant improvement. One study showed a statistically significant improvement in cognitive function. Six studies assessed serum lipids, there was a trend for reduction in some parameters following levothyroxine replacement. Some echocardiographic parameters improved after levothyroxine replacement therapy, like myocardial relaxation. Only four studies reported adverse events with no statistically significant differences between groups.

Conclusions: In current RCTs, levothyroxine replacement therapy for subclinical hypothyroidism did not result in improved survival or decreased cardiovascular morbidity. Data on health-related quality of life and symptoms did not demonstrate significant differences between intervention groups. Some evidence indicates that levothyroxine replacement improves some parameters of lipid profiles and left ventricular function.



Signs and Symptoms of Hypothyroidism

HIS FIRM CAP

Hypoventilation
Intolerance to cold
Slow HR
Fatigue
Impotence
Renal impairment
Menorrhagia/amenorrhea
Constipation
Anemia
Paresthesia

Clinical Features

Table 20. Clinical Features of Hypothyroidism

General	Fatigue, cold intolerance, slowing of mental and physical performance, hoarseness, macroglossia
CVS	Pericardial effusion, bradycardia, hypotension, worsening CHF + angina, hypercholesterolemia, hyperhomocysteinemia, myxedema heart
Respiratory	Decreased exercise capacity, hypoventilation secondary to weak muscles, decreased pulmonary responses to hypoxia, sleep apnea due to macroglossia
GI	Weight gain despite poor appetite, constipation
Neurology	Paresthesia, slow speech, muscle cramps, delay in relaxation phase of deep tendon reflexes ("hung reflexes"), carpal tunnel syndrome, asymptomatic increase in CK, seizures
GU	Menorrhagia, amenorrhea, impotence
Dermatology	Puffiness of face, periorbital edema, cool and pale, dry and rough skin, hair dry and coarse, eyebrows thinned (lateral 1/3), discoloration (carotenemia)
Hematology	Anemia: 10% pernicious due to presence of anti-parietal cell antibodies with Hashimoto's thyroiditis

Treatment

- L-thyroxine (dose range: 0.05-0.2 mg PO OD ~1.6 µg/kg/d)
- elderly patients and those with CAD: start at 0.025 mg daily and increase gradually every 6 wk (start low, go slow)
- after initiating L-thyroxine, TSH needs to be evaluated in 6 wk; dose is adjusted until TSH returns to normal reference range
- once maintenance dose achieved, follow-up TSH with patient annually
- secondary/tertiary hypothyroidism
 - monitor via measurement of free T₄ (TSH is unreliable in this setting)

CONGENITAL HYPOTHYROIDISM

- see [Pediatrics, P29](#)



Hashimoto's Thyroiditis

- most common form of primary hypothyroidism in North America
- chronic autoimmune thyroiditis characterized by both cellular and humoral factors in the destruction of thyroid tissue
- two major forms: goitrous and atrophic; both forms share same pathophysiology but differ in the extent of lymphocytic infiltration, fibrosis, and thyroid follicular cell hyperplasia
- goitrous variant usually presents with a rubbery goiter and euthyroidism, then hypothyroidism becomes evident
 - associated with fibrosis
- atrophic variant patients are hypothyroid from the start
 - associated with thyroid lymphoma

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- defect in clone of T-suppressors leads to cell-mediated destruction of thyroid follicles
- B lymphocytes produce antibodies against thyroid components including thyroglobulin, thyroid peroxidase, TSH receptor, Na⁺/I symporter

Risk Factors

- female gender
- genetic susceptibility: increased frequency in patients with Down's syndrome, Turner's syndrome, certain HLA alleles, cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4 (CTLA-4)
- family Hx or personal Hx of other autoimmune diseases
- cigarette smoking
- high iodine intake
- stress and infection

Investigations

- high TSH, low T₄ (not necessary to measure T₃ as it will be low as well)
- presence of thyroid peroxidase and thyroglobulin antibodies in serum

Treatment

- if hypothyroid, replace with L-thyroxine (analog of T₄)

Myxedema Coma

Definition

- severe hypothyroidism complicated by trauma, sepsis, cold exposure, MI, inadvertent administration of hypnotics or narcotics, and other stressful events – medical emergency!
- rare, high level of mortality when it occurs (up to 60%, despite therapy)

Clinical Features

- hallmark symptoms of decreased mental status and hypothermia; hyponatremia, hypotension, hypoglycemia, bradycardia, hypoventilation, and generalized edema often present

Investigations

- decreased T_4 , increased TSH, decreased glucose
- check ACTH and cortisol for evidence of adrenal insufficiency

Treatment

- aggressive treatment required
- ABCs: ICU admission
- corticosteroids (for risk of concomitant adrenal insufficiency): hydrocortisone 100 mg q8h
- L-thyroxine 0.2-0.5 mg IV loading dose, then 0.1 mg IV OD until oral therapy tolerated; also consider T_3 therapy
- supportive measures: mechanical ventilation, fluids, vasopressor drugs, passive rewarming, IV dextrose
- monitor for arrhythmia

Sick Euthyroid Syndrome

Definition

- changes in circulating thyroid hormones amongst patients with serious illness, trauma, or stress
- not due to intrinsic thyroid or pituitary disease
- initially low free T_3 may be followed by low TSH and if severe illness low free T_4
- with recovery of illness, TSH may overshoot and become transiently high

Pathophysiology

- abnormalities in SES include alterations in
 - peripheral transport and metabolism of thyroid hormone
 - regulation of TSH secretion
 - thyroid function itself
 - peripheral conversion of T_4 to T_3

Labs

- initially decreased free T_3 followed by decreased TSH and finally decreased free T_4

Treatment

- treat the underlying disease; thyroid hormone replacement worsens outcomes
- thyroid function tests normalize once patient is well (initially with a transient increase in TSH)

Non-Toxic Goiter

Definition

- generalized enlargement of the thyroid gland in a euthyroid individual that does not result from inflammatory or neoplastic processes

Pathophysiology

- the appearance of a goiter is more likely during adolescence, pregnancy, and lactation because of increased thyroid hormone requirements
 - early stages: goiter is usually diffuse
 - later stages: multinodular non-toxic goiter with nodule, cyst formation and areas of ischemia, hemorrhage, and fibrosis

Etiology

- iodine deficiency or excess
- goitrogens: brassica vegetables (e.g. turnip, cassava)
- drugs: iodine, lithium, para-aminosalicylic acid
- any disorder of hormone synthesis with compensatory growth
- peripheral resistance to thyroid hormone

Treatment

- remove goitrogens
- radioiodine therapy (need very high doses, low iodine uptake, used as last resort)
- suppression with L-thyroxine (rarely done)
- surgery may be necessary for severe compressive symptoms

Complications

- compression of neck structures causing stridor, dysphagia, pain, and hoarseness
- multinodular goiter may become autonomous leading to toxic multinodular goiter and hyperthyroidism

Thyroid Nodules

Definition

- clearly defined discrete mass, separated from the thyroid parenchyma
- palpable nodules are found in approximately 5% of the population
- M:F = 1:4

Etiology

- benign tumors (e.g. colloid nodule, follicular adenoma)
- thyroid malignancy
- hyperplastic area in a multinodular goiter
- cyst: true thyroid cyst, area of cystic degeneration in a multinodular goiter

Investigations

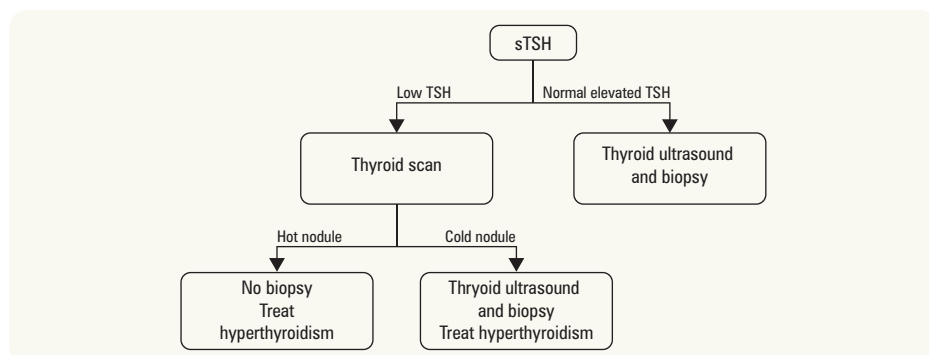


Figure 8. Approach to the evaluation of a thyroid nodule

Adapted from Dr. J Goguen, University of Toronto, MMMD 2013

Thyroid Malignancies

- see [Otolaryngology](#), OT38



Adrenal Cortex

Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone

- a polypeptide (cleaved from prohormone POMC), secreted in a pulsatile fashion from the anterior pituitary with diurnal variability (peak: 0200-0400; trough: 1800-2400)
- secretion regulated by corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) and arginine vasopressin (AVP)
- stimulates growth of adrenal cortex and release of glucocorticoids, androgens and, to a limited extent, mineralocorticoids
- some melanocyte stimulating activity

Adrenocortical Hormones

Aldosterone

- a mineralocorticoid which regulates extracellular fluid (ECF) volume through Na^+ (and Cl^-) retention and K^+ (and H^+) excretion (stimulates distal tubule Na^+/K^+ ATPase)
- regulated by the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (Figure 11)
- negative feedback to juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA) by long loop (aldosterone \rightarrow volume expansion) and short loop (angiotensin II \rightarrow peripheral vasoconstriction)

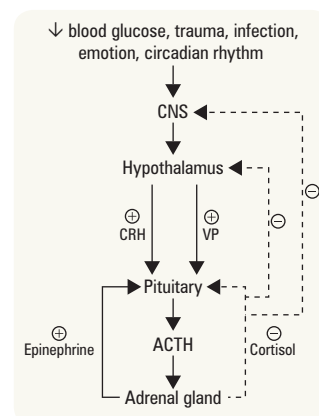


Figure 9. Regulation of CRH-ACTH-adrenal gland axis

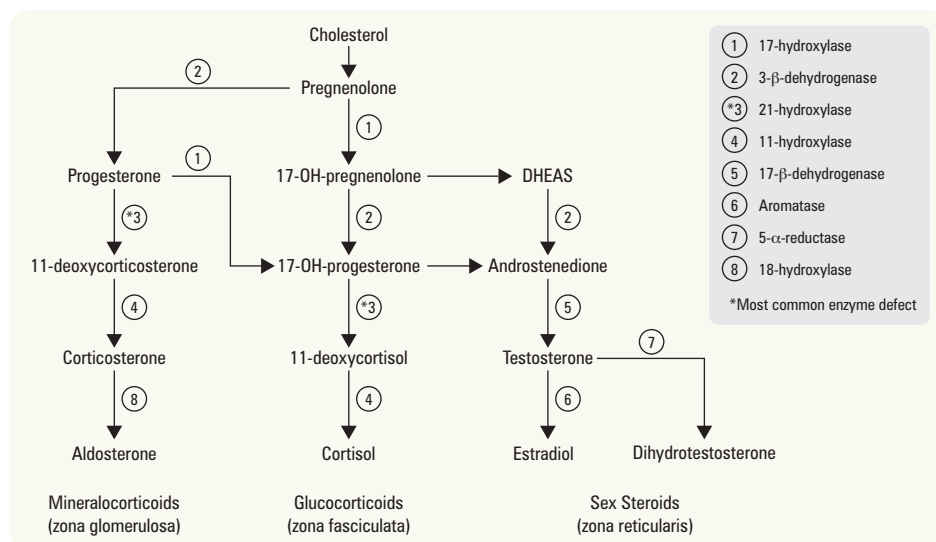


Figure 10. Pathways of major steroid synthesis in the adrenal gland and their enzymes

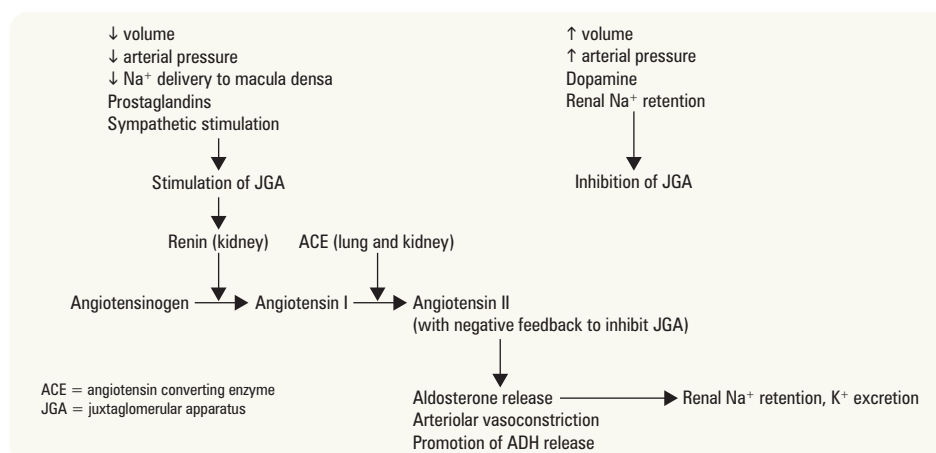


Figure 11. Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis (see [Nephrology, NP4](#))



Layers of the Adrenal Cortex

OUTSIDE

Zona Glomerulosa produces mineralocorticoids (aldosterone)

Zona Fasciculata produces glucocorticoids (cortisol)

Zona Reticularis produces androgens (DHEA, androstenedione)

INSIDE

Cortisol

- a glucocorticoid, regulated by the HPA axis
- involved in regulation of metabolism; counteracts the effects of insulin
- support blood pressure, vasomotor tone
- also involved in regulation of behavior and immunosuppression

Table 21. Physiological Effects of Glucocorticoids

Stimulatory Effects	Inhibitory Effects
Stimulate hepatic glucose production (gluconeogenesis)	Inhibit bone formation; stimulate bone resorption
Increase insulin resistance in peripheral tissues	Inhibit fibroblasts, causing collagen and connective tissue loss
Increase protein catabolism	Suppress inflammation; impair cell-mediated immunity
Stimulate leukocytosis and lymphopenia	Inhibit growth hormone axis
Increase cardiac output, vascular tone, Na ⁺ retention	Inhibit reproductive axis
Increase PTH release, urine calcium excretion	Inhibit vitamin D ₃ and inhibit calcium uptake

Androgens

- sex steroids regulated by ACTH; primarily responsible for adrenarche (growth of axillary and pubic hair)
- principal adrenal androgens are dihydroepiandrosterone (DHEA), androstenedione, and 11-hydroxyandrostenedione
- proportion of total androgens (adrenal to gonadal) increases in old age



Adrenocortical Functional Workup

STIMULATION TEST

- purpose: diagnosis of hormone deficiencies
- method: measure target hormone after stimulation with tropic (pituitary) hormone

1. Tests of Glucocorticoid Reserve

- Cosyntropin (ACTH analogue) Stimulation Test
 - give 1 µg or 250 µg cosyntropin IV, then measure plasma cortisol levels at time 0, 30, and 60 min
 - physiologic response: stimulated plasma cortisol of $>>18$ µg/dL (500 nmol/L)
 - inappropriate response: inability to stimulate increased plasma cortisol
- insulin tolerance test used to diagnose secondary or tertiary hypoadrenalism (see *Pituitary Gland*, E16)



Principles of Diagnosing Adrenal Disorders:

- Is the suspected hormone ↑ or ↓?
- Can it be suppressed/stimulated?
- Is the stimulating hormone ↑ or ↓? (primary vs. secondary)

SUPPRESSION TESTS

- purpose: diagnosis of hormone hypersecretion
- method: measure target hormone after suppression of its tropic (pituitary) hormone

1. Tests of Pituitary-Adrenal Suppressibility

- Dexamethasone (DXM) Suppression Test
 - principle: DXM suppresses pituitary ACTH → plasma cortisol should be lowered if HPA axis is normal
 - *Screening Test*: Overnight DXM Suppression Test
 - ♦ oral administration of 1 mg DXM at midnight → measure plasma cortisol levels the following day at 8 am
 - ♦ physiologic response: plasma cortisol <1.8 µg/dL (50 nmol/L), with 1.8-5.0 µg/dL (50-140 nmol/L) being a “grey zone” (cannot be certain if normal or not)
 - ♦ inappropriate response: failure to suppress plasma cortisol
 - ♦ $<20\%$ false positive results due to obesity, depression, alcohol, other medications
 - *Confirmatory Test*: Other testing is used to confirm the diagnosis, such as:
 - ♦ 24 h urine free cortisol (shows overproduction of cortisol)
 - ♦ midnight salivary cortisol (if available), shows lack of diurnal variation
 - ♦ inappropriate response: remains high (normally will be low at midnight)

2. Tests of Mineralocorticoid Suppressibility

- principle: expansion of extracellular fluid volume (ECFV) → plasma aldosterone should be lowered if HPA axis were normal
- ECFV Expansion with Normal Saline (NS)
 - IV infusion of 500 mL/h of NS for 4 h → then measure plasma aldosterone levels
 - plasma aldosterone >10 ng/dL (>277 pmol/L) is consistent with primary hyperaldosteronism, <5 ng/dL (<140 pmol/L) is normal
 - inappropriate response: failure to suppress plasma aldosterone

Mineralocorticoid Excess Syndromes

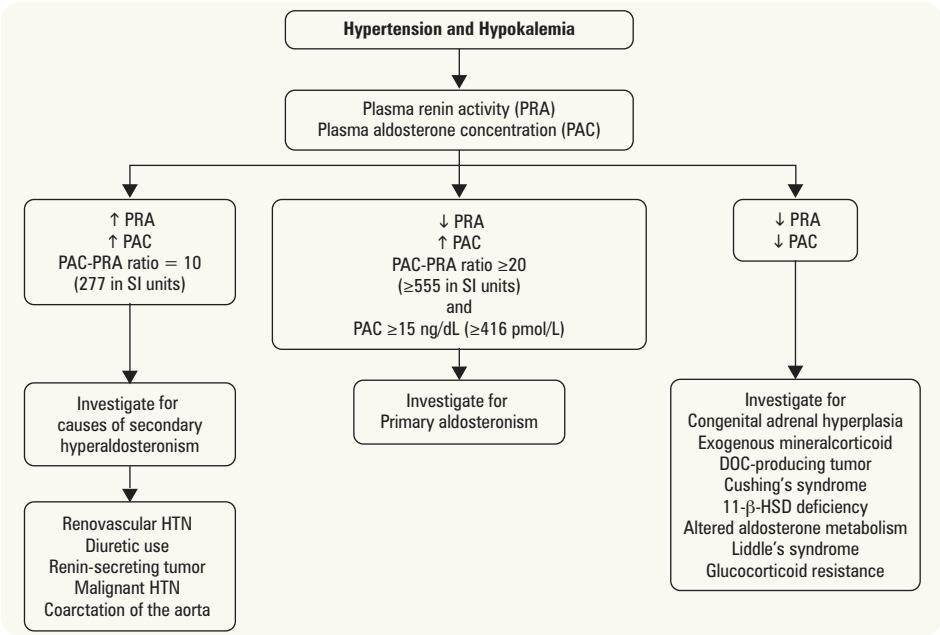


Figure 12. Approach to mineralocorticoid excess syndromes

Definition

- primary hyperaldosteronism (PH): excess aldosterone production (intra-adrenal cause)
- secondary hyperaldosteronism (SH): aldosterone production in response to excess RAAS (extra-adrenal cause)

Etiology

- primary hyperaldosteronism
 - aldosterone-producing adrenal adenoma (Conn's syndrome)
 - bilateral or idiopathic adrenal hyperplasia
 - glucocorticoid-remediable aldosteronism
 - aldosterone-producing adrenocortical carcinoma
 - unilateral adrenal hyperplasia
- secondary hyperaldosteronism

Clinical Features

- HTN
- hypokalemia (may have mild hyponatremia), metabolic alkalosis
- normal K⁺, low Na⁺ in SH (low effective circulating volume leads to ↑ ADH release) → edema
- increased cardiovascular risk: LV hypertrophy, atrial fibrillation, stroke, MI
- fatigue, weakness, paresthesia, headache; severe cases with tetany, intermittent paralysis

Diagnosis

- investigate plasma aldosterone to renin ratio in patients with HTN and hypokalemia
- confirmatory testing for PH: aldosterone suppression test (demonstrate inappropriate aldosterone secretion with ECFV expansion)
- imaging: CT adrenal glands

Table 22. Diagnostic Tests in Hyperaldosteronism

Test	Primary Hyperaldosteronism	Secondary Hyperaldosteronism
Plasma aldosterone to renin ratio (PAC/PRA)	Elevated (↑ aldo, ↓ renin)	Normal (↑ aldo, ↓ renin)
Salt loading test:		Not performed if normal PAC/PRA
A) Oral test:	↑ urine aldosterone	
B) IV saline test:	↑ plasma aldosterone	

Treatment

- inhibition action of aldosterone: spironolactone, eplerenone, triamterene, amiloride (act on sodium channels)
- surgical excision of adrenal adenoma
- secondary hyperaldosteronism: treat underlying cause

Cushing's Syndrome

Definition

- results from chronic glucocorticoid excess (endogenous or exogenous sources)

Etiology

- ACTH-dependent (85%) – bilateral adrenal hyperplasia and hypersecretion due to:
 - ACTH-secreting pituitary adenoma (Cushing's disease; 80% of ACTH-dependent)
 - ectopic ACTH-secreting tumor (e.g. small cell lung carcinoma, bronchial, carcinoid, pancreatic islet cell, pheochromocytoma, or medullary thyroid tumors)
- ACTH-independent (15%)
 - long-term use of exogenous glucocorticoids
 - primary adrenocortical tumors: adenoma and carcinoma (uncommon)
 - bilateral adrenal nodular hyperplasia

Clinical Features

- symptoms: weakness, insomnia, mood disorders, impaired cognition, easy bruising, oligo-/amenorrhea, hirsutism, and acne (ACTH dependent)
- signs: central obesity, round face, supraclavicular and dorsal fat pads, facial plethora, proximal muscle wasting, purple abdominal striae, skin atrophy, acanthosis nigricans, HTN, hyperglycemia, osteoporosis, pathologic fractures, hyperpigmentation, hyperandrogenism if ACTH-dependent

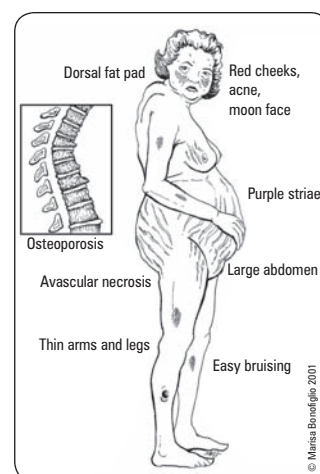


Figure 13. Clinical features of Cushing's syndrome

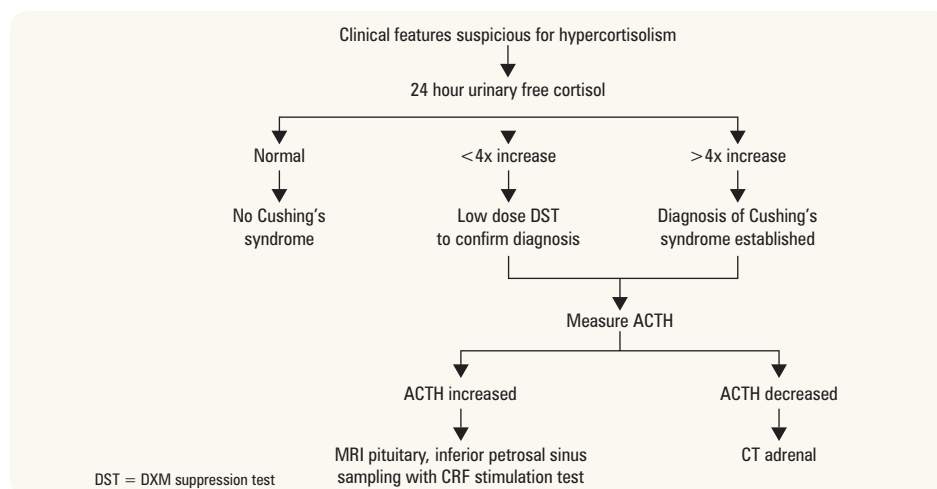


Figure 14. Hypercortisolism: algorithm for diagnosis

Treatment

- adrenal
 - adenoma: unilateral adrenalectomy (curative)
 - carcinoma: adjunctive chemotherapy often not useful (frequent metastases, poor prognosis)
 - medical treatment: mitotane, ketoconazole to reduce cortisol
- pituitary
 - trans-sphenoidal resection, with glucocorticoid supplement post-operatively
- ectopic ACTH tumor (paraneoplastic syndrome): usually bronchogenic cancer (poor prognosis)
 - surgical resection, if possible; chemotherapy/radiation for primary tumor
 - agents blocking adrenal steroid synthesis: metyrapone or ketoconazole

Congenital Adrenal Hyperplasia

- see [Pediatrics](#), P30



Hyperandrogenism

Definition

- state of having excessive secretion of androgens (DHEA, DHEA sulfate, testosterone)

Etiology and Pathophysiology

Table 23. Etiology of Hyperandrogenism

Constitutional/Familial	Family history, predisposing ethnic background Premature adrenarche
Medications Androgen-Mediated	Anabolic steroids, ACTH, androgens, progestational agents
Ovarian	PCOS Ovarian hyperthecosis Theca cell tumors Pregnancy: placental sulfatase/aromatase deficiency
Adrenal	Congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH, late-onset CAH) Tumors (adenoma, carcinoma)
Pituitary	Cushing's disease – high ACTH Hyperprolactinemia

Clinical Features

Females

- hirsutism
 - male pattern growth of androgen-dependent terminal body hair in women: back, chest, upper abdomen, face, linea alba
 - Ferriman-Gallwey scoring system is used to quantify severity of hirsutism
- virilization
 - masculinization: hirsutism, temporal balding, clitoral enlargement, deepening of voice, acne
 - increase in musculature
- defeminization
 - loss of female secondary sex characteristics (i.e. amenorrhea, ↓ breast size, infertility)

Males

- minimal effects on hair, muscle mass, etc.
- inhibition of gonadotropin secretion may cause reduction in: testicular size, testicular testosterone production, and spermatogenesis

Investigations

- testosterone, DHEA-S as a measure of adrenal androgen production
- LH/FSH (commonly in PCOS >2.5)
- 17-OH progesterone, elevated in CAH due to 21-OH deficiency
- for virilization: CT/MRI of adrenals and ovaries (identify tumors)
- if PCOS, check blood glucose, lipids, 75 g OGTT

Treatment

- discontinue causative medications
 - antiandrogens, e.g. spironolactone
- oral contraceptives (e.g. cyproterone acetate – blocks androgen receptor; found in Diane 35®)
- surgical resection of tumor
- low dose glucocorticoid ± mineralocorticoid if CAH suspected
- treat specific causative disorders, e.g. tumors, Cushing's, etc.
- cosmetic therapy (laser, electrolysis)



Conditions that do NOT Represent True Hirsutism

- Androgen-independent hair (e.g. lanugo hair)
- Drug-induced hypertrichosis (e.g. phenytoin, diazoxide, cyclosporine, minoxidil)
- Topical steroid use

Adrenocortical Insufficiency

Definition

- a state of inadequate cortisol and aldosterone production by the adrenal glands

Etiology

PRIMARY (ADDISON'S DISEASE)

Table 24. Etiology of Primary Adrenocortical Insufficiency

Autoimmune (70-90%)	Isolated adrenal insufficiency Polyglandular autoimmune syndrome type I and II Antibodies often directed against adrenal enzymes and 3 cortical zones
Infection	TB (7-20%) (most common in developing world) Fungal: histoplasmosis, paracoccidioidomycosis HIV, CMV Syphilis African trypanosomiasis
Infiltrative	Metastatic cancer (lung>stomach>esophagus>colon>breast); lymphoma Sarcoidosis, amyloidosis, hemochromatosis
Vascular	Bilateral adrenal hemorrhage Sepsis (meningococcal, <i>Pseudomonas</i>) Coagulopathy in adults or Waterhouse-Friderichsen syndrome in children Thrombosis, embolism, adrenal infarction
Drugs	Inhibit cortisol: ketoconazole, megestrol acetate Increase cortisol metabolism: rifampin, phenytoin, barbiturates, heparin, coumadin
Others	Adrenoleukodystrophy Congenital adrenal hypoplasia (impaired steroidogenesis) Familial glucocorticoid deficiency or resistance

SECONDARY ADRENOCORTICAL INSUFFICIENCY

- inadequate pituitary ACTH secretion
- multiple etiologies (see *Hypopituitarism*, E20), including withdrawal of exogenous steroids

Clinical Features

Table 25. Clinical Features of Primary and Secondary Adrenal Insufficiency (AI)

	Primary AI (Addison's or Acute AI)	Secondary AI
Skin and Mucosa	Dark (palmar crease, extensor surface)	Pale
Potassium	High	Normal
Sodium	Low	Normal or Low
Metabolic Acidosis	Present	Absent
Associated Diseases	Primary hypothyroidism, type 1 DM, vitiligo, neurological deficits	Central hypogonadism or hypothyroidism, growth hormone deficiency, DI, headaches, visual abnormalities
Associated Symptoms	Weakness, fatigue, weight loss, hypotension, salt craving, postural dizziness, myalgia, arthralgia GI: N/V, abdominal pain, diarrhea	Same except: NO salt craving GI less common
Diagnostic Test	Cosyntropin Stimulation Test High morning plasma ACTH	Insulin tolerance test Cosyntropin Stimulation Test Low morning plasma ACTH

Adapted from: Salvatori R. *JAMA* 2005;294:2481-2488

Treatment

- acute condition – can be life-threatening
 - IV NS in large volumes (2-3 L); add D5W if hypoglycemic from adrenal insufficiency
 - hydrocortisone 50-100 mg IV q6-8h for 24h, then gradual tapering
 - identify and correct precipitating factors
- maintenance
 - hydrocortisone 15-20 mg total daily dose, in 2-3 divided doses, highest dose in the AM
 - Florinef® (fludrocortisone, synthetic mineralocorticoid) 0.05-0.2 mg PO daily if mineralocorticoid deficient increase dose of steroids 2-3 fold for a few days during moderate-severe illness (e.g. with vomiting, fever)
 - major stress (e.g. surgery, trauma) requires 150-300 hydrocortisone IV daily divided into 3 doses
 - medical alert bracelet and instructions for emergency hydrocortisone/dexamethasone IM/SC injection

Adrenal Medulla

Catecholamine Metabolism

- catecholamines are synthesized from tyrosine in postganglionic sympathetic nerves (norepinephrine) and chromaffin cells of adrenal medulla (epinephrine)
- broken down into metanephrines and other metabolites (VMA, HVA) and excreted in urine



ABC of Adrenaline

Adrenaline activates β -receptors, increasing Cyclic AMP

Pheochromocytoma

Definition

- rare catecholamine secreting tumor derived from chromaffin cells of the sympathetic system

Epidemiology

- most commonly a single tumor of adrenal medulla
- rare cause of HTN (<0.2% of all hypertensives)

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- most cases sporadic (80%)
- familial: associated with multiple endocrine neoplasia II (MEN IIA and IIB) (50% penetrance; i.e. 50% of people with the mutation get pheochromocytoma), von Hippel-Lindau (10-20% penetrance), paraganglioma (20% penetrance), or neurofibromatosis type 1 (0.1-5.7% penetrance)
- tumors, via unknown mechanism, able to synthesize and release excessive catecholamines

Clinical Features

- 50% suffer from paroxysmal HTN; the rest have sustained HTN
- classic triad: episodic "pounding" headache, palpitations/tachycardia, diaphoresis
- other symptoms: tremor, anxiety, chest or abdominal pain, N/V, visual blurring, weight loss, polyuria, polydipsia
- other signs: orthostatic hypotension, papilledema, hyperglycemia, dilated cardiomyopathy
- symptoms may be triggered by stress, exertion, anesthesia, abdominal pressure, certain foods (especially tyramine containing foods)

Investigations

- urine catecholamines
 - increased catecholamine metabolites (metanephrines) and free catecholamines
 - plasma metanephrines if available (most sensitive)
 - ♦ cut-off values will depend on assay used
- CT abdomen
 - if negative, whole body CT and meta-iodo-benzoguanidine (MIBG) scintigraphy, Octreoscan, or MRI

Treatment

- surgical removal of tumor (curative) with careful pre- and post-operative ICU monitoring
- adequate pre-operative preparation
 - α -blockade for BP control: phenoxybenzamine (10-21 d pre-operative), IV phentolamine (perioperative, if required)
 - β -blockade for HR control once α blocked for a few days
 - metyrosine (catecholamine synthesis inhibitor) + phenoxybenzamine or prazosin
 - volume restoration with vigorous salt-loading and fluids
- rescreen urine 1-3 mo post-operatively
- screen urine in first degree relatives; genetic testing in patients <50 yr old



Pheochromocytomas 'Rule of 10s'

10% extra-adrenal
10% bilateral
10% malignant
10% familial



Classic Triad of PHEochromocytoma

Palpitations
Headache
Episodic sweating

Disorders of Multiple Endocrine Glands

Multiple Endocrine Neoplasm

- neoplastic syndromes involving multiple endocrine glands
- tumors of neuroectodermal origin
- autosomal dominant inheritance with variable penetrance
- genetic screening for RET proto-oncogene on chromosome 10 has long-term benefit in MEN II
 - early cure and prevention of medullary thyroid cancer

Table 26. MEN Classification

Type	Tissues Involved	Clinical Manifestations
MEN I (chromosome 11)		
Wermer's Syndrome	Pituitary Anterior pituitary adenoma	Headache, visual field defects. Often non-secreting but may secrete GH (acromegaly) and PRL (galactorrhea, erectile dysfunction, decreased libido, amenorrhea)
	Parathyroid Primary hyperparathyroidism from hyperplasia	Nephrolithiasis, bone abnormalities, MSK complaints, symptoms of hypercalcemia
	Entero-pancreatic endocrine Pancreatic islet cell tumors Gastrinoma Insulinomas	Epigastric pain (peptic ulcers and esophagitis) Hypoglycemia Secretory diarrhea
	Vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP)-omas Glucagonoma Carcinoid syndrome	Rash, anorexia, anemia, diarrhea, glossitis Flushing, diarrhea, bronchospasm
MEN II (chromosome 10)		
1. IIa Sipple's Syndrome	Thyroid (>90%) Medullary thyroid cancer (MTC)	Physical signs are variable and often subtle
	Adrenal medulla (40-50%) Pheochromocytoma	Neck mass or thyroid nodule; non-tender, anterior lymph nodes HTN, palpitations, headache, sweating
	Parathyroid (10-20%) 1° parathyroid hyperplasia	Symptoms of hypercalcemia
	Skin Cutaneous lichen amyloidosis	Scaly skin rash
2. Familial Medullary Thyroid Ca (a variant of IIa)	Thyroid MTC	MTC without other clinical manifestations of MEN IIa or IIb
3. IIb	Thyroid MTC	MTC: most common component, more aggressive and earlier onset than MEN IIa
	Adrenal medulla Pheochromocytoma	HTN, palpitations, headache, sweating
	Neurons Mucosal neuroma, intestinal ganglioneuromas	Chronic constipation; megacolon
	MSK	Marfanoid habitus (no aortic abnormalities)



MEN I – Wermer's Syndrome Affects the 3 Ps

Pituitary
Parathyroid
Pancreas

Investigations

- MEN I
 - laboratory
 - ♦ may consider genetic screening for MEN-1 mutation in index patients
 - if a mutation is identified, screen family members who are at risk
 - ♦ gastrinoma: elevated serum gastrin level (>200 ng/mL) after IV injection of secretin
 - ♦ insulinoma: reduced fasting blood glucose (hypoglycemia) with elevated insulin and C-peptide levels
 - ♦ glucagonoma: elevated blood glucose and glucagon levels
 - ♦ pituitary tumors: assess GH, IGF-1 and prolactin levels (for over-production), TSH, free T₄, 8 AM cortisol, LH, FSH, bioavailable testosterone or estradiol (for underproduction due to mass effect of tumor)
 - ♦ hyperparathyroidism: serum Ca²⁺ and albumin, PTH levels; bone density scan (DEXA)
 - imaging
 - ♦ MRI for pituitary tumors, gastrinoma, insulinoma
- MEN II
 - laboratory
 - ♦ genetic screening for RET mutations in all index patients
 - if a mutation is identified screen family members who are at risk
 - ♦ calcitonin levels (MTC); urine catecholamines and metanephrines (pheochromocytoma); serum Ca²⁺, albumin and PTH levels (hyperparathyroidism)
 - ♦ pentagastrin ± calcium stimulation test if calcitonin level is within reference range
 - ♦ FNA for thyroid nodules → cytology
 - imaging
 - ♦ CT or MRI of adrenal glands, metaiodobenzylguanidine (MIBG) scan for pheochromocytoma
 - ♦ octreoscan and/or radionuclide scanning for determining the extent of metastasis

Treatment

- MEN I
 - medical
 - ♦ proton pump inhibitor (PPI) for acid hypersecretion in gastrinoma
 - ♦ cabergoline or other dopamine agonists to suppress prolactin secretion
 - ♦ somatostatin for symptomatic carcinoid tumors
 - surgery for hyperparathyroidism, insulinoma, glucagonoma, pituitary tumors (if medical treatment fails for the latter)
 - ♦ trans-sphenoidal approach with prn external radiation

• MEN II

- surgery for MEN IIa with pre-operative medical therapy
 - ♦ prostaglandin inhibitors to alleviate diarrhea associated with thyroid cancer
 - ♦ α -blocker for at least 10-21 d for pheochromocytoma pre-operatively
 - ♦ hydration, calcitonin, IV bisphosphonates for hypercalcemia

Calcium Homeostasis

- normal total serum Ca^{2+} : 8.5-10.5 mg/dL (2.2-2.6 mmol/L)
- ionic/free Ca^{2+} levels: 4.6-5.25 mg/dL (1.15-1.31 mmol/L)
- serum Ca^{2+} is about 50% protein bound (mostly albumin)
- regulated mainly by two factors: parathyroid hormone (PTH) and vitamin D
- actions mainly on three organs: GI tract, bone, and kidney

Table 27. Major Regulators in Calcium Homeostasis

Major Regulators	Source	Regulation	Net Effect
PTH	Parathyroid glands	Stimulated by low serum Ca^{2+} and high serum PO_4^{3-} ; inhibited by chronic low serum Mg^{2+} , high serum Ca^{2+} , and calcitriol	$\uparrow \text{Ca}^{2+}$ \uparrow Calcitriol $\downarrow \text{PO}_4^{3-}$
Calcitriol (1,25-(OH) $_2$ D $_3$)	Dietary intake Synthesized from cholesterol: UV on skin makes cholecalciferol (vitD $_3$) \rightarrow liver makes calcidiol (25-(OH)D $_3$) \rightarrow kidneys make calcitriol	Renal calcitriol production is stimulated by low serum PO_4^{3-} and PTH; inhibited by high serum PO_4^{3-} and calcitriol in negative feedback	$\uparrow \text{Ca}^{2+}$ $\uparrow \text{PO}_4^{3-}$
Calcitonin	Thyroid C cells	Stimulated by pentagastrin (GI hormone) and high serum Ca^{2+} ; inhibited by low serum Ca^{2+}	$\downarrow \text{Ca}^{2+}$ (in pharmacologic doses) $\downarrow \text{PO}_4^{3-}$
Mg^{2+}	Major intracellular divalent cation	See section on <i>Magnesium</i> (E42)	Cofactor for PTH secretion
PO_4^{3-}	Intracellular anion found in all tissues	See section on <i>Phosphate</i> (E41)	$\downarrow \text{Ca}^{2+}$



Pseudohypercalcemia: increased protein binding leading to an elevation in serum total Ca^{2+} without a rise in the ionized/free form, e.g. hyperalbuminemia from severe dehydration



Primary Hyperparathyroidism: Increased PTH secretion commonly due to parathyroid adenoma, lithium therapy; less often parathyroid carcinoma or parathyroid hyperplasia

Secondary Hyperparathyroidism: Partial resistance to PTH action leads to parathyroid gland hyperplasia and increased PTH secretion, often in patients with renal failure and osteomalacia (due to low or low normal serum calcium levels)

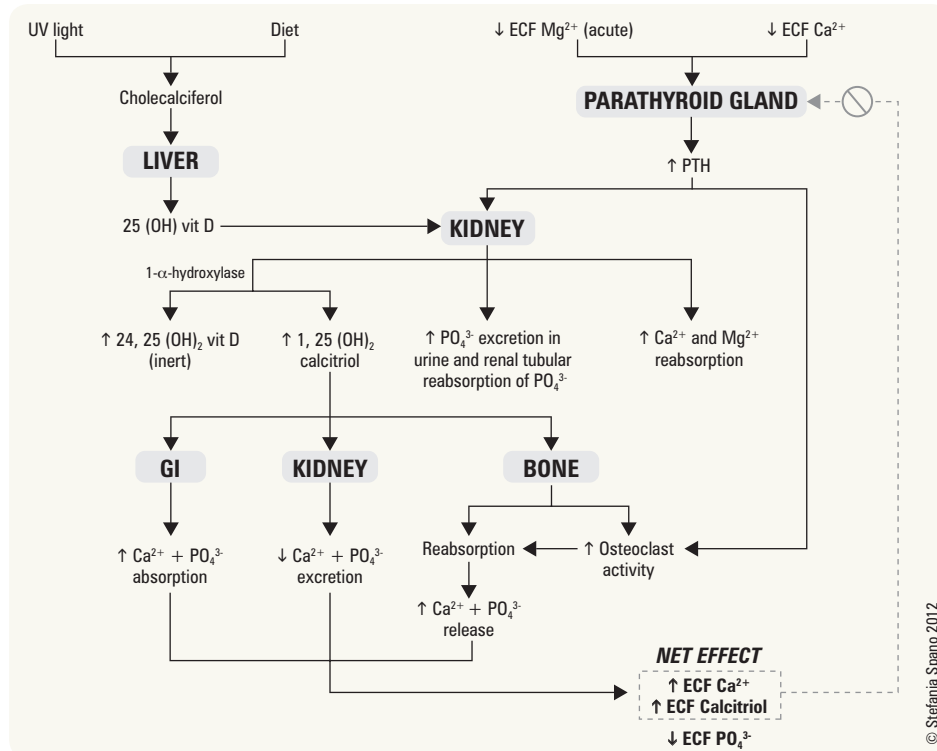
Tertiary Hyperparathyroidism: Irreversible clonal outgrowth of parathyroid glands, usually in long-standing inadequately treated chronic renal failure on dialysis



Primary Hyperparathyroidism is the most common cause of hypercalcemia in healthy outpatients. Most commonly related to a solitary adenoma or less commonly multiple gland hyperplasia. Surgical excision acts as a definitive treatment and is recommended for patients who are symptomatic. For mild asymptomatic disease medial surveillance may be appropriate with annual serum calcium, creatinine, and BMD.

For asymptomatic patients surgery is recommended for those who meet ≥ 1 of the following criteria:

- Serum calcium concentration more than 1.0 mg/dL (0.25 mmol/L) above the upper limit of normal
- Creatinine clearance < 60 mL/min
- BMD T-score < -2.5 at hip, spine, or distal radius, and/or previous fragility fracture
- Age < 50 yr



© Stefania Spano 2012

Figure 15. Parathyroid hormone (PTH) regulation

Hypercalcemia

Definition

- total corrected serum $\text{Ca}^{2+} > 10.5 \text{ mg/dL}$ (2.6 mmol/L) OR ionized $\text{Ca}^{2+} > 5.4 \text{ mg/dL}$ (1.35 mmol/L)

Approach to Hypercalcemia

1. Is the patient hypercalcemic? (correct for albumin – see sidebar)
2. Is the PTH high/normal or low?
3. If PTH is low, is phosphate high/normal or low? If phosphate is high/normal is the level of vitamin D metabolites high or low?



Corrected Ca^{2+} (mmol/L) = measured $\text{Ca}^{2+} + 0.02 (40 - \text{albumin})$

For every decrease in albumin by 10, increase in Ca^{2+} by 0.2

Benign (less likely malignant): $\text{Ca}^{2+} < 2.75 \text{ mmol/L}$ (11 mg/dL)

Pathologic (more likely malignant): $\text{Ca}^{2+} > 3.25 \text{ mmol/L}$ (13 mg/dL)

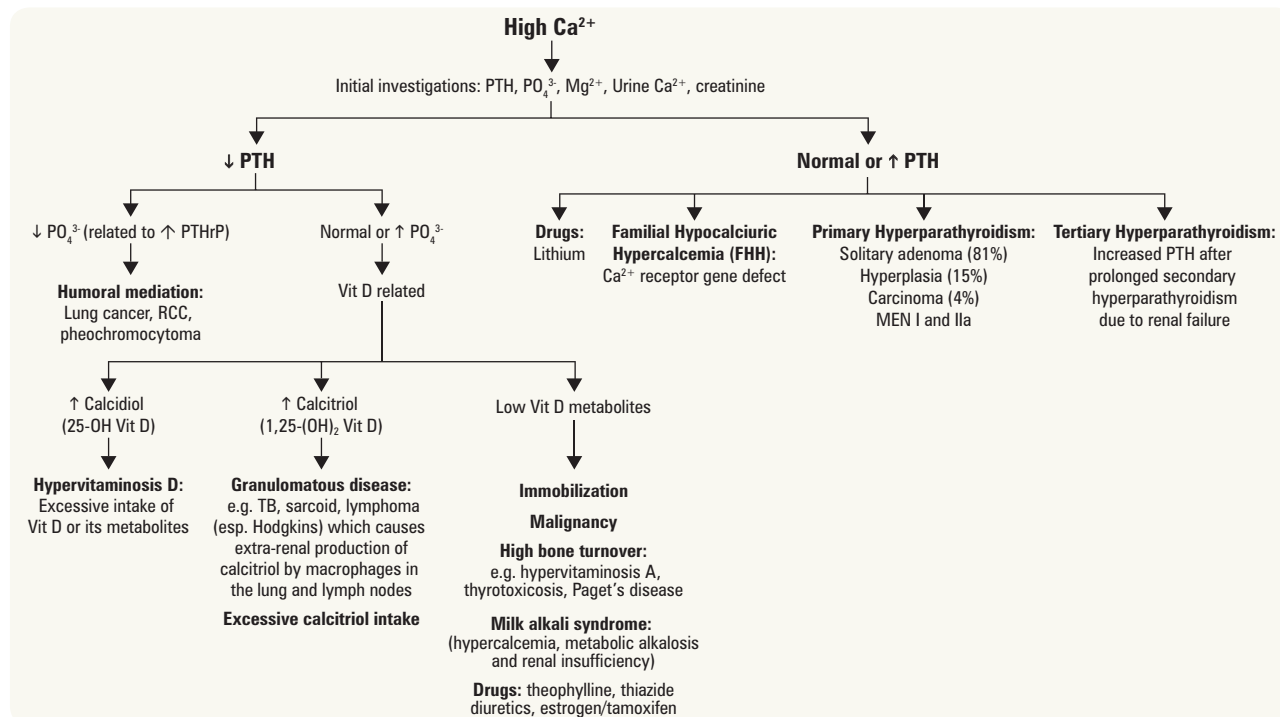


Figure 16. Differential diagnosis of hypercalcemia

Clinical Features

- symptoms depend on the absolute Ca^{2+} value and the rate of its rise (may be asymptomatic)

Table 28. Symptoms of Hypercalcemia

Cardiovascular	GI	Renal	Rheumatological	MSK	Psychiatric	Neurologic
HTN Arrhythmia Short QT Deposition of Ca^{2+} on valves, coronary arteries, myocardial fibers	Constipation Anorexia Nausea Vomiting (groans) PUD pancreatitis	Polyuria (Nephrogenic DI) Polydipsia Nephrolithiasis (stones) Renal failure (irreversible)	Gout Pseudogout Chondrocalcinosis	Weakness Bone pain (bones)	$> 12 \text{ mg/dL}$ (3 mmol/L) Increased alertness Anxiety Depression Cognitive dysfunction Organic brain syndromes $> 16 \text{ mg/dL}$ (4 mmol/L) Psychosis (moans)	Hypotonia Hyporeflexia Myopathy Paresis

** Hypercalcemic crisis (usually $> 4 \text{ mmol/L}$ or 16 mg/dL): primary symptoms include oliguria/anuria and mental status changes (including somnolence and eventually coma) → this is a medical emergency and should be treated immediately!

Treatment

- treatment depends on the Ca^{2+} level and the symptoms
- treat acute, symptomatic hypercalcemia aggressively



The symptoms and signs of hypercalcemia include: "Bones, stones, groans, and psychic overtones"



The most common cause of hypercalcemia in hospital is malignancy-associated hypercalcemia

- Usually occurs in the later stages of disease
- Most commonly seen in lung, renal, breast, ovarian, and squamous tumors, as well as lymphoma and multiple myeloma

Mechanisms:

- Secretion of parathyroid hormone-related protein (PTHrP) which mimics PTH action by preventing renal calcium excretion and activating osteoclast-induced bone resorption
- Cytokines in multiple myeloma
- Calcitriol production by lymphoma
- Osteolytic bone metastases direct effect
- Excess PTH in parathyroid cancer

Table 29. Treatment of Acute Hypercalcemia/Hypercalcemic Crisis

Increase Urinary Ca²⁺ Excretion	Isotonic saline (4-5 L) over 24 h ± loop diuretic (e.g. furosemide) but only if hypervolemic Calcitonin: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4 IU/kg IM/SC q12h • 8 IU/kg IM/SC q6h • Only works for 48 h • Rapid onset within 4-6 h
Diminish Bone Resorption	Bisphosphonates (treatment of choice) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inhibits osteoclastic bone resorption and promotes renal excretion of calcium • Acts rapidly but often transient response (decreased by 1.2-2.0 mg/dL [0.3-0.5 mmol/L] beginning within 4-6 h) max effect usually in 7 d • Combination of calcitonin and steroids may prolong reduction in calcium • Tachyphylaxis may occur • Indicated in malignancy-related hypercalcemia (IV pamidronate is most commonly used, zoledronic acid also now used in CA patient) Mithramycin (rarely used) – effective when patient cannot tolerate large fluid load <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dangerous – hematotoxic and hepatotoxic
Decrease GI Ca²⁺ Absorption	Corticosteroids in hypervitaminosis D and hematologic malignancies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anti-tumor effects → decreased calcitriol production by the activated mononuclear cells in lung and lymph node • Slow to act (5-10 d); need high dose
Dialysis	Treatment of last resort <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Indication: severe malignancy-associated hypercalcemia and renal insufficiency or heart failure

**Differential Diagnosis of Hypercalcemia**

- **Primary hyperparathyroidism**
- **Malignancy: hematologic, humoral, skeletal metastases (>90% from 1 or 2)**
- Renal disease: tertiary hyperparathyroidism
- Drugs: calcium carbonate, milk alkali syndrome, thiazide, lithium, theophylline, vitamin A/D intoxication
- Familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia
- Granulomatous disease: sarcoidosis, TB, Hodgkin's lymphoma
- Thyroid disease: thyrotoxicosis
- Adrenal disease: adrenal insufficiency, pheochromocytoma
- Immobilization

**Watch Out For:**

- Volume depletion via diuresis
- Arrhythmias

**Acute Management of Hypercalcemia/Hypercalcemic Crisis**

- Volume expansion (e.g. NS IV 300-500 cc/h): initial therapy
- Calcitonin: transient, partial response
- Bisphosphonate: treatment of choice
- Corticosteroid: most useful in vit D toxicity, granulomatous disease, some malignancies
- Saline diuresis + loop diuretic (for volume overload): temporary measure



Hypomagnesemia can impair PTH secretion and action

**Differential Diagnosis of Tetany**

- Hypocalcemia
- Metabolic alkalosis (with hyperventilation)
- Hypokalemia
- Hypomagnesemia

**Signs and Symptoms of Acute Hypocalcemia**

- **Paresthesias:** perioral, hands, and feet
- **Chvostek's sign:** percussion of the facial nerve just anterior to the external auditory meatus elicits ipsilateral spasm of the orbicularis oculi or orbicularis oris muscles
- **Trousseau's sign:** inflation of a blood pressure cuff above systolic pressure for 3 min elicits carpal spasm and paresthesia

Hypocalcemia

Definition

- total corrected serum Ca²⁺ <8.5 mg/dL (2.2 mmol/L)

Table 30. Clinical Features of Hypocalcemia

Acute Hypocalcemia	Chronic Hypocalcemia
Paresthesia	CNS: lethargy, seizures, psychosis, basal ganglia calcification, Parkinson's, dystonia, hemiballismus, papilledema, pseudotumor cerebri
Laryngospasm (with stridor)	CVS: prolonged QT interval → Torsades de pointes (ventricular tachycardia)
Hyperreflexia	GI: steatorrhea
Tetany	ENDO: impaired insulin release
Chvostek's sign (tap CN VII)	SKIN: dry, scaling, alopecia, brittle and transversely fissured nails, candidiasis, abnormal dentition
Trousseau's sign (carpal spasm)	OCULAR: cataracts
ECG changes	MSK: generalized muscle weakness and wasting
Delirium	
Psychiatric Sx: emotional instability, anxiety, and depression	

Approach to Hypocalcemia

1. Is the patient hypocalcemic?
2. Is the PTH high or low?
3. If PTH is high, is phosphate low or normal?
4. Is the Mg²⁺ level low?

Approach to Treatment

- correct underlying disorder
- mild/asymptomatic (ionized Ca²⁺ >3.2 mg/dL, 0.8 mmol/L)
 - treat by increasing dietary Ca²⁺ by 1000 mg/d
 - calcitriol 0.25 µg/d
- acute/symptomatic hypocalcemia (ionized Ca²⁺ <2.8 mg/dL, 0.7 mmol/L)
 - immediate treatment required
 - IV calcium gluconate 1-2 g over 10-20 min followed by slow infusion if necessary
 - goal is to raise Ca²⁺ to low normal range (8.0-8.4 mg/dL, 2.0-2.1 mmol/L) to prevent symptoms but allow maximum stimulation of PTH secretion
- if PTH recovery not expected, requires long-term therapy with calcitriol and calcium
- **do not correct hypocalcemia if asymptomatic and suspected to be transient**

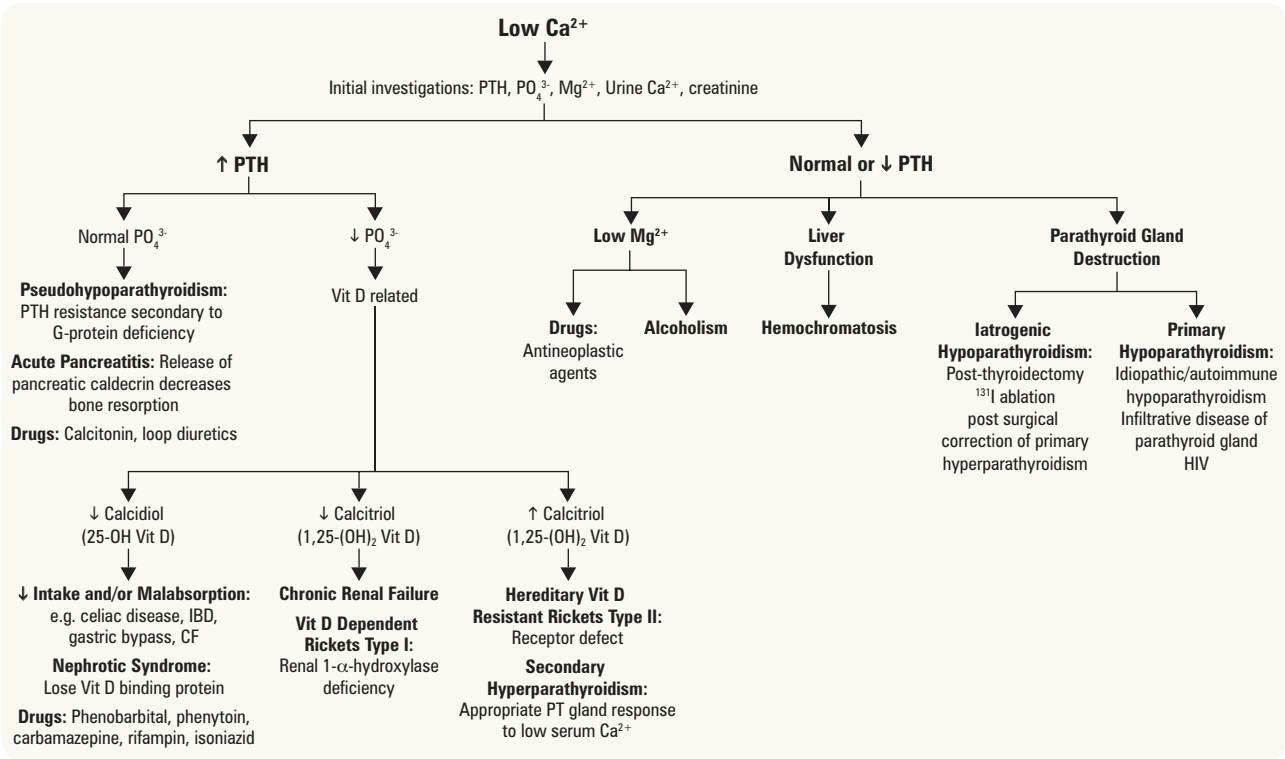


Figure 17. Etiology and clinical approach to hypocalcemia

Hyperphosphatemia

Definition

- serum phosphate >4.1 mg/dL (1.45 mmol/L)

Table 31. Etiology of Hyperphosphatemia

Increased Phosphate Load	Reduced Renal Clearance	Pseudohyperphosphatemia
GI intake (rectal enema, GI bleeding)	Acute/chronic renal failure	Hyperglobulinemia
IV phosphate load (K-Phos®, blood transfusion)	Hypoparathyroidism	Hyperlipidemia
Endogenous phosphate (tumor lysis syndrome, rhabdomyolysis, hemolysis, lactic and ketoacidosis)	Acromegaly	Hyperbilirubinemia
	Tumor calcinosis (ability of kidney to specifically clear phosphate is defective)	

Clinical Features

- non-specific, include ectopic calcification, renal osteodystrophy

Treatment

- acute: hemodialysis if symptomatic
- chronic: low PO₄³⁻ diet, phosphate binders (e.g. CaCO₃ with meals)

Hypophosphatemia

Definition

- serum phosphate <2.4 mg/dL (0.85 mmol/L)

Table 32. Etiology of Hypophosphatemia

Inadequate Intake	Renal Losses	Excessive Skeletal Mineralization	Shift into ICF
Starvation	Hyperparathyroidism	Osteoblastic metastases	Recovery from metabolic acidosis
Malabsorption (diarrhea, steatorrhea)	Diuretics	Post parathyroidectomy (referred to as 'hungry bone syndrome')	Respiratory alkalosis
Antacid use	X-linked or AD hypophosphatemic rickets		Starvation refeeding (stimulated by insulin)
Alcoholism	Fanconi syndrome		
	Multiple myeloma		



Symptoms usually present when phosphate <1.0 mg/dL (0.32 mmol/L)

Treat asymptomatic patients if phosphate <2.0 mg/dL (0.64 mmol/L)

Clinical Features

- non-specific (CHF, coma, hypotension, weakness, defective clotting)

Treatment

- treat underlying cause
 - Oral PO_4^{3-} : 2-4 g/d divided bid-qid (start at 1 g/d to minimize diarrhea)
 - IV PO_4^{3-} : only for severely symptomatic patients or inability to tolerate oral therapy

Hypermagnesemia

Definition

- serum magnesium $>2.1\text{ mg/dL}$ (0.85 mmol/L)

Etiology

- AKI/CRF
- Mg^{2+} -containing antacids or enemas
- IV administration of large doses of MgSO_4 (e.g. for preeclampsia; see [Obstetrics, OB16](#))

Clinical Features

- drowsiness, hyporeflexia, respiratory depression, heart block, cardiac arrest

Treatment

- discontinue Mg^{2+} -containing products
- IV calcium (Mg^{2+} -antagonist) for acute reversal of magnesium toxicity
- dialysis if renal failure



Hypomagnesemia

Definition

- serum magnesium $<1.7\text{ mg/dL}$ (0.70 mmol/L)

Etiology

- GI losses
 - starvation/malabsorption
 - vomiting/diarrhea
 - alcoholism
 - acute pancreatitis
- excess renal loss
 - 2° hyperaldosteronism due to cirrhosis and CHF
 - hyperglycemia
 - hypokalemia
 - hypercalcemia
 - loop and thiazide-type diuretics
 - nephrotoxic medications
 - proton-pump inhibitors

Clinical Features

- seizures, paresis, Chvostek and Trousseau signs, ECG changes (widened QRS, prolonged PR, T-wave abnormalities), and arrhythmias including Torsades de pointes

Treatment

- treat underlying cause
- Mg^{2+} IM/IV; cellular uptake of Mg^{2+} is slow, therefore repletion requires sustained correction
- discontinue diuretics
 - in patients requiring diuretics, use a K^+ -sparing diuretic to minimize magnesuria



You will be unable to correct hypokalemia or hypocalcemia without first supplementing magnesium if patient hypomagnesemic

Metabolic Bone Disease



Osteoporosis

Definition

- a condition characterized by decreased bone mass and microarchitectural deterioration of bone tissue with a consequent increase in bone fragility and susceptibility to fracture
- bone mineral density (BMD) ≥ 2.5 standard deviations below the peak bone mass for young adults (i.e. T-score ≤ -2.5)
- osteopenia: BMD with T-score between -1.0 and -2.5

ETIOLOGY AND PATHOPHYSIOLOGY**Primary Osteoporosis**

- primary type 1: most common in post-menopausal women, due to decline in estrogen, worsens with age
- primary type 2: occurs after age 75, seen in females and males at 2:1 ratio, possibly due to zinc deficiency



Online Clinical Tools
CAROC.pdf
FRAX
www.shef.ac.uk/FRAX/tool.aspx

Secondary Osteoporosis

- gastrointestinal diseases
 - gastrectomy
 - malabsorption (e.g. celiac disease)
 - chronic liver disease
- bone marrow disorders
 - multiple myeloma
 - lymphoma
 - leukemia
- endocrinopathies
 - Cushing's syndrome
 - hyperparathyroidism
 - hyperthyroidism
 - premature menopause
 - DM
- malignancy
 - secondary to chemotherapy
 - myeloma
- drugs
 - corticosteroid therapy
 - phenytoin
 - chronic heparin therapy
 - androgen deprivation therapy
 - aromatase inhibitors
- other
 - rheumatologic disorders
 - ♦ rheumatoid arthritis
 - ♦ SLE
 - ♦ ankylosing spondylitis
 - renal disease
 - poor nutrition
 - immobilization

Clinical Features

- commonly asymptomatic
- height loss due to collapsed vertebrae
- fractures: most commonly in hip, vertebrae, humerus, and wrist
 - fragility fractures: fracture with fall from standing height
 - Dowager's hump: collapse fracture of vertebral bodies in mid-dorsal region
 - x-ray: vertebral compression and crush fractures, wedge fractures, "codfishing" sign (weakening of subchondral plates and expansion of intervertebral discs)
- pain, especially backache, associated with fractures

Approach to Osteoporosis

1. Assess risk factors for osteoporosis on history and physical
2. Decide if patient requires BMD testing with dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA): men and women ≥ 65 yr or younger if presence of risk factors (Table 33)
3. Initial investigations
 - all patients with osteoporosis: calcium corrected for albumin, CBC, creatinine, ALP, TSH
 - also consider serum and urine protein electrophoresis, celiac workup, and 24 h urinary Ca^{2+} excretion to rule out additional secondary causes
 - **25-OH-Vitamin D level should only be measured after 3-4 mo of adequate supplementation and should not be repeated if an optimal level ≥ 75 nmol/L is achieved**
 - lateral thoracic and lumbar x-ray if clinical evidence of vertebral fracture
4. Assess 10 yr fracture risk by combining BMD result and risk factors (only if ≥ 50 yr)
 - 1) WHO Fracture Risk Assessment Tool (FRAX)
 - 2) Canadian Association of Radiologists and Osteoporosis Canada Risk Assessment Tool (CAROC)
 - ♦ approach to management guided by 10 yr risk stratification into low, medium, high risk
5. For all patients being assessed for osteoporosis, encourage appropriate lifestyle changes (see Table 35)

Table 33. Osteoporosis Risk Stratification

Low Risk	Unlikely to benefit from pharmacotherapy; encourage lifestyle changes Reassess risk in 5 yr
10 yr fracture risk <10%	
Medium Risk	Discuss patient preference for management and consider additional risk factors Factors that warrant consideration for pharmacological therapy: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Additional vertebral fracture(s) identified on vertebral fracture assessment (VFA) or lateral spine x-ray • Previous wrist fracture in individuals ≥ 65 or with T-score ≤ -2.5 • Lumbar spine T-score much lower than femoral neck T-score • Rapid bone loss • Men receiving androgen-deprivation therapy for prostate cancer • Women receiving aromatase-inhibitor therapy for breast cancer • Long-term or repeated systemic glucocorticoid use (oral or parenteral) that does not meet the conventional criteria for recent prolonged systemic glucocorticoid use • Recurrent falls (defined as falling 2 or more times in the past 12 mo) • Other disorders strongly associated with osteoporosis
10 yr fracture risk 10-20%	
	Repeat BMD and reassess risk every 1-3 yr initially
High Risk	Start pharmacotherapy
10 yr fracture risk >20%; OR Prior fragility fracture of hip or spine; OR More than one fragility fracture	



Corticosteroid Therapy is a Common Cause of Secondary Osteoporosis

Individuals receiving ≥ 7.5 mg of prednisone daily for over 3 mo should be assessed for bone-sparing therapy
Mechanism: increased resorption + decreased formation



Use of Calcium or Calcium in Combination with Vitamin D Supplementation to Prevent Fractures and Bone Loss in People Aged ≥ 50 Yr: A Meta-Analysis

Lancet 2007;370:657-666

Purpose: To determine whether supplementation with calcium or calcium in combination with vitamin D reduces fractures of all types and percentage change of bone-mineral density from baseline.

Study Selection: RCTs that recruited people aged ≥ 50 yr.

Results: In trials that reported fracture as an outcome (17 trials, $n=52,625$), treatment was associated with a 12% risk reduction in fractures of all types (risk ratio 0.88, 95% CI 0.83-0.95; $p=0.0004$). In trials that reported bone-mineral density as an outcome (23 trials, $n=41,419$), the treatment was associated with a reduced rate of bone loss of 0.54% (0.35-0.73; $p<0.0001$) at the hip and 1.19% (0.76-1.61%; $p<0.0001$) in the spine. The fracture risk reduction was significantly greater (24%) in trials in which the compliance rate was high ($p<0.0001$). The treatment effect was better with calcium doses of 1200 mg or more (0.80 vs. 0.94; $p=0.006$), and with vitamin D doses of 800 IU or more (0.84 vs. 0.87; $p=0.03$).

Conclusion: Evidence supports the use of calcium, or calcium in combination with vitamin D supplementation, in the preventive treatment of osteoporosis in people aged 50 yr or older. For best therapeutic effect, use doses of 1200 mg of calcium, and 800 IU of vitamin D.

Table 34. Indications for BMD Testing

Older Adults (age ≥50 yr)	Younger Adults (age <50 yr)
All women and men age ≥65 yr Menopausal women, and men aged 50-64 yr with clinical risk factors for fracture: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Fragility fracture after age 40• Prolonged glucocorticoid use• Other high-risk medication use (aromatase inhibitors, androgen deprivation therapy)• Parental hip fracture• Vertebral fracture or osteopenia identified on x-ray• Current smoking• High alcohol intake• Low body weight (<60 kg) or major weight loss (>10% of weight at age 25 yr)• Rheumatoid arthritis• Other disorders strongly associated with osteoporosis: primary hyperparathyroidism, type 1 DM, osteogenesis imperfecta, uncontrolled hyperthyroidism, hypogonadism or premature menopause (<45 yr), Cushing's disease, chronic malnutrition or malabsorption, chronic liver disease, COPD and chronic inflammatory conditions (e.g. inflammatory bowel disease)	Fragility fracture <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Prolonged use of glucocorticoids• Use of other high-risk medications (aromatase inhibitors, androgen deprivation therapy, anticonvulsants)• Hypogonadism or premature menopause• Malabsorption syndrome• Primary hyperparathyroidism• Other disorders strongly associated with rapid bone loss and/or fracture



Clinical Signs of Fractures or Osteoporosis

- Height loss >3 cm (Sn 92%)
- Weight <51 kg
- Kyphosis (Sp 92%)
- Tooth count <20 (Sp 92%)
- Grip strength
- Armspan-height difference >5 cm (Sp 76%)
- Wall-occiput distance >0 cm (Sp 87%)
- Rib-pelvis distance ≤2 finger breadth (Sn 88%)

Treatment of Osteoporosis

Table 35. Treatment of Osteoporosis in Women and Men

Treatment for Both Men and Women	
Lifestyle	Diet: Elemental calcium 1000-1200 mg/d; Vit D 1000 IU/d Exercise: 3x30 min weight-bearing exercises/wk Cessation of smoking, reduce caffeine intake Stop/avoid osteoporosis-inducing medications
Drug Therapy	
Bisphosphonate: inhibitors of osteoclast binding	1st line in prevention of hip, nonvertebral, and vertebral # (Grade A): alendronate, risedronate, zoledronic acid 2nd line (Grade B): etidronate
RANKL Inhibitors	Denosumab: 1st line in prevention of hip, nonvertebral, vertebral # (Grade A)
Parathyroid Hormone	YES fragility #: 18-24 mo duration
Calcitonin (2nd line): osteoclast receptor binding	YES fragility #: Calcitonin 200 IU nasally OD with Calcitriol 0.25 µg bid
Treatment Specific to Post-Menopausal Women	
SERM (selective estrogen-receptor modulator): agonistic effect on bone but antagonistic effect on uterus and breast	Raloxifene: 1st line in prevention of vertebral # (Grade A) <ul style="list-style-type: none">• +ve: prevents osteoporotic # (Grade A to B evidence), improves lipid profile, decreased breast ca risk• -ve: increased risk of DVT/PE, stroke mortality, hot flashes, leg cramps
HRT: combined estrogen + progesterone (see Gynecology, GY32)	1st line in prevention of hip, nonvertebral, and vertebral # (Grade A) For most women, risks > benefits <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Combined estrogen/progestin prevents hip, vertebral, total #• Increased risks of breast cancer, cardiovascular events, and DVT/PE



Alendronate for the Primary and Secondary Prevention of Osteoporotic Fractures in Postmenopausal Women
Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2008;1:CD001155

Etidronate for the Primary and Secondary Prevention of Osteoporotic Fractures in Postmenopausal Women
Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2008;(1):CD003376

Risedronate for the Primary and Secondary Prevention of Osteoporotic Fractures in Postmenopausal Women
Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2008;(1):CD004523

Purpose: To assess the efficacy of three bisphosphonates in the primary and secondary prevention of osteoporotic fractures in postmenopausal women.

Study Selection: Women receiving at least one yr of bisphosphonates for postmenopausal osteoporosis were compared to those receiving placebo or concurrent calcium/vitamin D or both. The outcome was fracture incidence.

Results: Levels of evidence: <http://www.cochranemsk.org/review/writing/>.
%RRR and %ARR for 5 yr fracture incidence reduction.

Alendronate (10 mg/d)

1° Prevention – Vertebral (Gold)	45% RRR, 2% ARR
1° Prevention – Hip	Not significant
1° Prevention – Wrist	Not significant
2° Prevention – Vertebral (Gold)	45% RRR, 6% ARR
2° Prevention – Hip (Gold)	53% RRR, 1% ARR
2° Prevention – Wrist (Gold)	50% RRR, 2% ARR

Etidronate (400 mg/d)

1° Prevention – Vertebral	Not significant
1° Prevention – Hip	Not significant
1° Prevention – Wrist	Not significant
2° Prevention – Vertebral (Silver)	47% RRR, 5% ARR
2° Prevention – Hip	No benefit
2° Prevention – Wrist	No benefit

Risedronate (5 mg/d)

1° Prevention – Vertebral	Not significant
1° Prevention – Hip	Not significant
1° Prevention – Wrist	Not significant
2° Prevention – Vertebral (Gold)	39% RRR, 5% ARR
2° Prevention – Hip (Silver)	26% RRR, 1% ARR
2° Prevention – Wrist	Not significant

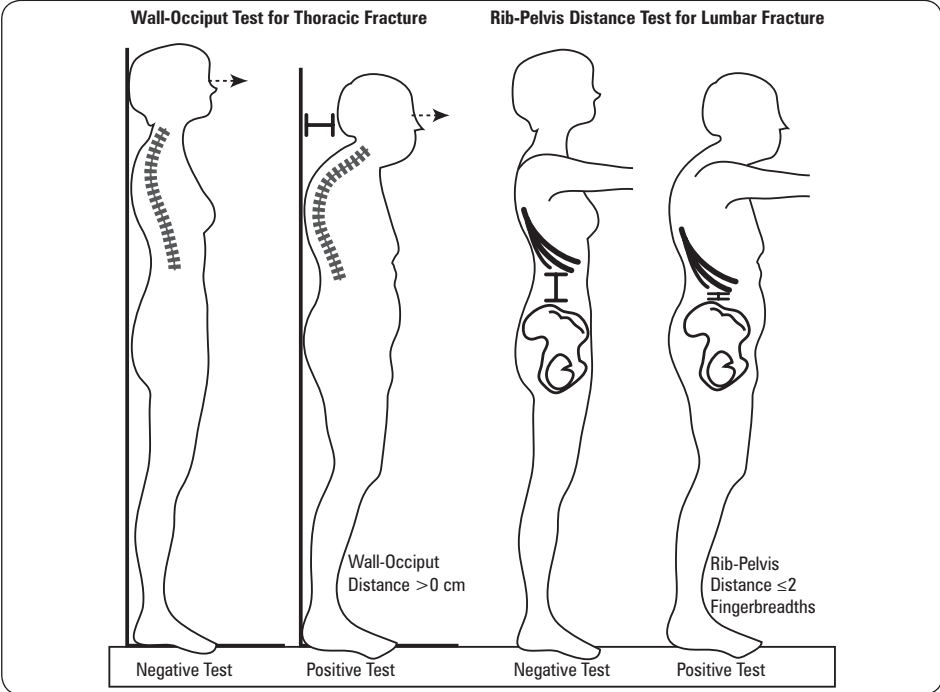


Figure 18. Physical examination test

Osteomalacia and Rickets

- **rickets:** osteopenia with disordered calcification leading to a higher proportion of osteoid (unmineralized) tissue *prior* to epiphyseal closure (in childhood)
- **osteomalacia:** osteopenia with disordered calcification leading to a higher proportion of osteoid (unmineralized) tissue *after* epiphyseal closure (in adulthood)

Etiology and Pathophysiology

Vitamin D Deficiency

- deficient uptake or absorption
 - nutritional deficiency
 - malabsorption: post-gastrectomy, small bowel disease (e.g. Celiac sprue), pancreatic insufficiency
- defective 25-hydroxylation
 - liver disease
 - anticonvulsant therapy
- loss of vitamin D binding protein
 - nephrotic syndrome
- defective 1- α -25 hydroxylation
 - hypoparathyroidism
 - renal failure
- pathophysiology: leads to secondary hyperparathyroidism and hypophosphatemia

Mineralization Defect

- abnormal matrix
 - osteogenesis imperfecta
 - fibrogenesis imperfecta
 - axial osteomalacia
- enzyme deficiency
 - hypophosphatasia (inadequate ALP bioactivity)
- presence of calcification inhibitors
 - bisphosphonates, aluminum, high dose fluoride, anticonvulsants



Factors Necessary for Mineralization

- Quantitatively and qualitatively normal osteoid formation
- Normal concentration of calcium and phosphate in ECF
- Adequate bioactivity of ALP
- Normal pH at site of calcification
- Absence of inhibitors of calcification

Table 36. Clinical Presentations of Rickets and Osteomalacia

Rickets	Osteomalacia
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Skeletal pain and deformities, bow legged • Fracture susceptibility • Weakness and hypotonia • Disturbed growth • Ricketic rosary (prominent costochondral junctions) • Harrison's groove (indentation of lower ribs) • Hypocalcemia 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not as dramatic • Diffuse skeletal pain • Bone tenderness • Fractures • Gait disturbances (waddling) • Proximal muscle weakness • Hypotonia

Investigations

Table 37. Laboratory Findings in Osteomalacia and Rickets

Disorder	Serum Phosphate	Serum Calcium	Serum ALP	Other Features
Vitamin D deficiency	Decreased	Decreased to normal	Increased	Decreased calcitriol
Hypophosphatemia	Decreased	Normal	Decreased to normal	
Proximal RTA	Decreased	Normal	Normal	Associated with hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis
Conditions associated with abnormal matrix formation	Normal	Normal	Normal	

- radiologic findings
 - pseudofractures, fissures, narrow radiolucent lines – thought to be healed stress fractures or the result of erosion by arterial pulsation
 - loss of distinctness of vertebral body trabeculae; concavity of the vertebral bodies
 - changes due to secondary hyperparathyroidism: subperiosteal resorption of the phalanges, bone cysts, resorption of the distal ends of long bones
 - others: bowing of tibia, coxa profundus hip deformity
- bone biopsy: usually not necessary but considered the gold standard for diagnosis

Treatment

- definitive treatment depends on the underlying cause
- vitamin D supplementation
- PO_4^{3-} supplements if low serum PO_4^{3-} ; Ca^{2+} supplements for isolated calcium deficiency
- bicarbonate if chronic metabolic acidosis

Renal Osteodystrophy

- changes to mineral metabolism and bone structure secondary to chronic kidney disease
- represents a mixture of four types of bone disease:
 - osteomalacia: low bone turnover combined with increased unmineralized bone (osteoid)
 - adynamic bone disease: low bone turnover due to excessive suppression of parathyroid gland
 - osteitis fibrosa cystica: increased bone turnover due to secondary hyperparathyroidism
 - mixed uremic osteodystrophy: both high and low bone turnover, characterized by marrow fibrosis and increased osteoid
- metastatic calcification secondary to hyperphosphatemia may occur

Pathophysiology

- metabolic bone disease secondary to chronic renal failure
- combination of hyperphosphatemia (inhibits $1,25(\text{OH})_2\text{-Vit D}$ synthesis) and loss of renal mass (reduced $1\text{-}\alpha\text{-hydroxylase}$)

Clinical Features

- soft tissue calcifications → necrotic skin lesions if vessels involved
- osteodystrophy → generalized bone pain and fractures
- pruritus
- neuromuscular irritability and tetany may occur
- radiologic features of osteitis fibrosa cystica, osteomalacia, osteosclerosis, osteoporosis

Investigations

- serum Ca^{2+} corrected for albumin, PO_4^{3-} , PTH, ALP, ± imaging (x-ray, BMD), ± bone biopsy

Treatment

- prevention
 - maintenance of normal serum Ca^{2+} and PO_4^{3-} by restricting PO_4^{3-} intake to 1 g OD
 - Ca^{2+} supplements; PO_4^{3-} binding agents (calcium carbonate, aluminum hydroxide)
 - vitamin D with close monitoring to avoid hypercalcemia and metastatic calcification

Paget's Disease of Bone

Definition

- a metabolic disease characterized by excessive bone destruction and repair

Epidemiology

- a common disease: 5% of the population, 10% of population >80 yr old

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- postulated to be related to a slow progressing viral infection of osteoclasts, possibly paramyxovirus
- strong familial incidence
- initiated by increased osteoclastic activity leading to increased bone resorption; osteoblastic activity increases in response to produce new bone that is structurally abnormal and fragile

Differential Diagnosis

- primary bone lesions
 - osteogenic sarcoma
 - multiple myeloma
 - fibrous dysplasia
- secondary bone lesions
 - osteitis fibrosa cystica
 - metastases

Clinical Features

- usually asymptomatic (routine x-ray finding or elevated ALP)
- severe bone pain (e.g. pelvis, femur, tibia) is often the presenting complaint
- skeletal deformities: bowed tibias, kyphosis, frequent fractures
- skull involvement: headaches, increased hat size, deafness
- increased warmth over involved bones due to increased vascularity
- high output CHF
- hypercalcemia with immobilization
- osteosarcoma



Comparison of a Single Infusion of Zoledronic Acid with Risedronate for Paget's Disease *NEJM* 2005;353:898-908

Study: Two identical, randomized, double-blind, actively controlled trials (combined for analysis).
Patients: 357 men and women who were ≥30 yr and had radiologically confirmed Paget's disease. All but 4 patients had alkaline phosphatase levels that were more than twice the upper limit of normal.
Intervention: One 15-min infusion of 5 mg of zoledronic acid compared with 60 d of oral risedronate (30 mg/d) with follow up at 6 mo.

Primary Outcome: Rate of therapeutic response at 6 mo, defined as a normalization of alkaline phosphatase levels or a reduction of at least 75% in the total alkaline phosphatase excess.

Results: At 6 mo, 96% of patients receiving zoledronic acid had a therapeutic response (169 of 176), as compared with 74.3% of patients receiving risedronate (127 of 171, $p < 0.001$). Alkaline phosphatase levels normalized in 88.6% of patients in the zoledronic acid group and 57.9% of patients in the risedronate group ($p < 0.001$). Zoledronic acid was associated with a shorter median time to a first therapeutic response (64 vs. 89 d, $p < 0.001$). Quality of life increased significantly from baseline at both 3 and 6 mo in the zoledronic acid group and differed significantly from those in the risedronate group at 3 mo. Pain scores improved in both groups. During post-trial follow-up (median, 190 d), 21 of 82 patients in the risedronate group had a loss of therapeutic response, as compared with 1 of 113 patients in the zoledronic acid group ($p < 0.001$).

Conclusions: A single infusion of zoledronic acid produces more rapid, more complete, and more sustained responses in Paget's disease than does daily treatment with risedronate.

Investigations

- laboratory
 - ↑↑ serum ALP (unless burnt out), Ca^{2+} normal or ↑, PO_4^{3-} normal
 - urinary hydroxyproline ↑ (indicates resorption)
- imaging
 - bone scan to evaluate the extent of disease
 - skeletal survey: involved bones are denser and expanded with cortical thickening
 - initial lesion may be destructive and radiolucent
 - multiple fissure fractures in long bones

Complications

- local
 - fractures; osteoarthritis
 - cranial nerve compression and palsies (e.g. deafness), spinal cord compression
 - osteosarcoma/sarcomatous change in 1-3%
 - indicated by marked bone pain, new lytic lesions and sudden increased ALP
- systemic
 - hypercalcemia and nephrolithiasis
 - high output CHF due to increased vascularity

Treatment

- symptomatic therapy (pain management)
- weight-bearing exercise
- adequate calcium and vitamin D intake to prevent development of secondary hyperparathyroidism
- treat medically if ALP >3x normal
 - bisphosphonates, e.g. alendronate 40 mg PO OD x 6 mo OR risedronate 30 mg PO OD x 3 mo OR zoledronic acid 5 mg IV per yr
 - calcitonin 50-100 U/d SC
- surgery for fractures, deformity, degenerative changes

Male Reproductive Endocrinology



Androgen Regulation

- negative feedback may occur by androgens directly or after conversion to estrogen
- testosterone (from Leydig cells) primarily involved in negative feedback on LH and GnRH, whereas inhibin (from Sertoli cells) suppresses FSH secretion

Tests of Testicular Function

- testicular size (lower limit = 4 cm x 2.5 cm)
- LH, FSH, total and/or bioavailable testosterone
- human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) stimulation test
 - assesses ability of Leydig cell to respond to gonadotropin
- semen analysis
 - semen volume, sperm count, morphology, and motility
- testicular biopsy
 - indicated with normal FSH and azoospermia/oligospermia

Hypogonadism and Infertility

- see [Urology, U33](#)
- deficiency in gametogenesis or testosterone production

Etiology

- causes include primary (testicular failure), secondary (hypothalamic-pituitary failure), and idiopathic
- primary hypogonadism is more common than secondary

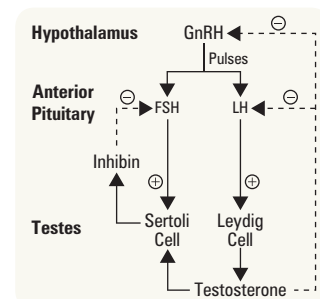


Figure 19. Hypothalmo-pituitary-gonadal axis



Table 38. Classification and Features of Hypogonadism

	Hypergonadotropic Hypogonadism (Primary Hypogonadism)	Hypogonadotropic Hypogonadism (Secondary Hypogonadism)
Definition	Primary testicular failure ↑ LH and FSH, ↑ FSH:LH ratio ↓ testosterone and sperm count	Hypothalamic-pituitary axis failure ↓ LH + FSH ↓ testosterone and sperm count
Etiology	Congenital: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chromosomal defects (Klinefelter's, Noonan) Cryptorchidism Disorders of sexual development (DSD) Bilateral anorchia (vanishing testicle syndrome) Myotonic dystrophy Mutation of FSH or LH receptor gene Disorders of androgen synthesis Germ cell defects <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sertoli cell only syndrome Leydig cell aplasia/failure Infection/Inflammation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orchitis – TB, lymphoma, mumps, leprosy Genital tract infection Physical factors <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Trauma, heat, irradiation, testicular torsion, varicocele Drugs <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Marijuana, alcohol, chemotherapy, ketoconazole, glucocorticoid, spironolactone Autoimmune (antisperm antibodies) Chronic systemic diseases (AIDS) Idiopathic	Congenital <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kallman's syndrome Prader-Willi syndrome Abnormal subunit of LH or FSH Infection <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tuberculosis, meningitis Endocrine <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adrenal androgen excess Cushing's syndrome Hypo or hyperthyroidism Hypothalamic-pituitary disease (tumor, hyperprolactinemia, hypopituitarism) Drugs <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alcohol, marijuana, spironolactone, ketoconazole, GnRH agonists, androgen/estrogen/progestin use, chronic narcotic use Chronic illness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cirrhosis, chronic renal failure, AIDS Sarcoidosis, Langerhan's cell histiocytosis, hemochromatosis Critical illness <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Surgery, MI, head trauma Obesity Idiopathic
Diagnosis	Testicular size and consistency (soft/firm) Sperm count LH, FSH, total, and/or bioavailable testosterone hCG stimulation Karyotype	Testicular size and consistency (soft/firm) Sperm count LH, FSH, total, and/or bioavailable testosterone Prolactin levels MRI of hypothalamic-pituitary region

Treatment

- testosterone replacement (improve libido, muscle mass, strength, hair growth, bone mass)
 - IM injection, transdermal testosterone patch/gel, oral
 - side effects: acne, fluid retention, erythrocytosis, sleep apnea, benign prostatic hypertrophy, uncertain effects on cardiac events/mortality in older men
 - contraindicated if history of prostate cancer, severe LUTS associated with BPH, uncontrolled or poorly controlled CHF
- GnRH agonist to restore fertility, if hypothalamic dysfunction with intact pituitary
 - administered SC in pulsatile fashion using an external pump
- hCG ± recombinant follicular stimulating hormone (rFSH) can be used to restore fertility in cases of either hypothalamic or pituitary lesions
- testicular sperm extraction (TESE) or microscopic sperm extraction (MICROTESE) – only if testicular tissues are not functioning

Other Causes of Male Infertility

- hereditary disorders: Kartagener syndrome, cystic fibrosis
- anatomy: hypospadias, retrograde ejaculation
- obstruction: vasal occlusion, vasal aplasia, vasectomy, seminal vesicle disease
- sexual dysfunction: erectile dysfunction, premature ejaculation, infrequent coitus
- surgery: TURP, radical prostatectomy, orchiectomy

DEFECTS IN ANDROGEN ACTION**Etiology**

- complete androgen insensitivity (CAIS)
- partial androgen insensitivity (PAIS)
- 5- α -reductase deficiency
- mixed gonadal dysgenesis
- defects in testosterone synthesis
- infertile male syndrome
- undervirilized fertile male syndrome

**Two Distinct Features of Primary Hypogonadism**

- The decrease in sperm count is affected to a greater extent than the decrease in serum testosterone level
- Likely to be associated with gynecomastia

**Two Features of Secondary Hypogonadism**

- Associated with an equivalent decrease in sperm count and serum testosterone
- Less likely to be associated with gynecomastia

**Approach to Male Infertility**

Infertility: failure of a couple to conceive after 12 mo of regular intercourse without use of contraception in women <35 yr of age; and after 6 mo of regular intercourse without use of contraception in women ≥35 yr

History

- Partner status re: infertility
- Length of time for attempt to conceive
- Prior successes with other partners
- Ejaculation problems
- Frequency of intercourse
- Prev Surg, Med Hx, STD Hx
- Hx orchitis? Cryptorchidism?
- Hx toxic exposure?
- Medications
- Alcohol and illicit drug use
- Heat exposure: bath, sauna, whirlpool
- Smoking

P/E

- General (height, weight, gynecomastia, masculine)
- Testicular size and consistency
- Varicocele?
- Pituitary disease?
- Thyroid disease?

Investigations

Should be considered for couples unable to conceive after 12 mo of unprotected and frequent intercourse; consider earlier evaluation if suggestive medical hx and physical, and in women ≥35 yr of age

- Semen analysis x 2 (sperm count, morphology, motility)
- Scrotal/testicular U/S (look for varicocele)
- Blood work: LH, FSH, testosterone, prolactin, thyroid function tests, DNA fragmentation of sperm, karyotype, Y chromosome deletion
- Test female partner (see [Gynecology](#), GY20)

Treatment

- No specific therapy for majority of cases
- Treat specific causes
- Consider: intrauterine insemination, IVF, therapeutic donor insemination, testicular aspiration of sperm, adoption

Clinical Features

- depends on age of onset

Table 39. Effects of Testosterone Deficiency

First Trimester in utero	Incomplete virilization of external genitalia (ambiguous genitalia) Incomplete development of Wolffian ducts to form male internal genitalia (male pseudohermaphroditism)
Third Trimester in utero	Micropenis Cryptorchidism (failure of normal testicular descent)
Prepuberty	Incomplete pubertal maturation (high pitch voice, sparse pubic + axillary hair, absence of facial hair) Eunuchoidal body habitus (greater growth of extremity long bones relative to axial bones) Poor muscle development, reduced peak bone mass
Postpuberty	Decrease in energy, mood, and libido Fine wrinkles in corners of mouth and eyes Decrease in pubic/axillary hair, hematocrit, muscle mass, strength, and BMD

Adapted from: UpToDate, 2010; Cecil's Essentials of Medicine

Treatment

- appropriate gender assignment in the newborn
- hormone replacement or supplementation
- psychological support
- gonadectomy for cryptorchidism (due to increased risk for testicular cancer)
- reduction mammoplasty for gynecomastia

Erectile Dysfunction

- see [Urology](#), U30



Gynecomastia

Definition

- true gynecomastia refers to benign proliferation of the glandular component of the male breast, resulting in the formation of a concentric, rubbery, firm mass extending from the nipple(s)
- pseudogynecomastia or lipomastia refers to enlargement of soft adipose tissue, especially seen in obese individuals and does not warrant further evaluation

Etiology

Physiologic

- puberty
- elderly (involutional)
- neonatal (maternal hormone)

Pathologic

- endocrinopathies: primary or secondary hypogonadism, hyperthyroidism, extreme hyperprolactinemia, adrenal disease
- tumors: pituitary, adrenal, testicular, breast, ectopic production of hCG
- chronic diseases: cirrhosis, renal, malnutrition (with refeeding)
- drugs: estrogens and estrogen agonists, spironolactone, ketoconazole, cimetidine, digoxin, chemotherapy, marijuana, alcohol
- congenital/genetic: Klinefelter's syndrome, androgen insensitivity
- other: idiopathic, familial

Pathophysiology

- hormonal imbalance due to increased estrogen activity (increased production, or increased availability of estrogen precursors for peripheral conversion to estrogen) or decreased androgen activity (decreased androgen production, binding of androgen to sex hormone binding globulin (SHBG), or androgen receptor blockage)

History

- recent change in breast characteristics
- trauma to testicles
- mumps
- alcohol and/or drug use
- FHx
- sexual dysfunction



Occurrence of Gynecomastia

3 Peaks	% Affected
Infancy	60-90
Puberty	4-69
Ages 50-80 yr	24-65



Causes of Gynecomastia

DOC TECH

Drugs
Other
Congenital
Tumor
Endocrine
Chronic disease

Physical Exam

- signs of feminization
- breast
 - rule out red flags suggesting breast cancer: unilateral, eccentric, hard, or fixed mass, skin dimpling or retraction, and nipple discharge or crusting
 - gynecomastia occurs concentrically around nipple, is not fixed to underlying tissue, and no discrete mass is palpable
- genito-urinary exam
- stigmata of liver or thyroid disease

Investigations

- laboratory: serum TSH, PRL, LH, FSH, testosterone, estradiol, LFTs, creatinine, hCG (if hCG is elevated need to locate the primary tumor)
- CXR and CT of chest/abdomen/pelvis (to locate neoplasm)
- testicular U/S to rule out testicular mass
- MRI of hypothalamic-pituitary region if pituitary adenoma suspected

Treatment

- initial observation for most men with gynecomastia
- medical
 - correct the underlying disorder, discontinue responsible drug
 - androgens for hypogonadism
 - anti-estrogens: tamoxifen, clomiphene
- surgical
 - usually required for macromastia; gynecomastia present for >1 yr (fibrosis is unresponsive to medication); or failed medical treatment and for cosmetic purposes

Female Reproductive Endocrinology

- see [Gynecology](#), GY4



Paraneoplastic Syndrome

- clinical syndromes involving non-metastatic systemic effects that accompany malignant disease
- triggered by antibodies against neoplasm cross-reacting with normal tissue or by production of a physiologically active substance by the neoplasm
- commonly present with cancers of lung, breast, ovaries, or lymphatic system

Table 40. Clinical Presentation

Syndrome Class	Symptoms/Syndrome	Associated Malignancies	Mechanism
Endocrine	Cushing's syndrome	Small-cell lung cancer Pancreatic carcinoma Neural tumors Thymoma	Ectopic ACTH and ACTH-like substance secretion
	SIADH	Small-cell lung cancer CNS malignancies	Antidiuretic hormone secretion
	Hypercalcemia	Lung cancer Breast carcinoma Renal cell carcinoma Multiple myeloma Ovarian carcinoma	PTH-related protein, TGF- α , TNF secretion
	Hypoglycemia	Hepatocellular carcinoma Fibrosarcoma	Insulin or insulin-like substance secretion
	Carcinoid	Pancreatic carcinoma Gastric carcinoma	Serotonin, bradykinin secretion
Neurologic	Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome (LEMS) • muscle weakness in limbs	Small-cell lung cancer	Ab interferes with ACh release
	Myasthenia gravis • fluctuating muscle weakness and fatiguability	Thymoma	Ab interferes with ACh release
	Paraneoplastic limbic encephalitis • depression, seizures, short-term memory loss	Small-cell lung cancer	Unknown
Renal	Hypokalemic nephropathy	Small-cell lung cancer	Ectopic ACTH and ACTH-like substance secretion
	Nephrotic syndrome	Lymphoma Melanomas	Immunocomplex sedimentation in nephrons
GI	Watery diarrhea	Medullary thyroid carcinomas	Prostaglandin secretion
Hematologic	Erythrocytosis	Renal cell carcinoma Hepatocellular carcinoma	EPO production
Rheumatologic	SLE	Lymphomas Lung cancer Breast carcinoma Gonadal carcinoma	Anti-nuclear Ab production
	Scleroderma	Breast carcinoma Lung cancer Uterine cancer	Anti-nuclear Ab production

Investigations

- CBC, electrolytes, creatinine, LFTs, ALP, ESR, CRP, serum/urine electrophoresis,
- serum autoantibodies, lumbar puncture
- imaging: skeletal survey, CT, MRI, PET scan
- \pm endoscopy

Treatment

- treat underlying tumor: surgery, radiation, chemotherapy
- treat immune-mediated disorder: IVIg, steroids, immunosuppressive drugs, plasmapheresis (reserved for patients with identifiable antibodies in serum)

Common Medications

Diabetes Medications

Drug Class	Mechanism of Action	Generic Drug Name	US Name	Dosing	Indications	Contraindications	Side Effects	Comments
Biguanide	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sensitizes peripheral tissues to insulin → increases glucose uptake• Decreases hepatic glucose production by stimulation of hepatic AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK)	metformin	Glucophage® Glumetza®	500 mg OD titrated to 2000 mg/d maximum	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Useful in obese type 2 DM• Improves both fasting and postprandial hyperglycemia• Also ↓ TG	ABSOLUTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Moderate to severe liver dysfunction• Moderate renal dysfunction GFR <30 mL/min• Cardiac dysfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• GI upset (abdo discomfort, bloating, diarrhea)• Lactic acidosis• Anorexia	↓ HbA1c 1.0-2.0%
Insulin Secretagogue	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Stimulates insulin release from β cells by causing K⁺ channel closure → depolarization → Ca²⁺ mediated insulin release• Use in nonobese type 2 DM	sulfonylureas: glyburide	Micronase® Glynase PreTab®	2.5-5.0 mg/d titrated to >5 mg bid Max: 20 mg/d	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Short t_{1/2} of 1 h causes brief but rapid ↑ in insulin, therefore effective for post-prandial control	ABSOLUTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Moderate to severe liver dysfunction RELATIVE (glyburide and glimepiride): <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Adjust dose in mild to moderate kidney dysfunction and avoid in severe kidney dysfunction• Avoid glyburide in the elderly INTERACTIONS: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Do not combine with a non-sulfonylurea insulin secretagogue or preprandial insulin	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Hypoglycemia• Weight gain	↓ HbA1c 1.0-2.0%
		glipizide	Diamicron® Diamicron® MR	40-160 mg bid 30-120 mg OD		ABSOLUTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Severe liver dysfunction INTERACTIONS: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Do not combine with a non-sulfonylurea or pre-prandial insulin	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Hypoglycemia• Weight gain	↓ HbA1c 1.0-1.5% for repaglinide and 0.5-1.0% for nateglinide
		glimepiride	Amaryl®	1-8 mg OD				
		non-sulfonylureas: repaglinide	GlucoNorm®	0.5-4 mg tid				
		nateglinide	Starlix®	60-120 mg tid				
Insulin Sensitizers (thiazolidinedione)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sensitizes peripheral tissues to insulin → increases glucose uptake• Decreases FFA release from adipose• Binds to nuclear receptor PPAR-γ	rosiglitazone	Avandia®	2-8 mg OD	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Rosiglitazone – indicated only in patients with type 2 DM for whom all other oral antidiabetic agents, in monotherapy or in combination, do not result in adequate glycemic control or are inappropriate due to contraindications or intolerance	ABSOLUTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• NYHA > class II CHF INTERACTIONS: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Do not combine with insulin	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Peripheral edema• CHF• Anemia• Fluid retention and CHF• Increased risk of cardiac events with rosiglitazone (requires written informed consent when prescribing)• Increased risk of bladder cancer with pioglitazone• Fractures	↓ HbA1c 1.0-1.5%
		pioglitazone	Actos®	15-45 mg OD				
α-Glucosidase Inhibitor	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• ↓ carbohydrate GI absorption by inhibiting brush border α-glucosidase	acarbose	Glucobay®	25 mg OD titrated to 100 mg tid	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• ↓ postprandial hyperglycemia	ABSOLUTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Inflammatory bowel disease• Severe liver dysfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Flatulence• Abdominal cramps• Diarrhea	↓ HbA1c 0.5-1.0%
Dipeptidyl Peptidase-IV (DPP-IV) Inhibitor	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Inhibits degradation of endogenous antihyperglycemic incretin hormones• Incretin hormones stimulate insulin secretion, inhibit glucagon release, and delay gastric emptying	sitagliptin	Januvia®	100 mg OD	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use with dose reduction in kidney dysfunction	ABSOLUTE (sitagliptin): <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Type 1 DM• DKA	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Nasopharyngitis• URTI• Headache• Pancreatitis• Stevens-Johnson syndrome	↓ HbA1c 0.5-1.0%
		saxagliptin	Onglyza™	2.5-5 mg OD		RELATIVE (sitagliptin and saxagliptin): <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use with dose reduction in kidney dysfunction		
		linagliptin	Trajenta®	5 mg OD				
Glucagon-Like Peptide (GLP)-1 Analogue	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Binds to GLP-1 receptor to promote insulin release• Insulinotropic effect suppressed as plasma glucose <4 mmol/L• Slows gastric emptying, suppresses inappropriately elevated glucagon levels• Causes β-cell regeneration and differentiation <i>in vitro</i>	Exenatide	Byetta®	5-10 µg SC bid 1 h before meals	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Personal or family history of medullary thyroid cancer (MTC)	ABSOLUTE: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Type 1 DM• DKA• Acute pancreatitis Hx RELATIVE: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Gastroparesis• ESRD	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• N/V, diarrhea• Dizziness, headache• Muscle weakness• Anti-exentide antibodies• Pancreatitis	↓ HbA1c 1.0-1.5%
		Liraglutide	Victoza®	0.6-1.8 mg OD SC				

For insulin formulations see Table 9, E9

Dyslipidemia Medications

Drug Class	Mechanism of Action	Generic Drug Name	US Name	Dosing	Indications	Contraindications	Side Effects
HMG-CoA Reductase Inhibitor	• Inhibits cholesterol biosynthesis, ↓ LDL synthesis, ↑ LDL clearance, modest ↑ HDL, limited ↓ VLDL	atorvastatin fluvastatin lovastatin pravastatin rosuvastatin simvastatin	Lipitor® Lescol® Mevacor® Pravachol® Crestor® Zocor®	10-80 mg/d 20-80 mg/d 20-80 mg/d 10-40 mg/d 5-40 mg/d 10-80 mg/d	• 1st line monotherapy • Used for ↑ LDL, ↑ TG	• Active liver disease • Persistent ↑ in AST, ALT unexplained	• GI symptoms • Rash, pruritus • ↑ liver enzymes • Myositis (↑ risk if combined with fibrates) • Rhabdomyolysis
Fibrates	• Upregulate lipoprotein lipase + apo A1, ↓ VLDL, ↓ TG, modest ↓ LDL, modest ↑ HDL	bezafibrate fenofibrate gemfibrozil	Bezalip® Lipidil® Lopid®	400 mg/d 48-200 mg/d 600-1200 mg/d	• Used for ↑ TG, hyperchylomicronemia	• Hepatic disease • Renal disease	• GI upset • Skin rashes • ↑ risk of gallstone formation • ↑ risk of rhabdomyolysis when combined with statins
Niacin	• Inhibits secretion of hepatic VLDL via lipoprotein lipase (LPL) pathway → decreased VLDL and LDL; decreased clearance of HDL	nicotinic acid	Niacor® generic niacin	0.5-2 g/d 1-3 g/d	• Used for ↑ LDL, ↑ VLDL	• Hypersensitivity • Hepatic dysfunction • Active PUD • Hyperuricemia	• Generalized flushing • Abnormal liver enzymes • Pruritus • IGT • Watch glucose control with overt DM
Bile Acid Sequestrants	• Resins that bind bile acids in intestinal lumen and prevent absorption thereby ↓ LDL	cholestyramine colestipol	Questran® Colestid®	2-24 g/d 5-30 g/d	• Used for ↑ LDL • Use as adjunct with statins or fibrates	• Complete biliary obstruction • Pregnancy, lactation • TG >3.5 mmol/L • GI motility disorder	• Constipation • Nausea • Flatulence • Bloating • Rise in TG
Cholesterol Absorption Inhibitors	• Inhibits cholesterol absorption at the small intestine brush border	ezetimibe	Zetia®	10 mg/d	• Used for ↑ LDL, apo B	• Hypersensitivity • Hepatic dysfunction • Do not combine with fibrates or bile acid resins	• Fatigue • Pharyngitis • Sinusitis • Abdominal pain • Diarrhea • Arthralgia

Thyroid Medications

Drug Class	Mechanism of Action	Generic Drug Name	US Name	Dosing	Indications	Contraindications	Side Effects
Antithyroid Agent (thionamides)	• Decreases thyroid hormone production by inhibiting iodine and peroxidase from interacting with thyroglobulin to form T ₄ and T ₃ • PTU also interferes with conversion of T ₄ to T ₃	propylthiouracil (PTU) methimazole (MMI)	Propyl-Thyracil® Tapazole®	Start 100 mg PO tid, then adjust accordingly Thyroid storm: start 200-300 PO qid, then adjust accordingly Start 5-20 mg PO OD, then adjust accordingly Up to 60 mg OD may be required	• Hyperthyroidism	• Hypersensitivity • Relative: renal failure, liver disease • PTU recommended in 1st trimester, MMI during 2nd and 3rd trimester • Lactation: safe with PTU <300 mg/day and MMI <20-30 mg/d	• N/V • Rash • Drug-induced hepatitis • Agranulocytosis • Hepatitis with PTU • Cholestasis with MMI
Thyroid Hormone	• Synthetic form of thyroxine (T ₄)	levothyroxine l-thyroxine	Synthroid® Levoxyl®	0.05-2.0 mg/d, usually 1.6x weight (kg) is dose in micrograms In elderly patients start at 0.025 mg/d	• Hypothyroidism	• Recent MI, thyrotoxicosis	• If wrong dosing: symptoms of hypothyroidism or hyperthyroidism • Skin rash from dye in pill
Antithyroid Agent Radiopharmaceutical	• Radioactive isotope of iodine that is incorporated into the thyroid gland irradiating the area and destroying local glandular tissue	sodium iodide I-131	Iodotope®	Dose corrected for 24 h radioactive iodine uptake Hyperthyroidism 4-12 mCi Thyroid Ca 50-150 mCi	• Hyperthyroidism • Thyroid malignancy	• Hypersensitivity • Concurrent antithyroid medication • Pregnancy, lactation	• N/V • Bone marrow suppression • Sialadenitis • Thyroiditis

Metabolic Bone Disease Medications

Drug Class	Mechanism of Action	Generic Drug Name	Canada Name	Dosing	Indications	Contraindications	Side Effects
Bisphosphonates	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inhibits osteoclast-mediated bone resorption 	alendronate	Fosamax®	Osteoporosis: 5-10 mg OD 70 mg once weekly Paget's: 40 mg OD for 6 mo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prevention of postmenopausal osteoporosis Treatment of osteoporosis Glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis Paget's disease 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Esophageal stricture or achalasia (oral) Unable to stand or sit upright for >30 min (oral) Hypersensitivity Hypocalcemia Renal insufficiency 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GI MSK pain Headache Osteonecrosis of the jaw Atypical femoral shaft fractures
		risedronate	Actonel®	Osteoporosis: 5 mg OD 35 mg once weekly 150 mg once monthly Paget's: 30 mg OD for 2 mo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treatment and prevention of postmenopausal osteoporosis Treatment and prevention of glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis Paget's disease 		
		etidronate	Didronel®	Paget's: 5-10 mg /kg OD x 6 mo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Symptomatic Paget's disease Prevention and treatment of heterotopic ossification after total hip replacement or spinal cord injury 		
		ibandronate	Boniva®	2.5 mg OD or 150 mg once monthly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treatment and prevention of postmenopausal osteoporosis (US only) 		
		pamidronate	Aredia®	Hypercalcemia of malignancy 60-90 mg IV over 2-24 h Wait at least 7 d before considering retreatment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hypercalcemia of malignancy Paget's disease Osteolytic bone metastases of breast cancer Osteolytic lesions of multiple myeloma 		
		zoledronate	Zometa® Aclasta®	5 mg IV once yearly IV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treatment of osteoporosis Hypercalcemia of malignancy Treatment and prevention of skeletal complications related to cancer 		
Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decreases resorption of bone through binding to estrogen receptors 	raloxifene	Evista®	60 mg OD	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treatment and prevention of postmenopausal osteoporosis (2nd line) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lactation Pregnancy Active or past history of DVT, PE, or retinal vein thrombosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hot flashes Leg cramps Increased risk of fatal stroke, venous thromboembolism
Calcitonin	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inhibits osteoclast-mediated bone resorption 	calcitonin	Miacalcin®	One spray (200 IU) per day, alternating nostrils	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treatment of postmenopausal osteoporosis, greater than 5 yr postmenopause 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clinical allergy to salmon-calcitonin 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rhinitis Epistaxis Sinusitis Nasal dryness
Anti-RANKL Monoclonal Ab	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inhibits RANKL (osteoclast differentiating factor) → inhibit osteoclast formation and decrease bone resorption 	denosumab	Xgeva™	60 mg SC q6mo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treatment of postmenopausal women at high risk of fracture Prevent skeletal-related events in patients with bone metastasis from solid tumors 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hypocalcemia 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fatigue/headache Dermatitis/rash Hypophosphatemia/Hypocalcemia Hypercholesterolemia GI discomfort
PTH	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Stimulates new bone formation by preferential stimulation of osteoblastic activity over osteoclastic activity 	teriparatide	Forteo®	20 µg SC OD x 18-24 mo	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treatment of postmenopausal women with osteoporosis who are at high risk for fracture Treatment of men with primary or hypogonadal osteoporosis who are at high risk for fracture 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paget's disease Prior external beam or implant radiation therapy involving the skeleton Bone metastases Metabolic bone diseases other than osteoporosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Orthostatic hypotension Hypercalcemia Dizziness Leg cramps

Metabolic Bone Disease Medications (continued)

Drug Class	Mechanism of Action	Generic Drug Name	US Name	Dosing	Indications	Contraindications	Side Effects
Calcium	• Inhibits PTH secretion			1200 mg/d (including diet) Divided in 3 doses	• Osteopenia • Osteoporosis • Prevention of metabolic bone disease	• Caution with renal stones	• Vomiting • Constipation • Dry mouth
Vitamin D	• Regulation of calcium and phosphate homeostasis	cholecalciferol (vitamin D3)		800 -2000 IU/d	• Osteopenia • Osteoporosis • Prevention of metabolic bone disease	• Caution in patients on digoxin (risk of hypercalcemia which may precipitate arrhythmia)	• Hypercalcemia • Headache • N/V • Constipation
		ergocalciferol (vitamin D2)	Drisdol® Erdol®	50,000 IU/wk	• Osteoporosis in patients with liver dysfunction, refractory rickets, hypoparathyroidism	• Hypercalcemia • Malabsorption syndrome • Decreased renal function	
		calcitriol (1,25(OH) ₂ -D)	Rocaltrol® Calcijex®	Start 0.25 µg/d Titrate up by 0.25 µg/d at 4-8 wk intervals to 0.5-1 µg/d Start 0.25 µg/d Titrate up by 0.25 µg/d at 2-4 wk intervals to 0.5-2 µg/d	• Hypocalcemia and osteodystrophy in patients with chronic renal failure on dialysis • Hypoparathyroidism	• Hypercalcemia • Vitamin D toxicity	

Adrenal Medications

Drug Class	Mineralocorticoid Activity	Generic Drug Name	Potency (Relative to Cortisol)	Equivalent Dose (mg)	Duration of Action (t _{1/2} in h)	Dosing	Comments
Hydrocortisone	Yes	Cortef Solu-Cortef	1.0	20	8	<u>Adrenal Crisis:</u> 50-100 mg IV bolus, then 50-100 mg q8h (continuous infusion x 24-48 h) PO once stable (50 mg q8h x 48 h, then taper over 14 d) <u>Chronic AI:</u> 15-20 mg PO OD (2/3 AM, 1/3 PM)	• In high doses, mineralocorticoid side effects may emerge (salt + water retention, ECF volume expansion, HTN, low K ⁺ metabolic alkalosis)
Cortisone Acetate	Yes	Cortisone Acetate	0.8	25	oral = 8 IM = 18+	<u>Adrenal Crisis:</u> 75-300 mg/d PO/IM divided q12-24h <u>Chronic AI:</u> 25 mg/d	• Pro-drug which is converted to active form as hydrocortisone • High doses can result in mineralocorticoid side effects (see above)
Prednisone	No	Prednisone	4	5	16-36	<u>Adrenal Crisis:</u> 15-60 mg/d PO qd or divided bid/qid <u>Chronic AI:</u> 5 mg daily	• Pro-drug which is converted to active form as prednisolone
Dexamethasone	No	Dexamethasone	30	0.7	36-54	<u>Adrenal Crisis:</u> 4 mg IV; repeat q2-6h if necessary	• Used for undiagnosed adrenal insufficiency (does not interfere with measurement of serum cortisol levels)

Landmark Endocrinology Trials

Trial	Reference	Results
DIABETES		
ACCORD	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 358:2560-72	Compared with standard therapy the use of intensive therapy to target normal HbA1c levels (<6%) for 3.5 yr increased mortality and did not significantly reduce major cardiovascular events
ADVANCE	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 358:2545-59	Intensive glucose control that lowered the HbA1c value to 6.5% reduced the incidence of nephropathy but did not significantly reduce major macrovascular events, death from cardiovascular events, or death from any cause; hypoglycemia was more common in the intensive control group
BARI-2D	<i>NEJM</i> 2009; 360:2503-15	In patients with both type 2 DM and CAD no significant difference was found in the rates of death and major cardiovascular events in patients undergoing prompt revascularization and those undergoing medical therapy or between strategies of insulin sensitization and insulin
DCCT	<i>NEJM</i> 1993; 329:977-86	Intensive blood glucose control delayed the onset and reduced the progression of microvascular complications (retinopathy, nephropathy, and neuropathy) in type 1 DM
EDIC	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 353:2644-53	Compared with conventional therapy intensive DM therapy early on without macrovascular disease (goal HbA1c <6.05%) has long-term beneficial effects on the risk of cardiovascular disease in patients with type 1 DM
Look AHEAD	<i>NEJM</i> 2013; 369:145-54	Moderate weight loss (<7% BW) and increased exercise are not associated with reduction in CVD and its complications among overweight or obese patients with type 2 DM
NAVIGATOR	<i>NEJM</i> 2010; 362:1463-90	In patients with impaired glucose tolerance, nateglinide did not reduce progression to DM or risk of cardiovascular events while valsartan only reduced progression to DM
PREDIMED	<i>NEJM</i> 2013; 368:1279-90	A Mediterranean diet with extra-virgin olive oil or nuts reduces rates of MI, CVA, or CV death in those at high risk for CV disease (outcome was driven by reduction in rates of CVA)
Steno-2	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 358:580-91	In at-risk patients with type 2 DM intensive intervention with multiple drug combinations and behavior modification had sustained significant beneficial effects with respect to vascular complications and mortality; multifactorial intervention is critical in the management of type 2 DM
UKPDS	<i>Lancet</i> 1998; 352:837-53	Intensive blood glucose control reduces microvascular but not macrovascular complications in type 2 DM
UKPDS Extension	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 359:1577-89	Continued risk reduction in microvascular risk and emergent risk reductions for MI and death from any cause 10 yr post UKPDS trial follow up in type 2 DM
VADT	<i>NEJM</i> 2009; 360:1-11	In patients with longstanding poorly controlled type 2 DM intensive glucose control had no significant effect on the rates of major cardiovascular events, death, or microvascular complications; adverse events, predominantly hypoglycemia, were more common in the intensive control group
LIPIDS		
4S	<i>Lancet</i> 1994; 344:1383-89	In patients with angina or previous MI and high total cholesterol simvastatin reduced: all-cause mortality, fatal and nonfatal coronary events, and need for coronary artery bypass surgery or angioplasty
FIELD	<i>Lancet</i> 2005; 366:1849-61	In patients with type 2 DM not previously on statin therapy fenofibrate did not significantly reduce the risk of the primary outcome of coronary events; it did reduce non-fatal MIs and revascularizations
HPS	<i>Lancet</i> 2002; 360:7-22	In high-risk patients with various cholesterol values simvastatin reduced all-cause mortality, coronary deaths, and major vascular events
Jupiter	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 359:2195-207	Rosuvastatin significantly reduced the incidence of major cardiovascular events in patients with elevated high-sensitivity CRP levels and no hyperlipidemia
TNT	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 352:1425-35	Lipid-lowering therapy with atorvastatin 80 mg/d in patients with stable CHD provides clinical benefit beyond atorvastatin 10 mg/d

References

- Agus AZ. Etiology of hypercalcemia. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2010.
- Agus AZ. Overview of metabolic bone disease. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2002.
- American Diabetes Association. Management of dyslipidemia in adults with diabetes (position statement). *Diabetes Care* 2002;25:S74-77.
- Anderson TJ, Gregoire J, Hegele RA, et al. 2012 Update of the Canadian Cardiovascular Society guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of dyslipidemia for the prevention of cardiovascular disease in the adult. *Can J Cardiol* 2012;29:151-167.
- Arnold A. Classification and pathogenesis of the multiple endocrine neoplasia syndromes. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2002.
- Braunwald E, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al. Harrison's principles of internal medicine, vol 2. New York: McGraw Hill, 2001. Chapter: DM; p2109-2135.
- Burman KD. Overview of thyroiditis. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2002.
- Canadian Diabetes Association Clinical Practice Guidelines Expert Committee. Canadian Diabetes Association 2013 clinical practice guidelines for the prevention and management of diabetes in Canada. *Can J Diabetes* 2013;37(S1):S1-S212.
- Canadian Task Force on Preventive Health Care. Prevention of osteoporosis and osteoporotic fractures in post-menopausal women. *CMAJ* 2004;170:1665-1667.
- Cheng A, Fantus IG. Oral antihyperglycemic therapy for type 2 DM. *CMAJ* 2005;172:213-226.
- Collins R, Armitage J, Parish S, et al. MRC/BHF heart protection study of cholesterol lowering with simvastatin in 20,536 high risk individuals: a randomized placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2002;360:7-22.
- Dayan CM. Interpretation of thyroid function tests. *Lancet* 2001;357:619-624.
- Dawson-Hughes B, Gold DT, Rodbard HW, et al. Physician's guide to prevention and treatment of osteoporosis. Washington: National Osteoporosis Foundation, 2003.
- Estruch R, Ros E, Salas-Salvado J, et al. Primary prevention of cardiovascular disease with a Mediterranean diet. *NEJM* 2013;368:1279-1290.
- Fodor JG, Frohlich JJ, Genest JJJ, et al. Recommendations for the management and treatment of dyslipidemia. *CMAJ* 2000;162:1441-1447.
- Genest J, Frohlich JJ, Fodor JG, et al. Recommendations of the management of dyslipidemia and the prevention of cardiovascular disease: 2003 update. *CMAJ* 2003;168(9):921-4.
- Greenspan FS, Garber DG. Basic and clinical endocrinology. New York: Lange Medical Books/McGraw Hill, 2001. 100-163, 201-272, 623-761.
- Hemmingsen B, Lund SS, Gluud C, et al. Targeting intensive glycaemic control vs. targeting conventional glycaemic control for type 2 DM. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 6 2011;CD008143.
- Hirsch IB, Paauw DS, Brunzell J. Inpatient management of adults with diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 1995;18:870-878.
- Kitabachi AE, Umphierrez GE, Murphy MB, et al. Management of hyperglycemic crises in patients with diabetes. *Diabetes Care* 2001;24:131-152.
- Kronenberg HM, Larsen PR, Melmed S, et al. Williams textbook of endocrinology, 9th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1998.
- NIH Consensus Development Panel on Osteoporosis Prevention, Diagnosis and Therapy. Osteoporosis prevention, diagnosis, and therapy. *JAMA* 2001;285:785-795.
- Orth DN. Evaluation of the response to ACTH in adrenal insufficiency. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2002.
- Rosen HN, Rosenblatt M. Overview of the management of osteoporosis in women. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2002.
- Ross DS. Disorders that cause hypothyroidism. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2002.
- Ryan EA. Pregnancy in diabetes. *Med Clin of N Amer* 1998;82:823-845.
- Schilcher J, Michaelsson K, Aspenberg P. Bisphosphonate use and atypical fractures of the femoral shaft. *NEJM* 2011;364:1728-1737.
- The Scandinavian Simvastatin Survival Study Group. Randomized trial of cholesterol lowering in 4444 patients with coronary heart disease: the Scandinavian Simvastatin Survival Study (4S). *Lancet* 1994;344:1383-1389.
- Tsui E, Barnie A, Ross S, et al. Intensive insulin therapy with insulin lispro: a randomized trial of continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion vs. multiple daily insulin injection. *Diabetes Care* 2001;24:1722-1727.
- United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) Group. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulfonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Lancet* 1998;352:837-853.
- Wing RR, Bolin P, Brancati F, et al. Cardiovascular effects of intensive lifestyle intervention in type 2 diabetes. *NEJM* 2013;369:145-154.
- Young WF, Kaplan NM. Diagnosis and treatment of pheochromocytoma in adults. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2002.

Notes

Nadia Salvo, Giorgia Tropini, and Andrew Xiao, chapter editors
 Jillian Bardsley, Vahagn Karapetyan, and Evan Lilly, associate editors
 Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor
 Dr. Ruby Alvi, Dr. Azadeh Moaveni, and Dr. Melissa Nutik, staff editors

Periodic Health Examination	2	Diarrhea	26
Purpose of the Periodic Health Examination		Dizziness	26
AAFP Grading System		Domestic Violence/Elder Abuse	28
Breast Cancer Screening Guidelines		Dyspepsia	28
Colorectal Cancer Screening Guidelines		Dyspnea	29
Health Promotion and Counseling		Dysuria	29
Motivational Strategies for Behavioral		Epistaxis	30
Change	6	Erectile Dysfunction	30
Nutrition	6	Fatigue	31
Obesity	7	Fever	33
Dyslipidemia	8	Headache	34
Exercise	9	Hearing Impairment	35
Smoking Cessation	10	Hypertension	35
Alcohol	12	Joint Pain	39
Common Presenting Problems		Low Back Pain	40
Abdominal Pain	13	Menopause/Hormone Replacement Therapy	42
Allergic Rhinitis	14	Osteoarthritis	42
Amenorrhea	14	Osteoporosis	43
Anxiety	14	Palliative and End-of-Life Care	43
Asthma/COPD	15	Rash	44
Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia	16	Sexually Transmitted Diseases	45
Bronchitis (Acute)	18	Sinusitis	46
Chest Pain	18	Sleep Disorders	47
Common Cold (Acute Rhinitis)	18	Sore Throat (Pharyngitis)	49
Concussion/Mild Traumatic Brain Injury	19	Complementary and	
Contraception	19	Alternative Medicine	51
Cough	20	Antimicrobial Quick Reference	52
Dementia	20	References	55
Depression	21		
Diabetes Mellitus	22		

Acronyms

AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm	FOBT	fecal occult blood test	MMSE	mini mental status examination	RA	rheumatoid arthritis
ACR	albumin:creatinine ratio	FRS	Framingham Risk Score	MOCA	Montreal cognitive assessment	RCT	randomized controlled trial
AIN	anal intraepithelial neoplasia	GAD	generalized anxiety disorder	MSM	men who have sex with men	SAH	subarachnoid hemorrhage
AKI	acute kidney injury	GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease	MUFA	monounsaturated fatty acids	SDRI	serotonin dopamine reuptake inhibitor
AMC	another medical condition	GTT	diabetes	NPH	human insulin isophane	SERM	selective estrogen receptor modulator
ABG	arterial blood gas	HAART	highly active antiretroviral therapy	NTD	neural tube defects	SIDS	sudden infant death syndrome
AR	absolute reduction	HDL-C	high density lipoprotein cholesterol	NTG	nitroglycerin	SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
BMI	body mass index	HNPPC	hereditary non polyposis colon cancer	O&P	ova and parasites	SNRI	serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor
BPPV	benign paroxysmal positional vertigo	HPV	human papillomavirus	OA	osteoarthritis	SOB	shortness of breath
CA	cancer	HRT	hormone replacement therapy	QCD	obsessive compulsive disorder	SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft	HSIL	high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion	OCP	oral contraceptive pill	STD	sexually transmitted disease
CAD	coronary artery disease	IBD	inflammatory bowel disease	OCPD	obsessive compulsive personality disorder	TC	total cholesterol
CBT	cognitive behavioral therapy	IBS	irritable bowel syndrome	OD	once daily	TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
CF	cystic fibrosis	ICS	inhaled corticosteroids	OGCT	oral glucose challenge test	TG	triglyceride
CHF	congestive heart failure	IFG	impaired fasting glucose	OGTT	oral glucose tolerance test	TIA	transient ischemic attack
CPAP	continuous positive airway pressure	IGT	impaired glucose tolerance	OTC	over the counter	TM	tympenic membrane
CRC	colorectal cancer	IHD	ischemic heart disease	PCOS	polycystic ovarian syndrome	TMJ	temporomandibular joint
CVD	cardiovascular disease	INH	isoniazid	PFT	pulmonary function test	TUIP	transurethral incision of the prostate
DHP	dihydropyridine	IPT	interpersonal therapy	PID	periodic health examination	TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
DMPA	depot medroxyprogesterone	IVP	intravenous pyelogram	PMS	pelvic inflammatory disease	UC	ulcerative colitis
DRE	digital rectal exam	KUB	kidneys, ureter, bladder x-ray	PND	premenstrual syndrome	URT	upper respiratory tract infection
DS	double strength	LDL-C	low density lipoprotein cholesterol	PPI	paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea	USPSTF	United States Preventive Services Task Force
ED	emergency department	LSIL	low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion	PPD	proton pump inhibitor	UTI	urinary tract infection
ER	extended release	LV	left ventricle	PSA	purified protein derivative	VAIN	vaginal intraepithelial neoplasia
F/U	follow-up	LVH	left ventricle hypertrophy	PTSD	prostate specific antigen	VIN	vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia
FAP	familial adenomatous polyposis	MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor	PUD	post-traumatic stress disorder	VBI	vertebrobasilar insufficiency
FBG	fasting blood glucose	MDI	metered dose inhaler	PUD	peptic ulcer disease		
				PVDF	polyunsaturated fatty acids		
				PVD	peripheral vascular disease		

Periodic Health Examination

- American Academy of Family Physicians (AAFP) represents 115,900 primary care physicians and student members nationwide
- approximately one in four of all office visits are made to family physicians (214 million office visits each yr)
- basis for recommendations is the analysis of scientific knowledge available as presented by the US Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) in the Guide to Clinical Preventive Services and ongoing updates
- recommendations are based on systematic analysis of scientific evidence
- most notable recommendation is the abolition of the annual physical exam; replaced by the PHE



Patient-Centered Clinical Method

- Explore/define patient problems and decide on management together
- Consider both agendas and find common ground



Agendas in Family Medicine

Doctor's Agenda

History, physical, investigations, diagnosis, plan

Patient's Agenda

FIFE

Feelings: related to the illness, fears (how do you feel about what is happening?)

Ideas: and explanations of the cause (what do you think is going on?)

Function: the illness' impact on daily life (how is it affecting your work or life?)

Expectations: of the doctor and the illness (what were you expecting at the visit?)



Adult Periodic Health Exam

Male and female evidence-based preventive care checklist forms are available online at <http://www.aafp.com>



When Ordering Fasting Blood Work

- Routinely ordered as ≥ 12 h of fasting
- Remember, "fasting" means no food, no drinks (except small quantities of water), no gum, no smoking
- Prescription medications are okay unless otherwise specified
- Special care should be taken when ordering fasting blood work in elderly or other medically fragile patients



Note About PSA

- Routine PSA screening is currently not recommended
- PSA testing is used in ongoing surveillance and management of men with prostate cancer (see [Urology](#), U25)

Purpose of the PHE

- primary prevention:** identify risk factors for common diseases; counsel patients to promote healthy behavior
- secondary prevention:** presymptomatic detection of disease to allow early treatment and to prevent disease progression
- update clinical data
- enhance patient-physician relationship

AAFP Grading System (for recommendations before 2007)

- the recommendations include the examinations that should be offered (strongly recommend and recommend), those that should not be done (recommend against), those considered an option (no recommendation for or against), and those with insufficient evidence to recommend for or against
- strongly recommend:** good quality evidence exists that demonstrates substantial net benefit over harm; the intervention is perceived to be cost effective and acceptable to nearly all patients
- recommend:** although evidence exists that demonstrates net benefit, the benefit is only moderate in magnitude or the evidence supporting a substantial benefit is only fair; the intervention is perceived to be cost effective and acceptable to most patients
- no recommendation for or against:** good or fair evidence exists of at least a small net benefit; cost effectiveness may not be known or patients may be divided about acceptability of the intervention
- recommend against:** good or fair evidence that demonstrates no net benefit over harm
- insufficient evidence to recommend for or against:** no evidence of even fair quality exists, or the existing evidence is conflicting

AAFP Grading System (for recommendations after 2007)

Grade	Definition	Suggestions for Practice
A	The USPSTF recommends the service. There is high certainty that the net benefit is substantial	Offer or provide this service
B	The USPSTF recommends the service. There is high certainty that the net benefit is moderate or there is moderate certainty that the net benefit is moderate to substantial	Offer or provide this service
C	The USPSTF recommends selectively offering or providing this service to individual patients based on professional judgment and patient preferences. There is at least moderate certainty that the net benefit is small	Offer or provide this service for selected patients depending on individual circumstances
D	The USPSTF recommends against the service. There is moderate or high certainty that the service has no net benefit or that the harms outweigh the benefits	Discourage the use of this service
I Statement	The USPSTF concludes that the current evidence is insufficient to assess the balance of benefits and harms of the service. Evidence is lacking, of poor quality, or conflicting, and the balance of benefits and harms cannot be determined	Read the clinical considerations section of USPSTF Recommendation Statement. If the service is offered, patients should understand the uncertainty about the balance of benefits and harms

Table 1. AAFP Recommendations for the Periodic Health Exam

Health Concern	AAFP Recommends	Grade
Abdominal Aortic Aneurysm	One-time screening by U/S in men ages 65 to 75 who have ever smoked (2014)	B
Intimate Partner Violence	Screening all women of childbearing age for intimate partner violence (2013)	B
Alcohol Misuse, Adults	Screening adults aged 18 yr or older for alcohol misuse and provide persons engaged in risky or hazardous drinking with brief behavioral counseling interventions	B
Bacteriuria, Asymptomatic	Screening for asymptomatic bacteriuria with urine culture for pregnant women at 12 to 16 wk gestation or at the first prenatal visit, if later (2008)	A
Behavioral Counseling to Prevent STD	High-intensity behavioral counseling all sexually active adolescents and for adults at increased risk for STDs (2008)	B
Breastfeeding	Interventions during pregnancy and after birth to promote and support breastfeeding (2008)	B
Cardiovascular Disease, Aspirin for the Prevention of	The use of aspirin for men age 45 to 79 when benefit of reduction in MI outweighs potential harm of GI bleed (2009)	A
Cardiovascular Disease, Aspirin for the Prevention of	The use of aspirin for women age 55 to 79 when benefit of reduction in strokes outweighs potential harm of increase in GI bleed (2009)	A
Chlamydia, Women	Screening for chlamydial infection for all sexually active non-pregnant young women aged 24 and younger and for older non-pregnant women who are at increased risk (2007)	A
Congenital Hypothyroidism	Screening for congenital hypothyroidism in newborns (2008)	A
Dental Caries, in Children (Birth through Age 5)	Primary care clinicians apply fluoride varnish to primary teeth of all infants and children starting at the age of primary tooth eruption and prescribe oral fluoride supplementation starting at age 6 mo for children whose water supply is deficient in fluoride (2014)	B
Depression, Adults	Screening adults for depression when staff-assisted depression care supports are in place to assure accurate diagnosis, effective treatment, and follow-up "Staff-assisted depression care supports" refers to clinical staff that assist the primary care clinician by providing some direct depression care and/or coordination, case management, or mental health treatment (2010)	B
Depression, Children and Adolescents	Screening of adolescents (12-18 yr of age) for major depressive disorder (MDD) when systems are in place to ensure accurate diagnosis, psychotherapy (cognitive behavioral or interpersonal), and follow-up (2009)	B
DM, Gestational	Screening for gestational DM in asymptomatic pregnant women after 24 wk of gestation (2014)	B
DM, Type 2	Screening for type 2 DM in asymptomatic adults with sustained blood pressure (either treated or untreated) > 135/80 mmHg (2008)	B
Falls Prevention in Older Adults	Exercise or physical therapy and vitamin D supplementation in community-dwelling adults aged 65 yr or older who are at increased risk for falls; see Clinical Considerations for information on risk assessment (2012)	B
Gonococcal Infection in Neonates	Strongly recommends prophylactic ocular topical medication for all newborns against gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum (2005)	A
Health Concern	AAFP Recommends	Grade
Healthy Diet	Intensive behavioral dietary counseling for adult patients with hyperlipidemia and other known risk factors for cardiovascular and diet-related chronic disease. Intensive counseling can be delivered by primary care physicians or by other qualified professionals including dietitians and nutritionists (1996)	B
Hearing Loss (Sensorineural)	Screening for hearing loss in all newborn infants (2008)	B
Hemoglobinopathies, Newborns	Strongly recommends ordering screening tests for PKU, hemoglobinopathies, and thyroid function abnormalities in neonates (2007)	A
Hepatitis B & C	Screening for HBV and HCV infection in persons at high risks for infection. Also offering one-time screening for HCV infection to adults born between 1945 and 1965 (2013)	B
HIV Infection, Adolescents and Adults	That clinicians screen adolescents and adults ages 18 to 65 yr for HIV infection. Younger adolescents and older adults who are at increased risk should also be screened; refer to USPSTF guidelines for more detail	A
HTN, Adults	Screening for high blood pressure in adults aged 18 and older (2007)	A
Immunization	Immunizing all children 0-18 yr of age and all adults using AAFP guidelines unless contraindicated (2014)	A
Folic Acid Supplementation, Women	That all women planning or capable of pregnancy take a daily supplement containing 0.43 to 0.8 mg (400 to 800 µg) of folic acid (2009)	A
Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STDs)	High-intensity behavioral counseling to prevent sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) for all sexually active adolescents and for adults at increased risk for STDs (2008)	B
Skin Cancer, Behavioral Counseling	Counseling children, adolescents, and young adults ages 10 to 24 yr who have fair skin about minimizing their exposure to ultraviolet radiation to reduce risk of skin cancer (2012)	B
Tobacco Use, Adults	Screening all adults for tobacco use and provide tobacco cessation interventions for those who use tobacco products (2009)	A
Vision Screening, Children	Vision screening for all children at least once between the ages of 3 and 5 yr to detect the presence of amblyopia or its risk factors (2011)	B



Efficacy of Human Papillomavirus Vaccines – A Systematic Quantitative Review

Int J Gynecol Cancer 2009;19:1166-1176

Study: Systematic review of 6 randomized placebo-controlled double-blind trials.

Patients: 47,236 women between ages 9-26.

Intervention: Vaccination with HPV L1 virus-like particle in either quadrivalent (HPV 6, 11, 16, 18), bivalent (HPV 16, 18), or univalent (HPV 16) form vs. placebo.

Main Outcome: Prevention of cytologically and/or histologically proven lesions (including LSIL, HSIL, VIN, VAIN, AIN, adenocarcinoma *in situ* of the cervix, or cancer of the cervix associated with HPV infection).

Results: Bivalent and quadrivalent vaccines reduced the rate of lesions in the cervix, vulva, vagina, and anogenital region with efficacy of 93% and 62%, respectively.



Prostate Cancer Mortality at 11 Year of Follow-Up

NEJM 2012;366:981-990

Study: Updated "ERSPC" study – multicenter randomized trial of screening for prostate cancer using PSA.

Patients: 162,388 men, ages 55-69 from 8 different European countries.

Intervention: PSA-based screening.

Main Outcome: mortality from prostate cancer.

Results: After median follow-up of 11 yr, the RRR of death from prostate cancer was 21%. The ARR was 1.07 deaths/1,000 men. NNT = 1,055 – therefore to prevent one death from prostate cancer at 11 yr follow up, 1,055 men would need to be screened.



Folic Acid Supplementation in Pregnancy (Joint SOGC-Motherisk Clinical Guideline)

- To prevent neural tube defects in all women capable of becoming pregnant
- Low risk women (no personal health risks, planned pregnancy): 0.4-1.0 mg daily folic acid supplementation for at least 2-3 mo before conception and throughout pregnancy and postpartum period
- High risk women (health risks including epilepsy, insulin dependent DM, BMI > 35, family history of NTD, high risk ethnic group): at least 3 mo prior to conception until 10-12 wk post conception: daily supplementation with multivitamins with 5 mg folic acid
- From wk 12 post-conception until postpartum period: 0.4-1.0 mg of folic acid supplementation is sufficient
- Women with additional lifestyle issues (poor compliance with medications, no birth control, additional teratogenic substances): higher folic acid dose of 5 mg



Appropriate Use of Screening and Diagnostic Tests to Foster High-Value, Cost-Conscious Care

Ann Intern Med 2012;156:147-149

Suggested principles for providing high-value, cost-conscious care (see article Table 1 for specific examples):

- Diagnostic tests should not be performed if the results will not change management.
- When the pretest probability of disease is low, the likelihood of a false-positive test result is higher than the likelihood of a true-positive result. False-positive results often lead to further testing, which may be expensive and potentially harmful (e.g. anxiety for patient, inappropriate treatment).
- The true cost of a test includes not only the cost of the test itself but also the downstream costs incurred because the test was performed. These include the costs of subsequent testing, treatment, or follow-up.

See Choosing Wisely - a campaign to help physicians and patients make smart and effective choices to ensure high-quality care. <http://www.choosingwisely.org>.

Table 1. AAFP Recommendations for the Periodic Health Exam (continued)

Health Concern	AAFP Recommends AGAINST	Grade
COPD	Screening asymptomatic adults for COPD using spirometry (2008)	D
Hormone Replacement Therapy	The use of combined estrogen and progestin for the prevention of chronic conditions in postmenopausal women (2012)	D
Prostate Cancer	Prostate-specific antigen (PSA)-based screening for prostate cancer (2012)	D
Testicular Cancer	Screening for testicular cancer in asymptomatic adolescent or adult males (2011)	D
Thyroid Cancer	The use of ultrasound screening for thyroid cancer in asymptomatic persons (1996)	D

- more detailed recommendations: *Breast Cancer* FM4, *Colorectal Cancer* FM4, *Osteoporosis* FM47, *Obesity* FM7

Breast Cancer Screening Guidelines

2013 Recommendations on Screening for Breast Cancer in Average-Risk Women (USPSTF)

- average-risk women: women age 40-74 with no personal history of breast cancer, history of breast cancer in 1st degree relatives, known mutations of the BRCA1/BRCA2 genes or previous exposures of the chest wall to radiation

Mammography

- age <50: recommend that decision to conduct screening mammography should be individualized and take into account patient context including her risks as well as values regarding specific benefits and harms (Grade C)
- age 50-74: recommend routine screening q2yr (Grade B)
- age 75+: current evidence is insufficient to assess benefits and harms of screening mammography (Grade I)

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

- current evidence insufficient to assess benefits and harms of MRI or digital mammography as screening modalities for breast cancer (Grade I)

Clinical Breast Examination

- current evidence insufficient to assess benefits and harms of CBE for women age 40 and older (Grade I)

Breast Self-Examination

- AAFP recommends against clinicians teaching women CBE (Grade D)

Prevention Medication

- AAFP recommends that clinicians engage in shared, informed decision making with women who are at increased risk for breast cancer about medications to reduce their risk
- for women who are at increased risk for breast cancer and at low risk for adverse medication effects, clinicians should offer to prescribe risk-reducing medications such as tamoxifen or raloxifene (Grade B)

BRCA Mutation Testing

- the AAFP recommends that primary care providers screen women who have family members with breast, ovarian, tubal, or peritoneal cancer with one of several screening tools designed to identify a family history that may be associated with an increased risk for potentially harmful mutations in breast cancer susceptibility genes (BRCA1 or BRCA2)
- women with positive screening results should receive genetic counseling and, if indicated after counseling, BRCA testing (Grade B)
- for more information on breast cancer and benign breast lesions, see [General Surgery, GS54](#)



Colorectal Cancer Screening Guidelines

- recommendations for average risk individuals (asymptomatic, no family history of UC, polyps, or CRC)
 - note: individuals with a personal history of cancer or adenomatous polyps should be followed by a surveillance regimen (screening guidelines are not applicable)
- the AAFP recommends screening for CRC using fecal occult blood testing (FOBT), sigmoidoscopy, or colonoscopy, in adults 50-75 yr with the following intervals (Grade A recommendation)
 - annual screening with high-sensitivity FOBT
 - sigmoidoscopy every 5 yr, with high-sensitivity FOBT q3yr
 - screening colonoscopy q10yr
- the AAFP recommends against routine screening for CRC in adults 76-85 yr (Grade C) and 85+ (Grade D)

- the USPSTF recommends against the use of aspirin or NSAIDs for the primary prevention of CRC (Grade C)
- the AAFP concludes that the evidence is insufficient to assess the benefits and harms of CT colonography and fecal DNA testing as screening modalities for CRC (Grade I recommendation)
- the AAFP recommends offering genetic testing for Lynch syndrome to patients diagnosed with CRC to reduce morbidity and mortality in relatives
 - genetic testing should be offered to 1st degree relatives of patients with Lynch syndrome, and those positive for Lynch syndrome should be offered earlier and more frequent CRC screening
- for more information on colorectal neoplasms, see [General Surgery, GS33](#)

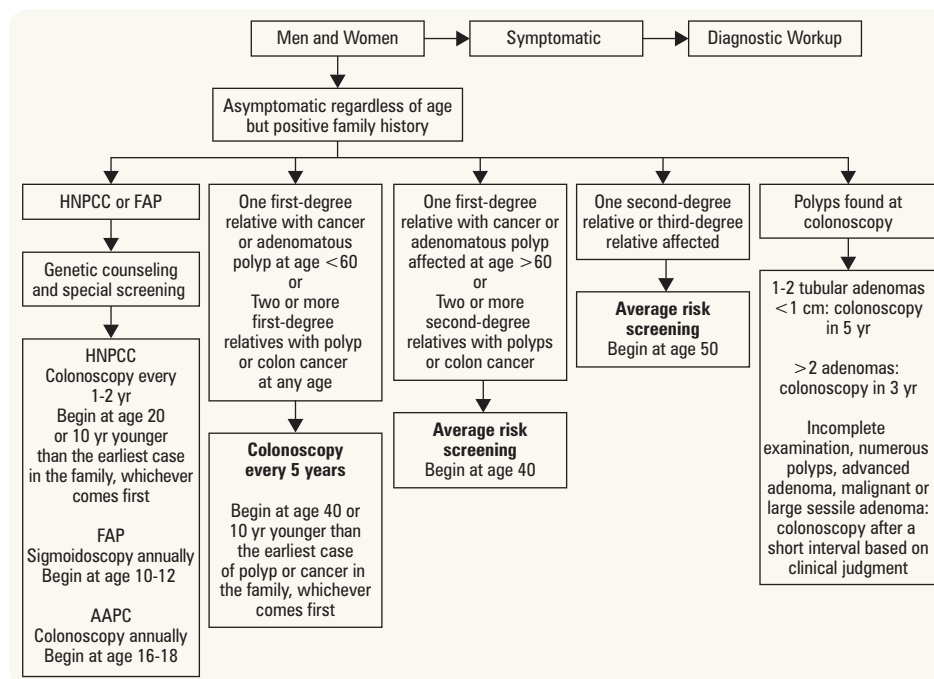


Figure 1. Approach to higher risk screening

AAPC = attenuated adenomatous polyposis; FAP = familial adenomatous polyposis; HNPCC = hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer; 1st degree relatives: parents, siblings, children; 2nd degree relatives: grandparents, aunts, uncles; 3rd degree relatives: great grandparents or cousins. Figure printed with permission from Can J Gastroenterol 2004;18:93-99. Refer to: Colorectal Screening for Cancer Prevention in Asymptomatic Patients, March 2013. Available from http://www.bcguidelines.ca/pdf/colorectal_screening.pdf

Health Promotion and Counseling

- health promotion is the most effective preventive strategy
- 40-70% of productive life lost annually is preventable
- there are several effective ways to promote healthy behavioral change, such as discussions appropriate to a patient's present stage of change
- for more information about motivational interviewing, see <http://www.motivationalinterviewing.org>

Motivational Strategies for Behavioral Change

Table 2. Motivational Strategies for Behavioral Change

Patient's Stage of Change	Physician's Aim	Physician's Plan
Pre-Contemplation	Encourage patient to consider the possibility of change Assess readiness for change Increase patient's awareness of the problem and its risks	Raise issue in a sensitive manner Offer (not impose) a neutral exchange of information to avoid resistance
Contemplation	Understand patient's ambivalence and encourage change Build confidence and gain commitment to change	Offer opportunity to discuss pros and cons of change using reflective listening
Preparation	Explore options and choose course most appropriate to patient Identify high-risk situations and develop strategies to prevent relapse Continue to strengthen confidence and commitment	Offer realistic options for change and opportunity to discuss inevitable difficulties
Action	Help patients design rewards for success Develop strategies to prevent relapse Support and reinforce convictions towards long-term change	Offer positive reinforcement and explore ways of coping with obstacles Encourage self-rewards to positively reinforce change
Maintenance	Help patient maintain motivation Review identified high-risk situations and strategies for preventing relapse	Discuss progress and signs of impending relapse
Relapse	Help patient view relapse as a learning experience Provide support appropriate to present level of readiness post-relapse	Offer a non-judgmental discussion about circumstances surrounding relapse and how to avoid relapse in the future Reassess patient's readiness to change

Adapted from: Hunt P. Motivating Change. *Nursing Standard* 2001;16:45-52, 54-55

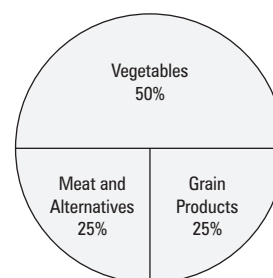


Figure 2. Plate layout



Handy Serving Size Comparisons

- 3 oz meat, fish, poultry → palm of hand
- 1 cup dairy (milk/yogurt) → size of fist
- Bread/grains → one slice, palm of hand
- ½ cup rice/pasta → one hand cupped
- 1 cup of fruit/vegetables → two cupped hands
- 1 oz cheese → full length of thumb
- 1 tsp oil/butter → tip of thumb
- Nuts/chips/snacks → palm covered



Energy Content of Food

- Carbohydrates 4 kcal/g
- Protein 4 kcal/g
- Fat 9 kcal/g
- Ethanol 7 kcal/g



Calculating Total Daily Energy Expenditure (TDEE)

- Roughly 35 kcal/kg/d
- Varies by age, weight, sex, and activity level
- Average 2000-2100 kcal/d for women, 2700-2900 kcal/d for men

Nutrition

General Population

- patients should refer to USDA Dietary Guidelines for Americans (2010) available from: <http://www.cnpp.usda.gov/>
- key recommendations
 - choose foods that provide more potassium, calcium, vitamin D, and dietary fiber; these include vegetables, fruits, whole grains, and milk/milk products
 - **Sodium Intake**
 - ♦ < 2,300 mg/d
 - ♦ further reduce intake to <1,500 mg/d in 51+ yr, those of any age who are African American, or have HTN, DM, or CKD (this recommendation applies to about 50% of the US population, including children)
 - **Fats**
 - ♦ consume <10% of calories from saturated fatty acids (replace with MUFA and PUFA)
 - ♦ consume <300 mg per d of dietary cholesterol
 - ♦ limit trans fatty acid consumption (especially synthetic sources of trans fats, such as partially hydrogenated oils)
 - **Vegetables and Fruits**
 - ♦ Increase vegetable and fruit intake; favor a variety of vegetables (dark-green, red, and orange), beans, and peas
 - **Grains**
 - ♦ consume at least 50% of all grains as whole grains (replace refined grains with whole grains)
 - **Dairy**
 - ♦ increase dairy intake overall (milk, yogurt, cheese, or alternatively fortified soy beverages), and favor fat-free or low-fat products
 - **Proteins**
 - ♦ eat a variety of protein foods (seafood, lean meat and poultry, eggs, beans/peas, soy products, unsalted nuts/seeds)
 - ♦ try to increasingly substitute a variety of seafood in place of meat and poultry
 - ♦ replace protein foods that are higher in solid fats with others with a lower solid fat content and/or are a source of oils
 - **Refined Foods**
 - ♦ reduce the intake of calories from solid fats and added sugars
 - ♦ limit the consumption of refined grain foods that also contain solid fats, added sugars, and sodium

- recommendations for specific population groups
 - **Women Capable of Becoming Pregnant**
 - ♦ choose foods rich in heme iron (more readily absorbed), and enhancers of iron absorption (e.g. vitamin C-rich foods)
 - ♦ consume at least 400 µg/d of folic acid (from foods and supplements) in addition to food forms of folate from a varied diet
 - **Pregnant or Breastfeeding Women**
 - ♦ consume 8-12 oz of seafood/wk (limit white albacore tuna to 6 oz/wk and do not consume tilefish, shark, swordfish, or king mackerel as they are high in methyl mercury)
 - ♦ take an iron supplement if pregnant, as recommended by your healthcare provider
 - **Individuals >50 yr**
 - ♦ consume foods fortified in vitamin B12 (e.g. fortified cereals) or use dietary supplements
- counsel on variety, portion size, and plate layout
- vitamins and minerals: see CDC-Vitamins and Minerals, available from: <http://www.cdc.gov/nutrition/everyone/basics/vitamins/>

Cardiovascular Disease Prevention

Table 3. Dietary Guidelines for Reducing Risk of Cardiovascular Disease

	Recommendations	Effects
Fat, Carbohydrates, Protein	Overall fat intake: 26-27% of total energy Saturated fat: 5-6% of total energy Trans fat: reduce intake, replace with MUFA or PUFA Carbohydrates: 55-59% of total energy Protein: 15-18% of total energy	Lower LDL
Omega-3 Fatty Acid Rich Foods	≥2 servings/wk of fish (especially oily fish like salmon)	Decreased sudden death, death from CAD Lower TG
Salt	≤2,300 mg/d	Lower BP Combining decreased sodium intake with the DASH diet (see below) achieves even greater BP-lowering effects
Alcohol	≤2 drinks/d for men, ≤1 drink/d for women	Decreased risk of hypertriglyceridemia, HTN
Dietary Approaches	DASH diet (Dietary Approaches to Stop HTN), recommended by the American Heart Association (AHA) Diet: high in vegetables/fruits, low-fat dairy, whole grains, poultry, fish and nuts; Low in sweets, sugar-sweetened beverages, red meats Macronutrients: low in saturated/total fat and cholesterol; high in potassium, magnesium, calcium, protein, and fiber	Lower BP, lower LDL

MUFA = monounsaturated fatty acids; PUFA = polyunsaturated fatty acids

Obesity

- body mass index (BMI) = weight (kg)/height (m)² = weight (lbs)/height (in)² x 703; BMI is a poor predictor of obesity
- waist circumference (WC) = flexible tape placed on horizontal plane at level of iliac crest
 - should be measured in all adults to assess obesity-related health risks
 - WC measurement for individuals of BMI >35 kg/m² is not necessary (almost all individuals with this BMI will have an abnormal WC)

Table 4. Classification of Weight by BMI, Waist Circumference, and Associated Disease Risks in Adults

	BMI (kg/m ²)	Men ≤102 cm (40 in) Women ≤88 cm (35 in)	Men >102 cm (40 in) Women >88 cm (35 in)
Underweight	<18.5		
Normal	18.5-24.9		
Overweight	25.0-29.9	Increased	High
Obesity Class I	30.0-34.9	High	Very High
Obesity Class II	35.0-39.9	Very High	Very High
Obesity Class III (Extreme Obesity)	40.0 +	Extremely High	Extremely High

From: Classification of Overweight and Obesity by BMI, Waist Circumference, and Associated Disease Risks, National Institute of Health, National Heart Lung and Blood Institute, Obesity Education Initiative, http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/heart/obesity/lose_wt/bmi_dis.htm



Burning Fat

3500 kcal of energy are used for every pound of human fat burned during activity



Losing Weight

- Aim for caloric intake 500-1000 kcal/d less than total daily energy expenditure (TDEE)
- Results in 1-2 lb (0.5-1 kg) weight loss per wk
- Achieved by combination of increased activity and/or decreased caloric intake



Low BMI Associations

- Osteoporosis
- Eating disorders
- Under-nutrition
- Pregnancy complications



Adverse Medical Consequences of Obesity

- Type 2 DM
- CAD
- Stroke
- HTN
- Gallbladder disease
- Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis
- Complications of pregnancy
- Dyslipidemia
- Osteoarthritis
- Sleep apnea
- Certain cancers
- CHF
- Low back pain
- Increased total mortality

Epidemiology

- more than one-third of U.S. adults (34.9%) are obese
- non-Hispanic blacks have the highest age-adjusted rates of obesity (47.8%) followed by Hispanics (42.5%), non-Hispanic whites (32.6%), and non-Hispanic Asians (10.8%)
- obesity is higher among middle age adults, 40-59 yr old (39.5%) than among younger adults, age 20-39 (30.3%) or adults over 60 or above (35.4%) adults
- overweight and obesity rates in children are directly proportional to screen time (see *Exercise, FM9*)
- only 10-15% of population consume <30% fat daily
- obese persons generally consume more energy-dense food which tends to be highly processed, micronutrient poor, and high in fats, sugars, or starch

AAFP Guidelines For Adults (2012)

- the AAFP recommends screening all adults for obesity; clinicians should offer or refer patients with a BMI of 30 kg/m² or higher to intensive, multicomponent behavioral interventions (Grade B recommendation)
- intensive, multicomponent behavioral interventions include behavioral management activities (12 to 26 sessions in the first yr) such as setting weight loss goals, improving diet/nutrition and increasing physical activity, addressing barriers to change, self-monitoring, and strategizing how to maintain lifestyle changes. For more information: <http://www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/uspstf11/obeseadult/obesenum.htm>

AAFP Guidelines For Children and Adolescents (2010)

- the AAFP recommends that clinicians screen children aged 6 yr and older for obesity and offer them or refer them to comprehensive, intensive behavioral interventions to promote improvement in weight status (Grade B recommendation)
- the definitions for specific interventions (targeted to diet and physical activity) and intensity (>25 h with child and/or family over 6 mo) are noted at: <http://www.ahrq.gov/clinic/uspstf10/childobes/chobesrs.htm#clinical>

Dyslipidemia

- see *Endocrinology, E2*
- defined as abnormal elevation of plasma cholesterol or triglyceride levels
- increased risk associated with obesity, DM, alcohol use

Assessment

- measure fasting serum, LDL-C, HDL-C, and TG
- screen with full fasting lipid profile q1-3yr in males >40 yr, females >50 yr or who are menopausal, or any adults with additional CAD risk factors
- assess for presence of other CAD risk factors (smoking, DM, HTN, obesity)
- screen for secondary causes: hypothyroidism, CKD, DM, nephrotic syndrome, liver disease
- risk category
 - estimate using the model for 10 yr CAD risk developed from the Framingham data (Framingham Risk Score – FRS)
 - ♦ FRS calculated based on the following factors: gender, age, HDL-C, total cholesterol, SBP, smoking, DM
 - if positive family Hx of CVD in a first degree relative before age 60 then multiply 10 yr CVD risk (%) x 2
 - to be completed for men age 40-75, and women age 50-75 q3-5yr
 - ♦ cardiovascular age calculated as patient's age ± the difference between his or her estimated remaining life expectancy
 - used to increase adherence to therapy and reaffirm positive effect of following therapy
 - primary target of therapy is LDL-C levels; the alternate primary targets are apolipoprotein B (apo B) and non-HDL-C (not used widely yet)
 - optional secondary targets once LDL-C/apo B is at target include TC:HDL-C ratio, apo B:apo AI ratio, hs-CRP (used more for risk stratification of CAD), non-HDL-C, and serum TG levels
- emerging risk factors (from Framingham group)
 - lipoprotein a
 - metabolic syndrome
 - genetic risk
 - hormone replacement therapy
 - infectious agents



Pharmacotherapy for Obesity

- Orlistat: gastrointestinal lipase inhibitor, reduces fat absorption by 30% by inhibition of pancreatic lipase
- Orlistat is associated with several adverse effects and not approved for clinical use longer than 2 yr
- Orlistat should be avoided in people with inflammatory or chronic bowel disease



"The Latest Evidence on Fad Diets..."

Comparison of the Atkins, Ornish, Weight Watchers, and Zone Diets for Weight Loss and Heart Disease Risk Reduction

JAMA 2005;293:43-53

Purpose: To assess the effectiveness and adherence rates of four popular diets for weight loss and reduction of cardiac risk factors.

Study Characteristics: Single center RCT at academic medical center in Boston, MA; 160 participants were randomized to either Atkins (carbohydrate restriction), Zone (macronutrient balanced and low glycemic load), Weight Watchers (low calorie/portion size), or Ornish (fat restriction) diet groups for a period of 18 mo.

Participants: Adults age 22-72 with known HTN, dyslipidemia, or fasting hyperglycemia.

Results: Assuming that participants who discontinued the study remained at baseline, the mean weight loss at 1 yr (and self selected dietary adherence rates per self report) were 2.1 kg for Atkins (53% of participants completed, p=0.009), 3.2 kg for the Zone (65% of participants completed, p=0.002), 3.0 kg for Weight Watchers (65% completed, p<0.001), 3.3 kg for Ornish (50% completed, p=0.007). Each diet significantly reduced the LDL/HDL ratio by ~10% (p<0.05), with no significant effects on blood pressure or glucose. Amount of weight loss was associated with adherence level (r = 0.60; p<0.001) but not with diet type (r = 0.07; p=0.40). Weight loss for each diet was significantly associated with reduction in levels of total/HDL cholesterol (r=0.36), C-reactive protein (r=0.37), and insulin (r=0.39), with no significant difference between diets.

Conclusion: Each popular diet was associated with modest weight loss and reduction of several cardiac risk factors. Adherence level, and not diet type, was the most important predictor of weight loss and cardiac risk factor reduction.



Hyperlipidemia Signs

- Atheromata: plaques in blood vessel walls
- Xanthoma: plaques or nodules composed of lipid-laden histiocytes in the skin (especially the eyelids)
- Tendinous xanthoma: lipid deposit in tendon (especially Achilles)
- Corneal arcus (arcus senilis): lipid deposit in cornea



LDL cannot be calculated when TG ≥4.5 mmol/L



Safety of Statins: An Update

Therapeutic Advances in Drug Safety 2012;3:133-144

Trials have shown that statin therapy slightly increases the incidence of DM; however, the absolute risk is small. Relative to the reduction in coronary events, the clinical significance is not great enough to recommend against their use.

Table 5. LDL Cholesterol Goals and Cut Points for Therapeutic Lifestyle Changes (TLC) and Drug Therapy in Different Risk Categories

Risk Category	LDL Goal	LDL Level at Which to Initiate TLC	LDL Level at Which to Consider Drug Therapy
CHD or CHD risk equivalent (10 yr risk >20%)	<100 mg/dL (2.60 mmol/L)	≥100 mg/dL	≥130 mg/dL (at 100-129 mg/dL, drug optional)*
2 or more risk factors (10 yr risk <20%)	<130 mg/dL (3.35 mmol/L)	≥130 mg/dL	≥130 mg/dL for 10 yr risk of 10-20%; 160 mg/dL for 10 yr risk of <10%
0-1 risk factor†	<160 mg/dL (4.15 mmol/L)	≥160 mg/dL	≥190 mg/dL (at 160-189 mg/dL, LDL-lowering drug optional)

CHD = coronary heart disease; HDL = high-density lipoprotein; LDL = low-density lipoprotein

*—If an LDL cholesterol level of <100 mg/dL cannot be achieved by therapeutic lifestyle changes, some authorities recommend use of LDL-lowering drugs in this category. Others prefer using drugs that primarily modify triglycerides and HDL (i.e., nicotinic acid or fibrate). Clinical judgment also may call for deferring drug therapy in this subcategory

†—People with zero to one risk factor almost always have a 10 yr risk <10%; thus, 10 yr risk assessment is not necessary in this group

Adapted with permission from Executive Summary of the Third Report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel on Detection, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III). *JAMA* 2001;285:2486-97

Management

- intensity and type of treatment is guided by “risk category” assigned
- health behaviors (can decrease LDL-C by up to 10%)
 - smoking cessation: probably the most important for preventing CAD
 - dietary modification: reduce saturated fats, refined sugars, alcohol; increase fruits, vegetables, and fiber
 - physical activity: at least 150 min of moderate to vigorous intensity aerobic exercise per wk
 - employ consistent lifestyle modifications for at least 3 mo before considering drug therapy; high risk patients should start treatment immediately with concurrent health behavior interventions
- pharmacologic therapy (can decrease LDL-C by up to 40%)
 - for a comparison of dyslipidemia medications, see [Endocrinology, E5](#)
 - statins (HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors)
 - currently recommended as 1st line monotherapy following unsuccessful lifestyle modifications
 - risks: myopathy and hepatotoxicity – must follow LFTs q6-12mo
 - other agents: bile acid sequestrants, nicotinic acid, fibrates, psyllium, cholesterol absorption inhibitors (e.g. ezetimibe)
- after initiating drug therapy
 - monitor ALT, AST, CK, Cr at baseline then 6 wk later for signs of transaminitis or myositis; tolerate rise in CK up to 10 times upper limit of normal (2-3 times upper limit of normal if symptomatic), or serum creatinine of ≤25%; repeat ALT, AST, and CK with lipid blood work
 - fasting lipids should be measured at 3 mo
 - if adequate response is achieved, evaluate fasting lipids q6-12mo
- isolated hypertriglyceridemia (does not increase your cardiovascular risk)
 - normal HDL-C and TC, elevated TG
 - mild ≥2.2 mmol/L (≥85 mg/dL); marked ≥5.6 mmol/L (≥217 mg/dL)
 - principal therapy is lifestyle modification
 - weight loss, exercise, avoidance of smoking and alcohol, effective blood glucose control in diabetics, increased omega-3 fatty acid intake
 - severe hypertriglyceridemia (typically ≥10 mmol/L [≥387 mg/dL]) is associated with an increased risk of acute pancreatitis
 - drug therapy (used to prevent pancreatitis, NOT CVD)
 - nicotinic acid
 - fibrates



Clinical Definition of Metabolic Syndrome

- Central obesity:
 - Men – waist circumference ≥37 in
 - Women – waist circumference ≥31.5 in
- Plus any TWO of the following four factors:

Risk Factor	Defining Level
TG level	≥1.7 mmol/L (150 mg/dL)
HDL-C level:	
Men	<1.0 mmol/L (40 mg/dL)
Women	<1.3 mmol/L (50 mg/dL)
Blood pressure	≥130/85 mmHg
Fasting glucose level	≥5.6 mmol/L (100 mg/dL)



To calculate Framingham Risk Score, go to <http://www.framinghamheartstudy.org/risk-functions/cardiovascular-disease/10-year-risk.php#>



Use with caution when prescribing combined statin and fibrate therapy as there has been concern regarding the safety of certain combinations



Statin-Related Adverse Events: A Meta-Analysis

Clin Ther 2006;28:26-35

Study: Meta-analysis of 18 RCTs (N=71,108)

focused on adverse effects of statins.

Patients: Those taking statin monotherapy for primary or secondary prevention of CVD.

Intervention: Statin vs. placebo.

Main Outcome: Adverse events (AE) including elevated liver enzymes or myopathy (myalgias, elevated CK, rhabdomyolysis).

Results: Statin therapy increased the risk of any AE by 39% (OR 1.4; 95% CI 1.09-1.80; p=0.008) compared with placebo. Treating 1,000 patients with a statin would cause 5 AE. Serious events (CK >10 times the upper limit of normal or rhabdomyolysis) are infrequent (NNH 3,400) and rhabdomyolysis, although serious, is rare (NNH 7,428).

Conclusion: Statin therapy was associated with greater odds of AEs compared with placebo but with substantial clinical benefit. Similar rates of serious AEs were observed between statin and placebo.



The Benefits of Statins in People Without Established Cardiovascular Disease but with Cardiovascular Risk Factors: Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials

Brit Med J 2009;338:b2376

Study: Meta-analysis of 10 RCTs.

Population: 70,388 participants (minimum of 80% without established cardiovascular (CV) disease).

Intervention: Statins, placebo, active control, usual care.

Main Outcome: All-cause mortality. Other outcomes: major coronary events, major cerebrovascular events.

Results: Statin use significantly reduced the incidence of all-cause mortality (OR 0.88; 95% CI 0.81-0.96), major coronary events (OR 0.70; 95% CI 0.61-0.81), and major cerebrovascular events (OR 0.81; 95% CI 0.71-0.93).

Conclusion: Statins largely reduce the risk of major CV events and improve survival in patients with CV risk factors without established CV disease.

Exercise

Epidemiology

- 25% of the population exercises regularly, 50% occasionally, 25% are sedentary
- screen time (time spent watching TV/movies, playing video games, or using the computer) has been increasing steadily in the last several years, while time spent being physically active has been decreasing
- current recommendation from international pediatric societies is that children (>2 yr old) should limit their screen time to less than 2 h/d

Management

- assess current level of fitness, motivation, and access to exercise
- encourage warm up and cool down periods to allow transition between rest and activity and to avoid injuries
- exercise with caution for patients with CAD, DM (risk of hypoglycemia), exercise-induced asthma
- patients with known CAD should have cardiac assessment prior to commencing exercise
- AAFP recommends that physicians counsel patients to meet recommended levels of physical activity
- key recommendations from Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans (2008) (available from <http://www.health.gov/PAGuidelines/guidelines/>)
 - adults: ≥ 150 min of moderate- to vigorous-intensity aerobic physical activity per wk, or ≥ 75 min of vigorous activity, or an equivalent combination of moderate-to-vigorous activity, in bouts of ≥ 10 min. For additional benefits, can increase to 300 min of moderate intensity or 150 min of vigorous intensity aerobic physical activity
 - ♦ moderate-intensity: brisk walking, bike riding
 - ♦ vigorous-intensity: jogging, cross-country skiing
 - children and adolescents: ≥ 60 min of moderate-to vigorous-intensity aerobic physical activity daily (with vigorous activity at least 3x wk)
 - older adults (65 yr and older): same as adult guidelines; in addition individuals with poor mobility should perform physical activities to aid with balance and prevent falls
 - ♦ when older adults cannot meet the adult guidelines due to chronic illness, they should be as physically active as their abilities and conditions allow
 - every age group: muscle and bone strengthening activities using major muscle groups,
 - ♦ adults and older adults: ≥ 2 d/wk
 - ♦ children and adolescents: ≥ 3 d/wk
- benefits of exercise
 - reduces risk of premature death, heart disease, stroke, HTN, certain types of cancer, type 2 DM, osteoporosis, and overweight/obesity
 - leads to improved fitness, strength, and mental health (morale and self-esteem)

Smoking Cessation

Epidemiology

- smoking is the single most preventable cause of premature illness and death
 - each yr, 440,000 deaths in the US are attributable to smoking or second-hand smoking exposure
- 70% of smokers see a physician each year, but only 28% receive advice or assistance from their physician regarding quitting
- of the 46 million current US smokers, 70% say they would like to quit, but without help only 5% actually quit
- most smokers try to quit on their own (without using evidence-based approaches), and >95% relapse

Management

- general approach
 - the AAFP encourages family physicians to ask about smoking, and then to act to help them quit
 - ♦ identify tobacco users; elicit smoking habits, previous quit attempts and results
 - AAFP Clinical Preventive Service Recommendation - Tobacco Use
 - ♦ clinicians should screen all adults for tobacco use and provide tobacco cessation interventions for those who use tobacco products (Grade A recommendation, 2009)
 - ♦ clinicians should screen all pregnant women for tobacco use and provide 5-15 min of smoking cessation counseling using messages and self-help materials tailored for pregnant smokers (Grade A recommendation, 2003)
 - every smoker should be offered treatment
 - ♦ combining counseling and smoking cessation medication is more effective than either alone (Grade 1A)
 - ♦ individual, phone, and group counseling are effective modalities of counseling (effectiveness increases with treatment intensity); combining two or more components is especially effective
 - make patient aware of withdrawal symptoms
 - ♦ low mood, insomnia, irritability, anxiety, difficulty concentrating, restlessness, decreased heart rate, increased appetite
 - ≥ 4 counseling sessions >10 min each with 6-12 mo follow-up yields better results
 - 14% abstinent with counseling vs. 10% without counseling
 - approach depends on patient's stage of change (see *Motivational Strategies for Behavioral Change*, FM6)



Physician Advice for Smoking Cessation

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;5:CD000165

This systematic review of 17 trials compared brief advice by the physician vs. no advice.

Conclusions: Simple advice can increase cessation rates by 1-3%. More intensive advice and providing follow-up support may further increase the quit rates.



Assist Patient in Developing Quit Plan

STAR

Set quit date

Tell family and friends (for support)

Anticipate challenges (e.g. withdrawal)

Remove tobacco-related products (e.g. ashtrays/lighters)

- willing to quit
 - provision of social support, community resources (self-help, group, helpline, web-based strategies)
 - pregnant patients: counseling is recommended as 1st line treatment, as there is insufficient data regarding safety and effectiveness of nicotine replacement therapies (NRT) in this population
- pharmacologic therapy
 1. nicotine replacement therapy
 - 19.7% abstinent at 12 mo with NRT vs. 11.5% for placebo
 - no difference in achieving abstinence for different forms of NRT
 - reduces cravings and withdrawal symptoms without other harmful substances that are contained in cigarettes
 - use with caution: immediate post-MI, serious/worsening angina, serious arrhythmia
 - advise NO smoking while using NRT
 2. antidepressants (note: mode of action appears to be independent of antidepressant effect)
 - Bupropion SR (Zyban®)
 - ♦ 21% abstinent at 12 mo vs. 8% for placebo
 - ♦ no advantage for NRT vs. bupropion (similarly effective)
 - Nortriptyline (2nd line, not officially approved for smoking cessation)
 - ♦ effectiveness comparable to bupropion
 3. Varenicline (Champix®)
 - partial nicotinic receptor agonist (to reduce cravings) and partial competitive nicotinic receptor antagonist (to reduce the response to smoked nicotine)
 - more effective than bupropion (23% abstinent from 9-52 wk with varenicline vs. 16% for bupropion vs. 9% with placebo)

Table 6. Types of Nicotine Replacement Therapy

Type	Dosage	Comment	Side Effects
Nicotine Gum (OTC)	2 mg if <25 cig/d 4 mg if >25 cig/d 1 piece q1-2h for 1-3 mo (max 24 pieces/d)	Chew until "peppery" taste then "park" between gum and cheek to facilitate absorption Continue to chew-park intermittently for 30 min	Mouth soreness Hiccups Dyspepsia Jaw ache Most are transient
Nicotine Patch (OTC)	Use for 8 wk 21 mg/d x 4 wk 14 mg/d x 2 wk 7 mg/d x 2 wk	Start with lower dose if <10 cig/d Change patch q24h and alternate sides	Skin irritation Insomnia Palpitations Anxiety
Nicotine Inhaler (OTC)	6-16 cartridges/d for up to 12 wk	Nicotine inhaled through mouth, absorbed in mouth and throat not in lungs	Local irritation Coughing
Nicotine Nasal Spray (Rx)		Newer form of NRT	Local irritation, coughing

Table 7. Pharmacologic Treatments for Smoking Cessation

Drug	Mechanism	Dosage	Prescribing*	Contraindications
Bupropion	Inhibits re-uptake of dopamine and/or norepinephrine Side effects: insomnia, dry mouth	1. 150 mg qAM x 3 d 2. Then 150 mg bid x 7-12 wk 3. For maintenance consider 150 mg bid for up to 6 mo	1. Decide on a quit date 2. Continue to smoke for first 1-2 wk of treatment and then completely stop (therapeutic levels reached in 1 wk)	Seizure disorder Eating disorder MAOI use in past 14 d Simultaneous use of bupropion (Wellbutrin®) for depression
Nortriptyline (2nd line)	Inhibits adrenergic re-uptake (may also inhibit serotonin/histamine re-uptake) Side effects: drowsiness, dry mouth, constipation	1. Initial titration before the quit attempt (10-28 d) 2. Then 12-wk therapeutic dose of 70-100 mg daily	Usually prescribed when 1st line treatments have been unsuccessful	Acute recovery period following MI MAOI use in past 14 d
Varenicline	Partial nicotinic receptor agonist, and partial nicotinic receptor competitive antagonist • Side effects: N/V, constipation, headache, dream disorder, insomnia, increased risk of psychosis, depression, suicidal ideation	1. 0.5 mg qAM x 3 d 2. Then 0.5 mg bid x 4 d 3. Continue 1 mg bid x 12 wk ± additional 12 wk as maintenance	1. Decide on a quit date 2. Continue to smoke for first wk of treatment and then completely stop	Caution with pre-existing psychiatric condition

*May be used in combination with nicotine replacement therapy

**Nicotine Replacement Therapy for Smoking Cessation**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012; 11:CD000146

This systematic review of 132 randomized trials compared NRT to placebo or no treatment or compared different NRT doses.

Conclusions: All commercially available forms of NRT (gum, transdermal patch, nasal spray, inhaler, and sublingual tablets/lozenges) are effective as part of a strategy to promote smoking cessation. They increase the rate of quitting by 50-70% regardless of setting and independent on the level of additional support provided to the smoker. Compared to a single form of NRT, combining a nicotine patch with a rapid delivery form of NRT may be more effective.

**Antidepressants for Smoking Cessation**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2014;1:CD000031

This systematic review of 90 randomized trials compared antidepressant medication to placebo or alternative pharmacotherapy for smoking cessation and where follow-up was longer than 6 mo.

Conclusions: The antidepressants bupropion and nortriptyline can aid smoking cessation and have a similar efficacy to NRT. Bupropion is less effective than varenicline. Neither SSRIs (e.g. fluoxetine) nor MAOIs aid smoking cessation.

**Nicotine Partial Receptor Agonists for Smoking Cessation**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;4:CD006103

Conclusions: Varenicline increases the chances of quitting, although absolute quit rates were modest in two recent trials. Varenicline at standard dose increased the chances of successful long-term smoking cessation between two- and threefold compared with pharmacologically unassisted quit attempts. Lower dose regimens also conferred benefits for cessation, while reducing the incidence of adverse events. More participants quit successfully with varenicline than with bupropion.

**The 2-3 Pattern of Smoking Cessation**

- Onset of withdrawal is 2-3 h after last cigarette
- Peak withdrawal is at 2-3 d
- Expect improvement of withdrawal symptoms at 2-3 wk
- Resolution of withdrawal at 2-3 mo
- Highest relapse rate within 2-3 mo

- unwilling to quit
 - motivational intervention (5 Rs)
 1. Relevance to patient
 - ♦ relevant to patient's disease status or risk, family or social situation (e.g. having children in the home), health concerns, age, gender
 2. Risks of smoking
 - ♦ short-term: SOB, asthma exacerbation, impotence, infertility, pregnancy complications, heartburn, URTI
 - ♦ long-term: MI, stroke, COPD, lung CA, other cancers
 - ♦ environmental: higher risk in spouse/children for lung CA, SIDS, asthma, respiratory infections
 3. Rewards: benefits
 - ♦ improved health, save money, food tastes better, good example to children
 4. Roadblocks: obstacles
 - ♦ fear of withdrawal, weight gain, failure, lack of support
 5. Repetition
 - ♦ reassure unsuccessful patients that most people try many times before successfully quitting (average number of attempts before success is 7)
- recent quitter
 - highest relapse rate within 3 mo of quitting
 - ♦ minimal practice: congratulate on success, encourage ongoing abstinence, review benefits and problems
 - ♦ prescriptive interventions: address problem of weight gain, negative mood, withdrawal, lack of support

Alcohol

- see [Psychiatry](#), PS19

Definition

- diagnostic categories occur along a continuum

Epidemiology

- 10-15% of patients in family practice are problem drinkers
- more likely to miss diagnosis in women or elderly patients with high socioeconomic status

Assessment

- screen for alcohol dependence with CAGE questionnaire
 - if CAGE positive, explore with further questions for alcohol abuse/dependence
- assess drinking profile
 - setting, time, place, occasion, with whom
 - impact on: family, work, social
 - quantity-frequency history
 - ♦ how many drinks per d?
 - ♦ how many days per wk?
 - ♦ maximum number of drinks on any 1 d in the past month?
- if identified positive for alcohol problem
 - screen for other drug use
 - identify medical/psychiatric complications
 - ask about drinking and driving
 - ask about past recovery attempts and current readiness for change

Investigations

- GGT and MCV for baseline and follow-up monitoring
- AST, ALT (usually AST:ALT approaches 2:1 in an alcoholic)
- CBC (anemia, thrombocytopenia), INR (decreased clotting factor production by liver)

Management

- intervention should be consistent with patient's motivation for change
- regular follow-up is crucial
- 10% of patients in alcohol withdrawal will have seizures or delirium tremens
- Alcoholics Anonymous/12-steps program
 - outpatient/day programs for those with chronic, resistant problems
 - family treatment (Al-Anon, Alateen, screen for spouse/child abuse)
- in-patient program if
 - dangerous or highly unstable home environment
 - severe medical/psychiatric problem



Standard Drink Equivalents

One standard drink = 14 g of pure alcohol

- Beer (5% alcohol) = 12 oz
- Wine (12-17% alcohol) = 5 oz
- Fortified wine = 3 oz
- Hard liquor (40%) = 1.5 oz



CAGE Questionnaire

C Have you ever felt the need to **CUT** down on your drinking?

A Have you ever felt **ANNOYED** at criticism of your drinking?

G Have you ever felt **GUILTY** about your drinking?

E Have you ever had a drink first thing in the morning to steady your nerves or get rid of a hangover?

(**EYE OPENER**)

≥2 for men or ≥1 for women suggests possibility of problem drinking (sensitivity 85%, specificity 89%)



Some Adverse Medical Consequences of Problem Drinking

- GI: gastritis, dyspepsia, pancreatitis, liver disease, bleeds, diarrhea, oral/esophageal cancer
- Cardiac: HTN, alcoholic cardiomyopathy
- Neurologic: Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, peripheral neuropathy
- Hematologic: anemia, coagulopathies
- Other: trauma, insomnia, family violence, anxiety/depression, social/family dysfunction, sexual dysfunction, fetal damage

- addiction to drug that may require in-patient detoxification
- refractory to other treatment programs
- pharmacologic
 - diazepam for withdrawal
 - disulfiram (Antabuse®): impairs metabolism of alcohol by blocking conversion of acetaldehyde to acetic acid, leading to flushing, headache, N/V, hypotension if alcohol is ingested
 - naltrexone: competitive opioid antagonist that reduces cravings and pleasurable effects of drinking
 - ♦ may trigger withdrawal in opioid-dependent patients

Prognosis

- relapse is common and should not be viewed as failure
- monitor regularly for signs of relapse
- 25-30% of abusers exhibit spontaneous improvement over 1 yr
- 60-70% of individuals with jobs and families have an improved quality of life 1 yr post-treatment



Key Definitions for Alcohol

What is moderate alcohol consumption?

Moderate alcohol consumption is defined as up to 1 drink per d for women and up to 2 drinks per d for men.

What is heavy or high-risk drinking?

Heavy or high-risk drinking is the consumption of more than 3 drinks on any day or more than 7 per wk for women and more than 4 drinks on any day or more than 14 per wk for men.

What is binge drinking? Binge drinking is the consumption within 2 h of 4 or more drinks for women and 5 or more drinks for men.

U.S. Department of Agriculture and U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. In: Dietary Guidelines for Americans, 2010. Chapter 3 – Foods and Food Components to Reduce, 7th Edition, Washington, DC: US Government Printing Office; 2010, p. 30–32.

Common Presenting Problems

Abdominal Pain

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G4 and [General Surgery](#), GS4

Epidemiology

- 20% of individuals have experienced abdominal pain within the last 6-12 mo
- 90% resolve in 2-3 wk
- only 10% are referred to specialists, of those <10% admitted to hospital

Etiology

- most common diagnosis is “nonspecific abdominal pain,” which has no identifiable cause and is usually self-limited
- GI disorders (e.g. PUD, pancreatitis, IBD, appendicitis, gastroenteritis, IBS, diverticular disease, biliary tract disease)
- urinary tract disorders (e.g. UTI, renal calculi)
- gynecological disorders (e.g. PID, ectopic pregnancy, endometriosis)
- cardiovascular disorders (e.g. CAD, AAA, ischemic bowel)
- other: medications (e.g. NSAIDs), alcohol, toxic ingestion, foreign body, psychogenic

Pathophysiology

- type of pain
 - somatic pain: sharp, localized pain
 - visceral pain: dull, generalized pain
- location of pain
 - epigastric (foregut): distal esophagus, stomach, proximal duodenum, biliary tree, pancreas, liver
 - periumbilical (midgut): distal duodenum to proximal 2/3 of transverse colon
 - hypogastric (hindgut): distal 1/3 of transverse colon to rectosigmoid region

Investigations

- guided by findings on history and physical
- possible blood work: CBC, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, amylase, lipase, AST, ALT, ALP, bilirubin, glucose, INR/PTT, tox screen, β-hCG
- imaging
 - CXR (for free air under the diaphragm) in setting of perforation in surgical abdomen
 - abdominal x-ray, KUB (consider: gas pattern, free air, kidney stones, constipation)
 - ultrasound (gallbladder disease, gynecological problems, liver disease, pancreatitis, diverticular disease, appendicitis)
 - CT scan (AAA, appendicitis)
- other tests
 - urinalysis
 - endoscopy (for peptic ulcers, gastritis, tumors, etc.)
 - *H. pylori* testing (urea breath test, serology, biopsy)



In patient age >50, keep a high index of suspicion for AAA – its presentation may mimic renal colic or diverticulitis



If pain precedes N/V, cause of abdominal pain is more likely to be surgical



Abdominal Pain Red Flags

- Severe pain
- Signs of shock
- Peritoneal signs
- Abdominal distention
- Pain out of proportion to clinical findings
- New onset pain, change in pain, or altered bowel habits in elderly
- Weight loss
- Blood per rectum/melena
- Anemia
- Supraclavicular nodes
- Family history of serious bowel disease

Allergic Rhinitis

- see [Otolaryngology](#), OT24

Definition

- inflammation of the nasal mucosa that is triggered by an allergic reaction
- classification
 - seasonal
 - ♦ symptoms during a specific time of the yr
 - ♦ common allergens: trees, grass and weed pollens, airborne molds
 - perennial
 - ♦ symptoms throughout the yr with variation in severity
 - ♦ common allergens: dust mites, animal dander, molds

Etiology

- increased IgE levels to certain allergens → excessive degranulation of mast cells → release of inflammatory mediators (e.g. histamine) and cytokines → local inflammatory reaction

Epidemiology

- affects approximately 40% of children and 20-30% of adults
- prevalence has increased in developed countries, particularly in the past two decades
- associated with asthma, eczema, sinusitis, and otitis media

Assessment

- identify allergens
- take an environmental/occupational history
- ask about related conditions (e.g. atopic dermatitis, asthma, sinusitis, and family history)

Management

- conservative
 - minimize exposure to allergens
 - ♦ most important aspect of management, often sufficient (may take months)
 - maintain hygiene, saline nasal rinses
- pharmacologic agents
 - oral antihistamines – first line therapy for mild symptoms
 - ♦ e.g. cetirizine (Reactine®), fexofenadine (Allegra®), loratadine (Claritin®)
 - intranasal corticosteroids for moderate/severe or persistent symptoms (>1 mo of consistent use to see results)
 - intranasal decongestants (use must be limited to <5 d to avoid rhinitis medicamentosa)
- allergy skin testing
 - for patients with chronic rhinitis
 - symptoms not controlled by allergen avoidance, pharmacological therapy
 - may identify allergens to include in immunotherapy treatment
- immunotherapy (allergy shots)
 - reserved for severe cases unresponsive to pharmacologic agents
 - consists of periodic (usually weekly) subcutaneous injections of custom prepared solutions of one or more antigens to which the patient is allergic



Differential Diagnosis

- Acute viral infection
- Vasomotor rhinitis
- Deviated septum
- Nasal polyps
- Acute/chronic sinusitis
- Drug-induced rhinitis



Rhinitis medicamentosa: Rebound nasal congestion. Occurs with prolonged use (>5-7 d) of vasoconstrictive intranasal medications. Patient may become dependent, requiring more frequent dosing to achieve the same decongestant effect

Amenorrhea

- see [Gynecology](#), G9



Anxiety

- see [Psychiatry](#), PS10



Epidemiology

- 25-30% of patients in primary care settings have psychiatric disorders
- many are undiagnosed or untreated; hence the need for good screening
- high rate of coexistence of anxiety disorders and depression

Screening

- screening questions
 - Do you tend to be an anxious or nervous person?
 - Have you felt unusually worried about things recently?
 - Has this worrying affected your life? How?

Assessment

- associated symptoms
- risk factors
 - family history of anxiety or depression, past history of anxiety, stressful life event, social isolation, female, comorbid psychiatric diagnosis (e.g. depression)
- assess substance abuse, comorbid depression, stressful life events, trauma, suicidal ideation/self-harm
- to differentiate anxiety disorders, consider symptoms (panic attacks, specific situations/stressors, excessive worry about common concerns, repetitive thoughts and/or behaviors to neutralize the anxiety) and their duration

Generalized Anxiety Disorder 7-item (GAD - 7) scale to assess level of anxiety

Management

- patient education: emphasize prevalence, good recovery rate of anxiety conditions
- lifestyle advice: decrease caffeine and alcohol intake, exercise, relaxation techniques, mindfulness strategies
- self-help materials, community resources (e.g. support groups)
- CBT: cognitive interventions, exposure therapy, etc.
- treat any underlying medical and/or comorbid conditions
- provide support to family and caregivers
- for pharmacotherapy, see [Psychiatry](#), PS47



Differential Diagnosis of Anxiety Disorders

- Panic disorder
- GAD
- Social Anxiety Disorder (previously Social Phobia)
- Agoraphobia
- Specific phobia
- Selective Mutism
- Separation Anxiety Disorder
- Other: AMC, mood disorder, psychotic disorder, OCD, PTSD



Rule Out

- Cardiac (post MI, arrhythmias)
- Endocrine (hyperthyroidism, DM, pheochromocytoma)
- Respiratory (asthma, COPD)
- Somatoform disorders
- Psychotic disorders
- Mood disorders (depression, bipolar)
- Personality disorder (OCPD)
- Drugs (amphetamines, thyroid preparations, caffeine, OTC for colds/decongestants, alcohol/benzodiazepine withdrawal)



Symptoms of GAD

AND I C REST

Anxious, nervous, or worried
 No control over the worry
 Duration >6 mo
 Irritability
 Concentration impairment
 Restlessness
 Energy decreased
 Sleep impairment
 Tension in muscles

Can Fam Physician 2005;51:1340-1342

Asthma/COPD

- see [Respirology](#), R7



Definition

- asthma
 - chronic but reversible airway inflammation characterized by periodic attacks of wheezing, SOB, chest tightness, and coughing
 - airways hyper-responsive to triggers/antigens leading to acute obstructive symptoms by bronchoconstriction, mucous plugs, and increased inflammation
 - cannot be diagnosed at first presentation; called reactive airway disease until recurrent presentations
 - pulmonary function tests (PFTs) can be done from age 6 or when child able to follow instructions to do PFTs
 - peak flow meters are useful in the office and at home for monitoring
- chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)
 - a group of chronic, progressive, expiratory lung diseases characterized by limited airflow with variable degrees of air sac enlargement and lung tissue destruction
 - emphysema and chronic bronchitis are the most common forms of COPD

Table 8. Differentiating COPD from Asthma

	COPD	Asthma
Age of Onset	Usually in 6th decade	Any age (but 50% of cases diagnosed in children age <10)
Role of Smoking	>10 pack yr	Not causal, known trigger
Reversibility of Airflow Obstruction	Airflow obstruction is chronic and persistent	Airflow obstruction is episodic and usually reversible with therapy
Evolution	Slow, progressive worsening (with periodic exacerbations)	Stable, episodic, less than 50% will outgrow
History of Allergy	Infrequent	Over 50% patients
Precipitators	Environmental irritants (air pollution), cigarette smoking, α -1 antitrypsin deficiency, viral infection, occupational exposure (firefighters, dusty jobs)	Environmental irritants (dust, pollen), animal fur, cold air, exercise, URTIs, cigarette smoke, use of β -blockers/ASA
Symptoms/Signs	Chronic cough, sputum, and/or dyspnea	Wheeze (hallmark symptom), dyspnea, chest tightness, cough which is worse in cold, at night, and in early AM, prolonged expiration
Diffusion Capacity	Decreased (more so in pure emphysema)	Normal (for pure asthma)
Hypoxemia	Chronic in advanced stages	Not usually present
		Episodic with severe attacks
Spirometry	May have improvement with bronchodilators but not universally seen	Marked improvement with bronchodilators or steroids

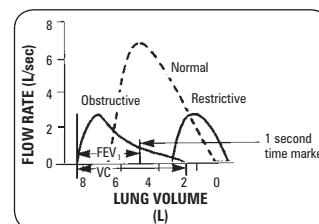


Figure 3. Expiratory flow volume curves (obstructive, normal, and restrictive disease)

See [Respirology](#), R4. Adapted from: Weinberger SE. Principles of pulmonary medicine, 5th ed. With permission from Elsevier. ©2008.



Signs of Poorly Controlled Asthma

- β_2 agonist use >4x/wk
- Asthma-related absence from work/school
- Exercise induced asthma
- Night-time symptoms >1x/wk

Table 8. Differentiating COPD from Asthma (continued)

	COPD	Asthma
Chest X-Ray	Often normal Increased bronchial markings (chronic bronchitis) and chronic hyperinflation (emphysema) often co-exist, bullae	Often normal or episodic hyperinflation Hyperinflation during asthma attack
Management	Mild Step 1: SABA prn (salbutamol) Step 2: SABA prn + LAAC (i.e. tiotropium) or + LABA (e.g. salmeterol) Moderate Step 3: SABA prn + LAAC + low-dose combined ICS/LABA; consider inhaled vs. oral steroids Severe Step 4: \pm theophylline Pneumococcal vaccination, annual influenza immunization	Ongoing patient education, and environmental control SABA taken prn as rescue medication + maintenance meds Maintenance medications: Step 1: Low-dose ICS Step 2: Medium/high-dose ICS or low-dose ICS plus either LABA, LT modifier, or long-acting theophylline Step 3: Medium/high-dose ICS plus either LABA, LT modifier, or long-acting theophylline Step 4: As above plus immunotherapy \pm oral glucocorticosteroids + pneumococcal vaccination, annual influenza immunization

LAAC = long-acting anticholinergic; LABA = long-acting β -agonist; LT modifier = leukotriene modifier; SABA = short-acting β -agonist



What Color is Your Inhaler?

Name	Body/Cap Color
β_2-Agonists	
Salbutamol – Ventolin®	light blue/navy
Salmeterol – Serevent®	teal/light teal
Terbutaline – Bricanyl®	blue/white
ICS	
Fluticasone – Flovent®	orange/peach
Budesonide – Pulmicort®	white/brown
Combined Long-Acting β_2-Agonist + ICS	
Fluticasone/Salmeterol – purple discus Advair®	purple discus
Budesonide/Formoterol – red/white Symbicort®	red/white
Ipratropium/Albuterol – clear/orange Combivent®	clear/orange
Anticholinergics	
Ipratropium – Atrovent®	clear/green
Tiotropium – Spiriva®	white/turquoise

Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia

- see [Urology, U7](#)

Definition

- hyperplasia of the stroma and epithelium in the periurethral transition zone

History and Physical

- include current/past health, surgeries, trauma, current and OTC meds
- specific urinary symptoms
- physical exam must include DRE for size, symmetry, nodularity, and texture of prostate (prostate is symmetrically enlarged, smooth, and rubbery in BPH)

Investigations

- urinalysis to exclude UTI and for microscopic hematuria (common sign)
- serum PSA: protein produced by prostatic tissue, see [Urology, U25](#)
 - values
 - ♦ <4.0 ng/mL: normal, but must take into account patient's age and velocity of PSA increase
 - ♦ 4-10 ng/mL: consider measuring free/total PSA
 - ♦ >10 ng/mL: high likelihood of prostate pathology
 - PSA testing is inappropriate in men with a life expectancy less than 10 yr or patients with prostatitis, UTI
 - increased PSA in a younger man is more often due to cancer than other causes
 - abnormal DRE or PSA should trigger further assessment
 - discuss test with men at increased risk of prostate cancer (FHx, African ancestry) or who are concerned about development of prostate cancer
 - decision to test PSA in an asymptomatic man should involve discussion about the risks and possible benefits
- other tests
 - Cr, BUN
 - post-void residual volume by ultrasound
 - renal ultrasound
 - patient voiding diary
- tests NOT recommended as part of routine initial evaluation include
 - cystoscopy
 - cytology
 - prostate ultrasound or biopsy
 - IVP
 - urodynamic studies



More About Inhalers

- Aerosols (puffers=MDI, MDI + spacer)
MDIs should be used with spacers to:
 - Reduce side effects
 - Improve amount inhaled
 - Increase efficiency of use
- Dry Powder Inhaler (discus, turbuhaler and diskhaler), they require deep and fast breathing (may not be ideal for children)
- Nebulizers can be used to convert liquid medications into a fine mist: recommended for use if contraindications to MDIs



Differential Diagnosis of Wheezing

- Allergies, anaphylaxis
- Asthma, reactive airway disease
- GERD
- Infections (bronchitis, pneumonia)
- Obstructive Sleep Apnea
- COPD
- Less common: congestive heart disease, foreign body, malignancy, cystic fibrosis, vocal cord dysfunction



When prescribing salbutamol, watch out for signs of **hypokalemia**: lethargy, irritability, paresthesias, myalgias, weakness, palpitations, N/V, polyuria



Self-Management Asthma and COPD Education and Written Action Plan

- Education is a key component in management of asthma and COPD
- Guided self-management combining education, regular medical review, self-assessment, and written action plan have been shown to reduce hospitalizations, ER visits, and missed days at work or school
- Sample action plans available online: <http://www.respiratoryguidelines.ca>

Table 9. Symptoms and Complications of BPH

Obstructive Symptoms	Irritative Symptoms	Late Complications
Hesitancy (difficulty starting urine flow) Diminution in size and force of urinary stream Stream interruption (double voiding) Urinary retention (bladder does not feel completely empty) Post-void dribbling Overflow incontinence Nocturia	Urgency Frequency Nocturia Urge incontinence Dysuria	Hydronephrosis Loss of renal concentrating ability Systemic acidosis Renal failure

Management

- referral to urologist if moderate/severe symptoms
- conservative: for patients with mild symptoms or moderate/severe symptoms considered by the patient to be non-bothersome
 - fluid restriction (avoid alcohol and caffeine)
 - avoidance/monitoring of certain medications (e.g. antihistamines, diuretics, antidepressants, decongestants)
 - pelvic floor/Kegel exercises
 - bladder retraining (scheduled voiding)
- pharmacological: for moderate/severe symptoms
 - α -receptor antagonists (e.g. terazosin [Hytrin[®]], doxazosin [Cardura[®]], tamsulosin [Flomax[®]], alfuzosin [Xatral[®]])
 - ♦ relaxation of smooth muscle around the prostate and bladder neck
 - 5- α reductase inhibitor (e.g. finasteride [Proscar[®]])
 - ♦ only for patients with demonstrated prostatic enlargement due to BPH
 - ♦ inhibits enzyme responsible for conversion of testosterone into dihydrotestosterone (DHT) thus reducing growth of prostate
 - phytotherapy (e.g. saw palmetto berry extract, *Pygeum africanum*)
 - ♦ more studies required before this can be recommended as standard therapy
 - ♦ considered safe
- surgical
 - TURP (transurethral resection of the prostate), TUIP (transurethral incision of the prostate, for prostates <30 g)
 - ♦ absolute indications: failed medical therapy, intractable urinary retention, benign prostatic obstruction leading to renal insufficiency
 - ♦ complications: impotence, incontinence, ejaculatory difficulties (retrograde ejaculation), decreased libido

**Differential Diagnosis**

- Prostate cancer
- Urethral obstruction
- Bladder neck obstruction
- Neurogenic bladder
- Overactive bladder
- Cystitis
- Prostatitis

**Prostate Cancer Mortality at 11 Yr of Follow-Up**

NEJM 2012;366:981-90

Study: Updated "ERSPC" study – multicenter randomized trial of screening for prostate cancer using PSA.

Patients: 162,388 men, age 55-69 from 8 different European countries.

Intervention: PSA-based screening.

Main Outcome: Mortality from prostate cancer.

Results: In screening group, RRR = 21%

ARR = 1.07 deaths/1,000 men

NNT = 1,055 – therefore to prevent one death from prostate cancer, 1,055 men would need to be screened.

Bronchitis (Acute)

Definition

- acute infection of the tracheobronchial tree causing inflammation leading to bronchial edema and mucus formation

Epidemiology

- 5th most common diagnosis in family medicine, most common is URTI

Etiology

- 80% viral: rhinovirus, coronavirus, adenovirus, influenza, parainfluenza, respiratory syncytial virus (RSV)
- 20% bacterial: *M. pneumoniae*, *C. pneumoniae*, *S. pneumoniae*

Investigations

- acute bronchitis is typically a clinical diagnosis
- sputum culture/Gram stain is not very informative
- CXR if suspect pneumonia (cough >3 wk, abnormal vital signs, localized chest findings) or CHF
- PFT with methacholine challenge if suspect asthma

Management

- primary prevention: frequent hand washing, smoking cessation, avoid irritant exposure
- symptomatic relief: rest, fluids (3-4 L/d when febrile), humidity, analgesics and antitussives as required
- bronchodilators may offer improvement of symptoms (e.g. salbutamol)
- current literature does not support routine antibiotic treatment for the management of acute bronchitis because it is most likely to be caused by a viral infection
 - antibiotics may be useful if elderly, comorbidities, suspected pneumonia, or if the patient is toxic (see *Antimicrobial Quick Reference*, FM53)
 - antibiotics in children show no benefit

**Differential Diagnosis of Bronchitis**

- URTI
- Asthma
- Acute exacerbation of chronic bronchitis
- Sinusitis
- Pneumonia
- Bronchiolitis
- Pertussis
- Environmental/occupational exposures
- Post-nasal drip
- Others: GERD, CHF, cancer, aspiration syndromes, CF, foreign body

**How to Tell if Viral or Bacterial?**

Bacterial infections tend to give a higher fever, excessive amounts of purulent sputum production, and may be associated with concomitant COPD

Note: Purulent sputum is not necessarily bacterial

Chest Pain

- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery](#), C4 and [Emergency Medicine](#), ER21



Differential Diagnosis

Table 10. Differential Diagnosis of Chest Pain

Cardiac	Pulmonary	GI	MSK/Neuro	Psychologic
Angina*	Hemothorax*	Cholecystitis	Arthritis	Anxiety
Aortic dissection*	Lung CA	Esophageal spasm	Costochondritis	Depression
Endocarditis	PE*	GERD	Herpes zoster	Panic
MI*	Pneumonia	Hepatitis	Intercostal strain	
Myocarditis	Pneumothorax*	Perforated viscus*	Rib fractures	
Pericarditis*	Pulmonary HTN	PUD	Trauma	

*Emergent

Investigations

- ECG, CXR, and others if indicated (cardiac enzymes, d-dimers, liver function tests [LFTs], etc.)
- refer to ED if suspect serious etiology (e.g. aortic dissection, MI)

Management of Common Causes of Chest Pain

- angina/ischemic heart disease
 - nitroglycerin (NTG): wait 5 min between sprays and if no effect after 3 sprays, send to ED
- myocardial infarction
 - ASA (160-325 mg, chewed stat), clopidogrel (Plavix*), LMWH (enoxaparin), morphine, oxygen, NTG
 - \pm reperfusion therapy with fibrinolytics (e.g. tPA, RPA, TNK, or SK) if within 12 h (ideally <30 min) or percutaneous intervention (cath lab) if <90 min
 - start β -blocker (e.g. metoprolol starting dose 25 mg PO q6h or bid, titrating to HR goal of 55-60 bpm)
- endocarditis: antibiotic choice is based on whether patient has a native or prosthetic heart valve as well as culture and sensitivity results
- GERD: antacids, H₂ blockers, PPIs, patient education
- costochondritis: NSAIDs

Treatment of Stable Ischemic Heart Disease

- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery](#), C26

Common Cold (Acute Rhinitis)

- see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID8 (Pneumonia and Influenza)



Definition

- viral URTI with inflammation

Epidemiology

- most common diagnosis in family medicine, peaks in winter months
- incidence: adults = 2-4/yr, children = 6-10/yr
- organisms
 - mainly rhinoviruses (30-35% of all colds)
 - others: coronavirus, adenovirus, RSV, influenza, parainfluenza, coxsackie virus
- incubation: 1-5 d
- transmission: person-person contact via secretions on skin/objects and by aerosol droplets

Risk Factors

- psychological stress, excessive fatigue, allergic nasopharyngeal disorders, smoking, sick contacts

Clinical Features

- symptoms
 - local: nasal congestion, clear to mucopurulent secretions, sneezing, sore throat, conjunctivitis, cough
 - general: malaise, headache, myalgias, mild fever
- signs
 - boggy and erythematous nasal/oropharyngeal mucosa, enlarged lymph nodes
 - normal chest exam



Risk Factors for CAD

Major

- Smoking
- DM
- HTN
- Hyperlipidemia
- Family history of early CAD in first degree relative (males <55 yr, females <65 yr)
- Untreated obstructive sleep apnea
- Chronic kidney disease

Minor

- Obesity
- Sedentary lifestyle
- Age



Ruling Out CAD in Primary Care

CMAJ 2010;182(12):1295-1300

Components of the prediction rule used to determine the presence or absence of CAD in patients with chest pain in primary care:

- Age/sex (female ≥ 65 , male ≥ 55): 1 pt
 - Known clinical vascular disease (coronary artery disease, occlusive vascular disease, or cerebrovascular disease): 1 pt
 - Pain worse during exercise: 1 pt
 - Pain not reproducible by palpation: 1 pt
 - Patient assumes pain is of cardiac origin: 1 pt
- Positive result: 3-5 pts; negative result: ≤ 2 pts (sensitivity: 87.1%, specificity: 80%)



High-Risk Symptoms and Signs of Chest Pain include:

- Severe pain
- Pain for >20 min
- New onset pain at rest
- Severe SOB
- Loss of consciousness
- Hypotension
- Tachycardia
- Bradycardia
- Cyanosis



MI in Elderly Women

Elderly women can often present with dizziness, back pain, lightheadedness, or weakness, in the absence of chest pain



MI in Diabetics

May present with dyspnea, syncope, and fatigue in the absence of chest pain



Influenza vs. Colds: A Guide to Symptoms

Features	Flu	Cold
Onset of illness	Sudden	Slow
Fever	High fever	None
Exhaustion level	Severe	Mild
Cough	Dry severe or hacking	\pm
Throat	Fine	Sore
Nose	Dry and clear	Runny
Head	Achy	Headache-free
Appetite	Decreased	Normal
Muscles	Achy	Fine
Chills	Yes	No

- complications
 - secondary bacterial infection: otitis media, sinusitis, bronchitis, pneumonia
 - asthma/COPD exacerbation

Differential Diagnosis

- allergic rhinitis, pharyngitis, influenza, laryngitis, croup, sinusitis, bacterial infections

Management

- patient education
 - symptoms peak at 1-3 d and usually subside within 1 wk
 - cough may persist for days to weeks after other symptoms disappear
 - no antibiotics indicated because of viral etiology
 - secondary bacterial infection can present within 3-10 d after onset of cold symptoms
- prevention
 - frequent hand washing, avoidance of hand to mucous membrane contact, use of surface disinfectant
 - yearly influenza vaccination
- symptomatic relief
 - rest, hydration, gargling warm salt water, steam, nasal irrigation (spray/pot)
 - analgesics and antipyretics: acetaminophen, ASA (not in children because risk of Reye's syndrome)
 - cough suppression: dextromethorphan or codeine if necessary (children under 6 yr of age should not use any cough/cold medications)
 - decongestants, antihistamines
 - zinc lozenge use may help to reduced the duration of cold symptoms
- patients with reactive airway disease will require increased use of bronchodilators and inhaled steroids



Zinc for the Treatment of the Common Cold: A Systemic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials

CMAJ 2012;184:E551-561

Study: Meta-analysis of 17 randomized control trials with a total of 2,121 participants.

Patients: All populations.

Intervention: Orally administered zinc vs. placebo or no treatment.

Results: Patients receiving zinc had a shorter duration of cold symptoms compared with those given placebo (mean difference -1.65 d). Zinc shortened the duration of symptoms in adults but no significant difference was seen in children. Adverse events such as nausea were more common in the zinc group (RR 1.640).



Echinacea for Preventing and Treating the Common Cold

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2014;2:CD000530

This systematic review of 24 trials assessed the effect of Echinacea in preventing and treating common colds. Trials compared preparations containing Echinacea with placebo, no treatment, or an alternative common cold treatment.

Conclusions: Echinacea products have not been shown to provide benefits for treating colds, although, it is possible there is a weak benefit from some Echinacea products. Individual prophylaxis trials consistently show positive (if non-significant) trends, although potential effects are of questionable clinical relevance.



Concussion/Mild Traumatic Brain Injury

- see [Neurosurgery](#), NS29, and [Emergency Medicine](#), ER7
- a useful tool for the assessment of individuals and athletes with concussion is the Sport Concussion Assessment Tool, 3rd edition (SCAT3), *Br J Sports Med* 2013;47:259

Contraception

- see [Gynecology](#), GY16

Table 11. Methods of Contraception

	Advantages	Disadvantages
Combined OCP (e.g. Alesse®, Tri-Cyclen®)	99.9% effective with perfect use, 97-99% with typical use, cycle control, ↓ dysmenorrhea, ↓ menstrual flow, ↓ ovarian cancer, ↓ endometrial cancer, ↓ risk of fibroids, ↓ acne, ↓ hirsutism	Irregular bleeding, systemic hormonal side effects (breast tenderness, nausea, mood changes), no STD protection, slightly increased risk of venous thromboembolism (VTE), MI, stroke, decreased quantity of breast milk postpartum **Diane 35 is to be used for the treatment of severe acne ONLY, and not for OCP
Progestin Only Pill (e.g. Micronor®)	At least 95% effective with perfect use, no increased risk of VTE, MI, or stroke, suitable for postpartum	Hormonal side effects (see Combined OCP) Irregular bleeding, no STD protection, contraceptive reliability requires taking pill at the same time each d (within 3 h), no pill free interval
Transdermal Patch (e.g. Evra®)	Same as OCP, easy to use, changed weekly, 99% effective with correct use	Same as OCP, skin irritation
NuvaRing® (inserted by patient)	Same as OCP, easy to use (in for 3 wk, out for 1 wk), less systemic hormonal side effects, 99% effective with correct use	Same as OCP, vaginitis, some women may be uncomfortable with self-insertion
DMPA IM progesterone injection q12wk (e.g. DepoProvera®)	99.7% effective against pregnancy, infrequent dosing, ↓ menstrual flow or amenorrhea, ↓ risk of endometrial cancer	Irregular bleeding, delayed return of fertility, no STD protection, systemic hormonal side effects (most common is headache), weight gain, ↓ bone mineral density (check after 5 yr)
Male Condom	97% effective against pregnancy and STDs when used properly; when used properly WITH spermicide they are close to 99.9% effective, no Rx required	Latex allergy, irritation, only effective before the expiry date, must be applied properly, can only be used once
Diaphragm	92-96% effective with perfect use, non-hormonal, female-controlled method of contraception, ↓ risk of cervical cancer	Must be left in for 6 h after intercourse, must be used with spermicide, incomplete STD protection, latex allergy, must be fitted by health care worker, ↑ risk of UTI, risk of toxic shock syndrome
Sponge	One-size-fits-all barrier method, does not require fitting by MD, available in pharmacies, 90% effective without a condom, 98% effective with a condom	Relatively expensive, only ~60% effective in parous women, incomplete STD protection, risk of toxic shock syndrome

Table 11. Methods of Contraception (continued)

	Advantages	Disadvantages
Intrauterine Device (IUD)	99% effective against pregnancy, effective for 5 yr, no daily regimen required, can be easily removed, ideal in post-partum women	No STD protection, ↑ relative risk of PID in first mo, must be inserted by MD, risk of post-insertion vaso-vagal response, risk of uterine rupture is 0.6-1.6/1,000, 2-10% expulsion rate
Levonorgestrel (e.g. Mirena®)	Spotting, less systemic hormonal side effects than OCP	Hormonal side effects are possible with levonorgestrel IUD, but less than OCP (see combined OCP), expensive (~\$400)
Copper IUD (e.g. Nova T®)	↓ risk of endometrial cancer, less expensive than Mirena® (~\$170)	Irregular bleeding or ↑ menstrual flow with copper IUD, 6-20% women discontinue use in first 5 yr because of pain or ↑ bleeding
Fertility Awareness/Natural Family Planning (e.g. symptothermal method)	Effectiveness: 95-98% with perfect use, 75-88% with typical use, increased awareness of gynecological health, reasonable for couples for whom an unplanned pregnancy would be acceptable	High probability of failure if not used consistently and correctly, no STD protection
Lactational Amenorrhea	Can be effective in breastfeeding women if menses not returned, fully or nearly fully breastfeeding baby and baby is under 6 mo old	Not effective if infant receives any food supplementary to breastfeeding Must breastfeed regularly, even through the night (at least q6h) Most effective is breastfeeding q2-3h

EMERGENCY CONTRACEPTION

- hormonal EC (Yuzpe® or Plan B®, usually 2 doses taken 12 h apart) or post-coital IUD insertion
- hormonal EC is effective if taken within 72 h of unprotected intercourse (reduces chance of pregnancy by 75-85%), most effective if taken within 24 h, does not affect an established pregnancy
- post-coital IUDs inserted within 5 d of unprotected intercourse are significantly more effective than hormonal EC (reduces chance of pregnancy by ~99%)
- pregnancy test should be performed if no menstrual bleeding within 21 d of either treatment
- advance provision of hormonal EC increases the use of EC without decreasing the use of regular contraception
- pharmacists across Canada can dispense Plan B® OTC



Absolute Contraindications to Estrogen Containing Contraception (Combined OCP/Transdermal Patch/Nuvaring)

- Known/suspected pregnancy
- Undiagnosed abnormal vaginal bleeding
- Thromboembolic disorders (e.g. previous DVT, PE)
- Cerebrovascular disease or CAD
- Estrogen dependent tumors (breast, uterus)
- Impaired liver function with acute liver disease
- Congenital hypertriglyceridemia
- Smoker age > 35 yr
- Migraines with focal neurological symptoms
- Uncontrolled HTN

Cough

History and Physical

- duration (chronic - 8 wk), onset, frequency, quality (dry vs. productive), sputum characteristics, provoking/relieving factors, recent changes
- associated symptoms: fever, dyspnea, hemoptysis, wheezing, chest pain, orthopnea, PND, rhinitis, reflux, post-nasal drip
- constitutional symptoms: fever, chills, fatigue, night sweats
- risk factors: smoking, occupation, exposure, family history of lung CA or other CA, TB status, recent travel
- medications (e.g. ACEI, β-blockers), allergies
- PMH: lung (asthma, COPD, CF), heart (CHF, MI, arrhythmias), chronic illness, GI (reflux)
- vitals including O₂ saturation, respiratory exam, HEENT and precordial exam

Investigations

- guided by findings on history and physical
 - consider throat swab, CXR, PFTs, upper GI series, sputum culture test for acid-fast bacilli (if TB is suspected)



Differential Diagnosis

Common Causes

- Upper airway cough syndrome (post-nasal drip)
- Asthma/COPD
- GERD
- Non-asthmatic eosinophilic bronchitis

Other Causes

- ACEI
- Aspiration
- Bronchiectasis
- Cystic fibrosis
- Chronic interstitial lung disease
- CHF
- Lung/laryngeal cancer
- Pertussis
- Psychogenic
- Restrictive lung disease
- TB, atypical mycobacterium, and other chronic lung infections

Dementia (Major Neurocognitive Disorder)

- see [Psychiatry, PS17](#)



Epidemiology

- 10% in patients over the age of 65, 25% in patients over the age of 85, 50% in patients over the age of 90
- prevalence increases with age, Down syndrome, and head trauma
- differential diagnosis: Alzheimer's dementia, vascular dementia, Lewy-Body dementia, frontotemporal dementia

Investigations

- history, physical exam, MMSE, MOCA (best screening test), dementia quick screen (see sidebar)
- investigations are completed to exclude reversible causes of dementia and should be selected based on the clinical circumstances
- CBC, liver enzymes, TSH, renal function tests, serum electrolytes, serum calcium, serum glucose, vitamin B₁₂, folate, VDRL, HIV, head CT

Management

- treat and prevent reversible causes
- provide orientation cues (e.g. calendars, clocks) and optimize vision and hearing
- family education, counseling, and support (respite programs, group homes)
- pharmacologic therapy: NMDA receptor antagonists and cholinesterase inhibitors slow rate of cognitive decline; low-dose neuroleptics and antidepressants can be used to treat behavioral and emotional symptoms
- 20% of patients develop clinical depression, most commonly seen in vascular dementia

Depression

- see [Psychiatry](#), PS6

Etiology

- often presents as non-specific complaints (e.g. sleep disturbance, chronic fatigue, pain)
- depression is a clinical diagnosis and tests are done in order to rule out other causes of symptoms
- 2/3 of depressed persons may not receive appropriate treatment for their depression
- identification and early treatment improve outcomes

Screening Questions

- the AAFP recommends screening adults for depression when staff-assisted depression care supports are available (Grade B)
 - “staff-assisted depression care supports” refers to clinical staff that assist the primary care physician in providing direct depression care and/or coordination, case management, or mental health treatment
- if staff-assisted depression care supports are not available, the AAFP recommends against routine screening of adults (Grade C) (note: there may be considerations that support screening for depression in an individual patient)
 - “Are you depressed?” (high specificity and sensitivity)
 - “Have you lost interest or pleasure in the things you usually like to do?” (anhedonia)
 - “Do you have problems sleeping?”
- for geriatric population, use the Geriatric Depression Scale (GDS) short form for screening

Assessment

- risk factors: see [Psychiatry](#), PS7
- personal or family history of depression
- medications and potential substance abuse problems
- high risk suicidality/homicidality
 - fill out Form 1 (in Ontario): application by physician to hospitalize a patient against his/her will for psychiatric assessment (up to 72 h)
- functional impairment (e.g. work, relationships)
- at least 5 out of 9 criteria including at least one of anhedonia or depressed mood ≥ 2 wk for actual diagnosis to be met (see sidebar)
- validated depression rating scales: Beck's depression inventory, Zung's self-rating depression scale, Children's depression inventory, Geriatric Depression Scale, Personal Health Questionnaire Depression Scale (PHQ-9)
- routine medical workup (physical exam, CBC, TSH, ferritin, folate, B₁₂, electrolytes, urinalysis, glucose, etc.)

Treatment

- goal: full remission of symptoms and return to baseline psychosocial function
- phases of treatment
 - acute phase (8-12 wk): relieve symptoms and improve quality of life
 - maintenance phase (6-12 mo after symptom resolution): prevent relapse/recurrence, must stress importance of continuing medication treatment for full duration to patients
- treatment can consist of pharmacotherapy alone or psychotherapy alone
- combination of antidepressant drug therapy and psychotherapy results in synergistic effects
- treatment of youth (age 10-21)
 - for mild depression, a period of active support and monitoring before initiating treatment is recommended
 - fluoxetine is first line among SSRIs (most evidence)
 - ♦ monitor closely for adverse effects such as suicidal ideation and behavior
 - psychotherapy
 - ♦ CBT or interpersonal therapy (IPT) alone can be used for mild depression
 - ♦ psychotherapy plus medication is recommended for moderate to severe depression
 - treatment should continue for at least 6 mo
 - ♦ ongoing management should include assessment in key domains (school, home, social setting)
 - ♦ reassessment and referral recommended if no improvement after 6-8 wks of treatment
- for adolescents with moderate/severe depression and coexisting psychosis and/or substance abuse, consider referral



Dementia Quick Screen

- 3 simple tests, takes about 2 min
- Use when suspect mild cognitive impairment or when patient is at high risk
- Screen involves:
 1. 3 word recall (normal = recalls 2-3 words)
 2. Naming animals in 1 min (normal = > 12 in one min)
 3. Clock Drawing – including numbers and hands so time shows 10 min past 11 (normal = correct number/hand placing, or only minor spacing problems)

Interpretation: If all 3 results within normal range, cognitive impairment unlikely. If any results abnormal, possible cognitive impairment, further evaluation necessary.



Must Ask About/Rule Out

- Suicidal/homicidal ideation
- Psychosis
- Substance use/abuse/withdrawal
- Anxiety
- Bipolar/manic/hypomanic episodes
- Bereavement
- Intimate partner violence
- Post-partum depression
- Organic cause



Differential Diagnosis

- Other psychiatric disorders (e.g. anxiety, personality, bipolar, adjustment disorder, schizoaffective, seasonal affective disorder, substance abuse/withdrawal)
- Cancer (50% of patients with tumors, especially of brain, lung, and pancreas, develop symptoms of depression before the diagnosis of cancer is made)
- Chronic fatigue syndrome
- Early dementia
- Endocrine (e.g. hyper/hypothyroidism, DM, adrenal disorders)
- Infections (mononucleosis)
- Liver failure, renal failure
- Medication side effects (β -blockers, benzodiazepines, glucocorticoids, interferon)
- Menopause
- Neurological (Parkinson's, MS)
- Vitamin deficiency (pernicious anemia, pellagra)

Table 12. Common Medications

Class	Examples	Action	Side Effects	Notes
SSRI	paroxetine (Paxil®) fluoxetine (Prozac®) sertraline (Zoloft®) citalopram (Celexa®) fluvoxamine (Luvox®) escitalopram (Cipralex®)	Block serotonin reuptake	Sexual dysfunction (impotence, decreased libido, delayed ejaculation, anorgasmia), headache, GI upset, weight loss, tremors, insomnia, fatigue, increase QT interval (baseline ECG is suggested)	First line therapy for youth is fluoxetine; paroxetine is not recommended for youth (controversial)
SNRI	venlafaxine (Effexor®) duloxetine (Cymbalta®)	Block serotonin and NE reuptake	Insomnia, tremors, tachycardia, sweating	
SDRI	bupropion (Wellbutrin®)	Block dopamine and NE reuptake	Headache, insomnia, nightmares, seizures, less sexual dysfunction than SSRIs	Often chosen for lack of sexual side effects, can be used for augmentation of anti-depressant effects with other classes of medication
TCA	amitriptyline (Elavil®)	Block serotonin and NE reuptake	Sexual dysfunction, weight gain, tremors, tachycardia, sweating	Narrow therapeutic window, lethal in overdose

Prognosis

- up to 40% resolve spontaneously within 6-12 mo
- risks of recurrence: 50% after 1 episode; 70% after 2 episodes; 90% after 3 episodes

Diabetes Mellitus

- see [Endocrinology, E6](#)
- see 2014 American Diabetes Association Clinical Practice recommendations, available from <http://professional.diabetes.org/ResourcesForProfessionals.aspx?cid=84160>

Epidemiology

- incidence of type 2 DM is rising dramatically as a result of an aging population, rising rates of obesity, and sedentary lifestyles
- leading cause of new-onset blindness and renal dysfunction
- adults with DM are twice as likely to die prematurely, compared to persons without DM

Risk Factors

- type 1 DM
 - personal or family history of autoimmune disease
- type 2 DM
 - first degree relative with DM
 - age ≥40
 - obesity (especially abdominal), HTN, hyperlipidemia, CAD, vascular disease
 - prior GDM, macrosomic baby (>8 lb 13 oz)
 - PCOS
 - history of IGT or IFG
 - presence of complications associated with DM
 - presence of associated diseases: PCOS, acanthosis nigricans, psychiatric disorders, HIV
 - medications: glucocorticoids, atypical antipsychotics, HAART
- both
 - member of a high risk population (e.g. Aboriginal, Hispanic, Asian, or African descent)

Diagnosis

- persistent hyperglycemia is the hallmark of all forms of DM

**Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors in Pregnancy and Infant Outcomes**

Arch Gen Paediatr Child Health 2011;16(9):562
SSRI use during the first trimester of pregnancy is not found to increase risk of major congenital malformations overall. Paroxetine use in the first trimester may be associated with increased risk of cardiovascular malformation, but studies have been inconclusive. Other SSRIs may increase the risk of specific birth defects and further, sufficiently powered studies are required to assess this. SSRI neonatal behavioral syndrome, consisting of central nervous system, respiratory, motor, and gastrointestinal symptoms, is seen in 10-30% of newborns exposed to SSRIs in late gestation. The syndrome is generally mild and self-limited but may be more severe in up to 10% of infants. The most concerning possible association of exposure to SSRIs during the second half of pregnancy is PPHN, although the absolute rate is likely less than 1%.

**Criteria for Depression (≥5/9 with at least one of anhedonia or depressed mood for ≥2 wk)****M-SIGECAPS**

- M** Depressed Mood
- S** Increased/decreased Sleep
- I** Decreased Interest
- G** Guilt
- E** Decreased Energy
- C** Decreased Concentration
- A** Increased/decreased Appetite and weight
- P** Psychomotor agitation/retardation
- S** Suicidal ideation

Common Antidepressants and Dosing

Drug	Starting Dose	Maximum Dose
citalopram (Celexa®)	10-20 mg PO OD	40 mg PO OD
escitalopram (Cipralex®)	5-10 mg PO OD	20 mg PO OD
fluoxetine (Prozac®)	20 mg PO qam	80 mg PO OD
paroxetine (Paxil®)	20 mg PO qam	50 mg PO OD
sertraline (Zoloft®)	25-50 mg PO OD	200 mg PO OD
fluvoxamine (Luvox®)	50 mg PO qhs	300 mg PO OD
venlafaxine (Effexor®)	37.5 mg PO OD	375 mg PO OD
(Effexor XR®)	37.5 mg PO OD	225 mg PO OD
bupropion (Wellbutrin®-immed)	150 mg PO bid	450 mg PO OD
(Sustained release)	150 mg PO qam	400 mg PO OD
amitriptyline (Elavil®)	25 mg PO qhs	300 mg PO OD
mirtazapine (Remeron®)	15 mg PO qhs	45 mg PO OD

**Combined Pharmacotherapy and Psychological Treatment for Depression: A Systematic Review**

Arch Gen Psychiatry 2004;61:714-719

Study: Systematic review of randomized clinical trials.

Patients: 16 trials comprising 1,842 patients.

Intervention: Antidepressant treatment alone vs. combination of psychological intervention and antidepressant therapy.

Main Outcomes: Efficacy of and adherence to therapy.

Results: Overall, combined therapy was significantly more effective than antidepressant therapy alone (OR 1.86; 95% CI 1.38-2.52), however there was no difference in the rate of dropouts and non-responders in either treatment arm. In studies lasting >12 wk, combined therapy showed a reduction in dropouts compared to non-responders (OR 0.59; 95% CI 0.39-0.88).

Table 13. Diagnosis of Prediabetes and Diabetes

Condition	Diagnostic Criteria
DM	One of the following on 2 occasions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Random BG ≥ 200 mg/dL OR • Fasting BG ≥ 126 mg/dL OR • BG 2 h post 75 g OGTT ≥ 200 mg/dL OR HbA1c $\geq 6.5\%$ (in adults) **If asymptomatic (and meet any of the above criteria) a repeat test must be done to confirm the diagnosis. If symptomatic (fatigue, polyuria, polydipsia, unexplained weight loss), the diagnosis is made with one test.
Impaired Fasting Glucose (IFG)	Fasting BG = 110-124 mg/dL
Impaired Glucose Tolerance (IGT)	BG 2 h post 75 g OGTT = 141-198 mg/dL

Screening

- type 2 DM
 - FBG in everyone ≥ 40 q3yr, or at high risk using the CANRISK calculator
 - more frequent and/or earlier testing if presence of ≥ 1 risk factor (see above)
- GDM (see [Obstetrics, OB14](#))
 - all pregnant women between 24-28 wk gestation

Goals of Therapy

Table 14. Goals of Therapy in Diabetes

General	Avoid complications (e.g. ketoacidosis, hyperglycemia, infection) Prevent long-term complications (microvascular and macrovascular) Minimize negative sequelae associated with therapies (e.g. hypoglycemia, weight gain)
Fasting or Preprandial BG	Ideal: 72-126 mg/dL Suboptimal: 128-180 mg/dL; action may be required Inadequate: > 180 mg/dL; action required
HbA1c	$\leq 7\%$ or $\leq 6.5\%$ in some type 2 DM patients at risk for nephropathy Suboptimal: 7-8.4% Inadequate: $> 8.4\%$
2 h Postprandial BG	90-180 mg/dL if HbA1c target met 90-144 mg/dL if HbA1c target not met
Blood Pressure	$< 130/80$ in adults (DM and HTN guidelines)
Lipids	LDL < 36 mg/dL Triglycerides < 27 mg/dL Total cholesterol/HDL ratio < 72 mg/dL

Assessment and Monitoring

Table 15. Assessment and Monitoring

	Initial Assessment	q2-4mo	Annually
History	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Symptoms of hyperglycemia, ketoacidosis, hypoglycemia • Past medical history • Functional inquiry • Family history • Risk factors • Medications • Sexual function • Lifestyle 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DM-directed history • Screen for awareness and frequency of hypoglycemia and DKA • Glucose monitoring • Use of insulin and oral agents 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DM-directed history • Screen for awareness and frequency of hypoglycemia and DKA • Glucose monitoring • Use of insulin and oral agents • Sexual function • Lifestyle counseling • Psychosocial issues
Physical Exam	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • General: Ht, Wt, BMI, BP, WC • Head and neck: funduscopy, thyroid exam • Cardiovascular exam: signs of PVD, pulses, bruits • Abdominal exam (e.g. for organomegaly) • Hand/foot/skin exam • Neurological exam 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wt, BP, BMI, WC • Foot exam for sensation (using a 10 g monofilament), ulcers, or infection 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Complete neurological exam for peripheral neuropathy • Remainder of exam as per PHE



DM Related Symptoms

Hyperglycemia: polyphagia, polydipsia, polyuria, weight change, blurry vision, yeast infections

Diabetic Ketoacidosis (DKA): fruity breath, anorexia, N/V, fatigue, abdominal pain, Kussmaul breathing, dehydration

Hypoglycemia: hunger, anxiety, tremors, palpitations, sweating, headache, fatigue, confusion, seizures, coma



Long-Term Complications of DM

- Microvascular: nephropathy, retinopathy, neuropathy
- Macrovascular: CAD, CVD, PVD



Screening for Microvascular Complications

- **Nephropathy**
 - Urine ACR, serum Cr – type 2: at diagnosis, then annually; type 1: 5 yr after diagnosis, then annually)
- **Retinopathy**
 - Ophthalmology consult – type 2: at diagnosis then ophtho follow-up q1-2yr; type 1: 5 yr after diagnosis, then annual follow-up



Long-Term Non-Pharmacological Weight Loss Interventions for Adults with Prediabetes

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2005;2:CD005270
A meta-analysis, using 9 studies comprising 5,168 patients, investigated the effectiveness of diet control, physical activity, behavioral weight programs, and weight control interventions in adults with pre-DM. The analysis was limited by heterogeneous patient populations, but when compared with usual care, weight loss was 2.8 kg and BMI decrease was 1.3 kg/m² at 1 yr. Modest but non-significant improvements in glycemic control, BP, and blood lipid concentrations were noted. Studies with a follow-up of 3-6 yr showed a significant decrease in DM onset when compared with controls.



Dietary Advice for Treatment of Type 2 DM in Adults

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2007;3:CD004097
A meta-analysis, using 36 articles reporting a total of 18 trials following 1,467 participants, showed that there is no high quality data on the efficacy of dietary treatment of type 2 DM. After 6 and 12 mo, adoption of exercise improved HbA1c.

Table 15. Assessment and Monitoring (continued)

	Initial Assessment	q2-4mo	Annually
Investigations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FBG, HbA1c, fasting lipids, Cr, microalbumin:creatinine ratio • ECG 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HbA1c q3mo • FBG as needed 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fasting lipid profile • Resting or exercise ECG if age >35 • Dipstick analysis for gross proteinuria; if negative: annual microalbuminuria screening with random albumin:creatinine ratio for type 2 DM and type 1 DM (5 yr post puberty) If positive: 24 h urine for endogenous creatinine clearance rate and microalbuminuria q6-12mo
Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nutritional and physical education • Consider referral to DM education program if available • Monitoring BG: explain methods and frequency • Medication counseling: oral hypoglycemics and/or insulin, method of administration, dosage adjustments • Pneumococcal vaccination • Ophthalmology consult <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • type 1 DM within 5 yr • type 2 DM at diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Assess progress towards long-term complications • Adjust treatment plan if necessary 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Calibrate home glucose monitor • Arrange ophthalmology follow-up annually for type 1 DM and q2yr for type 2 DM • Influenza vaccination annually

Nonpharmacologic Management

- diet
 - all diabetics should see a registered dietician
 - can reduce HbA1c by 1-2%
 - strive to attain healthy body weight
 - decrease combined saturated fats and trans-fatty acids to <10% of calories
 - avoid simple sugars, encourage complex carbohydrates, choose low glycemic-index foods
- physical activity and exercise
 - at least 150 min of aerobic exercise per wk, plus 2 sessions per wk of resistance exercise is recommended
 - encourage 30-45 min of moderate exercise 4-7 d/wk
 - promote cardiovascular fitness: increases insulin sensitivity, lowers BP, and improves lipid profile
 - if insulin treated, may require alterations of diet, insulin regimen, injection sites, and self-monitoring

Self-Monitoring of Blood Glucose

- type 1 DM: 3 or more self-tests/d is associated with a 1% reduction in HbA1c
- type 2 DM: recommendations vary based on treatment regimen (e.g. insulin dependent requires more frequent monitoring - refer to 2014 American Practice Guidelines)
- if FBG >252 mg/dL, perform ketone testing to rule out DKA
- if bedtime level is <126 mg/dL, have bedtime snack to reduce risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia

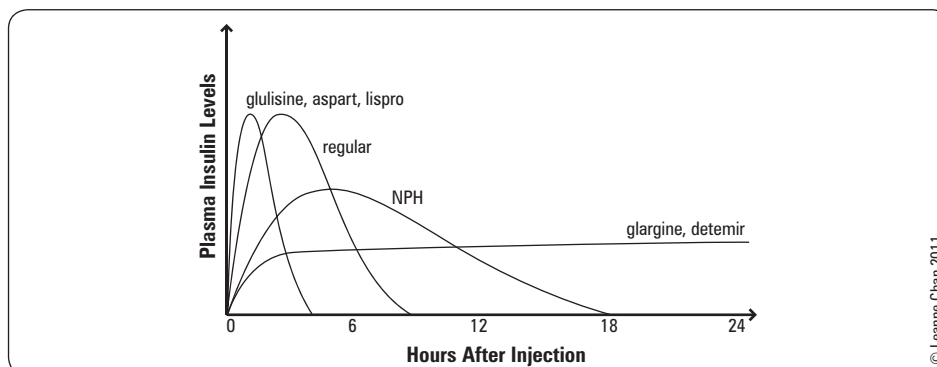


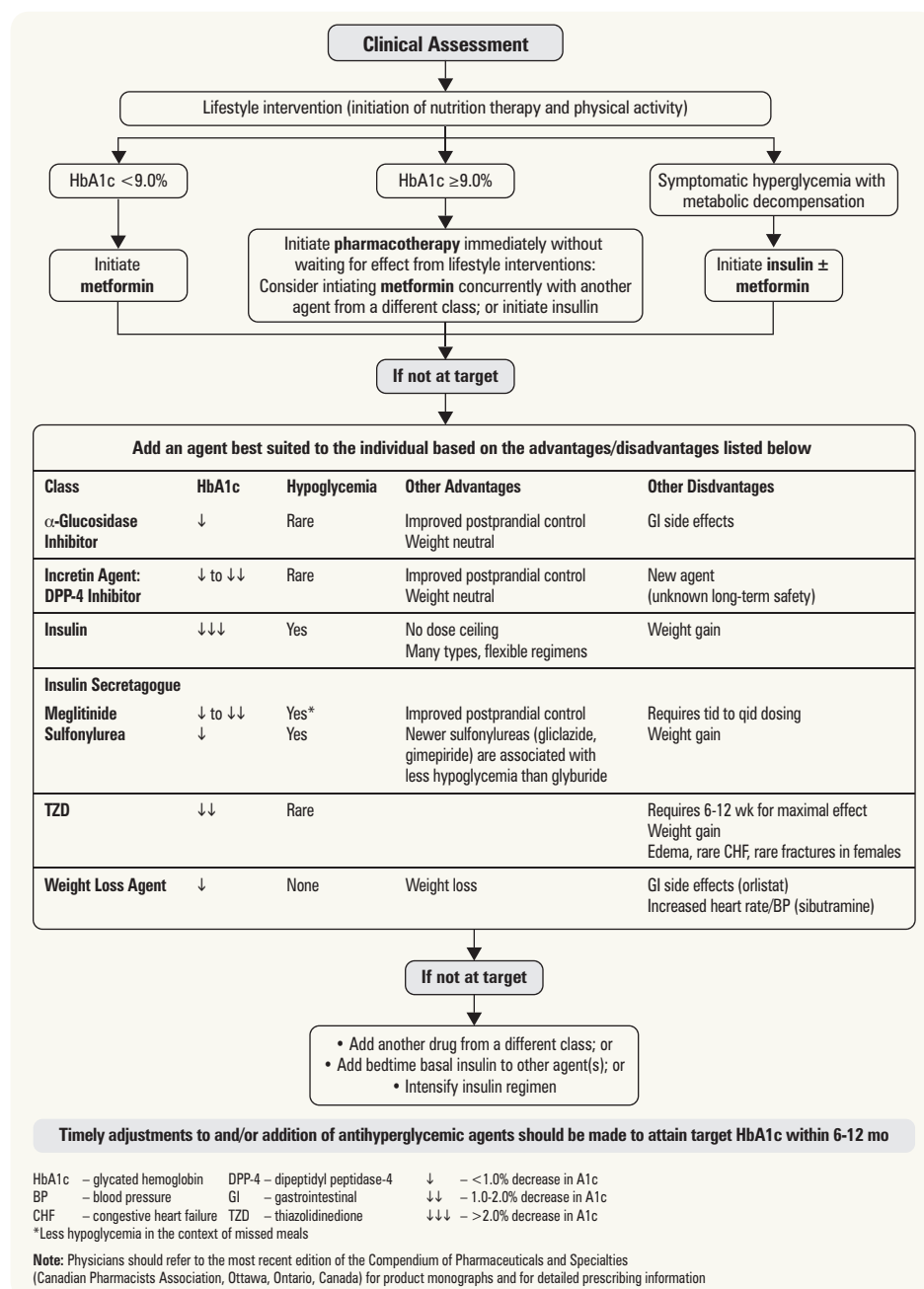
Figure 4. Types of insulin preparation



Calculate Total Insulin Required:

Type 1 DM: 0.5-0.7 units/kg/d

Type 2 DM: 0.3 units/kg/d



Metformin Monotherapy for Type 2 DM

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2005;3:CD002966

A Cochrane Review of 29 trials with 37 arms (5,259 participants) compared metformin with sulfonylureas, placebo, diet, thiazolidinediones, insulin, meglitinides, and glucosidase inhibitors. The authors concluded that metformin may prevent some vascular complications and mortality in overweight and obese type 2 DM patients and as such may be considered first line therapy. There is no evidence that the studied alternative therapies have more benefit for glycemia control, body weight, or lipids than does metformin.



Rosiglitazone Revisited: An Updated Meta-Analysis of Risk for Myocardial Infarction and Cardiovascular Mortality

Arch Intern Med 2010;170:1191-1201

11 yr after the introduction of rosiglitazone, the totality of randomized clinical trials continue to demonstrate increased risk for MI although not for CV or all-cause mortality. The current findings suggest an unfavorable benefit to risk ratio for rosiglitazone.

Figure 5. Management of hyperglycemia in type 2 diabetes

Canadian Diabetes Association Clinical Practice Guidelines Expert Committee. Pharmacologic Management of Type 2 Diabetes. *Can J Diabetes* 2013;37:S61-S68 (used with permission)

Hypoglycemic Agents (Type 2 DM)

- oral
 - biguanide: metformin (Glucophage®)
 - thiazolidinedione: troglitazone (Rezulin®), rosiglitazone (Avandia®), pioglitazone (Actos®)
 - α-glucosidase inhibitor: acarbose (Precose®)
 - nonsulfonylureas: nateglinide (Starlix®), repaglinide (Gluconorm®)
 - sulfonylureas: glyburide (DiaBeta®), glimepiride (Amaryl®), gliclazide (Diamicon®)
 - DPP-4 inhibitor: sitagliptin (Januvia®)
- injectable
 - GLP-1 analogue: liraglutide (Victoza®)

Other Medications Used in DM

- ACEI for
 - all hypertensive diabetics
 - elevated microalbuminuria (30-300 mg albumin in urine in 24 h)
 - overt nephropathy (>300 mg albumin in urine in 24 h)
- ARBs are second line for these conditions

- ASA 81 mg OD for secondary prevention of CVD (should not be used for primary prevention of CVD in people with DM)
- statins
 - as required to attain target lipid profile (LDL-C <36 mg/dL)

Diarrhea

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G15, and [Infectious Diseases](#), ID11



Definition

- passage of 3 or more loose or liquid stools in a day or more frequently than is normal for the individual (WHO definition)
- can be acute (<14 d duration) or chronic (>14 d duration)

Etiology and Clinical Features

- acute diarrhea
 - majority of cases are self-limiting
 - most commonly caused by viral infection (e.g. rotavirus, norovirus)
 - fever and bloody stools increase probability of bacterial infection
 - consider *C. difficile* infection if recent hospitalization, recent antibiotic use (e.g. broad spectrum antibiotics, fluoroquinolones, clindamycin), chronic use of PPIs, age >65, immunosuppression
- chronic diarrhea
 - most commonly of non-infectious etiology
 - common causes include drugs (e.g. laxatives, antibiotics), infection (e.g. bacteria, parasites), inflammation (e.g. IBD, diverticulitis), neoplasia (e.g. colon cancer), malabsorption (e.g. celiac disease), maldigestion (e.g. lactose intolerance), and idiopathic

Treatment

- acute diarrhea: ensure adequate hydration, treat underlying cause (e.g. antibiotics for bacterial infection)
- chronic diarrhea: nonspecific treatment often required before workup is complete
 - oral rehydration solution (if needed): offset electrolyte imbalances
 - lifestyle modification (dietary changes, exercise)
 - fiber (e.g. psyllium): commonly used as adjunctive treatment
 - antidiarrheal opiates (e.g. loperamide): most effective nonspecific treatment
 - should be used on a scheduled basis before meals rather than prn

Dizziness

- see [Otolaryngology](#), OT6



Epidemiology

- 70% see general practitioners initially; 4% referred to specialists
- frequency proportional to age; commonest complaint of ambulatory patients age >75

Differential Diagnosis

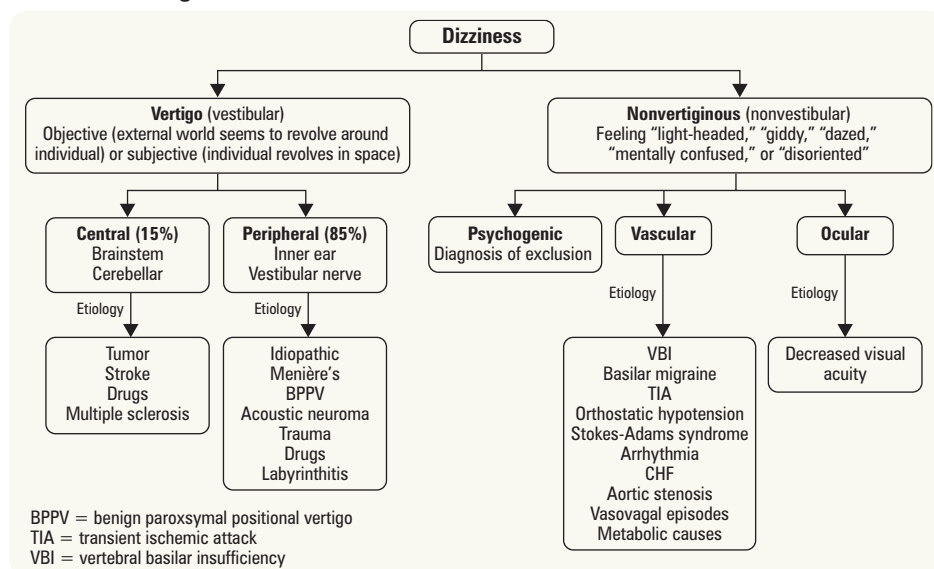


Figure 6. Differential diagnosis of dizziness

History

- clarify type of dizziness: vertigo, pre-syncope, disequilibrium, light-headedness
- duration (seconds, minutes, hours, days, weeks, or persistent)
- exacerbations
 - worse with head movement or eye closure (vestibular)
 - no change with head movement and eye closure (nonvestibular)
 - worse with exercise (cardiac/pulmonary causes)
- associated symptoms
 - neurologic (central)
 - transient diplopia, dysphagia, dysarthria, ataxia (TIA, VBI, migraine)
 - persistent headache, alterations in level of consciousness, sensory and/or motor deficits (CNS)
 - audiologic (peripheral)
 - hearing loss, tinnitus, otalgia, aural fullness
 - others
 - N/V (peripheral vestibular disorders)
 - SOB, palpitations (hyperventilation, cardiac problem)
- general medical history
 - HTN, DM, heart disease, fainting spells, seizures, cerebrovascular disease, migraines
 - ototoxic drugs: aminoglycosides (gentamicin, streptomycin, tobramycin), erythromycin, ASA, antimalarials
 - hypotension (secondary to diuresis): furosemide, caffeine, alcohol

Physical Exam/Investigations

- syncopal
 - cardiac (orthostatic changes in vitals), peripheral vascular, and neurologic exams
 - blood work, ECG, 24 h Holter, treadmill stress test, loop ECG, tilt table testing, carotid and vertebral doppler, EEG
- vertiginous
 - ENT and neurologic exams
 - Dix-Hallpike, consider audiometry and MRI if indicated
- non-syncopal, non-vertiginous
 - cardiac and neurologic exams
 - 3-min hyperventilation trial (patient is coached to hyperventilate until patient becomes dizzy to identify if symptoms are reproducible and confirm that hyperventilation is the etiology of the symptoms), ECG, EEG

Treatment

- guided by history, physical exam, and investigations
- include education, lifestyle modification, physical maneuvers (e.g. Epley for BPPV), symptomatic management (e.g. antiemetics), pharmacotherapy, and surgery
- refer when significant central disease is suspected, when vertigo of peripheral origin is persistent (lasting >2-4 wk), or if atypical presentation



DDx of Vertigo

	BPPV	Labyrinthitis	Menière's	Acoustic Neuroma
Onset	sudden	sudden	gradual	insidious
Duration	seconds	days	min-hours	chronic
Hearing	—	+	+	+
Loss	—	—	—	—
Tinnitus	—	+	+	+
Neuro Sx	—	—	—	+



Dix-Hallpike Test

- Have the patient seated with legs extended and head at 45° rotation
- Rapidly shift patient to supine position with head fully supported in slight extension (for 45 s)
- Observe for rotatory nystagmus and ask about sensation of vertigo

Domestic Violence/Elder Abuse

INTIMATE PARTNER VIOLENCE

Definition

- includes physical, sexual, emotional, psychological, and financial abuse (see [Emergency Medicine, ER29](#))

Epidemiology

- lifetime prevalence of intimate partner violence against women is between 25-30%
- women who experience abuse have increased rates of injury, death, and health consequences including 50-70% increase in gynecological, central nervous system, stress-related problems
- occurs in all socioeconomic, educational, and cultural groups with increased incidence in pregnancy, disabled women, and 18-24 age group
- 25-50% chance of child abuse or neglect in families where partner abuse occurs
- physician recognition rates as low as 5%

Presentation

- multiple visits with vague, ill-defined complaints such as: headaches, gastrointestinal symptoms, insomnia, chronic pain, hyperventilation
- may also present with injuries inconsistent with history

Management

- screen ALL patients
 - always have a high index of suspicion
 - asking about abuse is the strongest predictor of disclosure
 - several screening tools (see sidebar) exist to identify victims of partner violence
 - make sure to determine the victim's level of immediate and long-term danger and ask if there are weapons in the house
- ensure patient safety
 - victim most at risk for homicide when attempting to leave home or following separation
- provide community resources
 - safety planning includes ensuring that there is access to an exit in the home, establishing a safe place to go and having money, clothes, keys, medications, important documents, and other emergency items prepared should the patient need to leave quickly
 - shelter or helpline number with legal advocacy and counseling services
 - involve social workers or domestic violence advocates
- appointment for follow-up to assess whether condition is better or worse
- reassure patient she/he is not to blame and that the assault is a crime
 - goal is to convey the message that "As your doctor, I am concerned for your safety" and "Your partner has a problem that he/she needs help with" and "I want to help you"
 - reporting suspected or known child abuse is mandatory (see [Emergency Medicine, ER59](#))
 - spousal abuse is a criminal act, but not reportable without the woman's/man's permission
- DOCUMENT all evidence of abuse-related visits for medico-legal purposes

ELDER ABUSE

- see [Geriatric Medicine, GM4](#)

Dyspepsia

- see [Gastroenterology, G10](#)

Definition and Clinical Features

- defined as epigastric pain or discomfort
- can be associated with fullness, belching, bloating, heartburn, food intolerance, N/V

Epidemiology

- annual incidence 1-2%, prevalence 20-40%

Etiology

- common: functional, PUD, GERD, gastritis
- others: cholelithiasis, irritable bowel syndrome, esophageal or gastric cancer, pancreatitis, pancreatic cancer, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, and abdominal angina

History

- symptoms may not be useful in finding cause
- association with food, anorexia, N/V alcohol, NSAID use



How to Document Abuse

- Take photographs (with permission) of known or suspected injuries
- Use an injury location chart or "body map" when documenting physical findings
- Document any investigations ordered (e.g. x-ray)
- Write legibly or use a computer
- Record the patient's own words in quotation marks
- Avoid phrases that imply doubt about the patient's reliability (e.g. "patient claims that...")
- Record the patient's demeanor (e.g. upset, agitated)
- Record the time of day the patient is examined and how much time has elapsed since the abuse occurred



Screening Instruments for Domestic Violence

A) Woman Abuse Screening Tool (WAST)-SHORT

- In general how would you describe your relationship?
 - A lot of tension
 - Some tension
 - No tension
- Do you and your partner work out arguments with . . . ?
 - Great difficulty
 - Some difficulty
 - No difficulty

Endorsing either question 1 ("a lot of tension") or question 2 ("great difficulty") makes intimate partner violence exposure likely

B) HITS

- How often does your partner:
- Physically hurt you?
 - Insult you?
 - Threaten you with harm?
 - Scream or curse at you?

Each question on HITS to be answered on a 5 point scale ranging from 1 (= never) to 5 (= frequently)
A total score of 10.5 is significant



Investigations and Management

- lifestyle modifications: dietary changes, smaller and more frequent meals, avoid supine position right after meals, decreased EtOH consumption, smoking cessation
- empiric therapy: H₂ receptor blockers, PPIs for short periods of time (8 wk with taper)
- testing for *H. pylori*: serology, urea breath test
- upper endoscopy (preferred), upper GI series

Dyspnea

- see [Respirology, R3](#) and [Emergency Medicine, ER27](#)



History and Physical Exam

- history
 - cough, sputum, hemoptysis, wheezing, chest pain, palpitations, dizziness, edema
 - asthma, allergy, eczema, ASA/NSAID sensitivity, nasal polyps
 - constitutional symptoms
 - smoking, recreational drugs, medications
 - occupational exposure, environmental exposure (e.g. pets, allergens, smoke)
 - travel and birth place
 - FHx of atopy
 - previous CXR or PFTs
- physical exam: vitals, respiratory, precordial, HEENT, signs of anemia/liver failure/heart failure

Investigations

- CXR, ECG
- PFTs, ABG acutely if indicated

Management

- ABCs: send to ED if in severe respiratory distress
- depends on cause



DDx of Dyspnea

Pulmonary

- COPD
- Asthma
- Restrictive lung disease
- Pneumothorax
- Congenital lung disease
- PE

Cardiac

- CHF
- CAD
- MI (recent or past)
- Cardiomyopathy
- Valve dysfunction
- Pericarditis
- Arrhythmia
- Hypertrophy

Mixed/Other

- Deconditioning
- Trauma
- Pain
- Neuromuscular
- Metabolic condition
- Functional: anxiety, panic attack, hyperventilation



- see [Urology, U10](#)

Definition

- the sensation of pain, burning, or discomfort on urination

Epidemiology

- in adulthood, more common in women than men
- approximately 25% of women report one episode of acute dysuria per yr
- most common in women age 25-54 and in those who are sexually active
- in men, dysuria becomes more prevalent with increasing age

Etiology

- infectious
 - most common cause
 - ♦ presents as cystitis, urethritis, pyelonephritis, vaginitis, cervicitis, epididymo-orchitis, or prostatitis
- non-infectious
 - hormonal conditions (hypoestrogenism), obstruction (BPH, urethral strictures), allergic reactions, radiation, drugs/chemicals, foreign bodies, trauma, neoplasm, kidney stones, inflammatory diseases, endometriosis, psychogenic



UTI Clinical Decision Aid

- Dysuria
- +Leukocytes
- +Nitrites

if 2 or more criteria MET, then treat without culture, otherwise culture required prior to treatment

Arch Intern Med 2007;167:2201-2206



Risk Factors for Complicated UTI

- Male
- Pregnancy
- Recent urinary tract instrumentation
- Functional or anatomic abnormality of the urinary tract
- Chronic renal disease
- DM
- Immunosuppression
- Indwelling catheter

Table 16. Etiology, Signs and Symptoms of Common Causes of Dysuria

Infection	Etiology	Signs and Symptoms
UTI/Cystitis	KEEPS bacteria (<i>Klebsiella</i> , <i>E. coli</i> , <i>Enterobacter</i> , <i>Proteus mirabilis</i> , <i>Pseudomonas</i> , <i>S. saprophyticus</i>)	Internal dysuria throughout micturition, frequency, urgency, incontinence, hematuria, nocturia, back pain, suprapubic discomfort, low grade fever (rare)
Urethritis	<i>C. trachomatis</i> , <i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> , <i>Trichomonas</i> , <i>Candida</i> , herpes	Initial dysuria, urethral/vaginal discharge, history of STD
Vaginitis	<i>Candida</i> , <i>Gardnerella</i> , <i>Trichomonas</i> , <i>C. trachomatis</i> , atrophic, herpes, lichen sclerosis	External dysuria/pain, vaginal discharge, irritation, dyspareunia, abnormal vaginal bleeding
Prostatitis	<i>E. coli</i> , <i>C. trachomatis</i> , <i>S. saprophyticus</i> , <i>Proteus mirabilis</i> , <i>Enterobacter</i> , <i>Klebsiella</i> , <i>Pseudomonas</i>	Dysuria, fever, chills, urgency, frequency, tender prostate, rectal pain
Pyelonephritis	<i>E. coli</i> , <i>S. saprophyticus</i> , <i>Proteus mirabilis</i> , <i>Enterobacter</i> , <i>Klebsiella</i> , <i>Pseudomonas</i>	Internal dysuria, fever, chills, flank pain radiating to groin, CVA tenderness, N/V

Investigations

- no investigations necessary when history and physical consistent with uncomplicated UTI – treat empirically (urinalysis can be performed when indicated by dipstick or microscopy)
- urinalysis/dipstick: positive for nitrites and leukocytes
- urine R&M: pyuria, bacteriuria, hematuria
- urine C&S
- CBC and differential if suspecting pyelonephritis
- if vaginal/urethral discharge present: wet mount, Gram stain, KOH test, vaginal pH, culture for yeast and trichomonas, endocervical/urethral swab or urine PCR for *N. gonorrhoeae* and *C. trachomatis*
- radiologic studies and other diagnostic tests if atypical presentation
- see [Pediatrics, P64](#) for UTI in children

Management

- see [Antimicrobial Quick Reference, FM52](#) for treatment
- UTI/cystitis
 - pregnant women with bacteriuria (2-7%) must be treated even if asymptomatic, due to risk of preterm labor; need to follow with monthly urine cultures and retreat if still infected
 - patients with recurrent UTIs (>3/yr) should be considered for prophylactic antibiotics
 - if complicated UTI, patients require longer courses of broader spectrum antibiotics
- urethritis
 - when swab or PCR is positive for chlamydia or gonorrhea must report to Public Health
 - all patients should return 4-7 d after completion of therapy for clinical evaluation



Cranberries for Preventing Urinary Tract Infections

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2008;1:CD001321

Study: Meta-analysis of 10 RCTs, (n=1,049).

Patients: All populations.

Intervention: Cranberry juice vs. placebo, juice or water was evaluated in seven studies, and cranberry tablets vs. placebo in four studies.

Main Outcome: UTIs – symptomatic and asymptomatic.

Results: Cranberry products significantly reduced the incidence of UTIs at 12 mo (RR 0.65, 95% CI 0.46-0.90) compared with placebo/control.

Conclusion: There is some evidence that cranberry products may decrease the number of symptomatic UTIs over a 12 mo period, particularly for women with recurrent UTIs.

Epistaxis

- see [Otolaryngology, OT27](#)

Erectile Dysfunction

- see [Urology, U30](#)

Definition

- consistent or recurrent inability to attain and/or maintain penile erection sufficient for sexual performance of ≥ 3 mo duration

Epidemiology

- ~20% of men age 40; ~50% of men age 70

Etiology

- organic: vascular (90%) (arterial insufficiency, atherosclerosis), endocrine (low testosterone, DM), anatomic (structural abnormality, e.g. Peyronie's), neurologic (post-operative, DM), medications (clonidine, antihypertensives, psychotropics)
- psychogenic (10%)

Table 17. Differentiation Between Organic and Psychogenic Erectile Dysfunction

Characteristic	Organic	Psychogenic
Onset	Gradual	Acute
Circumstances	Global	Situational
Course	Constant	Varying
Non-Coital Erection	Poor	Rigid
Morning Erection	Absent	Present
Psychosexual Problem	Secondary	Long history
Partner Problem	Secondary	At onset
Anxiety and Fear	Secondary	Primary

Walsh: Campbell's Urology, 8th ed. Table 46-4



DDx of Erectile Dysfunction

PENIS

Psychogenic

Endocrine (type 2 DM, testosterone)

Neurogenic (type 2 DM, post-operative)

Insufficiency of blood (atherosclerosis)

Substances



The Effect of Lifestyle Modification and Cardiovascular Risk Factor Reduction on Erectile Dysfunction

Arch Intern Med 2011;171:1797-1803

Study: Meta-analysis of 6 RCTs.

Population: 740 male participants.

Intervention: Lifestyle modification and pharmacotherapy targeting CAD risk factors.

Main Outcome Measure: International Index of Erectile Dysfunction (IIEF-5) score.

Results: Lifestyle modifications and pharmacotherapy for cardiovascular risk factors had a statistically significant association with improved sexual function (weighted mean difference 2.66; 95% CI 1.86-3.47). Lifestyle modification without use of statins was also statistically significantly associated with improved sexual function (weighted mean difference 2.40; 95% CI 1.19-3.61).

Conclusion: Lifestyle modification alone or combined with pharmacotherapy can improve sexual function.

History

- comprehensive sexual, medical, and psychosocial history
- time course
 - last satisfactory erection
 - gradual or sudden onset
 - attempts at sexual activity
- quantify
 - presence of morning or night time erections
 - stiffness (scale of 1-10)
 - ability to initiate and maintain an erection with sexual stimulation
 - erection stiffness during sex (scale of 1-10)
- qualify
 - partner or situation specific
 - loss of erection before penetration or climax
 - degree of concentration required to maintain an erection
 - percentage of sexual attempts satisfactory to patient and/or his partner
 - significant bends in penis or pain with erection
 - difficulty with specific positions
 - impact on quality of life and relationship

Investigations

- hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal axis evaluation: testosterone (free + total), prolactin, LH
- risk factor evaluation: fasting glucose, HbA1c, lipid profile
- others: TSH, CBC, urinalysis
- specialized testing
 - psychological and/or psychiatric consultation
 - in-depth psychosexual and relationship evaluation
 - nocturnal penile tumescence and rigidity (NPTR) assessment
 - vascular diagnostics (e.g. doppler studies, angiography)

Management

Table 18. Management of Erectile Dysfunction

Nonpharmacologic	Pharmacologic	Surgical
Lifestyle changes (alcohol, smoking, exercise)	Oral agents	Implants
Relationship/sexual counseling	Suppository	Vascular repair
Vacuum devices	Male urethral suppository for erection (MUSE)	Realignment
	Injections	

- pharmacologic treatment
 - phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors
 - α -adrenergic blockers (e.g. yohimbine)
 - serotonin antagonist and reuptake inhibitor (e.g. trazodone)
 - testosterone – currently only indicated in patients presenting with hypogonadism and testosterone deficiency (note: breast/prostate cancer are absolute contraindications)

Table 19. Phosphodiesterase Type 5 Inhibitors

Examples	Dosing (1 dose/d)	Specifics	Side Effects	Contraindications
sildenafil (Viagra®)	25-100 mg/dose	Take 0.5-4 h prior to intercourse May last 24 h	Flushing, headache, indigestion	Not to be used in patients taking nitrates
tadalafil (Cialis®)	5-20 mg/dose	Effects may last 36 h	As above	As above
vardeafil (Levitra®)	2.5-20 mg/dose	Take 1 h prior to intercourse	As above	As above



Reasons for Referral to Urology

- Significant penile anatomic disease
- Younger patient with a history of pelvic or perineal trauma
- Cases requiring vascular or neuro-surgical intervention
- Complicated endocrinopathies
- Complicated psychiatric or psychosocial problems
- Patient or physician desire for further evaluation

Fatigue

Epidemiology

- 25% of office visits to family physicians
 - peaks in ages 20-40
 - F:M = 3-4:1
- 50% have associated psychological complaints/problems, especially if <6 mo duration



Fatigue Red Flags

- Fever
- Weight loss
- Night sweats
- Neurological deficits
- Ill-appearing

Differential Diagnosis

Table 20. Differential Diagnosis of Fatigue: PS VINDICATE

P	Psychogenic	Depression, life stresses , anxiety disorder, chronic fatigue syndrome, fibromyalgia
	Physiologic	Pregnancy, excessive caregiving demands (young children, elderly)
S	Sleep disturbance	Obstructive sleep apnea, sleep disorder , poor sleep hygiene, BPH, shift work, pain
	Sedentary	Unhealthy/sedentary lifestyle
V	Vascular	Stroke
I	Infectious	Viral (e.g. mononucleosis, hepatitis, HIV), bacterial (e.g. TB), fungal, parasitic
N	Neoplastic	Any malignancy
	Nutrition	Anemia (Fe^{2+} deficiency, B_{12} deficiency)
	Neurogenic	Myasthenia gravis, multiple sclerosis, Parkinson's disease
D	Drugs	β -blockers, antihistamines, anticholinergics, benzodiazepines, antiepileptics, antidepressants
I	Idiopathic	
C	Chronic illnesses	CHF, lung diseases (e.g. COPD, sarcoidosis), renal failure, chronic liver disease
A	Autoimmune	SLE, RA, mixed connective tissue disease, polymyalgia rheumatica
T	Toxin	Substance abuse (e.g. alcohol), heavy metal
E	Endocrine	Hypothyroidism, DM , Cushing's syndrome, adrenal insufficiency, pregnancy

Common causes are in **bold**

Investigations

- psychosocial causes are common, so usually minimal investigation is warranted
- physical causes of fatigue usually have associated symptoms/signs that can be elicited from a focused history and physical exam
- investigations should be guided by history and physical exam and may include
 - CBC and differential, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, ESR, glucose, TSH, ferritin, vit B_{12} , serum protein electrophoresis, Bence-Jones protein, albumin, AST, ALT, ALP, bilirubin, calcium, phosphate, ANA, β -hCG
 - urinalysis, CXR, ECG
 - additional tests: serologies (Lyme disease, hepatitis B and C screen, HIV, ANA) and Mantoux skin tests

Treatment

- treat underlying cause
- if etiology cannot be identified (1/3 of patients)
 - reassurance and follow-up, especially with fatigue of psychogenic etiology
 - quick follow-up for reassurance
 - supportive counseling, behavioral, or group therapy
 - encourage patient to stay physically active to maximize function
 - review all medications, OTC, and herbal remedies for drug-drug interactions and side effects
 - prognosis: after 1 yr, 40% are no longer fatigued

CHRONIC FATIGUE SYNDROME

Definition (CDC 2006) – must meet both criteria

1. new or definite onset of unexplained, clinically evaluated, persistent or relapsing chronic fatigue, not relieved by rest, which results in occupational, educational, social, or personal dysfunction
 2. concurrent presence of at least 4 of the following symptoms for a minimum of 6 mo
 - impairment of short-term memory or concentration, severe enough to cause significant decline in function
 - sore throat
 - tender cervical or axillary lymph nodes
 - muscle pain
 - multi-joint pain with no swelling or redness
 - new headache
 - unrefreshing sleep
 - post-exertion malaise lasting >24 h
- exclusion criteria: medical conditions that may explain the fatigue, certain psychiatric disorders (depression with psychotic or melancholic features, schizophrenia, eating disorders), substance abuse, severe obesity (BMI >45)



Exercise Therapy for Chronic Fatigue

Cochrane Depression, Anxiety, and Neurosis Group
Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2004;Issue 3

Purpose: To determine the effectiveness of exercise therapy for Chronic Fatigue Syndrome (CFS).

Methods: Systematic review of 5 RCTs with 336 patients of all ages with a clinical diagnosis of CFS.

Interventions: Exercise therapy alone was compared with treatment as usual (or relaxation and flexibility), pharmacotherapy (fluoxetine), or exercise therapy combined with either pharmacotherapy or patient education.

Results: At 12 wk, patients undergoing exercise therapy were less fatigued than controls (SMD -0.77; 95% CI -1.26 to -0.28). Physical functioning was also significantly improved, but there were more dropouts with exercise therapy. Compared with fluoxetine, patients receiving exercise therapy were less fatigued (WMD -1.24; 95% CI -5.31-2.83). Patients receiving combination therapy with exercise therapy and either fluoxetine or patient education, did better than those on monotherapy.

Conclusions: Patients may benefit from exercise therapy. Combination therapy with either fluoxetine or education may offer additional benefit. Further high quality trials are needed.

Epidemiology

- F>>M, Caucasians > other groups, majority in their 30s
- found in <5% of patients presenting with fatigue

Etiology

- unknown, likely multifactorial
- may include infectious agents, immunological factors, neurohormonal factors, and/or nutritional deficiency

Investigations

- no specific diagnostic laboratory tests

Treatment

- promote sleep hygiene
- provide support and reassurance that most patients improve over time
- non-pharmacological
 - regular physical activity, optimal diet, psychotherapy (e.g. CBT), family therapy, support groups
- pharmacological
 - to relieve symptoms: e.g. antidepressants, anxiolytics, NSAIDs, antimicrobials, antiallergy therapy, antihypertensive therapy

Fever

- see [Pediatrics, P54](#), for fever in pediatric population

**Definition**

- temperature >100.4°F (38 °C)
- fever in children under 2 must be a rectal temperature for accuracy
- TM not accurate for measurement until child is over the age of 5

Table 21. Differential Diagnosis of Fever

Infection	Cancer	Medications		Other
Bacterial	Leukemia	Allopurinol	Nifedipine	Irritable Bowel Syndrome
Viral	Lymphoma	Captopril	Phenytoin	Collagen Vascular Disease
TB	Other Malignancies	Cimetidine	Diuretics	DVT
		Heparin	Barbiturates	
		INH	Antihistamines	
		Meperidine		

History

- fever
 - peak temperature, thermometer, route, duration
 - time of day
 - response to antipyretics
- systemic symptoms
 - weight loss, fatigue, rash, arthralgia, night sweats
- symptoms of possible source
 - UTI/pyelonephritis: dysuria, foul-smelling urine, incontinence, frequency, hematuria, flank pain
 - pneumonia: cough, pleuritic chest pain
 - URTI: cough, coryza, ear pain
 - meningitis: headache, confusion, stiff neck, rash
 - osteomyelitis: bone pain
 - skin: purulent discharge
 - PID: discharge, dyspareunia, lower abdominal pain
 - gastroenteritis: abdominal pain, diarrhea, blood per rectum, vomit
 - medications
 - PE/DVT: swollen legs, pain in calf, SOB, pleuritic chest pain
 - history of cancer/family history of cancer
- infectious contacts
 - travel history, camping, day care, contact with TB, foodborne, animals

Possible Investigations

- CBC and differential, blood culture, urine culture, urinalysis
- stool O&P, Gram stain, culture
- CXR, Mantoux skin test, sputum culture
- LP

Management

- increase fluid intake
- general: sponge bath, light clothing
- acetaminophen/ibuprofen as needed
- treat underlying cause

Headache

- see [Neurology, N43](#)

Primary Headaches**Table 22. Primary Headaches**

	Migraine	Tension-Type	Cluster	Caffeine Withdrawal
Epidemiology	12% of adults F>M 20% with aura 80% without aura	38% of adults, can be episodic or chronic	<0.1% of adults, M>>F	~50% of people drinking >2.5 cups/d
Duration	5-72 h	May occur as isolated incident or daily, duration is variable	<3 h at same time of day	Begins 12-24 h after last caffeine intake, can last ~1 wk
Pain	Classically unilateral and pulsatile, but 40% are bilateral, moderate-severe intensity, N/V, photo-/phonophobia	Mild to moderate pain, bilateral, fronto-occipital or generalized pain, band-like pain, ± contracted neck/scalp muscles, associated with little disability	Sudden, unilateral, severe, usually centered around eye, frequently awakens patient Associated conjunctival injection and tearing "Suicide" headache	Severe, throbbing, associated with drowsiness, anxiety, muscle stiffness, nausea, waves of hot or cold sensations
Triggers	Numerous (e.g. food, sleep disturbance, stress, hormonal, fatigue, weather, high altitude) Aggravated by physical activity	Stressful events, NOT aggravated by physical activity	Often alcohol	Discontinuing caffeine
Treatment of Acute Headache	1st line: acetaminophen, NSAIDs, ASA ± caffeine 2nd line: NSAIDs 3rd line: 5-HT agonists ± antiemetic	Rest and relaxation NSAIDs or acetaminophen	Sumatriptan Dihydroergotamine High-flow O ₂ Intranasal lidocaine	Caffeine Acetaminophen or ASA ± caffeine
Prophylactic Therapy	1st line: β-blockers 2nd line: TCAs 3rd line: anticonvulsants	Rest and relaxation, physical activity, biofeedback	Lithium carbonate, prednisone, methysergide	Cut down on caffeine

Secondary Headaches

- caused by underlying organic disease
- account for <10% of all headaches, may be life-threatening
- etiology
 - aneurysm
 - medication overuse headache
 - space-occupying lesion
 - systemic infection (meningitis, encephalitis)
 - stroke
 - subarachnoid hemorrhage
 - systemic disorders (thyroid disease, HTN, pheochromocytoma, etc.)
 - temporal arteritis
 - traumatic head injuries
 - TMJ or C-spine pathology
 - serious ophthalmological and otolaryngological causes of headache
- treatment
 - based on underlying disorder
 - analgesics may provide symptomatic relief

Investigations

- indicated only when red flags are present and may include:
 - CBC for suspected systemic or intracranial infection
 - ESR for suspected temporal arteritis
 - neuroimaging (CT or MRI) to rule out intracranial pathology
 - CSF analysis for suspected intracranial hemorrhage, infection

**Migraine Screen****POUND**

Pulsatile quality
Over 4-72 h
Unilateral
N/V
Disabling intensity

if ≥4 present then a diagnosis is likely
(+ LR = 24)

**Acupuncture for Migraine Prophylaxis**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;4:CD001218

Study: Meta-analysis of 22 RCTs.

Population: 4,419 participants with diagnosed migraine.

Intervention: Preventive treatment with acupuncture, sham acupuncture, no prophylactic treatment/routine care only, other interventions.

Main Outcome Measure: Proportion of responders in 3-4 mo.

Other Outcomes: Frequency of migraine attacks, number of migraine days, headache frequency.

Results: Patients receiving acupuncture had higher response rates and fewer headaches after 3-4 mo than those with no prophylactic treatment or routine care only. There was no statistically significant difference between "true" vs. "sham" acupuncture.

Conclusion: Acupuncture is a viable prophylactic treatment option for migraine attacks. Selecting specific points for acupuncture is not as important as believed by practitioners.

Hearing Impairment

- see [Otolaryngology](#), OT9

Definition

- hearing impairment: a raised hearing threshold measured as decibels of hearing loss relative to the normal population at specific frequencies
- hearing disability: hearing impairment that interferes with performing daily tasks

Epidemiology

- prevalence increases with age (6% of 35-44 yr old, 43% of 65-84 yr old)
- 90% of age-related hearing loss (presbycusis) is sensorineural
- hearing loss detectable by audiology is present in greater than 1/3 of people over 65
- associated with significant physical, functional, and mental health consequences

Classification

- conductive (external sound does not reach the middle ear)
- sensorineural involving the inner ear, cochlea, or auditory nerve)
- mixed

Assessment

- infants
 - universal newborn hearing screening program
- elderly
 - presbycusis is characterized by the progressive, symmetric loss of high-frequency hearing
 - ♦ tinnitus, vertigo, and disequilibrium may be present
 - ♦ can cause low self-esteem, isolation, and depression
 - whispered-voice test
 - ♦ whisper 6 test words 6 in to 2 ft away from the patient's ear out of the visual field, ask patient to repeat the words (with non-test ear distraction)
 - tuning fork test (to distinguish conductive from sensorineural hearing loss)
 - ♦ Rinne and Weber (not for general screening)
 - formal audiologic assessment
 - ♦ pure tone, air, and bone conduction testing
 - ♦ speech audiometry
 - ♦ impedance audiometry

Management

- counsel about noise control and hearing protection programs (Grade A evidence)
- investigations in patients with unexplained sensorineural hearing loss
 - blood sugar, CBC+ differential, TSH, syphilis testing
- referral
 - refer patients with hearing loss for a complete audiological examination
 - unclear etiology of hearing loss: referral to ENT
 - **sudden hearing loss: urgent referral** as treatment success is related to early treatment
- patients with progressive asymmetric sensorineural hearing loss should have an MRI/CT scan to exclude vestibular schwannoma (acoustic neuroma)
- hearing amplification (e.g. hearing aids), assistive listening devices, and cochlear implants can dramatically improve quality of life



Does this Patient have Hearing Impairment?
JAMA 2006;295:416-428

Purpose: To evaluate bedside clinical maneuvers used to evaluate the presence of hearing impairment.

Study: Evidence-based review of studies examining the accuracy or precision of screening questions and tests. 24 studies were included in this analysis.

Conclusions: Elderly patients who admit to having hearing impairment should be offered audiometry, while those who do not should undergo a whispered-voice test. Those who hear the whispered voice require no further testing, while those who do not require audiometry. The Weber and Rinne tests are not useful in screening for hearing impairment.

Hypertension

Hypertension Guidelines are reviewed and updated annually.

For up to date recommendations, please see www.hypertension.ca/chep

Epidemiology

- about 1 in 3 U.S. adults (67 million people) have HTN, only half of these individuals are able to control their condition
- 3rd leading risk factor associated with death

Definition

- HTN
 - BP $\geq 140/90$ mmHg, unless DM ($\geq 130/80$ mmHg), or age ≥ 80 yr ($\geq 150/90$ mmHg)
- isolated systolic HTN
 - sBP ≥ 140 and dBP < 90
 - associated with progressive reduction in vascular compliance
 - usually begins in 5th decade



Symptoms of HTN are usually NOT PRESENT (this is why it is called the "silent killer")

May have occipital headache upon awakening or organ specific complaints if advanced disease



Hypertensive Emergencies

- **Malignant HTN**
- **Cerebrovascular:**
 - Hypertensive encephalopathy
 - CVA
 - Intracerebral hemorrhage
 - SAH
- **Cardiac:**
 - Acute aortic dissection
 - Acute refractory LV failure
 - Myocardial infarction/ischemia
 - Acute pulmonary edema
- **Renal Failure**

- hypertensive urgency
 - sBP >210 or dBP >120 with minimal or no target-organ damage
- hypertensive emergency
 - severe HTN + acute target-organ damage
 - accelerated HTN
 - ♦ significant recent increase in BP over previous hypertensive levels associated with evidence of vascular damage on fundoscopy, but without papilledema
 - malignant HTN
 - ♦ sufficient elevation in BP to cause papilledema and other manifestations of vascular damage (retinal hemorrhages, bulging discs, mental status changes, increasing creatinine)

Etiology

- essential (primary) HTN (>90%)
 - undetermined cause
- secondary HTN (10%)
- watch for labile, “white coat” HTN (office-induced elevated BP)

Predisposing Factors

- family history
- obesity (especially abdominal)
- alcohol consumption
- stress
- sedentary lifestyle
- smoking
- male
- age >30
- excessive salt intake/fatty diet
- African American ancestry
- dyslipidemia

Table 23. Causes of Secondary Hypertension

	Common Cause		
Renal	Renovascular HTN Renal parenchymal disease, glomerulonephritis, pyelonephritis, polycystic kidney		
Endocrine	1° hyperaldosteronism Pheochromocytoma Cushing's syndrome Hyperthyroidism/hyperparathyroidism Hypercalcemia of any cause		
Vascular	Coarctation of the aorta Renal artery stenosis		
Drug-Induced	Estrogens/OCP MAOIs Cocaine	Steroids Lithium Amphetamines	NSAIDs Decongestants Alcohol

Investigations

- for all patients with HTN
 - electrolytes, Cr, fasting glucose and/or HbA1c, lipid profile, 12-lead ECG, urinalysis
 - self-measurement of BP at home is encouraged
- for specific patient subgroups
 - DM or CKD: urinary protein excretion
 - if suspected renovascular HTN: renal ultrasound, captopril renal scan (if GFR >60 mL/min), MRA/CTA (if normal renal function)
 - if suspected endocrine cause: plasma aldosterone, plasma renin
 - ♦ measured from morning samples taken from patients in sitting position after resting 15 min
 - ♦ discontinue aldosterone antagonists, ARBs, β -blockers, and clonidine prior to testing
 - if suspected pheochromocytoma: 24 h urine for metanephrines and creatinine
 - echocardiography for left ventricular dysfunction assessment if indicated



Renovascular HTN Suspected if Patient Presenting with 2 or More of:

- Sudden onset or worsening of HTN and age >55 or <30 yr
- Presence of abdominal bruit
- HTN resistant to 3 or more drugs
- Rise in Cr of 30% or more associated with use of an ACEI or ARB
- Other atherosclerotic vascular disease, particularly in patients who smoke or have dyslipidemia
- Recurrent pulmonary edema associated with hypertensive surges



Suspect Hyperaldosteronism when:

- HTN refractory to treatment with 3 or more drugs
- Spontaneous hypokalemia
- Profound diuretic-induced hypokalemia (<3.0 mmol/L)
- Incidental adrenal adenomas

Diagnosis

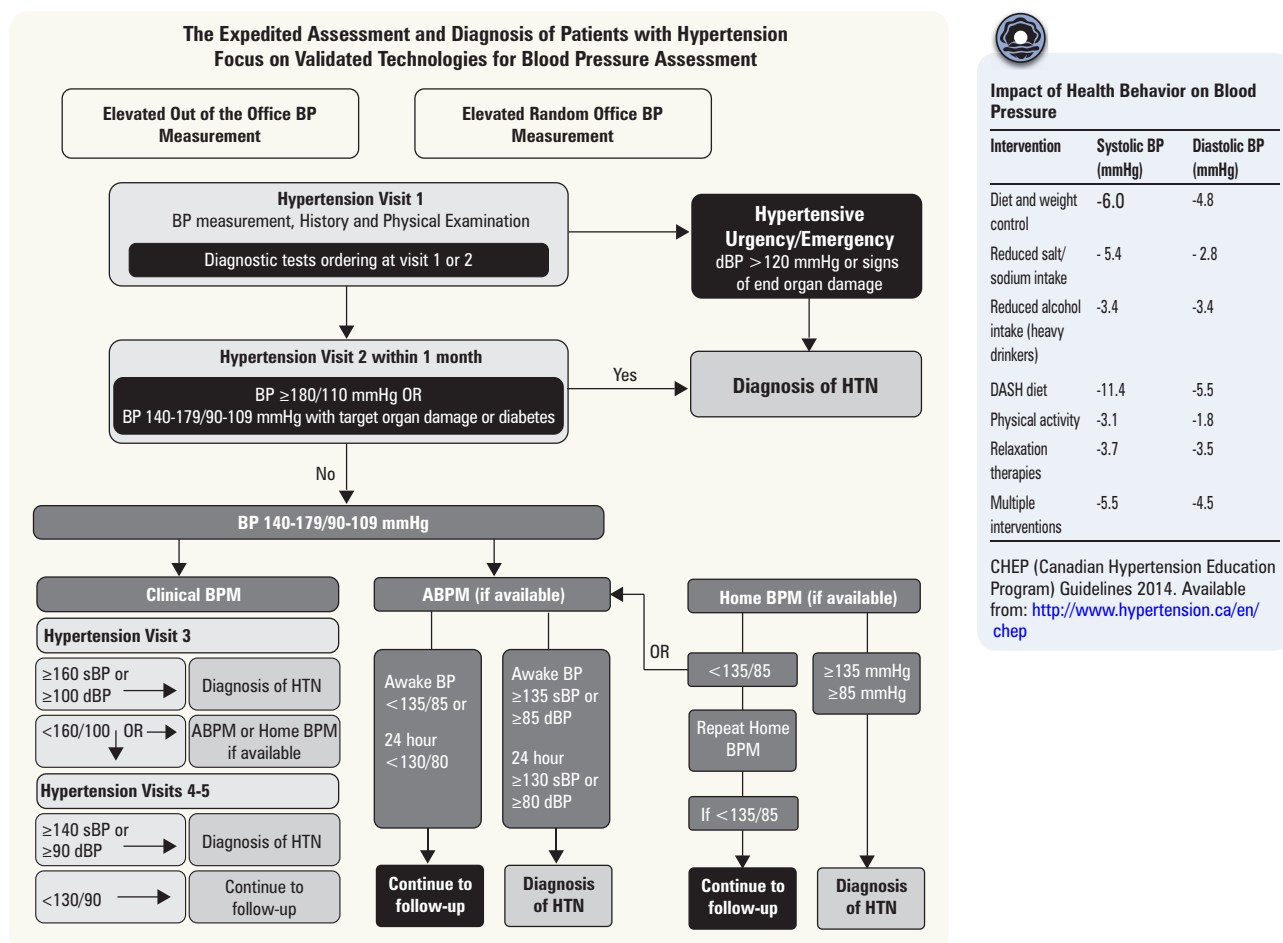


Figure 7. Assessment of patients with hypertension

Adapted from: CHEP 2014 Guidelines

Treatment

- target BP is <140/90 mmHg, <130/80 mmHg if DM
- lifestyle modification (in all HTN patients)
 - may be sufficient in patients with stage 1 HTN (140-159/90-99)
 - diet
 - follow Dietary Guidelines for Americans (see *Nutrition*, FM6) and Dietary Approaches to Stop HTN (DASH) (reduced cholesterol and saturated fats)
 - limit daily sodium intake to 65-100 mmol (1.5-2.3 g)
 - potassium/magnesium/calcium supplementations are NOT recommended for HTN
 - moderate intensity dynamic exercise: 30-60 min, 4-7 x/wk; higher intensity exercise is no more effective
 - smoking cessation
 - stress management
 - low-risk alcohol consumption (see *Alcohol*, FM12)
 - achieve and maintain a healthy BMI (18.5-24.9 kg/m²) and waist circumference (<40.2 in for men, <34.6 in for women); use multidisciplinary approach to weight loss
 - individualized cognitive behavioral interventions for stress management
- pharmacological
 - indications regardless of age (caution with elderly patients)
 - dBP ≥90 mmHg with target organ damage or independent cardiovascular risk factors
 - dBP ≥100 mmHg or sBP ≥160 mmHg without target organ damage or cardiovascular risk factors
 - sBP ≥140 with target organ damage
 - first line antihypertensives: thiazide/thiazide-like diuretic, ACEI (for non-African patients), ARB, long-acting CCB, β-blocker (if age <60)
 - if partial response to standard dose monotherapy, add another first-line drug
 - caution with combination of non-DHP CCB and β-blocker
 - combination of ACEI and ARB is not recommended
 - be cautious of hypokalemia in patients treated with thiazide/thiazide-like diuretic monotherapy
 - if still not controlled or adverse effects, can add other classes of anti-hypertensives

Table 24. Pharmacologic Treatment of Hypertension in Patients with Unique Conditions

Condition or Risk Factor	Recommended Drugs	Alternative Drugs	Not Recommended/Notes
Isolated Diastolic HTN	Thiazide diuretic, β -blocker, ACEI, ARB, or long-acting CCB (consider ASA and statin in select patients)	Combinations of first-line drugs	β -blocker monotherapy (age > 60) or combination of ACEI with an ARB
Isolated Systolic HTN	Thiazide diuretic, ARB, or long acting dihydropyridine CCB	Combinations of first-line drugs	Same as above
CAD	ACEI or ARB; β -blocker for patients with stable angina	Long acting CCB, when combination therapy for high risk patients, ACEI/DHP CCB is preferred	Short-acting CCB (nifedipine) or ACEI + ARB is not recommended dBP 60 mmHg may exacerbate MI
Prior MI	β -blocker + ACEI (ARB if cannot tolerate ACEI)	Long-acting CCB	ACEI + ARB combination is not recommended
Left Ventricular Hypertrophy	ACEI, ARB, thiazide, or long-acting CCB	Combination of additional agents	Hydralazine and minoxidil can increase LVH, thus not recommended
Cerebrovascular Disease (stroke/TIA)	ACEI + diuretic	Combination of additional agents	ACEI + ARB combination after a stroke is not recommended
Heart Failure	ACEI (ARB if ACEI intolerant) and β -blocker Spironolactone in patients with NYHA class II-IV	ARB in addition to ACEI Hydralazine/isosorbide dinitrate combination if ARB or ACEI not tolerated/contraindicated Thiazide or loop diuretic is recommended as additive therapy DHP CCB can also be used	Non-DHP CCB not recommended Carefully monitor for side effects if using ACEI + ARB
Dyslipidemias	Does not affect initial treatment recommendations	Combination of additional agents	
DM with Albuminuria (ACR >2.0 mg/mmol in men and >2.8 mg/mmol in women)	ACEI or ARB (DHP CCB > HCTZ for combination therapy with ACEI)	Add thiazide diuretic, cardioselective β -blocker, long acting CCB	If serum Cr > 150 μ mol/L, a loop diuretic should be considered instead of low-dose thiazide diuretic
DM without Albuminuria (criteria listed above)	ACEI, ARB, DHP CCB, or thiazide diuretic	Combination of first-line drugs or, first-line agents not tolerated, cardioselective β -blocker or non-DHP CCB	ACEI + ARB combination not recommended
Non-Diabetic Chronic Kidney Disease with Proteinuria (urinary protein >500 mg/24 h or ACR >30 mg/mmol)	ACEI (ARB if ACEI intolerant), diuretic as additive therapy	Thiazide for additive antihypertensive therapy, loop diuretic for volume overload	ACEI + ARB combination is not recommended
Renovascular Disease	Same as HTN without other indications		Caution in using ACEI or ARB – monitor for AKI
Asthma	K ⁺ -sparing + thiazide diuretic for patients on salbutamol		β -blocker, unless specific indications like angina or post-MI
Gout			Thiazide, but asymptomatic hyperuricemia is not a contraindication
Smoking	Low dose thiazide ACEI		β -blocker
Pregnancy	Methyldopa Hydralazine	Labetolol Nifedipine	ACEI
Elderly (> 60 yr)	As for uncomplicated isolated diastolic HTN, except for use of β -blocker		β -blocker not recommended as first line treatment
Emergency	BP > 169/90 = labetalol, nifedipine		
If > 3 Cardiovascular Risk Factors or Established Atherosclerotic Disease	Statin (age >40), low-dose ASA (age >50)		Caution with use of ASA in patients with uncontrolled BP

Adapted from: McAlister FA, Zamke KB, Campbell NRC, et al. The 2001 Canadian recommendations for the management of HTN: Part two – Therapy. *Can J Cardiol* 2002;18:625-641. The 2012 Canadian Hypertension Education Program Recommendations

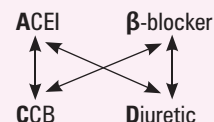
**Calcium Channel Blockers**

Dihydropyridine CCBs

- amlodipine
- nifedipine
- felodipine

Non-Dihydropyridine CCBs

- diltiazem
- verapamil

**How to Combine Antihypertensive Medications (in general)****Thiazides as First-Line Antihypertensive Therapy – ALLHAT**

JAMA 2002;288:2981-2997

Study: Randomized, double-blind, active-controlled clinical trial with mean follow-up of 4.9 yr.

Patients: 33,357 participants (mean age 67 yr, 53% male, 47% white) with stage 1 or 2 HTN and at least one other CHD risk factor.

Intervention: Participants were randomly assigned to receive chlorthalidone (12.5-25 mg/d), amlodipine (2.5-10mg/d), or lisinopril (10-40 mg/d). Target BP was <140/90 mmHg, achieved by titrating the assigned study drug, and adding open-label agents when necessary.

Outcomes: The primary outcome was combined fatal CHD or non-fatal MI. Secondary outcomes were all-cause mortality, stroke, combined CHD, and combined CVD.

Results: There were no significant differences in either the primary outcome or all-cause mortality between treatment groups. For amlodipine vs. chlorthalidone, secondary outcomes were similar except for a higher 6 yr rate of heart failure with amlodipine (10.2% vs. 7.7%; $p < 0.001$). For lisinopril vs. chlorthalidone, lisinopril had higher 6 yr rates of combined CVD (33.3% vs. 30.9%; $p < 0.001$), stroke (6.3% vs. 5.6%; $p = 0.02$) and heart failure (8.7% vs. 7.7%; $p < 0.001$).

Conclusion: Thiazide-type diuretics are superior to CCB and ACEI for preventing one or more major forms of CVD, with similar risks of death and non-fatal MI.

**ACEI**

Not recommended as monotherapy in people of African descent

 **β -blocker**

Not recommended as first line for patients of age ≥ 60

Follow-Up

- assess and encourage adherence to pharmacological and non-pharmacological therapy at every visit
- lifestyle modification → q3-6mo
- pharmacological
 - q1-2mo until BP under target for 2 consecutive visits
 - more often for symptomatic HTN, severe HTN, antihypertensive drug intolerance, target organ damage
 - q3-6mo once at target BP
- referral is indicated for cases of refractory HTN, suspected secondary cause or worsening renal failure
- hospitalization is indicated for malignant HTN

Joint Pain

- see [Rheumatology, RH3](#)

**Table 25. Differential Diagnosis of Joint Pain**

Non-Articular		Articular		
Localized	Generalized	Inflammatory	Degenerative	Other
Bursitis Tendonitis Capsulitis	Fibromyalgia Polymyalgia rheumatica Myofascial pain syndrome	Seropositive <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • RA • Systemic lupus erythematosus • Scleroderma • Polymyositis/Dermatomyositis • Sjögren's syndrome Seronegative <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ankylosing spondylitis • Inflammatory bowel disease • Psoriatic arthritis • Reactive arthritis Crystal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gout • Pseudogout • Hydroxyapatite Infectious/septic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gonococcal • Non-gonococcal Systemic vasculitis disease	Primary <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Familial Heberden's node • Osteoarthritis • Regional hip or knee Secondary <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Metabolic • Hemophiliac • Neuropathic • Traumatic 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Neoplastic • Drug-induced • Endocrine (hyperthyroid, hypothyroid, hyperparathyroid)

History

- number of joints involved: monoarticular, oligoarticular, polyarticular
- pattern of joints involved: symmetrical vs. asymmetrical, large vs. small joints, axial skeleton
- onset: acute vs. chronic (>6 wk)
- trauma, infection, medications (steroids, diuretics)
- morning stiffness (duration) vs. worse at end of day
- FHx of arthritis
- comorbidities: DM (carpal tunnel syndrome), renal insufficiency (gout), psoriasis (psoriatic arthritis), myeloma (low back pain), osteoporosis (fracture), obesity (OA)
- constitutional symptoms (neoplasm)

Physical Exam

- vitals
- specific joint exams
- systemic features (skin, nails, eyes, hands)

Investigations (Guided by the History and Physical Exam)

- general: CBC and differential, electrolytes, Cr
- acute phase reactants: ESR, CRP, ferritin, albumin, fibrinogen
- complement (C3, C4)
- urinalysis to detect disease complications (proteinuria, active sediment)
- serology (ANA, anti-dsDNA, HLA-B27, anti-Jo-1, anti-Sm, anti-La, anti-Ro, RhF, and anti-CCP, etc.)
- synovial fluid analysis (cell count + differential, culture, Gram stain, microscopy)
- tissue cultures
- radiology (plain film, CT, MRI, U/S, bone densitometry, angiography, bone scan)

**Signs and Symptoms of Inflammatory Arthritis****WARM(S) Joints**

Worse with rest, better with activity
Awakening in the latter half of the night
Redness around joint
Morning stiffness (>30 min)
Soft tissue swelling, erythema

**Systemic Features**

- Fever (SLE, infection)
- Rash (SLE, psoriatic arthritis)
- Nail abnormalities (psoriatic, reactive arthritis)
- Uveitis (psoriatic, reactive arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis)
- Myalgias (fibromyalgia, myopathy)
- Weakness (polymyositis, neuropathy)
- GI symptoms (scleroderma, IBD)
- GU symptoms (reactive arthritis, gonococcemia)

Treatment

- patient education including lifestyle modifications
- physiotherapy, occupational therapy
- manage pain (acetaminophen, NSAIDs)
- treat specific causes (e.g. antibiotics, DMARDs etc., see [Rheumatology, RH30](#))

**Red Flags**

Bowel or bladder dysfunction
Anesthesia (saddle)
Constitutional symptoms/malignancy
Chronic disease
Paresthesias
Age >50 and mild trauma
IV drug use/Infection
Neuromotor deficits

Low Back Pain

- see [Orthopedics, OR23](#)
- see <https://www.bigbackpain.com> for more information

Definition

- acute: <6 wk
- subacute: 6-12 wk
- chronic: >12 wk

Epidemiology

- 5th most common reason for visiting a physician
- lifetime prevalence: 90%
- peak prevalence: age 45-60
- most common cause of chronic disability for individuals <45 yr old
- 90% resolve in 6 wk, <5% become chronic

Etiology

- source of pain can be local, radicular, referred, or related to a psychiatric illness
- 98% are mechanical causes
 - pain is worse with movement, better with rest
 - sprain (ligament), strain (muscle), facet joint degeneration, disc degeneration/herniation, spinal stenosis (e.g. spondylosis), spondylolisthesis, compression fracture, pregnancy
- 2% are non-mechanical causes
 - most concerning when pain is worse at rest and does not change with position
 - surgical emergencies:
 - ♦ cauda equina syndrome (areflexia, lower extremity weakness, decreased anal tone, saddle anesthesia, fecal incontinence, urinary retention), AAA (pulsatile abdominal mass)
 - medical conditions
 - ♦ neoplastic (primary, metastatic, multiple myeloma)
 - ♦ infectious (osteomyelitis, TB)
 - ♦ metabolic (osteoporosis, osteomalacia, Paget's disease)
 - ♦ rheumatologic (ankylosing spondylitis, polymyalgia rheumatica)
 - ♦ referred pain (perforated ulcer, pancreatitis, pyelonephritis, ectopic pregnancy, herpes zoster)

Physical Exam

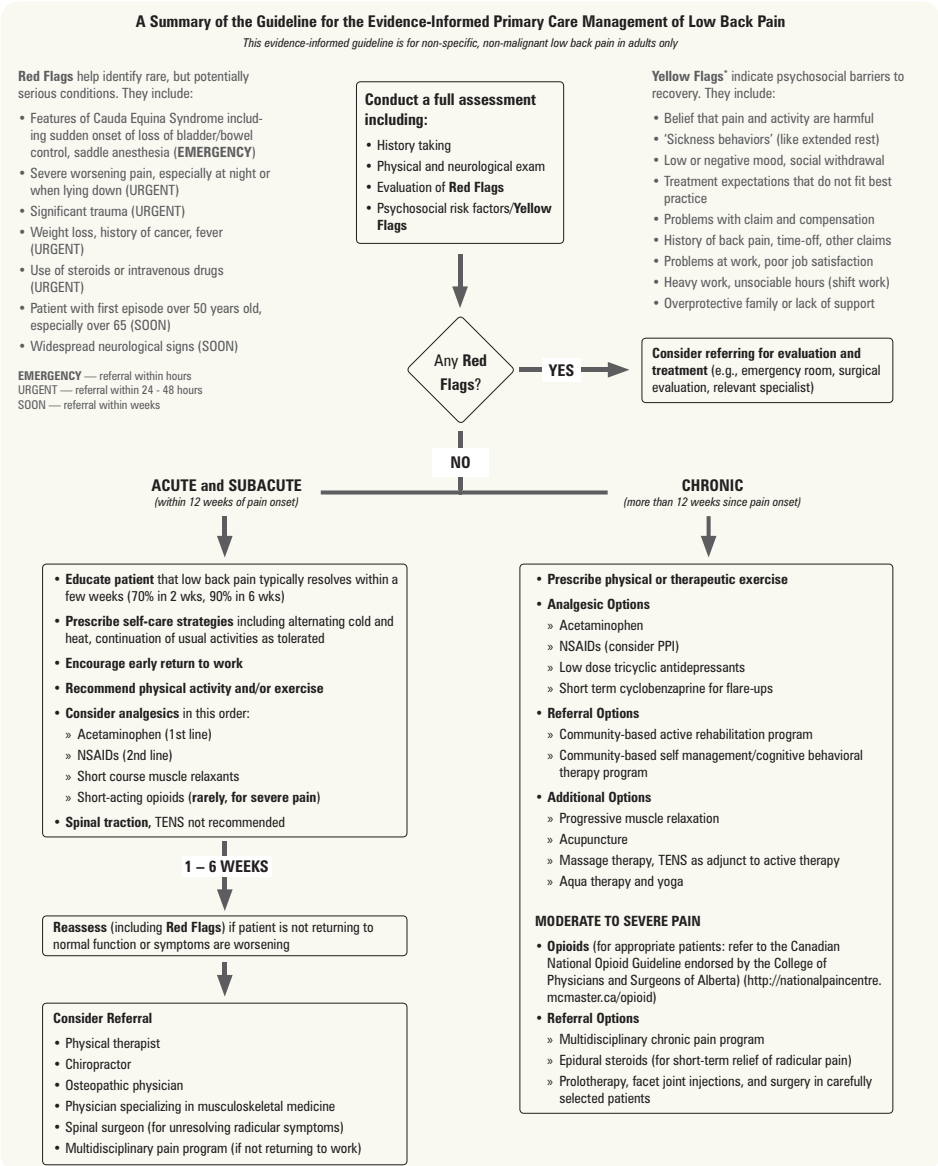
- inspection: curvature, posture, gait
- palpation: bony deformities/tenderness, paraspinal muscle bulk/tenderness, trigger points
 - percussion of spine to elicit pain due to fracture or infection
- ROM and peripheral pulses
- neurologic exam for L4/L5/S1 helps determine level of spinal involvement (power, reflexes, sensation)
- special tests
 - straight leg raise (positive if pain at <70 degrees and aggravated by ankle dorsiflexion), positive test is indicative of sciatica
 - crossed straight leg raise (raising of uninvolved leg elicits pain in leg with sciatica), more specific than straight leg raise
 - femoral stretch test (patient prone, knee flexed, examiner extends hip) to diagnose L4 radiculopathy

Investigations

- plain films not recommended in initial evaluation
- if infection/cancer suspected: CBC, ESR
- if neurologic deficits worsening or infection/cancer suspected: consider CT or MRI

**Indications for Lumbar Spine X-Ray**

- No improvement after 6 wk
- Fever >100.4°F
- Unexplained weight loss
- Prolonged corticosteroid use
- Significant trauma
- Progressive neurological deficit
- Suspicion of ankylosing spondylitis
- History of cancer (rule out metastases)
- Alcohol/drug abuse (increased risk of osteomyelitis, trauma, fracture)



Massage for Low Back Pain
Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2008;4:CD001929
This meta-analysis of 13 randomized trials assessed the use of massage therapy for non-specific low back pain compared to other active or sham treatments.
Conclusions: For some patients with subacute or chronic non-specific low back pain, massage may be beneficial, especially with education and exercises. Some evidence suggests that acupuncture massage may be more effective than classic massage but more studies are required to confirm these results.



Spinal Manipulative Therapy for Chronic Low-Back Pain
Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2011;2:CD008112
Methods: Systematic review of 39 RCTs that compared spinal manipulative therapy with other therapies for low back pain.
Findings: For acute and chronic low back pain, spinal manipulative therapy was superior only to sham therapy or therapies judged to be ineffective or even harmful. It had no statistical or clinical advantage over analgesics, physical therapy, exercises, back school, or physician care.
Conclusions: For acute and chronic low back pain, there is no evidence that spinal manipulative therapy is superior to other treatments.



Spinal Manipulative Therapy (SMT) for Acute Low-Back Pain
Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;9:CD008880
Conclusions: SMT is no more effective in participants with acute low-back pain than inert interventions, sham SMT, or when added to another intervention. SMT also appears to be no better than other recommended therapies.

Figure 8. Low back pain treatment
Reprinted with permission from: Kendall NAS, et al. Guide to Assessing Psycho-Social Yellow Flags in Acute Low Back Pain. ACC & NZGG, Wellington, NZ. (2004 ed.); Toward Optimized Practice. Guideline for the evidence-informed primary care management of low back pain. 2nd ed. 2007. Available from: www.topalbertadoctors.org

Table 26. Approach to Non-Traumatic Low Back Pain

	Back Dominant (Pain greatest above gluteal fold)		Leg Dominant (Pain greatest below gluteal fold)	
History	Pattern 1 Worse with flexion Constant/intermittent	Pattern 2 Worse with extension Never worse with flexion Always intermittent	Pattern 3 Pain changes with back movement/ position Currently/previously constant	Pattern 4 Worse with activity Improves with rest and posture change Intermittent/short duration
Physical Exam	Normal neuro exam <u>Fast responder</u> • Improves with extension <u>Slow responder</u> • No change or worsens with extension	Normal neuro exam ± improves with flexion Worse with extension	Leg pain can improve but not disappear Positive straight leg raise ± conduction loss <u>Fast responder</u> • Improves with specific back position <u>Slow responder</u> • Not better with position changes	No irritative findings ± conduction loss
Likely Pathology	Arising from intervertebral discs or adjacent ligaments	Posterior joint complex (associated ligaments and capsular structures)	Sciatica	Neurogenic claudication
Initial Management	Scheduled extension Lumbar roll Night lumbar roll Medication as required	Scheduled flexion Limited extension Night lumbar roll Medication as required	Prone extension Supine “Z” lie Lumbar roll Night lumbar roll Medication as required	Abdominal exercises Night lumbar roll Sustained flexion Pelvic tilt Medication as required

Adapted from: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons. Acute Care: Nontraumatic Low Back Pain. *Orthopaedic Knowledge Update: Spine 2* 2001;153-166

Menopause/Hormone Replacement Therapy

- see [Gynecology](#), GY31

Epidemiology

- mean age of menopause = 51.4 yr
- a woman will spend over 1/3 of her life in menopause

Clinical Features

- associated with estrogen deprivation
- urogenital tract: atrophy, vaginal dryness/itching, urinary frequency/urgency/incontinence, bleeding
- blood vessels and heart: vasomotor instability (e.g. hot flashes), increased risk of heart disease
- bones: bone loss, joint/muscle/back pain, fractures, loss of height
- brain: depression, irritability, mood swings, memory loss

Management

- encourage physical exercise, smoking cessation, and a balanced diet with adequate intake/supplementation of calcium (1,200-1,500 mg/d) and vitamin D (800-2,000 IU/d)
- hormone replacement therapy (HRT)
 - prescribe for moderate to severe symptoms for no longer than 5 yr; routine use is not recommended
 - regimens: cyclic estrogen-progestin, continuous estrogen-progestin, estrogen only (if no uterus), estrogen patch/gel/cream/ring/vaginal tablet
 - decreases risk of osteoporotic fractures, colorectal cancer
 - increases risk of breast cancer, coronary heart disease, stroke, DVT, and PE
 - initiation of HRT requires a thorough discussion of short- and long-term benefits and risks
- consider venlafaxine, SSRIs, or gabapentin to ease vasomotor instability



Osteoarthritis

- see [Rheumatology](#), RH5

Epidemiology

- most common form of arthritis seen in primary care
- prevalence is 10-12% and increases with age
- results in long-term disability in 2-3% of patients with OA
- almost everyone over the age of 65 shows signs of OA on x-ray, but only 33% of these individuals will be symptomatic

Clinical Features

- joint pain with activity, improved with rest, morning stiffness or gelling <30 min
- deformity, bony enlargement, crepitus, limitation of movement, periarticular muscle atrophy
- usually affects distal joints of hands, spine, hips, and knees

Investigations

- no laboratory tests for the diagnosis of OA
- hallmark radiographic features: joint space narrowing, subchondral sclerosis, subchondral cysts, osteophytes

Management

- goals: relieve pain, preserve joint motion and function, prevent further injury
- conservative
 - patient education, weight loss, low-impact exercise (OT/PT), assistive devices (e.g. canes, orthotics, raised toilet seats)
- pharmacological
 - consider comorbidities such as PUD, HTN, IHD, hepatic disease, and renal disease
 - medications do not alter natural course of OA
 - 1st line: acetaminophen up to 4 g/d (OA is not an inflammatory disorder)
 - 2nd line: NSAIDs in the lowest effective dose for the shortest duration of time, along with gastroprotection; COX-2 selective inhibitors (celecoxib/Celebrex®, Meloxicam/Mobicox®) are recommended if long-term treatment or if high risk for serious GI problems
 - combination analgesics (e.g. acetaminophen and codeine)
 - intra-articular hyaluronic acid injections
 - intra-articular corticosteroid injections (no more than 3-4x/yr) may be helpful in acute flares (benefits last 4-6 wk, can be up to 6 mo)
 - topical NSAID (diclofenac/Pennsaid®)
 - capsaicin cream (Zostrix®)
 - oral glucosamine
- surgery
 - consider if persistent significant pain and functional impairment despite optimal pharmacotherapy (e.g. debridement, osteotomy, total joint arthroplasty)

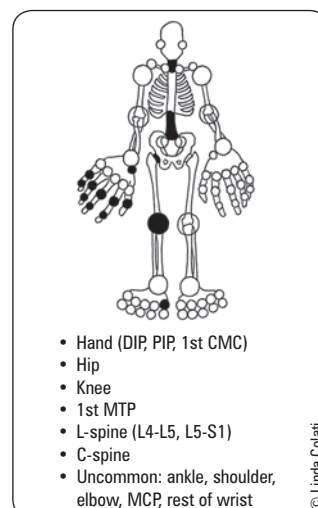


Figure 9. Common sites of involvement in OA



Glucosamine Therapy for Treating Osteoarthritis

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2005;2:CD002946

This meta-analysis of 25 single- and double-blinded randomized controlled trials with 4,963 patients compared glucosamine treatment, administered by any route, against placebo or another treatment.

Conclusions: Glucosamine can decrease pain and functional impairment resulting from OA and is not associated with any side effects compared to placebo. Differences in the effectiveness of Rotta and non-Rotta preparations highlight variability between glucosamine preparations and patients should be made aware of this.

Osteoporosis

- see [Endocrinology, E42](#)
- for current guidelines and tools see National Osteoporosis Foundation: <http://nof.org/hcp/clinicians-guide>
- age-related disease characterized by decreased bone mass and increased susceptibility to fractures
- about 9.9. million Americans are affected by osteoporosis, while an additional 43.1 million have low bone density
- approximately 1 in 2 women and up to 1 in 4 men ≥ 50 yr will sustain fractures due to osteoporosis



Encourage basic bone health for all individuals over age 50, including regular active weight-bearing exercise, calcium (diet and supplements) 1,200 mg daily, vitamin D 800-2,000 IU (20-50 µg) daily and fall-prevention strategies

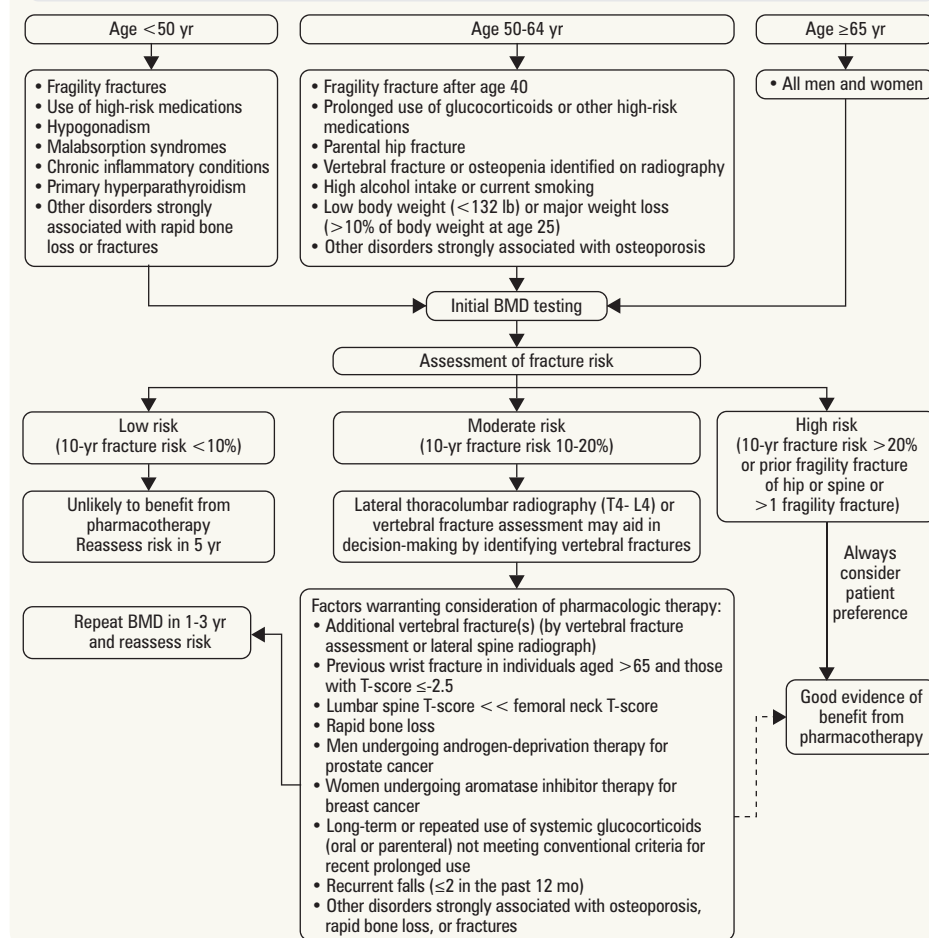


Figure 10. 2010 Clinical practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of osteoporosis in Canada (integrated management model). Adapted from: *CMAJ* 2010;182:1864-1873

Management

- see [Endocrinology, E44](#)



Palliative and End-of-Life Care

- see [Geriatrics, GM12](#)



Disorders Strongly Associated with Osteoporosis include:

Primary hyperparathyroidism, type 1 DM, osteogenesis imperfecta, uncontrolled hyperthyroidism, hypogonadism or premature menopause (< 45 yr), Cushing's disease, chronic malnutrition or malabsorption, chronic liver disease, COPD, and chronic inflammatory conditions (e.g. IBD)

10 Yr Fracture Risk Assessment

FRAX (WHO Fracture Risk Assessment Tool) and CAROC (Canadian Association of Radiologists and Osteoporosis Canada) have been validated in the Canadian Population. FRAX and CAROC are available online from: <https://www.osteoporosis.ca/health-care-professionals/clinical-tools-and-resources/>



How much Calcium do we Need?

Age	
4-8	1,000 mg
9-18	1,300 mg
19-50	1,200 mg
> 50	1,200 mg
Pregnant and lactating women 19-50	1,000 mg



Calcium Content of Common Foods

- 1 cup milk = 300 mg
- $\frac{3}{4}$ cup yogurt = 332 mg
- $\frac{1}{2}$ can salmon with bones = 240 mg
- $\frac{1}{2}$ cup cooked broccoli = 33 mg
- 1 medium orange = 50 mg



Vitamin D Content in Food

- Milk fortified with vitamin D₃ contains 100 IUs per 250 mL glass
- Foods such as margarine, eggs, chicken livers, salmon, sardines, herring, mackerel, swordfish, and fish oils (halibut and cod liver oils) all contain small amounts; supplementation is necessary to obtain adequate levels as dietary intake has minimal impact
- Most multivitamins provide 400 IUs of vitamin D₃

Rash

- see [Dermatology, D5](#)



ATOPIC DERMATITIS

- clinical features
 - affects all ages but is more common in children
 - pruritus is the most common symptom; scratching worsens the rash creating a vicious cycle
- treatment
 - goals: limit itching, repair skin
 - moisturizers, emollients, topical corticosteroids; oral corticosteroids and topical calcineurin inhibitors may be used

SEBORRHEIC DERMATITIS

- clinical features
 - affects all ages but is most common in infants within the first 3 mo of life (e.g. pityriasis capitis or “cradle cap”) and adults age 30-60
 - affects the scalp, central face, and anterior chest; often presents as scalp scaling (dandruff) in adolescents and adults
 - may cause mild to marked erythema of the nasolabial fold, often with greasy scaling
- treatment
 - topical antifungals, topical low-potency steroids; topical calcineurin inhibitors may be used

ROSACEA

- clinical features
 - stages: (1) facial flushing, (2) erythema and/or edema and ocular symptoms, (3) papules and pustules, (4) rhinophyma
- treatment
 - topical or oral antibiotics, oral retinoids
 - laser treatment may be an option for progressive telangiectasis or rhinophyma
 - referral may be required to manage rhinophyma, ocular complications, or severe disease

ACNE VULGARIS

- clinical features
 - types: (I) comedonal, (II) papular, (III) pustular, (IV) nodulocystic
 - predilection for the face, neck, upper chest, and back
- treatment
 - mild acne: topical treatments (antibiotics, benzoyl peroxide, retinoids)
 - moderate acne: after topical treatments have failed, add oral antibiotics and consider hormonal therapy
 - severe acne: consider systemic retinoids

ONYCHOMYCOSIS (TINEA UNGUIUM)

- definition: fungal infection of the nail bed, matrix, or plate
- clinical features
 - occurs primarily in adults, most commonly after age 60
 - crumbling, distally dystrophic nails; yellowish, opaque with subungual hyperkeratotic debris
 - toenails are affected more often than fingernails
- investigations
 - microscopy of subungual scrapings under KOH preparation, culture
- treatment
 - oral antifungals (terbinafine/Lamisil®, itraconazole/Sporanox®), topical antifungals (ciclopirox/Loprox®)

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

- see [Gynecology, GY25](#)

Definition

- diverse group of infections caused by multiple microbial pathogens
- transmitted by either secretions or fluids from mucosal surfaces

Epidemiology

- high incidence rates worldwide
- American prevalence in clinical practice
 - common: chlamydia (most common), gonorrhea (2nd most common), HPV, genital herpes (increasing incidence of chlamydia and gonorrhea)
 - less common: hepatitis B, HIV, and syphilis (increasing in incidence), trichomoniasis
 - rare: chancroid, granuloma inguinale, lymphogranuloma venereum
- non-sexually transmitted genital tract infections: vulvovaginal candidiasis (VVC), bacterial vaginosis (BV)
- three most common infections associated with vaginal discharge in adult women are BV, VVC, and trichomoniasis

History

- sexual history
 - age of first intercourse, sexual orientation, sexual activity (oral, anal, and/or vaginal intercourse), sexual activity during travel
 - total number of partners in the past yr/mo/wk and duration of involvement with each
- STD history
 - STD awareness, contraception, previous STDs and testing (including Pap tests), partner communication regarding STDs
 - local symptoms such as burning, itching, discharge, sores, vesicles, testicular pain, dysuria, abdominal pain
 - systemic symptoms such as fever, lymphadenopathy, arthralgia

Investigations/Screening

- individuals at increased risk, even those who are asymptomatic, should be screened for chlamydia, gonorrhea, hepatitis B, HIV, and syphilis
- Pap test if none performed in the preceding 12 mo

Management

- primary prevention is vastly more effective than treating STDs and their sequelae
- offer hepatitis B vaccine if not immune, offer Gardasil® to women under age 26
- discuss STD risk factors (e.g. decreasing the number of sexual partners)
- direct advice to ALWAYS use condoms or to abstain from intercourse
- condoms are not 100% effective against HPV or HSV
- an STD patient is not considered treated until the management of his/her partner(s) is ensured (contact tracing by Public Health)
- patients diagnosed with bacterial STD or trichomonal infection should abstain from sexual activity until treatment completion and for 7 d after treatment for both partners, or until test of cure completed
- mandatory reporting: chlamydia, gonorrhea, hepatitis B, HIV, syphilis



STD Risk Factors

- Sexually active males and females <25 yr old
- Unprotected sex, sexual contact with a known case of STD, previous STD
- New sexual partner or >2 sexual partners in the past 12 mo
- Street involved, homeless, and/or substance abuse



When an STD is detected in a prepubertal child, evaluation for sexual abuse is mandatory



Sexual History

5 P's

Partners (numbers, gender)

Practices (vaginal, oral, anal insertive/receptive)

Protection

Past history of STDs

Pregnancy prevention



Prophylactic Vaccination Against Human Papillomavirus Infection and Disease in Women: A Systematic Review of Randomized Controlled Trials

CMAJ 2007;177:469-479

Purpose: To evaluate prophylactic HPV vaccination in preventing high- and low-grade cervical lesions, persistent HPV infection, external genital lesions, adverse events, and death using meta-analysis.

Studies: 9 reports from 6 different trials with 40,323 patients were included and all studies were of high methodologic quality. Three studies used the quadrivalent vaccine, two used the bivalent, and one used a monovalent. The longest mean duration of follow-up was 48 mo.

Results: Prophylactic HPV vaccination decreased the frequency of high-grade cervical lesions caused by vaccine-type HPV strains compared to the control group (OR 0.14; 95% CI 0.09-0.21). Vaccinations also prevented persistent HPV infection, low-grade lesions and genital warts, and the reported adverse events were mostly minor. Compared to placebo, there was no difference in serious adverse events or death.

Conclusion: Prophylactic HPV vaccination is highly efficacious in preventing infection and precancerous cervical disease in women aged 15-25 who have not previously been infected with vaccine-type HPV strains.

Table 27. Diagnosis and Treatment of Common STDs

	Signs and Symptoms	Investigations	Treatment	Complications
Gonococcal Urethritis/Cervicitis (<i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i>)	M: urethral discharge, unexplained pyuria, dysuria, irritation, testicular swelling, Sx of epididymitis F: mucopurulent endocervical discharge, vaginal bleeding, dysuria, pelvic pain, dyspareunia M and F: often asymptomatic, can involve rectal symptoms in cases of unprotected anal sex	M: urethral swab for Gram stain and culture F: urine PCR, endocervical swab for Gram stain and culture, vaginal swab for wet mount (to rule out trichomonas) M and F: urine PCR, rectal/pharyngeal swabs if indicated	Ceftriaxone 250 mg IM single dose* If risk factors for treatment failure (e.g. pregnancy, pharyngeal/rectal infection, potentially reduced susceptibility) → Test of cure: culture 4 d post-treatment (preferred) or urine PCR 2 wk post treatment (alternative) If no risk factors, rescreen 6-12 mo post treatment	M: urethral strictures, epididymitis, infertility F: PID, infertility, ectopic pregnancy, perinatal infection, chronic pelvic pain M and F: Arthritis, increased risk of acquiring and transmitting HIV
Non-Gonococcal Urethritis/Cervicitis (Usually <i>Chlamydia trachomatis</i>)	~70% asymptomatic If symptoms appear (usually 2-6 wk after infection) then similar to gonococcal symptoms (see above)	Same as above	Azithromycin 1 g PO single dose + gonococcal urethritis/cervicitis Rx* Same F/U as above	Same as above
Human Papillomavirus (genital warts, cervical dysplasia)	Most are asymptomatic M: cauliflower lesions (condylomata acuminata) on skin/mucosa of penile or anal area F: cauliflower lesions and/or pre-neoplastic/neoplastic lesions on cervix/vagina/vulva	None needed if simple condylomata Potential biopsy of suspicious lesions F: screening for cervical dysplasia through regular Pap smears	For condylomata: cryotherapy, electrocautery, laser excision, topical therapy (patient-applied or office-based) For cervical dysplasia: colposcopy and possible excision, dependent on grade of lesion	M and F: anal cancer MSM and F who have receptive anal sex: rectal cancer F: cervical/vaginal/vulvar cancer
Genital Herpes (HSV-1 and -2)	1° episode: painful vesiculoculcerative genital lesions ± fever, tender lymphadenopathy, protracted course Recurrent episodes: less extensive lesions, shorter course may have "trigger factors"	Swab of vesicular content for culture, type-specific serologic testing for HSV-1 vs. HSV-2 antibodies and to determine 1° vs. recurrent episode	1° episode: Acyclovir 200 mg PO 5x/d x 5-10 d or Famciclovir 250 mg PO tid x 5 d or Valacyclovir 1,000 mg PO bid x 10 d Recurrent Episode: Acyclovir 200 mg PO 5x/d x 5d or 800 mg PO tid x 2 d or Famciclovir 125 mg PO bid x 5 d or Valacyclovir 500 mg PO bid x 3 d or 1,000 mg PO OD x 3 d	Genital pain, urethritis, cervicitis, aseptic meningitis, increased risk of acquiring and transmitting HIV
Infectious Syphilis (<i>Treponema pallidum</i>)	1°: chancre (painless sore), regional lymphadenopathy 2°: rash and flu-like symptoms, meningitis, H/A, uveitis, retinitis, condyloma lata, mucus lesions, alopecia Latent Phase: asymptomatic 3°: neurologic, cardiovascular, and tissue complications	Specimen collection from 1° and 2° lesions, screen high risk individuals with serologic syphilis testing (VDRL), universal screening of pregnant women	Benzathine penicillin G IM (dose depends on stage and patient population) Notify partners (last 3-12 mo) Continuous F/U and testing until patients are seronegative	Chronic neurologic and cardiovascular sequelae, increased risk of acquiring and transmitting HIV

F = females; M = males

*N.B. if urethritis/cervicitis is suspected, always treat for both gonococcal and non-gonococcal types (i.e. ceftriaxone AND azithromycin)

Sinusitis

- see [Otolaryngology](#), OT25

Etiology

- viral etiology is more common
- viral: rhinovirus, influenza, parainfluenza
- bacterial: *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, *M. catarrhalis*

Management of Acute Sinusitis

- may provide symptom relief: oral analgesics (acetaminophen, NSAIDs), nasal saline rinse, short-term use of topical or oral decongestants
- do not prescribe antihistamines
- intra-nasal corticosteroids if diagnosed with mild to moderate acute bacterial sinusitis
- antibiotics and intra-nasal corticosteroids if diagnosed with severe acute bacterial sinusitis
- ENT referral if: anatomic defect (e.g. deviated septum, polyp, adenoid hypertrophy), failure of second-line therapy, ≥4 episodes/yr, development of complications (e.g. mucocele, orbital extension, meningitis, intra-cranial abscess, venous sinus thrombosis)



Red Flags for Urgent Referral

- Altered mental status
- Headache
- Systemic toxicity
- Swelling of the orbit or change in visual acuity or EOM
- Hard neurological findings
- Signs of meningeal irritation
- Suspected intra-cranial complications (meningitis, intra-cranial abscess, cavernous sinus thrombosis)
- Involvement of associated structures (periocular cellulitis, Pott's puffy tumor)

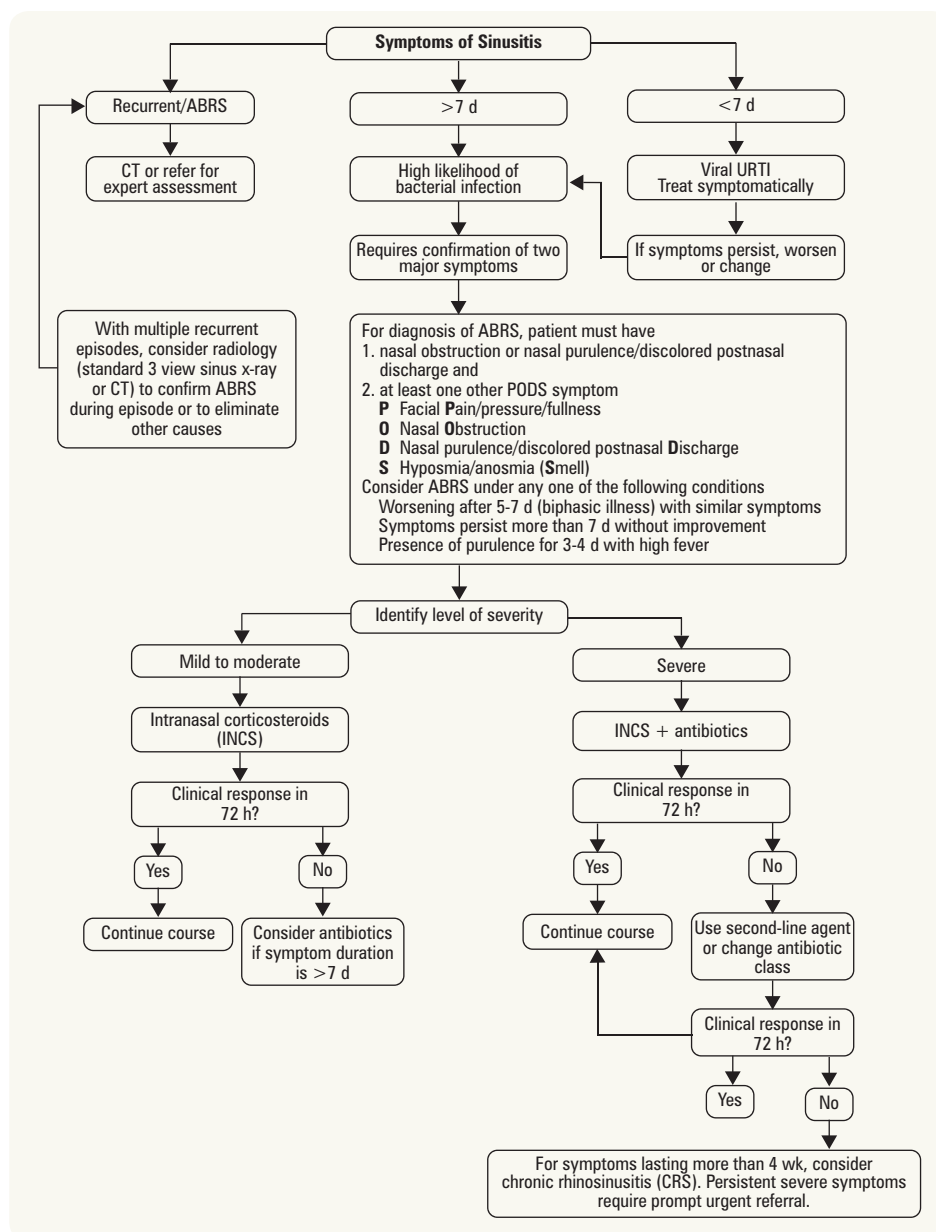


Figure 11. Diagnosis and management of sinusitis

ABRS = acute bacterial rhinosinusitis

Adapted from: Desrosiers M, et al. *Allergy Asthma Clin Immunol* 2011;7:doi:10.1186/1710-1492-7-2

Sleep Disorders

- see [Respirology](#), R31 and [Neurology](#), N45

Definition

- most often characterized by one of three complaints:
 - insomnia
 - ♦ difficulty falling asleep, difficulty maintaining sleep, early-morning waking, non-refreshing sleep
 - parasomnias
 - ♦ night terrors, nightmares, restless leg syndrome, somnambulism (performing complex behavior during sleep with eyes open but without memory of event)
 - excessive daytime sleepiness

Epidemiology

- 1/3 of patients in primary care setting have occasional sleep problems, 10% have chronic sleep problems



Etiology

- primary sleep disorders
 - primary insomnia, narcolepsy, obstructive sleep apnea, restless leg syndrome, periodic limb movements of sleep
- secondary causes
 - medical: COPD, asthma, CHF, hyperthyroidism, chronic pain, BPH, menopause, GERD, PUD, pregnancy, neurological disorders
 - drugs: alcohol, caffeine, nicotine, nicotine replacement therapy, β -agonists, antidepressants, steroids
 - psychiatric: mood and anxiety disorders
 - lifestyle factors: shift work, jet-lag

Investigations

- complete sleep diary every morning for 1-2 wk
 - record bedtime, sleep latency, total sleep time, awakenings, quality of sleep
- rule out specific medical problems (e.g. CBC and differential, TSH)
- refer for sleep study, nocturnal polysomnogram, or daytime multiple sleep latency test if suspicion of sleep apnea or periodic leg movements of sleep

Treatment of Specific Problems

- primary insomnia
 - majority of cases
 - person reacts to insomnia with fear or anxiety around bedtime or with a change in sleep hygiene, which can progress to a chronic disorder (psychophysiological insomnia)
 - treat any suspected medical or psychiatric cause
 - behavior based treatment
 - ♦ sleep hygiene: avoid alcohol, caffeine, nicotine; comfortable sleep environment; regular sleep schedule; no napping
 - ♦ exercise regularly, avoid heavy exercise within 3 h of bedtime
 - ♦ relaxation therapy: deep breathing, meditation, biofeedback
 - ♦ stimulus control therapy: re-association of bed/bedroom with sleep, re-establishment of a consistent sleep-wake schedule, reduce activities that cue staying awake
 - ♦ sleep restriction therapy: total time in bed should closely match the total sleep time of the patient (improves sleep efficacy)
 - ♦ CBT: address inappropriate beliefs and attitudes that perpetuate dysfunctional sleep
 - pharmacologic treatment
 - ♦ short-acting benzodiazepines (e.g. lorazepam, oxazepam, temazepam) at the lowest effective dose should be used <7 consecutive nights to break cycle of chronic insomnia or to manage an exacerbation of previously controlled primary insomnia
 - ♦ non-benzodiazepines: eszopiclone (Lunesta®), zolpidem (Ambien®), melatonin, low dose anti-depressants with sedating properties (amitriptyline, trazadone, mirtazapine)
 - ♦ follow-up every 2-4 wk initially (to reinforce behavioral interventions and renew/consider pharmacotherapy) then every 3 mo; if no progress or limited improvement, consider referral to sleep medicine program
- snoring
 - results from soft tissue vibration at the back of the nose and throat due to turbulent airflow through narrowed air passages
 - physical exam: obesity, nasal polyps, septal deviation, hypertrophy of the nasal turbinates, enlarged uvula and tonsils
 - investigations (only if severely symptomatic): nocturnal polysomnography and airway assessment (CT/MRI)
 - treatment
 - ♦ sleep on side (position therapy), weight loss
 - ♦ nasal dilators (noninvasive external dilator made with elastic adhesive backing applied over nasal bridge), tongue-retaining devices, mandibular advancement devices
 - at risk of developing obstructive sleep apnea
- obstructive sleep apnea (OSA)
 - apnea (no breathing for ≥ 10 s) resulting from upper airway obstruction due to collapse of the base of the tongue, soft palate with uvula, and epiglottis; respiratory effort is present
 - leads to a distinctive snorting, choking, awakening type pattern as the body rouses itself to open the airway (resuscitative breath)
 - apneic episodes can last from 20 s to 3 min and occur 100-600 episodes/night
 - diagnosis is based on nocturnal polysomnography: >15 apneic/hypopneic episodes per h of sleep with arousal recorded
 - consequences
 - ♦ daytime somnolence, non-restorative sleep
 - ♦ poor social and work performance
 - ♦ mood changes: anxiety, irritability, depression
 - ♦ sexual dysfunction: poor libido, impotence



Risk Factors for Obstructive Sleep Apnea

- 2% of women, 4% of men between ages 30-60
- Obesity (due to upper airway narrowing). BMI > 28 kg/m² present in 60-90% of cases
- Children (commonly due to large tonsils and adenoids)
- Aging (due to decreased muscle tone)
- Persistent URTIs, allergies, nasal tumors, hypothyroidism (due to macroglossia), neuromuscular disease
- Family history

- ♦ morning headache (due to hypercapnia)
- ♦ HTN (2x increased risk), CAD (3x increased risk), stroke (4x increased risk), arrhythmias
- ♦ pulmonary HTN, right ventricular dysfunction, cor pulmonale (due to chronic hypoxemia)
- ♦ memory loss, decreased concentration, confusion
- investigations
 - ♦ evaluate BP, inspect nose and oropharynx (enlarged adenoids or tonsils)
 - ♦ blood gas not helpful, TSH if clinically indicated
 - ♦ nocturnal polysomnography
- treatment
 - ♦ modifiable factors: avoid sleeping supine; weight loss; avoid alcohol, sedatives, opioids; inhaled steroids if nasal swelling present; dental appliances to modify mandibular position
 - ♦ primary treatment of OSA is CPAP: maintains patent airway in 95% of OSA cases
 - ♦ surgery: somnoplasty, uvulopalatopharyngoplasty (UPPP), tonsillectomy, and adenoidectomy (in children)
 - ♦ report patient to Ministry of Transportation if OSA is not controlled by CPAP

Sore Throat (Pharyngitis)



Definition

- inflammation of the oropharynx
- may be caused by a wide range of infectious organisms, most of which produce a self-limited infection with no significant sequelae

Etiology

- viral: adenovirus, rhinovirus, influenza virus, RSV, EBV, coxsackie virus, herpes simplex virus, CMV, HIV
- bacterial: group A β -hemolytic *Streptococcus* (GABHS), group C and group β -hemolytic *Streptococcus*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, *Mycoplasma pneumoniae*, *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*

Epidemiology

- viral
 - most common cause (90% in adults is viral), occurs year round
- bacterial
 - GABHS
 - ♦ most common bacterial cause
 - ♦ occurs most often in winter months
 - ♦ 5-15% of adult cases and up to 50% of all pediatric cases of acute pharyngitis
 - ♦ most prevalent between 5-17 yr old

Clinical Features

- viral
 - pharyngitis, conjunctivitis, rhinorrhea, hoarseness, cough
 - nonspecific flu-like symptoms such as fever, malaise, and myalgia
 - often mimics bacterial infection
 - EBV (infectious mononucleosis)
 - ♦ pharyngitis, tonsillar exudate, fever, lymphadenopathy, fatigue, rash
 - coxsackie virus (hand, foot, and mouth disease)
 - ♦ primarily late summer, early fall
 - ♦ sudden onset of fever, pharyngitis, headache, abdominal pain, and vomiting
 - ♦ appearance of small vesicles that rupture and ulcerate on soft palate, tonsils, pharynx
 - ♦ ulcers are pale gray and several mm in diameter, have surrounding erythema, and may appear on hands and feet
 - herpes simplex virus
 - ♦ like coxsackie virus but ulcers are fewer and larger
 - ♦ pharyngitis, tonsillar exudate, fever, lymphadenopathy, fatigue, rash
- bacterial
 - symptoms: pharyngitis, fever, malaise, headache, abdominal pain, absence of cough
 - signs: fever, tonsillar or pharyngeal erythema/exudate, swollen/tender anterior cervical nodes, halitosis
 - complications: rheumatic fever, glomerulonephritis, suppurative complications (abscess, sinusitis, otitis media, cervical adenitis, pneumonia), meningitis, impetigo



Red Flags in Patients with "Sore Throat"

- Persistence of symptoms longer than 1 wk without improvement
- Respiratory difficulty (particularly stridor, croup, etc.)
- Difficulty in handling secretions (peritonsillar abscess)
- Difficulty in swallowing (Ludwig's angina)
- Severe pain in the absence of erythema (supraglottitis/epiglottitis)
- Palpable mass (neoplasm)
- Blood in the pharynx or ear (trauma)

Investigations

- suspected GABHS
 - see Table below for approach to diagnosis and management of GABHS
 - gold standard for diagnosis is throat culture
 - rapid test for streptococcal antigen: high specificity (95%) but low sensitivity (50-90%)
 - suspected EBV (infectious mononucleosis)
 - ♦ peripheral blood smear, heterophile antibody test (i.e. the latex agglutination assay or “monospot”)

Table 28. Modified Centor Score: Approach to Diagnosis and Management of GABHS

POINTS					
Cough absent?	1				
History of fever >100.4°F?	1				
Tonsillar exudate?	1				
Swollen, tender anterior nodes?	1				
Age 3-14	1				
Age 15-44	0				
Age >45	-1				
In communities with moderate levels of strep infection (10-20% of sore throats):					
Score	0	1	2	3	4 or more
Chance patient has strep	1-2.5%	5-10%	11-17%	28-35%	51-53%
Suggested action	NO culture or antibiotic		Culture all, treat with antibiotics only if culture is positive		Culture all, treat with antibiotics on clinical grounds ¹ , discontinue antibiotics if culture comes back negative

¹Clinical grounds include a high fever or other indicators that the patient is clinically unwell and is presenting early in the course of the illness

Limitations: *This score is not applicable to patients less than 3 yr of age

*If an outbreak or epidemic of illness caused by GABHS is occurring in any community, the score is invalid and should not be used

Adapted from: Centor RM, et al. *Med Decis Making* 1981;1:239-46; McIsaac WJ, et al. *CMAJ* 1998;158:75-83

Management

- viral pharyngitis
 - antibiotics not indicated
 - symptomatic therapy: acetaminophen/NSAIDs for fever and muscle aches, decongestants
- GABHS
 - antibiotic treatment decreases severity and duration of symptoms, risk of transmission (after 24 h of treatment), and risk of rheumatic fever and suppurative complications
 - incidence of glomerulonephritis is not decreased with antibiotic treatment
 - no increased incidence of rheumatic fever with 48 h delay in antibiotic treatment; if possible, delay antibiotic treatment until culture confirms diagnosis
 - routine F/U and/or post-treatment throat cultures are not required for most patients
 - F/U throat culture only recommended for: patients with history of rheumatic fever, patients of family member(s) with history of acute rheumatic fever, suspected streptococcal carrier
- infectious mononucleosis (EBV)
 - self-limiting course; antibiotics are not indicated
 - symptomatic treatment: acetaminophen/NSAIDs for fever, pharyngitis, malaise
 - avoid heavy physical activity and contact sports for at least 1 mo or until splenomegaly resolves because of risk of splenic rupture
 - if acute airway obstruction, give corticosteroids and consult ENT

Complementary and Alternative Medicine

Epidemiology

- 50-75% of Americans report some use of CAM over their lifetime, and only half will disclose this use to their physician
- more likely to be used by younger patients and those with higher education and income
- examples: chiropractic, acupuncture, massage, naturopathy, homeopathy, traditional Chinese medicine, craniosacral therapy, osteopathy

Herbal Products

- over 50% of Americans use natural health products (NHPs)
- most commonly used include echinacea, ginseng, ginkgo, garlic, St. John's wort, and soy
- relatively few herbal products have been shown to be effective in clinical trials
- many patients believe herbal products are inherently safe and are unaware of potential side effects and interactions with conventional medicines
- all NHPs must be regulated under The Natural Health Products Regulations as of January 1, 2004, including herbal remedies, homeopathic medicines, vitamins, minerals, traditional medicines, probiotics, amino acids, and essential fatty acids (e.g. omega-3)
- always ask patients whether they are taking any herbal product, herbal supplement, or other natural remedy. Further questions may include:
 - Are you taking any prescription or non-prescription medications for the same purpose as the herbal product?
 - Are you allergic to any plant products?
 - Are you pregnant or breastfeeding?
- information resources: National Center for CAM (www.nccam.nih.gov)



Most Common Uses of CAM

- Back/neck problems
- Gynecological problems
- Anxiety
- Headaches
- Digestive problems
- Chronic fatigue syndromes

Table 29. Common Herbal Products

Common Name	Reported Uses	Possible Adverse Effects	Possible Drug Interactions
Black Cohosh	Menopausal symptoms, PMS, labor induction, arthritis	Hepatitis, liver failure, headaches, GI discomfort, heaviness in legs, weight problems	None reported
Chamomile	Mild sedative, anxiolytic, GI complaints, common cold	Allergic/contact dermatitis, anaphylaxis	Anxiolytics, sedatives
Echinacea	Common cold, flu, wound treatment, UTI, cancer	Hypersensitivity, hepatotoxicity with prolonged use, avoid use if immunosuppressed	Potentiates warfarin
Evening Primrose	Dysmenorrhea, menopausal sx, inflammation, allergies, eczema, arthritis, MS	Headache, restlessness, nausea, diarrhea, may decrease seizure threshold	Anticoagulants, antiplatelets
Feverfew	Migraine prevention, RA, anti-inflammatory	Anxiety, upset stomach, skin rash, miscarriage	Anticoagulants, antiplatelets
Flaxseed Oil	Laxative, menopausal symptoms, source of omega-3 fatty acids	Diarrhea	Do not take with other medications as fiber content can bind drugs
Garlic	Elevated lipids, HTN, hyperglycemia, antimicrobial	GI irritation, contact dermatitis, may increase post-operative bleeding	Anticoagulants, potentiates antihypertensives
Ginger	Nausea, motion sickness, dyspepsia, anti-inflammatory	Heartburn, not to be used for morning sickness	None known
Ginkgo Biloba	Increases peripheral circulation (AD, dementia, intermittent claudication), premenstrual syndrome, vertigo	Headache, cramping, bleeding, mild digestive problems; reports of intracranial hemorrhage	Anticoagulants, thiazide diuretics, MAO inhibitors
Ginseng	Energy enhancer, decreases stress, adjunct support for chemotherapy/radiation	HTN, nervousness, insomnia, breakthrough bleeding, palpitations	Stimulant medications, antihypertensives, hormonal therapies
Glucosamine (Chondroitin)	Osteoarthritis	GI distress, headache, drowsiness, palpitations	Caution if shellfish allergy
Saw Palmetto	BPH, adjunct to finasteride	Mild GI distress	α -adrenergics, finasteride
St. John's Wort	Mild to moderate depression	Photosensitivity, increased liver enzymes, drowsiness, dizziness, nausea, headache	CNS depressants, contraindicated with indinavir
Valerian Root	Sedative, anxiolytic, muscle relaxant, PMS	Drowsiness, headache, digestive problems, paradoxical insomnia	CNS depressants, antihistamines

Zink T, Chaffin J. Herbal "health" products: What family physicians need to know, *American Family Physician* 1998;58:1133-1140; NIH National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine website (<http://nccam.nih.gov>)

Antimicrobial Quick Reference

Condition	Microorganisms	Antimicrobial
RESPIRATORY/ENT		
Acute Rhinitis (common cold)	Rhinovirus, coronavirus, influenza, RSV, parainfluenza, adenovirus	None
Pharyngitis (sore throat)	Rhinovirus, adenovirus, influenza, parainfluenza, coxsackievirus, coronavirus	None
Strep Pharyngitis	Group A β -Hemolytic <i>Streptococcus</i>	<p>Children:</p> <p><u>1st line:</u> penicillin V 40 mg/kg/d PO div bid-tid (max 750 mg/d) x 10 d (use adult dose if >27 kg)</p> <p>amoxicillin 40 mg/kg/d PO div bid-tid x 10 d</p> <p><u>2nd line:</u> erythromycin estolate 40 mg/kg/d PO div bid-tid x 10 d</p> <p><u>3rd line:</u> cephalexin 25-50 mg/kg/d PO div qid x 10 d</p> <p>cefprozil 15 mg/kg/d PO div bid x 10 d</p> <p>Adults:</p> <p><u>1st line:</u> penicillin V 300 mg PO tid or 600 mg bid x 10 d</p> <p><u>2nd line:</u> erythromycin 250 mg PO qid x 10 d</p> <p><u>3rd line:</u> cephalexin 250 mg PO qid x 10 d</p> <p>cefadroxil 500 mg PO bid x 10 d</p>
Sinusitis	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> <i>H. influenzae</i> <i>M. catarrhalis</i> <i>S. aureus</i>	<p>Children:</p> <p><u>1st line:</u> amoxicillin 80 mg/kg/d PO div bid-tid x 5-10 d (max 3 g/d) x 10-14 d</p> <p><u>2nd line:</u> amoxicillin/clavulanate 40-80 mg/kg/d div bid (max 3 g/d) x 10-14 d</p> <p>cefprozil 30 mg/kg/d PO div bid x 10-14 d</p> <p><u>3rd line:</u> cefuroxime-AX 30-40 mg/kg/d PO div bid x 10-14 d</p> <p>clarithromycin 15 mg/kg/d PO div bid x 10-14 d</p> <p>Adults:</p> <p><u>1st line:</u> amoxicillin 500 mg PO tid x 5-10 d</p> <p><u>2nd line:</u> amoxicillin/clavulanate 500 or 875 mg PO bid x 5-10 d</p> <p>cefuroxime-AX 250-500 mg PO bid x 5-10 d</p> <p><u>3rd line:</u> levofloxacin 500 mg PO OD x 5-10 d</p> <p>moxifloxacin 400 mg PO OD x 5-10 d</p>
Acute Otitis Media	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> <i>H. influenzae</i> <i>M. catarrhalis</i> Group A <i>Strep</i> <i>S. aureus</i>	<p>Children:</p> <p>Treat if under age 6 mo</p> <p>If age 6-24 mo, watchful waiting appropriate if parents can observe child for 48-72 h with appropriate medical follow-up</p> <p>If age >24 mo, treat if worsens after 48-72 h</p> <p>10 d course if age <24 mo, 5 d course if age >24 mo</p> <p><u>1st line:</u> amoxicillin 80 mg/kg/d PO div bid-tid (max 3 g/d)</p> <p><u>2nd line:</u> amoxicillin/clavulanate 40-80 mg/kg/d PO div bid (max 3 g/d)</p> <p>cefprozil 30 mg/kg/d PO div bid</p> <p><u>3rd line:</u> cefuroxime-AX 30-40 mg/kg/d PO div bid</p> <p>clarithromycin 15 mg/kg/d PO div bid</p> <p>Chronic TM perforation or ventilation tubes: Ciprodex® otic suspension 4 drops bid x 5 d</p> <p>Adults:</p> <p><u>1st line:</u> amoxicillin 500 mg PO tid x 7-10 d</p> <p><u>2nd line:</u> amoxicillin/clavulanate 500 mg PO tid or 875 mg PO bid x 7-10 d</p> <p>cefprozil 250-500 mg PO bid x 7-10 d</p> <p>Chronic TM perforation or ventilation tubes: Ciprodex® otic suspension 4 drops bid x 5 d</p>
Otitis Externa	<i>P. aeruginosa</i> Coliforms <i>S. aureus</i>	<p><u>1st line:</u> Buro-sol® otic solution 2-3 drops tid or qid</p> <p><u>2nd line:</u> Cortisporin® otic solution 4 drops tid or qid (3 drops tid or qid for children)</p> <p>TM defect: Ciprodex® otic suspension 4 drops bid x 5 d</p> <p>Necrotizing (i.e. bone involvement): ciprofloxacin 750 mg PO bid x 4-8 wk</p>
Bronchitis	<i>H. influenzae</i> , parainfluenza, coronavirus, rhinovirus, RSV	None

Condition	Microorganisms	Antimicrobial
Community Acquired Pneumonia: Outpatient without Comorbidity	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> <i>M. pneumoniae</i> <i>C. pneumoniae</i>	<u>1st line:</u> amoxicillin 1,000 mg PO tid x 7-14 d (for patients over age 50 where mycoplasma infection is less likely) erythromycin 500 mg PO qid x 7-14 d clarithromycin 500 mg PO bid or 1,000 mg (ER) PO OD x 7-14 d azithromycin 500 mg PO on 1st d then 250 mg PO OD x 4 d or 500 mg PO OD x 3 d <u>2nd line:</u> doxycycline 100 mg PO on 1st d then 100 mg PO OD x 7-14 d
Community Acquired Pneumonia: Outpatient with Comorbidity	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> <i>M. pneumoniae</i> <i>C. pneumoniae</i> <i>H. influenzae</i>	ANY ONE of the β-lactam agents below: amoxicillin 1,000 mg PO tid x 7-14 d amoxicillin/clavulanate 500 mg PO tid or 875 mg PO bid x 7-14 d cefuroxime-AX 500 mg PO bid x 7-14 d cefprozil 500 mg PO bid x 7-14 d PLUS ONE of the following: clarithromycin 500 mg PO bid or 1,000 mg (ER) PO OD x 7-14 d azithromycin 500 mg PO OD on 1st d then 250 mg PO OD x 4 d doxycycline 100 mg PO bid on 1st d then 100 mg PO OD x 7-14 d OR ANY ONE of the following: levofloxacin 750 mg PO OD x 7-14 d moxifloxacin 400 mg PO OD x 7-14 d
Dental Infections/ Periapical and Periodontal Abscesses	Oral Flora	penicillin V potassium 500 mg PO qid x 7-10 d clindamycin 300 mg PO qid or 600 mg bid x 7-10 d
GASTROENTEROLOGY		
Diarrhea – Enteritis	Enterotoxigenic <i>E. coli</i> (ETEC) <i>Campylobacter</i> <i>Salmonella</i> <i>Shigella</i> Viruses Protozoa	<u>Mild to moderate</u> (i.e. <3 BM/d, no blood, no fever): OTC loperamide 4 mg PO STAT then 2 mg PO after each loose stool (max 8 doses/d) OTC bismuth subsalicylate (Pepto Bismol®) 2 tabs or 30 mL repeat q30min prn (max 8 doses/d) (prevention: 2 tabs or 30 mL qid with meals and in the evening) <u>Moderate to severe</u> (i.e. >3 BM/d, blood, fever): ofloxacin 400 mg PO single dose or 300 mg PO bid x 3 d (prevention: 300 mg PO OD) norfloxacin 800 mg PO single dose or 400 mg PO bid x 1-3 d (prevention: 400 mg PO OD) ciprofloxacin 750 mg PO single dose or 500 mg PO bid x 1-3 d (prevention: 500 mg PO OD) levofloxacin 500 mg PO OD x 1-3 d (prevention: 500 mg PO OD) azithromycin 1,000 mg PO single dose or 500 mg PO OD x 1-3 d (children: 10 mg/kg/d x 3 d) <i>Azithromycin:</i> Recommended primarily for Thailand, India, Nepal, and Indonesia where <i>Campylobacter</i> resistance to quinolones is high Considered drug of choice for children because of safety, tolerability, and ease of administration
Diarrhea – Post Abx (common with clindamycin)	<i>C. difficile</i>	<u>Mild to moderate</u> (WBC <5 x 10 ⁹ /L and Cr <1.5 x baseline): metronidazole 500 mg PO tid or 250 mg PO qid x 10 d (children: 15-30 mg/kg/d PO div tid-qid max 4 g/d) <u>Severe</u> (WBC ≥15 x 10 ⁹ /L and Cr ≥1.5 x baseline): vancomycin 125 mg PO qid x 10-14 d (children: 40 mg/kg/d PO div tid-qid x 10-14 d max 2 g/d)
Peptic Ulcer Disease (non-NSAID related)	<i>H. pylori</i>	<u>PPI:</u> lansoprazole 30 mg or omeprazole 20 mg or pantoprazole 40 mg or rabeprazole 20 mg <u>1st line:</u> (PPI PO bid + amoxicillin 1,000 mg PO bid + clarithromycin 500 mg PO bid x 7 d [e.g. HP-PAC: lansoprazole 30 mg PO bid + amoxicillin 1,000 mg PO bid + clarithromycin 500 mg PO bid x 7 d]) (PPI PO bid + metronidazole 500 mg PO bid + clarithromycin 500 mg or 250 mg PO bid x 7 d) <u>2nd line:</u> (PPI PO bid + metronidazole 500 mg PO bid + amoxicillin 1,000 mg PO bid x 7 d) (PPI PO bid + bismuth subsalicylate 2 tabs or 30 mL qid + metronidazole 250 mg PO qid + tetracycline 500 mg PO qid x 7-14 d)

Condition	Microorganisms	Antimicrobial
GENITOURINARY		
UTI/Cystitis	<i>Klebsiella</i> <i>E. coli</i> <i>Enterobacter</i> <i>Enterococci</i> <i>Proteus</i> <i>S. saprophyticus</i>	<u>1st line:</u> TMP/SMX 2 tabs bid or 1 DS tab bid x 3 d trimethoprim 100 mg PO bid or 200 mg PO OD x 3 d nitrofurantoin 50-100 mg PO qid or Macrobid® 100 mg bid x 5 d <u>2nd line:</u> amoxicillin 500 mg PO tid x 7 d norfloxacin 400 mg PO bid x 3 d ciprofloxacin 250 mg PO bid or 500 mg (ER) OD x 3 d NB: high rate of amoxicillin resistance in community <i>E. coli</i> , use only after lab susceptibility obtained <u>3rd line:</u> cephalexin 250-500 mg PO qid x 7 d levofloxacin 250 mg PO OD x 3 d <u>Pregnancy:</u> cephalexin 250-500 mg PO qid x 7 d nitrofurantoin 50-100 mg PO bid x 5 d amoxicillin 500 mg PO tid x 7 d NB: nitrofurantoin is contraindicated in pregnancy after 36 wk
Head and Pubic Lice (crabs)	<i>Pediculus humanus capitis</i> <i>Phthirus pubis</i>	permethrin cream 1%: apply as liquid onto washed hair for 10 min, then rinse; repeat in 1 wk
Vulvovaginal Candidiasis	<i>Candida</i>	Treat only if patient is symptomatic fluconazole 150 mg PO single dose miconazole 2% cream (Monistat 7®): one applicator (5 g) intravaginally qhs x 7 d multiple other OTC azole treatments
Bacterial Vaginosis	Overgrowth of: <i>G. vaginalis</i> <i>M. hominis</i> Anaerobes	If patient is asymptomatic, treatment is unnecessary unless high-risk pregnancy, prior IUD insertion, gynecologic surgery, induced abortion, or upper tract instrumentation <u>1st line:</u> metronidazole 500 mg PO bid x 7 d metronidazole 0.75% gel: one applicator (5 g) intravaginally qhs x 5 d clindamycin 2% cream: one applicator (5 g) intravaginally qhs x 7 d <u>2nd line:</u> metronidazole 2 g PO single dose clindamycin 300 mg PO bid x 7 d
Herpes	Herpes simplex virus	<u>1° episode:</u> acyclovir 400 mg PO tid x 5-7 d famciclovir 250 mg PO tid x 5-7 d valacyclovir 500-1,000 mg PO bid x 5-7 d <u>Recurrent Episode:</u> acyclovir 400 mg PO tid x 5 d or 800 mg PO bid x 5 d or 800 mg PO tid x 2 d famciclovir 125 mg PO bid x 5 d valacyclovir 500 mg PO bid x 3 d or 1,000 mg PO OD x 3 d <u>Pregnancy:</u> 1° episode: acyclovir 200 mg PO 5x/d x 5-10 d Prior infection within previous yr: acyclovir 200 mg PO qid at 36 wk valacyclovir 500 mg PO bid at 36 wk
Gonorrhea/Chlamydia	<i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> <i>C. trachomatis</i>	ceftriaxone 250 mg IM x 1 dose + azithromycin 1 g PO single dose or doxycycline 100 mg PO bid x 7 d
DERMATOLOGIC		
Mastitis	<i>S. aureus</i> <i>S. pyogenes</i>	cloxacillin 500 mg PO qid x 7 d cephalexin 500 mg PO qid x 7 d
Tinea Cruris/Pedis (jock itch/athlete's foot)	Trichophyton	clotrimazole 1% cream bid ketoconazole 2% cream bid
Uncomplicated Cellulitis	<i>S. aureus</i> Group A <i>Streptococcus</i>	<u>Children:</u> <u>1st line:</u> cephalexin 50-100 mg/kg/d div qid x 10-14 d <u>2nd line:</u> cloxacillin 50 mg/kg/d div qid x 10-14 d clindamycin 25 mg/kg/d x 10-14 d <u>Adults:</u> <u>1st line:</u> cephalexin 500 mg PO qid x 10-14 d <u>2nd line:</u> cloxacillin 500 mg PO qid x 10-14 d clindamycin 300 mg PO x 10-14 d

*All doses are adult doses unless otherwise specified

*This chart is not all-encompassing and is non-inclusive of special exceptions (i.e. pregnancy, poor renal clearance, etc.)

*Comorbidities include: COPD (received steroids within the last 3 mo), liver or renal disease, CHF, DM, malignancy, alcoholism, asplenia, immunosuppressing conditions, malnutrition, hospitalization in past 3 mo or nursing home

References

Comprehensive Family Medicine Resources

The Hub -Family Medicine. Department of Family and Community Medicine, The University of Toronto. Available from: <http://thehub.utoronto.ca/family/>

SPECIFIC TOPICS

Abuse

Fogarty CT, Burge S, McCord E. Communicating with patients about intimate partner violence: screening and interviewing approaches. *Fam Med* 2002;34:369-375.
National Center on Elder Abuse at the American Public Human Services Association. National elder abuse incidence study. Available from: http://www.aoa.gov/eldfam/Elder_Rights/Elder_Abuse/AbuseReport_Full.pdf
Wathen CN, MacMillan HL. Interventions for violence against women. *JAMA* 2003;289:589-599.

Breast Cancer Screening Guidelines

Clinical Preventive Service Recommendation for Breast Cancer. Available from: <http://www.aafp.org/patient-care/clinical-recommendations/all/breast-cancer.html>

Colorectal Cancer Screening Guidelines

AAFP Clinical Preventive Service Recommendation. Colorectal Cancer. Available from: <http://www.aafp.org/patient-care/clinical-recommendations/all/colorectal-cancer.html>.

Diabetes

Canadian Diabetes Association 2013 Clinical Practice Guidelines. Available from: <http://guidelines.diabetes.ca/Browse.aspx>.
Moore H, Summerbell C, Hooper L, et al. Dietary advice for treatment of type 2 diabetes mellitus in adults. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2007;Issue 3.
Norris SL, Zhang X, Avenell A, et al. Long-term non-pharmacological weight loss interventions for adults with pre-diabetes. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2005;Issue 2.
Saenz A, Fernandez-Esteban I, Mataix A, et al. Metformin monotherapy for type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2005;Issue 3.

Diet, Exercise, and Obesity

American Heart Association Nutrition Committee, Lichtenstein AH, Appel LJ, et al. Diet and lifestyle recommendations: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association Nutrition committee. (revised 2006). *Circulation* 2006;114:82-96.
Calle E, Thun MJ, Petrelli JM, et al. Body-mass index and mortality in a prospective cohort of US adults. *NEJM* 1999;341:1097-1105.
Lau DC, Douketis JD, Morrison KM, et al. 2006 Canadian clinical practice guidelines on the management and prevention of obesity in adults and children. *CMAJ* 2007;176:S1-13.
National Institute of Health, National Heart Lung and Blood Institute, Obesity Education Initiative. Classification of overweight and obesity by BMI, waist circumference, and associated disease risks. Available from: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/heart/obesity/lose_wt/bmi_dis.htm.
Dansinger ML, Gleason JA, Griffith JL, et al. Comparison of the Atkins, Ornish, Weight Watchers, and Zone diets for weight loss and heart disease risk reduction. *JAMA* 2005;293:43-53.
Health Canada. Canada's physical activity guide to healthy active living. Available from: <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/hppb/paguide/main.html>.
Krauss RM, Eckel RH, Howard B, et al. AHA dietary guidelines: revision 2000: A statement for healthcare professionals from the nutrition committee of the American Heart Association. *Stroke* 2000;31:2751-2766.
Physical Activity Guidelines for Americans (2008). Available from: <http://www.health.gov/PAGuidelines/guidelines/>
USDA Dietary Guidelines for Americans (2010). Available from: <http://www.cnpp.usda.gov/dietaryguidelines.htm>

Dyslipidemia, Hypertension, and Heart Disease

Anderson TJ, Grégoire J, Hegele RA, et al. 2012 Update of the Canadian Cardiovascular Society for the diagnosis and treatment of dyslipidemia for the prevention of cardiovascular disease in the adult. *Canadian Journal of Cardiology* 2013;29:151-167.
Canadian Health Measures Survey, Cycle 2, CHHS, CHMS, Statistics Canada, 2012. Available from: <http://www.hypertension.ca/en/professional/chep/diagnosis-measurement/assessment-of-hypertensive-patients>
Canadian Hypertension Education Program. 2009 Canadian hypertension education program recommendations: an annual update. *Can Fam Phys* 2009;55:697-700.
Canadian Hypertension Education Program. 2010 Canadian hypertension education program recommendations for the management of hypertension. *Can J Cardiol* 2010;26:241-258.
CHEP (Canadian Hypertension Education Program) Guidelines 2014. Available from: <http://www.hypertension.ca/en/chep>
Elmer PJ, Obarzanek E, Vollmer WM, et al. Effects of comprehensive lifestyle modification on diet, weight, physical fitness, and blood pressure control: 18-month results of a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2006;144:485-495.
Eckel RH, Jakicic JM, Ard JD, et al. 2013 AHA/ACC Guideline on Lifestyle Management to Reduce Cardiovascular Risk: A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *Circulation* 2013.
Graham DJ, Staffa JA, Shatin D, et al. Incidence of hospitalized rhabdomyolysis in patients treated with lipid-lowering drugs. *JAMA* 2004;292:2585-2590.
Genest J, McPherson R, Frohlich J, et al. 2009 Canadian Cardiovascular Society/Canadian guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of dyslipidemia and prevention of cardiovascular disease in the adult – 2009 recommendations. *Can J Cardiol* 2009; 25:567-579.
Manson JE, Hsia J, Johnson KC, et al. Estrogen plus progestin and the risk of coronary heart disease. *NEJM* 2003;349:523-34.
McPherson R, Frohlich J, Fodor G, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society position statement – Recommendations for the diagnosis and treatment of dyslipidemia and prevention of cardiovascular disease. *Can J Cardiol* 2006;22:913-27.
Onusko E. Diagnosing secondary hypertension. *Am Fam Phys* 2003;67:67-74.
Recommendations for the management of dyslipidemia and the prevention of cardiovascular disease: Summary of the 2003 update. *CMAJ* 2003;169:921-4.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Obesity
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: High Blood Pressure

Periodic Health Examination

Introduction to AAFP Summary of Recommendations for Periodic Health Examinations. Available from: <http://www.aafp.org/afp/2002/0401/p1467.html>
Summary of Recommendations for Clinical Preventive Services. Available from: http://www.aafp.org/dam/AAFP/documents/patient_care/clinical_recommendations/cps-recommendations.pdf

Smoking

AAFP Clinical Practice Guideline- Tobacco Use. Available from: <http://www.aafp.org/patient-care/clinical-recommendations/all/tobacco.html>
AAFP Tobacco-Use Prevention and Cessation (Position paper). Available from: <http://www.aafp.org/about/policies/all/tobacco-prevention.html>
Cahill K, Stead LF, Perera R, et al. Pharmacological interventions for smoking cessation: an overview and network meta-analysis. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2013, Issue 5.
Cahill K, Stead LF, Lancaster T. Nicotine receptor partial agonists for smoking cessation. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2012, Issue 4.
Hughes JR, Stead LF, Hartmann-Boyce J, et al. Antidepressants for smoking cessation. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2014, Issue 1.
Ontario Medical Association. OMA position paper: rethinking stop-smoking medications. Available from: <https://www.oma.org/Resources/Documents/e2008RethinkingStop-Smoking/Medications.pdf>.
Shroeder SA. What to do with a patient who smoked. *JAMA* 2005;294:482-487.
Stead LF, Bergson G, Lancaster T. Nicotine replacement therapy for smoking cessation. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2008;Issue 1.
Stead LF, Brito D, Preciado N, et al. Physician advice for smoking cessation. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2008;Issue 2.
US Department of Health and Human Services, Public Health Service (2008). Clinical Practice Guideline. Treating Tobacco Use and Dependence: 2008 Update. Available from: http://www.ahrq.gov/professionals/clinicians-providers/guidelines-recommendations/tobacco/clinicians/update/treating_tobacco_use08.pdf

Other

AAFP Clinical Preventive Service Recommendation. Depression. Available from: <http://www.aafp.org/patient-care/clinical-recommendations/all/depression.html>
American Psychiatric Association. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, 5th ed. Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2013.
American Psychiatric Association. Treating Major Depressive Disorder: A Quick Reference Guide, 2010. Available from: <http://ajp.psychiatryonline.org/content.aspx?bookid=28§ionid=1663150>
Arlinger S. Negative consequences of uncorrected hearing loss—a review. *Int J Audiol* 2003;42 Suppl 2:S21-7.
Bagai A, Thavendiranathan P, Detsky AS. Does this patient have hearing impairment? *JAMA* 2006;295:416-428.
Beck E, Sieber WJ, Trejo R. Management of cluster headaches. *Am Fam Phys* 2005;71:1777-24.
Bent S, Nallamothu BK, Simel DL, et al. Does this woman have an acute uncomplicated urinary tract infection? *JAMA* 2002;287:2701-2710.
Bric V, Ebderdt C, Kaczorowski J. Development of a tool to identify poverty in a family practice setting: a pilot study. *Int J Family Med* 2011;2011:812182.

- British Columbia Medical Association and British Columbia Ministry of Health Services. Osteoarthritis in peripheral joints: diagnosis and treatment. Guidelines & Protocol, Advisory Committee, 2008.
- Burge SK, Schneider FD. Alcohol-related problems: recognition and intervention. *Am Fam Phys* 1999;59:361-370.
- Butt P, Beirness D, Stockwell T, et al. (2011). Alcohol and health in Canada: A summary of evidence and guidelines for low-risk drinking. Ottawa, ON: Canadian Centre on Substance Abuse.
- Canadian Paediatric Society. Use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor medications for the treatment of child and adolescent mental illness (2013). Available from: https://onlinereview.cps.ca/papers/use-of-SSRIs-for-child-adolescent-mental-illness/print_ready.pdf.
- Canadian Task Force on Preventive Health Care. The Canadian guide to clinical preventive health care. Ottawa: Minister of Supply and Services Canada. Available from: <http://www.ctfphc.org>.
- Canadian Task Force on Preventive Health Care. Recommendations on screening for breast cancer in average-risk women aged 40-74 years. *Can Med Assoc J* 2011;183:1991-2001.
- Canadian Guidelines on Sexually Transmitted Infections. Section 2 - Primary Care and Sexually Transmitted Infections. Available from: <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/std-mts/sti-its/cgsti-lcdcits/section-2-eng.php#a8>
- Centor RM, Witherspoon JM, Dalton HP, et al. The diagnosis of strep throat in adults in the emergency room. *Med Decis Making* 1981;1:239-246.
- Clark MS, Jansen KL, Cloy JA. Treatment of childhood and adolescent depression. *Am Fam Phys* 2012 Sep 1;86(5):442-8.
- Comuz J, Guessous I, Farrat B. Fatigue: a practical approach to diagnosis in primary care. *CMAJ* 2006;174:765-767.
- David AS, Fields SA, Phillips DM, et al. Family medicine: principles and practice, 6th ed. New York: Springer-Verlag, 2003.
- Derby CA, Mohr BA, Goldstein I, et al. Modifiable risk factors and erectile dysfunction: can lifestyle changes modify risk? *Urology* 2000;56:302-306.
- Desrosiers M, Evans GA, Keith PK, et al. Canadian clinical practice guidelines for acute and chronic rhinosinusitis. *Allergy Clin Immunol* 2011;7:doi:10.1186/1710-1492-7-2.
- Domino FJ The 5-minute clinical consult, 18th ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2009.
- Ebell MH. Evidence-based diagnosis: a handbook of clinical prediction rules. Springer, 2001.
- Ebell MH. Treating adult women with suspected UTI. *Am Fam Phys* 2006;73:293-296.
- Edmonds M, McGuire H, Price J. Exercise therapy for chronic fatigue syndrome. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2004;Issue 3.
- Evans M (editor). Mosby's family practice sourcebook: an evidence based approach to care, 4th ed. Elsevier Canada, 2006: 343-345.
- Evans M, Bradwejn J, Dunn L. Guidelines for the treatment of anxiety disorders in primary care. Toronto: Queen's Printer of Ontario, 2002.
- Fauci AS, Braunwald E, Kasper D, et al. Harrison's principles of internal medicine, 17th ed. McGraw-Hill Professional, 2008.
- Furlan AD, van Tulder MW, Cherkin DC, et al. Acupuncture and dry-needling for low back pain. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2005;Issue 1.
- Furlan AD, Imamura M, Dryden T, et al. Massage for low-back pain. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2008;Issue 4.
- Gilbert DN, Moellering RC, Eliopoulos GM. The Sanford guide to antimicrobial therapy, 43rd ed. Sperryville: Antimicrobial Therapy, 2013.
- Guidelines for Adolescent Depression in Primary Care (GLAD-PC). Guidelines on identification, assessment and initial management, 2007. Available from: <http://pediatrics.aappublications.org/content/120/5/e1299.full>
- Gupta BP, Murad MH, Clifton MM, et al. The effect of lifestyle modification and cardiovascular risk factor reduction on erectile dysfunction. *Arch Intern Med* 2011;171:1797-1803.
- Health Canada. An advisory committee statement: National Advisory Committee on Immunization: prevention of pertussis in adolescents and adults. Canada Communicable Disease Report 2003;29:ACS6-6.
- Health Canada. Natural health products directorate, 2004. Available from: <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/nphb-dgpsa/nhpd-dpsn/>.
- Holbrook AM (Chair: Ontario Musculoskeletal Therapy Review Panel). Ontario treatment guidelines for osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, and acute, musculoskeletal injury. Toronto: Queen's Printer of Ontario, 2000:13-24.
- Hueston WJ, Mainous AG. Acute bronchitis. *Am Fam Phys* 1998;57:1270-1279.
- Hui D. Approach to internal medicine. A resource book for clinical practice, 3rd ed. Springer New York, 2012.
- Hunt P. Motivating change. *Nursing Standard* 2001;16:45-55.
- Jepson RG, Craig JC. Cranberries for preventing urinary tract infections. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2008;Issue 1.
- Linde K, Allais G, Brinkhaus B, et al. Acupuncture for migraine prophylaxis. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2009;Issue 4.
- Linde K, Barrett B, Wölkart K, et al. Echinacea for preventing and treating the common cold. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2006;Issue 1.
- Linde K, Berner MM, Kriston L. St John's wort for major depression. *Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews* 2008, Issue 4.
- Low DE, Desrosiers M, McSherry J, et al. A practical guide for the diagnosis and treatment of acute sinusitis. *CMAJ* 1997;156:15.
- Marshall IIR. Zinc for the common cold. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2006;Issue 3.
- McIsaac WJ, White D, Tannenbaum D, et al. A clinical score to reduce unnecessary antibiotic use in patients with sore throat. *CMAJ* 1998;158:75-83.
- McIsaac WJ, Moineddin R, Ross S. Validation of a decision aid to assist physicians in reducing unnecessary antibiotic drug use for acute cystitis. *Arch Intern Med* 167:2201-2206
- Montgomery L, Scoville C. What is the best way to evaluate acute diarrhea? *J Fam Pract* 2002;51.
- Murphy J, Kennedy EB, Dunn S, et al. Cervical screening: a guideline for clinical practice in Ontario. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2012;34:453-458.
- Nash SD, Cruickshanks KJ, Klein R, et al. The prevalence of hearing impairment and associated risk factors: the Beaver Dam Offspring Study. *Arch Otolaryngol* 2011;137(5):432.
- National Institute of Health. Herbs at a glance: black cohosh. National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine, 2008. Available from: <http://nccam.nih.gov/health/blackcohosh/ataglance.htm>.
- National Osteoporosis Foundation. Clinician's Guide to Prevention and Treatment of Osteoporosis. Available from: <http://nof.org/hcp/clinicians-guide>
- Pampallona S, Bollini P, Tibaldi G, et al. Combined pharmacotherapy and psychological treatment for depression: a systematic review. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 2004;61:714-9.
- ParticipACTION. Available from: <http://www.participaction.com>
- Ponka D, Kirlew M. Top ten differential diagnoses in family medicine: Generalized abdominal pain. *Can Fam Phys* 2007;53(9):1509
- Public Health Canada. Canadian Guidelines on Sexually Transmitted Infections. Section 5, Management and treatment of specific infections, Syphilis. Available from: <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/std-mts/sti-its/cgsti-lcdcits/section-5-10-eng.php>
- Public Health Ontario. Testing and treatment of gonorrhea in Ontario, 2013. Available from: http://www.publichealthontario.ca/en/eRepository/Guidelines_Gonorrhea_Ontario_Guide_2013.pdf
- Rambout L, Hopkins L, Hutton B, et al. Prophylactic vaccination against human papillomavirus infection and disease in women: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *CMAJ* 2007;177:469-79.
- Richie AM, Francis ML. Diagnostic approach to polyarticular joint pain. *Am Fam Phys* 2003;68(6):1151-1160
- Ridker PM, Danielson E, Fonseca FA, et al. Rosuvastatin to prevent vascular events in men and women with elevated c-reactive protein. *NEJM* 2008;359:2195-2207.
- Roelofs PD, Deyo RA, Koes BW, et al. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for low back pain. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2008;Issue 1.
- Sabatine MS. Pocket medicine: the Massachusetts General Hospital handbook of internal medicine, 4th ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, Philadelphia 2011.
- Schiller LR. Chronic diarrhea. *Curr Treat Options Gastroenterol* 2005;8:259-266.
- Society of Obstetricians and Gynecologists of Canada. Canadian Consensus Guidelines on Human Papillomavirus. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2007;29(8, suppl 3):S29
- Sport Concussion Assessment Tool, 3rd edition (SCAT3). *Brit J Sport Med* 2013;47:259
- Swinson RP, Antony MM, Bleau P, et al. Clinical practice guidelines: management of anxiety disorders. *Can J Psychiatry* 2006;51:Supplement 2.
- Toward Optimized Practice Program. Guideline for assessment to diagnosis of adult insomnia. 2006 (2010 update).
- Toward Optimized Practice Program. Guideline for the diagnosis and management of adult primary insomnia. 2006 (2010 update).
- Toward Optimized Practice Program. Guideline for the diagnosis and management of community acquired pneumonia: adult. 2002 (2008 update).
- Toward Optimized Practice Program. Guideline for the diagnosis and management of acute otitis media. 1999 (2008 update).
- Toward Optimized Practice Program. Guideline for the diagnosis and management of acute pharyngitis. 1999 (2008 update).
- Toward Optimized Practice Program. Guideline for the management of acute bronchitis. 2000 (2008 update).
- Toward Optimized Practice Program. Guideline for the treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* infection in adults. 2000 (2009 update).
- Toward Optimized Practice Program. Guideline for the management of low back pain. 2009 (2011 update).
- Toward Optimized Practice Program. Use of PSA and the early diagnosis of prostate cancer. 2006 (2009 update).
- Towheed TE, Maxwell L, Anastassiades T, et al. Glucosamine therapy for treating osteoarthritis. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2005;Issue 2.
- Weber PC. Evaluation of hearing loss in adults. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2013.
- Wong T, Latham-Carmanico C. Canadian guidelines on sexually transmitted infections. Ottawa: Public Health Agency of Canada 2006 (reviewed 2008).
- Wren BG. The benefits of oestrogen following menopause: why hormone replacement therapy should be offered to postmenopausal women. *Med J Aust* 2009;190:321-325.
- Yueh B, Collins MP, Souza PE, et al. Screening for auditory impairment: Which hearing aid tests? A randomized clinical trial. Department of Veterans Affairs, Seattle, WA 2001
- Zink T, Chaffin J. Herbal "health" products: what family physicians need to know. *Am Fam Phys* 1998;58:1133-1140.

Nicola Goldberg, Nicole Kraus, and Stephanie Tung, chapter editors
 Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors
 Tina Hu, EBM editor
 Dr. Maria Cino, Dr. Gabor Kandel, and Dr. Piero Tartaro, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Esophageal Varices	
Anatomy Review	2	Mallory-Weiss Tear	
Overview of Gastrointestinal Tract		Lower Gastrointestinal Bleeding	
Visualizing the Gastrointestinal Tract	3	Colorectal Carcinoma	
Differential Diagnosis of Common Presenting Complaints	4	Colorectal Polyps	
Chronic/Recurrent Abdominal Pain		Familial Colon Cancer Syndromes	
Acute Diarrhea		Benign Anorectal Disease	
Chronic Diarrhea		Liver	28
Constipation		Investigations of Hepatobiliary Disease	
Nausea/Vomiting		Acute Viral Hepatitis (General)	
Dyspepsia		Hepatitis A Virus	
Upper Gastrointestinal Bleed		Hepatitis B Virus	
Lower Gastrointestinal Bleed		Hepatitis C Virus	
Dysphagia		Autoimmune Chronic Active Hepatitis	
Odynophagia		Drug-Induced Liver Disease	
Abdominal Distention		Wilson's Disease	
Jaundice		Hemochromatosis	
Esophagus	6	Alcoholic Liver Disease	
Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease		Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease	
Barrett's Esophagus		Acute Liver Failure (formerly Fulminant Hepatic Failure)	
Dysphagia		Cirrhosis	
Esophageal Motor Disorders		Hepatocellular Carcinoma	
Esophageal Diverticula		(see General Surgery, GS43)	
Peptic Stricture (from Esophagitis)		Liver Transplantation (see General Surgery, GS44)	
Esophageal Carcinoma (see General Surgery, GS14)		Portal Hypertension	
Webs and Rings		Hepatic Encephalopathy	
Infectious Esophagitis		Ascites	
Stomach and Duodenum	10	Biliary Tract	41
Dyspepsia		Jaundice	
Gastric Acid Secretion		Gilbert's Syndrome	
Gastritis		Sclerosing Cholangitis	
Peptic Ulcer Disease		Primary Biliary Cirrhosis	
<i>H. pylori</i> -Induced Peptic Ulceration		Secondary Biliary Cirrhosis	
NSAID-Induced Ulceration		Biliary Colic, Cholecystitis (see General Surgery, GS46)	
Stress-Induced Ulceration		Ascending Cholangitis	
Gastric Carcinoma (see General Surgery, GS18)		Pancreas	45
Small and Large Bowel	15	Pancreatic Enzyme Abnormalities	
Classification of Diarrhea		Acute Pancreatitis	
Acute Diarrhea		Chronic Pancreatitis	
Traveler's Diarrhea		Autoimmune Pancreatitis	
(see Infectious Diseases, ID14)		Clinical Nutrition	48
Chronic Diarrhea		Determination of Nutritional Status	
Maldigestion and Malabsorption		Enteral Nutrition	
Celiac Disease (Gluten Enteropathy/Sprue)		Parenteral Nutrition	
Inflammatory Bowel Disease		Common Medications	50
Crohn's Disease		Landmark Gastroenterology Trials	52
Ulcerative Colitis		References	52
Irritable Bowel Syndrome			
Constipation			
Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding			
Approach to Iron Deficiency Anemia			

Anatomy Review

Overview of Gastrointestinal Tract

- the gastrointestinal tract runs from mouth to anus ("gum to bum")

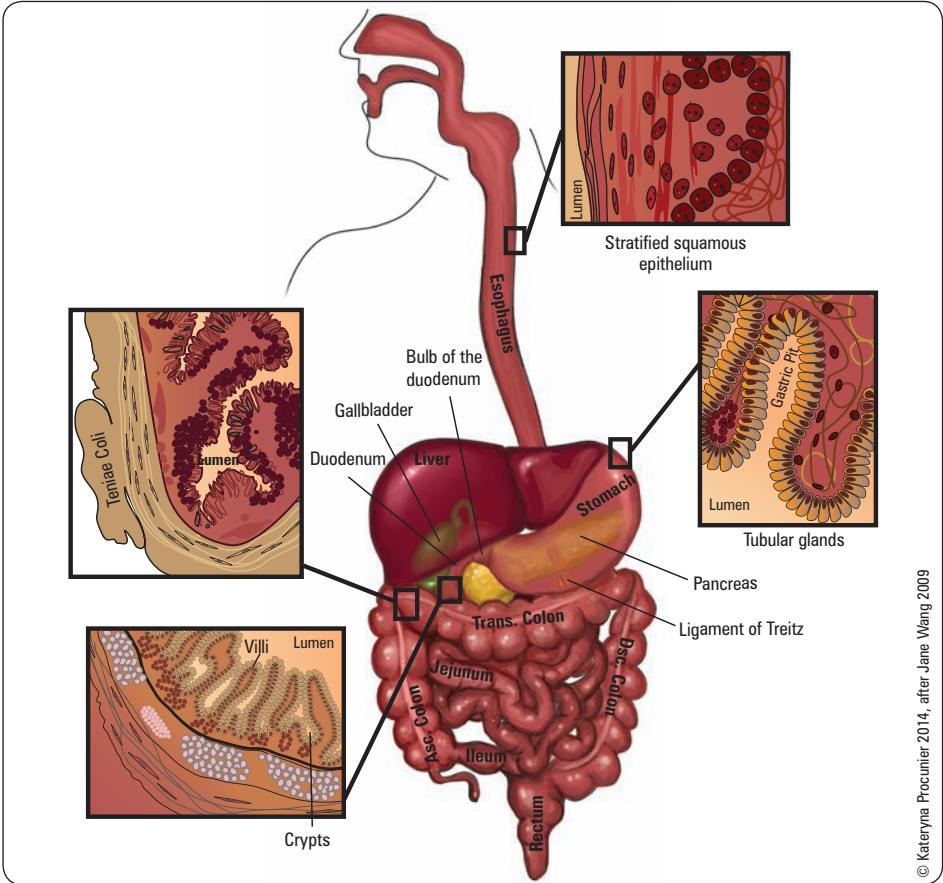


Figure 1. Overview of gastrointestinal tract

Table 1. Summary of Gastrointestinal Tract Structure and Function

Organ	Function	Blood Supply	Innervation	Histology and Structural Features
Esophagus	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Muscular tube approximately 25 cm long with a diameter of 2 cmExtends from pharynx to the stomach	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Arterial: left gastric artery and left inferior phrenic arteryVenous:<ul style="list-style-type: none">Left gastric vein → portal venous systemEsophageal veins → azygos vein → IVC (systemic)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Parasympathetic innervation via anterior and posterior gastric nerves (vagal trunks)Sympathetic innervation via thoracic trunks of the greater splanchnic nerves	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Mucosa: stratified squamous epitheliumSubmucosa: connective tissue, lymphocytes, plasma cells, nerve cellsMuscularis propria (muscularis externa): inner circular, outer longitudinal muscle<ul style="list-style-type: none">Upper 1/3: striated muscleMiddle 1/3: transition zoneLower 1/3: smooth muscle
Stomach	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Delivers food to intestine for digestion and absorptionSecretes acid, probably to reduce enteric infections/pneumonia; facilitate digestion of protein/iron/B₁₂Secretes intrinsic factor to facilitate B₁₂ absorptionMinor contribution to initial protein digestion via pepsin	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Lesser curvature:<ul style="list-style-type: none">Right and left gastric arteries (from celiac trunk)Greater curvature:<ul style="list-style-type: none">Right and left gastromental (gastroepiploic) arteries (from gastroduodenal and splenic a. respectively)Fundus: short and posterior gastric arteries (from the splenic artery)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Parasympathetic innervation via vagus nerveSympathetic innervation via celiac plexus (from T6-T9)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">5 parts:<ul style="list-style-type: none">CardiaFundusBodyAntrumPylorus
Duodenum	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Modulates enteral pH via secretin → decreased gastric acid secretion, increased bicarbonate secretionSecretes CCK to stimulate bile secretionSite of iron absorption	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Branches of celiac artery and superior mesenteric artery	<ul style="list-style-type: none">Parasympathetic innervation via vagus nerveSympathetic innervation via greater and lesser splanchnic nerves	<ul style="list-style-type: none">4 parts<ul style="list-style-type: none">Superior (5 cm)Descending (7-10 cm)Horizontal (6-8 cm)Ascending (5 cm)1st part is intraperitoneal; rest is retroperitoneal

Acronyms

ALF	acute liver failure
BE	Barrett's esophagus
BT	biologic therapy
CCK	cholecystokinin
CD	Crohn's disease
DES	diffuse esophageal spasm
EIM	extraintestinal manifestation
ERCP	endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography
EUS	endoscopic ultrasound
EVL	endoscopic variceal ligation
FAP	familial adenomatous polyposis
GE	gastroesophageal
GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease
HAV	hepatitis A virus
HBV	hepatitis B virus
HCV	hepatitis C virus
HNPCC	hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer
HRS	hepatorenal syndrome
HVPG	hepatic venous pressure gradient
IBD	inflammatory bowel disease
IBS	irritable bowel syndrome
INH	isoniazid
LES	lower esophageal sphincter
MRCP	magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography
NAC	N-acetylcysteine
NAFLD	non-alcoholic fatty liver disease
NERD	non-erosive reflux disease
NMS	neuroleptic malignant syndrome
OGD	oesophagogastroduodenoscopy
PBC	primary biliary cirrhosis
PPI	proton pump inhibitor
PSC	primary sclerosing cholangitis
PTC	percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography
PUD	peptic ulcer disease
SBP	spontaneous bacterial peritonitis
TIPS	transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt
UC	ulcerative colitis

Table 1. Summary of Gastrointestinal Tract Structure and Function (continued)

Organ	Function	Blood Supply	Innervation	Histology and Structural Features
Jejunum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Absorption of sodium, water, and nutrients (protein, carbohydrates, fat, folic acid, and vit A, B, C, D, E, K) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Superior mesenteric artery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parasympathetic innervation via fibers of the posterior vagal trunk Sympathetic innervation via fibers of T8-T10 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Deep red color 2-4 cm in thickness Thick and heavy wall Plicae circulares are large, tall and closely packed Has long vasa recta Scant fat in mesentery Scant Peyer's patches
Ileum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Absorption of sodium, water, nutrients, soluble vitamins (only site of vit B₁₂ absorption), and bile salt (entero-hepatic circulation) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Superior mesenteric artery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Same as jejunum 	When compared to jejunum: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paler pink color 2-3 cm in thickness Thin and light walls Plicae circulares are small and sparse Contains more mesenteric fat Many Peyer's patches
Large Bowel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Absorption of water (5-10% of total water) Bacteria: further digestion of chyme and metabolism of undigested CHO to short chain fatty acids Formation and storage of feces 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Branches of superior and inferior mesenteric arteries Rectal blood supply: sigmoid, right pudendal, and rectal arteries 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parasympathetic innervation via vagus nerve Sympathetic innervation via greater and lesser splanchnic nerves 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Consists of cecum, colon (ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid), rectum and anal canal Features include teniae coli, haustra, and omental appendices
Liver	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Glucose homeostasis Plasma protein synthesis Lipid and lipoprotein synthesis Bile acid synthesis and secretion Vitamin A, D, E, K, B₁₂ storage Biotransformation, detoxification Excretion of compounds 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2 sources <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Portal vein (75-80%) Hepatic artery (20-25%) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sympathetic innervation via fibers of the celiac plexus Parasympathetic innervation via fibers of the anterior and posterior vagal trunks 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Largest internal organ Composed of 4 lobes (left, right, caudate, quadrate) and divided into 8 segments
Biliary Tract	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gallbladder functions to store and release bile that is produced in the liver Bile is used to emulsify fat and is composed of cholesterol, lecithin, bile acids, and bilirubin CCK stimulates gallbladder emptying while trypsin and chymotrypsin inhibit bile release 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cystic artery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parasympathetic innervation via vagus nerve Sympathetic and visceral innervation via celiac nerve plexus Somatic afferent fibers via right phrenic nerve 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Consists of the hepatic ducts (intrahepatic, left, right and common), gallbladder, cystic duct, common bile duct, and ampulla of Vater
Pancreas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Endocrine function: islets of Langerhans produce glucagon, insulin, and somatostatin (from the α, β, and δ cells, respectively) Exocrine function: digestive enzymes are produced including amylase, lipase, trypsin, chymotrypsin, and carboxypeptidase 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anterior superior pancreaticoduodenal artery (from the celiac trunk) Anterior inferior pancreaticoduodenal artery (from the superior mesenteric artery) Dorsal pancreatic artery (from the splenic artery) Pancreatic veins drain into the portal, splenic, and superior mesenteric veins 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parasympathetic innervation via vagus nerve Sympathetic innervation via abdominopelvic splanchnic nerves 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4 parts of pancreas: head (includes uncinate process), neck, body, and tail (Major) pancreatic duct connecting to common bile duct prior to ampulla of Vater Accessory pancreatic duct connected directly to duodenum

Visualizing the Gastrointestinal Tract

- see [Medical Imaging](#), MI10



Esophagus, Stomach, Duodenum

- OGD: best visualization of mucosa; also allows for therapeutic intervention (e.g. banding varices, thermal therapy/clipping/injecting bleeding ulcers, and dilatation e.g. esophageal strictures)
 - consider barium swallow first if dysphagia, decreased level of consciousness (increases risk of aspiration), inability to cooperate (increases risk of pharyngeal trauma during intubation)
 - endotracheal intubation first if massive upper GI bleed, acidemia, or inability to protect airway



Retroperitoneal Structures

SAD PUCKER

Suprarenal glands (adrenal glands)
 Aorta/IVC
 Duodenum (second to fourth segments)
 Pancreas (tail is intraperitoneal)
 Ureters
 Colon (only the ascending and descending branches)
 Kidneys
 Esophagus
 Rectum



Only the ileum (not jejunum) can absorb vitamin B₁₂ and bile acids

Small Bowel

- most difficult to visualize, especially if mucosal detail is needed
- CT enterography more accurate than small bowel follow through, but both have low sensitivity
- MRI enteroclysis increasingly available (use enteroclysis if dilation of the small bowel might improve sensitivity, such as diverticulosis, or if stricture suspected)
- "double balloon" enteroscopy (enteroscope with proximal and distal balloons to propel endoscope into jejunum from mouth or into jejunum/ileum or into ileus from anus) may be most sensitive but currently available only in selected centers; technically demanding
- wireless endoscopy capsule (26 x 11 mm capsule is swallowed, transmits images to a computer; contraindicated in bowel obstruction) is also accurate in diagnosis but unable to provide any therapeutic intervention

Colon and Terminal Ileum

- colonoscopy, with biopsy if required; contraindicated in perforation, acute diverticulitis, and severe colitis (increased risk of perforation)
- CT colonography ("virtual colonoscopy") more accurate in diagnosing diverticulosis, extrinsic pressure on colon (e.g. ovarian cancer compressing sigmoid colon), and fistulae; increasing evidence for use in colorectal cancer screening, especially for assessment of right side of colon in cases where colonoscopy is incomplete

Pancreatic/Biliary Duct

- MRCP almost as sensitive as ERCP in determining if bile duct obstruction present, but less accurate in determining cause of obstruction (tumor, stone, stricture)
- ERCP if endoscopic draining necessary, strong suspicion of stone, obstruction requiring stenting, or if tissue sampling required

Differential Diagnosis of Common Presenting Complaints



Table 2. Differential Diagnosis of Common Presenting Complaints

ACUTE ABDOMINAL PAIN	Upper/Mid-Abdomen		Lower Abdomen	
	Gastroenteritis Cholecystitis Perforated peptic ulcer Pancreatitis Small bowel obstruction Mesenteric ischemia Ruptured aortic aneurysm		Gastroenteritis Appendicitis Diverticulitis Crohn's disease Pelvic inflammatory disease Ectopic pregnancy	
CHRONIC/RECURRENT ABDOMINAL PAIN	Inflammatory	Neoplastic/Vascular	Toxin	Other
	PUD Biliary colic IBD Chronic pancreatitis	Recurrent bowel obstruction Mesenteric ischemia Sickle cell anemia	Lead poisoning	Mittelschmerz Endometriosis Porphyria IBS Radiculopathy Abdominal wall pain syndrome
ACUTE DIARRHEA	Inflammatory		Non-Inflammatory	
*Causes of bloody diarrhea	Bacterial <i>Shigella</i> * <i>Salmonella</i> * <i>Campylobacter</i> * <i>Yersinia</i> * <i>E. coli</i> (EHEC 0157:H7)* <i>C. difficile</i>	Protozoal <i>E. histolytica</i> * (amoebiasis) Strongyloides Others NSAIDs IBD* Ischemic*	Bacterial <i>S. aureus</i> <i>C. perfringens</i> <i>B. cereus</i> <i>E. coli</i> (ETEC, EPEC) <i>Salmonella enteritidis</i> <i>Vibrio cholera</i> Protozoal <i>Giardia lamblia</i>	Viral Rotavirus Norwalk CMV Drugs Antibiotics Colchicine Laxatives Antacids (magnesium)



Acute Upper Abdominal Pain

Remember to rule out thoracic sources, e.g. myocardial infarction, pneumonia, dissecting aneurysm



Obscure But Treatable Causes of Abdominal Pain

- Porphyria
- Angioedema
- Familial Mediterranean Fever
- Vasculitis (e.g. polyarteritis nodosa)



Rule out IBD when patient presents with bloody diarrhea

Table 2. Differential Diagnosis of Common Presenting Complaints (continued)

CHRONIC DIARRHEA	(A) Organic				(B) Functional
	Inflammatory	Secretory	Steatorrheic	Osmotic	
*Causes of bloody diarrhea	IBD Infectious (C. difficile, TB, CMV, HSV) Ischemic bowel Radiation colitis Neoplasia	Stimulant laxatives Post-ileal resection/cholecystectomy (bile salts) Bacterial toxins Vasculitis Neoplasia (Colon Ca, Carcinoid, VIPoma) Addison's disease Congenital syndromes	Giardia lamblia Celiac sprue Chronic pancreatitis Chronic cholestasis	Osmotic laxatives Lactose intolerance Chewing gum (sorbitol, mannitol)	IBS Constipation (overflow diarrhea) Anal sphincter dysfunction

CONSTIPATION: if no associated rectal bleeding/weight loss, etc., usually no cause found

	Colorectal cancer Stricture Extrinsic compression Anal disease Rectocele	Medications (narcotics, antidepressants, calcium channel blockers) Metabolic (DM, thyroid, hypercalcemia)	Neurologic (Parkinson's, MS, stroke) Collagen vascular disease (scleroderma, dermatomyositis)
--	--	--	--

NAUSEA/VOMITING	With Abdominal Pain		Without Abdominal Pain	
	Relieved by Vomiting	Not Relieved by Vomiting	Headache/Dizziness	No Other Symptoms
	Gastric outlet obstruction Small bowel obstruction GERD (regurgitation more common)	Gallbladder disease Pancreatitis Myocardial infarction Hepatitis Infectious Gastroenteritis	Cerebral tumor Migraine Vestibular disease Increased ICP	Drugs Uremia Pregnancy Metabolic (e.g. hypercalcemia) Gastroparesis (e.g. DM) Ketoacidosis

DYSPEPSIA	Common	Uncommon	Rare
	Functional dyspepsia Drug side effect Peptic ulcer GERD	Angina Crohn's disease Cancer Gallstones Aerophagia	Giardia lamblia Malabsorption (celiac sprue)

UPPER GI BLEED	Common	Uncommon	Rare
	Ulcers (H. pylori, ASA, NSAIDs) Esophageal varices Mallory-Weiss tears Erosive esophagitis Erosive gastritis	Tumors Arteriovenous malformation Dieulafoy's lesion (arterial) Gastric antral vascular ectasia (GAVE) Portal hypertensive gastropathy	Aorto-enteric fistulas Hemobilia

LOWER GI BLEED	Common	Uncommon	Rare
	Diverticulosis Ischemia Angiodysplasia (elderly) Infectious Anorectal (hemorrhoids, fissure, ulcer)	Upper GI bleed (brisk) Post-polypectomy Radiation colitis IBD	Intussusception Vasculitides Stercoral ulcer Coagulopathies

DYSPHAGIA	Mechanical (Solids)	Motility (Solids and Liquids)	Other
	Peptic stricture/cancer Eosinophilic esophagitis Extrinsic compression Schatzki ring/esophageal web Zenker's diverticulum	Achalasia Diffuse esophageal spasm Scleroderma	Foreign body Eosinophilic esophagitis

**Commonly Forgotten Causes of Vomiting**

- Drugs
- Uremia
- CNS Disease
- Pregnancy

**Differential Diagnosis of Abdominal Distention**

- 6 Fs**
- Fat
 - Feces
 - Fetus
 - Flatus
 - Fluid
 - Fatal Growth

Table 2. Differential Diagnosis of Common Presenting Complaints (continued)

ODYNOPHAGIA	Infection	Inflammation/ Ulceration	Drugs	Other
	Candida Herpes CMV (common in those who are immunosuppressed)	Caustic damage Eosinophilic esophagitis	Quinidine Iron Vitamin C Antibiotics (e.g. tetracycline) Bisphosphonates	Radiation

ABDOMINAL DISTENTION	Fluid (Ascites)		Flatulence	Feces	Other
	Portal HTN	Normal Portal Pressure			
	Cirrhosis Cardiac failure Hepatic vein thrombosis	Cancer (especially ovarian) Pancreatitis TB	Functional bowel disease (e.g. IBS) Fiber Lactose intolerance Chewing gum (e.g. sorbitol, mannitol)	Constipation Colonic obstruction Dysmotility	Pregnancy (fetus) Obesity (fat) Blood Large tumors (fatal growth)

JAUNDICE (UNCONJUGATED BILIRUBIN)	Overproduction	Decreased Hepatic Intake	Decreased Conjugation
	Hemolysis Ineffective erythropoiesis (e.g. megaloblastic anemias)	Gilbert's syndrome Drugs (e.g. rifampin)	Drug inhibition (e.g. chloramphenicol) Crigler-Najjar syndromes type I and II Gilbert's syndrome Neonatal jaundice

JAUNDICE (CONJUGATED BILIRUBIN)	Common	Uncommon
	Hepatocellular disease Drugs Cirrhosis (any cause) Inflammation (hepatitis, any cause) Infiltrative (e.g. hemochromatosis) Familial disorders (e.g. Rotor syndrome, Dubin-Johnson syndrome, cholestasis of pregnancy) PBC PSC Sepsis Post-operative/TPN	Intraductal obstruction Gallstones Biliary stricture Parasites Malignancy (cholangiocarcinoma) Sclerosing cholangitis Extraductal obstruction Malignancy (e.g. pancreatic cancer, lymphoma) Metastases in periportal nodes Inflammation (e.g. pancreatitis)

Esophagus

Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease

Definition

- condition in which the stomach contents (most characteristically acid) moves backwards from the stomach into the esophagus (the tube from the mouth to the stomach)

Etiology

- inappropriate transient relaxations of LES – most common cause
- low basal LES tone (especially in scleroderma)
- contributing factors include: delayed esophageal clearance, delayed gastric emptying, obesity, pregnancy
- acid hypersecretion (rare): Zollinger-Ellison syndrome (gastrin-secreting tumor)
- hiatus hernia worsens reflux, does not cause it (see [General Surgery, GS12](#))

Clinical Features

- "heartburn" (pyrosis) and acid regurgitation (together are 80% sensitive and specific for reflux) ± sour regurgitation, water brash, sensation of a lump in the throat (bolus sensation), and frequent belching
- non-esophageal symptoms (see [G7](#)) are increasingly recognized of being poor predictors of reflux



Epigastric discomfort = postprandial fullness, early satiety, epigastric pain, or burning



Foods/Substances that Aggravate GERD Symptoms

- EtOH
- Caffeine
- Tobacco
- Fatty/fried foods
- Chocolate
- Peppermint
- Spicy foods
- Citrus fruit juices

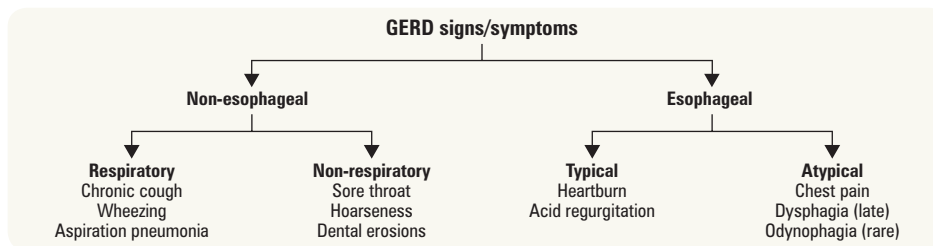


Figure 2. Signs and symptoms of GERD

Investigations

- usually a clinical diagnosis based on symptom history and relief following a trial of pharmacotherapy (PPI: symptom relief 80% sensitive for reflux)
- gastroscopy indications (*Ann Intern Med* 2012;157:808-816):
 - absolute indications:
 - heartburn accompanied by red-flags (bleeding, weight loss, etc.)
 - persistent reflux symptoms or prior severe erosive esophagitis after therapeutic trial of 4-8 wk of PPI 2x daily
 - history of esophageal stricture with persistent dysphagia
- repeat endoscopy indicated only if known Barrett's (or recurrence of symptoms) because future likelihood of Barrett's and esophagitis is minimal if the first endoscopy is normal
- esophageal manometry (study of esophageal motility)
 - may be done to diagnose abnormal peristalsis and/or decreased LES tone, but cannot detect presence of reflux; indicated before surgical fundoplication to intact esophageal functional
 - surgical fundoplication (wrapping of gastric fundus around the lower end of the esophagus) more likely to be successful if lower esophageal pressure is diminished; less likely to be successful if abnormal peristalsis
- 24 h pH monitoring: most accurate test, but not required or performed in most cases
 - most useful if PPIs do not improve symptoms

Management

- PPIs are the most effective therapy and usually need to be continued as maintenance therapy
- on-demand: antacids ($\text{Mg}(\text{OH})_2$, $\text{Al}(\text{OH})_3$, alginate), H_2 -blockers, or PPIs can be used for NERD
- diet helps symptoms, not the disease; avoid alcohol, coffee, spices, tomatoes, and citrus juices
- only beneficial lifestyle changes are weight loss (if obese) and elevating the head of bed (if nocturnal symptoms)
- dyspepsia may recur if therapy is discontinued

Complications

- esophageal stricture disease – scarring can lead to dysphagia (solids)
- ulcer
- bleeding
- Barrett's esophagus and esophageal adenocarcinoma – gastroscopy is recommended for patients with chronic GERD or symptoms suggestive of complicated disease (e.g. anorexia, weight loss, bleeding, dysphagia)

Barrett's Esophagus

Definition

- metaplasia of normal squamous esophageal epithelium to abnormal columnar epithelium containing-type intestinal mucosa (intestinal metaplasia)

Etiology

- thought to be acquired via long-standing GERD and consequent damage to squamous epithelium

Epidemiology

- in North America and Western Europe, 0.5-2.0% of adults are thought to have Barrett's esophagus
- up to 10% of GERD patients will have already developed BE by the time they seek medical attention
- more common in males, age >50, Caucasians, smokers, overweight, hiatus hernia, and long history of reflux symptoms

Pathophysiology

- endoscopy shows erythematous epithelium in distal esophagus; diagnosis of BE relies on biopsy demonstrating the presence of specialized intestinal epithelium of any length within the esophagus
- BE predisposes to premalignant changes in abnormal columnar epithelium, characterized as low- or high-grade dysplasia

Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease

Gastroscopy

Non-erosive reflux disease (NERD)	Esophagitis
Normal esophagus	Esophageal inflammation
Aim for symptom relief only; proton pump inhibitor PRN	Aim to heal inflammation; proton pump inhibitor indefinitely or surgical fundoplication

Figure 3. Classification and gastroscopic findings of GERD



Esophageal damage from reflux is most severe at first gastroscopy, therefore gastroscopy is necessary only once for patients with NERD



Up to 25% of patients with Barrett's esophagus do not report symptoms of GERD



Updated Guidelines 2008 for the Diagnosis, Surveillance, and Therapy of Barrett's Esophagus

Am J Gastroenterol 2008;103:788-797

- Screening** of the general population is not recommended and needs to be individualized based on risk factors. Role of esophageal capsule endoscopy for screening is currently under investigation.
- Surveillance** interval is based on grade of dysplasia. If no dysplasia confirmed on two endoscopies within the year, then q3yr. For low grade dysplasia (LGD), repeat endoscopy within 6 mo to ensure there is no high grade dysplasia (HGD) and if none, then q1y until no dysplasia on two consecutive endoscopies. If HGD, repeat endoscopy within 3 mo to ensure there is no adenocarcinoma and recommend intervention (endoscopic resection) or intensive surveillance (endoscopy q3mo).
- Diagnosis** using alternative imaging techniques (fiberoptic, chromoendoscopy) and biomarkers (DNA content abnormalities, loss of heterozygosity or methylation of specific genes) are being investigated but none are currently ready for routine clinical use.
- Treatment** of reflux symptoms with PPI decreases the development of dysplasia. Surgery (fundoplication) for patients without major comorbidities and whose reflux symptoms are controlled on PPI has a 20% failure rate at 5 yr and has not shown to decrease progression to adenocarcinoma.
- Prognosis:** 5 yr risk of esophageal adenocarcinoma in high grade dysplasia is >30%.
- Management** in high grade dysplasia, surveillance with intensive biopsy, endoscopic ablation, or esophagectomy produce similar outcomes and thus should be individualized to patient preference and local expertise.

Significance

- rate of malignant transformation is approximately 0.12% per yr for all BE patients prior to dysplasia
- risk of malignant transformation in high-grade dysplasia is significantly higher; studies have reported a 32-59% transformation rate over 5-8 yr of surveillance
- increased gastric acid secretion is more frequently associated with Barrett's esophagus as opposed to reflux alone

Management

- acid suppressive therapy with high-dose PPI indefinitely (or surgical fundoplication)
- endoscopy every 3 yr if no dysplasia
- high grade dysplasia: regular and frequent surveillance with intensive biopsy, endoscopic ablation/resection, or esophagectomy produce similar outcomes; however, evidence increasingly favoring endoscopic ablation with mucosal resection or radiofrequency ablation
- if low grade dysplasia, both surveillance and endoscopic ablation/resection are satisfactory options

Dysphagia

Definition

- difficulty swallowing, globus sensation

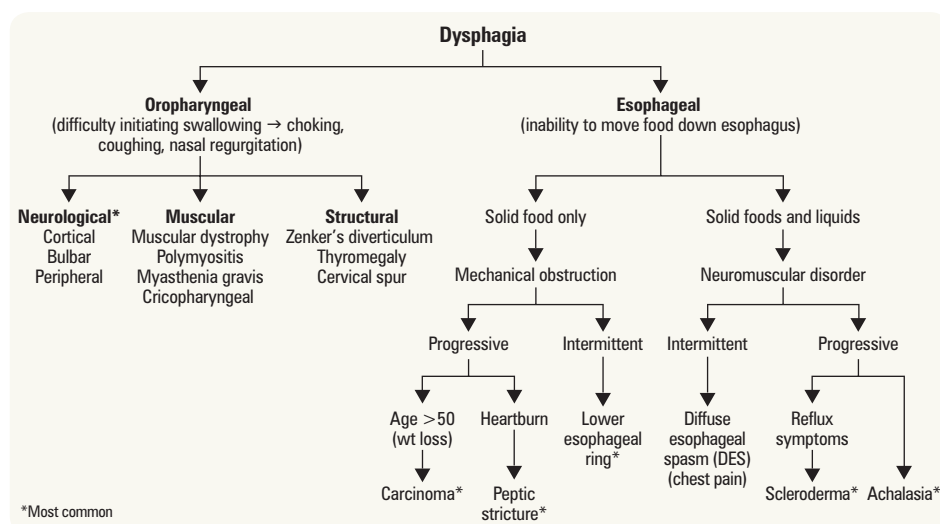


Figure 4. Approach to dysphagia (eosinophilic esophagitis omitted)

Esophageal Motor Disorders

Symptoms

- dysphagia with solids and liquids
- chest pain (in some disorders)

Diagnosis

- motility study (esophageal manometry)
- barium swallow sometimes helpful

Causes (Table 3)

- idiopathic
- achalasia (painless)
- scleroderma (painless)
- DM
- DES: rare and can be difficult to diagnose due to intermittent presentation



Key Questions in Dysphagia


- Difficulty in starting swallowing?
- Associated symptoms? (regurgitation, change in voice pitch, weight loss)
- Solids, liquids, or both?
- Intermittent or progressive?
- History of heartburn?
- Change in eating habits/diet?



Dysphagia = Difficulty in swallowing
Odynophagia = Pain on swallowing



Table 3. Esophageal Motor Disorders

Disorder	Achalasia	Scleroderma	Diffuse Esophageal Spasm
Definition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Failure of smooth muscle relaxation at LES Increased LES pressure Progressive loss of peristaltic function 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> See Rheumatology, RH13 Systemic disease characterized by vasculopathy and tissue fibrosis (especially skin thickening) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Normal peristalsis interspersed with frequent, repetitive, spontaneous, high pressure, non-peristaltic waves (tertiary peristalsis)
Etiology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Usually idiopathic 2° or pseudo-achalasia: e.g. malignancy, Chagas disease (<i>Trypanosoma cruzi</i>) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Involves autoimmune, genetic, hormonal, and environmental factors Dysphagia: caused by reflux, dysmotility, or both 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Idiopathic
Pathophysiology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inflammatory degeneration of Auerbach's plexus → increase in LES pressure, incomplete relaxation of LES with swallowing, aperistalsis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Blood vessel damage → intramural neuronal dysfunction → distal esophageal muscle weakening → aperistalsis and loss of LES tone → reflux → stricture → dysphagia 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Potential mechanisms include impaired inhibitory innervation to esophageal body, malfunction in endogenous nitric oxide synthesis
Diagnosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CXR: no air in stomach, dilated esophagus Barium studies: esophagus terminates in narrowing at LES ("bird's beak") Endoscopy: rule out malignancy Manometry: definitive diagnosis (signs listed above) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clinical features of scleroderma Manometry: decreased pressure in LES, decreased peristalsis in body of esophagus 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Barium x-ray: "Corkscrew pattern" Manometry: >30% (but <100%) of esophageal contractions are aperistaltic
Treatment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dilatation of LES with balloon, ± GERD prophylaxis, 50% good response, can repeat, risk of perforation (5%) Injection of botulinum toxin into LES (temporary) Surgery (myotomy) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Medical: aggressive GERD therapy (PPIs bid) Surgery: anti-reflux surgery (gastroplasty, last resort) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reassurance not cardiac pain Medical: nitrates, calcium channel blockers, anticholinergics have variable benefit Surgical: long esophageal myotomy if unresponsive to above treatment (rarely helpful); balloon dilatation



Esophageal Diverticula

Definition

- outpouchings of one or more layers of the esophageal tract

Clinical Features

- commonly associated with motility disorders
- dysphagia, regurgitation, retrosternal pain, intermittent vomiting, may be asymptomatic

Classification

- classified according to location
 - pharyngoesophageal (Zenker's) diverticulum
 - most frequent form of esophageal diverticulum
 - posterior pharyngeal outpouching most often on the left side, above cricopharyngeal muscle and below the inferior pharyngeal constrictor muscle
 - symptoms: dysphagia, regurgitation of undigested food, halitosis
 - treatment: endoscopic or surgical myotomy of cricopharyngeal muscle ± surgical excision of sac
 - mid-esophageal diverticulum
 - secondary to mediastinal inflammation, motor disorders
 - usually asymptomatic; no treatment required
 - just proximal to LES (pulsatile type)
 - usually associated with motor disorders
 - usually asymptomatic; no treatment required

Peptic Stricture (from Esophagitis)

- presents as dysphagia alongside a long history of reflux symptoms, but reflux symptoms may disappear as stricture develops
- diagnosed with endoscopy or barium study if endoscopy contraindicated or unavailable

Treatment

- endoscopic dilatation and indefinite PPI
- anti-reflux surgery if above treatment unsuccessful

Esophageal Carcinoma

- see [General Surgery](#), GS14



Webs and Rings

- web = partial occlusion (upper esophagus)
- ring = circumferential narrowing (lower esophagus)

Clinical Features

- asymptomatic with lumen diameter >12 mm, provided peristalsis is normal
- dysphagia with large food boluses
- Schatzki ring
 - mucosal ring at squamo-columnar junction above a hiatus hernia
 - causes intermittent dysphagia with solids
 - treatment involves disrupting ring with endoscopic bougie



Plummer-Vinson Syndrome Triad

- Iron deficiency anemia
- Dysphagia
- Esophageal webs

Infectious Esophagitis

Definition

- severe mucosal inflammation and ulceration as a result of a viral or a fungal infection

Risk Factors

- DM
- chemotherapeutic agents
- immunocompromised states

Symptoms

- characteristically odynophagia, less often dysphagia
- diagnosis is via endoscopic visualization and biopsy

Appearance

- *Candida* (most common): whitish-yellow plaques without visible ulceration or inflammation
- Herpes (second most common), CMV: focal ulcers



Treatment

- *Candida*: nystatin swish and swallow, ketoconazole, fluconazole
- Herpes: often self-limiting; acyclovir, valacyclovir, famciclovir
- CMV: IV ganciclovir, famciclovir, or oral valganciclovir

Stomach and Duodenum



Dyspepsia

Definition

- intermittent epigastric discomfort, characteristically develops after eating

History and Physical

- history: most important are age, associated symptoms (such as weight loss and vomiting), and drugs (especially NSAIDs)
- physical exam: adenopathy, abdominal mass/organomegaly, Carnett's sign (if pain is due to abdominal wall muscle problem then the pain will increase during muscle contraction, such as during a sit-up)

Investigations

- laboratory: usual (CBC, liver enzymes, glucose, Cr, etc.) plus amylase, albumin
- consider trial of empiric anti-secretory drug therapy, non-invasive testing for *H. pylori* infection, endoscopy, barium radiography



Red Flags of Dyspepsia

- (raise suspicion of gastric malignancy):
- Unintended weight loss
 - Persistent vomiting
 - Progressive dysphagia
 - Odynophagia
 - Unexplained anemia or iron deficiency
 - Hematemesis
 - Jaundice
 - Palpable abdominal mass or lymphadenopathy
 - Family history of upper GI cancer
 - Previous gastric surgery



The most common cause of dyspepsia is functional (idiopathic) dyspepsia

Gastric Acid Secretion

Stomach

- primary function is mechanical grinding of food facilitating early enzymatic digestion into chyme and propulsion into duodenum

Table 4. Cells of the Gastric Mucosa

Cell Type	Secretory Product	Important Notes
Parietal cells	Gastric acid (HCl) Intrinsic factor	Stimulated by histamine, ACh, gastrin
Chief cells	Pepsinogen	Stimulated by vagal input and local acid
G-cells	Gastrin	Stimulates H ⁺ production from parietal cells
Superficial epithelial cells	Mucus, HCO ₃ ⁻	Protect gastric mucosa
Neuroendocrine cells	Multiple (e.g. somatostatin, inhibits cell secretion)	Involved in neural, hormonal, and paracrine pathways

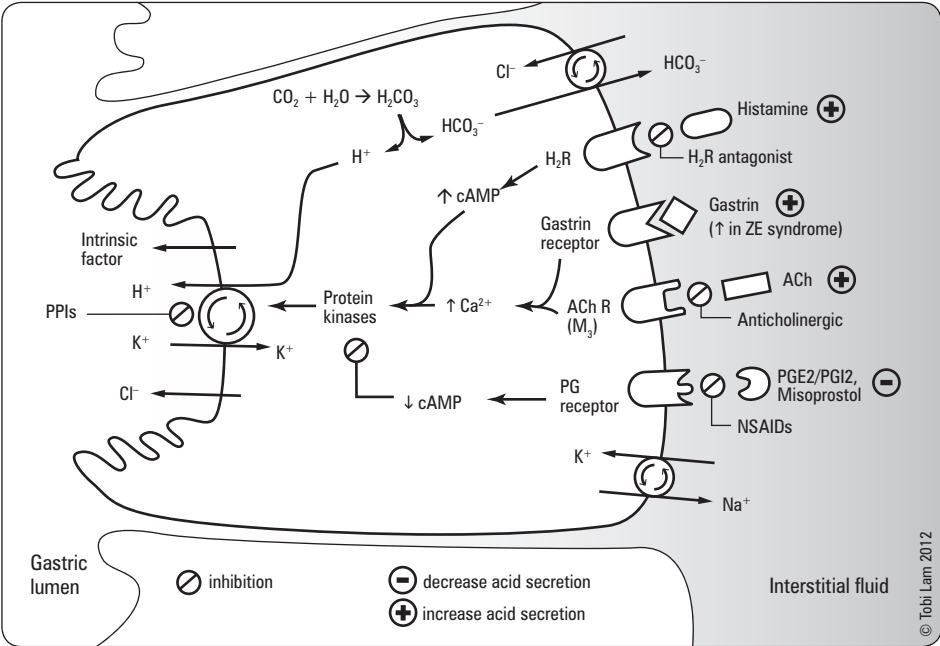


Figure 5. Stimulation of H⁺ secretion from the parietal cell

Gastritis

Definition

- defined histologically: inflammation of the stomach mucosa

Etiology

- some causative agents may play a role in more than one type of gastritis and an individual patient may have histopathological evidence of more than one type of gastritis

Table 5. Updated Sydney Classification of Gastritis

Type	Common Etiology
Acute Gastritis	
Hemorrhagic/erosive gastritis	Alcohol*, Aspirin®/NSAID*, shock/physiological stress* (seen in ICU patients)
Helicobacter gastritis	<i>H. pylori</i> *
Chronic Gastritis	
Non-atrophic	<i>H. pylori</i> *
Atrophic	<i>H. pylori</i> *, dietary, environmental factors (multi-focal), autoimmunity
Chemical	NSAID*, bile
Radiation	Radiation injury
Lymphocytic	Celiac disease, drug
Eosinophilic	Food allergies
Non-infectious granulomatous	Crohn's disease, sarcoidosis
Other infectious gastritides	Bacteria, viruses, fungi, parasite, TB, syphilis

*Most common causes

Clinical Features

- non-erosive gastritis is asymptomatic (except in certain rare causes like Crohn's disease); difficult to diagnose clinically or endoscopically
- erosive gastritis can cause bleeding (pain only if progresses to ulcers – rare); can be seen endoscopically

Management

- determined by etiology (see *H. pylori*, G13, NSAID, G14 and *Stress-Induced Ulceration*, G14)
- non-pharmacological: avoidance of mucosal irritants such as alcohol, NSAIDs, and foods that trigger symptoms

Peptic Ulcer Disease



Definition

- focal defects in the mucosal that penetrate the muscularis mucosa layer results in scarring (defects superficial to the muscularis mucosa have erosions and no scarring)
- peptic ulcer disease includes defects located in the stomach (gastric ulcers) and duodenum (duodenal ulcers)

Etiology

Table 6. Etiology of Peptic Ulcer Disease

	Duodenal	Gastric
<i>H. pylori</i> infection	90%	60%
NSAIDs	7%	35%
Physiologic stress-induced	<3%	<5%
Zollinger-Ellison (ZE) syndrome	<1%	<1%
Idiopathic	15%	10%

- NSAID negative, *H. pylori* negative ulcers becoming more commonly recognized
- others: CMV, ischemic, idiopathic
- alcohol: damages gastric mucosa but rarely causes ulcers
- peptic ulcer associated with tobacco, cirrhosis of liver, COPD, and chronic renal failure

Clinical Features

- dyspepsia: most common presenting symptom
 - only 20% of patients with dyspepsia have ulcers, while most have functional disease
- may present with complications
 - bleeding 10% (severe if from gastroduodenal artery) (see *Bleeding Peptic Ulcer*, G13)
 - perforation 2% (usually anterior ulcers)
 - gastric outlet obstruction 2%
 - penetration (posterior) 2%; may also cause pancreatitis
- duodenal ulcers: 6 classical features, but history alone cannot distinguish from functional dyspepsia
 - epigastric pain; may localize to tip of xiphoid
 - burning
 - develops 1-3 h after meals
 - relieved by eating and antacids
 - interrupts sleep
 - periodicity (tends to occur in clusters over wk with subsequent periods of remission)
- gastric ulcers: more atypical symptoms; a biopsy is necessary to exclude malignancy

Investigations

- endoscopy (most accurate)
- upper GI series
- *H. pylori* tests (see Table 7)
- fasting serum gastrin measurement if Zollinger-Ellison (ZE) syndrome suspected

Treatment

- specific management depends on etiology (see *H. pylori*, G13, NSAID, G14 and *Stress-Induced Ulceration*, G14)
- eradicate *H. pylori* if present, chief advantage is to lower ulcer recurrence rate
- stop NSAIDs if possible
- start PPI: inhibits parietal cell $H^+/K^+-ATPase$ pump which secretes acid
 - heals most ulcers, even if NSAIDs are continued
- other meds (e.g. histamine H_2 -antagonists) less effective
- discontinue tobacco
- no diet modifications required but some people have fewer symptoms if they avoid caffeine, alcohol, and spices



Gastric vs. Duodenal Ulcers

Gastric ulcers must always be biopsied to rule out malignancies; duodenal ulcers are rarely malignant



Approach to PUD

- Stop NSAIDs
- Acid neutralization
- *H. pylori* eradication
- Quit smoking



Cigarette Smoking and PUD

- Increased risk of ulcer
- Increased risk of complications
- Increased chance of death from ulcer
- Impairs healing



Bleeding Peptic Ulcers: Risk Factors for Increased Mortality

- Co-existent illness
- Hemodynamic instability
- Age >60 yr
- Transfusion required

Management of Bleeding Peptic Ulcers

- OGD to explore upper GI tract
- establish risk of rebleeding/continuous bleed
 - clinical risk factors: increased age (>60), bleeding diathesis, history of PUD, comorbid disease, hemodynamically unstable
 - endoscopic signs of recurrent bleeding (active bleeding, visible vessel, clot, red spot) more predictive than clinical risk factors
 - ♦ if high risk, consider ICU admission

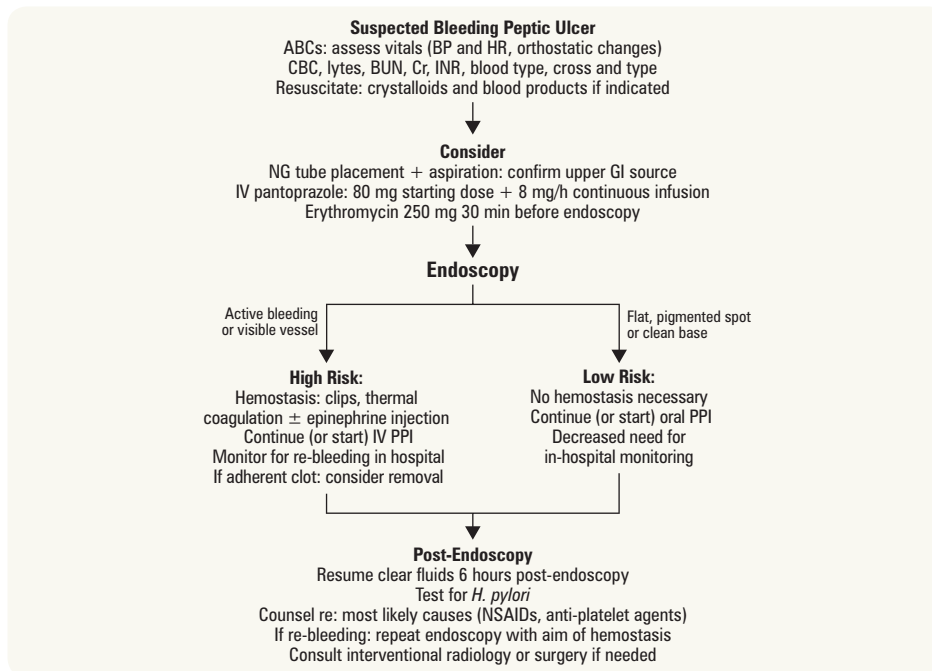


Figure 6. Approach to management of suspected bleeding peptic ulcer

Adapted from: Gralnek I, Barkun A, Bardou M. Management of acute bleeding from a peptic ulcer. *NEJM* 2008;359:928-937



Intragastric pH with Oral vs. Intravenous Bolus plus Infusion Proton-pump Inhibitor Therapy in Patients with Bleeding Ulcers

Gastroenterology 2008;134:1836-1841

Study: Randomized control trial.

Participants: Patients presenting with overt bleeding from an ulcer.

Intervention: Patients received either IV lansoprazole (90 mg bolus followed by 9 mg/h infusion; n=32) or oral lansoprazole (120 mg bolus followed by 30 mg every 3 h; n=34).

Primary Outcome: 24 h pH.

Results: Intragastric pH was >6 for >60% of the study period in 22 (68.8%) patients receiving IV and 22 (64.7%) patients receiving oral PPI. At 1 h, mean pHs for IV and oral were 5.3 and 3.3, respectively (difference 2.0; p=0.001). After 1.5 h, there were no differences in mean pH between the groups. Mean pH rose above 6 after 2-3 h of IV PPI and 3-4 h of oral PPI.

Conclusion: Frequent oral PPI may be able to replace the currently recommended IV bolus plus infusion PPI therapy in patients with bleeding ulcers. However, IV PPI has a more rapid increase in pH, reaching mean pH of 6 approximately 1 h sooner than oral PPI.

H. pylori-Induced Peptic Ulceration

Pathophysiology

- *H. pylori*: Gram-negative flagellated rod that resides on but does not invade the gastric mucosa
- acid secreted by parietal cells (stimulated by vagal acetylcholine, gastrin, histamine) necessary for most ulcers
- mucosal defenses moderated by PGE2 and blood flow, mucus, etc.
- theories of how *H. pylori* causes ulcers: none satisfactory, but pattern of colonization correlates with outcome
 - gastritis only in antrum (15% of patients), high gastric acid, associated with peptic ulcer, may progress to gastric metaplasia of duodenum where ulcer forms
 - gastritis throughout stomach ("pangastritis" – 85% of patients), low gastric acid, associated with cancer

Epidemiology

- *H. pylori* is found in about 30-40% of all Americans, with rates higher in African-American and Hispanic populations
 - highest prevalence in those raised during 1930s
- infection most commonly acquired in childhood, presumably by fecal-oral route
- high prevalence in developing countries, low socioeconomic status (poor sanitation and overcrowding)

Outcome

- gastritis (non-erosive) in 100% of patients but asymptomatic
- peptic ulcer in 15% of patients
- gastric malignancy (gastric carcinoma and mucosal associated lymphomatous tissue [MALT] lymphoma in 0.5% of patients)
- most are asymptomatic but still worthwhile eradicating to lower future risk of peptic ulcer/ gastric malignancy and prevent spread to others (mostly children <5 yr of age)

Investigations

Table 7. Diagnosis of *H. pylori* Infection

Test	Sensitivity	Specificity	Comments
Non-invasive Tests			
Urea breath test	90-100%	89-100%	Affected by PPI therapy (false negatives)
Serology	88-99%	89-95%	Can remain positive after treatment
Stool antigen test	95-97%	94-98%	Useful for diagnosing acute infection
Invasive Tests (require endoscopy)			
Histology	93-99%	95-99%	Gold standard; affected by PPI therapy (false negatives)
Rapid urease test (on biopsy)	89-98%	93-100%	Rapid
Microbiology culture	98%	95-100%	Research only

Treatment: *H. pylori* Eradication

- triple therapy for 7-14 d (Hp-Pac®): PPI bid (e.g. lansoprazole 30 mg bid) + amoxicillin 1 g bid + clarithromycin 500 mg bid
 - 80% success rate
- quadruple therapy for 10-14 d: PPI bid + bismuth 525 mg qid + tetracycline 500 mg qid + metronidazole 250 mg qid
 - only recommended as first line therapy if resistance to clarithromycin or metronidazole is high, or in patients with recent or repeated exposure to these drugs
 - levofloxacin can replace metronidazole or tetracycline
- sequential therapy
 - days 1-5: PPI bid + amoxicillin 1 g bid
 - days 6-10: PPI bid + clarithromycin 500 mg bid + tinidazole 500 mg bid
- 5-15% of cases are resistant to all known therapies

NSAID-Induced Ulceration

- NSAID use causes gastric mucosal petechiae in virtually all, erosions in most, ulcers in some (25%)
 - erosions bleed, but usually only ulcers cause significant clinical problems
- most NSAID ulcers are clinically silent: dyspepsia is as common in patients with ulcers as in patients without ulcers; NSAID-induced ulcers characteristically present with complications (bleeding, perforation, obstruction)
- NSAIDs more commonly cause gastric ulcers than duodenal ulcers
- may exacerbate underlying duodenal ulcer disease

Pathophysiology

- direct: erosions/petechiae – are due to local (direct) effect of drug on gastric mucosa
- indirect: systemic NSAID effect (intravenous NSAID causes ulcers, but not erosions), inhibits mucosal cyclooxygenase, leading to decreased synthesis of protective prostaglandins, thus leading to ulcers

Risk Factors For NSAID Causing Peptic Ulcer

- previous peptic ulcers/UGIB
- age
- high dose of NSAID/multiple NSAIDs being taken
- concomitant corticosteroid use
- concomitant cardiovascular disease/other significant diseases

Treatment

- prophylactic cytoprotective therapy with a PPI is recommended if any of the above risk factors exist concomitantly with ASA/NSAID use
- lower NSAID dose or stop all together and replace with acetaminophen
- combine NSAID with PPI or misoprostol
- enteric coating of Aspirin® (ECASA) provides minor benefit since this decreases incidence of erosion, not incidence of ulceration

Stress-Induced Ulceration

Definition

- ulceration or erosion in the upper GI tract of ill patients, usually in ICU
- lesions most commonly in fundus of stomach

Pathophysiology

- unclear: likely involves ischemia; may be caused by CNS disease, acid hypersecretion, Cushing ulcers
- physiological stress (e.g. fever, severe illness, complex post-operative course) causes ulcers and erosions



If at high risk for development of ulcers, prophylaxis with PPI indicated



The David Y Graham Lecture: Use of Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs (NSAID) in a COX-2 Restricted Environment

Am J Gastroenterol 2008;103:221-227

This short article reviews the current understanding of NSAID risks, emphasizing (1) with the possible exception of naproxen, all NSAIDs increase cardiovascular/cerebrovascular risk, especially the COX-2 specific inhibitors (2) low-dose Aspirin®, now used widely to decrease these risks, increases the likelihood of upper GI tract bleeding and may not abrogate the cardiovascular risk of NSAIDs (3) clopidogrel is no safer than Aspirin® in patients with high risk of upper GI tract bleeding (4) add a PPI to NSAID if there is an increased risk of upper GI events.

Risk Factors

- mechanical ventilation
- anti-coagulation
- multi-organ failure
- septicemia
- severe surgery/trauma
- CNS injury ("Cushing's ulcers")
- burns involving more than 35% of body surface

Clinical Features

- UGIB (see *Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding, G25*)
- painless

Treatment

- prophylaxis with gastric acid suppressants (H_2 -blockers or PPI) decreases risk of UGIB, but may increase risk of pneumonia
- treatment same as for bleeding peptic ulcer but often less successful

Gastric Carcinoma

- see *General Surgery, GS18*

**Small and Large Bowel****Classification of Diarrhea****Definition**

- clinically: diarrhea defined as stools that are looser and/or more frequent than normal; physiologically: 24 h stool weight >200 g (less useful clinically)

Classification

- acute vs. chronic
- small volume (tablespoons of stool; typical of colonic diseases) vs. large volume (>1/2 cup stool; typical of small bowel diseases)
- watery (bowel disease) vs. steatorrhea
- secretory (diarrhea persists with fasting) vs. osmotic (diarrhea stops with fasting)

Acute Diarrhea**Definition**

- passage of frequent unformed stools for <14 d

Etiology

- most commonly due to infections
- most infections are self-limiting and resolve within 7 d

Risk Factors

- food (seafood, chicken, turkey, eggs, beef)
- medications: antibiotics, laxatives
- others: high risk sexual activity, infectious outbreaks, family history (IBD)

Classification

- broadly divided and classified into inflammatory and non-inflammatory diarrhea
- mechanisms
 - stimulation of intestinal water secretion and inhibition of water absorption (i.e. secretory problem)
 - in inflammatory diarrhea, organisms and cytotoxins invade mucosa, killing mucosal cells and further perpetuating the diarrhea

Table 8. Classification of Acute Diarrhea

	Inflammatory	Non-Inflammatory
Definition	Disruption of intestinal mucosa	Intestinal mucosa intact
Site	Usually colon	Usually small intestine
Sigmoidoscopy	Usually abnormal mucosa seen	Usually normal
Symptoms	Bloody (not always) Small volume, high frequency Often lower abdominal cramping with urgency \pm tenesmus May have fever \pm shock	Watery, little or no blood Large volume Upper/periumbilical pain/cramp \pm shock
Investigations	Fecal WBC and RBC positive	Fecal WBC negative

**Useful Questions in Acute Diarrhea****Those Fads Wilt**

Travel
Homosexual contacts
Outbreaks
Seafood
Extra-intestinal signs of IBD
Family history
Antibiotics
Diet
Steatorrhea
Weight loss
Immunosuppressed
Laxatives
Tumor history

**Infectious Causes of Inflammatory Diarrhea****Your Stool Smells Extremely Crappy**

Yersinia
Shigella
Salmonella
E. coli (EHEC 0157:H7), *E. histolytica*
Campylobacter, *C. difficile*

Table 8. Classification of Acute Diarrhea (continued)

	Inflammatory	Non-Inflammatory
Etiology	See <i>Differential Diagnosis of Common Presenting Complaints, G4</i>	See <i>Differential Diagnosis of Common Presenting Complaints, G4</i>
Differential Diagnosis	Acute presentation of idiopathic inflammatory bowel disease	Acute presentation of non-inflammatory chronic diarrhea (e.g. celiac disease)
Significance	Higher yield with stool C&S Can progress to life-threatening megacolon, perforation, hemorrhage Antibiotics may benefit	Lower yield with stool C&S Chief life-threatening problem is electrolyte disturbances/ fluid depletion Antibiotics unlikely to be helpful

Investigations

- stool cultures/microscopy (C&S/O&P) are required only if diarrhea is inflammatory, severe, or for epidemiological purposes (day care worker, nursing home resident, community outbreaks (e.g. Walkerton), etc.)
 - C&S only tests *Campylobacter*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *E. coli*
 - ♦ other organisms must be ordered separately
- flexible sigmoidoscopy: useful if inflammatory diarrhea suspected
 - biopsies are the most useful method of distinguishing idiopathic IBD (Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis) from infectious colitis or acute self-limited colitis
- *C. difficile* toxin: indicated when recent/remote antibiotic use, hospitalization, nursing home, or recent chemotherapy

Treatment

- fluid and electrolyte replacement orally in most cases, intravenous if severe extremes of age/coma
- anti-diarrheals
 - antimitility agents: diphenoxylate, loperamide (Imodium®); contraindicated in mucosal inflammation
 - ♦ side effects: abdominal cramps, toxic megacolon
 - absorbants: kaolin/pectin (Kaopectate®), methylcellulose, activated attapulgate
 - ♦ act by absorbing intestinal toxins/micro-organisms, or by coating intestinal mucosa
 - ♦ much less effective than antimitility agents
 - modifiers of fluid transport: bismuth subsalicylate (Pepto-Bismol®) may be helpful
- antibiotics: rarely indicated
 - risks
 - ♦ prolonged excretion of enteric pathogen (especially *Salmonella*)
 - ♦ drug side effects (including *C. difficile* infection)
 - ♦ development of resistant strains
 - ♦ renal failure/hemolysis (enterohemorrhagic *E. coli* O157:H7)
 - indications for antimicrobial agents in acute diarrhea
 - ♦ septicemia
 - ♦ prolonged fever with fecal blood or leukocytes
 - ♦ clearly indicated: *Shigella*, *V. cholerae*, *C. difficile*, traveler's diarrhea (enterotoxigenic *E. coli* [ETEC]), *Giardia*, *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Cyclospora*
 - ♦ situational: *Salmonella*, *Campylobacter*, *Yersinia*, non-enterotoxigenic *E. coli*
 - ♦ *Salmonella*: always treat *Salmonella typhi* (typhoid or enteric fever); treat other *Salmonella* only if there is underlying immunodeficiency, hemolytic anemia, extremes of age, aneurysms, prosthetic valve grafts/joints, sickle cell disease

**Stool Osmotic Gap**

Stool osmolality is normally about 290 mOsm/kg and can be approximated by the calculated stool osmolality ($2 \times [\text{Na}^+]_{\text{stool}} + [\text{K}^+]_{\text{stool}}$). In osmotic diarrhea, measured stool osmolality > calculated stool osmolality. In secretory diarrhea measured stool osmolality = calculated stool osmolality.



S. typhi has a rose spot rash (transient maculopapular rash on anterior thorax, upper abdomen), and a prodrome of high fever, bradycardia, headache, and abdominal pain; diarrhea is not the initial presentation.

Traveler's Diarrhea

- see [Infectious Diseases, ID14](#)

Chronic Diarrhea

Definition

- passage of frequent unformed stool for >14 d
- approach is similar to that of acute diarrhea except that the majority of cases are non-infectious

Etiology/Classification

- see *Differential Diagnosis of Common Presenting Complaints, G4*

Investigations

- guided by history
- stool analysis for: *C. difficile* toxin, C&S, O&P ± fecal fat, WBC
- blood for: CBC, electrolytes, CRP, TSH, celiac serology (IgA anti-tTG; ask for serum protein electrophoresis or immunoglobulin quantitation to rule out IgA deficiency which has an increased frequency in celiac disease)
- colonoscopy and ileoscopy with biopsy
- upper GI endoscopy with duodenal biopsy
- wireless small bowel endoscopy capsule (low yield)
- trial of lactose free diet
 - caveat: may delay diagnosis of IBD and celiac disease



Maldigestion and Malabsorption



Definition

- **maldigestion:** inability to break down large molecules in the lumen of the intestine into their component small molecules
- **malabsorption:** inability to transport molecules across the intestinal mucosa into circulation
- **malassimilation:** encompasses both maldigestion and malabsorption

Etiology

- **maldigestion**
 - inadequate mixing of food with enzymes (e.g. post-gastrectomy)
 - pancreatic exocrine deficiency
 - primary diseases of the pancreas (e.g. cystic fibrosis, pancreatitis, cancer)
 - bile salt deficiency
 - ♦ terminal ileal disease (impaired recycling), bacterial overgrowth (deconjugation of bile salts), rarely liver disease (cholestatic)
 - specific enzyme deficiencies (e.g. lactase)
- **malabsorption**
 - inadequate absorptive surface
 - ♦ infections/infestations (e.g. Whipple's disease, Giardia)
 - ♦ immunologic or allergic injury (e.g. celiac disease)
 - ♦ infiltration (e.g. lymphoma, amyloidosis)
 - ♦ fibrosis (e.g. systemic sclerosis, radiation enteritis)
 - ♦ bowel resection (length, site, and location are important)
 - ♦ extensive Crohn's disease
 - drug-induced
 - ♦ cholestyramine, ethanol, neomycin, tetracycline, and other antibiotics
 - endocrine
 - ♦ DM (complex pathogenesis)

Clinical Features

- symptoms usually vague unless disease is severe
- weight loss, diarrhea, steatorrhea, weakness, fatigue
- manifestations of malabsorption/deficiency



Fat Soluble Vitamins: **ADEK**
vitamin A, vitamin D, vitamin E, vitamin K

Table 9. Absorption of Nutrients and Fat Soluble Vitamins

Deficiency	Absorption	Clinical Disease and/or Features	Investigations
Iron	Duodenum, upper jejunum	Hypochromic, microcytic anemia, glossitis, koilonychia (spoon nails), pica	↓ Hb, ↓ serum Fe, ↓ serum ferritin
Calcium	Duodenum, upper jejunum (binds to Ca^{2+} binding-protein in cells; levels increased by Vit D)	Metabolic bone disease, may get tetany and paresthesias if serum calcium falls (see Endocrinology, E40)	↓ serum Ca^{2+} , ↓ serum Mg^{2+} , and ↑ ALP Evaluate for ↓ bone mineralization radiographically (DEXA)
Folic Acid	Jejunum	Megaloblastic anemia, glossitis, ↓ red cell folate (may see ↑ folic acid with bacterial overgrowth)	↓ serum folic acid
Vitamin B₁₂	B ₁₂ ingested and bound to R proteins mainly from salivary glands; stomach secretes intrinsic factor (IF) in acidic medium; in basic medium, proteases from the pancreas cleave R protein and B ₁₂ -IF complex forms, protecting B ₁₂ from further protease attack; B ₁₂ absorbed in ileum and binds to transcobalamin (TC)	Subacute combined degeneration of the spinal cord, peripheral/optic neuropathy, dementia, megaloblastic anemia, glossitis	Differentiate causes by nuclear Schilling test (when available) Positive anti-intrinsic factor antibodies and atrophic gastritis point toward pernicious anemia (see Hematology, H24)
Carbohydrate	Complex polysaccharides hydrolyzed to oligosaccharides and disaccharides by salivary and pancreatic enzymes Monosaccharides absorbed in duodenum/jejunum	Generalized malnutrition, weight loss, flatus, and diarrhea	Hydrogen breath test Trial of carbohydrate-restricted diet D-xylose test
Protein	Digestion at stomach, brush border, and inside cell Absorption occurs primarily in the jejunum	General malnutrition and weight loss, amenorrhea and ↓ libido if severe	↓ serum albumin (low sensitivity)
Fat	Lipase, colipase, phospholipase A (pancreatic enzymes), and bile salts needed for digestion Products of lipolysis form micelles which solubilize fat, and aid in absorption Fatty acids diffuse into cell cytoplasm	Generalized malnutrition, weight loss, and diarrhea Foul-smelling feces + gas Steatorrhea	Small bowel biopsy MRCP, ERCP, pancreatic function tests Quantitative stool fat test (72 h) May start with qualitative stool fat test (Sudan stain of stool) (C-triolein breath test)
Vitamin A	Dietary sources (e.g. milk, eggs, liver, carrots, sweet potatoes)	Night blindness Dry skin Keratomalacia	
Vitamin D	Skin (via UV light) or diet (e.g. eggs, fish oil, fortified milk)	Osteomalacia in adults Rickets in children	
Vitamin E	Dietary sources (e.g. vegetable oils, nuts, leafy green vegetables)	Retinopathy, neurological problems	
Vitamin K	Synthesized by intestinal flora ↑ risk of deficiency after prolonged use of broad spectrum antibiotics and/or starvation	Prolonged INR causes bleeding	

* Calcium malabsorption more commonly causes decreased bone density rather than hypocalcemia because serum calcium levels are protected by leaching calcium from the bone

Investigations

- transglutaminase serology/protein electrophoresis and abdominal imaging are most useful because celiac disease and chronic pancreatitis are the two most common causes of steatorrhea
- 72 h stool collection (weight, fat content) documents steatorrhea (gold standard)
- serum carotene, folate, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , vitamin B_{12} , albumin, ferritin, serum iron solution, INR/PTT
- stool fat globules on fecal smear stained with Sudan (rarely used)
- other tests specific for etiology (e.g. CT scan/MRI to visualize pancreas)
- trial of therapy with pancreatic enzymes

Treatment

- dependent on underlying etiology

Celiac Disease (Gluten Enteropathy/Sprue)

Definition

- abnormal small intestine mucosa due to intestinal reaction to gliadin, a component of gluten found in cereal grains

Etiology

- only autoimmune disease in which antigen (a peptide in α -gliadin) is recognized
- associated with other autoimmune diseases, especially thyroid disease
- gluten, a protein in cereal grains, broken down to gliadin, is toxic factor
- HLA-DQ2 (chromosome 6) found in 80-90% of patients compared with 20% in general population; also associated with HLA-DQ8

Epidemiology

- more common in women
- family history: 15% of first-degree relatives
- may present any time from infancy (when cereals introduced) to elderly
- peak presentation in infancy

Clinical Features

- classically: diarrhea, weight loss, anemia, symptoms of vitamin/mineral deficiency, failure to thrive; now more commonly bloating, gas, iron deficiency
- improves with gluten-free diet, deteriorates when gluten reintroduced
- disease is usually most severe in proximal bowel
 - thus iron, calcium, and folic acid deficiency more common than vitamin B_{12} deficiency
- gluten enteropathy may be associated with dermatitis herpetiformis skin eruption, epilepsy, myopathy, depression, paranoia, infertility, bone fractures/metabolic bone disease

Investigations

- small bowel mucosal biopsy (usually duodenum) is diagnostic with:
 - villous atrophy and crypt hyperplasia
 - increased number of plasma cells and lymphocytes in lamina propria
 - increased intraepithelial lymphocytes
 - villous atrophy also seen in small bowel overgrowth, Crohn's, lymphoma, *Giardia*, HIV
- consider CT enterography to visualize small bowel to rule out lymphoma
- evidence of malabsorption (localized or generalized)
 - steatorrhea
 - low levels of ferritin/iron saturation, Ca^{2+} , Fe, albumin, cholesterol, carotene, B_{12} absorption
- improvement with a gluten-free diet; should not be started before anti-tTG and biopsy
- serological tests
 - serum anti-tTG antibody, IgA, is 90-98% sensitive, 94-97% specific
 - IgA deficient patients have false-negative anti-tTG
 - ♦ thus measure serum IgA concomitantly (via serum protein electrophoresis)
- fecal fat >7%

Treatment

- dietary counseling
 - gluten free diet: avoid barley, rye, wheat
 - ♦ oats allowed if not contaminated by other grains
 - rice and corn flour are acceptable
 - iron, folate supplementation (with supplementation of other vitamins as needed)
- if poor response to diet change, consider
 - alternate diagnosis
 - non-adherence to gluten-free diet
 - concurrent disease (e.g. microscopic colitis, pancreatic insufficiency)

**Gluten found in BROW**

Barley
Rye
Oats (controversial)
Wheat

- development of intestinal (enteropathy-associated T-cell) lymphoma (abdominal pain, weight loss, palpable mass)
- development of diffuse intestinal ulceration, characterized by aberrant intraepithelial T-cell population (precursor to lymphoma)

Prognosis

- associated with increased risk of lymphoma, carcinoma (e.g. small bowel and colon)
- risk of malignancy may be lowered by dietary gluten restriction

Inflammatory Bowel Disease



Definition

- Crohn's disease (CD), ulcerative colitis (UC), indeterminate colitis or IBD-unclassified (IBDU)

Pathophysiology

- poorly understood
- sustained response of the immune system, perhaps to enteric flora in a genetically predisposed individual
- current hypothesis: lack of appropriate down-regulation of immune responsiveness

Genetics

- increased risk of both UC and CD in relatives of patients with either disease, especially siblings, early onset disease
 - familial risk greater if proband has CD rather than UC
- likely polygenomic pattern: 9 gene loci are associated
- CARD15/NOD2 gene mutation associated with CD (relative risk in heterozygote is 3, in homozygote is 40), especially Ashkenazi Jews, early onset disease, ileal involvement, fistulizing and stenotic disease
 - CARD15 gene product modulates NFκB, which is required for the innate immune response to microbial pathogens, best expressed in monocytes-macrophages

Clinical Features

Table 10. Clinical Differentiation of Ulcerative Colitis from Crohn's Disease

	Crohn's Disease	Ulcerative Colitis
Location	Any part of GI tract <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small bowel + colon: 50% • Small bowel only: 30% • Colon only: 20% 	Isolated to large bowel Always involves rectum, may progress proximally
Rectal Bleeding	Uncommon	Very common (90%)
Diarrhea	Less prevalent	Frequent small stools
Abdominal Pain	Post-prandial/colicky	Less common
Fever	Common	Uncommon
Urgency/Tenesmus	Uncommon (unless rectum involved)	Common
Palpable Mass	Frequent (25%), RLQ	Rare (if present, cecum full of stool)
Recurrence After Surgery	Common	None post-colectomy
Endoscopic Features	Ulcers (aphthous, stellate, linear), patchy lesions, pseudopolyps, cobblestoning	Continuous diffuse inflammation, erythema, friability, loss of normal vascular pattern, pseudopolyps
Histologic Features	Transmural distribution with skip lesions Focal inflammation ± noncaseating granulomas, deep fissuring + aphthous ulcerations, strictures Glands intact	Mucosal distribution, continuous disease (no skip lesions) Granulomas absent Gland destruction, crypt abscess
Radiologic Features	Cobblestone mucosa Frequent strictures and fistulae AXR: bowel wall thickening "string sign"	Lack of haustra Strictures rare; need to rule out complicating cancer
Complications	Strictures, fistulae, perianal disease	Toxic megacolon
Colon Cancer Risk	Increased if >30% of colon involved	Increased except in proctitis

Table 11. Extraintestinal Manifestations (EIM) of IBD

System	Crohn's Disease	Ulcerative Colitis
Dermatologic		
Erythema nodosum	15%	10%
Pyoderma gangrenosum	10%	Less common
Perianal skin tags	75-80%	Rare
Oral mucosal lesions	Common	Rare
Psoriasis	Statistically associated in 5-10% of those with IBD but not an EIM	
Rheumatologic		
Peripheral arthritis	15-20% of those with IBD (CD>UC)	
Ankylosing spondylitis	10% of those with IBD (CD>UC)	
Sacroiliitis	Occurs equally in CD and UC	
Ocular (~10% of IBD)		
Uveitis (vision threatening)	3-4% of IBD patients (CD>UC)	
Episcleritis (benign)		
Hepatobiliary		
Cholelithiasis	15-35% of patients with ileal Crohn's	
PSC	1-5% of IBD cases involving colon	
Fatty liver		
Urologic		
Calculi	Most common in CD, especially following ileal resection	
Ureteric obstruction		
Fistulae	Characteristic of Crohn's	
Others		
Thromboembolism		
Vasculitis		
Osteoporosis		
Vitamin deficiencies (B ₁₂ , Vit ADEK)		
Cardiopulmonary disorders		
Pancreatitis (rare)		

Crohn's Disease

Definition

- chronic transmural inflammatory disorder potentially affecting the entire gut from mouth to perianal region ("gum to bum")

Epidemiology

- incidence 1-6/100,000; prevalence 10-100/100,000
- bimodal: onset before 30 yr, second smaller peak age 60; M=F
- incidence of Crohn's increasing (relative to UC) especially in young females
- more common in Caucasians, Ashkenazi Jews
 - risk in Asians increases with move to Western countries
- smoking incidence in Crohn's patients is higher than general population

Pathology

- most common location: ileum + ascending colon
- linear ulcers leading to mucosal islands and "cobblestone" appearance
- granulomas are found in 50% of surgical specimens, 15% of mucosal biopsies

Clinical Features

- natural history unpredictable; young age, perianal disease, and need for corticosteroids have been associated with poor prognosis, but associations are not strong enough to guide clinical decisions
- most often presents as recurrent episodes of abdominal cramps, diarrhea, and weight loss
- ileitis may present with post-prandial pain, vomiting, RLQ mass; mimics acute appendicitis
- extra-intestinal manifestations are more common with colonic involvement
- fistulae, fissures, abscesses are common
- deep fissures with risk of perforation into contiguous viscera (leads to fistulae and abscesses)
- enteric fistulae may communicate with skin, bladder, vagina, and other parts of bowel

Investigations

- colonoscopy with biopsy to visualize (less often gastroscopy)
- CT/MR enterography to visualize small bowel
- CRP elevated in most new cases, useful to monitor treatment response
- bacterial cultures, O&P, *C. difficile* toxin to exclude other causes of inflammatory diarrhea

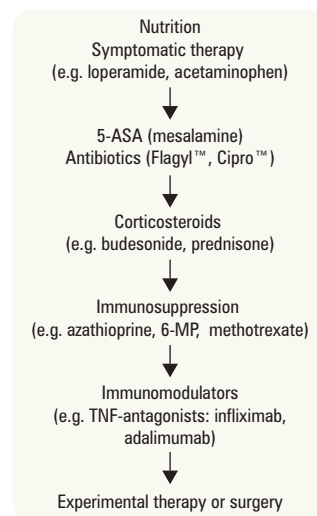


Figure 7. Traditional graded approach to induction therapy in Crohn's disease



Note: Starting with immunosuppressives plus immunomodulators ("bottom-up approach") increasingly being used (*Lancet* 2008;371:660-667). Combination of azathioprine and infliximab has the highest remission rate yet described with medical treatment (*NEJM* 2010;362:1383-1395).

Management (see Figure 7)**Table 12. Management of Crohn's Disease**

Management	Notes
Lifestyle/Diet	Smoking cessation Fluids only during acute exacerbation Enteral diets may aid in remission No evidence for any non-enteral diet changing the natural history of Crohn's disease, but may affect symptoms Those with extensive small bowel involvement or extensive resection require electrolyte, mineral, and vitamin supplements (vit D, Ca ²⁺ , Mg ²⁺ , zinc, Fe, B ₁₂)
Antidiarrheal Agents*	Loperamide (Imodium®) > diphenoxylate (Lomotil®) > codeine (cheap but addictive) All work by decreasing small bowel motility CAUTION if colitis is severe (risk of precipitating toxic megacolon), therefore avoid during flare-ups
5-ASA	Efficacy controversial: most evidence for mild colonic disease Sulfasalazine (Salazopyrin®): 5-ASA bound to sulfapyridine Hydrolysis by intestinal bacteria releases 5-ASA (active component) Dose-dependent efficacy Mesalamine (Pentasa®): coated 5-ASA releases 5-ASA in the ileum and colon
Antibiotics	e.g. metronidazole (20 mg/kg/d, bid or tid dosing) or ciprofloxacin Best described for perianal Crohn's, although characteristically relapse when discontinued
Corticosteroids	Prednisone: starting dose 40 mg OD for acute exacerbations; IV methylprednisolone if severe No proven role for steroids in maintaining remissions; masks intra-abdominal sepsis
Immunosuppressives	6-mercaptopurine (6-MP), azathioprine (Imuran®); methotrexate (used less often) More often used to maintain remission than to treat active inflammation Most commonly used as steroid-sparing agents i.e. to lower risk of relapse as corticosteroids are withdrawn May require >3 mo to have beneficial effect; usually continued for several years May help to heal fistulae, decrease disease activity Side effects: vomiting, pancreatitis, bone marrow suppression, increased risk of malignancy
Biologics	Infliximab IV (Remicade®) or adalimumab SC (Humira®): both = antibody to TNF-α Proven effective for treatment of fistulae and patients with medically refractory CD First-line immunosuppressive therapy with infliximab + azathioprine more effective than using either alone
Surgical/Experimental	Surgical treatment (see General Surgery, GS30) Surgery generally reserved for complications such as fistulae, obstruction, abscess, perforation, bleeding, and for medically refractory disease If <50% or <200 cm of functional small intestine, risk of short bowel syndrome At least 50% clinical recurrence within 5 yr; 85% within 15 yr; endoscopic recurrence rate even higher 40% likelihood of second bowel resection, 30% likelihood of third bowel resection Complications of ileal resection: <100 cm resected → watery diarrhea or cholorrhea (impaired bile salt absorption) Treatment: cholestyramine or anti-diarrheals e.g. loperamide >100 cm resected → steatorrhea (reduced mucosal surface area, bile salt deficiency) Treatment: fat restriction, medium chain triglycerides

*Cholestyramine: a bile-salt binding resin; for watery diarrhea with <100 cm of terminal ileum diseased or resected; however, non-specific anti-diarrheals are more convenient and often more potent

Prognosis

- highly variable course
- 10% disabled by the disease eventually, spontaneous remission also described
- increased mortality, especially with more proximal disease, greatest in the first 4-5 yr
- complications include:
 - intestinal obstruction/perforation
 - fistula formation
 - malignancy (lower risk compared to UC)
- surveillance colonoscopy same as ulcerative colitis (see [Ulcerative Colitis, G22](#)) if more than 1/3 of colon involved



Characteristically more than 1 yr between onset of symptoms and diagnosis of Crohn's disease

**Traditional Medical Management of Crohn's**

	Induction of Remission	Maintenance
5-ASA	?	?
Steroids	+	
Immunosuppressive	+	+
Antibiotics	+	
MTX	+	+
Infliximab	+	+

**Biological Therapies for Inflammatory Bowel Diseases**

Gastroenterology 2009;136:1182-1197

Although the etiology of inflammatory bowel diseases (IBD) is unknown, biological therapies (BT) that target key molecules in innate and adaptive immune pathways have been designed.

Anti-TNF Agents (infliximab, adalimumab, certolizumab): Effective in CD, less effective for UC. Increase mucosal healing, decrease need for hospitalizations and surgeries, and can induce steroid-free remission. At least 10% of patients annually develop intolerance and/or a loss of response.

Selective Anti-Adhesion Molecules

(natalizumab): Increases response and remission rates, circulating leukocytes, and steroid-sparing capacity in CD. Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy is a rare adverse event.

Promising New BT: Anti-Interleukin-12/Interleukin-23 p40 target factors more often associated with CD, while anti-IFN-antibodies may treat CD and UC.

BT Without Established Efficacy: Recombinant human cytokines, blockade of T-cell activation (daclizumab and basiliximab) and stimulators of the innate immune system.

Conclusion: Anti-TNF agents are effective treatments for IBD. There is a need to develop salvage biologic therapies for patients who do not respond to a first biological drug. BT's have a safety risk, so their place in treatment algorithms must be defined carefully.

Ulcerative Colitis



Definition

- inflammatory disease affecting colonic mucosa anywhere from rectum (always involved) to cecum

Epidemiology

- incidence 2-10/100,000; prevalence 35-100/100,000 (more common than Crohn's)
- 2/3 onset by age 30 (with second peak after 50); M=F
- small hereditary contribution (15% of cases have 1st degree relative with disease)
- risk is less in smokers
- inflammation limited to rectum or left colon is more common than pancolitis

Pathology

- disease can involve any portion of lower bowel ranging from rectum only (proctitis) to entire colon (pancolitis)
- inflammation is diffuse, continuous and confined to mucosa

Clinical Features

- rectal bleeding is the hallmark feature, however diarrhea may be present if more than the rectum is involved
 - can also have abdominal cramps/pain, especially with defecation
- severity of colonic inflammation correlates with symptoms (stool volume, amount of blood in stool)
- tenesmus, urgency, incontinence
- systemic symptoms: fever, anorexia, weight loss, fatigue in severe cases
- extra-intestinal manifestations (see Table 11)
- characteristic exacerbations and remissions; 5% of cases are fulminant



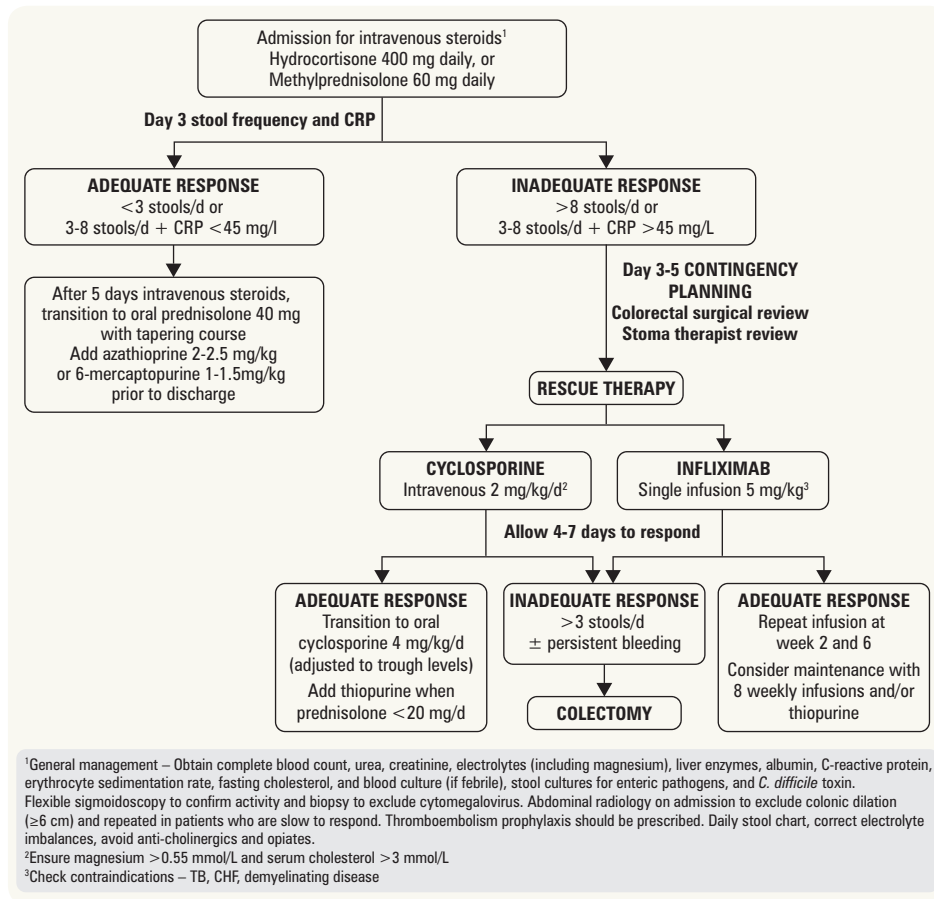
In UC, non-bloody diarrhea is frequently the initial presentation; eventually progressing to bloody diarrhea

Investigations

- sigmoidoscopy with mucosal biopsy (to exclude self-limited colitis) without bowel prep often sufficient for diagnosis
- colonoscopy helpful to determine extent of disease; contraindicated in severe exacerbation
- CT colonography (formerly barium enema) if colonoscopy cannot be done; contraindicated in severe disease
- stool culture, microscopy, *C. difficile* toxin assay necessary to exclude infection
- no single confirmatory test

Management

- mainstays of treatment: 5-ASA (mesalamine) derivatives and corticosteroids, with azathioprine used in steroid-dependent or resistant cases
- diet of little value in decreasing inflammation but may alleviate symptoms
- antidiarrheal medications generally not indicated in UC
- 5-ASA
 - topical (suppository or enema): very effective for distal disease (distal to splenic flexure), preferable to corticosteroids
 - oral: effective for mild to moderate, but not severe colitis (4 g/d)
 - e.g. sulfasalazine 3-4 g/d, mesalamine 4 g/d
 - commonly used in maintaining remission (decreases yearly relapse rate from 60% to 15%)
 - may decrease rate of colorectal cancer
- corticosteroids
 - to remit acute disease, especially if severe or first attack; may need maximum dose IV steroids initially (e.g. methylprednisolone 30 mg IV q12h)
 - limited role as maintenance therapy
 - use suppositories for proctitis, enemas for proctosigmoiditis
 - topical steroids (e.g. hydrocortisone foam, budesonide enemas) for inflammation distal to splenic flexure
- immunosuppressants (steroid-sparing)
 - if severe UC is refractory to steroid therapy, consider adding IV cyclosporine or IV infliximab within 3-5 d of recognition of need for salvage – rapidly effective, but helpful only in a minority of patients
 - azathioprine: too slow to rapidly resolve acute relapse
 - most commonly used to induce and maintain remission as corticosteroids withdrawn
- surgical treatment
 - early in severe UC, especially fulminant cases and toxic megacolon – consider operation if no response after 3-5 d of corticosteroids, or after 4-7 d of immunosuppressive medical therapy
 - aim for cure with colectomy; bowel continuity can be restored with ileal pouch-anal anastomosis (IPAA)
 - indications: failure of adequate medical therapy, toxic megacolon, uncontrollable bleeding, pre-cancerous changes detected either by endoscopy or endoscopic biopsies (dysplasia), inability to taper corticosteroids, overt malignancy

**Medical Management of Ulcerative Colitis**

	Induction of Remission	Maintenance
5-ASA	+	+
Steroids	+	
Immunosuppressive	±	+

**When Considering Complications of IBD, Think: ULCERATIVE COLITIS**

Urinary calculi
Liver problems
Cholelithiasis
Epithelial problems
Retardation of growth/sexual maturation
Arthralgias
Thrombophlebitis
Iatrogenic complications
Vitamin deficiencies
Eyes
Colorectal cancer
Obstruction
Leakage (perforation)
Iron deficiency
Toxic megacolon
Inanition (wasting)
Strictures

Figure 8. Medical management of severe ulcerative colitis

Gastroenterology 2011;140:1827-1837

Complications

- similar to CD, except
 - more liver problems (especially PSC in men)
 - greater risk of colorectal cancer
 - ♦ risk increases with duration and extent of disease (5% at 10 yr, 15% at 20 yr for pancolitis; overall relative risk is 8%)
 - ♦ risk also increases with active mucosal inflammation and sclerosing cholangitis
 - ♦ thus, regular colonoscopy and biopsy in pancolitis of ≥ 8 yr is indicated
 - toxic megacolon (transverse colon diameter >6 cm on abdominal x-ray) with immediate danger of perforation (see [General Surgery, GS26](#))

Prognosis

- chronic relapsing pattern in most patients
- 10-15% chronic continuous pattern
- >1 attack in almost all patients
- more colonic involvement in the 1st yr correlates with increased severity of attacks and increased colectomy rate
 - colectomy rate = 1% for all patients after the 1st yr; 20-25% eventually undergo colectomy
- normal life expectancy
- if proctitis only, usually benign course

**Irritable Bowel Syndrome****Definition**

- a form of functional bowel disease, more than just a label for GI symptoms unexplained after investigations

Epidemiology

- 20% of North Americans
- onset of symptoms usually in young adulthood
- F>M

Pathophysiology

- associated with either abnormal perception of intestinal activity or abnormal intestinal motility
- abnormal motility: multiple abnormalities described; unclear if associations or if causative
- psychological: stress may increase IBS symptoms but does not cause IBS

Diagnosis

Table 13. Rome III Criteria for Diagnosing Irritable Bowel Syndrome

IBS Rome III Criteria	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ≥ 12 wk in the past 12 mo of abdominal discomfort or pain that has 2 out of 3 features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relieved with defecation • Associated with a change in frequency of stool • Associated with a change in consistency of stool • The following are supportive, but not essential to the diagnosis: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Abnormal stool frequency ($>3/d$ or $<3/wk$) • Abnormal stool form (lumpy/hard/loose/watery) $>1/4$ of defecations • Abnormal stool passage (straining, urgency, feeling of incomplete evacuation) $>1/4$ of defecations • Passage of mucus $>1/4$ of defecations • Bloating 	
Diagnosis of IBS Less Likely in Presence of "Red Flag" Features	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Weight loss • Fever • Nocturnal defecation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anemia • Blood or pus in stool • Abnormal gross findings on flexible sigmoidoscopy
Normal Physical Exam	

Investigations

- if history consistent with Rome III criteria, no alarm symptoms, and no family history of IBD or colorectal cancer, limited investigations required
- aim is to rule out diseases which mimic IBS
- CBC, TSH, albumin, CRP, tTG serology with protein electrophoresis
- stool for C&S, O&P, fecal fat if diarrhea present
- consider sigmoidoscopy

Management

- reassurance, explanation, support, aim for realistic goals
- relaxation therapy, biofeedback, hypnosis, stress reduction
- no therapeutic agent consistently effective, pain most difficult to control
- symptom-guided treatment
 - pain predominant
 - ♦ antispasmodic medication before meals (e.g. hyoscine, pinaverium, trimebutine)
 - ♦ increase dietary fiber (bran or psyllium)
 - ♦ tricyclic antidepressants (TCA), selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRI)
 - diarrhea predominant (IBS-D)
 - ♦ increase dietary fiber (bran or psyllium) to increase stool consistency
 - ♦ loperamide (Imodium®)
 - ♦ diphenoxylate (Lomotil®)
 - ♦ cholestyramine 4 g QID
 - constipation predominant (IBS-C)
 - ♦ exercise and increase fiber in diet
 - ♦ osmotic or other laxatives
 - mixed (alternating constipation and diarrhea) (IBS-M)

Prognosis

- 80% improve over time
- most have intermittent episodes
- normal life expectancy



Rifaximin Therapy for Patients with Irritable Bowel Syndrome without Constipation

NEJM 2011;364:22-32

Purpose: Previous evidence suggests that gut flora may play an important role in the pathophysiology of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS). This study evaluated rifaximin, a minimally absorbed antibiotic, in treating IBS without constipation.

Methods: Two phase 3, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials (TARGET 1 and TARGET 2). 1,260 patients who had IBS without constipation were randomly assigned to rifaximin (550 mg dose) or placebo, 3 times daily for 2 wk, with a follow-up of 10 wk. The primary endpoint was adequate self-reported relief of global IBS symptoms.

Results: Significantly more patients in the rifaximin group had adequate self-reported relief of global IBS symptoms compared to the placebo group during the first 4 wk after treatment (40.8% vs. 31.2% respectively). Also, more patients in the rifaximin group had adequate relief of bloating compared to the placebo group (39.5% vs. 28.7% respectively).

Conclusions: Rifaximin therapy for 2 wk provided significant relief of symptoms, bloating, abdominal pain, and stool consistency associated with IBS without constipation.



IBS Mimickers

- Enteric infections e.g. *Giardia*
- Lactose intolerance/other disaccharidase deficiency
- Crohn's disease
- Celiac sprue
- Drug-induced diarrhea
- Diet-induced (excess tea, coffee, colas)

Constipation



Definition

- passage of infrequent or hard stools with straining (stool water <50 mL/d); bowel frequency <3 times/wk

Epidemiology

- increasing prevalence with age; F>M
- rare in Africa and India where stool weight is 3-4x greater than in Western countries

Etiology

- if constipation is the only presenting symptom, underlying disease is only rarely found. Only test indicated in this situation is a complete blood count (2013 recommendation of American Gastroenterology Association), but consider TSH, calcium, and glucose
- most common: idiopathic attributed to colon dysmotility but this is difficult to measure
- organic causes
 - medication side effects (narcotics, antidepressants) are the most common
 - intestinal obstruction, left sided colon cancer (consider in older patients), and fecal impaction
 - metabolic
 - ♦ DM
 - ♦ hypothyroidism
 - ♦ hypercalcemia, hypokalemia, uremia
 - neurological
 - ♦ intestinal pseudo-obstruction
 - ♦ Parkinson's disease
 - ♦ MS
 - collagen vascular disease (e.g. scleroderma)
 - painful anal conditions (e.g. fissures)

Clinical Presentation

- overlaps with irritable bowel syndrome
- stool firm, difficult to expel, passed with straining, abdominal pain relieved by defecation, flatulence, overflow diarrhea, tenesmus, abdominal distension, infrequent BMs (<3/wk)

Investigations

- colon visualization if concomitant symptoms such as rectal bleeding, weight loss, or anemia (colonoscopy, CT colonography)
- if refractory to treatment, consider classification based on colon transit time; can measure colonic transit time with radioopaque markers that are ingested and followed with a series of plain film abdominal x-rays (normal: 70 h)
 - (1) normal = misperception of normal defecation (IBS)
 - (2) prolonged throughout = "colonic inertia" (infrequent bowel movements with gas/bloating, tends to occur in youth)
 - (3) outlet obstruction = inability to coordinate pelvic floor muscles to empty rectum, straining, stool in rectum on digital exam, tends to occur in old age
- combination of (2) and (3) common

Treatment (in order of increasing potency)

- dietary fiber
 - useful if mild or moderate constipation, but not if severe
 - aim for 30 g daily, increase dose slowly
- surface-acting (soften and lubricate)
 - docusate salts, mineral oils
- osmotic agents (effective in 2-3 d)
 - lactulose, sorbitol, magnesium salts (e.g. magnesium hydroxide, i.e. milk of magnesia), lactitol, polyethylene glycol 3350
- cathartics/stimulants (effective in 24 h)
 - castor oil, senna (avoid prolonged use to prevent melanosis coli), bisacodyl
- enemas and suppositories (e.g. saline enema, phosphate enema, glycerin suppository, bisacodyl suppository)
- prokinetic agents (prucalopride)



Causes of Constipation

DOPED

Drugs

Obstruction

Pain

Endocrine dysfunction

Depression

Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding



Definition

- bleeding proximal to the ligament of Treitz (75% of GI bleeds)
 - ligament of Treitz: suspensory ligament where fourth portion of the duodenum transitions to jejunum

Etiology

- above the GE junction
 - epistaxis
 - esophageal varices (10-30%)
 - esophagitis
 - esophageal cancer
 - Mallory-Weiss tear (10%)
- stomach
 - gastric ulcer (20%) (see *Peptic Ulcer Disease, G12*)
 - gastritis (e.g. from alcohol or post-surgery) (20%)
 - gastric cancer
 - gastric antral vascular ectasia (rare, associated with cirrhosis and CTD)
 - Dieulafoy's lesion (very rare)



Aortoenteric Fistula is a rare and lethal cause of GI bleed, most common in patients with a history of aortic graft surgery. Therefore, perform emergency endoscopy if suspected, emergency surgery if diagnosed

Note: The window of opportunity is narrow. Suspect if history of aortic graft, abdominal pain associated with bleeding

- duodenum
 - ulcer in bulb (25%)
 - aortoenteric fistula: usually only if previous aortic graft (see sidebar, G25)
- coagulopathy (drugs, renal disease, liver disease)
- vascular malformation (Dieulafoy's lesion, AVM)

Clinical Features

- in order of decreasing severity of the bleed: hematochezia > hematemesis > coffee ground emesis > melena > occult blood in stool

Management (initial)

- stabilize patient (1-2 large bore IVs, IV fluids, monitor)
- send blood for CBC, cross and type, platelets, PT, PTT, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, LFTs
- keep NPO
- consider NG tube to determine upper vs. lower GI bleeding in some cases
- endoscopy (OGD): establish bleeding site + treat lesion
 - if bleeding peptic ulcer: most commonly used method of controlling bleeding is injection of epinephrine around bleeding point + thermal hemostasis (bipolar electrocoagulation or heater probe); less often thermal hemostasis may be used alone, but injection alone not recommended
 - endoclips
- IV PPI: decrease risk of rebleed if endoscopic predictors of rebleeding seen (see prognosis section)
 - given to stabilize clot, not to accelerate ulcer healing
 - if given before endoscopy, decreases need for endoscopic therapeutic intervention
- for variceal bleeds, octreotide 50 µg loading dose followed by constant infusion of 50 µg/h
- consider IV erythromycin (or metoclopramide) to accelerate gastric emptying prior to gastroscopy to remove clots from stomach

Prognosis

- 80% stop spontaneously
- peptic ulcer bleeding: low mortality (2%) unless rebleeding occurs (25% of patients, 10% mortality)
- endoscopic predictors of rebleeding: spurt or ooze, visible vessel, fibrin clot
- can send home if clinically stable, bleed is minor, no comorbidities, endoscopy shows clean ulcer with no predictors of rebleeding
- H₂-antagonists have little impact on rebleeding rates and need for surgery
- esophageal varices have a high rebleeding rate (55%) and mortality (29%)



Always ask about NSAID/Aspirin® or anticoagulant therapy in GI bleed



Forrest Classification of Bleeding Peptic Ulcers

Forrest Class	Type of Lesion	Risk of Rebleed (%)
I	Arterial bleeding (oozing/spurting)	55-100
Ila	Visible vessel	43
Ilb	Sentinel clot	22
Ilc	Hematin covered flat spot	10
III	No stigmata of hemorrhage	5

Lancet 1974;2:394-397



Transfusion Strategies for Acute Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding

NEJM 2013;368:11-21

Study: Prospective, unblinded, RCT, follow-up up to 45 d.

Populations: 921 patients with hematemesis, bloody nasogastric aspirate, melena, or both. Exclusion criteria included massive bleed, ACS, stroke/TIA or transfusion within previous 90 d; recent trauma/surgery; lower GI bleed.

Intervention: Patients randomized to restrictive (<7.0 g/dL) or liberal (<9.0 g/dL) transfusion. Outcome: Mortality, further bleeding, adverse events.

Results: Fewer patients in the restrictive group required transfusion (51% vs. 15%; $p < 0.001$). The hazard ratio for death for restrictive compared to liberal transfusion was 0.55; 95% CI, 0.33 to 0.92; $p = 0.02$. Further bleeding occurred in 10% vs. 16% ($p = 0.01$) of patients, while adverse effects occurred in 40% vs. 48% ($p = 0.02$) of patients in the restrictive and liberal strategies, respectively. The restrictive strategy had a better survival rate in patients with bleeding associated with cirrhosis Child-Pugh class A or B (HR: 0.30; 95% CI, 0.11 to 0.85), but not in cirrhosis Child-Pugh class C (HR: 1.04; 95% CI, 0.45 to 2.37) or a peptic ulcer (HR: 0.70; 95% CI, 0.26 to 1.25).

Conclusions: Transfusing patients with an acute upper GI bleed at hemoglobin of <7.0 g/dL rather than 9.0 g/dL is associated with fewer transfusions, better survival, and fewer adverse events.



Review Article: Improved Survival with Patients with Variceal Bleeds

Int J Hepatol 2011;doi=10.461/2011/356919

General Measures: Resuscitation to achieve hemodynamic stability (Hb >7.0-8.0 g/dL) but avoid fluid overload as it can precipitate or worsen ascites.

Antibiotic Prophylaxis: IV ceftriaxone or postendoscopic norfloxacin reduces bacterial infection, rebleeding rates, length of hospitalization, and all-cause mortality.

Splanchnic Vasoconstriction: Somatostatin, Octreotide, Terlipressin.

Therapeutic Endoscopy: Band ligation is superior to injection sclerotherapy in initial control of bleeding, incidence of rebleeding, side effects, time, and survival.

Recommendations: Combination therapy with vasoactive drug plus endoscopic band ligation is recommended for Child's A and if combined therapy fails (HVPG >20 mmHg within 24 h after start of bleed is the best predictor failure); TIPS is then recommended for patients with Child's B or C, early TIPS is recommended over combined therapy.

Approach to Iron Deficiency Anemia

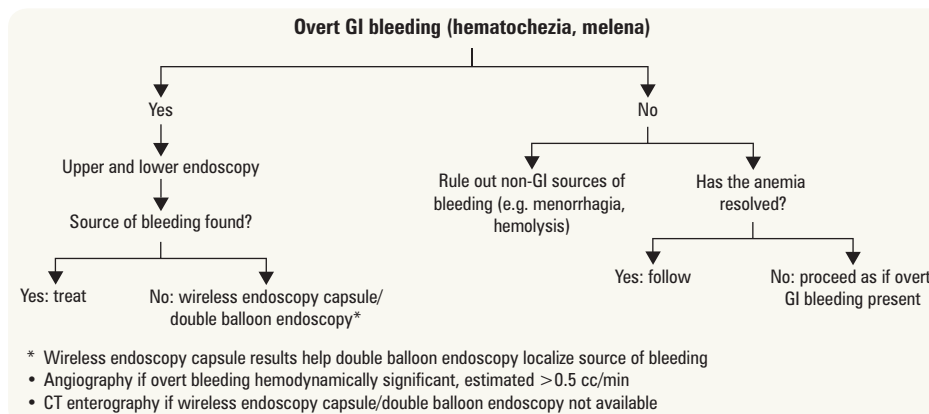


Figure 9. Approach to iron deficiency anemia

Esophageal Varices

Etiology

- almost always due to portal HTN
- often accompanied by varices in stomach

Clinical Features

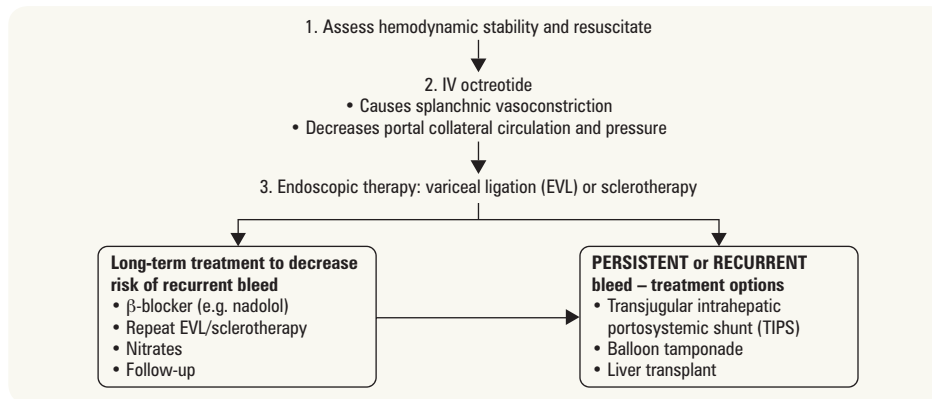
- characteristically massive upper GI bleeding

Prognosis

- risk of bleeding: 30% in 1st yr
- risk of rebleeding: 50-70% (20% mortality at 6 wk)

Investigations

- endoscopy

Management**Figure 10. Management of bleeding esophageal varices**

Not depicted: Intravenous ceftriaxone (lowers risk of sepsis, especially spontaneous bacterial peritonitis)



If varices isolated to stomach, think of splenic vein thrombosis



Gastric varices best treated by endoscopic injection of cyanoacetate ("crazy glue")



In a prospective study of upper GI tract bleeding, mortality, recurrent bleeding, and adverse events were lower when transfusions were given only when the hemoglobin concentration fell below 7.0 g/dL compared to transfusions given when the hemoglobin fell below 9.0 g/dL. The benefit was most marked in variceal bleeding with Childs-Pugh Class A or B cirrhosis (see below under cirrhosis), but also seen in peptic ulcer. Exclusion criteria included exsanguinating bleeding, acute coronary syndrome, and stroke. *NEMJ* 2013;368:11-21

Mallory-Weiss Tear

Definition

- longitudinal laceration in gastric mucosa on lesser curvature near GE junction (20% straddle junction, 5% in distal esophagus)

Etiology

- due to rapid increases in gastric pressure from retching/vomiting against a closed glottis
- hiatus hernia usually present

Clinical Features

- hematemesis \pm melena, classically following an episode of retching without blood
- can lead to fatal hematemesis

Management

- 90% stop spontaneously
- if persistent: endoscopy with epinephrine injection \pm clips or surgical repair

Lower Gastrointestinal Bleeding

Definition

- bleed distal to ligament of Treitz

Etiology

- if blood per rectum with hemodynamic instability, rule out upper GI source
- diverticular (60% from right colon)
- vascular
 - angiodysplasia
 - anorectal (hemorrhoids, fissures)
- neoplasm
 - cancer
 - polyps
- inflammation
 - colitis (ulcerative, infectious, radiation, ischemic)
- post-polypectomy

Clinical Features

- hematochezia (see Figure 11)
- anemia
- occult blood in stool
- rarely melena

Management

- treat underlying cause



Always exclude upper GI lesion before localizing the site of the bleeding to the lower GI tract

**Lower GI Bleed****CHAND**

Colitis (radiation, infectious, ischemic, IBD [UC > CD])

Hemorrhoids/fissure

Angiodysplasia

Neoplastic

Diverticular disease

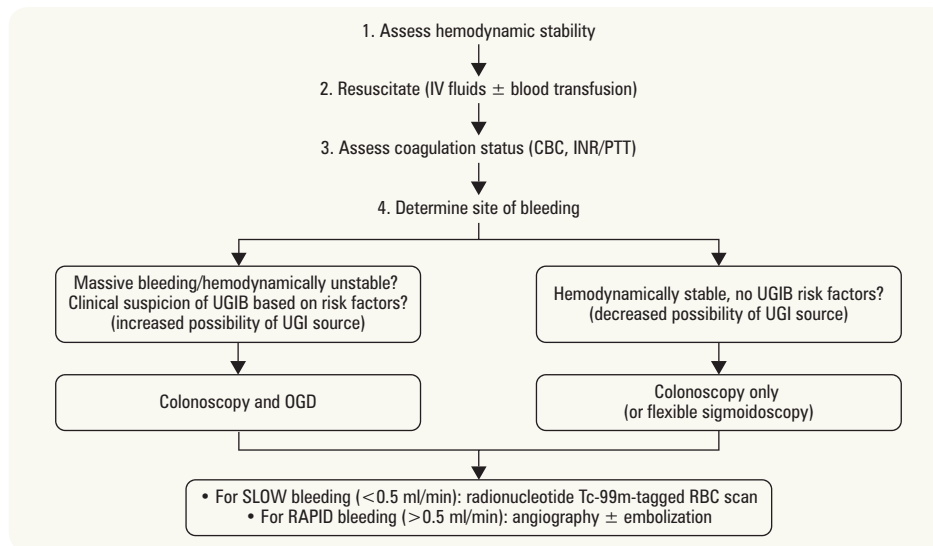


Figure 11. Approach to hematochezia

Colorectal Carcinoma

- see [General Surgery, GS34](#)

Colorectal Polyps

- see [General Surgery, GS33](#)

Familial Colon Cancer Syndromes

- see [General Surgery, GS33](#)

Benign Anorectal Disease

- see [General Surgery, GS38](#)

Liver

Investigations of Hepatobiliary Disease

A. TEST OF LIVER FUNCTION

Prothrombin Time (PT or INR)

- a marker of hepatic protein synthesis
- increased by
 - impaired hepatic protein synthesis (>80%) (including all coagulation factors except VIII) i.e. hepatocellular dysfunction
 - vitamin K deficiency
 - vitamin K administration promptly corrects PT in vitamin K deficiency (malnutrition, malabsorption, etc.) but not in hepatocellular dysfunction; thus in the absence of vitamin K deficiency, INR/PT is a reliable index of hepatocellular dysfunction

Serum Albumin Level

- a marker of hepatic protein synthesis; must exclude malnutrition, renal or GI losses, and significant inflammatory or malignant illness of any organ system

Serum Bilirubin

- marker of hepatic excretion: transport from hepatocyte to bile
- canaliculus breakdown product of hemoglobin; metabolized in the reticuloendothelial system of liver; transported through biliary system, excreted via gut
- direct bilirubin = conjugated; indirect = unconjugated bilirubin
- liver dysfunction causes hyperbilirubinemia (elevated direct bilirubin) since conjugation preserved even in end stage liver failure



All clotting factors except factor VIII and von Willebrand factor are exclusively synthesized in the liver



Serum transaminases >1000 due to

- Viral hepatitis
- Drugs
- Autoimmune hepatitis
- Hepatic ischemia
- Less often, common bile duct stone



ALT > AST = most causes of hepatitis
AST > ALT = alcoholic liver disease or other causes of hepatitis that have progressed to advanced cirrhosis

Table 14. Test of Liver Function

Test	What do levels correlate with?	Increased by	How to Interpret
Prothrombin Time (PT or INR)	Hepatic protein synthesis All coagulation factors except VIII	Hepatocellular dysfunction Vitamin K deficiency	PT/INR will promptly correct if vitamin K is administered, so increased PT/INR in absence of vitamin K deficiency is a reliable marker of hepatocellular dysfunction
Serum Albumin	Hepatic protein synthesis	Hepatocellular dysfunction Malnutrition Renal or GI losses Significant inflammation Malignancy	Rule out other potential causes
Serum Direct Bilirubin	Hepatic excretion from hepatocyte to biliary system	Liver dysfunction	Conjugation is preserved even in end stage liver failure, thus increased direct bilirubin indicates liver dysfunction

B. TESTS OF LIVER INJURY

- disproportionately increased AST or ALT = hepatocellular damage
 - ALT more specific to liver; AST from multiple sources (especially muscle)
 - elevation of both highly suggestive of liver injury
 - most common cause of elevated ALT is fatty liver
- disproportionately increased ALP and GGT = cholestasis
 - if ALP is elevated alone, rule out bone disease by fractionating ALP and/or checking GGT
 - if ALP elevation out of proportion to ALT/AST elevation, consider:
 - obstruction of common bile duct (extraluminal = pancreatic Ca, lymphoma; intraluminal = stones, cholangiocarcinoma, sclerosing cholangitis, helminths)
 - destruction of microscopic ducts (e.g. PBC)
 - bile acid transporter defects (drugs, intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy)
 - infiltration of the liver (liver metastases, lymphoma, granulomas, amyloid)



Alcoholic hepatitis: history of recent alcohol, RUQ abdominal pain, AST/ALT > 2, AST usually < 300, low grade fever, mildly elevated WBC



Major Sources of ALP

- Hepatobiliary tree
- Bone
- Placenta



DDx for Hepatomegaly

- Congestive (right heart failure, Budd-Chiari syndrome)
- Infiltrative
 - Malignant (primary, secondary, lymphoproliferative, leukemia)
 - Benign (fatty liver, cysts, hemochromatosis, extramedullary hematopoiesis, amyloid)
- Proliferative
 - Infectious (viral, tuberculosis, abscess, echinococcus)
 - Inflammatory (granulomas [sarcoid], histiocytosis X)



DDx for Hepatitis

- Viral infection
- Alcohol
- Drugs
- Immune-mediated
- Toxins



Causes of Elevated Serum Transaminases in Chronic Hepatitis B

- Ongoing immune-mediated liver injury without immune control of HBV
- Reactivation from prior immune control due to lack of adequate immune control
- Seroconversion (HBeAg converting to anti-HBe; spontaneously or with Rx)
- Hepatitis D
- Other liver insult (fatty liver, alcohol, drugs, hepatitis A)

Acute Viral Hepatitis (General)

Definition

- viral hepatitis lasting < 6 mo

Clinical Features

- most are subclinical
- flu-like prodrome may precede jaundice by 1-2 wk
 - N/V, anorexia, taste/smell disturbance, headaches, fatigue, myalgia, low-grade fever
 - arthralgia and urticaria (especially HBV)
- only some progress to icteric (clinical jaundice) phase, lasting days to weeks
 - pale stools and dark urine 1-5 d prior to icteric phase
 - hepatomegaly and RUQ pain
 - splenomegaly and cervical lymphadenopathy (10-20% of cases)

Investigations

- AST and ALT (>10-20x normal in hepatocellular necrosis)
- ALP minimally elevated
- viral serology, particularly the IgM antibody directed to the virus

Treatment

- supportive (hydration, diet)
- indications for hospitalization: encephalopathy, coagulopathy, severe vomiting, hypoglycemia

Prognosis

- poor prognostic indicators: comorbidities, persistently high bilirubin 20 mg/dL, increased INR, decreased albumin, hypoglycemia
- cholestasis (most commonly with HAV infection)

Complications

- hepatocellular necrosis: AST, ALT >10-20x normal, ALP and bilirubin minimally increased, increased cholestasis

Hepatitis A Virus

- RNA virus
- fecal-oral transmission; incubation period 4-6 wk
- diagnosed by elevated transaminases, positive anti-HAV IgM
- in children: characteristically asymptomatic
- in adults: fatigue, nausea, arthralgia, fever, jaundice

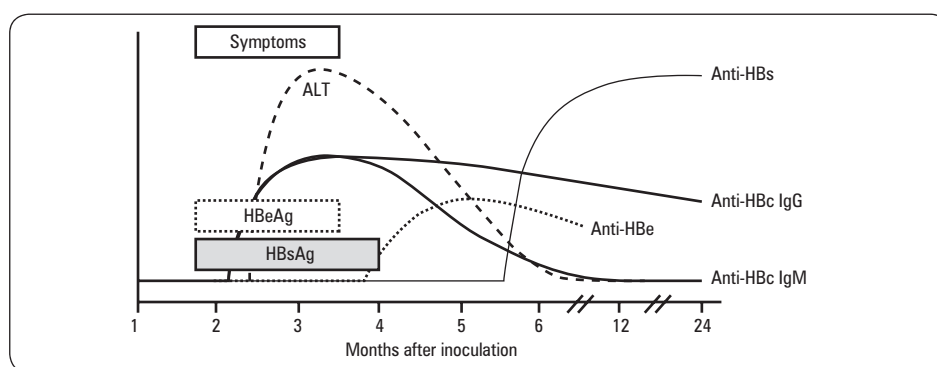
- can cause acute liver failure and subsequent death (<1-5%)
- can relapse, but never becomes chronic

Hepatitis B Virus

Table 15. Hepatitis B Serology

	HBsAg	Anti-HBs	HBeAg	Anti-HBe	Anti-HBc	Liver Enzymes
Acute HBV	+	–	+	–	IgM	
Chronic (e-Ag positive) HBV (generally high HBV DNA)	+	–	+	–	IgG	ALT, AST elevated
Chronic (e-Ag negative) HBV (generally low HBV DNA)	+	–	–	+	IgG	ALT, AST normal
Resolved infection	–	±	–	±	IgG	
Immunization	–	+	–	–	–	

Figure 12. Time course of acute hepatitis B infection



Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in HBV increases with increasing age, which is likely a surrogate for increasing liver fibrosis/cirrhosis

Risk of hepatocellular carcinoma in HCV increases only after cirrhosis develops

Epidemiology

- 4 phases of chronic hepatitis B: not all will go through all 4 phases, but all will have positive HBsAg
 1. **immune tolerance:** extremely high HBV-DNA (>20,000 IU/mL), HBeAg positive, but normal ALT/AST; due to little immune control and minimal immune-mediated liver damage; characteristic of perinatal infection (or 'incubation period' in adult with newly acquired HBV)
 2. **immune clearance** (or immunoactive): falling but still elevated HBV-DNA levels (>20,000 IU/mL), HBeAg positive; due to immune attack on the virus and immune-mediated liver damage; characterized by progressive disease without treatment and increasing liver fibrosis (sometimes progressing to cirrhosis and/or hepatocellular carcinoma); likely to benefit from treatment
 3. **immune control:** lower HBV-DNA (<20,000 IU/mL), HBeAg negative, anti-HBe positive, ALT/AST normal; due to immune control without immune-mediated liver damage; risk of reactivation to phase 2 (clinically resembles acute hepatitis B), especially with immunosuppression e.g. corticosteroids or chemotherapy
 4. **immune escape** ("core or precore mutant"): elevated HBV-DNA (>2,000 IU/mL), HBeAg negative because of pre-core or core promoter gene mutation, anti-HBe positive, ALT/AST high; characterized by progressive disease without treatment and increasing liver fibrosis (sometimes progressing to cirrhosis and/or hepatocellular carcinoma); likely to benefit from treatment

Management

- counseling: 40% of men and 10% of women with perinatal infection will die from HBV-related complications
- prolonged immune-mediated damage leads to higher risk of liver fibrosis
- hepatocellular carcinoma screening with ultrasound q6mo, especially if high serum HBV-DNA levels, cirrhosis, men, (age >40 in Asian men, >50 in Asian women, and >20 in African descent)
- consider pharmacological therapy if
 1. HBeAg positive + HBV-DNA >20,000 IU/mL + elevated ALT; or
 2. HBeAg negative + HBV-DNA >2,000 IU/mL + elevated ALT ± stage ≥2 fibrosis on liver biopsy
 3. treat to *prevent* flare when placed on immunosuppressive therapy such as prednisone
- treatment goal: reduce serum HBV-DNA to undetectable level



Without treatment, 8-20% of those with ongoing immunoactive chronic hepatitis can develop cirrhosis within 5 yr. In contrast, those in the immune tolerant phase (with extremely high HBV-DNA levels) are at minimal risk for liver fibrosis as they do not have immune-mediated liver injury.



In acute hepatitis B, HDV co-infection increases severity of hepatitis but does not increase risk of progression to chronic hepatitis. However in the context of chronic hepatitis B, superinfection with HDV increases progression to cirrhosis.

- treatment options: interferon, tenofovir, entacavir, lamivudine, adefovir
- vaccinate against HAV if serology negative (to prevent further liver damage)
- follow blood and sexual precautions

Hepatitis D

- defective RNA virus requiring HBsAg for entry into hepatocyte, therefore infects only patients with hepatitis B; causes more aggressive disease than hepatitis B virus alone
- co-infection: acquire HDV and HBV at the same time
 - better prognosis than superinfection (acute HDV infection on pre-existing HBV infection)
- HDV can present as ALF and/or accelerate progression to cirrhosis
- management: low-dose interferon (20% response) and liver transplant for end-stage disease

Hepatitis C Virus



- RNA virus
- blood-borne transmission; sexual transmission is "inefficient"
- major risk factor: injection drug use
- other risk factors: blood transfusion received before 1992 (or received in developing world), tattoos, intranasal cocaine use
- clinical manifestation develops 6-8 wk after exposure
 - symptoms mild and vague (fatigue, malaise, nausea) therefore not commonly diagnosed in acute stage

Diagnosis

- suspected on basis of elevated ALT/AST and positive serum anti-HCV
- diagnosis established by detectable HCV-RNA in serum
- virus genotype correlates with response to treatment but not prognosis
 - serum HCV-RNA inversely correlates with response to treatment
- normal transaminases can have underlying cirrhosis on biopsy, but otherwise excellent prognosis

Management

- blood-borne precautions; vaccinate for hepatitis A and B if serology negative; avoid alcohol
- clearest indication for treatment is in subgroup likely to develop clinically significant liver disease
 - persistently elevated transaminases, liver biopsy shows fibrosis/cirrhosis and at least moderately severe necrosis/inflammation
- indicators of poor response to treatment: cirrhosis, genotype 1, high HCV-RNA, co-infection with HIV, African-American race
- pegylated interferon- α + ribavirin aims to clear HCV infection, but only 50-80% success rate and side effects common (therefore not all patients are treated)
 - sustained virologic response (SVR) = undetectable HCV-RNA 3-6 mo off treatment (which generally means that HCV has been successfully eradicated) = "cure"
 - pegylated interferon- α SC injection weekly and ribavirin PO bid and add proteinase inhibitor PO (bocepravir or telapravir) for genotype 1
- length of treatment often determined by rapidity and degree of fall in HCV RNA level
- adverse effects: depression/fatigue, hemolysis, bone marrow suppression (monitor CBC regularly), fevers/myalgia, precipitates autoimmune diseases (rare), skin rashes
- recently introduced proteinase inhibitors for genotype 1 (most common, least amenable to treatment) have significantly increased sustained remission rate to up to 70%
- interferon-free regimens using combinations (>2) of oral anti-viral drugs have shown high efficacy and will likely be the mainstay of treatment in future years



HCV treatment lowers the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma

Prognosis

- 80% of acute hepatitis C become chronic (of these 20% evolve to cirrhosis)
- risk of hepatocellular carcinoma increases if cirrhotic
- can cause cryoglobulinemia; associated with membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, lymphoma



Risk Factors for Progression

- EtOH
- HIV co-infection
- Old age at diagnosis

Table 16. Characteristics of the Viral Hepatitis

	HAV	HBV	HCV	HDV	HEV	CMV	EBV	Yellow Fever
Virus Family	<i>Picornaviridae</i>	<i>Hepadnaviridae</i>	<i>Flaviviridae</i>	<i>Deltaviridae</i>	<i>Caliciviridae</i>	<i>Herpesviridae</i>	<i>Herpesviridae</i>	<i>Flavivirus</i>
Genome	RNA	DNA	RNA	RNA	RNA	DNA	RNA	RNA
Envelope	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Transmission	Fecal-oral	Parenteral/sexual or equivalent Vertical	Parenteral /sexual (transfusion, IVDU, sexual [$<$ HBV]) 40% have no known risk factors	Non-parenteral (close contact in endemic areas) Parenteral (blood products, IVDU)-sexual transmission is inefficient	Fecal-oral (endemic: Africa, Asia, central America, India, Pakistan)	Close contacts, most body fluids	Saliva-oral	Vector
Incubation	4-6 wk	6 wk-6 mo	2-26 wk	3-13 wk	2-8 wk	20-60 d	30-50 d	3-6 d
Onset	Usually abrupt	Usually insidious	Insidious	Usually abrupt	Usually abrupt	Variable	Variable	Usually abrupt
Commun-icability	2-3 wk in late incubation to early clinical phase Acute hepatitis in most adults, 10% of children	HBsAg + state highly communicable Increased during third trimester or early post-partum	Communicable prior to overt symptoms and throughout chronic illness	Infectious only in presence of HBV (HBsAg required for replication)	Unknown	Variable – dormant or persistent	Communicable highest during year after primary infection but never zero	Variable, vector-dependent
Chronicity	None, although can relapse	5% adults, 90% infants	80%, 20% of which develop cirrhosis	5%	None	Common; latent	Common; latent	Infection confers lifelong immunity
Serology	Anti-HAV (IgM)	See Table 15	HCV-RNA Anti-HCV (IgG/IgM)	HBsAg Anti-HDV (IgG/IgM)	Anti-HEV (IgG/IgM)	Anti- CMV (IgM/IgG)	Monospot; anti-EBV IgM/IgG, EBV DNA quantitation	Anti-YF (IgM/IgG)
Immunity	Yes	Yes	?	Yes	?	?	?	Yes
Vaccine	Havrix, 2 doses q6mo, combined with Twinrix at 0, 7, and 21 d	Recombivax HBTM, age 11-15, 2 doses q6mo	No	No	No	No	No	YF-VAX, 1 dose booster q10yr
Management	General hygiene Treat close contacts (anti-HAV Ig) Prophylaxis for high-risk groups (HAV vaccine \pm HAV Ig) unless immune	Prevention: HBV vaccine and/or hepatitis B Ig (HBIG) for needlestick, sexual contact, infants of infected mothers unless already immune Rx: oral antivirals vs. interferon if indications met	Prevention: no vaccine Rx: IFN + ribavirin + protease inhibitor; possibility of interferon-free regimens in near future	Prevention: HBV vaccine	Prevention: general hygiene, no vaccine	In high risk transplant patients: CMV IG and anti-virals (ganciclovir, valganciclovir)	Supportive treatment post infection	Prevention Supportive treatment post infection
Acute Mortality	0.1-0.3%	0.5-2%	1%	2-20% coinfection with HBV, 30% superinfection Predisposes HBV carriers to more severe hepatitis and faster progression to cirrhosis	1-2% overall, 10-20% in pregnancy	Rare in immunocompetent adults	Rare	20-60% in developing countries
Oncogenicity	No	Yes	Yes	?	No	No	Yes	No
Complications	Can cause acute liver failure and subsequent death ($<$ 1-5%)	Hepatocellular carcinoma secondary to cirrhosis, serum sickness-like syndrome, glomerulonephritis, cryoglobulinemia, polyarteritis nodosa, porphyria cutanea tarda	Hepatocellular carcinoma in 2-5% of cirrhosis per yr, cryoglobulinemia, B-cell non-Hodgkin lymphoma	Leukocytoclastic vasculitis, membranous glomerulonephropathy	Mild, except in third trimester (10-20% fulminant liver failure)	5% of newborns with multiple handicaps Immunocompromised patients at risk of CMV-induced hepatitis, retinitis, colitis, esophagitis, pneumonitis	Associated with Burkitt's lymphoma and nasopharyngeal carcinoma (rare in Western world)	Can cause a recurrent toxic phase with liver damage, GI bleeding, and high mortality rates

Autoimmune Chronic Active Hepatitis

- diagnosis of exclusion: rule out viruses, drugs, metabolic, or genetic causes
- can be severe: 40% mortality at 6 mo without treatment
- extrahepatic manifestations
 - sicca, Raynaud's, thyroiditis, Sjögren's, arthralgias
 - hypergammaglobulinemia
 - ♦ anti-smooth muscle antibody elevation is most characteristic; also elevations in
 - ♦ anti-LKM (liver kidney microsome, especially in children)
 - less specific: elevated ANA, RF
 - ♦ can have false positive viral serology (especially anti-HCV)
 - ♦ biopsy – periportal (zone 1) and interface inflammation and necrosis

- management: corticosteroids (80% respond) \pm azathioprine (without this, most will relapse as corticosteroids are withdrawn)

Drug-Induced Liver Disease

Table 17. Classification of Hepatotoxins

	Direct	Indirect
Example	Acetaminophen, CCl ₄	Phenytoin, INH
Dose-Dependence	Usual	Unusual
Latent Period	Hours-days	Weeks-months
Host Factors	Not important	Very important
Predictable	Yes	No (idiosyncratic)



Hy's Law: drug-induced hepatocellular jaundice indicates a mortality of at least 10%

Specific Drugs

- acetaminophen
 - metabolized by hepatic cytochrome P450 system
 - can cause ALF (transaminases >1,000 U/L followed by jaundice and encephalopathy)
 - requires 10-15 g in healthy, 4-6 g in alcoholics/anticonvulsant users
 - mechanism: high acetaminophen dose saturates glucuronidation and sulfation elimination pathways \rightarrow reactive metabolite is formed \rightarrow covalently binds to hepatocyte membrane
 - presentation
 - first 24 h: N/V (usually within 4-12 h of overdose)
 - 24-48 h: asymptomatic, but ongoing hepatic necrosis resulting in increased transaminases
 - >48 h: continued hepatic necrosis possibly complicated with ALF or resolution
 - note: potential delay in presentation in sustained-release products
 - blood levels of acetaminophen correlate with the severity of hepatic injury, particularly if time of ingestion known
 - therapy
 - gastric lavage/emesis (if <2 h after ingestion)
 - oral activated charcoal
 - N-acetylcysteine (NAC, Mucomyst®) can be given PO or IV (most effective within 8-10 h of ingestion, but should be given no matter when time of ingestion)
 - promotes hepatic glutathione regeneration
 - no recorded fatal outcomes if NAC given before increase in transaminases
- chlorpromazine: cholestasis in 1% after 4 wk; often with fever, rash, jaundice, pruritus, and eosinophilia
- INH (isoniazid)
 - 20% develop elevated transaminases but <1% develop clinically significant disease
 - susceptibility to injury increases with age
- methotrexate
 - causes fibrosis/cirrhosis; increased risk in the presence of obesity, DM, alcoholism (i.e. with underlying risk for pre-existing fatty liver)
 - scarring develops without symptoms or changes in liver enzymes, therefore biopsy may be needed in long-term treatment
- amiodarone: can cause same histology and clinical outcome as alcoholic hepatitis
- others: azoles, statins, methyl dopa, phenytoin, propylthiouracil (PTU), rifampin, sulfonamides, tetracyclines
- herbs: chaparral, Chinese herbs (e.g. germander, comfrey, bush tea)

Wilson's Disease



Definition

- autosomal recessive defect in copper metabolism (gene ATP7B)

Pathology

- decreased biliary excretion of copper plus decreased incorporation of copper into ceruloplasmin

Clinical Manifestations

- liver: acute hepatitis, acute liver failure, chronic active hepatitis, cirrhosis, low risk of hepatocellular carcinoma
- eyes: Kayser-Fleischer rings (copper deposits in Descemet's membrane); more common in patients with CNS involvement, present in 50% if only liver involvement
- CNS: basal ganglia (wing flapping tremor, Parkinsonism), cerebellum (dysarthria, dysphagia, incoordination, ataxia), cerebrum (psychosis, affective disorder)
- kidneys: Fanconi's syndrome (proximal tubule transport defects) and stones



Clinical Manifestations of Wilson's Disease

ABCD

Asterixis

Basal ganglia degeneration: suspect if parkinsonian features in the young

Ceruloplasmin \downarrow

Cirrhosis

Corneal deposits (Kayser-Fleischer ring)

Copper

Dementia

- blood: intravascular hemolysis; may be initial presentation in fulminant hepatitis
- joints: arthritis, bone demineralization, calcifications

Investigations

- suspect if increased liver enzymes with clinical manifestations at young age (<30); especially combination of liver disease with dystonia, psychiatric symptoms
- screening tests
 1. reduced serum ceruloplasmin (<50% of normal)
 2. Kayser-Fleischer rings (usually require slit-lamp examination)
 3. increased urinary copper excretion
- gold standard
 1. increased copper on liver biopsy by quantitative assay
 2. genetic analysis imperfect as many mutations in ATP7B are possible

Treatment

- 4 drugs available
 1. penicillamine chelates copper, poorly tolerated
 2. trientine chelates copper
 3. zinc impairs copper excretion in stool/decreases copper absorption from gut
 4. tetrathiomolybdate preferred if neurological involvement
- screen relatives
- liver transplant in severe cases

Hemochromatosis



Definition

- excessive iron storage causing multiorgan system dysfunction (liver, in particular) with total body stores of iron increased to 20-40 g (normal 1 g)

Pathology

- primary hemochromatosis
 - primarily due to common recessive gene (HFE, 5%); 1/400 patients are homozygotes
 - results in ongoing gut absorption of iron despite adequate iron stores
- secondary hemochromatosis
 - parenteral iron overload (e.g. transfusions)
 - chronic hemolytic anemia: thalassemia, pyruvate kinase deficiency
 - excessive iron intake



Gene mutation not 100% penetrant, so not all with homozygous gene defect have clinically significant iron overload

Clinical Manifestations

- usually presents with trivial elevation in serum transaminases
- liver: cirrhosis (30%), HCC (200x increased risk) – most common cause of death (1/3 of patients)
- pancreas: DM, chronic pancreatitis
- skin: bronze or gray (due to melanin, not iron)
- heart: dilated cardiomyopathy
- pituitary: hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (impotence, decreased libido, amenorrhea)
- joints: arthralgia (any joint, but especially MCP joints), chondrocalcinosis

Investigations

- screening for individuals with clinical features and/or family history (1/4 chance of sibling having the disease)
 - transferrin saturation (free Fe²⁺/TIBC) >45%
 - serum ferritin >400 ng/mL
 - HFE gene analysis: 90% of primary hemochromatosis involves C282Y allele, while H63D and S65C alleles also commonly involved and screened
- liver biopsy (generally used to detect cirrhosis or if potential for other causes of liver disease)
 - markers of advanced fibrosis: if any of the following are present at the time of diagnosis → age >40, elevated liver enzymes, or ferritin >1000
 - considered if compound heterozygote and potential other cause of liver injury (e.g. fatty liver, etc.)
 - if C282Y/C282Y and no markers of advanced fibrosis, then biopsy generally not needed
- HCC screening if cirrhosis

Treatment

- phlebotomy: weekly or q2wk then lifelong maintenance phlebotomies q2-6mo
- deferoxamine if phlebotomy contraindicated (e.g. cardiomyopathy, anemia)
- primary hemochromatosis responds well to phlebotomy
- secondary hemochromatosis usually requires chelation therapy (administration of agents that bind and sequester iron, and then excreted)



Ferritin may never normalize if other causes of high ferritin present (e.g. fatty liver from metabolic syndrome or alcohol)

Prognosis

- normal life expectancy if treated before the development of cirrhosis or DM

Alcoholic Liver Disease

Definition

- fatty liver (all alcoholics): always reversible if alcohol stopped
- alcoholic hepatitis (35% of alcoholics): usually reversible if alcohol stopped
- cirrhosis (10-15% of alcoholics): potentially irreversible

Pathology

- several mechanisms, poorly understood
- ethanol oxidation to acetaldehyde
 - reduces NAD^+ to NADH; increased NADH decreases ATP supply to liver, impairing lipolysis so fatty acids and triglycerides accumulate in liver
 - binds to hepatocytes evoking an immune reaction
- ethanol increases gut permeability leading to increased bacterial translocation
- alcohol metabolism causes
 - relative hypoxia in liver zone III > zone I
 - necrosis and hepatic vein sclerosis
- histology of alcoholic hepatitis
 - ballooned (swollen) hepatocytes often containing Mallory bodies, characteristically surrounded by neutrophils
 - large fat globules
 - fibrosis: space of Disse and perivenular

Clinical Manifestation

- >2-3 standard drinks/d in females and >3-6 standard drinks/d in men for >10 yr leads to cirrhosis, but only in about 10 to 20% of those who consume this amount daily on a continuous basis; cirrhosis risk increases with amount of alcohol consumed above threshold
- clinical findings do not accurately predict type of liver involvement
- fatty liver
 - mildly tender hepatomegaly; jaundice rare
 - mildly increased transaminases <5x normal
- alcoholic hepatitis
 - variable severity: mild to fatal liver failure
 - mild: stops drinking because feels unwell, resumes when feeling better (if assessed, findings of hepatitis, potentially mild jaundice and mildly elevated INR)
 - severe: stops drinking but feels unwell, low grade fever, RUQ discomfort, increased white blood cell count – mimics RLL pneumonia and cholecystitis

Investigations

- blood tests are non-specific, but in general:
 - AST:ALT >2:1 (usually <300)
 - increased GGT
 - CBC: increased MCV (mean corpuscular volume), increased WBC

Treatment

- alcohol cessation (see [Psychiatry, PS19](#))
 - Alcoholics Anonymous, disulfiram, naltrexone, acamprosate
- multivitamin supplements (especially thiamine)
- caution with drugs metabolized by the liver
- prednisone 40 mg OD x 28 d (taper over 2-4 wk) in subgroup with elevated bilirubin and INR, or if encephalopathy; but contraindicated in GI bleeding, renal failure, infection, pancreatitis
 - response (and subsequent decision to continue treatment) predicted by day 7 bilirubin (Lille score)
- pentoxifylline decreases TNF, shown in one trial to reduce death, albeit only from renal failure; favorable side-effect profile

Prognosis

- prognosis: Maddrey's discriminant function (based on PT and bilirubin) predicts mortality
- fatty liver: complete resolution with cessation of alcohol intake
- alcoholic hepatitis mortality
 - immediate: 30%-60% in the first 6 mo if severe
 - with continued alcohol: 70% in 5 yr
 - with cessation: 30% in 5 yr

**Standard Drink Equivalent**

1 standard drink = 14 g EtOH
 = 12 oz beer (5% alcohol)
 = 5 oz wine (12-17%)
 = 3 oz fortified wine (17-22%)
 = 1.5 oz liquor (40%)

Tip: percentage alcohol multiplied by oz roughly equals 60

**Biopsy + Histology of Alcoholic Hepatitis (triad)**

- Hepatocyte necrosis with surrounding inflammation in zone III
- Mallory bodies (intracellular eosinophilic aggregates of cytokeratins)
- Chicken-wire fibrosis (network of intralobular connective tissue surrounding cells and venules)

**GI Complications of Alcohol Abuse**

- **Esophagus**
 - Mallory-Weiss tear
 - Esophageal varices (secondary to portal HTN)
- **Stomach**
 - Alcoholic gastritis
- **Pancreas**
 - Acute pancreatitis
 - Chronic pancreatitis
- **Liver**
 - Alcoholic hepatitis
 - Fatty liver
 - Cirrhosis
 - Hepatic encephalopathy
 - Portal HTN (secondary to cirrhosis)
 - Ascites (secondary to cirrhosis)
 - HCC (secondary to cirrhosis)



Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease

Definition

- spectrum of disorders characterized by macrovesicular hepatic steatosis
- most common cause of liver disease in North America

Pathology

- pathogenesis not well elucidated; insulin resistance implicated as key mechanism, leading to hepatic steatosis
- changes indistinguishable from those of alcoholic hepatitis despite negligible history of alcohol consumption

Risk Factors

- likely a component of the metabolic syndrome along with type 2 DM, HTN, hypertriglyceridemia
- rapid weight loss or weight gain

Clinical Manifestations

- often asymptomatic
- may present with fatigue, malaise, and vague RUQ discomfort
- elevated serum triglyceride/cholesterol levels and insulin resistance

Investigations

- elevated serum AST, ALT \pm ALP; AST/ALT <1
- presents as echogenic liver texture on ultrasound
- liver biopsy diagnostic, but often necessary only for prognosis

Treatment

- no proven effective therapy other than gradual weight loss
- some evidence for vitamin E (800 U daily) in select groups
 - pioglitazone can be considered if DM concomitantly present, but results in weight gain
- modification of risk factors is generally recommended, especially gradual weight reduction
- optimization of therapy for DM, hyperlipidemia, HTN

Prognosis

- most die from cardiovascular or cerebrovascular disease
- better prognosis than alcoholic hepatitis
 - $<25\%$ progress to cirrhosis over a 7-10 yr period
- risk of progression increases if inflammation or scarring occurs alongside fat infiltration (non-alcoholic steatohepatitis)
- other clinical indicators of unfavorable prognosis: DM, age, metabolic syndrome

Acute Liver Failure (formerly Fulminant Hepatic Failure)

Definition

- severe decline in liver function characterized by coagulation abnormality (INR >1.5) and encephalopathy
- in setting of previously normal liver
- rapid (<26 wk duration)

Pathology

- drugs (especially acetaminophen), hepatitis B (measure IgM anti-HBc because sometimes HBV-DNA and even HBsAg rapidly becomes negative), hepatitis A, hepatitis C (rare), ischemic, idiopathic

Treatment

- correct hypoglycemia, monitor level of consciousness, prevent GI bleeding with PPI, monitor for infection and multiorgan failure (usually requires ICU)
- consider liver biopsy before INR becomes too high
- chief value is to exclude chronic disease, less helpful for prognosis
- liver transplant (King's College criteria can be used as prognostic indicator): consider early, especially if time from jaundice to encephalopathy >7 d (e.g. not extremely rapid), age <10 or >40 , cause is drug or unknown, bilirubin >17.5 mg/dL, INR >3.5 , creatinine >2.6 mg/dL

Cirrhosis

Definition

- liver damage characterized by diffuse distortion of the basic architecture and replacement with scar tissue and formation of regenerative nodules
- Stage 1 cirrhosis is compensated and asymptomatic, can last for 10-20 yr with almost normal life expectancy
- Stage 2 cirrhosis is the onset of first decompensation, typically development of ascites (most common), variceal bleeding, encephalopathy

Pathology

- fatty liver (alcohol, non-alcoholic fatty liver disease)
- chronic viral hepatitis (B, B+D, C; not A or E)
- autoimmune hepatitis
- hemochromatosis
- primary biliary cirrhosis
- chronic hepatic congestion
 - cardiac cirrhosis (chronic right heart failure, constrictive pericarditis)
 - hepatic vein thrombosis (Budd-Chiari)
- cryptogenic (i.e. no identifiable cause, although many of these patients may represent "burnt-out NASH")
- rare: Wilson's disease, Gaucher's disease, α 1-antitrypsin deficiency

Investigations

- definitive diagnosis is histologic (liver biopsy)
- other tests may be suggestive:
 - blood work: fall in platelet count <150 is the earliest finding, followed many yr later with rise in INR, fall in albumin, rise in bilirubin, fall in glucose level (pre-terminal event; see Figure 13)
 - FibroTest: combination of various clinical and biochemical markers that can predict degree of fibrosis
 - imaging
 - ♦ U/S is the primary imaging modality but only finds advanced cirrhosis
 - ♦ CT to look for varices, nodular liver texture, splenomegaly, ascites
 - ♦ FibroScan: non-invasive tool using elastography (variable availability)
 - gastroscopy: varices or portal gastropathy

Treatment

- treat underlying disorder
- decrease insults (e.g. alcohol cessation, hepatotoxic drugs, immunize for Hep A and B if non-immune)
- follow patient for complications (esophageal varices, ascites, HCC defines stage 2 cirrhosis)
- prognosis: Child-Pugh Score and MELD score
- liver transplantation for end-stage disease if no alcohol for >6 mo; use MELD score

Table 18. Child-Pugh Score and Interpretation

Classification	1	2	3
Serum bilirubin (mg/dL)	<2	2-3	>3
Serum albumin (g/dL)	>3.5	2.8-3.5	<2.8
INR	<1.7	1.7-2.3	>2.3
Presence of ascites	Absent	Controllable	Refractory
Encephalopathy	Absent	Minimal	Severe
Interpretation			
Points	Class	Life Expectancy	Perioperative Mortality
5-6	A	15-50 yr	10%
7-9	B	Candidate for transplant	30%
10-15	C	1-3 mo	82%
Score: 5-6 (Child's A), 7-9 (Child's B), 10-15 (Child's C)			

*Note: Child's classification is rarely used for shunting, but is still useful to quantitate the severity of cirrhosis



Fibrosis may regress and disappear if cause of liver injury is treated or resolves



Usual causes of death in cirrhosis: renal failure (hepatorenal syndrome), sepsis, GI bleed, or HCC

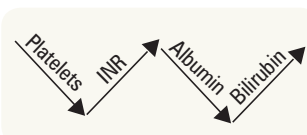


Figure 13. Progression of liver dysfunction based on liver function tests – the "W"



MELD (Model for End Stage Liver Disease)

- Predicts 3-mo survival and used to stratify patients on transplant list
- Based on creatinine, INR, and total bilirubin

Complications

- hematologic changes in cirrhosis
 - pancytopenia from hypersplenism: platelets first, then WBC, then hemoglobin
 - decreased clotting factors resulting in elevated INR
 - relationship of INR to bleeding tendency is controversial; some patients may be hypocoagulable, others may be hypercoagulable
- variceal bleeds
 - half of patients with cirrhosis have gastroesophageal varices and one-third of these develop hemorrhage with an overall mortality of >30%
 - hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG) ≥ 10 mmHg is the strongest predictor of variceal development
 - management: resuscitation, antibiotic prophylaxis, vasoactive drugs (e.g. octreotide IV) combined with endoscopic band ligation or sclerotherapy, TIPS
- renal failure in cirrhosis
 - classifications
 - ♦ pre-renal (usually due to over-diuresis)
 - ♦ acute tubular necrosis (ATN)
 - ♦ hepatorenal syndrome (HRS)
 - Type I: sudden and acute renal failure (rapid doubling of creatinine over 2 wk)
 - Type II: gradual increase in creatinine with worsening liver function (creatinine doubling over years)
 - ♦ HRS can occur at any time in severe liver disease, especially after:
 - overdiuresis or dehydration, such as diarrhea, vomiting, etc.
 - GI bleed
 - sepsis
 - ♦ treatment for hepatorenal syndrome (generally unsuccessful at improving long-term survival)
 - for type I HRS: octreotide + midodrine + albumin (increases renal blood flow by increasing systemic vascular resistance)
 - definitive treatment is liver transplant
- hepatopulmonary syndrome
 - majority of cases due to cirrhosis, though can be due to other chronic liver diseases, such as non-cirrhotic portal HTN
 - thought to arise from ventilation-perfusion mismatch, intrapulmonary shunting and limitation of oxygen diffusion, failure of damaged liver to clear circulating pulmonary vasodilators vs. production of a vasodilating substance by the liver
 - clinical features
 - ♦ hyperdynamic circulation with cardiac output >7 L/min at rest and decreased pulmonary + systemic resistance (intrapulmonary shunting)
 - ♦ dyspnea, platypnea (increase in dyspnea in upright position, improved by recumbency) and orthodeoxia (desaturation in the upright position, improved by recumbency),
 - ♦ diagnosis via contrast-enhanced echocardiography: inject air bubbles into peripheral vein; air bubbles appear in left ventricle after third heartbeat (normal = no air bubbles; in ventricular septal defect, air bubbles seen <3 heart beats)
 - ♦ only proven treatment is liver transplantation



Cirrhosis Complications

VARICES

Varices
Anemia
Renal failure
Infection
Coagulopathy
Encephalopathy
Sepsis



Hepatorenal Syndrome vs. Pre-renal Failure – difficult to differentiate:

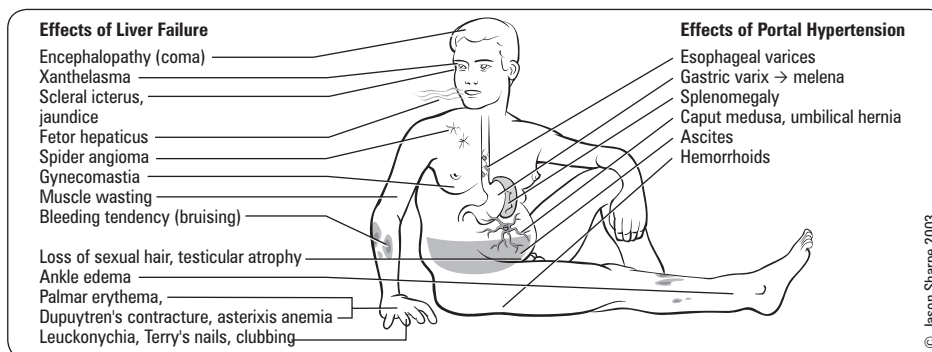
- Similar blood and urine findings, (see [Nephrology](#), NP33)
- Urine sodium: very low in hepatorenal; low in pre-renal
- Intravenous fluid challenge: giving volume expanders improves pre-renal failure, but not hepatorenal syndrome



Hepatopulmonary Syndrome

Clinical triad:

- Liver disease
- Increased alveolar-arterial gradient while breathing room air
- Evidence for intrapulmonary vascular abnormalities



© Jason Sharpe 2003

Figure 14. Clinical features of liver disease

Hepatocellular Carcinoma

- see [General Surgery](#), GS43

Liver Transplantation

- see [General Surgery](#), GS44



Portal Hypertension



Definition

- pressure gradient between hepatic vein pressure and wedged hepatic vein pressure (corrected sinusoidal pressure) >5 mmHg

Pathophysiology

- 3 sites of increased resistance (remember pressure = flow x resistance)
 - pre-sinusoidal (e.g. portal vein thrombosis, schistosomiasis, sarcoidosis)
 - sinusoidal (e.g. cirrhosis, alcoholic hepatitis)
 - post-sinusoidal (e.g. right-sided heart failure, hepatic vein thrombosis, veno-occlusive disease, constrictive pericarditis)

Complications

- GI bleeding from varices in esophagus, less commonly in stomach, even less frequently from portal hypertensive gastropathy
- ascites
- hepatic encephalopathy
- thrombocytopenia
- renal dysfunction
- sepsis
- arterial hypoxemia

Management

- non-selective β -blockers (propranolol, nadolol) decrease risk of bleeding from varices
- TIPS: to decrease portal venous pressure
 - shunt between portal and hepatic vein via transjugular vein catheterization and percutaneous puncture of portal vein
 - can be used to stop acute bleeding or prevent rebleeding or treat ascites
 - shunt usually remains open for <1 yr
 - complications: hepatic encephalopathy, deterioration of hepatic function
 - contraindicated with severe liver dysfunction
 - most commonly used as a "bridge" to liver transplant
- other surgically created shunts (rare): portacaval, distal spleno-renal (Warren shunt)



Portal Hypertension

Signs

- Esophageal varices
- Melena
- Splenomegaly
- Ascites
- Hemorrhoids

Management

- β -blockers
- Nitrates
- Shunts (e.g. TIPS)

Hepatic Encephalopathy



Definition

- spectrum of potentially reversible neuropsychiatric syndromes secondary to liver disease diagnosed after ruling out other causes for symptoms (e.g. structural/metabolic)

Pathophysiology

- portosystemic shunt around hepatocytes and decreased hepatocellular function increase level of systemic toxins (believed to be ammonia from gut, mercaptans, fatty acids, amino acids) which go to the brain

Precipitating Factors

- nitrogen load (GI bleed, protein load from food intake, renal failure, constipation)
- drugs (narcotics, CNS depressants)
- electrolyte disturbance (hypokalemia, alkalosis, hypoxia, hypovolemia)
- infection (spontaneous bacterial peritonitis)
- deterioration in hepatic function or superimposed liver disease

Stages

- I: apathy, restlessness, reversal of sleep-wake cycle, slowed intellect, impaired computational abilities, impaired handwriting
- II: asterixis, lethargy, drowsiness, disorientation
- III: stupor (rousable), hyperactive reflexes, extensor plantar responses
- IV: coma (response to painful stimuli only)

Investigations

- clinical diagnosis: supported by laboratory findings and exclusion of other neuropsychiatric diseases
- rule out
 - non-liver-related neuropsychiatric disease in a patient with liver problems (e.g. alcohol withdrawal or intoxication, sedatives, subdural hematoma, metabolic encephalopathy)
 - causes of metabolic encephalopathy (e.g. renal failure, respiratory failure, severe hyponatremia, hypoglycemia)
- characteristic EEG findings: diffuse (non-focal), slow, high amplitude waves



Precipitating Factors for Hepatic Encephalopathy

HEPATICS

- Hemorrhage in GI tract/Hypokalemia
- Excess dietary protein
- Paracentesis
- Alkalosis/Anemia
- Trauma
- Infection
- Colon surgery
- Sedatives

Treatment

- treat underlying precipitating factors
- decrease generation of nitrogenous compounds
 - decrease dietary protein to 50 g/d; vegetable protein is better tolerated than animal protein
 - lactulose: titrated to achieve 2 to 3 soft stools per day
 - ♦ prevents diffusion of NH_3 (ammonia) from the colon into blood by lowering pH and forming non-diffusible NH_4 (ammonium)
 - ♦ serves as a substrate for incorporation of ammonia by bacteria, promotes growth in bowel lumen of bacteria which produce minimal ammonia
 - ♦ also acts as a laxative to eliminate nitrogen-producing bacteria from colon
- if inadequate response with lactulose may try antibiotics
 - broad-spectrum antibiotics (metronidazole, rifaximin) eliminate ammonia producing bacteria from bowel lumen
 - non-absorbable antibiotic rifaximin probably most effective treatment
- best acute treatment in comatose patient is lactulose enemas

Ascites

Definition

- accumulation of excess fluid in the peritoneal cavity

Etiology

Table 19. Serum-Ascites Albumin Gradient as an Indicator of the Causes of Ascites

Serum [Alb] – Ascitic [Alb] >11 g/L (1.1 g/dL) Portal Hypertension Related	Serum [Alb] – Ascitic [Alb] <11 g/L (1.1 g/dL) Non-portal Hypertension Related
Cirrhosis/severe hepatitis	Peritoneal carcinomatosis
Chronic hepatic congestion (right heart failure, Budd-Chiari)	TB
Massive liver metastases	Pancreatic disease
Myxedema	Serositis
	Nephrotic syndrome*

* In nephrotic syndrome: decreased serum [Alb] to begin with therefore gradient not helpful

Pathogenesis

- key factor in pathogenesis is increased sodium (and water) retention by the kidney for reasons not fully understood. Theories include:
 - underfill hypothesis: first step in ascites formation is increased portal pressure and low oncotic pressure (e.g. low serum albumin) driving water out of the splanchnic portal circulation into abdominal cavity; the resulting decreased circulating volume causes secondary sodium retention by the kidney
 - overfill hypothesis: cirrhosis directly causes increased sodium retention by the kidney in the absence of hypovolemia and ascites arises secondarily
 - peripheral arterial vasodilation theory (most popular): as portal HTN develops in cirrhosis, production of local mediators such as nitric oxide lead to splanchnic arterial vasodilation which ultimately results in reduction of effective arterial volume and compensatory sodium and fluid retention by the kidneys (i.e. circulation volume is increased, as per overflow hypothesis, but relatively underfilled, as per underfill hypothesis)

Diagnosis

- abdominal ultrasound
- physical exam (clinically detectable when >500 mL)
 - bulging flanks, shifting dullness, fluid-wave test positive
 - most sensitive symptom: ankle swelling

Investigations

- diagnostic paracentesis
 - 1st aliquot: cells and differential
 - 2nd aliquot: chemistry (especially albumin, but also total protein; amylase if pancreatitis; TG and chylomicrons if turbid and suspect chylous ascites)
 - 3rd aliquot: C&S, Gram stain
 - 4th aliquot: cytology (usually positive in peritoneal carcinomatosis)

Treatment

- non-refractory ascites
 - Na^+ restriction (daily sodium intake <2 g)
 - diuretics: spironolactone, furosemide
 - aim for weight loss 0.5-1 kg/d, more if concomitant peripheral edema (which is mobilized quicker than ascitic fluid); overly rapid weight loss increases risk of renal failure
 - double diuretic dose every 2-4 wk to achieve weight loss target
- refractory ascites (treatment with diuretics are inadequate or not tolerated):



Secondary bacterial peritonitis (as opposed to primary bacterial peritonitis) usually results from a perforated viscus or surgical manipulation



Serum Ascites Albumin Gradient (SAAG)

- >1.1 g/dL portal HTN
- <1.1 g/dL unrelated to portal HTN



Primary Prophylaxis of Spontaneous Bacterial Peritonitis Delays Hepatorenal Syndrome and Improves Survival in Cirrhosis

Gastroenterology 2007;133:818-824

Study: RCT, double-blinded study with 1 yr follow-up.

Population: 68 patients with cirrhosis, ascites, ascitic fluid protein <1.5 g/dL, and impaired renal function or severe liver failure.

Intervention: General, regional, or combined anesthesia to patients undergoing a surgical procedure.

Main Outcome: Norfloxacin vs. placebo.

Results: There was a significant reduction of patients developing spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) (6% vs. 30%, $p=0.02$) and spontaneous bacteremia (0% vs. 12%, $p=0.05$) with norfloxacin therapy. There were significantly fewer patients who developed all-cause renal failure (7 vs. 16, $p=0.03$) and hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) with norfloxacin therapy. Probability of survival at 3 mo (94% vs. 62%, $p=0.02$) and 1 yr (60% vs. 48%, $p=0.003$) were high in patients treated with norfloxacin.

Conclusion: Primary prophylaxis with norfloxacin in patients with advanced cirrhosis reduced SBP, HRS, and improved 1 yr survival.

- therapeutic/palliative paracentesis indicated
- IV albumin (not indicated if <5 L removed by paracentesis)
- TIPS in an appropriate patient (no contraindications) with potential transplant-free survival advantage
- liver transplantation should be considered in every case, since development of ascites in patients with cirrhosis are associated with 50% 2 yr mortality

Complication: Primary/Spontaneous Bacterial Peritonitis

- primary/spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP)
 - complicates ascites, but does not cause it (occurs in 10% of cirrhotic ascites); higher risk in patients with GI bleed
 - 1/3 of patients are asymptomatic, thus do not hesitate to do a diagnostic paracentesis in ascites even if no clinical indication of infection
 - fever, chills, abdominal pain, ileus, hypotension, worsening encephalopathy, acute kidney injury
 - Gram-negatives compose 70% of pathogens: *E. coli* (most common), *Streptococcus*, *Klebsiella*
- diagnosis
 - absolute neutrophil count in peritoneal fluid $>0.25 \times 10^9$ cells/L (250 cells/mm³)
 - Gram stain positive in only 10-50% of patients
 - culture positive in <80% of patients (not needed for diagnosis)
- prophylaxis: consider in patients with
 - cirrhosis or GI bleed: ceftriaxone IV daily or norfloxacin bid x 7 d
 - previous episode of SBP: long-term prophylaxis with daily norfloxacin or TMP-SMX
- treatment
 - IV antibiotics (cefotaxime 2 g IV q8h or ceftriaxone 2 g IV daily is the treatment of choice for 5 d; modify if response inadequate or culture shows resistant organisms)
 - IV albumin (1.5 g/kg at time of diagnosis and 1 g/kg on day 3) decreases mortality by lowering risk of acute renal failure

Biliary Tract



Jaundice

- see Table 2, G6 and Figures 15 and 16, G42

Signs and Symptoms

- dark urine, pale stools: suggests that bilirubin elevation is from direct fraction
- pruritus: suggests chronic disease, cholestasis
- abdominal pain: suggests biliary tract obstruction from stone or pancreatic tumor (obstructive jaundice)
- painless jaundice in the elderly: think of pancreatic cancer
- kernicterus: rarely seen in adults due to maturation of blood brain barrier

Investigations

- blood work: CBC, bilirubin (direct and total), liver enzymes (AST, ALT, ALP, GGT), liver function tests (INR/PT, PTT, albumin), amylase
- U/S or CT for evidence of bile duct obstruction (e.g. bile duct dilation)
- direct bile duct visualization
 - magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP): non-invasive
 - endoscopic ultrasound (EUS): sensitive for stones and pancreatic tumors
 - endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP): invasive, most accurate, allows for therapeutic intervention
 - percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography (PTC): if ERCP fails, if obstruction is in liver

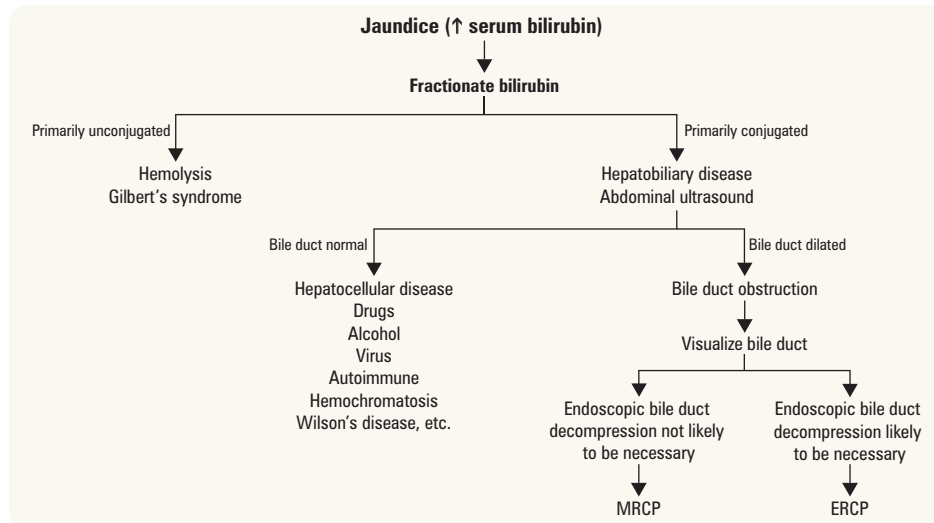


Figure 16. Approach to jaundice

Gilbert's Syndrome

Definition

- mild decrease in glucuronyltransferase activity leading to defective conjugation of bilirubin

Etiology/Epidemiology

- some patients have decreased hepatobiliary uptake
- affects 7% of population, especially males
- autosomal dominant, 70% due to a mutation in the UGT gene

Signs and Symptoms

- presents in teens-20s, often an incidental finding
- only manifestation is intermittent jaundice with increased serum unconjugated bilirubin developing most characteristically while fasting, or at times of acute illness; no other clinical implications

Treatment

- none indicated (entirely benign)

Sclerosing Cholangitis

Definition

- inflammation of biliary tree (intra and/or extrahepatic bile ducts) leading to scarring and lumen obliteration

Etiology

- primary/idiopathic (most common)
 - associated with IBD, more commonly UC, in up to 70% of patients (usually male)
 - one of the most common indications for transplant
- secondary (less common)
 - long-term choledocholithiasis
 - cholangiocarcinoma
 - surgical/traumatic injury (iatrogenic)
 - contiguous inflammatory process
 - post-ERCP
 - associated with HIV/AIDS ("HIV cholangiopathy")
 - IgG4-related disease

Signs and Symptoms

- often insidious, may present with fatigue and pruritus
- may present with signs of episodic bacterial cholangitis secondary to biliary obstruction

Diagnosis

- increased ALP (hallmark), less often increased bilirubin
- mildly increased AST, usually <300 U/L
- p-ANCA (30-80%), elevated IgM (40-50%)

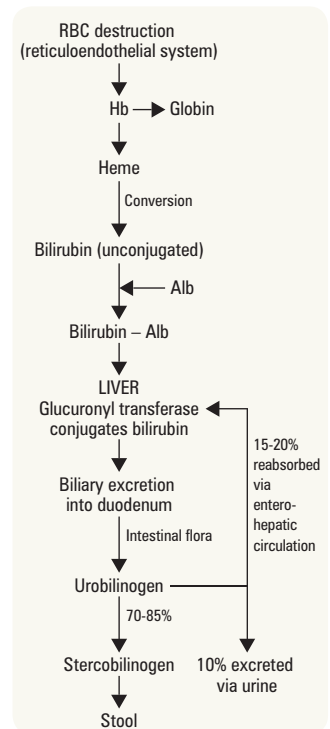


Figure 15. Production and excretion of bilirubin



Gilbert's Syndrome vs. Crigler-Najjar Syndrome

Gilbert's Syndrome: mild decrease in glucuronyltransferase activity

Crigler-Najjar Syndrome: complete deficiency of glucuronyltransferase



ERCP

- Absence of narrowing in PBC
- Narrowing of intra and extrahepatic ducts in PSC

- ERCP shows narrowing and dilatations of bile ducts that may result in "beading", both intrahepatic and extrahepatic bile ducts
 - if intrahepatic narrowing only, do anti-mitochondrial antibody to rule out PBC

Complications

- repeated bouts of cholangitis may lead to complete biliary obstruction with resultant secondary biliary cirrhosis and hepatic failure
- increased incidence of cholangiocarcinoma (10-15%): difficult to diagnose and treat

Management

- image bile duct (MRCP) at least annually for early detection of cholangiocarcinoma (controversial)
- endoscopic sphincterotomy, biliary stent in selected cases of dominant CBD stricture
- antibiotics for cholangitis
- suppurative cholangitis requires emergency drainage of pus in CBD
- liver transplantation appears the best treatment for advanced sclerosing cholangitis (nearly 90% 1 yr survival; mean follow-up from time of diagnosis to need for transplant is 10 yr)
- ursodiol: previously recommended, but studies suggest that at least in high doses it increases mortality

Prognosis

- unfavorable regardless of treatment
- mean survival after diagnosis remains 4-10 yr

Primary Biliary Cirrhosis

Definition

- chronic inflammation and fibrous obliteration of intrahepatic bile ductules

Etiology/Epidemiology

- likely autoimmune (associated with Sjögren's syndrome, scleroderma, CREST syndrome, RA, thyroiditis)
- affects mainly middle-aged women (M:F = 1:9)

Signs and Symptoms

- often asymptomatic
- initial symptoms: pruritus, fatigue
- chronic: jaundice and melanosis (darkening skin) and other signs of cholestasis
- end-stage: hepatocellular failure, portal HTN, ascites
- high incidence of osteoporosis

Investigations

- increased ALP, GGT; bilirubin rises in later stage
- positive anti-mitochondrial antibodies (AMA; 95% specificity and sensitivity)
- increased serum cholesterol (mild increase in LDL, larger increase in HDL)
 - may have: xanthelasmas, xanthomas
- liver biopsy confirms diagnosis and stages severity
- normal bile duct on MRCP rules out bile duct obstruction which can mimic PBC
- recently described "overlap" syndromes with autoimmune cholangitis, autoimmune hepatitis, sclerosing cholangitis

Clinical Course

- can be fatal, although not all asymptomatic patients show progression

Treatment

- treat with ursodiol (less frequently colchicine, methotrexate)
- cholestyramine (for pruritus and hypercholesterolemia)
- calcium and vitamin D for low bone density; bisphosphonates if osteoporosis severe
- monitor for thyroid disease
- liver transplant if disease severe, progressive

Table 20. Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis vs. Primary Biliary Cirrhosis

	Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis	Primary Biliary Cirrhosis
Predominant Gender	Male	Female
Associated Comorbidities	IBD, especially UC	Other autoimmune disorders (Sjögren's, CREST, RA)
Affected Ducts	Both intra- and extra-hepatic	Intrahepatic only
Investigations	ERCP/MRCP (narrowing and dilatations of ducts visualized)	Anti-mitochondrial antibodies, IgM, increased lipids, liver biopsy (absence of duct narrowing on ERCP)

Secondary Biliary Cirrhosis

Definition

- cirrhosis from prolonged partial or total obstruction of major bile ducts

Etiology

- acquired: post-operative strictures, chronic pancreatitis, sclerosing cholangitis, stone in bile duct
- congenital: CF, congenital biliary atresia, choledochal cysts

Diagnosis

- cholangiography and liver biopsy

Treatment

- treat obstruction, give antibiotics for cholangitis prophylaxis

Biliary Colic, Cholecystitis

- see [General Surgery](#), GS46



Ascending Cholangitis

- see [General Surgery](#), GS48



Definition

- infection of the biliary tree

Etiology

- stasis in the biliary tract due to obstruction or stricture (usually from previous cholecystectomy)
- infection originates in the duodenum or spreads hematogenously from the portal vein
- bacteria
 - *E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Enterobacter*, *Enterococcus*
 - co-infection with *Bacteroides* and *Clostridia* can occur

Signs and Symptoms

- Charcot's triad: fever, RUQ pain, jaundice (50-70%)
- Reynold's Pentad in patients with suppurative cholangitis: fever, RUQ pain, jaundice, hypotension, altered mental status

Diagnosis

- increased WBC
- usually increased ALP and bilirubin, ALT variably elevated
- blood culture
- abdominal U/S: CBD dilation, stones

Treatment

- most important is drainage, ideally via ERCP, but if necessary by percutaneous biliary or surgical routes
- antibiotic therapy: broad spectrum to cover Gram-negatives, *Enterococcus*, and anaerobes (especially if CBD manipulation); no clear consensus on antibiotic choice but consider:
 - ampicillin + sulbactam or piperacillin/tazobactam
 - metronidazole + 3rd generation cephalosporin (e.g. ceftriaxone) or fluoroquinolone (e.g. ciprofloxacin or levofloxacin)
 - carbapenem monotherapy (e.g. imipenem or meropenem)

Prognosis

- good with effective drainage and antibiotics in mild to moderate cases
- high mortality (~50%) in patients with Reynold's Pentad



Charcot's Triad

- RUQ pain
- Fever
- Jaundice



Reynold's Pentad

- Charcot's triad
- Hypotension
- Altered mental status

Pancreas

Pancreatic Enzyme Abnormalities

Causes of Increased Serum Amylase

- pancreatic disease
 - pancreatitis, pancreatic duct obstruction (e.g. ampullary cancer), pseudocyst, abscess, ascites, trauma, cancer
- non-pancreatic abdominal disease
 - biliary tract disease, bowel obstruction/ischemia, perforated or penetrating ulcer, ruptured ectopic pregnancy, aneurysm, chronic liver disease, peritonitis
- non-abdominal disease
 - cancer (lung, ovary, esophagus, etc.), salivary gland lesions, bulimia, renal transplant/insufficiency, burns, ketoacidosis
 - macroamylasemia

Causes of Increased Serum Lipase

- pancreatic disease: same as above
- non-pancreatic abdominal disease (mild elevations only): same as above
- non-abdominal disease
 - macrolipasemia
 - renal failure



Pancreatic Enzymes

TALC

Trypsin

Amylase

Lipase

Chymotrypsin



When serum amylase >5x normal, the cause is almost always pancreatitis or renal disease

Acute Pancreatitis

Etiology

Idiopathic: thought to be hypertensive sphincter or microlithiasis

Gallstones (45%)

Ethanol (35%)

Tumors: pancreas, ampulla, choledochocoele

Scorpion stings

Microbiological

- bacterial: *Mycoplasma*, *Campylobacter*, TB, *M. avium intracellulare*, *Legionella*, leptospirosis
- viral: mumps, rubella, varicella, viral hepatitis, CMV, EBV, HIV, Coxsackie virus, echovirus, adenovirus
- parasites: ascariasis, clonorchiasis, echinococcosis

Autoimmune: SLE, polyarteritis nodosa (PAN), Crohn's disease

Surgery/trauma

- manipulation of sphincter of Oddi (e.g. ERCP), post-cardiac surgery, blunt trauma to abdomen, penetrating peptic ulcer

Hyperlipidemia (TG >11.3 mmol/L; >1000 mg/dL), Hypercalcemia, Hypothermia

Emboli or ischemia

Drugs/toxins

- azathioprine, mercaptopurine, furosemide, estrogens, methyldopa, H₂-blockers, valproic acid, antibiotics, acetaminophen, salicylates, methanol, organophosphates, steroids (controversial)

Pathogenesis

- activation of proteolytic enzymes within pancreatic cells, starting with trypsin, leading to local and systemic inflammatory response
- in gallstone pancreatitis, this is due to mechanical obstruction of the pancreatic duct by stones
- in ethanol-related pancreatitis, pathogenesis is unknown
- in rare genetic diseases, mutations prevent the physiological breakdown of trypsin required normally to stop proteolysis (e.g. mutant trypsin in hereditary pancreatitis or mutation in SPINK 1 gene which normally inhibits activated trypsin); may be model for ethanol-related pancreatitis

Pathology

- mild (interstitial)
 - peri-pancreatic fat necrosis
 - interstitial edema
- severe (necrotic)
 - extensive peri-pancreatic and intra-pancreatic fat necrosis
 - parenchymal necrosis and hemorrhage → infection in 60%
 - release of toxic factors into systemic circulation and peritoneal space (causes multi-organ failure)
- severity of clinical features may not always correlate with pathology



When thinking about the causes of acute pancreatitis remember: **I GET SMASHED**, but vast majority due to gallstones or ethanol

- 3 phases
 - local inflammation + necrosis → hypovolemia
 - systemic inflammation in multiple organs, especially in lungs, usually after IV fluids given → pulmonary edema
 - local complications 2 wk after presentation → pancreatic sepsis/abscess

Signs and Symptoms

- pain: epigastric, noncolicky, constant
- can radiate to back
- may improve when leaning forward (Inglefinger's sign)
- tender rigid abdomen; guarding
- N/V
- abdominal distention from paralytic ileus
- fever: chemical, not due to infection
- jaundice: compression or obstruction of bile duct
- Cullen's/Gray-Turner's signs
- tetany: transient hypocalcemia
- hypovolemic shock: can lead to renal failure
- acute respiratory distress syndrome
- coma

Investigations

- increased serum pancreatic enzymes: amylase, lipase (more specific)
- ALT >150 specific for biliary cause
- increased WBC, glucose, low calcium
- imaging: CT most useful for diagnosis and prognosis
 - x-ray: "sentinel loop" (dilated proximal jejunum), calcification, and "colon cut-off sign" (colonic spasm)
 - U/S: useful for evaluating biliary tree (67% sensitivity, 100% specificity)
 - CT scan with IV contrast: useful for diagnosis and prognosis because contrast seen only in viable pancreatic tissue, non-viable areas can be biopsied percutaneously to differentiate sterile from infected necrosis
 - ERCP or MRCP if cause uncertain, assess for duct stone, pancreatic or ampullary tumor, pancreas divisum

Prognosis

- usually a benign, self-limiting course, single or recurrent
- occasionally severe leading to
 - shock
 - pulmonary edema
 - multi-organ dysfunction syndrome
 - GI ulceration due to stress
 - death
- mortality according to Ranson's criteria (see sidebar)
 - ≤2 criteria = <5% mortality
 - 3-4 criteria = 15-20%
 - 5-6 criteria = 40%
 - ≥7 criteria = >99%
 - multiple other prognostic indices available, more accurate than Ranson but difficult to remember (e.g. APACHE)

Treatment

- goals (only supportive therapy available)
 - (1) hemodynamic stability
 - (2) analgesia
 - (3) oxygen
 - (4) stop progression of damage (difficult)
 - (5) treat local and systemic complications
- antibiotics controversial except in documented infection (use cephalosporins, imipenem)
- aspirate necrotic areas of pancreas to diagnose infection; drain if infected
- IV fluids (crystalloid or colloid)
 - beware third spacing of fluid, monitor urine output carefully
- NG suction (rests pancreas) if vomiting, stomach very dilated
- endoscopic sphincterotomy if severe gallstone pancreatitis (i.e. cholangitis or ongoing obstruction)
- nutritional support: nasojejunal feeding tube or TPN if cannot tolerate enteric feeds
 - recent evidence supports nasogastric enteral (or oral if feasible) feeds
- no benefit: glucagon, atropine, aprotinin, H₂-blockers, peritoneal lavage
- follow clinically and CT/ultrasound to exclude complications
- chief role of surgery is to drain fluid or excise necrotic tissue (necrosectomy) in the case of infected pancreatic necrosis (try to delay for >2 wk to allow demarcation between viable and necrotic tissue)



Cullen's Sign

Periumbilical ecchymosis

Gray-Turner's Sign

Flank ecchymosis



Increased Amylase

- Sensitive, not specific

Increased Lipase

- Higher sensitivity and specificity
- Stays elevated longer



Ranson's Criteria: Prognostic Indicator of Mortality in Pancreatitis not due to Gallstones

At Admission

G: Blood Glucose >11 mmol/L (>200 mg/dL) (with no history of hyperglycemia)

A: Age >55

L: Serum LDH >350 IU/L

A: AST >250 IU/L

W: WBC >16 x 10⁹/L (16,000/mm³)

During First 48 h

C: Serum Calcium <2 mmol/L (<8 mg/dL)

H: Hematocrit drop >10%

O: Arterial PO₂ <60 mmHg

B: Base deficit >4 mmol/L (>4 mEq/L)

B: BUN rise >1.8 mmol/L (>5 mg/dL)

S: Estimated fluid Sequestration >6 L

- Difficult course if 2 criteria present
- High mortality if ≥3 criteria present



Prophylactic Antibiotics Cannot Reduce Infected Pancreatic Necrosis and Mortality in Acute Necrotizing Pancreatitis: Evidence from a Meta-analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials

Am J Gastroenterol 2008;103:104-110

Purpose: To review the effectiveness of IV antibiotics on pancreatic necrosis.

Study Selection: RCTs comparing antibiotics with placebo or no treatment.

Results: Seven trials (n=467) were included.

Antibiotics were not statistically superior to controls in reduction of infected necrosis and mortality.

Conclusion: Prophylactic antibiotics cannot reduce infected pancreatic necrosis and mortality in patients with acute necrotizing pancreatitis.

Note: In practice the temptation to give antibiotics for pancreatitis is mainly in the setting of a sick patient with fever and suggestive pancreatic necrosis on CT scan. It is difficult to determine whether pancreatic necrosis has become infected without aspiration biopsy (see *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2009;11:104-110).

Late Complications

- pseudocysts: follow if asymptomatic, drain if symptomatic or growing
 - drain: choice of endoscopic, percutaneous under radiological guidance, or surgical
- infected necrosis/abscesses: antibiotics + percutaneous drainage, endoscopic vs. surgical
- bleeding: (1) gastric varices if splenic vein thrombosis, (2) pseudoaneurysm of vessels in areas of necrosis, especially splenic artery, (3) duodenal ulcer related to compression of duodenum by enlarged pancreas
- splenic and portal vein thrombosis: no effective therapy described, anticoagulation not proven, hazardous
- rare: DM, pancreatic duct damage

Chronic Pancreatitis**Definition**

- irreversible damage to pancreas characterized by:
 - (1) pancreatic cell loss (from necrosis)
 - (2) inflammation
 - (3) fibrosis

Etiology/Pathophysiology

- alcohol (most common)
 - causes a larger proportion (>90%) of chronic pancreatitis than acute pancreatitis
 - changes composition of pancreatic juice (e.g. increases viscosity)
 - decreases pancreatic secretion of pancreatic stone protein (lithostathine) which normally solubilizes calcium salts
 - ♦ precipitation of calcium within pancreatic duct results in duct and gland destruction
 - toxic effect on acinar and duct cells – directly or via increasing free radicals
 - acinar cell injury leads to cytokine release, which stimulates pancreatic stellate cells to form collagen (leading to fibrosis)
 - varying degrees of ductular dilatation, strictures, protein plugs, calcification
 - no satisfactory theory to explain why only a minority of alcoholics develop pancreatitis
- unusual causes
 - CF
 - severe protein-calorie malnutrition
 - hereditary
 - idiopathic

Signs and Symptoms

- early stages
 - recurrent attacks of severe abdominal pain (upper abdomen and back)
 - chronic painless pancreatitis: 10%
- late stages: occurs in 15% of patients
 - malabsorption syndrome when >90% of function is lost, steatorrhea
 - DM, calcification, jaundice, weight loss, pseudocyst, ascites, GI bleed

Investigations

- laboratory
 - increase in serum glucose
 - increase in serum ALP, less commonly bilirubin (jaundice)
 - serum amylase and lipase usually normal
- AXR: pancreatic calcifications
- U/S or CT: calcification, dilated pancreatic ducts, pseudocyst
- MRCP or ERCP: abnormalities of pancreatic ducts-narrowing and dilatation
- EUS: abnormalities of pancreatic parenchyma and pancreatic ducts
- 72 h fecal fat test: measures exocrine function
- secretin test: gold standard, measures exocrine function but difficult to perform, unpleasant for patient, expensive
- fecal pancreatic enzyme measurement (elastase-1, chymotrypsin): available only in selected centers

Management

- most common problem is pain, difficult to control
- general management
 - total abstinence from alcohol
 - enzyme replacement may help pain by resting pancreas via negative feedback
 - analgesics
 - celiac ganglion blocks
 - time: pain decreases with time as pancreas "burns out"
- endoscopy: sphincterotomy, stent if duct dilated, remove stones from pancreatic duct



Gallstones only cause acute pancreatitis (not chronic pancreatitis)

**Symptoms of Chronic Pancreatitis**

- Abdominal pain
- Diabetes
- Steatorrhea

Etiology = Almost Always Alcohol

Treatment

- Alcohol abstinence
- Pancreatic enzyme replacement
- Analgesics
- Pancreatic resection if ductular blockage

- surgery: drain pancreatic duct (pancreaticojejunostomy) if duct dilated (more effective than endoscopy); resect pancreas if duct contracted
- steatorrhea
 - pancreatic enzyme replacement
 - restrict fat, increase carbohydrate and protein (may also decrease pain)
 - neither endoscopy nor surgery can improve pancreatic function

Autoimmune Pancreatitis

- most commonly presents as a mimicker of pancreatic cancer (pancreatic mass detected because of jaundice ± abdominal pain)

Investigations

- histology: lymphocyte and plasma cell infiltration of pancreas
- imaging: focal or diffuse enlargement of pancreas on CT or MRI, sausage shaped, low density rim around pancreas
- serology: increased serum IgG4
- other organs involvement: sialadenitis, retroperitoneal fibrosis, biliary duct narrowing, nephritis

Treatment

- responds to prednisone

Clinical Nutrition

Determination of Nutritional Status

- corrected weight loss (expressed as body mass index [kg/m^2]) is most important parameter in assessing need for nutritional support

Investigations

- plasma proteins: albumin, pre-albumin (shorter half life than albumin), transferrin
 - decrease may indicate decreased nutritional status or disease state
- thyroid-binding globulin, retinol-binding protein (may be too sensitive)
- anthropometry (e.g. triceps skinfold thickness), grip strength less often used

Table 21. Areas of Absorption of Nutrients

	Fe	CHO	Proteins, Lipids Na ⁺ , H ₂ O	Bile Acids	Vit B ₁₂
Duodenum	+++	+++	+++	+	
Jejunum	+	+	++	+	+
Ileum	+	+	++	+++	+++



Hypomagnesemia may be an initial sign of short bowel syndrome in patients who have undergone surgical bowel resection



Most Common Indications for Artificial Nutrition Support:

- Preexisting nutritional deprivation
- Anticipated or actual inadequate energy intake by mouth
- Significant multiorgan system disease

Enteral Nutrition

Definition

- enteral nutrition (tube feeding) is a way of providing food through a tube placed in the stomach or the small intestine
- choice of tubes: nasogastric (NG), nasojejunal (NJ), percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (G-tube), percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy (J-tube) or tubes can be placed radiologically, surgically

Indications

- oral feeding inadequate or contraindicated

Feeds

- polymeric feeds contain whole protein, carbohydrate, fat as a liquid, with or without fiber
- elemental feeds contain protein as amino acids, carbohydrate as simple sugars, fat content low (therefore high osmolarity)
- specific diets: low carbohydrate/high fat solution for ventilated patients (carbohydrate has a high respiratory quotient so minimizes carbon dioxide production), high energy, low electrolyte solutions for dialysis patients

Relative Contraindications

- non-functioning gut (e.g. intestinal obstruction, enteroenteral or enterocutaneous fistulae)
- uncontrolled diarrhea
- GI bleeding

Complications

- aspiration
- diarrhea
- refeeding syndrome (rare): carbohydrate can stimulate excessive insulin release, leading to cellular uptake and low serum levels of phosphate, magnesium, potassium
- overfeeding syndrome (rare): hypertonic dehydration, hyperglycemia, hypercapnea, azotemia (from excess protein)

Enteral Nutrition Advantages over Parenteral Nutrition

- far fewer serious complications (especially sepsis)
- nutritional requirements for enterally administered nutrition better understood
- can supply gut-specific fuels such as glutamine and short chain fatty acids
- nutrients in the intestinal lumen prevent atrophy of the gut and pancreas
- prevents gallstones by stimulating gallbladder motility
- much less expensive



Enteral vs. Parenteral Nutrition for Acute Pancreatitis

Cochrane DB of Syst Rev 2010;1:CD002837

Purpose: Compare EN vs. TPN on mortality, morbidity, and hospital stay in patients with pancreatitis.

Study Selection: RCTs of TPN vs. EN in pancreatitis.

Results: Eight trials (n=348) were included. Enteral nutrition decreases RR of death (0.50), multiple organ failure (0.55), infection (0.39), and other local complications (0.70). It also decreased hospital stay by 2.37 d.

Conclusion: EN reduces mortality, organ failure, infections, and length of hospital stay in patients with pancreatitis.

Parenteral Nutrition

Definition

- parenteral nutrition is the practice of feeding a person intravenously, bypassing the usual process of eating and digestion

Indications

- short-term (<1 mo)
 - whenever GI tract not functioning
 - only situations where PN has been well shown to increase survival are after bone marrow transplant and in short bowel syndrome, some evidence for benefit in gastric cancer, but often used in ICU, perioperatively, and in difficult to control sepsis
 - pre-operative: only useful in severely malnourished (e.g. loss of >15% of pre-morbid weight, serum albumin <28 g/L or <2.8 g/dL), and only if given for ≥2 wk
 - renal failure: PN shown to increase rate of recovery; no increase in survival
 - liver disease: branched chain amino acids may shorten duration of encephalopathy; no increase in survival
 - IBD: PN closes fistulae and heals acute exacerbations of mucosal inflammation, but effect is transient (EN is equally effective)
 - some evidence for efficacy, but convincing data not available for:
 - ♦ radiation/chemotherapy-induced enteritis
 - ♦ AIDS with wasting diarrhea
 - ♦ severe acute pancreatitis
- long-term (>1 mo): can be given at home
 - severe untreatable small bowel disease (e.g. radiation enteritis, extensive CD, high output fistulae)
 - following surgical resection of >70% of bowel (e.g. bowel infarction)
 - severe motility diseases (e.g. scleroderma affecting bowel)

Relative Contraindications

- functional GI tract for enteral nutrition
- active infection; at least until appropriate antibiotic coverage
- inadequate venous access; triple-lumen central venous lines usually prevent this problem
- unreliable patient or clinical setting

Complications of PN

- sepsis: most serious of the common complications
- mechanical pneumothorax from insertion of central line, catheter migration and thrombosis, air embolus
- metabolic: CHF, hyperglycemia, gallstones, cholestasis



Whenever possible, enteral nutrition is ALWAYS preferable over parenteral nutrition

Common Medications

Table 22. Common Drugs Prescribed in Gastroenterology

Class	Generic Drug Name	Trade Name	Dosing	Mechanism of Action	Indications	Contraindications	Side Effects
Proton Pump Inhibitors (H ⁺ /K ⁺ -ATPase inhibitors)	omeprazole	Losec®/Prilosec®	20 mg PO OD	Inhibits gastric enzymes H ⁺ /K ⁺ -ATPase (proton pump)	Duodenal ulcer, gastric ulcer, NSAID-associated gastric and duodenal ulcers, reflux esophagitis, symptomatic GERD, dyspepsia, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome, eradication of <i>H. pylori</i> (combined with antibiotics)	Hypersensitivity to drug	Dizziness, headache, flatulence, abdominal pain, nausea, rash, increased risk of osteoporotic fracture (secondary to impaired calcium absorption)
	lansoprazole or dexlansoprazole	Prevacid® Dexilant®	Oral therapy: 15-30 mg OD (before breakfast) IV therapy: 30 mg OD	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above
	pantoprazole	Pantoloc® Protonix®	40 mg PO OD for UGIB: 80 mg IV bolus then 8 mg/h infusion	Same as above	Same as above and UGIB	Same as above	Same as above
	rabeprazole	Pariet®/Aciphex®	40 mg PO OD	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above
	esomeprazole	Nexium®	20-40 mg PO OD	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above
Histamine H₂-Receptor Antagonists	ranitidine	Zantac®	300 mg PO OD or 150 mg bid IV therapy: 50 mg q8h (but tachyphylaxis a problem)	Inhibits gastric histamine H ₂ -receptors	Duodenal ulcer, gastric ulcer, NSAID-associated gastric and duodenal ulcers, ulcer prophylaxis, reflux esophagitis, symptomatic GERD, Zollinger-Ellison syndrome	Hypersensitivity to drug	Confusion, dizziness, headache, arrhythmias, constipation, nausea, agranulocytosis, pancytopenia, depression
	famotidine	Pepcid®	Oral therapy: duodenal/gastric ulcers: 40 mg qhs GERD: 20 mg bid IV therapy: 20 mg bid	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above
Stool Softener	docusate sodium	Colace®	100-400 mg PO OD, divided in 1-4 doses	Promotes incorporation of water into stool	Relief of constipation	Presence of abdominal pain, fever, N/V	Throat irritation, abdominal cramps, rashes
Osmotic Laxatives	lactulose	Lactulose/ Constulose®	Constipation: 15-30 mL PO OD to bid Encephalopathy: 15-30 mL bid to qid	Poorly absorbed in GI tract and is broken down by colonic bacteria into lactic acid into colon, increases osmotic colonic contents, increases stool volume	Chronic constipation, prevention and treatment of portal-systemic encephalopathy	Patients who require a low galactose diet	Flatulence, intestinal cramps, nausea, diarrhea if excessive dosage
	PEG3350	Lax-a-day®/ Golytely®	Constipation: 17 g powder dissolved in 4-8 oz liquid PO OD	Osmotic agent causes water retention in stool and promotes frequency of stool	Relief of constipation Colonoscopy prep	Hypersensitivity to drug	Abdominal distension, pain, anal pain, thirst, nausea, rigor, tonic-clonic seizures (rare)
Prokinetic Laxatives	senna	Senokot®	Tablets: 1-4 PO qhs Syrup: 10-15 mL PO qhs	Induce peristalsis in lower colon	Constipation	Patients with acute abdomen	Abdominal cramps, discoloration of breast milk, urine, feces, melanosis coli and atonic colon from prolonged use (controversial)
	bisacodyl	Bisacodyl®	5-30 mg PO OD (start at 10 mg for bowel preparation)	Enteric nerve stimulation and local contact-induced secretory effects. Colonic movements	Constipation Preparation of bowel for procedure	GI obstruction Gastroenteritis	Abdominal colic, abdominal discomfort, proctitis (with suppository use), diarrhea
	metoclopramide	Maxolon®	See anti-emetics	See anti-emetics	See anti-emetics	See anti-emetics	See anti-emetics
Bulk Laxatives	psyllium	Metamucil®	2-6 tabs (1 tab = 0.52 g) PO qd-tid pm	Increases stool bulk → water retention in stool	Constipation	Hypersensitivity to drug GI obstruction	GI obstruction, diarrhea, constipation, abdominal cramps

Table 22. Common Drugs Prescribed in Gastroenterology (continued)

Class	Generic Drug Name	Trade Name	Dosing	Mechanism of Action	Indications	Contraindications	Side Effects
Antidiarrheal Agents	loperamide	Imodium®	Acute diarrhea: 4 mg PO initially, followed by 2 mg after each unformed stool	Acts as antidiarrheal via cholinergic, oncholingeric, opiate, and nonopiate receptor-mediated mechanisms; decreases activity of myenteric plexus	Adjunctive therapy for acute non-specific diarrhea, chronic diarrhea associated with IBD and for reducing the volume of discharge for ileostomies, colostomies, and other intestinal resections	Children <2 yr, known hypersensitivity to drug, acute dysentery characterized by blood in stools and fever, acute ulcerative colitis or pseudomembranous colitis associated with broad-spectrum antibiotics	Abdominal pain or discomfort, drowsiness or dizziness, tiredness, dry mouth, N/V, hypersensitivity reaction
	diphenoxylate/atropine	Lomotil®	5 mg PO tid to qid	Inhibits GI propulsion via direct action on smooth muscle, resulting in a decrease in peristaltic action and increase in transit time	Adjunctive therapy for diarrhea, as above	Hypersensitivity to diphenoxylate or atropine, jaundice, pseudomembranous enterocolitis, diarrhea caused by enterotoxin producing bacteria	Dizziness, drowsiness, insomnia, headache, N/V, cramps, allergic reaction
Anti-Emetics	dimenhydrinate		25-50 mg PO/IV/IM q4-6h prn	Competitive H ₁ receptor antagonist in GI tract, blood vessels, and respiratory tract. Blocks chemoreceptor trigger zone. Diminishes vestibular stimulation and disrupts labyrinthine function through central anticholinergic action	Motion sickness, radiation sickness, postoperative vomiting, and drug-induced N/V	Hypersensitivity to drug	Xerostomia, sedation
	prochlorperazine	Compazine®	5-10 mg PO/IV/IM bid- tid prn	D ₁ , D ₂ receptor antagonist in chemoreceptor trigger zone and α adrenergic and anticholinergic effects. Depresses RAS affecting emesis	Post operative N/V, antipsychotic, anxiety	Hypersensitivity to drug	Dystonia, EPS, seizure, neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS) (rarely)
	metoclopramide	Maxolon®	10 mg IV/IM q2-3h prn, 10-15 mg PO qid (30 min before meals and qhs)	Dopamine and HT receptor antagonist in chemoreceptor trigger zone. Enhances response to ACh in upper GI tract, enhancing motility and gastric emptying. Increases LES tone	GER, diabetic gastroparesis, post operative and chemotherapy induced N/V, migraines, constipation	Hypersensitivity to drug, GI obstruction, perforation, hemorrhage, pheochromocytoma, seizures, and EPS	Restlessness, drowsiness, dizziness, fatigue, EPS, some rare serious side effects include NMS, agranulocytosis
	ondansetron	Zofran®	Depends on procedure, generally 8-16 mg PO	Selective 5HT ₃ receptor antagonist in central chemoreceptor trigger zone and peripherally on vagus nerve	N/V caused by cancer chemotherapy and radiation therapy; multiple off label uses, including gastroenteritis N/V	Morphine, hypersensitivity to drug	Constipation, diarrhea, increased liver enzymes, headache, fatigue, malaise, cardiac dysrhythmia
	granisetron	Kytril®	1 mg PO bid (for nausea from chemotherapy/radiation)	Same as above	N/V caused by cancer chemotherapy and radiation therapy	Same as above	Constipation, prolonged QT interval (rarely)
IBD Agents	mesalamine	Pentasa® Asacol®	CD: 1 g tid/qid Active UC: 1 g PO qid Maintenance UC: 1.6 g divided doses daily also as suppositories and enemas	5-ASA: Blocks arachidonic acid metabolism to prostaglandins and leukotrienes	IBD	Hypersensitivity to mesalamine salicylates	Abdominal pain, constipation, arthralgia, headache
	sulfasalazine	Azulfidine®	3-4 g/d PO in divided doses	Compound composed of 5-ASA bound to sulfapyridine, hydrolysis by intestinal bacteria releases 5-ASA, the active component	Colonic disease	Hypersensitivity to sulfasalazine, sulfa drugs, salicylates; intestinal or urinary obstruction, porphyria	Rash, loss of appetite, N/V, headache, oligospermia (reversible)
	prednisone		20-40 mg PO OD for acute exacerbation	Anti-inflammatory	Mod-severe CD and UC		Complications of steroid therapy
Immunosuppressive Agents	6-mercaptopurine (6-MP)	Purinethol®	CD: 1.5 mg/kg/d PO	Immunosuppressive	IBD: active inflammation and to maintain remission	Hypersensitivity to mercaptopurine, prior resistance to mercaptopurine or thioguanine, history of treatment with alkylating agents, hypersensitivity to azathioprine, pregnancy	Pancreatitis, bone marrow suppression, increased risk of cancer
	azathioprine	Azasan® Imuran®	IBD: 2-3 mg/kg/d PO	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above	Same as above
Immunomodulators	infliximab	Remicade®	5-10 mg/kg IV over 2 h	Antibody to TNFα	Medically refractory CD	Heart failure, moderate to severe, doses >5 mg/kg	Reported cases of reactivated TB, PCP, lymphoma, other infections

Landmark Gastroenterology Trials

Trial	Reference	Results
ALF	<i>Gastroenterology</i> 2009;137:856-64	IV NAC was shown to improve transplant-free survival in patients with early non-acetaminophen related acute liver failure Later stage disease did not improve with IV NAC
BISAP	<i>Am J Gastro</i> 2009; 104:966	Five point scoring system for patients with acute pancreatitis to identify those at increased risk for mortality
Early combined vs. conventional management in Crohn's disease	<i>Lancet</i> 2008; 371:660-7	Initiation of more intensive therapy early in Crohn's disease may be more likely to result in corticosteroid-free remission than conventional therapy
FAMOUS	<i>Lancet</i> 2009; 374:119-25	Famotidine was effective in preventing gastric and duodenal ulcers, and erosive esophagitis in patients receiving low-dose ASA therapy
Glucocorticoids and NAC in Alcoholic Hepatitis	<i>NEJM</i> 2011; 365:1781-9	Combination therapy improved 1 mo survival, but not 6 mo survival compared to prednisolone monotherapy
MELD	<i>Gastroenterology</i> 2003;124:91-6	MELD score can be applied for allocation of donor livers as it accurately predicts 3 mo mortality in patients with chronic liver failure
SONIC	<i>NEJM</i> 2010; 362:1383-95	In moderate-severe Crohn's disease, infliximab + azathioprine was more likely to result in corticosteroid-free remission than infliximab monotherapy. Infliximab monotherapy was more effective than azathioprine monotherapy

References

Atlas
Kandel G. Division of Gastroenterology, St. Michael's Hospital, Toronto.
Olscamp G. Division of Gastroenterology, St. Michael's Hospital, Toronto.
Saibil F. Division of Gastroenterology, Sunnybrook and Women's College Health Sciences Centre, Toronto.
Haber G. Division of Gastroenterology, Lennox Hall Hospital, New York.

Esophageal and Gastric Disease
Devault KR, Castell DO. Guidelines for the diagnoses and treatment of gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Arch Intern Med* 1995;115:2165-2173.
DiPalma JA. Management of severe gastroesophageal reflux disease. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2001;32:19-26.
Sharma P, Sarin SK. Improved survival with the patients with variceal bleed. *Int J Hepatol* 2011; Epub 2011 Jul 7.
Verbeek RE, van Oijen MG, ten Kate FJ, et al. Surveillance and follow-up strategies in patients with high-grade dysplasia in Barrett's esophagus: a Dutch population-based study. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012;107:534-542.
Wang KK, Sampliner RE. Updated guidelines 2008 for the diagnosis, surveillance and therapy of Barrett's esophagus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2008;103:788-797.
Wilcox CM, Karowe MW. Esophageal infections: etiology, diagnosis, and management. *Gastroenterol* 1994;2:188-206.

Stomach and Duodenum
American Gastroenterological Association position statement: evaluation of dyspepsia. *Gastroenterol* 1998;114:579-581.
Howden CW, Hunt RH. Guidelines for the management of helicobacter pylori infection. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998;93:2330-2338.
Hunt RH, Fallone CA, Thomson ABR. Canadian helicobacter pylori consensus conference update: infection in adults. *J Gastroenterol* 1999;13:213-216.
Laine L, Peterson WL. Bleeding peptic ulcer. *NEJM* 1994;331:717-727.
Lanza FL. A guideline for the treatment and prevention of NSAID-induced ulcer. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998;93:2037-2046.
McColl KE. Clinical practice helicobacter pylori infection. *NEJM* 2010;362:1597-601.
Peek RM, Blaser MJ. Pathophysiology of helicobacter pylori-induced gastritis and peptic ulcer disease. *Am J Med* 1997;102:200-207.
Salcedo JA, Al-Kawas F. Treatment of helicobacter pylori infection. *Arch Intern Med* 1998;158:842-851.
Schmid CH, Whiting G, Cory D, et al. Omeprazole plus antibiotics in the eradication of Helicobacter pylori infection: a meta-regression analysis of randomized, controlled trials. *Am J Ther* 1999;6:25-36.
Soll AH. Practice parameters: committee of the American College of Gastroenterology: medical treatment of peptic ulcer disease. *JAMA* 1996;275:622-629.
Thijs JC, van Zwet AA, Thijs WJ, et al. Diagnostic tests for helicobacter pylori: a prospective evaluation of their accuracy, without selecting a single test as the gold standard. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1996; 91:2125-2129.

Small and Large Bowel
Aranda-Michel J, Giannella R. Acute diarrhea: a practical review. *Am J Med* 1999;670-676.
Colorectal cancer screening: recommendation statement from the Canadian task force on preventative health care. *CMAJ* 2001;165:206-208.
Donowitz M, Kokke FT, Saidi R. Evaluation of patients with chronic diarrhea. *NEJM* 1995;332:725-729.
Drossman DA. The functional gastrointestinal disorders and the Rome III process. *Gastroenterol* 2006;130:1377-1390.
Forrest JA, Finlayson ND, Shearman DJ. Endoscopy in gastrointestinal bleeding. *Lancet* 1974;2:394-397.
Ghosh S, Shand A. Ulcerative colitis. *BMJ* 2000;320:1119-1123.
Hanauer SB. Drug therapy: inflammatory bowel disease. *NEJM* 1996;334:841-848.
Hatchette TF, Farina D. Infectious diarrhea: when to test and when to treat. *CMAJ* 2011;183:339-344.
Horwitz BJ, Fisher RS. Current concepts: the irritable bowel syndrome. *NEJM* 2001;344:1846-1850.
Jennings JRS, Howdle PD. Celiac disease. *Curr Opin Gastroen* 2001;17:118-126.
Laine L, Sahota A, Shah A. Does capsule endoscopy improve outcomes in obscure gastrointestinal bleeding? Randomized trial vs. dedicated small bowel radiography. *Gastroenterol* 2010;138:1673-1680.
Pimentel M, Lembo A, Chey WD, et al. Rifaximin therapy for patients with irritable bowel syndrome without constipation. *NEJM* 2011;364:22-32.

Liver and Biliary Tract
Angulo P. Primary biliary cirrhosis and primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Clin Liv Dis* 1999;3:529-570.
Andreoli T, Carpenter C, Griggs R, et al. (editors). Cecil essentials of medicine, 5th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders Company, 2001.
Custis K. Common biliary tract disorders. *Clin Fam Pract* 2000;2:141-154.
Diehl AM. Alcoholic liver disease. *Clin Liv Dis* 1998;2:103-118.
Feldman M, Friedman LS, Sleisenger MH (editors). Gastrointestinal and liver disease: pathophysiology, diagnosis, management, 7th ed., vol. 2. Philadelphia: WB Saunders Company, 2004.
Haubrich WS, Schaffner F, Berk JE (editors). Bockus gastroenterology, 5th ed., vol. 4. Chapter 74: Pregnancy-related hepatic and gastrointestinal disorders. Philadelphia: WB Saunders Company, 1995. 1448-1458.
Haubrich WS, Schaffner F, Berk JE (editors). Bockus gastroenterology, 5th ed., vol. 4. Chapter 184: Pregnancy and the gastrointestinal tract. Philadelphia: WB Saunders Company, 1995. 3446-3452.
Malik AH. Acute and chronic viral hepatitis. *Clin Fam Pract* 2000;2:35-57.
Reynolds T. Ascites. *Clin Liv Dis* 2000;4:151-168.
Sandowski SA. Cirrhosis. *Clin Fam Pract* 2000;2:59-77.
Sherman M. Chronic viral hepatitis and chronic liver disease. *Can J Diag* 2001;18:81-90.
Sternlieb I. Wilson's disease. *Clin Liv Dis* 2000;4:229-239.
Williams JW, Simel DL. Does this patient have ascites? *JAMA* 1992;267:2645-2648.
Yapp TR. Hemochromatosis. *Clin Liv Dis* 2000;4: 211-228.
Yu AS, Hu KL. Management of ascites. *Clin Liv Dis* 2001;5:541-568.

Pancreas
Beckingham IJ, Bomman PC. ABC of diseases of liver, pancreas, and biliary system. Acute pancreatitis. *BMJ* 2001;322:595-598.
Beckingham IJ, Bomman PC. ABC of diseases of liver, pancreas, and biliary system. Chronic pancreatitis. *BMJ* 2001;322:660-663.
Steer ML. Chronic pancreatitis. *NEJM* 1995;332:1482-1490.
Sternby B, O'Brien JF, Zinsmeister AR, et al. What is the best biochemical test to diagnose acute pancreatitis? A prospective clinical study. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1996;71:1138-1144.
Whytcomb DC. Acute pancreatitis. *NEJM* 2006;354:2142-2150.

Rational Clinical Examination
Grover SA, Barkun AN, Sackett DL. Does this patient have splenomegaly? *JAMA* 1993;270:2218-2221.
Kitchens JM. Does this patient have an alcohol problem? *JAMA* 1994;272:1782-1787.
Naylor CD. Physical exam of the liver. *JAMA* 1994;271:1859-1865.
Williams JW, Simel DL. Does this patient have ascites? How to divine fluid in the abdomen. *JAMA* 1992;267:2645-2648.

Hala Muaddi, Maria Querques, and Lina Roa, chapter editors

Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Alexa Bramall, EBM editor

Dr. Nikolai A. Bildzukewicz, Dr. Govind Nandakumar, and Dr. Alice Wei, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Diverticular Disease	31
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Diverticulosis	
Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations	4	Diverticulitis	
Acute Abdominal Pain		Colorectal Neoplasms	33
Abdominal Mass		Colorectal Polyps	
Gastrointestinal Bleeding		Familial Colon Cancer Syndromes	
Jaundice		Colorectal Carcinoma	
Pre-Operative Preparations	6	Other Conditions of the Large Intestine	36
Surgical Complications	7	Angiodysplasia	
Post-Operative Fever		Volvulus	
Wound/Incisional Complications		Fistula	
Urinary and Renal Complications		Stomas	
Post-Operative Dyspnea		Anorectum	38
Respiratory Complications		Hemorrhoids	
Cardiac Complications		Anal Fissures	
Intra-Abdominal Abscess		Anorectal Abscess	
Paralytic Ileus		Fistula-In-Ano	
Delirium		Pilonidal Disease	
Thoracic Surgery	12	Rectal Prolapse	
Hiatus Hernia		Anal Neoplasms	
Esophageal Perforation		Liver	41
Esophageal Carcinoma		Liver Cysts	
Pleura, Lung, and Mediastinum		Liver Abscesses	
Tube Thoracostomy		Neoplasms	
Lung Transplantation		Liver Transplantation	
Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease		Biliary Tract	45
Stomach and Duodenum	17	Cholelithiasis	
Peptic Ulcer Disease		Biliary Colic	
Gastric Carcinoma		Acute Cholecystitis	
Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumor		Acalculous Cholecystitis	
Bariatric Surgery		Choledocholithiasis	
Complications of Gastric Surgery		Acute Cholangitis	
Small Intestine	21	Gallstone Ileus	
Tumors of Small Intestine		Carcinoma of the Gallbladder	
Abdominal Hernia	22	Cholangiocarcinoma	
Groin Hernias		Pancreas	50
Bowel Obstruction	24	Acute Pancreatitis	
Small Bowel Obstruction		Chronic Pancreatitis	
Large Bowel Obstruction		Pancreatic Cancer	
Colonic Pseudo-Obstruction	26	Spleen	53
Toxic Megacolon		Splenic Trauma	
Paralytic Ileus		Splenectomy	
Ogilvie's Syndrome		Breast	54
Intestinal Ischemia	28	Benign Breast Lesions	
Appendix	28	Breast Cancer	
Appendicitis		Surgical Endocrinology	59
Tumors of the Appendix		Thyroid and Parathyroid	
Inflammatory Bowel Disease	29	Adrenal Gland	
Crohn's Disease		Pancreas	
Ulcerative Colitis		Pediatric Surgery	61
		Skin Lesions	64
		Common Medications	65
		References	65

Basic Anatomy Review

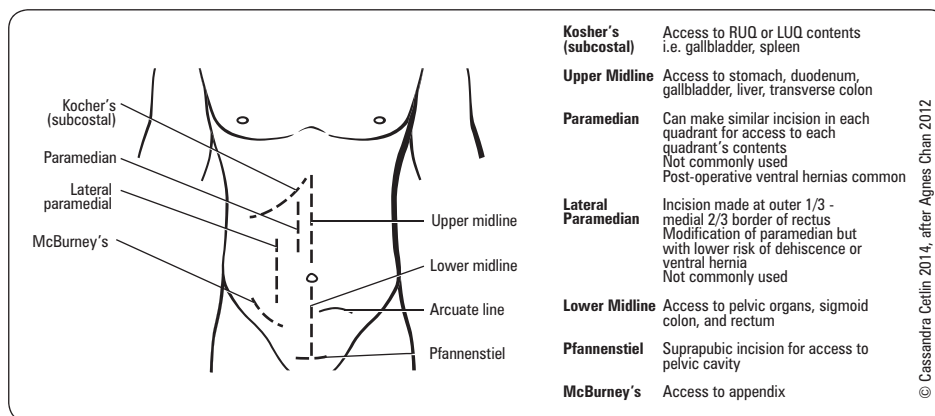


Figure 1. Abdominal incisions

Lateral Abdominal Wall Layers and their Continuous Spermatic and Scrotal Structures (superficial to deep)

1. skin (epidermis, dermis, subcutaneous fat)
2. superficial fascia
 - Camper's fascia (fatty) → Dartos fascia
 - Scarpa's fascia (membranous) → Colles' superficial perineal fascia
3. muscle (see Figure 2 and Figure 3)
 - external oblique → inguinal ligament → external spermatic fascia and fascia lata
 - internal oblique → cremasteric muscle/fascia
 - transversus abdominis → posterior inguinal wall
4. transversalis fascia → internal spermatic fascia
5. preperitoneal fat
6. peritoneum → tunica vaginalis

Midline Abdominal Wall Layers (superficial to deep)

1. skin
2. superficial fascia
3. rectus abdominis muscle: in rectus sheath, divided by linea alba
 - above arcuate line (midway between symphysis pubis and umbilicus)
 - ♦ anterior rectus sheath = external oblique aponeurosis and anterior leaf of internal oblique aponeurosis
 - ♦ posterior rectus sheath = posterior leaf of internal oblique aponeurosis and transversus abdominis aponeurosis
 - below arcuate line
 - ♦ aponeuroses of external oblique, internal oblique, transversus abdominis all pass in front of rectus abdominis
4. arteries: superior epigastric (branch of internal thoracic), inferior epigastric (branch of external iliac); both arteries anastomose and lie behind the rectus muscle (superficial to posterior rectus sheath above arcuate line)
5. transversalis fascia

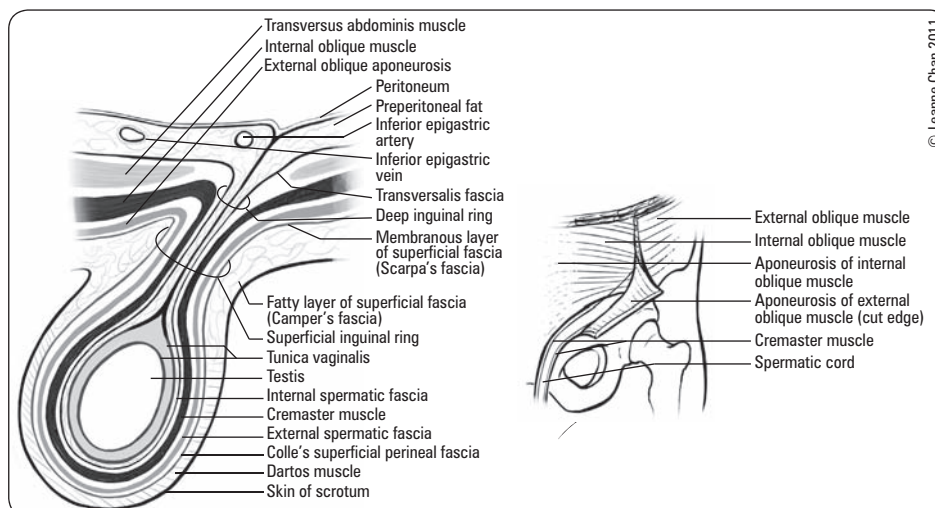


Figure 2. Continuity of the abdominal wall with layers of the scrotum and spermatic cord

Acronyms

5-FU	5-fluorouracil
AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm
ABG	arterial blood gas
ABI	ankle brachial index
APR	abdominoperineal resection
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome
ATN	acute tubular necrosis
BRBPR	bright red blood per rectum
BCS	breast conserving surgery
CBD	common bile duct
CF	cystic fibrosis
CHF	congestive heart failure
CRC	colorectal cancer
CVA	costovertebral angle
CVP	central venous pressure
DCIS	ductal carcinoma <i>in situ</i>
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
DPL	diagnostic peritoneal lavage
DRE	digital rectal exam
EBL	estimated blood loss
ERCP	endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography
EUA	examination under anesthesia
EUS	endoscopic ultrasound
FAP	familial adenomatous polyposis
FAST	focused abdominal sonography for trauma
FNA	fine needle aspiration
FOBT	fecal occult blood test
GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease
GI	gastrointestinal
GIST	gastrointestinal stromal tumour
GU	genitourinary
HDGC	hereditary diffuse gastric carcinoma
HIDA	hepatobiliary imino-diacetic acid
HNPCC	hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer
I&D	incision and drainage
IPAH	idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension
IPF	idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis
LAR	low anterior resection
LBO	large bowel obstruction
LCIS	lobular carcinoma <i>in situ</i>
LES	lower esophageal sphincter
LGIB	lower gastrointestinal bleed
LVRs	lung volume reduction surgery
MALT	mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue
MEN	multiple endocrine neoplasia
MIBG	metaiodobenzylguanidine
MIS	minimally invasive surgery
MRCp	magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography
NGT	nasogastric tube
OGD	oesophagogastroduodenoscopy
POD	post-operative day
PPI	proton pump inhibitor
PTC	percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography
PUD	peptic ulcer disease
SBO	small bowel obstruction
SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate anti-diuretic hormone
SMA	superior mesenteric artery
SMV	superior mesenteric vein
TED	thromboembolic deterrent
TEE	transesophageal echocardiogram
TTE	transthoracic echocardiogram
UGIB	upper gastrointestinal bleed
VATS	video-assisted thorascopic surgery
VIP	vasoactive intestinal peptide

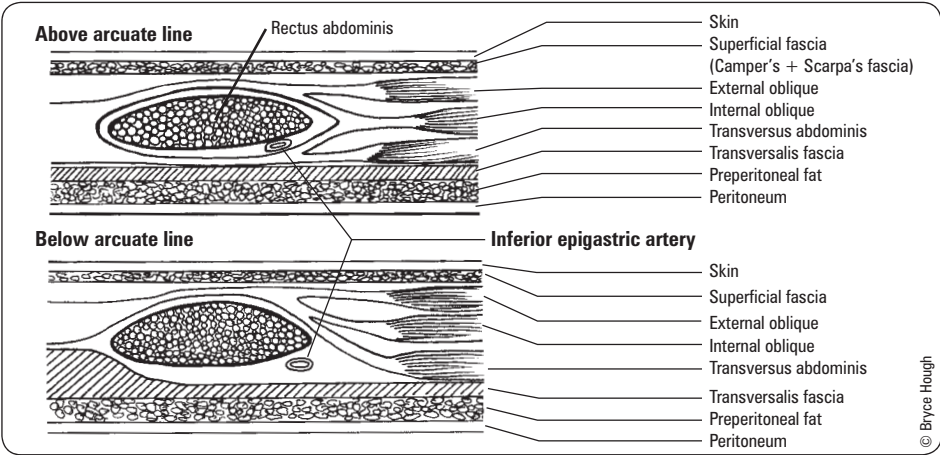


Figure 3. Midline cross-section of abdominal wall

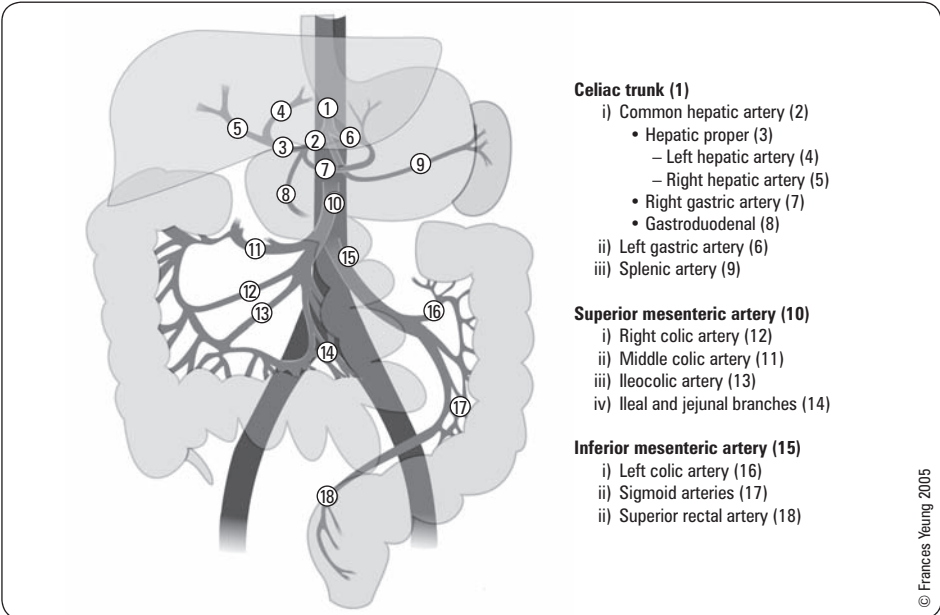


Figure 4. Blood supply to the GI tract

Venous Flow

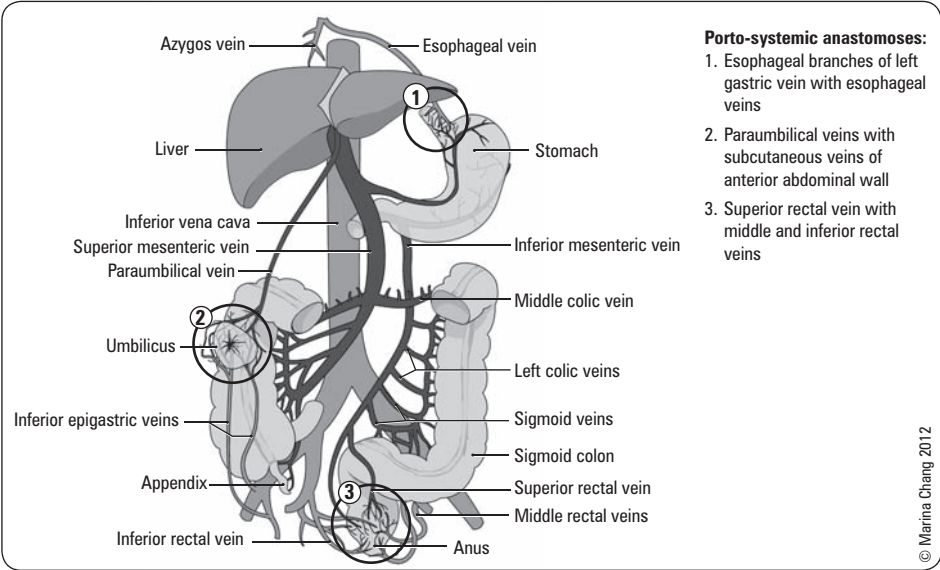


Figure 5. Venous drainage of the GI tract



Organ	Arteries
Liver	Left and right hepatic (branches of hepatic proper)
Spleen	Splenic
Gallbladder	Cystic (branch of right hepatic artery)
Stomach	1. Lesser curvature: right and left gastric 2. Greater curvature: right (branch of gastroduodenal) and left (branch of splenic) gastroepiploic 3. Fundus: short gastrics (branch of splenic)
Duodenum	1. Gastroduodenal 2. Pancreaticoduodenals (superior branch of gastroduodenal, inferior branch of superior mesenteric)
Pancreas	1. Pancreatic branches of splenic 2. Pancreaticoduodenals
Small intestine	1. Superior mesenteric branches: jejunal, ileal, ileocolic
Large intestine	1. Superior mesenteric branches: right colic, middle colic 2. Inferior mesenteric branches: left colic, sigmoid, superior rectal

Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations

Acute Abdominal Pain

- acute abdomen = severe abdominal pain of acute onset and requires urgent medical attention
- in patients with acute abdominal pain, the first diagnoses that you should consider are those requiring potential urgent surgical intervention
- two main patterns constituting urgent general surgery referrals are peritonitis and obstruction

Table 1. Differential Diagnosis of Acute Abdominal Pain

RUQ	EPIGASTRIC	LUQ
Hepatobiliary Biliary colic Cholecystitis Cholangitis CBD obstruction (stone, tumor) Hepatitis Budd-Chiari Hepatic abscess/mass Right subphrenic abscess Gastrointestinal Pancreatitis Presentation of gastric, duodenal, or pancreatic pathology Hepatic flexure pathology (CRC, subcostal incisional hernia) Genitourinary Nephrolithiasis Pyelonephritis Renal: mass, ischemia, trauma Cardiopulmonary RLL pneumonia Effusion/empyema CHF (causing hepatic congestion and R pleural effusion) MI Pericarditis Pleuritis Miscellaneous Herpes zoster Trauma Costochondritis	Cardiac Aortic dissection/ruptured AAA MI Pericarditis Gastrointestinal Gastritis GERD/esophagitis PUD Pancreatitis Mallory-Weiss tear DIFFUSE Gastrointestinal Peritonitis Early appendicitis, perforated appendicitis Mesenteric ischemia Gastroenteritis/colitis Constipation Bowel obstruction Pancreatitis Inflammatory bowel disease Irritable bowel syndrome Ogilvie's syndrome Cardiovascular/Hematological Aortic dissection/ruptured AAA Sickle cell crisis Genitourinary/Gynecological Perforated ectopic pregnancy PID Acute urinary retention Endocrinological Carcinoid syndrome Diabetic ketoacidosis Addisonian crisis Hypercalcemia Other Lead poisoning Tertiary syphilis	Pancreatic Pancreatitis (acute vs. chronic) Pancreatic pseudocyst Pancreatic tumors Gastrointestinal Gastritis PUD Splenic flexure pathology (e.g. CRC, ischemia) Splenic Splenic infarct/abscess Splenomegaly Splenic rupture Splenic aneurysm Cardiopulmonary (see RUQ and Epigastric) Genitourinary (see RUQ) LLQ Gastrointestinal Diverticulitis Diverticulosis Colon/sigmoid/rectal cancer Fecal impaction Proctitis (ulcerative colitis, infectious; i.e. gonococcus or chlamydia) Sigmoid volvulus Hernia Gynecological See 'suprapubic' Genitourinary See 'suprapubic' Extraperitoneal Abdominal wall hematoma/abscess Psoas abscess See Gynecology, Urology, and Respirology chapters for further details regarding respective RLQ and suprapubic pain
RLQ	SUPRAPUBIC	
Gastrointestinal Appendicitis Crohn's disease Tuberculosis of the ileocecal junction Cecal tumor Intussusception Mesenteric lymphadenitis (<i>Yersinia</i>) Cecal diverticulitis Cecal volvulus Hernia: femoral, spigelian, inguinal obstruction, Amyand's (and resulting cecal distention) Gynecological See 'suprapubic' Genitourinary See 'suprapubic' Extraperitoneal Abdominal wall hematoma/abscess Psoas abscess	Gastrointestinal (see RLQ/LLQ) Acute appendicitis IBD Gynecological Ectopic pregnancy PID Endometriosis Threatened/incomplete abortion Hydrosalpinx/salpingitis Ovarian torsion Hemorrhagic fibroid Tubo-ovarian abscess Gynecological tumors Genitourinary Cystitis (infectious, hemorrhagic) Hydroureter/urinary colic Epididymitis Testicular torsion Acute urinary retention Extraperitoneal Rectus sheath hematoma	



In all patients presenting with an acute abdomen, order the following:

KEY TESTS FOR SPECIFIC DIAGNOSIS

- Liver function tests (LFTs) including ALP, ALT, AST, bilirubin
- Amylase/lipase
- Urinalysis
- β -hCG (in women of childbearing age)
- Troponins
- Lactate

KEY TESTS FOR OR PREPARATION

- CBC, electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, glucose
- CXR + ECG
- PT/INR and PTT



Pancreatitis can look like a surgical abdomen, but is rarely an indication for immediate laparotomy



Localization of Pain

Most digestive tract pain is perceived in the midline because of bilaterally symmetric innervation. Kidney, ureter, ovary, or somatically innervated structures are more likely to cause lateralized pain



Referred Pain

- Biliary colic: to right shoulder or scapula
- Renal colic: to groin
- Appendicitis: periumbilical to right lower quadrant (RLQ)
- Pancreatitis: to back
- Ruptured aortic aneurysm: to back or flank
- Perforated ulcer: to RLQ (via right paracolic gutter)
- Hip pain: to groin



Most Common Presentations of Surgical Pain

- Sudden onset with rigid abdomen = perforated viscus
- Pain out of proportion to physical findings = mesenteric ischemia or ischemic bowel
- Vague pain that subsequently localizes = appendicitis or other intra-abdominal process that irritates the parietal peritoneum
- Waves of colicky pain = bowel obstruction



Types of Peritonitis

- Primary peritonitis: spontaneous without clear etiology
- Secondary peritonitis: due to a perforated viscus
- Tertiary peritonitis: recurrent secondary peritonitis more often with resistant organisms

Abdominal Mass

Table 2. Differential Diagnosis of Abdominal Mass

Right Upper Quadrant (RUQ)	Upper Midline	Left Upper Quadrant (LUQ)
Gallbladder: cholecystitis, cholangiocarcinoma, peri-ampullary malignancy, cholelithiasis	Pancreas: pancreatic adenocarcinoma, other pancreatic neoplasm, pseudocyst	Spleen: splenomegaly, tumor, abscess, subcapsular splenic hemorrhage, can also present as RLQ mass if extreme splenomegaly
Biliary tract: Klatskin tumor, choledochal cyst	Abdominal aorta: AAA (pulsatile)	Stomach: tumor
Liver: hepatomegaly, hepatitis, abscess, tumor (hepatocellular carcinoma, metastatic tumor, etc.)	Gastric tumor (adenocarcinoma, gastrointestinal stromal tumor, carcinoid tumor), MALT lymphoma	Colon: tumor, constipation
Colon: tumor, constipation		
Right Lower Quadrant (RLQ)	Lower Midline	Left Lower Quadrant (LLQ)
Intestine: stool, tumor (CRC), mesenteric adenitis, appendicitis, appendiceal phlegmon or other abscess, typhilitis, intussusception, Crohn's inflammation	Uterus: pregnancy, leiomyoma (fibroid), uterine cancer, pyometra, hematometra	Intestine: stool, tumor, abscess (see RLQ)
Ovary: ectopic pregnancy, cyst (physiological vs. pathological), tumor (serous, mucinous, struma ovarii, germ cell, Krukenberg)	GU: bladder distention, tumor	Ovary: see RLQ
Fallopian tube: ectopic pregnancy, tubo-ovarian abscess, hydrosalpinx, tumor		Fallopian tube: see RLQ



Indications for Urgent Operation

IHOP

Ischemia
Hemorrhage
Obstruction
Perforation

Gastrointestinal Bleeding

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G25

Indications for Surgery

- failure of medical management
- exsanguinating hemorrhage: hemodynamic instability despite vigorous resuscitation
- recurrent hemorrhage after initial stabilization procedures (up to two attempts of endoscopic control)
- hypovolemic shock
- prolonged bleeding with transfusion requirement >4 units
- bleeding at rate >1 unit/8 h

Surgical Management of GI Bleeding

- UGIB
 - bleeding from a source proximal to the ligament of Treitz
 - often presents with hematemesis and melena unless very brisk (then can present with hematochezia, hypotension, tachycardia)
 - initial management with endoscopy; if fails, then consider surgery
 - note: PUD accounts for approximately 55% of severe UGIB
- LGIB
 - bleeding from a source distal to the ligament of Treitz
 - often presents with BRBPR unless proximal to transverse colon
 - may occasionally present with melena
 - initial management with colonoscopy to detect and potentially stop source of bleeding
 - 75% of patients will spontaneously stop bleeding, however if bleeding continues barium enema should NOT be performed
 - angiography, RBC scan to determine source as indicated
 - surgery indicated if bleeding is persistent - aimed at removing underlying cause of bleeding
 - obscure bleed may require blind total colectomy if the source is not found



Overt bleeding: obvious hematochezia or melena per rectum visible to naked eye

Occult bleeding: bleeding per rectum is not obvious to naked eye (e.g. positive guaiac test)

Obscure bleeding: overt bleeding with no identifiable source after colonoscopy and endoscopy



Transfusion Strategies for Acute Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding

NEJM 2013;368:11-21

Recent study by Villanueva et al., demonstrates that a restrictive transfusion strategy (transfusion with hemoglobin below 70 g/L) significantly improves outcomes in patients with acute UGIB, compared to a liberal transfusion strategy (transfusion with hemoglobin below 90 g/L). Refer to study for details.

Table 3. Differential Diagnosis of GI Bleeding

Anatomical Source	Etiology	
Hematological	Excess anticoagulation (coumadin, heparin, etc.) Excess antiplatelet (clopidogrel, ASA)	DIC Congenital bleeding disorders
Nose	Epistaxis	
Esophagus	Esophageal varices Mallory-Weiss tear Esophagitis	Aorto-esophageal fistula (generally post endovascular aortic repair)* Esophageal cancer
Stomach	Gastritis Gastric varices Dieulafoy's lesion	Gastric ulcer Gastric cancer*
Duodenum	Duodenal ulcer Perforated duodenal ulcer*	Duodenal cancer*
Jejunum	Tumors* Polyps Ulcers	

Table 3. Differential Diagnosis of GI Bleeding (continued)

Anatomical Source	Etiology	
Ileum and Ileocecal Junction	Meckel's diverticulum (rare surgical management) Small bowel obstruction	Crohn's disease* Tuberculosis of ileocecal junction
Large Intestine	Colorectal cancer* Mesenteric thrombosis/ischemic bowel* Ulcerative colitis* (subtotal colectomy if failure of medical management) Angiodysplasia Diverticulosis (*if bleeding is persistent)	Crohn's disease (less frequently presents with bleeding)* Pancolitis (infectious, chemotherapy, or radiation induced) Suture or staple line of a post-gastrointestinal anastomosis
Sigmoid	Diverticulosis (*if bleeding is persistent) Sigmoid cancer* Bleeding post-polypectomy	Polyps (*if not amenable to colonoscopic polypectomy) Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)
Rectum and Anus	Hemorrhoids (internal > external) Fissures Rectal cancer* Anal varices	Polyps (*if not amenable to colonoscopic polypectomy) Crohn's or ulcerative colitis* Solitary rectal ulcer syndrome

*Managed surgically in most cases

**Biochemical Signs for Differentiating Jaundice**

Hepatocellular: Elevated bilirubin + elevated ALT/AST
Cholestatic: Elevated bilirubin + elevated ALP/GGT ± duct dilatation upon biliary U/S
Hemolysis: ↓ haptoglobin ↑ LDH



Note: cholestatic jaundice is usually surgical

Jaundice

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G41

Pre-Operative Preparations

Considerations

- informed consent (see [Ethical, Legal, and Organizational Medicine](#), ELOAM5)
- screening questionnaire to assess important potential risk factors such as age, exercise capacity, medication use, and allergies
- consults: anesthesia, medicine, as indicated
- NPO for ≥6 h prior; activity as tolerated (AAT), vital signs routine (VSR)
- IV – balanced crystalloid at maintenance rate (4:2:1 rule → roughly 100-125 cc/h): normal saline or Ringer's lactate; bolus to catch up on estimated losses including losses from bowel prep
 - appropriate use of fluids perioperatively decreases risk of cardiorespiratory complications
- review patient's regular medications including prednisone: consider pre-operative stress dose if prednisone with β-blocker used in past year
- prophylactic antibiotics depending on wound class (within 1 h prior to incision): usually cefazolin (Ancef®) ± metronidazole (Flagyl®)
- consider bowel prep: cleans out bowel and decreases bacterial population
 - oral cathartic (e.g. fleet Phosphosoda®) starting previous day
 - use in selected cases; current evidence does not support routine use
- consider DVT prophylaxis for all inpatient surgery (heparin)
- do not hold heparin prior to surgery unless epidural is expected
- hold clopidogrel and coumadin 5 to 7 days pre-operative; consider holding ASA (surgeon dependent)
- smoking cessation x 8 wk or more pre-operative can significantly decrease post-operative complications
- remote infection: delay elective surgery until infection controlled

Investigations

- routine pre-operative laboratory investigations for **elective** procedures should be **selective**
 - only ASA class and surgical risk have been found to independently predict post-operative adverse effects
- blood components: group and screen or cross and type depending on procedure
- CBC, electrolytes, BUN, creatinine
- INR/PT, PTT
- ABGs and/or PFTs if predisposed to respiratory insufficiency
- CXR (PA and lateral) if >50 yr old or previously abnormal within past 6 mo
- ECG if >50 yr old or as indicated by history
- β-hCG testing in all women of reproductive age

Drains

- NGT
 - indications: gastric decompression, analysis of gastric contents, irrigation/dilution of gastric contents, to test anastomosis for leak, feeding (only if necessary due to risk of aspiration → naso-jejunal tube preferable)

**Bilirubin Levels**

	Prehepatic	Intrahepatic	Posthepatic
Serum Bilirubin			
Indirect	↑	↑	N
Direct	N	↑	↑
Urine			
Urobilinogen	↑	↑	–
Bilirubin	–	+	+
Fecal			
Urobilinogen	↑	↑	–



In patients with liver disease and an acute abdomen, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis must be ruled out

**Best Practice in General Surgery (BPIGS)**

<http://www.bpigs.ca/>
 BPIGS is a University of Toronto initiative with the goal of standardizing care in general surgery. This link contains EBM based guidelines which have been implemented by consensus within all Toronto teaching hospitals. This is a highly recommended source for the most up-to-date pre-operative and general treatment guidelines

**Surgical Emergencies: Take an AMPLE History****AMPLE****Allergies****Medications**

Past medical/surgical history (including anesthesia and bleeding disorders)

Last meal

Events (HPI and FHx of bleeding disorders/anesthesia complications)

- contraindications: suspected basal skull fracture, obstruction of nasal passages due to trauma
- Foley catheter with urometer
 - indications: to accurately monitor urine output, decompression of bladder, relieve obstruction, rapidly expanding suprapubic mass
 - contraindications: suspected urethral injury, difficult insertion of catheter



Approach to the Critically Ill Surgical/Trauma Patient

ABC, I'M FINE ABC

IV: 2 large bore IVs with NS, wide open
Monitors: O₂ sat, ECG, BP
Foley catheter to measure urine output
Investigations: blood work
NGT if indicated
"Ex" rays (abdomen 3 views, CXR), other imaging – only when stable



Pre and Post-Operative Orders

ADDAVIDS

Admit to ward X under Dr. Y

Diagnosis

Diet

Activity

Vitals (q4h from ED and post-operative is standard)

IV, Investigations, Ins and Outs

Drugs, Dressings, Drains

Special procedures



Drugs – 7 As

Analgesia

Anti-emetic

Anticoagulation

Antibiotics

Anxiolytics

Anticonstipation

All other patient meds (home meds, stress dose steroids, and β -blockers)



5 Ws of Post-Operative Fever

Wind POD #1-2 (pulmonary – atelectasis, pneumonia)

Water POD #3-5 (urine – UTI)

Wound POD #5-8 (if earlier think streptococcal or clostridial infection)

Walk POD #8+ (thrombosis – DVT/PE)

Wonder drugs POD #1+ (drug)



Drain Size

Measured by the unit French
French = diameter (mm) x 3

Surgical Complications

- general principles in preventing complications during the post-operative period include:
 - frequent examination of the patient (daily or more) and their wound
 - removal of surgical tubes as soon as possible
 - early ambulation
 - monitor fluid balance and electrolytes
 - analgesia - enough to adequately address pain, but not excessive
 - skillful nursing care

Post-Operative Fever

- fever does not necessarily imply infection particularly in the first 24-48 h post-operative
- fever may not be present or is blunted if patient is receiving chemotherapy, glucocorticoids, or immunosuppression
- timing of fever may help identify cause
 - hours after surgery – POD #1 (immediate)
 - ♦ inflammatory reaction in response to trauma from surgery
 - ♦ reaction to blood products received during surgery
 - ♦ malignant hyperthermia
 - POD #1-2 (acute)
 - ♦ atelectasis (most common cause of fever in first 48 h after surgery)
 - ♦ early wound infection (especially *Clostridium*, Group A *Streptococcus* – feel for crepitus and look for “dishwater” drainage)
 - ♦ aspiration pneumonitis
 - ♦ other: Addisonian crisis, thyroid storm, transfusion reaction
 - POD #3-7 (subacute): infections more likely
 - ♦ UTI, surgical site infection, IV site/line infection, septic thrombophlebitis, leakage at bowel anastomosis (tachycardia, hypotension, oliguria, abdominal pain)
 - POD #8+ (delayed)
 - ♦ intra-abdominal abscess, DVT/PE (can be anytime post-operative, most commonly POD #8-10), drug fever
 - ♦ other: cholecystitis, peri-rectal abscess, URTI, infected seroma/biloma/hematoma, parotitis, *C. difficile* colitis, endocarditis, sinusitis (from nasogastric tube)

Treatment

- treat primary cause
- antipyrexia (e.g. acetaminophen)

Wound/Incisional Complications

WOUND CARE (see [Plastic Surgery, PL8](#))

- can shower POD #2-3 (epithelialization of wound occurs within 48 h)
- dressings can generally be removed POD #2 and left uncovered if dry (check with attending to be sure)
- examine wound if wet dressing, signs of infection (fever, tachycardia, pain)
- skin sutures and staples can be removed POD #7-10
 - exceptions: incision crosses crease (groin), closed under tension, in extremities (hand) or patient factors (elderly, corticosteroid use, immunosuppressed) removed POD #14, earlier if signs of infection
- negative pressure dressings consist of foam and suction, promote granulation
 - ideal for large (grafted sites) or non-healing wounds (irradiated skin, ulcer)

DRAINS

- sometimes placed intraoperatively to prevent fluid accumulation (blood, pus, serum, bile, urine)
 - can be used to assess quantity of third space fluid accumulation post-operatively
- potential route of infection, bring out through separate incision (vs. operative wound) to decrease risk of wound infection and remove as soon as possible

- types of drains
 - open (e.g. Penrose), higher risk of infection
 - closed: 1) Gravity drainage (e.g. Foley catheter); 2) Underwater-seal drainage system (e.g. chest tube); 3) Suction drainage (e.g. Jackson-Pratt)
 - sump (e.g. NGT)
- monitor drain outputs daily
- drains should be removed once drainage is minimal (<30-50 cc/24 h)
- evidence does not support routine post-operative drainage of abdominal cavity
- drains do not guarantee that the patient will not form a collection of fluid
- ridged drains can erode through internal structures, and excessive suction can cause necrosis

SURGICAL SITE INFECTION

Etiology

- S. aureus*, *E. coli*, *Enterococcus*, *Streptococcus* spp., *Clostridium* spp.

Risk Factors

Table 4. Procedures and Their Impact on Surgical Site Infection

Classification	Clean	Clean-Contaminated	Contaminated	Dirty/Infected
Definition	Incision under sterile conditions; nontraumatic; no entrance of hollow organ	Incision under sterile conditions; ENTRANCE of hollow viscus; no evidence of active infection; minimal contamination	Incision under sterile conditions; MAJOR contamination of wound during procedure (i.e. gross spillage of stool, infection in biliary, respiratory, or GU systems)	Established infection present before wound is made in skin
Example	Wound created to repair hernia	Routine cholecystectomy; colon resection	Bowel obstruction with enterotomy and spillage of contents; necrotic bowel resection; fresh traumatic wounds	Appendiceal abscess; traumatic wound with contaminated devitalized tissue; perforated viscus
Infection Rate	<2%	3-4%	7-10%	30-40%
Wound Closure	Primary closure	Primary closure	Often secondary closure	Secondary closure

- patient characteristics
 - age, DM, steroids, immunosuppression, obesity, burn, malnutrition, patient with other infections, traumatic wound, radiation, chemotherapy
- other factors
 - prolonged pre-operative hospitalization, reduced blood flow, break in sterile technique, multiple antibiotics, hematoma, seroma, foreign bodies (drains, sutures, grafts), skin preparation, hypoxemia, hypothermia

Clinical Presentation

- typically fever POD #5-8 (*Streptococcus* and *Clostridium* can present in 24 h)
- pain, blanchable wound erythema, induration, purulent discharge, warmth
- complications: fistula, sinus tracts, sepsis, abscess, suppressed wound healing, superinfection, spreading infection to myonecrosis or fascial necrosis (necrotizing fasciitis), wound dehiscence, evisceration, hernia

Prophylaxis

- used to reduce the chance of surgical site infections
 - pre-operative antibiotics for most surgeries (cefazolin ± metronidazole or if β-lactam allergy, clindamycin ± gentamycin)
 - within 1 h pre-incision; can re-dose at 1-2 half-lives (~q4-8h) in the OR
 - not required for low risk elective cholecystectomy, hemorrhoidectomy, fistulotomy, sphincterotomy for fissure
- generally no need to continue prophylactic antibiotics post-operatively
 - reserve post-operative antibiotics for treatment of suspected or documented intra-abdominal infection
- normothermia (maintain patient temperature 96.8-100.4°F during OR)
- hyperoxygenation (consider FiO₂ of 80% in OR)
- chlorhexidine-alcohol wash of surgical site
- hair removal should not be performed unless necessary; if so, clipping superior to shaving
- protect skin edges (moistened lap pads); consider delayed primary closure of incision for contaminated wounds

Treatment

- examination of the wound: inspect, compress adjacent areas, swab drainage for C&S and Gram stain
- re-open affected part of incision, drain, pack, heal by secondary intention in most cases
- for deeper infections, debride necrotic and non-viable tissue
- antibiotics and demarcation of erythema only if cellulitis or immunodeficiency



Systemic Prophylactic Antibiotics Recommendations

Updated Recommendations for Control of Surgical Site Infections

Ann Surg 2011;253:1082-93

- Choice of routine prophylactic antibiotic depends on the pathogen and patient allergies.
- Vancomycin and fluorquinolones should be administered 1-2 h prior to incision; all other antibiotics should be administered 30 min prior to incision.
- Short-acting antibiotics should be redosed ~3 h after incision.
- Antibiotic administration >24 h after surgery does not appear to add benefits.
- Antibiotics should no longer be routinely administered in three doses.
- The majority of antibiotics are renally excreted hence renal function must be considered in antibiotic administration.
- Obese patients need higher antibiotic doses to achieve therapeutic concentrations.
- Drug half-life and length of operation need to be considered in antibiotic administration.

WOUND HEMORRHAGE/HEMATOMA

- secondary to inadequate surgical control of hemostasis

Risk Factors

- anticoagulant therapy, coagulopathies, thrombocytopenia, DIC, severe liver disease, myeloproliferative disorders, severe arterial HTN, severe cough
- more common with transverse incisions through muscle

Clinical Features

- pain, swelling, discoloration of wound edges, leakage
- rapidly expanding neck hematoma can compromise airway and is a surgical emergency (consider opening wound at bedside)

Treatment

- pressure dressing
- open drainage \pm wound packing (large hematoma only)
- if significant bleeding, may need to re-operate to find source (often do not find a discrete vessel)

SEROMA

- fluid collection other than pus or blood
- secondary to transection of lymph vessels
- delays healing
- increased infection risk

Treatment

- pressure dressing \pm needle drainage
- if significant may need to re-operate

WOUND DEHISCENCE

- disruption of fascial layer, abdominal contents contained by skin only
- 95% caused by intact suture tearing through fascia

Clinical Features

- typically POD #1-3; most common presentation sign is serosanguinous or salmon-colored drainage from wound \pm evisceration
- palpation of wound edge: should normally feel a "healing ridge" from abdominal wall closure (raised area of tissue under incision)

Risk Factors

- local: technical failure of closure, increased intra-abdominal pressure (e.g. COPD, ileus, bowel obstruction), hematoma, infection, poor blood supply, radiation, patient not fully paralyzed while closing, transverse incision
- systemic: smoking, malnutrition (hypoalbuminemia, vitamin C deficiency), connective tissue diseases, immunosuppression, pulmonary disease, ascites, poor nutrition, steroids, chemotherapy, obesity, other (e.g. age, sepsis, uremia)
- DM alone is not a risk factor

Treatment

- place moist dressing over wound with binder around abdomen and transfer to OR
- may consider conservative management with debridement of fascial and/or skin margins

EVISCEATION

- protrusion of abdominal viscera through the abdominal wall
- also known as 'burst abdomen', is a surgical emergency (mortality rates as high as 45%)

Treatment

- take patient for operative closure, use slowly absorbable suture \pm retention sutures

**Pre-Operative Skin Antiseptics for Preventing Surgical Wound Infections After Clean Surgery**
Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;3:CD003949

Purpose: To determine if pre-operative skin antiseptics prior to clean surgery prevents surgical-site infection (SSI) and which antiseptic is most effective.

Methods: Systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized-controlled trials (RCTs). Main outcome was SSI. Secondary outcomes included quality of life, mortality, and length of hospital stay.

Results: 13 RCTs (n=2,623 patients) were included that made 11 total comparisons between skin antiseptics. A single study found a statistically significant difference between two antiseptics: 0.5% chlorhexidine solution in methylated spirits prevented SSIs after clean surgery better than alcohol-based povidone-iodine paint. No other statistically significant differences were found.

Conclusions: Insufficient evidence that one antiseptic is better than another. Alcohol-based solutions are probably more effective than aqueous-based solutions.

**Systemic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Clinical Trials Comparing Primary vs. Delayed Primary Skin Closure in Contaminated and Dirty Abdominal Incisions**
JAMA Surg 2013;148:779-786

Purpose: To compare rates of surgical site infection (SSI) with delayed primary closure (DPC) vs. primary skin closure (PC).

Results/Conclusions: 8 RCTs with 623 patients. Most common diagnosis was appendicitis (77.4%).

Although there was significant heterogeneity between studies, DPC (2-5 d time to first review) was found to significantly reduce the chance of SSI (OR 0.65, 95% CI 0.40-0.93). Although current trials are poorly designed, DPC may be a simple and cost-effective way of reducing the rates of SSIs following abdominal surgery with contaminated or dirty wounds.

Urinary and Renal Complications

URINARY RETENTION

- may occur after any operation with general anesthesia or spinal anesthesia
- more likely in older males with history of benign prostatic hyperplasia, patients on anticholinergics

Clinical Presentation

- abdominal discomfort, palpable bladder, overflow incontinence, post-void residual urine volume >100 mL

Treatment

- Foley catheter to rest bladder, then trial of voiding

OLIGURIA/ANURIA (see [Nephrology](#), NP33)**Etiology**

- prerenal vs. renal vs. postrenal
 - most common post-operative cause is prerenal ± ischemic ATN
 - ♦ external fluid loss: hemorrhage, dehydration, diarrhea
 - ♦ internal fluid loss: third-spacing due to bowel obstruction, pancreatitis

Clinical Presentation

- urine output <0.5 cc/kg/h, increasing Cr, increasing BUN

Treatment

- according to underlying cause; fluid deficit is treated with crystalloid (NS or RL)

Post-Operative Dyspnea

- see *Respiratory Complications* below and *Cardiac Complications*, GS11

Etiology

- respiratory: atelectasis, pneumonia, pulmonary embolus (PE), ARDS, asthma, pleural effusion
- cardiac: MI, arrhythmia, CHF
- inadequate pain control

Respiratory Complications

ATELECTASIS

- comprises 90% of post-operative pulmonary complications

Clinical Features

- low-grade fever on POD #1, tachycardia, crackles, decreased breath sounds, bronchial breathing, tachypnea

Risk Factors

- COPD, smoking, obesity, elderly persons
- upper abdominal/thoracic surgery, oversedation, significant post-operative pain, poor inspiratory effort

Treatment

- pre-operative prophylaxis
 - smoking cessation (best if >8 wk pre-operative)
 - provide incentive spirometer and instruct how to use
- post-operative prophylaxis
 - incentive spirometry, deep breathing exercise, chest physiotherapy, intermittent positive-pressure breathing
 - selective NGT decompression after abdominal surgery
 - short-acting neuromuscular blocking agents
 - minimize use of respiratory depressive drug, good pain control, early ambulation

PNEUMONIA/PNEUMONITIS

- may be secondary to aspiration of gastric contents during anesthetic induction or extubation, causing a chemical pneumonitis

Risk Factors

- aspiration: general anesthetic, decreased LOC, GERD, full stomach, bowel/gastric outlet obstruction + non-functioning NGT, pregnancy, seizure disorder
- non-aspiration: atelectasis, immobility, pre-existing respiratory disease

Clinical Features

- productive cough, fever
- tachycardia, cyanosis, respiratory failure, decreased LOC
- CXR: pulmonary infiltrate

Treatment

- prophylaxis: see atelectasis prophylaxis, pre-operative NPO/NGT, rapid sequence anesthetic induction
- immediate removal of debris and fluid from airway
- consider endotracheal intubation and flexible bronchoscopic aspiration
- IV antibiotics to cover oral nosocomial aerobes and anaerobes (e.g. ceftriaxone, metronidazole)

PULMONARY EMBOLUS (see [Respirology, R18](#))**Clinical Features**

- unilateral leg swelling and pain (DVT as a source of PE), sudden onset shortness of breath, tachycardia, fever
- most commonly POD #8-10, but can occur anytime post-operatively

Treatment

- IV heparin, long-term warfarin (INR = 2-3) for 3 mo
- Greenfield (IVC) filter if contraindications to anticoagulation or develops a complication while on anticoagulation
- prophylaxis: subcutaneous heparin (5,000 U bid) or LMWH, compression stockings (TED™ Hose)

PULMONARY EDEMA**Etiology**

- cardiogenic vs. noncardiogenic
- circulatory overload: excess volume replacement, LV failure, shift of fluid from peripheral to pulmonary vascular bed, negative airway pressure, alveolar injury due to toxins (e.g. ARDS)
 - more common with pre-existing cardiac disease
- negative pressure pulmonary edema due to inspiratory efforts against a closed glottis upon awakening from general anesthesia

New onset "asthma" and wheezing in the elderly is cardiogenic until proven otherwise

Clinical Features

- shortness of breath, crackles at lung bases, CXR abnormal

Treatment (LMNOP)

- Lasix
- Morphine (decreases symptoms of dyspnea, venodilator and afterload reduction)
- Nitrates (venodilator)
- Oxygen + non-invasive ventilation
- Position (sit patient up)

RESPIRATORY FAILURE**Clinical Features**

- dyspnea, cyanosis, evidence of obstructive lung disease
- earliest manifestations – tachypnea and hypoxemia (RR >25, pO₂ <60)
- pulmonary edema, unexplained decrease in SaO₂

Treatment

- ABCs, O₂, ± intubation
- bronchodilators, diuretics to treat CHF
- adequate blood pressure to maintain pulmonary perfusion
- if these measures fail to keep PaO₂ >60, consider ARDS

Cardiac Complications

- abnormal ECGs common in post-operative period (compare to pre-operative ECG)
- common arrhythmias: supraventricular tachycardia, atrial fibrillation (secondary to fluid overload, PE, MI)

MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION

- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C27](#)
- surgery increases risk of MI
- incidence
 - 0.5% in previously asymptomatic men >50 yr old
 - 40-fold increase in men >50 yr old with previous MI

**Risk Factors**

- pre-operative HTN, CHF
- previous MI (highest risk ≤6 mo, but risk never returns to baseline)
- increased age
- intraoperative hypotension
- operations >3 h
- angina

Clinical Features

- majority of cases on day of operation or POD #3-4 (shifting of third space fluid back into intravascular compartment)
- often silent without chest pain, may only present with new-onset CHF (dyspnea), arrhythmias, hypotension

Intra-Abdominal Abscess

Definition

- collection of pus walled-off from rest of peritoneal cavity by inflammatory adhesions and viscera

Etiology

- usually polymicrobial: Gram-negative bacteria, anaerobes
 - consider Gram-positives if coexisting cellulitis

Risk Factors

- emergency, contaminated OR
- GI surgery with anastomoses
- risk factors for poor healing (DM, poor nutrition, etc.)
- may occur POD #3 after laparotomy when third space fluid re-distribution occurs

Clinical Features

- persistent spiking fever, dull pain, weight loss
- mass difficult to palpate
- peritoneal signs if abscess perforation and secondary peritonitis
- leukocytosis or leukopenia (immunocompromised, elderly)
- co-existing effusion (pleural effusion with subphrenic abscess)
- common sites: pelvis, Morrison's pouch (space between kidney and liver), subphrenic, paracolic gutters, lesser sac, peri-appendiceal, post-surgical anastomosis, diverticular, psoas

Investigations

- CBC, blood cultures x2
- CT \pm water-soluble contrast
- DRE (pelvic abscess)

Treatment

- eradication (preferred), laparoscopy, open drainage
- subsequent antibiotic coverage, ciprofloxacin (Cipro®) + metronidazole (Flagyl®)

Paralytic Ileus

- see *Bowel Obstruction*, GS24

Delirium

- see *Psychiatry*, PS16 and *Neurology*, N19



Thoracic Surgery

Hiatus Hernia

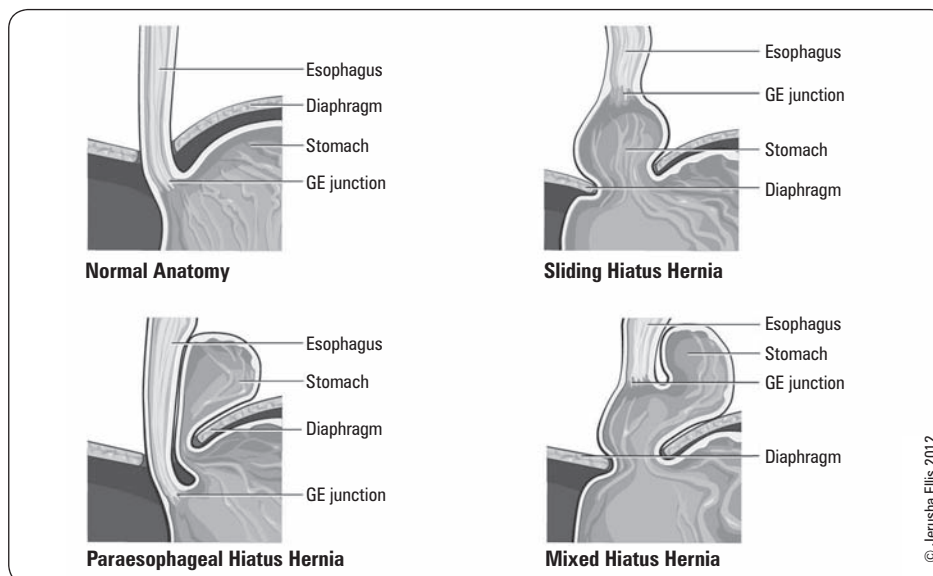


Figure 6. Types of hiatus hernia

SLIDING HIATUS HERNIA (Type I)

- see Figure 6
- herniation of both the stomach and the gastroesophageal (GE) junction into thorax
- 90% of esophageal hernias

Risk Factors

- age
- increased intra-abdominal pressure (e.g. obesity, pregnancy, coughing, heavy lifting)
- smoking

Clinical Features

- majority are asymptomatic
- larger hernias frequently associated with GERD (60-80%) due to decreased competence of the LES

Complications

- most common complication is GERD
- other complications are rare and are related to reflux
 - esophagitis (dysphagia, heartburn)
 - consequences of esophagitis (peptic stricture, Barrett's esophagus, esophageal carcinoma)
 - extra-esophageal complications (pneumonitis/pneumonia, asthma, cough, laryngitis)

Investigations

- CXR, barium swallow, endoscopy, or esophageal manometry (technique for measuring LES pressure)
- 24-48 h esophageal pH monitoring to quantify reflux
- gastroscopy with biopsy to document type and extent of tissue damage and rule out esophagitis, Barrett's esophagus, and cancer

Treatment

- lifestyle modification
 - stop smoking, weight loss, elevate head of bed, no meals <3 h prior to sleeping, smaller and more frequent meals, avoid alcohol, coffee, mint, and fat
- medical
 - antacid, H₂-antagonist, PPI, prokinetic agent
- surgical (<15%)
 - if failure of medical therapy, esophageal stricture, severe nocturnal aspiration, Barrett's esophagus
 - anti-reflux procedure (usually laparoscopic) e.g. Nissen fundoplication
 - ♦ fundus of stomach is wrapped around the lower esophagus and sutured in place
 - ♦ 90% success rate at experienced centers

PARAESOPHAGEAL HIATUS HERNIA (Type II)

- see Figure 6
- herniation of all or part of the stomach through the esophageal hiatus into the thorax with an undisplaced GE junction
- least common esophageal hernia (<10%)

Clinical Features

- usually asymptomatic due to normal GE junction
- pressure sensation in lower chest, dysphagia

Complications

- hemorrhage, incarceration, strangulation (gastric volvulus), obstruction, gastric stasis ulcer (Cameron lesions – causes Fe-deficiency anemia)

Treatment

- surgery to prevent severe complications
 - reduce hernia and excise hernia sac, repair defect at hiatus, and anti-reflux procedure (e.g. Nissen fundoplication)
 - may consider suturing stomach to anterior abdominal wall (gastropexy)
 - in very elderly patients at high surgical risk consider PEG (percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy)

MIXED HIATUS HERNIA (Type III)

- see Figure 6
- combination of Types I and II

TYPE IV HERNIA

- herniation of other abdominal organs into thorax: colon, spleen, small bowel

**Differential Diagnosis of Hiatus Hernia**

GI Causes	Non-GI Causes
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cholelithiasis • Diverticulitis • Peptic ulcer • Achalasia • Pancreatitis • GERD • Gastritis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MI • Angina • Pericarditis

Esophageal Perforation

Etiology

- iatrogenic (most common)
 - endoscopic, dilatation, biopsy, intubation, operative, NGT placement
- barogenic
 - trauma
 - repeated, forceful vomiting (Boerhaave's syndrome)
 - other: convulsions, defecation, labor (rare)
- ingestion injury
 - foreign body, corrosive substance
- carcinoma

Clinical Features

- neck or chest pain
- fever, tachycardia, hypotension, dyspnea, respiratory compromise
- subcutaneous emphysema, pneumothorax, hematemesis

Investigations

- CXR: pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, pleural effusion, subdiaphragmatic air
- CT chest: widened mediastinum, pneumomediastinum
- contrast swallow (water-soluble then thin barium): contrast extravasation

Treatment

- supportive if rupture is contained
 - NPO, vigorous fluid resuscitation, broad-spectrum antibiotics, possible percutaneous drainage
- surgical
 - <24 h
 - ♦ primary closure of a healthy esophagus or resection of diseased esophagus
 - >24 h or non-viable wound edges
 - ♦ diversion and exclusion followed by delayed reconstruction (i.e. cervical esophagostomy ("spit fistula") proximally, close esophagus distally; gastrostomy/jejunostomy tube for decompression/feeding)

Complications

- sepsis, abscess, fistula, empyema, mediastinitis, death
- post-operative esophageal leak
- mortality 10-50% dependent on timing of diagnosis



Boerhaave's Syndrome: transmural esophageal perforation

Mallory-Weiss Tear: non-transmural esophageal tear (partial thickness tear)

Both are associated with forceful emesis



6Ss of SCC

Smoking
Spirits (alcohol)
Seeds (betel nut)
Scalding (hot liquid)
Strictures
Sack (diverticula)



Perioperative Chemo(radio)therapy vs. Primary Surgery for Resectable Adenocarcinoma of the Stomach, Gastroesophageal Junction, and Lower Esophagus

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;5:CD008107

Study: Review of RCTs to examine the effect of perioperative chemotherapy for gastroesophageal adenocarcinoma on survival and other clinically relevant outcomes.

Results/Conclusions: 14 RCTs, 2,422 participants.

1. Perioperative chemotherapy was associated with a significantly longer overall survival (HR 0.81, 95% CI 0.73-0.89), a relative survival increase of 19% and an absolute increase of 9%.
2. Tumors of the GE junction showed a more pronounced response to perioperative chemotherapy compared to other sites.
3. Combined chemoradiotherapy was more effective for tumors of the esophagus and GE junction compared to chemotherapy alone.
4. Perioperative chemotherapy was more effective in younger patients and is associated with longer disease-free survival, higher rates of R0 resection, and a more favorable tumor stage upon resection.
5. Resection with negative margins is a strong predictor of survival.

Esophageal Carcinoma

Epidemiology

- M:F = 3:1
- onset 50-60 yr of age
- upper (20-33%), middle (33%), lower (33-50%)
- main types:
 - most common worldwide: SCC in upper 2/3 of esophagus
 - most common in Western countries: adenocarcinoma in distal 1/3 of esophagus

Risk Factors

- geographic variation in incidence
- SCC
 - underlying esophageal disease such as strictures, diverticula, achalasia
 - smoking, alcohol, hot liquids, pickled foods (high in nitrosamines)
 - more common in patients from Asia
- adenocarcinoma
 - Barrett's esophagus (most important), smoking, obesity (increased reflux), GERD

Clinical Features

- frequently asymptomatic: late presentation
- progressive dysphagia (mechanical): first solids then liquids
- odynophagia then constant pain
- constitutional symptoms
- regurgitation and aspiration (aspiration pneumonia)
- hematemesis, anemia
- tracheoesophageal or bronchoesophageal fistula
- direct, hematogenous, or lymphatic spread
 - trachea (coughing), recurrent laryngeal nerves (hoarseness, vocal paralysis), aorta, pericardium, liver, lung, bone, celiac, and mediastinal nodes

Investigations

- barium swallow: shows narrowing – suggestive but not diagnostic
- esophagoscopy: biopsy and assess resectability
- endoscopic ultrasound (EUS)
 - visualize local disease
 - regional nodal involvement (most accurate way to stage the cancer) ± FNA
- bronchoscopy ± thoracoscopy
 - rule out airway invasion in tumors of the upper and mid esophagus
- full metastatic workup (CT head, CT chest/abdomen/pelvis, LFTs, etc.)

Treatment

- if present with distant metastatic disease
 - treat with systemic therapy and palliate symptoms (esophageal stent)
- if locally advanced (locally invasive disease or nodal disease on CT or EUS)
 - multimodal therapy
 - ♦ concurrent external beam radiation and chemotherapy (cisplatin and 5-FU)
 - ♦ possibility of curative esophagectomy after chemoradiation if disease responds well
 - if unable to tolerate multimodal therapy or if highly advanced disease, consider palliative resection, brachytherapy, or endoscopic dilatation/stenting/laser ablation for palliation
- if early stage (non-transmural and without evidence of nodal disease)
 - esophagectomy (transthoracic or trans-hiatal approach) and lymphadenectomy
 - ♦ anastomosis in chest or neck
 - ♦ stomach most often used for reconstruction; may also use colon
 - neoadjuvant chemotherapy and radiation are controversial
 - adjuvant chemotherapy ± radiation usually recommended for post-operative node-positive disease
- more advanced stages
 - neoadjuvant chemotherapy ± radiation followed by esophagectomy

Prognosis

- prognosis usually poor because presentation is usually at advanced stage (5 yr survival for all stages is only 17%)

OTHER DISORDERS

- esophageal varices (see [Gastroenterology, G26](#))
- Mallory-Weiss tear (see [Gastroenterology, G27](#))



Pleura, Lung, and Mediastinum

- see [Respirology, R22](#)



Tube Thoracostomy

Indications

- to drain abnormal large-volume air or fluid collections in the pleural space
 - pleural effusion, hemothorax, chylothorax, empyema
 - pneumothorax, if
 - ♦ large or progressive
 - ♦ patient is on mechanical ventilation
 - ♦ bronchopleural fistula
 - ♦ tension pneumothorax
- to treat symptomatic and/or recurrent pleural effusion
 - see [Respirology, R24](#)
 - for long-term drainage of malignant effusions
 - via facilitation of pleurodesis (obliteration of the pleural space by instilling talc or doxycycline to cause fibrosis and adherence of parietal and visceral pleura)



Complications

- overall complications are rare (1-3%)
- malposition (most common complication), especially by inexperienced operators:
 - tubes may dissect along the external chest wall, or may be placed below the diaphragm
- bleeding (anticoagulation is a relative contraindication)
- local infection, empyema
- perforation of lung parenchyma
- risk of re-expansion pulmonary edema when large volumes of air or fluid are drawn off quickly (>1.0-1.5 L)

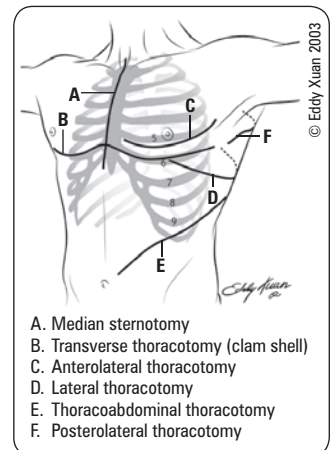


Figure 7. Typical thoracic surgery incisions

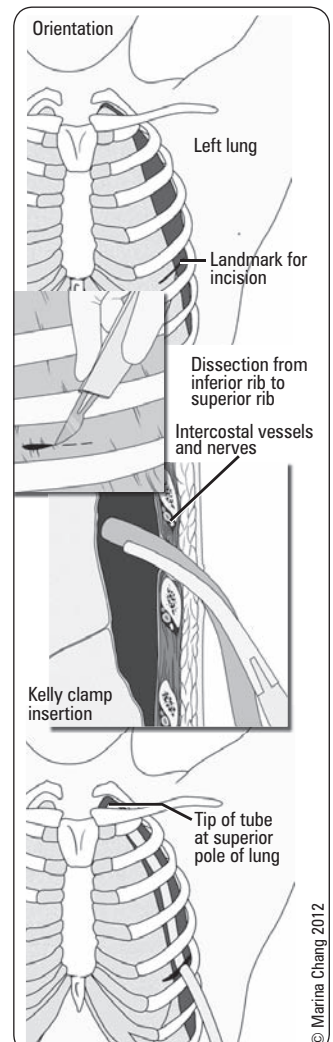


Figure 8. Tube thoracostomy



Tube thoracostomy can be completed under ultrasound guidance by an interventional radiologist or surgeon

Lung Transplantation

Conditions Leading to Transplantation

- chronic acquired lung disease: COPD
- genetic: CF, emphysema due to α -1 antitrypsin deficiency
- idiopathic interstitial pneumonias: IPF, nonspecific interstitial pneumonitis
- HTN-related: IPAHA, secondary pulmonary HTN, Eisenmenger's syndrome
- other: sarcoidosis, lymphangioleiomyomatosis, pulmonary Langerhans cell histiocytosis

Clinical Indications

- transplantation should be considered for patients with advanced lung disease refractory to maximal medical or surgical therapy
- patients who are symptomatic during activities of daily living and limited expected survival over the next 2 yr

Criteria for Transplantation

- lung allocation score based on: 1) post-transplant survival measure, and 2) waiting list urgency measure
- transplant benefit = post-transplant survival (days) – waitlist survival (days)

Contraindications

- uncontrolled or untreatable pulmonary or extrapulmonary infection
- malignancy in the last 2 yr
- advanced cardiopulmonary disease
- significant chest wall/spinal deformity
- active cigarette smoking
- HIV infection, ongoing HBV or HCV infections

Post-Operative Complications

- primary graft dysfunction: main cause is ischemia-reperfusion injury, graded by $\text{PaO}_2/\text{FiO}_2$ ratio and CXR findings
- airway anastomotic complications (focal infection, bronchial necrosis and dehiscence, excess granulation tissue, tracheobronchomalacia, stenosis, fistula)
- chronic graft dysfunction: bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome
- infectious complications (bacterial, fungal, CMV, community-acquired respiratory viruses, mycobacteria)
- malignancy (non-melanoma skin cancer, post-transplant lymphoproliferative disease, colon, breast, Kaposi's sarcoma, bladder)

Prognosis

- median survival for all adult recipients: 5.4 yr
- 1 yr survival: COPD > IPF > IPAHA
- 10 yr survival: CF, α -1 antitrypsin deficiency > IPAHA > COPD, IPF

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

- see [Respirology](#), R9

Treatment

- indications for surgical management
 - dyspnea despite maximal medical therapy and pulmonary rehabilitation
 - CT showing hyperinflation and heterogeneously distributed emphysema predominant in the upper lung zone
 - may be used as a bridging procedure to lung transplantation
- contraindications
 - age >75, cigarette smoking within the prior 6 mo, higher risk of surgical mortality
 - homogeneously distributed emphysematous changes without areas of preserved lung tissue
 - diffusing capacity of lung for carbon monoxide <20% of predicted, PaCO_2 >60 mmHg, PaO_2 <45 mmHg
- surgical procedures
 - lung volume reduction surgery: wedge excision of emphysematous tissue
 - bilateral or unilateral, thoracotomy or VATS

Complications of Treatment

- air leak: may require reintubation and mechanical ventilation
- arrhythmias, pneumonia

Prognosis

- total mortality at 2 yr same as with maximal medical therapy, but better exercise capacity and quality of life with LVRS



Long-Term Survival Analysis of the Canadian Lung Volume Reduction Surgery Trial

Ann Thorac Surg 2013;96:1217-1222

Study: Retrospective observational study assessing the long-term survival of patients enrolled in the CLVRS at 8-10 yr follow-up.

Results/Conclusions: 62 patients total. 52 patients had a median survival time of 4.11 yr. Compared with the best medical care group, patients in the LVRS group showed a 16 mo survival advantage and a 20% reduction in mortality. LVRS may provide long-term benefits in the treatment of end-stage emphysema, however, the results were not statistically significant.

Stomach and Duodenum



Peptic Ulcer Disease

GASTRIC ULCERS

- see [Gastroenterology, G12](#)

Indications for Surgery

- unresponsive to medical treatment (intractability)
 - always operate if fails to heal completely, even if biopsy negative: could be primary gastric lymphoma or adenocarcinoma
- dysplasia or carcinoma
 - always biopsy ulcer for malignancy
- hemorrhage: 3x greater risk of bleeding compared to duodenal ulcers
- complications: obstruction, perforation, bleeding
- surgical treatment is increasingly rare due to *H. pylori* eradication and medical treatment

Procedures

- distal gastrectomy with ulcer excision: Billroth I or Billroth II
- vagotomy and pyloroplasty only if acid hypersecretion (rare)
- wedge resection if possible or biopsy with primary repair

DUODENAL ULCERS

- see [Gastroenterology, Bleeding Peptic Ulcer, G13](#), and [Peptic Ulcer Disease, G12](#)
- most within 2 cm of pylorus (duodenal bulb)

Indications for Surgery

- hemorrhage, rebleed in hospital, perforation, gastric outlet obstruction
 - decision to operate based on amount of blood loss (usually >8 units), rate of bleeding, and hemodynamic stability
- intractable despite medical management (endoscopy)

Procedures

- Graham patch of perforated ulcer-plication of ulcer and omental patch
- oversewing of bleeding ulcer ± pyloroplasty
- pyloroplasty, gastroduodenostomy, or gastrojejunostomy (improved drainage)
- antrectomy (eliminate hormonal stimulation from the antrum)
- gastric resection (decrease the number of parietal cells)
- vagotomy
 - rarely done now due to *H. pylori* eradication and PPI

Complications of Surgery

- retained antrum
- fistula (gastrocolic/gastrojejunal)
- dumping syndrome, postvagotomy diarrhea, afferent loop syndrome (see [Complications of Gastric Surgery, GS20](#))



Kissing Ulcer: combination of perforation and bleeding

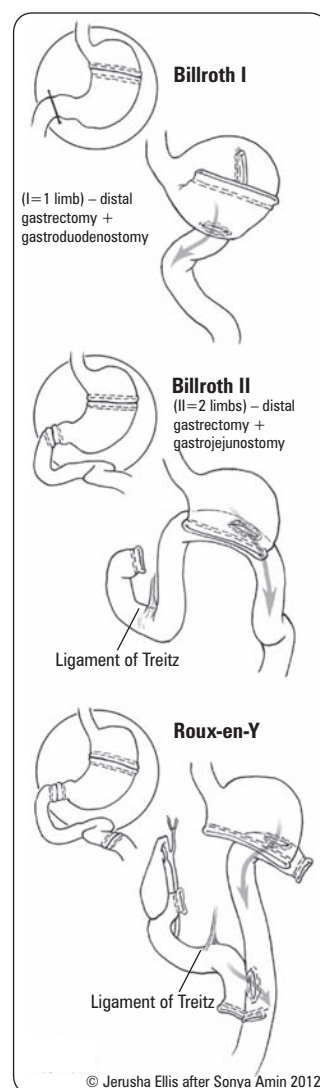


Figure 9. Billroth I and Billroth II with Roux-en-Y reconstruction (gastrojejunostomy)

Table 5. Complications of Duodenal Ulceration

Complication	Clinical Features	Management
Perforated Ulcer (typically on anterior surface)	Sudden onset of pain (possibly in RLQ due to track down right paracolic gutter) Acute abdomen: rigid, diffuse guarding Ileus Initial chemical peritonitis followed by bacterial peritonitis	Investigation: CXR – free air under diaphragm (70% of patients) Treatment: Oversew ulcer (plication) and omental (Graham) patch – most common treatment
Posterior Penetration	Elevated amylase/lipase if penetration into pancreas Constant mid-epigastric pain burrowing into back, unrelated to meals	
Hemorrhage (typically on posterior surface)	Gastroduodenal artery involvement	Resuscitation initially with crystalloids; blood transfusion if necessary Diagnostic and/or therapeutic endoscopy (laser, cautery, or injection); if recurs, may have second scope Consider interventional radiology: angiography with embolization/coiling Surgery if severe or recurrent bleeding, hemodynamically unstable, or failure of endoscopy and IR: oversewing of ulcer, pyloroplasty
Gastric Outlet Obstruction	Ulcer can lead to edema, fibrosis of pyloric channel, neoplasm N/V (undigested food, non-bilious), dilated stomach, crampy abdominal pain Succussion splash (splashing noise heard with stethoscope over the stomach when patient is shaken) Auscultate gas and fluid movement in obstructed organ	NGT decompression and correction of hypochloremic, hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis Medical management initially: high dose PPI therapy Surgical resection if obstruction does not resolve: either Billroth I, pyloroplasty, or gastrojejunostomy

Gastric Carcinoma

Epidemiology

- M:F = 3:2
- incidence of adenocarcinoma <10 (US) vs. 60 (Japan, Korea) per 100,000 (incidence highest in Asia and Latin America)
- most common age group = 50-59 yr
- incidence has decreased by 2/3 in past 50 yr

Risk Factors

- *H. pylori*, causing chronic atrophic gastritis
- hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), hereditary diffuse gastric carcinoma (HDGC)
- smoking, alcohol, smoked food, nitrosamines
- pernicious anemia associated with achlorhydria and chronic atrophic gastritis
- gastric adenomatous polyps
- previous partial gastrectomy (>10 yr post-gastrectomy)
- hypertrophic gastropathy
- blood type A

Clinical Features

- clinical suspicion
 - ulcer fails to heal
 - lesion on greater curvature of stomach or cardia
- asymptomatic, insidious, or late onset of symptoms
 - postprandial abdominal fullness, vague epigastric pain
 - anorexia, weight loss
 - burping, N/V, dyspepsia, dysphagia
 - hepatomegaly, epigastric mass (25%)
 - hematemeses, fecal occult blood, melena, iron-deficiency anemia
- metastasis:
 - peritoneum, liver, lung, brain

Investigations

- OGD and biopsy; EUS to assess pre-operative T-stage and N-stage
- CT chest/abdomen/pelvis CT (for metastatic workup see Table 7)



Signs of Metastatic Gastric Carcinoma

Virchow's Node: left supraclavicular node

Blumer's Shelf: mass in pouch of Douglas

Krukenberg Tumor: metastases to ovary

Sister Mary Joseph Node: umbilical metastases

Irish's Node: left axillary nodes

Table 6. TNM Classification System for Staging of Gastric Carcinoma (AJCC/IUCC 2010)

Primary Tumor (T)		Regional Lymph Nodes (N)		Distant Metastasis (M)	
T0	No evidence of primary tumor	NX	Cannot be assessed	M0	No distant metastasis
Tis	Carcinoma <i>in situ</i>	N0	No regional node metastasis	M1	Distant metastasis
T1a	Invasion into lamina propria or muscularis mucosae	N1	Metastasis in 1-2 regional nodes		
T1b	Invasion into submucosa	N2	Metastasis in 3-6 regional nodes		
T2	Invasion into muscularis propria	N3a	Metastasis in 7-15 regional nodes		
T3	Penetration of subserosal connective tissue without tissue invasion of visceral peritoneum or adjacent structures	N3b	Metastasis in ≥16 regional nodes		
T4a	Invasion into serosa				
T4b	Invasion into adjacent structures				

Treatment

- adenocarcinoma
 - proximal lesions
 - ♦ total gastrectomy and Roux-en-Y esophagojejunostomy
 - distal lesions
 - ♦ distal gastrectomy or subtotal gastrectomy: wide (5-6 cm) margins, en bloc removal of omentum and lymph nodes
 - palliation
 - ♦ gastric resection to decrease bleeding and relieve obstruction, enables the patient to eat
 - ♦ radiation therapy
 - ♦ studies are showing larger role for chemotherapy
- lymphoma
 - *H. pylori* eradication, chemotherapy ± radiation, surgery in limited cases (perforation, bleeding, obstruction)

**Staging and 5 Yr Survival Rates for Gastric Cancer**

Stage	TNM	5 Year Survival
IA	T1N0M0	71%
IB	T2N0M0 T1N1M0	57%
IIA	T3N0M0 T2N1M0 T1T2M0	45%
IIB	T4aN0M0 T3N1M0 T2N2M0 T1N3M0	33%
IIIA	T4aN1M0 T3T2M0 T2N3M0	20%
IIIB	T4bN0M0 T4bN1M0 T4aN2M0 T3N3M0	14%
IIIC	T4bN2M0 T4bN3M0 T4aN3M0	9%
IV	TxNxM1	4%

Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumor

Epidemiology

- most common mesenchymal neoplasm of GI tract
- derived from interstitial cells of Cajal (cells associated with Auerbach's plexus that have autonomous pacemaker function which coordinate peristalsis throughout the GI tract)
- 75-80% associated with tyrosine kinase (c-KIT) mutations
- most common in stomach (50%) and proximal small intestine (25%), but can occur anywhere along GI tract
- typically present with vague abdominal mass, feeling of abdominal fullness, or with secondary symptoms of bleeding and anemia
- often discovered incidentally on CT, laparotomy, or endoscopy

Risk Factors

- Carney's triad: GISTs, paraganglioma, and pulmonary chondroma
- Type IA neurofibromatosis

Investigations

- EUS is helpful
- pre-operative biopsy: controversial, but useful for indeterminate lesions:
 - not recommended if index of suspicion for GIST is high
 - percutaneous biopsy is NOT recommended due to high friability and risk of peritoneal spread

Treatment

- surgical resection if >2 cm; follow with serial endoscopy if <2 cm and resect if growing or symptomatic
- localized GIST
 - surgical resection with preservation of intact pseudocapsule
 - lymphadenectomy NOT recommended, as GISTs rarely metastasize to lymph nodes
 - consider imatinib post-operative for high-risk GIST (large, >4 cm with significant mitotic activity)
- advanced disease (i.e. metastases to liver and/or peritoneal cavity)
 - chemotherapy with imatinib


Bariatric (Weight Loss) Surgery for Obesity is Considered when Other Treatments have Failed
Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;2:CD003641
Benefits

- Greater weight loss in patients with BMI >30 at 2 yr.
- Reduction in comorbidities (type 2 DM, HTN, and medication use).
- Improvement in quality of life at 2 yr (physical function, physical role, general health, vitality, and emotional role).

Risks

- Complications: leaks, hernias, infection, pulmonary embolism, post-operative mortality.
- Side effects specific to type of procedure (i.e. vomiting, dumping syndrome, food intolerance).
- Cholecystitis occurs as a result of rapid weight loss.

Prognosis

- risk of metastatic potential depends on
 - tumor size (worse if >10 cm)
 - mitotic activity (worse if >5 mitotic figures or 50/hpf)
 - degree of nuclear pleomorphism
 - location: with identical sizes, extra-gastric location has a higher risk of progression than GISTs in the stomach
- metastases to liver, omentum, peritoneum; nodal metastases rare

Bariatric Surgery

- weight reduction surgery for morbid obesity
- indications: BMI >40 or BMI >35 with related comorbidity (e.g. DM, CAD, sleep apnea, HTN, severe joint disease)
- requires multidisciplinary evaluation and follow-up

Surgical Options

- malabsorptive/restrictive
 - laparoscopic Roux-en-Y gastric bypass (most common – see Figure 9)
 - staple off small gastric pouch (restrictive) with Roux-en-Y limb to pouch (malabsorptive) with dumping syndrome physiology
 - most effective, higher complication rates
- restrictive
 - laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding
 - ♦ silicone band around fundus creates pouch, adjustable through port under skin
 - laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy
 - ♦ resects most of the greater curvature (about 75% of the stomach); becoming popular weight-loss procedure
- malabsorptive
 - biliopancreatic diversion with duodenal switch
 - gastrectomy, enteroenterostomy, duodenal division closure and duodenoenterostomy

Complications

- perioperative mortality ~1% (anastomotic leak with peritoneal signs, PE)
- obstruction at enteroenterostomy (see *Complications of Gastric Surgery, below*)
- staple line dehiscence
- internal hernias
- dumping syndrome
- cholelithiasis due to rapid weight loss (20-30%)
- band abscess (if long-term)

Complications of Gastric Surgery

- most resolve within 1 yr

Alkaline Reflux Gastritis (see Figure 10A)

- duodenal contents (bilious) reflux into stomach causing gastritis ± esophagitis
- treatment
 - medical: H₂-blocker, metoclopramide, cholestyramine (bile acid sequestrant)
 - surgical: conversion of Billroth I or II to Roux-en-Y

Afferent Loop Syndrome (see Figure 10B)

- accumulation of bile and pancreatic secretions causes intermittent mechanical obstruction and distention of afferent limb
- clinical features
 - early postprandial distention, RUQ pain, nausea, bilious vomiting, anemia
- treatment: surgery (conversion to Roux-en-Y increases afferent loop drainage)

Dumping Syndrome (see Figure 10C)

- early – 15 min post-prandial
 - etiology
 - ♦ hyperosmotic chyme released into small bowel (fluid accumulation and jejunal distention)
 - clinical features
 - ♦ post-prandial symptoms
 - ♦ epigastric fullness or pain, emesis, nausea, diarrhea, palpitations, dizziness, tachycardia, diaphoresis

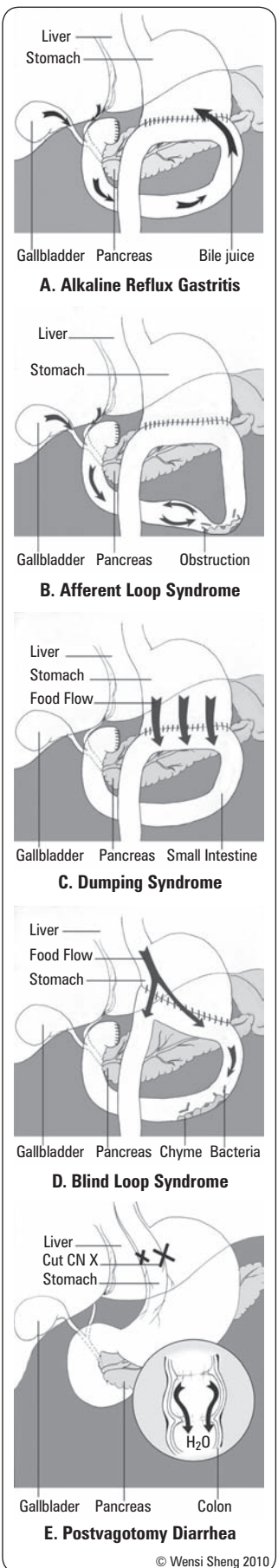


Figure 10. Complications of gastric surgery

- treatment
 - ♦ small multiple low carbohydrate, low fat, and high protein meals and avoidance of liquids with meals
 - ♦ last resort is interposition of antiperistaltic jejunal loop between stomach and small bowel to delay gastric emptying
- late – 3 h post-prandial
 - etiology: large glucose load leads to large insulin release and hypoglycemia
 - treatment: small snack 2 h after meals



Keep/maintain a very low threshold for laparoscopy in patients with abdominal pain after gastric bypass

Blind-Loop Syndrome (see Figure 10D)

- bacterial overgrowth of colonic Gram-negative bacteria in afferent limb
- clinical features
 - anemia/weakness, diarrhea, malnutrition, abdominal pain, and hypocalcemia
- treatment: broad-spectrum antibiotics, surgery (conversion to Billroth I)

Postvagotomy Diarrhea (see Figure 10E)

- up to 25%
- bile salts in colon inhibit water resorption
- treatment: medical (cholestyramine), surgical (reversed interposition jejunal segment)

Small Intestine

Tumors of Small Intestine

BENIGN TUMORS

- 10x more common than malignant
- usually asymptomatic until large
- most common sites: terminal ileum, proximal jejunum
- polyps
 - adenomas
 - hamartomas
 - FAP (see *Familial Colon Cancer Syndromes*, GS33)
 - juvenile polyps
- other: leiomyomas, lipomas, hemangiomas



Malignant Tumors – ACLS

Adenocarcinoma Most common
 Carcinoid
 Lymphoma
 Sarcoma ↓
 Least common



Carcinoid Syndrome Symptoms – FDR

Flushing
 Diarrhea
 Right-sided heart failure

Table 7. Malignant Tumors of the Small Intestine

	Adenocarcinoma	Carcinoid	Lymphoma	Metastatic
Epidemiology	Usually 50-70 yr M>F	Increased incidence 50-60 yr	Highest incidence in 70s M>F Usually non-Hodgkin's lymphoma	Most common site of GI metastases in patients with metastatic melanoma
Risk Factors	Crohn's, FAP, history of CRC, HNPCC		Crohn's, celiac disease, autoimmune disease, immunosuppression, radiation therapy, nodular lymphoid hyperplasia	Melanoma, breast, lung, ovary, colon, cervical cancer
Clinical Features	Early metastasis to lymph nodes 80% metastatic at time of operation Abdominal pain (common)	N/V, anemia, GI bleeding, jaundice, weight loss (less common) Often slow-growing Usually asymptomatic, incidental finding Obstruction, bleeding, crampy abdominal pain, intussusception Carcinoid syndrome (<10%) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hot flashes, hypotension, diarrhea, bronchoconstriction, right heart failure • Requires liver involvement: lesion secretes serotonin, kinins, and vasoactive peptides directly to systemic circulation (normally inactivated by liver) 	Fatigue, weight loss, fever malabsorption, abdominal pain, anorexia, vomiting, constipation, mass Rarely – perforation, obstruction, bleeding, intussusception	Obstruction and bleeding
Investigations	CT abdomen/pelvis Endoscopy	Most found incidentally at surgery for obstruction or appendectomy Chest thorax/abdomen/pelvis Consider small bowel enteroclysis to look for primary Elevated 5-HIAA (breakdown product of serotonin) in urine or increased 5-HT in blood Radiolabelled octreotide or MIBG scans to locate tumor	CT abdomen/pelvis	CT abdomen/pelvis

Table 7. Malignant Tumors of the Small Intestine (continued)

	Adenocarcinoma	Carcinoid	Lymphoma	Metastatic
Treatment	Surgical resection ± chemotherapy	Surgical resection Carcinoid syndrome treated with steroids, histamine, octreotide Metastatic risk 2% if size <1 cm, 90% if >2 cm	Low grade: chemotherapy with cyclophosphamide High grade: surgical resection, radiation Palliative: somatostatin, doxorubicin	Palliation
Prognosis	5 yr survival 25% (if node positive)	5 yr survival 70%; 20% with liver metastases	5 yr survival 40%	Poor
Origin/Location	Usually in proximal small bowel, incidence decreases distally	Classified based on embryological origin (foregut, midgut, hindgut) Originate from gut enterochromaffin cell Appendix 46%, distal ileum 28%, rectum 17%	Usually distal ileum Proximal jejunum in patients with celiac disease	Hematogenous spread from breast, lung, kidney Direct extension from cervix, ovaries, colon
Staging System	TNM	TNM	Ann Arbor	

Abdominal Hernia

- see *Hiatus Hernia*, GS13

Definition

- defect in abdominal wall causing abnormal protrusion of intra-abdominal contents

Epidemiology

- M:F = 9:1
- lifetime risk of developing a hernia: males 20-25%, females 2%
- frequency of occurrence: 50% indirect inguinal, 25% direct inguinal, 8-10% incisional (ventral), 5% femoral, 3-8% umbilical
- most common surgical disease of males

Risk Factors

- activities which increase intra-abdominal pressure
 - obesity, chronic cough, asthma, COPD, pregnancy, constipation, bladder outlet obstruction, ascites, heavy lifting
- congenital abnormality (e.g. patent processus vaginalis, indirect inguinal hernia)
- previous hernia repair, especially if complicated by wound infection
- loss of tissue strength and elasticity (e.g. hiatus hernia, aging, repetitive stress)

Clinical Features

- mass of variable size
- tenderness worse at end of day, relieved with supine position or with reduction
- abdominal fullness, vomiting, constipation
- transmits palpable impulse with coughing or straining

Investigations

- physical examination usually sufficient
- ultrasound ± CT (CT required for obturator hernias, internal abdominal hernias and Spigelian and/or femoral hernias in obese patients)

Classification

- complete: hernia sac and contents protrude through defect
- incomplete: partial protrusion through the defect
- internal hernia: sac herniating into or involving intra-abdominal structure
- external hernia: sac protrudes completely through abdominal wall
- strangulated hernia: vascular supply of protruded viscus is compromised (ischemia)
 - requires **emergency** repair
- incarcerated hernia: irreducible hernia, not necessarily strangulated
- Richter's hernia: only part of bowel circumference (usually anti-mesenteric border) is incarcerated or strangulated so may not be obstructed
 - a strangulated Richter's hernia may self-reduce and thus be overlooked, leaving a gangrenous segment at risk of perforation in the absence of obstructive symptoms
- sliding hernia: part of wall of hernia sac formed by retroperitoneal structure (usually colon)

Anatomical Types

- groin
 - indirect and direct inguinal, femoral (see [Figure 13](#))
 - pantaloon: combined direct and indirect hernias, peritoneum draped over inferior epigastric vessels
- epigastric: defect in linea alba above umbilicus
- incisional: ventral hernia at site of wound closure, may be secondary to wound infection
- other: Littre's (involving Meckel's), Amyand's (containing appendix), lumbar, obturator, peristomal, umbilical, Spigelian (ventral hernia through linea semilunaris), Grynfeltt-Lesshaft hernia (superior lumbar hernia), Petit's hernia (inferior lumbar triangle)

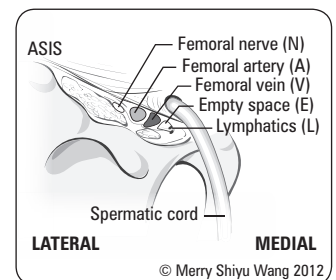


Figure 11. Normal inguinal anatomy



Borders of Hesselbach's Triangle

- Lateral: inferior epigastric artery
- Inferior: inguinal ligament
- Medial: lateral margin of rectus sheath

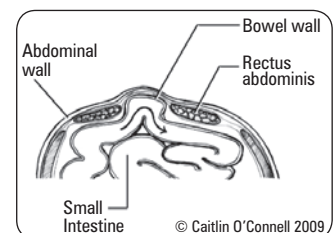


Figure 12. Richter's hernia



Inguinal canal walls = MALT x 2

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 2M Roof | 2 muscles (internal oblique, transversus abdominis) |
| 2A Ant. wall | 2 aponeuroses (external and internal oblique) |
| 2L Floor | 2 ligaments (inguinal and lacunar) |
| 2Ts Post. wall | 2T (transversalis fascia, conjoint tendon) |

Complications

- incarceration
- strangulation
 - small, new hernias more likely to strangulate
 - femoral >> indirect inguinal > direct inguinal
 - intense pain followed by tenderness
 - intestinal obstruction, gangrenous bowel, sepsis
 - surgical emergency
 - **DO NOT** attempt to manually reduce hernia if septic or if contents of hernial sac gangrenous
 - ♦ will cause closed loop SBO – and EMERGENCY

Treatment

- surgical treatment (herniorrhaphy) is only to prevent strangulation and evisceration, for symptomatic relief, for cosmesis; if asymptomatic can delay surgery
- repair may be done open or laparoscopic and may use mesh for tension-free closure
- most repairs are now done using tension-free techniques – a plug in the hernial defect and a patch over it or patch alone
- observation is acceptable for small asymptomatic inguinal hernias

Post-Operative Complications

- recurrence (15-20%)
 - risk factors: recurrent hernia, age >50, smoking, BMI >25, poor pre-operative functional status (ASA ≥3 – see [Anesthesia, A3](#)), associated medical conditions: type 2 DM, hyperlipidemia, immunosuppression, any comorbid conditions increasing intra-abdominal pressure
 - less common with mesh/"tension-free" repair
- scrotal hematoma (3%)
 - painful scrotal swelling from compromised venous return of testes
 - deep bleeding: may enter retroperitoneal space and not be initially apparent
 - difficulty voiding
- nerve entrapment
 - ilioinguinal (causes numbness of inner thigh or lateral scrotum)
 - genital branch of genitofemoral (in spermatic cord)
- stenosis/occlusion of femoral vein
 - acute leg swelling
- ischemic colitis



Watchful Waiting vs. Repair of Inguinal Hernia in Minimally Symptomatic Men: A Randomized Clinical Trial

JAMA 2006;295:285-292

Purpose: To compare pain and the physical component score (PCS) of the Short-Form-36 Version 2 survey at 2 yr in men with minimally symptomatic inguinal hernias treated with watchful waiting or surgical repair.

Methods: RCT of 720 men (n=364 watchful waiting, n=356 surgical repair) followed up for 2-4.5 yr. Watchful-waiting patients were followed up at 6 mo and annually and watched for hernia symptoms; repair patients received standard open tension-free repair and were followed up at 3 and 6 mo and annually. The main outcome was pain and discomfort interfering with usual activities at 2 yr and change in PCS from baseline to 2 yr. Secondary outcomes were complications, patient-reported pain, functional status, activity levels, and satisfaction with care.

Results: Primary intention-to-treat outcomes were similar at 2 yr for watchful waiting vs. surgical repair: pain limiting activities (5.1% vs. 2.2%, respectively; p=0.06 [corrected]); PCS (improvement over baseline, 0.29 points vs. 0.13 points; p=0.79). Twenty-three percent of patients assigned to watchful waiting crossed over to receive surgical repair (increase in hernia-related pain was the most common reason offered); 17% assigned to receive repair crossed over to watchful waiting. Self-reported pain in watchful-waiting patients crossing over improved after repair. Occurrence of post-operative hernia-related complications was similar in patients who received repair as assigned and in watchful-waiting patients who crossed over. One watchful-waiting patient (0.3%) experienced acute hernia incarceration without strangulation within 2 yr; a second had acute incarceration with bowel obstruction at 4 yr, with a frequency of 1.8/1,000 patient/yr inclusive of patients followed up for as long as 4.5 yr.

Conclusion: Watchful waiting is an acceptable option for men with minimally symptomatic inguinal hernias. Delaying surgical repair until symptoms increase is safe because acute hernia incarcerations occur rarely.



Inguinal Hernias – MD's don't LLe

MD: Medial to the inferior epigastric a.

= Direct inguinal hernia

Ll: Lateral to the inferior epigastric a.

= Indirect inguinal hernia



Indirect Inguinal Hernias: Rule of 5s

5% lifetime incidence in males

5x more common than direct inguinal hernias

5-10x more common in males than females

Generally occur by 5th decade of life



Cooper's Ligament, which runs on the pectineal line of the pubic bone, is often exploited in hernia repair



Contents of Spermatic Cord

vas deferens, testicular artery/veins, genital branch of genitofemoral nerve, lymphatics, cremaster muscle, ± hernia sac

Groin Hernias

Table 8. Groin Hernias

	Direct Inguinal	Indirect Inguinal	Femoral
Epidemiology	1% of all men	Most common hernia in men and women M>F	Affects mostly females
Etiology	Acquired weakness of transversalis fascia "Wear and tear" Increased intra-abdominal pressure	Congenital persistence of processus vaginalis in 20% of adults	Pregnancy – weakness of pelvic floor musculature Increased intra-abdominal pressure
Anatomy	Through Hesselbach's triangle Medial to inferior epigastric artery Usually does not descend into scrotal sac	Originates in deep inguinal ring Lateral to inferior epigastric artery Often descends into scrotal sac (or labia majora)	Into femoral canal, below inguinal ligament but may override it Medial to femoral vein within femoral canal
Treatment	Surgical repair	Surgical repair	Surgical repair
Prognosis	3-4% risk of recurrence	<1% risk of recurrence	

Table 9. Superficial Inguinal Ring vs. Deep Inguinal Ring*

Superficial Inguinal Ring	Deep Inguinal Ring
Opening in external abdominal aponeurosis; palpable superior and lateral to pubic tubercle	Opening in transversalis fascia: palpable superior to mid-inguinal ligament
Medial border: medial crus of external abdominal aponeurosis	Medial border: inferior epigastric vessels
Lateral border: lateral crus of external oblique aponeurosis	Superior-lateral border: internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles
Roof: intercrural fibers	Inferior border: inguinal ligament

*see *Basic Anatomy Review*, Figure 2, GS2

Bowel Obstruction

Definition

- partial or complete blockage of the bowel resulting in failure of intestinal contents to pass through lumen

Pathogenesis

- disruption of the normal flow of intestinal contents leading to proximal dilatation and distal decompression
- may take 12-24 h to decompress, therefore passage of feces and flatus may occur after the onset of obstruction
- bowel ischemia may occur if blood supply is strangulated or if bowel wall inflammation leads to venous congestion
- bowel wall edema and disruption of normal bowel absorptive function can lead to increased intraluminal fluid and transudative fluid loss into peritoneal cavity, electrolyte disturbances

Risk Factors

- prior abdominal or pelvic surgery, abdominal wall or groin hernia, history of malignancy, prior radiation

Differential Diagnosis

- SBO, ILBO, pseudo-obstruction

Clinical Features

- must differentiate between obstruction and ileus, and characterize obstruction as small vs. large bowel, acute vs. chronic, partial vs. complete (constipation vs. obstipation), strangulating vs. non-strangulating, and with vs. without perforation
- differentiation between small and large bowel obstruction is key as LBO is a surgical emergency and often requires early surgery to avoid perforation

Table 10. Bowel Obstruction vs. Paralytic Ileus

	SBO	LBO	Paralytic Ileus
Nausea, Vomiting	Early, may be bilious	Late, may be feculent	Present
Abdominal Pain	Colicky	Colicky	Minimal or absent
Abdominal Distention	+ (prox SBO), ++ (distal SBO)	++	+
Constipation	+	+	+
Bowel Sounds	Normal, increased Absent if secondary ileus (delayed presentation)	Normal, increased (borborygmi) Absent if secondary ileus (delayed presentation)	Decreased, absent
AXR Findings	Air-fluid levels "Ladder" pattern (plicae circularis) Proximal distention (>3 cm) + no colonic gas	Air-fluid levels "Picture frame" appearance Proximal distention + distal decompression No small bowel air if competent ileocecal valve Coffee bean sign (sigmoid volvulus)	Air throughout small bowel and colon

Complications (of total obstruction)

- strangulating obstruction (10% of bowel obstructions) = **surgical emergency**
 - cramping pain turns to continuous ache, hematemesis, melena (if infarction)
 - fever, leukocytosis, tachycardia
 - peritoneal signs, early shock
 - see *Intestinal Ischemia*, GS28
- other
 - perforation: secondary to ischemia and luminal distention
 - septicemia
 - hypovolemia (due to third spacing)

Investigations

- radiological
 - upright CXR or left lateral decubitus to rule out free air, usually seen under the right hemidiaphragm
 - abdominal x-ray (3 views) to determine SBO vs. LBO vs. ileus
 - ♦ if ischemic bowel look for: free air, pneumatosis, thickened bowel wall, air in portal vein, dilated small and large bowels, thickened or hose-like haustra (normally finger-like projections)

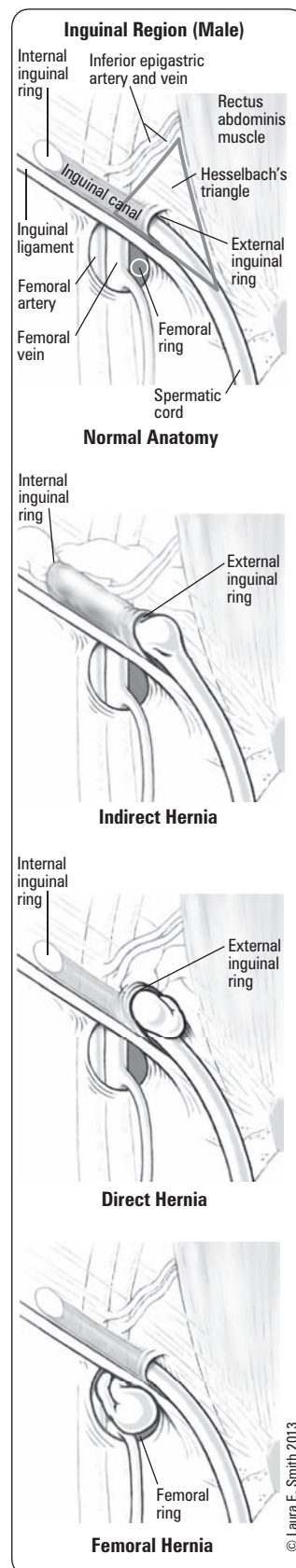


Figure 13. Schematic of inguinal (direct and indirect) and femoral hernias

- other
 - ♦ most used: CT provides information on level of obstruction, severity, cause
 - important to rule out closed loop obstruction, especially in the elderly
 - ♦ less used: upper GI series/small bowel series for SBO (if no cause apparent, i.e. no hernias, no previous surgeries)
 - ♦ if suspect LBO, consider a rectal water-soluble (Gastrografin® for PO/PR; Hypaque® for IV) enema rather than barium enema (can thicken and cause complete obstruction)
 - ♦ may consider ultrasound or MRI in pregnant patients
- laboratory
 - may be normal early in disease course
 - BUN, creatinine, hematocrit to assess degree of dehydration
 - fluid, electrolyte abnormalities
 - amylase elevated
 - metabolic alkalosis due to frequent emesis
 - if strangulation: leukocytosis with left shift, lactic acidosis, elevated LDH (late signs)

Treatment

- stabilize vitals, fluid and electrolyte resuscitation
- NGT to relieve vomiting, prevent aspiration, and decompress small bowel by prevention of further distention by swallowed air
- Foley catheter to monitor ins/outs



MUST DO

Rule out CRC in constipated patient
Send for TURP in patient with BPH (treat intra-abdominal HTN)



Increased Risk of Perforation with Distention as seen on Abdomen Imaging

- Small bowel ≥ 3 cm
- Distal colon ≥ 6 cm
- Proximal colon ≥ 9 cm
- Cecum ≥ 12 cm



Patients presenting with a SBO in setting of “virgin” abdomen should have surgery ASAP – EXCEPTION: malignant obstruction from history and imaging



In a non-virgin abdomen – adhesional SBOs resolve spontaneously with NGT decompression 70% of time



Top 3 Causes of SBO (in order)

ABC

Adhesions
Bulge (hernias)
Cancer (neoplasms)



Causes of SBO

SHAVING

Stricture
Hernia
Adhesions
Volvulus
Intussusception/IBD
Neoplasm
Gallstones



Small Bowel Obstruction

Etiology

Table 11. Common Causes of SBO

Intraluminal	Intramural	Extramural
Intussusception Gallstones	Crohn's Radiation stricture Adenocarcinoma	Adhesions Incarcerated hernia Peritoneal carcinomatosis

Treatment

- consider whether complete or partial obstruction, ongoing or impending strangulation, location and cause
 - SBO with history of abdomen/pelvic surgery → conservative management (NGT decompression, GI rest, serial abdominal exams) → surgery if no resolution in 48-72 h or complications
 - complete SBO, strangulation → urgent surgery after stabilizing patient with fluid resuscitation
 - SBO with no previous surgery and no evidence of carcinomatosis → operate
 - trial of medical management may be indicated in Crohn's, recurrent SBO, carcinomatosis
 - special case: early post-operative SBO (within 30 d of abdominal surgery) – prolonged trial of conservative therapy may be appropriate, surgery is reserved for complications such as strangulation

Prognosis

- mortality: non-strangulating <1%, strangulating 8% (25% if >36 h), ischemic = up to 50%

Large Bowel Obstruction

Etiology

Table 12. Common Causes of LBO

Intraluminal	Intramural	Extramural
Constipation	Adenocarcinoma Diverticulitis IBD stricture Radiation stricture	Volvulus Adhesions

Clinical Features (unique to LBO)

- open loop (10-20%)
 - incompetent ileocecal valve allows relief of colonic pressure as contents reflux into ileum, therefore clinical presentation similar to SBO
- closed loop (80-90%) (dangerous)
 - competent ileocecal valve, resulting in proximal and distal occlusions
 - massive colonic distention → increased pressure in cecum → bowel wall ischemia → necrosis → perforation

**Top 3 Causes of LBO (in order)**

- Cancer
- Diverticulitis
- Volvulus

Treatment

- surgical correction of obstruction (usually requires resection + temporary diverting colostomy)
- volvulus requires sigmoidoscopic or endoscopic decompression followed by operative reduction if unsuccessful
 - if successful, consider sigmoid resection on same admission
- cecal volvulus can be a true volvulus or a cecal 'bascule' (cecum folds anteriorly to the ascending colon producing a flap valve occlusion to cecal emptying) – both need surgical treatment



In a patient with clinical LBO consider impending perforation when:

- Cecum ≥ 5 in in diameter
- Tenderness present over cecum

Prognosis

- overall mortality: 10%
- cecal perforation + feculent peritonitis: 20% mortality

Colonic Pseudo-Obstruction

Definition

- condition with symptoms of intestinal blockage without any physical signs of blockage
- paralytic ileus of large bowel

Differential Diagnosis

- acute: toxic megacolon, trauma, post-operative (especially post orthopedic procedures with prolonged immobilization), neurologic disease, retroperitoneal disease, medications (narcotics, psychiatric)
- chronic: neurologic disease (enteric, central, peripheral nervous system), scleroderma

Toxic Megacolon

**Pathogenesis**

- extension of inflammation into smooth muscle layer causing paralysis
- damage to myenteric plexus and electrolyte abnormalities are not consistently found

Etiology

- inflammatory bowel disease (ulcerative colitis > Crohn's disease)
- infectious colitis: bacterial (*C. difficile*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Campylobacter*), viral (cytomegalovirus), parasitic (*E. histolytica*)

Clinical Features

- infectious colitis usually present for >1 wk before colonic dilatation
- diarrhea \pm blood (but improvement of diarrhea may portend onset of megacolon)
- abdominal distention, tenderness, \pm local/general peritoneal signs (suggest perforation)
- triggers: hypokalemia, constipating agents (opioids, antidepressants, loperamide, anticholinergics), barium enema, colonoscopy



Colon is MEGA and patient is TOXIC

Diagnostic Criteria

- must have both colitis and systemic manifestations for diagnosis
- radiologic evidence of dilated colon
- **three of:** fever, HR >120, WBC >10.5, anemia
- **one of:** fluid and electrolyte disturbances, hypotension, altered LOC

Investigations

- CBC (leukocytosis with left shift, anemia from bloody diarrhea), electrolytes, elevated CRP, ESR
- metabolic alkalosis (volume contraction and hypokalemia) and hypoalbuminemia are late findings
- AXR: dilated colon >6 cm (right > transverse > left), loss of haustra
- CT: useful to assess underlying disease

Treatment

- NPO, NGT, stop constipating agents, correct fluid and electrolyte abnormalities, transfusion
- serial AXRs
- broad-spectrum antibiotics (reduce sepsis, anticipate perforation)
- aggressive treatment of underlying disease (e.g. steroids in IBD, metronidazole for *C. difficile*)
- indications for surgery (50% improve on medical management)
 - worsening or persisting toxicity or dilation after 48-72 h
 - severe hemorrhage, perforation
 - high lactate and WBC especially for *C. difficile*
- procedure: subtotal colectomy + end ileostomy (may be temporary, with second operation for re-anastomosis later)



Use caution when giving antidiarrheals, especially with bloody diarrhea

Prognosis

- average 25-30% mortality

Paralytic Ileus

Pathogenesis

- temporary paralysis of the myenteric plexus

Associations

- post-operative, intra-abdominal sepsis, medications (opiates, anesthetics, psychotropics), electrolyte disturbances (Na^+ , K^+ , Ca^{2+}), *C. difficile*, inactivity

Treatment

- NGT decompression, NPO, fluid resuscitation, correct causative abnormalities (e.g. sepsis, medications, electrolytes), consider TPN for prolonged ileus
- post-operative: gastric and small bowel motility returns by 24-48 h, colonic motility by 3-5 d
- current interest in novel therapies such as gum chewing and pharmacologic therapy (opioid antagonists)

Ogilvie's Syndrome

- acute pseudo-obstruction
- distention of colon without mechanical obstruction in distal colon
- arises in bedridden patients with serious extraintestinal illness or trauma
- exact mechanism unknown, likely autonomic motor dysregulation → possibly sympathetic deprivation to colon, unopposed parasympathetic tone, and interruption of sacral parasympathetic tone to distal bowel
- first presents with abdominal distention (>90%) ± tenderness
- later symptoms mimic true obstruction

Associations

- most common: trauma, infection, cardiac (MI, CHF)
- disability (long-term debilitation, chronic disease, bed-bound nursing home patients, paraplegia), drugs (narcotic use, laxative abuse, polypharmacy), other (recent orthopedic or neurosurgery, post-partum, electrolyte abnormalities including hypokalemia, retroperitoneal hematoma, diffuse carcinomatosis)

Investigations

- AXR: cecal dilatation – if diameter ≥ 12 cm, increased risk of perforation

Treatment

- treat underlying cause
- NPO, NGT
- decompression: rectal tube, colonoscopy, neostigmine (cholinergic drug), surgical decompression (ostomy/resection) uncommon
- surgery (extremely rare): if perforation, ischemia, or failure of conservative management

Prognosis

- most resolve with conservative management

Intestinal Ischemia

Etiology

- acute
 - arterio-occlusive mesenteric ischemia (AOMI)
 - ♦ thrombotic, embolic, extrinsic compression (e.g. strangulating hernia)
 - non-occlusive mesenteric ischemia (NOMI)
 - ♦ mesenteric vasoconstriction secondary to systemic hypoperfusion (preserves supply to vital organs)
 - mesenteric venous thrombosis (MVT)
 - ♦ consider hypercoagulable state (i.e. rule out malignancy), DVT (prevents venous outflow)
- chronic: usually due to atherosclerotic disease – look for CVD risk factors

Clinical Features

- acute: severe abdominal pain out of proportion to physical findings, vomiting, bloody diarrhea, bloating, minimal peritoneal signs early in course, hypotension, shock, sepsis
- chronic: postprandial pain, fear of eating, weight loss
- common sites: SMA supplied territory, “watershed” areas of colon – splenic flexure, left colon, sigmoid colon

Investigations

- laboratory: leukocytosis (non-specific), lactic acidosis (late finding)
 - amylase, LDH, CK, ALP can be used to observe progress
 - hypercoagulability workup if suspect venous thrombosis
- AXR: portal venous gas, intestinal pneumatosis, free air if perforation
- contrast CT: thickened bowel wall, luminal dilatation, SMA or SMV thrombus, mesenteric/portal venous gas, pneumatosis
- CT angiography is the gold standard for acute arterial ischemia

Treatment

- fluid resuscitation, correct metabolic acidosis, NPO, NGT decompression of stomach, prophylactic broad-spectrum antibiotics, avoid vasoconstrictors and digitalis
- exploratory laparotomy
- angiogram, embolectomy/thrombectomy, bypass/graft, mesenteric endarterectomy, anticoagulation therapy, percutaneous transluminal angioplasty ± stent
- segmental resection of necrotic intestine
 - assess extent of viability; if extent of bowel viability is uncertain, a second look laparotomy 12-24 h later is mandatory



Pain “out of keeping with physical findings” is the hallmark of early intestinal ischemia



An acute abdomen + metabolic acidosis is bowel ischemia until proven otherwise

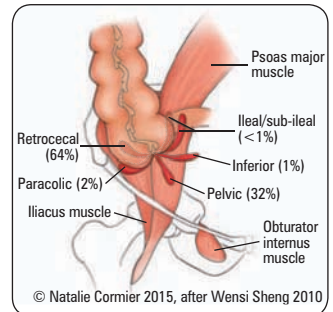


Figure 14. Appendix anatomy

Appendix

Appendicitis

Epidemiology

- 6% of population, M>F
- 80% between 5-35 yr of age

Pathogenesis

- luminal obstruction → bacterial overgrowth → inflammation/swelling → increased pressure → localized ischemia → gangrene/perforation → localized abscess (walled off by omentum) or peritonitis
- etiology
 - children or young adult: hyperplasia of lymphoid follicles, initiated by infection
 - adult: fibrosis/stricture, fecolith, obstructing neoplasm
 - other causes: parasites, foreign body

Clinical Features

- most reliable feature is progression of signs and symptoms
- low grade fever (38°C), rises if perforation
- abdominal pain then anorexia, N/V
- classic pattern: pain initially periumbilical; constant, dull, poorly localized, then well localized pain over McBurney's point
 - due to progression of disease from visceral irritation (causing referred pain from structures of the embryonic midgut, including the appendix) to irritation of parietal structures
 - McBurney's sign



McBurney's Sign

Tenderness 1/3 the distance from the ASIS to the umbilicus on the right side



Laparoscopic vs. Open Appendectomy

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2010;10:CD001546

Laparoscopic Surgery

- Wound infection less likely
- Intra-abdominal abscesses 2x more likely
- Reduced pain on POD #1
- Reduced hospital stay by 1.1 d
- Sooner return to normal activity, work, and sport
- Costs outside hospital are reduced

Open Surgery

- Shorter duration of surgery
- Lower operation costs

Overview

Diagnostic laparoscopy and laparoscopic appendectomy appear to be advantageous over open appendectomy, particularly for young female patients and obese patients.

- signs
 - inferior appendix: McBurney's sign (see sidebar GS28), Rovsing's sign (palpation pressure to left abdomen causes McBurney's point tenderness). McBurney's sign is present whenever the opening of the appendix at the cecum is directly under McBurney's point; therefore McBurney's sign is present even when the appendix is in different locations
 - retrocecal appendix: psoas sign (pain on flexion of hip against resistance or passive hyperextension of hip)
 - pelvic appendix: obturator sign (flexion then external or internal rotation about right hip causes pain)
- complications
 - perforation (especially if >24 h duration)
 - abscess, phlegmon

Investigations

- laboratory
 - mild leukocytosis with left shift (may have normal WBC counts)
 - higher leukocyte count with perforation
 - β -hCG to rule out ectopic pregnancy
 - urinalysis
- imaging
 - ultrasound: may visualize appendix, but also helps rule out gynecological causes – overall accuracy 90-94%, can rule in but cannot rule out appendicitis (if >0.2 in, SENS/SPEC/NPV/PPV 98%)
 - upright CXR, AXR: usually nonspecific – free air if perforated (rarely), calcified fecolith, loss of psoas shadow, RLQ ileus
 - CT scan: thick wall, appendicolith, inflammatory changes – overall accuracy 94-100%, optimal investigation

Treatment

- hydrate, correct electrolyte abnormalities
- surgery (gold standard, 20% mortality with perforation especially in elderly) + antibiotic coverage
- if localized abscess (palpable mass or large phlegmon on imaging and often pain >4-5 d), consider radiologic drainage + antibiotics x 14 d \pm interval appendectomy in 6 wk (controversial)
- appendectomy
 - laparoscopic vs. open (see sidebar)
 - complications: spillage of bowel contents, pelvic abscess, enterocutaneous fistula
 - perioperative antibiotics:
 - ♦ cefazolin + metronidazole (no post-operative antibiotic unless perforated)
 - ♦ other choices: 2nd/3rd generation cephalosporin for aerobic gut organisms
- colonoscopy in the elderly to rule out other etiology (neoplasm)

Prognosis

- mortality rate: 0.08% (non-perforated), 0.5% (perforated appendicitis)



Effect of Delay to Operation on Outcomes in Adults with Acute Appendicitis

Arch Surg 2010;145:886-892

Purpose: To examine the effect of delay to appendectomy on morbidity and mortality among adults with appendicitis.

Method: Retrospective cohort study with the main exposure being time to operation, and main outcomes being 30-d overall morbidity and serious morbidity/mortality.

Results: Of 32,782 patients in the study, 75.2%, 15.1%, and 9.8% underwent surgeries within 6 h, 6-12 h, and >12 h of admission, respectively. Differences in operative duration and length of post-operative stay were statistically significant but not clinically meaningful. No significant differences were observed in adjusted overall morbidity or serious morbidity/mortality. Duration from surgical admission to anesthesia induction was not predictive in regression models for either outcomes.

Conclusions: Delay of appendectomy for acute appendicitis among adults does not adversely affect outcomes.



Antibiotics vs. Placebo for Prevention of Post-Operative Infection After Appendectomy

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2005;3:CD001439

Purpose: To determine the effectiveness of antibiotics against post-operative infections after appendectomy.

Method: Meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials (RCTs) and controlled clinical trials (CCTs), on both adults and children, in which any antibiotic regime was compared to placebo in patients undergoing appendectomy for suspected appendicitis. The main outcomes of interest were wound infection, intra-abdominal abscess, length of hospital stay, and mortality.

Results: 45 studies (n=9,576) were included. Treatment with antibiotics decreased wound infection and abscess rates.

Conclusion: Various prophylactic antibiotic regimens are effective in preventing post-operative complications after appendectomy.

Tumors of the Appendix

CARCINOID TUMORS (most common type)

- see *Tumors of Small Intestine: Carcinoid*, GS21

ADENOCARCINOMA

- 50% present as acute appendicitis
- spreads rapidly to lymph nodes, ovaries, and peritoneal surfaces
- treatment: right hemicolectomy

Inflammatory Bowel Disease

- see *Gastroenterology*, G19

Principles of Surgical Management

- can alleviate symptoms, address complications, improve quality of life
- conserve bowel: resect as little as possible to avoid short gut syndrome
- perioperative management
 - optimize medical status: may require TPN (especially if >7 d NPO) and bowel rest
 - hold immunosuppressive therapy pre-operative, provide pre-operative stress dose of corticosteroid if patient had recent steroid therapy, taper steroids post-operative
 - DVT prophylaxis: heparin (IBD patients at increased risk of thromboembolic events)



Crohn's Disease

- see [Gastroenterology, G20](#)

Treatment

- surgery is NOT curative, but over lifetime ~70% of Crohn's patients will have surgery
- indications for surgical management
 - failure of medical management
 - SBO (due to stricture/inflammation): indication in 50% of surgical cases
 - abscess, fistula (enterocolic, vesicular, vaginal, cutaneous abscess), quality of life, perforation, hemorrhage, chronic disability, failure to thrive (children), perianal disease
- surgical procedures
 - resection and anastomosis/stoma if active or subacute inflammation, perforation, fistula
 - ♦ resection margin only has to be free of gross disease (microscopic disease irrelevant to prognosis)
 - stricturoplasty – widens lumen in chronically scarred bowel: relieves obstruction without resecting bowel (contraindicated in acute inflammation)

Complications of Treatment

- short gut syndrome (diarrhea, steatorrhea, malnutrition)
- fistulas
- gallstones (if terminal ileum resected, decreased bile salt resorption → increased cholesterol precipitation)
- kidney stones (loss of calcium in diarrhea → increased oxalate absorption and hyperoxaluria → stones)

Prognosis

- recurrence rate at 10 yr: ileocolic (25-50%), small bowel (50%), colonic (40-50%)
- re-operation at 5 yr: primary resection (20%), bypass (50%), stricturoplasty (10% at 1 yr)
- 80-85% of patients who need surgery lead normal lives
- mortality: 15% at 30 yr



Crohn's 3 Major Patterns

- Ileocecal 40% (RLQ pain, fever, weight loss)
- Small intestine 30% (especially terminal ileum)
- Colon 25% (diarrhea)



Findings in Crohn's

- "Cobblestoning" on mucosal surface due to edema and linear ulcerations
- "Skip lesions": normal mucosa in between
- "Creeping fat": mesentery infiltrated by fat
- Granulomas: 25-30%



Findings in Ulcerative Colitis

- Patients usually present with diarrhea (± blood in their stool)
- Associated symptoms include colicky abdominal pain, urgency, tenesmus, and incontinence
- Presence of extraintestinal manifestations
- Endoscopically, there is loss of vascular markings, erythema, granularity of mucosa, petechiae, exudates, edema, erosions, and spontaneous bleeding
- Biopsy features included crypt abscesses, crypt branching, shortening and disarray, and crypt atrophy
- Inflammation is continuous and usually involves rectum
- Barium enema: "lead-pipe appearance"

Ulcerative Colitis

- see [Gastroenterology, G22](#)

Treatment

- indications for surgical management
 - failure of medical management (including inability to taper steroids)
 - complications: hemorrhage, obstruction, perforation, toxic megacolon (emergency), failure to thrive (children)
 - reduce cancer risk (1-2% risk per year after 10 yr of disease)
- surgical procedures
 - proctocolectomy and ileal pouch-anal anastomosis (IPAA) ± rectal mucosectomy (operation of choice)
 - proctocolectomy with permanent end ileostomy (if not a candidate for ileoanal procedures)
 - colectomy and IPAA ± rectal mucosectomy
 - in emergency: total colectomy and ileostomy with Hartmann closure of the rectum, rectal preservation

Complications of Treatment

- early: bowel obstruction, transient urinary dysfunction, dehydration (high stoma output), anastomotic leak
- late: stricture, anal fistula/abscess, pouchitis, poor anorectal function, reduced fertility

Prognosis

- mortality: 5% over 10 yr
- total proctocolectomy will completely eliminate risk of cancer
- perforation of the colon is the leading cause of death from ulcerative colitis

Diverticular Disease



Definitions

- diverticulum: abnormal sac-like protrusion from the wall of a hollow organ
- diverticulosis: presence of multiple diverticula
- diverticulitis: inflammation of diverticula
- true (congenital) diverticuli: contain all layers of colonic wall, often right-sided
- false (acquired) diverticuli: contain mucosa and submucosa, often left-sided

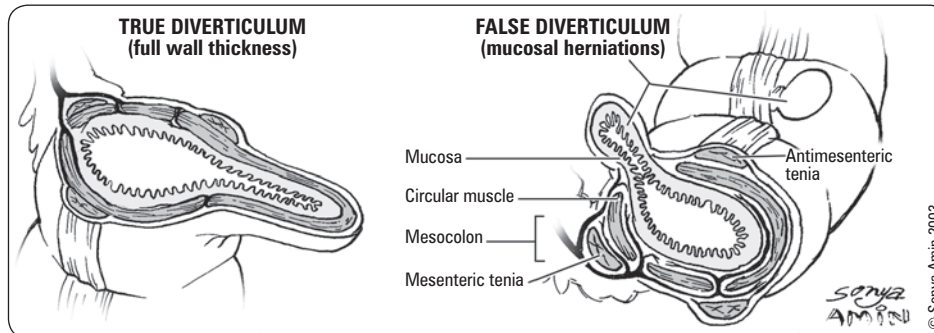


Figure 15. Diverticular disease – cross-sections of true and false diverticuli

Diverticulosis

Epidemiology

- 5-50% of Western population, lower incidence in non-Western countries, M=F
- prevalence is age dependent: <5% by age 40, 30% by age 60, 65% by age 85
- 95% involve sigmoid colon (site of highest pressure)

Pathogenesis

- risk factors
 - lifestyle: low-fiber diet (predispose to motility abnormalities and higher intraluminal pressure) inactivity, obesity
 - muscle wall weakness from aging and illness (e.g. Ehler-Danlos, Marfan's)
- high intraluminal pressures cause outpouching to occur at point of greatest weakness, most commonly where vasa recta penetrate the circular muscle layer, therefore increased risk of hemorrhage

Clinical Features

- uncomplicated diverticulosis: asymptomatic (70-80%)
- episodic abdominal pain (often LLQ), bloating, flatulence, constipation, diarrhea
- absence of fever/leukocytosis
- no physical exam findings or poorly localized LLQ tenderness
- complications
 - diverticulitis (15-25%): 25% of which are complicated (i.e. abscess, obstruction, perforation, fistula)
 - bleeding (5-15%): PAINLESS rectal bleeding, 30-50% of massive LGIB
 - diverticular colitis (rare): diarrhea, hematochezia, tenesmus, abdominal pain

Treatment

- uncomplicated diverticulosis: high fiber, education
- diverticular bleed
 - initially workup and treat as any LGIB
 - if hemorrhage does not stop, resect involved region

Diverticulitis

Epidemiology

- 95% left-sided in patients of Western countries, 75% right-sided in Asian populations

Pathogenesis

- erosion of the wall by increased intraluminal pressure or inspissated food particles → inflammation and focal necrosis → micro or macroscopic perforation
- usually mild inflammation with perforation walled off by pericolic fat and mesentery; abscess, fistula, or obstruction can ensue
- poor containment results in free perforation and peritonitis



Diverticulosis vs. Diverticulitis

Diverticulosis represents the presence of diverticuli (bulging pouches) within the colonic wall, whereas diverticulitis is the inflammation of one or more diverticuli

Clinical Features

- depend on severity of inflammation and whether or not complications are present; hence ranges from asymptomatic to generalized peritonitis
- LLQ pain/tenderness (2/3 of patients) often for several days before admission
- constipation, diarrhea, N/V, urinary symptoms (with adjacent inflammation)
- complications (25% of cases)
 - abscess: palpable tender abdominal mass
 - fistula: colovesical (most common), coloenteric, colovaginal, colocutaneous
 - colonic obstruction: due to scarring from repeated inflammation
 - perforation: generalized peritonitis (feculent vs. purulent)
 - ♦ recurrent attacks rarely lead to peritonitis
- low-grade fever, mild leukocytosis common, occult or gross blood in stool rarely coexist with acute diverticulitis

Investigations

- AXR, upright CXR
 - localized diverticulitis (ileus, thickened wall, SBO, partial colonic obstruction)
 - free air may be seen in 30% with perforation and generalized peritonitis
- CT scan (test of choice): very useful for assessment of severity and prognosis; this is usually done with rectal contrast
 - 97% sensitive, 99% specific
 - increased soft tissue density within pericolic fat secondary to inflammation, diverticula secondary to inflammation, bowel wall thickening, soft tissue mass (pericolic fluid, abscesses), fistula
 - 10% of diverticulitis cannot be distinguished from carcinoma
- elective evaluations: establish extent of disease and rule out other diagnoses (polyps, malignancy) after resolution of acute episode
 - colonoscopy or barium enema and flexible sigmoidoscopy

Treatment

- uncomplicated: conservative management
- outpatient: clear fluids only until improvement and antibiotics (e.g. ciprofloxacin and metronidazole) 7-10 d to cover gram negative rods and anaerobes (e.g. *B. fragilis*)
- hospitalize: if severe presentation, inability to tolerate oral intake, significant comorbidities, fail to improve outpatient management
- treat with NPO, IVF, IV antibiotics (e.g. IV ceftriaxone + metronidazole, ampicillin, gentamicin)
- indications for surgery
 - unstable patient with peritonitis
 - Hinchey stage 3-4
 - after 1 attack if immunosuppressed
 - consider after 2 or more attacks, recent trend is toward conservative management of recurrent mild/moderate attacks
 - complications: generalized peritonitis, free air, abscess, fistula, obstruction, hemorrhage, inability to rule out colon cancer on endoscopy, or failure of medical management
- surgical procedures
 - for emergency or complex cases: Hartmann procedure: colon resection + colostomy and rectal stump → colostomy reversal in 3-6 mo
 - elective cases or minimal contamination of the abdominal cavity: consider colon resection + primary anastomosis

Prognosis

- mortality rates: 6% for purulent peritonitis, 35% for fecal peritonitis
- recurrence rates: 13-30% after first attack, 30-50% after second attack

Table 13. Hinchey Staging and Treatment for Diverticulitis

Hinchey Stage	Description	Acute treatment
1	Phlegmon/small pericolic abscess	Medical
2	Large abscess/fistula	Abscess drainage, resection ± primary anastomosis
3	Purulent peritonitis (ruptured abscess)	Hartmann procedure
4	Feculent peritonitis	Hartmann procedure

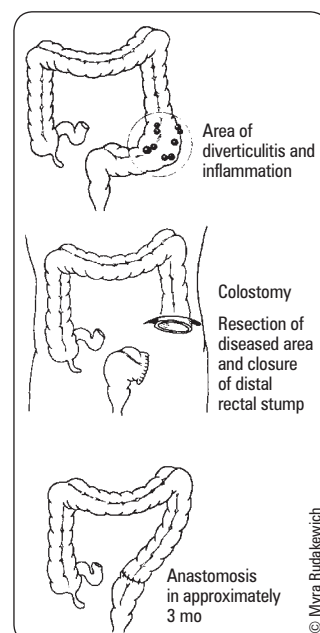


Figure 16. Hartmann procedure

Colorectal Neoplasms

Colorectal Polyps

Definition

- polyp: protuberance into the lumen of normally flat colonic mucosa
- sessile (flat) or pedunculated (on a stalk)

Epidemiology

- 30% of the population have polyps by age 50, 40% by age 60, 50% by age 70

Clinical Features

- 50% in the rectosigmoid region, 50% are multiple
- usually asymptomatic, do not typically bleed, tenesmus, intestinal obstruction, mucus
- usually detected during routine endoscopy or familial/high risk screening

Pathology

- non-neoplastic
 - hyperplastic: most common non-neoplastic polyp
 - mucosal polyps: small <0.2 in, no clinical significance
 - inflammatory pseudopolyps: associated with IBD, no malignant potential
 - submucosal polyps: lymphoid aggregates, lipomas, leiomyomas, carcinoids
- neoplastic
 - hamartomas: juvenile polyps (large bowel), Peutz-Jegher syndrome (small bowel)
 - ♦ malignant risk due to associated adenomas (large bowel)
 - ♦ low malignant potential → most spontaneously regress or autoamputate
 - adenomas: premalignant, often carcinoma *in situ*:
 - ♦ some may contain invasive carcinoma ("malignant polyp" – 3-9%): invasion into muscularis
 - ♦ malignant potential: villous > tubulovillous > tubular

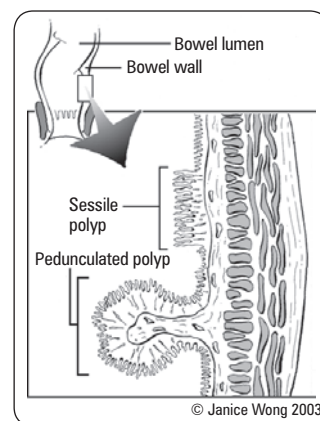


Figure 17. Sessile and pedunculated polyps

Table 14. Characteristics of Tubular vs. Villous Polyps

	Tubular	Villous
Incidence	Common (60-80%)	Less common (10%)
Size	Small (<2 cm)	Large (usually >2 cm)
Attachment	Pedunculated	Sessile
Malignant Potential	Lower	Higher
Distribution	Even	Left-sided predominance

Investigations

- colonoscopy is the gold standard for diagnosis and treatment of colonic polyps
- CT colonography: increasing in availability; patients still require bowel prep and will require colonoscopy if polyps are identified
- other: flexible sigmoidoscopy if polyps are detected, proceed to colonoscopy for examination of entire bowel and biopsy

Treatment

- indications: symptoms, malignancy or risk of malignancy (i.e. adenomatous polyps)
- endoscopic removal of entire growth
- surgical resection for those invading into muscularis (high risk of malignancy) and those too large to remove endoscopy
- follow-up endoscopy 1 yr later, then every 3-5 yr

Familial Colon Cancer Syndromes



FAMILIAL ADENOMATOUS POLYPOSIS

Pathogenesis

- autosomal dominant inheritance, mutation in adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) gene on chromosome 5q21

Clinical Features

- hundreds to thousands of colorectal adenomas usually by age 20 (by 40s in attenuated FAP)
- extracolonic manifestations
 - carcinoma of small bowel (i.e. polyps in colon), bile duct, pancreas, stomach, thyroid, adrenal, small bowel
 - congenital hypertrophy of retinal pigment epithelium presents early in life in 2/3 of patients; 97% sensitivity
 - virtually 100% lifetime risk of colon cancer (because of number of polyps)

- variants
 - Gardner's syndrome: FAP + extraintestinal lesions (sebaceous cysts, osteomas, desmoid tumors)
 - Turcot syndrome: FAP + CNS tumors (childhood cerebellar medulloblastoma)

Investigations

- genetic testing (80-95% sensitive, 99-100% specific)
- if no polyposis found: annual flexible sigmoidoscopy from puberty to age 50, then routine screening
- if polyposis or APC gene mutation found: annual colonoscopy and consider surgery (see Figure 16); consider upper endoscopy to evaluate for periampullary tumors

Treatment

- surgery indicated by age 17-20
- total proctocolectomy with ileostomy or total colectomy with ileorectal anastomosis
- doxorubicin-based chemotherapy
- NSAIDs for intra-abdominal desmoids

HEREDITARY NON-POLYPOSIS COLORECTAL CANCER – LYNCH SYNDROME

Pathogenesis

- autosomal dominant inheritance, mutation in a DNA mismatch repair gene (MSH2, MSH6, MLH1) resulting in microsatellite genomic instability and subsequent mutations
- microsatellite instability account for approximately 15% of all colorectal cancers

Clinical Features

- early age of onset, right > left colon, synchronous and metachronous lesions
- mean age of cancer presentation is 44 yr, lifetime risk 70-80% (M>F)
 - HNPCC I: hereditary site-specific colon cancer
 - HNPCC II: cancer family syndrome – high rates of extracolonic tumors (endometrial, ovarian, hepatobiliary, small bowel)

Diagnosis

- Amsterdam Criteria
 - 3 or more relatives with verified Lynch syndrome associated cancers, and 1 must be 1st degree relative of the other 2
 - 2 or more generations involved
 - 1 case must be diagnosed before 50 yr old
 - FAP is excluded
- genetic testing (80% sensitive) – colonoscopy mandatory even if negative
 - refer for genetic screening individuals who fulfill EITHER the Amsterdam Criteria (as above) OR the revised Bethesda Criteria (see sidebar)
- colonoscopy (starting age 20) annually
- surveillance for extracolonic lesions

Treatment

- total colectomy and ileorectal anastomosis with annual proctoscopy

Colorectal Carcinoma

Epidemiology

- 4th most common cancer (after lung, prostate, and breast), 2nd most common cause of cancer death

Risk Factors

- most patients have no specific risk factors
- age >50 (dominant risk factor in sporadic cases), mean age is 70
- genetic: FAP, HNPCC, family history of CRC
- colonic conditions
 - adenomatous polyps (especially if >1 cm, villous, multiple)
 - IBD (especially UC: risk is 1-2%/yr if UC >10 yr)
 - previous colorectal cancer (also gonadal or breast)
- diet (increased fat, red meat, decreased fiber) and smoking
- DM and acromegaly (insulin and IGF-1 are growth factors for colonic mucosal cells)

Pathogenesis

- adenoma-carcinoma sequence; rarely arise *de novo*



Referral Criteria for Genetic Screening for APC

- To confirm the diagnosis of FAP (in patients with ≥100 colorectal adenomas)
- To provide pre-symptomatic testing for individuals at risk for FAP (1st degree relatives who are ≥10 yr old)
- To confirm the diagnosis of attenuated FAP (in patients with ≥20 colorectal adenomas)



Revised Bethesda Criteria for HNPCC and Microsatellite Instability (MSI)

Tumors from individuals should be tested for MSI in the following situations

- Colorectal cancer diagnosed in a patient who is <50 yr
- Presence of synchronous, metachronous colorectal, or other HNPCC-associated tumors, regardless of age
- Colorectal cancer with the MSI-H histology diagnosed in a patient who is <60 yr
- Colorectal cancer diagnosed in one or more first-degree relatives with an HNPCC-related tumor, with one of the cancers being diagnosed <50 yr
- Colorectal cancer diagnosed in two or more first- or second-degree relatives with HNPCC-related tumors, regardless of age



Elderly persons who present with iron-deficiency anemia should be investigated for colon cancer



Staging for CRC

- I T1,2 N0 M0
- II T3,4 N0 M0
- III TxN+ M0
- IV TxNxM1



5-yr Survival Rates for CRC

Stage	Colon	Rectum
I	74%	74%
IIA	67%	64%
IIB	59%	52%
IIC	37%	32%
IIIA	73%	74%
IIIB	46%	45%
IIIC	28%	33%
IV	6%	6%

Clinical Features

- often asymptomatic
- hematochezia/melena, abdominal pain, change in bowel habits
- others: weakness, anemia, weight loss, palpable mass, obstruction
- 20% patients have distant metastatic disease at time of presentation
- spread
 - direct extension, lymphatic, hematogenous (liver most common, lung, bone, brain; tumor of distal rectum → IVC → lungs)
 - peritoneal seeding: ovary, Blumer's shelf (pelvic cul-de-sac)

Table 15. Clinical Presentation of CRC

	Right Colon	Left Colon	Rectum
Frequency	25%	35%	30%
Pathology	Exophytic lesions with occult bleeding	Annular, invasive lesions	Ulcerating
Symptoms	Weight loss, weakness, rarely obstruction	Constipation ± overflow (alternating bowel patterns), abdominal pain, decreased stool caliber, rectal bleeding	Obstruction, tenesmus, rectal bleeding
Signs	Fe-deficiency anemia, RLQ mass (10%)	BRBPR, LBO	Palpable mass on DRE, BRBPR

Investigations

- colonoscopy (best), look for synchronous lesions (3-5% of patients); alternative: air contrast barium enema ("apple core" lesion) + sigmoidoscopy
- if a patient is FOBT +ve, or has microcytic anemia or has a change in bowel habits, do colonoscopy
- laboratory: CBC, urinalysis, liver enzymes, liver function tests, carcinogenic embryonic antigen (CEA) (pre-operative for baseline, >5 ng/mL have worse prognosis)
- staging (see Table 16 and sidebar GS34): CT chest/abdomen/pelvis; bone scan, CT head only if lesions suspected
- rectal cancer: pelvic MRI or endorectal ultrasound to determine T and N stage

Table 16. TNM Classification System for Staging of Colorectal Carcinoma (AJCC/IUCC 2010)

Primary Tumor (T)	Regional Lymph Nodes (N)	Distant Metastasis (M)
T0 No primary tumor found	N0 No regional node involvement	M0 No distant metastasis
Tis Carcinoma <i>in situ</i>	N1 Metastasis in 1-3 regional nodes	M1 Distant metastasis
T1 Invasion into submucosa	N2 Metastasis in 4 or more regional nodes	
T2 Invasion into muscularis propria		
T3 Invasion through muscularis propria and into serosa		
T4 Invasion into adjacent structures or organs		

Treatment

- **colon cancer**
 - wide surgical resection of lesion and regional lymphatic drainage; usually colectomy with primary anastomosis
 - ♦ curative: wide resection of lesion (2 in margins) with nodes and mesentery
 - ♦ palliative: if distant spread, local control for hemorrhage or obstruction
 - ♦ care is taken to not spread tumor by unnecessary palpation
 - ♦ cancer-bearing portion of colon is removed according to vascular distribution of segment
 - adjuvant chemotherapy (5-FU or oral capecitabine with oxaliplatin) can be considered for stages II or III
- **rectal cancer**
 - choice of operation depends on individual case; types of operations (see Figure 18)
 - ♦ low anterior resection of rectum (LAR): curative procedure of choice if adequate distal margins; uses technique of total mesorectal excision
 - ♦ abdominoperineal resection of rectum (APR): if adequate distal margins cannot be obtained; involves the removal of distal sigmoid colon, rectum, and anus – permanent end colostomy required
 - ♦ local excision: for select T1 lesions only
 - ♦ palliative procedures: electrocoagulation or laser photocoagulation for unresectable cancers for symptom relief
 - adjuvant therapy
 - ♦ combined neoadjuvant chemoradiation therapy followed by post-operative adjuvant chemotherapy for stages II and III

Follow-Up

- currently there are no data suggesting optimal follow-up
- combination of periodic CT chest/abdomen/pelvis, CEA, and colonoscopy is recommended
- CEA to monitor for initial response to treatment, and to assess for recurrence q3mo (not a screening test)
- intensive follow-up improves overall survival in low-risk patients

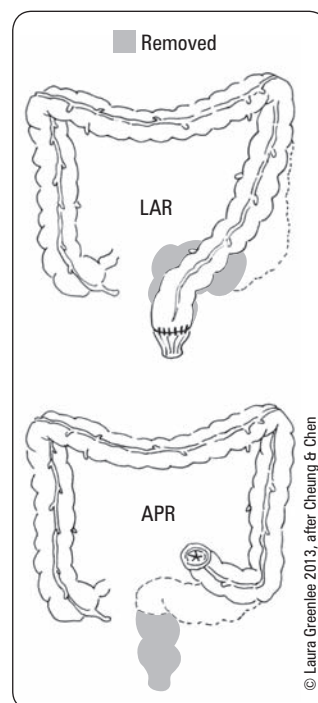


Figure 18. APR vs. LAR



APR removes distal sigmoid colon, rectum, and anus; permanent end colostomy required

LAR removes distal sigmoid and rectum with anastomosis of distal colon to anus



Pre-Operative vs. Post-Operative Chemoradiotherapy for Locally Advanced Rectal Cancer: Results of the German CAO/ARO/AIO-94 Randomized Phase III Trial after a Median Follow-Up of 11 Years

J Clin Oncol 2012;30:1926-1933

Background: The CAO/ARO/AIO-94 trial (published 2004) recommended pre-operative chemoradiotherapy (CRT) as standard treatment for locally advanced rectal cancer. However, no survival benefit was shown after median follow-up of 46 mo, and this study reports long-term effects. **Methods:** Patients with stage II to III rectal cancer (n=799) were randomly assigned to pre-operative (n=404) or post-operative CRT (n=395) with fluorouracil (FU), radiation, and adjuvant FU chemotherapy, in addition to total mesorectal excision surgery. Follow-up was designed to assess long-term overall survival as the primary end point; and cumulative incidence of local and distant relapses and disease-free survival as secondary end points.

Results: 10 yr incidence of local relapse was significantly lower in the pre-operative CRT group than in the post-operative group (7.1% vs. 10.1%, p=0.048). Overall survival at 10 yr was similar at ~60% for patients treated with pre-operative or post-operative CRT (p=0.85). Disease-free survival rates at 10 yr was similar at ~68% for patients treated with pre-operative or post-operative CRT (p=0.54). No significant difference was detected for 10 yr incidence of distant metastases (pre-operative CRT 29.8% vs. post-operative CRT 29.6%, p=0.9).

Conclusion: There is long-term reduction in local recurrence of stage II to III rectal cancer with pre-operative chemotherapy, but no improvement in overall survival or distant recurrence of disease.

Other Conditions of the Large Intestine

Angiodysplasia

Definition

- vascular anomaly: focal submucosal venous dilatation and tortuosity

Clinical Features

- most frequently in right colon of patients >60 yr old
- bleeding typically intermittent, rarely massive, not usually hypotensive (melena, anemia, guaiac positive stools)

Investigations

- colonoscopy: cherry red spots, branching pattern from central vessel
- angiography: early-filling vein, vascular tuft, delayed emptying vein; rarely active bleeding
- RBC technetium-99 scan
- barium enema is contraindicated (obscures other x-rays, i.e. angiogram)

Treatment

- none if asymptomatic
- cautery, right hemicolectomy, embolization, vasopressin infusion, sclerotherapy, band ligation, laser, octreotide, and rarely segmental resection if other treatments fail

Volvulus

Definition

- rotation of segment of bowel about its mesenteric axis
- sigmoid (65%), cecum (30%), transverse colon (3%), splenic flexure (2%)
- 5-10% of large bowel obstruction; 25% of intestinal obstruction during pregnancy

Risk Factors

- age (50% of patients >70 yr: stretching/elongation of bowel with age is a predisposing factor)
- high fiber diet (can cause elongated/redundant colon), chronic constipation, laxative abuse, pregnancy, bedridden, institutionalization (less frequent evacuation of bowels)
- congenital hypermobile cecum

Clinical Features

- symptoms due to bowel obstruction (see *Bowel Obstruction*, GS24) or intestinal ischemia (see *Intestinal Ischemia*, GS28)
- colicky abdominal pain, persistence of pain between spasms, abdominal distention, vomiting

Investigations

- AXR (classic findings): "omega", "bent inner-tube", "coffee-bean" signs
- barium/Gastrografin® enema: "ace of spades" (or "bird's beak") appearance due to funnel-like luminal tapering of lower segment towards volvulus
- sigmoidoscopy or colonoscopy as appropriate
- CT

Treatment

- initial supportive management (same as initial management for bowel obstruction (see *Bowel Obstruction*, GS24))
- cecum
 - nonsurgical
 - ♦ may attempt colonoscopic detorsion and decompression
 - surgical
 - ♦ right colectomy + ileotransverse colonic anastomosis
- sigmoid
 - nonsurgical
 - ♦ decompression by flexible sigmoidoscopy and insertion of rectal tube past obstruction
 - ♦ subsequent elective surgery recommended (50-70% recurrence)
 - surgical: Hartmann procedure (if urgent)
 - ♦ indications: strangulation, perforation, or unsuccessful endoscopic decompression



Cecal Volvulus

AXR: Central cleft of "coffee bean" sign points to RLQ



Sigmoid Volvulus

AXR: Central cleft of "coffee bean" sign points to LLQ

Barium enema: "ace of spades" or "bird's beak" sign

Fistula

Definition

- abnormal communication between two epithelialized surfaces (e.g. enterocutaneous, colovesical, aortoenteric, entero-enteric)

Etiology

- foreign object erosion (e.g. gallstone, graft)
- inflammatory states (e.g. infection, IBD [especially Crohn's], diverticular disease)
- iatrogenic/surgery (e.g. post-operative anastomotic leak, radiation)
- congenital, trauma
- neoplastic

Investigations

- U/S, CT scan, fistulogram
- measure amount of drainage from fistula

Treatment

- decrease secretion: octreotide/somatostatin/omeprazole
- surgical intervention: dependent upon etiology (for non-closing fistulas); uncertainty of diagnosis



Why Fistulae Stay Open

FRIENDO

Foreign body

Radiation

Infection

Epithelialization

Neoplasm

Distal obstruction (most common)

Others: increased flow; steroids (may inhibit closure, usually will not maintain fistula)

Stomas

Definition

- an opening of the GI tract onto the surface of the abdomen wall

Ileostomy

- usually positioned in RLQ; ileum is brought through rectus abdominus muscles
- indications: after colectomy for ulcerative colitis, in some cases of Crohn's disease or familial polyposis
- conventional ileostomy: discharges small quantities of liquid material continuously, appliance (plastic bag attached to a sheet of protective material) required at all times
- continent ileostomy: reservoir is constructed from distal ileum, emptied by inserting catheter into stoma several times a day; rarely used, has mostly been replaced by ileal pouch anal anastomosis

Colostomy

- indications: to decompress an obstructed colon, to protect a distal anastomosis after resection, or to evacuate stool after distal colon or rectum is removed
- colostomies can be done by making an opening in a loop of colon (loop colostomy) or by dividing the colon and bringing out one end (end colostomy)
- most common permanent colostomy is a sigmoid colostomy – expels stool once per day, no appliance required
- chronic paracolostomy hernia is a common complication

Complications (10%)

- obstruction: herniation, stenosis (skin and abdominal wall), adhesive bands, volvulus
- peri-ileostomy abscess and fistula
- skin irritation
- prolapse or retraction
- diarrhea (excessive output)

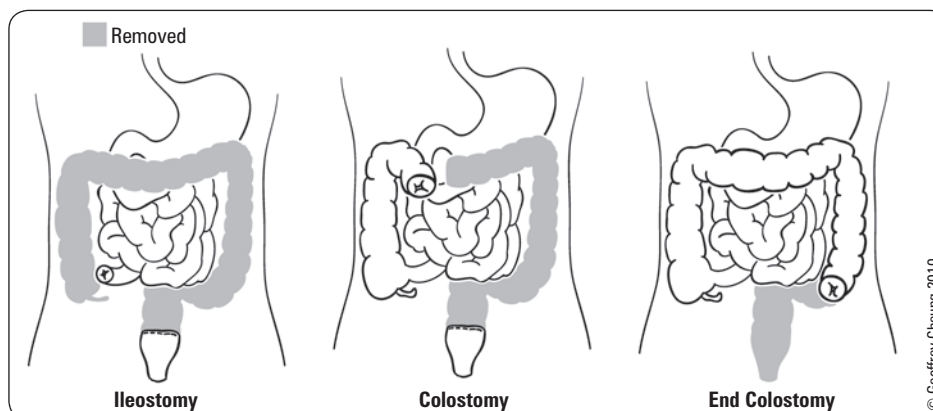


Figure 19. Ostomies



Colostomy/Ileostomy

- Connection of proximal limb of colon or ileum to abdominal wall skin

Mucous Fistula

- Connection of distal limb of colon to abdominal wall skin

Ileal Conduit

- Connection of bowel to ureter proximally and abdominal wall distally to drain urine

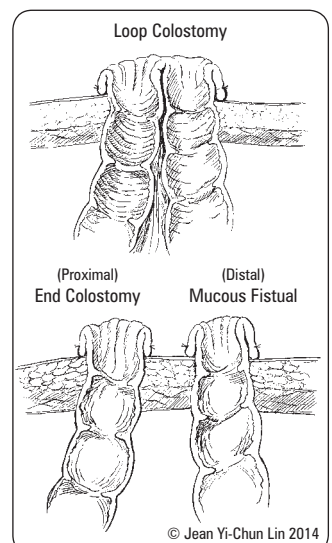


Figure 20. End vs. loop colostomy

Anorectum

Hemorrhoids

Etiology

- vascular and connective tissue complexes form a plexus of dilated veins (cushion)
 - internal: superior hemorrhoidal veins, above dentate line, portal circulation
 - external: inferior hemorrhoidal veins, below dentate line, systemic circulation

Risk Factors

- increased intra-abdominal pressure: chronic constipation, pregnancy, obesity, portal HTN, heavy lifting

Clinical Features and Treatment

- internal hemorrhoids
 - engorged vascular cushions usually at 3, 7, 11 o'clock positions (patient in lithotomy position)
 - PAINLESS rectal bleeding, anemia, prolapse, mucus discharge, pruritus, burning pain, rectal fullness
 - 1st degree:** bleed but do not prolapse through the anus
 - treatment: high fiber/bulk diet, sitz baths, steroid cream, pargoline (Anusol®), rubber band ligation, sclerotherapy, photocoagulation
 - 2nd degree:** bleed, prolapse with straining, spontaneous reduction
 - treatment: rubber band ligation, photocoagulation
 - 3rd degree:** bleed, prolapse, requires manual reduction
 - treatment: same as 2nd degree, but may require closed hemorrhoidectomy
 - 4th degree:** bleed, permanently prolapsed, cannot be manually reduced
 - treatment: closed hemorrhoidectomy
- external hemorrhoids
 - dilated venules usually mildly symptomatic
 - PAIN after bowel movement, associated with poor hygiene
 - medical treatment: dietary fiber, stool softeners, steroid cream (short course), pargoline (Anusol®), avoid prolonged straining
 - thrombosed hemorrhoids are very painful
 - resolve within 2 wk, may leave excess skin = perianal skin tag
 - treatment: consider surgical decompression within first 48 h of thrombosis, otherwise medical treatment



Always rule out more serious causes (e.g. colon CA) in a person with hemorrhoids and rectal bleeding

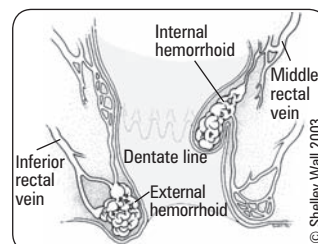


Figure 21. Hemorrhoids



Band ligation can be done as outpatient



External hemorrhoids will often recur

Table 17. Signs and Symptoms of Internal vs. External Hemorrhoids

Internal Hemorrhoids	External Hemorrhoids
Painless BRBPR	Sudden severe perianal pain
Rectal fullness or discomfort	Perianal mass
Mucus discharge	

Anal Fissures

Definition

- tear of anal canal below dentate line (very sensitive squamous epithelium)
- 90% posterior midline, 10% anterior midline
- if off midline: consider other possible causes such as IBD, STDs, TB, leukemia, or anal carcinoma
- repetitive injury cycle after first tear:
 - sphincter spasm occurs preventing edges from healing and leads to further tearing
 - ischemia may ensue and contribute to chronicity

Etiology

- forceful dilation of anal canal: large, hard stools and irritant diarrheal stools
- tightening of anal canal secondary to nervousness/pain leads to further tearing
- others: habitual use of cathartics, childbirth

Clinical Features

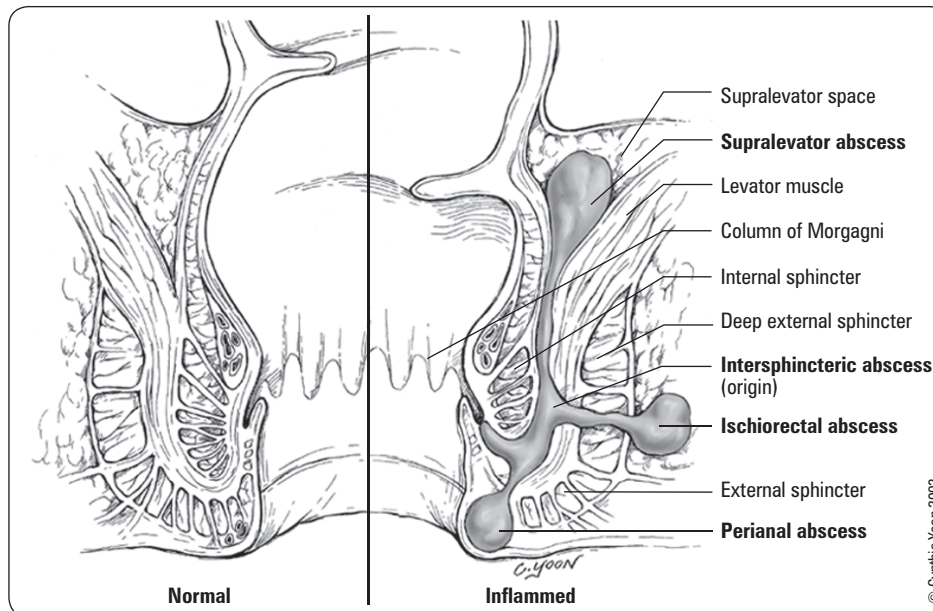
- acute fissure
 - very painful bright red bleeding especially after bowel movement, sphincter spasm on limited DRE
 - treatment is conservative: stool softeners, bulking agent, sitz baths (heals 90%)
- chronic fissure (anal ulcer)
 - triad: fissure, sentinel skin tags, hypertrophied papillae

- treatment
 - ♦ stool softeners, bulking agents, sitz baths
 - ♦ topical nitroglycerin or nifedipine: increases local blood flow, promoting healing and relieves sphincter spasm
 - ♦ lateral internal anal sphincterotomy (most effective): objective is to relieve sphincter spasm → increases blood flow and promotes healing; but 5% chance of fecal incontinence therefore not commonly done
- alternative treatment
 - ♦ botulinum toxin: inhibits release of acetylcholine (ACh), reducing sphincter spasm

Anorectal Abscess

Definition

- infection in one or more of the anal spaces
- usually bacterial infection of blocked anal gland at the dentate line
 - *E. coli*, *Proteus*, *Streptococci*, *Staphylococci*, *Bacteroides*, anaerobes



© Cynthia Yoon 2003

Figure 22. Different types of perianal abscesses

Clinical Features

- throbbing pain that may worsen with straining and ambulation
- abscess can spread vertically downward (perianal), vertically upward (supralelevator), or horizontally (ischiorectal)
- tender perianal/rectal mass on exam

Treatment

- I&D
 - curative in 50% of cases
 - 50% develop anorectal fistulas
- may require antibiotics if diabetic, heart murmur, or cellulitis



Recurrent perianal abscesses is associated with Crohn's disease



Antibiotics are not typically helpful in the treatment of perianal abscesses

Fistula-In-Ano

Definition

- anal fistula from rectum to perianal skin
- an inflammatory tract with internal os at dentate line, external os on skin

Etiology

- see *Fistula*, GS37
- same perirectal process as an anal abscess, therefore usually associated with an abscess
- other causes: post-operative, trauma, anal fissure, malignancy, radiation proctitis

Clinical Features

- intermittent or constant purulent discharge from perianal opening
- pain
- palpable cord-like tract

Treatment

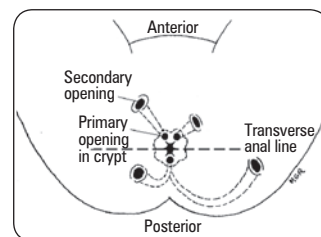
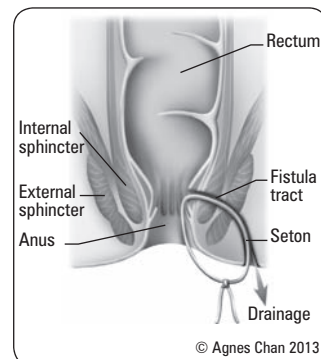
- identification
 - internal opening
 - ♦ Goodsall's rule
 - fistulas originating anterior to a transverse line through the anus will have a straight course and exit anteriorly, whereas those originating posterior to the transverse line will begin in the midline and have a curved tract
 - fistulous tract
 - ♦ probing or fistulography under anesthesia
- surgery
 - fistulotomy: unroof tract from external to internal opening, allow drainage, heals by secondary intention
 - low lying fistula (does not involve external sphincter) → primary fistulotomy
 - high lying fistula (involves external sphincter) → staged fistulotomy with Seton suture placed through tract
 - ♦ promotes drainage
 - ♦ promotes fibrosis and decreases incidence of incontinence
 - ♦ delineates anatomy
 - ♦ usually done to spare muscle cutting

Post-Operative

- sitz baths, irrigation, and packing to ensure healing proceeds from inside to outside

Complications

- recurrence
- rarely fecal incontinence

**Figure 23. Goodsall's rule****Figure 24. Fistulotomy**

Pilonidal Disease

Definition

- chronic recurring abscess or chronic draining sinus in sacrococcygeal area

Epidemiology

- occurs most frequently in young men age 15-40 yr; rare in >50 yr

Etiology

- obstruction of the hair follicles in this area → formation of cysts, sinuses, or abscesses

Clinical Features

- asymptomatic until acutely infected, then pain/tenderness, purulent discharge, inspissated hair

Treatment

- acute abscess
 - I&D (often performed by primary care doctors)
 - wound packed open
 - 40% develop chronic pilonidal sinuses
- surgery
 - indication: failure of healing after I&D, recurrent disease, complex disease
 - pilonidal cystotomy: excision of sinus tract and cyst; wound closed by secondary intention, primary closure with tissue flap, or marsupialization (cyst edge sewn to surrounding tissue to leave sinus tract open)

Rectal Prolapse

Definition

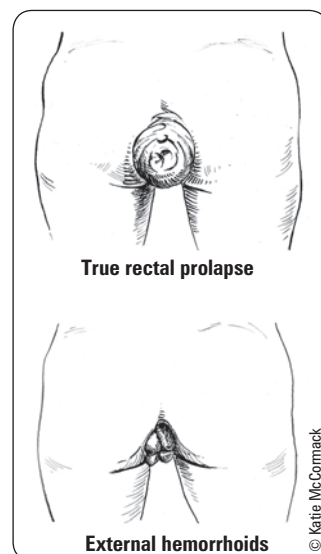
- protrusion of some or all of rectal mucosa through external anal sphincter

Epidemiology

- extremes of ages: <5 yr old and >5th decade
- 85% women

Etiology

- lengthened attachment of rectum secondary to constant straining
- 2 types
 1. false/partial/mucosal: protrusion of mucosa only, radial furrows at junction with anal skin; most common type of rectal prolapse in childhood
 2. true/complete (most common): full thickness extrusion of rectal wall, concentric folds in:
 - ♦ first degree: prolapse includes mucocutaneous junction
 - ♦ second degree: without involvement of mucocutaneous junction
 - ♦ third degree (internal intussusception): prolapse is internal, concealed, or occult

**Figure 25. Rectal prolapse (true vs. false)**

Risk Factors

- gynecological surgery
- chronic neurologic/psychiatric disorders affecting motility

Clinical Features

- extrusion of mass with increased intra-abdominal pressure:
 - straining, coughing, laughing, Valsalva
- difficulty in bowel regulation
 - tenesmus, constipation, fecal incontinence
- permanently extruded rectum with excoriation, ulceration, and constant soiling
- may be associated with urinary incontinence or uterine prolapse

Treatment

- Type I
 - conservative: gentle manual reduction of prolapsed area, especially in children
 - mucosectomy with excision of redundant mucosa, mostly in adults
- Type II
 - conservative: reduce if possible
 - surgery: abdominal, perineal, transsacral approaches

Anal Neoplasms

ANAL CANAL**Squamous Cell Carcinoma of Anal Canal (Above Dentate Line)**

- most common tumor of anal canal (75%)
- anus prone to human papillomavirus (HPV) infection, therefore at risk for anal squamous intraepithelial lesions (ASIL)
 - high grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL) and low grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (LSIL) terminology used
- clinical features: anal bleeding, pain, mass, ulceration, pruritus; 25% asymptomatic
- treatment: chemotherapy ± radiation ± surgery
- prognosis: 80% 5 yr survival

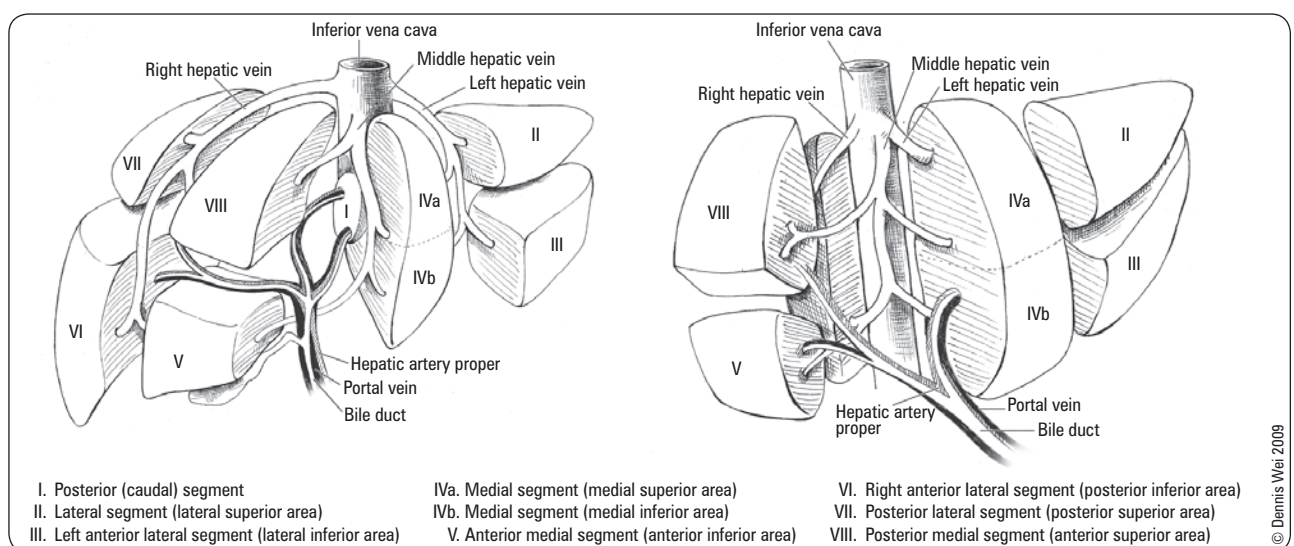
Malignant Melanoma of Anal Canal

- 3rd most common site for primary malignant melanoma after skin, eyes
- aggressive, distant metastases common at time of diagnosis
- treatment: wide excision or APR ± chemoradiation
- prognosis: <5% 5 yr survival

ANAL MARGIN

- clinical features and treatment as for skin tumors elsewhere
- squamous and basal cell carcinoma, Bowen's disease (SCC *in situ*), and Paget's disease

Liver

**Figure 26. Anatomy of liver**

Liver Cysts

Table 18. Characteristics of Liver Cysts

	Simple Cysts	Polycystic Liver Disease	Choledochal Cysts	Hydatid (Cystic Echinococcosis)	Cystadenoma (Premalignant)/Cystadenocarcinoma
Description	Contain clear fluid that do not communicate with the intrahepatic biliary tree Most common	Several cysts that replace much of the liver	Congenital malformations of pancreaticobiliary tree high risk of malignancy majority present before age 10	Infection with parasite <i>Echinococcus granulosus</i> associated with exposure to dogs, sheep, and cattle in Southern Europe, Middle East, Australasia, South America	Rare cystic tumors that occur in the liver parenchyma or the extrahepatic bile ducts Cystadenocarcinoma is an invasive carcinoma
Clinical Features	Usually asymptomatic may have multiple simple cysts	Progressive 50% associated with polycystic kidney disease	Recurrent abdominal pain Intermittent jaundice RUQ mass Cholangitis, pancreatitis	Asymptomatic mass chronic pain hepatomegaly	Upper abdominal mass Abdominal pain Anorexia
Investigations	U/S: Used for diagnosis and follow-up CT: well demarcated lesion that does not enhance with contrast	U/S	U/S CT Transhepatic cholangiography LFTs	Anti-Echinococcus Ab (IgG) U/S CT: calcified mass Needle biopsy	Appear as complex cysts: internal septae, papillary projections, irregular lining Need histology for definite diagnosis
Treatment	Not required unless very large Monitor if > 4 cm	Only if symptomatic partial liver resection drainage	Complete excision of cysts liver transplant if cyst involves intrahepatic bile ducts (Caroli's disease)	Albendazole (anti-helminthic) – cure up to 30% Surgical (risk of spillage into abdomen): Conservative: open endocystectomy or PAIR (Percutaneous Aspiration, Injection of protoscolicidal agent, Re-aspiration) Radical: partial hepatectomy or total pericystectomy	All complex, multiloculated cysts (except echinococcal) should be excised because of malignancy risk
Complications	Intracystic hemorrhage		Biliary cirrhosis, portal HTN, rupture, cholangiocarcinoma Abnormal pancreaticobiliary junction is associated with increased risk of malignancy	Inferior vena cava compression rupture can cause biliary colic, jaundice, cholangitis, pancreatitis, or anaphylactic reaction	Cystadenocarcinoma can invade adjacent tissues and metastasize

Liver Abscesses

Etiology

- types
 - pyogenic (bacterial): most common etiology; most often polymicrobial – *E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Proteus*, *Strep. milleri*
 - parasitic (amoebic): *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Echinococcal* cyst
 - fungal: *Candida*
- sources: direct spread from biliary tract infection, portal spread from GI infection, systemic infection (e.g. endocarditis)

Clinical Features

- fever, malaise, chills, anorexia, weight loss, abdominal pain, nausea
- RUQ tenderness, hepatomegaly, jaundice

Investigations

- leukocytosis, anemia, elevated liver enzymes, hemagglutination titres for *Entamoeba* antibodies
- U/S, CXR (right basilar atelectasis/effusion), CT, cyst aspiration with C&S

Treatment

- treat underlying cause
- generally will treat initially with antibiotics alone and add surgical or percutaneous drainage and IV antibiotics for larger abscesses (initially ceftriaxone + metronidazole or piperacillin/tazobactam)

Prognosis

- overall mortality 15% – higher rate if delay in diagnosis, multiple abscesses, malnutrition

Neoplasms

BENIGN LIVER NEOPLASMS

Hemangioma (cavernous)

- pathogenesis: most common benign hepatic tumor; results from malformation of angioblastic fetal tissue
- risk factors: F:M = 3:1
- clinical features
 - usually small and asymptomatic
 - consumptive coagulopathy if giant (in children)
- investigations
 - contrast CT (well-demarcated hypodense mass with peripheral enhancement and delayed venous emptying), U/S (homogenous hyperechoic mass), arteriography (rarely used; "cotton wool" appearance), MRI
 - biopsy may result in hemorrhage
- treatment
 - usually none unless tumor bleeds or is symptomatic, then excision by lobectomy or enucleation

Focal Nodular Hyperplasia

- pathogenesis: unclear, may be regenerative response to hyperperfusion from anomalous arteries at center of nodule
- risk factors: female, age 20-50
- clinical features: asymptomatic, rarely grows or bleeds, no malignant potential
- investigations: central stellate scar on CT scan; MRI, biopsy may be required
- treatment: may be difficult to distinguish from adenoma/fibrolamellar HCC (malignant potential) → often resected

Adenoma

- definition: benign glandular epithelial tumor
- risk factors: female, age 20-50, estrogen (OCP, pregnancy)
- clinical features: asymptomatic, 25% present with RUQ pain or mass, may present with bleeding
- investigations: CT (well-demarcated masses, often heterogeneous enhancement on arterial phase, isodense on venous phase without washout of contrast), U/S, MRI, biopsy often needed
- treatment
 - stop anabolic steroids or OCP
 - excise, especially if large (>5 cm), due to risk of transformation to hepatocellular carcinoma and spontaneous rupture/hemorrhage

MALIGNANT LIVER NEOPLASMS

Primary

- usually hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)/hepatoma
- others include angiosarcoma, hepatoblastoma, hemangioendothelioma
- epidemiology: 3rd leading cause of cancer death worldwide, 9th in United States; highest in Africa, China, Taiwan
- risk factors
 - chronic liver inflammation: chronic hepatitis B (inherently oncogenic) and C, cirrhosis (especially macronodular), hemochromatosis, α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency
 - medications: OCPs (3x increased risk), steroids
 - smoking, alcohol, Betel nuts
 - chemical carcinogens (aflatoxin, microcystin, vinyl chloride – associated with angiosarcoma)
- clinical features
 - RUQ discomfort, right shoulder pain
 - jaundice, weakness, weight loss, \pm fever (if central tumor necrosis)
 - hepatomegaly, bruit, hepatic friction rub
 - ascites with blood (sudden intra-abdominal hemorrhage)
 - paraneoplastic syndromes – hypoglycemia, hypercalcemia, erythrocytosis, watery diarrhea
 - metastasis: lung, bone, brain, peritoneal seeding



Secondary liver metastases are common in many cancers, with some studies showing a prevalence of 40-50% amongst patients with extrahepatic cancers. They commonly arise from breast, lung, and colorectal cancers. For metastases secondary to colorectal cancer, surgical resection offers the greatest likelihood of cure

- investigations
 - elevated ALP, bilirubin, and α -fetoprotein (80% of patients)
 - U/S (poorly-defined margins with internal echos), triphasic CT (enhancement on arterial phase and washout on portal venous phase), MRI
 - liver enzyme and liver function tests: AST, ALT, ALP, bilirubin, albumin, INR
- treatment
 - cirrhosis is a *relative* contraindication to tumor resection due to decreased hepatic reserve
 - surgical: resection (10% of patients have resectable tumors)
 - liver transplant; may use bridging therapy while awaiting transplant
 - ♦ **absolute contraindications:** extrahepatic disease, vascular invasion
 - ♦ **relative contraindications:** dependent on liver transplant protocol based on staging criteria followed by transplant center
 - non-surgical: radiofrequency ablation, percutaneous ethanol injection, transcatheter arterial chemoembolization (TACE), chemotherapy (consider sorafenib for HCC; pre-operative chemotherapy for hepatoblastoma is standard of care), radiotherapy
- prognosis
 - median survival: 6-20 mo
 - 5 yr survival: all patients – 5%; patients undergoing complete resection – 11-40%

Secondary

- metastases to the liver are the most common malignant tumors found in the liver
- etiology
 - GI (colorectal most common), lung, breast, pancreas, ovary, uterus, kidney, gallbladder, prostate
- treatment
 - hepatic resection for metastatic colorectal liver metastases if control of primary is possible, no extrahepatic or extrapulmonary metastases and if possibility of “curative” resection
 - possible chemotherapy
- prognosis: 30-40% 5 yr survival with a “curative” resection; prognosis same if metastases are multilobar compared with confined to one lobe



Staging Criteria for Hepatocellular Carcinoma

Milan Criteria*	1 tumor \leq 5 cm Up to 3 tumors each \leq 3 cm
UCSF Criteria*	1 tumor \leq 6.5 cm Up to 3 tumors each \leq 4.5 cm, total diameter \leq 8 cm
Toronto Criteria*	No tumor size or number restrictions No systemic symptoms Not poorly differentiated

*Each criteria assumes no extrahepatic and no macrovascular invasion



Differential Diagnosis of Metastatic Liver Mass

Some **GU Cancers** Produce Bumpy Lumps:

Stomach
GenitoUrinary cancers
(kidney, ovary, uterus)
Colon
Pancreas
Breast
Lung



Child-Turcotte-Pugh Score (Prognosis of Chronic Liver Disease/Cirrhosis, Including Post-Operatively)

	1 Point	2 Points	3 Points
Albumin (g/dL)	>3.5	2.8-3.5	<2.8
Ascites	Absent	Easily controlled	Poorly controlled
Bilirubin (mg/dL)	<2.0	2.0-3.0	>3.0
Coagulation (INR)	<1.7	1.7-2.3	>2.3
Hepatic Encephalopathy	None	Minimal (Grade I-II)	Advanced (Grade III-IV)

Points	Class	One Year Survival	Two Year Survival
5-6	A	100%	85%
7-9	B	81%	57%
10-15	C	45%	35%



Living Liver Donors vs. Deceased Liver Donors

The right lobe of a living donor liver is transplanted into the recipient whereas whole livers from deceased donors are transplanted orthotopically into the recipient

Liver Transplantation

Table 19. Conditions Leading to Transplantation

Parenchymal Disease	Cholestatic Disease	Inborn Errors	Tumors
Chronic hepatitis B or C*	Biliary atresia**	α_1 -antitrypsin deficiency	Hepatocellular carcinoma
Alcoholic cirrhosis	Primary biliary cirrhosis	Wilson's disease	
Acute liver failure	Sclerosing cholangitis	Hemochromatosis	
Budd-Chiari syndrome			
Congenital hepatic fibrosis			
Cystic fibrosis (CF)			
Autoimmune hepatitis			
Cryptogenic cirrhosis			
Drug induced hepatotoxicity			
Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis			

*leading cause in adults; **leading cause in children

Clinical Indications

- early referral for transplant should be considered for all patients with progressive liver disease not responsive to medical therapy, especially:
 - decompensated cirrhosis (ascites, esophageal variceal hemorrhage, spontaneous hepatic encephalopathy, coagulopathy, progressive jaundice, severe fatigue)
 - unresectable primary liver cancers
 - fulminant hepatic failure
- end-stage liver disease with life expectancy <1 yr and if no other therapy is appropriate

Criteria for Transplantation

- Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD): prognostic model to estimate 3 mo survival and disease severity if patient does not receive transplant; based on creatinine, bilirubin, INR; MELD scores from 6-40 used to prioritize liver allocation
- Child-Turcotte-Pugh Score: classification system to assess the prognosis and mortality of liver disease; patient must have \geq 7 points (Class B)

Contraindications

- active alcohol/substance abuse
- extrahepatic malignancy within 5 yr
- advanced cardiopulmonary disease
- active uncontrolled infection

Post-Operative Complications

- primary non-function (graft failure): urgent re-transplantation is indicated
- acute and chronic rejection, ischemia-reperfusion injury
- vascular: hepatic artery or portal vein thrombosis, IVC obstruction
- biliary complications: fever, increasing bilirubin and ALP
- complications related to immunosuppression: HTN, renal disease, DM, obesity, hyperlipidemia, osteoporosis, malignancy, neurologic complications, infection (leading cause of mortality following transplant)

Prognosis

- patient survival at 1 yr: 85%
- graft survival at 1 yr: >80%, at 5 yr: 60-70%

Biliary Tract

Cholelithiasis

Definition

- the formation of gallstones

Pathogenesis

- imbalance of cholesterol and its solubilizing agents (bile salts and lecithin)
- excessive hepatic cholesterol secretion → bile salts and lecithin are “overloaded” → supersaturated cholesterol can precipitate and form gallstones
- North America: cholesterol stones (80%), pigment stones (20%)

Risk Factors

- cholesterol stones
 - obesity, age <50
 - estrogens: female, multiparity, OCPs
 - ethnicity: First Nations heritage (especially Pima Indians) > Caucasian > Black
 - terminal ileal resection or disease (e.g. Crohn’s disease)
 - impaired gallbladder emptying: starvation, TPN, DM
 - rapid weight loss: rapid cholesterol mobilization and biliary stasis
- pigment stones (contain calcium bilirubinate)
 - cirrhosis
 - chronic hemolysis
 - biliary stasis (strictures, dilation, biliary infection)
- protective factors: statins, vitamin C, coffee, exercise

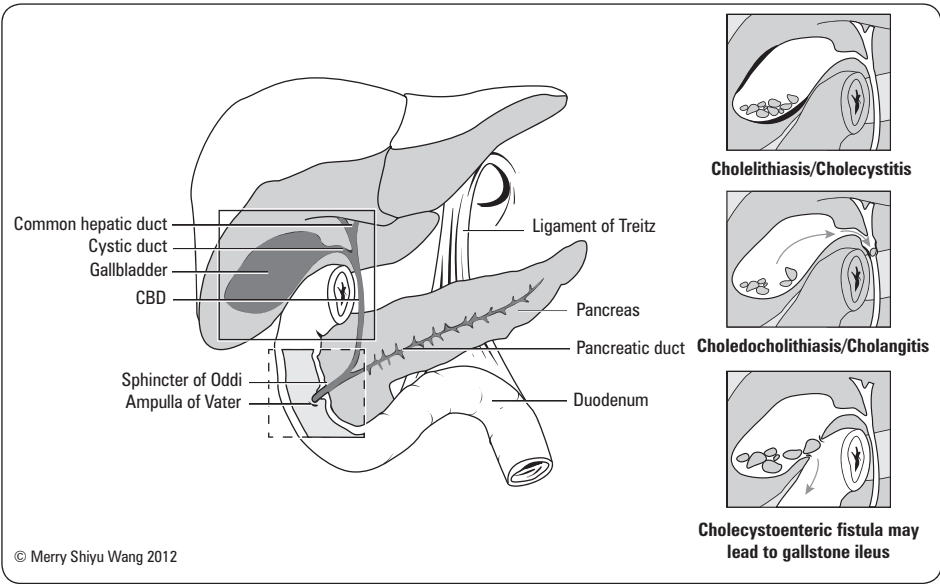


Figure 27. Gallstone disease

Clinical Presentation

- asymptomatic (80%)
 - most do NOT require treatment
 - consider cholecystectomy if: increased risk of malignancy (cholechoal cysts, Caroli’s disease, porcelain or calcified gallbladder), sickle cell disease, pediatric patient, bariatric surgery, immunosuppression



Which Matters Most: Number of Tumors, Size of the Largest Tumor, or Total Tumor Volume?

Liver Transplant 2011;17:S58-66

Purpose: To determine if the size and/or number of hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) nodules predict disease recurrence and survival after liver transplantation.

Methods: Systematic review and meta-analysis.

Results: 74 studies were included for analysis.

Patients beyond the Milan criteria had reduced overall and disease-free survivals and higher recurrence. Patients outside the UCSF criteria had reduced overall and disease-free survivals and higher recurrence. Patients outside the Milan criteria but within the UCSF criteria had reduced overall and disease-free survivals. Overall and disease-free survivals were reduced for patients with larger total tumor diameter, ≥10 cm vs. <10 cm, and ≥9 cm vs. <9 cm, respectively. Similarly, patients with higher diameter of largest tumor nodule (≥3 cm vs. <3 cm) had reduced overall survival and higher recurrence. Overall and disease-free survivals were reduced and recurrence higher for patients with tumor size ≥5 cm vs. <5 cm. Mixed results were found regarding number of tumor nodules.

Conclusion: Tumor size and volume are important factors in survival after liver transplantation.



Outcomes of Living and Deceased Donor Liver Transplant Recipients With Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Results of the A2ALL Cohort

Am J Transplant 2012;12:1997-3007

Purpose: To compare the overall survival and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) recurrence rates after living donor liver transplantation (LDLT) vs. deceased donor liver transplantation (DDLT) in a series of patients with HCC.

Methods: Study conducted between 1998 and 2009 at nine clinical centers. 229 patients with HCC undergoing liver transplantation included, with approximately 57% transplanted prior to MELD score implementation.

Results: The 5 yr survival rates were 59% in LDLT recipients and 66% in DDLT recipients (HR=1.32; p=0.27). Recurrence-free survival between LDLT and DDLT recipients did not differ (without using MELD score HR=1.51, p=0.13; using MELD score (HR=1.23, p=0.61). Recurrence rates at 5 yr were higher in LDLT recipients (HR=2.35, p=0.04), but not significantly different than in DDLT recipients following introduction of MELD scoring (HR=1.36, p=0.57).

Conclusion: Overall survival was not significantly different between LDLT and DDLT recipients. Although the HCC recurrence rate was higher in LDLT recipients, it was most likely due to more advanced HCC prior to transplant and less liver-directed HCC therapy compared to DDLT.



Summary of Biliary Tract Conditions

Gall Bladder	Asymptomatic	Pain Only	Infection + Pain
Cholelithiasis	√ (majority)		
Biliary Colic		√	
Cholecystitis			√
Common Bile Duct	Asymptomatic	Pain Only	Infection + Pain
Choledocholithiasis	√ (majority)	√	
Cholangitis			√ (majority)



Risk Factors for Cholesterol Stones

4Fs
Fat
Female
Fertile
Forties

- biliary colic (10-25%)
- cholecystitis
- choledocholithiasis (8-15%)
- cholangitis
- gallstone pancreatitis (see *Acute Pancreatitis, GS50*)
- gallstone ileus (0.3-0.5%)
- other: empyema of the gallbladder, liver abscess, gallbladder perforation with bile peritonitis

Investigations

- Labs
 - CBC, LFTs, amylase and lipase
- U/S – diagnostic procedure of choice
 - image for signs of inflammation, obstruction, localization of stones
 - 95% specific for detecting stones
 - signs: gallbladder wall thickening >4 mm, edema (double-wall sign), gallbladder sludge, pericholecystic fluid, sonographic Murphy's sign
- ERCP
 - visualization of upper GI tract, ampullary region, biliary and pancreatic ducts
 - method for treatment of CBD stones in periampullary region
 - complications: traumatic pancreatitis (1-2%), pancreatic or biliary sepsis
- MRCP
 - same information gained as ERCP but non-invasive
 - cannot be used for therapeutic purposes
- PTC
 - injection of contrast via needle passed through hepatic parenchyma
 - useful for proximal bile duct lesions or when ERCP fails or not available
 - requires prophylactic antibiotics
 - contraindications: coagulopathy, ascites, peri/intrahepatic sepsis, disease of right lower lung or pleura
 - complications: bile peritonitis, chylothorax, pneumothorax, sepsis, hemobilia
- HIDA scan
 - used less commonly
 - radioisotope technetium-99 injected into a vein is excreted in high concentrations into bile, allowing visualization of the biliary tree
 - does not visualize stones; diagnosis by seeing occluded cystic duct or CBD

Biliary Colic

Pathogenesis

- gallstone transiently impacted in cystic duct, no infection

Clinical Features

- steady, severe dull pain in epigastrium or RUQ for minutes to hours, crescendo-decrescendo pattern
- may present with chest pain
- N/V
- frequently occurs at night or after fatty meal, not after fasting
- can radiate to right shoulder or scapula
- patients often restless
- no peritoneal findings, no systemic signs

Investigations

- normal blood work: CBC, electrolytes, LFTs, bilirubin, amylase
- U/S shows cholelithiasis, may show stone in cystic duct

Treatment

- analgesia, rehydration during colic episode
- elective cholecystectomy (95% success)
 - complications: CBD injury (0.3-0.5%), hollow viscus injury, bile peritonitis, vessel injury
 - laparoscopic cholecystectomy is the standard of care, no benefit to delaying surgery
 - risk of open cholecystectomy higher in emergency situations

Acute Cholecystitis

Pathogenesis

- inflammation of gallbladder resulting from sustained gallstone impaction in cystic duct or Hartmann's pouch
- no cholelithiasis in 5-10% (see *Acalculous Cholecystitis, GS47*)

Clinical Features

- often have history of biliary colic
- severe constant (hours to days) epigastric or RUQ pain, anorexia, N/V, low grade fever (<38.5°C)



MELD Score for Prioritization of Liver Transplants

Ann Gastroenterol 2012;25:6-13

Adopted in the US in 2002. Based on serum bilirubin, creatinine, and INR

Advantages

- Statistically validated.
- Discriminative ability similar to Child-Turcotte-Pugh (CTP) score based on 5 factors: ascites, encephalopathy, serum bilirubin, albumin, and prothrombin time.
- Use of objective and widely available laboratory tests.
- Inclusion of renal dysfunction.
- Minimized 'ceiling effect' (upper limit of 40).
- Limited effect on post-transplant mortality after implementation.

Disadvantages

- Medical 'urgency' score, which does not take into account the degree of survival benefit after liver transplantation (revised MELD-age score).
- No increased discriminative ability compared to CTP score.
- Less convenient to use at the bedside compared with the CTP score.
- Inter-laboratory variations for measurement of serum creatinine and INR.
- Serum creatinine provides only a rough estimation of renal function.
- Systematic adverse female gender bias (revised MELD-gender score).
- Further refinement is needed (e.g. inclusion of serum sodium [MELD-Na], re-weighting of MELD score components).
- Exclusion of complications of cirrhosis, some of which warrant transplantation at low MELD scores (e.g. hepatic encephalopathy).
- Weak predictor of mortality after liver transplantation (exclusion of donor characteristics).



2 Most Important Lab Tests for Biliary Pain

- Amylase
- Bilirubin



Biliary colic is a **constant** pain not colicky



Early vs. Delayed Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy for Uncomplicated Biliary Colic

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;6:CD007196

Study: To assess the benefits and harms of early vs. delayed laparoscopic cholecystectomy for patients with uncomplicated biliary colic due to gallstones.

Results: One trial with 75 participants, average age 43 yr. Early laparoscopic cholecystectomy (<24 h) vs. delayed (mean wait period 4.2 mo). The proportion of serious adverse events was lower in the early vs. delayed group (0% vs. 22.5%, respectively). There was a shorter hospital stay in the early group (MD -1.25 d, 95% CI -2.05 to -0.45) and a shorter operating time in the early group (MD -14.80 min, 95% CI -18.02 to -11.58). There was no difference in the proportion of patients requiring conversion to open cholecystectomy in the two groups.

Conclusion: Early laparoscopic cholecystectomy (<24 h of diagnosis of biliary colic) decreased morbidity during the waiting period for elective laparoscopic cholecystectomy, hospital stay, and operating time.

- focal peritoneal findings: Murphy's sign, palpable, tender gallbladder (in 33%)
- Boas' sign: right subscapular pain

Investigation

- blood work: elevated WBC and left shift, mildly elevated bilirubin, AST, ALT, and ALP
- U/S: 98% sensitive, consider HIDA scan if U/S negative

Complications

- gallbladder mucocele (hydrops): long-term cystic duct obstruction results in mucous accumulation in gallbladder (clear fluid)
- gangrene (20%), perforation (2%): result in abscess formation or peritonitis
- empyema of gallbladder: suppurative cholecystitis, pus in gallbladder + sick patient
- cholecystoenteric fistula, from repeated attacks of cholecystitis, can lead to gallstone ileus
- emphysematous cholecystitis: bacterial gas present in gallbladder lumen, wall, or pericholecystic space (risk in diabetic patient)
- organisms involved in secondary infection: *E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Enterococcus*
- Mirizzi syndrome: extra-luminal compression of CBD/CHD due to large stone in cystic duct

Treatment

- admit, hydrate, NPO, NGT (if persistent vomiting from associated ileus), analgesics once diagnosis is made
- antibiotics
 - cefazolin if uncomplicated cholecystitis
- cholecystectomy
 - early (within 72 h) vs. delayed (after 6 wk)
 - ♦ equal morbidity and mortality
 - ♦ early cholecystectomy preferred: shorter hospitalization and recovery time, no benefit to delaying surgery
 - ♦ emergent OR indicated if high risk, e.g. emphysematous
 - laparoscopic is standard of care (convert to open for complications or difficult case)
 - ♦ laparoscopic: reduced risk of wound infections, shorter hospital stay, reduced post-operative pain, increased risk of bile duct injury
- intraoperative cholangiography (IOC)
 - indications: clarify bile duct anatomy, obstructive jaundice, history of biliary pancreatitis, small stones in gallbladder with a wide cystic duct (>15 mm), single faceted stone in gallbladder, bilirubin >8 mg/dL
- percutaneous cholecystostomy tube: critically ill or if general anesthetic contraindicated



Rouviere's Sulcus

Fissure between right lobe and caudate process of liver; keeping dissection anterior to this landmark prevents bile duct injury



Critical View of Safety

Space between the gallbladder and liver clear of any structures other than the cystic artery



Mirizzi Syndrome

Extrinsic compression of the common hepatic duct by a gallstone in the cystic duct or Hartmann's pouch. Impacted gallstone may erode into the CHD or CBD, creating a cholecystohepatic or cholecystocholedochal fistula; Mirizzi syndrome has an association with gallbladder cancer



Biliary colic is treated with analgesia and elective cholecystectomy

Acute cholecystitis is treated with antibiotics and early cholecystectomy

Acalculous Cholecystitis

Definition

- acute or chronic cholecystitis in the absence of stones

Pathogenesis

- typically due to gallbladder ischemia, stasis

Risk Factors

- DM, immunosuppression, ICU admission, trauma patient, TPN, sepsis

Clinical Features

- see *Acute Cholecystitis*, GS46
- occurs in 20% of cases of acute cholecystitis

Investigations

- U/S: shows sludge in gallbladder, other U/S features of cholecystitis (see *Acute Cholecystitis*, GS46)
- CT or HIDA scan

Treatment

- broad-spectrum antibiotics, cholecystectomy
- if patient unstable → cholecystostomy

Choledocholithiasis

Definition

- stones in CBD

Clinical Features

- 50% asymptomatic
- often have history of biliary colic
- tenderness in RUQ or epigastrium
- acholic stool, dark urine, fluctuating jaundice

- primary vs. secondary stones
 - primary: formed in bile duct, indicates bile duct pathology (e.g. benign biliary stricture, sclerosing cholangitis, choledochal cyst, CF)
 - secondary: formed in gallbladder (85% of cases in U.S.)

Investigations

- CBC: usually normal; leukocytosis suggests cholangitis
- LFTs: increased AST, ALT early in disease, increased bilirubin (more sensitive), ALP, GGT later
- amylase/lipase: to rule out gallstone pancreatitis
- U/S: intra-/extra-hepatic duct dilatation; differential diagnosis is choledochal cyst
- ERCP, PTC
- MRCP (90% sensitive, almost 100% specific, not therapeutic)

Complications

- cholangitis, pancreatitis, biliary stricture, and biliary cirrhosis

Treatment

- if no evidence of cholangitis: treat with ERCP for CBD stone extraction possibly followed by elective cholecystectomy in 25% of patients

Acute Cholangitis

Pathogenesis

- obstruction of CBD leading to biliary stasis, bacterial overgrowth, suppuration and biliary sepsis – may be life-threatening, especially in elderly

Etiology

- choledocholithiasis (60%), stricture, neoplasm (pancreatic or biliary), extrinsic compression (pancreatic pseudocyst or pancreatitis), instrumentation of bile ducts (PTC, ERCP), biliary stent
- organisms: *E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Pseudomonas*, *Enterococcus*, *B. fragilis*, *Proteus*

Clinical Features

- Charcot's triad: fever, RUQ pain, jaundice
- Reynold's pentad: fever, RUQ pain, jaundice, shock, confusion
- may have N/V, abdominal distention, ileus, acholic stools, tea-colored urine (elevated direct bilirubin)

Investigations

- CBC: elevated WBC + left shift
- may have positive blood cultures
- LFTs: obstructive picture (elevated ALP, GGT, and conjugated bilirubin, mild increase in AST, ALT)
- amylase/lipase: rule out pancreatitis
- U/S: intra-/extra-hepatic duct dilatation

Treatment

- initial: NPO, fluid and electrolyte resuscitation, \pm NGT, IV antibiotics (treats 80%)
- biliary decompression
 - ERCP + sphincterotomy: diagnostic and therapeutic
 - PTC with catheter drainage: if ERCP not available or unsuccessful
 - laparotomy with CBD exploration and T-tube placement if above fails
- all patients should also have a cholecystectomy, unless contraindicated

Prognosis

- suppurative cholangitis mortality rate: 50%

Gallstone Ileus

Pathogenesis

- repeated inflammation causing a cholecystoenteric fistula (usually duodenal) \rightarrow large gallstone enters the gut and impacts at or near the ileocecal valve, causing a true bowel obstruction (note: ileus is a misnomer in this context)

Clinical Features

- crampy abdominal pain, N/V (see *Bowel Obstruction*, GS24)

Investigations

- AXR: dilated small intestine, air fluid levels, may reveal radiopaque gallstone, air in biliary tree (pneumobilia) (40%)
- CT: biliary tract air, obstruction, gallstone in intestine
- Rigler's triad: pneumobilia (air in biliary tree), small bowel obstruction (partial or complete), gallstone (usually in right iliac fossa)



Laparoscopic vs. Open Cholecystectomy

Laparoscopic Cholecystectomy

- Shorter operating time
- Shorter length of stay
- Shorter sick leave
- Shorter time to return to daily activities
- Less post-operative pain
- Decreased use of post-operative analgesia
- Decreased reduction in pulmonary function*
- Fewer pulmonary complications
- Decreased acute phase response
- Less impairment in intestinal motility*

Open Cholecystectomy

- Lower conversion rates to open surgery (for mini-laparotomies)

*NOTE:

Pulmonary function = O_2 consumption, spirometric parameters, ABG, and acid-base balance

Intestinal motility = auscultating intestinal peristalsis, abdominal circumference measurement, and time interval to restitution of defecation



American Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy 2010 Predictors for Risk of CBD Stones

- Very strong:
 - CBD stone on ultrasound
 - Clinical ascending cholangitis
 - Bilirubin > 4 mg/dL
- Strong:
 - CBD dilated > 6 mm on ultrasound
 - Bilirubin 1.8-4 mg/dL
- Moderate:
 - Abnormal liver test (besides bilirubin)
 - Age > 55 yr
 - Clinical gallstone pancreatitis



Charcot's Triad

Fever, RUQ pain, jaundice



Reynolds' Pentad

Fever, RUQ pain, jaundice, shock, confusion



Rigler's Triad of Gallstone Ileus

- Pneumobilia
- Small bowel obstruction
- Gallstone



Common Bacteria in Biliary Tract

KEEPS

Klebsiella
Enterococcus
E. coli, *Enterobacter*
Proteus, *Pseudomonas*
Serratia

Treatment

- fluid resuscitation, NGT decompression
- surgery: enterolithotomy and removal of stone, inspect small and large bowel for additional proximal stones
- may close fistula surgically or manage expectantly (can resolve spontaneously)
- cholecystectomy either during enterolithotomy or after recovery if patient experiences gallbladder symptoms

**Bouveret's Syndrome**

Gastric outlet/duodenal obstruction caused by a large gallstone passing through a cholecystogastric or cholecystoduodenal fistula

Carcinoma of the Gallbladder

Risk Factors

- chronic symptomatic gallstones (70% of cases), old age, female, gallbladder polyps, porcelain gallbladder, chronic infection (*Salmonella*, *Helicobacter*), abnormal pancreaticobiliary duct junction

Clinical Features

- majority are adenocarcinoma
- may be incidental finding on elective cholecystectomy (~1% of elective cholecystectomies)
- many patients are asymptomatic until late
- local: non-specific RUQ pain, ± palpable RUQ mass
- Courvoisier's gallbladder: an enlarged, often palpable gallbladder in a patient with carcinoma of the head of the pancreas; associated with jaundice due to obstruction of the CBD
- systemic: jaundice (50%) due to invasion of CBD or compression of CBD by pericholedochal nodes, weight loss, malaise, anorexia
- early local extension to liver, may extend to stomach, duodenum
- early metastasis common to liver, lung, bone

Investigations

- U/S: mural thickening, calcification, loss of interface between gallbladder and liver, fixed mass
- endoscopic U/S (EUS): good for distinguishing carcinomas from other diagnoses such as polyps, good for staging, allows sampling of bile for cytology
- abdominal CT: polypoid mass, mural thickening, liver invasion, nodal involvement, distant metastases
- MRI/MRCP: good for distinguishing benign and malignant polyps

Treatment

- if carcinoma of the gallbladder is suspected pre-operatively, an open cholecystectomy should be considered to avoid tumor seeding of the peritoneal cavity
- confined to mucosa (rare): cholecystectomy
- beyond mucosa: cholecystectomy, en bloc wedge resection of 3-5 cm underlying liver, dissection of hepatoduodenal lymph nodes

Prognosis

- poor 5 yr survival (10%) as gallbladder carcinoma is often detected late
- better outcomes when detected incidentally following cholecystectomy

Cholangiocarcinoma

Definition

- malignancy of extra- or intrahepatic bile ducts

Risk Factors

- age 50-70, gallstones, ulcerative colitis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, choledochal cyst, *Clonorchis sinensis* infection (liver fluke), chronic intrahepatic stones (hepatolithiasis)

Clinical Features

- majority are adenocarcinomas
- gradual signs of biliary obstruction: jaundice, pruritus, dark urine, pale stools
- anorexia, weight loss, RUQ pain, Courvoisier's sign (if CBD obstructed), hepatomegaly
- early metastases are uncommon, but commonly tumor grows into portal vein or hepatic artery
- Klatskin tumor: cholangiocarcinoma located at bifurcation of common hepatic duct

Investigations

- LFTs show obstructive picture
- U/S, CT: bile ducts usually dilated, but not necessarily
- ERCP or PTC: to determine resectability, for biopsies
- CXR, bone scan: for metastatic workup



Obstructive jaundice is the most common presenting symptom for cholangiocarcinoma

**Courvoisier's Sign**

Palpable, nontender distended gallbladder due to CBD obstruction. Present in 33% of patients with pancreatic carcinoma. The distended gallbladder could not be due to acute cholecystitis or stone disease because the gallbladder would actually be scarred and smaller, not larger

Treatment

- if resectable: biliary drainage and wide excision margin
 - upper third lesions: duct resection + Roux-en-Y hepaticojejunostomy, ± liver resection
 - middle third lesions (uncommon): duct resection + Roux-en-Y hepaticojejunostomy
 - lower third lesions: Whipple procedure
- unresectable lesions: stent or choledochojejunostomy (surgical bypass)
- chemotherapy ± radiotherapy
- role for transplantation in some patients with Klatskins tumors

Prognosis

- radiotherapy useful for additional palliation, chemotherapy may be helpful
- the more proximal to the liver, the worse the prognosis
- overall 5 yr survival: 15%



Efficacy of Neoadjuvant Chemoradiation, Followed by Liver Transplantation, for Perihilar Cholangiocarcinoma at 12 US Centers

Gastroenterology 2012;143:88-98

Purpose: To determine the effectiveness of neoadjuvant chemoradiation and liver transplantation for unresectable perihilar cholangiocarcinoma and to determine the appropriateness of the United Network of Organ Sharing/Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network (UNOS/OPTN) criteria for model of end-stage liver disease (MELD) exception for patients with this disease.

Methods: Study conducted from 1993-2010 in 12 transplant centers. 287 patients included.

Results: Median follow-up was 2.5 yr. 43% of patients (n=122) died after a median of 1.2 yr from presentation, and of these, 60 died pretransplant. Post-transplant, 43 patients had recurrences and 62 died. Recurrence-free survival at 2, 5, and 10 yr were 78%, 65%, and 59%, respectively. Intention-to-treat survival rates at 2 and 5 yr were 68% and 53%, respectively. 25% of patients left the waiting list after a median of 4.6 mo. The waiting list drop-out rate increased by an average of 11.5% every 3 mo. Patients who received transplantation outside of the criteria for MELD exception or who had a malignancy within 5 yr had significantly worse recurrence-free survival compared to those who met the criteria (HR=2.98, 95% CI 1.79-4.95). Recurrence-free survival at 5 yr was shorter for patients with tumors >3 cm vs. ≤3 cm (p<0.001).

Conclusions: Neoadjuvant chemoradiation and liver transplantation are effective treatments for unresectable perihilar cholangiocarcinoma. Furthermore, the UNOS/OPTN criteria for MELD exception appear to be appropriate.



Pancreas

Acute Pancreatitis

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G45

GALLSTONE PANCREATITIS (35% of acute pancreatitis)

Pathogenesis

- obstruction of pancreatic duct by large or small gallstones and biliary sludge
- backup of pancreatic enzymes can cause autodigestion of the pancreas

Clinical Features (pancreatitis of any etiology)

- pain (epigastric pain radiating to back), N/V, ileus, peritoneal signs, jaundice, fever
- Ingelfinger's sign: pain worse when supine, better when sitting forward
- rarely may have coexistent cholangitis or pancreatic necrosis
- Ranson's criteria for determining prognosis of acute pancreatitis (see sidebar)
- physical exam may show: tachypnea, tachycardia, hypotension, abdominal distention and tenderness, Cullen's sign, Gray Turner's sign

Investigations

- high amylase (higher than alcoholic pancreatitis), lipase, leukocytosis
- elevated ALT (>150 IU/L), AST strongly suggest gallstone etiology of pancreatitis
- U/S may show multiple stones (may have passed spontaneously), edematous pancreas
- CXR, AXR, CT (if severe to evaluate for complications)

Treatment

- supportive: e.g. NPO, hydration, analgesia, early enteric nutrition
- antibiotics for severe cases of necrotizing pancreatitis or signs of sepsis
- stone often passes spontaneously (~90%); usually no surgical management in uncomplicated acute pancreatitis
- cholecystectomy during same admission (25-60% recurrence if no surgery)
- may need urgent ERCP + sphincterotomy if failure of conservative management if stone impacted in CBD (benefits of early ERCP controversial)
- early ERCP if concomitant cholangitis
- **surgical indications** in acute pancreatitis (rare)
 - debridement and drain placement for necrotizing pancreatitis if refractory to medical management, if septic or in ICU without other sources of sepsis

Complications

- pseudocyst (collection of pancreatic secretions >4 wk old surrounded by a defined wall of granulation tissue)
- abscess/infection, necrosis
- splenic/mesenteric/portal vessel thrombosis or rupture
- pancreatic ascites/pancreatic pleural effusion
- DM
- ARDS/sepsis/multiorgan failure
- coagulopathy/DIC
- encephalopathy
- severe hypocalcemia



Ranson's Criteria

A. At admission

1. Age >55 yr
2. WBC >16,000/mm³
3. Glucose >200 mg/dL
4. LDH ≥350 IU/L
5. AST >250 IU/L

B. During initial 48 h

1. Hct drop >10%
2. BUN rise >5 mg/dL
3. Arterial PO₂ <60 mmHg
4. Base deficit 72mg/dL
5. Calcium <8 mg/dL
6. Fluid sequestration >6 L

C. Interpretation

- ≥2 = difficult course
- ≥3 = high mortality (≥15%)

Chronic Pancreatitis

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G47

Surgical Treatment

- treatment is generally medical
- indications for surgery
 - failure of medical treatment
 - debilitating abdominal pain
 - pseudocyst complications: persistence, hemorrhage, infection, rupture
 - CBD obstruction (e.g. strictures), duodenal obstruction
 - pancreatic fistula, variceal hemorrhage secondary to splenic vein obstruction
 - rule out pancreatic cancer (present in 15% of chronic pancreatitis treated surgically)
 - anatomical abnormality causing recurrent pancreatitis
- pre-operative CT and/or ERCP are mandatory to delineate anatomy
- minimally invasive options
 - endoscopic pancreatic duct decompression: less effective than surgery
 - extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy: if pancreatic duct stones
 - celiac plexus block: lasting benefit in 30% patients, less effective in those <45 yr or with prior pancreatic surgery
- surgical options
 - drainage procedures: only effective if ductal system is dilated
 - ♦ Puestow procedure (lateral pancreaticojejunostomy): improves pain in 80% of patients
 - pancreatectomy: best option in absence of dilated duct
 - ♦ proximal disease: Whipple procedure (pancreaticoduodenectomy) – pain relief in 80%
 - ♦ distal disease: distal pancreatectomy ± Roux-en-Y pancreaticojejunostomy
 - ♦ total pancreatectomy: refractory disease
 - denervation of celiac ganglion and splanchnic nerves

PSEUDOCYST

- localized fluid collections rich in pancreatic enzymes, with a non-epithelialized wall consisting of fibrous and granulation tissue
- complication of chronic and/or acute pancreatitis
- often resolve spontaneously
- cyst wall must be mature prior to drainage (4-6 wk)
- pseudoaneurysm an absolute contraindication to endoscopic drainage, must embolize first

Treatment

- surgical drainage (gold standard)
 - cystgastrostomy
 - cystenterostomy
 - resection
- endoscopic drainage
 - cystgastrostomy
 - cystduodenostomy
 - percutaneous catheter drainage
- consider biopsy of cyst wall to rule out cystadenocarcinoma



The hallmark of chronic pancreatitis is epigastric pain radiating to the back



The lining of pancreatic pseudocysts consists of fibrous and granulation tissue; the lack of an epithelial lining distinguishes pseudocysts from true cystic lesions of the pancreas

Pancreatic Cancer

Epidemiology

- fourth most common cause of cancer-related mortality in both men and women in Canada
- M:F = 1.3:1, average age: 50-70

Risk Factors

- increased age
- smoking: 2-5x increased risk, most clearly established risk factor
- high fat/low fiber diets, heavy alcohol use
- obesity
- DM, chronic pancreatitis
- partial gastrectomy, cholecystectomy
- chemicals: betanaphthylamine, benzidine
- African descent

Clinical Features

- head of the pancreas (70%)
 - weight loss, obstructive jaundice, steatorrhea, vague constant mid-epigastric pain (often worse at night, may radiate to back)
 - painless jaundice (occurs more often with peri-ampullary), Courvoisier's sign (see sidebar GS49)
- body or tail of pancreas (30%)
 - tends to present later and usually inoperable
 - weight loss, vague mid-epigastric pain
 - <10% jaundiced
 - sudden onset DM



Vague abdominal pain with weight loss ± jaundice in a patient over 50 yr old is pancreatic cancer until proven otherwise



Trousseau's Sign
Spontaneous peripheral venous thrombosis, often associated with pancreatic and other cancers

Investigations

- serum chemistry is non-specific, can have elevated ALP and bilirubin $>300 \mu\text{mol/L}$
- CA 19-9 (most useful serum marker of pancreatic cancer)
- U/S, contrast CT (also evaluates metastasis and resectability), ERCP, MRI, MRCP

Pathology

- ductal adenocarcinoma: most common type (75-80%); exocrine pancreas
- intraductal papillary mucinous neoplasm (IPMN)
- other: pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors (non-functional, insulinoma, gastrinoma, VIPoma, glucagonoma, somatostatinoma), mucinous cystic neoplasm (MCN), acinar cell carcinoma,
- see *Surgical Endocrinology*, GS60 for functional pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors

Treatment

- resectable (10-20% of pancreatic cancer)
 - no involvement of liver, peritoneum, or vasculature (hepatic artery, SMA, SMV, portal vein, IVC, aorta), no distant metastasis
 - Whipple procedure (pancreaticoduodenectomy) for cure $<5\%$ mortality
 - distal pancreatectomy \pm splenectomy, lymphadenectomy if carcinoma of midbody and tail of pancreas
- borderline resectable
 - tumors that abut the SMA, SMV, portal vein, hepatic artery, or celiac artery
- non-resectable (palliative \rightarrow relieve pain, obstruction)
 - most body/tail tumors are not resectable (due to late presentation)
 - relieve biliary/duodenal obstruction with endoscopic stenting or double bypass procedure (choledochoenterostomy + gastroenterostomy)
 - chemotherapy (gemcitabine, folfinrox), radiotherapy – only slightly increase survival

Prognosis

- most important prognostic indicators are lymph node status, margin status, size $>3 \text{ cm}$, perineural invasion (invasion of tumor into microscopic nerves of pancreas)
- overall 5 yr survival for all patients with pancreas cancer is 1%; following surgical resection 5 yr survival is 20%
- median survival for unresectable disease: 3-6 mo if metastatic, 8-12 mo if locally advanced at presentation

Table 20. TNM Classification System for Exocrine and Endocrine Tumors of the Pancreas

Primary Tumor (T)	Regional Lymph Nodes (N)	Distant Metastasis (M)
TX Primary tumor cannot be assessed	NX Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed	M0 No distant metastasis
T0 No evidence of primary tumor	N0 No regional lymph node metastasis	M1 Distant metastasis
Tis Carcinoma <i>in situ</i>	N1 Regional lymph node metastasis	
T1 Tumor limited to pancreas, $<2 \text{ cm}$ in greatest dimension		
T2 Tumor limited to pancreas, $>2 \text{ cm}$ in greatest dimension		
T3 Tumor extends beyond pancreas, no involvement of celiac axis or superior mesenteric artery		
T4 Tumor involves celiac axis or superior mesenteric artery (unresectable)		

Table 21. Staging and Treatment of Pancreatic Cancer

Stage	Classification	5-Yr Survival	Treatment
0	Tis, N0, M0		Surgical resection \pm chemotherapy
IA	T1, N0, M0	14%	Same as above
IB	T2, N0, M0	12%	Same as above
IIA	T3, N0, M0	7%	Same as above
IIB	T1-3, N1, M0	5%	Same as above
III	T4, any N, M0	3%	Borderline resectable, trial of chemotherapy and radiation
IV	any T, any N, M1	1%	Non-resectable, palliative treatments



Diagnostic Value of Serum Carbohydrate Antigen 19-9 in Pancreatic Cancer: A Meta-Analysis

Tumor Biol 2014;35:7459-65 [Epub ahead of print]

Summary: 11 studies with 2,316 patients were included in the analysis. The sensitivity of CA19-9 in the diagnosis of pancreatic cancer was found to be 0.8 (95% CI 0.77-0.82) and the specificity also 80% (95% CI 0.77-0.82) with a diagnostic odds ratio of 14.79 (95% CI 8.55-25.59). Overall, CA19-9 plays an important role in the diagnosis of pancreatic cancer.



Steps of a Whipple Resection (Pancreaticoduodenectomy)

- Assessment of metastatic disease (all peritoneal surfaces)
- Mobilization of the duodenum and head of the pancreas
- Identification of the superior mesenteric vein and mobilization of the pancreatic neck
- Mobilization of the stomach; dissection of the hepatoduodenal ligament and cholecystectomy
- Division of the stomach, proximal jejunum, and CBD
- Transection of the pancreatic neck and dissection of the uncinate process from the retroperitoneum
- Restoration of gastrointestinal continuity: construction of a pancreaticojejunostomy, hepaticojejunostomy, gastrojejunostomy using a neoduodenum

Removed:

- CBD
- Gallbladder
- Duodenum
- Pancreatic head
- Distal stomach (sometimes)

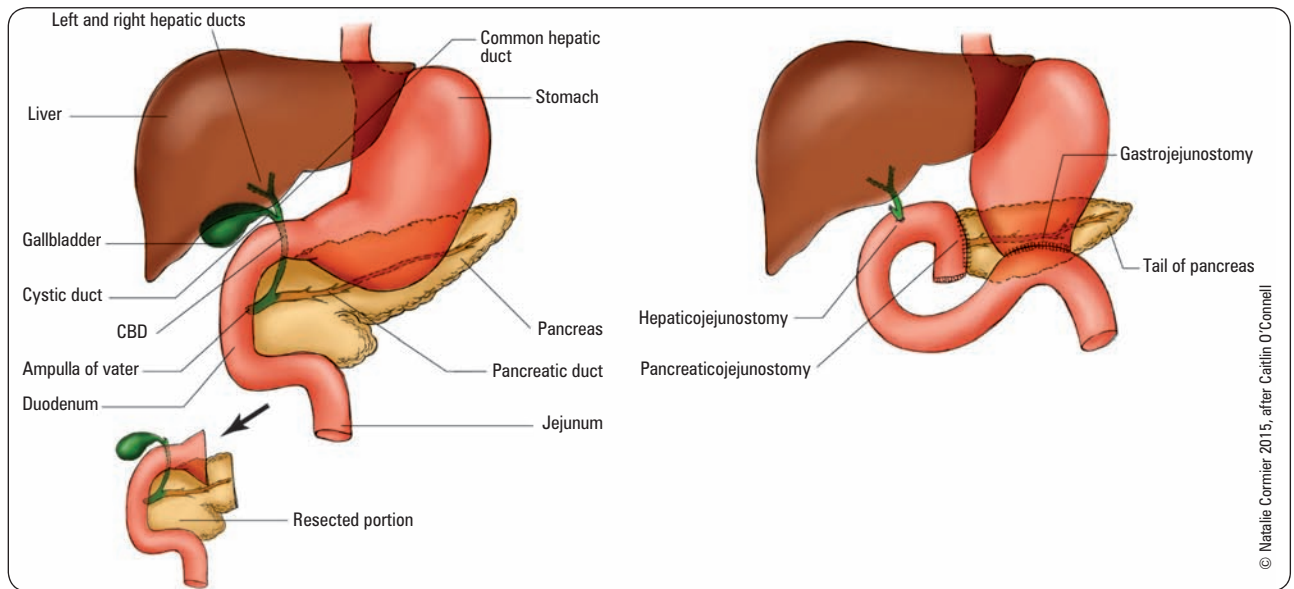


Figure 28. Schematic of Whipple resection, showing the resected components

Spleen

Splenic Trauma

- typically from blunt trauma (especially in people with splenomegaly)
- most common intra-abdominal organ injury in blunt trauma
- may have Kehr's sign

Treatment

- non-operative
 - in stable patients: extended bed rest with serial hematocrit levels, close monitoring for 3-5 d; pediatric guidelines for days of bed rest is grade plus 1 (i.e. grade 3 splenic laceration requires 4 d of bed rest)
 - hemostatic control
 - splenic artery embolization if patient stable and one of: active contrast extravasation, splenic pseudoaneurysm, hemoperitoneum
- operative
 - splenorrhaphy (suture of spleen) ± splenic wrapping with hemostatic mesh – if patient hemodynamically stable, patient has stopped bleeding and laceration does not involve hilum
 - partial splenectomy, rarely performed due to risk of recurrent hemorrhage
 - total splenectomy if patient unstable or high-grade injury



Kehr's Sign

Left shoulder pain due to diaphragmatic irritation from splenic rupture, worsens with inspiration

Splenectomy

Indications

- splenic trauma (most common reason for splenectomy), hereditary spherocytosis, primary hypersplenism, chronic immune thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), splenic vein thrombosis causing esophageal varices, splenic abscess, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP), sickle cell disease
- does not benefit all thrombocytopenic states (e.g. infection, most malignancies involving the bone marrow, drugs/toxins)
- probability of cure of ITP by splenectomy is 60-70%, may be predicted by response to IVIg

Complications

- short-term
 - injury to surrounding structures (e.g. gastric wall, tail of pancreas)
 - post-operative thrombocytosis, leukocytosis
 - thrombosis of portal, splenic, or mesenteric veins
 - subphrenic abscess
- long-term
 - post-splenectomy sepsis (encapsulated organisms): 4% of splenectomized patients (highest risk in those <16 yr old)
 - ♦ 50% mortality
 - ♦ prophylaxis with vaccinations, ideally 2 wk pre- or post-operative (pneumococcal, *H. influenzae*, and meningococcus)
 - ♦ liberal use of penicillin especially in children <6 yr old
 - splenosis: intra-abdominal "seeding" of splenic tissue during removal



Indication of Splenectomy

SHIRTS

Splenic abscess/splenomegaly
Hereditary spherocytosis
Immune thrombocytopenic purpura
Rupture of spleen
Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura
Splenic vein thrombosis

Breast

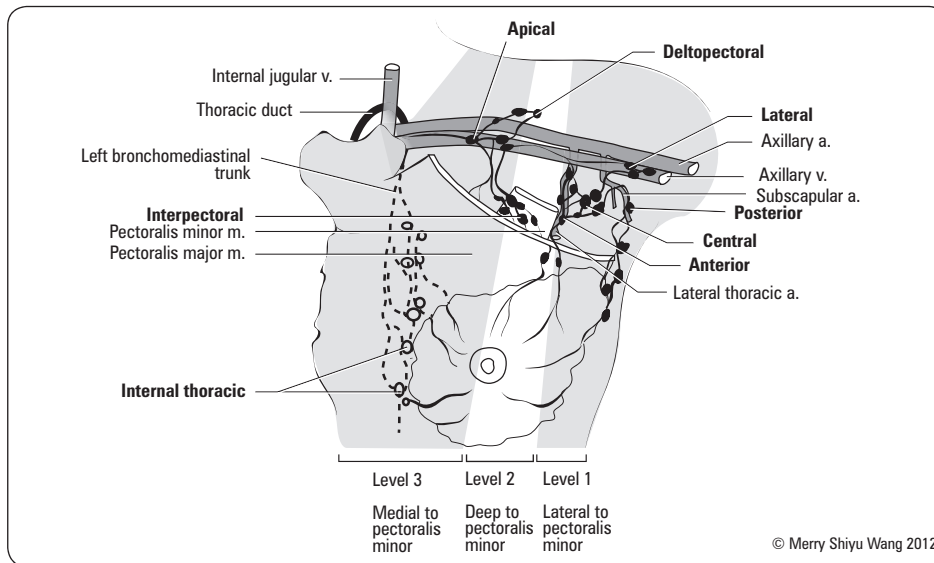


Figure 29. Anatomy of the breast



Levels of Axillary Lymph Nodes
Level I: lateral to pectoralis minor
Level II: deep to pectoralis minor
Level III: medial to pectoralis minor
 (higher level = worse prognosis)

Benign Breast Lesions

NON-PROLIFERATIVE LESIONS

- also known as fibrocystic change, chronic cystic mastitis, mammary dysplasia
- benign breast condition characterized by fibrous and cystic changes in the breast
- no increased risk of breast cancer
- age 30 to menopause (and after if HRT used)
- clinical features
 - breast pain, focal areas of nodularity or cysts often in the upper outer quadrant, frequently bilateral, mobile, varies with menstrual cycle, nipple discharge (straw-like, brown, or green)
- treatment
 - evaluation of breast mass and reassurance
 - if >40 yr old: mammography every 3 yr
 - no strong evidence for avoidance of xanthine-containing products (coffee, tea, chocolate, cola)
 - analgesia (ibuprofen, ASA)
 - for severe symptoms: OCP, danazol, bromocriptine

PROLIFERATIVE LESIONS – No Atypia

Fibroadenoma

- most common benign breast tumor in women <30 yr
- risk of subsequent breast cancer is increased only if fibroadenoma is complex, there is adjacent atypia, or a strong family history of breast cancer
- clinical features
 - nodules: smooth, rubbery, discrete, well-circumscribed, non-tender, mobile, hormone-dependent
 - unlike cysts, needle aspiration yields no fluid
- investigations
 - core or excisional biopsy required
 - U/S and FNA alone cannot differentiate fibroadenoma from Phyllodes tumor
- treatment
 - generally conservative: serial observation
 - consider excision if size 2-3 cm and growing on serial U/S (q6mo x 2 yr is usual follow-up), if symptomatic, formed after age 35, or patient preference

Intraductal Papilloma

- solitary intraductal benign polyp
- present as nipple discharge (most common cause of spontaneous, unilateral, bloody nipple discharge), breast mass, nodule on U/S
- can harbor areas of atypia or DCIS
- treatment: excision of involved duct to ensure no atypia



DDx for Breast Mass

Benign

- Fibrocystic changes
- Fibroepithelial lesions (fibroadenoma most common; benign phyllodes also)
- Fat necrosis
- Papilloma/papillomatosis
- Galactocele
- Duct ectasia
- Ductal/lobular hyperplasia
- Sclerosing adenosis
- Lipoma
- Neurofibroma
- Granulomatous mastitis (e.g. TB, granulomatosis with polyangiitis, sarcoidosis)
- Abscess
- Silicone implant

Malignant

- Breast cancer (likely invasive, DCIS rarely forms a breast mass)
- Malignant phyllodes
- Angiosarcoma (rare)

Ductal Hyperplasia Without Atypia

- increased number of cells within the ductal space
- cells retain benign cytology
- no treatment required
- slightly increased cancer risk if moderate or florid hyperplasia

PROLIFERATIVE LESIONS – With Atypia**Atypical Hyperplasias**

- can involve ducts (ductal hyperplasia with atypia) or lobules (lobular hyperplasia with atypia)
- cells lose apical-basal orientation
- increased risk of breast cancer
- diagnosis: core or excisional biopsy
- treatment: complete resection, risk modification (avoid exogenous hormones), close follow-up

OTHER LESIONS**Fat Necrosis**

- uncommon, result of trauma (may be minor, positive history in only 50%), after breast surgery (i.e. reduction)
- firm, ill-defined mass with skin or nipple retraction, \pm tenderness
- regress spontaneously, but complete imaging \pm biopsy to rule out carcinoma

Mammary Duct Ectasia

- obstruction of a subareolar duct leading to duct dilation, inflammation, and fibrosis
- may present with nipple discharge, bluish mass under nipple, local pain
- risk of secondary infection (abscess, mastitis)
- resolves spontaneously

Montgomery Tubercle

- Montgomery tubercles (or Morgagni tubercles) are papular projections at the edge of the areola
- obstruction of these glands can lead to inflammation or cystic collections (cyst of Montgomery i.e. retroareolar cyst)
- if signs of secondary infection, start treatment for mastitis
- resolves spontaneously in weeks to years

Abscess

- lactational (see [Obstetrics, OB49](#)) vs. periductal/subareolar
- unilateral localized pain, tenderness, erythema, subareolar mass, nipple discharge, nipple inversion
- rule out inflammatory carcinoma, as indicated
- treatment: initially broad-spectrum antibiotics and I&D, if persistent total duct excision (definitive)
- if mass does not resolve: U/S to assess for presence of abscess, core biopsy to exclude cancer, consider MRI



Breast Cancer

Epidemiology

- 2nd leading cause of cancer mortality in women (1st is lung cancer)

Risk Factors

- gender (99% female)
- age (80% >40 yr)
- important risk factors are prior history of breast cancer and/or prior breast biopsy (regardless of pathology)
- 1st degree relative with breast cancer (greater risk if relative was premenopausal)
- increased risk with high breast density, nulliparity, first pregnancy >30 yr, menarche <12 yr, menopause >55 yr
- decreased risk with lactation, early menopause, early childbirth
- radiation exposure (e.g. mantle radiation for Hodgkin's disease)
- >5 yr HRT



Gender followed by age are the two greatest risk factors for breast cancer

Investigations

- mammography
 - indication
 - ♦ screening, see [Family Medicine, FM4](#)
 - findings indicative of malignancy
 - ♦ mass that is poorly defined, spiculated border
 - ♦ microcalcifications
 - ♦ architectural distortion
 - ♦ interval mammographic changes
 - ♦ normal mammogram does not rule out suspicion of cancer based on clinical findings
- other radiographic studies
 - U/S: differentiate between cystic and solid
 - MRI: high sensitivity, low specificity
 - galactogram/ductogram (for nipple discharge): identifies lesions in ducts
 - metastatic workup as indicated (usually after surgery or if clinical suspicion of metastatic disease): bone scan, abdominal U/S, CXR (or CT chest/abdomen/pelvis), CT head (only if specific neurological symptoms)



Any palpable dominant breast mass requires further investigation



Diagnostic mammography is indicated in all patients, even in women <50 yr



Phyllodes tumors are rare fibroepithelial breast tumors that can be benign or malignant that mostly affect women from 35-55 yr

Diagnostic Procedures

- needle aspiration: for palpable cystic lesions; send fluid for cytology if blood or cyst does not completely resolve
- U/S or mammography guided core needle biopsy (most common)
- fine needle aspiration (FNA): for palpable solid masses; need experienced practitioner for adequate sampling
- excisional biopsy: only performed as second choice to core needle biopsy; should not be done for diagnosis if possible

Genetic Screening

- consider testing for BRCA1/2 if:
 - patient diagnosed with breast AND ovarian cancer
 - strong family history of breast/ovarian cancer
 - family history of male breast cancer
 - young patient (<35 yr)
 - bilateral breast cancer in patients <50 yr

Staging

- clinical
 - tumor size by palpation, mammogram
 - nodal involvement by palpation
 - metastasis by physical exam, CXR, and abdominal U/S (or CT chest/abdomen/pelvis), bone scan (usually done post-operative if node-positive disease)
- pathological
 - tumor size
 - grade: modified Bloom and Richardson score (I to III) – histologic, nuclear, and mitotic grade
 - number of axillary nodes positive for malignancy out of total nodes resected, extranodal extension, sentinel node positive/negative
 - estrogen receptor (ER) + progesterone receptor (PR) testing
 - Her2Neu receptor testing
 - margins: negative, <1 mm, positive
 - lymphovascular invasion (LVI)
 - extensive *in situ* component (EIC): DCIS in surrounding tissue
 - involvement of dermal lymphatics (inflammatory) – automatically Stage IIIB

Table 22. Staging of Breast Cancer (American Joint Committee on Cancer)

Stage	Tumor	Nodes (regional) (clinical)	Metastasis	Survival (5 yr)
0	<i>in situ</i>	None	None	99%
I	<2 cm	None	None	94%
II A	<2 cm	Mobile ipsilateral	None	85%
II B	2-5 cm or >5 cm	None or mobile ipsilateral	None None	70%
III A	Any size	Fixed ipsilateral or internal mammary	None	52%
III B	Skin/chest wall invasion	Any	None	48%
III C	Any size	Ipsilateral infraclavicular/internal mammary plus axillary nodes; ipsilateral supraclavicular node(s) ± axillary nodes	None	33%
IV	Any	Any	Distant	18%



Favorable Features

- <2 cm
- Grade I (low grade)
- Node negative
- ER positive
- Mucinous pattern

Unfavorable Features

- >5 cm
- Grade III (high grade)
- Node positive
- ER negative
- Inflammatory cancer
- Her2Neu positive
- Positive margins
- LVI
- EIC
- Dermal lymphatics involved

Pathology

- non-invasive (cannot penetrate basement membrane)
 - ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS)
 - ♦ proliferation of malignant ductal epithelial cells completely contained within breast ducts, often multifocal
 - ♦ 80% non-palpable, detected by screening mammogram
 - ♦ risk of invasive ductal carcinoma in same breast up to 35% in 10 yr
 - ♦ treatment
 - lumpectomy with wide excision margins + radiation (5-10% risk invasive cancer)
 - mastectomy if large area of disease, high grade, or multifocal (risk of invasive cancer reduced to 1%)
 - possibly tamoxifen as an adjuvant treatment
 - 99% 5 yr survival
 - lobular carcinoma *in situ* (LCIS)
 - ♦ neoplastic cells completely contained within breast lobule
 - ♦ no palpable mass, no mammographic findings, usually incidental finding on breast biopsy for another indication
 - ♦ treatment
 - clinical follow-up
 - chemoprevention (tamoxifen)
 - surgery (uncommon)
 - ♦ not a precursor lesion, but considered a risk factor for breast cancer development
- invasive
 - invasive ductal carcinoma (most common 80%)
 - ♦ originates from ductal epithelium and infiltrates supporting stroma
 - ♦ characteristics: hard, scirrhous, infiltrating tentacles, gritty on cross-section
 - invasive lobular carcinoma (8-15%)
 - ♦ originates from lobular epithelium
 - ♦ 20% bilateral (i.e. more often than infiltrating ductal carcinoma)
 - ♦ does not form microcalcifications, harder to detect mammographically (may benefit from MRI)
 - Paget's disease (1-3%)
 - ♦ ductal carcinoma that invades nipple with scaling, eczematoid lesion
 - inflammatory carcinoma (1-4%)
 - ♦ ductal carcinoma that invades dermal lymphatics
 - ♦ most aggressive form of breast cancer
 - ♦ clinical features: erythema, skin edema, warm, swollen and tender breast ± lump
 - ♦ peau d'orange indicates advanced disease (IIIb-IV)
 - male breast cancer (<1%)
 - ♦ most commonly invasive ductal carcinoma
 - ♦ often diagnosed at later stages
 - ♦ stage-for-stage similar prognosis to breast cancer in females
 - ♦ consider genetic testing
 - sarcomas: rare
 - ♦ most commonly Phyllodes tumor, a variant of fibroadenoma with potential for malignancy
 - ♦ can also be angiosarcomas – after previous radiation
 - lymphoma: rare
 - other: papillary, medullary, mucinous, tubular cancers
 - ♦ generally better prognosis

Treatment

Table 23. Breast Cancer Treatment by Stage

Stage	Primary Treatment Options	Adjuvant Systemic Therapy
0 (<i>in situ</i>)	BCS + radiotherapy BCS alone if margins > 1 cm and low nuclear grade Mastectomy* ± SLNB	None
I	BCS + axillary node dissection + radiotherapy Mastectomy* + axillary node dissection/SLNB	May not be needed; discuss risks/benefits of chemotherapy and tamoxifen
II	BCS + axillary node dissection + radiotherapy Mastectomy* + axillary node dissection/SLNB	Chemotherapy for premenopausal women or postmenopausal and estrogen receptor (ER) negative, followed by tamoxifen if ER positive
III	Likely mastectomy + axillary node dissection + radiotherapy	Neoadjuvant therapy may be considered i.e. pre-operative chemotherapy and/or hormone therapy. Adjuvant radiation and chemotherapy may also be appropriate (i.e. post-operative)
Inflammatory	Likely mastectomy + axillary node dissection + radiotherapy	Neoadjuvant therapy
IV	Surgery as appropriate for local control	Primary treatment is systemic therapy i.e. chemotherapy and/or hormone therapy

BCS = breast-conserving surgery; SLNB = sentinel lymph node biopsy

*If no reason to select mastectomy, the choice between BCS + radiotherapy and mastectomy can be made according to patient's preference since choice of local treatment does not significantly affect survival if local control is achieved



Diagnosis of Breast Lesions: Fine-Needle Aspiration Cytology or Core Needle Biopsy? A Review

J Clin Pathol 2012;65:287-292

CNB

- High sensitivity (85-100%) and specificity (86-100%).
- High success rates for diagnosis of malignancy for palpable lesions (97%), non-palpable lesions (94%), and lesions <10 mm (90%).
- More accurate for histologic and immunohistochemistry examinations, and differentiation between *in situ* and invasive malignancies.
- Reliable for testing of ER, PR, and HER2 status and proliferation assessment.
- More painful procedure.

FNAC

- Variable sensitivity (35-95%) and specificity (48-100%).
- Quality correlates with skill of aspirator.
- Lower success rates for diagnosis of malignancy for palpable lesions (75-90%), non-palpable lesions (34-58%), and lesions <10 mm (50%).
- High rates of insufficient sampling for lesions >40 mm or calcified lesions.
- Quick to perform.
- Low technical costs.

Conclusions: FNAC is preferable for palpable, low malignancy-risk lesions. However, for potential malignancies, CNB is advantageous with respect to prognostication and prediction and is likely cost-effective in the long-term.



Breast conserving surgery can be offered to most women with stage I/II disease

Primary Surgical Treatment

- BCS: lumpectomy with wide local excision
 - for treatment of stage I and II disease
 - must be combined with radiation for survival equivalent to mastectomy
 - contraindications
 - ♦ high risk of local recurrence: extensive malignant-type calcifications on mammogram, multifocal primary tumors, or failure to obtain tumor-free margins after re-excision
 - ♦ contraindications to radiation therapy (pregnancy, previous radiation, collagen vascular disease)
 - ♦ large tumor size relative to breast
- mastectomy
 - radical mastectomy (rarely done anymore): removes all breast tissue, skin, pectoralis muscle, axillary nodes
 - modified radical mastectomy (MRM): removes all breast tissue, skin, and axillary nodes
 - simple mastectomy: removes all breast tissue and skin
 - see [Plastic Surgery, PL32](#) for breast reconstruction
- axillary lymph node dissection (ALND)
 - performed if SLNB is positive or nodes are clinically concerning
 - risk of arm lymphedema (10-15%), decreased arm sensation, shoulder pain
- sentinel lymph node biopsy (SLNB)
 - technetium-99 ± blue dye injected at tumor site prior to surgery to identify sentinel node(s)
 - intraoperative frozen section
 - proceed with ALND if positive
 - 5% false negative rate



Adjuvant/Neoadjuvant

- radiation
 - indications
 - ♦ decrease risk of local recurrence; almost always used after BCS, sometimes after mastectomy (if >4 nodes positive or tumor >5 cm)
 - ♦ inoperable locally advanced cancer
 - axillary nodal radiation may be added if nodal involvement
- hormonal
 - indications
 - ♦ ER positive plus node-positive or high-risk node-negative
 - ♦ palliation for metastases
 - tamoxifen if premenopausal or aromatase inhibitors (e.g. anastrozole)
 - ovarian ablation (e.g. goserelin/GnRH agonist, oophorectomy), progestins (e.g. megestrol acetate), androgens (e.g. fluoxymesterone) are other options
- chemotherapy
 - indications
 - ♦ ER negative plus node-positive or high-risk node-negative
 - ♦ ER positive and young age
 - ♦ stage I disease at high risk of recurrence (high grade, lymphovascular invasion)
 - ♦ palliation for metastatic disease

Post-Treatment Follow-Up

- visits q3-6mo x 2 yr and annually thereafter (frequency is controversial)
- annual mammography; no other imaging unless clinically indicated
- psychosocial support and counseling

Local/Regional Recurrence

- recurrence in treated breast or ipsilateral axilla
- 1% per year up to maximum of 15% risk of developing contralateral malignancy
- 5x increased risk of developing metastases

Metastasis

- bone > lungs > pleura > liver > brain
- treatment is palliative: hormone therapy, chemotherapy, radiation



Analysis of Circulating Tumor DNA to Monitor Metastatic Breast Cancer

NEJM 2013;368:1199-1209

Study: The quantification of circulating tumor DNA, cancer antigen 15-3 (CA 15-3), and circulating tumor cells in 30 women with metastatic breast cancer receiving systemic therapy. The results were compared with radiographic imaging of tumors.

Results/Conclusions: Circulating tumor DNA was detected in 97% of women and showed greater correlation with changes in tumor burden than did CA 15-3 or circulating tumor cells, providing the earliest measure of treatment response in 53% of women. CA 15-3 and circulating tumor cells were detected in 78% and 87% of women, respectively. Circulating tumor DNA may therefore be an informative biomarker for metastatic breast cancer.



There is no survival benefit of mastectomy over lumpectomy plus radiation for stage I and II disease



Personalized Medicine Gene Expression (Oncotype DX)

Biomark Cancer 2013;5:61-70

- Real time PCR assay to provide prognostic information independent of clinical and pathological factors.
- Analyzes 21 different genes (16 cancer related and 5 reference genes) within a tumor sample.
- Used in women with stages I and II, hormone receptors positive, lymph node negative, invasive breast cancer, who received tamoxifen for 5 yr.
- Calculated the risk of recurrence based on gene expression to help decide whether more aggressive treatment such as chemotherapy should be considered.
- Score between 0-100 indicating risk of recurrence if treated with hormonal therapy only.
 - Score <17: low risk of recurrence (treat with hormonal therapy only).
 - Score 18-30: medium risk of recurrence; chemotherapy is considered.
 - Score >31: high risk of recurrence; chemotherapy will benefit patient.

Surgical Endocrinology

Thyroid and Parathyroid

- see [Endocrinology](#), E20 and [Otolaryngology](#), OT35-OT38



Thyroidectomy

- indications: thyroid cancer, symptomatic thyroid mass or goiter, medically refractory Graves' or hyperthyroidism
- contraindications: uncontrolled severe hyperthyroidism (i.e. Graves') due to risk of intraoperative or post-operative thyroid storm
- pre-operative workup: thyroid U/S for thyroid nodules, FNA for large nodules, U/S of the neck for lesions suspicious for papillary or medullary thyroid cancer, CT neck useful to rule out extension, vocal cord function
- complications: hypocalcemia secondary to hypoparathyroidism, recurrent/superior laryngeal nerve injury, neck hematoma, infection, thyrotoxic storm

Parathyroidectomy

- indications: symptomatic primary hyperparathyroidism due to effects of PTH on bone or kidneys, asymptomatic primary hyperparathyroidism with specific laboratory criteria (elevated serum Ca, marked hypercalciuria, Cr clearance <30% normal, bone density reduction with T score <2.5, age <50 yr)
- contraindications: familial hypocalciuric hypercalcemia
- pre-operative workup: ^{99m}Tc sestamibi scanning, ± SPECT or CT, U/S
- complications: recurrent/superior laryngeal nerve injury, post-operative hypocalcemia, infection, bleeding

Adrenal Gland

- see [Endocrinology](#), E29
- functional anatomy
 - cortex: glomerulosa (mineralocorticoids), fasciculata (glucocorticoids), reticularis (sex steroids)
 - medulla: catecholamines (epinephrine, norepinephrine)
- types of adrenal tumors: functional (e.g. Cushing's syndrome, Conn's syndrome) or non-functional



INCIDENTALOMA

- adrenal mass discovered by investigation of unrelated symptoms

Epidemiology

- benign adenoma (38%) > metastases to adrenal (22%) >> cyst, carcinoma, pheochromocytoma, neuroblastoma
- metastasis to adrenal gland from: lung > breast, colon, lymphoma, melanoma, kidney
- peak incidence of carcinoma: females age 50-60, risk decreases with increasing age and male gender

Investigations

- MRI, CT: size >6 cm is best predictor of primary adrenal carcinoma (92% are >6 cm)
- functional studies
 - pheochromocytoma: 24 h urine epinephrine, norepinephrine, metanephrine, normetanephrine, VMA (vanillylmandelic acid)
 - Cushing's: 24 h urine cortisol or 1 mg overnight dexamethasone suppression test
 - aldosteronoma: electrolytes, aldosterone:renin level, saline suppression test if appropriate
 - adrenal androgens: 17-OH progesterone, DHEAS
- FNA biopsy: if suspect metastasis to adrenal (must exclude pheochromocytoma first to prevent a hypertensive crisis)
 - indicated if history of cancer or patient is smoker
- iodocholesterol scintigraphy: may distinguish benign vs. malignant disease

Treatment

- functional tumor: resect
- non-functional tumor
 - >4 cm: resect
 - <4 cm: follow-up imaging in 6-12 mo, resect if >1 cm enlargement

Pancreas

INSULINOMA

- tumor that secretes insulin
- most common pancreatic endocrine neoplasm; 10% associated with MEN1 syndrome

Clinical Features

- Whipple's triad
- palpitations, trembling, diaphoresis, confusion, seizure, personality changes

Investigations

- blood work: decreased serum glucose and increased serum insulin and C-peptide
- U/S, CT: insulinomas evenly distributed throughout head, body, tail of pancreas

Treatment

- only 10% are malignant
- enucleation of solitary insulinomas may be done endoscopically
- tumors >2 cm located close to the pancreatic duct may require pancreatectomy or pancreaticoduodenectomy



Whipple's Triad

- Symptomatic fasting hypoglycemia
- Serum glucose <50 mg/dL
- Relief of symptoms when glucose is administered

GASTRINOMA

- tumor secreting gastrin; cause of Zollinger-Ellison syndrome

Clinical Features

- abdominal pain, PUD, severe esophagitis
- multiple ulcers in atypical locations refractory of antacid therapy

Investigations

- blood work: serum gastrin levels (usually >1,000 pg/mL), secretin stimulation test
- U/S, CT: 70-90% found in Passaro's triangle (head of pancreas medially, 2nd portion of duodenum inferiorly, and the confluence of the cystic and CBD superiorly)
- octreotide scintigraphy scan

Treatment

- 50% are malignant
- surgical resection of tumor dependent on location
- non-surgical treatment: chemotherapy, somatostatin analogues, interferon, chemoembolization
- if inoperable, vagotomy can be performed for symptomatic control

VASOACTIVE INTESTINAL PEPTIDE-SECRETING TUMOR

- tumor secreting VIP; commonly located in the distal pancreas and most are malignant when diagnosed

Clinical Features

- severe watery diarrhea causing dehydration, weakness, electrolyte imbalance

Investigations


- blood work: serum VIP levels
- U/S, CT

Treatment

- somatostatin analogues
- surgical resection/palliative debulking

Pediatric Surgery

Table 24. Pediatric Surgery

Condition	Epidemiology and Risk Factors	Pathophysiology	Clinical Features and History	Physical Exam	Investigations	Treatment	Prognosis
Hydrocele (see Urology, U28) 	1-2% of live births Present at birth, majority close spontaneously by 1 yr M:F = 6:1 Prematurity	Communicating hydroceles: processus vaginalis fails to close with small opening for fluid to move freely between peritoneal cavity through patent processus (if opening progresses to allow passage of intestine, it is a hernia) Noncommunicating hydroceles: fluid trapped in tunica vaginalis; in older children, may be secondary to testicular pathology (reactive hydrocele)	Painless scrotal mass Communicating hydroceles increase in size with standing or Valsalva, may be absent in the morning and large in the evening	Transillumination suggests hydrocele Silk glove sign: gently palpating hydrocele sac over pubic tubercle feels like rubbing silk on silk	U/S if suspect pathology	Most resolve spontaneously by 1 yr Surgical repair if: – Persistence > 2 yr – Pain – Fluctuating in size which suggests communication – Cosmetic reasons – Infection	<2% recurrence
Hypertrophic Pyloric Stenosis	0.03-1.0% of live births Can present at 1-20 wk, most commonly at 6-8 wk M:F = 4:1 Early erythromycin exposure (<13 d old)	Acquired pyloric circular muscle hypertrophy results in gastric outlet obstruction Hypovolemia caused by emesis of gastric contents causes hypochloremic hypokalemic metabolic alkalosis Electrolyte exchange based volume retention in kidneys results in paradoxical aciduria	Projectile non-bilious vomiting Vomiting 30-60 min after feeds Hungry after vomiting Dehydration (variable severity)	Smooth oblong 1-2 cm mass palpable above umbilicus, "olive" Visible left-to-right gastric contraction "waves" after feeding	Electrolytes (assess hypochloremia, dehydration) U/S shows pyloric length > 14 mm, muscle thickness > 4 mm Upper GI series necessary only when U/S unavailable or non-diagnostic will show "string sign"	Fluid resuscitate with normal saline, correct electrolyte and acid/base abnormalities with D5, 1/2NS + 20 mEq/L KCl at maintenance rate NGT decompression unnecessary Pyloromyotomy, open (Ramstedt vs. transumbilical or laparoscopic approach) Alternative therapies such as TPN/wait or atropine impractical due to long time course of effect	Pyloromyotomy curative
Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernias 3 types: – Posterolateral (Bochdalek) – Left-sided, 85% – Right-sided, 13% – Bilateral, rare, often fatal – Anterior (Morgagni) – Hiatus	1 in 2,000 to 5,000 live births Presents within hours of life although some cases of delayed presentation M=F >10% are associated with other congenital anomalies Prenatal diagnosis common	Left-sided: small bowel, large bowel, stomach, and solid viscera (spleen, left lobe of liver) herniate into thorax Right-sided: liver, large bowel herniate into thorax Pulmonary hypoplasia Pulmonary HTN	Early respiratory distress Cyanosis Scaphoid abdomen Prenatal diagnosis	Decreased air entry ± bowel sounds in the chest Displaced heart sounds	Prenatal US/MRI ABG CXR (bowel loops in hemithorax, shifted heart) Echocardiography Genetic consultation if warranted	Intubate Orogastric suction Period of respiratory stabilization due to associated pulmonary hypoplasia (may require extracorporeal membrane oxygenation) Surgical repair after stable by hernia reduction and closure of diaphragmatic defect – open vs. thoracoscopic vs. laparoscopic with or without prosthetic or muscular patch depending on size of defect	Later presentations have better outcomes Hearing deficit (40%) Associated GERD MSK defects – chest wall and scoliotic defects a potential complication of thoracotomy Need for long-term surveillance for potential recurrence Failure to thrive Chronic lung disease if severe hypoplasia



Hypertrophic Pyloric Stenosis
 Non-bilious emesis in infant is the classic presentation

Table 24. Pediatric Surgery (continued)

Condition	Epidemiology and Risk Factors	Pathophysiology	Clinical Features and History	Physical Exam	Investigations	Treatment	Prognosis
Meckel's Diverticulum Most common remnant of vitelline duct that connects yolk sac with primitive midgut	1-3% of population M:F = 3:1 Present most frequently during first 5 yr of life Symptomatic in 2% of cases	Failure of vitelline duct to regress 5-7 wk <i>in utero</i> ; 50% contain heterotopic tissue (e.g. gastric mucosa, ectopic pancreas); other associated anomalies include omphalomesenteric fistula, umbilical sinus, umbilical cyst, fibrous band	BRBPR (heterotopic gastric mucosa in Meckel's causing mucosal ulceration and bleeding in adjacent small bowel mucosa) Abdominal sepsis (Meckel's diverticulitis ± perforation) Small bowel volvulus around fibrous band	Tenderness (lower abdomen) near umbilicus	AXR Meckel scan: scan for ectopic gastric mucosa with technetium Tc99m pertechnetate IV (sensitivity 85%, specificity 95%)	Stabilize, resection by laparotomy or laparoscopy ± incidental appendectomy	Resection curative
Malrotation	1:500 live births 1/3 present by 1 wk of age, 3/4 by 1 mo of age, 90% by 1 yr of age M:F = 1:1; higher incidence among patients with cardiac anomalies, heterotaxy syndromes	Failure of gut to normally rotate around SMA with associated abnormal intestinal attachments and anatomic positions Represent a spectrum of rotational abnormalities including complete non-rotation (which is not at high risk for volvulus)	Bilious emesis is THE cardinal sign, especially if abdomen nondistended If bilious emesis in ill child with distended abdomen, consider surgical exploration to rule out volvulus Rectal bleed (late/ominous signs) Intermittent symptoms	Bilious drainage from NGT Tachycardic, pale Diaphoretic Flat abdomen Tenderness	AXR: obstruction of proximal small bowel, double-bubble sign, intestinal wall thickened Immediate UGI: dilated duodenum, duodenojejunal segment (Ligament of Treitz) right of midline and not fixed posteriorly over spinal column, "corkscrew" sign indicating volvulus U/S: "whirlpool" sign, abnormal SMA/SMV relationship indicates UGI to rule out rotational anomalies	IV antibiotics Fluid resuscitation EMERGENT LAPAROTOMY Ladd procedure: counterclockwise reduction of midgut volvulus, division of Ladd's bands, division of peritoneal attachments between cecum and abdominal wall that obstruct duodenum, broadening of the mesentery (open folded mesentery like a book and divide congenital adhesions), ± appendectomy Positioning the bowel into non-rotation (small bowel in right abdomen, large bowel in left abdomen)	Mortality related to length of bowel loss: 10% necrosis – 100% survival rate, 75% necrosis – 35% survival rate Recurrence 2-6%
Gastroschisis	1:2,000 live births Antenatal diagnosis common Increases with younger maternal age and associated with IUGR M:F = 1:1	Defect of abdominal wall, with free extrusion of intestine into amniotic cavity No specific environmental factor identified Defect in embryogenesis unclear	Not associated with genetic syndromes 10% with intestinal atresia Some cases associated with short bowel syndrome due to antenatal volvulus and necrosis of herniated bowel	Hollow viscera (stomach, small and large bowels) Defect lateral to cord (usually right) Bowel may be inflamed, thickened, matted, foreshortened Defect size variable	Prenatal U/S Elevated MS-AFP	NGT decompression IV fluids IV antibiotics Keep viscera moist and protected until surgical reduction with primary abdominal closure or staged closure with silo May have bowel dysmotility requiring motility medications	>90% survival rate
Omphalocele	1:5,000 live birth Antenatal diagnosis common Lower gestational age Increased maternal age M:F = 1.5:1	Defect of abdominal wall, with extrusion of sac covered viscera (amnion, Wharton's jelly, peritoneum) Duhamel's theory – failure of body wall morphogenesis	Associated with genetic syndromes 30-70% (e.g. Pentalogy of Cantrell, congenital heart disease, Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome) Associated pulmonary hypoplasia	Hollow viscera (stomach, small and large bowels, often liver) Cord on the sac	Prenatal U/S Elevated MS-AFP	NGT decompression IV fluids IV antibiotics Small defect (<2 cm): Primary closure Medium (2-4 cm) and large (>4 cm) defects best treated with silver sulfadiazine to promote epithelialization coupled with compression dressing to allow gradual reduction, followed by future repair with or without mesh	40-70% survival rate Higher survival rates most likely related to antenatal mortality of fetuses with giant omphaloceles



Bilious vomiting in infant is a life-threatening emergency secondary to midgut volvulus until proven otherwise




Rule of 2s for Meckel's Diverticulum

- 2% of the population
- 2:1 male-to-female ratio
- Symptomatic in 2% of cases
- Found within 2 feet (10-90 cm) of the ileocecal (IC) valve
- 2 inches in length
- 2 inches in diameter
- 2 types of tissue (gastric, pancreatic)
- Often present by 2 yr of age

Table 24. Pediatric Surgery (continued)

Condition	Epidemiology and Risk Factors	Pathophysiology	Clinical Features and History	Physical Exam	Investigations	Treatment	Prognosis
Umbilical Hernias	Incidence 2-14% Increases with prematurity Decreases with increasing age	Incomplete closure of peritoneal and fascial layers within umbilicus by 5 yr	Majority asymptomatic Majority spontaneously resolve by age 5 Incarceration prior to age 5 very rare Most symptoms occur in late adolescence or adulthood	Protrusion from umbilicus Important to differentiate from less common abdominal wall hernias that do not spontaneously resolve (e.g. epigastric hernias) Most umbilical fascial defects > 1.5 cm in infancy will not close spontaneously	None if uncomplicated	Repair if not spontaneously closed by age 5 Earlier repair of large "proboscoid" hernias with extensive skin stretching may be warranted for cosmetic reasons Simple primary closure of fascial defect	Low risk of recurrence
Intestinal Atresia	Incidence 2-14% May be antenatally diagnosed by dilated bowel loops or "double-bubble" sign on x-ray for duodenal atresia Decreasing with increasing age	Duodenal – failure of bowel to recanalize after endodermal epithelium proliferation (wk 8-10) Jejunal/ileal – acquired as a result of vascular disruption → ischemic necrosis → resorption of necrotic tissue → blind distal and proximal ends Colonic – mechanism unknown, thought to be similar to small bowel atresia	Gastric distension and vomiting (usually bilious) Duodenal – may be associated with other anomalies (tracheoesophageal fistula, cardiac, renal, and vertebral anomalies), 24-28% have Down syndrome Jejunal/ileal – within 2 d of birth, may be associated with CF Colonic – within 3 d of birth	Complete physical Special attention to abdominal exam Perineum and anus Include evaluation of respiratory distress and signs of volume depletion Congenital anomalies Jaundice	Contrast enema ± UGI with small bowel follow through (SBFT) Group and screen INR and PTT if for surgery	NPO NGT decompression Fluid resuscitate TPN Broad spectrum antibiotics Duodenal – duodenoduodenostomy or duodenojejunostomy Jejunal/ileal – primary anastomosis; or if atresia associated with short bowel then may create end stoma or defer surgery for bowel lengthening procedures Colonic – primary anastomosis	Long-term survival Duodenal – 86% Jejunal/ileal – 84% Colonic – 100%
Hirschsprung's Disease	1:5,000 births M:F = 3:1 to 4:1, approaches 1:1 when whole colon involved Can have aganglionosis of small bowel as well Familial Hirschsprung's in <5% of cases	Defect in migration of neurocrest cells to intestine resulting in aganglionic bowel that fails to peristaltise and internal sphincter that fails to relax (internal anal sphincter achalasia) causing functional and partial mechanical obstruction, respectively; always starts in the rectum and variable involvement proximally; RET mutation	Failure to pass meconium spontaneously within 48 h of life is the classic history (95% of normal children should pass meconium within 24 h, and the remaining 5% within 48 h) Symptoms of bowel obstruction: abdominal distension, constipation, bilious emesis Enterocolitis/sepsis Failure to thrive	± abdominal distension Squirt/blast sign	Rectal biopsy (gold standard) – look for aganglionosis and neural hypertrophy AXR Contrast enema to find narrow rectum and transition zone Anal manometry unreliable in infants – classic finding is absence of rectoanal inhibitory reflex	Surgical resection of aganglionic intestinal segment and anastomosis of remaining intestine to anus Either in newborn period or staged if extensive aganglionosis	Most have normal/near-normal anorectal function Complications: fecal incontinence and constipation, post-operative enterocolitis (medical emergency if progresses to sepsis)
Cryptorchidism	2-5% of term males – most of these descend spontaneously by 6 mo of age 1% of males do not spontaneously descend	Idiopathic Descent is mediated by descendin which is created in response to testosterone Descent usually begins at 28 wk	Palpable testicle within inguinal canal or testicle which can be milked down into scrotum (called retractile testis) Occasionally no palpable testis as it is intra-abdominal Consider other congenital abnormalities	Bi-annual testicular exam with palpation Distinguish truly undescended testis from retractile testis (which is "high" testis due to hyperactive cremasteric muscles)	Depends on age of presentation U/S or MRI if no palpable testis Older child: LH, FSH, MIS, hCG stimulation test for gonadotropin production Infant: U/S, FSH, LH, karyotype, MIS, 17-hydroxyprogesterone	hCG to stimulate testosterone production and descent Orchidopexy – especially if undescended by age 6 mo-2 yr	Orchidopexy Decreased risk of torsion and blunt trauma to testicle No effect on malignant potential of testicle Descent can preserve spermatogenesis if performed by 1 yr of age 1/1,000 risk for testicular cancer (population risk is 1/4,000)

Table 24. Pediatric Surgery (continued)

Condition	Epidemiology and Risk Factors	Pathophysiology	Clinical Features and History	Physical Exam	Investigations	Treatment	Prognosis
Intussusception	Most common cause of bowel obstruction between the ages of 6-36 mo 26/100,000 newborns M:F = 3:2 Pathologic lead points: enlarged Peyer's patches due to viral infections of the GI tract, polyps, Meckel's diverticulum CF, lymphoma, IBD may increase risk	Idiopathic is most common Usually starts at ileocecal junction Telescoping of bowel into itself causing an obstruction and vascular compromise	Acute onset of abdominal pain which is classic episodic "colicky" pain Vomiting ± bilious Abdominal mass Currant-jelly stool suggests mucosal necrosis and sloughing	Abdominal exam Palpate for masses (especially sausage shaped upper abdominal mass) and tenderness Signs of bowel obstruction: distended abdomen Look for localized peritonitis which suggests transmural ischemia	AXR for signs of bowel obstruction or perforation U/S if suspect pathology	If peritonitis, then consider operative management Non-operative management involves reduction via air contrast enema Operative reduction can be done open or laparoscopically Resection of involved colon if failure to reduce or bowel appears compromised	10% recurrence rate If recurrent = more likely non-idiopathic In successfully reduced by enema in older children allow 2 wk resolution of edema then perform SBFT to rule out pathologic lead points
Tracheoesophageal Fistula (TEF)	1:3,000-1:4,500	Associated anomalies in 50%: VACTERL association (see Pediatrics P42) 	Varies with type of fistula May have history of maternal polyhydramnios May present after several months (if no associated esophageal atresia) of non-bilious vomiting, coughing, cyanosis with feeds, respiratory distress, recurrent pneumonia, frothy bubbles of mucus in mouth and nose that return after suctioning		X-ray: anatomic abnormalities, NGT curled in pouch	Investigate for other congenital anomalies, early repair by surgical ligation to prevent lung damage and maintain nutrition and growth	Complications: pneumonia, sepsis, reactive airways disease Following repair: esophageal stenosis and strictures at repair site, GERD, and poor swallowing (i.e. dysphagia, regurgitation)
Inguinal Hernias	5% of all term newborns 2x risk and more likely bilateral if pre-term M:F = 4:1 Low birth weight increases risk 1/5 inguinal hernias will become incarcerated if patient is <1 yr old Incarceration is more common in females Associated with other conditions: androgen insensitivity, connective tissue diseases	All infant hernias are indirect: descent of intra-abdominal contents through the internal inguinal ring through a patent tunica vaginalis	Most common presentation: painless intermittent mass in groin, may also note extension into scrotum (scrotal mass in absence of inguinal mass is a hydrocele) If incarcerated: tender, vomiting, firm mass, erythema then cyanosis of mass may be noted	Palpate for "bag of worms" suggests possible testicular varicocele Biannual testicular exam + palpation along inguinal canal to evaluate for any masses "Silk sign" – palpable thickening of cord Mass palpated at external inguinal ring and reducible through inguinal canal into abdomen Must always try reduction to confirm that hernia is not incarcerated	Physical exam is gold standard U/S only if physical exam uncertain (e.g. in small infants where exam can be difficult)	Manual reduction – to relieve acute symptoms Herniorrhaphy – definitive treatment by reduction of herniated contents and high ligation of sac for indirect hernias Laparoscopic or open techniques	Risk of recurrence after surgical reduction <3% but higher if repair done in premature infants or if hernia was incarcerated/strangulated at repair

Skin Lesions

- see [Dermatology, D5](#); [Emergency Medicine, ER17](#); [Plastic Surgery PL5](#)



All inguinal hernias of infancy and childhood require repair at the earliest convenience; emergent repair if incarcerated/strangulated

Common Medications

Antiemetics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dimenhydrinate (Gravol®) 25-50 mg PO/IV/IM q4-6h prn • prochlorperazine (Stemetil®) 5-10 mg PO/IV/IM bid-tid prn • metoclopramide (Maxeran®) 10 mg IV/IM q2-3h prn, 10-15 mg PO qid (30 min before meals and qhs) • ondansetron (Zofran®) 4-8 mg PO q8h prn • granisetron (Kytrel®) 1 mg PO bid (for nausea from chemotherapy/radiation)
Analgesics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • acetaminophen ± codeine (Tylenol® #3/plain) 1-2 tabs q4-6h PO/PR prn • hydromorphone i-ii tabs PO q4h prn, 0.5-2 mg IV q3-4h prn • ibuprofen 200-400 mg PO q4-6h prn • morphine 2.5-10 mg IM/SC q4-6h prn + 1-2 mg IV q1h prn for breakthrough • ketorolac (Toradol®) 30-60 mg IM/IV q6h prn • Percocet® (acetaminophen/oxycodone, 325/5 mg) 1-2 tabs PO q4-6h prn
DVT Prophylaxis	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • heparin 5,000 units SC bid, if cancer patient then heparin 5,000 units SC tid • dalteparin (Fragmin®) 5,000 units SC daily • enoxaparin (Lovenox®) 40 mg SC daily
Antidiarrheals	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • loperamide (Imodium®) 4 mg PO initially, then 2 mg PO after each loose stool up to 16 mg/d • diphenoxylate + atropine (Lomotil®) 2 tabs/10 mL PO qid
Laxatives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sennosides (Senokot®) 1-2 tabs qhs • docusate sodium (Colace®) 100 mg PO bid • glycerine suppository 1 tab PR prn • lactulose 15-30 mL PO qid prn • milk of magnesia (MOM) 30-60 mL PO qid prn • bisacodyl (Dulcolax®) 10-15 mg PO prn
Sedatives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • zopiclone (Imovane®) 5-7.5 mg PO qhs prn • lorazepam (Ativan®) 0.5-2 mg PO/SL qhs prn
Antibiotics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • cefazolin (Ancef®) 1 g IV/IM on call to OR or q8h – GP except <i>Enterococcus</i>, GN only <i>E. coli</i>, <i>Klebsiella</i>, and <i>Proteus</i> • cefalexin (Keflex®) 250-500 mg PO qid – <i>Listeria</i>, GP except <i>Enterococcus</i>, GN only <i>E. coli</i>, <i>Klebsiella</i>, and <i>Proteus</i> • ceftriaxone 1-2 g IM/IV q24h – broad coverage including <i>Pseudomonas</i> • ampicillin 1-2 g IV q4-6h – <i>Listeria</i>, GP (<i>Enterococcus</i>) except <i>Streptococcus</i> and <i>E. coli</i>, oral anaerobes except <i>Bacteroides</i> • gentamicin 3-5 mg/kg/d IM/IV divided q8h; monitor creatinine, gentamicin levels – GN including <i>Pseudomonas</i> • ciprofloxacin 400 mg IV q12h, 500 mg PO bid – GN including <i>Pseudomonas</i> • metronidazole (Flagyl®) 500 mg PO/IV bid (500 mg PO tid for <i>C. difficile</i>) – anaerobes • clindamycin 600-900 mg IV q8h, 150-400 mg PO qid – GP except <i>Enterococcus</i>, anaerobes • piperacillin/tazobactam 4.5 mg IV q6h – GP, GN, and anaerobes • vancomycin 1 g IV q12h – GP and MRSA • sulfamethoxazole/trimethoprim DS (Septra®) PO bid – GP, GN including norcardia
Over-the-Counter Medications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pepto-Bismol® (bismuth subsalicylate) 2 tabs or 30 mL PO q30min-1h up to 8 doses/d side effects: black stools, risk of Reye's syndrome in children • Alka-Seltzer® (ASA + citrate + bicarbonate) 2 tabs in 4 oz water PO q4h prn, max 8 tabs • Maalox® (aluminum hydroxide + magnesium hydroxide) 10-20 mL or 1-4 tabs PO prn • Tums® (calcium carbonate) 1-3 g PO q2h prn • Roloids® (calcium carbonate and magnesium hydroxide) 2-4 tabs PO q1h prn, max 12 tabs/d

References

- Alexander JW, Solomkin JS, Edwards MJ. Updated recommendations for control of surgical site infections. *Ann Surg* 2001;253:1082-1093.
- Amato B, Moja L, Panico S, et al. Shouldie technique vs. other open techniques for inguinal hernia repair. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2012;4:CD001543.
- Andersen BR, Kallehave FL, Andersen HK. Antibiotics vs. placebo for prevention of postoperative infection after appendectomy. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2005;3:CD001439.
- Andrén-Sandberg A. Diagnosis and management of gallbladder cancer. *N Am J Med Sci* 2012;4: 293-299.
- Antimicrobial prophylaxis for surgery. *Treat Guidel Med Lett* 2009;7:47-52.
- Applegate KE. Intussusception in children: evidence-based diagnosis and treatment. *Pediatr Radiol* 2009;39(Suppl 2):S140-143.
- Aqzarian J, Miller JD, Kosa SD, et al. Long-term survival analysis of the Canadian lung volume reduction surgery trial. *Ann Thorac Surg* 2013;96:1217-1222.
- Arnold DT, Reed JB, Burt K. Evaluation and management of the incidental adrenal mass. *Proc (Bayl Univ Med Cent)* 2003;16:7-12.
- Bazarah BM, Peltekian KM, McAlister VC, et al. Utility of MELD and Child-Turcotte-Pugh scores and the Canadian waitlisting algorithm in predicting short-term survival after liver transplant. *Clin Invest Med* 2004;27:162-167.
- Bhangu A, Singh P, Lundy J, et al. Systemic review and meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials comparing primary vs. delayed primary skin closure in contaminated and dirty abdominal incisions. *JAMA Surg* 2013;148:779-786.
- Bland KI. The practice of general surgery, 1st ed. Toronto: WB Saunders, 2002.
- Brandt ML. Pediatric hernias. *Surg Clin N Am* 2008;88:27-43,vii-viii.
- Brunicaudi FC, Andersen D, Billiar T, et al. Schwartz's principles of surgery, 9th ed. McGraw-Hill, 2010.
- Canadian Task Force on Preventive Health Care. Colorectal cancer screening. *CMAJ* 2001;165:206-208.
- Chandler CF, Lane JS, Ferguson P, et al. Prospective evaluation of early vs. delayed laparoscopic cholecystectomy for treatment of acute cholecystitis. *Am J Surg* 2000;66:896-900.
- Cholongitas E, Burroughs AK. The evolution in the prioritization for liver transplantation. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2012;25:6-13.
- Coha M, Cerutti E, Schellino MM, et al. Piedmont Intensive Care Units Network (PICUN). Continuous positive airway pressure for treatment of postoperative hypoxemia: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2005;293:589-595.
- Colquitt JL, Picot J, Loveman E, et al. Surgery for obesity. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2009;2:CD003641.
- Darwish MS, Kim WR, Harnois DM, et al. Efficacy of neoadjuvant chemoradiation followed by liver transplantation, for perihilar cholangiocarcinoma at 12 US centers. *Gastroenterology* 2012;143:88-98.e3.
- Dawson SJ, Tsui DW, Murtaza M, et al. Analysis of circulating tumor DNA to monitor metastatic breast cancer. *NEJM* 2013;368:1199-1209.
- Dodson MK, Magann EF, Meeks GR. A randomized comparison of secondary closure and secondary intention in patients with superficial wound dehiscence. *Obstet Gynecol* 1992;80:321-324.

- Darouiche RO, Wall MJ Jr, Itani KM, et al. Chlorhexidine-alcohol vs. povidone-iodine for surgical-site antisepsis. *NEJM* 2010;362:18-26.
- de Groen PC, Gores GJ, LaRusso NF, et al. Biliary tract cancers. *NEJM* 1999;341:1368-1378.
- Doherty GM. Current surgical diagnosis and treatment, 12th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006.
- Duncan CB, Riall TS. Evidence-based current surgical practice: calculous gallbladder disease. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2012;16:2011-2025.
- Eagon JC, Miedema BW, Kelly KA. Postgastrectomy syndromes. *Surg Clin N Am* 1992;72:445.
- Edell SL, Eisen MD. Current imaging modalities for the diagnosis of breast cancer. *Delaware Med J* 1999;71:377-382.
- Ferzoco LB, Raptopoulos V, Silen W, et al. Acute diverticulitis. *NEJM* 1998;338:1521-1526.
- Fitzgibbons RJ Jr, Giobbie-Hurder A, Gibbs JO, et al. Watchful waiting vs. repair of inguinal hernia in minimally symptomatic men: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2006;295:285-292.
- Gamme G, Birch DW, Karmali S. Minimally invasive splenectomy: an update and review. *Can J Surg* 2013;56:280-285.
- García-Miguel FJ, Serrano-Aguilar PG, López-Bastida J. Preoperative assessment. *Lancet* 2003;362(9397):1749.
- Germani G, Gurusamy K, Garcovich M, et al. Which matters most: number of tumors, size of the largest tumor, or total tumor volume? *Liver Transplant* 2011;Suppl2:S58-66.
- Gibril F, Reynolds JC, Lubensky IA, et al. Ability of somatostatin receptor scintigraphy to identify patients with gastric carcinoids: a prospective study. *J Nucl Med* 2000;41:1646-1656.
- Glasgow RE, Mulvihill, SJ. Postgastrectomy syndromes. *Probl Gen Surg* 1997;14:132-152.
- Goldhirsch A, Glick JH, Gelber RD, et al. Meeting highlights: International Consensus Panel on the treatment of primary breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2001;19:3817-3827.
- Graham DJ, McHenry CR. The adrenal incidentaloma: guidelines for evaluation and recommendations for management. *Surg Onc Clin N Am* 1998;7:749-764.
- Gurusamy KS, Koti R, Fusai G, et al. Early vs. delayed laparoscopic cholecystectomy for uncomplicated biliary colic. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2013;6:CD007196.
- Hilditch WG, Asbury AJ, Jack E, et al. Validation of a pre-anaesthetic screening questionnaire. *Anaesthesia* 2003;58:874-877.
- Hong Z, Wu J, Smart G, et al. Survival analysis of liver transplant patients in Canada 1997-2002. *Transplant Proc* 2006;38(9):2951-2956.
- Howlader N, Noone AM, Krapcho M, et al. SEER Cancer Statistics Review, 1975-2010, National Cancer Institute. Bethesda, MD. Available at: http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2010/.
- Hutson JM, Balic A, Nation T, et al. Cryptorchidism. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2010;19:215-224.
- Ingraham AM, Cohen ME, Bilimoria KY, et al. Effect of delay to operation on outcomes in adults with acute appendicitis. *Arch Surg* 2010;145:886-892.
- Ivanovich JL, Read TE, Ciske DJ, et al. A practical approach to familial and hereditary colorectal cancer. *Am J Med* 1999;107:68-77.
- Janné PA, Mayer RJ. Chemoprevention of colorectal cancer. *NEJM* 2000;342:1960-198.
- Jarrell BE, Carabasi RA. *NMS Surgery*, 5th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2008.
- Johnson CD. Upper abdominal pain: gallbladder. *BMJ* 2001;323:1170-1173.
- Kanwal F, Dulai GS, Spiegel BMR, et al. A comparison of liver transplantation outcomes in the pre- vs. post-MELD eras. *Aliment Pharm Ther* 2005;21:169-177.
- Kasper DL. Harrison's principles of internal medicine, 16th ed. 2005.
- Kehlet H, Holte K. Review of postoperative ileus. *Am J Surg* 2001;182(Suppl):3S-10S.
- Kemeny MM, Adak S, Gray B, et al. Combined-modality treatment for resectable metastatic colorectal carcinoma to the liver: surgical resection of hepatic metastases in combination with continuous infusion of chemotherapy – an intergroup study. *J Clin Oncol* 2002;20:1499-1505.
- King JE, Dozois RR, Lindor NM, et al. Care of patients and their families with familial adenomatous polyposis. *Mayo Clin Proc* 2000;75:57-67.
- Kittaneh M, Montero AJ, Gluck S. Molecular profiling for breast cancer: a comprehensive review. *Biomark Cancer* 2013;5:61-70.
- Latif A. Gastric cancer update on diagnosis, staging and therapy. *Postgrad Med* 1997;102:231-236.
- Lawrence PF. *Essentials of general surgery*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
- Levine CD. Toxic megacolon: diagnosis and treatment challenges. *AACN Clinical Issues* 1999;10:492-499.
- Li CI, Anderson BO, Daling JR, et al. Trends in incidence rates of invasive lobular and ductal breast carcinoma. *JAMA* 2003;289:1421-1424.
- Liang MK, Berger RL, Li LT, et al. Outcomes of laparoscopic vs. open repair of primary ventral hernias. *JAMA Surg* 2013;148:1043-1048.
- Lickstein LH, Matthews JB. Elective surgical management of peptic ulcer disease. *Probl Gen Surg* 1997;14:37-53.
- Maden AK, Aliabadi-Wahle S, Tesi D, et al. How early is early laparoscopic treatment of acute cholecystitis? *Am J Surg* 2002;183:232-236.
- Mandel JS, Bond JH, Church TR, et al. Reducing mortality from colorectal cancer by screening for fecal occult blood. Minnesota Colon Cancer Control Study. *NEJM* 1993;328:1365-1371.
- Mandel JS, Church TR, Bond JH, et al. The effect of fecal occult blood screening on the incidence of colorectal cancer. *NEJM* 2000;343:1603-1607.
- Mamounas EP. NSABP breast cancer clinical trials: recent results and future directions. *Clin Med Res* 2003;1:309-326.
- Martin RF, Rossi RL. The acute abdomen: an overview and algorithms. *Surg Clin N Am* 1997;77:1227-1243.
- Moore KL, Dalley AF, Agur AMR. *Clinically Oriented Anatomy*, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010.
- Paulson EK, Kalady MF, Pappas TN. Suspected appendicitis. *NEJM* 2003;348:236-242.
- Penner RM, Majumdar SR. Diagnostic approach to abdominal pain in adults. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2013.
- Polk H, Christmas B. Prophylactic antibiotics in surgery and surgical wound infections. *Am Surgeon* 2000;66:105-111.
- Preoperative antibiotic prophylaxis. CDC. Available from: <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/hip/SSI/SSI.pdf>.
- Ransohoff DF, Sandler RS. Screening for colorectal cancer. *NEJM* 2002;346:40-44.
- Ravikumar R, Williams JG. The operative management of gallstone ileus. *Ann R Coll Surg Engl* 2010;92:279-281.
- Ray BS, Neill CL. Abdominal visceral sensation in man. *Ann Surg* 1947;126:709-723.
- Ronellenfitch U, Schwarzbach M, Hofheinz R, et al. Perioperative chemo(radio)therapy vs. primary surgery for resectable adenocarcinoma of the stomach, gastroesophageal junction, and lower esophagus. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2013;5:CD008107.
- Roy MA. Inflammatory bowel disease. *Surg Clin N Am* 1997;77:1419-1431.
- Rubin BP, Heinrich MC, Corless CL. Gastrointestinal stromal tumour. *Lancet* 2007;369:1731-1741.
- Rustgi AK. Hereditary gastrointestinal polyposis and nonpolyposis syndromes. *NEJM* 1994;331:1694-1702.
- Sandhu L, Sandroussi C, Guba M, et al. Living donor liver transplantation vs. deceased donor liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma: comparable survival and recurrence. *Liver Transplant* 2012;18:315-322.
- Sauerland S, Jaschinski T, Neugebauer EA. Laparoscopic vs. open surgery for suspected appendicitis. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2010;10:CD001546.
- Sheth SG, LaMont JT. Toxic megacolon. *Lancet* 1998;351:509-513.
- Simeone DM, Hassan A, Scheiman JM. Giant peptic ulcer: a surgical or medical disease? *Surgery* 1999;126:474-478.
- Styblo TM, Wood WC. The management of ductal and lobular breast cancer. *Surg Oncol* 1999;8:67-75.
- The Canadian Task Force on Preventive Health Care. Recommendations on screening for breast cancer in average-risk women aged 40-74 years. *CMAJ* 2011;183:1991-2001.
- Tseng JF, Tamm EP, Lee JE, et al. Venous resection in pancreatic cancer surgery. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* 2006;20:349-64.
- U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Screening for Colorectal Cancer: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement. AHRQ Publication 08-05124-EF-3, 2008. Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, Rockville, MD.
- Waki K. UNOS Liver Registry: ten year survivals. *Clin Transplant* 2006;29:39.
- Way LW. Current surgical diagnosis and treatment, 11th ed. 2003.
- Willems SM, van Deurzen CH, van Diest PJ. Diagnosis of breast lesions: fine-needle aspiration cytology or core needle biopsy? A review. *J Clin Pathol* 2012;65:287-92.
- Yadav D, Agarwal N, Pitchumoni CS. A critical evaluation of laboratory tests in acute pancreatitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002;97:1309-1318.

Farah Pabani and Esther Rosenthal, chapter editors

Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karepetyan, associate editors

Tina Hu, EBM editor

Dr. Barry J. Goldlist, staff editor

Seniors in the U.S.	2	Driving Competency	10
Health Status		Reporting Requirements	
		Conditions that may Impair Driving	
Physiology and Pathology of Aging	2	Health Care Institutions	11
Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations	3	Palliative and End-of-Life Care	12
Constipation		Principles and Quality of Life	
Delirium, Dementia, and Depression		End-of-Life Care Discussions	
Elder Abuse		Power of Attorney	
Falls		Instructional Advance Directives	
Frailty (Failure to Thrive)		Symptom Management	
Incontinence			
Gait Disorders		Geriatric Pharmacology	13
Hazards of Hospitalization		Pharmacokinetics	
Hypertension		Pharmacodynamics	
Immobility		Polypharmacy	
Immunizations		Inappropriate Prescribing in the Elderly	
Malnutrition			
Osteoporosis		Common Medications	15
Presbycusis		Landmark Geriatric Trials	16
Pressure Ulcers		References	17

Acronyms

ACEI	angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor	FAP	familial adenomatous polyposis	NE	norepinephrine
ARB	angiotensin receptor blocker	GCA	giant cell arteritis	NSTEMI	non-ST elevation myocardial infarction
BPH	benign prostatic hypertrophy	HR	heart rate	PPI	proton pump inhibitor
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft	IBD	inflammatory bowel disease	PPS	palliative performance scale
CHF	congestive heart failure	IBS	irritable bowel syndrome	PTH	parathyroid hormone
CO	cardiac output	ICP	intracranial pressure	RA	rheumatoid arthritis
CVA	cerebrovascular accident	LOC	level of consciousness	SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
DHPCCB	dihydropyridine calcium channel blocker	MMSE	mini mental status examination	UTI	urinary tract infection
ESAS	Edmonton symptom assessment scale				

Seniors in the U.S.

Health Status

Table 1. Causes of Mortality and Morbidity in Canadian and American Seniors

Mortality (U.S.)	Morbidity
1. Diseases of the heart and circulatory system (27.0%)	1. HTN
2. Malignant neoplasms (22.0%)	2. Arthritis
3. Cerebrovascular disease (6.0%)	3. Heart disease
4. Chronic lower respiratory disease (7.0%)	4. Diabetes
5. Accidents (4.4%)	5. Ulcers
6. Alzheimer's (5.0%)	6. Stroke
	7. Asthma
	8. Allergies

Death in the United States. NCHS Data Brief 2009;No64:2011



Geriatric Giants

- Memory (cognitive function)
- Falls
- Incontinence
- Polypharmacy



5 Is of Geriatrics

- Immobility
- Intellect
- Incontinence
- Iatrogenesis
- Impaired homeostasis



Most Common Acute Disorders in the Elderly

- Cardiovascular disease (CHF, CVA, MI)
- Fracture (hip, vertebrae, wrist)
- Medication-related
- Pneumonia
- Sepsis



Most Common Chronic Disorders in the Elderly

- Arthritis
- Cataracts and other visual problems
- COPD
- Cardiovascular disease
- Diabetes Mellitus (Type 2)
- Hearing impairment
- HTN
- Mental disorders
- Orthopedic disorders
- Sinusitis

Physiology and Pathology of Aging

Definition

- major categories of impairment that appear with old age and affect the physical, mental, and social domains of the elderly, usually due to many predisposing and precipitating factors, rather than a single cause

Table 2. Changes Occurring Frequently with Aging

System	Physiological Changes	Pathological Changes
Neurologic	Decreased wakefulness, brain mass, cerebral blood flow	Increased insomnia, neurodegenerative disease, stroke, decreased reflex response
Special Senses	Decreased lacrimal gland secretion, lens transparency, dark adaptation, decreased sense of smell and taste	Increased glaucoma, cataracts, macular degeneration, presbycusis, presbyopia, tinnitus, vertigo, oral dryness
Cardiovascular	Increased sBP, dBP, decreased HR, CO Decreased vessel elasticity, cardiac myocyte size and number, β -adrenergic responsiveness	Increased atherosclerosis, CAD, MI, CHF, HTN, arrhythmias
Respiratory	Increased tracheal cartilage calcification, mucous gland hypertrophy Decreased elastic recoil, mucociliary clearance, pulmonary function reserve	Increased COPD, pneumonia, pulmonary embolism
Gastrointestinal	Increased intestinal villous atrophy Decreased esophageal peristalsis, gastric acid secretion, liver mass, hepatic blood flow, calcium and iron absorption	Increased cancer, diverticulitis, constipation, fecal incontinence, hemorrhoids, intestinal obstruction
Renal and Urologic	Increased proteinuria, urinary frequency Decreased renal mass, creatinine clearance, urine acidification, hydroxylation of vitamin D, bladder capacity	Increased urinary incontinence, nocturia, BPH, prostate cancer, pyelonephritis, nephrolithiasis, UTI
Reproductive	Decreased androgen, estrogen, sperm count, vaginal secretion Decreased ovary, uterus, vagina, breast size	Increased breast and endometrial cancer, cystocele, rectocele, atrophic vaginitis
Endocrine	Increased NE, PTH, insulin, vasopressin Decreased thyroid and adrenal corticosteroid secretion	Increased DM, hypothyroidism, stress response
Musculoskeletal	Increased calcium loss from bone Decreased muscle mass, cartilage	Increased arthritis, bursitis, osteoporosis, muscle weakness with gait abnormalities, polymyalgia rheumatica
Integumentary	Atrophy of sebaceous and sweat glands Decreased epidermal and dermal thickness, dermal vascularity, melanocytes, collagen synthesis	Increased lentigo, cherry hemangiomas, pruritus, seborrheic keratosis, herpes zoster, decubitus ulcers, skin cancer
Psychiatric	None	Increased depression, dementia, delirium, suicidality, substance abuse, anxiety, insomnia

Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations

Constipation

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G24

Definition

- less than 3 bowel movements in one week and/or hard stools, straining, sense of blockade, needing manual maneuvers or incomplete evacuation on more than 25% of occasions for at least 12 wk (does not need to be consecutive)

Epidemiology

- chronic constipation increases with age (up to 1/3 of patients >65 yr experience constipation)

Pathophysiology

- impaired rectal sensation (increased rectal distention required to stimulate the urge to defecate)
- colorectal dysmotility

Treatment

- non-pharmacological
 - increase fiber intake
 - ensure adequate fluid intake
 - discourage chronic laxative use
 - engage in regular exercise
 - review medication regime, reduce dosages or substitute
- pharmacologic
 - see [Common Medications](#), GM15



Risk Factors for Constipation in the Elderly Include:

- Immobility
- Diet: low fiber/calorie diet, dehydration
- Medications:
 - Polypharmacy
 - Drugs: narcotics, calcium channel blockers, anticholinergics
- GI: obstructive lesions (bowel obstruction, cancer, diverticular disease, IBD, strictures, uterine prolapse), altered colonic motility (IBS, colonic inertia)
- Neurological: spinal cord injury, Parkinson's disease, stroke, autonomic dysfunction
- Metabolic: diabetes, hypokalemia, hypercalcemia
- Psychiatric: depression, dementia



Remember to first exclude low fiber and lack of activity as causes of constipation



Docusate sodium has been shown to be ineffective for the prevention/ treatment of constipation in the elderly

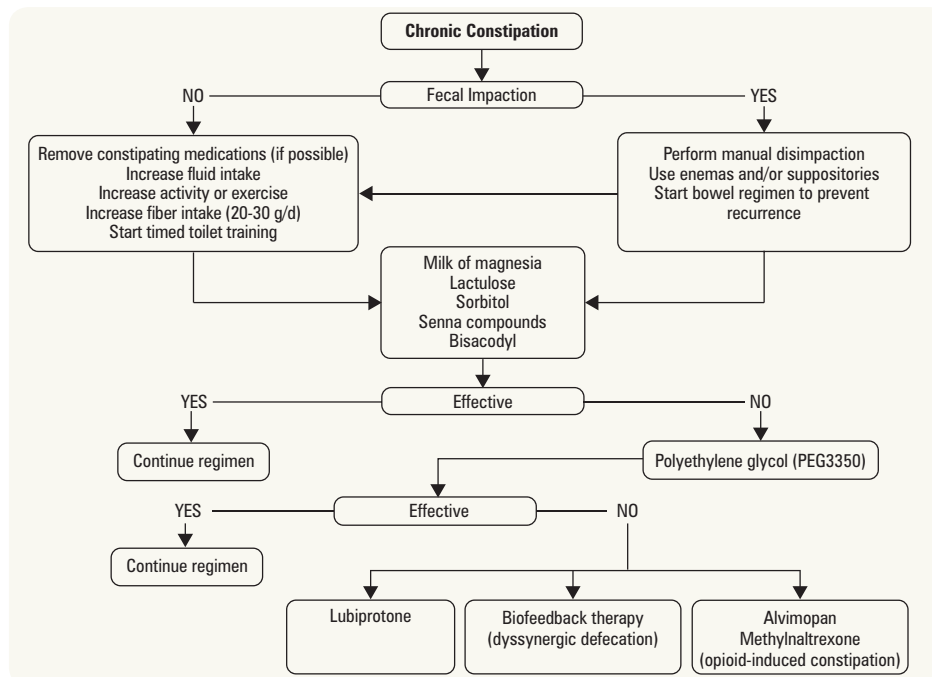


Figure 1. Treatment algorithm for the management of chronic constipation in the elderly

Adapted from: Clin Interv Aging 2010;5:163-171

Delirium, Dementia, and Depression

- see [Psychiatry](#), PS16, PS17, PS7 and [Neurology](#), N19

Definition

- pathologic decrease in memory, language, or executive function

Differential Diagnosis

- delirium, dementia, or pseudodementia of depression



Table 3. Differentiating the Three Ds of Cognitive Impairment

	Dementia	Delirium	Depression
Onset	Gradual or step-wise decline	Acute (hours-days)	Subacute
Duration	Months-years	Days-weeks	Variable
Natural History	Progressive, usually irreversible	Fluctuating, reversible High morbidity/mortality in very old	Recurrent Usually reversible
Level of Consciousness	Normal	Fluctuating	Normal
Attention	Intact initially	Decreased, wandering	Difficulty concentrating
Orientation	Intact initially	Impaired, fluctuates	Intact
Behavior	Disinhibition, loss of ADL/IADLs, personality change	Severe agitation/retardation	Importuning, self-harm/suicide
Psychomotor	Normal	Fluctuates between extremes	Slowing
Sleep-Wake Cycle	Fragmented sleep at night	Reversed sleep-wake cycle	Early morning awakening
Mood and Affect	Labile but not usually anxious	Anxious, irritable, fluctuating	Depressed, stable
Cognition	Decreased executive function, paucity of thought	Fluctuation preceded by mood changes	Concentration impaired
Memory Loss	Recent, eventually remote	Marked recent	Recent
Language	Agnosia, aphasia, decreased comprehension, repetition	Dysnomia, dysgraphia, speech rambling, subject changes, incoherence	Not affected
Delusions	Compensatory	Nightmarish, poorly formed	Nihilistic, somatic
Hallucinations	Variable, vacuous, bland	Visual common, frightening/bizarre	Self-deprecatory

Delirium Prevention in Elderly

- ensure optimal vision and hearing to support orientation (e.g. appropriate eyewear and hearing aids)
- provide adequate nutrition and hydration (up in chair to eat and drink whenever feasible)
- encourage regular mobilization to build and maintain strength, balance, and endurance
- avoid unnecessary medications and monitor for drug interactions
- avoid bladder catheterization if possible
- ensure adequate sleep

Elder Abuse**Definition**

- includes physical abuse, sexual abuse, emotional/psychological abuse, financial abuse, abandonment, and neglect
- in the U.S., most states have criminal penalties for elder abuse

Epidemiology

- in the U.S., estimates of the frequency of elder abuse range from 3-8%
- insufficient evidence to include/exclude screening in the Periodic Health Exam

Risk Factors**Table 4. Risk Factors for Elder Abuse**

Situational Factors	Isolation Unstable or unsafe living arrangements Lack of family, community or living facility resources for additional care
Victim Characteristics	Physical or emotional dependence on caregiver Lack of close family ties History of family violence Dementia or recent deterioration in health
Perpetrator Characteristics	Related to victim Living with victim Long duration of care for victim (mean 9.5 yr) Financial, marital, occupational or other stressors

**Atypical Antipsychotics in the Treatment of Delirium**

Psychiatry and Clinical Neurosciences 2013;67:323-331

The aim of this study was to review the efficacy and safety of atypical antipsychotics. Antipsychotics were compared to comparing within placebo, different classes of antipsychotics, or to another active treatment for delirium. A literature search was conducted using PubMed, EMBASE, and the Cochrane database (1 January 1990–5 November 2012). Selection criteria for review were prospective, controlled studies (comparison studies), using validated delirium rating scales as outcome measures. A total of six prospective, randomized controlled studies were included in the review. It was found that atypical antipsychotics are effective and safe in treating delirium, even though there seemed to be no difference between each agent. In particular, comparison studies with haloperidol showed that the efficacy of atypical antipsychotics was similar to that of low-dose haloperidol. It was concluded that atypical antipsychotics appear to be effective and tolerable in the management of delirium, even though the evidence is limited.

**Elder Abuse Suspicion Index (EASI)****Instructions**

- Questions 1-5 are to be asked of the patient
 - Question 6 is to be answered by the doctor
 - A response of “yes” on one or more of questions 2-6 may establish concern
 - Validated for use by family practitioners of cognitively intact seniors seen in ambulatory setting
1. Have you relied on people for any of the following: bathing, dressing, shopping, banking, or meals?
 2. Has anyone prevented you from getting food, clothes, medication, glasses, hearing aids, or medical care, or from being with people you wanted to be with?
 3. Have you been upset because someone talked to you in a way that made you feel shamed or threatened?
 4. Has anyone tried to force you to sign papers or to use your money against your will?
 5. Has anyone made you afraid, touched you in ways that you did not want, or hurt you physically?
 6. Doctor: elder abuse may be associated with findings such as: poor eye contact, withdrawn nature, malnourishment, hygiene issues, cuts, bruises, inappropriate clothing, or medication compliance issues. Did you notice any of these today or in the last 12 months?

NICE net. Elder Abuse Suspicion Index. 2006

Caregiver Abuse Screen (CASE)

- instructions
 - to be answered by caregivers, if answer “yes” to a question, further explore issue
 - the more “yes” responses, the more likely the presence of abuse
- screening tool
 - please answer the following questions as a helper/caregiver
 1. Do you sometimes have trouble making _____ control his/her temper or aggression?
 2. Do you often feel you are being forced to act out of character/do things you feel badly about?
 3. Do you find it difficult to manage _____’s behavior?
 4. Do you sometimes feel that you are forced to be rough with _____?
 5. Do you sometimes feel that you can’t do what is really necessary or what should be done for _____?
 6. Do you often feel you have to reject/ignore _____?
 7. Do you often feel so tired and exhausted that you cannot meet _____’s needs?
 8. Do you often feel you have to yell at _____?

From: NICE. Case: Caregiver Abuse Screen. 2010. Reproduced with permission from NICE

Management

- assess safety and determine capacity to make decisions about living arrangements
- establish need for hospitalization or alternate accommodation (e.g. immediate risk of physical harm by self or caregiver)
- involve multidisciplinary team (e.g. nurse, social worker, family members, and physicians including geriatrician, psychiatrist or family physician)
- educate and assist caregiver, contact local resources (e.g. legal aid, crisis support, PSW, caregiver support groups)
- interpret critical and lab findings that are key in exclusion, differentiation and diagnosis

Falls**Epidemiology**

- 30-40% of people >65 yr old and ~50% of people >80 yr old fall each yr
 - equally common between men and women, but more likely to result in injury in women
 - 5% of falls lead to hospitalization
 - falls are the leading cause of death from injury in persons older than 65 yr
 - 25% associated with serious injuries (e.g. hip fracture, head injury, bruises, laceration)
 - between 25-75% do not recover to previous level of ADL function
 - mortality increases with age (171/100,000 in men >85 yr old) and type of injury (25% with hip fracture die within 6 mo)

Etiology

- multifactorial
- extrinsic
 - environmental (e.g. home layout, lighting, stairs, footwear), accidental, abuse
 - medications/substances (e.g. alcohol)
 - acute illness, exacerbation of chronic illness
- intrinsic
 - orthostatic/syncopal
 - age-related changes and diseases associated with aging: musculoskeletal (arthritis, muscle weakness), sensory (visual, proprioceptive, vestibular), cognitive (depression, dementia, delirium, anxiety), cardiovascular (CAD, arrhythmia, MI, low BP), neurologic (stroke, decreased LOC, gait disturbances/ataxia), metabolic (glucose, electrolytes)

Investigations

- directed by history and physical
- comprehensive geriatric assessment to identify all potential causes
- CBC, electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, glucose, Ca^{2+} , TSH, B_{12} , urinalysis, cardiac enzymes, ECG, CT head

Prevention

- multidisciplinary, multifactorial, health, and environment risk factor screening and intervention programs in the community
- muscle strengthening, balance retraining, and group exercise programs (e.g. tai chi)
- home hazard assessment and modification (e.g. remove rugs, add shower bars, etc.)
- prescription of vitamin D 1000 IU daily
- tapering or gradual discontinuation of psychotropic medication
- postural hypotension, heart rate, and rhythm abnormalities management
- eyesight and footwear optimization

**Red Flags for Elder Abuse**

- Delay in seeking medical attention
- Disparity in histories
- Implausible or vague explanations
- Frequent emergency room visits for exacerbations of chronic disease despite plan for medical care and adequate resources
- Presentation of functionally impaired patient without designated caregiver
- Lab findings inconsistent with history

**Key Physical Findings in the Elderly Patient Who Falls or Nearly Falls****I HATE FALLING**

Inflammation of joints
 Hypotension (orthostatic changes)
 Auditory and visual abnormalities
 Tremor
 Equilibrium (balance) problem
 Foot Problems
 Arrhythmia, heart block or valvular disease
 Leg-length discrepancy
 Lack of conditioning (generalized weakness)
 Illness
 Nutrition
 Gait disturbance

Adapted from: *Am Fam Physician* 2001;61:2159-2172



A history of falls within the past 1-2 yr is a predictor of motor vehicle crashes in the older population. These patients should be evaluated on their ability to drive and counseled about driving.

**Drugs That May Increase the Risk of Falling**

- Sedative-hypnotic and anxiolytic drugs (especially long-acting benzodiazepines)
- Antidepressants (including MAOIs, SSRIs, TCAs)
- Antipsychotics and tranquilizers (phenothiazines and butyrophenones)
- Antihypertensive drugs
- Antiarrhythmics (Class IA)
- Diuretics
- Systemic corticosteroids
- NSAIDs
- Anticholinergic drugs
- Hypoglycemic agents
- Alcohol

Adapted from: *Am Fam Physician* 2001;61:2159-2172
Geriatrics At Your Fingertips, 13th ed. New York: Am Geriatr Soc, 2011

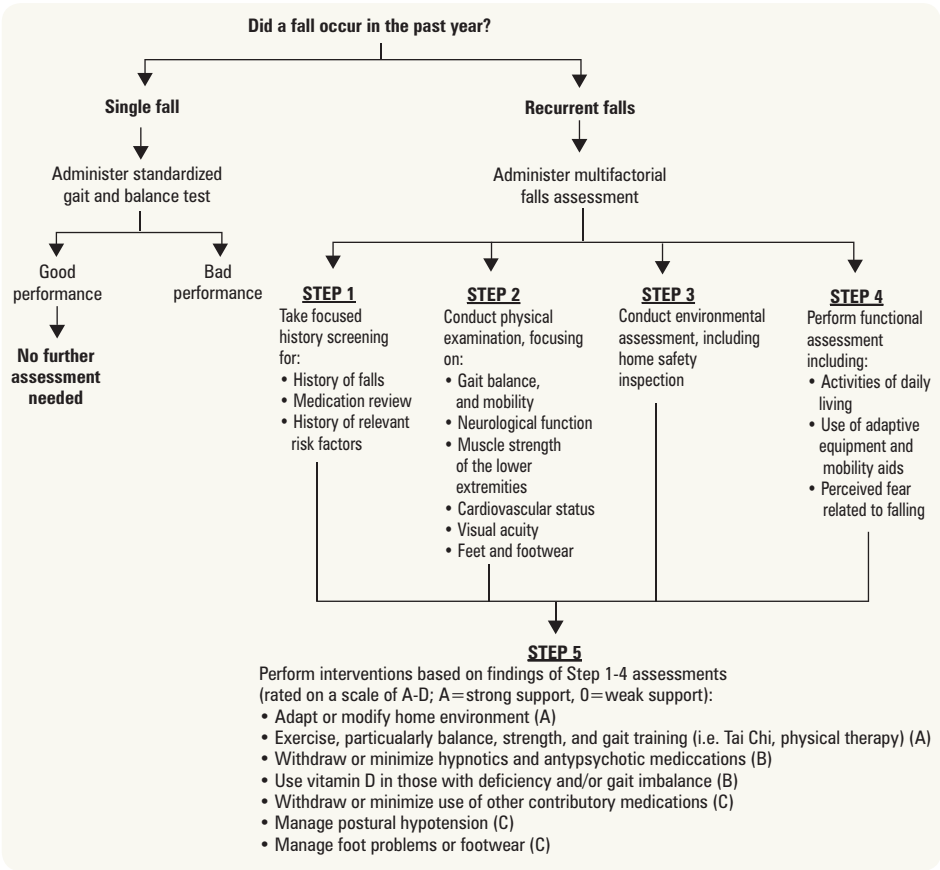


Figure 2. Approach to falls in the elderly
Adapted from: Davuluri S, Dharmarajan TS. *Clinical Geriatrics* 2013;21(10)



Fall Prevention Tips

- Home hazard assessment and modification
- Exercise and physical therapy
- Multifactorial risk assessment and intervention
- Evaluation of medications and withdrawal of medications that increase risk of falling
- Dual-chamber pacemaker placement for selected patients
- Hip protectors for patients at high risk of falling in an institutional setting

Adapted from: *Am Fam Physician* 2005;72:81-88



Will My Patient Fall?
JAMA 2007;297:77-86

Purpose: To identify the prognostic value of risk factors for future falls among older patients.

Study Selection: Prospective cohort studies of risk factors for falls that performed a multivariate analysis of such factors.

Results: 18 studies were included. Clinically identifiable risk factors were identified across 6 domains: orthostatic hypotension, visual impairment, impairment of gait or balance, medication use, limitations in basic or instrumental activities of daily living, and cognitive impairment. The estimated pretest probability of falling at least once in any given yr for individuals ≥65 was 27% (95% CI 19-36%). Patients who have fallen in the past yr are more likely to fall again (LR2.3-2.8). The most consistent predictors of future falls are clinically detected abnormalities of gait or balance (LR 1.7-2.4). Visual impairment, medication variables, decreased activities of daily living, and impaired cognition did not consistently predict falls across studies. Orthostatic hypotension did not predict falls after controlling for other factors.

Conclusions: Screening for risk of falling during the clinical examination begins with determining if the patient has fallen in the past yr. For patients who have not previously fallen, screening consists of an assessment of gait and balance. Patients who have fallen or who have a gait or balance problem are at higher risk of future falls.



Can use formal assessment tools such as the Lawton-Brody Instrumental Activities of Daily Living Scale to assess functioning

Frailty (Failure to Thrive)

Definition

- declining independence and functional capacity with loss of energy, vigor, and/or weight in older adults
- not an inevitable consequence of aging

Etiology

- malnutrition, functional impairment, cognitive impairment, and depression

Table 5. Common Medical Conditions Associated with Failure to Thrive

Medical Condition	Cause of Failure to Thrive
Cancer	Metastases, malnutrition, cachexia
Chronic lung disease	Respiratory failure
Chronic renal insufficiency	Renal failure
Chronic steroid use	Steroid myopathy, diabetes, osteoporosis, vision loss
Cirrhosis, hepatitis	Hepatic failure
Depression, other psychiatric disorder	Major depression, psychosis, poor functional status, cognitive loss
Diabetes	Malabsorption, poor glucose homeostasis, end-organ damage
Gastrointestinal surgery	Malabsorption, malnutrition
Hip, long bone fracture	Functional impairment
Inflammatory bowel disease	Malabsorption, malnutrition
Myocardial infarction, congestive heart failure	Cardiac failure
Recurrent UTI, pneumonia	Chronic infection, functional impairment
Rheumatologic disease (GCA, RA, SLE)	Chronic inflammation
Stroke	Dysphagia, depression, cognitive loss, functional impairment
Tuberculosis, other systemic infection	Chronic infection

Adapted from: *Clin Geriatr Med* 1997;13:769-778

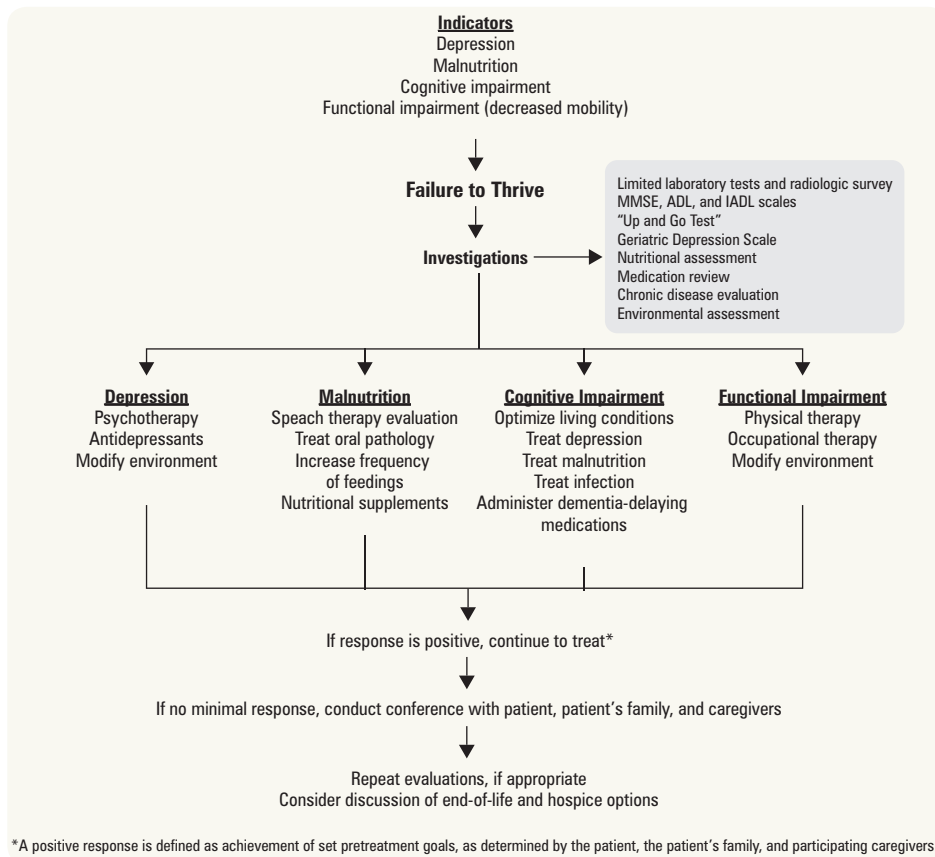


Figure 3. Failure to thrive in elderly patients

Adapted from: *Am Fam Physician* 2004;70:343-350



Four Syndromes in Failure to Thrive

My Pa Can't Drive

Malnutrition
Physical impairment
Cognitive impairment
Depression



The CHSA Clinical Frailty Scale – Shown to Predict Death and Need for Institution

CMAJ 2005;173:489-495

The CHSA Clinical Frailty Scale

1. Very fit – robust, active, energetic, well motivated and fit; these people commonly exercise regularly and are in the most fit group for their age.
2. Well – without active disease, but less fit than people in category 1.
3. Well, with treated comorbid disease – disease symptoms are well controlled compared with those in category 4.
4. Apparently vulnerable – although not frankly dependent, these people commonly complain of being "slowed up" or have disease symptoms.
5. Mildly frail – with limited dependence on others for instrumental activities of daily living.
6. Moderately frail – help is needed with both instrumental and non-instrumental activities of daily living.
7. Severely frail – completely dependent on others for the activities of daily living, or terminally ill.



Functional Assessment (ADLs and IADLs)

ADLs: ABCDE-TT

Ambulating
Bathing
Continence
Dressing
Eating
Transferring
Toileting

IADLs: SHAFT-TT

Shopping
Housework
Accounting/Managing finances
Food preparation
Transportation
Telephone
Taking medications

Can use formal assessment tools such as the Lawton-Brody Instrumental Activities of Daily Living Scale to assess functioning



Transient Causes of Incontinence

DIAPERS

Delirium
Infection
Atrophic urethritis/vaginitis
Pharmaceuticals
Excessive urine output
Restricted mobility
Stool impaction

Incontinence

FECAL INCONTINENCE

Epidemiology

- second leading cause of nursing home placement

Etiology

- commonly multifactorial
 - structural abnormalities
 - trauma (e.g. prior vaginal delivery, surgery)
 - prolapse
 - tumor/trauma (e.g. brain, spinal cord, cauda equina)
 - overflow (e.g. encopresis, impaction)
- functional abnormalities
 - neurologic conditions – neuropathy, multiple sclerosis, stroke, dementia
- others
 - constipation with overflow may be a factor
 - psychosis (willful soiling)
 - age >80 yr: decreased external sphincter strength and weak anal squeeze, increased rectal compliance, decreased resting tone and internal sphincter, impaired anal sensation
 - medications (e.g. laxatives, anticholinergics, antidepressants, caffeine, muscle relaxants)

Investigations (if cause not apparent from history and physical)

- differentiate true incontinence from frequency and urgency (i.e. IBS, IBD)
- stool studies
- endorectal ultrasound
- colonoscopy, sigmoidoscopy, anoscopy
- anorectal manometry/functional testing

Management

- diet/bulking agent if stool is liquid or loose
- disimpaction, prevent impaction
- anti-diarrheal agents (e.g. loperamide)
- regular defecation program in patients with dementia
- counsel about biofeedback therapy (retraining of pelvic floor muscles)

URINARY INCONTINENCE

- see [Urology, U5](#)



Epidemiology

- 15-30% prevalence dwelling in community and at least 50% of institutionalized seniors
- morbidity: cellulitis, pressure ulcers, urinary tract infections, falls with fractures, sleep deprivation, social withdrawal, depression, sexual dysfunction
- not associated with increased mortality

Pathophysiology

- not a normal part of aging, urinary incontinence is a loss of control due to a combination of:
 - genitourinary pathology: increased post-void residual volume, increased involuntary bladder contractions (urge incontinence)
 - age-related changes: decreased bladder capacity
 - comorbid conditions and medications
 - functional impairment
- in elderly women: decline in bladder outlet and urethral resistance pressure promoting stress incontinence
- in elderly men: prostatic enlargement can cause overflow and urge incontinence

Gait Disorders

- see [Neurology, N34](#)



Hazards of Hospitalization

Table 6. Recommendations for Sequelae of Hospitalization in Older Patients

Sequelae	Recommendations
Malnutrition	No dietary restrictions (except diabetes), assistance, dentures if necessary, sitting in a chair to eat
Urinary incontinence	Medication review, remove environmental barriers, discontinue use of catheter
Depression	Routine screening
Adverse drug event	Medication review
Confusion/delirium	Orientation, visual and hearing aids, volume repletion, noise reduction, early mobilization, medication review, remove restraints
Pressure ulcers	Low-resistance mattress, daily inspection, repositioning every 2 h
Infection	Early mobilization, remove unnecessary IV lines, catheters, NG tubes
Falls	Appropriate footwear, assistive devices, early mobilization, remove restraints, medication review
Hypotension/dehydration	Early recognition and repletion
Diminished aerobic capacity/loss of muscle strength/contractures	Early mobilization
Decreased respiratory function	Incentive spirometry, physiotherapy

Hypertension

- see [Family Medicine, FM35](#)
- 60-80% of elderly (>65 yr old) have HTN
 - 60% of these have isolated systolic HTN
 - the benefit of treating HTN in the elderly is 2-4 times greater than that achieved in the treatment of younger patients with primary HTN
 - systolic and pulse pressure are major predictors of outcome in the elderly patient
 - in older adults, base treatment on sBP
- target BP: sBP <140, 65<dBP<90; for patients with DM: sBP <130, dBP <80
 - more recently, some argue a target of sBP<140 reasonable for all elderly patients, and minimizes risk of hypotension
- treatment:
 - non-pharmacologic treatments are first-line, then thiazide monotherapy is recommended
 - add ACEI/ARB if also atherosclerosis, DM, CHF or chronic kidney disease
 - add β -blockers if also angina or CHF



Cognitive Decline after Hospitalization in a Community Population of Older Persons

Neurology 2012;78:950-956

Study: 12 yr Cohort study of 1,870 elderly residents interviewed at 3 yr intervals with cognitive testing and information on hospitalization (from hospital records).

Results: 71.4% of residents were hospitalized at least once. Post-hospital cognitive decline measured by episodic memory (3.3-fold increase) and executive function (1.7-fold increase) was evident and not related to cognitive function at baseline but moderately correlated with rate of cognitive decline before hospitalization ($r=0.55$).

Conclusions: Cognitive function declines post-hospitalization even after controlling for illness severity and pre-hospital cognitive decline.



Treatment of HTN in Patients 80 Years of Age or Older

NEJM 2008;358:1887-1898

Study: Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter trial.

Subjects: 3,845 patients who were 80 yr of age or older and had a sustained systolic blood pressure of 160 mmHg were followed for a median 1.8 yr.

Intervention: Indapamide (sustained release, 1.5 mg) or matching placebo. The angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor perindopril (2-4 mg), or matching placebo, was added if necessary to achieve the target blood pressure of 150/80 mmHg.

Primary Outcome: Fatal or nonfatal stroke.

Results: Mean BP was 173.0/90.8 mmHg. At 2 yr, the mean BP while sitting was 15.0/6.1 mmHg lower in the treatment group than in the placebo group. Treatment was associated with a 30% reduction in the rate of fatal or nonfatal stroke (95% CI -1.51; $p=0.06$), 39% reduction in the rate of death from stroke (95% CI 1.62; $p=0.05$), 21% reduction in the rate of death from any cause (95% CI, 4 to 35; $p=0.02$), 23% reduction in the rate of death from cardiovascular causes (95% CI -1.40; $p=0.06$), and 64% reduction in the rate of heart failure (95% CI, 42-78; $p<0.001$). Fewer serious adverse events were reported in the treatment group (358 vs. 448 in the placebo group; $p=0.001$).

Conclusions: Antihypertensive treatment with indapamide (sustained release), with or without perindopril, in persons 80 yr of age or older reduces death from stroke, death from any cause, and the incidence of heart failure.

Immobility

Complications

- cardiovascular: orthostatic hypotension, venous thrombosis, embolism
- respiratory: decreased ventilation, atelectasis, pneumonia
- gastrointestinal: anorexia, constipation, incontinence, dehydration, malnutrition
- genitourinary: infection, urinary retention, bladder calculi, incontinence
- musculoskeletal: atrophy, contractures, bone loss
- skin: pressure ulcers
- psychological: sensory deprivation, delirium, depression

Immunizations

- the following immunizations are recommended for people 65 yr of age and older
 - tetanus: every 10 yr
 - pneumococcus: every 5 yr
 - influenza: every autumn
 - herpes zoster: Zostivax®

Malnutrition

Definition

- involuntary weight loss of $\geq 5\%$ baseline body weight or ≥ 5 kg
- hypoalbuminemia, hypocholesterolemia

Etiology

- nutritional
 - decreased assimilation: impaired transit, maldigestion, malabsorption
 - decreased intake: financial, psychiatric (depression), cognitive deficits, anorexia associated with chronic disease, functional deficits (e.g. difficulty shopping, preparing meals or feeding oneself due to functional impairment)
- stress: acute or chronic illness/infection, chronic inflammation, abdominal pain
- mechanical: dental problems, dysphagia
- age-related changes: appetite dysregulation, decreased thirst
- mixed: increased energy demands (e.g. hyperthyroidism), abnormal metabolism, protein-losing enteropathy

Clinical Features

- history
 - recent or chronic illness
 - ♦ depression, GI symptoms
 - functional disability: impaired ADLs and IADLs
 - social factors: economic barriers, dental problems and living situation (e.g. living alone)
 - constitutional symptoms (e.g. recent weight loss)
- physical exam
 - BMI < 23.5 in males, < 22 in females should raise concern
 - temporal wasting, muscle wasting, presence of triceps skin fold
 - assess cognition

Investigations

- CBC, electrolytes, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , PO_4^{3-} , creatinine, LFTs (albumin, INR, bilirubin), B_{12} , folate, TSH, transferrin, lipid profile, urinalysis, ESR, CXR

Osteoporosis

- see [Endocrinology](#), E42

Presbycusis

- see [Otolaryngology](#), OT20



Remember to Calculate BMI

BMI outside 22-27 kg/m² is a health risk



Calculating Basic Caloric and Fluid Requirements

WHO daily energy estimates for adults > 60 yr:

Female: $10.5 \times (\text{weight in kg}) + 596$

Male: $13.5 \times (\text{weight in kg}) + 487$

Maintenance fluid requirements for the elderly without cardiac or renal disease: 1500-2500 cc/24 h



Etiology of Malnutrition in the Elderly

MEALS ON WHEELS

Medications

Emotional problems

Anorexia

Late-life paranoia

Swallowing disorders

Oral problems

Nosocomial infections

Wandering/dementia related activity

Hyperthyroid/Hypercalcemia/

Hypoadrenalism

Enteric disorders

Eating problems

Low-salt/Low-fat diet

Stones



Pressure Ulcers

- see [Plastic Surgery](#), PL16

Risk Factors

- extrinsic factors: friction, pressure, shear force
- intrinsic factors: immobility, malnutrition, moisture, sensory loss

Table 7. Classification of Pressure Ulcers

Stage I	Changes include skin temperature, tissue consistency or sensation An area of persistent erythema in lightly pigmented, intact skin; in darker skin, it may appear red, blue or purple
Stage II	Partial thickness skin loss involving the epidermis, dermis or both The ulcer is superficial and presents as an abrasion, blister or shallow crater
Stage III	Full thickness skin loss involving damage or necrosis of subcutaneous tissue which may extend down to, but not through, underlying fascia Presents as a deep crater with or without undermining of adjacent tissue
Stage IV	Full thickness skin loss with extensive destruction, tissue necrosis or damage to muscle, bone or supporting structures May have associated undermining and/or sinus tracts

Prevention

- pressure reduction
 - frequent repositioning
 - pressure-reducing devices (static, dynamic)
- maintaining nutrition, encouraging mobility and managing incontinence

Treatment

- optimize nutritional status
- minimize pressure on wound
- analgesia
- wound debridement (mechanical, enzymatic, autolytic) and dressing application
- maintain moist wound environment to enable re-epithelialization
- treatment of wound infections (topical gentamicin, silver sulfadiazine, mupirocin)
- swab wounds not demonstrating clinical improvement for C&S; biopsy chronic wounds to rule out malignancy
- stage IV ulcers typically warrant surgical debridement
- consider other treatment options
 - negative pressure wound therapy/vacuum-assisted closure (VAC)
 - biological agents: application of fibroblast growth factor, platelet-derived growth factor to wound
 - non-contact normothermic wound therapy
 - electrotherapy



Pressure-Reducing Devices

Static devices distribute pressure over a greater surface area. Dynamic devices use alternating air currents to shift pressure to different body sites

Driving Competency



Reporting Requirements

- not an issue unique to geriatrics – any patient may suffer from a medical condition that impairs their ability to drive should be reported
- in the U.S., varies by state

Conditions that may Impair Driving

Table 8. Conditions that Impair Driving

Alcohol	Patients with history of impaired driving and those with high probability of future impaired driving should not drive until further assessed Alcohol dependence or abuse: if suspected, should be advised not to drive Alcohol withdrawal seizure: must complete a rehabilitation program and remain abstinent and seizure-free for 6 mo before driving
Blood Pressure Abnormalities	HTN: sustained BP > 170/110 should be evaluated carefully Hypotension: if syncopal, discontinue until attacks are treated and preventable

Table 8. Conditions that Impair Driving (continued)

Cardiovascular Disease	Suspected asymptomatic CAD or stable angina: no restrictions STEMI, NSTEMI with significant LV damage, coronary artery bypass surgery: no driving for one month following hospital discharge NSTEMI with minor LV damage, unstable angina: no driving for 48 h if percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) performed or 7 d if no PCI performed
Cerebrovascular Conditions	TIA: should not be allowed to drive until a medical assessment is completed Stroke: should not drive for at least one month; may resume driving if functionally able; no clinically significant motor, cognitive, perceptual or vision deficits; no obvious risk of sudden recurrence; underlying cause appropriately treated; no post-stroke seizure
COPD	Mild/moderate impairment: no restrictions Moderate or severe impairment requiring supplemental oxygen: road test with supplemental oxygen
Cognitive Impairment/ Dementia	Moderate to severe dementia is a contraindication to driving; defined as the “inability to independently perform 2 or more IADLs or any basic ADL” Patients with mild dementia should be assessed; if indicated, refer to specialized driving testing center; if deemed fit to drive, re-evaluate patient every 6-12 mo Poor performance on MMSE, clock drawing or Trails B suggests a need to investigate driving ability further MMSE score alone (whether normal or low) is insufficient to determine fitness to drive
Diabetes	Diet controlled or oral hypoglycemic agents: no restrictions in absence of diabetes complications that may impair ability to drive (e.g. retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy, cardiovascular or cerebrovascular disease) Insulin use: may drive if no complications (as above) and no severe hypoglycemic episode in the last 6 mo
Drugs	Be aware of: analgesics, anticholinergics, anticonvulsants, antidepressants, antipsychotics, opiates, sedatives, stimulants Degree of impairment varies: patients should be warned of the medication/withdrawal effect on driving
Hearing Loss	Effect of impaired hearing on ability to drive safely is controversial Acute labyrinthitis, positional vertigo with horizontal head movement, recurrent vertigo: advise not to drive until condition resolves
Musculoskeletal Disorders	Physician’s role is to report etiology, prognosis and extent of disability (pain, range of motion, coordination, muscle strength)
Post-Operative	Outpatient, conscious sedation: no driving for 24 h Outpatient, general anesthesia: no driving for ≥24 h
Seizures	First, single, unprovoked: no driving for 3 mo until complete neurologic assessment, EEG, CT head Epilepsy: can drive if seizure-free on medication and physician has insight into patient compliance
Sleep Disorders	If patient is believed to be at risk due to a symptomatic sleep disorder but refuses investigation with a sleep study or refuses appropriate treatment, the patient should not drive
Visual Impairment	Visual acuity: contraindicated to drive if <20/50 with both eyes examined simultaneously Visual field: contraindicated to drive if <120° along horizontal meridian and 15° continuous above and below fixation with both eyes examined simultaneously

N.B. guidelines included refer specifically to private driving.



Systematic Review of Driving Risk and the Efficacy of Compensatory Strategies in Persons with Dementia
J Am Geriatr Soc 2007;55:878-884
Purpose: To determine whether persons with dementia are at greater driving risk and, if so, to estimate the magnitude of this risk and determine whether there are efficacious methods to compensate for or accommodate it.
Study Selection: Systematic review of the case-control studies of drivers with a diagnosis of dementia.
Results: Drivers with dementia universally exhibited poorer performance on road tests and simulator evaluations. The one study that used an objective measure of motor vehicle crashes found that the crash risk in persons with dementia was 2-2.5 times greater than matched controls. No studies were found that examined the efficacy of methods to compensate for or accommodate the decreased driving performance.
Conclusions: Drivers with dementia are poorer drivers than cognitively normal drivers, but studies have not consistently demonstrated higher crash rates. Clinicians and policy makers must take these findings into account when addressing issues pertinent to drivers with a diagnosis of dementia.



Key Factors to Consider in Older Drivers
SAFEDRIVE
Safety record
Attention (e.g. concentration lapses, episodes of disorientation)
Family observations
Ethanol abuse
Drugs
Reaction time
Intellectual impairment
Vision/Visuospatial function
Executive functions (e.g. planning, decision-making, self-monitoring behaviors)
Geriatrics 1996;51:36-45

Health Care Institutions

Table 9. Classification of Health Care Services and Institutions

Institution/Service	Description
Home Health Agency	Health care services offered at home for those who can live independently at home or under the care of family members including professional health care services, personal care and support (ADL assistance), homemaking (IADL assistance), community support services (e.g. transportation, meal delivery, day programs, caregiver relief, security checks, etc.)
Residential	Divided into short (<60-90 d/yr) and long (indefinite) stay
a) Seniors Affordable Housing	Seniors who live independently and manage their own care but prefer to live near other seniors; usually has accessibility features and rent is adjusted based on income
b) Retirement/Nursing Home	Residents are fairly independent and require minimal support with ADLs and IADLs; often privately owned
c) Supportive Housing	Residents require minimal to moderate assistance with daily activities while living independently; often rental units in an apartment and may offer some physiotherapy and rehabilitation services
d) Long-term Care/Skilled Nursing Facility	Around the clock nursing care and on-call physician coverage; often offers occupational therapy, physiotherapy, respiratory therapy, and rehabilitation services; may be used short-term for caregiver respite, or for supportive patient care to regain strength and confidence after leaving the hospital
e) Hospice	Free-standing facility or designated floor in a hospital or nursing home for care of terminally ill patients and their families; focus is on quality of life and often requires prognosis ≤3 mo

- names of community health care institutions, types of facilities, and services offered vary between geographical locations
- factors to consider when seeking services/institutions include level of care required, support networks, duration of stay, and cost

Palliative and End-of-Life Care



Principles and Quality of Life

- support, educate, and treat both patient and family
- address physical, psychological, social and spiritual needs
- focus on symptom management and comfort measures
- offer therapeutic environment and bereavement support
- ensure maintenance of human dignity

End-of-Life Care Discussions

When to Initiate End-of-Life Care Discussions

- recent hospitalization for serious illness
- severe progressive medical condition(s)
- death expected within 6-12 mo
- patient inquires about end-of-life care

Suggested Topics for Discussion

- goals of care (disease vs. symptom management)
- advance directives, power of attorney, public guardian and trustee
- treatment options and likelihood of success
- common medical interventions
 - mechanical ventilation
 - antibiotic therapy
 - feeding tubes
- resuscitation options and likelihood of success (Full Code vs. DNR status including preferences for CPR, intubation, ICU admission, artificial hydration)

Power of Attorney

- see [Ethical, Legal, and Organizational Medicine, ELOAM8](#)



Instructional Advance Directives

- see [Ethical, Legal, and Organizational Medicine, ELOAM8](#)



Symptom Management

Assessment Tools

- **Edmonton Symptom Assessment System (ESAS):** a tool that asks patients to rate the intensity of symptoms from 0-10 and allows for tracking of the efficacy of interventions. Assesses: pain, tiredness, nausea, depression, anxiety, drowsiness, appetite, well being, shortness of breath, and "other problem"
- **Palliative Performance Scale (PPS):** a tool that uses functional status to predict survival in terminally ill patients. Assesses 5 components: ambulation, activity and evidence of disease, self-care, intake and conscious level

Source: *J Palliat Care* 1991;7:6-9 and Victoria Hospice Society 2006;120-121

Table 10. Management of Common End-of-Life Symptoms

Symptom	Non-Pharmacologic Management	Pharmacologic Management
Constipation	Rule out obstruction, impaction, anorectal disease; hydration and high fiber intake; increase mobility	Stop unnecessary opioids and medications with anticholinergic side effects; provide stool softener (e.g. docusate sodium), increase peristalsis (e.g. senna), alter water and electrolyte secretion (e.g. magnesium hydroxide, lactulose, peg3350)
Death Rattle/ Increased Pulmonary Secretions	Oral suctioning Discontinue unnecessary IV solutions	Scopolamine SC or transdermal
Dry Mouth	Oral hygiene q2h, ice cubes, sugarless gum	Artificial saliva substitutes, bethanechol, pilocarpine 1% solution as mouth rinse
Dysphagia	Frequent small feeds, ideally seated, keep head of bed elevated for 30 min after eating, suction as necessary	Treat painful mucositis (diphenhydramine: lidocaine: Maalox® in a 1:2:8 mixture), candidiasis (fluconazole)
Dyspnea	Elevate head of bed, eliminate allergens, open window/use fan	Oxygen, bronchodilators, opioids (e.g. morphine, hydromorphone)
Hiccups	Dry sugar, breathing in paper bag	Chlorpromazine, haloperidol, metoclopramide, baclofen, marijuana
Nausea and Vomiting	Frequent and small meals, avoid offensive strong odors, treat constipation if present	Raised ICP: dexamethasone Anticipatory nausea, anxiety: lorazepam Vestibular disease, vertigo: dimenhydrinate Drug induced, hepatic or renal failure: prochlorperazine, haloperidol GERD: PPI or H2 antagonist Gastric stasis: metoclopramide Bowel obstruction: metoclopramide, dexamethasone, octreotide
Pain	Hot and cold compresses, music therapy, relaxation techniques, individualized program of physical activity designed to improve flexibility, strength and endurance	Nociceptive pain: non-opioids (NSAIDs, acetaminophen), weak opioids (codeine, hydrocodone, oxycodone), strong opioids (morphine, hydromorphone, oxycodone, fentanyl) Neuropathic pain: anticonvulsants (gabapentin, pregabalin), antidepressants (TCAs, SSRIs), steroids (dexamethasone) Bony pain: non-opioids, weak opioids, bisphosphonates, radiation therapy
Pruritus	Bathing with tepid water, avoid soap, bath oils; sodium bicarbonate for jaundice	Antihistamines, phenothiazines, topical corticosteroids, calamine lotion
Weakness	Modify environment and activities to decrease energy expenditure	Treat insomnia, anemia, depression; consider psychostimulants

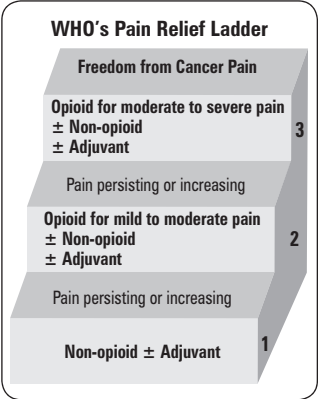
Source: J Am Geriatr Soc 2002;50:S205-S224 and On Continuing Practice 1993;20:20-25 and Am Fam Physician 2009;79(12):1059-1065

Geriatric Pharmacology

Pharmacokinetics

Table 11. Age-Associated Pharmacokinetics

Parameter	Age Effect	Implications
Absorption (less significant)	Increased gastric pH Decreased splanchnic blood flow, GI absorptive surface and dermal vascularity; delayed gastric emptying	Drug-drug and drug-food interactions are more likely to affect absorption
Distribution	Increased total body fat and α1-glycoprotein Decreased lean body mass, total body water and albumin	Lipophilic drugs have a larger volume of distribution Decreased binding of acidic drugs, increased binding of basic drugs
Metabolism (less significant)	Decreased hepatic mass and hepatic blood flow; impaired phase I reactions (oxidative system)	Lower doses may be therapeutic
Elimination	Decreased renal blood flow, GFR, tubular secretion and renal mass	For every x% reduction in clearance, decrease the dose by x% and increase the interval by x%



Death Rattle
Noise caused by the oscillatory movement of mucous secretions in the upper airway with inspiration and expiration



Nociceptive Pain
Somatic: localized to bone/skin/joint/muscle; gnawing, dull pain
Visceral: not well localized; crampy pain, pressure

Neuropathic Pain
Burning, shooting, radiating pain; localized to dermatomal regions



Opioid Equivalent Doses (to 10 mg of IV morphine)

Opioid	SC/IV dose	PO dose
Morphine	10 mg	20-30 mg
Codeine	Not recommended	180-240 mg
Oxycodone	Not recommended	10-15 mg
Hydromorphone	2 mg	4-6 mg

Fentanyl transdermal 25 µg/h = morphine 90 mg PO/24 h, however fentanyl takes 12-16 h to reach steady state



Serum creatinine does not reflect creatinine clearance in the elderly, as they can have falsely lowered serum creatinine levels. Some advocate for rounding geriatrics' patients low serum creatinine numbers to 1 mg/dL, however this is controversial

Pharmacodynamics

Drug Sensitivity

- changes in pharmacokinetics as well as intrinsic sensitivity lead to altered drug responses
- increased sensitivity to warfarin, sedatives, antipsychotics, digoxin and narcotics
- decreased sensitivity to β -blockers in majority of elderly patients, though some may have increased sensitivity

Decreased Homeostasis

- poorer compensatory mechanisms leading to more adverse reactions (e.g. bleeding with NSAIDs/anticoagulants, altered mental status with anticholinergic/sympathomimetic/anti-Parkinsonian drugs)

Polypharmacy

Definition

- prescription, administration or use of five or more medications at the same time

Epidemiology

- patients over 65 years old are the largest medication consumers in the United States
- many elderly patients do not understand their medications
- hospitalized elderly are given an average of 10 medications during admission

Risk Factors for Non-Compliance

- risk of non-compliance correlates with medication factors, not age
 - number of medications – compliance with 1 medication is 80%, but drops to 25% with ≥ 6 medications
- increased dosing frequency, complicated container design, financial constraints, and cognitive impairment

Adverse Drug Reactions

- any noxious or unintended response to a drug that occurs at doses used for prophylaxis or therapy
- risk factors in the elderly
 - intrinsic: comorbidities, age-related changes in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics
 - extrinsic: number of medications, multiple prescribers, unreliable drug history
- 90% of ADRs are from: ASA, analgesics, anticoagulants, antimicrobials, antineoplastics, digoxin, diuretics, hypoglycemics, steroids

Preventing Polypharmacy

- consider drug: safer side effect profiles, convenient dosing schedules, convenient route, efficacy
- consider patient: other medications, clinical indications, medical comorbidities
- consider patient-drug interaction risk factors for ADRs
- review drug list regularly to eliminate medications with no clinical indication or with evidence of toxicity
- avoid treating an ADR with another medication

Inappropriate Prescribing in the Elderly

Epidemiology

- the estimated prevalence of potentially inappropriate prescribing ranges from 12-40%

Beers Criteria

- a list of medications to avoid in adults 65 and older due to safety concerns
- examples include long-acting benzodiazepines, strong anticholinergics, high-dose sedatives
- the elderly are also often under-treated (ACEI, ASA, β -blockers, thrombolytics, warfarin)



Benzodiazepines of Choice in the Elderly

LOT

Lorazepam
Oxazepam
Temazepam



Approach to Medication Review in the Elderly

NO TEARS

Need and indication

Open-ended questions (to get patient's perspective on medications)

Tests and monitoring (to assess disease control)

Evidence and guidelines

Adverse events

Risk reduction (of adverse events such as falls)

Simplification/switches



New medications: Start Low, Go Slow!



Principles for Prescribing in the Elderly

CARED

Caution/Compliance

Age (adjust dosage for age)

Review regimen regularly

Educate

Discontinue unnecessary medications

Geriatric Pearls. Philadelphia: FA Davis Company, 1999.



Adverse drug reactions in the elderly may present as delirium, falls, fractures, urinary incontinence/retention or fecal incontinence/impaction



Beers Criteria

For full list of medications, consult the following reference:

The American Geriatrics Society 2012

Beers Criteria Update Expert Panel

J Am Geriatr Soc 2012;60(4):616-31

<http://www.americangeriatrics.org>

Common Medications

Table 12. Common Medications



Drug Name	Brand Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Contraindications	Side Effects	Mechanism of Action
ANALGESICS (non-opioid)						
acetaminophen	Tylenol®	325-650 mg PO q4-6h prn (up to 4 g/d)	Fever, mild pain	Lower doses for hepatic and renal disease, chronic alcoholism, known hypersensitivity	Hepatotoxicity (in overdose)	Prostaglandin-synthesis inhibition, no anti-inflammatory effects
ibuprofen	Advil® Motrin®	200-800 mg PO q4-6h prn (up to 1200 mg/d)	Mild to moderate pain, inflammatory disorders, fever	Active GI bleed/ulcer disease, known hypersensitivity, severe renal or hepatic disease Geriatrics: more susceptible to adverse effects	Dyspepsia, nausea, diarrhea, dizziness, rash, GI toxicity (ulcer, perforation, bleed)	Prostaglandin-synthesis inhibition, anti-inflammatory effects
celecoxib	Celebrex®	200 mg PO daily or 100 mg PO bid	Osteoarthritis, rheumatoid arthritis, FAP	Cardiovascular or cerebrovascular disease, CABG (perioperative), sulfonamide or ASA/NSAID allergy, active GI bleed/ulcer, IBD, severe renal or hepatic disease, hyperkalemia	GI symptoms (pain, diarrhea, dyspepsia, flatus), GI bleed, serious cardiovascular events	COX-2 inhibitor, analgesic, anti-inflammatory and anti-pyretic effects
ANALGESICS (opioid) – see Anesthesia and Perioperative Medicine, A28 						
ANTI-HYPERTENSIVES						
thiazide diuretic e.g. hydrochlorothiazide	Hydrodiuril®	12.5-25 mg PO daily	HTN, edema	Anuria, hepatic coma, pre-coma, known sensitivity to thiazides	Hypotension, transient hyperlipidemia, hypokalemia and other electrolyte disturbances, hyperuricemia, GI symptoms	Inhibition of Na ⁺ /Cl ⁻ co-transporter
ACEI e.g. ramipril	Altace®	2.5-20 mg PO daily	Essential HTN, post-MI, cardiovascular disease, renal protection	Known hypersensitivity, angioedema	Hypotension, cough, headache, dizziness, asthenia, chest pain, nausea, peripheral edema, arthritis, dyspnea, angioedema, hyperkalemia	Inhibition of angiotensin-converting enzyme
ARB e.g. losartan	Cozaar®	50-100 mg PO daily	Essential HTN (± diabetes mellitus)	Known hypersensitivity	Dizziness, hypotension, fatigue, headache, hyperkalemia	Antagonizes angiotensin II via blockade of the angiotensin type 1 receptor
DHP CCB e.g. amlodipine	Norvasc®	2.5-10 mg PO daily (initially)	Essential HTN, chronic stable angina	Known hypersensitivity, severe hypotension, caution in aortic stenosis	Edema, muscle cramps, dizziness, headache, constipation, heartburn	Calcium ion influx inhibition
COGNITIVE ENHANCERS						
donepezil	Aricept®	5-10 mg PO daily	Moderate to severe dementia of Alzheimer's type	Known hypersensitivity, caution in pulmonary disease, sick sinus syndrome, seizure disorder	N/V, diarrhea, anorexia, falls, hip fracture, increase need for pacemaker insertion	Reversible inhibition of acetylcholinesterase
galantamine	Razadyne®	8-12 mg PO bid	Mild to moderate dementia of Alzheimer's type	Known hypersensitivity, caution in sick sinus syndrome, seizure disorder, pulmonary disease, low body weight	N/V, diarrhea, anorexia, falls, hip fracture, increase need for pacemaker insertion	Reversible inhibition of acetylcholinesterase
rivastigmine	Exelon®	1.5 mg PO daily (starting) up to 6 mg PO bid	Mild to moderate dementia of Alzheimer's type	Known hypersensitivity, severe hepatic disease, caution in sick sinus syndrome, pulmonary disease, seizure disorder	N/V, diarrhea, anorexia, falls, hip fracture, increase need for pacemaker insertion	Acetylcholinesterase inhibition (reversible but very slow)
memantine	Ebixa®/ Namenda® (Can)/(U.S.)	5 mg PO daily (starting) up to 10 mg PO bid	Mild to moderate dementia of Alzheimer's type	Known hypersensitivity, conditions that alkalize urine, caution in cardiovascular conditions	Agitation, fatigue, dizziness, headache, HTN, constipation	NMDA-receptor antagonist

Table 12. Common Medications (continued)

Drug Name	Brand Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Contraindications	Side Effects	Mechanism of Action
LAXATIVES						
bran	All-Bran®	1 cup/d	Constipation		Bloating, flatus	Bulk-forming laxative
psyllium	Metamucil® Prodiem Plain®	1 tsp PO tid	Constipation, hypercholesterolemia	N/V, abdominal pain, obstruction	Bloating, flatus	Bulk-forming laxative
lactulose	Chronulac® Cephulac® Kristalose®	15-30 cc PO daily/bid	Constipation, hepatic encephalopathy, bowel evacuation following barium exam	Patients on low galactose diets Abdominal pain, N/V	Flatus, cramps, nausea, diarrhea	Hyperosmolar agent, lowers pH of colon to decrease blood ammonia levels
senna	Senokot®/ Ex-lax® Glyssennid®	1-2 tabs PO daily or 10-15 cc syrup PO daily	Constipation	Abdominal pain, N/V	Cramps, griping, dependence	Stimulant laxative
bisacodyl	Dulcolax®	5-15 mg PO (10 mg PR)	Constipation	Ileus, obstruction, abdominal pain, N/V, severe dehydration	Cramps, pain, diarrhea	Stimulant laxative
PARKINSONIAN AGENTS – see Neurology, N54 						
SLEEPING MEDICATIONS						
eszopiclone	Lunesta®	3.75 mg PO qhs (initially)	Insomnia	Known hypersensitivity, caution in myasthenia gravis, severe hepatic disease Geriatrics: dose reduction (dose-related adverse events)	Bitter taste, palpitations, vomiting, anorexia, sialorrhea, confusion, agitation, anxiety, tremor, sweating	Short-acting hypnotic (no tolerance effects)
temazepam	Restoril®	15 mg PO qhs	Short-term management of insomnia	Known hypersensitivity, myasthenia gravis, sleep apnea Geriatrics: dose reduction recommended	Drowsiness, dizziness, impaired coordination, hangover, lethargy, dependence	Benzodiazepine: generalized CNS depression mediated by GABA
lorazepam	Ativan®	0.5 mg PO qhs (initially)	Anxiety, insomnia	Known hypersensitivity, myasthenia gravis, narrow- angle glaucoma Geriatrics: dose reduction recommended	Dizziness, drowsiness, lethargy, dependence	Benzodiazepine: generalized CNS depression mediated by GABA

Note: Docusate has been shown to be ineffective for the prevention/treatment of constipation in the elderly

Landmark Geriatric Trials

Trial	Reference	Results
Delirium is a strong risk factor for dementia in the oldest-old: a population-based cohort study	<i>Brain</i> 2012; 135(9): 2809-16	First population study to show that delirium is a strong risk factor for dementia and cognitive decline in elderly patients
Donepezil and Memantine for Moderate-to-Severe Alzheimer's Disease	<i>NEJM</i> 2012; 366:893-903	Continued treatment with donepezil was associated with cognitive benefits over the course of 12 mo in patients with moderate or severe Alzheimer's disease
Early palliative care for metastatic lung cancer	<i>NEJM</i> 2010; 363:733-742	Among patients with metastatic non-small-cell lung cancer, early palliative care led to significant improvements in both quality of life and mood. As compared with patients receiving standard care, patients receiving early palliative care had less aggressive care at the end-of-life but longer survival
Hip protectors for fracture prevention	<i>NEJM</i> 2000; 343:1506-1513	The risk of hip fracture can be reduced in frail elderly adults by the use of an anatomically designed external hip protector
HYVET	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 358:1887-1898	Antihypertensive treatment with indapamide (sustained release), with or without perindopril, in adults 80 yr or older is beneficial
PROFET	<i>Lancet</i> 1999; 353:93-97	Demonstrates that an interdisciplinary approach to elderly adults with a previous history of falls can significantly decrease the risk of further falls and limit functional impairment
Yale Delirium Prevention Trial	<i>NEJM</i> 1999; 340:669-676	A risk-factor intervention strategy can result in significant reductions in the number and duration of episodes of delirium in hospitalized older patients

References

Health Status

Heron M. Deaths: leading causes for 2004. *Health E-Stats*; 2007.
Minino AM. Death in the United States. *NCHS Data Brief* 2009;No64:2011.

Physiology and Pathology of Aging

Braunwald E, Fauci AS, Hauser SL, et al. *Harrison's principles of internal medicine*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Constipation

Higgins PDR, Johanson JF. Epidemiology of constipation in North America: a systematic review. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004;99:750-759.
Reuben DB, Herr KA, Pacala JT, et al. *Geriatrics at your fingertips*, 13th ed. New York: The American Geriatrics Society, 2011.
Rao SSC, Go JT. Update on the management of constipation in the elderly: new treatment options. *Clin Interv Aging* 2010;5:163-171.

Delirium, Dementia, and Depression

British Geriatrics Society and Royal College of Physicians. Guidelines for prevention, diagnosis and management of delirium in older people. Concise guidance to good practice series. 2006;No.6.
Young J, Murthy L, Westby M, et al. Diagnosis, prevention, and management of delirium: summary of NICE guidance. *BMJ* 2010;341:c3704.

Elder Abuse

Public Health Agency of Canada. *Elder Abuse in Canada: A Gender-Based Analysis*, 2009.
Health Canada. *The Canadian guide to clinical preventative health care*. Ottawa: Canadian Task Force on Preventative Health Care, 2002.
Kergoat MJ. Preventative health care in the elderly. *Can J CME* 2000.
Lachs M, Pillemer K. Elder abuse. *Lancet* 2004;364:1192-1263.
NICE. Elder Abuse Suspicion Index, 2006. Available from: <http://www.nicenet.ca/tools-easi-elder-abuse-suspicion-index>.

Falls

Davuluri S, Dharmarajan TS. Falls: A complex, multifactorial syndrome with addressable risk factors. *Clinical Geriatrics* 2013;21(10).
Ganz DA, Bao Y, Shekelle PE, et al. Will my patient fall? *JAMA* 2007;297:77-86.
Gillespie LD, Gillespie WJ, Robertson MC, et al. Interventions for preventing falls in elderly people. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2003;CD000340.
Moncada L. Management of falls in older persons: a prescription for prevention. *Am Fam Physician* 2011;84:1267-1276.
Rao S. Prevention of falls in older patients. *Am Fam Physician* 2011;72:81-88.
Kiel DP, Rose BD, Wellesly MA. Overview of falls in the elderly. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.
Reuben DB, Herr KA, Pacala JT, et al. *Geriatrics at your fingertips*, 13th ed. New York: Am Geri Soc, 2011.
Tinetti ME, Baker DI, McAvay G, et al. A multifactorial intervention to reduce the risk of falling among elderly people living in the community. *NEJM* 1994;331:821-827.

Frailty

Robertson RG, Montagnini M. Geriatric failure to thrive. *Am Fam Phys* 2004;70:343-348.
Rockwood K, Song X, MacKnight C, et al. A global clinical measure of fitness and frailty in elderly people. *CMAJ* 2005;173:489-495.
Sarkisian CA, Laches MS. "Failure to thrive" in older adults. *Ann Intern Med* 1996;124:1072-1078.
Verdery RB. Clinical evaluation of failure to thrive in older people. *Clin Geriatr Med* 1997;13:769-778.

Hazards of Hospitalization

Creditor MC. Hazards of Hospitalization of the Elderly. *Ann Intern Med* 1993;118:219-223.
Inouye SK, Bogardus ST Jr, Charpentier PA, et al. A multi-component intervention to prevent delirium in hospitalized older patients. *NEJM* 1999;340:669-676.
Sager MA, Franke T, Inouye SK, et al. Functional outcomes of acute medical illness and hospitalization in older persons. *Arch Internal Med* 1996;156:645-652.
Wilson RS, Herbert LE, Scherr PA, et al. Cognitive decline after hospitalization in a community population of older persons. *Neurology* 2012;78:950-956.

Hypertension

Allen M, Kelly K, Fleming I. Hypertension in elderly patients: recommended systolic targets are not evidence based. *Can Fam Physician* 2013;59:19-21, 22-24.
Beckett NS, Peters R, Fletcher AE, et al. Treatment of hypertension in patients 80 years of age or older. *NEJM* 2008;358:1887-1898.
Reuben DB, Herr KA, Pacala JT, et al. *Geriatrics at your fingertips*, 13th ed. New York: The American Geriatrics Society, 2011.

Immunizations

Rivetti D, Jefferson T, Thomas R, et al. Vaccines for preventing influenza in the elderly. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2006;CD004876.

Malnutrition

Halsted CH. *Harrison's principles of internal medicine*, 16th ed. Kasper, DL. 2004. Chapter: Malnutrition and nutritional assessment. 411-415.

Pressure Ulcers

Berlowitz D. Pressure ulcers: staging; epidemiology; pathogenesis; clinical manifestations. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.

Driving Competency

AMA. Physicians guide to assessing and counseling older drivers. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, 2006.
CMA. Determining medical fitness to drive: a guide for physicians. Ottawa, 2006.
Grabowski DC, Campbell CM, Morrissey MA. Elderly licensure laws and motor vehicle fatalities. *JAMA* 2004;291:2840-2846.
Man-Son-Hing M, Marshall SC, Molnar FJ, et al. Systematic review of driving risk and the efficacy of compensatory strategies in persons with dementia. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2007;55:878-884.
Wiseman EJ, Souder E. The older driver: a handy tool to assess competence behind the wheel. *Geriatrics* 1996;51:36-38, 41-42, 45.

Health Care Institutions

Government of Ontario. Reports on long-term care homes. Queen's Printer for Ontario, 2007.

Palliative and End-of-Life Care

- AGS Panel on Persistent Pain in Older Persons. The management of persistent pain in older persons. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2002;50(Suppl6):S205-S224.
- Bruera E, Kuehn N, Miller MJ, et al. The Edmonton Symptom Assessment System (ESAS): A simple method for the assessment of palliative care patients. *J Pall Care* 1991;7:6-9.
- Knowles S. Symptom management in palliative care. *On Continuing Practice* 1993;20:20-5.
- Medical care of the dying, 4th ed. Victoria: Victoria Hospice Society, 2006. Chapter: Palliative performance scale, version 2. p120-121.
- The World Health Association. Cancer – The WHO's pain ladder. 2001. Available from: <http://www.who.int/cancer/palliative/painladder/en/>.
- Clary P, Lawson P. Pharmacological Pearls for End-of-Life Care. *Am Fam Physician* 2009;79:1059-1065.

Geriatric Pharmacology

- American Geriatrics Society 2012 Beers Criteria Update Expert Panel. American Geriatrics Society updated beers criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults. *JAGS* 2012. Available from: <http://www.americanogeriatrics.org>.
- Carlson JE. Perils of polypharmacy: 10 steps to prudent prescribing. *Geriatrics* 1996;51:26-35.
- Fick DM, Cooper JW, Wade WE, et al. Updating the Beers Criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults. *Arch Intern Med* 2003;163:2716-2724.
- Fordyce M. Geriatric pearls. Philadelphia: FA Davis, 1999.
- Lewis T. Using the NO TEARS tool for medication review. *BMJ* 2004;329:434.
- Takane AK, Balignasay MD, Nigg CR. Polypharmacy reviews among elderly populations project: assessing needs in patient-provider communication. *Hawaii J Med Public Health* 2013;72:15-22.

Kinsey Lam, Elizabeth Miazga, and Lisa Zhang, chapter editors

Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Alexa Bramall, EBM editor

Dr. Sari L. Kives, Dr. Rajiv Shah, and Dr. Fay Weisberg, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Sexual Abuse	30
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Sexual Dysfunction	30
Menstruation	3	Menopause	31
Stages of Puberty		Hormone Replacement Therapy	
Menstrual Cycle		Urogynecology	33
Premenstrual Syndrome		Pelvic Relaxation/Prolapse	
Premenstrual Dysphoric Disorder		Urinary Incontinence	
Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations	6	Gynecological Oncology	35
Abnormal Uterine Bleeding		Uterus	
Dysmenorrhea		Ovary	
Vaginal Discharge/Pruritus		Cervix	
Pelvic Pain		Vulva	
Pelvic Mass		Gestational Trophoblastic Disease/Neoplasia	
Dyspareunia		Common Medications	47
Common Investigations and Procedures	8	References	49
Imaging			
Endometrial Biopsy			
Hysterectomy			
Disorders of Menstruation	9		
Amenorrhea			
Abnormal Uterine Bleeding			
Dysmenorrhea			
Endometriosis	13		
Adenomyosis	15		
Leiomyomata (Fibroids)	15		
Contraception	16		
Hormonal Methods			
Intrauterine Device			
Emergency Postcoital Contraception			
Infertility	20		
Female Factors			
Male Factors			
Polycystic Ovarian Syndrome	22		
Gynecological Infections	23		
Physiologic Discharge			
Vulvovaginitis			
Sexually Transmitted Diseases			
Bartholinitis/Bartholin Gland Abscess			
Pelvic Inflammatory Disease			
Toxic Shock Syndrome			

Acronyms

β-hCG	beta-human chorionic gonadotropin
AFP	alpha-fetoprotein
AIS	androgen insensitivity syndrome
ASCUS	atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance
AUB	abnormal uterine bleeding
BMI	body mass index
BSO	bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy
BV	bacterial vaginosis
CAH	congenital adrenal hyperplasia
CMV	cytomegalovirus
D&C	dilatation and curettage
DES	diethylstilbestrol
DHEA	dihydroepiandrosterone
DMPA	depo-medroxyprogesterone acetate or Depo-Provera®
DUB	dysfunctional uterine bleeding
DVT	deep venous thrombosis
EPC	emergency postcoital contraception
FSH	follicle stimulating hormone
GA	gestational age
GIFT	gamete intrafallopian transfer
GnRH	gonadotropin-releasing hormone
GTD	gestational trophoblastic disease
GTN	gestational trophoblastic neoplasia
HERS	heart and estrogen/progestin replacement study
HMG	human menopausal gonadotropin
HPO	hypothalamic-pituitary-ovarian
HPV	human papillomavirus
HRT	hormone replacement therapy
HSG	hysterosalpingography
HSIL	high grade squamous intraepithelial lesion
HSV	herpes simplex virus
IBD	inflammatory bowel disease
ICSI	intracytoplasmic sperm injection
ITP	immune thrombocytopenic purpura
IUD	intrauterine device
IUI	intrauterine insemination
IVDU	intravenous drug use
IVF	<i>in vitro</i> fertilization
IVM	<i>in vitro</i> maturation
JRA	juvenile rheumatoid arthritis
LDH	lactate dehydrogenase
LEEP	loop electrosurgical excision procedure
LH	luteinizing hormone
LHRH	luteinizing hormone releasing hormone
LMP	last menstrual period
LN	lymph node
LNMP	last normal menstrual period
LSIL	low grade squamous intraepithelial lesion
LVS	lymphovascular space involvement
MRKH	Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser
NK	natural killer
OCP	oral contraceptive pill
OGTT	oral glucose tolerance test
PCOS	polycystic ovarian syndrome
PCR	polymerase chain reaction
PG	prostaglandin
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease
PMDD	premenstrual dysphoric disorder
PMN	polymorphonuclear neutrophils
PMS	premenstrual syndrome
RPR	rapid plasma reagin
SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
SERMs	selective estrogen receptor modifiers
SES	socioeconomic class
SHBG	sex hormone binding globulin
SHG	sonohysterography
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors
STD	sexually transmitted disease
TAH	total abdominal hysterectomy
TET	tubal embryo transfer
TH	total hysterectomy
TOT	tension-free obturator tape
TSH	thyroid stimulating hormone
TVT	tension-free vaginal tape
TZ	transformation zone
VDRL	venereal disease research laboratory
VIN	vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia
VTE	venous thromboembolism
vWD	von Willebrand's disease
W/D	withdrawal
WHI	Women's Health Initiative
ZIFT	zygote intrafallopian transfer

Basic Anatomy Review

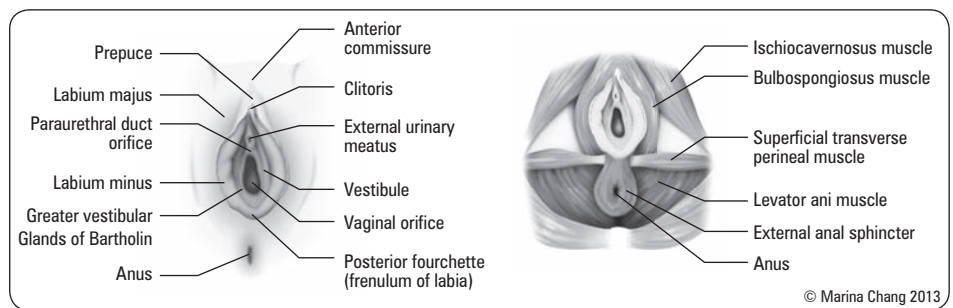


Figure 1. Vulva and perineum

A. EXTERNAL GENITALIA (Figure 1)

- referred to collectively as the vulva
- blood supply: internal pudendal artery
- sensory innervation: pudendal nerve
- lymphatic drainage: inguinal nodes

B. VAGINA

- muscular canal extending from cervix to vulva, anterior to rectum and posterior to bladder
- lined by rugated, stratified-squamous epithelium
- upper vagina separated by cervix into anterior, posterior, and lateral fornices
- blood supply: vaginal branch of internal pudendal artery with anastomoses from uterine, inferior vesical, and middle rectal arteries

C. UTERUS

- thick walled, muscular organ between bladder and rectum, consisting of two major parts:
 - uterine corpus
 - ♦ blood supply: uterine artery (branch of the internal iliac artery)
 - cervix
 - ♦ blood supply: cervical branch of uterine artery
- supported by the pelvic diaphragm, the pelvic organs, and 4 paired sets of ligaments
 - round ligaments: travel from anterior surface of uterus, through broad ligaments, and inguinal canals then terminate in the labia majora
 - ♦ function: anteversion
 - ♦ blood supply: Sampson's artery (branch of uterine artery running through round ligament)
 - uterosacral ligaments: arise from sacral fascia and insert into posterior inferior uterus
 - ♦ function: mechanical support for uterus and contain autonomic nerve fibers
 - cardinal ligaments: extend from lateral pelvic walls and insert into lateral cervix and vagina
 - ♦ function: mechanical support, prevent prolapse
 - broad ligaments: pass from lateral pelvic wall to sides of uterus; contain fallopian tube, round ligament, ovarian ligament, nerves, vessels, and lymphatics
- infundibulopelvic ligament: continuous tissue that connects ovary to pelvic wall
 - contains the ovarian artery, ovarian vein, ovarian plexus, and lymphatic vessels
- position of the uterus
 - anteverted (majority)
 - retroverted

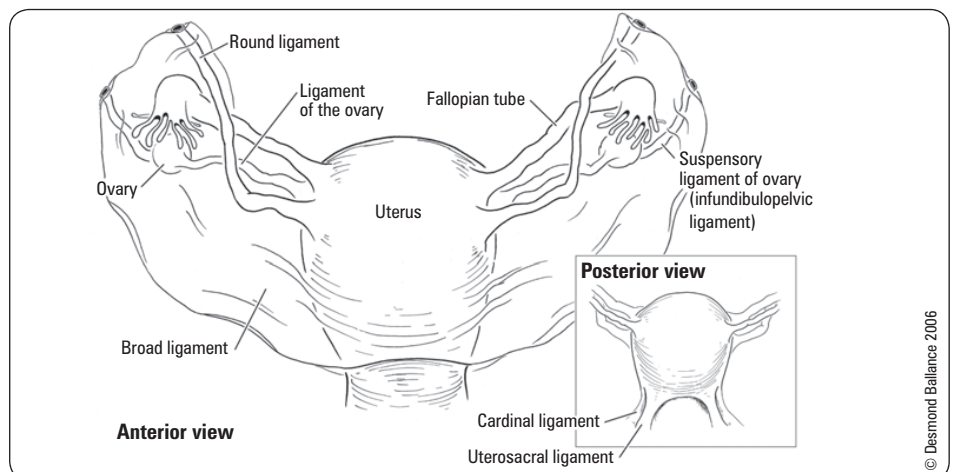


Figure 2. External genital organs

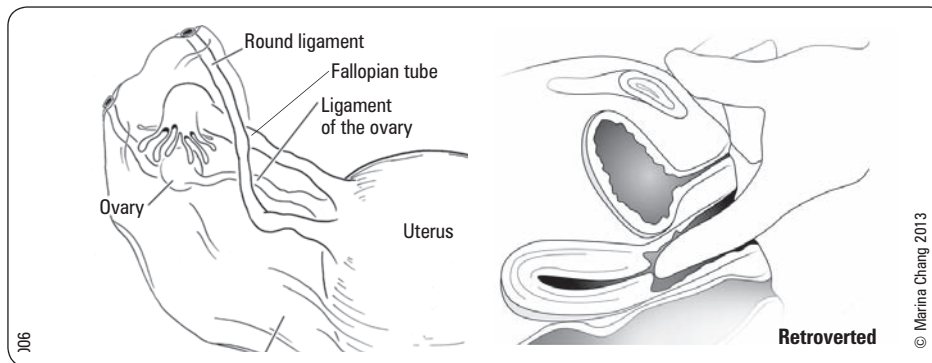


Figure 3. Positioning of uterus

D. FALLOPIAN TUBES

- 8-14 cm muscular tubes extending laterally from the uterus to ovary
- interstitial, isthmic, ampullary, and infundibular segments; terminates at fimbriae
- mesosalpinx: peritoneal fold that attaches fallopian tube to broad ligament
- blood supply: uterine and ovarian arteries

E. OVARIES

- consist of cortex with ova and medulla with blood supply
- supported by infundibulopelvic ligament (suspensory ligament of ovary)
- mesovarium: peritoneal fold that attaches ovary to broad ligament
- blood supply: ovarian arteries (branches off aorta), left ovarian vein (drains into left renal vein), right ovarian vein (drains into inferior vena cava)

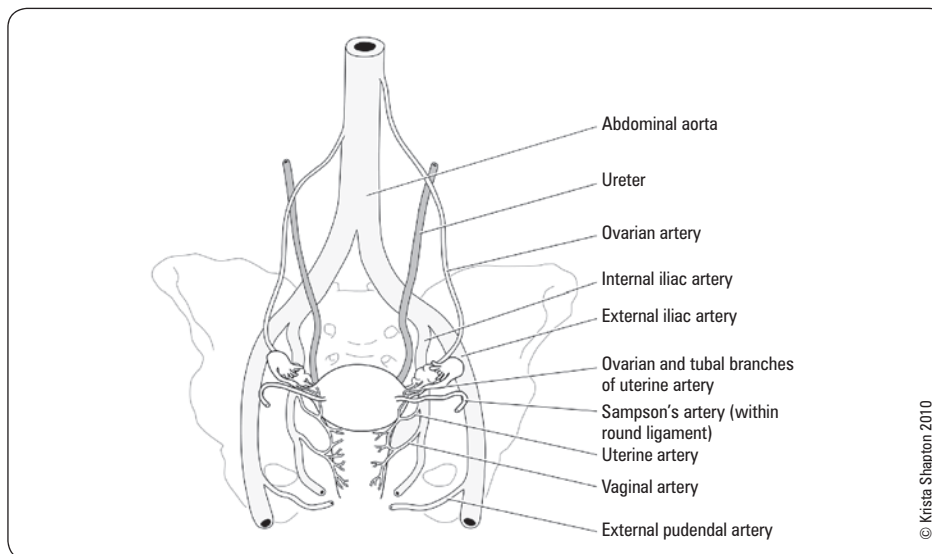


Figure 4. Vascular supply

Anteversion: forward-tilted uterus

Anteflexion: bending of uterus so the fundus is thrust forward

Retroversion: backward-tilted uterus

Retroflexion: bending of uterus so the fundus is thrust backward



Determination of uterine position by clinical exam:

- If cervix faces anteriorly (under the urethra and less easily accessible), i.e. toward vaginal orifice, more likely **RETROVERTED UTERUS**
- If cervix faces posteriorly (easily accessible), i.e. toward sacrum or rectum, more likely **ANTEVERTED UTERUS**
- If uterus palpable on bimanual exam, more likely **ANTEVERTED UTERUS**



"Water under the bridge"

The ureters run posterior to the uterine arteries



Stages of Puberty

"Boobs, Pubes, Grow, Flow"

Thelarche, Pubarche, Growth spurt, Menarche



Tanner Stage

Thelarche

- I. None
- II. Breast bud
- III. Further enlargement of areola and breasts with no separation of contours
- IV. 2° mound of areola and papilla
- V. Areola recessed to general contour of breast – adult

Pubarche

- I. None
- II. Downy hair along labia only
- III. Darker/coarse hair extends over pubis
- IV. Adult type covers smaller area, no thigh involvement
- V. Adult hair in quantity and type; extends over thighs

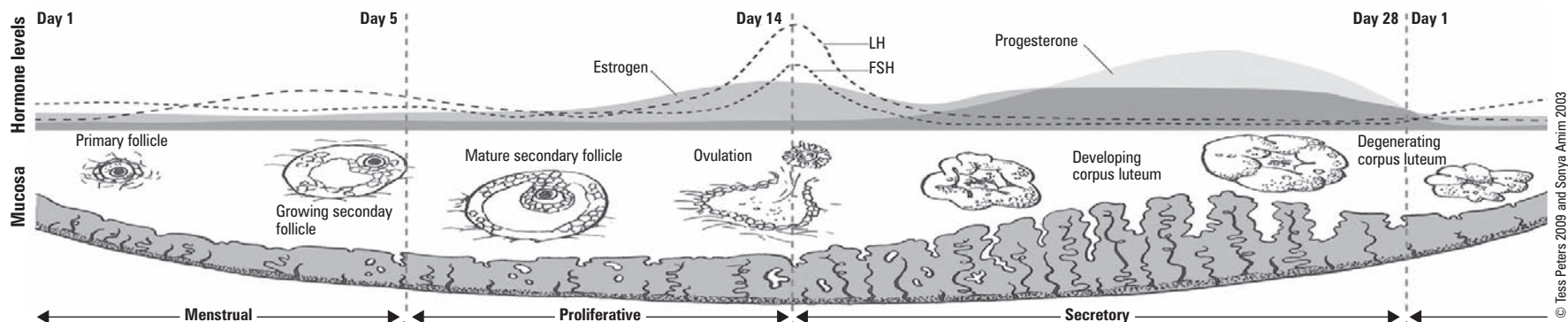
Menstruation

Stages of Puberty

- see [Pediatrics, P31](#)
- adrenarche: increase in secretion of adrenal androgens; usually precedes gonadarche by 2 yr
- gonadarche: increased secretion of gonadal sex steroids; ~age 8
- thelarche: breast development
- pubarche: pubic and axillary hair development
- menarche: onset of menses, usually following peak height velocity and/or 2 yr following breast budding



Menstrual Cycle



© Tess Peters 2009 and Sonya Anim 2003

	FOLLICULAR/PROLIFERATIVE PHASE (Variable Duration)			LUTEAL/SECRETORY PHASE (Fixed Duration - 14 days)		
	Early	Mid	Late	OVULATION	Early-Mid	Late
Initiating Events	↓ E and ↓ P (from end of previous cycle)	↑ FSH acts on ovarian granulosa cells	Growing follicles continue to secrete E	Sudden switch from negative to positive feedback (E and P now ↑ FSH & LH)	Switch back to negative feedback	No fertilized oocyte
HPO Axis	↑ GnRH pulse frequency ↑ FSH ↑ LH pulse frequency	↑ E from follicles (ovary)		↑↑ LH pulse amplitude (LH surge)	↓ LH	
Hormones			↑ E from follicles, especially from dominant follicle	E peaks → LH surge → ovulation	↑ P from corpus luteum	↓ P secondary to degeneration of corpus luteum
Feedback on HPO Axis		Negative feedback E → ↓ FSH, ↓ LH		Positive feedback: E and P → ↑ FSH, ↑ LH	Negative feedback P → ↓ FSH, ↓ LH	
Ovaries	↑ FSH → follicular growth in 3-30 follicles	↑ follicular growth (by reducing atresia) → ↑ E	Dominant follicle persists, remainder undergo atresia Granulosa cells luteinize → produce P	~36 h after LH surge, dominant follicle releases oocyte; corpus luteum (remnant of dominant follicle) produces P		Cessation of P from corpus luteum
Endometrium	Menses from P withdrawal (from end of previous cycle)		E builds up endometrium		P stabilizes endometrium	Withdrawal of P → menses
Cervical Mucus		Cervical mucus: Clear, ↑ amount, Spinnbarkeit 8-10 cm, more stringy				Opaque, scant amount, Spinnbarkeit 1-2 cm

E = estrogen; FSH = follicle-stimulating hormone; GnRH = gonadotropin-releasing hormone; HPO = hypothalamic-pituitary-ovarian; LH = luteinizing hormone; P = progesterone

Figure 5. Events of the normal menstrual cycle

Characteristics

- Menarche 10-15 yr
- Average 12.2 yr
- Entire cycle 28 ± 7 d with bleeding for 1-6 d
- 25-80 mL blood loss per cycle

Estrogen

ESTROGEN is the main hormone in the follicular/proliferative phase and is stimulated by FSH. As the level increases it acts negatively on FSH. The majority of estrogen is secreted by the dominant follicle.

Estrogen effects:

- On the follicles in the ovaries:
 - Reduces atresia
- On the endometrium:
 - Proliferation of glandular and stromal tissue
- On all target tissues:
 - Decreases E receptors

Progesterone

PROGESTERONE is the main hormone in the luteal/secretory phase and is stimulated by LH. Increased progesterone acts negatively on LH and is secreted by the corpus luteum (remnant of dominant follicle).

Progesterone effects:

- On the endometrium:
 - Cessation of mitoses (stops building endometrium up)
 - "Organization" of glands (initiates secretions from glands)
 - Inhibits macrophages, interleukin-8, and enzymes from degrading endometrium
- On all target tissues:
 - Decrease E receptors (the "anti-estrogen" effect)
 - Decrease P receptors

Premenstrual Syndrome

- synonyms: “ovarian cycle syndrome,” “menstrual molimina” (moodiness)

Etiology

- multifactorial: not completely understood; genetics likely play a role
- CNS-mediated neurotransmitter interactions with sex steroids (progesterone, estrogen, and testosterone)
- serotonergic dysregulation – currently most plausible theory

Diagnostic Criteria for Premenstrual Syndrome

- at least one affective and one somatic symptom during the 5 d before menses in each of the three prior menstrual cycles
 - affective: depression, angry outbursts, irritability, anxiety, confusion, social withdrawal
 - somatic: breast tenderness, abdominal bloating, headache, swelling of extremities
- symptoms relieved within 4 d of onset of menses
- symptoms present in the absence of any pharmacologic therapy, drug or alcohol use
- symptoms occur reproducibly during 2 cycles of prospective recording
- patient suffers from identifiable dysfunction in social or economic performance

Treatment

- goal: symptom relief
- psychological support
- diet/supplements
 - avoid sodium, simple sugars, caffeine, and alcohol
 - calcium (1,200-1,600 mg/d), magnesium (400-800 mg/d), vitamin E (400 IU/d), vitamin B₆
- medications
 - NSAIDs for discomfort, pain
 - spironolactone for fluid retention: used during luteal phase
 - SSRIs: used during luteal phase x 14 d or continuously
 - OCP: primarily beneficial for physical/somatic symptoms
 - danazol: an androgen that inhibits the pituitary-ovarian axis
 - GnRH agonists if PMS is severe and unresponsive to treatment (may use prior to considering definitive treatment with BSO)
- mind/body approaches
 - regular aerobic exercise
 - cognitive behavioral therapy
 - relaxation, light therapy biofeedback, and guided imagery
- herbal remedies (variable evidence)
 - evening primrose oil, black cohosh, St. John's wort, kava, ginkgo, agnus castus fruit extract
- BSO if symptoms severe



Premenstrual Syndrome

Physiological and emotional disturbances that occur 1-2 wk prior to menses and last until a few days after onset of menses; common symptoms include depression, irritability, tearfulness, and mood swings

Premenstrual Dysphoric Disorder

Definition

- official diagnosis in the DSM-5
- described as a more severe form of PMS with specific diagnostic criteria
- treatment with SSRIs (first line), and Yaz® OCP (highly effective)

Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations

Abnormal Uterine Bleeding

- see *Disorders of Menstruation*, GY11
- definition: change in frequency, duration, or amount of menstrual flow
- classified as
 - amenorrhea: absence of menstrual periods
 - hypomenorrhea: bleeding that is decreased in amount
 - oligomenorrhea: bleeding occurring at intervals >35 d
 - polymenorrhea: bleeding occurring at intervals <21 d
 - menorrhagia/hypermenorrhea: bleeding at regular intervals that is prolonged in duration (>7 d) or excessive in amount (>80 cc per menstrual cycle)
 - metrorrhagia: bleeding at irregular intervals, particularly between expected menstrual periods
 - menometrorrhagia: excessive bleeding at usual time of menstrual periods and at other irregular intervals
 - postmenopausal bleeding: any bleeding that presents >1 yr after menopause; must rule out endometrial cancer



Postmenopausal bleeding is endometrial cancer until proven otherwise

Dysmenorrhea

- see *Disorders of Menstruation*, GY9
- primary/idiopathic
- secondary (acquired)
 - endometriosis
 - adenomyosis
 - uterine polyps
 - uterine anomalies (e.g. non-communicating uterine horn)
 - leiomyoma
 - intrauterine synechiae
 - ovarian cysts
 - cervical stenosis
 - imperforate hymen, transverse vaginal septum
 - pelvic inflammatory disease
 - IUD (copper)
 - foreign body



Dysmenorrhea
Painful menstruation

Vaginal Discharge/Pruritus

- see *Gynecological Infections*, GY23
- physiologic discharge and cervical mucus production
- non-physiologic
 - genital tract infection
 - vulvovaginitis: candidiasis, trichomoniasis, BV, polymicrobial superficial infection
 - chlamydia, gonorrhea
 - pyosalpinx, salpingitis
 - genital tract inflammation (non-infectious)
 - local: chemical irritants, douches, sprays, foreign body, trauma, atrophic vaginitis, desquamative inflammatory vaginitis, focal vulvitis
 - neoplasia: vulvar, vaginal, cervical, endometrial
 - systemic: toxic shock syndrome, Crohn's disease, collagen disease, dermatologic (e.g. lichen sclerosis)
 - IUD, OCP (secondary to progesterone)

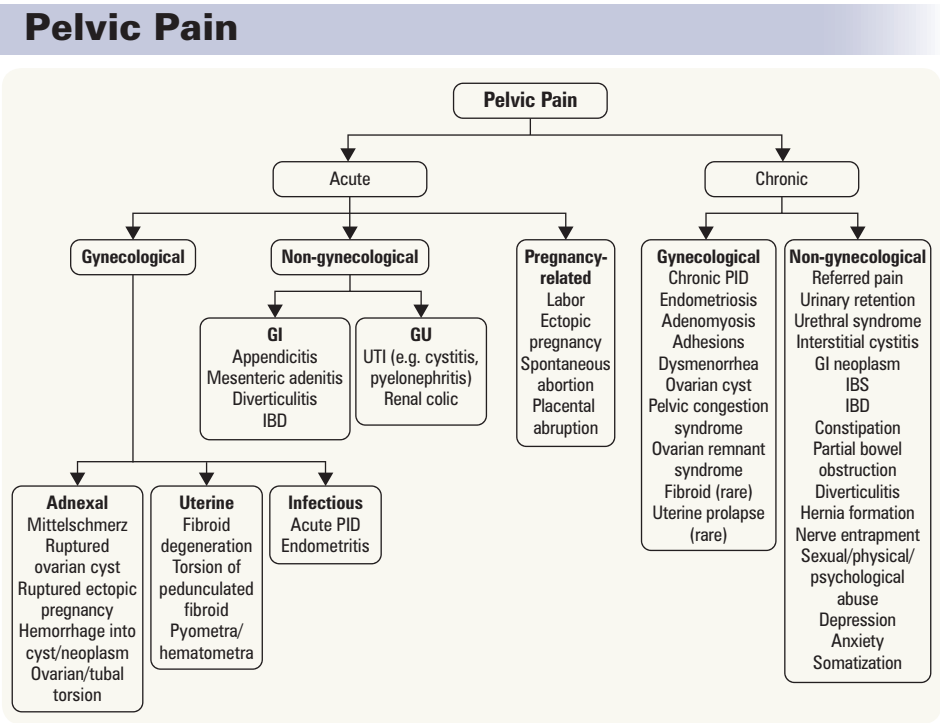


Figure 6. Approach to pelvic pain

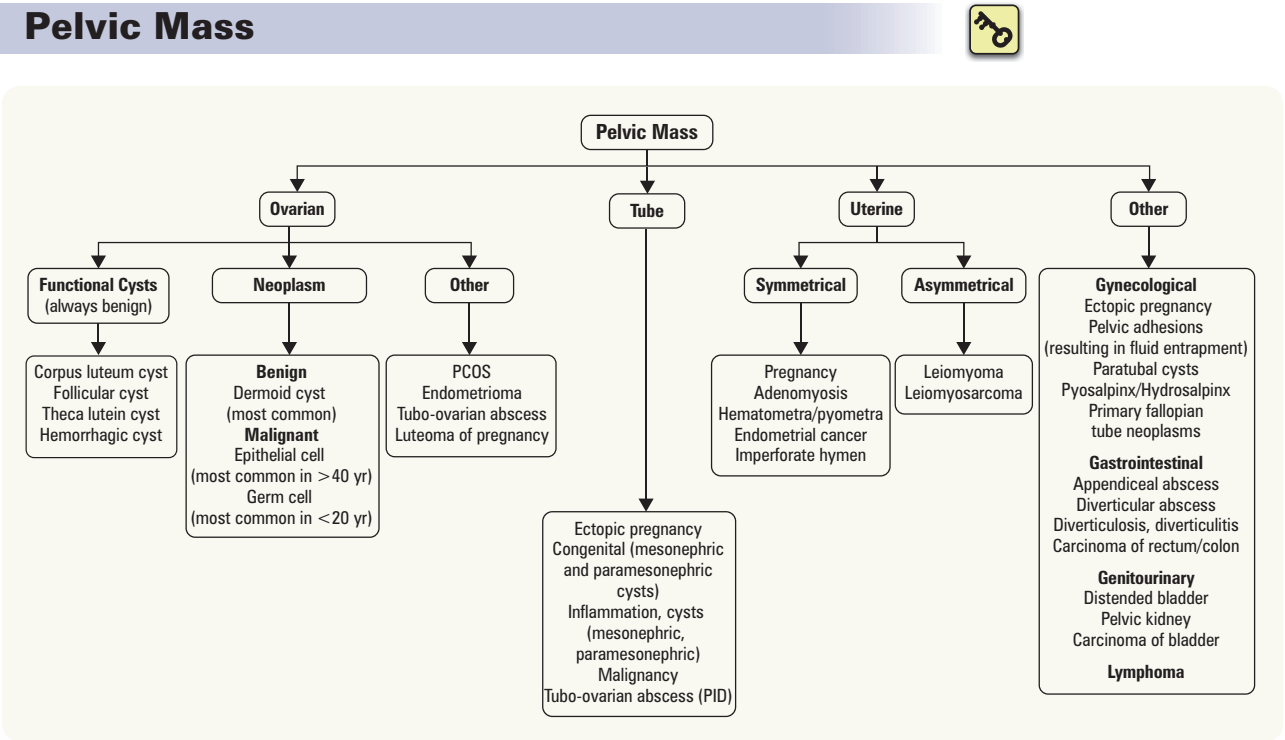


Figure 7. Differential diagnosis of pelvic mass

Dyspareunia

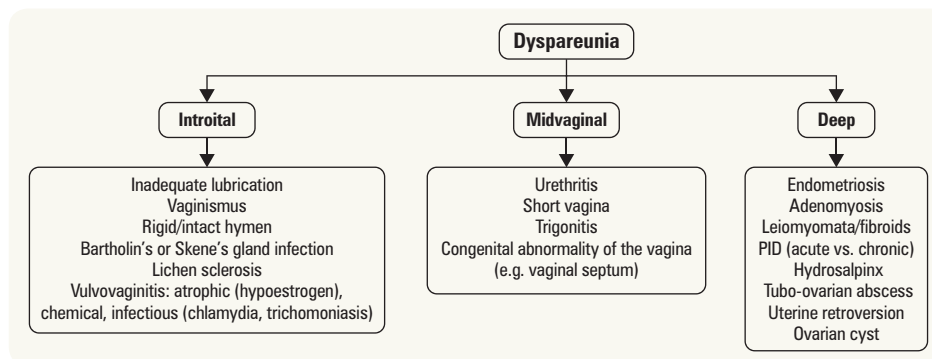


Figure 8. Approach to dyspareunia

Common Investigations and Procedures

Imaging

Ultrasound

- transabdominal or transvaginal U/S is the imaging modality of choice for pelvic structures
- transvaginal U/S provides better resolution of uterus and adnexal structures
 - detects early pregnancy if β -hCG $\geq 1,500$ (β -hCG must be $\geq 6,500$ for transabdominal U/S)
- may be used to identify pelvic pathology
 - identify ectopic pregnancy, intrauterine pregnancy
 - assess uterine, adnexal, cul-de-sac, ovarian masses (e.g. solid or cystic)
 - determine endometrial thickness, locate/characterize fibroids
 - monitor follicles during assisted reproduction
 - assess endometrial lining in postmenopausal women

Dyspareunia
Painful intercourse

Endometrial Biopsy



- performed in the office using an endometrial suction curette (pipelle) guided through the cervix to aspirate fragments of endometrium
 - pre-treatment with misoprostol (Cytotec®) if nulliparous or postmenopausal
- more invasive procedure (D&C) may be done in the office or operating room \pm hysteroscopy
- indications
 - AUB/PMB
 - cancer screening (e.g. following specific cervical cytology results (i.e. AGUS) or in high-risk women)



Every woman of childbearing age presenting to ER with abdominal or pelvic pain should have β -hCG measured

Hysterectomy

Indications

- uterine fibroids
- endometriosis, adenomyosis
- uterine prolapse
- pelvic pain
- AUB
- cancer (endometrium, ovaries, fallopian tubes, cervix)

Complications

- general anesthetic
- bleeding
- infection
- injury to other organs (ureter, bladder, rectum)
- loss of ovarian function (if ovaries removed, iatrogenic menopause)

Approaches

- vaginal vs. abdominal
 - indications for vaginal approach: mobile uterus, uterine size <12 wk
 - advantages of vaginal approach: less pain, faster recovery time, allows for simultaneous repair of rectocele/cystocele/enterocele, improved aesthetics
- open vs. laparoscopic-assisted
 - advantages of laparoscopy: less pain, faster recovery, improved aesthetics, shorter hospital stay
 - unless contraindicated or unavailable laparoscopic hysterectomy is the standard of care
- robotic
 - similar advantages to laparoscopy
 - more dexterous



Approaches to Hysterectomy

- Abdominal hysterectomy: uterus removed via transverse or vertical laparotomy
- Vaginal hysterectomy: uterus removed via vagina; no visualization or entry into abdomen unless laparoscopic-assisted
- Laparoscopic/Robotic: uterus removed via vagina or morcellation

Table 1. Classification of Hysterectomy

Classification	Tissues Removed	Indications
Subtotal Hysterectomy	Uterus	Inaccessible cervix (e.g. adhesions) Patient choice/preference
Total Hysterectomy (extrafascial simple hysterectomy/type 1)	Uterus, cervix, uterine artery ligated at uterus	Uterine fibroids Endometriosis Adenomyosis Menorrhagia DUB
Total Hysterectomy (extrafascial simple hysterectomy/type 1) + Bilateral Salpingo-Oophorectomy (TAH/BSO)	Uterus, cervix, uterine artery ligated at uterus, fallopian tubes, ovaries	Endometrial cancer Malignant adnexal masses >45 yr old Consider for endometriosis
Modified Radical Hysterectomy (type 2)	Uterus, cervix, proximal 1/3 parametria, uterine artery ligated medial to the ureter, mid point of uterosacral ligaments and upper 1-2 cm vagina	Cervical cancer (up to stage IBI)
Radical Hysterectomy (type 3)	Uterus, cervix, upper 1/3-1/2 vagina, entire parametria, uterine artery ligated at its origin from internal iliac artery, uterosacral ligament at most distal attachment (rectum)	Cervical cancer

Disorders of Menstruation



Amenorrhea

Differential Diagnosis of Amenorrhea

Table 2. Differential Diagnosis of Primary Amenorrhea

With Secondary Sexual Development		Without Secondary Sexual Development	
<i>Normal breast and pelvic development</i>	<i>Normal breast, abnormal uterine development</i>	<i>High FSH (hypergonadotropic hypogonadism)</i>	<i>Low FSH (hypogonadotropic hypogonadism)</i>
Hypothyroidism	Androgen insensitivity	Gonadal dysgenesis	Constitutional delay (most common)
Hyperprolactinemia	Anatomic abnormalities	• Abnormal sex chromosome (Turner's XO)	Congenital abnormalities
PCOS	• Müllerian agenesis, uterovaginal septum, imperforate hymen	• Normal sex chromosome (46XX, 46XY)	• Isolated GnRH deficiency
Hypothalamic dysfunction			• Pituitary failure (Kallman syndrome, head injury, pituitary adenoma, etc.)
			Acquired
			• Endocrine disorders (type 1 DM)
			• Pituitary tumors
			• Systemic disorders (IBD, JRA, chronic infections, etc.)



Primary Amenorrhea

No menses by age 13 in absence of 2° sexual characteristics or no menses by age 15 with 2° sexual characteristics or no menses 2 yr after thelarche

Secondary Amenorrhea

No menses for >6 mo or 3 cycles after documented menarche

Oligomenorrhea

Episodic vaginal bleeding occurring at intervals >35 d

Table 3. Differential Diagnosis of Secondary Amenorrhea

With Hyperandrogenism	Without Hyperandrogenism
PCOS Autonomous hyperandrogenism (androgen secretion independent of the HPO axis) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ovarian: tumor, hyperthecosis • Adrenal androgen-secreting tumor Late onset or mild congenital adrenal hyperplasia (rare)	Hypergonadotropic hypogonadism (i.e. premature ovarian failure: high FSH, low estradiol) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Idiopathic • Autoimmune: type 1 DM, autoimmune thyroid disease, Addison's disease • Iatrogenic: cyclophosphamide drugs, radiation Hyperprolactinemia Endocrinopathies: most commonly hyper or hypothyroidism Hypogonadotropic hypogonadism (low FSH): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pituitary compression or destruction: pituitary adenoma, craniopharyngioma, lymphocytic hypophysitis, infiltration (sarcoidosis), head injury, Sheehan's syndrome Functional hypothalamic amenorrhea (often related to stress excessive exercise and/or anorexia)

**Prolactinoma Symptoms**

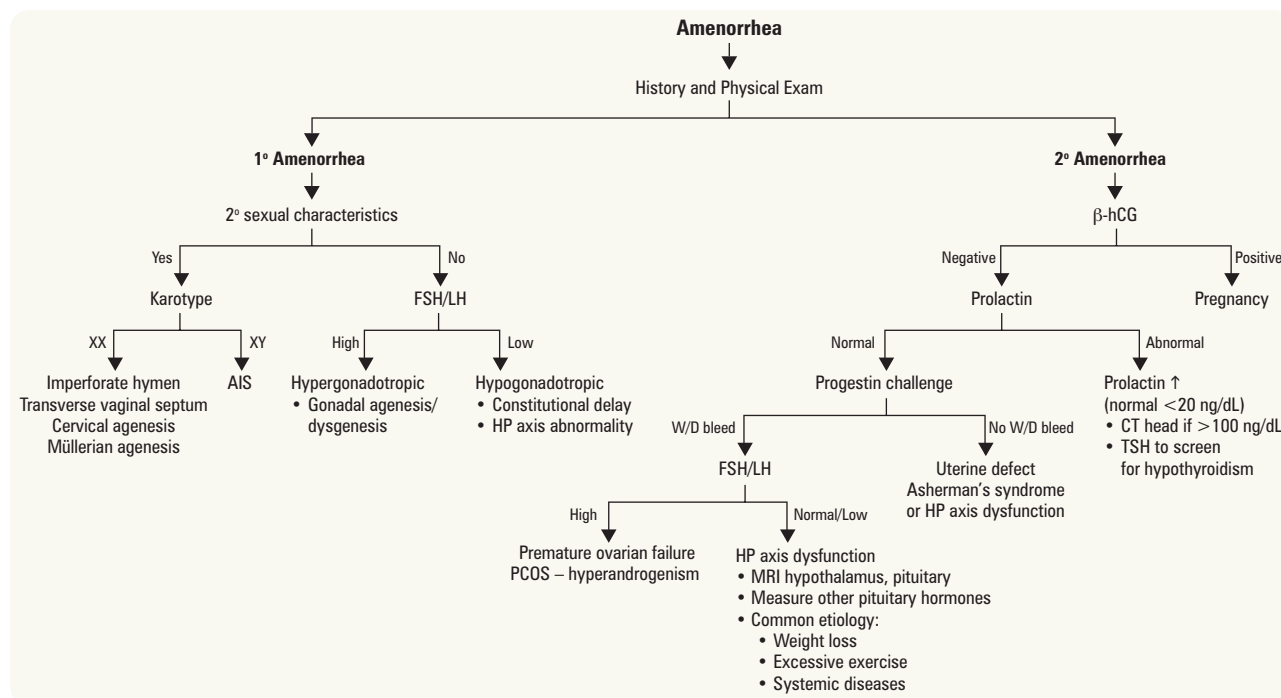
Galactorrhea, visual changes, headache



2° amenorrhea is pregnancy until proven otherwise



Functional hypothalamic amenorrhea is the most common cause of secondary amenorrhea

Investigations**Figure 9. Diagnostic approach to amenorrhea**

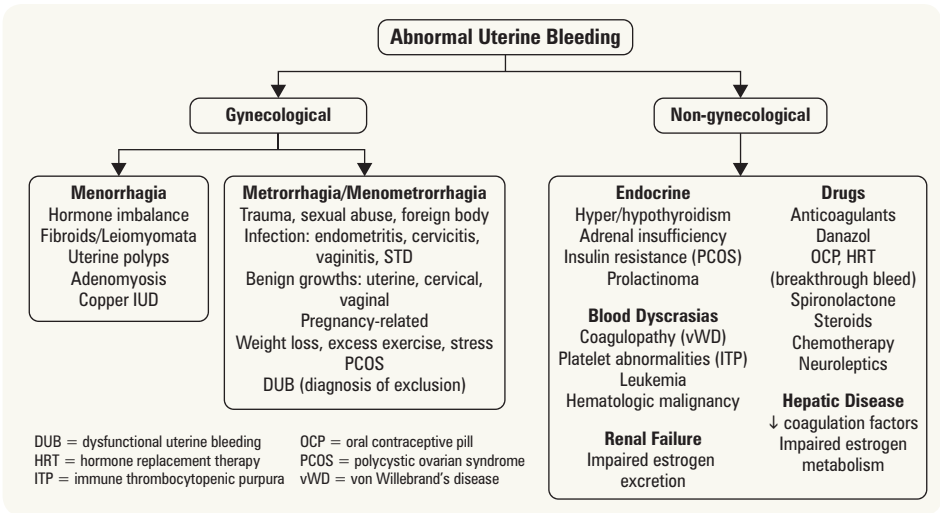
- β -hCG, hormonal workup (TSH, prolactin, FSH, LH, androgens, estradiol)
- progesterone challenge to assess estrogen status
 - medroxyprogesterone acetate (Provera®) 10 mg PO OD for 10-14 d
 - any uterine bleed within 2-7 d after completion of Provera® is considered to be a positive test/withdrawal bleed
 - ♦ withdrawal bleed suggests presence of adequate estrogen to thicken the endometrium; thus withdrawal of progesterone results in bleeding
 - ♦ if no bleeding occurs, there may be inadequate estrogen (hypoestrogenism) or excessive androgens or progesterones (decidualization)
- karyotype: indicated if premature ovarian failure or absent puberty
- U/S to confirm normal anatomy, identify PCOS

Treatment

Table 4. Management of Amenorrhea

Etiology	Management
1° AMENORRHEA	
AIS	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Gonadal resection after puberty• Psychological counseling• Creation of neo-vagina
Anatomical <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Imperforate hymen• Transverse vaginal septum• Cervical agenesis	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Surgical management
Müllerian dysgenesis (MRKH syndrome)	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Psychological counseling• Creation of neo-vagina with dilation• Diagnostic study to confirm normal urinary system and spine
2° AMENORRHEA	
Uterine defect <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Asherman's syndrome	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Evaluation with hysterosalpingography or sonohysterography• Hysteroscopy: excision of synechiae
HP-axis dysfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Identify modifiable underlying cause• Combined OCP to decrease risk of osteoporosis, maintain normal vaginal and breast development (NOT proven to work)
Premature ovarian failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Screen for DM, hypothyroidism, hypoparathyroidism, hypocortisolism• Hormonal therapy with estrogen + progestin to decrease risk of osteoporosis; can use OCP
Hyperprolactinemia	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• MRI/CT head to rule out lesion• If no demonstrable lesions by MRI:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Bromocriptine, cabergoline if fertility desired• Combined OCPs if no fertility desired• Demonstrable lesions by MRI: surgical management
Polycystic ovarian syndrome	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• See <i>Polycystic Ovarian Syndrome</i>, GY22

Abnormal Uterine Bleeding



Abnormal Uterine Bleeding
Change in frequency, duration, or amount of menstrual flow

Determine if patient is hemodynamically stable prior to any other task

AUB in women >40 yr requires an endometrial biopsy to rule out cancer even if known to have fibroids

Figure 10. Approach to abnormal uterine bleeding

Causal Conditions

- pre-menarchal
 - trauma, sexual abuse
- pre-menopausal
 - ovulatory (see Table 5)
 - anovulatory (see Table 5)
 - pregnancy-related
- post-menopausal
 - genital tract disease
 - ♦ atrophy
 - ♦ neoplasms
 - systemic disease
 - drugs
 - ♦ HRT
 - ♦ anti-coagulants

Table 5. Comparison of Anovulatory and Ovulatory Abnormal Uterine Bleeding

	Anovulatory	Ovulatory
Incidence	90%	10%
Definition	Unpredictable endometrial bleeding of variable flow and duration; sex steroids are produced but not cyclically, resulting in irregular bleeding	Typically cyclic, but heavy or prolonged
Etiology	PCOS Thyroid dysfunction Elevated prolactin levels Rare estrogen-producing tumors Stress, weight loss, exercise Liver and kidney disease Structural disease Medication side effect	Anatomic or physical lesion (e.g. polyp, fibroid, adenomyosis, neoplasm, foreign body) Hemostatic defect Infection; trauma Local disturbances in prostaglandins (elevated endomyometrial vasodilatory prostaglandin, decreased vasoconstrictive prostaglandin)
Pathophysiology	Estrogen-dependent breakthrough bleeding: chronic estrogen production unopposed by adequate progesterone production → continued proliferation of the endometrium → thickened endometrium outgrows its blood supply → focal necrosis with partial shedding not uniformly → bleeding is usually irregular, prolonged, and heavy	Depends on underlying etiology

Investigations

- vitals ± orthostatic vitals
- CBC, serum ferritin
- β-hCG to rule out pregnancy
- TSH, free T₄
- coagulation profile (especially in adolescents): rule out von Willebrand's disease
- prolactin if amenorrheic
- FSH, LH
- serum androgens (especially free testosterone)
- day 21 (luteal phase) progesterone to confirm ovulation
- Pap test
- pelvic U/S: detect polyps, fibroids, measure endometrial thickness (postmenopausal)
- SHG: very sensitive for intrauterine pathology (polyps, submucous fibroids)
- HSG
- endometrial biopsy: consider biopsy in women >40 yr
 - must do endometrial biopsy in all women presenting with postmenopausal bleeding to exclude endometrial cancer
- D&C: not for treatment; diagnosis only (usually with hysteroscopy)

Treatment

- resuscitate patient if hemodynamically unstable
- treat underlying disorders
 - if anatomic lesions and systemic disease have been ruled out, consider DUB
- medical
 - mild DUB
 - ♦ NSAIDs
 - ♦ anti-fibrinolytic (e.g. Cyklokapron®) at time of menses
 - ♦ combined OCP
 - ♦ progestins (Provera®) on first 10-14 d of each mo or every 3 mo if oligomenorrheic
 - ♦ Mirena® IUD
 - ♦ danazol
 - acute, severe DUB
 - ♦ replace fluid losses, consider admission
 - ♦ a) estrogen (Premarin®) 25 mg IV q4h x 24 h with dimenhydrinate 50 mg IV/PO q4h or anti-fibrinolytic (e.g. Cyklokapron®) 10 mg/kg IV q8h
 - ♦ b) any OCP with minimum 50 µg estradiol 1 tab PO q4h x 24 h with dimenhydrinate 50 mg IV/PO q4h
 - taper to 1 tab tid x 2 d → bid x 2 d → OD
 - ♦ after (a) or (b), maintain patient on monophasic OCP for next several months or consider alternative medical treatment
 - clomiphene citrate
 - ♦ consider in patients who are anovulatory and who wish to get pregnant
- surgical
 - endometrial ablation; consider pretreatment with danazol or GnRH agonists
 - ♦ if finished childbearing
 - ♦ repeat procedure may be required if symptom reoccur especially if <40 yr
 - hysterectomy: definitive treatment



Dysfunctional Uterine Bleeding

Abnormal bleeding not attributable to organic (anatomic/systemic) disease; DUB is a diagnosis of exclusion; anovulatory AUB often used synonymously with DUB

Dysmenorrhea



Etiology

- see *Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations*, GY6

Table 6. Comparison of Primary and Secondary Dysmenorrhea

	Primary Dysmenorrhea	Secondary Dysmenorrhea
Features	Menstrual pain in absence of organic disease Begins 6 mo-2 yr after menarche (once ovulatory cycles established)	Menstrual pain due to organic disease Usually begins in women who are in their 20s, worsens with age May improve temporarily after childbirth
Signs and Symptoms	Colicky pain in abdomen, radiating to the lower back, labia, and inner thighs beginning hours before onset of bleeding and persisting for hours or days (48-72 h) Associated symptoms: N/V, altered bowel habits, headaches, fatigue (prostaglandin-associated)	Associated dyspareunia, abnormal bleeding, infertility
Diagnosis	Associated dyspareunia, abnormal bleeding, infertility Rule out underlying pelvic pathology and confirm cyclic nature of pain	Bimanual exam: uterine or adnexal tenderness, fixed uterine retroflexion, uterosacral nodularity, pelvic mass, or enlarged irregular uterus (findings are rare in women <20 yr) U/S, laparoscopy and hysteroscopy may be necessary to establish the diagnosis Screening for infections (vaginal and cervical cultures) and Papanicolaou smear may be required
Treatment	PG synthetase inhibitors (e.g. Anaprox®) should be started before onset of pain OCP: suppress ovulation/reduce menstrual flow	Treat underlying cause



Primary Dysmenorrhea

Menstrual pain in absence of organic disease

Secondary Dysmenorrhea

Menstrual pain due to organic disease

Endometriosis



Etiology

- not fully understood
- proposed mechanisms (combination likely involved)
 - retrograde menstruation (Sampson's theory)
 - ♦ seeding of endometrial cells by transtubal regurgitation during menstruation
 - ♦ endometrial cells most often found in dependent sites of the pelvis
 - immunologic theory: altered immunity may limit clearance of transplanted endometrial cells from pelvic cavity (may be due to decreased NK cell activity)
 - metaplasia of coelomic epithelium
 - ♦ undefined endogenous biochemical factor may induce undifferentiated peritoneal cells to develop into endometrial tissue
 - extrapelvic disease may be due to aberrant vascular or lymphatic dissemination of cells
 - ♦ e.g. ovarian endometriosis may be due to direct lymphatic flow from uterus to ovaries

Epidemiology

- incidence: 15-30% of pre-menopausal women
- mean age at presentation: 25-30 yr
- regresses after menopause

Risk Factors

- family history (7-10x increased risk if affected 1st degree relative)
- obstructive anomalies of the genital tract (earlier onset) – resolve with treatment of anomaly
- nulliparity
- age >25 yr

Sites of Occurrence

- ovaries: 60% patients have ovarian involvement
- broad ligament, vesicoperitoneal fold
- peritoneal surface of the cul-de-sac, uterosacral ligaments
- rectosigmoid colon, appendix
- rarely may occur in sites outside abdomen/pelvis, including lungs



Endometriosis

The presence of endometrial tissue (glands and stroma) outside of the uterine cavity



Differential Diagnoses

- Chronic PID, recurrent acute salpingitis
- Hemorrhagic corpus luteum
- Benign/malignant ovarian neoplasm
- Ectopic pregnancy



Endometrioma

Endometriotic cyst on surface of ovary

Clinical Features

- may be asymptomatic
- history
 - menstrual symptoms
 - ♦ cyclic symptoms due to growth and bleeding of ectopic endometrium, usually precede menses (24-48 h) and continue throughout and after flow
 - ♦ secondary dysmenorrhea
 - ♦ sacral backache with menses
 - ♦ pain may eventually become chronic, worsening perimenstrually
 - ♦ premenstrual and postmenstrual spotting
 - ♦ deep dyspareunia
 - infertility
 - ♦ 30-40% of patients with endometriosis will be infertile
 - ♦ 15-30% of those who are infertile will have endometriosis
 - bowel and bladder symptoms
 - ♦ frequency, dysuria, hematuria
 - ♦ diarrhea, constipation, hematochezia, dyschezia
- physical
 - tender nodularity of uterine ligaments and cul-de-sac felt on rectovaginal exam
 - fixed retroversion of uterus
 - firm, fixed adnexal mass (endometrioma)
 - physical findings not present in adolescent population

Investigations

- definitive diagnosis requires
 - direct visualization of lesions typical of endometriosis at laparoscopy
 - biopsy and histologic exam of specimens (2 or more of: endometrial epithelium, glands, stroma, hemosiderin-laden macrophages)
- laparoscopy
 - mulberry spots: dark blue or brownish-black implants on the uterosacral ligaments, cul-de-sac, or anywhere in the pelvis
 - endometrioma: "chocolate" cysts on the ovaries
 - "powder-burn" lesions on the peritoneal surface
 - early white lesions and clear blebs
 - peritoneal "pockets"
- CA-125
 - may be elevated in patients with endometriosis

Treatment

- depends on certainty of the diagnosis, severity of symptoms, extent of disease, desire for future fertility, and impact to GI/GU systems (e.g. intestinal obstruction)
- medical
 - NSAIDs (e.g. naproxen sodium – Anaprox®)
 - pseudopregnancy
 - ♦ cyclic/continuous estrogen-progestin (OCP)
 - ♦ medroxyprogesterone (Depo-Provera®)
 - ♦ dienogest (Natazia®)
 - pseudomenopause
 - ♦ 2nd line: only short-term (<6 mo) due to osteoporotic potential with prolonged use, unless combined with add-back therapy (e.g. estrogen/progesterone or SERM); if long-term use required, add-back estrogen+progesterone
 - ♦ danazol (Danocrine®): weak androgen
 - side effects: weight gain, fluid retention, acne, hirsutism, voice change
 - ♦ leuprolide (Lupron®): GnRH agonist (suppresses pituitary)
 - side effects: hot flashes, vaginal dryness, reduced libido
 - can use ≥12 mo with add-back progestin or estrogen
- surgical
 - conservative laparoscopy using laser, electrocautery ± laparotomy
 - ♦ ablation/resection of implants, lysis of adhesions, ovarian cystectomy of endometriomas
 - definitive: bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy ± hysterectomy
 - ± follow-up with medical treatment for pain control not shown to impact on preservation of fertility
 - best time to become pregnant is immediately after conservative surgery



There may be little correlation between the extent of endometriosis and symptomatology



Classic Triad of Endometriosis

- Dysmenorrhea
- Dyspareunia (cul-de-sac, uterosacral ligament)
- Dyschezia (uterosacral ligament, cul-de-sac, rectosigmoid attachment)



A sharp, firm, and exquisitely tender "barb" on the uterosacral ligament is a classic feature of endometriosis



Laparoscopic Surgery for Endometriosis

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2014;4:CD011031

Purpose: To assess the effectiveness and safety of laparoscopic surgery for the treatment of painful symptoms and subfertility associated with endometriosis.

Selection Criteria: RCTs in which effectiveness and safety of laparoscopic surgery was compared with any other laparoscopic or robotic intervention, holistic or medical treatment, or diagnostic laparoscopy only.

Results: 10 RCTs, 973 participants. Laparoscopic surgery was associated with decreased overall pain compared with diagnostic laparoscopy at 6 and 12 mo (OR 6.58, 95% CI 3.31-13.10; OR 10.00, 95% CI 3.21-31.17). Laparoscopic surgery was also associated with an increased live birth or ongoing pregnancy rate compared with diagnostic laparoscopy (OR 1.94, 95% CI 1.20-3.16) and increased pregnancy rate (OR 1.94, 95% CI 1.25-2.86). Compared to diagnostic laparoscopy plus medical therapy (GnRHa plus add-back therapy), laparoscopic ablation resulted in a greater number of participants reporting no pain at 12 mo (OR 5.63, 95% CI 1.18-26.85) although there was no difference in overall pain relief at 12 mo comparing laparoscopic ablation to laparoscopic excision.

Conclusions: Moderate quality evidence suggests that laparoscopic surgery to treat mild and moderate endometriosis reduces overall pain and increases live birth and ongoing pregnancy rates. There was insufficient evidence on adverse events to allow any conclusions regarding safety.



Endometriosis is classified according to a scoring system standardized by the American Society for Reproductive Medicine; score is based on location and extent of disease



Recurrence Rates

Medical therapy: 30-50%

Conservative surgery: 14-40%

Adenomyosis

- synonym: "endometriosis interna" (uterine wall may be diffusely involved)

Epidemiology

- 15% of females >35 yr old; found in 20-40% of hysterectomy specimens
- mean age at presentation: 40-50 yr old (older age group than seen in endometriosis)
- adenomyosis is a common histologic finding in asymptomatic patients

Clinical Features

- often asymptomatic
- menorrhagia, secondary dysmenorrhea, pelvic discomfort
- dyspareunia, dyschezia
- uterus symmetrically bulky, usually <14 cm, mobility not restricted, no associated adnexal pathology
- Halban sign: tender, softened uterus on premenstrual bimanual exam

Investigations

- clinical diagnosis
- U/S or MRI can be helpful
- endometrial sampling to rule out other pathology

Treatment

- iron supplements as necessary
- analgesics, NSAIDs
- OCP, medroxyprogesterone (Depo-Provera®)
- low dose danazol 100-200 mg PO OD (trial x 4 mo)
- GnRH agonists (e.g. leuprolide)
- definitive: hysterectomy (no conservative surgical treatment)



Adenomyosis
Extension of areas of endometrial glands and stroma into the myometrium



Final diagnosis of adenomyosis is based on pathologic findings, but predictably identified on MRI

Leiomyomata (Fibroids)

Epidemiology

- diagnosed in approximately 40-50% of pre-menopausal women >35 yr
- more common in African Americans, where they are also larger and occur at earlier age
- common indication for major surgery in females
- minimal malignant potential (1:1,000)
- typically regress after menopause; enlarging fibroids in a postmenopausal woman should prompt consideration of malignancy
 - 50% of leiomyosarcomas originate from within fibroids

Pathogenesis

- estrogen stimulates monoclonal smooth muscle proliferation
- progesterone stimulates production of proteins that inhibit apoptosis
- degenerative changes (occur when tumor outgrows blood supply)
 - hyaline degeneration (most common degenerative change)
 - cystic degeneration (from breakdown of hyaline)
 - red/carneous degeneration (hemorrhage into tumor, may occur in pregnancy)
 - fatty degeneration
 - calcification
 - sarcomatous degeneration (rare)
 - parasitic myoma: tumor becomes attached to another organ (typically omentum or small bowel mesentery), develops new blood supply and loses connection to uterus

Clinical Features

- majority asymptomatic (60%), often discovered as incidental finding on pelvic exam or U/S
- abnormal uterine bleeding (30%): dysmenorrhea, menorrhagia
- pressure/bulk symptoms (20-50%)
 - pelvic pressure/heaviness
 - increased abdominal girth
 - urinary frequency and urgency
 - acute urinary retention (extremely rare but surgical emergency!)
 - constipation, bloating (rare)
- acute pelvic pain
 - fibroid degeneration
 - fibroid torsion (pedunculated subserosal)



Leiomyomata/Fibroids
Benign smooth muscle tumor of the uterus (most common gynecological tumor)



Submucosal leiomyomata are most symptomatic (bleeding, infertility)



AUB in women >40 yr requires an endometrial biopsy to rule out cancer even if known to have fibroids

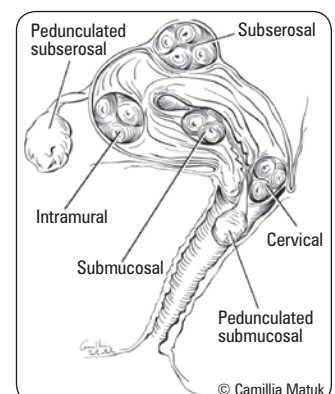


Figure 11. Possible anatomic locations of uterine leiomyomata

- infertility, recurrent pregnancy loss
- pregnancy complications (potential enlargement and increased pain, obstructed labor, difficult C-section)

Investigations

- bimanual exam: uterus asymmetrically enlarged, usually mobile
- CBC: anemia
- U/S: to confirm diagnosis and assess location of fibroids
- sonohysterogram: useful for differentiating endometrial polyps from submucosal fibroids, or if intracavitary growth
- endometrial biopsy to rule out uterine cancer for abnormal uterine bleeding (especially if age >40 yr)
- occasionally MRI is used for pre-operative planning (e.g. before myomectomy)

Treatment

- only if symptomatic, rapidly enlarging, menorrhagia, menometrorrhagia, intracavitary
- treat anemia if present
- conservative approach (watch and wait) if:
 - symptoms absent or minimal
 - fibroids <6-8 cm or stable in size
 - not submucosal (submucosal fibroids are more likely to be symptomatic)
 - currently pregnant due to increased risk of bleeding (follow-up U/S if symptoms progress)
- medical approach
 - antiprostaglandins (ibuprofen, other NSAIDs)
 - tranexamic acid (Cyklokapron®)
 - OCP/Depo-Provera®
 - GnRH agonist: leuprolide (Lupron®), danazol (Danocrine®)
 - ♦ short-term use only (6 mo)
 - ♦ often used pre-myomectomy or pre-hysterectomy to reduce fibroid size
 - ♦ reduced bleeding
 - ulipristal acetate: a partial progesterone receptor agonist
- interventional radiology approach
 - uterine artery embolization (occludes both uterine arteries) → shrinks fibroids by 50% at 6 mo; improves menorrhagia in 90% of patients within 1-2 mo; not an option in women considering childbearing
- surgical approach
 - myomectomy (hysteroscopic, transabdominal, or laparoscopic): preserves fertility
 - hysteroscopic resection of fibroid and endometrial ablation for menorrhagia
 - hysterectomy (see [Hysterectomy, GY8](#))
 - note: avoid operating on fibroids during pregnancy (due to ↑ vascularity and potential pregnancy loss); expectant management usually best



The effect of pregnancy on fibroid size is variable



Ulipristal Acetate vs. Leuprolide Acetate for Uterine Fibroids

NEJM 2012;366:421-432

Study: Phase III, double-blind RCT of the efficacy and side-effect profile of ulipristal acetate vs. those of leuprolide acetate for the treatment of symptomatic uterine fibroids before surgery.

Outcomes: Control of uterine bleeding at week 13 was the primary outcome. Secondary outcomes included bleeding pattern, amenorrhea, changes in fibroid/uterine volume, and global pain score.

Patients: 307 premenopausal women with symptomatic fibroids and excessive uterine bleeding were randomly assigned to oral ulipristal acetate (5 mg or 10 mg) or intramuscular injections of leuprolide acetate.

Results: Control of bleeding at week 13 was not significantly different between the treatment groups. All three treatments reduced uterine volume, although this decrease was significantly greater in the leuprolide group (47% reduction) than in the ulipristal groups (20-22%). 40% of the leuprolide group reported moderate-to-severe hot flashes, but only 11% (5 mg) and 10% (10 mg) of the ulipristal groups did.

Conclusions: Oral ulipristal acetate (5 mg or 10 mg) is noninferior to intramuscular leuprolide acetate for control of uterine bleeding due to fibroids, and it had a better side-effect profile.



Suppression of Ovarian Activity with a Drospirenone-Containing Oral Contraceptive in a 24/4 Regimen

Contraception 2008;78:16-25

Study: Double-blind randomized.

Patients: Women aged 18-35 yr, post-ovulation or had a follicular diameter ≥15 mm before day 23 during a pre-treatment cycle.

Intervention: Drospirenone 3 mg plus ethinyl estradiol 20 µg administered in 24/4 regimen vs. 21/7 regimen.

Outcome: Suppression of ovarian activity (Hoogland score).

Results: Women on a 24/4 regimen had greater and more consistent ovarian suppression than the 21/7 group. More women in the 24/4 group had no ovarian activity compared to women in the 21/7 group.

Conclusion: A 24/4 regimen is associated with greater ovarian suppression than a 21/7 regimen.



Counseling the Adolescent about Contraception

More than 90% of adolescent pregnancies are unintended, and ~50% of all pregnancies occur within the first 6 mo of initiating sexual activity; in addition, 85% of sexually active women become pregnant within 1 yr if no contraception is used and even some of the least effective contraceptive methods markedly decrease the risk of pregnancy

Contraception

- see [Family Medicine, FM19](#)

Table 7. Classification of Contraceptive Methods

Type	Effectiveness (perfect use, typical use)
Physiological	
Withdrawal/coitus interruptus	77%
Rhythm method/calendar/mucus/symptothermal	98%, 76%
Lactational amenorrhea	98% (first 6 mo postpartum)
Chance – no method used	10%
Abstinence of all sexual activity	100%
Barrier Methods	
Condom alone	98%, 85%
Spermicide alone	82%, 71%
Sponge – Parous	80%, 68%
– Nulliparous	91%, 84%
Diaphragm with spermicide	94%, 84%
Female condom	95%, 79%
Cervical cap – Parous	74%, 68%
– Nulliparous	91%, 84%

Table 7. Classification of Contraceptive Methods (continued)

Type	Effectiveness (perfect use, typical use)
Hormonal	
OCP	99.7%, 92%
Nuva Ring®	99.7%, 92%
Transdermal (Ortho Evra®)	99.7%, 92%
Depo-Provera®	99.7%, 97%
Progestin-only pill (Micronor®)	90-99%
Mirena® IUD	99.9%
Subdermal implant (Nexplanon/Implanon®)	99.9%
Copper IUD	99.3%
Surgical	
Tubal ligation	99.65%
Vasectomy	99.9%
Emergency Postcoital Contraception (EPC)	
Yuzpe® method	98% (within 24 h), decreases by 30% at 72 h
"Plan B" levonorgestrel only	98% (within 24 h), decreases by 70% at 72 h
Postcoital IUD	99.9%

Effectiveness: percentage of women reporting no pregnancy after 1 yr of use

Hormonal Methods

Combined Oral Contraceptive Pills

- most contain low dose ethinyl estradiol (20-35 µg) plus progestin (norethindrone, norgestrel, levonorgestrel, desogestrel, norgestimate, drospirenone)
- failure rate (0.3% to 8%) depending on compliance
- monophasic or triphasic formulations (varying amount of progestin throughout cycle)

Transdermal (Ortho Evra®)

- continuous release of 6 mg norelgestromin and 0.60 mg ethinyl estradiol into bloodstream
- applied to lower abdomen, back, upper arm, buttocks, NOT breast
- worn for 3 consecutive wk (changed every wk) with 1 wk off to allow for menstruation
- as effective as OCP in preventing pregnancy (>99% with perfect use)
- may be less effective in women >90 kg
- may not be covered by drug plans

Contraceptive Ring (Nuva Ring®)

- thin flexible plastic ring; releases etonogestrel 120 µg/d and estradiol 15 µg/d
- works for 3 wk then removed for 1 wk to allow for menstruation
- as effective as OCP in preventing pregnancy (98%)
- avoids first pass effect
- side effects: vaginal infections/irritation, vaginal discharge
- may have better cycle control; i.e. decreased breakthrough bleeding

Starting Hormonal Contraceptives

- thorough history and physical exam, including blood pressure and breast exam
- follow-up visit 6 wk after hormonal contraceptives prescribed
- pelvic exam not required as STD screening can be done by urine and pap smear screening does not start until >21 yr



Oral Contraceptives and the Risk of Venous Thromboembolism: An Update (2010)

J Obstet Gyn Canada 2010;32:1192-1197

Rates of Venous Thromboembolism

(VTE: DVT and PE) expressed in women/yr
 Non-users of reproductive age 4-5/10,000
 OCP users* 9-10/10,000
 Pregnancy 29/10,000
 Immediate post-partum 300-400/10,000

*Risk is highest in the first months of use and in medication switch.

Effect of Ethinyl Estradiol Dose

ALL OCPs with ≤35 µg ethinyl estradiol carry a lower risk of VTE compared with oral contraceptives with 50 µg.

Effect of Progestin Type

Drospirenone: third generation progestin, e.g. Yasmin® and Yaz®

Levonorgestrel: second generation progestin, e.g. Alesse®

Two high quality research studies found comparable VTE rates with drospirenone-containing OCPs and other approved products.

1. Dinger et al., *Contraception* 2007;75:344-354

2. Seeger et al., *Obstet Gynecol* 2007;110:587-593

Two reports with significant methodological flaws found increased VTE risk. Results and conclusions may have been distorted by residual confounding.

1. Lidegaard et al., *BMJ* 2009;339:b2890

2. Van Hylckama Vlieg et al., *BMJ* 2009;339:b2921

Conclusion

- Occurrence of serious risks, such as VTE, is rare with all contemporary OCPs.
- Individualized risk assessment is mandatory.
- For most healthy women of reproductive age, the benefits of OCPs will outweigh the risks.



Thrombotic Stroke and Myocardial Infarction with Hormonal Contraception

NEJM 2012;366:2257-2266

Study: 15 yr Danish historical cohort study. Non-pregnant women 15-49 yr of age with no history of cardiovascular disease or cancer.

Results: Total of 1,626,158 women, thrombotic stroke rate 21.4/100,000 person yr, MI rate 10.1/100,000 person yr. Oral contraceptives with ethinyl estradiol at a dose of 30-40 µg according to progestin type and risk of thrombotic stroke and MI (RR [CI]): norethindrone 2.2 (1.5-3.2) and 2.3 (1.3-3.9); levonorgestrel 1.7 (1.4-2.0) and 2.0 (1.6-2.5); norgestimate 1.5 (1.2-1.9) and 1.3 (0.9-1.9); desogestrel 2.2 (1.8-2.7) and 2.1 (1.5-2.8); gestodene 1.8 (1.6-2.0) and 1.9 (1.6-2.3); and drospirenone 1.6 (1.2-2.2) and 1.7 (1.0-2.6). With ethinyl estradiol at a dose of 20 µg, risks according to progestin type were: desogestrel 1.5 (1.3-1.9) and 1.6 (1.1-2.1); gestodene 1.7 (1.4-2.1) and 1.2 (0.8-1.9) and drospirenone 0.9 (0.2-3.5) and 0.0.

Conclusions: Although the absolute risk of thrombotic stroke and MI with hormonal contraception is low, it is increased by a factor of 0.9-1.7 with oral contraceptives that contain ethinyl estradiol at a dose of 20 µg and by a factor of 1.3-2.3 with ethinyl estradiol doses of 30-40 µg, with relatively small differences in risk according to progestin type.



Risk of Non-Fatal Venous Thromboembolism in Women Using Oral Contraceptives Containing Drospirenone Compared with Women Using Oral Contraceptives Containing Levonorgestrel: A Case-Control Study Using United States Claims Data

BMJ 2011;342:d2151

Study: Nested case-control and cohort study.

Patients: Women aged 15-44 yr receiving oral contraceptives.

Intervention: Drospirenone-containing contraceptive vs. levonorgestrel-containing contraceptive.

Outcome: Non-fatal venous thromboembolism.

Results: Women receiving drospirenone-containing oral contraceptives were two times as likely to develop non-fatal VTE compared to women receiving levonorgestrel-containing contraceptives (age adjusted incidence rate ratio was 2.8).

Table 8. Combined Estrogen and Progestin Contraceptive Methods

Mechanism of Action	Advantages	Side Effects	Contraindications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ovulatory suppression through inhibition of LH and FSH Decidualization of endometrium Thickening of cervical mucus resulting in decreased sperm penetration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Highly effective Reversible Cycle regulation Decreased dysmenorrhea and menorrhagia (less anemia) Decreased benign breast disease and ovarian cyst development Decreased risk of ovarian and endometrial cancer Increased cervical mucus which may lower risk of STDs Decreased PMS symptoms Improved acne Osteoporosis protection (possibly) 	<p>Estrogen-related</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nausea Breast changes (tenderness, enlargement) Fluid retention/bloating/edema Weight gain (rare) Migraine, headaches Thromboembolic events Liver adenoma (rare) Breakthrough bleeding (low estradiol levels) <p>Progestin-related</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Amenorrhea/breakthrough bleeding Headaches Breast tenderness Increased appetite Decreased libido Mood changes HTN Acne/oily skin* Hirsutism* <p>* Androgenic side effects may be minimized by prescribing formulations containing desogestrel, norgestimate, drospirenone, or cyproterone acetate</p>	<p>Absolute</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Known/suspected pregnancy Undiagnosed abnormal vaginal bleeding Prior thromboembolic events, thromboembolic disorders (Factor V Leiden mutation; protein C or S, or antithrombin III deficiency), active thrombophlebitis Cerebrovascular or coronary artery disease Estrogen-dependent tumors (breast, uterus) Impaired liver function associated with acute liver disease Congenital hypertriglyceridemia Smoker age > 35 yr Migraines with focal neurological symptoms (excluding aura) Uncontrolled HTN <p>Relative</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Migraines (non-focal with aura < 1 h) DM complicated by vascular disease SLE Controlled HTN Hyperlipidemia Sickle cell anemia Gallbladder disease <p>Drug Interactions/Risks</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rifampin, phenobarbital, phenytoin, and primidone can decrease efficacy, requiring use of back-up method No evidence of fetal abnormalities if conceived on OCP No evidence that OCP is harmful to nursing infant but may decrease milk production; not recommended until 6 wk postpartum, ideally until 3 mo postpartum

Reference: World Health Organization Guidelines for Oral Contraceptive Pill Use

Table 9. Selected Examples of OCPs

Type	Active Compounds (estriol and progestin derivative)	Advantages	Disadvantages
Alesse®	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 20 µg ethinyl estradiol and 0.5 mg levonorgestrel 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Low dose (20 µg) OCP Can improve acne and help regulate menstrual cycles 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Low-dose pills can often result in breakthrough bleeding If this persists for longer than 3 mo, patient should be switched to an OCP with higher estrogen content
Tri-cyclen®	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 35 µg ethinyl estradiol and 0.180/0.215/0.250 mg norgestimate Triphasic oral contraceptive (graduated levels of progesterone) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Low androgenic activity can help with acne 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Triphasic OCPs should not be used continuously (unlike monophasic formulations), although should be used continuously for 1 pack
Yasmin® and Yaz®	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Yasmin®: 30 µg ethinyl estradiol + 3 mg drospirenone (a new progestin) Yaz®: 20 µg ethinyl estradiol + 3 mg drospirenone – 24/4-d pill (4 d pill free interval) Drospirenone has antimineralocorticoid activity and antiandrogenic effects 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Decreased perception of cyclic weight gain/bloating Fewer PMS symptoms Improved acne 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hyperkalemia (rare, contraindicated in renal and adrenal insufficiency) Check potassium if patient also on ACE inhibitor, ARB, K⁺-sparing diuretic, heparin Continue use of spironolactone Increased risk of DVT-PE

PROGESTIN-ONLY METHOD**Table 10. Progestin Only Contraceptive Methods**

Indications	Mechanism of Action	Side Effects	Contraindications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Suitable for postpartum women (does not affect breast milk supply) Women with contraindications to combined OCP (e.g. thromboembolic or myocardial disease) Women intolerant of estrogenic side effects of combined OCPs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Progestin prevents LH surge Thickening of cervical mucus Decrease tubal motility Endometrial decidualization Ovulation suppression – oral progestins (not IM) do not consistently suppress compared to combined OCPs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Irregular menstrual bleeding Weight gain Headache Breast tenderness Mood changes Functional ovarian cysts Acne/oily skin Hirsutism 	<p>Absolute</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> None



Irregular breakthrough bleeding often occurs in the first few months after starting OCP; usually resolves after three cycles

**Missed Combined OCPs**

Miss 1 pill in <24 h

- Take 1 pill ASAP, and the next pill at the usual time

Miss ≥1 pill in a row in first wk

- Take 1 pill ASAP, and continue taking one pill daily until the end of the pack
- Use back-up contraception for 7 d; EPC may be necessary

Miss <3 pills in 2nd or 3rd wk of cycle

- Take 1 pill ASAP, and continue taking one pill daily until the end of the pack
- Do not take placebo (28-d packs) or do not take a hormone free interval (21-d packs)
- Start the next pack immediately after finishing the previous one
- No need for back-up contraception

Miss ≥3 pills during the 2nd or 3rd wk

- Take 1 pill ASAP, and continue taking one pill daily until the end of the pack
- Don't take placebo (28-d packs) or do not take a hormone free interval (21-d packs)
- Start the next pack immediately after finishing the previous one
- Use back-up contraception for 7 d; EPC may be necessary

SOGC Committee Opinion on Missed Hormonal Contraceptives: New Recommendations. *JOGC* 2008;30:1050-1062. <http://www.sogc.org/guidelines/documents/gui219EC00811.pdf>

Selected Examples of Progestin-Only Methods

Progestin-Only Pill ("minipill")

- Micronor® 0.35 mg norethindrone
- taken daily at same time of day to ensure reliable effect; no pill free interval
- higher failure rate (1.1-13% with typical use, 0.51% with perfect use) than other hormonal methods
- ovulation inhibited in 60% of women; most have regular cycles (but may cause oligo/amenorrhea)
- highly effective if also post-partum breastfeeding, or if >35 yr

Depo-Provera®

- injectable depot medroxyprogesterone acetate
- dose 150 mg IM q12-14wk (convenient dosing)
- initiate within 5 d of beginning of normal menses, immediately postpartum in breastfeeding and non-breastfeeding women
- irregular spotting progresses to complete amenorrhea in 70% of women (after 1-2 yr of use)
- highly effective 99%; failure rate 0.3%
- side effect: decreased bone density (may be reversible)
- disadvantage: restoration of fertility may take up to 1-2 yr

Nexplanon/Implanon®

- subdermal contraceptive rod
- contains 68 mg of etonogestrel, released at a rate of 25-30 µg per d
- inserted subdermally into the inner side of the non-dominant upper arm
- can be inserted during a small office procedure, lasts up to 3 yr
- Nexplanon is the second generation model which contains barium sulfate to make it radio-opaque so its position can be visualized by x-ray if unable to palpate the rod to remove it



Missed Progestin-Only Pills >3 h

Use back-up contraceptive method for at least 48 h; continue to take remainder of pills as prescribed

Missed Depo-Provera

- If last injection given 13-14 wk prior: give next injection immediately
- if >14 wk prior, do β-hCG
 - If β-hCG is positive, give EPC and no injection
 - If β-hCG is negative, give next injection right away and:
 - Intercourse occurred in last 5 d: give EPC, use back-up contraception for 7 d
 - Repeat β-hCG in 3 wk
 - Intercourse occurred >5 d ago but within the last 14 d: use back-up contraception for 7 d
 - Repeat β-hCG in 3 wk
 - Intercourse occurred >14 d ago: use back-up contraception for 7 d
 - No evidence of fetal abnormalities if conceived on DMPA

SOGC Committee Opinion on Missed Hormonal Contraceptives: New Recommendations.
JOGC 2008;30:1050-62. <http://www.sogc.org/guidelines/documents/guid219EC00811.pdf>



Steroidal Contraceptives and Bone Fractures in Women: Evidence from Observational Studies

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;8:CD009849

Background: Steroidal contraceptives have been associated with effects on bone mineral density (BMD) in women.

Study: Systematic review of observational studies of comparisons of hormonal contraceptive with nonhormonal contraceptive, no contraceptive, or other hormonal contraceptive as they affected risk of fracture (primary outcome).

Results: 7 case-control and 7 cohort studies were included.

- One study reported increased fracture risk for depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) ever-use (OR 1.44), >4 yr use (OR 2.16)
- One study reported decreased fracture risk for ever-use (OR 0.75) and longer use of hormonal IUD.



Continuous or Extended Cycle vs. Cyclic Use of Combined Oral Contraceptives for Contraception

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2005;3:CD004695

Background: The efficacy and side effects of cyclic administration vs. extended use (longer periods of active pills and/or shorter periods placebo) or continuous use (uninterrupted active pill administration) of combination oral contraceptives (COC) are unclear.

Study: Systematic review of randomized clinical trials comparing continuous or extended vs. cyclic COC administration.

Findings: Eight RCTs met inclusion criteria.

- No difference in efficacy of pregnancy prevention.
- No difference in compliance with dosing schedules.
- Extended cycle use lowered prevalence of menstrual symptoms (e.g. headaches, pain, fatigue).
- No difference in bleeding patterns, but continuous use may improve over time.

Intrauterine Device

Table 11. IUD Contraceptive Methods

Mechanism of Action	Side Effects	Contraindications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Copper-containing IUD (Paragard-T®): mild foreign body reaction in endometrium toxic to sperm and alters sperm motility • Progesterone-releasing IUD (Mirena®): decidualization of endometrium and thickening of cervical mucus; minimal effect on ovulation • Highly effective (95-99%); failure rate 0-1.2% • Contraceptive effects last 5 yr • Reversible, private, convenient • May be used in women with contraindications to OCPs or wanting long-term contraception 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Both Copper and Progesterone IUD <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Breakthrough bleeding • Expulsion (5% in the 1st yr, greatest in 1st mo and in nulliparous women) • Uterine wall perforation (1/1,000) on insertion • If pregnancy occurs with an IUD, increased risk of ectopic • Increased risk of PID (within first 10 d of insertion only) • Copper IUD: increased blood loss and duration of menses, dysmenorrhea • Progesterone IUD: bloating, headache 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Absolute <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Both Copper and Progesterone IUD <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Known or suspected pregnancy • Undiagnosed genital tract bleeding • Acute or chronic PID • Lifestyle risk for STDs* • Copper IUD: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Known allergy to copper • Wilson's disease • Relative <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Both Copper and Progesterone IUD <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Valvular heart disease • Past history of PID or ectopic pregnancy • Presence of prosthesis • Abnormalities of uterine cavity, intracavitary fibroids • Cervical stenosis • Immunosuppressed individuals (e.g. HIV) • Copper IUD: severe dysmenorrhea or menorrhagia

*Cervical swabs for gonorrhea and chlamydia should be done prior to IUD insertion



Depot Medroxyprogesterone Acetate and Bone Effects

ACOG Committee Opinion 415, 2008

Obstet Gynecol 2008;112:727-730

- The effect of DMPA on BMD should neither prevent practitioners from prescribing DMPA nor limit its use to 2 consecutive yr.
- The greatest loss of BMD occurs in the first 1-2 yr of DMPA use.
- Contraceptive implants and intrauterine devices that do not affect BMD should be considered as first-line for adolescents.
- Inform patients about benefits and the potential risks of DMPA, and encourage daily exercise, calcium and vitamin D intake.
- Routine BMD monitoring is not recommended for DMPA users.

Emergency Postcoital Contraception

Table 12. Emergency Contraceptive Methods

Method	Mechanism of Action	Side Effects	Contraindications
HORMONAL			
Yuzpe Method <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Used within 72 h of unprotected intercourse; limited evidence of benefit up to 5 d Ovral® 2 tablets then repeat in 12 h (ethinyl estradiol 100 µg/levonorgestrel 500 µg) Can substitute with any OCP as long as same dose of estrogen used 2% overall risk of pregnancy Efficacy decreased with time (e.g. less effective at 72 h than 24 h) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unknown; theories include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Suppresses ovulation or causes deficient luteal phase Alters endometrium to prevent implantation Affects sperm/ova transport 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nausea (due to estrogen; treat with dimenhydrinate) Irregular spotting 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pre-existing pregnancy (although not teratogenic) Caution in women with contraindications to OCP (although NO absolute contraindications)
"Plan B" <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Consists of levonorgestrel 750 µg q12h for 2 doses (can also take 2 doses together); taken within 72 h of intercourse Greater efficacy (75-95% if used within 24 h) and better side effect profile than Yuzpe method but efficacy decreases with time; 1st line if >24 h No estrogen thus very few contraindications/side effects (less nausea) Less effective in overweight individuals (>75 kg less effective, >80 kg not recommended) 			
NON-HORMONAL			
Postcoital IUD (Copper) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Insert up to 7 d postcoitus Prevents implantation 1% failure rate Can use for short duration in higher risk individuals Mirena® IUD cannot be used as EPC 	• See Table 11	• See Table 11	• See Table 11

Follow-up

- 3-4 wk post treatment to confirm efficacy (confirmed by spontaneous menses or pregnancy test)
- contraception counseling

Infertility

Epidemiology

- 10-15% of couples
- must investigate both members of the couple

Female Factors

Etiology

- ovulatory dysfunction (15-20%)
 - hypothalamic (hypothalamic amenorrhea)
 - pituitary (prolactinoma, hypopituitarism)
 - ovarian
 - PCOS
 - premature ovarian failure
 - luteal phase defect (poor follicle production, premature corpus luteum failure, failed uterine lining response to progesterone), poorly understood
 - systemic diseases (thyroid, Cushing's syndrome, renal/hepatic failure)
 - congenital (Turner's syndrome, gonadal dysgenesis or gonadotropin deficiency)
 - stress, poor nutrition, excessive exercise (even with presence of menstruation)
- outflow tract abnormality (15-20%)
 - tubal factors (20-30%)
 - PID
 - adhesions (previous surgery, peritonitis, endometriosis)
 - ligation/occlusion (e.g. previous ectopic pregnancy)
 - uterine factors (<5%)
 - congenital anomalies, bicornuate uterus, septate uterus, prenatal DES exposure
 - intrauterine adhesions (e.g. Asherman's syndrome)
 - infection (endometritis, pelvic TB)
 - fibroids/polyps (particularly intrauterine)
 - endometrial ablation
 - cervical factors (5%)
 - hostile or acidic cervical mucus
 - anti-sperm antibodies
 - structural defects (cone biopsies, laser or cryotherapy)



Any OCP can be used as EPC; 100 µg ethinyl estradiol PO q12h x 2 doses.

- Levonorgestrel emergency contraception regimens are more effective and cause fewer side effects than the Yuzpe regimen
- Levonorgestrel emergency contraception single dose (1.5 mg) and the 2-dose levonorgestrel regimen (0.75 mg 12 h apart) have similar efficacy with no difference in side effects

SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines: Emergency Contraception. *JOGC* 2012;34:870-878.
http://www.sogc.org/guidelines/documents/gui280CPG1209E_000.pdf



Infertility: inability to conceive or carry to term a pregnancy after 1 yr of regular, unprotected intercourse

Primary infertility: infertility in the context of no prior pregnancies

Secondary infertility: infertility in the context of a prior conception

Generally, 75% of couples achieve pregnancy within 6 mo, 85% within 1 yr, 90% within 2 yr



Requirements for Conception

- Ovary
- Tube
- Cervix
- Endometrium
- Sperm

- endometriosis (15-30%)
- multiple factors (30%), see GY22
- unknown factors (10-15%)

Investigations

- ovulatory
 - day 3: FSH, LH, TSH, prolactin \pm DHEA, free testosterone (if hirsute)
 - day 21-23: serum progesterone to confirm ovulation
 - initiate basal body temperature monitoring (biphasic pattern)
 - postcoital test: evaluate mucus for clarity, pH, spinnbarkeit/fibrosity (rarely done)
- tubal factors
 - HSG (can be therapeutic – opens fallopian tube)
 - SHG (can be therapeutic – opens fallopian tube)
 - laparoscopy with dye insufflation (or tubal dye test)
- peritoneal/uterine factors
 - HSG/SHG, hysteroscopy
- other
 - karyotype

Treatment

- education: timing of intercourse in relation to ovulation (from 2 d prior to 2 d following presumed ovulation), every other day
- medical
 - ovulation induction
 - ♦ clomiphene citrate (Clomid®): estrogen antagonist that causes a perceived decreased estrogen state, resulting in increased pituitary gonadotropins; causes increased FSH and LH, leading to ovulation induction (works much better if anovulatory)
 - ♦ human menopausal gonadotropin – FSH and LH extracted from urine of postmenopausal women
 - ♦ followed by β -hCG for stimulation of ovum release
 - may add
 - ♦ bromocriptine (dopamine agonist) if elevated prolactin
 - ♦ dexamethasone for hyperandrogenism (adult onset congenital adrenal hyperplasia)
 - ♦ metformin (for PCOS)
 - ♦ luteal phase progesterone supplementation for luteal phase defect (mechanism not completely understood)
 - ♦ ASA (81 mg PO OD) for women with a history of recurrent spontaneous abortions (for antiphospholipid antibody syndrome)
- surgical/procedural
 - tubuloplasty
 - lysis of adhesions
 - artificial insemination: intracervical insemination (ICI), intrauterine insemination (IUI), intrauterine tuboperitoneal insemination (IUTPI), intratubal insemination (ITI)
 - sperm washing
 - IVF (*in vitro* fertilization)
 - IFT (intrafallopian transfer)
 - GIFT (gamete intrafallopian transfer): immediate transfer with sperm after oocyte retrieval
 - ZIFT (zygote intrafallopian transfer): transfer after 24 h culture of oocyte and sperm
 - TET (tubal embryo transfer): transfer after >24 h culture
 - ICSI (intracytoplasmic sperm injection)
 - IVM (*in vitro* maturation)
 - \pm oocyte or sperm donors
 - \pm pre-genetic screening for single gene defects in karyotype of zygote



When Should Investigations Begin?

- <35 yr: after 1 yr of regular unprotected intercourse
- 35-40 yr: after >6 mo
- >40 yr: immediately
- Earlier if:
 - History of PID
 - History of infertility in previous relationship
 - Prior pelvic surgery
 - Chemotherapy/radiation in either partner
 - Recurrent pregnancy loss
 - Moderate-severe endometriosis



Controversial and Evolving Ethical Issues

- Infertility demands non-judgmental discussion
- Ethical issues surrounding therapeutic donor insemination in same sex couples, surrogacy, donor gametes, and other advanced reproductive technologies are still evolving and remain controversial
- If the doctor finds that certain treatment options lie outside of their moral boundaries, the infertile couple should be referred to another physician

Male Factors

- see [Urology](#), U33

Etiology

- varicocele (>40%)
- idiopathic (>20%)
- obstruction (~15%)
- cryptorchidism (~8%)
- immunologic (~3%)

Investigations

- semen analysis and culture
- postcoital (Huhner) test: rarely done



Normal Semen Analysis (WHO lower reference limits)

- Must be obtained after 2-7 d of abstinence
 - Volume 1.5 cc
 - Count 15 million/cc
 - Vitality 58% live
 - Motility 32% progressive, 40% total (progressive + non-progressive)
 - Morphology 4.0% normal

Polycystic Ovarian Syndrome

- also called chronic ovarian androgenism

Etiology

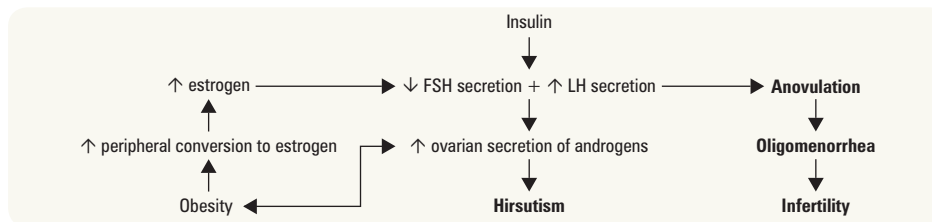


Figure 12. Pathophysiology of polycystic ovarian syndrome

Diagnosis

- 2 of 3 to make diagnosis:
 - oligomenorrhea/irregular menses for 6 mo
 - clinical or lab evidence of hyperandrogenism
 - polycystic ovaries on U/S

Clinical Features

- average age 15-35 yr at presentation
- in adolescents, wait at least 1-2 yr to make diagnosis
- abnormal/irregular uterine bleeding, hirsutism, infertility, obesity, virilization
- insulin resistance occurs in both lean and obese patients
- acanthosis nigricans: browning of skin folds in intertriginous zones (indicative of insulin resistance)
- family history of DM

Investigations

- goal of investigations is to identify hyperandrogenism or chronic anovulation; and rule out specific pituitary or adrenal disease as the cause
- laboratory
 - prolactin, 17-hydroxyprogesterone, free testosterone, DHEA-S, TSH, free T_4 , androstenedione, SHBG
 - LH:FSH >2:1; LH is chronically high with FSH mid-range or low (low sensitivity and specificity)
 - increased DHEA-S, androstenedione and free testosterone (most sensitive), decreased SHBG
- transvaginal or transabdominal U/S: polycystic-appearing ovaries ("string of pearls" – 12 or more small follicles 2-9 mm, or increased ovarian volume)
- tests for insulin resistance or glucose tolerance
 - fasting glucose:insulin ratio <4.5 is consistent with insulin resistance (U.S. units)
 - 75 g OGTT yearly (particularly if obese)
- laparoscopy
 - not required for diagnosis
 - most common to see white, smooth, sclerotic ovaries with a thick capsule; multiple follicular cysts in various stages of atresia; hyperplastic theca and stroma
- rule out other causes of abnormal bleeding

Treatment

- **cycle control**
 - lifestyle modification (decrease BMI, increase exercise) to decrease peripheral estrone formation
 - OCP monthly or cyclic Provera® to prevent endometrial hyperplasia due to unopposed estrogen
 - oral hypoglycemic (e.g. metformin) if type 2 diabetic or if trying to become pregnant
 - tranexamic acid (Cyklokapron®) for menorrhagia only
- **infertility**
 - medical induction of ovulation: clomiphene citrate, human menopausal gonadotropins (HMG [Pergonal®]), LHRH, recombinant FSH, and metformin
 - ♦ metformin may be used alone or in conjunction with clomiphene citrate for ovulation induction
 - ovarian drilling (perforate the stroma), wedge resection of the ovary
 - bromocriptine (if hyperprolactinemia)
- **hirsutism**
 - any OCP can be used
 - ♦ Androcur® (cyproterone acetate): antiandrogenic
 - ♦ Yasmin® (drospirenone and ethinyl estradiol): spironolactone analogue (inhibits steroid receptors)
 - mechanical removal of hair
 - finasteride (5- α reductase inhibitor)
 - flutamide (androgen reuptake inhibitor)
 - spironolactone: androgen receptor inhibitor



Clinical Signs of Endocrine Imbalance

- Menstrual disorder/amenorrhea (80%)
- Infertility (74%)
- Hirsutism (69%)
- Obesity (49%)
- Impaired glucose tolerance (35%)
- DM (10%)



Polycystic Ovarian Syndrome – HAIR-AN

Hirsutism, HyperAndrogenism, Infertility, Insulin Resistance, Acanthosis Nigricans



PCOS may be confused with:

- Late onset congenital adrenal hyperplasia (21-hydroxylase deficiency)
- Cushing's syndrome
- Ovarian and adrenal neoplasms
- Hyperprolactinemia
- Hypothyroidism



Long-Term Health Consequences

- Hyperlipidemia
- Adult-onset DM
- Endometrial hyperplasia
- Infertility
- Obesity
- Sleep apnea



Use of Metformin in Polycystic Ovary Syndrome. A Meta-Analysis

Obstet Gynecol 2008;111(4):959-68.

Study: This meta-analysis of 17 RCTs assessed the efficacy of metformin or metformin in combination with clomiphene citrate in women with PCOS who were seeking pregnancy.

Main Outcomes: Ovulation, pregnancy, and live birth. Patients: 1,639 patients with PCOS were followed up for up to 12 mo.

Results: Compared to placebo, metformin increased the odds of ovulation (OR 2.94, 95% CI 1.43-6.02). However, when used alone, metformin did not significantly increase the odds of achieving pregnancy (OR 1.56, 95% CI 0.74-3.33). When compared to clomiphene alone, the combination of metformin and clomiphene increased the likelihood of ovulation (OR 4.39, 95% CI 1.94-9.96) and pregnancy (OR 2.67, 95% CI 1.45-4.94). The effect of combination therapy was most prominent in clomiphene-resistant and obese women with PCOS. Furthermore, the combination therapy had a higher likelihood of having a live birth compared to clomiphene alone, but this did not reach significance (OR 1.74, 95% CI 0.79-3.86).

Conclusions: Metformin increases the likelihood of ovulation. When used together with clomiphene, metformin increases the likelihood of both ovulation and pregnancy, especially in clomiphene-resistant and obese women.

Gynecological Infections

Physiologic Discharge

- clear, white, flocculent, odorless discharge; pH 3.8-4.2
- smear contains epithelial cells, *Lactobacilli*
- increases with increased estrogen states: pregnancy, OCP, mid-cycle, PCOS, or premenarchal
- if increased in perimenopausal/postmenopausal woman, consider investigation for other effects of excess estrogen (e.g. endometrial cancer)

Vulvovaginitis

PREPUBERTAL VULVOVAGINITIS

- clinical features
 - irritation, pruritus
 - discharge
 - vulvar erythema
 - vaginal bleeding (specifically due to Group A *Streptococci* and *Shigella*)
- differential diagnosis
 - non-specific vulvovaginitis (25-75%)
 - infections (respiratory, enteric, systemic, sexually acquired)
 - foreign body (toilet paper most common)
 - *Candida* (if using diapers)
 - pinworms
 - polyps, tumor (ovarian malignancy)
 - vulvar skin disease (lichen sclerosis, condyloma acuminata)
 - trauma (accidental straddle injury, sexual abuse)
 - psychosomatic vaginal complaints (specific to vaginal discharge)
 - endocrine abnormalities (specific to vaginal bleeding)
 - blood dyscrasia (specific to vaginal bleeding)
- etiology
 - infectious
 - ◆ poor hygiene, proximity of vagina to anus
 - ◆ recent infection (respiratory, enteric, systemic)
 - ◆ STD: investigate sexual abuse
 - nonspecific
 - ◆ lack of protective hair and labial fat pads
 - ◆ lack of estrogenization
 - ◆ susceptible to chemicals, soaps (bubble baths), medications, and clothing
 - ◆ enuresis
- investigations
 - vaginal swab for culture (specifically state that it is a pre-pubertal specimen), pH, wet-mount, and KOH smear in adults only
- treatment
 - enhanced hygiene and local measures (handwashing, white cotton underwear, no nylon tights, no tight fitting clothes, no sleeper pajamas, sitz baths, avoid bubble baths, use mild detergent, eliminate fabric softener, avoid prolonged exposure to wet bathing suits, urination with legs spread apart)
 - A&D® dermatological ointment (vitamin A/D) to protect vulvar skin
 - infectious: treat with antibiotics for organism identified

Table 13. Other Common Causes of Vulvovaginitis in Prepubertal Girls

	Pinworms	Lichen Sclerosis	Foreign Body
Diagnosis	Cellophane tape test	Area of white patches and thinning of skin	
Treatment	Empirical treatment with mebendazole	Topical steroid creams	Irrigation of vagina with saline, may require local anesthesia or an exam under anesthesia



Diagnostic Criteria for Polycystic Ovary Syndrome: Pitfalls and Controversies

JOGC 2008;8:671-9

At present, there is no clear-cut definition of biochemical hyperandrogenemia, particularly since there is dependence on poor laboratory standards for measuring androgens in women. Clinical signs of hyperandrogenism are ill-defined in women with PCOS, and diagnosis of both hirsutism and polycystic ovarian morphology remains subjective. There is also the inappropriate tendency to assign ovulatory status solely on basis of menstrual cycle history or poorly timed endocrine measurements. Therefore it is important as clinicians to recognize the multi-factorial and complex nature of PCOS and place this in the context of our present diagnostic limitations.



Vulvovaginitis

Vulvar and vaginal inflammation



Most common gynecological problem in prepubertal girls is non-specific vulvovaginitis, not yeast



There is no high quality evidence showing a link between vulvovaginal candidiasis and hygienic habits or wearing tight or synthetic clothing



Prepubertal and Adolescent Gynecological Infections: Legal Aspects of Confidentiality

- Clinicians who treat adolescents must be aware of federal and state laws related to adolescent consent and confidentiality
- They must be aware of guidelines governing funding sources for particular services and be familiar with the consent and confidentiality policies of the facility in which they practice

POSTMENOPAUSAL VAGINITIS/ATROPHIC VAGINITIS

- clinical features
 - dyspareunia
 - postcoital spotting
 - mild pruritus
- investigations
 - atrophy is usually a visual diagnosis: thinning of tissues, erythema, petechiae, bleeding points, dryness on speculum exam
 - rule out malignancy: especially endometrial cancer
- treatment
 - local estrogen replacement (ideal): Premarin® cream, VagiFem® tablets, or Estrin®
 - oral or transdermal hormone replacement therapy (if treatment for systemic symptoms is desired)
 - good hygiene



INFECTIOUS VULVOVAGINITIS

Table 14. Infectious Vulvovaginitis

	Candidiasis (Moniliasis)	Bacterial Vaginosis (BV)	Trichomoniasis
Organisms	<i>Candida albicans</i> (90%) <i>Candida glabrata</i> (<5%) <i>Candida tropicalis</i> (<5%)	<i>Gardnerella vaginalis</i> <i>Mycoplasma hominis</i> Anaerobes: <i>Prevotella</i> , <i>Mobiluncus</i> , <i>Bacteroides</i>	<i>Trichomonas vaginalis</i> (flagellated protozoan)
Pathophysiology or Transmission	Predisposing factors include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Immunosuppressed host (DM, AIDS, etc.) Recent antibiotic use Increased estrogen levels (e.g. pregnancy, OCP) 	Replacement of vaginal <i>Lactobacillus</i> with organisms above	Sexual transmission
Discharge	Whitish, "cottage cheese," minimal	Gray, thin, diffuse	Yellow-green, malodorous, diffuse, frothy
Other	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 20% asymptomatic 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 50-75% asymptomatic 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 25% asymptomatic
Signs/Symptoms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Intense pruritus Swollen, inflamed genitals Vulvar burning, dysuria, dyspareunia 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fishy odor, especially after coitus Absence of vulvar/vaginal irritation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Petechiae on vagina and cervix Occasionally irritated tender vulva Dysuria, frequency
pH	≤4.5	≥4.5	≥4.5
Saline Wetmount	KOH wetmount reveals hyphae and spores	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> >20% clue cells = squamous epithelial cells dotted with coccobacilli (<i>Gardnerella</i>) Paucity of WBC Paucity of <i>Lactobacilli</i> Positive whiff test: fishy odor with addition of KOH to slide (due to formation of amines) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Motile flagellated organisms Many WBC Inflammatory cells (PMNs)
Treatment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clotrimazole, butoconazole, miconazole, terconazole suppositories, and/or creams for 1, 3, or 7 d treatments Treatment in pregnancy is usually topical Fluconazole 150 mg PO in single dose (can be used in pregnancy) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No treatment if non-pregnant and asymptomatic, unless scheduled for pelvic surgery or procedure Oral <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Metronidazole 500 mg PO bid x 7 d Topical <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Metronidazole gel 0.75% x 5 d OD (may be used in pregnancy) Clindamycin 2% 5 g intravaginally at bedtime for 7 d 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treat even if asymptomatic Metronidazole 2 g PO single dose or 500 mg bid x 7 d (alternative) Symptomatic pregnant women should be treated with 2 g metronidazole once
Other	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prophylaxis for recurrent infection includes boric acid, vaginal suppositories, luteal phase fluconazole Routine treatment of partner(s) not recommended (not sexually transmitted) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Associated with recurrent preterm labor, preterm birth, and postpartum endometritis Need to warn patients on metronidazole not to consume alcohol (disulfiram-like action) Routine treatment of partner(s) not recommended (not sexually transmitted) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Warnings accompanying metronidazole use Treat partner(s)

Sexually Transmitted Diseases

- see [Family Medicine, FM45](#)

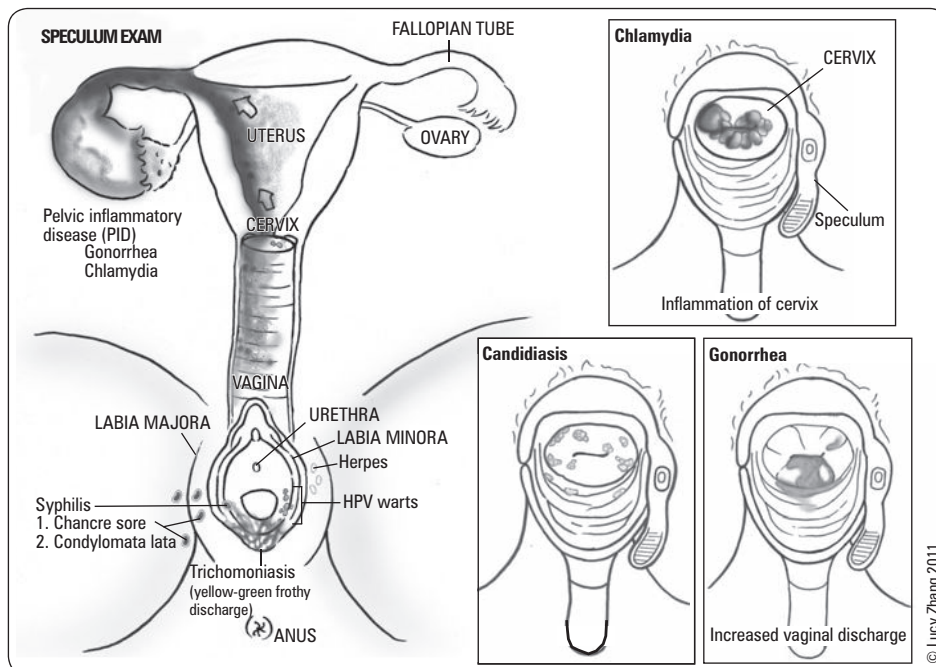


Figure 13. Speculum exam

TRICHOMONIASIS

- see [Infectious Vulvovaginitis, Table 14, GY24](#)

CHLAMYDIA

Etiology

- *Chlamydia trachomatis*

Epidemiology

- common bacterial STD in the United States
- often associated with *N. gonorrhoeae*

Clinical Features

- asymptomatic (80% of women)
- muco-purulent endocervical discharge
- urethral syndrome: dysuria, frequency, pyuria, no bacteria on culture
- pelvic pain
- postcoital bleeding or intermenstrual bleeding (particularly if on OCP and prior history of good cycle control)
- symptomatic sexual partner

Investigations

- cervical culture or nucleic acid amplification test
- obligate intracellular parasite: tissue culture is the definitive standard
- urine and vaginal tests now available, which are equally or more effective than cervical culture

Treatment

- doxycycline 100 mg PO bid for 7 d or azithromycin 1 g PO in a single dose
- if pregnant: azithromycin 1 g PO in a single dose or amoxicillin 500 mg PO tid for 7 d
- also treat gonorrhea because of high rate of co-infection
- treat partners
- reportable disease
- test of cure for chlamydia required in pregnancy (cure rates lower in pregnant patients) → retest 3-4 wk after initiation of therapy

Screening

- high risk groups
- during pregnancy
- with initiation of OCP (independent risk factor)



STD Testing

- Vaginal swab
 - Tests for bacterial vaginosis, trichomoniasis, candida
- Cervical swab
 - Tests for gonorrhea and chlamydia



Risk Factors for STDs

- History of previous STD
- Contact with infected person
- Sexually active individual <25 yr
- Multiple partners
- New partner in last 3 mo
- Lack of barrier protection use
- Street involvement (homelessness, drug use)



CDC Notifiable Diseases

- Chancroid
- Chlamydia
- Gonorrhea
- Hepatitis A, B, C
- HIV
- Syphilis

Complications

- acute salpingitis, PID
- Fitz-Hugh-Curtis syndrome (liver capsule inflammation)
- reactive arthritis (male predominance, HLA-B27 associated), conjunctivitis, urethritis
- infertility: tubal obstruction from low grade salpingitis
- ectopic pregnancy
- chronic pelvic pain
- perinatal infection: conjunctivitis, pneumonia

GONORRHEA

Etiology

- *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
- symptoms and risk factors same as with chlamydia

Investigations

- Gram stain shows Gram-negative intracellular diplococci
- cervical, rectal, and throat culture (if clinically indicated)

Treatment

- single dose of ceftriaxone 250 mg IM plus single dose of azithromycin 1 g PO or doxycycline 100 mg PO bid for 7d
- if pregnant: above regimen or alternate cephalosporin, or single dose of azithromycin 2 g PO
- also treat chlamydia, because of high rate of co-infection
- treat partners
- reportable disease
- screening as with Chlamydia



Test of cure for *C. trachomatis* and *N. gonorrhoeae* is not routinely indicated. Repeat testing if symptomatic, if compliance with treatment is uncertain, or if pregnant

HUMAN PAPILLOMAVIRUS

Etiology

- common viral STD in the United States
- >200 subtypes, of which >30 are genital subtypes
- HPV types 6 and 11 are classically associated with anogenital warts/condylomata acuminata
- HPV types 16 and 18 are the most oncogenic (classically associated with cervical HSIL)
- types 16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 36, 45 (and others) associated with increased incidence of cervical and vulvar intraepithelial hyperplasia and carcinoma

Clinical Features

- latent infection
 - no visible lesions, asymptomatic
 - only detected by DNA hybridization tests
- subclinical infection
 - visible lesion found during colposcopy or on Pap test
- clinical infection
 - visible wart-like lesion without magnification
 - hyperkeratotic, verrucous or flat, macular lesions
 - vulvar edema

Investigations

- cytology (see *Cervical Screening Pap Test*, GY41)
 - koilocytosis: nuclear enlargement and atypia with perinuclear halo
- biopsy of lesions at colposcopy
- detection of HPV DNA subtype using nucleic acid probes (not routinely done but can be done in presence of abnormal Pap test to guide treatment)

Treatment

- patient administered
 - podofilox 0.5% solution or gel bid x 3 d in a row (4 d off) then repeat x 4 wk
 - imiquimod (Aldara®) 5% cream 3x/wk qhs x 16 wk
- provider administered
 - cryotherapy with liquid nitrogen: repeat q1-2wk
 - podophyllin resin 10-25% in tincture of benzoin: weekly
 - trichloroacetic acid (TCA) or bichloroacetic acid weekly (BCA) (80-90%); safe in pregnancy
 - surgical removal/laser

Prevention

- vaccination: Gardasil®, Cervarix® (see *Table 24*, GY43)
- condoms may not fully protect (areas not covered, must be used every time throughout entire sexual act)



Genital Warts During Pregnancy

- Condyloma tend to get larger in pregnancy and should be treated early (consider excision)
- C-section only if obstruction of birth canal or risk of extensive bleeding
- Do not use imiquimod, podophyllin, or podofilox



Human Rights in Health Equity: Cervical Cancer and HPV Vaccines

- Am J Law Med* 2009;35:365-387
- While cervical cancer rates have drastically fallen in developed countries due to effective prevention and treatment, socially disadvantaged women within these countries remain disproportionately more likely to develop and die of cervical cancer.
 - In most developing countries cervical cancer rates have risen or remained unchanged.
 - Must recognize that cervical cancer disparities between race groups, urban and rural residence, and high and low SES are attributed to disparate screening and vaccination coverage.
 - Programs are implemented without sufficient attention to conditions that render screening less effective or inaccessible to disadvantaged social groups including: lack of information, undervaluing of preventive care, opportunistic delivery in limited health care settings, sexual health stigma, and related privacy concerns.

HERPES SIMPLEX VIRUS OF VULVA

Etiology

- 90% are HSV-2, 10% are HSV-1

Clinical Features

- may be asymptomatic
- initial symptoms: present 2-21 d following contact
- prodromal symptoms: tingling, burning, pruritus
- multiple, painful, shallow ulcerations with small vesicles appear 7-10 d after initial infection (absent in many infected persons); lesions are infectious
- inguinal lymphadenopathy, malaise, and fever often with first infection
- dysuria and urinary retention if urethral mucosa affected
- recurrent infections: less severe, less frequent and shorter in duration (especially with HSV-1)

Investigations

- viral culture preferred in patients with ulcer present, however decreased sensitivity as lesions heal
- cytologic smear (Tzanck smear)
 - multinucleated giant cells, acidophilic intranuclear inclusion bodies
- type specific serologic tests for antibodies to HSV-1 and HSV-2
- HSV DNA PCR

Treatment

- first episode
 - acyclovir 400 mg PO tid or 200 mg PO five times daily x 7-10 d, or famciclovir 250 mg PO tid x 7-10 d, or valacyclovir 1 g PO bid x 7-10 d
- recurrent episode
 - acyclovir 400 mg PO tid or 800 mg PO bid x 5 d, or acyclovir 800 mg PO tid x 2 d; famciclovir and valacyclovir may also be used
- daily suppressive therapy
 - consider if more than 6 recurrences per yr or one every 2 mo
 - acyclovir 400 mg PO bid, or famciclovir 250 mg bid, or valacyclovir 0.5-1 g PO OD
- severe disease
 - IV therapy: acyclovir 5-10 mg/kg IV q8h x 2-7 d or until clinical improvement, followed by oral antiviral therapy to complete at least 10 d
- education regarding transmission
- avoid contact from onset of prodrome until lesions have cleared
- use barrier contraception



Classically

HSV I: disease above the belt (oral)

HSV II: disease below the belt (genital)



HSV Infections During Pregnancy

- Antiviral suppression of women with first episode or history of HSV infections from 36 wk GA onward
- C-section should be performed on women who have active genital lesions at time of delivery
- Treatment: acyclovir 400 mg PO tid

SYPHILIS

Etiology

- *Treponema pallidum*

Classifications

- primary syphilis
 - 3-4 wk after exposure
 - painless chancre on vulva, vagina, or cervix
 - painless inguinal lymphadenopathy
 - serological tests usually negative, local infection only
- secondary syphilis (can resolve spontaneously)
 - 2-6 mo after initial infection
 - nonspecific symptoms: malaise, anorexia, headache, diffuse lymphadenopathy
 - generalized maculopapular rash: palms, soles, trunk, limbs
 - condylomata lata: anogenital, broad-based fleshy gray lesions
 - serological tests usually positive
- latent syphilis
 - no clinical manifestations; detected by serology only
- tertiary syphilis
 - may involve any organ system
 - neurological: tabes dorsalis, general paresis
 - cardiovascular: aortic aneurysm, dilated aortic root
 - vulvar gumma: nodules that enlarge, ulcerate and become necrotic (rare)
- congenital syphilis
 - may cause fetal anomalies, stillbirths, or neonatal death



Epidemiology of Genital Ulcers

HSV	70-80%
1° Syphilis	5%
Chancroid	<1%
<i>(Haemophilus ducreyi)</i>	

Investigations

- aspiration of ulcer serum or node
- darkfield microscopy (most sensitive and specific diagnostic test for syphilis)
 - spirochetes
- non-treponemal screening tests (VDRL, RPR); nonreactive after treatment, can be positive with other conditions
- specific anti-treponemal antibody tests (FTA-ABS, MHA-TP, TP-PA)
 - confirmatory tests; remain reactive for life (even after adequate treatment)

Treatment

- treatment of primary, secondary, latent syphilis of <1 yr duration
 - benzathine penicillin G 2.4 million units IM single dose
 - treat partners, reportable disease
- treatment of latent syphilis >1 yr duration
 - benzathine penicillin G 2.4 million units IM q1wk x 3 wk
- treatment of neurosyphilis
 - IV aqueous penicillin G 3-4 million units IM q4h x 10-14 d
- screening
 - high risk groups
 - in pregnancy (see [Obstetrics](#), Table 12, OB19)

Complications

- if untreated, 1/3 will experience late complications

HIV

- see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID29



Bartholinitis/Bartholin Gland Abscess

Etiology

- often anaerobic and polymicrobial
- *U. urealyticum*, *N. gonorrhoeae*, *C. trachomatis*, *E. coli*, *P. mirabilis*, *Streptococcus* spp., *S. aureus* (rare)
- blockage of duct

Clinical Features

- unilateral swelling and pain in inferior lateral opening of vagina
- sitting and walking may become difficult and/or painful

Treatment

- sitz baths, warm compresses
- antibiotics: cephalexin x 1 wk
- incision and drainage using local anesthesia with placement of Word catheter (10 French latex catheter) for 2-3 wk
- marsupialization under general anesthetic – more definitive treatment
- rarely treated by removing gland

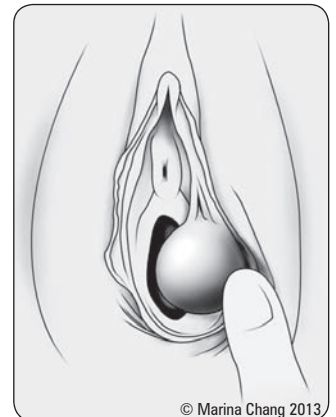


Figure 14. Bartholin's gland abscess

Pelvic Inflammatory Disease

- up to 20% of all gynecology-related hospital admissions

Etiology

- causative organisms (in order of frequency)
 - *C. trachomatis*
 - *N. gonorrhoeae*
 - gonorrhea and chlamydia often co-exist
 - endogenous flora: anaerobic, aerobic, or both
 - ♦ *E. coli*, *Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus*, *Enterococcus*, *Bacteroides*, *Peptostreptococcus*, *H. influenzae*, *G. vaginalis*
 - ♦ cause of recurrent PID
 - ♦ associated with instrumentation
 - *Actinomyces israelii* (Gram-positive, non acid-fast anaerobe)
 - ♦ 1-4% of PID cases associated with IUDs
 - others (TB, Gram-negatives, CMV, *U. urealyticum*, etc.)

Risk Factors

- age <30 yr
- risk factors as for chlamydia and gonorrhea
- vaginal douching
- IUD (within first 10 d after insertion)
- invasive gynecologic procedures (D&C, endometrial biopsy)



PID

Inflammation of the upper genital tract (above cervix) including endometrium, fallopian tubes, ovaries, pelvic peritoneum, ± contiguous structures



PID accounts for up to 20% of all gynecological hospital admissions

Clinical Presentation

- up to 2/3 asymptomatic: many subtle or mild symptoms
- common
 - fever $>38.3^{\circ}\text{C}$
 - lower abdominal pain and tenderness
 - abnormal discharge: cervical or vaginal
- uncommon
 - N/V
 - dysuria
 - AUB
- chronic disease (often due to chlamydia)
 - constant pelvic pain
 - dyspareunia
 - palpable mass
 - very difficult to treat, may require surgery

Investigations

- blood work
 - β -hCG (must rule out ectopic pregnancy), CBC, blood cultures if suspect septicemia
- urine R&M
- speculum exam, bimanual exam
 - vaginal swab for Gram stain, C&S
 - cervical cultures for *N. gonorrhoeae*, *C. trachomatis*
 - endometrial biopsy will give definitive diagnosis (rarely done)
- ultrasound
 - may be normal
 - free fluid in cul-de-sac
 - pelvic or tubo-ovarian abscess
 - hydrosalpinx (dilated fallopian tube)
- laparoscopy (gold standard)
 - for definitive diagnosis: may miss subtle inflammation of tubes or endometritis

Treatment

- must treat with polymicrobial coverage
- inpatient if
 - moderate to severe illness
 - atypical infection
 - adnexal mass, tubo-ovarian or pelvic abscess
 - unable to tolerate oral antibiotics or failed oral therapy
 - immunocompromised
 - pregnant
 - adolescent – first episode
 - surgical emergency cannot be excluded (e.g. ovarian torsion)
 - PID is secondary to instrumentation
 - recommended treatment
 - cefotetan 2 g IV q12h or cefoxitin 2 g IV q6h + doxycycline 100 mg PO/IV q12h, or clindamycin 900 mg IV q8h + gentamicin 2 mg/kg IV/IM loading dose followed by 1.5 mg/kg loading dose q8h
 - continue IV antibiotics for 24 h after symptoms have improved then doxycycline 100 mg PO bid to complete 14 d
 - percutaneous drainage of abscess under U/S guidance
 - when no response to treatment, laparoscopic drainage
 - if failure, treatment is surgical (salpingectomy, TAH/BSO)
- outpatient if
 - typical findings
 - mild to moderate illness
 - oral antibiotics tolerated
 - compliance ensured
 - follow-up within 48-72 h (to ensure symptoms not worsening)
 - recommended treatment
 - ♦ single dose ceftriaxone 250 mg IM + doxycycline 100 mg PO bid x 14 d \pm metronidazole 500 mg PO bid x 14 d
 - ♦ consider removing IUD after a minimum of 24 h of treatment
 - ♦ reportable disease
 - ♦ treat partners
 - ♦ consider re-testing for *C. trachomatis* and *N. gonorrhoeae* 4-6 wk after treatment if documented infection



PID Complications

I FACE PID

Infertility
 Fitz-Hugh-Curtis syndrome
 Abscesses
 Chronic pelvic pain
 Ectopic pregnancy
 Peritonitis
 Intestinal obstruction
 Disseminated infection (sepsis, endocarditis, arthritis, meningitis)



PID Diagnosis

- **Must** have:
 - Lower abdominal pain
- **Plus** one of
 - Cervical motion tenderness
 - Adnexal tenderness
- **Plus** one or more of
 - High risk partner
 - Temperature $>38^{\circ}\text{C}$
 - Mucopurulent cervical discharge
 - Positive culture for *N. gonorrhoeae*, *C. trachomatis*, *E. coli*, or other vaginal flora
 - Cul-de-sac fluid, pelvic abscess or inflammatory mass on U/S or bimanual
 - Leukocytosis
 - Elevated ESR or CRP (not commonly used)



Treat PID with **FOXY DOXY**
 (cefotetan + doxycycline)



Alternative PID Treatments

- Azithromycin (1 g PO weekly x 2 wk) + ceftriaxone 250 mg IM x 1
 - \pm metronidazole 500 mg PO bid x 14 d
 - Quinolones are no longer recommended for treatment of PID due to quinolone-resistant *N. gonorrhoeae*
- Source: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines. *MMWR* 2010;59(RR-12):63-67

Complications of Untreated PID

- chronic pelvic pain
- abscess, peritonitis
- adhesion formation
- ectopic pregnancy
- infertility
 - 1 episode of PID → 13% infertility
 - 2 episodes of PID → 36% infertility
- bacteremia
- septic arthritis, endocarditis

Toxic Shock Syndrome

- see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID24

Risk Factors

- tampon use
- diaphragm, cervical cap, or sponge use (prolonged use, i.e. >24 h)
- wound infections
- post-partum infections
- early recognition and treatment of syndrome is imperative as incorrect diagnosis can be fatal

Clinical Presentation

- sudden high fever
- sore throat, headache, diarrhea
- erythroderma
- signs of multisystem organ failure
- refractory hypotension
- exfoliation of palmar and plantar surfaces of the hands and feet 1-2 wk after onset of illness

Treatment

- remove potential sources of infection (foreign objects and wound debris)
- debride necrotic tissues
- adequate hydration
- penicillinase-resistant antibiotics, e.g. cloxacillin
- steroid use controversial but if started within 72 h, may reduce severity of symptoms and duration of fever

**Toxic Shock Syndrome**

Multiple organ system failure due to *S. aureus* exotoxin (rare condition)

Sexual Abuse

- see [Family Medicine](#), FM27, [Emergency Medicine](#), ER28

**Sexual Dysfunction****Etiology**

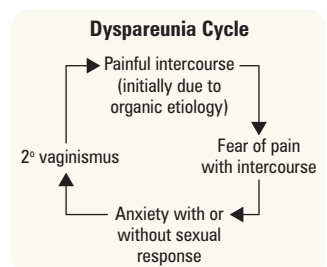
- psychological or emotional: depression, abuse
- hormonal: menopause
- neurologic dysfunction: spinal cord injury
- vascular insufficiency: DM
- drug side effects: β -blockers
- trauma: episiotomy

Classification

- lack of desire (60-70% of women)
- lack of arousal
- anorgasmia (5-10%)
 - primary anorgasmia: never before achieved orgasm under any circumstances
 - secondary anorgasmia: was able to achieve orgasms before but now unable to
- dyspareunia (3-6%): painful intercourse, superficial or deep
 - vaginismus (15%)
 - vulvodynia
 - vaginal atrophy
 - vulvar vestibulitis: associated with history of frequent yeast infections
 - PID

Treatment

- lack of desire: assess factors, rule out organic causes, relationship therapy, sensate focus exercises
- anorgasmia: self-exploration/pleasuring, relationship therapy if needed, bridging techniques (different sexual positions, clitoral stimulation during intercourse)



- dyspareunia
 - Kegel and reverse Kegel exercises
 - dilator treatment
 - comfort with self-exam
 - psychotherapy, other behavioral techniques
 - female on top position: allows for control of speed and duration
 - vestibulitis: remove local irritants, change in contraceptive methods, dietary changes (increased citrate, decreased oxalate), and vestibulectomy (rare)
 - vulvodynia: local moisturization, cold compresses, systemic nerve blocking therapy (amitriptyline, gabapentin), topical anesthetics, estrogen cream
 - pain clinic

**Kegel Exercises**

Regular contraction and relaxation to strengthen pelvic floor muscles

Reverse Kegel Exercises

1 s contraction then 5 s of relaxation

**Menopause**

Occurrence of last spontaneous menstrual period, resulting from loss of ovarian function (loss of oocyte response to gonadotropins)

"Being in menopause"

Lack of menses for 1 yr

Perimenopause

Period of time surrounding menopause (2-8 yr preceding + 1 yr after last menses) characterized by fluctuating hormone levels, irregular menstrual cycles, and symptom onset



- 85% of women experience hot flashes
- 20-30% seek medical attention
- 10% are unable to work



- Osteoporosis is the single most important health hazard associated with menopause
- Cardiovascular disease is the leading cause of death post-menopause



- Increased risk of breast cancer (RR 1.3) is associated with estrogen+progesterone HRT, but not with estrogen-only HRT
- All women taking HRT should have periodic surveillance and counseling regarding its benefits and risks

Menopause

- see [Family Medicine, FM42](#)

Definitions

- lack of menses for 1 yr
- types of menopause
 - physiological; average age 51 yr (follicular atresia)
 - premature ovarian failure; before age 40 (autoimmune disorder, infection, Turner's syndrome)
 - iatrogenic (surgical/radiation/chemotherapy)

Clinical Features

- associated with estrogen deficiency
 - vasomotor instability (tends to dissipate with time)
 - ♦ hot flushes/flashes, night sweats, sleep disturbances, formication, nausea, palpitations
 - urogenital atrophy involving vagina, urethra, bladder
 - ♦ dyspareunia, pruritus, vaginal dryness, bleeding, urinary frequency, urgency, incontinence
 - skeletal
 - ♦ osteoporosis, joint and muscle pain, back pain
 - skin and soft tissue
 - ♦ decreased breast size, skin thinning/loss of elasticity
 - psychological
 - ♦ mood disturbance, irritability, fatigue, decreased libido, memory loss

Investigations

- increased levels of FSH (>35 IU/L) on day 3 of cycle (if still cycling) and LH (FSH>LH)
- FSH level not always predictive due to monthly variation; use absence of menses for 1 yr to diagnose
- decreased levels of estradiol (later)

Treatment

- goal is for individual symptom management
 - vasomotor instability
 - ♦ HRT (first line), SSRIs, venlafaxine, gabapentin, propranolol, clonidine
 - ♦ acupuncture
 - vaginal atrophy
 - ♦ local estrogen: cream (Premarin*), vaginal suppository (VagiFem*), ring (Estring*)
 - ♦ lubricants (Replens*)
 - urogenital health
 - ♦ lifestyle changes (weight loss, bladder re-training), local estrogen replacement, surgery
 - osteoporosis
 - ♦ 1,000-1,500 mg calcium OD, 800-1,000 IU vitamin D, weight-bearing exercise, smoking cessation
 - ♦ bisphosphonates (e.g. alendronate)
 - ♦ selective estrogen receptor modifiers (SERMs): raloxifene (Evista*) – mimics estrogen effects on bone, avoids estrogen-like action on breast and uterine cancer; does not help hot flashes
 - ♦ HRT: second-line treatment (unless for vasomotor instability as well)
 - decreased libido
 - ♦ vaginal lubrication, counseling, androgen replacement (testosterone cream or the oral form Android*)
 - cardiovascular disease
 - ♦ management of cardiovascular risk factors
 - mood and memory
 - ♦ antidepressants (first line), HRT (augments effect)
 - alternative choices (not evidence-based, safety not established)
 - ♦ black cohosh, phytoestrogens, St. John's wort, ginkgo biloba, valerian, evening primrose oil, ginseng, Don Quai

Hormone Replacement Therapy

- see [Family Medicine, FM42](#)
- primary indication is treatment of menopausal symptoms (vasomotor instability)
- keep doses low (e.g. 0.3 mg Premarin®) and duration of treatment short (<5 yr)

HRT Components

- estrogen
 - oral or transdermal (e.g. patch, gel)
 - transdermal preferred for women with hypertriglyceridemia or impaired hepatic function, smokers, and women who suffer from headaches associated with oral HRT
 - low-dose (preferred dose: 0.3 mg Premarin®/25 µg Estradot® patch, can increase if necessary)
- progestin
 - given in combination with estrogen for women with an intact uterus to prevent development of endometrial hyperplasia/cancer

Table 15. Examples of HRT Regimens

HRT Regimen	Estrogen Dose	Progestin Dose	Notes
Unopposed Estrogen	CEE 0.625 mg PO OD	None	If no intact uterus
Standard-dose	CEE 0.625 mg PO OD	MPA 2.5 mg PO OD, or micronized progesterone 100 mg PO OD	Withdrawal bleeding may occur in a spotty, unpredictable manner Usually abates after 6-8 mo due to endometrial atrophy Once patient has become amenorrheic on HRT, significant subsequent bleeding episodes require evaluation (endometrial biopsy)
Standard-dose Cyclic	CEE 0.625 mg PO OD	MPA 5-10 mg PO days 1-14 only, or micronized progesterone 200 mg PO OD days 1-14 only	Bleeding occurs monthly after day 14 of progestin (can continue for yr) PMS-like symptoms (breast tenderness, fluid retention, headache, nausea) are more prominent with cyclic HRT
Pulsatile	CEE 0.625 mg PO OD	MPA low-dose	3 d on, 3 d off
Transdermal	Estroderm®-Estradiol 0.05 mg/d or 0.1 mg/d Estalis®-Estradiol 140 µg/d or 250 µg/d	Estroderm®-MPA 2.5 mg PO OD Estalis®-NEA 50 µg/d	Use patch twice weekly Can use oral progestins (Estroderm®) Combined patches available (Estalis®)
Topical	Estrace® 2-4 g/d x 1-2 wk, 1 g/d maintenance Premarin® 0.5-2 g/d for 21 d then off 7 d for vaginal atrophy, 0.5 g/d for 21 d then off 7 d or twice/wk for dyspareunia Estragyn® 2-4 g/d	Crinone® 4% or 8% (45 or 90 mg applicator)	If simultaneously taking oral estrogen tablet, may need to adjust dosing If intact uterus, also take progesterone

CEE = conjugated equine estrogen (e.g. Premarin®); MPA = medroxyprogesterone acetate (e.g. Provera®); NEA = norethindrone acetate
Consider lower dose regimens, PREMPRO® 0.45/1.5 (Premarin® 0.45 mg and Provera® 1.5 mg); Estrace® (topical 17β-estradiol) = 0.1 mg active ingredient/g;
Premarin® (topical CEE) = 0.625 mg active ingredient/g; Estragyn® (topical estrone) = 1 mg active ingredient/g

Side Effects of HRT

- abnormal uterine bleeding
- mastodynia – breast tenderness
- edema, bloating, heartburn, nausea
- mood changes (progesterone)
- can be worse in progesterone phase of combined therapy

Contraindications to HRT

- absolute
 - acute liver disease
 - undiagnosed vaginal bleeding
 - known or suspected uterine cancer/breast cancer
 - acute vascular thrombosis or history of severe thrombophlebitis or thromboembolic disease
 - cardiovascular disease
- relative
 - pre-existing uncontrolled HTN
 - uterine fibroids and endometriosis
 - familial hyperlipidemias
 - migraine headaches



Menopause Pathophysiology

Degenerating theca cells fail to react to endogenous gonadotropins (FSH, LH)

Less estrogen is produced

Decreased negative feedback on hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis

Increased FSH and LH

Stromal cells continue to produce androgens as a result of increased LH stimulation



Absolute Contraindications to HRT

ABCD

Acute liver disease
Bleeding
Cancer (breast/uterine), **C**ardiovascular disease
DVT (thromboembolic disease)

- family history of estrogen-dependent cancer
- chronic thrombophlebitis
- DM (with vascular disease)
- gallbladder disease, hypertriglyceridemia, impaired liver function (consider transdermal estrogen)
- fibrocystic disease of the breasts

WOMEN'S HEALTH INITIATIVE (launched in 1991)

- two non-randomized studies investigating health risks and benefits of HRT in healthy postmenopausal women 50-79 yr old
 - continuous combined HRT (CEE 0.625 mg + MPA 2.5 mg OD) in 16,608 women with an intact uterus
 - estrogen-alone (CEE 0.625 mg) in 10,739 women with a previous hysterectomy
- both arms of the trial were stopped early because of evidence of increased risk of breast cancer, stroke, PE, and CHD in the combined HRT arm, and increased risk of stroke with no CHD benefits in the estrogen-alone arm
- the apparent increase in CHD was in disagreement with results of previous observational trial
- results of the WHI study have since been challenged and revision of how CHD was diagnosed led to loss of statistical significance of the results
- benefits and risks reported as number of cases per 10,000 women each yr

Table 16. HRT Benefits vs. Risks

Benefits	Risks
Vasomotor Symptoms: less frequent and severe with use of either combined or estrogen-alone HRT	Stroke: 8 additional cases with combined HRT, and 12 additional cases for estrogen alone (WHI)
Osteoporosis: 5 fewer cases of hip fractures and 47 fewer cases of all fractures with combined HRT; 6 fewer cases of hip fractures with estrogen alone	DVT/PE: 18 additional cases with combined HRT, and 9 additional cases for estrogen-alone (WHI)
Colon Cancer: 6 fewer cases with combined HRT (WHI) One additional case with estrogen-alone	CHD: 7 additional MIs with combined HRT (WHI); secondary analysis suggests greater absolute risk for women aged >70 yr and for women who start HRT >10 yr post-menopause
	Breast Cancer: 8 additional cases with combined HRT (WHI) Risk only increased after >5 yr of combined HRT use; no increased risk for estrogen-alone
	Dementia and Mild Cognitive Impairment: 50% greater risk of developing dementia in women taking estrogen-alone after age 65; risk is greater for women taking combined HRT; risk of developing dementia was reduced for women taking HRT before age 65



Long-Term Hormone Therapy for Perimenopausal and Postmenopausal Women

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;7:CD004143

Purpose: To determine the effect of long-term HRT on mortality, cardiovascular outcomes, cancer, gallbladder disease, fractures, cognition, and QOL in perimenopausal and postmenopausal women, during HRT use, and after cessation of HRT.

Results: 23 studies with 42,380 women included. 70% of the data from the WHI (1998) and HERS (1998). None of the studies focused on perimenopausal women. Combined continuous HRT: increased risk of coronary event after 1 yr (absolute risk 18/1,000, 95% CI 3-7), venous thromboembolism after 1 yr (AR 7/1,000, 95% CI 4-11), stroke after 3 yr (AR 18/1,000, 95% CI 14-23), breast cancer after 5.6 yr (AR 23/1,000, 95% CI 19-29), gallbladder disease after 5.6 yr (AR 27/1,000, 95% CI 21-34), and death from lung cancer after 5.6 yr use (AR 9/1,000, 95% CI 6-13). Estrogen only HRT: increased risk of venous thromboembolism after 1-2 yr use (AR 5/1,000, 95% CI 2-10; after 7 yr AR 21/1,000, 95% CI 16-28), stroke after 7 yr (AR 32/1,000, 95% CI 25-40), and gallbladder disease after 7 yr use (AR 45/1,000, 95% CI 36-57) and did not significantly affect the risk of breast cancer. Women >65 yr of age taking combined HRT had a statistically significant increase in the incidence of dementia after 4 yr use (AR 18/1,000, 95% CI 11-30). Women taking HRT had a decreased risk of fractures with combined HRT after 5.6 yr (AR 86/1,000, 95% CI 79-84) and 7.1 yr of estrogen only HRT (AR 102/1,000, 95% CI 91-112).

Conclusions: HRT is not indicated for primary or secondary prevention of cardiovascular disease or dementia. Although HRT is considered effective for the prevention of postmenopausal osteoporosis, it is generally recommended as an option only for women at significant risk, for whom non-estrogen therapies are unsuitable.



Urogynecology

Pelvic Relaxation/Prolapse

Etiology

- relaxation, weakness, or defect in the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments which normally maintain the uterus in an anteflexed position and prevent it from descending through the urogenital diaphragm (i.e. levator ani muscles)
- related to
 - vaginal childbirth
 - aging
 - decreased estrogen (post-menopause)
 - following pelvic surgery
 - increased intra-abdominal pressure (obesity, chronic cough, constipation, ascites, heavy lifting)
 - congenital (rarely)
 - ethnicity (Caucasian women > Asian or African women)
 - collagen disorders

GENERAL CONSERVATIVE TREATMENT

(for pelvic relaxation/prolapse and urinary incontinence)

- Kegel exercises
- local vaginal estrogen therapy
- vaginal pessary (intravaginal suspension disc)



Pelvic Relaxation/Prolapse

Protrusion of pelvic organs into or out of the vagina

Table 17. Pelvic Prolapse

Type	Clinical Features	Treatment
Uterine Prolapse (protrusion of cervix and uterus into vagina)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Groin/back pain (stretching of uterosacral ligaments) Feeling of heaviness/pressure in the pelvis <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Worse with standing, lifting Worse at the end of the day Relieved by lying down Ulceration/bleeding (particularly if hypoestrogenic) ± urinary incontinence 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> See <i>General Conservative Treatment, G33</i> Vaginal hysterectomy ± surgical prevention of vault prolapse Consider additional surgical procedures if urinary incontinence, cystocele, rectocele, and/or enterocele are present
Vault Prolapse (protrusion of apex of vaginal vault into vagina, post-hysterectomy)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> See <i>General Conservative Treatment, G33</i> Sacralcolpopexy (vaginal vault suspension), sacrospinous fixation, or uterosacral ligament suspension
Cystocele (protrusion of bladder into the anterior vaginal wall)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Frequency, urgency, nocturia Stress incontinence Incomplete bladder emptying ± associated increased incidence of urinary tract infections – may lead to renal impairment 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> See <i>General Conservative Treatment, G33</i> Anterior colporrhaphy ("anterior repair") Consider additional/alternative surgical procedure if documented urinary stress incontinence
Rectocele (protrusion of rectum into posterior vaginal wall)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Straining/digitation to evacuate stool Constipation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> See <i>General Conservative Treatment, G33</i> Also laxatives and stool softeners Posterior colporrhaphy ("posterior repair"), plication of endopelvic fascia and perineal muscles approximated in midline to support rectum and perineum (can result in dyspareunia)
Enterocele (prolapse of small bowel in upper posterior vaginal wall)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Similar to hernia repair Contents reduced, neck of peritoneal sac ligated, uterosacral ligaments, and levator ani muscles approximated

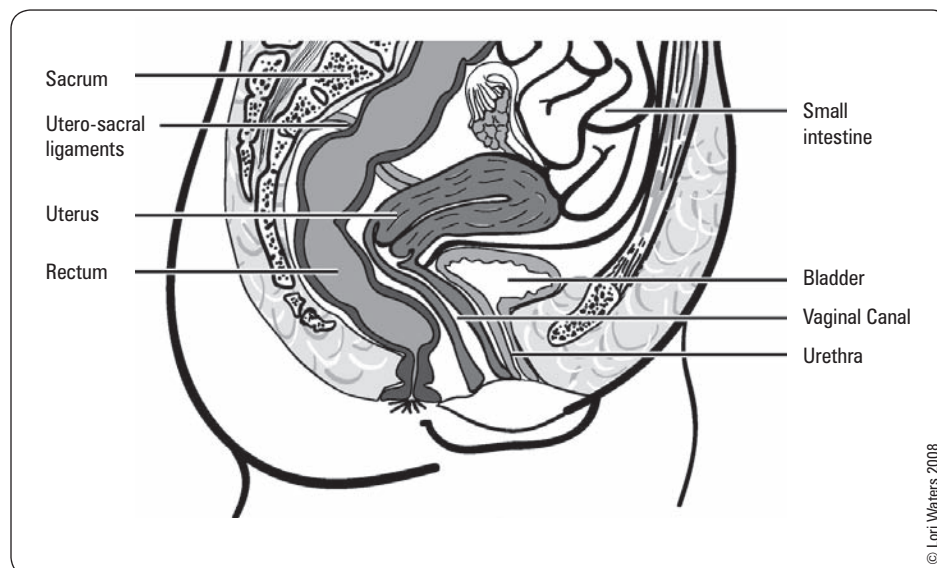


Figure 15. Pelvic anatomy

**Grading of Pelvic Organ Prolapse**

- 0 = no descent during straining
- 1 = distal portion of prolapse > 1 cm above level of hymen
- 2 = distal portion of prolapse ≤ 1 cm above or below level of hymen
- 3 = distal portion of prolapse > 1 cm below level of hymen but without complete vaginal eversion
- 4 = complete eversion of total length of lower genital tract
- **Procidencia:** failure of genital supports and complete protrusion of uterus through the vagina



The only **true** hernia of the pelvis is an **ENTEROCELE** because peritoneum herniates with the small bowel

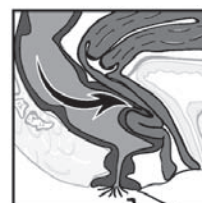
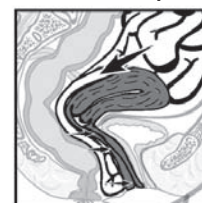
**Rectocele****Cystocele****Uterine Prolapse****Enterocele**

Figure 16. Rectocele, cystocele, uterine prolapse, enterocele



Urinary Incontinence

- see [Urology, U5](#)

STRESS INCONTINENCE

Definition

- involuntary loss of urine with increased intra-abdominal pressure (coughing, laughing, sneezing, walking, running)

Risk Factors for Stress Incontinence in Women

- pelvic prolapse
- pelvic surgery
- vaginal delivery
- hypoestrogenic state (post-menopause)
- age
- smoking
- neurological/pulmonary disease

Treatment

- see *General Conservative Treatment*, GY33
- surgical
 - tension-free vaginal tape (TVT), tension-free obturator tape (TOT), prosthetic/fascial slings or retropubic bladder suspension (Burch or Marshall-Marchetti-Krantz procedures)

URGE INCONTINENCE**Definition**

- urine loss associated with an abrupt, sudden urge to void
- “overactive bladder”
- diagnosed based on symptoms

Etiology

- idiopathic (90%)
- detrusor muscle overactivity (“detrusor instability”)

Associated Symptoms

- frequency, urgency, nocturia, leakage

Treatment

- behavior modification (reduce caffeine/liquid, smoking cessation, regular voiding schedule)
- Kegel exercises
- medications
 - anticholinergics: oxybutinin (Ditropan®), tolterodine (Detrol®), solifenacin (VESicare®)
 - tricyclic antidepressants: imipramine



The gold standard diagnostic test for urinary incontinence is multichannel urodynamics; a large proportion of cases are correctly diagnosed from clinical history alone and this can be supplemented with patient urinary and intake diaries

Systemic review and evaluation of methods of assessing urinary incontinence. *Health Technol Assess* 2006;10:1-132

**Urge Incontinence**

Urine loss associated with an abrupt, sudden urge to void

**Rule Out Neurological Causes of Urge Incontinence**

- MS
- Herniated disc
- DM



Gynecological Oncology

Uterus

ENDOMETRIAL CARCINOMA**Epidemiology**

- most common gynecological malignancy in North America (40%); 4th most common cancer in women
- 2-3% of women develop endometrial carcinoma during lifetime
- mean age is 60 yr
- majority are diagnosed in early stage due to detection of symptoms
- 85-90% 5 yr survival for stage I disease
- 70-80% overall 5 yr survival for all stages

Risk Factors

- Type I: excess estrogen (estrogen unopposed by progesterone)
 - obesity
 - PCOS
 - unbalanced HRT (balanced HRT is protective)
 - nulliparity
 - late menopause
 - estrogen-producing ovarian tumors (e.g. granulosa cell tumors)
 - HNPCC (hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer)/Lynch II syndrome
 - tamoxifen
- Type II: not estrogen-related
 - possibly tamoxifen

Classification and Clinical Features

- Type I (well-differentiated endometrioid adenocarcinoma) ~80% of cases:
 - postmenopausal bleeding in majority, abnormal uterine bleeding in majority of affected premenopausal women (menorrhagia, intermenstrual bleeding)



Incidence of Malignant Gynecological Lesions in North America
 endometrium > ovary > cervix > vulva
 > vagina > fallopian tube

**Complications of Therapy**

- Surgical site infection
- Lymphedema
- Radiation fibrosis
- Cystitis
- Proctitis

- Type II (serous, clear cell carcinoma, grade 3 endometrioid, undifferentiated, carcinosarcoma) ~15% of cases:
 - may not present with bleeding in early stage, more likely to present with advanced stage disease with symptoms like ovarian cancer (i.e. bloating, bowel dysfunction, pelvic pressure)

Investigations

- endometrial sampling
 - office endometrial biopsy
 - D&C ± hysteroscopy
- ± pelvic ultrasound (in women where adequate endometrial sampling not feasible without invasive methods)
 - not acceptable as alternative to pelvic exam or endometrial sampling to rule out cancer

Table 18. FIGO Staging of Endometrial Cancer (2009)

Stage	Description	Stage	Description
I	Confined to corpus	IIIC	Metastasis to pelvic ± para-aortic LNs
IA	No or less than half myometrial invasion	IIIC1	Positive pelvic LN
IB	Invades through $\geq \frac{1}{2}$ of myometrium	IIIC2	Positive para-aortic LN ± positive pelvic LNs
II	Tumor invades cervical stroma, but does not extend beyond uterus*	IV	Invasion of bladder ± bowel mucosa ± distant metastases
III	Local and/or regional spread of the tumor	IVA	Invasion of bladder ± bowel mucosa
IIIA	Invasion of serosa, corpus uteri ± adnexae	IVB	Invasion of bladder ± bowel mucosa
IIIB	Vaginal ± parametrial involvement		Distant mets, including intra-abdominal mets ± inguinal LNs

FIGO: International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics

*Note: endocervical glandular involvement is now considered as Stage I (previously Stage II)

Spread

- direct extension is most common
- lymphatic spread to pelvic and para-aortic nodes
- transtubal dissemination to peritoneal cavity
- hematogenous spread (usually to lungs, liver)

Treatment

- surgical: hysterectomy/bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO) and pelvic washings ± pelvic and para-aortic node dissection ± omentectomy
 - goals: diagnosis, staging, treatment, defining optimal adjuvant treatment
 - laparoscopic approach associated with improved quality of life (optimal for most patients)
- adjuvant radiotherapy (for improved local control in patients at risk for local recurrence) and adjuvant chemotherapy (in patients at risk for distant recurrence or with metastatic disease): based on presence of poor prognostic factors in definitive pathology
- chemotherapy: often used for recurrent disease (especially if high grade or aggressive histology)
- hormonal therapy: progestins can be used for recurrent disease (especially if low grade)

UTERINE SARCOMA

- rare; 2-6% of all uterine malignancies
- arise from stromal components (endometrial stroma, mesenchymal or myometrial tissues)
- behave more aggressively and are associated with worse prognosis than endometrial carcinoma; 5 yr survival is 35%
- vaginal bleeding is most common presenting symptom



Risk Factors for Endometrial Cancer

COLD NUT

Cancer (ovarian, breast, colon)
Obesity
Late menopause
DM

Nulliparity

Unopposed estrogen: PCOS, anovulation, HRT
Tamoxifen: chronic use



Postmenopausal bleeding = endometrial cancer until proven otherwise (95% present with vaginal bleeding)



An endometrial thickness of 5 mm or more is considered abnormal in a postmenopausal woman with vaginal bleeding



True Pelvis

Area of pelvis between pelvic inlet and outlet, i.e. it does not include the abdominal contents in the pelvis found above the pelvic inlet



Prognostic Factors

Most important is FIGO stage

Other Prognostic Factors:

- Age
- Grade
- Histologic subtype
- Depth of myometrial invasion
- Presence of lymphovascular space involvement (LVSI)
- Hormone receptor status



Uterine Sarcoma – Symptoms

BAD-P

Bleeding
Abdominal distention
Foul smelling vaginal Discharge
Pelvic Pressure

Table 19. Summary of Uterine Sarcoma Subtypes and Features

Type	Epidemiology	Features	Diagnosis	Treatment
PURE TYPE				
1. Leiomyosarcoma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accounts for 40% Average age of presentation is 55 yr but may present in pre-menopause Often coexists with benign leiomyomata (fibroids) 50% arise within a fibroid ("sarcomatous degeneration") 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Histologic distinction from leiomyoma <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Increased mitotic count (> 10 mitoses/10 high power fields) Tumor necrosis Cellular atypia Rapidly enlarging fibroids in a pre-menopausal woman Enlarging fibroids in a postmenopausal woman 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Often post-operatively after uterus removed for presumed fibroids Staging using FIGO 2009 staging for leiomyosarcomas 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hysterectomy/BSO usually No routine pelvic lymphadenectomy Adjuvant chemotherapy may be used if tumor has spread beyond uterus, for palliation Radiation therapy does not improve local control or survival Poor outcomes overall, even for early stage disease
2. Endometrial Stromal Sarcoma (ESS)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accounts for 10-15% Usually presents in perimenopausal or postmenopausal women with abnormal uterine bleeding 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Abnormal uterine bleeding Good prognosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Diagnosed by histology of endometrial biopsy or D&C Staging using FIGO 2009 staging for ECC and adenosarcoma 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hysterectomy/BSO (remove ovaries as ovarian hormones may stimulate growth) No routine pelvic lymphadenectomy Adjuvant therapy based on stage and histologic features (hormones and/or radiation) Hormonal therapy (progestins) may be used for metastatic disease
3. Undifferentiated Sarcoma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accounts for 5-10% 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Severe nuclear pleomorphism, high mitotic activity, tumor cell necrosis, and lack smooth muscle or endometrial stromal differentiation Poor prognosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Often found incidentally post-operatively for abnormal bleeding 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treatment primarily surgical Radiation and/or chemotherapy for advanced disease or unresectable disease
MIXED TYPE				
4. Adenosarcoma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The rarest of the uterine sarcoma Mixed tumor of low malignant potential 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Present with abnormal vaginal bleeding Polypoid mass in uterine cavity 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mixture of benign epithelium with malignant low-grade sarcoma Often found incidentally at time of hysterectomy for PMB 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Treatment is surgical with TAH/BSO
RECLASSIFIED				
5. Carcinosarcoma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Most common (43%) Recently reclassified as high grade endometrioid carcinoma with associated metaplasia of the mesenchyme, rather than arising separately from stroma Surgical staging using FIGO 2009 staging for endometrial cancer 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Both epithelial and stromal malignant elements present Tend to form bulky polypoid masses that often fill uterine cavity and extend into or through the endocervical canal – often have extrauterine disease at presentation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Diagnosed by histology of endometrial biopsy or D&C 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Usually treated as "high grade endometrial carcinoma" since behavior and treatment similar (i.e. surgical staging and resection of any gross metastatic disease, adjuvant chemotherapy and radiation)

Table 20. FIGO Staging of Uterine Sarcoma (2009)

Stage	Description	Stage	Description
I	Tumor limited to uterus	III	
IA	<5 cm	IIIA	Tumor invades abdominal tissues, one site
IB	>5 cm	IIIB	Metastasis to pelvic and/or para-aortic lymph nodes
		IIIC	Tumor invades bladder and/or rectum
II	Tumor extends beyond uterus	IV	
IIA	To the pelvis, adnexal involvement	IVA	Tumor invades bladder and/or rectum
IIB	To extra-uterine pelvic tissue	IVB	Distant metastasis



A rapidly enlarging uterus, especially in a postmenopausal woman, should prompt consideration of leiomyosarcoma



Ovarian Tumor Markers

- Epithelial cell – CA-125
- Stromal
 - Granulosa cell – inhibin
 - Sertoli-Leydig – androgens
- Germ cell
 - Dysgerminoma – LDH
 - Yolk sac – AFP
- Choriocarcinoma – β -hCG
- Immature Teratoma – none
- Embryonal cell – AFP + β -hCG

Ovary

BENIGN OVARIAN TUMORS

- see Table 21
- many are asymptomatic
- usually enlarge slowly, if at all
- may rupture or undergo torsion, causing pain
 - pain associated with torsion of an adnexal mass usually originates in the iliac fossa and radiates to the flank
- peritoneal irritation may result from an infarcted tumor – rare

MALIGNANT OVARIAN TUMORS

- see Table 21

Epidemiology

- lifetime risk 1.4% (1/70)
- in women >50 yr, more than 50% of ovarian tumors are malignant
- causes more deaths in North America than all other gynecologic malignancies combined
- 4th leading cause of cancer death in women
- 65% epithelial; 35% non-epithelial
- 5-10% of epithelial ovarian cancers are related to hereditary predisposition

Risk Factors (for epithelial ovarian cancers)

- excess estrogen
 - nulliparity
 - early menarche/late menopause
- age
- family history of breast, colon, endometrial, ovarian cancer
- race: Caucasian

Protective Factors (for epithelial ovarian cancers)

- OCP: likely due to ovulation suppression (significant reduction in risk even after 1 yr of use)
- pregnancy/breastfeeding
- tubal ligation (recently questioned)
- hysterectomy (without removal of ovaries)
- BSO (prophylactic surgery performed for this reason in high risk women – i.e. BRCA mutation carriers)

Screening

- no effective method of mass screening
- routine CA-125 level measurements or U/S not recommended
 - high false positive rates
- controversial in high risk groups: transvaginal U/S and CA-125, starting age 30 (no consensus on interval)
 - familial ovarian cancer (>1 first degree relative affected, BRCA-1 mutation)
 - other cancers (e.g. endometrial, breast, colon)
 - BRCA-1 or BRCA-2 mutation: may recommend prophylactic bilateral oophorectomy after age 35 or when child-bearing is completed

Clinical Features

- most women with epithelial ovarian cancer present with advanced stage disease since often “asymptomatic” until disseminated disease (symptoms with early stage disease are vague and non-specific)
- when present, symptoms may include
 - abdominal symptoms (nausea, bloating, dyspepsia, anorexia, early satiety)
 - symptoms of mass effect
 - ♦ increased abdominal girth – from ascites or tumor itself
 - ♦ urinary frequency
 - ♦ constipation
 - postmenopausal bleeding; irregular menses if pre-menopausal (rare)

Low Malignant Potential (also called “Borderline”) Tumors

- pregnancy, OCP, and breastfeeding are protective factors
- ~15% of all epithelial ovarian tumors
- tumor cells display malignant characteristics histologically, but no invasion is identified
- able to metastasize, but not commonly
- treated primarily with surgery (BSO/omental biopsy ± hysterectomy)
 - NO proven benefit of chemotherapy
- generally slow growing, excellent prognosis
 - 5 yr survival >99%
 - recurrences tend to occur late, may be associated with low grade serous carcinoma



Ovaries are like GEMS

Germ-cell
Epithelial
Metastatic
Sex cord stromal



Risk/Protective Factors for Epithelial Ovarian Cancer

NO CHILD

Nulliparity
OCP, breastfeeding, tubal ligation, hysterectomy (protective)
Caucasian
Family History
Increasing age (>40 yr)
Late menopause
Delayed child-bearing



Effects of Screening on Ovarian Cancer Mortality: The Prostate, Lung, Colorectal, and Ovarian Cancer Screening Randomized Controlled Trial JAMA 2011;305:2295-2303

Objective: To evaluate the effect of screening for ovarian cancer with CA-125 and transvaginal ultrasound on mortality in the prostate, lung, colorectal, and ovarian (PLCO) cancer screening trial.

Participants: 78,216 women aged 55-74 yr.

Study Groups: Intervention group – annual screening with CA-125 for 6 yr, transvaginal ultrasound for 4 yr; control group – no CA-125 or transvaginal ultrasound screening, received usual medical care.

Follow-up: Maximum 13 yr (median, 12.4 yr).

Outcome Measures: Mortality from ovarian cancer, including primary fallopian tube cancers. Secondary outcomes included ovarian cancer incidence and complications associated with screening, examinations, and diagnostic procedures.

Results: Of those diagnosed with ovarian cancer in the intervention and usual care group, the mortality was 3.1% and 2.6% respectively. 15% of women undergoing diagnostic evaluation following a false positive screening test suffered a complication of the procedure.

Conclusions: Simultaneous screening with CA-125 and transvaginal ultrasound compared with usual care did not reduce ovarian cancer mortality. Diagnostic evaluation following a false positive screening test was associated with complications.



Any adnexal mass in postmenopausal women should be considered malignant until proven otherwise



Most (70%) epithelial ovarian cancers present at stage III disease



Diagnosis of ovarian tumors requires surgical pathology

Table 21. Ovarian Tumors

Type	Description	Presentation	Ultrasound/Cytology	Treatment
FUNCTIONAL TUMORS (all benign)				
Follicular Cyst	Follicle fails to rupture during ovulation	Usually asymptomatic May rupture, bleed, tort, infarct causing pain \pm signs of peritoneal irritation	4-8 cm mass, unilocular, lined with granulosa cells	Symptomatic or suspicious masses warrant surgical exploration Otherwise if < 6 cm, wait 6 wk then re-examine as cyst usually regresses with next cycle OCP (ovarian suppression) – will prevent development of new cysts Treatment usually laparoscopic (cystectomy vs. oophorectomy, based on fertility choice)
Lutein Cyst	Corpus luteum fails to regress after 14 d, becoming cystic or hemorrhagic	More likely to cause pain than follicular cyst May delay onset of next period	Larger (10-15 cm) and firmer than follicular cysts	Same as for follicular cysts
Theca-Lutein Cyst	Due to atretic follicles stimulated by abnormal β -hCG levels	Associated with molar pregnancy, ovulation induction with clomiphene		Conservative Cyst will regress as β -hCG levels fall
Endometrioma	See <i>Endometriosis</i> , GY13			
Polycystic Ovaries	See <i>PCOS</i> , GY22			
BENIGN GERM-CELL TUMORS				
Benign Cystic Teratoma (dermoid)	Single most common ovarian germ cell neoplasm Elements of all 3 cell lines; contains dermal appendages (sweat and sebaceous glands, hair follicles, teeth)	May rupture, twist, infarct 20% bilateral 20% occur outside of reproductive yr	Smooth-walled, mobile, unilocular Ultrasound may show calcification which is pathognomonic	Treatment usually laparoscopic cystectomy; may recur
MALIGNANT GERM-CELL TUMORS				
General Information	Rapidly growing, 2-3% of all ovarian cancers	Usually children and young women (<30 yr)		Surgical resection (often conservative unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy \pm nodes) \pm chemotherapy
Dysgerminoma	Produces LDH	10% bilateral		Usually very responsive to chemotherapy, therefore complete resection is not necessary for cure
Immature Teratoma	No tumor marker identified			
Gonadoblastoma				
EPITHELIAL OVARIAN TUMORS (malignant or borderline)				
General Information	Derived from mesothelial cells lining peritoneal cavity Classified based on histologic type 80-85% of all ovarian neoplasms (includes malignant)		Varies depending on subtype	Borderline Cystectomy vs. unilateral salpingo-oophorectomy Malignant 1. Early stage (stage 1): Hysterectomy/BSO/staging (omentectomy, peritoneal biopsies, washings, pelvic and para-aortic lymphadenectomy) 2. Advanced stage: Upfront cytoreductive (debulking) followed by adjuvant chemotherapy consisting of IV carboplatin/paclitaxel vs. intraperitoneal chemotherapy (stage III) neoadjuvant chemotherapy with IV carboplatin/paclitaxel, followed by delayed debulking with further adjuvant IV chemotherapy
Serous	Most common ovarian tumor 50% of all ovarian cancers 75% of epithelial tumors 70% benign	20-30% bilateral	Lining similar to fallopian tube epithelium Often multilocular Histologically contain Psammoma bodies (calcified concentric concretions)	

Table 21. Ovarian Tumors (continued)

Type	Description	Presentation	Ultrasound/Cytology	Treatment
EPITHELIAL OVARIAN TUMORS (malignant or borderline)				
Mucinous	20% of epithelial tumors 85% benign	Rarely complicated by <i>Pseudomyxoma peritonei</i> : implants seed abdominal cavity and produce large quantities of mucin	Resembles endocervical epithelium Often multilocular May reach enormous size	Poor response to chemotherapy If mucinous, remove appendix as well to rule out possible source of primary disease
SEX CORD STROMAL OVARIAN TUMORS				
General Information				Surgical resection of tumor Chemotherapy may be used for unresectable metastatic disease
Fibroma/Thecoma (benign)	From mature fibroblasts in ovarian stroma	Non-functioning Occasionally associated with Meig's syndrome (benign ovarian tumor and ascites and pleural effusion)	Firm, smooth rounded tumor with interlacing fibrocytes	
Granulosa-Theca Cell Tumors (benign or malignant)	Can be associated with endometrial cancer Inhibin is tumor marker	Estrogen-producing → feminizing effects (precocious puberty, menorrhagia, postmenopausal bleeding)	Histologic hallmark of cancer is small groups of cells known as Call-Exner bodies	
Sertoli-Leydig Cell Tumor (benign or malignant)	Can measure elevated androgens as tumor markers	Androgen-producing → virilizing effects (hirsutism, deep voice, recession of front hairline)		
METASTATIC OVARIAN TUMORS				
From GI Tract, Breast, Endometrium, Lymphoma	4-8% of ovarian malignancies Krukenberg tumor – metastatic ovarian tumor (usually GI tract, commonly stomach or colon, breast) with "signet-ring" cells			

Investigation of Suspicious Ovarian Mass

- women with suspected ovarian cancer based on history, physical, or investigations should be referred to a gynecologic oncologist
 - bimanual examination
 - ♦ solid, irregular, or fixed pelvic mass is suggestive of ovarian cancer
 - RMI (Risk of Malignancy Index) is best tool available to assess likelihood of ovarian malignancy and need for pre-operative gynecologic oncology referral (see sidebar)
- blood work: CA-125 for baseline, CBC, liver function tests, electrolytes, creatinine
- radiology
 - bone scan or PET scan not indicated
 - transvaginal ultrasound best to visualize ovaries
 - CT scan abdomen and pelvis to look for metastatic disease
- try to rule out other primary source if suspected, based on:
 - occult blood per rectum: endoscopy ± barium enema
 - gastric symptoms, gastroscopy ± upper GI series
 - abnormal vaginal bleeding, endometrial biopsy to rule out concurrent endometrial cancer, colposcopy ± ECC to rule out cervical cancer if abnormal cervix
 - breast lesion identified or risk factors present: mammogram

Table 22. FIGO Staging for Primary Carcinoma of the Ovary (Surgical Staging) (2009)

Stage	Description
I	Growth limited to the ovaries
IA	1 ovary, no ascites, no tumor on external surface, capsule intact
IB	2 ovaries, no ascites, no tumor on external surface, capsule intact
IC	1 or 2 ovaries with any of the following: capsule ruptured, tumor on ovarian surface, or malignant cells in ascites
II	Growth involving one or both ovaries with pelvic extension
IIA	Extension ± metastases to uterus/tubes
IIB	Extension to other pelvic structures
IIC	II A/B with malignant cells in ascites or positive peritoneal washings
III	Tumor involving one or both ovaries with peritoneal implants outside the pelvis and/or positive retroperitoneal or inguinal nodes; superficial liver mets is Stage III
IIIA	Microscopic peritoneal metastasis beyond pelvis, LNs negative
IIIB	Macroscopic peritoneal metastasis beyond pelvis <2 cm, LNs negative
IIIC	Implant >2 cm and/or retroperitoneal or inguinal nodes
IV	Distant metastasis beyond peritoneal cavity

FIGO = International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics



Incorporation of Bevacizumab in the Primary Treatment of Ovarian Cancer

NEJM 2011;365:2473-2483

Purpose: To evaluate the effect of bevacizumab addition to standard front-line therapy for epithelial ovarian cancer.

Study: Double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial with patients with newly diagnosed stage III (incompletely resectable) or stage IV epithelial ovarian cancer who had undergone debulking surgery to receive one of three treatments. All three treatments included chemotherapy with intravenous paclitaxel plus carboplatin. Patients received chemotherapy with placebo, bevacizumab-initiation treatment (cycles 2-6 of 22 cycles) or bevacizumab-throughout (cycles 2-22).

Results: 1,873 participants. The median progression-free survival was 10.3 mo in the control group, 11.2 mo in the bevacizumab-initiation group, and 14.1 mo in the bevacizumab-throughout group. The rate of HTN requiring medical therapy was higher in the bevacizumab-initiation group (16.5%) and bevacizumab-throughout group (22.9%) than in the control group (7.2%) as well as gastrointestinal wall disruption (2.8%, 2.6%, 1.2%, respectively).

Conclusions: The use of bevacizumab during and up to 10 mo after carboplatin and paclitaxel chemotherapy prolongs the median progression-free survival by about 4 mo in patients with advanced epithelial ovarian cancer.

Cervix

BENIGN CERVICAL LESIONS

- Nabothian cyst/inclusion cyst
 - no treatment required
- endocervical polyps
 - treatment is polypectomy (office procedure)

MALIGNANT CERVICAL LESIONS

Epidemiology

- majority are SCCs (95%); adenocarcinomas increasing (5%); rare subtypes include SCC, adenosquamous
- 8,000 deaths annually in North America
- annual Pap test reduces a woman's chance of dying from cervical cancer from 0.4% to 0.05%
- average age at presentation: 52 yr old

Etiology

- at birth, vagina is lined with squamous epithelium; columnar epithelium lines only the endocervix and the central area of the ectocervix (original squamocolumnar junction)
- during puberty, estrogen stimulates eversion of a single columnar layer (ectopy), thus exposing it to the acidic pH of the vagina, leading to metaplasia (change of exposed epithelium from squamous to columnar)
 - a new squamocolumnar junction forms as a result
- the transformation zone (TZ) is the area located between the original and the current squamocolumnar junction
- the majority of dysplasias and cancers arise in the TZ of the cervix
- must have active metaplasia in presence of inducing agent (HPV) to get dysplasia
- dysplasia → carcinoma *in situ* (CIS) → invasion
- slow process (~10 yr on average)
- growth is by local extension
- metastasis occurs late

Risk Factors

- HPV infection
 - see *Sexually Transmitted Diseases*, GY26
 - high risk of neoplasia associated with types 16, 18
 - low risk of neoplasia associated with types 6, 11
 - >99% of cervical cancers contain one of the high risk HPV types
- high risk behaviors (risk factors for HPV infection)
 - multiple partners
 - other STDs (HSV, trichomonas)
 - early age at first intercourse
 - high risk male partner
- smoking
- at-risk groups include:
 - sex-trade workers
 - low socioeconomic status

Cervical Cancer Screening Guidelines (Pap Test)

- see [Family Medicine](#), FM5

Clinical Features

- SCC: exophytic, fungating tumor
- adenocarcinoma: endophytic, with barrel-shaped cervix
- early
 - asymptomatic
 - discharge: initially watery, becoming brown or red
 - postcoital bleeding
- late
 - 80-90% present with bleeding: either postcoital, postmenopausal or irregular bleeding
 - pelvic or back pain (extension of tumor to pelvic walls)
 - bladder/bowel symptoms
- signs
 - friable, raised, reddened, or ulcerated area visible on cervix



A Risk of Malignancy Incorporating CA125, Ultrasound, and Menopausal Status for the Accurate Pre-Operative Diagnosis of Ovarian Cancer
BJOG 1990;97:922-929

$RMI = U \times M \times CA-125$

Ultrasound Findings (1 pt for each)

- Multilocular cyst
- Evidence of solid areas
- Evidence of metastases
- Presence of ascites
- Bilateral lesions

$U = 1$ (for U/S scores of 0 or 1)

$U = 4$ (for U/S scores of 2-5)

Menopausal Status

- Postmenopausal: $M = 4$
- Premenopausal: $M = 1$

Absolute Value of CA-125 Serum Level

- For $RMI > 200$: Gynecologic oncology referral is recommended



Causes of Elevated CA-125

- Age influences reliability of test as a tumor marker
- 50% sensitivity in early stage ovarian cancer (poor) – therefore not good for screening

Malignant

- Gyne: ovary, uterus
- Non-Gyne: pancreas, stomach, colon, rectum

Non-Malignant

- Gyne: benign ovarian neoplasm, endometriosis, pregnancy, fibroids, PID
- Non-Gyne: cirrhosis, pancreatitis, renal failure



CA-125 is indicated for monitoring response to treatment



Malignant Ovarian Tumor Prognosis 5 yr Survival

Stage I	75-95%
Stage II	60-75%
Stage III	23-41%
Stage IV	11%

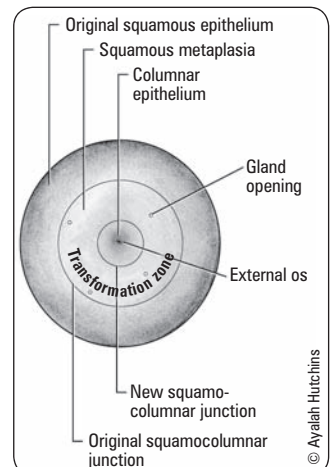


Figure 17. The cervix

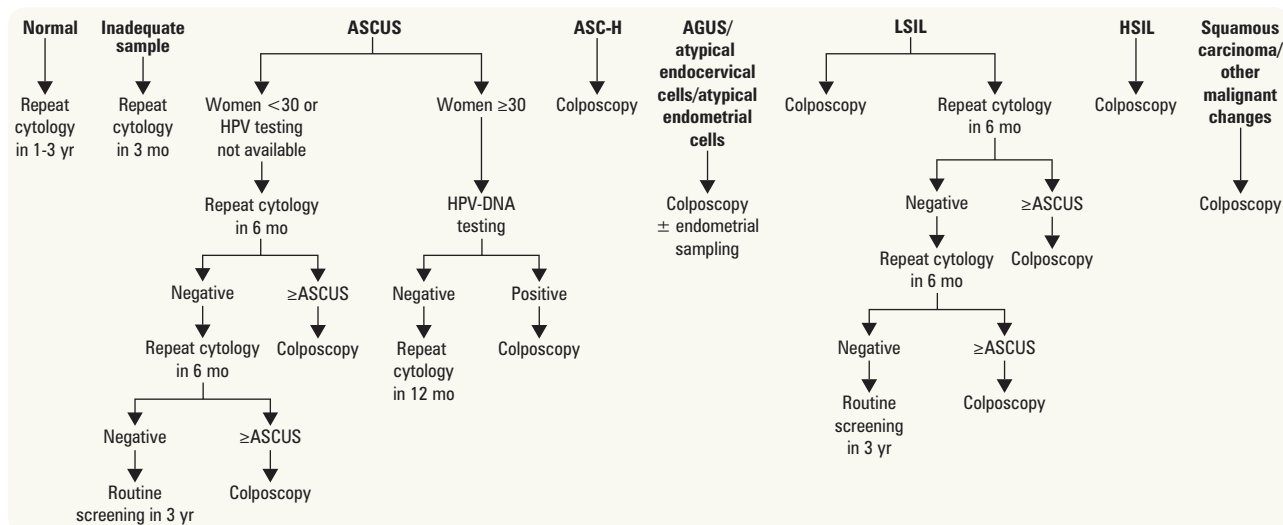


Figure 18. Decision making chart for Pap test (not applicable for adolescents)

Adapted from: Ontario Cervical Screening Practice Guidelines. May 2012. Cervical screening guidelines unique to each state.

Diagnosis

- apply acetic acid and identify acetowhite lesions, punctation, mosaicism, and abnormal blood vessels to guide cervical biopsy
- endocervical curettage (ECC) if entire lesion is not visible or no lesion visible
- diagnostic excision (LEEP) if
 - lesion extends into endocervical canal
 - positive ECC
 - discrepancy between Pap test results and colposcopy
 - microinvasive carcinoma
- consider cold knife conization (in OR) if glandular abnormality suspected based on cytology or colposcopic findings due to concern for margin interpretation
- tests permitted for FIGO clinical staging include: physical exam (including EUA), cervical biopsy (including cone biopsy), proctoscopy/cystoscopy, IVP, ultrasound liver/kidneys, CXR, LFTs
- MRI and/or CT and/or PET scan often done to facilitate planning of radiation therapy, results do not influence clinical stage

Treatment: Prevention and Management

Prevention: HPV Vaccine

- two vaccines currently approved (Gardasil®, Cervarix®)

Table 23. Comparison of Two Vaccines against Human Papillomavirus (HPV)

	Gardasil®	Cervarix®
Viral strains covered	6, 11, 16, 18	16, 18
Route of administration	IM	IM
Schedule of dosing	0, 2, 6 mo	0, 1, 6 mo
Side effects	Local: redness, pain, swelling General: headache, low grade fever, GI upset	Local: redness, pain, swelling General: headache, low grade fever, GI upset
Approved age	Females age 9-45, males age 9-26	Females age 10-25
Contraindications	Pregnant women and women who are nursing (limited data)	

- should be administered before onset of sexual activity (i.e. before exposure to virus) for optimal benefit of vaccination
- may be given at the same time as hepatitis B or other vaccines using a different injection site
- not for treatment of active infections
- most women will not be infected with all four types of the virus at the same time, therefore vaccine is still indicated for sexually active females or those with a history of previous HPV infection or HPV-related disease
- conception should be avoided until 30 d after last dose of vaccination



The Bethesda Classification System is based on cytological results of a Pap test that permits the examination of cells but not tissue structure; cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) or cervical carcinoma is a histological diagnosis, requiring a tissue sample via biopsy of suspicious lesions seen during colposcopy



Efficacy of Human Papillomavirus (HPV)-16/18 AS04-Adjuvanted Vaccine Against Cervical Infection and Precancer Caused by Oncogenic HPV Types (PATRICIA): Final Analysis of a Double-Blind, Randomized Study in Young Women

Lancet 2009;374:301-314

Study: Phase III double-blind, controlled RCT.

Patients: 18,644 women aged 15-25.

Selected Outcomes: Development of HPV-16/18 associated CIN II+ was the primary outcome. Secondary to this were persistence of infections with HPV-16, HPV-18, or other oncogenic HPV types.

Selected Results: Efficacy against development of HPV-16/18 associated CIN II+ was 98.1% ($p < 0.0001$). High levels of cross-protection were observed for persistent infection with HPV-31 and HPV-45 and HPV-31 or HPV-45 associated CIN II+.

Conclusions: The HPV-16/18 AS04-adjuvanted vaccine protected against HPV-16/18 associated CIN II+ lesions and lesions associated with HPV-31, HPV-33, and HPV-45.

Table 24. Management of Patients Abnormal Cervical Histology and Cervical Cancer

Management	
CIN I	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Preferred option for biopsy-proven CIN I is observation Repeat assessment and cytology in 12 mo Management according to cytology results <p>If after HSIL or AGC</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cytology and histology should be reviewed If discrepancy remains, excisional biopsy may be considered
CIN II and CIN III	<p>Women ≥ 25 yr</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CIN II or III should be treated Excisional procedures preferred for CIN III Those with positive margins should have follow-up with colposcopy and directed biopsies and/or endocervical curettage Treatment for recurrent CIN II or III should be by excision <p>Women < 25 yr</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pathologist should be asked to clarify whether lesion is CIN II or CIN III CIN II: observe with colposcopy at 6-mo intervals for up to 24 mo before treatment considered CIN III: should be treated <p>During pregnancy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> CIN II or III suspected or diagnosed during pregnancy, repeat colposcopy and treatment delayed until 8-12 wk after delivery
Stage IA₁ (no LVSI)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Trachelectomy (removal of only the cervix) if future fertility desired (and lesion ≤ 2 cm) Simple hysterectomy if future fertility is not desired
Stage IA₂, IB₁	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Typically treated with radical hysterectomy and pelvic lymphadenectomy (sentinel nodes under study) Equal cure rates may be obtained with primary radiation therapy; advantage of surgery: may accurately stage and grade and more targeted adjuvant therapy Advantage is that ovaries can be spared if pre-menopausal For fertility preservation, may have radical trachelectomy (removal of cervix and parametria) and nodes instead of radical hysterectomy for early-stage disease Concurrent chemoradiation therapy if adverse high risk prognostic factors on radical surgical specimen, such as: positive pelvic lymph nodes, positive parametria, and/or positive margins
Stages IB₂, IB₃, II, III, IV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Primary chemoradiation therapy PET/CT to grade: evaluate pelvic and para-aortic nodes For positive nodes on PET: primary chemoradiation with extended field RT Hysterectomy generally not suggested following primary treatment with curative intent



Cervical cancer is most prevalent in developing countries and therefore is the only gynecologic cancer that uses clinical staging; this facilitates consistent international staging with countries that do not have technologies, such as CT and MRI



Cervical Cancer Prognosis 5 yr Survival

Stage 0	99%
Stage I	75%
Stage II	55%
Stage III	30%
Stage IV	7%
Overall	50-60%



CDC Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) Recommends Quadrivalent HPV4 Vaccine for Males

- Routine HPV4 vaccination for males aged 11-12 as a 3-dose series
- HPV4 vaccination for males aged 13-21 who have not been vaccinated previously or have not completed the 3-dose series
- Males 22-26 yr of age may be vaccinated

Source: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Recommendations on the Use of Quadrivalent Human Papillomavirus Vaccine in Males – Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP), 2011. *MMWR* 2011;60:1705-1708

Abnormal Pap Tests in Pregnancy

- incidence: 1/2,200
- Pap test at all initial prenatal visits
 - if abnormal Pap or suspicious lesion, refer to colposcopy
- if diagnostic conization required, should be deferred until second trimester (T2) to minimize risk of pregnancy loss
- if invasive cancer ruled out, management of dysplasia deferred until completion of pregnancy (may deliver vaginally)
- if invasive cancer present, management depends on prognostic factors, degree of fetal maturity, and patient wishes
 - general recommendations in T1: consider pregnancy termination, management with either radical surgery (hysterectomy vs. trachelectomy if desires future fertility), or concurrent chemoradiation therapy
 - recommendations in T2/T3: delay of therapy until viable fetus and C/S for delivery with concurrent radical surgery or subsequent concurrent chemoradiation therapy

Vulva

BENIGN VULVAR LESIONS

Non-Neoplastic Disorders of Vulvar Epithelium

- biopsy is necessary to make diagnosis and/or rule out malignancy
- hyperplastic dystrophy (squamous cell hyperplasia)
 - surface thickened and hyperkeratotic
 - pruritus most common symptom
 - typically postmenopausal women
 - treatment: 1% fluorinated corticosteroid ointment bid for 6 wk



Any suspicious lesion of the vulva should be biopsied

- lichen sclerosis
 - subepithelial fat becomes diminished; labia become thin, atrophic, with membrane-like epithelium and labial fusion
 - pruritus, dyspareunia, burning
 - 'figure of 8' distribution
 - most common in postmenopausal women but can occur at any age
 - treatment: ultrapotent topical steroid 0.05% clobetasol x 2-4 wk then taper down
- mixed dystrophy (lichen sclerosis with epithelial hyperplasia)
 - hyperkeratotic areas with areas of thin, shiny epithelium
 - treatment: fluorinated corticosteroid ointment

Tumors

- papillary hidradenoma, nevus, fibroma, hemangioma

MALIGNANT VULVAR LESIONS**Epidemiology**

- 5% of genital tract malignancies
- 90% SCC; remainder melanomas, basal cell carcinoma, Paget's disease, Bartholin's gland carcinoma
 - Type I disease: HPV-related (50-70%)
 - ♦ more likely in younger women
 - ♦ 90% of VIN contain HPV DNA (usually types 16, 18)
 - Type II disease: not HPV-related, associated with current or previous vulvar dystrophy
 - ♦ usually postmenopausal women

Risk Factors

- HPV infection
- VIN: precancerous change which presents as multicentric white or pigmented plaques on vulva (may only be visible at colposcopy)
 - progression to cancer rarely occurs with appropriate management
 - treatment: local excision (i.e. superficial vulvectomy ± split thickness skin grafting to cover defects if required) vs. ablative therapy (i.e. laser, cauterization) vs. local immunotherapy (imiquimod)

Clinical Features

- many patients asymptomatic at diagnosis (many also deny or minimize symptoms)
- most lesions occur on the labia majora, followed by the labia minora (less commonly on the clitoris or perineum)
- localized pruritus or lesion most common
- less common: raised red, white or pigmented plaque, ulcer, bleeding, discharge, pain, dysuria
- patterns of spread
 - local
 - groin lymph nodes (usually inguinal → pelvic nodes)
 - hematogenous

Investigations

- ± colposcopy
- ALWAYS biopsy any suspicious lesion

Prognosis

- depends on stage – particularly nodal involvement (single most important predictor followed by tumor size)
- lesions >4 cm associated with poorer prognosis
- overall 5 yr survival rate: 79%

Fallopian Tube

- least common site for carcinoma of female reproductive system (0.3%)
- usually serous epithelial carcinoma
- recently considered to be origin of serous ovarian cancer
- more common in fifth and sixth decade

Clinical Features

- classic triad present in minority of cases, but very specific
 - watery discharge (most specific) = "hydros tubae profluens"
 - vaginal bleeding or discharge in 50% of patients
 - crampy lower abdominal/pelvic pain
- most patients present with a pelvic mass (see *Ovarian Cancer*, GY37 for guidelines regarding diagnosis/investigation)

Treatment

- as for malignant epithelial ovarian tumours

Gestational Trophoblastic Disease/Neoplasia



With development of HTN early in pregnancy (i.e. <20 wk), think gestational trophoblastic disease

- refers to a spectrum of proliferative abnormalities of the trophoblast

Epidemiology

- 1/1,000 pregnancies
- marked geographic variation – as high as 1/125 in Taiwan
- 80% benign, 15% locally invasive, 5% metastatic
- cure rate >95%

HYDATIDIFORM MOLE (Benign GTD)

Complete Mole

- most common type of hydatidiform mole
- diffuse trophoblastic hyperplasia, hydropic swelling of chorionic villi, no fetal tissues, or membranes present
- 46XX or 46XY, chromosomes completely of paternal origin (90%)
- 2 sperm fertilize empty egg or 1 sperm with reduplication
- 15-20% risk of progression to malignant sequelae
- risk factors
 - geographic (South East Asia most common)
 - others (maternal age >40 yr, β -carotene deficiency, vitamin A deficiency) – not proven
- clinical features
 - often present during apparent pregnancy with abnormal symptoms/findings:
 - ♦ vaginal bleeding (97%)
 - ♦ excessive uterine size for LMP (51%)
 - ♦ theca-lutein cysts >6 cm (50%)
 - ♦ preeclampsia (27%)
 - ♦ hyperemesis gravidarum (26%)
 - ♦ hyperthyroidism (7%)
 - ♦ β -hCG >100,000 IU/L
 - ♦ no fetal heart beat detected

Partial (or Incomplete) Mole

- focal trophoblastic hyperplasia and hydropic villi are associated with fetus or fetal parts
- often triploid (XXY, XYY, XXX) with chromosome complement from both parents
 - usually related to single ovum fertilized by two sperm
- low risk of progression to malignant sequelae (<4%)
- associated with fetus, which may be growth-restricted, and/or have multiple congenital malformations
- clinical features
 - typically present similar to threatened/spontaneous/missed abortion
 - pathological diagnosis often made after D&C

Investigations

- quantitative β -hCG levels (tumor marker) abnormally high for gestational age
- U/S findings
 - if complete: no fetus (classic “snow storm” due to swelling of villi)
 - if partial: molar degeneration of placenta \pm fetal anomalies, multiple echogenic regions corresponding to hydropic villi, and focal intrauterine hemorrhage
- CXR (may show metastatic lesions)
- features of molar pregnancies at high risk of developing persistent GTN post-evacuation
 - local uterine invasion as high as 31%
 - β -hCG >100,000 IU/L
 - excessive uterine size
 - prominent theca-lutein cysts

Treatment

- suction D&C with sharp curettage and oxytocin
- Rhogam® if Rh negative
- consider hysterectomy (if patient no longer desires fertility)
- prophylactic chemotherapy of no proven benefit
- chemotherapy for GTN if develops after evacuation

Follow-up

- contraception required to avoid pregnancy during entire follow-up period
- serial β -hCGs (as tumor marker) every wk until negative x 3 (usually takes several wk), then monthly for 6-12 mo prior to trying to conceive again
- increase or plateau of β -hCG indicates GTN \rightarrow patient needs chemotherapy



GTN Diagnosis

- β -hCG plateau: <10% drop in β -hCG over four values in 3 wk (e.g. days 1, 7, 14, and 21) OR
- β -hCG rise >20% in any two values over two wk or longer (e.g. measure at days 1, 7, 14) OR
- β -hCG persistently elevated >6 mo OR
- Metastases on workup

GTN (MALIGNANT GTD)**Invasive Mole or Persistent GTN**

- diagnosis made by rising or plateau in β -hCG, development of metastases following treatment of documented molar pregnancy
- histology: molar tissue from D&C
- metastases are rare (4%)

Choriocarcinoma

- often present with symptoms from metastases
- highly anaplastic, highly vascular
- no chorionic villi, elements of syncytiotrophoblast, and cytotrophoblast
- may follow molar pregnancy, abortion, ectopic, or normal pregnancy

Placental-site Trophoblastic Tumor

- rare aggressive form of GTN
- abnormal growth of intermediate trophoblastic cells
- low β -hCG, production of human placental lactogen (hPL), relatively insensitive to chemotherapy

CLASSIFICATION of GTN

- non-metastatic
 - ~15% of patients after molar evacuation
 - may present with abnormal bleeding
 - all have rising or plateau of β -hCG
 - negative metastases on staging investigations
- metastatic
 - 4% patients after treatment of complete molar pregnancy
 - metastasis more common with choriocarcinoma which tends toward early vascular invasion and widespread dissemination
 - if signs or symptoms suggest hematogenous spread, do not biopsy (they bleed)
 - ♦ lungs (80%): cough, hemoptysis, CXR lesion(s)
 - ♦ vagina (30%): vaginal bleeding, "blue lesions" on speculum exam
 - ♦ pelvis (20%): rectal bleeding (if invades bowel), U/S lesion(s)
 - ♦ liver (10%): elevated LFTs, U/S or CT findings
 - ♦ brain (10%): headaches, dizziness, seizure (symptoms of space-occupying lesion), CT/MRI findings
 - highly vascular tumor \rightarrow bleeding \rightarrow anemia
 - all have rising or plateau of β -hCG
 - classification of metastatic GTN
 - ♦ divided into good prognosis and bad prognosis
 - ♦ features of bad prognosis
 - long duration (>4 mo from antecedent pregnancy)
 - high pre-treatment β -hCG titre: >100,000 IU/24 h urine or >40,000 IU/L of blood
 - brain or liver metastases
 - prior chemotherapy
 - metastatic disease following term pregnancy
 - ♦ good prognosis characterized by the absence of each of these features



Lungs are #1 site for malignant GTN metastases; when pelvic exam and chest x-ray are negative, metastases are uncommon

Investigations – For Staging

- blood work: CBC, electrolytes, creatinine, β -hCG, TSH, LFTs
- imaging: CXR, U/S pelvis, CT abdo/pelvis, CT brain
- if suspect brain metastasis but CT brain negative, consider lumbar puncture for CSF β -hCG
 - ratio of plasma β -hCG:CSF β -hCG <60 indicates metastases

Table 25. FIGO Staging and Management of Malignant GTN

Stage	Findings	Management
I	Disease confined to uterine corpus	Single agent chemotherapy for low risk disease (WHO score ≤ 6) 1st line: pulsed – actinomycin D (Act-D) IV q2wk Alternatives: MTX-based regimen 20% of patients need to switch to alternate single-agent regimen due to failure of β -hCG to return to normal Combination chemotherapy (EMA-CO: etoposide, MTX, ACT-D, cyclophosphamide, vincristine) if high risk (WHO score ≥ 7) or if resistant to single agent chemotherapy Can consider hysterectomy if fertility not desired or placental-site trophoblastic tumor
II	Metastatic disease to genital structures	As above
III	Metastatic disease to lungs with or without genital tract involvement	As above
IV	Distant metastatic sites including brain, liver, kidney, GI tract	Usually high risk (EMA-CO) with surgical resection of sites of disease Persistence/resistance to chemotherapy Consider radiation for brain mets

Table 26. WHO Prognostic Score for GTD (2011)

Prognostic Factor	Score			
	0	1	2	4
Maternal Age	>40	40		
AP	Mole	Abortion	Term	
Interval (end of AP to chemotherapy in months)	<4	4-6	7-13	>13
hCG IU/l	<103	103-104	104-105	>105
Number of Metastases	0	1-4	5-8	>8
Site of Metastases	Lung	Spleen, kidney	GI tract	Brain, liver
Largest Tumor Mass		3-5 cm	>5 cm	
Prior Chemotherapy			Single drug	Two drug

Follow-up (for GTN)

- contraception for all stages to avoid pregnancy during entire follow-up period
- stage I, II, III
 - weekly β -hCG until 3 consecutive normal results
 - then monthly x 12 mo
- stage IV
 - weekly β -hCG until 3 consecutive normal results
 - then monthly x 24 mo

Common Medications

Table 27. Common Medications

Drug Name (Brand Name)	Action	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Side Effects (S/E), Contraindications (C/I), Drug Interactions (D/I)
acyclovir (Zovirax®)	Antiviral; inhibits DNA synthesis and viral replication	First Episode: 400 mg PO tid x 7-10 d Recurrence: 400 mg PO tid x 5 d	Genital herpes	S/E: headache, GI upset D/I: zidovudine, probenecid
bromocriptine (Parlodel®)	Dopaminomimetic Agonist at D ₂ R Antagonist at D ₁ R Acts directly on anterior pituitary cells to inhibit synthesis and release of prolactin	Initial: 1.25-2.5 mg PO qhs with food Then: increase by 2.5 mg every 2-7 d as needed until optimal therapeutic response Usual Range: 1.5-15 mg OD For IVF: Initial: 1.25 mg/d PO between days 4-6 of follicular phase Then: 2.5 mg/d until 3 d after onset menstruation	Galactorrhea + amenorrhea 2° to hyperprolactinemia Prolactin-dependent menstrual disorders and infertility Prolactin-secreting adenomas (microadenomas, prior to surgery of macroadenomas) IVF	S/E: N/V, headache, postural hypotension, somnolence C/I: uncontrolled HTN, pregnancy-induced HTN, CAD, breastfeeding D/I: domperidone, macrolides, octreotide
clomiphene citrate (Clomid®)	Increases output of pituitary gonadotropins which induces ovulation	50 mg OD x 5 d Try 100 mg or 160 mg OD if ineffective 3 courses = adequate trial	Patients with persistent ovulatory dysfunction (e.g. amenorrhea, PCOS) who desire pregnancy	S/E: Common – hot flashes, abdominal discomfort, exaggerated cyclic ovarian enlargement, accentuation of Mittelschmerz Rare – ovarian hyperstimulation syndrome, multiple pregnancy, visual blurring, birth defects C/I: pregnancy, liver disease, hormone-dependent tumors, ovarian cyst, undiagnosed vaginal bleeding
clotrimazole (Lotrimin®)	Antifungal; disrupt fungal cell membrane	Tablet: 100 mg/d intravaginally x 7 d or 200 mg/d x 3 d or 500 mg x 1 dose Cream (1 or 2%): 1 applicator intravaginally qhs x 3-7 d Topical: apply bid x 7 d	Vulvovaginal candidiasis	S/E: vulvar/vaginal burning
danazol (Danocrine®)	Synthetic steroid that inhibits pituitary gonadotropin output and ovarian steroid synthesis Has mild androgenic properties	200-800 mg in 2-3 divided doses Used for 3-6 mo Biannual hepatic U/S required if >6 mo use	Endometriosis 1° menorrhagia/DUB	S/E: weight gain, acne, mild hirsutism, hepatic dysfunction C/I: pregnancy, undiagnosed vaginal bleeding, breastfeeding, severely impaired renal/hepatic/cardiac function, porphyria, genital neoplasia, thromboembolic disease D/I: warfarin, carbamazepine, cyclosporine, tacrolimus, anti-hypertensives

Table 27. Common Medications (continued)

Drug Name (Brand Name)	Action	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Side Effects (S/E), Contraindications (C/I), Drug Interactions (D/I)
doxycycline	Tetracycline derivative; inhibit protein synthesis	100 mg PO bid x ≥ 7 d	Chlamydia, gonococcal infection, syphilis	S/E: GI upset, hepatotoxicity C/I: pregnancy, severe hepatic dysfunction D/I: warfarin, digoxin
fluconazole (Diflucan®)	Antifungal; disrupt fungal cell membrane	150 mg PO x 1 dose	Vulvovaginal candidiasis unresponsive to clotrimazole	S/E: headache, rash, N/V, abdominal pain, diarrhea D/I: terfenadine, cisapride, astemizole, hydrochlorothiazide, phenytoin, warfarin, rifampin
leuprolide (Lupron®)	Synthetic GnRH analog Induces reversible hypogestrogenic state	3.75 mg IM q1mo or 11.25 mg IM q3mo Usually ≤ 6 mo, check bone density if > 6 mo Retreatment with Lupron® alone not recommended because of effects on bone density	Endometriosis Leiomyomata DUB Precocious puberty	S/E: hot flashes, sweats, headache, vaginitis, reduction in bone density, acne, GI upset C/I: pregnancy, undiagnosed vaginal bleeding, breastfeeding
menotropin (Pergonal®)	Human gonadotropin with FSH and LH effects; induce ovulation and stimulate ovarian follicle development	75-150 U of FSH and LH IM OD x 7-12 d, then 10,000 U hCG one day after last dose	Infertility	S/E: bloating, irritation at injection site, abdominal/pelvic pain, headache, N/V, multiple pregnancy C/I: primary ovarian failure, intracranial lesion (e.g. pituitary tumor), uncontrolled thyroid/adrenal dysfunction, ovarian cyst (not PCOS), pregnancy, undiagnosed uterine bleeding
metronidazole (Flagyl®)	Bactericidal; forms toxic metabolites which damage bacterial DNA	2 g PO x 1 dose or 500 mg PO bid x 7 d	Bacterial vaginosis, trichomonas vaginitis	S/E: headache, dizziness, N/V, diarrhea, disulfiram-like reaction (flushing, tachycardia, N/V) C/I: pregnancy (1st trimester) D/I: cisapride, warfarin, cimetidine, lithium, alcohol, amiodarone, milk thistle, carbamazepine
oxybutinin (Ditropan®)	Anticholinergic – relaxes bladder smooth muscle, inhibits involuntary detrusor contraction	5 or 10 mg/d PO May increase doses by 5 mg weekly to a max of 30 mg/d	Overactive bladder (urge incontinence)	S/E: dry mouth/eyes, constipation, palpitations, urinary retention, dizziness, headache C/I: glaucoma, GI ileus, severe colitis, obstructive uropathy, use with caution if impaired hepatic/renal function
tolterodine (Detrol®)	Anticholinergic	1-2 mg PO bid	Overactive bladder (urge incontinence)	S/E: anaphylaxis, psychosis, tachycardia, dry mouth/eyes, headache, constipation, urinary retention, chest pain, abdominal pain C/I: glaucoma, gastric/urinary retention, use with caution if impaired hepatic/renal function
tranexamic acid (Cyklokapron®)	Anti-fibrinolytic, reversibly inhibits plasminogen activation	1-1.5 g tid-qid for first 4 d of cycle Max 4 g/d Ophthalmic check if used for several wk	Menorrhagia	S/E: N/V, diarrhea, dizziness, rare cases of thrombosis, abdominal pain, MSK pain C/I: thromboembolic disease, acquired disturbances of color vision, subarachnoid hemorrhage, age < 15 yr
urofollitropin (Metrodin®)	FSH	75 U/d SC x 7-12d	Ovulation induction in PCOS	S/E: ovarian enlargement or cysts, edema and pain at injection site, arterial thromboembolism, fever, abdominal pain, headache, multiple pregnancy C/I: primary ovarian failure, intracranial lesion (e.g. pituitary tumor), uncontrolled thyroid/adrenal dysfunction, ovarian cyst (not PCOS), pregnancy, abnormal uterine bleeding
combined oral contraceptive pill (OCP)	Ovulatory suppression by inhibiting LH and FSH Decidualization of endometrium Thickening of cervical mucus to prevent sperm penetration		Contraception Disorders of menstruation	See Tables 8-12
intrauterine device (IUD) copper IUD (Paragard-T®) progesterone-releasing IUD (Mirena®)	Copper IUD: mild foreign body reaction in endometrium which is toxic to sperm and alters sperm motility Progesterone-releasing IUD: decidualization of endometrium and thickening of cervical mucus, may suppress ovulation	Contraceptive effects last 5 yr	Same as above	See Table 8-12

References

- Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, Rockville, MD. Available from: <http://www.ahrq.gov/clinic/utsumm.htm>.
- American Psychiatric Association. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, 5th ed. Washington: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2013.
- Anderson GL, Limacher M, Assaf AR, et al. (WHI Steering Committee). Effects of conjugated equine estrogen in postmenopausal women with hysterectomy – Women's Health Initiative randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2004;291:1701-1712.
- ARHP Quick Reference Guide for Clinicians. Managing premenstrual symptoms. June 2008.
- Béislé S, Blake J, Basson R, et al. Canadian consensus conference on menopause, 2006 update. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2006;28(2 Suppl 1):S1-S94.
- Bentley J, Bertrand M, Brydon L, et al. SOGC Joint Clinical Practice Guidelines. Colposcopic management of abnormal cervical cytology and histology, 2012. *JOGC* 2012;284:1188-1202.
- Berek JS, Hacker NF. *Gynecologic oncology*, 5th ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010.
- Burger RA, Brady MF, Bookman MA, et al. Incorporation of bevacizumab in the primary treatment of ovarian cancer. *NEJM* 2011;365:2473-2483.
- Buyss SS, Partridge E, Black A, et al. Effect of screening on ovarian cancer mortality: the prostate, lung, colorectal and ovarian (PLCO) cancer screening randomized control trial. *JAMA* 2011;305:2295-2303.
- Canadian Consensus Conference on Menopause, 2006 Update. *JOGC* 2006;171.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Recommendations on the use of quadrivalent human papillomavirus vaccine in males – Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP), 2011. *MMWR* 2011;60:1705-1708.
- Creanga AA, Bradley HM, McCormick C, et al. Use of metformin in polycystic ovary syndrome: a meta-analysis. *Obstet Gynecol* 2008;111:959-968.
- Cunningham FG, McDonald PC, Gant NF. *Williams obstetrics*, 14th ed. Appleton and Lange, 1993.
- Davey E, Barratt A, Irwig L, et al. Effect of study design and quality of unsatisfactory rates, cytology classifications, and accuracy in liquid-based vs. conventional cervical cytology: a systematic review. *Lancet* 2006;367:122-132.
- Davis V, Dunn S. Emergency postcoital contraception. *SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines* July 2000;82.
- Dickey R. *Managing contraceptive pill patients*, 9th ed. EMIS Inc: Medical Publishers, 1998.
- Donnez J, Tomaszewski J, Vasquez F, et al. Ulipristal acetate vs. leuprolide acetate for uterine fibroids *NEJM* 2012;366(5):421-432.
- Duffy JM, Arambage K, Correa FJ, et al. Laparoscopic surgery for endometriosis. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2014;4:CD011031.
- Erdman JN. Human rights in health equity: Cervical cancer and HPV vaccines. *Am J Law & Medicine* 2009;35:365-387.
- Espeland MA, Rapp SR, Shumaker SA, et al. Conjugated equine estrogens and global cognitive function in postmenopausal women – Women's Health Initiative memory study. *JAMA* 2004;291:2959-2968.
- Guilbert E, Boroditsky R, Black A, et al. Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada. Canadian consensus guideline on continuous and extended hormonal contraception. *J Obstet Gyn Canada* 2007;29:S1-S32.
- Hacker NF, Moore JG. *Essentials of obstetrics and gynecology*, 2nd ed. WB Saunders, 1992.
- Hulley S, Grady D, Bush T, et al. Randomized trial of estrogen plus progestin for secondary prevention of coronary heart disease in postmenopausal women. *JAMA* 1998;280:605-613.
- Jacobs I, Oram D, Fairbanks J, et al. A risk of malignancy incorporating CA125, ultrasound and menopausal status for the accurate preoperative diagnosis of ovarian cancer. *BJOG* 1990;97:922-929.
- Jick SS, Hernandez RK. Risk of non-fatal venous thromboembolism in women using oral contraceptives containing drospirenone compared with women using oral contraceptives containing levonorgestrel: case-control study using United States claims data. *BMJ* 2011;342:d2151.
- Klipping C, Duijkers I, Trummer D, et al. Suppression of ovarian activity with a drospirenone-containing oral contraceptive in a 24/4 regimen. *Contraception* 2008;78:16-25.
- Lidegaard O, Lokkegaard E, Jensen A, et al. Thrombotic stroke and myocardial infarction with hormonal contraception. *NEJM* 2012;366:2257-2266.
- Lipscomb GH, McCord ML, Stovall TG, et al. Predictors of success of methotrexate treatment in women with tubal ectopic pregnancies. *NEJM* 2001;341:1974-1978.
- Lopez LM, Chen M, Mullins S, et al. Steroidal contraceptives and bone fractures in women: evidence from observational studies. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2012;8:CD009849.
- Luciano AA, Solima RG. Ectopic pregnancy: from surgical emergency to medical management. *Ann NY Acad Sci* 2001;943:235-254.
- Lujan ME, Chizen DR, Pierson RA. Diagnostic criteria for polycystic ovary syndrome: pitfalls and controversies. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2008;30(8):671-679.
- MacLennan AH, Broadbent JL, Lester S, et al. Oral oestrogen and combined oestrogen/progestogen therapy vs. placebo for hot flushes. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2004;18.
- Management of uterine fibroids. Summary, Evidence Report/Technology Assessment: Number 34. AHRQ Publication No. 01-E051, January 2001.
- Manson JE, Martin KA. Postmenopausal hormone replacement therapy. *NEJM* 2001;345:34-40.
- Mantha S, Karp R, Raghavan V, et al. Assessing the risk of venous thromboembolic events in women taking progestin-only contraception: a meta-analysis. *BMJ* 2012; 345:e4944.
- Marchbanks PA, Aneger JF, Coulman CB, et al. Risk factors for ectopic pregnancy: a population based study. *JAMA* 1998;279:1823-1827.
- Marjoribanks J, Farguher C, Roberts H, et al. Long-term hormone therapy for perimenopausal and postmenopausal women. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2012;7:CD004143.
- Martin JL, Williams KS, Abrams KR, et al. Systematic review and evaluation of methods of assessing urinary incontinence. *Health Technol Assess* 2006;10:1-132,iii-iv.
- National guideline for the treatment of bacterial vaginosis. Clinical Effectiveness Group (Association of Genitourinary Medicine and the Medical Society for the Study of Venereal Diseases). *Sex Transm Infect* 1999;75:S1 6-8.
- Ontario Cervical Screening Practice Guidelines. June 2005. Available from: <http://www.cancerca.on.ca/index – cervical screening.htm>.
- Ouellet-Hellstram R, Graham DJ, Staffa JA, et al. Combined hormonal contraceptives (CHCs) and the risk of cardiovascular disease endpoints. *CHC-CVD final report* 111022v2.
- Paley PJ. Screening for the major malignancies affecting women: current guidelines. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2001;184:1021-1030.
- PHAC National Advisory Committee on Immunization (NACI). Update on human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccines. *Canada Communicable Disease Report* 2012;38:ACS-1.
- Public Health Agency of Canada, 2010. Canadian guidelines on sexually transmitted infections. (Updated January 2010). Available from: <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/std-mts/sti-its/cgsti-lcits/index-eng.php>.
- Public Health Agency of Canada, 2011. Public health information update on the treatment of gonococcal infection. Available from: <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/std-mts/sti-its/alert/2011/alert-gono-eng.php>.
- Rambout L, Hopkins L, Hutton B, et al. Prophylactic vaccination against human papillomavirus infection in women: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. *CMAJ* 2007;177(5):469-479.
- Ratner S, Ofri D. Menopause and hormone replacement therapy. *West J Med* 2001;175:32-34.
- Reid R. Oral contraceptives and the risk of venous thromboembolism: an update. *SOGC Clinical Practice Guideline*. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2010;32:1192-1197.
- Rimsza ME. Counseling the adolescent about contraception. *Pediatr Rev* 2003;24:162-170.
- Rossouw JE, Prentice RL, Manson JE, et al. Postmenopausal hormone therapy and risks of cardiovascular disease by age and years since menopause. *JAMA* 2007;297:1465-1477.
- Seeger JD, Loughlin J, Eng PM, et al. Risk of thromboembolism in women taking ethinylestradiol/drospirenone and other oral contraceptives. *Obstet Gynecol* 2007;110:587-593.
- Sexuality and U. Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada. Available from: <http://www.sexualityandu.ca>.
- Shapter AP. Gestational trophoblastic disease. *Obs Gynecol Clin North Am* 2001;28:805-817.
- Shumaker SA, Legault C, Kuller L, et al. Conjugated equine estrogens and incidence of probable dementia and mild cognitive impairment in postmenopausal women – Women's Health Initiative memory study. *JAMA* 2004; 291:2947-2958.
- SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines: Emergency Contraception. *JOGC* 2012;34(9):870-878. Available from: http://www.sogc.org/guidelines/documents/gui280CPG1209E_000.pdf
- SOGC Committee Opinion on Missed Hormonal Contraceptives: New recommendations. *JOGC* 2008;30:1050-1062. Available from: <http://www.sogc.org/guidelines/documents/gui219EC00811.pdf>.
- SOGC News Release. New recommendations from national ob/gyn society address Depo-Provera, bone loss. 2006. Available from: http://www.sogc.org/media/pdf/advisories/dmpa-may2006_e.pdf.
- Tingulstad S, Hagen B, Skjeldestad FE, et al. The risk of malignancy index to evaluate potential ovarian cancers in local hospitals. *Obstet Gynecol* 1999;93:448-452.
- Wooltorton E. The Evra (ethinyl estradiol/norelgestromin) contraceptive patch: estrogen exposure concerns. *CMAJ* 2006;174:164-165.
- Wooltorton E. Medroxyprogesterone acetate (Depo-Provera) and bone mineral density loss. *JAMA* 2005;172:746.

Notes

Rebecca Smith, Lucy Duan, and James England, chapter editors

Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Tina Hu, EBM editor

Dr. Gary J. Schiller, Dr. Martina Trinkaus, and Dr. Richard Ward, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Disorders of Secondary Hemostasis	31
Basics of Hematology	2	Hemophilia A (Factor VIII Deficiency)	
Complete Blood Count		Hemophilia B (Factor IX Deficiency)	
Blood Film Interpretation		Factor XI Deficiency	
Bone Marrow Aspiration and Biopsy		Liver Disease	
Common Presenting Problems	6	Vitamin K Deficiency	
Anemia		Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation	
Erythrocytosis		Venous Thromboembolism	33
Thrombocytopenia		Approach to Treatment of Venous	
Thrombocytosis		Thromboembolism	
Pancytopenia		Hypercoagulable Disorders	36
Neutrophilia		Hematologic Malignancies and	
Neutropenia		Related Disorders	37
Lymphocytosis		Myeloid Malignancies	37
Lymphopenia		Acute Myeloid Leukemia	
Eosinophilia		Myelodysplastic Syndromes	
Agranulocytosis		Myeloproliferative Neoplasms	39
Leukemoid Reactions		Chronic Myeloid Leukemia	
Approach to Lymphadenopathy	12	Polycythemia Vera	
Approach to Splenomegaly	13	Idiopathic Myelofibrosis	
Microcytic Anemia	13	Essential Thrombocythemia	
Iron Metabolism		Lymphoid Malignancies	43
Iron Deficiency Anemia		Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia	
Anemia of Chronic Inflammation		Lymphomas	44
Sideroblastic Anemia		Hodgkin Lymphoma	
Lead Poisoning		Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma	
Thalassemia		Malignant Clonal Proliferations of	
Normocytic Anemia	17	Mature B-Cells	48
Aplastic Anemia		Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia	
Hemolytic Anemia	18	Multiple Myeloma	
Thalassemia		Monoclonal Gammopathy of Unknown	
β-Thalassemia Minor (Thalassemia Trait)		Significance	
β-Thalassemia Major		Lymphoplasmacytic Lymphoma	
β-Thalassemia Intermedia		(Waldenström's Macroglobulinemia)	
α-Thalassemia		Complications of Hematologic Malignancies	51
Sickle Cell Disease		Hyperviscosity Syndrome	
Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia		Tumor Lysis Syndrome	
Microangiopathic Hemolytic Anemia		Blood Products and Transfusions	52
Hereditary Spherocytosis		Blood Products	
Hereditary Elliptocytosis		Red Blood Cells	
G6PD Deficiency		Platelets	
Macrocytic Anemia	24	Coagulation Factors	
Vitamin B ₁₂ Deficiency		Acute Blood Transfusion Reactions	
Folate Deficiency		Delayed Blood Transfusion Reactions	
Hemostasis	25	Common Medications	56
Three Phases of Hemostasis		Antiplatelet Therapy	
Disorders of Primary Hemostasis	27	Anticoagulant Therapy	
Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura		Chemotherapeutic and Biological Agents Used	
Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia		in Oncology	
Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura		Landmark Hematology Trials	59
and Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome		References	60
von Willebrand Disease			

Acronyms

AFib	atrial fibrillation	HUS	hemolytic uremic syndrome	PV	polycythemia vera
AFLP	acute fatty liver of pregnancy	IMF	idiopathic myelofibrosis	RAEB	refractory anemia with excess blasts
AIHA	autoimmune hemolytic anemia	IPC	intermittent pneumatic compression	RARS	refractory anemia with ringed sideroblasts
ALL	acute lymphoblastic leukemia	IPSS	international prognostic scoring system	RBC	red blood cells
AML	acute myeloid leukemia	ITP	immune thrombocytopenic purpura	RCMD	refractory cytopenia with multilineage dysplasia
ANC	absolute neutrophil count	LMWH	low molecular weight heparin	RCMD-RS	refractory cytopenia with multilineage dysplasia and ringed sideroblasts
APC	activated protein C	MAHA	microangiopathic hemolytic anemia		
APCR	activated protein C resistance	MCH	mean corpuscular Hb	RDW	RBC distribution width
APS	antiphospholipid antibody syndrome	MCHC	mean corpuscular Hb concentration	SPEP	serum protein electrophoresis
CBC	complete blood count	MCV	mean corpuscular volume	sTfR	soluble transferrin receptor
CLL	chronic lymphocytic leukemia	MDS	myelodysplastic syndromes	TIBC	total iron binding capacity
CML	chronic myeloid leukemia	MGUS	monoclonal gammopathy of unknown significance	TPO	thrombopoietin
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation	MM	multiple myeloma	TTP	thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura
EPO	erythropoietin	MPN	myeloproliferative neoplasm	UFH	unfractionated heparin
ET	essential thrombocythemia	MPV	mean platelet volume	UPEP	urine protein electrophoresis
G6PD	glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase	MUGA	multi-gated acquisition	VTE	venous thromboembolism
G-CSF	granulocyte colony-stimulating factor	NHL	non-Hodgkin lymphoma	vWD	von Willebrand disease
GSH	glutathione	PCC	prothrombin complex concentrates	vWF	von Willebrand factor
HA	hemolytic anemia	Ph	Philadelphia chromosome	WBC	white blood cell
Hb	hemoglobin	PNH	paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria	WHO	World Health Organization
Hct	hematocrit				
HIT	heparin-induced thrombocytopenia				

Basics of Hematology

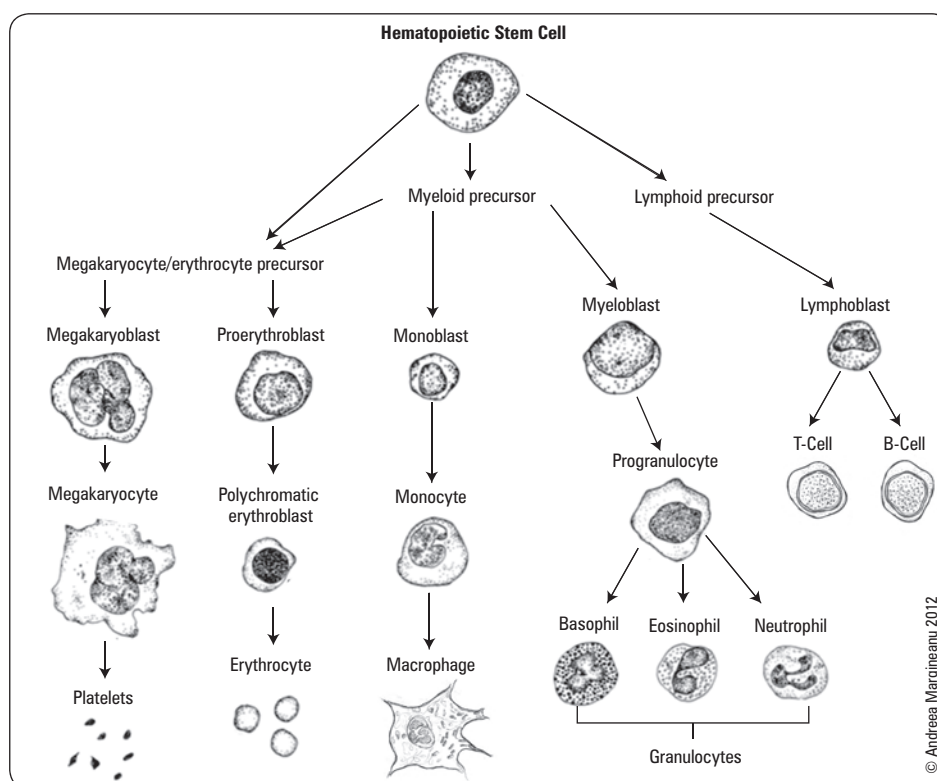


Figure 1. Hematopoiesis

- over 10^{11} blood cells are produced daily
- sites of hematopoiesis in adults: pelvis, sternum, vertebral bodies
- lifespan of mature cells in blood
 - erythrocytes (120 d), neutrophils (~1 d), platelets (10 d), lymphocytes (varies – memory cells persist for years)
- role of lymphoid organs
 - spleen: part of reticuloendothelial system, removes aged RBCs, removes antibody-coated bacteria/cells, site of antibody production
 - thymus: site of T-cell maturation, involutes with age
 - lymph nodes: sites of B and T-cell activation (adaptive immune response)



Erythrocyte: carries oxygen from lungs to peripheral tissues

Reticulocyte: immature erythrocyte

Neutrophil: granulocyte integral in innate immunity; main cell in acute inflammation

Eosinophil: involved in response to parasites (especially helminths) and allergic response

Basophil: granulocyte mainly involved in allergy and parasitic infection

Lymphocyte: integral cell in adaptive immunity

Monocyte: involved in innate immunity; can differentiate into macrophage or dendritic cell

Platelet: mediator of primary hemostasis

Plasma: liquid component of blood containing water, proteins, coagulation factors, and immunoglobulins

Serum: equivalent to plasma minus clotting factors and fibrinogen

Complete Blood Count

Table 1. Common Terms Found on CBC

Test	Definition	Normal Values*
Red Blood Cell (RBC) Count	The number of RBCs per volume of blood	4.2-6.9 x 10 ⁶ /mm ³
Hemoglobin (Hb)	Amount of oxygen-carrying protein in the blood	13-18 g/dL (male) 12-16 g/dL (female)
Hematocrit (Hct)	Percentage of a given volume of whole blood occupied by packed RBCs	45%-62% (male) 37%-48% (female)
Mean Corpuscular Volume (MCV)	Measurement of size of RBCs	80-100 µm ³
Mean Corpuscular Hb (MCH)	Amount of oxygen-carrying Hb inside RBCs	27-32 pg/cell
Mean Corpuscular Hb Concentration (MCHC)	Average concentration of Hb inside RBCs	32%-36%
RBC Distribution Width (RDW)	Measurement of variance in RBC size	11.0%-15.0%
White Blood Cell (WBC) Count	The number of WBCs per volume of blood	4,300-10,800/mm ³
WBC Differential	Includes neutrophils, eosinophils, basophils, lymphocytes, and monocytes	
Platelet Count	The number of platelets per volume of blood	150,000-400,000/mm ³
Mean Platelet Volume (MPV)	Measurement of platelet size	
Reticulocytes	Immature RBCs that contain no nucleus but have residual RNA	Normally make up 1% of total RBC count

*Normal values may vary depending on site and age

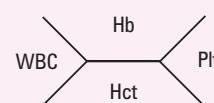


Clinical Use of RDW

- To distinguish the etiologies of microcytosis:
 - Iron deficiency: increased RDW (anisocytosis) as cells are of varying sizes in iron deficiency
 - Thalassemia minor: normal RDW (also expect a high RBC count) as cells are of similar size due to genetic defect in Hb



Complete Blood Count



Approach to Interpreting a CBC

- Consider values in the context of individual's baseline
 - up to 5% of population without disease may have values outside "normal" range
 - an individual may display a clinically significant change from their baseline without violating "normal" reference range
- Is one cell line affected or are several?
 - if all lines are low: pancytopenia (see *Pancytopenia, H8*)
 - if RBCs and platelets are low: consider a MAHA (see *H22*)
 - if single cell line affected: see corresponding section in *Common Presenting Problems, H6*

Blood Film Interpretation

RED BLOOD CELLS

Size

- microcytic (MCV <80), normocytic (MCV = 80-100), macrocytic (MCV >100)
- anisocytosis: RBCs with increased variability in size (increased RDW)
 - iron deficiency anemia, hemolytic anemias, myelofibrosis, blood transfusion











Color

- hypochromic: increase in size of central pallor (normal = less than 1/3 of RBC diameter)
 - iron deficiency anemia, anemia of chronic inflammation, sideroblastic anemia
- polychromasia: increased reticulocytes (pinkish-blue cells)
 - increased RBC production by bone marrow

Shape

- poikilocytosis: increased proportion of RBCs of abnormal shape
 - iron deficiency anemia, myelofibrosis






Table 2. Common Erythrocyte Shapes

Shape	Definition	Associated Conditions
Discocyte 	Biconcave disc	Normal RBC
Spherocyte 	Spherical RBC (due to loss of membrane)	Hereditary spherocytosis, immune hemolytic anemia, post-transfusion
Elliptocyte/Ovalocyte 	Oval-shaped, elongated RBCs • Elliptocytes: the RBC long axis is $\geq 2\times$ the length of the short axis • Ovalocytes: the RBC long axis is $< 2\times$ the length of the short axis	Hereditary elliptocytosis, megaloblastic anemia, myelofibrosis, iron-deficiency, MDS (myelodysplastic syndrome)
Schistocyte (helmet cell) 	Fragmented cells (due to traumatic disruption of membrane)	Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia (HUS/TTP, DIC, preeclampsia, HELLP, malignant HTN), vasculitis, glomerulonephritis, prosthetic heart valve
Sickle Cell 	Sickle-shaped RBC (due to polymerization of hemoglobin S)	Sickle cell disorders: HbSC, HbSS
Codocyte (target cell) 	"Bull's eye" on dried film	Liver disease, hemoglobin SC, thalassemia, Fe deficiency, asplenia
Dacrocyte (teardrop cell) 	Single pointed end, looks like a teardrop	Myelofibrosis, thalassemia major, megaloblastic anemia
Acanthocyte (spur cell) 	Distorted RBC with irregularly distributed thorn-like projections (due to abnormal membrane lipids)	Severe liver disease (spur cell anemia), starvation/anorexia, post-splenectomy
Echinocyte (burr cell) 	RBC with numerous regularly spaced, small spiny projections	Uremia, HUS, burns, cardiopulmonary bypass, post-transfusion, storage artifact
Rouleaux Formation 	Aggregates of RBC resembling stacks of coins (due to increased plasma concentration of high molecular weight proteins)	Pregnancy: most common cause; due to physiological increase in fibrinogen Inflammatory conditions: due to polyclonal immunoglobulins Plasma cell dyscrasias: due to monoclonal paraproteinemia, e.g. multiple myeloma, macroglobulinemia Storage artifact

DIC = disseminated intravascular coagulation; HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelet count; HUS = hemolytic uremic syndrome; TTP = thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura

Illustrations: Ayalah Hutchins and Merry Shiyu Wang 2012

Table 3. RBC Inclusions

Inclusions	Definition	Associated Conditions
Nucleus 	Present in erythroblasts (immature RBCs)	Hyperplastic erythropoiesis (seen in hypoxia, hemolytic anemia), BM infiltration disorders, MPNs (MF)
Heinz Bodies 	Denatured and precipitated hemoglobin	G6PD deficiency (post-exposure to oxidant), thalassemia, unstable hemoglobins
Howell-Jolly Bodies 	Small nuclear remnant resembling a pyknotic nucleus	Post-splenectomy, hyposplenism (sickle cell disease), neonates, megaloblastic anemia
Basophilic Stippling 	Deep blue granulations indicating ribosome aggregation	Thalassemia, heavy metal (Pb, Zn, Ag, Hg) poisoning, megaloblastic anemia, hereditary (pyrimidine 5' nucleotidase deficiency)
Sideroblasts 	Erythrocytes with Fe containing granules in the cytoplasm	Hereditary, idiopathic, drugs, hypothyroidism (see Sideroblastic Anemia, H16), myelodysplastic syndrome

BM = bone marrow; MF = myelofibrosis; MPN = myeloproliferative neoplasm

Illustrations: Ayalah Hutchins and Merry Shiyu Wang 2012




WHITE BLOOD CELLS

- lymphocytes: comprise 30-40% of WBCs; great variation in "normal" lymphocyte morphology
- neutrophils
 - normally only mature neutrophils (with 3-4 lobed nucleus) and band neutrophils (immediate precursor with horseshoe-shaped nucleus) are found in circulation
 - hypersegmented neutrophil: >5 lobes suggests megaloblastic process (B_{12} or folate deficiency)
 - left shift (increased granulocyte precursors)
 - ♦ seen in leukemoid reactions: acute infections, pregnancy, neonates, hypoxia, shock, myeloproliferative neoplasms (CML, MF)
- blasts
 - immature, undifferentiated precursors; associated with acute leukemia, MDS, G-CSF (growth factor that stimulates neutrophil production) use

PLATELETS

- small, purple, anuclear cell fragments

Table 4. Abnormal White Blood Cells on Film

Appearance	Definition	Associated Conditions
Reed-Sternberg Cell 	Giant, multinucleated B-lymphocyte, only seen with bone marrow specimens	Primarily Hodgkin lymphoma, also seen in some non-Hodgkin lymphoma, CLL, and EBV infection
Smudge Cell 	Lymphocytes damaged during blood film preparation indicating cell fragility	Chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) and other lymphoproliferative disorders Pathognomonic in EBV infection
Auer Rod 	Clumps of granular material that form long needles in the cytoplasm of myeloblasts	Pathognomonic for acute myeloid leukemia (AML)

EBV = Epstein-Barr virus

Illustrations: Ayalah Hutchins and Merry Shiyu Wang 2012



Left Shift

Refers to an increase in granulocyte precursors in the peripheral smear (myelocytes, metamyelocytes, promyelocytes, blasts). If present, implies increased marrow production of granulocytes (e.g. inflammation, infection, G-CSF administration, CML). The presence of predominantly blasts in the peripheral smear without cells between mature neutrophil and blast suggests clonal cell disorder (MDS, acute leukemias)

This is a MEDICAL EMERGENCY

Bone Marrow Aspiration and Biopsy



- sites: posterior iliac crest, sternum
- analyses: most often done together; exception is in follow-up of conditions or diagnosis of CML where aspiration alone could suffice
 - aspiration: takes a fluid marrow sample for cellular morphology, flow cytometry, cytogenetics, molecular studies, microbiology (C&S, AFB, PCR)
 - biopsy: takes a sample of intact bone marrow to assess histology and immunohistochemistry

Indications

- unexplained CBC abnormalities
- diagnosis and evaluation of infiltrating cancers: plasma cell disorders, leukemias, solid tumors
- diagnosis and staging of lymphoma or solid tumors
- evaluate iron metabolism and stores (gold standard, but rarely done)
- evaluate suspected deposition and storage disease (e.g. amyloidosis, Gaucher's disease)
- evaluate fever of undetermined origin, suspected mycobacterial, fungal/parasitic infections, or granulomatous disease
- unexplained splenomegaly
- confirm normal bone marrow in potential allogenic hematopoietic cell donor

Contraindications

- absolute: untreated hemophilia, severe DIC, infection over skin site
- relative: platelet count <10, recent warfarin use with INR >2.0, liver disease with associated coagulopathy
- thrombocytopenia is not a contraindication; may need platelet transfusion prior to procedure

Common Presenting Problems



Anemia

Definition

- a decrease in red blood cell (RBC) mass that can be detected by hemoglobin (Hb) concentration, hematocrit (Hct), and RBC count
 - adult males: Hb <13 g/dL or Hct <0.41
 - adult females: Hb <12 g/dL or Hct <0.36

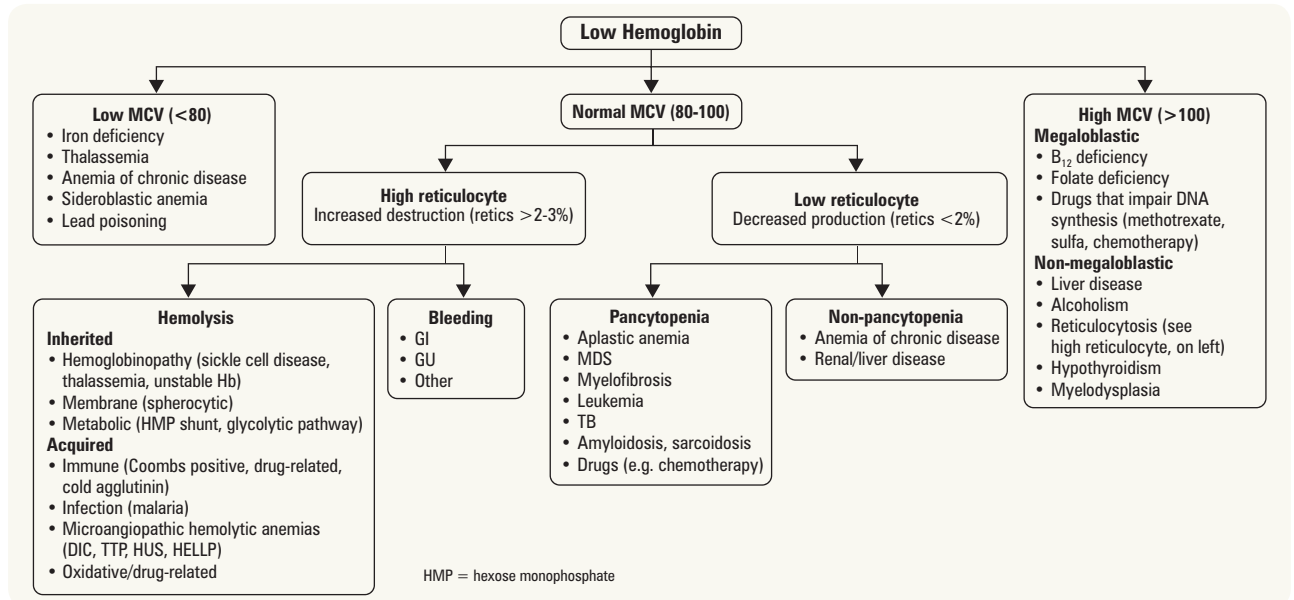


Figure 2. Approach to anemia – classification by size of RBC

Clinical Features

- history
 - symptoms of anemia: fatigue, malaise, weakness, dyspnea, decreased exercise tolerance, palpitations, headache, dizziness, tinnitus, syncope
 - acute vs. chronic, bleeding, systemic illness, diet, alcohol, family history
 - menstrual history: menorrhagia, menometrorrhagia, dysfunctional uterine bleeding
 - rule out pancytopenia (recurrent infection, mucosal bleeding/easy bruising)
- physical signs
 - HEENT: pallor in mucous membranes, palmar creases and conjunctiva at Hb <9.0 g/dL, ocular bruits at Hb <5.5 g/dL, angular cheilosis, jaundice
 - cardiac: tachycardia, orthostatic hypotension, systolic flow murmur, wide pulse pressure, signs of CHF
 - dermatologic: pallor in palmar skin creases at Hb <7.5 g/dL, jaundice (if due to hemolysis), nail changes, glossitis

Investigations

- rule out dilutional anemia (low Hb due to increased effective circulating volume)
- CBC with differential (MCV, RDW, RBC count)
- reticulocyte count – very useful to evaluate for blood cell production problems but must be corrected for anemia
- blood film
- rule out nutritional deficit, gastrointestinal and genitourinary disease in iron deficiency anemia
- additional laboratory investigations as indicated (see *Microcytic Anemia*, H13, *Normocytic Anemia*, H17, *Hemolytic Anemia*, H18, and *Macrocytic Anemia*, H24)



Reticulocytes

- Reticulocytes are immature erythrocytes and are markers of erythrocyte production
- Should normally increase when there is a decrease in RBC
- With blood loss, reticulocytes should increase 2-3x initially and then 5-7x over the next week
- A normal reticulocyte count in anemia should be interpreted as a sign of decreased production

Erythrocytosis

Definition

- an increase in the number of RBCs: Hb >18.5 g/dL or Hct >52% (males); Hb >16.5 g/dL or Hct >47% (females and African males)

Etiology

- relative/spurious erythrocytosis (decreased plasma volume): diuretics, severe dehydration, burns, “stress” (Gaisböck’s syndrome)
- absolute erythrocytosis

Table 5. Etiology of Erythrocytosis

Primary	Secondary	Inappropriate Production of Erythropoietin
Polycythemia Vera (PV) (see <i>Polycythemia Vera</i> , H41)	Physiologic (poor tissue oxygenation/hypoxia) Carbon monoxide poisoning Heavy smoking High altitude Pulmonary disease COPD Sleep apnea Pulmonary HTN Cardiovascular disease R to L shunt (Eisenmenger syndrome) RBC defects (Hb with increased O ₂ affinity, methemoglobinemia)	Tumors Hepatocellular carcinoma Renal cell carcinoma Cerebellar hemangioblastoma Pheochromocytoma Uterine leiomyoma Ovarian tumor Other Polycystic kidney disease Post-kidney transplant Hydronephrosis Androgens Exogenous erythropoietin

Clinical Features

- secondary to high red cell mass and hyperviscosity
 - headache, dizziness, tinnitus, visual disturbances, hypertensive symptoms
 - symptoms of angina, congestive heart failure, aquagenic pruritus
- thrombosis (venous or arterial) or bleeding (abnormal platelet function)
- physical findings
 - splenomegaly ± hepatomegaly, facial plethora/ruddy complexion (70%) and/or palms, gout

Investigations

- serum erythropoietin (EPO): increased EPO suggests autonomous production or hypoxia, and is used to rule out PV
 - search for tumor as source of EPO as indicated (e.g. abdominal U/S, CT head)
 - JAK-2 mutation analysis: positive in >96% of cases of PV
 - only send if low/normal EPO level
- ferritin (iron deficiency can mask the diagnosis)

Treatment

- if primary: see *Polycythemia Vera*, H41
- if secondary: treat underlying cause
 - O₂ for hypoxemia, CPAP for sleep apnea, surgery for EPO-secreting tumors
 - often cardiologists will not treat high HCT in cyanotic patients (or will have high threshold)

Thrombocytopenia

**Definition**

- platelet count <150,000/mm³

Clinical Features

- history: bleeding gums, epistaxis, bleeding post-surgical procedures, metromenorrhagia
- physical exam: bruising, petechiae, ecchymoses, non-palpable purpura
 - hemarthrosis and deep muscle hematomas are rarely initial signs in patients with primary hemostatic disorders
- see *Disorders of Primary Hemostasis*, H27, for complications

Investigations

- CBC and differential
- blood film
 - decreased production: other cell line abnormalities, blasts, hypersegmented PMNs, leukoerythroblastic changes
 - increased destruction: large platelets, schistocytes (seen in MAHA)
 - rule out platelet clumping
- workup for nutritional deficiencies: B₁₂, RBC folate
- PT/INR, aPTT and fibrinogen if DIC suspected
- LFTs

Treatments

- life threatening bleeding: platelet transfusion (repeat CBC 1 h post-transfusion to confirm an appropriate rise in counts)
- if secondary: treat underlying cause
- ITP: see *Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura*, H27

**Must rule out factitious**

thrombocytopenia: platelet clumping (secondary to EDTA antibodies from collection tube). This can be seen on blood film and confirmed by repeating in a citrated sample (i.e. using a sodium citrate tube to collect blood, rather than EDTA)



In hospitalized patients, drugs and infection account for the majority of cases of thrombocytopenia

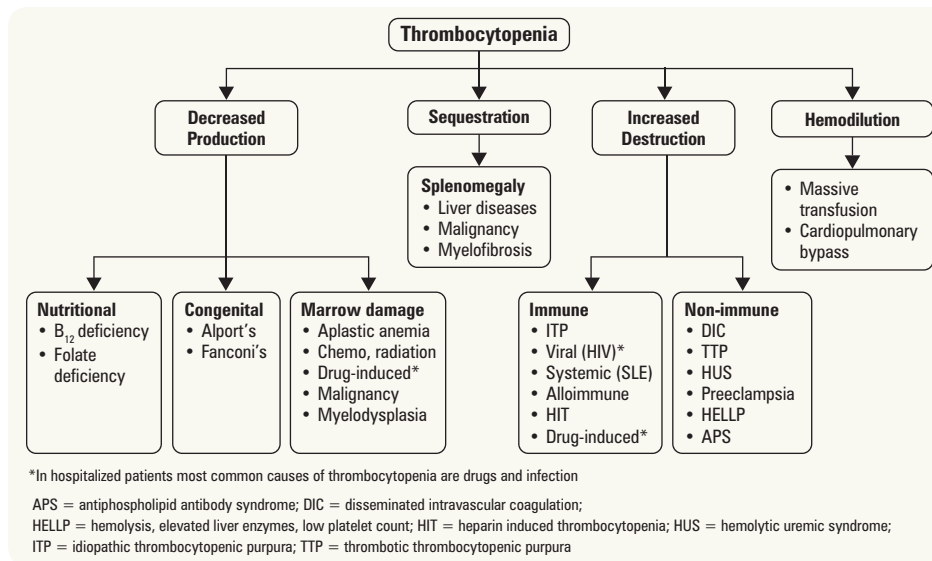


Figure 3. Approach to thrombocytopenia

Adapted from: Cecil Essentials of Medicine

**References**

APS: see [Hematology, H36](#)
 Aplastic Anemia: see [Hematology, H17](#)
 B₁₂/Folate Deficiency: see [Hematology, H24/H25](#)
 DIC: see [Hematology, H32](#)
 HIT: see [Hematology, H29](#)
 HIV: see [Infectious Diseases, ID29](#)
 ITP: see [Hematology, H27](#)
 Myelodysplasia: see [Hematology, H38](#)
 Preeclampsia: see [Obstetrics, OB16](#)
 SLE: see [Rheumatology, RH11](#)

Thrombocytosis

Definition

- platelet count >400,000/mm³
- primary thrombocytosis: due to myeloproliferative neoplasms (e.g. CML, polycythemia vera [PV], primary myelofibrosis, essential thrombocytosis [ET]; rarely associated with MDS)
- reactive/secondary thrombocytosis: acute phase reactant (e.g. surgery, inflammation, infection, trauma, bleeding, iron deficiency, neoplasms, ischemic injury); much more common than primary

Clinical Features

- history: trauma, surgery, splenectomy, infection, inflammation, bleeding, iron deficiency, prior diagnosis of chronic hematologic disorder, constitutional symptoms (malignancy)
- vasomotor symptoms: headache, visual disturbances, lightheadedness, atypical chest pain, acral dysesthesia, erythromelalgia, livedo reticularis, aquagenic pruritus
- clotting risk, bleeding risk (rare)
- physical exam: splenomegaly can be seen in myeloproliferative neoplasms (MPNs)

Investigations

- CBC, peripheral blood film, serum ferritin concentration
- non-specific markers of infection or inflammation (e.g. CRP, ESR, ferritin)
- JAK-2 PCR (mutation in ~50% of ET)
- if reactive process has been ruled out, bone marrow biopsy may be required to rule out MPN/MDS

Treatment

- primary: ASA ± cytoreductive agents
- secondary: treat underlying cause

Pancytopenia

**Definition**

- a decrease in all hematopoietic cell lines

Clinical Features

- anemia: fatigue
- leukopenia: recurrent infections
- thrombocytopenia: mucosal bleeding and ecchymoses

Investigations

- CBC, peripheral blood film, serum ferritin concentration
- non-specific markers of infection or inflammation (e.g. CRP, ESR, ferritin)
- JAK-2 PCR (mutation in ~50% of ET)
- if reactive process has been ruled out, bone marrow biopsy may be required to rule out MPN/MDS

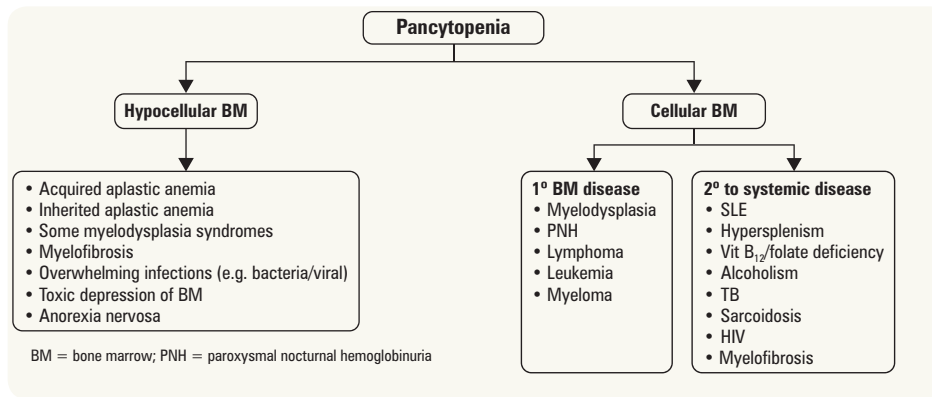


Figure 4. Approach to pancytopenia

Neutrophilia

Definition

- different guidelines, but absolute neutrophil count (ANC) $>7.7 \times 10^9/L$

Etiology

- primary neutrophilia
 - chronic myeloid leukemia (CML)
 - other myeloproliferative disorders: PV, essential thrombocytosis (ET), myelofibrosis
 - hereditary neutrophilia (autosomal dominant)
 - chronic idiopathic neutrophilia in otherwise healthy patients
 - leukocyte adhesion deficiency
- secondary neutrophilia
 - smoking: most common cause of mild neutrophilia
 - infection: leukocytosis with left shift \pm toxic granulation, Döhle bodies (intra-cytoplasmic structures composed of agglutinated ribosomes)
 - inflammation: e.g. rheumatoid arthritis (RA), IBD, chronic hepatitis, MI, PE, burns
 - malignancy: hematologic (i.e. marrow invasion by tumor) and non-hematologic (especially large cell lung cancer)
 - stress/exercise/epinephrine: movement of neutrophils from marginated pool into circulating pool
 - medications: glucocorticoids, β -agonists, lithium

Clinical Features

- look for signs and symptoms of fever, inflammation, malignancy to determine appropriate further investigations
 - including lymph nodes and organomegaly
- examine oral cavity, teeth, peri-rectal area, genitals, and skin for signs of infection

Investigations

- CBC and differential: mature neutrophils or bands $>20\%$ of total WBC suggests infection/inflammation
- blood film: Döhle bodies, toxic granulation, cytoplasmic vacuoles in infection
- review other blood counts
- may require bone marrow biopsy if MPN suspected

Treatment

- directed at underlying cause

Neutropenia

Definition

- mild: ANC $1,000-1,500/mm^3$
- moderate: ANC $500-1,000/mm^3$ (risk of infection starts to increase)
- severe: ANC $<500/mm^3$
- profound: ANC $<100/mm^3$ for >7 d



Absolute Neutrophil Count (ANC) =
WBC count \times (%PMNs + %bands)

Beware of fever + ANC $<0.5 \times 10^9/L$ =
FEBRILE NEUTROPENIA

Etiology

Table 6. Etiology of Neutropenia

Decreased Production	Peripheral Destruction	Excessive Margination (Transient Neutropenia)
Infection Viral hepatitis, EBV, HIV, TB, typhoid, malaria Hematological Diseases Idiopathic, aplastic anemia, myelofibrosis, BM infiltration Drug-Induced: Alkylating agents, antimetabolites, anticonvulsants, antipsychotics, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-thyroid drugs Toxins/Chemicals High dose radiation, benzene, DDT Nutritional Deficiency B ₁₂ , folate Idiopathic Constitutional neutropenia, benign cyclic neutropenia, cyclical	Anti-neutrophil antibodies Spleen or lung trapping Autoimmune disorders: RA (Felty's syndrome), SLE Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (formerly Wegener's) Drugs: haptens (e.g. α -methyl dopa)	Idiopathic (most common) Overwhelming bacterial infection Hemodialysis Racial variation (e.g. African or Ashkenazi Jewish descent)

Clinical Features

- fever, chills (only if infection present)
- infection by endogenous bacteria (e.g. *S. aureus*, gram negatives from GI and GU tract)
- painful ulceration on skin, anus, mouth, and throat following colonization by opportunistic organisms
- avoid digital rectal exam

Investigations

- dependent on degree of neutropenia, history, and symptoms
- ranges from observation with frequent CBCs to bone marrow aspiration and biopsy

Treatment

- regular dental care: chronic gingivitis and recurrent stomatitis major sources of morbidity
- febrile neutropenia (see [Infectious Diseases, ID46](#))
- in severe immune-mediated neutropenia, G-CSF may increase neutrophil counts
 - if no response to G-CSF, consider immunosuppression (e.g. steroids, cyclosporine, methotrexate)



Prophylactic Hematopoietic Colony-Stimulating Factors on Mortality and Infection

Ann Intern Med 2007;147:400-411

Purpose: To review the effects of colony-stimulating factor (CSF) on mortality, infections, and febrile neutropenia in patients undergoing chemotherapy or stem-cell transplant (SCT).

Study Selection: 148 RCTs comparing the effects of CSFs to either placebo or no therapy were included. Prophylactic CSFs were given concurrently with or after initiation of chemotherapy.

Results: There were no differences in all-cause mortality or infection-related death between CSF and placebo groups. Compared to placebo or no therapy, CSFs reduced infection rate (median rate 38.9% vs. 43.1%; rate ratio 0.85), microbiologically documented infections (MR 23.5% vs. 28.6%; rate ratio 0.86), and febrile neutropenia (MR 25.3% vs. 44.2%; rate ratio 0.71).

Conclusions: Prophylactic CSFs decrease infection rates and episodes of febrile neutropenia in patients undergoing chemotherapy or SCT, but have no effect on mortality.



G-CSF = Neupogen® = Filgrastim



Presence of smudge cells suggests a lymphoproliferative disorder if persistently elevated above $5.0 \times 10^9/L$ for > 3 mo; consider flow cytometry



Presence of atypical lymphocytes suggests viral infection

Lymphocytosis

Definition

- absolute lymphocyte count $>4 \times 10^9/L$

Etiology

- infection
 - viral infections (majority); particularly mononucleosis
 - TB, pertussis, brucellosis, toxoplasmosis
- physiologic response to stress (e.g. trauma, status epilepticus)
- hypersensitivity (e.g. drugs, serum sickness)
- autoimmune (e.g. rheumatoid arthritis)
- neoplasm (e.g. ALL, CLL, lymphoma)

Investigations

- peripheral smear

Treatment

- treat underlying cause

Lymphopenia

Definition

- absolute lymphocyte count $<1,500/mm^3$

Etiology

- idiopathic CD4+ lymphocytopenia
- radiation
- HIV/AIDS, hepatitis B, hepatitis C
- malignancy/chemotherapeutic agents
- malnutrition, alcoholism
- autoimmune disease (e.g. SLE)

Clinical Features

- opportunistic infections (see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID46)

**Treatment**

- treat underlying cause
- treat opportunistic infections aggressively and consider antimicrobial prophylaxis (see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID48)



Eosinophilia

Definition

- absolute eosinophil count $>500/\text{mm}^3$

Etiology

- primary: due to clonal bone marrow disorder
 - if no primary etiology identified, classified as hypereosinophilic syndrome
 - ♦ 6 mo of eosinophilia with no other detectable causes (often with clonal molecular abnormality)
 - ♦ can involve heart, bone marrow, CNS
- secondary
 - most common causes are parasitic (usually helminth) infections and allergic reactions
 - less common causes:
 - ♦ polyarteritis nodosa, see [Rheumatology](#), RH19
 - ♦ respiratory causes (asthma, eosinophilic pneumonia, Churg-Strauss)
 - ♦ cholesterol emboli
 - ♦ hematologic malignancy: see [Chronic Myeloid Leukemia](#), H40 and [Hodgkin Lymphoma](#), H45
 - ♦ adrenal insufficiency, see [Endocrinology](#), E35
 - ♦ medications (penicillins)

**Basophilia and/or Eosinophilia**

Can be an indicator of CML or other myeloproliferative neoplasm, associated with pruritus due to excessive histamine production

**Treatment**

- treat underlying cause



Agranulocytosis

Definition

- severe depletion of granulocytes (neutrophils, eosinophils, basophils) from the blood and granulocyte precursors from bone marrow

Etiology

- associated with medications in 70% of cases: e.g. chemotherapy, clozapine, thionamides (antithyroid drugs), sulfasalazine, and ticlopidine
 - immune-mediated destruction of circulating granulocytes by drug-induced antibodies or direct toxic effects upon marrow granulocytic precursors

Clinical Features

- abrupt onset of fever, chills, weakness, and oropharyngeal ulcers

Prognosis

- high fatality without vigorous treatment

Investigations/Treatment

- discontinue offending drug
- pan-culture and screen for infection if patient is febrile (blood cultures x2, urine culture, and chest x-ray as minimum, initiate broad-spectrum antibiotics)
- consider bone marrow aspirate and biopsy if cause unclear
- consider G-CSF

Leukemoid Reactions

- blood findings resembling those seen in certain types of leukemia which reflect the response of healthy BM to cytokines released due to infection or trauma
- leukocytosis $>50,000/\text{mm}^3$, marked left shift (myelocytes, metamyelocytes, bands in peripheral blood smear)

Etiology

- important to rule out CML
- differential diagnosis:
 - myeloid progenitors: pneumonia, other acute bacterial infections, intoxications, burns, malignant disease, severe hemorrhage or hemolysis
 - lymphoid progenitors: pertussis, TB, infectious mononucleosis
- monocytic progenitors: TB

Approach to Lymphadenopathy

History

- constitutional/B-symptoms: seen in TB, lymphoma, other malignancies
- exposures: cats (cat scratch – *Bartonella henselae*), ticks (Lyme disease – *Borrelia burgdorferi*), high risk behaviors (HIV)
- joint pain/swelling, rashes (connective tissue disorder)
- pruritus (seen in Hodgkin lymphoma)
- medications (can cause serum sickness → lymphadenopathy)

Physical Exam

- basic assessment: occipital, preauricular, submandibular, cervical, supra-/infra-clavicular, axillary, epitrochlear, inguinal, popliteal nodes
 - characteristics of lymph nodes
 - look for signs of infection in regions which lymph nodes drain
- determine if lymphadenopathy is localized or generalized
- localized: typically reactive or neoplastic
 - cervical (bacterial/mycobacterial infections, ENT malignancies, metastatic cancer)
 - supraclavicular
 - ♦ right (mediastinal, bronchogenic, esophageal cancer)
 - ♦ left (gastric, gall bladder, pancreas, renal, testicular/ovarian cancer)
 - axillary (cat scratch fever, breast cancer, metastatic cancer)
 - epitrochlear (infections, sarcoidosis, lymphoma)
 - lower/inguinal (STDs, skin, cervix, vulva/penis, rectum/anus cancer)
- generalized: see Table 8
- thorough examination required to assess for systemic disease

Investigations

- CBC and differential, blood film
- ± tuberculin test, HIV RNA, RPR/VDRL, monospot/EBV serology, ANA, imaging as indicated
- if localized and no symptoms suggestive of malignancy, can observe 3-4 wk (if no resolution → biopsy)
- excisional biopsy is preferred as it preserves node architecture (essential for diagnosing lymphoma)
- in difficult to access areas (retroperitoneal, mediastinal/hilar) multiple core biopsies may be more practical/feasible
- FNA should NOT be used for diagnostic purposes in lymphoproliferative disease (use excisional biopsy instead)
 - helpful for recurrence of solid tumor malignancy

Table 7. Inflammatory vs. Neoplastic Lymph Nodes

Feature	Inflammatory	Neoplastic
Consistency	Rubbery	Firm/hard
Mobility	Mobile	Matted/immobile
Tenderness	Tender	Non-tender
Size	<2 cm	>2 cm

*Note: these classifications are not absolute; lymphoma and CLL nodes can feel rubbery and are frequently mobile, non-tender

Table 8. Differential Diagnosis of Generalized Lymphadenopathy

Reactive	Inflammatory	Neoplastic
Bacterial (TB, Lyme, brucellosis, cat scratch disease, syphilis)	Collagen disease (RA, dermatomyositis, SLE, vasculitis, Sjögren's)	Lymphoproliferative disorder/lymphoma
Viral (EBV, CMV, HIV)	Drug hypersensitivity	Metastatic cancer
Parasitic (toxoplasmosis)	Sarcoidosis, amyloidosis	Histiocytosis X
Fungal (histoplasmosis)	Serum sickness	



B-Symptoms

- Unexplained temperature >38°C
- Unexplained weight loss (>10% of body weight in 6 mo)
- Night sweats



Drugs That Can Cause Lymphadenopathy

- Allopurinol
- Atenolol
- Captopril
- Carbamazepine
- Cephalosporins
- Gold
- Hydralazine
- Penicillin
- Phenytoin
- Primidone
- Pyrimethamine
- Quinidine
- Sulfonamides

Approach to Splenomegaly



Table 9. Differential Diagnosis of Splenomegaly

Increased Demand for Splenic Function		Congestive	Infiltrative
Hematological	Infectious	Inflammatory	Cirrhosis
Spherocytosis	CMV	Felty syndrome	Splenic vein thrombosis
Hemoglobinopathies	Bacterial endocarditis	Still's disease	Portal vein obstruction
Hemolysis	TB	SLE	Portal HTN (including right heart failure)
Sequestration crisis	<u>HIV/AIDS</u>	Sarcoidosis	
Nutritional anemias	EBV		
Eliptocytosis	<u>Malaria</u>		
	Histoplasmosis		
	<u>Leishmaniasis</u>		
			Non-Malignant
			Benign metaplasia
			Amyloidosis, Sarcoidosis
			<u>Lysosomal storage diseases</u>
			(Gaucher's, Niemann-Pick)
			Glycogen storage diseases
			Hamartomas
			Cysts
			Vascular abnormalities
			Malignant
			<u>Leukemia (CML, CLL)</u>
			<u>Lymphoproliferative disease</u>
			<u>Hodgkin lymphoma</u>
			<u>Myeloproliferative disorders</u>
			Metastatic tumor

The underlined conditions cause *massive splenomegaly* (spleen crosses midline or reaches pelvis)

History

- constitutional symptoms, feeling of fullness in LUQ
- signs or symptoms of infection or malignancy
- history of liver disease, hemolytic anemia, or high-risk exposures

Physical Exam

- jaundice, petechiae
- signs of chronic liver disease
- percussion (Castell's sign, Traube's space, Nixon's method) and palpation
- associated lymphadenopathy or hepatomegaly
- signs of CHF

Investigations

- CBC and differential, blood film
- as indicated: liver enzymes/liver function tests, reticulocyte count, Monospot®, haptoglobin, LDH, infectious, and autoimmune workup
- imaging
 - ultrasound of abdomen/liver to rule out cirrhosis and portal vein thrombosis
 - echo for cardiac function
 - CT to rule out lymphoma



Causes of Splenomegaly

CHINA

Cirrhosis/**C**ongestion (portal HTN)
Hematological
Infectious
Neoplasm (malignant, non-malignant)
Autoimmune



Does This Adult Patient Have Splenomegaly?

From The Rational Clinical Examination
 JAMA 2009; <http://www.jamaevidence.com/content/3487298>

Study: Systematic review of articles assessing the sensitivity and specificity of clinical exam maneuvers for detecting splenomegaly.

Results: On percussion, Nixon sign had a positive likelihood ratio (+LR) of 3.6 (95% CI 1.8-7.3) and a negative likelihood ratio (-LR) of 0.41 (95% CI 0.26-0.64). Percussion of Traube's space had a +LR of 2.3 (95% CI 1.8-2.9) and -LR of 0.48 (95% CI 0.39-0.60), while Castell sign had a +LR of 1.2 (95% CI 0.98-1.6) and -LR of 0.45 (95% CI 0.19-1.1). On palpation, supine 1-handed palpation had a +LR of 8.2 (95% CI 5.8-1.2) and -LR of 0.41 (95% CI 0.30-0.57). Middleton hooking maneuver had a +LR of 6.5 (95% CI 3.1-1.5) and -LR of 0.16 (95% CI 0.08-0.32).

Conclusions: Palpation may have greater accuracy than percussion, but may be best when both are used in tandem. Specifically, Nixon sign and supine one-handed palpation are the most accurate, respectively.

Microcytic Anemia

- MCV <80 fL
- see Figure 2, *Approach to Anemia*, H6

Table 10. Iron Indices and Blood Film in Microcytic Anemia (MCV <80)

	Lab Tests				Blood Film
	Ferritin	Serum Iron	TIBC	RDW	
Iron Deficiency Anemia	↓↓	↓	↑	↑ (>15)	• Hypochromic, microcytic
Anemia of Chronic Inflammation	N/↑	↓	↓	N	• Normocytic/microcytic
Sideroblastic Anemia	N/↑	↑	N	↑	• Dual population • Basophilic stippling
Thalassemia	N/↑	N/↑	N	N/↑	• Hypochromic, microcytic • Basophilic stippling • Poikilocytosis



Causes of Microcytic Anemia

TAILS

Thalassemia
Anemia of chronic inflammation
Iron deficiency
Lead poisoning
Sideroblastic anemia

Iron Metabolism



Iron Intake (Dietary)

- average North American adult diet = 10-20 mg iron (Fe) daily
- absorption is 5-10% (0.5-2 mg/d); enhanced by citric acid, ascorbic acid (vitamin C) and reduced by polyphenols (e.g. in tea), phytate (e.g. in bran), dietary calcium, and soy protein
- males have positive Fe balance; up to 20% of menstruating females have negative Fe balance

Iron Indices

- bone marrow aspirate: gold standard test for iron stores (rarely done)
- serum ferritin: most important blood test for iron stores
 - decreased in iron deficiency anemia
 - elevated in:
 - ♦ infection, inflammation, malignancy
 - ♦ liver disease, hyperthyroidism, and iron overload
- serum iron: measure of all non-heme iron present in blood
 - varies significantly daily
 - virtually all serum iron is bound to transferrin, only a trace is free or complexed in ferritin
- TIBC: total amount of transferrin present in blood
 - normally, one third of TIBC is saturated with iron
 - high specificity for decreased iron, low sensitivity
- saturation:
 - serum Fe divided by TIBC, expressed as a proportion or a percentage
 - low in iron deficiency anemia
- sTfR
 - reflects the availability of iron at the tissue level
 - the transferrin receptor is expressed on the surface of erythroblasts and is responsible for iron uptake – some is cleaved off and is present in circulation as sTfR
 - in iron deficient states more transferrin receptor is expressed on erythroblasts leading to an increase in sTfR
 - low in reduced erythropoiesis and iron overload
 - useful in determining iron deficiency in the setting of chronic inflammatory disorders (see *Iron Deficiency Anemia*, H15)

Iron Absorption and Transport

- dietary iron is absorbed in the duodenum (impaired by IBD, celiac disease, etc.)
- in circulation the majority of non-heme iron is bound to transferrin which transfers iron from enterocytes and storage pool sites (macrophages of the reticuloendothelial system and hepatocytes) to RBC precursors in the bone marrow

Iron Levels

- hepcidin that regulates systemic iron levels
 - a hormone produced by hepatocytes
 - binds to iron exporter ferroportin on duodenal enterocytes and reticuloendothelial cells, and induces its degradation thereby inhibiting iron export into the circulation
 - hepcidin production is increased in states of inflammation (thereby mediating anemia of chronic inflammation) or iron overload, and decreased in states where erythropoiesis is increased (e.g. hemolysis) or oxygen tension is low

Iron Storage

- ferritin
 - ferric iron (Fe^{3+}) complexed to a protein called apoferritin (hepatocytes are main ferritin storage site)
 - small quantities are present in plasma in equilibrium with intracellular ferritin
 - also an acute phase reactant – can be spuriously elevated despite low Fe stores in response to a stressor
- hemosiderin
 - aggregates or crystals of ferritin with the apoferritin partially removed
 - macrophage-monocyte system is main source of hemosiderin storage

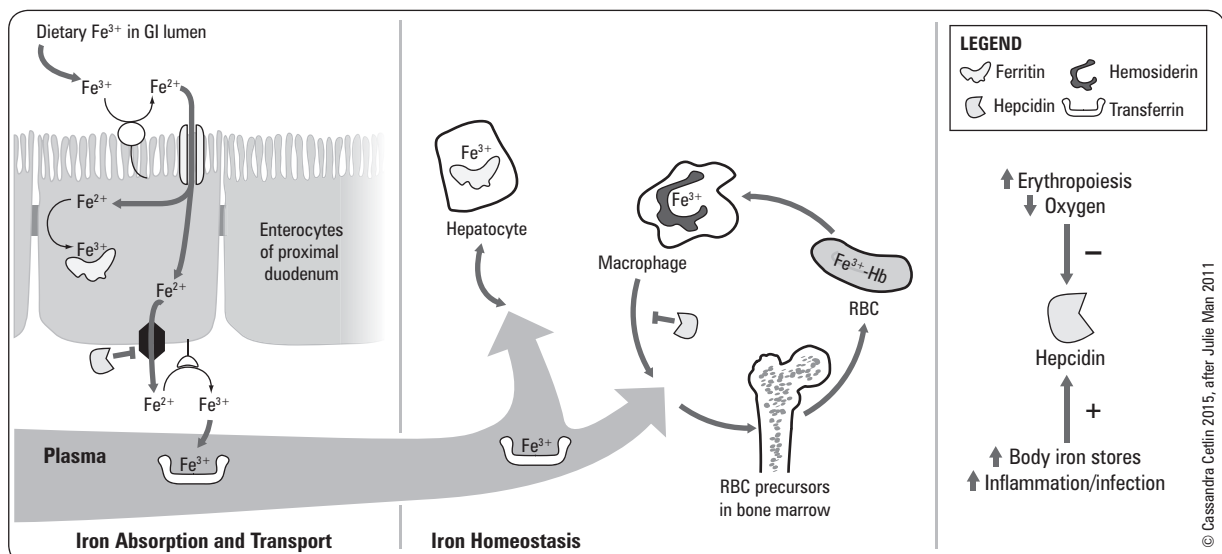


Figure 5. Iron metabolism

Iron Deficiency Anemia

- see [Pediatrics, P47](#)
- most common cause of anemia in North America

Etiology

- increased demand
 - increased physiological need for iron in the body (e.g. pregnancy)
- decreased supply: dietary deficiencies (rarely the only etiology)
 - cow's milk (infant diet)
 - "tea and toast" diet (elderly)
 - absorption imbalances
 - post-gastrectomy
 - malabsorption (IBD of duodenum, celiac disease, autoimmune atrophic gastritis)
- increased losses
 - hemorrhage
 - ♦ obvious causes: menorrhagia, abnormal uterine bleeding, frank GI bleed
 - ♦ occult: peptic ulcer disease, GI cancer
 - hemolysis
 - ♦ intravascular (e.g. PNH, cardiac valve RBC fragmentation)
 - ♦ extravascular (e.g. immune hemolytic anemias)

Clinical Features

- iron deficiency may cause fatigue before clinical anemia develops
- signs/symptoms of anemia: see [Anemia, H6](#)
- brittle hair, nail changes (brittle, koilonychia)
- Plummer-Vinson syndrome: dysphagia (esophageal webs), glossitis, angular stomatitis (inflammation and fissuring at the corners of the mouth)
- pica (appetite for non-food substances e.g. ice, paint, dirt)

Investigations

- iron indices, including soluble transferrin receptor
 - low ferritin (<45 µg/L) is diagnostic of iron deficiency
 - ferritin is an acute phase reactant and is elevated in the setting of inflammatory conditions and liver disease; serum ferritin <100 µg/L in these settings is suggestive of iron deficiency, necessitating further workup (Figure 6)
- peripheral blood film
 - hypochromic microcytosis: RBCs have low Hb levels due to lack of iron
 - pencil forms, anisocytosis
 - target cells (thin)
- bone marrow (gold standard but rarely done)
 - iron stain (Prussian blue) shows decreased iron in macrophages and in erythroid precursors (sideroblasts)
 - intermediate and late erythroblasts show micronormoblastic maturation



Plummer-Vinson Syndrome Triad

- Dysphagia (esophageal)
- Glossitis
- Iron deficiency anemia

Table 11. The Utility of Ferritin in the Diagnosis of Iron Deficiency Anemia

Ferritin (µg/L)	Likelihood ratio for iron deficiency anemia
>100	0.13
45-100	0.46
18-45	3.12
≤18	41.47

Am J Med 1990;88:205-209

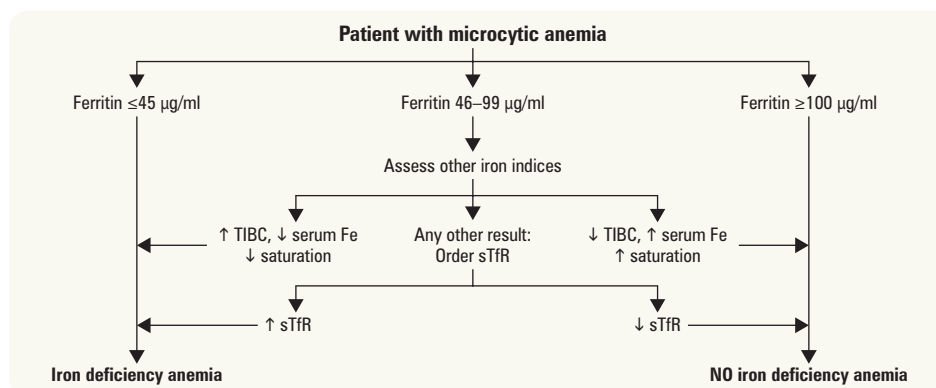


Figure 6. Approach to interpreting iron indices

Adapted from: *Am Fam Physician* 2007;75:671-678

Treatment

- treat underlying cause
- supplementation
 - oral (tablets, syrup)
 - ♦ ferrous sulphate 325 mg tid, ferrous gluconate 300 mg tid, or ferrous fumarate 300 mg tid
 - ♦ supplement until anemia corrects, then continue for 3+ mo until serum ferritin returns to normal
 - ♦ oral iron should be taken with citrus juice to enhance absorption
 - IV (iron sucrose or dextran) can be used if patient cannot tolerate or absorb oral iron



Iron deficiency anemia is a common presentation of chronic lower GI bleeds (right-sided colorectal cancer, angiodysplasia, etc.)

In males and in post-menopausal women, a GI workup is always warranted

- monitoring response
 - reticulocyte count will begin to increase after one wk
 - Hb normalizes by 10 g/L per wk (if no blood loss)
 - iron supplementation required for 4-6 mo to replenish stores

Anemia of Chronic Inflammation

Etiology

- infection, malignancy, inflammatory and rheumatologic disease, chronic renal and liver disease, endocrine disorders (e.g. DM, hypothyroidism, hypogonadism, hypopituitarism)

Pathophysiology

- an anemia of underproduction due to impaired iron utilization (hepcidin is a key regulatory peptide)
 - enterocyte trapping of iron → increased hepcidin inhibits ferroportin (↓ iron into circulation)
 - macrophage trapping of iron → reduced plasma iron levels making iron relatively unavailable for new hemoglobin synthesis
 - marrow unresponsive to normal or slightly elevated EPO
- mild hemolytic component is often present
- RBC survival is modestly decreased

Investigations

- diagnosis of exclusion
- associated with elevation in acute phase reactants (ESR, CRP, fibrinogen)
- “classic” serum iron indices (see Table 11)
 - serum iron and TIBC low, % saturation normal
 - serum ferritin is normal or increased
- anemia of chronic inflammation often co-exists with iron deficiency
- peripheral blood
 - mild: usually normocytic and normochromic
 - moderate: may be microcytic and normochromic
 - severe: may be microcytic and hypochromic
 - absolute reticulocyte count is frequently low, reflecting overall decrease in RBC production
- bone marrow
 - normal or increased iron stores
 - decreased or absent staining for iron in erythroid precursors

Treatment

- treat underlying disease
- only treat anemia in patients who can benefit from a higher hemoglobin
- IV iron if no benefit from PO iron
- erythropoietin indicated in chronic renal failure; not to be used if patient has concomitant curative solid tumor malignancy; ensure Hb target <110 g/L



Iron-deficiency anemia commonly co-exists with anemia of chronic inflammation; suggested by:

- Serum ferritin <100 µg/L in setting of a chronic inflammatory disease
- Elevation of soluble transferrin receptor
- Absence of stainable iron on bone marrow aspiration/biopsy
- Response to a therapeutic trial of oral iron

Sideroblastic Anemia



- uncommon compared to iron deficiency anemia or anemia of chronic inflammation

Sideroblasts

- erythrocytes with iron-containing (basophilic) granules in the cytoplasm
- “normal”: granules are small, randomly spread in the cytoplasm
 - found in healthy individuals
- “ring”: iron deposits in mitochondria, forming a ring around the nucleus
 - abnormal, large granules
 - the hallmark of sideroblastic anemia

Etiology

- due to defects in heme biosynthesis in erythroid precursors
- hereditary (rare): X-linked; median survival 10 yr
- idiopathic (acquired)
 - refractory anemia with ringed sideroblasts: a subtype of MDS (see *Myelodysplastic Syndromes, H38*)
 - may be a preleukemic phenomenon (10% transform to AML)
- reversible
 - drugs (isoniazid, chloramphenicol), alcohol, lead, copper deficiency, zinc toxicity, hypothyroidism

Clinical Features

- anemia symptoms (see *Anemia*, H6)
- hepatosplenomegaly, Fe²⁺ overload syndrome

Investigations

- serum iron indices
 - increased serum Fe²⁺, normal TIBC, increased ferritin, increased sTfR
- blood film/bone marrow biopsy
 - ringed sideroblasts (diagnostic hallmark)
 - RBCs are hypochromic; can be micro-, normo-, or macrocytic
 - anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, basophilic stippling

Treatment

- depends on etiology
 - X-linked: high dose pyridoxine (vitamin B₆) in some cases
 - acquired: EPO and G-CSF
 - reversible: remove precipitating cause
- supportive transfusions for severe anemia



Consider lead poisoning in any child with microcytic anemia who lives in a house built before 1977

**Features of Lead Poisoning****LEAD**

Lead lines on gingivae and epiphyses of long bones on x-ray
 Encephalopathy and Erythrocyte basophilic stippling
 Abdominal colic and microcytic Anemia (sideroblastic)
 Drops (wrist and foot drop)

**Causes of Normocytic Anemia****ABCD**

Acute blood loss
 Bone marrow failure
 Chronic disease
 Destruction (hemolysis)

Lead Poisoning

Definition/Etiology

- blood lead levels greater than 80 µg/dL, possible symptomatology at 50 µg/dL

Clinical Features

- identify source: consider occupational history, exposures history
- abdominal pain, constipation, irritability, difficulty concentrating

Treatment

- chelation therapy: dimercaprol and EDTA are first line agents

Thalassemia

- see *Hemolytic Anemia – Thalassemia*, H19

Normocytic Anemia

- MCV 80-100 fL
- see Figure 2, *Approach to Anemia*, H6

Aplastic Anemia

Definition

- destruction of hematopoietic cells of the bone marrow leading to pancytopenia and hypocellular bone marrow

Epidemiology

- occurs at any age
- slightly more common in males

Etiology

Table 12. Etiology of Aplastic Anemia

Congenital	Acquired	
Fanconi's anemia Shwachman-Diamond syndrome	Idiopathic Often T-cell mediated Drugs Dose-related (i.e. chemotherapeutics) Idiosyncratic (chloramphenicol, phenylbutazone) Toxins Benzene/organic solvents DDT, insecticides	Ionizing Radiation Post-Viral Infection Parvovirus B19, EBV, HDV, HEV, HBV, HHV6, HIV Autoimmune (rare) SLE, Graft-versus-host disease Others PNH, pregnancy, anorexia nervosa, thymoma

Clinical Features

- can present acutely or insidiously
- symptoms of anemia (see *Anemia*, H6), thrombocytopenia (see *Thrombocytopenia*, H7), and/or infection
- ± splenomegaly and lymphadenopathy (depending on the cause)

Investigations

- exclude other causes of pancytopenia (Figure 4)
- CBC
 - anemia or neutropenia or thrombocytopenia (any combination) \pm pancytopenia
 - decreased reticulocytes ($<1\%$ of the total RBC count)
- blood film
 - decreased number of normal RBCs
- bone marrow
 - aplasia or hypoplasia of marrow cells with fat replacement
 - decreased cellularity

Treatment

- remove offending agents
- supportive care (red cell and platelet transfusions, antibiotics)
 - judicious use so as to not increase the risk of immune sensitization to blood products
- immunosuppression
 - anti-thymocyte globulin: 50-60% of patients respond
 - cyclosporine
- allogenic bone marrow transplant
- growth factors: e.g. Eltrombopag (TPO receptor agonist)

Hemolytic Anemia



- uncommon cause for anemia ($<5\%$ of cases) with many etiologies (>200)

Classification

- hereditary
 - abnormal membrane (spherocytosis, elliptocytosis)
 - abnormal enzymes (pyruvate kinase deficiency, G6PD deficiency)
 - abnormal hemoglobin synthesis (thalassemias, hemoglobinopathies)
- acquired
 - immune
 - ♦ autoimmune: warm vs. cold autoimmune hemolytic anemias (AIHA), see [Table 15](#)
Classification of AIHA, H22
 - ♦ alloimmune: hemolytic disease of the fetus/newborn
 - non-immune
 - ♦ MAHA: thrombus in blood vessel causes RBCs to be sheared
 - associated with DIC, HUS/TTP, preeclampsia/HELLP, vasculitides, malignant HTN
 - ♦ other causes: PNH, hypersplenism, march hemoglobinuria (exertional hemolysis), infection (e.g. malaria), snake venoms, mechanical heart valves
- also classified as intravascular or extravascular
 - intravascular: G6PD deficiency, TTP, DIC, and PNH
 - extravascular: AIHA and hereditary spherocytosis

Clinical Features Specific to HA

- jaundice
- dark urine (hemoglobinuria, bilirubin)
- cholelithiasis (pigment stones)
- potential for an aplastic crisis (i.e. BM suppression in overwhelming infection)
- iron overload with extravascular hemolysis
- iron deficiency with intravascular hemolysis

Investigations

Table 13. Investigations for Hemolytic Anemia

Screening Tests	Tests Specific For Intravascular Hemolysis
Increased LDH	Schistocytes on blood film
Decreased haptoglobin	Free hemoglobin in serum
Increased unconjugated bilirubin	Methemalbuminemia (heme + albumin)
Increased urobilinogen	Hemoglobinuria (immediate)
Reticulocytosis	Hemosiderinuria (delayed)
	Plasma hemoglobin
Tests Specific for Extravascular Hemolysis	
Direct Coombs test (direct antiglobulin test)	
• Detects IgG or complement on the surface of RBC	
• Add anti-IgG or anti-complement Ab to patient's RBCs; positive if agglutination	
• Indications: hemolytic disease of newborn, AIHA, hemolytic transfusion reaction	
Indirect Coombs test (indirect antiglobulin test)	
• Detects antibodies in serum that can recognize antigens on RBCs	
• Mix patient's serum + donor RBCs + Coombs serum (anti-human Ig Ab); positive if agglutination	
• Indications: cross-matching donor RBCs, atypical blood group, blood group Ab in pregnant women, AIHA	



Laboratory Findings in HA

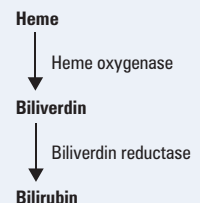
- \uparrow retics
- \downarrow haptoglobin
- \uparrow unconjugated bilirubin
- \uparrow urobilinogen
- \uparrow LDH



Disruption of the heme breakdown pathway causes the **porphyria** disorders



Heme Breakdown



Thalassemia

Definition

- defects in production of the α or β chains of hemoglobin
 - resulting imbalance in globin chains leads to ineffective erythropoiesis and hemolysis in the spleen or BM
- clinical manifestations and treatment depends on specific gene and number of alleles affected
- common features
 - increasing severity with increasing number of alleles involved
 - hypochromic microcytic anemia
 - basophilic stippling, abnormally shaped RBCs on blood film

Pathophysiology

- defect may be in any of the Hb genes
 - normally 4 α genes in total; 2 on each copy of chromosome 16
 - normally 2 β genes in total; 1 on each copy of chromosome 11
 - fetal hemoglobin, HbF ($\alpha_2\gamma_2$), switches to adult forms HbA ($\alpha_2\beta_2$) and HbA₂ ($\alpha_2\delta_2$) at 3-6 mo of life
 - HbA constitutes 97% of adult hemoglobin
 - HbA₂ constitutes 3% of adult hemoglobin



Thalassemia

β -Thal → prevalent in Mediterranean

α -Thal → prevalent in **South East Asia (SEA)** and Africa (α = Asia, Africa)

β -Thalassemia Minor (Thalassemia Trait)

Definition

- defect in single allele of β gene (heterozygous)
- common in people of Mediterranean and Asian descent

Clinical Features

- None; a palpable spleen is very rare

Investigations

- Hb 100-140 g/L or 9-14 g/dL, MCV < 70, normal Fe, normal RBC count
- peripheral blood film – microcytosis basophilic stippling
- Hb electrophoresis
 - specific: HbA₂ increased to 3.5-5% (normal 1.5-3.5%)
 - non-specific: 50% have slight increase in HbF

Treatment

- no treatment required
- genetic counseling for patient and family



Microcytosis in β -Thal Minor

Microcytosis is much more profound and the anemia is much milder than that of iron deficiency

β -Thalassemia Major

Definition

- defect in both alleles of β gene (homozygous, autosomal recessive)

Pathophysiology

- ineffective chain synthesis leading to ineffective erythropoiesis, hemolysis of RBCs, and increase in HbF

Clinical Features

- initial presentation at age 6-12 mo when HbA normally replaces HbF
 - severe anemia, jaundice
- iron overload
 - secondary to repeated transfusions and ineffective erythropoiesis
 - leads to iron-induced organ damage (liver, spleen, anterior pituitary, pancreas, and heart affected)
- stunted growth and development (hypogonadal dwarf)
- gross hepatosplenomegaly (due to extramedullary hematopoiesis)
- radiologic changes (due to expanded marrow cavity) and extramedullary hematopoietic masses (erythroid tissue tumors)
 - skull x-ray has “hair-on-end” appearance
 - pathologic fractures common
- evidence of increased Hb catabolism (e.g. pigmented gallstones)

- death can result from
 - untreated anemia (should transfuse)
 - infection (should identify and treat early)
 - iron overload: late complication secondary to repeated transfusions and ineffective erythropoiesis

Investigations

- CBC: Hb 4-6 g/dL
- Hb electrophoresis
 - HbA: 0-10% (normal >95%)
 - HbA₂ >2.5%
 - HbF: 90-100%

Treatment

- lifelong regular transfusions to suppress endogenous erythropoiesis
- iron chelation (e.g. deferoxamine, deferasirox, deferiprone) to prevent iron overload in organs and the formation of free radicals (which promote tissue damage and fibrosis)
- folic acid supplementation if not transfused
- allogenic bone marrow transplantation
- splenectomy (now performed less frequently)

β-Thalassemia Intermedia

Definition

- clinical diagnosis in patients whose clinical manifestations are too mild to be classified as thalassemia major, but too severe to be classified as thalassemia minor

Clinical Features

- wide variety of clinical phenotypes
- in most cases of TI, both β-globin genes affected
- three main mechanisms account for the milder phenotype compared to thalassemia major: (1) subnormal (vs. absent) beta-chain synthesis, (2) increased number of gamma chains, (3) coinheritance of alpha thalassemia
- complications more commonly seen in TI than thalassemia major include extramedullary hematopoiesis, leg ulcers, gallstones, thrombosis, and pulmonary HTN

α-Thalassemia

Definition

- defect(s) in α genes
- similar geographic distribution as β-thalassemia, but higher frequency among Asians and Africans

Clinical Features

- 1 defective α gene (aa/a-): clinically silent; normal Hb, normal MCV
- 2 defective α genes (cis: aa/-- or trans: a-/a-): decreased MCV, normal Hb
 - N.B. cis 2-gene deletion more common in Asia vs. trans 2-gene deletion more common in Africa – this leads to increased risk of fetal hydrops in offspring of Asian patients vs. African patients
- 3 defective α genes (a-/--): HbH (β₄) disease; presents in adults, decreased MCV, decreased Hb, splenomegaly
- 4 defective α genes (---/---): Hb Barts (γ₄) disease (hydrops fetalis); usually incompatible with life

Investigations

- peripheral blood film – screen for HbH inclusion bodies with special stain
- Hb electrophoresis not diagnostic for α-thalassemia
- DNA analysis using α gene probes is the only way to confirm the diagnosis
- referral to genetic counselor prior to childbearing for patients with 2-gene cis deletion (or 3-gene deletion), due to risk of fetal hydrops if partner also carries thalassemia trait

Treatment

- depends on degree of anemia
 - 1 or 2 defective α genes: no treatment required
 - HbH disease: similar to β-thalassemia intermedia
 - HbBarts: intrauterine transfusion

Sickle Cell Disease

- see [Pediatrics, P48](#)

Definition

- sickling disorders arise due to a mutant β -globin chain, most commonly caused by a Glu \rightarrow Val substitution at position 6 (chromosome 11) resulting in HbS variant, rather than HbA (normal adult Hb)
 - increased incidence of HbS allele with African or Mediterranean heritage (thought to be protective against malaria)
- sickle cell disease occurs when an individual has two HbS genes (homozygous, HbSS) or one HbS gene + another mutant β -globin gene (compound heterozygote) – most commonly HbS- β -thal and HbSC disease

Pathophysiology

- at low pO_2 , deoxy HbS polymerizes leading to rigid crystal-like rods that distort membranes \rightarrow 'sickles'
- the pO_2 level at which sickling occurs is related to the percentage of HbS present
 - heterozygotes (HbAS); sickling occurs at a pO_2 of 40 mmHg
 - homozygotes (HbSS); sickling occurs at a pO_2 of 80 mmHg
- sickling aggravated by acidemia, increased CO_2 , increased 2,3-DPG, fever, and osmolality
- fragile sickle cells then cause injury in two main ways:
 - (1) fragile sickle cells hemolyze (nitric oxide depletion)
 - (2) they also occlude small vessels (ischemia-reperfusion injury)

Clinical Features

- HbAS (sickle cell trait): patient will be asymptomatic except during extreme hypoxia or infection
 - increased risk of renal medullary carcinoma
- SCD-SS (HbSS)
 - chronic hemolytic anemia
 - jaundice in the first year of life
 - retarded growth and development \pm skeletal changes
 - splenomegaly in childhood; splenic atrophy in adulthood
- SCD-SS often presents with acute pain episode
 1. aplastic crises
 - ♦ toxins and infections (especially parvovirus B19) transiently suppress bone marrow
 2. splenic sequestration crises
 - ♦ usually in children; significant pooling of blood in spleen resulting in acute Hb drop and shock
 - ♦ uncommon in adults due to asplenia from repeated infarction
 3. vaso-occlusive crises (infarction)
 - ♦ may affect various organs causing ischemia-reperfusion injury (especially in back, chest, abdomen, and extremities), fever, and leukocytosis
 - ♦ precipitated by infections, dehydration, rapid change in temperature, pregnancy, menses, and alcohol
 4. acute chest syndrome (see sidebar)
- SCD-SC (most common compound heterozygote)
 - 1:833 live births in African-Americans, common in West Africa
 - milder anemia than HbSS
 - similar complications as HbSS although typically milder and less frequent (exception is proliferative sickle retinopathy, glomerulonephritis, and avascular necrosis)
 - spleen not always atrophic in adults

Investigations

- sickle cell prep (detects sickling of RBCs under the microscope in response to O_2 lowering agent): determines the presence of a HbS allele, but does not distinguish HbAS from HbSS
- Hb electrophoresis distinguishes HbAS, HbSS, HbSC, and other variants

Table 14. Investigations for Sickle Cell Disease

	HbAS	HbSS
CBC	Normal	Increased reticulocytes, decreased Hb, decreased Hct
Peripheral Blood	Normal; possibly a few target cells	Sickled cells
Hb Electrophoresis	HbA fraction of 0.65 (65%) HbS fraction of 0.35 (35%)	No HbA, only HbS and HbF (proportions change with age); normal amount of HbA2

Treatment

- genetic counseling
- HbAS: no treatment required
- HbSC: treatment as per HbSS, but is dictated by symptom severity

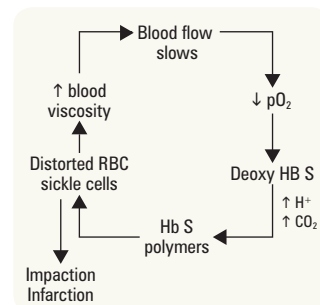


Figure 7. Pathophysiology of sickling



Functional asplenia: increased susceptibility to infection by encapsulated organisms

- *S. pneumoniae*
- *N. meningitidis*
- *H. influenzae*
- *Salmonella* (osteomyelitis)



Acute Chest Syndrome

Affects 30% of patients with sickle cell disease and may be life threatening. Presentation includes dyspnea, chest pain, fever, tachypnea, leukocytosis, and pulmonary infiltrate on CXR. Caused by vaso-occlusion, infection, or pulmonary fat embolus from infarcted marrow.



Organs Affected by Vaso-Occlusive Crisis

Organ	Problem
Brain	Ischemic or hemorrhagic stroke, vasculopathy
Eye	Hemorrhage, blindness
Liver	Infarcts, RUQ syndrome
Lung	Chest syndrome, long-term pulmonary HTN
Gallbladder	Stones
Heart	Hyperdynamic flow murmurs
Spleen	Enlarged (child); atrophic (adult)
Kidney	Hematuria, loss of renal concentrating ability, proteinuria
Intestines	Acute abdomen
Placenta	Stillbirths
Penis	Priapism
Digits	Dactylitis
Femoral and Humeral Head	Avascular necrosis
Bone	Infarction, infection
Ankle	Leg ulcers

- HbSS
 1. folic acid to prevent folate deficiency
 2. hydroxyurea to enhance production of HbF
 - ♦ mechanism of action: stops repression of Hb- γ chains and/or initiates differentiation of stem cells in which this gene is active
 - ♦ presence of HbF in the SS cells decreases polymerization and precipitation of HbS
 - ♦ N.B. hydroxyurea is cytotoxic and may cause bone marrow suppression
 3. treatment of vaso-occlusive crisis
 - ♦ oxygen
 - ♦ hydration (reduces viscosity)
 - ♦ correct acidosis
 - ♦ analgesics/opioids
 - ♦ indication for exchange transfusion: acute chest syndrome, stroke, multi-organ failure, ICU admission
 - ♦ less routinely: antimicrobials for suspected infection
 4. prevention of crises
 - ♦ establish diagnosis
 - ♦ avoid conditions that promote sickling (hypoxia, acidosis, dehydration, fever)
 - ♦ vaccination in childhood (pneumococcus, meningococcus, *H. influenzae* b)
 - ♦ prophylactic penicillin (start age 3 mo and continue until at least 5 yr then continue on case by case basis)
 - ♦ good hygiene, nutrition, and social support
 5. screen for complications
 - ♦ regular blood work (CBC, reticulocytes, iron indices, BUN, LFTs, creatinine)
 - ♦ urinalysis annually (proteinuria, glomerulopathy)
 - ♦ transcranial doppler annually until 16 yr old (stroke prevention)
 - ♦ retinal examinations annually from 8 yr old (screen for retinopathy)
 - ♦ echocardiography starting at 10 yr old (screen for pulmonary HTN)



**NIH Consensus Development Conference
Statement: Hydroxyurea Treatment for Sickle Cell Disease**

Ann Intern Med 2008;148:932-938

Efficacy: Strong evidence for adolescents and adults and there is emerging data supporting its use in children. In the single RCT, the Hb level was higher in hydroxyurea recipients than placebo recipients after 2 yr (difference, 6 g/L), as was HbF (absolute difference, 3.2%). The median number of painful crises was 44% lower than in the placebo arm. The 12 observational studies that enrolled adults reported a relative increase in HbF of 4-20% and a relative reduction in crisis rates by 68-84%. Hospital admissions declined by 18-32%.

Effectiveness: Data is limited but seems to be highly effective but is currently underutilized.

Short-Term Harms (within 6 mo): Dose-related leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, anemia, and decreased reticulocyte count. Others include decreased sperm production and dry skin.

Long-Term Harms: Birth defects in offspring of people receiving the drug, growth delays in children receiving the drug, and cancer in both children and adults who receive the drug.

Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia

Table 15. Classification of AIHA

	Warm	Cold
Antibody Allotype	IgG	IgM
Agglutination Temperature	37°C	4-21°C
Direct Coombs Test (direct anti-globulin test)	Positive for IgG \pm complement	Positive for complement
Etiology	Idiopathic Secondary to lymphoproliferative disorder (e.g. CLL, Hodgkin lymphoma) Secondary to autoimmune disease (e.g. SLE) Drug-induced (e.g. penicillin, quinine, methyldopa)	Idiopathic Secondary to infection (e.g. mycoplasma pneumonia, EBV) Secondary to lymphoproliferative disorder (e.g. macroglobulinemia, CLL)
Blood Film	Spherocytes	Agglutination
Management	Treat underlying cause Corticosteroids Immunosuppression Splenectomy Folic acid	Treat underlying cause Warm patient Immunosuppression Plasmapheresis Folic acid

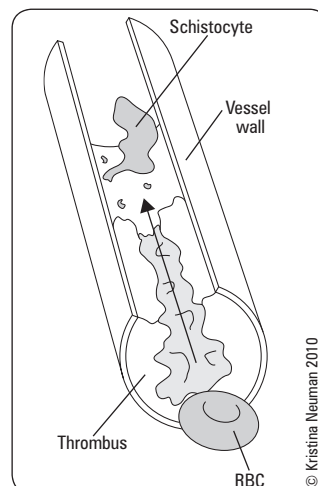


Figure 8. Schistocyte

Microangiopathic Hemolytic Anemia

Definition

- hemolytic anemia due to intravascular fragmentation of RBCs

Etiology

- see *Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura and Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome*, H30
- see *Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation*, H32
- eclampsia, HELLP syndrome, AFLP (see [Obstetrics](#), OB17)
- malignant HTN
- vasculitis
- malfunctioning heart valves
- metastatic carcinoma
- drugs (calcineurin inhibitors, quinine, simvastatin)
- infections (severe CMV or meningococcus)
- catastrophic antiphospholipid antibody syndrome



Investigations

- blood film: evidence of hemolysis, schistocytes
- hemolytic workup
- urine: hemosiderinuria, hemoglobinuria

Hereditary Spherocytosis

- most common type of hereditary hemolytic anemia
- abnormality in RBC membrane proteins (e.g. spectrin)
 - spleen makes defective RBCs more spherocytotic (and more fragile) by membrane removal; also acts as site of RBC destruction
- autosomal dominant with variable penetrance

Investigations

- blood film shows spherocytes, increased osmotic fragility, molecular analysis for spectrin gene

Treatment

- in severe cases, splenectomy + vaccination against pneumococcus, meningococcus, and *H. influenzae b* (avoid in early childhood)

Hereditary Elliptocytosis**Definition/Etiology**

- abnormality in spectrin interaction with other membrane proteins
- autosomal dominant
- 25-75% elliptocytes
- hemolysis is usually mild

Treatment

- immunizations; splenectomy for severe hemolysis

Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase Deficiency**Definition**

- deficiency in glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) leads to RBC sensitivity to oxidative stress due to a lack of reduced glutathione (GSH)

Pathophysiology

- X-linked recessive, prevalent in individuals of African, Asian, and Mediterranean descent

Clinical Features

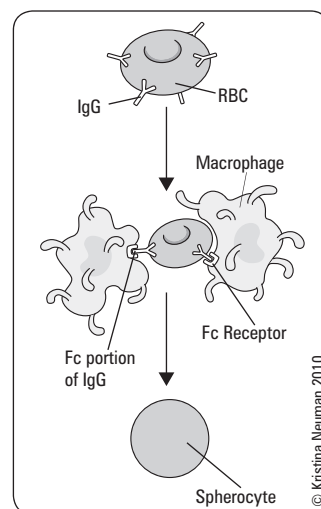
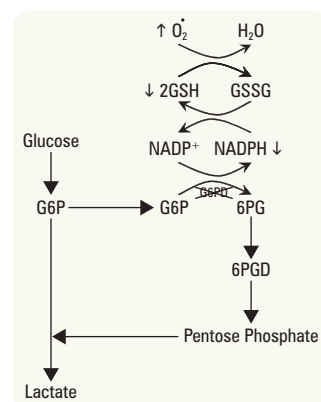
- frequently presents as episodic hemolysis precipitated by
 - oxidative stress
 - drugs (e.g. sulfonamide, antimalarials, nitrofurantoin)
 - infection
 - food (fava beans)
- in neonates: can present as prolonged, pathologic neonatal jaundice

Investigations

- neonatal screening
- G6PD assay (may not be useful if result is normal)
 - should not be done in acute crisis when reticulocyte count is high (reticulocytes have high G6PD levels)
- blood film
 - Heinz bodies (granules in RBCs due to oxidized Hb); passage through spleen results in the generation of bite cells
 - may have features of intravascular hemolysis (e.g. RBC fragments)

Treatment

- folic acid
- stop offending drugs and avoid triggers
- transfusion in severe cases

**Figure 9. Spherocyte****Figure 10. G6PD deficiency**

Macrocytic Anemia

- MCV >100 fL
- see Figure 2, *Approach to Anemia*, H6

Table 16. Comparison Between Megaloblastic and Non-Megaloblastic Macrocytic Anemia

	Megaloblastic	Non-Megaloblastic
Morphology	Large, oval, nucleated RBC precursor Hypersegmented neutrophils	Large round RBC Normal neutrophils
Pathophysiology	Failure of DNA synthesis resulting in asynchronous maturation of RBC nucleus and cytoplasm	Reflects membrane abnormality with abnormal cholesterol metabolism



Causes of Macrocytic Anemia

ABCDE F

- Alcoholism (liver disease)
- B₁₂ deficiency
- Compensatory reticulocytosis
- Drugs (cytotoxic, AZT)/Dysplasia
- Endocrine (hypothyroidism)
- Folate deficiency/Fetus (pregnancy)



Characteristics of Megaloblastic Macrocytic Anemia

- Pancytopenia
- Hypersegmented neutrophils
- Megaloblastic bone marrow



Schilling Test

Part 1

- Tracer dose (1 µg) of radiolabeled B₁₂, given PO
- Flushing dose (1 mg) of unlabeled B₁₂ IM 1 h later to saturate tissue binders of B₁₂ thus allowing radioactive B₁₂ to be excreted in urine
- 24 h urine radiolabeled B₁₂ measured
- Normal > 5% excretion (a normal excretion will only be seen if the low B₁₂ was due to dietary deficiency)

Part 2

- Same as part 1, but radiolabeled B₁₂ given with oral intrinsic factor
- Should be done only if first stage shows reduced excretion
- Normal test result (> 5% excretion) = pernicious anemia
- Abnormal test result (< 5% excretion) = intestinal causes (malabsorption)



Oral Vitamin B₁₂ vs. Intramuscular Vitamin B₁₂ for Vitamin B₁₂ Deficiency

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2005;3:CD004655

Study: Systematic review. 2 RCTs met inclusion criteria; total 108 patients with follow-up from 90 d-4 mo.

Intervention: One study evaluated 1,000 µg of oral B₁₂ compared to 1,000 µg IM B₁₂ on the same dosing schedule. The other compared 2,000 µg daily oral B₁₂ to 1,000 µg IM B₁₂ on a less frequent dosing schedule. Neurological and hematological end points were evaluated.

Results: Meta-analysis was not attempted due to study heterogeneity. Both studies reported improvements in hematological and neurological end-points in both oral and IM groups. No significant difference was observed between groups in either study.

Conclusions: Limited data suggesting high dose oral vitamin B₁₂ (1,000-2,000 µg) is equivalent to IM vitamin B₁₂ on the same or less frequent dosing schedule. This data is severely limited by small sample sizes and short follow-up periods. Insufficient numbers of patients with malabsorption conditions were included to generalize these results to the entire primary care population.

Vitamin B₁₂ Deficiency

B₁₂ (cobalamin) see [Gastroenterology](#), G17 and [Family Medicine – Nutrition](#), FM6

- binds to intrinsic factor (IF) secreted by gastric parietal cells
- absorbed in terminal ileum
- total body stores sufficient for 3-4 yr

Etiology

Table 17. Etiology of Vitamin B₁₂ Deficiency

Diet	Gastric	Intestinal Absorption	Genetic
Strict vegan More likely to present in pediatric population	Mucosal atrophy Gastritis, autoimmune	Malabsorption Crohn's, celiac sprue, pancreatic insufficiency	Transcobalamin II deficiency
Vegetarian in pregnancy	Pernicious anemia (see below) Post-gastrectomy	Stagnant bowel Blind loop, stricture Fish tapeworm Resection of ileum Drugs Neomycin, biguanides, PPI, N ₂ O anesthesia	

Pathophysiology of Pernicious Anemia

- auto-antibodies produced against gastric parietal cells leading to achlorhydria and lack of intrinsic factor secretion
- intrinsic factor is required to stabilize B₁₂ as it passes through the bowel
- decreased intrinsic factor leads to decreased ileal absorption of B₁₂
- may be associated with other autoimmune disorders (polyglandular endocrine insufficiency)
- F:M = 1.6:1; often >60 yr old

Clinical Features

- neurological
 - cerebral (common, reversible with B₁₂ therapy)
 - ♦ confusion, delirium, dementia
 - cranial nerves (rare)
 - ♦ optic atrophy
 - cord (irreversible damage)
 - ♦ subacute combined degeneration
 - posterior columns: decreased vibration sense, proprioception, and 2-point discrimination
 - pyramidal tracts: spastic weakness, hyperactive reflexes
 - peripheral neuropathy (variable reversibility)
 - ♦ usually symmetrical, affecting lower limbs more than upper limbs

Investigations

- CBC, reticulocyte count
 - anemia often severe ± neutropenia ± thrombocytopenia
 - MCV >110 fL
 - low reticulocyte count relative to the degree of anemia (<2%)
- serum B₁₂ and RBC folate
 - caution: low serum B₁₂ leads to low RBC folate because of failure of folate polyglutamate synthesis in the absence of B₁₂
 - alternatively, can measure urine metabolites (methylmalonate, homocysteine)
- blood film
 - oval macrocytes, hypersegmented neutrophils

- bone marrow
 - hypercellularity
 - nuclear-cytoplasmic asynchrony in RBC precursors (less mature nuclei than expected from the development of the cytoplasm)
- bilirubin and LDH
 - elevated unconjugated bilirubin and LDH due to breakdown of cells in BM
- Schilling test (see sidebar H24) to distinguish pernicious anemia from other causes
 - anti-intrinsic factor antibody, anti-parietal cell antibody

Treatment

- vitamin B₁₂ 1,000 µg IM monthly for life or 1,000-1,200 µg PO daily if intestinal absorption intact
- less frequent, higher doses may be as effective (e.g. 1,000 µg IM q3mo)
- watch for hypokalemia and rebound thrombocytosis when treating severe megaloblastic anemia

Folate Deficiency

- uncommon in developed countries due to extensive dietary supplementation
- folate stores are depleted in 3-6 mo
- folate commonly found in green, leafy vegetables and fortified cereals

Etiology

Table 18. Etiology of Folate Deficiency

Diet/Deficiency	Malabsorption	Drugs	Increased Demand
Alcoholism	Celiac sprue	Anti-folates (methotrexate)	Pregnancy
Substance abuse	IBD	Anticonvulsants (phenytoin)	Hemolysis
Elderly/infants	Infiltrative bowel disease	Alcohol	Prematurity
Poor intake	Short bowel syndrome	Oral contraceptive	Exfoliative dermatitis/psoriasis
			Hemodialysis

Clinical Features

- mild jaundice due to hemolysis of RBCs secondary to ineffective hemoglobin synthesis
- glossitis and angular stomatitis
- melanin pigmentation (rare)
- purpura secondary to thrombocytopenia (rare)
- unlike B₁₂ deficiency, folate deficiency has no neurologic manifestations

Investigations

- similar to B₁₂ deficiency (CBC, reticulocytes, blood film, RBC folate, serum B₁₂)
- if decreased RBC folate, rule out B₁₂ deficiency as cause

Management

- folic acid 1-5 mg PO OD x 1-4 mo; then 1 mg PO OD maintenance if cause is not reversible



Never give folate alone to an individual with megaloblastic anemia because it will mask B₁₂ deficiency and neurological degeneration will continue

Hemostasis

Three Phases of Hemostasis

1. Primary Hemostasis

- goal is rapid cessation of bleeding; main effect is on mucocutaneous bleeding
- vessel injury results in collagen/subendothelial matrix exposure and release of vasoconstrictors
- blood flow is impeded and platelets come into contact with damaged vessel wall (Figure 11a)
 - adhesion: platelets adhere to subendothelium via von Willebrand factor (vWF)
 - activation: platelets are activated resulting in change of shape and release of ADP and thromboxane A₂
 - aggregation: these factors further recruit and aggregate more platelets resulting in formation of localized hemostatic plug

2. Secondary Hemostasis

- platelet plug is reinforced by production of fibrin clot in secondary hemostasis (Figure 11b)
- extrinsic pathway
 - initiation of coagulation *in vivo*
- intrinsic pathway
 - amplification once coagulation has started

3. Fibrin Stabilization and Fibrinolysis (resolution)

- conversion from soluble to insoluble clot
- once healing initiated, clot dissolution (anticoagulant pathway)



Normal hemostasis occurs as a result of the balance between procoagulant and anticoagulant factors



3 Phases of Hemostasis

- Primary hemostasis
 - Vascular response and platelet plug formation via vWF
- Secondary hemostasis
 - Fibrin clot formation
- Resolution
 - Fibrinolysis

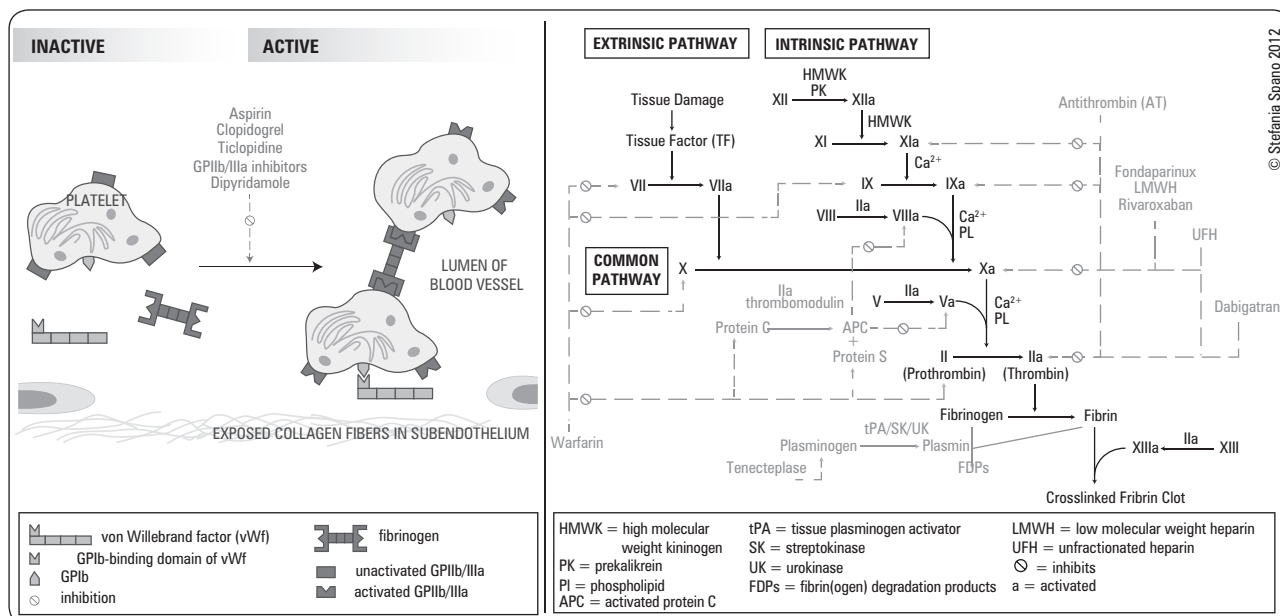


Figure 11a. Platelet activation cascade

Figure 11b. Coagulation cascade

Table 19. Commonly Used Tests of Hemostasis

Type of Hemostasis	Test	Reference Range	Purpose	Examples of Associated Diagnoses
Primary	Platelet count	150,000-400,000/ mm ³	To quantitate platelet number	Low in ITP, HUS/TTP, DIC
Secondary	aPTT	22-35 s	Measures intrinsic pathway (factors VIII, IX, XI, XII) and common pathway Used to monitor heparin therapy and intrinsic pathway factors	Prolonged in hemophilias A and B N.B. High if antiphospholipid antibodies (i.e. lupus anticoagulant) are present
	PT	11-24 s	Measures extrinsic pathway (factor VII in particular) and common pathway	Prolonged in factor VII deficiency
	INR	0.9-1.2	Only used to monitor warfarin therapy	
	Mixing studies		Differentiate inhibitors of clotting factor(s) from a deficiency in clotting factor(s) Mix patient's plasma with normal plasma in 1:1 ratio and repeat abnormal test	Clotting factor(s) deficiency if test becomes normal Inhibitors of clotting factor(s) if test still abnormal
Fibrinolysis	Euglobulin lysis time	N > 90 min	Looks for accelerated fibrinolysis	May be accelerated in DIC or factor XIII deficiency Decreased in hereditary deficiency of fibrinogen
Other	Fibrinogen Fibrinogen degradation products (FDPs), D-dimers Specific factor assays Tests of physiological inhibitors (antithrombin, protein S, protein C, hereditary resistance to activated protein C [APC]) Tests of pathologic inhibitors (e.g. lupus anticoagulant)			



Tests of Secondary Hemostasis

PT/INR: Tennis is played outside
(Extrinsic pathway)

PTT: Table Tennis is played inside
(Intrinsic pathway)

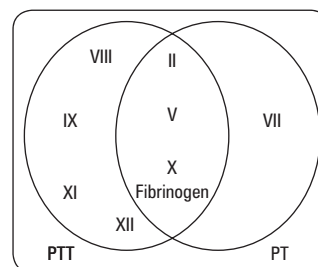


Figure 12. Clotting factors involved in PT and PTT

Table 20. Signs and Symptoms of Disorders of Hemostasis

	Primary (Platelet)	Secondary (Coagulation)
Surface Cuts	Excessive, prolonged bleeding	Normal/slightly prolonged bleeding
Onset After Injury	Immediate	Delayed
Site of Bleeding	Superficial i.e. mucosal (nasal, gingival, GI tract, uterine), skin	Deep i.e. joints, muscles, GI tract, GU tract Excessive post-traumatic
Lesions	Petechiae, ecchymoses	Hemarthroses, hematomas

Table 21. Lab Values in Disorders of Hemostasis

	PT	PTT	Platelet Count	RBC Count
Hemophilia A/B	N	↑	N	N
vWD	N	±	N/↓	N
DIC	↑	↑	↓	N/↓
Liver Failure	↑	N/↑	N/↓	N
ITP	N	N	↓	N
TTP	N	N	↓	↓

DIC = disseminated intravascular coagulation; ITP = idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura; TTP = thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura; vWD = von Willebrand disease

Disorders of Primary Hemostasis

Definition

- inability to form an adequate platelet plug due to:
 - disorders of blood vessels
 - disorders of platelets: abnormal function/numbers
 - disorders of vWF

Classification

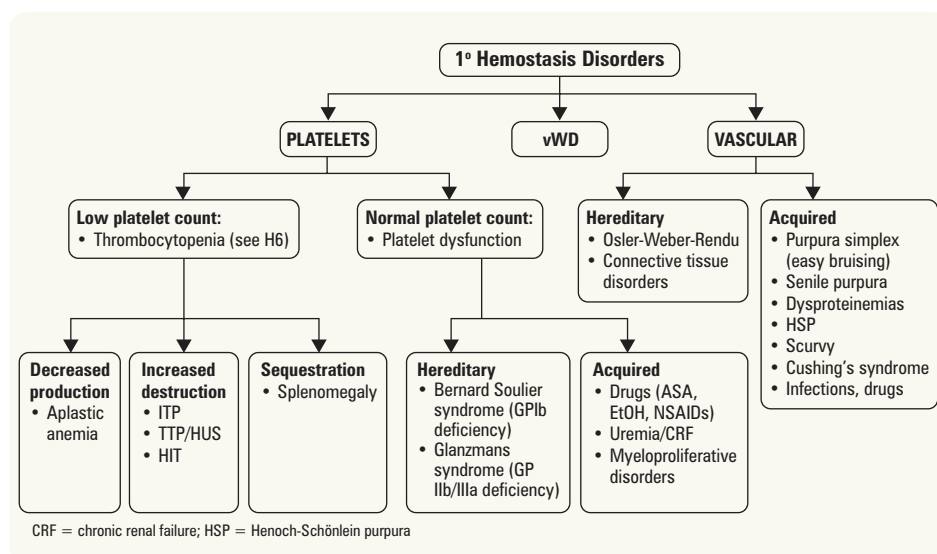


Figure 13. Approach to disorders of primary hemostasis

Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura

Table 22. Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura

Features	Acute ITP	Chronic ITP
Peak Age	2-6 yr	20-40 yr
Gender	None	F > M (3:1)
History of Recent Infection	Common	Rare
Onset of Bleed	Abrupt	Insidious
Duration	Usually weeks	Months to years
Spontaneous Remissions	80% or more	Uncommon

ACUTE (CHILD-TYPE) ITP

- see [Pediatrics, P50](#)

CHRONIC (ADULT-TYPE) ITP

- most common cause of isolated thrombocytopenia
- diagnosis of exclusion (i.e. isolated thrombocytopenia [platelets <100,000/mm³] and the absence of any obvious initiating and/or underlying cause)



Drugs Associated with Thrombocytopenia

TMP-SMX	Heparin	NSAIDs
Vancomycin	Digoxin	Acetaminophen
Rifampin	Amiodarone	Ethanol
Ethambutol	Quinidine	H ₂ -antagonists
Amphotericin B	Quinine	



Mechanisms for HIV-associated Thrombocytopenia

- Direct effect of HIV on marrow
- Immune-mediated platelet destruction
- Some antiretrovirals reduce platelet production



Should Rituximab be Used Before or After Splenectomy in Patients with Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura (ITP)?

Curr Opin Hematol 2007;14:642-646

Purpose: To determine whether the optimal timing for rituximab is before splenectomy, or after failure of splenectomy.

Results: Rituximab produces an initial response in approximately 60% of cases, with no significant difference between splenectomized and non-splenectomized patients. Long-term complete responses are observed in 15-20% of cases. Adverse events related to the drug were usually mild or moderate, with a low incidence of infections. Long-term safety data, however, are still lacking. Deaths have been reported for 2.9% of ITP cases treated with rituximab, but they could not be attributed to the study drug.

Conclusion: Both the response rate and the response duration appear lower following rituximab than following splenectomy. Although the side effects may be fewer, there is insufficient evidence to support the replacement of splenectomy with rituximab as a second-line treatment of chronic ITP outside a clinical trial. At the present time, the use of immunotherapy before splenectomy can be recommended only in patients at high risk for splenectomy and in those not willing to undergo surgery.



Pathophysiology

- an acquired immune-mediated disorder with
 - anti-platelet antibodies bind to platelet surface → increased splenic destruction and clearance
 - impaired platelet production
 - helper T-cell and cytotoxic T-cell activation also implicated in platelet destruction

Clinical Presentation

- can present asymptomatic, minimal bruising, or serious bleed (GI bleed, skin and mucosal hemorrhage or intracranial hemorrhage), lethargy, fatigue

Investigations

- CBC and reticulocyte count: thrombocytopenia (request retic count if not an isolated thrombocytopenia)
- PT and aPTT: normal
- peripheral blood film: decreased platelets, giant platelets (to rule out platelet clumping)
- HIV, HCV (if risk factors are present)
- bone marrow aspirate and biopsy: increased number of megakaryocytes
 - recommended in patients >60 yr of age, pre-splenectomy or have failed multiple lines of ITP treatment, those with systemic symptoms, an abnormal blood film, and/or abnormal signs to rule out other causes of thrombocytopenia (e.g. myelodysplasia)

Treatment

- rarely indicated if platelets $>30,000/\text{mm}^3$ unless active bleeding, trauma, or surgery

A. Emergency Treatment (active bleeding (CNS, GI, or GU) or in need of emergency surgery)

- general measures: stop drugs reducing platelet function, control blood pressure, minimize trauma
- corticosteroids: prednisone (1 mg/kg) or methylprednisolone (1 g/d x 3 d) or dexamethasone (40 mg PO x 4 d)
- antifibrinolytic: tranexamic acid (1 g PO tid or 1 g IV q6h) if refractory bleeding
- IVIg 1 g/kg/d x 2 doses, or 2 g/kg over 5 d
- platelet transfusion: for life-threatening bleeding
- emergency splenectomy: may be considered, vaccinations prior (pneumococcus, meningococcus, *H. influenzae* b)
- management of intracranial bleeding: IV steroids, IVIg, platelets, emergency splenectomy, and then craniotomy; maintain Plt $>100,000/\text{mm}^3$ for at least 7 wk post intracranial hemorrhage

B. Non-Urgent Treatment (platelet count $<20,000$ - $30,000/\text{mm}^3$ and no bleeding OR platelet count $<50,000/\text{mm}^3$ and significant bleeding symptoms)

- platelet transfusion does **not** work
- 1st Line
 - ♦ corticosteroids (dexamethasone 40 mg/d x 4 wk or prednisone 1 mg/kg/d)
 - ♦ IVIg
 - ♦ anti-D: appropriate for Rh+ non-splenectomized patients, but can cause hemolysis (avoid if low Hb at baseline or if DAT is positive) (warning label now attached to this medication regarding risk of intravascular hemolysis)
- 2nd Line
 - ♦ splenectomy (need vaccinations prior to splenectomy: pneumococcus, meningococcus, *H. influenzae* b)
 - ♦ immunosuppressants (azathioprine, cyclophosphamide)
 - ♦ rituximab
 - ♦ danazol, vincristine
 - ♦ thrombopoietin (TPO) receptor agonists (romiplostim, eltrombopag)

Prognosis

- ~20% will not attain a hemostatic platelet count after first and second line therapy
- fluctuating course
- overall relatively benign, mortality 1-2%, (2x higher mortality than the unaffected population)
- major concern is cerebral hemorrhage at Plt $<5,000/\text{mm}^3$, although very rare

Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia

- heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: immune mediated reaction following treatment with heparin leading to coagulation activation
- heparin-associated thrombocytopenia: transient thrombocytopenia following administration of heparin

Table 23. Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia (HIT) (Previously Known as HIT Type II)

Pathophysiology	Immune mediated Ab recognizes a complex of heparin and platelet factor 4 (PF4) leading to platelet activation via platelet Fc receptor and activation of coagulation system
Diagnosis	50% reduction in platelets while on heparin within 5-15 wk of initiation
Onset of Decreased Platelets	5-15 wk (if previously exposed to heparin, HIT can develop in hours)
Risk of Thrombosis	~30% (25% of events are arterial)
Clinical Features	Bleeding complications uncommon Venous thrombosis: DVT, PE, limb gangrene, cerebral sinus thrombosis Arterial thrombosis: MI, stroke, acute limb ischemia, organ infarct (mesentery, kidney) Heparin-induced skin necrosis (with LMWH) Acute platelet activation syndromes: acute inflammatory reactions (e.g. fever/chills, flushing, etc.) Transient global amnesia (rare)
Specific Tests	Pre-test clinical scoring models can help rule-out HIT: 4-Ts (see Table 24) and the HIT Expert Probability (HEP) score ^{14}C serotonin release assay (uses donor platelets with ^{14}C serotonin and heparin with patient's plasma) ELISA for HIT-Ig (more sensitive, less specific than serotonin assay) Ultrasound of lower limb veins for DVT
Management	Clinical suspicion of HIT should prompt discontinuation of heparin and LMWH (specific tests take several days) Initiate anticoagulation with a non-heparin anticoagulant e.g. argatroban, danaparoid, fondaparinux, bivalirudin unless there is a strong contraindication (duration of treatment at least 2-3 mo if no thrombotic event, and at least 3-6 mo if thrombotic event has occurred) Warfarin should only be restarted when platelet count $>100 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ Allergy band and alert in patient records



Evaluation of Pretest Clinical Score (4 Ts) for the Diagnosis of Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia in Two Clinical Settings

J Thromb Haemos 2006;4:759-765

Study: Prospective and retrospective clinical score application in two clinical settings (Hamilton General Hospital, HGH; and Greifswald in Germany, GW).

Population: 336 patients with suspected HIT.

Intervention: Risk stratification with 4Ts clinical score compared with serology for HIT antibody.

Results: 1/64 (1.6%) in HGH and 0/55 (0%) in GW with low scores tested positive on HIT serology. 8/28 (28.6%) in HGH and 11/139 (7.9%) in GW with intermediate scores tested positive for HIT. 8/8 (100%) in HGH and 9/42 (21.4%) in GW with high scores tested positive for HIT.

Conclusions: A low pretest clinical score can help to rule out HIT in patients with thrombocytopenia.



LMWH is also associated with HIT, but the risk is less than unfractionated heparin (2.6% in UFH vs. 0.2% in LMWH)



Heparin-Associated Thrombocytopenia (previously known as HIT type I)

- Direct heparin mediated platelet aggregation (non-immune)
- Platelets $>100 \times 10^9/\text{L}$
- Self-limited (no thrombotic risk)
- May continue with heparin therapy
- Onset 24-72 h

Table 24. The 4-T Pre-Test Clinical Scoring Model for HIT

Category	2 Points	1 Point	0 Points
1. Thrombocytopenia	Platelet count fall $>50\%$ AND platelet nadir $\geq 20 \times 10^9/\text{L}$	Platelet count fall 30-50% OR platelet nadir $10-90 \times 10^9/\text{L}$	Platelet count fall $<30\%$ OR platelet nadir $<10 \times 10^9/\text{L}$
2. Timing of Platelet Count Fall	Clear onset between days 5-10 of heparin exposure OR platelet count fall at ≤ 1 d if prior heparin exposure within last 30 d	Consistent with fall in platelet count at 5-10 d but unclear (e.g. missing platelet counts) OR onset after day 10 OR fall ≤ 1 d with prior heparin exposure within 30-100 d	Platelet count fall <4 d of heparin exposure, and no recent heparin
3. Thrombosis or Other Sequelae	Confirmed new thrombosis, skin necrosis, or acute systemic reaction after IV unfractionated heparin bolus	Progressive or recurrent thrombosis, non-necrotizing (erythematous) skin lesions, or suspected thrombosis that has not been proven	None
4. Other Causes for Thrombocytopenia	None apparent	Possible	Definite

6-8 points = high probability of HIT; 4-5 points = intermediate probability of HIT; 0-3 points = low probability of HIT

J Thromb Haemos 2006;4:759-765

Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura and Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome

Table 25. TTP and HUS

	TTP	HUS
Epidemiology	Predominantly adult	Predominantly children
Etiology	Deficiency of metalloproteinase that breaks down ultra-large vWF multimers <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Congenital (genetic absence of ADAMTS-13) • Acquired (drugs, malignancy, transplant, HIV-associated, idiopathic) 	Shiga toxin (<i>E. coli</i> serotype O157:H7)
Clinical Features	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Thrombocytopenia 2. MAHA 3. Neurological symptoms: headache, confusion, focal defects, seizures 4. Renal failure 5. Fever 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Severe thrombocytopenia: purpura, epistaxis, hematuria, hemoptysis, GI bleed 2. MAHA 3. Renal failure: abnormal urinalysis, oliguria, acute renal failure
Investigations (both TTP, HUS)	CBC and blood film: decreased platelets and schistocytes PT, aPTT, fibrinogen: normal Markers of hemolysis: increased unconjugated bilirubin, increased LDH, decreased haptoglobin Negative Coombs test Creatinine, urea, to follow renal function Stool C&S (HUS)	
Management (both TTP, HUS)	Medical emergency Plasmapheresis ± steroids Platelet transfusion is contraindicated (increased microvascular thrombosis) Plasma infusion if plasmapheresis is not immediately available TTP mortality ~90% if untreated	



Pathophysiology of TTP

- vWF secreted by endothelial cells is a very large polymer rapidly cleaved by the ADAMTS-13 protease
- Congenital TTP is due to a deficiency in ADAMTS-13
- Antibodies against ADAMTS-13 are present in acquired TTP



Differential Diagnosis of TTP

- Sepsis
- DIC
- HELLP
- Antiphospholipid Ab syndrome
- Evans syndrome (AIHA + ITP)

von Willebrand Disease

Pathophysiology

- heterogeneous group of defects, usually mild in severity
- usually autosomal dominant (type 3 is autosomal recessive)
- qualitative or quantitative abnormality of vWF
 - vWF needed for platelet adhesion and acts as carrier for Factor VIII; abnormality of vWF can affect both primary and secondary hemostasis
 - vWF exists as a series of multimers ranging in size
 - ♦ largest multimers are most active in mediation of platelet adhesion, both large and small multimers complex with Factor VIII

Classification

- type 1: mild quantitative defect (decreased amount of vWF and proportional decrease in vWF activity) – 75% of cases
- type 2: qualitative defect (vWF activity disproportionally lower than quantity) – 20-25% of cases
- type 3: severe total quantitative defect (no vWF produced) – rare

Clinical Features

- mild
 - asymptomatic
 - mucosal and cutaneous bleeding, easy bruising, epistaxis, menorrhagia
- moderate to severe
 - as above but more severe, occasionally soft-tissue hematomas, petechiae (rare), GI bleeding, hemarthroses

Investigations

Table 26. Investigations in vWD

Test	Expected Result	Test	Expected Result
PTT	N/↑	von Willebrand antigen	↓
Factor VII	N/↓	Blood group	Affects antigen quantification (↓ in group O)
Plt Count	N/↓	vWF multimer analysis	Multimer variants
Ristocetin Activity	↓ (cofactor for vWF-Plt binding)		



Consider vWD in all women with menorrhagia

Treatment

- desmopressin (DDAVP®) is treatment of choice for type 1 vWD
 - causes release of vWF and Factor VIII from endothelial cells
 - variable efficacy depending on disease type; tachyphylaxis occurs
 - need good response before using with further bleeding
 - caution in children due to hyponatremia
- tranexamic acid (Cyklokapron®, antifibrinolytic) to stabilize clot formation
- high-purity Factor VIII concentrate containing vWF (Hemate P®) in select cases and type
 - frozen plasma (FP) is not useful
 - need to monitor vWF and factor VIII levels (very high factor VIII level can cause thrombosis)
- conjugated estrogens (increase vWF levels)

Prognosis

- may fluctuate, often improves during pregnancy, inflammation, and with age

Disorders of Secondary Hemostasis

Definition

- inability to form an adequate fibrin clot
 - disorders of clotting factors or co-factors
 - disorders of proteins associated with fibrinolysis
- characterized by delayed bleeding, deep muscular bleeding, spontaneous joint bleeding

Table 27. Classification of Secondary Hemostasis Disorders

Hereditary	Acquired
Factor VIII: Hemophilia A, vWD	Liver disease
Factor IX: Hemophilia B (Christmas Disease)	DIC
Factor XI	Vitamin K deficiency
Other factor deficiencies are rare	Acquired inhibitors

Hemophilia A (Factor VIII Deficiency)

Pathophysiology

- X-linked recessive, 1/5,000 males
- mild (>5% of normal factor level), moderate (1-5%), severe (<1%)

Clinical Features

- see Table 20 – *Signs and Symptoms of Disorders of Hemostasis, H26*
- older patients may also have HIV or HCV from contaminated blood products

Investigations

- prolonged aPTT, normal INR (PT)
- decreased Factor VIII (<40% of normal)
- vWF usually normal or increased

Treatment

- desmopressin (DDAVP®) in mild hemophilia A
- recombinant Factor VIII concentrate for
 - prophylaxis (2-3x/wk at home)
 - minor but not trivial bleeding (e.g. hemarthroses)
 - major potentially life-threatening bleeding (e.g. multiple trauma)
- anti-fibrinolytic agents (e.g. tranexamic acid)

**Hemophilia A****Five Hs**

Hemarthroses
Hematomas
Hematochezia
Hematuria
Head hemorrhage

Hemophilia B (Factor IX Deficiency)

- i.e. Christmas disease
- X-linked recessive, 1/30,000 males
- clinical and laboratory features identical to hemophilia A (except decreased Factor IX)
- treatment: recombinant Factor IX concentrate, anti-fibrinolytic agents

Factor XI Deficiency

- i.e. Rosenthal syndrome
- autosomal recessive; more common in Ashkenazi Jewish population
- usually mild, often diagnosed in adulthood
- Factor XI level does not correlate with bleeding risk
- treatment: frozen plasma, Factor XI concentrate

Liver Disease

- see [Gastroenterology, G28](#)



Pathophysiology

- deficient synthesis of all factors except VIII (also made in endothelium and in acute phase response)
- aberrant synthesis of fibrinogen
- deficient clearance of hemostatic 'debris' and fibrinolytic activators
- accelerated destruction due to dysfibrinogenemias: increased fibrinolysis, DIC
- miscellaneous: inhibition of secondary hemostasis by FDPs

Investigations

- peripheral blood film: target cells
- primary hemostasis affected
 - thrombocytopenia 2° to hypersplenism, folate deficiency, alcohol intoxication, DIC, decreased production of thrombopoietin
 - platelet dysfunction (e.g. alcohol abuse)
- secondary hemostasis affected
 - elevated INR (PT), aPTT and TT, low fibrinogen in end-stage liver disease

Treatment

- supportive, treat liver disease, blood products if active bleeding (frozen plasma, platelets, cryoprecipitate)



Investigations in Liver Disease

Factor V, VII, VIII. Expect decreased V and VII because they have the shortest half-life. Factor VIII will be normal or increased because it is produced in the endothelium



PT should improve within 24 h of vitamin K administration (onset is in 6-12 h). If not, search for other causes

Vitamin K Deficiency

Etiology

- drugs
 - oral anticoagulants which inhibit Factors II, VII, IX, X, proteins C and S
 - antibiotics eradicating gut flora, altering vitamin K uptake
- poor diet (especially in alcoholics)
- biliary obstruction
- chronic liver disease (decreased stores)
- malabsorption (e.g. celiac disease)
- hemorrhagic disease of newborn, see [Pediatrics, P70](#)



Investigations

- INR (PT) is elevated out of proportion to elevation of the aPTT
- decreased Factors II, VII, IX, X (vitamin K-dependent)

Treatment

- hold anticoagulant
- vitamin K 1 mg PO for INR between 4.5 and 10 and no active bleeding (excludes hemorrhagic disease of the newborn)
- if bleeding, give vitamin K 10 mg IV
- if life-threatening bleeding and vitamin K antagonist use, give frozen plasma or prothrombin complex concentrate (PCC)
 - PCCs are contraindicated if there is a previous history of HIT
 - use FFP if PCC is contraindicated or unavailable
- note: excessive vitamin K will delay therapeutic warfarin anticoagulation once re-started



American Society of Hematology Choosing Wisely Recommendation

Do not administer plasma or prothrombin complex concentrates for non-emergent reversal of vitamin K antagonists (e.g. outside of the setting of major bleeding, intracranial hemorrhage, or anticipated emergent surgery)



Factor Levels in Acquired Coagulopathies

Factor	Liver Disease	Vitamin K Def	DIC
V	↓	N	↓
VII	↓	↓	↓
VIII	N/↑	N	↓



DIC is a spectrum which may include thrombosis, bleeding, or both

Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation

- see [Obstetrics, OB20](#)



Definition

- uncontrolled release of plasmin and thrombin leading to intravascular coagulation and depletion of platelets, coagulation factors and fibrinogen
- risk of life-threatening hemorrhage

Etiology

- occurs as a complication of many other conditions
- widespread endothelial damage ± extensive inflammatory cytokine release



Important Etiologies of DIC

OMITS
 Obstetric complications
 Malignancy
 Infection
 Trauma
 Shock



Levels of fibrinogen can still be normal in DIC as it is an acute phase reactant
 Serial fibrinogen levels should be measured to see if there is a trending decrease along with an increase in D-dimer

Table 28. Etiology of DIC

Activation of Procoagulant Activity	Endothelial Injury	Reticuloendothelial Injury	Vascular Stasis	Other
Antiphospholipid antibody syndrome (APS) Intravascular hemolysis Incompatible blood, malaria Tissue injury Obstetric complications, trauma, burns, crush injuries Malignancy Solid tumors, hematologic malignancies (especially APLM) Snake venom, fat embolism, heat stroke	Infections/sepsis Vasculitis Metastatic adenocarcinoma Aortic aneurysm Giant hemangioma	Liver disease Splenectomy	Hypotension Hypovolemia Pulmonary embolus	Acute hypoxia/acidosis Extracorporeal circulation

Clinical Features

- presence of both hemorrhage and clotting

Table 29. Clinical Features of DIC

Signs of Microvascular Thrombosis	Signs of Hemorrhagic Diathesis
Neurological: multifocal infarcts, delirium, coma, seizures Skin: focal ischemia, superficial gangrene Renal: oliguria, azotemia, cortical necrosis Pulmonary: ARDS GI: acute ulceration RBC: microangiopathic hemolysis	Bleeding from any site in the body (2° to decreased platelets and clotting factors) Neurologic: intracranial bleeding Skin: petechiae, ecchymosis, oozing from puncture sites Renal: hematuria Mucosal: gingival oozing, epistaxis, massive bleeding

Investigations

- primary hemostasis: decreased platelets
- secondary hemostasis: prolonged INR (PT), aPTT, TT, decreased fibrinogen and other factors
- fibrinolysis: increased FDPs or D-dimers, short euglobulin lysis time (i.e. accelerated fibrinolysis)
- extent of fibrin deposition: urine output, urea, RBC fragmentation

Treatment

- recognize early and treat underlying disorder
- individualized critical care support
- in hemorrhage: replacement of hemostatic elements with platelet transfusion, frozen plasma, cryoprecipitate
 - maintain platelets $>50,000/\text{mm}^3$ and hemoglobin $>80 \text{ g/L}$
 - 4-5 units of FFP if INR >1.5 or aPTT >38
 - 10 units of cryoprecipitate if fibrinogen $<100 \text{ mg/dL}$
 - 1 adult dose of buffy-coat platelets if $<10,000$ ($<20,000$ if febrile, $<50,000$ before invasive procedure)
- in thrombotic phase: UFH or LMWH in critically ill, non-bleeding patients

Table 30. Screening Test Abnormalities in Coagulopathies

Increased INR Only	Increased PTT Only	Both Increased
Warfarin	Hemophilia A and B	Prothrombin deficiency
Vitamin K deficiency	vWD	Fibrinogen deficiency
Factor VII deficiency	Heparin	Factor V and X deficiency
Liver disease	Antiphospholipid Ab	Severe liver disease
Factor VII inhibitors	Factor inhibitors	Factor V and X, prothrombin, and fibrinogen inhibitors
	Factor XI and XII deficiency	Excessive anticoagulation

**Risk of VTE in Hospitalized Patients Receiving Ineffective Antithrombotic Therapy**

Risk Factor	RR (95% CI)	P-value
Age >75 yr	1.79 (1.18-2.71)	0.007
Cancer	1.58 (1.01-2.51)	
Previous VTE	1.67 (1.01-2.77)	0.08
Obesity	0.94 (0.59-1.51)	0.91
Hormone therapy	0.51 (0.08-3.38)	0.70
Heart failure	1.08 (0.72-1.62)	0.82
NYHA III	0.89 (0.55-1.43)	0.72
NYHA IV	1.48 (0.84-2.6)	0.27
Acute infectious disease	1.50 (1.00-2.26)	0.06
Acute rheumatic disease	1.45 (0.84-2.50)	0.27

Source: JAMA 2004;164:963-968

**Differential Diagnosis of Elevated D-Dimer**

- Arterial thromboembolic disease (MI, CVA, acute limb ischemia, AFib, intracardiac thrombus)
- Venous thromboembolic disease (DVT, PE)
- DIC
- Preeclampsia and eclampsia
- Abnormal fibrinolysis; use of thrombolytic agents
- Cardiovascular disease, CHF
- Severe infection/sepsis/inflammation
- Surgery/trauma (tissue ischemia, necrosis)
- Systemic inflammatory response syndrome
- Vasoocclusive episode of sickle cell disease
- Severe liver disease
- Malignancy
- Renal disease (nephrotic syndrome, acute/chronic renal failure)
- Normal pregnancy
- Venous malformation

**Virchow's Triad**

- Endothelial damage
- Stasis
- Hypercoagulability

**American Society of Hematology Choosing Wisely Recommendations**

1. Do not test for thrombophilia in adult patients with venous thromboembolism occurring in the setting of major transient risk factors (surgery, trauma, or prolonged immobility)
2. Do not use inferior vena cava filters routinely in patients with acute venous thromboembolism

Venous Thromboembolism

Definition

- thrombus formation and subsequent inflammatory response in a superficial or deep vein
- superficial thrombophlebitis, deep vein thrombosis (DVT), and pulmonary embolism (PE)
- thrombi propagate in the direction of blood flow (commonly originating in calf veins)
- more common in lower extremity than upper extremity
- incidence $\sim 1\%$ if age >60 yr
- most important sequelae are pulmonary embolism ($\sim 50\%$ chance with proximal DVT) and chronic venous insufficiency

Etiology (Virchow's Triad)

- endothelial damage
 - exposes endothelium to prompt hemostasis
 - leads to decreased inhibition of coagulation and local fibrinolysis
- venous stasis
 - immobilization (post-MI, CHF, stroke, post-operative) inhibits clearance and dilution of coagulation factors
- hypercoagulability
 - inherited (see [Hypercoagulable Disorders, H36](#))
 - acquired
 - ♦ age (risk increases with age)
 - ♦ surgery (especially orthopedic, thoracic, GI, and GU)
 - ♦ trauma (especially fractures of spine, pelvis, femur or tibia, spinal cord injury)
 - ♦ neoplasms (especially lung, pancreas, colon, rectum, kidney, and prostate)
 - ♦ blood dyscrasias (myeloproliferative neoplasms, especially PV, ET), PNH, hyperviscosity (multiple myeloma, polycythemia, leukemia, sickle cell disease)
 - ♦ prolonged immobilization (CHF, stroke, MI, leg injury)
 - ♦ hormone related (pregnancy, OCP, HRT, SERMs)
 - ♦ APS
 - ♦ heart failure (risk of DVT greatest with right heart failure and peripheral edema)
- idiopathic (10-20% are later found to have cancer)

Clinical Features of DVT

- absence of physical findings does not rule out disease
- unilateral leg edema, erythema, warmth, and tenderness
- palpable cord (thrombosed vein)
- phlegmasia cerulea dolens and phlegmasia alba dolens with massive thrombosis
- Homan's sign (pain with foot dorsiflexion) is unreliable

Differential Diagnosis of DVT

- muscle strain or tear, lymphangitis or lymph obstruction, venous valvular insufficiency, ruptured popliteal cysts, cellulitis, arterial occlusive disease

Investigations for DVT

- D-dimer test only useful to rule out DVT if negative with low clinical suspicion of disease and no other acute medical issues
- doppler ultrasound is most useful diagnostic test for DVT
 - sensitivity and specificity for proximal DVT ~95%
 - sensitivity for calf DVT ~70%
- other non-invasive tests include MRI and impedance plethysmography
- venography is the gold standard, but is expensive, invasive, and higher risk

Post-Thrombotic Syndrome

- development of chronic venous stasis signs and symptoms secondary to a deep venous thrombosis
- symptoms: pain, venous dilatation, edema, pigmentation, skin changes, venous ulcers
- clinical severity can be estimated based on the Villalta score
- large impact on quality of life following a DVT
- treatment: extremity elevation, exercise, continuous compression stockings, intermittent pneumatic compression therapy, skin/ulcer care
- for Clinical Features and Treatment of PE, see [Respirology, R18](#)



Wells' Score for VTE Criteria (Score)

- Paralysis, paresis, or recent orthopedic casting of lower extremity (1)
- Recently bedridden (>3 d) or major surgery within past 4 wk (1)
- Localized tenderness in deep vein system (1)
- Swelling of entire leg (1)
- Calf swelling >3 cm than other leg (measured 10 cm below the tibial tuberosity) (1)
- Pitting edema greater in the symptomatic leg (1)
- Collateral non-varicose superficial veins (1)
- Active cancer or cancer treated within 6 mo (1)
- Alternative diagnosis more **likely** than DVT (e.g. Baker's cyst, cellulitis, muscle damage, superficial venous thrombosis) (-2)

Total Score Interpretation

3-8: High probability, 1-2: Moderate probability, -2-0: Low probability



Low-Molecular-Weight Heparin vs. Coumarin for the Prevention of Recurrent Venous Thromboembolism in Patients with Cancer

NEJM 2003;349:146-153

Study: RCT comparing the efficacy of LMWH (dalteparin) with an oral anti-coagulant agent (coumarin) in preventing recurrent thrombosis in patients with cancer.

Methods: Patients with cancer who had acute, symptomatic proximal DVT, PE, or both were randomly assigned to either dalteparin or coumarin treatment for 6 mo.

Results: 27 of 336 patients in the dalteparin group had recurrent VTE vs. 53 of 336 patients in the coumarin group (hazard ratio, 0.48; $p=0.002$). The probability of recurrent thromboembolism at 6 mo was 9% and 17% in dalteparin and coumarin groups respectively. There was no significant difference in bleeding rates. The mortality rate was 39% in the dalteparin group and 41% in the coumarin group.

Conclusions: In patients with cancer and acute VTE, dalteparin was more effective than coumarin decreasing the risk of recurrent thromboembolism without increasing the risk of bleeding.



Duration of Treatment with Vitamin K Antagonists in Symptomatic Venous Thromboembolism

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;CD001367

Study: Meta-analysis of 8 RCTs (2,994 patients) comparing different durations of treatment with vitamin K antagonists in patients with symptomatic VTE.

Results: In patients treated with vitamin K antagonists for a prolonged period, the reduction in risk of recurrent VTE remained consistent regardless of the period of time since the index event (OR 0.18; 95% CI 0.13-0.26). In addition, there was no observed excess of VTE recurrences following cessation of prolonged treatment (i.e. rebound phenomenon) (OR 1.24; 95% CI 0.91-1.69). However, patients who received prolonged treatment had a persistent increase in their risk of major bleeding complications (OR 2.61; 95% CI 1.48-4.61).

Conclusion: Prolonged treatment with vitamin K antagonists leads to a consistent reduction in the risk of recurrent VTE for as long as therapy is continued. Therapy should be discontinued when the risk of harm from major bleeding (which remains constant over time) is of greater concern than the absolute risk of recurrent VTE (which declines over time). No specific recommendation was made regarding optimal duration of treatment.

Approach to Treatment of Venous Thromboembolism

Purpose

- prevent further clot extension (3 mo duration is optimal)
- prevent acute pulmonary embolism (occurs in up to 50% of untreated patients)
- reduce the risk of recurrent thrombosis (duration depends on presence of other risk factors)
- treatment of massive iliofemoral thrombosis with acute lower limb ischemia and/or venous gangrene (phlegmasia cerulea dolens)
- limit development of late complications, e.g. postphlebotic syndrome, chronic venous insufficiency, and chronic thromboembolic pulmonary HTN

Absolute Contraindications to Treatment	Relative Contraindications to Treatment
Active bleeding	Mild-moderate bleeding diathesis or thrombocytopenia
Severe bleeding diathesis or platelet count <20,000/mm ³	Brain metastases
Intracranial bleeding	Recent major trauma
Neurosurgery or ocular surgery within 10 d	Recent stroke
	Major abdominal surgery within past 2 d
	GI/GU bleeding within 1-4 d
	Endocarditis
	Severe HTN (sBP >200 or dBP >120)

Initial Treatment

- low molecular weight heparin (LMWH)
 - administered SC, at least as effective as UFH with a lower bleeding risk
 - advantages: predictable dose response and fixed dosing schedule; lab monitoring not required; <1% HIT; safe and effective outpatient therapy
 - disadvantages: only partially reversible by protamine, long-term use associated with osteoporosis
 - renally cleared – must adjust dose in patients with renal dysfunction
- unfractionated heparin (UFH)
 - in patient with average risk of bleed; use hospital-based nomograms that use bleeding risk and patient weight to determine appropriate dose
 - advantages: rapidly reversible by protamine
 - disadvantages: must monitor aPTT with adjustment of dose to reach therapeutic level (~2x normal value); monitor platelet counts for development of HIT
- alternatives to LMWH and UFH
 - heparinoids (patients with HIT), direct thrombin inhibitors (hirudin, lepirudin, argatroban, dabigatran), Factor Xa inhibitors (fondaparinux, rivaroxaban)
 - thrombolytic drugs (e.g. streptokinase, tPA) reserved for acute limb/life-threatening thrombosis, and low bleeding risk

Long-Term Treatment

- warfarin
 - standard treatment; should be initiated with heparin overlap: dual therapy for at least 5 d, due to initial prothrombotic state, half life of vitamin K factors and risk of warfarin-induced skin necrosis
 - discontinue heparin after INR >2.0 for two consecutive days
 - warfarin should be dosed to maintain INR at 2-3 except in select cases
 - monitor INR twice weekly for 1-2 wk, then weekly until INR stable, then every 2-4 wk
 - LMWH more effective than warfarin at preventing recurrence of venous thrombosis in cancer patients (see sidebar, H34)
- duration of anticoagulant treatment (with warfarin unless otherwise noted)
 - first episode DVT with transient risk factor: 3 mo
 - first episode DVT with ongoing risk factor (e.g. cancer, antiphospholipid antibody) or >1 risk factor: consider indefinite therapy
 - first episode DVT with no identifiable risk factor (idiopathic) or single inherited risk factor (e.g. Factor V Leiden): 6-12 mo or indefinite therapy (controversial)
 - recurrent DVT (2 or more episodes): indefinite therapy
- IVC filters
 - temporary filter indicated only if distal acute DVT (<4 wk) with significant contraindications to anticoagulant therapy (i.e. active bleeding)
 - must remove once safe to do so as filter is pro-thrombotic in the longterm (anticoagulation if left in)
- special considerations
 - pregnancy: treat with LMWH during pregnancy, then warfarin for 4-6 wk post-partum (minimum total anticoagulation time of 3-6 mo)
 - surgery: avoid elective surgery in the first month after a venous or arterial thromboembolic event
 - ♦ pre-operatively: IV heparin may be used up to 6 h pre-operatively
 - ♦ perioperatively: surgery safe when INR <1.5; warfarin should be discontinued for at least 4 wk pre-operatively to allow INR to fall
 - ♦ post-operatively: IV heparin or LMWH can be used for anticoagulation (start 12 h after major surgery until therapeutic INR reached after restarting warfarin)
 - ♦ for patients at high risk for thromboembolism (VTE <12 wk, recurrent VTE, lupus anticoagulant, atrial fibrillation with prior stroke, mechanical heart valve), IV heparin or LMWH (bridging) should be given before and after the procedure while the INR is below 2.0

Prophylaxis

- see sidebar
- consider for those with a moderate to high risk of thrombosis without contraindications
- non-pharmacological measures include: early ambulation, elastic compression stockings (TEDs), intermittent pneumatic compression (IPC)
- UFH 5,000 IU SC bid for moderate risk
- UFH 5,000 IU SC tid or LMWH as per hospital protocol (i.e. enoxaparin 40 mg SC daily) or UFH 5,000 IU SC tid for high risk

Contraindications and Adverse Reactions of Anticoagulant Therapy

- absolute: active bleeding, severe bleeding diathesis, or platelets <20 x 10⁹/L (<20,000/mm³), intracranial bleeding, neuro or ocular surgery within <10 d
- relative: mild-moderate neurologic diathesis or thrombocytopenia, brain metastases, recent major trauma, major abdominal surgery within past 2 d, GI/GU bleed within 14 d, endocarditis, severe HTN (sBP >200 or dBP >120), recent stroke

Treatment of Pulmonary Embolism

- see [Respirology, R20](#)



Common Medications that Interact with Warfarin

- Acetaminophen (interference with vit K metabolism)
- Allopurinol
- NSAIDs (GI injury)
- Fluconazole
- Metronidazole
- Sulfamethoxazole
- Tamoxifen



Initiation of Warfarin Therapy Requires Overlap with Heparin Therapy for 4-5 d

- 10 mg loading dose of warfarin causes a precipitous decline in protein C levels in first 36 h resulting in a transient hypercoagulable state
- Warfarin decreases Factor VII levels in first 48 h INR is prolonged (most sensitive to Factor VII levels), however full antithrombotic effect is not achieved until Factor IX, X, and II are sufficiently reduced (occurs after ~4 d)



Low Risk Surgical Patients

<40 yr, no risk factors for VTE, general anesthetic (GA) <30 min, minor elective, abdominal, or thoracic surgery

Moderate Risk Surgical Patients

>40 yr, >1 risk factor for VTE, GA >30 min

High Risk Surgical Patients

> yr, surgery for malignancy or lower extremity orthopedic surgery lasting >30 min, inhibitor deficiency, or other risk factor

High Risk Medical Patients

Heart failure, severe respiratory disease, ischemic stroke and lower limb paralysis, confined to bed and have >1 additional risk factor (e.g. active cancer, previous VTE, sepsis, acute neurologic disease, IBD)



Hypercoagulable Disorders

Hypercoagulability Workup – Venous Thrombosis

- workup for malignancy or hypercoagulable state indicated for idiopathic VTE in presence of the following: age <50, recurrent VTE, family history of VTE and age <50, unusual site of DVT (portal, hepatic, mesenteric vascular beds), heparin-resistant disease (AT deficiency), warfarin-induced skin necrosis or neonatal purpura fulminans (proteins C or S deficiency); consider for women with VTE within 12 mo of exposure to OCP
- workup
 - initial
 - CBC, blood smear, coagulation studies, liver/renal function, urinalysis, fasting homocysteine
 - malignancy workup (see sidebar)
 - antiphospholipid antibodies (APLA): anticardiolipin antibodies (ACA) and lupus anticoagulant (LA)
 - activated protein C resistance (APCR)
 - DNA/Molecular: FVL (Factor V Leiden), PT (prothrombin G20210A), JAK-2
 - Flow Cytometry: PNH
 - post initial insult (>72 h) (as protein levels depleted/consumed by clot)
 - antithrombin (not on heparin)
 - Factor VIII (increased levels predict recurrence)
 - post-treatment
 - proteins C, S (not on warfarin)
- Note: most of these tests do not change management, and a negative test does not rule out a hypercoagulable state. Thus more focus is on the reversible/treatable causes (APLA, cancer, etc.)

CAUSES OF HYPERCOAGULABILITY LEADING TO VENOUS THROMBOEMBOLISM

Activated Protein C Resistance (Factor V Leiden)

- most common cause of hereditary thrombophilia
- 5% of general population are heterozygotes
- point mutation in the Factor V gene (R506Q) results in resistance to inactivation of Factor Va by activated protein C

Prothrombin (PT) G20210A

- G to A transposition at nucleotide position 20210 of the prothrombin gene promoter region results in increased levels of prothrombin, thus increased thrombin generation

Protein C and Protein S Deficiency

- protein C inactivates Factor Va and VIIIa using protein S as a cofactor
- protein C deficiency
 - homozygous: neonatal purpura fulminans
 - heterozygous:
 - type I: decreased protein C levels
 - type II: decreased protein C activity
 - acquired: liver disease, sepsis, DIC, warfarin
 - 1/3 of patients with warfarin necrosis have underlying protein C deficiency
- protein S deficiency
 - type I: decreased free and total protein S levels
 - type II: decreased protein S activity
 - type III: decreased free protein S levels
 - acquired: liver disease, DIC, pregnancy, nephrotic syndrome, inflammatory conditions, warfarin

Antithrombin Deficiency

- antithrombin slowly inactivates thrombin in the absence of heparin, rapidly inactivates thrombin in the presence of heparin
- autosomal dominant inheritance or urinary losses in nephrotic syndrome
 - type I: decreased AT levels
 - type II: decreased AT activity
- diagnosis must be made outside window of acute thrombosis and anticoagulation treatment (acute thrombosis, heparin, systemic disease all decrease antithrombin levels)
- deficiency may result in resistance to unfractionated heparin (LMWH must be used)

Elevated Factor VIII Levels

- an independent marker of increased thrombotic risk
- genetic basis for increased levels poorly understood

Disorders of Fibrinolysis

- include congenital plasminogen deficiency, tissue plasminogen activator deficiency

Antiphospholipid Antibody Syndrome (APS)

- definition: ≥ 1 clinical and ≥ 1 laboratory criteria
 - clinical: thrombosis, spontaneous abortions, fetal loss, premature birth before 34 wk
 - laboratory: anticardiolipin or lupus anticoagulant antibodies
- mechanism: not well understood, antibodies interact with platelet membrane phospholipid causing increased adhesion and aggregation; can also interfere with action of proteins C and S
- see [Rheumatology, RH12](#)



Common Causes of Hypercoagulability

CALM APES

Protein C deficiency
Antiphospholipid Ab
Factor V Leiden
Malignancy
Antithrombin deficiency
Prothrombin G20210A
Increased Factor VIII (Eight)
Protein S deficiency



Although lupus anti-coagulant prolongs PTT, its main clinical feature is thrombosis



Protein C, protein S, and ATIII are decreased during acute thrombosis – therefore to test for deficiency, must be tested outside of this time period



Causes of Both Venous and Arterial Thrombosis include:

- Antiphospholipid antibodies
- Myeloproliferative neoplasms
- Heparin induced thrombocytopenia
- Distal venous clot with patent foramen ovale



Malignancy is a common cause of acquired hypercoagulability

Workup may include (controversial):

- Complete history and physical
- Routine blood work
- Urinalysis
- CXR and abdominal ultrasound
- Age appropriate screening: mammogram, Pap, PSA, colonoscopy
- Close follow-up



Hematologic Malignancies and Related Disorders

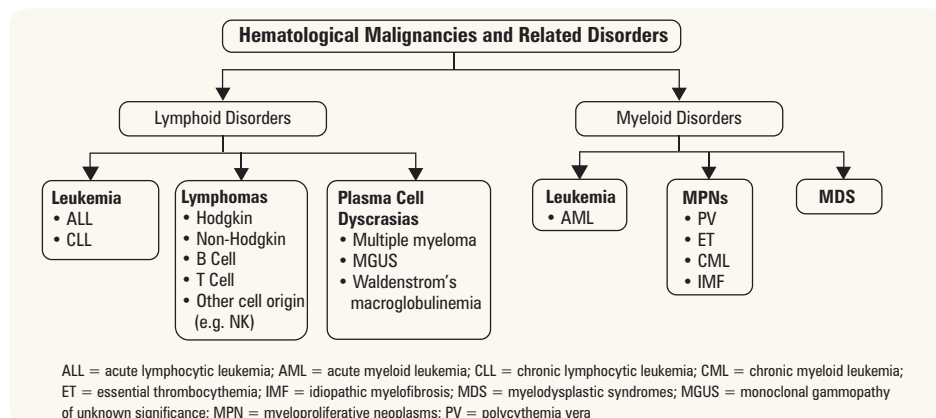


Figure 14. Overview of hematologic malignancies and related disorders

Myeloid Malignancies

Acute Myeloid Leukemia

Definition

- rapidly progressive malignancy characterized by failure of myeloid cells to differentiate beyond blast stage

Epidemiology

- incidence increases with age; median age of onset is 65 yr old
- accounts for 10-15% of childhood leukemias

Risk Factors

- myelodysplastic syndromes (MDS), benzene, radiation, alkylating agents as treatment for previous malignancy

Pathophysiology

- etiology subdivided into
 - primary: *de novo*
 - secondary: hematologic malignancies (e.g. myeloproliferative disorders and MDS) or previous chemotherapeutic agents (e.g. alkylating agents)
- uncontrolled growth of blasts in marrow leads to
 - suppression of normal hematopoietic cells
 - appearance of blasts in peripheral blood
 - accumulation of blasts in other sites (e.g. skin, gums)
 - metabolic consequences; tumor lysis syndrome

Clinical Features

- anemia, thrombocytopenia (associated with DIC in PML), neutropenia (even with normal WBC), leads to infections, fever
- thrombocytopenia (associated with DIC in promyelocytic leukemia)
- accumulation of blast cells in marrow
 - skeletal pain, bony tenderness (especially sternum)
- organ infiltration
 - gingival hypertrophy (particularly myelomonocytic leukemia) – may present to dentist first
 - hepatosplenomegaly (in ALL)
 - lymphadenopathy (not marked)
 - skin: leukemia cutis
 - gonads (in ALL)
 - eyes: Roth spots, cotton wool spots, vision changes (uncommon)
- leukostasis/hyperleukosis syndrome (medical emergency)
 - large numbers of blasts interfere with circulation and lead to hypoxia and hemorrhage – can cause diffuse pulmonary infiltrates, CNS bleeding, respiratory distress, altered mental status, priapism



Typical Age of Presentation of Leukemias

- ALL: Children and older adults
- CML: 40-60 yr
- AML, CLL: >60 yr



Leukemia: malignant cells arise in bone marrow and may spread elsewhere (including blood, lymph nodes, and lymphoid tissue)

Lymphoma: malignant cells arise in lymph nodes and lymphoid tissues and may spread elsewhere (including blood and bone marrow)

BUT the location where the malignant cells are found does not solely define the type of hematologic malignancy – classified based on the characteristics of the cell (histology, histochemistry, immunophenotyping, cytogenetics, molecular changes)



Acute Leukemia

Definition (WHO): presence of 20% blast cells or greater in bone marrow at presentation

Classification: divided into myeloid (AML) and lymphoid (ALL) depending on whether blasts are myeloblasts or lymphoblasts, respectively



Auer rods are pathognomonic for AML



2008 WHO Classification of AML and Related Neoplasms

- AML with recurrent genetic abnormalities
- AML with myelodysplasia-related changes
- Therapy-related myeloid neoplasms
- Myeloid sarcoma
- Myeloid proliferations related to Down syndrome
- Blastic plasmacytoid dendritic cell neoplasm
- AML, not otherwise specified (equivalent FAB classification)
 - Undifferentiated (M1)
 - Myeloblastic (M2)
 - Promyelocytic (M3)
 - Myelomonocytic (M4)
 - Monocytic (M5)
 - Erythroleukemic (M6)
 - Megakaryocytic (M7)
 - Acute basophilic leukemia
 - Acute panmyelosis with myelofibrosis

- metabolic effects; aggravated by treatment (rare)
 - increased uric acid → nephropathy, gout
 - release of phosphate → decreased Ca^{2+} , decreased Mg^{2+}
 - release of procoagulants → DIC (higher risk in acute promyelocytic leukemia)
- decreased or normal K^+ before treatment, increased K^+ after treatment (from lysed cells)

Investigations

- blood work
 - CBC: anemia, thrombocytopenia, variable WBC
 - INR, aPTT, fibrin degradation products (FDP), fibrinogen (in case of DIC)
 - increased LDH, increased uric acid, increased PO_4^{3-} (released by leukemic blasts), decreased Ca^{2+}
 - baseline renal and liver function tests
- peripheral blood film – circulating blasts with Auer rods (azurophilic granules) are pathognomonic for AML
- bone marrow aspirate
 - blast count: AML >20% (normal is <5%)
 - morphologic, cytochemical, and/or immunotypic features are used to establish lineage and maturation (see sidebar for WHO classification of AML, H37)
- CXR to rule out pneumonia, ECG, MUGA scan prior to chemotherapy (cardiotoxic)

Treatment

- mainstay of treatment is chemotherapy (rapidly fatal without treatment)
 - all AML subtypes treated similarly except promyelocytic variant with t(15;17) translocation
 - ♦ all-trans-retinoic acid (ATRA) added to induce differentiation; arsenic trioxide + ATRA combination therapy for APL is non-inferior to traditional chemotherapy
- treatment strategy
 1. **Induction:** chemotherapy to induce complete remission of AML (see sidebar)
 - ♦ several possible regimens (e.g. cytarabine with anthracycline [daunorubicin])
 - ♦ patients with poor response to initial induction therapy – worse prognosis
 - ♦ must ensure reversal of DIC, platelet transfusions if <10
 2. **Consolidation:** to prevent recurrence
 - ♦ intensive consolidation chemotherapy
 - ♦ stem cell transplantation – autologous or allogeneic (younger patients with better performance status)
- consider acceleration with hematopoietic growth factors (e.g. G-CSF) if severe infection develops
- supportive care
 - screening for infection via regular C&S of urine, stool, sputum, oropharynx, catheter sites, perianal area
 - fever: C&S of all orifices, CXR, start antibiotics
 - platelet and RBC transfusions (irradiated to prevent transfusion-related GVHD) ± EPO
 - prevention and treatment of metabolic abnormalities
 - ♦ allopurinol, rasburicase for prevention of hyperuricemia

Prognosis

- achievement of first remission
 - 70-80% if ≤60 yr old, 50% if >60 yr old
 - median survival 12-24 mo
 - 5 yr survival 40%
 - prognosis related to cytogenetics (favorable, intermediate, or adverse)



Cure: survival that parallels age-matched population

Complete Remission: tumor load below threshold of detectable disease (normal peripheral blood film, normal bone marrow with <5% blasts, normal clinical state)



2008 WHO MDS Classification

- Refractory cytopenia with unilineage dysplasia
 - Refractory anemia
 - Refractory neutropenia
 - Refractory thrombocytopenia
- Refractory anemia with ringed sideroblasts (RARS)
- Refractory cytopenia with multilineage dysplasia (RCMD)
- Refractory cytopenia with multilineage dysplasia and ringed sideroblasts (RCMD-RS)
- Refractory anemia with excess blasts (RAEB)
- Myelodysplastic syndrome with isolated del (5q)
- Myelodysplasia unclassified (seen in cases of megakaryocyte dysplasia with fibrosis and others)
- Childhood myelodysplastic syndrome



MDS is a cause of macrocytic anemia



Myelodysplastic Syndromes: ineffective maturation

Myeloproliferative Neoplasms: overproduction of mature cells

Myelodysplastic Syndromes

Definition

- heterogeneous group of malignant stem cell disorders characterized by dysplastic and ineffective blood cell production resulting in peripheral cytopenias
- syndromes defined according to World Health Organization (WHO) classifications (see sidebar)

Pathophysiology

- disordered maturation: ineffective hematopoiesis despite presence of adequate numbers of progenitor cells in bone marrow (usually hypercellular)
- intramedullary apoptosis: programmed cell death within bone marrow
 - both processes lead to reduced mature cells in periphery
- <30% develop AML

Risk Factors

- elderly, post-chemotherapy, benzene or radiation exposure
- occurs in 60/100,000 in patients >60 yr old

Clinical Features

- insidious onset: associated with those of pancytopenia
- infections and bleeding out of proportion with peripheral blood counts

Investigations

- diagnosed by
 - anemia \pm thrombocytopenia \pm neutropenia
 - CBC and peripheral blood film
 - RBC: usually macrocytic with oval shaped red cells (macro-ovalocytes), decreased reticulocyte count
 - WBC: decreased granulocytes and abnormal morphology (e.g. bilobed or unsegmented nuclei = Pelger abnormality)
 - platelets: thrombocytopenia, abnormalities of size and cytoplasm (e.g. giant hypogranular platelets)
- bone marrow aspirate and biopsy with cytogenetic analysis required for definitive diagnosis
 - bone marrow: dysplastic and often normocellular/hypercellular
 - cytogenetics: partial or total loss of chromosomes 5, 7, Y, or trisomy 8

Prognosis

- Revised International Prognostic Scoring System (IPSS-R) uses 5 factors to estimate mean survival
 - cytology, % bone marrow blasts, hemoglobin, platelets, absolute neutrophil count
 - based on the calculated score, a patient's MDS prognostic risk is "Very Low", "Low", "Intermediate", "High", or "Very High" with a mean survival of 8.7, 5.3, 3.0, 1.6, and 0.8 yr, respectively

Treatment

- **low risk** of transformation to acute leukemia (IPSS-R Very Low or Low)
 - erythropoietin stimulating agents weekly is first line in reducing transfusion requirements
 - 5q(-) cytogenetic: lenalidomide PO
 - supportive care: RBC and platelet transfusion (consider iron chelation if frequent RBC transfusions)
- **high risk** of transformation to acute leukemia (IPSS-R Intermediate, High or Very High)
 - supportive care
 - stem cell transplantation if age <65 yr
 - epigenetic therapy: DNA methyltransferase inhibitors (e.g. 5-azacytidine), histone deacetylase inhibitors



Use of Epoetin and Darbepoetin in Patients with Cancer

Blood 2008;111:25-41

Clinical practice guideline update by American Societies of Hematology and Clinical Oncology (2007).

Initial Recommendations

1. Initiate an erythropoiesis-stimulating agent (ESA) when hemoglobin (Hb) is 100 g/L (10 g/dL) in patients with palliative chemotherapy-associated anemia to decrease the need for transfusions.
2. Discontinue ESAs when patient not responding to treatment beyond 6-8 wk.
3. Monitor iron stores and supplement iron intake for ESA-treated patients when necessary.
4. Use ESAs cautiously with chemotherapy or in patients with an elevated risk for thromboembolic complications.
5. It is not recommended that ESA be used for therapy in patients with cancer who are not receiving chemotherapy, as it increases thromboembolic risks and lowers survival rate. Patients with low-risk myelodysplasia are an exception.

Myeloproliferative Neoplasms

Definition

- clonal myeloid stem cell abnormalities leading to overproduction of one or more cell lines (leading to abnormalities in erythrocytes, platelets, and other cells of myeloid lineage)

Epidemiology

- mainly middle-aged and older patients (peak 60-80 yr)

Prognosis

- may develop marrow fibrosis with time
- all disorders may progress to AML



Basophilia is uncommon in other medical conditions

Table 31. Chronic Myeloproliferative Disorders

	CML	PV	IMF	ET
Hct	↓/N	↑↑	↓	N
WBC	↑↑	↑	↑/↓	N
Plt	↑/↓	↑	↑/↓	↑↑↑
Marrow Fibrosis	±	±	+++	±
Splenomegaly	+++	+	+++	+
Hepatomegaly	+	+	++	—
Genetic Association	<i>bcr-abl</i> mut. (90+%)	JAK2 mut. (95%)	JAK2 mut. (~50%)	JAK2 mut. (~50%)

CML = chronic myeloid leukemia; ET = essential thrombocythemia; IMF = idiopathic myelofibrosis; PV = polycythemia vera

Chronic Myeloid Leukemia



Definition

- myeloproliferative disorder characterized by increased proliferation of the granulocytic cell line without the loss of their capacity to differentiate

Epidemiology

- occurs in any age group (mostly middle age to elderly) with a median age of 65 yr

Pathophysiology

- Philadelphia chromosome (Ph)
 - translocation between chromosomes 9 and 22
 - the c-abl proto-oncogene is translocated from chromosome 9 to "breakpoint cluster region" (bcr) of chromosome 22 to produce *bcr-abl* fusion gene, an active tyrosine kinase

Clinical Features

- 3 clinical phases
 - chronic phase:** 85% diagnosed here
 - few blasts (<10%) in peripheral film
 - ± slightly elevated eosinophils and basophils
 - no significant symptoms other than leukostasis
 - accelerated phase:** impaired neutrophil differentiation
 - circulating blasts (10-19%) with increasing peripheral basophils (pruritus)
 - CBC: thrombocytopenia <100,000/mm³
 - cytogenetic evidence of clonal evolution
 - worsening constitutional symptoms and splenomegaly (extramedullary hematopoiesis)
 - blast crisis:** more aggressive course, blasts fail to differentiate
 - blasts (>20%) in peripheral blood or bone marrow; reflective of acute leukemia (1/3 ALL, 2/3 AML)
- clinical presentation
 - 20-50% of patients are asymptomatic when diagnosed (incidental lab finding)
 - nonspecific symptoms
 - fatigue, weight loss, malaise, excessive sweating, fever
 - secondary to splenic involvement
 - early satiety, LUQ pain/fullness, shoulder tip pain (referred)
 - splenomegaly (most common physical finding)
 - anemia
 - bleeding: secondary to platelet dysfunction
 - pruritus, PUD: secondary to increased blood histamine
 - leukostasis, priapism, encephalopathy (rare): secondary to very elevated WBC (rare)

Investigations

- high increase in WBC, decreased/normal RBC, increased/decreased platelets, increased basophils
 - WBC differential shows a bimodal distribution, with predominance of myelocytes and neutrophils
- peripheral blood film
 - leukoerythroblastic picture (immature red cells and granulocytes present, e.g. myelocytes and normoblasts)
 - presence of different mid-stage progenitor cells differentiates it from AML
- bone marrow
 - myeloid hyperplasia with left shift, increased megakaryocytes, mild fibrosis
- molecular and cytogenetic studies of bone marrow or peripheral blood for Philadelphia chromosome
- abdominal imaging for spleen size

Treatment

- symptomatic**
 - allopurinol and antihistamines
- chronic phase**
 - imatinib mesylate inhibits proliferation and induces apoptosis by inhibiting tyrosine kinase activity in cells positive for *bcr-abl*
 - if loss of response or intolerance (~25%), trial of 2nd (dasatinib, nilotinib) or 3rd generation inhibitors
 - dasatinib may be considered for first line management (see sidebar)
 - interferon- α : may improve response to tyrosine kinase inhibitors
 - hydroxyurea in palliative setting
 - bone marrow transplantation if progression to accelerated or blast phases: CML (curative)
- accelerated phase or blast phase**
 - refer for clinical trial or 2nd/3rd generation (ponatinib only for T315I-mutated CML) TKI and prepare for allogeneic stem cell transplant patients, in blast phase typically get standard AML induction
- stem cell transplantation may be curative: to be considered in young patients who do not meet therapeutic milestones



Detection of the *bcr-abl* fusion gene is a diagnostic test for CML (present in over 90% of patients)



Chronic Myeloproliferative Neoplasias: Six Year Follow-Up of Patients Receiving Imatinib for the First-Line Treatment of CML
Leukemia 2009;23:1054-1061

Study: The Randomized Study of Interferon vs. ST1571 (IRIS) trial enrolled patients with chronic phase chronic myeloid leukemia (CML-CP) to either imatinib (n=533) or interferon- α (IFN) plus cytarabine (n=553).

Results: Assessing the imatinib arm specifically at the sixth year point, there were no reports of disease progression to accelerated phase (AP) or blast crisis (BC), toxicity profile was unchanged, and cytogenetic response rate was 82%. Estimated event-free survival was 83% and rate of freedom from progression to AP and BC was 93%.

Conclusion: This 6 yr update of IRIS demonstrates the efficacy and safety of imatinib as first-line therapy for CML patients.



Early Response with Dasatinib or Imatinib in Chronic Myeloid Leukemia
Blood 2014;123:494-500

Study: The DASatinib vs. Imatinib Study in treatment-Naïve CML patients (DASISION) trial is a randomized phase 3 trial comparing treatment with dasatinib (n=259) or imatinib (n=260) once daily in patients with newly diagnosed CML in chronic phase.

Results: Dasatinib was associated with superior efficacy during the first year of treatment, including significantly higher complete cytogenetic responses (83% vs. 72%) and major molecular responses (46% vs. 28%) compared to imatinib, respectively. Dasatinib was associated with faster and deeper responses at 3, 6, and 12 mo.

- treatment success is monitored based on therapeutic milestones
 - hematologic: improved WBC and platelet counts, reduced basophils
 - cytogenetic: undetectable Philadelphia-chromosome in the bone marrow
 - molecular: reduction/absence of *bcr-abl* transcripts in periphery and marrow

Prognosis

- survival dependent on response
 - those achieving complete cytogenetic response (CCR) on imatinib by 18 mo of therapy: 6 yr overall survival >90%
 - those who do NOT achieve CCR on imatinib: 6 yr overall survival of 66%
- acute phase (blast crisis – usually within 3-5 yr)
 - 2/3 develop a picture similar to AML
 - ♦ unresponsive to remission induction
 - 1/3 develop a picture similar to ALL
 - ♦ remission induction (return to chronic phase) achievable

Polycythemia Vera

Definition

- stem cell disorder characterized by elevated RBC mass (erythrocytosis) ± increased white cell and platelet production

Clinical Features

- symptoms are secondary to high red cell mass and hyperviscosity (see *Erythrocytosis, H6*)
- bleeding complications: epistaxis, gingival bleeding, ecchymoses, and GI bleeding
 - due to platelet abnormalities
- thrombotic complications: DVT, PE, thrombophlebitis, increased incidence of stroke, MI
 - due to increased blood viscosity, increased platelet number and/or activity
- erythromelalgia (burning pain in hands and feet and erythema of the skin)
 - associated with platelets >400,000/mm³
 - pathognomonic microvascular thrombotic complication in PV and ET
- pruritus, especially after warm bath or shower (40%)
 - due to cutaneous mast cell degranulation and histamine release
- epigastric distress, PUD
 - due to increased histamine from tissue basophils, alterations in gastric mucosal blood flow due to increased blood viscosity
- gout (hyperuricemia)
 - due to increased cell turnover
- characteristic physical findings
 - plethora (ruddy complexion) of face (70%), palms
 - splenomegaly (70%), hepatomegaly (40%)

Investigations

- see *Erythrocytosis, H6*
- must rule out secondary polycythemia
- diagnosis (WHO 2008) requires either both major criteria plus one minor criteria OR the first major criterion plus 2 minor criteria
 - Major Criteria
 1. hemoglobin >18.5 g/dL in men, 16.5 g/dL in women or other evidence of increased red cell volume
 2. presence of JAK2 V617F or other functionally similar mutation such as JAK2 exon 12 mutation
 - Minor Criteria
 1. bone marrow biopsy showing hypercellularity for age with trilineage growth (panmyelosis) with prominent erythroid, granulocytic, and megakaryocytic proliferation
 2. serum erythropoietin level below the reference range for normal
 3. endogenous erythroid colony formation *in vitro*

Treatment

- phlebotomy to keep hematocrit <45%
- hydroxyurea (prior thrombosis or symptoms, severe coronary artery disease, refractory to phlebotomy)
- low-dose Aspirin® (for antithrombotic prophylaxis, will also treat erythromelalgia)
- allopurinol: as needed
- antihistamines: as needed

Prognosis

- 10-20 yr survival with treatment
- complicated by thrombosis, hemorrhage, leukemia transformation (AML)



Erythromelalgia is a pathognomonic microvascular thrombotic complication in PV and ET



Efficacy and Safety of Low-dose Aspirin® in Polycythemia Vera

NEJM 2004;350:114-124

Study: Double-blind, placebo-controlled, RCT.

Participants: 518 patients with polycythemia vera (PV) with no clear indication for, or contraindication to, ASA therapy.

Intervention: Patients received either low-dose ASA 100 mg daily (n=253) or placebo (n=265) and were followed for up to 5 yr.

Primary Outcome: Cumulative rate of (I) nonfatal MI, nonfatal stroke, or death from cardiovascular causes and the cumulative rate of (II) the previous 3 plus PE and major venous thrombosis.

Results: Primary outcomes (I) and (II) were reduced with treatment compared to placebo (RR 0.41; p=0.09 and RR 0.4; p=0.03, respectively). There were no differences in overall or cardiovascular mortality and major bleeding episodes.

Conclusion: Low-dose ASA can safely prevent thrombotic complications in patients with PV.



Cardiovascular Events and Intensity of Treatment in Polycythemia Vera

NEJM 2013;368:22-33

Study: Prospective, RCT, mean follow-up of 28.9 mo. Blinding not described.

Population: 365 patients with JAK2-positive polycythemia vera being treated with phlebotomy, hydroxyurea, or both.

Intervention: Patients were randomized to a target hematocrit <45% (low-hematocrit group) or 45-50% (high-hematocrit group).

Outcome: Composite of time until death from cardiovascular causes of major thrombotic events.

Results: The hazard ratio (HR) for the primary outcome was 3.91 (95% CI 1.45-10.53, p=0.007), while the HR for the primary outcome plus superficial venous thrombosis was 2.69 (95% CI 1.19-6.12, p=0.02) for the high-hematocrit vs. low-hematocrit group.

Conclusions: The hematocrit target of <45% was associated with a lower incidence of CV death, major thrombotic events, and superficial venous thrombosis in patients with polycythemia vera.

Idiopathic Myelofibrosis

Definition

- excessive bone marrow fibrosis leading to marrow failure
- characterized by anemia, extramedullary hematopoiesis, leukoerythroblastosis, teardrop red cells in peripheral blood and hepatosplenomegaly

Epidemiology

- rare, median age at presentation is 65 yr

Pathophysiology

- abnormal myeloid precursor postulated to produce dysplastic megakaryocytes that secrete fibroblast growth factors
 - stimulates fibroblasts and stroma to deposit collagen in marrow
- increasing fibrosis causes early release of hematopoietic precursors leading to:
 - leukoerythroblastic blood film (primitive RBCs and WBCs present in blood)
 - migration of precursors to other sites: extramedullary hematopoiesis (leading to hepatosplenomegaly)
 - mutations in JAK2, c-mpl, and calreticulin define the clone

Clinical Features

- anemia (severe fatigue is most common presenting complaint, pallor on exam in >60%)
- weight loss, fever, night sweats → secondary to hypermetabolic state
- splenomegaly (90%) → secondary to extramedullary hematopoiesis; may cause early satiety
- hepatomegaly (70%) → may get portal HTN
- bone and joint pain → secondary to osteosclerosis, gout
- signs of extramedullary hematopoiesis (depends on organ involved)

Investigations

- CBC: anemia, variable platelets, variable WBC
- biochemistry: increased ALP (liver involvement, bone disease), increased LDH (2° to ineffective hematopoiesis), increased uric acid (increased cell turnover), increased B₁₂ (2° to increased neutrophil mass)
- blood film: leukoerythroblastosis with teardrop RBCs, nucleated RBCs, variable polychromasia, large platelets, and megakaryocyte fragments
- JAK2 PCR
- bone marrow aspirate: “dry tap” in as many as 50% of patients (no blood cells aspirated)
- bone marrow biopsy (essential for diagnosis): fibrosis, atypical megakaryocytic hyperplasia, thickening and distortion of the bony trabeculae (osteosclerosis)

Treatment

- allogeneic stem cell transplant is potentially curative
- JAK2 inhibitors
- symptomatic treatment
 - transfusion for anemia
 - erythropoietin: 30-50% of patients respond
 - androgens (e.g. danazol has shown transient response with response rates of <30%)
 - hydroxyurea for splenomegaly, thrombocytosis, leukocytosis, systemic symptoms
 - α-interferon (as second line therapy)
 - splenectomy (as third line therapy; associated with high mortality and morbidity)
 - radiation therapy for symptomatic extramedullary hematopoiesis, symptomatic splenomegaly
 - thalidomide, and etanercept may improve quality of life and spleen size, but not survival

Prognosis

- International Prognostic Scoring System (IPSS) for IMF uses 5 factors to determine mean survival
 - presence of constitutional symptoms; age >65; hemoglobin <10.0 g/dL; leukocyte count >25,000/mm³; circulating blast cells ≥1%
 - based on the calculated score, a patient's IMF is categorized as “low”, “intermediate 1”, “intermediate 2”, or “high” with a mean survival of 135, 95, 48, and 27 mo respectively
- risk of transformation to AML (8-10%)



Myelofibrosis can be either primary (idiopathic) or occur as a transformation of an antecedent PV or ET



A “leukoerythroblastic” blood film (RBC and granulocyte precursors) implies bone marrow infiltration with malignancy (e.g. leukemias, solid tumor metastases) or fibrosis (e.g. IMF)



IMF typically has a dry BM aspirate and teardrop RBCs (aspiration gives no blood cells)



A Double-Blind, Placebo-Controlled Trial of Ruxolitinib for Myelofibrosis
NEJM 2012;366:799-807

Study: Double-blinded RCT of 309 patients with myelofibrosis randomized to ruxolitinib or placebo. **Outcome:** Primary outcome was reduction in spleen volume of >35% at 24 wk. Secondary outcomes were durability of response, symptom burden, and overall survival.

Results: A greater proportion of patients on ruxolitinib had reduction in spleen volume >35% (41.9% vs. 0.7%) and this was sustained in 67% at 48 wk. Ruxolitinib also led to greater symptom improvement (45% vs. 5.3%) and less mortality (13 vs. 24). There was no difference in rate of discontinuation due to adverse events (11.0% vs. 10.6%) but anemia and thrombocytopenia were more common with ruxolitinib.

Conclusions: Ruxolitinib reduced spleen size, improved symptoms, and improved overall survival, compared with placebo.

Essential Thrombocythemia

Definition

- overproduction of platelets in the absence of recognizable stimulus
- must rule out secondary thrombocythemia

Epidemiology

- increases with age; F:M = 2:1, but F=M at older age

Diagnosis (2008 WHO Criteria) requires meeting all four criteria

- sustained platelet count $>450,000/\text{mm}^3$
- bone marrow biopsy specimen showing proliferation mainly of the megakaryocytic lineage with increased number of enlarged, mature megakaryocytes; no significant increase or left shift of neutrophil granulopoiesis or erythropoiesis
- not meeting WHO criteria for PV, primary myelofibrosis, *bcr-abl* CML, or myelodysplastic syndrome or other myeloid neoplasms
- demonstration of JAK2 V617F (or in its absence another clonal marker), no evidence for reactive thrombocytosis

Clinical Features

- often asymptomatic
- vasomotor symptoms (40%)
 - headache (common), dizziness, syncope
 - erythromelalgia (burning pain of hands and feet, dusky color, usually worse with heat, caused by platelet activation → microvascular thrombosis)
- thrombosis (arterial and venous)
- bleeding (often GI; associated with platelets $>1,000,000/\text{mm}^3$)
- constitutional symptoms, splenomegaly
- pregnancy complications; increased risk of spontaneous abortion
- risk of transformation to AML (0.6-5%), myelofibrosis

Investigations

- CBC: increased platelets; may have abnormal platelet aggregation studies
- JAK2 PCR assay
- bone marrow hypercellularity, megakaryocytic hyperplasia, giant megakaryocytes
- increased K^+ , increased PO_4^{3-} (2° to release of platelet cytoplasmic contents)
- diagnosis: exclude other myeloproliferative disorders and reactive thrombocytosis

Treatment

- low dose ASA if previous history of thrombotic event, ≥ 1 cardiovascular risk factors, older, or symptomatic
- cytoreductive therapy if thrombosis or thrombotic symptoms: hydroxyurea (HU) (1st line therapy), anagrelide, interferon- α , or ^{32}P (age >80 or lifespan <10 yr)
- splenectomy not recommended (increased risk of bleeding episodes, thrombosis)



Etiology of Secondary Thrombocythemia

- Infection
- Inflammation (IBD, arthritis)
- Malignancy
- Hemorrhage
- Iron deficiency
- Hemolytic anemia
- Post splenectomy
- Post chemotherapy



Anagrelide vs. Hydroxyurea for Essential Thrombocythemia: ANAHYDRET Study, A Randomized Controlled Trial

Blood 2013;121:1720-8

Study: Prospective, non-inferiority, RCT. Majority of patients followed beyond 1 yr.

Population: 259 previously untreated, high-risk patients with essential thrombosis as per the WHO guidelines.

Intervention: Patients were randomized to receive either non-immediate release formulation of anagrelide or hydroxyurea.

Outcome: Examined platelet counts, hemoglobin levels, leukocyte counts, and occurrence of ET-related events.

Results: The hazard ratio (HR) of developing thrombocythemia was 1.19 (95% CI 0.61-2.30). The HR for a reduction of hemoglobin was 1.03 (95% CI 0.57-1.81), and 0.92 (95% CI 0.57-1.46) for leukocytosis. There was no statistical difference in occurrence of major or minor arterial or venous thrombosis, severe or minor bleeding events, or rate of discontinuation between the two arms.

Conclusions: In patients with ET, anagrelide is non-inferior to hydroxyurea in the prevention of thrombotic complications.



There is an asymptomatic "benign" form of essential thrombocythemia with a stable or slowly rising platelet count. Treatment includes observation, ASA, sulfipyrazone, or dipyridamole



75% of ALL occurs in children <6 yr old; second peak at age 40

Lymphoid Malignancies

Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia

Definition

- malignant disease of the bone marrow in which early lymphoid precursors proliferate and replace the normal hematopoietic cells of the marrow
- WHO subdivides ALL into two types depending on cell of origin
 - B-cell: precursor B lymphoblastic leukemia
 - T-cell: precursor T lymphoblastic leukemia
- The French-American-British (FAB) classification (L1, L2, L3) is no longer encouraged, as morphology is not prognostic and inferior to immunophenotyping and cytogenetics

Clinical Features

- see *Acute Myeloid Leukemia*, H37 for full list of symptoms
- distinguish ALL from AML based on Table 32
- clinical symptoms usually secondary to:
 - bone marrow failure:** anemia, neutropenia (50% present with fever; also infections of oropharynx, lungs, perianal region), thrombocytopenia
 - organ infiltration:** tender bones, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, meningeal signs (headache, N/V, visual symptoms; especially in ALL relapse)

Investigations

- CBC: increased leukocytes $>10 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ (occurs in 50% of patients); neutropenia, anemia, or thrombocytopenia
- may have increased uric acid, K^+ , PO_4^{3-} , Ca^{2+} , LDH
- PT, aPTT, fibrinogen, D-dimers for DIC
- leukemic lymphoblasts lack specific morphological (no granules) or cytochemical features, therefore diagnosis depends on immunophenotyping
- cytogenetics: Philadelphia (Ph) chromosome in $\sim 25\%$ of adult ALL cases

- CXR: patients with ALL may have a mediastinal mass
- LP prior to systemic chemotherapy to assess for CNS involvement (ensure adequate platelet count and PT/PTT)

Treatment

- eliminate abnormal cloned cells
 1. **Induction:** to induce complete remission (undetectable leukemic blasts, restore normal hematopoiesis)
 2. **Consolidation and/or intensification chemotherapy**
 - consolidation: continuing same chemotherapy to eliminate subclinical leukemic cells
 - intensification: high doses of different (non-cross-reactive) chemotherapy drugs to eliminate cells with resistance to primary treatment
 3. **Maintenance chemotherapy:** low dose intermittent chemotherapy over prolonged period (2-3 yr) to prevent relapse
 4. **Prophylaxis: Methotrexate (intrathecal or systemic) or CNS radiation therapy**
- hematopoietic stem cell transplantation: potentially curative (due to pre-implant myeloablative chemoradiation and post-implant graft-versus-leukemia effect) but relapse rates and non-relapse mortality high

Prognosis

- depends on response to initial induction or if remission is achieved following relapse
- good prognostic factors: young, WBC $<30 \times 10^9/L$, T-cell phenotype, absence of Ph chromosome, early attainment of complete remission
- achievement of first remission: 60-90%
- childhood ALL: 80% long-term remission (>5 yr)
 - higher cure rates in children because of better chemotherapy tolerance, lower prevalence of *bcr-abl* fusion gene (associated with chemotherapeutic resistance)
- adult ALL: 30-40% 5 yr survival

Table 32. Differentiating AML From ALL

AML	ALL
Big people (adults)	Small people (kids) but the incidence increases with age over 20
Big blasts	Small blasts
Big mortality rate	Small mortality rate (kids)
Lots of cytoplasm	Less cytoplasm
Lots of nucleoli (3-5)	Few nucleoli (1-3)
Lots of granules and Auer rods	No granules
Maturation defect beyond myeloblast or promyelocyte	Maturation defect beyond lymphoblast



Treatment of ALL vs. AML

- No proven benefit of maintenance chemotherapy in AML
- No routine CNS prophylaxis in AML



To Differentiate AML From ALL:
Remember **Big** and **SmALL**
(see Table 32)

Lymphomas

Definition

- collection of lymphoid malignancies in which malignant lymphocytes accumulate at lymph nodes and lymphoid tissues
 - leading to lymphadenopathy, extranodal disease, and constitutional symptoms

Table 33. Ann Arbor System for Staging Lymphomas

Stage	Description
I	Involvement of a single lymph node region or extralymphatic organ or site
II	Involvement of two or more lymph node regions or an extralymphatic site and one or more lymph node regions on same side of diaphragm
III	Involvement of lymph node regions on both sides of the diaphragm; may or may not be accompanied by single extra lymphatic site or splenic involvement
IV	Diffuse involvement of one or more extralymphatic organs including bone marrow

- subtypes
 - A = absence of B-symptoms (see *Approach to Lymphadenopathy*, H12)
 - B = presence of B-symptoms



- Ann Arbor staging can be used for both Hodgkin and non-Hodgkin lymphoma, but grade/histology is more important for non-Hodgkin lymphoma because the outcome differs significantly depending on type of lymphoma
- Prognostic scores are different for indolent vs. aggressive lymphomas
- Highly aggressive lymphomas act like acute leukemias



Hodgkin is distinguished from non-Hodgkin lymphoma by the presence of Reed-Sternberg cells

Table 34. Chromosome Translocations

Translocation	Gene Activation	Associated Neoplasm
t(8;14)	c-myc activation	Burkitt's lymphoma
t(14;18)	bcl-2 activation	Follicular lymphoma
t(9;22)	Philadelphia chromosome (<i>bcr-abl</i> hybrid)	CML, ALL in adults (25% of the time)
t(11;14)	Overexpression of cyclin D1 protein	Mantle cell lymphoma



**American Society of Hematology
Choosing Wisely Recommendation**
Limit surveillance CT scans in asymptomatic patients after curative-intent treatment for aggressive lymphoma



Hodgkin lymphoma classically presents as a painless, non-tender, firm, rubbery enlargement of superficial lymph nodes, most often in the cervical region



Common Chemotherapeutic Regimens

CHOP: cyclophosphamide, hydroxydoxorubicin (Adriamycin®), vincristine (Oncovin®), prednisone

VAD: vincristine, adriamycin, dexamethasone

ABVD: adriamycin, bleomycin, vinblastine, dacarbazine

BEACOPP: bleomycin, etoposide, adriamycin, cyclophosphamide, vincristine, procarbazine, and prednisone

Hodgkin Lymphoma

Definition

- malignant proliferation of lymphoid cells with Reed-Sternberg cells (thought to arise from germinal center B-cells)

Epidemiology

- bimodal distribution with peaks at 20 yr and >50 yr
- association with Epstein-Barr virus in up to 50% of cases, causal role not determined

Clinical Features

- asymptomatic lymphadenopathy (70%)
 - non-tender, rubbery consistency
 - cervical/supraclavicular (60-80%), axillary (10-20%), inguinal (6-12%)
- splenomegaly (50%) ± hepatomegaly
- mediastinal mass
 - found on routine CXR, may be symptomatic (cough)
 - rarely may present with SVC syndrome, pleural effusion
- systemic symptoms
 - B symptoms (especially in widespread disease; fever in 30%), pruritus
- non-specific/paraneoplastic
 - alcohol-induced pain in nodes, nephrotic syndrome
- starts at a single site in lymphatic system (node), spreads first to adjacent nodes
 - disease progresses in contiguity with lymphatic system

Investigations

- CBC
 - anemia (chronic disease, rarely hemolytic), eosinophilia, leukocytosis, platelets normal or increased early, decreased in advanced disease
- biochemistry
 - HIV serology
 - LFTs (liver involvement)
 - RFTs (prior to initiating chemotherapy)
 - ALP, Ca²⁺ (bone involvement)
 - ESR, LDH (monitor disease progression)
- imaging
 - CXR, CT chest (lymph nodes, mediastinal mass), CT abdomen/pelvis (liver or spleen involvement), gallium scan (assess treatment response), PET scans
 - cardiac function assessment (MUGA scan or echocardiography): for patients at high risk of pre-treatment cardiac disease (age >60, history of HTN, CHF, PUD, CAD, MI, CVA), treatment can be cardiotoxic
 - PFTs: if history of lung disease (COPD, smoking, previous radiation to lung)
- excisional lymph node biopsy confirms diagnosis
- bone marrow biopsy to assess marrow infiltration (only necessary if B-symptoms, stage III or IV, bulky disease or cytopenia)

Treatment

- stage I-II: chemotherapy (ABVD) followed by involved field radiotherapy (XRT)
- stage III-IV: chemotherapy (ABVD) with XRT for bulky disease
- relapse, resistant to therapy: high dose chemotherapy, bone marrow transplant
 - new imaging modalities increasingly used including PET scans used to follow response to treatment

Complications of Treatment

- cardiac disease: secondary to XRT, adriamycin is also cardiotoxic
- pulmonary disease: secondary to bleomycin (interstitial pneumonitis)
- infertility: recommend sperm banking
- secondary malignancy in irradiated field
 - <2% risk of MDS, AML (secondary to treatment, usually within 8 yr)
 - solid tumors of lung, breast; >8 yr after treatment
 - non-Hodgkin lymphoma
- hypothyroidism: post XRT

Prognosis

- Hasenclever adverse prognostic factors
 1. serum albumin <40 g/L (4 g/dL)
 2. hemoglobin <105 g/L (10.5 g/dL)
 3. male
 4. stage IV disease
 5. age \geq 45 yr
 6. leukocytosis (WBC >1,500/mm³)
 7. lymphocytopenia (lymphocytes <60/mm³ or <8% of WBC count or both)
- prognostic score
 - each additional adverse prognostic factor decreases freedom from progression at 5 yr (FFP)



International Prognostic Factors Project 1998

Prognostic Factors	FFP
0	84%
1	77%
2	67%
3	60%
4	51%
5-7	42%

FFP = freedom from progression at 5 yr

Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma

Definition

- malignant proliferation of lymphoid cells of progenitor or mature B- or T-cells

Classification

- multiple classification systems exist at present and may be used at different centers
- can originate from both B- (85%) and T- or NK- (15%) cells
 - B-cell NHL: e.g. diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, follicular lymphoma, Burkitt's lymphoma, mantle cell lymphoma
 - T-cell NHL: e.g. mycosis fungoides, anaplastic large cell lymphoma
- WHO/REAL classification system: 3 categories of NHLs based on natural history
 - **indolent** (35-40% of NHL): e.g. follicular lymphoma, small lymphocytic lymphoma/CLL
 - **aggressive** (~50% of NHL): e.g. diffuse large B-cell lymphoma
 - ♦ Note: mantle cell lymphoma (7% of NHL) may have features of aggressive or indolent lymphoma
 - **highly aggressive** (~5% of NHL): e.g. Burkitt's lymphoma

Clinical Features

- painless superficial lymphadenopathy, usually >1 lymph node region
- usually presents as widespread disease (exception is aggressive lymphoma)
- constitutional symptoms not as common as in Hodgkin lymphoma
- cytopenia: anemia \pm neutropenia \pm thrombocytopenia can occur when bone marrow is involved
- abdominal signs
 - hepatosplenomegaly
 - retroperitoneal and mesenteric involvement (second most common site of involvement)
- oropharyngeal involvement in 5-10% with sore throat and obstructive apnea
- extranodal involvement: most commonly GI tract; also testes, bone, kidney
- CNS involvement in 1% (often with HIV)

Investigations

- CBC
 - normocytic normochromic anemia
 - autoimmune hemolytic anemia
 - advanced disease: thrombocytopenia, neutropenia, and leukoerythroblastic anemia
- peripheral blood film may show lymphoma cells
- flow cytometry of peripheral blood is valuable for low-grade NHL
- biochemistry
 - increase in uric acid
 - abnormal LFTs in liver metastases
 - increased LDH (rapidly progressing disease, poor prognostic factor)
- CXR, CT neck, abdomen, pelvis for staging
- PET is useful for monitoring response to treatment and evaluation of residual tumor following therapy in aggressive histological disease
- diagnosed by
 - lymph node biopsy: excisional biopsy preferred, FNA unreliable
 - bone marrow biopsy: not optimal for diagnosis as BM may not be involved

Treatment

- localized disease (e.g. GI, brain, bone, head and neck)
 - radiotherapy to primary site and adjacent nodal areas
 - adjuvant chemotherapy
 - surgery: splenic marginal zone lymphoma



NHL: Associated Conditions

- Immunodeficiency (e.g. HIV)
- Autoimmune diseases (e.g. SLE)
- Infections (e.g. EBV)



CHOP-Like Chemotherapy With or Without Rituximab in Young Patients with Good-Prognosis Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma (MInT)

Lancet Oncol 2011;12:1013-1022

Study: International RCT with a median follow-up of 72 mo.

Participants: 824 patients with good-prognosis diffuse large B-cell lymphoma who had \leq 1 risk factor, stage II-IV disease, or stage I disease with bulk (age 18-60 yr).

Intervention: Patients received either 6 cycles of CHOP-like chemotherapy and rituximab (CCR; n=413) or 6 cycles of CHOP-like chemotherapy alone (CLC; n=411). Bulky and extranodal sites received additional radiotherapy.

Primary Outcome: Event-free survival.

Results: Patients receiving CCR had an increased 6 yr event-free survival compared with the CLC group (74.3% vs. 55.8%; $p<0.0001$). Event-free survival was affected by treatment group, presence of bulky disease, and age-adjusted International Prognostic Index (IPI). Overall survival was affected by treatment group and presence of bulky disease. Within the CCR group, a favorable subgroup (IPI=0, no bulk) and less favorable subgroup (IPI=1 or bulk, or both) could be defined; event-free survival was 84.3% vs. 71.0%.

Conclusion: Rituximab added to six cycles of CHOP is an effective treatment for young patients with good-prognosis diffuse large B-cell lymphoma. The definition of two prognostic subgroups allows a more refined therapeutic approach to these patients than does assessment by IPI alone.

- **indolent lymphoma:** goal of treatment is symptom management
 - watchful waiting
 - radiation therapy for localized disease
 - bendamustine plus rituximab, an anti-CD20 antibody, is superior to CHOP + rituximab (CHOP-R) for advanced stage disease (StLL trial)
- **aggressive lymphoma:** goal of treatment is curative
 - combination chemotherapy: CHOP is mainstay, plus rituximab if B-cell lymphoma; different regimens for mantle cell lymphoma
 - radiation for localized/bulky disease
 - CNS prophylaxis with high-dose methotrexate if certain sites involved (testicular, nasopharyngeal)
 - relapse, resistant to therapy: high dose chemotherapy, BMT
- **highly aggressive lymphoma**
 - Burkitt lymphoma: short bursts of intensive chemotherapy
 - “CODOX-M” chemotherapy regimen also often used ± IVAC
 - CNS prophylaxis and tumor lysis syndrome prophylaxis

Complications

- hypersplenism
- infection
- autoimmune hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenia
- vascular obstruction (from enlarged nodes)
- tumor lysis syndrome (particularly in very aggressive lymphoma) – see H52

Prognosis

- follicular lymphoma: Follicular Lymphoma International Prognostic Index is used (5 adverse prognostic factors): age >60; number of nodal areas >4; elevated LDH; Ann Arbor stage III-IV; hemoglobin <120 g/L
 - based on calculated risk, mean 5 yr survival ranges from 53-91%
 - rarely curative, typically relapsing and remitting course with risk of transformation to aggressive lymphoma such as diffuse large B-cell lymphoma
- diffuse large B-cell lymphoma: The International Prognostic Factor Index is used (5 adverse prognostic factors): age >60; Ann Arbor stage (III-IV); performance status (ECOG/Zubrand 2-4); elevated LDH; >1 extranodal site
 - based on calculated risk, mean 5 yr survival ranges from 26-73%
 - has ~40% rate of cure

Table 35. Characteristics of Select Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas

	Follicular Lymphoma	Diffuse Large B-Cell Lymphoma (DLBCL)	Burkitt Lymphoma	Mantle Cell Lymphoma
Percentage of NHLs	22-30%	33%	<1% adult NHLs 30% childhood NHLs	6%
Genetic Mutation	Bcl-2 activation	Bcl-2, Bcl-6, MYC rearrangements	c-myc activation	Overexpression of cyclin D1 (Bcl-1 activation)
Classification	Indolent	Aggressive (high-grade)	Very aggressive	Indolent
Risk Factors	Middle-age – elderly	Previous CLL (Richter's transformation: 5% CLL patients progress to DLBCL)	1. Endemic: African origin, EBV-associated 2. Sporadic: no EBV 3. HIV-related: AIDS-defining illness	Male (M:F = 4:1)
Clinical Features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Widespread painless LAD* ± bone marrow involvement • Frequent transformation to aggressive lymphoma • Very responsive to chemoradiation treatment 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rapidly progressive LAD and extranodal infiltration • 50% present at stage I/II, 50% widely disseminated 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Endemic form: massive jaw LAD • “Starry-sky” histology • High risk of tumor lysis syndrome upon treatment 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Often presents Stage IV with palpable LAD • Involvement of GI tract (lymphomatosis polyposis), Waldeyer's Ring • Extremely aggressive, 5 yr survival 25%

*LAD = lymphadenopathy

Malignant Clonal Proliferations of Mature B-Cells

Table 36. Characteristics of B-Cell Malignant Proliferation

	CLL	Macroglobulinemia	Myeloma
Cell Type	Lymphocyte	Plasmacytoid	Plasma cell
Protein	IgM if present	IgM	IgG, A, light chain (rarely M, D, or E)
Lymph Nodes	Very common	Common	Rare
Hepatosplenomegaly	Common	Common	Rare
Bone Lesions	Rare	Rare	Common
Hypercalcemia	Rare	Rare	Common
Renal Failure	Rare	Rare	Common
Immunoglobulin Complications	Common	Rare	Rare



Rouleaux formation on peripheral blood smear, if not artifact, denotes hyperglobulinemia (but not necessarily monoclonality)



Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia

Definition

- indolent disease characterized by clonal malignancy of mature B-cells

Epidemiology

- most common leukemia in Western world
- mainly older patients; median age 65 yr
- M>F

Pathophysiology

- accumulation of neoplastic lymphocytes in blood, bone marrow, lymph nodes, and spleen

Clinical Features

- 25% asymptomatic (incidental finding)
- 5-10% present with B-symptoms (≥ 1 of: unintentional weight loss $\geq 10\%$ of body weight within previous 6 mo, temperature $>38^\circ\text{C}$ or night sweats for ≥ 2 wk without evidence of infection, extreme fatigue)
- lymphadenopathy (50-90%), splenomegaly (25-55%), hepatomegaly (15-25%)
- immune dysregulation: autoimmune hemolytic anemia (Coombs positive), ITP, hypogammaglobulinemia \pm neutropenia
- bone marrow failure: late, secondary to marrow involvement by CLL cells

Investigations

- CBC: clonal population of CLL lymphocytes $>5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$
- peripheral blood film
 - lymphocytes are small and mature
 - smudge cells
- flow cytometry (CD5, CD20, CD23, etc.)
- cytogenetics: FISH (dictates response therapy and prognosis)
- bone marrow aspirate
 - lymphocytes $>30\%$ of all nucleated cells
 - infiltration of marrow by lymphocytes in 4 patterns: nodular (10%), interstitial (30%), diffuse (35%, worse prognosis), or mixed (25%)



Smudge cells are artifacts of damaged lymphocytes from slide preparation

Natural History and Treatment

- natural history: indolent but incurable, with slow progression; thus select gentlest treatment that will control symptoms
 - observation if early, stable, asymptomatic
 - intermittent chlorambucil or fludarabine chemotherapy combined with rituximab, chlorambucil in the elderly
 - corticosteroids, IVIg: especially for autoimmune phenomena
 - radiotherapy
- small minority present with aggressive disease; usually associated with chromosomal abnormalities (e.g. p53 deletion)
- 9 yr median survival, but varies greatly

- prognosis predicted by Rai staging
 - low risk: lymphocytosis in blood and bone marrow only
 - intermediate risk: lymphocytosis with enlarged nodes in any site or splenomegaly, hepatomegaly
 - high risk: lymphocytosis with disease-related non-immune-mediated anemia (<11.0 g/dL) or thrombocytopenia ($<100,000/\text{mm}^3$)
- molecular therapies
 - Idelalisib – PI3K inhibitor (not FDA-approved)
 - Ibrutinib – BTK (Bruton's tyrosine kinase) inhibitor (FDA-approved in relapsed setting)

Complications

- bone marrow failure
- immune complications: AIHA, ITP, immune deficiency (hypogammaglobulinemia, impaired T-cell function)
- polyclonal or monoclonal gammopathy (often IgM)
- hyperuricemia with treatment
- 5% undergo Richter's transformation: aggressive transformation to diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (see Table 35)

Multiple Myeloma

Definition

- neoplastic clonal proliferation of plasma cells producing a monoclonal immunoglobulin resulting in end organ dysfunction
- usually single clone of plasma cells, although biclonal myeloma also occurs; rarely non-secretory

Epidemiology

- incidence 3 per 100,000, most common plasma cell malignancy
- increased frequency with age; median age of diagnosis is 68 yr; M>F

Pathophysiology

- malignant plasma cells secrete monoclonal antibody
 - 95% produce M protein (monoclonal Ig = identical heavy chain + identical light chain, or light chains only)
 - ♦ IgG 50%, IgA 20%, IgD 2%, IgM 0.5%
 - ♦ 15-20% produce free light chains or light chains alone found in either:
 - serum as an increase in the quantity of either kappa or lambda light chain (with an abnormal kappa:lambda ratio)
 - urine has Bence-Jones protein
 - <5% are non-secretory

Clinical Features and Complications

- bone disease: pain (usually back), bony tenderness, pathologic fractures
 - lytic lesions are classical (skull, spine, proximal long bones, ribs)
 - increased bone resorption secondary to osteoclast activating factors such as PTHrP
- anemia: weakness, fatigue, pallor
 - secondary to bone marrow suppression
- weight loss
- infections
 - usually *S. pneumoniae* and Gram-negatives
 - secondary to suppression of normal plasma cell function
- hypercalcemia: N/V, confusion, constipation, polyuria, polydipsia
 - secondary to increased bone turnover
- renal disease/renal failure
 - most frequently causes cast nephropathy (see [Nephrology](#), NP30)
- bleeding
 - secondary to thrombocytopenia, may see petechiae, purpura
 - can also be caused by acquired von Willebrand disease
- extramedullary plasmacytoma
 - soft tissue mass composed of monoclonal plasma cells, purplish color
- hyperviscosity: may manifest as headaches, stroke, angina, MI
 - secondary to increased viscosity caused by M protein
- amyloidosis
 - accumulation of insoluble fibrillar protein (Ig light chain) in tissues; can cause infiltration of any organ system: cardiac infiltration – diastolic dysfunction, cardiac arrhythmias, syncope, sudden death; GI involvement – malabsorption, beefy large or laterally scalloped tongue; neurologic involvement – orthostatic hypotension, carpal tunnel syndrome
 - may cause Factor X deficiency if fibrils bind Factor X → bleeding (raccoon eyes)



Multiple Myeloma

CRAB

Increased Calcium

Renal failure

Anemia

Bony lesions (lytic lesions or osteoporosis felt to be caused by myeloma)



Routine urinalysis will not detect light chains as dipstick detects albumin. Need sulfosalicylic acid or 24 h urine protein for immunofixation or electrophoresis



Amyloid

The general term for a variety of proteinaceous materials that have a similar structural organization and are abnormally deposited in tissues

Found in a variety of clinical disorders and can cause systemic (e.g. MM [light chains]) or localized amyloidosis (e.g. Alzheimer disease [AB amyloid])

- neurologic disease: muscle weakness, pain, paresthesias
 - radiculopathy caused by vertebral fracture, extramedullary plasmacytoma
 - spinal cord compression (10-20% of patients) is a medical emergency

Investigations

- CBC
 - normocytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, leukopenia
 - rouleaux formation on peripheral film
- biochemistry
 - increased Ca^{2+} , increased ESR, decreased anion gap, increased Cr, albumin, β_2 -microglobulin (as part of staging), proteinuria (24 h urine collection)
- monoclonal proteins
 - serum protein electrophoresis (SPEP): demonstrates monoclonal protein spike in serum in 80% (i.e. M protein)
 - urine protein electrophoresis (UPEP): demonstrates light chains in urine = Bence-Jones protein (15% secrete only light chains)
 - immunofixation: demonstrates M protein and identifies Ig type; also identifies light chains
 - serum free light chain quantification: kappa and lambda light chains, calculated ratio
- bone marrow aspirate and biopsy
 - often focal abnormality, greater than 10% plasma cells, abnormal morphology, clonal plasma cells; send for FISH or cytogenetics (prognostic implications)
- skeletal series (x-rays), MRI if symptoms of cord compression
 - presence of lytic lesions and areas at risk of pathologic fracture
 - bone scans are not useful since they detect osteoblast activity
- β_2 -microglobulin, LDH, and CRP are poor prognosticators



Light Chain Disease

15% of MM produce only light chains. Renal failure is a major problem. Kappa > lambda light chain has better prognosis

Diagnosis

- International Myeloma Working Group Criteria
 1. serum or urinary monoclonal protein
 2. presence of clonal plasma cells in bone marrow or a plasmacytoma
 3. presence of end-organ damage related to plasma cell dyscrasia, such as
 - ♦ increased serum Ca^{2+}
 - ♦ lytic bone lesions or osteoporosis
 - ♦ anemia
 - ♦ renal failure

Treatment

- treatment is non-curative
- treatment goals
 - improvement in quality of life (improve anemia, reverse renal failure, bony pain)
 - prevention of progression and complications
 - increase overall survival
- autologous stem cell transplant as consolidation therapy
 - usually preceded by 4-6 mo of cytoreductive therapy: steroid based with novel agents
 - (i.e. immunomodulatory drugs or proteasome inhibitors)
- chemotherapy if >65 yr old or transplant-ineligible
 - melphalan, prednisone, and novel agent (i.e. bortezomib)
- dexamethasone and bortezomib if ARF; bortezomib \pm dexamethasone in light chain amyloidosis
- supportive management
 - bisphosphonates for those with osteopenia or lytic bone lesions (requires renal dosing)
 - local XRT for bone pain, spinal cord compression
 - kyphoplasty for vertebral fractures to improve pain relief and regain height
 - treat complications: hydration for hypercalcemia and renal failure, bisphosphonates for severe hypercalcemia, prophylactic antibiotics, erythropoietin for anemia, DVT prophylaxis
- all patients will relapse; choice of retreatment regimen depends on duration of remission, organ involvement, patient's comorbidities, and preferences

Prognosis

- International Staging System (β_2 -microglobulin and albumin) used to stage and estimate prognosis
 - cytogenetic profile (i.e. p53 mutation associated with poor survival and resistance to chemotherapy)
- median survival based on stage, usually 16-70 mo

Monoclonal Gammopathy of Unknown Significance

Definition

- presence of M protein in serum in absence of any clinical or laboratory evidence of a plasma cell dyscrasia or lymphoproliferative disorders
 - incidence: 0.15% in general population, 5% of people >70 yr of age
 - asymptomatic

Diagnosis

- presence of a serum monoclonal protein (M protein) at a concentration <3.0 g/dL
- <10% plasma cells in bone marrow
- absence of hyperCalcemia, Renal insufficiency, Anemia, Bony disease related to the plasma cell proliferative process (absence of "CRAB")
- 0.3-1% of patients develop a hematologic malignancy each year
 - patients with M protein peak ≥ 1.5 g/dL or patients with IgA or IgM MGUS are at higher risk of malignant transformation
 - patients with abnormal serum free light chains ratio are at increased risk of malignant transformation
- monitor with annual history, physical, CBC, Cr, calcium, albumin, serum protein electrophoresis (considered pre-malignant)



Serum Free Light Chain Ratio is an Independent Risk Factor for Progression in MGUS
Blood 2005;106:812-817

Purpose: To determine whether the presence of monoclonal free kappa or lambda immunoglobulin light chains in MGUS increases the risk of progression to malignancy.

Methods: Retrospective study with median follow-up of 15 yr. Baseline serum samples obtained from 1,383 MGUS patients seen at the Mayo clinic between 1960-1994. 1,148 baseline samples were obtained within 30 d of diagnosis.

Results: Malignant progression had occurred in 87 (7.6%) patients. In 379 (33%) patients, an abnormal serum free light chain (FLC) ratio was detected. There was a significantly higher risk of progression in patients with an abnormal FLC ratio relative to patients with a normal ratio (hazard ratio, 3.5; 95% CI 2.3-5.5; $p < 0.001$). This finding was independent of the size and type of the serum monoclonal (M) protein. In high-risk MGUS patients (abnormal serum FLC ratio, non-IgG MGUS, high serum M protein level [≥ 1.5 gm/dL]), the risk of progression at 20 yr was 58% compared to 37% in high-intermediate-risk MGUS (two risk factors), 21% low-intermediate risk (with one risk factor), and 5% low-risk (no risk factors).

Conclusions: The presence of an abnormal FLC ratio is a clinically and statistically significant predictor of progression in MGUS. The low-risk subset of patients with MGUS accounts for 40% of all MGUS patients and have a small lifetime risk of progression, thus less follow-up can be justified.



Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia accounts for 85% of all cases of hyperviscosity syndrome

Lymphoplasmacytic Lymphoma (Waldenstrom's Macroglobulinemia)

Definition

- proliferation of lymphoplasmacytoid cells
 - presence of monoclonal IgM paraprotein

Clinical Features

- chronic disorder of elderly patients; median age 64 yr
- symptoms: weakness, fatigue, bleeding (oronasal), weight loss, recurrent infections, dyspnea, CHF (triad of anemia, hyperviscosity, plasma volume expansion), neurological symptoms, peripheral neuropathy, cerebral dysfunction
- signs: pallor, splenomegaly, hepatomegaly, lymphadenopathy, retinal lesions
- key complication to avoid: hyperviscosity syndrome
 - because IgM (unlike IgG) confined largely to intravascular space

Investigations and Diagnosis

- bone marrow shows plasmacytoid lymphocytes
- bone lesions usually not present
- blood work rarely see hypercalcemia
- cold hemagglutinin disease possible: Raynaud's phenomenon, hemolytic anemia precipitated by cold weather
- normocytic anemia, rouleaux, high ESR if hyperviscosity not present

Management

- R-CVP, alkylating agents (chlorambucil), nucleoside analogues (fludarabine), thalidomide, rituximab, or combination therapy
- corticosteroids
- plasmapheresis for hyperviscosity: acute reduction in serum IgM

Complications of Hematologic Malignancies

Hyperviscosity Syndrome

Definition

- refers to clinical sequelae of increased blood viscosity (when relative serum viscosity >5-6 units), resulting from increased circulating serum Igs or from increased cellular blood components in hyperproliferative disorders (e.g. multiple myeloma, leukemia, PV)
- Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia accounts for 85% of cases

Clinical Features

- hypervolemia causing: CHF, headache, lethargy, dilutional anemia
- CNS symptoms due to decreased cerebral blood flow: headache, vertigo, ataxia, stroke
- retina shows venous engorgement and hemorrhages
- bleeding diathesis
 - due to impaired platelet function, absorption of soluble coagulation factors (e.g. nasal bleeding, oozing gums)
- ESR usually very low

Treatment

- plasmapheresis, chemotherapy

Tumor Lysis Syndrome

Definition

- group of metabolic complications that result from spontaneous or treatment-related breakdown of cancer cells
- more common in diseases with large tumor burden and high proliferative rate (high grade lymphoma, leukemia)

Clinical Features

- metabolic abnormalities
 - cells lyse, releasing K^+ , uric acid, PO_4^{3-} (increased levels)
 - PO_4^{3-} binds Ca^{2+} (decreased Ca^{2+})
- complications
 - lethal cardiac arrhythmia (increased K^+)
 - acute renal failure (urate nephropathy, see [Nephrology, NP30](#))

**Treatment**

- prevention
 - aggressive IV hydration
 - alkalization of the urine
 - allopurinol or rasburicase
 - correction of pre-existing metabolic abnormalities
- dialysis

Blood Products and Transfusions

Blood Products

- RBCs, platelets and coagulation factors (frozen plasma [FP], cryoprecipitate, factor concentrates) are available for transfusion
- donated blood (1 U = 450-500 mL) is fractionated into these various components
 - centrifugation separates whole blood into RBCs and platelet-rich plasma
 - platelet-rich plasma is further fractionated into platelets and plasma
 - ♦ need to pool together multiple units to obtain therapeutic amounts
 - ♦ FP (previously known as FFP) is plasma frozen within 24 h of collection
 - ♦ cryoprecipitate is the high MW precipitate generated when FP is thawed at low temperatures

Specialized Products

- irradiated blood products
 - prevent proliferation of donor T-cells in potential or actual BMT recipients
 - used for immunocompromised patients or for patients on purine analogue chemotherapy, first-degree relatives, HLA-matched products and intrauterine transfusions, Hodgkin lymphoma
- CMV-negative blood products
 - potential transplant recipients
 - neonates
 - AIDS patients
 - seronegative pregnant women

**Blood Groups**

Group	Antigen (on RBC)	Antibody (in serum)
O	H	Anti-A, anti-B
A	A	Anti-B
B	B	Anti-A
AB	A and B	Nil

Red Blood Cells

Packed Red Blood Cells

- stored at 4°C
- transfuse within 42 d of collection, otherwise cell lysis may result in hyperkalemia
- infuse each unit over 2 h, max of 4 h

Indications for packed RBC Transfusion

- Hb <7.0 g/dL; this may change as per patient's tolerance or symptoms
 - maintain Hb between 7.0 and 10.0 g/dL during active bleeds
- consider maintaining a higher Hb for patients with:
 - CAD/unstable coronary syndromes
 - uncontrolled, unpredictable bleeding
 - impaired pulmonary function
 - increased O₂ consumption

Selection of Red Cells for Transfusion

- when a need for RBC transfusion is anticipated, the following should be ordered
 - group and screen: determines the blood group and Rh status of the recipient as well as the presence of autoantibodies vs. major/minor blood group antigens in the patient's serum
 - crossmatch: involves mixing the recipient's blood with potential donor blood and looking for agglutination (takes 30-45 min)
- when blood is required, several options are available
 - 1st line: fully crossmatched blood, electronic crossmatch is becoming more widely used (not always available in emergency situations)
 - 2nd line: donor blood of the same group and Rh status as the recipient
 - 3rd line: O- blood for females of reproductive age; O+ blood for all others



1 unit of pRBC will increase Hb by approximately 10 g/L or increase Hct by 4%



American Society of Hematology Choosing Wisely Recommendation

Do not transfuse more than the minimum number of RBC units necessary to relieve symptoms of anemia or to return the patient to a safe hemoglobin range (70-80 g/L) in stable noncardiac patients



Transfusion Requirements in Critical Care (TRICC)

NEJM 1999;340:409-417

Study: Multicenter, RCT.

Participants: 838 critically ill patients with euvolemia after initial treatment and hemoglobin less than 9 g/dL within 72 h of ICU admission.
Intervention: Patients receiving a transfusion followed either (1) a restrictive strategy (RS; n=418) in which red cells were transfused if hemoglobin was less than 7.0 g/dL and then maintained at 7-9 g/dL or (2) a liberal strategy (LS; n=420) in which transfusions occurred when the hemoglobin was less than 10.0 g/dL and then maintained at 10-12 g/dL.

Primary Outcome: Mortality at 30 d and severity of organ dysfunction.

Results: Mortality rates at 30 d were similar between groups. However, mortality rates were significantly lower with the RS among less acutely ill patients (8.7% and RS group and 16.1% in LS group; p=0.03) and among those less than 55 yr of age (5.7% RS and 13% LS; p=0.02), but did not differ in a subgroup with clinically significant cardiac disease.

Conclusion: A RS of red cell transfusion is at least as effective as, and possibly superior to, a LS transfusion in critically ill patients.



Liberal or Restrictive Transfusion in High-Risk Patients After Hip Surgery (FOCUS)

NEJM 2011;365:2453-2462

Study: Multicenter RCT.

Participants: 2,016 patients aged >50 yr with a history of or risk factors for cardiovascular disease and hemoglobin (Hb) level below 10 g/dL after hip-fracture surgery.

Intervention: Patients were randomly assigned to a liberal transfusion strategy (a Hb threshold of 10 g/dL) or a restrictive transfusion strategy (anemia symptoms or at physician discretion for a Hb level less than 8 g/dL).

Primary Outcome: Mortality or inability to walk across a room without human assistance on a 60 day follow-up.

Results: Primary outcome rates were 35.2% in the liberal transfusion strategy group and 34.7% in the restrictive transfusion strategy group. Rates of complications were similar in the two groups.

Conclusion: A liberal transfusion strategy did not reduce mortality rates or the inability to walk independently on 60 day follow-up compared to a restrictive transfusion strategy in elderly patients with high cardiovascular risk factors after hip surgery.

Platelets

Table 37. Platelet Products

Product	Indication
Random donor (pooled)	Thrombocytopenia with bleeding
Single donor platelets	Potential BMT recipients
HLA matched platelets	Refractory to pooled or single donor platelets, presence of HLA antibodies

- stored at 20-24°C
- random donor platelets are transfused from a pool of 4 units; this should increase the platelet count by $\geq 15,000/\text{mm}^3$
- single donor platelets (transfused as single units) should increase the platelet count by $40-60,000/\text{mm}^3$
- if an increase in the platelet count is not seen post-transfusion: autoantibodies (i.e. ITP), alloantibodies, consumption (bleeding, sepsis), or hypersplenism may be present

Table 38. Indications for Platelet Transfusion

Plt (/mm ³)	Indications
<10,000	Non-immune thrombocytopenia
<20,000	Procedures not associated with significant blood loss
<50,000	Procedures associated with blood loss or major surgery (>500 mL EBL)
<100,000	Pre-neurosurgery or head trauma
Any	Platelet dysfunction (or antiplatelet agents) and marked bleeding

Relative Contraindications of Platelet Transfusion

- TTP, HIT, post-transfusion purpura, HELLP

Coagulation Factors

Table 39. Coagulation Factor Products

Product	Indication
Frozen plasma (FP)	Depletion of multiple coagulation factors (e.g. sepsis, DIC, dilution, TTP/HUS, liver disease), emergency reversal of life-threatening bleeding secondary to warfarin overdose
Cryoprecipitate (enriched fibrinogen, vWF, VIII, XIII)	Factor VIII deficiency von Willebrand disease Hypofibrinogenemia
Humate P	von Willebrand disease
Factor VIII concentrate	Factor VIII deficiency (Hemophilia A)
Factor IX concentrate	Factor IX deficiency (Hemophilia B)
Recombinant VIIa	Factor VII deficiency with bleeding, Hemophilia A or B with inhibitors
Prothrombin complex (Octaplex®)	Reversal of warfarin therapy or vitamin K deficiency in bleeding patient or in patient requiring urgent (<6 h) surgical procedure

Acute Blood Transfusion Reactions

IMMUNE

Acute Hemolytic Transfusion Reactions

- ABO incompatibility resulting in intravascular hemolysis secondary to complement activation, occurs immediately after transfusion
- most commonly due to incorrect patient identification
- risk per unit of blood is <1 in 40,000
- presentation: fever, chills, hypotension, back or flank pain, dyspnea, hemoglobinuria
- acute renal failure (<24 h) and DIC
- treatment
 - stop transfusion
 - notify blood bank and check for clerical error
 - maintain BP with vigorous IV fluids ± inotropes
 - maintain urine output with diuretics, crystalloids, dopamine

Febrile Nonhemolytic Transfusion Reactions

- due to alloantibodies to WBC, platelets or other donor plasma antigens and release of cytokines from blood product cells
- occurs within 0-6 h of transfusion
- risk per unit of blood is 1 in 100 (minor), 1 in 10,000 to 40,000 (severe)
- presents with fever ± rigors, facial flushing, headache, myalgia, hypotension
- treatment
 - rule out hemolytic reaction or infection
 - if temperature <38°C, continue with transfusion but decrease rate and give antipyretics
 - if temperature >38°C, stop transfusion, give antipyretics and anti-histamine

Allergic Nonhemolytic Transfusion Reactions

- alloantibodies (IgE) to proteins in donor plasma result in mast cell activation and release of histamine
- occurs mainly in those with history of multiple transfusions or multiparous women
- risk per unit of blood is 1 in 100
- presents mainly as urticaria and occasionally with fever
- can present as anaphylactoid reaction with bronchospasm, laryngeal edema, and hypotension, but this occurs mainly in IgA deficient patients that have anti-IgA antibodies
- treatment
 - mild: slow transfusion rate and give diphenhydramine
 - moderate to severe: stop transfusion, give IV diphenhydramine, steroids, epinephrine, IV fluids, and bronchodilators

Transfusion-Related Acute Lung Injury

- new-onset acute lung injury that occurs during transfusion or within 6 h of transfusion completion
 - insidious, acute onset of pulmonary insufficiency
 - profound hypoxemia ($\text{PaO}_2/\text{FiO}_2 < 300$ mmHg)
 - bilateral pulmonary edema on CXR
 - pulmonary artery wedge pressure <18 mmHg
 - no clinical evidence of left atrial HTN
- pathogenesis uncertain; perhaps due to binding of donor antibodies to WBC of recipient and release of mediators that increase capillary permeability in the lungs
- typically occurs 2-4 h post transfusion and resolves in 24-72 h
- risk per unit of blood is 1:10,000
 - is currently the leading cause of transfusion-related morbidity and mortality
- treatment: supportive therapy (oxygen)
- inform blood bank; patient and donor testing will be arranged



DDx of Post-Transfusion Fever

- Acute hemolytic transfusion reaction
- Febrile non-hemolytic transfusion reaction
- Bacterial contamination
- Allergy

DDx of Post-Transfusion Dyspnea

- Transfusion-associated circulatory overload (TACO)
- Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI)
- Allergy (bronchospasm/anaphylaxis)

NONIMMUNE**Transfusion-Associated Circulatory Overload**

- due to impaired cardiac function and/or excessive rapid transfusion
- presentation: dyspnea, orthopnea, hypotension, tachycardia, crackles at base of lung, and increased venous pressure
- incidence: 1 in 700 and is becoming more common
- treatment: transfuse at lower rate, give diuretics and oxygen

Bacterial Infection

- Gram positive: *S. aureus*, *S. epidermidis*, *Bacillus cereus*
- Gram negative: *Klebsiella*, *Serratia*, *Pseudomonas*, *Yersinia*
- overall risk is 1 in 100,000 for RBC and 1 in 10,000 for platelets
- never store blood >4 h after bag has left blood bank
- treatment: stop transfusion, blood cultures, IV antibiotics, fluids

Hyperkalemia

- due to K⁺ release from stored RBC
- risk increases with storage time and if blood is irradiated and risk decreases
- if given fresh blood
- occurs in 5% of massively transfused patients
- treatment: see [Nephrology](#), NP13

**Citrate Toxicity**

- occurs with massive transfusion in patients with liver disease – patients are unable to clear citrate from blood
- citrate binds to Ca²⁺ and causes signs and symptoms of hypocalcemia
- treatment: IV calcium gluconate (10 mL of 10%) for every 2 units of blood

Dilutional Coagulopathy

- occurs with massive transfusion (>10 units)
- pRBC contains no clotting factors, fibrinogen, cryoprecipitate, or platelets
- treatment: FP, platelets, and cryoprecipitate

Delayed Blood Transfusion Reactions

IMMUNE**Delayed Hemolytic**

- due to alloantibodies to minor antigens such as Rh, Kell, Duffy, Kidd, and MNS
- titre of antibody at time of transfusion is too low to cause hemolysis; later the level of antibody increases due to secondary stimulus and causes extravascular hemolysis
- occurs 5-7 d after transfusion
- presentation: anemia and mild jaundice
- treatment: no specific treatment required; important to note for future transfusion

Transfusion-Associated Graft Vs. Host Disease

- transfused T-lymphocytes recognize and react against “host” (recipient)
- occurs 4-30 d following transfusion
- most patients already have severely impaired immune systems (e.g. Hodgkin lymphoma or leukemia)
- may occur in immunocompetent individuals in setting of a designated transfusion from a related donor (decreased incidence with irradiated blood)
- presentation: fever, diarrhea, liver function abnormalities, and pancytopenia
- can be prevented by giving irradiated blood products

NONIMMUNE**Iron Overload**

- due to repeated transfusions over long period of time (e.g. β -thalassemia major)
- can cause secondary hemochromatosis
- treatment: iron chelators or phlebotomy if not longer requiring blood transfusion and not anemic

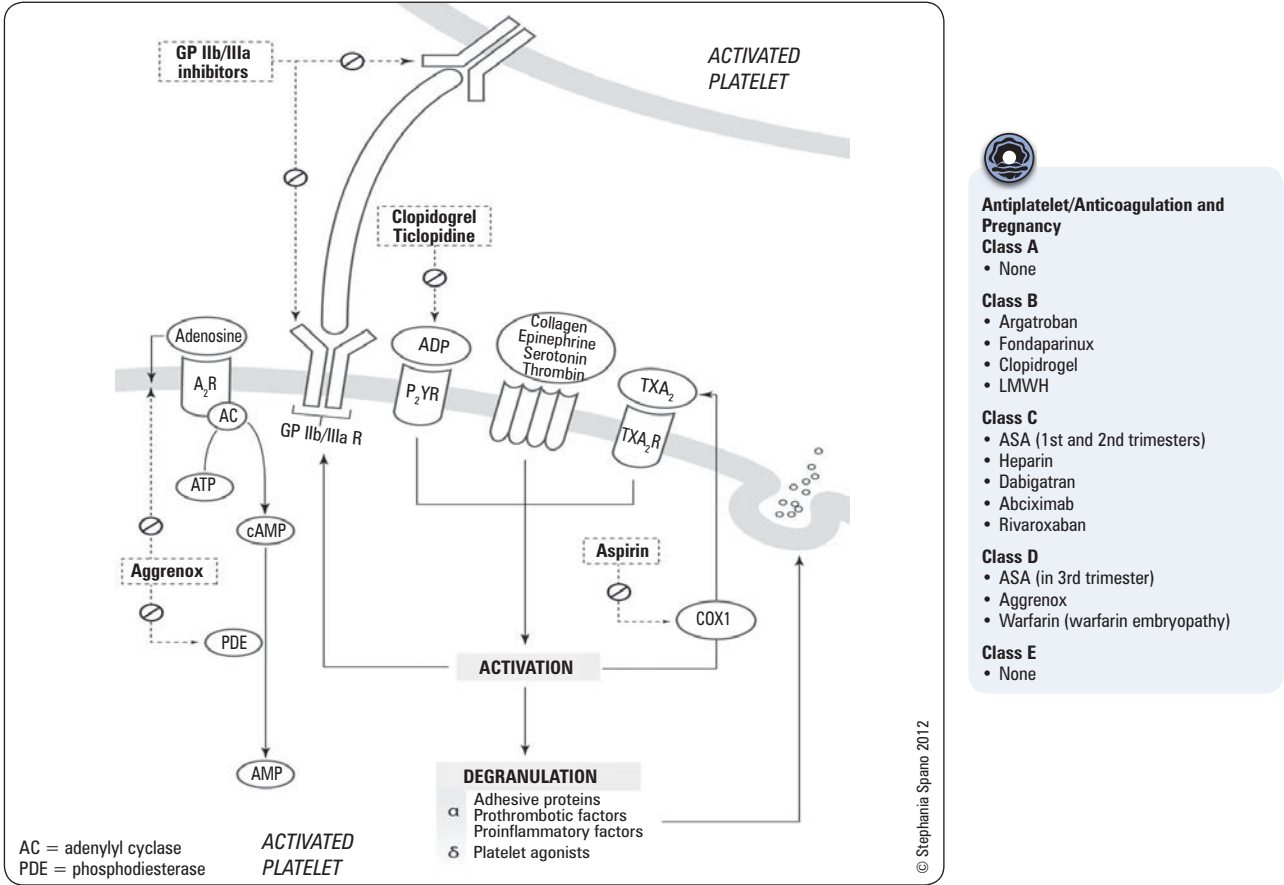
Viral Infection Risk

- HBV <1 in 153,000
- Human T-lymphotropic virus (HTLV) <1 in 4,300,000
- HCV <1 in 2,300,000
- HIV <1 in 7,000,000
- other infections include EBV, CMV, WNV (West Nile virus)

Common Medications

Antiplatelet Therapy

• see Figure 11a, Platelet Activation Cascade, H26



Antiplatelet/Anticoagulation and Pregnancy

Class A

- None

Class B

- Argatroban
- Fondaparinux
- Clopidogrel
- LMWH

Class C

- ASA (1st and 2nd trimesters)
- Heparin
- Dabigatran
- Abciximab
- Rivaroxaban

Class D

- ASA (in 3rd trimester)
- Aggrenox
- Warfarin (warfarin embryopathy)

Class E

- None

Figure 15. Mechanisms of action of antiplatelet therapy

Table 40. Antiplatelet Therapy

	Mechanism of Action	Dose/Route of Administration	Onset/Peak/Duration	Specific Side Effects	Remarks
Aspirin® (ASA)	Irreversibly acetylates COX, inhibiting TXA ₂ synthesis, thus inhibiting platelet aggregation	Single loading 200-300 mg PO, followed by dose of 75-100 mg PO daily	Onset: 5-30 min Peak: 0.25-3 h Duration: 3-6 h	GI ulcer/bleeding Tinnitus Bronchospasm Angioedema Reye's syndrome in pediatric patients	Indicated for stroke/MI prophylaxis Reduce incidence of recurrent MI Decrease mortality in post-MI patients Contraindicated in patients with GI ulcers
Aggrenox® (ASA + Dipyridamole)	Dipyridamole increases intracellular cAMP levels, which inhibits TXA ₂ synthesis, leading to decreased platelet aggregation	1 capsule PO bid	Peak: 75 min	Headache Dyspepsia N/V Abdominal pain Cardiac failure Hemorrhoids	More effective than ASA in secondary prevention of stroke Dipyridamole potentiates antiplatelet action of ASA
Clopidogrel (Plavix®)	Inhibit ADP binding to platelets, thus decreased platelet aggregation	75-300 mg PO daily	Onset: 2 h Peak: 1 h	URI Chest pain Headache Flu-like syndrome Depression UTI GI hemorrhage Pancytopenia May cause TTP	Prevention of cardiovascular events in high-risk patients CYP2C19 poor metabolizers have diminished response to clopidogrel Caution with hepatic/renal impairment
Glycoprotein IIb/IIIa Inhibitors (Reopro® [abciximab], Integrelin® [eptif])	Blocking GP II/IIIa receptor inhibits fibrinogen and vWF binding, leading to decreased platelet aggregation	Variable IV	Variable	Hypotension Back pain N/V Chest pain Abdominal pain Thrombocytopenia	Used most commonly in cardiac catheterization Contraindicated in PUD Monitoring aPTT/activated clotting time

Anticoagulant Therapy

Table 41. Anticoagulant Therapy

	Mechanism of Action	Dose/Route of Administration	Onset/Peak/ Duration	Reversing Agent	Monitoring	Specific Side Effects	Remarks
Heparin	Accelerates activity of antithrombin	As per hospital nomogram	Onset: 20-60 min Peak: 2-4 h	Protamine sulphate	aPTT (intrinsic pathway), UFH (anti-Xa) levels	Hemorrhage HIT Increased liver enzymes	Pregnancy: safe (does not cross placenta)
Warfarin	Vitamin K antagonist: inhibits production of II, VII, IX, X, proteins C and S	Individualized dosing by monitoring PT/INR PO	Onset: 36-48 h Peak: 1.5-3 d	IV vitamin K PCC FFP	PT/INR maintain 2-3 (2.5-3.5 for mechanical values)	Hemorrhage Cholesterol embolism syndrome Intraocular hemorrhage	Pregnancy: not used, can cross placenta (teratogenic)
LMWH (enoxaparin, dalteparin, tinzaparin)	Inhibits FXa	Variable SC/IV	Onset: 3-5 h Peak: 3-5 h Duration: 12 h	Partial reversibility with protamine sulphate	FXa in pediatrics, pregnancy and weight >150 kg	Hemorrhage Fever Increased liver enzymes <1% HIT	Increased bioavailability than heparin Can accumulate in patients low CrCl (<30)
Fondaparinux	Selective inhibitor of FXa	Variable SC daily	Onset: 2 h Peak: 2-3 h	Not reversible	None	Anemia Fever Nausea Rash	Heparin analogue Contraindicated in renal failure
Rivaroxaban	Anti-FXa	PO	Peak: 2-4 h	Not reversible	None	Syncope GI hemorrhage	Only indicated in treatment of acute VTE (not in cancer patients), and thromboprophylaxis in orthopedic patients
Argatroban	Direct thrombin inhibitor	Variable IV	Onset: 5-10 min Duration: 20-40 min	Not reversible	aPTT	Dyspnea Hypotension Fever	Indicated for HIT, renal failure, unstable patients
Dabigatran	Direct thrombin inhibitor	150 mg PO bid	Peak: 1 h	Not reversible	None (prolonged aPTT can suggest residual drug on board)	GI upset Dyspepsia	Contraindicated in renal failure, cancer patients, mechanical heart valves

Adverse Reactions of Heparin

- hemorrhage: depends on dose, age, and concomitant use of antiplatelet agents or thrombolytics
- heparin-induced thrombocytopenia: associated with venous or arterial thrombosis (see Table 23, H29)
- osteoporosis: with long-term use

Low Molecular Weight Heparin (enoxaparin, dalteparin, tinzaparin)

- increased bioavailability compared to normal heparin
- increased duration of action
- SC route of administration
- do not need to monitor aPTT
- adverse reactions less common than UFH
- patients with renal failure (CrCl <30) can accumulate LMWH, therefore must adjust dose
- only partially reversible with protamine sulphate

Table 42. Recommended Therapeutic INR Ranges of Common Indications for Oral Anticoagulant Therapy

Indication	INR Range
Prophylaxis of venous thrombosis (high-risk surgery)	2.0-3.0
Treatment of venous thrombosis	
Most cases of thrombosis with antiphospholipid antibody syndrome	
Treatment of pulmonary embolism	
Prevention of systemic embolism	
Tissue heart valves	
AMI (to prevent systemic embolism)	
Valvular heart disease	
Atrial fibrillation	
Bileaflet mechanical valve in aortic position	
Mechanical prosthetic mitral valves (high risk)	2.5-3.5
Prophylaxis of recurrent myocardial infarction	

AMI = acute myocardial infarction



Dabigatran vs. Warfarin in Patients with Atrial Fibrillation

NEJM 2009;361:1139-1151

Study: Non-inferiority trial with 2 yr follow-up.

Methods: Random assignment of 18,113 patients with atrial fibrillation and risk of stroke to fixed doses of dabigatran (blinded, 110 mg or 150 mg bid) or adjusted-dose warfarin (unblinded). Primary outcome was stroke or systemic embolism.

Results: The warfarin, dabigatran 110 mg, and dabigatran groups showed the following rates: 1) stroke or systemic embolism was 1.69%, 1.53%, and 1.11% per year respectively, 2) major bleeding was 3.36%, 2.71%, and 3.11% per year respectively, 3) hemorrhagic stroke was 0.38%, 0.12%, and 0.10% per year respectively ($p < 0.001$), 4) mortality was 4.13%, 3.75%, and 3.64% respectively.

Conclusions: In patients with atrial fibrillation, dabigatran 110 mg was similar to warfarin in rates of stroke and systemic embolism but had lower rates of major hemorrhage. Dabigatran 150 mg, as compared with warfarin, was associated with lower rates of stroke and systemic embolism but similar rates of major hemorrhage.

Table 43. Recommended Management of a Supratherapeutic INR

INR	Bleeding Present	Recommended Action
>Therapeutic to 4.5	No	Lower warfarin dose OR Omit a dose and resume warfarin at a lower dose when INR is in therapeutic range OR No dose reduction needed if INR is minimally prolonged
>4.5 to 10.0	No	Omit the next 1 to 2 doses of warfarin, monitor INR more frequently and resume treatment at a lower dose when INR is in therapeutic range OR Omit a dose and administer 1 to 2.5 mg oral vit K in patients with increased risk of bleeding
>10.0	No	Hold warfarin and administer 5 to 10 mg oral vit K; monitor INR more frequently and administer more vit K as needed; resume warfarin at a lower dose when INR is in therapeutic range
Any	Serious or life threatening	Hold warfarin and administer 10 mg vit K by slow IV infusion; supplement with four-factor prothrombin complex concentrate; monitor and repeat as needed

Adapted from: Holbrook A, Schulman S, Witt DM, et al. Evidence-based management of anticoagulant therapy: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed. American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Chest* 2012;(2 suppl):e152S

Chemotherapeutic and Biologic Agents Used in Oncology

Table 44. Selected Chemotherapeutic and Biologic Agents

Class	Example	Mechanism of Action or Target
Alkylating Agent	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• chlorambucil, cyclophosphamide, melphalan (nitrogen mustards)• carboplatin, cisplatin• dacarbazine, procarbazine• busulfan	Damage DNA via alkylation of base pairs Leads to cross-linking of bases, abnormal base-pairing, DNA breakage
Antimetabolites	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• methotrexate (folic acid antagonist)• 6-mercaptopurine, fludarabine (purine antagonist)• 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) (pyrimidine antagonist)• hydroxyurea• cytarabine	Inhibit DNA synthesis
Antibiotics	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• adriamycin (anthracycline)• bleomycin• mitomycin C• daunorubicin	Interfere with DNA and RNA synthesis
Taxanes	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• paclitaxel• docetaxel	Stabilize microtubules against breakdown once cell division complete
Vinca-alkaloids	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• vinblastine• vincristine• vinorelbine	Inhibit microtubule assembly (mitotic spindles), blocking cell division
Topoisomerase Inhibitors	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• irinotecan, topotecan (topo I)• etoposide (topo II)	Interfere with DNA unwinding necessary for normal replication and transcription
Steroids	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• prednisone• dexamethasone	Immunosuppression
Monoclonal Antibodies	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• trastuzumab (Herceptin®)• bevacizumab (Avastin®)• rituximab (Rituxan®)• cetuximab (Erbix®)	HER2 VEGF CD20 EGFR
Small Molecule Inhibitors	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• imatinib mesylate (Gleevec®)• dasatinib• nilotinib• erlotinib (Tarceva®)• gefitinib (Iressa®)• bortezomib (Velcade®)• sunitinib (Sutent®)	<i>Bcr-Abl</i> <i>Bcr-Abl</i> <i>Bcr-Abl</i> EGFR EGFR 26S proteasome VEGFR, PDGFR

Landmark Hematology Trials

Trial	Reference	Results
AZA-001	<i>Lancet Oncol</i> 2009; 10:223-32	Azacitidine increases overall survival in higher-risk myelodysplastic syndrome than conventional care
CHOP	<i>NEJM</i> 1993; 328:1002-6	In NHL, CHOP has lowest incidence of fatal toxic reactions and shows no significant difference from 3 other regimens in response or disease-free/overall survival; CHOP is the standard for advanced NHL
CLL8	<i>Lancet</i> 2010; 376:1164-74	Rituximab plus fludarabine and cyclophosphamide (FCR) improves progression-free and overall survival compared with fludarabine and cyclophosphamide alone (FC) in the treatment of CLL
CLOT	<i>NEJM</i> 2003; 349:146-53	In patients with cancer and acute venous thromboembolism, LWMH was more effective than warfarin in reducing the risk of recurrent thromboembolism without increasing the risk of bleeding
CML: Imatinib vs. IFN + Cytarabine	<i>NEJM</i> 2003; 348:994-1004	In patients with chronic-phase CML, imatinib was more effective than IFN α + cytarabine in inducing cytogenetic response and freedom from progression to accelerated phase/blast crisis
CYT0-PV	<i>NEJM</i> 2013; 368(1), 22-33	In patients with polycythemia vera, a hematocrit target of <0.45 for cytoreductive therapy is associated with prevention of thrombotic complications
Dabigatran vs. Warfarin in VTE	<i>NEJM</i> 2009; 361:2342-52	In the treatment of venous thromboembolism, dabigatran is as effective as warfarin and also has a similar safety profile; note: many problems in the trial, making it less pivotal in having drug approval
Dose of Platelet Transfusion	<i>NEJM</i> 2010; 362:600-13	Low dose prophylactic platelet transfusion decreases total number of platelets transfused but increases number of transfusions but not incidence of bleeding in patients with hypoproliferative thrombocytopenia
ESPIRIT	<i>Lancet</i> 2006; 367:1665-73	ASA plus dipyridamole is recommended over ASA alone as antithrombotic therapy after cerebral ischemia of arterial origin
Hodgkin Lymphoma: ABVD vs. MOPP	<i>NEJM</i> 1992; 327:1478-84	In Hodgkin lymphoma, ABVD regimen has equal failure-free and overall survival to MOPP + ABVD, but less myelotoxicity; ABVD is standard chemotherapy for Hodgkin lymphoma
ITP: Dexamethasone	<i>NEJM</i> 2003; 349:831-6	A four-day course of high-dose dexamethasone is effective initial therapy for adults with immune thrombocytopenic purpura
MInT Group	<i>Lancet</i> 2011; 12:1013-1022	Rituximab added to CHOP-like chemotherapy improved long-term outcomes for young patients with good-prognosis DLBCL
MSH	<i>NEJM</i> 1995; 332:1317-22	Hydroxyurea is effective in reduction of complications and clinical manifestations of sickle cell disease
Platelet Transfusion Threshold	<i>NEJM</i> 1997; 337:1870-5	The risk of major bleeding in patients with AML undergoing induction chemotherapy was similar whether the platelet-transfusion threshold was set at 20 or 10; use of the lower threshold reduced platelet usage by 21.5%
PT1	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 353:85-6	Hydroxyurea plus low-dose ASA is superior to anagrelide plus low-dose ASA for patients with essential thrombocythemia at high risk for vascular events
R-CHOP	<i>NEJM</i> 2002; 346:235-42	Addition of rituximab to CHOP increases complete response rate and prolongs event-free survival and overall survival in elderly with DLBCL
StIL	<i>Lancet</i> 2013; 381(9873):1203-10	Bendamustine plus rituximab is superior to R-CHOP in terms of progression-free survival and fewer toxic effects in patients with previously untreated indolent lymphoma
Therapeutic Platelet Transfusion	<i>Lancet</i> 2012; 380:1309-16	Therapeutic platelet transfusions (when bleeding occurs) may be used if severe bleeding can be identified early in autologous stem-cell transplant patients; prophylactic transfusion (when platelets <10) should remain standard of care in AML patients
TRICC	<i>NEJM</i> 1999; 340:409-17	A restrictive strategy of red-cell transfusion (when Hb <70) is at least as effective as and possibly superior to a liberal transfusion strategy (when Hb <100) in ICU patients; one possible exception is patients with an acute MI or unstable angina
VISTA	<i>JCO</i> 2010; 28:2259-66	Bortezomib plus melphalan and prednisone (MPV) is superior to melphalan and prednisone (MP) in overall survival of non-transplant-eligible multiple myeloma patients

References

- Armitage JO. Treatment of Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma. *NEJM* 1993;328:1023-1030.
- Bataille R, Harousseau J. Multiple myeloma. *NEJM* 1997;336:1657-1664.
- Bates SM, Ginsberg JS. Treatment of deep-vein thrombosis. *NEJM* 2004;351:268-277.
- Bazemore AW, Smucker DR. Lymphadenopathy and malignancy. *Am Fam Phys* 2002;66:2103-2110.
- Bottomly SS. Causes of the hereditary and acquired sideroblastic anemias. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.
- Brawley OW, Cornelius LJ, Edwards LR, et al. National Institutes of Health Consensus Development Conference Statement: hydroxyurea treatment for sickle cell disease. *Ann Intern Med* 2008;148:932-938.
- Callum JL. Idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura. Available from: <http://www.hematology.utoronto.ca/assets/hematology+digital+assets/treatment+polices/idiopathic+thrombocytopenia+purpura.pdf>.
- Callum JL, Pinkerton PH. Bloody easy, 3rd ed. Toronto: Sunnybrook and Women's College Health Sciences Centre, 2011. Blood transfusions, blood alternatives and transfusion reactions.
- Canadian Pediatric Society. Transfusion and risk of infection in Canada: update 2006. *Ped Child Health* 2005;11:158-162.
- Castellone DD. Saunders Manual of Clinical Laboratory Science. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1998. Evaluation of bleeding disorders.
- Christiansen SC, Cannegieter SC, Koster T, et al. Thrombophilia, clinical factors, and recurrent thrombotic events. *JAMA* 2005;293:2353-2361.
- Cines DB, Blanchette VS. Immune thrombocytopenic purpura. *NEJM* 2002;346:995-1008.
- Coates TD, Baehner RL. Causes of neutrophilia. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.
- Cohen K, Scadden DT. Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma: pathogenesis, clinical presentation, and treatment. *Cancer Treat Res* 2001;104:201-203.
- Connolly SJ, Ezekowitz MD, Yusuf S, et al. Dabigatran vs. warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation. *NEJM* 2009;361:1139-1151.
- Decousus H, Leizorovicz A, Parent F, et al. A clinical trial of vena caval filters in the prevention of pulmonary embolism in patients with proximal deep-vein thrombosis. *NEJM* 1998;338:409-415.
- Driscoll MC. Sickle cell disease. *Ped Rev* 2007;28:259-286.
- Druker BJ, Guilhot F, O'Brien SG, et al. Five-year follow-up of patients receiving imatinib for chronic myeloid leukemia. *NEJM* 2006;355:2408-2417.
- EINSTEIN Investigators, Bauersachs R, Berkowitz SD, Brenner B, et al. Oral rivaroxaban for symptomatic venous thromboembolism. *NEJM* 2010; 362:2499-510.
- Eriksson BI, Dahl OE, Rosencranch N, et al. Dabigatran etexilate vs. enoxaparin for prevention of venous thromboembolism after total hip replacement; a randomized, double-blind, non-inferiority trial. *Lancet* 2007;379:949-956.
- Eriksson BI, Quinlan DJ, Eikelboom JW. Novel oral factor Xa and thrombin inhibitors in the management of thromboembolism. *Ann Rev Med* 2011;62:41-57.
- Geerts WH, Pineo GF, Heit JA, et al. Prevention of venous thromboembolism. Seventh ACCP conference on antithrombotic and thrombolytic therapy. *Chest* 2004;126L:3385-4005.
- George JN. Treatment and prognosis of idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2005.
- Goldman J. ABC of clinical haematology: chronic myeloid leukaemia. *BMJ* 1997;314:657.
- Habermann TM, Steensma DP. Lymphadenopathy. *Mayo Clinic Proc* 2000;75:723-32.
- Haddad A, Tyan P, Radwan A, et al. B-Thalassemia Intermedia: A Bird's-Eye View. *Turk J Haematol* 2014;31:5-16.
- Hasenclever D, Diehl V. A prognostic score for advanced Hodgkin's disease. International prognostic factors project on advanced hodgkin's disease. *NEJM* 1998;339:1506-1514.
- Health Canada. Effects of lead on human health. Available from: <http://www.hc-sc.gc.ca/hl-vs/iyh-vsv/environ/lead-plomb-eng.php>.
- Heaney ML, Golde DW. Myelodysplasia. *NEJM* 1999;340:1649-1660.
- Kopko PM, Holland PV. Mechanisms of severe transfusion reactions. *Transfus Clin Biol* 2001;8:278-281.
- Kovacs MJ, Rodger M, Anderson DR, et al. Comparison of 10-mg and 5-mg warfarin initiation monograms together with low-molecular-weight heparin for out patient treatment of acute venous thromboembolism. *Ann Intern Med* 2003;138:714-719.
- Kyle RA, Rajkumar SV. Chemotherapy in multiple myeloma. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.
- Kyle RA, Rajkumar SV. Clinical manifestations and diagnosis of Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.
- Landaw SA. Approach to the adult patient with thrombocytopenia. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.
- Leonardi-Bee J, Bath PM, Bousser MG, et al. Review: dipyridamole given with or without Aspirin® reduces recurrent stroke. *ACP Journal Club* 2005;143:10.
- Liesner RJ, Machin SJ. ABC of clinical haematology: platelet disorders. *BMJ* 1997;314:809.
- Liesner RJ, Goldstone AH. ABC of clinical haematology: the acute leukaemias. *BMJ* 1997;314:733.
- Lowenberg B, Downing JR, Burnett A. Acute myeloid leukemia. *NEJM* 1999;341:1051-1062.
- MabThera International Trial (MInT) Group. CHOP-like chemotherapy with or without rituximab in young patients with good-prognosis diffuse large-B-cell lymphoma: 6-year results of an open-label randomized study of the MInT Group. *Lancet Oncol* 2011;12:1013-1022.
- Mackie IJ, Bull HA. Normal haemostasis and its regulation. *Blood Rev* 1989;3:237-250.
- Markovic M, Majkic-Singh N, Subota V. Usefulness of soluble transferrin receptor and ferritin in iron deficiency and chronic disease. *Scan J Clin Lab Invest* 2005;65:571-576.
- Mead GM. ABC of clinical haematology: malignant lymphomas and chronic lymphocytic leukaemia. *BMJ* 1997;314:1103.
- Messinezy M, Pearson TC. ABC of clinical haematology: polycythaemia, primary (essential) thrombocythaemia and myelofibrosis. *BMJ* 1997;314:587.
- Neunert C, Lim W, Crowther M, et al. The American Society of Hematology 2011 evidence-based practice guideline for immune thrombocytopenia. *Blood* 2011;117:4190-4207.
- Pangalis GA, Vassilakopoulos TP, Boussiotis VA, et al. Clinical approach to lymphadenopathy. *Semin Oncol* 1993;20:570-582.
- Pillot G, Chantler M, Magiera H, et al. (editors). The Washington Manual Hematology and Oncology Subspecialty Consult. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004.
- Pui C, Evans WE. Acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *NEJM* 1998;339:605-615.
- Rozman C, Montserrat E. Chronic lymphocytic leukemia. *NEJM* 1995;333:1052-1057.
- Sabatine MS (editor). Pocket medicine, 2nd ed. The Massachusetts General Hospital Handbook of Internal Medicine. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2004. Hematology-oncology.
- Satake N, Sakamoto K. Acute lymphoblastic leukemia. E-medicine 2006. Available from: <http://www.emedicine.com/ped/topic2587.html>.
- Sawyers C. Chronic myeloid leukemia. *NEJM* 1999;340:1330-1340.
- Streiff MB, Smith B, Spivak JL. The diagnosis and management of polycythemia vera in the era since the Polycythemia Vera Study Group: a survey of American Society of Hematology members' practice patterns. *Blood* 2002;99:1144-1149.
- Schulman S, Kearon C, Kakkar AK, et al. Dabigatran vs. warfarin in the treatment of acute venous thromboembolism. *NEJM* 2009;361:2342-2352.
- Tefferi A. Approach to the patient with thrombocytosis. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.
- The Merck Manual. Section 11, Chapter 133: Platelet disorders.
- Thomas RH. Hypercoagulability syndromes. *Arch Intern Med* 2001;161:2433-2439.
- U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission. Ban of lead-containing paint and certain consumer products bearing lead-containing paint. Available from: <http://www.cpsc.gov/BUSINFO/regsumleadpaint.pdf>.
- Valentine KA, Hull RD. Clinical use of warfarin. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.
- Valentine KA, Hull RD. Clinical use of heparin and low molecular weight heparin. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2006.
- Vardiman JW, Thiele J, Arber DA, et al. The 2008 revision of the World Health Organization (WHO) classification of myeloid neoplasms and acute leukemia: rationale and important changes. *Blood* 2009;114:937-951.
- Verstovsek S, Mesa RA, Gotlib J, et al. A Double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of ruxolitinib for Myelofibrosis. *NEJM* 2012;366:799-807.
- Wells PS, Anderson DR, Rodger M, et al. Evaluation of D-dimer in the diagnosis of suspected deep-vein thrombosis. *NEJM* 2003;349:1227-1235.
- Wilson SE, Watson HG, Crowther MA. Low-dose oral vitamin K therapy for the management of asymptomatic patients with elevated international normalized ratios: a brief review. *CMAJ* 2004;170:821-824.

Julie Caron, Lucas Djelic, and Sameer Rawal, chapter editors

Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Tina Hu, EBM editor

Dr. Andrea Boggild, Dr. Andrew Morris, Dr. Andrea Page, Dr. Susan Poutanen,
and Dr. Darrell Tan, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Prevention of HIV Infection	
Principles of Microbiology	2	Types of Testing	
Bacteriology		HIV Pre- and Post-Test Counseling	
Virology		Fungal Infections	34
Mycology		Skin and Subcutaneous Infections	
Parasitology		Superficial Fungal Infections	
Transmission of Infectious Diseases		Dermatophytes	
Prevention of Infectious Diseases		Subcutaneous Fungal Infection	
Nosocomial Infections	7	Endemic Mycoses	
Respiratory Infections	8	Opportunistic Fungi	
Pneumonia		<i>Pneumocystis jiroveci</i> (formerly <i>P. carinii</i>)	
Influenza		<i>Cryptococcus</i> spp.	
Skin and Soft Tissue Infections	10	<i>Candida albicans</i>	
Cellulitis		<i>Aspergillus</i> spp.	
Necrotizing Fasciitis		Parasitic Infections	37
Gastrointestinal Infections	11	Protozoa – Intestinal/Genitourinal Infections	
Acute Diarrhea		<i>Entamoeba histolytica</i> (Amoebas)	
Traveler's Diarrhea		<i>Giardia lamblia</i>	
Chronic Diarrhea		<i>Trichomonas vaginalis</i>	
Peptic Ulcer Disease (<i>H. pylori</i>)		<i>Cryptosporidium</i> spp.	
Bone and Joint Infections	15	Blood and Tissue Infections	
Septic Arthritis		<i>Plasmodium</i> spp. (malaria)	
Diabetic Foot Infections		<i>Trypanosoma cruzi</i>	
Osteomyelitis		<i>Toxoplasma gondii</i>	
Cardiac Infections	17	Helminths	
Infective Endocarditis		Roundworms – Nematodes	
Neurological Infections	19	Flatworms	
Meningitis		Cestodes/Trematodes	
Encephalitis		Trematodes/Flukes	
Generalized Tetanus		<i>Schistosoma</i> spp.	
Rabies		Ectoparasites	
Systemic Infections	22	Travel Medicine	43
Sepsis and Septic Shock		Fever in the Returned Traveler	
Leprosy (Hansen's Disease)		Fever of Unknown Origin	45
Lyme Disease		Infections in the Immunocompromised Host.	46
Toxic Shock Syndrome		Febrile Neutropenia	
Cat Scratch Disease		Infections in Solid Organ Transplant Recipients	
Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever		Immune Reconstitution Syndrome	
West Nile Virus		A Simplified Look at Antibiotics	48
Syphilis		Antimicrobials	49
Tuberculosis	27	Antibiotics	
HIV and AIDS	29	Antivirals	53
Epidemiology		Antifungals	54
Definition and Pathophysiology		Antiparasitics	56
Modes of Transmission		Quick Reference: Common Infections and Their Antibiotic Management	57
Natural History		References	58
Laboratory Diagnosis			
Management of the HIV-Positive Patient			
Anti-Retroviral Treatment			

Acronyms

AFB	acid-fast bacilli	FDP	ibrinogen degradation products	HDV	hepatitis D virus	MDR	multidrug resistance	spp.	species
AIDS	acquired immune deficiency syndrome			HEV	hepatitis E virus	MMR	measles/mumps/rubella	SRI	severe respiratory illness
ANC	absolute neutrophil count	FUO	fever of unknown origin	HHV	human herpes virus	MRSA	methicillin-resistant <i>S. aureus</i>	STEC	Shiga toxin-producing <i>E. coli</i>
AOM	acute otitis media	GAS	group A <i>Streptococcus</i>	Hib	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> b	MSM	men who have sex with men	STD	sexually transmitted disease
ART	anti-retroviral therapy	GBS	group B <i>Streptococcus</i>	HIV	human immunodeficiency virus	O&P	ova and parasites	TB	mycoplasma tuberculosis
ARV	anti-retroviral	GC	gonococcus	HPF	high power field	PCR	polymerase chain reaction	Tlg	tetanus immune globulin
BAL	bronchoalveolar lavage	GN	Gram negative	HRlg	human rabies immunoglobulin	PMN	polymorphonuclear leukocytes	TMP/SMX	trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole
BCG	Bacille Calmette-Guérin	GNB	Gram negative bacilli	HSV	herpes simplex virus	PNS	peripheral nervous system	TNF	tumor necrosis factor
C&S	culture and sensitivity	GP	Gram positive	HUS	hemolytic uremic syndrome	PPD	purified protein derivative	TORCH	toxoplasmosis, other, rubella, cytomegalovirus, HSV
CFU	colony forming units	H. flu	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i>	IE	infective endocarditis	RSV	respiratory syncytial virus	UTI	urinary tract infection
CMV	cytomegalovirus	HAART	highly active antiretroviral treatment	IFN	interferon	RTI	respiratory tract infection	TSS	toxic shock syndrome
CNS	central nervous system			Ig	immunoglobulin	RT-PCR	reverse transcription-PCR	URT	upper respiratory tract infection
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid	HAV	hepatitis A virus	INH	isoniazid	SARS	severe acute respiratory syndrome	VRE	vancomycin-resistant <i>Enterococcus</i>
DEET	N,N-Diethyl-meta-toluamide	HBC	HBV core antigen	IVDU	intravenous drug use	sBP	systolic blood pressure	VZV	varicella-zoster virus
DVT	deep vein thrombosis	HBsAg	HBV envelope antigen	KOH	potassium hydroxide	SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone secretion		
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus	HBsAg	HBV surface antigen	KSHV	Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpes virus	Sn	sensitivity		
EHEC	enterohemorrhagic <i>E. coli</i>	HBV	hepatitis B virus		level of consciousness	Sp	specificity		
EIEC	enteroinvasive <i>E. coli</i>	HCC	hepatocellular carcinoma	LOC	lumbar puncture				
ETEC	enterotoxigenic <i>E. coli</i>	HCV	hepatitis C virus	LP					

Principles of Microbiology

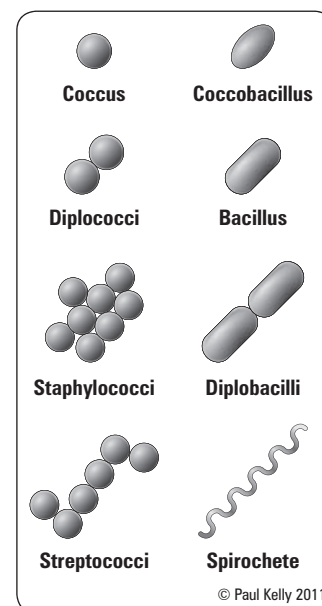
Bacteriology

Bacteria Basics

- bacteria are prokaryotic cells that divide asexually by binary fission
- Gram stain divides most bacteria into two groups based on their cell wall
 - Gram positive (GP): thick, rigid layer of peptidoglycan
 - Gram negative (GN): thin peptidoglycan layer + thicker outer membrane composed of lipoproteins and lipopolysaccharides
 - clinical significance: GN thick outer membrane makes it resistant to penicillin's mechanism of action
- AFB: high mycolic acid content in cell wall, "acid fast" as washout phase of gram stain is ineffective, e.g. *Mycobacteria*, *Nocardia*
- "atypical" bacteria: not seen on Gram stain and difficult to culture
 - obligate intracellular bacteria: e.g. *Chlamydia*
 - bacteria lacking a cell wall: e.g. *Mycoplasma*
 - spirochetes: e.g. *Treponema pallidum*
- O₂ can be either vital or detrimental to growth
 - obligate aerobes: require O₂
 - obligate anaerobes: require environment without O₂
 - facultative anaerobes: can survive in environments with or without O₂

Mechanisms of Bacterial Disease

- adherence to and colonization of skin or mucous membranes
 - e.g. fimbriae (pili): microfilaments extending through the cell wall – like burrs sticking to your clothes, they attach to epithelial cells e.g. *E. coli* in the urinary tract
- invasion or crossing normal epithelial barriers
- evasion of host defense system through inhibition of:
 - phagocytic uptake via polysaccharide capsule (*S. pneumoniae*, *N. meningitidis*, *H. influenzae*) or surface proteins (*Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus*)
- toxin production
 - exotoxins are secreted by living pathogenic bacteria and cause disease even if the bacteria is not present (e.g. *Clostridium*)
 - endotoxins are structural components of GN bacterial cell wall, and may be shed by live cells or released during cell lysis
- intracellular growth
 - obligate intracellular: *Rickettsia* and *Chlamydia*
 - facultative intracellular: *Salmonella*, *Neisseria*, *Brucella*, *Mycobacteria*, *Listeria*, *Legionella*
- biofilm
 - an extracellular polysaccharide network forming mesh around the bacteria (e.g. *S. epidermidis*) which can coat prosthetic devices like IV catheters



© Paul Kelly 2011

Figure 1. Bacteria morphology

Table 1. Common Bacteria

Gram-Positive Bacteria			Gram-Negative Bacteria		Not Seen on Gram Stain
	Cocci	Bacilli (rods)	Diplococci	Bacilli (rods)	Acid Fast Others
Aerobes	<i>Staphylococcus</i> <i>S. aureus</i> <i>S. saprophyticus</i> <i>S. epidermidis</i> <i>Streptococcus</i> <i>S. pneumoniae</i> <i>S. pyogenes</i> (GAS) <i>S. agalactiae</i> (GBS) <i>Enterococcus</i> <i>E. faecalis</i>	<i>Bacillus</i> <i>B. anthracis</i> <i>Listeria</i> <i>Nocardia</i> (modified acid fast positive)	<i>Neisseria</i> <i>N. meningitidis</i> <i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> <i>Moraxella</i> <i>M. catarrhalis</i>	<i>Enterobacteriaceae</i> <i>E. coli</i> , <i>Salmonella</i> , <i>Shigella</i> , <i>Campylobacter</i> , <i>Yersinia</i> <i>Klebsiella</i> <i>Legionella</i> <i>Pseudomonas</i> <i>Haemophilus</i> <i>H. influenzae</i>	<i>Mycobacteria</i> <i>M. tuberculosis</i> <i>M. leprae</i> <i>M. avium</i> complex <i>M. bovis</i> Obligate intracellular <i>Rickettsiae</i> <i>Chlamydia</i> <i>C. trachomatis</i> <i>Chlamydothila</i> <i>C. pneumoniae</i> No cell wall <i>Mycoplasma</i> Spirochaete (spiral) <i>Treponema pallidum</i>
Anaerobes	<i>Peptostreptococcus</i>	<i>Clostridium</i> <i>C. difficile</i> , <i>C. tetani</i> , <i>C. botulinum</i> , <i>C. perfringens</i>		<i>Bacteroides</i> <i>B. fragilis</i>	

Table 2. Commensal Flora

Site	Organisms
Skin	Coagulase-negative staphylococci, <i>Corynebacteria</i> , <i>Propionibacterium acnes</i> , <i>Bacillus</i> , <i>S. aureus</i>
Oropharynx	Viridans group streptococci, <i>Haemophilus</i> , <i>Neisseria</i> , anaerobes (<i>Peptostreptococcus</i> , <i>Bacteroides</i> , <i>Veillonella</i> , <i>Fusobacterium</i> , <i>Actinomyces</i> , <i>Prevotella</i>)
Small Bowel	<i>E. coli</i> , anaerobes (low numbers)
Colon	<i>E. coli</i> , <i>Klebsiella</i> , <i>Enterobacter</i> , <i>Enterococcus</i> , anaerobes (<i>Bacteroides</i> , <i>Peptostreptococcus</i> , <i>Clostridium</i>)
Vagina	<i>Lactobacillus acidophilus</i> , Viridans group streptococci, coagulase-negative staphylococci, facultative GN bacilli, anaerobes

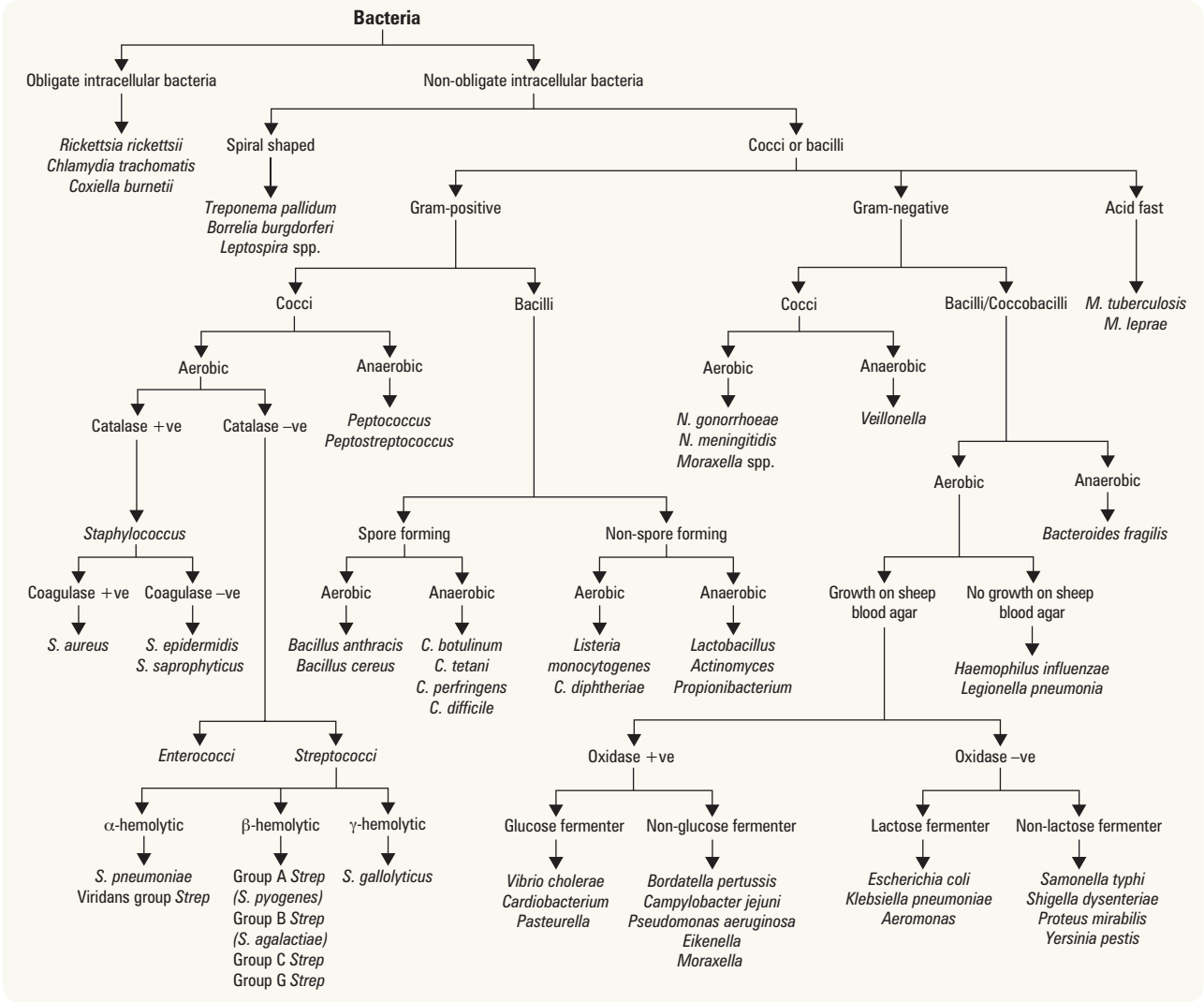


Figure 2. Laboratory identification of bacterial species

Virology

Viral Basics

- viruses are infectious particles consisting of RNA or DNA covered by a protein coat
 - infect cells and use host metabolic machinery to replicate
 - nucleic acid can be double stranded (ds) or single stranded (ss)
 - can be enveloped or naked
- virions are mature virus particles that can be released into the extracellular environment
- host susceptibility is governed by the host cell and virus surface proteins (viral tropism) and cellular immunity

Viral Disease Patterns

- acute infections (e.g. adenovirus)
 - host cells are lysed in the process of virion release
 - some produce acute infections with late sequelae (e.g. measles virus → subacute sclerosing panencephalitis)
- chronic infections (>6 mo): (e.g. HBV, HIV)
 - host cell machinery is used to produce and chronically release virions
- latent infections
 - viral genome remains latent in host cell nucleus
 - can reactivate (e.g. HSV, VZV)

Table 3. Common Viruses

Nucleic Acid	Enveloped	Virus Family	Major Viruses	Medical Importance
dsDNA	N	<i>Adenoviridae</i>	Adenovirus	URTI Conjunctivitis Gastroenteritis
	N	<i>Papillomaviridae</i>	HPV1,4 HPV6,11 HPV16,18, etc.	Plantar warts Genital warts Cervical/anal dysplasia and cancer
	Y	<i>Herpesviridae</i>	HHV1=HSV1 HHV2=HSV2 HHV3=VZV HHV4=EBV HHV5=CMV HHV6* HHV8=KSHV	Oral, ocular, and genital herpes; encephalitis Genital, oral, and ocular herpes; encephalitis Chicken pox, shingles Mononucleosis, viral hepatitis Retinitis, pneumonitis, hepatitis, encephalitis Roseola Kaposi's sarcoma, multicentric Castleman's disease, body cavity lymphoma
	N	<i>Polyomaviridae</i>	JC virus	Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy
	Y	<i>Hepadnaviridae</i> <i>Poxviridae</i>	Hepatitis B Variola	Hepatitis Smallpox
ssDNA	N	<i>Parvoviridae</i>	Parvovirus B19	Erythema infectiosum (Fifth disease)
(+)ssRNA	N	<i>Caliciviridae</i>	Norwalk Hepatitis E	Gastroenteritis Acute hepatitis
	N	<i>Picornaviridae</i>	Poliovirus Echovirus Rhinovirus Coxsackie virus Hepatitis A	Poliomyelitis URTIs, viral meningitis URTIs Hand-foot-and-mouth, viral meningitis, myocarditis Acute hepatitis
	Y	<i>Coronaviridae</i>	Coronavirus	URTIs, SARS
	Y	<i>Flaviviridae</i>	Yellow fever Dengue fever Hepatitis C West Nile	Yellow fever Dengue fever Hepatitis Encephalitis, flaccid paralysis
	Y	<i>Togaviridae</i>	Rubella	Rubella (German measles)
(+)ssRNA-RT	Y	<i>Retroviridae</i>	HIV HTLV-1	AIDS T-cell leukemia and lymphoma
(-)ssRNA	Y	<i>Arenaviridae</i>	Lassa fever	Lassa fever
	Y	<i>Filoviridae</i>	Ebola, Marburg	Hemorrhagic fever
	Y	<i>Orthomyxoviridae</i>	Influenza A, B, C	Influenza
	Y	<i>Paramyxoviridae</i>	Measles Mumps Parainfluenza RSV	Measles Mumps URTIs, croup, bronchiolitis Bronchiolitis, pneumonia
	Y	<i>Rhabdoviridae</i>	Rabies	Rabies
dsRNA	N	<i>Reoviridae</i>	Rotavirus	Gastroenteritis

Note: __viridae = family, __virus = genus, # = species (e.g. Retroviridae HIV-2)

*Roseolovirus, Herpes lymphotropic virus



DNA Viruses: Families

HHAPPPy

Hepadnaviridae

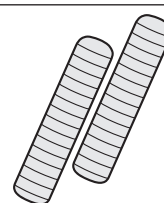
Herpesviridae

Adenoviridae

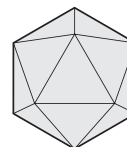
Papillomaviridae

Polyomaviridae

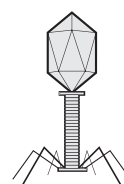
Parvoviridae



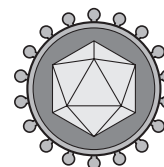
Helical



Icosahedral



Complex



Enveloped

© Beatrice Lau 2011

Figure 3. Virus morphology

Mycology

Fungal Basics

- fungi are eukaryotic organisms, they can have the following morphologies
 - yeast (unicellular)
 - molds (also known as filamentous fungi) (multicellular with hyphae)
 - dimorphic fungi (found as mold at room temperature but grow as yeast-like forms at body temperature)

Table 4. Membrane and Cell Wall Compositions

	Membrane Sterol	Cell Wall
Bacteria	–	Peptidoglycan
Human Cell	Cholesterol	–
Fungi	Ergosterol	Chitin (complex glycopolysaccharide)

Mechanisms of Fungal Disease

- primary fungal infection by
 - overgrowth of normal flora (e.g. *Candida* species)
 - inhalation of fungal spores
 - traumatic inoculation into skin
- toxins produced by fungi (e.g. ingestion aflatoxins)
- allergic reactions to fungi (e.g. bronchopulmonary aspergillosis)

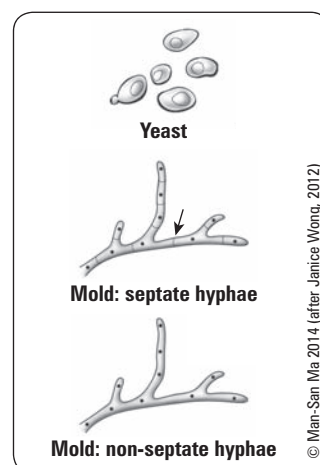


Figure 4. Common fungus morphology

Parasitology

Parasite Basics

- parasite:** an organism that lives in or on another organism (host) and damages the host in the process
- parasites with complex life cycles require more than one host to reproduce
 - reservoir host: maintains a parasite and may be the source for human infection
 - intermediate host: maintains the asexual stage of a parasite or allows development of the parasite to proceed to the larval stage
 - definitive host: allows the parasite to develop to the adult stage where reproduction occurs
- 2 major groups of parasites: protozoa and helminths
- see [Tables 26 and 27](#) for examples of clinically important parasites

Table 5. Differences Between Protozoa and Helminths

Protozoa	Helminths
Unicellular	Multicellular
Motile trophozoite → inactive cyst	Adult → egg → larva
Multiplication	No multiplication
± Eosinophilia	Eosinophilia (proportional to extent of tissue invasion)*
Indefinite life span	Definite life span

*Adult ascaris (roundworm) does not cause eosinophilia

Characteristics of Parasitic Disease

- symptoms are usually proportional to parasite burden
- tissue damage is due to the parasite and host immune response
- chronic infections may occur with or without overt disease
- immunocompromised hosts are more susceptible to manifestations of infection, reactivation of latent infections, and more severe disease
- eosinophilia may suggest a parasitic infection

Mechanisms of Parasitic Disease

- mechanical obstruction (e.g. ascariasis, clonorchiasis)
- competition with host for resources (e.g. anemia in hookworm disease, vitamin B₁₂ deficiency in diphyllorhynchiasis)
- cytotoxicity leading to abscesses and ulcers (e.g. amoebiasis, leishmaniasis)
- inflammatory
 - acute hypersensitivity (e.g. pneumonitis in Loeffler's syndrome)
 - delayed hypersensitivity (e.g. egg granulomas in schistosomiasis)
 - cytokine-mediated (systemic illness of malaria, disseminated strongyloidiasis)
- immune-mediated injury
 - autoimmune (e.g. myocarditis of Chagas disease, tissue destruction of mucocutaneous leishmaniasis)
 - immune complex (e.g. nephritis of malaria, schistosomiasis)

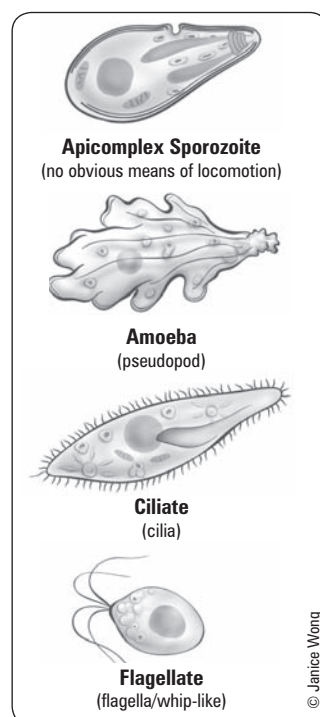


Figure 5. Classification of protozoa based on movement



Parasite sampling may need to be repeated on a number of occasions before infection can be ruled out

Transmission of Infectious Diseases

Table 6. Mechanism of Transmission

Mechanism	Mode of Transmission	Examples	Preventative Measure*
Contact	Direct physical contact, or indirect contact with a fomite	Person-to-person (MRSA) Sexual (<i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> , <i>C. trachomatis</i> , HSV, HIV) Blood-borne (HIV, HBV, HCV)	For patients in health care facilities: Contact precautions (see <i>Prevention of Infectious Diseases</i>) Barrier precautions Safe needlestick/sharp practices
Droplet/Contact	Respiratory droplets (>5 µm) can be projected short distances (≤2 m) and deposit on mucosal surfaces of the recipient (e.g. by coughing, sneezing, or talking); transmission can also occur by direct physical contact of respiratory fluids or indirect contact with a fomite contaminated with respiratory fluids	Influenza, mumps <i>N. meningitidis</i> , <i>Bordetella pertussis</i>	For patients in health care facilities: Contact/droplet precautions (see <i>Prevention of Infectious Diseases</i>)
Airborne	Airborne droplet nuclei (<5 µm) remain infectious over time and distance	<i>M. tuberculosis</i> , VZV, measles	For patients in health care facilities: Airborne precautions (see <i>Prevention of Infectious Diseases</i>)
Food/Waterborne	Ingestion of contaminated food or water	<i>V. cholerae</i> , <i>Salmonella</i> , HAV, HEV	Prophylactic vaccinations where available Ensure clean food/water supply For patients in health care facilities: Contact precautions used for admitted patients with fecal incontinence when stool is unable to be contained in diapers
Zoonotic	Disease transmission from animals to humans either directly or via an insect vector	Animals (rabies, Q fever) Arthropods (malaria, Lyme disease)	Prophylactic medications, vaccinations Protective clothing, insect repellent, mosquito nets, tick inspection
Vertical	Spread of disease from parent to offspring	Congenital syndromes (TORCH infections) Perinatal (HIV, HBV, GBS)	Prenatal screening Prophylactic treatment

*see *Prevention of Infectious Diseases* for further detail



Duodenal Infusion of Donor Feces for Recurrent *Clostridium difficile*

NEJM 2013;368:407-415

Study: RCT stopped after an interim analysis.

Population: 43 patients at least 18 yr of age, with a life expectancy of at least 3 mo, and a relapse of *C. difficile* after at least one course of adequate antibiotic therapy (≥10 d of vancomycin at a dose of ≥125 mg 4/d or ≥10 d of metronidazole at a dose of 500 mg 3/d).

Intervention: Initial vancomycin regimen (500 mg orally 4/d for 4 d) followed by a bowel lavage and infusion of a donor feces solution through a nasoduodenal tube, standard vancomycin regimen (500 mg orally 4/d for 14 d), or a standard vancomycin regimen with bowel lavage.

Primary Outcome: Resolution of diarrhea associated with *C. difficile* infection without relapse after 10 wk.

Results: 81% of patients in the group with duodenal infusion of donor feces had a resolution of *C. difficile*-associated diarrhea after the first infusion. 31% of patients receiving vancomycin alone and 23% of patients receiving vancomycin with bowel lavage had a resolution of *C. difficile*-associated diarrhea. After the infusion, patients showed greater fecal bacterial diversity similar to healthy donors.

Conclusions: Infusion of donor feces was more effective for the treatment of recurrent *C. difficile* infection than the use of vancomycin alone or vancomycin with bowel lavage.

Prevention of Infectious Diseases

Overview

- efforts to control the spread of infectious disease involves **infection control and prevention measures** in health care settings and **public health measures** outside of health care settings

Infection Control and Prevention Measures

- surveillance for important nosocomial infections or problem organisms (such as: surgical site infections, vascular access-related infections, *C. difficile* infections, colonization or infections due to antimicrobial resistant organisms e.g. methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*). (see [Population and Community Health, PH19](#) for a definition of active vs. passive surveillance)
- routine practices (also known as standard precautions) used for all patients
 - perform hand hygiene before and after seeing patient or patient environment contact, before aseptic procedures, and after body fluid exposure
 - use gloves for any encounter with body fluids
 - wear eye protection, mask, and gown for any procedures likely to generate splashes of body fluids
 - do not recap sharps by hand and dispose of sharps in puncture-resistant container near point-of-use
 - use mouthpieces for resuscitator bags instead of using mouth-to-mouth resuscitation
 - discard soiled waste properly
 - ensure routine cleaning and disinfection of patient environment and patient care equipment
- additional precautions used for various syndromes or known infectious diseases
 - contact precautions (private room, gown, gloves to be used routinely) (e.g. used for patients with *C. difficile*)
 - droplet/contact precautions (private room, gown, gloves, eye protection, fluid-resistant mask) (e.g. used for influenza, meningitis due to *Neisseria meningitidis*)
 - airborne precautions (negative-pressure private room with door closed, fit-tested N95 respirator) (e.g. used for TB, measles, VZV)



- decolonization (e.g. topical and oral antimicrobials be used in an attempt to decolonize methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* [MRSA])
- outbreak investigations (see [Population and Community Health, PH19](#))



Public Health Measures

- vaccination
- post-exposure prophylaxis (e.g. use of immunoglobulin or vaccination post-exposure to infectious disease agents in an attempt to reduce the likelihood or severity of disease)
- reportable diseases (e.g. list of reportable communicable diseases that physicians are legally required to report to local public health officials) (see [Population and Community Health, PH25](#))
- contact tracing (tracking of individuals who have been exposed to a person with a communicable disease during its period of communicability)
- quarantine (restriction of the activities of well persons who have been exposed to a person with a communicable disease during its period of communicability to prevent disease transmission during the incubation period if infection should occur)
- outbreak investigation (see [Population and Community Health, PH19](#))



Nosocomial Infections

- definition:** infections acquired >48 h after admission to a healthcare facility or within 30 d from discharge
- risk factors: prolonged hospital stay, antibiotic use, surgery, hemodialysis, intensive care, colonization with a resistant organism, immunodeficiency
- patients with nosocomial infections have higher mortality, longer hospital stays, and higher healthcare costs
- hand hygiene is an essential precaution

Table 7. Common Nosocomial Infectious Agents

Bacteria	Characteristics	Manifestation	Investigations	Management
Methicillin-Resistant <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> (MRSA)	Gram-positive cocci	Skin and soft tissue infection Bacteremia Pneumonia Endocarditis Osteomyelitis	Admission screening culture from nares and peri-anal region identifies colonization Culture of infection site CXR	Contact precautions For infection: vancomycin or daptomycin or linezolid To decolonize: 2% chlorhexidine wash OD (+ rifampin + doxycycline + mupirocin cream bid to nares) x 7 d
Vancomycin-Resistant <i>Enterococcus</i> (VRE)	Majority are <i>E. faecium</i> Resistant if minimum inhibitory concentration of vancomycin is ≥ 32 $\mu\text{g/mL}$	Rarely causes disease in healthy people UTI Bacteremia Endocarditis Meningitis	Rectal or perirectal swab OR stool culture for colonization Culture of infected site	Contact precautions Ampicillin if susceptible Otherwise, linezolid, tigecycline, or daptomycin depending on site of infection No effective decolonization methods identified
<i>Clostridium difficile</i> (<i>C. difficile</i>)	Releases exotoxins A and B Hypervirulent strain has been responsible for increase in incidence and severity	Fever, nausea, abdominal pain Watery diarrhea \pm occult blood Pseudomembranous colitis Severe: toxic megacolon Risk of bowel perforation Associated with antibiotic use Leukocytosis	Stool PCR Stool immunoassay for toxins A and B AXR (may see colonic dilatation) Sigmoidoscopy for pseudomembranes; avoid if known colonic dilatation	Contact precautions Stop culprit antibiotic therapy Supportive therapy (IV fluids) Mild-moderate disease: metronidazole PO/IV x 10-14 d Severe disease: vancomycin PO x 10-14 d Toxic megacolon: metronidazole IV + vancomycin PO (as above) and general surgery consult
Extended Spectrum β-Lactam Producers (ESBL producing <i>E. coli</i>, <i>K. pneumoniae</i>)	Resistant to most β -lactam producing antibiotics e.g. penicillins, aztreonam, and cephalosporins	UTI Pulmonary infection Bacteremia Liver abscess in susceptible patients Meningitis	Blood, sputum, urine, or aspirated body fluid culture Imaging at infection site (CXR, CT, U/S)	Carbapenems or non- β -lactam antibiotics can be used for empiric therapy

Respiratory Infections



Pneumonia

- see [Pediatrics](#), P90
- see [Family Medicine](#), FM18



Definition

- infection of the lung parenchyma

Etiology and Risk Factors

- impaired lung defenses
 - poor cough/gag reflex (e.g. illness, drug-induced)
 - impaired mucociliary transport (e.g. smoking, cystic fibrosis)
 - immunosuppression (e.g. steroids, chemotherapy, AIDS/HIV, DM, transplant, cancer)
- increased risk of aspiration
 - impaired swallowing mechanism (e.g. impaired consciousness, neurologic illness causing dysphagia, mechanical obstruction)
- no organism identified in 75% of hospitalized cases, and >90% of ambulatory cases



When *Klebsiella* causes pneumonia; see red currant jelly sputum



3 As of *Klebsiella*

Aspiration pneumonia
Alcoholics and diabetics
Abscess in lungs



Aspiration pneumonias more commonly manifest as infiltrates in the right middle or lower lobes due to the larger caliber and more vertical orientation of the right bronchus

Table 8. Common Organisms in Pneumonia

Community Acquired	Nosocomial	Aspiration	HIV-associated	Alcoholic
Typical Bacteria <i>Streptococcus pneumoniae</i> <i>Moraxella catarrhalis</i> <i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> GAS Atypical Bacteria <i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i> <i>Chlamydia pneumoniae</i> <i>Legionella pneumophila</i> Viral Influenza virus Adenovirus	Enteric GNB (<i>E. coli</i>) <i>Pseudomonas aeruginosa</i> <i>S. aureus</i> (including MRSA)	Oral anerobes (<i>Bacteroides</i>) Enteric GNB (<i>E. coli</i>) <i>S. aureus</i> Gastric contents (chemical pneumonitis)	<i>Pneumocystis jiroveci</i> Fungi (<i>Cryptococcus</i>) <i>Nocardia</i> CMV HSV TB	<i>Klebsiella</i> Enteric GNB <i>S. aureus</i> Oral anaerobes (aspiration) TB

*See [Pediatrics](#) P90, Table 45 for Common Causes and Treatment of Pneumonia at Different Ages

Clinical Features

- cough (\pm sputum), fever, pleuritic chest pain, dyspnea, tachypnea, tachycardia
- elderly often present atypically; altered LOC is sometimes the only sign
- evidence of consolidation (dullness to percussion, bronchial breath sounds, crackles)
- features of parapneumonic effusion (decreased air entry, dullness to percussion) (see [Respirology](#), R21)
- complications: ARDS, lung abscess, parapneumonic effusion/empyema, pleuritis \pm hemorrhage



Investigations

- pulse oximetry to assess severity of respiratory distress
- CBC and differential, electrolytes, urea, Cr, ABG (if respiratory distress), troponin/CK, LFTs, urinalysis
- sputum Gram stain/C&S, blood C&S, \pm serology/viral detection, \pm pleural fluid C&S (if effusion >5 cm or respiratory distress)
- CXR \pm CT chest shows distribution (lobar consolidation or interstitial pattern), extent of infiltrate \pm cavitation
- bronchoscopy \pm washings for:
 - (1) severely ill patients refractory to treatment or (2) immunocompromised patients

Treatment

- ABC, O₂, IV fluids, consider salbutamol (nebulized or MDI)
- determine prognosis and need for hospitalization and antibiotics



Lobar Pneumonia



Bronchopneumonia



Interstitial Pneumonia

©Stuart Jantzen 2012

Figure 6. Lobar, broncho, and interstitial pneumonia

Criteria for Hospitalization

Table 9. CURB 65 Score – Pneumonia Clinical Prediction Tool

Component	Measurement(s)	Points	Total Score	Mortality	Disposition
Confusion	Altered mental status	1	0-1	<5%	Can treat as outpatient
Urea/BUN	Urea >7 mmol/L or BUN >20 mg/dL	1	2-3	5-15%	Consider hospitalization
Respiratory Rate	>30 breaths/min	1	4-5	15-30%	Consider ICU
Blood Pressure	Systolic <90 or diastolic <60 mmHg	1			
Age	65 or older	1			

Table 10. IDSA/ATS Community Acquired Pneumonia Treatment Guidelines 2007

Setting	Circumstances	Treatment
Outpatient	Previously well	Macrolide ¹
	No antibiotic use in last 3 mo	OR Doxycycline
Inpatient	Comorbidities ²	Respiratory fluoroquinolone ³
	Antibiotic use in last 3 mo (use different class)	OR β -lactam ⁴ + Macrolide ¹
ICU	Ward	Respiratory fluoroquinolone ³
	ICU	OR β -lactam ⁴ + Macrolide ¹

1. **Macrolide:** azithromycin, clarithromycin, erythromycin2. **Comorbidities:** chronic heart, lung, liver, or renal disease, DM, alcoholism, malignancy, asplenia, immunocompromised3. **Respiratory fluoroquinolone:** moxifloxacin, gemifloxacin, levofloxacin4. **β -lactam:** cefotaxime, ceftriaxone, ampicillin-sulbactam

IDSA: Infectious Diseases Society of America

ATS: American Thoracic Society

Table 11. IDSA/ATS Hospital/Ventilator/Healthcare-Associated Pneumonia Treatment Guidelines 2005

Setting	Treatment
No risk factors for multidrug resistance (MDR)	ceftriaxone
Early onset (<5 d)	OR levofloxacin, moxifloxacin, or ciprofloxacin
	OR ampicillin/sulbactam
	OR ertapenem
Late onset disease (≥ 5 d) or	antipseudomonal cephalosporin (cefepime or ceftazidime)
With risk factors for MDR:	OR
Antibiotic use in last 3 mo	antipseudomonal carbapenem (imipenem or meropenem)
High frequency of antibiotic resistance in the community	OR
or in the specific hospital unit	β -lactam/ β -lactamase inhibitor (piperacillin/tazobactam)
Hospitalization >1 d in past 3 mo	PLUS
Residence in a nursing home or extended care facility	antipseudomonal fluoroquinolone (ciprofloxacin or
Dialysis within 30 d	levofloxacin)
Home wound care	OR
Family member with multidrug-resistant pathogen	aminoglycoside (amikacin, gentamicin, or tobramycin)
Immunosuppressive disease and/or therapy	PLUS for MRSA
	linezolid or vancomycin
	PLUS for <i>Legionella</i>
	ensure regime includes either a macrolide or a fluoroquinolone

Note: Always use directed therapy against specific organism if one is found on culture (e.g. blood, sputum, etc.)

Prevention

- vaccine for influenza A and B recommended annually for all ages
- two pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccines available: 23 valent (indicated for all adults) and 13 valent (indicated for adults >50 yr)
- the CDC recommends giving Prevnar-13* to all adults at high risk for invasive pneumococcal disease (>65 yr, 19-64 with chronic disease, smokers, residents of long-term care facilities, Aboriginal peoples 50-64 yr)



Does This Adult Patient Have Pneumonia? From The Rational Clinical Examination

JAMA 2009; <http://www.jamaevidence.com/content/3485708>

Study: Systematic review of articles assessing the sensitivity and specificity of clinical exam maneuvers for the diagnosis of adult community acquired pneumonia.

Results: The presence of fever or immunosuppression had a positive likelihood ratio (+LR) of 2, while a history of dementia had a +LR of 3; however, these traits are not confirmatory. The presence of an abnormality in any vital sign, including tachycardia, tachypnea, or fever had a +LR ranging from 2-4, which was not significantly affected by different cut-points. The absence of vital sign abnormality had a -LR ranging from 0.5-0.8. The combination of respiratory rate <30/min, heart rate <100/min, and temperature <37.8°C had a -LR of 0.18. Findings on chest exam raised the likelihood of diagnosis, but were uncommonly seen in studies. For example, presence of asymmetric respirations essentially confirmed the diagnosis, but was only present in 4% of patients. In patients with a clinical diagnosis, but normal radiograph, only ~10% will develop radiographic findings in 72 h.

Conclusions: Evidence suggests no single item on clinical history or physical exam is sufficient to rule in or out pneumonia without chest x-ray. Vital sign abnormalities were correlated with a diagnosis of pneumonia. Findings on chest exam significantly raised the likelihood of pneumonia, but were uncommonly seen in studies.



Does This Patient Have Ventilator-Associated Pneumonia?

JAMA 2007;297:1583-1593

Study: Systematic review of articles describing the precision and accuracy of clinical, radiographic, and laboratory data to diagnose bacterial ventilator-associated pneumonia, which is the most common and fatal nosocomial complication of intensive care.

Results: The presence of a new infiltrate on radiography with 2 or more of purulent sputum, fever, or increased white blood cell count increases the likelihood of ventilator-associated pneumonia (LR 2.8, 95% CI 0.97-7.9). Fewer than 50% neutrophils on the cell count of lower pulmonary secretions make ventilator-associated pneumonia unlikely (LR 0.05-0.10).

Conclusions: Routine bedside evaluation with radiographic information provides suggestive, but not definitive, evidence of ventilator-associated pneumonia. Clinicians need to consider additional tests to provide further evidence for ventilator-associated pneumonia.

Influenza

Definitions and Etiology

- influenza viruses A and B
- influenza A further divided into subtypes based on envelope glycoproteins:
 - hemagglutinin (H) and neuraminidase (N)
- seasonal (epidemic) influenza
 - main circulating influenza viruses: human-origin A (H1N1) and B (H3N2) subtypes
 - associated with antigenic drift (gradual, minor changes due to random point mutations)
 - may create a new viral subtype resulting in a seasonal epidemic (disease prevalence is greater than expected)
 - outbreaks occur mainly during winter months (late December to early March)
- pandemic influenza
 - associated with antigenic shift: abrupt, major changes due to mixing of two different viral strains from different hosts
 - may create a new viral strain resulting in a pandemic outbreak (worldwide)
 - antigenic shift occurs only in type A
- transmission: droplet, possibly airborne

Table 12. Difference Between Influenza Strains

	Influenza A	Influenza B
Host(s)	Humans, birds, mammals	Humans only
Antigenic drift	Yes, new strains	Yes, new strains
Antigenic shift	Yes, new subtypes	No
Epidemics	Yes	Yes
Pandemics	Yes	No

Clinical Features

- incubation period 1-4 d
- acute onset of systemic (fever, chills, myalgias, arthralgias, headache, fatigue) and respiratory symptoms (cough, dyspnea, pharyngitis)
- complications: respiratory (viral pneumonia, secondary bacterial pneumonia, otitis media, sinusitis), muscular (rhabdomyolysis, myositis), neurologic (encephalitis, meningitis, transverse myelitis, Guillain-Barré syndrome)

Investigations

- diagnosis is primarily clinical based on symptoms during the influenza season
- nasopharyngeal swabs for rapid antigen detection, DFA (Direct Fluorescent Antigen) detection, RT-PCR (gold standard)
- serology: rarely used for clinical management

Treatment and Prevention

- primarily supportive unless severe infection or high-risk of complications (e.g. elderly, pulmonary or cardiac disease)
- neuraminidase inhibitors: zanamivir (Relenza®) and oseltamivir (Tamiflu®) for treatment and prophylaxis against types A and B
 - decreases duration (by 1-2 d) and severity of symptoms if given within <48 h of onset
 - treatment beyond 48 h time window may be warranted in immunosuppressed and critically ill patients
- M2-inhibitors: amantidine/rimantidine for treatment and prophylaxis against type A only no longer recommended due to increased resistance
- vaccine for influenza A and B viruses is recommended annually for all ages
 - vaccine is reformulated each year to reflect circulating influenza A and B strains



Beware! Do Not Confuse *H. influenzae* with Influenza Virus

H. influenzae: a bacterium (Types A, B, C, D, E, F, refer to capsule)
Influenza: a virus (Types A and B refer to strain)



Vaccines for Preventing Influenza in Healthy Adults

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2014;CD001269

Study: Meta-analysis of 90 RCTs and quasi-RCTs evaluating influenza vaccines compared to placebo in healthy individuals aged 16-65 yr.

Results: The preventative effect of inactivated influenza vaccine on healthy adults is small: 40 people would need a vaccination to avoid one influenza-like illness and 71 people would need a vaccination to prevent one case of influenza. 15.6% of unvaccinated vs. 9.9% of vaccinated people developed influenza-like symptoms: of these participants, only 2.4% and 1.1%, respectively, developed laboratory-confirmed influenza. Vaccination had a modest effect on working days lost, but no effects on hospitalization or complications. The effectiveness of live aerosol vaccinations on healthy adults is similar to that of inactivated influenza vaccines: 46 people would need a vaccination to avoid one influenza-like illness.

Conclusions: Influenza vaccines have a very modest effect in reducing influenza-like illness and working days lost in the general population.

Skin and Soft Tissue Infections

Cellulitis

Definition

- acute infection of the skin principally involving the dermis and subcutaneous tissue

Etiology

- common causative agents: *S. aureus*, β -hemolytic streptococci
- immunocompromised patients or water exposure: may also include GN rods and fungi
- risk factors:
 - trauma with direct inoculation, recent surgery
 - peripheral vascular disease, lymphedema diabetes, cracked skin in feet/toes (tinea pedis)

Clinical Features

- pain, edema, erythema with indistinct borders \pm regional lymphadenopathy, systemic symptoms (fevers, chills, malaise)
- can lead to ascending lymphangitis (visible red streaking in skin along lymphatics proximal to area of cellulitis)

Investigations

- CBC and differential, blood C&S if febrile
- skin swab ONLY if open wound with pus

Treatment

- antibiotics: cephalexin (broader coverage if risk factors for GN rods)
- if extensive erythema or systemic symptoms, consider cefazolin IV
- limb rest and elevation may help reduce swelling

Necrotizing Fasciitis

Definition

- life- and limb-threatening infection of the deep fascia characterized by rapid spread

Etiology

- Two main forms
 - Type I: polymicrobial infection – aerobes and anaerobes (e.g. *S. aureus*, *Bacteroides*, *Enterobacteriaceae*)
 - Type II: monomicrobial infection with GAS

Clinical Features

- pain out of proportion to clinical findings and beyond border of erythema
- edema, \pm crepitus (subcutaneous gas from anaerobes), \pm fever
- infection spreads rapidly
- patients may rapidly become very sick (tachycardia, hypotension, lightheadedness)
- late findings
 - skin turns dusky blue and black (secondary to thrombosis and necrosis)
 - induration, formation of hemorrhagic bullae

Investigations

- a clinical/surgical diagnosis – do NOT wait for results of investigations before beginning treatment
- blood and tissue C&S
- serum CK (elevated CK usually means myonecrosis – a late sign)
- plain film x-ray (soft tissue gas may be visualized)
- surgical exploration for debridement of infected tissue

Treatment

- resuscitation with IV fluids
- emergency surgical debridements to confirm diagnosis and remove necrotic tissue (may require amputation)
- IV antibiotics
 - unknown organism: meropenem or piperacillin/tazobactam + clindamycin IV \pm vancomycin if MRSA is considered
 - Type I (polymicrobial): piperacillin/tazobactam + clindamycin IV
 - Type II (monomicrobial): penicillin G + clindamycin IV
 - with Type II, evaluate for streptococcal toxic shock syndrome and the need for IVIg

Gastrointestinal Infections

Acute Diarrhea

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G15
- see [Pediatrics](#), P35
- see [Family Medicine](#), FM26

**Epidemiology**

- one of the top five leading causes of death worldwide, according to the World Health Organization
- significant morbidity in developed countries (over 900,000 hospitalizations in United States each year)

Definition

- passage of ≥ 3 loose or liquid stools/d OR >200 g stool/d for >2 d but ≤ 14 d

Approach to Acute Diarrhea

- rationale
 - the vast majority of acute diarrhea is caused by infection
 - in most cases, acute diarrheal illness is viral and/or self-limited, and lasts <3 d
 - investigations are costly and are necessary only in certain circumstances
- therefore, the evaluation of acute diarrhea involves:
 - identifying characteristics of the illness or patient that warrant further investigation
 - assessing volume status to determine appropriate method of rehydration
- see Figure 7

Physical Exam

- volume status: appearance, level of alertness, pulse, BP, orthostatic vitals, JVP, mucous membranes, skin turgor, capillary refill
- abdominal exam: pain, guarding, peritoneal signs

Treatment

- rehydration is mainstay of treatment
 - oral rehydration therapy
 - IV rehydration if oral intake insufficient to replace fluid loss
- antidiarrheal agents reduce duration of diarrhea: loperamide, bismuth salicylate
 - delays excretion of causative pathogens
 - contraindications: diarrhea with fever, bloody stool or diarrhea caused by *Clostridium difficile*
- antibiotic therapy is rarely indicated because:
 - most acute diarrheal illness is viral and self-limited
 - antibiotics can eradicate normal gut flora, predisposing patient to *C. difficile* infection
 - antibiotics prolong the shedding of *Salmonella* and other causes of bacterial diarrhea
 - in EHEC infection, antibiotics may increase the risk of HUS
 - indications for antibiotic therapy are shown in Figure 7

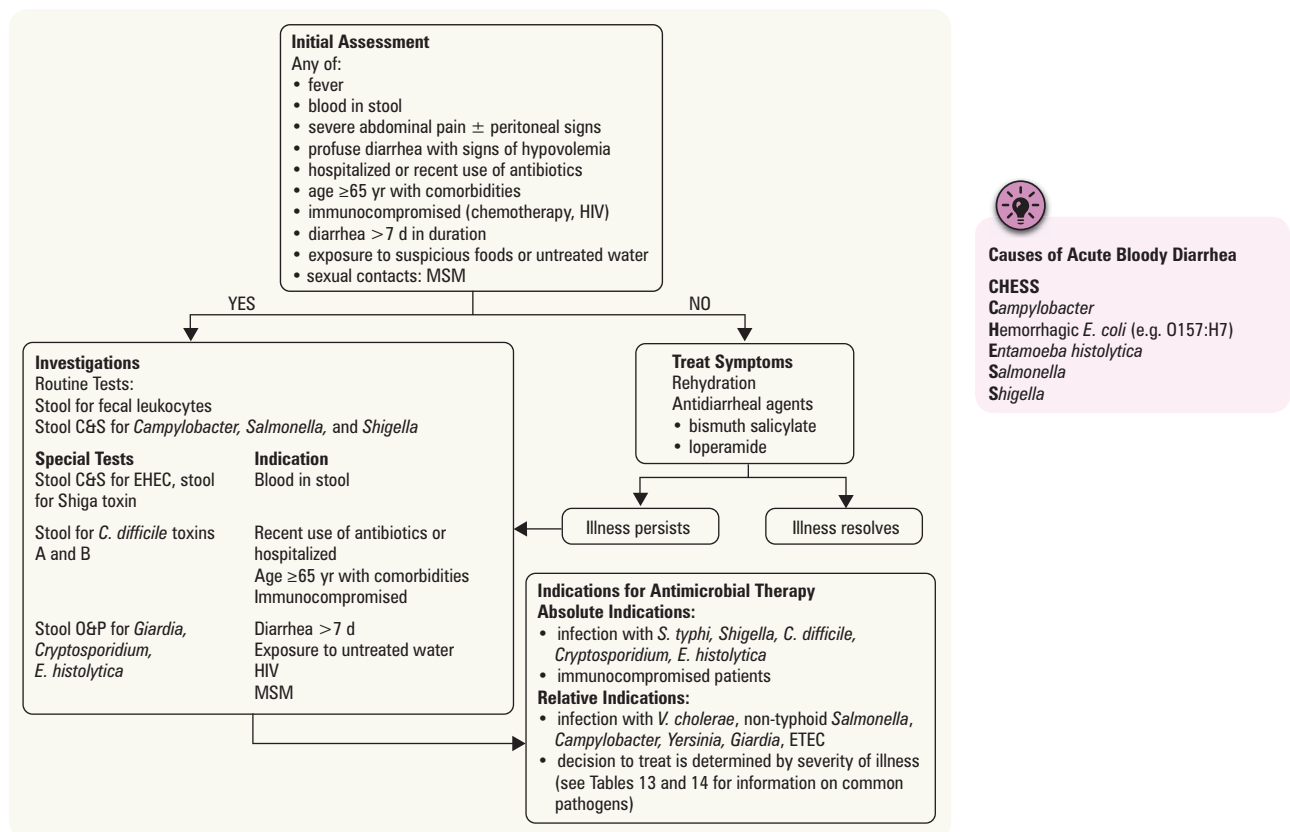


Figure 7. Approach to acute diarrhea

Table 13. Bacteria in Infectious Diarrhea

Pathogen	Source or Mode of Transmission	Incubation	Clinical Features				Duration	Antimicrobial Therapy	Notes
			Fever	Bloody Stool	Abdo Pain	N/V			
<i>B. cereus</i> – Type A (emetic)	Rice dishes	1-6 h	–	–	–	+	<12 h	None	Preformed exotoxin
<i>B. cereus</i> – Type B (diarrheal)	Meats, vegetables, dried beans, cereals	8-16 h	–	–	–	–	<24 h	None	Secondary endotoxin
<i>Campylobacter jejuni</i>	Uncooked meat, especially poultry	2-10 d	+	±	+	±	<1 wk	Macrolide or fluoroquinolone if diarrhea > 1 wk, bloody diarrhea, or immunocompromised	Most common bacterial cause of diarrhea in U.S. Associated with Guillain-Barré syndrome
<i>Clostridium difficile</i>	Can be normally present in colon in small numbers (primary risk factor for disease is exposure to antimicrobials)	Unclear	±	±	±	–	Variable	Discontinue offending antimicrobial agent, if possible 1st line – metronidazole (PO/IV) or vancomycin PO in severe cases 2nd line – vancomycin PO	Usually follows antibiotic treatment (especially clindamycin, fluoroquinolones, penicillins, cephalosporins) Can develop pseudomembranous colitis
<i>Clostridium perfringens</i>	Contaminated food, especially meat and poultry	8-12 h	±	–	+	–	<24 h	None	<i>Clostridium</i> spores are heat resistant Secondary enterotoxin
Enteroinvasive <i>E. coli</i> (EIEC)	Contaminated food/water	1-3 d	+	±	+	–	7-10 d	None	Relatively uncommon
Enterotoxigenic <i>E. coli</i> (ETEC)	Contaminated food/water	1-3 d	–	–	+	–	3 d	Fluoroquinolone or azithromycin for moderate to severe symptoms	Most common cause of traveler's diarrhea Heat-labile and heat-stable toxins
Enterohemorrhagic <i>E. coli</i> (EHEC/STEC) i.e. O157:H7	Contamination of hamburger, raw milk, drinking and recreational water	3-8 d	–	+	+	±	5-10 d	None: antibiotics increase risk of HUS	Shiga toxin production Monitor renal function: 10% develop HUS Antidiarrheals increase risk of HUS
<i>Salmonella typhi</i> <i>S. paratyphi</i> (i.e. Enteric Fever, Typhoid)	Fecal-oral Contaminated food/water, travel to endemic area	10-14 d	+	±	+	±	<5-7 d	Empiric treatment with ceftriaxone or azithromycin Fluoroquinolone resistance is increasing	<i>Salmonella typhi</i> : "Rose spot" rash (on anterior thorax, upper abdomen), fever, and abdominal pain precedes diarrhea
Non-typhoidal Salmonellosis <i>S. typhimurium</i> , <i>S. enteritidis</i>	Contaminated animal food products, especially eggs, poultry, meat, milk	12-72 h	+	±	+	+	3-7 d	Ciprofloxacin only in severe illness, extremes of age, joint prostheses, valvular heart disease, severe atherosclerosis, cancer, uremia	
<i>Shigella dysenteriae</i>	Fecal-oral Contaminated food/water	1-4 d	+	±	+	+	<1 wk	Fluoroquinolone	Very small inoculum needed for infection Complications include toxic megacolon, HUS Antidiarrheals may increase risk of toxic megacolon
<i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>	Unrefrigerated meat and dairy products (custard, pudding, potato salad, mayo)	2-4 h	–	–	+	+	1-2 d	None	Heat-stable preformed exotoxin
<i>Vibrio cholerae</i>	Contaminated food/water, especially shellfish	1-3 d	–	–	–	–	3-7 d	Tetracycline or quinolones (ciprofloxacin)	Massive watery diarrhea (1-3 L/d) Mortality <1% with treatment
<i>Yersinia</i>	Contaminated food Unpasteurized milk	5 d	+	±	+	±	Up to 3 wk	Fluoroquinolone only for severe illness	Majority of cases in children 1-4 yr Mesenteric adenitis and terminal ileitis can occur without diarrhea, mimicking appendicitis

Table 14. Parasites in Infectious Diarrhea

Pathogen	Source or Mode of Transmission	Incubation	Clinical Features				Duration	Antimicrobial Therapy	Notes
			Fever	Bloody Stool	Abdo Pain	N/V			
<i>Cryptosporidium</i>	Fecal-oral	7 d	±	–	–	+	1-20 d	Paromomycin + nitazoxanide	
<i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>	Worldwide endemic areas Fecal-oral	2-4 wk	±	+	–	+	Variable	Metronidazole + iodoquinol if symptomatic infection Only iodoquinol for asymptomatic cyst passage	If untreated, potential for liver abscess Sigmoidoscopy shows flat ulcers with yellow exudates
<i>Giardia lamblia</i>	Fecal-oral Contaminated food/water	1-4 wk	–	–	+	+	Variable	Metronidazole or nitazoxanide Treatment of asymptomatic carriers not recommended	Higher risk in: day care children, intake of untreated water ("beaver fever"), MSM, immunodeficiency (decreased IgA) May need duodenal biopsy

Table 15. Viruses in Infectious Diarrhea

Pathogen	Source or Mode of Transmission	Incubation	Clinical Features				Duration	Antimicrobial Therapy	Notes
			Fever	Bloody Stool	Abdo Pain	N/V			
Norovirus	Fecal-oral	24 h	–	–	+	+	24 h	None	Noroviruses includes Norwalk virus
Rotavirus	Fecal-oral	2-4 d	±	–	–	±	3-8 d	None	Can cause severe dehydration Virtually all children are infected by 3 yr of age Oral vaccine given at 2 and 4 mo of age

Traveler's Diarrhea

- see *Acute Diarrhea*, ID11

Epidemiology

- the most common illness to affect travelers
- up to 50% of travelers to developing countries affected in first 2 wk and 10-20% after returning home

Etiology

- bacterial (80-90%): *E. coli* most common (ETEC), *Campylobacter*, *Shigella*, *Salmonella*, *Vibrio* (non-cholera); wide regional variation (e.g. *Campylobacter* more common in Southeast Asia)
- viral: norovirus, rotavirus, and astrovirus account for 5-8%
- protozoal (rarely): *Giardia*, *Entamoeba histolytica*, *Cryptosporidium*, *Cyclospora* for ~10% in long-term travelers
- pathogen-negative traveler's diarrhea common despite exhaustive microbiological workup

Treatment

- rehydration is the mainstay of therapy
 - rehydrate with sealed beverages
 - in severe fluid loss use oral rehydration solutions (1 package in 1 L boiled or treated water)
- treat symptoms: antidiarrheal agents (e.g. bismuth salicylate, loperamide)
- empiric antibiotics in moderate or severe illness: ciprofloxacin or azithromycin or rifaximin
 - note: there is increasing fluoroquinolone resistance in causative agents, especially in Southeast Asia



Bismuth salicylate (Pepto-Bismol®) can cause patients to have black stools, which may be mistaken for melena

Prevention

- proper hygiene practices
 - avoid consumption of: foods or beverages from establishments with unhygienic conditions (e.g. street vendors), raw fruits or vegetables without a peel, raw or undercooked meat and seafood
 - avoid untreated water
- bismuth salicylate (Pepto-Bismol®): 60% effective (2 tablets qid according to CDC website)
- CDC Guidelines: antibiotic prophylaxis not recommended
 - increased risk of infection with resistant organisms

- high risk groups (e.g. immunocompromised) likely to be infected with pathogen not covered by standard antimicrobial agents
- Dukoral®: oral vaccine that offers protection against *V. cholerae* (efficacy ~80%) and ETEC (efficacy ~50-67%); the CDC does not recommend it for routine use in travelers

Chronic Diarrhea

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G16



Peptic Ulcer Disease (*H. pylori*)

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G12



Bone and Joint Infections

Septic Arthritis

Routes of Infection

- hematogenous (adults)
- contiguous osteomyelitis (children)
- direct inoculation via skin/trauma
- iatrogenic (surgery, arthroscopy, arthrocentesis)

Etiology

- gonococcal
 - *N. gonorrhoeae*: previously accounted for 75% of septic arthritis in young sexually active adults
- non-gonococcal
 - *S. aureus*: affects all ages, rapidly destructive, accounts for most non-gonococcal cases of septic arthritis in adults (especially in those with rheumatoid arthritis)
 - *Streptococcus* species (Group A and B)
 - Gram-negatives: affects neonates, elderly, IV drug users, immunocompromised
 - *S. pneumoniae*: affects children
 - *Kingella kingae*: affects children aged <2 yr since Hib immunization (Hib possible cause in unvaccinated children)
 - *Salmonella* spp.: characteristic of sickle cell disease
 - coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus* species: prosthetic joints
- if culture negative: *Borrelia* spp. (Lyme disease) or *Tropheryma whipplei* (Whipple's disease)

Risk Factors

- gonococcal
 - age (<40 yr), multiple partners, unprotected intercourse, MSM
- non-gonococcal
 - bacteremia (extra-articular infection with hematogenous seeding, endocarditis)
 - prosthetic joints/recent joint surgery
 - underlying joint disease (rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis)
 - immunocompromise (DM, chronic kidney disease, alcoholism, cirrhosis)
 - loss of skin integrity (cutaneous ulcer, skin infection)
 - age >80 yr

Clinical Features of Gonococcal Arthritis

- two forms (although overlap often)
 - bacteremic form
 - ♦ systemic symptoms: fever, malaise, chills
 - ♦ gonococcal triad: migratory polyarthralgias, tenosynovitis, dermatitis (pustular skin lesions)
 - septic arthritis form
 - ♦ local symptoms in involved joint: swelling, warmth, pain, inability to bear weight, marked decreased in range of motion (see [Rheumatology](#), RH3 for differential diagnosis)

Clinical Features of Non-Gonococcal Arthritis

- acute onset of pain, swelling, warmth, decreased range of motion ± fever, chills
- most often in large weight-bearing joints (knee, hip, ankle) and wrists
- usually monoarticular (polyarticular risk factors: rheumatoid arthritis, endocarditis, GBS)



Medical Emergency

Septic arthritis is a medical emergency! If untreated, rapid joint destruction will occur



Disseminated Gonococcal Infection Triad

- Migratory arthralgias
- Tenosynovitis next to inflamed joint
- Pustular skin lesions



Investigations

- consider rheumatologic causes for monoarthritis (see [Rheumatology, RH3](#))
- gonococcal: blood C&S, as well as endocervical, urethral, rectal, and oropharyngeal testing
- non-gonococcal: blood C&S
- arthrocentesis (synovial fluid analysis) is mandatory: CBC and differential, Gram stain, C&S, examine for crystals
 - infectious = opaque, increased WBCs ($>15,000/\text{mm}^3$: likelihood of infection increases with increasing WBCs), PMNs $>90\%$, culture positive
 - growth of *N. gonorrhoeae* from synovial fluid is successful in $<50\%$ of cases
- \pm plain x-ray: assess for osteomyelitis, provides baseline to monitor treatment

Treatment

- medical
 - empiric IV antibiotics (vancomycin + ceftriaxone) – delay may result in joint destruction
 - Gram stain guides subsequent treatment
 - gonococcal: ceftriaxone + azithromycin, for concurrent treatment of *C. trachomatis*
 - non-gonococcal: antibiotics against *Streptococcus* spp. (2 wk IV f/b PO), *S. aureus* (4 wk IV minimum), or GNB (4 wk)
- surgical drainage if: (see [Orthopedics, OR10](#))
 - persistent positive joint cultures on repeat arthrocentesis
 - hip joint involvement
 - prosthetic joint
- daily joint aspirations until culture sterile; no need to give intra-articular antibiotics
- physiotherapy

Prognosis

- gonococcal: responds well after 24-48 h of initiating antibiotics (usually complete recovery)
- non-gonococcal: up to 50% morbidity (decreased joint function/mobility)



Intra-articular steroids are contraindicated until septic arthritis has been excluded



Diabetic Foot Infections

Etiology

- neuropathy, peripheral vascular disease, and hyperglycemia contribute to foot ulcers that heal poorly and are predisposed to infection
- organisms in mild infection: *S. aureus*, *Streptococcus* spp.
- organisms in moderate/severe infection: polymicrobial with aerobes (*S. aureus*, *Streptococcus*, *Enterococcus*, GNB) and anaerobes (*Peptostreptococcus*, *Bacteroides*, *Clostridium*)

Clinical Features

- not all ulcers are infected
- consider infection if: probe to bone (see below), ulcer present >30 d, recurrent ulcers, trauma, PVD, prior amputation, loss of protective sensation, renal disease, history of walking barefoot
- diagnosis of infected ulcer: ≥ 2 of the cardinal signs of inflammation (redness, warmth, swelling, pain) or the presence of pus
- \pm crepitus, osteomyelitis, systemic toxicity
- visible bone or probe to bone \rightarrow osteomyelitis
- infection severity:
 - mild = superficial (no bone/joint involvement)
 - moderate = deep (beneath superficial fascia, involving bone/joint) or erythema >2 cm
 - severe = infection in a patient with systemic toxicity (fevers, tachypnea, leukocytosis, tachycardia, hypotension)

Investigations

- curettage specimen from ulcer base, aspirate from an abscess or bone biopsy (results from superficial swabs do not represent organisms responsible for deeper infection)
- blood C&S if febrile
- assess for osteomyelitis by x-ray (although not sensitive in early stages) or MRI if high clinical suspicion
 - if initial x-ray normal, repeat 2-4 wk after initiating treatment to increase test sensitivity

Treatment

- evaluate for early surgical debridement \pm revascularization or amputation
- eliminate/reduce pressure and provide regular local wound care
- mild: cephalexin or clindamycin
- moderate: clindamycin + ciprofloxacin or moxifloxacin PO, ceftriaxone or ertapenem IV \pm MRSA coverage
- severe: piperacillin/tazobactam or meropenem IV \pm vancomycin if MRSA known or suspected
- encourage glycemic control



Does This Patient with Diabetes Have Osteomyelitis of the Lower Extremity?
JAMA 2008;299:806-813

Study: Systematic literature review, 21 studies.
Population: 1,027 adult patients with DM being investigated for osteomyelitis.

Intervention: Various aspects of history, physical exam, laboratory tests, and diagnostic imaging studies vs. bone biopsy.

Primary Outcome: Diagnostic utility.

Results: No studies examined any part of history taking. Temperature, ulcer characteristics (erythema, swelling, purulence), elevated WBC, skin swabs, and soft tissue cultures were not useful. Nuclear imaging has poor specificity for osteomyelitis (62-88.5%), and MRIs have greater accuracy in detecting osteomyelitis.

Finding	(+) LR	(-) LR
Visualization of bone	9.2	0.70
Ulcer area >2 cm ²	7.2	0.48
Probe-to-bone	6.4	0.39
Clinical judgment	5.5	0.54
ESR >70 mm/h	11	NS*
Plain radiographs	2.3	0.63
MRI	3.8	0.14

*NS = not significant

Osteomyelitis

- see [Orthopedics](#), OR10



Cardiac Infections



Infective Endocarditis

Definition

- infection of cardiac endothelium, most commonly the valves
- classifications: acute vs. subacute, native valve vs. prosthetic valve, right-sided vs. left-sided
- leaflet vegetations that are comprised of platelet-fibrin thrombi, WBCs, and bacteria

Risk Factors and Etiology

- predisposing conditions
 - **high risk:** prosthetic cardiac valve, previous IE, congenital heart disease (unrepaired, repaired within 6 mo, repaired with defects), cardiac transplant with valve disease (surgically constructed systemic-to-pulmonary shunts or conduits)
 - moderate risk: other congenital cardiac defects, acquired valvular dysfunction, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
 - low/no risk: secundum ASD or surgically repaired ASD < VSD, PDA, MV prolapse, ischemic heart disease, previous CABG
 - opportunity for bacteremia: IVDU, indwelling venous catheter, hemodialysis, poor dentition, DM, HIV
- frequency of valve involvement MV >> AV > TV > PV
 - but in 50% of IVDU-related IE the tricuspid valve is involved



MV mitral valve
AV aortic valve
TV tricuspid valve
PV pulmonic valve



Etiology of Culture-Negative Endocarditis

- **HACEK (fastidious Gram-Negative bacilli)**

Haemophilus parainfluenzae
Aggregatibacter aphrophilus/
Aggregatibacter
actinomycetemcomitans
Cardiobacterium hominis
Eikenella corrodens
Kingella kingae

- *Coxiella burnetii*
- *Bartonella* species
- *Tropheryma whippelii*
- Fungi
- Mycobacteria

Table 16. Microbial Etiology of Infective Endocarditis Based on Risk Factors

Native Valve	IVDU	Prosthetic Valve (recent surgery <2 mo)	Prosthetic Valve (remote surgery >2 mo)
<i>Streptococcus</i>¹ (36%)	<i>S. aureus</i> (68%)	<i>S. aureus</i> (36%)	<i>Streptococcus</i> (20%)
<i>S. aureus</i>⁴ (28%)	<i>Streptococcus</i> (13%)	<i>S. epidermidis</i> (17%)	<i>S. aureus</i> (20%)
<i>Enterococcus</i> (11%)	<i>Enterococcus</i>	Other	<i>S. epidermidis</i> (20%)
<i>S. epidermidis</i>	GNB	<i>Enterococcus</i>	<i>Enterococcus</i> (13%)
GNB	<i>Candida</i>	GNB	Other ²
Other ²	Other ³	Other ²	

Organisms in bold are the most common isolates.

1. *Streptococcus* includes mainly Viridans group *streptococci*

2. Other includes less common organisms such as:

- *Streptococcus bovis* (usually associated with underlying GI malignancy, cirrhosis)
- Culture-negative organisms including nutritionally-deficient *streptococci*, HACEK, *Bartonella*, *Coxiella*, *Chlamydia*, *Legionella*, *Brucella*
- *Candida*

3. IVDU endocarditis pathogens depend on substance used to dilute the drugs (i.e. tap water = *Pseudomonas*, saliva = oral flora, toilet water = GI flora)

Clinical Features

- systemic
 - fever (80-90%), chills, weakness, rigors, night sweats, weight loss, anorexia
- cardiac
 - dyspnea, chest pain, clubbing (subacute)
 - regurgitant murmur (new onset or increased intensity)
 - signs of CHF (secondary to acute MR, AR)
- embolic/vascular
 - petechiae over legs, splinter hemorrhages (linear, reddish-brown lesion within nail bed)
 - Janeway lesions (painless, 5 mm, erythematous, hemorrhagic pustular lesions on soles/palms)
 - focal neurological signs (CNS emboli), headache (mycotic aneurysm)
 - splenomegaly (subacute)
 - microscopic hematuria, flank pain (renal emboli) ± active sediment
- immune complex
 - Osler's nodes (painful, raised, red/brown, 3-15 mm on digits)
 - glomerulonephritis
 - arthritis
 - Roth's spots (retinal hemorrhage with pale center)

Diagnosis

- Modified Duke Criteria, see [Table 17](#)
 - definitive diagnosis if: 2 major, OR 1 major + 3 minor, OR 5 minor
 - possible diagnosis if: 1 major + 1 minor, OR 3 minor



Clinical Features of Infective Endocarditis

FROM JANE

Fever
Roth's spots
Osler's nodes
Murmur
Janeway lesions
Anemia
Nail-bed hemorrhages (i.e. splinter hemorrhages)
Emboli

Table 17. Modified Duke Criteria

Major Criteria (2)
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Positive blood cultures for IE <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Typical microorganisms for IE from 2 separate blood cultures (<i>Streptococcus viridans</i>, HACEK group (see ID17), <i>Streptococcus bovis</i>, <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i>, community-acquired enterococci) OR Persistently positive blood culture, defined as recovery of a microorganism consistent with IE from blood drawn >12 h apart or all of 3 or a majority of 4 or more separate blood cultures, with first and last drawn >1 h apart OR Single positive blood culture for <i>Coxiella burnetii</i> or antiphase I IgG antibody titer >1:800 Evidence of endocardial involvement <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Positive echocardiogram for IE (oscillating intracardiac mass on valve or supporting structures, or in the path of regurgitant jets, or on implanted material in the absence of an alternative anatomic explanation OR abscess OR new partial dehiscence of prosthetic valve) OR New valvular regurgitation (insufficient if increase or change in preexisting murmur)
Minor Criteria (5)
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Predisposing condition (abnormal heart valve, IVDU) Fever (100.4°F/38.0°C) Vascular phenomena: major arterial emboli, septic pulmonary infarcts, mycotic aneurysms, ICH, conjunctival hemorrhages, Janeway lesions Immunologic phenomena: glomerulonephritis, rheumatoid factor, Osler's nodes, Roth's spots Positive blood culture but not meeting major criteria OR serologic evidence of active infection with organism consistent with IE

Investigations

- serial blood cultures: 3 sets (each containing one aerobic and one anaerobic sample) collected from different sites >1 h apart
 - persistent bacteremia is the hallmark of endovascular infection (such as IE)
- repeat blood cultures (at least 2 sets) after 48 to 72 h of appropriate antibiotics to confirm clearance
- blood work: CBC and differential (normochromic, normocytic anemia), ESR (increased), RF (+), BUN/Cr
- urinalysis (proteinuria, hematuria, red cell casts) and urine C&S
- ECG: prolonged PR interval may indicate perivalvular abscess
- Echo findings: vegetations, regurgitation, abscess
 - TTE (poor sensitivity) inadequate in 20% (obesity, COPD, chest wall deformities)
 - TEE indicated if TTE is non-diagnostic in patients with at least possible endocarditis or if suspect prosthetic valve endocarditis or complicated endocarditis (e.g. paravalvular abscess/perforation) (~90% sensitivity)



TEE
TTE

transesophageal echo
transthoracic echo

Treatment

- medical
 - usually non-urgent and can wait for confirmation of etiology before initiating treatment
 - empiric antibiotic therapy if patient is unstable; administer ONLY after blood cultures have been taken
 - first-line empiric treatment for native valve: vancomycin
 - first line empiric treatment for prosthetic valve: vancomycin + gentamicin + cefepime OR a carbapenem
 - targeted antibiotic therapy: antibiotic and duration (usually 4-6 wk) adjusted based on valve, organism, and sensitivities
 - monitor for complications of IE (e.g. CHF, conduction block, new emboli) and complications of antibiotics (e.g. interstitial nephritis)
 - prophylaxis only for high risk individuals listed above with dental procedures that may lead to bleeding OR invasive procedure of the respiratory tract that involves incision or biopsy of the respiratory mucosa, such as tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy OR procedures on infected skin, skin structure, or musculoskeletal tissue
 - dental/respiratory: amoxicillin single dose 30-60 min prior; clindamycin if penicillin-allergic
 - skin/soft tissue: cephalexin single dose 30-60 min prior; clindamycin if penicillin-allergic (modify based on etiology of skin/soft tissue infection)
- surgical
 - most common indication is refractory CHF
 - other indications include: valve ring abscess, fungal etiology, valve perforation, unstable prosthesis, ≥2 major emboli, antimicrobial failure (persistently positive blood cultures), mycotic aneurysm, staphylococci on a prosthetic valve

Prognosis

- adverse prognostic factors: CHF, prosthetic valve infection, valvular/myocardial abscess, embolization, persistent bacteremia, altered mental status prognostic factors: CHF, prosthetic valve infection, valvular/myocardial abscess
- mortality: prosthetic valve IE (25-50%), non-IVDU *S. aureus* IE (30-45%), IVDU *S. aureus* or streptococcal IE (10-15%)

Neurological Infections

Meningitis

- see [Pediatrics](#), P61

Definition

- inflammation of the meninges

Etiology

Table 18. Common Organisms in Meningitis

Bacterial			Viral	Fungal	Other
Age 0-4 wk	Age 1-23 mo	Age >2 yr			
<i>GBS</i>	<i>GBS</i>	<i>S. pneumoniae</i>	HSV-1, 2	<i>Cryptococcus</i>	Lyme disease
<i>E. coli</i>	<i>E. coli</i>	<i>N. meningitidis</i>	VZV	<i>Coccidioides</i>	Neurosyphilis
<i>L. monocytogenes</i>	<i>S. pneumoniae</i>	<i>L. monocytogenes</i>	Enteroviruses		TB
<i>Klebsiella</i>	<i>N. meningitidis</i>	(age >50 and comorbidities)	West Nile		
	<i>H. influenzae</i>				

Risk Factors

- lack of immunization against *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae type b* in children
- hematogenous spread after invasion from a mucosal surface (nasopharynx)
- parameningeal focus (otitis media, infection, sinusitis)
- penetrating head trauma
- anatomical meningeal defects – CSF leaks
- previous neurosurgical procedures, shunts
- immunocompromise (corticosteroids, HIV, asplenia, hypogammaglobulinemia, complement deficiency)
- contact with colonized or infected persons

Clinical Features

- neonates and children: fever, vomiting, lethargy, irritability, poor feeding
- older children and adults: fever, H/A, neck stiffness, confusion, N/V, lethargy, photophobia, altered level of consciousness, seizures, focal neurological signs, papilledema
- petechial rash in meningococcal meningitis, seen more frequently on trunk or lower extremities

Investigations

- blood work: CBC and differential, electrolytes (for SIADH), blood C&S
 - CSF: opening pressure, cell count + differential, glucose, protein, Gram stain, bacterial C&S
 - AFB, fungal C&S, cryptococcal antigen in immunocompromised patients, subacute illness, suggestive travel history or TB exposure
 - PCR for HSV, VZV, enteroviruses, WNV if viral cause suspected
- imaging/neurologic studies: CT, MRI, EEG if focal neurological signs present

Table 19. Typical CSF Profiles for Meningitis

CSF Analysis	Bacterial	Viral
Glucose (mg/dL)	Decreased	Normal
Protein (mg/mL)	Markedly Increased	Increased
WBC	500-10,000/ μ L	10-500/ μ L
Predominant WBC	Neutrophils	Lymphocytes

Treatment

- bacterial meningitis is a medical emergency: **do not delay antibiotics for CT or LP**
- empiric antibiotic therapy
 - age <1 mo: ampicillin + cefotaxime IV OR ampicillin + an aminoglycoside IV
 - age >1 mo: vancomycin + cefotaxime OR ceftriaxone IV
 - ♦ add ampicillin IV if risk factors for infection with *L. monocytogenes* present: age >50, alcoholism, immunocompromised
- steroids in acute bacterial meningitis: dexamethasone IV within 20 min prior to or with first dose of antibiotics
 - continue in those patients with proven pneumococcal meningitis
 - not recommended for patients with suspected bacterial meningitis in some resource-limited countries



Brudzinski's Sign

Passive neck flexion causes involuntary flexion of hips and knees

Kernig's Sign

Resistance to knee extension when hip is flexed to 90°

Jolt Accentuation of H/A

Headache worsens when head turned horizontally at 2-3 rotations/s; more sensitive than Brudzinski's and Kernig's



CSF Gram Stain Findings

- *S. pneumoniae* – GP diplococci
- *N. meningitidis* – GN diplococci
- *H. influenzae* – Pleiomorphic GN coccobacilli
- *L. monocytogenes* – GP rods



Does this Adult Patient Have Acute Meningitis? From The Rational Clinical Examination

JAMA 2009; <http://www.jamaevidence.com/content/3482857>

Study: Systematic review of articles assessing the sensitivity and specificity of clinical exam maneuvers for the diagnosis of adult meningitis.

Results: In retrospective studies, sensitivity for headache was 68%, and 52% for nausea and vomiting. Sensitivity for physical exam findings is similarly low (fever: 87%, neck stiffness: 80%, altered mental status: 69%). Sensitivity for the combination of the classic triad of fever, neck stiffness, and altered mental status was 46%. In prospective studies, sensitivity of H/A was 92%, while sensitivity of N/V could not be pooled, and ranged from 32-70%. Brudzinski's and Kernig's signs had a sensitivity of 5% and Kernig's sign only 5-9%. Jolt accentuation had a sensitivity of 97%.

Conclusions: Data were heterogeneous, and lacked standardization of clinical exams. No single item on clinical history or physical exam was sufficient to rule out meningitis, including Kernig's and Brudzinski's signs, or the absence of the classic triad of fever, neck stiffness, and altered mental status essentially rules out meningitis.

Jolt accentuation has high sensitivity, but further research is needed. LP may be performed safely without CT head in patients without altered LOC, no recent seizure, no history of CNS disease, not immunocompromised, and <60 yr.

Prevention

- see [Pediatrics](#), P3
- immunization
 - children: immunization against *H. influenzae* (Pentacel®), *S. pneumoniae* (Synflorix®, Prevnar-13®), *N. meningitidis* (Menjugate®, Menactra®)
 - adults: immunization against *N. meningitidis* in selected circumstances (outbreaks, travel, epidemics) and *S. pneumoniae* (Pneumovax®) for high-risk groups
- prophylaxis: close contacts of patients infected with *H. influenzae* should be treated with rifampin if they live with an inadequately immunized (<4 yr) or immunocompromised child (<18 yr); ciprofloxacin, rifampin, or ceftriaxone if close or household contact of a patient with *N. meningitidis*



Meningococcal Quadrivalent Vaccine (Menactra® or Menomune®)

- Healthy young adults (not immunized in childhood)
- Asplenia
- Travelers to high-risk areas
- Military recruits or laboratory personnel
- Complement, factor D, or properdin deficiency or acquired terminal complement deficiency through receipt of eculizumab

Prognosis

- complications
 - H/A, seizures, cerebral edema, hydrocephalus, SIADH, residual neurological deficit (especially CN VIII), deafness, death
- mortality
 - *S. pneumoniae* 25%; *N. meningitidis* 5-10%; *H. influenzae* 5%
 - worse prognosis if: extremes of age, delays in diagnosis and treatment, stupor or coma, seizures, focal neurological signs, septic shock at presentation

Encephalitis

Definition

- inflammation of the brain parenchyma

Etiology

- identified in only 40-70% of cases
 - when cause is identified, the most common etiology is viral
 - e.g. HSV, VZV, EBV, enteroviruses, CMV, West Nile, HIV, mumps, measles, rabies, polio
 - bacteria: *L. monocytogenes*, *Mycobacteria*, spirochetes (Lyme, syphilis)
 - parasites: protozoa (e.g. *Toxoplasma*) and helminths (rare)
 - fungi: e.g. *Cryptococcus*
 - post-infectious (e.g. acute disseminated encephalomyelitis [ADEM])

Pathophysiology

- acute inflammatory disease of the brain due to direct invasion or pathogen-initiated immune response
- viruses may reach the CNS via peripheral nerves (e.g. rabies, HSV)
- herpes simplex encephalitis
 - acute, necrotizing, asymmetrical hemorrhagic process with lymphocytic and plasma cell reaction which usually involves the medial temporal and inferior frontal lobes
 - associated with HSV-1, but can also be caused by HSV-2

Clinical Features

- constitutional: fever, chills, malaise, N/V
- meningeal involvement (meningoencephalitis): H/A, nuchal rigidity
- parenchymal involvement: seizures, altered mental status, focal neurological signs
- herpes simplex encephalitis
 - acute onset (<1 wk) of focal neurological signs: hemiparesis, ataxia, aphasia, focal or generalized seizures
 - temporal lobe involvement: behavioral disturbance
 - usually rapidly progressive over several days and may result in coma or death
 - common sequelae: memory and behavior disturbances

Investigations

- CSF: opening pressure, cell count + differential, glucose, protein, Gram stain, bacterial C&S, PCR for HSV, VZV, EBV, enteroviruses, and other less common viral etiologies
- serology: may aid diagnosis of certain causes of encephalitis (e.g. West Nile virus)
- imaging/neurologic studies: CT, MRI, EEG to define anatomical sites affected
- invasive testing: brain tissue biopsy may be required for culture, histological examination, and immunocytochemistry (if diagnosis not clear via non-invasive means)
- findings in herpes simplex encephalitis (must rule out due to high mortality)
 - CT/MRI: medial temporal lobe necrosis
 - EEG: early focal slowing, periodic discharges

Treatment

- general supportive care
- monitor vital signs carefully
- IV acyclovir empirically until HSV encephalitis ruled out



Meningitis and encephalitis patients can be distinguished based on their cerebral function. Cerebral function is abnormal in encephalitis patients (e.g. altered mental status, motor or sensory deficits, altered behavior, speech or movement disorders), but may be normal in patients with meningitis. Note however, that there is considerable overlap between the two syndromes ("meningoencephalitis")

Generalized Tetanus

- see [Family Medicine, FM3](#)
- see [Pediatrics, P3](#)



Etiology and Pathophysiology

- caused by *Clostridium tetani*: motile, spore forming, anaerobic GP bacillus
- found in soil, splinters, rusty nails, GI tract (humans and animals)
- traumatic implantation of spores into tissues with low oxygenation (e.g. puncture wound, burns, nonsterile surgeries or deliveries)
- upon inoculation, spores transform into *C. tetani* bacilli that produce tetanus toxin
 - toxin travels via retrograde axonal transport to the CNS where it irreversibly binds presynaptic neurons to prevent the release of inhibitory neurotransmitters (e.g. GABA)
 - net effect is the disinhibition of spinal motor reflexes which results in tetany and autonomic hyperactivity

Clinical Features

- generalized tetanus
 - initially present with painful spasms of masseters (trismus or "lockjaw")
 - sustained contraction of skeletal muscle with periodic painful muscle spasms (triggered by sensory stimuli, e.g. loud noises)
 - paralysis descends to involve large muscle groups (neck, abdomen)
 - apnea, respiratory failure, and death secondary to tonic contraction of pharyngeal and respiratory muscles
- autonomic hyperactivity
 - diaphoresis, tachycardia, HTN, fever as illness progresses

Investigations

- primarily a clinical diagnosis, often although not always with a history of a traumatic wound and lack of immunization
- culture wounds, CK may be elevated

Treatment

- stop toxin production
 - wound debridement to clear necrotic tissue and spores
 - antimicrobial therapy: IV metronidazole, penicillin G IV is an effective alternative
- neutralize unbound toxin with tetanus immune globulin (TIG)
- supportive therapy: intubation, spasmolytic medications (benzodiazepines), quiet environment, cooling blanket
- control autonomic dysfunction: α - and β -blockade (e.g. labetalol), magnesium sulfate



Antimicrobial therapy (e.g. metronidazole) may fail to treat *C. tetani* unless adequate wound debridement is performed

Prevention

- infection with *C. tetani* does not produce immunity – vaccinate patients on diagnosis
- tetanus toxoid vaccination (see [Pediatrics, P3](#)/[Emergency Medicine, ER17](#))



Rabies

Definition

- acute progressive encephalitis caused by RNA virus (family: *Rhabdoviridae*, genus *Lyssavirus*)

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- any mammal can transmit the rabies virus
 - most commonly transmitted by raccoon, skunk, bat, fox, cat, and dog; monkeys also a risk in the developing world
- transmission: breaching of skin by teeth or direct contact of infectious tissue (saliva, neural tissue) with skin or mucous membranes
 - almost all cases due to bites
- virus travels via retrograde axonal transport from PNS to CNS
- virus multiplies rapidly in brain, then spreads to other organs, including salivary glands
- development of clinical signs occurs simultaneously with excretion of rabies virus in saliva
 - infected animal can transmit rabies virus as soon as it shows signs of disease

Clinical Features

- five stages of disease
 1. incubation period
 - 1-3 mo on average (can range from days to years)
 2. prodrome (<1 wk)
 - influenza-like illness: low-grade fever, malaise, anorexia, N/V, H/A, sore throat
 - pain, pruritus, paresthesia may occur at wound site

- once prodromal symptoms develop, there is rapid, irreversible progression to death
 - ♦ progression from prodrome to coma and death may occur without an intervening acute neurologic syndrome
- 3. acute neurologic syndrome: 3 types (<1 wk)
 - a. encephalitic (most common): hyperactivity, fluctuating LOC, hydrophobia, aerophobia, hypersalivation, fever, seizures
 - ♦ painful pharyngeal spasms on encountering gust of air or swallowing water cause aerophobia and hydrophobia, respectively
 - b. paralytic: quadriplegia, loss of anal sphincter tone, fever
 - c. atypical: rare
- 4. coma
 - complete flaccid paralysis, respiratory and cardiovascular failure
- 5. death (within days to weeks of initial symptoms)

Investigations

- purpose of diagnosis by investigations is to limit patient contact with others and to identify others exposed to the infectious source
- ante-mortem: direct immunofluorescence or PCR on multiple specimens: saliva, skin biopsy, serum, CSF
- post-mortem: direct immunofluorescence in nerve tissue, presence of Negri bodies (inclusion bodies in neurons)

Treatment

- post-exposure prophylaxis depends on regional prevalence (contact Public Health) and circumstances surrounding injury
- three general principles
 - wound care: clean wound promptly and thoroughly with soap and running water
 - passive immunization: HRIG infiltrated into wound site, with any remaining volume administered IM in anatomical site distant from vaccine administration
 - active immunization: inactivated rabies virus vaccine (series of shots post-exposure)
- treatment is supportive once victim manifests signs and symptoms of disease

Prevention

- pre-exposure vaccination
 - recommended for high risk persons: laboratory staff working with rabies, veterinarians, animal and wildlife control workers, long-term travelers to endemic areas

Systemic Infections

Sepsis and Septic Shock

- see [Respirology](#), R33



Definitions

- systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS): two or more of
 1. temperature $<96.8^{\circ}\text{F}/36^{\circ}\text{C}$ or $>100.4^{\circ}\text{F}/38^{\circ}\text{C}$
 2. heart rate >90 beats per minute
 3. respiratory rate >20 breaths per minute or $\text{PaCO}_2 <32$ mmHg
 4. $\text{WBC} <4 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ or $>12 \times 10^9/\text{L}$ or $>10\%$ bands
- sepsis: SIRS + proven or provable infection
- severe sepsis: sepsis + signs of end-organ dysfunction and hypoperfusion
- septic shock: severe sepsis + hypotension (<90 mmHg sBP), despite adequate fluid resuscitation

Pathophysiology

- causative agents are identified in only 50-70% of cases
- when organisms are identified, GP and GN organisms are the cause in 90% of cases
- primary bloodstream infection or secondary bacteremia \rightarrow local immune response \rightarrow immune cells release pro-inflammatory cytokines \rightarrow immune response spreads beyond local environment \rightarrow unregulated, exaggerated systemic immune response \rightarrow vasodilation and hypotension \rightarrow involvement of tissues remote from the site of injury/infection resulting in multiple major organ dysfunction \rightarrow periodic immunoparalysis

Clinical Features

- history: fever, chills, dyspnea, cool extremities, fatigue, malaise, anxiety, confusion
- physical: abnormal vitals (fever, tachypnea, tachycardia, hypotension), local signs of infection

Investigations

- CBC and differential, electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, liver enzymes, ABG, lactate, INR, PTT, FDP, blood C&S x3, urinalysis, urine C&S and cultures of any wounds or lines
- CXR (other imaging depends on suspicion of focus of infection)

Treatment (also see [Respirology, R33](#))

- respiratory support: O₂ ± intubation
- cardiovascular support: IV fluids, ± norepinephrine + ICU
- IV antibiotics (empirical, depends on suspected source)
 - start with broad spectrum antibiotics (piperacillin/tazobactam or meropenem) ± additional agents depending on patient risk factors, suspected etiology of infection, and local microbial susceptibilities (± aminoglycoside for drug-resistant GNs or vancomycin for MRSA)
 - narrow once susceptibilities are known
- hydrocortisone IV in patients with septic shock unresponsive to fluid resuscitation and vasopressors



Leprosy (Hansen's Disease)

Etiology

- *Mycobacterium leprae*: obligate intracellular bacteria, slow-growing (doubling time 12.5 d), survives in macrophages
- bacteria transmitted from nasal secretions, potentially via skin lesions
- invades skin and peripheral nerves leading to chronic granulomatous disease

Clinical Features

- lesions involve cooler body tissues (e.g. skin, superficial nerves, nose, eyes, larynx)
- spectrum of disease determined by host immune response to infection
 - i. paucibacillary “tuberculoid” leprosy (intact cell-mediated immune response)
 - ≤5 hypoesthetic lesions, usually hypopigmented, well-defined, dry
 - early nerve involvement, enlarged peripheral nerves, neuropathic pain
 - may be self-limited, stable, or progress over time to multibacillary “lepromatous” form
 - ii. multibacillary “lepromatous” leprosy (weak cell-mediated immune response)
 - ≥6 lesions, symmetrical distribution
 - leonine facies (nodular facial lesions, loss of eyebrows, thickened ear lobes)
 - extensive cutaneous involvement, late and insidious nerve involvement causing sensory loss at the face and extremities
 - iii. borderline leprosy
 - lesions and progression lies between tuberculoid and lepromatous forms

Investigations

- skin biopsy down to fat or slit skin smears for AFB, PCR
- histologic appearance: intracellular bacilli in spherical masses (lepra cells), granulomas involving cutaneous nerves

Treatment (WHO Treatment Regimens)

- paucibacillary: dapsone + rifampin monthly x 6 mo
- single skin lesion paucibacillary: single dose of rifampicin, ofloxacin, and minocycline
- multibacillary and borderline: dapsone + rifampin monthly + clofazimine monthly x 12 mo AND low dose clofazimine once daily x 12 mo
- treatment of leprosy can cause an immune reaction to killed bacteria (e.g. erythema nodosum leprosum and reversal reaction): symptomatic management with NSAIDs if mild, prednisone with 6-12 wk taper if severe; thalidomide for erythema nodosum leprosum

Prognosis

- curable with WHO-approved treatment regimens
- complications: muscle atrophy, contractures, trauma/superinfection of lesions, crippling/loss of limbs, erythema nodosum leprosum
- long post-treatment follow-up warranted to monitor for relapse and immune reactions

Lyme Disease

**Etiology/Epidemiology**

- spirochete bacteria: *Borrelia burgdorferi* (N. America), *B. garinii*, *B. afzelii* (Europe and Asia)
- transmitted by Ixodes tick
- reported in 49 of the 50 U.S. states, but most cases occur in the Northeast, the Midwest, and Northern California
- small rodents (mice) serve as primary reservoir, while larger animals (white tailed deer) serve as hosts for ticks
- human contact usually May-August in fields with low brush near wooded areas
- infection usually requires >36 h tick attachment

Clinical Features

- stage 1 (early localized stage: 7-14 d post-bite)
 - malaise, fatigue, H/A, myalgias
 - erythema migrans: expanding, non-pruritic bulls-eye (target) lesions (red with clear center) on thigh/groin/axilla
- stage 2 (early disseminated stage): weeks post-infection
 - CNS: aseptic meningitis, CN palsies (CN VII palsy), peripheral neuritis
 - cardiac: transient heart block or myocarditis
- stage 3 (late persistent stage: months to years post-infection)
 - may not have preceding history of early stage infection
 - MSK: chronic monoarticular or oligoarticular arthritis
 - acrodermatitis chronica atrophicans (due to *B. afzelii*)
 - neurologic: encephalopathy, meningitis, neuropathy

**BAKE a Key Lyme Pie**

Bell's palsy
Arthritis
Kardiac block
Lyme
Erythema chronicum migrans

Investigations

- serology: ELISA, Western blot

Prevention

- use of protective clothing (tuck pants into socks), insect repellent, inspection for ticks and prompt removal of tick
- doxycycline prophylaxis within 72 h of removal of an engorged, *Ixodes scapularis* tick in hyperendemic area (local rate of infection of ticks $\geq 20\%$) for patients >8 yr who are not pregnant or lactating

Treatment

- stage 1: doxycycline/amoxicillin/cefuroxime
- stage 2-3: ceftriaxone

Toxic Shock Syndrome

Etiology

- superantigens produced by some strains of *S. aureus* or GAS cause widespread T-cell activation and pro-inflammatory cytokine release (IL-1, IL-6, TNF)
- course of disease is precipitous and leads to acute fever, shock, multiorgan failure
- Staphylococcal TSS involves the production of superantigen TSST-1 (toxic shock syndrome toxin 1)
- Streptococcal TSS involves the production of superantigens SPEA, SPEB, SPEC

Risk Factors

- Staphylococcal: tampon use, nasal packing, wound infections (e.g. postpartum vaginal or Cesarean or other surgical infections)
- Streptococcal: minor trauma, surgical procedures, preceding viral illness (chickenpox), use of NSAIDs

Clinical Features and Investigations

- acute onset
- Staphylococcal TSS
 - $T > 102^{\circ}\text{F}$
 - sBP < 90 mmHg
 - diffuse erythroderma with subsequent desquamation, especially on palms and soles
 - involvement of 3 or more organ systems: GI (vomiting, diarrhea), muscular (myalgia, increased CK), mucous membranes (hyperemia), renal, hepatic, hematologic (thrombocytopenia), CNS (disorientation)
 - isolation of *S. aureus* is not required for diagnosis (*S. aureus* is rarely recovered from blood in TSS)
- Streptococcal TSS
 - sBP < 90 mmHg
 - isolation of GAS from a normally sterile site (e.g. blood, pleural, tissue biopsy, or surgical wound)
 - ≥ 2 of coagulopathy, liver involvement, ARDS, soft tissue necrosis (necrotizing fasciitis, myositis, gangrene), renal impairment, erythematous macular rash that may desquamate

Treatment

- supportive: fluid resuscitation
- Staphylococcal: IV clindamycin + (cloxacillin or vancomycin depending on susceptibilities)
- Streptococcal: IV penicillin and clindamycin and IVIg

Cat Scratch Disease

Etiology

- *Bartonella henselae*: intracellular bacteria
- cat-to-human transmission via cat scratch/bite

Clinical Features

- skin lesion appears 3-10 d post-inoculation
- may be followed by fever, tender regional lymphadenopathy
- in some patients, organism may disseminate causing hepatosplenomegaly, neurologic symptoms
- usually self-limited

Investigations

- serology, lymph node biopsy

Treatment

- supportive in most cases
- azithromycin x 10-14 d in patients with moderate-severe disease or immunocompromise

Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever

Etiology

- *Rickettsia rickettsii*: obligate intracellular GN organism
- reservoir hosts: rodents, dogs
- vectors: *Dermacentor* ticks
- organisms cause inflammation of endothelial lining of small blood vessels, causing small hemorrhages and thrombi
- can cause widespread vasculitis leading to H/A, CNS changes and can progress to death if treatment is delayed

Clinical Features

- usually occurs in summer following tick bite
- influenza-like prodrome: acute onset fever, H/A, myalgia, N/V, anorexia
- macular rash appearing on day 2-4 of fever
 - begins on wrists and ankles, then spreads centrally to arms/legs/trunk/palms/soles
 - occasionally "spotless" (10% of patients)

Investigations

- skin biopsy and serology (indirect fluorescent antibody test)

Treatment

- doxycycline, usually 5-7 d (3 days after afebrile)

West Nile Virus

Epidemiology

- virus has been detected throughout the United States and much of southern Canada
- overall case-fatality rates in severe cases are ~10%

Transmission

- primarily from mosquitoes that have fed on infected birds (crows, blue jays)
- transplacental, blood products (rare), organ transplantation

Clinical Features

- most are asymptomatic
- most symptomatic cases are mild (West Nile fever): acute onset of H/A, back pain, myalgia, anorexia, maculopapular non-pruritic rash involving chest, back, arms
- severe complications: encephalitis, meningoencephalitis and acute flaccid paralysis (especially in those >60 yr)

Investigations

- IgM antibody in serum or CSF (cross reactivity with yellow fever and Japanese encephalitis vaccines, and with dengue fever and St. Louis virus infection); may not reflect current illness as IgM antibody can last for >6 mo
- viral isolation by PCR from CSF, tissue, blood and fluids (all have low sensitivity)
- CSF: elevated lymphocytes and protein if CNS involvement

Treatment and Prevention

- treatment: supportive
- prevention: mosquito repellent (DEET), drain stagnant water, community mosquito control programs

Syphilis

Etiology

- *Treponema pallidum*: thick motile spirochetes historically detectable by dark-field microscopy
- transmitted sexually, vertically, or parenterally (rare)

Clinical Features

- see [Dermatology, D30](#) and [Gynecology, GY27](#)
- multi-stage disease
 - primary syphilis (3-90 d post-infection)
 - painless chancre at inoculation site (any mucosal surface)
 - regional lymphadenopathy
 - acute disease lasts 3-6 wk, 25% progress to secondary syphilis without treatment
 - secondary syphilis = systemic infection (2-8 wk following chancre)
 - maculo-papular non-pruritic rash including palms and soles
 - generalized lymphadenopathy, low grade fever, malaise, H/A, aseptic meningitis, ocular/otic syphilis
 - condylomata lata: painless, wart-like lesion on palate, vulva, or scrotum (highly infectious)
 - latent syphilis
 - asymptomatic infection that follows untreated primary/secondary syphilis
 - early latent (<1 yr post-infection) or late latent/unknown duration (>1 yr post-infection)
 - increased transmission risk with early latent; longer treatment duration required for late latent
 - tertiary syphilis (1-30 yr post-infection)
 - gummatous syphilis: nodular granulomas of skin, bone, liver, testes, brain
 - aortic aneurysm and aortic insufficiency
 - neurosyphilis: dementia, personality changes, Argyll-Robertson pupils, tabes dorsalis
 - congenital syphilis
 - causes spontaneous abortions, stillbirths, congenital malformations, developmental delay, deafness
 - infants may be asymptomatic until age 2-5 yr then present with rhinitis, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, bone and cartilage degeneration (including saddle nose, saber shins), CN VIII deafness

Investigations

- screening tests: VDRL or RPR (non-treponemal), EIA (treponemal)
- confirmatory tests: FTA-ABS, MHA-TP, TPPA, TPI, dark field microscopy with silver stain (rarely)
- LP for neurosyphilis if: seropositive and symptoms of neurosyphilis or treatment failure/other tertiary symptoms, or with HIV and late latent/unknown duration syphilis; consider in others

Treatment

- for 1°, 2°, early latent: benzathine penicillin G 2.4 million units IM x 1
- for 3°, late latent: benzathine penicillin G 2.4 million units IM weekly x 3
- if allergic to penicillin: doxycycline 100 mg PO bid x 14 d
- neurosyphilis: aqueous Penicillin G 18-24 million units/d IV x 14 d
- see [Family Medicine, FM45](#) for generalized STD workup



Argyll Robertson Pupil

Accommodates but does not react to light



Those with Untreated 1° or 2° Syphilis

1/3 cure
1/3 latent indefinitely
1/3 3° syphilis



Causes of False Positive VDRL and RPR Tests:

Viruses (mononucleosis, hepatitis)
Drugs and substance abuse
Rheumatic fever
Lupus and leprosy



Patients with 2° or 3° syphilis treated with penicillin may experience a Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction. Lysis of organisms release pyrogens thought to cause fever, chills, myalgia, flu-like symptoms may last up to 24 h



VDRL	Venereal Disease Research Laboratory
RPR	Rapid Plasma Reagin
EIA	Enzyme Immunoassay
FTA-ABS	Fluorescent <i>Treponema</i> Antibody-Absorption
MHA-TP	Microhemagglutination Assay <i>T. pallidum</i>
TPPA	<i>T. pallidum</i> Particle Agglutination Assay

Tuberculosis

Etiology, Epidemiology, and Natural History

- 1/3 of the world's population is infected with TB
- contracted by aerosolized inhalation of *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, a slow growing aerobe (doubling time = 18 h) that can evade innate host defenses, survive, and replicate in macrophages
- inhalation and deposition in the lung can lead to one of the following outcomes:
 1. immediate clearance of the pathogen
 2. latent TB: asymptomatic infection contained by host immune defenses (represents 95% of infected people)
 3. primary TB: symptomatic, active disease (represents 5% of infected people)
 4. secondary TB: symptomatic reactivation of previously dormant TB (represents 5-10% of those with latent TB, most often within the first 2-3 yr of initial infection) at a pulmonary or extra-pulmonary site



Tuberculous Polyserositis

Pleural + pericardial + peritoneal effusions (usually from granuloma breakdown that spills TB into pleural cavity – very rare)

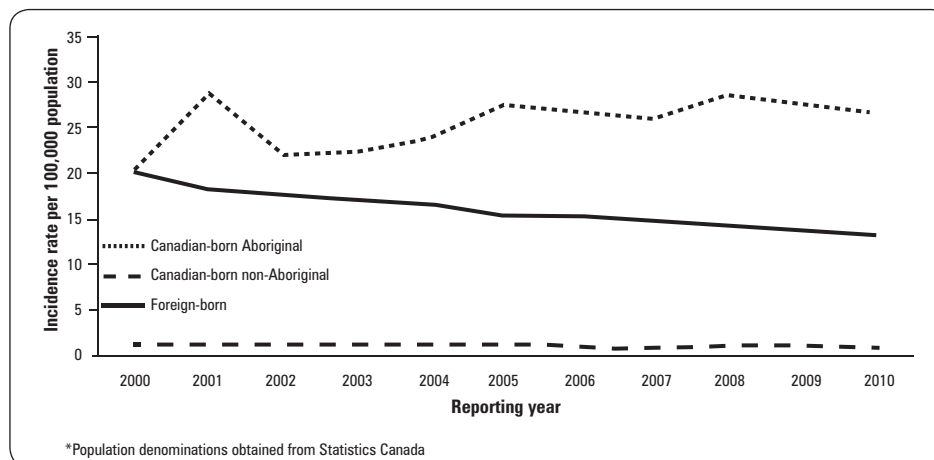


Figure 8. Tuberculosis statistics

Canadian Tuberculosis Standards, 7th ed.

Risk Factors

- social and environmental factors
 - travel or birth in country with high TB prevalence (e.g. Asia, Latin America, Sub-Saharan Africa, Eastern Europe)
 - Aboriginal, crowded living conditions, low SES/homeless, IVDU
 - personal or occupational contact
- host factors
 - immunocompromised/immunosuppressed (especially HIV, including extremes of age)
 - silicosis
 - chronic renal failure requiring dialysis
 - malignancy and chemotherapy
 - substance abuse (e.g. drug use, alcoholism, smoking)

Clinical Features

- primary infection usually asymptomatic, although progressive primary disease may occur, especially in children and immunosuppressed patients
- secondary infection/reactivation usually produces constitutional symptoms (fatigue, anorexia, night sweats, weight loss) and site-dependent symptoms
 - i. pulmonary TB
 - chronic productive cough ± hemoptysis
 - CXR consolidation or cavitation, lymphadenopathy
 - non-resolving pneumonia despite standard antimicrobial therapy
 - ii. miliary TB
 - widely disseminated spread especially to lungs, abdominal organs, marrow, CNS
 - CXR: multiple small 2-4 mm millet seed-like lesions throughout lung
 - iii. extrapulmonary TB
 - lymphadenitis, pleurisy, pericarditis, hepatitis, peritonitis, meningitis, osteomyelitis (vertebral = Pott's disease), adrenal (causing Addison's disease), renal, ovary

Investigations

- screening for latent TB
 - PPD/Mantoux skin tests
 - ♦ both tests diagnose prior TB exposure; neither can diagnose or exclude active disease
 - IFN- γ release assay (IGRA):
 - ♦ in patients previously infected with TB, T-cells produce increased amounts of IFN- γ when re-exposed to TB antigen
 - ♦ detects antigen not present in the BCG vaccine or in most types of non-tuberculous-mycobacteria (NTM), therefore fewer false positives
 - American guidelines treat IGRAs as equivalent to the TB skin test and preferable in patients with a history of BCG vaccination or who may not return for skin test reading
- diagnostic tests/investigations for active pulmonary TB
 - morning sputum on 3 consecutive days for acid-fast bacilli smear and culture
 - BAL
 - CXR
 - ♦ nodular or alveolar infiltrates with cavitation (middle/lower lobe if primary, apical if secondary)
 - ♦ pleural effusion (usually unilateral and exudative) may occur independently of other radiograph abnormalities
 - ♦ hilar/mediastinal adenopathy (especially in children)
 - ♦ tuberculoma (semi-calcified well-defined solitary coin lesion 0.5-4 cm that may be mistaken for lung CA)
 - ♦ miliary TB
 - ♦ evidence of past disease: calcified hilar and mediastinal nodes, calcified pulmonary focus, pleural thickening with calcification, apical scarring

Prevention

- primary prevention
 - airborne isolation for active pulmonary disease
 - BCG vaccine
 - ♦ ~80% effective against pediatric miliary and meningeal TB
 - ♦ effectiveness in adults debated (anywhere from 0-80%)
 - ♦ routine use rarely recommended in American population, however widely used in other countries
- secondary prevention (defer in pregnancy unless mother is high risk)
 - likely INH-sensitive: isoniazid (INH) + pyridoxine (vit B₆ to help prevent INH-associated neuropathy) x 9 mo
 - likely INH-resistant: rifampin x 4 mo

Treatment of Active Infection

- empiric therapy: INH + rifampin + pyrazinamide + ethambutol + pyridoxine
- pulmonary TB: INH + rifampin + pyrazinamide + ethambutol + pyridoxine x 2 mo (initiation phase), then INH + rifampin + pyridoxine x 4 mo in fully susceptible TB (continuation phase), total 6 mo
- extrapulmonary TB: same regimen as pulmonary TB but increase to 12 mo in bone/joint, CNS, and miliary/disseminated TB + corticosteroids for meningitis, pericarditis
- empiric treatment of suspected MDR (multidrug resistant) or XDR (extensively drug-resistant) TB requires referral to a specialist
 - MDR = resistance to INH and rifampin \pm others
 - XDR = resistance to INH + rifampin + fluoroquinolone + ≥ 1 of injectable, second-line agents
 - ♦ very difficult to treat, global public health threat
 - suspect MDR TB if previous treatment, exposure to known MDR index case, or immigration from a high-risk area
- note: TB is a reportable disease to Public Health (please see Center for Disease Control website <http://www.cdc.gov/tb/> for more information)



Positive PPD Test

If induration at 48-72 h
 >5 mm if immunocompromised, close contact with active TB

>10 mm all others; positive PPD \rightarrow CXR; decision to treat depends on individual risk factors

False(-): poor technique, anergy, immunosuppression, infection <10 wk or remotely

False(+): BCG after 12 mo of age in a low-risk individual, NTM

Booster effect: initially false(-) result boost to a true(+) result by the testing procedure itself (usually if patient was infected long ago so had diminished delayed type hypersensitivity reaction or if history of BCG)

HIV and AIDS

Epidemiology

American Situation (Center for Disease Control, 2012)

- at the end of 2009, an estimated 1,148,200 persons aged 13 and older were living with HIV infection in the United States, including 207,600 (18.1%) persons whose infections had not been diagnosed
- approximately 50,000 people in the United States are newly infected with HIV each year; in 2010 (the most recent year that data are available), there were an estimated 47,500 new HIV infections

Global Situation (WHO and UNAIDS Core Epidemiology Slides, December 2013)

- estimated 35.5 million people living with HIV/AIDS in 2012
- estimated 2.3 million newly infected in 2012
- estimated 1.6 million AIDS-related deaths in 2012

Definition and Pathophysiology

- HIV is a retrovirus that causes progressive immune system dysfunction which predisposes patients to various opportunistic infections and malignancies
- HIV virion includes an envelope (gp41 and gp120 glycoproteins), matrix (p17) and capsid (p24) enclosing 2 single-stranded copies of RNA + enzymes in its core
- virion glycoproteins bind CD4 and CXCR4/CCR5 on CD4+ T lymphocytes (T-helper cells) to fuse and enter the cells
- RNA converted to dsDNA by reverse transcriptase; dsDNA is integrated into host genome
- virus DNA transcribed and translated using host cell machinery, post-translational modifications include proteolytic activity of virally encoded protease enzymes
- newly produced virions bud out of host cell, incorporating host cell membrane; additional maturation steps are required before virion is considered infectious
- exact mechanisms of CD4 depletion incompletely characterized but likely include direct viral cytopathic effects, apoptosis, increased cell turnover

Modes of Transmission

Table 20. Modes of Transmission by Site and Medium

HIV Invasion Site	Sub-Location	Transmission Medium	Transmission Probability per Exposure Event
Female genital tract	Vagina, ectocervix, endocervix	Semen	1 in 200 to 1 in 2,000
Male genital tract	Inner foreskin, penile urethra	Cervicovaginal and rectal secretions and desquamations	1 in 700 to 1 in 3,000
Intestinal tract	Rectum Upper GI tract	Semen	1 in 20 to 1 in 300
		Semen	1 in 2,500
		Maternal blood/genital secretions (intrapartum)	1 in 5 to 1 in 10
		Breastmilk	1 in 5 to 1 in 10
Placenta	Chorionic villi	Maternal blood (intrauterine)	1 in 10 to 1 in 20
Blood stream		Contaminated blood products	95 in 100
		Sharp/needlestick injuries	1 in 150

Adapted with permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd. *Nat Rev Immunology* 2008;8:447-457

NOTE: these estimates are for "all comers" i.e. they estimate transmission risk for anyone with HIV infection and do not take into account treatment status of the HIV+ person (in contrast to results of PARTNER study)



HIV-1 is the predominant type in North America and most of the world

HIV-2 is found mainly in West Africa

Both lead to AIDS but HIV-2 is generally less virulent



p24 = capsid protein
gp41 = fusion and entry
gp120 = attachment to host T-cell

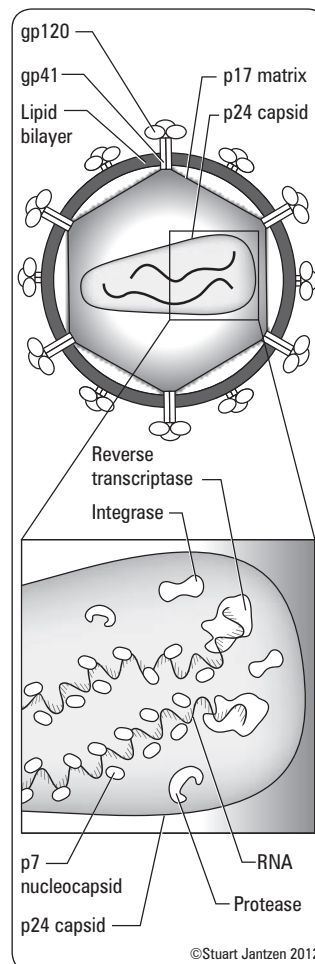


Homozygosity for A32 mutation in CCR5 gene confers relative resistance to HIV infection

Heterozygosity for A32 mutation in CCR5 gene associated with slower disease course



Infection is NOT transmitted by casual contact, kissing, mosquitoes, toilet seats, or shared utensils



©Stuart Jantzen 2012

Figure 9. HIV viral particle

Natural History

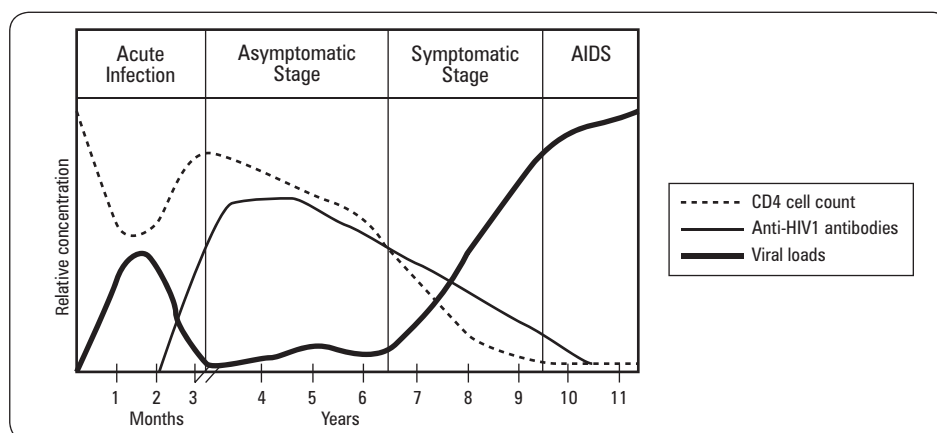


Figure 10. Relationships between CD4 T-cell count, viral load, and anti-HIV antibodies

Acute (Infection) Retroviral Syndrome

- 40-90% experience an acute "flu-like" illness (may include fever, pharyngitis, lymphadenopathy, rash, arthralgias, myalgias, H/A, GI symptoms, oral ulcers, weight loss) 2-6 wk post-exposure lasting 10-15 d
- hematologic disturbances (lymphopenia, thrombocytopenia)
- 10-20% present with aseptic meningitis; HIV RNA and/or p24 may be detected in CSF
- associated with a high level of plasma viremia and therefore high risk of transmission

Asymptomatic (Latent) Stage

- during latent phase, HIV infects and replicates in CD4+ T lymphocytes (lymph nodes)
- normal CD4 count: 500-1,100 cells/mm³
- CD4 count drops 60-100 cells/mm³ per year
- by 10 yr post-infection, 50% have AIDS, 30% demonstrate milder symptoms, and <20% are asymptomatic if left untreated

AIDS Definition in United States

- CD4+ T-lymphocyte count of <200 cells/μL OR
- CD4+ T-lymphocyte percentage of total lymphocytes of <14% OR
- documentation of an AIDS-defining condition

Table 21. Symptomatic Stage (CD4 count thresholds for classic clinical manifestations)

CD4 Counts	Possible Manifestations
<500 cells/mm ³	Often asymptomatic Constitutional symptoms: fever, night sweats, fatigue, weight loss Mucocutaneous lesions: seborrheic dermatitis, HSV, VZV (shingles), oral hairy leukoplakia (EBV), candidiasis (oral, esophageal, vaginal), Kaposi's sarcoma (KS) Recurrent bacterial infections, especially pneumonia Pulmonary and extrapulmonary tuberculosis Lymphoma
<200 cells/mm ³	<i>Pneumocystis jiroveci</i> pneumonia (formerly PCP) KS Oral thrush Local and/or disseminated fungal infections: <i>Cryptococcus neoformans</i> , <i>Coccidioides immitis</i> , <i>Histoplasma capsulatum</i>
<100 cells/mm ³	Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML) – JC virus CNS toxoplasmosis
<50 cells/mm ³	CMV infection: retinitis, colitis, cholangiopathy, CNS disease Mycobacterium avium complex (MAC) Bacillary angiomatosis (disseminated <i>Bartonella</i>) Primary central nervous system lymphoma (PCNSL)



PARTNER Study: Risk of HIV Transmission Between Serodiscordant Couples with HIV+ Partner on ART

Preliminary results presented at Conference on Retroviruses and Opportunistic Infections 2014 (CROI 2014); final results due 2017

Participants: 740 serodiscordant heterosexual (60% of couples) and homosexual couples (40% of couples) that engage in sex without using condoms. The HIV- partner cannot be using pre- or post-exposure prophylaxis and the HIV+ partner must be on ART with an undetectable viral load.

Methods: Partners enrolled in the study are asked to independently complete a questionnaire on sexual behavior with their partner every 3-6 mo. Additionally, if the HIV- partner seroconverts, a blood sample will be taken from each partner and the viruses genotyped for comparison. To remain in the study, the requirements for participation must be maintained.

Results: No HIV transmissions within couples from a partner with an undetectable viral load in an estimated 16,400 occasions of sex in MSM and 28,000 occasions of sex in the heterosexual couples. If the HIV+ partners had not been on treatment in this group, 50-100 (median: 86) transmissions would have been expected in the MSM group and 15 transmissions in heterosexual couples. In a couple whose sexual activity is considered as average for the group studied, there was a 95% chance that the greatest-possible risk of transmission from a partner was 0.45% per year as well as 1% per year from anal sex.



HIV should always be considered in the differential diagnosis of acute flu-like or mononucleosis-like illness!

Laboratory Diagnosis

- anti-HIV antibodies detectable after a median of 3 wk, virtually all by 3 mo (therefore 3 mo window period)
- initial screening test (3rd generation antibody test): enzyme linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) detects serum antibody to HIV; sensitivity >99.5%

- increasingly, combination p24 antigen/HIV antibody tests (4th generation) used for screening; improved sensitivity in early or acute infection and sensitivity/specificity approach 100% for chronic infection
- confirmatory test: in positive screen, Western blot confirmation by detection of antibodies to at least two different HIV protein bands (p24, gp41, gp120/160); specificity >99.99%
- rapid (point of care) antibody tests: higher false positives, therefore need to confirm positive results with traditional serology
- p24 antigen: detection by ELISA may be positive during "window period"

Management of the HIV-Positive Patient

- verify positive HIV test
- complete baseline history and physical exam, then follow-up every 3-6 mo
- laboratory evaluation
 - routine CD4 count to measure status of the immune system
 - routine HIV-RNA levels (viral load)
 - ♦ also important indicator of effect of ART
 - baseline HIV resistance testing to guide ARV therapy
 - HLA-B*5701 genetic test to screen for abacavir hypersensitivity
 - baseline tuberculin skin test (PPD): induration greater than 5 mm is positive
 - baseline serologies (hepatitis A, B, and C, syphilis, toxoplasma, CMV, VZV)
 - routine biochemistry and hematology, CXR
 - annual fasting lipid profile and fasting glucose (due to HAART side effects)
- education
 - regular follow-up on CD4 counts and viral loads (q3-6 mo) as well as strict adherence to ART improves prognosis
 - prevention of further transmission through safer sex and clean needles for injection drug use
 - HIV superinfection (transmission of different HIV strains from another HIV+ person) does rarely occur so barrier protection during sex is still recommended
 - discuss importance of disclosing HIV status to partners including risk of criminal prosecution of non-disclosure in jurisdictions where applicable
 - connect to relevant community groups and resources
- health care maintenance
 - assessment of psychosocial concerns and referral to psychiatry or social work if appropriate
 - vaccines: influenza annually, 23-valent pneumococcal every 5 yr, HBV (if not immune), HAV (if seronegative)
 - annual screening (PAP smear, STDs)
 - management of comorbid conditions and provision of general primary care

Table 22. Prophylaxis Against Opportunistic Infections in HIV-Infected Patients

Pathogen	Indication for Prophylaxis	Prophylactic Regimen
<i>Pneumocystis jiroveci</i>	CD4 count <200 cells/mm ³ or history of oral candidiasis	TMP-SMX 1 SS or DS OD
<i>Toxoplasma gondii</i>	IgG antibody to <i>Toxoplasma</i> and CD4 count <100 cells/mm ³	As per prophylaxis for pneumocystis
<i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i>	PPD reaction >5 mm or contact with case of active TB	INH + pyridoxine daily x 9 mo
<i>Mycobacterium avium</i> complex	CD4 count <50 cells/mm ³	Azithromycin 1,200 mg q1wk

SS = single strength; DS = double strength

See 2002 USPHS/IDSA guidelines for preventing opportunistic infections among HIV-infected persons. Available from: <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/>

Anti-Retroviral Treatment

Overall Treatment Principles

- recommended that all HIV+ patients initiate HAART to prevent disease progression and transmission; strength of evidence supporting that recommendation changes depending on CD4 count and sexual practices (AI evidence that CD4 <350 should be on HAART)
- patients starting HAART should be committed to treatment and understand the importance of adherence; poor compliance can lead to viral resistance; may defer treatment on the basis of clinical and psychosocial factors on case by case basis
- initiate ART if opportunistic infection/malignancy, pregnancy, HIV-associated nephropathy, HIV-associated thrombocytopenia, need for hepatitis B therapy in HBV co-infected patients
- consider starting treatment early if HCV co-infection, high HIV viral load, comorbid conditions (e.g. cardiovascular disease)
- consider results of baseline resistance testing and complete ART history before (re-)initiating HAART
- goal: keep viral load below limit of detection i.e. <40 copies/mL (undetectable); viral load should decrease 10-fold within 4-8 wk, be undetectable by 6 mo and restore immunological function
- strong evidence against intermittent HAART or 'drug holidays'
- ART leads to 96% reduction in risk of transmitting HIV to sexual partners



Seroconversion: Development of detectable anti-HIV antibodies

Window Period: Time between infection and development of anti-HIV antibodies; when serologic tests (ELISA, Western blot) are negative



All infants born to HIV infected mothers have positive ELISA tests because of circulating maternal anti-HIV antibodies which disappear by 18 mo; early diagnosis is made by detection of HIV RNA in plasma



HIV Status

- CD4 count: progress and stage of disease
- Viral load: rate of progression



1° and 2° prophylaxis may be discontinued if CD4 count is above threshold for ≥6 mo while on ART



HLA-B*5701 Testing

Abacavir hypersensitivity reactions usually only occur in individuals carrying this HLA allele (~5-7% of Caucasians, lower prevalence in other ethnic groups). Routine screening for HLA-B*5701 at baseline and definitely prior to abacavir use



Reasons for Deterioration of a Patient with HIV/AIDS

- Opportunistic infections
- Neoplasms
- Medication-related toxicities
- Co-infections (e.g. HBV, HCV, STDs)
- Non-AIDS-related comorbidities (e.g. cardiovascular, renal, hepatic, neurocognitive, bone disease)

HAART Recommendations for Treatment of Naïve Patients

- 2 NRTIs + 1 NNRTI/PI (boosted with ritonavir)/INSTI

Treatment Failure

- defined clinically (HIV progression), immunologically (failure to increase CD4 count by 25-50 over first year of treatment or CD4 decrease >100 over 1 yr), or virologically (failure to achieve viral load <40 copies/mL after 6 mo)
- ensure that viral load >40 is not just a transient viremia or 'blip'; confirm medication adherence, assess drug interactions, resistance testing

Table 23. Anti-Retroviral Drugs

Class	Drugs	Mechanism	Adverse Effects
Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)	zidovudine (AZT) lamivudine (3TC) stavudine (d4T) didanosine (ddI) abacavir (ABC) emtricitabine (FTC) tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) Combination Tablets: AZT/3TC (Combivir®) AZT/3TC/ABC (Trizivir®) ABC/3TC (Kivexa®) TDF/FTC (Truvada®)	Incorporated into the growing viral DNA chain, thereby competitively inhibiting reverse transcriptase and terminating viral DNA growth	Lactic acidosis Lipodystrophy Rash N/V/diarrhea Bone marrow suppression (AZT) Peripheral neuropathy (ddI, d4T) Drug-induced hypersensitivity (ABC) Pancreatitis (ddI/d4T) Myopathy (AZT)
Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)	efavirenz (EFZ) nevirapine (NVP) delavirdine (DLV) etravirine (ETR) rilpivirine (RPV)	Non-competitively inhibit function of reverse transcriptase, thereby preventing viral RNA replication	Rash, Stevens-Johnson syndrome CNS: dizziness, insomnia, somnolence, abnormal dreams (efavirenz) Hepatotoxicity (nevirapine – avoid in females with CD4 >250, men with CD4 >400) CYP3A4 interactions
Protease inhibitors (PIs)*	ritonavir (RTV) saquinavir (SQV) amprenavir (APV) nelfinavir (NFV) indinavir (IDV) atazanavir (ATV) fosamprenavir (FPV) lopinavir/ritonavir (Kaletra®) tipranavir (TPV) darunavir (DRV)	Prevent maturation of infectious virions by inhibiting the cleavage of polyproteins	Lipodystrophy, metabolic syndrome N/V/diarrhea Nephrolithiasis (indinavir) Rash (APV) Hyperbilirubinemia (atazanavir, indinavir) CYP3A4 interactions Hyperlipidemia
Fusion inhibitor	enfuvirtide (T-20)	Inhibit viral fusion with T-cells by inhibiting gp41, preventing cell infection	Injection site reactions, rash, infection, diarrhea, nausea, fatigue
CCR5 antagonist	maraviroc	Inhibit viral entry by blocking host CCR5 co-receptor	Fever, cough, dizziness
Integrase strand transfer inhibitors (INSTIs)	raltegravir elvitegravir dolutegravir	Inhibits integration of HIV DNA into the human genome thus preventing HIV replication	

*Standard of care is to pharmacologically boost most PIs with ritonavir to increase concentrations

Single Tablet ART Regimens

- reduces pill burden and increases adherence
- generally better tolerated

Table 24. Single Tablet HAART Regimens

Name	Contents	Common Side Effects
Atripla®	efavirenz/tenofovir/emtricitabine	psychiatric events, vivid dreams
Complera®	rilpivirine/emtricitabine/tenofovir	good side effect profile
Stribild®	elvitegravir/cobicistat/emtricitabine/tenofovir	good side effect profile



Treatment Failure

- Assess adherence
- Assess drug interactions
- Resistance testing
- Rule out opportunistic infections
- Rule out marrow suppression
- Construct new 3-drug regimen



Lactic Acidosis

- Occurs secondary to mitochondrial toxicity
- Symptoms include abdominal pain, fatigue, N/V, muscle weakness



Lipodystrophy

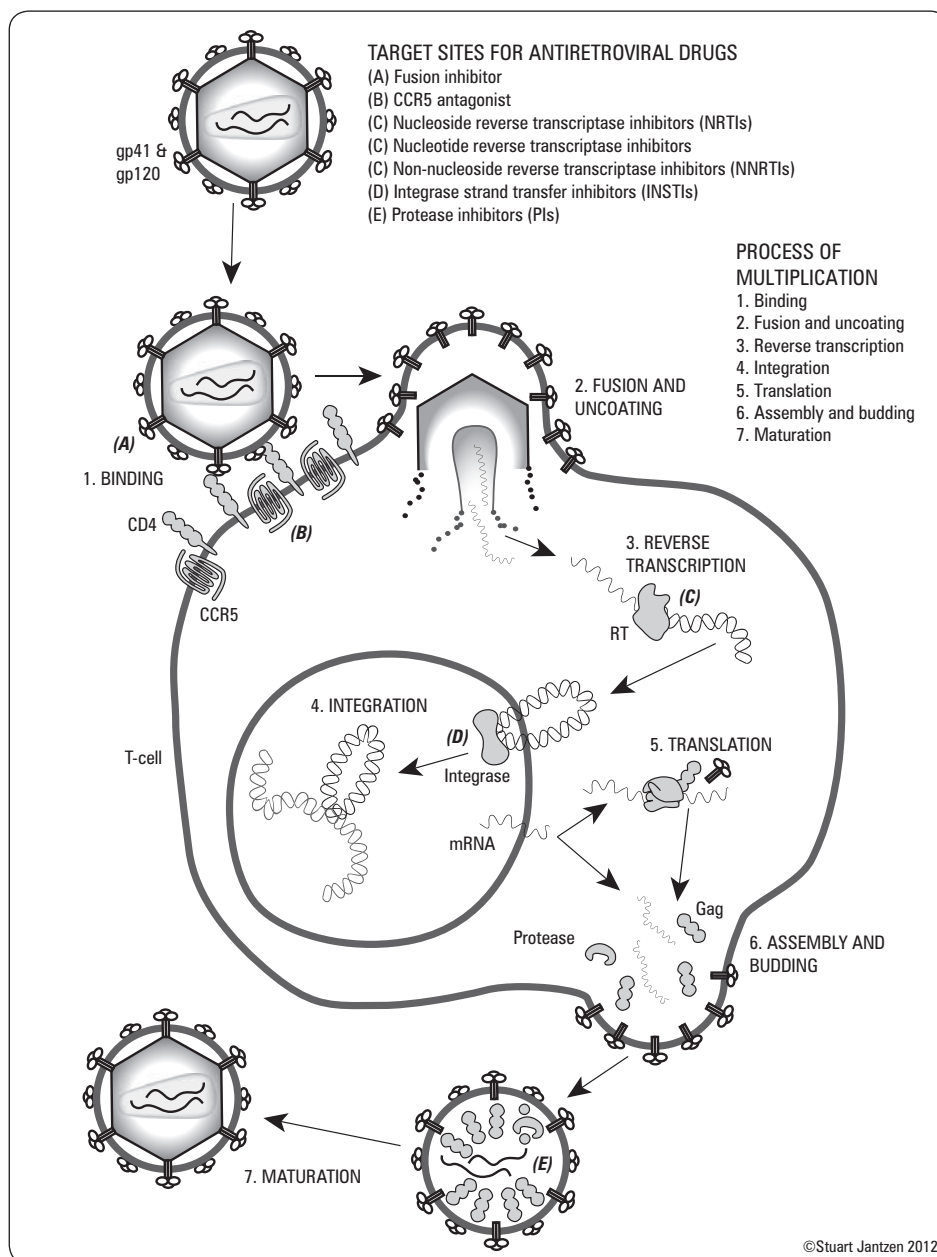
Body fat redistribution (mainly with old ARVs):

- Lipohypertrophy (e.g. dorsal fat pad, breast enlargement, increased abdominal girth) thought to be caused primarily by protease inhibitors
- Lipodystrophy (e.g. facial thinning, decreased adipose tissue in the extremities) is thought to be caused by thymidine analogue NRTIs such as ddI and AZT
- Metabolic abnormalities: lipids (increased LDL, increased TGs), glucose (insulin resistance, type 2 DM), increased risk of CVD



Pharmacologic Boosting

- The goal of pharmacologic boosting is to increase the plasma exposure to the boosted drug
- PI boosting traditionally achieved by administering low-dose ritonavir along with the PI
- Ritonavir inhibits the metabolism of other PIs primarily by inhibiting cytochrome P450 3A4, the enzyme systems responsible for metabolism of the PIs
- Cobicistat is a new non-ARV pharmacologic booster, presently co-formulated with the INSTI elvitegravir



Tropism Testing

- In addition to CD4, HIV requires a co-receptor (either CCR5 or CXCR4) to enter cells
- CCR5 antagonists (e.g. Maraviroc) only work if virus is CCR5-tropic
- Tropism test required prior to initiating CCR5 antagonists

Figure 11. Mechanism of HIV replications

Prevention of HIV Infection

- education, including harm-reduction
 - safer sexual practices: condoms for vaginal and anal sex, barriers for oral sex
 - harm reduction for injection drug users: avoid sharing needles
- treatment of HIV+ women with HAART during the 2nd and 3rd trimester of pregnancy and AZT during delivery followed by treatment of the infant for 6 wk (decreases maternal-fetal transmission from 25% to <3%)
- universal blood and body precautions for health care workers
 - post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) after occupational (e.g. needle-stick injury) and non-occupational (e.g. consensual sex, sexual assault) exposure to HIV: 2- or 3-drug regimen initiated immediately (<72 h) after exposure and continuing for 4 wk
- recent data has demonstrated efficacy of pre-exposure prophylaxis (oral PrEP or topical microbicides) in preventing HIV although additional data needed
- ART associated with 96% reduction in risk of transmitting HIV to sexual partners
- screening of blood and organ donation

Types of Testing

1. Nominal/Name-Based HIV Testing

- the person ordering the test knows the identity of the person being tested for HIV
- the HIV test is ordered using the name of the person being tested
- person ordering the test is legally obligated to notify Public Health officials if test results are positive for HIV
- the test result is recorded in the health care record of the person being tested

2. Non-Nominal/Non-Identifying HIV Testing

- similar to nominal/name-based testing on all points except:
 - the HIV test is ordered using a code or the initials of the person being tested

3. Anonymous Testing

- available at specialized clinics
- the person ordering the HIV test does not know the identity of the person being tested
- the HIV test is carried out using a unique non-identifying code that only the person being tested for HIV knows
- test results are not recorded on the health care record of the person being tested
- patient identification and notification of Public Health required to gain access to ART



Early identification of HIV is essential for patients to receive the maximal benefit from ART

HIV Pre- and Post-Test Counseling

- a diagnosis of HIV can be overwhelming and is often associated with stigma and discrimination
- consider pre- and post-test counseling, regardless of the results
- goals include: assessing risk, making informed decision to be tested, education to protect themselves and others from virus exposure, where to go for more information and support
- HIV+ patients should be connected with local support services

Fungal Infections

Skin and Subcutaneous Infections

Superficial Fungal Infections

- see [Dermatology](#), D23



Dermatophytes

- see [Dermatology](#), D25



Subcutaneous Fungal Infection

Pathophysiology

- fungi that naturally reside in soil and enter skin via traumatic break
- *Sporothrix schenckii*: most commonly affects gardeners injured by a rose thorn or splinter
 - causes subcutaneous nodule at point of entry
 - fungi may migrate up lymphatic vessels creating nodules along the way – “nodular lymphangitis”

Treatment

- oral azole (e.g. itraconazole)
- IV amphotericin B for severe or disseminated infection

Endemic Mycoses

Basics

- three major endemic mycoses in North America
 - histoplasmosis
 - blastomycosis
 - coccidioidomycosis

- thermally dimorphic organisms: mold in cold temperature (e.g. soil) and yeast at higher temperature (e.g. tissue)
- infection occurs through inhalation of spores (soil, bird droppings, vegetation) or inoculation injury
- all can cause pneumonia and may disseminate hematogenously
- may reactivate or disseminate during immunocompromise

Treatment

- common to all endemic mycoses
 - oral azole (e.g. itraconazole for mild-moderate local infection)
 - IV amphotericin B for systemic infection

Table 25. Endemic Mycoses

Disease	Endemic Region	Clinical Features	Investigations
<i>Histoplasma capsulatum</i>	Ohio and Mississippi River valleys in central USA, Ontario, Quebec; widespread	Asymptomatic (in most people) Primary pulmonary <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fever, cough, chest pain, headache, myalgia, anorexia • CXR (acute): pulmonary infiltrates ± hilar lymphadenopathy • CXR (chronic): pulmonary infiltrates, cavitory disease Disseminated (rare) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Occurs primarily in immunocompromised patients • Spread to bone marrow (pancytopenia), GI tract (ulcers), lymph nodes (lymphadenitis), skin, liver, adrenals, CNS 	Fungal culture, fungal stain Antigen detection (urine and serum) Serology
<i>Blastomyces dermatitidis</i>	States east of Mississippi River, Northern Ontario and along the Great Lakes	May be asymptomatic Primary: acute or chronic pneumonia <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fever, cough, chest pain, chills, night sweats, weight loss • CXR (acute): lobar or segmental pneumonia • CXR (chronic): lobar infiltrates, fibronodular interstitial disease Disseminated <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spread to skin (verrucous lesions that mimic skin cancer, ulcers, subcutaneous nodules), bones (osteomyelitis, osteolytic lesions), GU tract (prostatitis, epididymitis) 	Sputum smear and culture Direct examination of clinical specimens for characteristic broad-based budding yeast (sputum, tissue, purulent material)
<i>Coccidioides immitis</i>	Deserts in southwest USA, northwest Mexico	Primary <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Valley fever": subacute fever, chills, cough, chest pain, sore throat, fatigue that lasts for weeks to months • Can develop hypersensitivity with arthralgias, erythema nodosum Disseminated <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rare spread to skin (ulcers), joints (synovitis), bones (lytic lesions), meninges (meningitis) • Common opportunistic infection in patients with HIV 	Sputum culture Direct examination of clinical specimens for characteristic yeast (sputum, tissue, purulent material)



Histoplasmosis is commonly associated with exposure to chicken coops, bird roosts, and bat caves



High Risk for Dissemination

- Immunocompromised (e.g. HIV, steroids, TNF- α inhibitors, transplantation)
- Pregnancy (3rd trimester)
- DM

Opportunistic Fungi

Pneumocystis jiroveci (formerly *P. carinii*)

Microbiology

- unicellular fungi
- previously classified as a protozoa

Transmission

- rarely person-to-person transmission
- most disease is due to reactivation of latent infection acquired by the respiratory route or reinfection by a different genotype
 - causes clinical disease in immunocompromised patients (steroid use, HIV)
 - 80% lifetime risk without prophylaxis (TMP/SMX) in HIV patients with CD4 count <200 cells/mm³

Clinical Features

- symptoms of pneumonia: fever, nonproductive cough, progressive dyspnea
- classic CXR

Investigations

- demonstration of organism in induced sputum, bronchoalveolar lavage, or endotracheal aspirate (if intubated)



CXR in *P. jiroveci*

- Bilateral, diffuse opacities
- CXR may be normal (20-30% cases)
- CT or CXR may show cysts if advanced (hence the name Pneumo"cystis")
- Almost never pleural effusions

Treatment and Prevention

- oxygen to keep $\text{SaO}_2 > 90\%$
- antimicrobial options
 - TMP/SMX (PO or IV) *First line
 - dapsone and TMP
 - clindamycin and primaquine
 - pentamidine (IV)
 - atovaquone
- corticosteroids used as adjuvant therapy in those with severe hypoxia ($\text{pO}_2 < 70$ mmHg or A-a gradient $\text{O}_2 > 35$ mmHg)
- prophylactic TMP/SMX for those at high risk of infection (HIV patients when $\text{CD4} < 200$ cells/mm³ or non-HIV immunocompromised patients under specific conditions)

Cryptococcus spp.**Microbiology**

- encapsulated yeast found worldwide
- 2 human pathogenic species: *C. gattii*, *C. neoformans*

Transmission

- inhalation of airborne yeast from soil contaminated with pigeon droppings (*C. neoformans*) or certain tree species such as Eucalyptus or Douglas fir (*C. gattii*) → may cause local infection in lung → asymptomatic or pneumonia
- may also spread hematogenously to the CNS, skin, bones, and other organs
- *C. neoformans* tends to affect immunocompromised hosts
- *C. gattii* tends to affect immunocompetent hosts

Clinical Features

- pulmonary
 - usually asymptomatic or self-limited pneumonitis
 - only 2% of HIV+ patients present with pulmonary symptoms including productive cough, chest tightness, and fever
- disseminated
 - frequently disseminates in HIV+ population
 - CNS: meningitis (leading cause of meningitis in patients with HIV)
 - skin: umbilicated papules that resemble large lesions of *Molluscum contagiosum*

Investigations

- serum cryptococcal antigen
- CSF for meningitis: India-ink stain, cryptococcal antigen test, culture to confirm

Treatment

- in patients with HIV who have cryptococcal meningitis or severe pulmonary disease:
 - amphotericin B (+ flucytosine) is used in the first 2 wk for induction therapy; limited duration due to side effects
 - switch to fluconazole for at least 8 wk as consolidation therapy, then continue at lower dose for prolonged maintenance



C. gattii sees limited geographical distribution including Vancouver Island, Northern Australia, and Papua New Guinea



India-ink sensitivity for cryptococcus is only 50% (higher in HIV patients)

Candida albicans**Microbiology**

- yeast forms with pseudohyphae at 68°F/20°C and germ tube formation at 86°F/37°C

Transmission

- normal flora of skin, mouth, vagina, and GI tract
- risk factors for overgrowth
 - immunocompromised state (DM, corticosteroids)
 - ICU patients (broad-spectrum antibiotic use, central venous catheters, TPN)
 - obesity → maceration and moisture in intertriginous areas, pannus, under breasts

Clinical Features

- mucocutaneous
 - oral thrush, esophagitis (chest pain, odynophagia), vulvovaginitis (see [Gynecology, GY24](#)), balanitis, cutaneous (diaper rash, skin folds, folliculitis), chronic mucocutaneous
 - small satellite lesions beyond the margin of the rash
- invasive
 - candidemia, endophthalmitis, endocarditis, UTI (upper tract), hepatosplenic disease

Treatment

- thrush: nystatin suspension or pastilles for mild disease, fluconazole for severe disease
- vulvovaginal candidiasis: topical agents (imidazole or nystatin), oral fluconazole for recurrent disease
- cutaneous infection: topical imidazole
- opportunistic infections in HIV, other systemic infections: fluconazole or echinocandin
- chronic mucocutaneous: azoles

Aspergillus* spp.*Microbiology**

- branching septate hyphae
- common species causing disease include *A. fumigatus*, *A. flavus*

Transmission

- ubiquitous in the air and the environment
- *Aspergillus* produces a toxin called aflatoxin that contaminates nuts, grains, and rice

Clinical Features

- allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis (ABPA)
 - IgE-mediated asthma-type reaction with dyspnea, high fever, and transient pulmonary infiltrates
 - occurs more frequently in patients with asthma and allergies
- aspergilloma (fungus ball)
 - ball of hyphae in a preexisting lung cavity
 - symptoms range from asymptomatic to massive hemoptysis
 - CXR: round opacity surrounded by a thin lucent rim of air, often in upper lobes ("air crescent" sign)
- invasive aspergillosis
 - associated with prolonged and persistent neutropenia or transplantation
 - pneumonia – most common
 - may disseminate to other organs: brain, skin
 - severe symptoms with fever, cough, dyspnea, cavitation; fatal if not treated early and aggressively
 - CXR: local or diffuse infiltrates ± pulmonary infarction, pulmonary nodules with surrounding ground glass ("halo" sign)
- mycotoxicosis
 - aflatoxin produced by *A. flavus* (nuts, grains, rice)
 - results in liver necrosis and hepatocellular carcinoma

Treatment Options

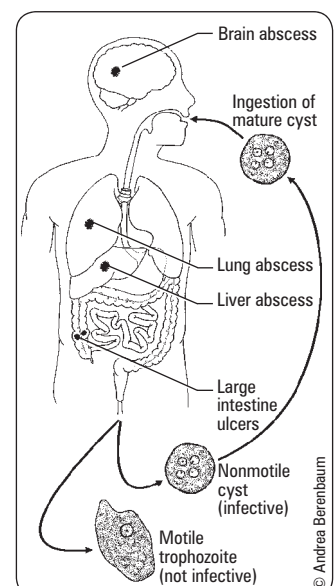
- for invasive aspergillosis: voriconazole or amphotericin B
- surgical resection for aspergilloma
- corticosteroids ± itraconazole for ABPA

Parasitic Infections**Protozoa – Intestinal/Genitourinal Infections*****Entamoeba histolytica* (Amoebas)****Transmission**

- reservoir: infected humans
- cysts by fecal-oral and food/waterborne transmission in areas of poor sanitation
- seen in immigrants, travelers, institutionalized individuals, Aborigines, MSM

Clinical Features

- asymptomatic carriers
- amoebic dysentery
 - abdominal pain, cramping, colitis, dysentery, low grade fever with bloody diarrhea secondary to local tissue destruction and ulceration of large intestine
- amoebic abscesses
 - most common in liver (hematologic spread); presents with RUQ pain, weight loss, fever, hepatomegaly
 - can also occur in lungs and brain

**Figure 12. Entamoeba life cycle**

Investigations

- serology, fecal/serum antigen testing, stool exam (for cysts and trophozoites), colon biopsy
- *E. histolytica* indistinguishable microscopically from the non-pathogen *E. dispar* (distinguish by specific stool antigen detection)

Treatment and Prevention

- metronidazole
- for invasive disease or cyst elimination: follow with iodoquinol or paromomycin
- aspiration of hepatic abscess if risk of cyst rupture, poor response to medical therapy, or diagnostic uncertainty
- asymptomatic cyst: iodoquinol or paromomycin alone
- good personal hygiene, purification of water supply by boiling, filtration (not chlorination)

Giardia lamblia

Transmission

- reservoir: infected humans and other mammals
- food/waterborne (especially in the Rockies) and fecal-oral transmission of infectious cysts
- risk factors: travel, camping, institutions, day care centers, MSM

Clinical Features

- giardiasis ("beaver fever")
 - symptoms vary from asymptomatic to self-limited mild watery diarrhea to malabsorption syndrome (chronic giardiasis where the parasite coats small intestine and thus prevents fat absorption)
 - nausea, malaise, abdominal cramps, bloating, flatulence, fatigue, weight loss, steatorrhea
 - no hematochezia (no invasion into intestinal wall), no mucus in stool

Investigations

- multiple stool samples (daily x 3 d) for microscopy, stool antigen used occasionally
- occasionally small bowel aspirate or biopsy

Treatment and Prevention

- metronidazole, nitazoxanide if symptomatic
- good personal hygiene and sanitation, water purification (iodine better than chlorination), outbreak investigation

Trichomonas vaginalis

Transmission

- sexual contact

Clinical Features

- often asymptomatic (10-50%), especially males (occasionally urethritis, prostatitis)
- trichomonas vaginitis (see [Gynecology, GY25](#))
 - vaginal discharge (profuse, malodorous, yellow-green or gray, frothy), pruritus, dysuria, dyspareunia

Investigations

- wet mount (motile parasites), antigen detection, culture
- urine PCR to detect in males

Treatment

- metronidazole for patient and partner(s)



Trichomonas causes 25% of vaginitis

***Cryptosporidium* spp.**

Transmission

- reservoir: infected humans and a wide variety of young animals
- fecal-oral transmission by ingestion of cysts, waterborne
- risk factors: summer and fall, young children (day care), MSM, contact with farm animals, immunocompromise, immune reconstitution

Clinical Features

- range from self-limited watery diarrhea (immunocompetent) to chronic, severe, non-bloody diarrhea with N/V, abdominal pain, and anorexia resulting in weight loss and death (immunocompromised)

Investigations

- modified acid-fast stain of stool specimen, microscopic identification of oocysts in stool or tissue, stool antigen detection by direct fluorescent antibody

Treatment and Prevention

- supportive care
- in HIV, try HAART to restore immunity; if fails, try nitazoxanide
- good personal hygiene, water filtration



Malaria is the most common fatal infectious disease worldwide

Blood and Tissue Infections

Plasmodium spp. (Malaria)

Microbiology

- species include: *P. falciparum* (most common and most lethal), *P. vivax*, *P. ovale*, *P. malariae*, *P. knowlesi* (new species isolated from primates in Malaysia, potentially fatal)
- complex life cycle: human host for asexual reproduction and mosquito for sexual reproduction
- sporozoite from mosquitoes infect liver cells in which parasites multiply and are released as merozoites which infect RBCs causing disease
- P. ovale* and *P. vivax* can produce dormant hypnozoites in the liver that may cause relapsing malarial attacks by reactivating (entering the erythrocytic cycle) after many months

Transmission

- reservoir: infected human
- transmission by the night-biting female *Anopheles* mosquito, vertical transmission, and blood transfusion
- occurs in tropical/subtropical regions (sub-Saharan Africa, Oceania, South Asia, Central America, Southeast Asia, South America)

Clinical Features

- flu-like prodrome
- paroxysms of high spiking fever and shaking chills (due to synchronous systemic lysis of RBCs) (lasts several hours)
 - P. vivax* and *P. ovale*: chills and fever q48h but can be variable
 - P. malariae*: chills and fever q72h but can be variable
 - P. falciparum*: less predictable fever interval, can be highly variable (>90% ill within 30 d)
- abdominal pain, diarrhea, myalgia, H/A, and cough
- hepatosplenomegaly and thrombocytopenia without leukocytosis

Complications

- P. falciparum*: CNS involvement (cerebral malaria = seizures and coma), severe anemia, acute renal failure, ARDS, primarily responsible for fatal disease
- P. knowlesi*, and rarely *P. vivax* can be fatal

Investigations

- microscopy: blood smear q12-24h (x3) to rule out infection
 - thick smear (Giemsa stain) for presence of organisms
 - thin smear (Giemsa stain) for species identification and quantification of parasites
- rapid antigen detection tests

Treatment and Prevention

- P. vivax*, *P. ovale*: chloroquine (and primaquine to eradicate liver forms)
- P. vivax*, chloroquine resistant: primaquine with quinine and doxycycline or tetracycline or mefloquine
- P. malariae*, *P. knowlesi*: chloroquine
- P. falciparum*: most areas of the world show chloroquine resistance – check local resistance patterns
 - artemisinin combination therapy (e.g. artesunate + doxycycline or clindamycin or atovaquone/proguanil)
 - atovaquone/proguanil combination (Malarone®)
 - quinine plus doxycycline, tetracycline, or clindamycin
 - mefloquine and artemisinin resistance increasing in southeast Asia (check local resistance)
- prevention with antimalarial prophylaxis, covering exposed skin, bed nets, insect repellent

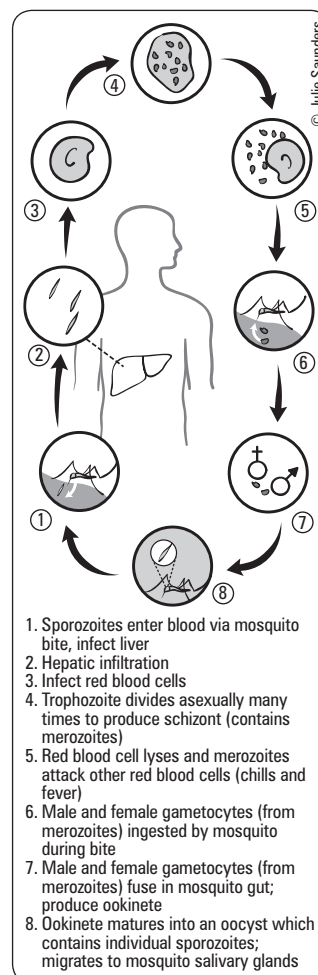


Figure 13. Life cycle of *Plasmodium* spp.



Drugs for Preventing Malaria in Travelers

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;CD006491

Study: Cochrane Systematic Review. 8 RCTs.

Population: 4,240 non-immune adults and children traveling to regions with *P. falciparum* resistance to chloroquine.

Intervention: Atovaquone-proguanil, doxycycline, mefloquine, chloroquine-proguanil, or primaquine used for malaria prophylaxis.

Outcome: Efficacy, safety, and tolerability.

Results: Atovaquone-proguanil and doxycycline had similar adverse events. Atovaquone-proguanil had fewer overall (RR 0.72), GI (RR 0.54), and neuropsychiatric events (RR 0.49) than mefloquine. Doxycycline also had fewer neuropsychiatric events than mefloquine (RR 0.84).

Conclusion: Atovaquone-proguanil or doxycycline as prophylaxis against malaria is best tolerated in terms of adverse effects and mefloquine is associated with adverse neuropsychiatric outcomes.

Trypanosoma cruzi

Transmission

- found in Mexico, South America, and Central America
- transmission by Reduviid insect vector ("Kissing Bug"), which defecates on skin and trypomastigotes in the stool are rubbed into bite site by host

- also transmitted via placental transfer, organ donation, blood transfusion, and ingestion of contaminated food containing Reduviid insects (especially cane juice)

Clinical Features

- American trypanosomiasis (Chagas disease)
 - acute: usually asymptomatic, local swelling at site of inoculation ("Romana's sign"; usually around one eye) with variable fever, lymphadenopathy, cardiomegaly, and hepatosplenomegaly
 - intermediate phase: asymptomatic but increasing levels of parasite and antibody in blood; most infected persons remain in this phase
 - chronic: can lead to chronic dilated cardiomyopathy, esophagomegaly, and megacolon 10-25 yr after acute infection in 30-40% of infected individuals

Investigations

- wet prep and Giemsa stain of thick and thin blood smear, serology, PCR

Treatment and Prevention

- acute: nifurtimox or benznidazole
- intermediate: increasing trend to treat as acute infection
- chronic: symptomatic therapy, surgery including heart transplant, or esophagectomy, colectomy, as necessary, may be a benefit to antiparasitic treatment
- insect control, bed nets

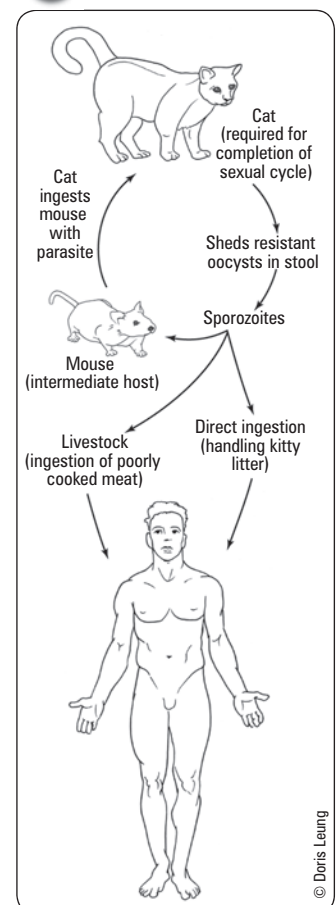


1/3 of Ontario's population is infected with *Toxoplasma gondii*



Classic Triad of Congenital Toxoplasmosis:

- Chorioretinitis
- Hydrocephalus
- Intracranial calcifications



© Doris Leung

Figure 14. Life cycle of *Toxoplasma gondii*

Toxoplasma gondii

Transmission

- acquired through exposure to cat feces (oocysts), ingestion of undercooked meat (tissue cysts), vertical transmission, organ transplantation, gardening without gloves, or whole blood transfusions

Clinical Features

- congenital
 - result of acute primary infection of mother during pregnancy (TORCH infection – see [Obstetrics, OB19](#))
 - stillbirth (rare), chorioretinitis, blindness, seizures, severe developmental delay, microcephaly
 - initially asymptomatic infant may develop reactivation of chorioretinitis as adolescent or adult → blurred vision, scotoma, ocular pain, photophobia, epiphora, hearing loss, developmental delay
- acquired
 - usually asymptomatic or mononucleosis-like syndrome in immunocompetent patient
 - infection remains latent for life unless reactivation due to immunosuppression
- immunocompromised (most commonly AIDS with CD4 <200)
 - encephalitis with focal CNS lesions seen as single or multiple ring-enhancing masses on CT (H/A and focal neurological signs)
 - lymph node, liver, and spleen enlargement and pneumonitis
 - chorioretinitis

Investigations

- serology, CSF Wright-Giemsa stain, antigen or DNA detection (PCR); pathology provides definitive diagnosis
- immunocompromised patients: consider CT scan (ring-enhancing lesion in cortex or deep nuclei) and ophthalmologic examination
- negative serology in many AIDS patients (false negative due to decreased lymphocyte population)

Treatment and Prevention

- no treatment if: immunocompetent, not pregnant, no severe organ damage
- pregnancy: spiramycin to prevent transplacental transmission or pyrimethamine + sulfadiazine (add folinic acid), avoid undercooked meat and refrain from emptying cat litter boxes
- HIV: pyrimethamine + sulfadiazine (see [Prophylaxis, ID29](#))
- eye disease, meningitis: corticosteroids
- proper hand hygiene, cook meat thoroughly to proper temperature

Helminths

Roundworms – Nematodes

Table 26. Nematodes (Roundworms)

Nematode	Epidemiology	Transmission	Medical Importance	Treatment
<i>Ascaris lumbricoides</i>	Tropics	Human feces, ingestion of contaminated food or water	Abdominal pain and intestinal obstruction from high worm burden Cough, dyspnea, pulmonary infiltrates from larval migration through lungs (Löffler's syndrome)	Mebendazole OR albendazole OR pyrantel pamoate
<i>Trichuris trichiura</i> (whipworm)	Tropics	Ingestion of eggs in soil	Diarrhea (± mucus, blood), abdominal pain, rectal prolapse, stunted growth	Mebendazole OR albendazole
<i>Onchocerca volvulus</i>	Africa, Latin America	Black fly bite	River blindness (onchocerciasis), dermatitis	Ivermectin + doxycycline
<i>Wuchereria bancrofti</i>	Tropics	Mosquito bite	Damage to lymphatics resulting in lymphadenopathy, lymphedema, and elephantiasis Tropical pulmonary eosinophilia	Diethylcarbamazine + doxycycline
<i>Loa Loa</i>	Central Africa	Deer fly bite	Subcutaneous migration of worm, hyperresponsiveness in travelers	Diethylcarbamazine, removal of adult
<i>Enterobius vermicularis</i> (Pinworm)	Worldwide	Human host: fecal-oral self-inoculation and fomite person-to-person transfer Adult worms live in cecum and deposit eggs in perianal skin	Asymptomatic carriers or severe nocturnal perianal itching (pruritus ani) Occasional vaginitis Abdominal pain, N/V with high worm burden	Sticky tape test: eggs adhere to tape applied to perianal skin (need 5-7 tests to rule out) Examination of perianal skin at night may reveal adult worms Usually no eosinophilia as no tissue invasion Mebendazole, albendazole; pyrantel in pregnancy Change underwear, bathe in morning, pajamas to bed, wash hands, trim fingernails Treat all family members simultaneously Reinfection common
<i>Strongyloides stercoralis</i> (Threadworm)	Subtropical, tropical, and temperate (including southern US)	Fecal contamination of soil: transmission via unbroken skin, walking barefoot Autoinfection: penetration of larvae through GI mucosa or perianal skin Adult worms live in mucosa of small intestine	One of few worms able to multiply in human host Mostly asymptomatic infection or can have pruritic dermatitis at site of larval penetration Transient pulmonary symptoms during pulmonary migration of larvae (eosinophilic pneumonitis = Löffler's syndrome) Abdominal pain, diarrhea, pruritis ani, larva currens (itchy rash) Hyperinfection: occasional fatal cases caused by massive auto-infection in immunocompromised host; immunoablative therapy, including high-dose corticosteroids, is the most common risk factor for disseminated infection	Ivermectin, 200 µg/kg/d PO x 2 doses (albendazole 40 mg PO bid x 7 d, less effective)

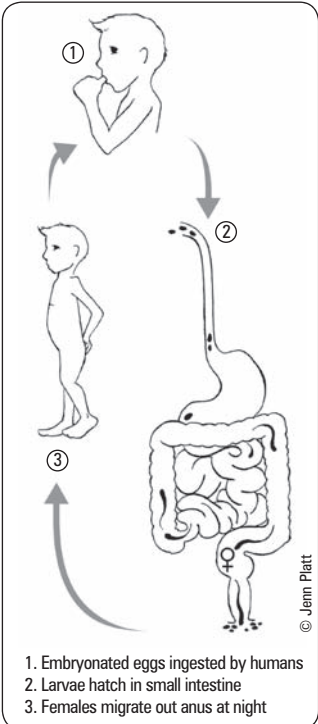


Figure 15. Life cycle of Enterobius

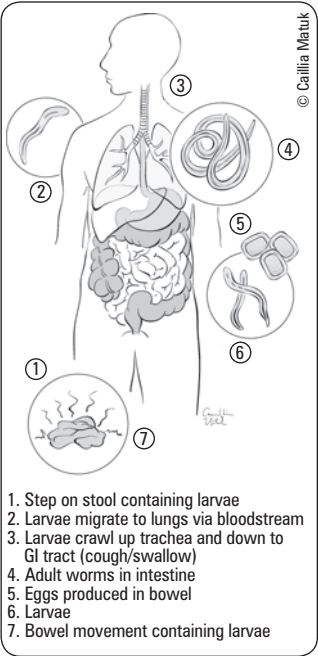


Figure 16. Life cycle of Strongyloides

Flatworms

Cestodes/Trematodes

Table 27. Cestodes/Trematodes (Flatworms)

	Epidemiology	Transmission	Medical Importance	Treatment
CESTODES				
<i>Taenia solium</i>	Developing countries	Undercooked pork (larvae), human feces (eggs)	Taeniasis: mild abdominal symptoms Cysticercosis: mass lesions in CNS, eyes, skin, seizures	Corticosteroids + albendazole for cysticercosis Antiepileptics if seizures Praziquantel for adult tapeworm in gut (taeniasis)
<i>Taenia saginata</i>	Developing countries	Undercooked beef (larvae)	Mild GI symptoms	Praziquantel
<i>Diphyllobothrium latum</i>	Europe, North America, Asia	Raw fish	B ₁₂ deficiency leading to macrocytic anemia and posterior column deficits	Praziquantel
<i>Echinococcus granulosus</i>	Rural areas Sheep-raising countries	Dog feces (eggs)	Liver/lung cysts (enlarge between 1-20 yr; may cause mass effect or rupture) Risk of anaphylaxis if cystic fluid released during surgical evacuation	Albendazole alone Surgery + perioperative albendazole Percutaneous aspiration + perioperative albendazole
TREMATODES				
<i>Clonorchis sinensis</i>	Japan, Taiwan, China, SE Asia	Raw fish	Exists in bile ducts, causes inflammation and sometimes cholangiocarcinoma	Praziquantel
<i>Schistosoma</i> spp.	Africa, SE Asia, focal in Western Hemisphere	Fresh water exposure	Chronic sequelae secondary to long-term infection (e.g. chronic liver disease, SCC of the bladder)	Praziquantel

Trematodes/Flukes

Schistosoma spp.

Species

- *S. mansoni*, *S. hematobium*, *S. japonicum*

Transmission

- larvae (cercariae), released from snails, penetrate unbroken skin in infested fresh water
- adult worms live in terminal venules of bladder/bowel passing eggs into urine/stool
- eggs must reach fresh water to hatch; schistosomes cannot multiply in or pass between humans
 - more common in individuals from sub-Saharan Africa, South America, Asia, Caribbean, Eastern Mediterranean/North Africa

Clinical Features

- most asymptomatic; symptoms seen in travelers (nonimmune)
- Swimmer's itch: pruritic skin rash at site of penetration (cercarial dermatitis)
- acute schistosomiasis (Katayama fever): hypersensitivity to migrating parasites (4-8 wk after infection)
 - fever, hives, H/A, weight loss, cough, abdominal pain, chronic diarrhea, eosinophilia

Complications of Chronic Infection

- *S. mansoni*, *S. japonicum*
 - worms in mesenteric vein, eggs in portal tracts of liver and bowel
 - heavy infections: intestinal polyps, portal and pulmonary HTN, splenomegaly (2° to portal HTN), hepatomegaly
- *S. hematobium*
 - worms in vesical plexus, eggs in distal ureter and bladder induce granulomas and fibrosis
 - hematuria and obstructive uropathy; associated with squamous cell bladder cancer
- neurologic complications: spinal cord neuroschistosomiasis (transverse myelitis), cerebral or cerebellar neuroschistosomiasis (increased ICP, focal CNS signs, seizures)
- pulmonary complications: granulomatous pulmonary endarteritis, pulmonary HTN, cor pulmonale; especially in patients with hepatosplenic involvement

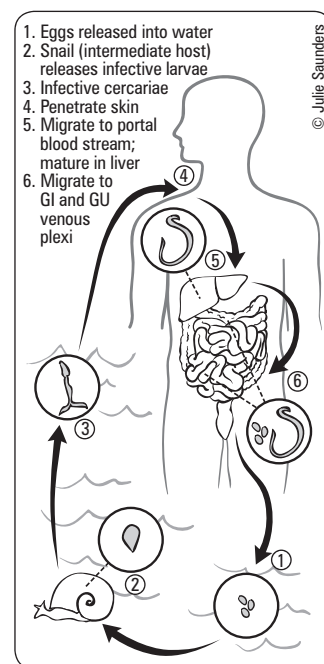


Figure 17. Life cycle of *Schistosoma*

Investigations

- serology (high sensitivity and specificity), CBC (eosinophilia, anemia, thrombocytopenia)
- S. mansoni*, *S. japonicum*: eggs in stool, liver U/S shows fibrosis, rectal biopsy
- S. hematobium*: bladder biopsy, eggs in urine and occasionally stool, kidney and bladder U/S

Treatment and Prevention

- praziquantel
- add glucocorticoid if acute schistosomiasis or neurologic complications develop
- proper disposal of human fecal waste, molluscicide, avoidance of infested water
- do not swim in Lake Malawi



For up to date information on geographic and seasonal patterns of disease and travel advisories, check the website for the United States Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel) or Foreign Affairs Canada (travel.gc.ca)

Ectoparasites

- scabies, lice
- see [Dermatology](#), D26



Travel Medicine

General Travel Precautions

- vector-borne: long-sleeves, long pants, hats, repellents (containing permethrin) applied to clothes, belongings and bed nets, exposed skin
- food/water: avoid eating raw meats/seafood, uncooked vegetables, and milk/dairy products; drink only bottled beverages, chlorinated water, boiled water
- recreation: caution when swimming in schistosomiasis-endemic regions (Lake Malawi), fresh water rafting/kayaking, beaches that may contain human/animal waste products, near storm drains, after heavy rainfalls
- prophylaxis: malaria (chloroquine, mefloquine, atovaquone + proguanil, doxycycline), traveler's diarrhea (bismuth salicylate)
- standard vaccines up to date (hepatitis B, MMR, tetanus/diphtheria, varicella, pertussis, polio)
- travel vaccines: hepatitis A/B, Japanese encephalitis, typhoid fever, yellow fever, rabies, ETEC, cholera
- sexually transmitted and blood-borne infections: safe sex practices, avoidance of percutaneous injury through razors, tattoos, piercings

Infectious Diseases to Consider

- vector borne: malaria, dengue fever, Chikungunya fever, yellow fever, *Rickettsia*, West Nile virus, trypanosomiasis, Japanese encephalitis, tick-borne encephalitis, spotted fever, leishmaniasis
- sexually transmitted: HIV, HBV, syphilis, usual STDs
- zoonotic: rabies, hantavirus, tularemia, Q fever, anthrax, brucellosis
- airborne: TB
- food/water: HAV, HEV, brucellosis, typhoid, paratyphoid, amoebiasis, dysentery, traveler's diarrhea, cholera, *Campylobacter* spp.
- soil/water: schistosomiasis, strongyloidiasis, leptospirosis, cutaneous larva migrans, histoplasmosis, paracoccidioidomycosis



Fever in traveler from malaria endemic area is malaria until proven otherwise



Important Exposures

Insect Bites	
Mosquito	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Plasmodium</i> spp. (Malaria) Dengue Lymphatic filariasis (Elephantiasis) West Nile Encephalitis Yellow Fever Japanese Encephalitis
Tick	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Borrelia burgdorferi</i> (Lyme Disease) <i>Rickettsia rickettsii</i> (Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever)
Fly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Trypanosoma brucei</i> spp. (African sleeping sickness) <i>Leishmania</i> spp. (Leishmaniasis) <i>Bartonella bacilliformis</i> (Bartonellosis)
Flea	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Yersinia</i> (Plague) <i>Tunga penetrans</i> (Tungiasis)
Mammal Bites	
Dog/Cat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rabies, <i>Pasteurella</i>, anaerobes, <i>Streptococcus</i>, <i>S. aureus</i>
Human	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Streptococcus</i>, <i>S. aureus</i>, oral anaerobes, <i>Eikenella</i>

Oral Exposures	
Unpasteurized Milk	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Brucella</i> spp., non-tuberculous mycobacteria, <i>Salmonella</i>, <i>E. coli</i>, <i>Listeria</i>
Undercooked Meat/Fish	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enteric bacteria, helminths, protozoa
Water	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hepatitis A/E, Norwalk, cholera, <i>Salmonella</i>, <i>Shigella</i>, <i>Giardia</i>, poliovirus, <i>Cryptosporidium</i>, <i>Cyclospora</i>

Environmental Exposures	
Freshwater	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Leptospira</i> spp., schistosomes, <i>Acanthamoeba</i>, <i>Naegleria fowleri</i>
Soil	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hookworms, <i>Toxocara</i> spp. (visceral larva migrans), <i>Leptospira interrogans</i> (leptospirosis)

Adapted with permission from *Lancet* 2003;361:1459-69

Fever in the Returned Traveler

Etiology

- commonly identified causes of fever in returning traveler
 - parasitic: malaria (20-30%)
 - viral: non-specific mononucleosis-like syndrome (4-25%), dengue (5%), viral hepatitis (3%)
 - bacterial: typhoid from *Salmonella* (2-7%), rickettsioses (3%)
 - diverse group of causative pathogens: traveler's diarrhea (10-20%), RTI (10-15%), UTI/STD (2-3%)
- febrile illness in travelers can be caused by routine infections that are common in non-travelers (e.g. URTI, UTI)
- less commonly, fever can be due to non-infectious causes: e.g. DVT, PE

History

- pre-travel preparation
- travel itinerary: when, where, why, what, who, how?
 - dates of travel (determine incubation period)
 - season of travel: wet or dry
 - destination: country, region (urban or rural), environment (jungle, desert, etc.)
 - purpose of trip

- persons visiting friends and family more likely to be exposed to local population and pathogens
 - style of travel: lodgings, camping, adventure traveling
 - local population: sick contacts
 - transportation: use of animals
- exposure history
 - street foods, untreated water: increased risk of traveler's diarrhea, enteric fever
 - uncooked meat/unpasteurized dairy: increased risk of parasitic infection
 - body fluids (sexual contacts, tattoos, piercings, IVDU, other injections)
 - increased risk of HBV, HCV, HIV, GC, *C. trachomatis*, syphilis
 - animal/insect bites: increased risk of malaria, dengue, rickettsioses, rabies
- fever pattern
- incubation period: use the earliest and latest possible dates of exposure to narrow the differential diagnosis and exclude serious infections
 - <21 d: consider malaria, typhoid fever, dengue fever, rickettsioses; exclude HBV, TB
 - >21 d: consider malaria, TB; exclude dengue fever, travelers' diarrhea, rickettsioses
- body systems affected: GI, respiratory, CNS, skin

Investigations

- all travelers with fever should undergo the following tests
 - blood work: CBC and differential, liver enzymes, electrolytes, creatinine, thick and thin blood smears x3 (for malaria), blood C&S
 - urine: urinalysis, urine C&S
- special tests based on symptoms, exposure history, and geography
 - stool: C&S, O&P
 - CXR
 - dengue serology for IgM

Table 28. Fever in the Returned Traveler

Illness	Geography/ Timing	Pathogen	Incubation Period	Clinical Manifestations	Diagnosis	Treatment
Malaria	Africa India C. and S. America SE Asia Usually rural, night-biting mosquitoes	<i>Plasmodium falciparum</i> <i>Plasmodium vivax</i> <i>P. malariae</i> <i>P. ovale</i> <i>P. knowlesi</i>	10 d to 40 yr	Fever and flu-like illness, (shaking chills, H/A, muscle aches, and fatigue) N/V and diarrhea Anemia and jaundice <i>Plasmodium falciparum</i> : (severe) kidney failure, seizures, mental confusion, prostration, coma, death, respiratory failure	Blood smear (thick and thin) x3 Antigen detection PCR (mostly a research tool)	Artesunate (for severe disease) + malarone, doxycycline, or clindamycin Quinine sulfate + doxycycline or clindamycin Chloroquine + primaquine
Dengue	South East Asia Caribbean Usually urban, day-biting mosquitoes	Dengue viruses	3 d to 2 wk	Sudden onset of fever, H/A, retro-orbital pain, myalgias, and arthralgias Leukopenia Thrombocytopenia Hemorrhagic manifestations (rare in travelers)	Anti-dengue IgM positivity	Symptom relief: Acetaminophen (avoid using NSAIDs because of anticoagulant properties)
Typhoid (enteric fever)	Global but mostly Indian subcontinent	<i>Salmonella typhi</i> <i>Salmonella paratyphi</i>	3 to 60 d	Sustained fever 103°-104°F (39°-40°C) Abdominal pain, H/A, loss of appetite, cough, constipation	Stool, urine, or blood sample positive for <i>S. typhi</i> or <i>S. paratyphi</i>	Quinolone antibiotic (e.g. ciprofloxacin), ceftriaxone, or macrolide
Tick Typhus	Mediterranean South Africa India	<i>Rickettsia</i>	1 to 2 wk	Fever, H/A, fatigue, muscle aches, occasionally rash Eschar at site of tick bite Thrombocytopenia Elevated liver enzymes	Serology Presence of classic tick eschar	Doxycycline
TB	Global	<i>M. tuberculosis</i>	Variable	Fever, cough, hemoptysis	CXR Sputum culture and acid-fast stain	Ethambutol, isoniazid, pyrazinamide, rifampin
Mononucleosis	Caribbean, C. and S. America	EBV or CMV	30 to 50 d	Malaise, fatigue, pharyngitis, lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly	Atypical lymphocytes on blood smear and positive heterophilic antibody (monospot) test	Acetaminophen or NSAIDs, fluids

Fever of Unknown Origin



Table 29. Classification of Fever of Unknown Origin (FUO) – Temp > 101°F on several occasions

Classical FUO	Nosocomial FUO	Neutropenic FUO	HIV-associated FUO
Duration >3 wk	Hospitalized patient Infection not present/ incubating on admission	Neutrophil count <500/mL or is expected to fall to that level in 1-2 d	HIV infections Duration >4 wk for outpatients, >3 d for hospitalized patients
Diagnosis uncertain after 3 outpatient visits or 3 d in hospital or 1 wk of intensive ambulatory investigation	Diagnosis uncertain after 3 d of investigation, including at least 2 d incubation of cultures	Diagnosis uncertain after 3 d of investigation, including at least 2 d incubation of cultures	Diagnosis uncertain after 3 d of investigation, including at least 2 d incubation of cultures

Etiology of Classic FUO

- infectious causes (~30%)
 - TB: extra-pulmonary (most common), miliary, pulmonary (if pre-existing disease)
 - abscess: subphrenic, liver, splenic, pancreatic, perinephric, diverticular, pelvis, psoas
 - osteomyelitis
 - bacterial endocarditis (culture negative)
 - uncommon: viral (CMV, EBV), fungal (histoplasmosis, cryptococcosis), parasitic (toxoplasmosis, leishmaniasis, amoebiasis, malaria)
- neoplastic causes (~20%)
 - most commonly lymphomas (especially non-Hodgkin's) and leukemias, also multiple myeloma, myelodysplastic syndrome
 - solid tumors: RCC (most common), also breast, liver (hepatoma), colon, pancreas, or liver metastases
- collagen vascular diseases (~30%)
 - SLE, RA, rheumatic fever, vasculitis (temporal arteritis, PAN), JRA, Still's disease
- miscellaneous (~20%)
 - drugs, factitious fever
 - sarcoidosis, granulomatous hepatitis, IBD
 - hereditary periodic fever syndromes (such as familial Mediterranean fever)
 - venous thromboembolic disease: PE, DVT
 - endocrine: thyroiditis, thyroid storm, adrenal insufficiency, pheochromocytoma
- unknown in 30-50% despite detailed workup

Approach to Classic FUO

- careful history: travel, environmental/occupational exposures, infectious contacts, medication history, immunizations, TB history, sexual history, past medical history, comprehensive review of systems (including symptoms that resolved before interview)
- thorough physical exam: fever pattern, rashes (skin, mucous membranes), murmurs, arthritis, lymphadenopathy, organomegaly
- initial investigations as appropriate
 - blood work: CBC and differential, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, calcium profile, LFTs, ESR, CRP, muscle enzymes, RF, ANA, serum protein electrophoresis (SPEP), blood smear
 - cultures: blood (x2 sets), urine, sputum, stool C&S, O&P, other fluids as appropriate
 - serology: HIV, monospot, CMV IgM
 - imaging: CXR, abdominal imaging
- if there are diagnostic clues from any of the above steps, proceed with directed exam, biopsies or invasive testing as required, followed by directed treatment once a diagnosis is established
- if no diagnosis with the above, consider empiric therapy vs. watchful waiting
 - without intervention: patients that remain undiagnosed despite extensive workup have good prognosis



Anti- Drugs that may Cause Fever:

- Anti-microbials (sulfonamides, penicillins, nitrofurantoin, antimalarials)
- Anti-hypertensives (hydralazine, methyldopa)
- Anti-epileptics (barbiturate, phenytoin)
- Anti-arrhythmics (quinine, procainamide)
- Anti-inflammatories (NSAIDs)
- Anti-thrombotic (ASA)
- Anti-histamines
- Anti-thyroid



Causes of Nosocomial FUO

B, C, D, E

Bacterial and fungal infections of respiratory tract and surgical sites
Catheters (intravascular and urinary)
Drugs
Emboli

Infections in the Immunocompromised Host

- immunocompromised hosts have increased susceptibility to infections from pathogens that are typically low virulence, commensal, or latent
- type of immunosuppression predicts probable spectrum of agents

Factors that Compromise the Immune System

- general: age (very young or elderly), malnutrition
- immune disease: HIV/AIDS, malignancies, asplenia (functional or anatomic), hypogammaglobulinemia, neutropenia
- DM
- iatrogenic: corticosteroids, chemotherapy, radiation treatment, anti-TNF therapy, other immunosuppressive drugs (e.g. in transplant patients)

Table 30. Types of Immunocompromise

Type	Conditions	Vulnerable To
Cell-Mediated Immunity	HIV, Hodgkin's, hairy cell leukemia, cytotoxic drugs, SCID, DiGeorge syndrome	Latent viruses Fungi Parasites
Humoral Immunity	CLL, lymphosarcoma, multiple myeloma, nephrotic syndrome, protein-losing enteropathy, burns, sickle cell anemia, asplenia, splenectomy, selective Ig deficiencies, Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome	Encapsulated organisms (<i>S. pneumoniae</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i> , <i>N. meningitidis</i> , <i>Salmonella typhi</i> , GBS)
Neutrophil Function	Myelodysplasia, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, radiation, cytotoxic drug therapy, C3 or C5 deficiencies, chronic granulomatous disease	Catalase-producing organisms (<i>Staphylococcus</i> , <i>Serratia</i> , <i>Nocardia</i> , <i>Aspergillus</i>)



Infections Associated with Asplenia

- Haemophilus influenzae* type b
- Streptococcus pneumoniae*
- Neisseria meningitidis*
- Salmonella*
- Babesiosis*
- Malaria*
- Capnocytophaga canimorsus* (dog bite)

Febrile Neutropenia

Definition

- fever ($\geq 101^\circ\text{F}/38.3^\circ\text{C}$ or $\geq 100.4^\circ\text{F}/38.0^\circ\text{C}$ for ≥ 1 h) and one of:
 - ANC < 0.5 OR
 - ANC < 1.0 but trending down to 0.5

Pathophysiology

- decreased neutrophil production
 - marrow: infection, aplastic/myelophthitic anemia, leukemia, lymphoma, myelodysplastic syndromes
 - iatrogenic: cancer chemotherapy, radiation, drugs
 - deficiencies: vitamin B₁₂, folate
- increased peripheral neutrophil destruction
 - autoimmune: Felty's syndrome, SLE, antineutrophil antibodies
 - splenic sequestration

Epidemiology/Etiology

- most common life-threatening complication of cancer therapy
- 8 cases per 1,000 cancer patients per year in the U.S.
- causative organism identified only 1/3 of the time
- GN (especially *Pseudomonas*) historically most common
- GP more common now
- fungal superinfection if neutropenia prolonged or if concurrent antibiotic use (especially *Candida*, *Aspergillus*)

Investigations

- examine for potential sites of infection: mucositis and line infections are most common
- do NOT perform DRE; examine perianal region
- blood C&S (x2 sets), urine C&S, culture all indwelling catheter ports, \pm sputum C&S and NP swab for respiratory viruses
- CBC and differential, Cr, BUN, electrolytes, AST/ALT, total bilirubin

Treatment

- most hospitals have their own specific protocol; one example is presented below



ANC (absolute neutrophil count) =
WBC \times (%neutrophils + %bands)



Usual signs and symptoms of infection may be diminished because neutrophils are required for a robust inflammatory response; exam and x-ray findings may be more subtle



WBC is lowest between 5-10 d after last chemotherapy cycle



Prophylaxis against FN with G-CSF (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor) and GM-CSF (granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor) decreases hospitalization without affecting mortality (indicated if risk of FN 20% or if FN has occurred in a previous chemotherapy cycle)

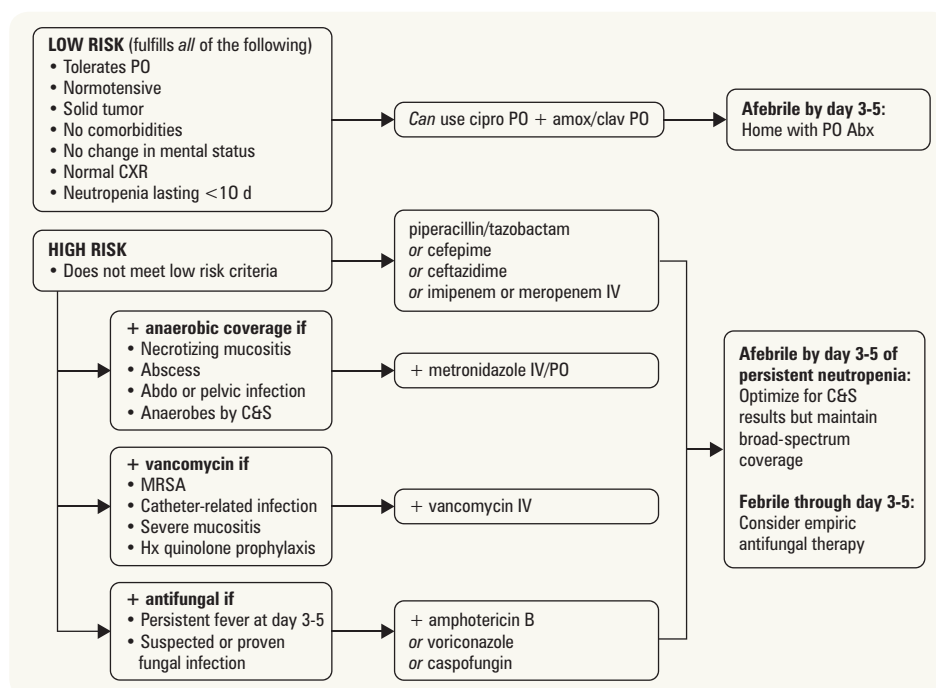


Figure 18. Example of treatment protocol for febrile neutropenia

Infections in Solid Organ Transplant Recipients

- infection is a leading cause of early morbidity/mortality in transplant recipients
- infection depends on degree of immunosuppression
- common infections <1 mo post-transplant
 - bacterial infection of wound/lines/lungs, herpetic stomatitis
- common infections >1 mo post-transplant
 - viral (especially CMV, EBV, VZV)
 - fungal (especially *Aspergillus*, *Cryptococcus*, *P. jirovecii*)
 - protozoan (especially *Toxoplasma*)
 - unusual bacterial/mycobacterial infections (especially TB, *Nocardia*, *Listeria*)

Prophylactic Vaccinations Given Before Transplant

- to all transplant patients: DTaP, pneumococcal, influenza, hepatitis A and B vaccines
- if low titer or poor documentation: MMR, polio, varicella vaccination (with booster 4-8 wk later)

Immune Reconstitution Syndrome

Definition

- a harmful inflammatory response directed against a previously acquired infection following a recovery of the immune system

Etiology

- paradoxical worsening of a successfully or partially treated opportunistic infection
- new onset response to a previously unidentified opportunistic infection
- the majority of cases are in HIV/AIDS or immunosuppressed patients starting anti-retroviral therapy or discontinuing immunosuppressive therapy; sudden recovery from an immunosuppressive state towards a pro-inflammatory state directed towards subclinical infection results in fever and inflammation
- can occur in response to multiple infections
 - *Mycobacteria* (tuberculosis, *avium* complex)
 - *Cryptococcus*
 - *Pneumocystis*
 - *Toxoplasma*
 - HBV and HCV
 - Herpes viruses (VZV reactivation, HSV, CMV)
 - JC virus (progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy)
 - *Molluscum contagiosum*

- clinical features are dependent on the type and location of the pre-existing infection
- thought to be worse with quick increase in CD4 count and with lower pre-treatment CD4 count
- non-HIV conditions with documented IRS: solid organ transplant recipients, post-partum women, neutropenic patients, anti-TNF therapy

Epidemiology

- in HIV patients starting HAART, IRS reported to affect ~10%

Investigations

- diagnosis of exclusion
- rule out drug reaction, patient non-adherence, drug resistance

Treatment

- continue HAART therapy in HIV patients with mild-moderate symptoms, but consider discontinuation if symptoms are life-threatening or potentially irreversible
- treat underlying infection; initiate treatment for some infections prior to HAART initiation
- consider starting corticosteroids/NSAIDs to decrease inflammatory response

A Simplified Look at Antibiotics

- general overview, see Table 31 for more details

1. Penicillins (most *Streptococcus*, *N. meningitidis*, many oral anaerobes except *B. fragilis*)

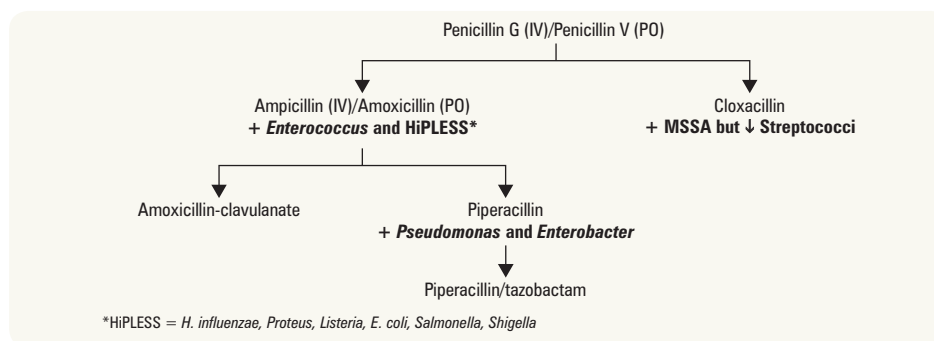


Figure 19. Penicillins

2. Cephalosporins (PO/IV)

- 1st generation: cephalexin/cefazolin (mostly GP, some GN)
- 2nd generation: cefuroxime/cefprozil (some GP and some GN, *anaerobes)
- 3rd generation: cefixime/cefotaxime, ceftriaxone (good *Streptococcal* coverage, mostly GN) and ceftazidime (no GP, mostly GN, *Pseudomonas*)
- 4th generation: --/cefepime (most GP, most GN, *Pseudomonas*)

3. Aminoglycosides (GN aerobic bacilli)

- gentamicin
- tobramycin
- amikacin

4. Macrolides (GP, *Haemophilus*, and atypical bacteria [*Legionella*, *Chlamydomphila*, *Mycoplasma*])

- erythromycin
- clarithromycin
- azithromycin

5. Fluoroquinolones (GN – although resistance becoming a huge problem)

- ciprofloxacin (+ *Pseudomonas*)
- norfloxacin (for UTI only)
- respiratory fluoroquinolones (some GP, GN, "atypicals", *Legionella*, *Mycoplasma*, *Chlamydomphila*)
 - levofloxacin
 - moxifloxacin (+ anaerobes)

6. Carbapenems (broad coverage: GP, GN, and anaerobes)

- imipenem (+ *Pseudomonas*)
- meropenem (+ *Pseudomonas*)
- ertapenem

7. Others
- doxycycline/tetracycline (GP, syphilis, *Chlamydomphila*, *Rickettsia*, *Mycoplasma*)
 - vancomycin (all GP and *C. difficile* – the oral form)
 - linezolid (for resistant GP infections)
 - clindamycin (most GP, GN anaerobes)
 - TMP/SMX (most *S. aureus* including: MRSA, GN aerobes, *Pneumocystis*)
 - nitrofurantoin (GN bacilli, *S. saprophyticus*, *Enterococcus*)
 - metronidazole (anaerobes including: *C. difficile*; *Trichomonas*, *Entamoeba*)
 - treatment for *C. difficile*: metronidazole OR oral vancomycin; consider both in serious infection

Antimicrobials

Antibiotics

- empiric antibiotic therapy
 - choose antibiotic(s) to cover for most likely and lethal organisms for the type of infection prior to obtaining laboratory results (usually reserved for serious infections)
 - adjust antibiotic(s) based on C&S
 - ♦ if causative organism identified, use antibiotic to which organism is sensitive
 - ♦ if causative organism not identified, re-evaluate need for ongoing antimicrobial therapy (and continue with empiric antibiotic(s) if indicated)

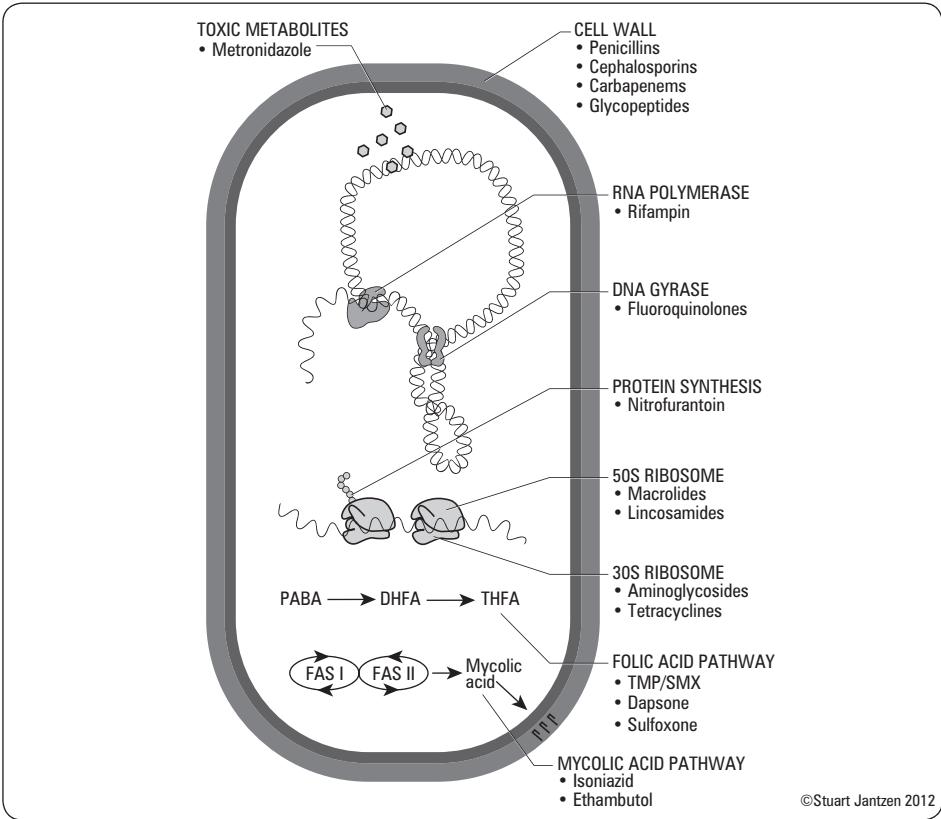


Figure 20. Mechanism of action of antibiotics



Reasons for Combination Therapy

- Polymicrobial infection
- Empiric therapy pending culture results
- Synergy for difficult to treat pathogens (e.g. *Enterococcus* spp. causing endocarditis)
- To prevent emergence of resistance



Bactericidal Antibiotics	Bacteriostatic Antibiotics
"Very Finely Proficient At CCell Murder"	"ECSTaTiC"
Vancomycin	Erythromycin (and other macrolides)
Fluoroquinolones	Clindamycin
Penicillin	Sulfamethoxazole
Aminoglycosides	Trimethoprim
Cephalosporins	Tetracyclines
Carbapenems	Chloramphenicol
Metronidazole	

Table 31. Antibiotics

Class and Drugs		Coverage	Mechanism of Action		Adverse Effects	Indications	Contraindications
CELL WALL INHIBITORS							
Penicillins							
Benzyl penicillin - penicillin G IV/IM - penicillin V PO		GP <u>except</u> <i>Staphylococcus</i> , <i>Enterococcus</i> Oral anaerobes	Bactericidal: β-lactam inhibits cell wall synthesis by binding penicillin binding protein (PBP) preventing cross-linking of peptidoglycan		Immediate allergy (IgE): anaphylaxis, urticaria Late-onset allergy (IgG): urticaria, rash, serum sickness Interstitial nephritis Dose related toxicity: seizures Diarrhea	Mild to moderately severe infections caused by susceptible organisms including actinomycosis, streptococcal pharyngitis, streptococcal skin and soft tissue infections, pneumococcal pneumonia, syphilis	Hypersensitivity to penicillin
Aminopenicillin - ampicillin IV - amoxicillin PO (Moxatag®)		Same as penicillin AND <i>Enterococcus</i> <i>Listeria</i>	See above		See above	Bacterial meningitis and endocarditis (IV ampicillin), acute otitis media (AOM), streptococcal pharyngitis, sinusitis, acute exacerbations of COPD, part of multidrug therapy for <i>H. pylori</i> treatment, Lyme disease, pneumococcal pneumonia; UTI (amoxicillin and ampicillin) for most enterococci and susceptible gram-negative pathogens	Hypersensitivity to penicillin or β-lactam antibiotics
Isoxazyolyl penicillin - cloxacillin - methicillin - nafcillin - oxacillin		Methicillin-sensitive <i>Staphylococcus aureus</i> ; streptococci	See above		See above	Bacterial infections caused by staphylococci and streptococci including skin soft-tissue infections	Hypersensitivity to cloxacillin or any penicillin
β-lactam/β-lactamase inhibitor combinations - amoxicillin-clavulanate (Amoclan®, Augmentin®) - piperacillin/tazobactam (Zosyn®)		Same as penicillin AND <i>Staphylococcus</i> <i>H. influenzae</i> <i>Enterococcus</i> Anaerobes (oral and gut)	β-lactamases prduced by certain bacteria inactivate β-lactams Lactamase inhibitors prevent this process, preserving antibacterial effect of β-lactams		See above	Various β-lactamase producing bacteria, Clavulin® sensitive bacteria including RTI, sinusitis, AOM, skin and soft tissue infections, UTI, and severe intra-abdominal and pelvic infections	Hypersensitivity to penicillin or cephalosporin History of Clavulin®-associated jaundice or hepatic dysfunction
Cephalosporins							
PO 1° cephalexin (Keflex®)	IV cefazolin	GP Good with the exception of <i>Enterococcus</i> and MRSA	GN <i>E. coli</i> , <i>Klebsiella</i> , <i>Proteus</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i> (not all isolates)	Bactericidal: β-lactam inhibits PBP, prevents cross-linking of peptidoglycan, less susceptible to penicillinases	10% penicillin allergy cross-reactivity Nephrotoxicity	Skin and soft tissue infections, prevention of surgical site infections (cefazolin); infections caused by susceptible organisms (especially <i>Staph</i> and <i>Strep</i> infections)	Hypersensitivity to cephalosporins or other β-lactam antibiotics
2° cefuroxime (Ceftin®) cefprozil	cefuroxime (Zinacef®) cefoxitin ^A	Weaker activity than 1°	More coverage than 1° (^A includes anaerobes)	See above	See above	Upper and lower respiratory tract infections; pneumococcal pneumonia; soft tissue infections	See above
3° cefixime (Suprax®)	ceftriaxone (Rocephin®) cefotaxime (Claforan®) ceftazidime ^B (Fortaz®)	<i>S. aureus</i> + <i>streptococcal</i> coverage (cefotaxime and ceftriaxone) especially <i>S. pneumoniae</i>	Broad coverage (^B includes <i>Pseudomonas</i> for ceftazidime only)	See above	~1% penicillin allergy cross-reactivity	Community-acquired pneumonia (cefotaxime, ceftriaxone), gonorrhea (use ceftriaxone), community-acquired bacterial meningitis (ceftriaxone, cefotaxime); abdominal and pelvic infections (cefotaxime or ceftriaxone in combination with metronidazole); once-daily administration makes ceftriaxone convenient for outpatient IV therapy	Severe hypersensitivity (Type I) to other β-lactam antibiotics
4°	cefepime (Maxipine®)	Broad spectrum	Broad coverage including <i>Pseudomonas</i>	See above	See above	Empiric therapy for febrile neutropenia	See above

Table 31. Antibiotics (continued)

Class and Drugs	Coverage	Mechanism of Action	Adverse Effects	Indications	Contraindications
CELL WALL INHIBITORS					
Carbapenems					
imipenem (Primaxin®)	GP except MRSA GN including <i>Pseudomonas</i> + <i>Enterobacter</i> , ESBLs, anaerobes	β -lactam inhibits PBP and prevents cross-linking of peptidoglycan	Penicillin allergy cross-reactivity Seizures	Treatment of infections caused by GNB producing extended-spectrum β -lactamases, serious infections caused by susceptible organisms	Hypersensitivity to imipenem
meropenem (Merrem®)	See above; does not cover <i>Enterococcus</i>	See above	See above	See above	Hypersensitivity to β -lactams
ertapenem (INVanz®)	GP except <i>Enterococcus</i> , MRSA GN including <i>Enterobacter</i> (but not <i>Pseudomonas</i>), anaerobes	See above	See above	See above; once-daily administration makes it convenient for outpatient IV therapy	Hypersensitivity to β -lactams
Glycopeptides					
Vancomycin (Vancocin®)	GP including MRSA, not VRE <i>C. difficile</i> if PO	Glycopeptide sterically inhibits cell wall synthesis	Red Man Syndrome Nephrotoxicity Ototoxicity Thrombocytopenia	Severe or life-threatening GP infections, patients with β -lactam allergy May only be taken orally for severe <i>C. difficile</i> infection	Hypersensitivity to vancomycin
PROTEIN SYNTHESIS INHIBITORS (50S RIBOSOME)					
Macrolides					
erythromycin (EryPed®)	GP <u>except</u> <i>Enterococcus</i> GN: <i>Legionella</i> , <i>B. pertussis</i> "Atypicals": <i>Chlamydia</i> , <i>Mycoplasma</i>	Binds to 50S ribosomal subunit inhibiting protein synthesis	GI upset Acute cholestatic hepatitis Prolonged QT	Susceptible RTI, pertussis, diphtheria, Legionnaires' disease, skin and soft tissue infections	Hypersensitivity to erythromycin Concurrent therapy with astemizole, terfenadine
*This agent is rarely used due to GI upset					
clarithromycin (Biaxin®)	See above	See above	See above	Susceptible RTI, skin infections, non-tuberculous mycobacterial infections, part of multidrug therapy for <i>H. pylori</i> treatment	Hypersensitivity to macrolides
azithromycin (Zithromax®)	See above	See above	See above	Susceptible RTI, acute exacerbations of COPD, community-acquired pneumonia, skin infections, <i>Campylobacter</i> infections if treatment indicated, chlamydia	Hypersensitivity to macrolides
Lincosamides					
clindamycin (Cleocin®)	GP <u>except</u> <i>Enterococcus</i> , most community-acquired MRSA Anaerobes	Inhibits peptide bond formation at 50S ribosome	Pseudomembranous colitis GI upset	Treatment of suspected or proven infections caused by GP, anaerobes including skin and skin structure infections, oropharyngeal infections, in combination with GN coverage for intra-abdominal and pelvic infections	Hypersensitivity to clindamycin Infants <30 d
chloramphenicol	GP GN Anaerobes	Inhibits peptidyl transferase action of tRNA at 50S ribosome	Aplastic anemia Gray Baby Syndrome	Serious infections by susceptible organisms when suitable alternatives are not available including meningococcal disease in patients with anaphylaxis to β -lactams	Hypersensitivity to chloramphenicol
linezolid (Zyvoxam®)	GP including VRE + MRSA	Binds 50S ribosome and prevents functional 70S initiation complex	HTN (acts as MAOI) Risks with prolonged use: myelosuppression optic neuropathy, peripheral neuropathy	Vancomycin-resistant <i>Enterococcus faecium</i> infections including intra-abdominal, skin and skin-structure, and urinary tract infections, MRSA infections as outpatient therapy	Hypersensitivity to linezolid

Table 31. Antibiotics (continued)

Class and Drugs	Coverage	Mechanism of Action	Adverse Effects	Indications	Contraindications
PROTEIN SYNTHESIS INHIBITORS (30S RIBOSOME)					
Aminoglycosides					
gentamicin tobramycin amikacin (Amikin®)	GN (<u>includes</u> <i>Pseudomonas</i>)	Binds 30S subunit of ribosome inhibiting protein synthesis	Nephrotoxicity (reversible) Vestibular and ototoxicity (irreversible) Vestibular toxicity is the most important aminoglycoside toxicity	GN infections when alternatives do not exist, UTIs, used in low doses for synergy with β-lactams or with vancomycin for the treatment of serious enterococcal infections	Pre-existing hearing loss and renal dysfunction
Tetracyclines					
tetracycline minocycline (Minocin®) doxycycline (Adoxa®)	GP Anaerobes "Atypicals": <i>Chlamydomphila</i> , <i>Mycoplasma</i> , <i>Rickettsia</i> , <i>Borrelia burgdorferi</i> <i>Treponema</i> Malaria prophylaxis (doxycycline)	Binds 30S subunit of ribosome inhibiting protein synthesis	GI upset Hepatotoxicity Fanconi's syndrome Photosensitivity Teratogenic Yellow teeth and stunted bone growth in children	Rickettsial infections, <i>Chlamydomphila</i> , acne (tetracycline, minocycline), PID (step-down), malaria prophylaxis (doxycycline)	Severe renal or hepatic dysfunction Pregnancy or lactation Children under 8 yr
TOPOISOMERASE INHIBITORS					
Fluoroquinolones (FQs)					
ciprofloxacin (Cipro®) norfloxacin (Noroxin®) ofloxacin Respiratory FQs: levofloxacin (Levaquin®) moxifloxacin (Avelox®)	Poor GP activity GN (<u>includes</u> <i>Pseudomonas</i>) Atypicals Moxifloxacin also covers many anaerobes	Inhibits DNA gyrase	H/A, dizziness Allergy Seizures Prolonged QT Dysglycemia (levofloxacin, moxifloxacin)	Upper and lower RTI (not ciprofloxacin unless susceptible organism isolated), UTI, prostatitis (not moxifloxacin), bone and joint infections for susceptible organisms, skin and soft tissue infections (levofloxacin, moxifloxacin), infectious diarrhea, meningococcal prophylaxis, intra-abdominal infections (moxifloxacin, ciprofloxacin in combination with metronidazole or clindamycin), febrile neutropenia prophylaxis (ciprofloxacin, levofloxacin) or ciprofloxacin in combination with amoxicillin-clavulanate low management of "low-risk" febrile neutropenia	
Rifampin	GP cocci <i>N. meningitidis</i> <i>H. influenzae</i> <i>Mycobacteria</i>	Inhibits RNA polymerase	Hepatic dysfunction, P450 enzyme induction Orange tears/saliva/ urine	Part of multidrug treatment for active TB, alone for treatment of latent TB, part of multidrug treatment of other mycobacterial infections, endocarditis involving prosthetic valve or other prosthetic device infections in combination with other antibiotic agents, prophylaxis for those exposed to people with <i>N.</i> <i>meningitidis</i> or HiB meningitis	Jaundice Not to be used as monotherapy (except for prophylaxis)
Metronidazole (Flagyl®)	Anaerobes Protozoa	Forms toxic metabolites in bacterial cell which damage microbial DNA	Disulfiram-type reaction with EtOH Seizures Peripheral neuropathy	Protozoal infections (trichomoniasis, amoebiasis, giardiasis), bacterial vaginosis, anaerobic bacterial infections	
ANTI-METABOLITE					
Trimethoprim- Sulfamethoxazole (TMP/SMX) (Septra®, Bactrim®)	GP, especially <i>S. aureus</i> (including most MRSA) GN: enteric <i>Nocardia</i> Other: <i>Pneumocystis</i> , <i>Toxoplasmosis</i>	Inhibits folic acid pathway (TMP inhibits DHFR and SMX competes with PABA)	Hepatitis Stevens-Johnson syndrome Bone marrow suppression Hyperkalemia Drug toxicity (increases free levels of many drugs, including glyburide, warfarin)	Susceptible UTI, RTI, GI infections, skin and soft tissue infections caused by staphylococcal species, treatment and prophylaxis of <i>P.</i> <i>jiroveci</i> pneumonia	Hypersensitivity to TMP-SMX, sulfa drugs

Table 31. Antibiotics (continued)

Class and Drugs	Coverage	Mechanism of Action	Adverse Effects	Indications	Contraindications
ANTI-METABOLITE					
nitrofurantoin (MacroBID [®] , (Macrochant [®]))	<i>Enterococcus</i> , <i>S. saprophyticus</i> GN (coliforms)	Reactive metabolites inhibit ribosomal protein synthesis	Cholestasis, hepatitis Hemolysis if G6PD deficiency Interstitial lung disease with chronic use	Lower UTI; not pyelonephritis or bacteremia	Hypersensitivity to nitrofurantoin Anuria, oliguria, or significant renal impairment Pregnant patients during labor and delivery or when labor imminent Infants <1 mo of age
ANTI-MYCOBACTERIALS					
isoniazid (INH)	<i>Mycobacteria</i>	Inhibits mycolic acid synthesis	Hepatotoxicity Hepatitis Drug-induced SLE Peripheral neuropathy	Part of multidrug treatment for active TB, alone for treatment of latent TB	Drug-induced hepatitis or acute liver disease
rifampin (RIF)	<i>Mycobacteria</i>	Inhibits RNA polymerase	Hepatotoxicity P450 enzyme inducer Orange tears, saliva, urine	Part of multidrug treatment for active TB, alone for treatment of latent TB, part of multidrug treatment of other mycobacterial infections	Jaundice Not to be used monotherapy (except for prophylaxis)
ethambutol	<i>Mycobacteria</i>	Inhibits mycolic acid synthesis	Loss of central and color vision	Part of multidrug treatment for active TB and other mycobacterial infections	Renal failure
pyrazinamide (PZA)	<i>Mycobacteria</i>	Unknown	Hepatotoxicity Gout Gastric irritation	Part of multidrug treatment for active TB	Severe hepatic damage or acute liver disease Patients with acute gout
SULFONES					
dapsone sulfoxone	<i>M. leprae</i> , <i>P. jiroveci</i> , <i>Toxoplasma</i>	Inhibit folic acid synthesis by competition with PABA	Rash Drug fever Agranulocytosis	Part of multidrug treatment for <i>M. leprae</i> , part of treatment for <i>P. jiroveci</i> pneumonia (with TMP), <i>P. jiroveci</i> pneumonia prophylaxis, toxoplasmosis prophylaxis with pyrimethamine	

Table 32. Antibiotics for Selected Bacteria

<i>Pseudomonas</i>	<i>S. aureus</i>	<i>Enterococcus</i>	<i>H. influenzae</i>	Anaerobes
ciprofloxacin	cloxacillin (MSSA)	ampicillin	amoxicillin-clavulanate	metronidazole
gentamicin, tobramycin	1° cephalosporin (MSSA)	amoxicillin	2°/3° cephalosporin	clindamycin
piperacillin/tazobactam	clindamycin	vancomycin	macrolides (clarithromycin, azithromycin)	amoxicillin-clavulanate
ceftazidime	vancomycin (including MRSA)	nitrofurantoin (lower UTI)	levofloxacin	cefoxitin
cefepime	linezolid (including MRSA)	linezolid for VRE	moxifloxacin	piperacillin/tazobactam
meropenem	daptomycin (including MRSA)	daptomycin for VRE		moxifloxacin
imipenem		tigecycline for VRE		ertapenem, imipenem, meropenem

**Rifampin**

- Good adjunct for treating prosthetic device infection (bacterial biofilm)
- Always used in combination with other antibiotics to reduce emergence of resistance

Antivirals

Table 33. Antivirals

Class and Drugs	Coverage	Mechanism of Action	Adverse Effects	Contraindications
ANTI-HERPESVIRUS				
acyclovir valacyclovir (Valtrex [®]) (prodrug of acyclovir)	HSV-1,2 VZV	Guanosine analog inhibits viral DNA polymerase	PO well-tolerated IV: nephrotoxicity, CNS	Hypersensitivity to acyclovir or valacyclovir
famciclovir (Famvir [®]) penciclovir	HSV-1,2 VZV	See above	H/A, nausea	Hypersensitivity to famciclovir or penciclovir
ganciclovir (Cytovene [®]) valganciclovir (prodrug of ganciclovir)	CMV HSV-1,2, VZV	See above	Heme: neutropenia, thrombocytopenia, anemia Renal insufficiency	Hypersensitivity to ganciclovir or valganciclovir Possible cross-hypersensitivity between acyclovir and valacyclovir
foscarnet	CMV Acyclovir-resistant HSV, VZV	Pyrophosphate analog inhibits viral DNA polymerase	Nephrotoxicity Anemia, Electrolyte disturbances	Hypersensitivity to foscarnet

Table 33. Antivirals (continued)

Class and Drugs	Coverage	Mechanism of Action	Adverse Effects	Contraindications
OTHER ANTIVIRALS				
(pegylated) interferon- α -2a or -2b	Chronic hepatitis B or C HPV	Inhibits viral protein synthesis	"Flu-like" syndrome Depression Bone marrow suppression	Hypersensitivity to any interferon Cannot use in combination with ribavirin if renal impairment
ribavirin (Virazole®)	Chronic hepatitis C RSV Lassa fever	Guanosine analog with multiple postulated mechanisms of action	Hemolytic anemia Rash, conjunctivitis Highly teratogenic	Pregnancy, women who may become pregnant or their partners Renal impairment
lamivudine (Epivir®)	Chronic hepatitis B HIV	See <i>HIV and AIDS</i> , ID29		Hypersensitivity to lamivudine
Neuraminidase inhibitors: zanamivir (Relenza®) oseltamivir (Tamiflu®)	Influenza A and B: treatment and prophylaxis	Inhibits neuraminidase, an enzyme required for release of virus from infected cells and prevention of viral aggregation	GI: N/V, diarrhea Bronchospasm in zanamivir	Hypersensitivity to the neuraminidase inhibitors

Antifungals

Table 34. Antifungals

Class and Drugs	Coverage	Mechanism of Action	Adverse Effects	Contraindications
POLYENES				
amphotericin B	Endemic mycoses: Histoplasmosis Blastomycosis Coccidioidomycosis Pulmonary: Aspergillosis CNS: Cryptococcus	A polyene antimicrobial: inserts into fungal cytoplasmic membrane causing altered membrane permeability and cell death	Nephrotoxicity Hypo/hyperkalemia Infusion reactions: chills, fevers, H/A Peripheral phlebitis	Renal impairment
nystatin (oral, topical)	Candidiasis: mucocutaneous, GI, oral (thrush), vaginal	See above Not absorbed from the GI tract	GI: N/V, diarrhea Highly toxic if given IV	
IMIDAZOLES				
clotrimazole (Alevazol®, Lotrimin®)	Oral and vulvovaginal candidiasis Dermatomycoses	All azoles: inhibit ergosterol synthesis and thereby alter fungal cell membrane permeability	Pruritis, skin irritation	
miconazole (Vagistat-3®, Desenex®)	Vulvovaginal candidiasis Dermatomycoses		Vaginal burning N/V	
ketoconazole (Nizoral®)	Dermatomycoses Seborrheic dermatitis		Pruritis, skin irritation GI nonspecific Results in decreased androgen and testosterone synthesis	Cross-sensitivity with other azoles possible Hepatic dysfunction Pregnant women or those that may become pregnant

Table 34. Antifungals (continued)

Class and Drugs	Coverage	Mechanism of Action	Adverse Effects	Contraindications
TRIAZOLES				
fluconazole (Diflucan®)	Candida infections (mucosal and invasive) Cryptococcal meningitis (step-down therapy)	All azoles: inhibit ergosterol synthesis and thereby alter fungal cell membrane permeability	Elevated liver enzymes GI nonspecific	Cross-sensitivity with other azoles unknown
itraconazole (Sporanox®)	Sporotrichosis Onychomycoses Endemic mycoses: Histoplasmosis Blastomycosis Coccidioidomycosis		Elevated liver enzymes Rash GI nonspecific HTN Hyperkalemia Peripheral edema	Cross-sensitivity with other azoles unknown Severe ventricular dysfunction
voriconazole (Vfend®)	Aspergillosis Candidiasis		Visual disturbance (30%) Hepatotoxicity Cutaneous photosensitivity Cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma with long-term use in immunosuppressed patients Prolonged QT Periostitis Neurologic toxicity	Cross-sensitivity with other azoles unknown May avoid or alter doses if co-administered with other CYP3A4 substrates, rifampin, carbamazepine, long-acting barbiturates, ritonavir, efavirenz, sirolimus, rifabutin, ergot alkaloids
posaconazole (Posanol®, Noxafil®)	Candidiasis Aspergillosis Mucormycosis		Elevated liver enzymes H/A Prolonged QT	Coadministration of cisapride, ergot alkaloids, pimozide, quinidine, or sirolimus
ALLYLAMINES				
terbinafine (Lamisil®)	Dermatomycoses Onychomycoses	Inhibits enzyme needed for ergosterol synthesis	Rash, local irritation GI nonspecific, transaminitis	Active liver disease
ECHINOCANDINS				
caspofungin micafungin anidulafungin	Refractory aspergillosis, candidemia (azole- resistant)	Inhibits 1-3 β -D-glucan synthesis (needed for fungal cell wall)	Hepatotoxicity Infusion and injection site reactions	

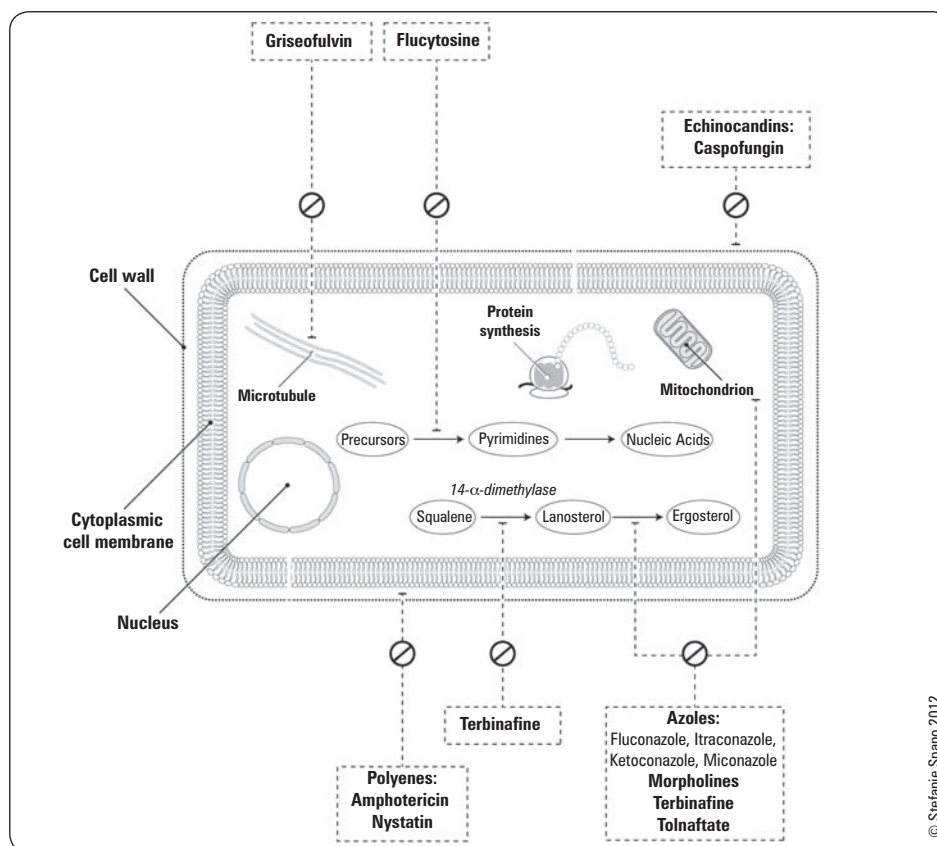


Figure 21. Mechanism of action of antifungals

Antiparasitics

Table 35. Antiparasitics

Class and Drugs	Coverage	Mechanism of Action	Adverse Effects	Contraindications
ANTIMALARIALS				
chloroquine	Malaria: treatment of erythrocytic phase of all five species of <i>Plasmodium</i> that infect humans Note: High resistance of <i>P. falciparum</i> and <i>P. vivax</i> in certain geographic areas	Inhibits parasite heme polymerase	CNS: blurred vision, retinopathy, dizziness Nonspecific GI (rare with prophylaxis)	Hypersensitivity to chloroquine or other 4-aminoquinoline Retinal or visual field changes due to 4-aminoquinoline
quinine	Malaria: treatment of all five species of <i>Plasmodium</i> that infect humans, including chloroquine-resistant <i>P. falciparum</i>		Cinchonism: ears (tinnitus, vertigo), eyes (visual disturbance), GI (N/V, diarrhea), CNS (H/A, fever) Hypoglycemia	Hypersensitivity to quinine, may have cross-sensitivity with quinidine Patients with G6PD deficiency, tinnitus, optic neuritis, hypoglycemia, history of blackwater fever or thrombocytopenic purpura due to quinine use
mefloquine (Lariam®)	Malaria: treatment and prophylaxis of all four species of <i>Plasmodium</i> that infect humans		CNS/Psych: irritability, nightmares, psychoses, suicide, depression, seizures, H/A	History of seizures, psychosis, severe anxiety or depression
primaquine	Malaria: treatment of liver hypnozoites of <i>P. vivax</i> and <i>P. ovale</i> ; prophylaxis of all <i>Plasmodium</i> spp. <i>Pneumocystis jiroveci</i> (with clindamycin)	Interferes with mitochondrial function	Hemolytic anemia in G6PD deficient GI upset (take with food)	GI nonspecific G6PD deficiency Concurrent or recent use of quinacrine Pregnancy
atovaquone/proguanil (Malarone®)	Malaria: treatment and prophylaxis of <i>P. falciparum</i>	Inhibits mitochondrial electron transport and dihydrofolate reductase	N/V, anorexia, diarrhea, abdominal pain (take with food)	Hypersensitivity to atovaquone or proguanil Severe renal impairment
artemisinin derivatives (artemeter, artesunate, etc.) Note: marketed primarily in endemic countries	Malaria: treatment of all <i>Plasmodium</i> species Severe malaria (IV artesunate) Typically used in combination with a longer-acting agent from above	Binds iron, leading to formation of free radicals that damage parasite proteins	Transient neurologic deficits (nystagmus, balance disturbance) Transient neutropenia (at high doses of oral artesunate)	Hypersensitivity to artemisinins

Table 35. Antiparasitics (continued)

Class and Drugs	Coverage	Mechanism of Action	Adverse Effects	Contraindications
OTHER ANTI-PROTOZOAL				
iodoquinol (Yodoxin®)	Amoebiasis: <i>E. histolytica</i> , <i>Dientamoeba fragilis</i> , <i>Balantidium coli</i> , <i>Blastocystis hominis</i>	Contact amoebicide that acts in intestinal lumen by uncertain mechanism	GI: N/V, diarrhea, abdominal pain CNS: H/A, seizures, encephalitis	Hypersensitivity to any 8-hydroxy-quinoline or iodine Patients with hepatic damage or optic neuropathy Pregnancy
metronidazole	Amoebiasis, <i>T. vaginalis</i> , giardiasis	See Antibiotics		
nitazoxanide	<i>Cryptosporidium</i> , giardiasis	Interferes with parasite anaerobic metabolism	N/V, diarrhea, abdominal pain, H/A	Hypersensitivity to nitazoxanide
ANTI-HELMINTHICS				
praziquantel	<i>Schistosomiasis</i> and other flukes Tapeworms	Increases Ca ²⁺ permeability of helminth cell membrane, causing paralysis and detachment	N/V, fever, dizziness	Ocular cysticercosis
albendazole	Intestinal roundworms <i>Neurocysticercosis</i> <i>Microsporidiosis</i> <i>Echinococcus</i> → Hydatid disease	Inhibits glucose uptake into susceptible parasites	Elevated liver enzymes Alopecia GI nonspecific Agranulocytosis	Pregnancy Ocular cysticercosis or intraventricular cysticercosis
ivermectin	<i>Strongyloidiasis</i> <i>Onchocerciasis</i> Scabies	Interferes with polarization of nerve and muscles cells in susceptible parasites leading to paralysis	Nausea, bloating, diarrhea, myalgias, lightheadedness, H/A	Hypersensitivity to ivermectin Pregnancy
diethylcarbamazine	<i>Wuchereria bancrofti</i> <i>Loa loa</i>		Anorexia, N/V, H/A, drowsiness, encephalitis, retinal hemorrhage Mazzotti reaction if coinfectd with onchocerciasis	Pregnancy

Quick Reference: Common Infections and Their Antibiotic Management

Table 36. Common Infections and Their Empiric Antibiotic Management

Infection	Bacteria	Antibiotic
RESPIRATORY		
Pneumonia • Community-acquired	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i> , <i>M. catarrhalis</i> , <i>Mycoplasma</i> , <i>Chlamydia</i> , <i>Legionella</i> , <i>S. aureus</i>	Outpatient: amoxicillin-clavulanate OR doxycycline Hospitalized: antipseudomonal respiratory fluoroquinolone OR 3rd generation cephalosporin ± macrolide
	GNB (including <i>Pseudomonas</i> in special settings such as ICU)	ceftriaxone (if not at risk for <i>Pseudomonas</i>) OR piperacillin/tazobactam OR meropenem
Tuberculosis	<i>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</i>	isoniazid + rifampin + pyrazinamide + ethambutol + pyridoxine (for initial empiric therapy)
UTI		
Cystitis	KEEP ² S	fluoroquinolone OR TMP/SMX OR nitrofurantoin
Pyelonephritis	KEEP ² S	ciprofloxacin OR 3rd generation cephalosporin
Urethritis	<i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i> <i>Chlamydia</i>	ceftriaxone azithromycin OR doxycycline
SOFT TISSUE		
Cellulitis	β-hemolytic streptococci, MSSA	cephalexin OR cefazolin
Necrotizing Fasciitis	Type I: polymicrobial (GNB and anaerobes)	piperacillin/tazobactam + clindamycin
	Type II: β-hemolytic streptococci Unknown organism(s)	penicillin G + clindamycin

KEEP²S= *K*lebsiella, *E. coli*, *Enterococci*, *Proteus mirabilis*, *Pseudomonas*, *S. saprophyticus*

Table 36. Common Infections and Their Empiric Antibiotic Management (continued)

Infection	Bacteria	Antibiotic
BONE		
Osteomyelitis	MSSA	cloxacillin OR cefazolin
Diabetic Foot		
• Mild	MSSA, <i>Streptococcus</i> spp.	cephalexin OR clindamycin
• Moderate or severe	Polymicrobial	clindamycin + ciprofloxacin OR piperacillin/tazobactam ± vancomycin if MRSA suspected
Septic Arthritis	<i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> (sexually active adults) <i>S. aureus</i> , <i>S. pyogenes</i>	vancomycin + ceftriaxone
OTHER		
Meningitis	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> , <i>N. meningitidis</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i>	ceftriaxone + vancomycin (+ ampicillin for <i>Listeria</i> in very young, old, immunocompromised)
Bacterial Endocarditis		
• Native valve	<i>S. viridans</i> , <i>S. aureus</i> , <i>Enterococcus</i>	Usually non-urgent and can wait for confirmation of etiology Empiric therapy if patient unstable, vancomycin + gentamicin OR ceftriaxone; take multiple blood cultures prior to initiating therapy

References

Principles of Microbiology

Andreoli TE, Benjamin I, Griggs, et al. Cecil essentials of medicine, 8th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2010.
Hawley LB. High yield microbiology and infectious diseases. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
Levinson W, Jawetz E. Medical microbiology and immunology: examination and board review, 7th ed. McGraw Hill, 2003.
Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R. Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's principles and practice of infectious disease, 7th ed. Churchill Livingstone, 2009.
McGraw Hill. Harrison's Online. Available from: <http://www.harrissonsonline.com>.
Schaechter M, Engleberg N, Eisenstein B, et al. Mechanisms of microbial disease. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 1998.

Neurological Infections

Bloch KC, Glaser C. Diagnostic approaches for patients with suspected encephalitis. Curr Infect Dis Reports 2007;9:315-322.
Peterson LR, Marfin AA, Gubler DJ. West Nile virus. JAMA 2003;290:524-527.
Roberts L. Mosquitos and disease. Science 2002;298:82-83.
Rupprecht CE, Gibbons RV. Prophylaxis against rabies. NEJM 2004;351:2626-2635.
Rupprecht CE, Hanlon CA, Hemachudha T. Rabies re-examined. Lancet Infect Dis 2002;2:327-343.

Respiratory Infections

Dunbar LM, Wunderink RG, Habib MP, et al. High-dose, short-course levofloxacin for community-acquired pneumonia: a new treatment paradigm. Clin Infect Dis 2003;37:752-760.
H1N1 Flu. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2009. Available from: <http://www.cdc.gov/h1n1flu/>.
H1N1 Flu Vaccine Information. Public Health Agency of Canada, 2009. Available from: <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/alert-alerte/h1n1/vacc/monovacc/index-eng.php>.
Mandell LA, Wunderink RG, Anzueto A, et al. Infectious Diseases Society of America / American Thoracic Society Consensus guidelines on the management of community-acquired pneumonia in adults. Clin Infect Dis 2007;44(Suppl 2):S27-S72.

Cardiac Infections

Baddour LM, Wilson WR, Bayer AS, et al. Infective endocarditis: diagnosis, antimicrobial therapy, and management of complications. Circulation 2005;111:e394-e434.
Li JS, Sexton DJ, Mick N, et al. Proposed modifications to the Duke criteria for the diagnosis of infective endocarditis. Clin Infect Dis 2000;30:633-638.
Wilson W, Taubert KA, Gewitz M, et al. Prevention of infective endocarditis: guidelines from the American Heart Association. Circulation 2007;116:1736-1754.

Gastrointestinal Infections

Dupont HL. Bacterial diarrhea. NEJM 2009;361:1560-1569.
Gottlieb T, Heather CS. Diarrhea in adults (acute). Clinical Evidence 2011;02:901.
Jelinek T, Kollaritsch H. Vaccination with Dukoral against travelers' diarrhea (ETEC) and cholera. Expert Rev Vaccines 2008;7(5):561-567.
Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Long SS, et al. (editors). Red book: 2006 report of the committee on infectious diseases, 27th ed. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2006.
Thielman NM, Guerrant RL. Acute infectious diarrhea. NEJM 2004;350:38-47.

Bone and Joint Infections

Butalia S, Palda VA, Sargeant RJ, et al. Does this patient with diabetes have osteomyelitis of the lower extremity? JAMA 2008;299:806-813.
Gilbert DN, Moellering RC, Eliopoulos GM, et al. The Sanford guide to antimicrobial therapy, 38th ed. 2008.
Hellman DB, Imboden JB. Musculoskeletal and immunologic disorders. 2010. McPhee SJ, Papadakis MA (editors). Current medical diagnosis and treatment. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2010.
Margaretten ME, Kohlwes J, Moore D, et al. Does this adult patient have septic arthritis? JAMA 2007;297:1478-1488.

Systemic Infections

Alejandria MM, Lansang MA, Dans LF, et al. Intravenous immunoglobulin for treating sepsis, severe sepsis and septic shock. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;9:CD001090.
American College of Chest Physicians/Society of Critical Care Medicine Consensus Conference: definitions for sepsis and organ failure and guidelines for the use of innovative therapies in sepsis. Crit Care Med 1992;20:864-874.
Bernard GR, Vincent JL, LaTerre PF, et al. Efficacy and safety of recombinant human activated protein C for severe sepsis. NEJM 2001;344:699-709.
Fournier F, Chopin C, Goumand J, et al. Septic shock, multiple organ failure, and disseminated intravascular coagulation: compared patterns of antithrombin III, protein C and protein S deficiencies. Chest 1992;101:816-823.
Public Health Agency of Canada. Canadian tuberculosis standards, 6th ed. Ottawa: Public Health Agency of Canada, 2007.
Smieja MJ, Marchetti CA, Cook DJ, et al. Isoniazid for preventing tuberculosis in non-HIV infected persons. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2000;2:CD001363.
Steere AC. Lyme disease. NEJM 2001;345:115-125.

HIV and AIDS

Guidelines for preventing opportunistic infections among HIV-infected persons – 2002. Recommendations of the U.S. Public Health Service and the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Available from: <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/ContentFiles/OIpreventionGL.pdf>.

Guidelines for the use of antiretroviral agents in HIV-1-infected adults and adolescents, 2006. Available from: <http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/ContentFiles/AdultandAdolescentsGL.pdf>.

Hammer SM, Saag MS, Schechter M, et al. Treatment for adult HIV infection: 2006 recommendations of the International AIDS Society: USA panel. JAMA 2006; 296:827-43.

Hladik F, McElrath M.J. Setting the stage: host invasion by HIV. Nat Rev Immunol 2008;8:447-457.

Moylert EH, Shearer WT. HIV: clinical manifestations. J Allergy Clin Immunol 2002;110:3-16.

Public Health Agency of Canada. HIV and AIDS in Canada. Summary: estimates of HIV prevalence and incidence in Canada, 2008. Ottawa: PHAC, 2009:1-3. Available from: <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/aids-sida/publication/index.html#surveillance>.

WHO. AIDS epidemic update 2009. Available from: http://data.unaids.org/pub/EPISlides/2009/2009_epiupdate_en.pdf.

WHO. Case definitions of HIV for surveillance and revised clinical staging and immunological classification of HIV-related disease in adults and children, 2006. Available from: <http://www.who.int/hiv/pub/vct/hivstaging/en/index.html>.

Wilkinson D. Drugs for preventing tuberculosis in HIV infected persons. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2000;4:CD000171.

Fungal Infections

Bope ET, Kellerman R, Rakel RE. Conn's current therapy, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders, 2014.

Catherinot E, Lantermier F, Bougnoux ME, et al. *Pneumocystis jirovecii* pneumonia. Infect Dis Clin North Am 2010;24:107-138.

Habif TP. Clinical dermatology, 5th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Inc. Mosby, 2009.

Hustan SM, Mody CH. Cryptococcus: an emerging respiratory mycosis. Clin Chest Med 2009;30:253-264.

Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R. Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's principles and practice of infectious disease, 7th ed. Churchill Livingstone, 2009.

Pappas PG, Kauffman CA, Andes D, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for the management of candidiasis. Clin Infect Dis 2009;48:503-535.

Parasitic Infections

Center for Disease Control and Prevention. DPDx: identification and diagnosis of parasites of public health concern. Available from: <http://www.dpd.cdc.gov/dpdx/Default.htm>.

Croft MA, Jacquerioz FA. Drugs for preventing malaria in travelers. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;4:CD006491.

Infections in the Immunocompromised Host

Freifeld AG, Bow EJ, Sepkowitz KA, et al. Clinical practice guideline for the use of antimicrobial agents in neutropenic patients with cancer: 2010 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2011;52:e56-93.

Hughes WT, Armstrong D, Bodey GP, et al. Guidelines for the use of antimicrobial agents in neutropenic patients with cancer. Clin Infect Dis 2002;34:731-757.

Fever of Unknown Origin

Knockaert DC, Vanderschueren S, Blockmans D. Fever of unknown origin in adults: 40 years on. J Internal Med 2003;253:263-275.

Spira AM. Assessment of traveller's who return home ill. Lancet 2003;361:1459-1469.

Nosocomial Infections

Pickering LK, Baker CJ, Long SS, et al. (editors). Red book: 2006 report of the committee on infectious diseases, 27th ed. Elk Grove Village: American Academy of Pediatrics, 2006. Staphylococcal infections.

Simor AE, Ofner-Agostini M, Gravel D, et al. Surveillance for methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in Canadian hospitals – a report update from the Canadian Nosocomial Infection Surveillance Program. CCDR 2005;31(3):1-7.

Simor AE, Phillips E, McGeer A, et al. Randomized controlled trial of chlorhexidine gluconate for washing, intranasal mupirocin, and rifampin and doxycycline vs. no treatment for the eradication of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* colonization. Clin Infect Dis 2007;44:178-185.

Travel Medicine

Boggild A, Ghesquiere W, McCarthy A. Fever in the returning international traveller initial assessment guidelines. Can Comm Dis Report 2011;37:1-15.

Freedman DO, Weld LH, Kozarsky PE, et al. Spectrum of disease and relation to place of exposure among ill returned travelers. NEJM 2006;354:119-130.

Luzuriaga K, Sullivan J. Infectious mononucleosis. NEJM 2010;362:1993-2000.

Re VL, Gluckman S.J. Fever in the returned traveler. Am Fam Physician 2003;68:1343-50.

Ryan ET, Wilson ME, Kain KC. Illness after international travel. NEJM 2002;347:505-16.

Spira AM. Assessment of travellers who return home ill. Lancet 2003;361:1459-69.

Antimicrobials

e-CPS. Canadian Pharmacists Association, 2008. Available from: <http://e-cps.pharmacists.ca>.

MD Consult Drugs Online. Available from: <http://home.mdconsult.com/das/drugs/>.

Schlossberg D (editor). Current therapy of infectious disease, 2nd ed. St Louis: Mosby, 2001.

Antivirals

Mandell GL, Bennett JE, Dolin R. Mandell, Douglas, and Bennett's principles and practice of infectious disease, 7th ed. Churchill Livingstone, 2009.

Strategies for Management of Antiretroviral Therapy (SMART) Study Group. CD4 + count-guided interruption of antiretroviral treatment. NEJM 2006;355:2283-2296.

Notes.

Shawn Bailey, Gurnaam Kasbia, and Ryan Lo, chapter editors
 Jillian Bardsley, Evan Lilly, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors
 Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor
 Dr. Nasir Jaffer and Dr. Eugene Yu, staff editors

Imaging Modalities	2	Neuroradiology	18
Ultrasound		Modalities	
Magnetic Resonance Imaging		Approach to CT Head	
Positron Emission Tomography Scans		Selected Pathology	
Contrast Enhancement			
Chest Imaging	4	Musculoskeletal System	22
Chest X-Ray		Modalities	
Computed Tomography Chest		Approach to Interpretation of Bone X-Rays	
Lung Abnormalities		Trauma	
Pulmonary Vascular Abnormalities		Arthritis	
Pleural Abnormalities		Bone Tumor	
Mediastinal Abnormalities		Infection	
Tubes, Lines, and Catheters		Metabolic Bone Disease	
Abdominal Imaging	10	Nuclear Medicine	26
Abdominal X-Ray		Brain	
Approach to Abdominal X-Ray		Thyroid	
Approach to Abdominal Computed Tomography		Respiratory	
Contrast Studies		Cardiac	
Specific Visceral Organ Imaging		Abdomen and Genitourinary System	
“itis” Imaging		Bone	
Angiography of GI Tract		Interventional Radiology	28
Genitourinary System and Adrenal	16	Vascular Procedures	
Urological Imaging		Nonvascular Interventions	
Gynecological Imaging		Breast Imaging	30
Adrenal Mass		Modalities	
		Breast Interventional Procedures	
		Breast Findings	
		References	32

Acronyms

¹⁸ FDG	18-fluorodeoxyglucose	FLAIR	fluid-attenuated inversion recovery	MUGA	multiple gated acquisition
AP	anteroposterior	GI	gastrointestinal	PA	posteroanterior
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome	GPA	granulomatosis with polyangiitis	PBD	percutaneous biliary drainage
AV	arteriovenous	HCC	hepatocellular carcinoma	PET	positron emission tomography
AXR	abdominal x-ray	HIDA	hepatobiliary iminodiacetic acid	PFT	pulmonary function test
BOOP	bronchiolitis obliterans	HMPAO	hexamethylpropyleneamine oxime	PICC	peripherally-inserted central catheter
	organizing pneumonia	HSG	hysterosalpingogram	POCUS	point-of-care ultrasound
CNS	central nervous system	IBD	inflammatory bowel disease	PTA	percutaneous transluminal angioplasty
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid	ICV	ileocecal valve	PTC	percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography
CT	computed tomography	IPF	interstitial pulmonary fibrosis	RA	right atrium
CTA	computed tomographic angiogram	IVP	intravenous pyelogram	RAIU	radioactive iodine uptake
CVD	collagen vascular disease	KUB	kidneys, ureters, bladder	RV	right ventricle
CVP	central venous pressure	LA	left atrium	SPECT	single photon emission computed tomography
CXR	chest x-ray	LV	left ventricle	SVC	superior vena cava
DEXA	dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry	MAA	macroaggregated albumin	TB	tuberculosis
DMSA	dimercaptosuccinic acid	MAG3	mercaptide	TNK	tenecteplase
DSA	digital subtraction angiography	MCA	middle cerebral artery	tPA	tissue plasminogen activator
DTPA	diethylene triamine pentaacetic acid	MR	magnetic resonance	TRUS	transrectal ultrasound
DWI	diffusion-weighted image	MRA	magnetic resonance angiogram	TVUS	transvaginal ultrasound
ECD	ethyl cysteinate dimer	MRCP	magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography	U/S	ultrasound
ERCP	endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography	MRI	magnetic resonance imaging	VCUG	voiding cystourethrogram
		MS	multiple sclerosis	V/Q	ventilation/perfusion

Imaging Modalities

X-Ray Imaging

- x-rays, or Röntgen rays, are a form of electromagnetic energy of short wavelength
- as x-ray photons traverse matter, they can be absorbed (a process known as “attenuation”) and/or scattered
- the density of a structure determines its ability to attenuate or “weaken” the x-ray beam
 - air < fat < water < bone < metal
- structures that have high attenuation (e.g. bone) appear white on the resulting images

Plain Films

- x-rays pass through the patient and interact with a detection device to produce a 2-dimensional projection image
- structures closer to the film appear sharper and less magnified
- contraindications: pregnancy (relative)
- advantages: inexpensive, non-invasive, readily available
- disadvantages: radiation exposure, generally poor at distinguishing soft tissues

Fluoroscopy

- used for guiding angiographic and interventional procedures, in contrast examinations of the GI tract, and in the OR for certain surgical procedures (e.g. orthopedic, urological)
- on the fluoroscopic image, black and white are reversed so that bone and contrast agents appear dark and radiolucent structures appear light
- advantages: continuous x-rays allow real-time visualization
- disadvantages: increased radiation dose; however, the use of pulsed fluoroscopy has reduced fluoroscopy time by 76% and radiation dose by 64% as compared with continuous fluoroscopy

Computed Tomography

- x-ray beam opposite a detector moves in a continuous 360 degree arc as patient is advanced through the imaging system
 - subsequent computer assisted reconstruction of anatomical structures from the axial plane
- attenuation is quantified in Hounsfield units
 - subsequent computer assisted reconstruction of anatomical structures from the axial plane
 - adjusting the “window width” (range of Hounsfield units displayed) and “window level” (midpoint value of the window width) can maximally visualize certain anatomical structures (e.g. CT chest can be viewed using “lung”, “soft tissue”, and “bone” settings)
- contraindications: pregnancy (relative), contraindications to contrast agents (e.g. allergy, renal failure)
- advantages: delineates surrounding soft tissues, excellent at delineating bones and identifying lung/liver masses, may be used to guide biopsies, spiral CT has fast data acquisition, helical CT allows 3D reconstruction, CTA is less invasive than conventional angiography
- disadvantages: high radiation exposure, IV contrast injection, anxiety of patient when going through scanner, higher cost, and less available than plain film

Ultrasound

- high frequency sound waves are transmitted from a transducer and passed through tissues; reflections of the sound waves are picked up by the transducer and transformed into images
- reflection (or “echo”) occurs when the sound waves pass through tissue interfaces of different acoustic densities
- structures are described based on their echogenicity; hyperechoic structures appear bright (ultrasound reflected) whereas hypoechoic structures appear dark (U/S waves not reflected back but pass through)
- higher U/S frequencies result in greater resolution but greater attenuation (i.e. deeper structures more difficult to visualize)
- artifacts: acoustic shadowing refers to the echo-free area located behind an interface that strongly reflects (e.g. tissue/air) or absorbs (e.g. tissue/bone) sound waves; enhancement refers to the increase in reflection amplitude (i.e. increased brightness) from objects that lie below a weakly attenuating structure (e.g. cyst)
- Doppler: determines the velocity of blood flowing past the transducer based on the Doppler effect
- Duplex scan: Doppler + visual images
- advantages: relatively low cost, non-invasive, no radiation, real time imaging, may be used for guided biopsies, many different imaging planes (axial, sagittal), determines cystic vs. solid
- disadvantages: highly operator-dependent, air in bowel may prevent imaging of midline structures in the abdomen, may be limited by patient habitus



Typical Effective Doses from Diagnostic Medical Exposures (in adults)*

Diagnostic Procedure Type	Equivalent Number of Chest X-Rays	Approximate Equivalent Period of Natural Background Radiation** (~3 mSv/yr)
X-Ray:		
Skull	5	12 d
Cervical spine	10	3 wk
Thoracic spine	50	4 mo
Lumbar spine	75	6 mo
Chest (single PA film)	1	2 d
Shoulder	0.5	1 d
Mammography	20	7 wk
Abdomen	35	3 mo
Hip	35	3 mo
Pelvis	30	10 wk
Knee	0.25	<1 d
IVU	150	1 yr
CT:		
Dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (without/with CT)	0.5/2	<1 d/4 d
Upper GI series	300	2 yr
Small bowel series	250	20 mo
Barium enema	400	2.7 yr
Radionuclide:		
Brain (¹⁸ FDG)	705	4.7 yr
Bone (^{99m} Tc)	315	2.1 yr
Thyroid (^{99m} Tc)	240	1.6 yr
Thyroid (¹²³ I)	95	8 mo
Cardiac rest-stress test		
(^{99m} Tc 1-d)	470	3 yr
(^{99m} Tc 2-d)	640	4 yr
Lung ventilation (¹³³ Xe)	25	2 mo
Lung perfusion (^{99m} Tc)	100	8 mo
Renal (^{99m} Tc)	90-165	7-13 mo
Liver-spleen (^{99m} Tc)	105	8.4 yr
Biliary tract (^{99m} Tc)	155	1 yr

*Source: Radiology 2008;248:254-263

**Calculated using average natural background exposure in the USA (ionizing radiation exposure of the population of the United States. Bethesda, Md.: National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements. 2009. NCRP No. 160)



Substance	Hounsfield Unit
Air	-1000
Fat	-120
Water	0
Blood	+30 to +45
Muscle	+40
Contrast	+130
Bone	+400 or more



Attenuation

Bone (= bright) > gray matter > white matter (“fatty” myelin) > CSF > air (= dark)

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

- non-invasive technique that does not use ionizing radiation
- able to produce images in virtually any plane
- patient is placed in a magnetic field; protons (H^+) align themselves along the plane of magnetization due to intrinsic polarity. A pulsed radiofrequency beam is subsequently turned on which deflects all the protons off their aligned axes due to absorption of energy from the radiofrequency beam. When the radiofrequency beam is turned off, the protons return to their pre-excitation axis, giving off the energy they absorbed. This energy is measured with a detector and interpreted by a computer to generate MR images
- the MR image reflects the signal intensity picked up by the receiver. This signal intensity is dependent on:
 1. hydrogen density: tissues with low hydrogen density (e.g. cortical bone, lung) generate little to no MR signal compared to tissues with high hydrogen density (e.g. water)
 2. magnetic relaxation times (T1 and T2): reflect quantitative alterations in MR signal strength due to intrinsic properties of the tissue and its surrounding chemical and physical environment

Table 1. Differences Between Diffusion, T1- and T2-Weighted MR Imaging

Imaging Techniques	Contrast Enhancements	Main Application	Advantages
Diffusion Weighted Imaging	Contrast dependent on the molecular motion of water Decreased diffusion is hyperintense (bright), whereas increased diffusion is hypointense (dark)	Neuroradiology	Sensitive for detection of acute ischemic stroke and differentiating an acute stroke from other neurologic pathologies Acute infarction appears hyperintense Abscess collections also show restricted diffusion
T1-Weighted	Fluid is hypointense (dark) and fat is hyperintense (bright)	Body soft tissues	Often considered an anatomic scan since they provide a reference for functional imaging
T2-Weighted	Fluid is hyperintense (bright) and fat is hypointense (dark)	Body soft tissues	Often considered a pathologic scan since they will highlight edematous areas associated with certain pathologies



Remember that water is "white" on T2 as "World War II"



Recommended Premedication Protocol to Reduce the Frequency and/or Severity of Reactions to Contrast Media

- Non-emergent situations: prednisone 50 mg PO at 13 h, 7 h, and 1 h before contrast media injection plus diphenhydramine (Benadryl®) 50 mg IV/IM by 1 h before contrast medium
- Emergent situations (e.g. bowel ischemia, aortic dissection): patient signs consent form, risks explained and diphenhydramine (Benadryl®) 50 mg may be administered 15-30 min prior to injection of IV contrast (after discussion with radiologist)



Contraindications to IV Contrast

MADD Failure
Multiple myeloma
Adverse reaction previously
DM
Dehydration
Failure (renal, severe heart)



Acute Reactions to IV Contrast

Hot BUNS
Hypotension
Bradycardia
Urticaria
Nausea/vomiting
Seizures

Positron Emission Tomography Scans

- non-invasive technique that involves exposure to ionizing radiation (~7 mSv)
- nuclear medicine imaging technique that produces images of functional processes in the body
- current generation models integrate PET and CT technologies into a single imaging device (PET-CT) that collects both anatomic and functional information during a single acquisition
- positron-producing radioisotope, such as ^{18}F FDG is chemically incorporated into a metabolically active molecule (e.g. glucose), injected into patient, which travels to target organ, accumulates in tissues of interest, and as radioactive substance begins to decay, gamma rays are produced which are detected by PET scanner
- contraindications: pregnancy
- advantages: shows metabolism and physiology of tissues (not only anatomic), in oncology allows diagnosis, staging, restaging, has predictive and prognostic value, can evaluate cardiac viability
- disadvantages: cost, ionizing radiation

Contrast Enhancement

Table 2. Contrast Agents

Imaging Modality	Types	Advantages	Disadvantages	Contraindications
X-Ray/CT	1. Barium (oral or rectal)	Radioopaque substance which helps to delineate intraluminal anatomy, may demonstrate patency, lumen integrity, or large filling defects		Previous adverse reaction to contrast; barium enema is contraindicated in toxic megacolon, acute colitis, and suspected perforation
	2. Iodine (IV injection)	Delineates intraluminal anatomy, may demonstrate patency, lumen integrity, or large filling defects; under fluoroscopy, may also give information on function of an organ	Risk of nephrogenic systemic fibrosis in patients with end-stage renal disease	Previous adverse reaction to contrast, renal failure, DM, pregnancy, multiple myeloma, severe heart failure and dehydration eGFR <60 may require preventative measures and follow up
MRI	Gadolinium-Chelates (IV injection)	Shortens T1 relaxation time, thereby increasing signal intensity in T1-weighted sequences; gadolinium has some effect on T2-relaxation time; highlights highly vascular structures (e.g. tumors)	Risk of nephrogenic systemic fibrosis in patients with end-stage renal disease	Previous adverse reaction to contrast or if end-stage renal disease (relative contraindication)
U/S	Microbubbles (IV injection)	Since gas is highly echogenic, the microbubbles allow for echo-enhancement of a tissue		Contraindicated in individuals with right-to-left cardiac shunts or people with known hypersensitivity reactions

Chest Imaging

Chest X-Ray

Standard Views

- PA: anterior chest against film plate to minimize magnification of the heart size
- lateral: better visualization of retrocardiac space and thoracic spine (more sensitive at picking up pleural effusions)
 - helps localize lesions when combined with PA view
- AP: for bedridden patients (generally a lower quality film than PA because of enlarged cardiac silhouette)
- lateral decubitus: to assess for pleural effusion and pneumothorax in bedridden patients; however, POCUS can also be utilized for both these purposes
- lordotic: angled beam allowing better visualization of apices normally obscured by the clavicles and anterior ribs

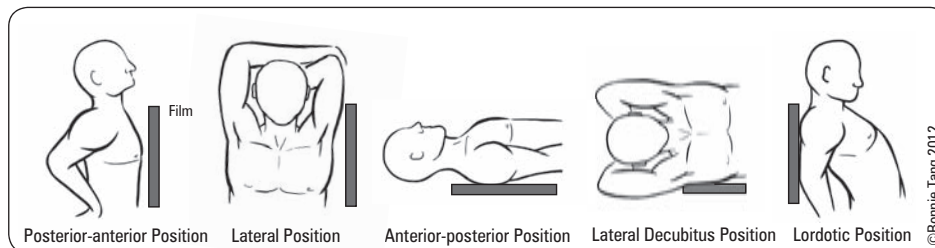


Figure 1. CXR views

Approach to CXR

Basics

- ID: patient name, MRN, sex, age
- date of exam
- markers: right and/or left
- technique: view (e.g. PA, AP, lateral), supine or erect
- indications for the study
- comparison: date of previous study for comparison (if available)
- quality of film: inspiration (6th anterior and 10th posterior ribs should be visible), penetration (thoracic spine should be visible) and rotation (clavicles vs. spinous process)

Analysis

- tubes and lines: check position and be alert for pneumothorax or pneumomediastinum
- soft tissues: neck, axillae, pectoral muscles, breasts/nipples, chest wall
 - nipple markers can help identify nipples (may mimic lung nodules)
 - amount of soft tissue, presence of masses and air (subcutaneous emphysema)
- abdomen (see *Abdominal Imaging*, MI10)
 - free air under the diaphragm, air-fluid levels, distention in small and large bowels
 - herniation of abdominal contents (i.e. diaphragmatic hernia)
- bones: C-spine, thoracic spine, shoulders, ribs, sternum, clavicles
 - lytic and blastic lesions and fractures
- mediastinum: trachea, heart, great vessels
 - cardiomegaly (cardiothoracic ratio >0.5), tracheal shift, tortuous aorta, widened mediastinum
- hila: pulmonary vessels, mainstem and segmental bronchi, lymph nodes
- lungs: lung parenchyma, pleura, diaphragm
 - comment on abnormal lung opacity, pleural effusions or thickening
 - right hemidiaphragm usually higher than left due to liver
 - right vs. left hemidiaphragm can be discerned on lateral CXR due to heart resting directly on left hemidiaphragm



Sodium Bicarbonate Plus N-Acetylcysteine Prophylaxis: A Meta-Analysis

J Am Coll Cardiol Intv 2009;2:1116-1124

Study: A meta-analysis of 10 RCTs.

Objective: To compare N-acetylcysteine (NAC) + sodium bicarbonate (NaHCO_3) to NAC + normal saline hydration in prevention of acute kidney injury (AKI) from IV contrast.

Patients: Those receiving IV contrast for various indications (PCI, angiography, catheterization)

Results: Combination treatment of NAC with intravenous NaHCO_3 reduced contrast-induced AKI by 35% (relative risk: 0.65; 95% confidence interval: 0.40-1.05). However, the combination of N-acetylcysteine plus NaHCO_3 did not significantly reduce renal failure requiring dialysis.

Conclusion: Combination prophylaxis should be considered for all high-risk patients (emergent cases or patients with chronic kidney disease).

Anatomy

Localizing Lesions for Parenchymal Lung Disease

- **silhouette sign:** loss of normal interfaces due to lung pathology (consolidation, atelectasis, mass), which can be used to localize disease in specific lung segments; note that pleural or mediastinal disease can also produce the silhouette sign)
- **spine sign:** on lateral films, vertebral bodies should appear progressively radiolucent as one moves down the thoracic vertebral column; if they appear more radioopaque, it is an indication of pathology (e.g. consolidation in overlying left lower lobe)
- **air bronchogram:** branching pattern of air filled bronchi on a background of fluid filled airspaces

Table 3. Localization Using the Silhouette Sign

Interface Lost	Location of Lung Pathology
SVC/right superior mediastinum	RUL
Right heart border	RML
Right hemidiaphragm	RLL
Aortic knob/left superior mediastinum	LUL
Left heart border	Lingula
Left hemidiaphragm	LLL

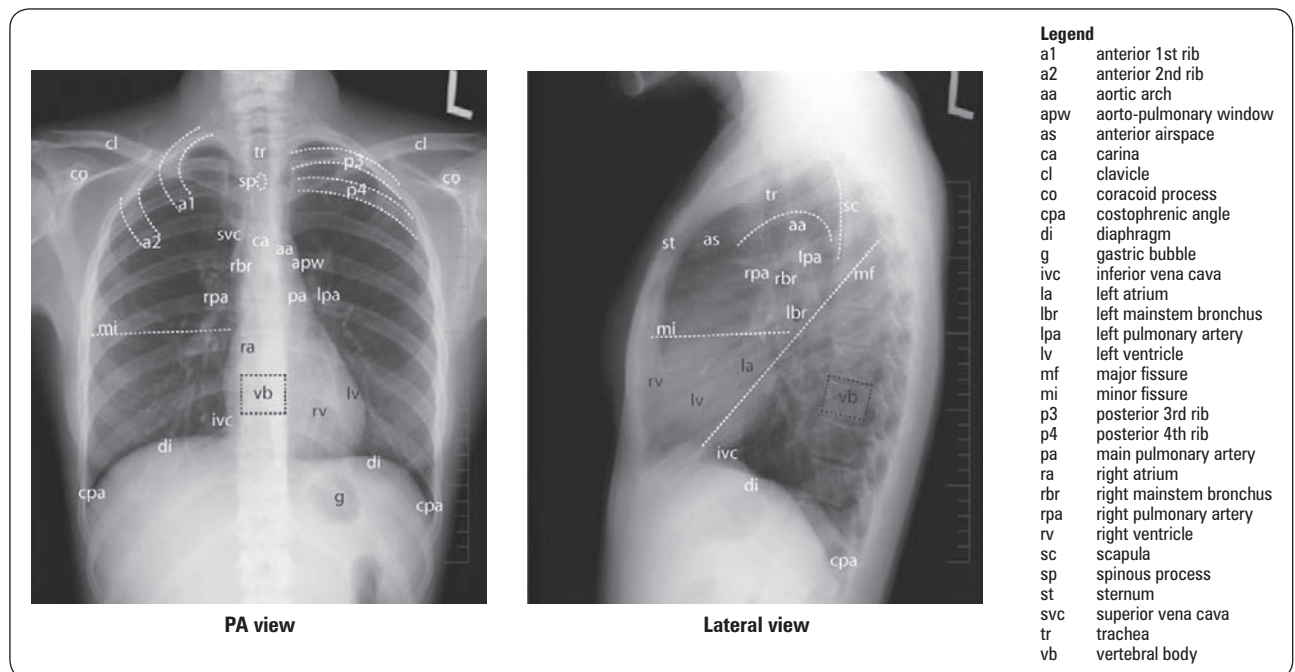


Figure 2. Location of fissures, mediastinal structures, and bony landmarks on CXR

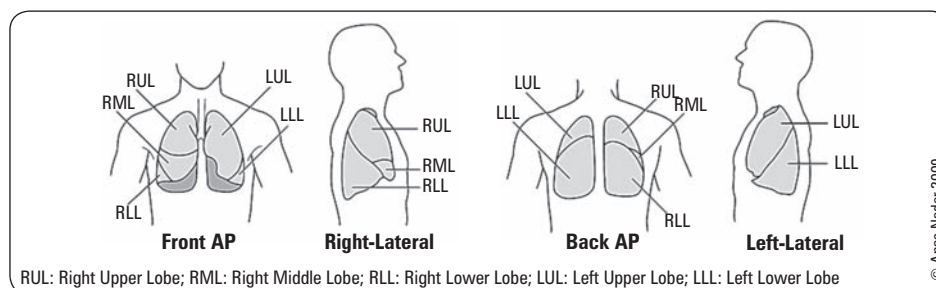


Figure 3. Location of lobes of the lung



Chest X-Ray Interpretation

Basics ABCDEF:

AP, PA or other view
Body position/rotation
Confirm name
Date
Exposure/quality
Films for comparison

Analysis ABCDEF:

Airways and hilar Adenopathy
Bones and Breast shadows
Cardiac silhouette and Costophrenic angle
Diaphragm and Digestive tract
Edges of pleura
Fields (lung fields)

Computed Tomography Chest

Approach to CT Chest

- soft tissue window
 - thyroid, chest wall, pleura
 - heart: chambers, coronary artery calcifications, pericardium
 - vessels: aorta, pulmonary artery, smaller vasculature
 - lymph nodes: mediastinal, axillary
- bone window
 - vertebrae, sternum, manubrium, ribs: fractures, lytic lesions, sclerosis
- lung window
 - trachea: patency, secretions
 - bronchial trees: anatomic variants, mucus plugs, airway collapse
 - lung parenchyma: fissures, nodules, fibrosis/interstitial changes
 - pleural space: effusions

Table 4. Types of CT Chest

	Advantage	Disadvantage	Contrast	Indication
Standard	Scans full lung very quickly (<1 min)	Poor at evaluating diffuse disease	±	CXR abnormality Pleural and mediastinal abnormality Lung cancer staging Follow up metastases Empyema vs. abscess
High Resolution	Thinner slices provide high definition of lung parenchyma	Only 5-10% lung is sampled	No	Hemoptysis Diffuse lung disease (e.g. sarcoidosis, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, pneumoconiosis) Pulmonary fibrosis Normal CXR but abnormal PFTs Characterize solitary pulmonary nodule
Low Dose	1/5th the radiation	Decreased detail	No	Screening Follow up infections, lung transplant, metastases
CTA	Iodinated contrast highlights vasculature	Contrast can cause severe allergic reaction and is nephrotoxic	Yes	PE Aortic aneurysms Aortic dissection

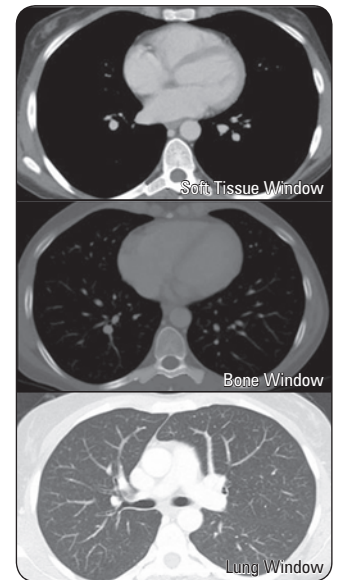


Figure 4. CT thorax windows



DDx of Airspace Disease

- Pus (e.g. infections such as pneumonia, non-infectious inflammatory process)
- Fluid (e.g. pulmonary edema)
- Blood (e.g. pulmonary hemorrhage)
- Cells (e.g. bronchioalveolar carcinoma, lymphoma)
- Protein (e.g. alveolar proteinosis)

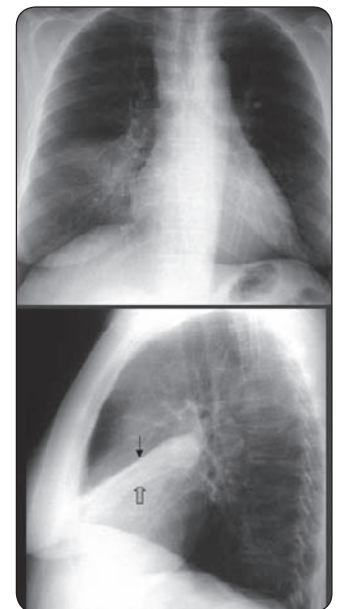


Figure 5. Atelectasis: RML collapse



Figure 6. Air bronchograms in right lung

Lung Abnormalities

Atelectasis

- pathogenesis: collapse of alveoli due to restricted breathing, blockage of bronchi, external compression, or poor surfactant
- findings
 - increased opacity of involved segment/lobe, vascular crowding, silhouette sign, air bronchograms
 - volume loss: fissure deviation, hilar/mediastinal displacement, diaphragm elevation
 - compensatory hyperinflation of remaining normal lung
- differential diagnosis
 - obstructive (most common): air distal to obstruction is reabsorbed causing alveolar collapse
 - ♦ post-surgical, endobronchial lesion, foreign body, inflammation (granulomatous infections, pneumoconiosis, sarcoidosis, radiation injury) or mucous plug (cystic fibrosis)
 - compressive
 - ♦ tumor, bulla, effusion, enlarged heart, lymphadenopathy
 - traction (cicatization): due to scarring, which distorts alveoli and contracts the lung
 - adhesive: due to lack of surfactant
 - ♦ hyaline membrane disease, prematurity
 - passive (relaxation): a result of air or fluid in the pleural space
 - ♦ pleural effusion, pneumothorax
- management: in the absence of a known etiology, persisting atelectasis must be investigated (i.e. CT thorax) to rule out a bronchogenic carcinoma

Consolidation

- pathogenesis: fluid (water, blood), inflammatory exudates, protein, or tumor in alveoli
- findings
 - air bronchograms: lucent branching bronchi visible through opacification
 - airspace nodules: fluffy, patchy, poorly defined margins with later tendency to coalesce, may take on lobar or segmental distribution
 - silhouette sign

- differential diagnosis
 - fluid: pulmonary edema, blood (trauma, vasculitis, bleeding disorder, pulmonary infarct)
 - inflammatory exudates: bacterial infections, TB, allergic hypersensitivity alveolitis, BOOP, allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis, aspiration, sarcoidosis
 - protein: pulmonary alveolar proteinosis
 - tumor: bronchoalveolar carcinoma, lymphoma
- management: varies depending on the pattern of consolidation, which can suggest different etiologies; should also be done in the context of clinical picture

Interstitial Disease

- pathogenesis: pathological process involving the interlobular connective tissue (i.e. “scaffolding of the lung”)
- findings
 - linear: fine lines caused by thickened connective tissue septae
 - ♦ Kerley A: long thin lines in upper lobes
 - ♦ Kerley B: short horizontal lines extending from lateral lung margin
 - ♦ Kerley C: diffuse linear pattern throughout lung
 - ♦ seen in pulmonary edema, lymphangietic carcinomatosis, and atypical interstitial pneumonias
 - nodular: 1-5 mm well-defined nodules distributed evenly throughout lung
 - ♦ seen in malignancy, pneumoconiosis and granulomatous disease (e.g. sarcoidosis, miliary TB)
 - reticular (honeycomb): parenchyma replaced by thin-walled cysts suggesting extensive destruction of pulmonary tissue and fibrosis
 - ♦ seen in IPF, asbestosis, and CVD
 - ♦ watch for pneumothorax as a complication
 - reticulonodular: combination of reticular and nodular patterns
 - may also see signs of airspace disease (atelectasis, consolidation)
- differential diagnosis
 - occupational/environmental exposure
 - ♦ inorganic: asbestosis, coal miner's pneumoconiosis, silicosis, berylliosis, talc pneumoconiosis
 - ♦ organic: hypersensitivity pneumonitis, bird fancier's lung, farmer's lung (moldy hay), and other organic dust
 - autoimmune: CVD (e.g. rheumatoid arthritis, scleroderma, SLE, polymyositis, mixed connective tissue disease), IBD, celiac disease, vasculitis
 - drug-related: antibiotics (cephalosporins, nitrofurantoin), NSAIDs, phenytoin, carbamazepine, fluoxetine, amiodarone, chemotherapy (e.g. methotrexate), heroin, cocaine, methadone
 - infections: non-tuberculous mycobacteria, certain fungal infections
 - idiopathic: hypersensitivity pneumonitis, IPF, BOOP
 - for *Causes of Interstitial Lung Disease Classified by Distribution*, see [Respirology, R13](#)
- management: high resolution CT thorax and biopsy

Pulmonary Nodule

- findings: round opacity ± silhouette sign
 - note: do not mistake nipple shadows for nodules; if in doubt, repeat CXR with nipple markers
- differential diagnosis
 - extrapulmonary density: nipple, skin lesion, electrode, pleural mass, bony lesion
 - solitary nodule
 - ♦ tumor: carcinoma, hamartoma, metastasis, bronchial adenoma
 - ♦ inflammation: histoplasmosis, tuberculoma, coccidioidomycosis
 - ♦ vascular: AV fistula, pulmonary varix (dilated pulmonary vein), infarct, embolism
 - multiple nodules: metastases, abscess, granulomatous lung disease (TB, fungal, sarcoid, rheumatoid nodules, silicosis, GPA)
- management: clinical information and CT appearance determine level of suspicion of malignancy
 - if high probability of malignancy, invasive testing (fine needle aspiration, transbronchial/trans-thoracic biopsy) is indicated
 - if low probability of malignancy, repeat CXR or CT in 1-3 mo and then every 6 mo for 2 yr; if no change, then >99% chance benign

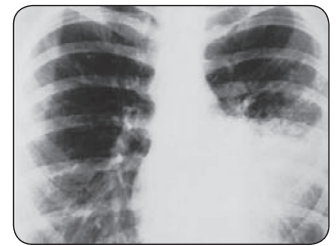


Figure 7. Consolidation: bacterial pneumonia



Figure 8. Interstitial disease: fine reticular pattern

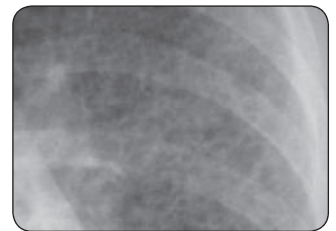


Figure 9. Interstitial disease: medium reticular pattern



DDx of Interstitial Lung Disease

FASSTEN (upper lung disease)
 Farmer's lung (hypersensitivity pneumonitis)
 Ankylosing spondylitis
 Sarcoidosis
 Silicosis
 TB
 Eosinophilic granuloma (Langerhans cell histiocytosis)
 Neurofibromatosis
BAD RASH (lower lung disease)
 BOOP
 Asbestos
 Drugs (nitrofurantoin, hydralazine, isoniazid, amiodarone, many chemotherapy drugs)
 Rheumatological disease
 Aspiration
 Scleroderma
 Hamman Rich (IPF) and idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis



Pulmonary Nodule Follow-Up

Always check for previous CXR if available (lesion such as granuloma could be stable for many yr)
 Reliable predictors of benign disease on CXR: 1) benign calcifications 2) absence of growth over 2 yr

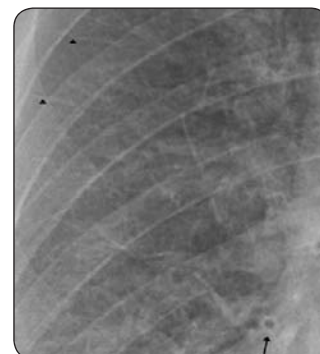
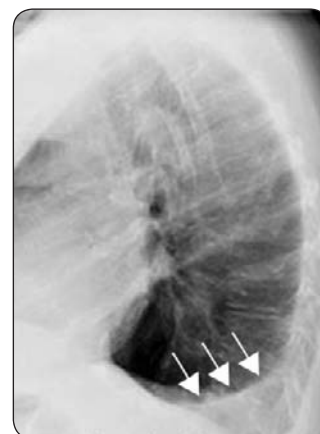
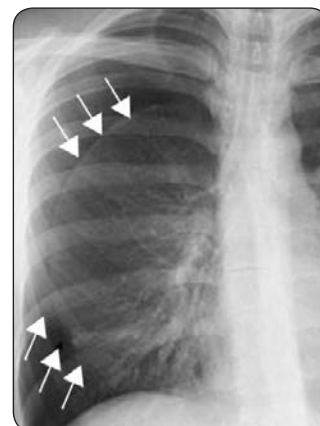


DDx for Cavitating Lung Nodule

WEIRD HOLES
 GPA (Wegener's)
 Embolic (pulmonary, septic)
 Infection (anaerobes, pneumocystis, TB)
 Rheumatoid (necrobiotic nodules)
 Developmental cysts (sequestration)
 Histiocytosis
 Oncological
 Lymphangioleiomyomatosis
 Environmental, occupational
 Sarcoidosis

Table 5. Characteristics of Benign and Malignant Pulmonary Nodules

	Malignant	Benign
Margin	Ill-defined/spiculated ("corona radiata")	Well-defined
Contour	Lobulated	Smooth
Calcification	Eccentric or stippled	Diffuse, central, popcorn, concentric
Doubling Time	20-460 d	<20 d or >460 d
Other Features	Cavitation, collapse, adenopathy, pleural effusion, lytic bone lesions, smoking history	
Size	>3 cm	<3 cm
Cavitation	Yes, especially with wall thickness >15 mm, eccentric cavity and shaggy internal margins	No
Satellite Lesions	No	Yes

**Figure 10. Pulmonary nodule: bronchogenic carcinoma****Figure 11. Peribronchial cuffing****Figure 12. Pleural effusion in lateral view****Figure 13. Pneumothorax**

Pulmonary Vascular Abnormalities

Pulmonary Edema

- pathogenesis: fluid accumulation in the airspaces of the lungs
- findings
 - vascular redistribution/enlargement, cephalization, pleural effusion, cardiomegaly (may be present in cardiogenic edema and fluid overloaded states)
 - fluid initially collects in interstitium
 - ♦ loss of definition of pulmonary vasculature
 - ♦ peribronchovascular cuffing
 - ♦ Kerley B lines
 - ♦ reticulonodular pattern
 - ♦ thickening of interlobar fissures
 - as pulmonary edema progresses, fluid begins to collect in alveoli causing diffuse air space disease often in a "bat wing" or "butterfly" pattern in perihilar regions with tendency to spare the outermost lung fields
- differential diagnosis: cardiogenic (e.g. CHF), renal failure, volume overload, non-cardiogenic (e.g. ARDS)

Pulmonary Embolism

- pathogenesis: arterial blockage in the lungs due to emboli from pelvic or leg veins, rarely from PICC lines, ports, or air, fat, or amniotic fluid (difficult to diagnose on imaging except by combination of clinical history and CXR and CT findings of ARDS)
- findings
 - CXR: Westermark sign (localized pulmonary oligemia), Hampton's hump (triangular peripheral infarct), enlarged right ventricle and right atrium, atelectasis, pleural effusion, and rarely pulmonary edema
 - definitive imaging study: CT pulmonary angiography to look for filling defect in contrast-filled pulmonary arteries (emboli can be seen up to 4th order arterial branching)
 - V/Q scan: not a diagnostic study

Pleural Abnormalities

Pleural Effusion

Table 6. Sensitivity of Plain Film Views for Pleural Effusion

X-Ray Projection	Minimum Volume to Visualize
Lateral decubitus	25 mL: most sensitive
Upright lateral	50 mL: meniscus seen in the posterior costophrenic sulcus
PA	200 mL
Supine	Diffuse haziness

- a horizontal fluid level is seen only in a hydropneumothorax (i.e. both fluid and air within pleural cavity)
- effusion may exert mass effect, shift trachea and mediastinum to opposite side, or cause atelectasis of adjacent lung
- U/S is superior to plain film for detection of small effusions and may also aid in thoracentesis, and POCUS is now standard of care in acute situations
- fluid level >1 cm on lateral decubitus film is indication to perform thoracentesis

Pneumothorax

- pathogenesis: gas/air accumulation within the pleural space resulting in separation of the lung from the chest wall

- findings
 - upright chest film allows visualization of visceral pleura as curvilinear line paralleling chest wall, separating partially collapsed lung from pleural air
 - more obvious on expiratory (increased contrast between lung and air) or lateral decubitus films (air collects superiorly)
 - more difficult to detect on supine film; look for the “deep (costophrenic) sulcus” sign, “double diaphragm” sign (dome and anterior portions of diaphragm outlined by lung and pleural air, respectively), hyperlucent hemithorax, sharpening of adjacent mediastinal structures
 - mediastinal shift may occur if tension pneumothorax
- differential diagnosis: spontaneous (tall and thin males, smokers), iatrogenic (lung biopsy, ventilation, CVP line insertion), trauma (associated with rib fractures), emphysema, malignancy, honeycomb lung
- management: needle decompression or chest tube insertion, repeat CXR to ensure resolution

Asbestos

- asbestos exposure may cause various pleural abnormalities including benign plaques (most common) that may calcify, diffuse pleural fibrosis, effusion, and malignant mesothelioma



Elevated Hemidiaphragm Suggests:

PAL DIP

Pregnancy
Atelectasis
Lung resection
Diaphragmatic paralysis
Intra-abdominal process
Pneumonectomy

Pleural effusion also may result in apparent elevation

Depressed Hemidiaphragm Suggests

TALC

Tumor
Asthma
Large pleural effusion
COPD



DDx Anterior Mediastinal Mass

4 Ts

Thyroid
Thymic neoplasm
Teratoma
Terrible lymphoma



Mediastinal Masses

Approximately 60% of anterior, 30% of middle, and 15% of posterior mediastinal masses are malignant

Mediastinal Abnormalities

Mediastinal Mass

- the mediastinum is divided into four compartments; this provides an approach to the differential diagnosis of a mediastinal mass
- anterior (anterior border formed by the sternum and posterior border by the heart and great vessels)
 - 4 Ts: see sidebar
 - cardiophrenic angle mass differential: thymic cyst, epicardial fat pad, foramen of Morgagni hernia
- middle (extending behind anterior mediastinum to a line 1 cm posterior to the anterior border of the thoracic vertebral bodies)
 - esophageal carcinoma, esophageal duplication cyst, metastatic disease, lymphadenopathy (all causes), hiatus hernia, bronchogenic cyst
- posterior (posterior to the middle line described above)
 - neurogenic tumor (e.g. neurofibroma, schwannoma), multiple myeloma, pheochromocytoma, neuroenteric cyst, thoracic duct cyst, lateral meningocele, Bochdalek hernia, extramedullary hematopoiesis
- superior boundaries (superiorly by thoracic inlet, inferiorly by plane of the sternal angle, anteriorly by manubrium, posteriorly by T1-T4, laterally by pleura)
- in addition, any compartment may give rise to lymphoma, lung cancer, aortic aneurysm or other vascular abnormalities, abscess, and hematoma

Enlarged Cardiac Silhouette

- heart borders
 - on PA view, right heart border is formed by right atrium; left heart border is formed by left atrium and left ventricle
 - on lateral view, anterior heart border is formed by right ventricle; posterior border is formed by left atrium (superior to left ventricle) and left ventricle
- cardiothoracic ratio = greatest transverse dimension of the central shadow relative to the greatest transverse dimension of the thoracic cavity
 - using a good quality erect PA chest film in adults, cardiothoracic ratio of >0.5 is abnormal
 - differential of ratio >0.5
 - cardiomegaly (myocardial dilatation or hypertrophy)
 - pericardial effusion
 - poor inspiratory effort/low lung volumes
 - pectus excavatum
 - ratio <0.5 does not exclude enlargement (e.g. cardiomegaly + concomitant hyperinflation)
- pericardial effusion: globular heart with loss of indentations on left mediastinal border
- RA enlargement: increase in curvature of right heart border and enlargement of SVC
- LA enlargement: straightening of left heart border; increased opacity of lower right side of cardiovascular shadow (double heart border); elevation of left main bronchus (specifically, the upper lobe bronchus on the lateral film), distance between left main bronchus and “double” heart border >7 cm, splayed carina (late sign)
- RV enlargement: elevation of cardiac apex from diaphragm; anterior enlargement leading to loss of retrosternal air space on lateral; increased contact of right ventricle against sternum
- LV enlargement: displacement of cardiac apex inferiorly and posteriorly – “boot-shaped” heart

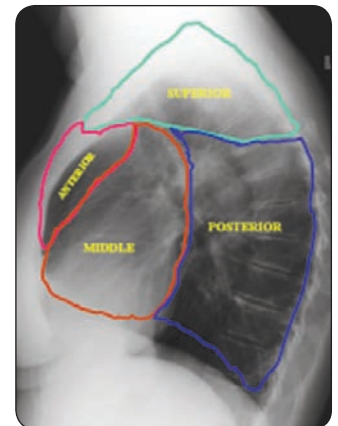


Figure 14. Lateral CXR showing 4 mediastinal compartments

Tubes, Lines, and Catheters

- ensure appropriate placement and assess potential complications of lines and tubes
- avoid mistaking a line/tube for pathology (e.g. oxygen rebreather mask for pneumothoraces)

Central Venous Catheter

- used for fluid and medication administration, vascular access for hemodialysis, and CVP monitoring
- tip must be located proximal to right atrium to prevent inducing arrhythmias or perforating wall of atrium
 - if monitoring CVP, catheter tip must be proximal to venous valves
- tip of well positioned central venous catheter projects over silhouette of SVC in a zone demarcated superiorly by the anterior first rib end and clavicle, and inferiorly by top of RA
- course should parallel course of SVC – if appears to bend as it approaches wall of SVC or appears perpendicular, catheter may damage and ultimately perforate wall of SVC
- complications: pneumothorax, bleeding (mediastinal, pleural), air embolism

Endotracheal Tube

- frontal chest film: tube projects over trachea and shallow oblique or lateral chest radiograph will help determine position in 3 dimensions
- progressive gaseous distention of stomach on repeat imaging is concerning for esophageal intubation
- tip should be located 4 cm above tracheal carina – avoids bronchus intubation and vocal cord irritation
- maximum inflation diameter <3 cm to avoid necrosis of tracheal mucosa and rupture – ensure diameter of balloon is less than tracheal diameter above and below balloon
- complications: aspiration (parenchymal opacities), pharyngeal perforation (subcutaneous emphysema, pneumomediastinum, mediastinitis)

Nasogastric Tube

- tip and sideport should be positioned distal to esophagogastric junction and proximal to gastric pylorus
- radiographic confirmation of tube is mandatory because clinical techniques for assessing tip position may be unreliable
- complications: aspiration (parenchymal opacities), intracranial perforation (trauma patients), pneumothorax

Swan-Ganz Catheter

- to monitor pulmonary capillary wedge pressure and to measure cardiac output for suspected LV dysfunction
- tip should be positioned within right or left main pulmonary arteries or in one of their large, lobar branches
- if tip is located more distally, increased risk of prolonged pulmonary artery occlusion resulting in pulmonary infarction or, rarely, pulmonary artery rupture
- complications: pneumothorax, bleeding (mediastinal, pleural), air embolism

Chest Tube

- in dorsal and caudal portion of pleural space to evacuate fluid
- in ventral and cephalad portions of pleural space to evacuate pneumothoraces
- tube may lie in fissure as long as functioning
- complications: lung perforation (mediastinal opacities)

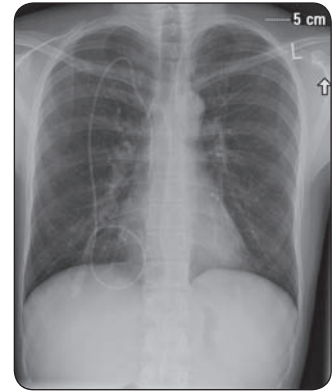


Figure 15. Well-positioned central venous catheter (CXR)

Abdominal Imaging

Abdominal X-Ray

- indications
 - acute abdomen: bowel perforation, toxic megacolon, bowel ischemia, small bowel obstruction, large bowel obstruction
 - chronic symptoms: constipation, calcifications (gallstones, renal stones, urinary bladder stones, etc.)
 - not useful in: GI bleeds, chronic anemia, vague GI symptoms
- AXR 3 most common views: left lateral decubitus, supine, erect upright (see Figure 16, MI12)



3 Views of AXR

- Left lateral decubitus
- Supine
- Erect/Upright

Anatomy

- abdomen divided into 2 cavities
 - peritoneal cavity: lined by peritoneum that wraps around most of the bowel, the spleen, and most of the liver; forms a recess lateral to both the ascending and descending colon (paracolic gutters)
 - retroperitoneal cavity: contains several organs situated posterior to the peritoneal cavity; the contour of these can often be seen on radiographs

Table 7. Differentiating Small and Large Bowel

Property	Small Bowel	Large Bowel
Mucosal Folds	Uninterrupted valvulae conniventes (or plicae circularis)	Interrupted haustra extend only partway across lumen
Location	Central	Peripheral (picture frame)
Maximum Diameter	3 cm	6 cm (9 cm at cecum)
Maximum Fold Thickness	3 mm	5 mm
Other	Rarely contains solid fecal material	Commonly contains solid fecal material



What's in the Retroperitoneum?

- Duodenum (2nd, 3rd, 4th part)
- Ascending and descending colon
- Rectum
- Kidneys, ureters, bladder, adrenals
- Psoas, quadratus lumborum
- Aorta, inferior vena cava
- Pancreas

Approach to Abdominal X-Ray

- mnemonic: "Free ABDO"
- Free = free air and fluid
 - free fluid
 - ♦ small amounts of fluid: increased distance between lateral fat stripes and adjacent colon may indicate free peritoneal fluid in the paracolic gutters
 - ♦ large amounts of fluid: diffuse increased opacification on supine film; bowel floats to center of anterior abdominal wall
 - ♦ ascites and blood (hemoperitoneum) are the same density on the radiograph and therefore cannot be differentiated
 - ♦ free intraperitoneal air suggests rupture of a hollow viscus (anterior duodenum, transverse colon), penetrating trauma, or recent (<7 d) surgery
- A = air in the bowel (can be normal, ileus, or obstruction)
 - volvulus – twisting of the bowel upon itself; from most to least common:
 - ♦ sigmoid: "coffee bean" sign (massively dilated sigmoid projects to right or mid-upper abdomen) with proximal dilation
 - ♦ cecal: massively dilated bowel loop projecting to left or mid-upper abdomen with small bowel dilation
 - ♦ gastric: rare
 - ♦ transverse colon: rare (usually young individuals)
 - ♦ small bowel: "corkscrew sign" (rarely diagnosed on plain films, seen best on CT)
 - toxic megacolon
 - ♦ manifestation of fulminant colitis
 - ♦ extreme dilatation of colon (>6.5 cm) with mucosal changes (e.g. foci of edema, ulceration, pseudopolyps), loss of normal haustral pattern
- B = bowel wall thickening
 - increased soft tissue density in bowel wall, thumb-like indentations in bowel wall ("thumb-printing"), or a picket-fence appearance of the valvulae conniventes ("stacked coin" appearance)
 - may be seen in IBD, infection, ischemia, hypoproteinemic states, and submucosal hemorrhage
- D = densities
 - bones: look for gross abnormalities of lower ribs, vertebral column, and bony pelvis
 - abnormal calcifications: approach by location
 - ♦ RUQ: renal stone, adrenal calcification, gallstone, porcelain gallbladder
 - ♦ RLQ: ureteral stone, appendicolith, gallstone ileus
 - ♦ LUQ: renal stone, adrenal calcification, tail of pancreas
 - ♦ LLQ: ureteral stone
 - ♦ central: aorta/aortic aneurysm, pancreas, lymph nodes
 - ♦ pelvis: phleboliths (i.e. calcified veins), uterine fibroids, bladder stones
- O = organs
 - kidney, liver, gallbladder, spleen, pancreas, urinary bladder, psoas shadow
 - outlines can occasionally be identified because they are surrounded by more lucent fat, but all are best visualized with other imaging modalities (CT, MRI)



Approach to AXR

Free ABDO

Free fluid or air (outside bowel)
 Air in the bowel
 Bowel wall thickening
 Densities (bones, calcifications)
 Organs

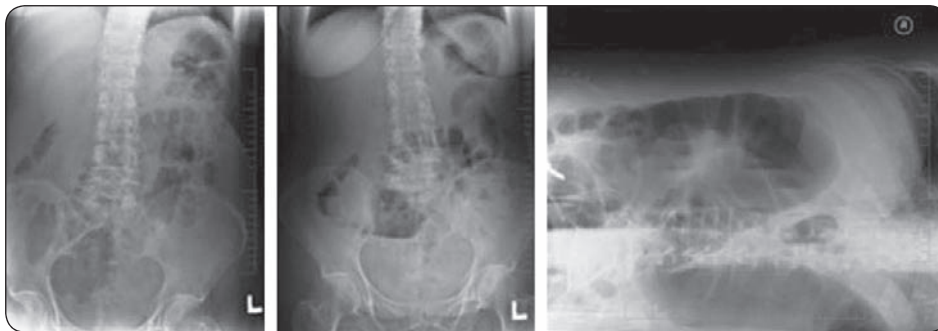


Figure 16. Normal AXRs: (left) supine anteroposterior AXR, (middle) upright anteroposterior AXR, and (right) left lateral decubitus AXR

Table 8. Abnormal Air on Abdominal X-Ray

Air	Appearance	Common Etiologies
Extraluminal		
Intraperitoneal (pneumoperitoneum)	Upright film: air under diaphragm Left lateral decubitus film: air between liver and abdominal wall Supine film: gas outlines of structures not normally seen: • Inner and outer bowel wall (Rigler's sign) • Falciform ligament • Peritoneal cavity ("football" sign)	Perforated viscus Post-operative (up to 10 d to be resorbed)
Retroperitoneal	Gas outlining retroperitoneal structures allowing increased visualization: • Psoas shadows • Renal shadows	Perforation of retroperitoneal segments of bowel: duodenal ulcer, post-colonoscopy
Intramural (pneumatosis intestinalis)	Lucent air streaks in bowel wall, 2 types: 1. Linear 2. Rounded (cystoides type)	1. Linear: ischemia, necrotizing enterocolitis 2. Rounded/cystoides (generally benign): primary (idiopathic), secondary to COPD
Intraluminal	Dilated loops of bowel, air-fluid levels	Adynamic (paralytic) ileus, mechanical bowel obstruction
Loculated	Mottled, localized in abnormal position without normal bowel features	Abscess (evaluate with CT)
Biliary	Air centrally over liver	Sphincterotomy, gallstone ileus, erosive peptic ulcer, cholangitis, emphysematous cholecystitis
Portal Venous	Air peripherally over liver in branching pattern	Bowel ischemia/infarction



Biliary vs. Portal Venous Air

"Go with the flow": air follows the flow of bile or portal venous blood
Biliary air is most prominent centrally over the liver
Portal venous air is most prominent peripherally

Table 9. Adynamic Ileus vs. Mechanical Obstruction

Feature	Adynamic Ileus	Mechanical Obstruction
Calibre of Bowel Loops	Normal or dilated	Usually dilated
Air-Fluid Levels (erect and left lateral decubitus films only)	Same level in the same single loop	Multiple air fluid levels giving "step ladder" appearance, dynamic (indicating peristalsis present), "string of pearls" (row of small gas accumulations in the dilated valvulae conniventes)
Distribution of Bowel Gas	Air throughout GI tract is generalized or localized • In a localized ileus (e.g. pancreatitis, appendicitis), dilated "sentinel loop" remains in the same location on serial films, usually adjacent to the area of inflammation	Dilated bowel up to the point of obstruction (i.e. transition point) No air distal to obstructed segment "Hairpin" (180°) turns in bowel



ICV Function in Large Bowel Obstruction

Competent ICV

Distention of large bowel between obstruction and ICV; small bowel unaffected
Higher risk of perforation, especially with cecal distention > 10 cm

Incompetent ICV

Distention of large and small bowel

Abdominal CT

- indications for plain CT: renal colic, hemorrhage
- indications for CT with contrast
 - IV contrast given immediately before or during CT to allow identification of arteries and veins
 - ♦ portal venous phase: indicated for majority of cases
 - ♦ biphasic (arterial and portal venous phases): liver, pancreas, bile duct tumors
 - oral contrast: barium or water soluble (water soluble if suspected perforation) given in most cases to demarcate GI tract
 - rectal contrast: given for investigation of colonic lesions
 - caution: contrast allergy (may premedicate with steroids and antihistamine)
 - contraindication: impaired renal function, based on eGFR

Approach to Abdominal Computed Tomography

- look through all images in gestalt fashion to identify any obvious abnormalities
- look at each organ/structure individually, from top to bottom evaluating size and shape of each area of increased or decreased density
- evaluate the following
 - soft tissue window
 - ♦ liver, gallbladder, spleen, and pancreas
 - ♦ adrenals, kidneys, ureters, and bladder
 - ♦ stomach, duodenum, small bowel mesentery, and colon/appendix
 - ♦ retroperitoneum: aorta, vena cava, and mesenteric vessels; look for adenopathy in vicinity of vessels
 - ♦ peritoneal cavity for fluid or masses
 - ♦ abdominal wall and adjacent soft tissue
 - lung window
 - ♦ visible lung (bases)
 - bone window
 - ♦ vertebrae, spinal cord, and bony pelvis

CT and Bowel Obstruction

- cause of bowel obstruction rarely found on plain films – CT is best choice for imaging
- the “3,6,9” rule is a very useful guide to determining when the bowel is dilated; the maximum diameter of the bowel is 3 cm for small bowel, 6 cm for large bowel, and 9 cm for cecum; this can also be useful to distinguish small and large bowel, and to assess for ‘impending’ cecal perforation (e.g. post-untreated Ogilvie’s syndrome)
- closed-loop obstruction: an obstruction in two locations (usually small bowel) creating a loop of bowel segment obstructed both proximally and distally; complications (e.g. ischemia, perforation, necrosis) may occur quickly

CT Colonography (virtual colonoscopy)

- emerging imaging technique for evaluation of intraluminal colonic masses (i.e. polyps, tumors)
- two CT scans of the abdomen (prone and supine) after the instillation of carbon dioxide into a prepped colon
- computer reconstruction of 2D CT images into a 3D intraluminal view of the colon in order to look for masses
- lesions seen on 3D images correlated with 2D axial images
- indications: surveillance in low-risk patients, incomplete colonoscopy, staging of obstructing colonic lesions



Colorectal Cancer: CT Colonography and Colonoscopy for Detection-Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis

Radiology 2011;259:393-405

Study: Systematic review and meta-analysis.

Population: 49 studies on 11,151 patients undergoing diagnostic study for detection of colorectal cancer (CRC).

Intervention: CT colonography (CTC) and optical colonoscopy (OC).

Main Outcome Measure: Sensitivity of CTC and OC for CRC.

Results: CTC has a sensitivity of 96.1% (95% CI 93.8%, 97.7%) and OC has a sensitivity of 94.7% (95% CI 90.4%, 97.2%) for the detection of CRC.

Conclusion: CTC is highly sensitive for the detection of CRC and may be a better modality for the initial investigation of suspected CRC, assuming reasonable specificity.



Figure 17. Barium enema

Contrast Studies

Table 10. Types of Contrast Studies

Study	Organ	Procedure Description	Assessment	Findings
Cine Esophagogram	Cervical esophagus	Contrast agent swallowed Recorded for later playback and analysis	Dysphagia, swallowing incoordination, recurrent aspiration, post-operative cleft palate repair	Aspiration, webs (partial occlusion), Zenker's diverticulum, cricopharyngeal bar, laryngeal tumor
Barium Swallow	Thoracic esophagus	Contrast agent swallowed under fluoroscopy, selective images captured	Dysphagia, rule out GERD, post esophageal surgery	Achalasia, hiatus hernia, esophagitis, cancer, esophageal tear
Upper GI Series	Thoracic esophagus, stomach, or duodenum	Double contrast study: 1. Barium to coat mucosa, then 2. Gas pills for distention Patient NPO after midnight	Dyspepsia, investigate possible upper GI bleed, weight loss/anemia, post gastric surgery	Ulcers, neoplasms, filling defects
Barium Enema	Large bowel Rectum may be obscured by tube – therefore must do sigmoidoscopy to exclude rectal lesions	Colon filled retrograde with barium and air or CO ₂ Bowel prep the night before procedure	Altered bowel habits, suspected lower GI bleed, weight loss/anemia, rule out large bowel obstruction, suspected perforation, check surgical anastomosis, history of polyps	Diverticulosis, neoplasms, IBD, intussusception (can be reduced with barium or air enema), volvulus
Small Bowel Follow Through	Entire small bowel	Single contrast images following upper GI series	GI bleed with nondiagnostic upper GI series/barium enema, weight	Neoplasms, IBD, malabsorption, infection
Small Bowel Enema (enteroclysis)	Entire small bowel	Duodenal intubation: 1. Barium/methyl cellulose infusion and fluoroscopic evaluation 2. CT enteroclysis with water infusion	IBD, malabsorption, weight loss/anemia, Meckel's diverticulum	Neoplasms, IBD, malabsorption, infection

Specific Visceral Organ Imaging

Liver

- U/S: assessment of cysts, abscesses, tumors, biliary tree
- CT ± IV: most popular procedure for imaging the liver parenchyma (primary liver tumors, metastases, cysts, abscesses, trauma, cirrhosis)
- MR: also excellent in evaluation of primary liver tumors, liver metastases, and other parenchymal conditions, and is particularly helpful in differentiating common benign hepatic hemangiomas from primary liver tumors and metastases
- findings
 - advanced cirrhosis: liver small and irregular (fibrous scarring, segmental atrophy, regenerating nodules)
 - portal HTN: increased portal vein diameter, collateral veins, splenomegaly (≥ 12 cm), portal vein thrombosis, recanalization of the umbilical vein
 - porto-systemic shunts: caput medusa, esophageal varices, spontaneous spleno-renal shunt
 - U/S: cirrhosis appears nodular and hyperechoic with irregular areas of atrophy of the right lobe and hypertrophy of the caudate or left lobes
 - CT: fatty infiltration appears hypodense
- in order to be visualized, some masses require contrast

Table 11. Triphasic/Quadruphasic Liver Protocol

Phase	Time Frame	Uses
Non-Contrast CT	0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For all initial investigations of liver lesions • Post radiofrequency ablation of liver tumors • Not usually indicated for surveillance imaging
Arterial Phase	20-30 s	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Early and late arterial phase on multidetector CT • Late arterial phase best for discriminating hypervascular HCC
Portal Venous Phase	60-70 s	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Provides maximum enhancement of hepatic tissue • Most tumors supplied by hepatic artery are relatively hypovascular, therefore appear as low-attenuation masses in portal venous phase • Hypervascular tumors wash out (HCC)
Equilibrium (Delayed) Phase	120-180 s	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hemangioma: persistent enhancement suggests blood <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Enhancement of fibrous/scar tissue (HCC capsule, focal nodular hyperplasia, cholangiocarcinoma)

Table 12. Imaging of Liver Masses

Mass	U/S	CT
Metastases	Multiple masses of variable echotexture	Usually low attenuation on contrast enhanced scan
HCC	Single/multiple masses, or diffuse infiltration	Hypervascular enhances in arterial and washes out in venous phase with portal venous tumor thrombus
Abscess	Poorly defined, irregular margin, hypoechoic contents	Low-attenuation lesion with an irregular enhancing wall
Hydatid Cyst	Simple/multiloculated cyst	Low-attenuation simple or multiloculated cyst; calcification
Hemangioma	Homogeneous hyperechoic mass	Peripheral globular enhancement in arterial phase scans; central-filling and persistent enhancement on delayed scans
Focal Nodular Hyperplasia	Well-defined mass, central scar seen in 50%	Hypervascular mass in arterial phase and isoattenuation to liver in portal venous phase
Hepatic Adenoma	Most common in young women taking oral contraceptives. Well-defined mass with hyperechoic areas due to hemorrhage	Well-defined hypervascular lesion with enlarged central vessel becoming slightly isoattenuating in venous phase

Spleen

- U/S, CT, nuclear medicine scan (nuclear medicine only to distinguish ectopic splenic tissue from enhancing tumors)
- CT for splenic trauma (hemorrhage)

Biliary Tree

- U/S: bile ducts usually visualized only if dilated, secondary to obstruction (e.g. choledocholithiasis, benign stricture, mass)
- CT: dilated intrahepatic ductules seen as branching, tubular structures following pathway of portal venous system
- MRCP, ERCP, PTC: further evaluation of obstruction and possible intervention



Normal liver appears denser than spleen on CT. If less dense, suspect fatty infiltration



Liver Mass DDx

5 Hs
HCC
 Hydatid cyst
 Hemangioma
 Hepatic adenoma
 Hyperplasia (focal nodular)



Revised Estimates of Diagnostic Test Sensitivity and Specificity in Suspected Biliary Tract Disease

Arch Intern Med 1998;154:2573-2581

Purpose: To assess the sensitivity and specificity of tests used to diagnose cholelithiasis and acute cholecystitis, including ultrasonography, oral cholecystography, radionuclide scanning with Technetium, MRI, CT.

Study Characteristics: Meta-analysis of 30 studies evaluating the use of different imaging modalities in the diagnosis of biliary tract disease.

Participants: No limits.

Main Outcomes: Sensitivity and specificity of the different imaging modalities, using the gold standard of surgery, autopsy, or 3 mo clinical follow-up for cholelithiasis. For acute cholecystitis, pathologic findings, confirmation of an alternate disease, or clinical resolution during hospitalization for cholecystitis were used as the standard.

Results: For evaluating cholelithiasis, U/S had the best unadjusted sensitivity (0.97; 95% CI 0.95-0.99) and specificity (0.95, 95% CI 0.88-1.00) and adjusted (for verification bias) sensitivity (0.84; 95% CI 0.76-0.92) and specificity (0.99; 95% CI 0.97-1.00). For evaluating acute cholecystitis, radionuclide scanning has the best sensitivity (0.97; 95% CI 0.96-0.98) and specificity (0.90; 95% CI 0.86-0.95).

Conclusions: U/S is the test of choice for diagnosing cholelithiasis and radionuclide scanning is the superior test for diagnosing acute cholecystitis.



Figure 18. ERCP: biliary tree

Pancreas

- tumors
 - U/S: mass is more echogenic than normal pancreatic tissue
 - CT: preferred modality for diagnosis/staging
- ductal dilation secondary to stone/tumor
 - MRCP: imaging of ductal system using MRI cholangiography; no therapeutic potential
 - ERCP: endoscope to inject dye into the biliary tree and x-ray imaging to assess pancreatic and biliary ducts; therapeutic potential (stent placement, stone retrieval); acute pancreatitis is a complication in 5% of diagnostic procedures and 10% of therapeutic procedures

"itis" Imaging

Acute Cholecystitis

- pathogenesis: inflammation of gallbladder resulting from sustained gallstone impaction in cystic duct or, in the case of acalculous cholecystitis, due to gallbladder ischemia or cholestasis (see [General Surgery, GS46](#))
- best imaging modality: U/S (best sensitivity and specificity); nuclear medicine (HIDA scan) can help diagnose cases of acalculous or chronic cholecystitis
- findings: thick wall, pericholecystic fluid, gallstones, dilated gallbladder, positive sonographic Murphy's sign
- management: cholecystectomy



Figure 19. Ultrasound: inflamed gallbladder

Acute Appendicitis

- pathogenesis: luminal obstruction → bacterial overgrowth → inflammation/swelling → increased pressure → localized ischemia → gangrene/perforation → localized abscess or peritonitis (see [General Surgery, GS28](#))
- best imaging modality: U/S or CT
- findings
 - U/S: thick-walled appendix, appendicolith, dilated fluid-filled appendix, non-compressible; may also demonstrate other causes of RLQ pain (e.g. ovarian abscess, IBD, ectopic pregnancy)
 - CT: enlargement of appendix (>6 mm in outer diameter), enhancement of appendiceal wall, adjacent inflammatory stranding, appendicolith; also facilitates percutaneous abscess drainage
- management: appendectomy

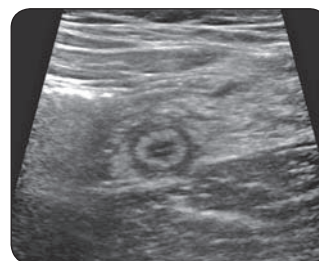


Figure 20. Ultrasound: inflamed appendix

Acute Diverticulitis

- pathogenesis: erosion of the intestinal wall (most commonly rectosigmoid) by increased intraluminal pressure or inspissated food particles → inflammation and focal necrosis → micro- or macroscopic perforation (see [General Surgery, GS31](#))
- best imaging modality: CT is modality of choice, although U/S is sometimes used
- contrast: oral and rectal contrast given before CT to opacify bowel
- findings
 - cardinal signs: thickened wall, mesenteric infiltration, gas-filled diverticula, abscess
 - CT can be used for percutaneous abscess drainage before or in lieu of surgical intervention
 - sometimes difficult to distinguish from perforated cancer (therefore send abscess fluid for cytology and follow up with colonoscopy)
 - if chronic, may see fistula (most common to bladder) or sinus tract (linear or branching structures)
- management: ranges from antibiotic treatment to surgical intervention; can use imaging to follow progression



Computed Tomography and Ultrasonography to Detect Acute Appendicitis in Adults and Adolescents

Ann Intern Med 2004;141:537-546

Purpose: To review the diagnostic accuracy of CT and ultrasonography in the diagnosis of acute appendicitis.

Study Characteristics: Meta-analysis of 22 prospective studies evaluating the use of CT or ultrasonography, followed by surgical or clinical follow-up in patients with suspected appendicitis.

Participants: Age 14 and older with a clinical suspicion of appendicitis.

Main Outcomes: Sensitivity and specificity using surgery or clinical follow-up as the gold standard.

Results: CT (12 studies) had an overall sensitivity of 0.94 (95% CI 0.91-0.95) and a specificity of 0.95 (95% CI 0.93-0.96). Ultrasonography (14 studies) had an overall sensitivity of 0.86 (95% CI 0.83-0.88) and a specificity of 0.81 (95% CI 0.78-0.84).

Conclusions: CT is more accurate for diagnosing appendicitis in adults and adolescents, although verification bias and inappropriate blinding of reference standards were noted in the included studies.

Acute Pancreatitis

- pathogenesis: activation of proteolytic enzymes within pancreatic cells leading to local and systemic inflammatory response (see [Gastroenterology, G50](#)); a clinical/biochemical diagnosis
- best imaging modality: imaging used to support diagnosis and evaluate for complications (diagnosis cannot be excluded by imaging alone)
 - U/S good for screening and follow-up
 - CT is useful in advanced stages and in assessing for complications (1st line imaging test)
- findings
 - U/S: hypoechoic enlarged pancreas (if ileus present, gas obscures pancreas)
 - CT: enlarged pancreas, edema, stranding changes in surrounding fat with indistinct fat planes, mesenteric and Gerota's fascia thickening, pseudocyst in lesser sac, abscess (gas or thick-walled fluid collection), pancreatic necrosis (low attenuation gas-containing non-enhancing pancreatic tissue), hemorrhage
- management: supportive therapy
 - CT-guided needle aspiration and/or drainage done for abscess when clinically indicated
 - pseudocyst may be followed by CT and drained if symptomatic



Angiography requires active blood loss 1-1.5 mL/min under optimal conditions for a bleeding site to be visualized in cases of lower GI bleeding

Chronic Pancreatitis

- pathogenesis: (see [Gastroenterology, G51](#))
- best imaging modality: MRCP (can show calcification and duct obstruction)
- findings: U/S, CT scan, and MRI may show calcifications, ductal dilatation, enlargement of the pancreas and fluid collections (e.g. pseudocysts) adjacent to the gland



Imaging Modality Based on Presentation

- Acute testicular pain = Doppler, U/S
- Amenorrhea = U/S, MRI (brain)
- Bloating = U/S, CT
- Flank pain = U/S, CT
- Hematuria = U/S, Cystoscopy, CT
- Infertility = HSG, MRI
- Lower abdominal mass = U/S, CT
- Lower abdominal pain = U/S, CT
- Renal colic = U/S, KUB, CT
- Testicular mass = U/S
- Urethral stricture = Urethrogram

Angiography of GI Tract

- anatomy of the GI tract arterial blood supply branches
 - celiac artery: hepatic, splenic, gastroduodenal, left/right gastric
 - superior mesenteric artery: jejunal, ileal, ileo-colic, right colic, middle colic
 - inferior mesenteric artery: left colic, superior rectal
- imaging modalities
 - conventional angiogram: invasive (usual approach via femoral puncture), catheter used
 - ♦ flush aortography: catheter injection into abdominal aorta, followed by selective arteriography of individual vessels
 - CT angiogram: modality of choice, non-invasive using IV contrast (no catheterization required)

Genitourinary System and Adrenal

Urological Imaging

KUB

- a frontal supine radiograph of the abdomen
- **indication:** useful in evaluation of radio-opaque renal stones (all stones but uric acid and indinavir), as well as indwelling ureteric stents or catheters
- **findings:** addition of IV contrast excreted by the kidney (intravenous urogram) allows greater visualization of the urinary tract, but has been largely replaced by CT urography

Abdominal CT

Renal Masses

- Boznik classification for cystic renal masses
- class I-II: benign and can be disregarded
- class IIF: should be followed
- class III-IV: suspicious for malignancy, requiring additional workup

Table 13. Boznik Classification for Cystic Renal Masses

Classes	Definition
Simple Renal Cysts	
Class I	Fluid-attenuating well-defined lesion, no septation, no calcification, no solid components, hair thin wall
Class II	Same as class I + fine calcification or moderately thickened calcification in septae or walls; also includes hyperdense cysts (<3 cm) that do not enhance with contrast
Complex Renal Cysts	
Class III	Thick irregular walls ± calcifications ± septated, enhancing walls or septa with contrast
Renal Cell Carcinoma	
Class IV	Same as class III + soft tissue enhancement with contrast (defined as >10 Hounsfield unit increase, characterizing vascularity) with de-enhancement in venous phase ± areas of necrosis

- **plain CT KUB**
 - indications: general imaging of renal anatomy, renal colic symptoms, assessment of renal calculi (size and location), and hydronephrosis prior to urological treatment
- **CT urography**
 - indications: investigation of cause of microscopic/gross hematuria, detailed assessment of urinary tracts (excretory phase), high sensitivity (95%) for uroepithelial malignancies of the upper urinary tracts, assessment of renal calculi
 - phases: unenhanced, excretory
- **renal triphasic CT**
 - indications: standard imaging for renal masses, allows accurate assessment of renal arteries and veins, better characterization of suspicious renal masses, especially in differentiating renal cell carcinoma from more benign masses, and pre-operative staging
 - phases: unenhanced, arterial and venous (nephrographic)

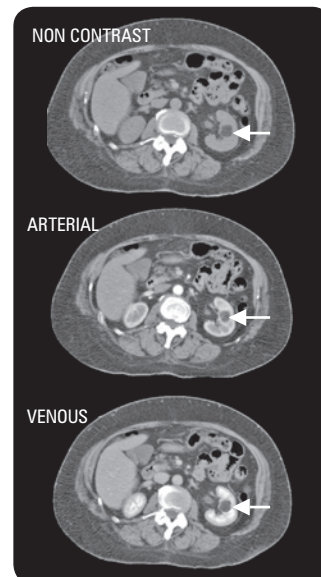


Figure 21. Triphasic CT of an angiomyolipoma: showing fat density with non-contrast scan, mildly enhancing with contrast

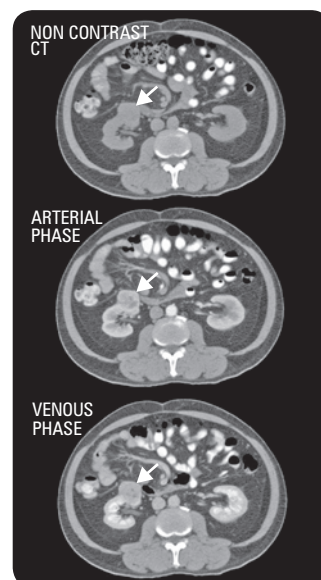


Figure 22. Triphasic CT of a renal cell carcinoma: showing arterial enhancing right renal lesion with venous washout (shunting)

Ultrasound

- indications: initial study for evaluation of kidney size and nature of renal masses (solid vs. cystic renal masses vs. complicated cysts); technique of choice for screening patients with suspected hydronephrosis (no IV contrast injection, no radiation to patient, and can be used in patients with renal failure); TRUS useful to evaluate prostate gland and guide biopsies; Doppler U/S to assess renal vasculature
- findings: solid renal masses are echogenic (bright on U/S), cystic renal masses have smooth well-defined walls with anechoic interior (dark on U/S), and complicated cysts have internal echoes within a thickened, irregular wall

Retrograde Pyelography

- indications: visualize the urinary collecting system via a cystoscope, ureteral catheterization, and retrograde injection of contrast medium, ordered when the intrarenal collecting system and ureters cannot be opacified using intravenous techniques (patient with impaired renal function, high grade obstruction)
- findings: only yields information about the collecting systems (renal pelvis and associated structures), no information regarding the parenchyma of the kidney

Voiding Cystourethrogram

- bladder filled with contrast to the point where voiding is triggered
- fluoroscopy (continuous, real-time) to visualize bladder
- indications: children with recurrent UTIs, hydronephrosis, hydroureter, suspected lower urinary tract obstruction or vesicoureteral reflux
- findings: contractility and evidence of vesicoureteric reflux

Retrograde Urethrogram

- a small Foley catheter placed into penile urethral opening
- indications: used mainly to study strictures or trauma to the male urethra; first-line study if trauma with blood present at urethral meatus

MRI

- advantages: high spatial and tissue resolution, lack of exposure to ionizing radiation and nephrotoxic contrast agents
- indications: indicated over CT for depiction of renal masses in patients with previous nephron sparing surgery; patients requiring serial follow-up (less radiation dosage), patients with reduced renal function, and patients with solitary kidneys

Renal Nuclear Scan

Table 14. Renal Scan Tests

Type of Test	Uses	Radionuclide
Renogram	To assess renal function and collecting system: evaluation of renal failure, workup of urinary tract obstruction and HTN, investigation of renal transplant	IV ^{99m}Tc -pentetate (DTPA) or mertiatide (MAG3), and imaged at 1-3 s intervals with a gamma camera over the first 60 s to assess perfusion
Morphological	Assess renal anatomy: investigation of pyelonephritis and cortical scars	^{99m}Tc -DMSA ^{99m}Tc -glucoheptonate



Figure 23. Retrograde urethrogram: demonstrating stricture in the membranous urethra



Figure 24. Transabdominal ultrasound: pregnancy, 18 wk fetus

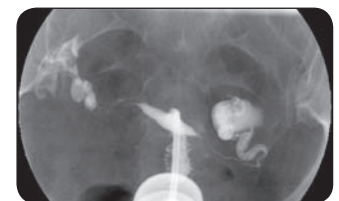


Figure 25. HSG: left hydrosalpinx



Pregnancy should always be ruled out by β -hCG before CT of a female pelvis (or any organ system) is performed

Gynecological Imaging

Ultrasound

- transabdominal and transvaginal are the primary modalities, and are indicated for different scenarios
- transabdominal requires a full bladder to push out air containing loops of bowel
 - indication: good initial investigation for suspected pelvic pathology
- TVUS provides enhanced detail of deeper/smaller structures by allowing use of higher frequency sound waves at reduced distances
 - indication: improved assessment of ovaries, first trimester development, and ectopic pregnancies

Hysterosalpingogram

- indications: useful for assessing pathology of the uterine cavity and fallopian tubes, evaluating uterine abnormalities (e.g. bicornuate uterus), or evaluation of fertility (absence of flow from tubes to peritoneal cavity indicates obstruction)
- performed by x-ray images of the pelvis after cannulation of the cervix and subsequent injection of opacifying agent

CT/MRI

- indications: evaluating pelvic structures, especially those adjacent to the adnexa and uterus
- invaluable for staging gynecological malignancies

Sonohysterogram

- saline infusion sonohysterogram involves instilling fluid into the uterine cavity transcervically to provide enhanced endometrial visualization during transvaginal U/S examination
- indications: abnormal uterine bleeding, uterine cavity abnormalities that are suspected or noted on transvaginal U/S (e.g. leiomyomas, polyps, synechiae), congenital abnormalities of the uterine cavity, infertility, recurrent pregnancy loss
- contraindications: pregnancy, pelvic infection

Table 15. Typical and Atypical Findings on a Sonohysterogram

Finding	Typical	Atypical
Polyps	A well-defined, homogeneous, polypoid lesion isoechoic to the endometrium with preservation of the endometrial-myometrial interface	Atypical features include cystic components, multiple polyps, broad base, hypoechogenicity or heterogeneity
Leiomyoma	Well-defined, broad-based, hypoechoic, solid masses with shadowing. Overlying layer of endometrium is echogenic and distorts the endometrial-myometrial interface	Pedunculation or multilobulated surface
Hyperplasia and Cancer	Diffuse echogenic endometrial thickening without focal abnormality, although focal lesions can occur. Endometrial cancer is typically a diffuse process, but early cases can be focal and appear as a polypoid mass	
Adhesions	Mobile, thin, echogenic bands that cut across the endometrial cavity	Thick, broad-based bands that can completely obliterate the endometrial cavity, as in Asherman's syndrome

Adrenal Mass

- imaging modality: most often identified on CT scan as 'incidentaloma', can also use CT/MRI to distinguish benign from malignant masses

Table 16. Adrenal Mass Findings on CT and MRI

Factors	Adrenocortical Adenoma	Adrenocortical Carcinoma	Pheochromocytoma	Metastasis
Diameter (CT)	Usually ≤ 3 cm	Usually ≥ 4 cm	Usually > 3 cm	Variable around < 3 cm
Shape (CT)	Smooth margins and round/oval	Irregular with unclear margins	Round/oval with clear margins	Oval/irregular with unclear margins
Texture (CT)	Homogeneous	Heterogeneous with mixed densities	Heterogeneous with cystic areas	Heterogeneous with mixed densities
Vascularity (CT)	Not highly vascular	Usually vascular	Usually vascular	Usually vascular
Washout of Contrast Medium on CT	$\geq 50\%$ at 10 min	$< 50\%$ at 10 min	$< 50\%$ at 10 min	$< 50\%$ at 10 min
Growth	Stable or very slow (< 1 cm/yr)	Usually rapid (> 2 cm/yr)	Slow (0.5-1 cm/yr)	Variable
Other Findings	Usually low density due to intracellular fat	Necrosis, calcifications, and hemorrhage	Hemorrhage	Occasionally hemorrhage
MRI on T2 Weighted Imaging	Isointense in relation to liver	Hyperintense in relation to liver	Markedly hyperintense in relation to liver	Hyperintense in relation to liver



Modality Based on Neuropathology Presentation

- Cognitive decline = CT
- Cord compression = MRI
- Decreased level of consciousness = CT
- Fish bone/other swallowed foreign body = CT
- Low back pain, radiculopathy = MRI
- Multiple sclerosis = MRI
- Neck infection = CT
- Orbital infection = CT
- Rule out bleed = CT
- Rule out aneurysm = CTA, MRA
- Seizure = CT
- Sinusitis = CT
- Stroke = CT, MRI
- Trauma = CT
- Weakness, systemically unwell = CT

Neuroradiology

Modalities

- CT is the modality of choice for most neuropathology; even under circumstances when MRI is preferred, CT is frequently the initial study because of its speed, availability, and lower cost
 - acute head trauma: CT is best for visualizing "bone and blood"; MRI is used only when CT fails to detect an abnormality despite strong clinical suspicion
 - acute stroke: MRI ideal, CT most frequently used
 - suspected subarachnoid or intracranial hemorrhage
 - meningitis: rule out mass effect (e.g. cerebral herniation, shift) prior to lumbar puncture
 - tinnitus and vertigo: CT and MRI are used in combination to detect bony abnormalities and CN VIII tumors, respectively

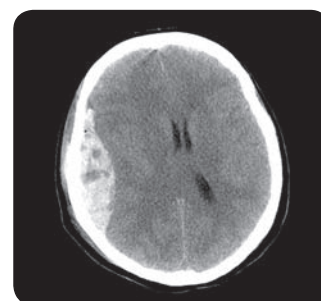


Figure 26. Epidural hematoma

Skull Films

- rarely performed, generally not indicated for non-penetrating head trauma
- indications: screening for destructive bony lesions (e.g. metastases), metabolic disease, skull anomalies, post-operative changes and confirmation of hardware placement, skeletal surveys

CT

- excellent study for evaluation of bony abnormalities
- often done first without and then with IV contrast to show vascular structures or anomalies
- vascular structures and areas of blood-brain barrier impairment are opaque (e.g. hyperattenuating or white/show enhancement) with contrast injection
 - when in doubt, look for circle of Willis or confluence of sinuses to determine presence of contrast enhancement
- posterior fossa can be obscured by extensive bony artifact
- rule out skull fracture, epidural hematoma (lenticular shape), subdural hematoma (crescentic shape), subarachnoid hemorrhage, space occupying lesion, hydrocephalus, and cerebral edema
- multiplanar imaging can be performed with newer generation of multidetector CT scanners

Myelography

- introduction of water-soluble, low-osmotic contrast media into subarachnoid space using lumbar puncture followed by x-ray or CT scan
- indications: excellent study for disc herniations, traumatic nerve root avulsions, patients with contraindication to MRI

MRI

- indications: shows brain and spinal soft tissue anatomy in fine detail, clearly distinguishes white from gray matter (especially T1-weighted series), multiplanar reconstruction helpful in pre-operative assessment

Cerebral Angiography/CTA/MRA

- indications: evaluation of vascular lesions such as atherosclerotic disease, aneurysms, vascular malformations, arterial dissection
- conventional DSA remains the gold standard for the assessment of neck and intracranial vessels; however, it is an invasive procedure requiring arterial (femoral) puncture; catheter manipulation has risk of vessel injury (e.g. dissection, occlusion, vasospasm, emboli)
- MRA methods (phase contrast, time of flight, gadolinium-enhanced) and CTA are much less invasive without actual risk to intracranial or neck vessels
- MRA and CTA are often used first as ‘screening tests’ for the assessment of subarachnoid hemorrhage, vasospasm, aneurysms

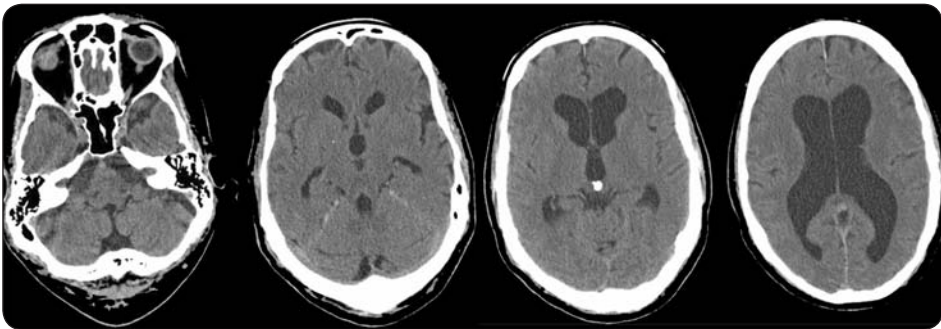


Figure 31. **Hydrocephalus:** ventricular dilatation (may see periventricular low attenuation due to transependymal CSF flow)

Table 17. Two Types of Hydrocephalus

Type	Cause
Communicating/Extra-Ventricular	Obstruction distal to the ventricles (e.g. at the level of the arachnoid granulations); imaging shows all ventricles dilated
Non-Communicating	Obstruction within the ventricular system (e.g. mass obstructing the aqueduct or foramen of Monro); imaging shows dilatation of ventricles proximal to the obstruction

Nuclear Medicine

- SPECT using ^{99m}Tc-exametazime (HMPAO) and ^{99m}Tc-bicisate (ECD) imaging assesses cerebral blood flow by diffusing rapidly across the blood brain barrier and becoming trapped within cells
- ¹⁸FDG PET imaging assesses cerebral metabolic activity

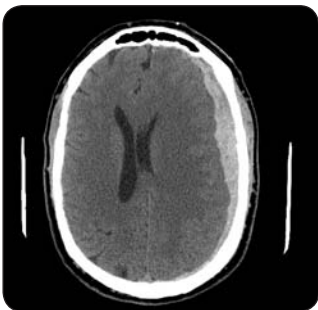


Figure 27. Subdural hematoma

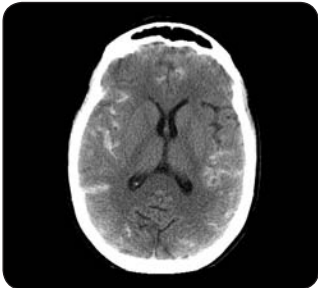


Figure 28. Subarachnoid hemorrhage

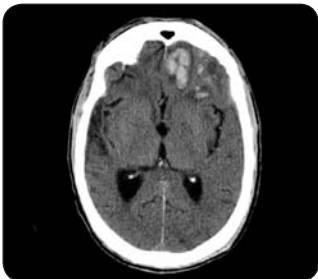


Figure 29. Intraparenchymal hemorrhage

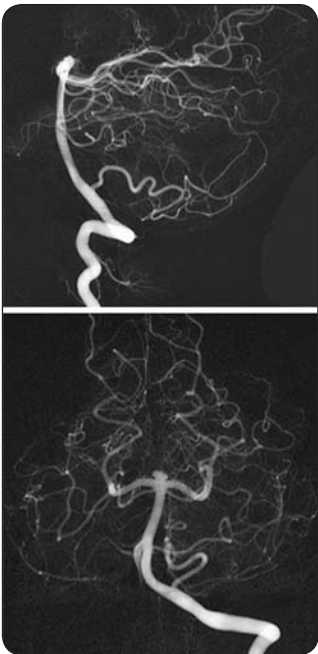


Figure 30. Verteobasilar circulation

Approach to CT Head

- think anatomically, work from superficial to deep
- scan: confirm that the imaging is of the correct patient, whether contrast was used, if the patient is aligned properly, if there is artifact present
- skin/soft tissue: examine the soft tissue superficial to the skull, looking for thickening suggestive of hematoma or edema; also investigate ear, orbital contents (globe, fat, muscles), parotid, muscles of mastication (masseter, temporalis, pterygoids), visualized pharynx
- bone and airspace (use the bone window): check calvarium, visualize mandible, visualize C-spine (usually C1 and maybe part of C2) for fractures, absent bone, lytic/sclerotic lesions; inspect sinuses and mastoid air cells for opacity that may suggest fluid, pus, blood, tumor, or fracture; status of the orbital floor in cases of facial trauma (coronal series best)
- dura and subdural space: crescent-shaped hyperdensity in the subdural space suggests subdural hematoma; lentiform hyperdensity in the epidural space suggests epidural hematoma; check symmetry of dural thickness, where increased thickness may suggest the presence of blood
- parenchyma: asymmetry of the parenchyma suggests midline shift; poor contrast between gray and white matter suggests possible infarction, tumor, edema, infection, or contusion; hyperdensity in the parenchyma suggests enhancing lesions, intracerebral hemorrhage, or calcification; central gray matter nuclei (e.g. globus pallidus, putamen, internal capsule) should be visible, otherwise, suspect infarct, tumor, or infection
- ventricles/sulci/cisterns: examine position of ventricles for evidence of midline compression/shift; hyperdensities in the ventricles suggest ventricular/subdural hemorrhage; enlarged ventricles suggest hydrocephalus; obliteration of sulci may suggest presence of edema causing effacement, possible blood filling in the sulci, or tumor; cistern hyperdensities may suggest blood, pus, or tumor



Approach to the CT Head

Some = Scan

Sore = Skin/Soft Tissue

Brains = Bone/Airspace

Demonstrate = Dura/Subdural space

Pushed = Parenchyma

Ventricles = Ventricles/Sulci/Cisterns



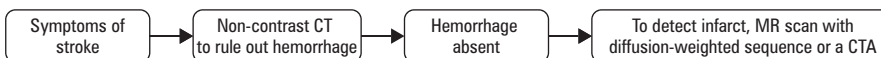
Transient ischemic attacks are not associated with radiological findings

Selected Pathology

- see [Neurosurgery](#), NS4-22 for intracranial mass lesions
- see [Neurosurgery](#), NS29 and [Plastic Surgery](#), PL28 for head trauma
- see [Emergency Medicine](#), ER9 for vertebral trauma
- see [Neurosurgery](#), NS23-27 and [Orthopedics](#), OR21 for degenerative spinal abnormalities



Cerebrovascular Disease (see [Neurology](#), N43 and [Neurosurgery](#), NS17)



- pathogenesis of stroke: see [Neurology](#), N47
- best imaging modality: infarcts best detected by either CT or MRI
- findings of infarction
 - early changes
 - ♦ CT
 - usually normal within 6 h of infarction
 - edema (loss of gray-white matter differentiation – “insular ribbon” sign, effacement of sulci, mass effect)
 - within 24 h, development of low-density, wedge-shaped area of infarction extending to periphery (correlating to vascular territory distal to affected artery)
 - in case of ischemic stroke, may see hyperattenuating (bright) artery (hyperdense MCA sign) representing intravascular thrombus or embolus
 - in case of hemorrhagic stroke or transformation (common in basal ganglia and cortex), may see bright acute blood surrounded by edema
 - ♦ MRI
 - edema with high signal on T2-weighted images and FLAIR image (loss of gray-white matter differentiation, effacement of sulci, mass effect)
 - DWI shows acute high signal changes demonstrating restricted movement of water indicative of cytotoxic edema; usually indicates stroke damage before CT
 - apparent diffusion coefficient image shows low signal intensity in acute ischemia (nadir 3-5 d, returns to baseline 1-4 wk)
 - subacute changes on CT and MRI
 - ♦ edema and mass effect more prominent
 - ♦ gyral enhancement with contrast indicative of blood-brain barrier breakdown
 - chronic changes on CT and MRI
 - ♦ encephalomalacia (parenchymal volume loss) with dilatation of adjacent ventricles
- carotid artery disease
 - best imaging modality: Duplex Doppler U/S
 - other modalities: MRA or CTA if carotid angioplasty or endarterectomy is under consideration (conventional angiography reserved for inadequate MRA or CTA)



Figure 32. Insular Ribbon

Multiple Sclerosis (refer to [Neurology](#), N52)

- best imaging modality: MRI has high sensitivity in diagnosing MS (>90%) but low specificity (71-74%)
- findings
 - characteristic lesion on MRI is cerebral or spinal plaque
 - plaques typically found in periventricular region, corpus callosum (arranged at right angles to the corpus callosum), centrum semiovale, and to a lesser extent in deep white matter structures and basal ganglia
 - "Dawson's fingers" refers to perivenular regions of demyelination that are seen to radiate outwards into the deep periventricular region
 - plaques usually have ovoid appearance, hyperintense on T2 and hypointense on T1
 - conventional T2 may underestimate plaque size and overall plaque burden – advanced techniques (diffusion tensor imaging and MR spectroscopy) can be of use
 - perivascular and interstitial edema may be prominent
 - spinal cord lesions typical of MS
 - ♦ little or no cord swelling
 - ♦ unequivocal hyperintensity on T2-weighted sequences
 - ♦ size at least 3 mm but less than 2 vertebral segments in length
 - ♦ occupy only part of the cord in cross-section
 - ♦ focal (i.e. clearly delineated and circumscribed on T2-weighted sequences)

CNS Infections

- **leptomeningitis**
 - pathogenesis: inflammation of the pia or arachnoid mater, most often secondary to hematogenous spread from infection or via organisms gaining access across areas not protected by the blood-brain barrier (choroid plexus or circumventricular organs)
 - ♦ pathogens include: *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, *N. meningitidis*, *L. monocytogenes*
 - best imaging modality: MRI (T2-weighted/FLAIR) superior to CT
 - findings
 - ♦ meningeal enhancement (following the gyri/sulci, and/or basal cisterns), hydrocephalus (communicating), cerebral swelling, subdural effusion
 - ♦ a normal MRI does not rule out leptomeningitis
- **herpes simplex encephalitis** (see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID20)
 - pathogenesis: inflammation of the brain parenchyma secondary to infection with herpes simplex virus, asymmetrically affects the limbic regions of the brain (i.e. temporal lobes, orbitofrontal region, insula, and cingulate gyrus)
 - best imaging modality: MRI (T1- and T2-weighted)
 - findings
 - ♦ acute (within 4-5 d): asymmetric high intensity lesions on T2 MRI in temporal and inferior frontal lobes strongly suggestive
 - ♦ DDX: infarct, tumor, status epilepticus, limbic encephalitis
 - ♦ CT may show low density in temporal lobe and insula; rarely basal ganglia involvement
 - ♦ long-term may show parenchymal loss to affected areas
- **cerebritis/cerebral abscess**
 - pathogenesis: an infection of the brain parenchyma (cerebritis) which can progress to a collection of pus (abscess), most frequently due to hematogenous spread of infectious organisms, commonly located in the distribution of the MCA
 - ♦ pathogens include: *S. aureus* (often in IV drug users, nosocomial), *Streptococcus*, Gram negative bacteria, *Bacteroides*
 - best imaging modality: MRI including DWI imaging series (abscess will be DWI positive); CT still used as a viable alternative
 - findings according to one of four stages of abscess formation:
 - ♦ early cerebritis (1-3 d): inflammatory infiltrate with necrotic center, low intensity on T1, high intensity on T2
 - ♦ late cerebritis (4-9 d): ring enhancement may be present
 - ♦ early capsule (10-13 d): ring enhancement
 - ♦ late capsule (14 d or greater): well demarcated ring-enhancing lesion, low intensity core, with mass effect; considerable edema around the lesion, seen as hyperintensity on T2



Figure 33. CT images of early infarct: (A) absence of left insular ribbon (B) hyperdense artery

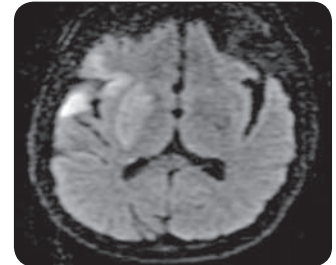


Figure 34. DWI of patient with right frontotemporal infarct

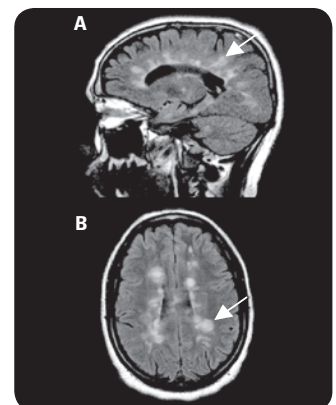


Figure 35. T2-weighted FLAIR: (A) sagittal (B) axial images of multiple sclerosis with periventricular "Dawson's Fingers"

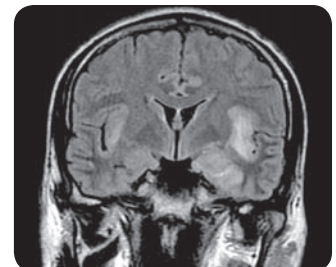


Figure 36. T2-weighted (FLAIR) coronal image of herpes simplex virus encephalitis affecting temporal lobes

Musculoskeletal System

Modalities

Plain Film/X-Ray

- usually initial study used in evaluation of bone and joint disorders
- indications: fractures and dislocations, arthritis, assessment of malalignment, orthopedic hardware, and bone tumors (initial)
- minimum of two films orthogonal to each other (usually AP and lateral) to rule out a fracture
- image proximal and distal joints (particularly important with paired bones (e.g. radius/ulna))
- minimally effective in evaluating soft tissue injury
- advantages: fast, inexpensive, readily available, reproducible

CT

- evaluation of fine bony detail
- indications: assessment of complex, comminuted, intra-articular or occult fractures including distal radius, scaphoid, skull, spine, acetabulum, calcaneus, and sacrum
- evaluation of soft tissue calcification/ossification
- advantages: fast, reproducible, excellent bone evaluation, and spatial resolution
- disadvantages: radiation dose, relatively poor soft tissue characterization in comparison with U/S and MRI

MRI

- indications: evaluation of internal derangement of joints (e.g. ligaments, joint capsule, menisci, labrum, cartilage), assessment of tendons and muscle injuries, characterization and staging of soft tissue and bony masses
- advantages: excellent soft tissue contrast, multiplanar imaging, no radiation
- disadvantages: long imaging times, expensive, claustrophobia, contraindications (e.g. pacemakers, orbital metallic bodies), artifact around metal hardware

U/S

- indications: tendon injury (e.g. rotator cuff, Achilles tendon), detection of soft tissue masses and to determine whether cystic or solid, detection of foreign bodies, U/S guided biopsy and injections
- Doppler determines vascularity of structures
- advantages: good soft tissue evaluation, easy contralateral comparison, dynamic imaging
- disadvantages: operator dependent, poor for bone evaluation

Nuclear Medicine (Bone Scintigraphy)

- determine the location and extent of bony lesions
- ^{99m}Tc -methylene diphosphonate localizes to areas of increased bone turnover or calcification – growth plate in children, tumors, infections, fractures, metabolic bone disease (e.g. Paget's), sites of reactive bone formation, and periostitis
- advantages: very sensitive, capable of imaging entire body with relatively low dose radiation
- disadvantages: low specificity, not widely available due to special requirements (e.g. gamma camera, radiopharmaceuticals)

Approach to Interpretation of Bone X-Rays

- identification: name, MRN, age of patient, type of study, region of investigation
- soft tissues: swelling, calcification/ossification
- joints: alignment, joint space, presence of effusion, osteophytes, erosions, bone density, overall pattern, and symmetry of affected joint
- bone: periosteum, cortex, medulla, trabeculae, density, articular surfaces, bone destruction, bone production, appearance of the edges or borders of any lesions

Trauma



Fracture/Dislocation

- description of fractures
- site of fracture (bone, region of bone, intra-articular vs. extra-articular)
- pattern of fracture line (simple vs. comminuted)
- displacement (distal fragment with reference to the proximal fragment)

- soft tissue involvement (calcification, gas, foreign bodies)
- type of fracture (stress vs. pathologic)
- for specific fracture descriptions and characteristics of fractures, see [Orthopedics, OR5](#)

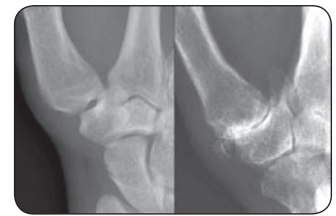


Figure 37. X-ray of first carpometacarpal joint: normal image (left) and osteoarthritis (right) with joint space narrowing and subchondral sclerosis

Arthritis

Radiographic Hallmarks of Osteoarthritis

- joint space narrowing – typically non-uniform
- subchondral sclerosis
- subchondral cyst formation
- osteophytes

Radiographic Hallmarks of Rheumatoid Arthritis

- joint space narrowing – typically uniform
- soft tissue swelling
- erosions
- periarticular osteopenia

Bone Tumor

Approach

- metastatic tumors to bone are much more common than primary bone tumors, particularly if age >40 yr
 - diagnosis usually requires a biopsy if primary not located
 - few benign tumors/lesions have potential for malignant transformation
 - MRI is good for tissue delineation and pre-operative assessment of surrounding soft tissues, neurovascular structures, and medullary/marrow involvement
 - plain film is less sensitive than other modalities but useful for assessing aggressiveness and constructing differential diagnosis

Considerations and Tumor Characteristics

- for specific bone tumors, see [Orthopedics, OR43](#)
- age – most common tumors by age group
 - <1 yr of age: metastatic neuroblastoma
 - 1-20 yr of age: Ewing's sarcoma in tubular bones
 - 10-30 yr of age: osteosarcoma and Ewing's sarcoma in flat bones
 - >40 yr of age: metastases, multiple myeloma, and chondrosarcoma
- multiplicity: metastases, myeloma, lymphoma, fibrous dysplasia, enchondromatosis
- location within bone
 - epiphysis: giant cell tumor, chondroblastoma, geode, eosinophilic granuloma, infection
 - metaphysis: simple bone cyst, aneurysmal bone cyst, enchondroma, chondromyxoid fibroma, nonossifying fibroma, osteosarcoma, chondrosarcoma
 - diaphysis: fibrous dysplasia, aneurysmal bone cyst, brown tumors, eosinophilic granuloma, Ewing's sarcoma
- expansile
 - aneurysmal bone cyst, giant cell tumor, enchondromas, brown tumors, metastases (especially renal and thyroid), plasmacytoma
- matrix mineralization
 - chondroid (popcorn calcification) or osseous
- margin/zone of transition: area between lesion and normal bone
- cortex: intact, disturbed
- periosteal reaction
- soft tissue mass

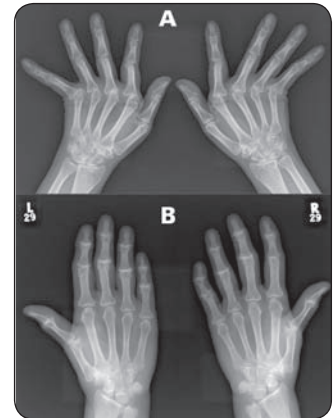


Figure 38. Rheumatoid arthritis (A) compared with osteoarthritis (B) changes on X-ray



Benign Lesions which may have Aggressive Features

- Osteomyelitis
- Osteoblastoma
- Aneurysmal bone cyst
- Langerhans cell histiocytosis
- Myositis ossificans



Periosteal Reaction

- "Onion skinning" = Ewing's sarcoma
- "Sunburst", "hair on end" = osteosarcoma
- "Codman's triangle" = osteosarcoma, Ewing's sarcoma, subperiosteal abscess

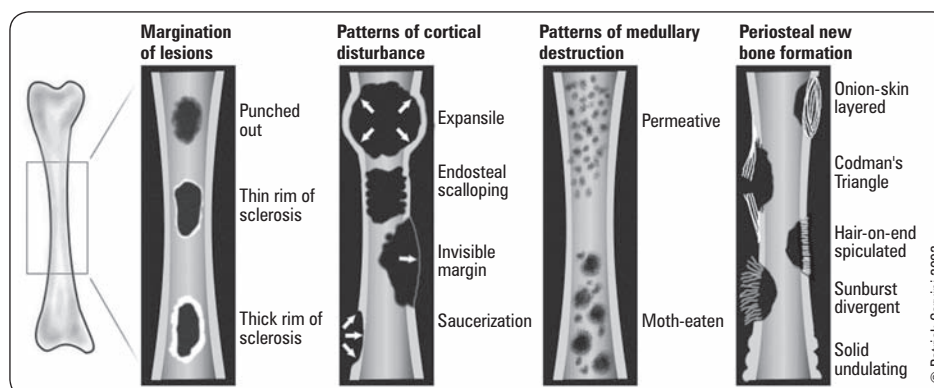


Figure 39. Radiographic appearance of bone remodelling and destruction processes

Table 18. Characteristics of Benign and Malignant Bone Lesions

Benign	Malignant
Thin sclerotic margin/sharp delineation of lesion	Poor delineation of lesion – wide zone of transition
Overlying cortex intact	Loss of overlying cortex/bony destruction
No or simple periosteal reaction	Periosteal reaction
No soft tissue mass	Soft tissue mass

Metastatic Bone Tumors

- all malignancies have potential to metastasize to bone
- metastases are 20-30x more common than primary bone tumors
- metastasis can cause a lytic or a sclerotic reaction when seeding to bone
- when a primary malignancy is first detected, a bone scan is often part of the initial workup
- may present with pathological fractures or pain
- biopsy or determination of primary is the only way to confirm the diagnosis
- most common metastatic bone tumors: breast, prostate, lung, see [Orthopedics, OR46](#)



Lytic = decreased density
Sclerotic = increased density

**Table 19. Characteristic Bone Metastases of Common Cancers**

Lytic	Sclerotic	Expansile	Peripheral
Breast	Prostate	Thyroid	Kidney
Lung	Breast	Renal	Lung
Thyroid	Lymphoma		Melanoma
Kidney	Lung		(KLM: flies to the periphery)
Multiple myeloma	Bowel		
	Medulloblastoma		
	Treated tumors		

Infection

Osteomyelitis

- MRI is the imaging modality of choice for demonstrating bone, bone marrow, and soft tissue abnormalities
- ^{99m}Tc , followed by ^{111}In labeled white cell scan or gallium radioisotope scan
- plain film
 - visible 8-10 d after process has begun
 - osteomyelitic changes on plain film
 - ♦ soft tissue swelling
 - ♦ local periosteal reaction
 - ♦ pockets of air (from anaerobes) may be seen in the tissues, may also suggest necrotizing fasciitis
 - ♦ mottled and nonhomogeneous with a classic “moth-eaten” appearance
 - ♦ cortical destruction

Bone Abscess

- overlying cortex has periosteal new bone formation
- sharply outlined radiolucent area with variable thickness in zone of transition
- variable thickness periosteal sclerosis
- sequestrum: a piece of dead bone within a Brodie's abscess
- a sinus tract or cloaca may communicate between the abscess through the cortex to the surface of the bone
- best modality: MRI for bone, bone marrow, and soft tissue abnormalities; CT for sequestra and cortical erosions

Metabolic Bone Disease

Osteoporosis

- reduction in amount of normal bone mass; fewer and thinner trabeculae; diffuse process affecting all bones
- DEXA: gold standard for measuring bone mineral density
 - T-score: the number of standard deviations from the young adult mean, most clinically valuable
 - ♦ osteopenia: $-2.5 < \text{T-score} < -1$
 - ♦ osteoporosis: $\text{T-score} \leq -2.5$
 - Z-score: the number of standard deviations from the age-matched mean
 - risk of fracture: related to bone mineral density, age, history of previous fractures, steroid therapy



Diagnostic sensitivity of DEXA highest when bone mineral density measured at lumbar spine and proximal femur

- appearance on plain film
 - osteopenia: reduced bone density on plain films
 - ♦ may also be seen with osteomalacia, hyperparathyroidism, and disuse
 - compression of vertebral bodies
 - biconcave vertebral bodies ("codfish" vertebrae)
 - long bones have appearance of thinned cortex and increased medullary cavity
 - ♦ look for complications of osteoporosis (e.g. insufficiency fractures: hip, vertebrae, sacrum, pubic rami)
- see [Endocrinology, E42](#)

Osteomalacia/Rickets

- reduction in bone mineral density, usually due to vitamin D deficiency, resulting in softening and bowing of long bones
- similar to osteoporosis, initial radiological appearance of osteopenia (coarse and poorly defined bone texture)
- "fuzzy", ill-defined trabeculae
- Looser's zones (pseudofracture)
 - characteristic radiologic feature
 - fissures or clefts at right angles to long bones and extending through cortex
 - DDx: chronic renal disease, fibrous dysplasia, hyperthyroidism, Paget's, osteodystrophy, X-linked hypophosphatemia

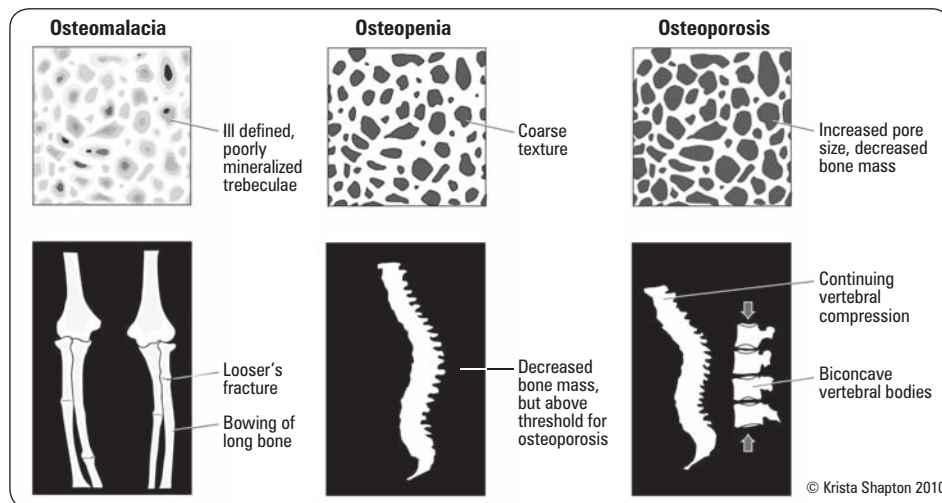


Figure 40. Osteomalacia, osteopenia, and osteoporosis

Hyperparathyroidism

- most common cause is renal failure (secondary hyperparathyroidism)
- chondrocalcinosis
 - calcium crystal deposition in hyaline cartilage or fibrocartilage (including arteries and peri-articular soft tissue)
 - resorption of bone typically in hands (subperiosteal and at tufts), sacroiliac joints (subchondral), skull ("salt and pepper" appearance), osteoclastoma (brown tumors)
 - "rugger jersey spine": band-like osteosclerosis at superior/inferior margins of vertebral bodies
- see [Endocrinology, E45](#)

Paget's Disease

- abnormal remodeling involving single or multiple bones – especially skull, spine, pelvis
- 3 phases: 1st phase = lytic, 2nd phase = mixed (lytic/sclerotic), 3rd phase = sclerotic
- features
 - coarsening of the trabeculae with bone expansion
 - bone softening/bowing
 - bone scan will reveal high activity, especially at bone ends
 - thickened cortex
- see [Endocrinology, E46](#)



Osteoporosis

Reduced amount of bone

OsteoMalacia

Normal amount of bone, but reduced Mineralization of normal osteoid



Nuclear Medicine



Brain

- ^{99m}Tc -HMPAO and ^{99m}Tc -ECD imaging to assess cerebral blood flow, taken up in cortical and subcortical gray matter; used for dementia, traumatic brain injury and to a lesser extent vasculitis, neuropsychiatric disorders and stroke
- PET imaging assesses metabolic activity by using ^{18}F FDG
- CSF imaging, intrathecal administration of ^{111}In DTPA to evaluate CSF leak or to differentiate normal pressure hydrocephalus from other causes of hydrocephalus
- ventricular shunt evaluation for obstruction (most commonly ventriculoperitoneal) with ^{99m}Tc or ^{111}In -DTPA

Thyroid

Radioactive Iodine Uptake (see [Endocrinology, E21](#))

- index of thyroid function (trapping and organification of iodine)
- radioactive ^{131}I or ^{123}I given PO to fasting patient
- measure percentage of administered iodine taken up by thyroid
- increased RAIU: toxic multinodular goitre, toxic adenoma, Graves' disease
- decreased RAIU: subacute thyroiditis, late Hashimoto's disease, hormone suppression
- falsely decreased in patient with recent radiographic contrast studies, high dietary iodine (e.g. seaweed)

Thyroid Imaging (Scintiscan)

- ^{99m}Tc /pertechnetate IV or radioactive iodine (^{123}I)
- provides functional anatomic detail
- hot (hyperfunctioning) lesions: usually benign (e.g. adenoma, toxic multinodular goitre), cancer very unlikely (less than 1%)
- cold (hypofunctioning) lesions: cancer must be considered until biopsy negative even though only 6-10% are cancerous
- isointense lesions: cancer must be considered as an isointense lesion may represent cold nodules superimposed on normal tissue; if cyst suspected, correlate with U/S
- serum thyroglobulin to detect recurrent thyroid cancer post-treatment

Radioiodine Ablation

- ^{123}I for Graves' disease, multinodular goitre, thyroid cancer

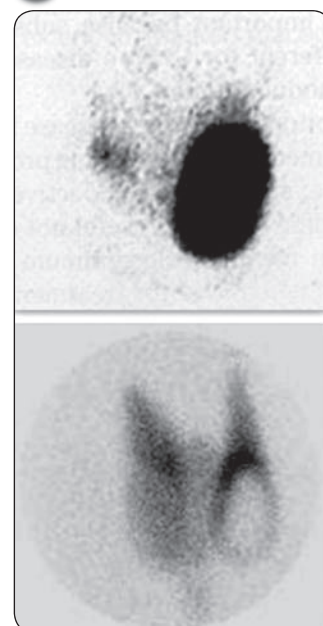


Figure 41. Radioiodine ablation



V/Q Scan

For PE investigation: normal scan makes PE unlikely
Probability of PE: high 80-100%, intermediate 20-80%, low <20%, very low <10%



Ventilation Scan Defects indicate:
Airway obstruction, chronic lung disease, bronchospasm, tumor mass obstruction



Perfusion Scan Defects indicate:
Reduced blood flow due to PE, COPD, asthma, bronchogenic carcinoma, inflammatory lung diseases (pneumonia, sarcoidosis), mediastinitis, mucous plug, vasculitis

Respiratory

V/Q Scan

- examine areas of lung in which ventilation and perfusion do not match
- ventilation scan
 - patient breathes radioactive gas (^{99m}Tc -DTPA, ^{133}Xe , Technegas) through a closed system, filling alveoli proportionally to ventilation
 - ventilation scan defects indicate: airway obstruction, chronic lung disease, bronchospasm, tumor mass obstruction
- perfusion scan
 - radiotracer injected IV (^{99m}Tc -MAA) → trapped in pulmonary capillaries (1 in 1500 arterioles occluded) according to blood flow
 - gives a map of pulmonary circulation
 - relatively contraindicated in severe pulmonary HTN and right-to-left shunt
- with PE
 - areas of lung are well ventilated but not perfused (unmatched defect)
 - defects are wedge-shaped, extend to periphery, usually bilateral and multiple
 - reported as high probability, intermediate, low, very low, or normal
 - V/Q scans for PE have been largely replaced by CT scan with contrast (see [Respirology, R19](#))
- not valid for assessment of PE when patients have intrinsic lung diseases and ventilatory problems
- modified V/Q scan (perfusion only, lower dose contrast) may be used for pregnant patients if CXR is normal

Cardiac

Myocardial Perfusion Scanning

- for investigation of angina, atypical chest pain, CAD, and follow-up post-bypass
- thallium-201 (a radioactive analogue of potassium), ^{99m}Tc -sestamibi, or ^{99m}Tc -tetrofosmin
- injected at peak exercise (physical stress) or after persantine challenge (vasodilator) and again later at rest
- persistent defect (at rest and stress) suggests infarction; reversible defect (only during stress) suggests ischemia
- used to discriminate between reversible (ischemia) vs. irreversible (infarction) changes when other investigations are equivocal
- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C13](#)

Radionuclide Ventriculography

- ^{99m}Tc tagged to red blood cells
- first pass through RV → pulmonary circulation → LV; provides information about RV function
- cardiac MUGA scan sums multiple cardiac cycles
 - evaluation of LV function
 - images are obtained by gating (synchronizing) the count acquisitions to the ECG signal
 - MUGA scan can be used to study the function of the heart at a particular stage of contraction
- provides information on ejection fraction (normal = 50-65%), ventricular volume, and wall motion



Active uptake of radiolabel by myocardium is proportional to regional blood flow



Persistent defect (at rest and stress) suggests infarction; reversible defect (only during stress) suggests ischemia



MUGA Scan can be used to study the function of the heart at a particular stage of contraction; superior to echo only in its reproducibility in ejection fraction measurement (precise)

Abdomen and Genitourinary System

HIDA Scan

- IV injection of ^{99m}Tc -disofenin (DISIDA) or ^{99m}Tc -mebrofenin which is bound to protein, taken up, and excreted by hepatocytes into biliary system
- can be performed in non-fasting state but prefer NPO after midnight
- gallbladder visualized when cystic duct is patent (rules out cholecystitis with >99% certainty), usually seen by 30 min to 1 h
- acute cholecystitis: no visualization of gallbladder at 4 h or after administration of morphine at 30 min
- chronic cholecystitis: no visualization of gallbladder at 1 h but seen at 4 h or after morphine administration
- differential diagnosis of obstructed cystic duct: acute/chronic cholecystitis, decreased hepatobiliary function (commonly due to alcoholism), bile duct obstruction, parenteral nutrition, fasting less than 4 h or more than 24 h
- assess bile leaks post-operatively

RBC Scan

- IV injection of radiotracer with sequential images of the abdomen (^{99m}Tc RBCs)
- GI bleed
 - if bleeding acutely at <0.5 mL/min, the focus of activity in the images generally indicates the site of the acute bleed, look for a change in shape and location on sequential image
 - if bleeding acutely at >0.5 mL/min, use angiography (more specific)
- liver lesion evaluation
 - hemangioma has characteristic appearance: cold early, fills in later

Bone



Bone Scan

- isotopes
 - ^{99m}Tc -diphosphonate
 - ♦ triphasic bone scan: flow → blood pool → delayed bone images
 - ♦ uptake can distinguish bone vs. soft tissue infection and septic arthritis vs. osteomyelitis vs. peripheral cellulitis
 - ♦ acute osteomyelitis: increased activity in flow, blood pool, and delayed bone images; usually does not cross joint
 - ♦ septic arthritis and cellulitis: increased activity in blood pool and normal or slightly increased activity in delayed images; may cross joint
 - ^{111}In WBC: tracks the active migration of the WBC, more specific for infection
 - ^{67}Ga citrate: may see uptake in some tumors, also more specific for infection
- radioactive tracer binds to hydroxyapatite of bone matrix

- increased binding when increased blood supply to bone and/or high bone turnover (active osteoblasts)
- indications: bone pain of unknown origin, avascular necrosis, suspected malignancy, staging malignancy (breast, prostate, kidney or lung), follow up after treatment, detection and follow up of primary bone disease, assessment of skeletal trauma, detection of soft tissue calcification renal failure
- differential diagnosis of positive bone scan: bone metastases (breast, prostate, lung, thyroid), primary bone tumor, arthritis, fracture, infection, anemia, Paget's disease
- multiple myeloma: typically normal or cold (false negative); need a skeletal survey
- "superscan": increased bone uptake and poor renal uptake due to diffuse metastases or metabolic causes (renal osteodystrophy)

Interventional Radiology

Vascular Procedures

Angiography

- injection of contrast material through a catheter placed directly into an artery or vein to delineate vascular anatomy
- catheter can be placed into a large vessel (e.g. aorta, vena cava) for a "flush" or selectively placed into a branch vessel for more detailed examination of smaller vessels and specific organs
- indications: diagnosis of primary occlusive or stenotic vascular disease, aneurysms, coronary, carotid and cerebral vascular disease, PE, trauma, bleeding (GI, hemoptysis, hematuria), vascular malformations, as part of endovascular procedures (endovascular aneurysm repair, thrombolysis, stenting, and angioplasties)
- complications (<5% of patients): puncture site hematoma, infection, pseudoaneurysm, AV fistula, dissection, thrombosis, embolic occlusion of a distal vessel
- due to improved technology, non-invasive evaluation of vascular structures is being performed more frequently (color Doppler U/S, CTA, and MRA)
- see *Neuroradiology*, MI18

Percutaneous Transluminal Angioplasty and Stents

- introduction and inflation of a balloon into a stenosed vessel to restore distal blood supply
- common alternative to surgical bypass grafting with 5 yr patency rates similar to surgery, depending on site
- renal, iliac, femoral, mesenteric, subclavian, coronary, and carotid artery stenoses are amenable to treatment
- vascular stents may help improve long-term results by keeping the vessel wall patent after PTA
- stents are also used for angioplasty failure or complications
- stent grafts (metal mesh covered with durable fabric) may provide an alternative treatment option for aneurysms and AV fistulas
- complications: similar to angiography, but also includes vessel rupture

Thrombolytic Therapy

- may be systemic (IV) or catheter directed
- infusion of a fibrinolytic agent (urokinase, streptokinase, TNK, tPA – used most commonly) via a catheter inserted directly into a thrombus
- can restore blood flow in a vessel obstructed with a thrombus or embolus
- indications: treatment of ischemic limb (most common indication), early treatment of MI or stroke to reduce organ damage, treatment of venous thrombosis (DVT or PE)
- complications: bleeding, stroke, distal embolus, reperfusion injury with myoglobinuria and renal failure if advanced ischemia present

Embolization

- injection of occluding material into vessels
- permanent agents: amplatzer plugs, coils, glue, and onyx
- temporary: gel foam, autologous blood clots
- indications: management of hemorrhage (epistaxis, trauma, GI bleed, GU bleed), treatment of arteriovenous malformation, pre-operative treatment of vascular tumors (bone metastases, renal cell carcinoma), varicocele embolization for infertility, symptomatic uterine fibroids
- complications: post-embolization syndrome (pain, fever, leukocytosis), unintentional embolization of a non-target organ with resultant ischemia



On U/S, veins are compressible, arteries are not



Thrombolytic Therapy for Pulmonary Embolism

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;3:CD004437

Study: Systematic review of RCTs comparing thrombolytic therapy with placebo, heparin, or surgical intervention.

Patients: 679 patients with acute PE.

Intervention: Thrombolytics vs. heparin or placebo.

Outcome: Death rate, recurrence of PE, major and minor hemorrhagic events.

Results: Non-significant difference between thrombolytics and heparin or placebo in all measured outcomes. Rt-PA and heparin together reduced need for treatment for in-hospital events. Thrombolytics improved hemodynamic outcome, lung VQ scans, pulmonary angiography assessment, and echocardiograms greater than heparin. Need for further double-blinded RCTs.

Conclusion: We cannot conclude whether thrombolytic therapy is better than heparin for pulmonary embolism based on limited evidence found.



Advanced ischemia patients should receive surgery rather than thrombolysis



Chemoembolization delivers chemotherapy directly into the tumor through its feeding blood supply and traps the drug in place by embolization

Inferior Vena Cava Filter

- insertion of metallic “umbrellas” to mechanically trap emboli and prevent PE
- may be temporary (retrievable) or permanent
- inserted via femoral vein, jugular vein, or antecubital vein
- usually placed infrarenally to avoid renal vein thrombosis
- indications: contraindication to anticoagulation, failure of adequate anticoagulation (e.g. recurrent PE despite therapeutic anticoagulant levels), complication of anticoagulation

Central Venous Access

- variety of devices available
- PICC, external tunneled catheter (Hickman or dialysis catheters), subcutaneous port (Portacath®)
- indications: chemotherapy, TPN, long-term antibiotics, administration of fluids and blood products, blood sampling
- complications: venous thrombosis and central venous stenosis, infection including sepsis, pneumothorax



Figure 42. Retrievable IVC filter



Indications for Central Venous Access

FAT CAB

- Fluids
- Antibiotics
- TPN
- Chemotherapy
- Administration of blood
- Blood sampling

Nonvascular Interventions

Percutaneous Biopsy

- replaces open surgical procedure
- many sites are amenable to biopsy using U/S, fluoroscopy or CT guidance
- complications: false negative (sampling error or tissue necrosis), pneumothorax in 30% of lung biopsies (chest tube required in approximately 5%), acute pancreatitis (pancreatic biopsies), bleeding from liver biopsies in patients with uncorrectable coagulopathies or ascites (can be minimized with transjugular approach)

Abscess Drainage

- placement of a drainage catheter into an infected fluid collection
- administer broad spectrum IV antibiotics prior to procedure
- routes: percutaneous (most common), transgluteal, transvaginal, transrectal
- complications: hemorrhage, injury to intervening structures (e.g. bowel), bacteremia, sepsis

Percutaneous Biliary Drainage/Cholecystostomy

- placement of drainage catheter ± metallic stent into obstructed biliary system (PBD) or gallbladder (cholecystostomy) for relief of jaundice or infection
- percutaneous gallbladder access can be used to crush or remove stones
- indications
 - cholecystostomy: acute cholecystitis
 - PBD: biliary obstruction secondary to stone or tumor, cholangitis
- complications
 - acute: sepsis, hemorrhage
 - long-term: tumor overgrowth and stent occlusion

Percutaneous Nephrostomy

- placement of catheter into renal collecting system
- indications: hydronephrosis, pyonephrosis, ureteric injury with or without urinary peritonitis (traumatic or iatrogenic)
- complications: bacteria and septic shock, hematuria due to pseudoaneurysm or AV fistulas, injury to adjacent organs

Gastrostomy/Gastrojejunostomy

- percutaneous placement of catheter directly into either stomach (gastrostomy) or through stomach into small bowel (transgastric jejunostomy)
- indications: inability to eat (most commonly CNS lesion) or esophageal obstruction, decompression in gastric outlet obstruction
- complications: gastroesophageal reflux with aspiration, peritonitis, hemorrhage, bowel or solid organ injury

Radiofrequency Ablation

- U/S or CT guided probe is inserted into tumor, radiofrequency energy delivered through probe causes heat deposition and tissue destruction
- indications: hepatic tumors (HCC and metastases), renal tumors
- complications: destruction of neighbouring tissues and structures, bleeding



Figure 43. Femoral arteriogram: distal occlusion of superficial femoral artery

Breast Imaging

Modalities

Mammography

Description

- x-ray imaging of the breasts for screening in asymptomatic patients, or diagnosis of clinically-detected or screening-detected abnormalities (see [General Surgery, GS54](#))



Indications

- screening
 - begin screening from age 50 q1-2 yr
 - if over the age of 70, continue screening mammography if in good general health
 - not routinely recommended if under the age of 50 unless strong family history
 - if positive family history, begin screening 5-10 yr younger than the first degree relative who developed breast cancer
- diagnostic
 - signs and symptoms suggestive of breast cancer include a lump or thickening, localized nodularity, dimpling or contour deformity, a persistent focal area of pain, and spontaneous serous or sanguinous nipple discharge from a single duct
 - women with abnormal screening mammograms
 - follow-up of women with previous breast cancer
 - suspected complications of breast implants

Table 20. Breast Imaging Reporting and Data System (BI-RADS®) Mammography Categories

Assessment Categories	Imaging Findings	Follow-up Recommendations
BI-RADS 0	Incomplete	Additional imaging Comparison to prior films
BI-RADS 1	Negative	Routine screening
BI-RADS 2	Benign	Routine screening
BI-RADS 3	Probably benign Likelihood of malignancy is <2%	Unilateral mammogram at 6 mo
BI-RADS 4	Suspicious abnormality	Biopsy
BI-RADS 5	Highly suspicious of malignancy Likelihood of malignancy is 95%	Biopsy
BI-RADS 6	Malignancy confirmed by biopsy	Definitive therapy

Breast MRI

Description

- should be used only after mammography and U/S investigation
- sensitive for detecting invasive breast cancer (95-100%) but specificity variable (37-97%)
- use as a screening modality has been limited to high risk patients

Indications

- evaluation of previously diagnosed breast cancer: positive margins, recurrence, response to chemotherapy
- post-surgical resection of breast cancer
- known BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation, or other gene predisposing to breast cancer
- untested first-degree relative of a carrier of such a gene mutation
- family history consistent with a hereditary breast cancer syndrome and estimated personal lifetime cancer risk >25%
- high-risk marker on prior biopsy (atypical ductal hyperplasia, atypical lobular hyperplasia, lobular carcinoma *in situ*)
- radiation therapy to chest (before age 30)
- MRI should not be used to screen the general population or to differentiate between benign and malignant lesions

U/S

Definition

- U/S can determine if a mass is cystic or solid and is commonly used during biopsy

Indications

- identification and characterization of palpable abnormalities
- evaluation of ambiguous mammographic findings in the determination of cystic vs. solid characteristics
- evaluation of patients with suspected silicone implant rupture and problems associated with breast implants
- guidance for interventional procedures
- breast U/S is the initial imaging technique to evaluate palpable masses in women under 30 and in lactating and pregnant women

Breast Interventional Procedures

Description

- includes fine needle aspirate biopsy, core needle biopsy, abscess drainage, and cyst aspiration (see [General Surgery, GS54](#))



Indications

- cystic mass: complex cyst, symptomatic, suspected abscess
- solid mass: confirm diagnosis of a lesion suspicious for malignancy (BI-RADS® Category 4 or 5) or confirm diagnosis of a probable benign mass (BI-RADS® Category 3)
- initial percutaneous biopsy procedure that was insufficient or discordant with imaging
- presurgical U/S-guided localization of a lesion

Breast Findings

Breast Masses

- definition: a space occupying lesion seen in two different projections; if seen in only a single projection it should be called a “density” until its three-dimensionality is confirmed

Table 21. Mammographic Features of Benign and Malignant Breast Masses

	Benign	Malignant
Shape	Oval, round, lobular	Irregular
Margin	Circumscribed, well-defined	Indistinct, microlobulated, spiculated
Density	Radiolucent (oil cyst, lipoma, fibrolipoma, galactoceles, hamartoma)	Radiodense
Calcifications (± mass)	Popcorn (hyalinizing fibroadenoma), lucent center (oil cyst/fat necrosis), layering (milk of calcium), vascular, round, scattered	Pleomorphic (vary in size and shape), amorphous (indistinct), fine linear, coarse heterogeneous, regional, segmental, clustered

Other Findings

- tubular density/dilated duct: branching tubular structures usually represent enlarged ducts (milk ducts); if they are clearly identified as such, these densities are of little concern
- intramammary lymph node: typical lymph nodes are circumscribed, reniform and often have a fatty notch and center; usually less than 1 cm, and usually seen in the outer, often upper part of the breast; when these characteristics (particularly fatty center or notch) are well seen, the lesion is almost always benign and insignificant
- focal asymmetric density: area of breast density with similar shape on two views, but completely lacking borders and conspicuity of a true mass; must be carefully evaluated with focal compression to exclude findings of a true mass or architectural distortion
 - if focal compression shows mass-like character, or if the area can be palpated, biopsy must be considered

References

- Brant WE, Helms CA. Fundamentals of diagnostic radiology. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1999.
- Canadian Association of Radiologists (CAR) standard for breast imaging. Ottawa: Canadian Association of Radiologists, 1998.
- Canadian Association of Radiologists (CAR) standard for performance of breast ultrasound examination. Ottawa: Canadian Association of Radiologists, 2003.
- Canadian Association of Radiologists (CAR) standards for the performance of ultrasound-guided percutaneous breast interventional procedures. Ottawa: Canadian Association of Radiologists, 2003.
- Chen MYM, Pope TL, Ott DJ. Basic radiology. New York: Lange Medical Books/McGraw Hill, 2004.
- Daffner RH. Clinical radiology: the essentials. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1993.
- D'Orsi CJ, Sickles EA, Mendelson EB, et al. ACR BI-RADS® Atlas, Breast Imaging Reporting and Data System. Reston, VA: American College of Radiology, 2013.
- Erkonen WE, Smith WL. Radiology 101. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2005.
- Fleckenstein P, Tranun-Jensen J. Anatomy in diagnostic imaging, 2nd ed. Copenhagen: Blackwell Publishing, 2001.
- Gay S, Woodcock Jr RJ. Radiology recall. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2000.
- Goldstein S. Saline infusion sonohysterogram. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2012.
- Goodman LR. Felson's principles of chest roentgenology: a programmed text, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier, 2007.
- Jaffe SA, Servaes S, Okon S, et al. Multi-detector row CT urography in the evaluation of hematuria. Radiographics 2003;23:1441-1455.
- Juhl JH, Crummy AB, Kuhlman JE (editors). Paul and Juhl's essentials of radiologic imaging. Philadelphia: Lippincott-Raven, 1998.
- Katz DS, Math KR, Groskin SA. Radiology secrets. Philadelphia: Hanley and Belfus, 1998.
- Mettler FA Jr, Huda W, Yoshizumi TT, et al. Effective doses in radiology and diagnostic nuclear medicine: a catalog. Radiology 2008;248:254-263.
- Novelline RA. Squire's fundamentals of radiology, 6th ed. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 2004.
- Quellette H, Tetreault P. Clinical radiology made ridiculously simple. Miami: MedMaster, 2002.
- Owen RJ, Hiremath S, Myers A, et al. Canadian Association of Radiologists consensus guidelines for the prevention of contrast-induced nephropathy: update 2012. Can Assoc Radiol J 2014;65:96-105.
- Som PM, Curtin HD. Head and neck imaging, 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 1996.
- Smith DL, Heldt JP, Richards GD, et al. Radiation exposure during continuous and pulsed fluoroscopy. J Endourol 2013; 27(3):384-8.
- Warner E, Messersmith H, Causer P, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging screening of women at high risk for breast cancer: a clinical practice guideline. Program in Evidence-Based Care. Cancer Care Ontario, 2007.
- Weissleder R, Rieumont MJ, Wittenberg J. Primer of diagnostic imaging, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Mosby, 1997.
- Young WF. Clinical practice. The incidentally discovered adrenal mass. NEJM 2007;356:601-610.

Shayna Bejaimal, Vlad Dragan, and Alisa Loo, chapter editors

Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Tina Hu, EBM Editor

Dr. Ramesh Prasad and Dr. Alireza Zahirieh, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Chronic Kidney Disease	34
		Management of Chronic Kidney Disease	
Basic Anatomy Review	2	End Stage Renal Disease	35
Anatomy of the Kidney		Presentation of End Stage Renal Disease	
Renal Structure and Function		Renal Replacement Therapy	36
Renal Hemodynamics		Dialysis	
Assessment of Renal Function	4	Renal Transplantation	
Measurement of Renal Function		Common Medications	38
Urinalysis		Landmark Nephrology Trials	39
Urine Microscopy		References	40
Urine Biochemistry			
Electrolyte Disorders	7		
Sodium Homeostasis			
Hyponatremia			
Hypernatremia			
Potassium Homeostasis			
Hypokalemia			
Hyperkalemia			
Acid-Base Disorders	14		
Metabolic Acidosis			
Metabolic Alkalosis			
Parenchymal Kidney Diseases	17		
Vascular Diseases of the Kidney			
Glomerular Disease			
Glomerular Syndromes			
Tubulointerstitial Disease			
Analgesic Nephropathies			
Systemic Disease with Renal Manifestation	28		
Diabetes			
Scleroderma			
Multiple Myeloma			
Malignancy			
Hypertension	30		
Hypertensive Nephrosclerosis			
Renovascular Hypertension			
Renal Parenchymal Hypertension			
Cystic Diseases of the Kidney	31		
Adult Polycystic Kidney Disease			
Medullary Sponge Kidney			
Autosomal Recessive Polycystic Kidney Disease			
Acute Kidney Injury	33		
Approach to Acute Kidney Injury			

Basic Anatomy Review

Anatomy of the Kidney

- see [Urology, U4](#)



Renal Structure and Function

The Nephron

- basic structural and functional unit of the kidney, approximately 1 million per kidney
- 2 main components: glomerulus and attached renal tubule
- direction of blood flow: afferent arteriole → glomerular capillaries → efferent arteriole → vasa recta (the capillaries surrounding the tubules) → renal venules

Table 1. Major Functions of the Kidneys

Function	Mechanism	Affected Elements
1. Waste Excretion	Glomerular filtration	Excretion of nitrogenous products of protein metabolism (urea, Cr)
	Tubular secretion	Excretion of organic acids (urate) and organic bases (Cr)
	Tubular catabolism	Breakdown and excretion of drugs (antibiotics, diuretics) and peptide hormones (most pituitary hormones, insulin, glucagon)
2. Electrolyte Balance	Tubular NaCl and water reabsorption	Controls volume status and osmolar balance
	Tubular K ⁺ secretion	Controls potassium concentration
	Tubular H ⁺ secretion	Acid-base balance
	HCO ₃ ⁻ synthesis and reabsorption	Acid-base balance
	Tubular Ca ²⁺ , Mg ²⁺ , PO ₄ ³⁻ transport	Alters Ca ²⁺ , Mg ²⁺ , PO ₄ ³⁻ homeostasis
3. Hormonal Synthesis	Erythropoietin production (cortex)	RBC production
	Vitamin D activation: 25(OH)D converted to 1,25(OH) ₂ D	Calcium homeostasis
	Renin production (juxtaglomerular apparatus)	Alters vascular resistance and aldosterone secretion
4. Blood Pressure Regulation	Na ⁺ excretion	Alters ECF volume
	Renin production	Alters vascular resistance
5. Glucose Homeostasis	Gluconeogenesis (from lactate, pyruvate, and amino acids)	Glucose supply maintained in prolonged starvation

The Glomerulus

- site where blood constituents are filtered through to the kidney tubules for excretion or reabsorption
- filtration occurs across the glomerular filtration barrier (endothelium, GBM, podocytes) into Bowman's space
- particles are selectively filtered by size (<60 kDa) and charge (negative charge repelled)
- consists of following cell types
 1. Mesangial cells
 - structural cells that support the vascular tree; they are also contractile and produce vasoactive substances to help control blood flow
 2. Capillary endothelial cells
 - one of the cells of the glomerular filtration barrier and help form the plasma filtration apparatus due to their sinusoidal nature and glycocalyx; contribute to the production of the GBM
 3. Visceral epithelium (podocytes)
 - one of the cells of the glomerular filtration barrier and help form the plasma filtration apparatus due to their interdigitated foot process that form slit diaphragms; contribute to the production of the GBM
 4. Parietal epithelium
 - lines the interior of Bowman's capsule and contains a podocyte progenitor population
 5. Juxtaglomerular cells
 - smooth muscle cell in lining of afferent arteriole; produce, store, and secrete renin as part of renal autoregulation

Acronyms

ACEI	angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor
ACR	albumin to creatinine ratio
ADH	antidiuretic hormone
AG	anion gap
AIN	acute interstitial nephritis
AKI	acute kidney injury
ANA	antinuclear antibody
ARB	angiotensin receptor blocker
ASA	acetylsalicylic acid
ASOT	anti-streptolysin-O titer
ATN	acute tubular necrosis
AVM	arteriovenous malformation
c-ANCA	cytoplasmic antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody
C&S	culture and sensitivity
CHF	congestive heart failure
CKD	chronic kidney disease
Cr	creatinine
CrCl	creatinine clearance
D5W	5% dextrose in water
DCT	distal convoluted tubule
DDAVP	1-desamino-8-d-arginine vasopressin
DI	diabetes insipidus
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
DKA	diabetic ketoacidosis
DM	diabetes mellitus
eGFR	estimated glomerular filtration rate
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
ESRD	end-stage renal disease
FF	filtration fraction
FGS	focal segmental glomerulosclerosis
GBM	glomerular basement membrane
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
GN	glomerulonephritis
HCTZ	hydrochlorothiazide
HPF	high power field
HSP	Henoch-Schönlein purpura
HTN	hypertension
HUS	hemolytic uremic syndrome
IVP	intravenous pyelogram
LOC	level of consciousness
MDRD	modification of diet in renal disease
NS	normal saline
NSAIDs	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
p-ANCA	perinuclear anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody
PCKD	polycystic kidney disease
PTH	parathyroid hormone
R&M	routine and microscopy
RAAS	renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system
RBF	renal blood flow
RPF	renal plasma flow
RCC	renal cell carcinoma
RPGN	rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis
RRT	renal replacement therapy
RTA	renal tubular acidosis
SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
TBW	total body water
TIN	tubulointerstitial nephritis
TTP	thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura
UAG	urine anion gap
UTI	urinary tract infection

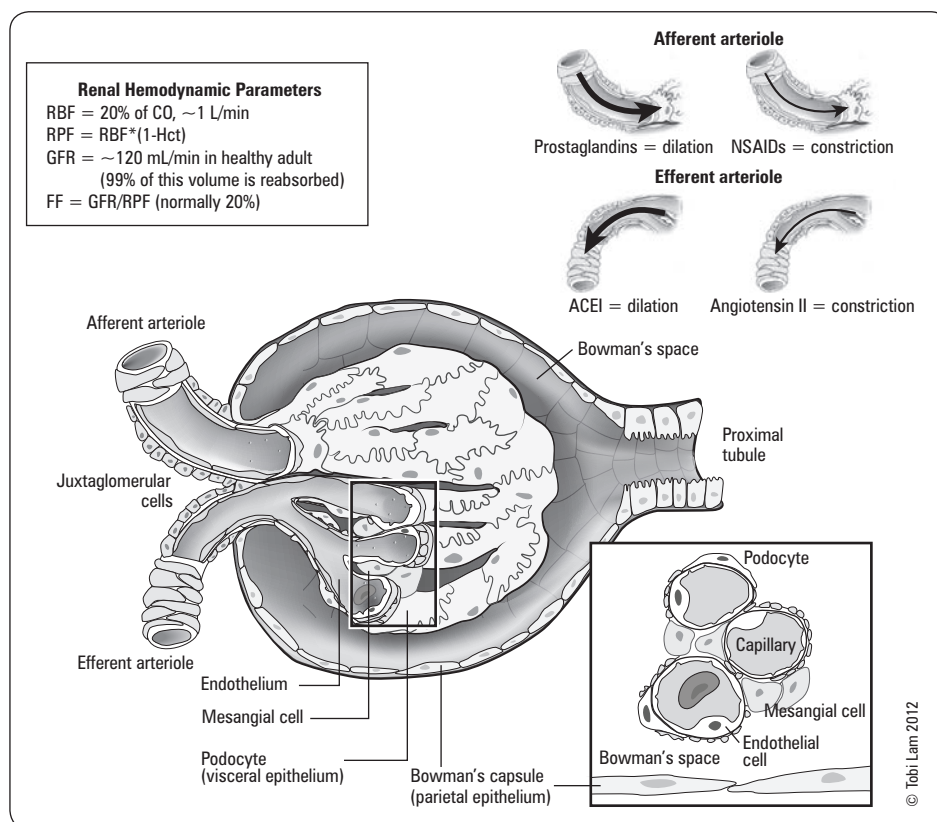


Figure 1. The glomerulus

The Renal Tubules

- reabsorption and secretion occur between the renal tubules and vasa recta forming urine for excretion
- each segment of the tubule selectively transports various solutes and water and is targeted by specific diuretics

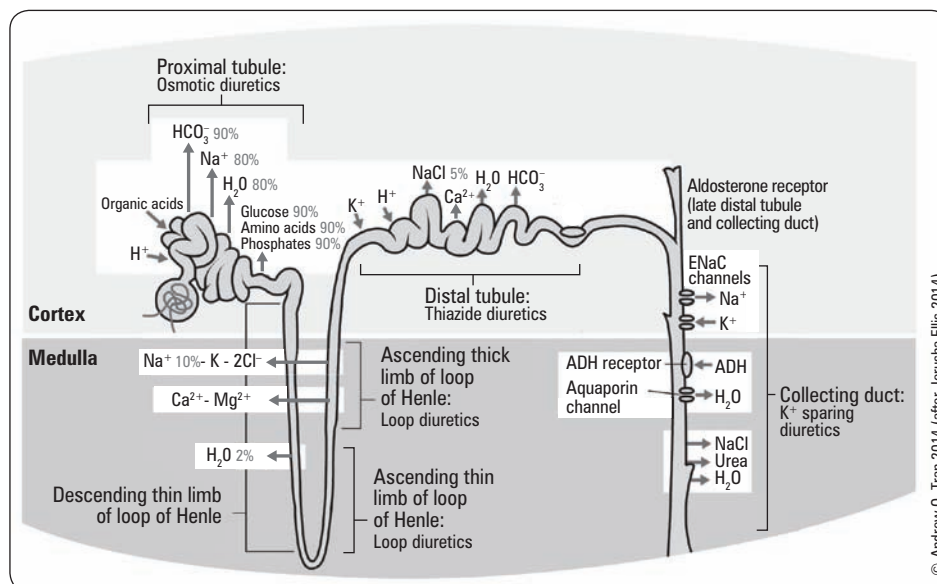


Figure 2. Tubular segments of the nephron

Renal Hemodynamics

- GFR
 - the rate of fluid transfer between glomerular capillaries and Bowman's space
 - 180 L/d, of which 99% is reabsorbed, giving a daily urine output of 1.0-1.5 L
 - normal urine output is >0.5 ml/kg/h in adults
 - GFR is highest in early adulthood, and decreases thereafter
- renal autoregulation maintains constant GFR over mean arterial pressures of 70-180 mmHg
- 2 mechanisms of autoregulation:
 - myogenic mechanism: release of vasoactive factors in response to changes in perfusion pressure (e.g. ↑ perfusion pressure → afferent arteriolar constriction → ↓ GFR)
 - tubuloglomerular feedback: changes in Na⁺ delivery to macula densa lead to changes in afferent arteriolar tone (e.g. increased delivery causes afferent constriction)
- FF
 - percentage of RPF filtered across the glomeruli
 - expressed as a ratio: FF = GFR/RPF; normal = 0.2 or 20%
 - angiotensin II constricts renal efferent arterioles, which increases FF thereby maintaining GFR
- renin is released from juxtaglomerular apparatus in response to decreased RPF



Glomerular Filtration Rate

$$GFR = K_f (\Delta P - \Delta \Pi)$$

K_f = ultrafiltration coefficient

ΔP = hydrostatic pressure difference between glomerular capillaries and Bowman's space

$\Delta \Pi$ = osmotic pressure difference between glomerular capillaries and Bowman's space

$\Delta P - \Delta \Pi$ = net outward pressure

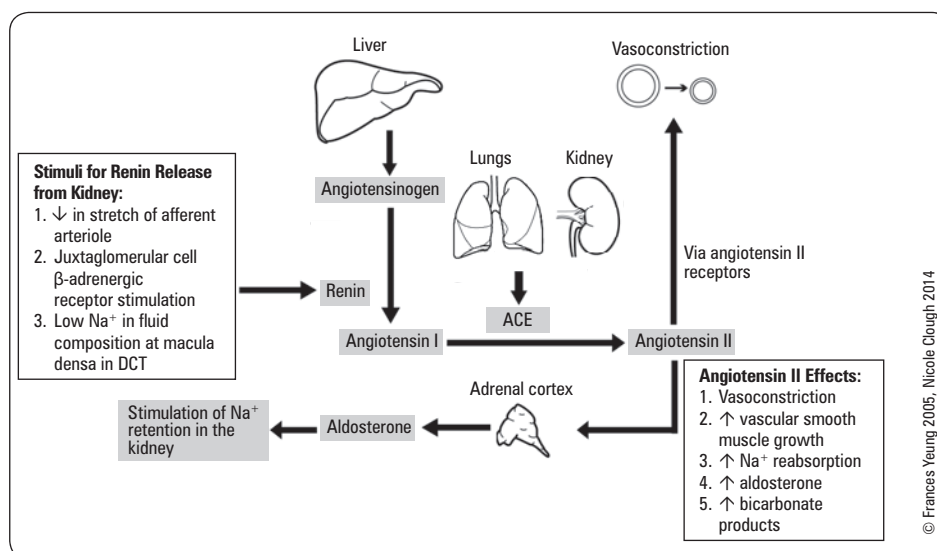


Figure 3. Stimuli for renin release

Assessment of Renal Function

Measurement of Renal Function

- GFR = rate of filtration of plasma by the glomeruli
- most renal functions decline in parallel with a decrease in GFR
- inulin clearance is the gold standard for measuring GFR, but very rarely used clinically
- clinically, GFR is estimated using serum creatinine concentration, [Cr]
- Cr is a metabolite of creatine (intermediate in muscle energy metabolism)
- Cr is freely filtered at the glomerulus with no tubular reabsorption
- tubular secretion varies based on level of renal function (10% to >50%)
- rate of production determined by muscle mass
- Cr filtered ≈ Cr excreted (at steady state)

Ways to Estimate GFR Using Serum Creatinine Concentration

1. Measure CrCl

- calculation provides reasonable estimate of GFR
- measure plasma [Cr], 24 h urine volume, and urine [Cr]
 - $GFR/d = (\text{urine [Cr]} \times \text{urine volume}/d) / (\text{plasma [Cr]})$
 - must use same units for urine [Cr], and plasma [Cr]

2. Estimate CrCl using Cockcroft-Gault formula

- serum Cr used along with age, gender, and weight (kg) to estimate GFR
- normal range is >90 mL/min (>1.5 mL/s)



$$Cr_{\text{filtered}} = Cr_{\text{excreted}}$$

$$[Cr]_{\text{plasma}} \times GFR = [Cr]_{\text{urine}} \times \text{urine flow rate (mL/min)}$$

$$GFR = \frac{[Cr]_{\text{urine}} \times \text{urine flow rate}}{[Cr]_{\text{plasma}}}$$



At steady state $[Cr]_{\text{serum}} \propto 1/CrCl$



Cockcroft-Gault Formula

$$CrCl \text{ (mL/min)} = \frac{(\text{weight in kg}) (140 - \text{age}) \times 1.23}{\text{serum creatinine (}\mu\text{mol/L)}}$$

Multiply above by 0.85 for females

3. Estimate GFR using MDRD formula

- most common way in which GFR is estimated (MDRD 7 equation)
- complex formula incorporating age, gender, serum Cr, and African descent, but does not include weight
- GFR is reported as mL/min/1.73 m² body surface area

4. Estimate GFR using CKD-EPI equation

- the best current equation
- calculated using serum Cr, age, sex, and race

Limitations of Using Serum Cr Measurements**1. must be in steady state**

- constant GFR and rate of production of Cr from muscles
- sudden injury may reduce GFR substantially, but it takes time for Cr to accumulate and then re-establish steady state
- clinical correlation: in AKI, the rise in Cr is often delayed

2. GFR must fall substantially before plasma [Cr] rises above normal laboratory range

- with progressive renal failure, remaining nephrons compensate with hyperfiltration
- GFR is relatively preserved despite significant structural damage

3. plasma [Cr] is influenced by the rate of Cr production

- lower production with smaller muscle mass (e.g. female, elderly, low weight)
 - for example, consider plasma [Cr] of 100 µmol/L (1.13 mg/dL) in both of these patients
 - 20 yr old man who weighs 100 kg, GFR = 144 mL/min
 - 80 yr old woman who weighs 50 kg, GFR = 30.6 mL/min
- clinical correlation: GFR decreases with age but would not be reflected as a rise in serum Cr due to the age-associated decline in muscle mass

4. tubular secretion of Cr increases as GFR decreases

- serum Cr and CrCl overestimate low GFR
- certain drugs (cimetidine, trimethoprim) interfere with Cr secretion

5. errors in Cr measurement

- very high bilirubin level causes [Cr] to be falsely low
- acetoacetate (a ketone body) and certain drugs (cefexitin) create falsely high [Cr]

Measurement of Urea Concentration

- urea is the major end-product of protein metabolism
- plasma urea concentration reflects renal function but should not be used alone as it is modified by a variety of other factors
- urea production reflects dietary intake of protein and catabolic rate; increased protein intake or catabolism (sepsis, trauma, GI bleed) causes urea level to rise
- ECF volume depletion causes a rise in urea independent of GFR or plasma [Cr]
- in addition to filtration, a significant amount of urea is reabsorbed along the tubule
- reabsorption is increased in hypernatremic states such as ECF volume depletion
- typical ratio of urea to [Cr] in serum is 1:12 in SI units (using mEq/L for urea and µmol/L for Cr)

**Cystatin C**

Cystatin C is a protease which is completely filtered by the glomerulus and is not affected by muscle mass; it is not currently used in clinical practice, but may be a more accurate way to measure renal function in the future, particularly in DM

**Clinical Settings in which Urea Level is Affected Independent of Renal Function****Disproportionate Increase in Urea**

- Volume depletion (prerenal azotemia)
- GI hemorrhage
- High protein diet
- Sepsis
- Catabolic state with tissue breakdown
- Corticosteroid or cytotoxic agents

Disproportionate Decrease in Urea

- Low protein diet
- Liver disease

Urinalysis

- use dipstick in freshly voided urine specimen to assess the following:

1. Specific Gravity

- ratio of the mass of equal volumes of urine/H₂O
- range is 1.001 to 1.030
- values <1.010 reflect dilute urine, values >1.020 reflect concentrated urine
- value usually 1.010 in ESRD (isosthenuria)

2. pH

- urine pH is normally between 4.5-7.0; if persistently alkaline, consider:
 - RTA
 - UTI with urease-producing bacteria (e.g. *Proteus*)

3. Glucose

- freely filtered at glomerulus and reabsorbed in proximal tubule
- causes of glucosuria include
 1. hyperglycemia >160-200 mg/dL (>9-11 mEq/L) leads to filtration that exceeds tubular resorption capacity
 2. increased GFR (e.g. pregnancy)
 3. proximal tubule dysfunction (e.g. Fanconi's syndrome)

4. Protein

- dipstick only detects albumin; other proteins (e.g. Bence-Jones, Ig, Tamm-Horsfall) may be missed
- microalbuminuria (defined as ≥2.0 mg/mEq Cr in males and ≥2.8 mg/mEq Cr in females) is not detected by standard dipstick (see *Diabetes*, NP28)
- sulfosalicylic acid detects all protein in urine by precipitation
- gold standard: 24 h timed urine collection for total protein

**24 h Urine Collection**

- Discard first morning specimen
- Collect all subsequent urine for the next 24 h
- Refrigerate between voids
- Collect second morning specimen

Clarity: Cloudiness may indicate infection

Color: usually pale yellow or amber, but may be colorless (diabetes insipidus, excess water intake), bright yellow (due to riboflavin ingestion or vitamin tablets), or dark yellow (concentrated urine in intravascular volume depletion)

**Estimating Urine Osmolality**

Last 2 digits of the specific gravity x 30
= urine osmolality approximately
(e.g. specific gravity of 1.020
= 600 mOsm)

5. Leukocyte Esterase

- enzyme found in WBC and detected by dipstick
- presence of WBCs indicates infection (e.g. UTI) or inflammation (e.g. AIN)

6. Nitrites

- nitrates in urine are converted by some bacteria to nitrites
- high specificity, low sensitivity for UTI

7. Ketones

- positive in alcoholic/diabetic ketoacidosis, prolonged starvation, fasting

8. Hemoglobin

- positive in hemoglobinuria (hemolysis), myoglobinuria (rhabdomyolysis), and true hematuria (RBCs seen on microscopy)



Nitrite Negative Bacteria

- *Enterococci*
- *Staphylococci*

Urine Microscopy

- centrifuge urine specimen for 3-5 min, discard supernatant, resuspend sediment and plate on slide
- shaking tube vigorously may disrupt casts

Table 2. Comparison of Urinary Sediment Findings

	Active Sediment = Suggestive of Parenchymal Kidney Disease	Bland Sediment = Less Likely Parenchymal Kidney Disease
Any one or more of the following seen on microscopy	Red cell casts White cell casts Muddy-brown granular or epithelial cell casts >2 red cells per HPF >4 white cells per HPF	Only hyaline casts <2 red cells per HPF <4 white cells per HPF Small quantities of crystals Small amount of bacteria

1. CELLS

Erythrocytes

- normal range = up to 2-3 RBCs per HPF
- hematuria = greater than 2-3 RBCs per HPF
- dysmorphic RBCs and/or RBC casts suggest glomerular bleeding (e.g. proliferative GN)
- isomorphic RBCs, no casts suggest extraglomerular bleeding (e.g. bladder Ca)

Leukocytes

- normal range = up to 3 WBCs per HPF
- pyuria = greater than 3 WBCs per HPF
- indicates inflammation or infection
- if persistent sterile pyuria present (i.e. negative culture), consider: chronic urethritis, prostatitis, interstitial nephritis, calculi, papillary necrosis, renal TB, viral infections

Eosinophils

- detected using Wright's or Hansel's stain (not affected by urine pH)
- consider AIN, atheroembolic disease

Oval Fat Bodies

- renal tubular cells filled with lipid droplets
- seen in heavy proteinuria (e.g. nephrotic syndrome)

2. CASTS

- cylindrical structures formed by intratubular precipitation of Tamm-Horsfall mucoprotein; cells may be trapped within the matrix of protein

Table 3. Interpretation of Casts

Hyaline casts	Physiologic (concentrated urine, fever, exercise)
RBC casts	Glomerular bleeding (GN, vasculitis)
WBC casts	Infection (pyelonephritis) Inflammation (interstitial nephritis)
Pigmented granular casts (heme granular casts, muddy brown)	ATN Acute GN
Fatty casts	Heavy proteinuria (>3.5 g/d)



Positive dipstick for leukocyte esterase and nitrites is 94% specific for diagnosing a UTI



3. CRYSTALS

- uric acid: consider acid urine, hyperuricosuria
- calcium phosphate: alkaline urine
- calcium oxalate: consider hyperoxaluria, ethylene glycol poisoning
- sulfur: sulfa-containing antibiotics

Urine Biochemistry

- commonly measure: Na^+ , K^+ , Cl^- , osmolality, and pH
- no 'normal' values; electrolyte excretion depends on intake and current physiological state
- results must be interpreted in the context of a patient's current state
 1. ECF volume depletion: expect low urine $[\text{Na}^+]$ (kidneys should be retaining Na^+)
 - ♦ urine $[\text{Na}^+] (>40 \text{ mEq/L})$ suggests a renal problem or the action of a diuretic
 - ♦ urine $[\text{Na}^+] (<20 \text{ mEq/L})$ suggests a prerenal problem
 2. daily urinary potassium excretion rate should be decreased ($<20 \text{ mEq/d}$) in hypokalemia
 - ♦ if higher than 20 mEq/d , suggests renal contribution to hypokalemia
- osmolality is useful to estimate the kidney's concentrating ability
- FE_{Na} refers to the fractional excretion of Na^+
 - $\text{FE}_{\text{Na}} = \text{urine } [\text{Na}^+] \times \text{plasma } [\text{Cr}] / (\text{plasma } [\text{Na}^+] \times \text{urine } [\text{Cr}])$
 - $\text{FE}_{\text{Na}} < 1\%$ suggests the pathology is prerenal

Examples of Common Urine Electrolyte Abnormalities

- high urine $[\text{Na}^+] (>40 \text{ mEq/L})$ in the setting of AKI: suggests renal disease
- high urine $[\text{Na}^+] (>40 \text{ mEq/L})$ in the setting of hyponatremia: generally from causes such as diuretics, tubular disease (e.g. Bartter's syndrome), SIADH
- additionally, urine pH is useful to grossly assess renal acidification
 - low pH (<5.5) in the presence of low serum pH is an appropriate renal response
 - a high pH in this setting might indicate a renal acidification defect (e.g. RTA)



Fractional Excretion of Sodium

$$\text{FE}_{\text{Na}} = \frac{[\text{Na}^+]_{\text{urine}} \times [\text{Cr}]_{\text{plasma}}}{[\text{Na}^+]_{\text{plasma}} \times [\text{Cr}]_{\text{urine}}} \times 100$$

Many formulas used in nephrology are derived from the division of two fractions, each of which compare a urine and plasma concentration (e.g. $U_1/P_1 \div U_2/P_2$); in the case of FE_{Na} , it is $U_{\text{Na}}/P_{\text{Na}} \div U_{\text{Cr}}/P_{\text{Cr}}$, which then gives the above equation

Electrolyte Disorders

Sodium Homeostasis

- hyponatremia and hypernatremia are disorders of water balance
 - hyponatremia usually suggests too much water in the ECF relative to Na^+
 - hypernatremia usually suggests too little water in the ECF relative to Na^+
- solutes (such as Na^+ , K^+ , glucose) that cannot freely traverse the plasma membrane contribute to effective osmolality and induce transcellular shifts of water
 - water moves out of cells in response to increased ECF osmolality
 - water moves into cells in response to decreased ECF osmolality
- ECF volume is determined by Na^+ content rather than concentration
 - Na^+ deficiency leads to ECF volume contraction
 - Na^+ excess leads to ECF volume expansion
- clinical signs and symptoms of hyponatremia and hypernatremia are secondary to cells (especially in the brain) shrinking (hypernatremia) or swelling (hyponatremia)



Common Electrolytes

- Sodium (Na^+) 135-145 mEq/L
- Potassium (K^+) 3.5-5 mEq/L
- Chloride (Cl^-) 95-105 mEq/L
- Bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) 18-23 mEq/L

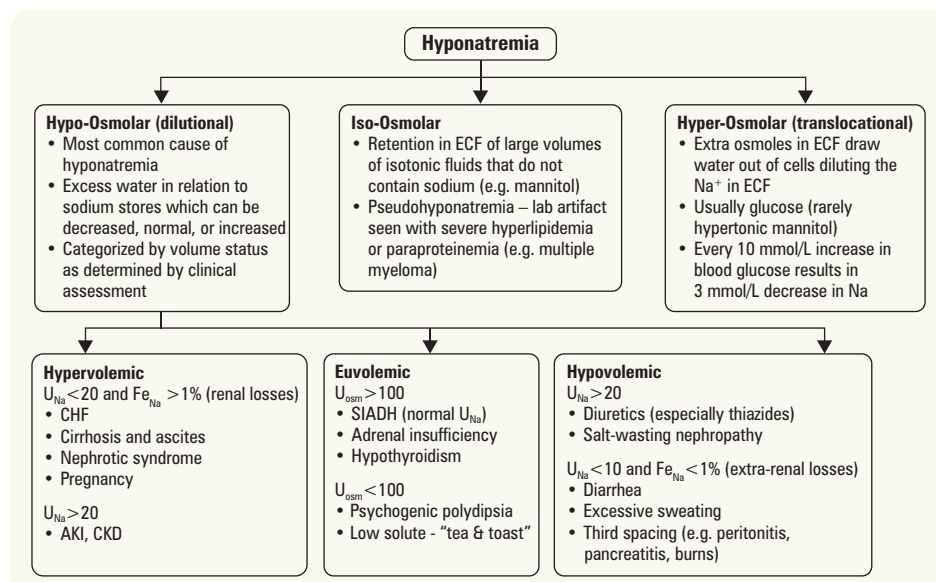
Table 4. Clinical Assessment of ECF Volume (Total Body Na^+)

Fluid Compartment	Hypovolemic	Hypervolemic
Intravascular		
JVP	Decreased	Increased
Blood pressure	Orthostatic drop	Normal to increased
Auscultation of heart	Tachycardia	S3
Auscultation of lungs	Normal	Inspiratory crackles
Interstitial		
Skin turgor	Decreased	Normal/increased
Edema (dependent)	Absent	Present
Other		
Urine output	Decreased*	Variable
Body weight	Decreased	Increased
Hematocrit, serum protein	Increased	Decreased

*If there is a renal abnormality (e.g. osmotic diuresis), the urine output may be increased despite the presence of hypovolemia

Hyponatremia

- hyponatremia: serum $[Na^+]$ <135 mEq/L
- can be associated with hypo-osmolality (most common), iso-osmolality, or hyperosmolality
- consider if it is “appropriate” vs. “inappropriate” ADH secretion
- if appropriate ADH secretion, is it real vs. effective volume loss?



If the urine osmolality is unknown, assume the urine is hypo-osmolar/dilute

Figure 4. Approach to hyponatremia

Signs and Symptoms

- depend on degree of hyponatremia and more importantly, velocity of progression from onset
- acute hyponatremia (<24 -48 h) more likely to be symptomatic
- chronic hyponatremia (>24 -48 h) less likely to be symptomatic due to adaptation
 - adaptation: normalization of brain volume through loss of cellular electrolytes (within hours) and organic osmolytes (within days)
 - adaptation is responsible for the risks associated with overly rapid correction
- neurologic symptoms predominate (secondary to cerebral edema): headache, nausea, malaise, lethargy, weakness, muscle cramps, anorexia, somnolence, disorientation, personality changes, depressed reflexes, decreased LOC

Complications

- seizures, coma, respiratory arrest, permanent brain damage, brainstem herniation, death
- risk of brain cell shrinkage with rapid correction of hyponatremia
 - can develop osmotic demyelination of pontine and extrapontine neurons; may be irreversible (e.g. central pontine myelinolysis: cranial nerve palsies, quadriplegia, decreased LOC)

Risk Factors for Osmotic Demyelination

- rise in serum $[Na^+]$ with correction >8 mEq/L/d if chronic hyponatremia
- associated hypokalemia
- if patient with hyponatremia and hypovolemia is given large volume of isotonic fluid (ADH is stimulated by hypovolemia; when hypovolemia is corrected, the ADH level falls suddenly causing sudden brisk water diuresis, and therefore rapid rise in serum Na^+ level)

Investigations

- ECF volume status assessment (see Table 4)
- serum electrolytes, glucose, Cr
- serum osmolality, urine osmolality
- urine Na^+ (urine $Na^+ < 10$ -20 mEq/L suggests volume depletion as the cause of hyponatremia)
- assess for causes of SIADH (see Table 6)
- TSH, free T4, and cortisol levels
- consider CXR and possibly CT chest if suspect pulmonary cause of SIADH (e.g. small cell lung cancer)
- consider CT head if suspect CNS cause



Central Pontine Myelinolysis

- Cranial nerve palsies
- Quadriplegia
- Decreased LOC



HypOnatremia = swOllen cells
 HyperNatremia = shRunken cells

Treatment of Hyponatremia

- general measures for all patients
 - 1) treat underlying cause (e.g. restore ECF volume if volume depleted, remove offending drug, treat pain, nausea, etc.)
 - 2) restrict free water intake
 - 3) promote free water loss
 - 4) carefully monitor serum Na^+ , urine volume, and urine tonicity (e.g. high output of dilute urine may be a sign of impending rapid serum sodium correction)
 - 5) frequently ensure correction is not occurring too rapidly
 - monitor urine output frequently: high output of dilute urine is the first sign of dangerously rapid correction of hyponatremia

A. Definitely Acute (known to have developed over <24-48 h)

- commonly occurs in hospital (dilute IV fluid, post-operative increased ADH)
- less risk from rapid correction since adaptation has not fully occurred
- if symptomatic
 - correct rapidly with 3% NaCl 1-2 cc/kg/h up to serum $[\text{Na}^+] = 125\text{-}130 \text{ mEq/L}$
 - may need furosemide to address volume overload
- if asymptomatic, treatment depends on severity
 - if marked fall in plasma $[\text{Na}^+]$, treat as symptomatic

B. Chronic or Unknown

1. if severe symptoms (seizures or decreased LOC)
 - must partially correct acutely
 - aim for increase of Na^+ by 1-2 mEq/L/h for 4-6 h
 - limit total rise to 8 mEq/L in 24 h
 - IV 3% NaCl at 1-2 cc/kg/h
 - may need furosemide
2. if asymptomatic
 - water restrict to <1 L/d fluid intake
 - consider IV 0.9% NS + furosemide (reduces urine osmolality, augments excretion of H_2O)
 - consider NaCl tablet
3. refractory
 - furosemide and oral salt tablets
 - oral urea (osmotic aquaresis)
 - V2 receptor antagonists (e.g. tolvaptan)
4. always pay attention to patient's ECF volume status – if already volume-expanded, unlikely to give NaCl; if already volume-depleted, almost never appropriate to give furosemide

C. Options for Treatment of Overly-Rapid Correction

- give water (IV D5W)
- give ADH to stop water diuresis (DDAVP 1-2 μg IV)

Impact of IV Solution on Serum $[\text{Na}^+]$

- formula to estimate the change in serum $[\text{Na}^+]$ caused by retention of 1 L of any infusate
 $[\text{TBW} = (\text{for men}) 0.6 \times \text{wt}(\text{kg}); (\text{for women}) 0.5 \times \text{wt}(\text{kg})]$

$$\text{change in serum } [\text{Na}^+] = \frac{\text{infusate } [\text{Na}^+] - \text{serum } [\text{Na}^+]}{\text{TBW} + 1 \text{ L}}$$

- formula assumes there are no losses of water or electrolytes

SYNDROME OF INAPPROPRIATE ANTIDIURETIC HORMONE SECRETION

1. urine that is inappropriately concentrated for the serum osmolality
2. high urine sodium (>20-40 mEq/L)
3. high FE_{Na}



Beware of Rapid Correction of Hyponatremia

- Inadvertent rapid correction of hyponatremia can easily occur (e.g. patient with hyponatremia due to SIADH from nausea)
- Anti-emetic given for relief of hyponatremia-induced nausea
- ADH quickly turned off in the absence of nausea, the kidneys rapidly excrete the excess free water, and the serum $[\text{Na}^+]$ rises rapidly
- Patient at risk of osmotic demyelination
- High output dilute urine (>100 cc/h, <100 mOsm/L) in the setting of hyponatremia is usually the first sign of dangerously rapid correction of serum sodium



Correction of Na^+ in hyponatremia should not exceed 8 mEq/L/24 h unless definitely known to be <24-48 h duration; frequent monitoring of serum Na^+ and urine output is essential



Concentration of Na^+ in Common Infusates

- $[\text{Na}^+]$ in 0.45% NaCl = 77 mEq/L
- $[\text{Na}^+]$ in 0.9% NaCl = 154 mEq/L
- $[\text{Na}^+]$ in 3% NaCl = 513 mEq/L
- $[\text{Na}^+]$ in 5% NaCl = 855 mEq/L
- $[\text{Na}^+]$ in Ringer's lactate = 130 mEq/L
- $[\text{Na}^+]$ in D5W = 0

Table 5. Disorders Associated with SIADH

Tumor	Pulmonary	CNS	Drugs	Miscellaneous
Small cell cancer Bronchogenic carcinoma Pancreatic adenocarcinoma Hodgkin's lymphoma Thymoma Leukemia	Pneumonia Lung abscess TB Acute respiratory failure Asthma COPD Positive pressure ventilation	Mass lesion Encephalitis Subarachnoid hemorrhage Stroke Head trauma Acute psychosis Acute intermittent porphyria	Antidepressants TCAs SSRIs Antineoplastics Vincristine Cyclophosphamide Anti-epileptics Carbamazepine Barbiturates Chlorpropamide ACEI Other DDAVP Oxytocin Nicotine	Post-operative state Pain Severe nausea HIV



Hypernatremia

- hypernatremia: serum $[\text{Na}^+] > 145 \text{ mEq/L}$
- too little water relative to total body Na^+ ; always a hyperosmolar state
- usually due to NET water loss, rarely due to hypertonic Na^+ gain
- less common than hyponatremia because patients are protected against hypernatremia by thirst and release of ADH

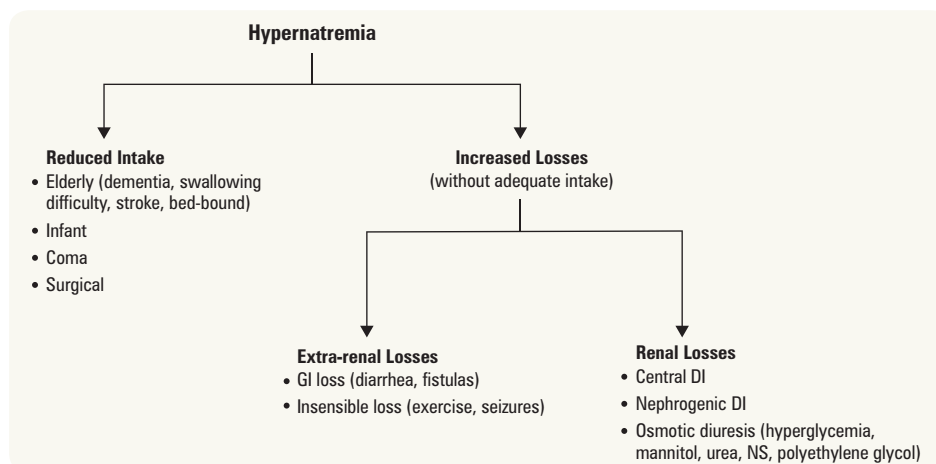


Figure 5. Approach to hypernatremia

Signs and Symptoms

- with acute hypernatremia no time for adaptation, therefore more likely to be symptomatic
- adaptive response: cells import and generate new osmotically active particles to normalize size
- due to brain cell shrinkage: altered mental status, weakness, neuromuscular irritability, focal neurologic deficits, seizures, coma, death
- \pm polyuria, thirst, signs of hypovolemia

Complications

- increased risk of vascular rupture resulting in intracranial hemorrhage
- rapid correction may lead to cerebral edema due to ongoing brain hyperosmolality

Treatment of Hypernatremia

- general measures for all patients
 - give free water (oral or IV)
 - treat underlying cause
 - monitor serum Na^+ frequently to ensure correction is not occurring too rapidly
- if evidence of hemodynamic instability, must first correct volume depletion with NS bolus
- loss of water is often accompanied by loss of Na^+ , but a proportionately larger water loss
- use formula to calculate free water H_2O deficit and replace
- encourage patient to drink pure water, as oral route is preferred for fluid administration
- if unable to replace PO or NG, correct H_2O deficit with hypotonic IV solution (IV D5W, 0.45% NS [half normal saline], or 3.3% dextrose with 0.3% NaCl ["2/3 and 1/3"])
- use formula (see [Hyponatremia, NP8](#)) to estimate expected change in serum Na^+ with 1 L infusate
- aim to lower $[\text{Na}^+]$ by no more than 12 mEq/L in 24 h (0.5 mEq/L/h)
- must also provide maintenance fluids and replace ongoing losses
- general rule: give 2 cc/kg/h of free water to correct serum $[\text{Na}^+]$ by about 0.5 mEq/L/h or 12 mEq/L/d



H₂O Deficit and TBW Equations

- $\text{TBW} = 0.6 \times \text{wt (kg) men}$
 $\text{TBW} = 0.5 \times \text{wt (kg) women}$
- $\text{H}_2\text{O deficit} = \text{TBW} \times ([\text{Na}^+]_{\text{plasma}} - 140) / 140$



Correction of serum $[\text{Na}^+]$ in hypernatremia should not exceed 12 mEq/L/24 h



1 L D5W approximately equals 1 L of free water
1 L 0.45% NS approximately equals 500 mL of free water

DIABETES INSIPIDUS

- collecting tubule is impermeable to water due to absence of ADH or impaired response to ADH
- defect in central release of ADH (central DI) or renal response to ADH (nephrogenic DI)

Etiology

- central DI: neurosurgery, granulomatous diseases, trauma, vascular events, and malignancy
- nephrogenic DI: lithium (most common), hypokalemia, hypercalcemia, and congenital

Diagnosis

- urine osmolality inappropriately low in patient with hypernatremia ($U_{osm} < 300$ mOsm/kg)
- serum vasopressin concentration may be absent, low (central), or elevated (nephrogenic)
- dehydration test: H_2O deprivation until loss of 3% of body weight or until urine osmolality rises above plasma osmolality; if urine osmolality remains < 300 (fails to concentrate urine), most likely DI
- administer DDAVP (exogenous ADH) (10 μ g intranasally or 2 μ g SC or IV)
 - central DI: diagnosed if there is rise in urine osmolality, fall in urine volume
 - treat with DDAVP
 - nephrogenic DI: exogenous ADH fails to concentrate urine as kidneys do not respond
 - treat with water (IV D5W or PO water), thiazides may help as well (reduced ECF volume stimulates proximal tubular reabsorption of sodium and water, leading to less delivery of glomerular filtrate to ADH sensitive parts of renal tubule, and therefore lower urine volume results)

Potassium Homeostasis

- approximately 98% of total body K^+ stores are intracellular
- normal serum K^+ ranges from 3.5-5.0 mEq/L
- in response to K^+ load, rapid removal from ECF is necessary to prevent life-threatening hyperkalemia
- insulin, catecholamines, and acid-base status influence K^+ movement into cells
 - aldosterone has a minor effect
- potassium excretion is regulated at the distal nephron
 - K^+ excretion = urine flow rate \times urine $[K^+]$

Factors which Increase Renal K^+ Loss

- hyperkalemia
- increased distal tubular urine flow rate and Na^+ delivery (thiazides and loop diuretics)
- increased aldosterone activates epithelial sodium channel in cortical collecting duct, causing Na^+ reabsorption and K^+ excretion
- metabolic alkalosis
- hypomagnesemia
- increased non-reabsorbable anions in tubule lumen: HCO_3^- , penicillin, salicylate



Na^+ = predominating extracellular ion
 K^+ = predominating intracellular ion

Hypokalemia

- serum $[K^+] < 3.5$ mEq/L

Signs and Symptoms

- usually asymptomatic, particularly when mild (3.0-3.5 mEq/L)
- N/V, fatigue, generalized weakness, myalgia, muscle cramps, and constipation
- if severe: arrhythmias, muscle necrosis, and rarely paralysis with eventual respiratory impairment
- arrhythmias occur at variable levels of K^+ ; more likely if digoxin use, hypomagnesemia, or CAD
- ECG changes are more predictive of clinical picture than serum $[K^+]$
 - U waves most important (low amplitude wave following a T wave)
 - flattened or inverted T waves
 - depressed ST segment
 - prolongation of Q-T interval
 - with severe hypokalemia: P-R prolongation, wide QRS, arrhythmias; increases risk of digitalis toxicity

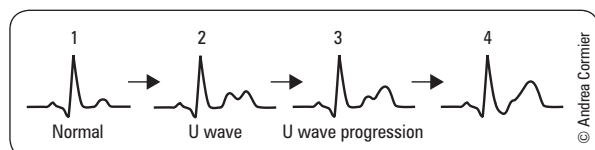


Figure 6. ECG changes in hypokalemia



Approach to Hypokalemia

1. emergency measures: obtain ECG; if potentially life threatening, begin treatment immediately
2. rule out transcellular shifts of K^+ as cause of hypokalemia
3. assess contribution of dietary K^+ intake
4. spot urine K:Cr (should be less than 1 in setting of hypokalemia)
 - if <1 consider GI loss
 - if >1 consider a renal loss
5. consider 24 h K^+ excretion
6. if renal K^+ loss, check BP and acid-base status
7. may also assess plasma renin and aldosterone levels, serum $[Mg^{2+}]$

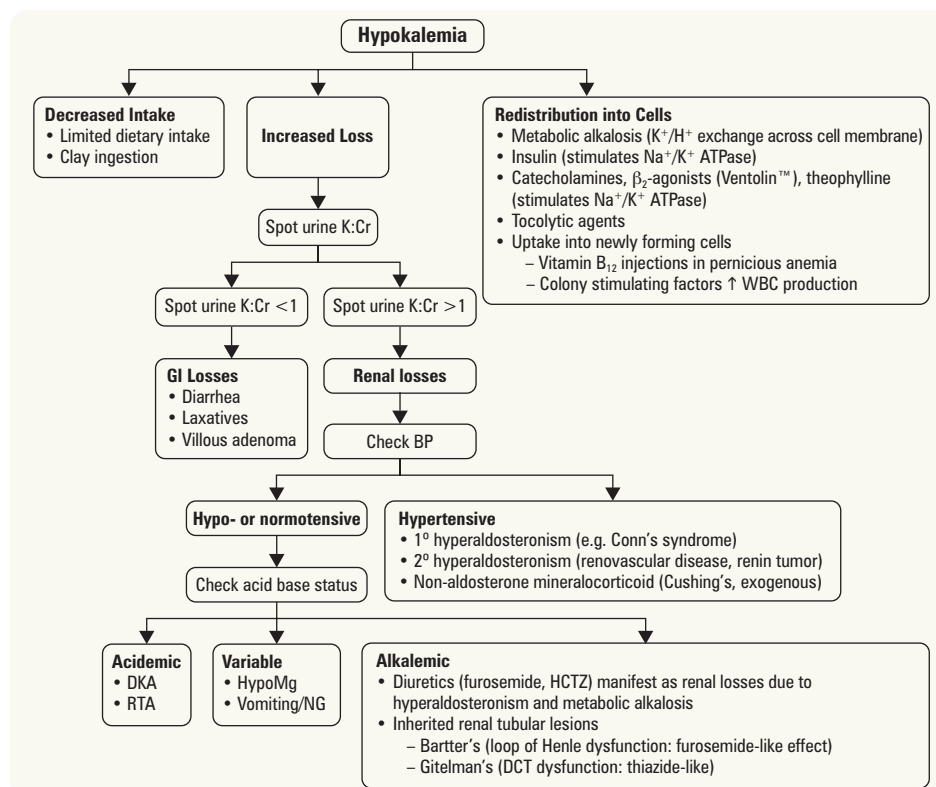


Figure 7. Approach to hypokalemia

Treatment

- treat underlying cause
- if true K^+ deficit, potassium repletion (decrease in serum $[K^+]$ of 1 mEq is roughly 100-200 mEq of total body loss)
 - oral sources – food, tablets (K-Tab™), KCl liquid solutions; preferable route if the patient tolerates PO medications
 - IV – usually KCl in saline solutions, avoid dextrose solutions (may exacerbate hypokalemia via insulin release)
 - max 40 mEq/L via peripheral vein, 60 mEq/L via central vein, max infusion 20 mEq/h
- K^+ -sparing diuretics (triamterene, spironolactone, amiloride) can prevent renal K^+ loss
- restore Mg^{2+} if necessary
- if urine output and renal function are impaired, correct with extreme caution
- risk of hyperkalemia with potassium replacement especially high in elderly, diabetics, and patients with decreased renal function
- beware of excessive potassium repletion, especially if transcellular shift caused hypokalemia



- Hypokalemia often accompanied by metabolic alkalosis
- Potassium leaves cells, replaced by H^+
- Kidney tubular cells see high H^+ , think acidosis and increase ammonium synthesis and excretion
- Increase in bicarbonate generation



Hyperkalemia

- serum $[K^+] > 5.0$ mEq/L

Signs and Symptoms

- usually asymptomatic but may develop nausea, palpitations, muscle weakness, muscle stiffness, paresthesias, areflexia, ascending paralysis, and hypoventilation
- impaired renal ammoniogenesis and metabolic acidosis

- ECG changes and cardiotoxicity (do not correlate well with serum $[K^+]$)
 - peaked and narrow T waves
 - decreased amplitude and eventual loss of P waves
 - prolonged PR interval
 - widening of QRS and eventual merging with T wave (sine-wave pattern)
 - AV block
 - ventricular fibrillation, asystole

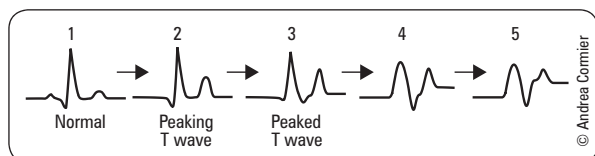


Figure 8. ECG changes in hyperkalemia

Table 6. Causes of Hyperkalemia

Factitious	Increased Intake	Transcellular Shift	Decreased Excretion
Sample hemolysis* Sample taken from vein where IV KCl is running Prolonged use of tourniquet Leukocytosis (extreme) Thrombocytosis (extreme)	Diet KCl tabs IV KCl Salt substitute	Intravascular hemolysis Rhabdomyolysis Tumor lysis syndrome Insulin deficiency Acidemia Drugs <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • β-blockers • Digitalis overdose (blocks Na^+/K^+ ATPase) • Succinylcholine 	Decreased GFR <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Renal failure • Low effective circulating volume • NSAIDs in renal insufficiency Normal GFR but hypoaldosteronism

*Most common

Table 7. Causes of Hyperkalemia with Normal GFR

Decreased Aldosterone Stimulus (low renin, low aldosterone)	Decreased Aldosterone Production (normal renin, low aldosterone)	Aldosterone Resistance (decreased tubular response)
Associated with diabetic nephropathy, NSAIDs, chronic interstitial nephritis, HIV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adrenal insufficiency of any cause (e.g. Addison's disease, AIDS, metastatic cancer) • ACEI • ARBs • Heparin • Congenital adrenal hyperplasia with 21-hydroxylase deficiency 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • K^+-sparing drugs • Spironolactone • Amiloride • Triamterene Renal tubulointerstitial disease

Approach to Hyperkalemia

1. emergency measures: obtain ECG, if life threatening begin treatment immediately
2. rule out factitious hyperkalemia; repeat blood test
3. hold exogenous K^+ (PO and IV) and any K^+ retaining medications
4. assess potential causes of transcellular shift
5. estimate GFR (calculate CrCl using Cockcroft-Gault)

Treatment

- acute therapy is warranted if ECG changes are present, or if patient is symptomatic
- tailor therapy to severity of increase in $[K^+]$ and ECG changes
 - $[K^+] < 6.5$ and normal ECG
 - ♦ treat underlying cause, stop K^+ intake, increase the loss of K^+ via urine and/or GI tract
 - $[K^+]$ between 6.5 and 7.0, no ECG changes: add insulin to above regimen
 - $[K^+] > 7.0$ and/or ECG changes: first priority is to protect the heart, add calcium gluconate to above

1. Protect the Heart

- calcium gluconate 1-2 amps (10 mL of 10% solution) IV
- antagonizes cardiac toxicity of hyperkalemia, protects cardiac conduction system, no effect on serum $[K^+]$
- onset within minutes, lasts 30-60 min (may require repeat doses during treatment course of hyperkalemia)



In patients with DM and increased $[K^+]$ and hyperglycemia, often just giving insulin to restore euglycemia is sufficient to correct the hyperkalemia



Treatment of Hyperkalemia

C BIG K DROP

C – Calcium gluconate

BIG – β -agonist, Bicarb, Insulin, Glucose

K – Kayexalate®

DROP – Diuretics, Dialysis

2. Shift K^+ into Cells

- regular insulin (Insulin R) 10-20 units IV, with 1-2 amp D50W (give D50W before insulin)
 - onset of action 15-30 min, lasts 1-2 h
 - monitor capillary blood glucose q1h because of risk of hypoglycemia
 - can repeat every 4-6 h
 - caution giving D50W before insulin if hyperkalemia is severe as it can cause a serious arrhythmia
- $NaHCO_3$ 1-3 ampules (given as 3 ampules of 7.5% or 8.4% $NaHCO_3$ in 1L D5W)
 - onset of action 15-30 min, transient effect, drives K^+ into cells in exchange for H^+
 - more effective if patient has metabolic acidosis
- β_2 -agonist (Ventolin®) in nebulized form (dose = 2 cc or 10 mg inhaled) or 0.5 mg IV
 - onset of action 30-90 min, stimulates Na^+/K^+ ATPase
 - caution if patient has heart disease as may result in tachycardia

3. Enhance K^+ Removal from Body

- via urine (preferred approach)
 - furosemide (≥ 40 mg IV), may need IV NS to avoid hypovolemia
 - fludrocortisone (synthetic mineralocorticoid) if suspect aldosterone deficiency
- via gastrointestinal tract
 - cation-exchange resins: calcium resonium or sodium polystyrene sulfonate (Kayexalate®)
 - increasingly falling out of favor due to risk of colonic necrosis; works by binding Na^+ in exchange for K^+ , and controversial how much K^+ is actually removed
 - lactulose PO to avoid constipation (must ensure that patient has a bowel movement after resin is administered – main benefit may be the diarrhea caused by lactulose)
 - Kayexalate® enemas with tap water
- dialysis (renal failure, life threatening hyperkalemia unresponsive to therapy)

Acid-Base Disorders

- acid-base homeostasis influences protein function and can critically affect tissue and organ function with consequences to cardiovascular, respiratory, metabolic, and CNS function
- see [Respirology, R5](#) for more information on respiratory acidosis/alkalosis
- normal concentration of HCO_3^- = 24 mEq/L (range: 22-30)
- normal pCO_2 = 40 mmHg (range: 36-44)
- each acid base disorder has an appropriate compensation
 - inadequate compensation or overcompensation can indicate the presence of a second acid-base disorder (e.g. in metabolic acidosis, inadequate compensation means there is also respiratory acidosis; overcompensation means there is also respiratory alkalosis)

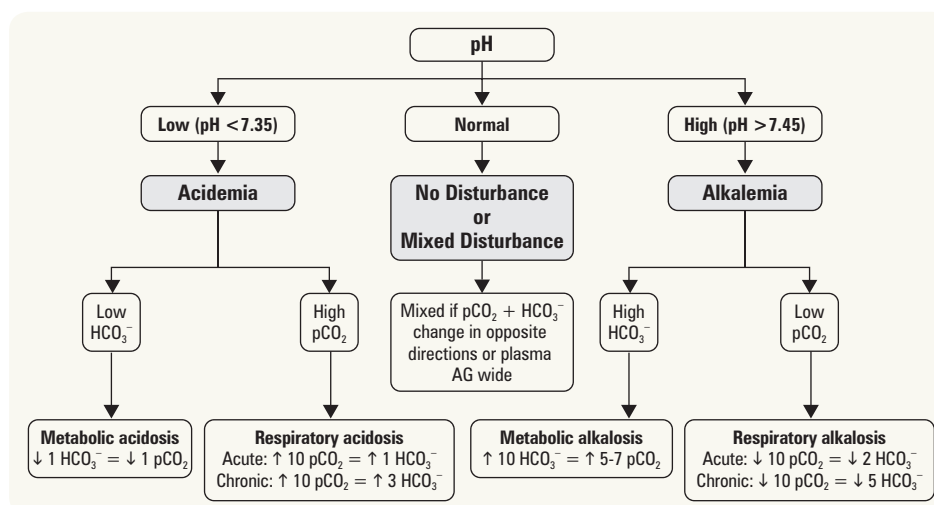


Figure 9. Approach to acid-base disorders

Approach

1. Identify the primary disturbance (see Figure 8)

- respiratory acidosis, metabolic acidosis, respiratory alkalosis, metabolic alkalosis

2. Evaluate compensation. If compensation is not appropriate, a second acid-base disorder is likely present

- compensation occurs in the same direction as the primary disturbance
- metabolic acidosis: for every 1 mEq/L decrease in HCO_3^- , pCO_2 should decrease by 1 mmHg
- metabolic alkalosis: for every 10 mEq/L increase in HCO_3^- , pCO_2 should increase by 5-7 mmHg
- respiratory acidosis: for every 10 mmHg increase in pCO_2 , HCO_3^- should increase by 1 (acute) or 3 (chronic) mEq/L
- respiratory alkalosis: for every 10 mmHg decrease in pCO_2 , HCO_3^- should decrease by 2 (acute) or 5 (chronic) mEq/L

3. Calculate Plasma AG

- $\text{AG} = [\text{Na}^+] - ([\text{HCO}_3^-] + [\text{Cl}^-])$
- baseline = 12, range 10-14 mEq/L
- AG can be altered by plasma albumin level: for each 10 g/L fall in albumin, lower baseline AG by 3 mEq/L (e.g. if plasma [albumin] = 20 g/L, expect AG = 6 mEq/L)

4. If AG elevated, compare increase in AG with decrease in HCO_3^-

- if increase in AG < decrease in HCO_3^- , there is a coexisting non-AG metabolic acidosis
- if increase in AG > decrease HCO_3^- , there is a coexisting metabolic alkalosis

5. Calculate Osmolar Gap

- osmolar gap = measured osmolality – calculated osmolality
 - calculated osmolality = $(2 \times [\text{Na}^+]) + [\text{urea}] + [\text{glucose}]$ (all units are in mEq/L)
 - normal osmolar gap <10
 - if AG >10, consider: methanol poisoning, ethylene glycol poisoning, or another cause of acidosis plus ethanol ingestion



Useful Equations

- $\text{AG} = [\text{Na}^+] - [\text{Cl}^-] - [\text{HCO}_3^-]$ (normal range = 10-14 mEq/L)
- Calculated serum osmolality = $2\text{Na} + \text{BUN}/2.8 + \text{glucose}/18$



Causes of Osmolar Gap

- Methanol
- Ethylene glycol
- Ethanol
- Polyethylene glycol
- Mannitol
- Sorbitol

Metabolic Acidosis

Etiology and Pathophysiology

1. Increased AG Metabolic Acidosis (4 types)

- Lactic acidosis (2 types)
 - L-lactic acid
 - Type A: due to tissue hypoperfusion (any cause of shock), ischemic bowel, profound hypoxemia
 - Type B: non-hypoxic – multiple causes; the most common is failure to metabolize normally produced lactic acid in the liver due to severe liver disease; other causes include: excessive alcohol intake, thiamine deficiency, metformin accumulation (metformin interferes with electron transport chain), certain antiretrovirals, large tumours, mitochondrial myopathies
 - D-lactic acid: rare syndrome characterized by episodes of encephalopathy and metabolic acidosis
 - occurs in the setting of carbohydrate malabsorption (e.g. short bowel syndrome), colonic bacteria metabolize carbohydrate load into D-lactic acid, diminished colonic motility and impaired D-lactate metabolism
- Ketoacidosis
 - diabetic
 - starvation
 - alcoholic (decreased carbohydrate intake and vomiting)
- Toxins
 - methanol (toxic to brain and retina, can cause blindness and brain death): metabolized to formic acid
 - ethylene glycol (toxic to brain and kidneys): metabolized to oxalic acid (envelope shaped crystals in urine) and multiple other acids
 - salicylate (e.g. ASA) overdose: causes acidosis due to salicylic acid, and also accumulation of lactic acid (salicylate at toxic levels impairs electron transport chain) and ketoacid (salicylate activates fat breakdown)
- Advanced renal failure (e.g. serum Cr increased at least 5x above baseline – a very low GFR causes anion retention, and renal disease leads to impaired bicarbonate production)

2. Normal AG Metabolic Acidosis (Hyperchloremic Acidosis)

- diarrhea (HCO_3^- loss from GI tract)
- RTA
 - type I RTA (distal): inability to secrete H^+ in collecting duct, leading to impaired excretion of ammonium into urine
 - type II RTA (proximal): impaired HCO_3^- reabsorption
 - type IV RTA: defective ammoniogenesis due to decreased aldosterone, hyporesponsiveness or hyperkalemia



Causes of Increased AG Metabolic Acidosis

MUDPILES CAT

Methanol
Uremia
Diabetic ketoacidosis
Paraldehyde
Isopropyl alcohol/Iron/Ibuprofen/
Indomethacin
Lactic acidosis
Ethylene glycol
Salicylates
Cyanide and Carbon monoxide
Alcoholic ketoacidosis
Toluene

or

KARMEL

Ketoacidosis
ASA
Renal failure
Methanol
Ethylene glycol
Lactic acidosis

- to help distinguish renal causes from non-renal causes, use $UAG = (Na^+ + K^+) - Cl^-$
- calculation establishes the presence or absence of unmeasured positive ions (e.g. NH_4^+) in urine
 - if $UAG < 0$, suggests adequate NH_4^+ excretion in urine (likely nonrenal cause: diarrhea)
 - if $UAG > 0$, suggests problem is lack of NH_4^+ in urine (e.g. distal RTA)

Treatment of Metabolic Acidosis

- treat underlying cause
 - insulin for DKA
 - restore tissue perfusion for Type A lactic acidosis
 - ethanol/fomepizole + dialysis for methanol or ethylene glycol poisoning
 - alkaline diuresis ± dialysis if ASA overdose
- correct coexisting disorders of K^+ (see *Hyperkalemia*, NP12)
- consider treatment with exogenous alkali (e.g. $NaHCO_3$) if
 - severe reduction in $[HCO_3^-]$ e.g. < 8 mEq/L, especially with very low pH (< 7)
 - no metabolizable anion (e.g. salicylate, formate, oxalate, or sulphate); note that lactate and ketoacid anions can be metabolized to HCO_3^-
- risks of sodium bicarbonate therapy
 - hypokalemia: causes K^+ to shift into cells (correct K^+ deficit first)
 - ECF volume overload: Na^+ load given with $NaHCO_3$, can exacerbate pulmonary edema
 - overshoot alkalosis: abrupt, poorly tolerated transition from overly aggressive alkali loading, partial conversion of accumulated organic anions to HCO_3^- , and persisting hyperventilation



Causes of Non-AG Metabolic Acidosis

HARDUP

Hyperalimentation
Acetazolamide
RTA*
Diarrhea*
Ureteroenteric fistula
Pancreaticoduodenal fistula

*Most common



3 Clinical Scenarios that Produce a Mixed Disorder with Near Normal pH (e.g. increased AG metabolic acidosis + respiratory alkalosis)

- Cirrhosis
- ASA overdose
- Sepsis

Metabolic Alkalosis

Pathophysiology

- requires initiating event and maintenance factors
- precipitating factors
 - GI (vomiting, NG tube) or renal loss of H^+
 - exogenous alkali (oral or parenteral administration), milk alkali syndrome
 - diuretics (contraction alkalosis): decreased excretion of HCO_3^- , decreased ECF volume, therefore increased $[HCO_3^-]$
 - post-hypercapnia: renal compensation for respiratory acidosis is HCO_3^- retention, rapid correction of respiratory disorder results in transient excess of HCO_3^-
- maintenance factors
 - volume depletion: increased proximal reabsorption of $NaHCO_3^-$ and increased aldosterone
 - hyperaldosteronism (1° or 2°): distal Na^+ reabsorption in exchange for K^+ and H^+ excretion leads to HCO_3^- generation; aldosterone also promotes hypokalemia
 - hypokalemia: transcellular K^+/H^+ exchange, stimulus for ammoniagenesis, and HCO_3^- generation

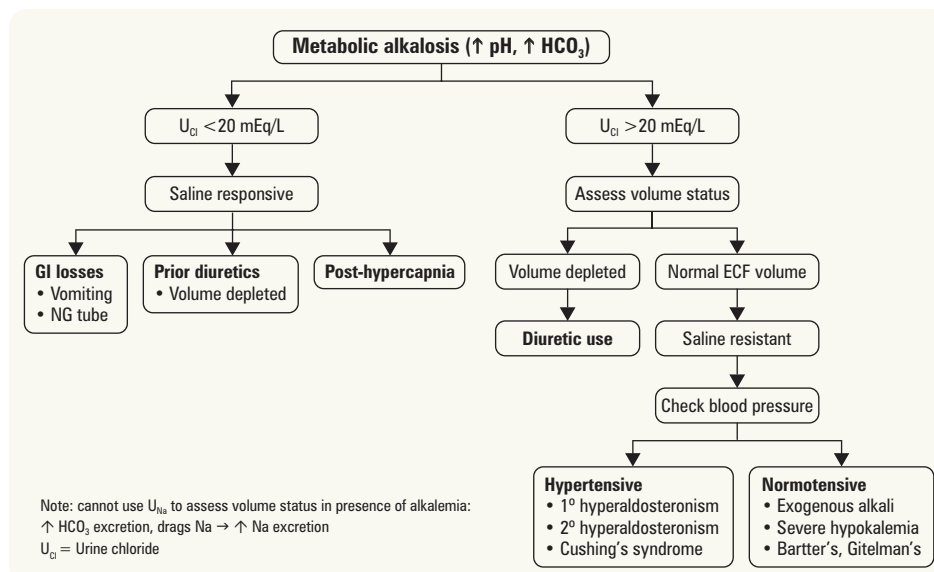


Figure 10. Approach to metabolic alkalosis

Evaluate Compensation (identify co-existing respiratory acid-base disorders)

- hypoventilation (an upper limit to compensation exists – breathing cannot be stopped)

Treatment

- treat underlying cause
- correct underlying disease, replenish K^+ and Mg^{2+} deficits, and possibly K^+ -sparing diuretic

- saline sensitive metabolic alkalosis (most common)
 - volume repletion ± carbonic anhydrase inhibitor (e.g. acetazolamide) to facilitate loss of HCO_3^- in urine
- saline resistant metabolic alkalosis
 - remove source of aldosterone or glucocorticoid ± spironolactone

Parenchymal Kidney Diseases

Vascular Diseases of the Kidney

LARGE VESSEL DISEASE

Table 8. Summary of Vascular Diseases

Large Vessel Disease	Small Vessel Disease
Acute renal artery occlusion (infarct)	Hypertensive nephrosclerosis
Renal artery stenosis (ischemia)	Atheroembolic renal disease
Renal vein thrombosis	Thrombotic microangiopathy
	Scleroderma
	Calcineurin inhibitor nephropathy

1. RENAL INFARCTION (ACUTE RENAL ARTERY OCCLUSION)

- important, potentially reversible cause of renal failure

Etiology

- abdominal trauma, surgery, embolism, vasculitis, extra-renal compression, hypercoagulable state, aortic dissection
- kidney transplant more vulnerable

Signs and Symptoms (depend on presence of collateral circulation)

- fever, N/V, flank pain
- leukocytosis, elevated AST, ALP
- marked elevated LDH (LDH >4x upper limit of normal with minimal elevations in AST/ALT strongly suggestive)
- acute onset HTN (activation of RAAS) or sudden worsening of long-standing HTN
- renal dysfunction, e.g. elevated Cr (if bilateral, or solitary functioning kidney)

Investigations

- renal arteriography (more reliable but risk of atheroembolic renal disease)
- contrast-enhanced CT or MR angiography, duplex Doppler studies (operator dependent)

Treatment

- prompt localization of occlusion and restoration of blood flow
- anticoagulation, thrombolysis, percutaneous angioplasty or clot extraction, surgical thrombectomy
- medical therapy in the long-term to reduce risk (e.g. antihypertensives)

2. ISCHEMIC RENAL DISEASE (RENAL ARTERY STENOSIS)

- chronic renal impairment secondary to hemodynamically significant renal artery stenosis or microvascular disease
- significant cause of ESRD: 15% in patients over 50 yr old (higher prevalence if significant vascular disease)
- usually associated with large vessel disease elsewhere
- causes of renal artery stenosis
 - atherosclerotic plaques (90%): proximal 1/3 renal artery, usually males >55 yr, smokers
 - ♦ electrolytes, osmolality (gently rehydrate when needed, e.g. CHF)
 - fibromuscular dysplasia (10%): distal 2/3 renal artery or segmental branches, usually young females (typical onset <30 yr) (gently rehydrate when needed, e.g. CHF)
- when there is decreased RBF, GFR is dependent on angiotensin II-induced efferent arteriolar constriction which raises the FF (GFR/RBF)
- most common cause of secondary HTN ("renovascular HTN"), 1-2% of all hypertensive patients
 - etiology
 - ♦ decreased renal perfusion of one or both kidneys leads to increased renin release and subsequent angiotensin production
 - ♦ increased angiotensin raises blood pressure in two ways
 1. causes generalized arteriolar constriction
 2. release of aldosterone increases Na^+ and water retention
 - elevated blood pressure can in turn lead to further damage of kidneys and worsening HTN

Risk Factors

- >50 yr old
- smoking
- other atherosclerotic disease (dyslipidemia, DM, diffuse atherosclerosis)

Signs and Symptoms

- severe/refractory HTN and/or hypertensive crises, with negative family history of HTN
- asymmetric renal size
- epigastric or flank bruits
- spontaneous hypokalemia (renin activation in under-perfused kidney)
- increasing Cr with ACEI/ARB
- flash pulmonary edema with normal LV function

Investigations

- must establish presence of renal artery stenosis and prove it is responsible for renal dysfunction
- duplex Doppler U/S (kidney size, blood flow): good screening test (operator dependent)
- digital subtraction angiography (risk of contrast nephropathy)
- CT or MR angiography (effective noninvasive tests to establish presence of stenosis, for MR avoid gadolinium contrast if eGFR <30 mL/min because of risk of systemic dermal fibrosis)
- ACEI renography (e.g. captopril renal scan)
- renal arteriography (gold standard)

Treatment

- surgical: percutaneous angioplasty ± stent, surgical revascularization, occasionally surgical bypass
- medical: BP lowering medications (ACEI is drug of choice if unilateral renal artery disease but contraindicated if bilateral renal artery disease)
- little or no benefit if therapy is late (e.g. kidney is already shrunken), however, therapy can be considered to save the opposite kidney if normal

3. RENAL VEIN THROMBOSIS**Etiology**

- hypercoagulable states (e.g. nephrotic syndrome, especially membranous), ECF volume depletion, extrinsic compression of renal vein, significant trauma, malignancy (e.g. RCC), sickle cell disease
- clinical presentation determined by rapidity of occlusion and formation of collateral circulation

Signs and Symptoms

- acute: N/V, flank pain, hematuria, elevated plasma LDH, ± rise in Cr, sudden rise in proteinuria
- chronic: PE (typical first presenting symptom), increasing proteinuria and/or tubule dysfunction

Investigations

- renal venography (gold standard), CT or MR angiography, duplex Doppler U/S

Treatment

- thrombolytic therapy ± percutaneous thrombectomy for acute renal vein thrombosis
- anticoagulation with heparin then warfarin (1 yr or indefinitely, depending on risk factors)

SMALL VESSEL DISEASE**1. HYPERTENSIVE NEPHROSCLEROSIS**

- see *Hypertension*, NP31

2. ATHEROEMBOLIC RENAL DISEASE

- progressive renal insufficiency due to embolic obstruction of small- and medium-sized renal vessels by atheromatous emboli
- spontaneous or after renal artery manipulation (surgery, angiography, percutaneous angioplasty)
- anticoagulants and thrombolytics interfere with ulcerated plaque healing and can worsen disease
- investigations
 - eosinophilia, eosinophiluria, and hypocomplementia
 - renal biopsy: needle-shaped cholesterol clefts (due to tissue-processing artifacts) with surrounding tissue reaction in small-/medium-sized vessels
- treatment
 - no effective treatment; avoid angiographic and surgical procedures in patients with diffuse atherosclerosis, medical therapy for concomitant cardiovascular disease
- prognosis: poor overall, at least a third will develop ESRD

**Stenting and Medical Therapy for Atherosclerotic Renal Artery Stenosis**
NEJM 2014;370:13-22

Study: Multicenter, unblinded RCT, median follow-up of 43 mo.

Patients: 947 patients with atherosclerotic renal-artery stenosis who also have significant systolic HTN or CKD.

Intervention: Percutaneous revascularization (stenting) with medical therapy (statins, ARB, calcium channel blockers, HCTZ and BP control) vs. medical therapy alone.

Outcomes: Occurrence of adverse CV or renal event (composite of death from CV or renal cause, MI, stroke, hospitalization for CHF, progressive renal insufficiency, or need for renal replacement therapy) and all-cause mortality.

Results: No significant difference in primary composite end point between participants who received stenting or those on medical therapy alone. No significant differences between the treatment groups in the rates of the individual components of the primary end point or in all-cause mortality.

Conclusion: Renal artery stenting did not confer a significant benefit with respect to the prevention of clinical events when added to comprehensive, multifactorial medical therapy in people with atherosclerotic renal artery stenosis and HTN or CKD.

3. THROMBOTIC MICROANGIOPATHY

- etiologies include the spectrum of TTP-HUS, DIC, severe preeclampsia
- renal involvement more common in HUS than TTP
- renal involvement characterized by fibrin thrombi in glomerular capillary loops \pm arterioles
- treatment
 - depends on cause
 - supportive therapy
 - TTP-HUS: plasma exchange, corticosteroids (splenectomy and rituximab if refractory)
- avoid platelet transfusions and ASA

4. CALCINEURIN INHIBITOR NEPHROPATHY

- cyclosporine and tacrolimus
- causes both acute reversible and chronic, largely irreversible nephrotoxicity
- major cause of kidney failure in other solid organ transplants (e.g. heart)
- acute: due to afferent and efferent glomerular capillary constriction leading to decreased GFR (tubular vacuolization)
 - prerenal azotemia
 - treatment: calcium channel blockers or prostaglandin analogs, reduce dose of cyclosporine or switch to another immunosuppressive drug
- chronic: result of obliterative arteriopathy causing interstitial nephritis and CKD (striped fibrosis), less frequent now due to lower doses of calcineurin inhibitors



Reduced Exposure to Calcineurin Inhibitors in Renal Transplantation (ELITE-Symphony Trial)

NEJM 2007;257:2562-2575

Study: Multicenter, RCT with 12 mo follow-up.

Patients: 1,645 patients scheduled to receive a single organ kidney transplant.

Intervention: Mycophenolate mofetil, corticosteroids, and either: 1) standard dose cyclosporine; 2) low dose cyclosporine with daclizumab induction; 3) low dose tacrolimus with daclizumab induction; 4) low dose sirolimus with daclizumab induction.

Primary Outcome: Estimated Cockcroft-Gault GFR 12 mo after transplantation.

Results: The tacrolimus arm showed significantly higher eGFR at 12 mo compared to all other arms (65.4 mL/min vs. 57.1, 59.4, 56.7 for arms 1, 2, 4 respectively, $p \leq 0.001$). The tacrolimus arm also showed decreased rates of acute rejection at 6 mo and 12 mo vs. all arms ($p < 0.001$), improved allograft survival against standard dose cyclosporine and sirolimus, and decreased treatment failure against all other arms. There was no difference in overall patient survival between groups. Sirolimus had the highest incidence of lymphoceles, delayed wound healing, and serious adverse events; tacrolimus had significantly higher rates of new-onset DM; and cyclosporine regimes had the lowest incidence of diarrhea but highest opportunistic infection rates.

Conclusion: Immunosuppression regimens using low dose tacrolimus and daclizumab induction decrease nephrotoxicity while maintaining therapeutic immunosuppression in renal transplant patients.

Glomerular Diseases

HISTOLOGICAL TERMS OF GLOMERULAR CHANGES

Extent of Changes

- terms used to describe histologically the number of glomeruli affected in a given condition
 - diffuse: majority of glomeruli abnormal
 - focal: some glomeruli affected
- terms used to describe histologically the extent to which individual glomeruli are affected in a given condition
 - global: entire glomerulus abnormal
 - segmental: only part of the glomerulus abnormal

Types of Changes

- proliferation: hyperplasia of one of the glomerular cell types (mesangial, endothelial, parietal epithelial), with or without inflammatory cell infiltration
- membranous changes: capillary wall thickening due to immune deposits or alterations in basement membrane
- crescent formation: parietal epithelial cell proliferation and mononuclear cell infiltration form crescent-shape in Bowman's space

CLINICAL PRESENTATION OF GLOMERULAR DISEASE

Important Points to Remember

- glomerular diseases have diverse clinical presentations including hematuria, proteinuria, HTN, edema, and decreased GFR
 - each glomerulopathy presents as one of four major glomerular syndromes (these are NOT diagnoses)
 - asymptomatic urinary abnormalities
 - proteinuria
 - hematuria
 - nephritic syndrome
 - acute GN
 - rapidly progressive GN
 - nephrotic syndrome
 - ESRD
- glomerulopathies can be caused by a primary disease or can occur secondary to a systemic disease
- some glomerulopathies can present as more than one syndrome at different times

The Nephritic-Nephrotic Spectrum

- glomerular pathology can present with a clinical picture anywhere on a spectrum with pure nephritic and pure nephrotic syndromes at the extremes

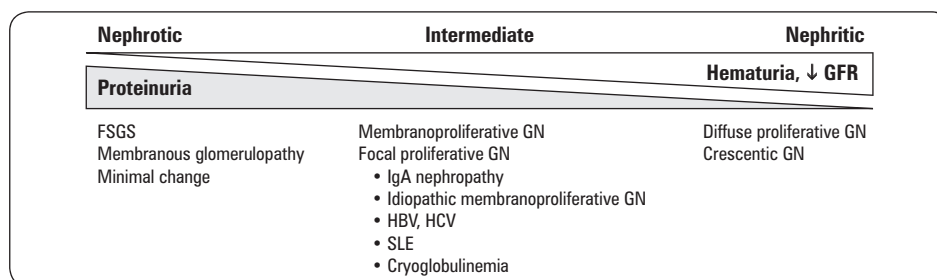


Figure 11. Spectrum of glomerular pathology

PROTEINURIA

- hallmark of nephrotic syndromes
- 24 h urine protein: gold standard to assess degree of proteinuria
- urine ACR: used to screen for diabetic nephropathy
 - microalbuminuria
 - ♦ defined as ACR ≥ 25 mg/g (female) or ACR ≥ 18 mg/g (male)
 - ♦ marker of vascular endothelial function
 - ♦ an important prognostic marker for kidney disease in DM and HTN (see *Diabetes*, NP28)
 - an elevated ACR ≥ 18 or 25 mg/g is the earliest sign of diabetic nephropathy
- composition of normal total urine protein
 - upper limit of normal daily excretion of total protein is 150 mg/d
 - upper limit of normal daily excretion of albumin is 30 mg/d
 - the other normally excreted proteins are either filtered low molecular weight proteins (such as immunoglobulin light chains or β -2 microglobulin) or proteins secreted by the tubular epithelial cells (e.g. Tamm-Horsfall mucoprotein)

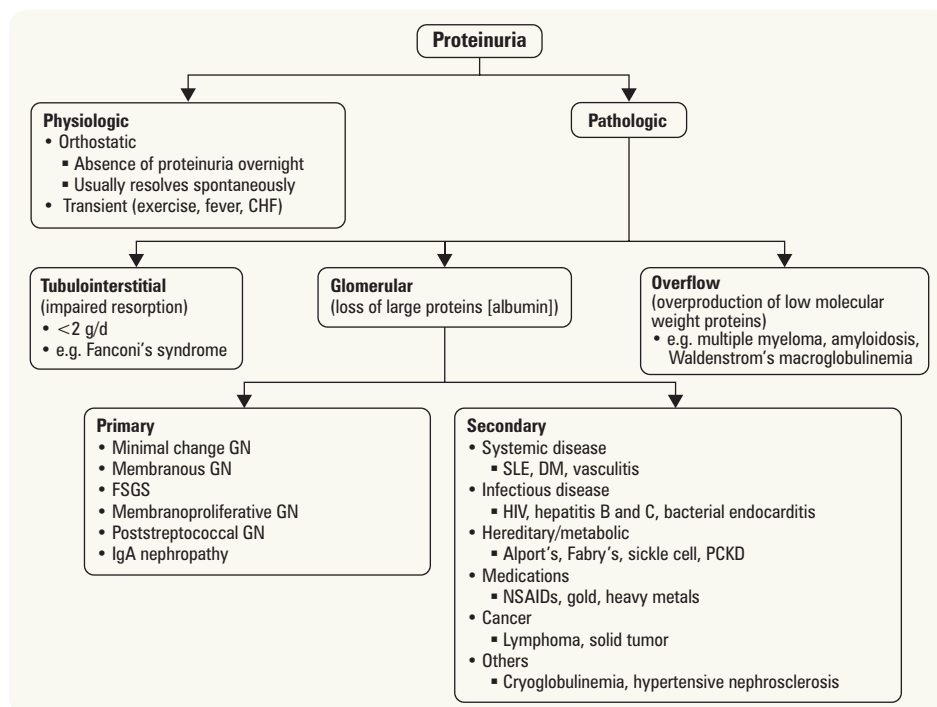


Figure 12. Classification of proteinuria

Table 9. Daily Excretion of Protein

Daily Excretion	Meaning
<150 mg total protein (and <30 mg albumin)	Normal
30-300 mg albumin	Microalbuminuria
>3500 mg total protein/1.73m ² BSA	Nephrotic range proteinuria
Variable amount of proteinuria	Can be seen with glomerular disease; e.g. mild glomerular disease can lead to a mild degree of proteinuria, proliferative lesions may also be associated with some degree of proteinuria
Up to 2,000 mg per d	Possible tubular disease because of failure to reabsorb filtered proteins



Pathologic Proteinuria

Tubulointerstitial

- Normally low molecular weight proteins (<60 kDa) pass through glomerular filtration barrier and are reabsorbed in proximal tubule
- Proximal tubule dysfunction causes impaired reabsorption and increased excretion of low molecular weight proteins
- Albumin (>60 kDa) is not affected; thus, edema is partly secondary to salt and water retention

Glomerular

- Normally, the filtration barrier is selectively permeable to **size** (<60 kDa) and **charge** (repels negative particles); thus, albumin is filtered to a very limited extent through a normal glomerulus
- Damage to any component of the glomerular filtration barrier results in loss of albumin and other high molecular weight proteins; thus, edema is secondary to hypoalbuminemia (low oncotic pressure), but also due to enhanced renal tubular reabsorption of filtered sodium and water (possibly due to filtered proteins stimulating the action of cortical collecting duct epithelial sodium channel)

Overflow

- Increased production of low molecular weight proteins which exceeds the reabsorptive capacity of the proximal tubule
- Plasma cell dyscrasias: produce light chain Ig (multiple myeloma, Waldenstrom's macroglobulinemia, monoclonal gammopathy of undetermined significance)

Investigations

- urine R&M, C&S, urea, Cr
- further workup (if degree of proteinuria >0.5 g/d, casts, and/or hematuria)
 - CBC, glucose, electrolytes, 24 h urine protein, and Cr
 - urine and serum immunoelectrophoresis, abdominal/pelvic U/S
 - serology: ANA, RF, p-ANCA (MPO), c-ANCA (PR3), Hep B, Hep C, HIV, ASOT
- indications for nephrology referral
 - generally, if there is “heavy” (ACR >265 mg/g) proteinuria, should refer to nephrologist
 - definitely if there is nephrotic syndrome: marked proteinuria >3.5 g/1.73m²/d with hypoalbuminemia (<35 g/L)

HEMATURIA

- hallmark of nephritic syndromes
- presence of blood or RBCs in urine
 - gross hematuria: pink, red, or tea-colored urine
 - ♦ in gross hematuria, the urine should be centrifuged:
 - if the sediment is red, true hematuria
 - if the supernatant is red, test for heme with a dipstick
 - if supernatant positive for heme: myoglobinuria or hemoglobinuria
 - if negative for heme: pseudohematuria; consider medications (e.g. rifampin), food dyes (e.g. beets), or metabolites (e.g. porphyria)
- microscopic hematuria: normal colored urine, >2 -3 RBCs/HPF on microscopy

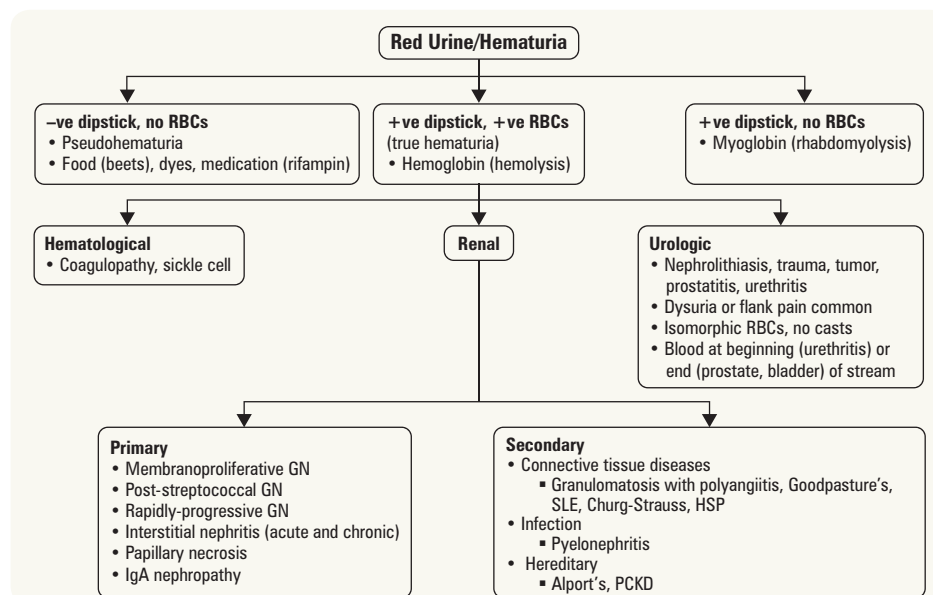


Figure 13. Approach to red urine

Investigations for Hematuria

- Hx and P/E: family history of nephrolithiasis, hearing loss (Alport's), cerebral aneurysm (PKD), diet, recent URTI, irritative and obstructive urinary symptoms (UTI)
- urine R&M, C&S, urea, Cr
- renal U/S
- 24 h urine stone workup if there is a history of stone formation or if there is a stone noted on imaging: calcium, oxalate, citrate, magnesium, uric acid, cysteine
- further workup (if casts and/or proteinuria): CBC, electrolytes, 24 h urine protein and Cr, serology (ANA, RF, C3, C4, p-ANCA, c-ANCA, ASOT)
- consider urology consult and possible cystoscopy if not clearly a nephrologic source for hematuria or if >50 yr of age

Glomerular Syndromes

1. ASYMPTOMATIC URINARY ABNORMALITIES

Clinical/Lab Features

- proteinuria (usually <2 g/d) and/or microscopic or macroscopic hematuria
 - isolated proteinuria
 - can be postural
 - occasionally can signal beginning of more serious GN (e.g. FSGS, IgA nephropathy, amyloid, diabetic nephropathy)
 - hematuria with or without proteinuria
 - IgA nephropathy (Berger's disease): most common type of primary glomerular disease worldwide, usually presents after viral URTI
 - hereditary nephritis (Alport's disease): X-linked nephritis often associated with sensorineural hearing loss; proteinuria <2 g/d
 - thin basement membrane disease: usually autosomal dominant, without proteinuria; benign
 - benign recurrent hematuria: hematuria associated with febrile illness, exercise, or immunization; a diagnosis of exclusion after other possibilities are ruled out



Features of Nephritic Syndrome

PHAROH
 Proteinuria
 Hematuria
 Azotemia
 RBC casts
 Oliguria
 Hypertension



IgA nephropathy is the most common type of primary glomerular disease worldwide

2. NEPHRITIC SYNDROME

ACUTE NEPHRITIC SYNDROME

- a subset of nephritic syndrome in which the clinical course proceeds over days

Etiology

- etiology can be divided into low and normal complement levels (see Figure 14)
- frequently immune-mediated, with Ig and C3 deposits found in GBM
- outcome dependent on etiology

Clinical/Lab Features

- proteinuria (but <3.5 g/1.73 m²/d), abrupt onset hematuria (microscopic or macroscopic, azotemia (increased Cr and urea), RBC casts and/or dysmorphic RBCs in urine, oliguria, HTN (due to salt and water retention), peripheral edema/puffy eyes, smoky urine

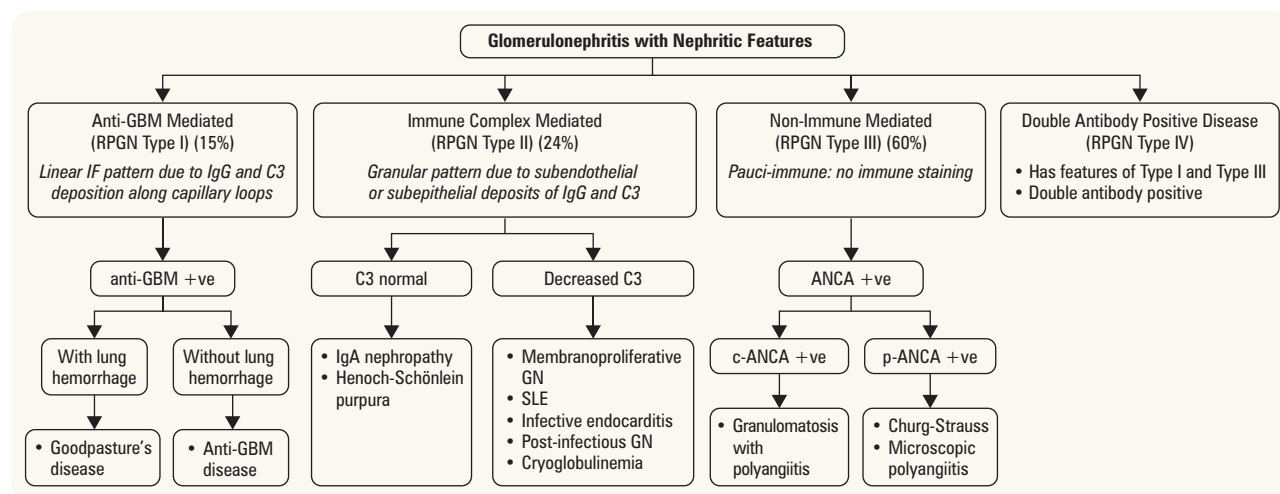


Figure 14. Approach to nephritic syndrome

RAPIDLY PROGRESSIVE GLOMERULONEPHRITIS/CRESCENTIC GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

- a subset of nephritic syndrome in which the clinical course proceeds over weeks to months
- clinical diagnosis, not histopathological
- any cause of GN can present as RPGN (except minimal change disease)
- additional etiologies seen only as RPGN: Goodpasture's syndrome and granulomatosis with polyangiitis (previously called Wegener's granulomatosis)

Clinical/Lab Features

- fibrous crescents typically present on renal histopathology
- RBC casts and/or dysmorphic RBCs in urine
- classified by immunofluorescence staining
- Type I: Anti-GBM mediated (15% of cases)
- Type II: Immune Complex Mediated (24% of cases)
- Type III: Non-Immune Mediated (60% of cases)
- Type IV: Double Antibody Positive
- treatment: underlying cause for postinfectious; corticosteroids + cyclophosphamide or other cytotoxic agent + plasmapheresis in select cases
- prognosis: 50% recovery with early treatment, depends on underlying cause

3. NEPHROTIC SYNDROME**Clinical/Lab Features**

- heavy proteinuria ($>3.5 \text{ g}/1.73\text{m}^2/\text{d}$)
- hypoalbuminemia
- edema
- hyperlipidemia (elevated LDL cholesterol), lipiduria (fatty casts and oval fat bodies on microscopy)
- hypercoagulable state (due to antithrombin III, Protein C, and Protein S urinary losses)
- patient may report frothy urine
- glomerular pathology on renal biopsy
 - minimal change disease (or minimal lesion disease or nil disease) – e.g. glomeruli appear normal on light microscopy
 - membranous glomerulopathy
 - focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS)
 - membranoproliferative GN
 - nodular glomerulosclerosis
- each can be idiopathic or secondary to a systemic disease or drug (sirolimus can cause proteinuria without obvious glomerular pathology)

**Presentation of Nephrotic Syndrome****HELP**

Hypoalbuminemia
Edema
Lipid abnormalities
Proteinuria

Table 10. Nephrotic Syndrome

	Minimal Change	Membranous Glomerulopathy	Focal Segmental Glomerulosclerosis	Membranoproliferative Glomerulonephritis	Nodular Glomerulosclerosis
Secondary Causes	Hodgkin's lymphoma	HBV, SLE, solid tumors (lung, breast, GI)	Reflux nephropathy, HIV, HBV, obesity	HCV, malaria, SLE, leukemia, lymphoma, infected shunt	DM, amyloidosis
Drug Causes	NSAIDs	Gold, penicillamine	Heroin		
Therapy	Steroids	Reduce BP, ACEI, steroids	Steroids, ACEI/ARB for proteinuria	Aspirin®, ACEI, dipyridamole (Persantine®) – controversial	Treat underlying cause

4. END STAGE RENAL DISEASE

- refer to section *End Stage Renal Disease*, NP35

INVESTIGATIONS FOR GLOMERULAR DISEASE

- blood work
 - first presentation: electrolytes, Cr, urea, albumin, fasting lipids
 - determining etiology: CBC, ESR, serum immunoelectrophoresis, anti-GBM, C3, C4, ANA, p-ANCA, c-ANCA, cryoglobulins, HBV and HCV serology, ASOT (anti-streptolysin titres), VDRL, HIV
- urinalysis: RBCs, WBCs, casts, protein
- 24 h urine for protein and CrCl
- radiology
 - CXR (infiltrates, CHF, pleural effusion)
 - renal U/S
- renal biopsy (percutaneous or open) if heavy proteinuria or renal insufficiency and cause is not obviously diabetic nephropathy
- urine immunoelectrophoresis
 - for Bence-Jones protein if proteinuria present

SECONDARY CAUSES OF GLOMERULAR DISEASE**Amyloidosis**

- nodular deposits of amyloid in mesangium, usually related to amyloid light chain (AL)
- presents as nephrotic range proteinuria with progressive renal insufficiency
- can be primary or secondary
- secondary causes: multiple myeloma, TB, rheumatoid arthritis, malignancy

Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

- lupus nephritis can present as any of the glomerular syndromes
- nephrotic syndrome with an active sediment is most common presentation
- GN caused by immune complex deposition in capillary loops and mesangium with resulting renal injury
- serum complement levels are usually low during periods of active renal disease
- children and males with SLE are more likely to develop nephritis

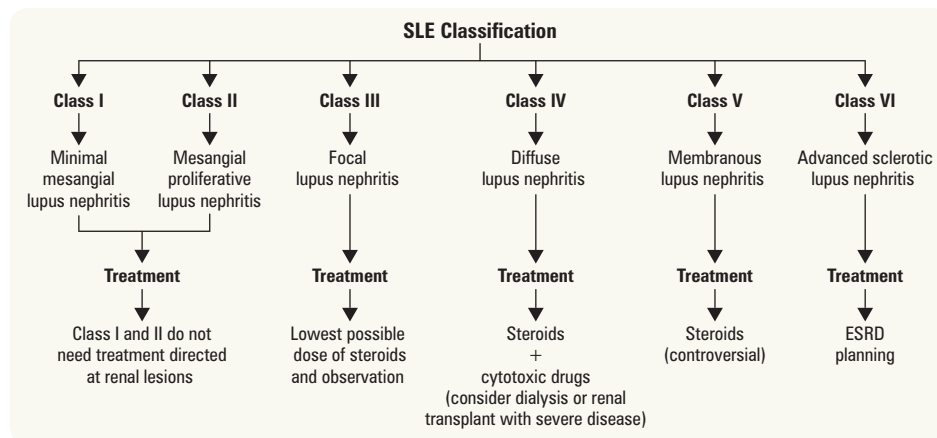


Figure 15. International Society of Nephrology/Renal Pathology Society classification of lupus nephritis 2003

Henoch-Schönlein Purpura

- seen more commonly in children
- purpura on buttocks and legs, abdominal pain, arthralgia, and fever
- glomeruli show varying degrees of mesangial hypercellularity
- IgA and C3 staining of mesangium
- usually benign, self-limiting course, 10% progress to CKD

Goodpasture's Disease

- antibodies against type IV collagen present in lungs and GBM
- more common in 3rd and 6th decades of life, males slightly more affected than females
- present with RPGN type I and hemoptysis/dyspnea
- pulmonary hemorrhage more common in smokers and males
- treat with plasma exchange, cyclophosphamide, prednisone

ANCA-Associated Vasculitis (e.g. Granulomatosis with Polyangiitis and Microscopic Polyangiitis [formerly Wegener's Granulomatosis])

- PR3-ANCA (c-ANCA) most commonly associated with the clinical picture of granulomatosis with polyangiitis (previously called Wegener's granulomatosis)
- MPO-ANCA (p-ANCA) most commonly associated with the clinical picture of microscopic polyangiitis
- renal involvement very common
- focal segmental necrotizing RPGN with no immune staining
- may be indolent or fulminant in progression
- vasculitis and granulomas rarely seen on renal biopsy
- treating typically involves cyclophosphamide and prednisone

Cryoglobulinemia

- cryoglobulins: monoclonal IgM and polyclonal IgG
- presents as purpura, fever, Raynaud's phenomenon, and arthralgias
- at least 50% of patients have hepatitis C
- renal disease seen in 40% of patients (isolated proteinuria/hematuria progressing to nephritic syndrome)
- most patients have decreased serum complement (C4 initially)
- treat hepatitis C, plasmapheresis
- overall prognosis: 75% renal recovery

Shunt Nephritis

- immune-complex mediated nephritis associated with chronically infected ventriculoatrial shunts inserted for treatment of hydrocephalus
- presents as acute nephritic syndrome with decreased serum complement
- nephrotic range proteinuria in 25% of patients



EULAR Recommendations for the Management of Systemic Lupus Erythematosus (SLE)

Ann Rheum Dis 2008;67:195-205

Lupus Nephritis Recommendations

Monitoring: Renal biopsy, urine sediment analysis, proteinuria, and kidney function may have independent predictive ability for clinical outcome in therapy of lupus nephritis but need to be interpreted in conjunction. Changes in immunological tests (anti-dsDNA, serum C3) have only limited ability to predict the response to treatment and may be used only as supplemental information.

Treatment: In patients with proliferative lupus nephritis, glucocorticoids in combination with immunosuppressive agents are effective against progression to end-stage renal disease. Long-term efficacy has been demonstrated only for cyclophosphamide-based regimens, which are also associated with considerable adverse effects. In short- and medium-term trials, mycophenolate mofetil has demonstrated at least similar efficacy compared with pulse cyclophosphamide and a more favorable toxicity profile: failure to respond by 6 mo should evoke discussions for intensification of therapy. Flares following remission are not uncommon and require diligent follow-up.

End-Stage Renal Disease: Dialysis and transplantation in SLE have long-term patient and graft-survival rates comparable with those observed in non-diabetic non-SLE patients, with transplantation being the method of choice.

HIV-Associated Renal Disease

1. direct nephrotoxic effect of HIV infection, antiretroviral drugs (e.g. tenofovir, indinavir), and other drugs used to treat HIV-associated infections
2. HIV-associated nephropathy
 - histology: focal and segmental glomerular collapse with mesangial sclerosis; “collapsing FSGS”
 - tubular cystic dilation and tubulo-reticular inclusions
 - clinical features: predominant in African American men, heavy proteinuria, progressive renal insufficiency
 - prognosis: kidney failure within 1 yr without treatment
 - therapy: short-term, high dose steroids, ACEI, HAART

Infective Endocarditis

- manifests as mild form of acute nephritic syndrome with decreased serum complement
- *S. aureus* is most common infecting agent
- treatment with appropriate antibiotics usually resolves GN

Hepatitis B

- can result in membranous nephropathy, polyarteritis nodosa, membranoproliferative GN

Hepatitis C

- can result in membranoproliferative GN, cryoglobulinemia, and membranous nephropathy

Syphilis

- can result in membranous GN

Tubulointerstitial Disease



TUBULOINTERSTITIAL NEPHRITIS

**Definition**

- cellular infiltrates affecting primarily the renal interstitium and tubular cells
- functional tubule defects are disproportionately greater than the decrease in GFR
- classified as acute or chronic

Signs and Symptoms

- manifestation of disease depends on site of tubule affected
 1. proximal tubule (e.g. multiple myeloma, heavy metals)
 - ♦ Fanconi syndrome: decreased reabsorption in proximal tubule causing glycosuria, aminoaciduria, phosphaturia, hypouricemia
 - ♦ proximal RTA (decreased bicarbonate absorption): Type II RTA
 2. distal tubule (e.g. amyloidosis, obstruction)
 - ♦ distal RTA (Type I RTA), usually hypokalemic
 - ♦ Na⁺-wasting nephropathy
 - ♦ ± hyperkalemia leading to type IV RTA (where reduced renal bicarbonate production is caused by hyperkalemia)
 3. collecting duct (e.g. sickle cell anemia, analgesics, PCKD)
 - ♦ urinary concentrating defect leading to mild nephrogenic DI
 - ♦ polyuria

1. ACUTE TUBULOINTERSTITIAL NEPHRITIS

Definition

- rapid (days to weeks) decline in renal function
- 10-20% of all AKI

Etiology

- hypersensitivity
 1. antibiotics: β-lactams, sulfonamides, rifampin, quinolones, cephalosporins
 2. other: NSAIDs, allopurinol, furosemide, thiazides, triamterene, PPIs, acyclovir, phenytoin, cimetidine
- infections
 - bacterial pyelonephritis, *Streptococcus*, brucellosis, *Legionella*, CMV, EBV, toxoplasmosis, leptospirosis
- immune
 - SLE, acute allograft rejection, Sjögren's syndrome, sarcoidosis, mixed essential cryoglobulinemia
- idiopathic

Pathophysiology

- acute inflammatory cell infiltrates into renal interstitium

Signs and Symptoms

- AKI
- if hypersensitivity reaction: may see fever, skin rash, arthralgia, serum sickness-like syndrome (particularly rifampin)
- if pyelonephritis: flank pain and costovertebral angle (CVA) tenderness
- other signs and symptoms based on underlying etiology
- HTN and edema are uncommon

Investigations

- mild, non-nephrotic range proteinuria and microscopic hematuria
- urine
 - sterile pyuria, WBC casts, mild proteinuria, hematuria
 - eosinophils if AIN
- blood work
 - increased Cr and urea
 - eosinophilia if drug reaction
 - normal AG metabolic acidosis (RTA)
 - hypophosphatemia, hyperkalemia, hyponatremia
- gallium scan often shows intense signal due to inflammatory infiltrate
- renal biopsy definitive

Treatment

- treat underlying cause (e.g. stop offending medications, antibiotics if pyelonephritis)
- corticosteroids (may be indicated in allergic or immune disease)

Prognosis

- recovery within 2 wk if underlying insult can be eliminated
- the longer the patient is in renal failure, the less likely full renal recovery becomes

2. CHRONIC TUBULOINTERSTITIAL NEPHRITIS**Definition**

- characterized by slowly progressive renal failure, moderate proteinuria, and signs of abnormal tubule function

Etiology

- persistence or progression of acute TIN
- urinary tract obstruction: most important cause of chronic TIN (tumors, stones, bladder outlet obstruction, vesicoureteral reflux)
- chronic pyelonephritis due to vesicoureteral reflux or UTI with obstruction
- nephrotoxins
 - exogenous
 - ♦ analgesics: NSAIDs (common), acetaminophen
 - ♦ cisplatin, lithium, cyclosporine, tacrolimus
 - ♦ heavy metals (lead, cadmium, copper, lithium, mercury, arsenic)
 - ♦ radiation
 - ♦ Chinese herbs
 - endogenous
 - ♦ hypercalcemia, hypokalemia, oxalate, uric acid nephropathy
- vascular disease: ischemic nephrosclerosis, atheroembolic disease
- malignancies: multiple myeloma, lymphoma
- granulomatous: TB, sarcoidosis, granulomatosis with polyangiitis
- immune: SLE, Sjögren's, cryoglobulinemia, Goodpasture's, amyloidosis, renal graft rejection, vasculitis
- hereditary: cystic diseases of the kidney, sickle cell disease
- others: radiation, Balkan (endemic) nephropathy

Pathophysiology

- fibrosis of interstitium with atrophy of tubules, mononuclear cell inflammation

Signs and Symptoms

- tubular dysfunction (e.g. acidosis, electrolyte disturbances)
- progressive renal failure with azotemia and uremia
- dependent on underlying etiology

Treatment

- stop offending agent or treat underlying disease
- supportive measures: correct metabolic disorders (Ca^{2+} , PO_4^{3-}) and anemia

Findings which Suggest Chronic Tubulointerstitial Nephritis

- normal AG metabolic acidosis
- hyperkalemia (out of proportion to degree of renal insufficiency)
- polyuria, nocturia
- partial or complete Fanconi's syndrome
- urine: mild proteinuria, few RBCs and WBCs, no RBC casts
- U/S: shrunken kidneys with irregular contours

3. ACUTE TUBULAR NECROSIS

Definition

- abrupt and sustained decline in GFR within minutes to days after ischemic/nephrotoxic insult
- GFR reduced (this serves the purpose of avoiding life-threatening urinary loss of fluid and electrolytes from non-functioning tubules)

Etiology

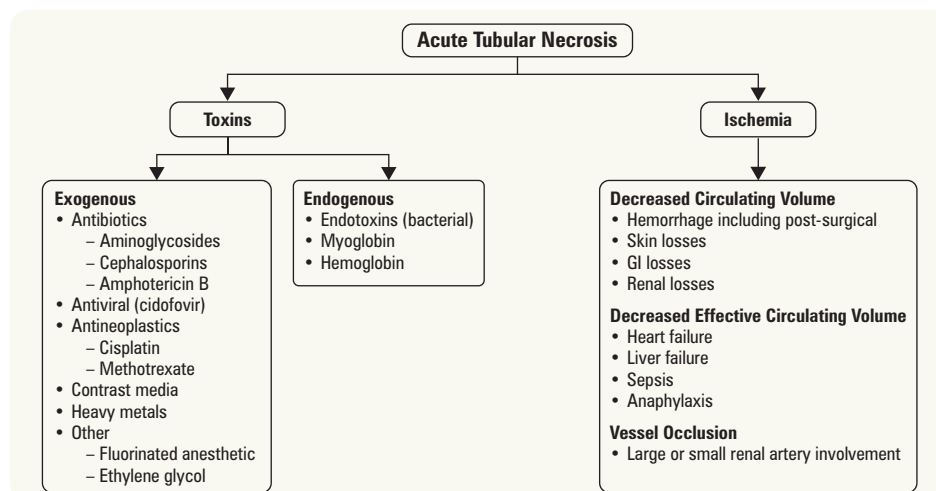


Figure 16. Etiology of ATN

Clinical Presentation

- typically presents as an abrupt rise in urea and Cr after a hypotensive episode, sepsis, rhabdomyolysis, or administration of nephrotoxic drug
- urine: high FE_{Na^+} , pigmented-granular casts

Complications

- hyperkalemia: can occur rapidly and cause serious arrhythmias
- metabolic acidosis, decreased Ca^{2+} , increased PO_4^{3-} , hypoalbuminemia

Investigations

- blood work: CBC, electrolytes, Cr, urea, Ca^{2+} , PO_4^{3-} , blood gases
- urine: R&M, electrolytes, osmolality, microscopic urinalysis searching for pigmented granular casts
- ECG
- abdominal U/S
- rule out other causes of prerenal/postrenal azotemia and intrinsic AKI (GN, AIN, vasculitis)

Therapy

- largely supportive once underlying problem is corrected
- loop diuretics may help manage volume overload and reduce tubular metabolic requirements to allow for recovery (controversial)
- consider early dialysis in severe/rapidly progressing cases to prevent uremic syndrome

Prevention

- correct fluid balance before surgical procedures
- for patients with chronic renal disease requiring radiographic contrast
 - give N-acetylcysteine 600-1200 mg PO bid day before and day of procedure, give intravenous isotonic fluid (either NaCl or NaHCO_3)
 - isotonic NaHCO_3 at 3 mL/kg over 1 h before procedure and 1 mL/kg/h for 6 h post-procedure if not contraindicated
 - avoid giving diuretics, ACEI, cyclosporine on morning of procedure if possible
- use renal-adjusted doses of nephrotoxic drugs in patients with renal insufficiency



Meta-Analysis: Effectiveness of Drugs for Preventing Contrast-Induced Nephropathy

Ann Intern Med 2008;148:284-294

Purpose: To determine the effectiveness of N-acetylcysteine, theophylline, fenoldopam, dopamine, iloprost, statin, furosemide, or mannitol on preventing nephropathy.

Study Selection: Only randomized, controlled trials that used these agents in patients receiving iodinated contrast.

Results: In the 41 RCTs included N-acetylcysteine ($\text{RR}=0.62$ [0.44-0.88]) and theophylline ($\text{RR}=0.49$ [0.23-1.06]) reduced the risk of nephropathy more than saline alone. Furosemide increased the risk ($\text{RR}=3.27$ [1.48-7.26]). Other agents did not affect risk of nephropathy.

Conclusion: N-acetylcysteine is more renoprotective than hydration alone.

Analgesic Nephropathies

1. Vasomotor AKI

- normally prostaglandins vasodilate afferent renal arteriole to maintain blood flow
- NSAIDs act by blocking cyclooxygenase enzyme, thereby preventing prostaglandin synthesis and causing renal ischemia
- more common in elderly, underlying renal disease, hypovolemia (diuretics, CHF, cirrhosis, nephrotic syndrome)
- clinically: develop prerenal azotemia within a few days of starting NSAID
- treatment: discontinue NSAID, dialysis rarely needed

2. Acute Interstitial Nephritis

- fenoprofen (60%), ibuprofen, naproxen
- may be associated with minimal change glomerulopathy and nephrotic range proteinuria
- resolves eventually with discontinuation of NSAID, may require interval dialysis
- short-term high dose steroids (1 mg/kg/d of prednisone) may hasten recovery

3. Chronic Interstitial Nephritis

- due to excessive consumption of antipyretics (phenacetin or acetaminophen) in combination with NSAIDs
- seen in patients who also have emotional stress, psychiatric symptoms, and GI disturbance
- papillary necrosis
 - gross hematuria, flank pain, declining renal function
 - calyceal filling defect seen with IVP – “ring sign”
- increased risk of transitional cell carcinoma of renal pelvis
- good prognosis if discontinue analgesics

4. Acute Tubular Necrosis

- can be caused by acetaminophen
 - incidence of renal dysfunction is related to the severity of acetaminophen ingestion
- vascular endothelial damage can also occur
- both direct toxicity and ischemia contribute to the tubular damage
- renal function spontaneously returns to baseline within 1-4 wk
- dialysis may be required during the acute episode of ingestion

5. Other Effects of NSAIDs

- sodium retention (2° to reduced GFR)
- hyperkalemia, HTN (2° to hyporeninemic hypoaldosteronism)
- excess water retention (due to elimination of ADH – antagonistic effect of prostaglandins)

Systemic Disease with Renal Manifestation

Diabetes

- diabetic nephropathy: presence of microalbuminuria or overt nephropathy (e.g. macroalbuminuria) in patients with DM who lack indicators of other renal diseases
- most common cause of end-stage renal failure in North America
- 35-50% of patients with type 1 DM will develop nephropathy, unknown percentage of type 2
- at diagnosis up to 30% of patients with type 2 DM have albuminuria (75% microalbuminuria, 25% overt nephropathy)
- microalbuminuria is a risk factor for progression to overt nephropathy and cardiovascular disease
- once macroalbuminuria is established, renal function declines, 50% patients reach ESRD within 7-10 yr
- associated with HTN and diabetic retinopathy (especially type 1 DM) and/or neuropathy (especially type 2 DM)
- indication of possible non-diabetic cause of renal disease in patients with DM:
 - rising Cr with little/no proteinuria
 - lack of retinopathy or neuropathy (microvascular complications)
 - persistent hematuria (microscopic or macroscopic)
 - signs or symptoms of systemic disease
 - inappropriate time course; rapidly rising Cr, renal disease in a patient with short duration of DM
 - family history of non-diabetic renal disease (e.g. PCKD, Alport's)



DM is one of the causes of ESRD that does not result in small kidneys at presentation of ESRD. The others are amyloidosis, HIV nephropathy, PCKD, and multiple myeloma



ACEI can cause hyperkalemia. Therefore, be sure to watch serum K⁺, especially if patient has DM and renal insufficiency

DIABETIC RENAL COMPLICATIONS

1. Progressive Glomerulosclerosis

- classic diabetic glomerular lesion: Kimmelstiel-Wilson nodular glomerulosclerosis (15-20%)
- more common lesion is diffuse glomerulosclerosis with a uniform increase in mesangial matrix

Table 11. Stages of Diabetic Progressive Glomerulosclerosis

Stage 1	Stage 2	Stage 3	Stage 4
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ↑ GFR (120-150%) – compensatory hyperfiltration • ± slightly increased mesangial matrix 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Detectable microalbuminuria (0-300 mg/24 h) • Albumin-Cr ratio (ACR) 2.0–20 mg/mEq in men (18-180 mg/d), • ACR 2.8-28 mg/mEq in women (25-250 mg/d) • ↑ mesangial matrix 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Macroalbuminuria (>300 mg/24 h) • ACR in men >20 mg/mEq, (>180 mg/d) • ACR in women >28 mg/mEq (>250 mg/d) • Proteinuria (+ve urine dipstick) • Normal GFR • ↑↑↑ mesangial matrix 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ↑ proteinuria (>500 mg/24 h) • ↓ GFR • <20% glomerular filtration surface area present • Sclerosed glomeruli

2. Accelerated Atherosclerosis

- common finding
- decreased GFR
- may increase angiotensin II production resulting in increased BP
- increased risk of ATN secondary to contrast media

3. Autonomic Neuropathy

- affects bladder leading to functional obstruction and urinary retention
- residual urine promotes infection
- obstructive nephropathy

4. Papillary Necrosis

- type 1 DM susceptible to ischemic necrosis of medullary papillae
- sloughed papillae may obstruct ureter
- can present as renal colic or with obstructive features ± hydronephrosis

2013 Canadian Diabetes Association Clinical Practice Guidelines on Chronic Kidney Disease in Diabetes

- screen for microalbuminuria with a random urine test for albumin to Cr ratio (ACR) and eGFR with a serum Cr (e.g. using MDRD equation)
 - type 1 DM: annually in post-pubertal individuals after 5 yr of diagnosis
 - type 2 DM: at diagnosis, then annually
 - If eGFR >60 mL/min or ACR <2.0 mg/mEq: there is no CKD, re-screen in 1 yr
 - If urine ACR >20.0 mg/mEq: diagnose CKD
 - If ACR <20.0 mg/mEq but >2.0 mg/mEq: order serum Cr for eGFR in 3 mo and 2 repeats of random urine ACRs over the next 3 mo; at 3 mo: if eGFR ≤60 mL/min or if >2/3 ACRs are >2.0 mg/mEq, diagnose CKD
 - if CKD diagnosed, ordered urine R+M and dipstick, if negative then diagnose CKD in DM
 - with CKD in DM: urine ACR and serum Cr (for eGFR) every 6 mo
 - delay screening if transient cause of albuminuria or low eGFR
- evaluate for other causes of proteinuria, rule out non-diabetic renal disease
- avoid unnecessary potential nephrotoxins (NSAIDs, aminoglycosides, dye studies)

Priorities in the Management of Patients with DM

1. vascular protection for all patients with DM
 - ACEI, antiplatelet therapy (as indicated)
 - BP control, glycemic control, lifestyle modification, lipid control
 2. optimization of BP in patients who are hypertensive
 - treat according to HTN guidelines
 3. renal protection for DM patients with nephropathy (even in absence of HTN)
 - type 1 DM: ACEI
 - type 2 DM: CrCl >60 mL/min: ACEI or ARB – CrCl <60 mL/min: ARB
 - 2nd line agents: nondihydropyridine calcium channel blockers (diltiazem, verapamil)
 - ACEI and ARB can be safely used together if needed for control of significant proteinuria (monitor for hyperkalemia and acute rise in Cr)
- check serum Cr and K⁺ levels within 1 wk of initiating ACEI or ARB and at time of acute illness
 - serum Cr can safely be allowed to rise up to 30% with initiation of ACEI or ARB, usually stabilizes after 2-4 wk, monitor for significant worsening of renal function or hyperkalemia
 - if >30% rise in serum Cr or hyperkalemia, discontinue medication and consider 2nd line agent
 - consider holding ACEI, ARB, and/or diuretic with acute illness and in women before becoming pregnant
 - consider referral to nephrologist if ACR >60 mg/mEq, eGFR <30 mL/min, progressive kidney function loss, unable to achieve BP targets, or unable to stay on ACEI or ARB

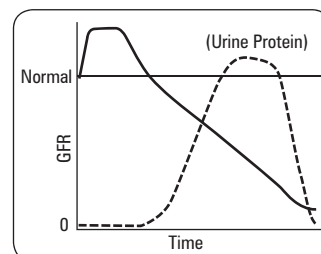


Figure 17. GFR and urine protein over time in DM



Renoprotective Effect of Angiotensin-Receptor Antagonist Irbesartan in Patients with Nephropathy Due to Type 2 DM

NEJM 2001;345:851-860

Study: Multicenter, RCT, mean follow-up of 2.6 yr. **Patients:** 806 patients (mean age 70 yr) with type 2 DM, HTN, and nephropathy (24 h proteinuria >900 mg, serum Cr 88-265 μmol/L [male], serum Cr 106-265 μmol/L [female]).

Intervention: BP control with irbesartan vs. amlodipine vs. placebo, with use of adjuncts (not including ACEIs, ARBs, or CCI) as needed.

Outcomes: Primary composite endpoint included doubling of serum Cr, ESRD, or death. Secondary composite endpoint included morbidity and mortality from CVD causes.

Results: BP control was similar in all three arms. Irbesartan had a relative risk reduction of 20% vs. placebo and 23% vs. amlodipine for the primary end point. The irbesartan group had a 33% risk reduction vs. placebo and 37% reduction vs. amlodipine for risk of doubling serum Cr. Serum Cr increased more slowly in the irbesartan group vs. placebo or amlodipine. No difference in absolute mortality or secondary end point.

Conclusion: Irbesartan conferred significant renoprotective benefits in patients with type 2 DM and nephropathy, independent of blood pressure lowering effects.



Renal Outcomes with Telmisartan, Ramipril, or Both in People at High Vascular Risk (ONTARGET Study)

Lancet 2008;372:547-553

Study: Prospective, multicenter, double-blind, RCT. **Participants:** 25,620 patients with median follow-up of 56 mo.

Intervention: Patients received either ramipril (10 mg/d; n=8,576), telmisartan (80 mg/d; n=8,542), or a combination of both drugs (n=8,502).

Primary Outcome: Composite of dialysis, doubling of creatinine level, and death.

Results: The number of outcome events was similar for telmisartan (n=1,147) and ramipril (1,150; HR 1.00, 95% CI 0.92-1.09), but was increased with combination therapy (1,233; HR 1.09, 1.01-1.18, p=0.037). The need for dialysis or doubling of serum creatinine, was similar with telmisartan (189) and ramipril (174; HR 1.09, 0.89-1.34) and more frequent with combination therapy (212; HR 1.24, 1.01-1.51, p=0.038). Estimated GFR declined least with ramipril compared with telmisartan or combination therapy (p<0.001). The increase in urinary albumin excretion was less with telmisartan (p=0.004) and combination therapy (p=0.001) than with ramipril.

Conclusion: Renal outcomes were similar in both telmisartan and ramipril monotherapy. Combination therapy reduced proteinuria to a greater extent than monotherapy, but was associated with poorer renal outcomes.

Scleroderma

- 50% of scleroderma patients have renal involvement (mild proteinuria, high Cr, HTN)
- histology: media thickened, "onion skin" hypertrophy of small renal arteries, fibrinoid necrosis of afferent arterioles and glomeruli
- 10-15% scleroderma patients have a "scleroderma renal crisis" (occurs in first few years of disease): malignant HTN, ARF, microangiopathy, volume overload, visual changes, HTN encephalopathy
- renal involvement usually occurs early in the course of illness
- treatment: BP control with ACEI slows progression of renal disease



Effects of Losartan on Renal and Cardiovascular Outcomes in Patients with Type 2 DM and Nephropathy

NEJM 2001;345:861-869

Study: Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial with mean follow-up of 3.4 yr.

Patients: 1,513 patients (mean age 60, 63% male, multi-ethnicity) with NIDDM and nephropathy (urinary albumin:Cr ≥ 300 and serum Cr 115-265 $\mu\text{mol/L}$) on conventional antihypertensives (CCB, diuretics, β -blockers, centrally acting agents).

Intervention: Losartan 50 mg PO OD (could be doubled after 4 wk) vs. placebo.

Outcomes: Primary endpoints included doubling of serum Cr, ESRD, or death. Secondary endpoints included morbidity and mortality from CVD causes.

Results: Losartan reduced incidence of doubling of serum Cr (RR 25%) and ESRD (RR 28%), but had no effect on risk of death. Benefit exceeded that attributable to BP changes alone. Secondary endpoints were similar, although rate of hospitalization for heart failure was significantly lower with losartan (RR 32%).

Conclusion: Losartan conferred significant renal benefits in patients with type 2 DM and nephropathy, and was generally well tolerated.

Multiple Myeloma

- see [Hematology, H49](#)
- malignant proliferation of plasma cells in the bone marrow with the production of immunoglobulins
- patients may present with severe bone disease and renal failure
- light chains are filtered at the glomerulus and appear as Bence-Jones proteins in the urine (monoclonal light chains)
- kidney damage can occur by several mechanisms
 - hypercalcemia
 - light chain cast nephropathy (LCCN, see below) or "myeloma kidney"
 - hyperuricemia
 - infection
 - secondary amyloidosis
 - monoclonal Ig deposition disease (MIDD)
 - diffuse tubular obstruction
- LCCN
 - large tubular casts in urine sediment (light chains + Tamm-Horsfall protein)
 - proteinuria and renal insufficiency, can progress rapidly to kidney failure
- MIDD
 - deposits of monoclonal Ig in kidney, liver, heart, and other organs
 - mostly light chains (85-90%)
 - causes nodular glomerulosclerosis (similar to diabetic nephropathy)
- lab features: increased BUN, increased Cr, urine protein immunoelectrophoresis positive for Bence-Jones protein (not detected on urine dipstick)
- poor candidates for kidney transplantation



Protein Restriction for Diabetic Renal Disease

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2007;4:CD002181

Purpose: To review the effects of dietary protein restriction on the progression of diabetic nephropathy.

Study Selection: Randomized controlled trials (RCTs) and before and after studies of the effects of restricted protein diet on renal function in subjects with DM. 12 studies were reviewed.

Results: The risk of end-stage renal disease or death was lower in patients on low-protein diet. In patients with type 1 DM no effect on GFR was noted in the low-protein diet group.

Malignancy

- cancer can have many different renal manifestations
- kidney transplantation cannot be performed unless malignancy is cured
 - solid tumors: mild proteinuria or membranous GN
 - lymphoma: minimal change GN (Hodgkin's) or membranous GN (non-Hodgkin's)
 - renal cell carcinoma
 - tumor lysis syndrome: hyperuricemia, diffuse tubular obstruction
 - chemotherapy (especially cisplatin): ATN or chronic TIN
 - pelvic tumors/mets: postrenal failure secondary to obstruction
 - 2° amyloidosis
 - radiotherapy (radiation nephritis)



Long-Term Outcomes of Scleroderma Renal Crisis

Ann Intern Med 2000;133:600-603

Study: Prospective observational cohort study with follow up of 5-10 yr.

Patients: 145 patients with scleroderma renal crisis who received ACEI and 662 patients with scleroderma who did not have renal crisis.

Primary Outcome: The need for dialysis and early death among patients with renal crisis.

Results: Sixty-one percent of patients with renal crisis had good outcomes (55 had no dialysis and 34 received temporary dialysis); only 4 of these patients progressed to chronic renal failure and permanent dialysis. Greater than 50% of the patients who initially required dialysis discontinued it 3-18 mo later. Permanent dialysis or early death occurred in 39% of the patients.

Conclusion: Renal crisis can be managed when HTN is aggressively controlled with ACEI.

Hypertension

- HTN occurs in about 20% of population
- etiology classified as primary ("essential"; makes up 90% of cases) or secondary
- primary HTN can cause kidney disease (hypertensive nephrosclerosis), which may in turn exacerbate the HTN
- secondary HTN can be caused by renal parenchymal or renal vascular disease



Features of Multiple Myeloma

CARLI

Calcium (elevated)

Anemia

Renal Failure

Lytic Bone Lesions

Infections

Hypertensive Nephrosclerosis

Table 12. Chronic vs. Malignant Nephrosclerosis

	Chronic Nephrosclerosis	Malignant Nephrosclerosis
Histology	Slow vascular sclerosis with ischemic changes affecting intralobular and afferent arterioles	Fibrinoid necrosis of arterioles, disruption of vascular endothelium
Clinical Picture	African American, underlying CKD, chronic hypertensive disease	Acute elevation in BP (dBP > 120 mmHg) HTN encephalopathy
Urinalysis	Mild proteinuria, normal urine sediment	Proteinuria and hematuria (RBC casts)
Therapy	Blood pressure control, (target <140/90) with frequent follow-up	Lower dBP to 100-110 mmHg within 6-24 h More aggressive treatment can cause ischemic event Identify and treat underlying cause of HTN
Prognosis	Can progress to renal failure despite patient adherence	Lower survival if renal insufficiency develops

Renovascular Hypertension

- see *Vascular Diseases of the Kidney*, NP17

Renal Parenchymal Hypertension

- HTN secondary to GN, AIN, diabetic nephropathy, or any other chronic renal disease
- mechanism of HTN not fully understood but may include
 - excess RAAS activation due to inflammation and fibrosis in multiple small intra-renal vessels
 - production of unknown vasopressors, lack of production of unknown vasodilators, or lack of clearance of endogenous vasopressor
 - ineffective sodium excretion with fluid overload

Investigations

- as well as investigations for renovascular HTN, additional tests may include
 - 24 h urinary estimations of Cr clearance and protein excretion
 - imaging (U/S, CT)
 - serology for collagen-vascular disease
 - renal biopsy

Treatment

- most chronic renal disease is irreversible, but treatment of HTN can slow the progression of renal insufficiency
- control ECF volume: Na⁺ restriction (88 mEq/d intake), diuretic, dialysis with end-stage disease
- ACEI or ARB may provide added benefit (monitor K⁺ and Cr) if there is significant proteinuria (>300 mg/d)

Cystic Diseases of the Kidney

- characterized by epithelium-lined cavities filled with fluid or semisolid debris within the kidneys
- includes: simple cysts (present in 50% of population over 50), medullary cystic kidney, medullary sponge kidney, polycystic kidney disease (autosomal dominant and recessive), and acquired cystic kidney disease (in chronic hemodialysis patients)

Adult Polycystic Kidney Disease

- autosomal dominant; at least 2 genes: *PKD1* (chr 16p) and *PKD2* (chr 4q)
- *PKD1* (1:400), *PKD2* (1:1,000) accounts for about 10% of cases of renal failure
- patients generally heterozygous for mutant polycystin gene but accumulate a series of second 'somatic hits' precipitating the condition
- *PKD1* encodes a protein that is responsible for cell-cell and cell-matrix interaction and sensing fluid flow by associating with cilia
- *PKD2* encodes a protein that is a Ca²⁺ permeable nonselective cation channel that associates with cilia and is thought to control intracellular Ca²⁺ in response to flow
- defect leads to abnormal proliferation and apoptosis of tubular epithelial cells leading to cyst growth
- extrarenal manifestations: most common; multiple asymptomatic hepatic cysts (33%), cerebral aneurysm (10%), diverticulosis, and mitral valve prolapse (25%)
- polycystic liver disease rarely causes liver failure
- less common: cysts in pancreas, spleen, thyroid, ovary, seminal vesicles, and aorta



Hypercalcemia complicates many cancers and can cause multiple kinds of renal disorders (renal vasoconstriction with reduced GFR, salt-wasting with volume depletion, risk of calcium kidney stones)

Signs and Symptoms

- often asymptomatic; discovered incidentally on imaging or by screening those with FHx
- acute abdominal flank pain/dull lumbar back pain
- hematuria (microscopic frequently initial sign, gross)
- nocturia (urinary concentrating defect)
- rarely extra-renal presentation (e.g. ruptured berry aneurysm, diverticulitis)
- HTN (increased renin due to focal compression of intrarenal arteries by cysts) (60-75%)
- \pm palpable kidneys

**External Manifestations of PKD**

- Hepatic cysts
- Cerebral aneurysms
- Diverticulosis
- Mitral valve prolapse

Common Complications

- urinary tract and cyst infections, HTN, CRF, nephrolithiasis (5-15%), flank and chronic back pain

Clinical Course

- polycystic changes are always bilateral and can present at any age
- clinical manifestations rare before age 20-25
- kidneys are normal at birth but may enlarge to 10x normal size
- variable progression to renal functional impairment (ESRD in up to 50% by age 60)

Investigations

- radiographic diagnosis: best accomplished by renal U/S (enlarged kidneys, multiple cysts throughout renal parenchyma, increased cortical thickness, splaying of renal calyces)
- CT abdo with contrast (for equivocal cases, occasionally reveals more cystic involvement)
- gene linkage analysis for PKD1 for asymptomatic carriers
- Cr, BUN, urine R&M (to assess for hematuria)

Treatment

- goal: to preserve renal function by prevention and treatment of complications
- educate patient and family about disease, its manifestations, and inheritance pattern
- genetic counseling: transmission rate 50% from affected parent
- prevention and early treatment of urinary tract and cyst infections (avoid instrumentation of GU tract)
- TMP/SMX, ciprofloxacin: able to penetrate cyst walls, achieve therapeutic levels
- adequate hydration to prevent stone formation
- avoid contact sports due to greater risk of injury to enlarged kidneys
- screen for cerebral aneurysms if family history of aneurysmal hemorrhages
- monitor blood pressure and treat HTN with ACEI
- dialysis or transplant for ESRD (disease does not recur in transplanted kidney)
- may require nephrectomy to create room for renal transplant

Medullary Sponge Kidney

- common, autosomal dominant, usually diagnosed in 4th-5th decades
- multiple cystic dilatations in the collecting ducts of the medulla
- renal stones, hematuria, and recurrent UTIs are common features
- an estimated 10% of patients who present with renal stones have medullary sponge kidney
- nephrocalcinosis on abdominal x-ray in 50% patients, often detect asymptomatic patients incidentally
- diagnosis: contrast filled medullary cysts on IVP leading to characteristic radial pattern ("bouquet of flowers"), "Swiss cheese" appearance on histological cross-section
- treat UTIs and stone formation as indicated
- does not result in renal failure

Autosomal Recessive Polycystic Kidney Disease

- 1:20,000 incidence
- prenatal diagnosis by enlarged kidneys
- perinatal death from respiratory failure
- patients who survive perinatal period develop CHF, HTN, CKD
- treated with kidney and/or liver transplant

Acute Kidney Injury

Definition

- abrupt decline in renal function leading to increased nitrogenous waste products normally excreted by the kidney
- formerly known as Acute Renal Failure

Clinical Features

- azotemia (increased BUN, Cr)
- abnormal urine volume: formally <0.5 ml/kg/h for >6 h but can manifest as anuria, oliguria, or polyuria

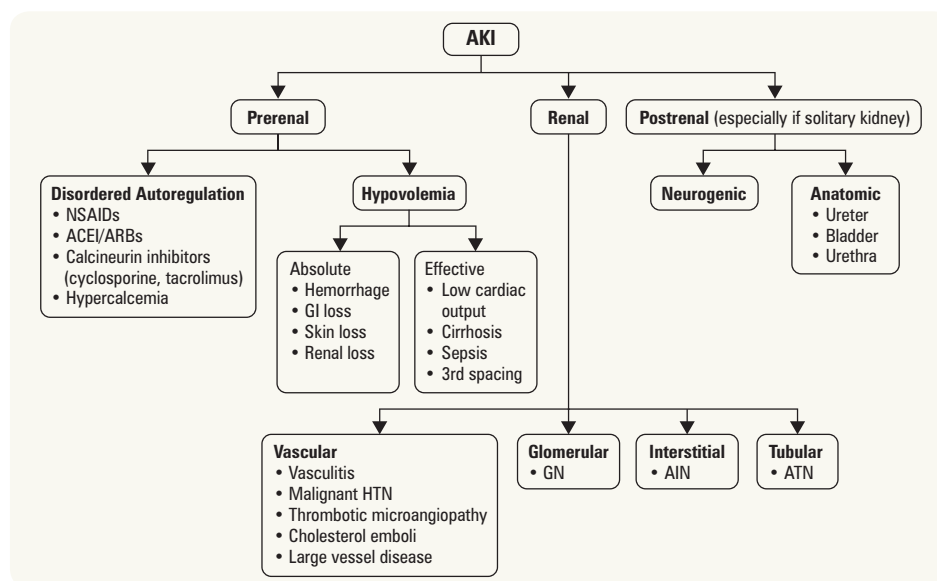


Figure 18. Approach to AKI

Approach to AKI

Investigations

- blood work: CBC, electrolytes, Cr, urea (think prerenal if increase in urea is relatively greater than increase in Cr), Ca^{2+} , PO_4^{3-}
- urine volume, C&S, R&M: sediment, casts, crystals
- urinary indices: electrolytes, osmolality
- fluid challenge (e.g. fluid bolus to rule out most prerenal causes)
- imaging: abdo U/S (assess kidney size, hydronephrosis, postrenal obstruction)
- indications for renal biopsy
 - diagnosis is not certain
 - prerenal azotemia or ATN is unlikely
 - oliguria persists >4 wk

Treatment

1. preliminary measures
 - prerenal
 - ♦ correct prerenal factors: optimize volume status and cardiac performance using fluids that will stay in the plasma subcompartment (NS, albumin, blood/plasma), hold ACEI/ARB (gently rehydrate when needed, e.g. CHF)
 - renal
 - ♦ address reversible renal causes: discontinue nephrotoxic drugs, treat infection, and optimize electrolytes
 - postrenal
 - ♦ consider obstruction: structural (stones, strictures) vs. functional (neuropathy)
 - ♦ treat with Foley catheter, indwelling bladder catheter, nephrostomy, stenting
2. treat complications
 - fluid overload
 - ♦ NaCl restriction
 - ♦ high dose loop diuretics
 - hyperkalemia (refer to *Approach to Hyperkalemia*, NP12)



The 2 most common causes of acute kidney injury in hospitalized patients are prerenal azotemia and ATN; remember that prerenal failure can lead to ATN



Clues to Prerenal Etiology

- Clinical: Decreased BP, increased HR, and orthostatic HR and BP changes
- Increased [urea] \gg Increased [Cr]
- Urine $[\text{Na}^+] < 10\text{--}20$ mEq/L
- Urine osmolality > 500 mOsm/kg
- Fractional excretion of $\text{Na}^+ < 1\%$

Clues to Renal Etiology

- Appropriate clinical context
- Urinalysis positive for casts:
 - Pigmented granular – ATN
 - WBC – AIN
 - RBC – GN

Clues to Postrenal Etiology

- Known solitary kidney
- Older man
- Recent retroperitoneal surgery
- Anuria
- Palpable bladder
- U/S shows hydronephrosis



Differentiating Prerenal from ATN

	Prerenal	ATN
Urinalysis	Normal	RBC, pigmented granular casts
Urine $[\text{Na}^+]$	<20	>40 mEq/L
Urine $[\text{Na}^+]/[\text{Cr}]$	<20	>40
Urine osmolality	>500	<350 mOsm/kgH ₂ O
FeNa	<1	$>1\%$



Drugs Implicated in Prerenal Azotemia

- Diuretics
- NSAIDs
- ACEI/ARBs



Indications for Dialysis (refractory to medical therapy)

AE IOU

Acidosis
Electrolyte imbalance (K^+)
Intoxication
Overload (fluid)
Uremic encephalopathy, pericarditis, urea $>35\text{--}50$ mM

- adjust dosages of medications cleared by kidney (e.g. amiodarone, digoxin, cyclosporin, tacrolimus, some antibiotics, and chemotherapeutic agents)
 - dialysis
3. definitive therapy depends on etiology
- note: renal transplant is not a therapy for AKI

Prognosis

- high morbidity and mortality in patients with sustained AKI and multi-organ failure

Chronic Kidney Disease

Definition

- progressive and irreversible loss of kidney function
- abnormal markers (Cr, urea)
 - GFR <60 mL/min for >3 mo; or
 - kidney pathology seen on biopsy; or
 - decreased renal size on U/S (kidneys <9 cm)
- clinical features of CKD
 - volume overload and HTN
 - electrolyte and acid-base balance disorders (e.g. metabolic acidosis)
 - uremia

Table 13. Stages of CKD (KDIGO, 2013)

	GFR (mL/min/1.73m ²)	Persistent Albuminuria Categories		
		A1	A2	A3
		<30 mg/g <3 mg/mEq	30-300 mg/g 3-30 mg/mEq	>300 mg/g >30 mg/mEq
GFR categories (mL/min/1.73m ²)	G1	≥90	1 if CKD	2
	G2	60-89	1 if CKD	2
	G3a	45-59	1	2
	G3b	30-44	2	3
	G4	15-29	3	4+
	G5	<15 (kidney failure)	4+	4+

The numbers in the boxes are a reflection of the risk of progression and are a guide to the frequency of monitoring/year

"D" is added to G5 for patients requiring dialysis

Classification is based on cause, GFR, and amount of albuminuria

Rate of progression and risk of complications are determined by the cause of CKD



Incidence of Etiologies of CKD

DM	42.9%
HTN	26.4%
Glomerulonephritis	9.9%
Other/Unknown	7.7%
Interstitial nephritis/ Pyelonephritis	4.0%
Cystic/Hereditary/Congenital	3.1%
Secondary GN/Vasculitis	2.4%



Management of Complications of CKD

NEPHRON

- N** – Low-nitrogen diet
- E** – Electrolytes: monitor K⁺
- P** – pH: metabolic acidosis
- H** – HTN
- R** – RBCs: manage anemia with erythropoietin
- O** – Osteodystrophy: give calcium between meals (to increase Ca²⁺) and calcium with meals (to bind and decrease PO₄³⁻)
- N** – Nephrotoxins: avoid nephrotoxic drugs (ASA, gentamicin) and adjust doses of renally excreted medications



Renin Angiotensin System Blockade and Cardiovascular Outcomes in Patients with Chronic Kidney Disease and Proteinuria: A Meta-Analysis

Am Heart J 2008;155:791-805

Purpose: To evaluate the role of RAS blockade in improving cardiovascular CV outcomes in patients with CKD.

Study Selection: Randomized controlled trials that analyzed CV outcomes in patients with CKD/proteinuria treated with RAS blockade (ACEI/ARB). RAS blockade-based therapy was compared with placebo and control therapy (β-blocker, calcium-channel blockers, and other antihypertensive-based therapy) in the study.

Results: Twenty-five trials (n=45,758) were included. Compared to placebo, RAS blockade reduced the risk of heart failure in patients with diabetic nephropathy. In patients with non-diabetic CKD, RAS blockade decreased CV outcome compared to control therapy.

Conclusions: RAS blockade reduced CV outcomes in diabetic nephropathy as well as non-diabetic CKD.

Management of Chronic Kidney Disease

- diet
 - preventing HTN and volume overload
 - ♦ Na⁺ and water restriction
 - preventing electrolyte imbalances
 - ♦ K⁺ restriction (40 mEq/d)
 - ♦ PO₄³⁻ restriction (1 g/d)
 - ♦ avoid extra-dietary Mg²⁺ (e.g. antacids)
 - preventing uremia and potentially delaying decline in GFR
 - ♦ protein restriction with adequate caloric intake in order to limit endogenous protein catabolism
- medical
 - adjust dosages of renally excreted medications
 - HTN: ACEI (target 130/80 or less), loop diuretics when GFR <25 mL/min
 - dyslipidemia: statins
 - calcium and phosphate disorders:
 - ♦ calcium supplements (e.g. TUMS®) treats hypocalcemia when given between meals and binds phosphate when given with meals
 - ♦ consider calcitriol (1,25-dihydroxy-vitamin D) if hypocalcemic
 - ♦ sevelamer (phosphate binder) if both hypercalcemic and hyperphosphatemic
 - ♦ vitamin D analogues are being introduced in the near future
 - ♦ cinacalcet for hyperparathyroidism (sensitizes parathyroid to Ca²⁺, decreasing PTH)
 - metabolic acidosis: sodium bicarbonate
 - anemia: erythropoietin injections (Hct <30%); target Hct 33-36%
 - clotting abnormalities: DDAVP if patient has clinical bleeding or invasive procedures (acts to reverse platelet dysfunction)
- dialysis (hemodialysis, peritoneal dialysis)
- renal transplantation

Prevention of Progression

- as above
- control of HTN, DM, cardiovascular risk factors (e.g. smoking cessation)
- avoid nephrotoxins
- address reversible causes of AKI

End Stage Renal Disease

- end stage renal disease represents a decline in kidney function which can occur over days to weeks (AKI), over months to years (CKD), or as a combination of the two

Presentation of End Stage Renal Disease

1. Volume Overload

- due to increase in total body Na^+ content
- signs: weight gain, HTN, pulmonary or peripheral edema

2. Electrolyte Abnormalities

- high
 - K^+ (decreased renal excretion, increased tissue breakdown)
 - PO_4^{3-} (decreased renal excretion, increased tissue breakdown)
 - Ca^{2+} (rare; happens during recovery phase after rhabdomyolysis-induced AKI or in settings where hypercalcemia contributes to renal failure, such as in multiple myeloma or sarcoidosis)
 - uric acid
- low
 - Na^+ (failure to excrete excessive water intake)
 - Ca^{2+} (decreased Vit D activation, hyperphosphatemia, hypoalbuminemia)
 - HCO_3^- (especially with sepsis or severe heart failure)

3. Uremic Syndrome

- manifestations result from retention of urea and other metabolites as well as hormone deficiencies

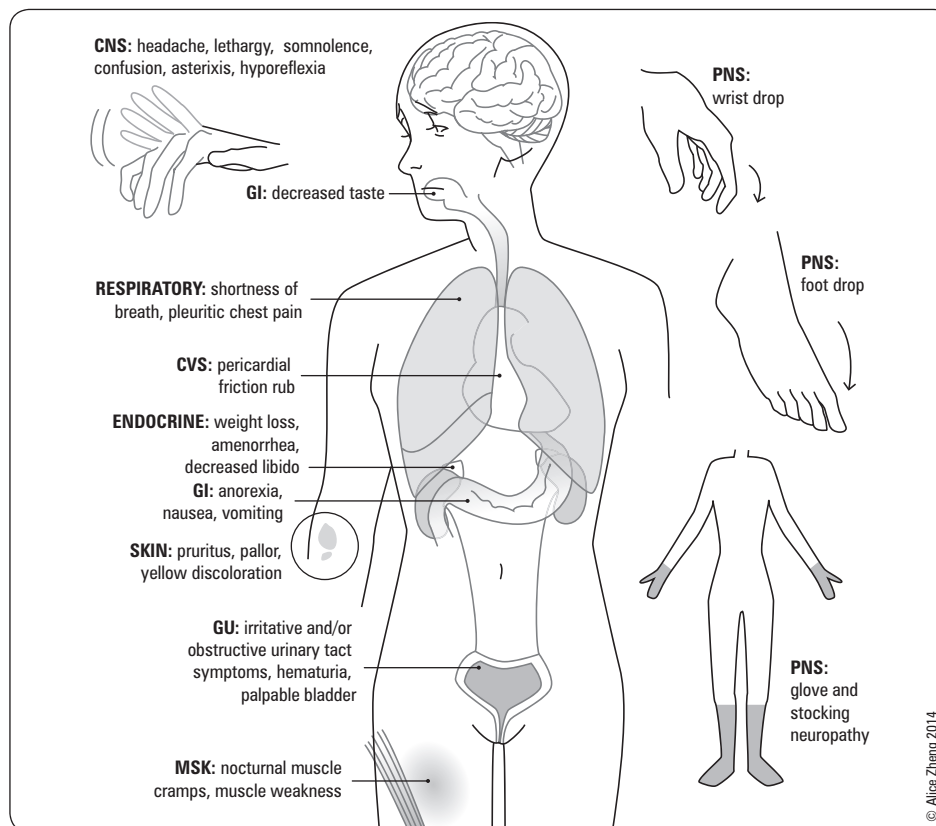


Figure 19. Signs and symptoms of end stage renal disease

Complications

- CNS: decreased LOC, stupor, seizure
- CVS: cardiomyopathy, CHF, arrhythmia, pericarditis, atherosclerosis
- GI: peptic ulcer disease, gastroduodenitis, AVM
- hematologic: anemia, bleeding tendency (platelet dysfunction), infections
- endocrine
 - decreased testosterone, estrogen, progesterone
 - increased FSH, LH
- metabolic
 - renal osteodystrophy: secondary increased PTH due to decreased Ca^{2+} , high PO_4^{3-} , and low active vitamin D
 - ♦ osteitis fibrosa cystica
 - hypertriglyceridemia, accelerated atherogenesis
 - decreased insulin requirements, increased insulin resistance
- dermatologic: pruritus, ecchymosis, hematoma, calciphylaxis (vascular Ca^{2+} deposition)

Renal Replacement Therapy

Dialysis

Indications for Dialysis in Chronic Kidney Disease

Table 14. Indications for Dialysis

Absolute Indications	Relative Indications
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Volume overload* • Hyperkalemia* • Severe metabolic acidosis* • Neurologic signs or symptoms of uremia (encephalopathy, neuropathy, seizures) • Uremic pericarditis • Refractory accelerated HTN • Clinically significant bleeding diathesis • Persistent severe N/V • Plasma Cr > 12 mg/dL (1060 $\mu\text{mol/L}$) or Urea > 100 mg/dL (36 mEq/L; clinical picture also important) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anorexia • Decreased cognitive functioning • Profound fatigue and weakness • Severe anemia unresponsive to erythropoietin • Persistent severe pruritus • Restless leg syndrome

*Unresponsive to medications

- **hemodialysis:** blood is filtered across a semipermeable membrane removing accumulated toxic waste products, solutes, excess fluid (ultrafiltration), and restoring buffering agents to the bloodstream
 - available as intermittent (e.g. 3x/wk), continuous (CVVHD) or sustained low efficiency (SLED)
 - can be delivered at home or in-center, nocturnal
 - vascular access can be achieved through a central line, an artificial graft, or an AV fistula
- patients with CKD should be referred for surgery to attempt construction of a primary AV fistula when their eGFR is <20 mL/min, the serum Cr level quoted as >4.0 mg/dL (>350 $\mu\text{mol/L}$), or within 1 yr of an anticipated need
- **peritoneal dialysis:** peritoneum acts as a semipermeable membrane similar to hemodialysis filter
 - advantages: independence, fewer stringent dietary restrictions, better rehabilitation rates
 - available as continuous ambulatory (CAPD; four exchanges per day) or cyclic (CCPD; machine carries out exchanges overnight)
- refer patients with chronic renal disease to a nephrologist early on to facilitate treatment and plan in advance for renal replacement therapy (RRT)



How to Write Dialysis Orders (MUST BE INDIVIDUALIZED)

- Filter Type (e.g. F80)
- Length (e.g. 4 h 3x/wk or 2 h daily)
- Q Blood Flow (max 500 cc/min)
- Ultrafiltration (e.g. 2 L or to target dry weight)
- Na^+ 140 (can be adjusted by starting at 155 and "ramping" down to minimize cramping)
- K^+ (based on serum K^+)

Serum K^+	Dialysate
4-6	1.5
3.5-4	2.5
<3.5	3.5
- Ca^{2+} 1.25
- HCO_3^- 40
- Heparin (none, tight [500 U/h] or full [1000 U/h])
- IV fluid to support BP (e.g. N/S)

Table 15. Peritoneal Dialysis vs. Hemodialysis

	Peritoneal Dialysis	Hemodialysis
Rate	Slow	Fast
Location	Home	Hospital (usually)
Ultrafiltration	Osmotic pressure via dextrose dialysate	Hydrostatic pressure
Solute Removal	Concentration gradient and convection	Concentration gradient and convection
Membrane	Peritoneum	Semi-permeable artificial membrane
Method	Indwelling catheter in peritoneal cavity	Line from vessel to artificial kidney
Complications	Infection at catheter site Bacterial peritonitis Metabolic effects of glucose Difficult to achieve adequate clearance in patients with large body mass	Vascular access (clots, collapse) Bacteremia Bleeding due to heparin Hemodynamic stress of extracorporeal circuit Disequilibrium syndrome (headache, cerebral edema, hypotension, nausea, muscle cramps related to solute/water flux over short time)
Preferred When	Young, high functioning, residual renal function Success depends on presence of residual renal function	Bed-bound, comorbidities, no renal function Residual renal function not as important

Renal Transplantation

- provides maximum replacement of GFR
- preferred modality of RRT in CKD, not AKI
 - best way to reverse uremic signs and symptoms
 - only therapy shown to improve survival in CKD patients with ESRD
- native kidneys usually left *in situ*
- 2 types: deceased donor, living donor (related or unrelated)
- kidney transplanted into iliac fossa, transplant renal artery anastomosed to external iliac artery of recipient
- 1 yr renal allograft survival rates $\geq 90\%$

Complications

- leading causes of late allograft loss: interstitial fibrosis/tubular atrophy (IFTA) and death with functioning graft
- #1 cause of mortality in transplanted patients is cardiovascular disease
- immunosuppressant drug therapy: side effects include infections, malignancy (skin, Kaposi's sarcoma, post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder)
- acute rejection: graft site tenderness, rise in Cr, oliguria, \pm fever, although symptoms are uncommon
- *de novo* GN (usually membranous)
- new-onset DM (often due to prednisone use)
- cyclosporine or tacrolimus nephropathy (refer to *Small Vessel Disease*, NP18)
- chronic allograft nephropathy
 - early allograft damage caused by episodes of acute rejection and acute peritransplant injuries
 - immunologic and nonimmunologic factors (HTN, hyperlipidemia, age of donor, quality of graft, new onset DM)
 - transplant glomerulopathy from antibody injury causes nephrotic proteinuria
- CMV (cytomegalovirus) infection and other opportunistic infections usually occur between 1 and 6 mo post-transplant
- BK virus (polyoma virus) nephropathy can result from over-immunosuppression and lead to graft loss



When to Initiate Dialysis

CrCl < 20 mL/min

- Educate patient regarding dialysis; if not a candidate for peritoneal dialysis, make arrangements for AV fistula

CrCl < 15 mL/min

- Weigh risk and benefits for initiating dialysis

CrCl < 10 mL/min

- Dialysis should be initiated

NOTE

- Cockcroft-Gault equation (or MDRD equation) should be used to measure kidney function
- Monitor for uremic complications
- Significant benefits in quality of life can occur if dialysis started before CrCl < 15 mL/min
- It is unclear whether patients who start dialysis early have increased survival
- A preemptive transplant can be considered if patient is stable, in order to avoid dialysis

Source: National Kidney Foundation Kidney Disease Outcomes Quality Initiative.



Commonly Used Immunosuppressive Drugs

Calcineurin inhibitors

- Cyclosporine
- Tacrolimus

Antiproliferative medications

- Mycophenolate mofetil
- Azathioprine

Other agents

- Sirolimus
- Prednisone

Anti-lymphocyte antibodies

- Thymoglobulin
- Basiliximab



Survival Among Nocturnal Home Haemodialysis Patients Compared to Kidney Transplant Recipients

Nephrol Dial Transplant 2009;24:2915-2919

Study: Retrospective, matched cohort with 4-5 yr average follow up.

Population: 177 nocturnal home dialysis (NHD) patients (mean age 46, 68% white) were matched to 533 deceased donor transplant (DTX) patients and 533 live donor (LTX) transplant patients (1:3:3 ratio).

Intervention: Nocturnal home dialysis vs. live or deceased donor transplant.



Outcome: Primary outcome was all cause mortality.

Results: No significant difference in survival or hazard ratio between NHD and DTX. Significant survival benefit for patients undergoing LTX vs. NHD. Significant mortality hazard ratio reduction with LTX (0.51) with no difference in hazard ratio for DTX vs. NHD reference.

Conclusion: NHD has comparable mortality to DTX, but is inferior to LTX.

Common Medications

Table 16. Common Medications in Nephrology

Classification	Examples	Site of Action	Mechanism of Action (Secondary Effect)	Indication	Dosing	Adverse Effects
Loop Diuretics	furosemide (Lasix®) bumetanide (Bumex®/Buinex®) ethacrynate (Edecrin®) torsemide (Demadex®)	Thick ascending limb of Loop of Henle	↓ Na ⁺ /K ⁺ /2Cl ⁻ transport ± renal and peripheral vasodilatory effects (K ⁺ loss; ↑ H ⁺ secretion; ↑ Ca ²⁺ excretion)	Management of edema secondary to CHF, nephrotic syndrome, cirrhotic ascites; ↑ free water clearance (e.g. in SIADH-induced hyponatremia), ↓ BP (less effective due to short action)	furosemide: edema: 20-80 mg IV/IM/PO q6-8h (max 600 mg/d) until desired response HTN: 20-80 mg/d PO OD/bid dosing	Allergy in sulfa-sensitive individuals Electrolyte abnormalities; hypokalemia, hyponatremia, hypocalcemia, hypercalciuria (with stone formation) Volume depletion with metabolic alkalosis Precipitates gouty attacks
Thiazide Diuretics	hydrochlorothiazide (HCTZ) chlorothiazide (Diuril®) indapamide (Lozol®, Lozide®) metolazone (Zaroxolyn®) chlorthalidone (Hygroton®)	Distal convoluted tubule	Inhibit Na ⁺ /Cl ⁻ transporter (K ⁺ loss; ↑ H ⁺ secretion; ↓ Ca ²⁺ excretion)	1st line for essential HTN Treatment of edema Idiopathic hypercalciuria and stones Diabetes insipidus (nephrogenic)	HCTZ: edema: 25-100 mg PO OD HTN: 12.5-25 mg PO OD (max 50 mg/d) nephrolithiasis/hypercalciuria: 25-100 mg OD	Hypokalemia Increased serum urate levels Precipitates gouty attacks, hypercalcemia Elevated lipids Glucose intolerance
Potassium-Sparing Diuretics	spironolactone (Aldactone®) triaterene (Dyrenium®) amiloride (Midamor®)	Cortical collecting duct (↓ Na ⁺ reabsorption)	Aldosterone antagonist Closes apical Na ⁺ channels directly	Reduces K ⁺ loss caused by other diuretics Edema/hypervolemia Severe CHF, ascites (spironolactone), cystic fibrosis (amiloride ↓ viscosity of secretions)	spironolactone: 25-200 mg/d OD/bid dosing HTN: 50-200 mg/d OD/bid dosing Hyperaldosteronism: 100-400 mg/d OD/bid dosing amiloride: edema/HTN: 5-10 mg PO OD	Hyperkalemia (caution with ACEI) Triamterene can be nephrotoxic (rare) Nephrolithiasis Gynecomastia (estrogenic effect of spironolactone)
Combination Agents	Dyazide® (triamterene + HCTZ) Aldactazide® (spironolactone + HCTZ) Moduretic® (amiloride + HCTZ) Vaseretic® (enalapril + HCTZ) Zestoretic® (lisinopril + HCTZ)		Combine ACEI with thiazide for synergistic effect	Combine K ⁺ -sparing drug with thiazide to reduce hypokalemia		
Osmotic Diuretics	mannitol (Osmitol®) glycerol urea	Renal tubules (proximal and collecting duct)	Non-reabsorbable solutes increase osmotic pressure of glomerular filtrate – inhibits reabsorption of water and ↑ urinary excretion of toxic materials	To ↓ intracranial or intraocular pressure Mobilization of excess fluid in renal failure or edematous states	mannitol: ↓ ICP: 0.25-2 g/kg IV over 30-60 min	Transient volume expansion Electrolyte abnormalities (↓/↑ Na ⁺ , ↓/↑ K ⁺)
ACEI	ramipril (Altace®) enalapril (Vasotec®) lisinopril (Prinivil®) trandolapril (Mavik®) captopril (Capoten®)	Lungs Tissues diffusely	Prevents angiotensin II vasoconstricting vascular smooth muscle → net vasodilation → ↓ BP Prevents angiotensin II mediated aldosterone release from adrenal cortex and action on proximal renal tubules → ↑ Na ⁺ and H ₂ O excretion → ↓ BP Reduces fibrosis and atherogenesis	HTN Cardioprotective effects (see Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery) Renoprotective effects 	ramipril: HTN: 2.5-20 mg PO OD/bid dosing renoprotective use: 10 mg PO OD trandolapril: HTN: 1-4 mg PO OD	Cough Asthma Hyperkalemia Angioedema Agranulocytosis (captopril) AKI Teratogenic
ARB	losartan (Cozaar®) candesartan (Atacand®) irbesartan (Avapro®) valsartan (Diovan®) telmisartan (Micardis®) eprosartan (Teveten®) olmesartan (Olmetec®)	Vascular smooth muscle, adrenal cortex, proximal tubules	Competitive inhibitor at the angiotensin II receptor: prevents angiotensin II vasoconstricting action on vascular smooth muscle → ↓ BP Prevents angiotensin II mediated aldosterone release from adrenal cortex and action on proximal renal tubules → ↑ Na ⁺ and H ₂ O excretion	HTN Cardioprotective effects (see Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery) Renoprotective effects 	HTN: losartan 25-100 mg PO OD candesartan 8-32 mg PO OD irbesartan 150-300 mg PO OD valsartan 80-320 mg PO OD telmisartan 20-80 mg PO OD eprosartan 400-800 mg PO OD olmesartan 20-40 mg PO OD	Hyperkalemia Caution – reduce dose in hepatic impairment AKI Teratogenic
Renin Antagonists	aliskiren (Rasilez®)	Direct renin antagonist	Inhibits renin production and activity Cardioprotective and renoprotective abilities being evaluated	HTN	aliskiren 150-300 mg PO OD	Hyperkalemia

Landmark Nephrology Trials

Trial	Reference	Results
4D	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 353:238-48	Patients with type 2 DM receiving maintenance hemodialysis were randomized to 20 mg of atorvastatin per day or matching placebo; no difference in composite index of death from cardiac causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, and stroke
AASK	<i>JAMA</i> 2001; 285:2719-28	Ramipril, compared with amlodipine, slows progression of hypertensive renal disease and proteinuria and may benefit patients without proteinuria as well
ACCOMPLISH	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 359:2417-20	Combination treatment with an ACEI and a CCB (benazepril-amlodipine) was more successful than a combination of ACEI and a thiazide diuretic (benzapril-HCTZ) in reducing cardiovascular events in patients with HTN who were at risk for such events
ACEI and Diabetic	<i>NEJM</i> 1993; 329:1456-62	Captopril protects against deterioration in renal function in insulin-dependent diabetic nephropathy and is significantly more effective than blood pressure control alone
ALERT	<i>Lancet</i> 2003; 361:2024-31	The use of fluvastatin in renal transplant recipients did not significantly decrease the risk of the occurrence of a major adverse cardiac event (defined as cardiac death, non-fatal MI, or coronary intervention procedure) compared with placebo; however, there was a significant reduction in cardiac deaths or non-fatal MI
ALTITUDE	Early Termination (Unpublished Results; protocol – <i>NDT</i> 2009; 24:1663-71)	Combining Aliskiren with ACEI or ARB in high-risk patients with type 2 DM leads to increased incidence of nonfatal stroke, hyperkalemia, and hypotension
ASTRAL	<i>NEJM</i> 2009; 361:1953-62	Renal artery revascularization compared to medical therapy does not improve renal function, BP, renal or cardiovascular events, or mortality, and carries significant operative risks
AURORA	<i>NEJM</i> 2009; 360:1395-407	Patients receiving maintenance hemodialysis randomized to rosuvastatin 10 mg daily or placebo; rosuvastatin lowered the LDL cholesterol level but had no significant effect on the composite primary end point of death from cardiovascular causes, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or nonfatal stroke
BENEDICT	<i>NEJM</i> 2004; 351:1941-51	Treatment with ACEI trandolapril alone or trandolapril combined with verapamil decreased the incidence of microalbuminuria in patients with type 2 DM and HTN with normoalbuminuria
CHOIR	<i>NEJM</i> 2006; 355:2085-98	Patients with CKD were randomly assigned to receive a dose of epoetin alfa targeted to achieve a hemoglobin level of 13.5 g/dL or 11.3 g/dL; the higher target group had an increased risk of death, myocardial infarction, hospitalization for congestive heart failure (without renal replacement therapy), or stroke
CREATE	<i>NEJM</i> 2006; 355:2071-84	Patients with CKD (15-35 mL/min) and mild to moderate anemia (11-12.5 g/dL) were randomized to normal (13-15 g/dL) or sub-normal (10.5-11.5 g/dL) hemoglobin levels; early and complete correction of hemoglobin did not reduce the risk of cardiovascular events
DETAIL	<i>NEJM</i> 2004; 351:1952-61	The ARB telmisartan and the ACEI enalapril are equally effective in slowing renal function deterioration in type 2 DM with mild to moderate HTN and early nephropathy
ELITE-SYMPHONY	<i>NEJM</i> 2007; 357:2562-75	Daclizumab induction, MMF, steroids, and low-dose tacrolimus effectively maintain stable renal function following renal transplantation, without the negative effects on renal function commonly reported for standard CNI regimens
FHN	<i>NEJM</i> 2010;363:2287-300	Patients were randomized to dialysis 6x/wk (frequent) or 3x/wk (conventional); frequent hemodialysis was associated with improvement in composite outcomes of death, or change in left ventricular mass and death, or change in a physical-health composite score; frequent hemodialysis caused more frequent interventions related to vascular access
HEMO	<i>NEJM</i> 2002; 347:2010-19	Use of high dose dialysis or high flux membranes vs. standard dose or low flux in thrice-weekly dialysis does not improve survival or outcomes; possible benefit in cardiac-related outcomes with high flux membranes
IDEAL	<i>NEJM</i> 2010; 363:609-19	Patients with progressive CKD and GFR between 10 and 15 mL/min randomized to initiate dialysis at GFR of 10-14 mL/min (early) or 5-7 mL/min (late); early initiation of dialysis in patients with stage G5 CKD was not associated with an improvement in survival or clinical outcomes
IDNT	<i>NEJM</i> 2001; 345:851-60	Treatment with irbesartan reduced the risk of developing end-stage renal disease and worsening renal function in patients with type 2 DM and diabetic nephropathy
IRMA	<i>NEJM</i> 2001; 345:870-8	Irbesartan is renoprotective independently of its blood pressure lowering effect in patients with type 2 DM and microalbuminuria
MDRD	<i>Ann Intern Med</i> 1995; 123:754-62	Patients with proteinuria of more than 1 g/d should have a target BP <125/75 mmHg; patients with proteinuria of 0.25-1.0 g/d should have a target BP <130/80 mmHg
ONTARGET	<i>Lancet</i> 2008; 372:547-53	Telmisartan and ramipril monotherapy reduced proteinuria and rise in Cr in patients with high vascular risk; combination of the two agents led to increased acute renal failure episodes, syncope, and hypotension
REIN	<i>Lancet</i> 1999; 354:359-64	In non-diabetic nephropathy, ACEI were renoprotective in patients with non-nephrotic range proteinuria
REIN2	<i>Lancet</i> 2005; 365:939-46	In non-diabetic nephropathy already on ACEI, no further benefit from intensified BP control (sBP/dBP <130/80 mmHg) by adding a CCB vs. conventional BP control (dBP <90 mmHg) on ACEI alone
RENAAL	<i>NEJM</i> 2001; 345:861-9	Losartan conferred significant renal benefits in patients with type 2 DM and nephropathy and was generally well-tolerated
RENAL	<i>NEJM</i> 2009; 361:1627-38	High intensity continuous renal-replacement therapy in AKI does not improve survival or outcomes compared to low intensity treatment, and is associated with higher rates of hypophosphatemia

Trial	Reference	Results
ROAD	<i>JASN</i> 2007; 18:1889-98	Uptitration of either ACEI benazepril or ARB losartan to optimal anti-proteinuria doses conferred benefit on renal outcome in patients without DM who had proteinuria and renal insufficiency
ROADMAP	<i>NEJM</i> 2011; 364:907-17	The use of the ARB olmesartan was more effective than placebo in delaying the onset of microalbuminuria in patients with type 2 DM, normoalbuminuria, and good blood pressure control; however, a higher rate of fatal cardiovascular events was found amongst patients with preexisting coronary heart disease in the olmesartan group
SHARP	<i>Lancet</i> 2011; 377:2181-92	Randomized placebo-controlled trial in patients with CKD and no history of MI or coronary revascularization took simvastatin 20 mg plus ezetimibe 10 mg daily vs. matching placebo; simvastatin 20 mg plus ezetimibe 10 mg daily resulted in reduction of LDL cholesterol with associated reduction of major atherosclerotic events in patients with CKD
TREAT	<i>NEJM</i> 2009; 361:2019-32	Patients with type 2 DM, CKD, and anemia were randomized to darbepoetin targeting a hemoglobin of 13 g/dL or placebo; darbepoetin did not reduce the risk of death, a cardiovascular event, or a renal event, and was associated with an increased risk of stroke

References

- Adler SG, Salant DJ. An outline of essential topics in glomerular pathophysiology, diagnosis and treatment for nephrology trainees. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2003;42:395-418.
- Androgué HJ, Madias NM. Management of life threatening acid-base disorders part I. *NEJM* 1999;338:26-33.
- Androgué HJ, Madias NM. Management of life threatening acid-base disorders part II. *NEJM* 1999;338:107-111.
- Androgué HJ, Madias NE. Hyponatremia. *NEJM* 2000;342:1581-1589.
- Barnett AH, Bain SC, Bouter P, et al. Angiotensin-receptor blockade vs. converting-enzyme inhibition in type 2 diabetes and nephropathy. *NEJM* 2004;351:1952-1961.
- Brenner BM, Cooper ME, de Zeeuw D, et al. Effects of losartan on renal cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes and nephropathy. *NEJM* 2001;345:861-869.
- Churchill DN, Blacke PG, Jindal KK, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for initiation of dialysis. Canadian Society of Nephrology. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 1999;10(Suppl 13):S238-291.
- Donadio JV, Grande JP. Medical progress: IgA nephropathy. *NEJM* 2002;347:738-748.
- Gabow PA. Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *NEJM* 1993;329:332-342.
- Greenberg AR. Primer on kidney diseases, 3rd ed. San Diego: Academic Press, 2001.
- Hakim R, Lazarus M. Initiation of dialysis. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 1995;6:1319-1328.
- Halperin ML, Goldstein MB, Kersey R, et al. Fluid, electrolyte, and acid-base physiology: a problem-based approach, 3rd ed. New York: Harcourt Brace, 1998.
- Halperin M, Kamel K. Potassium. *Lancet* 1998;352:135-140.
- Hudson BG, Tryggvason K, Sundaramoorthy M, et al. Mechanisms of disease: Alport's syndrome, goodpasture's syndrome, and type IV collagen. *NEJM* 2003;348:2543-2556.
- Johnson CA, Levey AS, Coresh J, et al. Clinical practice guidelines for chronic kidney disease in adults: Part II. Glomerular filtration rate, proteinuria, and other markers. *Am Fam Phys* 2004;70:1091-1097.
- Johnson RJ, Feehally J (editors). Comprehensive clinical nephrology. New York: Mosby, 1999.
- K/DOQI clinical practice guidelines for chronic kidney disease: evaluation, classification, and stratification: 2000 executive update. Available from: <http://www.kidney.org/professionals/dogi/kdogi/toc.htm>.
- Keane WF, Garabed E. Proteinuria, albuminuria, risk assessment, detection, elimination (PARADE): a position paper of the National Kidney Foundation. *Amer J Kid Dis* 1999;33:1004-1010.
- Lewis EJ, Hunsicker LG, Bain RP, et al. The effects of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibition on diabetic nephropathy. *NEJM* 1993;329:1456-1462.
- McFarlane P, Tobe S, Houlden R, et al. Nephropathy: Canadian Diabetes Association clinical practice guidelines expert committee. 2003. Available from: <http://www.diabetes.ca/cpg2003/downloads/nephropathy.pdf>.S66-S71.
- Myers A. Medicine, 4th ed. Baltimore: Lipincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001.
- ONTARGET Investigators. Telmisartan, ramipril, or both in patients at high risk for vascular events. *NEJM* 2008;358:1547-1559.
- Schiff H, Lang SM, Fischer R. Daily hemodialysis and the outcome of acute renal failure. *NEJM* 2002;346:305-310.
- Schreiber M. Seminars for year 3 University of Toronto Medicine clinical clerks on medicine: hyponatremia and hypernatremia. October 29, 2002.
- Smith K. Renal disease: a conceptual approach. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 1987.
- Thadhani R, Pascual M, Bonventre JV. Acute renal failure. *NEJM* 1996;334:1448-1460.

Ayan Dey, Nardin Samuel, and Louise Guolla, chapter editors

Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Tina Hu, EBM editor

Dr. Esther Bui, Dr. Brian J. Murray, and Dr. David Tang-Wai, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Tumors of the Nervous System	
The Neurological Exam	2	Movement Disorders	28
General Exam and Mental Status		Overview of Movement Disorders	
Cranial Nerves Exam		Function of the Basal Ganglia	
Motor Exam		Movement Disorders	
Sensory Exam		Parkinson's Disease	
Coordination Exam and Gait		Other Parkinsonian Disorders	
Basic Anatomy Review	4	Huntington's Disease	
Lumbar Puncture	7	Dystonia	
Approach to Common Presentations	7	Tic Disorders	
Weakness		Tourette's Syndrome	
Numbness/Altered Sensation		Cerebellar Disorders	33
Cranial Nerve Deficits	8	Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome	
CN I: Olfactory		Cerebellar Ataxias	
CN II: Optic		Vertigo	OT12
CN III: Oculomotor		Gait Disturbances	34
CN IV: Trochlear		Motor Neuron Disease	35
CN V: Trigeminal		Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis	
CN VI: Abducens		Other Motor Neuron Diseases	
CN VII: Facial		Peripheral Neuropathies	35
CN VIII: Vestibulocochlear		Neuromuscular Junction Diseases	37
CN IX: Glossopharyngeal		Clinical Approach	
CN X: Vagus		Myasthenia Gravis	
CN XI: Accessory		Lambert-Eaton Myasthenic Syndrome	
CN XII: Hypoglossal		Botulism	
NEURO-OPHTHALMOLOGY		Myopathies	39
Abnormalities of Vision	12	Clinical Approach	
Acute Visual Loss		Polymyositis/Dermatomyositis	
Optic Neuritis		Myotonic Dystrophy	
Anterior Ischemic Optic Neuropathy		Duchenne and Becker Muscular Dystrophy	
Amaurosis Fugax		Pain Syndromes	40
Central Retinal Vein Occlusion		Approach to Pain Syndromes	
Optic Disc Edema		Neuropathic Pain	
Optic Disc Atrophy		Tic Douloureux (Trigeminal Neuralgia)	
Abnormalities of Visual Field	13	Postherpetic Neuralgia	
Abnormalities of Eye Movements	13	Painful Diabetic Neuropathy	
Disorders of Gaze		Complex Regional Pain Syndromes	
Internuclear Ophthalmoplegia		Headache	43
Diplopia		Migraine Headaches	
Nystagmus		Sleep Disorders	45
Abnormalities of Pupils	14	Overview of Sleep	
Nutritional Deficiencies and Toxic Injuries	15	Disturbances of Alertness and Sleep	
Seizure Disorders and Epilepsy	16	CNS Infections	ID19
Seizure		Spinal Cord Syndromes	NS27
Status Epilepticus		Stroke	47
Disorders of Consciousness	18	Terminology	
Behavioral Neurology	19	Pathophysiology	
Acute Confusional State/Delirium		Assessment and Treatment of Ischemic Stroke	
Major Neurocognitive Disorder (formerly Dementia)		Primary and Secondary Prevention of	
Major or Mild Neurocognitive Disorder due to		Ischemic Stroke	
Alzheimer's Disease		Cerebral Hemorrhage	
Major or Mild Neurocognitive Disorder with Lewy		Multiple Sclerosis	52
Bodies (formerly Dementia with Lewy Bodies)		Common Medications	54
Major or Mild Frontotemporal Neurocognitive		Landmark Neurology Trials	56
Disorder (formerly Frontotemporal Dementia)		References	56
Major or Mild Vascular Neurocognitive Disorder			
Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease			
Normal Pressure Hydrocephalus			
Aphasia			
Apraxia			
Agnosia			
Mild Traumatic Brain Injury	27		
Neuro-Oncology	28		
Paraneoplastic Syndrome			

Acronyms

ACA	anterior cerebral artery	DLB	dementia with Lewy bodies	LGB	lateral geniculate body	PD	Parkinson's disease
AD	Alzheimer's disease	EOM	extraocular movement	LMN	lower motor neuron	PICA	posterior inferior cerebral artery
ADL	activities of daily living	FEF	frontal eye field	LOC	level of consciousness	PLMS	periodic limb movement in sleep
AED	antiepileptic drugs	FTD	frontotemporal dementia	LP	lumbar puncture	PPA	primary progressive aphasia
AION	acute ischemic optic neuropathy	GBS	Guillain-Barré syndrome	MCA	middle cerebral artery	PPRF	paramedian pontine reticular formation
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	GCA	giant cell arteritis	MG	myasthenia gravis	RAPD	relative afferent pupillary defect
AVM	arteriovenous malformation	GCS	Glasgow coma scale	MLF	medial longitudinal fasciculus	REM	rapid eye movement
AVPU	alert, verbal, pain, unresponsive	IADL	instrumental activities of daily living	MMSE	mini mental status examination	RLS	restless legs syndrome
CJD	Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease	ICH	intracranial hemorrhage	MoCA	Montreal cognitive assessment	ROM	range of motion
CN	cranial nerve	ICP	intracranial pressure	MS	multiple sclerosis	SAH	subarachnoid hemorrhage
CRVO	central retinal vein occlusion	IIH	idiopathic intracranial hypertension	NCS	nerve conduction studies	TBI	traumatic brain injury
CSF	cerebral spinal fluid	IVIg	intravenous immunoglobulin	NPH	normal pressure hydrocephalus	TIA	transient ischemic attack
DBS	deep brain stimulation	LEMS	Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome	PComm	posterior communicating artery	UMN	upper motor neuron
						VEGF	vascular endothelial growth factor

The Neurological Exam

General Exam and Mental Status

- vitals:** pulse (especially rhythm), BP, temperature
- H&N:** meningismus, head injury/bruises (signs of basal skull fracture: Battle's sign, raccoon eyes, hemotympanum, CSF rhinorrhea/otorrhea), tongue biting
- CVS:** carotid bruits, heart murmurs
- mental status:** orientation (person, place, time), LOC (GCS)
 - GCS/15 – Motor/6, Verbal/5 (T= intubated), Eyes/4
- cognition**
 - Folstein MMSE – /30 (note: dementia is a clinical diagnosis and is not diagnosed by cognitive testing)
 - MoCA – /30 (≥26 is considered normal)
 - frontal lobe testing (for perseveration)
 - clock drawing

Cranial Nerves Exam

- olfactory (CN I):** odor sensation (test each nostril separately)
- optic (CN II)**
 - visual acuity: test each eye individually using best corrected vision
 - visual fields
 - pupil: direct and consensual pupillary reaction (afferent limb), accommodation, swinging flashlight test (see *Relative Afferent Pupillary Defect*, [Ophthalmology, OP33](#))
 - fundoscopy: optic disc edema, optic disc pallor, venous pulsations, hemorrhages
- extraocular movements (EOM)**
 - oculomotor (CN III):** levator palpebrae superioris, medial rectus, superior rectus, inferior rectus, inferior oblique, efferent limb of pupillary light response
 - trochlear (CN IV):** superior oblique
 - abducens (CN VI):** lateral rectus
- trigeminal (CN V)**
 - sensory: V1 (above supraorbital ridge), V2 (buccal area), V3 (mandible), corneal reflex (afferent)
 - motor: temporalis, masseter, pterygoids, jaw jerk reflex
- facial (CN VII)**
 - sensorimotor: muscles of facial expression, hyperacusis (stapedius), corneal reflex (efferent)
 - visceral sensory: taste of anterior 2/3 of tongue
 - visceral motor: salivary and lacrimal glands
- vestibulocochlear (CN VIII)**
 - vestibular: nystagmus, caloric reflexes
 - cochlear: Rinne, Weber
- glossopharyngeal (CN IX) and vagus (CN X):** palatal elevation, gag reflex, vocal cord function, swallowing, taste at posterior third of tongue
- accessory (CN XI):** trapezius and sternocleidomastoid strength
- hypoglossal (CN XII):** tongue muscle bulk, fasciculations, strength

Motor Exam

- bulk:** atrophy, asymmetry
- abnormal movements:** asymmetry of movement (suggests weakness, e.g. satellite sign), tremors, chorea, dystonia, dyskinesia, hemiballism, myoclonus, athetosis, tics, fasciculations
- abnormal posturing:** decerebrate, decorticate
- tone:** hypotonia (flaccid), hypertonia (spasticity, rigidity, paratonia), cogwheeling (rigidity + tremor)
- strength**
- reflexes:** deep tendon reflexes, abdominal reflexes, primitive reflexes, Babinski, Hoffman, clonus



Visit Online Atlas for Cranial Nerves Exam, Motor Exam, and Sensory Exam Techniques



Battle's sign = mastoid ecchymosis

Raccoon eyes = periorbital ecchymosis



When testing CN I, avoid noxious smells like ammonia, as this tests CN V



If patient has not brought their glasses, have them look through a pinhole for best corrected vision



CN Innervation of EOM
LR: CN VI, SO: CN IV, Other: CN III



Contraction of the left sternocleidomastoid turns the head right



Calorics: Brainstem Test
Describe nystagmus by direction of fast component

COWS

Cold
Opposite
Warm
Same



Upper Motor Neuron Tests

Babinski Reflex: 'Up-going' big toe ± fanning of toes indicates an UMN lesion

Hoffman Reflex: Flexion of IP joint of the thumb when tapping the nail of the index or ring finger may indicate an UMN lesion if asymmetrical

Pronator Drift: Unable to maintain full arm extension and supination; side of forearm pronation reflects contralateral pyramidal tract lesion, closing eyes accentuates effect

Table 1. Localization of Motor Deficits

	LMN	UMN	Extrapyramidal
Muscle Tone	Flaccid	Spastic	Rigid
Involuntary Movements	Fasciculations	None	None
Reflexes	Decreased	Increased	Normal
Plantar Reflex	Down-going (flexor)	Up-going (extensor)	Down-going (flexor)
Pattern of Muscle Weakness	Proximal, distal, or focal	Upper extremities: extensors weaker than flexors Lower extremities: flexors weaker than extensors	None

Table 2. Overview of Neuromuscular Diseases

	Upper and Lower Motor Neuron Disease	Peripheral Neuropathy	Neuromuscular Junction	Myopathy
SIGNS AND SYMPTOMS				
Weakness	Segmental and asymmetrical, distal → proximal	Distal (except GBS) but may be asymmetrical	Proximal and fatiguable, or weak then recovers (e.g. LEMS)	Proximal
Fasciculations	Yes	Yes	No	No
Reflexes	Increased	Decreased/absent	Normal	Normal (until late)
Sensory	No	Yes	No	No
Autonomic*	No	Yes	No	No
TESTS				
EMG	Denervation and reinnervation	Signs of demyelination ± axonal loss	Decremental response in MG Jitter on single fiber EMG	Small, short motor potentials
NCS	Normal	Abnormal	Normal	Normal
Muscle enzyme	Normal	Normal	Normal	Increased

*e.g. orthostatic hypotension, anhidrosis, visual blurring, urinary hesitancy or incontinence, constipation, erectile dysfunction

Table 3. Approach to Strength Testing of Radiculopathies vs. Peripheral Neuropathies

How to use this table: For each nerve root, learn two (or more) peripheral nerves (and their associated muscles/movements). In radiculopathies, all associated peripheral nerves (and their movements) will be impaired, whereas in peripheral neuropathies, only one of the nerves (and its movement) will be impaired, sparing the other nerve. Particularly useful peripheral nerve "pairs" are bolded for emphasis.

Root	Peripheral Nerve	Movement	Muscle
C5	Axillary	Shoulder abduction	Deltoid
C6	Musculocutaneous (C5/6) Radial (C6)	Elbow flexion Elbow flexion Wrist extension	Biceps Brachioradialis Extensor carpi radialis longus
C7	Radial Posterior interosseus	Elbow extension Finger extension	Triceps Extensor digitorum communis
C8, T1	Median Ulnar	Thumb flexion Thumb abduction Opposition Finger abduction	Flexor pollicis longus (look for thenar wasting) Abductor pollicis brevis (look for thenar wasting) Opponens pollicis (look for thenar wasting) First dorsal interosseus (look for wasting in first dorsal webbed space)
L2, 3, 4	Femoral Obturator	Hip flexion Hip adduction	Iliopsoas Adductor muscles
L3, 4	Femoral (L3/4) Deep peroneal (L4/5)	Knee extension Dorsiflexion	Quadriceps Tibialis anterior
L5	Sciatic (L5, S1) Tibial Superficial peroneal Deep peroneal	Hip extension Ankle inversion Ankle eversion Big toe extension	Gluteus maximus Tibialis posterior Peroneal muscles
S1	Sciatic Tibial	Knee flexion Plantar flexion	Hamstring muscles Gastrocnemius and soleus



Pyramidal Pattern of Muscle Weakness (i.e. UMN)

Weaker arm extensors: shoulder abduction, elbow extension, wrist extension, finger extension, finger abduction

Weaker leg flexors: hip flexion, knee flexion, ankle dorsiflexion



MRC Muscle Strength Scale

- 5 Full power
- 4 Submaximal power against resistance (ranging 4+, 4, 4-)
- 3 Full ROM against gravity without resistance
- 2 Full ROM with gravity removed
- 1 Muscle flicker
- 0 No muscle contraction



Primitive Reflexes

Grasp, palmomental, root, glabellar tap, snout



Deep Tendon Reflexes

Root	Muscle Tendon
C5/6	Biceps
C6	Brachioradialis
C7	Triceps
C8	Finger flexors
L2/3	Hip adductors
L3/4	Knee extensors
S1/2	Plantar flexion



Deep Tendon Reflex Scoring

0	Absent
1+	Depressed
2+	Normal
3+	Increased
4+	Clonus (≥4 beats)

Sensory Exam

- **primary sensation**
 - spinothalamic tract: pain and temperature
 - dorsal column: proprioception and vibration
- **cortical sensation**
 - graphesthesia, stereognosis, extinction, 2-point discrimination

Coordination Exam and Gait

- **coordination exam**
 - finger-to-nose, heel-to-shin, rapid alternating movements
- **stance and gait**
 - gait: antalgic, hemiplegic, ataxic, apraxic, festination, foot drop, broad-based
 - tandem gait (heel-to-toe walking)
 - Romberg test
 - pull test for postural instability

Basic Anatomy Review



Interpreting a Slow or Uncoordinated Rapid Alternating Movement (RAM)

- Slow RAMs without fatiguing is suggestive of weakness (especially if it is asymmetric)
- Slow RAMs with fatiguing (i.e. decreasing amplitude over time) is suggestive of Parkinsonism
- Uncoordinated RAM is suggestive of cerebellar disorder (i.e. ataxia and irregularly irregular rhythm) or ideomotor apraxia



Romberg Test

Stable with eyes open and closed = normal

Stable with eyes open, falls with eyes closed = positive Romberg, suggesting loss of joint position sense



Common Cerebellar Findings

Frontal executive dysfunction/disinhibition, scanning speech, nystagmus, hypo- or hyper-metric saccades, hypotonia, pendular reflexes, terminal tremor, ataxic finger-nose/heel-shin/tandem, wide based stance, positive rebound



See Functional Neuroanatomy software

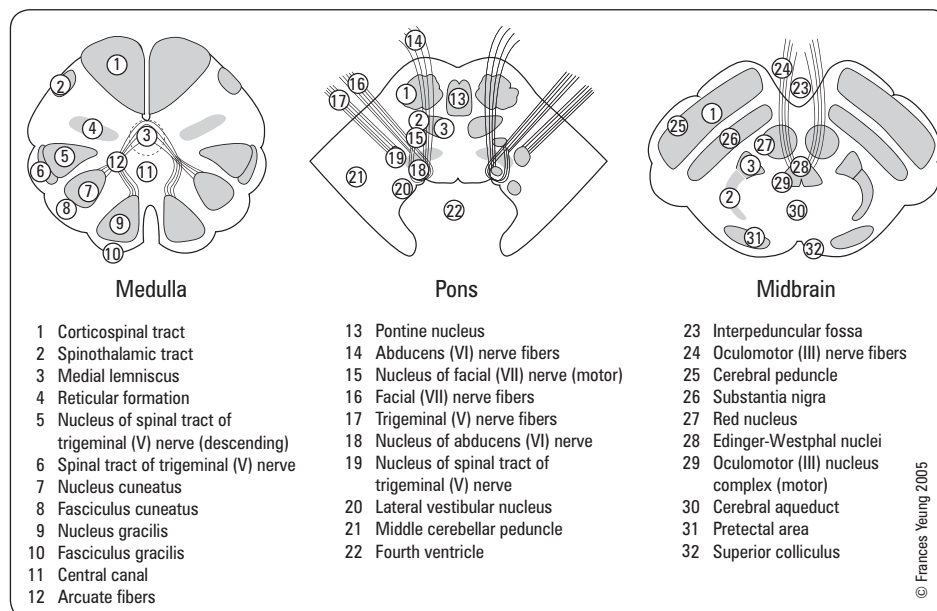


Figure 1. Brainstem (axial view)

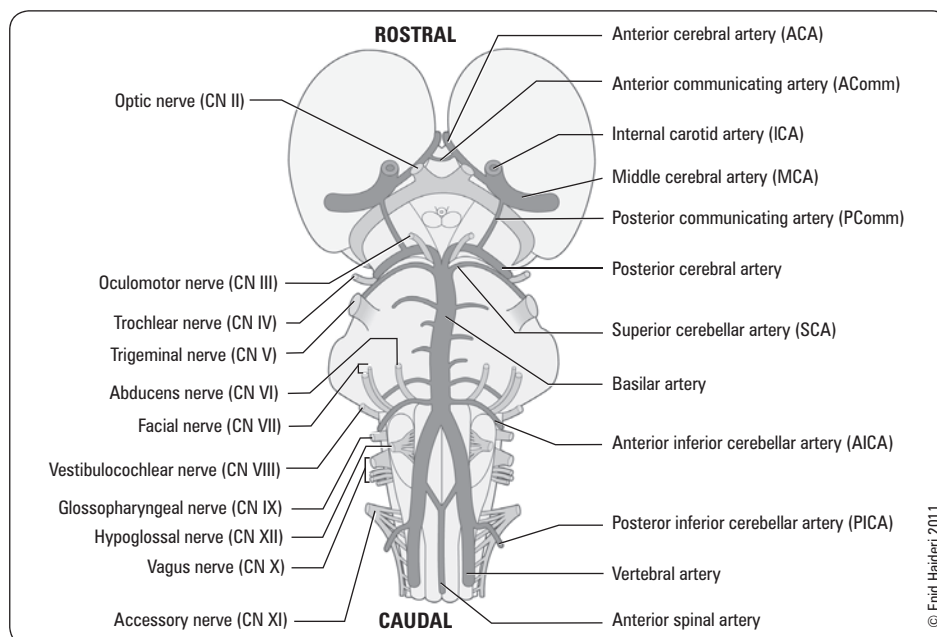


Figure 2. Brainstem (posterior view)

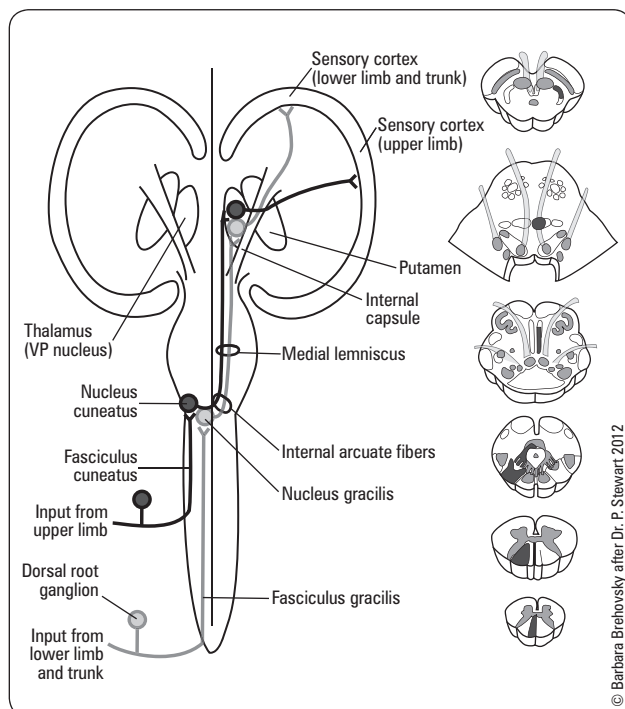


Figure 3. Discriminative touch pathway (dorsal column) from body

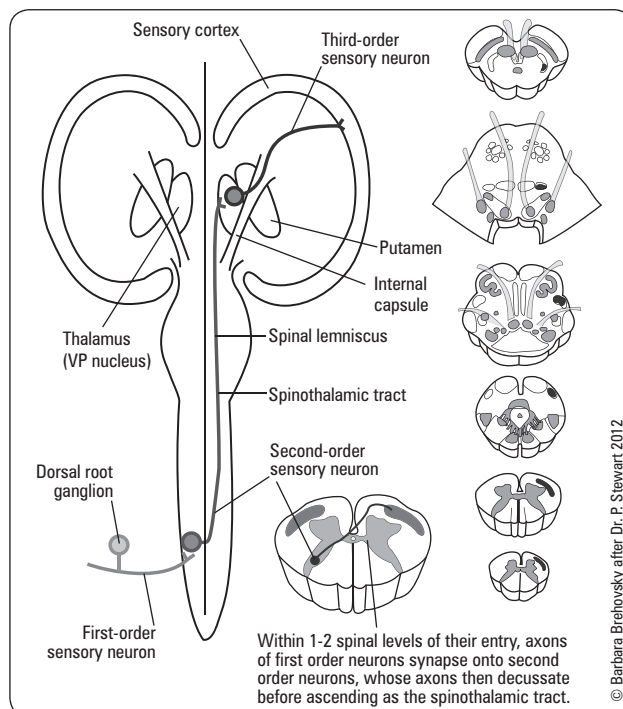


Figure 4. Spinothalamic tract from body

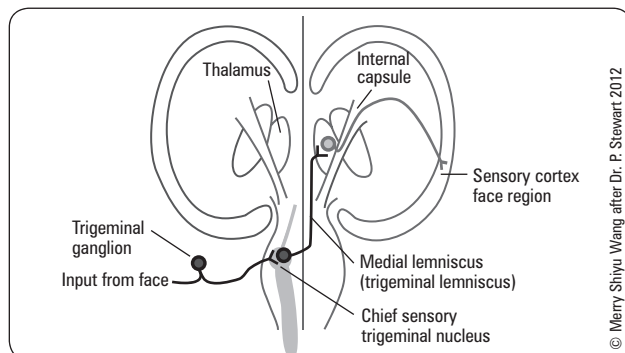


Figure 5. Discriminative touch pathway (dorsal column) from face

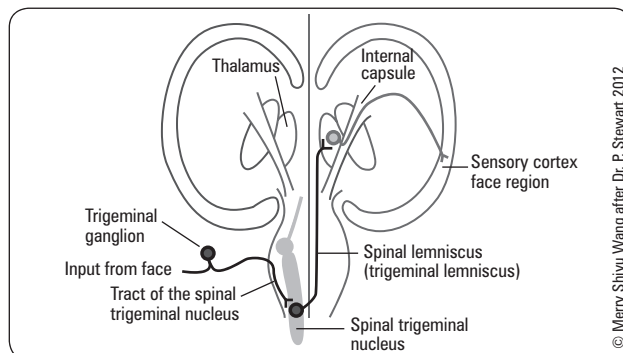


Figure 6. Spinothalamic tract pathway from face

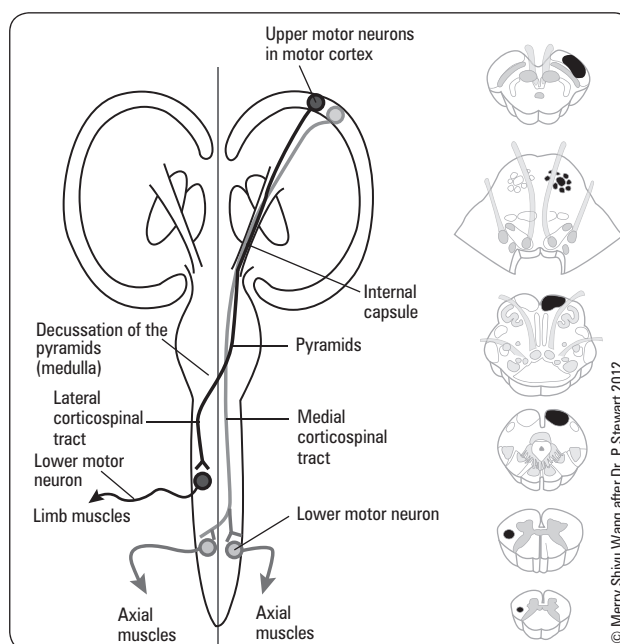


Figure 7. Corticospinal motor pathway

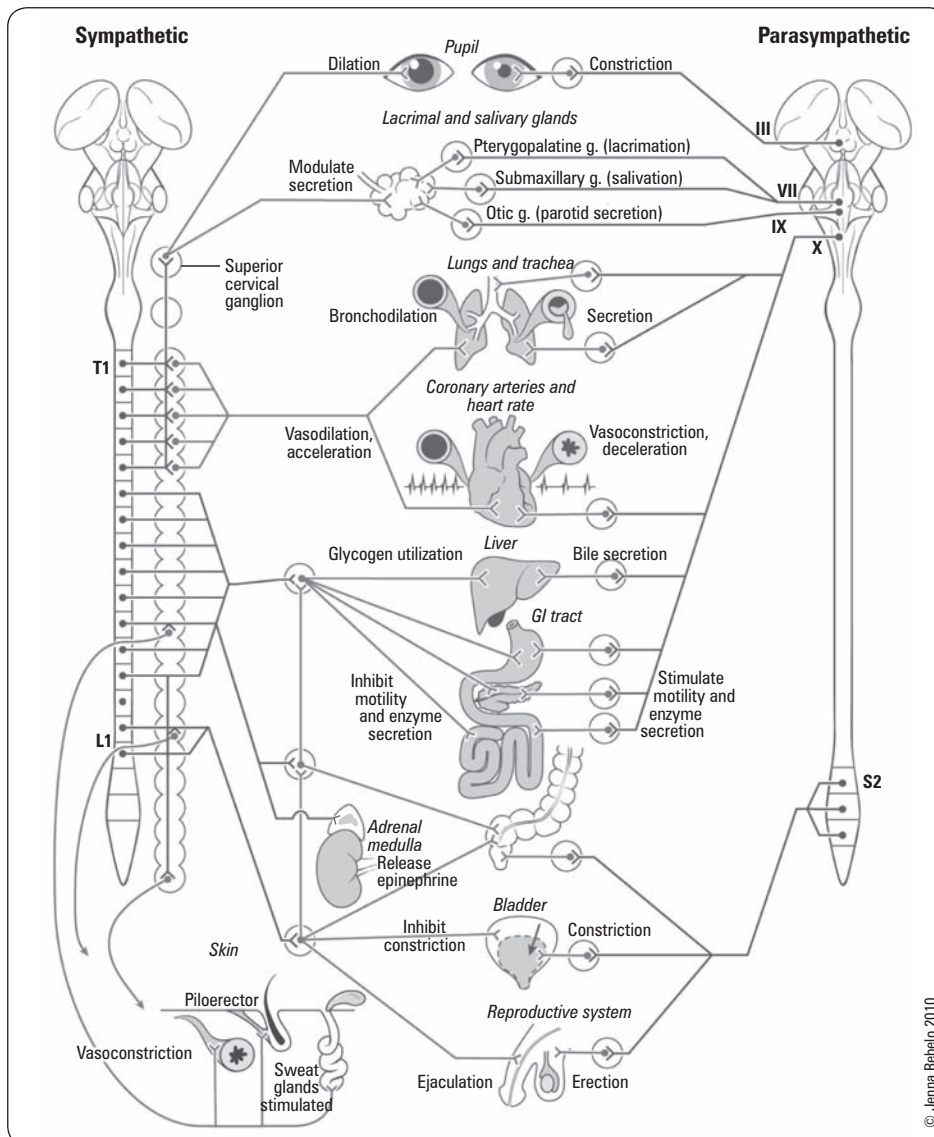


Figure 8. Sympathetic and parasympathetic pathway

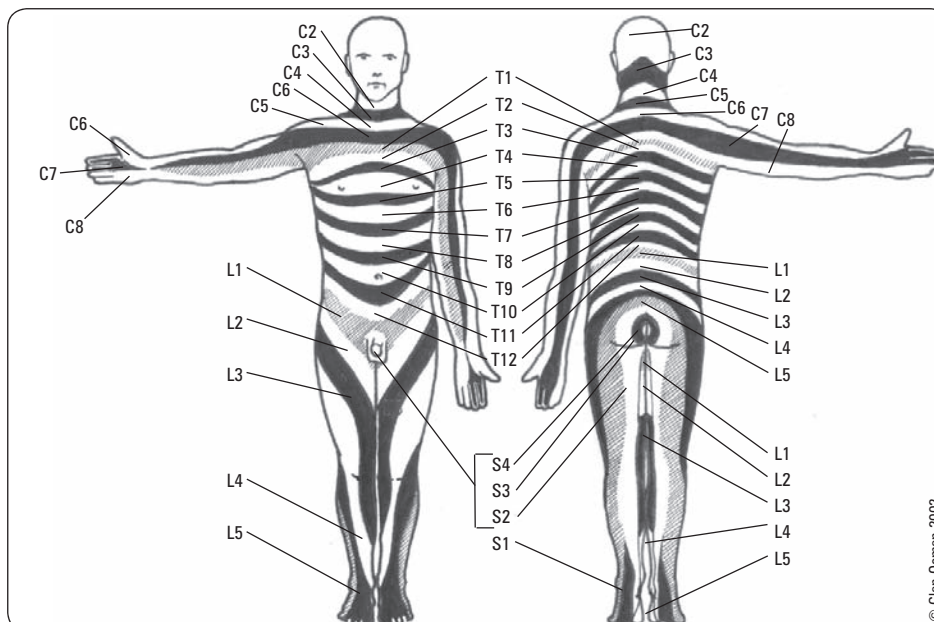


Figure 9. Dermatome map

**Myotomes**

- C5 – Shoulder abduction/elbow flexion
- C6 – Wrist extensors
- C7 – Elbow extension
- C8 – Squeeze hand
- T1 – Finger abduction
- T2-9 – Intercostal (abdominal reflexes)
- T9-10 – Upper abdominals
- T11-12 – Lower abdominals
- L2 – Hip flexion
- L3 – Hip adduction
- L4 – Knee extension and ankle dorsiflexion
- L5 – Ankle dorsiflexion and big toe extension
- S1 – Plantarflexion

Lumbar Puncture

Indications

- diagnostic: CNS infection (meningitis, encephalitis), inflammatory disorder (MS, Guillain-Barré, vasculitis), subarachnoid hemorrhage (if CT negative), CNS neoplasm (neoplastic meningitis)
- therapeutic: to administer anesthesia, chemotherapy, contrast media; to decrease ICP (pseudotumor cerebri, normal pressure hydrocephalus)

Contraindications

- mass lesion causing ICP – could lead to cerebral herniation
 - require CT first
- infection over LP site/suspected epidural abscess
- low platelets (<50,000) or treatment with anticoagulation (high INR or aPTT)
- uncooperative patient

Complications

- tonsillar herniation (rare)
- subdural hemorrhage
- transient 6th nerve palsy
- post-LP headache (5-40%): worse when upright, better supine; generally onset within 24 h
 - prevention: smaller gauge (i.e. 22) needle, reinsert stylet prior to needle removal, blunt-ended needle
 - symptomatic treatment: caffeine and sodium benzoate injection
 - corrective treatment: blood patch (autologous)
- spinal epidural hematoma
- infection

LP Tubes

- **tube #1: cell count and differential:** RBCs, WBCs, and differential
 - xanthochromia (yellow bilirubin pigmentation implies recent bleed into CSF)
- **tube #2: chemistry:** glucose (compare to serum glucose) and protein
- **tube #3: microbiology:** Gram stain and C&S
 - specific tests depending on clinical situation/suspicion
 - ♦ viral: PCR for herpes simplex virus (HSV) and other viruses
 - ♦ bacterial: polysaccharide antigens of *H. influenzae*, *N. meningitidis*, *S. pneumoniae*
 - ♦ fungal: Cryptococcal antigen, culture
 - ♦ TB: acid-fast stain, TB culture, TB PCR
- **tube #4: cytology:** for evidence of malignant cells
- **tube #5: cell count:** compare RBC count to that of tube #1
 - **note:** tube 4 or 5 can be sent for repeat cell count

Table 4. Lumbar Puncture Interpretation (Normal vs. Various Infectious Causes)

Condition	Color	Protein	Glucose	Cells
NORMAL	Clear	<0.45 g/L	60% of serum glc or >54 mg/dL	0-5 x 10 ⁶ /L WBC, 0 RBC, 0 PMNs
INFECTIOUS				
Viral Infection	Clear or opalescent	Normal or slightly increased <0.45-1 g/L	Normal	<1,000 x 10 ⁶ /L Lymphocytes mostly, some PMNs
Bacterial Infection	Opalescent yellow, may clot	>1 g/L	Decreased (<25% serum glc or <36 mg/dL)	>1,000 x 10 ⁶ /L PMNs
Granulomatous Infection (tuberculosis, fungal)	Clear or opalescent	Increased but usually <5 g/L	Decreased (usually <36-72mg/dL)	<1,000 x 10 ⁶ /L Lymphocytes



The needle for a LP is inserted into one of L3-4, L4-5, or L5-S1 interspaces



Do not delay antibiotics while waiting for a LP if infection is suspected



RBCs in tube #1 > #5 → traumatic tap
RBCs in tube #1 = #5 → SAH

Approach to Common Presentations



Weakness

Approach

- **mode of onset:** abrupt (vascular, toxic, metabolic), subacute (neoplastic, infective, inflammatory), insidious (hereditary, degenerative, endocrinologic, neoplastic)
- **course:** worse at onset (vascular), progressive (neoplastic, degenerative, infective), episodic (vascular, inflammatory), activity dependent (NMJ, muscular)
- **pattern:** objective vs. subjective, generalized vs. localized, asymmetric vs. symmetric, proximal vs. distal, UMN vs. LMN, peripheral vs. myotomal
- **associated symptoms:** sensory symptoms, cortical symptoms, spinal symptoms (i.e. bowel/bladder dysfunction), signs/symptoms specific to various etiologies
- **history:** family history, developmental history, medications, risk factors, recent/preceding exposures
- **investigations for LMN:** NCS/EMG
- **investigations for UMN:** imaging (brain and/or spinal cord)

Differential Diagnosis

- objective muscle weakness; also, differentiate between true muscle weakness vs. fatigue
 - generalized
 - ♦ myopathy (proximal > distal weakness)
 - endocrine: hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, Cushing's syndrome
 - rheumatologic: polymyositis, vasculitis
 - infectious: HIV, CMV, influenza
 - other: collagen vascular disorders, steroids, statins, alcohol, electrolyte disorders
 - ♦ NMJ (MG, botulism, LEMS, organophosphate poisoning)
 - ♦ cachexia
 - localized
 - ♦ UMN (leukodystrophy, vasculitis, abscess, brain tumor, vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, MS, stroke)
 - ♦ radicular pain (i.e. nerve root)
 - ♦ anterior horn cell (spinal muscular atrophy, ALS, polio, paraneoplastic, lead toxicity)
 - ♦ peripheral neuropathy (peroneal muscle atrophy, GBS, leprosy, amyloid, myeloma, DM, lead toxicity)
- no objective muscle weakness
 - chronic illness (cardiac, pulmonary, anemia, infection, malignancy)
 - depression, deconditioning
- if loss of passive motion, consider intra-articular, peri-articular, or extra-articular causes

Numbness/Altered Sensation

Approach

- positive sensory symptoms: paresthesia/dysesthesia = tingling, pins and needles, prickling, burning, stabbing
- negative sensory symptoms: hypoesthesia/anesthesia = numbness, diminution, or absence of feeling
- determine distribution of sensory loss
 - nerve root vs. peripheral nerve?
 - symmetric stocking-glove pattern? (indicative of distal symmetric polyneuropathy)
 - anterior-posterior spinal cord dissociation
- investigations: NCS, vitamin B₁₂ levels, imaging based on associated findings

Differential Diagnosis

- cerebral: stroke, demyelination, tumor
 - associated symptoms: hemiplegia, aphasia, apraxia
- brainstem: stroke, demyelination, tumor
 - associated symptoms: diplopia, vertigo, dysarthria, dysphagia
- spinal cord/radiculopathy: cord infarction, tumor, MS, syringomyelia, vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, disc lesion
 - associated symptoms: back/neck pain, weakness (paraparesis or Brown-Séquard pattern)
- neuropathy: focal compressive neuropathy (based on location and distribution), DM, uremia, vasculitis, vitamin B₁₂ deficiency, HIV, Lyme disease, alcohol, paraneoplastic, amyloid

Cranial Nerve Deficits

CN I: Olfactory Nerve

Clinical Features

- absence of sense of smell associated with a loss of taste

Differential Diagnosis

- **nasal:** physical obstruction
 - heavy smoking, chronic rhinitis, sinusitis, neoplasms, septal deformity, choanal atresia, vestibular stenosis, foreign body
- **olfactory neuroepithelial:** destruction of receptors or their axon filaments
 - influenza, herpes simplex, interferon treatment of hepatitis C virus, atrophic rhinitis (leprosy)
- **central:** lesion of olfactory pathway
 - Kallmann's syndrome, albinism, head injury, cranial surgery, SAH, chronic meningeal inflammation, meningioma, aneurysm, PD, stroke, MS
- **endocrine/metabolic**
 - DM, adrenal hypo/hyperfunction, pseudohypoparathyroidism, hypothyroidism, renal/liver failure, vitamin deficiency



If anosmia is not associated with loss of taste, consider malingering



Kallmann's syndrome is a congenital disorder of anosmia and hypogonadotropic hypogonadism

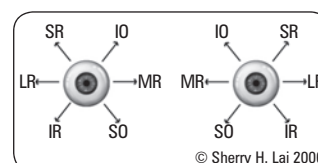


Figure 10. Diagnostic positions of gaze to isolate primary action of each muscle

CN II: Optic Nerve

- see *Neuro-Ophthalmology*, N12

CN III: Oculomotor Nerve

Clinical Features

- ptosis, resting eye position is “down and out” (depressed and abducted), pupil dilated (mydriasis)
- vertical and horizontal diplopia; paralysis of adduction, elevation, and depression

Differential Diagnosis

- **PComm aneurysm**: early mydriasis, then CN III palsy
- **cavernous sinus** (internal carotid aneurysm, meningioma, sinus thrombosis): associated with deficits in other CNs near the cavernous sinus
- **ischemia of CN III** (DM, temporal arteritis, HTN, atherosclerosis): pupil sparing CN III palsy
- **midbrain lesion**: complete unilateral CN III palsy with bilateral weakness of the superior rectus and ptosis with contralateral pyramidal signs \pm mydriasis
- **orbital lesion**: associated with optic neuropathy, chemosis, proptosis
- **other** (inflammatory, infection, neoplasia, uncal herniation, trauma)

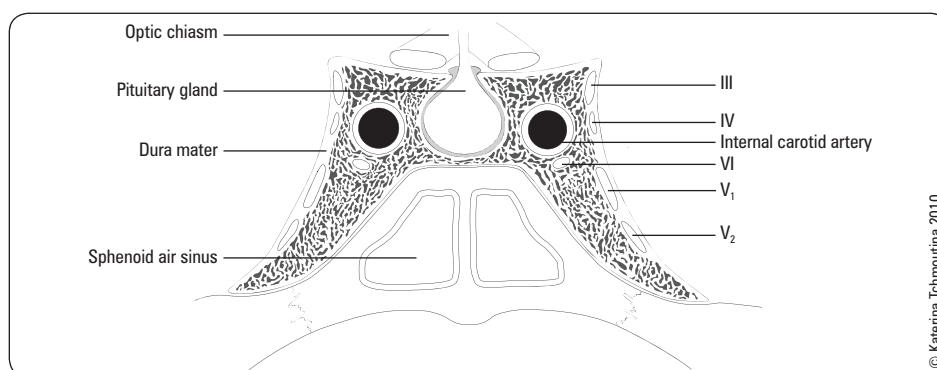


Figure 11. Cavernous sinus (coronal view)

CN IV: Trochlear Nerve

Clinical Features

- vertical and torsional diplopia; defect of intorsion and depression
- patient may complain of difficulty going down stairs or reading

Differential Diagnosis

- common: ischemic (DM, HTN), idiopathic, trauma (TBI or surgical), congenital
- other: cavernous sinus lesion, superior orbital fissure (tumor, granuloma)

CN V: Trigeminal Nerve

Clinical Features

- ipsilateral facial numbness, weakness of muscles of mastication (V3 only) with pterygoid deviation towards the side of the lesion

Differential Diagnosis

- **brainstem** (ischemia, tumor, syringobulbia, demyelination)
- **peripheral** (tumor, aneurysm, chronic meningitis, metastatic infiltration of nerve)
- **trigeminal ganglion** (acoustic neuroma, meningioma, fracture of middle fossa)
- **cavernous sinus** (carotid aneurysm, meningioma, sinus thrombosis)
- **trauma**
- note: other CN V lesions that cause facial pain = trigeminal neuralgia, herpes zoster

CN VI: Abducens Nerve

Clinical Features

- resting inward deviation (esotropia)
- horizontal diplopia; defect of lateral gaze



Pupillary constrictor fibers run along outside of nerve, whereas vasculature is contained within nerve

For CN III palsy with a reactive pupil, always think ischemic cause (“pupil sparing”)

For CN III palsy with mydriasis, think compressive lesion



DDx of CN III Palsy

iCAM

ischemic

Cavernous sinus

Aneurysm (PComm, internal carotid)

Midbrain lesion



Lesions involving the cavernous sinus can lead to cranial nerve palsies of III, IV, VI, V1, and V2 as well as orbital pain, and proptosis



CN IV is the only cranial nerve that crosses the midline and exits posteriorly

A CN IV lesion may cause a contralateral deficit



CN IV is at risk of trauma during neurosurgical procedures involving the midbrain because of its long intracranial course



Jaw deviation is towards the side of a LMN CN V lesion



Distinguishing CN III, IV, and VI Lesions

	III	IV	VI
Diplopia	Oblique	Vertical	Horizontal
Exacerbating	Near target	Looking down	Far target
Head Tilt	Up and rotated away	Down and flexed away	Rotated towards



CN VI has the longest intracranial course and is vulnerable to increased ICP, creating a false localizing sign

Differential Diagnosis

- **pons** (infarction, hemorrhage, demyelination, tumor): associated with facial weakness and contralateral pyramidal signs
- **tentorial orifice** (compression, meningioma, trauma): false localizing sign of increased ICP
- **cavernous sinus** (carotid aneurysm, meningioma, sinus thrombosis)
- **ischemia of CN VI** (DM, temporal arteritis, HTN, atherosclerosis)
- **congenital** (Duane's syndrome)



Forehead is spared in a UMN CN VII lesion due to bilateral innervation of CN VII nuclei from cerebral hemispheres for the frontalis

CN VII: Facial Nerve**Clinical Features**

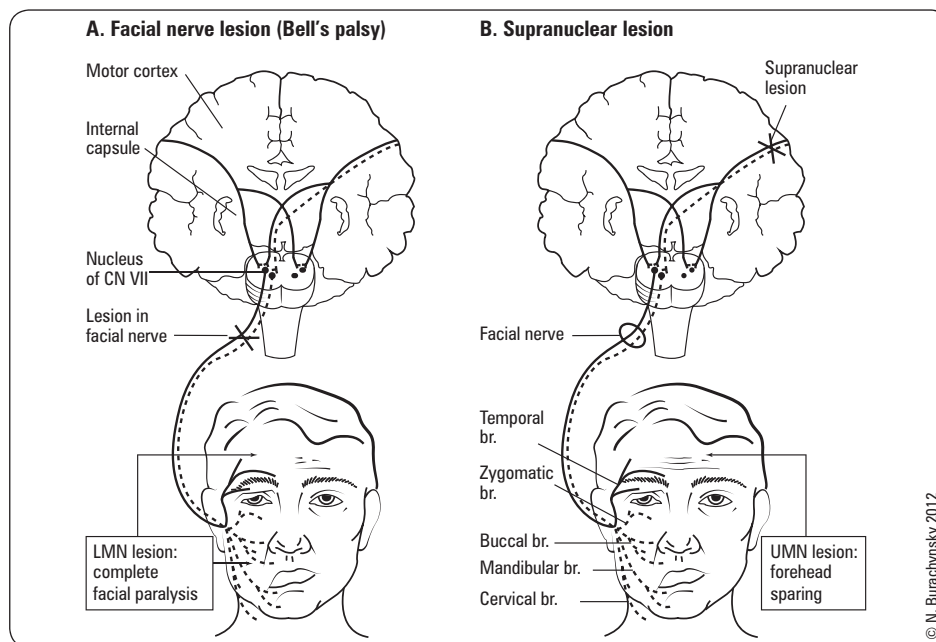
- LMN lesion: ipsilateral facial weakness (facial droop, flattening of forehead, inability to close eyes, flattening of nasolabial fold)
- UMN lesion: contralateral facial weakness with forehead sparing (due to bilateral frontalis innervation)
- impaired lacrimation, decreased salivation, numbness behind auricle, hyperacusis, taste dysfunction of anterior 2/3 of tongue

**Facial Nerve Branch Memory Aid****To Zanzibar By Motor Car**

Temporal
Zygomatic
Buccal
Mandibular
Cervical

Differential Diagnosis

- **idiopathic** = Bell's palsy, 80-90% of cases (see [Otolaryngology, OT23](#))
 - most often related to HSV, but other viruses may be implicated (CMV, herpes zoster, EBV)
- **other**: temporal bone fracture, EBV, Ramsay Hunt (HSV), otitis media/mastoiditis, sarcoidosis, DM mononeuropathy, parotid gland disease, Lyme meningitis, HIV



© N. Burachynsky 2012

Figure 12. UMN vs. LMN facial nerve palsy

CN VIII: Vestibulocochlear Nerve

- see [Otolaryngology, OT14](#)

**CN IX: Glossopharyngeal Nerve****Clinical Features**

- unilateral lesion is rare
- taste dysfunction in posterior 1/3 of tongue
- absent gag reflex and dysphagia

Disorders

- **glossopharyngeal neuralgia**: sharp paroxysmal pain of posterior pharynx radiating to ear, triggered by swallowing
 - treated with carbamazepine or surgical ablation of CN IX



When screening for dysphagia and assessing aspiration risk, the presence of a gag reflex is insufficient; the correct screening test is to observe the patient drinking water from a cup while observing for any coughing, choking, or "wetness" of voice

**Differential Diagnosis of Lower Cranial Nerve Deficits (CN IX, X, XI, XII)**

Intracranial/Skull Base: meningioma, neurofibroma, metastases, osteomyelitis, meningitis

Brainstem: stroke, demyelination, syringobulbia, poliomyelitis, astrocytoma

Neck: trauma, surgery, tumors



Normal swallowing is initiated when the tongue moves a bolus back into the palatal archway. Tongue movements are innervated exclusively by CN XII. The bolus stimulates the soft palate to elevate and the bolus is deflected into the oropharynx. Next the pharyngeal constrictors contract, the larynx elevates, and the vocal cords close. Swallowing depends on afferent information via CN V, IX, and X and motor action via CN V, VII, IX, X, and XII.

Connections in the nucleus of the tractus solitarius in the medulla (in proximity to the respiratory center) act as the swallowing center. Swallowing and breathing are coordinated to prevent aspiration.



Uvula deviation is **away from** the side of a LMN CN X lesion due to impaired ipsilateral palatal elevation

CN X: Vagus Nerve

Clinical Features

- oropharyngeal dysphagia (transfer dysphagia) due to palatal and pharyngeal weakness
 - neuromuscular causes of dysphagia
 - ♦ CNS: stroke, cerebral palsy, tumor, trauma, PD, AD, MS
 - ♦ CN: DM, laryngeal nerve palsy, polio, ALS
 - ♦ myopathic(NMJ): dermatomyositis, polymyositis, MG, sarcoidosis
 - other causes of dysphagia: see [Gastroenterology, G8](#)
- dysarthria: inability to produce understandable speech due to impaired phonation and/or resonance



CN XI: Accessory Nerve

Clinical Features

- LMN lesion: paralysis of ipsilateral trapezius and sternocleidomastoid (ipsilateral shoulder drop, weakness on turning head to contralateral side)
- UMN lesion: paralysis of ipsilateral sternocleidomastoid and contralateral trapezius



CN XI is vulnerable to damage during neck surgery

CN XII: Hypoglossal Nerve

Clinical Features

- LMN lesion: tongue deviation towards lesion; ipsilateral tongue atrophy and fasciculations (if chronic)
- UMN lesion: tongue deviation away from lesion; absence of atrophy and fasciculations



Ipsilateral tongue paralysis with contralateral hemiparesis/sensory symptoms is pathognomonic for a medial medullary infarction

Table 5. Cranial Nerve Examination and Associated Deficits

Cranial Nerve	Recommended Physical Exams	Signs/Symptoms of Deficit
Olfactory (CN I)	Odor sensation: test each nostril separately	Anosmia (should be associated with loss of taste)
Optic (CN II)	Visual acuity: test each eye individually; best corrected vision Test visual fields Assess pupils: direct and consensual pupillary reaction (afferent), RAPD (swinging flashlight test) Fundoscopy: optic disc edema and pallor, venous pulsations, hemorrhages	Blindness Absence of light reflexes
Oculomotor (CN III)	Assess extraocular movements and nystagmus Test efferent limb of pupillary light response Assess size and shape of pupils; accommodation and saccadic eye movements	Eyes deviated down and out; can demonstrate mydriasis
Trochlear (CN IV)	Test movement of superior oblique	Vertical diplopia; may tilt head towards unaffected side; affected eye cannot turn inward and downward
Trigeminal (CN V)	Test sensation above supraorbital ridge (V1), buccal area (V2), mandible (V3) Test corneal reflex (afferent limb) Assess motor function: temporalis, masseter, pterygoids, jaw jerk reflex	Loss of facial sensations and corneal reflex on stimulation ipsilaterally Weakness and wasting of muscles of mastication; deviation of open jaw to <i>ipsilateral</i> side; trigeminal neuralgia
Abducens (CN VI)	Test movement of lateral rectus	Horizontal diplopia, esotropia (convergent strabismus), and abductor paralysis of <i>ipsilateral</i> eye
Facial (CN VII)	Sensorimotor nerve function: to muscles of facial expression Test efferent limb of corneal reflex Visceral sensory nerve function: to anterior 2/3 of the tongue Visceral motor nerve function: to salivary and lacrimal glands	Paralysis of ipsilateral upper and lower facial muscles Loss of lacrimation Decreased salivation, dry mouth Loss of taste to anterior 2/3 of the tongue ipsilaterally LMN lesion = ipsilateral facial weakness UMN lesion = contralateral facial weakness, sparing the brow bilaterally
Vestibulocochlear (CN VIII)	Vestibular function (nystagmus, calorics) Cochlear function (Rinne, Weber)	Vertigo, disequilibrium, and nystagmus Neural deafness
Glosso-Pharyngeal (CN IX)	Assess vocal cord function and gag reflex Assess taste to posterior third of the tongue (bitter and sour taste)	Loss of taste in posterior third of the tongue <i>ipsilaterally</i> Loss of gag reflex and dysphasia Unilateral lesion is rare
Vagus (CN X)	Assess vocal cord function and gag reflex Observe uvula deviation and palatal elevation Assess swallowing	Loss of gag reflex, dysphagia, hoarse voice Paralysis of soft palate (failed elevation) Deviation of uvula to contralateral side of lesion; anesthesia of pharynx and larynx <i>ipsilaterally</i>
Accessory (CN XI)	Assess strength of trapezius (shoulder shrug) and sternocleidomastoid muscles (head turn)	<i>Ipsilateral</i> shoulder weakness and turning head to opposite side
Hypoglossal (CN XII)	Inspect tongue for signs of lateral deviation, atrophy, fasciculations, asymmetry of movement and strength	Wasting of <i>ipsilateral</i> tongue muscles and deviation to <i>ipsilateral</i> side on protrusion

NEURO-OPHTHALMOLOGY

Abnormalities of Vision

- see [Ophthalmology](#), OP3



Acute Visual Loss

- see [Ophthalmology](#), OP3



Optic Neuritis

- see *Optic Disc Edema* below, *Multiple Sclerosis*, N52

Anterior Ischemic Optic Neuropathy

- see *Optic Disc Edema*
- **non-arteritic (NAION)**: due to atherosclerosis
- **arteritic (AION)**: due to giant cell arteritis (see [Rheumatology](#), RH20)



If you suspect the diagnosis of giant cell arteritis do not wait for biopsy results
Begin treatment immediately



NAION can be caused by use of Sildenafil (Viagra®) in rare cases

Amaurosis Fugax

- see [Ophthalmology](#), OP37 and *Stroke*, N47



Central Retinal Vein Occlusion

- see [Ophthalmology](#), OP24



Optic Disc Edema

Table 6. Common Causes of Optic Disc Edema

	Optic Neuritis	Papilledema	AION	CRVO
Age	<50 yr	Any	>50 yr but usually >70 yr	>50 yr
Vision	Rapidly progressive monocular central vision loss with ↓ acuity and color vision with recovery	Late visual loss	Painless unilateral acute field defect over hours to days with ↓ color vision	Painless unilateral variable vision loss
Symptoms	Pain (especially with eye movement)	H/A, N/V, local neurological deficits	If GCA: H/A, scalp tenderness, jaw claudication, weight loss, fatigue	Cardiovascular risk factors
Pupil	RAPD	No RAPD	RAPD	± RAPD
Fundus	Disc swelling if anterior Normal disc if retrobulbar	Bilateral disc swelling, retinal hemorrhage, no venous pulsations	Pale segmental disc edema, retinal dot, flame hemorrhages	Swollen disc, venous engorgement, retinal hemorrhage
Etiologies	MS, viral	Increased ICP	Giant cell arteritis Non-arteritic: atherosclerosis	Associated with vasculopathy, thrombus
Investigations	MRI with gadolinium	Emergent CT; LP if CT is normal to measure opening pressure	CBC, ESR, CRP, temporal artery biopsy	Fluorescein angiogram and coherence tomography
Treatment	IV methylprednisolone	Treat cause	Consider ASA if non-arteritic; steroids if arteritic	Optimize risk factors, reduce IOP, ± laser, ± VEGF inhibitors

Optic Disc Atrophy

- **etiologies:** glaucoma, AION, compressive tumor, optic neuritis, Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy, congenital
- **presentation:** disc pallor, low visual acuity, peripheral vision defect, decreased color vision
- **treatment:** none (irreversible), aim to prevent



Bitemporal Hemianopsia DDx by Age

- Children: craniopharyngioma
- Middle aged (20s to 50s): pituitary mass
- Elderly (> 60 yr): meningioma



In homonymous hemianopsia, more congruent deficits are caused by more posterior lesions. Macular sparing may occur with occipital lesions



Check all hemiplegic patients for homonymous hemianopsia (ipsilateral to side of hemiplegia)



A lesion in a cerebral hemisphere causes eyes to "look away" from the hemiplegia, and to look towards the lesion

A lesion in the brainstem causes the eyes to "look toward" the side of the hemiplegia, and to look away from the lesion

Abnormalities of Visual Field

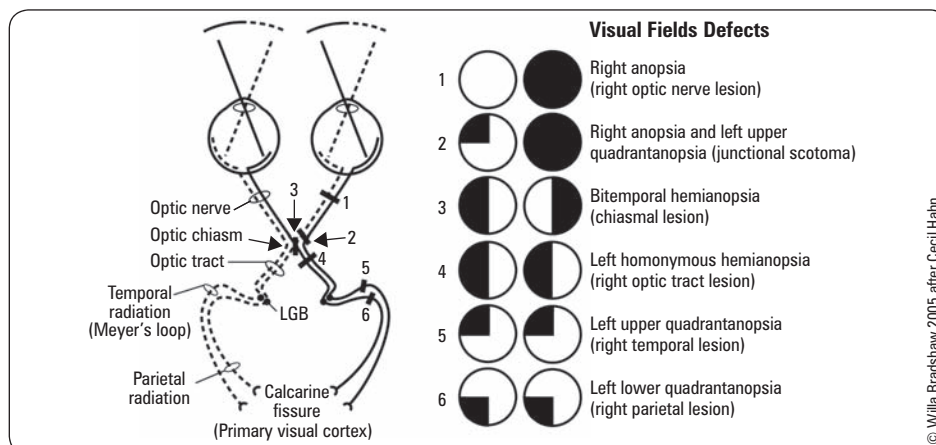


Figure 13. Characteristic visual field defects with lesions along the visual pathway

Abnormalities of Eye Movements

Disorders of Gaze

Pathophysiology

- horizontal gaze: FEF → contralateral PPRF (midbrain/pons) → eyes saccade away from FEF
- vertical gaze: cortex → rostral interstitial nucleus in the MLF (midbrain)

Clinical Features

- unilateral lesion in one FEF → eyes deviate toward the side of the lesion
 - can be overcome with doll's eye maneuver
- unilateral lesion in the PPRF → eyes deviate away from the lesion
 - cannot be overcome with doll's eye maneuver if CN VI nucleus lesion as well
- seizure involving a FEF: eyes deviate away from the focus

Etiology

- common: infarcts (frontal or brainstem), MS, tumors

Internuclear Ophthalmoplegia

Pathophysiology

- results from a lesion in MLF which disrupts coordination between CN VI nucleus in pons and the contralateral CN III nucleus in midbrain → disrupts conjugate horizontal gaze

Clinical Features

- horizontal diplopia on lateral gaze, oscillopsia
- on gaze away from the side of the lesion
 - ipsilateral adduction defect
 - contralateral abduction nystagmus
- cannot be overcome by caloric testing
- accommodation reflex intact
- may be bilateral (especially in MS)

Etiology

- common: MS, brain stem infarct

Investigations

- MRI

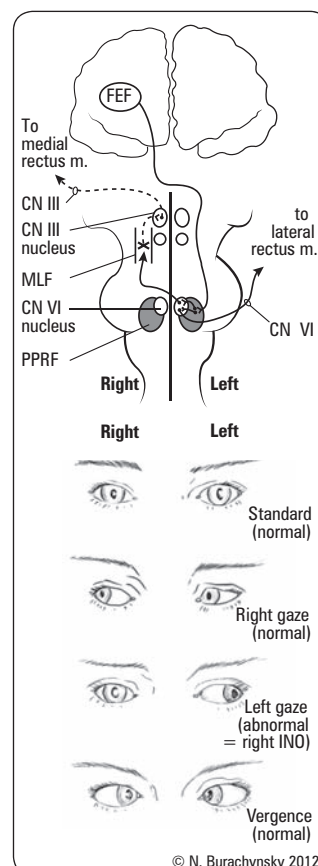


Figure 14. Internuclear ophthalmoplegia

Diplopia

Etiology – Monocular

- mostly due to relatively benign optical problems (refractive error, cataract) or functional

Etiology – Binocular (due to ocular misalignment)

- muscle
 - Graves' ophthalmopathy
 - EOM restriction/entrapment
- neuromuscular junction
 - MG (see *Myasthenia Gravis*, N37)
- cranial nerve palsy (see *Cranial Nerve Deficits*, N8)
- INO (see *Intranuclear Ophthalmoplegia*, N13)
- other
 - orbital trauma (orbital floor fracture), tumor, infection, inflammation
 - Miller-Fisher variant of GBS
 - Wernicke's encephalopathy
 - leptomeningeal disease

Approach to Diplopia

- monocular vs. binocular
- horizontal vs. vertical vs. oblique diplopia
- direction of gaze that exacerbates diplopia
- corrective head movements

Workup

- may observe isolated 4th or 6th nerve palsy for a few weeks, but workup if persistent or other symptoms develop
- indications for neuroimaging
 - bilateral or multiple nerve involvement
 - severe sudden onset headache (rule out aneurysm)

Nystagmus

- **definition:** rapid, involuntary, small amplitude movements of the eyes that are rhythmic in nature
- direction of nystagmus is labeled by the **rapid** component of the eye movement
- can be categorized by movement type (pendular, jerking, rotatory, coarse) or as physiological vs. pathological

Table 7. Nystagmus Features

	Peripheral (vestibular)	Central (brainstem)
Direction	Unidirectional, fast phase away from the lesion	May be bilateral/unidirectional
Vertical Nystagmus	–	±
Gaze Fixation	Relieves nystagmus	Does not relieve nystagmus
Vertigo	Severe	Mild
Auditory Symptoms	Common	Extremely rare
Other Neurological Signs	Absent	Often present
DDx	Benign paroxysmal positional vertigo, vestibular neuritis, Ménière disease, toxicity, trauma, Ramsay Hunt syndrome	MS, vascular (brainstem/cerebellar), neoplastic/paraneoplastic

Abnormalities of Pupils

- see [Ophthalmology](#), OP30

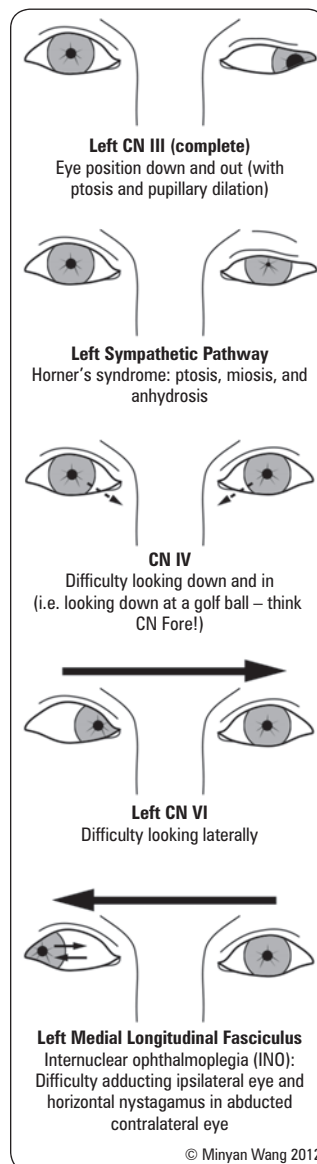


Diplopia worse at the end of the day suggests myasthenia gravis (e.g. fatiguable)



If diplopia is only on extremes of gaze, cover each eye in isolation during extremes of gaze

The covered eye that makes the lateral image disappear is the pathological one



© Minyan Wang 2012

Figure 15. Abnormal eye movements



Nutritional Deficiencies and Toxic Injuries

- sufficient nutritional intake is required for optimal nervous system functioning; deficiencies in the following key nutrients, among others, may impair central and peripheral nervous system function (potential neurological symptoms are provided)

Table 8. Nutritional Deficiency Features and Management

Vitamin Deficiency	Neurological Clinical Manifestation	Investigation	Treatment*
Vitamin B12	Paresthesias and a sensory ataxia are the most common initial symptoms Myelopathy; may be accompanied by peripheral neuropathy Neuropsychiatric manifestations: memory impairment, change in personality, delirium, and psychosis Optic neuropathy	Serum cobalamin Serum methylmalonic acid Serum homocysteine	IM Vitamin B12 1,000 µg for 5 d, then once per mo or oral B12 1,000 µg/d
Folate	Myeloneuropathy, peripheral neuropathy May be clinically indistinguishable from Vitamin B12 deficiency	Serum folate Homocysteine	Oral folate 1 mg tid initially; 1 mg daily thereafter
Copper	Myelopathy, pyramidal signs (e.g. brisk muscle stretch reflexes at the knees and extensor plantar responses) Severe sensory loss	Serum copper and ceruloplasmin; urinary copper	Discontinue zinc; oral copper 8 mg/d for 1 wk; 6 mg/d for 1 wk; 4 mg/d for 1 wk; 2 mg/d thereafter
Vitamin E	Ophthalmoplegia, retinopathy, spinocerebellar syndrome with peripheral neuropathy (with signs of cerebellar ataxia)	Serum vitamin E; ratio serum vitamin E to sum of cholesterol and triglycerides	Vitamin E 2,200 mg/kg/d oral or IM
Thiamine	Three well-described manifestations include: beriberi (dry and wet), infantile beriberi, Wernicke encephalopathy with Korsakoff syndrome Alcoholism is a cause of reduced intake of thiamine, leading to deficiency	Clinical diagnosis; brain MRI	Thiamine 100 mg IV followed by 50-100 mg IV or IM until nutritional status stable
Pyridoxine (Vitamin B6)	Painful sensorimotor peripheral neuropathy	Serum pyridoxal phosphate	Pyridoxine 50-100 mg daily
Niacin	Encephalopathy, coma, and peripheral neuropathy	Urinary excretion niacin metabolites	Nicotinic acid 25-50 mg daily oral or IM

*IM = intramuscular; IV = intravenous

- it is also important to consider occupational neurotoxic syndromes secondary to exposure to pesticides, solvents, and metals. Encephalopathy, extrapyramidal features, neurodegenerative diseases, and peripheral neuropathy are commonly encountered. Onset and progression of neurological diseases should be temporally related to neurotoxin exposure. Main toxins associated with neurotoxicity are listed below:

Table 9. Selected Occupational Neurotoxic Syndromes

Toxin	Associated Occupations	Characteristic Neurological Findings
Organic solvents	Printer, spray painters, industrial cleaners, paint or glue manufacturers, graphic industry, electronic industry, plastic industry	Nausea, H/A, concentration difficulty Long-term exposure may lead to "chronic solvent-induced encephalopathy", characterized by mild-to-severe cognitive impairment
Pesticides (e.g. insecticides, fungicides, rodenticides, fumigants, herbicides)	Agricultural work, pesticide manufacturing and formulating employees, highway and railway workers, green house, forestry and nursery workers	Parkinson's disease risk increased by ~70% following pesticide exposure
Metals (e.g. lead, mercury, manganese, aluminum, arsenic)	Battery and metal production (e.g. solder, pipes), chemical and electronic application industries, steel manufacturing, welders, alloy workers, transportation, packaging, construction	Lead: delayed or reversed development, permanent learning disabilities, seizures, coma, death from encephalopathy (rare) Mercury: psychiatric disturbances, ataxia, visual loss, hearing loss, tiredness, memory disturbances Manganese: psychiatric symptoms, hallucinations ("manganese madness"), extrapyramidal features, dystonia, parkinsonism (manganism) Aluminum: implicated in Alzheimer's pathogenesis Arsenic: sleeplessness/sleepiness, irritability, H/A, spasms in muscle extremities and muscle fatigue
Gases (e.g. carbon dioxide, nitrous oxide, formaldehyde)	Anesthesia, disinfection, manufacture of illuminating gas and water-gas	Cognitive/behavioral and emotional symptoms, parkinsonian syndromes

Neurologic Complications due to Toxic Injuries Related to Bariatric Surgery

- deficiencies of both fat- and water-soluble vitamins may occur following malabsorptive bariatric surgery
- patients who have undergone malabsorptive surgery should be monitored for late metabolic complications and neurological manifestations

Seizure Disorders and Epilepsy



Seizure

Definitions

- **seizure:** transient neurological dysfunction caused by excessive activity of cortical neurons, resulting in paroxysmal alteration of behavior and/or EEG changes
- **epilepsy:** chronic condition characterized by two or more unprovoked seizures

Classification

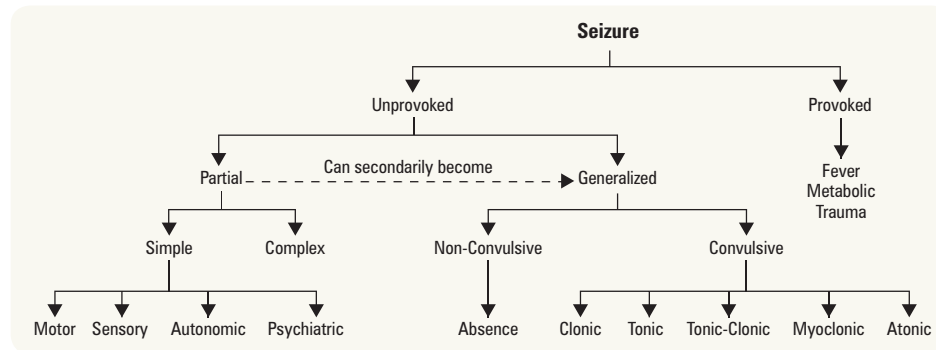


Figure 16. Classification of seizures

NOTE: seizures can also be classified using age of onset (childhood/adolescence, adulthood/late [i.e. >age 30]), setting (sleep, upon awakening), EEG (focal, generalized)

Signs and Symptoms

- **partial seizures**
 - simple or complex can secondarily generalize, or simple → complex → generalized seizures
 - **simple (preserved LOC)**
 - ♦ motor: postural, phonotory, forceful turning of eyes and/or head, focal muscle rigidity/jerking ± Jacksonian march (spreading to adjacent muscle groups)
 - ♦ sensory: unusual sensations affecting vision, hearing, smell, taste, or touch
 - ♦ autonomic: epigastric discomfort, pallor, sweating, flushing, piloerection, pupillary dilatation
 - ♦ psychiatric: symptoms rarely occur without impairment of consciousness and are more commonly complex partial
 - **complex (altered LOC)**
 - ♦ patient may appear to be awake but with impairment of awareness
 - ♦ classic complex seizure is characterized by automatisms such as chewing, swallowing, lip-smacking, scratching, fumbling, running, disrobing, and other stereotypic movements
 - ♦ other forms: dysphasic, dysmnestic (déjà vu), cognitive (disorientation of time sense), affective (fear, anger), illusions, structured hallucinations (music, scenes, taste, smells), epigastric fullness
- **generalized seizures (decreased LOC)**
 - **absence (petit mal):** usually only seen in children, unresponsive for 5-10 s with arrest of activity, staring, blinking or eye-rolling, no post-ictal confusion; 3 Hz spike and slow wave activity on EEG
 - **clonic:** repetitive rhythmic jerking movements
 - **tonic:** muscle rigidity in flexion or extension
 - **tonic-clonic (grand mal, generalized tonic-clonic [GTC])**
 - ♦ prodrome of unease or irritability hours to days before the episode
 - ♦ tonic ictal phase: muscle rigidity
 - ♦ clonic ictal phase: repetitive violent jerking of face and limbs, tongue biting, cyanosis, frothing, incontinence
 - ♦ post-ictal phase: flaccid limbs, extensor plantar reflexes, headache, confusion, aching muscles, sore tongue, amnesia, elevated serum CK lasting hours
 - **myoclonic:** sporadic contractions localized to muscle groups of one or more extremities
 - **atonic:** loss of muscle tone leading to drop attack



Medical Emergency

Status epilepticus can cause irreversible brain damage without treatment



Stroke is the most common cause of late-onset (> 50 yr) seizures, accounting for 50-80% of cases



Seizures and Dementia

Neurodegenerative diseases can underlie seizures; conversely, seizures can be a cause of dementia



Complex partial status epilepticus can resemble schizophrenia or psychotic depression



Temporal lobe epilepsy is suggested by an aura of fear, olfactory or gustatory hallucinations, and visceral or déjà vu sensations

Frontoparietal cortex seizures are suggested by contralateral focal sensory or motor phenomena

Table 10. Classic Factors Differentiating Seizure vs. Syncope

Characteristic	Seizure	Syncope
Time of Onset	Day or night	Day
Position	Any	Upright, not recumbent
Onset	Sudden or brief	Gradual
Aura	Possible specific aura	Lightheaded sensation
Color	Normal or cyanotic	Pallor
Autonomic	Uncommon outside of ictal phase	Common; diaphoresis
Duration	Brief or prolonged	Brief
Incontinence	Common	Possible but rare
Post-ictal	Occurs in tonic-clonic or complex partial	No
Motor Activity	Common	Occasional brief jerks
Injury	Common, tongue biting	Rare unless from fall
Automatisms	Common in absence or complex partial	None
EEG	Usually abnormal	Normal

**DDx of Convulsions**

Syncope, pseudoseizure, hyperventilation, panic disorder, TIA, hypoglycemia, movement disorder, alcoholic blackouts, migraines (confusional, vertebrobasilar), narcolepsy (cataplexy)



Note that frontal seizures (rare) can look like a pseudoseizure due to odd motor activity that may occur

Table 11. Classic Factors Differentiating Seizure vs. Pseudoseizure (Conversion Disorder)

Characteristic	Seizure	Pseudoseizure*
Triggers	Uncommon	Emotional disturbance
Duration	Brief or prolonged	May be prolonged
Motor Activity	Synchronous, stereotypic, automatisms, lateral tongue biting, eyes rolled back	Opisthotonos, rigidity, forced eye closure, irregular extremity movements, shaking head, pelvic thrust, crying, geotropic eye movements, tongue biting at the tip
Timing	Day or night	Day; other people present
Physical Injury	May occur	Rare
Incontinence	May occur	Rare
Reproduction of Attack	Spontaneous	Suggestion ± stimulus
EEG	Often inter-ictal discharges	Normal
Prolactin	Increased	Normal

*Pseudoseizures do not rule out seizures (not uncommon to present with both)



By law, the Ministry of Transportation must be contacted for all patients who have had a seizure; patients will have their license suspended until seizure free for 6 mo; commercial drivers face a longer wait

**Pregnancy Issues**

Teratogenicity of anticonvulsants includes neural tube defects, cleft palate, urogenital malformations, and heart defects. Advise patient planning pregnancy to take 5 mg/d of folic acid. Optimize AEDs with lowest possible dose associated with good seizure control, preferably monotherapy if possible. Risk of fetal malformations with AEDs is 2x general population; highest risk associated with valproic acid and/or 2+ concurrent AEDs. Consider pre-conception AED levels if patient is well-controlled, monthly serum levels during pregnancy, and titrate AED to maintain pre-conception serum levels. Refer to high risk OB for intrapartum fetal screening

Investigations

- CBC, electrolytes, fasting blood glucose, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , ESR, Cr, liver enzymes, CK, prolactin
- also consider toxicology screen, EtOH level, AED level (if applicable)
- CT/MRI (if new seizure without identified cause or known seizure history with new neurologic signs/symptoms)
- LP (if fever or meningismus)
- EEG

Treatment

- avoid precipitating factors
- indications for medical therapy (anticonvulsants): 2 or more unprovoked seizures, known organic brain disease, EEG with epileptiform activity, first episode of status epilepticus, abnormal neurologic examination or findings on neuroimaging
- psychosocial issues: stigma of seizures, education of patient and family, status of driver's license, pregnancy issues
- safety issues: driving, operating heavy machinery, bathing, swimming alone
- consider surgical treatment if focal and refractory



EEG findings suggestive of epilepsy: abnormal spikes, polyspike discharges, spike-wave complexes



20-59% of first EEG are positive in epilepsy; 59-92% of epilepsy is picked up with repeated EEGs; normal interictal EEGs do not rule out epilepsy

Status Epilepticus

- **definition:** unremitting seizure of greater than 5 min; or successive seizures without return to a baseline state
- **complications:** anoxia, cerebral ischemia and cerebral edema, rhabdomyolysis and renal failure, aspiration pneumonia/pneumonitis, death (20%)
- **initial measures:** ABCs, vitals, monitors, fingerprick glucose (STAT), ECG, nasal O_2 , IV NS, IV glucose, IV thiamine, ABGs (if respiratory distress/cyanotic)

- **blood work:** electrolytes, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , PO_4^{3-} , glucose, CBC, toxicology screen, EtOH level, AED levels
- **focused history:** onset, past history of seizures, drug and alcohol ingestion, past medical history, associated symptoms, witnesses/collateral history
- **physical exam** (once seizures controlled): LOC, vitals, HEENT (nuchal rigidity, head trauma, tongue biting, papilledema), complete neurological exam, signs of neurocutaneous disorders, decreased breath sounds, cardiac murmurs or arrhythmias, urinary incontinence, MSK exam (rule out injuries)

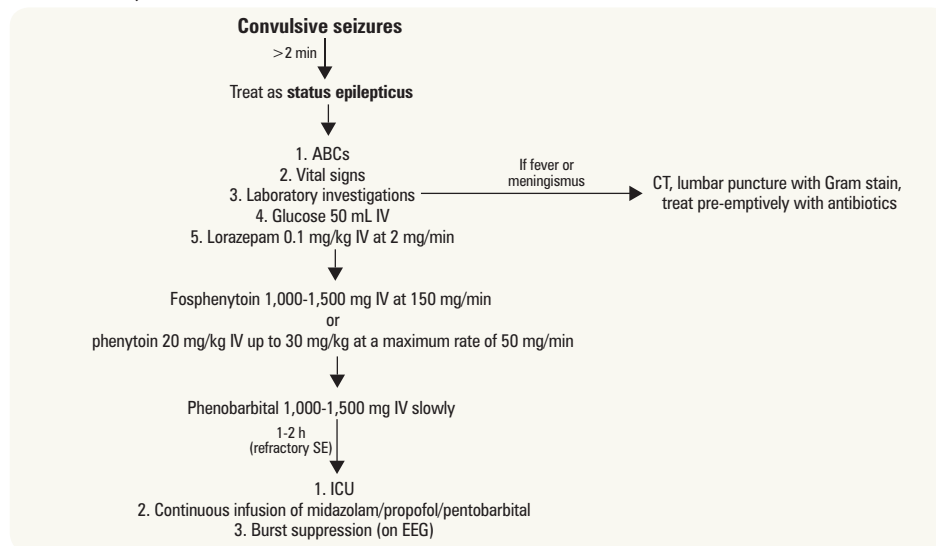


Figure 17. Status epilepticus treatment algorithm



The most common causes of status epilepticus are failure to take AEDs and first presentation of epilepsy

Status epilepticus as a result of EtOH withdrawal is rare, despite it being a very common cause of seizures



Rule out non-convulsive status epilepticus in any patient who is still unconscious >20 min post-ictal

Order a stat EEG if unsure

Antiepileptic Drugs

- **generalized-onset and partial-onset seizures:** felbamate, lamotrigine, levetiracetam, refinamide, topiramate, valproate, zonisamide
- **partial seizures** (simple partial, complex partial, and secondarily generalized seizures): carbamazepine, gabapentin, lacosamide, oxcarbazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, pregabalin, primidone, tiagabine, vigabatrin (note: these drugs may exacerbate generalized seizures)
- **absence seizures:** ethosuximide

Disorders of Consciousness

Definition

- the minimally conscious state and the vegetative state are disorders of consciousness that can be acute and reversible or chronic and irreversible (Bernat, 2006)
- the vegetative state is defined as a state of wakefulness without awareness, while the minimally conscious state is described as wakefulness with transient low levels of awareness to stimuli
- the three main clinical features of vegetative state are:
 - A. cycle of eye opening and closing (indicative of a sleep-wake cycle)
 - B. complete lack of awareness of self or the environment (i.e. no evidence of sustained, reproducible, purposeful, or voluntary behavioral responses to visual, auditory, tactile, or noxious stimuli)
 - C. complete or partial preservation of hypothalamic and brain stem autonomic functions
- those in a vegetative state also show no evidence of language comprehension or expression, and have bowel and bladder incontinence, but have variably preserved cranial-nerve and spinal reflexes
- a vegetative state is considered persistent if it lasts longer than 1 mo and permanent when it lasts longer than six mo for non-traumatic brain injuries and 1 yr for traumatic brain injuries

Etiology

- may develop suddenly (consequence of traumatic or non-traumatic injury), or gradually (in the course of a neurodegenerative disorder)
- may involve diffuse lesions to cortical neurons, thalami, or white matter tracts

Epidemiology

- vegetative state: 0.2-3.4 per 100,000
- minimally conscious state: 1.4 per 100,000



The locked-in syndrome is not a disorder of consciousness but rather a mimic; these individuals have normal sleep-wake cycles, normal levels of awareness, and may exhibit meaningful behavior (via vertical eye-movements and blinking), but are isolated due to quadriplegia and pseudobulbar palsy

Table 12. Selected Intracranial Causes of Acute Confusion

	No Awareness	Minimal Awareness	Normal Awareness
No Arousal	Coma, sleep, anesthesia		
Normal Arousal	Vegetative state	Minimally conscious state	Normal consciousness and locked-in syndrome

Behavioral Neurology

- see [Psychiatry](#), PS16



Acute Confusional State/Delirium

Table 13. Selected Intracranial Causes of Acute Confusion

	Etiology	Key Clinical Features	Investigations
Vascular	Subarachnoid hemorrhage	Thunderclap H/A Increased ICP Meningismus	CT (non-contrast) LP Angiography if CT and LP negative
	Stroke/TIA	Focal neurological signs	CT (non-contrast)
Infectious	Meningitis	Fever, H/A, nausea, photophobia Meningismus	CT, LP
	Encephalitis	Focal neurological signs Fever, H/A, \pm seizure	CT, LP MRI
	Abscess	Increased ICP Focal neurological signs	CT with contrast (often ring enhancing lesion)
Traumatic	Diffuse axonal shear, epidural hematoma, subdural hematoma	Trauma Hx Increased ICP Focal neurological signs	CT (non-contrast) MRI
Autoimmune	Acute CNS vasculitis	Skin rash, active joints	ANA, ANCA, RF MRI Angiography
	Paraneoplastic encephalitis (anti-NMDA-R)	Onset: Psychiatric features, memory loss, seizures Delayed: Movement disorder, and changes in blood pressure, heart rate, and temperature	CSF (test for presence of antibodies)
Neoplastic	Mass effect/edema, hemorrhage, seizure	Increased ICP Focal neurological signs Papilledema	CT (non-contrast) MRI
Seizure	Status epilepticus	See <i>Seizure Disorders and Epilepsy</i> , N16	EEG
Primary Psychiatric	Psychotic disorder, mood disorder, anxiety disorder	No organic signs or symptoms	No specific tests
Other	Drugs (e.g. cocaine)	Chest pain, cough with black sputum, new-onset seizure, HTN, increased ICP, dyspnea	Vital signs Serum chemistry and electrolyte analysis
	Medications (with anticholinergic side effects)	Flushing, dry skin and mucous membranes, mydriasis with loss of accommodation	Serum chemistry and electrolyte analysis



Delirium is a medical emergency carrying significant risk of morbidity and mortality; it is characterized by acute onset, disorientation, fluctuating level of consciousness, poor attention, and marked psychomotor changes



Visual hallucinations more commonly indicate organic disease

Major Neurocognitive Disorder (formerly Dementia)

- see [Psychiatry](#), PS17



Definition

- an acquired, generalized, and (usually) progressive impairment of cognitive function (i.e. memory, recall, orientation, language, abstraction) associated with impairment in activities of daily living (i.e. planning, shopping, food preparation, difficulties with finances)
- affects comprehension, but not level of consciousness

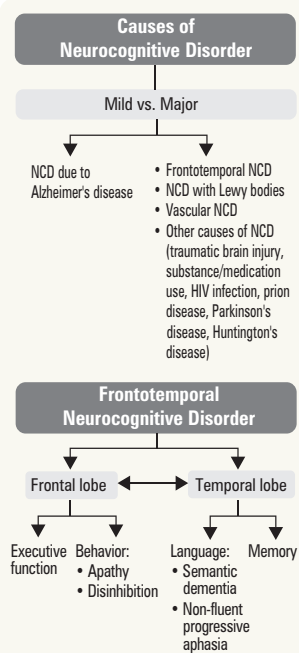


Figure 18. Dementia classification

- Diagnosis of Major NCD requires presence of significant cognitive decline from a previous level of performance in one or more cognitive domains (complex attention, executive function, learning and memory, language, perceptual-motor, or social cognition) based on:
 - A) concern of the individual or a knowledgeable informant AND
 - B) a substantial impairment in cognitive performance either documented by standardized neuropsychological testing or quantified clinical assessment
- see [Psychiatry, PS17](#) for DSM-5 diagnostic criteria
- see [Geriatric Medicine, GM3](#)
- differentiated from mild NCD (formerly mild cognitive impairment) by the extent to which the impairment affects ADLs
 - Mild NCD represents an intermediate stage between dementia and normal aging
 - By definition, IADLs are not affected in Mild NCD



Epidemiology

- major NCD (dementia): 1-2% at age 65 and reaching as high as 30% by age 85
- mild NCD: 2-10% at age 65 and 5-25% by age 85
- note
 - Major NCD due to Alzheimer's disease is uncommon before age 60
 - Major NCD due to frontotemporal lobar degeneration has an earlier onset and represents a progressively smaller fraction of all NCDs with age

Etiology

- see [Table 14](#) for common causes of dementia
- see [Table 15](#) for acquired causes of dementia
- reversible causes: alcohol (intoxication or withdrawal, Wernicke's encephalopathy), medication (benzodiazepines, anticholinergics), heavy metal toxicity, hepatic or renal failure, B₁₂ deficiency, glucose, cortisol, thyroid dysfunction, normal pressure hydrocephalus, depression (pseudodementia), intracranial tumor, subdural hematoma, hypercalcemia (secondary to elevated PTH)
- must rule out delirium

History

- "geriatric giants"
 - confusion/incontinence/falls/polypharmacy
 - memory and safety (wandering, leaving doors unlocked, leaving stove on, losing objects)
 - behavioral (mood, anxiety, psychosis, suicidal ideation, personality changes, aggression)
- ADLs and IADLs
- cardiovascular, endocrine, neoplastic, renal ROS
- alcohol, smoking
- OTCs, herbal remedies, medications (sedative hypnotics, antipsychotics, antidepressants, anticholinergics), compliance, accessibility
- history of vascular disease or head trauma
- collateral history

Physical Exam

- blood pressure
- hearing and vision
- neurological exam with attention to signs of parkinsonism, UMN findings, cerebrovascular disease
- general physical exam depending on risk factors and history
- MMSE or MoCA, clock drawing, frontal lobe testing (go/no-go, word lists, similarities, proverb)

Investigations

- depends on suspected etiologies (see [Tables 13 and 14](#))
 - CBC (note MCV for evidence of alcohol use and B₁₂ deficiency), glucose, TSH, B₁₂, RBC folate
 - electrolytes, LFTs, renal function, lipids, serum calcium
 - CT head, MRI as indicated (MRI preferred), SPECT (optional)
 - as clinically indicated: VDRL, HIV, ANA, anti-dsDNA, ANCA, ceruloplasmin, copper, cortisol, toxicology, heavy metals
- issues to consider
 - failure to cope, fitness to drive, caregiver education and stress, power of attorney, legal will, advanced medical directives, patient and caregiver safety



Sensitivity and Specificity

Tool	Sensitivity	Specificity
MMSE	87%	82%
Clinical Judgment	85%	82%
DSM IV	76%	80%



Vitamin B₁₂ Deficiency Symptoms

- Macrocytic anemia, pallor, SOB, fatigue, chest pain, palpitations
- Confusion or change in mental status (if advanced)
- Decreased vibration sense
- Distal numbness and paresthesia
- Weakness with UMN findings
- Diarrhea, anorexia



Dementia DDx

VITAMIN D VEST

Vitamin deficiency (B₁₂, folate, thiamine)
 Intracranial tumor
 Trauma (head injury)
 Anoxia
 Metabolic (DM)
 Infection (postencephalitis, HIV)
 Normal pressure hydrocephalus
 Degenerative (Alzheimer's, Huntington's, CJD)
 Vascular (multi-infarct dementia)
 Endocrine (hypothyroid)
 Space occupying lesion (chronic subdural hematoma)
 Toxic (alcohol)

Table 14. Common Causes of Major NCD (Dementia)

Etiology	Key Clinical Features	Investigations
PRIMARY DEGENERATIVE		
Alzheimer's disease	Memory impairment Aphasia, apraxia, agnosia	CT or MRI, SPECT
Dementia with Lewy bodies	Visual hallucinations Parkinsonism Fluctuating cognition	CT or MRI, SPECT
Frontotemporal dementia (e.g. Pick's disease)	<u>Behavioral presentation</u> : Disinhibition, perseveration, decreased social awareness, mental rigidity, memory relatively spared <u>Language presentation</u> : Progressive non-fluent aphasia, semantic dementia	CT or MRI, SPECT
Huntington's disease	Chorea	Genetic testing
VASCULAR		
Vascular cognitive impairment (previously Multi-infarct dementia)	Bradyphrenia without features of parkinsonism (slow thinking, slow rate of learning, slow gait) Dysexecutive syndrome May be abrupt onset Stepwise deterioration is classic but progressive deterioration is most common	CT or MRI, SPECT
CNS vasculitis	Systemic S&S of vasculitis	ANA; ANCA; RF CT or MRI Angiography

Table 15. Acquired Causes of Major NCD (Dementia)

Etiology	Key Clinical Features	Investigations
INFECTIOUS		
Chronic meningitis	Fever, headache, nausea Meningismus Localizing neuro deficits	CT, LP
Chronic encephalitis	Fever, H/A	CT or MRI
Chronic abscess	Increased ICP Localizing neuro signs	CT with contrast
HIV	See Infectious Diseases, ID29	HIV serology
Creutzfeldt-Jacob disease	Rapidly progressive, myoclonus	EEG, CT or MRI, LP
Syphilis	Ataxia, myoclonus, tabes dorsalis	LP, CT, or MRI VDRL
TRAUMATIC		
Diffuse axonal shear, epidural hematoma, subdural hematoma	Trauma Hx Increased ICP, papilledema Localizing neuro signs	CT (non-contrast)
RHEUMATOLOGIC		
SLE	See Rheumatology, RH11	MRI ANA, anti-dsDNA
NEOPLASTIC		
Mass effect/edema, hemorrhage, seizure	Increased ICP Localizing neuro signs	CT with contrast MRI
Paraneoplastic encephalitis	Systemic symptoms of cancer	Anti-Hu antibodies

**Dementia Considerations for Management****ABCDs**

Affective disorders, ADLs
Behavioral problems
Caretaker, Cognitive medications and stimulation
Directives, Driving
Sensory enhancement (glasses/hearing aids)


Cholinesterase Inhibitors for Dementia with Lewy Bodies (DLB), Parkinson's Disease Dementia (PDD), and Cognitive Impairment in Parkinson's Disease (CIND-PD)

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;3:CD006504

Study: Meta-analysis of RCTs assessing efficacy of treatment with cholinesterase inhibitors in DLB, PDD, and CIND-PD.

Results: The six trials (n=1,236) included demonstrated therapeutic benefit of cholinesterase inhibitors for global assessment, cognitive function, behavioral disturbance, and activities of daily living. Cholinesterase inhibitors were associated with increased adverse events (OR 1.64) and drop out (OR 1.94). Adverse events were more common with rivastigmine but not with donepezil. Fewer deaths occurred in the treatment group (OR 0.28).

Conclusion: Current evidence supports use of cholinesterase inhibitors for patients with PDD but its role in DLB and CIND-PD is still unclear.



Most common causes of rapidly progressive neurodegenerative dementia (less than 4 yr survival): CJD, frontal temporal lobar dementia, tauopathies, diffuse Lewy body disease, and AD
Arch Neurol 2009;66:201-207

Early Signs of Dementia/Major NCD	Normal Aging
Forgetting the names of close relations	Forgetting the names of acquaintances
Increased frequency of forgetting	Briefly forgetting part of an experience
Repeating phrases/stories in the same conversation	Not putting away things properly
Unpredictable mood changes	Mood changes in response to appropriate causes
Decreased interest in activities and difficulty making choices	Changes in usual interests

Major or Mild NCD due to Alzheimer's Disease

- see [Psychiatry, PS17](#)

Definition

- beyond criterion for NCD, the core features of major or mild NCD due to Alzheimer's disease include an insidious onset and gradual progression of cognitive and behavioral symptoms
- typical presentation: amnesic (i.e. impairment in memory and learning - impaired ability to learn new information)
 - mild phase: impairment in memory and learning sometimes accompanied with deficits in executive function
 - moderate-severe phase: visuoconstructional/perceptual-motor ability and language may also be impaired
 - social cognition tends to be preserved until late in the course of the disease



- atypical nonamnesic presentation (one of the following)
 - a. aphasia: language disturbance
 - b. apraxia: impaired ability to carry out motor activities despite intact motor function
 - c. agnosia: failure to recognize or identify objects despite intact sensory function
- note: there may be no evidence of mixed etiology (i.e. absence of other neurodegenerative or cerebrovascular disease)

Pathophysiology

- genetic factors
 - minority (<7%) of AD cases are familial (autosomal dominant)
 - 3 major genes for autosomal dominant AD have been identified
 - ♦ amyloid precursor protein (chromosome 21), presenilin 1 (chromosome 14), presenilin 2 (chromosome 1)
 - the E4 polymorphism of apolipoprotein E (APOE) is a susceptibility genotype (E2 is protective)
 - note: APOE cannot serve as a diagnostic marker because it is only a risk factor and neither necessary nor sufficient for disease occurrence
- pathology (although not necessarily specific for AD)
 - gross pathology
 - ♦ diffuse cortical atrophy, especially frontal, parietal, and temporal lobes (hippocampi)
 - microscopic pathology
 - ♦ senile plaques (extracellular deposits of amyloid in the gray matter of the brain)
 - ♦ loss of synapses
 - ♦ neurofibrillary tangles (intracytoplasmic paired helical filaments with amyloid and hyperphosphorylated Tau protein)
 - ♦ loss of cholinergic neurons in nucleus basalis of Meynert that project diffusely throughout the cortex
 - biochemical pathology
 - ♦ 50-90% reduction in action of choline acetyltransferase

Epidemiology

- 1/12 of population 65-75 yr of age
- up to 1/3 population >85 yr of age
- accounts for 60-90% of all dementias (depending on setting and diagnostic criteria)

Risk Factors

- age is the largest risk factor
- genetic susceptibility polymorphism: apolipoprotein E4 increases risk and decreases age of onset
- other factors include: traumatic brain injury, family history, Down syndrome, low education, and presence of multiple vascular risk factors (e.g. smoking, HTN, hypercholesterolemia, DM)

Signs and Symptoms

- cognitive impairment
 - memory impairment for newly acquired information (early)
 - deficits in language, abstract reasoning, and executive function
- behavioral and psychiatric manifestations (80% of those with major NCD)
 - mild NCD: major depressive disorder and/or apathy
 - major NCD: psychosis, irritability, agitation, combativeness, and wandering
- motor manifestations (late)
 - gait disturbance, dysphagia, incontinence, myoclonus, and seizures
 - parkinsonism (if present consider DLB)

Investigations

- perform investigations to rule out other potentially reversible causes of dementia
- EEG: usually normal, may observe generalized slowing (nonspecific)
- MRI: preferential atrophy of the hippocampi and precuneus of the parietal lobe; dilatation of lateral ventricles; widening of cortical sulci
- SPECT: hypoperfusion in temporal and parietal lobes
- PET Imaging: imaging using Pittsburgh compound B (PIB) as a tracer enables imaging of beta-amyloid plaque in neuronal tissue

Treatment

- acetylcholinesterase inhibitors have been shown to slow decline in cognitive function
 - donepezil, rivastigmine, galantamine
 - relative contraindications: bradycardia, heart block, arrhythmia, CHF, CAD, asthma, COPD, ulcers, or risk factors for ulcers, and GI bleeding
 - galantamine is contraindicated in patients with hepatic/renal impairment
- memantine is an NMDA-receptor antagonist that has some benefits in later stage AD (i.e. when MMSE <17)
- symptomatic management
 1. pharmacologic
 - low dose neuroleptics for agitation (neuroleptics may worsen cognitive decline)
 - trazodone for sleep disturbance
 - antidepressants (SSRIs)



4 As and one D of AD

Anterograde amnesia
Aphasia
Apraxia
Agnosia
Disturbance in executive function

(Anterograde amnesia plus at least one of the other features is required for AD diagnosis)



Down syndrome predisposes to early onset of Alzheimer's (i.e. age of ~40) due to three copies of the amyloid gene (APP)

2. non-pharmacologic

- redirection
- explore inciting factors for behavior and modify behavior of patient or caregiver
- family support and day care facilities

Prognosis

- mean duration of survival after diagnosis is approximately 10 yr, reflecting the advanced age of the majority of individuals rather than the course of the disease
- in those who survive the full course, death commonly results from aspiration

Major or Mild NCD with Lewy Bodies (formerly Dementia with Lewy Bodies)

Definition

- A NCD that includes not only progressive cognitive impairment (with early changes in complex attention and executive function rather than learning and memory), but also recurrent complex visual hallucinations.
- core diagnostic features
 - fluctuating cognition with pronounced variations in attention and alertness
 - recurrent visual hallucinations that are well formed and detailed
 - spontaneous features of parkinsonism, with onset subsequent to development of cognitive decline (rest tremor may be absent in DLB, but otherwise same classic features of Parkinson's disease)
- suggestive/supportive features
 - meets criteria for rapid eye movement (REM) sleep behavior disorder
 - severe sensitivity to neuroleptic medications (rigidity, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, extrapyramidal symptoms)
 - repeated falls, syncope, or transient episodes of unexplained loss of consciousness
 - auditory or other nonvisual hallucinations, systematic delusions, and depression may also be present

Etiology and Pathogenesis

- Lewy bodies (eosinophilic cytoplasmic inclusions) found in both cortical and subcortical structures
- mixed DLB and AD pathology is common

Diagnostically Suggestive Markers

- low striatal dopamine transporter uptake on SPECT or PET
- relative preservation of medial temporal structures on CT/MRI

Epidemiology

- 0.1-5% of the general elderly population
- Lewy bodies are present in 20-35% of all dementia cases (more common in males)

Treatment

- acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (e.g. donepezil)

Prognosis

- average duration of survival 5-7 yr

Major or Mild Frontotemporal Neurocognitive Disorder (formerly Frontotemporal Dementia)

Definition

- refers to a group of disorders caused by progressive cell degeneration in the brain's frontal or temporal lobes
- there are several variants of FTD each with specific core symptoms
- nevertheless, there is overlap between variants (i.e. NCD criteria along with relative sparing of learning and memory and perceptual-motor function)
- common neurocognitive symptoms include deficits in executive function (e.g. poor mental flexibility, abstract reasoning, response inhibition, planning/organization, and increased distractibility)
- "probable" is distinguished from "possible" frontotemporal NCD by:
 - evidence of causative frontotemporal NCD genetic mutation, from either family history or genetic testing
 - evidence of disproportionate frontal and/or anterior temporal atrophy on MRI or CT
 - evidence of frontal and/or anterior temporal hypoperfusion or hypometabolism on PET or SPECT

Behavioral Variant FTD

- most common variant; disinhibition and apathy are common symptoms
- insidious onset: must show progressive deterioration of behavior and/or cognition by observation or history
- prominent decline in social cognition and/or executive abilities
- typically early symptom presentation (i.e. within the first 3 yr)
- three out of the following symptoms must be present and persistent/recurrent
 - behavioral disinhibition (socially inappropriate behavior, impulsive, careless)
 - apathy or inertia
 - loss of sympathy or empathy (diminished response to others' needs/feelings, social interest)
 - preservative, stereotyped, or compulsive/ritualistic behavior
 - hyperorality and dietary changes (binge eating, increased consumption of alcohol/cigarettes or inedible objects)

Language Variants (Primary Progressive Aphasia)

- prominent decline in language ability, in the form of speech production, word finding, object naming, grammar, or word comprehension
- three subtypes
 - nonfluent/agrammatic variant PPA (NFAV-PPA) or progressive nonfluent aphasia (PNFA): non-fluent, labored articulation/speech, anomia, preserved single word comprehension, word-finding deficit, impaired repetition
 - semantic variant PPA (SV-PPA) or semantic dementia (SD): fluent, normal rate, anomia, impaired single word comprehension, intact repetition, use words of generalization ("thing") or supraordinate categories ("animal" for "dog")
 - logopenic progressive aphasia (LPA): naming difficulty and impaired repetition

FTD Movement Disorders

- corticobasal degeneration (CBD): shakiness, lack of coordination, muscle rigidity and spasms
- progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP): walking and balance problems; frequent falls and muscle stiffness

Etiology and Pathogenesis

- unknown, however there is likely a genetic/familial component (40% have family history of early onset NCD)
- genetic variants: MAPT gene (Tau), PGRN gene (progranulin), VCP gene, TARDBP gene (TDP-43), CHMP2D gene
- unlike AD, FTD does not show amyloid plaques or neurofibrillary tangles, instead it is characterized by severe atrophy and specific neuronal inclusion bodies
- gross changes: atrophy in the frontal and anterior temporal lobes; cortical thinning; possible ventricular enlargement
- histological changes: gliosis, swollen neurons, microvacuolation, inclusion bodies in neurons/glia (Tau or TDP-43)

Epidemiology

- fourth most common cause of dementia (5% of all dementia cases)
- common cause of early-onset NCD in individuals younger than 65 yr

Prognosis

- median survival being 6-11 yr after symptoms onset and 3-4 yr after diagnosis
- survival is shorter and decline is faster than in typical Alzheimer's disease

Major or Mild Vascular Neurocognitive Disorder

Definition

- diagnosis of major or mild NCD with determination of cerebrovascular disease as the dominant if not exclusive pathology that accounts for the cognitive deficits
- vascular etiology suggested by one of the following
 - onset of cognitive deficits is temporally related to one or more cerebrovascular events
 - evidence for decline is prominent in complex attention (including processing speed) and frontal-executive function
- evidence of the presence of cerebrovascular disease from history, physical exam, and/or neuroimaging that is sufficient to account for the neurocognitive deficits
- neuroimaging evidence of cerebrovascular disease comprises one or more of the following
 - one or more large vessel infarct or hemorrhage
 - a strategically placed single infarct or hemorrhage (e.g. angular gyrus, thalamus, basal forebrain)
 - two or more lacunar infarcts outside the brainstem
 - extensive and confluent white matter lesions

- for mild vascular NCD: history of a single stroke or extensive white matter disease is sufficient
- for major vascular NCD: history of two or more strokes, a strategically placed stroke, or a combination of white matter disease, and one or more lacune is generally necessary
- associated features supporting diagnosis: personality and mood changes, abulia, depression, emotional lability, and psychomotor slowing

Etiology and Pathogenesis

- major risk factors are the same as those for cerebrovascular disease (i.e. HTN, DM, smoking, obesity, high cholesterol levels, high homocysteine levels, other risk factors for atherosclerosis, atrial fibrillation, and conditions increasing risk of cerebral emboli)
- major or mild vascular NCD with gradual onset and slow progression is generally due to small vessel disease leading to lesions in white matter, basal ganglia, and/or thalamus
- cognitive deficits can be attributed to disruption of cortical-subcortical circuits

Epidemiology

- second most common cause of NCD
- prevalence estimates for vascular dementia/NCD range from 0.2-13% (by age 70), 16% (ages 80+) to 44.6% (ages 90+)
- higher prevalence in African Americans compared to Caucasians and East Asians
- prevalence higher in males than in females

Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease

- rare degenerative fatal brain disorder caused by prion proteins causing spongiform changes, astrocytosis, and neuronal loss
- most common forms are sporadic (85%), hereditary (5-10%), and acquired (<1%)
- investigations: CSF analysis, MRI brain (cortical and/or subcortical FLAIR changes), EEG (periodic complexes)
- definitive diagnosis is by brain biopsy
- no treatments currently exist



Prion proteins have a normal form and an infectious form, which results from conversion of the protein from alpha-helix (normal) to beta-pleated sheet (abnormal); these abnormally folded proteins aggregate leading to neuronal loss

Normal Pressure Hydrocephalus

- see [Neurosurgery](#), NS7



Aphasia

Definition

- an acquired disturbance of language characterized by errors in speech production, writing, comprehension, or reading

Neuroanatomy of Aphasia

- Broca's area (posterior inferior frontal lobe) involved in speech production (expressive)
- Wernicke's area (posterior superior temporal lobe) involved in comprehension of language (receptive)
- angular gyrus is responsible for relaying written visual stimuli to Wernicke's area for reading comprehension
- arcuate fasciculus association bundle connects Wernicke's and Broca's areas

Assessment of Language

- assessment of context
 - handedness (writing, drawing, toothbrush, scissors), education level, native language, learning difficulties
- assessment of aphasia
 - spontaneous speech (fluency, paraphasias, repetition, naming, comprehension – auditory and reading, writing, neologisms)



- >99% of right-handed people have left hemisphere language representation
- 70% of left-handed people have left hemisphere language representation, 15% have right hemisphere representation, and 15% have bilateral representation



Types of Paraphasias

- Semantic ("chair" for "table")
- Phonemic ("clable" for "table")



Aphasia localizes the lesion to the dominant cerebral hemisphere

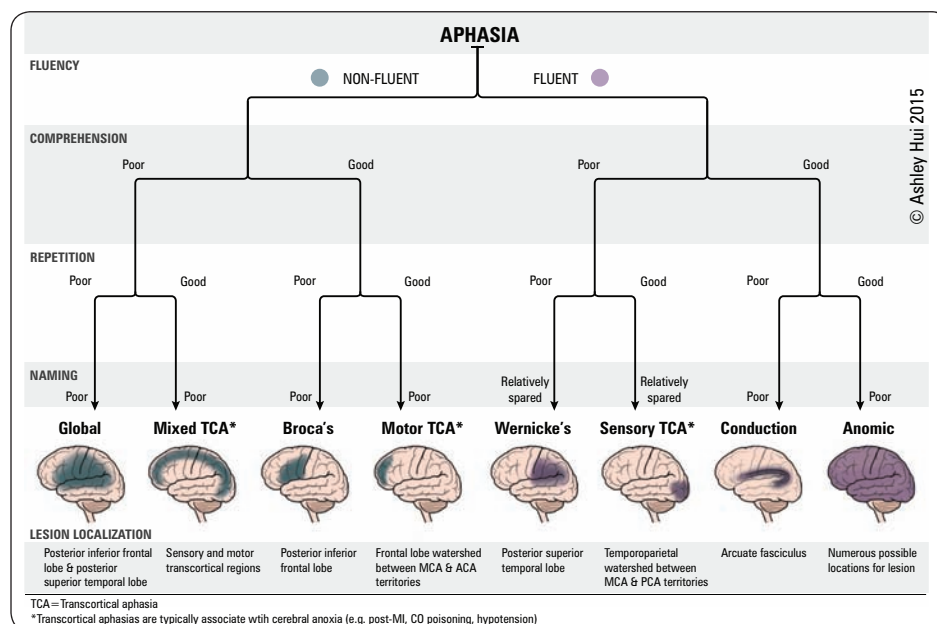


Figure 19. Aphasia classification

Apraxia

Definition

- inability to perform skilled voluntary motor sequences that cannot be accounted for by weakness, ataxia, sensory loss, impaired comprehension, or inattention

Clinicopathological Correlations

Table 16. Apraxia

	Description	Tests	Hemispheres
Ideomotor	Inability to perform skilled learned motor sequences	Blowing out a match; combing one's hair	Left
Ideational	Inability to sequence actions	Preparing and mailing an envelope	Right and left
Constructional*	Inability to draw or construct	Copying a figure	Right and left
Dressing*	Inability to dress	Dressing	Right

*Refers specifically to the inability to carry out the learned movements involved in construction, drawing, or dressing; not merely the inability to construct, draw, or dress. Many skills aside from praxis are needed to carry out these tasks

Agnosia

Definition

- disorder in the recognition of the significance of sensory stimuli in the presence of intact sensation and naming

Clinicopathological Correlations

Table 17. Agnosias

	Description	Lesion
Aperceptive Visual Agnosia	Inability to name or demonstrate the use of an object presented visually 2° to distorted visual perception Recognition by touch remains intact	Bilateral temporo-occipital cortex
Associative Visual Agnosia	Inability to name an object presented visually 2° to disconnect between visual cortex and language areas Visual perception is intact as demonstrated by visual matching	Bilateral inferior temporo-occipital junction
Prosopagnosia	Inability to recognize familiar faces in the presence of intact visual perception and intact auditory recognition	Bilateral occipitotemporal areas or right inferior temporo-occipital region
Color Agnosia	Inability to perceive color	Bilateral inferior temporo-occipital lesions
Impaired Stereognosis	Inability to identify objects by touch	Anterior parietal lobe in the hemisphere opposite the affected hand
Finger Agnosia	Inability to recognize, name, and point to individual fingers	Dominant hemisphere parietal-occipital lesions



Parietal Lobe Lesions

- Lesions of the dominant parietal lobe are characterized by Gerstmann's syndrome: acalculia, agraphia, finger agnosia, and left-right disorientation
- Lesions of the non-dominant parietal lobe are characterized by neglect, anosognosia, and asomatognosia
- Cortical sensory loss (graphesthesia, astereognosis, impaired 2 point discrimination and extinction) can be seen with left or right parietal lesions

Mild Traumatic Brain Injury

Definition

- mild TBI = concussion
- trauma induced transient alteration in mental status that may involve loss of consciousness
- hallmarks of concussion: confusion and amnesia, which may occur within minutes
- loss of consciousness (if present) must be less than 30 min, initial GCS must be between 13-15, and post-traumatic amnesia must be less than 24 h



- Extent of retrograde amnesia correlates with severity of injury
- Regained from most distant to recent memories

Epidemiology

- 75% of TBIs are estimated to be mild; remainder are moderate or severe (see [Neurosurgery, NS31](#) and [Emergency Medicine, ER7](#))
- highest rates in children 0-4 yr, adolescents 15-19 yr, and elderly >65 yr



Clinical Features

- impairments following mild TBI
 - somatic: headache, sleep disturbance, N/V, blurred vision
 - cognitive dysfunction: attentional impairment, reduced processing speed, drowsiness, amnesia
 - emotion and behavior: impulsivity, irritability, depression
- severe concussion: may precipitate seizure, bradycardia, hypotension, sluggish pupils
- associated conditions: brain contusion, diffuse axonal injury, C-spine injury

Investigations

- neuro exam to identify focal neurologic deficits
- neurocognitive assessment
 - simple orientation questions are inadequate to detect cognitive changes
 - initial assessment of severity is determined by
 - ♦ Glasgow Coma Scale: mild: 13-15, moderate: 9-12, severe: 3-8
 - sideline evaluation: Standardized Assessment of Concussion, Westmead Post-Traumatic Amnesia Scale, Sport Concussion Assessment Tool
- neuroimaging
 - x-ray of skull: not indicated for routine evaluation of MTBI
 - CT head as indicated (see [Emergency Medicine, ER8](#))
 - MRI not indicated in initial evaluation – indicated in presence of continued or worsening symptoms despite normal CT



Treatment

- observation for first 24 h after mild TBI in all patients because of risk of intracranial complications
- emergency department for assessment if any loss of consciousness or persistent symptoms
- hospitalization with normal CT if GCS <15, seizures, or bleeding diathesis; or abnormal CT scan
- early rehabilitation to maximize outcomes
 - OT, PT, SLP, vestibular therapy, driving, therapeutic recreation
- pharmacological management of headaches, pain, depression
- CBT, relaxation therapy
- follow Return to Play guidelines (www.thinkfirst.ca)

Prognosis

- most recover from mild TBI with minimal treatment, but some experience long-term consequences
- athletes with a previous concussion are at increased risk of subsequent concussion and cumulative brain injury
- repeat TBI can lead to life threatening cerebral edema (controversially known as second impact syndrome) or permanent impairment
- sequelae include
 - postconcussion syndrome: dizziness, headache, neuropsychiatric symptoms, cognitive impairment (usually resolves within weeks to months)
 - post-traumatic headaches: begin within seven days of injury
 - post-traumatic epilepsy: twofold increase in risk of epilepsy in 5 yr post-TBI, prophylactic anticonvulsants not effective
 - post-traumatic vertigo

Neuro-Oncology

Paraneoplastic Syndromes

- see [Endocrinology](#), E51



Tumors of the Nervous System

- see [Neurosurgery](#), NS10



Movement Disorders

Overview of Movement Disorders

Table 18. Movement Disorder Definitions

Akathisia	Subjective restlessness relieved by stereotypic movements (e.g. squirming)
Asterixis	Loss of muscle contraction (negative myoclonus)
Athetosis	Slow writhing movements, especially distally
Bradykinesia	Slow and/or small amplitude movements
Chorea	Brief, abrupt, irregular movements; can appear purposeful in milder forms
Dyskinesia	Any sudden involuntary movement, but the term is often used to describe the stereotypical movements that come with long-term neuroleptic or dopaminergic use
Dystonia	Co-contraction of agonist and antagonists causing sustained twisting movements
Freezing	Episodes of halted motor action, especially during walking
Hemiballismus	Unilateral violent flinging movement
Myoclonus	Brief muscle group contraction that is either focal, segmental, or generalized
Myokimia	Spontaneous, fine, fascicular contraction of muscle
Tachykinesia	Acceleration of movements
Tics	Stereotyped repetitive actions due to inner urge; can be suppressed
Tremor	Rhythmic alternating muscle contraction and relaxation



In some cases, dystonias may only occur during voluntary movement and sometimes only during specific activities such as writing, chewing, or speaking



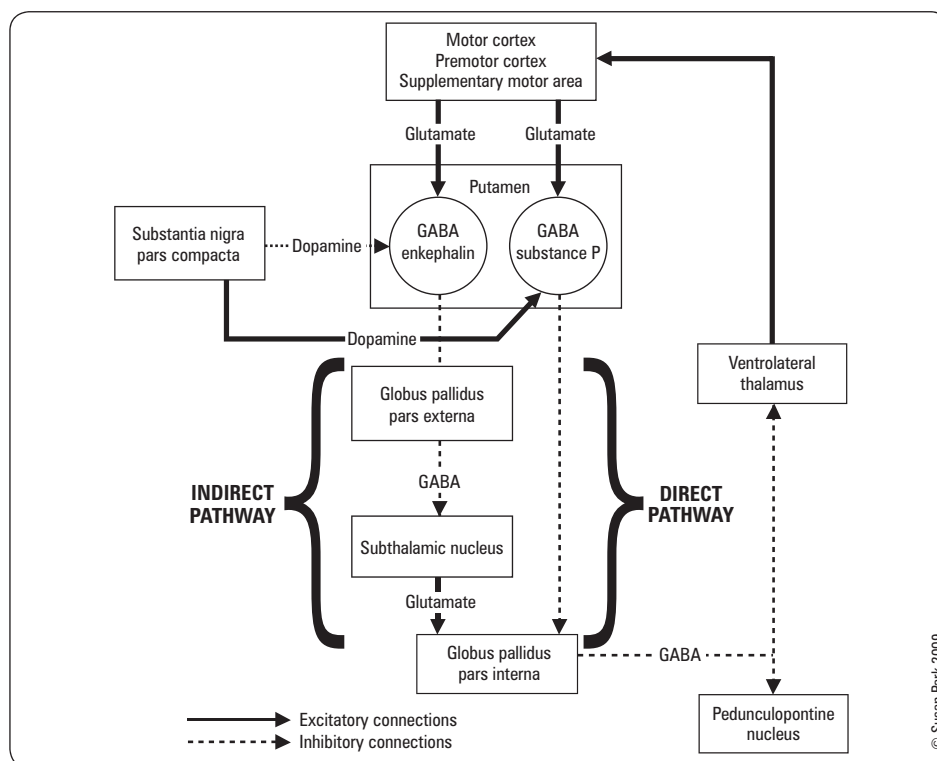
Hemiballismus is most often due to a vascular lesion of the contralateral subthalamic nucleus



Some myoclonus is stimulus sensitive and can be induced by noise, movement, light, visual threat, or pinprick

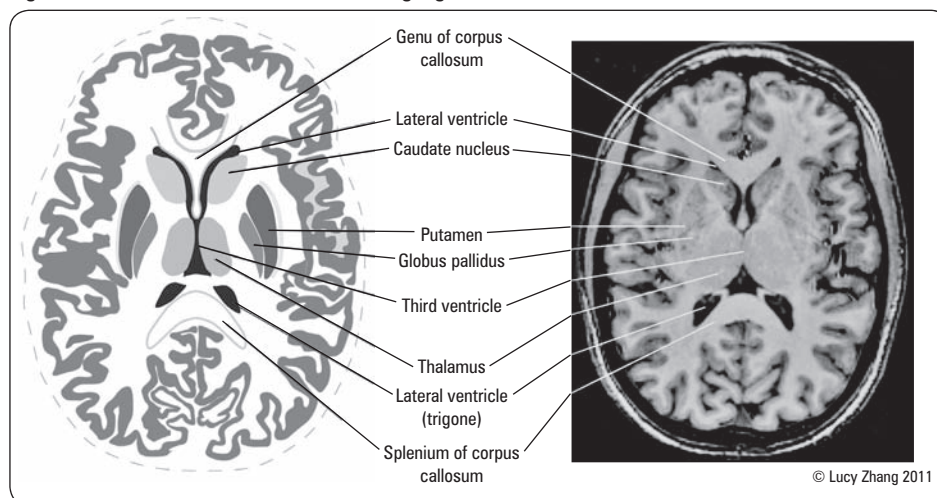
Function of the Basal Ganglia

- the cerebral cortex initiates movement via excitatory (glutamatergic) projections to the striatum, which then activate two pathways: direct and indirect
- direct: cortex → striatum → GPi/SNr → thalamus → motor cortex
 - activation of this pathway removes the inhibitory effect of the GPi on the thalamus, letting the thalamus activate the cortex and ultimately allowing movement
- indirect: cortex → striatum → GPe → STN → GPi/SNr → thalamus → motor cortex
 - activation of this pathway causes inhibition of the thalamus and ultimately prevents movement



© Susan Park 2009

Figure 20. Neural connections of the basal ganglia



© Lucy Zhang 2011

Figure 21. Horizontal section of basal ganglia

Movement Disorders

Differential Diagnoses

1. Tremor

- **postural:** physiologic, anxiety, sedative/alcohol withdrawal, drug toxicity, heavy metal poisoning, carbon monoxide poisoning, thyrotoxicosis, benign essential tremor, cerebellar, Wilson's disease
 - ♦ benign essential tremor is a common autosomal dominant trait that presents as a bilateral postural tremor of the vertical axis, especially in the upper extremities
- **intention:** brainstem lesion, cerebellar lesion, alcohol, anticonvulsants, sedatives, Wilson's disease
- **resting:** Parkinsonism, Wilson's disease, mercury poisoning



In a young patient (<45) must do TSH (thyroid disease), ceruloplasmin (Wilson's disease), and CT/MRI (cerebellar disease) as indicated by type of tremor



Alcohol

- Dampens essential tremor
- Potentiates intention tremor
- Does not improve resting tremor of PD



>90% of essential tremor does not need treatment

Table 19. Approach to Tremors

	Resting	Postural	Intention
Body Part	Distal UE	UE/head/voice	Anywhere
Characteristics	3-7 Hz pill rolling	6-12 Hz fine tremor	< 5 Hz coarse tremor
Worse with	Rest while concentrating	Sustained posture (outstretched arms)	Finger to nose
Associated Sx	"TRAP"	± Autosomal dominant FHx	Cerebellar findings
DDx	PD, Parkinsonism, Wilson's disease	Physiologic, benign essential, drugs, hyperthyroid, hyperglycemic	Cerebellar disorders, Wilson's disease, alcohol, MS
Treatment	Sinemet, surgery, DBS	Propranolol, anticonvulsants, primidone	Treat underlying cause

2. **Chorea:** Huntington's disease, neuroacanthocytosis, SLE, APLA syndrome, Wilson's disease, cerebrovascular disease, tardive dyskinesia, senile chorea, Sydenham's chorea, pregnancy chorea

3. Dystonia

- **primary dystonia:** familial, sporadic (torticollis, blepharospasm, writer's cramp)
- **dystonia-plus syndromes:** dopa-responsive dystonia, myoclonus-dystonia
- **secondary dystonia:** thalamotomy, stroke, CNS tumor, demyelination, PNS injury, drugs/toxins (L-dopa, neuroleptics, anticonvulsants, Mn, CO, cyanide, methanol)
- **heterodegenerative dystonias:** Parkinsonian disorders, Wilson's disease, Huntington's disease

4. Myoclonus

- **physiologic myoclonus:** hiccups, nocturnal myoclonus
- **essential myoclonus**
- **epileptic myoclonus**
- **symptomatic myoclonus**
 - degenerative disorders (Wilson's disease, Huntington's disease, Corticobasal degeneration)
 - infectious disorders (CJD, viral encephalitis, AIDS-dementia complex)
 - metabolic disorders (drug intoxication/withdrawal, hypoglycemia, hyponatremia, HONK, hepatic encephalopathy, uremia, hypoxia)
 - focal brain damage (head injury, stroke, mass)

5. Tics

- **primary tic disorders:** transient tic disorder, chronic tic disorder, Gilles de la Tourette, adult onset or senile
- **secondary tic disorders:** encephalitis, CJD, Sydenham's chorea, head trauma, drugs, mental retardation syndromes
- association with OCD and ADHD



Most common cause of chorea is drug therapy for PD



Palatal myoclonus can result from lesion to the Dentato-Rubro-Olivary tract, and is associated with an audible clicking

Parkinson's Disease

Etiology

- **sporadic:** combination of oxidative stress to dopaminergic neurons, environmental toxins (e.g. pesticides), accelerated aging, genetics
- **familial** (10%): autosomal dominant α -synuclein mutations, autosomal recessive Parkin gene or DJ-1 gene mutation (juvenile onset)
- **MPTP** (neurotoxin)

Epidemiology

- prevalence of 0.3% in industrialized countries, but rises with increased age
- second most common neuro-degenerative disorder, after Alzheimer's
- mean age of onset is 60 yr

Risk Factors

- family history, male, head injury, rural living, exposure to certain neurotoxins
- protective: coffee drinking, smoking, NSAID use, estrogen replacement in post-menopausal women

Pathophysiology

- loss of dopaminergic neurons in pars compacta of substantia nigra, thus reduced dopamine in striatum leading to disinhibition of the indirect pathway and decreased activation of the direct pathway causing increased inhibition of cortical motor areas
- α -synucleinopathy: α -synuclein accumulates in Lewy bodies and causes neurotoxicity in substantia nigra



Key Parkinsonian Features

TRAP

Tremor (resting)
Rigidity
Akinesia/bradykinesia
Postural instability



Diagnostic Criteria

- Bradykinesia, plus one of: resting tremor, muscle rigidity, postural instability not caused by other factors, OR
- 3 or more of the following features:
 - Resting tremor
 - Unilateral onset
 - Persistent asymmetry, with side of onset most affected
 - Progressive disorder
 - Excellent response (70-100%) to levodopa
 - Severe levodopa-induced chorea
 - Response to levodopa for 5 or more yr
 - Clinical course lasting 10 or more yr

Signs and Symptoms

- positive motor
 - resting tremor: asymmetric 4-5 Hz “pill-rolling” tremor, especially in hands
 - rigidity: lead-pipe rigidity with cogwheeling due to superimposed tremor
- negative motor
 - bradykinesia: slow, small amplitude movements, fatiguing of rapid alternating movements, difficulty initiating movement
- related findings: masked facies, hypophonia, aprosody (monotonous speech), dysarthria, micrographia, shuffling gait with decreased arm swing
- freezing: occurs with walking triggered by initiating stride or barriers/destinations, lasting seconds
- postural instability: late finding presenting as falls, festinating gait
- cognition: bradyphrenia (slow to think/respond), dementia (late finding)
- behavioral: decreased spontaneous speech, depression, sleep disturbances, anxiety
- autonomic: constipation, urinary retention, sexual dysfunction, later findings of orthostatic hypotension

Treatment

- pharmacologic
 - mainstay of treatment: Sinemet® (levodopa/carbidopa). Levodopa is a dopamine precursor; carbidopa decreases peripheral metabolism of levodopa, decreasing side effects and increasing half-life of levodopa
 - ♦ levodopa-related fluctuation: delayed onset of response (affected by mealtime), end-of-dose deterioration (“wearing-off”), random oscillations of on-off symptoms
 - ♦ major complication of levodopa is dyskinesia
 - treatment of early PD: dopamine agonists, amantadine, MAOI
 - adjuncts: dopamine agonists, MAOI, anticholinergics (especially if prominent tremors), COMT inhibitors
- surgical: thalamotomy, pallidotomy, deep brain stimulation (thalamic, pallidal, subthalamic)
- psychiatric (see [Psychiatry](#), PS18)



Consider an Alternative Diagnosis if Atypical Parkinsonism

- Poor response to levodopa
- Abrupt onset of symptoms
- Rapid progression
- Early falls
- Early autonomic dysfunction
- Symmetric symptoms at onset
- Early age of onset (<50 yr)
- Early cognitive impairment
- FHx of psychiatric/dementing disorders
- Recent diagnosis of psychiatric disease
- History of encephalitis
- Unusual toxin exposure
- Extensive travel history



Dopamine Agonist Therapy in Early Parkinson's Disease

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;2:CD006564

Study: Meta-analysis of trials of dopamine agonists in early Parkinson's disease.

Results: Twenty-nine trials were included (n=5,247). Dopamine agonists were found to have decreased motor side effects (dyskinesia [OR 0.51], dystonia [OR 0.64], motor fluctuations [OR 0.75]) compared to levodopa, but provided poorer symptom control compared to levodopa. Also, other side effects were increased (constipation [OR 1.59], hallucinations [OR 1.69], dizziness [OR 1.45]).

Conclusion: Dopamine agonists have fewer motor side effects than levodopa, but provide worse symptom control and increased rate of other side effects.



Juvenile Onset (Westphal Variant)

Begins in adolescence with bradykinesia and rigidity with a severe progressive course spanning 5-10 yr

Other Parkinsonian Disorders

- **Dementia/NCD with Lewy bodies (DLB)** (see *Behavioral Neurology*, N23)
- **Progressive supranuclear palsy (PSP)**: tauopathy with limited vertical gaze (classically downgaze), early falls, axial rigidity and akinesia, dysarthria, and dysphagia
- **Corticobasal degeneration (CBD)**: tauopathy with varied presentations but classically presents with unilateral parkinsonism, dystonia/myoclonus, apraxia ± “alien limbs” phenomenon; may also present as progressive non-fluent aphasia
- **Multiple system atrophy (MSA)**: synucleinopathy presenting as either cerebellar predominant (previously olivo-ponto cerebellar atrophy or OPCA) or parkinsonism predominant (previously striato-nigral degeneration); both are associated with early autonomic dysfunction (previously Shy-Drager syndrome)
- **Vascular parkinsonism**: multi-infarct presentation with lower body parkinsonism

Huntington's Disease

Etiology and Pathogenesis

- genetics: autosomal dominant CAG repeats (with anticipation) in Huntington gene on Chromosome 4, which leads to accumulation of defective protein in neurons
- pathology: global cerebral atrophy, especially affecting the striatum, leading to increased activity of the direct pathway and decreased activity of the indirect pathway

Epidemiology

- North American prevalence 4-8/100,000
- mean age of onset 35-44 yr; but varies with degree of anticipation from 5-70 yr

Signs and Symptoms

- typical progression: insidious onset with clumsiness, fidgetiness, and irritability, progressing over 15 yr to frank dementia, psychosis, and chorea
 - dementia: progressive memory impairment and loss of intellectual capacity
 - chorea: begins as movement of eyebrows and forehead, shrugging of shoulders, and parakinesia (pseudopurposeful movement to mask involuntary limb jerking)
 - progresses to dance-like or ballism, and in late stage is replaced by dystonia and rigidity
 - mood changes: irritability, depression, anhedonia, impulsivity, bouts of violence

Investigations

- MRI: enlarged ventricles, atrophy of cerebral cortex and caudate nucleus
- genetic testing
 - expansion of the cytosine-adenine-guanine (CAG) trinucleotide repeats in the HTT gene
 - CAG repeats on chromosome 4p16.3 that encodes the protein huntingtin

Treatment

- no disease altering treatment
- psychiatric symptoms: antidepressants and antipsychotics
- chorea: neuroleptics and benzodiazepines
- dystonia: botulinum toxin

Dystonia

Epidemiology

- third most common movement disorder after Parkinson's disease and essential tremor

Clinical Features

- symptoms exacerbated by fatigue, stress, emotions; relieved by sleep or specific tactile/proprioceptive stimuli ('geste antagoniste', e.g. place hand on face for cervical dystonia)
- more likely to be progressive and generalize if younger onset or leg dystonia

Treatment

- local medical: botulinum toxin
- systemic medical: anticholinergics (benztropine), muscle relaxants (baclofen), benzodiazepines, antidopaminergics (reserpine, neuroleptics); dopamine for dopa-responsive dystonia
- surgical: surgical denervation of affected muscle, stereotaxic thalamotomy (unilateral dystonia), posteroventral pallidotomy



Botulinum toxin (BOTOX®) acts by preventing ACh release at the neuromuscular junction

Tic Disorders

Definition

- a tic is a sudden, rapid, recurrent, nonrhythmic, stereotyped motor movement or vocalization
- common criteria
 - tics may wax and wane in frequency but have persisted for an extended period of time
 - onset before age 18 yr
 - disturbance is not attributable to the physiological effects of a substance or another medical condition

Clinical Classification

- **Tourette's disorder:** multiple motor and one or more vocal tics that have persisted for more than 1 yr since onset
- **Persistent (chronic) motor or vocal tic disorder:** single or multiple motor or vocal tics (but not both motor and vocal) that have persisted for more than 1 yr since onset
- **Provisional tic disorder:** single or multiple motor and/or vocal tics present for <1 yr since first tic onset
- **other specified or unspecified tic disorder:** symptoms characteristic of a tic disorder but do not meet full criteria

Motor vs. Vocal Tics

- simple tics tend to be of short duration (milliseconds)
- complex tics tend to be longer (seconds) and often include a combination of simple tics
 - complex tics may often appear to be purposeful
- motor tics
 - simple: blinking, head jerking, shoulder shrugging, extension of the extremities
 - dystonic: bruxism, grinding teeth, abdominal tension, sustained mouth opening
 - complex: copropraxia (obscene gestures), echopraxia (imitate gestures), throwing, touching
- vocal tics
 - simple: blowing, coughing, grunting, throat clearing
 - complex: coprolalia (shout obscenities), echolalia (repeat others' phrases), palilalia (repeat own phrases)

Treatment

- dopamine blocker

Tourette's Syndrome (Gilles de la Tourette's Syndrome)

Definition According to DSM 5

1. presence of both multiple motor and one or more vocal tics at some point during the illness, although not necessarily concurrently
2. tics may wax and wane in frequency but have persisted for more than 1 yr since first tic onset (with no tic-free periods greater than 3 mo)
3. onset is before age 18 yr
4. not due to effect of a substance or another medical condition

Epidemiology

- estimated prevalence among adolescents 3-8 per 1,000 school-age children; M:F = 2:1 to 4:1

Signs and Symptoms

- **tics:** wide variety that wax and wane in type and severity; can be voluntarily suppressed for some time but are preceded by unpleasant sensation that is relieved once tic is carried out
 - can be worsened by anxiety, excitement, and exhaustion; better during calm focused activities
- **psychiatric:** compulsive behaviors (associated with OCD and ADHD), hyperactive behavior, 'rages', sleep-wake disturbances, learning disabilities

Treatment

- clonidine, clonazepam

Prognosis

- typically begins between ages 4-6
- peak severity occurs between ages 10-12, with a decline in severity during adolescence (50% are tic-free by 18 yr of age)
- tic symptoms however can manifest similarly in all age groups and across the lifespan



Less than 15% of people with Tourette's have coprolalia

Cerebellar Disorders

Clinico-Anatomic Correlations

- **vermis:** trunk/gait ataxia
- **cerebellar lobe (i.e. lateral):** rebound phenomenon, scanning dysarthria, dysidiadochokinesis, dysmetria, nystagmus

Symptoms and Signs of Cerebellar Dysfunction

- nystagmus: observe during extraocular movement testing (most common is gaze-evoked nystagmus)
- dysarthria (ataxic): abnormal modulation of speech velocity and volume – elicit scanning/telegraphic/slurred speech on spontaneous speech (see *CN X Vagus Nerve*, N11)
- ataxia: broad-based, uncoordinated, lurching gait
- dysmetria: irregular placement of voluntary limb or ocular movement
- dysidiadochokinesis: impairment of rapid alternating movements (e.g. pronation – supination task)
- postural instability: truncal ataxia on sitting, titubation (rhythmic rocking of trunk and head), difficulty with tandem and broad-based gait
- intention tremor: typically orthogonal to intended movement, and increases as target is approached
- hypotonia: decreased resistance to passive muscular extension (occurs shortly after injury to lateral cerebellum)
- pendular patellar reflex: knee reflex causes pendular motion of leg (occurs after injury to cerebellar hemispheres)
- rebound phenomenon: overcorrection after displacement of a limb
- hypometric and hypermetric saccades
 - pendular reflexes at triceps



Differentiating Ataxia

	Vestibular	Cerebellar	Sensory
Nystagmus/ Vertigo	+	±	-
Dysarthria	=	±	-
Limb Ataxia	-	+	+
			(esp. legs)
Stance	Worse with eyes closed	Poor with eyes open or closed	Positive Romberg
Vibration/ Proprioception	Normal	Normal	Impaired (esp. distal)
Ankle Reflexes	Normal	Normal	Decreased/ absent

Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome

- see [Psychiatry](#), PS23
- note that alcohol can also cause a cerebellar ataxia separate from thiamine deficiency; this ataxia can be due to cerebellar atrophy or alcohol polyneuropathy



Cerebellar Ataxias



Congenital Ataxias

- early onset nonprogressive ataxias associated with various syndromes as well as developmental abnormalities (e.g. Arnold-Chiari malformation, Dandy-Walker cysts)

Hereditary Ataxias

- autosomal recessive:** includes Friedrich's ataxia, ataxia telangiectasia, vitamin E deficiency
 - Friedrich's ataxia: prevalence 2/100,000; onset between 8 and 15 yr
 - signs: gait and limb ataxia, weakness, areflexia, extensor plantar reflex, impaired proprioception and vibration, dysarthria
 - death in 10-20 yr from cardiomyopathy or kyphoscoliotic pulmonary restriction
- autosomal dominant:** most commonly spinocerebellar ataxias (30 types, most due to CAG repeats)
 - signs: ataxia and dysarthria; \pm myoclonus, chorea, polyneuropathy, pyramidal or extrapyramidal features, hyporeflexia, seizures, dementia

Acquired Ataxias

- neurodegeneration** (e.g. multiple system atrophy)
- systemic:** alcohol, celiac sprue, hypothyroidism, Wilson's, thiamine deficiency
- toxins:** carbon monoxide, heavy metals, lithium, anticonvulsants, solvents
- vascular:** infarct, bleed, basilar migraine
- autoimmune:** MS, Miller-Fischer (GBS)

Vertigo

- see [Otolaryngology](#), OT12



Gait Disturbances



Approach to Gait Disturbances

- Characterization of the gait disturbance**
 - posture, stride length, width between feet, height of step, stability of pelvis, symmetry, arm swing, elaborate/inconsistent movements, standing from sitting
- Identification of accompanying neurologic signs**
 - full neurological exam required (diagnosis often can be made by P/E alone)
- Identify red flags**
 - sudden onset, cerebellar ataxia, paresis (hemi, para, or quadra), bowel/bladder incontinence
- Workup**
 - based on etiology – requires blood work, neuroimaging, and urgent neurologist referral



Central Motor Systems

- 3 components to the control of gait:
- Pyramidal: main outflow from cortex to spinal cord
 - Extrapyramidal: basal ganglia inhibits excess movements
 - Cerebellum: affects coordination of gait

Table 20. Types of Gait Disturbance

Location	Description	Disorder
Visual Loss	Broad based gait with tentative steps	Cataract surgery without lens replacement
Proprioceptive Loss	Sensory ataxia: wide-based with high stepping posture and positive Romberg	Demyelinating neuropathies, paraneoplastic syndrome, tabes dorsalis, MS, compressive myelopathy, B ₁₂ deficiency
Peripheral Vestibular Lesion 1. Acute 2. Bilateral	1. Vestibular ataxia 2. Disequilibrium	1. Tumor, trauma, infectious, Ménière's disease 2. Ototoxic drugs
Peripheral Nerve Disorder 1. Foot drop 2. Lumbosacral radiculopathy	Steppage gait	Acquired/hereditary peripheral neuropathy, compressive peroneal neuropathy, L4-5 radiculopathy
Myopathies	Waddling gait: broad based, short stepped gait with pronounced lumbar lordosis, rotation of pelvis	Progressive muscular dystrophy
Pyramidal/Corticospinal Tract Lesion 1. Unilateral 2. Bilateral	Spastic gait: spastic foot drop, circumduction, scissoring of legs or toe walking with bilateral circumduction	Unilateral: stroke (ischemic/hemorrhagic) Bilateral: cervical spondylosis, cerebral palsy, spinal cord tumor, combined spinal cord degeneration, MS, motor neuron disease
Basal Ganglia	1. Parkinsonian gait: small paces, stooped posture, reduced armswing 2. Choreic/hemiballistic/dystonic gait	Infarct, Huntington's, Sydenham's chorea, Wilson's disease, SLE, neuroleptic medications, polycythemia vera, genetic dystonia
Cerebellar Disorder	Cerebellar ataxic gait: wide-based without high stepping; veers to side of lesion Alcoholic gait	Primary and secondary neoplasm, toxins (alcohol), vit E deficiency, hypothyroid, hypoxia, hypoglycemia, paraneoplastic syndrome

Motor Neuron Disease

Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis (Lou Gehrig's Disease)

Definition

- progressive neurodegenerative disease that causes UMN and LMN symptoms and is ultimately fatal

Etiology

- idiopathic (most), genetic (5-10% familial, especially SOD1 mutation, other: C9orf72, TARDBP)

Pathology

- disorder of anterior horn cells of spinal cord, cranial nerve nuclei, and corticospinal tract

Epidemiology

- 5/100,000; incidence increases with age

Signs and Symptoms

- limb motor symptoms: segmental and asymmetrical UMN and LMN symptoms
- bulbar findings: dysarthria (flaccid or spastic), dysphagia, tongue atrophy and fasciculations, facial weakness and atrophy
- pseudobulbar affect, frontotemporal dementia (up to 10%)
- sparing of sensation, ocular muscles, and sphincters

Investigations

- EMG: chronic denervation and reinnervation, fasciculations
- NCS: to rule out peripheral neuropathy (i.e. multifocal motor neuropathy with conduction block)
- CT/MRI: to rule out cord disease/compression

Management

- riluzole (modestly slows disease progression)
- symptomatic relief
 - spasticity/cramping: baclofen, tizanidine, regular exercise, and physical therapy
 - sialorrhea: TCA (i.e. amitriptyline), sublingual atropine drops, parotid/submandibular botox (rare)
 - pseudobulbar affect: dextromethorphan/quinidine, TCA, SSRI
 - non-pharmacologic: high caloric diet, ventilatory support (especially BiPAP), early nutritional support (i.e. PEG tube), rehabilitation (PT, OT, SLP), psychosocial support

Prognosis

- median survival 3 yr; death due to respiratory failure



Red Flags Inconsistent with ALS

Sensory sx, predominant pain, bowel or bladder incontinence, cognitive impairment, ocular muscle weakness



The only interventions that have been shown to extend survival in ALS are riluzole and use of BiPAP



Denervation on EMG

Fibrillations, positive sharp waves, complex repetitive discharges; reinnervation – increased amplitude and duration of motor units

Other Motor Neuron Diseases

- degenerative
 - **progressive muscular atrophy (progressive bulbar palsy):** only LMN symptoms with asymmetric weakness, later onset than ALS, 5-10% of patients in ALS centers
 - **primary lateral sclerosis (progressive pseudobulbar palsy):** UMN symptoms, later onset, not fatal with variable disability; 5-10% of patients in ALS centers
 - **spinal muscular atrophy:** pediatric disease with symmetric LMN symptoms
- infectious
 - **post-polio syndrome:** residual asymmetric muscle weakness, atrophy
- acquired
 - **multifocal motor neuropathy:** conduction block on NCS, asymmetric LMN symptoms, ± anti-GM1 Ab, treatable with IVIg

Peripheral Neuropathies



Diagnostic Approach to Peripheral Neuropathies

1. Differentiate: motor vs. sensory vs. autonomic vs. mixed
2. Pattern of deficit: symmetry; focal vs. diffuse; upper vs. lower limb; cranial nerve involvement
3. Temporal pattern: acute vs. chronic; relapsing/remitting vs. constant vs. progressive
4. History: PMH, detailed FHx, exposures (e.g. insects, toxins, sexual, travel), systemic symptoms
5. Detailed peripheral neuro exam: LMN findings, differentiate between root and peripheral nerves, cranial nerves, respiratory status

Classification

- **monoradiculopathy**: dermatomal deficit due to single nerve root lesion
 - due to disc herniation or root compression causing radicular pain
 - little tactile anesthesia, as dermatomes overlap
- **polyradiculopathy**: multiple dermatome deficits due to multiple nerve root lesions
 - one type is cauda equina syndrome (lumbosacral roots)
- **plexopathy**: deficit matching distribution of a nerve plexus
 - **brachial plexopathy**
 - ♦ upper (C5-C7): LMN sx of shoulder and upper arm muscles (Erb's palsy)
 - ♦ lower (C8-T1): LMN sx and sensory sx of forearm and hand (Klumpke's palsy)
 - ♦ DDx: trauma, idiopathic neuritis, tumor infiltration, radiation, thoracic outlet syndrome (i.e. cervical rib)
 - **lumbosacral plexopathy** (rare, especially unilateral)
 - ♦ DDx: idiopathic neuritis, infarction (i.e. DM), compression
- **mononeuropathy**: single nerve deficit
 - **carpal tunnel syndrome** (most common): compression of median nerve at wrist
 - ♦ symptoms: wrist pain, paresthesia first 3 and ½ digits, ± radiation to elbow, worse at night
 - ♦ signs: Tinel's sign, Phalen's test, thenar muscle wasting, sensory deficit
 - ♦ EMG and NCS: slowing at wrist (both motor and sensory)
 - ♦ etiology: entrapment, pregnancy, DM, gammopathy, rheumatoid arthritis, thyroid disease
 - **Bell's palsy** (most common cranial neuropathy): see [Otolaryngology, OT23](#)
 - other less common mononeuropathies due to entrapment/compression: ulnar (compression at elbow), median (at pronator teres), radial (at spiral groove of humerus), obturator (from childbirth), peroneal (due to crossing legs or surgical positioning), posterior tibial (tarsal canal)
- **mononeuropathy multiplex**: deficit affecting multiple discrete nerves (asymmetric)
 - must rule out vasculitis or collagen vascular disease
- **polyneuropathy**: symmetrical distal stocking-glove pattern
 - symmetrical distal sensorimotor deficit affecting longest fibers first (stocking-glove distribution), hypotonia; progression of dysesthesia early and weakness later
 - etiology: DM (most common), renal disease, substances, toxins, genetics, SLE, HIV, leprosy, alcohol, B₁₂ deficiency, uremia
 - **chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (CIDP)**
 - ♦ chronic relapsing sensorimotor polyneuropathy with increase protein in CSF and demyelination (shown on EMG/NCS)
 - ♦ course is fluctuating, in contrast with the acute onset of GBS
 - ♦ treatment: first-line is prednisone; alternatives are plasmapheresis, IVIg, and azathioprine

Table 21. Differential Diagnosis of Symmetric Polyneuropathy

	Etiology	Mechanism	Course	Modalities	Investigations
Vascular	PAN	Ischemic	Chronic	S/M	see Rheumatology, RH19
	SLE	Ischemic	Chronic	S/M	see Rheumatology, RH11
	RA	Ischemic	Chronic	S/M	see Rheumatology, RH8
Infectious	HIV	Axonal/demyelination	Chronic	S/A	HIV serology
	Leprosy	Infiltrative	Chronic	S/A	Leprosy serology Nerve biopsy
	Lyme	Axonal/demyelination	Chronic	M	Lyme serology
Immune	GBS	Demyelination	Acute	M	LP (↑ protein; no ↑ cells)
	CIDP	Demyelination	Chronic	S/M	LP (↑ protein)
Hereditary	HMSN	Axonal/demyelination	Chronic	S/M	Genetic testing
Neoplastic	Paraneoplastic	Axonal/demyelination	Chronic	S/M	Paraneoplastic antibodies
	Myeloma	Axonal/demyelination	Chronic	S/M	SPEP Skeletal bone survey
	Lymphoma	Axonal	Chronic	M	SPEP Bone marrow biopsy
	Monoclonal gammopathy	Demyelination	Chronic	S/M	SPEP Bone marrow biopsy
Toxin	EtOH	Axonal	Sub-acute	S/M	GGT, MCV
	Heavy metals	Axonal	Sub-acute	S/M	Urine heavy metals
	Medications	Axonal	Sub-acute	S/M	Drug levels
Metabolic	DM	Ischemic/axonal	Chronic	S/A	Fasting glucose, HbA1c, 2 h OGTT
	Hypothyroidism	Axonal	Chronic	S/M	TSH, T ₃ , T ₄
	Renal failure	Axonal	Chronic	S/A	Electrolytes, Cr, BUN
Nutritional	B ₁₂ deficiency	Axonal	Sub-acute	S/M	Vitamin B ₁₂
Other	Porphyria	Axonal	Sub-acute	M	Urine porphyrins
	Amyloid	Axonal	Sub-acute	S	Nerve biopsy

A = autonomic; CIDP = chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy; GGT = gamma-glutamyl transferase; HMSN = hereditary motor sensory neuropathy; M = motor; OGTT = oral glucose tolerance test; PAN = polyarteritis nodosa; RA = rheumatoid arthritis; S = sensory; SLE = systemic lupus erythematosus; SPEP = serum protein electrophoresis



Tinel's Sign: Tap lightly over the median nerve at the wrist; the patient's symptoms of carpal tunnel will be elicited in a positive test



Phalen's Test: Hold both wrists in forced flexion (with the dorsal surfaces of the hands pressed against each other) for 30-60 s; test is positive if symptoms of carpal tunnel are elicited



Diabetic Neuropathies

- Peripheral neuropathy: pain or loss of sensation in a glove and stocking distribution (hands and feet affected before arms and legs)
- Autonomic: anhidrosis, orthostatic hypotension, impotence, gastroparesis, bowel and bladder dysfunction
- Mononeuropathy multiplex: nerve infarct or compression
- Cranial neuropathy: CN III (pupil sparing) > IV > VI
- Lumbosacral plexopathy



DDx of Demyelinating Neuropathy
GBS, CIDP, paraproteinemia, diphtheria, amiodarone, Charcot-Marie-Tooth, storage diseases, pressure palsy predisposition, paraneoplastic



Axonal neuropathies have decreased amplitude on NCS; demyelinating neuropathies have decreased velocity on NCS



Ototoxic drugs (e.g. aminoglycosides) should not be given to diabetics

Sensory neuropathy of the feet prevent them from adequately compensating for loss of vestibular function



Evaluation of Distal Symmetric Polyneuropathy: Role of Laboratory and Genetic Testing
Neurology 2009;72:185-192

Screening Lab Tests: Blood glucose, serum B12 with metabolites, serum protein immunofixation electrophoresis.

Genetic Testing: Indicated for cryptogenic polyneuropathy exhibiting classic hereditary neuropathy phenotype. Screen for CMT1A duplication/deletion and Cx32 mutations.

Guillain-Barré Syndrome

- **definition:** acute rapidly evolving demyelinating inflammatory polyneuropathy that often starts in the distal lower limbs and ascends
- **etiology**
 - autoimmune attack and damage to peripheral nerve myelin
 - sometimes preceded by viral/bacterial infections
- **signs and symptoms**
 - sensory: distal and symmetric paresthesias, loss of proprioception and vibration sense, neuropathic pain
 - motor: weakness starting distally in legs, areflexia
 - autonomic: blood pressure dysregulation, arrhythmias, bladder dysfunction
- **investigations**
 - CSF: albuminocytological dissociation (high protein, normal WBC)
 - EMG/NCS: conduction block, differential or focal (motor > sensory) slowing, decreased F-wave, sural sparing
- **subtypes**
 1. acute inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy (AIDP)
 2. acute motor-sensory axonal neuropathy (AMSAN)
 3. acute motor axonal neuropathy (AMAN)
- **treatment**
 - IVIg or plasmapheresis, ± pain management, monitor vitals and vital capacity
- **prognosis**
 - peak of symptoms at 2-3 wk, resolution at 4-6 wk
 - 5% mortality (higher if require ICU); up to 15% have permanent deficits



GBS is a neurological emergency due to risk of imminent respiratory failure



The most common antecedent infection in GBS is *Campylobacter jejuni*



Miller-Fischer Variant of GBS – Triad

- Ophthalmoplegia
- Ataxia
- Areflexia



IVIg and plasmapheresis lead to more rapid improvement, less intensive care and less ventilation, but do not change mortality or relapse rate



Neuromuscular Junction Diseases

Clinical Approach to Disorders of the Neuromuscular Junction

Table 22. Common Disorders of the Neuromuscular Junction

	Myasthenia Gravis	Lambert-Eaton	Botulism
Ocular/Bulbar Paresis	+	–	++ (early)
Limb Weakness	+	+	+
Fatigability	+	+	+
Post-Exercise Enhancement	–	+	+
Reflexes	N	↓	↓
Anticholinergic Sx	–	+	++
Sensory Sx	–	–	–
Associated Conditions	Thymoma	Small cell carcinoma	GI S&S
Repetitive EMG Stimulation	Decremental response	Incremental response	↑ (rapid stimulation) ↓ (slow stimulation)



- Diseases of the neuromuscular junction typically feature prominent fatigability
- Fatigability can be tested by holding the arms out or by holding the gaze in the upward position (especially in MG)
- Muscle weakness due to fatigability will improve with rest or ice

Myasthenia Gravis

Etiology and Pathophysiology

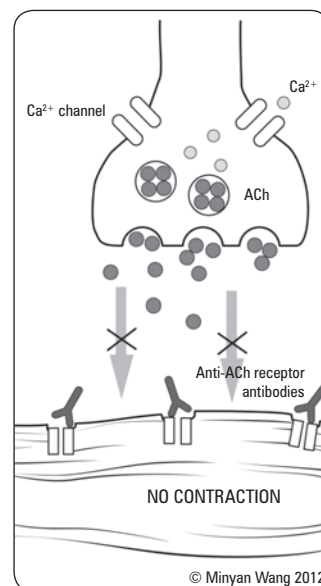
- progressive autoimmune disorder due to anti-AChR antibodies, resulting in early saturation at the NMJ and inadequate muscle activation with increasing nerve stimulation
- 15% of patients with MG have associated thymic neoplasia, 85% have thymic hyperplasia

Epidemiology

- bimodal age of onset – 20s (mostly women) and 60s (mostly men)

Signs and Symptoms

- see Table 22
- fatigable, symmetric or asymmetric weakness without reflex changes, sensory changes, or coordination abnormalities
- ocular (diplopia/ptosis), bulbar (dysarthria/dysphagia), and/or proximal limb weakness
- symptoms may be exacerbated by infection, pregnancy, menses, and various drugs
- respiratory muscle weakness may lead to respiratory failure



© Minyan Wang 2012

Figure 22. Myasthenia gravis

Investigations

- edrophonium (Tensilon®) test
 - assess for improvement over 2 min following edrophonium injection
- EMG
 - repetitive stimulation → decremental response
 - single fiber electromyography shows increased jitter (80-100% sensitivity)
- spirometry – forced vital capacity may be used to monitor adequacy of respiratory effort over time
- anti-acetylcholine receptor antibody assay (70-80% sensitivity)
- MUSK antibody may be used if seronegative for AChR antibody
- CT/MRI to screen for thymoma/thymic hyperplasia

Treatment

- thymectomy
 - 85% of patients show improvement or remission
- symptomatic relief
 - acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (e.g. pyridostigmine)
 - does not affect primary pathologic process so rarely results in control of disease when used alone
- immunosuppression
 - steroids are mainstay of treatment (70-80% remission rate)
 - azathioprine, cyclophosphamide, and mycophenolate as adjuncts or as steroid sparing therapy
- short-term immunomodulation (for crises)
 - IVIg and plasmapheresis

Prognosis

- 30% eventual spontaneous remission
- with treatment, life expectancy is equal to that of a person without MG, but quality of life may vary



Tensilon® is a drug that inhibits acetylcholinesterase; it improves muscle function immediately in myasthenia gravis, but not in a cholinergic crisis

This test is infrequently used; when performed, a crash cart should be nearby as respiratory difficulty and/or bradycardia may occur

Lambert-Eaton Myasthenic Syndrome

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- autoimmune disorder due to antibodies against presynaptic voltage-gated calcium channels, causing decreased ACh release at the NMJ
- 50-66% are associated with small cell carcinoma of the lung

Signs and Symptoms

- see Table 22
- weakness of skeletal muscles without sensory or coordination abnormalities
- reflexes are diminished or absent, but increase after active muscle contraction
- bulbar and ocular muscles affected in 25% (vs. 90% in MG)
- prominent anticholinergic autonomic symptoms (dry mouth > impotence > constipation > blurred vision)

Investigations

- edrophonium test (see *Myasthenia Gravis*, N37) → no response
- EMG
 - rapid (>10 Hz) repetitive stimulation → incremental response
 - post-exercise facilitation → an incremental response with exercise
- screen for malignancy, especially small cell lung cancer

Treatment

- tumor removal
- acetylcholine modulation
 - increased acetylcholine release (3,4-diaminopyridine)
 - decreased acetylcholine degradation (pyridostigmine)
- immunomodulation
 - steroids, plasmapheresis, IVIg



LEMS

On exam there is initial post-exercise enhancement, but with prolonged effort muscles will fatigue

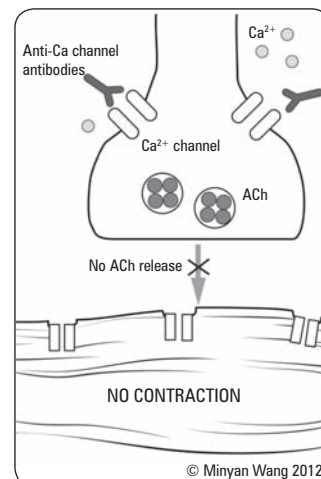


Figure 23. Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome (LEMS)

Botulism

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- caused by a toxin produced by spores of *Clostridium botulinum* bacteria, which is found in soil and water throughout the world
- bacteria can enter the body through wounds or by ingesting improperly preserved foods
- infantile botulism is the most common form, and is usually from ingestion of honey or corn syrup

Signs and Symptoms

- occur 6-48 h after ingestion
- difficulty with convergence, ptosis, paralysis of extraocular muscles
- dilated, poorly reactive pupils

- other autonomic dysfunction: jaw weakness, dysarthria, dysphagia
- spreads to trunk and limbs
 - abdominal cramps with N/V
 - symmetric weakness with paralysis and absent/decreased deep tendon reflexes
 - anticholinergic symptoms: dry mouth, constipation, urinary retention
- rarely respiratory distress, potentially advancing to respiratory failure
 - pattern of paresis often starts with GI symptoms (constipation, early satiety), then paresis of extraocular muscles, then dysphagia, then limbs/respiratory involvement; all associated with dry mouth

Investigations

- blood test for toxin
- stool culture

Treatment

- botulinum anti-toxin – good prognosis with prompt treatment
- supportive therapy as required

Myopathies

Clinical Approach to Muscle Diseases

Table 23. Myopathies

	Etiology	Key Clinical Features	Key Investigations
Inflammatory	Polymyositis	Myalgias Pharyngeal involvement	↑ CK Biopsy: endomysial infiltrates; necrosis
	Dermatomyositis	Myalgias Characteristic rashes Can be paraneoplastic	↑ CK Biopsy: perifascicular atrophy
	Sarcoidosis	See Respirology, R14	ACE level Biopsy: granulomas
	Inclusion body myositis	Weak quadriceps and deep finger flexors	↑ CK Biopsy: inclusion bodies
Endocrine	Thyroid (↑ or ↓) Cushing's syndrome Parathyroid (↑ or ↓)	See Endocrinology, E20, E33	TSH, serum cortisol, calcium panel
Toxic	Medication	Medication or toxin history	Toxicology screen
	Critical illness myopathy	ICU patient Hx steroids and nondepolarizing paralyzing agents Failure to wean from ventilation	Biopsy: selective loss of thick myosin filaments
Infectious	Parasitic, bacterial, or viral	Myalgias Inflammatory myopathy	↑ myoglobin
Hereditary Dystrophy	Duchenne	Early onset (Duchenne and Becker)	Dystrophin analysis: absent
	Becker	Progressive proximal muscle weakness Calf pseudohypertrophy	Dystrophin analysis: abnormal
	Myotonic dystrophy	Distal myopathy Myotonia Genetic anticipation	Genetic testing
Hereditary Metabolic	McArdle's	Exercise-related myalgias, cramping, and myoglobinuria	↑ lactate ↑ serum/urinary myoglobin post-exercise
Hereditary Periodic Paralysis	"Channelopathy"	Episodic weakness Normal between attacks	Normal, ↑ or ↓ K ⁺
Hereditary Mitochondrial	MERRF	Myoclonus, generalized seizures, dementia, myopathy	Biopsy: ragged red fibers Increased lactate
	MELAS	Pediatric onset, stroke-like symptoms, episodic vomiting, dementia	
	Kearns Sayre	Progressive ophthalmoplegia, retinal pigment degeneration, cardiac conduction abnormalities	

MELAS = mitochondrial encephalomyopathy, lactic acidosis, and stroke-like episodes; MERRF = mitochondrial encephalomyopathy with ragged red fibers



Myopathies are characterized by prominent symmetric proximal weakness and absent sensory changes



Good Questions to Assess Proximal Weakness

- Legs: climbing stairs, stand from sit
- Arms: reach above head, wash hair



Common Medications that Cause Myopathy: steroids, statins, antiretrovirals, thyroxine, fibrates, cyclosporine, ipecac

Common Drugs that Cause Myopathy: ethanol, cocaine, heroin

Polymyositis/Dermatomyositis

- see [Rheumatology](#), RH15



Myotonic Dystrophy

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- unstable trinucleotide (CTG) repeat in DMK gene (protein kinase) at 19q13.3, number of repeats correlates with severity of symptoms
- autosomal dominant

Epidemiology

- most common adult muscular dystrophy
- prevalence 3-5/100,000

Signs and Symptoms

- appearance: ptosis, bifacial weakness, frontal baldness (including women), triangular face giving a drooping/dull appearance
- physical exam
 - distribution of weakness: distal weaker than proximal (in contrast to other myopathies), steppage gait
 - myotonia: delayed relaxation of muscles after exertion (elicit by tapping on thenar muscles with hammer)
 - cardiac: 90% have conduction defects (1° heart block; atrial arrhythmias)
 - respiratory: hypoventilation 2° to muscle weakness
 - ocular: subcapsular cataracts, retinal degeneration, decreased intraocular pressure
 - other: DM, infertility, testicular atrophy
- EMG: subclinical myotonia – long runs with declining frequency and amplitude

Treatment and Prognosis

- no cure, progressive, death usually around 50 yr
- management of myotonia: phenytoin

Duchenne and Becker Muscular Dystrophy

- see [Pediatrics](#), P45



Pain Syndromes

Approach to Pain Syndromes

Definitions

- **nociceptive pain:** pain arising from normal activation of peripheral nociceptors
- **neuropathic pain:** pain arising from direct injury to neural tissue, bypassing nociceptive pathways
- **spontaneous pain:** unprovoked burning, shooting, or lancinating pain
- **paresthesiae:** spontaneous abnormal nonpainful sensations (e.g. tingling)
- **dysesthesiae:** evoked pain with inappropriate quality or excessive quantity
- **allodynia:** a dysesthetic response to a non-noxious stimulus
- **hyperalgesia:** an exaggerated pain response to a noxious stimulus

Non-Pharmacological Management

- physical (PT, acupuncture, chiropractic manipulation, massage)
- psychoeducational (CBT, family therapy, education, psychotherapy)

Medical Pain Control

- combination multi-modal therapy is important
- primary analgesics: acetaminophen, NSAIDs (often used for soft tissue injuries, strains, sprains, headaches, and arthritis), opiates
- adjuvants: antidepressants (TCAs, SSRIs), anticonvulsants (gabapentin, carbamazepine, pregabalin), baclofen, sympatholytics (phenoxymethamine), α 2-adrenergic agonists (clonidine)



- Pinprick sensation mediated by A δ fibers
- Pain due to tissue damage is mediated by C fibers



WHO Pain Ladder

- **Mild Pain:** Non-opioid (acetaminophen and/or NSAID) \pm adjuvant
- **Moderate Pain:** Opioid for mild to moderate pain (codeine/oxycodone) + non-opioid \pm adjuvant
- **Severe Pain:** Opioid for moderate to severe pain (morphine/hydromorphone) + non-opioid \pm adjuvant



Axonal regeneration is directed by intact nerve sheaths; if the nerve sheath is damaged, axons grow without direction, become tangled and form a neuroma, which can result in ectopic electrical impulses and neuropathic pain

Surgical Pain Control

- peripheral ablation: nerve blocks, facet joint denervation
- direct delivery: implantable morphine pump
- central ablation: stereotactic thalamotomy, spinal tractotomy, or dorsal root entry lesion
- DBS or dorsal column stimulation

Neuropathic Pain

Definition

- pain resulting from a disturbance of the central or peripheral nervous system

Symptoms and Signs

- hyperalgesia/allodynia
- subjectively described as burning, heat/cold, pricking, electric shock, perception of swelling, numbness (i.e. stocking/sock distribution)
- can be spontaneous or stimulus evoked
- distribution may not fall along classical neuro-anatomical lines
- associated issues: sleep difficulty, anxiety/stress/mood alteration

Causes of Neuropathic Pain

- **sympathetic**
 - complex regional pain syndrome
- **central**: abnormal CNS activity
 - phantom limb, post spinal cord injury, post stroke, MS
- **non-sympathetic**: damage to peripheral nerves
 - **systemic disease**: DM, thyroid disease, renal disease, rheumatoid arthritis
 - **nutritional/toxicity**: alcoholism, pernicious anemia, chemotherapy
 - **infectious**: post-herpetic, HIV
 - **trauma/compression**: nerve entrapment, trigeminal neuralgia, post surgical, nerve injury, cervical/lumbar radiculopathy, plexopathy

Treatment

- identify/treat underlying cause
- **pharmacotherapy**
 - anticonvulsant: pregabalin, gabapentin, sodium valproate
 - antidepressant: amitriptyline, venlafaxine, duloxetine
 - opioids: dextromethorphan, morphine sulphate, tramadol, oxycodone
 - other: capsaicin and isosorbide dinitrate spray
- **common non-pharmacologic therapies**
 - percutaneous electrical stimulation (moderate evidence)
 - neuropsychiatry: CBT, psychotherapy
 - rehabilitation: physiotherapy
- **surgical therapies**: dorsal column neurostimulator, DBS (thalamus)

Tic Douloureux (Trigeminal Neuralgia)

Clinical Features

- recurrent episodes of sudden onset, excruciating unilateral paroxysmal shooting “electric” pain in trigeminal root territory ($V3 > V2 > V1$)
- may have normal sensory exam
- pain lasts seconds/minutes over days/weeks; may remit for weeks/months
- triggers: touching face, eating, talking, cold wind, shaving, applying make-up

Etiology

- **classic TN**: idiopathic
- **secondary TN**: compression by tortuous blood vessel (superior cerebellar artery), cerebellopontine angle tumor (5%), MS (5%)

Epidemiology

- F > M; usually middle-aged and elderly

Diagnosis

- clinical diagnosis
- investigate for secondary causes, which are more likely if bilateral TN or associated sensory loss
 - MRI to rule out structural lesion, MS, or vascular lesion

Treatment

- first line: carbamazepine or oxcarbazepine
- second line: baclofen or lamotrigine
- narcotics not generally recommended
- if medical treatment fails: Gasserian ganglion percutaneous technique, gamma knife, invasive percutaneous denervation (radiofrequency/glycerol), percutaneous balloon microcompression, microvascular decompression

Postherpetic Neuralgia

Clinical Features

- pain persisting in the region of a cutaneous outbreak of herpes zoster
- constant deep ache or burning, intermittent spontaneous lancinating/jabbing pain, allodynia
- distribution: thoracic, trigeminal, cervical > lumbar > sacral
- associated impaired sleep, decreased appetite, decreased libido

Etiology and Pathogenesis

- destruction of the sensory ganglion neurons (e.g. dorsal root, trigeminal, or geniculate ganglia) secondary to reactivation of herpes zoster infection

Epidemiology

- incidence in those with zoster increases with age (2% in <60 yr, 19% in >70 yr)
- risk factors: older age, greater acute pain, greater rash severity

Prevention

- varicella zoster vaccine in childhood reduces incidence of varicella zoster
- herpes zoster vaccine (Zostavax®) reduces incidences of shingles, PHN, and other herpetic sequel (currently recommended by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [CDC] for those >60 yr old)

Treatment

- medical: TCA (i.e. amitriptyline), anti-convulsants (i.e. pregabalin, gabapentin), analgesia (i.e. opiates, lidocaine patch), intrathecal methylprednisolone, topical capsaicin
 - early treatment of acute herpes zoster with antivirals (acyclovir; longer-acting famciclovir and valacyclovir more effective)
 - treatment of herpes zoster with corticosteroids DOES NOT decrease PHN
- surgical: spinal tractotomy, dorsal root entry zone lesion, DBS of thalamus



Herpes Zoster of Trigeminal Nerve
typically involves V1 (ophthalmic division)

Hutchinson's Sign: tip of nose involvement predicts corneal involvement

Painful Diabetic Neuropathy

Approach

- determine if pain is neuropathic or vascular
- more likely neuropathic if
 - feet > calves
 - sharp/tingling pain
 - pain present at rest and improves with walking

Treatment

- Level A: pregabalin
- Level B: venlafaxine, duloxetine, amitriptyline, gabapentin, valproate, rarely opioids, capsaicin

Complex Regional Pain Syndromes

Clinical Features

- presence of an initiating noxious event (MI, stroke)
- continuing pain, allodynia, or hyperalgesia with pain disproportionate to inciting event
- evidence during the course of symptoms of edema, changes in skin blood flow or abnormal vasomotor activity
- absence of conditions that would otherwise account for degree of pain and dysfunction
- other features can include edema, osteoporosis, hyperhidrosis, hair loss, fascial thickening

Classification

- **CRPS type I (reflex sympathetic dystrophy):** minor injuries of limb or lesions in remote body areas precede onset of symptoms
- **CRPS type II (causalgia):** injury of peripheral nerves precedes the onset of symptoms

Investigations

- trial of differential neural blockade may be helpful in diagnosis
- autonomic testing (evidence of sympathetic dysfunction)
- bone scan, plain radiography, MRI

Prevention

- early mobilization after injury/infarction

Treatment

- goal of treatment: to facilitate function
- conservative treatment: education, support groups, PT/OT, smoking cessation
- medical: topical capsaicin, TCA, NSAID, tender point injections with corticosteroid/lidocaine, gabapentin/pregabalin/lamotrigine, calcitonin or bisphosphonates, oral corticosteroids
- surgical: paravertebral sympathetic ganglion blockade
- refer to pain management clinic

Headache

- see [Emergency Medicine](#), ER24 and [Family Medicine](#), FM34

Clinical Approach

- **history**
 - pain characteristics: onset, frequency, duration, intensity, location, radiation, other specific features (e.g. worse in AM, worse with bending/cough/Valsalva)
 - associated symptoms: visual changes, change in mental status, N/V, fever, meningismus, photophobia, phonophobia, TMJ popping/clicking, jaw claudication, neurological symptoms
 - precipitating/alleviating factors (triggering factors, analgesics), medications (especially nitrates, CCBs, NSAIDs, anticoagulants), PMH, FHx
 - red flags (possible indications for CT scan/further investigation): new-onset headache (especially if age <5 or >50), quality worse/different than previous headaches, sudden and severe ('thunderclap'), immunocompromised, fever, focal neurological deficits, trauma
- **physical exam**
 - vitals (including BP and temp), Kernig's/Brudzinski's, MSK examination of head and neck
 - HEENT: fundi (papilledema, retinal hemorrhages), red eye, temporal artery tenderness, sinus palpation, TMJ
 - full neurological exam (including LOC, orientation, pupils (symmetry), and focal neurological deficits)
 - **red flags:** papilledema, altered LOC, fever, meningismus, focal neurological deficits, signs of head trauma

Classification

- **primary**
 - tension, migraine, cluster, other autonomic cephalgias
- **secondary**
 - cervical OA, TMJ syndrome, SAH, ICH, stroke, venous sinus thrombosis, meningitis/encephalitis, trauma, increased ICP (space-occupying lesion, malignant HTN or pseudotumor cerebri), temporal arteritis, sinusitis, acute-angle closure glaucoma, pre-eclampsia, post LP, drugs/toxins (e.g. nitroglycerin use and analgesia withdrawal); all can be associated with serious morbidity or mortality

Table 24. Headaches – Selected Primary Types

	Tension-Type	Migraine	Cluster
Prevalence	70%	~10-20%	<1%
Age of Onset	15-40	10-30	20-40
Sex Bias	F>M	F>M	M>F
Family History	None	+++	+
Location	Bilateral frontal Nuchal-occipital	Unilateral > bilateral Fronto-temporal	Retro-orbital
Duration	Minutes – days	Hours – days	10 min-2 h
Onset/Course	Gradual; worse in PM	Gradual; worse in PM	Daily attacks for weeks to months; more common early AM or late PM
Quality	Band-like; constant	Throbbing	Constant, aching, stabbing



If CT is negative but clinically there is suspicion of SAH or meningitis, perform a LP



Headache DDx

ER VISIT

Eye (acute angle closure glaucoma, sinusitis)
 Recurrent/Chronic (migraine, tension, cluster, TMJ disease, cervical OA)
 Vascular (SAH, ICH, temporal arteritis)
 Infectious (meningitis, encephalitis)
 Systemic (anemia, anoxia, CO, pre-eclampsia)
 ICP (mass/abscess, HTN encephalopathy, pseudotumor cerebri)
 Trauma (concussion, SDH, EDH)

Table 24. Headaches – Selected Primary Types (continued)

	Tension-Type	Migraine	Cluster
Severity	Mild-moderate	Moderate-severe	Severe (wakes from sleep)
Triggers/Provoking	Depression Anxiety Noise Hunger Sleep deprivation	Noise/light Caffeine/alcohol Hunger Stress Sleep deprivation	Light EtOH
Palliating	Rest	Rest	Walking around
Associated Sx	No vomiting No photophobia	N/V Photo/phonophobia Aura	Red watery eye Nasal congestion or rhinorrhea Unilateral Horner's
Management	Non-pharmacological • Psychological counseling • Physical modalities (e.g. heat, massage) Pharmacological • Simple analgesics • Tricyclic antidepressants	Acute Rx • ASA • NSAIDs • Triptans • Ergotamine Prophylaxis 1. TCA 2. Anticonvulsants 3. Propranolol	Acute Rx • O ₂ • Sumatriptan (nasal or injection) Prophylaxis • Verapamil • Lithium • Methysergide • Prednisolone

Table 25. Prophylactic Management of Migraine Headaches

Class	Drug	Evidence	Contraindications	Side Effects
Beta-blockers	Propanolol	A	Asthma, DM (mask hypoglycemia)	Fatigue
	Timolol	A		Depression
	Metoprolol	B	CHF	Light-headedness
TCA	Amitriptyline	A	Heart disease, glaucoma	Sedation
	Nortriptyline	C	*Avoid in elderly	Dry mouth Weight gain Light-headedness
CCBs	Flunarizine	A	Depression, obesity	Weight gain, depression, PD (rare)
	Verapamil	B	Heart disease	Weight gain (10-20 lb), constipation
AED	Valproate	A	Liver, renal, pancreatic diseases	Weight gain, tremor, alopecia, teratogenic: neural tube defect
	Topiramate + folic acid supplement	A	Renal disease	Paresthesia, weight loss, cognitive: memory loss, difficulty concentrating, renal stone (rare)

Table 26. Headaches – Selected Serious but Rare Secondary Types

	Meningeal Irritation	Increased ICP	Temporal Arteritis
Age of Onset	Any age	Any age	> 60 yr
Location	Generalized	Any location	Temporal
Onset/Course	Meningitis: hours-days SAH: thunderclap onset	Gradual; worse in AM	Variable
Severity	Severe	Severe	Variable; can be severe
Provoking	Head movement	Lying down Valsalva Head low Exertion	Jaw claudication
Associated Sx	Neck stiffness Photophobia Focal deficits (e.g. CN palsies)	N/V Focal neuro symptoms Decreased level of consciousness	Polymyalgia rheumatica Visual loss
Physical Signs	Kernig's sign Brudzinski's sign Meningismus	Focal neuro symptoms Papilledema	Temporal artery changes: • Firm, nodular, incompressible • Tender
Management	CT/MRI with gadolinium LP, antibiotics for bacterial meningitis	CT/MRI and treatment to reduce pressure See Neurosurgery , NS6	Prednisone See Rheumatology , RH20
Etiology	Meningitis, SAH	Tumor, ITH, malignant HTN	Vasculitis (GCA)

ITH = idiopathic intracranial hypertension

**The Rational Clinical Examination: Does this Patient with Headache have a Migraine or Need Neuroimaging?**

JAMA 2006;296:1274-1283

Does this patient with headache have a migraine?

The most useful panel of questions for diagnosing migraine is summarized by the POUNDING mnemonic:

P – Pulsatile quality**O** – duration of 4-72 h**U** – Unilateral location**N** – Nausea or vomiting**D** – Disabling intensity

The LR for definite or possible migraine diagnosis varies with the number of features present: with ≥4, 3 and ≥2 features, the LRs are 24 (1.5-388), 3.5 (1.3-9.2), and 0.41 (0.32-0.52), respectively.

Does this patient with headache need neuroimaging?

In patients with new or changed headache the prevalence of significant intracranial pathology is 32% (24-42%), and in those presenting with thunderclap headache the prevalence is 43% (20-68%).

Several individual clinical features were found to be predictive of significant intracranial pathology:

Symptom	OR
Cluster-type headache	10.7 (2.2-52)
Abnormal neurological exam	5.3 (2.4-12)
Undefined-type headache	3.8 (2.0-7.1)
(non-tension/migraine/cluster-type)	
Headache with aura	3.2 (1.6-6.6)
Aggravated by exertion/Valsalva	2.3 (1.4-3.8)
Headache with vomiting	1.8 (1.2-2.6)

**Acute and Preventive Pharmacologic Treatment of Cluster Headache**

Neurology 2010;75:463-473

Study: Meta-analysis of prospective, double-blind, RCTs of pharmacologic agents for prevention or treatment of CH.**Results:** 27 trials were included. Sumatriptan 6 mg SC, zolmitriptan nasal spray 5-10 mg, and 100% oxygen 6-12 L/min received Level A recommendation for acute treatment. For prevention, Level B recommendations were given for intranasal civamide 100 µg daily and suboccipital steroid injections.**Conclusion:** Sumatriptan, zolmitriptan, and mid flow oxygen are effective acute treatments for CH.**Anticonvulsants in Migraine Prophylaxis**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;3:CD003226

Study: Meta-analysis of prospective, controlled trials of anticonvulsant drugs in migraine headache prophylaxis.**Results:** Twenty-three studies (n=2,927) were included. Anticonvulsants reduce migraine frequency by 1.3 attacks per 28 d compared to placebo and double the number of patients for whom migraine frequency is reduced by 50% (RR=2.25, NNT=3.9). Valproate and topiramate are better than placebo, while clonazepam, acetazolamide, lamotrigine, and vigabatrin are not. Clinically important adverse events were associated with valproate and topiramate with NNH 7.0-18.8 and 2.4-31.2, respectively.**Conclusion:** Anti-convulsants are effective in reducing migraine frequency and reasonably well-tolerated. Valproate and topiramate are the two most studied but further studies of head-to-head comparisons between agents is needed.

Migraine Headaches

Definition (Common Migraine)

- ≥ 5 attacks fulfilling each of the following criteria
 - 4-72 h duration
 - 2 of the following: unilateral, pulsating, moderate-severe (interferes with daily activity), aggravated by routine physical activity
 - 1 of the following: N/V, photophobia/phonophobia/osmophobia

Epidemiology

- 18% females, 6% males; frequency decreases with age (especially at menopause)

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- theories of migraine etiology
 - depolarizing wave of "cortical spreading depression" across the cerebral cortex that may cause an aura (e.g. visual symptoms due to wave through occipital cortex) and also activate trigeminal nerve afferent fibers
 - possible association with vasoconstriction/dilation
- significant genetic contribution
- **triggers:** stress, sleep excess/deprivation, drugs (estrogen, nitroglycerin), hormonal changes, caffeine withdrawal, chocolate, tyramines (e.g. red wine), nitrites (e.g. processed meats)

Signs and Symptoms

- stages of uncomplicated migraine
 - i. prodrome (hours to days before headache onset)
 - ii. aura
 - iii. headache (see Table 24 for description of typical headache)
 - iv. postdrome
- aura
 - fully reversible symptom of focal cerebral dysfunction lasting <60 min
 - examples: visual disturbance (fortification spectra – zigzags; scintillating scotomata – spots), unilateral paresthesia and numbness or weakness, aphasia
- prodrome/postdrome: appetite change, autonomic symptoms, altered mood, psychomotor agitation/retardation
- classification of migraines
 - common migraine: no aura
 - classic migraine: with aura (headache follows reversible aura within 60 min)
 - complicated migraine: with severe/persistent sensorimotor deficits
 - ♦ examples
 - basilar-type migraine (occipital headache with diplopia, vertigo, ataxia, and altered level of consciousness)
 - hemiplegic/hemisensory migraine
 - ophthalmoplegic migraine
 - acephalgic migraine (i.e. migraine equivalent): aura without headache

Management

- avoid triggers
- mild to moderate migraine
 - 1st line: NSAIDs (ibuprofen, naproxen)
- moderate to severe migraine
 - triptans (most effective), ergots (dihydroergotamine, DHE)
- migraine prophylaxis: anticonvulsants (divalproex, topiramate, gabapentin), TCA (amitriptyline, nortriptyline), propranolol, calcium channel blocker (verapamil)



The oral contraceptive pill is contraindicated with complicated migraine due to risk of stroke



Migraine auras can mimic other causes of transient neurological deficits (e.g. TIAs and seizures)



"Menstrual Migraine" Subtype
Migraine headache that is associated with the onset of menstruation – usually 2 d before to 3 d after the onset of menstrual bleeding



If patient presents to ED with severe migraine and N/V – consider treating with IV anti-emetics (chlorpromazine, prochlorperazine)



Pharmacological Treatments for Acute Migraine
Pain 2002;97:247-257

Study: Meta-analysis of 54 double-blind, placebo-controlled RCTs of pharmacologic treatment of acute migraine of moderate to severe intensity (21,022 patients in total).

Data Extraction: Number of patients, dosing regimes, details of study design, and timing or type of rescue medication. Outcomes include headache relief at 1 and 2 h, freedom from pain at 2 h, sustained relief for 24 h, and adverse effects within 24 h.

Main Results: Data were available for 9 oral medications, 2 intranasal medications, and subcutaneous sumatriptan. For H/A relief at 2 h, all interventions were effective except Cafergot[®], with NNTs ranging from 2.0 for sumatriptan 6 mg SC to 5.4 for naratriptan 2.5 mg. The lowest NNT for oral medication was 2.6 for eletriptan 80 mg. For patients pain free at 2 h, the lowest NNT was 2.1 for sumatriptan 6 mg SC, with the lowest NNT for oral medication being 3.1 for rizatriptan 10 mg. For sustained relief over 24 h NNT ranged from 2.8 for eletriptan 80 mg to 8.3 for rizatriptan 5 mg. Side effects could not be analyzed systematically. There were no drug-to-drug comparisons.

Conclusion: Overall, most treatments were effective. Subcutaneous sumatriptan and oral triptans were most effective.



A prophylactic agent is recommended only if migraine attacks are severe enough to cause impairment of a patient's quality of life or if a patient has >3 migraines/mo that have not responded adequately to treatment

Neurology 2000;55:754-763

Sleep Disorders

Overview of Sleep

Definition

- newborn: 18 h sleep (50% REM), adolescents: 10 h, adults: 7-9 h but most get insufficient amounts
- many elderly have reduced sleep as a consequence of underlying sleep disorders

Sleep Architecture

- **polysomnogram (PSG) measures:** EEG, eye movements (electro-oculogram – EOG), EMG, respiratory effort, oxygenation, ECG

Table 27. Sleep Stage Characteristics

	EEG	EOG	Muscle Tone	Other Characteristics
Waking State	Low voltage high frequency, dominant α rhythm (8-13 Hz)	Rapid, blinking	High	
Stage N1 (~5%)	<50% α activity replaced with θ (4-7 Hz), vertex waves	Slow, roving eye movements	High, but gradually dropping	Marker for very light quality sleep or sleep disruption
Stage N2 (~50%)	K complexes high voltage negative and positive discharges with spindles (11-16 Hz)	Still	High	
Stage N3 (previously 3 and 4)/Slow Wave/Delta Sleep (~20%)	Slow wave activity – high voltage (> 75 μ V), low frequency (<2 Hz)	Still	Low	Homeostatic sleep Reduced BP, HR, cardiac output, RR Growth hormone release
Rapid Eye Movement (REM) Sleep (~25%)	Mixed frequency, low voltage, sawtooth waves	Rapid eye movements	Very low	Irregular respiration Arrhythmias, heart rate variation Classical dreaming state

**Elements of Sleep History**

- Initiation of sleep
 - Events prior to bed
 - Lights
 - Latency (estimated)
 - Restless legs
 - Hallucinations
- Maintaining sleep
 - Number of wakeups/night
 - Sleep walking/talking
 - Snoring/gasping
 - Dreams/nightmares
- Consequences of sleep
 - Restorative
 - Morning headache
 - Falling asleep in inappropriate setting

Disturbances of Alertness and Sleep

**Coma**

- see [Neurosurgery, NS34](#)

Insomnia• **definition/criteria**

- difficulty initiating or maintaining sleep, or waking up earlier than desired (leading to sleep that is chronically non-restorative/poor quality) despite adequate opportunity and circumstances for sleep

• **types**

- sleep state misperception, psychophysiologic insomnia (learned sleep-preventing associations – i.e. clock watching), fatal familial insomnia (rare prion protein mutation causing autonomic dysfunction), idiopathic (lifelong difficulty)
- **secondary causes**
 - ♦ psychiatric disorders (80% of psychiatric patients): anxiety and depression (see [Psychiatry, PS10, PS7](#))
 - ♦ neurologic disorders: neurodegenerative disease, epilepsy, neuromuscular disorders, many others
 - ♦ sleep disorders: restless legs syndrome (sleep initiation difficulties), sleep apnea (sleep maintenance difficulties)
 - ♦ medical conditions: pregnancy, cardiorespiratory (COPD/HF), GERD, pain (arthritis, fibromyalgia, cancer)
 - ♦ drugs/toxins: caffeine, alcohol, stimulants, antidepressants, glucocorticoids, sedative withdrawal

• **treatment**

- sleep log, sleep hygiene, stimulus control, sleep restriction, relaxation response, CBT

Sleep Apnea• **definition**

- disorder of breathing in sleep associated with sleep disruption and consequent excessive somnolence (or drowsiness)

• **epidemiology**

- >2-4% of the population
- increasing obesity
- significant morbidity: HTN, stroke, heart failure, sleepiness, mortality (accidents)

• **types**

- obstructive sleep apnea: see [Respirology, R31](#)
- central sleep apnea: no effort to breathe over 10 s
- mixed apnea: starts as central, but eventually becomes obstructive

• **etiology of central apnea:** heart failure, opiates, brainstem pathology, myotonic dystrophy• **diagnosis:** apnea hypopnea index (AHI) or respiratory disturbance index (RDI) should be <5 in the normal state• **treatment:** conservative measures, dental devices, CPAP (common), surgery (rare), ensure driving safety**Drug Effects on Wakefulness and Sleep**

- Antihistamines associated with increased sleepiness
- Stimulants increase arousal
- Caffeine (an adenosine antagonist) increases wakefulness
- Benzodiazepines reduce slow wave sleep
- Antidepressants (TCA/MAOI/SSRI) reduce REM, prolong REM latency
- Alcohol may hasten sleep onset but associated with increased arousals



Avoid sleep medications (especially in elderly patients) due to increased risk of falls, pseudodepression, and memory loss



Restless Leg Syndrome and Periodic Limb Movement in Sleep

- **definition**
 - urge to move with accompanied uncomfortable sensations that begin or worsen with rest, are partially or totally relieved with movement, and are worse in evening/night
 - RLS refers to sensation
 - PLMS refers to the manifestation
- **epidemiology:** 10% North Americans, 90% of RLS have PLMS, 50% of patients with PLMS have RLS
- **etiology:** central (spasticity), peripheral nervous system (radiculopathy, neuropathy), pregnancy, iron deficiency, alcohol use
- **treatment**
 - underlying contributors (iron and B₁₂ supplementation), dopaminergic agonists (first line), clonazepam (causes tachyphylaxis), opioids (only exceptional circumstances)
 - NOT recommended: Sinemet®, causes augmentation

Narcolepsy

- **definition/clinical features:** excessive daytime sleepiness (all narcolepsy), cataplexy = loss of muscle tone with emotional stimuli (pathognomonic), sleep paralysis (unable to move upon waking), hypnagogic hallucinations (vivid dreams or hallucinations at sleep onset)
- **epidemiology:** prevalence 1:2,000, onset in adolescence/early adulthood; life-long disorder
- **etiology:** presumed autoimmune attack on orexin/hypocretin system, post head injury, MS, hypothalamic tumors; rarely familial
- **diagnosis:** based on clinical history + multiple sleep latency test findings of short sleep latency <8 min and REM within 15 min of sleep onset on 2/4 naps
- **treatment**
 - sleep hygiene and scheduled brief naps, restricted driving
 - alerting agents modafinil (non-amphetamine stimulant), stimulant (i.e. methylphenidate)
 - anti-cataplectic: TCAs, SSRIs, sodium oxybate

Parasomnias

- **definition/clinical features:** unusual behaviors in sleep with clinical features appropriate to stage of sleep
- **etiology:** in elderly, REM sleep behavior disorder may be associated with PD; in children, slow wave sleep arousals (sleep walking) may be associated with sleep disordered breathing
- **diagnosis:** clinical history in children, polysomnography in adults to exclude nocturnal seizures
- **treatment:** behavioral management (safety, adequate sleep); clonazepam for REM sleep behavior, tonsillectomy if appropriate in children

Circadian Rhythm

- **definition/clinical features:** abnormalities based on time of day rather than sleep (i.e. jet lag, shift work)
- **diagnosis:** clinical history

CNS Infections

- see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID19



Spinal Cord Syndromes

- see [Neurosurgery](#), NS27



Stroke

Terminology

- **stroke:** sudden onset of neurological deficits of a vascular basis with infarction of CNS tissue
 - infarction is permanent tissue injury (confirmed by neuroimaging)
- **TIA:** sudden onset of neurological deficits of a vascular basis without infarction (i.e. resolution)

Pathophysiology

- two major types: ischemic (~80%) and hemorrhagic (~20%)

1. Ischemic

- **arterial thrombosis:** thrombus formation in artery (local/*in situ*)
 - ♦ **large vessel:** stenosis or occlusion of the internal carotid artery, vertebral, or intracranial arteries
 - mechanisms
 - insufficient blood flow beyond lesion (hemodynamic stroke)
 - underlying processes: atherosclerosis (most common cause), dissection, and vasculitis
 - ♦ **small vessel/lacunar**
 - mechanism: chronic HTN and DM cause vessel wall thickening and decreased luminal diameter
 - affects mainly small penetrating arteries (primarily basal ganglia, internal capsule, and thalamus)
- **cardioembolic:** blockage of cerebral arterial blood flow due to particles originating from a cardiac source
 - ♦ atrial fibrillation (most common), rheumatic valve disease, prosthetic heart valves, recent MI, fibrous and infectious endocarditis
- **systemic hypoperfusion** (global cerebral ischemia)
 - ♦ inadequate blood flow to brain, usually secondary to cardiac pump failure (e.g. cardiac arrest, arrhythmia, or MI)
 - ♦ primarily affects watershed areas (between the major cerebral arterial territories)

2. Hemorrhagic

- **intracerebral hemorrhage**
 - ♦ mechanisms
 - hypertensive (most common): rupture of small microaneurysms (Charcot-Bouchard aneurysms) causing intraparenchymal hemorrhage
 - most common sites: putamen, thalamus, cerebellum, and pons
 - other: trauma, amyloid angiopathy (associated with lobar hemorrhage), vascular malformations, vasculitis, drug use (cocaine or amphetamines)
- **subarachnoid hemorrhage** see [Neurosurgery](#), NS18

Stroke Syndromes According to Vascular Territory

- **ACA:** contralateral leg paresis and sensory loss
- **MCA:** proximal occlusion involves
 1. contralateral weakness and sensory loss of face and arm
 2. cortical sensory loss
 3. may have contralateral homonymous hemianopia or quadrantanopia
 4. if left hemisphere: aphasia
 5. if right hemisphere: neglect
 6. eye deviation towards the side of the lesion and away from the weak side
- **PCA**
 1. contralateral hemianopia or quadrantanopia
 2. midbrain findings: CN III and IV palsy/pupillary changes, hemiparesis
 3. thalamic findings: sensory loss, amnesia, decreased level of consciousness
 4. if bilateral: cortical blindness or prosopagnosia
- **basilar artery** (locked-in syndrome)
 1. quadriparesis
 2. dysarthria
 3. impaired eye movements
- **PICA (lateral medullary or Wallenberg syndrome):** ipsilateral ataxia, ipsilateral Horner's, ipsilateral facial sensory loss, contralateral limb impairment of pain and temperature sensation, nystagmus, vertigo, N/V, dysphagia, dysarthria, hiccups
- **medial medullary infarct** (anterior spinal artery, which can be associated with anterior cord infarct): contralateral hemiparesis (facial sparing), contralateral impaired proprioception and vibration sensation, ipsilateral tongue weakness
- **lacunar infarcts (deep hemispheric white matter)**
 - pure motor hemiparesis (posterior limb of internal capsule): contralateral arm, leg, and face
 - pure sensory loss (thalamic): hemisensory loss
 - ataxic hemiparesis: ipsilateral ataxia and leg paresis
 - dysarthria-clumsy hand syndrome: dysarthria, facial weakness, dysphagia, mild hand weakness and clumsiness



HTN Encephalopathy

Acute severe HTN (typically dBp >130 or sBP >200) can cause hypertensive encephalopathy – abnormal fundoscopic exam (papilledema, hemorrhages, exudates, cotton-wool spots), focal neurologic symptoms, N/V, visual disturbances and change in LOC



Consider transfer of acute stroke patient to a designated stroke center for neuroprotective or thrombolytic therapy if the patient is seen in first few hours



Early seizure activity occurs in 5-25% of patients after ICH



Cerebral venous sinus thrombosis should be considered in the differential diagnosis of stroke and headache. It is an uncommon cause of either, but is associated with high morbidity and mortality. Patients often present with headache alone, but can also have seizures, focal neurological deficits, or cranial nerve palsies. This is diagnosed with MRV or CTV. Treatment is typically anticoagulation with heparin initially, then transition to warfarin



20-40% of patients with ischemic stroke may develop hemorrhagic transformation within 1 wk after the initial infarction

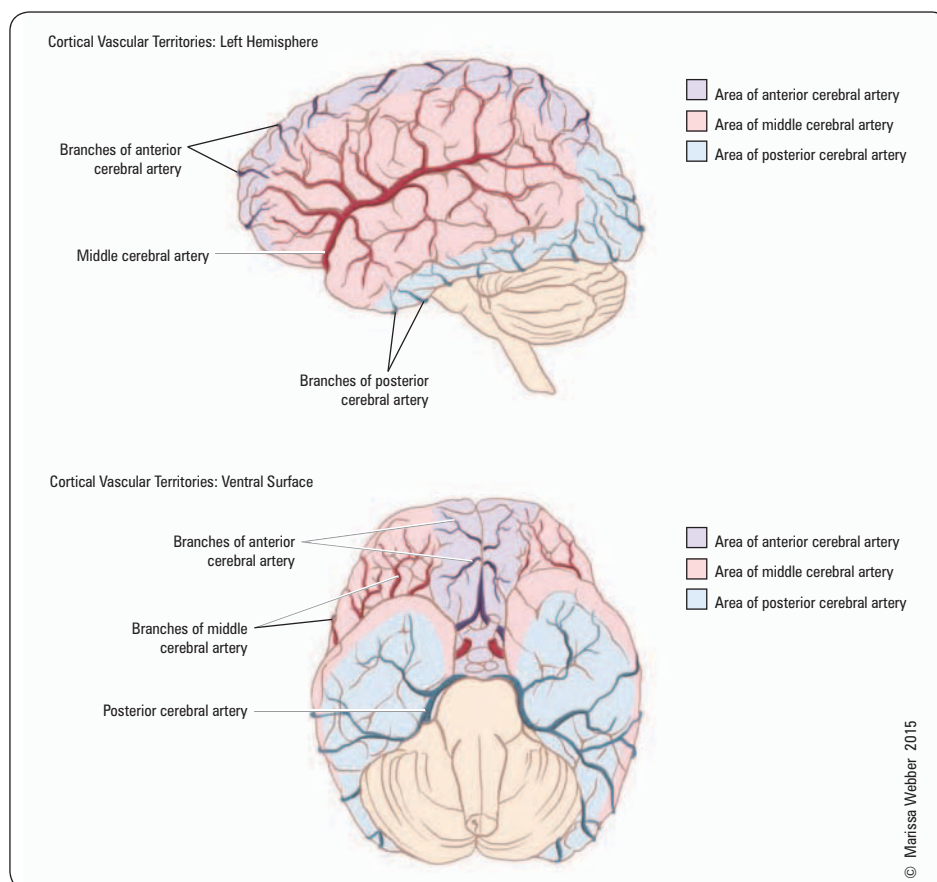


Figure 24. Vascular territories



Blood work should only delay treatment if: patient is on anticoagulants, low platelet count suspected, abnormal electrolytes suspected, or any bleeding abnormality suspected



Suspect an alternate diagnosis if: fever, decreased LOC, fluctuating symptoms, gradual onset, no focal neurological symptoms, and/or positive symptoms



Infarcted area of brain tissue can often appear normal on CT during the first several hours after the onset of stroke



Aspect Score: 10-point quantitative score to assess ischemic changes on CT scan

- 10/10 is normal and <4/10 signifies high risk of bleed with rtPA
- Subtract 1 point for each of following structures if abnormal within the ischemic hemisphere: caudate, lentiform, insula, internal capsule, MCA 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 regions



If rtPA given at stroke onset, delay acute antiplatelet/anticoagulation treatment by 24 h



The **National Institute of Health Stroke Scale (NIHSS)** is a standardized clinical examination that determines the severity of an acute stroke; it can also be used to monitor response to treatment over time

The scale uses 11 items that evaluate:

- Level of consciousness
- Visual system
- Motor system
- Sensory system
- Language abilities

Scoring (x/42):
 0 = no stroke
 1-4 = mild stroke
 5-15 = moderate stroke
 15-20 = moderate to severe stroke
 21-42 = severe stroke
 rtPA should be considered if score 6 or greater



Absolute Contraindications to rtPA

Hx: improving sx, minor sx, seizure at stroke onset, recent major surgery (within 14 d) or trauma, recent GI or urinary hemorrhage (within 21 d), recent LP or arterial puncture at noncompressible site, PMHx ICH, sx of SAH/pericarditis/MI, pregnancy

P/E: sBP ≥ 185 , dBP ≥ 110 , aggressive treatment to decrease BP, uncontrolled serum glucose, thrombocytopenia

Ix: hemorrhage or mass on CT, high INR or aPTT

Assessment and Treatment of Ischemic Stroke

General Assessment

- ABCs, full vital sign monitoring, check glucose, urgent CODE STROKE if <4.5 h from symptom onset (for possible thrombolysis)
- history
 - onset: time when last known to be awake and symptom free
 - mimics to rule out: seizure/post-ictal, hypoglycemia, migraine, conversion disorder
- investigations
 - non-contrast CT head (STAT): to rule out hemorrhage and assess extent of infarct
 - ECG: to rule out atrial fibrillation (cardioembolic cause)
 - CBC, electrolytes, creatinine, PTT/INR, blood glucose
- imaging (i.e. CT) signs of stroke
 - loss of cortical white-gray differentiation
 - sulcal effacement (i.e. mass effect decreases visualization of sulci)
 - hypodensity of parenchyma
 - insular ribbon sign
 - hyperdense MCA sign

ACUTE STROKE MANAGEMENT

1. Thrombolysis

- rtPA (recombinant tissue plasminogen activator)
- given **within 4.5 h** of acute ischemic stroke onset provided there are clinical indications and no contraindications to use
- indications: based on NIH Stroke Scale
- contraindications: see sidebar

2. Anti-Platelet Therapy

- give at presentation of TIA or stroke if rtPA not received
- antiplatelet agents
 - ASA: recommended dose 81 mg chewed
 - if patient intolerant to ASA, use other antiplatelet agent (i.e. clopidogrel)

3. Acute Anti-Coagulant Therapy

- for patients with TIA or stroke and atrial fibrillation if rtPA not received
 - recommend IV heparin (or ensuring INR between 2-3 if already anticoagulated on warfarin)

Other Acute Management Issues

- avoid hyperglycemia which can increase the infarct size
- lower temperature if febrile
- prevent complications
 - NPO if dysphagia (to be reassessed by SLP)
 - DVT prophylaxis if bed-bound
 - initiate rehabilitation early

Blood Pressure Control

- do NOT lower the blood pressure unless the HTN is severe
 - antihypertensive therapy is withheld for at least 5 d after thromboembolic stroke unless sBP >220 mmHg or dBP >120 mmHg, or in the setting of acute MI, renal failure, aortic dissection
- acutely elevated BP is necessary to maintain brain perfusion to the ischemic penumbra
- most patients with an acute cerebral infarct are initially hypertensive and their BP will fall spontaneously within 1-2 d
- IV labetalol first-line if needed

Etiological Diagnosis

- further investigations
 - additional neuroimaging (MRI)
 - vascular imaging: CTA/MRA/carotid dopplers
 - cardiac tests: ECHO, holter monitoring
 - correct etiological diagnosis is critical for appropriate secondary prevention strategies

Primary and Secondary Prevention of Ischemic Stroke

Anti-Platelet Therapy

- primary prevention
 - current evidence has not firmly established a protective role for antiplatelet agents for low-risk patients without a prior stroke/TIA
- secondary prevention
 - ASA is the initial antiplatelet of choice for stroke prevention
 - other agents (generally reserved for those who suffer cerebrovascular symptoms while on ASA or if unable to tolerate ASA)
 - ♦ Aggrenox® (ESPRIT trial)
 - ♦ clopidogrel (CAPRIE trial)

Carotid Stenosis

- primary prevention (asymptomatic)
 - carotid endarterectomy is controversial: if stenosis >60%, risk of stroke is 2% per yr; carotid endarterectomy reduces the risk of stroke by 1% per yr (but 5% risk of complications)
- secondary prevention (previous stroke/TIA in carotid territory)
 - carotid endarterectomy clearly benefits those with symptomatic severe stenosis (70-99%), and is less beneficial for those with symptomatic moderate stenosis (50-69%) (NASCET trial), see [Vascular Surgery, VS10](#)
- according to the CREST trial, endarterectomy and carotid stenting have similar benefits in a composite endpoint of reduction of stroke, MI, and death; however, in the periprocedural period, stenting results in a higher rate of stroke, while endarterectomy results in a higher rate of MI



Atrial Fibrillation

- primary and secondary prevention with anticoagulation
 - risk stratification using CHADS² score
 - ♦ 0 (very low risk): antiplatelet
 - ♦ 1 (low risk): anticoagulant or antiplatelet – patient specific decision
 - ♦ >2 (mod-high risk): anticoagulant
 - anticoagulation therapy
 - ♦ warfarin (titrate to INR 2-3)
 - ♦ dabigatran (110 or 150 mg bid) may be an option to warfarin, but should be used cautiously due to lack of a reversal agent should bleeding occur



Dabigatran vs. Warfarin in Patients with Atrial Fibrillation (The RE-LY Trial)

NEJM 2011;365:883-891

Study Type: Prospective, multicenter RCT. Double-blinded between different doses of dabigatran, unblinded comparison between dabigatran and warfarin.

Population: 18,113 patients with atrial fibrillation and a risk of stroke followed over 2 yr.

Primary Outcome: Stroke or systemic embolism.

Results: Rates of outcome were 1.69% per yr in warfarin group and 1.53% per yr in dabigatran group (RR 0.91, p<0.001 for non-inferiority). Minor bleeds were slightly increased in warfarin group (3.36% vs. 2.71% with dabigatran; p=0.003). Risk of hemorrhagic stroke was lower with dabigatran (0.12% vs. 0.38 %; p<0.001).

Conclusions: Dabigatran at 110 mg PO bid was associated with similar rates of stroke and systemic embolism and lower rates of major hemorrhage compared to warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation. The 150 mg PO bid dose of dabigatran was more effective at stroke prevention and had a similar bleeding risk to warfarin.



High-Dose Atorvastatin after Stroke or Transient Ischemic Attack (SPARCL Trial)

NEJM 2006;355:549-559

Method: Multicenter double-blind RCT.

Population: 4,731 patients with stroke or TIA within 1-6 mo before study entry, LDL 100-190 mg/dL, no coronary heart disease.

Intervention: 80 mg atorvastatin PO OD or placebo.

Outcome: First non-fatal or fatal stroke over 5 yr.

Results: Patients receiving atorvastatin had a lower rate of stroke (ARI 2.2%, hazard ratio 0.84; p=0.03). There was a five yr absolute reduction in risk of 3.5% (p=0.002). There was no significant change in mortality rate, but a small significant increase in the risk of hemorrhagic stroke.

Conclusions: High-dose atorvastatin decreases overall incidence of strokes and cardiovascular events in patients with a history of recent stroke or TIA.



Carotid endarterectomy needs to be done within 2 wk of the ischemic event for the most benefit



CHADS²

Stroke risk stratification for patients with atrial fibrillation

CHF (1 point)

HTN sBP >160 mmHg/treated HTN

(1 point)

Age >75 yr (1 point)

DM (1 point)

Prior Stroke or TIA (2 points)

Hypertension

- primary prevention
 - targets: BP <140/90 (or <130/80 for diabetics or renal disease)
 - ramipril 10 mg PO OD is effective in patients at high risk for cardiovascular disease (HOPE trial)
 - ♦ ACEI reduce the risk of stroke beyond their antihypertensive effect
- secondary prevention
 - ACEI and thiazide diuretics are recommended in patients with previous stroke/TIA (PROGRESS trial)

Hypercholesterolemia

- primary prevention
 - statins reduce the risk of stroke in patients with CAD or at high risk for cardiovascular events, even with normal cholesterol (CARE trial)
- secondary prevention
 - statins reduce risk of subsequent stroke – best evidence is for high dose atorvastatin (SPARCL trial) but lower doses may be more appropriate if patient cannot tolerate high dose

Diabetes

- ideal management: HbA1c <7%, fasting blood glucose between 4 and 7

Smoking

- primary prevention
 - smoking increases risk of stroke in a dose-dependent manner
- secondary prevention
 - after smoking cessation, the risk of stroke decreases to baseline within 2-5 yr

Physical Activity

- regular physical activity is an important lifestyle measure in stroke prevention and its beneficial effect has a dose-related response in terms of intensity and duration of activity

Stroke Rehabilitation

- individualized based on severity and nature of impairment; may require inpatient program and continuation through home care or outpatient services
- multidisciplinary approach includes dysphagia assessment and dietary modifications, communication rehabilitation, cognitive and psychological assessments including screen for depression, therapeutic exercise programs, assessment of ambulation and evaluation of need for assistive devices, splints or braces, vocational rehabilitation



ABCD² Score

To predict/identify individuals at high risk of stroke following TIA

Age: 1 point for age >60 yr

Blood pressure (at presentation):

1 point for HTN

(>140/90 mmHg at initial evaluation)

Clinical features: 2 points for unilateral weakness, 1 point for speech disturbance without weakness

Duration of symptoms: 1 point for 10-59 min, 2 points for >60 min

DM: 1 point

Stroke risk: 0-3: low risk, 4-5: moderate risk, 6-7: high risk



ACE Inhibitor in Stroke Prevention – HOPE Trial

NEJM 2000;342:145-153

Study: Randomized, blinded, placebo-controlled trial. Mean follow-up 5 yr.

Patients: 9,297 patients 55 yr of age or older (mean age 66 yr, 73% men) who had evidence of vascular disease or DM plus one other cardiovascular risk factor and who were not known to have a low ejection fraction or heart failure.

Intervention: Ramipril 10 mg daily orally vs. matching placebo.

Main Outcomes: Stroke, MI, or death from cardiovascular causes.

Results:

Outcome	RRR (95%CI)	NNT (CI)
Stroke	32% (16-44)	67 (43-145)
MI, stroke, or CV mortality	22% (14-30)	26 (19-43)
All-cause mortality	16% (5-25)	56 (32-195)

Treatment with ramipril reduced the risk of stroke (3.4% vs. 4.9%; RR 0.68; p<0.001).

Conclusions: In adults at high risk for cardiovascular events, ramipril reduced the risk of stroke, as well as other vascular events and overall mortality.



Cerebral Hemorrhage

Investigations

- general investigations, see *Assessment and Treatment of Ischemic Stroke*, N49
- further investigations
 - LP (if suspect subarachnoid hemorrhage despite negative CT)
 - may require cerebral angiogram if suspect aneurysm or AVM
 - if typical location for hypertensive hemorrhage, repeat CT head in 4-6 wk after hemorrhage has resolved to rule out an underlying lesion

Management

- medical
 - anti-hypertensives: no conclusive BP target ranges for managing ICH exist; 2010 AHA/ASA guidelines suggest that reducing sBP to as low as 140 mmHg with IV anti-hypertensives is safe and appropriate management (target sBP 140-160)
 - ICP lowering medical management (if necessary): see [Neurosurgery](#), NS7
- surgical: see [Neurosurgery](#), NS19

Multiple Sclerosis

Definition

- a chronic inflammatory disease of the CNS characterized by relapsing remitting, or progressive neurologic symptoms due to inflammation, demyelination, and axonal degeneration

Clinical Patterns of MS

- relapsing remitting (RRMS) 85%, primary progressive (PPMS) 10%, progressive relapsing (PRMS) 5%, secondary progressive (SPMS)
- most RRMS goes on to become SPMS

MS Variants

- Devic's = neuromyelitis optica (NMO):** severe optic neuritis and extensive transverse myelitis extending >3 vertebral segments (NMO antibody positive)
- clinically isolated syndrome (CIS):** single MS-like episode, which may progress to MS
- tumefactive MS:** solitary lesion >2 cm mimicking neoplasms on MRI
- fulminant MS (Marburg):** rapidly progressive and fatal MS associated with severe axonal damage, inflammation, and necrosis
- acute disseminated encephalomyelitis (ADEM):** monophasic demyelinating disorder with multifocal neurologic symptoms seen mainly in children often following infection or vaccination

Etiology

- genetic
 - polygenetic: the HLA-DRB1 gene has been demonstrated to be a genetically susceptible area
 - 30% concordance for monozygotic twins, 2-4% risk in offspring of affected mother or father
- environmental
 - MS is more common in regions with less sun exposure and lower stores of vitamin D (Europe, Canada, US, New Zealand, SE Australia)
 - MS has also been linked to certain viruses (EBV is associated with MS)

Epidemiology

- onset 17-35 yr; F:M = 3:1
- PPMS occurs in an older population with F=M

Diagnosis

- dissemination in space and in time as based on the revised McDonald criteria
 - dissemination in time: 2 or more attacks, new gadolinium enhancing lesion 3 mo later, or new T2 lesions >1 mo after first attack
 - dissemination in space: clinical evidence of 2 or more lesions; or three of (1 gadolinium enhancing or 9 T2 lesions), (1 infratentorial lesion), (1 juxtacortical lesion), (3 periventricular lesions)

Clinical Features

- symptoms include numbness, visual disturbance (optic neuritis), weakness, spasticity, diplopia (e.g. INO), impaired gait, vertigo, bladder dysfunction
- Lhermitte's sign:** flexion of neck causes electric shock sensation down back into limbs indicating cervical cord lesion
- Uhthoff's phenomenon:** worsening of symptoms (classically optic neuritis) in heat
- SPMS: classically weakness of legs in pyramidal distribution paired with cerebellar findings of arms (i.e. intention tremor)
- symptoms not commonly found in MS: visual field defects, aphasia, apraxia, progressive hemiparesis
- relapse: acute/subacute onset of clinical dysfunction that peaks from days to weeks, followed by remission with variable symptom resolution (symptoms must last at least 24 h)
- in RRMS, average 0.4 to 0.6 relapses/yr, but higher disease activity in first yr of disease

Investigations

- MRI:** demyelinating plaques appear as hyperintense lesions on T2 weighted MRI, with active lesions showing enhancement with gadolinium
 - typical locations: periventricular, corpus callosum, cerebellar peduncles, brainstem, juxtacortical region, and dorsolateral spinal cord
 - Dawson's fingers: periventricular lesions extending into corpus callosum
 - cranial MRI is more sensitive than spinal MRI
- CSF:** oligoclonal bands in 90%, increased IgG concentration
- evoked potentials (visual/auditory/somatosensory):** delayed but well-preserved wave forms

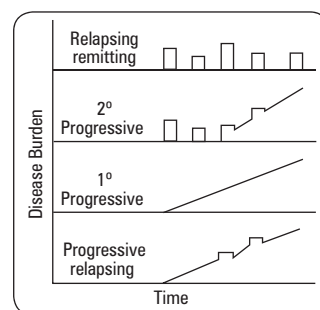


Figure 25. Clinical patterns of MS



Chronic Cerebrospinal Venous Insufficiency (CCSVI)

A theory proposed in 2008 describing abnormal venous blood flow in patients with MS. While some RCTs are still underway, recent studies have largely discredited this highly controversial theory. That is, studies indicate no connection between CCSVI and MS



Most symptoms in MS are due to cord, brainstem, and optic nerve lesions



The Expanded Disability Status Scale (EDSS) is used as a measure of disability progression and is scored from 0 to 10 based on the neurologic exam and ambulation



Recombinant Interferon Beta or Glatiramer Acetate for Delaying Conversion of the First Demyelinating Event to Multiple Sclerosis

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2008;2:CD005278

Study: Meta-analysis of RCTs of clinically isolated syndrome (CIS) patients treated with immunomodulatory drugs.

Primary Outcomes: Proportion of patients converting to clinically definite MS and adverse effects.

Results: Three trials (n=1,160) tested the efficacy of interferon (IFN-β) and no trial tested glatiramer acetate (GA). A pooled odds ratio (OR) of 0.53 (95% CI 0.40-0.71, p<0.0001) for patients on IFN vs. placebo at 1 yr. Two year follow-up odds ratio was 0.52 (95% CI 0.38-0.70, p<0.0001). There was no significant increase in adverse events for those on IFN-β.

Conclusions: IFN-β treatment can delay progression to clinically definite MS in patients with CIS over 2 yr.

Treatment

- **acute treatment:** methylprednisolone 1,000 mg IV daily x 3-7 d (no taper required); if poor response to corticosteroids may consider plasma exchange
- **disease modifying therapy**
 - goals: decrease relapse rate, decrease progression of disability, slow accumulation of MRI lesions
 - first line: interferon- β (injection: Betaseron®, Avonex®, Rebif®), glatiramer acetate (injection: Copaxone®)
 - second line: natalizumab (Tysabri®) (monthly IV infusion)
 - new oral agents: fingolimod (available) and cladribine (not yet available)
 - ♦ indications for fingolimod: newly diagnosed patients with active RRMS who prefer oral treatment despite increased risks or those intolerant of first line therapies
 - CIS: early treatment with interferons may delay potential second attack
 - RRMS: DMT reduces rate of relapse by about 30%
 - PPMS/SPMS: no proven efficacy of DMTs
- **symptomatic treatment**
 - spasticity: baclofen, tizanidine, dantrolene, benzodiazepine, botulinum toxin
 - bladder dysfunction: oxybutynin
 - pain: TCA, carbamazepine, gabapentin
 - fatigue: amantidine, modafinil, methylphenidate
 - depression: antidepressant, lithium
 - constipation: high fiber intake, stool softener, laxatives
 - sexual dysfunction: sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil
- **education and counseling:** MS Society, support groups, psychosocial issues

Prognosis

- good prognostic indicators: female, young, RRMS, presenting with optic neuritis, low burden of disease on initial MRI, low rate of relapse early in disease
- PPMS: poor prognosis, higher rates of disability, poor response to therapy

**Oral Fingolimod or Intramuscular Interferon for Relapsing Multiple Sclerosis***NEJM* 2010;362:402-415**Method:** Multicenter double-blind RCT.**Population:** 1,292 patients with relapsing-remitting MS and at least one relapse.**Intervention:** Oral fingolimod at 0.5-1.25 mg or 30 μ g IM interferon- β .**Outcomes:** Annualized relapse rate over 1 yr; lesions on T2-weighted MRI.**Results:** Annualized relapse rate was lower in both groups receiving fingolimod compared to interferon: 0.20 (95% CI 0.16-0.26) with 1.25 mg fingolimod, 0.16 (95% CI 0.12-0.21) with 0.5 mg fingolimod, 0.33 with interferon (95% CI 0.26-0.42; $p < 0.001$).

MRI findings also showed greater reduction of lesions in fingolimod-treated patients. Progression of disability was unchanged. Side effects included severe infections like HSV encephalitis, disseminated VZV, other HSV infections, and skin cancer.

Conclusions: Oral fingolimod is superior to interferon- β injections in reducing relapses and MRI lesion load in patients with MS.

Common Medications

Table 28. Common Medications – Major Issues

Indications	Mechanism of Action/Class	Generic Name	Trade Name	Dosing	Contraindications	Side Effects
Parkinson's Disease	Dopamine precursor	levodopa + carbidopa	Sinemet®	Carbidopa 25 mg/levodopa 100 mg PO tid Maximum 200 mg carbidopa and 2,000 mg levodopa per day	Narrow-angle glaucoma, use of MAO inhibitor in last 14 d, history of melanoma or undiagnosed skin lesions	Nausea, hypotension, hallucinations, dyskinesias in last 14 d, history of melanoma or undiagnosed skin lesions
	Dopamine agonist	bromocriptine	Parlodel®	1.25 mg PO bid, increase by 2.5 mg/d q2-4wk, up to 10-30 mg PO tid	Concomitant use of potent inhibitors of CYP3A4, uncontrolled HTN, ischemic heart disease, peripheral vascular disease; caution with renal or hepatic disease	Hypotension, N/V, dizziness, constipation, diarrhea, abdominal cramps, H/A, nasal congestion, drowsiness, hallucinations
	MAO B inhibitor	selegiline	Eldepryl®	5 mg PO bid	Concomitant use of meperidine or tricyclic antidepressants	H/A, insomnia, dizziness, nausea, dry mouth, hallucinations, confusion, orthostatic hypotension, increased akinesia, risk of hypertensive crisis with tyramine-containing foods
Myasthenia Gravis	Acetylcholinesterase inhibitor	pyridostigmine	Mestinon®	600 mg/d PO divided in 5-6 doses Range 60-1,500 mg/d	GI or GU obstruction	N/V, diarrhea, abdominal cramps, increased peristalsis, increased salivation, increased bronchial secretions, miosis, diaphoresis, muscle cramps, fasciculations, muscle weakness
Acute Migraine	Triptan (selective 5-hydroxytryptamine receptor agonist)	sumatriptan	Imitrex®	25-100 mg PO prn, maximum 200 mg/d	Hemiplegic/basilar migraine, ischemic heart disease, cerebrovascular disease, uncontrolled HTN, use of ergotamine/5-HT ₁ agonist in past 24 h, use of MAO inhibitor in last 14 d, severe hepatic disease	Vertigo, chest pain, flushing, sensation of heat, hypertensive crisis, peripheral vascular disease, coronary artery vasospasm, cardiac arrest, N/V, H/A, hyposalivation, fatigue
	Ergot (5-HT _{1D} receptor agonist)	dihydroergotamine	Migranal®	Nasal spray 0.5 mg/spray, maximum 4 sprays/d	Hemiplegic/basilar migraine, high-dose ASA therapy, uncontrolled HTN, ischemic heart disease, peripheral vascular disease, severe hepatic or renal dysfunction, use of triptans in last 24 h, use of MAO inhibitors in last 14 d	Coronary artery vasospasm, transient myocardial ischemia, myocardial infarction, ventricular tachycardia, ventricular fibrillation; may cause significant rebound H/A
Migraine Prophylaxis	Anticonvulsant	topiramate	Topamax®	25 mg OD PO (in evening); may increase weekly by 25 mg/d to a max 50 mg bid		Sedation, mood disturbance, cognitive dysfunction, anorexia, nausea, diarrhea, paresthesias, metabolic acidosis, glaucoma, SJS/TEN
	β-blocker	propranolol	Inderal®	80 mg/d divided every 6-8 h; increase by 20-40 mg/dose every 3-4 wk to max 160-240 mg/d in divided doses q6-8h	Uncompensated CHF, severe bradycardia or heart block, severe COPD or asthma	Fatigue, cognitive dysfunction, disturbed sleep, rashes, dyspepsia, dry eyes, heart failure, bronchospasm, risk of acute tachycardia and HTN if withdrawal
Epilepsy	Anticonvulsant for partial ± 2° generalization, generalized tonic-clonic	carbamazepine	Tegretol® (Carbatrol)	Start at 100-200 mg PO OD-tid increase by 200 mg/d up to 800-1,200 mg/d	History of bone marrow depression, hepatic disease, hypersensitivity to the drug, use of MAO inhibitor in last 14 d	Drowsiness, H/A, unsteadiness, dizziness, N/V, skin rash, agranulocytosis/aplastic anemia (rare)
	Anticonvulsant for partial, tonic-clonic, status epilepticus	phenytoin	Dilantin®	100 mg PO tid, maintenance dose up to 200 mg PO tid SE: 10-15 mg/kg IV loading dose then maintenance doses of 100 mg PO or IV q6-8h	Hypersensitivity, pregnancy, breastfeeding; caution with P-450 interactions	Hypotension, SJS/TEN, SLE-type symptoms, gingival hypertrophy, peripheral neuropathy, H/A, blood dyscrasias, nystagmus, N/V, constipation, sedation, teratogenic
	Anticonvulsant for partial or generalized, absence seizures	valproic acid	Depacon® Depakene® Depakote®	10-15 mg/kg/d PO in divided doses, increase incrementally until therapeutic dose to max of 60 mg/kg/d	Hypersensitivity, hepatic disease, urea cycle disorders	Hepatic failure, H/A, somnolence, alopecia, N/V, diarrhea, tremor, diplopia, thrombocytopenia, hypothermia, pancreatitis, encephalopathy
	Anticonvulsant for absence seizures	ethosuximide	Zarontin®	500 mg/d PO, increase by 250 mg every 4-7 d to max 1.5 g/d in divided doses	Hypersensitivity (succinimides)	CNS depression, blood dyscrasias, SLE, SJS, GI symptoms

Table 28. Common Medications – Major Issues (continued)

Indications	Mechanism of Action/Class	Generic Name	Trade Name	Dosing	Contraindications	Side Effects
Stroke Prevention in AF	Anticoagulant (direct thrombin inhibitor)	dabigatran	Pradax®	110 mg PO bid or 150 mg PO bid	CrCl <30 mL/min, significant hemostatic impairment or CNS lesions within 6 mo with high risk of bleeding	Dyspepsia, gastritis, bleeding
Mild to Moderate AD or DLB	Cholinesterase Inhibitor	donepezil	Aricept®	5 mg PO OD, may increase to 10 mg PO OD after 4-6 wk	Hypersensitivity to donepezil or to piperidine derivatives	Diarrhea, N/V, insomnia, muscle cramps, fatigue, anorexia, HTN, syncope, AV block
Multiple Sclerosis	MS Disease Modifying Therapy	interferon-β-1b interferon-β-1a SC interferon-β-1a IM	Betaseron® Rebif® Avonex®	0.25 mg (8 MU) SC every other day 44 µg SC 3 times/wk 30 µg IM once weekly	Pregnancy, hypersensitivity to natural or recombinant interferon-β	Injection site reactions, injection site necrosis, flu-like symptoms (fever, chills, myalgia; tend to decrease over time)
	MS Disease Modifying Therapy	glatiramer acetate	Copaxone®	20 mg SC OD	Hypersensitivity to glatiramer or mannitol	Injection site reactions, nausea, transient chest pain, vasodilation
	MS Disease Modifying Therapy	natalizumab	Tysabri®	300 mg IV given over 1 h, every 4 wk	Hypersensitivity to natalizumab, progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML)	Rash, nausea, arthralgia, H/A, infections, rare risk of PML and melanoma
	MS Disease Modifying Therapy	fingolimod	Gilenya®	0.5 mg PO OD	Not available	Diarrhea, transaminitis, H/A, bradyarrhythmia, lymphocytopenia
Spasticity (i.e. MS)	Muscle Relaxant – Antispastic	baclofen	Lioresal® (injectable)	5 mg PO tid, increase by 15 mg/d q3d to max dose 80 mg/d in three divided doses	Hypersensitivity to baclofen	Transient drowsiness, daytime sedation, dizziness, weakness, fatigue, convulsions, constipation, nausea

Landmark Neurology Trials

Trial	Reference	Results
CREST	<i>NEJM</i> 2010;363:11-23	Carotid stenting and endarterectomy had similar benefits in reduction of stroke, MI, and death in carotid stenosis, but in the periprocedural period, stenting had a higher rate of stroke, while endarterectomy had a higher rate of MI
ECASS 3	<i>NEJM</i> 2008;359:1317-29	rtPA improved clinical outcomes when administered within 3 to 4.5 h of acute ischemic stroke
Interferon- β Multiple Sclerosis Study Group Trial	<i>Neurology</i> 1993;43:655-61	Interferon- β -1b reduces relapse rate and severity of relapses in RRMS
NASCET	<i>NEJM</i> 1991;7:445-53	Patients with symptomatic carotid stenosis of 70-99% benefited more from carotid endarterectomy than best medical therapy
NINDS rtPA	<i>NEJM</i> 1995;333:1581-7	rtPA reduces mortality and long-term disability when administered within 3 h of acute stroke
PROFESS	<i>NEJM</i> 2008;359:1238-51	ASA + dipyridamole and clopidogrel showed similar benefits in secondary stroke prevention
RELY	<i>NEJM</i> 2009;361:1139	Dabigatran superior to warfarin for stroke prevention in patients with atrial fibrillation
SPARCL	<i>NEJM</i> 2006;355:549-59	The observed benefit of statins in cardiovascular disease is also extended to patients with a recent stroke or TIA

References

Coma

Bhidayasiri R, Waters MF, Giza CC. Neurological differential diagnosis: a prioritized approach. Massachusetts: Blackwell Publishing, 2005. 71-72.
Kasper DL, Braunwald E, Fauci AS, et al. (editors). Harrison's principles of internal medicine, 16th ed. Toronto: McGraw-Hill Companies, 2005. 1629-1630.

Common Presenting Complaints

Bhidayasiri R, Waters MF, Giza CC. Neurological differential diagnosis: a prioritized approach. Massachusetts: Blackwell Publishing, 2005. 12-13, 305-314.

Disorders of Consciousness

Monti MM, Laureys S, Owen AM. The vegetative state. *BMJ* 2010; 341:c3765.
Pisa FE, Biasutti E, Drigo D, et al. The prevalence of vegetative and minimally conscious states: a systematic review and methodological appraisal. *J Head Trauma Rehabil* 2014; 29(4):E23-30.
The Multi-Society Task Force on PVS. Medical aspects of persistent vegetative state. *NEJM* 1994;330:1572-1579.

Drug Information

Compendium of Pharmaceuticals and Specialties 2010. Ottawa: Canadian Pharmacists Association, 2010.
Lexi-Comp Online™. Hudson: Lexi-Comp, 2011.

Epilepsy

Ambati BK, Smith WT, Azer-Bentsianov MT. Residents' manual of medicine. Hamilton: BC Decker, 2001. 203-205.
Ferri FF. Practical guide to the care of the medical patient. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001. 617-619.
Lowenstein DH, Alldredge BK. Status epilepticus. *NEJM* 1998;338:970-976.

General

Aminoff MJ, Greenberg DA, Simon RP, Lange. clinical neurology, 6th ed. Toronto: McGraw-Hill, 2009.
Mumenthaler M, Mattie H. Fundamentals of neurology. Thieme: Stuttgart and New York, 2006.
Scherokman B, Selwa L, Alquire PC. Approach to common neurological symptoms in internal medicine: AAN core curricula. 2011.
Yamada KA, Awadalla S. The Washington manual of medical therapeutics, 31st ed. New York: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins. 531-534.

Headache

Chronicle EP, Mulleners WM. Anticonvulsant drugs for migraine prophylaxis. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2009;CD003226.
Detsky ME, McDonald DR, Baerlocher MO, et al. Does this patient with headache have a migraine or need neuroimaging? *JAMA* 2006;296:1274-1283.
Francis GJ, Becker WJ, Pringsheim TM. Acute and preventive pharmacologic treatment of cluster headache. *Neurology* 2010;75:463-473.
Headache Classification Subcommittee of the International Headache Society. The international classification of headache disorders, 2nd ed. Cephalalgia 2004;24(S1):9-160.
Oldman AD, Smith LA, McQuay HJ, et al. Pharmacological treatments for acute migraine: quantitative systematic review. *Pain* 2002;97:247-257.

Movement Disorders

Bayard M, Avonda T, Wadzinski J. Restless legs syndrome. *Am Fam Physician* 2008; 78:235-40.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Diagnosis and management of foodborne illnesses: a primer for physicians and other health care professionals. *MMWR Recomm Rep* 2004;53(RR-4):1-33.
England JD, Gronseth G, Franklin G, et al. Practice Parameter: evaluation of distal symmetric polyneuropathy: role of laboratory and genetic testing (an evidence-based review). *Neurology* 2009;72:185-192.
Hughes AJ, Daniel SE, Kilford L, et al. Accuracy of clinical diagnosis of idiopathic Parkinson's disease: a clinico-pathological study of 100 cases. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1992;55:181-184.
Stowe RL, Ives NJ, Clarke CE, et al. Dopamine agonist therapy in early Parkinson's disease. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2008;CD006564.
Walkup JT, Ferrao Y, Leckman JF, et al. Tic disorders: some key issues for DSM-V. *Depression and Anxiety* 2010:600-610.

Multiple Sclerosis

Ambati BK, Smith WT, Azer-Bentsianov MT. Residents' manual of medicine. Hamilton: BC Decker, 2001. 211-213.
Carpenter CCJ, Griggs RC, Loscalzo J (editors). Cecil essentials of medicine, 5th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2001. 973-976.
Clerico M, Faggiano F, Palace J, et al. Recombinant interferon beta or glatiramer acetate for delaying conversion of the first demyelinating event to multiple sclerosis. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2009;CD005278.
Ferri FF. Practical guide to the care of the medical patient. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001. 654-656.
Noseworthy JH, Lucchinetti C, Rodriguez M, et al. Multiple sclerosis. *NEJM* 2000;343:938-952.

Olek MJ (editor). Multiple sclerosis: etiology, diagnosis, and new treatment strategies. New Jersey: Humana Press, 2005. 36-40, 57, 131, 222-223.
Polman CH, Reingold SC, Edan G, et al. Diagnostic criteria for multiple sclerosis: 2005 revisions to the "McDonald Criteria". *Ann Neurol* 2005;58:840-846.
Samuels MA, Feske SK (editors). Office practice of neurology, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier Science, 2003. 410-411.
The TRANSFORMS Study Group. Oral fingolimod or intramuscular interferon for relapsing MS. *NEJM* 2010;362:402-415.
Vosoughi R, Freedman MS. Therapy of MS. *Clin Neurol Neurosurg* 2010;112:365-385.

Neurocognitive Disorders (Dementia)

Feldman HH, Jacova C, Robillard A, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of dementia: diagnosis. *CMAJ* 2008;178:825-836.
Josephs KA, Ahlskog JE, Parisi JE, et al. Rapidly progressive neurodegenerative dementias. *Arch Neurol* 2009;66:201-207.
McKeith IG, Dickson DW, Lowe J, et al. Consortium on DLB. Diagnosis and management of dementia with Lewy bodies: third report of the DLB consortium. *Neurology* 2005;65:1863-1872.
Neary D, Snowden JS, Gustafson L, et al. Frontotemporal lobar degeneration: a consensus on clinical diagnostic criteria. *Neurology* 1998;51:1546-1554.
Patterson C, Feightner JW, Garcia A, et al. Diagnosis and treatment of dementia: risk assessment and primary prevention of Alzheimer disease. *CMAJ* 2008;178:548-556.
Rascovsky K, Hodges JR, Knopman D, et al. Sensitivity of revised diagnostic criteria for the behavioural variant of frontotemporal dementia. *Brain* 2011;134:2456-2477.
Rolinski M, Fox C, Maidment I, et al. Cholinesterase inhibitors for dementia with Lewy bodies, Parkinson's disease dementia and cognitive impairment in Parkinson's disease. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2012:CD006504.
Vigen CL, Mack WJ, Keefe RS, et al. Cognitive effects of atypical antipsychotic medications in patients with Alzheimer's disease: outcomes from CATIE-AD. *Am J Psychiatry* 2011;168:831-839.
Zerr I, Pocchiari M, Collins S, et al. Analysis of EEG and CSF 14-3-3 proteins as aids to the diagnosis of Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease. *Neurology* 2000;55:811-815.
Zerr I, Kallenberg K, Summers DM, et al. Updated clinical diagnostic criteria for sporadic Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease. *Brain* 2009;132:2659-2668.

Nutritional Deficiencies and Toxic Injury

Dhawan PS, Goodman BP. Neurological manifestations of nutritional disorders. Aminoff's neurology and general medicine, 5th ed. San Francisco: Academic Press, 2014. 273-287.
Mont-Descamps C, Deschamps F. Nervous system disorders induced by occupational and environmental toxic exposure. *Open Journal of Preventive Medicine* 2012;2:272-278.

Pain

Chen N, Li Q, Zhang Y, et al. Vaccination for preventing postherpetic neuralgia. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2011:CD007795.
Coen PG, Scott F, Leedham-Green M, et al. *European Journal of Pain* 2006;10:695-700.
Marcus D. Chronic pain - a primary guide to practical management. New Jersey: Humana Press, 2005. 111-128.
Salinas RA, Alvarez G, Daly F, et al. Corticosteroids for Bell's palsy (idiopathic facial paralysis). *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2010:CD001942.
Vargas-Schaffer G. Is the WHO analgesic ladder still valid? Twenty-four yr of experience. *Can Fam Phys* 2010;56:514-517.

Spinal Cord Syndrome

Wagner R, Jagoda A. Neurologic emergencies: spinal cord syndromes. *Emerg Medd Clinic N Am* 1997;15:699-711.

Stroke

Adams HP Jr., Bendixen BH, Kappelle LJ, et al. Classification of subtype of acute ischemic stroke. Definitions for use in a multicenter clinical trial. *Stroke* 1993;24:35-41.
Bhatt DL, Fox KA, Hacke W, et al. Clopidogrel and Aspirin® vs. Aspirin® alone for the prevention of atherothrombotic events. *NEJM* 2006;354:1706-1717.
Brott TG, Hobson RW, George H, et al. Stenting vs. endarterectomy for treatment of carotid stenosis. *NEJM* 2010;363:11-23.
CAPRIE Steering Committee. A randomized, blinded, trial of clopidogrel vs. Aspirin® in patients at risk of ischaemic events (CAPRIE). *Lancet* 1996;348:1329-1339.
Connolly SJ, Ezekowitz MD, Yusuf S, et al. Dabigatran vs. warfarin in patients with atrial fibrillation. *NEJM* 2009;361:1139-1151.
Diener HC, Bogousslavsky J, Brass LM, et al. Aspirin® and clopidogrel compared with clopidogrel alone after recent ischaemic stroke or transient ischaemic attack in high-risk patients (MATCH): randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial *Lancet* 2004;364:331-337.
Frontera W, Silver J. Essentials of physical medicine and rehabilitation. Philadelphia: Hanley and Belfus, 2002. 778-782.
Gage BF, Waterman AD, Shannon W, et al. Validation of clinical classification schemes for predicting stroke: results from the National Registry of Atrial Fibrillation. *JAMA* 2001;285:2864-2870.
Johnston SC, Rothwell PM, Nguyen-Huynh MN, et al. Validation and refinement of scores to predict very early stroke risk after transient ischaemic attack. *Lancet* 2007;369:283-292.
Lindsay K, Bone I. Neurology and neurosurgery illustrated. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone, 2003. 244.
Mullins ME, Lev MH, Scheiellingerhout D, et al. Intracranial hemorrhage complicating acute stroke: how common is hemorrhagic stroke on initial head CT scan and how often is initial clinical diagnosis of acute stroke eventually confirmed? *Am J Neuroradiol* 2005;26:2207-2212.
Stroke Unit Trialists' Collaboration. Organized inpatient (stroke unit) care for stroke. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2009:CD000197.
Passero S, Rocchi R, Rossi S, et al. Seizures after spontaneous supratentorial intracerebral hemorrhage. *Epilepsia* 2002;43:1175-1180.
Pexman JH, Barber PA, Hill MD, et al. Use of the Alberta Stroke Program Early CT Score (ASPECTS) for assessing CT scans in patients with acute stroke. *Am J Neuroradiol* 2001;22:1534-1542.
Program early CT score (ASPECTS) for assessing CT scans in patients with acute strokes. *AMJ Neuroradiol* 2001;22:1534-1542.
The ESPRIT Study Group. Aspirin® plus dipyridamole vs. Aspirin® alone after cerebral ischaemia of arterial origin (ESPRIT): randomized controlled trial. *Lancet* 2006;367:1665-1673.
The Heart Outcomes Prevention Evaluation Study Investigators. Effects of an ACEI, ramipril, on cardiovascular events in high-risk patients. *NEJM* 2000;342:145-153.
The National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke rt-PA Stroke Study Group. Tissue plasminogen activator for acute ischemic stroke. *NEJM* 1995;333:1581-1588.
The National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke rt-PA Stroke Study Group. Effects of tissue plasminogen activator for acute ischemic stroke at one yr. *NEJM* 1999;340:1781-1787.

Traumatic Brain Injury

Anderson-Barnes VC, Weeks SR, Tsao JW. Mild traumatic brain injury update. *Continuum* 2010;16(6):17-23.

Notes

Francois Mathieu, David Ben-Israel, and Mostafa Fatehi Hassanabad, chapter editors
 Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors
 Alexa Bramall, EBM editor
 Dr. Todd Mainprize and Dr. Eric Massicotte, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Extradural Lesions	23
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Root Compression	
Differential Diagnoses of Common Neurosurgical Presentations	3	Cervical Disc Syndrome	
INTRACRANIAL PATHOLOGY		Cervical Stenosis (Cervical Spondylosis)	
Intracranial Pressure Dynamics	4	Lumbar Disc Syndrome	
ICP/Volume Relationship		Cauda Equina Syndrome	
Cerebral Blood Flow		Lumbar Spinal Stenosis	
ICP Measurement		Neurogenic Claudication	
Elevated ICP		Intradural Intramedullary Lesions	27
Herniation Syndromes	6	Syringomyelia (Syrinx)	
Treatment of Elevated ICP		Spinal Cord Syndromes	27
Hydrocephalus	7	Peripheral Nerves	28
Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension (Pseudotumor Cerebri)	9	SPECIALTY TOPICS	
Tumors	10	Neurotrauma	29
Metastatic Tumors		Trauma Assessment	
Astrocytoma		Head Injury	
Meningioma		Brain Injury	
Vestibular Schwannoma (Acoustic Neuroma)		Late Complications of Head/Brain Injury	
Pituitary Adenoma		Spinal Cord Injury	
Pus	14	Fractures of the Spine	
Cerebral Abscess		Neurologically Determined Death	
Blood	15	Coma	
Extradural ("Epidural") Hematoma		Persistent Vegetative State	
Subdural Hematoma		Pediatric Neurosurgery	34
Cerebrovascular Disease	17	Spinal Dysraphism	
Subarachnoid Hemorrhage		Intraventricular Hemorrhage	
Intracerebral Hemorrhage		Hydrocephalus in Pediatrics	
Intracranial Aneurysms		Dandy-Walker Malformation	
Vascular Malformations	22	Chiari Malformations	
Arteriovenous Malformations		Craniosynostosis	
Cavernous Malformations		Pediatric Brain Tumors	
EXTRACRANIAL PATHOLOGY		Functional Neurosurgery	38
Approach to Limb/Back Pain	23	Movement Disorders	
		Neuropsychiatric Disorders	
		Chronic Pain	
		Surgical Management of Epilepsy	39
		Surgical Management for Trigeminal Neuralgia	40
		Common Medications	40
		References	41

Acronyms

AVF	arteriovenous fistula	GPI	globus pallidus pars interna	PAG	periaqueductal gray matter
AVM	arteriovenous malformation	H/A	headache	PET	positron emission tomography
CBF	cerebral blood flow	IC	internal capsule	PLL	posterior longitudinal ligament
CSF	cerebral spinal fluid	ICF	intracellular fluid	PNET	primitive neuroectodermal tumor
CPA	cerebellar pontine angle	ICH	intracerebral hemorrhage	PVG	periventricular gray matter
CPP	cerebral perfusion pressure	ICP	intracranial pressure	SAH	subarachnoid hemorrhage
CVR	cerebral vascular resistance	IVH	intraventricular hemorrhage	SDH	subdural hemorrhage
DBS	deep brain stimulation	LMN	lower motor neuron	SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
DI	diabetes insipidus	LOC	loss of consciousness	SPECT	single photon emission computed tomography
ECF	extracellular fluid	LP	lumbar puncture	SRS	stereotactic radiosurgery
ECT	electroconvulsive therapy	MAP	mean arterial pressure	STN	subthalamic nucleus
EEG	electroencephalography	MLS	midline shift	UMN	upper motor neuron
EMG	electromyography	NC	neurogenic claudication	VPL	ventral posterolateral
EVD	external ventricular drain	NPH	normal pressure hydrocephalus	VPM	ventral posteromedial
GCS	Glasgow coma scale	OPLL	ossification of posterior longitudinal ligament	WBRT	whole brain radiation therapy



See Functional
Neuroanatomy Software

Basic Anatomy Review

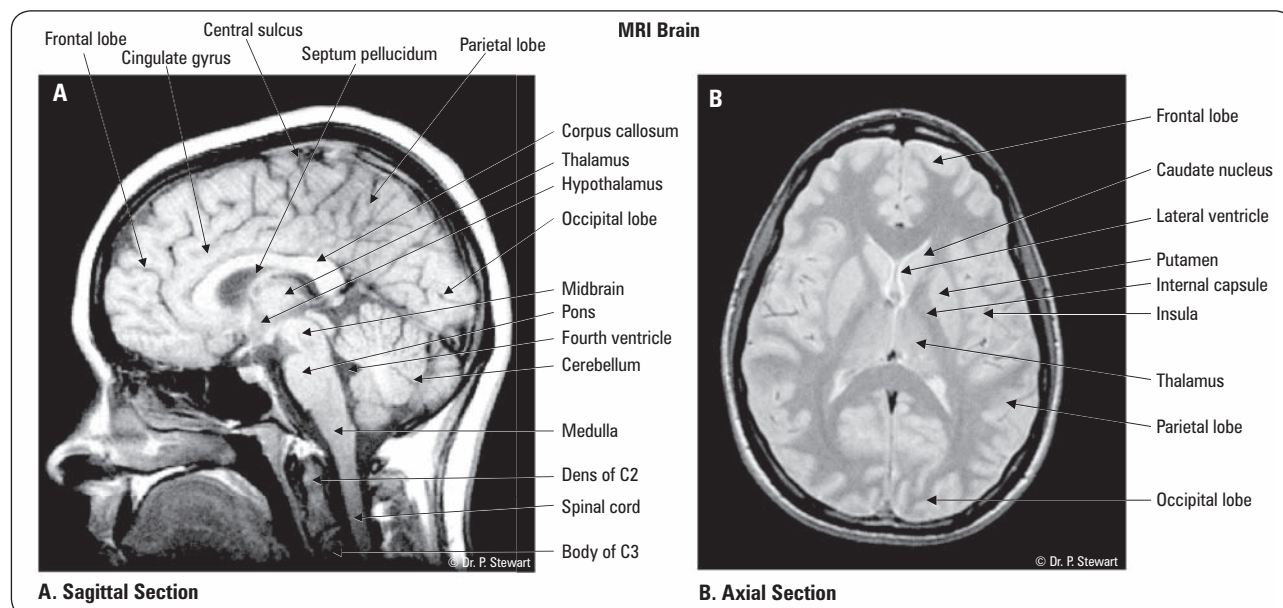


Figure 1. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) neuroanatomy

Stewart P, et al. Functional Neuroanatomy (Version 2.1). Health Education Assets Library 2005

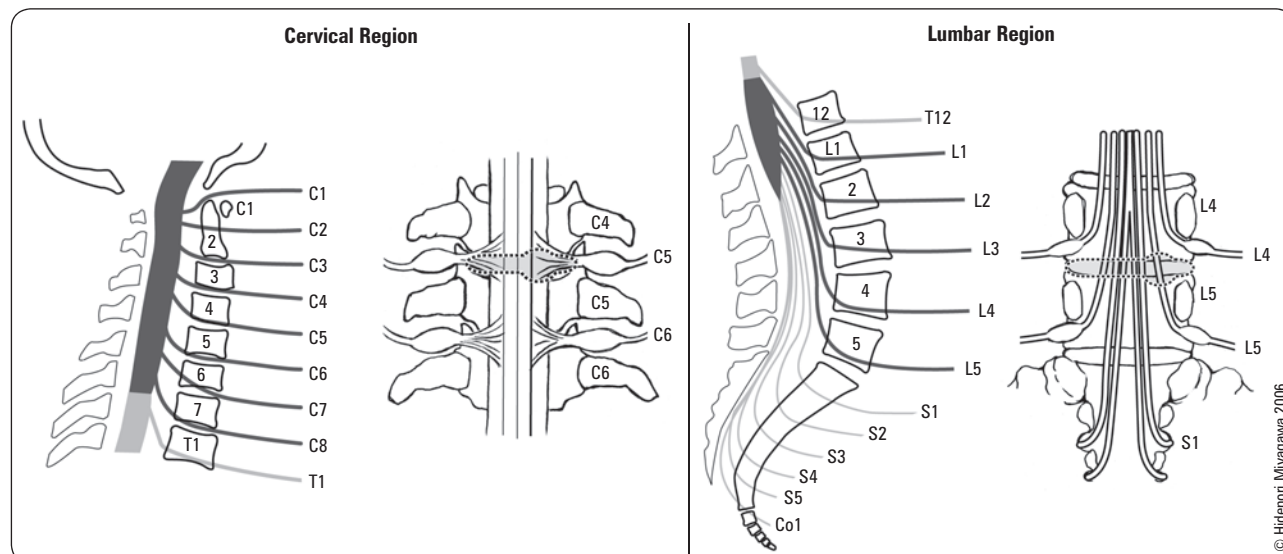
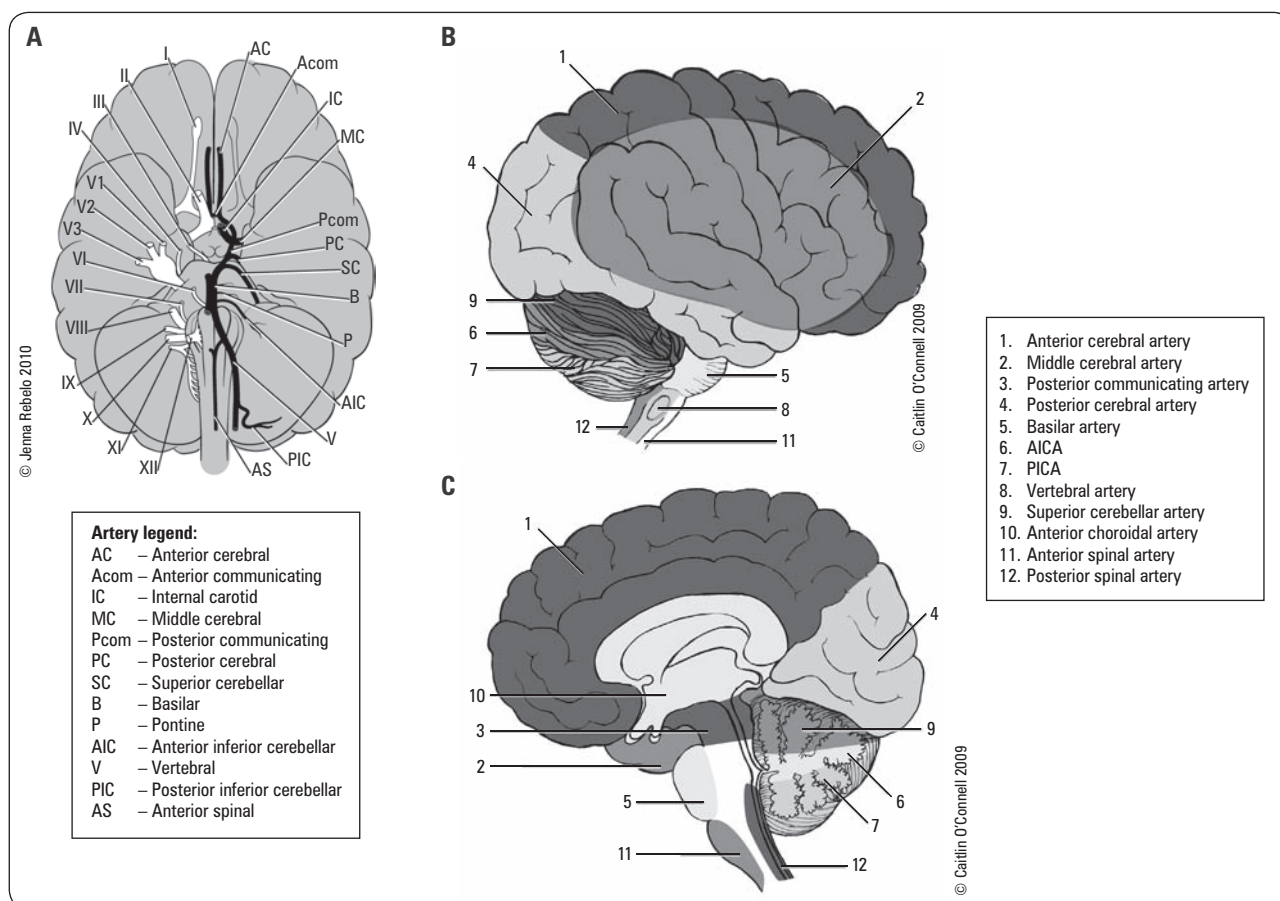


Figure 2. Relationship of nerve roots to vertebral level in the cervical and lumbar spine

Note: AP views depict left-sided C4-5 and L4-5 disc herniation, and correlating nerve root impingement



Differential Diagnoses of Common Neurosurgical Presentations

Intracranial Mass Lesions	Disorders of the Spine	Peripheral Nerve Lesions
Tumor Metastasis Astrocytoma Meningioma Vestibular schwannoma (acoustic neuroma) Pituitary adenoma Primary CNS lymphoma	Extradural Degenerative: disc herniation, canal stenosis, spondylolisthesis/spondylolysis Infection/inflammation: osteomyelitis, discitis Ligamentous: ossification of posterior longitudinal ligament (OPLL) Trauma: mechanical compression/instability, hematoma Tumors (55% of all spinal tumors): lymphoma, metastases (lymphoma, lung, breast, prostate), neurofibroma	Neuropathies Traumatic Entrapments Iatrogenic Inflammatory Tumors
Pus/inflammation Cerebral abscess, extradural abscess, subdural empyema Encephalitis (see Infectious Diseases, ID20) Tumefactive MS	Intradural extramedullary Vascular: dural arteriovenous fistula, subdural hematoma (especially if on anticoagulants) Tumors (40% of all spinal tumors): meningioma, schwannoma, neurofibroma	
Blood Extradural (epidural) hematoma Subdural hematoma Ischemic stroke Hemorrhage: SAH, ICH, IVH	Intradural intramedullary Tumors (5% of all spinal tumors): astrocytomas and ependymomas most common; also hemangioblastomas and dermoids Syringomyelia (common causes: trauma, congenital, idiopathic) Infectious/inflammatory: TB, sarcoid, transverse myelitis Vascular: AVM, ischemia	
Cyst Arachnoid cyst Dermoid cyst Epidermoid cyst Colloid cyst (3rd ventricle)		



INTRACRANIAL PATHOLOGY

Intracranial Pressure Dynamics

Table 1. Approach to Intracranial Pathology

Issue	Time Frame	Features
Vascular	Sudden	No H/A = occlusive H/A = hemorrhagic
Metabolic	Hours to days	Affects entire CNS
Infectious	Days to weeks	Often a source of infection on history
Tumor	Months	Increased ICP: Initially → H/A <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Constant • Progressive • Severe • Worse in morning As ICP increases: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Blurry vision • Projectile vomiting Severely raised ICP: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cushing's reflex <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bradycardia • HTN • Respiratory changes

Table 2. Consequences of Common Brain Lesions

Location of Lesion	Consequence
Frontal lobe	1. Disinhibition 2. Concentration deficits 3. Orientation deficits 4. Judgment deficits 5. ± Primitive reflex re-emergence 6. ± Contralateral motor deficits if motor cortex involved
Broca's area (inferior frontal gyrus of dominant hemisphere)	1. Non-fluent aphasia 2. Repetition impaired 3. Comprehension relatively spared
Wernicke's area (superior temporal gyrus of dominant hemisphere)	1. Fluent aphasia 2. Repetition impaired 3. Comprehension markedly impaired
Occipital lobe	Contralateral visual field deficits
Right parietal lobe	Hemispatial neglect syndrome <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Contralateral agnosia
Basal ganglia	1. Rest tremor 2. Chorea 3. Athetosis
Subthalamic nucleus	Contralateral hemiballismus
Mammillary bodies (bilateral)	Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Wernicke <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confusion • Ophthalmoplegia • Ataxia 2. Korsakoff <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anterograde amnesia • Confabulation • Personality changes
Hippocampus	Anterograde amnesia
Reticular activating system (midbrain)	Reduced levels of arousal and wakefulness
Paramedian pontine reticular formation	Gaze deviation away from side of lesion
Frontal eye fields	Gaze deviation toward side of lesion
Cerebellar hemisphere	1. Intention tremor 2. Limb ataxia 3. Fall towards side of lesion
Cerebellar vermis	1. Truncal ataxia 2. Dysarthria

ICP/Volume Relationship

- adult skull is rigid with a constant intracranial volume
- contents (CSF, blood, brain) are incompressible
- increase in one constituent/space-occupying lesion = 1) increase in ICP, 2) require redistribution of CSF, blood, or brain
- however, ICP does not rise initially due to compensatory mechanisms
 - **immediate:** displacement of CSF to lumbar theca, displacement of blood from venous sinuses
 - **delayed:** displacement of ECF or ICF, displacement of brain tissue into compartments under less pressure (herniation)
- once compensation is exhausted, ICP rises exponentially

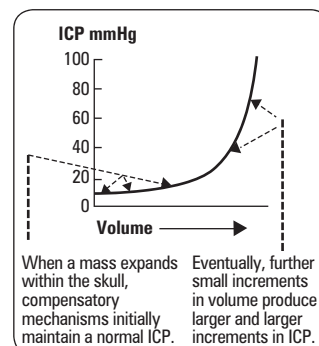


Figure 4. ICP-volume curve

Adapted from: Lindsay KW, et al. Neurology and neurosurgery illustrated. © 2004. With permission from Elsevier



$$\text{CBF} = \text{CPP} / \text{CVR}$$

$$\text{CPP} = \text{MAP} - \text{ICP}$$

Cerebral Blood Flow

- brain receives about 15% of cardiac output (~750 mL/min)
- CBF depends on cerebral perfusion pressure (CPP) and cerebral vascular resistance (CVR)
- normal CPP >50 mmHg in adults
- cerebral autoregulation maintains constant CBF by compensating for changes in CPP, unless:
 - high ICP such that CPP <60 mmHg
 - MAP >150 mmHg or MAP <50 mmHg
 - brain injury: e.g. SAH, severe trauma

ICP Measurement

- normal ICP <15 mmHg (8-18 cmH₂O) for adult, 3-7 mmHg (4-9.5 cmH₂O) for child; varies with patient position
 - moderate elevation: increase in mean pressure >20 mmHg
 - severe elevation: increase in mean pressure >40 mmHg
- waveform: comprised of respiratory and cardiac pulsations (Traube-Hering waves); the amplitude increases with ICP
 - β -waves: coarse, variably increased amplitude, frequency 1/2-2/min, often related to respiration
 - plateau waves: elevation of ICP over 50 mmHg lasting 5-20 min, precursor of further deterioration

Acute Monitoring

- lumbar puncture (LP)
- intraventricular catheter/ventriculostomy/external ventricular drain (EVD) ("gold standard", also permits therapeutic drainage of CSF to decrease ICP)

Chronic Monitoring

- fiberoptic monitor (intraventricular, intraparenchymal, subdural), subarachnoid bolt (Richmond screw), and epidural monitor

Elevated ICP

Etiology

- intracranial space-occupying lesion
 - tumor
 - pus
 - blood (trauma → hematoma [most common], subarachnoid hemorrhage)
 - depressed skull fracture
 - foreign body
- increased intracranial blood volume
 - vasodilatation (increased pCO₂/decreased pO₂/decreased extracellular pH, e.g. hypoventilation)
 - venous outflow obstruction (venous sinus thrombosis, superior vena cava syndrome, space-occupying lesion)
 - cranial dependency
- cerebral edema
 - vasogenic (vessel damage, e.g. hypertensive encephalopathy, tumor)
 - cytotoxic (tissue/cell death, e.g. hypoxia, brain injury)
 - osmotic (acute hyponatremia, hepatic encephalopathy)

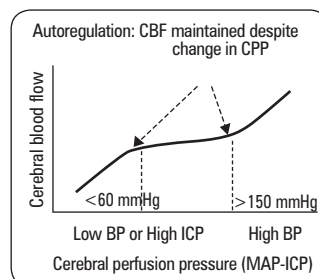


Figure 5. Cerebral autoregulation curve

Adapted from: Lindsay KW, et al. Neurology and neurosurgery illustrated. © 2004. With permission from Elsevier



Consider Monitoring of ICP in the Following Situations

- Patients with an abnormal head CT and GCS score of 3-8 after cardiopulmonary resuscitation
- Or
- Patients with a normal head CT and GCS score of 3 to 8 AND the presence of two or more of the following:
 - Age >40 yr
 - Unilateral or bilateral motor posturing
 - sBP <90 mmHg
- Post-operative monitoring
- Investigation of NPH



Lumbar puncture is contraindicated with known/suspected intracranial mass

- hydrocephalus
 - obstructive: acquired aqueductal stenosis
 - non-obstructive: decreased CSF absorption with SAH
- pseudotumor cerebri (idiopathic intracranial HTN)
- impaired autoregulation (hypotension, HTN, brain injury)
- status epilepticus (chronic seizure resulting in brain edema)

Clinical Features

1. Acute Elevated ICP

- H/A: worse in the morning, aggravated by stooping, and bending
- N/V
- decreased LOC if ICP = dBP, or midbrain compressed
- drop in GCS = best index to monitor progress and predict outcome of acute intracranial process (see *Neurotrauma*, NS29)
- papilledema ± retinal hemorrhages (may take 24-48 h to develop)
- abnormal extra-ocular movements (EOM):
 - CN VI palsy: often falsely localizing (causative mass may be remote from nerve)
 - upward gaze palsy (especially in children with obstructive hydrocephalus)
- herniation syndromes
- focal signs/symptoms due to lesion

2. Chronic Elevated ICP

- H/A
 - postural: worsened by coughing, straining, and bending over
 - morning/evening H/A → vasodilatation due to increased CO₂ with recumbency
- visual changes
 - due to papilledema
 - enlarged blind spot, if advanced → episodic constrictions of visual fields ("gray-outs")
 - optic atrophy/blindness
 - differentiate from papillitis (usually unilateral with decreased visual acuity)
- decreased level of consciousness

Investigations

- patients with suspected elevated ICP require an urgent CT/MRI
- ICP monitoring where appropriate



Blood Brain Barrier

Glucose and amino acids cross slowly
Non-polar/lipids cross fast



Blood Brain Barrier

Infarction/neoplasm → destroy tight junctions → vasogenic edema



Cushing's Triad of Acute Raised ICP (full triad seen in 1/3 of cases)

- HTN
- Bradycardia (late finding)
- Irregular respiratory pattern



Papilledema

- Optic disc swelling with blurred margins (most commonly bilateral)
- Larger blind spot

Herniation Syndromes

Table 3. Herniation Syndromes

Herniation Syndrome	Definition	Etiology	Clinical Features
1. Subfalcine	Cingulate gyrus herniates under falx	• Lateral supratentorial lesion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Usually asymptomatic • Warns of impending transtentorial herniation • Risk of ACA compression
2. Central Tentorial (Axial)	Displacement of diencephalon through tentorial notch	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Supratentorial midline lesion • Diffuse cerebral swelling • Late uncal herniation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small pupils, moderately dilated, fixed (rostral to caudal deterioration), sequential failure of diencephalon, medulla • Decreased LOC (midbrain compression), EOM/upward gaze impairment ("sunset eyes"): compression of pretectum and superior colliculi • Brainstem hemorrhage ("Duret's" – secondary to shearing of basilar artery perforating vessels) • Diabetes insipidus (traction on pituitary stalk and hypothalamus), end-stage sign
3. Lateral Tentorial (Uncal)	Uncus of temporal lobe herniates down through tentorial notch	• Lateral supratentorial lesion (often rapidly expanding traumatic hematoma)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ipsilateral non-reactive dilated pupil (earliest, most reliable sign) + ipsilateral EOM paralysis, ptosis (CN III compression) • Decreased LOC (midbrain compression) • Contralateral hemiplegia ± extensor (upgoing) plantar response ± ipsilateral hemiplegia ("Kernohan's notch" – a false localizing sign resulting from pressure from the edge of the tentorium on the contralateral cerebral peduncle)
4. Upward	Cerebellar vermis herniates through tentorial incisura	• Large posterior fossa mass (common after VP shunting)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cerebellar infarct (superior cerebellar artery [SCA] compression) • Hydrocephalus (cerebral aqueduct compression)
5. Tonsillar	Cerebellar tonsils herniate through foramen magnum	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infratentorial lesion • Following central tentorial herniation • Following LP in presence of intracranial mass lesion 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Neck stiffness and head tilt (tonsillar impaction) • Decreased LOC (midbrain compression) • Flaccid paralysis • Respiratory irregularities, respiratory arrest (compression of medullary respiratory centers) • Blood pressure instability (compression of medullary cardiovascular centers)

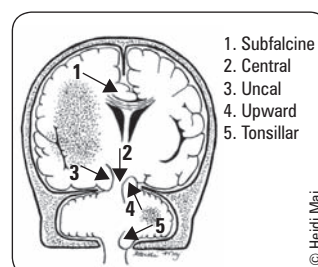


Figure 6. Herniation types

© Heidi Maj

Treatment of Elevated ICP

- CT or MRI to identify etiology, assess for midline shift/herniation
- treat primary cause (i.e. remove mass lesions, ensure adequate ventilation)
- if elevated ICP persists following treatment of primary cause, consider therapy when ICP >20 mmHg
- goals: keep ICP <20 mmHg, CPP >65 mmHg, MAP >90 mmHg

Conservative Measures

- elevate head of bed at 30°, maintain neck in neutral position → increases intracranial venous outflow with minimal effect on arterial pressure
- prevent hypotension with fluid and vasopressors, dopamine, norepinephrine prn
- ventilate to normocarbica ($p\text{CO}_2$ 35-40 mmHg) → prevents vasodilatation
- oxygen to maintain $p\text{O}_2$ >60 mmHg → prevents hypoxic brain injury
- osmolar diuresis (mannitol 20% IV solution 1-1.5 g/kg, then 0.25 g/kg q6h to serum osmolality of 315-320)
 - can give rapidly, acts in 15-30 min, must maintain sBP >90 mmHg
- corticosteroids → decrease edema over subsequent days around brain tumor, abscess, blood
 - no proven value in head injury or stroke

Aggressive Measures

- sedation ("light" e.g. barbiturates/codeine → "heavy" e.g. fentanyl/MgSO₄)
- paralysis with vecuronium → reduces sympathetic tone, reduces HTN induced by muscle contraction
- hyperventilate to $p\text{CO}_2$ 30-35 mmHg
 - use for brief periods only – also results in decreased cerebral blood flow
- drain 3-5 mL CSF via ventricles, assess each situation independently
- insert EVD (if acute) or shunt
- barbiturate-induced coma induced with pentobarbital to reduce cerebral blood flow and metabolism (10 mg/kg over 30 min, then 1 mg/kg q1h continuous infusion)
 - decreases mortality, but no improvement in neurological outcome
- decompressive craniectomy is a last resort
- no role for the use of hypothermia in head injury



Treatment of Elevated ICP:

ICP HEAD

Intubate
Calm (sedate)/Coma
Place drain/Paralysis

Hyperventilate
Elevate head
Adequate BP
Diuretic (mannitol)

Hydrocephalus

- hydrocephalus in children, see *Pediatric Neurosurgery*, NS36

Definition

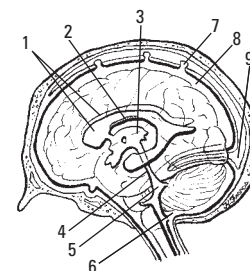
- accumulation of excess CSF in the brain
- CSF: produced by choroid plexus lateral ventricles
- total volume ~120 mL, including 30 cc within ventricular system, remainder in SA space
- flow: lateral ventricle → 3rd ventricle → cerebral aqueduct → 4th ventricle → subarachnoid space
- re-absorbed by arachnoid villi into dural venous sinuses

Etiology

- congenital vs. acquired
- obstruction to CSF flow
- decreased CSF absorption
- increased CSF production (rarely) – e.g. choroid plexus papilloma (0.4-1% of intracranial tumors)

Epidemiology

- estimated prevalence 1-1.5%; incidence of congenital hydrocephalus ~1-2/1,000 live births



1. Lateral ventricles
2. Choroid plexus
3. Third ventricle
4. Cerebral aqueduct (of Sylvius)
5. Fourth ventricle
6. Foramina of Luschka and Magendie
7. Arachnoid granulations
8. Subarachnoid space
9. Superior sagittal sinus

© Kari Francis 2004

Figure 7. The flow of CSF

Classification

Table 4. Classification of Hydrocephalus

Disorder	Definition	Etiology	Findings on CT/MRI
Obstructive (Non-Communicating) Hydrocephalus	Circulation blocked within ventricular system proximal to the arachnoid granulations	Acquired <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aqueductal stenosis (adhesions following infection, hemorrhage) Intraventricular lesions (tumors e.g. 3rd ventricle colloid cyst, hematoma) Mass causing tentorial herniation, aqueduct/4th ventricle compression Others: neurosarcooidosis, abscess/granulomas, arachnoid cysts Congenital <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aqueductal stenosis, Dandy-Walker malformation, Chiari malformation (see <i>Pediatric Neurosurgery</i>, NS34) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ventricular enlargement proximal to block Periventricular hypodensity (transependymal migration of CSF forced into extracellular space) Sulcal effacement
Non-Obstructive (Communicating) Hydrocephalus	CSF absorption blocked at extraventricular site = arachnoid granulations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Post-infectious (#1 cause) meningitis, cysticercosis Post-hemorrhagic (#2 cause) → SAH, IVH, traumatic Choroid plexus papilloma (rare, causes increased CSF production) Idiopathic → normal pressure hydrocephalus 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All ventricles dilated
Normal Pressure Hydrocephalus (NPH)	Persistent ventricular dilatation in the context of normal CSF pressure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Idiopathic (50%) Others: subarachnoid hemorrhage, meningitis, trauma, radiation-induced 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enlarged ventricles without increased prominence of cerebral sulci
Hydrocephalus Ex Vacuo	Ventricular enlargement resulting from atrophy of surrounding brain tissue	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Normal aging Alzheimer's, Creutzfeldt-Jacob Disease 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enlarged ventricles and sulci Cerebral atrophy



CSF produced by choroid plexus, flows to: ventricles → foramina of Luschka (lateral) and Magendie (medial) → subarachnoid space → absorbed by arachnoid villi/granulations into venous sinuses

CSF production = CSF reabsorption = ~500 mL/d in normal adults
Normal CSF volume ~150 mL (50% spinal, 50% intracranial → 25 mL intraventricular, 50 mL subarachnoid)

Clinical Features

- acute hydrocephalus
 - signs and symptoms of acute elevated ICP (see *Elevated ICP*, NS5)
 - impaired upward gaze ("sunset eyes") and/or CN VI palsy
- chronic/gradual onset hydrocephalus (i.e. NPH)
 - gradual onset of classic triad developing over weeks or months
 - pressure of ventricle on lower extremity motor fibers → gait disturbance (ataxia and apraxia usually initial symptoms)
 - pressure on cortical bowel/bladder center → urinary incontinence
 - pressure on frontal lobes → dementia
 - CSF pressure can be measured within clinically "normal" range

Investigations

- CT/MRI (periventricular lucency suggests raised CSF pressure)
- ultrasound (through anterior fontanelle in infants)
- ICP monitoring (e.g. LP) may be used to investigate NPH, test response to shunting (lumbar tap test)
- radionuclide cisternography can test CSF flow and absorption rate (unreliable)
- β-2 transferrin assay to test for the presence of CSF leak

Treatment

- ventricular drainage
- surgical removal of obstruction (if possible) or excision of choroid plexus papilloma
- shunts
 - ventriculoperitoneal (VP): most common
 - ventriculopleural
 - ventriculo-atrial (VA): relatively increased risk of infections, shunt emboli
 - lumboperitoneal: for communicating hydrocephalus and pseudotumor cerebri
- third ventriculostomy (for obstructive hydrocephalus) via ventriculoscopy
- LPs for transient hydrocephalus (e.g. SAH), IVH in premature infants, etc.



Classic Triad of NPH Progression

AID

Ataxia/Apraxia of gait
Incontinence
Dementia

Shunt Complications

Table 5. Shunt Complications

Complication	Etiology	Clinical Features	Investigations
Obstruction (most common)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Obstruction by choroid plexus Buildup of proteinaceous accretions, blood, cells (inflammatory or tumor) Infection Disconnection or damage 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acute hydrocephalus Increased ICP 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Shunt series" (plain x-rays of entire shunt that only rule-out disconnection, break, tip migration) CT Radionuclide "shuntogram"
Infection (3-6%)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>S. epidermidis</i> <i>S. aureus</i> <i>P. acnes</i> Gram-negative bacilli 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Fever, N/V, anorexia, irritability Meningitis Peritonitis Signs and symptoms of shunt obstruction Shunt nephritis (VA shunt) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CBC Blood culture Tap shunt for C&S (LP usually NOT recommended)
Overshunting (10% over 6.5 yr)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Slit ventricle syndrome, collapse of ventricles leading to occlusion of shunt ports by ependymal lining Subdural hematoma Collapsing brain tears bridging veins (especially common in NPH patients) Secondary craniostylosis (children): apposition and overlapping of the cranial sutures in an infant following decompression of hydrocephalus 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chronic or recurring H/A often relieved when lying down Asymptomatic H/A, vomiting, somnolence Abnormal head shape 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CT/MRI Slit-like ventricles on imaging CT Clinical CT
Seizures (5.5% risk in 1st yr, 1.1% after 3rd yr)			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> EEG
Inguinal Hernia (17% incidence with VP shunt inserted in infancy) ± skin breakdown over hardware	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Increased intraperitoneal pressure/fluid results in hernia becoming apparent 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Inguinal swelling, discomfort 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> U/S

Idiopathic Intracranial Hypertension (Pseudotumor Cerebri)



Definition

- raised intracranial pressure and papilledema without evidence of any mass lesion, hydrocephalus, infection, or hypertensive encephalopathy (diagnosis of exclusion)

Etiology

- unknown (majority), but associated with
 - lateral venous sinus thrombosis
 - habitus/diet: obesity, hyper/hypovitaminosis A
 - endocrine: reproductive age, menstrual irregularities, Addison's/Cushing's disease, thyroid irregularities
 - hematological: iron deficiency anemia, polycythemia vera
 - drugs: steroid administration or withdrawal, tetracycline, nalidixic acid, etc.
- risk factors overlap with those of venous sinus thrombosis; similar to those for gallstones ("fat, female, fertile, forties")

Epidemiology

- incidence ~0.5/100,000 per year
- usually in 3rd and 4th decade (F>M)

Clinical Features

- symptoms and signs of raised ICP (H/A in >90%, pulsatile intracranial noise), but no LOC or diplopia
- decreased visual acuity, papilledema, visual field defect, optic atrophy (key morbidity)
- usually self-limited, recurrence is common, chronic in some patients
- risk of blindness is not reliably correlated to symptoms or clinical course



Important Features to Note on CT and MRI (± contrast enhancement)

- Lesions (± edema, necrosis, hemorrhage)
- Midline shifts and herniations
- Effacement of ventricles and sulci (often ipsilateral), basal cisterns
- Single or multiple (multiple implies metastasis)

Investigations

- CT: normal
- CSF studies: normal
- MRI: must look for venous sinus thrombosis

Treatment

- rule out conditions that cause intracranial HTN (especially sinus thrombosis)
- discontinue offending medications, encourage weight loss, fluid/salt restriction
- pharmacotherapy: acetazolamide (decreases CSF production), thiazide diuretic, or furosemide
- if above fail: serial LPs, shunt
- optic nerve sheath decompression (if progressive impairment of visual acuity)
- 2 yr follow-up with imaging to rule out occult tumor, ophthalmology follow-up

Tumors

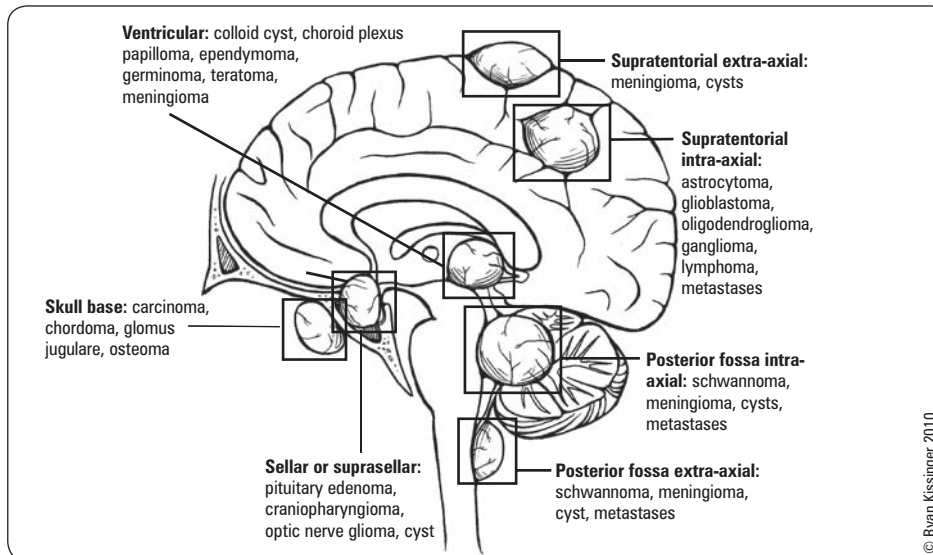


Figure 8. Tumors

Classification

- primary vs. metastatic, intra-axial (parenchymal) vs. extra-axial, supratentorial vs. infratentorial, adult vs. pediatric
- benign: non-invasive, but can be devastating due to expansion of mass in fixed volume of skull (mass effect)
- malignant: implies rapid growth, invasiveness, but rarely extracranial metastasis
- types of intracranial tumors (* = most common)
 - neuroepithelial tissue
 - ♦ astrocytic tumors: astrocytoma, glioblastoma
 - ♦ oligodendroglial tumors
 - ♦ oligoastrocytic tumors
 - ♦ neuronal and mixed neuronal-glial tumors: ganglion cell tumors, cerebral neurocytomas/neuroblastomas
 - ♦ embryonal tumors: medulloblastoma, neuroectodermal
 - ♦ other: pineal, ependymal, and choroid plexus tumors
 - meningeal: meningiomas*, mesenchymal, hemangioblastomas
 - cranial and paraspinal nerves: schwannoma, neurofibroma
 - lymphomas and hematopoietic neoplasms
 - germ cell: germinomas, teratomas
 - pituitary adenomas*
 - sellar region: craniopharyngiomas, spindle cell oncocytoma
 - cysts: epidermoid/dermoid cysts, colloid cysts
 - local extension: chordomas, glomus jugulare tumors
 - metastatic tumors

Clinical Features

- supratentorial lesions
 - progressive neurological deficit (70%)
 - ♦ frontal lobe: hemiparesis, dysphasia, personality changes, cognitive changes
 - ♦ temporal lobe: auditory/olfactory hallucinations, memory deficits, contralateral superior quadrantanopsia



DDx for Ring Enhancing Lesion on CT with Contrast

MAGICAL DR

Metastases*
Abscess*
Glioblastoma (high grade astrocytoma)*
Infarct
Contusion
AIDS (toxoplasmosis)
Lymphoma
Demyelination
Resolving hematoma
(*3 most common diagnoses)



Primary Sources of Metastatic Brain Tumors

Lung	44%
Breast	10%
Kidney (RCC)	7%
GI	6%
Melanoma	3%



Primary CNS lymphoma reported in 6-20% of HIV infected patients



Brain Metastasis

~1/3 of all adult brain tumors
Well circumscribed, often at gray-white matter junction



Primary Brain Tumors

- Rarely undergo metastasis
- Adults = mostly supratentorial
- Children = mostly infratentorial

- parietal lobe: contralateral sensory or motor impairment, apraxia
- occipital lobe: contralateral visual field deficits, alexia
- H/A (50%) ± symptoms of elevated ICP (N/V, papilledema)
- seizures (25%)
- symptoms suggestive of TIA (ictal, post-ictal, occlusion of vessel by tumor cells or 2° to “steal phenomenon”)
- endocrine disturbances with pituitary tumors
- rarely presents with hemorrhage
- **infratentorial lesions**
 - most commonly presents with signs of elevated ICP
 - ♦ H/A
 - ♦ N/V
 - ♦ papilledema
 - diplopia (direct compression CN VI vs. indirect compression from increased ICP)
 - vertigo
 - ataxia (due to cerebellar lesions)
- **familial syndromes associated with CNS tumors**
 - von Hippel-Lindau (hemangioblastoma of brain, spinal cord, and eye)
 - tuberous sclerosis (giant cell astrocytoma, cortical tubers, and subependymal nodules)
 - neurofibromatosis type 1 and 2 (astrocytoma, acoustic neuroma respectively)
 - Li-Fraumeni (astrocytoma)
 - Turcot syndrome (glioblastoma multiforme)
 - multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1 (MEN-1) (pituitary adenoma)

Investigations

- CT, MRI, stereotactic biopsy (tissue diagnosis), metastatic workup

Treatment

- conservative: serial Hx, Px, imaging for slow growing/benign lesions
- medical: corticosteroids to reduce cytotoxic cerebral edema, pharmacological (see *Pituitary Adenoma*, NS13)
- surgical: total or partial excision (decompressive, palliative), shunt if hydrocephalus
- radiotherapy: conventional fractionated radiotherapy (XRT), stereotactic radiosurgery (e.g. Gamma Knife®)
- chemotherapy: e.g. alkylating agents (temozolomide)

Table 6. Tumor Types: Age, Location

Age	Supratentorial	Infratentorial (posterior fossa)
<15 yr	Astrocytoma (all grades) (50%) Craniopharyngioma (2-5%) Others: pineal region tumors, choroid plexus tumors, ganglioglioma, DNET	Medulloblastoma (15-20%) Cerebellar astrocytoma (15%) Ependymoma (9%) Brainstem astrocytoma
>15 yr	High grade astrocytoma (12-15%, e.g. GBM) Metastasis (15-30%, includes infratentorial) Meningioma (15-20%) Low grade astrocytoma (8%) Pituitary adenoma (5-8%) Oligodendroglioma (5%) Other: colloid cyst, CNS lymphoma, dermoid/epidermoid cysts	Metastasis Acoustic neuroma (schwannoma) (5-10%) Hemangioblastoma (2%) Meningioma



Guideline on the Management of Newly Diagnosed Brain Metastasis(es) (American Society for Radiation Oncology)

Pract Radiat Oncol 2012;2:210-225

Prognostic Factors

Three prognostic groups based on 1,200 patients:

Class I – Karnofsky performance status (KPS) ≥70 yr, <65 yr with controlled primary (3-mo stability on imaging or newly diagnosed), no extracranial metastases (median survival 7.1 mo).

Class II – everything else (median survival 4.2 mo).

Class III – KPS <70 (median survival 2.3 mo).

Summary of Evidence for Single and Multiple Brain Metastasis(es)

1) For patients with good performance status (e.g. KPS ≥70), limited extracranial disease and resectable metastasis, complete resection improves the probability of extended survival. WBRT in addition to resection improves local and overall brain control but does not affect overall survival or duration of functional independence.

2) For patients with a good prognosis (>3 mo expected survival), single brain metastases <4 cm in size, good performance status, and controlled extracranial disease, the addition of radiosurgery to WBRT improves survival when compared with WBRT alone.

3) In patients with a good prognosis and up to 4 brain metastases <4 cm in size, radiosurgery added to WBRT improves lesion site and overall brain control compared with WBRT alone, but does not influence survival. Therefore, WBRT alone may be considered in these patients.

4) The use of radiosurgery boost to WBRT may improve KPS and decrease the need for steroids at 6 mo in patients with up to 3 brain metastases.

5) For selected patients with poor life expectancy (<3 mo), the use of WBRT may or may not significantly improve symptoms from brain metastases. Comfort measures, or short course (20 Gy in 5 daily fractions) WBRT are reasonable options.

6) There is no evidence of a survival benefit with the combined use of radiosensitizers with WBRT.

7) Although chemotherapy trials have reported improved response rates with combined chemotherapy and WBRT, the addition of chemotherapy leads to increased toxicity and does not improve survival. The routine use of chemotherapy in the management of brain metastases is not generally recommended.

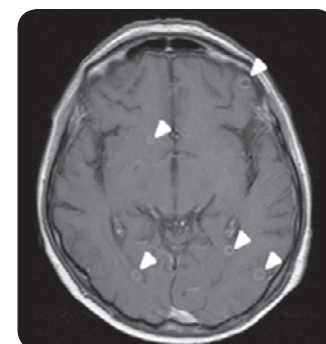


Figure 9. Multiple brain metastases (see arrows)

Metastatic Tumors

- most common brain tumor seen clinically
- 15-30% of cancer patients present with cerebral metastatic tumors
 - most common sources: lungs, breast
 - other sources: kidney, thyroid, stomach, prostate, testis, melanoma
- hematogenous spread most common

Location

- 80% are hemispheric, often at gray-white matter junction or junction of temporal-parietal-occipital lobes (likely emboli spreading to terminal MCA branches)

Investigations

- identify primary tumor
 - metastatic workup (CXR, CT chest/abdo, abdominal U/S, bone scan, mammogram)
- CT with contrast → round, well-circumscribed, often ring enhancing, ++ edema, often multiple
- MRI more sensitive, especially for posterior fossa
- consider biopsy in unusual cases, or if no primary identified

Treatment

- medical
 - phenytoin (or levetiracetam) for seizure prophylaxis if patient presents with seizure
 - dexamethasone to reduce edema given with ranitidine
 - chemotherapy (e.g. small cell lung cancer)
- radiation
 - stereotactic radiosurgery: for discrete, deep-seated/inoperable tumors
 - multiple lesions: use WBRT; consider stereotactic radiosurgery if <3 lesions
 - post-operative WBRT is commonly used
- surgical
 - single/solitary lesions: use surgery + radiation

Prognosis

- median survival without treatment once symptomatic is ~1 mo, with optimal treatment 6-9 mo but varies depending on primary tumor type

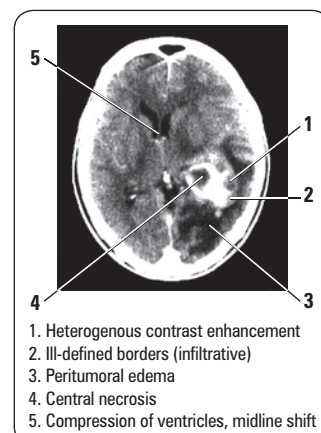


Figure 10. High grade astrocytoma on CT

Astrocytoma

- most common primary intra-axial brain tumor, common in 4th-6th decades

Table 7. Astrocytoma Grading System

World Health Organization (WHO)	Typical CT/MRI Findings	Survival
I – Pilocytic astrocytoma	± mass effect, ± enhancement	> 10 yr, cure if gross total resection
II – Low grade/diffuse	Mass effect, no enhancement	5 yr
III – Anaplastic	Complex enhancement	1.5-2 yr
IV – Glioblastoma multiforme (GBM)	Necrosis (ring enhancement)	12 mo, 10% at 2 yr

Clinical Features

- sites: cerebral hemispheres >> cerebellum, brainstem, spinal cord
- symptoms: recent onset of new/worsening H/A, N/V, seizure, ± focal deficits or symptoms of increased ICP

Investigations

- CT/MRI with contrast: variable appearance depending on grade (see Table 8)
 - hypodense on CT, hypointense on T1 MRI, hyperintense on T2 MRI
 - low grade: most do not enhance and have calcification on CT
 - high grade: most enhance with CT contrast dye/gadolinium
- tissue biopsy: WHO grade and histology correlates with prognosis, but 25% chance of sampling error due to tumor heterogeneity

Treatment

- low grade diffuse astrocytoma
 - close follow-up, radiation, chemotherapy, and surgery all valid options
 - surgery: not curative, trend towards better outcomes
 - radiotherapy alone or post-operative prolongs survival (retrospective evidence)
 - chemotherapy: usually reserved for tumor progression
- high grade astrocytomas (anaplastic astrocytoma and GBM)
 - surgery
 - ♦ gross total resection: maximal safe resection + fractionated radiation with 2 cm margin + concomitant and adjuvant temozolomide
 - except: extensive dominant lobe GBM, significant bilateral involvement, end-of-life near, extensive brainstem involvement
 - ♦ stereotactic biopsy if resection not possible, followed by fractionated radiation with 2 cm margin
 - expectant (based on functional impairment – Karnofsky score <70; patient's/family's wishes)
 - aim to prolong "quality" survival
 - chemotherapy: ~20% response rate, temozolomide (agent of choice); better response to temozolomide predicted by MGMT gene hypermethylation
- multiple gliomas: WBRT ± chemotherapy



Bevacizumab Plus Radiotherapy-Temozolamide for Newly Diagnosed Glioblastoma

NEJM 2014;370:709-722

Purpose: To evaluate the effect of combined bevacizumab and radiotherapy-temozolamide in the treatment of newly diagnosed glioblastoma.

Study: Patients with supratentorial glioblastoma randomly assigned to receive intravenous bevacizumab or placebo plus radiotherapy and oral temozolamide for 30 wk total in cycles, followed by bevacizumab or placebo monotherapy. Outcomes were progression-free survival and overall survival.

Results: 458 patients in bevacizumab group, 463 patients in placebo. The median progression-free survival was longer in the bevacizumab group compared with placebo (10.6 mo vs. 6.2 mo, HR 0.64, 95% CI 0.55-0.74), although overall survival did not differ significantly between groups (HR 0.88, 95% CI 0.76-1.02). Baseline health-related QOL and performance status were maintained longer in the bevacizumab group although there was a higher frequency of adverse events.

Conclusions: The addition of bevacizumab to radiotherapy-temozolamide improves progression-free survival but not overall survival in patients with glioblastoma.



Meningioma

- most common *primary* intracranial tumor, arise from arachnoid membrane
- often calcified, cause hyperostosis of adjacent bone
- classically see Psammoma bodies on histology
- common locations: parasagittal convexity or falx (70%), sphenoid wing, tuberculum sellae, foramen magnum, olfactory groove

Clinical Features

- middle aged, slight female preponderance (M:F = 2:3), high progesterone receptors (increase in size with pregnancy), symptoms of increased ICP, focal deficits, usually solitary (10% multiple, likely with loss of NF2 gene/22q12 deletion)

Investigations

- CT with contrast: homogeneous, densely enhancing, along dural border ("dural tail"), well circumscribed
- contrast enhanced MRI provides better detail
- angiography
 - most are supplied by external carotid feeders (meningeal vessels)
 - also assesses venous sinus involvement, "tumor blush" commonly seen (prolonged contrast image)
- octreotide scintigraphy: to establish if expression of somatostatin receptor

Treatment

- conservative management for non-progressive, asymptomatic lesions
- surgery is treatment of choice if symptomatic or progression on sequential imaging (curative if complete resection)
- SRS may be an option for lesions <3 cm
- endovascular embolization to facilitate surgery
- SRS or XRT for recurrent atypical/malignant meningiomas

Prognosis

- >90% 5 yr survival, recurrence rate variable (often ~10-20%)
- depends on extent of resection (Simpson's classification)



WHO Classification of Meningioma (by histology)

- Grade 1: low risk of recurrence
- Grade 2: intermediate risk of recurrence
- Grade 3: high risk of recurrence

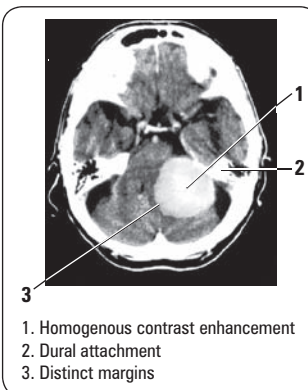


Figure 11. Meningioma on CT



Progressive unilateral or asymmetrical sensorineural hearing loss = acoustic neuroma until proven otherwise

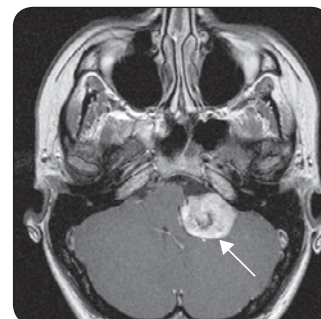


Figure 12. Vestibular schwannoma (tumor in cerebello-pontine angle)

Vestibular Schwannoma (Acoustic Neuroma)

- slow-growing (average of 1-10 mm/yr), benign posterior fossa tumor
- arises from vestibular component of CN VIII in internal auditory canal, expanding into bony canal and cerebello-pontine angle (CPA)
- if bilateral, diagnostic of neurofibromatosis type II
- epidemiology: all age groups affected, peaks at 4th-6th decades

Clinical Features

- compression of structures in CPA, often CN VIII (unilateral hearing loss 98%, tinnitus, disequilibrium), followed by CN V and VII
- ataxia and raised ICP are late features

Investigations

- MRI with gadolinium or T2 FIESTA sequence (>98% sensitive/specific), CT with contrast 2nd choice
- audiogram, brainstem auditory evoked potentials, caloric tests

Treatment

- conservative: serial imaging (CT/MRI q6mo) and audiometry
- radiation: stereotactic radiosurgery or fractionated radiotherapy
- surgery if: lesion >3 cm, brainstem compression, edema, hydrocephalus
 - curable if complete resection (almost always possible)
 - operative complications: CN VII, VIII dysfunction (only significant disability if bilateral), CSF leak

Pituitary Adenoma

- primarily from anterior pituitary, 3rd-4th decades, M=F
- incidence in autopsy studies approximately 20%
- classification
 - microadenoma <1 cm; macroadenoma ≥1 cm
 - endocrine active (functional/secretory) vs. inactive (non-functional)
 - ♦ most common functional: prolactinomas, adrenocorticotrophic, growth-hormone producing
- differential: parasellar tumors (e.g. craniopharyngioma, tuberculum sellae meningioma), carotid aneurysm

Clinical Features

- mass effects
 - H/A
 - bitemporal hemianopsia (compression of optic chiasm)
 - CN III, IV, V₁, V₂, VI palsy (compression of cavernous sinus)
- endocrine effects
 - hyperprolactinemia (prolactinoma): infertility, amenorrhea, galactorrhea, decreased libido
 - ACTH production: Cushing's disease, hyperpigmentation
 - GH production: acromegaly/gigantism
 - panhypopituitarism (hypothyroidism, hypoadrenalism, hypogonadism)
 - associated MEN-1 syndrome
 - diabetes insipidus
- pituitary apoplexy (sudden expansion of mass due to hemorrhage or necrosis)
 - abrupt onset H/A, visual disturbances, ophthalmoplegia, reduced mental status, and panhypopituitarism
 - CSF rhinorrhea and seizures (rare)
 - signs and symptoms of subarachnoid hemorrhage (rare)



Go Look For The Adenoma Please – GH, LH, FSH, TSH, ACTH, Prolactin
A compressive adenoma in the pituitary will impair hormone production in this order (i.e. GH-secreting cells are most sensitive to compression)

Investigations

- formal visual fields, CN testing
- endocrine tests (prolactin level, TSH, 8 AM cortisol, fasting glucose, FSH/LH, IGF-1), electrolytes, urine electrolytes, and osmolality
- imaging (MRI with and without contrast)

Treatment

- medical
 - for apoplexy: rapid corticosteroid administration ± surgical decompression
 - for prolactinoma: dopamine agonists (e.g. bromocriptine)
 - for Cushing's: serotonin antagonist (cyproheptadine), inhibition of cortisol production (ketoconazole)
 - for acromegaly: somatostatin analogue (octreotide) ± bromocriptine
 - endocrine replacement therapy
- surgical
 - trans-sphenoidal, trans-ethmoidal, trans-cranial approaches for non-secreting adenomas causing mass effect and Cushing/acromegaly (50% cure rate)

Pus

Sources of Pus/Infection

- four routes of microbial access to CNS
 1. hematogenous spread (most common): arterial and retrograde venous
 - ♦ adults: chest is #1 source (lung abscess, bronchiectasis, empyema)
 - ♦ children: congenital cyanotic heart disease with R to L shunt
 - ♦ immunosuppression (AIDS – toxoplasmosis)
 2. direct implantation (dural disruption)
 - ♦ trauma
 - ♦ iatrogenic (e.g. following LP, post-operative)
 - ♦ congenital defect (e.g. dermal sinus)
 3. contiguous spread (adjacent infection): from air sinus, naso/oropharynx, surgical site (e.g. otitis media, mastoiditis, sinusitis, osteomyelitis, dental abscess)
 4. spread from PNS (e.g. viruses: rabies, herpes zoster)
- common examples
 - epidural abscess: in cranial and spinal epidural space, associated with osteomyelitis
 - ♦ treatment: immediate drainage and antibiotics, surgical emergency if cord compression
 - subdural empyema: bacterial/fungal infection, due to contiguous spread from bone or air sinus, progresses rapidly
 - ♦ treatment: surgical drainage and antibiotics, 20% mortality
 - meningitis, encephalitis (see [Infectious Diseases, ID19, ID20](#))
 - cerebral abscess



Cerebral Abscess

Definition

- pus in brain substance, surrounded by tissue reaction (capsule formation)

Etiology

- modes of spread: 10-60% of patients have no cause identified
- pathogens
 - *Streptococcus* (most common), often anaerobic or microaerophilic
 - *Staphylococcus* (penetrating injury)
 - Gram-negatives, anaerobes (*Bacteroides*, *Fusobacterium*)
 - in neonates: *Proteus* and *Citrobacter* (exclusively)

- immunocompromised: fungi and protozoa (*Toxoplasma*, *Nocardia*, *Candida albicans*, *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Mycobacterium*, and *Aspergillus*)

Risk Factors

- lung abnormalities (infection, AV fistulas; especially Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome [i.e. hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia])
- congenital coronary heart disease: R-to-L shunt bypasses pulmonary filtration of micro-organisms
- bacterial endocarditis
- penetrating head trauma
- immunosuppression (e.g. AIDS)
- dental abscess

Clinical Features

- focal neurological signs and symptoms
 - H/A, decreased LOC; hemiparesis and seizures in 50%
- mass effect, increased ICP and sequelae (cranial enlargement in children)
- hemiparesis and seizures in 50%
- ± signs and symptoms of systemic infection (low-grade fever, leukocytosis)

Complications

- with abscess rupture: ventriculitis, meningitis, venous sinus thrombosis
- CSF obstruction
- transtentorial herniation

Investigations

- CT scan often first test in emergency department (see Figure 13)
- MRI
 - imaging of choice
 - apparent diffusion coefficient (ADC) used to differentiate abscess (black) from tumor (white)
- WBC/ESR may be normal, blood cultures rarely helpful and LP contraindicated if large mass
- CSF: non-specific (high ICP, high WBC, high protein, normal carbohydrate), rarely helpful, usually negative culture

Treatment

- aspiration ± excision and send for Gram stain, acid fast bacillus (AFB), C&S, fungal culture
- excision preferable if location suitable
- antibiotics
 - empirically: vancomycin + ceftriaxone + metronidazole or chloramphenicol or rifampin (6-8 wk therapy)
 - revise antibiotics when C&S known
- anti-convulsants (1-2 yr)
- follow-up CT is critical (do weekly initially, more frequent if condition deteriorates)

Prognosis

- mortality with appropriate therapy ~10%, permanent deficits in ~50%

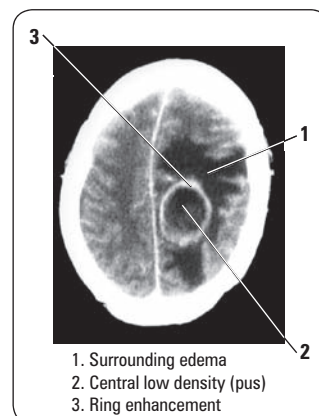


Figure 13. Cerebral abscess on CT

Blood

Table 8. Comparison of Epidemiology and Etiology of Intracranial Bleeds

Types of Hematoma/Hemorrhage	Etiology	Epidemiology	Clinical Features	CT Features	Treatment	Prognosis
Epidural Hematoma	Skull fracture causing middle meningeal bleed	M>F (4:1), associated with trauma	Lucid interval before LOC	Hyperdense lenticular mass with sharp margins, usually limited by suture lines	Craniotomy	Good with prompt management (Note: respiratory arrest can occur from uncal herniation)
Acute SDH	Ruptured subarachnoid bridging vessels	Age >50, associated with trauma	No lucid interval, hemiparesis, pupillary changes	Hyperdense crescentic mass, crossing suture lines	Craniotomy if bleed >1 cm thick	Poor
Chronic SDH	Ruptured subarachnoid bridging vessels	Age >50, EtOH abusers, anti-coagulated	Often asymptomatic, minor H/A, confusion, signs of increased ICP	Hypodense crescentic mass, crossing suture lines	Burr hole to drain; craniotomy if recurs	Good
SAH	Trauma, spontaneous (aneurysms, idiopathic, AVM)	Age 55-60 20% cases under age 45	Sudden onset thunderclap H/A, signs of increased ICP	Hyperdense blood in cisterns/fissures (sensitivity decreases over time)	Conservative: NPO, IV NS, ECG, Foley, BP 120-150, vasospasm prophylaxis (nimodipine); open vs. endovascular surgery to repair if rebleed	Poor: 50% mortality 30% of survivors have moderate to severe disability
ICH	HTN, vascular abnormality, tumors, infections, coagulopathy	Age >55, male, drug use (cocaine, EtOH, amphetamine)	TIA-like symptoms, signs of increased ICP	Hyperdense intraparenchymal collection	Medical: decrease BP, control ICP Surgical: craniotomy	Poor: 44% mortality due to cerebral herniation

Extradural ("Epidural") Hematoma



Etiology

- temporal-parietal skull fracture: 85% are due to ruptured middle meningeal artery; remainder of cases are due to bleeding from middle meningeal vein, dural sinus, or bone/diploic veins

Epidemiology

- young adult, M>F = 4:1; rare before age 2 or after age 60
- 1-4% of traumatic head injuries

Clinical Features

- classic sequence (seen in <30%): post-traumatic reduced LOC, a lucid interval of several hours, then obtundation, hemiparesis, ipsilateral pupillary dilatation, and coma
- signs and symptoms depend on severity but can include H/A, N/V, amnesia, altered LOC, aphasia, seizures, HTN, and respiratory distress
- deterioration can take hours to days

Investigations

- CT without contrast: "lenticular-shaped" usually limited by suture lines but not limited by dural attachments

Treatment

- admission, close neurological observation with serial CT indicated if all of the following are present:
 - small volume clot, minimal midline shift (MLS <5 mm), GCS >8, no focal deficit
- otherwise, craniotomy to evacuate clot, follow up CT
- mannitol pre-operative if elevated ICP or signs of brain herniation

Prognosis

- good with prompt management, as the brain is often not damaged
- worse prognosis if bilateral Babinski or decerebration pre-operative
- death is usually due to respiratory arrest from uncal herniation (injury to the midbrain)

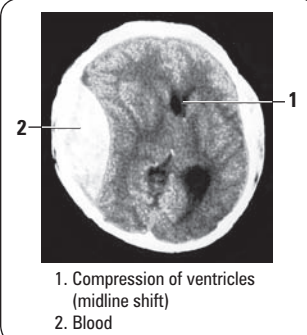


Figure 14. Extradural hematoma on CT



Poor Prognostic Indicators for Epidural Hematoma

- Older age
- Low GCS on admission
- Pupillary abnormalities (especially non-reactive)
- Longer delay in obtaining surgery (if needed)
- Post-operative elevated ICP



CT Density and MRI Appearance of Blood

Time	CT	MRI T1	MRI T2
Acute (< 72 h)	Hyper.	Gray	Black
Subacute (< 3 wk)	Iso.	White	White
Chronic (> 3 wk)	Hypo.	Black	Black

MRI-T1: "George Washington Bridge"
MRI-T2: "Oreo" cookie – Black/White/Black



Use of Drains vs. No Drains After Burr-Hole Evacuation of Chronic Subdural Hematoma: A Randomized Control Trial

Lancet 2009;374:1067-1073

Purpose: To examine the effect of drains on recurrence rates of chronic subdural hematoma (SDH), and clinical outcomes.

Study: RCT with 269 patients ≥18 yr of age with chronic SDH. Half of the patients were randomly assigned to receive a subdural drain and the other half no drain after evacuation.

Results: Recurrence occurred in 9.3% of people with a drain and 24% without ($p=0.003$; 95% CI 0.14-0.70). Although rates of complications were the same between the study groups, mortality at 6 mo was 8.6% in the group receiving a drain and 18.1% in the group not receiving a drain ($p=0.042$; 95% CI 0.1-0.99).

Conclusions: Use of drains after burr-hole drainage of chronic SDH is safe and associated with a reduced recurrence and mortality at 6 mo.

Subdural Hematoma

ACUTE SUBDURAL HEMATOMA

- 1-2 d after bleeding onset

Etiology

- rupture of vessels that bridge the subarachnoid space (e.g. cortical artery, large vein, venous sinus) or cerebral laceration

Risk Factors

- trauma, acceleration-deceleration injury, anticoagulants, alcohol, cerebral atrophy, infant head trauma (see [Pediatrics](#))

Clinical Features

- no lucid period, signs and symptoms can include altered LOC, pupillary irregularity, hemiparesis

Investigations

- CT: hyperdense concave "crescentic" mass, crossing suture lines

Treatment

- craniotomy if clinically symptomatic, if hematoma >1 cm thick, or if MLS >5 mm (optimal if surgery <4 h from onset); otherwise observe with serial imaging

Prognosis

- poor overall since the brain parenchyma is often injured (mortality range is 50-90%, due largely to underlying brain injury)
- prognostic factors: initial GCS and neurologic status, post-operative ICP

CHRONIC SUBDURAL HEMATOMA

- ≥15 d after bleeding onset

Etiology

- many start out as acute SDH
- blood within the subdural space evokes an inflammatory response:
 - fibroblast invasion of clot and formation of neomembranes within days → growth of neocapillaries → fibrinolysis and liquefaction of blood clot (forming a hygroma)
- course is determined by the balance of rebleeding from neomembranes and resorption of fluid

Risk Factors

- older, alcoholics, patients with CSF shunts, anticoagulants, coagulopathies

Clinical Features

- often due to minor injuries or no history of injury
- may present with minor H/A, confusion, language difficulties, TIA-like symptoms, symptoms of raised ICP ± seizures, progressive dementia, gait problem
- obtundation disproportionate to focal deficit; “the great imitator” of dementia, tumors

Investigations

- CT: hypodense (liquefied clot), crescentic mass

Treatment

- seizure prophylaxis only if post-traumatic seizure
- reverse coagulopathies
- burr hole drainage of liquefied clot indicated if symptomatic or thickness >1 cm; craniotomy if recurs more than twice

Prognosis

- good overall as brain usually undamaged, but may require repeat drainage

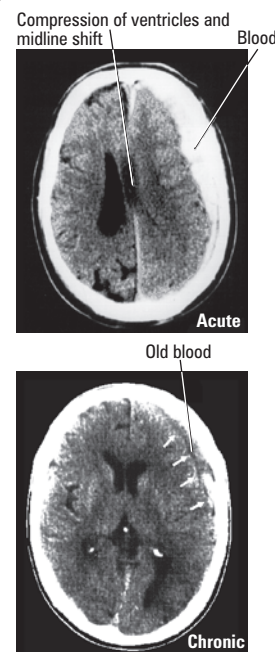


Figure 15. Subdural hematoma on CT



Hemicraniectomy in Older Patients with Extensive Middle-Cerebral-Artery Stroke

NEJM 2014;370:1091-1100

Purpose: To determine if early decompressive hemicraniectomy reduces mortality among patients >60 yr.

Study: 112 patients >60 yr (median age 70 yr) with malignant MCA infarction randomly assigned to conservative ICU treatment vs. hemicraniectomy. Endpoint was survival without severe disability (modified Rankin scale score 0-4).

Results: The proportion of patients who survived without severe disability was 38% in the hemicraniectomy group and 18% in the control group (OR 2.91, 95% CI 1.06-7.49). Modified Rankin scale scores in hemicraniectomy vs. control group in terms of percentages of patients: 0-2 (0%, 0%), 3 or moderate disability (7%, 3%), 4 or moderate severe disability (32%, 15%), 5 or severe disability (28%, 13%) and 6 or death (33%, 70%). Infections were more frequent in the hemicraniectomy group and herniation more frequent in the control group.

Conclusions: Hemicraniectomy increased survival without severe disability among patients >60 yr with a malignant MCA infarction.



Fisher Grade (SAH on CT scan)

Grade	Finding
1	Normal scan
2	<1 mm thick blood
3	>1 mm thick blood
4	SAH + ICH or IVH

Cerebrovascular Disease

Ischemic Cerebral Infarction (80%)

- embolic, thrombosis of intracerebral arteries, vasculitis, hypercoagulability, etc. (see [Neurology](#))

Intracranial Hemorrhage (20%)

- SAH, spontaneous ICH, IVH

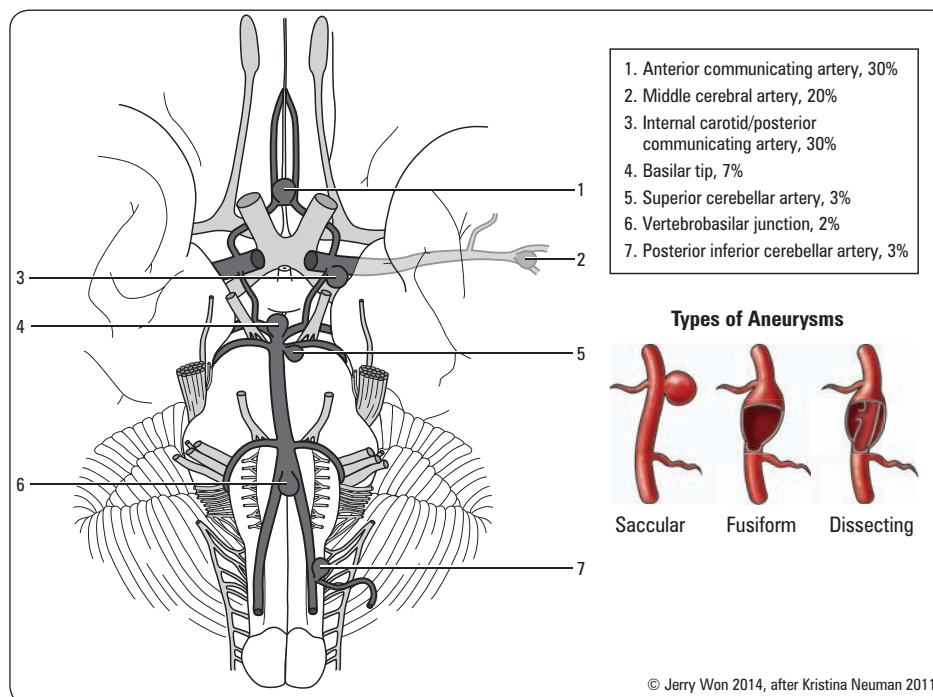


Figure 16. Aneurysms of the Circle of Willis

Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

Definition

- bleeding into subarachnoid space (intracranial vessel between arachnoid and pia)

Etiology

- trauma (most common)
- spontaneous
 - ruptured aneurysms (75-80%)
 - idiopathic (14-22%)
 - AVMs (4-5%)
- coagulopathies (iatrogenic or primary), vasculitides, tumors, cerebral artery dissections (<5%)

Epidemiology

- ~10-28/100,000 population/yr
- peak age 55-60, 20% of cases occur under age 45

Risk Factors

- HTN
- pregnancy/parturition in patients with pre-existing AVMs, eclampsia
- oral contraceptive pill
- substance abuse (cigarette smoking, cocaine, alcohol)
- conditions associated with high incidence of aneurysms (see *Intracranial Aneurysms*, NS21)

Clinical Features of Spontaneous SAH

- sudden onset (seconds) of severe "thunderclap" H/A usually following exertion and described as the "worst headache of my life" (up to 97% sensitive, 12-25% specific)
- N/V, photophobia
- meningismus (neck pain/stiffness, positive Kernig's and Brudzinski's sign)
- decreased LOC (due to either raised ICP, ischemia, seizure)
- focal deficits: cranial nerve palsies (CN III, IV), hemiparesis
- ocular hemorrhage in 20-40% (due to sudden raised ICP compressing central retinal vein)
- reactive HTN
- sentinel bleeds
 - represents undiagnosed SAH
 - SAH-like symptoms lasting <1 d ("thunderclap H/A")
 - may have blood on CT or LP
 - ~30-60% of patients with full blown SAH give history suggestive of sentinel bleed within past 3 wk
- differential diagnosis: sentinel bleed, dissection/thrombosis of aneurysm, venous sinus thrombosis, benign cerebral vasculitis, benign exertional H/A

Investigations

- non-contrast CT – for diagnosis of SAH
 - 98% sensitive within 12 h, 93% within 24 h; 100% specificity
 - may be negative if small bleed or presentation delayed several days
 - acute hydrocephalus, IVH, ICH, infarct or large aneurysm may be visible
- lumbar puncture (highly sensitive) – for diagnosis of SAH if CT negative but high suspicion:
 - elevated opening pressure (>18 cmH₂O)
 - bloody initially, xanthochromic supernatant with centrifugation ("yellow") by ~12 h, lasts 2 wk
 - RBC count usually >100,000/mm³ without significant drop from first to last tube (in contrast to traumatic tap)
 - elevated protein due to blood breakdown products
- four vessel cerebral angiography ("gold standard" for aneurysms)
 - demonstrates source of SAH in 80-85% of cases
 - angiogram negative SAH: repeat angiogram in 7-14 d, if negative → "perimesencephalic SAH"
- MRA and CTA: sensitivity up to 95% for aneurysms, CTA>MRA for smaller aneurysms and delineating adjacent bony anatomy



Hunt and Hess Grade (clinical grading scale for SAH)

Grade	Description
1	No Sx or mild H/A and/or mild meningismus
2	Grade 1 + CN palsy
3	Confusion/lethargy, mild hemiparesis, or aphasia
4	GCS <15 but >8, moderate-severe hemiparesis, mild rigidity
5	Coma (GCS <9), decerebrate, moribund appearance

Mortality of Grade 1-2 20%, increased with grade



World Federation of Neurological Surgeons Grading of SAH

WFNS Grade	GCS Score	Aphasia, Hemiparesis, or Hemiplegia
0 *		
1	15	–
2	13-14	–
3	13-14	+
4	7-12	+ or –
5	3-6	+ or –

*Intact aneurysm

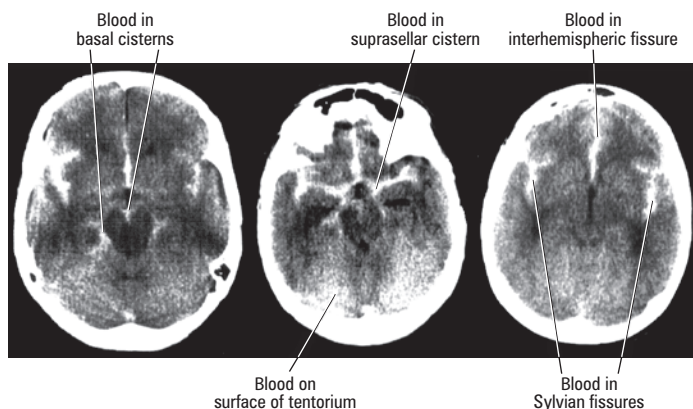


Figure 17. Diagnosis of SAH

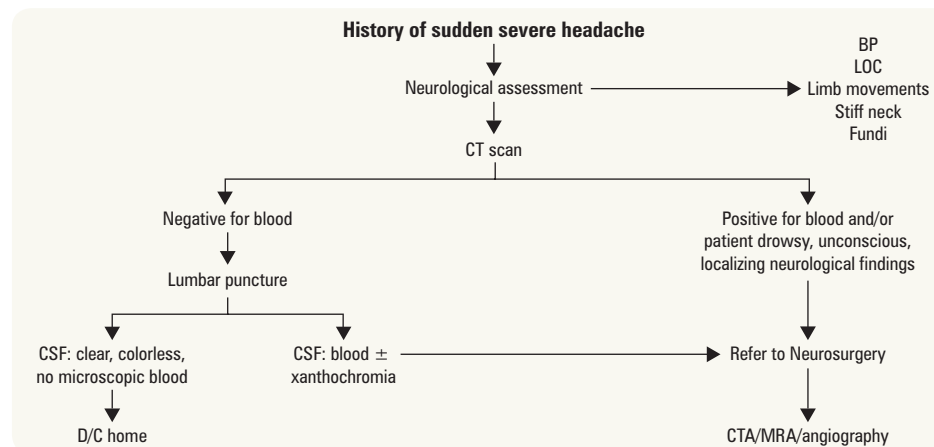


Figure 18. Approach to SAH

Treatment

- admit to ICU or NICU
 - oxygen/ventilation prn
 - NPO, bed rest, elevate head of bed 30°, minimal external stimulation, neurological vitals q1h
 - aim to maintain sBP = 120-150 (balance of vasospasm prophylaxis, risk of re-bleed, risk of hypotension since CBF autoregulation impaired by SAH)
 - cardiac rhythm monitor, Foley prn, strict monitoring of ins and outs
- medications
 - IV NS with 20 mEq KCl/L at 125-150 cc/h
 - nimodipine 60 mg PO/NG q4h x 21 d for delayed cerebral ischemia neuroprotection; may discontinue earlier if patient is clinically well
 - seizure prophylaxis: levetiracetam (Keppra®) 500 mg PO/IV q12h x 1 wk
 - mild sedation prn

Complications

- vasospasm: vasoconstriction and permanent pathological vascular changes in response to vessel irritation by blood – can lead to delayed cerebral ischemia and death
 - onset: 4-14 d post-SAH, peak at 6-8 d; most commonly due to SAH, rarely due to ICH/IVH
 - clinical features (new onset ischemic deficit): confusion, decreased LOC, focal deficit (speech or motor e.g. pronator drift)
 - risk factors: large amount of blood on CT (high Fisher grade), smoking, increased age, HTN
 - “symptomatic” vasospasm in 20-30% of SAH patients
 - “radiographic” vasospasm in 30-70% of arteriograms performed 7 d following SAH
 - diagnosed clinically, and/or with transcranial Doppler (increased velocity of blood flow)
 - risk of cerebral infarct and death
 - treatment
 - ♦ hyperdynamic (“triple H”) therapy using fluids and pressors, usually after ruptured aneurysm has been clipped/coiled
 - ♦ direct vasodilation via angioplasty or intra-arterial verapamil for refractory cases
- hydrocephalus (15-20%): due to blood obstructing arachnoid granules
 - can be acute or chronic, requires extraventricular drain (EVD) or shunt, respectively
- neurogenic pulmonary edema



Nontraumatic Subarachnoid Hemorrhage in the Setting of Negative Cranial Computed Tomography Results: External Validation of a Clinical and Imaging Prediction Rule

Ann Emerg Med 2012;59:460-8.e1-7.doi:10.1016

Background: Two rules for SAH diagnosis exist.

A clinical prediction rule states that patients with acute severe H/A but without the clinical variables age ≥ 40 yr, neck pain, loss of consciousness, or onset of H/A with exertion are at low risk for SAH. An imaging prediction rule bases diagnosis on non-contrast cranial CT for patients within 6 h of H/A onset.

Methods: Matched case-control study of 55 patients at 21 emergency departments between 2000 and 2011, and diagnoses were verified by lumbar puncture.

Results: The clinical prediction rule for diagnosis of SAH was 97.1% sensitive, 22.7% specific, and had a negative likelihood ratio of 0.13. Using the imaging prediction rule resulted in a false negative rate of 20%.

Conclusions: Performing the clinical and imaging rules together has the potential for maximizing sensitivity of prediction and reducing rates of lumbar puncture, but using imaging alone can result in missed cases.



Calcium Antagonists for Aneurysmal Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2007;3:CD000277

Introduction: This study looked to review the evidence in regards to whether calcium antagonists improve the outcome in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage.

Methods/Population: The review included 3,361 patients presenting with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage from 16 RCTs comparing treatment with calcium antagonists vs. control from 1980 to March 2006.

Results: The results were based mainly on one large trial of oral nimodipine, which showed a RR of 0.67 (95% CI 0.55-0.81) and the evidence for other calcium agonists was not statistically significant.

Conclusion: The authors endorse the use of oral nimodipine in patients with aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage.



“Triple H” Therapy for Vasospasm

HTN

Hypervolemia

Hemodilution

- hyponatremia: due to cerebral salt wasting (increased renal sodium loss and ECFV loss), not SIADH
- diabetes insipidus
- cardiac: arrhythmia (>50% have ECG changes), MI, CHF

Prognosis

- 10-15% mortality before reaching hospital, overall 50% mortality (majority within first 2-3 wk)
- 30% of survivors have moderate to severe disability
- a major cause of mortality is rebleeding, for untreated aneurysms:
 - risk of rebleed: 4% on first day, 15-20% within 2 wk, 50% by 6 mo
 - if no rebleed by 6 mo, risk decreases to same incidence as unruptured aneurysm (2%)
 - only prevention is early clipping or coiling of "cold" aneurysm
 - rebleed risk for "perimesencephalic SAH" is approximately same as for general population

Intracerebral Hemorrhage



Definition

- hemorrhage within brain parenchyma, accounts for ~10% of strokes
- can dissect into ventricular system (IVH) or through cortical surface (SAH)

Etiology

- HTN (usually causes bleeds at putamen, thalamus, pons, and cerebellum)
- hemorrhagic transformation (reperfusion post stroke, surgery, strenuous exercise, etc.)
- vascular anomalies
 - aneurysm, AVMs, and other vascular malformations (see *Vascular Malformations*, NS22)
 - venous sinus thrombosis
 - arteriopathies (cerebral amyloid angiopathy, lipohyalinosis, vasculitis)
- tumors (1%): often malignant (e.g. GBM, lymphoma, metastases)
- drugs (amphetamines, cocaine, alcohol, anticoagulants, etc.)
- coagulopathy (iatrogenic, leukemia, TTP, aplastic anemia)
- CNS infections (fungal, granulomas, herpes simplex encephalitis)
- post trauma (immediate or delayed, frontal and temporal lobes most commonly injured via coup-contrecoup mechanism)
- eclampsia
- post-operative (post-carotid endarterectomy cerebral reperfusion, craniotomy)
- idiopathic

Epidemiology

- 12-15 cases/100,000 population/yr

Risk Factors

- increasing age (mainly >55 yr)
- male gender
- HTN
- Black/Asian > Caucasian
- previous CVA of any type (23x risk)
- both acute and chronic heavy alcohol use; cocaine, amphetamines
- liver disease
- anticoagulants

Clinical Features

- TIA-like symptoms often precede ICH, can localize to site of impending hemorrhage
- gradual onset of symptoms over minutes-hours, usually during activity
- H/A, N/V, and decreased LOC are common
- specific symptoms/deficits depend on location of ICH

Investigations

- hyperdense blood on non-contrast CT
- CTA routine, if spot sign demonstrated there is high likelihood of clot growth

Treatment

- medical
 - decrease MAP to pre-morbid level or by ~20% (target BP 140/90)
 - check PTT/INR, and correct coagulopathy
 - control raised ICP (see *Intracranial Pressure Dynamics*, NS4)
 - levetiracetam/phenytoin for seizure prophylaxis
 - follow electrolytes (SIADH common)
 - angiogram to rule out vascular lesion unless >45 yr, known HTN, and putamen/thalamic/posterior fossa ICH (yield ~0%)



ICH Risk Factors

CALL HARM

CVA past history
Age (>55 yr)
Liver disease
Liquid blood (anticoagulated)
HTN
Alcohol, cocaine, amphetamines
Race (Black/Asian > Caucasian)
Male



Location of ICH

Basal Ganglia/Internal Capsule (50%)
Thalamus (15%)
Cerebral White Matter (15%)
Cerebellum/Brainstem – usually pons (15%)
Other (5%)



Commonest Locations of Saccular Aneurysms

- AComm: 30%
- PComm: 25%
- MCA: 20%
- Basilar tip: 7%

- surgical
 - craniotomy with evacuation of clot, treatment of source of ICH (i.e. AVM, tumor, cavernoma), ventriculostomy to treat hydrocephalus
 - indications
 - ♦ symptoms of raised ICP or mass effect
 - ♦ rapid deterioration (especially if signs of brainstem compression)
 - ♦ favorable location (e.g. cerebellar, non-dominant hemisphere)
 - ♦ young patient (<50 yr)
 - ♦ if tumor, AVM, aneurysm, or cavernoma suspected (resection or clip to decrease risk of rebleed)
 - contraindications
 - ♦ small bleed: minimal symptoms, GCS >10
 - ♦ poor prognosis: massive hemorrhage (especially dominant lobe), low GCS/coma, lost brainstem function
 - ♦ medical reasons (e.g. very elderly, severe coagulopathy, difficult location [e.g. basal ganglia, thalamus])

Prognosis

- 30-d mortality rate 44%, mostly due to cerebral herniation
- rebleed rate 2-6%, higher if HTN poorly controlled

Intracranial Aneurysms

Epidemiology

- prevalence 1-4% (20% have multiple)
- F>M; age 35-65 yr

Risk Factors

- autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease (15%)
- fibromuscular dysplasia (7-21%)
- AVMs
- connective tissue diseases (Ehlers-Danlos, Marfan)
- family history
- bacterial endocarditis
- Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome (hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia)
- atherosclerosis and HTN
- trauma

Types (for location, see Figure 4, NS3)

- saccular (berry)
 - most common type
 - located at branch points of major cerebral arteries (Circle of Willis)
 - 85-95% in carotid (anterior) system, 5-15% in vertebrobasilar (posterior) circulation
- fusiform
 - atherosclerotic
 - more common in vertebrobasilar system, rarely rupture
- infectious
 - secondary to any infection of vessel wall, 20% multiple
 - 60% *Streptococcus* and *Staphylococcus*
 - 3-15% of patients with bacterial endocarditis

Table 9. Five Year Cumulative Rupture Risk in Unruptured Aneurysms Based on Size and Location

	Cavernous Carotid	AC/MC/IC	Vertebrobasilar/PC/PComm
<7 mm	0%	0%	2.5%
7-12 mm	0%	2.6%	14.5%
13-24 mm	3%	14.5%	18.4%
≥24 mm	6.4%	40%	50%

AC = anterior cerebral/anterior communicating artery; IC = internal carotid artery; MC = middle cerebral artery; PC = posterior cerebral artery; PComm = posterior communicating artery
Lancet 2003;362:103-10

Clinical Presentation

- rupture (90%), most often SAH, but 30% ICH, 20% IVH, 3% subdural bleed
- sentinel hemorrhage ("thunderclap H/A") → requires urgent clipping/coiling to prevent catastrophic bleed
- mass effect (giant aneurysms)
 - internal carotid or anterior communicating aneurysm may compress:
 - ♦ the pituitary stalk or hypothalamus causing hypopituitarism
 - ♦ the optic nerve or chiasm producing a visual field defect
 - basilar artery aneurysm may compress midbrain, pons (limb weakness), or CN III
 - posterior communicating artery aneurysm may produce CN III palsy



Risk of Recurrent Subarachnoid Hemorrhage, Death, or Dependence and Standardized Mortality Ratios after Clipping or Coiling of an Intracranial Aneurysm in the International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT): Long-Term Follow-Up

Lancet Neurol 2009;8:427-433

Objective: To assess the long-term risk of death, disability, and rebleeding in patients randomly assigned to clipping or endovascular coiling after rupture of an intracranial aneurysm in the follow-up of the ISAT trial.

Methods: Randomized controlled trial comparing endovascular coiling treatment with craniotomy and clipping for ruptured intracranial aneurysms in 2,143 patients who were considered eligible for either modality of therapy. Annual follow-up was done for a mean length of 9 yr to assess long-term survival and dependency.

Results: 10 patients in the coiled group and 3 patients in the clipped group had rebleed from the original aneurysm. In patients with ruptured intracranial aneurysms suitable for both treatments, the survival rate at 5 yr after endovascular coiling was higher at 89% vs. 86% for neurosurgical clipping (relative risk 0.77, $p=0.03$). The likelihood of independence at 5 yr following treatment is the same for both groups (83% for coiling vs. 82% for clipping).

Conclusions: The risk of death at 5 yr was significantly lower in the coiled group than it was in the clipped group. There was a small increased risk of recurrent bleeding from a coiled aneurysm compared with a clipped aneurysm.



Long-Term, Serial Screening for Intracranial Aneurysms in Individuals with a Family History of Aneurysmal Subarachnoid Hemorrhage: A Cohort Study

Lancet Neurol 2014;13:385-392

Purpose: To examine the yield of long-term serial screening for intracranial aneurysms for individuals with a positive family history of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage (aSAH) (two or more first degree relatives who have had aSAH or unruptured intracranial aneurysms).

Study: Screening results from April 1 1993 to April 1 2013 were reviewed in a cohort study. MRA or CTA was done from age 16-18 to 65-70 yr. After a negative screen, individuals were advised to contact the clinic in 5 yr for follow up.

Results: Aneurysms were identified in 11% of individuals at first screening ($n=458$), 8% at second screening ($n=261$), 5% at third screening ($n=128$), and 5% at fourth screening ($n=63$). Smoking (OR 2.7, 95% CI 1.2-5.9), history of previous aneurysms (3.9, 1.2-12.7), and familial history of aneurysms (3.5, 1.6-8.1) were significant risk factors for aneurysm at first screening. History of previous aneurysms was the only significant risk factor for aneurysms at follow-up screening (HR 4.5, 95% CI 1.1-18.7).

Conclusions: The benefit of long-term screening in individuals with a family history of aSAH is substantial up to and after 10 yr of follow-up and two initial negative screens.

- intracavernous aneurysms (CN III, IV, V₁, V₂, VI)
- distal embolization (e.g. amaurosis fugax)
- seizures
- H/A (without hemorrhage)
- incidental CT or angiography finding (asymptomatic)

Investigations

- CT angiogram (CTA), magnetic resonance angiography (MRA), cerebral angiogram

Treatment

- ruptured aneurysms
 - overall trend towards better outcome with early surgery or coiling (48-96 h after SAH)
 - treatment options: surgical placement of clip across aneurysm neck, trapping (clipping of proximal and distal vessels), thrombosing using Guglielmi detachable coils (coiling), wrapping (last resort)
 - choice of surgery vs. coiling not yet well defined, consider location, size, shape, and tortuosity of the aneurysm, patient comorbidities, age, and neurological condition. In general:
 - ♦ coiling: posterior > anterior circulation, deep/eloquent location, basilar artery bifurcation/apex, older age, presence of comorbidities, presence of vasospasm
 - ♦ clipping: superficial > deep, broad aneurysmal base, branching arteries at the aneurysm base, tortuosity/atherosclerosis of afferent vessels, dissection, hematoma, acute brainstem compression
- unruptured aneurysms
 - average 1% annual risk of rupture: risk dependent on size and location of aneurysm
 - no clear evidence on when to operate: need to weigh life expectancy
 - risk of morbidity/mortality of SAH (20%-50%) vs. surgical risk (2%-5%)
 - generally treat unruptured aneurysms >10 mm
 - consider treating when aneurysm 7-9 mm in middle-aged, younger patients or patients with a family history of aneurysms
 - follow smaller aneurysms with serial angiography



Development of the PHASES Score for Prediction of Risk of Rupture of Intracranial Aneurysms: A Pooled Analysis of Six Prospective Cohort Studies

Lancet Neurol 2014;13:59-66

Purpose: The construction of an algorithm for estimating 5 yr aneurysm rupture risk.

Study: Systematic review and analysis of patient data. 8,382 patients, 6 prospective cohort studies. Outcome was SAH.

Results: Predictors of aneurysm rupture were age, HTN, history of subarachnoid hemorrhage, aneurysm size, aneurysm location, and geographical region. In North America and European populations, the 5 yr risk of rupture ranged from 0.25% in individuals <70 yr without vascular risk factors and with ICA aneurysm <7 mm to >15% in patients ≥70 yr with HTN, a history of SAH, and >20 mm posterior circulation aneurysm. Finnish and Japanese people had a 3.6- and 2.8-fold higher risk of rupture, respectively, compared with North American and European populations.

Conclusions: The PHASES score may help to predict risk of rupture for incidental intracranial aneurysms.



Spetzler-Martin AVM Grading Scale

Item	Score
Size	
0.0-3.0 cm	1
3.1-6.0 cm	2
>6.0 cm	3
Location	
Non-eloquent	0
Eloquent	1
Deep Venous Drainage	
Not present	0
Present	1

AVM grades calculated by adding the 3 individual Spetzler-Martin Scale scores from the above table, e.g. a 2 cm tumor in noneloquent location without deep venous drainage = Grade I

Vascular Malformations

Types

- arteriovenous malformations (AVMs)
- cavernous malformations (= cavernomas, cavernous hemangiomas/angiomas)
- venous angioma
- capillary telangiectasias
- arteriovenous fistula (AVF) (carotid-cavernous fistula, dural AVF, vein of Galen aneurysm)
- "angiographically occult vascular malformations" (any type, 10% of malformations)

Arteriovenous Malformations

Definition

- tangle of abnormal vessels/arteriovenous shunts, with no intervening capillary beds or brain parenchyma; usually congenital

Epidemiology

- prevalence ~0.14%, M:F = 2:1, average age at diagnosis = 33 yr
- 15-20% of patients with hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome) will have cerebral AVMs

Clinical Features

- hemorrhage (40-60%): small AVMs are more likely to bleed due to direct high pressure AV connections
- seizures (50%): more common with larger AVMs
- mass effect
- focal neurological signs secondary to ischemia (high flow → "steal phenomena")
- localized H/A, increased ICP
- bruit (especially with dural AVMs)
- may be asymptomatic ("silent")

Investigations

- MRI (flow void), MRA
- angiography (7% will also have one or more associated aneurysms)

Treatment

- decreases risk of future hemorrhage and seizure
 - surgical excision is treatment of choice
 - SRS (stereotactic radiosurgery) is preferred for small (<3 cm) or very deep lesions
 - endovascular embolization (glue, balloon) can be curative (5%) or used as adjuvant to surgery or SRS in larger lesions
- conservative (e.g. palliative embolization, seizure control if necessary)

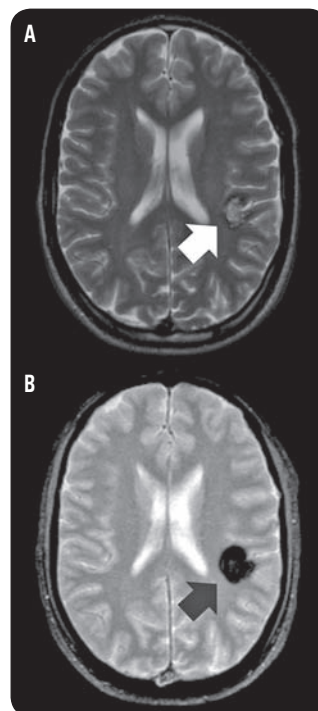


Figure 19. MRI of cavernous malformation

A. T2 weighted imaging MRI

B. Gradient echo sequencing MRI

Prognosis

- 10% mortality, 30-50% morbidity (serious neurological deficit) per bleed
- risk of major bleed in untreated AVMs: 2-4% per year

Cavernous Malformations

- benign vascular hamartoma consisting of irregular sinusoidal vascular channels located within the brain without intervening neural tissue or associated large arteries/veins
- several genes now described: CCM1, CCM2, CCM3
- prevalence of 0.1-0.2%, both sporadic and hereditary forms described

Clinical Features

- seizures (60%), progressive neurological deficit (50%), hemorrhage (20%), H/A
- often an incidental finding
- hemorrhage risk less than AVM, usually minor bleeds

Investigations

- T2WI MRI (non-enhancing; see Figure 19) gradient echo sequencing (best for diagnosis)

Treatment

- surgical excision
 - only appropriate for symptomatic lesions that are surgically accessible (supratentorial lesions are less likely to bleed than infratentorial lesions)

**Untreated Clinical Course of Cerebral Cavernous Malformations: A Prospective, Population-Based Cohort Study**

Lancet Neurol 2012;11:217-224

Purpose: To determine whether or not the risk of hemorrhage and focal neurological deficits from cerebral cavernous malformations (CCMs) is influenced by factors such as sex and CCM location.

Methods: Population-based study to identify CCM diagnoses in residents of Scotland from 1999-2003. Primary outcome was a composite of intracranial hemorrhage and focal neurological deficit related to CCM.

Results: 139 patients with at least one CCM. The 5 yr risk of a first hemorrhage was lower than the risk of recurrent hemorrhage (2.4% vs. 29.5%; $p < 0.0001$) during 1,177 person yr of follow-up. For the primary outcome, the 5 yr risk of a first event was lower than the risk of recurrence (9.3% vs. 42.4%; $p < 0.0001$). The annual risk of recurrence of the primary outcome declined from 19.8% in yr 1 to 5.0% in yr 5 and was higher for women than men.

Conclusions: The risk of recurrent hemorrhage or focal neurological deficit from a CCM is greater than the risk of a first event, is greater for women, and declines over 5 yr.

EXTRACRANIAL PATHOLOGY**Approach to Limb/Back Pain**

- see [Orthopedics](#)

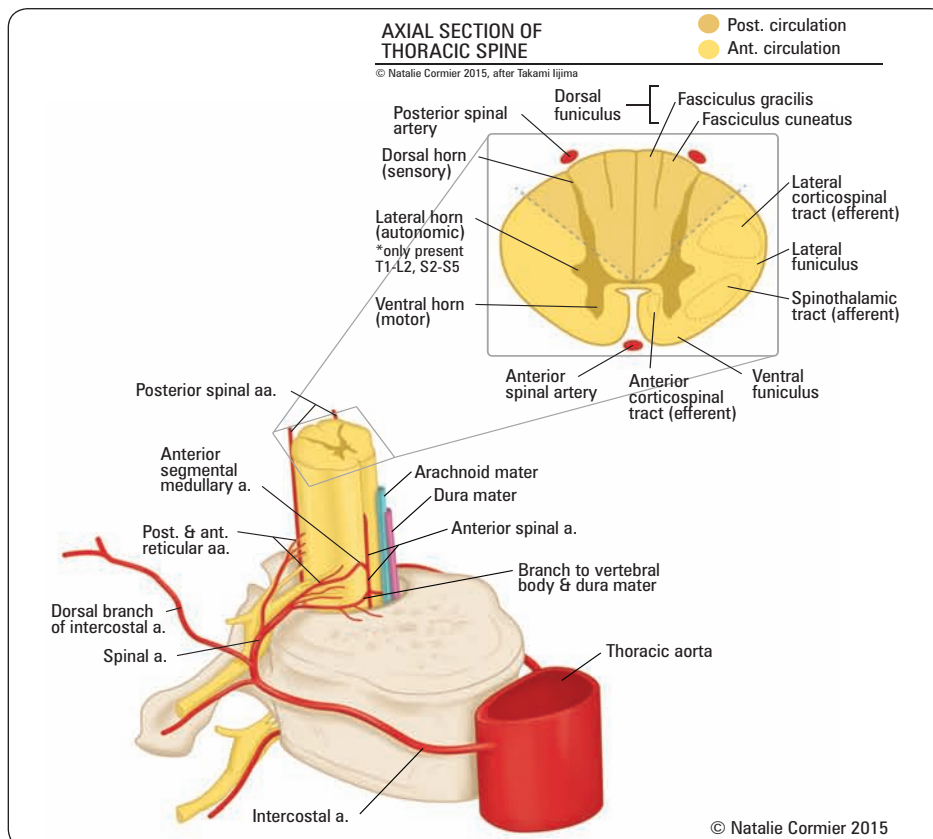
**Extradural Lesion**

Figure 20. Vascular supply of spinal cord

**RED FLAGS for Back Pain****BACK PAIN**

Bowel/Bladder (retention or incontinence)

Anesthesia (saddle)

Constitutional symptoms

Chronic disease

Parasthesia

Age >50 yr or <20 yr

IV drug use

Neuromotor deficits

Cauda Equina

- Urinary retention or incontinence, fecal incontinence or loss of anal sphincter tone, saddle anesthesia, uni/bilateral, leg weakness/pain

Malignancy

- Age >50 yr, previous Hx of cancer, pain unrelieved by bed rest, constitutional symptoms

Infection

- Increased ESR, IV drug use, immunosuppressed, fever

Compression Fracture

- Age >50 yr, trauma, prolonged steroid use

Root Compression

Differential Diagnosis

- herniated disc
- neoplasm (neurofibroma, schwannoma)
- synovial cyst, abscess
- hypertrophic bone/spur



Sensory Fibers

Fasciculus gracilis/cuneatus:
proprioception, fine touch, vibration
Spinothalamic tract: pain and temperature

Motor Fibers

Corticospinal tract: skilled movements

Cervical Disc Syndrome

Etiology

- nucleus pulposus herniates through annulus fibrosus and impinges upon nerve root, most commonly at C6-C7 (C7 root)

Clinical Features

- pain in arm follows nerve root distribution, worse with neck extension, ipsilateral rotation, and lateral flexion (all compress the ipsilateral neural foramen)
- LMN signs and symptoms
- central cervical disc protrusion causes myelopathy as well as nerve root deficits

Investigations

- if red flags: C-spine x-ray, CT, MRI (imaging of choice)
- only consider EMG, nerve conduction studies if diagnosis uncertain and presenting more as peripheral nerve issue.

Treatment

- conservative
 - no bedrest unless severe radicular symptoms
 - activity modification, patient education (reduce sitting, lifting)
 - physiotherapy, exercise programs focus on strengthening core muscles
 - analgesics, NSAIDs are more efficacious
 - avoid cervical manipulation, like traction
- surgical indications
 - anterior cervical discectomy is usual approach
 - intractable pain despite adequate conservative treatment for >3 mo
 - progressive neurological deficit

Prognosis

- 95% improve spontaneously in 4-8 wk



Disc herniations impinge the nerve root at the level below the interspace (i.e. C5-6 disc affects the C6 nerve root)

Table 10. Lateral Cervical Disc Syndromes

	C4-5	C5-6	C6-7	C7-T1
Root Involved	C5	C6	C7	C8
Incidence	2%	19%	69%	10%
Sensory	Shoulder	Thumb	Middle finger	Ring finger, 5th finger
Motor	Deltoid, biceps, supraspinatus	Biceps	Triceps	Digital flexors, intrinsic
Reflex	No change	Biceps, brachioradialis	Triceps	Finger jerk (Hoffmann's sign)

Cervical Stenosis (Cervical Spondylosis)

Definition

- cervical spondylosis is chronic disc degeneration and associated facet arthropathy
- resultant syndromes include mechanical neck pain, radiculopathy, myelopathy, and combinations

Epidemiology

- typically begins at age 40-50, M>F, most commonly at the C5-C6 > C6-C7 levels

Pathogenesis

- any of: disc degeneration/herniation, osteophyte formation, ossification, and hypertrophy of ligaments
- pathophysiology includes static compression, dynamic compression, and vascular compromise

Clinical Features

- insidious onset of mechanical neck pain exacerbated by excess vertebral motion (particularly rotation and lateral bending with a vertical compressive force – Spurling's test)
- occipital H/A is common
- radiculopathy may involve 1 or more roots, and symptoms include neck, shoulder and arm pain, paresthesias and numbness

- cervical myelopathy may be characterized by weakness (upper > lower extremity), decreased dexterity, and sensory changes
- UMN findings such as hyperreflexia, clonus, and Babinski reflex may be present
- most worrisome complaint is lower extremity weakness (corticospinal tracts)
- myelopathy may be associated with funicular pain, characterized by burning and stinging ± Lhermitte's sign (lightning-like sensation down the back with neck flexion)

Investigations

- x-ray of cervical spine ± flexion/extension (alignment, fractures)
- MRI most useful for determination of compression of the neural element
- CT is only used for better determination of bony anatomy (i.e. OPLL)
- EMG/nerve conduction studies reserved for peripheral nerve investigation

Treatment

- decompression and stabilization need to be included in the management
- NSAIDs, moist heat, strengthening and range of motion exercises, analgesics, cervical collar, cervical traction
- surgical indications: myelopathy with motor impairment, progressive neurologic impairment, intractable pain

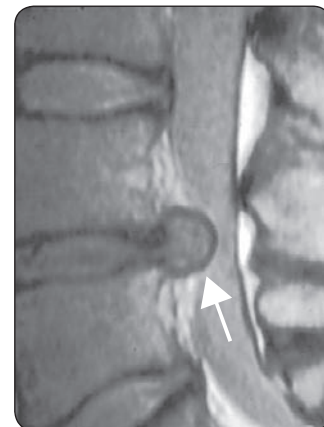


Figure 21. T2-weighted MRI of lumbar disc herniation



Lumbar Disc Herniation: What are Reliable Criteria Indicative for Surgery?

Orthopedics 2009;32:589-597

- 1) The only clear indication for early surgery in LDH is cauda equina syndrome.
- 2) Pain may also be an indication for surgery. If conservative treatment is intended, it should be considered for at least 2 mo but not beyond 1 yr if the patient shows minimal improvement, since the beneficial effects of surgery will diminish after this period.
- 3) The type of herniation on MRI is not relevant to the decision of whether or not to operate on patients with LDH.
- 4) Although paresis is often a red flag symptom for patients with LDH, neither the magnitude nor the duration of paresis should be used as an indication for early surgery.



Magnetic Resonance Imaging in Follow-Up Assessment of Sciatica

NEJM 2013;368:999-1007

Background: Follow-up MRI is a controversial method for monitoring sciatica in patients with known lumbar-disc herniation.

Methods: Participants (n=283) were recruited from a simultaneous, parallel, randomized study comparing surgery and conservative care for sciatica (the Sciatica Trial). MRI and clinical assessment were undertaken pre-treatment and 1 yr post-treatment randomization to visualize disc herniation and evaluate outcome.

Results: At 1 yr, disc herniation was visible in 35% with a favorable outcome (complete, or nearly complete symptom resolution) and in 33% with an unfavorable outcome (p=0.70). A favorable outcome was reported in 85% of patients with disc herniation and 83% without disc herniation (p=0.70).

Conclusions: Anatomical abnormalities visible on repeated MRI 1 yr after treatment for sciatica due to lumbar-disc herniation could not distinguish patients with resolution of their symptoms from patients still experiencing symptoms.

Lumbar Disc Syndrome

Etiology

- posteriolaterally herniated disc compressed nerve root exiting **BELOW** the level of the disc or the traversing nerve root
- far lateral disc herniation compressed nerve root **AT** the level of the disc or the exiting nerve root
- central herniation causes cauda equina or lumbar stenosis (neurogenic claudication)

Clinical Features

- initially back pain, then leg pain > back pain
- limited back movement (especially forward flexion) due to pain
- motor weakness, dermatomal sensory changes, decreased reflexes
- exacerbation with valsalva; relief with flexing the knee or thigh
- nerve root tension signs
 - straight leg raise (SLR, Lasegue's test) or crossed SLR (pain should occur at less than 60 degrees) suggests L5, S1 root involvement
 - femoral stretch test suggests L2, L3, or L4 root involvement

Investigations

- MRI is modality of choice
- x-ray spine (only to rule out other lesions), CT (bony anatomy)
- myelogram and post-myelogram CT (only if MRI is contraindicated)

Treatment

- conservative (same as cervical disc disease)
- surgical indications
 - same as cervical disc + cauda equina syndrome

Prognosis

- 95% improve spontaneously within 4 to 8 wk
- do not follow patients with serial MRIs; clinical status is more important at guiding management

Table 11. Lateral Lumbar Disc Syndromes

	L3-4	L4-5	L5-S1
Root Involved	L4	L5	S1
Incidence	<10%	45%	45%
Pain	Femoral pattern	Sciatic pattern	Sciatic pattern
Sensory	Medial leg	Dorsal foot to hallux Lateral leg	Lateral foot
Motor	Tibialis anterior (dorsiflexion)	Extensor hallucis longus (hallux extension)	Gastrocnemius, soleus (plantar flexion)
Reflex	Knee jerk	Medial hamstrings	Ankle jerk

Table 12. Differentiating Conus Medullaris Syndrome from Cauda Equina Syndrome

	Conus Medullaris Syndrome	Cauda Equina Syndrome
Onset	Sudden, bilateral	Gradual, unilateral
Spontaneous Pain	Rare, if present usually bilateral, symmetric in perineum or thighs	Severe, radicular type: in perineum, thighs, legs, back, or bladder
Sensory Deficit	Saddle; bilateral and symmetric; sensory dissociation	Saddle; no sensory dissociation; may be unilateral and asymmetric
Motor Deficit	Symmetric; paresis less marked; fasciculations may be present	Asymmetric; paresis more marked; atrophy may be present; fasciculations rare
Reflexes	Only ankle jerk absent (preserved knee jerk)	Knee and ankle jerk may be absent
Autonomic Symptoms (bladder dysfunction, impotence, etc.)	Urinary retention and atonic anal sphincter prominent early; impotence frequent	Sphincter dysfunction presents late; impotence less frequent

Cauda Equina Syndrome

Etiology

- compression or irritation of lumbosacral nerve roots below conus medullaris (below L2 level)
- decreased space in the vertebral canal below L2
- common causes: herniated disc ± spinal stenosis, vertebral fracture, and tumor

Clinical Features

- usually acute (develops in less than 24 h); rarely subacute or chronic
- motor (LMN signs)
 - weakness/paraparesis in multiple root distribution
 - reduced deep tendon reflexes (knee or ankle)
- autonomic
 - urinary retention (or overflow incontinence) and/or fecal incontinence due to loss of anal sphincter tone
- sensory
 - low back pain radiating to legs (sciatica) aggravated by Valsalva maneuver and by sitting; relieved by lying down
 - bilateral sensory loss or pain: depends on the level affected
 - saddle area (S2-S5) anesthesia
 - sexual dysfunction (late finding)

Investigations

- urgent MRI to confirm compression of S2-S3-S4 nerve root by a large disc herniation
- post-void residual very helpful to determine if true retention is present; volumes controversial but anything over 250 cc in a healthy individual is cause for concerns

Treatment

- surgical decompression (<48 h) to preserve bowel, bladder, and sexual function, and/or to prevent progression to paraplegia

Prognosis

- markedly improves with surgical decompression
- recovery correlates with function at initial presentation: if patient is ambulatory, likely to continue to be ambulatory; if unable to walk, unlikely to walk after surgery

Lumbar Spinal Stenosis

Etiology

- congenital narrowing of spinal canal combined with degenerative changes (herniated disc, hypertrophied facet joints, and ligamentum flavum)

Clinical Features

- gradually progressive back and leg pain with standing and walking that is relieved by sitting or lying down (neurogenic claudication – 60% sensitive)
- neurologic exam may be normal, including straight leg raise test

Investigations

- MRI is the optimal investigation to confirm and localize the level of stenosis (unlike nerve root compression which can be localized with clinical exam)

Treatment

- conservative: NSAIDs, analgesia
- surgical: laminectomy with root decompression (the role of fusion may need to be considered if the amount of bone removed with the laminectomy results in de-stabilization)

Neurogenic Claudication

Etiology

- ischemia of lumbosacral nerve roots secondary to vascular compromise and increased demand from exertion, often associated with lumbar stenosis

Clinical Features

- dermatomal pain/paresthesia/weakness of buttock, hip, thigh, or leg initiated by standing or walking
- slow relief with postural changes (sitting >30 min), NOT simply exertion cessation
- induced by variable degrees of exercise or standing
- may be elicited with lumbar extension, but may not have any other neurological findings, no signs of vascular compromise (e.g. ulcers, poor capillary refill, etc.)

Investigations

- bicycle test may help distinguish neurogenic claudication (NC) from vascular claudication (the waist-flexed individuals on the bicycle with NC can last longer)

Treatment

- same as for lumbar spinal stenosis



Key Features of Neurogenic vs. Vascular Claudication

Neurogenic Claudication: dermatomal distribution with positional relief occurring over minutes

Vascular Claudication: sclerotomal distribution with relief occurring with rest over seconds

Intradural Intramedullary Lesions

Syringomyelia (Syrinx)

Definition

- cystic cavitation of the spinal cord
- presentation is highly variable, usually progresses over months to years
- initially pain, weakness; later atrophy and loss of pain and temperature sensation

Etiology

- 70% are associated with Chiari I malformation, 10% with basilar invagination
- post-traumatic
- tumor
- tethered cord

Clinical Features

- nonspecific features for any intramedullary spinal cord pathology
 - initially pain, weakness, atrophy, loss of pain and temperature in upper extremities (central syrinx) with progressive myelopathy over years
 - sensory loss with preserved touch and proprioception in a band-like distribution at the level of cervical syrinx
 - sensory loss with preserved touch and proprioception in a band-like distribution at the level of cervical syrinx
 - dysesthetic pain often occurs in the distribution of the sensory loss
 - LMN arm/hand weakness or wasting
 - painless neuropathic arthropathies (Charcot's joints), especially in the shoulder and neck due to loss of pain and temperature sensation

Investigations

- MRI is best method, myelogram with delayed CT

Treatment

- treat underlying cause (e.g. posterior fossa decompression for Chiari I, surgical removal of tumor if causing a syrinx)
- rarely does the syrinx need to be shunted, only when progressive and size allows for insertion of tube

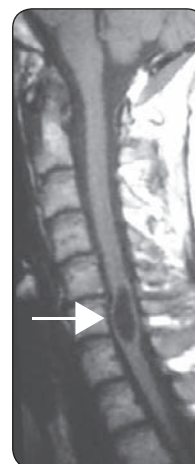


Figure 22. T1 Weighted MRI of syringomyelia

Spinal Cord Syndromes

- spinal cord injury impairment classified according to ASIA score
- ASIA A: complete, no motor/sensory below neurological level including S4/5
- ASIA B: incomplete, sensory but not motor function preserved below neurological level including S4/5



Compartmentalize spinal cord syndromes anatomically by location

- ASIA C: incomplete, motor function preserved below neurological level, and more than half of the key muscles below neurological level have a muscle grade <3
- ASIA D: incomplete, motor function preserved below neurological level, and more than half of the key muscles below neurological level have a muscle grade 3 or more
- ASIA E: normal motor and sensory function

Complete Spinal Cord Lesion

- bilateral loss of motor/sensory and autonomic function at ≥ 4 segments below lesion/injury, with UMN signs
- about 3% of patients with complete injuries will develop some recovery within 24 h, beyond 24 h, no distal function will recover

Incomplete Spinal Cord Lesion

- any residual function at ≥ 4 segments below lesion
- signs include sensory/motor function in lower limbs and "sacral sparing" (perianal sensation, voluntary rectal sphincter contraction)

Table 13. Comparison Between Incomplete Spinal Cord Lesion Syndromes

Syndrome	Etiology	Motor	Sensory
Brown-Séquard	Hemisection of cord	Ipsilateral LMN weakness at the lesion Ipsilateral UMN weakness below the lesion	Ipsilateral loss of vibration and proprioception Contralateral loss of pain and temperature Preserved light touch
Anterior Cord	Anterior spinal artery compression or occlusion	Bilateral LMN weakness at the lesion Bilateral UMN weakness below the lesion Urinary retention	Preserved vibration and proprioception Bilateral loss of pain and temperature Preserved light touch
Central Cord (most common)	Syringomyelia, tumors, spinal hyperextension injury	Bilateral motor weakness: Upper limb weakness (LMN lesion) > Lower limb weakness (UMN lesion) Urinary retention	Variable bilateral suspended sensory loss Loss of pain and temperature > loss of vibration and proprioception
Posterior Cord	Posterior spinal artery infarction, trauma	Preserved	Bilateral loss of vibration, proprioception, light touch at and below the lesion Preserved pain and temperature

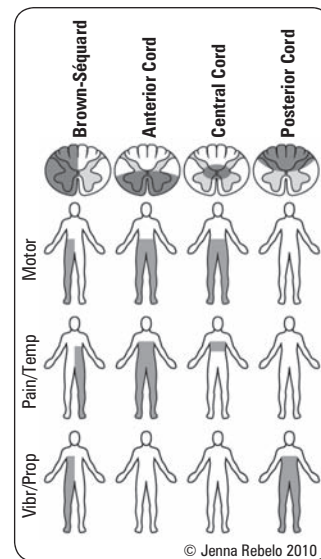


Figure 23. Spinal cord lesion syndromes

Peripheral Nerves

- see [Neurology, N35](#)



Seddon's Classification of Peripheral Nerve Injury

- class I: **neurapraxia** – axon structurally intact but fails to function; recovery within hours to months (average 6-8 wk)
- class II: **axonotmesis** – axon and myelin sheath disrupted but endoneurium and supporting structures intact → Wallerian degeneration of axon segment distal to injury → spontaneous axonal recovery at 1 mm/d, max at 1-2 yr
- class III: **neurotmesis** – nerve completely transected, need surgical repair for possibility of recovery
- etiologies: ischemia, nerve entrapment – nerve compressed by nearby anatomic structures, often secondary to localized, repetitive mechanical trauma with additional vascular injury to nerve

Investigations

- neurological exam (power, sensation, reflexes), localization via Tinel's sign (paresthesias elicited by tapping along the course of a nerve)
- electrophysiological studies (EMG, nerve conduction study) may be helpful in assessing nerve integrity and monitoring recovery, not helpful until 2-3 wk post-injury
- labs: blood work, CSF
- imaging: C-spine, chest/bone x-rays, myelogram, CT, magnetic resonance neurography
- angiogram if vascular damage is suspected

Treatment

- early neurosurgical consultation if injury is suspected
- entrapment
 - conservative: prevent repeated stress/injury, physiotherapy, NSAIDs, local anesthesia/steroid injection
 - surgical: nerve decompression ± transposition for progressive deficits, muscle weakness/atrophy, failure of medical management
- stretch/contusion
 - follow-up clinically for recovery; exploration if no recovery in 3 mo
- axonotmesis
 - if no evidence of recovery, resect damaged segment

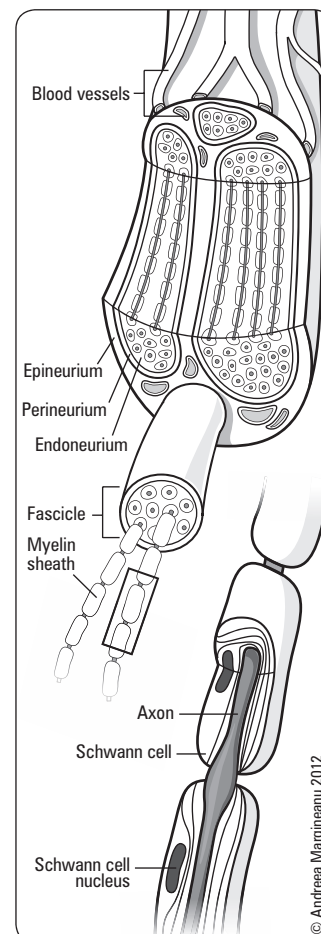


Figure 24. Peripheral nerve structure

- prompt physical therapy and rehabilitation to increase muscle function, maintain joint range of motion, and maximize return of useful function
- recovery usually incomplete
- neurotmesis
 - surgical repair of nerve sheath unless known to be intact (suture nerve sheaths directly if ends approximate or nerve graft [usually sural nerve])
 - clean laceration: early exploration and repair
 - contamination or associated injuries: tag initially with nonabsorbable suture, reapproach within 10 d

Complications

- neuropathic pain: with neuroma formation
- complex regional pain syndrome: with sympathetic nervous system involvement

SPECIALTY TOPICS

Neurotrauma

Trauma Management (see [Emergency Medicine, ER7](#))



Indications for Intubation in Trauma

1. depressed LOC (patient cannot protect airway): usually GCS ≤ 8
2. need for hyperventilation
3. severe maxillofacial trauma: patency of airway is doubtful
4. need for pharmacologic paralysis for evaluation or management
 - if basal skull fracture suspected, avoid nasotracheal intubation as may inadvertently enter brain
 - note: intubation prevents patient's ability to verbalize for determining GCS

Trauma Assessment

INITIAL MANAGEMENT

ABCs of Trauma Management

- see [Emergency Medicine, ER2](#)



NEUROLOGICAL ASSESSMENT

Mini-History

- period of LOC, post-traumatic amnesia, loss of sensation/function, type of injury/accident

Neurological Exam

- GCS
- head and neck (lacerations, bruises, basal skull fracture signs, facial fractures, foreign bodies)
- spine (palpable deformity, midline pain/tenderness)
- eyes (pupillary size and reactivity)
- brainstem (breathing pattern, CN palsies)
- cranial nerve exam
- motor exam, sensory exam (only if GCS is 15), reflexes
- sphincter tone
- record and repeat neurological exam at regular intervals

Investigations

- spinal injury precautions (cervical collar) are continued until C-spine is cleared
- C,T,L-spine x-rays
 - AP, lateral, odontoid views for C-spine (must see from C1 to T1; swimmer's view if necessary) or CT
 - rarely done: oblique views looking for pars interarticularis fracture ("Scottie dog" sign)
- CT head and upper C-spine (whole C-spine if patient unconscious) look for fractures, loss of mastoid or sinus air spaces, blood in cisterns, pneumocephalus
- cross and type, ABG, CBC, drug screen (especially alcohol)
- chest and pelvic x-ray as indicated

TREATMENT

Treatment for Minor Head Injury

- observation over 24-48 h
- wake every hour
- judicious use of sedatives or pain killers during monitoring period



Glasgow Coma Scale

Eye Response	Verbal Response	Motor Response
4 spontaneous	5 oriented	6 obeys commands
3 opens eyes to voice	4 confused	5 localizes to pain
2 opens eyes to pain	3 inappropriate words	4 withdraws from pain
1 no eye opening	2 incomprehensible sounds	3 flexion to pain (decorticate posturing)
	1 no response	2 extension to pain (decerebrate posturing)
	T intubated	1 no response

Best response for each component recorded individually (e.g. E3V3M5)
 ≥ 13 is mild injury; 9-12 is moderate injury; ≤ 8 is severe injury



Assessment of Spine CT/X-Ray (Parasagittal View)

ABCDs

Alignment (columns: anterior vertebral line, posterior vertebral line, spinolaminar line, posterior spinous line)
Bone (vertebral bodies, facets, spinous processes)
Cartilage
Disc (disc space and interspinous space)
Soft tissues



- Never do lumbar puncture in head injury unless increased ICP has been ruled out
- All patients with head injury have C-spine injury until proven otherwise
- Suspect hematoma in alcoholic-related injuries
- Low BP after head injury means injury elsewhere
- Must clear spine both radiologically AND clinically



Comparative Effectiveness of Using Computed Tomography Alone to Exclude Cervical Spine Injuries in Obtunded or Intubated Patients: Meta-Analysis of 14,327 Patients with Blunt Trauma

J Neurosurg 2011;115:541-549

Purpose: To determine the effectiveness of helical CT alone (vs. CT and adjunct imaging such as MR) to diagnose acute unstable cervical spine injury following blunt trauma.

Results: 17 studies with 14,327 patients total. Sensitivity and specificity for modern CT were both $>99.9\%$ (95% CI 0.99-1.00 for both). The negative predictive value of a normal CT scan was 100% (95% CI 0.96-1.00) and accuracy was not affected by the global severity of injury, CT slice thickness, or study quality.

Conclusions: CT alone is sufficient to detect unstable cervical spine injuries in trauma patients and adjunct imaging is unnecessary with a negative CT scan result. Consequently, if a CT scan is negative for acute injury, the cervical collar may be removed from obtunded or intubated trauma patients.

Treatment for Severe Head Injury (GCS ≤ 8)

- clear airway and ensure breathing (if GCS ≤ 8 , intubate)
- secure C-spine
- maintain adequate BP
- monitor for clinical deterioration
- monitor and manage increased ICP if present (see *Herniation Syndromes*, NS6)

Admission required if:

- skull fracture (indirect signs of basal skull fracture, see *Head Injury*)
- confusion, impaired consciousness, concussion with >5 min amnesia
- focal neurological signs, extreme H/A, vomiting, seizures
- unstable spine
- use of alcohol
- poor social support

Head Injury

Epidemiology

- M:F = 2-3:1

Pathogenesis

- acceleration/deceleration: contusions, subdural hematoma, axon and vessel shearing/mesencephalic hematoma
- impact: skull fracture, concussion, epidural hematoma
- penetrating: worse with high velocity and/or high missile mass
 - low velocity: highest damage to structures on entry/exit path
 - high velocity: highest damage away from missile tract

Scalp Injury

- rich blood supply
- considerable blood loss (vessels contract poorly when ruptured)
- minimal risk of infection due to rich vascularity

Skull Fractures

- depressed fractures: double density on skull x-ray (outer table of depressed segment below inner table of skull), CT with bone window is gold standard
- simple fractures (closed injury): no need for antibiotics, no surgery
- compound fractures (open injury): increased risk of infection, surgical debridement within 24 h is necessary
 - internal fractures into sinus may lead to meningitis, pneumocephalus
 - risk of operative bleed may limit treatment to antibiotics
- basal skull fractures: not readily seen on x-ray, rely on clinical signs
 - retroauricular ecchymoses (Battle's sign)
 - periorbital ecchymoses (raccoon eyes)
 - hemotympanum
 - CSF rhinorrhea, otorrhea (suspect CSF if halo or target sign present); suspect with Lefort II/III midface fracture

Cranial Nerve Injury

- most traumatic causes of cranial nerve injury do not warrant surgical intervention
- surgical intervention
 - CN II: local eye/orbit injury
 - CN III, IV, VI: if herniation secondary to mass
 - CN VIII: repair of ossicles
- CN injuries that improve
 - CN I: recovery may occur in a few months; most do not improve
 - CN III, IV, VI: majority recover
 - CN VII: recovery with delayed lesions
 - CN VIII: vestibular symptoms improve over weeks, deafness usually permanent (except when resulting from hemotympanum)

Arterial Injury

- e.g. carotid-cavernous (C-C) fistula, carotid/vertebral artery dissection

Intracranial Bleeding

- see *Blood*, NS15 and *Cerebrovascular Disease*, NS17

**The Canadian CT Head Rule for Patients with Minor Head Injury**

Lancet 2001;357:1391-1396

CT Head is only required for patients with minor head injuries with any one of the following:

High Risk (for neurological intervention)

- GCS score <15 at 2 h after injury.
- Suspected open or depressed skull fracture.
- Any sign of basal skull fracture (hemotympanum, "raccoon" eyes, cerebrosplinal fluid otorrhea/rhinorrhea, Battle's sign).
- Vomiting ≥ 2 episodes.
- Age ≥ 65 yr.

Medium Risk (for brain injury on CT)

- Amnesia after impact >30 min.
- Dangerous mechanism (pedestrian struck by motor vehicle, occupant ejected from motor vehicle, fall from height >3 feet or five stairs).

Minor Head Injury is defined as witnessed loss of consciousness, definite amnesia, or witnessed disorientation in a patient with a GCS score of 13-15.

**A Trial of Intracranial-Pressure Monitoring in Traumatic Brain Injury**

NEJM 2012;367:2471-2481

Background: ICP monitoring is frequently used to monitor severe traumatic brain injury, but controversy exists over whether it is beneficial.

Methods: Study sample ($n=324$ patients, ≥ 13 yr) consisted of those who had severe traumatic brain injury and were being treated in ICU in Bolivia or Ecuador. Patients were randomly assigned to one management group:

1. ICP-monitoring based management.
2. Management based on imaging and clinical examination.

Primary outcome was a composite of survival time, impaired consciousness, functional status (at 3, 6 mo), and neuropsychological status (at 6 mo).

Results: No significant difference between management groups based on primary outcome, 6-mo mortality, median length of ICU stay, or occurrence of serious adverse events. However, duration of brain-specific treatments (e.g. use of hyperosmolar fluids or hyperventilation) higher in the imaging-clinical examination group (4.8 d vs. 3.4 d, $p=0.002$).

Conclusion: Maintaining monitored ICP at 20 mmHg or less is not superior to care based on imaging and clinical examination.

Brain Injury

Primary Impact Injury

- mechanism of injury determines pathology: penetrating injuries, direct impact
 - low velocity: local damage
 - high velocity: distant damage possible (due to wave of compression), concussion
- concussion**: a trauma-induced alteration in mental status
 - American Academy of Neurology (AAN) Classification
 - no parenchymal abnormalities on CT
- coup** (damage at site of blow) and **contrecoup** (damage at opposite site of blow)
 - acute decompression causes cavitation followed by a wave of acute compression
- contusion** (hemorrhagic)
 - high density areas on CT \pm mass effect
 - commonly occurs with brain impact on bony prominences (inferior frontal lobe, pole of temporal lobe)
- diffuse axonal injury/shearing**
 - wide variety of damage results
 - may tear blood vessels (hemorrhagic foci)
 - often the cause of decreased LOC if no space-occupying lesion on CT

Secondary Pathologic Processes

- same subsequent biochemical pathways for each traumatic etiology
- delayed and progressive injury to the brain due to
 - high glutamate release \rightarrow NMDA receptor activation \rightarrow cytotoxic cascade
 - cerebral edema
 - intracranial hemorrhages
 - ischemia/infarction
 - raised ICP, intracranial HTN
 - hydrocephalus

Extracranial Conditions

- hypoxemia
 - due to trauma to the chest, upper airway, brainstem
 - extremely damaging to vulnerable brain cells
 - leads to ischemia, raised ICP
- hypercarbia
 - leads to raised ICP (secondary to vasodilation)
- systemic hypotension
 - caused by blood loss (e.g. ruptured spleen)
 - loss of cerebral autoregulation leads to decreased CPP, ischemia
- hyperpyrexia
 - leads to increased brain metabolic demands \rightarrow ischemia
- fluid and electrolyte imbalance
 - iatrogenic (most common)
 - SIADH caused by head injury
 - diabetes insipidus (DI)
 - may lead to cerebral edema and raised ICP
- coagulopathy

Intracranial Conditions

- raised ICP due to traumatic cerebral edema OR traumatic intracranial hemorrhage

Brain Injury Outcomes

- mildly traumatic (GCS 13-15): post-concussive symptoms: H/A, fatigue, dizziness, nausea, blurred vision, diplopia, memory impairment, tinnitus, irritability, low concentration; 50% at 6 wk, 14% at 1 yr
- moderately traumatic (GCS 9-12): proportional to age (>40) and CT findings; 60% good recovery, 26% moderately disabled, 7% severely disabled, 7% vegetative/dead
- severe (GCS ≤ 8): difficult to predict, correlates with post-resuscitation GCS (especially motor) and age



AAN Classification

Grade 1: altered mental status < 15 min
 Grade 2: altered mental status > 15 min
 Grade 3: any loss of consciousness

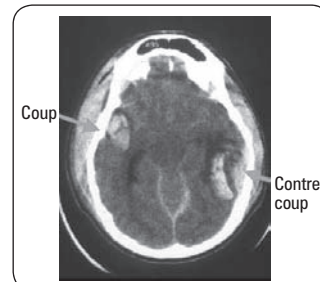


Figure 25. CT showing coup-contrecoup injury



SIADH \rightarrow hyponatremia
 DI \rightarrow hypernatremia



Management Associated with AAN Concussion Grades

AAN Grade	Management Options
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Examine 15 min for amnesia and other symptoms Return to normal activity if symptoms clear within 15 min
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remove from activity for 1 d, then re-examine CT or MRI if H/A or other symptoms worsen or last > 1 wk Return to normal activity after 1 wk without symptoms
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emergent neurological exam + imaging; if initial exam is normal, may go home with close follow-up Admit if any signs of pathology or persistent abnormal mental status CT or MRI if H/A or other symptoms If brief loss of consciousness (< 1 min), return to normal activity after 1 wk without symptoms If prolonged loss of consciousness (> 1 min), return to normal activity only after 2 wk without symptoms

Late Complications of Head/Brain Injury

- seizures: 5% of head injury patients develop seizures
 - incidence related to severity and location of injury (increased with local brain damage or intracranial hemorrhage)
 - post-traumatic seizure may be immediate, early, or late
 - presence of early (within first wk) post-traumatic seizure raises incidence of late seizures

- meningitis: associated with CSF leak from nose or ear
- hydrocephalus: acute hydrocephalus or delayed normal pressure hydrocephalus (NPH)

Spinal Cord Injury

- see [Orthopedics](#), OR21 and [Emergency Medicine](#), ER9



Neurogenic and Spinal Shock

1. neurogenic shock: hypotension that follows SCI (sBP usually ≤ 80 mmHg) caused by:
 - interruption of sympathetics (unopposed parasympathetics) below the level of injury
 - loss of muscle tone due to skeletal muscle paralysis below level of injury \rightarrow venous pooling (relative hypovolemia)
 - blood loss from associated wounds (true hypovolemia)
2. spinal shock: transient loss of all neurologic function below the level of the spinal cord injury, causing flaccid paralysis and areflexia for variable periods

Whiplash-Associated Disorders

- definition: traumatic injury to the soft tissue structures in the region of the cervical spine due to hyperflexion, hyperextension, or rotational injury to the neck

Initial Management of SCI

- major causes of death in SCI are aspiration and shock
- the following patients should be treated as having a SCI until proven otherwise:
 - all victims of significant trauma
 - minor trauma patients with decreased LOC or complaints of neck or back pain, weakness, abdominal breathing, numbness/tingling, or priapism

Stabilization and Initial Evaluation in the Hospital

1. ABCs, immobilization (backboard/head strap), oxygenation, Foley catheter to urometer, temperature regulation
2. hypotension: maintain sBP >90 mmHg with pressors (dopamine), hydration, and atropine
 - DVT prophylaxis
3. monitor CBC/electrolytes
4. focused history (see [Trauma Assessment](#), NS29)
5. spine palpation: point tenderness or deformity
6. motor level assessment (including rectal exam for voluntary anal sphincter contraction)
7. sensory level assessment: pinprick, light touch, and proprioception
8. evaluation of reflexes
9. signs of autonomic dysfunction: altered level of perspiration, bowel or bladder incontinence, priapism
10. radiographic evaluation
 - 3 views C-spine x-rays (AP, lateral, and odontoid) to adequately visualize C1 to C7-T1 junction
 - flexion-extension views to disclose occult instability
 - CT scan (bony injuries) typically most trauma centers use CT as the modality of choice for looking at fractures, very sensitive with the high resolution scanners
 - MRI mandatory if neurological deficits (soft tissue injuries)

Medical Management Specific to SCI

- option: methylprednisolone (given within 8 h of injury) this is controversial and you need to confer with Neurosurgery service
- \pm decompression in acute, non-penetrating SCI



Pharmacological Therapy for Acute Spinal Cord Injury: Congress of Neurological Surgeons (CNS) and American Association of Neurological Surgeons (AANS) Guidelines

Neurosurgery 2013;72(Suppl 2):93-105

Level I Recommendations

- No Class I or Class II medical evidence supports the use of methylprednisone in the treatment of acute SCI. Several Class II and Class III studies have been published stating inconsistent effects of methylprednisone likely related to random chance or selection bias.
- Administration of GM-1 ganglioside (Sygen) for the treatment of acute SCI is not recommended.



Early vs. Delayed Decompression for Traumatic Cervical Spinal Cord Injury: Results of the Surgical Timing in Acute Spinal Cord Injury Study (STASCIS)

PLoS ONE 2012;7:e32037. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0032037

Introduction: This study sought to determine the relative effectiveness of early (<24 h after injury) vs. late (≥ 24 h after injury) decompressive surgery following a traumatic cervical spinal cord injury (SCI).

Methods/Population: A prospective cohort study completed in 2002-2009 involving 6 North American institutions. Participants were 16-80 yr of age with a cervical SCI. Outcomes evaluated were changes in American Spinal Injury Association Impairment Scale (AIS) grade at 6 mo follow-up, complications, and mortality.

Results: Of 313 participants enrolled, 182 underwent early surgery and 131 underwent late surgery. 222 participants were available for follow-up at 6 mo. The odds of at least 2 grade AIS improvement were greater for those who had early surgery compared to those with late surgery (OR = 2.83, 95% CI 1.10, 7.28). Mortality was observed for each group during the first 30 d post injury. No statistically significant differences were observed for complications ($p=0.21$).

Conclusion: Early decompression surgery following a SCI is safe and associated with higher AIS improvement at 6 mo following injury.

Fractures of the Spine

FRACTURES AND FRACTURE-DISLOCATIONS OF THE THORACIC AND LUMBAR SPINE

- assess ligamentous instability using flexion/extension x-ray views of C-spine \pm MRI
- thoracolumbar spine unstable if 4/6 segments disrupted (3 columns divided into left and right)
 - anterior column: anterior half of vertebral body, disc, and anterior longitudinal ligament
 - middle column: posterior half of vertebral body, disc, and posterior longitudinal ligament
 - posterior column: posterior arch, facet joints, pedicle, lamina and supraspinous, interspinous, and ligamentum flavum ligaments

Types of Injury (Denis Classification)

- **compression fracture**
 - produced by flexion

- posterior ligament complex (supraspinous and interspinous ligaments, ligamentum flavum, and intervertebral joint capsules) remain intact
- fractures are stable but lead to kyphotic deformity
- **burst fracture**
 - stable: anterior and middle columns parted with bone retropulsed nearby
 - ♦ hallmark is pedicle widening on AP x-ray
 - ♦ spinal cord (seen on x-ray and CT); posterior column is uninjured
 - unstable: same as the stable but with posterior column disruption (usually ligamentous)
- **flexion distraction injury**
 - hyperflexion and distraction of posterior elements
 - ♦ middle and posterior columns fail in distraction
 - classic: Chance = horizontal fracture through posterior arch, pedicles, posterior vertebral body
 - can be purely ligamentous, i.e. through PLL and disc
- **fracture-dislocation**
 - anterior and cranial dislocation of superior vertebral body → 3 column failure
 - three types:
 - ♦ flexion-rotation
 - ♦ flexion-distraction
 - ♦ shear/hyperextension (rare)

Management of Thoracolumbar Injury

- management based on TLICS classification

FRACTURES OF THE CERVICAL SPINE

Types of Injury

- C1 vertebral fracture (Jefferson fracture)
 - vertical compression forces the occipital condyles of the skull down on the C1 vertebra (atlas), pushing the lateral masses of the atlas outward and disrupting the ring of the atlas
 - also can cause an occipital condylar fracture
- odontoid process fracture
 - causes C1 and odontoid of C2 to move independently of C2 body
 - this occurs because
 - ♦ normally C1 vertebra and odontoid of C2 are a single functional unit
 - ♦ alar and transverse ligaments on posterior aspect of odontoid most commonly remain intact following injury
 - patients often report a feeling of instability and present holding their head with their hands
- C2 vertebral fracture (hangman fracture, traumatic spondylolisthesis of axis):
 - bilateral fracture through the pars interarticularis of C2 with subluxation of C2 on C3
 - usually neurologically intact
- Clay-Shoveler fracture
 - avulsion of spinous process, usually C6 or C7

Imaging

- AP spine x-ray (open-mouth and lateral view), CT

Treatment

- immobilization in cervical collar or halo vest until healing occurs (usually 2-3 mo)
- Type II and III odontoid fractures
 - consider surgical fixation for comminution, displacement, or inability to maintain alignment with external immobilization
 - confirm stability after recovery with flexion-extension x-rays

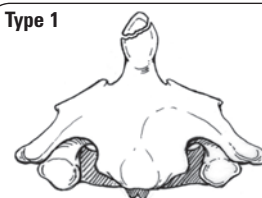


TLICS Scoring

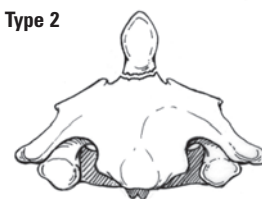
Parameter	Points
Morphology	
Compression fracture	1
Burst fracture	2
Translational/rotational fracture	3
Distraction	4
Neurologic Status	
Intact	0
Nerve root injury	2
Spinal Cord Status	
Incomplete	3
Complete	2
Cauda equine	3
Posterior Ligamentous Complex	
Intact	0
Injury suspected/indeterminate	2
Injured	3

- TLICS scoring based on morphology of injury, status of posterior ligamentous complex, and neurological status
- Non-operative management if TLICS = 0-3, operative management if TLICS = 5+, either operative or non-operative if TLICS = 4

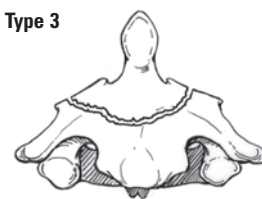
Type 1



Type 2



Type 3



© Hidenori Miyagawa 2006

Figure 26. Odontoid fracture classification

Neurologically Determined Death

Definition

- irreversible and diffuse brain injury resulting in absence of clinical brain function
- cardiovascular activity may persist for up to 2 wk

Criteria of Diagnosis

- prerequisites: no CNS depressant drugs/neuromuscular blocking agents, no drug intoxication/poisoning, temperature >32°C, no electrolyte/acid-base/endocrine disturbance
- absent brainstem reflexes
 - absent pupillary light reflex
 - absent corneal reflexes
 - absent oculoccephalic response
 - absent caloric responses (e.g. no deviation of eyes to irrigation of each ear with 50 cc of ice water – allow 1 min after injection, 5 min between sides)

- absent pharyngeal and tracheal reflexes
- absent cough with tracheal suctioning
- absent respiratory drive at $\text{PaCO}_2 > 60$ mmHg or > 20 mmHg above baseline (apnea test)
- 2 evaluations separated by time, usually performed by two specialists (e.g. anesthetist, neurologist, neurosurgeon)
- confirmatory testing: flat EEG, absent perfusion assessed with cerebral angiogram

Coma

Definition

- an unrousable state in which patients show no meaningful response to environmental stimuli

Pathophysiology

- lesions affecting the cerebral cortex bilaterally, the reticular activating system (RAS) or their connecting fibers
- focal supratentorial lesions do not alter consciousness except by herniation (compression on the brainstem or on the contralateral hemisphere) or by precipitating seizures

Classification

- structural lesions (tumor, pus, blood, infarction, CSF): 1/3 of comas
 - supratentorial mass lesion: leads to herniation
 - infratentorial lesion: compression of or direct damage to the RAS or its projections
- metabolic disorders/diffuse hemispheric damage: 2/3 of comas
 - deficiency of essential substrates (e.g. oxygen, glucose, vitamin B_{12})
 - exogenous toxins (e.g. drugs, heavy metals, solvents)
 - endogenous toxins/systemic metabolic diseases (e.g. uremia, hepatic encephalopathy, electrolyte imbalances, thyroid storm)
 - infections (meningitis, encephalitis)
 - trauma (concussion, diffuse shear axonal damage)

Investigations and Management

- ABCs
- labs: electrolytes, extended electrolytes, TSH, LFTs, Cr, BUN, toxin screen, glucose
- CT/MRI, LP, EEG

Persistent Vegetative State

Definition

- a condition of complete unawareness of the self and the environment accompanied by sleep-wake cycles with either complete or partial preservation of hypothalamic and brainstem autonomic function
- “awake but not aware”
- follows comatose state

Etiology/Prognosis

- most commonly caused by cardiac arrest or head injury
- due to irreversible loss of cerebral cortical function but intact brainstem function
- average life expectancy is 2-5 yr

Pediatric Neurosurgery

Spinal Dysraphism

SPINA BIFIDA OCCULTA

Definition

- congenital absence of a spinous process and a variable amount of lamina
- no visible exposure of meninges or neural tissue

Epidemiology

- 15-20% of the general population; most common at L5 or S1

Etiology

- failure of fusion of the posterior neural arch

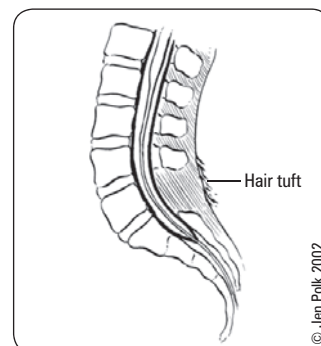


Figure 27. Spina bifida occulta

Clinical Features

- no obvious clinical signs
- presence of lumbosacral cutaneous abnormalities (dimple, sinus, port-wine stain, or hair tuft) should increase suspicion of an underlying anomaly (lipoma, dermoid, diastematomyelia)

Investigations

- plain film: absence of the spinous process along with minor amounts of the neural arch
- U/S, MRI to exclude spinal anomalies

Treatment

- requires no treatment

MENINGOCELE (SPINA BIFIDA APERTA)**Definition**

- herniation of meningeal tissue and CSF through a defect in the spine, without associated herniation of neural tissue

Etiology

- primary failure of neural tube closure

Clinical Features

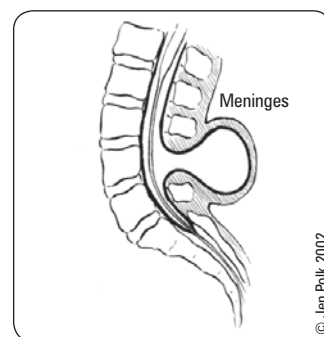
- most common in lumbosacral area
- usually no disability, low incidence of associated anomalies, and hydrocephalus

Investigations

- plain films, CT, MRI, U/S, echo, GU investigations

Treatment

- surgical excision and tissue repair (excellent results)

**Figure 28. Meningocele****MYELOMENINGOCELE (SPINA BIFIDA APERTA)****Definition**

- herniation of meningeal and CNS tissue through a defect in the spine

Etiology

- same as meningocele

Clinical Features

- sensory and motor changes distal to anatomic level producing varying degrees of weakness
- urinary and fecal incontinence
- 65-85% of patients with myelomeningocele have hydrocephalus
- most have Type II Chiari malformation (see *Chiari Malformations*, NS36)

Investigations

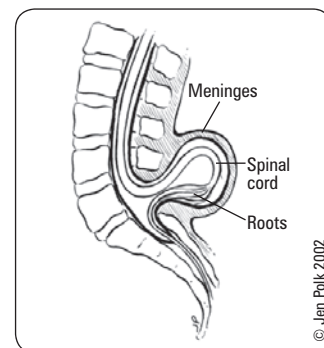
- plain films, CT, MRI, U/S, echo, GU investigations

Treatment

- surgical closure to preserve neurologic status and prevent CNS infections
- closure *in utero* shown to decrease hydrocephalus and improve post natal motor scores

Prognosis

- operative mortality close to 0%, 95% 2 yr survival
- 80% have IQ >80 (but most are 80-95), 40-85% ambulatory, 3-10% have normal urinary continence
- early mortality usually due to Chiari malformation complications (respiratory arrest and aspiration), whereas late mortality is due to shunt malfunction

**Figure 29. Myelomeningocele****Intraventricular Hemorrhage**

- see [Pediatrics](#), P72



Hydrocephalus in Pediatrics

Etiology

- congenital
 - aqueductal anomalies, primary aqueductal stenosis in infancy
 - secondary gliosis due to intrauterine viral infections (mumps, varicella, TORCH)
 - Dandy-Walker malformation (2-4%)
 - Chiari malformation, especially Type II
 - myelomeningocele
- acquired
 - post meningitis
 - post hemorrhage (SAH, IVH)
 - masses (vascular malformation, neoplastic)

Clinical Features

- symptoms and signs of hydrocephalus are age related in pediatrics
- increased head circumference (HC), bulging anterior fontanelle, widened cranial sutures
- irritability, lethargy, poor feeding, and vomiting
- “cracked pot” sound on cranial percussion
- scalp vein dilation (increased collateral venous drainage)
- sunset sign – forced downward deviation of eyes
- episodic bradycardia and apnea

Investigations

- skull x-ray, U/S, CT, MRI, ICP monitoring

Treatment

- similar to adults (see *Hydrocephalus*, NS7)

Dandy-Walker Malformation

Definition

- atresia of foramina of Magendie and Luschka, resulting in
 - complete or incomplete agenesis of the cerebellar vermis with widely separated, hypoplastic cerebellar hemispheres
 - posterior fossa cyst, enlarged posterior fossa
 - dilatation of 4th ventricle (also 3rd and lateral ventricles)
- associated anomalies
 - hydrocephalus (90%)
 - agenesis of corpus callosum (17%)
 - occipital encephalocele (7%)

Epidemiology

- 2-4% of pediatric hydrocephalus

Clinical Features

- 20% are asymptomatic, seizures occur in 15%
- symptoms and signs of hydrocephalus combined with a prominent occiput in infancy
- ataxia, spasticity, poor fine motor control common in childhood

Investigations

- ultrasound, CT, MRI

Treatment

- asymptomatic patients require no treatment
- associated hydrocephalus requires surgical treatment
 - e.g. ventriculoperitoneal (VP) shunt, cystoperitoneal (CP) shunt, lumboperitoneal (LP) shunt, ventriculoatrial (VA) shunt, lumbar drain

Prognosis

- 75-100% survival, 50% have normal IQ

Chiari Malformations

Definition

- malformations at the medullary-spinal junction

Etiology

- unclear, likely maldevelopment/dysgenesis during fetal life

Categories

- Type I (cerebellar ectopia)
 - definition: cerebellar tonsils lie below the level of the foramen magnum
 - epidemiology: average age at presentation 15 yr
 - clinical features:
 - ♦ many are asymptomatic
 - ♦ scoliosis
 - ♦ brain compression
 - ♦ central cord syndrome (65%)
 - ♦ syringomyelia (50%)
 - ♦ foramen magnum compression syndrome (22%)
 - ♦ cerebellar syndrome (11%)
 - ♦ hydrocephalus (10%)
- Type II
 - definition: part of cerebellar vermis, medulla, and 4th ventricle extend through the foramen magnum often to midcervical region
 - almost always associated with a myelomeningocele
 - epidemiology: present in infancy
 - clinical features: findings due to brainstem and lower cranial nerve dysfunction
 - syringomyelia, hydrocephalus in >80%

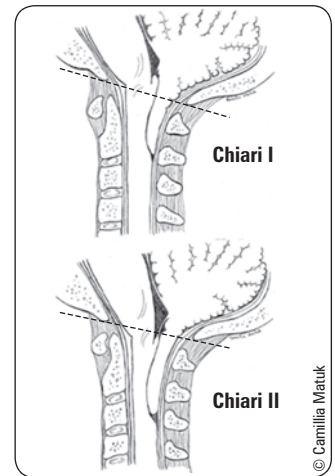


Figure 30. Chiari malformations

Investigations

- MRI

Treatment

- indications for surgical decompression
 - Type I: symptomatic patients (early surgery recommended; <2 yr post symptom onset) → suboccipital craniectomy, duraplasty
 - Type II: neurogenic dysphagia, stridor, apneic spells → cervical laminectomy, duraplasty

Craniosynostosis

Definition

- premature closure of the cranial suture(s)

Classification

- sagittal (most common): long narrow head with ridging sagittal suture (scaphocephaly)
- coronal: expansion in superior and lateral direction (brachiocephaly)
- metopic (trigonocephaly)
- lambdoid: least common

Epidemiology

- 0.6/1,000 live births, most cases are sporadic; familial incidence is 2% of sagittal and 8% of coronal synostosis

Clinical Features

- skull deformity, raised ICP ± hydrocephalus
- ophthalmologic problems due to increased ICP or bony abnormalities of the orbit
- must differentiate between positional plagiocephaly (secondary to back sleeping)

Investigations

- plain radiographs, CT scan

Treatment

- parental counseling about nature of deformity, associated neurological symptoms
- surgery for cosmetic purposes, except in cases of elevated ICP (≥2 sutures involved)

Pediatric Brain Tumors

- see *Tumors*, NS10

Epidemiology

- 20% of all pediatric cancers (second only to leukemia)
- 60% of pediatric brain tumors are infratentorial
- pediatric brain tumors arise from various cellular lineages
 - glia: low-grade astrocytoma (supra- or infratentorial), anaplastic astrocytoma, glioblastoma multiforme (largely supratentorial) (see *Astrocytoma*, NS12)
 - primitive nerve cells: supratentorial PNET
 - ♦ 90% of neonatal brain tumors, infratentorial (medulloblastoma), pineal gland (pineoblastoma)
 - non-neuronal cells: germ cell tumor, craniopharyngioma, dermoid, meningioma, neurinoma (schwannoma), pituitary adenoma, others

Clinical Features

- vomiting, seizure, macrocrania, hydrocephalus
- developmental delay, poor feeding, failure to thrive
- often initially escapes diagnosis due to expansile cranium and neural plasticity in children

Table 14. Overview of Childhood Primary Brain Tumors

Pilocytic (low grade) Astrocytoma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Usually in posterior fossa • Well circumscribed • Benign, good prognosis
Medulloblastoma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A primitive neuroectodermal tumor (PNET) • In cerebellum → compresses 4th ventricle → hydrocephalus • Highly malignant
Ependymoma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In 4th ventricle → hydrocephalus • Poor prognosis
Hemangioblastoma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Often cerebellar • Associated with von Hippel-Lindau syndrome with retinal angiomas • Can produce EPO → secondary polycythemia
Craniopharyngioma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Causes bitemporal hemianopsia (thus often confused with pituitary adenoma) • Most common supratentorial childhood tumor • Benign



Most Common Pediatric Brain Tumors

Astrocytoma, low grade
Supratentorial
Infratentorial
Medulloblastoma
Ependymoma
Glioblastoma

Rickert CH, Paulus W. Epidemiology of central nervous system tumors in childhood and adolescence based on the new WHO classification. *Childs Ner Syst* 2011;17(9):503-511

Functional Neurosurgery

Movement Disorders

- see [Neurology](#), *Tremor*, *Parkinson's Disease*, *Dystonia*, and *Multiple Sclerosis* sections in, N28, N30, N32, N52, respectively



Table 15. Surgical Targets for Movement Disorders

Disorder	Indications	Procedures	Outcomes	Morbidity
Parkinson's Disease	Intractable contralateral bradykinesia/tremor Failure of medical management (advanced disease) Drug-induced dyskinesias (see dystonia, below)	Simultaneous, bilateral surgery/stimulation is most common Preferred target: anterodorsal subthalamic nucleus (STN) Other targets: stereotactic ablation (pallidotomy)/stimulation of posteroventral globus pallidus pars interna (GPi) Caudal zona incerta Parkinsonian tremor: stereotactic ablation (thalamotomy)/stimulation of ventral intermediate (Vim) nucleus of thalamus	39-48% improvement in Unified Parkinson's Disease Rating Scale (UPDRS) scores Reduced dosage of medications (STN) More effective than medical management in advanced PD Early intervention may reduce severity, course, and progression of disease Of little benefit for patients with atypical presentations	Intracerebral hemorrhage, infection, seizure (1%-4%) Paresthesias Involuntary movements Cognitive functioning: decreased lexical fluency, impaired executive function (STN > GPi) Psychiatric: depression, mania, anxiety, apathy (STN > GPi)
Dystonia	Contralateral primary (generalized) dystonias; cervical and tardive dystonias (GPi) Contralateral secondary dyskinesia (i.e. drug-induced: L-dopa, neuroleptics; STN)	Preferred target (primary dystonia): stereotactic ablation (pallidotomy)/stimulation of posteroventral GPi Secondary dystonia: stimulation of anterodorsal STN Stimulation of ventral posterior lateral (VPL) thalamic nucleus	Primary dystonia: 51% reduction in Burke-Fahn-Marsden Dystonia Scale (BFMDs) score Secondary dystonia: 62-89% improvement in dystonias Delayed effects: weeks → months	Intracerebral hemorrhage, infection, seizure (1%-4%) Minor effects on cognitive functioning (especially decreased lexical fluency; STN > GPi)
Tremor	Contralateral appendicular ET (first disorder to be treated by DBS; DBS is viable alternative to Rx) Intention tremor (IT) resulting from demyelination of cerebellar outflow tracts (e.g. in multiple sclerosis) Brainstem tremor (Holmes tremor)	Preferred target: stereotactic ablation (thalamotomy)/stimulation of Vim nucleus of thalamus Other targets: stimulation of caudal zona incerta Parkinsonian tremor: stimulation of anterodorsal STN	Durable reductions in essential tremor rating scale (ETRS) scores Reduced dosage of medications Conflicting data on vocal/facial tremor	Intracerebral hemorrhage, infection, seizure (1%-4%) Paresthesias/pain Dysarthria Ataxia Minor effects on cognitive functioning (especially decreased lexical fluency) Tolerance may develop over time

Neuropsychiatric Disorders

- see [Neurology](#), N33 and [Psychiatry](#), PS13, PS7 for *Tourette's Syndrome, Obsessive Compulsive Disorder and Depression*



Table 16. Surgical Targets for Neuropsychiatric Disorders

Disorder	Indications	Procedures	Outcomes	Morbidity
Obsessive Compulsive Disorder (OCD)	Severe symptoms refractory to medical management	Anterior capsulotomy/stimulation of the anterior limb of the internal capsule (IC)	Currently under investigation Reportedly 25-75% response rate	Intracerebral hemorrhages (1-2%) Mild effects on cognitive functioning Anxiety \pm panic disorder (case report)
Tourette's Syndrome	Severe symptoms refractory to medical management	Stimulation of midline intralaminar nuclei of the thalamus Stimulation of motor and limbic portions of GPi Stimulation of the anterior limb of the IC	Currently under investigation Reportedly >70% reduction in vocal or motor tics + urge	Intracerebral hemorrhages (1-2%) Mild sexual dysfunction
Major Depressive Disorder (MDD)	Severe depression refractory to medical management and ECT	Stimulation of the subgenual cingulate cortex	Currently under investigation Reportedly 60% response rate; 35% remission rate	Intracerebral hemorrhages (1-2%) Pain, H/A Worsening mood, irritability

Chronic Pain

Table 17. Surgical Targets for Chronic Pain

Disorder	Indications	Procedures	Outcomes	Morbidity
Neuropathic Pain	Severe, intractable, organic neuropathic pain (e.g. post-stroke pain, phantom limb pain, trigeminal neuralgia, chronic low-back pain, complex regional pain syndrome)	Preferred target: stimulation of the contralateral VPL VPM thalamic nuclei \pm periventricular/periaqueductal gray matter (PVG/PAG) Other targets: stimulation of the contralateral IC Stimulation of the contralateral motor cortex	47% improvement in perception of pain intensity Less favorable results in central pain syndromes and poorly localized pain	Intracerebral hemorrhages (1-2%) Paresthesia Anxiety \pm panic disorder
Nociceptive Pain	Severe, intractable, organic nociceptive pain	Bilateral (most common) stimulation of the PVG/PAG	Reportedly 63% improvement in perception of pain intensity	Intracerebral hemorrhages (1-2%) Paresthesia Anxiety \pm panic disorder

Surgical Management of Epilepsy

- see [Neurology](#), N16 for the medical treatment of epilepsy



Indications

- medically refractory seizures, usually defined as seizures resistant to two first line anti-seizure medications used in succession
- identification of a distinct epileptogenic region through clinical history, EEG, MRI, and neuropsychological testing; other localizing investigations include magnetoencephalography, SPECT, and PET
- if a distinct epileptogenic region cannot be identified, the patient may be a candidate for a palliative procedure such as corpus callosotomy

Procedure

- adults: resection of the hippocampus and parahippocampal gyrus for mesial temporal lobe epilepsy arising from mesial temporal sclerosis
- children: resection of an epileptogenic space-occupying lesion
- hemispherectomy and corpus callosotomy are less common

Outcomes

- 41-79% of adult patients are seizure free for 5 yr after temporal lobe resection
- 58-78% of children are seizure free after surgery
- surgery is associated with improvements in preexisting psychiatric conditions such as depression and anxiety, as well as improvement in quality of life measures

Morbidity

- 0.4-4% of surgical patients will have partial hemianopsia, aphasia, motor deficit, sensory deficit, or cranial nerve palsy following anteromedial temporal lobectomies

- most patients will have some decline in verbal memory following dominant temporal lobectomy and in visuospatial memory in non-dominant temporal resection
- the degree of memory decline stabilizes after 1-2 yr

Predictors

- positive predictive factors for seizure freedom following anteromedial temporal lobectomy
 - hippocampal sclerosis (unilateral)
 - focal localization of interictal epileptiform discharges
 - absence of pre-operative generalized seizures
 - tumoral cause
 - complete resection of the lesion
 - SES



A Randomized, Controlled Trial of Surgery for Temporal Lobe Epilepsy

NEJM 2001;345:311-318

Introduction: This RCT evaluates the efficacy and safety of neurosurgery for temporal lobe epilepsy.

Methods: 80 patients with poorly controlled temporal lobe epilepsy were randomized for surgery (n=40) or for continued treatment with antiepileptic drugs (n=40). The primary outcome was freedom from seizures that impair awareness of self and surroundings during the period of 1 yr. Secondary outcomes included frequency and severity of seizures, quality of life, disability and death.

Results: The surgical group had higher cumulative proportion of patients without seizures impairing awareness compared to the medical group (p<0.01). The surgical group also had lower seizure frequency (p<0.001) and better quality of life (p<0.001). 4 patients in the surgical group had adverse effects (thalamic infarct, n=1; wound infection, n=1; verbal memory decline impairment occupation, n=2). One patient in the medical group died; no patients died in the surgical group.

Conclusions: In patients with poorly controlled temporal-lobe epilepsy, surgery is superior to prolonged medical therapy.

Surgical Management for Trigeminal Neuralgia

- reserved for cases refractory to medical management; see [Neurology, N8](#) for medical management



Surgical Options

- trigeminal nerve branch procedures
 - local blocks (phenol, alcohol)
 - neurectomy of the trigeminal branch
- nerve branches
 - V₁ block at the supraorbital, supratrochlear nerves
 - V₂ block at the foramen rotundum or infraorbital nerves
 - V₃ block at the foramen ovale
- percutaneous trigeminal rhizotomy
 - glycerol injection
 - mechanotrauma via catheter balloon
- radiofrequency thermocoagulation
- Gamma Knife® radiosurgery
- microvascular decompression
 - posterior fossa craniotomy with microsurgical exploration of the root entry zone, displacement of the vessel impinging on the nerve with placement of non-absorbable Teflon® felt

Common Medications

Table 18. Common Medications

Drug Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Side Effects	Common Interactions	Contraindications	Comments
lorazepam (Ativan®)	4 mg IV over 2 min, q10-15min (do not exceed 8 mg/12h)	Status epilepticus	Drowsiness, sedation	Other CNS depressants, digoxin (increases digoxin levels)		Start phenytoin loading simultaneously
carbamazepine (Tegretol®)	Trigeminal neuralgia (tic douloureux): 100 mg PO bid, increase by 200 mg/d up to a maximum of 1,200 mg/d Seizures: 200 mg PO bid, increase by 200 mg (inpatient: q3d; outpatient: q7d) until therapeutic level achieved (usual optimum dosage: 800-1,200 mg/d; range: 600-2,000 mg/d)	Trigeminal neuralgia Seizures	Worsening of seizures, heart failure, arrhythmias, AV block, aplastic anemia, agranulocytosis, thrombocytopenia, hepatitis, erythema multiforme, Stevens-Johnson syndrome	Lithium (increases lithium toxicity), MAOI Other meds may increase carbamazepine levels or have decreased effects	Hypersensitivity to TCAs, previous bone marrow suppression, MAOI in past 14 d	Monitor CBC (potential hematological toxicity)
phenytoin (Dilantin®)	Seizures: Loading dose: 18 mg/kg slow IV or 300-600 mg PO/d divided bid/tid Maintenance: 200-500 mg IV/d (max rate: <40-50 mg/min or 300 mg PO q4h); average maintenance dose: 300 mg/d PO Status epilepticus: 200 mg IV over 30 min (~20 mg/kg; if not taking regularly), or 500 mg IV over 10 min (if already on phenytoin)	Seizures Status epilepticus	Thrombocytopenia, leukopenia, agranulocytosis, pancytopenia, toxic hepatitis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, toxic epidermal necrolysis	Other meds may increase phenytoin levels and toxicity or have decreased effects	Bradycardias, heart block	Important to give over time to prevent causing a cardiac arrest

Table 18. Common Medications (continued)

Drug Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Side Effects	Common Interactions	Contraindications	Comments
dexamethasone (Decadron®)	Loading dose: 10-20 mg IV Maintenance: 4-6 mg IV/d divided qid (may be PO)	Cerebral edema (e.g. secondary to tumor, head injury, pseudotumor cerebri) Pre-operative preparation for patients with increased ICP secondary to brain neoplasms	Pseudotumor cerebri, seizures, heart failure, arrhythmias, thromboembolism, pancreatitis, acute adrenal insufficiency; avoid abrupt withdrawal	Aminoglutethimide, antidiabetics, ASA, NSAIDs, barbituates, phenytoin, rifampin, cardiac glycosides, cyclosporine, ephedrine, oral anticoagulants, potassium-depleting drugs, salicylates, skin-testing antigens, toxoids, vaccines	Systemic fungal infections, immunosuppressive dose with live virus vaccines	No longer used in acute spinal cord injury
mannitol	1-1.5 g/kg IV rapid infusion (350 mL of 20% solution) followed by 0.25 g/kg IV q6h	Raised ICP	Seizures, heart failure	Lithium (increases excretion of lithium)	Anuria, severe pulmonary congestion, frank pulmonary edema, severe heart failure, severe dehydration, metabolic edema, progressive renal disease or dysfunction, active intracranial bleeding except during craniotomy	Effect occurs in 1-5 min, maximal at 20-60 min Often alternated with furosemide 10-20 mg IV q6h Indwelling urinary catheter to measure ins and outs
nimodipine (Nimotop®)	60 mg PO/NG q4h x 21 d started within 96 h of SAH	Vasospasm in SAH	Decreased blood pressure, tachycardia, dyspnea	Antihypertensives (may increase hypotensive effects), CCB (may increase effects), cimetidine (increases nimodipine bioavailability)	None known	Causes vasodilation Only calcium channel blocker that crosses blood brain barrier Use half the normal dose for liver failure; monitor BP always

References

- Adzick N, Thom E, Spong C, et al. A randomized trial of prenatal vs. postnatal repair of myelomeningocele. *NEJM* 2011;364:993-1004.
- Ahn NU, Ahn UM, Nallamshetty L, et al. Cauda equina syndrome in ankylosing spondylitis (the CES-AS syndrome): meta-analysis of outcomes after medical and surgical treatments. *J Spinal Disord* 2001;14:427-433.
- Al-Shahi Salman R, Hall JM, Horne MA, et al. Untreated clinical course of cerebral cavernous malformations: a prospective, population-based cohort study. *Lancet Neurol* 2012;11:217-224.
- Crossman AR, Neary D. *Neuroanatomy: an illustrated colour text*. Toronto: Churchill Livingstone, 1998.
- Barker FG 2nd, Ogilvy CS. Efficacy of prophylactic nimodipine for delayed ischemic deficit after subarachnoid hemorrhage: a metaanalysis. *J Neurosurg* 1996;84:405-414.
- Barnett H, Taylor W, Eliasziw M, et al. Benefit of carotid endarterectomy in patients with symptomatic moderate or severe stenosis. *NEJM* 1998;339:1415-1425.
- Bor AS, Rinkel GJ, van Norden J, et al. Long-term, serial screening for intracranial aneurysms in individuals with a family history of aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage: a cohort study. *Lancet Neurol* 2014;13:385-392.
- Bracken MB, Shepard MJ, Holford TR, et al. Methylprednisolone or tirilizad mesylate administration after acute spinal cord injury: 1-year follow up. Results of the third National Acute Spinal Cord Injury randomized controlled trial. *J Neurosurg* 1998;89:699-706.
- Cakir B, Schmidt R, Reichel H, et al. Lumbar disk herniation: what are reliable criterions indicative for surgery? *Orthopedics* 2009;32:589-597.
- Chesnut RM, Temkin N, Carney N, et al. A trial of intracranial-pressure monitoring in traumatic brain injury. *NEJM* 2012;367:2471-2481.
- Chinot OL, Wick W, Mason W, et al. Bevacizumab plus radiotherapy-temozolamide for newly diagnosed glioblastoma. *NEJM* 2014;370:709-722.
- Dorhout Mees SM, Rinkel GJ, Feigin VL, et al. Calcium antagonists for aneurysmal subarachnoid haemorrhage. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2007;3:CD000277.
- Edlow J, Caplan L. Avoiding pitfalls in the diagnosis of subarachnoid hemorrhage. *NEJM* 2000;342:29-36.
- el Barzouhi A, Vleggeert-Lankamp CL, Lycklama à Nijeholt GJ, et al. Magnetic resonance imaging in follow-up assessment of sciatica. *NEJM* 2013;368:999-1007.
- Executive Committee for the Asymptomatic Carotid Atherosclerosis Study (ACAS). Endarterectomy for asymptomatic carotid artery stenosis. *JAMA* 1995;273:1421-1428.
- Fehlings MG, Tator CH. An evidence-based review of surgical decompression for acute spinal cord injury: rationale, indications, and timing based on experimental and clinical studies. *J Neurosurg* 1999;91(1 Suppl):1-11.
- Fehlings MG, Vaccaro A, Wilson JR, et al. Early vs. delayed decompression for traumatic cervical spinal cord injury: results of the surgical timing in acute spinal cord injury study (STASCIS). *PLoS ONE* 2012;7:e32037.
- Fitzgerald MJT. *Neuroanatomy: basic and clinical*, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1997.
- Goetz CG, Pappert EJ. *Textbook of clinical neurology*, 1st ed. Toronto: WB Saunders, 1999.
- Greenberg MS. *Handbook of neurosurgery*, 5th ed. New York: Thieme Medical Publishers, 2001.
- Greving JP, Wermer MJ, Brown RD Jr, et al. Development of the PHASES score for prediction of risk of rupture of intracranial aneurysms: a pooled analysis of six prospective cohort studies. *Lancet Neurol* 2014;13:59-66.
- Hurlbert RJ, Hadley MN, Walters BC, et al. Pharmacological therapy for acute spinal cord injury. *Neurosurgery* 2013;72(Suppl 2):93-105.
- International Study of Unruptured Intracranial Aneurysms Investigators. Unruptured intracranial aneurysms – risk of rupture and risks of surgical intervention. *NEJM* 1998;339:1725-1733.
- Juttler E, Unterberg A, Woitzik J, et al. Hemispherectomy in older patients with extensive middle-cerebral-artery stroke. *NEJM* 2014;370:1091-1100.
- Kitchen N, McKhann II GM, Manji H. *Clinical neurology and neurosurgery*. Thieme Medical Publishers, 2003.
- Kun LE. Brain tumours: challenges and directions. *Pediat Clin N Am* 1997;44:907-917.
- Lindsay KW, Bone I. *Neurology and neurosurgery illustrated*. New York: Churchill Livingstone, 2004.
- Mark DG, Hung YY, Offerman SR, et al. Nontraumatic subarachnoid hemorrhage in the setting of negative cranial computed tomography results: external validation of a clinical and imaging prediction rule. *Ann Emerg Med* 2012;pii:S0196-0644:1508-1509.
- Molyneux AJ, Kerr RS, Birks J, et al. Risk of recurrent subarachnoid haemorrhage, death, or dependence and standardised mortality ratios after clipping or coiling of an intracranial aneurysm in the International Subarachnoid Aneurysm Trial (ISAT): long-term follow-up. *Lancet Neurol* 2009;8:427-433.

- MRC Asymptomatic Carotid Surgery Trial (ACST) Collaborative Group. Prevention of disabling and fatal strokes by successful carotid endarterectomy in patients without recent neurological symptoms: randomized controlled trial. *Lancet* 2004;363:1491-1502.
- Nieuwenhuys R, Voogd J, van Huijzen C. The human central nervous system, 3rd ed. New York: Springer-Verlag, 1988.
- Ogilvy CS, Stieg PE, Awad I, et al. Recommendations for the management of intracranial arteriovenous malformations. *Circulation* 2001;103:2644-2657.
- Panczkowski DM, Tomyz ND, Okonkwo DO. Comparative effectiveness of using computed tomography alone to exclude cervical spine injuries in obtunded or intubated patients: meta-analysis of 14,327 patients with blunt trauma. *J Neurosurg* 2011;115:541-549.
- Portenoy RK, Lipton RB, Foley KM. Back pain in the cancer patient: an algorithm for evaluation and management. *Neurology* 1987;37:134-138.
- Porter PJ, Willinsky RA, Harper W, et al. Cerebral cavernous malformations: natural history and prognosis after clinical deterioration with or without hemorrhage. *J Neurosurg* 1997;87:190-197.
- Ross J, Al-Shahi Salman R. Interventions for treating brain arteriovenous malformations in adults. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2010;7:CD003436.
- Saal JS, Saal JA, Yurth EF. Nonoperative management of herniated cervical intervertebral disc with radiculopathy. *Spine* 1996;21:1877-1883.
- Santarius T, Kirkpatrick PJ, Ganesan D, et al. Use of drains vs. no drains after burr-hole evacuation of chronic subdural haematoma: a randomised control trial. *Lancet* 2009;374:1067-1073.
- Sayer FT, Kronvall E, Nilsson OG. Methylprednisolone treatment in acute spinal cord injury: the myth challenged through a structured analysis of published literature. *Spine* 2006;6:335-343.
- Shapiro S. Medical realities of cauda equina syndrome secondary to lumbar disc herniation. *Spine* 2000;25:348-351.
- Shemie S, Doig C, Dickens B, et al. Severe brain injury to neurological determination of death: Canadian forum recommendations. *CMAJ* 2006;174:S1-30.
- Spencer S, Huh L. Outcomes of epilepsy surgery in adults and children. *Lancet Neurol* 2008;7:525-37.
- Spetzler RF, Martin NA. A proposed grading system for arteriovenous malformations. *J Neurosurg* 1986;65:476-83.
- Stiell IG, Wells GA, Vandemheen K, et al. The Canadian CT head rule for patients with minor head injury. *Lancet* 2001;357:1391-1396.
- The North American Symptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Trial (NASCET). Beneficial effects of carotid endarterectomy in symptomatic patients with high-grade carotid stenosis. *NEJM* 1991;325:445-453.
- Tsao MN, Rades D, Wirth A, et al. Radiotherapeutic and surgical management for newly diagnosed brain metastasis(es): an American radiation oncology evidence-based guideline. *Pract Radiat Oncol* 2012;2:210-225.
- Walton JGR, Hutchinson M, McArdle MJF, et al. Aids to the examination of the peripheral nervous system. London: Bailliere Tindall, 1986.
- Wiebe S, Blume WT, Girvin JP, et al. Effectiveness and efficiency of surgery for temporal lobe epilepsy study group. A randomized, controlled trial of surgery for temporal-lobe epilepsy. *NEJM* 2001;345:311-318.

Meg Casson, Anna Ly, and Anna Mackenzie, chapter editors

Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Alexa Bramall, EBM editor

Dr. Eva Mocarski, Dr. Amanda Selk, and Dr. Rajiv Shah, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Normal Labor and Delivery	30
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Definition of Labor	
Pregnancy	2	The Cervix	
Diagnosis of Pregnancy		The Fetus	
Maternal Physiology		Four Stages of Labor	
Prenatal Care	4	The Cardinal Movements of the Fetus during Delivery	
Preconception Counseling		Analgesic and Anesthetic Techniques in Labor and Birth	
Initial Prenatal Visit		Fetal Monitoring in Labor	
Subsequent Prenatal Visits		Induction of Labor	35
Prenatal Screening and Diagnostic Tests		Induction Methods	
Counseling of the Pregnant Woman	9	Augmentation of Labor	
Nutrition		High Risk Labor and Delivery	37
Lifestyle		Preterm Labor	
Medications		Premature Rupture of Membranes	
Immunizations		Breech Presentation	
Radiation		Vaginal Birth After Cesarean (Trial of Labor After Cesarean)	
Termination of Pregnancy	11	Prolonged Pregnancy	
Prenatal Fetal Monitoring	12	Intrauterine Fetal Death	
Fetal Movements		Complications of Labor and Delivery	41
Medical Conditions in Pregnancy	13	Meconium in Amniotic Fluid	
Iron and Folate Deficiency Anemia		Abnormal Progression of Labor (Dystocia)	
Diabetes Mellitus		Shoulder Dystocia	
Hypertension in Pregnancy		Umbilical Cord Prolapse	
Nausea and Vomiting		Uterine Rupture	
Hyperemesis Gravidarum		Amniotic Fluid Embolus	
Urinary Tract Infection		Chorioamnionitis	
Infections During Pregnancy		Operative Obstetrics	45
Venous Thromboembolism		Operative Vaginal Delivery	
Bleeding in Pregnancy	21	Forceps	
First and Second Trimester Bleeding		Vacuum Extraction	
Spontaneous Abortions		Lacerations	
Ectopic Pregnancy	22	Episiotomy	
Antepartum Hemorrhage	24	Cesarean Delivery	
Placenta Previa		Puerperal Complications	47
Abruptio Placentae		Postpartum Hemorrhage	
Vasa Previa		Retained Placenta	
Multiple Gestation	27	Uterine Inversion	
Twin-Twin Transfusion Syndrome		Postpartum Pyrexia	
Growth Discrepancies	28	Mastitis	
Intrauterine Growth Restriction		Postpartum Mood Alterations	
Macrosomia		Postpartum Care	50
Polyhydramnios/Oligohydramnios		Breastfeeding and Drugs	
		Common Medications	52
		References	53

Basic Anatomy Review

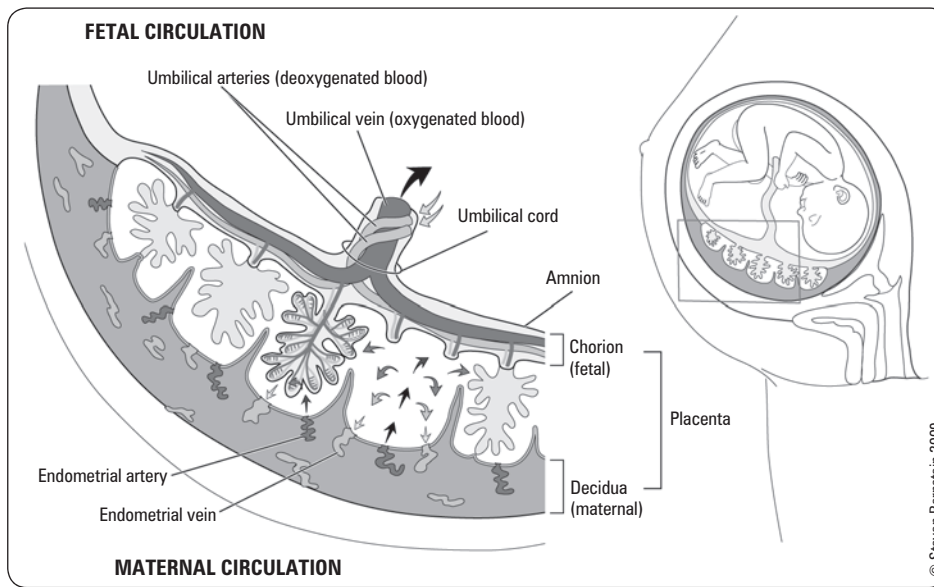


Figure 1. Placental blood flow

Placenta

- site of fetal nutritive, respiratory, and excretory function
- discoid mass composed of fetal (chorion frondosum) and maternal (decidua basalis) tissues divided by fissures into cotyledons (lobules) on the uterine side
- produces hormones such as progesterone, placental lactogen, estrogen, relaxin, β -hCG, and IGFs
- poor implantation can lead to spontaneous abortion
- abnormal location, implantation, or detachment can lead to antepartum hemorrhage (see *Antepartum Hemorrhage*, OB24)

Pregnancy



Diagnosis of Pregnancy

History

- obstetrical and gynecological history
- obtain the year, location, mode of delivery, duration of labor, sex, gestational age, birth weight, and complications of every pregnancy; organize into **GTPAL** format
 - **Gravidity (G)**
 - ♦ **G**: total number of pregnancies of any gestation
 - ♦ includes current pregnancy, abortions, ectopic pregnancies, and hydatidiform moles (multiple gestation = one pregnancy)
 - **Parity (TPAL)**
 - ♦ **T**: number of term infants delivered (>37 wk)
 - ♦ **P**: number of premature infants delivered (20-36+6 wk)
 - ♦ **A**: number of abortions (loss of intrauterine pregnancy prior to viability of fetus <20 wk and/or <500 g fetal weight)
 - induced (therapeutic) and spontaneous (miscarriage)
 - ♦ **L**: number of living children
- symptoms: amenorrhea, N/V, breast tenderness, urinary frequency, fatigue

Physical Signs

- Goodell's sign: softening of the cervix (4-6 wk)
- Chadwick's sign: bluish discoloration of the cervix and vagina due to pelvic vasculature engorgement (6 wk)
- Hegar's sign: softening of the cervical isthmus (6-8 wk)
- uterine enlargement
- breast engorgement

Acronyms

AC	abdominal circumference
ACOG	American Congress of Obstetricians and Gynecologists
AFI	amniotic fluid index
AFLP	acute fatty liver of pregnancy
AFV	amniotic fluid volume
AP	anteroposterior
APS	antiphospholipid antibody syndrome
BPP	biophysical profile
C/S	Cesarean section
CPD	cephalopelvic disproportion
CTG	cardiotocography
CVS	chorionic villus sampling
D&C	dilatation and curettage
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
DVT	deep vein thrombosis
ECV	external cephalic version
EDC	estimated date of confinement
EFM	electronic fetal monitoring
EFW	estimated fetal weight
FDP	fibrin degradation products
FHR	fetal heart rate
FISH	fluorescence <i>in situ</i> hybridization
FL	femur length
FM	fetal movement
FPG	fasting plasma glucose
FTS	first trimester screen
GA	gestational age
GBS	Group B <i>Streptococcus</i>
GDM	gestational diabetes mellitus
GTN	gestational trophoblastic neoplasia
HC	head circumference
HELLP	hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, low platelets
IGF	infant growth factors
IMM	intrauterine fetal death
IOL	induction of labor
IPS	integrated prenatal screen
IUFD	intrauterine fetal death
IUGR	intrauterine growth restriction
IVH	intraventricular hemorrhage
LLDP	left lateral decubitus position
LMP	last menstrual period
MSAFP	maternal serum α -fetoprotein
MSS	maternal serum screen
MTX	methotrexate
NIPT	non-invasive prenatal testing
NST	non-stress test
NTDs	neural tube defects
NTUS	nuchal translucency ultrasound
OA	occiput anterior
OGTT	oral glucose tolerance test
oNTD	open neural tube defect
OP	occiput posterior
OT	occiput transverse
PAPP-A	pregnancy-associated plasma protein A
PG	plasma glucose
PPD	postpartum depression
PPH	postpartum hemorrhage
PPROM	preterm premature rupture of membranes
PROM	premature rupture of membranes
PTL	preterm labor
RDS	respiratory distress syndrome
ROM	rupture of membranes
SA	spontaneous abortion
SFH	symphysis fundal height
SVD	spontaneous vaginal delivery
TENS	transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation
TPN	total parenteral nutrition
UTI	urinary tract infection
VBAC	vaginal birth after Cesarean



Umbilical Vessels

Always check the umbilical cord for 2 arteries and 1 vein: approximately 1/3 of babies with a single uterine artery will have another anomaly

Investigations

- **β-hCG:** peptide hormone composed of α and β subunits produced by placental trophoblastic cells – maintains the corpus luteum during pregnancy
 - positive in serum 9 d post-conception, positive in urine 28 d after first day of LMP
 - plasma levels double every 1-2 d, peak at 8-10 wk, then fall to a plateau until delivery
 - ♦ levels less than expected by dates suggest: ectopic pregnancy, abortion, or inaccurate dates
 - ♦ levels higher than expected suggest: multiple gestation, molar pregnancy, Trisomy 21, or inaccurate dates
- **U/S**
 - transvaginal
 - ♦ 5 wk: gestational sac visible
 - ♦ 6 wk: fetal pole seen
 - ♦ 7-8 wk: fetal heart tones visible
 - transabdominal
 - ♦ 6-8 wk: intrauterine pregnancy visible (β-hCG ≥6,500 mIU/mL)



β-hCG Rule of 10s

10 IU at time of missed menses
100,000 IU at 10 wk (peak)
10,000 IU at term



Trimesters

- T1 (first trimester): 0-12 wk
- T2 (second trimester): 12-28 wk
- T3 (third trimester): 28-40 wk
- Normal pregnancy term: 37-42 wk



Maternal Physiology

Table 1. Physiologic Changes During Pregnancy

Skin	Increased pigmentation of perineum and areola, chloasma (pigmentation changes under eyes and on bridge of nose), linea nigra (midline abdominal pigmentation) Other: spider angiomas, palmar erythema due to increased estrogen, striae gravidarum due to connective tissue changes
Cardiovascular	Hyperdynamic circulation Increased CO, HR, and blood volume Decreased BP due to decreased PVR Enlarging uterus compresses IVC and pelvic veins Decreased venous return leads to risk of hypotension Increased venous pressure leads to risk of varicose veins, hemorrhoids, leg edema
Hematologic	Hemodilution causes physiologic anemia and apparent decrease in hemoglobin and hematocrit Increased leukocyte count but impaired function leads to improvement in autoimmune diseases Gestational thrombocytopenia: mild (platelets >70,000/μL) and asymptomatic, normalizes within 2-12 wk following delivery Hypercoagulable state: increased risk of DVT and PE but also decreased bleeding at delivery
Respiratory	Increased incidence of nasal congestion and epistaxis Increased O ₂ consumption to meet increased metabolic requirements Elevated diaphragm (i.e. patient appears more "barrel-chested") Increased minute ventilation leads to decreased CO ₂ resulting in mild respiratory alkalosis that helps CO ₂ diffuse across the placenta from fetal to maternal circulation No change in VC and FEV ₁ Decreased TLC, FRC, and RV
Gastrointestinal	GERD due to increased intra-abdominal pressure and progesterone (causing decreased sphincter tone and delayed gastric emptying) Increased gallstones due to progesterone causing increased gallbladder stasis Constipation and hemorrhoids due to progesterone causing decreased GI motility
Genitourinary	Increased urinary frequency due to increased total urinary output Increased incidence of UTI and pyelonephritis due to urinary stasis (see Urinary Tract Infection, OB19) Glycosuria that can be physiologic especially in the 3rd trimester Ureters and renal pelvis dilation (R>L) due to progesterone-induced smooth muscle relaxation and uterine enlargement Increased CO and thus increased GFR leads to decreased creatinine (normal in pregnancy 0.4-0.5 mg/dL), uric acid, and BUN
Neurologic	Increased incidence of carpal tunnel syndrome and Bell's palsy
Endocrine	Thyroid: moderate enlargement and increased basal metabolic rate Increased total thyroxine and thyroxine binding globulin (TBG) Free thyroxine index and TSH levels are normal Adrenal: maternal cortisol rises throughout pregnancy (total and free) Calcium: decreased total maternal Ca ²⁺ due to decreased albumin Free ionized Ca ²⁺ (i.e. active) proportion remains the same due to parathyroid hormone (PTH), results in increased bone resorption and gut absorption, increased bone turnover (but no loss of bone density due to estrogen inhibition)

Prenatal Care

- provided by obstetrician, family doctor, midwife, or multidisciplinary team (based on patient preference and risk factors)
- Antenatal Records (province specific)

Preconception Counseling

- 3-8 wk GA is a critical period of organogenesis, so early preparation is vital
- **past medical history:** optimize medical illnesses and necessary medications prior to pregnancy (see *Medical Conditions in Pregnancy*, OB13, and *Medications in Pregnancy*, OB10)
- **supplementation**
 - folic acid: encourage diet rich in folic acid and supplement 8-12 wk preconception until end of T1 to prevent NTDs
 - ♦ 0.4-1 mg daily in all women; 5 mg if previous NTD, antiepileptic medications, DM, or BMI >35 kg/m²
 - iron supplementation, prenatal vitamins
- **risk modification**
 - lifestyle: balanced nutrition and physical fitness
 - medications: patients with chronic diseases should discuss whether their medications may be teratogenic prior to conception so they may be adjusted; it is not advised to stop medications abruptly when becoming pregnant
 - infection screening: rubella, HBsAg, VDRL, Pap smear, gonorrhea/chlamydia, HIV
 - genetic testing as appropriate for high risk groups (see *Prenatal Screening*, Table 2); consider genetics referral in known carriers, recurrent pregnancy loss/stillbirth, family members with developmental delay or birth anomalies
 - social: alcohol, smoking, drug use, domestic violence (see *Family Medicine*, FM12, FM10, FM28)

Initial Prenatal Visit

- usually within 12 wk of the first day of LMP or earlier if <20 or >35 yr old or other risk factors are present
- Antenatal Records are filled out on the first prenatal visit

History

- gestational age by dates from the first day of the LMP
- if LMP unreliable, get a dating ultrasound which could coincide with nuchal translucency at ~12 wks
- dates should change if T1 U/S is greater than 5 days in difference from LMP due date
 - 1st day of LMP + 7 d – 3 mo
 - e.g. LMP = 1 Apr 2013, EDC = 8 Jan 2014 (modify if cycle >28 d by adding number of d >28)
- history of present pregnancy (e.g. bleeding, N/V)
- history of all previous pregnancies
- past medical history, past gynecological history
- prescription and non-prescription medications
- family history: genetic disease, birth defects, multiple gestation
- social history: smoking, alcohol, drug use, domestic violence (see *Family Medicine*, FM10, FM12, FM28), consanguinity

Physical Exam

- complete exam to obtain baseline patient information
- BP and weight important for interpreting subsequent changes
- pelvic exam

Investigations

- blood work
 - CBC, blood group and type, Rh antibodies, infection screening as per preconception counseling
- urine R&M, C&S
 - screen for bacteriuria and proteinuria
- pelvic exam
 - Pap smear (only if required according to patient history and state screening guidelines), cervical culture for *N. gonorrhoeae* (GC) and *C. trachomatis*, vaginal swab for bacterial vaginosis (BV)



Family Doctors and Midwives to Consider OB Consultation if:

- Insulin-dependent GDM
- VBAC
- HTN
- Multiple gestation
- Malpresentation
- Active antepartum hemorrhage
- PTL/PPROM
- Failure to progress/descend
- Induction/augmentation if high risk
- Tears: 3rd or 4th degree
- Retained placenta

Note: Guidelines vary by institution



Advise all women capable of becoming pregnant to supplement their diet with 0.4 mg/d of folic acid (CTFPHC Grade II-2-A Evidence)



Sometimes GP is used to describe gravida and parity; in this case, parity is used to describe number of term and premature infants delivered



In history of previous pregnancies,

ALWAYS ask:

GTPAL
Year
Sex
Weight
Gestational age (GA)
Mode of delivery
Length of labor
Complications



Ask every woman about abuse – not just those whose situations raise suspicion of abuse AND ask as early as possible in pregnancy



Prenatal and genetic screening are voluntary and require proper counseling and informed consent before proceeding. HIV is done automatically in some states as opt-out testing, need to inform patient

Subsequent Prenatal Visits

Timing

- for uncomplicated pregnancies, q4-6wk until 28 wk, q2-3wk from 28 to 36 wk, and weekly from 36 wk until delivery

Assess at Every Visit

- record estimated GA
- history of present pregnancy: fetal movements, uterine bleeding, leaking, cramping
- physical exam: BP, weight gain, thyroid exam, SFH, Leopold's maneuvers (T3) for lie, position, and presentation of fetus
- investigations: urinalysis for glucosuria, proteinuria; fetal heart rate starting at 12 wk using Doppler U/S

Leopold's Maneuvers

- performed after 30-32 wk gestation
- first maneuver: to determine which fetal part is lying furthest away from the pelvic inlet
- second maneuver: to determine the location of the fetal back
- third maneuver: to determine which fetal part is lying above the pelvic inlet
- fourth maneuver: to locate the fetal brow

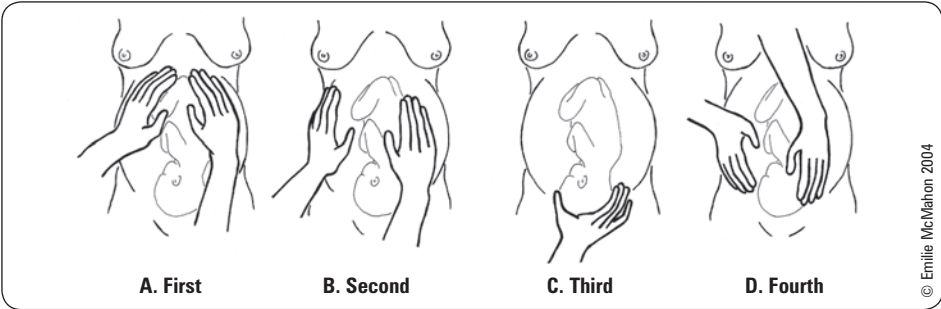


Figure 2. Leopold's maneuvers (T3)
Reprinted with permission from Essentials of Clinical Examination Handbook, 6th ed. Lincoln, McSheffrey, Tran, Wong



Symphysis Fundal Height (SFH)

- 12 wk: Uterine fundus at pubic symphysis
- 20 wk: Fundus at umbilicus, SFH should be within 2 cm of GA between 20-36 wk
- 37 wk: Fundus at sternum



Small for Dates

- Date miscalculation
- IUGR
- Fetal demise
- Oligohydramnios

Large for Dates

- Date miscalculation
- Multiple gestation
- Polyhydramnios
- LGA (familial, DM)
- Fibroids

Prenatal Screening and Diagnostic Tests

Screening Tests

- testing should only occur following counseling and with the informed consent from the patient

Table 2. High-Risk Population Screening Tests

Disease (Inheritance)	Population(s) at Risk	Screening Test(s)
Thalassemia (AR)	Mediterranean, South East Asian, Western Pacific, African, Middle Eastern, Caribbean, South American	CBC (MCV and MCH), Hb electrophoresis, or HPLC
Sickle Cell (AR)	African, Caribbean, Mediterranean, Middle Eastern, Indian, South American	CBC (MCV and MCH), Hb electrophoresis, or HPLC
Cystic Fibrosis (CF) (AR)	Mediterranean, Finnish, Caucasian, or FHx	CFTR gene DNA analysis
Tay Sachs Disease (AR)	Ashkenazi Jewish*, French Canadians, Cajun	Enzyme assay HEXA, or DNA analysis HEXA gene
Fragile X Syndrome (X-linked)	Family history – confirmed or suspected	DNA analysis: FMR-1 gene

AR = autosomal recessive; HEXA = hexosaminidase A; HPLC = high performance liquid chromatography
*If both partners are Ashkenazi Jewish, test for Canavan disease and Familial Dysautonomia (FD); if family history of a specific condition, look for carrier status: e.g. Gaucher, CF, Bloom syndrome, Niemann-Pick disease, etc. In all cases, if both partners positive, refer for genetic counseling

Table 3. Gestation-Dependent Screening Investigations

Gestational Age (wk)	Investigations	Details
8-12	Dating U/S, possible Pap smear, chlamydia/gonorrhea cultures, urine C&S, HIV, VDRL, HepBSAg, Rubella IgG, Parvovirus IgM or IgG if high risk (small child at home or daycare worker/primary teacher), Varicella IgG if no history of disease/immunization, CBC, blood group and screen	
10-12	CVS	
11-14	FTS IPS Part 1	Measures 1. Nuchal translucency on U/S 2. β -hCG 3. PAPP-A
11-14	Nuchal translucency U/S	
15-16 to term	Amniocentesis	
15-20	IPS Part 2	Measures 1. MSAFP 2. β -hCG 3. Unconjugated estrogen (estriol or μ E3) 4. Inhibin A
15-20	MSS (or MSAFP only for patients who did FTS earlier)	Measures 1. MSAFP 2. β -hCG 3. Unconjugated estrogen (estriol or μ E3)
18-20 to term	Fetal movements (quickening)	
18-20	U/S for dates, fetal growth, and anatomy assessment	
24-28	50 g OGCT	
28	Repeat CBC RhIG for all Rh negative women	
35-37	GBS screen	
6 wk postpartum	Discuss contraception, menses, breastfeeding, depression, mental health, support Physical exam: breast exam, pelvic exam including Pap smear	

Maternal serum screen is also referred to as Triple Screen; if Inhibin A is also tested, it is referred to as Quadruple Screen

Ideally testing for MSS and IPS Part 2 occur between 15-18 wk to give women more time to make decisions and move ahead with diagnostic testing should the resulting screen be positive



Routine T2 U/S at 18-22 wk Helps Determine

- Number of fetuses
- GA (if no prior U/S)
- Location of placenta
- Fetal anomalies

Ultrasound Screening

- dating ultrasound best done between 8-12 wk GA (most accurate form of pregnancy dating)
 - measurement of crown-rump length (margin of error \pm 5 d)
 - change EDC to U/S date if >5 d discrepancy from EDC based on LMP
- NTUS at 11-14 wk GA
 - measures the amount of fluid behind the neck of the fetus
 - early screen for Trisomy 21 (may also detect cardiac and other aneuploidies like Turner's syndrome)
 - NT measurement is necessary for the FTS and IPS Part 1
- fetal growth and anatomy ultrasound routinely done at 18-20 wk GA (margin of error \pm 10 d)
- earlier or subsequent ultrasounds performed when medically indicated

Table 4. Comparison of FTS, MSS, and IPS

FTS	MSS	IPS
11-14 wk	15-20 wk	Nuchal translucency on 12 wk U/S FTS at 11-14 wk MSS + inhibin A at 15-20 wk
Risk estimate for 1. Down syndrome (Trisomy 21): increased NT, increased β -hCG, decreased PAPP-A	Risk estimate for 1. oNTD: increased MSAFP (sensitivity 80-90%) 2. Trisomy 21: decreased MSAFP, increased β -hCG, decreased μ E3 (sensitivity 65%) 3. Trisomy 18: decreased MSAFP, decreased β -hCG, decreased μ E3 (sensitivity 80%)	Risk estimate for oNTD, Trisomy 21, Trisomy 18 Sensitivity ~85-90% 2% false positive rate Patients with positive screen should be offered U/S and/or amniocentesis or NIPT
Note: does not measure risk of open neural tube defect (oNTD) and should be combined with MSAFP at 16 wk Useful where patient wants results within the first trimester More accurate estimate of Down syndrome risk than MSS, sensitivity ~85% (when combined with age) 5% false positive rate Patients with positive screen should be offered CVS, amniocentesis, or NIPT (covered in some provinces, self-pay in others)	Only offered alone if patient missed the time window for IPS or FTS 8% baseline false positive rate for Trisomy 21, lower for oNTD and Trisomy 18 Patients with positive screen should be offered U/S, amniocentesis, or NIPT	

Note: In twins, FTS, MSS, and IPS are not applicable; screen with NT for chromosomal abnormalities and MSAFP for oNTDs

Diagnostic Tests

Indications

- maternal age >35 yr (increased risk of chromosomal anomalies)
- risk factors in current pregnancy
 - abnormal U/S
 - abnormal prenatal screen (IPS, FTS, or MSS)
- past history/family history of:
 - previous pregnancy with chromosomal anomaly or genetic disease
 - either parent a known carrier of a genetic disorder or balanced translocation
 - family history of chromosomal anomaly, genetic disorder, birth defect, or undiagnosed mental retardation
 - consanguinity
 - three or more spontaneous abortions

AMNIOCENTESIS

- U/S-guided transabdominal extraction of amniotic fluid

Indications

- identification of genetic anomalies (15-16 wk gestation) as per indications above
- assessment of fetal lung maturity (T3) via the L/S ratio (lecithin:sphingomyelin)
 - if >2:1, RDS is less likely to occur

Advantages

- also screens for oNTD (acetylcholinesterase and amniotic AFP) – 96% accurate
- in women >35 yr, the risk of chromosomal anomaly (1/180) is greater than the risk of miscarriage from the procedure
- more accurate genetic testing than CVS

Disadvantages

- 1/400 – 1/500 risk of spontaneous abortion
- results take 14-28 d; FISH can be done on chromosomes X, Y, 21, 13, 18 to give preliminary results in 48 h

CHORIONIC VILLUS SAMPLING

- biopsy of fetal-derived chorion using a transabdominal needle or transcervical catheter at 10-12 wk

Advantages

- enables pregnancy to be terminated earlier than with amniocentesis
- rapid karyotyping and biochemical assay within 48 h, including FISH analysis
- high sensitivity and specificity

Disadvantages

- 1-2% risk of spontaneous abortion
- does not screen for oNTD
- 1-2% incidence of genetic mosaicism “false negative” results

ISOIMMUNIZATION SCREENING

Definition

- isoimmunization: antibodies (Ab) produced against a specific RBC antigen (Ag) as a result of antigenic stimulation with RBC of another individual

Etiology

- maternal-fetal circulation normally separated by placental barrier, but sensitization can occur and can affect the current pregnancy, or more commonly, future pregnancies
- in pregnancy, anti-Rh Ab produced by a sensitized Rh-negative mother can lead to fetal hemolytic anemia
- overall risk of isoimmunization of an Rh-negative mother with an Rh-positive ABO-compatible infant is 16%
- sensitization routes
 - incompatible blood transfusions
 - previous fetal-maternal transplacental hemorrhage (e.g. ectopic pregnancy, abruption)
 - invasive procedures in pregnancy (e.g. prenatal diagnosis, cerclage, D&C)
 - any type of abortion
 - labor and delivery



NON-INVASIVE PRENATAL TESTING (NIPT)

- New non-invasive screening for Down syndrome in spontaneous singleton pregnancies
- Analyzes maternal blood for circulating cell free fetal DNA (ccfDNA) at 10 wk GA
- High sensitivity (98-99%), FP < 2%
- Disadvantages: less sensitive for Trisomy 18 and 13, does not screen for oNTD, not widely available



DDx of Increased MSAFP

- Incorrect GA
- > 1 fetus (e.g. twins)
- Fetal demise
- oNTD
- Abdominal wall defects (e.g. omphalocele)



DDx of Decreased MSAFP

- Incorrect GA
- Gestational trophoblastic neoplasia
- Missed abortion
- Chromosomal anomalies
- Maternal diabetes



Compared to CVS, amniocentesis has a higher accuracy of prenatal cytogenetic diagnosis (99.8% vs. 97.5%) and lower risk of spontaneous abortion (0.5% vs. 1-2%)



Risk Factors for Neural Tube Defects

GRIMM

Genetics: family history of NTD (risk of having second child with NTD is increased to 2-5%), consanguinity, chromosomal (characteristic of Trisomy 13, 18, and 21)

Race: European Caucasians > African Americans, 3-fold higher in Hispanics

Insufficient vitamins: zinc and folate

Maternal chronic disease (e.g. DM)

Maternal use of antiepileptic drugs

General population risk for NTD is 0.1%

Investigations

- routine screening with indirect Coombs test at first visit for blood group, Rh status, and antibodies
- Kleihauer-Betke test used to determine extent of fetomaternal hemorrhage by estimating volume of fetal blood volume that entered maternal circulation
- detailed U/S for hydrops fetalis

Prophylaxis

- exogenous Rh IgG (Rhogam® or WinRho®) binds to Rh antigens of fetal cells and prevents them from contacting maternal immune system
- Rhogam® (300 µg) given to all Rh negative and antibody screen negative women in the following scenarios
 - routinely at 28 wk GA (provides protection for ~12 wk)
 - within 72 h of the birth of an Rh positive fetus
 - with a positive Kleihauer-Betke test
 - with any invasive procedure in pregnancy (CVS, amniocentesis)
 - in ectopic pregnancy
 - with miscarriage or therapeutic abortion (only 50 µg required)
 - with an antepartum hemorrhage
- if Rh negative and Ab screen positive, follow mother with serial monthly Ab titres throughout pregnancy ± serial amniocentesis as needed (Rhogam® has no benefit)

Investigations

- MCA dopplers are done to assess degree of fetal anemia or if not available bilirubin is measured by serial amniocentesis to assess the severity of hemolysis
- cordocentesis for fetal Hb should be used cautiously (not first line)

Treatment

- falling biliary pigment warrants no intervention (usually indicative of either unaffected or mildly affected fetus)
- intrauterine transfusion of O-negative pRBCs may be required for severely affected fetus or early delivery of the fetus for exchange transfusion

Complications

- anti-Rh IgG can cross the placenta and cause fetal RBC hemolysis resulting in fetal anemia, CHF, edema, ascites
- severe cases can lead to fetal hydrops (edema in at least two fetal compartments due to fetal heart failure secondary to anemia) or erythroblastosis fetalis (moderate to severe immune-mediated hemolytic anemia)

GROUP B *STREPTOCOCCUS* SCREEN

Epidemiology

- 15-40% vaginal carrier rate

Risk Factors (for neonatal disease)

- GBS bacteriuria during current pregnancy even if treated
- previous infant with invasive GBS infection
- preterm labor <37 wk
- ruptured membranes >18 h before delivery
- intrapartum maternal temperature 100.4°F
- positive GBS screen during current pregnancy

Clinical Features

- not harmful to mother
- risk of vertical transmission (neonatal sepsis, meningitis or pneumonia, and death)

Investigations

- offer screening to all women at 35-37 wk with vaginal and anorectal swabs for C&S

Treatment

- treatment of maternal GBS at delivery decreases neonatal morbidity and mortality
- indications for antibiotic prophylaxis: positive GBS screen or GBS status unknown and one of the risk factors
- antibiotics for GBS prophylaxis
 - penicillin G 5 million units IV then 2.5 million units IV q4h until delivery
 - penicillin allergic but not at risk for anaphylaxis: cefazolin 2 g IV then 1 g q8h
 - penicillin allergic and at risk for anaphylaxis: vancomycin 1 g IV q12h until delivery
- if fever, broad spectrum antibiotic coverage is advised



Rh Antibody Titre

A positive titre ($\geq 1:16$) indicates an increased risk of fetal hemolytic anemia



Standard dose of 300 µg of Rhogam sufficient for 30 mL of fetal blood. Give additional 10 µg of Rhogam for every mL of fetal blood over 30 mL



Indications for Intrapartum Antibiotic GBS Prophylaxis

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Prevention of Perinatal Group B Streptococcal Disease. *MMWR* 2010;59(RR-10):14

- Previous infant with invasive GBS disease.
- GBS bacteriuria during any trimester of the current pregnancy.
- Positive GBS vaginal-rectal screening culture in late gestation during current pregnancy.
- Unknown GBS status at the onset of labor (culture not done, incomplete, or results unknown) and any of the following:
 - Delivery at <37 wk gestation.
 - Amniotic membrane rupture ≥ 18 h.
 - Intrapartum temperature $\geq 100.4^\circ\text{F}$ ($\geq 38.0^\circ\text{C}$).
 - Intrapartum nucleic-acid amplification test positive for GBS.

Counseling of the Pregnant Woman

Nutrition

- 3-4 servings of milk products daily (greater if multiple gestation)
- a daily caloric increase of ~100 cal/d in the 1st trimester, ~300 cal/d in the second and third trimesters and ~450 cal/d during lactation
- daily multivitamin should be continued in the 2nd trimester for women who do not consume an adequate diet; otherwise routine vitamin supplementation is not necessary (avoid excess vitamin A)
- nutrients important during pregnancy
 - folate: 0.4 mg/d for first 12 wk (5 mg/d if high risk)
 - ♦ supports maternal increase in blood volume, growth of maternal and fetal tissue, decreases incidence of neural tube defects
 - ♦ foods rich in folic acid include: spinach, lentils, chick peas, asparagus, broccoli, peas, Brussels sprouts, corn, and oranges
 - calcium: 1,200-1,500 mg/d
 - ♦ maintains integrity of maternal bones, skeletal development of fetus, breast milk production
 - vitamin D: 1,000 IU
 - ♦ promotes calcium absorption
 - iron: 0.8 mg/d in T1, 4-5 mg/d in T2, and >6 mg/d in T3
 - ♦ supports maternal increase in blood cell mass, supports fetal and placental tissue
 - ♦ required amounts exceed normal body stores and typical intake, and therefore need supplemental iron
 - ♦ iron is the only known nutrient for which requirements during pregnancy cannot be met by diet alone (see *Iron Deficiency Anemia*, OB13)
 - essential fatty acids – supports fetal neural and visual development
 - ♦ contained in vegetable oils, margarines, peanuts, fatty fish

Caffeine

- diuretic and stimulant that readily crosses placenta
- less than 300 mg/d is not thought to contribute to miscarriage or preterm birth (ACOG)
 - relationship between caffeine and IUGR is unknown (ACOG)
 - 1-2 cups/d is accepted as safe during pregnancy

Herbal Teas and Preparations

- not enough scientific information about safety of various herbs and herbal products to recommend their use during pregnancy
- some herbal teas can have toxic or pharmacological effects on the mother or fetus
- chamomiles have been reported to exhibit adverse effects on the uterus

Food Borne Illnesses

- microbiological contamination of food may occur through cross-contamination and/or improper food handling
 - listeriosis (*Listeria monocytogenes*) and toxoplasmosis (*Toxoplasma gondii*) are of concern during pregnancy
 - avoid consumption of raw meats, fish, poultry, raw eggs, and unpasteurized dairy products
 - avoid unpasteurized soft cheeses, deli meats, smoked salmon, and pates as they may be sources of *Listeria*
- chemical contamination of food
 - current guideline for mercury of 0.5 ppm in fish is not considered harmful for the general population, including pregnant women
 - consumption of top predator fish such as shark, swordfish, king mackerel, tilefish, and fresh/frozen tuna (not canned tuna) should be limited to one meal per month



Sources of Caffeine

- 5 oz cup coffee: 40-180 mg
- 5 oz brewed tea: 20-90 mg
- 12 oz cola: 46 mg
- Red Bull®: 67 mg
- Dark chocolate bar: 10 mg
- 8 oz hot chocolate: 5 mg



Herbal Teas Considered Safe in Moderation (2-3 cups/d)

- Citrus peel
- Ginger
- Lemon balm
- Linden flower – not with prior cardiac condition
- Orange peel
- Rose hip

Lifestyle

- exercise under physician guidance
- absolute contraindications
 - ruptured membranes, preterm labor, hypertensive disorders of pregnancy, incompetent cervix, IUGR, multiple gestations (>3), placenta previa after 28th wk, persistent 2nd or 3rd trimester bleeding, uncontrolled type 1 DM, uncontrolled thyroid disease, or other serious cardiovascular, respiratory, or systemic disorder

- relative contraindications
 - previous preterm birth, mild/moderate cardiovascular or respiratory disorder, anemia (Hb ≤ 10 g/dL), malnutrition or eating disorder, twin pregnancy after 28th wk, other significant medical conditions
- weight gain: optimal gain depends on pre-pregnancy BMI (varies from 6.8-18.2 kg)
- work: strenuous work, extended hours and shift work during pregnancy may be associated with greater risk of low birth weight, prematurity, and spontaneous abortion
- travel: not harmful, but stress related to travel may be associated with preterm labor
 - air travel is acceptable in second trimester; airline cutoff for travel is 36-38 wk gestation depending on the airline to avoid giving birth on the plane
- sexual intercourse: may continue, except in patients at risk for: abortion, preterm labor, or placenta previa; breast stimulation may induce uterine activity and is discouraged in high-risk patients near term
- smoking: assist/encourage to reduce or quit smoking
 - increased risk of: decreased birth weight, placenta previa/abruption, spontaneous abortion, preterm labor, stillbirth
- alcohol: no amount of alcohol is safe in pregnancy; encourage abstinence from alcohol during pregnancy; alcohol increases incidence of abortion, stillbirth, and congenital anomalies
 - fetal alcohol syndrome (see [Pediatrics, P24](#))
- cocaine: microcephaly, growth retardation, prematurity, abruptio placentae



Expected Weight Gain

BMI (kg/m ²)	Weight (kg)
< 19	12.7-18.2
19-25	11.3-15.9
> 25	6.8-11.3

General Rule: 1-3.5 kg/wk during T1, then 0.45 kg/wk until delivery



Medications

- most drugs cross the placenta to some extent
- very few drugs are teratogenic, but very few drugs have proven safety in pregnancy
- use any drug with caution and only if necessary
- analgesics: acetaminophen preferable to ASA or ibuprofen

Table 5. Documented Adverse Effects, Contraindicated

Contraindicated Medication	Adverse Effect
ACE inhibitors	Fetal renal defects, IUGR, oligohydramnios
tetracycline	Stains infant's teeth, may affect long bone development
retinoids (e.g. Accutane®)	CNS, craniofacial, cardiac, and thymic anomalies
DES (and other estrogenic or androgenic compounds)	Vaginal adenosis, adenocarcinoma, uterine malformation in females exposed to DES <i>in utero</i>
misoprostol	Mobius syndrome (congenital facial paralysis with or without limb defects, spontaneous abortion, preterm labor)

Table 6. Documented Adverse Effects, Weigh Benefits vs. Risks, and Consider Medication Change

Medication	Adverse Effect
phenytoin	Fetal hydantoin syndrome in 5-10% (IUGR, mental retardation, facial dysmorphism, congenital anomalies)
valproate	oNTD in 1%
carbamazepine	oNTD in 1-2%
lithium	Ebstein's cardiac anomaly, goiter, hyponatremia
warfarin	Increased incidence of spontaneous abortion, stillbirth, prematurity, IUGR, fetal warfarin syndrome (nasal hypoplasia, epiphyseal stippling, optic atrophy, mental retardation, intracranial hemorrhage)
erythromycin	Maternal liver damage (acute fatty liver)
sulpha drugs	Anti-folate properties, therefore theoretical risk in T1; risk of kernicterus in T3
chloramphenicol	Gray baby syndrome (fetal circulatory collapse 2° to toxic accumulation)



Drug Resources During Pregnancy and Breastfeeding

- Motherisk at the Hospital for Sick Children in Toronto: www.motherisk.org
- Hale T. Medications and mothers' milk, 11th ed. Pharmasoft Publishing, 2004

Immunizations

Intrapartum

- administration is dependent on the risk of infection vs. risk of immunization complications
- safe: tetanus toxoid, diphtheria, influenza, hepatitis B, pertussis
- avoid live vaccines (risk of placental and fetal infection): polio, measles/mumps/rubella, varicella
- contraindicated: rubella, oral typhoid

Postpartum

- rubella vaccine for all non-immune mothers
- hepatitis B vaccine should be given to infant within 12 h of birth if maternal status unknown or positive – follow-up doses at 1 and 6 mo
- human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccine – if meets criteria
- safe: tetanus toxoid, diphtheria, influenza, hepatitis B, pertussis

Radiation

- ionizing radiation exposure is considered teratogenic at high doses
 - if indicated for maternal health, should be done
- imaging not involving direct abdominal/pelvic high dosage is not associated with adverse effects
 - higher dosage to fetus: plain x-ray of lumbar spine/abdomen/pelvis, barium enema, CT abdomen, pelvis, lumbar spine
- most investigations involve minimal radiation exposure
- radioactive isotopes of iodine are contraindicated
- no known adverse effects from U/S or MRI (long-term effects of gadolinium unknown, avoid if possible)



Radiation in Pregnancy

- Necessary amount to cause miscarriage: >5 rads
- Necessary amount to cause malformations: >20-30 rads

Table 7. Approximate Fetal Doses from Common Diagnostic Procedures

Examination	Estimated Fetal Dose (rad)	Number of Exams Safe in Pregnancy
Plain Film		
Abdomen	0-14	35
Pelvis	0-11	45
Lumbar spine	0-17	29
Thoracic spine	0.009	555
Chest (2 views)	<0.001	5,000
CT		
Abdomen	0-8	6
Pelvis	2-5	2
Lumbar spine	0-24	20
Chest	0.006	833

Adapted from: Cohen-Kerem, et al. 2005 and Valentin 2000

Termination of Pregnancy

- see [Gynecology](#), GY20

Definition

- active termination of a pregnancy before fetal viability (usually <500 g or <20 wk GA)

Indications

- inability to carry a pregnancy to term due to medical or social reasons (including patient preference)

Management

- medical
 - <9 wk: methotrexate + misoprostol
 - >12 wk: prostaglandins (intra- or extra-amniotically or IM) or misoprostol
- surgical
 - <12 wk: dilatation + vacuum aspiration ± curettage
 - >12 wk: dilatation and evacuation, early induction of labor
 - common complications: pain or discomfort
 - less common complications: hemorrhage, perforation of uterus, laceration of cervix, risk of infertility, infection/endometritis, Asherman's syndrome (adhesions within the endometrial cavity causing amenorrhea/infertility), retained products of conception
- counseling
 - supportive and counseling services
 - future contraception and family planning services
 - ensure follow-up



CMA Policy (1988)

"Induced abortion should be uniformly available to all women in Canada" and "there should be no delay in the provision of abortion services"



Terminations are generally done until the stage of viability (~23.5 wk), although this varies depending on the provider



For prevention of pregnancy after rape, ensure appropriate access to emergency contraception (see [Gynecology](#), GY20)

Prenatal Fetal Monitoring

Fetal Movements

- patients will generally first notice fetal movement ("quickening") at 18-20 wk in primigravidas; can occur 1-2 wk earlier in multigravidas; can occur 1-2 wk later if placenta is implanted on the anterior wall of uterus
- if the patient is concerned about decreased fetal movement, she is counseled to choose a time when the fetus is normally active to count movements (usually recommended after 26 wk)
- all high risk women should be told to do FM counts
 - if there is a subjective decrease in fetal movement, try drinking juice, eating, changing position, or moving to a quiet room and count for 2 h; ≥ 6 movements in 2 h expected
 - if there are < 6 movement counts in 2 h, patient should present to labor and delivery triage



DDx of Decreased Fetal Movements

DASH

Death of fetus
Amniotic fluid decreased
Sleep cycle of fetus
Hunger/Thirst



NON-STRESS TEST

Definition

- FHR tracing ≥ 20 min using an external Doppler to assess FHR and its relationship to fetal movement (see *Fetal Monitoring in Labor*, OB33)

Indication

- any suggestion of uteroplacental insufficiency or suspected compromise in fetal well-being

Table 8. Classification of Antepartum Non-Stress Test

Parameter	Normal NST (Previously "Reactive")	Atypical NST (Previously "Non-Reactive")	Abnormal NST (Previously "Non-Reactive")
Baseline	110-160 bpm	100-110 bpm or > 160 bpm for < 30 min Rising baseline	Bradycardia < 100 bpm Tachycardia > 160 for > 30 min Erratic baseline
Variability	6-25 bpm (moderate) ≤ 5 (absent or minimal) for < 40 min	5 (absent or minimal) for 40-80 min	≤ 5 for 80 min Sinusoidal 25 bpm for > 10 min
Decelerations	None or occasional variable < 30 s	Variable decelerations 30-60 s duration	Variable decelerations > 60 s Late deceleration(s)
Accelerations in Term Fetus	2 accelerations with acme of ≥ 15 bpm, lasting 15 s over < 40 min of testing	2 accelerations with acme of ≥ 15 bpm, lasting 15 s in 40-80 min	< 2 accelerations with acme of ≥ 15 bpm, lasting 15 s in > 80 min
Accelerations in Preterm Fetus (< 32 wk)	> 2 accelerations with acme of > 10 bpm, lasting 10 s in < 40 min	< 2 accelerations with acme of > 10 bpm, lasting 10 s in 40-80 min	< 2 accelerations with acme of > 10 bpm, lasting 10 s in > 80 min
Action	FURTHER ASSESSMENT OPTIONAL, based on total clinical picture	FURTHER ASSESSMENT REQUIRED	URGENT ACTION REQUIRED An overall assessment of the situation and further investigation with U/S or BPP is required; some situations will require delivery

Adapted from: SOGC, Fetal Health Surveillance: Antepartum and Intrapartum Consensus Guideline, September 2007



Normal NST: 2 accels, > 15 bpm from baseline, lasting > 15 s in 20 min

Operating Characteristics

- false positive rate depends on duration; false negative rate = 0.2-0.3%

Interpretation

- normal: at least 2 accelerations of FHR > 15 bpm from the baseline lasting > 15 s, in 20 min
- abnormal: < 2 accelerations of FHR in 40 min
- if no observed accelerations or fetal movement in the first 20 min, stimulate fetus (fundal pressure, acoustic/vibratory stimulation) and continue monitoring for 30 min
- if NST abnormal, then perform BPP

BIOPHYSICAL PROFILE

Definition

- U/S assessment of the fetus \pm NST

Indications

- abnormal or atypical NST
- post-term pregnancy
- decreased fetal movement
- any other suggestion of fetal distress or uteroplacental insufficiency

Operating Characteristics

- false positive rate $\leq 30\%$, false negative rate = 0.1%

Table 9. Scoring of the BPP

Parameter	Reassuring (2 points)	Non-Reassuring (0 points)
AFV*	Fluid pocket of 2 cm in 2 axes	Oligohydramnios
Breathing	At least one episode of breathing lasting at least 30 s	No breathing
Limb Movement	Three discrete movements	Two or less
Fetal Tone	At least one episode of limb extension followed by flexion	No movement

*AFV is a marker of chronic hypoxia, all other parameters indicate acute hypoxia



Reassuring BPP (8/8)

LAMB

Limb extension + flexion

AFV 2 cm x 2 cm

Movement (3 discrete)

Breathing (one episode x 30 s)

Interpretation

- 8: perinatal mortality rate 1:1,000; repeat BPP as clinically indicated
- 6: perinatal mortality 31:1,000; repeat BPP in 24 h
- 0-4: perinatal mortality rate 200:1,000; deliver fetus if benefits of delivery outweigh risks

Medical Conditions in Pregnancy

Iron and Folate Deficiency Anemia

Table 10. Iron Deficiency and Folate Deficiency Anemia

	Iron Deficiency Anemia	Folate Deficiency Anemia
Etiology	See Hematology, H15	See Hematology, H25
Epidemiology	Responsible for 80% of causes of non-physiologic anemia during pregnancy	Incidence varies from 0.5-25% depending on region, population, diet
Clinical Features	See Hematology, H15	See Hematology, H25
Investigations	See Hematology, H15	See Hematology, H25
Management	Prevention (non-anemic): 30 mg elemental iron/d (met by most prenatal vitamins) Treatment (anemic): 30-120 mg elemental iron/d 325 mg ferrous fumarate = 106 mg elemental Fe^{2+} ; 325 mg ferrous sulfate = 65 mg elemental Fe^{2+} ; 325 mg ferrous gluconate = 36 mg elemental Fe^{2+} Polysaccharide-Iron Complex = 150 mg elemental Fe/capsule	Prevention: 0.4-1 mg folic acid PO daily for 1-3 mo preconceptually and throughout T1, or 5 mg folic acid per day with past history of oNTD, DM, or anti-epileptic medication use
Complications	Maternal: angina, CHF, infection, slower recuperation, preterm labor Fetal: decreased oxygen carrying capacity leading to fetal distress, IUGR, and low birth weight	Maternal: decreased blood volume, N/V, anorexia Fetal: neural tube defects in T1, low birth weight, prematurity
Notes	Mother needs 1 g of elemental iron per fetus; this amount exceeds normal stores + dietary intake Iron requirements increase during pregnancy due to fetal/placental growth (500 mg), increased maternal RBC mass (500 mg), and losses (200 mg) – more needed for multiple gestations	Minimum daily requirement is 0.4 mg Most often associated with iron deficiency anemia Folic acid is necessary for closure of neural tube during early fetal development (by day 28 of gestation)



Diabetes Mellitus

Classification of Diabetes Mellitus

- type 1 and type 2 DM (see [Endocrinology, E6](#))
- GDM: onset of DM during pregnancy

Etiology

- type 1 and type 2 DM
- GDM: usually around 24-28 wk GA, anti-insulin factors produced by placenta and high maternal cortisol levels create increased peripheral insulin resistance → higher fasting glucose → leading to GDM and/or exacerbating pre-existing DM

Epidemiology

- 2-4% of pregnancies are complicated by DM



MANAGEMENT

A. TYPE 1 and TYPE 2 DM

Preconception

- pre-plan and refer to high-risk clinic
- optimize glycemic control
- counsel patient re: potential risks and complications
- evaluate for diabetic retinopathy, neuropathy, CAD

Pregnancy

- if already on oral medication, generally switch to insulin therapy
 - continuing glyburide or metformin controversial
 - teratogenicity unknown for other oral anti-hyperglycemics
- tight glycemic control
 - insulin dosage may need to be adjusted in type 2 due to increased demand and increased insulin resistance
- monitor as for normal pregnancy plus initial 24 h urine protein and creatinine clearance, retinal exam, HbA1c
 - HbA1c: >140% of pre-pregnancy value associated with increased risk of spontaneous abortion and congenital malformations
- increased fetal surveillance (BPP, NST), consider fetal ECHO to look for cardiac abnormalities

Labor

- timing of delivery depends on fetal and maternal health and risk factors (i.e. must consider size of baby, lung maturity, maternal blood glucose, and blood pressure control)
- can wait for spontaneous labor if blood glucose well-controlled and BPP normal
- induce by 40 wk
- type of delivery
 - increased risk of cephalopelvic disproportion (CPD) and shoulder dystocia with babies >4,000 g (8.8 lbs)
 - elective C/S for predicted birthweight >4,500 g (9.9 lbs) (controversial)
- monitoring
 - during labor monitor blood glucose q1h with patient on insulin and dextrose drip
 - aim for blood glucose between 60-120 mg/dL to reduce the risk of neonatal hypoglycemia

Postpartum

- insulin requirements dramatically drop with expulsion of placenta (source of insulin antagonists)
- no insulin is required for 48-72 h postpartum in most type 1 DM
- monitor glucose q6h, restart insulin at two-thirds of pre-pregnancy dosage when glucose >144 mg/dL

B. GESTATIONAL DIABETES MELLITUS

Screening and Diagnosis

- all pregnant women between 24-28 wk GA (or at any stage if high risk)
- 2 screening options
 - 1-step screening with fasting 75 g OGTT; GDM if ≥ 1 of:
 - ♦ FPG ≥ 90 mg/dL
 - ♦ 1h PG ≥ 180 mg/dL
 - ♦ 2h PG ≥ 153 mg/dL
 - 2-step screening
 - ♦ Step 1: Perform a random nonfasting 50 g OGCT
 - 1h PG <140 mg/dL is normal
 - 1h PG ≥ 200 mg/dL is GDM
 - if 1h PG 140-200 mg/dL, proceed to Step 2
 - ♦ Step 2: Perform a fasting 75 g OGTT, GDM if ≥ 1 of:
 - FPG ≥ 95 mg/dL
 - 1h PG ≥ 190 mg/dL
 - 2h PG ≥ 162 mg/dL

Management

- first line is management through diet modification and increased physical activity
- initiate insulin therapy if glycemic targets not achieved within 2 wk of lifestyle modification alone
- glycemic targets: FPG <95 mg/dL, 1h PG <140 mg/dL, 2h PG <120 mg/dL



Post-prandial blood glucose values seem to be the most effective at determining the likelihood of macrosomia or other adverse pregnancy outcomes



Monitoring Glucose Levels

- Frequent measurements of blood glucose during pregnancy are advised for women with type 1 or 2 DM to help prevent or treat both hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia, and also improves neonatal outcome
- Aim for FPG ≤ 95 mg/dL, 1 h post prandial
- PG ≤ 140 mg/dL, 2 h post prandial PG ≤ 120 mg/dL
- Most women can be followed with monthly HbA1c determinations



Risk Factors for GDM

- Age >25 yr
- Obesity
- Ethnicity (Aboriginal, Hispanic, Asian, African)
- FHx of DM
- Previous history of GDM
- Previous child with birthweight >4.0 kg
- Polycystic ovarian syndrome
- Current use of glucocorticoids
- Essential HTN or pregnancy-related HTN

- use of oral agents can be used in pregnancy but is off-label and should be discussed with patient
- stop insulin and diabetic diet postpartum
- follow-up with 75 g OGTT 6 wk-6 mo postpartum

Prognosis

- most maternal and fetal complications are related to hyperglycemia and its effects

Long-Term Maternal Complications

- type 1 and type 2 DM: risk of progressive retinopathy and nephropathy
- GDM: 50% risk of developing type 2 DM in next 20 yr

Table 11. Complications of DM in Pregnancy

Maternal	Fetal
Obstetric <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • HTN/preeclampsia (especially if pre-existing nephropathy/proteinuria): insulin resistance is implicated in etiology of HTN • Polyhydramnios: maternal hyperglycemia leads to fetal hyperglycemia, which leads to fetal polyuria (a major source of amniotic fluid) 	Growth Abnormalities <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Macrosomia: maternal hyperglycemia leads to fetal hyperinsulinism resulting in accelerated anabolism • IUGR: due to placental vascular insufficiency
Diabetic Emergencies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hypoglycemia • Ketoacidosis • Diabetic coma 	Delayed Organ Maturity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fetal lung immaturity: hyperglycemia interferes with surfactant synthesis (respiratory distress syndrome)
End-Organ Involvement or Deterioration (occur in type 1 DM and type 2 DM, not in GDM) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Retinopathy • Nephropathy 	Congenital Anomalies (occur in type 1 DM and type 2 DM, not in GDM) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2-7x increased risk of cardiac (VSD), NTD, GU (cystic kidneys), GI (anal atresia), and MSK (sacral agenesis) anomalies due to hyperglycemia • Note: Pregnancies complicated by GDM do not manifest an increased risk of congenital anomalies because GDM develops after the critical period of organogenesis (in T1)
Other <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pyelonephritis/UTI: glucosuria provides a culture medium for <i>E. coli</i> and other bacteria • Increased incidence of spontaneous abortion (in type 1 DM and type 2 DM, not in GDM): related to pre-conception glycemic control 	Labor and Delivery <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Preterm labor/prematurity: most commonly in patients with HTN/preeclampsia • Preterm labor is associated with poor glycemic control but the exact mechanism is unknown • Increased incidence of stillbirth • Birth trauma: due to macrosomia, can lead to difficult vaginal delivery and shoulder dystocia
	Neonatal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hypoglycemia: due to pancreatic hyperplasia and excess insulin secretion in the neonate • Hyperbilirubinemia and jaundice: due to prematurity and polycythemia • Hypocalcemia: exact pathophysiology not understood, may be related to functional hypoparathyroidism • Polycythemia: hyperglycemia stimulates fetal erythropoietin production

Hypertension in Pregnancy



- hypertensive disorders of pregnancy are classified as either **pre-existing** or **gestational** HTN

PRE-EXISTING HYPERTENSION

Definition

- HTN (>140/90) prior to 20 wk GA, persisting >7 wk postpartum
- essential HTN is associated with an increased risk of gestational HTN, abruptio placentae, IUGR, and IUFD

GESTATIONAL HYPERTENSION

Definition

- sBP >140 or dBP >90 developing after 20th wk GA in a woman known to be normotensive before pregnancy

Risk Factors

- maternal factors
 - primigravida (80-90% of gestational HTN)
 - first conception with a new partner
 - PMHx or FHx of gestational HTN
 - DM, chronic HTN, or renal insufficiency
 - Antiphospholipid syndrome
 - extremes of maternal age (<18 or >35 yr)
- fetal factors
 - IUGR or oligohydramnios, GTN, multiple gestation, fetal hydrops
 - previous stillbirth or IUFD



Ominous Symptoms of HTN in Pregnancy
RUQ pain, headache, and visual disturbances

Clinical Evaluation of Hypertension in Pregnancy

- in general, clinical evaluation should include the mother and fetus
- **evaluation of mother**
 - body weight
 - central nervous system
 - ♦ presence and severity of headache
 - ♦ visual disturbances – blurring, scotomata
 - ♦ tremulousness, irritability, somnolence
 - ♦ hyperreflexia
 - hematologic
 - ♦ bleeding, petechiae
 - hepatic
 - ♦ RUQ or epigastric pain
 - ♦ severe N/V
 - renal
 - ♦ urine output and color
 - non-dependent edema (i.e. hands and face)
- **evaluation of fetus**
 - fetal movement
 - fetal heart rate tracing – NST
 - ultrasound for growth
 - BPP
 - Doppler flow studies

Laboratory Evaluation of Gestational Hypertension

- hemoglobin, platelets, blood film
- PTT, INR, fibrinogen – especially if surgery or regional anesthetics are planned
- ALT, AST, LDH, bilirubin
- proteinuria, creatinine, uric acid
- 24 h urine collection for total protein and creatinine clearance or spot urine protein:creatinine ratio

Complications

- maternal
 - liver and renal dysfunction
 - seizure
 - abruptio placentae
 - left ventricular failure/pulmonary edema
 - DIC (release of placental thromboplastin consumptive coagulopathy)
 - HELLP syndrome
 - ♦ treat with FFP infusion or plasma exchange
 - hemorrhagic stroke (50% of deaths)
- fetal (2° to placental insufficiency)
 - IUGR, prematurity, abruptio placentae, IUFD

Management

- target a BP of 130-155/80-105 in women without comorbidities or 130-139/80-89 in women with comorbidities
- for both pre-existing and gestational HTN, labetalol 100-400 mg PO bid-tid, nifedipine (PA tablets 10-20 mg PO bid-tid or XL preparation 20-60 mg PO daily), or α -methyldopa 250-500 mg PO tid-qid
- for severe HTN (BP >160/110), give one of
 - labetalol 20 mg IV then 20-80 mg IV q30min (max 300 mg)
 - nifedipine 5-10 mg capsule q30min
 - hydralazine 5 mg IV, repeat 5-10 mg IV q30min (max 20 mg IV)
- no ACE inhibitors, ARBs, diuretics, prazosin, or atenolol
- pre-existing HTN and gestational HTN without any deterioration can be followed until 37 wk then decide to induce shortly thereafter

PREECLAMPSIA

Definition

- pre-existing or gestational HTN with new onset proteinuria or adverse conditions

Risk Factors

- nulliparity
- preeclampsia in a previous pregnancy
- age >40 yr or <18 yr
- FHx of preeclampsia



I-A Evidence-Recommendation Highlights of SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines Diagnosis, Evaluation, and Management of the Hypertensive Disorders of Pregnancy

J Obstet Gynaecol Can 2008;30:S1-48

- For BP measurement, Korotkoff phase V should be used to designate the dBp.
- For preeclampsia prevention among low-risk women with low dietary calcium intake (<600 mg/d), oral calcium supplementation of at least 1 g/d is recommended.
- For preeclampsia prevention among increased risk women, low-dose Aspirin® (75-100 mg/d) is recommended until delivery.
- Umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry should be part of the antenatal fetal surveillance in preeclampsia.
- Initial antihypertensive therapy for severe HTN (sBP >160 or dBp ≥110 mmHg) should be with labetalol, nifedipine, or hydralazine.
- Initial antihypertensive therapy for non-severe HTN (BP 140-159/90-109 mmHg) should be with methyldopa, β -blockers, or calcium channel blockers.
- Antenatal corticosteroids for fetal lung maturation should be considered for all women with preeclampsia before 34 wk gestation.
- In a planned vaginal delivery with an unfavorable cervix, cervical ripening should be used.
- Oxytocin 5 units IV or 10 units IM should be used as part of the management during the third stage of labor.
- MgSO_4 is the recommended first-line treatment for eclampsia.
- MgSO_4 is the recommended eclampsia prophylaxis in severe preeclampsia.



Hypertension in Pregnancy

Adverse Maternal Conditions

- sBP > 160 mmHg
- dBp > 100 mmHg
- HELLP
- Cerebral hemorrhage
- Renal dysfunction: oliguria <500 mL/d
- Left ventricular failure, pulmonary edema
- Placental abruption, DIC

Symptoms

- Abdominal pain, N/V
- Headaches, visual problems
- SOB, chest pain
- Eclampsia: convulsions

Adverse Fetal Conditions

- Intrauterine growth restriction
- Oligohydramnios
- Absent/reversed umbilical artery end diastolic flow

Can result in

- Fetal disability and/or death



- chronic HTN
- chronic renal disease
- antiphospholipid antibody syndrome or inherited thrombophilia
- vascular or connective tissue disease
- DM (pre-gestational and gestational)
- high BMI
- hydrops fetalis
- unexplained fetal growth restriction
- abruptio placentae
- there is a potential for further deterioration to severe preeclampsia as defined above
- the adverse conditions are many and include both maternal and fetal issues

Management

- management will depend on GA, possible threat of seizures (check reflexes)
- if stable and no adverse factors, may admit and follow, ± decide to deliver as approaching 34-36 wk (must weigh risks of fetal prematurity vs. risks of developing severe preeclampsia/eclampsia)
- for severe preeclampsia, stabilize and deliver
- if severe preeclampsia, during labor, increase maternal monitoring: hourly input and output, urine dip q12h, hourly neurological vitals, and increase fetal monitoring (continuous FHR monitoring)
- antihypertensive therapy
 - lowering BP decreases the risk of stroke
 - hydralazine 5-10 mg IV bolus over 5 min q15-30min as necessary
 - labetalol 20-50 mg IV q10min
 - 2nd line: nifedipine 10-20 mg PO q20-60min
- seizure prevention
 - MgSO₄
 - postpartum management
 - risk of seizure highest in first 24 h postpartum – continue MgSO₄ for 12-24 h after delivery
 - vitals q1h
 - consider HELLP syndrome in toxic patients
 - most return to a normotensive BP within 2 wk

ECLAMPSIA

Definition

- the occurrence of one or more generalized convulsions and/or coma in the setting of preeclampsia and in the absence of other neurologic conditions

Epidemiology

- an eclamptic seizure occurs in approximately 0.5% of mildly preeclamptic women and 2-3% of severely preeclamptic women

Risk Factors

- same as risk factors for preeclampsia

Clinical Manifestations

- eclampsia is a clinical diagnosis
- typically tonic-clonic and lasting 60-75 s
- one of the signs of an impending seizure is hyperreflexia
- symptoms that may occur before the seizure include persistent frontal or occipital headache, blurred vision, photophobia, right upper quadrant or epigastric pain, and altered mental status
- in up to one third of cases, there is no proteinuria or blood pressure is <140/90 mmHg prior to the seizure
- in general, women with typical eclamptic seizures who do not have focal neurologic deficits or prolonged coma do not require diagnostic evaluation including imaging

Management

- ABCs
- roll patient into LLD
- supplemental O₂ via face mask to treat hypoxemia due to hypoventilation during convulsive episode
- aggressive antihypertensive therapy for sustained diastolic pressures ≥105 mmHg or systolic blood pressures ≥160 mmHg with hydralazine or labetalol
- prevention of recurrent convulsions: to prevent further seizures and the possible complications of repeated seizure activity (e.g. rhabdomyolysis, metabolic acidosis, aspiration pneumonitis, etc.)
- MgSO₄ is now the drug of choice, with previously used agents including diazepam and phenytoin



Preeclampsia Investigations

- CBC
- Liver enzymes
- INR and aPTT
- Cr
- Uric acid
- LDH
- Albumin
- Bilirubin
- Urine (dip ± 24 h collection or protein/creatinine ratio)



HELLP Syndrome

- Hemolysis
- Elevated Liver enzymes
- Low Platelets



Differential Diagnosis of Cause for Seizure in a Pregnant Woman

- Stroke
- Hypertensive disease (hypertensive encephalopathy, pheochromocytoma)
- Space-occupying lesion of the CNS
- Metabolic disorders (hypoglycemia, SIADH)
- Infection (meningitis, encephalitis)
- Thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura or thrombophilia
- Idiopathic epilepsy
- Use of illicit drugs
- Cerebral vasculitis



Note

Eclampsia prior to 20 wk of gestation is rare and should raise the possibility of an underlying molar pregnancy or antiphospholipid syndrome



MgSO₄ Toxicity

- Flushing
- Hyporeflexia
- Somnolence
- Respiratory and cardiac depression
- Weakness

Note: Increased risk of toxicity with concurrent calcium channel blocker use or renal disease

Treatment

- Stop MgSO₄
- Calcium gluconate 10% in 10 mL IV

- the definitive treatment of eclampsia is DELIVERY, irrespective of gestational age, to reduce the risk of maternal morbidity and mortality from complications of the disease
- mode of delivery is dependent on clinical situation and fetal-maternal condition

Nausea and Vomiting

Epidemiology

- affects 50-90% of pregnant women
- often limited to T1 but may persist

Management

- rule out other causes of N/V
- weigh frequently, assess level of hydration, test urine for ketones
- **non-pharmacological**
 - avoid mixing fluids and solids, frequent small meals
 - stop prenatal vitamins (folic acid must continue until >12 wk)
 - increase sleep/rest
 - ginger (maximum 1,000 mg/d)
 - acupuncture, acupressure
- **pharmacological**
 - first line: Diclectin® (10 mg doxylamine succinate with vitamin B₆) 4 tablets PO daily to maximum of 8 tablets
 - if no improvement, try dimenhydrinate (50-100 mg q4-6h PO), followed by hydroxyzine, pyridoxine, phenothiazine, or metoclopramide
 - vitamin B₆ lollipops
 - if patient dehydrated, assess fluid replacement needs and resuscitate accordingly
- **severe/refractory:**
 - consider homecare with IV fluids and parenteral anti-emetics, hospitalization

Hyperemesis Gravidarum

Definition

- intractable N/V, usually presents in T1 then diminishes; occasionally persists throughout pregnancy
- affects ~1% of pregnancies

Etiology

- multifactorial with hormonal, immunologic, and psychologic components
- rapidly rising β -hCG \pm estrogen levels may be implicated

Investigations

- rule out systemic causes: GI inflammation, pyelonephritis, thyrotoxicosis
- rule out obstetrical causes: multiple gestation, GTN, HELLP syndrome
- CBC, electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, LFTs, urinalysis
- ultrasound

Management

- thiamine supplementation may be indicated
- **non-pharmacological** (see *Nausea and Vomiting*)
- **pharmacological options**
 - Diclectin® (for dosage, see *Nausea and Vomiting*)
 - Dimenhydrinate can be safely used as an adjunct to Diclectin® (1 suppository bid or 25 mg PO qid)
 - other adjuncts: hydroxyzine, pyridoxine, phenothiazine, metoclopramide
 - also consider: ondansetron or methylprednisolone
 - if severe: admit to hospital, NPO initially then small frequent meals, correct hypovolemia, electrolyte disturbance, and ketosis, TPN (if very severe) to reverse catabolic state

Complications

- maternal
 - dehydration, electrolyte and acid-base disturbances
 - Mallory-Weiss tear
 - Wernicke's encephalopathy, if protracted course
 - death
- fetal: usually none, IUGR is 15x more common in women losing >5% of pre-pregnancy weight

Urinary Tract Infection



Etiology

- increased urinary stasis from mechanical and hormonal (progesterone) factors
- organisms include GBS as well as those that occur in non-pregnant women

Epidemiology

- most common medical complication of pregnancy
- asymptomatic bacteriuria in 2-7% of pregnant women, more frequently in multiparous women
- note: asymptomatic bacteriuria should be treated in pregnancy due to increased risk of pyelonephritis



Treat asymptomatic bacteriuria in pregnancy because of increased risk of progression to cystitis, pyelonephritis, and probable increased risk of preterm labor

Clinical Features

- may be asymptomatic
- dysuria, urgency, and frequency in cystitis
- fever, flank pain, and costovertebral angle tenderness in pyelonephritis

Investigations

- urinalysis, urine C&S
- cystoscopy, and renal function tests in recurrent infections

Management

- uncomplicated UTI
 - first line: amoxicillin (250-500 mg PO q8h x 7 d)
 - alternatives: nitrofurantoin (100 mg PO bid x 7 d)
 - follow with monthly urine cultures
- pyelonephritis
 - hospitalization and IV antibiotics

Prognosis

- complications if untreated: acute cystitis, pyelonephritis, and possible preterm labor
- recurrence is common



Infections During Pregnancy



Table 12. Infections During Pregnancy

Infection	Agent	Source of Transmission	Greatest Transmission Risk to Fetus	Effects on Fetus	Effects on Mother	Diagnosis	Management
Chicken Pox	Varicella zoster virus (herpes family)	To mom: direct, respiratory To baby: transplacental	13-30 wk GA, and 5 d pre- to 2 d post-delivery	Congenital varicella syndrome (limb aplasia, chorioretinitis, cataracts, cutaneous scars, cortical atrophy, IUGR, hydrops), preterm labor (prematurity)	Fever, malaise, vesicular pruritic lesions	Clinical, \pm vesicle fluid culture, \pm serology	VZIG for mother if exposed, decreases congenital varicella syndrome Note: do not administer vaccine during pregnancy (live attenuated)
*CMV	DNA virus (herpes family)	To mom: blood/organ transfusion, sexual contact To baby: transplacental, during delivery, breast milk	T1-T3	5-10% develop CNS involvement (mental retardation, cerebral calcification, hydrocephalus, microcephaly, deafness, chorioretinitis)	Asymptomatic or flu-like	Serologic screen; isolate virus from urine or secretion culture	No specific treatment; maintain good hygiene and avoid high risk situations
Erythema Infectiosum (Fifth Disease)	Parvovirus B19	To mom: respiratory, infected blood products To baby: transplacental	10-20 wk GA	Spontaneous abortion (SA), stillbirth, hydrops <i>in utero</i>	Flu-like, rash, arthritis; often asymptomatic	Serology, viral PCR, maternal AFP; if IgM present, follow fetus with U/S for hydrops	If hydrops occurs, consider fetal transfusion

Table 12. Infections During Pregnancy (continued)

Infection	Agent	Source of Transmission	Greatest Transmission Risk to Fetus	Effects on Fetus	Effects on Mother	Diagnosis	Management
Hepatitis B	DNA virus	To mom: blood, saliva, semen, vaginal secretions To baby: transplacental, breast milk	T3 10% vertical transmission if asymptomatic and HBsAg +ve; 85-90% if HBsAg and HBeAg +ve	Prematurity, low birth weight, neonatal death	Fever, N/V, fatigue, jaundice, elevated liver enzymes	Serologic screening for all pregnancies	Rx neonate with HBIG and vaccine (at birth, 1, 6 mo); 90% effective
*Herpes Simplex Virus	DNA virus	To mom: intimate mucocutaneous contact To baby: transplacental, during delivery	Delivery (if genital lesions present); less commonly <i>in utero</i>	Disseminated herpes (20%); CNS sequelae (35%); self-limited infection	Painful vesicular lesions	Clinical diagnosis	Acyclovir for symptomatic women, suppressive therapy at 36 wk controversial C/S if active genital lesions, even if remote from vulva
HIV	RNA retrovirus	To mom: blood, semen, vaginal secretions To baby: <i>in utero</i> , during delivery, breast milk	1/3 <i>in utero</i> , 1/3 at delivery, 1/3 breastfeeding	IUGR, preterm labor, PROM	See Infectious Diseases, ID29 	Serology, viral PCR All pregnant women are offered screening	Triple antiretroviral therapy decreases transmission to <1% Elective C/S: no previous antiviral Rx or monotherapy only, viral load unknown or >500 RNA copies/mL, unknown prenatal care, patient request
*Rubella	ssRNA togavirus	To mom: respiratory droplets (highly contagious) To baby: transplacental	T1	SA or congenital rubella syndrome (hearing loss, cataracts, CV lesions, MR, IUGR, hepatitis, CNS defects, osseous changes)	Rash (50%), fever, posterior auricular or occipital lymphadenopathy, arthralgia	Serologic testing; all pregnant women screened (immune if titre >1:16); infection if IgM present or >4x increase in IgG	No specific treatment; offer vaccine following pregnancy Do not administer during pregnancy (live attenuated)
Syphilis	Spirochete (<i>Treponema pallidum</i>)	To mom: sexual contact To baby: transplacental	T1-T3	Risk of preterm labor, multisystem involvement, fetal death	See Infectious Diseases, ID26 	VDRL screening for all pregnancies; if positive, requires confirmatory testing	Pen G 2.4 M U IM 1 dose if early syphilis, 3 doses if late syphilis, monitor VDRL monthly If Pen G allergic: Clindamycin 900 mg IV q8h
*Toxoplasmosis	Protozoa (<i>Toxoplasma gondii</i>)	To mom: raw meat, unpasteurized goat's milk, cat feces/urine To baby: transplacental	T3 (but most severe if infected in T1); only concern if primary infection during pregnancy	Congenital toxoplasmosis (chorioretinitis, hydrocephaly, intracranial calcification, MR, microcephaly) NB: 75% initially asymptomatic at birth	Majority subclinical; may have flu-like symptoms	IgM and IgG serology; PCR of amniotic fluid	Self-limiting in mother; spiramycin decreases fetal morbidity but not rate of transmission

* Indicates TORCH infection

Venous Thromboembolism



Epidemiology

- incidence 0.5-3/1,000 pregnancies occurring with approximately equal frequency in all three trimesters and postpartum

Risk Factors

- previous VTE, age >35, obesity, infection, bedrest/immobility, shock/dehydration, thrombophilias (see [Hematology, H33](#))



Table 13. Risk Factors for VTE Specific to Pregnancy

Hypercoagulability	Stasis	Endothelial
Increased factors: II, V, VII, VIII, IX, X, XII, fibrinogen Increased platelet aggregation Decreased protein S, tPA, factors XI, XIII	Increased resistance to activated protein C Antithrombin can be normal or reduced Increased venous distensibility Decreased venous tone 50% decrease in venous flow in lower extremity by T3 Uterus is mechanical impediment to venous return	Vascular damage at delivery (C/S or SVD) Uterine instrumentation Peripartum pelvic surgery

**Virchow's Triad for VTE**

- Hypercoagulable state
- Stasis
- Endothelial damage

Clinical Features

- most DVTs occur in the iliofemoral or calf veins with a predilection for the left leg
- signs of a pulmonary embolism are non-specific (as in non-pregnant women)
- unexplained spontaneous fetal loss

Investigations

- duplex venous Doppler sonography for DVT
- CXR and V/Q scan or spiral CT for PE

Management

- before initiating treatment, obtain a baseline CBC including platelets, and aPTT
- warfarin is contraindicated during pregnancy due to its potential teratogenic effects
- unfractionated heparin
 - bolus of 5,000 IU followed by an infusion of ~30,000 IU/24h
 - measure aPTT 6 h after the bolus
 - maintain aPTT at a therapeutic level (1.5-2x normal)
 - repeat q24h once therapeutic
 - heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) uncommon (3%) but serious complication
 - LMWH can also be used in pregnancy
- compression stockings
- poor evidence to support a recommendation for or against avoidance of prolonged sitting
- VTE prophylaxis
 - women on long-term anticoagulation: full therapeutic anticoagulation throughout pregnancy and for 6-12 wk postpartum
 - women with a non-active PMHx of VTE: unfractionated heparin regimens suggested
- routine VTE prophylaxis
 - insufficient evidence in pregnancy to recommend routine use of LMWH
 - current prophylaxis regimens for acquired thrombophilias (e.g. APS syndrome) include low dose Aspirin® in conjunction with prophylactic heparin

Bleeding in Pregnancy

First and Second Trimester Bleeding

Approach to the Patient with Bleeding in T1/T2

- **history**
 - risk factors for ectopic pregnancy (previous ectopic pregnancies, history of STD/PID, IUD use, previous pelvic surgery, smoking)
 - previous spontaneous abortion
 - recent trauma
 - characteristics of the bleeding (including any tissue passed)
 - characteristics of the pain (cramping pain suggests SA)
 - history of coagulopathy
 - gynecological/obstetric history
 - dizziness (significant blood loss, may be associated with ruptured ectopic)
 - fever (may be associated with septic abortion)
- **physical**
 - vitals (including orthostatic changes)
 - abdomen (SFH, tenderness, presence of contractions)
 - perineum (signs of trauma, genital lesions)
 - speculum exam (cervical os open or closed, presence of active bleeding/clots/tissue)
 - pelvic exam (uterine size, adnexal mass, uterine/adnexal tenderness)

**Bleeding in Pregnancy Definitions**

- First trimester bleeding: vaginal bleeding within the first 12 wk
- Second trimester bleeding: <20 wk

**Differential Diagnosis**

- Physiologic bleeding: spotting, due to implantation of placenta – reassure and check serial β -hCGs
- Abortion (threatened, inevitable, incomplete, complete) (see Table 14)
- Abnormal pregnancy (ectopic, molar) (see [Gynecology](#), [Hydatidiform Mole](#) GY45)
- Trauma (post-coital or after pelvic exam)
- Genital lesion (e.g. cervical polyp, neoplasms)

Investigations

- β -hCG (lower than expected for GA in spontaneous abortion, ectopic pregnancy)
- U/S (confirm intrauterine pregnancy and fetal viability)
- CBC
- group and screen

Treatment

- IV resuscitation for hemorrhagic shock
- treat the underlying cause

Spontaneous Abortions

- see *Termination of Pregnancy*, OB11, for therapeutic abortions

Table 14. Classification of Spontaneous Abortions

Type	History	Clinical	Management (\pm Rhogam [®])
Threatened	Vaginal bleeding \pm cramping	Cervix closed and soft U/S shows viable fetus	Watch and wait <5% go on to abort
Inevitable	Increasing bleeding and cramps \pm rupture of membranes	Cervix closed until products start to expel, then external os opens U/S variable but usually nonviable fetus	a) Watch and wait b) Misoprostol 400-800 μ g PO/PV c) D&C \pm oxytocin
Incomplete	Extremely heavy bleeding and cramps \pm passage of tissue noticed	Cervix open U/S products of conception	a) Watch and wait b) Misoprostol 400-800 μ g PO/PV c) D&C \pm oxytocin
Complete	Bleeding and complete passage of sac and placenta	Cervix open U/S no products of conception	No D&C – expectant management
Missed	No bleeding (fetal death <i>in utero</i>)	Cervix closed U/S may show SGA, no fetal heart activity; nonviable fetus	a) Watch and wait b) Misoprostol 400-800 μ g PO/PV c) D&C \pm oxytocin
Recurrent	≥ 3 consecutive spontaneous abortions		Evaluate mechanical, genetic, environmental, and other risk factors
Septic	Contents of uterus infected – infrequent		D&C IV broad spectrum antibiotics

**Etiology of Recurrent Pregnancy Loss****MAKE ME**

Type	History
Mechanical	Uterine anomalies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Congenital (septate uterus) • Leiomyoma • Endometrial polyps • Intrauterine adhesions
Autoimmune	Immunologic Factors <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Antiphospholipid syndrome (blood tests: lupus anticoagulant, anti-cardiolipin Ab, anti-$\beta 2$ glycoprotein-I)
Karyotype	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Aneuploidy • Chromosomal rearrangements • Check both parents • Young mother, ≥ 3 miscarriages, FHx miscarriage/stillbirth/malformation
Endocrine	Poorly controlled disease <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thyroid (associated with high antibody/hormone levels) • DM (secondary to hyperglycemia, maternal vascular disease) • PCOS
Maternal Infection	No infectious agent has been proven to cause recurrent pregnancy loss, though some cause sporadic loss (<i>Listeria</i> , toxoplasmosis, CMV, HSV)
Environment	Obesity, smoking, alcohol use, and caffeine consumption may contribute
Other	Prothrombotic conditions (i.e. thrombophilia)

**Management of Abortions**

- Always rule out an ectopic
- Always check Rh; if negative, give Rhogam[®]
- Always ensure patient is hemodynamically stable



Ectopic Pregnancy

Definition

- embryo implants outside of the endometrial cavity

Epidemiology

- 1/100 pregnancies
- fourth leading cause of maternal mortality, leading cause of death in first trimester
- increase in incidence over the last 3 decades
- three commonest locations for ectopic pregnancy: ampullary (70%), isthmic (12%), fimbrial (11%)

Etiology

- 50% due to damage of fallopian tube cilia following PID
- intrinsic abnormality of the fertilized ovum
- conception late in cycle
- transmigration of fertilized ovum to contralateral tube

**Clinical Features of Ectopic Pregnancy****4Ts and 1S**

Temperature $> 100.4^{\circ}\text{F}$ (20%)

Tenderness: abdominal (90%) \pm rebound (45%)

Tenderness on bimanual examination, cervical motion tenderness

Tissue: palpable adnexal mass (50%) (half have contralateral mass due to lutein cyst)

Signs of pregnancy (e.g. Chadwick's sign, Hegar's sign)



More than half of patients with ectopic pregnancy have no risk factors

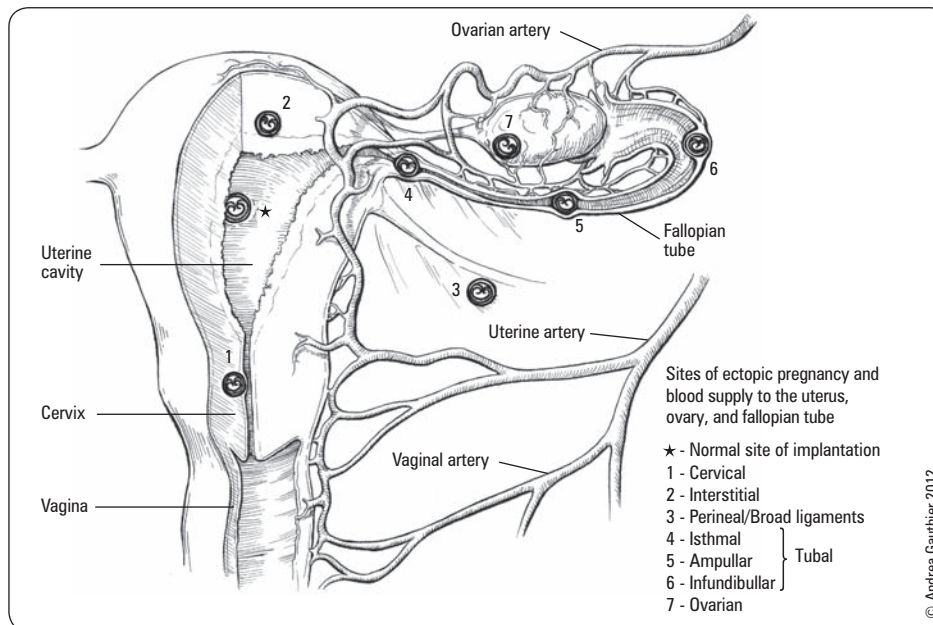


Figure 3. Sites of ectopic pregnancy implantation

Ampullary (70%) >> isthmal (12%) > fimbrial (11%) > ovarian (3%) > interstitial (2%) > abdominal (1%)

Risk Factors

- previous ectopic pregnancy
- gynecologic
 - IUD use – increased risk of ectopic if pregnancy occurs
 - history of PID (especially infection with *C. trachomatis*), salpingitis
 - infertility
 - clomiphene citrate (for induction of ovulation)
- previous procedures
 - any surgery on fallopian tube (for previous ectopic, tubal ligation, etc.)
 - abdominal surgery for ruptured appendix, etc.
 - IVF pregnancies following ovulation induction (7% ectopic rate)
- smoking
- structural
 - uterine leiomyomas
 - adhesions
 - abnormal uterine anatomy (e.g. T-shaped uterus)

Investigations

- serial β -hCG levels; normal doubling time with intrauterine pregnancy is 1.6-2.4 d in early pregnancy
 - rise of <20% of β -hCG is 100% predictive of a non-viable pregnancy
 - prolonged doubling time, plateau, or decreasing levels before 8 wk implies nonviable gestation but does not provide information on location of implantation
 - 85% of ectopic pregnancies demonstrate abnormal β -hCG doubling
- ultrasound
 - U/S is only definitive if fetal cardiac activity is detected in the tube or uterus
 - specific finding on transvaginal U/S is a tubal ring
- laparoscopy (for definitive diagnosis)

Treatment

- goals of treatment: conservative (preserve tube if possible), maintain hemodynamic stability
- surgical (laparoscopy)
 - linear salpingostomy if tube salvageable
 - salpingectomy if tube damaged or ectopic is ipsilateral recurrence
 - 15% risk of persistent trophoblast; must monitor β -hCG titres weekly until they reach non-detectable levels
 - consider Rhogam® if Rh negative
 - may require laparotomy if patient is unstable, extensive abdominal surgical history, etc.
- medical = methotrexate (for indications see Figure 4)
 - use 50 mg/m² body surface area; given in a single IM dose
 - this is 1/5 to 1/6 chemotherapy dose, therefore minimal side effects (reversible hepatic dysfunction, diarrhea, gastritis, dermatitis)



DDx of Lower Abdominal Pain

- Urinary tract: UTI, kidney stones
- GI: diverticulitis, appendicitis
- Gyne: endometriosis, PID, fibroid (degenerating, infarcted, torsion), ovarian torsion, ovarian neoplasm, ovarian cyst, pregnancy-related



If Ectopic Pregnancy Ruptures

- Acute abdomen with increasing pain
- Abdominal distention
- Shock

- follow β -hCG levels weekly until β -hCG is non-detectable
 - ♦ plateau or rising levels suggest persisting trophoblastic tissue (requires further treatment)
- 82-95% success rate but up to 25% will require a second dose
- tubal patency following methotrexate treatment approaches 80%

Prognosis

- 9% of maternal deaths during pregnancy
- 40-60% of patients will become pregnant again after surgery
- 10-20% will have subsequent ectopic pregnancy

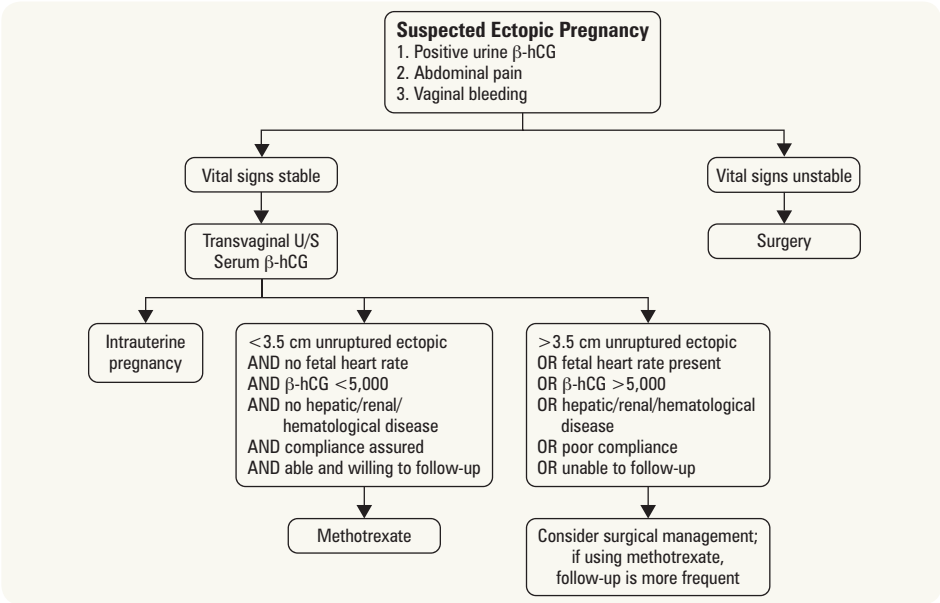


Figure 4. Algorithm for suspected ectopic pregnancy

Antepartum Hemorrhage

Definition

- vaginal bleeding from 20 wk to term

Differential Diagnosis

- bloody show (shedding of cervical mucous plug) – most common etiology in T3
- placenta previa
- abruptio placentae – most common pathological etiology in T3
- vasa previa
- cervical lesion (cervicitis, polyp, ectropion, cervical cancer)
- uterine rupture
- other: bleeding from bowel or bladder, placenta accreta, abnormal coagulation

Table 15. Comparison of Placenta Previa vs. Abruptio Placentae

	Placenta Previa	Abruptio Placentae
Definition	Abnormal location of the placenta near, partially, or completely over the internal cervical os	Premature separation of a normally implanted placenta after 20 wk GA
Etiology	Idiopathic	Idiopathic
Epidemiology	0.5-0.8% of all pregnancies	1-2% of all pregnancies
Risk Factors	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• History of placenta previa (4-8% recurrence risk)• Multiparity• Increased maternal age• Multiple gestation• Uterine tumor (e.g. fibroids) or other uterine anomalies• Uterine scar due to previous abortion, C/S, D&C, myomectomy	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Previous abortion (recurrence rate 5-16%)• Maternal HTN (chronic or gestational HTN in 50% of abortions) or vascular disease• Cigarette smoking (> 1 pack/d), excessive alcohol consumption, cocaine• Multiparity and/or maternal age >35 yr• PPROM• Rapid decompression of a distended uterus (polyhydramnios, multiple gestation)• Uterine anomaly, fibroids• Trauma (e.g. motor vehicle collision, maternal battery)
Bleeding	PAINLESS	PAINFUL



Interventions for Tubal Ectopic Pregnancy
Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2007;1:CD000324
Study: Cochrane Review of randomized controlled trials comparing treatments in women with tubal ectopic pregnancy.
Patients: Women with a diagnosis of tubal ectopic pregnancy.
Intervention: Surgery (salpingectomy/salpingostomy by open surgery or by laparoscopy), medical treatment, and expectant management.
Main Outcome: Primary treatment success, defined as an uneventful decline in serum β -hCG to undetectable levels by the initial treatment.
Results: Intramuscular MTX therapy and salpingostomy yielded similar treatment success rates (82-95% for MTX therapy vs. 80-92% for salpingostomy).



Key Questions to Ask in Antepartum Hemorrhage

- How much bleeding?
- Are there contractions/cramping/pain?
- Description? Color, clotting, etc.



Levels of Abnormal Placental Invasion
Placenta Accreta: AT myometrium (most common)
Placenta Increta: INTO myometrium
Placenta Percreta: PASSES through myometrium

Placenta Previa



Definition

- placenta implanted in the lower segment of the uterus, presenting ahead of the leading pole of the fetus
- the distance of the placental edge from the internal os is described in “millimeters away” from the internal os or “millimeters of overlap” over the internal os
- greater than 20 millimeters of overlap over the internal os in the third trimester of pregnancy is highly predictive of the need for a C/S
- any degree of overlap after 35 wk is an indication for a C/S

Clinical Features

- PAINLESS bright red vaginal bleeding (recurrent), may be minimized and cease spontaneously, but can become catastrophic
- mean onset of bleeding is 30 wk GA, but onset depends on degree of previa
- **physical exam**
 - uterus soft and non-tender
 - presenting fetal part high or displaced
 - FHR usually normal
 - shock/anemia correspond to degree of apparent blood loss
- **complications**
 - fetal
 - ♦ perinatal mortality low but still higher than with a normal pregnancy
 - ♦ prematurity (bleeding often dictates early C/S)
 - ♦ intrauterine hypoxia (acute or IUGR)
 - ♦ fetal malpresentation
 - ♦ PPROM
 - ♦ risk of fetal blood loss from placenta, especially if incised during C/S
 - maternal
 - ♦ <1% maternal mortality
 - ♦ hemorrhage and hypovolemic shock, anemia, acute renal failure, pituitary necrosis (Sheehan syndrome)
 - ♦ placenta accreta – especially if previous uterine surgery, anterior placenta previa
 - ♦ hysterectomy



Do NOT perform a vaginal exam until placenta previa has been ruled out by U/S

Investigations

- transvaginal U/S is more accurate than transabdominal U/S at diagnosing placenta previa at any gestational age
- if the placenta lies between 20 mm of overlap and 20 mm away from the internal os after 26 wk regular transvaginal ultrasounds should be repeated at regular intervals – continued change in the placental location is likely



Kleihauer-Betke Test
Quantifies fetal cells in the maternal circulation

Management

- goal: keep pregnancy intrauterine until the risk of delivery < risk of continuing pregnancy
- stabilize and monitor
 - maternal stabilization: large bore IV with hydration, O₂ for hypotensive patients
 - maternal monitoring: vitals, urine output, blood loss, blood work (hematocrit, CBC, INR/PTT, platelets, fibrinogen, FDP, type and cross match)
 - electronic fetal monitoring
 - U/S assessment: when fetal and maternal condition permit, determine fetal viability, gestational age, and placental status/position
- Rhogam® if mother is Rh negative
 - Kleihauer-Betke test to determine extent of fetomaternal transfusion so that appropriate dose of Rhogam® can be given
- GA <37 wk and minimal bleeding: expectant management
 - admit to hospital
 - limited physical activity, no douches, enemas, or sexual intercourse
 - consider corticosteroids for fetal lung maturity
 - delivery when fetus is mature or hemorrhage dictates
- GA ≥37 wk, profuse bleeding, or L/S ratio is >2:1 – deliver by C/S

Abruptio Placentae



Clinical Features

- **classification**
 - total (fetal death inevitable) vs. partial
 - external/revealed/apparent: blood dissects downward toward cervix
 - internal/concealed (20%): blood dissects upward toward fetus
 - most are mixed
- **presentation**
 - **PAINFUL** (80%) vaginal bleeding (bleeding not always present if abruption is concealed), uterine tenderness, uterine contractions
 - pain: sudden onset, constant, localized to lower back and uterus
 - shock/anemia out of proportion to apparent blood loss
 - \pm fetal distress, fetal demise (15% present with demise), bloody amniotic fluid (fetal presentation typically normal)
 - \pm coagulopathy

Complications

- fetal complications: perinatal mortality 25-60%, prematurity, intrauterine hypoxia
- maternal complications: $<1\%$ maternal mortality, DIC (in 20% of abruptions), acute renal failure, anemia, hemorrhagic shock, pituitary necrosis (Sheehan syndrome), amniotic fluid embolus



Abruptio placentae is the most common cause of DIC in pregnancy

Investigations

- clinical diagnosis, U/S not sensitive for diagnosing abruption (sensitivity = 15%)

Management

- maternal stabilization: large bore IV with hydration, O₂ for hypotensive patients
- maternal monitoring: vitals, urine output, blood loss, blood work (hematocrit, CBC, PTT/PT, platelets, fibrinogen, FDP, type and cross match)
- EFM
- blood products on hand (red cells, platelets, cryoprecipitate) because of DIC risk
- Rhogam® if Rh negative
 - Kleihauer-Betke test may confirm abruption
- mild abruption
 - GA <37 wk: use serial Hct to assess concealed bleeding, deliver when fetus is mature or when hemorrhage dictates
 - GA ≥ 37 wk: stabilize and deliver
- moderate to severe abruption
 - hydrate and restore blood loss and correct coagulation defect if present
 - vaginal delivery if no contraindication and no evidence of fetal or maternal distress OR fetal demise
 - C/S if live fetus and fetal or maternal distress develops with fluid/blood replacement, labor fails to progress or if vaginal delivery otherwise contraindicated

Vasa Previa

Definition

- unprotected fetal vessels pass over the cervical os; associated with velamentous insertion of cord into membranes of placenta or succenturiate (accessory) lobe

Epidemiology

- 1 in 5,000 deliveries – higher in twin pregnancies

Clinical Features

- **PAINLESS** vaginal bleeding and fetal distress (tachy- to bradyarrhythmia)
- 50% perinatal mortality, increasing to 75% if membranes rupture (most infants die of exsanguination)

Investigations

- **Apt test** (NaOH mixed with the blood) can be done immediately to determine if the source of bleeding is fetal (supernatant turns pink) or maternal (supernatant turns yellow)
- **Wright stain** on blood smear and look for nucleated red blood cells (in cord, not maternal blood)

Management

- emergency C/S (since bleeding is from fetus, a small amount of blood loss can have catastrophic consequences)

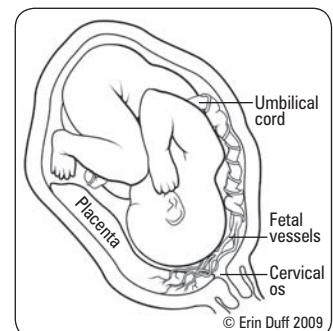


Figure 5. Vasa previa

Multiple Gestation



Epidemiology

- incidence of twins is 1/80 and triplets 1/6,400 in North America
- 2/3 of twins are dizygotic (fraternal)
 - risk factors for dizygotic twins: IVF, increased maternal age, newly discontinued OCP, ethnicity (e.g. certain African regions)
- monozygous twinning occurs at a constant rate worldwide (1/250)
- determine zygosity by number of placentas, thickness of membranes, sex, blood type

Clinical Features

Table 16. Complications Associated with Multiple Gestation

Maternal	Uteroplacental	Fetal
Hyperemesis gravidarum	Increased PROM/PTL	Prematurity*
GDM	Polyhydramnios	IUGR
Gestational HTN	Placenta previa	Malpresentation
Anemia	Placental abruption	Congenital anomalies
Increased physiological stress on all systems	PPH (uterine atony)	Twin-twin transfusion
Increased compressive symptoms	Umbilical cord prolapse	Increased perinatal morbidity and mortality
C/S	Cord anomalies (velamentous insertion, 2 vessel cord)	Twin interlocking (twin A breech, twin B vertex)
		Single fetal demise

*Most common cause of perinatal mortality in multiple gestation



The Ps of Multiple Gestation Complications

- Increased rates of:
- Puking
 - Pallor (anemia)
 - Preeclampsia/PIH
 - Pressure (compressive symptoms)
 - PTL/PROM/PPROM
 - Polyhydramnios
 - Placenta previa/abruptio
 - PPH/APH
 - Prolonged labor
 - Cord Prolapse
 - Prematurity
 - Malpresentation
 - Perinatal morbidity and mortality
 - Parental distress
 - Postpartum depression

Management

- U/S determination of chorionicity must be done within first trimester (ideally 8-12 wk GA)
- increased antenatal surveillance
 - serial U/S q2-3wk from 28 wk GA to assess growth (uncomplicated diamniotic dichorionic)
 - increased frequency of ultrasounds in monochorionic diamniotic and monochorionic monoamniotic twins
 - Doppler flow studies weekly if discordant fetal growth (>30%)
 - BPP as needed
- may attempt vaginal delivery if twin A presents as vertex, otherwise C/S (40-50% of all twin deliveries, 15% of cases have twin A delivered vaginally and twin B delivered by C/S)
- mode of delivery depends on fetal weight, GA, presentation

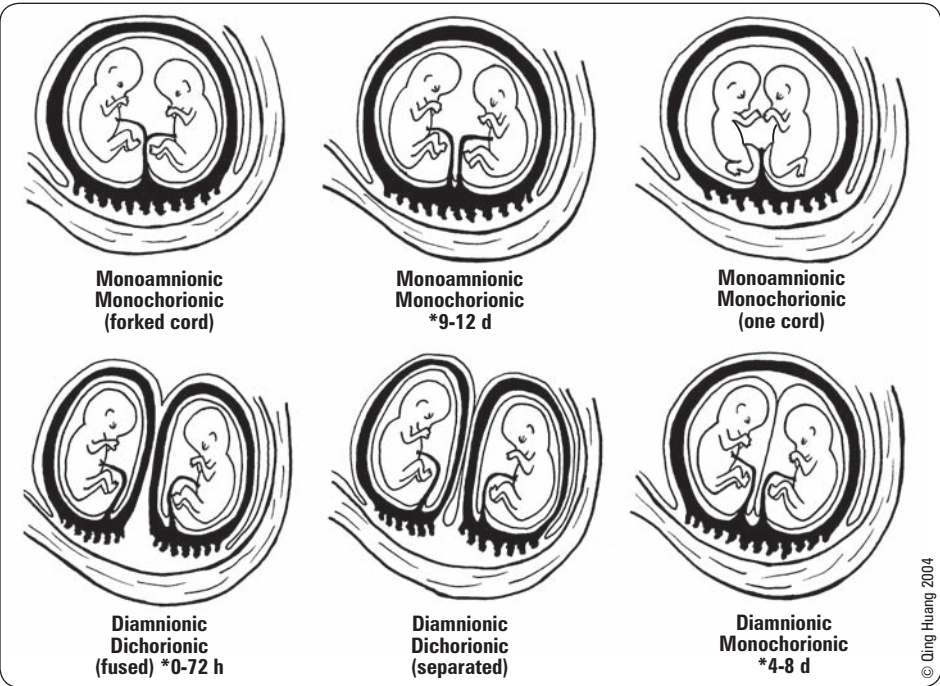


Figure 6. Classification of twin pregnancies

*Indicates time of cleavage

Twin-Twin Transfusion Syndrome

Epidemiology

- 10% of monochorionic twins
- concern if >30% discordance in estimated fetal weight

Etiology

- arterial blood from donor twin passes through placenta into vein of recipient twin

Clinical Features

- donor twin: IUGR, hypovolemia, hypotension, anemia, oligohydramnios
- recipient twin: hypervolemia, HTN, CHF, polycythemia, edema, polyhydramnios, kernicterus in neonatal period

Investigations

- detected by U/S screening, Doppler flow analysis

Management

- therapeutic serial amniocentesis to decompress polyhydramnios of recipient twin and decrease pressure in cavity and on placenta
- intrauterine blood transfusion to donor twin if necessary
- laparoscopic occlusion of placental vessels

Growth Discrepancies



Intrauterine Growth Restriction

Definition

- infant weight <10th percentile for GA or <2,500 g

Etiology/Risk Factors

- maternal causes
 - malnutrition, smoking, drug abuse, alcoholism, cyanotic heart disease, type 1 DM, SLE, pulmonary insufficiency, previous IUGR
- maternal-fetal
 - any disease causing placental insufficiency
 - includes gestational HTN, chronic HTN, chronic renal insufficiency, gross placental morphological abnormalities (infarction, hemangiomas)
- fetal causes:
 - TORCH infections, multiple gestation, congenital anomalies

Clinical Features

- symmetric/type I (20%): occurs early in pregnancy
 - inadequate growth of head and body
 - head:abdomen ratio may be normal (>1 up to 32 wk; =1 at 32-34 wk; <1 after 34 wk GA)
 - usually associated with congenital anomalies or TORCH infections
- asymmetric/type II (80%): occurs late in pregnancy
 - brain is spared, therefore head:abdomen ratio increased
 - usually associated with placental insufficiency
 - more favorable prognosis than type I
- complications
 - prone to meconium aspiration, asphyxia, polycythemia, hypoglycemia, and mental retardation
 - greater risk of perinatal morbidity and mortality

Investigations

- SFH measurements at every antepartum visit
- if mother at high risk or SFH lags >2 cm behind GA
 - U/S for biparietal diameter, head and abdominal circumference, femur length, fetal weight, and AFV (decrease associated with IUGR)
 - \pm BPP
 - Doppler analysis of umbilical cord blood flow

Management

- prevention via risk modification prior to pregnancy is ideal
- modify controllable factors: smoking, alcohol, nutrition, and treat maternal illness
- bed rest in LLDP
- serial BPP (monitor fetal growth) and determine cause of IUGR, if possible
- delivery when extrauterine existence is less dangerous than continued intrauterine existence (abnormal function tests, absent growth, severe oligohydramnios) especially if GA >34 wk
- liberal use of C/S since IUGR fetus withstands labor poorly



TORCH

Toxoplasmosis
Others: e.g. syphilis
Rubella
CMV
HSV

- See Table 12, OB19



Differential Diagnosis of Incorrect Uterine Size for Dates

- Inaccurate dates
- Maternal: DM
- Maternal-fetal: polyhydramnios, oligohydramnios
- Fetal: abnormal karyotype, IUGR, macrosomia, fetal anomaly, abnormal lie, multiple gestation



Monitoring Fetal Growth with U/S

Done biweekly to show growth beyond the margin of error

Macrosomia

Definition

- infant weight >90th percentile for a particular GA or >4,000 g

Etiology/Risk Factors

- maternal obesity, GDM, past history of macrosomic infant, prolonged gestation, multiparity

Clinical Features

- increased risk of perinatal mortality
- CPD and birth injuries (shoulder dystocia, fetal bone fracture) more common
- complications of DM in labor (see Table 11, OB15)

Investigations

- serial SFH
- further investigations if mother at high risk or SFH >2 cm ahead of GA
- U/S predictors
 - polyhydramnios
 - third trimester AC >1.5 cm/wk
 - HC/AC ratio <10th percentile
 - FL/AC ratio <20th percentile

Management

- prophylactic C/S is a reasonable option where EFW >5,000 g in non-diabetic woman and EFW >4,500 g in diabetic woman
 - no evidence that prophylactic C/S improves outcomes
- early induction of labor is not recommended for non-diabetic mothers
- risks and benefits of early induction (risk of C/S vs. risk of dystocia) must be weighed in diabetic mothers, as current research is unclear

Polyhydramnios/Oligohydramnios

Table 17. Polyhydramnios and Oligohydramnios

	Polyhydramnios	Oligohydramnios
Definition	AFI >25 cm U/S: single deepest pocket >8 cm	AFI <5 cm U/S: single deepest pocket ≤2 cm
Etiology	Idiopathic most common Maternal: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Type 1 DM: abnormalities of transchorionic flow Maternal-fetal: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chorioangiomas Multiple gestation Fetal hydrops (increased erythroblastosis) Fetal: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Chromosomal anomaly (up to 2/3 of fetuses have severe polyhydramnios) Respiratory: cystic adenomatoid malformed lung CNS: anencephaly, hydrocephalus, meningocele GI: tracheoesophageal fistula, duodenal atresia, facial clefts (interfere with swallowing) 	Idiopathic most common Maternal: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Uteroplacental insufficiency (preeclampsia, nephropathy) Medications (ACEI) Fetal: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Congenital urinary tract anomalies (renal agenesis, obstruction, posterior urethral valves) Demise/chronic hypoxemia (blood shunt away from kidneys to perfuse brain) IUGR Ruptured membranes: prolonged amniotic fluid leak Amniotic fluid normally decreases after 35 wk
Epidemiology	Occur in 0.2-1.6% of all pregnancies	Occur in ~4.5% of all pregnancies Severe form in <0.7% Common in pregnancies >41 wk (~12%)
Clinical Features and Complications	Uterus large for dates, difficulty palpating fetal parts and hearing FHR Maternal complications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pressure symptoms from overdistended uterus (dyspnea, edema, hydronephrosis) Obstetrical complications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cord prolapse, placental abruption, malpresentation, preterm labor, uterine dysfunction, and PPH 	Uterus small for dates Fetal complications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15-25% have fetal anomalies Amniotic fluid bands (T1) can lead to Potter's facies, limb deformities, abdominal wall defects Obstetrical complications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cord compression Increased risk of adverse fetal outcomes Pulmonary hypoplasia (late-onset) Marker for infants who may not tolerate labor well

Table 17. Polyhydramnios and Oligohydramnios (continued)

	Polyhydramnios	Oligohydramnios
Management	Determine underlying cause: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Screen for maternal disease/infection • Complete fetal U/S evaluation Depends on severity: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mild to moderate cases require no treatment • If severe, hospitalize and consider therapeutic amniocentesis 	Always warrants admission and investigation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rule out ROM • Fetal monitoring (NST, BPP) • U/S Doppler studies (umbilical cord and uterine artery) Maternal hydration with oral or IV fluids to help increase amniotic fluid Vesicoamniotic shunt: if etiology is related to fetal obstructive uropathy; however, pulmonary function may not be restored with restoration of amniotic fluid Injection of fluid via amniocentesis will improve condition for ~1 wk – may be most helpful for visualizing any associated fetal anomalies Consider delivery if term Amnio-infusion may be considered during labor via intra-uterine catheter
Prognosis	2-5 fold increase in risk of perinatal mortality	Poorer with early onset High mortality related to congenital malformations and pulmonary hypoplasia when diagnosed during T2

Normal Labor and Delivery

Definition of Labor

- true labor: regular, painful contractions of increasing intensity associated with progressive **dilatation** and **effacement** of cervix and descent of presenting part, or progression of station
 - preterm (>20 to <36+6 wk GA)
 - term (37-41+6 wk GA)
 - postterm (>42 wk GA)
- false labor: Braxton-Hicks contractions
 - irregular contractions, with unchanged intensity and long intervals, occur throughout pregnancy and not associated with any dilatation, effacement, or descent
 - often relieved by rest or sedation

The Cervix

- dilatation: latent phase: 0-3 cm; active phase: 4-10 cm
- effacement: thinning of the cervix by percentage or length of cervix (cm)
- consistency: firm vs. soft
- position: posterior vs. anterior
- application: contact between the cervix and presenting part (i.e. well or poorly applied)
- see Bishop score (Table 22, OB35)

The Fetus

- **fetal lie**
 - orientation of the long axis of the fetus with respect to the long axis of the uterus (longitudinal, transverse, oblique)
- **fetal presentation**
 - fetal part presenting at pelvic outlet
 - ♦ breech (complete, frank, footling) (see Figure 9, OB39)
 - ♦ cephalic (vertex, face, asynclitic)
 - ♦ transverse (shoulder)
 - ♦ compound (fetal extremity prolapses along with presenting part)
 - all except vertex are considered malpresentations (see *High Risk Labor and Delivery*, OB37)
- **fetal position**
 - position of presenting part of the fetus relative to the maternal pelvis
 - ♦ OA: most common presentation (“normal”) – left OA most common
 - ♦ OP: most rotate spontaneously to OA; may cause prolonged second stage of labor
 - ♦ OT: leads to arrest of dilatation
 - normally, fetal head enters maternal pelvis and engages in OT position
 - subsequently rotates to OA position (or OP in a small percentage of cases)



Maternal Triage Assessment

ID: Age, GPA, EDC, GA, GBS, Rh, Ser
CC

HPI: 4 key questions:

- Contractions: Since when, how close (q x min), how long (x s), how painful
- Bleeding: Since when, how much (pads), color (pink/mucous = show vs. brownish vs. bright red ± clots), pain?, last U/S, trauma/intercourse?
- Fluid (ROM): Since when, large gush vs. trickle, soaked pants?, clear vs. green vs. red?, continuous?
- FM: As much as usual?, When last movement?, Kick counts (lie still for 1-2 h, cold juice, feel FM – should have 6 movements in 2 h)

PregHx: Any complications (HTN, GDM, infections), IPS/FTS screening, last U/S (BPP score, growth/estimated fetal weight, position), last vaginal exam

POBHx: Every previous pregnancy and outcome: Year, SVD/CS/miscarriage/abortion, baby size, length of labor, use of vacuum or forceps, complications

PMHx, Meds, Allergies, SHx

O/E: Maternal vitals, fetal heart tracing (baseline, variability, presence of accelerations/decelerations), Leopold's, vaginal exam, U/S



Reference Point for Describing Fetal Position

- Occiput for cephalic presentation
- Sacrum for breech presentation
- Mentum for face presentation

- **attitude**
 - flexion/extension of fetal head relative to shoulders
 - ♦ brow presentation: head partially extended (requires C/S)
 - ♦ face presentation: head fully extended
 - mentum posterior always requires C/S, mentum anterior will deliver vaginally
- **station**
 - position of presenting part relative to ischial spines – determined by vaginal exam
 - ♦ at ischial spines = station 0 = engaged
 - ♦ -5 to -1 cm above ischial spines or
 - ♦ +1 to +5 cm below ischial spines
 - ♦ alternatively stations can be placed on a scale from -3 to +3

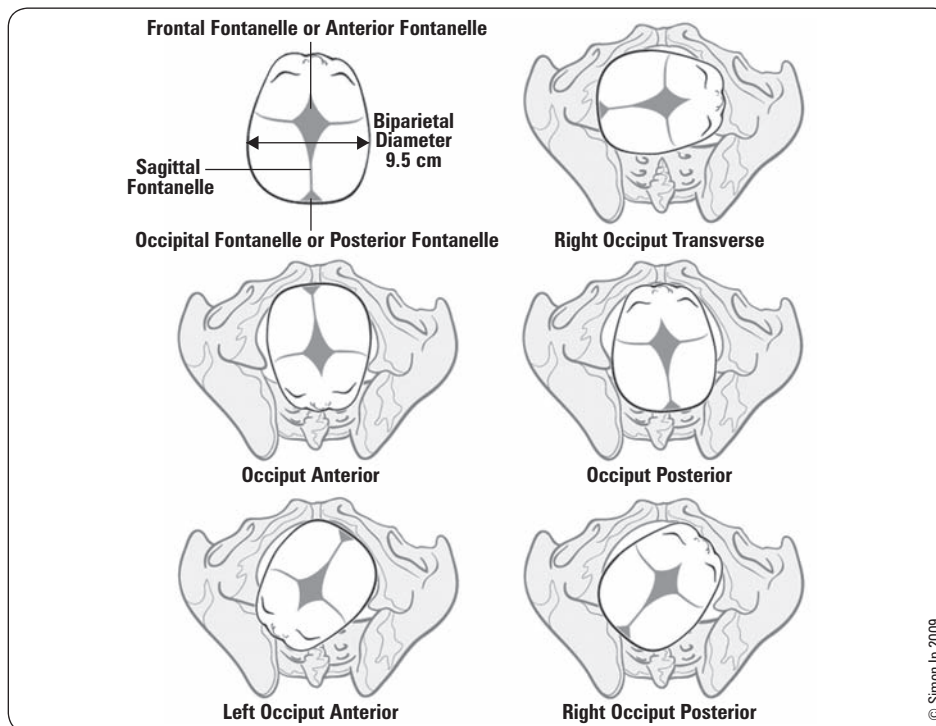


Figure 7. Fetal positions

**Course of Normal Labor**

Stage	Nulliparous	Multiparous
First	6-18 h	2-10 h
Second	30 min-3 h	5-30 min
Third	5-30 min	5-30 min

**Signs of Placental Separation**

- Gush of blood
- Lengthening of cord
- Uterus becomes globular
- Fundus rises

**Continuous Support for Women During Childbirth**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2011;16:CD003766

Study: Systematic review of 21 RCTs from 11 countries, 15,061 women in labor.**Intervention:** Continuous support during labor vs. usual care.**Outcome:** Effects on mothers and their babies.

Results: Continuous intrapartum support increased likelihood of shorter labor, spontaneous vaginal birth, decrease in analgesia use, and a decrease in dissatisfaction with childbirth experience. Greatest benefit when provider is not a health care professional. Continuous support was also associated with decreased likelihood to have a Cesarean or instrumental vaginal birth, regional analgesia, or a baby with a low 5 min APGAR score.

Four Stages of Labor

First Stage of Labor

- latent phase
 - uterine contractions typically infrequent and irregular
 - slow cervical dilatation (usually to 3-4 cm) and effacement
- active phase
 - rapid cervical dilatation to full dilatation (nulliparous ~1.2 cm/h, multiparous ~1.5 cm/h)
 - phase of maximum slope on cervical dilatation curve
 - painful, regular contractions q2-3min, lasting 45-60 s
 - contractions strongest at fundus, weakest at lower segment

Second Stage of Labor

- from full dilatation to delivery of the baby
- mother feels a desire to bear down and push with each contraction
- women may choose a comfortable position that enhances pushing efforts and delivery
 - upright (semi-sitting, squatting) and LLDP are supported in the literature
- progress measured by descent

Third Stage of Labor

- separation and expulsion of the placenta
- can last up to 30 min before intervention indicated
- start oxytocin IV drip, or give 10 U IM or 5 mg IV push after delivery of anterior shoulder in anticipation of placental delivery, otherwise give after delivery of placenta
- routine oxytocin administration in third stage of labor can reduce the risk of PPH by >40%

Fourth Stage of Labor

- first postpartum hour
- monitor vital signs and bleeding
- repair lacerations
- ensure uterus is contracted (palpate uterus and monitor uterine bleeding)
- inspect placenta for completeness and umbilical cord for presence of 2 arteries and 1 vein
- 3rd and 4th stages of labor most dangerous to the mother (i.e. hemorrhage)

The Cardinal Movements of the Fetus During Delivery

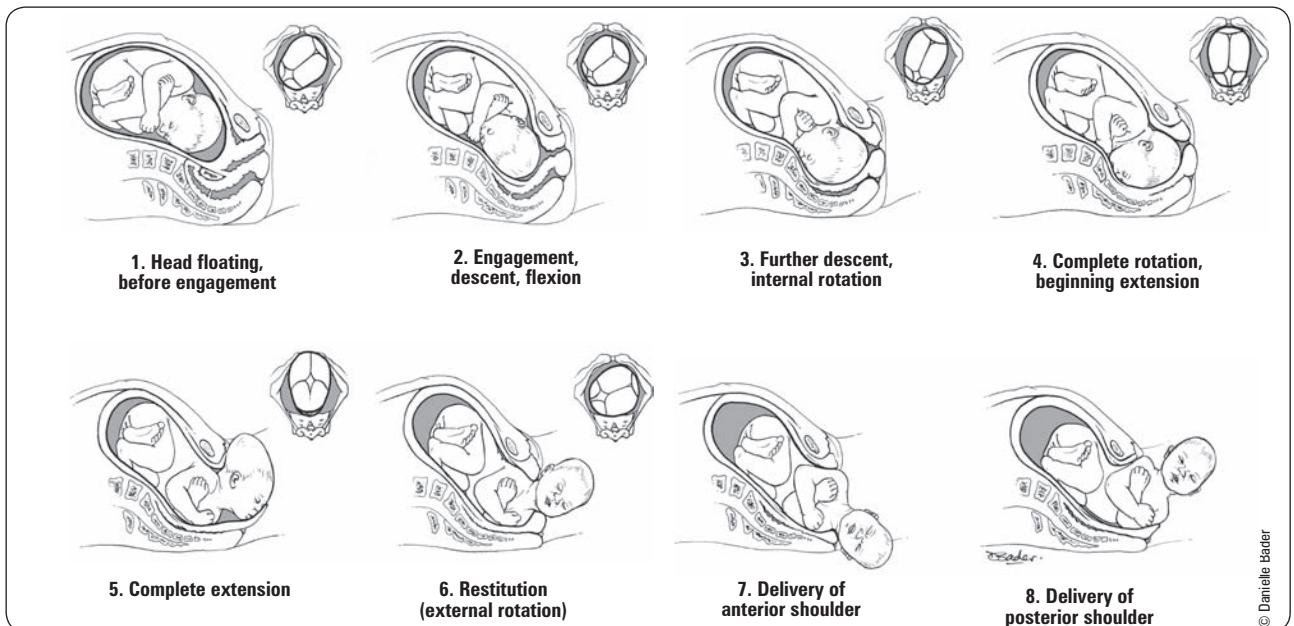


Figure 8. Cardinal movements of fetus during delivery

Adapted from illustration in Williams Obstetrics, 19th ed

Analgesic and Anesthetic Techniques in Labor and Birth

- pain or anxiety leads to high endogenous catecholamines, which produce a direct inhibitory effect on uterine contractility

Non-Pharmacologic Pain Relief Techniques

- reduction of painful stimuli
 - maternal movement, position change, counter-pressure, abdominal compression
- activation of peripheral sensory receptors
 - superficial heat and cold
 - immersion in water during labor
 - touch and massage, acupuncture, and acupressure
 - TENS
 - intradermal injection of sterile water
 - aromatherapy
- enhancement of descending inhibitory pathways
 - attention focusing and distraction
 - hypnosis
 - music and audio analgesia
 - biofeedback

Pharmacologic Methods (see [Anesthesia, A24](#))

- nitrous oxide (e.g. self-administered Entonox®)
- narcotics (usually combined with anti-emetic)
- pudendal nerve block
- perineal infiltration with local anesthetic
- regional anesthesia (epidural block, combined spinal-epidural, spinal)



Fetal Monitoring in Labor

- see online [Fetal Heart Rate Tutorial](#)

Vaginal Exam

- membrane status
- cervical effacement (thinning), dilatation, consistency, position, application
- fetal presenting part, position, station
- bony pelvis size and shape
- monitor progress of labor at regular intervals and document in a partogram

Intrapartum Fetal Monitoring

- intermittent fetal auscultation with Doppler device q15-30min for 1 min in first stage active phase following a contraction, q5min during second stage when pushing has begun
- continuous electronic FHR monitoring reserved for abnormal auscultation, prolonged labor, and labor which is induced or augmented, meconium present, multiple gestation/fetal complication
 - routine use of continuous electronic monitoring shown to lead to higher intervention rates and no improvement in outcome for the neonate
 - techniques for continuous monitoring include external (Doppler) vs. internal (fetal scalp electrode) monitoring
- fetal scalp sampling should be used in conjunction with electronic FHR monitoring and contraction monitoring (CTG) to resolve the interpretation of abnormal or atypical patterns

Electronic FHR Monitoring

- FHR measured by Doppler; contractions measured by tocometer
- described in terms of baseline FHR, variability (short-term, long-term), and periodicity (accelerations, decelerations)
- **Baseline FHR**
 - normal range is 110-160 bpm
 - parameter of fetal well-being vs. distress
- **Variability**
 - physiologic variability is a normal characteristic of FHR
 - variability is measured over a 15 min period and is described as: absent, minimal (<6 bpm), moderate (6-25 bpm), marked (>25 bpm)
 - normal variability indicates fetal acid-base status is acceptable
 - can only be assessed by electronic fetal monitoring (CTG)
 - variability decreases intermittently even in healthy fetus
 - see [Table 19, OB34](#)
- **Periodicity**
 - accelerations: increase of ≥ 15 bpm lasting ≥ 15 s, in response to fetal movement or uterine contraction (or ≥ 10 bpm lasting ≥ 10 s if <32 wk GA)
 - decelerations: 3 types, described in terms of shape, onset, depth, duration recovery, occurrence, and impact on baseline FHR and variability

Table 18. Factors Affecting Fetal Heart Rate

	Fetal Tachycardia (FHR >160)	Fetal Bradycardia (FHR <110)	Decreased Variability
Maternal Factors	Fever Hyperthyroidism Anemia	Hypothermia Hypotension Hypoglycemia	Infection Dehydration
Fetal Factors	Arrhythmia Anemia	Rapid descent Dysrhythmia Heart block	CNS anomalies Dysrhythmia Inactivity/sleep cycle, preterm fetus
Drugs	Sympathomimetics	β -blockers Anesthetics	Narcotics, sedatives Magnesium sulphate, β -blockers
Uteroplacental	Early hypoxia (abruption, HTN) Chorioamnionitis	Late hypoxia (abruption, HTN) Acute cord prolapse Hypercontractility	Hypoxia

Fetal Scalp Blood Sampling

- indicated when atypical or abnormal fetal heart rate is suggested by clinical parameters including heavy meconium or moderately to severely abnormal FHR patterns, including unexplained low variability, repetitive late decelerations, complex variable decelerations, fetal cardiac arrhythmias
 - pH ≥ 7.25 : normal, repeat if abnormal FHR persists
 - pH 7.21-7.24: repeat assessment in 30 min or consider delivery if rapid fall since last sample
 - pH ≤ 7.20 : indicates fetal acidosis, delivery is indicated



Continuous CTG as a Form of EFM for Fetal Assessment During Labor

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;5:CD006066

Purpose: To examine the effectiveness of continuous electronic fetal monitoring or cardiotocography during labor.

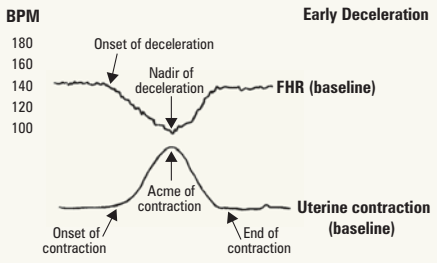
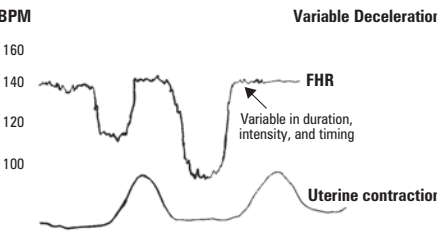
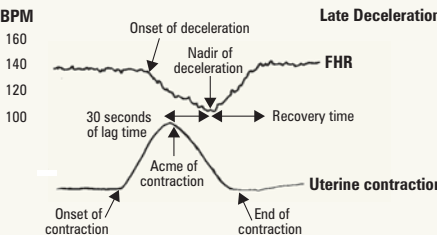
Selection Criteria: Randomized and quasi-randomized controlled trials comparing continuous CTG (with and without fetal blood sampling) to a) no fetal monitoring, b) intermittent auscultation, or c) intermittent CTG.

Results: 13 trials, 37,000 women. Continuous CTG compared with intermittent auscultation showed no difference in overall perinatal death rate or cerebral palsy rates. Nonetheless, neonatal seizures were halved (RR 0.50, 95% CI 0.31-0.80) and there was a significant increase in Cesarean sections with CTG (RR 1.63, 95% CI 1.29-2.07) and instrumental vaginal birth (RR 1.15, 95% CI 1.01-1.33).

Conclusion: Continuous CTG may reduce the incidence of neonatal seizures, but has no effect on cerebral palsy rates, infant mortality, or other measures of neonatal well-being. Continuous CTG was also associated with an increase in Cesarean sections and instrumental deliveries.

- contraindications
 - known or suspected fetal blood dyscrasia (hemophilia, von Willebrand disease)
 - active maternal infection (HIV, genital herpes)

Table 19. Comparison of Decelerations

Early Decelerations <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Uniform shape with onset early in contraction, returns to baseline by end of contraction, mirrors contraction• Gradual deceleration• Often repetitive; no effect on baseline FHR or variability• Benign, due to vagal response to head compression	
Variable Decelerations <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Variable in shape, onset, and duration• Most common type of periodicity seen during labor• Often with abrupt drop in FHR; usually no effect on baseline FHR or variability• Due to cord compression or, in second stage, forceful pushing with contractions	
Complicated Variable Decelerations <ul style="list-style-type: none">• To <70 bpm for >60 s• Loss of variability or decrease in baseline after deceleration• Biphasic deceleration• Slow return to baseline• Baseline tachycardia or bradycardia	
Late Decelerations <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Uniform shape with onset late in contraction, nadir after peak of contraction, and slow return to baseline• May cause decreased variability and change in baseline FHR• Due to fetal hypoxia and acidemia, maternal hypotension, or uterine hypertonus• Usually a sign of uteroplacental insufficiency (an ominous sign)	



Rule of 60s Suggesting Severe Variable Decelerations
Deceleration to <60 bpm
>60 bpm below baseline
>60 s in duration with slow return to baseline

Table 20. Classification of Intrapartum EFM Tracings

	Normal Tracing (Category 1)	Atypical Tracing* (Category 2)	Abnormal Tracing* (Category 3)
Baseline	110-160 bpm	Bradycardia 100-110 bpm Tachycardia >160 for 30-80 min Rising baseline	Bradycardia <100 bpm Tachycardia >160 bpm for >80 min Erratic baseline
Variability	6-25 bpm ≤5 bpm for <40 min	≤5 bpm for 40-80 min	<5 bpm for >80 min ≥25 bpm for >10 min
Decelerations	None Early decelerations Occasional uncomplicated variable decelerations	Repetitive (≥3) uncomplicated variable decelerations Occasional late decelerations Any prolonged deceleration 2-3 min	Repetitive (≥3) complicated variable decelerations Repetitive late decelerations Any prolonged deceleration >3 min
Accelerations	Accelerations spontaneous or during scalp stimulation	Absent with scalp stimulation	Nearly absent
Action	EFM may be interrupted for ≤30 min if mother/fetus stable	Further assessment required	Action required: review clinical situation, obtain scalp pH, prepare for possible delivery



Approach to the Management of Abnormal FHR
POISON – ER
Position (LLPD)
O₂ (100% by mask)
IV fluids (corrects maternal hypotension)
Fetal Scalp stimulation
Fetal Scalp electrode
Fetal Scalp pH
Stop Oxytocin
Notify MD

Vaginal Exam to rule out cord prolapse
Rule out fever, dehydration, drug effects, prematurity

• If above fails, consider C/S

Adapted from SOGC Guidelines, September 2008
*Previous classification was “reassuring” vs. “non-reassuring”, but distinction is now made between tracings that have some concerning changes but do not require immediate action (atypical) vs. those with major concerns requiring immediate intervention (abnormal)

Fetal Oxygenation

- uterine contractions during labor decrease uteroplacental blood flow, which results in reduced oxygen delivery to the fetus
- most fetuses tolerate this reduction in flow and have no adverse effects
- distribution of oxygen to the fetus depends on maternal, uteroplacental, and fetal factors

- **fetal response to hypoxia/asphyxia**
 - decreased movement, tone, and breathing activities
 - redistribution of fetal blood flow
 - ♦ increased flow to brain, heart, and adrenals
 - ♦ decreased flow to kidneys, lungs, gut, liver, and peripheral tissues
 - ♦ increase in blood pressure
 - transient fetal bradycardia followed by fetal tachycardia
 - anaerobic metabolism (decreased pH)

Table 21. Factors Affecting Fetal Oxygenation

Factor	Mechanism	Example
Maternal	Decreased maternal oxygen carrying capacity	Significant anemia (iron deficiency, hemoglobinopathies), carboxyhemoglobin (smokers)
	Decreased uterine blood flow	Hypotension (blood loss, sepsis), regional anesthesia, maternal positioning
	Chronic maternal conditions	Vasculopathies (SLE, type 1 DM, chronic HTN), antiphospholipid syndrome, cyanotic heart disease, COPD
Uteroplacental	Uterine hypertonus	Placental abruption, hyperstimulation secondary to oxytocin, prostaglandins, or normal labor
	Uteroplacental dysfunction	Placental abruption, placental infarction (dysfunction marked by IUGR, oligohydramnios, abnormal Doppler studies), chorioamnionitis, placental edema (DM, hydrops), placental senescence (post-dates)
Fetal	Cord compression	Oligohydramnios, cord prolapse or entanglement
	Decreased fetal oxygen carrying capacity	Significant anemia (isoimmunization, feto-maternal bleed), carboxyhemoglobin (exposure to smokers)

Induction of Labor

Definition

- artificial initiation of labor before its spontaneous onset for the purpose of delivery of the fetus and placenta

Prerequisites for Labor Induction

- capability for C/S if necessary
- maternal
 - short, thin, soft, anterior cervix with open os (“inducible” or “ripe”)
 - if cervix is not ripe, use prostaglandin vaginal insert (Cervidil®), prostaglandin gel (Prepidil®), or Foley catheter
- fetal
 - normal fetal heart tracing
 - cephalic presentation
 - adequate fetal monitoring available
- likelihood of success determined by Bishop score
 - cervix considered unfavorable if <6
 - cervix favorable if ≥6
 - score of 9-13 associated with high likelihood of vaginal delivery

Table 22. Bishop Score

Cervical Characteristic	0	1	2	3
Position	Posterior	Mid	Anterior	–
Consistency	Firm	Medium	Soft	–
Effacement (%)	0-30	40-50	60-70	≥80
Dilatation (cm)	0	1-2	3-4	≥5
Station of Fetal Head	-3	-2	-1, 0	+1, +2, +3

Indications

- post-dates pregnancy (generally >41 wk) = most common reason for induction
- maternal factors
 - DM = second most common reason for induction
 - gestational HTN
 - other maternal medical problems, e.g. renal or lung disease
- maternal-fetal factors
 - isoimmunization, PROM, chorioamnionitis, post-term pregnancy



Induction vs. Augmentation

Induction is the artificial initiation of labor

Augmentation promotes contractions when spontaneous contractions are inadequate



Induction is indicated when the risk of continuing pregnancy exceeds the risks associated with induced labor and delivery



Consider the Following Before Induction

- Indication for induction
- Contraindications
- GA
- Cervical favorability
- Fetal presentation
- Potential for CPD
- Fetal well-being/FHR
- Membrane status

- fetal factors
 - suspected fetal jeopardy as evidenced by biochemical or biophysical indications
 - fetal demise, IUGR

Risks

- failure to achieve labor and/or vaginal birth
- uterine hyperstimulation and fetal compromise
- maternal side effects to medications
- uterine atony and PPH
- uterine rupture

Contraindications

- maternal
 - prior classical or inverted T-incision or uterine surgery (e.g. myomectomy)
 - unstable maternal condition
 - active maternal genital herpes
 - invasive cervical carcinoma
 - pelvic structure deformities
- maternal-fetal
 - placenta previa or vasa previa
 - cord presentation
- fetal
 - fetal distress, malpresentation, preterm fetus without lung maturity



Evidence for Cervical Ripening Methods (SOGC Guidelines)

- Meta-analysis of five trials has concluded that the use of oxytocin to ripen the cervix is not effective
- Since the best dose and route of misoprostol for labor induction with a live fetus are not known and there are concerns regarding hyperstimulation, the use of misoprostol for induction of labor should be within clinical trials only (Level 1b evidence) or in cases of intrauterine fetal death to initiate labor



Intravaginal PGE2 (Cervidil®) Compared to Intravaginal Prostaglandin Gel

- 4 RCTs have compared the two with varying results, depending on the dosing regime of gel used.
- Theoretical advantages of Cervidil®:
- Insertion without a speculum
 - Slow, continuous release
 - Only one dose required
 - Ability to use oxytocin 30 min after removal
 - Ability to remove insert if required (i.e. excessive uterine activity)

Induction Methods

CERVICAL RIPENING

Definition

- use of medications or other means to soften, efface, and dilate the cervix to increase likelihood of induction success
- ripening of an unfavorable cervix (Bishop score <6) is warranted prior to induction of labor

Methods

- intravaginal prostaglandin PGE2 gel (Prostin® gel): long and closed cervix
 - recommended dosing interval of prostaglandin gel is every 6 to 12 h up to 3 doses
- intravaginal PGE2 (Cervidil®): long and closed cervix, may use if ROM
 - continuous release, can be removed if needed
 - controlled release PGE2
- Foley catheter placement to mechanically dilate the cervix

INDUCTION OF LABOR

Amniotomy

- artificial rupture of membranes (amniotomy) to stimulate prostaglandin synthesis and secretion; may try this as initial measure if cervix is dilated
- few studies address the value of amniotomy alone for induction of labor
- amniotomy plus intravenous oxytocin: more women delivered vaginally at 24 h than amniotomy alone (relative risk = 0.03) and had fewer instrumental vaginal deliveries (relative risk = 5.5)

Oxytocin

- oxytocin (Pitocin®): 10 U in 1L NS, run at 0.5-2 mU/min IV increasing by 1-2 mU/min q20-60min to a max of 36-48 mU/min
 - reduces rate of unsuccessful vaginal deliveries within 24 h when used alone (8.3% vs. 54%, RR 0.16)
 - ideal dosing regime of oxytocin is not known
 - current recommendations: use the minimum dose to achieve active labor and increase q30min as needed
 - reassessment should occur once a dose of 20 mU/min is reached
- potential complications
 - hyperstimulation/tetanic contraction (may cause fetal distress or rupture of uterus)
 - uterine muscle fatigue, uterine atony (may result in PPH)
 - vasopressin-like action causing anti-diuresis

Augmentation of Labor

- augmentation of labor is used to promote adequate contractions when spontaneous contractions are inadequate and cervical dilatation or descent of fetus fails to occur
- oxytocin (0.5-2 mU/min IV increasing by 1-2 mU/min q20-60min to a max of 36-48 mU/min)



Oxytocin $t_{1/2}$ = 3-5 min

High Risk Labor and Delivery



Preterm Labor

Definition

- labor occurring between 20 and 37 wk gestation

Etiology

- idiopathic (most common)
- maternal: infection (recurrent pyelonephritis, untreated bacteriuria, chorioamnionitis), genital infection (bacterial vaginosis is associated with a 2-fold increase in relative risk of preterm birth), HTN, DM, chronic illness, mechanical factors, previous obstetric, gynecological, and abdominal surgeries, socio-environmental (poor nutrition, smoking, drugs, alcohol, stress)
- maternal-fetal: PPRM (common), polyhydramnios, placenta previa, placental abruption, or placental insufficiency
- fetal: multiple gestation, congenital abnormalities of fetus, fetal hydrops
- uterine: incompetent cervix, excessive enlargement (hydramnios), malformations (leiomyomas, septate uterus)

Epidemiology

- preterm labor complicates about 10% of pregnancies

Risk Factors and Prediction of PTL

- maternal risk scoring using above etiologies fails to identify up to 70% of preterm deliveries and is therefore of limited use
- prior history of spontaneous PTL: most important risk factor
- prior history cervical excisions or mechanical dilatation
- cervical length: measured by transvaginal U/S (cervical length >30 mm has high negative predictive value for PTL before 34 wk)
- identification of bacterial vaginosis (Rx metronidazole) and ureaplasma urealyticum (Rx erythromycin) infections: routine screening not supported by current data but it is reasonable to screen high risk women
- fetal fibronectin: a glycoprotein in amniotic fluid and placental tissue functioning to maintain integrity of chorionic-decidual interface in asymptomatic women
 - positive if >50 ng/mL
 - in symptomatic women (i.e. preterm contractions), fetal fibronectin is most effectively combined with U/S detecting cervical length
 - if cervical length is not short and fetal fibronectin is negative, preterm labor is highly unlikely

Clinical Features

- regular contractions (2 in 10 min)
- cervix >2 cm dilated, 80% effaced, or documented change in cervix

Management

A. Initial

- transfer to appropriate facility if stable
- hydration (NS at 150 mL/h)
- bed rest in LLDP
- sedation (morphine)
- avoid repeated pelvic exams (increased infection risk)
- U/S examination of fetus (GA, BPP, position, placenta location, estimated fetal weight)
- prophylactic antibiotics; controversial but may help delay delivery, important to consider if PPRM

B. Suppression of Labor – Tocolysis

- does not inhibit preterm labor completely, but may buy time (used for <48 h) to allow for betamethasone valerate (Celestone®) and/or transfer to appropriate center for care of the premature infant
- requirements (all must be satisfied)
 - preterm labor
 - live, immature fetus, intact membranes, cervical dilatation of <4 cm
 - absence of maternal or fetal contraindications
- contraindications
 - maternal: bleeding (placenta previa or abruption), maternal disease (HTN, DM, heart disease), preeclampsia or eclampsia, chorioamnionitis
 - fetal: erythroblastosis fetalis, severe congenital anomalies, fetal distress/demise, IUGR, multiple gestation (relative)



Positive fetal fibronectin in cervicovaginal fluid (>50 ng/mL) at 24 wk gestation predicted spontaneous PTL at <34 wk with sensitivity of 23%, specificity of 97%, PPV of 25%, NPV of 96%



Tocolytics for Preterm Premature Rupture of Membranes

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2014;2:CD007062

Purpose: To assess the potential benefits and harms of tocolysis in women with PPRM.

Selection Criteria: Pregnant women with singleton pregnancies and PPRM (23-36 wk and 6 d GA).

Results: 8 studies with 408 women total. Prophylactic tocolysis with PPRM was associated with increased overall latency, without additional benefits for maternal/neonatal outcomes. For women with PPRM before 34 wk, there was a significantly increased risk of chorioamnionitis in women who received tocolysis. Neonatal outcomes were not significantly different.

Conclusion: Although there are limitations to the studies, there is currently insufficient evidence to support tocolytic therapy for women with PPRM, as there was an increase in maternal chorioamnionitis without significant benefits to the infant.

- agents
 - calcium channel blockers: Nifedipine
 - 20 mg PO loading dose followed by 20 mg PO 90 min later
 - 20 mg can be continued q3-8h for 72 h or to a max of 180 mg
 - 10 mg PO q20min x 4 doses
 - prostaglandin synthesis inhibitors: Indomethacin
 - 1st line for early preterm labor (<30 wk GA) or polyhydramnios
 - 50-100 mg PO loading dose followed by 25 mg q4-6h
 - magnesium sulphate was previously used for tocolysis; currently, its primary use in obstetrics is limited to neuroprotection or prevention of eclampsia

C. Enhancement of Fetal Pulmonary Maturity

- betamethasone valerate (Celestone®) 12 mg IM q24h x 2 doses or dexamethasone 6 mg IM q12h x 4 doses
 - 28-34 wk GA: reduces incidence of RDS
 - 24-28 wk GA: reduces severity of RDS, overall mortality, and rate of IVH
 - specific maternal contraindications: active TB

D. Cervical Cerclage

- definition: placement of cervical sutures at the level of the internal os, usually at the end of the first trimester and removed in the third trimester
- indications: cervical incompetence (i.e. cervical dilation and effacement in the absence of increased uterine contractility)
 - emerging evidence indicates that progesterone suppositories are superior to cerclage in preventing preterm labor late in pregnancy
- diagnosis of cervical incompetence
 - obstetrical Hx: silent cervical dilation
 - ability of cervix to hold an inflated Foley catheter during a hysterosonogram
- proven benefit in the prevention of PTL in women with primary structural abnormality of the cervix (e.g. conization of the cervix, connective tissue disorders)

Prognosis

- prematurity is the leading cause of perinatal morbidity and mortality
- 30 wk or 1,500 g (3.3 lb) = 90% survival
- 33 wk or 2,000 g (4.4 lb) = 99% survival

Prevention of Preterm Labor

- preventative measures: good prenatal care, identify pregnancies at risk, treat silent vaginal infection or UTI, patient education
- transvaginal ultrasound of cervical length is recommended only for high-risk pregnancies



Cerclage for Short Cervix on Ultrasonography in Women With Singleton Gestations and Previous Preterm Birth

Obstet Gynecol 2011;117:663-671

Purpose: To determine if cerclage prevents preterm birth (<35 wk gestation) and perinatal mortality and morbidity among women with previous spontaneous preterm birth, asymptomatic singleton gestation, and short cervical length (<25 mm before 24 wk gestation) on transvaginal ultrasonography.

Methods: Meta-analysis of randomized trials identified using searches on MEDLINE, PUBMED, EMBASE, and the Cochrane Library.

Results: 5 trials included. Preterm birth was significantly lower among women receiving cerclage vs. those not (RR=0.70, 95% CI 0.55-0.89). Cerclage also significantly reduced preterm birth before 24, 28, 32, and 37 wk gestation. Perinatal mortality and morbidity were significantly lower in the cerclage group (RR=0.64, 95% CI 0.45-0.91).

Conclusions: Cerclage significantly prevents preterm birth and perinatal mortality and morbidity in this specific group of women.

Premature Rupture of Membranes

Definitions

- PROM or amniorrhexis: rupture of membranes prior to labor at any GA
- prolonged ROM: >24 h elapsed between rupture of membranes and onset of labor
- preterm ROM: ROM occurring before 37 wk gestation (associated with PTL)
- PPROM: rupture of membranes before 37 wk AND prior to onset of labor

Risk Factors

- maternal: multiparity, cervical incompetence, infection (cervicitis, vaginitis, STD, UTI), family history of PROM, low socioeconomic class/poor nutrition
- fetal: congenital anomaly, multiple gestation
- other risk factors associated with PTL

Clinical Features

- history of fluid gush or continued leakage

Investigations

- sterile speculum exam (avoid introduction of infection)
 - pooling of fluid in the posterior fornix
 - may observe fluid leaking out of cervix on cough/Valsalva ("cascade")
- nitrazine (amniotic fluid turns nitrazine paper blue)
 - low specificity as can be positive with blood, urine, or semen
- ferning (high salt in amniotic fluid evaporates, looks like ferns under microscope)
- U/S to rule out fetal anomalies, assess GA, and BPP



Membrane Status Determined by

- Pooling of fluid on speculum exam
- Increased pH of vaginal fluid (nitrazine test)
- Ferning of fluid under light microscopy
- Decreased AFW on U/S



L/S Ratio (Lecithin:Sphingomyelin Ratio)

Lecithin levels increase rapidly after 35 wk gestation, whereas sphingomyelin levels remain relatively constant. The L/S ratio is a measure of fetal lung maturity – less than 2:1 indicates pulmonary immaturity. Presence of blood or meconium in the amniotic fluid can affect the ratio

Management

- admit for expectant management and monitor vitals q4h, daily BPP and WBC count
- avoid introducing infection with examinations (do NOT do a bimanual exam)
- cultures (cervix for GC, lower vagina for GBS)
- assess fetal lung maturity by L/S ratio of amniotic fluid
 - consider administration of betamethasone valerate (Celestone®) to accelerate maturity if <32 wk and no evidence of infection
 - consider tocolysis for 48 h to permit administration of steroids if PPRM induces labor
- if not in labor or labor not indicated, consider antibiotics (controversial)
 - studies show broad spectrum coverage increases the time to onset of labor from PROM by 5-7 d with no increase in maternal or neonatal morbidity or mortality
- deliver urgently if evidence of fetal distress and/or chorioamnionitis

Table 23. PROM Management

Degree of Prematurity	Management
<24 wk	Consider termination (poor outcome due to pulmonary hypoplasia)
24-25 wk	Individual consideration with counseling of parents re: risks to preterm infants
26-34 wk	Expectant management as prematurity complications are significant
34-36 wk	"Gray zone" where risk of death from RDS and neonatal sepsis is the same
≥37 wk	Induction of labor since the risk of death from sepsis is greater than RDS

Prognosis

- varies with gestational age
- 90% of women with PROM at 28-34 wk GA go into spontaneous labor within 1 wk
- 50% of women with PROM at <26 wk GA go into spontaneous labor within 1 wk
- complications: cord prolapse, intrauterine infection (chorioamnionitis), premature delivery, limb contracture

Breech Presentation

Definition

- fetal buttocks or lower extremity is the presenting part as determined on U/S
- complete (10%): flexion at hips and knees
- frank (60%): flexion at hips, extension at knees
 - most common type of breech presentation
 - most common breech presentation to be delivered vaginally
- footling (30%): may be single or double with extension at hip(s) and knee(s) so that foot is the presenting part

Epidemiology

- occurs in 3-4% of pregnancies at term (25% before 28 wk)

Risk Factors

- maternal: pelvis (contracted), uterus (shape abnormalities, intrauterine tumors, fibroids), extrauterine tumors causing compression, grand multiparity
- maternal-fetal: placenta (previa), amniotic fluid (poly-/oligohydramnios)
- fetal: prematurity, multiple gestation, congenital malformations (found in 6% of breeches; 2-3% if in vertex presentations), abnormalities in fetal tone and movement, aneuploidy

Management

- ECV: repositioning of fetus within uterus under U/S guidance
 - overall success rate of 65%
 - criteria: singleton, unengaged presenting part, reactive NST
 - contraindications: previous T3 bleed, prior classical C/S, previous myomectomy, oligohydramnios, PROM, placenta previa, abnormal U/S, suspected IUGR, HTN, uteroplacental insufficiency, nuchal cord
 - risks: abruption, cord compression
 - method: tocometry, followed by ultrasound guided transabdominal manipulation of fetus with consistent fetal heart monitoring
 - if patient Rh negative, give Rhogam® prior to procedure
 - good prognostic factors (for a successful version)
 - ♦ multiparous, good fluid volume, small baby, skilled obstetrician
- pre- or early labor ultrasound to assess type of breech presentation, fetal growth, estimated weight, attitude of fetal head; if ultrasound unavailable, recommend C/S
- trial of labor and elective C/S should be presented as options with the risks and benefits outlined; obtain informed consent



A. Complete Breech



B. Frank Breech



C. Footling Breech

© Crista Mason 2004

Figure 9. Types of breech presentation



Criteria for Vaginal Breech Delivery

- Frank or complete breech, GA >36 wk
- EFW 2,500-3,800 g based on clinical and U/S assessment (5.5-8.5 lb)
- Fetal head flexed
- Continuous fetal monitoring
- 2 experienced obstetricians, assistant, and anesthesiologist present
- Ability to perform emergency C/S within 30 min if required

- method for vaginal breech delivery
 - encourage effective maternal pushing efforts
 - at delivery of after-coming head, assistant must apply suprapubic pressure to flex and engage fetal head
 - delivery can be spontaneous or assisted; avoid fetal traction
 - apply fetal manipulation only after spontaneous delivery to level of umbilicus
- C/S recommended if: the breech has not descended to the perineum in the second stage of labor after 2 h, in the absence of active pushing, or if vaginal delivery is not imminent after 1 h of active pushing
- contraindications to vaginal breech delivery
 - cord presentation
 - clinically inadequate maternal pelvis
 - fetal factors incompatible with vaginal delivery

Prognosis

- regardless of route of delivery, breech infants have lower birth weights and higher rates of perinatal mortality, congenital anomalies, abruption, and cord prolapse

Vaginal Birth After Cesarean (Trial of Labor After Cesarean)

- recommended after previous low transverse incision
- success rate varies with indication for previous C/S (generally 60-80%)
- risk of uterine rupture (<1% with low transverse incision)

Contraindications

- previous classical, inverted T, or unknown uterine incision, or complete transection of uterus (6% risk of rupture)
- history of hysterotomy or previous uterine rupture
- multiple gestation
- non-vertex presentation or placenta previa
- inadequate facilities or personnel for emergency C/S

Prolonged Pregnancy

Definition

- pregnancy beyond 42 wk GA

Epidemiology

- 41 wk GA: up to 27%
- 42 wk GA: 4-14%

Etiology

- most cases idiopathic
- anencephalic fetus with no pituitary gland
- placental sulfatase deficiency (X-linked recessive condition in 1/2,000-1/6,000 infants) – rare

Clinical Features

- postmaturity syndrome: 10-20% of post-term pregnancies (fetal weight loss, reduction in subcutaneous fat, scaling, dry skin from placental insufficiency, long thin body, open-eyed, alert and worried look, long nails, palms and soles wrinkled)
- with increasing GA, higher rates of: intrauterine infection, asphyxia, meconium aspiration syndrome, placental insufficiency, placental aging and infarction, macrosomia, dystocia, fetal distress, operative deliveries

Management

- GA 40-41 wk: expectant management
 - no evidence to support IOL or C/S unless other risk factors for morbidity are present (see prognosis)
- GA >41 wk: offer IOL if vaginal delivery is not contraindicated
 - IOL shown to decrease C/S, fetal heart rate changes, meconium staining, macrosomia, and death when compared with expectant management
- GA >41 wk and expectant management elected: serial fetal surveillance
 - fetal movement count by the mother
 - BPP q3-4d
 - If AFI is decreased, labor will be induced



Vaginal Delivery of Breech Presentation

SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2009;226;557-566

Objective: To discuss risks and benefits of trial of labor vs. planned C/S, with selection criteria, management, and delivery techniques for trial of vaginal breech birth.

Evidence: Randomized trials, prospective cohort studies and select cohort studies from Medline search for long-term outcomes and epidemiology of vaginal breech delivery.

Summary: Higher risk of perinatal mortality and short-term neonatal morbidity can be associated with vaginal breech birth as compared to elective C/S. However, careful case selection (including term singleton breech fetuses and clinically adequate maternal pelvis) and labor management may achieve a similar safety level as elective C/S (~2 per 1,000 births perinatal mortality, ~2% short-term neonatal morbidity). Specific protocols for vaginal breech delivery should be followed: continuous fetal heart monitoring, assessment for adequate progress in labor, no induction of labor recommended, emergency C/S available, if required, and health care providers with requisite skills and experience. Informed consent for the preferred delivery method should be obtained.



VBAC

- Rate of VBAC ranges from 60-82%
- No significant difference in maternal deaths or hysterectomies between VBAC or C/S
- Uterine rupture more common in VBAC group
- Evidence regarding fetal outcome is lacking

Safety of vaginal birth after Cesarean section: A systematic review. *Obstet Gynecol* 2004;103:420-9

Prognosis

- if >42 wk, perinatal mortality 2-3x higher (due to progressive uteroplacental insufficiency)
- morbidity increased with HTN in pregnancy, DM, abruption, IUGR, and multiple gestation

Intrauterine Fetal Death

Definition

- fetal death *in utero* after 20 wk GA

Epidemiology

- 1% of pregnancies

Etiology

- 50% idiopathic
- 50% secondary to HTN, DM, erythroblastosis fetalis, congenital anomalies, umbilical cord or placental complications, intrauterine infection, APS

Clinical Features

- decreased perception of fetal movement by mother
- SFH and maternal weight not increasing
- absent fetal heart tones (not diagnostic)
- high MSAFP

Management

- diagnosis: absent cardiac activity and fetal movement on U/S required for diagnosis
- determine secondary cause
 - maternal: HbA1c, Kleihauer-Betke, VDRL, ANA, antibody screens, INR/PTT, serum/urine toxicology screens, cervical and vaginal cultures, TORCH screen
 - fetal: chromosomes, cord blood, skin biopsy, genetics evaluation, autopsy
 - placenta: pathology, bacterial cultures

Treatment

- induction of labor
- monitor for maternal coagulopathy (10% risk of DIC)
- parental psychological care as per hospital protocol
- comprehensive discussion within 3 mo about final investigation and post-mortem results, help make plans for future pregnancies

**DIC: Generalized Coagulation and Fibrinolysis Leading to Depletion of Coagulation Factors****Obstetrical Causes**

- Abruption
- Gestational HTN
- Fetal demise
- PPH

DIC-specific Blood Work

- Platelets
- aPTT and PT
- FDP
- Fibrinogen

Treatment

- Treat underlying cause
- Supportive
 - Fluids
 - Blood products
 - FFP, platelets, cryoprecipitate
- Consider anti-coagulation as VTE prophylaxis

Complications of Labor and Delivery



Meconium in Amniotic Fluid

Epidemiology

- present early in labor in 10% of pregnancies
- in general, meconium may be present in up to 25% of all labors; usually NOT associated with poor outcome, but extra care is required at time of delivery to avoid aspiration

Etiology

- likely cord compression ± uterine hypertonus
- may indicate undiagnosed breech
- increasing meconium during labor may be a sign of fetal distress

Features

- consistency and color
 - light yellow/green or dark green-black in color
 - may be watery or thicker

Treatment

- call respiratory therapy, neonatology, or pediatrics to delivery room
- oropharynx suctioning upon head expulsion or immediately after delivery if baby not breathing spontaneously (do NOT stimulate infant before)
- consider amnioinfusion of ~800 mL of IV NS over 50-80 min during active stage of labor and a maintenance dose of ~3 mL/min until delivery
- closely monitor FHR for signs of fetal distress



Dark green or black meconium is associated with lower APGARs and increased risk of meconium aspiration

Abnormal Progression of Labor (Dystocia)

Definition

- expected patterns of descent of the presenting part and cervical dilatation fail to occur in the appropriate time frame; can occur in all stages of labor
- during active phase: >4 h of <0.5 cm/h
- during 2nd phase: >1 h with no descent during active pushing

Etiology

- Power (leading cause): contractions (hypotonic, incoordinate), inadequate maternal expulsive efforts
- Passenger: fetal position, attitude, size, anomalies (hydrocephalus)
- Passage: pelvic structure (CPD), maternal soft tissue factors (tumors, full bladder or rectum, vaginal septum)
- Psyche: hormones released in response to stress may contribute to dystocia; psychological and physiological stress should be evaluated as part of the management once dystocia has been diagnosed

Management

- confirm diagnosis of labor (rule out false labor)
- search for factors of CPD
- diagnosed if adequate contractions measured by intrauterine pressure catheter (IUPC) with no descent/dilatation for >2 h
- management: if CPD ruled out, IV oxytocin augmentation \pm amniotomy

Risks of Dystocia

- inadequate progression of labor is associated with an increased incidence of:
 - maternal stress
 - maternal infection
 - postpartum hemorrhage
 - need for neonatal resuscitation

Shoulder Dystocia

Definition

- impaction of anterior shoulder of fetus against symphysis pubis after fetal head has been delivered
- life threatening emergency

Etiology/Epidemiology

- incidence 0.15-1.4% of deliveries
- occurs when breadth of shoulders is greater than biparietal diameter of the head

Risk Factors

- maternal: obesity, DM, multiparity
- fetal: prolonged gestation, macrosomia
- labor
 - prolonged 2nd stage
 - instrumental midpelvic delivery

Clinical Features

- "turtle sign": head delivered but retracts against inferior portion of pubic symphysis
- complications
 - chest compression by vagina or cord compression by pelvis can lead to hypoxia
 - brachial plexus injury (Erb's palsy: C5-C7; Klumpke's palsy: C8-T1)
 - ♦ 90% resolve within 6 mo
 - fetal fracture (clavicle, humerus, cervical spine)
 - maternal perineal injury, may result in PPH

Treatment

- goal: to displace anterior shoulder from behind symphysis pubis; follow a stepwise approach of maneuvers until goal achieved
- other options
 - cleidotomy (deliberate fracture of neonatal clavicle)
 - Zavanelli maneuver: replacement of fetus into uterine cavity and emergent C/S
 - symphysiotomy

Prognosis

- 1% risk of long-term disability for infant



Provided there are no contraindications, oxytocin is utilized to improve uterine contraction strength and/or frequency



The 4 Ps of Dystocia

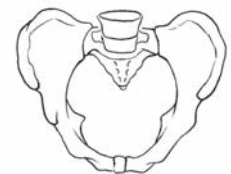
Power
Passenger
Passage
Psyche



Gynecoid
(50% obstetrically ideal)



Android (20%)



Anthropoid (25%)



Platypelloid (5%)

© Bonnie Tang 2012

Figure 10. Types of pelvis



- 1/3 of protraction disorders develop into 2° arrest of dilatation due to CPD
- 2/3 of protraction disorders progress through labor to vaginal delivery

Umbilical Cord Prolapse

Definition

- descent of the cord to a level adjacent to or below the presenting part, causing cord compression between presenting part and pelvis

Etiology/Epidemiology

- increased incidence with prematurity/PROM, fetal malpresentation (~50% of cases), low-lying placenta, polyhydramnios, multiple gestation, CPD
- incidence: 0.17-0.63%

Clinical Features

- visible or palpable cord
- FHR changes (variable decelerations, bradycardia, or both)

Treatment

- emergency C/S
- O₂ to mother, monitor fetal heart
- alleviate pressure of the presenting part on the cord by placing digit in vagina (maintain this position until C/S)
- keep cord warm and moist by replacing it into the vagina ± applying warm saline soaks
- position mother in Trendelenburg or knee-to-chest position
- if fetal demise or too premature (<22 wk), allow labor and delivery



Approach to the Management of Shoulder Dystocia

ALARMER

Apply suprapubic pressure and ask for help

Legs in full flexion (McRobert's maneuver)

Anterior shoulder disimpaction (suprapubic pressure)

Release posterior shoulder by rotating it anteriorly with hand in the vagina under adequate anesthesia

Manual corkscrew i.e. rotate the fetus by the posterior shoulder until the anterior shoulder emerges from behind the maternal symphysis

Episiotomy

Rollover (on hands and knees)

*Note that suprapubic pressure and McRobert's maneuver together will resolve 90% of cases



Umbilical Cord Accident Causes

- Nuchal cord
 - Type A (looped)
 - Type B (hitched)
- Body loop
- Single artery
- True knot
- Torsion
- Velamentous
- Short cord <35 cm
- Long cord >80 cm



Maternal Mortality Causes

- Thromboembolism
- Cardiac event
- Suicide
- Sepsis
- Ectopic pregnancy
- HTN
- Amniotic fluid embolism
- Hemorrhage

Uterine Rupture

Etiology/Epidemiology

- associated with previous uterine scar (in 40% of cases), hyperstimulation with oxytocin, grand multiparity, and previous intrauterine manipulation
- generally occurs during labor, but can occur earlier with a classical incision
- 0.5-0.8% incidence, up to 12% with classical incision

Clinical Features

- prolonged fetal bradycardia – most common presentation
- acute onset abdominal pain
- hyper or hypotonic uterine contractions
- vaginal bleed

Risk Factors

- uterine scarring (i.e. previous uterine surgeries including Cesarean, perforation with D&C)
- excessive uterine stimulation (i.e. protracted labor, oxytocin)
- uterine trauma (i.e. operative equipment, ECV)
- multiparity
- uterine abnormalities

Treatment

- rule out placental abruption
- immediate delivery for fetal survival
- maternal stabilization (may require hysterectomy)

Complications

- maternal mortality 1-10%
- maternal hemorrhage, shock, DIC
- amniotic fluid embolus
- hysterectomy if uncontrollable hemorrhage
- fetal distress, associated with 50% fetal mortality

Amniotic Fluid Embolus

Definition

- amniotic fluid debris in maternal circulation triggering an anaphylactoid immunologic response

Etiology/Epidemiology

- rare intrapartum or immediate postpartum complication
- 60-80% maternal mortality rate, accounts for 10% of all maternal deaths
- leading cause of maternal death in induced abortions and miscarriages
- 1/8,000-1/80,000 births

Risk Factors

- placental abruption
- rapid labor
- multiparity
- uterine rupture
- uterine manipulation

Differential Diagnosis

- pulmonary embolus, drug-induced anaphylaxis, septic shock, eclampsia, HELLP syndrome, abruption, chronic coagulopathy

Clinical Features

- sudden onset of respiratory distress, cardiovascular collapse (hypotension, hypoxia), and coagulopathy
- seizure in 10%
- ARDS and left ventricular dysfunction seen in survivors

Management

- supportive measures (high flow O₂, ventilation support, fluid resuscitation, inotropic support, ± intubation), coagulopathy correction
- ICU admission

Chorioamnionitis

Definition

- infection of the chorion, amnion, and amniotic fluid typically due to ascending infection by organisms of normal vaginal flora

Etiology/Epidemiology

- incidence 1-5% of term pregnancies and up to 25% in preterm deliveries
- ascending from vagina
- predominant microorganisms include: GBS, *Bacteroides* and *Prevotella* species, *E. coli*, and anaerobic *Streptococcus*

Risk Factors

- prolonged ROM, long labor, multiple vaginal exams during labor, internal monitoring
- bacterial vaginosis and other vaginal infections

Clinical Features

- maternal fever, maternal or fetal tachycardia, uterine tenderness, foul and purulent cervical discharge

Investigations

- CBC: leukocytosis
- amniotic fluid: leukocytes or bacteria

Treatment

- IV antibiotics
 - ampicillin (2 g IV q6h) and gentamicin (1.5 mg/kg q8h)
 - anaerobic coverage (i.e. clindamycin if C/S)
- expedient delivery regardless of gestational age

Complications

- bacteremia of mother or fetus, wound infection if C/S, pelvic abscess, infant meningitis



Clinical Features of Chorioamnionitis

- Temperature
- Tachycardia (maternal or fetal)
- Tenderness (uterine)
- Foul discharge

Operative Obstetrics

Operative Vaginal Delivery

Definition

- forceps or vacuum extraction

Indications

- fetal
 - atypical or abnormal fetal heart rate tracing
 - consider if second stage is prolonged as this may be due to poor contractions or failure of fetal head to rotate
- maternal
 - need to avoid voluntary expulsive effort (e.g. cardiac/cerebrovascular disease)
 - exhaustion, lack of cooperation, and excessive analgesia may impair pushing effort

Forceps

Outlet Forceps Position

- head visible between labia in between contractions
- sagittal suture in or close to AP diameter
- rotation cannot exceed 45°

Low Forceps Position

- presenting part at station +2 or greater
- subdivided based on whether rotation less than or greater than 45 degrees

Mid Forceps Position

- presenting part below spines but above station +2
- rarely done

Types of Forceps

- Simpson or Tucker-McLane forceps for OA presentations
- Kielland (rotational) forceps when rotation of head required
- Piper forceps for breech

Vacuum Extraction

- traction instrument used as alternative to forceps delivery; aids maternal pushing

Table 24. Advantages and Disadvantages of Forceps vs. Vacuum Extraction

	Forceps	Vacuum Extraction
Advantages	Higher overall success rate for vaginal delivery Decreased incidence of fetal morbidity	Easier to apply Less anesthesia required Less maternal soft-tissue injury compared to forceps
Disadvantages	Greater incidence of maternal injury	Contraindicated if fetus at risk for coagulation defect Suitable only for vertex presentations Maternal pushing required Contraindicated in preterm delivery
Complications	Maternal: anesthesia risk, lacerations, injury to bladder, uterus, or bone, pelvic nerve damage, PPH, infections Fetal: fractures, facial nerve palsy, trauma to face/ scalp, intracerebral hemorrhage, cephalohematoma, cord compression	Increased incidence of cephalohematoma and retinal hemorrhages compared to forceps Subgaleal hemorrhage, subaponeurotic hemorrhage, soft tissue trauma

Lacerations

- first degree: involves skin and vaginal mucosa but not underlying fascia and muscle
- second degree: involves fascia and muscles of the perineal body but not the anal sphincter
- third degree: involves the anal sphincter but does not extend through it
- fourth degree: extends through the anal sphincter into the rectal mucosa



Prerequisites for Operative Vaginal Delivery

- ABCDEFGHIJK**
Anesthesia (adequate)
Bladder empty
Cervix fully dilated and effaced with ROM
Determine position of fetal head
Equipment ready (including facilities for emergent C/S)
Fontanelle (posterior fontanelle midway between thighs)
Gentle traction
Handle elevated
Incision (episiotomy)
Once Jaw visible remove forceps
Knowledgeable operator

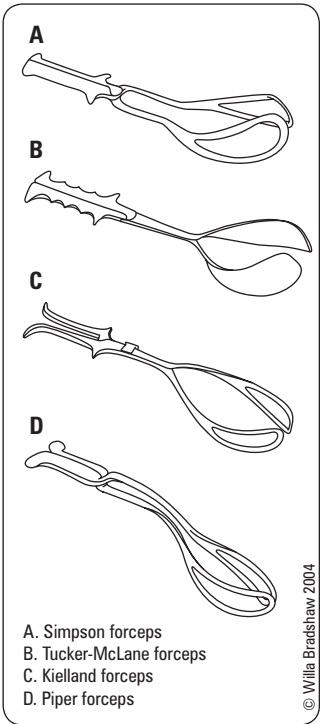


Figure 11. Types of forceps



Limits for Trial of Vacuum

- After 3 pulls over 3 contractions with no progress
- After 3 pop-offs with no obvious cause
- 20 min and delivery is not imminent



Muscles of Perineal Body

- Superficial transverse perineal
- Bulbocavernous
- External anal sphincter

Episiotomy

Definition

- incision in the perineal body at the time of delivery
- essentially a controlled second degree laceration
- midline: incision through central tendinous portion of perineal body and insertions of superficial transverse perineal and bulbocavernosus muscle
 - better healing but increased risk of deep tear
- mediolateral: incision through bulbocavernosus, superficial transverse perineal muscle, and levator ani
 - reduced risk of extensive tear but poorer healing and more pain
 - easier to repair

Indications

- to relieve obstruction of the unyielding perineum
- instrumental delivery
- controversial between practitioners as to whether it is preferable to make a cut or let the perineum tear as needed
- current evidence suggests letting perineum tear and then repair as needed (restricted use)

Complications

- infection, hematoma, extension into anal musculature, or rectal mucosa, fistula formation, incontinence

Cesarean Delivery

Epidemiology

- incidence 20-25%

Indications

- maternal: obstruction, active herpetic lesion on vulva, invasive cervical cancer, previous uterine surgery, underlying maternal illness (eclampsia, HELLP syndrome, heart disease)
- maternal-fetal: failure to progress, placental abruption or previa, vasa previa
- fetal: abnormal fetal heart tracing, malpresentation, cord prolapse, certain congenital anomalies

Types of Cesarean Incisions

- skin
 - transverse (i.e. Pfannenstiel)
 - decreased exposure and slower entry
 - improved strength and cosmesis
 - vertical midline
 - rapid peritoneal entry and increased exposure
 - increased dehiscence
- uterine
 - low transverse (most common): in noncontractile segment
 - decreased chance for rupture in subsequent pregnancies
 - low vertical
 - used for very preterm infants, poorly developed maternal lower uterine segment
 - classical (rare): in thick, contractile segment
 - used for transverse lie, fetal anomaly, >2 fetuses, lower segment adhesions, obstructing fibroid, morbidly obese patients

Risks/Complications

- anesthesia
- hemorrhage (average blood loss ~1,000 cc)
- infection (UTI, wound, endometritis)
 - single dose prophylactic antibiotic should be used (e.g. cefazolin 1-2 g)
- injury to surrounding structures (bowel, bladder, ureter, uterus)
- thromboembolism
- increased recovery time/hospital stay
- maternal mortality (<0.1%)



Risk Factors for Primary and Subsequent Anal Sphincter Lacerations

Am J Obstet Gynecol 2007;196:344

Objective: Assess effects of pregnancy, delivery method, and parity on risk of primary and secondary anal sphincter laceration in women with 1st vaginal delivery (VD), VBAC, or 2nd VD.

Methods: Retrospective cohort study of all deliveries at one hospital from 1995-2002.

Conclusion: 20,674 live singleton deliveries were included. Women with first VD and VBAC both had OR 5.1 for laceration compared to 2nd VD. Forceps and midline episiotomy significantly increased risk of laceration for all 3 groups. Second stage of labour >2 h only increased risk for 1st VD. Factors that had no significant increase in risk: infant birth weight >3,500 g and vacuum delivery. Women with prior anal sphincter laceration are at 3x increased risk for subsequent sphincter laceration, compared with women with prior vaginal delivery without sphincter laceration.



Restrictive vs. Routine Episiotomies with Vaginal Births

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;1:CD000081

Study: This systematic review and meta-analysis of 8 RCTs assessed the effects of restrictive (only done for fetal indications or if severe perineal trauma was judged to be imminent) and routine (liberally done to prevent any tear) use of episiotomy during vaginal birth.

Patients: Of the 2,709 patients in the routine episiotomy group, 2,035 (75%) women had episiotomies. In the restrictive episiotomy group, 776 (28%) of the 2,733 women had episiotomies.

Results: Restrictive episiotomies appear to have less severe perineal trauma (RR 0.67), less suturing (RR 0.71), and fewer healing complications at 7 d (RR 0.69) compared to routine episiotomies. There is no difference for pain measures, dyspareunia, urinary incontinence, and severe vaginal or perineal trauma, but there was an increased risk of anterior perineal trauma (RR 1.84) with restrictive episiotomy. Similar results were obtained when comparing restrictive vs. routine mediolateral vs. midline episiotomy.

Conclusions: Compared to routine use, restrictive use of episiotomy during vaginal delivery appears to be more beneficial.



Common OR Questions

7 Layers to Dissect

Skin, fatty layer, fascia, muscle separation (rectus abdominus), peritoneum, bladder flap, uterus

Layers of the Rectus Sheath

Above the arcuate line: external oblique, internal oblique, rectus abdominis, internal oblique, transversus abdominis
Below the arcuate line: external oblique, internal oblique, transversus abdominis, rectus abdominis

Name of the Obliterated Umbilical Ligament

Urachus

Puerperal Complications

- puerperium: 6 wk period of adjustment after pregnancy when pregnancy-induced anatomic and physiologic changes are reversed

Postpartum Hemorrhage



Definition

- loss of >500 mL of blood at the time of vaginal delivery, or >1,000 mL with C/S
- early – within first 24 h postpartum
- late – after 24 h but within first 6 wk

Epidemiology

- incidence 5-15%

Etiology (4 Ts)

1. Tone

- uterine atony
 - ♦ most common cause of PPH
 - ♦ avoid by giving oxytocin with delivery of the anterior shoulder or placenta
 - ♦ occurs within first 24 h
- due to
 - ♦ labor (prolonged, precipitous, induced, augmented)
 - ♦ uterus (infection, over-distention)
 - ♦ placenta (abruption, previa)
 - ♦ maternal factors (grand multiparity, gestational HTN)
 - ♦ halothane anesthesia

2. Tissue

- retained placental products
- retained blood clots in an atonic uterus
- gestational trophoblastic neoplasia

3. Trauma

- laceration (vagina, cervix, uterus), episiotomy, hematoma (vaginal, vulvar, retroperitoneal), uterine rupture, uterine inversion

4. Thrombin

- coagulopathy
 - ♦ most identified prior to delivery (low platelets increases risk)
 - ♦ includes hemophilia, DIC, Aspirin® use, ITP, TTP, vWD (most common)
 - ♦ therapeutic anti-coagulation



Uterine atony is the most common cause of PPH



DDx of Early PPH – 4 Ts

Tone (atony)

Tissue (retained placenta, clots)

Trauma (laceration, inversion)

Thrombin (coagulopathy)

DDx of Late PPH

Retained products

± endometritis

Sub-involution of uterus

Investigations

- assess degree of blood loss and shock by clinical exam
- explore uterus and lower genital tract for evidence of tone, tissue, or trauma
- may be helpful to observe red-topped tube of blood – no clot in 7-10 min indicates coagulation problem

Management

- ABCs
- 2 large bore IVs and crystalloids
- CBC, coagulation profile, cross and type 4 units pRBCs
- treat underlying cause

Medical Therapy

- oxytocin 20 U/L NS or RL IV continuous infusion
 - in addition can give 10 U IMM after delivery of the placenta
- methylergonavine maleate (ergotamine) 0.25 mg IM/IMM q5min up to 1.25 mg; can be given as IV bolus of 0.125 mg (may exacerbate HTN)
- carboprost (Hemabate®), a synthetic PGF-1 α analog 0.25 mg IM/IMM q15min to max 2 mg (major prostaglandin side effects and contraindicated in cardiovascular, pulmonary, renal, and hepatic dysfunction)
- misoprostol 600 μ g-1 g (side effect: pyrexia)
- tranexamic acid (Cyklokapron®) 1 g IV, an antifibrinolytic

Local Control

- bimanual compression: elevate the uterus and massage through patient's abdomen
- uterine packing (mesh with antibiotic treatment)
- Bakri Balloon for tamponade: may slow hemorrhage enough to allow time for correction of coagulopathy or for preparation of an OR

Surgical Therapy (Intractable PPH)

- D&C (beware of vigorous scraping which can lead to Asherman's syndrome)
- embolization of uterine artery or internal iliac artery by interventional radiologist
- laparotomy with bilateral ligation of uterine artery (may be effective), internal iliac artery (not proven), ovarian artery, or hypogastric artery
- hysterectomy last option with angiographic embolization if post-hysterectomy bleeding

Retained Placenta

Definition

- placenta undelivered after 30 min postpartum

Etiology

- placenta separated but not delivered
- abnormal placental implantation (placenta accreta, placenta increta, placenta percreta)

Risk Factors

- placenta previa, prior C/S, post-pregnancy curettage, prior manual placental removal, uterine infection

Clinical Features

- incomplete placenta removed
- risk of postpartum hemorrhage and infection

Investigations

- explore uterus
- assess degree of blood loss

Management

- 2 large bore IVs, type and screen
- Brant maneuver (firm traction on umbilical cord with one hand applying suprapubic pressure to avoid uterine inversion by holding uterus in place)
- oxytocin 10 IU in 20 mL NS into umbilical vein
- manual removal if above fails
- D&C if required

Uterine Inversion

**Definition**

- inversion of the uterus through cervix \pm vaginal introitus

Etiology/Epidemiology

- often iatrogenic (excess cord traction with fundal placenta)
- excessive use of uterine tocolytics
- more common in grand multiparous (lax uterine ligaments)
- 1/1,500-1/2,000 deliveries

Clinical Features

- can cause profound vasovagal response with vasodilation and hypovolemic shock
- shock may be disproportionate to maternal blood loss

Management

- urgent management essential, call anesthesia
- ABCs: initiate IV crystalloids
- can use tocolytic drug (see [Management of Preterm Labor, OB37](#)) or nitroglycerin IV to relax uterus and aid replacement
- replace uterus without removing placenta
- remove placenta manually and withdraw slowly
- IV oxytocin infusion (only after uterus replaced)
- re-explore uterus
- may require general anesthetic \pm laparotomy

Postpartum Pyrexia

Definition

- fever $>100.4^{\circ}\text{F}$ on any 2 of the first 10 d postpartum, except the first day

Etiology

- endometritis
- wound infection secondary to C/S
- mastitis/engorgement
- UTI
- atelectasis
- pneumonia

Investigations

- detailed history and physical exam, relevant cultures
- for endometritis: blood and genital cultures

Treatment

- depends on etiology
 - infection: empiric antibiotics, adjust when sensitivities available
 - endometritis: clindamycin + gentamycin IV
 - mastitis: cloxacillin or cephalixin
 - wound infection: cephalixin
 - DVT: anticoagulants
- prophylaxis against post-C/S endometritis: begin antibiotic immediately after cord clamping and administer only 1-3 doses – cefazolin is most common choice



Etiology of Postpartum Pyrexia

B-5W

Breast: engorgement, mastitis

Wind: atelectasis, pneumonia

Water: UTI

Wound: episiotomy, C/S site infection

Walking: DVT, thrombophlebitis

Womb: endometritis

ENDOMETRITIS

- definition: infection of uterine myometrium and parametrium
- clinical features: fever, chills, abdominal pain, uterine tenderness, foul-smelling discharge, or lochia
- treatment: depends on infection severity; oral antibiotics if well, IV with hospitalization in moderate to severe cases



Risk Factors for Endometritis

C/S, intrapartum chorioamnionitis, prolonged labor, prolonged ROM, multiple vaginal examinations

VENOUS THROMBOEMBOLISM

- see [Venous Thromboembolism](#), OB20

Mastitis

- definition: inflammation of mammary glands
- must rule out inflammatory carcinoma, as indicated
- differentiate from mammary duct ectasia: mammary duct(s) beneath nipple clogged and dilated \pm ductal inflammation \pm nipple discharge (thick, gray to green), often postmenopausal women



Table 25. Lactational vs. Non-Lactational Mastitis

	Lactational	Non-Lactational
Epidemiology	More common than non-lactational Often 2-3 wk postpartum	Periductal mastitis most common Mean age 32 yr
Etiology	<i>S. aureus</i>	May be sterile May be infected with <i>S. aureus</i> or other anaerobes Smoking is risk factor May be associated with mammary duct ectasia
Symptoms	Unilateral localized pain Tenderness Erythema	Subareolar pain May have subareolar mass Discharge (variable color) Nipple inversion
Treatment	Heat or ice packs Continued nursing/pumping Antibiotics (dicloxacillin/cephalexin) (Erythromycin if pen-allergic)	Broad-spectrum antibiotics and I&D Total duct excision (definitive)
Abscess	Fluctuant mass Purulent nipple discharge Fever, leukocytosis Discontinue nursing, IV antibiotics (nafcillin/oxacillin), I&D usually required	If mass does not resolve, FNA to exclude cancer and U/S to assess presence of abscess Treatment includes antibiotics, aspiration, or I&D (tends to recur) May develop mammary duct fistula A minority of non-lactational abscesses may occur peripherally in breast with no associated periductal mastitis (usually <i>S. aureus</i>)

Postpartum Mood Alterations

POSTPARTUM BLUES

- 85% of new mothers, onset day 3-10; extension of the “normal” hormonal changes and adjustment to a new baby
- self-limited, should resolve by 2 wk
- manifested by mood lability, depressed affect, increased sensitivity to criticism, tearfulness, fatigue, irritability, poor concentration/despondency

POSTPARTUM DEPRESSION

- definition: major depression occurring in a woman within 6 mo of childbirth
- epidemiology: 10-20%, risk of recurrence 50%
- risk factors
 - personal or family history of depression (including PPD)
 - prenatal depression or anxiety
 - stressful life situation
 - poor support system
 - unwanted pregnancy
 - colicky or sick infant
- clinical features: suspect if the “blues” last beyond 2 wk, or if the symptoms in the first two weeks are severe (e.g. extreme disinterest in the baby, suicidal or homicidal/infanticidal ideation)
- assessment: Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale or other
- treatment: antidepressants, psychotherapy, supportive care, ECT if refractory
- prognosis: interferes with bonding and attachment between mother and baby so it can have long-term effects

POSTPARTUM PSYCHOSIS

- definition: onset of psychotic symptoms over 24-72 h within first month postpartum, can present in the context of depression
- epidemiology: rare (0.2%)

Postpartum Care

Postpartum Office Visit at 6 Weeks

Care of Mother (The 10 Bs)

- Be careful: do not use douches or tampons for 4-6 wk post-delivery
- Be fit: encourage gradual increases in walking, Kegel exercises
- Birth control: assess for use of contraceptives; breastfeeding is NOT an effective method of birth control (see [Gynecology, GY16](#), for more detail about different contraceptive options postpartum)
- Bladder: assess for urinary incontinence, maintain high fluid intake
- Bleeding: (see [Lacerations, OB45](#)), 300 µg of RhIG should be given if Rh+ fetus and Rh- mother or extensive bleeding at delivery
- Blood pressure: especially if gestational HTN
- Blood tests: glucose, CBC (for anemia as sign of hematomas, retained placenta)
- Blues: (see [Postpartum Mood Alterations](#))
- Bowel: fluids and high-fiber foods, bulk laxatives; for hemorrhoids/perineal tenderness: pain meds, doughnut cushion, Sitz baths, ice compresses
- Breast and pelvic exam: watch for Staphylococcal or Streptococcal mastitis/abscess, ± Pap smear at 6 wk

Physiological Changes Postpartum

- uterus weight rapidly diminishes through catabolism, cervix loses its elasticity and regains firmness
 - should involute ~1 cm below umbilicus per day in first 4-5 d, reaches non-pregnant state in 4-6 wk postpartum
- ovulation resumes in ~45 d for non-lactating women and within 3-6 mo for lactating women
- lochia: normal vaginal discharge postpartum
 - decreases and changes in color from red (lochia rubra; presence of erythrocytes) → yellow (lochia serosa) → white (lochia alba; residual leukorrhea) over 3-6 wk
 - foul-smelling lochia suggests endometritis



The acronym “**BUBBLES**” for what to ask about when rounding on postpartum care. Modify this for C/S or vaginal delivery.

Baby care and breastfeeding (latch, amount)
Uterus – firm or boggy?
Bladder function – Voiding well? Dysuria?
Bowel function – Passing gas or stool? Constipated?
Lochia or discharge – Any blood?
Episiotomy/laceration/incision – Pain controlled?
Symptoms of VTE – Dyspnea? Calf pain?

Breastfeeding Problems

- inadequate milk: consider domperidone
- breast engorgement: cool compress, manual expression/pumping
- nipple pain: clean milk off nipple after feeds, moisture cream, topical steroid if needed
- mastitis: treat promptly (see *Postpartum Pyrexia*, OB49)
- inverted nipples: makes feeding difficult
- maternal medications: may require pediatric consultation (see *Breastfeeding and Drugs*)

Bladder Dysfunction

- pelvic floor prolapse can occur after vaginal delivery
- stress or urge urinary incontinence common
- increased risk with instrumental delivery or prolonged second stage
- conservative management: pelvic floor retraining with Kegel exercises, vaginal cones, or pessaries, lifestyle modifications (e.g. limit fluid, caffeine intake)
- surgical management: minimally invasive procedures (tension-free vaginal tape, transobturator tape, midurethral sling)

Puerperal Pain

- “after pains” common in first 3 d due to uterine contractions; encourage simple analgesia
- ice packs can be used on perineum if painful
- encourage regular analgesia and stool softener

Breastfeeding and Drugs

Table 26. Drug Safety During Breastfeeding

Safe During Breastfeeding	Contraindicated When Breastfeeding
Analgesics (e.g. acetaminophen, NSAIDs)	Chloramphenicol (bone marrow suppression)
Anticoagulants (e.g. heparin)	Sulphonamides (in G6PD deficiency, can lead to hemolysis)
Antidepressants (e.g. sertraline, fluoxetine, TCAs)	Nitrofurantoin (in G6PD deficiency, can lead to hemolysis)
Antiepileptics (e.g. phenytoin, carbamazepine, valproic acid)	Tetracycline
Antihistamines	Lithium
Antimicrobials (e.g. penicillins, aminoglycosides, cephalosporins)	Anti-neoplastics and immunosuppressants
β-adrenergics (e.g. propranolol, labetalol)	Psychotropic drugs (relative contraindication)
Insulin	
Steroids	
OCP (low dose) – although may decrease breast milk production	



Breastfeeding: Contraindicated Drugs

- BREAST**
- Bromocriptine/Benzodiazepines
 - Radioactive isotopes/Rizatriptan
 - Ergotamine/Ethosuximide
 - Amiodarone/Amphetamines
 - Stimulant laxatives/Sex hormones
 - Tetracycline/Tretinoin

Common Medications

Table 27. Common Medications

Drug Name (Brand Name)	Dosing Schedule	Indications/Comments
betamethasone valerate (Celestone®)	12 mg IM q24h x 2 doses	Enhancement of fetal pulmonary maturity for PTL
carboprost (Hemabate®)	0.25 mg IM/IMM q15min; max 2 mg	Treatment of uterine atony
cefazolin	2 g IV then 1 g q8h	GBS prophylaxis (penicillin allergic and not at risk for anaphylaxis)
clindamycin	900 mg IV q8h	GBS prophylaxis (penicillin allergic and at risk for anaphylaxis) Also used in endometritis
dexamethasone	6 mg IM q12h x 4 doses	Enhancement of fetal pulmonary maturity for PTL
dinoprostone (Cervidil®: PGE ₂ impregnated thread)	10 mg PV (remove after 12 h) max 3 doses	Induction of labor Advantage: can remove if uterine hyperstimulation
doxylamine succinate (Diclegis®)	2 tabs qhs + 1 tab qAM + 1 tab qPM max 8 tabs/d	Each tablet contains 10 mg doxylamine succinate with vitamin B ₆ Used for hyperemesis gravidarum
erythromycin	500 mg IV q6h	GBS prophylaxis (penicillin allergic and at risk for anaphylaxis)
folic acid	0.4-1 mg PO OD x 1-3 mo preconception and T1 5 mg PO OD with past Hx of NTD	Prevention of oNTD
methotrexate	50 mg/m ² IM or 50 mg PO x 1 dose	For ectopic pregnancy or medical abortion
ergotamine	0.25 mg IM or IV bolus 0.125 mg q5min up to 1.25 mg	Treatment of uterine atony
misoprostol (Cytotec®)	800-1000 µg PR x 1 dose 400 µg PO x 1 dose or 800 µg PV x 1 dose, 3-7 d after methotrexate	For treatment of PPH For medical abortion/retained products of conception Also used for NSAID-induced ulcers (warn patients of contraindications)
oxytocin (Pitocin®)	0.5-2.0 mU/min IV, or 10 U/L NS increase by 1-2 mU/min q20-60min max 36-48 mU/min 10 U IM at delivery of anterior shoulder and of placenta 20 U/L NS or RL IV continuous infusion	Augmentation of labor (also induction of labor) Prevention of uterine atony Treatment of uterine atony
Penicillin G	5 million U IV then 2.5 million U IV q4h until delivery	GBS prophylaxis
PGE ₂ gel (Prostin® gel)	0.5 mg PV q6-12h; max 3 doses	Induction of labor
Rh IgG (Rhogam®)	300 µg IM x 1 dose	Given to Rh negative women <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Routinely at 28 wk GA • Within 72 h of birth of Rh +ve fetus • Positive Kleihauer-Betke test • With any invasive procedure in pregnancy • Ectopic pregnancy • Antepartum hemorrhage • Miscarriage or therapeutic abortion (dose: 50 µg IM only)



Common Discharge Medications

Oxycodone IR 5-10 mg PO q4-6h PRN
Docusate sodium 100 mg PO bid



Misoprostol (Cytotec®) is also indicated to protect against NSAID-induced gastric ulcers in non-pregnant individuals. The use of misoprostol for cytoprotection is contraindicated in pregnancy; warn female patients of this contraindication

References

- American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Available from: www.acog.org.
 The Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada. Available from: www.sogc.org.
 Alfrevic Z, Devane D, Gyte GM. Continuous cardiotocography (CTG) as a form of electronic fetal monitoring (EFM) for fetal assessment during labour. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2013;5:CD006066.
 Antenatal Corticosteroid Therapy for Fetal Maturation. SOGC clinical practice guidelines policy statement. December 1995:53.
 Arsenault M, Lane CA. Guidelines for the management of nausea and vomiting in pregnancy. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines Committee Opinion 2002;120:1-7.
 Baskett T. Essential management of obstetric emergencies, 3rd ed. Bristol: Clinical Press, 1999.
 Bastian LA, Piscitelli JT. Is this patient pregnant? Can you reliably rule in or rule out early pregnancy by clinical examination? *JAMA* 1997;278:586-591.
 Berghella V, Odibo AO, Tolosa JE. Cerclage for prevention of preterm birth in women with a short cervix found on transvaginal examination: a randomized trial. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2004;191:1311-1317.
 Berghella V, Rafael TJ, Szychowski JM, et al. Cerclage for short cervix on ultrasonography in women with singleton gestations and previous preterm birth: a meta-analysis. *Obstet Gynecol* 2011;117:663-671.
 Blenning CE, Paladine H. An approach to the postpartum office visit. *Am Fam Physician* 2005;72(12):2491-2496.
 Boucher M. Mode of delivery for pregnant women infected by the human immunodeficiency virus. Clinical Practice Guidelines Policy Statement 2001:101.
 Boucher M, Gruslin A. The reproductive care of women living with hepatitis C infection. Clinical Practice Guidelines Policy Statement 2000:96.
 Bricker L, Lucas M. Amniotomy alone for induction of labour. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2000;(4):CD002862.
 Carroli G, Mignini L. Episiotomy for vaginal birth. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2009;1:CD000081.
 Chamberlain G, Zander L. Induction. *BMJ* 1999;318:995-998.
 Chamberlain G, Steer P. Labour in special circumstances. *BMJ* 1999;318:1124-1127.
 Chamberlain G, Steer P. Obstetric emergencies. *BMJ* 1999;318:1342-1345.
 Chamberlain G, Steer P. Operative delivery. *BMJ* 1999;318:1260-1264.
 Chamberlain G, Steer P. Unusual presentations and positions and multiple pregnancy. *BMJ* 1999;318:1192-1194.
 Chodirker BN, Cadrin C, Davies GAL, et al. Canadian guidelines for prenatal diagnosis. Techniques of prenatal diagnosis. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2001:105.
 Chyu JK, Strassner HT. Prostaglandin E2 for cervical ripening: a randomized comparison of cervidil vs. prepilid. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1997;177:606-611.
 Cohen-Kerem R, Nulman I, Abramow-Newerly M, et al. Diagnostic radiation in pregnancy: perception versus true risks. *JOGC* 2005;28:43-48.
 Crane J. Induction of labour at term. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2001;107:1-12.
 Farrell S, Chan MC, Schulz JA. Midurethral minimally invasive sling procedures for stress urinary incontinence. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2008;213:728-733.
 Findley I, Chamberlain G. Relief of pain. *BMJ* 1999;318:927-930.
 Ford HB, Schust DJ. Recurrent pregnancy loss: etiology, diagnosis, and therapy. *Rev Obstet Gynecol* 2009;2:76-83.
 Gagnon A, Wilson R. Obstetrical complications associated with abnormal maternal serum markers analytes. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2008;216:918-932.
 Goldenberg RL, Culhane JF, Iams JD, et al. Epidemiology and causes of preterm birth. *Lancet* 2008;371:75-84.
 Guise JM, Berlin M, McDonagh M, et al. Safety of vaginal birth after cesarean: a systematic review. *Obstet Gynecol* 2004;103:420-429.
 Hajenius PJ, Mol F, Mol BW, et al. Interventions for tubal ectopic pregnancy. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2007;1:CD000324.
 Hamilton P. Care of the newborn in the delivery room. *BMJ* 1999;318:1403-1406.
 Hennessey MH, Rayburn WF, Stewart JD, et al. Preeclampsia and induction of labour: a randomized comparison of prostaglandin E2 as an intracervical gel, with oxytocin immediately, or as a sustained-release vaginal insert. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1998;179:1204-1209.
 Hod M, Bar J, Peled Y, et al. Antepartum management protocol. Timing and mode of delivery in gestational diabetes. *Obstet Gynecol* 2009;113:206-217.
 Hodnett ED, Gates S, Hofmeyr GJ, et al. Continuous support for women during childbirth. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2011;2:CD003766.
 Howarth GR, Botha DJ. Amniotomy plus intravenous oxytocin for induction of labour. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2001;3:CD003250.
 Kelly AJ, Tan B. Intravenous oxytocin alone for cervical ripening and induction of labour. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2001;3:CD003246.
 Kent N. Prevention and treatment of venous thromboembolism (VTE) in obstetrics. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2000;95:2-8.
 Koren G. Motherisk update: Caffeine during pregnancy? *Canadian Family Phys* 2000;46:801-803.
 Kotaska A, Menticoglou S, Gagnon R, et al. Vaginal delivery of breech presentation. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2009;226:557-566.
 Langlois S, Ford J, Chitayat D. Carrier screening for thalassemia and hemoglobinopathies in Canada. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2008;217:950-959.
 Langlois S, Wilson R. Carrier screening for genetic disorders in individuals of Ashkenazi Jewish descent. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2006;177:324-332.
 Ling F, Duff P. Obstetrics and Gynecology, Principles for practice. USA: McGraw-Hill Companies, 2002.
 Liston R, Sawchuck D, Young D. Fetal health surveillance: antepartum and intrapartum consensus guideline. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2007;197:S1-60.
 Lowder JL, Burrows LJ, Krohn MA, et al. Risk factors for primary and subsequent anal sphincter lacerations: a comparison of cohorts by parity and prior mode of delivery. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2007;196:344.e1-5.
 Lucas M, Bricker L. Intravenous prostaglandin for induction of labour. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2000;4:CD002864.
 Mackeen AD, Seibel-Seamon J, Muhammad J, et al. Tocolytics for preterm premature rupture of membranes. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2014;2:CD007062.
 Magee LA, Helewa M, Moutquin J-M, et al. Diagnosis, evaluation, and management of the hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2008;30:S1-48.
 Meneses EV, Yakob MY, Soomro T, et al. Reducing stillbirths: prevention and management of medical disorders and infections during pregnancy. *BMC Pregnancy Childbirth* 2009;9(Suppl 1):S4.
 Menticoglou S, Gagnon R, Kotaska A. Vaginal delivery of breech presentation. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2009;226:557-566.
 Ministry of Health and Long Term Care and Canadian Medical Association. Antenatal record 1. Ontario.
 Ministry of Health and Long Term Care and Canadian Medical Association. Antenatal record 2. Ontario.
 Money D, Dobson S. The prevention of early-onset group B streptococcal disease. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2004;149:826-832.
 Morgan S, Koren G. Is caffeine consumption safe during pregnancy? *Can Fam Physician* 2013;59(4):361-362.
 Mottola MF, Wolfe LA, MacKinnon K, et al. Exercise in pregnancy and the postpartum period. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2003;129:1-7.
 Mount Sinai Hospital. First trimester combined screening program. 2001.
 Nicolaides KH, Syngelaki A, Ashoor G, et al. Noninvasive prenatal testing for fetal trisomies in a routinely screened first-trimester population. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2012;207(5):374.
 North York General Hospital Genetics Program. Integrated prenatal screening. 1999.
 Ottinier WS, Menara MK, Brost BC. A randomized control trial of prostaglandin E2 intracervical gel and a slow release vaginal pessary for preinduction cervical ripening. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1998;179:349-353.
 Ross S, Robert M. Conservative management of urinary incontinence. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2006;186:1113-1118.
 Schrag SJ, Zell ER, Lynfield R, et al. A population-based comparison of strategies to prevent early-onset group B streptococcal disease in neonates. *NEJM* 2002;347:233-239.
 Schuurmans N, Gagne G, Ezzat A, et al. Healthy beginnings: guidelines for care during pregnancy and childbirth. Clinical Practice Guidelines Policy Statement 1998:71:1-65.
 Steer P, Flint C. Physiology and management of normal labour. *BMJ* 1999;318:793-796.
 Steer P, Flint C. Preterm labour and premature rupture of membranes. *BMJ* 1999;318:1059-1062.
 Stewart D. A broader context for maternal mortality. *CMAJ* 2006;74:302-303.
 Stewart JD, Rayburn WF, Farmer KC, et al. Effectiveness of prostaglandin E2 intracervical gel (prepidil) with immediate oxytocin vs. vaginal insert (cervidil) for induction of labour. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1998;179:1175-1180.
 Summers A, Langlois S, Wyatt P, et al. Prenatal screening for fetal aneuploidy. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2007;187:146-161.
 Thompson D, Berger H, Feig D, et al. Diabetes and Pregnancy. *Can J Diabetes* 2013;37:S168-S183.
 Van den Hof M, Crane J. Ultrasound cervical assessment in predicting preterm birth. SOGC Clinical Practice Guidelines 2001;102:1-4.
 Verani JR, McGee L, Schrag SJ. Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease. *MMWR* 2010;59(No. RR-10):1-32.
 Zander L, Chamberlain G. Place of birth. *BMJ* 1999;318:721-723.
 Zhang J, Bowes WA Jr, Fortney JA. Efficacy of external cephalic version: a review. *Obstet Gynecol* 1993;82(2):306-312.

Notes

Brian G. Ballios, Jeremy Goldfarb, and Ritesh Gupta, chapter editors

Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Alexa Bramall, EBM editor

Dr. Wai-Ching Lam, Dr. Marisa Sit, and Dr. Iqbal Ike K. Ahmed, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Retina	23
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Central Retinal Artery Occlusion	
Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations	3	Branch Retinal Artery Occlusion	
Loss of Vision Diplopia		Central/Branch Retinal Vein Occlusion	
Red Eye Ocular Problems in the Elderly		Retinal Detachment	
Ocular Pain Ocular Problems in the		Retinitis Pigmentosa	
Floaters Contact Lens Wearer		Leber's Congenital Amaurosis	
Flashes of Light Acute Painless Vision Loss		Age-Related Macular Degeneration	
Photophobia		Glaucoma	27
Ocular Emergencies	5	Primary Open-Angle Glaucoma	
The Ocular Examination	5	Normal Tension Glaucoma	
Optics	8	Secondary Open Angle Glaucoma	
Imaging Modalities	9	Primary Angle-Closure Glaucoma	
The Orbit	10	Secondary Angle-Closure Glaucoma	
Globe Displacement Orbital Cellulitis		Pupils	30
Preseptal Cellulitis		Pupillary Light Reflex	
Lacrimal Apparatus	11	Pupil Abnormalities	
Dry Eye Syndrome Dacryocystitis		Dilated Pupil (Mydriasis)	
Epiphora (Tearing) Dacryoadenitis		Constricted Pupil (Miosis)	
Lids and Lashes	12	Relative Afferent Pupillary Defect	
Lid Swelling Hordeolum (Stye)		Malignancies	34
Ptosis Chalazion		Lid Carcinoma	
Trichiasis Blepharitis		Malignant Melanoma	
Entropion Xanthelasma		Metastases	
Ectropion		Ocular Manifestations of Systemic Disease ...	34
Conjunctiva	14	HIV/AIDS	
Pinguecula		Other Systemic Infections	
Pterygium		Diabetes Mellitus	
Subconjunctival Hemorrhage		Hypertension	
Conjunctivitis		Multiple Sclerosis	
Sclera	16	TIA/Amaurosis Fugax	
Episcleritis Scleritis		Graves' Disease	
Cornea	17	Connective Tissue Disorders	
Foreign Body Herpes Zoster		Giant Cell Arteritis/Temporal Arteritis	
Corneal Abrasion Keratoconus		Sarcoidosis	
Recurrent Erosions Arcus Senilis		Pediatric Ophthalmology	38
Corneal Ulcer Kayser-Fleischer Ring		Strabismus	
Herpes Simplex		Amblyopia	
The Uveal Tract	20	Leukocoria	
Uveitis		Retinoblastoma	
Lens	21	Retinopathy of Prematurity	
Cataracts		Nasolacrimal System Defects	
Dislocated Lens (Ectopia Lentis)		Ophthalmia Neonatorum	
Vitreous	22	Congenital Glaucoma	
Posterior Vitreous Detachment		Ocular Trauma	42
Vitreous Hemorrhage		Blunt Trauma Blow-Out Fracture	
Endophthalmitis and Vitritis		Penetrating Trauma Chemical Burns	
		HypHEMA	
		Surgical Ophthalmology	44
		Ocular Drug Toxicity	44
		Common Medications	44
		References	46

Acronyms

AION	anterior ischemic optic neuropathy	GAT	Goldmann applanation tonometry	PERLA	pupils equal and reactive to light and accommodation
AMD	age-related macular degeneration	GCA	giant cell arteritis	POAG	primary open-angle glaucoma
BCVA	best corrected visual acuity	HRT	Heidelberg retinal tomography	PRK	photorefractive keratectomy
BRAO	branch retinal artery occlusion	INO	internuclear ophthalmoplegia	PVD	posterior vitreous detachment
BRVO	branch retinal vein occlusion	IOL	intraocular lens	RA	rheumatoid arthritis
C:D	cup to disc ratio	IOP	intraocular pressure	RAPD	relative afferent pupillary defect
CMV	cytomegalovirus	LASIK	laser-assisted <i>in situ</i> keratomileusis	RD	retinal detachment
CRAO	central retinal artery occlusion	MS	multiple sclerosis	ROP	retinopathy of prematurity
D	diopter	OCT	optical coherence tomography	RPE	retinal pigment epithelium
DM	diabetes mellitus	OHT	ocular hypertension	SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
DR	diabetic retinopathy	PACG	primary angle-closure glaucoma	SPK	superficial punctate keratitis
EOM	extraocular movement	PDR	proliferative diabetic retinopathy	VEGF	vascular endothelial growth factor
FML	fluoromethalone	PDT	photodynamic therapy	YAG	Yttrium aluminium garnet

Basic Anatomy Review

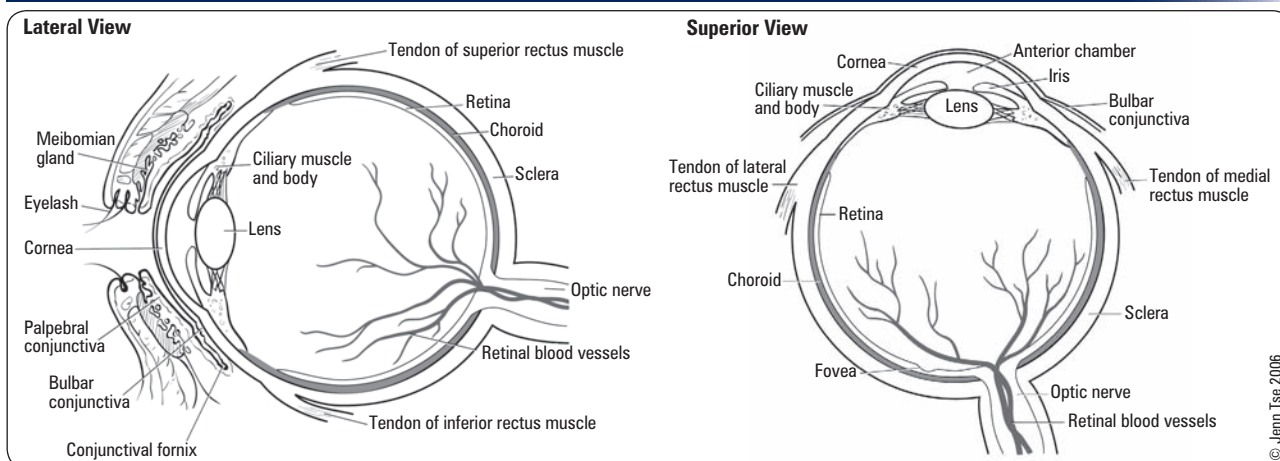


Figure 1. Anatomy of the eye

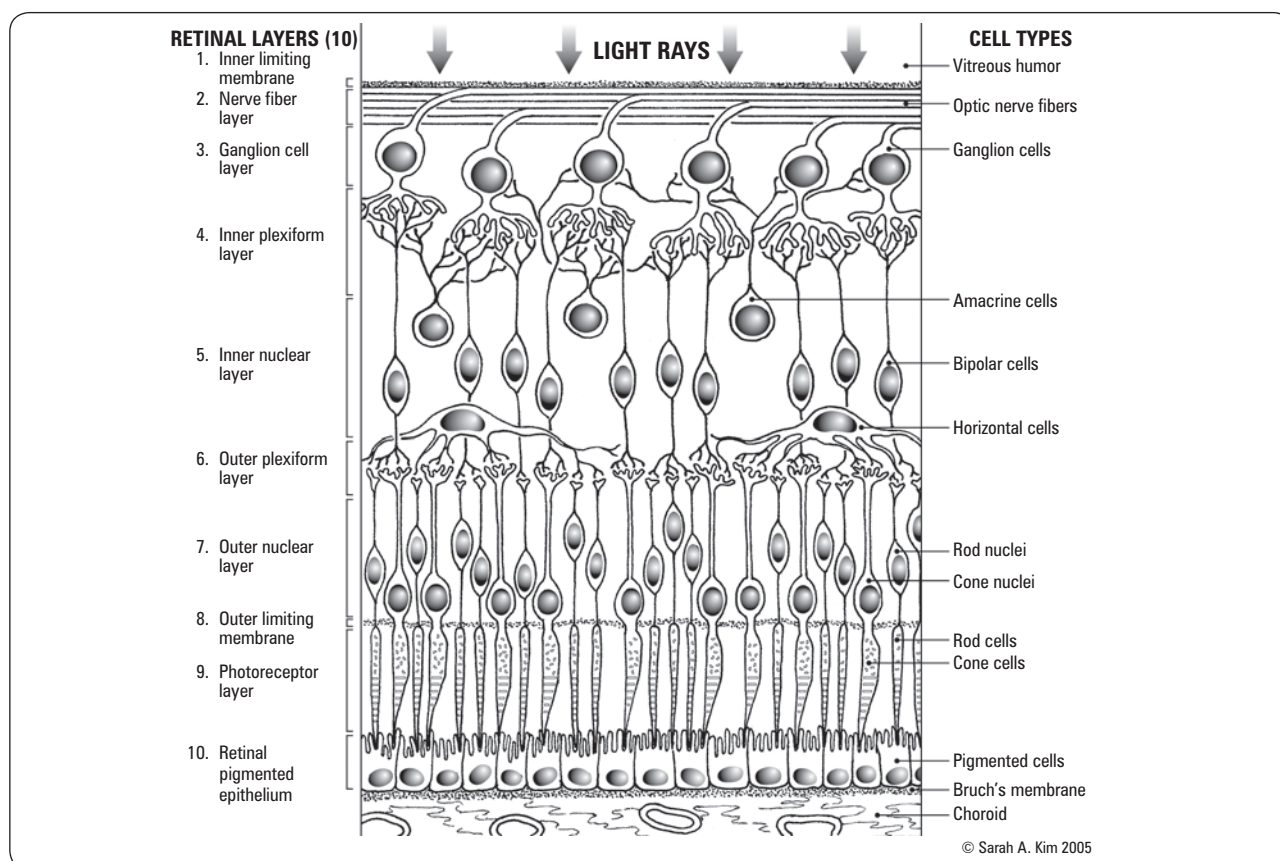


Figure 2. Layers of the retina

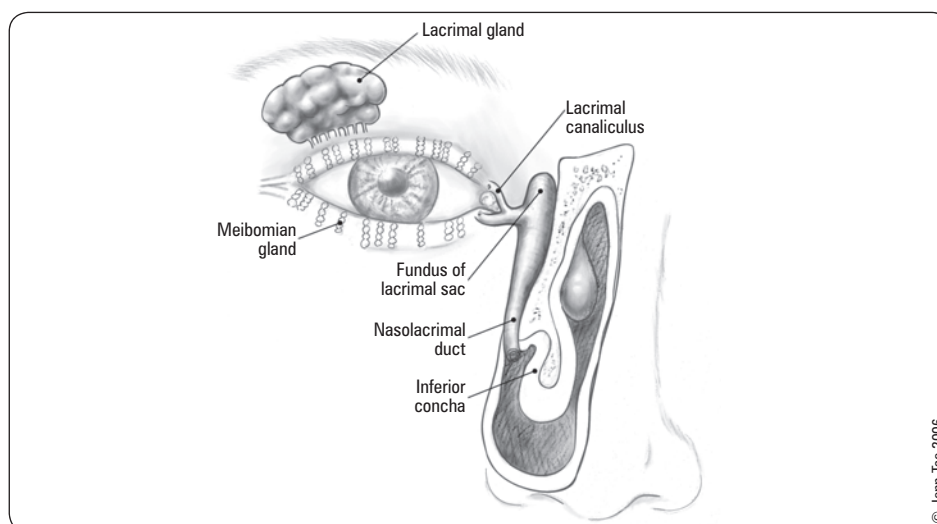


Figure 3. Tear drainage from the eye (lacrimal apparatus)

Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations



Loss of Vision

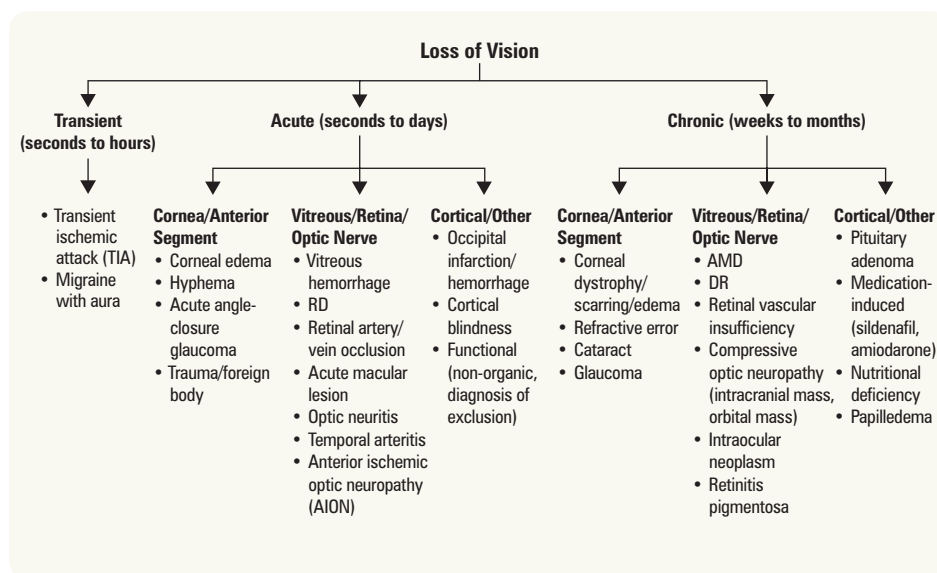


Figure 4. Loss of vision



Top 3 Differential Diagnosis of Acute Loss of Vision

- Trauma/foreign body
- Retinal artery/vein occlusion
- RD



Top 3 Differential Diagnosis of Chronic Loss of Vision Reversible

- Cataract
- Refractive error
- Corneal dystrophy

Irreversible

- AMD
- Glaucoma
- DR

Note: Anti-VEGF treatment for exudative AMD and diabetic macular edema may reverse some vision loss

Red Eye



- lids/orbit/lacrimal system
 - hordeolum/chalazion
 - blepharitis
 - entropion/ectropion
 - foreign body/laceration
 - dacryocystitis/dacryoadenitis
- conjunctiva/sclera
 - subconjunctival hemorrhage
 - conjunctivitis
 - dry eyes
 - pterygium
 - episcleritis/scleritis
 - preseptal/orbital cellulitis
- cornea
 - foreign body (including contact lens)
 - keratitis
 - abrasion, laceration
 - ulcer
- anterior chamber
 - anterior uveitis (iritis, iridocyclitis)
 - acute angle-closure glaucoma
 - hyphema (blood in anterior chamber)
 - hypopyon (pus in anterior chamber)
- other
 - trauma
 - post-operative
 - endophthalmitis

Ocular Pain

- differentiate from eye fatigue (asthenopia)
- herpes zoster prodrome
- trauma/foreign body
- keratitis
- corneal abrasion, corneal ulcer
- acute angle-closure glaucoma
- acute uveitis
- scleritis, episcleritis
- optic neuritis

Floaters

- age-related vitreous syneresis (shrinkage and collapse of vitreous gel)
- PVD
- vitreous hemorrhage
- retinal tear/detachment
- posterior uveitis

Flashes of Light (Photopsia)

- PVD
- retinal tear/detachment
- migraine with aura

Photophobia (Severe Light Sensitivity)

- corneal abrasion, corneal ulcer
- keratitis
- acute angle-closure glaucoma
- iritis
- meningitis, encephalitis
- migraine
- subarachnoid hemorrhage (SAH)

Diplopia (Double Vision)



- binocular diplopia (occurs with both eyes open, eliminated with occlusion of either eye)
 - strabismus, CN palsy (III, IV, VI) secondary to ischemia, DM, tumor, trauma, myasthenia gravis, muscle restriction/entrapment, thyroid ophthalmopathy, INO secondary to multiple sclerosis, brainstem infarct
- monocular diplopia (occurs with one eye open, remains with occlusion of unaffected eye)
 - refractive error, strands of mucus in tear film, keratoconus, cataracts, dislocated lens, peripheral iridotomy

Ocular Problems in the Elderly

- blepharitis
- ptosis
- entropion, ectropion
- dry eyes, epiphora (excessive tearing)
- presbyopia
- cataracts
- glaucoma
- AMD
- retinal artery/vein occlusion
- temporal arteritis (arteritic ischemic optic neuropathy)

Ocular Problems in the Contact Lens Wearer

- SPK from dry eyes
- solution hypersensitivity
- tight lens syndrome
- corneal abrasion
- giant papillary conjunctivitis/contact lens allergy
- sterile corneal infiltrates (immunologic)
- infected ulcers (*Pseudomonas*, *Acanthamoeba*)

Acute Painless Vision Loss



- vitreous hemorrhage
- retinal artery/vein occlusion
- RD
- AION
- optic neuritis
- amaurosis fugax

Table 1. Common Differential Diagnoses of Red Eye

	Conjunctivitis	Acute Iritis	Acute Angle-Closure Glaucoma	Keratitis (Corneal Abrasion/Ulcer)
Discharge	Bacteria: purulent Virus: serous Allergy: mucous	No	No	Profuse tearing
Pain	No	++ (tender globe)	+++ (nausea)	++ (on blinking)
Photophobia	No	+++	+	++
Blurred Vision	No	++	+++	Varies
Pupil	Normal	Smaller	Fixed in mid-dilation	Same or smaller
Injection	Conjunctiva with limbal pallor	Ciliary flush	Diffuse	Diffuse
Cornea	Normal	Keratic precipitates	Cloudy	Infiltrate, edema, epithelial defects
IOP	Normal	Varies	Increased markedly	Normal or increased
Anterior Chamber	Normal	+++ Cells and flare	Shallow	Cells and flare or normal
Other	Large, tender pre-auricular node(s) if viral	Posterior synechiae	Colored halos Nausea and vomiting	



Not every red eye has conjunctivitis

Ocular Emergencies

These require urgent consultation to an ophthalmologist for management

Sight Threatening

- lid/globe lacerations
- chemical burn
- corneal ulcer
- gonococcal conjunctivitis
- acute iritis
- acute angle-closure glaucoma
- CRAO
- intraocular foreign body
- RD (especially when macula threatened)
- endophthalmitis

Life Threatening

- proptosis (rule out cavernous sinus fistula or thrombosis)
- CN III palsy with dilated pupil (intracranial aneurysm or neoplastic lesion)
- papilledema (must rule out intracranial mass lesion)
- orbital cellulitis
- GCA
- leukocoria: white reflex (absent red reflex, must rule out retinoblastoma)

The Ocular Examination

Visual Acuity – Distance

- Snellen Acuity (Figure 5) = $\frac{\text{testing distance (usually 20 feet or 6 meters)}}{\text{smallest line patient can read on the chart}}$
 - e.g. 20/40 = what the patient can see at 20 feet (numerator), what a “normal” person can see at 40 feet (denominator)
- distance visual acuity should be tested with distance glasses on in order to obtain best corrected visual acuity
- testing hierarchy for low vision: Snellen acuity (20/x) → counting fingers at a given distance (CF) → hand motion (HM) → light perception with projection (LP with projection) → light perception (LP) → no light perception (NLP)
- legal blindness is BCVA that is $\leq 20/200$ in best eye

Example 1

SC
V 20/40 -1
20/80 +2 → 20/25 PH

Example 2

CC
V CF 3'
HM

Note: RIGHT EYE visual acuity always listed on top.

V Vision
SC Without correction
CC With correction
20/40 -1 All except one letter of 20/40
20/80 +2 All of 20/80 plus two letters of 20/70
PH Visual acuity with pinhole correction
CF Counting fingers
HM Hand motion

Figure 5. Ophthalmology nomenclature for VA



OD = oculus dexter = right eye
OS = oculus sinister = left eye
OU = oculus uterque = both eyes



Snellen visual acuity of 20/20 equates to “normal” vision



Normal Infant and Child Visual Acuity

- 6-12 mo: 20/120
- 1-2 yr: 20/80
- 2-4 yr: 20/20

Visual Acuity – Near

- use pocket vision chart (Rosenbaum Pocket Vision Screener)
- record Jaeger (J) or Point number and testing distance (usually 30 cm) e.g. J2 @ 30 cm
- conversion to distance VA possible (e.g. immobile patient, no distance chart available)

Visual Acuity for Infants, Children, Non-English Speakers, and Dysphasics

- newborns
 - VA cannot be tested
- 3 mo - 3 yr (can only assess visual function, not acuity)
 - test each eye for fixation symmetry using an interesting object
 - normal function noted as “CSM” = central, steady, and maintained
- 3 yr until alphabet known
 - pictures or letter cards/charts such as HOTV or Sheridan-Gardner test (children point to optotypes on a provided matching card)
 - tumbling “E” chart

Color Vision

- test with Ishihara pseudoisochromatic plates
- record number of correctly identified plates presented to each eye, specify incorrect plates
- important for testing optic nerve function (e.g. optic neuritis, chloroquine use, thyroid ophthalmopathy)
- note: red-green color blindness is sex-linked and occurs in 7-10% of males

VISUAL FIELDS

- test “visual fields by confrontation” (4 quadrants, each eye tested separately) for estimation of visual field loss
- accurate, quantifiable assessment with automated visual field testing (Humphrey or Goldmann) or Tangent Screen
- use Amsler grid (tested separately) to test for central or paracentral scotomas (island-like gaps in the vision) in patients with AMD

PUPILS

- use reduced room illumination with patient focusing on distant object to prevent “near reflex”
- examine pupils for shape, size, symmetry, and reactivity to light (both direct and consensual response)
- RAPD with swinging flashlight test
- test pupillary constriction portion of near reflex by bringing object close to patient’s nose
- “normal” pupil testing often noted as PERLA (pupils equal, round, and reactive to light and accommodation)

ANTERIOR CHAMBER DEPTH

- shine light tangentially from temporal side
- if >2/3 of nasal side of iris in shadow → shallow anterior chamber

The van Herick Method

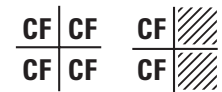
- shine thin-angled slit beam onto the peripheral cornea of each eye
- estimate depth between the posterior surface of the cornea and the iris as a proportion of corneal thickness
- follow-up with gonioscopy for ratios $\leq 1/4$

Gonioscopy

- allows direct visualization of the angle structures
- angle considered open if trabecular meshwork, scleral spur, and iris processes are visualized
- angle considered narrow (occludable) if only *Schwalbe's* line or a small portion of the trabecular meshwork is seen

EXTRAOCULAR MUSCLES**Alignment**

- Hirschberg corneal reflex test
 - examine in primary position of gaze (i.e. straight ahead) with patient focusing on distant object
 - shine light into patient’s eyes from ~30 cm away
 - corneal light reflex should be symmetric and at the same position on each cornea
- strabismus testing as indicated (cover test, cover-uncover test, prism testing) (see *Strabismus*, OP38)



RIGHT EYE fields drawn on right side;
LEFT EYE fields drawn on left side
(as if seen through patient’s eyes).

CF Able to count fingers in specified quadrant with peripheral vision

Gross visual field deficit in specified quadrant using peripheral vision

Figure 6. Ophthalmology nomenclature for visual fields by confrontation



For patients with dark irides, test pupils using an ophthalmoscope focused on the red reflex. This will provide a better view than using a penlight

**Ocular Changes for Near Fixation**

- Eye convergence
- Pupil constriction
- Lens accommodation

**4 Ps of InsPection**

Pupil: shape, size, symmetry
Position: esotropia, exotropia, central
Ptoxis
Primary nystagmus

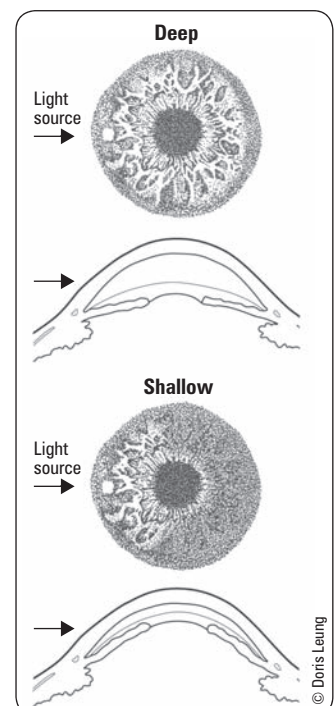


Figure 7. Estimation of anterior chamber depth

Movement

- examine movement of eyeball through six cardinal positions of gaze
- ask patient if diplopia is present in any position of gaze
- observe for horizontal, vertical, or rotatory nystagmus (rhythmic, oscillating movements of the eye)
- resolving horizontal nystagmus at end-gaze is usually normal
- see sidebar for cranial nerve innervation of extraocular muscles

Diplopia

- major symptom associated with dysfunction of extraocular muscles or abnormalities of the motor nerves innervating these muscles
- must determine whether diplopia is monocular or binocular
- determine whether diplopia was sudden onset (due to an acute event such as ischemia) or gradual (due to progressive process such as tumor or inflammation)
- with myasthenia gravis, diplopia and ptosis usually worsen on prolonged upgaze; can rule out with a Tensilon® test (see [Neurology, N38](#))
- if suspect compressive lesion (most commonly seen with CN III palsy with a blown pupil), need MRI and angiography to rule out aneurysm or tumor
- new-onset diplopia that disappears with occlusion of either eye (binocular diplopia) needs urgent referral while chronic binocular diplopia and monocular diplopia should be referred non-urgently

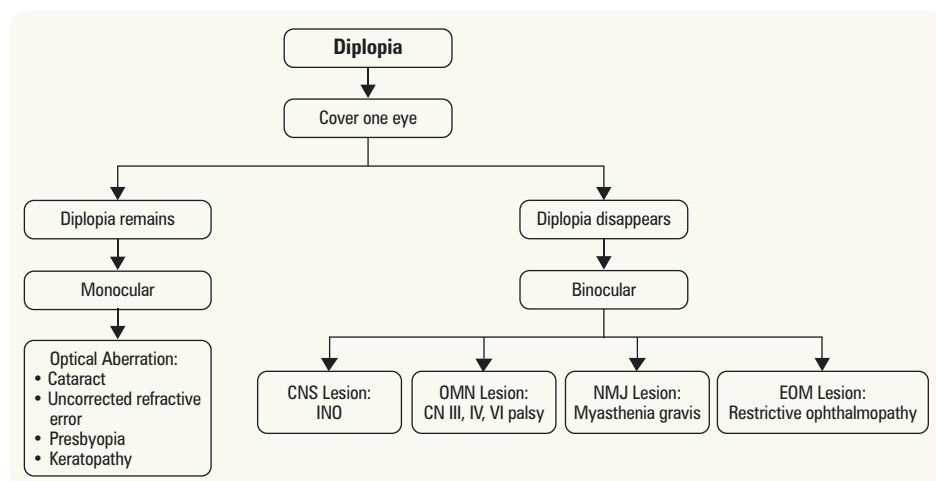


Figure 9. Diplopia

EXTERNAL EXAMINATION

- four Ls
 - lymph nodes (preauricular, submandibular)
 - lids
 - lashes
 - lacrimal system

SLIT-LAMP EXAMINATION

- systematically examine all structures of the anterior segment and anterior vitreous (for structures see [Figure 1](#))
- when necessary, use
 - fluorescein dye: stains Bowman's membrane in de-epithelialized cornea; dye appears green with cobalt blue filtered light
 - Rose Bengal dye: stains devitalized corneal epithelium
- special lenses (78 or 90 D) used with the slit-lamp allow a binocular, stereoscopic view of the fundus and vitreous

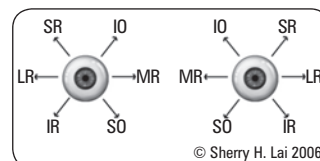


Figure 8. Diagnostic positions of gaze for isolated primary actions of extraocular muscles



Extraocular Muscle Innervations

LR6 SO4 AE3

Lateral Rectus via CN VI

Superior Oblique via CN IV

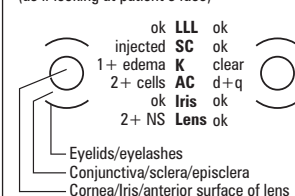
All Else via CN III (superior, medial, and inferior rectus, inferior oblique)



Aqueous Flare

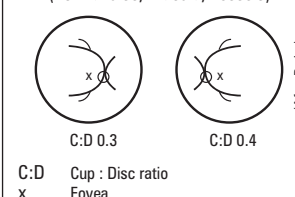
- Resembles dust particles in a beam of light
- Results from protein leaking from blood vessels
- Distinguish from aqueous cells (individual cells in anterior chamber)

Note: RIGHT EYE drawn on the left, LEFT EYE drawn on the right (as if looking at patient's face)



LLL Lids, lashes, lacrimal
SC Sclera, conjunctiva
K Cornea
AC Anterior chamber
d+q Deep (not shallow) and quiet (no cells in AC)
NS Nuclear sclerosis (cataract)

Ⓝ D/M/V
(normal disc, macula, vessels)



C:D Cup : Disc ratio
x Fovea

Any abnormality or pathology is drawn on the sketch in the appropriate location, and is labelled (e.g. trichiasis, conjunctivitis/episcleritis/scleritis, corneal abrasion/ulcer, foreign body, etc.)

© Tobi Lam 2012

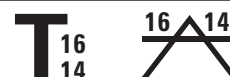
Figure 10. Slit-lamp examination note

TONOMETRY

- measurement of IOP
- normal range is 10-21 mmHg (average 15 mmHg)
- IOP has diurnal variation, so always record the time of day at which the measurement was taken
- commonly measured by
 - Goldmann Applanation Tonometry (GAT): gold standard, performed using the slit-lamp with special tip (prism)
 - Tono-Pen®: benefit is portability and use of disposable probe tips. Use when cornea is scarred/asymmetric (GAT inaccurate)
 - air puff (non-contact and least reliable)
- use topical anesthetic for GAT and Tono-Pen®

OPHTHALMOSCOPY/FUNDOSCOPY

- performed with
 - direct ophthalmoscope (monocular with small field of view, only posterior pole visualized)
 - slit-lamp with 78 or 90 D lens (binocular view, visualization to mid-periphery of retina)
 - indirect ophthalmoscopy with headlamp and 20 or 28 D lens (binocular view, visualization of entire retina to ora serrata/edge of retina)
- best performed with pupils dilated (for list of mydriatics and cycloplegics see Table 11, OP45)
 1. assess red reflex
 - ♦ light reflected off the retina produces a “red reflex” when viewed from ~1 foot away
 - ♦ anything that interferes with the passage of light will diminish the red reflex (e.g. large vitreous hemorrhage, cataract)
 2. examine the posterior segment of the eye (Figure 10)
 - ♦ vitreous
 - ♦ optic disc (color, C:D ratio, sharpness of disc margin)
 - ♦ macula (~2 disc diameters temporal to disc), fovea (foveal light reflex)
 - ♦ retinal vessels
 - ♦ retinal background
- contraindications to pupillary dilatation
 - shallow anterior chamber – can precipitate acute angle-closure glaucoma
 - iris-supported anterior chamber lens implant
 - potential neurologic abnormality requiring pupil evaluation
 - use caution with cardiovascular disease – mydriatics may cause tachycardia



Note: RIGHT EYE IOP always listed on top. Always include time.

Note method used to measure IOP (GAT, Tono-Pen®, airpuff).

Figure 11. Tonometry

**Central Corneal Thickness (CCT)**

Average CCT = 550 µm

By GAT, IOP is over-estimated with thick corneas and under-estimated with thin corneas

Desired Myers Pattern on GAT

Note: Thick Myers overestimate the IOP and are a result of excess fluorescein

**Quick Tips for Direct Ophthalmoscopy**

- Examine in a dark room
- Ask patient to focus on a distant object
- Match ophthalmoscope light aperture to size of pupil (i.e. smaller aperture for undilated eye)
- Use moderate light intensity
- Use your left/right eye and hand to examine patient's left/right eye respectively
- Get in close! Proximity to patient's eye is key. You may rest your hand on the patient's cheek

**Structures Responsible for Refractive Power**

- Cornea (2/3)
- Lens (1/3)

**Myopia****LMN**

Long globe

Myopic

Negative correction/Nearsighted

Optics

REFRACTION

- two techniques used
 - flash/streak retinoscopy: refractive error determined objectively by the examiner using lenses and retinoscope
 - manifest: subjective trial using loose lenses or a phoropter (device the patient looks through that is equipped with lenses)
- a typical lens prescription would contain
 - sphere power in D (measurement of refractive power of lens, equal to reciprocal of focal length in meters)
 - cylinder power in D to correct astigmatism (always positive value)
 - axis of cylinder in degrees
 - “add” (bifocal/progressive reading lens) for presbyopes
 - e.g. -1.50 + 1.00 x 120 degrees, add +2.00

REFRACTIVE EYE SURGERY

- permanently alters corneal refractive properties by ablating tissue to change curvature of the cornea
- used for correction of myopia, hyperopia, and astigmatism
- common types include PRK and LASIK (see *Surgical Ophthalmology*, OP44)
- potential risks/side-effects: infection, under/overcorrection, decreased night vision (nyctalopia), corneal haze, dry eyes, regression, complete sever of corneal flap (LASIK only)

Table 2. Optics

	Pathophysiology	Clinical Features	Treatment	Complications
Emmetropia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Image of distant objects focus exactly on the retina (Figure 12) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No refractive error 		
Myopia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Globe too long relative for refractive mechanisms, or refractive mechanisms too strong Light rays from distant object focus in front of retina → blurring of (distance) vision (Figure 12) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Nearsightedness" Usually presents in 1st or 2nd decade, stabilizes in 2nd and 3rd decade; rarely begins after age 25 except in patients with DM or cataracts Blurring of distance vision; near vision usually unaffected Prevalence: 30-40% in U.S. population 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correct with negative diopter/concave/"negative" lenses to diverge light rays Refractive eye surgery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Retinal tear/detachment, macular hole, open angle glaucoma Other complications that are not prevented with refractive correction
Hyperopia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Globe too short relative to refractive mechanisms, or refractive mechanisms too weak Light rays from distant object focus behind retina → blurring of near ± distant vision (Figure 12) May be developmental or due to any etiology that shortens globe 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "Farsightedness" Youth: usually do not require glasses (still have sufficient accommodative ability to focus image on retina), but may develop accommodative esotropia (see <i>Strabismus</i>, OP38) 30s-40s: blurring of near vision due to decreased accommodation, may need reading glasses >50s: blurring of distance vision due to severely decreased accommodation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> When symptomatic, correct with positive diopter/convex/"plus" lenses to converge light rays Refractive eye surgery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Angle-closure glaucoma, particularly later in life as lens enlarges
Astigmatism	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Light rays not refracted uniformly in all meridians due to non-spherical surface of cornea or non-spherical lens (e.g. football-shaped) Two types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Regular – curvature uniformly different in meridians at right angles to each other Irregular – distorted cornea caused by injury, keratoconus (cone-shaped cornea), corneal scar, or severe dry eye 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Affects approximately 30% of population, with prevalence increasing with age Mild astigmatism unnoticeable Higher amounts of astigmatism may cause blurry vision, squinting, asthenopia, or headaches 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correct with cylindrical lens (if regular), try contact lens (if irregular) Refractive eye surgery 	
Presbyopia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Normal aging process (>40 yr) Hardening/reduced deformability of lens results in decreased accommodative ability Accommodative power is 14D at age 10, diminishes to 3.5D by age 40 Near images cannot be focused onto the retina (focus is behind the retina as in hyperopia) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If initially emmetropic, person begins to hold reading material farther away, but distance vision remains unaffected If initially myopic, person removes distance glasses to read If initially hyperopic, symptoms of presbyopia occur earlier 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Correct with positive diopter/convex/"plus" lenses for reading 	
Anisometropia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Difference in refractive errors between eyes 			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Second most common cause of amblyopia in children

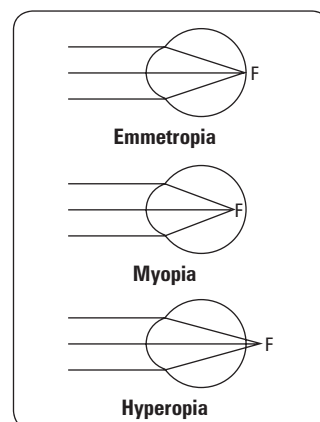


Figure 12. Emmetropia and refractive errors

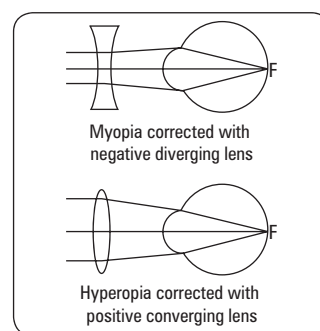


Figure 13. Correction of refractive errors

Imaging Modalities

- **adaptive optics scanning laser ophthalmology – optical coherence tomography (SLO-OCT)**
 - combines the surface detail of confocal ophthalmoscopy with the internal detail of OCT
 - allows 3D OCT images, volume and area maps, and retinal thickness maps, at the resolution of living rods and cones
 - can visualize photoreceptors, nerve fibers and blood cells in retinal capillaries
- **CT, MRI**
 - orbital imaging, particularly in orbital trauma and neuro-ophthalmology
- **fluorescein angiography**
 - non-invasive evaluation of vascular pattern of the fundus
 - commonly used in AMD, DR, retinal vascular diseases
- **indocyanine green angiography**
 - uses infra-red light and intravenous ICG dye for imaging of choroidal structure
 - particularly useful to detect polypoidal vasculopathy (variant of AMD) more commonly present among Asian patients

- **HRT**
 - confocal scanning laser tomography of retinal nerve head and surrounding nerve fiber layer
 - used to assess extent of structural glaucomatous changes
- **OCT**
 - non-invasive, cross-sectional, high-resolution imaging of vitreous, retinal layers, optic nerve
 - commonly used to assess macular pathology/edema/holes/cysts, AMD progression, epi-retinal membrane, RD
- **anterior segment optical coherence tomography (AS-OCT)**
 - non-invasive, cross-sectional, high-resolution imaging of cornea, aqueous, iris and lens
- **perimetry**
 - quantitative evaluation of visual fields, used to screen for scotomas and monitor progression (e.g. in glaucoma)
- **ultrasonography**
 - evaluation of orbit in real-time. A-scans (one-dimensional), B-scans (two-dimensional), and Doppler are all used (e.g. large RDs, foreign bodies, monitoring intraocular tumors)

The Orbit

Globe Displacement



Table 3. Exophthalmos (Proptosis) and Enophthalmos

	Exophthalmos (Proptosis)	Enophthalmos
Definition	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Anterior displacement (protrusion) of the globe <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Exophthalmos generally refers to an endocrine etiology or protrusion of >18 mm (as measured by a Hertel exophthalmometer) ▪ Proptosis generally refers to other etiologies (e.g. cellulitis) or protrusion of <18 mm 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Posterior displacement (retraction) of the globe
Investigations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CT/MRI head/orbits, ultrasound orbits, thyroid function tests 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CT/MRI orbits
Etiology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Note: rule out pseudoexophthalmos (e.g. lid retraction) • Graves' disease (unilateral or bilateral, most common cause in adults) • Orbital cellulitis (unilateral, most common cause in children) • 1° or 2° orbital tumors • Orbital/retrobulbar hemorrhage • Cavernous sinus thrombosis or fistula 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Blow-out" fracture (see <i>Ocular Trauma</i>, OP42) • Orbital fat atrophy • Congenital abnormality • Metastatic disease

Preseptal Cellulitis

- infection of soft tissue anterior to orbital septum

Etiology

- usually follows periorbital trauma or dermal infection

Clinical Features

Treatment

- systemic antibiotics (suspect *H. influenzae* in children; *S. aureus* or *Streptococcus* in adults)
 - e.g. amoxicillin-clavulanic acid
- if severe or child <1 yr, treat as orbital cellulitis

Orbital Cellulitis



- **OCULAR and MEDICAL EMERGENCY**
- inflammation of orbital contents posterior to orbital septum
- common in children, elderly, and immunocompromised

Etiology

- usually secondary to sinus/facial/tooth infections or trauma, can also arise from preseptal cellulitis

Clinical Features

Treatment

- admit, blood cultures x2, orbital CT, IV antibiotics (ceftriaxone + vancomycin) for 1 wk
- surgical drainage of abscess with close follow-up, especially in children



Orbital cellulitis is life-threatening if untreated (mortality of 17-20% without antibiotic use); prompt diagnosis and treatment is essential

Complications

- optic nerve inflammation, cavernous sinus thrombosis, meningitis, and brain abscess with possible loss of vision, death

Table 4. Clinical Features of Preseptal and Orbital Cellulitis

Finding	Preseptal Cellulitis	Orbital Cellulitis
Fever	May be present	Present
Lid edema	Moderate to severe	Severe
Conjunctival injection	Absent	Present
Chemosis	Absent or mild	Marked
Proptosis	Absent	Present
Pain on eye movement	Absent	Present
Ocular mobility	Normal	Decreased
Vision	Normal	Diminished ± diplopia
RAPD	Absent	May be seen
Leukocytosis	Moderate	Marked
ESR	Normal or elevated	Elevated
Additional findings	Skin infection	Sinusitis, dental abscess



Role of Oral Corticosteroids in Orbital Cellulitis

Am J Ophthalmol 2013;156:178-183

Purpose: To evaluate the role of oral corticosteroids as an anti-inflammatory adjunct for the treatment of orbital cellulitis.

Study: RCT. Patients with acute onset (within 14 d) of orbital cellulitis with or without abscess. 21 patients total (7 patients in group 1: standard intravenous antibiotics; 14 patients in group 2: adjuvant steroids).

Results: Patients in group 2 showed earlier resolution of periorbital edema, conjunctival chemosis, pain, proptosis, and EOM deficits, including decreased duration of intravenous antibiotics and hospital stay ($p < 0.05$ for all).

Conclusion: The use of oral steroids as an adjunct to intravenous antibiotics for orbital cellulitis may decrease inflammatory symptoms with a low risk of worsening infection.

Lacrimal Apparatus

- tear film made up of three layers
 - outer oily layer (reduces evaporation): secreted by the Meibomian glands
 - middle watery layer (forms the bulk of the tear film): constant secretion from conjunctival glands and reflex secretion by lacrimal gland with ocular irritation or emotion
 - inner mucinous layer (aids with tear adherence to cornea): secreted by conjunctival goblet cells
- tears drain from the eyes through the upper and lower lacrimal puncta → superior and inferior canaliculi → lacrimal sac → nasolacrimal duct → nasal cavity behind inferior concha (Figure 3)

Dry Eye Syndrome (Keratoconjunctivitis Sicca)

Etiology

- aqueous-deficient (lacrimal pathology)
 - Sjögren syndrome (autoimmune etiology e.g. RA, SLE)
 - non-Sjögren syndrome (idiopathic age-related disease; lacrimal gland scarring e.g. trachoma; decreased secretion e.g. contact lenses, CN VII palsy, anticholinergics, antihistamines, diuretics, β -blockers)
- evaporative (normal lacrimal function, excessive evaporation of aqueous layer)
 - Meibomian gland dysfunction (posterior blepharitis)
 - vitamin A deficiency (xerophthalmia with goblet cell dysgenesis)
 - eyelid abnormalities e.g. ectropion, CN VII palsy (decreased blinking)
 - preserved topical ocular medications
 - contact lenses, allergic conjunctivitis
- overlap of mixed etiologies common

Clinical Features

- dry eyes, red eyes, foreign body sensation, blurred vision, tearing
- slit-lamp exam: decreased tear meniscus, decreased tear break-up time (normally should be 10 s), SPK

Investigations

- surface damage observed with fluorescein/Rose Bengal staining
- decreased distance in Schirmer's test

Complications

- erosions and scarring of cornea

Treatment

- medical: preservative-free artificial tears up to q1h and ointment at bedtime (preservative toxicity becomes significant if used more than q1h PRN)
 - for severe cases, cyclosporine ophthalmic emulsion 0.05% (Restasis®) can be used
- procedural: punctal occlusion (punctal plug insertion), lid taping, tarsorrhaphy (sew lids together) if severe
- treat underlying cause



Long-term use of artificial tears with preservatives should be avoided when treating dry eyes

Epiphora (Excessive Tearing)

Etiology

- emotion, pain
- environmental stressor (cold, wind, pollen, sleep deprivation)
- lid/lash malposition: ectropion, entropion, trichiasis
- inflammatory: conjunctivitis, uveitis, keratitis, corneal foreign body
- dry eyes (reflex tearing)
- lacrimal drainage obstruction (congenital failure of canalization, aging, rhinitis, dacryocystitis)
- paradoxical gustatory lacrimation reflex (crocodile tears)



Excessive tearing can be caused by dry eyes – if the tear quality is insufficient, “reflex tearing” may occur

Investigations

- using fluorescein dye, examine for punctal reflux by pressing on canaliculi
- Jones dye test: fluorescein placed in conjunctival cul-de-sac, and cotton applicator placed in nose to detect flow (i.e. rule out lacrimal drainage obstruction)

Treatment

- lid repair for ectropion or entropion
- eyelash removal for trichiasis
- punctal irrigation
- nasolacrimal duct probing (infants)
- tube placement: temporary (Crawford) or permanent (Jones)
- surgical: dacryocystorhinostomy (see *Surgical Ophthalmology*, OP44) – forming a new connection between the lacrimal sac and the nasal cavity

Dacryocystitis



- acute or chronic infection of the lacrimal sac
- most commonly due to obstruction of the nasolacrimal duct
- commonly associated with *S. aureus*, *S. pneumoniae*, *Pseudomonas* species

Clinical Features

- pain, swelling, redness over lacrimal sac at medial canthus
- epiphora, crusting, \pm fever
- digital pressure on the lacrimal sac may extrude pus through the punctum
- in the chronic form, epiphora may be the only symptom

Treatment

- warm compresses, nasal decongestants, systemic and topical antibiotics
- if chronic, obtain cultures by aspiration
- once infection resolves, consider dacryocystorhinostomy (see *Surgical Ophthalmology*, OP44)

Dacryoadenitis



- inflammation of the lacrimal gland (outer third of upper eyelid)
- acute causes: *S. aureus*, mumps, EBV, herpes zoster, *N. gonorrhoeae*
- chronic causes (often bilateral): lymphoma, leukemia, sarcoidosis, tuberculosis, thyroid ophthalmopathy

Clinical Features

- pain, swelling, tearing, discharge, redness of the outer region of the upper eyelid
- chronic form is more common and may present as painless enlargement of the lacrimal gland

Treatment

- supportive: warm compresses, oral NSAIDs
- systemic antibiotics if bacterial cause
- if chronic, treat underlying disorder

Lids and Lashes

Lid Swelling

Etiology

- commonly due to allergy, with shriveling of skin between episodes
- dependent edema on awakening (e.g. CHF, renal or hepatic failure)
- orbital venous congestion due to mass or cavernous sinus fistula
- dermatochalasis (loose skin due to aging or heredity)
- lid cellulitis, thyroid disease (e.g. myxedema), trauma, chemosis

Ptosis

- drooping of upper eyelid

Etiology

- aponeurotic: disinsertion or dehiscence of levator aponeurosis (most common)
 - associated with advancing age, trauma, surgery, pregnancy, chronic lid swelling
- mechanical
 - incomplete opening of eyelid due to mass or scarring
- neuromuscular
 - myasthenia gravis (neuromuscular palsy), myotonic dystrophy
 - CN III palsy
 - Horner's syndrome (see *Constricted Pupil*, Horner's Syndrome, OP32)
- congenital
- pseudoptosis (e.g. dermatochalasis, enophthalmos, contralateral exophthalmos)

Treatment

- surgery

Trichiasis

- eyelashes turned inwards
- may result from chronic inflammatory lid diseases (e.g. blepharitis), Stevens-Johnson syndrome, trauma, burns
- patient complains of red eye, foreign body sensation, tearing
- may result in corneal ulceration and scarring

Treatment

- topical lubrication, eyelash plucking, electrolysis, cryotherapy

Entropion

- lid margin turns in towards globe causing tearing, foreign body sensation, and red eye
- most commonly affects lower lid
- may cause abrasions with secondary corneal scarring

Etiology

- involutional (aging)
- cicatricial (herpes zoster, surgery, trauma, burns)
- orbicularis oculi muscle spasm
- congenital

Treatment

- lubricants, evert lid with tape, surgery



Testing for Entropion

Forced lid closure: Ask patient to tighten lid then open. In entropion, lid rolls inwards

Ectropion

- lid margin turns outward from globe causing tearing and possibly exposure keratitis

Etiology

- involutional (aging)
- paralytic (CN VII palsy)
- cicatricial (burns, trauma, surgery)
- mechanical (lid edema, tumor, herniated fat)
- congenital

Treatment

- topical lubrication, surgery



Testing for Ectropion

Snapback test: Pull eyelid inferiorly. In ectropion, lid remains away from globe

Hordeolum (Stye)



- acute inflammation of eyelid gland: either Meibomian glands (internal lid) or glands of Zeis (modified sweat gland) or Moll (modified sebaceous gland in external lid)
- infectious agent is usually *S. aureus*
- painful, red swelling of lid

Treatment

- warm compresses, lid care, gentle massage
- topical antibiotics (e.g. erythromycin ointment bid)
- usually resolves in 2-5 d

Chalazion

- chronic granulomatous inflammation of Meibomian gland often preceded by an internal hordeolum
- acute inflammatory signs are usually absent
- differential diagnosis: basal cell carcinoma, sebaceous cell adenoma, Meibomian gland carcinoma

Treatment

- warm compresses
- if no improvement after 1 mo, consider incision and curettage
- chronic recurrent lesion must be biopsied to rule out malignancy



Hordeolum vs. Chalazion

Hordeolums are due to an infectious etiology, whereas chalazions are granulomatous inflammation

Blepharitis

- inflammation of lid margins

Etiology

- two main types
 - staphylococcal (*S. aureus*): ulcerative, dry scales
 - seborrheic: no ulcers, greasy scales

Clinical Features

- itching, tearing, foreign body sensation
- thickened, red lid margins, crusting, discharge with pressure on lids (“toothpaste sign”)

Complications

- recurrent chalazia
- conjunctivitis
- keratitis (from poor tear film)
- corneal ulceration and neovascularization

Treatment

- warm compresses and lid scrubs with diluted “baby shampoo”
- topical or systemic antibiotics as needed
- if severe, ophthalmologist may prescribe a short course of topical corticosteroids



Xanthelasma

- eyelid xanthoma (lipid deposits in dermis of lids)
- appear as pale, slightly elevated yellowish plaques or streaks
- most commonly on the medial upper lids, often bilateral
- associated with hyperlipidemia (approximately 50% of patients)
- common in the elderly, more concerning in the young

Treatment

- excision for cosmesis only, commonly recurs

Conjunctiva

- thin, vascular mucous membrane/epithelium
- bulbar conjunctiva: lines sclera to limbus (junction between cornea and sclera)
- palpebral (tarsal) conjunctiva: lines inner surface of eyelid

Pinguecula

- yellow-white subepithelial deposit of hyaline and elastic tissue adjacent to the nasal or temporal limbus, sparing the cornea
- associated with sun and wind exposure, aging
- common, benign, sometimes enlarges slowly
- may be irritating due to abnormal tear film formation over the deposits
- surgery for cosmesis only
- irritative symptoms may be treated with lubricating drops



Pterygium



- fibrovascular triangular encroachment of epithelial tissue onto the cornea, usually nasally
- may induce astigmatism, decrease vision
- excision for chronic inflammation, threat to visual axis, cosmesis
- irritative symptoms may be treated with lubricating drops
- one-third recur after excision, lower recurrence with conjunctival autograft (5%)

Subconjunctival Hemorrhage



- blood beneath the conjunctiva, otherwise asymptomatic
- idiopathic or associated with trauma, Valsalva maneuver, bleeding disorders, HTN
- give reassurance if no other ocular findings, resolves spontaneously in 2-3 wk
- if recurrent, consider medical/hematologic workup

Conjunctivitis



Etiology

- infectious
 - bacterial, viral, chlamydial, fungal, parasitic
- non-infectious
 - allergic: atopic, seasonal, giant papillary conjunctivitis (contact lens wearers)
 - toxic: irritants, dust, smoke, irradiation
 - secondary to another disorder: dacryocystitis, dacryoadenitis, cellulitis, Kawasaki disease

Clinical Features

- red eye (conjunctival injection often with limbal pallor), chemosis, subepithelial infiltrates
- itching, foreign body sensation, tearing, discharge, crusting of lashes in the morning, lid edema
- preauricular and/or submandibular nodes
- follicles: pale lymphoid elevations of the conjunctiva
- papillae: fibrovascular elevations of the conjunctiva with central network of finely branching vessels (cobblestone appearance)



- Enlarged lymph nodes suggest infectious etiology, especially viral or chlamydial conjunctivitis
- Temporal conjunctival lymphatics drain to preauricular nodes, and nasal to submandibular nodes



- Follicles are usually seen in viral and chlamydial conjunctivitis
- Papillae are usually seen in allergic and bacterial conjunctivitis

ALLERGIC CONJUNCTIVITIS

Atopic

- associated with rhinitis, asthma, dermatitis, hay fever
- small papillae, chemosis, thickened and erythematous lids, corneal neovascularization
- seasonal (pollen, grasses, plant allergens)
- treatment: cool compresses, antihistamine, mast cell stabilizer (e.g. ketotifen, olopatadine)

Giant Papillary Conjunctivitis

- immune reaction to mucus debris on lenses in contact lens wearers
- large papillae form on superior palpebral conjunctiva
- treatment: clean, change or discontinue use of contact lens

Vernal Conjunctivitis

- large papillae (cobblestones) form on superior palpebral conjunctiva with corneal ulcers and keratitis
- seasonal (warm weather)
- occurs in children, lasts for 5-10 yr then resolves
- treatment: consider topical steroid, topical cyclosporine (by ophthalmologist)

VIRAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

- serous discharge, lid edema, follicles
- subepithelial corneal infiltrates
- may be associated with rhinorrhea
- preauricular node often palpable and tender
- initially unilateral, often progresses to the other eye
- mainly due to adenovirus – highly contagious for up to 12 d

Treatment

- cool compresses, topical lubrication
- usually self-limiting (7-12 d)
- proper hygiene is very important



Types of Discharge

- Allergic: mucoid
- Viral: watery
- Bacterial: purulent
- Chlamydial: mucopurulent

BACTERIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

- purulent discharge, lid swelling, papillae, conjunctival injection, chemosis
- common agents include *S. aureus*, *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae* and *M. catarrhalis*
- in neonates or if sexually active must consider *N. gonorrhoeae* (invades cornea to cause keratitis)
- *C. trachomatis* is the most common cause in neonates

Treatment

- topical broad-spectrum antibiotic
- systemic antibiotics if indicated, especially in neonates and children
- usually a self-limited course of 10-14 d if no treatment, 1-3 d with treatment

CHLAMYDIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

- caused by *C. trachomatis*
- affects neonates (ophthalmia neonatorum) on day 3-5, sexually active individuals
- causes trachoma and inclusion conjunctivitis

Trachoma

- leading infectious cause of blindness in the world
- severe keratoconjunctivitis leads to corneal abrasion, ulceration, and scarring
- initially, follicles on superior palpebral conjunctiva
- treatment: topical and systemic tetracycline

Inclusion Conjunctivitis

- chronic conjunctivitis with follicles and subepithelial infiltrates
- most common cause of conjunctivitis in newborns
- prevention: topical erythromycin at birth
- treatment: topical and systemic tetracycline, doxycycline, or erythromycin

**Antibiotics vs. Placebo for Acute Bacterial Conjunctivitis**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;9:CD001211

Purpose: To assess the benefits and harms of antibiotic therapy in the management of acute bacterial conjunctivitis.

Criteria: RCTs with any form of antibiotic treatment compared with placebo including topical, systemic or combined (e.g. antibiotics and steroids) antibiotic treatments.

Results: 11 RCTs, 3,673 participants. Topical antibiotics improve early (2-5 d) clinical and microbiological remission rates (RR 1.36, 95% CI 1.15 to 1.61; RR 1.55; 95% CI 1.37-1.76) and benefit clinical remission and microbiological cure rates at a late time point (6-10 d) (RR 1.21, 95% CI 1.10-1.33; RR 1.37, 95% CI 1.24-1.52). By 6-10 days 41% of cases had resolved in the placebo group. No serious outcomes were reported in any group.

Conclusion: The use of antibiotic eye drops is associated with modestly improved rates of clinical and microbiological remission in comparison to placebo. Antibiotic eye drops should therefore be considered in order to speed the resolution of symptoms and infection although acute bacterial conjunctivitis is frequently self-limiting.

Sclera

- white fibrous outer protective coat of the eye, composed of irregularly distributed collagen bundles
- continuous with the cornea anteriorly and the dura of the optic nerve posteriorly
- episclera is a thin layer of vascularized tissue between the sclera and conjunctiva

Episcleritis

- immunologically mediated inflammation of episclera
- 1/3 bilateral; simple (80%) or nodular (20%)
- more frequent in women than men (3:1)

Etiology

- mostly idiopathic
- in 1/3 of cases, associated with collagen vascular diseases, infections (herpes zoster, herpes simplex, syphilis), inflammatory bowel disease, rosacea, atopy

Clinical Features

- usually asymptomatic; may have discomfort, heat sensation, red eye (often interpalpebral), rarely pain
- sectoral or diffuse injection of radially-directed vessels, chemosis, small mobile nodules
- blanches with topical phenylephrine (constricts superficial conjunctival vessels)

Treatment

- generally self limited, recurrent in 2/3 of cases
- topical steroid for 3-5 d if painful (prescribed and monitored by ophthalmologist)



To differentiate between episcleritis and scleritis, place a drop of phenylephrine 2.5% (Mydrin®; AK-Dilate®) in the affected eye. Re-examine the vascular pattern 10-15 min later; episcleral vessels should blanch, scleral vessels should not



Scleritis

- usually bilateral: diffuse, nodular, or necrotizing
- anterior scleritis: pain radiating to face, may cause scleral thinning, in some cases necrotizing
- posterior scleritis: rapidly progressive blindness, may cause exudative RD
- more common in women and elderly

Etiology

- may be a manifestation of systemic disease
- collagen vascular disease, e.g. SLE, RA, ankylosing spondylitis
- granulomatous, e.g. tuberculosis, sarcoidosis, syphilis
- metabolic, e.g. gout, thyrotoxicosis
- infectious, e.g. *S. aureus*, *S. pneumoniae*, *P. aeruginosa*, herpes zoster
- chemical or physical agents (e.g. thermal, alkali, or acid burns)
- idiopathic

Clinical Features

- severe pain, photophobia, red eye, decreased vision
- pain is best indicator of disease progression
- inflammation of scleral, episcleral, and conjunctival vessels
- may have anterior chamber cells and flare, corneal infiltrate, scleral thinning
- sclera may have a blue hue (best seen in natural light), due to rearranged scleral fibers
- scleral edema or thinning
- failure to blanch with topical phenylephrine

Treatment

- systemic NSAID or steroid (topical steroids are not effective)
- treat underlying etiology



Scleromalacia Perforans

- Asymptomatic anterior necrotizing scleritis without inflammation
- Strongly associated with RA
- May result in scleral thinning
- Traumatic perforation can easily occur – examine eye very gently



Learn the layers of the cornea

- A – Anterior epithelium
- B – Bowman's Membrane
- C – Corneal Stroma
- D – Dua's Layer, Descemet's Membrane
- E – Endothelium



A new corneal layer was discovered by H. Dua in 2013 and is characterized as a pre-Descemet's membrane



Foreign body behind lid may cause multiple vertical corneal epithelial abrasions due to blinking



Topical analgesics should only be used to facilitate examination. They should NEVER be used as treatment for any ocular problem



NEVER patch abrasion if patient wears contact lenses (prone to *Pseudomonas* infection)



Corneal abrasions from organic matter (e.g. twig, finger nail, etc.) have higher recurrence, even years later

Cornea

- function
 - transmission of light
 - refraction of light (2/3 of total refractive power of eye)
 - barrier against infection, foreign bodies
- transparency due to avascularity, uniform structure and deturgescence (relative dehydration)
- 6 layers (anterior to posterior): epithelium, Bowman's membrane, stroma, Dua's layer, Descemet's membrane, endothelium (dehydrates the cornea; dysfunction leads to corneal edema). A new corneal layer was discovered by H. Dua in 2013 is characterized as a pre-Descemet's membrane
- extensive sensory fiber network (V1 distribution); therefore abrasions and inflammation (keratitis) are very painful

Foreign Body

- foreign material in or on cornea
- may have associated rust ring if metallic
- patients may note tearing, photophobia, foreign body sensation, red eye
- signs include foreign body, conjunctival injection, epithelial defect that stains with fluorescein, corneal edema, anterior chamber cells/flare

Complications

- abrasion, infection, scarring, rust ring, secondary iritis

Treatment

- remove under magnification using local anesthetic and sterile needle or refer to ophthalmology (depending on depth and location)
- treat as per corneal abrasion

Corneal Abrasion

- epithelial defect usually due to trauma (e.g. fingernails, paper, twigs), contact lens (Figure 14)

Clinical Features (Table 5)

- pain, redness, tearing, photophobia, foreign body sensation
- de-epithelialized area stains with fluorescein dye
- pain relieved with topical anesthetic

Complications

- infection, ulceration, recurrent erosion, secondary iritis

Treatment

- topical antibiotic (drops or ointment)
- consider topical NSAID (caution due to risk of corneal melt with prolonged use), cycloplegic (relieves pain and photophobia by paralyzing ciliary muscle), patch
- most abrasions clear spontaneously within 24-48 h

Recurrent Erosions

- recurrent episodes of pain, photophobia, foreign body sensation with a spontaneous corneal epithelial defect
- usually occurs upon awakening
- associated with improper adherence of epithelial cells to the underlying basement membrane

Etiology

- previous traumatic corneal abrasion
- corneal dystrophy
- idiopathic

Treatment

- as for corneal abrasion until re-epithelialization occurs
- topical hypertonic saline ointment at bedtime for 3 mo, topical lubrication
- bandage contact lens, anterior stromal puncture or phototherapeutic keratectomy for chronic recurrences



Corneal Abrasion: To Patch or Not to Patch

Patching for corneal abrasion. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2006;2:CD004764

Patching is not indicated for simple corneal abrasions, measuring <10 mm. There is no improvement in healing rates on days 1-3, no changes in reported pain and no difference in the use of antibiotics between the patch and non-patch groups

Corneal Ulcer

Etiology

- local necrosis of corneal tissue due to infection
- infection is usually bacterial, rarely viral, fungal, or protozoan (*Acanthamoeba*)
- secondary to corneal exposure, abrasion, foreign body, contact lens use (50% of ulcers)
- also associated with conjunctivitis, blepharitis, keratitis, vitamin A deficiency

Clinical Features

- pain, photophobia, tearing, foreign body sensation, decreased VA (if central ulcer)
- corneal opacity that necroses and forms an excavated ulcer with infiltrative base
- overlying corneal epithelial defect that stains with fluorescein
- may develop corneal edema, conjunctival injection, anterior chamber cells/flare, hypopyon, corneal hypoesthesia (in viral keratitis)
- bacterial ulcers may have purulent discharge, viral ulcers may have watery discharge

Complications

- decreased vision, corneal perforation, iritis, endophthalmitis

Investigations

- Seidel test: fluorescein drop on the cornea under cobalt blue filter is used to detect leaking penetrating lesions; any aqueous leaking will change dark orange dye to bright yellow-green at site of wound

Treatment

- urgent referral to ophthalmology
- culture prior to treatment
- topical antibiotics every hour
- must treat vigorously to avoid complications

Table 5. Corneal Abrasion vs. Corneal Ulcer

	Abrasion	Ulcer
Time Course	Acute (instantaneous)	Subacute (days)
History of Trauma	Yes	Not usually
Cornea	Clear	White, necrotic area
Iris Detail	Clear	Obscured
Corneal Thickness	Normal	May have crater defect/thinning
Extent of Lesion	Limited to epithelium	Extension into stroma

Herpes Simplex Keratitis

- usually HSV type 1 (90% of population are carriers)
- may be triggered by stress, fever, sun exposure, immunosuppression

Clinical Features

- pain, tearing, foreign body sensation, red eye, may have decreased vision, eyelid edema
- corneal hypoesthesia
- dendritic (thin and branching) lesion in epithelium that stains with fluorescein

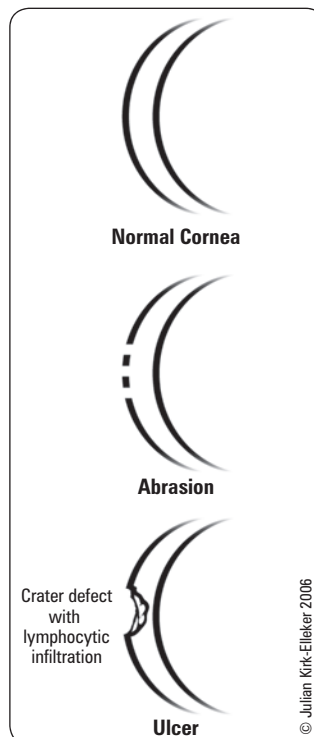


Figure 14. Corneal abrasion vs. ulcer



Abrasion vs. Ulcer on Slit-Lamp

An abrasion appears clear while an ulcer is more opaque



Antiviral Treatment and Other Therapeutic Interventions for Herpes Simplex Virus Epithelial Keratitis

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2010;12:CD002898

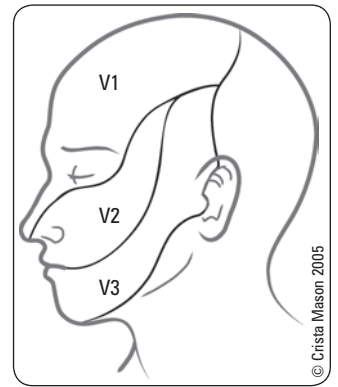
Rates of corneal re-epithelialization after acute HSV corneal epithelial keratitis are similar after treatment with trifluridine or acyclovir, and significantly better than after treatment with idoxuridine or vidarabine. Brivudine and ganciclovir are not inferior to acyclovir. Combining an antiviral agent with Interferon or corneal epithelial debridement did not improve outcomes overall, but did hasten corneal healing. Debridement with concomitant antiviral treatment was more effective than debridement alone.

Complications

- corneal scarring (can lead to loss of vision)
- chronic interstitial keratitis due to penetration of virus into stroma
- secondary iritis, secondary glaucoma

Treatment

- topical antiviral such as trifluridine, consider systemic antiviral such as acyclovir
- dendritic debridement
- NO STEROIDS initially – may exacerbate condition
- ophthalmologist must exercise caution if adding topical steroids for chronic keratitis or iritis

**Figure 15. Trigeminal distribution****Herpes Zoster**

- dermatitis of the forehead (CN V1 territory) may involve globe
- Hutchinson's sign: if tip of nose is involved (nasociliary branch of V1) then eye will be involved in approximately 75% of cases
- if no nasal involvement, eye is involved in 1/3 of patients

Clinical Features

- pain, tearing, photophobia, red eye
- corneal edema, pseudodendrite, SPK
- corneal hypoesthesia

Complications

- corneal keratitis, ulceration, perforation and scarring
- secondary iritis, secondary glaucoma, cataract
- muscle palsies (rare) due to CNS involvement
- occasionally severe post-herpetic neuralgia

Treatment

- oral antiviral (acyclovir, valacyclovir, or famciclovir) immediately
- topical steroids, cycloplegia as indicated for keratitis, iritis
- erythromycin ointment if conjunctival involvement



Steroid treatment for ocular disorders should only be prescribed and supervised by an ophthalmologist, as they can impair corneal healing and exacerbate herpetic keratitis

Keratoconus

- bilateral paracentral thinning and bulging (ectasia) of the cornea to form a conical shape
- usually sporadic, but associated with Down's syndrome, atopy, contact lens use (theorized to be related to chronic vigorous eye rubbing)
- associated with breaks in Descemet's and Bowman's membrane
- results in irregular astigmatism, scarring, stromal edema

Treatment

- attempt correction with spectacles or contact lens
- cross-linking treatment may halt or slow disease progression
- intrastromal corneal ring segments can help flatten the corneal cone
- penetrating keratoplasty (corneal transplant) 90% successful
- post-operative complications: endophthalmitis, graft rejection, graft failure, graft dehiscence



To detect keratoconus, look for bulging of the lower eyelid when the patient looks downward (Munson's sign)

Arcus Senilis

- hazy white ring in peripheral cornea, <2 mm wide, clearly separated from limbus
- common, bilateral, benign corneal degeneration due to lipid deposition, part of the aging process
- may be associated with hypercholesterolemia if age <40 yr, check lipid profile
- no associated visual symptoms, no complications, no treatment necessary

Kayser-Fleischer Ring

- brown-yellow-green pigmented ring in peripheral cornea, starting inferiorly
- due to deposition of copper pigment in Descemet's membrane
- associated with Wilson's disease
- no associated symptoms or complications of ring
- treat underlying disease

The Uveal Tract

- uveal tract (from anterior to posterior) = iris, ciliary body, choroid
- vascularized, pigmented middle layer of the eye, between the sclera and the retina

Uveitis

- uveal inflammation which may involve one, or all three parts of the tract
- idiopathic or associated with autoimmune, infectious, granulomatous, malignant causes
- should be managed by an optometrist or ophthalmologist
- anatomically classified as anterior uveitis, intermediate uveitis, posterior uveitis, or panuveitis based on primary site of inflammation

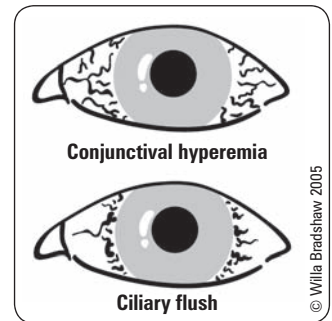



Figure 16. Conjunctival hyperemia vs. ciliary flush

Table 6. Anatomic Classification of Uveitis

	Anterior Uveitis (Iritis)	Intermediate Uveitis	Posterior Uveitis
Location	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inflammation of iris, usually accompanied by cyclitis (inflammation of ciliary body), both = iridocyclitis • Usually unilateral 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The vitreous is the major site of the inflammation 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inflammation of the choroid and/or retina
Etiology	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Usually idiopathic • Connective tissue diseases (see Rheumatology, RH8) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ HLA-B27: reactive arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, psoriatic arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease ▪ Non-HLA-B27: juvenile idiopathic arthritis • Infectious: syphilis, Lyme disease, toxoplasmosis, TB, HSV, herpes zoster • Other: sarcoidosis, trauma, large abrasion, post ocular surgery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mostly idiopathic, secondary causes include sarcoidosis, Lyme disease, and multiple sclerosis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bacterial: syphilis, tuberculosis • Viral: herpes simplex virus, CMV in AIDS • Fungal: histoplasmosis, candidiasis • Parasitic: toxoplasmosis (most common cause), toxocara • Immunosuppression may predispose to any of the above infections • Autoimmune: Behçet's disease (triad of oral ulcers, genital ulcers, and posterior uveitis) • Malignancies (masquerade syndrome): metastatic lesions, malignant melanoma
Clinical Features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Photophobia (due to reactive spasm of inflamed iris muscle), ocular pain, tenderness of the globe, brow ache (ciliary muscle spasm), decreased VA (in severe cases with hypopyon), lacrimation • Ciliary flush (perilimbal conjunctival injection), miosis (spasm of sphincter muscle) • Anterior chamber "cells" (WBC in anterior chamber due to anterior segment inflammation) and "flare" (protein precipitates in anterior chamber secondary to inflammation), hypopyon (collection of neutrophilic exudates inferiorly in the anterior chamber) • Occasionally keratic precipitates (clumps of cells on corneal endothelium) • Iritis typically reduces IOP because ciliary body inflammation causes decreased aqueous production; however, severe iritis, or iritis from herpes simplex and zoster may cause an inflammatory glaucoma (trabeculitis) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insidious onset of blurred vision, accompanied by vitreous floaters • Initial symptoms are usually unilateral but inflammatory changes are usually bilateral and asymmetric • Associated with anterior uveitis, most severe cases of secondary intermediate uveitis • Vitreous cells, condensations, and snowballs (vitreous aggregates of inflammatory cells) • Posterior segment 'snowbank' = gray-white fibrovascular plaque at the pars plana 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Painless as choroid has no sensory innervation • Often no conjunctival or scleral injection present • Decreased VA • Floaters (debris and inflammatory cells) • Vitreous cells and opacities • Hypopyon formation
Complications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inflammatory glaucoma • Posterior synechiae <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Adhesions of posterior iris to anterior lens capsule ▪ Indicated by an irregularly shaped pupil ▪ If occurs 360°, entraps aqueous in posterior chamber, iris bows forward "iris bombé" → angle closure glaucoma • Peripheral anterior synechiae (rare): adhesions of iris to cornea → secondary angle closure glaucoma • Cataracts • Band keratopathy (with chronic iritis) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Superficial corneal calcification keratopathy • Macular edema with chronic iritis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cystoid macular edema (30% of cases), cataract, and glaucoma 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Macular edema • Vitritis • Neovascularization • Visual field loss/scotoma
Treatment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mydriatics: dilate pupil to prevent formation of posterior synechiae and to decrease pain from ciliary spasm • Steroids: topical, sub-tenon, or systemic • Systemic analgesia • Extensive medical workup may be indicated to rule out secondary causes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Systemic or sub-tenon/intravitreal steroids and immunosuppressive agents • Vitrectomy, cryotherapy, or laser photocoagulation to the "snowbank" 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Steroids: sub-tenon, intravitreal, or systemic if indicated (e.g. threat of vision loss)

Lens

- consists of an outer capsule surrounding a soft cortex and a firm inner nucleus

Cataracts

- any opacity of the lens, regardless of etiology
- most common cause of reversible blindness worldwide
- types: nuclear sclerosis, cortical, posterior subcapsular

Etiology

- acquired
 - age-related (over 90% of all cataracts)
 - cataract associated with systemic disease (may have juvenile onset)
 - ♦ DM
 - ♦ metabolic disorders (e.g. Wilson's disease, galactosemia, homocystinuria)
 - ♦ hypocalcemia
 - traumatic (may be rosette shaped)
 - intraocular inflammation (e.g. uveitis)
 - toxic (steroids, phenothiazines)
 - radiation
- congenital
 - high myopia
 - present with altered red reflex or leukocoria
 - treat promptly to prevent amblyopia

Clinical Features

- gradual, painless, progressive decrease in VA
- glare, dimness, halos around lights at night, monocular diplopia
- "second sight" phenomenon: patient is more myopic than previously noted, due to increased refractive power of the lens (in nuclear sclerosis only)
 - patient may read without previously needed reading glasses
- diagnose by slit-lamp exam, and by noting changes in red reflex using ophthalmoscope
- may impair view of retina during fundoscopy

Treatment

- medical: attempt correction of refractive error, no strong evidence suggesting benefit of vitamin supplementation
- surgical: definitive treatment
 - indications for surgery
 - ♦ to improve visual function in patients whose visual loss leads to functional impairment (no need to wait for "ripe" cataract, may postpone surgery as long as one eye has sufficient vision)
 - ♦ to aid management of other ocular disease (e.g. cataract that prevents adequate retinal exam or laser treatment of DR)
 - ♦ congenital or traumatic cataracts
 - phacoemulsification (phaco = lens)
 - ♦ most commonly used surgical technique (see *Surgical Ophthalmology*, OP44)
 - post-operative complications
 - ♦ RD, endophthalmitis, dislocated IOL, macular edema, glaucoma
 - ♦ with new foldable IOLs that have truncated edges, <10% of patients get posterior capsular opacification, which should be treated with YAG laser

Prognosis

- excellent if not complicated by other ocular disease

Dislocated Lens (Ectopia Lentis)

Etiology

- associated with Marfan's Syndrome, Ehlers-Danlos type VI, homocystinuria, syphilis, lens coloboma (congenital cleft due to failure of ocular adnexa to complete growth)
- traumatic

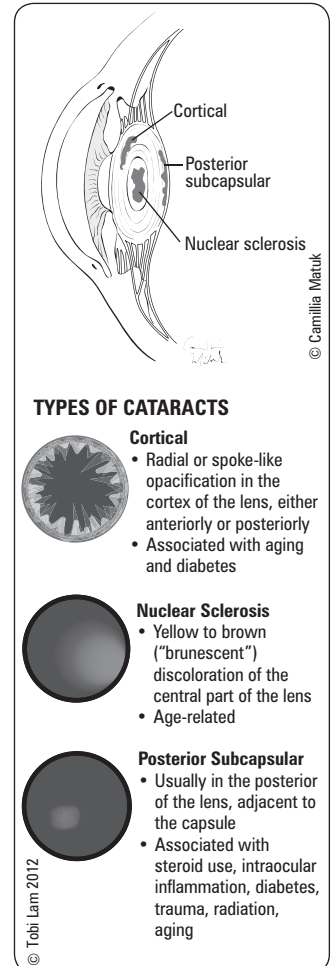


Figure 17. Types of cataracts



Clinical Features

- decreased VA
- may get unilateral diplopia
- iridodonesis (quivering of iris with movement)
- direct ophthalmoscopy may elicit abnormal red reflex

Complications

- cataract, glaucoma, uveitis

Treatment

- surgical correction \pm lens replacement

Vitreous

- clear gel (99% water plus collagen fibrils, glycosaminoglycans, and hyaluronic acid) that fills the posterior segment of eye
- normally adherent to optic disc, pars plana, and along major retinal blood vessels

Posterior Vitreous Detachment

Etiology

- central vitreous commonly shrinks and liquefies with age (syneresis)
- during syneresis, molecules that hold water condense causing vitreous floaters
- liquid vitreous moves between posterior vitreous gel and retina
- vitreous is peeled away and separates from the internal limiting membrane of the neurosensory retina posterior to the vitreous base

Clinical Features

- floaters, flashes of light

Complications

- traction at areas of abnormal vitreoretinal adhesions may cause retinal tears/detachment
- retinal tears/detachment may cause vitreous hemorrhage if bridging retinal blood vessel is torn
- complications more common in high myopes and following ocular trauma (blunt or perforating)

Treatment

- acute onset of PVD requires a dilated fundus exam to rule out retinal tears/detachment
- no specific treatment available for floaters/flashes of light



Floaters: "bugs", "cobwebs", or "spots" of vitreous condensation that change with eye position



Weiss Ring: formed by glial tissue around the optic disc that remains attached to the detached posterior vitreous



Although most floaters are benign, new or markedly increased floaters or flashes of light require a dilated fundus exam to rule out retinal tears/detachment

Vitreous Hemorrhage

- bleeding into the vitreous cavity

Etiology

- PDR
- retinal tear/detachment
- PVD
- retinal vein occlusion
- trauma

Clinical Features

- sudden loss of VA
- may be preceded by many floaters and/or flashes of light
- ophthalmoscopy: no red reflex if large hemorrhage, retina not visible due to blood in vitreous

Treatment

- ultrasound (B-scan) to rule out RD
- expectant: in non-urgent cases (e.g. no DRt), blood usually resorbs in 3-6 mo
- surgical: vitrectomy \pm RD repair \pm retinal endolaser to possible bleeding sites/vessels



Any time a vitreous or retinal hemorrhage is seen in a child, must rule out child abuse

Endophthalmitis and Vitritis

- intraocular infection: acute, subacute, or chronic

Etiology

- most commonly a post-operative complication; risk following cataract surgery is <0.1%
- also due to penetrating injury to eye (risk is 3-7%), endogenous spread, and intravitreal injections
- etiology usually bacterial, may be fungal

Clinical Features

- painful, red eye, photophobia, discharge
- severely reduced VA, lid edema, proptosis, corneal edema, anterior chamber cells/flare, hypopyon, reduced red reflex
- may have signs of a ruptured globe (severe subconjunctival hemorrhage, hyphema, decreased IOP, etc.)

Treatment (see *Ocular Trauma*, OP42)

- **OCULAR EMERGENCY:** presenting vision best indicates prognosis
- LP or worse: admission, immediate vitrectomy, and intravitreal antibiotics to prevent loss of vision
- HM or better: vitreous tap for culture and intravitreal antibiotics
- topical fortified antibiotics



Remember to inquire about tetanus status in post-traumatic endophthalmitis

Retina

- composed of two parts (Figure 2)
 - neurosensory retina: comprises 9 of the 10 retinal layers, including the photoreceptors and the ganglion cell layer
 - retinal pigmented epithelium (RPE) layer: external to neurosensory retina
- macula: rich in cones (for color vision); most sensitive area of retina; looks darker due to increase luteal pigment, lack of retinal vessels, and thinning of retina in this region; 15° temporal and slightly below the optic disc
- fovea: center of macula; responsible for acute, fine vision
- optic disc: slightly oval vertically, pinkish color with centrally depressed yellow cup (normal C:D is <0.5), retinal artery and vein pass through cup
- ora serrata: irregularly-shaped, anterior margin of the retina (can only be visualized with indirect ophthalmoscopy of the far peripheral retina, or through a Goldmann 3 mirror lens)

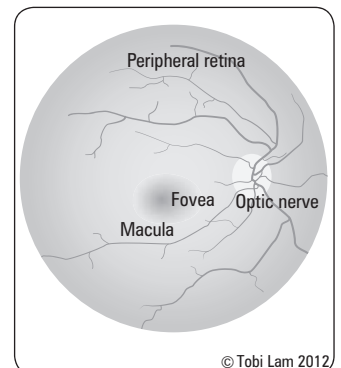


Figure 18. Retina

Central Retinal Artery Occlusion

Etiology

- emboli from carotid arteries or heart (e.g. arrhythmia, endocarditis, valvular disease)
- thrombus
- temporal arteritis

Clinical Features

- sudden, painless (except in GCA), severe monocular loss of vision
- RAPD
- patient may have experienced transient episodes in the past (amaurosis fugax)
- fundoscopy
 - "cherry-red spot"
 - retinal pallor
 - narrowed arterioles, boxcarring (segmentation of blood in arteries)
 - cotton wool spots (retinal infarcts)
 - cholesterol emboli (Hollenhorst plaques) – usually located at arteriole bifurcations
 - after ~6 wk cherry-red spot recedes and optic disc pallor becomes evident

Treatment

- **OCULAR EMERGENCY:** attempt to restore blood flow within 2 h
- the sooner the treatment = better prognosis (irreversible retinal damage if >90 min of complete CRAO)
 - massage the globe (compress eye with heel of hand for 10 s, release for 10 s, repeat for 5 min) to dislodge embolus
 - decrease IOP
 - ♦ topical β -blockers
 - ♦ inhaled oxygen-carbon dioxide mixture
 - ♦ IV acetazolamide
 - ♦ IV mannitol (draws fluid from eye)
 - ♦ drain aqueous fluid – anterior chamber paracentesis (carries risk of endophthalmitis)
 - treat underlying cause to prevent CRAO in other eye



Hallmark of CRAO

"Cherry-red spot" located at center of macula (visualization of unaffected highly vascular choroid through the thin fovea)



Treatment for a central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO) must be initiated within 2 h of symptom onset for any hope of restoring vision

Branch Retinal Artery Occlusion

- only part of the retina becomes ischemic resulting in a visual field loss
- more likely to be of embolic etiology than CRAO; need to search for source
- management: ocular massage to dislodge embolus if VA is affected

Central/Branch Retinal Vein Occlusion

- second most frequent “vascular” retinal disorder after DR
- usually a manifestation of a systemic disease (e.g. HTN, DM)
- thrombus occurs within the lumen of the blood vessel

Predisposing Factors

- arteriosclerotic vascular disease
- HTN
- DM
- glaucoma
- hyperviscosity (e.g. polycythemia rubra vera, sickle-cell disease, lymphoma, leukemia)
- drugs (e.g. oral contraceptive pill, diuretics)

Clinical Features

- painless, monocular, gradual or sudden visual loss
- \pm RAPD
- fundoscopy
 - “blood and thunder” appearance
 - diffuse retinal hemorrhages, cotton wool spots, venous engorgement, swollen optic disc, macular edema
- two fairly distinct groups
 - venous stasis/non-ischemic retinopathy
 - ♦ no RAPD, VA approximately 20/80
 - ♦ mild hemorrhage, few cotton wool spots
 - ♦ resolves spontaneously over weeks to months
 - ♦ may regain normal vision if macula intact
 - hemorrhagic/ischemic retinopathy
 - ♦ usually older patient with deficient arterial supply
 - ♦ RAPD, VA approximately 20/200, reduced peripheral vision
 - ♦ more hemorrhages, cotton wool spots, congestion
 - ♦ poor visual prognosis

Complications

- degeneration of RPE
- neovascularization of retina and iris (secondary rubeosis), leading to secondary glaucoma
- vitreous hemorrhage
- macular edema

Treatment

- no treatment available to restore vision in CRVO/BRVO
- treat underlying cause/contributing factor
- fluorescein angiography to determine extent of retinal non-perfusion (risk of neovascularization)
- retinal laser photocoagulation, or intravitreal anti-VEGF injection to reduce retinal or iris neovascularization and prevent neovascular glaucoma
- macular grid laser photocoagulation for the treatment of macular edema in BRVO, not CRVO, intravitreal or slow-release biodegradable corticosteroid, or anti-VEGF injection is effective in the treatment of macular edema in both CRVO and BRVO

Retinal Detachment

- cleavage in the plane between the neurosensory retina and the RPE
- three types
 - rhegmatogenous (most common)
 - ♦ caused by a tear or hole in the neurosensory retina, allowing fluid from the vitreous to pass into the subretinal space
 - ♦ tears may be caused by PVD, degenerative retinal changes, trauma, or iatrogenically
 - ♦ incidence increases with advancing age, in high myopes, and after ocular surgery/trauma
 - tractional
 - ♦ caused by traction (due to vitreal, epiretinal, or subretinal membrane) pulling the neurosensory retina away from the underlying RPE
 - ♦ found in conditions such as DR, CRVO, sickle cell disease, ROP, and ocular trauma
 - exudative
 - ♦ caused by damage to the RPE resulting in fluid accumulation in the subretinal space
 - ♦ main causes are intraocular tumors, posterior uveitis, central serous retinopathy



Efficacy and Safety of Widely Used Treatments for Macular Edema Secondary to Retinal Vein Occlusion: A Systematic Review

BMC Ophthalmol 2014;14:7

Purpose: To assess the efficacy of widely used treatments for macular oedema (MO) secondary to retinal vein occlusion (RVO). MO secondary to RVO can cause vision loss due to blockage of the central retinal vein (CRVO) or a branch retinal vein (BRVO).
Outcomes: Mean change in best corrected visual acuity (BCVA) from baseline and/or number of patients gaining at least 10 letters from baseline to 6 months or equivalent time point.

Results: 14 unique RCTs identified. Ranibizumab 0.5 mg produced greater improvements in BCVA at 6 mo compared to sham in BRVO (mean difference 11 letters; 95% CI 7.83-14.17) and CRVO (mean difference 14 letters; 95% CI 10.51-17.69). Improvements in BCVA were also observed with dexamethasone intravitreal implant (IVI) 0.7 mg compared with sham in patients with BRVO or CRVO (mean difference 2.5 letters; 95% CI 0.7-4.3). The difference was significant with BRVO alone, but not CRVO alone. At 36 mo in a large prospective RCT, a greater proportion of patients with BRVO gained >15 letters with laser therapy vs. no treatment (OR 3.16; 95% CI 1.25-8.00), whereas no difference was observed in a 9 mo end point smaller study. Three studies showed no benefit for laser therapy in CRVO.

Conclusions: Both ranibizumab and dexamethasone IVI show significant improvements over previously accepted standard of care (laser therapy) for the treatment of BRVO and CRVO.



The “blood and thunder” appearance on fundoscopy is very characteristic of a CRVO



There is an 8-10% risk of developing CRVO or BRVO in other eye



GENEVA Phase 3 Trials in BRVO and CRVO

Ophthalmology 2010;117:1134-1146

Randomized sham-controlled trial of dexamethasone intravitreal implant in patients with macular edema due to retinal vein occlusion.

Dexamethasone intravitreal implant reduces the risk of vision loss and improves the speed and incidence of visual improvement in eyes with macular edema 2° to BRVO and CRVO.



Superotemporal retina is the most common site for horseshoe tears

Clinical Features

- sudden onset
- flashes of light
 - due to mechanical stimulation of the retinal photoreceptors
- floaters
 - hazy spots in the line of vision which move with eye position, due to drops of blood from torn vessels bleeding into the vitreous
- curtain of blackness/peripheral field loss
 - darkness in one field of vision when the retina detaches in that area
- loss of central vision (if macula “off”)
- decreased IOP (usually 4-5 mmHg lower than the other, normal eye)
- ophthalmoscopy: detached retina is gray-white with surface blood vessels, loss of red reflex
- \pm RAPD

Treatment

- prophylactic: symptomatic tear (flashes or floaters) can be sealed off with laser/cryotherapy, with the goal of preventing progression to detachment
- therapeutic
 - rhegmatogenous
 - ♦ scleral buckle procedure (see *Surgical Ophthalmology*, OP44)
 - ♦ pneumatic retinopexy (see *Surgical Ophthalmology*, OP44)
 - ♦ both treatments above are used in combination with localization of retinal tears/holes and subsequent treatment with cryotherapy or laser to create adhesions between the RPE and the neurosensory retina
 - ♦ vitrectomy plus injection of gas or silicone oil in cases of recurrent detachment
 - tractional
 - ♦ vitrectomy \pm membrane removal/scleral buckling/injection of intraocular gas or silicone oil as necessary
 - exudative
 - ♦ treat underlying cause

Complications

- loss of vision, vitreous hemorrhage, recurrent RD
- a RD is an emergency, especially if the macula is still attached (macula “on”)
- prognosis for visual recovery varies inversely with the amount of time the retina is detached and whether the macula is attached or not

Retinitis Pigmentosa

- worldwide incidence between 1/3,500 and 1/7,000 people
- many forms of inheritance, most commonly autosomal recessive (60%)
- hereditary degenerative disease of the retina manifested by rod > cone photoreceptor degeneration and retinal atrophy

Clinical Features

- night blindness, decreased peripheral vision (“tunnel vision”), decreased central vision (macular changes), glare (from cataract)

Investigations

- fundoscopy: areas of “bone-spicule” pigment clumping in mid-periphery of retina, narrowed retinal arterioles, pale optic disc
- electrophysiological tests: electroretinography (ERG) and electrooculography (EOG) assist in diagnosis

Treatment

- no treatments available to reverse the condition; cataract extraction improves visual function; vitamin A and vitamin E supplementation can reduce progression of disease in some patients

Leber’s Congenital Amaurosis

- worldwide incidence 1/80,000
- inherited degeneration, autosomal recessive
- symptoms: resting nystagmus, sluggish or no pupillary response, severe vision loss/blindness
- diagnosis: 11 types, confirmed by genetic testing
- management: no treatments available to reverse the conditions for most forms; one form (LCA2) shown to be successfully treatable by gene replacement using adeno-associated virus



Vitamin A and Fish Oils for Retinitis Pigmentosa

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;12:CD008428

Purpose: To determine the efficacy and safety of vitamin A and fish oils (docosahexaenoic acid [DHA]) in preventing the progression of RP.

Selection Criteria: RCTs evaluating the effectiveness of vitamin, fish oils, or both as a treatment for RP.

Results: 3 RCTs with 866 participants. No toxicity or adverse events reported. No trial reported a statistically significant benefit of vitamin supplementation on the progression of visual field loss or visual acuity loss. 2 of 3 trials reported a statistically significant difference in ERG amplitudes among some subgroups, but these findings have not been replicated or substantiated in other trials.

Conclusions: There is no clear evidence for benefit of treatment with vitamin A and/or DHA for RP when measuring mean change in visual fields and ERG amplitudes at one year and the mean change in visual acuity at 5 yr follow-up.



Triad of Retinitis Pigmentosa

APO

Arteriolar narrowing
Perivascular bony-spicule pigmentation
Optic disc pallor



Retinitis Pigmentosa Inherited Forms

- Autosomal recessive: most common
- Autosomal dominant: best prognosis
- X-linked: worst prognosis



Age-Dependent Effects of Gene Therapy for Leber’s Congenital Amaurosis: A Phase 1 Dose-Escalation Trial

Lancet 2009;374:1597-1605

Objective: To evaluate the effect of gene therapy on retinal and visual function among patients with Leber’s congenital amaurosis.

Methods: Phase 1 trial. Patients aged 8-44 (n=12) with RPE65-associated Leber’s congenital amaurosis received a single subretinal injection of adeno-associated virus (AAV) containing the gene encoding the protein needed for isomerohydrolase activity of the RPE (RPE65) (AAV2-hRPE65v2) in the worst eye at low, medium, or high dose. Patients were assessed before and after injections. Outcomes were subjective and objective measures of vision.

Results: AAV2-hRPE65v2 was tolerated. No serious adverse events were recorded. Visual improvement was noted for all patients. All patients reported improved vision in dimly lit environments. Visual fields improved in all patients. Pupillary light responses were increased by at least 2 log unit for all patients. Greatest visual improvement was noted in children.

Conclusion: AAV2-hRPE65v2 is safe and improves vision among patients with Leber’s congenital amaurosis.

Age-Related Macular Degeneration

- leading cause of irreversible blindness in the western world, associated with increasing age, usually bilateral
- 10% of people >65 yr old have some degree of AMD
- F>M
- degenerative changes are concentrated at the macula, thus only central vision is lost; peripheral vision (important for navigation) is maintained so patients can usually maintain an independent lifestyle

Classification

- **Non-Exudative/“Dry” (Non-Neovascular) AMD**
 - most common type of AMD (90% of cases)
 - slowly progressive loss of visual function
 - drusen: yellow-white deposits between the RPE and Bruch's membrane (area separating inner choroidal vessels from RPE)
 - RPE atrophy: coalescence of depigmented RPE, clumps of focal hyperpigmentation, or hypopigmentation
 - may progress to neovascular AMD
- **Exudative/“Wet” (Neovascular) AMD**
 - 10% of AMD, but 80% of AMD that results in severe visual loss
 - choroidal neovascularization: drusen predisposes to breaks in Bruch's membrane causing subsequent growth and proliferation of choroidal capillaries
 - may lead to serous detachment of overlying RPE and retina, hemorrhage and lipid precipitates into subretinal space
 - can also lead to an elevated subretinal mass due to fibrous metaplasia of hemorrhagic RD leads to disciform scarring and severe central visual loss

Risk Factors

- female
- increased age
- family history
- smoking
- Caucasian race
- blue irides

Clinical Features

- variable degree of progressive central visual loss
- metamorphopsia (distorted vision characterized by straight parallel lines appearing convergent or wavy) due to macular edema

Investigations

- Amsler grid: held at normal reading distance with glasses on, assesses macular function
- fluorescein angiography: assess the type and location of the choroidal neovascularization – pathologic new vessels leak dye

Treatment

- non-neovascular “dry” AMD
 - monitor, Amsler grid allows patients to check for metamorphopsia
 - low vision aids (e.g. magnifiers, closed-circuit television)
 - anti-oxidants, green leafy vegetables
 - sunglasses/visors
 - see Age-related Eye Disease Study (AREDS)
- neovascular “wet” AMD
 - see *Common Medications*, OP44
 - laser photocoagulation for neovascularization
 - 50% of choroidal neovascularization cannot be treated initially
 - no definitive treatment for disciform scarring
 - PDT with verteporfin (Visudyne®)
 - ♦ IV injection of verteporfin followed by low intensity laser to area of choroidal neovascularization
 - intravitreal injection of anti-VEGF
 - ♦ pegaptanib (Macugen®), ranibizumab (Lucentis®), bevacizumab (Avastin®) (see *VEGF Inhibitors*, OP45)



Age-Related Eye Disease Study (AREDS)

The Age-Related Eye Disease Research Group: A randomized, placebo-controlled, clinical trial of high-dose supplementation with vitamins C and E, β -carotene, and zinc for AMD and vision loss. AREDS Report No. 8. *Arch Ophthalmol* 2001;119:1417-1436

AREDS studied the effect of high-dose combination of vitamin C, vitamin E, β -carotene, and zinc in patients with and without AMD. Those who are already affected by AMD showed 19% decrease in risk of further visual loss, whereas high dose supplementation showed no benefit in patients with early or no AMD.



Age-Related Eye Disease Study 2 (AREDS2)

Lutein + zeaxanthin and omega-3 fatty acids for AMD: the Age-Related Eye Disease Study 2 (AREDS2) randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2013 May 15;309(19):2005-2015

Addition of lutein+zeaxanthin, DHA+EPA, or both to the AREDS formulation in primary analyses didn't reduce risk of progression to advanced AMD. However, because of the potential increased incidence of lung cancer in former smokers, lutein+zeaxanthin could be an appropriate carotenoid substitute in the AREDS formulation.



Wet AMD Lesions on Fluorescein Angiography

Classic: well-defined leakage
Occult: mottled or ill-defined leakage



Drusen vs. Exudate

Drusen: hyaline material secreted by RPE seen frequently in AMD typically in peri-macular region
Hard/Soft Exudates: lipid deposits in the retina associated with DR and HTN



Ranibizumab and Bevacizumab for Neovascular Age-Related Macular Degeneration

CATT Research Group. *NEJM* 2011;364:1897-1908

Study: A multicenter, single-blind, randomized control trial comparing the effects of ranibizumab and bevacizumab on visual acuity in patients with AMD.

Patients: 1,208 patients aged 50 or more with previously untreated AMD and visual acuity between 20/25 and 20/320.

Intervention: Intravitreal injections of ranibizumab vs. intravitreal injections of bevacizumab.

Results: The monthly use of either bevacizumab or ranibizumab results in the same visual acuity outcome. This finding holds true for the mean visual acuity and the proportion of patients who gain 15 letters, lose 15 letters, or remain stable. Equivalent visual-acuity outcomes were observed with both the monthly and the as-needed regimens of ranibizumab.

Conclusion: This study supports the use of either bevacizumab or ranibizumab for the treatment of neovascular AMD. The continued global use of intravitreal bevacizumab is an equally effective, low-cost alternative to ranibizumab.

Glaucoma



Definition

- progressive optic neuropathy involving characteristic structural changes to optic nerve head with associated visual field changes
- commonly associated with high IOP, but not required for diagnosis

Background

- aqueous is produced by the ciliary body and flows from the posterior chamber to the anterior chamber through the pupil, and drains into the episcleral veins via the trabecular meshwork and the Canal of Schlemm
- an isolated increase in IOP is termed OHT (or glaucoma suspect) and these patients should be followed for increased risk of developing glaucoma (10% if IOP 20-30 mmHg; 40% if IOP 30-40 mmHg; and most if IOP >40 mmHg)
- pressures >21 mmHg are more likely to be associated with glaucoma; however, up to 50% of patients with glaucoma do not have IOP >21 mmHg
- loss of peripheral vision most commonly precedes central loss
- sequence of events: gradual pressure rise → increased C:D ratio → visual field loss

Investigations

- medical and family history
- VA testing
- slit-lamp exam to assess anterior chamber depth
- ophthalmoscopy to assess the disc features
- tonometry by applanation or indentation to measure IOP
- visual field testing
- pachymetry to measure corneal thickness
- future follow-up includes optic disc examination, IOP measurement, and visual field testing to monitor course of disease

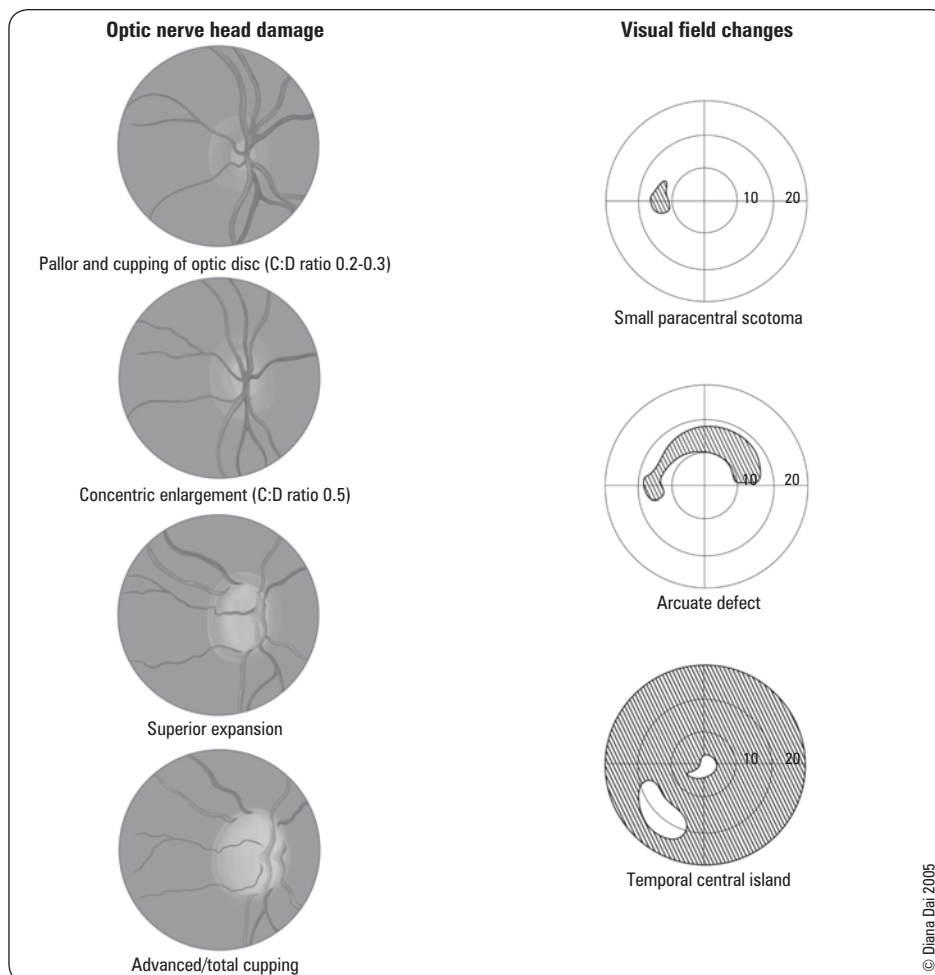


Figure 19. Glaucomatous damage



Ten Year Follow-Up of Age-Related Macular Degeneration in the Age-Related Eye Disease Study: AREDS Report No. 36

JAMA Ophthalmol 2014 Mar;132(3):272-7

Study: Randomized clinical trial.

Objective: To describe 10 year progression rates to intermediate or advanced AMD.

Patients: Age-related eye disease study (AREDS) participants were observed for an additional 5 years after RCT completion. Participants aged 55-80 yr with no AMD or AMD of varying severity (n = 4,757) were followed up in the AREDS trial for a median duration of 6.5 yr. When the trial ended, 3,549 of the 4,203 surviving participants were followed for 5 additional yr.

Intervention: Treatment with antioxidant vitamins and minerals.

Main Outcome: Development of varying stages of AMD and changes in visual acuity.

Results: The risk of progression to advanced AMD increased with increasing age (p=0.01) and severity of drusen. Women (p=0.005) and current smokers (p<0.001) were at increased risk of neovascular AMD. In the oldest participants with the most severe AMD status at baseline, the risks of developing neovascular AMD and central geographic atrophy by 10 yr were 48.1% and 26.0%, respectively. Similarly, rates of progression to large drusen increased with increasing severity of drusen at baseline, with 70.9% of participants with bilateral medium drusen progressing to large drusen and 13.8% to advanced AMD in 10 yr. Median visual acuity at 10 yr in eyes that had large drusen at baseline but never developed advanced AMD was 20/25; eyes that developed advanced AMD had a median visual acuity of 20/200.

Conclusion: The natural history of AMD demonstrates relentless loss of vision in persons who developed advanced AMD.

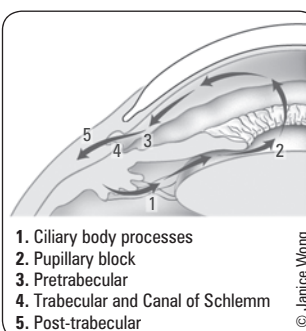


Figure 20. Aqueous flow and sites of potential resistance



Average IOP = 15 ± 3 mmHg

Normal C:D ≤ 0.4

Suspect glaucoma if C:D ratio >0.6, C:D ratio between eyes >0.2, or cup approaches disc margin

Primary Open-Angle Glaucoma

- most common form, >95% of all glaucoma cases
- due to obstruction of aqueous drainage within the trabecular meshwork and its drainage into the Canal of Schlemm
- insidious and asymptomatic, screening is critical for early detection

Major Risk Factors

- elevated IOP (>21 mmHg)
- age: prevalence at 40 yr is 1-2% and at 80 yr is 10%
- ethnicity: African descent
- familial (2-3x increased risk); polygenic

Minor Risk Factors

- myopia
- HTN
- DM
- hyperthyroidism (Graves' disease)
- chronic topical ophthalmic steroid use in steroid responders – yearly eye exams recommended if >4 wk of steroid use
- previous ocular trauma
- anemia/hemodynamic crisis (ask about blood transfusions in past)

Clinical Features

- asymptomatic initially
- insidious, painless, gradual rise in IOP due to restriction of aqueous outflow
- bilateral, but usually asymmetric
- earliest signs are optic disc changes
 - increased C:D ratio (vertical C:D >0.6)
 - significant C:D asymmetry between eyes (>0.2 difference)
 - thinning, notching of the neuroretinal rim
 - flame shaped disc hemorrhage
 - 360° of peripapillary atrophy
 - nerve fiber layer defect
 - large vessels become nasally displaced
- visual field loss
 - slow, progressive, irreversible loss of peripheral vision
 - paracentral defects, arcuate scotoma, and nasal step are characteristics (see Figure 19)
 - late loss of central vision if untreated

Treatment

- medical treatment: decrease IOP by increasing the drainage and/or decreasing the production of aqueous (see *Glaucoma Medications*, Table 12, OP45)
 - increase aqueous outflow
 - ♦ topical cholinergics
 - ♦ topical prostaglandin analogues
 - ♦ topical α -adrenergics
 - decrease aqueous production
 - ♦ topical β -blockers
 - ♦ topical and oral carbonic anhydrase inhibitor
 - ♦ topical α -adrenergics
- laser trabeculoplasty, cyclophotocoagulation in order to achieve selective destruction of ciliary body (for refractory cases)
- trabeculectomy (see *Surgical Ophthalmology*, OP44)
- serial optic nerve head examinations, IOP measurements, and visual field testing to monitor disease course



Open- and Closed-Angle Glaucoma

POAG

- Common (95%)
- Chronic course
- Painless eye without redness
- Moderately \uparrow IOP
- Normal cornea and pupil
- No N/V
- No halos around light

PACG

- Rare (5%)
- Acute onset
- Painful red eye
- Extremely \uparrow IOP
- Hazy cornea
- Mid-dilated pupil unreactive to light
- \pm N/V, abdominal pain
- Halos around light



Risk Factors for POAG

A FIAT

Age
Family history
IOP
African descent
Thin cornea



The Ocular HTN Treatment Study

Arch Ophthalmol-Chic 2002;120:701-713

Study: Randomized clinical trial.

Patients: 1,636 patients with no evidence of glaucomatous damage, aged 40–80 yr, and with IOP between 24–32 mmHg in one eye and between 21–32 mmHg in the other eye.

Intervention: Randomized to observation or treatment with commercially available topical ocular hypotensive medication.

Main Outcome: Development of visual field abnormality or optic disc deterioration attributed to POAG.

Results: Mean reduction in IOP in the medication group was $22.5\% \pm 9.9\%$ vs. $4.0\% \pm 11.6\%$ in the observation group. At 5 yr the probability of developing POAG was 4.4% in the medication group and 9.5% in the observation group ($p < 0.0001$).

Conclusions: Topical ocular hypotensive medication was effective in delaying or preventing the onset of POAG in individuals with elevated IOP.

Normal Tension Glaucoma

- POAG with IOP in normal range
- often found in women >60 but may occur earlier
- damage to optic nerve may be due to vascular insufficiency

Treatment

- treat reversible causes

Secondary Open Angle Glaucoma

- increased IOP secondary to ocular/systemic disorders that obstruct the trabecular meshwork
 - steroid-induced glaucoma
 - traumatic glaucoma
 - pigmentary dispersion syndrome
 - pseudoexfoliation syndrome

Primary Angle-Closure Glaucoma

- 5% of all glaucoma cases
- peripheral iris bows forward in an already susceptible eye with a shallow anterior chamber obstructing aqueous access to the trabecular meshwork
- sudden forward shift of the lens-iris diaphragm causes pupillary block, and results in inability of the aqueous to flow from the posterior chamber to the anterior chamber resulting in a sudden rise in IOP

Risk Factors

- hyperopia: small eye, big lens – large lens crowds the angle
- age >70 yr
- female
- family history
- more common in people of Asian and Inuit descent
- mature cataracts
- shallow anterior chamber
- pupil dilation (topical and systemic anticholinergics, stress, darkness)

Clinical Features

- red, painful eye = **RED FLAG**
- unilateral, but other eye increased risk
- decreased visual acuity, vision acutely blurred from corneal edema
- halos around lights
- nausea and vomiting, abdominal pain
- fixed, mid-dilated pupil
- corneal edema with conjunctival injection
- marked increase in IOP; may be noticeable even to palpation (>40 mmHg)
- shallow anterior chamber ± cells in anterior chamber

Complications

- irreversible loss of vision within hours to days if untreated
- permanent peripheral anterior synechiae, resulting in permanent angle closure

Treatment

- OCULAR EMERGENCY:** refer to ophthalmologist for acute angle closure glaucoma
 - laser iridotomy
 - aqueous suppressants and hyperosmotic agents
- medical treatment (see *Glaucoma Medications, Table 12, OP45*)
 - miotic drops (pilocarpine) to reverse pupillary block
 - decrease IOP
 - topical β -blockers
 - topical adrenergics
 - topical cholinergics
 - pilocarpine 1-4% q15min, up to q5min
 - systemic carbonic anhydrase inhibitors
 - IV acetazolamide 250-500 mg
 - systemic hyperosmotic agents
 - oral glycerine 1 g/kg
 - IV mannitol 1 g/kg

Secondary Angle-Closure Glaucoma

Uveitis

- inflamed iris adheres to lens (posterior synechiae)

Neovascular Glaucoma

- abnormal blood vessels develop on surface of iris (rubeosis iridis), in the angle, and within the trabecular meshwork
- due to retinal ischemia associated with PDR or CRVO
- treatment with laser therapy to retina reduces neovascular stimulus to iris vessels



Rule of Fours

1/4 of general population using topical steroid for 4 wk, 4 x/d will develop an increase in IOP



Collaborative Normal Tension Glaucoma Study

Curr Opin Ophthalmol 2003;14:86-90

Treatment aimed at lowering IOP by 30% in patients with normal tension glaucoma tends to reduce the rate of visual field loss. Due to variability in disease progression and a significant group that shows no visual field loss at 5 yr despite no treatment, further studies are needed to delineate which subgroups may benefit most from treatment.

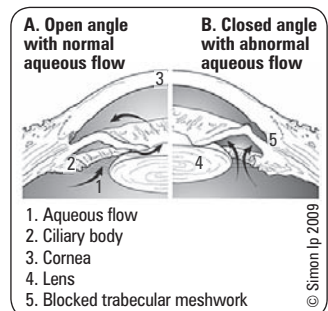


Figure 21. Normal open angle vs. angle-closure glaucoma



Angle Closure Glaucoma

BACH

Tx with miotics and β -blockers

Adrenergics

Cholinergics

Hyperosmotic agents



Medical Interventions for Primary Open-Angle Glaucoma and Ocular HTN

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2007;4:CD003167

Study: Cochrane systematic review of 26 trials and meta-analysis of 10 trials investigating the effectiveness of topical pharmacological therapies for POAG or OHT.

Patients: 4,979 participants randomized in 26 trials. Patients had OHT with IOP >21 mmHg or open angle glaucoma.

Intervention: Topical eye medications, including β -blockers, dorzolamide, brimonidine, pilocarpine, and epinephrine vs. each other and placebo.

Main Outcome: Reduction of progression or prevention of onset of visual field defects.

Results: Meta-analysis on all trials that tested drugs against placebo or untreated controls demonstrated that lowering IOP reduces incidence of glaucomatous visual field defects, with an odds ratio of 0.62 (95% CI 0.47-0.81). However, this result is of limited practical use since different therapies were pooled. No single drug demonstrated significant visual field protection. However, as a class, β -blockers showed borderline significance in reducing onset of glaucoma in patients with OHT when compared to placebo, with an OR of 0.67 (95% CI 0.45-1.00).

Conclusion: Lowering IOP can reduce progression of visual field defects in patients with OHT.

Pupils

- pupil size is determined by the balance between the sphincter muscle and the dilator muscle
- sphincter muscle is innervated by the parasympathetic nervous system
 - carried by CN III: pre- and post-ganglionic fibers synapse in ciliary ganglion, and use acetylcholine as the neurotransmitter
- dilator muscle is innervated by the sympathetic nervous system (SNS)
 - first order neuron = hypothalamus → brainstem → spinal cord
 - second order/preganglionic neuron = spinal cord → sympathetic trunk via internal carotid artery → superior cervical ganglion in neck
 - third order/postganglionic fibers originate in the superior cervical ganglion, neurotransmitter is noradrenaline
 - ♦ as a diagnostic test, 4-10% cocaine prevents the re-uptake of noradrenaline, and will cause dilation of normal pupil, but not one with loss of sympathetic innervation (Horner's Syndrome)
- see [Neurology](#), Figure 8, N6



5 Targets of Retinal Signals

- Pre-tectal nucleus (pupillary reflex/eye movements)
- Lateral geniculate body of thalamus
- Superior colliculus (eye movements)
- Suprachiasmatic nucleus (optokinetic)
- Accessory optic system (circadian rhythm)



Pupillary Light Reflex

- light shone directly into eye travels along optic nerve (CN II, afferent limb) → optic tracts → bilateral midbrain
- impulses enter bilaterally in midbrain via pretectal area and Edinger-Westphal nuclei
- nerve impulses then travel down CN III (efferent limb) bilaterally to reach the ciliary ganglia, and finally to the iris sphincter muscle, which results in the direct and consensual light reflexes

Pupil Abnormalities



Denervation Hypersensitivity

- when post-ganglionic fibers are damaged, the understimulated end-organ develops an excess of neuroreceptors and becomes hypersensitive
- postganglionic parasympathetic lesions (i.e. Adie's pupil)
 - pupil will constrict with 0.125% pilocarpine (cholinergic agonist), normal pupil will not
- postganglionic sympathetic lesions (this test is used to differentiate between pre- and post-ganglionic lesions in Horner's syndrome)
 - pupil will dilate with 0.125% adrenaline, normal pupil will not

Local Disorders of Iris

- posterior synechiae (adhesions between iris and lens) due to iritis can present as an abnormally shaped pupil
- ischemic damage (e.g. post-acute angle-closure glaucoma) usually occurs at 3 and 9 o'clock positions resulting in a vertically oval pupil that reacts poorly to light
- trauma (e.g. post-intraocular surgery)

Anisocoria

- unequal pupil size
- idiopathic/physiologic anisocoria
 - 20% of population
 - round, regular, <1 mm difference
 - pupils reactive to light and accommodation
 - responds normally to mydriatics/miotics
- post eye surgery
- see [Table 7](#) for other causes of anisocoria

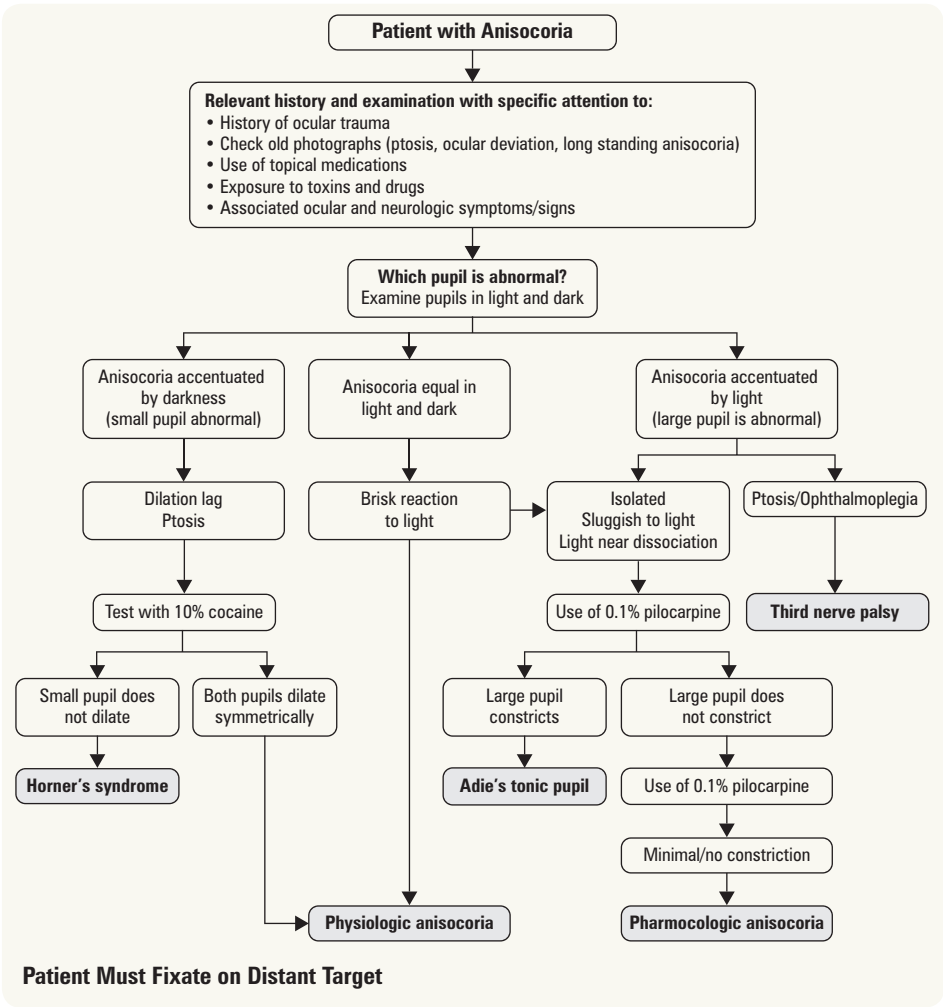


Figure 22. Approach to anisocoria
Reproduced with permission from: Kedar S, Biousse V, Newman NJ. *Approach to the patient with anisocoria*. In: UpToDate, Rose, BD (editor), UpToDate, Waltham, MA, 2011. Copyright 2011 UpToDate, Inc. For more information visit www.uptodate.com

Table 7. Summary of Conditions Causing Anisocoria

	Features	Site of Lesion	Light and Accommodation	Anisocoria	Mydriatics/Miotics	Effect of Pilocarpine
ABNORMAL MIOTIC PUPIL (impaired pupillary dilation)						
Argyll-Robertson Pupil	Irregular, usually bilateral	Midbrain	Poor in light; better to accommodation		Dilates/Constricts	
Horner's Syndrome	Round, unilateral, ptosis, anhydrosis, pseudoenophthalmos	Sympathetic system	Both brisk	Greater in dark	Dilates/Constricts	
ABNORMAL MYDRIATIC PUPIL (impaired pupillary constriction)						
Adie's Tonic Pupil	Irregular, larger in bright light	Ciliary ganglion	Poor in light, better to accommodation	Greater in light	Dilates/Constricts	Constricts (hypersensitivity to dilute pilocarpine)
CN III Palsy	Round	Superficial CN III	± fixed (acutely) at 7-9 mm	Greater in light	Dilates/Constricts	Constricts
Mydriatic Pupil	Round, uni- or bilateral	Iris sphincter	Fixed at 7-8 mm	Greater in light	No effect	Will not constrict

Dilated Pupil (Mydriasis)

Sympathetic Stimulation

- fight or flight response
- mydriatic drugs: epinephrine, dipivefrin (Propine®), phenylephrine

Parasympathetic Understimulation

- cycloplegics/mydriatics: atropine, tropicamide, cyclopentolate (parasympatholytic)
- CN III palsy
 - eye deviated down and out with ptosis present
 - etiology includes stroke, neoplasm, aneurysm, acute rise in ICP, DM (may spare pupil), trauma
 - CN III palsy will respond to drugs (e.g. pilocarpine), unlike a pupil dilated from medication (mydriatics)

Acute Angle-Closure Glaucoma

- fixed, mid-dilated pupil

Adie's Tonic Pupil

- 80% unilateral, F>M
- pupil is tonic or reacts poorly to light (both direct and consensual) but constricts with accommodation
- if decreased deep tendon reflexes may be Adie's syndrome
- caused by benign lesion in ciliary ganglion; results in denervation hypersensitivity of parasympathetically innervated constrictor muscle
 - dilute (0.125%) solution of pilocarpine will constrict tonic pupil but have no effect on normal pupil
- long-standing Adie's pupils are smaller than unaffected eye

Trauma

- damage to iris sphincter from blunt or penetrating trauma
- iris transillumination defects may be apparent using ophthalmoscope or slit-lamp
- pupil may be dilated (traumatic mydriasis) or irregularly shaped from tiny sphincter ruptures

Constricted Pupil (Miosis)

Senile Miosis

- decreased sympathetic stimulation with age

Parasympathetic Stimulation

- local or systemic medications such as:
 - cholinergic agents: pilocarpine, carbachol
 - cholinesterase inhibitor: phospholine iodide
 - opiates, barbiturates

Horner's Syndrome

- lesion in sympathetic pathway
- difference in pupil size greater in dim light, due to decreased innervation of adrenergics to iris dilator muscle
- associated with ptosis, anhidrosis of ipsilateral face/neck
- application of cocaine 4-10% (blocks reuptake of noradrenaline) to eye does not result in pupil dilation (vs. physiologic anisocoria), therefore confirms diagnosis
- hydroxyamphetamine 1% (stimulates noradrenaline release) will dilate pupil if central or preganglionic lesion, not postganglionic lesion
- postganglionic lesions result in denervation hypersensitivity, which will cause pupil to dilate with 0.125% adrenaline, whereas normal pupil will not
- causes: carotid or subclavian aneurysm, brainstem infarct, demyelinating disease, cervical or mediastinal tumor, Pancoast tumor, goiter, cervical lymphadenopathy, surgical sympathectomy, Lyme disease, cervical ribs, tabes dorsalis, cervical vertebral fractures

Iritis

- miotic pupil initially
- later, may be irregularly shaped pupil due to posterior synechiae
- later stages non-reactive to light



CN III palsy with pupillary involvement may be associated with a posterior communicating artery aneurysm

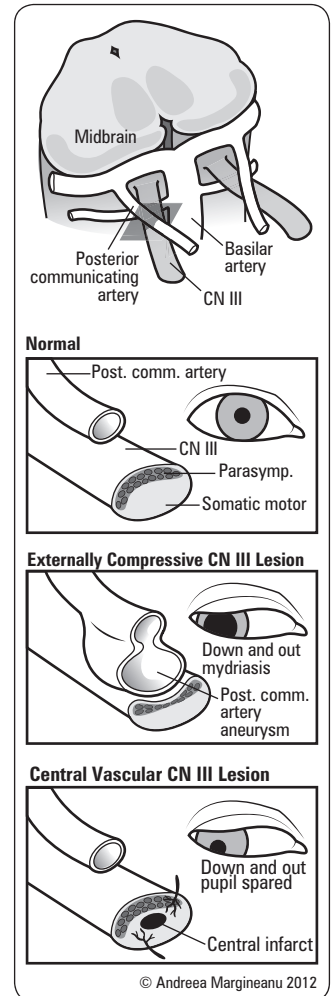


Figure 23. CN III lesions with and without mydriasis



Horner's MAP

Miosis
Anhidrosis
Ptosis

Argyll-Robertson Pupil

- both pupils irregular and <3 mm in diameter, ± ptosis
- does not respond to light stimulation
- responds to accommodation (light-near dissociation)
- suggestive of neurosyphilis or other conditions (DM, encephalitis, MS, chronic alcoholism, CNS degenerative diseases)

Other Causes

- optic neuritis, retinal lesions

**Argyll-Robertson Pupil****ARP-PRA**

Accommodation Reflex Present
Pupillary Reflex Absent



Cataracts never produce an RAPD



It is possible to have RAPD and normal vision at the same time, e.g. in damaged superior colliculus caused by thalamic hemorrhage



Differentiate RAPD from physiologic pupillary athetosis ("hippus"), which is rapid, rhythmic fluctuations of the pupil, with equal amplitude in both eyes

Relative Afferent Pupillary Defect

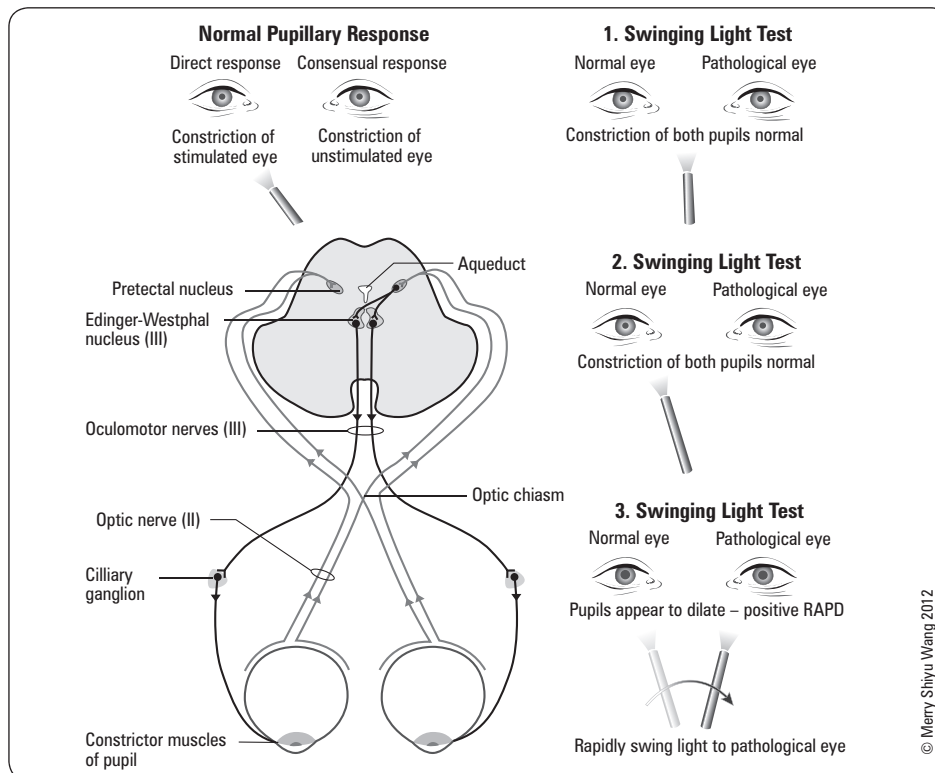


Figure 24. Relative afferent pupillary defect

- also known as Marcus Gunn pupil
- impairment of direct pupillary response to light, caused by a lesion in visual afferent (sensory) pathway anterior to optic chiasm
- differential diagnosis: large RD, BRAO, CRAO, CRVO, advanced glaucoma, optic nerve compression, optic neuritis (most common)
- does not occur with media opacity (e.g. corneal edema, cataracts)
- pupil reacts poorly to light and better to accommodation
- test: swinging flashlight
 - if light is shone in the affected eye, direct and consensual response to light is decreased
 - if light is shone in the unaffected eye, direct and consensual response to light is normal
 - if the light is moved quickly from the unaffected eye to the affected eye, "paradoxical" dilation of both pupils occurs
 - observe red reflex, especially in patients with dark irides
- if the defect is bilateral there is no RAPD, as dilation is measured relative to the other eye

Malignancies

- uncommon site for 1° malignancies
- eye usually affected secondarily by cancer or cancer treatments
- see *Retinoblastoma*, OP41

Lid Carcinoma



Etiology

- basal cell carcinoma (rodent ulcer) (90%)
 - spread via local invasion, rarely metastasizes
 - ulcerated center, indurated base with pearly rolled edges, telangiectasia
- squamous cell carcinoma (<5%)
 - spread via local invasion, may also spread to nodes and metastasize
 - ulceration, keratosis of lesion
- sebaceous cell carcinoma (1-5%)
 - often masquerades as chronic blepharitis or recurrent chalazion
 - highly invasive, metastasize
- Kaposi's sarcoma, malignant melanoma, Merkel cell tumor, metastatic tumor

Treatment

- incisional or excisional biopsies
- may require cryotherapy, radiotherapy, chemotherapy, immunotherapy
- surgical reconstruction

Malignant Melanoma

- most common 1° intraocular malignancy in adults
- more prevalent in Caucasians
- arise from uveal tract, 90% choroidal melanoma
- hepatic metastases predominate

Treatment

- imaging to investigate spread
- depending on the size of the tumor, either radiotherapy, enucleation, limited surgery

Metastases

- most common intraocular malignancy in adults
- most commonly from breast and lung in adults, neuroblastoma in children
- usually infiltrate the choroid, but may also affect the optic nerve or extraocular muscles
- may present with decreased or distorted vision, irregularly shaped pupil, iritis, hyphema

Treatment

- local radiation, chemotherapy
- enucleation if blind, painful eye

Ocular Manifestations of Systemic Disease

HIV/AIDS

- up to 75% of patients with AIDS have ocular manifestations

External Ocular Signs

- Kaposi's sarcoma
 - secondary to human herpes virus 8 (HHV-8), affects conjunctiva of lid or globe
 - numerous vascular skin malignancies
 - differential diagnosis: subconjunctival hemorrhage (non-clearing), hemangioma
- multiple molluscum contagiosum
- herpes simplex keratitis
- herpes zoster keratitis

Retina

- HIV retinopathy (most common)
 - cotton wool spots in >50% of HIV patients
 - intraretinal hemorrhage
- CMV retinitis
 - ocular opportunistic infection that develops in late stages of HIV when severely immunocompromised (CD4 count ≤ 50)
 - a necrotizing retinitis, with retinal hemorrhage and vasculitis, “brushfire” or “pizza pie” appearance
 - presents with scotomas (macular involvement and RD, blurred vision, and floaters)
 - untreated infection will progress to other eye in 4-6 wk
 - treatment: virostatic agents (e.g. gancyclovir or foscarnet) via IV or intravitreal injection
- necrotizing retinitis
 - from herpes simplex virus, herpes zoster, toxoplasmosis
- disseminated choroiditis
 - *Pneumocystis carinii*, *Mycobacterium avium intracellulare*, *Candida*



Other Systemic Infections

- herpes zoster
 - see *Herpes Zoster*, OP19
- candidal endophthalmitis
 - fluffy, white-yellow, superficial retinal infiltrate that may eventually result in vitritis
 - may present with inflammation of the anterior chamber
 - treatment: systemic amphotericin B, oral fluconazole
- toxoplasmosis
 - focal, gray-yellow-white, chorioretinal lesions with surrounding vasculitis and vitreous infiltration (vitreous cells)
 - can be congenital (transplacental) or acquired (caused by *Toxoplasma gondii* protozoa transmitted through raw meat and cat feces)
 - congenital form more often causes visual impairment (more likely to involve the macula)
 - treatment: pyrimethamine, sulfonamide, folinic acid, or clindamycin. Consider adding steroids if severe inflammation (vitritis, macular or optic nerve involvement)

Diabetes Mellitus

- see *Endocrinology*, E6
- most common cause of blindness in young people in North America
- consider DM if unexplained retinopathy, cataract, extraocular muscle palsy, optic neuropathy, sudden change in refractive error
- loss of vision due to
 - progressive microangiopathy leading to macular edema
 - progressive DR \rightarrow neovascularization \rightarrow traction \rightarrow RD and vitreous hemorrhage
 - rubeosis iridis (neovascularization of the iris) leading to neovascular glaucoma (poor prognosis)
 - macular ischemia



Macular edema is the most common cause of visual loss in patients with background DR

DIABETIC RETINOPATHY

Background

- altered vascular permeability (loss of pericytes, breakdown of blood-retinal barrier, thickening of basement membrane)
- predisposition to retinal vessel obstruction (CRAO, CRVO, and BRVO)

Classification

- **non-proliferative:** increased vascular permeability and retinal ischemia
 - microaneurysms
 - dot and blot hemorrhages
 - hard exudates (lipid deposits), non-specific for DR
 - macular edema
- **advanced non-proliferative (or pre-proliferative)**
 - non-proliferative findings plus
 - ♦ venous beading (in ≥ 2 of 4 retinal quadrants)
 - ♦ intraretinal microvascular anomalies (IRMA) in 1 of 4 retinal quadrants
 - IRMA: dilated, leaky vessels within the retina
 - ♦ cotton wool spots (nerve fiber layer infarcts)
- **proliferative**
 - 5% of patients with DM will reach this stage



Presence of DR in:

Type 1 DM

- 25% after 5 yr
- 60% after 10 yr
- >80% after 15 yr

Type 2 DM

- 20% at time of diagnosis
- 60% after 20 yr



Expanded 2 Year Follow-Up of Ranibizumab Plus Prompt or Deferred Laser or Triamcinolone Plus Prompt Laser for Diabetic Macular Edema
Ophthalmology 2011;118:609-614
 Ranibizumab (Lucentis®) with prompt or deferred laser is more effective than intravitreal corticosteroid injections + laser or laser alone with sustained efficacy up to 24 mo.

- neovascularization of iris, disc, retina to vitreous
 - neovascularization of iris (rubeosis iridis) can lead to neovascular glaucoma
 - vitreous hemorrhage from bleeding, fragile new vessels, fibrous tissue can contract causing tractional RD
- high risk of severe visual loss secondary to vitreous hemorrhage, RD

Screening Guidelines for Diabetic Retinopathy

- type 1 DM
 - screen for retinopathy beginning annually 5 yr after disease onset
 - annual screening indicated for all patients over 12 yr and/or entering puberty
- type 2 DM
 - initial examination at time of diagnosis, then annually
- pregnancy
 - ocular exam in 1st trimester, close follow-up throughout as pregnancy can exacerbate DR
 - gestational diabetics are not at risk for DR

Treatment

- Diabetic Control and Complications Trial (DCCT)
 - tight control of blood sugar decreases frequency and severity of microvascular complications
- blood pressure control
- focal laser for clinically significant macular edema, intravitreal injection of corticosteroid or anti-VEGF for foveal involved diabetic macular edema
- panretinal laser photocoagulation for PDR: reduces neovascularization, hence reducing the angiogenic stimulus from ischemic retina by decreasing retinal metabolic demand → reduces risk of blindness
- vitrectomy for non-clearing vitreous hemorrhage and RD in PDR
- vitrectomy before vitreous hemorrhage does not improve the visual prognosis

Lens Changes

- earlier onset of senile nuclear sclerosis and cortical cataract
- may get hyperglycemic cataract, due to sorbitol accumulation (rare)
- changes in blood glucose levels (poor control) can suddenly cause refractive changes by 3-4 diopters

Extraocular Muscle Palsy

- usually CN III infarct
- pupil usually spared in diabetic CN III palsy, but ptosis is observed
- may involve CN IV and VI
- usually recover within few months

Optic Neuropathy

- visual acuity loss due to infarction of optic disc/nerve

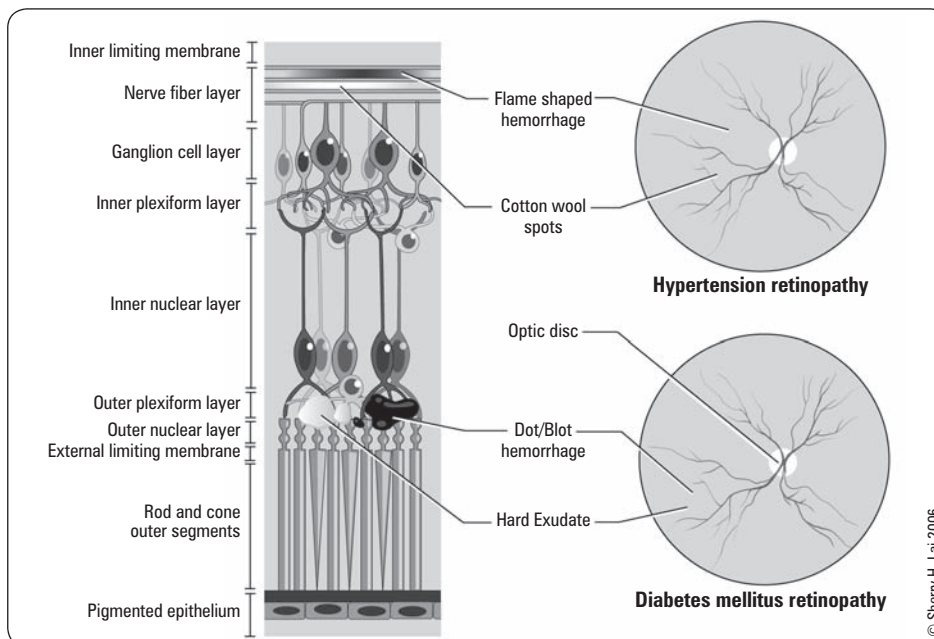


Figure 25. DM vs. HTN retinopathy



Clinically significant macular edema is defined as thickening of the retina at or within 500 μ m of the center of the macula



Effects of Medical Therapies on Retinopathy Progression in Type 2 DM

NEJM 2010;363:233-244

Purpose: To determine whether or not intensive glycemic control, combination therapy for dyslipidemia, and intensive blood-pressure control may limit the progression of DR in persons with type 2 DM.

Methods: RCT with 10,251 participants with type 2 DM at high risk of cardiovascular disease. Intensive or standard treatment for glycemia (glycated hemoglobin level $<6.0\%$ or $7.0\text{--}7.9\%$), dyslipidemia (160 mg daily fenofibrate plus simvastatin or placebo plus simvastatin), or systolic blood-pressure control (target <120 or <140 mm Hg).

Results: Rates of progression of DR at 4 yr were 7.3% with intensive glycemia treatment vs. 10.4% with standard therapy (OR 0.67; 95% CI 0.51-0.87); 6.5% with fenofibrate for intensive dyslipidemia therapy vs. 10.2% with placebo (OR 0.60; 95% CI 0.42-0.87) and 10.4% with intensive blood-pressure therapy vs. 8.8% with standard therapy (OR 1.23; 95% CI 0.84-1.79).

Conclusions: Intensive glycemic control and intensive combination treatment of dyslipidemia, but not intensive blood-pressure control, reduced the rate of DR.



Early Treatment Diabetic Retinopathy Study

ETDRS Reports No. 1-24. Various Journals, 1985-1999

Study: Randomized clinical trial.

Objective: To evaluate argon laser photocoagulation and aspirin treatment in the management of patients with nonproliferative or early PDR.

Patients: Men and women between the ages of 18 and 70 yr with moderate or severe nonproliferative DR or mild PDR in both eyes, with no previous photocoagulation treatment, and with visual acuity of 20/40 or better (20/200 or better if macular edema is present) were eligible for this study.

Intervention: All study patients had one eye randomly assigned to immediate photocoagulation and the other eye to deferral of photocoagulation until high-risk proliferative retinopathy developed. The trial use of aspirin therapy was based on clinical observation and on aspirin's possible mechanisms of action.

Results: A total of 3,711 patients were recruited to be followed for a minimum of 4 yr to provide long-term information on the risks and benefits of the treatments under study. The study demonstrated that focal photocoagulation for macular edema reduces the risk of moderate visual loss and should be considered for eyes with clinically significant macular edema. Scatter photocoagulation reduces the risk of severe visual loss. The ETDRS does not support scatter treatment before the severe non-proliferative stage of DR. Aspirin treatment (650 mg/day) does not alter progression of DR.

Conclusion: Before current treatments, the prognosis for patients with PDR was blindness within 5 yr for $>50\%$ of patients. Rates of blindness in ETDRS patients following the development of proliferative retinopathy are remarkably lower.

Hypertension

- retinopathy is the most common ocular manifestation
- chronic HTN retinopathy: arteriovenous (AV) nicking, blot retinal hemorrhages, microaneurysms, cotton wool spots
- acute HTN retinopathy: retinal arteriolar spasm, superficial retinal hemorrhage, cotton wool spots, optic disc edema

Table 8. Keith-Wagener-Barker Classification

Group 1	Mild arterial narrowing
Group 2	Obvious arterial narrowing with focal irregularities
Group 3	Group 2 characteristics plus: Cotton wool spots Hemorrhage and/or exudate
Group 4	Group 3 plus papilledema



Multiple Sclerosis

- see [Neurology, N52](#)

Clinical Features

- blurred vision and decreased color vision: secondary to optic neuritis
- central scotoma: due to damage to papillomacular bundle of retinal nerve fibers
- diplopia: secondary to INO
- RAPD, ptosis, nystagmus, uveitis, optic atrophy, optic neuritis
- white matter demyelinating lesions of optic nerve on MRI

Treatment

- IV steroids with taper to oral form for optic neuritis
 - DO NOT treat with oral steroids in isolation as this increases likelihood of eventual development of MS



Corticosteroids for Treating Optic Neuritis

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;4:CD001430

Purpose: To assess the effects of corticosteroids on visual recovery in patients with acute optic neuritis.

Results/Conclusions: 6 RCTs, 750 participants. Follow-up at 6 mo or 1 yr. There is no conclusive evidence of benefit with respect to recovery to normal visual acuity, visual field, or contrast sensitivity with either intravenous or oral corticosteroids at the doses evaluated in included trials.

TIA/Amaurosis Fugax

- sudden, transient blindness from intermittent vascular compromise
- ipsilateral carotid most frequent embolic source
- typically monocular, lasting <5-10 min
- Hollenhorst plaques (glistening microemboli seen at branch points of retinal arterioles)

Graves' Disease

- ophthalmopathy occurs despite control of thyroid gland status
- ocular manifestations occur secondary to sympathetic overdrive and/or specific inflammatory infiltrate of the orbital tissue

Clinical

- initial inflammatory phase is followed by a quiescent cicatricial phase

Treatment

- treat hyperthyroidism
- monitor for corneal exposure and maintain corneal hydration
- manage diplopia, proptosis and compressive optic neuropathy with one or a combination of:
 - steroids (during acute phase)
 - orbital bony decompression
 - external beam radiation of the orbit
- consider strabismus and/or eyelid surgical procedures once acute phase subsides



The most common cause of unilateral or bilateral proptosis in adults is Graves' disease



Progression of Signs and Symptoms of Graves' Ophthalmopathy

NO SPECS

No signs/symptoms

Only signs (lid retraction, lid lag)

Soft tissue swelling (periorbital edema)

Proptosis (exophthalmos)

Extraocular muscle weakness (causing diplopia)

Corneal exposure

Sight loss

Connective Tissue Disorders

- RA, juvenile idiopathic arthritis, SLE, Sjögren syndrome, ankylosing spondylitis, polyarteritis nodosa
- most common ocular manifestation: dry eyes (keratoconjunctivitis sicca)

Giant Cell Arteritis/Temporal Arteritis

- see [Rheumatology](#), R17

Clinical

- more common in women >60 yr
- abrupt monocular loss of vision, pain over the temporal artery, jaw claudication, scalp tenderness, constitutional symptoms, and past medical history of polymyalgia rheumatica
- ischemic optic atrophy
 - 50% lose vision in other eye if untreated

Diagnosis

- temporal artery biopsy + increased ESR (ESR can be normal, but likely 80-100 in first hour), CRP
- if biopsy of one side is negative, biopsy the other side

Treatment

- high dose corticosteroid to relieve pain and prevent further ischemic episodes
- if diagnosis of GCA is suspected clinically: start treatment + perform temporal artery biopsy to confirm diagnosis within 2 wk of initial presentation (**DO NOT WAIT TO TREAT**)



ESR in Temporal Arteritis

Males > age/2
Females > (age + 10)/2



Does this Patient have Temporal Arteritis?

JAMA 2002;287:92-101

Rule in: jaw claudication and diplopia on history, temporal artery beading, prominence of the artery and tenderness over the artery on exam.

Rule out: no temporal artery abnormalities on exam, normal ESR.

Sarcoidosis

- granulomatous uveitis with large "mutton fat" keratitic precipitates and posterior synechiae
- neurosarcoidosis: optic neuropathy, oculomotor abnormalities, visual field loss

Treatment

- steroids and mydriatics

Pediatric Ophthalmology

Strabismus

- ocular misalignment in one or both eyes, found in 3% of children
- object not visualized simultaneously by fovea of each eye
- terms used to describe strabismus depend upon
 - direction of deviation relative to the fixating eye
 - conditions under which it presents: 'latent', 'manifest' misalignment
 - change with the position of gaze: 'comitant' (usually nonparalytic), 'incomitant' (usually occurs with paralytic or restrictive strabismus)
- often presents with parental concern about a wandering eye, crossing eye, or poor vision
- elicit a detailed family history of strabismus, amblyopia, type of eyeglasses and history of wear, extraocular muscle surgery or other eye surgery, and genetic diseases to identify children at higher risk
- distinguish from pseudostrabismus (prominent epicanthal folds, hypertelorism, markedly positive or negative angle κ)
- complications: amblyopia, cosmesis

HETEROTROPIA

- manifest deviation
- deviation not corrected by the fusion mechanism (i.e. deviation is apparent when the patient is using both eyes)

Types

- exo- (lateral deviation), eso- (medial deviation)
- hyper- (upward deviation), hypo- (downward deviation)
- esotropia = "crossed-eyes"; exotropia = "wall-eyed"

Differentiate from Pseudostrabismus

- prominent epicanthal folds: give appearance of esotropia but Hirschberg test is normal, more common in Asians
- markedly elevated angle κ (the angle formed by the pupillary axis and the visual axis at the center of the pupil)
 - caused by the failure of optical axis of the eye and the visual axis to coincide
 - a small positive (up to 5°) angle κ is physiologic
 - a large positive angle κ (nasally deviated fovea) simulates eso-appearance
 - a large negative angle κ (temporally deviated fovea) gives an exo-appearance



Strabismus in children under 4 mo of age sometimes resolves, particularly if the deviation is intermittent, variable, or measures <40 prism diopters

Tests

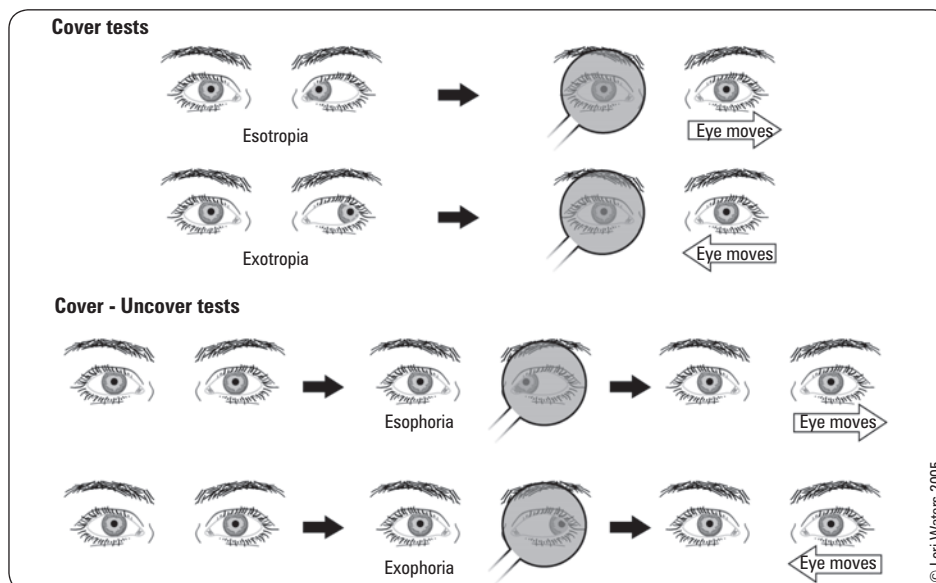
- Hirschberg test (corneal light reflex): positive if the light reflex on both corneas is asymmetrical
 - light reflex lateral to central cornea indicates esodeviation; light reflex medial to central cornea indicates exodeviation
 - false positives occur if visual axis and anatomic pupillary axis of the eye are not aligned (angle κ)
- cover test
- the deviation can be quantified using prisms

HETEROPHORIA

- latent deviation
- deviation corrected in the binocular state by the fusion mechanism (i.e. deviation not seen when patient is focusing with both eyes)
- Hirschberg test will be normal (light reflexes symmetrical)
- very common – majority are asymptomatic
- may be exacerbated or become manifest with asthenopia (eye strain, fatigue)

Tests

- cover-uncover test
- alternate cover test
 - alternating the cover between both eyes reveals the total deviation, both latent and manifest
 - maintain cover over one eye for 2-3 s before rapidly shifting to other eye



All children with strabismus and/or possible reduced vision require prompt referral to an ophthalmologist

Figure 26. Cover and cover-uncover tests for detection of tropias and phorias

Table 9. Paralytic vs. Non-Paralytic Strabismus

Clinical Characteristics	Paralytic Strabismus	Nonparalytic Strabismus
Definition	Incomitant strabismus	Concomitant strabismus
Onset	Often sudden but may be gradual or congenital	Usually gradual or shortly after birth; rarely sudden
Age of Onset	Any age; most often acquired	Usually during infancy
Etiology	Reduction or restriction in range of eye movements due to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Neural (CN III, IV, VI): ischemia (e.g. DM), MS, aneurysm, brain tumor, trauma • Muscular: myasthenia gravis (neuromuscular junction pathology), Graves' disease • Structural: restriction or entrapment of extraocular muscles due to orbital inflammation, tumor, fracture of the orbital wall 	Develops early in childhood No restriction in range of eye movements Monocular, alternating, or intermittent
Diplopia	Common	Uncommon; image from the misaligned eye is suppressed (see <i>Amblyopia</i> , OP40)
Visual Acuity in Other Eye	Usually unaffected in the other eye, unless CN II is involved	Deviated eye may become amblyopic if not treated when the child is young Amblyopia treatment rarely successful after age 8-10 yr Amblyopia usually does not develop if child has alternating strabismus or intermittency, which allows neural pathways for both eyes to develop
Possibility of Amblyopia	Uncommon	Common
Neurologic Findings or Systemic Disease	May be present	Usually absent

Accommodative Esotropia

- normal response to approaching object is the triad of the near reflex: convergence, accommodation and miosis
- hyperopes must constantly accommodate – excessive accommodation can lead to esotropia in young children via over-activation of the near reflex
- average age of onset is 2.5 yr
- usually reversible with correction of refractive error

Non-accommodative Esotropia

- accounts for 50% of childhood strabismus
- most are idiopathic
- may be due to monocular visual impairment (e.g. cataract, corneal scarring, anisometropia, retinoblastoma) or divergence insufficiency (ocular misalignment that is greater at distance fixation than at near fixation)

Amblyopia

**Definition**

- a neurodevelopmental visual disorder with unilateral (or less commonly, bilateral) reduction of best corrected visual acuity that cannot be attributed only and directly to the effect of a structural abnormality of the eye. It is caused by abnormal visual experience early in life and cannot be remedied immediately by spectacle glasses alone
- in approximately half of the cases, amblyopia is secondary to strabismus (mainly esotropia). Other causes may include uncorrected refractive errors, anisometropia (asymmetric refractive errors), and concomitant structural ocular problems

Detection

- “Holler Test”: young child upset if good eye is covered
- quantitative visual acuity by age 3-4 yr using picture charts and/or matching game (Sheridan-Gardiner), testing each eye separately
- amblyopia treatment less successful after age 8-10 yr, but a trial should be given no matter what age
- prognosis: 90% will have good vision restored and maintained if treated <4 yr old

Etiology and Management

- strabismus
 - correct with glasses for accommodative esotropia (50% of children experience relief of their esotropia with glasses and will not require surgery)
 - occlusion of unaffected eye forces brain to use previously strabismic eye; aims to bring vision in previously suppressed eye to normal before surgery
 - surgery: recession (weakening) – moving muscle insertion further back on the globe; or resection (strengthening) – shortening the muscle
 - botulinum toxin for single muscle weakening
 - after ocular alignment is restored (glasses, surgery, botulinum toxin), patching is frequently necessary to maintain vision until approximately age 8 yr
- anisometropia
 - amblyopia usually in the more hyperopic eye
 - the more emmetropic (normal refraction) eye receives a clear image while the less emmetropic eye receives a blurred image; input from the blurred eye is cortically suppressed and visual pathway fails to develop normally
 - treat with glasses to correct refractive error
 - patching is required if visual acuity difference persists after 4-8 wk of using glasses
- deprivation amblyopia
 - occlusion due to ptosis, cataract, retinoblastoma, corneal opacity
 - occlusion amblyopia: prolonged patching of good eye may cause it to become amblyopic

Occlusion Therapy

- patching the good eye to force the brain to use the non-dominant eye and redevelop its vision
- atropine cycloplegic drops to impair accommodation and blur vision of the better seeing eye

Risks

- permanent loss of vision in the affected eye
- possibility of injury to ‘remaining’ good eye
 - safety glasses or polycarbonate lenses recommended if visual acuity in worse eye is <20/50
- loss of stereopsis

Leukocoria

- white reflex (red reflex is absent)

Differential Diagnosis

- cataract
- retinoblastoma
- retinal coloboma
- ROP
- persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous
- Coat's disease (exudative retinal telangiectasis)
- toxocariasis
- RD

Retinoblastoma

- most common primary intraocular malignancy in children
- incidence: 1/15,000; sporadic or genetic transmission; screening of siblings/offspring essential
- unilateral or bilateral (in 1/3 of cases)
- malignant – direct or hematogenous spread
- diagnosis
 - often presents with leukocoria or strabismus
 - U/S or CT scan may demonstrate calcified mass (present in most cases)

Treatment

- radiotherapy, chemotherapy combined with laser, cryopexy, and/or enucleation

Retinopathy of Prematurity

- vasoproliferative retinopathy that is a major cause of blindness in the developed world

Risk Factors

- non-black race (black infants have lower risk of developing ROP)
- low gestational age, birth weight <1500 g
- high oxygen exposure after birth

Classification (ROP Staging)

- stage 1: faint demarcation line at the junction between the vascularized and avascular retina
- stage 2: elevated ridge
- stage 3: extra-retinal fibrovascular tissue extending into vitreous
- stage 4: partial RD (4A: macula “on”, 4B: macula “off”)
- stage 5: total RD
- plus (+) disease: dilatation and tortuosity of retinal vessels
- threshold disease: stage 3+ in zones 1 or 2 with 5 continuous or 8 cumulative clock hours of ROP involvement

Treatment

- threshold disease is treated with cryotherapy or laser (laser is now the standard treatment, with better refractive outcome), off label anti-VEGF intravitreal injections
- ROP beyond threshold level is either watched carefully (usually stage 4A) or treated with vitrectomy/scleral buckle

Prognosis

- higher incidence of myopia among ROP infants, even if treated successfully
- stage 4B and 5 have poor prognosis for visual outcome despite treatment

Nasolacrimal System Defects

- congenital obstruction of the nasolacrimal duct (failure of canalization), usually occurs at 1-2 mo of age
- epiphora, crusting, discharge, recurrent conjunctivitis
- can have reflux of mucopurulent material from lacrimal punctum when pressure is applied over lacrimal sac
- treatment: massage over lacrimal sac at medial corner of eyelid
- vast majority spontaneously resolve in 9-12 mo, otherwise consider referral for duct probing



Retinal Zones

- Zone I: circle with radius twice the distance from the disc to the macula (most difficult to treat)
- Zone II: annulus from zone I to nasal extent of retina (nasal ora serrata)
- Zone III: remaining retina

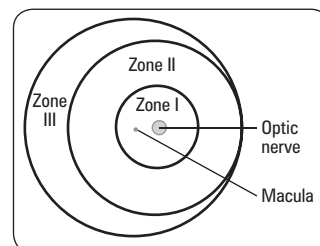


Figure 27. Zones of the retina in ROP



Efficacy of Intravitreal Bevacizumab for Stage 3+ Retinopathy of Prematurity (ROP)

NEJM 2011;364:603-615

Study: Randomized controlled clinical trial.

Patients: 150 infants born at gestational age ≤30 wk and birth weight ≤1500 g.

Intervention: Randomized to conventional laser therapy or intravitreal bevacizumab monotherapy.

Main Outcome: Recurrence of ROP in one or both eyes requiring retreatment before 54 wk postmenstrual age.

Results: ROP recurrence was lower in the bevacizumab group (6 of 140 eyes [4%]) vs. the laser-therapy group (32 of 146 eyes [22%]) ($p=0.002$). A significant treatment effect was found for zone I ROP ($p=0.003$).

Conclusions: Intravitreal bevacizumab monotherapy is beneficial for infants with zone I state 3+ ROP and allows continued development of peripheral retinal vessels following treatment.

Ophthalmia Neonatorum

- newborn conjunctivitis in first month of life
- causes
 - toxic: silver nitrate, erythromycin
 - infectious: bacterial (e.g. *N. gonorrhoeae* – most common, *C. trachomatis*), herpes simplex virus
- diagnose using stains and cultures
- treatment: systemic antibiotics with possible hospitalization if infectious etiology
- topical prophylaxis, most commonly with erythromycin (or silver nitrate), is required by law at birth



Gonococcal infection is the most serious threat to sight as it can rapidly penetrate corneal epithelium, causing corneal ulceration

Congenital Glaucoma

- due to inadequate development of the filtering mechanism of the anterior chamber angle

Clinical Features

- cloudy cornea, increased IOP
- photophobia, epiphora
- buphthalmos (large cornea, “ox eye”, secondary to increased IOP), blepharospasm

Treatment

- filtration surgery is required soon after birth to prevent blindness



Epiphora in children – rule out congenital glaucoma!

Ocular Trauma

Blunt Trauma

- caused by blunt object such as fist, squash ball
- history: injury, ocular history, drug allergy, tetanus status
- exam: VA first, pupil size and reaction, EOM (diplopia), external and slit-lamp exam, ophthalmoscopy
- if VA normal or slightly reduced, globe less likely to be perforated
- if VA reduced may be perforated globe, corneal abrasion, lens dislocation, retinal tear
- bone fractures
 - blow out fracture: restricted EOM, diplopia, enophthalmos (sunken eye)
 - ethmoid fracture: subcutaneous emphysema of lid
- lids: swelling, laceration, emphysema
- conjunctiva: subconjunctival hemorrhage
- cornea: abrasion – detect with fluorescein staining and cobalt blue filter using slit-lamp or ophthalmoscope
- anterior chamber: assess depth, hyphema, hypopyon
- iris: prolapse, iritis
- lens: cataract, dislocation
- retinal tear/detachment



Always test VA first – medicolegal protection



Refer if You Observe Any of These Signs

- Decreased VA
- Shallow anterior chamber
- Hyphema
- Abnormal pupil
- Ocular misalignment
- Retinal damage



Management of Suspected Globe Rupture

CAN'T forget
CT orbits
Ancef (cefazolin) ± **A**minoglycoside IV
NPO
Tetanus status



Post-Traumatic Infectious Endophthalmitis

- Surv Ophthalmol* 2011;56:214-251
- Delayed primary repair (>24 h after open globe injury) increases risk for post-traumatic endophthalmitis in the absence of an intraocular foreign body (IOFB).
 - If IOFB present, early vitrectomy and IOFB removal must be performed within 24 h of injury.
 - Extreme pain with hypopyon and vitritis indicate endophthalmitis until proven otherwise, and samples must be obtained.
 - Treat with empirical intravitreal and intravenous antibiotic guided by nature of trauma, and adjust based on culture.

Penetrating Trauma

- include ruptured globe ± prolapsed iris, intraocular foreign body
- rule out intraocular foreign body, especially if history of “metal striking metal”, orbit CT
- **OCULAR EMERGENCY**: initial management - REFER IMMEDIATELY
 - ABCs
 - don't press on eye globe!
 - don't check IOP if possibility of globe rupture
 - check vision, diplopia
 - apply rigid eye shield to minimize further trauma
 - keep head elevated 30-45° to keep IOP down
 - keep NPO
 - tetanus status
 - give IV antibiotics
 - ♦ selecting appropriate agents depends on the mechanism of injury; gram positive bacteria are more commonly involved than gram negatives; retained intraocular foreign objects increase the risk of infections with *Bacillus* species, whereas exposure to vegetable matter increased the risk of a fungal etiology

Hyphema

- blood in anterior chamber often due to damage to root of the iris
- may occur with blunt trauma

Treatment

- refer to ophthalmology
 - shield and bedrest x 5 d or as determined by ophthalmologist
 - sleep with head upright
- may need surgical drainage if hyphema persists or if re-bleed

Complications

- risk of re-bleed highest on days 2-5, resulting in secondary glaucoma, corneal staining, and iris necrosis
- never prescribe Aspirin®, as it increases the risk of a re-bleed



Shaken Baby Syndrome

Syndrome of findings characterized by absence of external signs of abuse with respiratory arrest, seizures, or coma. Ocular exam findings are important diagnostically for Shaken Baby Syndrome. These findings include extensive retinal and vitreous hemorrhages that occur during the shaking process and are extremely rare in accidental trauma. A detailed fundoscopic exam or an ophthalmology referral should be conducted for all infants in whom abuse is suspected.

Blow-Out Fracture

- see [Plastic Surgery, PL31](#)
- blunt trauma causing fracture of orbital floor and herniation of orbital contents into maxillary sinus
- orbital rim remains intact
- inferior rectus and/or inferior oblique muscles may be incarcerated at fracture site
- infraorbital nerve courses along the floor of the orbit and may be damaged

Clinical Features

- pain and nausea at time of injury
- diplopia, restriction of EOM
- infraorbital and upper lip paresthesia (CN V2)
- enophthalmos (sunken eye), periorbital ecchymoses

Investigations

- plain films: Waters' view and lateral
- CT: anteroposterior and coronal view of orbits

Treatment

- refrain from coughing, blowing nose
- systemic antibiotics may be indicated
- surgery if fracture >50% orbital floor, diplopia not improving, or enophthalmos >2 mm
- may delay surgery if the diplopia improves



Classic Signs of Blow-Out

- Enophthalmos
- Decreased upgaze (IR trapped)
- Cheek anesthetized (infraorbital nerve trapped)

Chemical Burns

- alkali burns have a worse prognosis than acid burns because acids coagulate tissue and inhibit further corneal penetration
- poor prognosis if cornea opaque, likely irreversible stromal damage
- even with a clear cornea initially, alkali burns can progress for weeks (thus, very guarded prognosis)

Treatment

- immediately irrigate at site of accident with water or buffered solution
 - IV drip for at least 20-30 min with eyelids retracted in emergency department
 - swab upper and lower fornices to remove possible particulate matter
- do not attempt to neutralize because the heat produced by the reaction will damage the cornea
- cycloplegic drops to decrease iris spasm (pain) and prevent secondary glaucoma (due to posterior synechiae formation)
- topical antibiotics and patching
- topical steroids (by ophthalmologist) to decrease inflammation, use for <2 wk (in the case of a persistent epithelial defect)



Fluorescein lights up alkali so you can detect it and assess whether it has been removed

Surgical Ophthalmology

- **dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR)**: excision of bone covering the nasolacrimal sac to restore tear drainage
- **LASIK (laser-assisted *in situ* keratomileusis)**: a microkeratome is used to create a corneal flap followed by laser remodeling of the stroma to correct refractive error
- **trabeculectomy**: creation of a new outflow tract from anterior chamber to under conjunctiva; fibrosis prevented with mitomycin C or 5-FU injection during surgery
- **phacoemulsification (cataract extraction)**: the use of ultrasonic waves to break up and aspirate a cataract followed by replacement with an artificial lens implant
- **femtosecond laser-assisted cataract surgery**: uses focused ultrashort pulses (10^{-15} of a second) to perform photodissection in achieving capsulorrhexis and lens fragmentation
- **vitrectomy**: the use of small gauge trochars to enter the posterior segment and remove vitreous; commonly used to treat vitreous hemorrhage and RD
- **pneumatic retinopexy**: intraocular injection of air or an expandable gas in order to tamponade a retinal break for repair of RD
- **scleral buckle**: a silicone band is secured on the outside of the globe that indents the eye wall, thereby relieving vitreous traction on the retina around any tears/holes and allowing the tears/holes to remain sealed for repair of RD
- **minimally invasive glaucoma surgery (MIGS)**: implantation of IOP lowering drainage devices (e.g. iStent) through an ab interno microincisional approach during cataract surgery.

Ocular Drug Toxicity

Table 10. Drugs with Ocular Toxicity

Amiodarone	Corneal microdeposits and superficial keratopathy (vortex keratopathy) Rare: ischemic optic neuropathy
Atropine, benzotropine	Pupillary dilation (risk of angle closure glaucoma)
Bisphosphonates (Fosamax®, Actonel®)	Inflammatory eye disease (iritis, scleritis, episcleritis)
Chloroquine, hydroxychloroquine	Bull's eye maculopathy Vortex keratopathy
Chlorpromazine	Anterior subcapsular cataract
Contraceptive pills	Decreased tolerance to contact lenses Migraine Optic neuritis Central vein occlusion, benign increase intracranial pressure
Digitalis	Yellow vision Blurred vision
Ethambutol	Optic neuropathy
Haloperidol (Haldol®)	Oculogyric crises Blurred vision
Indomethacin	Superficial keratopathy
Interferon	Retinal hemorrhages and cotton wool spots
Isoniazid	Optic neuropathy
Nalidixic acid	Papilledema
Steroids	Posterior subcapsular cataracts Glaucoma Papilledema (systemic steroids) Increased severity of HSV infections (geographic ulcers) Predisposition to fungal infections
Sulphonamides, NSAIDs	Stevens-Johnson syndrome
Tamsulosin (Flomax®)	Intraoperative Floppy Iris Syndrome, which can complicate cataract surgery
Tetracycline	Papilledema (associated with pseudotumor cerebri)
Thioridazine	Pigmentary degeneration of retina
Vigabatrin	Retinal deposition with macular sparing, peripheral visual field loss
Vitamin A intoxication	Papilledema
Vitamin D intoxication	Band keratopathy

Common Medications

TOPICAL OCULAR DIAGNOSTIC DRUGS

Fluorescein Dye

- water soluble orange-yellow dye
- green under cobalt blue light (ophthalmoscope or slit-lamp)
- absorbed in areas of epithelial loss (ulcer or abrasion)
- also stains mucus and contact lenses

Rose Bengal Stain

- stains devitalized epithelial cells and mucus

Anesthetics

- e.g. proparacaine HCl 0.5%, tetracaine 0.5%
- indications: removal of foreign body and sutures, tonometry, examination of painful cornea
- toxic to corneal epithelium (inhibit mitosis and migration) and can lead to corneal ulceration and scarring with prolonged use, therefore **NEVER** prescribe

Mydriatics

- dilate pupils
- two classes
 - cholinergic blocking (e.g. tropicamide – Mydracil®)
 - ♦ dilation plus cycloplegia (loss of accommodation) by paralysis of iris sphincter and the ciliary body
 - ♦ indications: refraction, ophthalmoscopy, therapy for iritis
 - adrenergic stimulating (e.g. phenylephrine HCl 2.5%)
 - ♦ stimulate pupillary dilator muscles, no effect on accommodation
 - ♦ usually used with tropicamide for additive effects
 - ♦ side effects: HTN, tachycardia, arrhythmias

Table 11. Mydriatic Cycloplegic Drugs and Duration of Action

Drugs	Duration of Action
Tropicamide (Mydracil®) 0.5%, 1%	4-5 h
Cyclopentolate HCl 0.5%, 1%	3-6 h
Homatropine HBr 1%, 2%	3-7 d
Atropine sulfate 0.5%, 1%	1-2 wk
Scopolamine HBr 0.25%, 5%	1-2 wk

GLAUCOMA MEDICATIONS**Table 12. Glaucoma Medications**

Drug Category	Dose	Effect	Comment/Side Effects
α-Agonist Non-selective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • epinephrine HCl 1% (Epifrin®) • dipivalyl epinephrine 0.1% (Propine®) α₂-selective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • brimonidine 0.2% (Alphagan®) • apraclonidine 0.5% (Iopidine®) 	1 gtt OS/OD bid/tid	1. Non-selective: ↓ aqueous production + ↑ TM outflow 2. Selective: ↓ aqueous production + ↑ uveoscleral outflow	1. Non-selective: mydriasis, macular edema, tachycardia 2. Selective: contact allergy, hypotension in children
β-Blocker Non-selective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • timolol (Timoptic®) • levobunolol (Betagan®) β₁-selective <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • betaxolol (Betoptic®) 	1 gtt OS/OD qd/bid	↓ aqueous production	Bronchospasm (caution in asthma/COPD) ↑ CHF Bradycardia Hypotension Depression Heart block Impotence
Carbonic Anhydrase Inhibitor <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dorzolamide (Trusopt®) • brinzolamide (Azopt®) • oral: acetazolamide (Diamox®), methazolamide (Neptazane®) 	1 gtt OS/OD tid Diamox®: 500 mg PO bid	↓ aqueous production	Must ask about sulfa allergy Generally local side effects with topical preparations Oral: diuresis, fatigue, paresthesias, GI upset, etc.
Parasympathomimetic (cholinergic stimulating) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • pilocarpine (Pilopine®) • carbachol 	1-2 gtts OS/OD tid/qid	↑ TM outflow	Miosis ↓ night vision ↑ GI motility Brow ache Headache ↓ heart rate
Prostaglandin Analogues <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • latanoprost (Xalatan®) • bimatoprost (Lumigan®) 	1 gtt OS/OD qhs	↑ uveoscleral outflow (uveoscleral responsible for 20% of drainage)	Iris color change Periocular skin pigmentation Lash growth Conjunctival hyperemia

Cosopt® = timolol + dorzolamide; Combigan® = timolol + brimonidine; gtt = drop, gtts = drops

WET AGE-RELATED MACULAR DEGENERATION MEDICATIONS**VEGF Inhibitors**

- block VEGF which prevents ocular angiogenesis and further development of choroidal neovascularization
- administered via intravitreal injections
- pegaptanib (Macugen®) is a selective anti-VEGF targeting VEGF isoform 165 (no longer widely used)

- ranibizumab (Lucentis®) is a non-selective anti-VEGF agent
- aflibercept (Eylea®) is an VEGF “trap” agent that binds VEGF-A and placental growth factor
- bevacizumab (Avastin®) is another non-selective anti-VEGF agent but is only FDA approved for metastatic breast cancer, colorectal cancer, and non-small cell lung cancer; therefore, its ophthalmologic use is off-label

TOPICAL OCULAR THERAPEUTIC DRUGS

NSAIDs

- used for less serious chronic inflammatory conditions
- e.g. ketorolac (Acular®), diclofenac (Voltaren®), nepafenac (Nevanac®) drops

Anti-Histamines

- used to relieve red and itchy eye, often in combination with decongestants
- sodium cromoglycate – stabilizes membranes

Decongestants

- weak adrenergic stimulating drugs (vasoconstrictor)
- e.g. naphazoline, phenylephrine
- rebound vasodilation with overuse; rarely can precipitate angle closure glaucoma

Antibiotics

- indications: bacterial conjunctivitis, keratitis, or blepharitis
- commonly as topical drops or ointments, may give systemically
- e.g. sulfonamide (sodium sulfacetamide, sulfisoxazole), gentamicin (Garamycin®), erythromycin, tetracycline, bacitracin, polymyxin B, fluoroquinolones (ciprofloxacin [Ciloxan®], ofloxacin [Ocuflox®], moxifloxacin [Vigamox®], gatifloxacin [Zymar®])

Corticosteroids

- e.g. fluorometholone (FML®), betamethasone, dexamethasone (Maxidex®), prednisolone (Pred Forte® 1%), rimexolone (Vexol®), loteprednol etabonate 0.5% (Lotamax®)
- primary care physicians should avoid prescribing topical corticosteroids due to risk of glaucoma, cataracts, and reactivation of HSV keratitis
- complications
 - potentiates HSV keratitis and fungal keratitis as well as masks symptoms
 - increased IOP, more rapidly in steroid responders (within weeks)
 - posterior subcapsular cataract (within months)

References

- ACCORD Study Group; ACCORD Eye Study Group, Chew EY, Ambrosius WT, Davis MD, et al. Effects of medical therapies on retinopathy progression in type 2 diabetes NEJM 2010;363:233-244
- Age-Related Eye Disease Study Research Group. A randomized, placebo-controlled, clinical trial of high-dose supplementation with vitamins C and E, beta carotene, and zinc for age-related macular degeneration and vision loss: AREDS report no. 8. Arch Ophthalmol 2001;119:1417-1436.
- Anderson DR, Normal Tension Glaucoma Study. Collaborative normal tension glaucoma study. Curr Opin Ophthalmol 2003;14:6-90.
- Atlas of ophthalmology. Available from: www.atlasophthalmology.com/atlas/frontpage.jsf.
- Bhagat N, Nagori S, Zarbin M. Post-traumatic Infectious Endophthalmitis. Surv Ophthalmol 2011;56:214-51.
- Bradford C. Basic ophthalmology for medical students and primary care residents, 7th ed. San Francisco: American Academy of Ophthalmology, 1999.
- CATT Research Group, Martin DF, Maguire MG, Ying GS, et al. Ranibizumab and bevacizumab for neovascular age-related macular degeneration. NEJM 2011;364:1897-1908.
- Elman MJ, Bressler NM, Qin H, et al. Expanded 2-year follow-up of ranibizumab plus prompt or deferred laser or triamcinolone plus prompt laser for diabetic macular edema. Ophthalmol 2011;118:609-614.
- Friedman N, Pineda R, Kaiser P. The Massachusetts eye and ear infirmary illustrated manual of ophthalmology. Toronto: WB Saunders, 1998.
- Gal RL, Vedula SS, Beck R. Corticosteroids for treating optic neuritis. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;4:CD001430.
- Glanville J, Patterson J, McCool R, et al. Efficacy and safety of widely used treatments for macular oedema secondary to retinal vein occlusion: a systematic review. BMC Ophthalmol 2014;14:7.
- Haller JA, Bandello F, Belfort R Jr, et al. Randomized, sham-controlled trial of dexamethasone intravitreal implant in patients with macula edema due to retinal vein occlusion. Ophthalmol 2010;117:1134-1146.
- Heijl A, Leske MC, Bengtsson B, et al. Reduction of intraocular pressure and glaucoma progression: results from the early manifest glaucoma trial. Arch Ophthalmol 2002;120:1268-1279.
- Kanski JJ. Clinical Ophthalmology: A systematic approach, 6th ed. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann, 2007.
- Lichter PR, Musch DC, Gillespie BW, et al. Interim clinical outcomes in the collaborative initial glaucoma treatment study comparing initial treatment randomized to medications or surgery. Ophthalmol 2001;108:1943-1953.
- Maguire AM, High KA, Auricchio A, et al. Age-dependent effects of RPE65 gene therapy for Leber's congenital amaurosis: a phase 1 dose-escalation trial. Lancet 2009;374:1597-1605.
- Mintz-Hittner HA, Kennedy KA, Chuang AZ, BEAT-ROP Cooperative Group. Efficacy of intravitreal bevacizumab for stage 3+ retinopathy of prematurity. NEJM 2011;364:603-615.
- Pushker N, Tejwani LK, Bajaj MS, et al. Role of oral corticosteroids in orbital cellulitis. Am J Ophthalmol 2013;156:178-183.
- Rayapudi S, Schwartz SG, Wang X, et al. Vitamin A and fish oils for retinitis pigmentosa Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;12:CD008428
- Sheikh A, Hurwitz B, van Schayck CP, et al. Antibiotics versus placebo for acute bacterial conjunctivitis. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;9:CD001211.Smetana GW, Shmerling RH. Does this patient have temporal arteritis? JAMA 2002;287:92-101.
- Stein R, Stein H. Management of ocular emergencies, 4th ed. Montreal: Mediconcept, 2006.
- Tasman W, Jaeger EA. Duane's ophthalmology, 2011 ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2010.
- Turner A, Rabiou M. Patching for corneal abrasion. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2006;2:CD004764.
- University of Michigan Kellogg Eye Centre. Available from: www.kellogg.umich.edu/theeyesaveit/index.html.
- Vass C, Him C, Sycha T, et al. Medical interventions for primary open-angle glaucoma and ocular hypertension. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2007;4:CD003167.
- Vedula SS, Krzystolik MG. Antiangiogenic therapy with anti-vascular endothelial growth factor modalities for neovascular age-related macular degeneration. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2008;2:CD005139.
- Wilhelmus KR. Antiviral treatment and other therapeutic interventions for herpes simplex virus epithelial keratitis. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2010;12:CD002898.
- Wilson FM. Practical ophthalmology: a manual for beginning residents, 4th ed. American Academy of Ophthalmology, 2005.
- Wong AM. New concepts concerning the neural mechanisms of amblyopia and their clinical implications. Can J Ophthalmol 2012;47:399-409.

Thomas Gregory, Michel Saccone, and Ian Whatley, chapter editors

Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Alexa Bramall, EBM editor

Dr. Michael Blankstein, Dr. Nathaniel Nelms, Dr. Markku T. Nousiainen, and

Dr. Herbert P. von Schroeder, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Hip	26
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Hip Dislocation	
Differential Diagnosis of Joint Pain	4	Hip Fracture	
Fractures – General Principles	5	Arthritis of the Hip	
Fracture Description		Hip Dislocation after Total Hip Arthroplasty	
Management of Fractures			
Fracture Healing			
General Fracture Complications			
Articular Cartilage	6	Femur	29
Orthopedic X-Ray Imaging	7	Femoral Diaphysis Fracture	
Orthopedic Emergencies	8	Distal Femoral Fracture	
Trauma Patient Workup		Knee	30
Open Fractures		Evaluation of Knee	
Cauda Equina Syndrome		Cruciate Ligament Tears	
Compartment Syndrome		Collateral Ligament Tears	
Osteomyelitis		Meniscal Tears	
Septic Joint		Quadriceps/Patellar Tendon Rupture	
Shoulder	11	Dislocated Knee	
Shoulder Dislocation		Patella	33
Rotator Cuff Disease		Patellar Fracture	
Acromioclavicular Joint Pathology		Patellar Dislocation	
Clavicle Fracture		Patellofemoral Syndrome	
Frozen Shoulder		Tibia	35
Humerus	15	Tibial Plateau Fracture	
Proximal Humeral Fracture		Tibial Shaft Fracture	
Humeral Shaft Fracture		Ankle	36
Elbow	16	Evaluation of Ankle and Foot Complaints	
Supracondylar Fracture		Ankle Fracture	
Radial Head Fracture		Ligamentous Injuries	
Olecranon Fracture		Foot	37
Elbow Dislocation		Talar Fracture	
Epicondylitis		Calcaneal Fracture	
Forearm	18	Achilles Tendonitis	
Radius and Ulna Fracture		Achilles Tendon Rupture	
Monteggia Fracture		Plantar Fasciitis (Heel Spur Syndrome)	
Nightstick Fracture		Bunions (Hallux Valgus)	
Galeazzi Fracture		Metatarsal Fracture	
Wrist	20	Pediatric Orthopedics	39
Colles' Fracture		Fractures in Children	
Smith's Fracture		Stress Fractures	
Complications of Wrist Fractures		Evaluation of the Limping Child	
Scaphoid Fracture		Epiphyseal Injury	
Hand	PL22	Slipped Capital Femoral Epiphysis	
Spine	21	Developmental Dysplasia of the Hip	
Fractures of the Spine		Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease (Coxa Plana)	
Cervical Spine		Osgood-Schlatter Disease	
Thoracolumbar Spine		Congenital Talipes Equinovarus (Club Foot)	
Pelvis	25	Scoliosis	
Pelvic Fracture		Bone Tumors	43
		Benign Active Bone Tumors	
		Benign Aggressive Bone Tumors	
		Malignant Bone Tumors	
		Common Medications	47
		References	48

Acronyms

AC	acromioclavicular	FAI	femoroacetabular impingement	OA	osteoarthritis
ACL	anterior cruciate ligament	FOOSH	fall on outstretched hand	ORIF	open reduction internal fixation
AIN	anterior interosseous nerve	GA	general anesthetic	PCL	posterior cruciate ligament
AP	anterior posterior	HO	heterotopic ossification	PE	pulmonary embolism
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome	I&D	incision and drainage	PIN	posterior interosseous nerve
AVN	avascular necrosis	IM	intramedullary	RA	rheumatoid arthritis
CA	coracoacromial	LCL	lateral collateral ligament	ROM	range of motion
CC	coracoclavicular	MCL	medial collateral ligament	RSD	reflex sympathetic dystrophy
CRPS	complex regional pain syndrome	MT	metatarsal	SCFE	slipped capital femoral epiphysis
DDH	developmental dysplasia of the hip	MTP	metatarsophalangeal	SLAP	superior lateral, anterior posterior
DRUJ	distal radioulnar joint	MVC	motor vehicle collision	SN	sensitivity
DVT	deep vein thrombosis	NVS	neurovascular status	THA	total hip arthroplasty
EtOH	ethanol/alcohol	NWB	non-weight bearing	#	fracture

Basic Anatomy Review

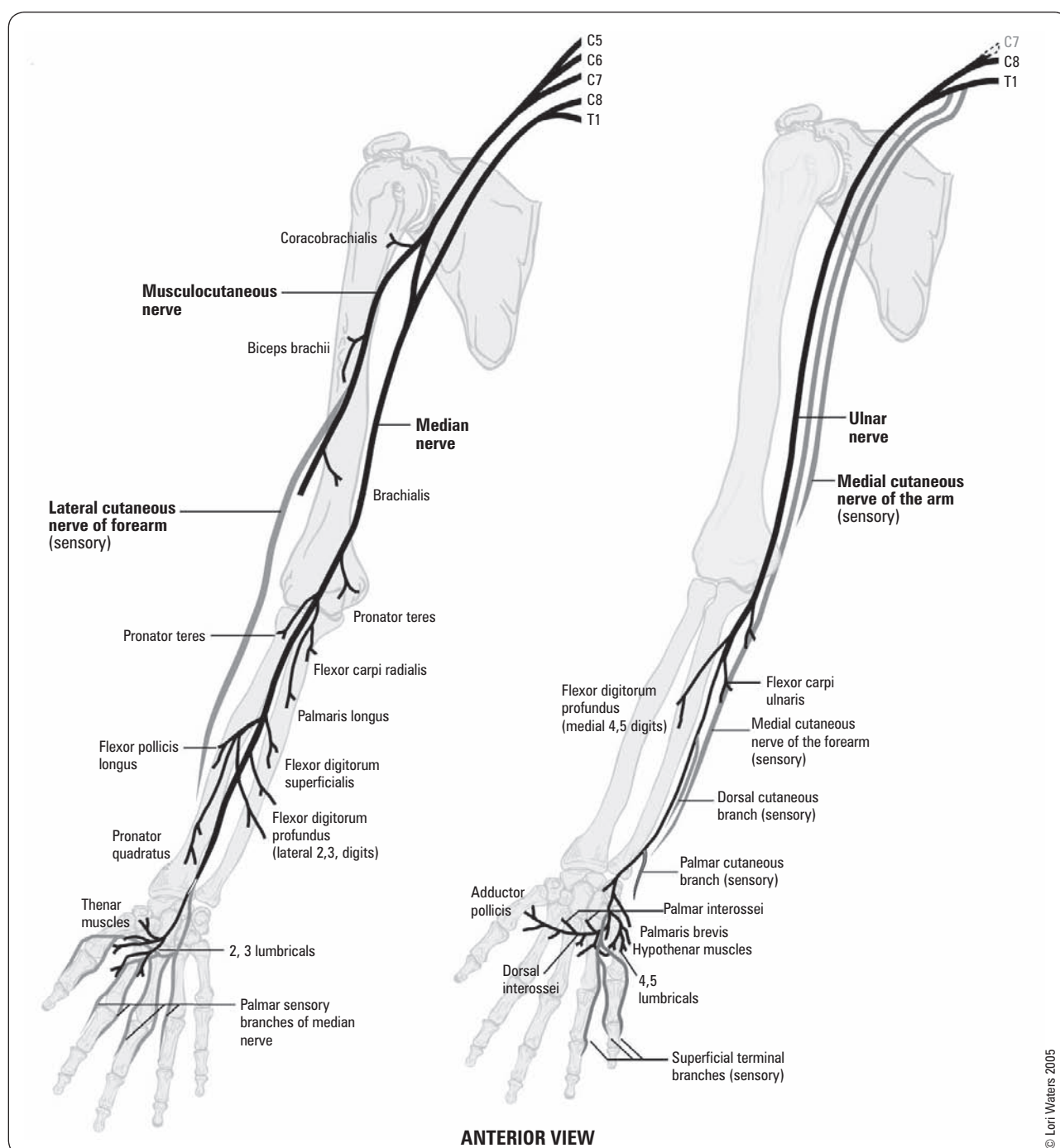


Figure 1. Median, musculocutaneous, and ulnar nerves: innervation of upper limb muscles

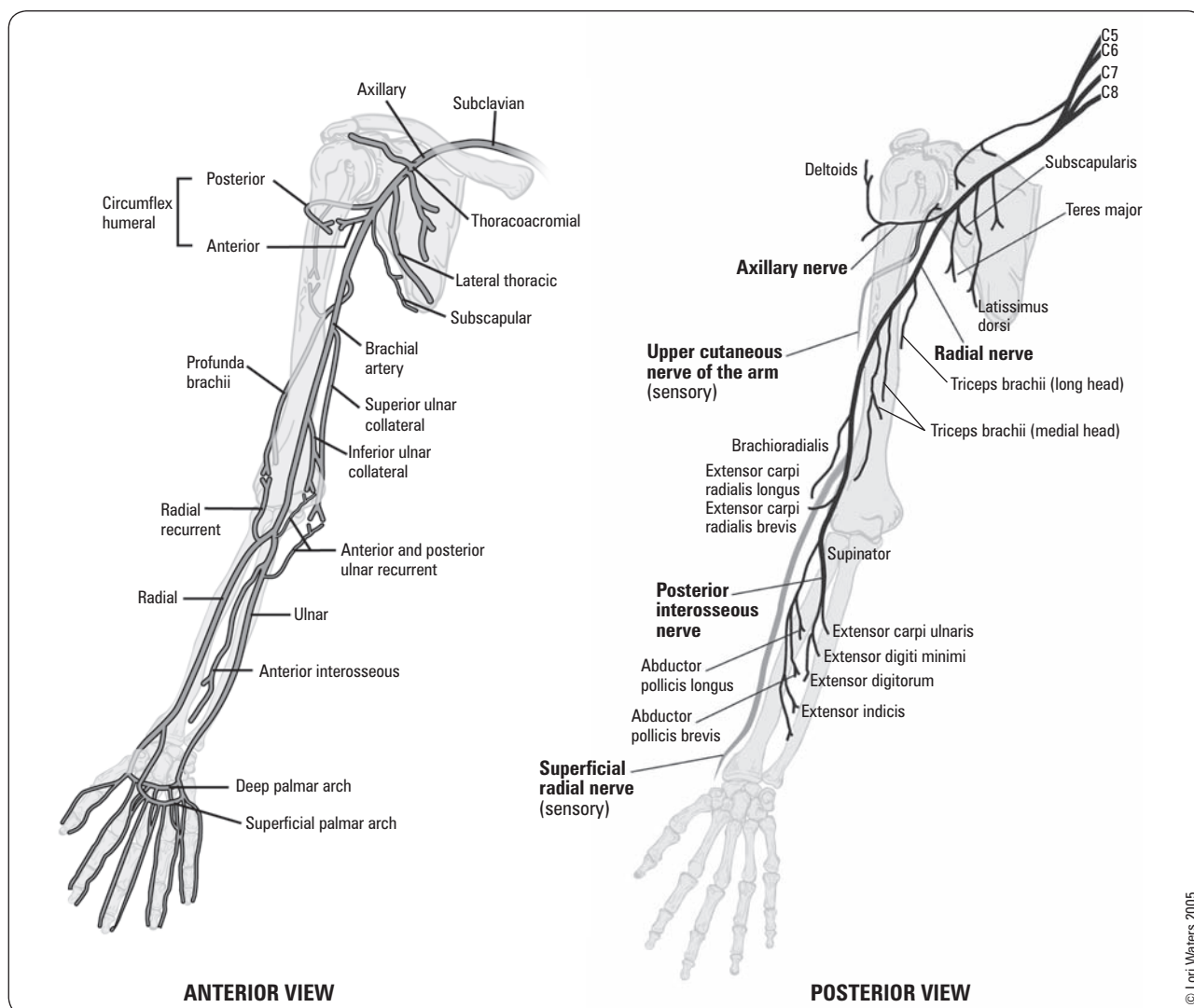


Figure 2. (Left) Blood supply to the upper limb (Right) Axillary and radial nerves: innervation of the upper limb

Table 1. Sensory and Motor Innervation of the Nerves in the Upper and Lower Extremities

Nerve	Motor	Sensory	Nerve Roots
Axillary	Deltoid/Teres Minor	Lateral Upper Arm (Sergeant's Patch)	C5, C6
Musculocutaneous	Biceps/Brachialis	Lateral Forearm	C5, C6
Radial	Triceps Wrist/Thumb/Finger Extensors	Lateral Dorsum of the Hand Medial Upper Forearm	C5, C6, C7, C8
Median	Wrist Flexors and Abductors Flexion of the 1st-3rd Digits	Volar Thumb to Radial half of 4th Digit	C6, C7
Ulnar	Wrist Flexors and Adductors Flexion of the 4th-5th Digits	Medial Forearm Medial Dorsum and Volar of Hand (Ulnar half of 4th and 5th Digit)	C8, T1
Tibial	Ankle Plantar Flexion Knee Flexion Great Toe Flexion	Sole of Foot	L5, S1
Superficial Peroneal	Ankle Eversion	Dorsum of Foot	L5, S1
Deep Peroneal	Ankle Dorsiflexion and Inversion Great Toe Extension	1st Web Space	L5, S1
Sural		Lateral Foot	S1, S2
Saphenous		Anteromedial Ankle	L3, L4

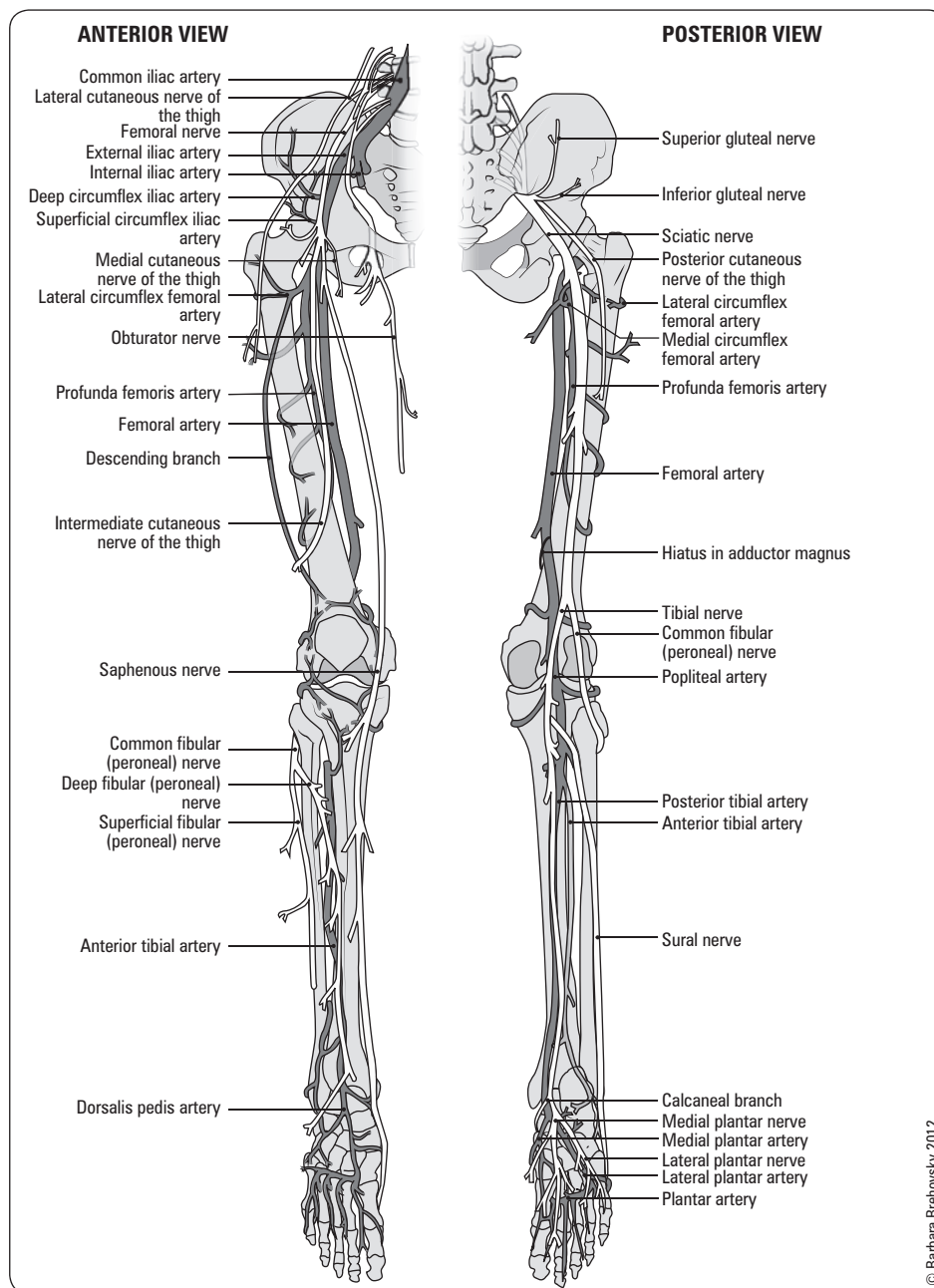


Figure 3. Nerves and arteries of lower limbs

Differential Diagnosis of Joint Pain

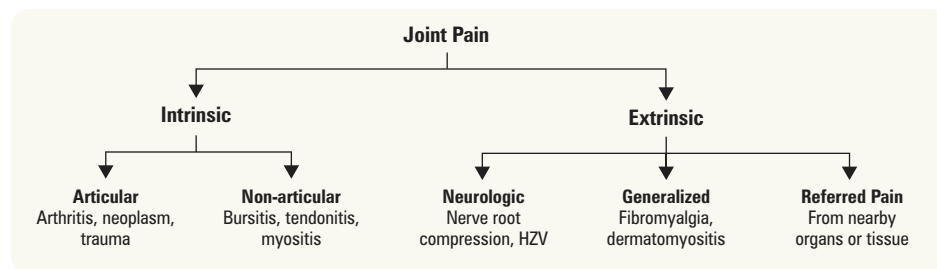


Figure 4. Intrinsic vs. extrinsic joint pain

Fractures – General Principles



Fracture Description

1. Integrity of Skin/Soft Tissue

- closed: skin/soft tissue over and near fracture is intact
- open: skin/soft tissue over and near fracture is lacerated or abraded, fracture exposed to outside environment
 - signs: continuous bleeding from puncture site or fat droplets in blood are suggestive of an open fracture

2. Location

- epiphyseal: end of bone, forming part of the adjacent joint
- metaphyseal: the flared portion of the bone at the ends of the shaft
- diaphyseal: the shaft of a long bone (proximal, middle, distal)
- physis: growth plate

3. Orientation/Fracture Pattern

- transverse: fracture line perpendicular to long axis of bone; result of direct high energy force
- oblique: angular fracture line; result of angular or rotational force
- butterfly: fracture site fragment which looks like a butterfly
- segmental: a separate segment of bone bordered by fracture lines; result of high energy force
- spiral: complex, multi-planar fracture line; result of rotational force, low energy
- comminuted/multi-fragmentary: >2 fracture fragments
- intra-articular: fracture line crosses articular cartilage and enters joint
- avulsion: tendon or ligament tears/pulls off bone fragment; often in children, high energy
- compression/impacted: impaction of bone; typical sites are vertebrae or proximal tibia
- torus: a buckle fracture of one cortex, often in children (see Figure 51, OR39)
- greenstick: an incomplete fracture of one cortex, often in children (see Figure 51, OR39)
- pathologic: fracture through bone weakened by disease/tumor

4. Displacement

- nondisplaced: fracture fragments are in anatomic alignment
- displaced: fracture fragments are not in anatomic alignment
- distracted: fracture fragments are separated by a gap (opposite of impacted)
- impacted: fracture fragments are compressed, resulting in shortened bone
- angulated: direction of fracture apex, e.g. varus/valgus
- translated/shifted: percentage of overlapping bone at fracture site
- rotated: fracture fragment rotated about long axis of bone

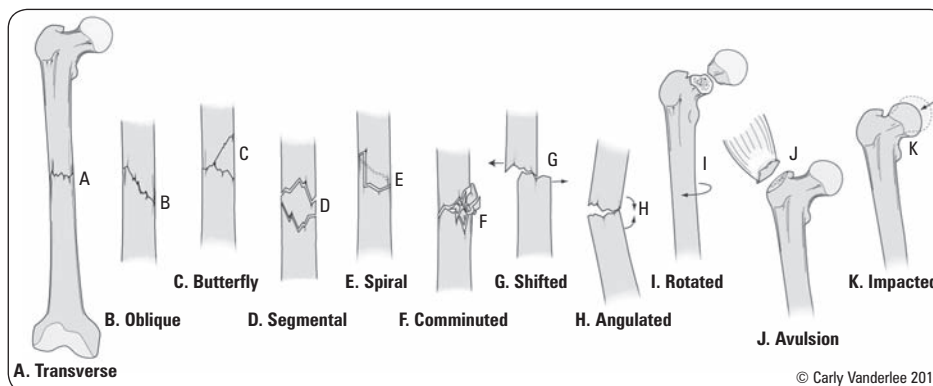


Figure 6. Fracture types

Management of Fractures

- ABCs, primary survey and secondary survey (ATLS protocol)
 - rule out other fractures/injuries
 - rule out open fracture (see sidebar, OR6)
- AMPLE history: Allergies, Medications, Past medical history, Last meal, Events surrounding injury
 - consider pathologic fracture with history of only minor trauma
- analgesia
- imaging
- splint extremity

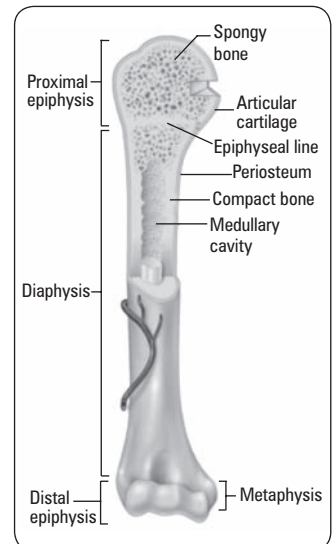


Figure 5. Schematic diagram of the long bone



X-Ray Rule of 2s

- 2 sides = bilateral
- 2 views = AP + lateral
- 2 joints = joint above + below
- 2 times = before + after reduction



Varus/Valgus Angulation

- Varus** = Apex away from midline
- Valgus** = Apex toward midline



Displacement

- Refers to position of the distal fragment relative to the proximal fragment



Quick Nerve Exam

- "Thumbs Up": PIN (Radial Nerve)
- "OK Sign": AIN (Median Nerve)
- "Spread Fingers": Ulnar Nerve



Reasons for Splinting

- Pain control
- Reduces further damage to vessels, nerves, and skin
- Decreases risk of inadvertently converting closed to open fracture
- Facilitates patient transport

1. obtain the reduction (for appropriate IV sedation see Table 28, OR47)
 - closed reduction
 - ♦ apply traction in the long axis of the limb
 - ♦ reverse the mechanism that produced the fracture
 - ♦ reduce with IV sedation and muscle relaxation (fluoroscopy can be used if available)
 - indications for open reduction
 - ♦ “NO CAST”
 - ♦ other indications include
 - failed closed reduction
 - not able to cast or apply traction due to site (e.g. hip fracture)
 - pathologic fractures
 - potential for improved function with ORIF
 - ALWAYS re-check NVS after reduction and obtain post-reduction x-ray
2. maintain the reduction
 - external stabilization: splints, casts, traction, external fixator
 - internal stabilization: percutaneous pinning, extramedullary fixation (screws, plates, wires), IM fixation (rods)
 - follow-up: evaluate bone healing
3. rehabilitate to regain function and avoid joint stiffness



Indications for Open Reduction

NO CAST

Non-union

Open fracture

Neurovascular Compromise

Intra-Articular fracture

Salter-Harris 3,4,5

PolyTrauma

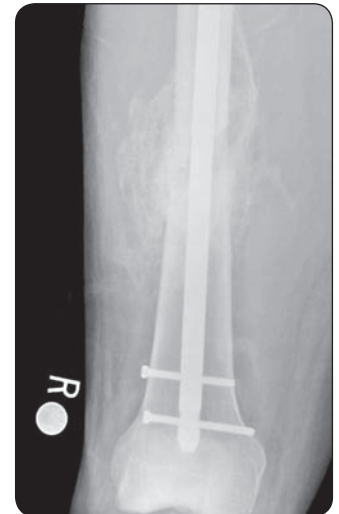


Figure 7. Heterotopic ossification of femoral diaphysis after femur fracture and IM nailing



Heterotopic Ossification

The formation of bone in abnormal locations (e.g. in muscle), secondary to pathology



Avascular Necrosis

Ischemia to bone due to disrupted blood supply; commonly in bones covered by cartilage or with distal to proximal blood supply



Fracture Blister

Formation of vesicles or bullae that occur on edematous skin overlying a fractured bone

Fracture Healing

Normal Healing

Weeks 0-3	Hematoma, macrophages surround fracture site
Weeks 3-6	Osteoclasts remove sharp edges, callus forms within hematoma
Weeks 6-12	Bone forms within the callus, bridging fragments
Months 6-12	Cortical gap is bridged by bone
Years 1-2	Normal architecture is achieved through remodelling

Figure 8. Stages of bone healing

Evaluation of Healing: Tests of Union

- clinical: no longer tender to palpation or stressing on physical exam
- x-ray: trabeculae cross fracture site, visible callus bridging site on at least 3 of 4 cortices

General Fracture Complications

Table 2. General Fracture Complications

	Early	Late
Local	Compartment syndrome Neurological injury Vascular injury Infection Implant failure Fracture blisters	Mal-/non-union AVN Osteomyelitis HO Post-traumatic OA Joint stiffness/adhesive capsulitis CRPS type I/RSD
Systemic	Sepsis DVT PE ARDS secondary to fat embolism Hemorrhagic shock	

Articular Cartilage

Properties

- 2-4 mm layer covering ends of articulating bones, provides nearly frictionless surface
- avascular (nutrition from synovial fluid), aneural, alymphatic
- composed of: collagen (90% is type II; gives tensile strength), water, proteoglycans (gives compressive strength), and chondrocytes

ARTICULAR CARTILAGE DEFECTS

Etiology

- overt trauma, repetitive minor trauma (such as patellar maltracking); common sports injury
- degenerative conditions such as early stage OA or osteochondritis dissecans

Clinical Features

- similar to symptoms of OA (joint line pain with possible effusion, etc.)
- often have predisposing factors, such as ligament injury, malalignment of the joint (varus/valgus), obesity, bone deficiency (AVN, osteochondritis dissecans, ganglion bone cysts), inflammatory arthropathy, and familial osteoarthritis
- may have symptoms of locking or catching related to the torn/displaced cartilage

Investigations

- x-ray (to rule out bony defects and check alignment)
- MRI
- diagnostic arthroscopy (treatment is often guided by what is seen during arthroscopy)

Table 3. Outerbridge Classification of Chondral Defects

Grade	Chondral Damage
I	Softening and swelling of cartilage
II	Fragmentation and fissuring <1/2" in diameter
III	Fragmentation and fissuring >1/2" in diameter
IV	Erosion of cartilage down to bone

Treatment

- individualized; must take into account patient factors (age, skeletal maturity, activity level, etc.) and defect factors (Outerbridge classification, subchondral bone involvement, etc.)
- non-operative: rest, NSAIDs, bracing
- operative: microfracture, osteochondral grafting (autograft or allograft), autologous chondrocyte implantation

Orthopedic X-Ray Imaging

General Principles

- x-ray 1 joint above and 1 below
- obtain at least 2 orthogonal views ± specialized views

Table 4. Orthopedic X-Ray Imaging

Site	Injury	X-Ray Views
Shoulder	Anterior dislocation	AP
	Posterior dislocation	Axillary ± stress view with 10 lb in hand
	AC	Trans-scapular
	Frozen shoulder	Zanca view (10-15 cephalic tilt)
Arm	Humerus #	AP
		Lateral
		Trans-scapular
		Axillary
Elbow/Forearm	Supracondylar #	AP
	Radial head #	Lateral
	Monteggia #	
	Night stick #	
	Galeazzi #	
Wrist	Colles' #	AP
	Smith #	Lateral
	Scaphoid #	Scaphoid (wrist extension and ulnar deviation x 2 wk)
Pelvis	Pelvic #	AP pelvis
		Inlet and outlet views
		Judet views (obturator and iliac oblique for acetabular #)
Hip	Femoral head/neck #	AP
	Intertrochanteric #	Lateral
	Arthritis	Frog-leg lateral
	SCFE	Dunn
	FAI	



CRPS/RSD

An exaggerated response to an insult in the extremities; characterized by symptoms of hyperalgesia and allodynia, with signs of autonomic dysfunction (temperature asymmetry, mottling, hair or nail changes)

Table 4. Orthopedic X-Ray Imaging (continued)

Site	Injury	X-Ray Views
Knee	Knee dislocation	AP standing, lateral
	Femur/tibia #	Skyline – tangential view with knees flexed at 45° to see patellofemoral joint
	Patella #	
	Patella dislocation	
	Patella femoral syndrome	
	Tibia shaft #	
Ankle	Ankle #	AP
		Lateral
		Mortise view: ankle at 15° of internal rotation
Foot	Talar #	AP
	Calcaneal #	Lateral
Spine	Compression #	AP spine
	Burst #	AP odontoid
	Cervical spine #	Lateral
		Oblique
		Swimmer's view: lateral view with arm abducted 180° to evaluate C7-T1 junction if lateral view is inadequate
		Lateral flexion/extension view: evaluate subluxation of cervical vertebrae

Orthopedic Emergencies

Trauma Patient Workup

Etiology

- high energy trauma, e.g. MVC, fall from height
- may be associated with spinal injuries or life-threatening visceral injuries

Clinical Presentation

- local swelling, tenderness, deformity of the limbs, and instability of the pelvis or spine
- decreased level of consciousness, hypotension/hypovolemia
- consider involvement of EtOH or other substances

Investigations

- trauma survey (see [Emergency Medicine, ER5](#))
- x-rays: lateral cervical spine, AP chest, AP pelvis, AP and lateral of all bones suspected to be injured
- other views of pelvis: AP, inlet, and outlet; Judet views for acetabular fracture (for classification of pelvic fractures see [Table 19, OR26](#))

Treatment

- ABCDEs and initiate resuscitation for life threatening injuries
- assess genitourinary injury (rectal exam/vaginal exam mandatory)
- external or internal fixation of all fractures
- DVT prophylaxis

Complications

- **hemorrhage – life threatening** (may produce signs and symptoms of hypovolemic shock)
- fat embolism syndrome (SOB, hypoxemia, petechial rash, thrombocytopenia, and neurological symptoms)
- venous thrombosis – DVT and PE
- bladder/urethral/bowel injury
- neurological damage
- persistent pain/stiffness/limp/weakness in affected extremities
- post-traumatic OA of joints with intra-articular fractures
- sepsis if missed open fracture

Open Fractures

Definition

- fractured bone and hematoma in communication with the external environment

Emergency Measures

- removal of obvious foreign material
- irrigate with normal saline if grossly contaminated



Buck's Traction

A system of weights, pulleys, and ropes that are attached to the end of a patient's bed exerting a longitudinal force on the distal end of a fracture, improving its length, alignment, and rotation



Orthopedic Emergencies

VON CHOP

Vascular compromise

Open fracture

Neurological compromise/cauda equina syndrome

Compartment syndrome

Hip dislocation

Osteomyelitis/septic arthritis

Unstable Pelvic fracture



Antibiotics for Preventing Infection in Open Limb Fractures

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2004;1:CD003764

Purpose: To review the evidence regarding the effectiveness of antibiotics in the initial treatment of open fractures of the limbs.

Methods: Randomized or quasi randomized controlled trials comparing antibiotic treatment with placebo or no treatment in preventing acute wound infection were identified and reviewed. Data were extracted and pooled for analysis.

Results: Eight studies (n=1,106) were reviewed. The use of antibiotics had a protective effect against early infection compared with no antibiotics or placebo (RRR=0.43, 95% CI 0.29, 0.65; ARR=0.07, 95% CI 0.03=0.10).

Conclusions: Antibiotics reduce the incidence of early infections in open fractures of the limbs.



33% of patients with open fractures have multiple injuries

- cover wound with sterile dressings
- immediate IV antibiotics
- tetanus toxoid or immunoglobulin as needed
- reduce and splint fracture
- NPO and prepare for OR (blood work, consent, ECG, CXR)
 - operative irrigation and debridement within 6-8 h to decrease risk of infection
 - traumatic wound often left open to drain but vacuum-assisted closure dressing may be used
 - re-examine with repeat I&D in 48 h

Table 5. Gustilo Classification of Open Fractures

Gustilo Grade	Length of Open Wound	Description	Prophylactic Antibiotic Regimen
I	<1 cm	Minimal contamination and soft tissue injury Simple or minimally comminuted fracture	First generation cephalosporin (cefazolin) for 3 d If allergy use fluoroquinolone If MRSA positive use vancomycin
II	1-10 cm	Moderate contamination Soft tissue injury	First generation cephalosporin (cefazolin) for 3 d plus Gram-negative coverage (gentamicin) for at least 3 d
III*	>10 cm	IIIA: Extensive soft tissue injury with adequate ability of soft tissue to cover wound IIIB: Extensive soft tissue injury with periosteal stripping and bone exposure; inadequate soft tissue to cover wound IIIC: Vascular injury/compromise	As per Grade II For soil contamination, penicillin is added for clostridial coverage

*Any high energy, comminuted fracture, shot gun, farmyard/soil/water contamination, exposure to oral flora, or fracture >8 h old is immediately classified as Grade III



Controversies in Initial Management of Open Fractures

Scand J Surg 2014;103(2):132-137

Study: Literature review examining the initial management of open fractures. 40 studies included.

Findings:

- A first generation cephalosporin (or clindamycin) should be administered upon arrival. In general, 24 h of antibiotics after each debridement is sufficient to reduce infection rates.
- Although cultures are taken from delayed (>24 h) or infected injuries, it may not be necessary to routinely take post-debridement cultures in open fractures.
- Open fractures should be debrided as soon as possible although the "6-hr rule" is not generally valid.
- Wounds should be closed within 7 d once soft tissue has stabilized and all non-viable tissue removed.
- Negative pressure wound therapy (NPWT) has been shown to decrease infection rates in open fractures.

Cauda Equina Syndrome

- see [Neurosurgery](#), NS26



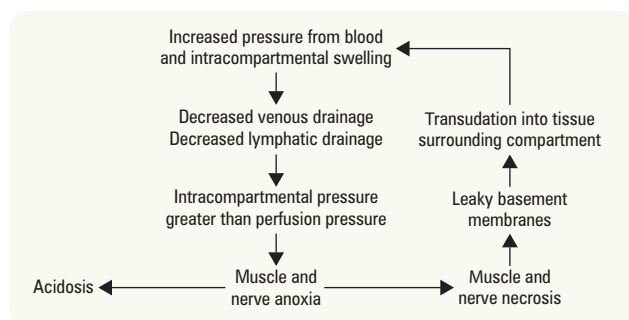
Compartment Syndrome

Definition

- increased interstitial pressure in an anatomical compartment (forearm, calf) where muscle and tissue are bounded by fascia and bone (fibro-osseous compartment) with little room for expansion
- interstitial pressure exceeds capillary perfusion pressure leading to muscle necrosis (in 4-6 h) and eventually nerve necrosis

Etiology

- intracompartmental: fracture (particularly tibial shaft fractures, pediatric supracondylar fractures, and forearm fractures), crush injury, ischemia-reperfusion injury
- extracompartmental: constrictive dressing (circumferential cast, poor positioning during surgery), circumferential burn

**Figure 9. Pathogenesis of compartment syndrome**

Clinical Features

- pain with active contraction of compartment
- pain with passive stretch
- swollen, tense compartment
- suspicious history
- 5 Ps: late sign – do not wait for these to develop to make the diagnosis!



Cauda equina syndrome is a surgical emergency



5 Ps of Compartment Syndrome

Pain: out of proportion for injury and not relieved by analgesics

- Increased pain with passive stretch of compartment muscles (most specific sign)

Pallor: late finding

Paresthesia

Paralysis: late finding

Pulselessness: late finding

Investigations

- usually not necessary as compartment syndrome is a clinical diagnosis
- in children or unconscious patients where clinical exam is unreliable, compartment pressure monitoring with catheter AFTER clinical diagnosis is made (normal = 0 mmHg; elevated ≥ 30 mmHg or ≤ 30 mmHg of diastolic BP)

Treatment

- non-operative
 - remove constrictive dressings (casts, splints), elevate limb at the level of the heart
- operative
 - urgent fasciotomy
 - 48-72 h post-operative: wound closure \pm necrotic tissue debridement

Complications

- rhabdomyolysis, renal failure secondary to myoglobinuria
- Volkmann's ischemic contracture: ischemic necrosis of muscle, followed by secondary fibrosis and finally calcification; especially following supracondylar fracture of humerus



Most important sign is increased pain with passive stretch. Most important symptom is pain out of proportion to injury



Rapid progression of signs and symptoms (over hours) necessitates need for serial examinations

**Plain Film Findings of Osteomyelitis**

- Soft tissue swelling
- Lytic bone destruction*
- Periosteal reaction (formation of new bone, especially in response to #)*

*Generally not seen on plain films until 10-12 d after onset of infection



Acute osteomyelitis is a medical emergency which requires an early diagnosis and appropriate antimicrobial and surgical treatment

Osteomyelitis

Etiology

- most commonly caused by *Staphylococcus aureus*
- mechanism of spread: hematogenous (most common) vs. direct-inoculation vs. contiguous focus
- risk factors: recent trauma/surgery, immunocompromised patients, DM, IV drug use, poor vascular supply, peripheral neuropathy

Clinical Presentation

- symptoms: pain and fever
- on exam: erythema, tenderness, edema common \pm abscess/draining sinus tract; impaired function/WB

Diagnosis

- see [Medical Imaging, MI24](#)
- workup includes: WBC and diff, ESR, CRP, blood culture, aspirate culture/bone biopsy

Table 6. Treatment of Osteomyelitis

Acute Osteomyelitis	Chronic Osteomyelitis
IV antibiotics 4-6 wk; started empirically and adjusted after obtaining blood and aspirate cultures \pm surgery (I&D) for abscess or significant involvement \pm hardware removal (if present)	Surgical debridement Antibiotics: both local (e.g. antibiotic beads) and systemic (IV)

Septic Joint

Etiology

- most commonly caused by *Staphylococcus aureus* in adults
- consider coagulase-negative *Staphylococcus* in patients with prior joint replacement
- consider *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* in sexually active adults and newborns
- most common route of infection is hematogenous
- risk factors: age >80 yr, DM, RA, prosthetic joint, recent joint surgery, skin infection/ulcer, IV drug use, alcoholism, previous intra-articular corticosteroid injection

Clinical Presentation

- inability/refusal to bear weight, localized joint pain, erythema, warmth, swelling, pain on active and passive ROM, \pm fever

Investigations

- x-ray (to rule out fracture, tumor, metabolic bone disease), ESR, CRP, WBC, blood cultures
- joint aspirate: WBC $>80,000$ with $>90\%$ neutrophils, protein level >4.4 mg/dL, joint glucose level \ll blood glucose level, no crystals, positive Gram stain results
- listen for heart murmur (to reduce suspicion of infective endocarditis, use Duke Criteria)

Treatment

- IV antibiotics, empiric therapy (based on age and risk factors), adjust following joint aspirate C&S results
- for small joints: needle aspiration, serial if necessary until sterile
- for major joints such as knee, hip, or shoulder: urgent decompression and surgical drainage

**Plain Film Findings in a Septic Joint**

- Early (0-3 d): usually normal; may show soft-tissue swelling or joint space widening from localized edema
- Late (4-6 d): joint space narrowing and destruction of cartilage



Serial C-reactive protein (CRP) can be used to monitor response to therapy

Shoulder

Shoulder Dislocation

Prognosis

- recurrence rate depends on age of first dislocation: <20 yr = 65-95%; 20-40 yr = 60-70%; >40 yr = 2-4%

Specific Complications

- rotator cuff or capsular tear, shoulder stiffness
- injury to axillary nerve/artery, brachial plexus
- recurrent/unreduced dislocation (most common complication)

Investigations

- anterior dislocation x-rays (AP, trans-scapular, axillary views)
- posterior dislocation x-rays (AP, trans-scapular, axillary) or CT scan

Table 7. Anterior and Posterior Shoulder Dislocation

	Anterior Shoulder Dislocation (>90%)	Posterior Shoulder Dislocation (5%)
MECHANISM	Abducted arm is externally rotated/hyperextended, or blow to posterior shoulder Involuntary, usually traumatic; voluntary, atraumatic	Adducted, internally rotated, flexed arm FOOSH 3 Es (epileptic seizure, EtOH, electrocution) Blow to anterior shoulder
CLINICAL FEATURES		
Symptoms	Pain, arm slightly abducted and externally rotated with inability to internally rotate	Pain, arm is held in adduction and internal rotation; external rotation is blocked
Shoulder Exam	<p>"Squared off" shoulder</p> <p>Positive apprehension test: patient looks apprehensive with gentle shoulder abduction and external rotation to 90° since humeral head is pushed anteriorly and recreates feeling of anterior dislocation (see Figure 13)</p> <p>Positive relocation test: a posteriorly directed force applied during the apprehension test relieves apprehension since anterior subluxation is prevented</p> <p>Positive sulcus sign: presence of subacromial indentation with distal traction on humerus indicates inferior shoulder instability (see Figure 13)</p>	<p>Anterior shoulder flattening, prominent coracoid, palpable mass posterior to shoulder</p> <p>Positive posterior apprehension ("jerk") test: with patient supine, flex elbow 90° and adduct, internally rotate the arm while applying a posterior force to the shoulder; patient will "jerk" back with the sensation of subluxation (see Figure 13)</p> <p>Note: the posterior apprehension test is used to test for recurrent posterior instability, NOT for acute injury</p>
Neurovascular Exam Including	<p>Axillary nerve: sensory patch over deltoid and deltoid contraction</p> <p>Musculocutaneous nerve: sensory patch on lateral forearm and biceps contraction</p>	Full neurovascular exam as per anterior shoulder dislocation
RADIOGRAPHIC FINDINGS		
Axillary View	Humeral head is anterior	Humeral head is posterior
Trans-scapular 'Y' View	Humeral head is anterior to the center of the "Mercedes-Benz" sign	Humeral head is posterior to center of "Mercedes-Benz" sign
AP View	Sub-coracoid lie of the humeral head is most common	Partial vacancy of glenoid fossa (vacant glenoid sign) and >6 mm space between anterior glenoid rim and humeral head (positive rim sign), humeral head may resemble a lightbulb due to internal rotation (lightbulb sign)
Hill-Sachs and Bony Bankart Lesions	<p>± Hill-Sachs lesion: compression fracture of posterior humeral head due to forceful impaction of an anteriorly dislocated humeral head against the glenoid rim (see Figure 12)</p> <p>± bony Bankart lesion: avulsion of the anterior glenoid labrum (with attached bone fragments) from the glenoid rim (see Figure 12)</p>	<p>± reverse Hill-Sachs lesion (75% of cases): divot in anterior humeral head</p> <p>± reverse bony Bankart lesion: avulsion of the posterior glenoid labrum from the bony glenoid rim</p>



There are 4 Joints in the Shoulder:
glenohumeral, AC, sternoclavicular (SC), scapulothoracic

Shoulder passive ROM: abduction – 180°, adduction – 45°, flexion – 180°, extension – 45°, int. rotation – level of T4, ext. rotation – 40-45°



Factors Causing Shoulder Instability

- Shallow glenoid
- Loose capsule
- Ligamentous laxity

Frequency of Dislocations:

- Anterior shoulder > Posterior shoulder

The glenohumeral joint is the most commonly dislocated joint in the body since stability is sacrificed for motion

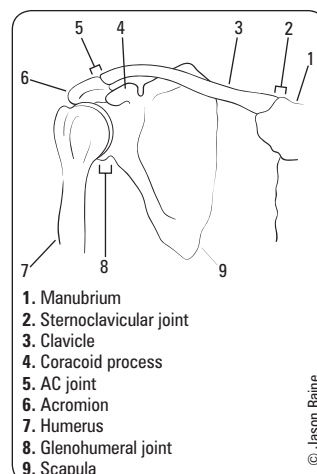


Figure 10. Shoulder joints



Posterior Shoulder Dislocation

Up to 60-80% are missed on initial presentation due to poor physical exam and radiographs

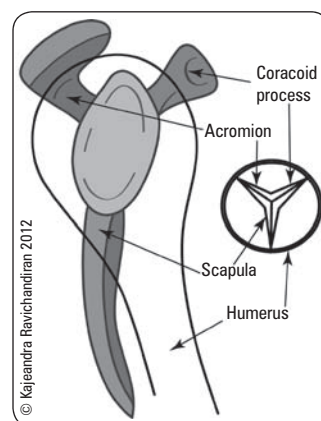
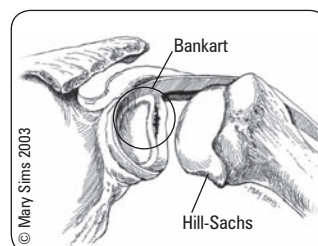
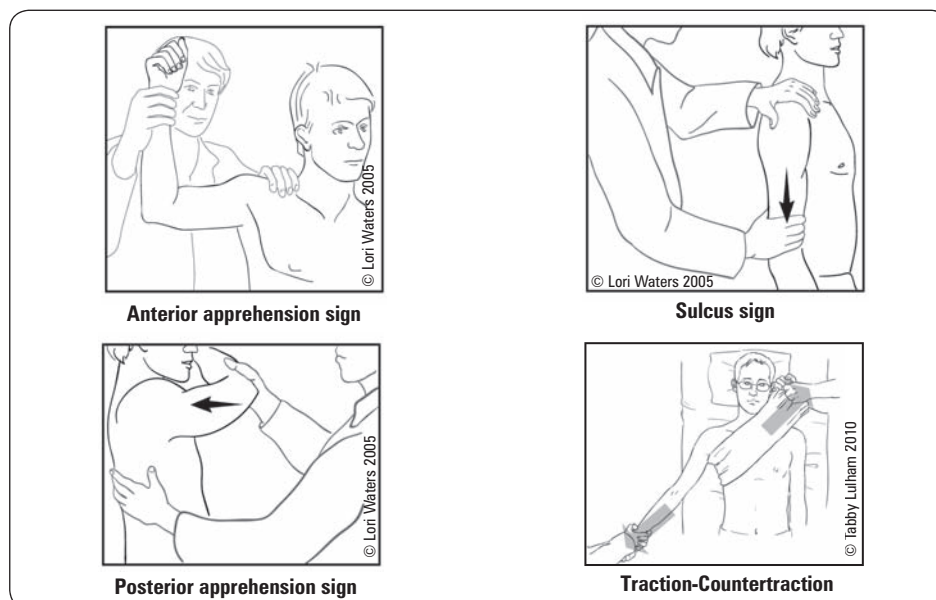


Figure 11. Mercedes-Benz

Table 7. Anterior and Posterior Shoulder Dislocation (continued)

	Anterior Shoulder Dislocation (>90%)	Posterior Shoulder Dislocation (5%)
TREATMENT	<p>Closed reduction with IV sedation and muscle relaxation</p> <p>Traction-countertraction: assistant stabilizes torso with a folded sheet wrapped across the chest while the surgeon applies gentle steady traction</p> <p>Stimson: while patient lies prone with arm hanging over table edge, hang a 5 lb weight on wrist for 15-20 min</p> <p>Hippocratic method: place heel into patient's axilla and apply traction to arm</p> <p>Cunningham's method: low risk, low pain; if not successful try above methods</p> <p>Obtain post-reduction x-rays</p> <p>Check post-reduction NVS</p> <p>Sling x 3 wk (avoid abduction and external rotation), followed by shoulder rehabilitation (dynamic stabilizer strengthening)</p>	<p>Closed reduction with sedation and muscle relaxation</p> <p>Inferior traction on a flexed elbow with pressure on the back of the humeral head</p> <p>Obtain post-reduction x-rays</p> <p>Check post-reduction NVS</p> <p>Sling in abduction and external rotation x 3 wk, followed by shoulder rehabilitation (dynamic stabilizer strengthening)</p>

**Figure 12. Posterior view of anterior dislocation causing Hill-Sachs and Bankart lesions****Figure 13. Shoulder maneuvers**

Rotator Cuff Disease

- rotator cuff consists of 4 muscles that act to stabilize humeral head within the glenoid fossa

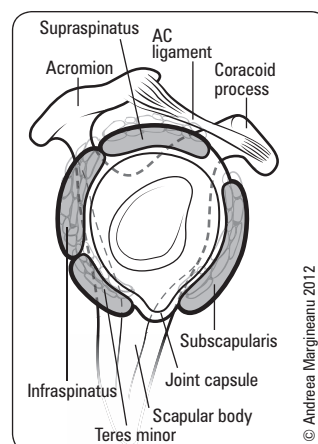
Table 8. Rotator Cuff Muscles

Muscle	Muscle Attachments		Nerve Supply	Muscle Function
	Proximal	Distal		
Supraspinatus	Scapula	Greater tuberosity of humerus	Suprascapular nerve	Abduction
Infraspinatus	Scapula	Greater tuberosity of humerus	Suprascapular nerve	External rotation
Teres Minor	Scapula	Greater tuberosity of humerus	Axillary nerve	External rotation
Subscapularis	Scapula	Lesser tuberosity of humerus	Subscapular nerve	Internal rotation and adduction

SPECTRUM OF DISEASE: IMPINGEMENT, TENDONITIS, MICRO OR MACRO TEARS

Etiology

- impingement: "painful arc syndrome", compression of rotator cuff tendons (primarily supraspinatus) and subacromial bursa between the head of the humerus and the undersurface of acromion, AC joint, and CA ligament
 - leads to bursitis, tendonitis, and if left untreated, can lead to rotator cuff thinning and tear

**Figure 14. Muscles of the rotator cuff**

- anything that leads to a narrow subacromial space
 - glenohumeral muscle weakness leading to abnormal motion of humeral head
 - scapular muscle weakness leading to abnormal motion of acromion
 - acromial abnormalities such as congenital narrow space or osteophyte formation

Clinical Features

- night pain and difficulty sleeping on affected side
- pain worse with active motion; passive movement generally permitted
- weakness and loss of ROM especially between 90°-130° (e.g. trouble with overhead activities)
- tenderness to palpation over greater tuberosity
- rule out bicep tendinosis: Speed and Yergason's tests; SLAP lesion: O'Brien's test

Table 9. Rotator Cuff Special Tests

Test	Examination	Positive Test
Jobe's Test	Supraspinatus: place the shoulder in 90° of abduction and 30° of forward flexion and internally rotate the arm so that the thumb is pointing toward the floor	Weakness with active resistance suggests a supraspinatus tear
Lift-off Test	Subscapularis: internally rotate arm so dorsal surface of hand rests on lower back; patient instructed to actively lift hand away from back against examiner resistance (use Belly Press Test if too painful)	Inability to actively lift hand away from back suggests a subscapularis tear
Posterior-Cuff Test	Infraspinatus and teres minor: arm positioned at patient's side in 90° of flexion; patient instructed to externally rotate arm against the resistance of the examiner	Weakness with active resistance suggests posterior cuff tear
Neer's Test	Rotator cuff impingement: passive shoulder flexion	Pain elicited between 130-170° suggests impingement
Hawkins-Kennedy Test	Rotator cuff impingement: shoulder flexion to 90° and passive internal rotation	Pain with internal rotation suggests impingement
Painful Arc Test	Rotator cuff tendinopathy: patient instructed to actively abduct the shoulder	Pain with abduction >90° suggests tendinopathy



Rotator Cuff Muscles

SITS

Supraspinatus
Infraspinatus
Teres minor
Subscapularis



Screening Out Rotator Cuff Tears

- No night pain (SN 87.7%)
- No painful arc (SN 97.5%)
- No impingement signs (SN 97.2%)
- No weakness

Returning to the bedside: Using the history and physical examination to identify rotator cuff tears
JAM Geri Soc 2000;48:1633-1637



Ruling in Rotator Cuff Tears – 98% probability of rotator cuff tear if all 3 of the following are present:

- Supraspinatus weakness
- External rotation weakness
- Positive impingement sign(s)

Diagnosis of rotator cuff tears. *Lancet* 2001; 357:769-770



Does this Patient with Shoulder Pain have Rotator Cuff Disease? The Rational Clinical Examination Systematic Review

JAMA 2013;310:837-847

Study: 5 studies of sufficient quality including 30-203 shoulders and a prevalence of RCD ranging from 33-81%.

Results/Conclusions: Among pain provocation tests, a positive painful arc test had the greatest specificity and sensitivity (SP 81%, SN 71%). Among strength tests, a positive external rotation lag test and internal rotation lag test were the most accurate for full-thickness tears (SP 47%, SN 94%; SP 97%, SN 83% respectively). The internal rotation lag test was therefore also the most accurate for identifying patients without a full-thickness tear. A positive drop arm test is helpful to identify patients with RCD (SN 24%, SP 93%).

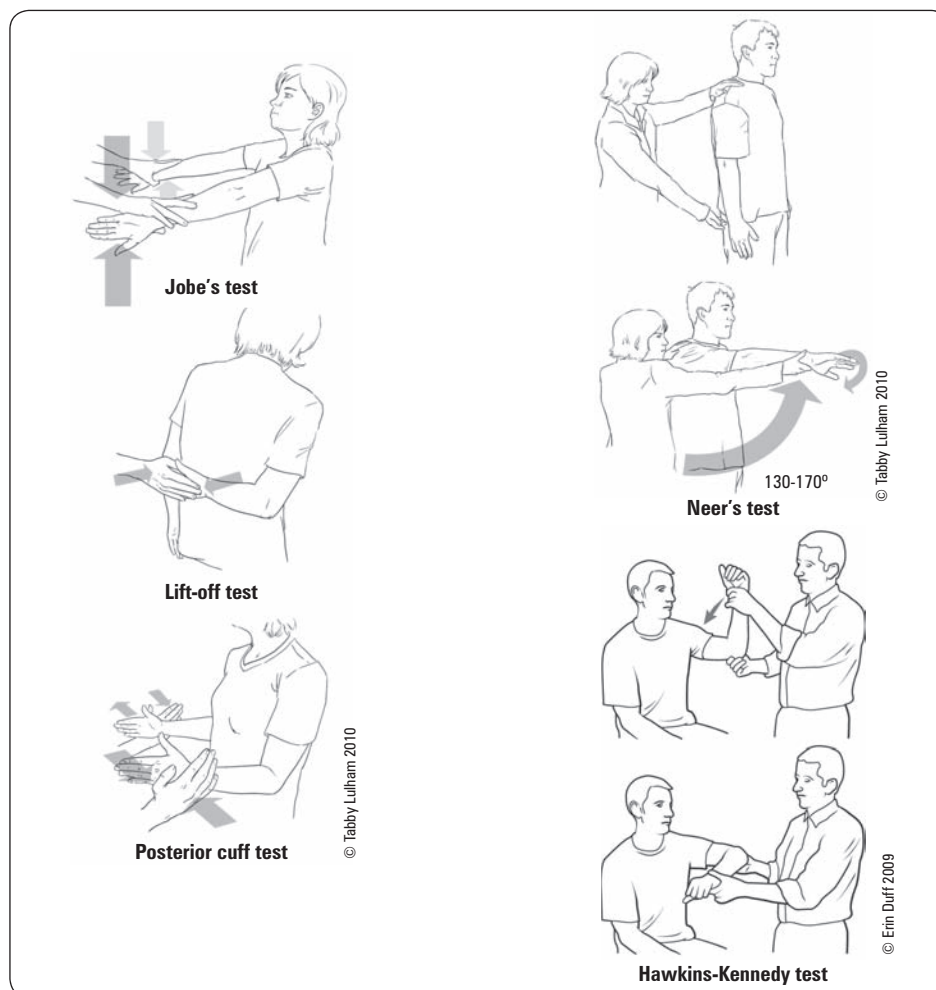


Figure 15. Rotator cuff tests

Investigations

- x-rays: AP view may show high riding humerus relative to glenoid, evidence of chronic tendonitis
- MRI: coronal/sagittal oblique and axial orientations are useful for assessing full/partial tears and tendinopathy ± arthrogram: geysers sign (injected dye leaks out of joint through rotator cuff tear)
- arthrogram: see full thickness tear, difficult to assess partial thickness tears



Treatment and Prognosis

- mild ("wear")
 - treatment is non-operative (physiotherapy, NSAIDs)
- moderate ("tear")
 - non-operative treatment ± steroid injection
- severe ("repair")
 - impingement that is refractory to 2-3 mo physiotherapy and 1-2 injections
 - may require arthroscopic or surgical repair, i.e. acromioplasty, rotator cuff repair

Acromioclavicular Joint Pathology

- 2 main ligaments attach clavicle to scapula: AC and CC ligaments

Mechanism

- fall onto shoulder with adducted arm (fall onto tip of shoulder)

Clinical Features

- palpate step deformity between distal clavicle and acromion (with dislocation)
- pain with adduction of shoulder and/or palpation over AC joint
- limited ROM



Pneumothorax or pulmonary contusion are potential complications of severe AC joint dislocation

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, Zanca view (10-15° cephalic tilt), axillary ± stress views (10 lb weight in patient's hand)

Treatment

- non-operative (**most common**): sling 1-3 wk, ice, analgesia, rehabilitation
- operative
 - indications: AC and CC ligaments are both torn and/or clavicle displaced posteriorly
 - procedure: number of different approaches involving AC/CC ligament reconstruction or screw/hook plate insertion

Table 10. Rockwood Classification of Acromioclavicular Joint Separation

Grade	Features	Treatment
I	Joint sprain, absence of complete tear of either ligament	Non-operative
II	Complete tear of AC ligament, incomplete tear of CC ligament, without marked elevation of lateral clavicular head	Non-operative
III	Complete tear of AC and CC ligaments, >5 mm elevation at AC joint, superior aspect of acromion is below the inferior aspect of the clavicle	Most non-operative, operative if laborer or high level athlete Will heal with step deformity, although most fully functional in 4-6 mo
IV-VI	Based on the anatomical structure the displaced clavicle is in proximity with	Operative in most cases

Clavicle Fracture

- incidence: proximal (5%), middle (80%), or distal (15%) third of clavicle
- common in children (unites rapidly without complications)

Mechanism

- fall on shoulder (87%), direct trauma to clavicle (7%), FOOSH (6%)

Clinical Features

- pain and tenting of skin
- arm is clasped to chest to splint shoulder and prevent movement

Treatment

- evaluate NVS of entire upper limb



Associated Injuries with Clavicle Fractures

- Up to 9% of clavicle fractures are associated with other fractures (most commonly rib fractures)
- Majority of brachial plexus injuries are associated with proximal third fractures

- medial and middle third clavicle fractures
 - figure-of-eight sling x 1-2 wk
 - early ROM and strengthening once pain subsides
 - if ends overlap >2 cm consider ORIF
- distal third clavicle fractures
 - undisplaced (with ligaments intact): sling x 1-2 wk
 - displaced (CC ligament injury): ORIF

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- cosmetic bump usually only complication
- shoulder stiffness, weakness with repetitive activity
- pneumothorax, brachial plexus injuries, and subclavian vessel (all very rare)

Frozen Shoulder (Adhesive Capsulitis)

Definition

- disorder characterized by progressive pain and stiffness of the shoulder usually resolving spontaneously after 18 mo

Mechanism

- primary adhesive capsulitis
 - idiopathic, usually associated with DM
 - usually resolves spontaneously in 9-18 mo
- secondary adhesive capsulitis
 - due to prolonged immobilization
 - shoulder-hand syndrome: CRPS/RSD characterized by arm and shoulder pain, decreased motion, and diffuse swelling
 - following MI, stroke, shoulder trauma
 - poorer outcomes

Clinical Features

- gradual onset (wk to mo) of diffuse shoulder pain with:
 - decreased active AND passive ROM
 - pain worse at night and often prevents sleeping on affected side
 - increased stiffness as pain subsides: continues for 6-12 mo after pain has disappeared

Investigations

- x-rays may be normal, or may show demineralization from disease

Treatment

- Freezing Phase
 - active and passive ROM (physiotherapy)
 - ♦ NSAIDs and steroid injections if limited by pain
- Thawing Phase
 - manipulation under anesthesia and early physiotherapy
 - ♦ arthroscopy for debridement/decompression



Conditions Associated with an Increased Incidence of Adhesive Capsulitis:

- Prolonged immobilization (most significant)
- Female gender
- Age >49 yr
- DM (5x)
- Cervical disc disease
- Hyperthyroidism
- Stroke
- Myocardial infarction
- Trauma and surgery

Humerus



Proximal Humeral Fracture

Mechanism

- young: high energy trauma (MVC)
- elderly: FOOSH from standing height in osteoporotic individuals

Clinical Features

- proximal humeral tenderness, deformity with severe fracture, swelling, painful ROM, bruising extends down arm later

Investigations

- test axillary nerve function (deltoid contraction and skin over deltoid)
- x-rays: AP, trans-scapular, axillary are essential
- CT scan: to evaluate for articular involvement and fracture displacement

Classification

- Neer classification is based on 4 fracture fragments (see *Neer Classification* sidebar, OR16)
- displaced: displacement >1 cm and/or angulation >45°

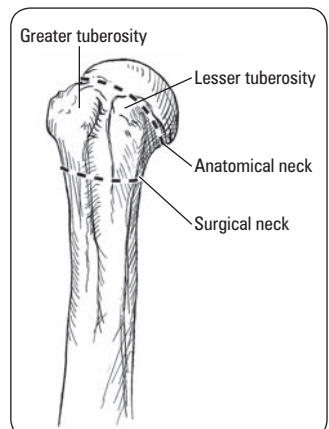


Figure 16. Fractures of the proximal humerus

- the Neer system regards displacement, not the fracture line, as meeting criteria for a 'part' in the classification scheme
- \pm dislocated/subluxed: humeral head dislocated/subluxed from glenoid

Treatment

- treat osteoporosis if needed
- non-operative
 - nondisplaced - broad arm sling immobilization begin ROM in 7-10 d to prevent stiffness
 - minimally displaced - closed reduction with sling immobilization x 2 wk, gentle ROM
- operative
 - ORIF (anatomic neck fractures, displaced, associated dislocated glenohumeral joint)
 - hemiarthroplasty may be necessary, especially in elderly

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- AVN, axillary nerve palsy, malunion, post-traumatic arthritis



Anatomic neck fractures disrupt blood supply to the humeral head and AVN of the humeral head may ensue



Neer Classification

Based on 4 parts of humerus

- Greater Tuberosity
- Lesser Tuberosity
- Humeral Head
- Shaft

One-part fracture: any of the 4 parts with none displaced

Two-part fracture: any of the 4 parts with 1 displaced

Three-part fracture: displaced fracture of surgical neck + displaced greater tuberosity or lesser tuberosity

Four-part fracture: displaced fracture of surgical neck + both tuberosities



70-80% of proximal humeral fractures are non-displaced and managed non-operatively; of displaced fractures, 20% are two-part, 5% are three-part, and <1% are four-part



Acceptable Humeral Shaft Deformities for Non-Operative Treatment

- <20° anterior angulation
- <30° varus angulation
- <3 cm of shortening



Risk of radial nerve and brachial artery injury



Three Joints at the Elbow

- Humeroradial joint
- Humeroulnar joint
- Radioulnar joint

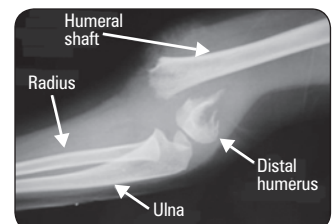


Figure 17. X-ray of transverse displaced supracondylar fracture of humerus with elbow dislocation



Normal carrying angle of elbow is ~10° of valgus

Humeral Shaft Fracture

Mechanism

- direct blows/MVC (most common), FOOSH, twisting injuries, metastases (in elderly)

Clinical Features

- pain, swelling, \pm shortening, motion/crepitus at fracture site
- must test radial nerve function before and after treatment: look for drop wrist, sensory impairment dorsum of hand

Investigations

- x-rays: AP and lateral radiographs of the humerus including the shoulder and elbow joints

Treatment

- in general, humeral shaft fractures are treated non-operatively
- non-operative (**most common**)
 - \pm reduction; can accept deformity due to compensatory ROM of shoulder
 - hanging cast (weight of arm in cast provides traction across fracture site) with collar and cuff sling immobilization until swelling subsides, then Sarmiento functional brace, followed by ROM
- operative
 - indications: open fracture, neurovascular injury, unacceptable fracture alignment, polytrauma, segmental fracture, pathological fracture, "floating elbow" (simultaneous unstable humeral and forearm fractures), intra-articular
 - ORIF: plating (most common), IM rod insertion, external fixation

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- radial nerve palsy: expect spontaneous recovery in 3-4 mo, otherwise send for EMG
- non-union: most frequently seen in middle 1/3
- decreased ROM
- compartment syndrome

Elbow

Supracondylar Fracture

- most common in pediatric population (peak age ~7 yr old), rarely seen in adults
- fracture of the distal 1/3 of humerus just proximal to capitulum and trochlea, usually transverse
- AIN injury commonly associated with extension type

Mechanism

- >96% are extension injuries via FOOSH (e.g. fall off monkey bars); <4% are flexion injuries

Clinical Features

- pain, swelling, point tenderness
- neurovascular injury: assess median and radial nerves, radial artery (check radial pulse)

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, lateral of elbow
- disruption of anterior humeral line suggests supracondylar fracture

Treatment

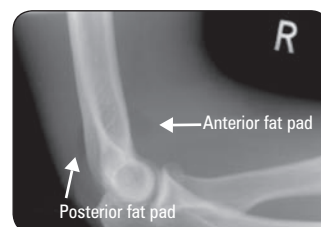
- reduction indications: evidence of arterial obstruction, unacceptable angulation, displaced (>50%)
- non-operative
 - nondisplaced: long arm plaster slab in 90° flexion x 3 wk
- operative
 - indications: displaced, vascular injury, open fracture
 - requires percutaneous pinning followed by limb cast with elbow flexed <90°
 - in adults, ORIF is necessary

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- stiffness is most common
- brachial artery injury (kinking can occur if displaced fracture), median or ulnar nerve injury, compartment syndrome (leads to Volkmann's ischemic contracture), malalignment cubitus varus (distal fragment tilted into varus)

**Terrible Triad**

- Radial head fracture
- Coronoid fracture
- Elbow dislocation

**Figure 18. X-ray of fat pad sign****Mason Class 2 Radial Head Fracture**

CT reconstruction provides the best detail and ability to appreciate the anatomic orientation of the fracture pattern, enhancing surgical planning and prognosis



To avoid stiffness do not immobilize elbow joint > 2-3 wk

Radial Head Fracture

- a common fracture of the upper limb in young adults

Mechanism

- FOOSH with elbow extended and forearm pronated

Clinical Features

- marked local tenderness on palpation over radial head (lateral elbow)
- decreased ROM at elbow, mechanical block to forearm pronation and supination
- pain on pronation/supination

Investigations

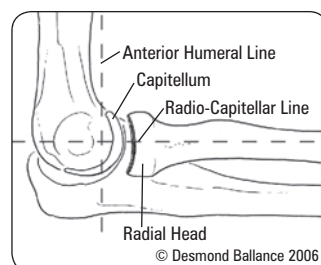
- x-ray: enlarged anterior fat pad ("sail sign") or the presence of a posterior fat pad indicates effusion which could occur with occult radial head fractures

Table 11. Classification and Treatment of Radial Head Fractures

Mason Class	Radiographic Description	Treatment
1	Nondisplaced fracture	Elbow slab or sling x 3-5 d with early ROM
2	Displaced fracture	ORIF if: angulation >30°, involves ≥1/3 of the radial head, or if ≥3 mm of joint incongruity exists
3	Comminuted fracture	Radial head excision ± prosthesis
4	Comminuted fracture with posterior elbow dislocation	Radial head excision ± prosthesis

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- myositis ossificans
- recurrent instability (if MCL injured and radial head excised)

**Figure 19. Lateral view of elbow****Elbow Dislocation**

The radio-capitellar line refers to an imaginary line along the longitudinal axis of the radius that passes through the center of the capitellum regardless of the degree of elbow flexion; if the radio-capitellar line does not pass through the center of the capitellum a dislocation should be suspected



The anterior humeral line refers to an imaginary line drawn along the anterior surface of the humeral cortex that passes through the middle third of the capitellum when extended inferiorly. In subtle supracondylar fractures the anterior humeral line is disrupted, typically passing through the anterior third of the capitellum

Olecranon Fracture

Mechanism

- direct trauma to posterior aspect of elbow (fall onto the point of the elbow)

Clinical Features

- ± loss of active extension due to avulsion of triceps tendon

Investigations

- x-rays: AP + lateral (require true lateral to determine fracture pattern)

Treatment

- non-displaced (<2 mm, stable): cast x 3 wk (elbow in 90° flexion) then gentle ROM
- displaced: ORIF (plate and screws or tension band wiring) and early ROM if stable

Elbow Dislocation

- third most common joint dislocation after shoulder and patella
- usually the radius and ulna are dislocated together, or the radius head dislocates and the ulna remains ("Monteggia")
- anterior capsule and collateral ligaments disrupted

Mechanism

- elbow hyperextension via FOOSH or valgus/supination stress during elbow flexion
- usually the radius and ulna are dislocated together, or the radius head dislocates and the ulna remains ("Monteggia")
- 90% are posterior/posterolateral, anterior are rare and usually devastating

Clinical Features

- elbow pain, swelling, deformity
- flexion contracture
- ± absent radial or ulnar pulses

Treatment

- assess NVS before reduction: brachial artery, median and ulnar nerves (can become entrapped during manipulation)
- closed reduction under conscious sedation (post-reduction x-rays required)
- Parvin's method: patient lies prone with arm hanging down; apply gentle traction downwards on wrist, as olecranon slips distally, gently lift up the arm at elbow to reduce joint
- long-arm splint with forearm in neutral rotation and elbow in 90° flexion
- early ROM (<2 wk)

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- stiffness (loss of extension), intra-articular loose body, neurovascular injury (ulnar nerve, median nerve, brachial artery), radial head fracture
- recurrent instability uncommon

Epicondylitis

- lateral epicondylitis = "tennis elbow", inflammation of the common extensor tendon as it originates from the lateral epicondyle
- medial epicondylitis = "golfer's elbow", inflammation of the common flexor tendon as it originates from the medial epicondyle

Mechanism

- repeated or sustained contraction of the forearm muscles/chronic overuse

Clinical Features

- point tenderness over humeral epicondyle and/or distal to it
- pain upon resisted wrist extension (lateral epicondylitis) or wrist flexion (medial epicondylitis)
- generally a self-limited condition, but may take 6-18 mo to resolve

Treatment

- rest, ice, NSAIDs
- use brace/strap
- physiotherapy, stretching, and strengthening
- corticosteroid injection
- surgery: percutaneous or open release of common tendon from epicondyle (only after 6-12 mo of conservative therapy)



Tennis Elbow = lateral epicondylitis; pain associated with extension of wrist

**Elbow Joint Injection**

Inject at the center of the triangle formed by the lateral epicondyle, radial head, and olecranon

Forearm

Radius and Ulna Fracture

Mechanism

- commonly a FOOSH or high-energy direct blow
- fractures usually accompanied by displacement due to high force

Investigations

- x-ray: 1) AP and lateral of forearm; 2) AP, lateral, oblique of elbow and wrist
- CT if fracture is close to joint

Treatment

- goal is anatomic reduction since imperfect alignment significantly limits forearm pronation and supination
- ORIF with plates and screws; closed reduction with immobilization usually yields poor results for displaced forearm fractures (except in children)

Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- soft tissue contracture resulting in limited forearm rotation – surgical release of tissue may be warranted



In all isolated ulna fractures, assess proximal radius to rule out a Monteggia fracture

**Bado Type Classification of Monteggia Fractures**

Based on the direction of displacement of the dislocated radial head, generally the same direction as the apex of the ulnar fracture

Type I: anterior dislocation of radial head (60%)

Type II: posterior dislocation of radial head (15%)

Type III: lateral dislocation of radial head (20%)

Type IV – combined: proximal fracture of the ulna and radius, dislocation of the radial head in any direction (<5%)

Monteggia Fracture

- more common and better prognosis in the pediatric age group when compared to adults

Definition

- fracture of the proximal ulna with radial head dislocation and proximal radioulnar joint injury

Mechanism

- direct blow on the posterior aspect of the forearm
- hyperpronation
- fall on the hyperextended elbow

Clinical Features

- decreased rotation of forearm \pm palpable lump at the radial head
- ulna angled apex anterior and radial head dislocated anteriorly (rarely the reverse deformity occurs)

Treatment

- adults: ORIF of ulna with indirect radius reduction in 90% of patients
- splint and early post-operative ROM if elbow completely stable, otherwise immobilization in plaster with elbow flexed for 6 wk
- pediatrics: attempt closed reduction and immobilization in plaster with elbow flexed for Bado Type I-III, surgery for Type IV

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- PIN: most common nerve injury; observe for 3 mo as most resolve spontaneously
- radial head instability/redislocation
- radioulnar synostosis

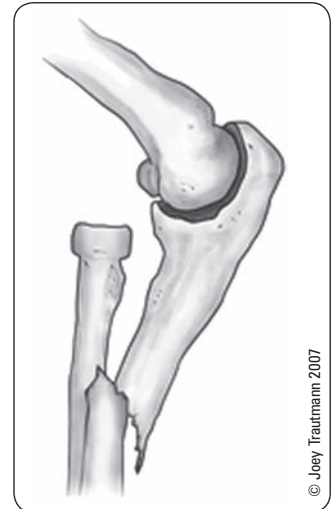


Figure 20. Monteggia fracture

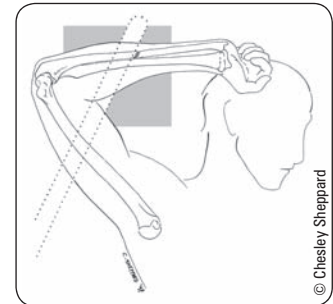


Figure 21. Nightstick fracture

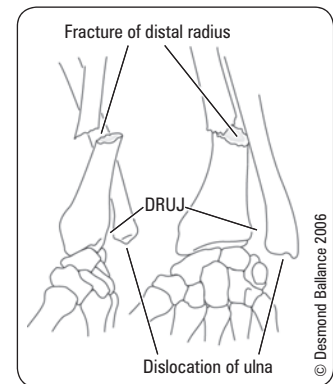


Figure 22. Galeazzi fracture

Nightstick Fracture

Definition

- isolated fracture of ulna without dislocation of radial head

Mechanism

- direct blow to forearm (e.g. holding arm up to protect face)

Treatment

- non-displaced: below elbow cast (x 10 d) followed by forearm brace (~8 wk)
- displaced: ORIF if $>50\%$ shaft displacement or $>10^\circ$ angulation

Galeazzi Fracture

Definition

- fracture of the distal radial shaft with disruption of the DRUJ
- most commonly in the distal 1/3 of radius near junction of metaphysis/diaphysis
- 3x more common than Monteggia fracture

Mechanism

- hand FOOSH with axial loading of pronated forearm

Investigations

- x-rays
 - shortening of distal radius >5 mm relative to the distal ulna
 - widening of the DRUJ space on AP
 - dislocation of radius with respect to ulna on true lateral

Treatment

- ORIF of radius; afterwards assess DRUJ stability by balloting distal ulna relative to distal radius
- if DRUJ is stable and reducible, splint for 10-14 d with early ROM encouraged
- if DRUJ is unstable, ORIF or percutaneous pinning with long arm cast in supination x 6 wk



For all isolated radius fractures assess DRUJ to rule out a Galeazzi fracture

Wrist

Colles' Fracture

Definition

- extra-articular transverse distal radius fracture (~2 cm proximal to the radiocarpal joint) with dorsal displacement ± ulnar styloid fracture

Epidemiology

- most common fracture in those >40 yr, especially in women and those with osteoporotic bone

Mechanism

- FOOSH

Clinical Features

- "dinner fork" deformity
- swelling, ecchymoses, tenderness

Investigations

- x-ray: AP and lateral wrist

Treatment

- goal is to restore radial height, radial inclination (22°), volar tilt (11°) as well as DRUJ stability and useful forearm rotation
- closed reduction (think opposite of the deformity):
 - hematoma block (sterile prep and drape, local anesthetic injection directly into fracture site) or conscious sedation
 - closed reduction: 1) traction with extension (exaggerate injury), 2) traction with ulnar deviation, pronation, flexion (of distal fragment – not at wrist)
 - dorsal slab/below elbow cast for 5-6 wk
 - x-ray x 1 wk for 3 wk and at cessation of immobilization to ensure reduction is maintained
- obtain post-reduction films immediately; repeat reduction if necessary, consider external fixation or ORIF if failure of adequate closed reduction

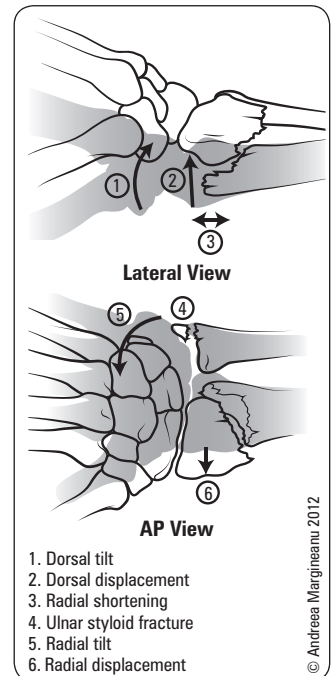


Figure 23. Colles' fracture and associated bony deformity

Smith's Fracture

Definition

- volar displacement of the distal radius (i.e. reverse Colles' fracture)

Mechanism

- fall onto the back of the flexed hand

Treatment

- usually unstable and needs ORIF
- if patient is poor operative candidate, may attempt non-operative treatment
- closed reduction with hematoma block (reduction opposite of Colles')
- long-arm cast in supination x 6 wk

Complications of Wrist Fractures

- most common complications are poor grip strength, stiffness, and radial shortening
- distal radius fractures in individuals <40 yr of age are usually highly comminuted and are likely to require ORIF
- 80% have normal function in 6-12 mo

Table 12. Early and Late Complications of Wrist Fractures

Early	Late
Difficult reduction ± loss of reduction	Malunion, radial shortening
Compartment syndrome	Painful wrist secondary to ulnar prominence
Extensor pollicis longus tendon rupture	Frozen shoulder ("shoulder-hand syndrome")
Acute carpal tunnel syndrome	Post-traumatic arthritis
Finger swelling with venous block	Carpal tunnel syndrome
Complications of a tight cast/splint	CRPS/RSD

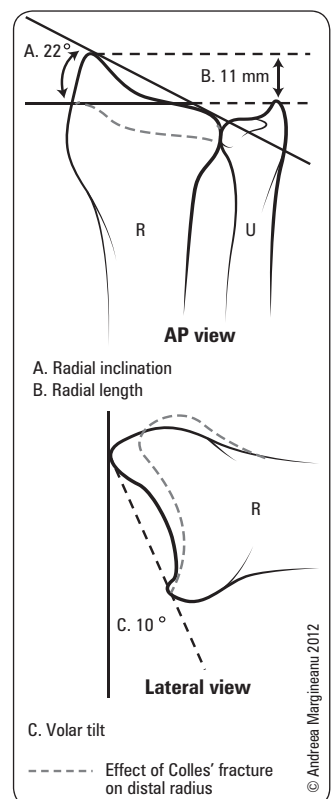


Figure 24. Normal wrist angles + wrist angles in Colles' fracture
Note the relative shortening of the radius relative to the ulna on AP view in Colles' fracture

Scaphoid Fracture

Epidemiology

- common in young men; not common in children or in patients beyond middle age
- most common carpal bone injured
- may be associated with other carpal or wrist injuries (e.g. Colles' fracture)

Mechanism

- FOOSH: impaction of scaphoid on distal radius, most commonly resulting in a transverse fracture through the waist (65%), distal (10%), or proximal (25%) scaphoid

Clinical Features

- pain with wrist movement
- tenderness in the anatomical "snuff box", over scaphoid tubercle, and pain with long axis compression into scaphoid
- usually nondisplaced

Investigations

- x-ray: PA, lateral, scaphoid views with wrist extension and ulnar deviation x 2 wk
- \pm CT or MRI
- bone scan rarely used
- **note:** a fracture may not be radiologically evident up to 2 wk after acute injury, so if a patient complains of wrist pain and has anatomical snuff box tenderness but a negative x-ray, treat as if positive for a scaphoid fracture and repeat x-ray 2 wk later to rule out a fracture; if x-ray still negative order CT or MRI

Treatment

- early treatment critical for improving outcomes
- non-displaced (<1 mm displacement/ $<15^\circ$ angulation): long-arm thumb spica cast x 4 wk then short arm cast until radiographic evidence of healing is seen (2-3 mo)
- displaced: ORIF with headless/countersink compression screw is the mainstay treatment, or percutaneous K-wire fixation (uncommon)

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- most common: non-union/mal-union (use bone graft from iliac crest or distal radius with fixation to heal)
- AVN of the proximal fragment
- delayed union (recommend surgical fixation)

Prognosis

- fractures of the proximal third of the scaphoid have 70% rate of non-union or AVN
- waist fractures have healing rates of 80-90%
- distal third fractures have healing rates close to 100%



ORIF Colles' Fracture if Post-Reduction Demonstrates:

- Radial shortening >3 mm or,
- Dorsal tilt $>10^\circ$ or,
- Intra-articular displacement/step-off >2 mm

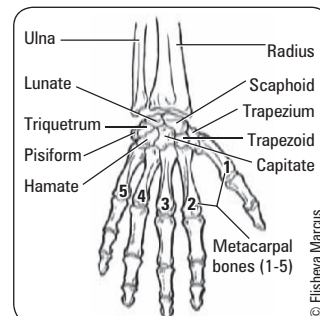


Figure 25. Carpal bones



Scaphoid Fracture Special Tests

Tender snuff box: 100% sensitivity, but 29% specific as positive with many other injuries of radial aspect of wrist with FOOSH



Figure 26. ORIF left scaphoid



The proximal pole of the scaphoid receives as much as 100% of its arterial blood supply from the radial artery that enters at the distal pole. A fracture through the proximal third disrupts this blood supply and results in a high incidence of AVN/non-union

Hand

- see [Plastic Surgery](#), PL22



Spine

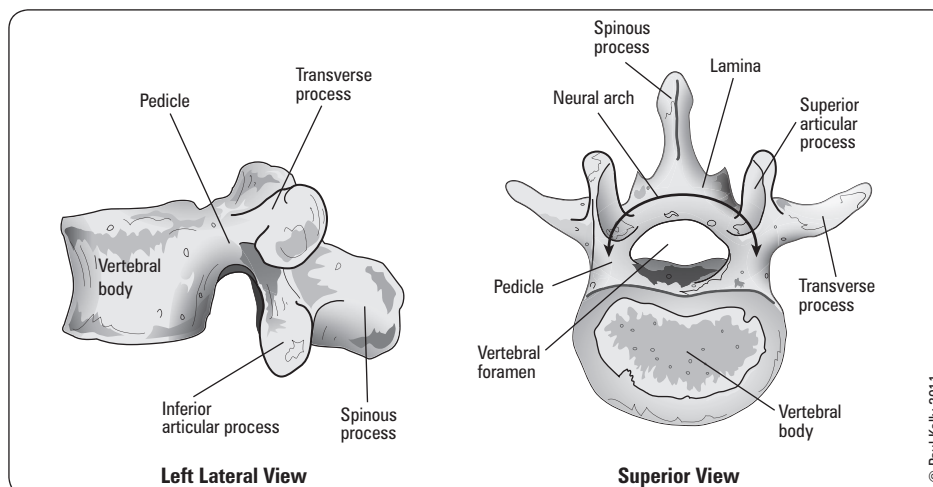


Figure 27. Schematic diagram of vertebral anatomy

Adapted from: Moore KL, Agur AMR. *Essential Clinical Anatomy*, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2007; 274

Fractures of the Spine

- see [Neurosurgery, NS32](#)



Table 13. Fracture Type and Column Involvement

Fracture Type	Column Failure	Stable/Unstable	Mechanism
Compression	Anterior	Stable	Compression
Burst	Anterior, middle	± Unstable	High-energy axial loading + flexion
Fracture-Dislocation	Anterior, middle, posterior	Unstable	Significant force applied to spine (flexion, extension, distraction, rotation, shear or axial load)
Flexion-Distriction	Middle, posterior	± Unstable	MVC (lap belt only) causing flexion and distraction (Chance fracture)

Cervical Spine

General Principles

- C1 (atlas): no vertebral body, no spinous process
- C2 (axis): odontoid = dens
- 7 cervical vertebrae; 8 cervical nerve roots
- nerve root exits above vertebra (i.e. C4 nerve root exits above C4 vertebra), C8 nerve root exits below C7 vertebra
- radiculopathy = impingement of nerve root
- myelopathy = impingement of spinal cord

Special Testing

- compression test: pressure on head worsens radicular pain
- distraction test: traction on head relieves radicular symptoms
- Valsalva test: Valsalva maneuver increases intrathecal pressure and causes radicular pain

Table 14. Cervical Radiculopathy/Neuropathy

Root	C5	C6	C7	C8
Motor	Deltoid Biceps Wrist extension	Biceps Brachioradialis	Triceps Wrist flexion Finger extension	Interossei Digital flexors
Sensory	Axillary nerve (patch over lateral deltoid)	Thumb and index finger	Middle finger	Ring and little finger
Reflex	Biceps	Biceps Brachioradialis	Triceps	Finger jerk

X-Rays for C-Spine

- AP spine: alignment
- AP odontoid: atlantoaxial articulation
- lateral
 - vertebral alignment: posterior vertebral bodies should be aligned (translation >3.5 mm is abnormal)
 - angulation: between adjacent vertebral bodies (>11° is abnormal)
 - disc or facet joint widening
 - anterior soft tissue space (at C3 should be ≤3 mm; at C4 should be ≤8-10 mm)
- oblique: evaluate pedicles and intervertebral foramen
- ± swimmer's view: lateral view with arm abducted 180° to evaluate C7-T1 junction if lateral view is inadequate
- ± lateral flexion/extension view: evaluate subluxation of cervical vertebrae

Differential Diagnosis of C-Spine Pain

- neck muscle strain, cervical spondylosis, cervical stenosis, RA (spondylitis), traumatic injury, whiplash, myofascial pain syndrome

C-SPINE INJURY

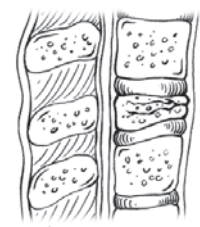
- see [Neurosurgery, NS33](#)



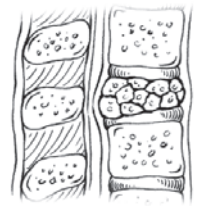
Thoracolumbar Spine

General Principles

- spinal cord terminates at conus medullaris (L1)
- individual nerve roots exit below pedicle of vertebra (i.e. L4 nerve root exits below L4 pedicle)



Compression



Burst



Fracture-dislocation

© Kimberly Chin

Figure 28. Compression, burst, and dislocation fractures



Canadian Cervical Spine Rule Compared with Computed Tomography: A Prospective Analysis

J Trauma 2011;71:352-355

Study: 3,201 blunt trauma patients screened with CCS. All patients received complete C-spine CT.

Results: 192 patients with C-spine fracture and 3,009 without fracture on CT. The sensitivity of CCS was 100% (192/192) and specificity 0.6% (18/3009) with a PPV of 6.03% (192/3182) and NPV of 100% (18/18).

Conclusions: CCS is very sensitive but not specific to determine the need for subsequent radiographic evaluation after blunt trauma.



C-Spine X-Ray in Trauma

Must see C7-T1



Canadian C-Spine Rule

Used to guide imaging for alert (GCS = 15) and stable patients with suspected C-spine injury

Obtain radiography if:

- Age ≥65
- Paresthesia in the extremities
- Inability to rotate neck >45° to the left and right
- Dangerous mechanism of injury (e.g. high speed MVC, fall from elevation >5 ft, etc.)

Canadian CT Head and C-Spine (CCC) Study Group. Canadian C-Spine Rule Study for alert and stable trauma patients. I. Background and rationale. *CJEM* 2002;4:84-90

Special Tests

- straight leg raise: passive lifting of leg (30-70°) reproduces radicular symptoms of pain radiating down posterior/lateral leg to knee ± into foot
- Lasegue maneuver: dorsiflexion of foot during straight leg raise makes symptoms worse or, if leg is less elevated, dorsiflexion will bring on symptoms
- femoral stretch test: with patient prone, flexing the knee of the affected side and passively extending the hip results in radicular symptoms of unilateral pain in lumbar region, buttock, or posterior thigh

Table 15. Lumbar Radiculopathy/Neuropathy

Root	L4	L5	S1
Motor	Quadriceps (knee extension + hip adduction) Tibialis anterior (ankle inversion + dorsiflexion)	Extensor hallucis longus Gluteus medius (hip abduction)	Peroneus longus + brevis (ankle eversion) Gastrocnemius + soleus (plantar flexion)
Sensory	Medial malleolus	1st dorsal webspace and lateral leg	Lateral foot
Reflex	Knee (patellar)	Medial hamstring*	Ankle (Achilles)
Test	Femoral stretch	Straight leg raise	Straight leg raise

*Unreliable

Differential Diagnosis of Back Pain

1. mechanical or nerve compression (>90%)
 - degenerative (disc, facet, ligament)
 - peripheral nerve compression (disc herniation)
 - spinal stenosis (congenital, osteophyte, central disc)
 - cauda equina syndrome
2. others (<10%)
 - neoplastic (primary, metastatic, multiple myeloma)
 - infectious (osteomyelitis, TB)
 - metabolic (osteoporosis)
 - traumatic fracture (compression, distraction, translation, rotation)
 - spondyloarthropathies (ankylosing spondylitis)
 - referred (aorta, renal, ureter, pancreas)

DEGENERATIVE DISC DISEASE

- loss of vertebral disc height with age results in:
 - bulging and tears of annulus fibrosus
 - change in alignment of facet joints
 - osteophyte formation
- can cause back-dominant pain
- management
 - non-operative
 - ♦ staying active with modified activity
 - ♦ back strengthening
 - ♦ NSAIDs
 - ♦ do not treat with opioids; no proven efficacy of spinal traction or manipulation
 - operative – rarely indicated
 - ♦ decompression ± fusion
 - ♦ no difference in outcome between non-operative and surgical management at 2 yr

Table 16. Types of Low Back Pain

	Mechanical Back Pain		Direct Nerve Root Compression	
	Disc Origin	Facet Origin	Spinal Stenosis	Root Compression
Pain Dominance	Back	Back	Leg	Leg
Aggravation	Flexion	Extension, standing, walking	Exercise, extension, walking, standing	Flexion
Onset	Gradual	More sudden	Congenital or acquired	Acute leg ± back pain
Duration	Long (wk, mo)	Shorter (d, wk)	Acute or chronic history (wk to mo)	Short episodes Attacks (min)
Treatment	Relief of strain, exercise	Relief of strain, exercise	Relief of strain, exercise	Relief of strain, exercise + surgical decompression if progressive or severe deficit



All trauma patients with suspected C-spine injury require immediate immobilization of C-spine at scene of accident with spine board, C-collar, and sandbags



Cauda equina syndrome and ruptured aortic aneurysms are causes of low back pain that are considered surgical emergencies



Red Flags for

BACK PAIN

Bowel or bladder dysfunction
Anesthesia (saddle)
Constitutional symptoms/malignancy
Chronic disease
Paresthesias
Age > 50 yr
IV drug use
Neuromotor deficits

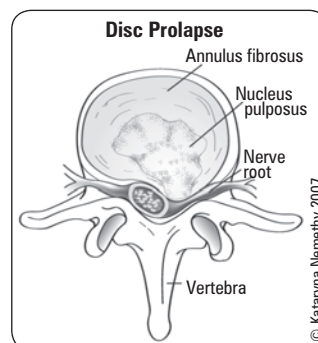


Figure 29. Disc herniation causing nerve root compression

SPINAL STENOSIS

- definition: narrowing of spinal canal <10 mm
- etiology: congenital (idiopathic, osteopetrosis, achondroplasia) or acquired (degenerative, iatrogenic – post spinal surgery, ankylosing spondylosis, Paget’s disease, trauma)
- clinical features
 - ± bilateral back and leg pain
 - neurogenic claudication
 - ± motor weakness
 - normal back flexion; difficulty with back extension
- investigations: CT/MRI reveals narrowing of spinal canal, but gold standard = CT myelogram
- treatment
 - non-operative: vigorous physiotherapy (flexion exercises, stretch/strength exercises), NSAIDs, lumbar epidural steroids
 - operative: decompression surgery if conservative methods failed >6 mo

Table 17. Differentiating Claudication

	Neurogenic	Vascular
Aggravation	With standing or exercise Walking distance variable	Walking set distance
Alleviation	Change in position (usually flexion, sitting, lying down)	Stop walking
Time	Relief in ~10 min	Relief in ~2 min
Character	Neurogenic ± neurological deficit	Muscular cramping



Neurogenic claudication is position dependent; vascular claudication is exercise dependent



MRI abnormalities (e.g. spinal stenosis, disc herniation) are quite common in both asymptomatic and symptomatic individuals and are not necessarily an indication for intervention without clinical correlation



Sciatica

- Most common symptom of radiculopathy (L4-S3)
- Leg dominant, constant, burning pain
- Pain radiates down leg ± foot
- Most common cause = disc herniation

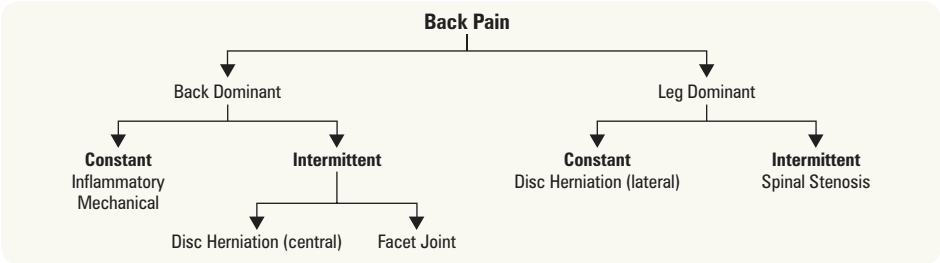


Figure 30. Approach to back pain

MECHANICAL BACK PAIN

- definition: back pain NOT due to prolapsed disc or any other clearly defined pathology
- clinical features
 - dull backache aggravated by activity
 - morning stiffness
 - no neurological signs
- treatment: symptomatic (analgesics, physiotherapy)
- prognosis: symptoms may resolve in 4-6 wk, others become chronic

LUMBAR DISC HERNIATION

- definition: tear in annulus fibrosus allows protrusion of nucleus pulposus causing either a central, posterolateral, or lateral disc herniation, most commonly at L5-S1 > L4-5 > L3-4
- etiology: usually a history of flexion-type injury
- clinical features
 - back dominant pain (central herniation) or leg dominant pain (lateral herniation)
 - tenderness between spinous processes at affected level
 - muscle spasm ± loss of normal lumbar lordosis
 - neurological disturbance is segmental and varies with level of central herniation
 - ♦ motor weakness (L4, L5, S1)
 - ♦ diminished reflexes (L4, S1)
 - ♦ diminished sensation (L4, L5, S1)
 - positive straight leg raise
 - positive Lasegue test
 - bowel or bladder symptoms, decreased rectal tone suggests cauda equina syndrome due to central disc herniation – surgical emergency
- investigations: MRI, consider a post-void residual volume to check for urinary retention; post-void >100 mL should heighten suspicion for cauda equine syndrome
- treatment

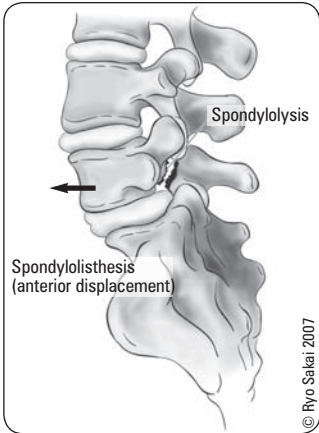


Figure 31. Spondylolysis, spondylolisthesis

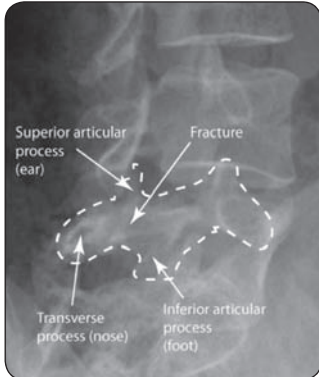


Figure 32. “Scottie dog” fracture

- symptomatic
 - ♦ extension protocol (physiotherapy)
 - ♦ NSAIDs
- 90% resolve in 3 mo; surgical discectomy reserved for progressive neurological deficit, failure of symptoms to resolve within 3 mo, or cauda equina syndrome due to central disc herniation

SPONDYLOLYSIS

- definition: defect in the pars interarticularis with no movement of the vertebral bodies
- etiology
 - trauma: gymnasts, weightlifters, backpackers, loggers, laborers
- clinical features: activity-related back pain, pain with unilateral extension (Michelis' test)
- investigations
 - oblique x-ray: "collar" break in the "Scottie dog's" neck
 - bone scan
 - CT scan
- treatment: activity restriction, brace, stretching exercise

SPONDYLOLISTHESIS

- definition: defect in pars interarticularis causing a forward slip of one vertebra on another usually at L5-S1, less commonly at L4-5
- etiology: congenital (children), degenerative (adults), traumatic, pathological, teratogenic
- clinical features: lower back pain radiating to buttocks

Table 18. Classification and Treatment of Spondylolisthesis

Class	Percentage of Slip	Treatment
1	0-25%	Symptomatic operative fusion only for intractable pain
2	25-50	Same as above
3	50-75	Decompression for spondylolisthesis and spinal fusion
4	75-100	Same as above
5	>100	Same as above

Specific Complications

- may present as cauda equina syndrome due to roots being stretched over the edge of L5 or sacrum

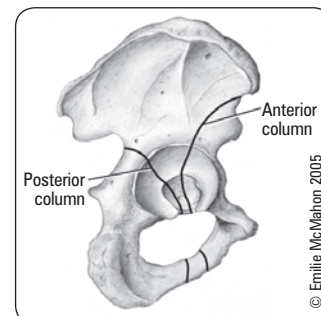


Figure 33. Pelvic columns



Possible Radiological Findings:

- Pubic rami fractures: superior/inferior
- Pubic symphysis diastasis: common in AP compression (N=5 mm)
- Sacral fractures: common in lateral compression
- SI joint diastasis: common in AP compression (N=1-4 mm)
- Disrupted anterior column (iliopectineal line) or posterior column (ilioischial line)
- "Teardrop" displacement: acetabular fracture
- Iliac, ischial avulsion fractures
- Displacement of the major fragment: superior (VS), open book (APC), bucket handle (LC)

Pelvis

Pelvic Fracture

Mechanism

- young: high energy trauma, either direct or by force transmitted longitudinally through the femur
- elderly: fall from standing height, low energy trauma
- lateral compression (most common), vertical shear, or anteroposterior compression fractures

Clinical Features

- local swelling, tenderness
- deformity of lower extremity
- pelvic instability

Investigations

- x-ray: AP pelvis, inlet and outlet views, Judet views (obturator and iliac oblique for acetabular fracture)
 - 6 cardinal radiographic lines of the acetabulum: ilioischial line, iliopectineal line, tear drop, roof, posterior rim, anterior rim
- CT scan useful for evaluating posterior pelvic injury and acetabular fracture



**Type A
Stable Avulsion Fracture**



**Type B
Open Book**



**Type C
Unstable Vertical Fracture**

Figure 34. Illustration of the Tile classification of pelvic fractures

Classification

Table 19. Tile Classification of Pelvic Fractures (see Figure 34)

Type	Stability	Description
A	Rotationally stable Vertically stable	A1: fracture not involving pelvic ring A2: minimally displaced fracture of pelvic ring (e.g. ramus fracture)
B	Rotationally unstable Vertically stable	B1: open book B2: lateral compression – ipsilateral B3: lateral compression – contralateral
C	Rotationally unstable Vertically unstable	C1: unilateral C2: bilateral C3: associated acetabular fracture

Treatment

- ABCDEs
- assess genitourinary injury (rectal exam, vaginal exam, hematuria, blood at urethral meatus)
 - if involved, the fracture is considered an open fracture
- stable fractures: non-operative treatment, protected weight bearing
- emergency management
 - IV fluids/blood
 - pelvic binder/sheeting
 - external fixation vs. emergent angiography/embolization
 - \pm laparotomy (if FAST/DPL positive)
- indications for operative treatment
 - unstable pelvic ring injury
 - disruption of anterior and posterior SI ligament
 - symphysis diastasis >2.5 cm
 - vertical instability of the posterior pelvis

Specific Complications

 (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- hemorrhage (life-threatening)
- injury to rectum or urogenital structures
- obstetrical difficulties, sexual and voiding dysfunction
- persistent SI joint pain
- post-traumatic arthritis of the hip with acetabular fractures
- high risk of DVT/PE

Hip

Hip Dislocation

- full trauma survey (see *Emergency Medicine, Initial Patient Assessment/Management*, ER2)
- examine for neurovascular injury PRIOR to open or closed reduction
- reduce hip dislocations ASAP (ideally within 6 h) to decrease risk of AVN of the femoral head
- hip precautions (no extreme hip flexion, adduction, internal or external rotation) for 6 wk post-reduction
- see *Hip Dislocation after Total Hip Arthroplasty*, OR28

ANTERIOR HIP DISLOCATION

- mechanism: posteriorly directed blow to knee with hip widely abducted
- clinical features: shortened, abducted, externally rotated limb
- treatment
 - closed reduction under conscious sedation/GA
 - post-reduction CT to assess joint congruity

POSTERIOR HIP DISLOCATION

- most frequent type of hip dislocation
- mechanism: severe force to knee with hip flexed and adducted
 - e.g. knee into dashboard in MVC
- clinical features: shortened, adducted, internally rotated limb
- treatment
 - closed reduction under conscious sedation/GA only if associated femoral neck fracture
 - ORIF if unstable, intra-articular fragments or posterior wall fracture
 - post-reduction CT to assess joint congruity and fractures
 - if reduction is unstable, put in traction x 4-6 wk



Up to 50% of patients with hip dislocations suffer fractures elsewhere at the time of injury



Rochester Method to Reduce Dislocations

- Patient lying supine with hip and knee flexed on injured side
- Surgeon stands on patient's injured side
- Surgeon passes one arm under patient's flexed knee, reaching to place that hand on patient's other knee (thus supporting patient's injured leg)
- With other hand, surgeon grasps patient's ankle on injured side, applying traction, while assistant stabilizes pelvis
- Reduction via traction, internal rotation, then external rotation once femoral head clears acetabular rim

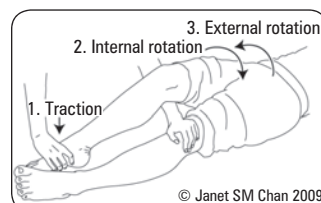


Figure 35. Rochester method

CENTRAL HIP DISLOCATION (rare)

- traumatic injury where femoral head is pushed medially through acetabulum

COMPLICATIONS FOR ALL HIP DISLOCATIONS

- post-traumatic OA
- AVN of femoral head
- fracture of femoral head, neck, or shaft
- sciatic nerve palsy in 25% (10% permanent)
- HO
- thromboembolism – DVT/PE

Hip Fracture

General Features

- acute onset of hip pain
- unable to weight-bear
- shortened and externally rotated leg
- painful ROM

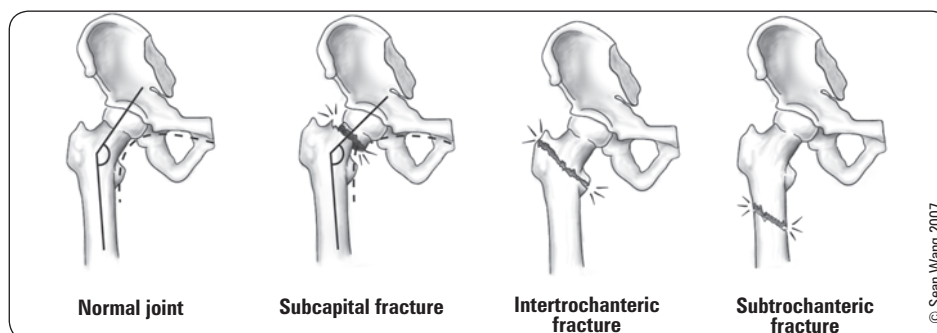


Figure 36. Subcapital, intertrochanteric, subtrochanteric fractures

Table 20. Overview of Hip Fractures

Fracture Type	Definition	Mechanism	Special Clinical Features	Investigations	Treatment	Complications
Femoral Neck (Subcapital)	Intracapsular (See <i>Garden Classification</i> , Table 21)	Young: MVC, fall from height Elderly: fall from standing, rotational force	Same as general	X-ray: AP hip, AP pelvis, cross table lateral hip		DVT, non-union, AVN
Intertrochanteric Stable: intact posteromedial cortex Unstable: non-intact posteromedial cortex	Extracapsular fracture including the greater and lesser trochanters and transitional bone between the neck and shaft	Same as femoral neck fracture Direct or indirect force transmitted to the intertrochanteric area	Ecchymosis at back of upper thigh	X-ray: AP pelvis, AP/lateral hip	Closed reduction under fluoroscopy then dynamic hip screw or IM nail	DVT, varus displacement of proximal fragment, malrotation, non-union, failure of fixation device
Subtrochanteric	Fracture begins at or below the lesser trochanter and involves the proximal femoral shaft	Young: high energy trauma Elderly: osteopenic bone + fall, pathological fracture	Ecchymosis at back of upper thigh	X-ray: AP pelvis, AP/lateral hip and femur	Closed/open under fluoroscopy then plate fixation or IM nail	Malalignment, non-union, wound infection

Table 21. Garden Classification of Femoral Neck Fractures

Type	Displacement	Extent	Alignment	Trabeculae	Treatment
I	None	"Incomplete"	Valgus or neutral	Malaligned	Internal fixation to prevent displacement (valgus impacted fracture)
II	None	Complete	Neutral	Aligned	Internal fixation to prevent displacement
III	Some	Complete	Varus	Malaligned	Young: ORIF Elderly: hemi-/total hip arthroplasty
IV	Complete	Complete	Varus	Aligned	Young: ORIF Elderly: hemi-/total hip arthroplasty

**X-Ray Features of Subcapital Hip Fractures**

- Disruption of Shenton's line (a radiographic line drawn along the upper margin of the obturator foramen, extending along the inferomedial side of the femoral neck)
- Altered neck-shaft angle (normal is 120-130°)

**DVT Prophylaxis in Hip Fractures**

LMWH (i.e. enoxaparin 40 mg SC bid), fondaparinux, low dose heparin on admission, do not give <12 h before surgery

**AVN of Femoral Head**

- Distal to proximal blood supply along femoral neck to head (medial and lateral femoral circumflex arteries)
- Susceptible to AVN if blood supply disrupted
- Etiology: femoral neck fracture, chronic systemic steroid use, SCFE, Legg-Calvé-Perthes, SLE, RA

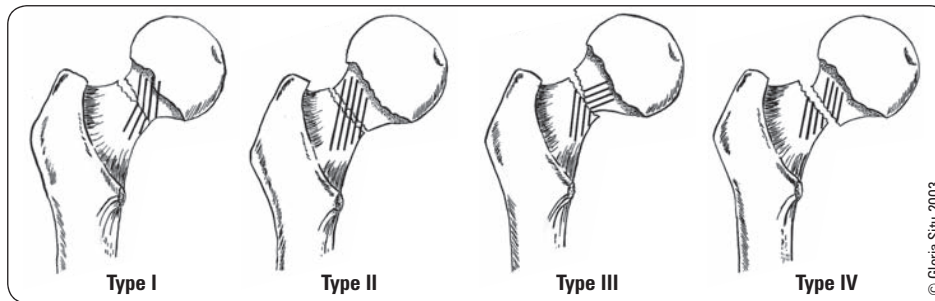


Figure 37. Garden classification of femoral neck fractures

Arthritis of the Hip

Etiology

- OA, inflammatory arthritis, post-traumatic arthritis, late effects of congenital hip disorders, or septic arthritis

Clinical Features

- pain (groin, medial thigh) and stiffness aggravated by activity
- morning stiffness >1 h, multiple joint swelling, hand nodules (RA)
- decreased ROM (internal rotation is lost first)
- crepitus
- \pm fixed flexion contracture leading to apparent limb shortening (Thomas test)
- \pm Trendelenberg sign

Investigations

- x-ray
 - OA: joint space narrowing, subchondral sclerosis, subchondral cysts, osteophytes
 - RA: osteopenia, erosion, joint space narrowing, subchondral cysts, symmetric joint space narrowing
- blood work: ANA, RF

Treatment

- non-operative: weight reduction, activity modification, physiotherapy, analgesics, walking aids
- operative: realign = osteotomy; replace = arthroplasty; fuse = arthrodesis
- complications with arthroplasty: component loosening, dislocation, HO, thromboembolism, infection, neurovascular injury, limb length discrepancy
- arthroplasty is standard of care in most patients with hip arthritis



DVT Prophylaxis in Elective THA
(continue 10-35 d post-operative)
Fondaparinux, low molecular weight heparin, or coumadin

Hip Dislocation after Total Hip Arthroplasty

Etiology

- THA that is unstable when hip is flexed, adducted and internally rotated, or extended and externally rotated (avoid flexing hip >90° or crossing legs for ~6 wk after surgery)

Epidemiology

- occurs in 1-4% of primary THA and 10-16% of revision THAs
- risk factors: neurological impairment, post-traumatic arthritis, revision surgery, substance abuse

Treatment

- external abduction splint to prevent hip adduction
- constrained acetabular component for recurrent dislocation if no issue with position of acetabular/femoral implants + knee immobilizer

Complications

- sciatic nerve palsy in 25% (10% permanent)
- HO

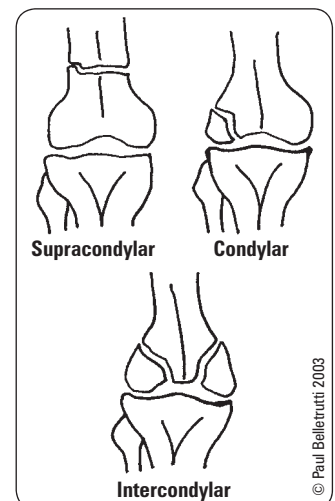


Figure 38. Distal femoral fractures

Femur

Femoral Diaphysis Fracture

Mechanism

- high energy trauma (MVC, fall from height, gunshot wound)
- in children, can result from low energy trauma (spiral fracture)

Clinical Features

- shortened, externally rotated leg (if fracture displaced)
- inability to weight-bear
- often open injury, always a Gustilo III (see Table 5, OR9)

Investigations

- AP pelvis, AP/lateral hip, femur, knee

Complications

- hemorrhage requiring transfusion
- fat embolism leading to ARDS
- extensive soft tissue damage
- ipsilateral hip dislocation/fracture (2-6%)
- nerve injury

Treatment

- stabilize patient
- immobilize leg
- ORIF with anterograde or retrograde IM nail, external fixator for unstable patients, open fractures, or highly vascular areas, or plate and screws for open growth plates within 24 h
- early mobilization and strengthening



It is important to rule out ipsilateral femoral neck fracture as they occur in 2-6% of femoral diaphysis fractures and are reportedly missed in 19-31% of cases

Distal Femoral Fracture

Mechanism

- direct high energy force or axial loading
- three types in addition to classification as intra-articular or extra-articular

Clinical Features

- extreme pain
- knee effusion (hemarthrosis)
- shortened, externally rotated leg if displaced
- neurovascular deficits can occur with displaced fracture

Treatment

- ORIF if displaced or intra-articular; may choose to manage non-operatively if nondisplaced or incomplete fracture
- early mobilization and strengthening

Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- femoral artery tear
- popliteal artery injury
- nerve injury
- extensive soft tissue injury
- angulation deformities

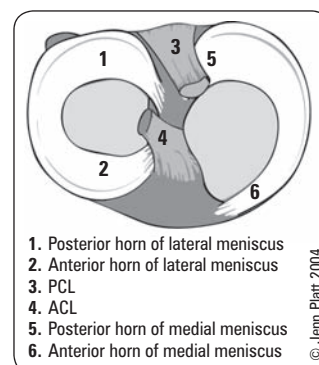


Figure 39. Diagram of the right tibial plateau

Knee

Evaluation of Knee

Common Complaints

- general orthopedic history
- also inquire about common knee symptoms
 - locking: mechanical block to extension
 - ♦ torn meniscus/loose body in joint
 - pseudo-locking: limited ROM without mechanical block
 - ♦ effusion, muscle spasm after injury, arthritis
 - painful clicking (audible)
 - ♦ torn meniscus
 - giving way: instability
 - ♦ cruciate ligament or meniscal tear, patellar dislocation

Special Tests of the Knee

- **anterior and posterior drawer tests**
 - demonstrate ACL and PCL, respectively
 - ♦ knee flexed at 90°, foot immobilized, hamstrings released
 - ♦ if able to sublux tibia anteriorly (anterior drawer test), then ACL may be torn
 - ♦ if able to sublux tibia posteriorly (posterior drawer test), then PCL may be torn
 - ♦ anterior drawer test for ACL: 3.8 positive likelihood ratio, 0.30 negative likelihood ratio
- **Lachmann test**
 - demonstrates torn ACL
 - hold knee in 10-20° flexion, stabilizing the femur
 - try to sublux tibia anteriorly on femur
 - similar to anterior drawer test, more reliable due to less muscular stabilization
 - for ACL: 25.0 positive likelihood ratio, 0.1 negative likelihood ratio
- **Thessaly test**
 - demonstrates meniscal tear
 - patient stands flat footed on one leg while the examiner provides his or her hands for balance. The patient then flexes the knee to 20° and rotates the femur on the tibia medially and laterally three times while maintaining the 20° flexion
 - positive for a meniscal tear if the patient experiences medial or lateral joint line discomfort
 - for medial meniscus: 29.67 positive likelihood ratio, 0.11 negative likelihood ratio
 - for lateral meniscus: 23.0 positive likelihood ratio, 0.083 negative likelihood ratio
- **posterior sag sign**
 - demonstrates torn PCL
 - may give a false positive anterior draw sign
 - flex knees and hips to 90°, hold ankles and knees
 - view from the lateral aspect
 - if one tibia sags posteriorly compared to the other, its PCL is torn
- **pivot shift sign**
 - demonstrates torn ACL
 - start with the knee in extension
 - internally rotate foot, slowly flex knee while palpating and applying a valgus force
 - normal knee will flex smoothly
 - if incompetent ACL, tibia will sublux anteriorly on femur at start of maneuver. During flexion, the tibia will reduce and externally rotate about the femur (the "pivot")
 - reverse pivot shift (start in flexion, externally rotate, apply valgus and extend knee) suggests torn PCL
 - composite assessment for ACL: 25.0 positive likelihood ratio, 0.04 negative likelihood ratio
 - composite assessment for PCL: 21.0 positive likelihood ratio, 0.05 negative likelihood ratio
- **collateral ligament stress test**
 - palpate ligament for "opening" of joint space while testing
 - with knee in full extension, apply valgus force to test MCL, apply varus force to test LCL
 - repeat tests with knee in 20° flexion to relax joint capsule
 - opening only in 20° flexion due to MCL damage only
 - opening in 20° of flexion and full extension is due to MCL, cruciate, and joint capsule damage
- **tests for meniscal tear**
 - joint line tenderness
 - ♦ joint line pain when palpated
 - ♦ palpate one side at a time and watch patient's eyes
 - for meniscal tear: 0.9 positive likelihood ratio, 1.1 negative likelihood ratio
 - crouch compression test
 - ♦ joint line pain when squatting (anterior pain suggests patellofemoral pathology)

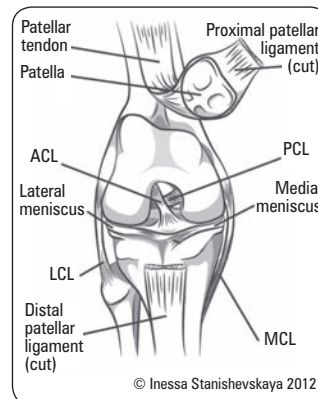


Figure 40. Knee ligament and anatomy



6 Degrees of Freedom of the Knee

- Flexion and extension
- External and internal rotation
- Varus and valgus angulation
- Anterior and posterior glide
- Medial and lateral shift
- Compression and distraction



On physical exam of the knee, do not forget to evaluate the hip

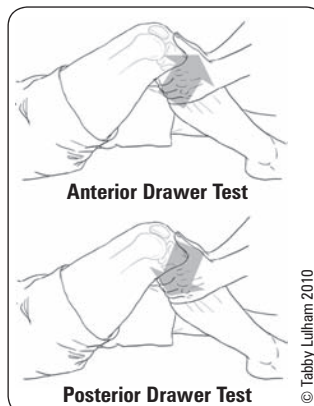


Figure 41. Anterior and posterior drawer test

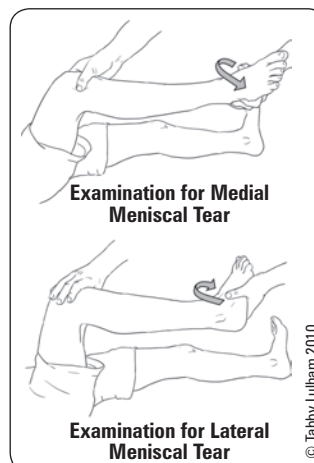


Figure 42. McMurray test

- McMurray's test useful collaborative information
 - with knee in flexion, palpate joint line for painful "pop/click"
 - internally rotate foot, varus stress, and extend knee to test lateral meniscus
 - externally rotate foot, valgus stress, and extend knee to test medial meniscus
 - for meniscal tear: 1.3 positive likelihood ratio, 0.8 negative likelihood ratio
- composite assessment for meniscal tears: 2.7 positive likelihood ratio, 0.4 negative likelihood ratio

X-Rays

- AP standing, lateral
- skyline: tangential view with knees flexed at 45° to see patellofemoral joint
- 3-foot standing view: useful in evaluating leg length and varus/valgus alignment
- Ottawa Knee Rules (see [Emergency Medicine, ER17](#))



Knee History

CLIPS

Clicking
Locking
Instability
Pain (location)
Swelling



Physical exam difficult in acute knee injuries; immobilize leg and re-examine in 1 wk

Cruciate Ligament Tears

- ACL tear much more common than PCL tear

Table 22. Comparison of ACL and PCL Injuries

	Anterior Cruciate Ligament	Posterior Cruciate Ligament
Anatomy	From medial wall of lateral femoral condyle to the anteromedial and posterolateral intercondyloid eminence of the tibial plateau	Lateral wall of medial femoral condyle to posterior intercondyloid eminence of the tibial plateau
Mechanism	Sudden deceleration Hyperextension and internal rotation of tibia on femur (i.e. "plant and turn")	Sudden posterior displacement of tibia when knee is flexed or hyperextended (e.g. dashboard MVC injury)
History	Audible "pop" Immediate swelling Knee "giving way" Inability to continue activity	Audible "pop" Immediate swelling Pain with push off Cannot descend stairs
Physical	Effusion (hemarthrosis) Posterolateral joint line tenderness Positive anterior drawer Positive Lachmann Pivot shift Test for MCL, meniscal injuries	Effusion (hemarthrosis) Anteromedial joint line tenderness Positive posterior drawer Reverse pivot shift Other ligamentous, bony injuries
Treatment	Stable knee with minimal functional impairment: immobilization 2-4 wk with early ROM and strengthening High demand lifestyle: ligament reconstruction	Unstable knee or young person/high-demand lifestyle: ligament reconstruction Posterior sag

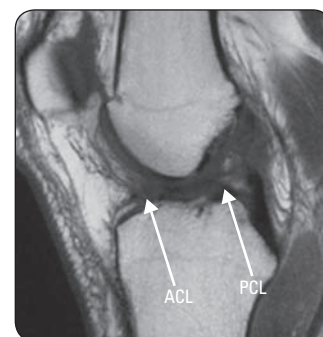


Figure 43. T1 MRI of torn ACL and PCL

Collateral Ligament Tears

Mechanism

- valgus force to knee = MCL tear
- varus force to knee = LCL tear

Clinical Features

- swelling/effusion
- tenderness above and below joint line medially (MCL) or laterally (LCL)
- joint laxity with varus or valgus force to knee
 - laxity with endpoint suggests partial tear
 - laxity with no endpoint suggests a complete tear
- test for other injuries (e.g. O'Donoghue's unhappy triad), common peroneal nerve injury

Treatment

- partial tear: immobilization x 2-4 wk with early ROM and strengthening
- complete tear: immobilization at 30° flexion
- multiple ligamentous injuries: surgical repair of ligaments



Partial ligamentous tears are much more painful than complete ligamentous tears



O'Donoghue's Unhappy Triad

- ACL rupture
- MCL rupture
- Meniscal damage (medial and/or lateral)

Meniscal Tears

- medial tear much more common than lateral tear

Mechanism

- twisting force on knee when it is partially flexed (e.g. stepping down and turning)
- requires moderate trauma in young person but only mild trauma in elderly due to degeneration

Clinical Features

- immediate pain, difficulty weight-bearing, instability, and clicking
- increased pain with squatting and/or twisting
- effusion (hemarthrosis) with insidious onset (24-48 h after injury)
- joint line tenderness medially or laterally
- locking of knee (if portion of meniscus mechanically obstructing extension)

Investigations

- MRI, arthroscopy

Treatment

- if not locked: ROM and strengthening (NSAIDs)
- if locked or failed above: arthroscopic repair/partial meniscectomy



Tissue Sources for ACL Reconstruction

- Hamstring
- Middle 1/3 patellar tendon (bone-patellar-bone)
- Allograft (e.g. cadaver)



ACL tear more common than PCL tear
MCL tear more common than LCL tear

Quadriceps/Patellar Tendon Rupture

Mechanism

- sudden forceful contraction of quadriceps during an attempt to stop
- more common in obese patients and those with pre-existing degenerative changes in tendon
 - DM, SLE, RA, steroid use, renal failure on dialysis

Clinical Features

- inability to extend knee or weight-bear
- possible audible “pop”
- patella in lower or higher position with palpable gap above or below patella respectively
- may have an effusion

Investigations

- ask patient to straight leg raise
- knee x-ray to rule out patellar fracture
- lateral view: patella alta with patella tendon rupture, patella baja (infera) with quadriceps tendon rupture

Treatment

- non-operative treatment for incomplete tears with preserved extension of knee
- surgical repair of tendon indicated for complete ruptures
- early surgical repair: better outcomes compared with delayed repair (>6 wk post injury)
- delayed repair complicated by quadriceps contracture, patella migration, and adhesions



Patella alta = high riding patella
Patella baja (infera) = low riding patella

Dislocated Knee

Mechanism

- high energy trauma
- by definition, caused by tears of multiple ligaments

Clinical Features

- classified by relation of tibia with respect to femur
 - anterior, posterior, lateral, medial, rotary
- knee instability
- effusion
- pain
- ischemic limb

Investigations

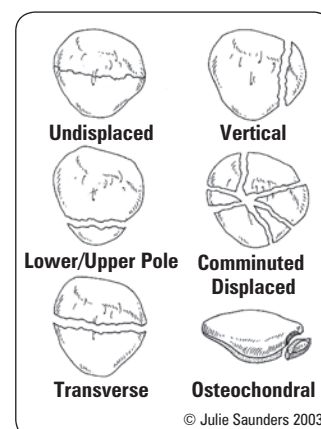
- x-rays: AP, lateral, skyline
 - associated radiographic findings include tibial plateau fracture dislocations, proximal fibular fractures, and avulsion of fibular head
- ankle brachial index (abnormal if <0.9)
- arteriogram or CT angiogram if abnormal vascular exam (such as abnormal pedal pulses)

Treatment

- urgent closed reduction
 - complicated by interposed soft tissue
- assessment of peroneal nerve, tibial artery, and ligamentous injuries
- repair of associated injuries; also may need decompressive fasciotomy especially if vascular repair undertaken
- knee immobilization x 6-8 wk

Specific Complications

- high incidence of associated injuries
 - popliteal artery tear
 - peroneal nerve injury
 - capsular tear
- chronic: instability, stiffness, post-traumatic arthritis



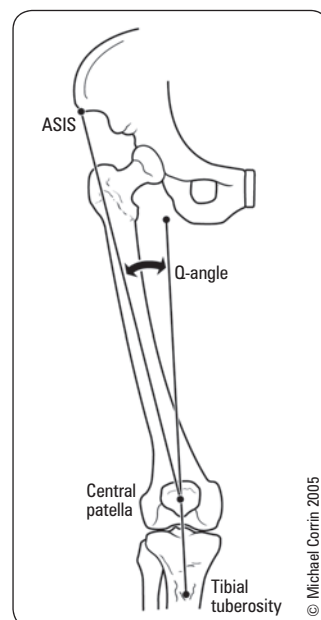
© Julie Saunders 2003

Figure 44. Types of patellar fractures**Complications**

- Symptomatic wiring
- Loss of reduction
- Osteonecrosis (proximal fragment)
- Hardware failure
- Knee stiffness
- Nonunion
- Infection

**Patellar Open Reduction and Internal Fixation**

- Longitudinal midline excision over patella
- Longitudinal cannulated screws with tension-band wiring fixation
- Preserve patellar bone
- Antibiotic, debridement, early fixation in open fracture



© Michael Corrin 2005

Figure 45. Q-angle

The angle between a vertical line through the patella and tibial tuberosity and a line from the ASIS to the middle patella. The larger the angle the greater the amount of lateral force on the knee (normal $<20^\circ$)

Patella

Patellar Fracture

Mechanism

- direct blow to the patella: fall, MVC (dashboard)
- indirect trauma by sudden flexion of knee against contracted quadriceps

Clinical Features

- marked tenderness
- inability to extend knee or straight leg raise
- proximal displacement of patella
- patellar deformity
- \pm effusion/hemarthrosis

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, lateral, skyline
- do not confuse with bipartite patella: congenitally unfused ossification centers with smooth margins on x-ray at superolateral corner

Treatment

- goal: restore extensor mechanism with maximal articular congruency
- non-displaced (step-off $<2-3$ mm and fracture gap $<1-4$ mm)
 - straight leg immobilization 1-4 wk with hinged knee brace, weight bearing as tolerated
 - progress in flexion after 2-3 wk
 - physiotherapy: quadriceps strengthening when pain has subsided
- displaced: ORIF (>2 mm)
- comminuted: ORIF; may require partial/complete patellectomy
- disrupted extensor mechanism: ORIF

Patellar Dislocation

Mechanism

- usually a non-contact twisting injury
- lateral displacement of patella after contraction of quadriceps at the start of knee flexion in an almost straight knee joint
- direct blow, e.g. knee/helmet to knee collision

Risk Factors

- young, female
- obesity
- high-riding patella (patella alta)
- knock-knees (genu valgus)
- Q-angle (quadriceps angle) $\geq 20^\circ$
- shallow intercondylar groove
- weak vastus medialis
- tight lateral retinaculum
- ligamentous laxity (Ehlers-Danlos)

Clinical Features

- knee catches or gives way with walking
- severe pain, tenderness anteromedially from rupture of capsule
- weak knee extension or inability to extend leg unless patella reduced

- positive patellar apprehension test
 - passive lateral translation results in guarding and patient apprehension
- often recurrent, self-reducing
- concomitant MCL injury

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, lateral, skyline view of patella
 - check for fracture of medial patella (most common) and lateral femoral condyle

Treatment

- non-operative first
 - non-operative
 - NSAIDs, activity modification, and physical therapy
 - short-term immobilization for comfort then 6 wk controlled motion
 - progressive weight bearing and isometric quadriceps strengthening
- if recurrent or if loose bodies present
 - surgical tightening of medial capsule and release of lateral retinaculum, possible tibial tuberosity transfer, or proximal tibial osteotomy

Patellofemoral Syndrome (Chondromalacia Patellae)

Mechanism

- softening, erosion and fragmentation of articular cartilage, predominantly medial aspect of patella
- commonly seen in active young females

Predisposing Factors

- malalignment causing patellar maltracking (Q angle $\geq 20^\circ$, genu valgus)
- post-trauma
- deformity of patella or femoral groove
- recurrent patellar dislocation, ligamentous laxity
- excessive knee strain (athletes)

Clinical Features

- deep, aching anterior knee pain
 - exacerbated by prolonged sitting (theatre sign), strenuous athletic activities, stair climbing, squatting or kneeling
- insidious onset and vague in nature
- sensation of instability, pseudolocking
- pain with extension against resistance through terminal 30-40°
- pain with compression of patella with knee ROM
- swelling rare, minimal if present
- palpable crepitus

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, lateral, skyline

Treatment

- non-operative
 - continue non-impact activities; rest and rehabilitation
 - NSAIDs
 - physiotherapy: vastus medialis and core strengthening
- surgical with refractory patients
 - tibial tubercle elevation
 - arthroscopic shaving/debridement
 - lateral release of retinaculum



Pain with firm compression of patella into medial femoral groove is pathognomonic of patellofemoral syndrome

Tibia

Tibial Plateau Fracture

Mechanism

- varus/valgus load \pm axial loading (e.g. fall from height)
- femoral condyles driven into proximal tibia
- can result from minor trauma in osteoporotics

Clinical Features

- frequency: lateral > medial
- medial fractures require higher energy – often have concomitant vascular injuries
- knee effusion
- inability to bear weight
- swelling
- associated with compartment syndrome

Classification

- Schatzker classification

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, lateral, oblique
- CT: pre-operative planning, identify articular depression and comminution

Treatment

Approach #1 (based on amount of depression seen on x-ray)	If depression on x-ray is <3 mm: Straight leg immobilization x 4-6 wk with progressive ROM weight bearing
	If depression is >3 mm: ORIF often requiring bone grafting to elevate depressed fragment
Approach #2 (based on varus/valgus instability)	If minimal varus/valgus instability (<15°): Straight leg immobilization x 4-6 wk with progressive ROM weight bearing
	If significant varus/valgus instability (>15°): ORIF often requiring bone grafting to elevate depressed fragment

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- ligamentous injuries
- meniscal lesions
- AVN
- infection
- OA

Tibial Shaft Fracture

Mechanism

- low energy pattern: torsional injury
- high energy: including MVC, falls, sporting injuries

Clinical Features

- open vs. closed
- amount of displacement
- NVS
- most commonly fractured long bone
- most common open fracture

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, lateral, skyline
 - full length, plus knee and ankle

Treatment

- closed minimally displaced: straight leg cast x 4 wk, functional brace after
 - displaced: ORIF with reamed IM nail, plate and screws, or external fixator
- open
 - antibiotics, I&D
 - external fixation or IM nail
 - vascularized coverage of soft tissue defects (often heal poorly)

Specific Complications (see *General Fracture Complications*, OR6)

- high incidence of neurovascular injury and compartment syndrome
- poor soft tissue coverage (critical to outcome)



Schatzker Classification

Type	Description
I	Involvement of lateral plateau split fracture
II	Lateral split-depressed fracture
III	Involvement of lateral plateau: pure depression fracture
IV	Medial plateau fracture
V	Bicondylar plateau fracture
VI	Bicondylar with metaphyseal/diaphyseal involvement



Tibial shaft fractures have high incidence of compartment syndrome and are often associated with soft tissue injuries



Figure 46. Tibial shaft fracture treated with IM nail and screws



Low Molecular Weight Heparin for Prevention of Venous Thromboembolism in Patients with Lower-Leg Immobilization

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2014;4:CD006681

Purpose: To evaluate the effectiveness of LMWH as VTE prophylaxis in patients with lower-leg immobilization in an ambulant setting.

Selection Criteria: RCTs and CCTs comparing LMWH to no prophylaxis or placebo in patients immobilized with a plaster cast or brace.

Results/Conclusions: 6 RCTs, 1,490 patients. Incidence of VTE was 4.3-40% in patients immobilized for >1 wk without thromboprophylaxis or with placebo. With daily LMWH subcutaneous injections, incidence was 0-37% (OR 0.49, 95% CI 0.34-0.72). There were no reports of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. The use of LMWH in outpatients with lower-leg immobilization significantly reduces the number of VTE events.

Ankle

Evaluation of Ankle and Foot Complaints

Special Tests

- anterior drawer: examiner attempts to displace the foot anteriorly against a fixed tibia
- talar tilt: foot is stressed in inversion and angle of talar rotation is evaluated by x-ray

X-Ray

- AP, lateral
- mortise view: ankle at 15° of internal rotation
 - gives true view of ankle joint
 - joint space should be symmetric with no talar tilt
- Ottawa Ankle Rules should guide use of x-ray; nearly 100% sensitivity
- ± CT to better characterize fractures



Ottawa Ankle Rules (see [Emergency Medicine, ER17](#))

X-rays are only required if:

Pain in the malleolar zone AND bony tenderness over the posterior aspect of the medial or lateral malleolus OR inability to weight bear both immediately after injury and in the ER

Ankle Fracture

Mechanism

- pattern of fracture depends on the position of the ankle when trauma occurs
- generally involves
 - ipsilateral ligamentous tears or transverse bony avulsion
 - contralateral shear fractures (oblique or spiral)
- classification systems
 - Danis-Weber
 - Lauge-Hansen: based on foot's position and motion relative to leg

Danis-Weber Classification

- based on level of fibular fracture relative to syndesmosis
- **Type A** (infra-syndesmotom)
 - pure inversion injury
 - avulsion of lateral malleolus below plafond or torn calcaneofibular ligament
 - ± shear fracture of medial malleolus
- **Type B** (trans-syndesmotom)
 - external rotation and eversion (most common)
 - ± avulsion of medial malleolus or rupture of deltoid ligament
 - spiral fracture of lateral malleolus starting at plafond
- **Type C** (supra-syndesmotom)
 - pure external rotation
 - avulsion of medial malleolus or torn deltoid ligament
 - ± posterior malleolus avulsion with posterior tibio-fibular ligament
 - fibular fracture is above plafond (called Maisonneuve fracture if at proximal fibula)
 - frequently tears syndesmosis

Treatment

- undisplaced: NWB below knee cast
- indications for ORIF
 - any fracture-dislocation: restore vascularity, minimize articular injury, reduce pain and skin pressure
 - most of type B, and all of type C
 - trimalleolar (medial, posterior, lateral) fractures
 - talar tilt >10°
 - medial clear space on x-ray greater than superior clear space
 - open fracture/open joint injury
- high incidence of post-traumatic arthritis
- wrinkle test: skin shows wrinkles, to determine if soft tissue swelling has resolved to an extent to reduce complications

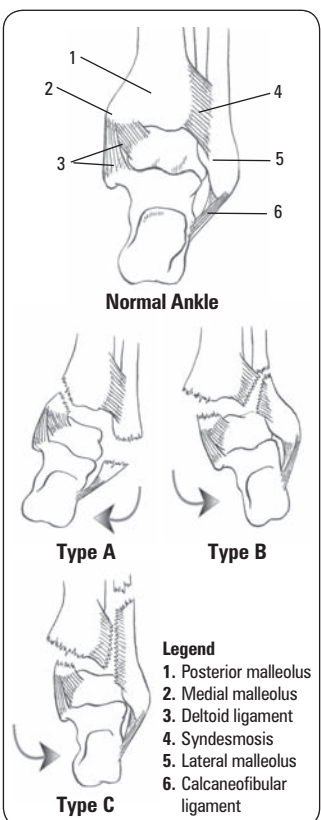


Figure 47. Ring principle of the ankle and Danis-Weber classification

Ligamentous Injuries

- see [Figure 48](#) for ankle ligaments

Medial Ligament Complex (deltoid ligament)

- eversion injury
- usually avulses medial or posterior malleolus and strains syndesmosis



With a history of trauma from axial loading of lower limb always consider spinal injuries, femoral neck, tibial plateau, and talar/calcaneal fractures

Lateral Ligament Complex (Anterior Talofibular, Calcaneofibular, Posterior Talofibular)

- inversion injury, >90% of all ankle sprains
- ATF most commonly and severely injured if ankle is plantar flexed
- swelling and tenderness anterior to lateral malleolus
- ++ ecchymoses
- positive ankle anterior drawer
- may have significant medial talar tilt on inversion stress x-ray

Treatment

- microscopic tear (Grade I)
 - rest, ice, compression, elevation (RICE)
- macroscopic tear (Grade II)
 - strap ankle in dorsiflexion and eversion x 4-6 wk
 - physiotherapy: strengthening and proprioceptive retraining
- complete tear (Grade III)
 - below knee walking cast x 4-6 wk
 - physiotherapy: strengthening and proprioceptive retraining
 - surgical intervention may be required if chronic symptomatic instability develops

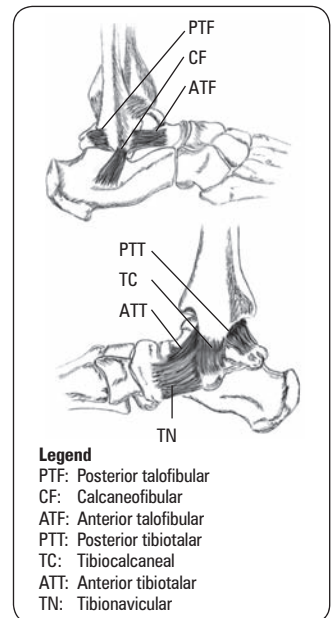


Figure 48. Ankle ligament complexes

Foot

Talar Fracture

Mechanism

- axial loading or hyperdorsiflexion (MVC, fall from height)
- 60% of talus covered by articular cartilage
- talar neck is most common fracture of talus (50%)
- tenuous blood supply runs distal to proximal along talar neck
 - high risk of AVN with displaced fractures

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, lateral, Canale view
- CT to better characterize fracture
- MRI can clearly define extent of AVN

Treatment

- undisplaced: NWB below knee cast x 20-24 wk
- displaced: ORIF (high rate of nonunion, AVN)
- neck fracture: Pin (nondisplaced) or ORIF

Calcaneal Fracture

Mechanism

- high energy, axial loading: fall from height onto heels
- 10% of fractures associated with compression fractures of thoracic or lumbar spine (rule out spine injury)
- 75% intra-articular and 10% are bilateral

Physical Exam

- marked swelling, bruising on heel/sole
- wider, shortened, flatter heel when viewed from behind
- varus heel

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, lateral, oblique (Broden's view)
- loss of Bohler's angle
- CT: gold-standard, assess intra-articular extension

Treatment

- closed vs. open reduction is controversial
- NWB cast x 3 mo with early ROM and strengthening



Calcaneal Fracture Treatment Principles

- Avoid wound complications (10-25%)
- Restore articular congruity
- Restore normal calcaneal width and height
- Maximum functional recovery may take longer than 12 mo

Achilles Tendonitis

Mechanism

- chronic inflammation from activity or poor-fitting footwear
- may also develop heel bumps (retrocalcaneobursitis)

Physical Exam

- pain, stiffness, and crepitus with ROM
- thickened tendon, palpable bump

Treatment

- rest, NSAIDs, shoe wear modification
- heel sleeves and pads are mainstay of non-operative treatment
- gentle gastrocnemius-soleus stretching, eccentric training with physical therapy, deep tissue calf massage
- orthotics, open back shoes
- shockwave therapy in chronic tendonitis
- DO NOT inject steroids (risk of tendon rupture)

Achilles Tendon Rupture

Mechanism

- loading activity, stop-and-go sports (e.g. squash, tennis, basketball)
- secondary to chronic tendonitis, steroid injection

Clinical Features

- audible pop, sudden pain with push off movement
- sensation of being kicked in heel when trying to plantar flex
- palpable gap
- apprehensive toe off when walking
- weak plantar flexion strength
- Thompson test: with patient prone, plantar flexion when calf is squeezed by examiner
 - no passive plantar flexion is positive test = ruptured tendon

Treatment

- low demand or elderly: cast foot in plantar flexion (to relax tendon) x 8-12 wk
- high demand: surgical repair, then cast as above x 6-8 wk



Complications of Achilles Tendon Rupture

- Infection
- Sural nerve injury
- Rerupture: surgical repair decreases likelihood of rerupture compared to non-operative management



The most common site of Achilles tendon rupture is 2-6 cm from its insertion where the blood supply is the poorest

Plantar Fasciitis (Heel Spur Syndrome)

Mechanism

- repetitive strain injury causing microtears and inflammation of plantar fascia
- common in athletes (especially runners, dancers)
- also associated with obesity, DM, seronegative and seropositive arthritis

Clinical Features

- insidious onset of heel pain, pain when getting out of bed and stiffness
- intense pain when walking from rest that subsides as patient continues to walk, worse at end of day with prolonged standing
- swelling, tenderness over sole
- greatest at medial calcaneal tubercle and 1-2 cm distal along plantar fascia
- pain with toe dorsiflexion (stretches fascia)

Investigations

- plain radiographs to rule out fractures
- often see bony exostoses (heel spurs) at insertion of fascia into medial calcaneal tubercle
- spur is secondary to inflammation, not the cause of pain

Treatment

- pain control and stretching programs are first line
- rest, ice, NSAIDs, steroid injection
- physiotherapy: Achilles tendon and plantar fascia stretching, extracorporeal shockwave therapy
- orthotics with heel cup
 - to counteract pronation and disperse heel strike forces
- endoscopic surgical release of fascia in refractory cases
 - spur removal is not required

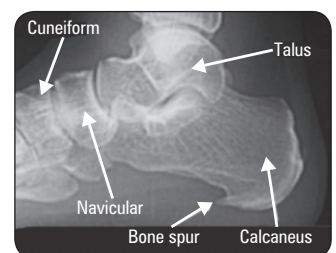


Figure 49. X-ray of bony heel spur

Bunions (Hallux Valgus)

Mechanism

- valgus alignment on 1st MTP (hallux valgus) causes eccentric pull of extensor and intrinsic muscles
- many associated deformities in foot from altered mechanics
- reactive exostosis forms with thickening of the skin creating a bunion
- most often associated with poor-fitting footwear (high heel and narrow toe box)
- can be hereditary (70% have family history)
- 10x more frequent in women

Clinical Features

- painful bursa over medial eminence of 1st MT head
- pronation (rotation inward) of great toe
- numbness over medial aspect of great toe

Investigations

- x-ray: standing AP/lateral/sesamoid view, NWB oblique

Treatment

- indications: painful corn or bunion, overriding 2nd toe
- non-operative first line
 - properly fitted shoes (low heel) and toe spacer
- surgical: goal is to restore normal anatomy, not cosmetic reasons alone
 - osteotomy with realignment of 1st MTP joint (Chevron Procedure)
 - arthrodesis

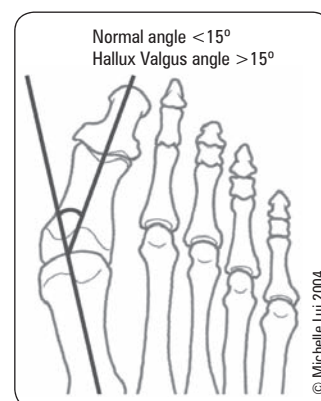


Figure 50. Hallux valgus

Metatarsal Fracture

- as with the hand, 1st, 4th, 5th MT are relatively mobile, while the 2nd and 3rd are fixed
- use Ottawa Foot Rules to determine need for x-ray

Table 23. Types of Metatarsal Fractures

Fracture Type	Mechanism	Clinical	Treatment
Avulsion of Base of 5th MT	Sudden inversion followed by contraction of peroneus brevis	Tender base of 5th MT	Requires ORIF if displaced
Midshaft 5th MT (Jones Fracture)	Stress injury	Painful shaft of 5th MT	*NWB BK cast x 6 wk ORIF if athlete
Shaft 2nd, 3rd MT (March Fracture)	Stress injury	Painful shaft of 2nd or 3rd MT	Symptomatic
1st MT	Trauma	Painful 1st MT	ORIF if displaced otherwise *NWB BK cast x 3 wk then walking cast x 2 wk
Tarso-MT Fracture – Dislocation (Lisfranc Fracture)	Fall onto plantar flexed foot or direct crush injury	Shortened forefoot prominent base	ORIF

*NWB BK = Non weight bearing, below knee



Ottawa Ankle and Foot Rules (see [Emergency Medicine, ER17](#))

X-rays only required if:

Pain in the midfoot zone AND bony tenderness over the navicular or base of the fifth metatarsal OR inability to weight bear both immediately after injury and in the ER



Greenstick fractures are easy to reduce but can redisplace while in cast due to intact periosteum

Pediatric Orthopedics

Fractures in Children

- type of fracture
 - thicker, more active periosteum results in pediatric specific fractures: greenstick (one cortex), torus (i.e. 'buckle', impacted cortex) and plastic (bowing)
 - distal radius fracture most common in children (phalanges second), the majority are treated with closed reduction and casting
 - adults fracture through both cortices
- epiphyseal growth plate
 - weaker part of bone, susceptible to fractures
 - plate often mistaken for fracture on x-ray and vice versa (x-ray opposite limb for comparison), especially in elbow
 - tensile strength of bone < ligaments in children, therefore clinician must be confident that fracture and/or growth plate injury have been ruled out before diagnosing a sprain
 - intra-articular fractures have worse consequences in children because they usually involve the growth plate

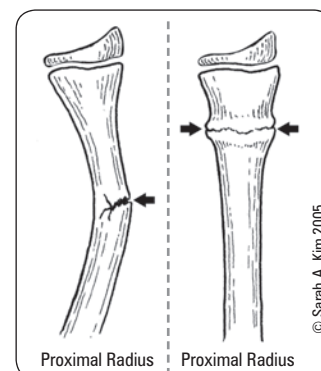


Figure 51. Greenstick (left) and torus (right) fractures

- anatomic reduction
 - gold standard with adults
 - may cause limb length discrepancy in children (overgrowth)
 - accept greater angular deformity in children (remodeling minimizes deformity)
- time to heal
 - shorter in children
- always be aware of the possibility of child abuse
 - make sure stated mechanism compatible with injury
 - high index of suspicion with fractures in non-ambulating children (<1 yr); look for other signs, including x-ray evidence of healing fractures at different sites and different stages of healing



Ossification Centers of the Elbow

CRITOE

Capitellum: 1 yr
 Radial head: 4 yr
 Internal (medial) epicondyle: 6 yr
 Trochlea: 8 yr
 Olecranon: 10 yr
 External (lateral) epicondyle: 12 yr
 (\pm 1 yr)

Stress Fractures

Mechanism

- insufficiency fracture
 - stress applied to a weak or structurally deficient bone
- fatigue fracture
 - repetitive, excessive force applied to normal bone
- most common in adolescent athletes
- tibia is most common site

Diagnosis and Treatment

- localized pain and tenderness over the involved bone
- plain films may not show fracture for 2 wk
- bone scan positive in 12-15 d
- treatment is rest from strenuous activities to allow remodeling (can take several months)

Evaluation of the Limping Child

- see [Pediatrics](#), P93



Epiphyseal Injury

Table 24. Salter-Harris Classification of Epiphyseal Injury

SALT(E)R-Harris Type	Description	Treatment
I (Straight through; Stable)	Transverse through growth plate	Closed reduction and cast immobilization (except SCFE – ORIF); heals well, 95% do not affect growth
II (Above)	Through metaphysis and along growth plate	Closed reduction and cast if anatomic; otherwise ORIF
III (Low)*	Through epiphysis to plate and along growth plate	Anatomic reduction by ORIF to prevent growth arrest, avoid fixation across growth plate
IV (Through and through)*	Through epiphysis and metaphysis	Closed reduction and cast if anatomic; otherwise ORIF
V (Ram)*	Crush injury of growth plate	High incidence of growth arrest; no specific treatment

* Types III – IV are more likely to cause growth arrest and progressive deformity

Slipped Capital Femoral Epiphysis

- type I Salter-Harris epiphyseal injury at proximal hip
- most common adolescent hip disorder, peak incidence at pubertal growth spurt
- risk factors: male, obese (#1 factor), hypothyroid (risk of bilateral involvement)

Etiology

- multifactorial
 - genetic: autosomal dominant, blacks > caucasians
 - cartilaginous physis hypertrophies too rapidly under growth hormone effects
 - sex hormone secretion, which stabilizes physis, has not yet begun
 - overweight: mechanical stress
 - trauma: causes acute slip



In SCFE, bilateral involvement occurs in about 25%

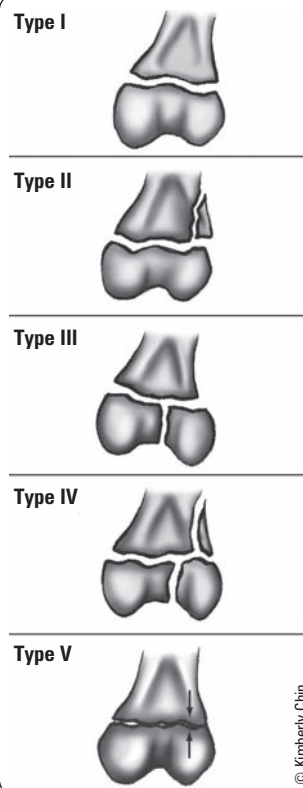


Figure 52. Salter-Harris classification

© Kimberly Chin

Ages 10-14, below associated with hypothyroidism**Clinical Features**

- acute: sudden, severe pain with limp
- chronic (typically): groin and anterior thigh pain, may present with knee pain
 - positive Trendelenburg sign on affected side, due to weakened gluteal muscles
- tender over joint capsule
- restricted internal rotation, abduction, flexion
 - Whitman's sign: obligatory external rotation during passive flexion of hip
- clinical classification: stable vs. unstable (provides prognostic information)
 - unstable means patient cannot ambulate even with crutches

Investigations

- x-rays: AP, frog-leg, lateral radiographs both hips
 - posterior and medial slip
 - disruption of Klein's line
 - AP view may be normal or show widened/lucent growth plate compared with opposite side

Treatment and Complications

- mild/moderate slip: stabilize physis with pins in current position
- severe slip: ORIF or pin physis without reduction and osteotomy after epiphyseal fusion
- complications: AVN (roughly half of unstable hips), chondrolysis (loss of articular cartilage, resulting in narrowing of joint space), pin penetration, premature OA, loss of ROM

**SCFE – Klein's Line**

On AP view, line drawn along superolateral border of femoral neck should cross at least a portion of the femoral epiphysis. If it does not, suspect SCFE

Developmental Dysplasia of the Hip

- most common orthopedic disorder in newborns
- due to ligamentous laxity, muscular underdevelopment, and abnormal shallow slope of acetabular roof
- spectrum of conditions that lead to hip subluxation and dislocation
 - dislocated femoral head completely out of acetabulum
 - dislocatable head in socket
 - head subluxates out of joint when provoked
 - dysplastic acetabulum, more shallow and more vertical than normal
- painless (if painful suspect septic dislocation)

Physical Exam

- diagnosis is clinical
 - limited abduction of the flexed hip (<50-60°)
 - affected leg shortening results in asymmetry in skin folds and gluteal muscles, wide perineum
 - Barlow's test (for dislocatable hip)
 - ♦ flex hips and knees to 90° and grasp thigh
 - ♦ fully adduct hips, push posteriorly to try to dislocate hips
 - Ortolani's test (for dislocated hip)
 - ♦ initial position as above but try to reduce hip with fingertips during abduction
 - ♦ positive test: palpable clunk is felt (not heard) if hip is reduced
 - Galeazzi's sign
 - ♦ knees at unequal heights when hips and knees flexed
 - ♦ dislocated hip on side of lower knee
 - ♦ difficult test if child <1 yr
 - ♦ Trendelenburg test and gait useful if older (>2 yr)

Investigations

- U/S in first few months to view cartilage (bone is not calcified in newborns until 4-6 mo)
- follow up radiograph after 3 mo
- x-ray signs: false acetabulum, acetabular index >25°, broken Shenton's line, femoral neck above Hilgenreiner's line, ossification center outside of inner lower quadrant (quadrants formed by intersection of Hilgenreiner's and Perkin's line)

Treatment and Complications

- 0-6 mo: reduce hip using Pavlik harness to maintain abduction and flexion
- 6-18 mo: reduction under GA, hip spica cast x 2-3 mo (if Pavlik harness fails)
- >18 mo: open reduction; pelvic and/or femoral osteotomy
- complications
 - redislocation, inadequate reduction, stiffness
 - AVN of femoral head

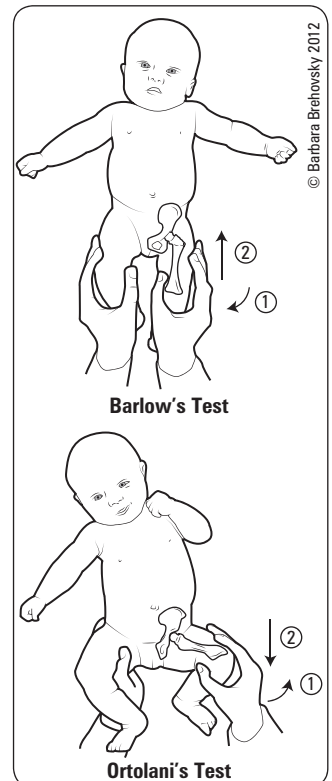


Figure 53. Barlow's test (checks if hips are dislocatable) **and Ortolani's test** (checks if hips are dislocated)

**5 Fs that Predispose to Developmental Dysplasia of the Hip**

Family history
Female
Frank breech
First born
LeFt hip

Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease (Coxa Plana)

- idiopathic AVN of femoral head, presents at 4-8 yr of age
- etiology unknown, 12% bilateral, M>F = 5:1, 1/1,200
- associations
 - family history
 - low birth weight
 - abnormal pregnancy/delivery
 - ADHD in 33% of cases, delayed bone age in 89%
- key features
 - AVN of proximal femoral epiphysis, abnormal growth of the physis, and eventual remodelling of regenerated bone

Clinical Features

- child with antalgic limp ± pain
- intermittent knee, hip, groin, or thigh pain
- flexion contracture (stiff hip): decreased internal rotation and abduction of hip

Investigations

- x-rays: AP pelvis, frog leg laterals
 - may be negative early (if high index of suspicion, move to bone scan or MRI)
 - eventually, characteristic collapse of femoral head (diagnostic)

Treatment

- goal is to preserve ROM and keep femoral head contained in acetabulum
- physiotherapy: ROM exercises
- brace in flexion and abduction x 2-3 yr (controversial)
- femoral or pelvic osteotomy (>8 yr of age or severe)
 - prognosis better in males, <5 yr, <50% of femoral head involved, abduction >30°
- 60% of involved hips do not require operative intervention
- Natural history is early onset OA and decreased ROM



Children diagnosed with coxa plana
<6 yr of age have improved prognosis



Most common in adolescent athletes,
especially jumping/sprinting sports

Osgood-Schlatter Disease

Mechanism

- repetitive tensile stress on insertion of patellar tendon over the tibial tuberosity causes minor avulsion at the site and subsequent inflammatory reaction (tibial tubercle apophysitis)

Clinical Features

- tender lump over tibial tuberosity
- pain on resisted leg extension
- anterior knee pain exacerbated by jumping or kneeling, relieved by rest

Investigations

- x-rays: lateral knee: fragmentation of the tibial tubercle, ± ossicles in patellar tendon

Treatment

- benign, self-limited condition, does not resolve until growth halts
- may restrict activities such as basketball or cycling
- NSIADS, rest, flexibility, isometric strengthening exercises

Congenital Talipes Equinovarus (Club Foot)

Etiology

- intrinsic causes (neurologic, muscular, or connective tissue diseases) vs. extrinsic (intrauterine growth restriction), may be idiopathic, neurogenic, or syndrome-associated
- fixed deformity
- 3 parts to deformity
 - talipes: talus is inverted and internally rotated
 - equinus: ankle is plantar flexed
 - varus: heel and forefoot are in varus (supinated)
- 1-2/1,000 newborns, 50% bilateral, occurrence M>F, severity F>M

Physical Exam

- examine hips for associated DDH
- examine knees for deformity
- examine back for dysraphism (unfused vertebral bodies)

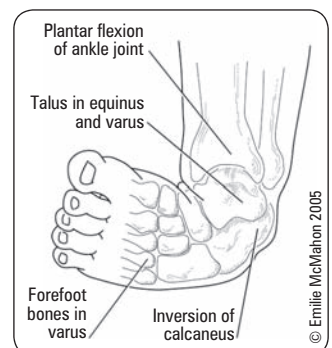


Figure 54. The club foot – depicting the gross and bony deformity

Treatment

- correct deformities in the following order (Ponseti Technique; 90% success rate)
 - forefoot adduction, ankle inversion, equinus
 - ♦ change strapping/cast q1-2wk
 - surgical release in refractory case (rare)
 - ♦ delayed until 3-4 mo of age
- 3 yr recurrence rate = 5-10%
- mild recurrence common; affected foot is permanently smaller/stiffer than normal foot with calf muscle atrophy



Scoliosis screening is not recommended in Canada (Griegel A, et al. 2010; Health Canada, 1994)

Scoliosis

Definition

- lateral curvature of spine with vertebral rotation

Epidemiology

- age: 10-14 yr
- more frequent and more severe in females

Etiology

- idiopathic: most common (90%)
- congenital: vertebrae fail to form or segment
- neuromuscular: UMN or LMN lesion, myopathy
- postural: leg length discrepancy, muscle spasm
- other: osteochondrodystrophies, neoplastic, traumatic

Clinical Features

- \pm back pain
- 1° curve where several vertebrae affected
- 2° curves above and below fixed 1° curve to try and maintain normal position of head and pelvis
- asymmetric shoulder height when bent forward
- Adam's test: rib hump when bent forward
- prominent scapulae, creased flank, asymmetric pelvis
- associated posterior midline skin lesions in neuromuscular scolioses
 - café-au-lait spots, dimples, neurofibromas
 - axillary freckling, hemangiomas, hair patches
- associated pes cavus or leg atrophy
- apparent leg length discrepancy

X-Rays

- 3-foot standing, AP, lateral
 - measure curvature: Cobb angle
 - may have associated kyphosis

Treatment

- based on Cobb angle
 - $<25^\circ$: observe for changes with serial radiographs
 - $>25^\circ$ or progressive: bracing (many types) that halt/slow curve progression but do NOT reverse deformity
 - $>45^\circ$, cosmetically unacceptable or respiratory problems: surgical correction (spinal fusion)

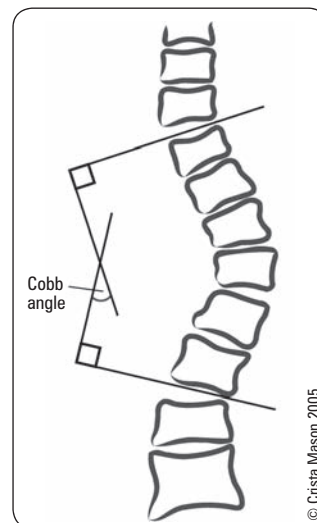


Figure 55. Cobb angle – used to monitor the progression of the scoliotic curve



In structural or fixed scoliosis, bending forwards makes the curve more obvious



Postural scoliosis can be corrected by correcting the underlying problem



Red Flags

- Persistent skeletal pain
- Localized tenderness
- Spontaneous fracture
- Enlarging mass/soft tissue swelling

Bone Tumors

- primary bone tumors are rare after 3rd decade
- metastases to bone are relatively common after 3rd decade

Table 25. Distinguishing Benign from Malignant Bone Lesions on X-ray

Benign	Malignant
No periosteal reaction	Acute periosteal reaction <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Codman's triangle • "Onion skin" • "Sunburst"
Thick endosteal reaction	Broad border between lesion and normal bone
Well developed bone formation	Varied bone formation
Intraosseous and even calcification	Extraosseous and irregular calcification

Adapted from: Buckholtz RW, Heckman JD. Rockwood and Green's Fractures in Adults. Volume 1. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2001; 558

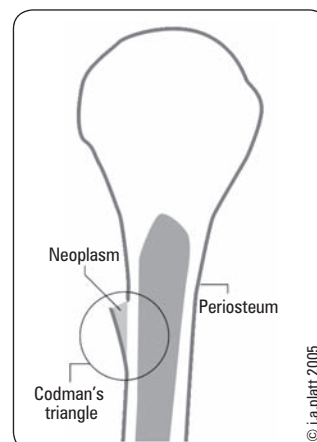


Figure 56. Codman's triangle – a radiographic finding in malignancy, where the partially ossified periosteum is lifted off the cortex by neoplastic tissue

Diagnosis

- pain, swelling, tenderness, rarely regional adenopathy
- routine x-ray findings
 - location (which bone, diaphysis, metaphysis, epiphysis)
 - size
 - lytic/lucent vs. sclerotic
 - involvement (cortex, medulla, soft tissue)
 - matrix (radiolucent, radiodense or calcified)
 - periosteal reaction
 - margin (geographic vs. permeative)
 - any pathological fracture
 - soft tissue swelling
- malignancy is suggested by rapid growth, warmth, tenderness, lack of sharp definition
- staging should include
 - blood work including liver enzymes
 - CT chest
 - bone scan
 - bone biopsy
 - ♦ should be referred to specialized center prior to biopsy
 - ♦ classified into benign, benign aggressive, and malignant
 - MRI of affected bone

Benign Active Bone Tumors

BONE-FORMING TUMORS

Osteoid Osteoma

- peak incidence in 2nd and 3rd decades, M:F = 2:1 (young males)
- proximal femur and tibia diaphysis most common locations
- not known to metastasize
- radiographic findings: small, round radiolucent nidus (<1 cm) surrounded by dense sclerotic bone ("bull's-eye")
- symptoms: produces severe intermittent pain from prostaglandin secretion and COX1/2 expression, mostly at night (diurnal prostaglandin production), thus is characteristically relieved by NSAIDs
- treatment: NSAIDs for night pain; surgical resection of nidus

FIBROUS LESIONS

Fibrous Cortical Defect

- occur in as many as 35% of children, peak incidence between 2-20 yr old, higher prevalence in males
- femur and proximal tibia most common locations, 50% of patients have multiple defects usually bilateral, symmetrical
- radiographic findings: diagnostic, metaphyseal eccentric 'bubbly' lytic lesion near physis; thin smooth/lobulated well-defined sclerotic margin
- treatment: most lesions resolve spontaneously

Osteochondroma

- 2nd and 3rd decades, M:F = 1.8:1
- most common of all benign bone tumors – 45%
- metaphysis of long bone near tendon attachment sites (usually distal femur, proximal tibia, or proximal humerus)
 - radiographic findings: cartilage-capped bony spur on surface of bone ("mushroom" on x-ray)
 - may be multiple (hereditary, autosomal dominant form) – higher risk of malignant change
- generally very slow growing and asymptomatic unless impinging on neurovascular structure ('painless mass')
 - growth usually ceases when skeletal maturity is reached
- malignant degeneration occurs in 1-2% (becomes painful or rapidly grows)

Enchondroma

- 2nd and 3rd decades
- 60% occur in the small tubular bones of the hand and foot; others in femur (20%), humerus, ribs
- benign cartilaginous growth, an abnormality of chondroblasts, develops in medullary cavity
 - single/multiple enlarged rarefied areas in tubular bones
 - lytic lesion with sharp margination and central calcification



Figure 57. T1 MRI of femoral enchondroma



Figure 58. X-ray of aneurysmal bone cyst. Note the aggressive destruction of bone

- malignant degeneration to chondrosarcoma occurs in 1-2% (pain in absence of pathologic fracture is an important clue)
- not known to metastasize

CYSTIC LESIONS

Unicameral/Solitary Bone Cyst

- most common cystic lesion
- children and young adults, peak incidence during first 2 decades, M:F = 2:1
- proximal humerus and femur most common
- symptoms: asymptomatic, or local pain; complete pathological fracture (50% presentations) or incidental detection
- radiographic findings: lytic translucent area on metaphyseal side of growth plate, cortex thinned/expanded; well defined lesion
- treatment: aspiration followed by steroid injection; curettage ± bone graft indicated if re-fracture likely

Benign Aggressive Bone Tumors

Giant Cell Tumors/Aneurysmal Bone Cyst/Osteoblastoma

- affects patients of skeletal maturity, peak 3rd decade
- osteoblastoma: found in the distal femur, proximal tibia, distal radius, sacrum, tarsal bones, spinae
- giant cell tumor: pulmonary metastases in 3%
- aneurysmal bone cysts: either solid with fibrous/granular tissue, or blood-filled
- radiographic findings
 - giant cell tumor: eccentric lytic lesions, in epiphyses adjacent to subchondral bone; may break through cortex; T2 MRI enhances fluid within lesion (hyper-intense signal)
 - aneurysmal bone cyst: expanded with honeycomb shape
 - osteoblastoma: often nonspecific; calcified central nidus (>2 cm) with radiolucent halo and sclerosis
- symptoms: local tenderness and swelling, pain may be progressive (giant cell tumors), ± symptoms of nerve root compression (osteoblastoma)
- 15% recur within 2 yr of surgery

Treatment

- intralesional curettage + bone graft or cement
- wide local excision of expendable bones



Figure 59. X-ray of osteosarcoma of distal femur

Malignant Bone Tumors

Table 26. Most Common Malignant Tumor Types for Age

Age	Tumor
<1	Neuroblastoma
1-10	Ewing's of tubular bones
10-30	Osteosarcoma, Ewing's of flat bones
30-40	Reticulum cell sarcoma, fibrosarcoma, periosteal osteosarcoma, malignant giant cell tumor, lymphoma
>40	Metastatic carcinoma, multiple myeloma, chondrosarcoma

Osteosarcoma

- most frequently diagnosed in 2nd decade of life (60%), 2nd most common primary malignancy in adults
- history of Paget's disease (elderly patients), previous radiation treatment
- predilection for sites of rapid growth: distal femur (45%), proximal tibia (20%), and proximal humerus (15%)
 - invasive, variable histology; frequent metastases without treatment (lung most common)
- painful symptoms: progressive pain, night pain, poorly defined swelling, decreased ROM
- radiographic findings:
 - characteristic periosteal reaction: Codman's triangle (see Figure 56) or "sunburst" spicule formation (tumor extension into periosteum)
 - destructive lesion in metaphysis may cross epiphyseal plate
- management: complete resection (limb salvage, rarely amputation), neo-adjuvant chemo; bone scan – rule out skeletal metastases, CT chest – rule out pulmonary metastases
- prognosis: 70% (high-grade); 90% (low-grade)

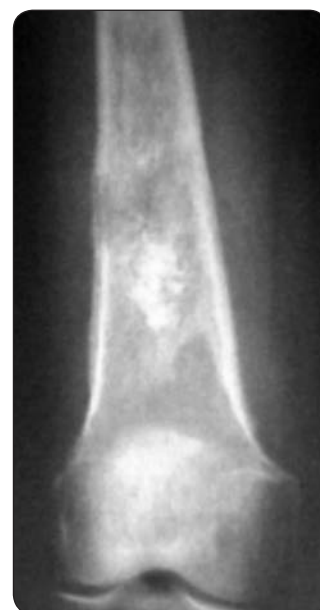


Figure 60. X-ray of femoral chondrosarcoma

Chondrosarcoma (see [Figure 60](#))

- primary (2/3 cases)
 - patient >40 yr; previous normal bone expands into cortex to give pain, pathological fracture, flecks of calcification
- secondary (1/3 cases)
 - malignant degeneration of pre-existing cartilage tumor such as enchondroma or osteochondroma
 - younger age group and better prognosis than primary chondrosarcoma
- symptoms: progressive pain, uncommonly palpable mass
- radiographic findings: in medullary cavity, irregular “popcorn” calcification
- treatment: unresponsive to chemotherapy, treat with aggressive surgical resection + reconstruction; regular follow-up x-rays of resection site and chest
- prognosis: 10 yr survival 90% low-grade, 20-40% high-grade

Ewing's Sarcoma

- most occur between 5-25 yr old
- florid periosteal reaction in metaphyses of long bone with diaphyseal extension
- metastases frequent without treatment
- signs/symptoms: presents with pain, mild fever, erythema and swelling, anemia, increased WBC, ESR, LDH (mimics an infection)
- radiographic findings: moth-eaten appearance with periosteal lamellated pattern (“onion-skinning”)
- treatment: resection, chemotherapy, radiation
- prognosis – 70%, worst prognostic factor is distant metastases

Multiple Myeloma

- most common primary malignant tumor of bone in adults (~43%)
- 90% occur in people >40 yr old, M:F = 2:1, African-Americans (twice as common)
- signs/symptoms: bone pain (cardinal early symptom), compression/pathological fractures, renal failure, nephritis, high incidence of infections (e.g. pyelonephritis/pneumonia), systemic (weakness, weight loss, anorexia)
- labs: anemia, thrombocytopenia, increased ESR, hypercalcemia
- radiographic findings: multiple, “punched-out” well-demarcated lesions, no surrounding sclerosis, marked bone expansion
- diagnosis
 - serum/urine immunoelectrophoresis (monoclonal gammopathy)
 - CT-guided biopsy of lytic lesions at multiple bony sites
- treatment: chemotherapy, bisphosphonates, radiation, surgery for symptomatic lesions or impending fractures – debulking, internal fixation
- prognosis: most 3 yr after diagnosis
- see [Hematology, H49](#)

Bone Metastases

- 2/3 from breast or prostate; also consider thyroid, lung, kidney
- usually osteolytic; prostate occasionally osteoblastic
- bone scan for MSK involvement, MRI for spinal involvement may be helpful
- stabilization of impending fractures
 - internal fixation, IM rods
 - bone cement

Table 27. Mirel's Criteria for Impending Fracture Risk and Prophylactic Internal Fixation

Variable	Number Assigned		
	1	2	3
Site	Upper arm	Lower extremity	Peritrochanteric
Pain	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Lesion	Blastic	Mixed	Lytic
Size	< 1/3 bone diameter	1/3-2/3 diameter	> 2/3 diameter

**Signs of Hypercalcemia**

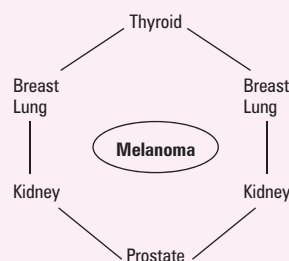
"Bones, Stones, Moans, Groans,
Psychiatric overtones"

CNS: headache, confusion, irritability,
blurred vision

GI: N/V, abdominal pain, constipation,
weight loss

MSK: fatigue, weakness, unsteady gait,
bone and joint pain

GU: nocturia, polydipsia, polyuria, UTIs

**Most Common Tumors
Metastatic to Bone****BLT with a Kosher Pickle**

Breast
Lung
Thyroid
Kidney
Prostate

Common Medications

Table 28. Common Medications

Drug Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Comments
cefazolin (Ancef®)	1-2 g IV q8h	Prophylactically before orthopedic surgery	First generation cephalosporin; do not use with penicillin allergy
heparin	5000 IU SC q12h	To prevent venous thrombosis and pulmonary emboli	Monitor platelets, follow PTT which should rise 1.5-2x
LMWH			
dalteparin (Fragmin®)	5000 IU SC OD	DVT prophylaxis especially in hip and knee surgery	Fixed dose, no monitoring, improved bioavailability, increased bleeding rates
enoxaparin (Lovenox®)	30-40 mg SC bid		
fondaparinux (Arixtra®)	2.5 mg SC OD		
midazolam (Versed®)	0.02-0.04 mg/kg IV	Conscious sedation for short procedures	Medication used during fracture reduction – monitor for respiratory depression
fentanyl (Sublimaze®)	0.5-3 µg/kg IV	Conscious sedation for short procedures	Short acting anesthetic used in conjunction with midazolam (Versed®)
triamcinolone (Aristocort®) – an injectable steroid	0.5-1 mL of 25 mg/mL	Suspension (injected into inflamed joint or bursa); amount varies by joint size	Potent anti-inflammatory effect; increased pain for 24 h, rarely causes fat necrosis and skin depigmentation
naproxen (Aleve®, Naprosyn®)	250-500 mg bid	Pain due to inflammation, arthritis, soft tissue injury	NSAID, may cause gastric erosion and bleeding
misoprostol (Cytotec®)	200 µg qid	Prophylaxis of HO after THA	Use with indomethacin
indomethacin (Indocid®)	25 mg PO tid	Prophylaxis of HO after THA	Use with misoprostol
ibuprofen (Advil®, Motrin®)	200-400 mg tid	Pain (including post-operative), inflammation (including arthritis)	NSAID, may cause gastric erosion and bleeding
propofol (Diprivan®)	1-2 mg/kg IV maintenance 0.5 mg/kg	Conscious sedation for short procedures	Short acting anesthetic often used in conjunction with fentanyl (Sublimaze®)

References

- AAOS. The treatment of distal radius fractures: summary of recommendations. 2009. Available from: <http://www.aaos.org/research/guidelines/DRFguideline.asp>.
- Adams JC, Hamblen DL. Outline of fractures: including joint injuries, 11th ed. Toronto: Churchill Livingstone, 1999.
- Adkins SB. Hip pain in athletes. *Am Fam Phys* 2000;61:2109-2118.
- Armagan OE, Shereff MJ. Injuries of the toes and metatarsals. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2001;32:1-10.
- Bareil DP, Bellabarba C, Sangeorzan BJ, et al. Fractures of the calcaneus. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2001;33:263-285.
- Barrett SL. Plantar fasciitis and other causes of heel pain. *Am Fam Phys* 1999;59:2200-2206.
- Blackbourne LH (editor). Surgical recall, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2002.
- Brand DA, Frazier WH, Kohlhepp WC, et al. A protocol for selecting patients with injured extremities who need x-rays. *NEJM* 1982;306:833-839.
- Brinker MR. Review of orthopedic trauma. Toronto: WB Saunders, 2001.
- Brinker M, Miller M. Fundamentals of orthopedics. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1999.
- Canadian CT Head and C-Spine (CCC) Study Group. Canadian c-spine rule study for alert and stable trauma patients: background and rationale. *CJEM* 2002;4:84-90.
- Carek PJ. Diagnosis and management of osteomyelitis. *Am Fam Phys* 2001;63:2413-2420.
- Dee R, Hurst LC, Gruber MA, et al. (editors). Principles of orthopedic practice, 2nd ed. Toronto: McGraw-Hill, 1997.
- Donatto KC. Ankle fractures and syndesmosis injuries. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2001;32:79-90.
- Duane TM, Wilson SP, Mayglothing J, et al. Canadian cervical spine rule compared with computed tomography: a prospective analysis. *J Trauma* 2011;71:352-355.
- Fernandez M. Discitis and vertebral osteomyelitis in children: an 18-year review. *Pediatrics* 2000;105:1299-1304.
- Flyn JM. Orthopaedic Knowledge Update 10. Rosemont IL: American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, 2011.
- Fortin PT. Talus fractures: evaluation and treatment. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg* 2001;9:114-127.
- French B, Tornetta III P. High energy tibial shaft fractures. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2002;33:211-230.
- Gable H, Nunn D. Image Interpretation Course. 2009. Available from: <http://www.imageinterpretation.co.uk>.
- Geerts WH, Heit JA, Clagett GP, et al. Prevention of venous thromboembolism. *Chest* 2001;119(1 Suppl):132S-175S.
- Goldbloom RB. Screening for idiopathic adolescent scoliosis. Ottawa: Health Canada. Canadian Task Force on the Periodic Health Examination, Canadian Guide to Clinical Preventive Health Care, 1994. 346-353.
- Gosselin RA, Roberts I, Gillespie WJ. Antibiotics for preventing infection in open limb fractures. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2004;1:CD003764.
- Greig A, Constantine E, Carsley S, et al. Preventive health care visits for children and adolescents aged six to 17 years: the Greig health record – executive summary. *Ped Child Health* 2010;15:157-159.
- Grover R. Clinical assessment of scaphoid injuries and the detection of fractures. *J Hand Surg Br* 1996;21:341-343.
- Gustilo RB, Mendoza RM, Williams DN. Problems in the management of type III (severe) open fractures: a new classification of type III open fractures. *J Trauma* 1984;24:742-746.
- Hamilton H, McIntosh G, Boyle C. Effectiveness of a low back classification system. *Spine J* 2009;9:648-657.
- Harty MP. Imaging of pediatric foot disorders. *Radiol Clin North Am* 2001;39:733-748.
- Hermans J, Luime JL, Meuffels DE, et al. Does this patient with shoulder pain have rotator cuff disease? The rational clinical examination systematic review. *JAMA* 2013;310:837-847.
- Irrgang JJ. Rehabilitation of multiple ligament injured knee. *Clin Sports Med* 2000;19:545-571.
- Karachalios T, Hantes M, Zibis AH, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of a new clinical test (the Thessaly test) for early detection of meniscal tears. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2005;87:955-962.
- Kao LD. Pre-test surgery. Toronto: McGraw-Hill, 2002.
- Lawrence LL. The limping child. *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 1998;169:911-929.
- Litaker D, Pioro M, El Bilbeisi H, et al. Returning to the bedside: using the history and physical examination to identify rotator cuff tears. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2000;48:1633-1637.
- Lo IK, Nonweiler B, Woolfrey M, et al. An evaluation of the apprehension, relocation, and surprise tests for anterior shoulder instability. *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 2004;32:301-7.
- Magee DJ. Orthopedic physical assessment, 5th ed. St. Louis: WB Saunders Elsevier, 2008.
- Mathews CJ, Coakley G. Septic arthritis: current diagnostic and therapeutic algorithm. *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 2008;20:457-462.
- Margaretten ME, Kohlives J, Moore D, et al. Does this adult patient have septic arthritis? *JAMA* 2007;297:1478-1488.
- Mazzone MF. Common conditions of the Achilles tendon. *Am Fam Phys* 2000;65:1805-1810.
- Miller MD, Thompson SR, Hart J. Review of Orthopaedics, 6th ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier, 2012.
- Miller SL. Malignant and benign bone tumours. *Radiol Clin North Am* 2000;39:673-699.
- Murrell GA, Walton JR. Diagnosis of rotator cuff tears. *Lancet* 2001;357:769-770.
- Ochiai DH. The orthopedic intern pocket survival guide. McLean: International Medical Publishing, 2007.
- Okike K, Bhattacharyya T. Trends in the management of open fractures: a critical analysis. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 2006;88:2739-2748.
- Oudjhane K. Imaging of osteomyelitis in children. *Radiol Clin North Am* 2001;39:251-266.
- Patel DR. Sports injuries in adolescents. *Med Clin North Am* 2000;84:983-1007.
- Roberts DM, Stallard TC. Emergency department evaluation and treatment of knee and leg injuries. *Emerg Med Clin North Am* 2000;18:67-84.
- Rockwood CA Jr, Greene DP, Bucholz RU, et al. (editors). Rockwood and Green's fractures in adults, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Raven, 1996.
- Rockwood CA, Williams GR, Young DC. Disorders of the acromioclavicular joint. Rockwood CA, Masten FA II (editors). The shoulder. Philadelphia: Saunders, 1998. 483-553.
- Russell GV Jr. Complicated femoral shaft fractures. *Orthop Clin North Am* 2002;33:127-142.
- Ryan SP, Pugliano V. Controversies in initial management of open fractures. *Scan J Surg* 2014;103(2):132-7.
- Skinner HB. Current diagnosis and treatment in orthopedics, 4th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2006.
- Solomon DH, Simel DL, Bates DW, et al. The rational clinical examination: does this patient have a torn meniscus or ligament of the knee? Value of the physical examination. *JAMA* 2001;286:1610-1620.
- Solomon L, Warwick DJ, Nayagam S. Apley's system of orthopedics and fractures, 8th ed. New York: Hodder Arnold, 2001.
- St Pierre P. Posterior cruciate ligament injuries. *Clin Sports Med* 1999;18:199-221.
- Steele PM, Bush-Joseph C, Bach Jr B. Management of acute fractures around the knee, ankle, and foot. *Clin Fam Pract* 2000;2:661-705.
- Stewart DG Jr, Kay RM, Skaggs DL. Open fractures in children. Principles of evaluation and management. *JBJS Am* 2005;87:2784-2798.
- Swenson TM. The dislocated knee: physical diagnosis of the multiple-ligament-injured knee. *Clin Sports Med* 2000;19:415-423.
- Testroote M, Stigter WA, Janssen L, et al. Low molecular weight heparin for prevention of venous thromboembolism in patients with lower-leg immobilization. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2014;4:CD006681.
- Thompson JC. Netter's concise atlas of orthopedic Anatomy. USA: Elsevier, 2001.
- Wong M. Pocket orthopedics: evidence-based survival guide. Sudbury: Jones and Bartlett Publishers, 2010.
- Zhang Y. Clinical Epidemiology of Orthopedic Trauma. New York: Thieme Medical Publishers, 2012.
- Zollinger PE, Tuinebreijer WE, Kreis RW, et al. Effect of vitamin C on frequency of reflex sympathetic dystrophy in wrist fractures: a randomized trial. *Lancet* 1999;354:2025-2058.

Charnelle Carlos, Joel Davies, and Minhui Kim, chapter editors

Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Alexa Bramall, EBM editor

Dr. Jonathan C. Irish and Dr. Evan J. Propst, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Facial Nerve (CN VII) Paralysis	22
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Rhinitis	23
Ear		Allergic Rhinitis (Hay Fever)	
Nose		Vasomotor Rhinitis	
Throat		Rhinosinusitis	25
Head and Neck		Acute Bacterial Rhinosinusitis	
Anatomical Triangles of the Neck		Chronic Rhinosinusitis	
Differential Diagnoses of Common Presenting Problems	6	Epistaxis	27
Dizziness		Hoarseness	28
Otalgia		Acute Laryngitis	
Hearing Loss		Chronic Laryngitis	
Tinnitus		Vocal Cord Polyps	
Nasal Obstruction		Vocal Cord Nodules	
Hoarseness		Benign Laryngeal Papillomas	
Neck Mass		Laryngeal Carcinoma	
Hearing	9	Salivary Glands	30
Normal Hearing Physiology		Sialadenitis	
Types of Hearing Loss		Sialolithiasis	
Pure Tone Audiometry		Salivary Gland Neoplasms	
Speech Audiometry		Parotid Gland Neoplasms	
Impedance Audiometry		Neck Masses	32
Auditory Brainstem Response		Approach to a Neck Mass	
Otoacoustic Emissions		Evaluation	
Aural Rehabilitation		Congenital Neck Masses	33
Vertigo	12	Branchial Cleft Cysts/Fistula	
Evaluation of the Dizzy Patient		Thyroglossal Duct Cysts	
Benign Paroxysmal Positional Vertigo		Lymphatic Malformation	
Menière's Disease (Endolymphatic Hydrops)		Neoplasms of the Head and Neck	35
Vestibular Neuronitis		Thyroid Carcinoma	
Labyrinthitis		Pediatric Otolaryngology	39
Acoustic Neuroma (Vestibular Schwannoma)		Acute Otitis Media	
Tinnitus	15	Otitis Media with Effusion	
Diseases of the External Ear	16	Adenoid Hypertrophy	
Cerumen Impaction		Adenoidectomy	
Exostoses		Sleep-Disordered Breathing in Children	
Otitis Externa		Acute Tonsillitis	
Malignant (Necrotizing) Otitis Externa (Skull Base Osteomyelitis)		Peritonsillar Abscess (Quinsy)	
Diseases of the Middle Ear	17	Tonsillectomy	
Acute Otitis Media and Otitis Media with Effusion		Airway Problems in Children	
Chronic Otitis Media		Signs of Airway Obstruction	
Cholesteatoma		Acute Laryngotracheobronchitis (Croup)	
Mastoiditis		Acute Epiglottitis	
Otosclerosis		Subglottic Stenosis	
Diseases of the Inner Ear	19	Laryngomalacia	
Congenital Sensorineural Hearing Loss		Foreign Body	
Presbycusis		Deep Neck Space Infection	
Sudden Sensorineural Hearing Loss		Common Medications	47
Autoimmune Inner Ear Disease		References	48
Drug Ototoxicity			
Noise-Induced Sensorineural Hearing Loss			
Temporal Bone Fractures			

Acronyms

ABR	auditory brainstem response	FNA	fine needle aspiration	OSA	obstructive sleep apnea
AC	air conduction	GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease	RA	rheumatoid arthritis
AOM	acute otitis media	GPA	granulomatosis with polyangiitis	SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
BAHA	bone anchored hearing aid	H&N	head and neck	SCM	sternocleidomastoid
BC	bone conduction	HL	hearing loss	SNHL	sensorineural hearing loss
CHL	conductive hearing loss	HPV	human papillomavirus	SRT	speech reception threshold
CPA	cerebellopontine angle	INCS	intranasal corticosteroids	TEF	tracheoesophageal fistula
EAC	external auditory canal	MEE	middle ear effusion	TM	typanic membrane
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus	MEI	middle ear inflammation	TNM	tumor, node, metastases
FAP	familial adenomatous polyposis	OE	otitis externa	URTI	upper respiratory tract infection
FESS	functional endoscopic sinus surgery	OME	otitis media with effusion		

Basic Anatomy Review

Ear

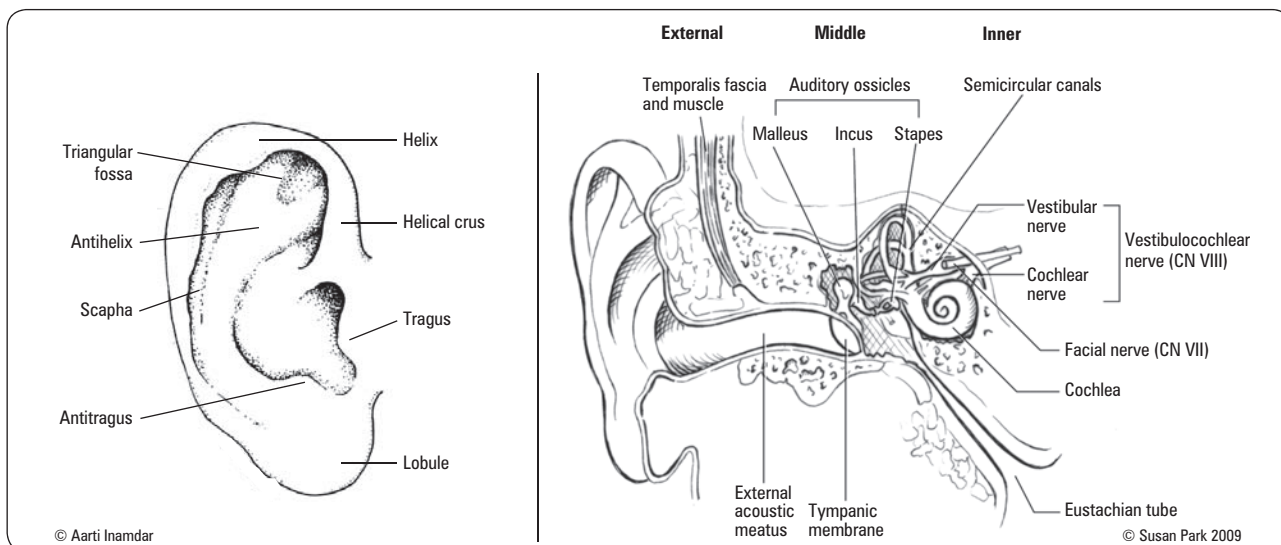


Figure 1. Surface anatomy of the external ear; anatomy of ear

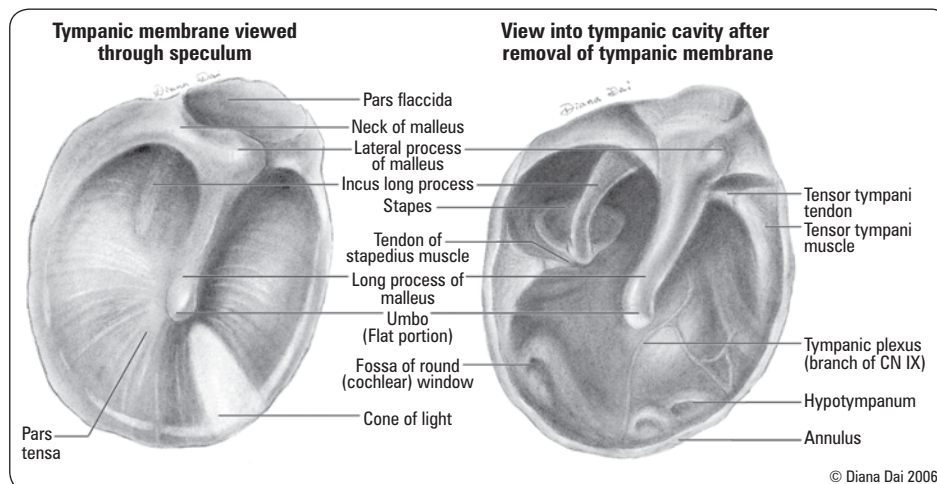


Figure 2. Normal appearance of right tympanic membrane on otoscopy

Nose

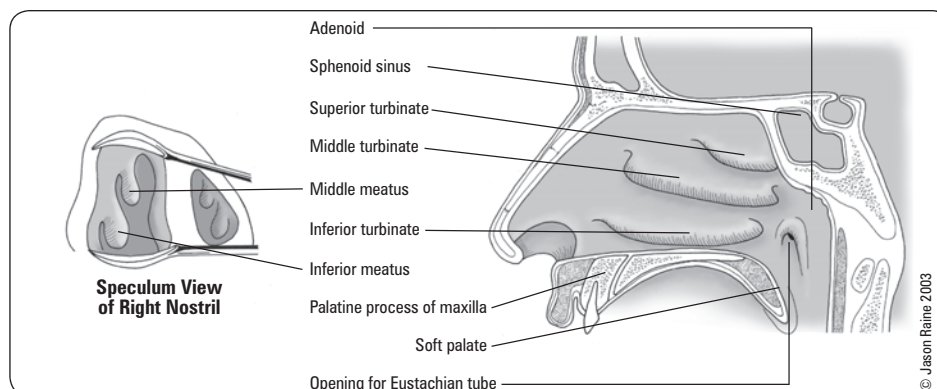


Figure 3. Nasal anatomy

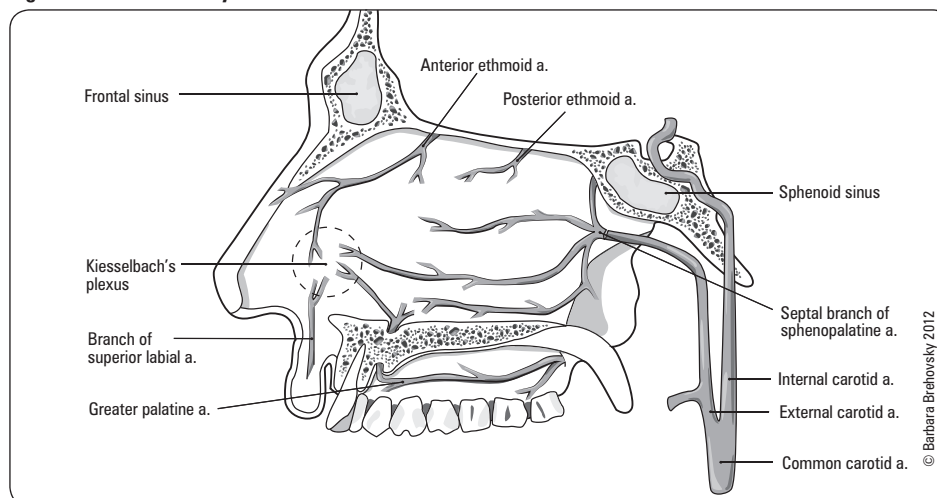


Figure 4. Nasal septum and its arterial supply (see *Epistaxis*, OT27 for detailed blood supply)

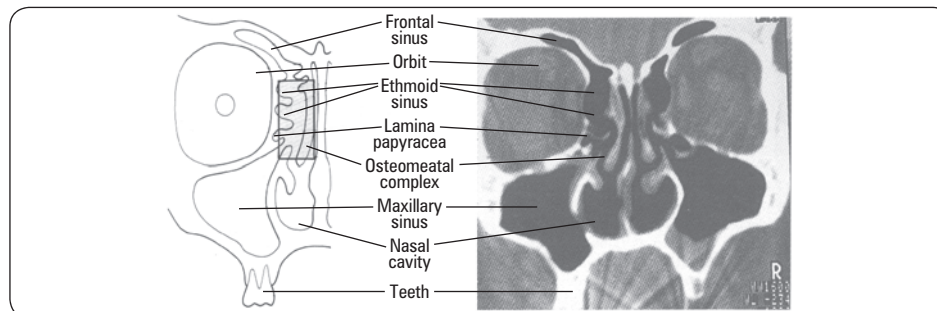


Figure 5. Anatomy of the four paranasal sinuses: maxillary, ethmoid, sphenoid, and frontal

Reprinted from: Dhillon RS, East CA. Ear, Nose and Throat and Head and Neck Surgery, 2nd ed. Copyright 1999, with permission from Elsevier

Throat

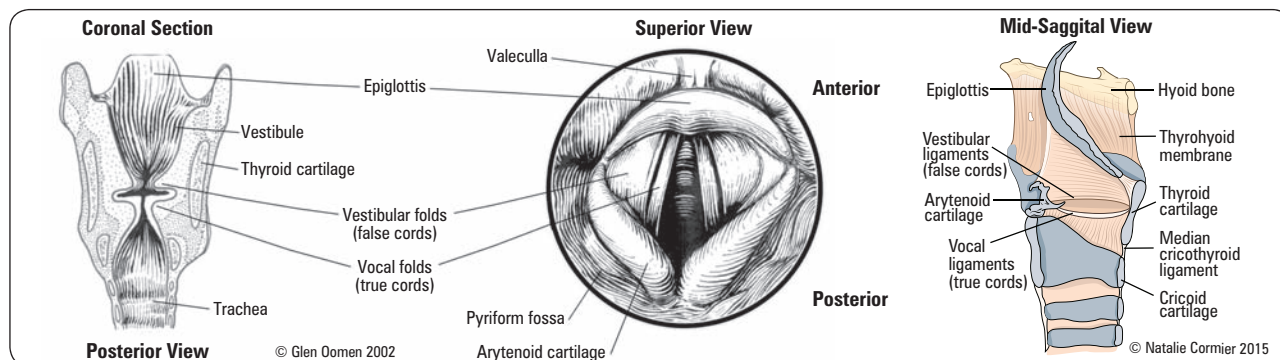


Figure 6. Anatomy of a normal larynx; superior view of larynx on indirect laryngoscopy



Drainage into Nasal Cavity

- **Superior meatus:** sphenoid (via sphenothmoidal recess), posterior ethmoid sinuses
- **Middle meatus:** frontal, maxillary, anterior ethmoid sinuses
- **Inferior meatus:** nasolacrimal duct



- **Nasopharynx:** skull base to soft palate
- **Oropharynx:** soft palate to hyoid bone
- **Laryngopharynx:** hyoid bone to inferior border cricoid cartilage

Head and Neck

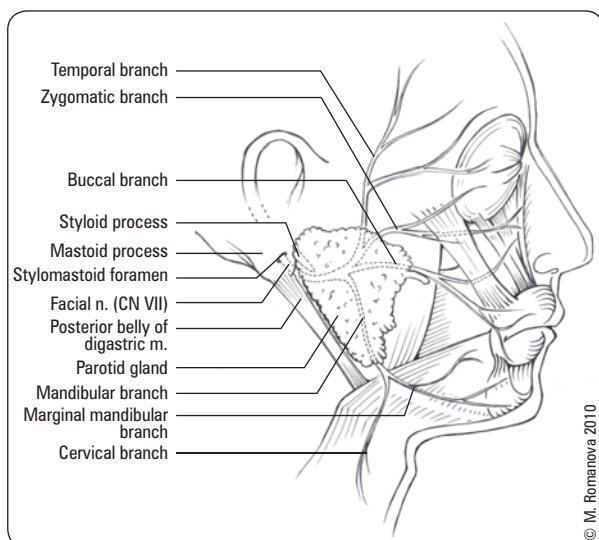


Figure 7. Extratemporal segment of facial nerve
Branches of facial nerve (in order from superior to inferior)
 To Zanzibar By Motor Car

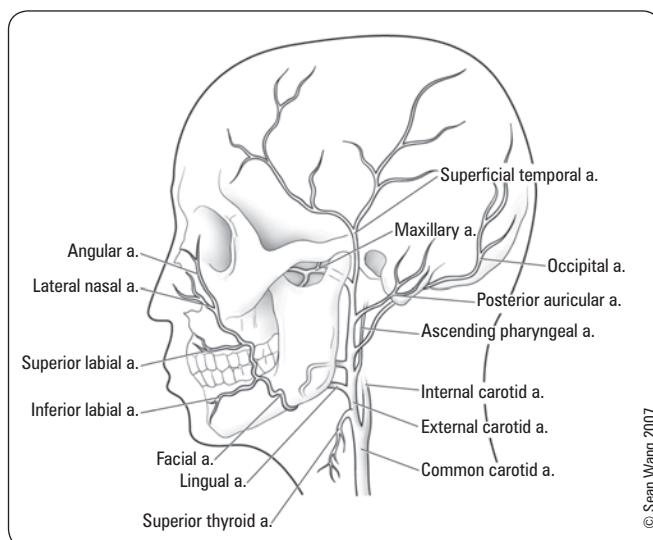


Figure 8. Blood supply to the face
Branches of the external carotid artery (in order from inferior to superior)
 Some Angry Lady Figured Out PMS

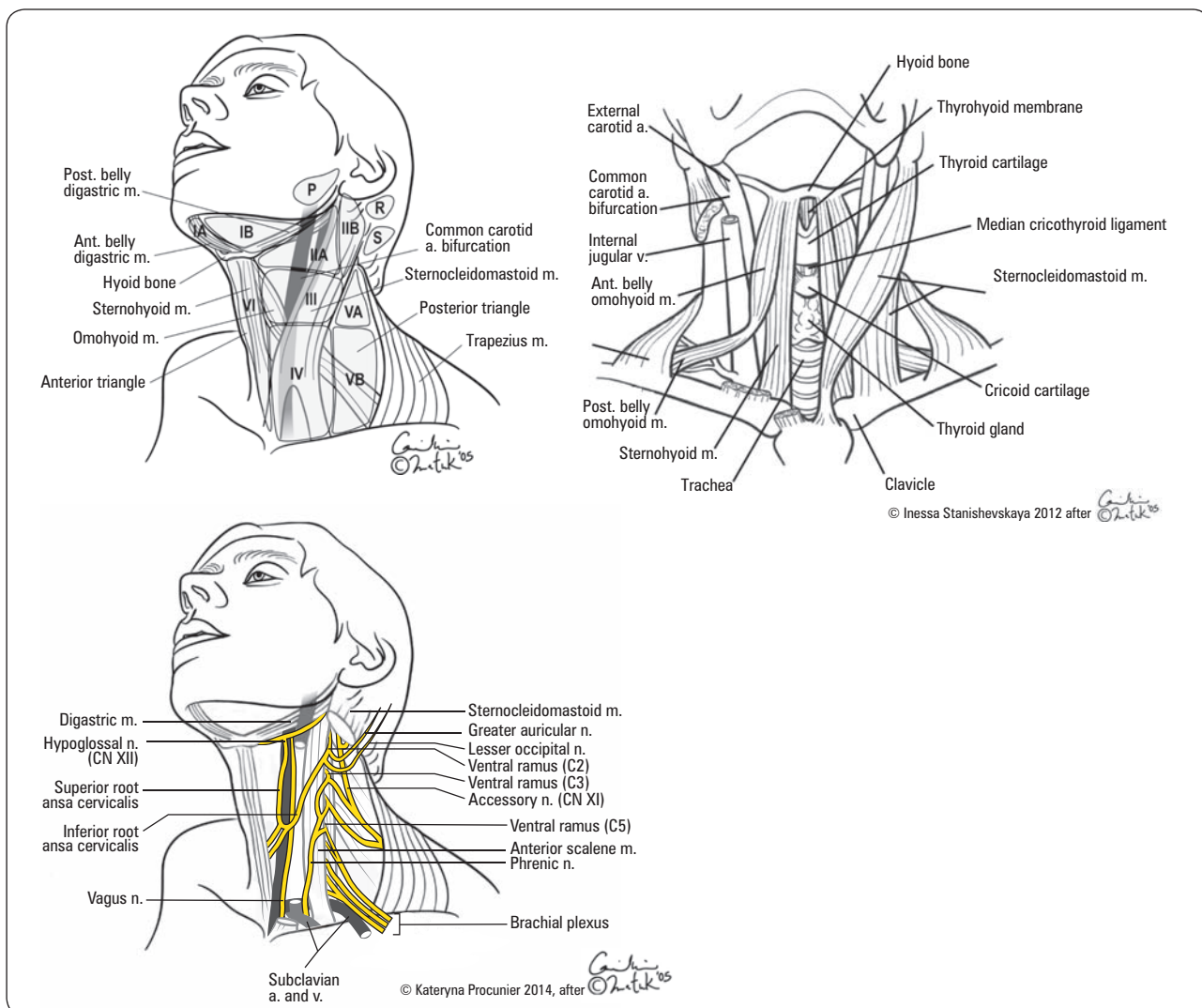


Figure 9. Anatomy of the neck

Anatomical Triangles of the Neck

Anterior triangle:

- bounded by anterior border of SCM, midline of neck, and lower border of mandible
- divided into
 - **submental triangle:** bounded by both anterior bellies of digastric and hyoid bone
 - **digastric triangle:** bounded by anterior and posterior bellies of digastric, and inferior border of mandible
 - **carotid triangle:** bounded by sternocleidomastoid, anterior belly of omohyoid, and posterior belly of digastric
 - ♦ contains: tail of parotid, submandibular gland, hypoglossal nerve, carotid bifurcation, and lymph nodes

Posterior triangle

- bounded by posterior border of sternocleidomastoid, anterior border of trapezius, and middle third of clavicle
- divided into
 - **occipital triangle:** superior to posterior belly of the omohyoid
 - **subclavian triangle:** inferior to posterior belly of omohyoid
- contains: spinal accessory nerve and lymph nodes

Table 1. Lymphatic Drainage of Nodal Groups and Anatomical Triangles of Neck

Nodal Group/Level	Location	Drainage
1. Suboccipital (S)	Base of skull, posterior	Posterior scalp
2. Retroauricular (R)	Superficial to mastoid process	Scalp, temporal region, external auditory meatus, posterior pinna
3. Parotid-preauricular (P)	Anterior to ear	External auditory meatus, anterior pinna, soft tissue of frontal and temporal regions, root of nose, eyelids, palpebral conjunctiva
4. Submental (Level IA)	(Midline) Anterior bellies of digastric muscles, tip of mandible, and hyoid bone	Floor of mouth, anterior tongue, anterior mandibular alveolar ridge, lower lip
5. Submandibular (Level IB)	Anterior belly of digastric muscle, stylohyoid muscle, body of mandible	Oral cavity, anterior nasal cavity, soft tissues of the mid-face, submandibular gland
6. Upper jugular (Levels IIA and IIB)	Skull base to inferior border of hyoid bone along SCM muscle	Oral cavity, nasal cavity, naso/oro/hypopharynx, larynx, parotid glands
7. Middle jugular (Level III)	Inferior border of hyoid bone to inferior border of cricoid cartilage along SCM muscle	Oral cavity, naso/oro/hypopharynx, larynx
8. Lower jugular* (Level IV)	Inferior border of cricoid cartilage to clavicle along SCM muscle	Hypopharynx, thyroid, cervical esophagus, larynx
9. Posterior triangle** (Levels VA and VB)	Posterior border of SCM, anterior border of trapezius, from skull base to clavicle	Nasopharynx and oropharynx, cutaneous structures of the posterior scalp and neck
10. Anterior compartment*** (Level VI)	(Midline) Hyoid bone to suprasternal notch between the common carotid arteries	Thyroid gland, glottic and subglottic larynx, apex of piriform sinus, cervical esophagus

*Virchow node: left lower jugular (level IV) supraclavicular node

**Includes some supraclavicular nodes

***Includes pretracheal, precricoid, paratracheal, and perithyroidal nodes



Paired Parasympathetic Ganglia of the Head and Neck

- **Ciliary:** pupillary constriction
- **Pterygopalatine:** lacrimal gland, nasal mucosa
- **Submandibular:** submandibular, sublingual glands
- **Otic:** parotid gland



Function of Facial Nerve

"Ears, Tears, Face, Taste"

Ears: stapedius muscle

Tears: lacrimation (lacrimal gland) and salivation (parotid)

Face: muscles of facial expression

Taste: sensory anterior 2/3 of tongue (via chorda tympani)



- **Left-sided** enlargement of a supraclavicular node (Virchow's node) may indicate an abdominal malignancy
- **Right-sided** enlargement may indicate malignancy of the mediastinum, lungs, or esophagus
- **Occipital and/or posterior auricular node** enlargement may indicate rubella



4 Strap Muscles of the Neck

- Thyrohyoid
- Omohyoid
- Sternohyoid
- Sternothyroid

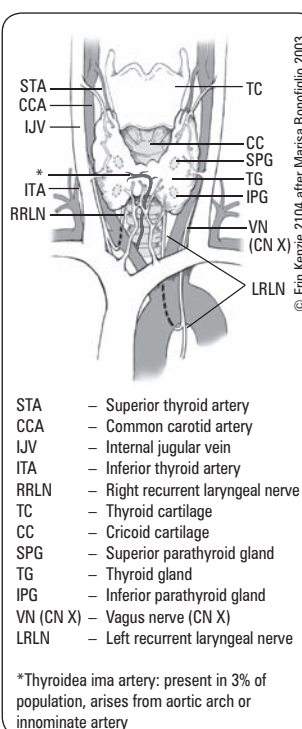
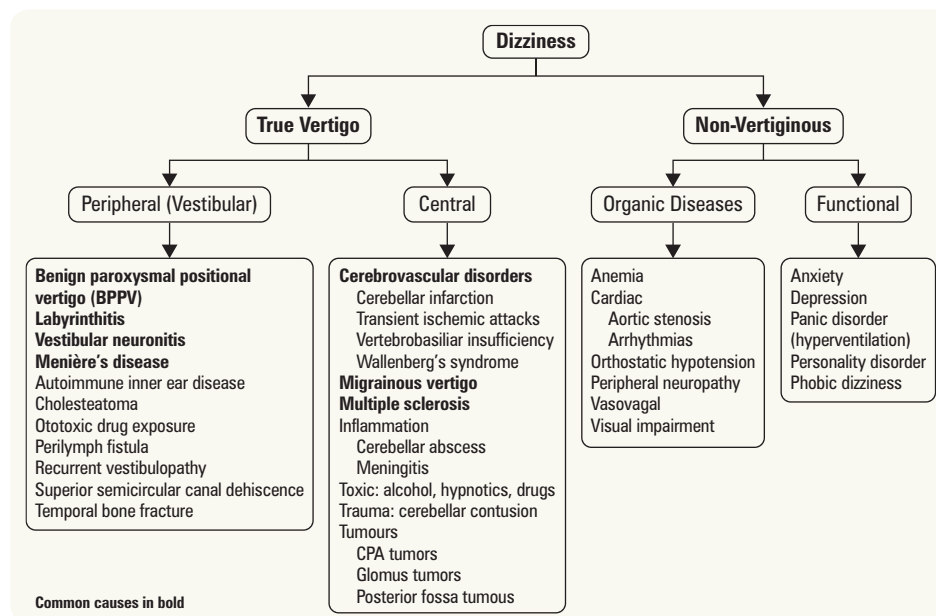


Figure 10. Anatomy of the thyroid gland

Differential Diagnoses of Common Presenting Problems

Dizziness



True nystagmus and vertigo caused by a peripheral lesion will never last longer than a couple of weeks because of compensation. Central lesions do not compensate, hence nystagmus and vertigo will persist



5 "D's of Vertebrobasilar Insufficiency

Drop attacks
Diplopia
Dysarthria
Dizziness
Dysphagia

Figure 11. Differential diagnosis of dizziness

Otalgia

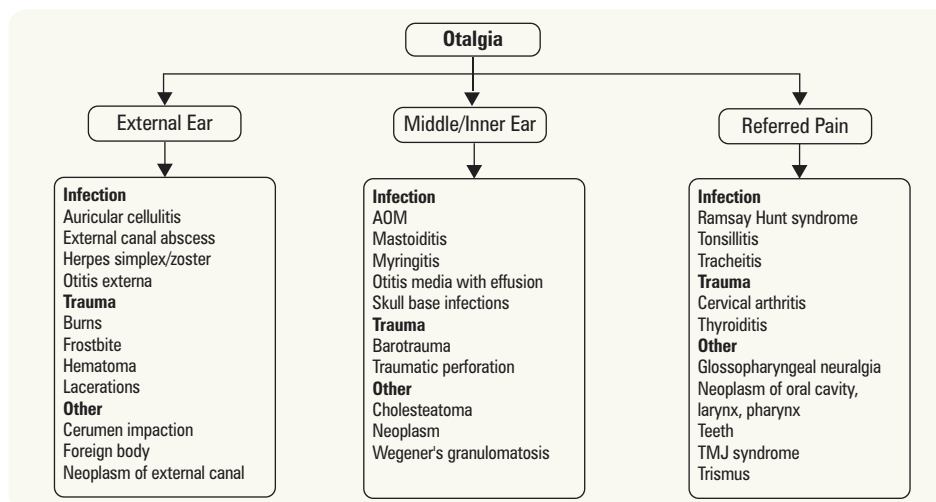


Figure 12. Differential diagnosis of otalgia

Hearing Loss

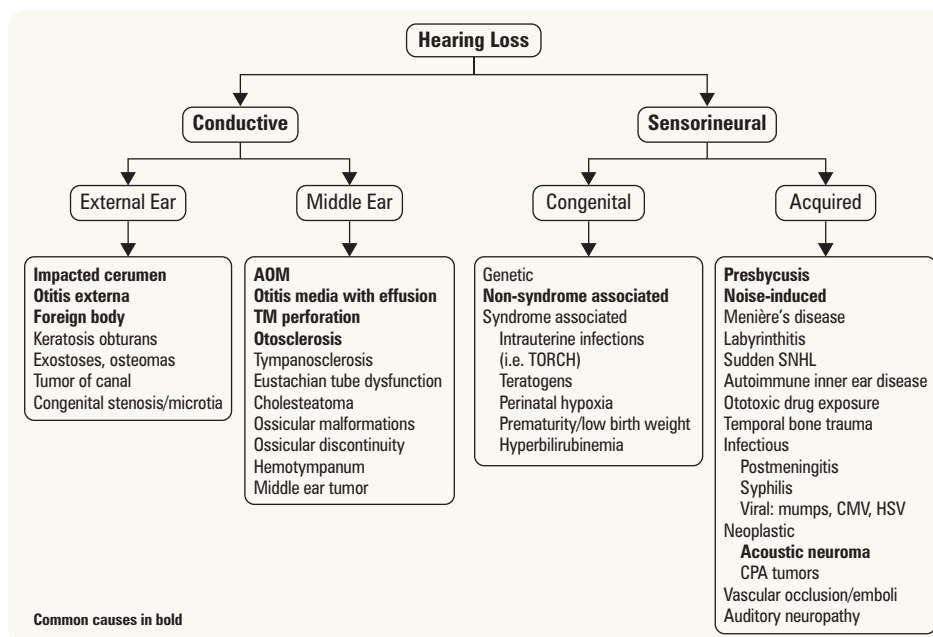


Figure 13. Differential diagnosis of hearing loss

Tinnitus

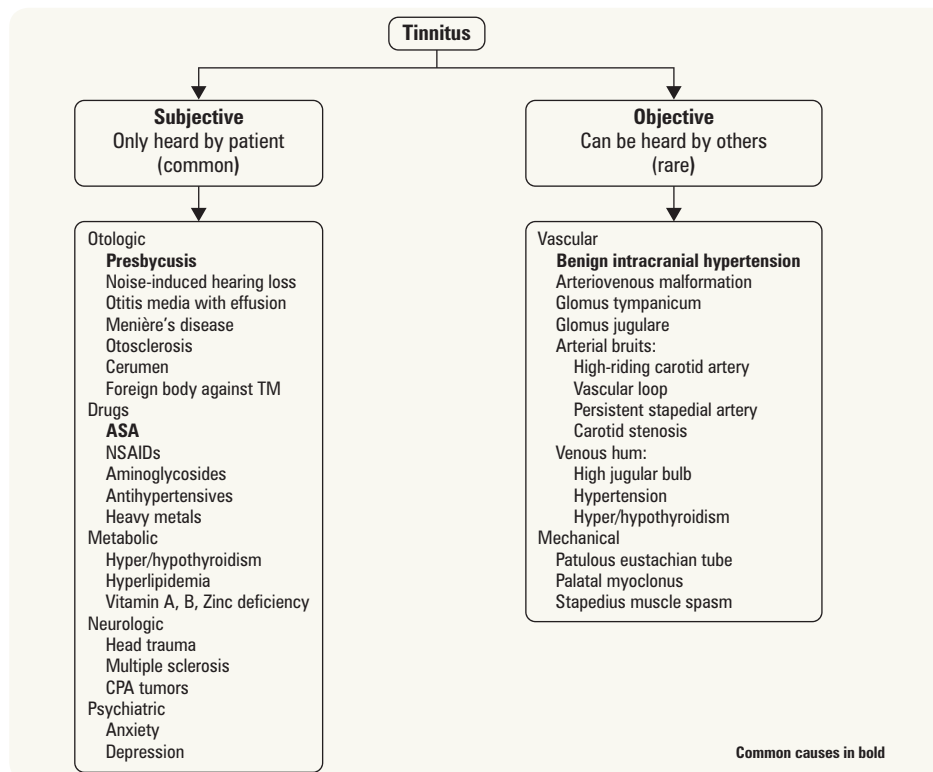


Figure 14. Differential diagnosis of tinnitus



Tinnitus is most commonly associated with SNHL



Glomus Tympanicum/Jugulare Tumor
Signs and Symptoms

- Pulsatile tinnitus
- Hearing loss
- Blue mass behind TM
- Brown's sign (blanching of the TM with pneumatic otoscopy)



Nasal Obstruction

Table 2. Differential Diagnosis of Nasal Obstruction

Acquired	Congenital
Nasal Cavity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rhinitis <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acute/chronic Vasomotor Allergic Rhinosinusitis Foreign bodies Enlarged turbinates Tumor <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Benign: polyps, inverting papilloma Malignant <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SCC Esthesioneuroblastoma (olfactory neuroblastoma) Adenocarcinoma 	Nasal Cavity <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Nasal dermoid cyst Encephalocele Glioma Choanal atresia
Nasal Septum <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Septal deviation Septal hematoma/abscess Dislocated septum 	Nasal Septum <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Septal deviation Septal hematoma/abscess Dislocated septum
Nasopharynx <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adenoid hypertrophy Tumor <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Benign: juvenile nasopharyngeal angiofibroma (JNA), polyps Malignant: nasopharyngeal carcinoma 	
Systemic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Granulomatous diseases, diabetes, vasculitis 	



Hoarseness

Table 3. Differential Diagnosis of Hoarseness

Infectious	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Acute/chronic laryngitis Laryngotracheobronchitis (croup) 	
Inflammatory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GERD Vocal cord polyps/nodules Lifestyle: smoking, chronic EtOH use 	
Trauma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> External laryngeal trauma Endoscopy and endotracheal tube (e.g. intubation granuloma) 	
Neoplasia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Benign tumor Papillomas (HPV infection) Minor salivary gland tumors Other 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Malignant tumors (e.g. thyroid) SCC Other
Cysts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Retention cysts 	
Systemic	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Endocrine Hypothyroidism Virilization 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Connective tissue disease RA SLE
Neurologic (vocal cord paralysis due to superior ± recurrent laryngeal nerve injury)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Central lesions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cerebrovascular accident (CVA) Head injury Multiple sclerosis (MS) Skull base tumors Arnold-Chiari malformation Peripheral lesions <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unilateral <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Lung malignancy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Iatrogenic injury: thyroid, parathyroid surgery, carotid endarterectomy, patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) ligation Bilateral <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Iatrogenic injury: bilateral thyroid surgery, forceps delivery Neuromuscular <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Myasthenia gravis
Functional	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Psychogenic aphonia (hysterical aphonia) 	
Congenital	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Laryngomalacia Laryngeal web Laryngeal atresia 	



Lung malignancy is the most common cause of extralaryngeal vocal cord paralysis

Neck Mass

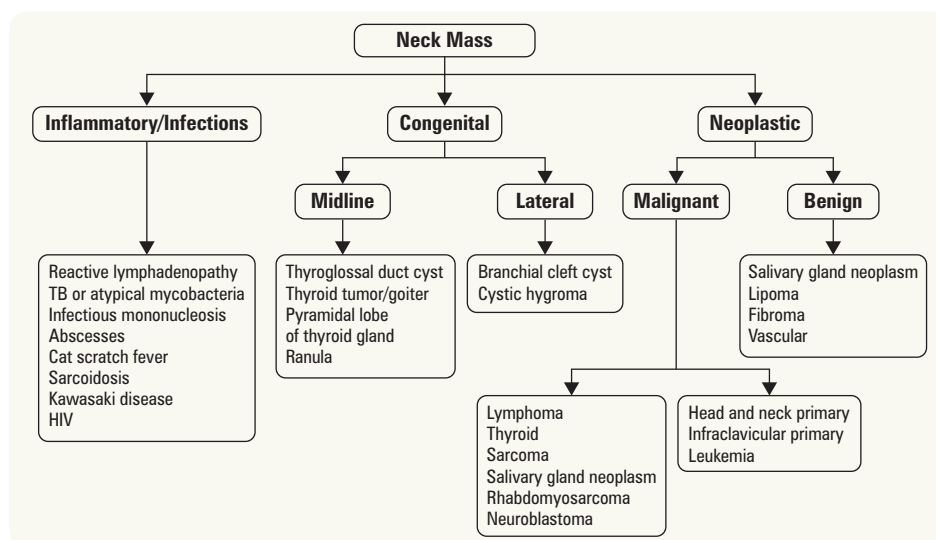


Figure 15. Differential diagnosis of a neck mass

Hearing

Normal Hearing Physiology

- **Conductive pathway (external auditory canal to cochlea):** air conduction of sound energy down the EAC → vibration of the tympanic membrane (area effect) → sequential vibration of the middle ear ossicles: malleus, incus, stapes (lever effect) → transmission of amplified vibrations from the stapes footplate in the middle ear to the oval window of the cochlea in the inner ear → pressure differential on cochlear fluid creates movement along the basilar membrane within the cochlea from base to apex
- **Neural pathway (nerve to brain):** basilar membrane vibration stimulates overlying hair cells in the organ of Corti → stimulation of bipolar neurons in the spiral ganglion of the cochlear division of CN VIII → cochlear nucleus → superior olivary nucleus → lateral lemniscus → inferior colliculus → Sylvian fissure of temporal lobe



Order of the Neural Pathway (with Corresponding Waves on ABR)

E COLI

Eighth cranial nerve (I – II)
Cochlear nucleus (III)
Superior Olivary nucleus
Lateral lemniscus (IV – V)
Inferior colliculus

Types of Hearing Loss

1. Conductive Hearing Loss

- conduction of sound to the cochlea is impaired
- can be caused by external and middle ear disease

2. Sensorineural Hearing Loss

- due to a defect in the conversion of sound into neural signals or in the transmission of those signals to the cortex
- can be caused by disease of the inner ear (cochlea), acoustic nerve (CN VIII), brainstem, or cortex

3. Mixed Hearing Loss

- combination of conductive and sensorineural hearing loss

Auditory Acuity

- whispered-voice test: mask one ear and whisper into the other
- tuning fork tests (see Table 4; audiogram is of greater utility)
- sensitivity depends on which tuning fork used (256 Hz, 512 Hz, 1024 Hz; 512 Hz has greatest sensitivity)
 - Rinne test
 - ♦ 512 Hz tuning fork is struck and held firmly on mastoid process to test BC; the tuning fork is then placed beside the pinna to test AC
 - ♦ If AC > BC → positive Rinne (normal)
 - Weber test
 - ♦ 512 Hz tuning fork is held on vertex of head and patient states whether it is heard centrally (Weber negative) or is lateralized to one side (Weber right, Weber left)
 - ♦ can place vibrating fork on patient's chin while they clench their teeth, or directly on teeth to elicit more reliable response
 - ♦ will only lateralize if difference in hearing loss between ears is >6 dB



Weber Test Lateralization = ipsilateral conductive hearing loss or contralateral sensorineural hearing loss

The Weber test is more sensitive in detecting conductive hearing loss than the Rinne test



HL = Intensity x Duration

Table 4. The Interpretation of Tuning Fork Tests

Examples	Weber	Rinne
Normal or bilateral sensorineural hearing loss	Central	AC > BC (+) bilaterally
Right-sided conductive hearing loss, normal left ear	Lateralizes to right	BC > AC (-) right
Right-sided sensorineural hearing loss, normal left ear	Lateralizes to left	AC > BC (+) bilaterally
Right-sided severe sensorineural hearing loss or dead right ear, normal left ear	Lateralizes to left	BC > AC (-) right*

*A vibrating tuning fork on the mastoid stimulates the cochlea bilaterally, therefore in this case the left cochlea is stimulated by the Rinne test on the right (e.g. a false negative test). These tests are not valid if the ear canals are obstructed with cerumen (e.g. will create conductive loss)



Frequency of Tuning Fork (Hz)	Minimum Hearing Loss for Rinne to Reverse (BC > AC, NEGATIVE Rinne) (dB)
256	15
512	30
1024	45



Range of Frequencies Audible to Human Ear

- 20 to 20000 Hz
- Most sensitive frequencies: 1000 to 4000 Hz
- Range of human speech: 500 to 2000 Hz



Hearing loss most often occurs at higher frequencies. Noise-induced (occupational) HL is seen at 4000 Hz. HL associated with otosclerosis is seen at 2000 Hz (Carhart's notch)



Air conduction thresholds can only be equal to or worse than bone conduction thresholds

Pure Tone Audiometry

- a threshold is the lowest intensity level at which a patient can hear the tone 50% of the time
- thresholds are obtained for each ear at frequencies of 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, and 8000 Hz
- air conduction thresholds are obtained with headphones and measure outer, middle, inner ear, and auditory nerve function
- bone conduction thresholds are obtained with bone conduction oscillators which bypass the outer and middle ear

Degree of Hearing Loss

- determined on basis of the pure tone average (PTA) at 500, 1000, and 2000 Hz

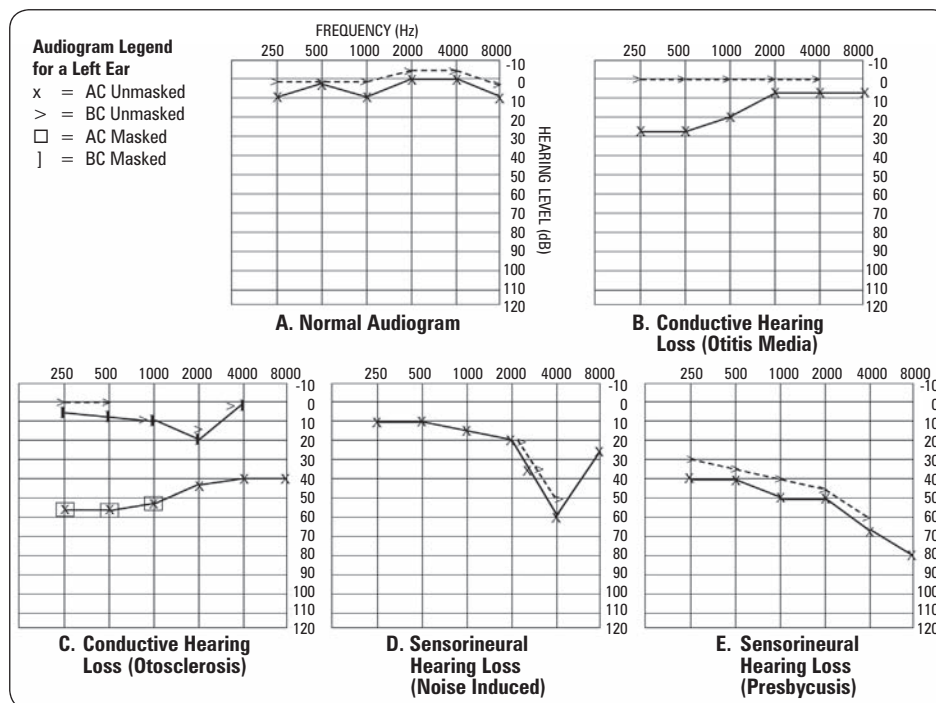


Figure 16. Types of hearing loss and associated audiograms of a left ear

PURE TONE PATTERNS

1. Conductive Hearing Loss (Figure 16B and 16C)

- BC in normal range
- AC outside of normal range
- gap between AC and BC thresholds >10 dB (an air-bone gap)

2. Sensorineural Hearing Loss (Figure 16D and 16E)

- both air and bone conduction thresholds below normal
- gap between AC and BC <10 dB (no air-bone gap)

3. Mixed Hearing Loss

- both air and bone conduction thresholds below normal
- gap between AC and BC thresholds >10 dB (an air-bone gap)



Degree of Hearing Loss

Decibel Loss	Degree of Hearing Loss
0 to 20 dB	Normal
21 to 40 dB	Mild
41 to 55 dB	Moderate
56 to 70 dB	Moderate-Severe
71 to 90 dB	Severe
≥91 dB	Profound

Speech Audiometry

Speech Reception Threshold

- lowest hearing level at which patient is able to repeat 50% of two syllable words which have equal emphasis on each syllable (spondee words)
- SRT and best pure tone threshold in the 500 to 2000 Hz range (frequency range of human speech) usually agree within 5 dB; if not, suspect a retrocochlear lesion or functional hearing loss
- used to assess the reliability of the pure tone audiometry

Speech Discrimination Test

- percentage of words the patient correctly repeats from a list of 50 monosyllabic words
- tested at 40 dB above the patient's SRT, therefore degree of hearing loss is taken into account
- patients with normal hearing or conductive hearing loss score >90%
- score depends on extent of SNHL
- rollover effect: a decrease in discrimination as sound intensity increases; typical of a retrocochlear lesion (e.g. acoustic neuroma)
- investigate further if scores differ more than 20% between ears as asymmetry may indicate a retrocochlear lesion
- used as best predictor of hearing aid response: a poor discrimination score indicates significant neural degeneration and hearing aids may not be the best option for the patient

Impedance Audiometry

Tympanogram

- the Eustachian tube equalizes the pressure between the external and middle ear
- tympanograms graph the compliance of the middle ear system against a pressure gradient ranging from -400 to +200 mmH₂O
- tympanogram peak occurs at the point of maximum compliance: where the pressure in the external canal is equivalent to the pressure in the middle ear
- normal range: -100 to +50 mmH₂O

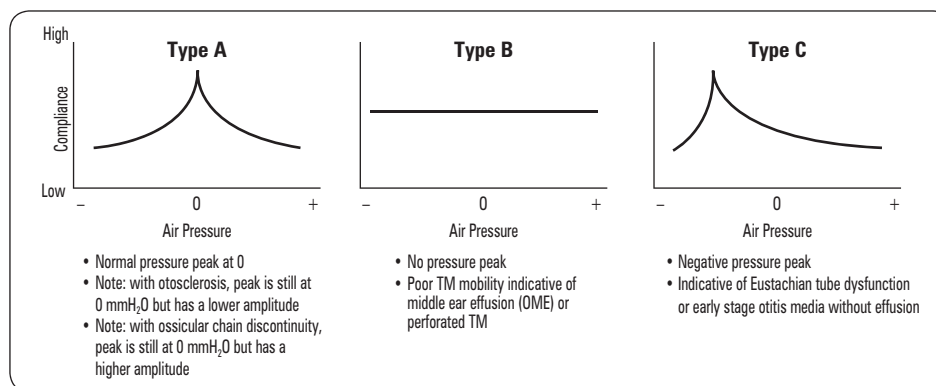


Figure 17. Tympanograms

Static Compliance

- volume measurement reflecting overall stiffness of the middle ear system
- normal range: 0.3-1.6 cc
- negative middle ear pressure and abnormal compliance indicate middle ear pathology
- in a type B curve, ear canal volumes of >2 cc in children and 2.5 cc in adults indicate TM perforation or presence of a patent ventilation tube

Acoustic Stapedial Reflexes

- stapedius muscle contracts in response to loud sound
- **acoustic reflex threshold** = 70-100 dB greater than hearing threshold; if hearing threshold >85 dB, reflex likely absent
- stimulating either ear causes bilateral and symmetrical reflexes
- for reflex to be present, CN VII must be intact and no conductive hearing loss in monitored ear
- if reflex is absent without conductive or severe sensorineural loss, suspect CN VII lesion
- **acoustic reflex decay test** = ability of stapedius muscle to sustain contraction for 10 s at 10 dB
- normally, little reflex decay occurs at 500 and 1000 Hz
- with cochlear hearing loss, acoustic reflex thresholds are 25-60 dB
- with retrocochlear hearing loss (acoustic neuroma), absent acoustic reflexes or marked reflex decay (>50%) within 5 s

Auditory Brainstem Response

- measures neuroelectric potentials (waves) in response to a stimulus in five different anatomic sites (see *Order of Neural Pathway* sidebar on OT9); this test can be used to determine the site of lesion
- delay in brainstem response suggests cochlear or retrocochlear abnormalities
- does not require volition or co-operation of patient (therefore of value in children and in malingerers)

Otoacoustic Emissions

- objective test of hearing where a series of clicks is presented to the ear and the cochlea generates an echo which can be measured
- often used in newborn screening
- can be used to uncover normal hearing in malingering patients
- absence of emissions can be due to hearing loss or fluid in the middle ear

Aural Rehabilitation

- dependent on degree of hearing loss, communicative requirements, motivation, expectations, and physical and mental abilities
- negative prognostic factors
 - poor speech discrimination
 - narrow dynamic range (recruitment)
 - unrealistic expectations
- types of hearing aids
 - BTE: behind-the-ear (with occlusive mold or open fit which allows natural sound to pass – for milder hearing losses)
 - ITE: in-the-ear, placed in concha
 - ITC: in-the-canal, placed entirely in ear canal
 - CIC: contained-in-canal, placed deeply in ear canal
 - bone conduction – bone-anchored hearing aid (BAHA): attached to the skull
 - contralateral routing of signals (CROS)
- assistive listening devices
 - direct/indirect audio output
 - infrared, FM radio, or induction loop systems
 - telephone, television, or alerting devices
- cochlear implants
 - electrode is inserted into the cochlea to allow direct stimulation of the auditory nerve
 - for profound bilateral sensorineural hearing loss not rehabilitated with conventional hearing aids
 - established indication: post-lingually deafened adults, pre- and post-lingually deaf children



Pre-lingual deafness: deafness occurring before speech and language are acquired

Post-lingual deafness: deafness occurring after speech and language are acquired



Pre-lingually deaf infants are the best candidates for aural rehabilitation because they have maximal benefit from ongoing developmental plasticity



Bone Anchored Hearing Aids (BAHA)
BAHAs function based on bone conduction and are indicated primarily for patients with conductive hearing loss, unilateral hearing loss, and mixed hearing loss who cannot wear conventional hearing aids. BAHAs consist of a titanium implant, an external abutment, and a sound processor. The sound processor transmits vibrations through the external abutment to the titanium implant and then directly to the cochlea

Vertigo

Evaluation of the Dizzy Patient

- vertigo: illusion of rotational, linear, or tilting movement of self or environment
 - vertigo is produced by peripheral (inner ear) or central (brainstem-cerebellum) stimulation
- it is important to distinguish vertigo from other disease entities that may present with similar complaints of “dizziness” (e.g. cardiovascular, psychiatric, neurological, aging)

Table 5. Peripheral vs. Central Vertigo

Symptoms	Peripheral	Central
Imbalance	Moderate-severe	Mild-moderate
Nausea and Vomiting	Severe	Variable
Auditory Symptoms	Common	Rare
Neurologic Symptoms	Rare	Common
Compensation	Rapid	Slow
Nystagmus	Unidirectional Horizontal or rotatory	Bidirectional Horizontal or vertical

Table 6. Differential Diagnosis of Vertigo Based on History

Condition	Duration	Hearing Loss	Tinnitus	Aural Fullness	Other Features
Benign Paroxysmal Positional Vertigo (BPPV)	Seconds	–	–	–	
Menière's Disease	Minutes to hours Precedes attack	Uni/bilateral, fluctuating	+	Pressure/warmth	
Vestibular Neuronitis	Hours to days	–	–	–	
Labyrinthitis	Days	Unilateral	Whistling	–	Recent AOM
Acoustic Neuroma	Chronic	Progressive	+	–	Ataxia CN VII palsy

Table 7. Differential Diagnosis of Vertigo Based on Time Course

Time Course	Condition
Recurrent, lasting	BPPV
Single episode, lasting minutes to hours	Migraine, transient ischemia of the labyrinth or brainstem
Recurrent to hours	Menière's
Prolonged	Vestibular neuritis, MS, Brainstem/cerebellum infarct



BPPV is the most common cause of episodic vertigo; patients often are symptomatic when rolling over in bed or moving their head to a position of extreme posterior extension such as looking up at a tall building or getting their hair washed at the hairdresser



Patients can wear Frenzel's magnifying eyeglasses during the Dix-Hallpike maneuver, which inhibit visual fixation and allow for better visualization of the eyes



Signs of BPPV Seen with Dix-Hallpike Maneuver

- Latency of ~20 s
- Crescendo/decrecendo vertigo lasting 20 s
- Geotropic rotatory nystagmus (nystagmus MUST be present for a positive test)
- Reversal of nystagmus upon sitting up

Benign Paroxysmal Positional Vertigo

Definition

- acute attacks of transient rotatory vertigo lasting **seconds to minutes** initiated by certain head positions, accompanied by torsional (i.e. rotatory) nystagmus (geotropic = fast phase towards the floor)
- most common form of positional vertigo (50% of patients with peripheral vestibular dysfunction)

Etiology

- due to canalithiasis (migration of free floating otoliths within the endolymph of the semicircular canal) or cupulolithiasis (otolith attached to the cupula of the semicircular canal)
 - can affect each of the 3 semicircular canals, posterior canal is affected in >90% of cases
 - causes: head injury, viral infection (URTI), degenerative disease, idiopathic
 - results in slightly different signals being received by the brain from the two balance organs resulting in sensation of movement

Diagnosis

- history (time course, provoking factors, associative symptoms)
- positive Dix-Hallpike maneuver (sensitivity 82%, specificity 71%)

Dix-Hallpike Positional Testing (see website for video and illustrations)

- the patient is rapidly moved from a sitting position to a supine position with the head hanging over the end of the table, turned to one side at 45° and neck extended 20° holding the position for 20 s
- onset of vertigo and rotary nystagmus indicate a positive test for the dependent side
- other diagnostic testing is not indicated in posterior canal BPPV

Treatment

- reassure patient that process resolves spontaneously
- particle repositioning maneuvers
 - Epley maneuver (performed by MD)
 - Brandt-Daroff exercises (performed by patient)
- surgery for refractory cases
- anti-emetics for nausea/vomiting
- drugs to suppress the vestibular system delay eventual recovery and are therefore not used

Menière's Disease (Endolymphatic Hydrops)

Definition

- episodic attacks of tinnitus, hearing loss, aural fullness, and vertigo lasting **minutes to hours**

Proposed Etiology

- inadequate absorption of endolymph leads to endolymphatic hydrops (over accumulation) that distorts the membranous labyrinth



Diagnostic Criteria for Menière's Disease (must have all three)

- Two spontaneous episodes of rotational vertigo ≥20 min
- Audiometric confirmation of SNHL (often low frequency)
- Tinnitus and/or aural fullness

Epidemiology

- peak incidence 40-60 yr
- bilateral in 35% of cases

Clinical Features

- episodic vertigo, fluctuating low frequency SNHL, tinnitus, and aural fullness
- \pm drop attacks (Tumarkin crisis), \pm N/V
- vertigo disappears with time (min to h), but hearing loss remains
- early in the disease: fluctuating SNHL
- later stages: persistent tinnitus and progressive hearing loss
- attacks come in clusters and can be debilitating to the patient
- triggers: high salt intake, caffeine, stress, nicotine, and alcohol

Treatment

- acute management may consist of bed rest, antiemetics, antivertiginous drugs, and low molecular weight dextrans (not commonly used)
- long-term management may include:
 - medical
 - ♦ low salt diet, diuretics (e.g. hydrochlorothiazide, triamterene, amiloride)
 - ♦ antivertiginous drugs prophylactically to decrease intensity of attacks
 - ♦ local application of gentamicin to destroy vestibular end-organ, results in complete SNHL
 - surgical
 - ♦ selective vestibular neurectomy or transtympanic labyrinthectomy
 - ♦ vestibular implants have recently been introduced, experimentally
- must monitor opposite ear as bilaterality occurs in 35% of cases



Drop Attacks (Tumarkin's Otolithic Crisis) are sudden falls occurring without warning and without LOC



Before proceeding with gentamicin treatment, perform a gadolinium enhanced MRI to rule out CPA tumor as the cause of symptoms

Vestibular Neuronitis

Definition

- acute onset of disabling vertigo often accompanied by nausea, vomiting, and imbalance without hearing loss that resolves over **days** leaving a residual imbalance that lasts **days to weeks**

Etiology

- thought to be due to a viral (e.g. measles, mumps, herpes zoster) or post viral inflammatory condition
- ~30% of cases have associated URTI symptoms
- other: microvascular events, diabetes, autoimmune process
- considered to be the vestibular equivalent of Bell's palsy, sudden hearing loss, and acute vocal cord palsy

Clinical Features

- acute phase
 - severe vertigo with nausea, vomiting, and imbalance lasting 1-5 d
 - irritative nystagmus (fast phase towards the offending ear)
 - patient tends to veer towards affected side
- convalescent phase
 - imbalance and motion sickness lasting days to weeks
 - spontaneous nystagmus away from affected side
 - gradual vestibular adaptation requires weeks to months
- incomplete recovery likely with the following risk factors: elderly, visual impairment, poor ambulation
- repeated attacks can occur

Treatment

- acute phase
 - bed rest, vestibular sedatives dimenhydrinate, diazepam
- convalescent phase
 - progressive ambulation especially in the elderly
 - vestibular exercises: involve eye and head movements, sitting, standing, and walking

Labyrinthitis

Definition

- acute infection of the inner ear resulting in vertigo and hearing loss

Etiology

- may be serous (viral) or purulent (bacterial)
- occurs as a complication of acute and chronic otitis media, bacterial meningitis, cholesteatoma, and temporal bone fractures
- bacterial: *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, *M. catarrhalis*, *P. aeruginosa*, *P. mirabilis*
- viral: rubella, CMV, measles, mumps, varicella zoster

Clinical Features

- sudden onset of vertigo, N/V, tinnitus, and unilateral hearing loss with no associated fever or pain
- meningitis is a serious complication

Investigations

- CT head
- if meningitis is suspected: lumbar puncture, blood cultures

Treatment

- treat with IV antibiotics, drainage of middle ear \pm mastoidectomy

Acoustic Neuroma (Vestibular Schwannoma)

Definition

- schwannoma of the vestibular portion of CN VIII

Pathogenesis

- starts in the internal auditory canal and expands into cerebellopontine angle (CPA), compressing cerebellum and brainstem
- when associated with type 2 neurofibromatosis (NF2): bilateral acoustic neuromas, café-au-lait skin lesions, and multiple intracranial lesions

Clinical Features

- usually presents with unilateral SNHL (chronic) or tinnitus
- dizziness and unsteadiness may be present, but true vertigo is rare as tumor growth occurs slowly and thus compensation occurs
- facial nerve palsy and trigeminal (V1) sensory deficit (corneal reflex) are late complications
- risk factors: exposure to loud noise, childhood exposure to low-dose radiation, history of parathyroid adenoma

Diagnosis

- MRI with gadolinium contrast (gold standard)
- audiogram (to assess SNHL)
- poor speech discrimination relative to the hearing loss
- stapedial reflex absent or significant reflex decay
- ABR: increase in latency of the 5th wave
- vestibular tests: normal or asymmetric caloric weakness (an early sign)

Treatment

- expectant management if tumor is very small, or in elderly
- definitive management is surgical excision
- other options: gamma knife, radiation



Acoustic neuroma is the most common intracranial tumor causing SNHL and the most common cerebellopontine angle tumor



In the elderly, unilateral tinnitus or SNHL is acoustic neuroma until proven otherwise

Tinnitus

**Definition**

- an auditory perception in the absence of an acoustic stimuli, likely related to loss of input to neurons in central auditory pathways and resulting in abnormal firing

History

- subjective vs. objective ([Figure 14, OT7](#))
- continuous vs. pulsatile (vascular in origin)
- unilateral vs. bilateral
- associated symptoms: hearing loss, vertigo, aural fullness, otalgia, otorrhea

Investigations

- audiology
- if unilateral
 - ABR, gadolinium enhanced MRI to exclude a retrocochlear lesion
 - CT to diagnose glomus tympanicum (rare)
 - MRI or angiogram to diagnose AVM
- if suspect metabolic abnormality: lipid profile, TSH

Treatment

- if a cause is found, treat the cause (e.g. drainage of middle ear effusion, embolization or excision of AVM)
- with no treatable cause: 50% will improve, 25% worsen, 25% remain the same
- avoid loud noise, ototoxic meds, caffeine, smoking
- tinnitus clinics

- identify situations where tinnitus is most bothersome (e.g. quiet times), mask tinnitus with soft music or "white noise"
- hearing aid if coexistent hearing loss
- tinnitus instrument: combines hearing aid with white noise masker
- trial of tocainamide

Diseases of the External Ear

Cerumen Impaction

Etiology

- ear wax: a mixture of secretions from ceruminous and pilosebaceous glands, squames of epithelium, dust, and debris

Risk Factors

- hairy or narrow ear canals, in-the-ear hearing aids, cotton swab usage, osteomata

Clinical Features

- hearing loss (conductive)
- \pm tinnitus, vertigo, otalgia, aural fullness

Treatment

- ceruminolytic drops (bicarbonate solution, olive oil, glycerine, Cerumenex*)
- syringing
- manual debridement (by MD)



Cerumen impaction is the most common cause of conductive hearing loss for those aged 15-50 yr



Syringing

Indications

- Totally occlusive cerumen with pain, decreased hearing, or tinnitus

Contraindications

- Active infection
- Previous ear surgery
- Only hearing ear
- TM perforation

Complications

- Otitis externa
- TM perforation
- Trauma
- Pain
- Vertigo
- Tinnitus
- Otitis media

Method

- Establish that TM is intact
- Gently pull the pinna superiorly and posteriorly
- Using warm water, aim the syringe nozzle upwards and posteriorly to irrigate the ear canal

Exostoses

Definition

- bony protuberances in the external auditory canal composed of lamellar bone

Etiology

- possible association with swimming in cold water

Clinical Features

- usually an incidental finding
- if large, they can cause cerumen impaction or otitis externa

Treatment

- no treatment required unless symptomatic

Otitis Externa

Etiology

- bacteria (~90% of OE): *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *Pseudomonas vulgaris*, *E. coli*, *S. aureus*
- fungus: *Candida albicans*, *Aspergillus niger*

Risk Factors

- associated with swimming ("swimmer's ear")
- mechanical cleaning (Q-tips*), skin dermatitis, aggressive scratching
- devices that occlude the ear canal: hearing aids, headphones, etc.
- allergic contact dermatitis, dermatologic conditions (psoriasis, atopic dermatitis)

Clinical Features

- acute
 - pain aggravated by movement of auricle (traction of pinna or pressure over tragus)
 - otorrhea (sticky yellow purulent discharge)
 - conductive hearing loss \pm aural fullness 2° to obstruction of external canal by swelling and purulent debris
 - posterior auricular lymphadenopathy
 - complicated OE exists if the pinna and/or the periauricular soft tissues are erythematous and swollen
- chronic
 - pruritus of external ear \pm excoriation of ear canal
 - atrophic and scaly epidermal lining, \pm otorrhea, \pm hearing loss
 - wide meatus but no pain with movement of auricle
 - tympanic membrane appears normal



Pulling on the pinna is extremely painful in otitis externa, but is usually well tolerated in otitis media

Treatment

- clean ear under magnification with irrigation, suction, dry swabbing, and C&S
- bacterial etiology
 - antipseudomonal otic drops (e.g. ciprofloxacin) or a combination of antibiotic and steroid (e.g. Cipro HC®)
 - do not use aminoglycoside if the tympanic membrane (TM) is perforated because of the risk of ototoxicity
 - introduction of fine gauze wick (pope wick) if external canal edematous
 - \pm 3% acetic acid solution to acidify ear canal (low pH is bacteriostatic)
 - systemic antibiotics if either cervical lymphadenopathy or cellulitis is present
- fungal etiology
 - repeated debridement and topical antifungals (gentian violet, Mycostatin® powder, boric acid, clioquinol-flumetasone drops)
- \pm analgesics
- chronic otitis externa (pruritus without obvious infection) → corticosteroid alone (e.g. diprosalic acid)

Malignant (Necrotizing) Otitis Externa (Skull Base Osteomyelitis)

Definition

- osteomyelitis of the temporal bone

Epidemiology

- occurs in elderly diabetics and immunocompromised patients

Etiology

- rare complication of otitis externa
- *Pseudomonas* infection in 99% of cases

Clinical Features

- otalgia and purulent otorrhea that is refractory to medical therapy
- granulation tissue on the floor of the auditory canal

Complications

- cranial nerve palsy (most commonly VII>X>XI)
- systemic infection, death

Management

- imaging: high resolution temporal bone CT scan, gadolinium enhanced MRI, technetium scan
- requires hospital admission, debridement, IV antibiotics, hyperbaric O₂
- may require OR for debridement of necrotic tissue/bone

**Gallium and Technetium Scans**

Gallium scans are used to show sites of active infection. Gallium is taken up by PMNs and therefore only lights up when active infection is present. It will not show the extent of osteomyelitis. Technetium scans provide information about osteoblastic activity and as such are used to demonstrate sites of osteomyelitis. Technetium scans help with diagnosis whereas gallium scans are useful in follow-up



Diseases of the Middle Ear

Acute Otitis Media and Otitis Media with Effusion

- see *Pediatric Otolaryngology*, OT39

Chronic Otitis Media

Definition

- an ear with TM perforation in the setting of recurrent or chronic ear infections

Benign

- dry TM perforation without active infection

Chronic Serous Otitis Media

- continuous serous drainage (straw-colored)

Chronic Suppurative Otitis Media

- persistent purulent drainage through a perforated TM

Cholesteatoma

Definition

- a cyst composed of keratinized desquamated epithelial cells occurring in the middle ear, mastoid, and temporal bone
- two types: congenital and acquired

Congenital

- presents as a “small white pearl” behind an intact tympanic membrane (anterior and medial to the malleus) or as a conductive hearing loss
- believed to be due to aberrant migration of external canal ectoderm during development
- not associated with otitis media/Eustachian tube dysfunction

Acquired (more common)

- generally occurs as a consequence of otitis media and chronic Eustachian tube dysfunction
- primary cholesteatoma
 - frequently associated with retraction pockets in the pars flaccida (may lead to attic cholesteatomas which are difficult to visualize)
 - often has crusting or desquamated debris on lateral surface
- secondary cholesteatoma
 - pearly mass evident behind TM, frequently associated with marginal perforation
 - may appear as skin that have replaced the mucosa of the middle ear
- the associated chronic inflammatory process causes progressive destruction of surrounding bony structures

Clinical Features

- history of otitis media (especially if unilateral), ventilation tubes, ear surgery
- symptoms
 - progressive hearing loss (predominantly conductive although may get sensorineural hearing loss in late stage)
 - otalgia, aural fullness, fever
- signs
 - retraction pocket in TM, may contain keratin debris
 - TM perforation
 - granulation tissue, polyp visible on otoscopy
 - malodorous, unilateral otorrhea

Complications

Table 8. Complications of Cholesteatoma

Local	Intracranial
Ossicular erosion: conductive hearing loss	Meningitis
Inner ear erosion: SNHL, dizziness, and/or labyrinthitis	Sigmoid sinus thrombosis
Temporal bone infection: mastoiditis, petrositis	Intracranial abscess (subdural, epidural, cerebellar)
Facial paralysis	

Investigations

- audiogram and CT scan

Treatment

- there is no conservative therapy for cholesteatoma
- surgical: mastoidectomy ± tympanoplasty ± ossicular reconstruction



Mechanisms of Cholesteatoma Formation

- Epithelial migration through TM perforation (2° acquired)
- Invagination of TM (1° acquired)
- Metaplasia of middle ear epithelium or basal cell hyperplasia (congenital)



Complications of AOM are rare due to rapid and effective treatment of AOM with antibiotics



Classic Triad

- Otorrhea
- Tenderness to pressure over the mastoid
- Retroauricular swelling with protruding ear

Mastoiditis

Definition

- infection (usually subperiosteal) of mastoid air cells, most commonly seen approximately two weeks after onset of untreated or inadequately treated acute suppurative otitis media
- more common in children than adults

Etiology

- acute mastoiditis caused by the same organisms as AOM: *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, *M. catarrhalis*, *S. pyogenes*, *S. aureus*, *P. aeruginosa*

Clinical Features

- otorrhea
- tenderness to pressure over the mastoid
- retroauricular swelling with protruding ear
- fever, hearing loss, ± TM perforation (late)
- CT radiologic findings: opacification of mastoid air cells by fluid and interruption of normal trabeculations of cells (coalescence)

Treatment

- IV antibiotics with myringotomy and ventilation tubes – usually all that is required acutely
- cortical mastoidectomy
 - debridement of infected tissue allowing aeration and drainage
- indications for surgery
 - failure of medical treatment after 48 h
 - symptoms of intracranial complications
 - aural discharge persisting for 4 wk and resistant to antibiotics

Otosclerosis

Definition

- fusion of stapes footplate to oval window so that it cannot vibrate

Etiology

- autosomal dominant, variable penetrance approximately 40%
- F>M, progresses during pregnancy (hormone responsive)

Clinical Features

- progressive conductive hearing loss first noticed in teens and 20s (may progress to sensorineural hearing loss if cochlea involved)
- \pm pulsatile tinnitus
- tympanic membrane normal \pm pink blush (Schwartz's sign) associated with the neovascularization of otosclerotic bone
- characteristic dip at 2000 Hz (Carhart's notch) on audiogram (Figure 16C, OT10)



Otosclerosis is the 2nd most common cause of conductive hearing loss in 15-50 yr old (after cerumen impaction)

Treatment

- monitor with serial audiograms if coping with loss
- hearing aid (air conduction, bone conduction, BAHA)
- stapedectomy or stapedotomy (with laser or drill) with prosthesis is definitive treatment

Diseases of the Inner Ear

Congenital Sensorineural Hearing Loss

Hereditary Defects

- non-syndrome associated (70%)
 - often idiopathic, autosomal recessive
 - connexin 26 (GJB2) most common
- syndrome associated (30%)
 - Waardenburg: white forelock, heterochromia iridis (each eye different color), wide nasal bridge and increased distance between medial canthi
 - Pendred: deafness associated with thyroid gland disorders, SLC26A4 gene, enlarged vestibular aqueducts
 - Treacher-Collins: first and second branchial cleft anomalies
 - Alport: hereditary nephritis

Prenatal TORCH Infections

- toxoplasmosis, others (e.g. HIV, syphilis), rubella, CMV, HSV

Perinatal

- Rh incompatibility
- anoxia
- hyperbilirubinemia
- birth trauma (hemorrhage into inner ear)

Postnatal

- meningitis, mumps, measles

High Risk Factors (for hearing loss in newborns)

- low birth weight/prematurity
- perinatal anoxia (low APGARs)
- kernicterus: bilirubin >25 mg/dL
- craniofacial abnormality
- family history of deafness in childhood
- 1st trimester illness: TORCH infections
- neonatal sepsis
- ototoxic drugs

- perinatal infection, including post-natal meningitis
- consanguinity
- 50-75% of newborns with SNHL have at least one of the above risk factors and 90% of these have spent time in the NICU
- presence of any risk factor: ABR study performed before leaving NICU and at 3 mo adjusted age
- early rehabilitation improves speech and school performance

Presbycusis

Definition

- SNHL associated with aging (starting in 5th and 6th decades)

Etiology

- hair cell degeneration
- age related degeneration of basilar membrane, possibly genetic etiology
- cochlear neuron damage
- ischemia of inner ear

Clinical Features

- progressive, bilateral hearing loss initially at high frequencies, then middle frequencies
- loss of discrimination of speech especially with background noise present – patients describe people as mumbling
- recruitment phenomenon: inability to tolerate loud sounds
- tinnitus

Treatment

- hearing aid if patient has difficulty functioning, hearing loss >30-35 dB, and good speech discrimination
- ± lip reading, auditory training, auditory aids (doorbell and phone lights)



Presbycusis is the most common cause of SNHL

Sudden Sensorineural Hearing Loss

Clinical Features

- presents as a sudden onset of significant SNHL (usually unilateral) ± tinnitus, aural fullness
- usually idiopathic, rule out other causes
 - autoimmune causes (e.g. ESR, rheumatoid factor, ANA)
 - MRI to rule out tumor and/or CT to rule out ischemic/hemorrhagic stroke if associated with any other focal neurological signs (e.g. vertigo, ataxia, abnormality of CN V or VII, weakness)

Treatment

- oral corticosteroids within 3 d of onset: prednisone 1 mg/kg/d for 10-14 d

Prognosis

- depends on degree of hearing loss
- 70% resolve within 10-14 d
- 20% experience partial resolution
- 10% experience permanent hearing loss



Sudden SNHL may easily be confused with ischemic brain events. It is important to keep a high index of suspicion especially with elderly patients presenting with sudden SNHL as well as vertigo

Autoimmune Inner Ear Disease

Etiology

- idiopathic
- may be associated with systemic autoimmune diseases (e.g. rheumatoid arthritis, SLE), vasculitides (e.g. GPA, polyarteritis nodosa), and allergies

Epidemiology

- most common between ages 20-50

Clinical Features

- rapidly progressive or fluctuating bilateral SNHL
- ± tinnitus, aural fullness, vestibular symptoms (i.e. ataxia, disequilibrium, vertigo)

Investigations

- autoimmune workup: CBC, ESR, ANA, rheumatoid factor

Treatment

- high-dose corticosteroids: treat early for at least 30 d
- consider cytotoxic medication for steroid non-responders

Drug Ototoxicity

Aminoglycosides

- streptomycin and gentamicin (vestibulotoxic), kanamycin, and tobramycin (cochleotoxic)
- toxic to hair cells by any route: oral, IV, and topical (if the TM is perforated)
- destroys sensory hair cells: outer first, inner second (therefore otoacoustic emissions are lost first)
- high frequency hearing loss develops earliest
- ototoxicity occurs days to weeks post-treatment
- must monitor with peak and trough levels when prescribed, especially if patient has neutropenia and/or history of ear or renal problems
- q24h dosing recommended (with amount determined by creatinine clearance)
- aminoglycoside toxicity displays saturable kinetics, therefore, once daily dosing presents less risk than divided daily doses
- duration of treatment is the most important predictor of ototoxicity
- treatment: immediately stop aminoglycosides

Salicylates

- hearing loss with tinnitus, reversible if discontinued

Antimalarials (Quinines)

- hearing loss with tinnitus
- reversible if discontinued but can lead to permanent loss

Others

- many antineoplastic agents are ototoxic (weigh risks vs. benefits)
- loop diuretics

Noise-Induced Sensorineural Hearing Loss

Pathogenesis

- 85-90 dB over months or years or single sound impulses >135 dB can cause cochlear damage
- bilateral SNHL initially and most prominently at 4000 Hz (resonant frequency of the temporal bone), known as “boilermaker’s notch” on audiogram, extends to higher and lower frequencies with time (see [Figure 16D, OT10](#))
- speech reception not altered until hearing loss >30 dB at speech frequency, therefore considerable damage may occur before patient complains of hearing loss
- difficulty with speech discrimination, especially in situations with competing noise

Phases of Hearing Loss

- dependent on: intensity of sound and duration of exposure
- temporary threshold shift
 - when exposed to loud sound, decreased sensitivity or increased threshold for sound
 - may have associated aural fullness and tinnitus
 - with removal of noise, hearing returns to normal
- permanent threshold shift
 - hearing does not return to previous state

Treatment

- hearing aid
- prevention
 - ear protectors: muffs, plugs
 - limit exposure to noise with frequent rest periods
 - regular audiologic follow-up

Temporal Bone Fractures

Table 9. Features of Temporal Bone Fractures

	Transverse (1)	Longitudinal (2)
Extension	Into bony labyrinth and internal auditory meatus	Into middle ear
Incidence	10-20%	70-90%
Etiology	Frontal/occipital trauma	Lateral skull trauma
CN Pathology	CN VII palsy (50%)	CN VII palsy (10-20%)
Hearing Loss	SNHL due to direct cochlear injury	CHL secondary to ossicular injury
Vestibular Symptoms	Sudden onset vestibular symptoms due to direct semicircular canal injury (vertigo, spontaneous nystagmus)	Rare
Other Features	Intact external auditory meatus, TM \pm hemotympanum Spontaneous nystagmus CSF leak in Eustachian tube to nasopharynx \pm rhinorrhea (risk of meningitis)	Torn TM or hemotympanum Bleeding from external auditory canal Step formation in external auditory canal CSF otorrhea Battle's sign = mastoid ecchymoses Raccoon eyes = periorbital ecchymoses

- characterized as longitudinal or transverse relative to the long axis of the petrous temporal bone
- temporal bone fractures are rarely purely transverse or longitudinal (often a mixed picture)

Diagnosis

- otoscopy
- do not syringe or manipulate external auditory meatus due to risk of inducing meningitis via TM perforation
- CT head
- audiology, facial nerve tests (for transverse fractures), Schirmer's test (of lacrimation), stapedial reflexes if CN VII palsy
- if suspecting CSF leak: look for halo sign, send fluid for β -2 transferrin

Treatment

- ABCs
- medical: expectant, prevent otogenic meningitis
- surgical: explore temporal bone, indications:
 - CN VII palsy (immediate and complete)
 - gunshot wound
 - depressed fracture of external auditory meatus
 - early meningitis (mastoidectomy)
 - bleeding intracranially from sinus
 - CSF otorrhea (may resolve spontaneously)

Complications

- AOM \pm labyrinthitis \pm mastoiditis
- meningitis/epidural abscess/brain abscess
- post-traumatic cholesteatoma

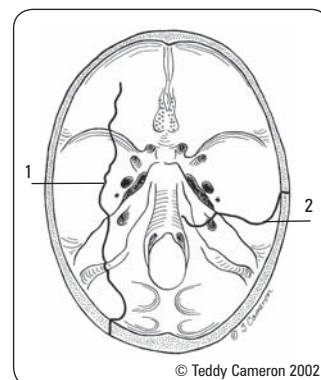


Figure 18. Types of temporal bone fractures



Signs of Basilar Skull Fracture

Battle's Sign: ecchymosis of the mastoid process of the temporal bone

Raccoon Eyes

CSF Rhinorrhea/Otorrhea

Cranial Nerve Involvement: facial palsy \rightarrow CN VII, nystagmus \rightarrow CN VI, facial numbness \rightarrow CN V



The halo sign: the double ringed appearance of CSF fluid on white filter paper as it separates out from blood



Hemotympanum can be indicative of temporal bone trauma



House-Brackmann Facial Nerve Grading System

Grade I: Normal facial motor function

Grade II: Mild dysfunction

- Slight weakness
- Normal symmetry and tone at rest
- Complete eye closure

Grade III: Moderate dysfunction

- Obvious weakness

Grade IV: Moderately severe dysfunction

- Obvious weakness \pm disfiguring asymmetry
- Incomplete eye closure
- No forehead motion
- Mouth asymmetric motion

Grade V: Severe dysfunction

- Barely perceptible motion of mouth
- Asymmetric at rest

Grade VI: Total paralysis

- No movement

Facial Nerve (CN VII) Paralysis

Etiology

- supranuclear and nuclear (MS, poliomyelitis, cerebral tumors)
- infranuclear

Treatment

- treat according to etiology plus provide corneal protection with artificial tears, nocturnal lid taping, tarsorrhaphy, gold weighting of upper lid
- facial paralysis that does not resolve with time or with medical treatment will often be referred for possible reanimation techniques to restore function
 - common reanimation techniques include
 - ♦ direct facial nerve anastomosis
 - ♦ interpositional grafts
 - ♦ anastomosis to other motor nerves
 - ♦ muscle transpositions

Table 10. Differential Diagnosis of Peripheral Facial Paralysis (PFP)

Etiology	Incidence	Findings	Investigations	Treatment, Follow-up, and Prognosis (Px)
Bell's Palsy Idiopathic, (HSV) infection of the facial nerve Diagnosis of exclusion	80-90% of PFP Risk Factors: DM Pregnancy Viral prodrome (50%)	Hx: Acute onset Numbness of ear Schirmer's test Recurrence (12%) + FHx (14%) Hyperacusis (30%) P/E: Paralysis or paresis of all muscle groups on one side of the face Absence of signs of CNS disease Absence of signs of ear or CPA diseases	Stapedial reflex absent Audiology normal (or baseline) EMG – best measure for prognosis Topognostic testing MRI with gadolinium – enhancement of CN VII and VIII High resolution CT	Rx: Protect the eye to prevent exposure keratitis with patching or tarsorrhaphy Systemic steroids may lessen degeneration and hasten recovery Consider antiviral (acyclovir) F/U: Spontaneous remission should begin within 3 wk of onset Delayed (3-6 mo) recovery portends at least some functional loss Px: 90% recover spontaneously and completely overall; >90% recovery if paralysis was incomplete Poorer if hyperacusis, >60 yr, DM, HTN, severe pain
Ramsay Hunt Syndrome (Herpes Zoster Oticus) Varicella zoster infection of CN VII/VIII	4.5-9% of PFP Risk Factors: >60 yr Impaired immunity Cancer Radiotherapy Chemotherapy	Hx: Hyperacusis SNHL Severe pain of pinna, mouth, or face P/E: Vesicles on pinna, external canal (erupt 3-7 d after onset of pain) Associated herpes zoster ophthalmicus (uveitis, keratoconjunctivitis, optic neuritis, or glaucoma)	Stapedial reflex absent Audiology – SNHL Viral ELISA studies to confirm MRI with gadolinium (86% of facial nerves enhance)	Rx: Avoid touching lesions to prevent spread of infection Systemic steroids can relieve pain, vertigo, avoid postherpetic neuralgia Acyclovir may lessen pain, aid healing of vesicles F/U: 2-4 wk Px: Poorer prognosis than Bell's palsy; 22% recover completely, 66% incomplete paralysis, 10% complete paralysis
TEMPORAL BONE FRACTURE				
Longitudinal (90%)	20% have PFP	Hx: Blow to side of head P/E: Trauma to side of head Neuro findings consistent with epidural/subdural bleed	Skull x-rays CT head	Px: Injury usually due to stretch or impingement; may recover with time
Transverse (10%)	40% have PFP	Hx: Blow to frontal or occipital area P/E: Trauma to front or back of head	Skull x-rays CT head	Px: Nerve transection more likely
Iatrogenic		Variable (depending on level of injury)	Wait for lidocaine to wear off EMG	Rx: Exploration if complete nerve paralysis No exploration if any movement present

Source: Paul Warrick, MD

Rhinitis

Definition

- inflammation of the lining (mucosa) of the nasal cavity

Table 11. Classification of Rhinitis

Inflammatory	Non-Inflammatory
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Perennial non-allergic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Asthma, ASA sensitivity Allergic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Seasonal Perennial Atrophic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Primary: <i>Klebsiella ozena</i> (especially in elderly) Acquired: post-surgery if too much mucosa or turbinate has been resected Infectious <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Viral: e.g. rhinovirus, influenza, parainfluenza, etc. Bacterial: e.g. <i>S. aureus</i> Fungal Granulomatous: TB, syphilis, leprosy Non-infectious <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sarcoidosis GPA Irritant <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dust Chemicals Pollution 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Rhinitis medicamentosa <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Topical decongestants Hormonal <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pregnancy Estrogens Thyroid Idiopathic vasomotor



Rhinitis medicamentosa: rebound congestion due to the overuse of intranasal vasoconstrictors; for prevention, use of these medications for only 5-7 d is recommended

Table 12. Nasal Discharge: Character and Associated Conditions

Character	Associated Conditions
Watery/mucoid	Allergic, viral, vasomotor, CSF leak (halo sign)
Mucopurulent	Bacterial, foreign body
Serosanguinous	Neoplasia
Bloody	Trauma, neoplasia, bleeding disorder, HTN/vascular disease

Allergic Rhinitis (Hay Fever)

Definition

- rhinitis characterized by an IgE-mediated hypersensitivity to foreign allergens
- acute-and-seasonal or chronic-and-perennial
- perennial allergic rhinitis often confused with recurrent colds

Etiology

- when allergens contact the respiratory mucosa, specific IgE antibody is produced in susceptible hosts
- concentration of allergen in the ambient air correlates directly with the rhinitis symptoms

Epidemiology

- age at onset usually <20 yr
- more common in those with a personal or family history of allergies/atopy

Clinical Features

- nasal: obstruction with pruritus, sneezing
- clear rhinorrhea (containing increased eosinophils)
- itching of eyes with tearing
- frontal headache and pressure
- mucosa: swollen, pale, "boggy"
- seasonal (summer, spring, early autumn)
 - pollens from trees
 - lasts several weeks, disappears, and recurs following year at same time
- perennial
 - inhaled: house dust, wool, feathers, foods, tobacco, hair, mold
 - ingested: wheat, eggs, milk, nuts
 - occurs intermittently for years with no pattern or may be constantly present

Complications

- chronic sinusitis/polyps
- serous otitis media

Diagnosis

- history
- direct exam
- allergy testing

Treatment

- education: identification and avoidance of allergen
- nasal irrigation with saline
- antihistamines (e.g. diphenhydramine, fexofenadine)
- oral decongestants (e.g. pseudoephedrine, phenylpropanolamine)
- topical decongestant (may lead to rhinitis medicamentosa)
- other topicals: steroids (fluticasone), disodium cromoglycate, antihistamines, ipratropium bromide
- oral steroids if severe
- desensitization by allergen immunotherapy



Congestion reduces nasal airflow and allows the nose to repair itself (i.e. washes away the irritants)

Treatment should focus on the initial insult rather than target this defense mechanism

Vasomotor Rhinitis

- neurovascular disorder of nasal parasympathetic system (vidian nerve) affecting mucosal blood vessels
- nonspecific reflex hypersensitivity of nasal mucosa
- caused by
 - temperature change
 - alcohol, dust, smoke
 - stress, anxiety, neurosis
 - endocrine: hypothyroidism, pregnancy, menopause
 - parasympathomimetic drugs
 - beware of rhinitis medicamentosa: reactive vasodilation due to prolonged use (>5 d) of nasal drops and sprays

Clinical Features

- chronic intermittent nasal obstruction, varies from side to side
- rhinorrhea: thin, watery
- mucosa and turbinates: swollen
- nasal allergy must be ruled out

Treatment

- elimination of irritant factors
- parasympathetic blocker (Atrovent® nasal spray)
- steroids (e.g. beclomethasone, fluticasone)
- surgery (often of limited lasting benefit): electrocautery, cryosurgery, laser treatment, or removal of inferior or middle turbinates
- vidian neurectomy (rarely done)
- symptomatic relief with exercise (increased sympathetic tone)

Rhinosinusitis

Pathogenesis of Rhinosinusitis

- ostial obstruction or dysfunctional cilia permit stagnant mucous and, consequently, infection
- all sinuses drain to a common prechamber under the middle meatus called the osteomeatal complex

Definition

- inflammation of the mucosal lining of the sinuses and nasal passages

Classification

- acute: <4 wk
- subacute: 4-8 wk
- chronic: >8-12 wk

Table 13. Etiologies of Rhinosinusitis

Ostial Obstruction	Inflammation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • URTI • Allergy
	Mechanical	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Septal deviation • Turbinate hypertrophy • Polyps • Tumors • Adenoid hypertrophy • Foreign body • Congenital abnormalities (e.g. cleft palate)
	Immune	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GPA • Lymphoma, leukemia • Immunosuppressed patients (e.g. neutropenics, diabetics, HIV)
Systemic		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cystic fibrosis • Immotile cilia (e.g. Kartagener's)
Direct Extension	Dental	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Infection
	Trauma	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Facial fractures

Acute Bacterial Rhinosinusitis

Definition

- bacterial infection of the paranasal sinuses and nasal passages lasting >7 d
- clinical diagnosis requiring ≥ 2 major symptoms, at least one of the symptoms is either nasal obstruction or purulent/discholorated nasal discharge
 - **major symptoms**
 - ♦ facial pain/pressure/fullness
 - ♦ nasal obstruction
 - ♦ purulent/discholorated nasal discharge
 - ♦ hyposmia/anosmia
 - **minor symptoms**
 - ♦ headache
 - ♦ halitosis
 - ♦ fatigue
 - ♦ dental pain
 - ♦ cough
 - ♦ ear pain/fullness

Etiology

- bacteria: *S. pneumoniae* (35%), *H. influenzae* (35%), *M. catarrhalis*, *S. aureus*, anaerobes (dental)
- children are more prone to a bacterial etiology, but viral is still more common
- maxillary sinus most commonly affected
- must rule out fungal causes (mucormycosis) in immunocompromised hosts (especially if painless, black or pale mucosa on examination)

Clinical Features

- sudden onset of
 - nasal blockage/congestion and/or purulent nasal discharge/posterior nasal drip
 - \pm facial pain or pressure, hyposmia, sore throat
- persistent/worsening symptoms >5-7 d or presence of purulence for 3-4 d with high fever
- speculum exam: erythematous mucosa, mucopurulent discharge, pus originating from the middle meatus
- predisposing factors: viral URTI, allergy, dental disease, anatomical defects
- differentiate from acute viral rhinosinusitis (course: <10 d, peaks by 3 d)

Management

- depends on symptom severity (i.e. intensity/duration of symptoms, impact on quality of life)
- mild-moderate: INCS
 - if no response within 72 h, add antibiotics
- severe: INCS + antibiotics
- antibiotics
 - 1st line: amoxicillin x 10 d (TMP-SMX or macrolide if penicillin allergy)
- if no response to 1st line antibiotics within 72 h, switch to 2nd line
 - 2nd line: fluoroquinolones or amoxicillin-clavulanic acid inhibitors
- adjuvant therapy (saline irrigation, analgesics, oral/topical decongestant) may provide symptomatic relief
- CT indicated only if complications are suspected



Acute Rhinosinusitis Complications

Consider hospitalization if any of the following are suspected

- Orbital (Chandler's classification)
 - Periorbital cellulitis
 - Orbital cellulitis
 - Subperiosteal abscess
 - Orbital abscess
 - Cavernous sinus thrombosis
- Intracranial
 - Meningitis
 - Abscess
- Bony
 - Subperiosteal frontal bone abscess ("Pott's Puffy tumor")
 - Osteomyelitis
- Neurologic
 - Superior orbital fissure syndrome (CN III/IV/VI palsy, immobile globe, dilated pupils, ptosis, V1 hypoesthesia)
 - Orbital apex syndrome (as above, plus neuritis, papilledema, decreased visual acuity)



FESS = Functional Endoscopic Sinus Surgery

Opening of the entire osteomeatal complex in order to facilitate drainage while sparing the sinus mucosa



Allergic fungal rhinosinusitis is a chronic sinusitis affecting mostly young, immunocompetent, atopic individuals. Treatment options include FESS \pm intranasal topical steroids, antifungals, and immunotherapy

Chronic Rhinosinusitis

Definition

- inflammation of the mucosa of paranasal sinuses and nasal passages >8-12 wk
- diagnosis requiring ≥ 2 major symptoms for >8-12 wk and ≥ 1 objective finding of inflammation of the paranasal sinuses (CT/endoscopy)

Etiology

- unclear etiology but the following may contribute or predispose:
 - inadequate treatment of acute rhinosinusitis
 - bacterial colonization/biofilms
 - ♦ *S. aureus*, enterobacteriaceae, *Pseudomonas*, *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, β -hemolytic streptococci
 - fungal infection (e.g. *Aspergillus*, *Zygomycetes*, *Candida*)
 - anatomic abnormality (e.g. lost ostia patency, deviated septum – predisposing factors)
 - allergy/allergic rhinitis
 - ciliary disorder (e.g. cystic fibrosis, Kartagener syndrome)
 - chronic inflammatory disorder (e.g. GPA)
 - untreated dental disease

Clinical Features (similar to acute, but less severe)

- chronic nasal obstruction
- purulent anterior/posterior nasal discharge
- facial congestion/fullness
- facial pain/pressure
- hyposmia/anosmia
- halitosis
- chronic cough
- maxillary dental pain

Management

- identify and address contributing or predisposing factors
- obtain CT or perform endoscopy
- if polyps present: INCS, oral steroids \pm antibiotics (if signs of infection), refer to otolaryngologist/H&N surgeon
- if polyps absent: INCS, antibiotics, saline irrigation, oral steroids (severe cases)
- antibiotics for 3-6 wk
 - amoxicillin-clavulanic acid inhibitors, fluoroquinolone (moxifloxacin), macrolide (clarithromycin), clindamycin, Flagyl® (metronidazole)
- surgery if medical therapy fails or fungal sinusitis: FESS, balloon sinoplasty

Complications

- same as acute sinusitis, mucocele

Epistaxis

Blood Supply to the Nasal Septum (see Figure 4, OT3)

1. Superior posterior septum
 - internal carotid \rightarrow ophthalmic \rightarrow anterior/posterior ethmoidal
 2. Posterior septum
 - external carotid \rightarrow internal maxillary \rightarrow sphenopalatine artery \rightarrow nasopalatine
 3. Lower anterior septum
 - external carotid \rightarrow facial artery \rightarrow superior labial artery \rightarrow nasal branch
 - external carotid \rightarrow internal maxillary \rightarrow descending palatine \rightarrow greater palatine
- these arteries all anastomose to form Kiesselbach's plexus, located at Little's area (anterior-inferior portion of the cartilaginous septum)
 - bleeding from above middle turbinate is internal carotid, and from below is external carotid



90% of nose bleeds occur in Little's area

Table 14. Etiology of Epistaxis

Type	Causes
Local	Trauma (most common) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fractures: facial, nasal • Self-induced: digital, foreign body
	Tumors <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Benign: polyps, inverting papilloma, angiofibroma • Malignant: SCC, esthesioneuroblastoma (olfactory neuroblastoma)
	Inflammation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rhinitis: allergic, non-allergic • Infections: bacterial, viral, fungal
	Idiopathic
	Iatrogenic: nasal, sinus, orbit surgery
	Barometric changes
Systemic	Nasal dryness: dry air \pm septal deformities
	Septal perforation
	Chemical: cocaine, nasal sprays, ammonia, etc.
	Coagulopathies <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Meds: anticoagulants, NSAIDs • Hemophilias, von Willebrand's • Hematological malignancies • Liver failure, uremia
	Vascular: HTN, atherosclerosis, Osler-Weber-Rendu (hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia)
	Others: GPA, SLE

**Special Cases**

- Adolescent male with unilateral recurrent epistaxis – consider juvenile nasopharyngeal angiofibroma (JNA); this is the most common benign tumor of the nasopharynx
- Thrombocytopenic patients – use resorbable packs to avoid risk of re-bleeding caused by pulling out the removable pack

Investigations

- CBC, PT/PTT (if indicated)
- x-ray, CT as needed

Treatment

- locate bleeding and achieve hemostasis

1. ABCs

- lean patient forward to minimize swallowing blood and avoid airway obstruction
- apply constant firm pressure for 20 min on cartilaginous part of nose (not bony pyramid)
- if significant bleeding, assess vitals for signs of hemorrhagic shock ± IV NS, cross-match blood

2. Determine Site of Bleeding

- anterior/posterior hemorrhage defined by location in relationship to bony septum
- visualize nasal cavity with speculum
- use cotton pledget with topical lidocaine ± topical decongestant to help identify area of bleeding (often anterior septum)
- if suspicious bleeding disorder, coagulation workup (platelet number and platelet function assay)

3. Control the Bleeding

- first line topical vasoconstrictors
- if first line fails and bleeding adequately visualized, cauterize with silver nitrate
- **do not cauterize both sides of the septum** at one time due to risk of septal perforation from loss of septal blood supply

A. Anterior hemorrhage treatment

- if fail to achieve hemostasis with cauterization:
 - ♦ place anterior pack* with half inch Vaseline®-soaked ribbon gauze strips layered from nasal floor toward nasal roof extending to posterior choanae or lubricated absorbable packing (i.e. Gelfoam wrapped in Surgicel®) for 2-3 d
 - ♦ can also attempt packing with Merocel® or nasal tampons of different shapes
 - ♦ can also apply Floseal® (hemostatic matrix consisting of topical human thrombin and cross-linked gelatin) if other methods fail

B. Posterior hemorrhage treatment

- if unable to visualize bleeding source, then usually posterior source:
 - ♦ place posterior pack* using a Foley catheter, gauze pack, or Epistat® balloon
 - ♦ subsequently, layer anterior packing bilaterally
 - ♦ admit to hospital with packs in for 3-5 d
 - ♦ watch for complications: hypoxemia (nasal-pulmonic reflex), toxic shock syndrome (Rx: remove packs immediately), pharyngeal fibrosis/stenosis, alar/septal necrosis, aspiration

C. If anterior/posterior packs fail to control epistaxis

- ligation or embolization of culprit arterial supply by interventional radiology
- ± septoplasty

* antibiotics for any posterior pack or any pack left for >48 h because of risk of toxic shock syndrome

4. Prevention

- prevent drying of nasal mucosa with humidifiers, saline spray, or topical ointments
- avoidance of irritants
- medical management of HTN and coagulopathies

Hoarseness

Definitions

- hoarseness: change in voice quality, ranging from voice harshness to voice weakness; reflects abnormalities anywhere along the vocal tract from oral cavity to lungs
- dysphonia: a general alteration in voice quality
- aphonia: no sound emanates from vocal folds



If hoarseness present for >2 wk in a smoker, laryngoscopy must be done to rule out malignancy

Acute Laryngitis

Definition

- <2 wk inflammatory changes in laryngeal mucosa

Etiology

- viral: influenza, adenovirus
- bacterial: Group A *Streptococcus*
- mechanical acute voice strain → submucosal hemorrhage → vocal cord edema → hoarseness
- environmental: toxic fume inhalation

Clinical Features

- URTI symptoms, hoarseness, aphonia, cough attacks, ± dyspnea
- true vocal cords erythematous/edematous with vascular injection and normal mobility

Treatment

- usually self-limited, resolves within ~1 wk
- voice rest
- humidification
- hydration

**Vocal Cord Paralysis**

Unilateral: affected cord lies in the paramedian position, inadequate glottic closure during phonation → weak, breathy voice. Usually medializes with time whereby phonation and aspiration improve. Treatment options include voice therapy, injection laryngoplasty (Radiesse), medialization using silastic block

Bilateral: cords rest in midline therefore voice remains good but respiratory function is compromised and may present as stridor. If no respiratory issues, may monitor closely and wait for improvement. If respiratory issues, intubate and will likely require a tracheotomy

- avoid irritants (e.g. smoking)
- treat with antibiotics if there is evidence of coexistent bacterial pharyngitis

Chronic Laryngitis

Definition

- >2 wk inflammatory changes in laryngeal mucosa

Etiology

- repeated attacks of acute laryngitis
- chronic irritants (dust, smoke, chemical fumes)
- chronic voice strain
- chronic rhinosinusitis with postnasal drip
- chronic EtOH use
- esophageal disorders: GERD, Zenker's diverticulum, hiatus hernia
- systemic: allergy, hypothyroidism, Addison's disease

Clinical Features

- chronic dysphonia: rule out malignancy
- cough, globus sensation, frequent throat clearing 2° to GERD
- laryngoscopy: cords erythematous, thickened with ulceration/granuloma formation, and normal mobility

Treatment

- remove offending irritants
- treat related disorders (e.g. antisecretory therapy for GERD)
- speech therapy with voice rest
- ± antibiotics ± steroids to decrease inflammation
- laryngoscopy to rule out malignancy

Vocal Cord Polyps



Definition

- structural manifestation of vocal cord irritation
- acutely, polyp forms 2° to capillary damage in the subepithelial space during extreme voice exertion

Etiology

- most common benign tumor of vocal cords
- voice strain (muscle tension dysphonia)
- laryngeal irritants (GERD, allergies, tobacco)

Epidemiology

- 30-50 yr of age
- M>F

Clinical Features

- hoarseness, aphonia, cough attacks ± dyspnea
- pedicled or sessile polyp on free edge of vocal cord
- typically polyp asymmetrical, soft, and smooth
- more common on the anterior 1/3 of the vocal cord
- intermittent respiratory distress with large polyps

Treatment

- avoid irritants
- endoscopic laryngeal microsurgical removal if persistent or if high risk of malignancy



Vocal Cords: Polyps vs. Nodules

Polyps	Nodule
Unilateral, asymmetric	Bilateral
Acute onset	Gradual onset
May resolve spontaneously	Often follow a chronic course
Subepithelial capillary breakage	Acute: submucosal hemorrhage or edema Chronic: hyalinization within submucosal lesion
Soft, smooth, fusiform, pedunculated mass	Acute: small, discrete nodules Chronic: hard, white, thickened fibrosed nodules
Proton pump inhibitor	Voice rest but no whispering, hydration, speech therapy if refractory to therapy
Surgical excision if persistent or in presence of risk factors for laryngeal cancer	Surgical excision as last resort

Vocal Cord Nodules

Definition

- vocal cord callus
- i.e. "screamer's or singer's nodules"

Etiology

- early nodules occur 2° to submucosal hemorrhage
- mature nodules result from hyalinization which occurs with long-term voice abuse
- chronic voice strain
- frequent URTI, smoke, EtOH

Epidemiology

- frequently in singers, children, bartenders, and school teachers
- F>M

Clinical Features

- hoarseness worst at end of day
- on laryngoscopy
 - often bilateral
 - at the junction of the anterior 1/3 and posterior 2/3 of the vocal cords – point of maximal cord vibration
- chronic nodules may become fibrotic, hard, and white

Treatment

- voice rest
- hydration
- speech therapy
- avoid irritants
- surgery rarely indicated for refractory nodules

Benign Laryngeal Papillomas

Etiology

- HPV types 6, 11
- possible hormonal influence, possibly acquired during delivery

Epidemiology

- biphasic distribution: 1) birth to puberty (most common laryngeal tumor) and 2) adulthood

Clinical Features

- hoarseness and airway obstruction
- can seed into tracheobronchial tree
- highly resistant to complete removal
- some juvenile papillomas resolve spontaneously at puberty
- may undergo malignant transformation
- laryngoscopy shows wart-like lesions in supraglottic larynx and trachea

Treatment

- microdebridement or CO₂ laser
- adjuvants under investigation: interferon, cidofovir, acyclovir
- HPV vaccine may prevent/decrease the incidence but more research is needed

Laryngeal Carcinoma

- see *Neoplasms of the Head and Neck*, OT35

Salivary Glands



Sialadenitis

Definition

- inflammation of salivary glands

Etiology

- viral most common (mumps)
- bacterial causes: *S. aureus*, *S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*
- obstructive vs. non-obstructive
- obstructive infection involves salivary stasis and bacterial retrograde flow

Predisposing Factors

- HIV
- anorexia/bulimia
- Sjögren's syndrome
- Cushing's, hypothyroidism, DM
- hepatic/renal failure
- meds that increase stasis: diuretics, TCAs, β -blockers, anticholinergics, antibiotics
- sialolithiasis (can cause chronic sialadenitis)

Clinical Features

- acute onset of pain and edema of parotid or submandibular gland that may lead to marked swelling
- \pm fever
- \pm leukocytosis
- \pm suppurative drainage from punctum of the gland

Investigations

- U/S imaging to differentiate obstructive vs. non-obstructive sialadenitis

Treatment

- bacterial: treat with cloxacillin \pm abscess drainage, sialogogues
- viral: no treatment



Mumps usually presents with bilateral parotid enlargement \pm SNHL \pm orchitis

Sialolithiasis

Definition

- ductal stone (mainly hydroxyapatite) in adults, sand/sludge in children, leading to chronic sialadenitis
- 80% in submandibular gland, <20% in parotid gland, ~1% in sublingual gland

Risk Factors

- any condition causing duct stenosis or a change in salivary secretions (e.g. dehydration, DM, EtOH, hypercalcemia, psychiatric medication)

Clinical Features

- pain and tenderness over involved gland
- intermittent swelling related to meals
- digital palpation reveals presence of calculus

Investigations

- U/S \pm sialogram

Treatment

- may resolve spontaneously
- encourage salivation to clear calculus
- massage, analgesia, antibiotics, sialogogues (e.g. lemon wedges, sour lemon candies), warm compresses
- remove calculi endoscopically, by dilating duct or orifice, or by excision through floor of the mouth
- if calculus is within the gland parenchyma, the whole gland must be excised



Bilateral enlargement of the parotid glands may be a manifestation of a systemic disease, such as Sjögren's or an eating disorder (i.e. anorexia, bulimia)

Salivary Gland Neoplasms

Etiology

- anatomic distribution
 - parotid gland: 70-85%
 - submandibular gland: 8-15%
 - sublingual gland: 1%
 - minor salivary glands, most concentrated in hard palate: 5-8%
- malignant (see Table 15, OT32 and Table 16, OT36)
- benign
 - benign mixed (pleomorphic adenoma): 80%
 - Warthin's tumor (5-10% bilateral, M>F): 10%
 - cysts, lymph nodes and adenomas: 10%
 - oncocytoma: <1%

Epidemiology

- 3-6% of all head and neck neoplasms in adults
- mean age at presentation: 55-65
- M=F



A mass sitting above an imaginary line drawn between the mastoid process and angle of the mandible is a parotid neoplasm until proven otherwise

Parotid Gland Neoplasms

Clinical Features

- 80% benign (pleomorphic adenoma: most common), 20% malignant (mucoepidermoid: most common)
- if bilateral, suggests benign process (Warthin's tumor, Sjögren's, bulimia, mumps) or possible lymphoma
- facial nerve involvement (i.e. facial paralysis): increases risk of malignancy

Investigations

- FNA biopsy
- CT, U/S, or MRI to determine extent of tumor

Treatment

- treatment of choice is surgery for all salivary gland neoplasms – benign and malignant
- pleomorphic adenomas are excised due to risk of malignant transformation (5% risk over prolonged period of time)
- superficial tumor
 - superficial parotidectomy above plane of CN VII ± radiation
 - incisional biopsy contraindicated
- deep lesion
 - near-total parotidectomy sparing as much of CN VII as possible
 - if CN VII involved then it is removed and cable grafted
- complications of parotid surgery
 - hematoma, infection, salivary fistula, temporary facial paresis, Frey's syndrome (gustatory sweating)

Prognosis

- benign: excellent, <5% of pleomorphic adenomas may recur
- malignant: dependent on stage and type of malignancy (see Table 16, OT36)



DDx Parotid Tumor

Benign

- Pleomorphic adenoma
- Warthin's tumor (more common in men)
- Benign lymphoepithelial cysts (viral etiology e.g. HIV)
- Oncocytoma

Malignant

- Mucoepidermoid carcinoma
- Adenoid cystic carcinoma
- Acinic cell carcinoma



Frey's syndrome is a post-operative complication characterized by gustatory sweating. It is due to aberrant innervation of cutaneous sweat glands by parasympathetic nerve fibers that are divided during surgery



Neck Masses

Approach to a Neck Mass

- ensure that the neck mass is not a normal neck structure (hyoid, transverse process of C1 vertebra, prominent carotid bulb)
- any neck mass persisting for >2 wk should be investigated for possible neoplastic causes

Table 15. Acquired Causes of Neck Lumps According to Age

Age (yr)	Possible Causes of Neck Lump		
<20	1. Congenital	2. Inflammatory/Infectious	3. Neoplastic
20-40	1. Inflammatory	2. Congenital	3. Neoplastic
>40	1. Neoplastic	2. Inflammatory	3. Congenital

Differential Diagnosis

- congenital
 - lateral (branchial cleft cyst, lymphatic/venous/venolymphatic malformation)
 - midline (thyroglossal duct cyst, dermoid cyst, laryngocele)
- infectious/inflammatory
 - reactive lymphadenopathy (2° to tonsillitis, pharyngitis)
 - infectious mononucleosis
 - Kawasaki, Kikuchi, Kimura
 - HIV
 - salivary gland calculi, sialadenitis
 - thyroiditis
- granulomatous disease
 - mycobacterial infections
 - sarcoidosis
- neoplastic
 - lymphoma
 - salivary gland tumors
 - thyroid tumors
 - metastatic malignancy ("unknown primary")



Inflammatory vs. Malignant Neck Masses

	Inflammatory	Neoplastic
History		
Painful	Y	N
H&N infection	Y	N
Fever	Y	N
Weight loss	N	Y
CA risk factors	N	Y
Age	Younger	Older
Physical		
Tender	Y	N
Rubbery	Y	Occ.
Rock hard	N	Y
Mobile	Y	± fixed

Evaluation

Investigations

- history and physical (including nasopharynx and larynx)
- all other investigations and imaging are dependent upon clinical suspicion following history and physical
- laboratory investigations
 - WBC: infection vs. lymphoma
 - Mantoux TB test
 - thyroid function tests and scan
- imaging
 - neck U/S
 - CT scan
 - angiography: vascularity and blood supply to mass
- biopsy: for histologic examination
 - FNA: least invasive
 - needle biopsy
 - open biopsy: for lymphoma
- identification of possible primary tumor (rule out a metastatic lymph node from an “unknown primary”)
 - panendoscopy: nasopharyngoscopy, laryngoscopy, esophagoscopy, bronchoscopy with washings, and biopsy of suspicious lesions
 - biopsy of normal tissue of nasopharynx, tonsils, base of tongue, and hypopharynx
 - primary identified 95% of time → stage and treat
 - primary occult 5% of time: excisional biopsy of node for histologic diagnosis → manage with radiotherapy and/or neck dissection (squamous cell carcinoma)

Congenital Neck Masses

Branchial Cleft Cysts/Fistula

Embryology

- at the 6th wk of development, the 2nd branchial arch grows over the 3rd and 4th arches and fuses with the neighbouring caudal pre-cardial swelling forming the cervical sinus
- 3 types of malformations
 1. branchial fistula: persistent communication between skin and GI tract
 2. branchial sinus: blind-ended tract opening to skin
 3. branchial cyst: persistent cervical sinus with no external opening

Clinical Features

- 2nd branchial cleft malformations most common
 - sinuses and fistulae present in infancy as a small opening anterior to the sternocleidomastoid muscle
 - cysts present as a smooth, painless, slowly enlarging lateral neck mass, often following a URTI
- 1st branchial cleft malformations present as sinus/fistula or cyst in preauricular area or on face over angle of mandible
- 3rd branchial cleft malformations present as recurrent thyroiditis or thyroid abscess and have a tract leading usually to the left pyriform sinus
- there is controversy whether or not 4th branchial cleft anomalies exist, as they may be remnants of the thyrothymic axis

Treatment

- surgical removal of cyst or fistula tract
- if infected: allow infection to settle before removal (antibiotics may be required)

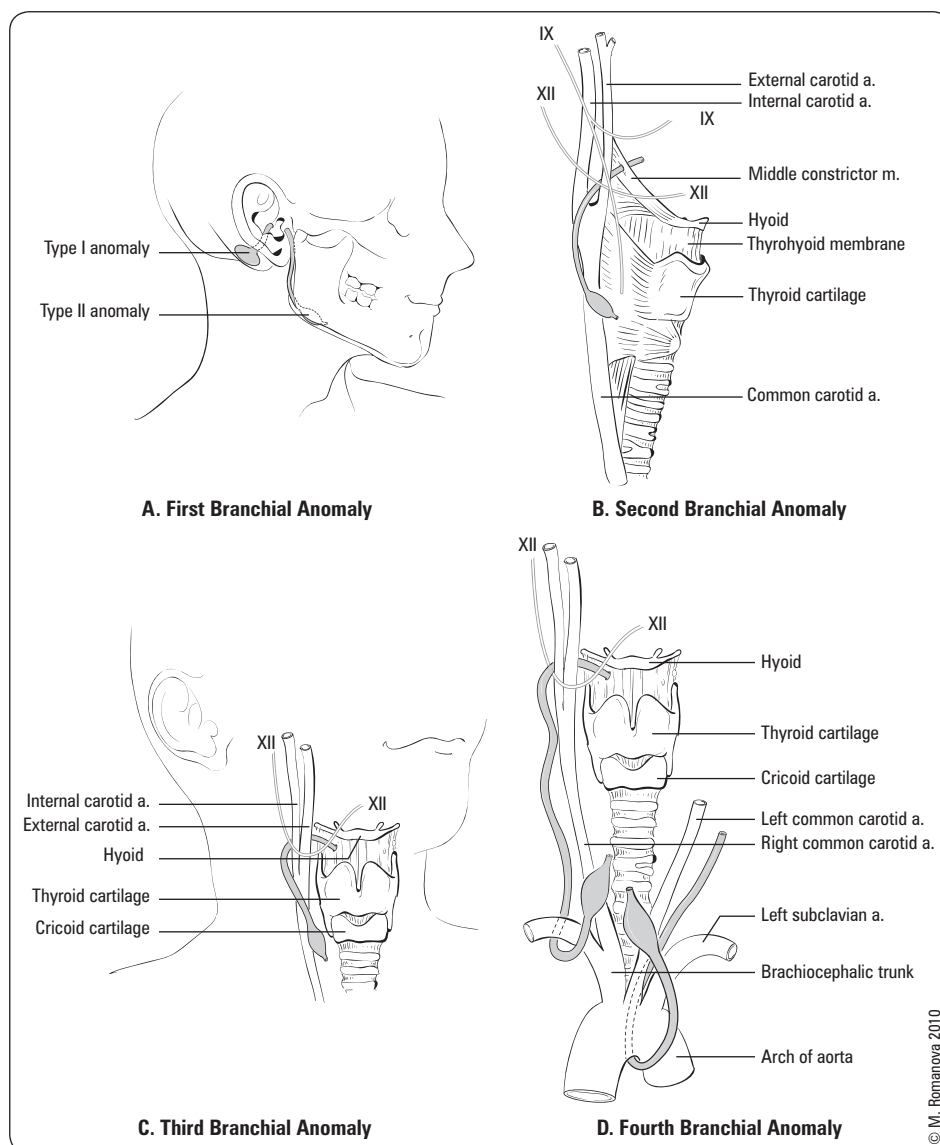


Figure 19. Branchial cleft cysts

Thyroglossal Duct Cysts

Embryology

- thyroid originates as ventral midline diverticulum at base of tongue caudal to junction of 3rd and 4th branchial arches (foramen cecum) and migrates down to inferior aspect of neck
- thyroglossal duct cysts are vestigial remnants of tract

Clinical Features

- usually presents in childhood or during 20-40s as a midline cyst that enlarges with URTI and elevates with swallowing and tongue protrusion

Treatment

- pre-operative antibiotics to reduce inflammation (infection before surgery is a well described cause of recurrence)
- small potential for neoplastic transformation so complete excision of cyst and tissue around tract up to foramen cecum at base of tongue with removal of central portion of hyoid bone (Sistrunk procedure) recommended

Lymphatic Malformation

Definition

- lymphatic malformation arising from vestigial lymph channels of neck

Clinical Features

- usually present by age 2
- can be macrocystic (composed of large thin-walled cysts, usually below level of mylohyoid muscle) or microcystic (composed of minute cysts, usually above level of mylohyoid muscle)
- usually painless, soft, compressible
- infection causes a sudden increase in size

Treatment

- can regress spontaneously after bacterial infection, therefore do not plan surgical intervention until several months after infection
- macrocystic lesions can be treated by sclerotherapy or surgical excision
- microcystic lesions are difficult to treat, but can be debulked

Neoplasms of the Head and Neck

Pre-Malignant Disease

- leukoplakia
 - hyperkeratosis of oral mucosa
 - risk of malignant transformation 5-20%
- erythroplakia
 - red superficial patches adjacent to normal mucosa
 - commonly associated with epithelial dysplasia
 - associated with carcinoma *in situ* or invasive tumor in 40% of cases
- dysplasia
 - histopathologic presence of mitoses and prominent nucleoli
 - involvement of entire mucosal thickness = carcinoma *in situ*
 - associated progression to invasive cancer in 15-30% of cases

Investigations

- initial metastatic screen includes CXR
- scans of liver, brain, and bone only if clinically indicated
- CT scan is superior to MRI for the detection of pathologic nodal disease and bone cortex invasion
- MRI is superior to discriminate tumor from mucus and to detect bone marrow invasion
- ± PET scans

Treatment

- treatment depends on
 - histologic grade of tumor
 - stage
 - physical and psychological health of patient
 - facilities available
 - expertise and experience of the medical and surgical oncology team
- in general
 - 1° surgery for malignant oral cavity tumors with radiotherapy reserved for salvage or poor prognostic indicators
 - 1° radiotherapy for nasopharynx, oropharynx, hypopharynx, larynx malignancies with surgery reserved for salvage
 - palliative chemotherapy for metastatic or incurable disease
 - concomitant chemotherapy increases survival in advanced disease
 - chemotherapy has a role as induction therapy prior to surgery and radiation
 - panendoscopy to detect primary disease when lymph node metastasis is identified
 - anti-EGFR treatment (cetuximab, panitumumab) has a role as concurrent therapy with radiation for SCC of the head and neck (for advanced local and regional disease)

Prognosis

- synchronous tumors occur in 9-15% of patients
- late development of 2nd primary most common cause of post-treatment failure after 36 mo



All patients presenting with a head and neck mass should be asked if they are experiencing the following obstructive, referred, or local symptoms:

- Dyspnea or stridor (positional vs. non-positional)
- Hoarseness or dysphonia
- Otolgia
- Non-healing oral ulcer
- Dysphagia
- Hemoptysis, hematemesis



Detection of cervical lymph nodes on physical exam:

False negative rate: 15-30%
False positive rate: 30-40%



Pathological lymphadenopathy defined radiographically as:

- A jugulodigastric node > 1.5 cm in diameter, or a retropharyngeal node > 1 cm in diameter
- A node of any size which contains central necrosis



Common sites of distant metastases for head and neck neoplasms:
lungs > liver > bones

Table 16. Quick Look-Up Summary of Head and Neck Malignancies – Etiology and Epidemiology

Etiology	Epidemiology	Risk Factors
Oral Cavity		
95% SCC others: sarcoma, melanoma, minor salivary gland tumor	Mean age: 50-60 yr M>F Most common site of H&N cancers 50% on anterior 2/3 of tongue	Smoking/EtOH Poor oral hygiene Leukoplakia, erythroplakia Lichen planus, chronic inflammation Sun exposure – lip HPV infection
Nose and Paranasal Sinus		
75-80% SCC Adenocarcinoma (2nd most common) and mucoepidermoid 99% in maxillary/ethmoid sinus 10% arise from minor salivary glands	Mean age: 50-70 yr Rare tumors ↓ incidence in last 5-10 yr	Wood/shoe/textile industry Hardwood dust (nasal/ethmoid sinus) Nickel, chromium (maxillary sinus) Air pollution Chronic rhinosinusitis
Carcinoma of the Pharynx – Subtypes (Nasopharynx, Oropharynx, Hypopharynx, and Larynx)		
Nasopharynx		
90% SCC ~10% lymphoma	Mean age: 50-59 yr M:F = 2.4:1 Incidence 0.8 per 100,000 100x increased incidence in Southern Chinese	Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) Salted fish Nickel exposure Poor oral hygiene Genetic – Southern Chinese
Oropharynx		
95% SCC – poorly differentiated	Mean age: 50-70 yr M:F = 4:1	Smoking/EtOH HPV infection
Hypopharynx		
95% SCC 3 sites: 1. pyriform sinus (60%) 2. post-cricoid (30%) 3. post pharyngeal wall (10%)	Mean age: 50-70 yr M>F 8-10% of all H&N cancer	Smoking/EtOH
Larynx		
SCC most common 3 sites: 1. supraglottic (30-35%) 2. glottic (60-65%) 3. subglottic (1%)	Mean age: 45-75 yr M:F = 10:1 45% of all H&N cancer	Smoking/EtOH HPV 16 infection strongly associated with the risk of laryngeal squamous cell cancers
Salivary Gland		
40% mucoepidermoid 30% adenoid cystic 5% acinic cell 5% malignant mixed 5% lymphoma	Mean age: 55-65 yr M=F 3-6% of all H&N cancer Rate of malignancy: Parotid 15-25% Submandibular 37-43% Minor salivary >80%	
Thyroid (90% benign – 10% malignant)		
>80% papillary 5-15% follicular 5% medullary <5% anaplastic 1-5% Hurthle cell 1-2% metastatic	Children Adults <30 or >60 yr Nodules more common in females Malignancy more common in males	Radiation exposure Family history – papillary CA or multiple endocrine neoplasia – MEN II Older age Male Papillary – Gardner's, Cowden's, familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)
Parathyroid		
	Mean age: 44-55 yr Rare tumor	


Risk Factors for Head and Neck Cancer Include:

- Smoking
- EtOH (synergistic with smoking)
- Radiation
- Occupational/environmental exposures
- Oral HPV infection (independent of smoking and EtOH exposure)



The smaller the salivary gland, the greater the likelihood that a mass in the gland is malignant

Table 17. Quick Look-Up Summary of Head and Neck Malignancies – Diagnosis and Treatment

Clinical Features	Investigations	Treatment	Prognosis
Oral Cavity Asymptomatic neck mass (30%) Non-healing ulcer ± bleeding Dysphagia, sialorrhea, dysphonia Oral feter, otalgia, leukoplakia, or erythroplakia (pre-malignant changes or CIS)	Biopsy CT	1 ^o surgery local resection ± neck dissection ± reconstruction 2 ^o radiation	5 yr survival T1/T2: 75% T3/T4: 30-35% Poor prognostic indicators Depth of invasion, close surgical margins location (tongue worse than floor of mouth) Cervical nodes, extra-capsular spread
Nose and Paranasal Sinus Early symptoms: Unilateral nasal obstruction Epistaxis, rhinorrhea Late symptoms: 2 ^o to invasion of nose, orbit, nerves, oral cavity, skin, skull base, cribriform plate	CT/MRI Biopsy	Surgery and radiation Chemoradiotherapy	5 yr survival: 30-60% Poor prognosis 2 ^o to late presentation
Nasopharynx Cervical nodes (60-90%) Nasal obstruction, epistaxis Unilateral otitis media ± hearing loss CN III to VI, IX to XII (25%) Proptosis, voice change, dysphagia	Nasopharyngoscopy Biopsy CT/MRI	1 ^o radiation, chemoradiation Surgery for limited or recurrent disease	5 yr survival T1: 79% T2: 72% T3: 50-60% T4: 36-42%
Oropharynx Odynophagia, otalgia Ulcerated/enlarged tonsil Fixed tongue/trismus/dysarthria Oral feter, bloody sputum Cervical lymphadenopathy (60%) Distant mets: lung/bone/liver (7%)	Biopsy CT	1 ^o radiation 2 ^o surgery local resection ± neck dissection ± reconstruction	Base of tongue – control rates T1: >90%, T4: 13-52% Tonsils – cure rate T1/T2: 90-100%, T4: 15-33% HPV-positive tumors have an approximately 20% improved overall survival rate
Hypopharynx Dysphagia, odynophagia Otagia, hoarseness Cervical lymphadenopathy	Pharyngoscopy Biopsy CT	1 ^o radiation 2 ^o surgery	5 yr survival T1: 53% T2/T3: 36-39% T4: 24%
Larynx Dysphagia, odynophagia, globus Otagia, hoarseness Dyspnea/stridor Cough/hemoptysis Cervical nodes (rare with glottic CA)	Laryngoscopy CT/MRI	1 ^o radiation 2 ^o surgery 1 ^o surgery for bulky T4 disease	5 yr survival T4: >40% (surgery with radiation) Control rate early lesions >90% (radiation) 10 to 12% of small lesions fail radiotherapy
Salivary Gland Painless mass (occ. pain is possible) CN VII palsy Cervical lymphadenopathy Rapid growth Invasion of skin Constitutional signs/symptoms	FNA MRI/CT/U/S	1 ^o surgery ± neck dissection Post-operative radiotherapy Chemotherapy if unresectable	Parotid 10 yr survival: 85, 69, 43, and 14% for stages T1 to T4 Submandibular 2 yr survival: 82%, 5 yr: 69% Minor salivary gland 10 yr survival: 83, 52, 25, 23% for stages T1 to T4
Thyroid Thyroid mass, cervical nodes Vocal cord paralysis Hyper/hypothyroidism Dysphagia	FNA U/S	1 ^o surgery I ¹³¹ for intermediate and high risk well differentiated thyroid cancer	Recurrences occur within 5 yr Need long-term follow-up: clinical exam, thyroglobulin
Parathyroid Increased serum Ca ²⁺ Neck mass Bone disease, renal disease Pancreatitis	Sestamibi	Wide surgical excision Post-operative monitoring of serum Ca ²⁺	Recurrence rates 1 yr: 27% 5 yr: 82% 10 yr: 91% Mean survival: 6-7 yr



Thyroid Carcinoma

Table 18. Bethesda Classification of Thyroid Cytology

Category	Risk of Malignancy
Non-diagnostic or unsatisfactory	Unknown
Benign	0-3%
Follicular lesion of undetermined significance/ Atypia of undetermined significance	5-15%
Follicular/Hurthle cell neoplasms	15-30%
Suspicious for malignancy	60-75%
Malignant	97-99%

Table 19. Thyroid Carcinoma

	Papillary	Follicular	Medullary	Anaplastic	Lymphoma
Incidence (% of all thyroid cancers)	70-75%	10%	3 to 5% (10% familial 90% sporadic)	<5%	<1%
Route of Spread	Lymphatic	Hematogenous	Lymphatic and hematogenous		
Histology	Orphan Annie nuclei Psammoma bodies Papillary architecture	Capsular/vascular invasion Invasion influences prognosis	Amyloid May secrete calcitonin, prostaglandins, ACTH, serotonin, kallikrein, or bradykinin	Giant cells Spindle cells	
Other	Ps – Papillary cancer Popular (most common) Palpable lymph nodes Positive I ¹³¹ uptake Positive prognosis Post-operative I ¹³¹ scan to guide treatments	Fs – Follicular cancer Far away mets Female (3:1) NOT FNA (cannot be diagnosed by FNA) Favorable prognosis	Ms – Medullary cancer Multiple endocrine neoplasia (MEN IIa or IIb) aMyloid Median node dissection	More common in elderly 70% in women 20-30% have Hx of differentiated thyroid Ca (mostly papillary) or nodular goiter mass Rapidly enlarging neck Rule out lymphoma	Usually non-Hodgkin's lymphoma Rapidly enlarging thyroid mass Hx of Hashimoto's thyroiditis increases risk 60x 4:1 female predominance dysphagia, dyspnea, stridor, hoarseness, neck pain, facial edema, accompanied by "B" symptoms*
Prognosis	98% at 10 yr	92% at 10 yr	50% at 10 yr 20% at 10 yr if detected when clinically palpable	20-35% at 1 yr 13% at 10 yr	5 yr survival Stage IE 55%-80% Stage IIE 20%-50% Stage IIE/IV 15%-35%
Treatment	Small tumors: Near total thyroidectomy or lobectomy Diffuse/bilateral: Total thyroidectomy ± post-operative I ¹³¹ treatment	Small tumors: Near total thyroidectomy/lobectomy/isthmectomy Large/diffuse tumors: Total thyroidectomy	Total thyroidectomy Median lymph node dissection if lateral cervical nodes +ve Modified neck dissection Post-operative thyroxine Tracheostomy Screen asymptomatic relatives	Radiation and chemotherapy Small tumors: Total thyroidectomy ± external beam	Non-surgical Combined radiation Chemotherapy (CHOP**)

*B symptoms = fever, night sweats, chills, weight loss >10% in 6 mo

** CHOP = cyclophosphamide, adriamycin, vincristine, prednisone

Approach to Thyroid Nodule

- all patients with thyroid nodules require evaluation of serum TSH and ultrasound
- any nodule >5 mm with suspicious sonographic features (particularly microcalcifications) should undergo FNA
- any nodule >1 cm should undergo FNA
- when performing repeat FNA on initially non-diagnostic nodules, U/S-guided FNA should be employed
- nuclear scanning has minimal value in the investigation of the thyroid nodule

Table 20. Management of the Thyroid Nodule

Treatment	Indications
Radioiodine therapy	For the treatment of hyperthyroidism or as adjuvant treatment after surgery in the treatment of papillary or follicular carcinoma
Chemotherapy and/or radiotherapy	Anaplastic CA or thyroid lymphoma
Surgical excision	Mass that is "suspicious" on FNA Malignancy other than anaplastic CA or thyroid lymphoma Mass that on FNA is benign but increasing in size on serial imaging and/or >3-4 cm in size Hyperthyroidism not amenable to medical therapy

*U/S findings: cystic: risk of malignancy <1%; solid: risk of malignancy ~10%; solid with cystic components: risk of malignancy same as if solid



Indications for Post-Operative Radioactive Iodine Ablation – I¹³¹
Adjuvant therapy: decrease recurrent disease
RAI therapy: treat persistent cancer

Pediatric Otolaryngology

Acute Otitis Media

Definition

- all of: presence of middle ear effusion (MEE); presence of middle ear inflammation (MEI); acute onset of symptoms of MEE and MEI

Epidemiology

- most frequent diagnosis in sick children visiting clinicians' offices and most common reason for antibiotic administration
- peak incidence between 6-15 mo; ~85% of children have >1 episode by 3 yr old
- seasonal variability: peaks in winter

Etiology

- primary defect causing AOM: Eustachian tube dysfunction/obstruction → stasis/colonization by pathogens
- bacterial: *S. pneumoniae*, non-typable *H. influenzae*, *M. catarrhalis*, Group A *Streptococcus*, *S. aureus*
- viral: RSV, influenza, parainfluenza, adenovirus
- commonly due to bacterial/viral co-infection

Predisposing Factors

- Eustachian tube dysfunction/obstruction
 - swelling of tubal mucosa
 - upper respiratory tract infection (URTI)
 - allergic rhinitis
 - chronic rhinosinusitis
 - obstruction/infiltration of Eustachian tube ostium
 - tumor: nasopharyngeal carcinoma (adults)
 - adenoid hypertrophy (not due to obstruction but by maintaining a source of infection)
 - barotrauma (sudden changes in air pressure)
 - inadequate tensor palati function: cleft palate (even after repair)
 - abnormal Eustachian tube
 - Down syndrome (horizontal position of Eustachian tube), Crouzon syndrome, cleft palate, and Apert syndrome
- disruption of action of
 - cilia of Eustachian tube: Kartagener's syndrome
 - mucus secreting cells
 - capillary network that provides humoral factors, PMNs, phagocytic cells
- immunosuppression/deficiency due to chemotherapy, steroids, DM, hypogammaglobulinemia, cystic fibrosis

Risk Factors

- non-modifiable: young age, family history of OM, prematurity, orofacial abnormalities, immunodeficiencies, Down syndrome, race, and ethnicity
- modifiable: lack of breastfeeding, day care attendance, household crowding, exposure to cigarette smoke and air pollution, pacifier use

Pathogenesis

- obstruction of Eustachian tube → air absorbed in middle ear → negative pressure (an irritant to middle ear mucosa) → edema of mucosa with exudate/effusion → infection of exudate from nasopharyngeal secretions

Clinical Features

- triad of otalgia, fever (especially in younger children), and conductive hearing loss
- rarely tinnitus, vertigo, and/or facial nerve paralysis
- otorrhea if tympanic membrane perforated
- infants/toddlers
 - ear-tugging (this alone is not a good indicator of pathology)
 - hearing loss, balance disturbances (rare)
 - irritable, poor sleeping
 - vomiting and diarrhea
 - anorexia
- otoscopy of TM
 - hyperemia
 - bulging, pus may be seen behind TM
 - loss of landmarks: handle and long process of malleus not visible



Antibiotics for Acute Otitis Media in Children

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;1:CD000219
Study: Meta-analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials (RCTs) on children (1-15 mo) with acute otitis media comparing any antibiotic regime to placebo and expectant observation.

Data Sources: Cochrane Central Register of Controlled Trials (2012 issue 10), MEDLINE (1966 to October 2012), OLDMEDLINE (1958 to 1965), EMBASE (January 1990 to November 2012), Current Contents (1966 to November 2012), CINAHL (2008 to November 2012) and LILACS (2008 to November 2012) without language restrictions.

Main Outcomes: 1) Pain at 24 h, 2-3 d, and 4-7 d; 2) Abnormal tympanometry findings; 3) TM perforation; 4) Contralateral otitis; 5) AOM recurrences; 6) Serious complications from AOM; 7) Adverse effects from antibiotics.

Results: Treatment with antibiotics had no significant impact on pain at 24 h. However, pain at 2-3 d and 4-7 d was lower in the antibiotic groups with a NNT of 20. Antibiotics had no significant effect on tympanometry findings, number of AOM recurrences, or severity of complications. Antibiotic treatment led to a significant reduction in TM perforations (NNT 33) and halved contralateral AOM (NNT 11). Adverse events (vomiting, diarrhea, or rash) occurred more often in children taking antibiotics.

Conclusion: The role of antibiotics is largely restricted to pain control at 2-7 d, but most (82%) settle without antibiotics. This can also be achieved by analgesics. However, antibiotic treatment can reduce risk of TM perforation and contralateral AOM episodes. These benefits must be weighed against risks of adverse events from antibiotics.



Clinical Assessment of AOM in Pediatrics

JAMA 2010;304:2161-2169

In assessment of AOM in pediatrics, ear pain is the most useful symptom with a likelihood ratio (LR) between 3.0-7.3. Useful otoscopic signs include erythematous (LR 8.4, 95% CI 7-11), cloudy (LR 34, 95% CI 28-42), bulging (LR 51, 95% CI 36-73), and immobile tympanic membrane (LR 31, 95% CI 26-37) on pneumatic otoscopy.



Indications for Myringotomy and Tympanostomy Tubes in Recurrent AOM (RAOM) and OME

- Chronic bilateral OME and documented hearing difficulties >3 mo
- Unilateral or bilateral OME >3 mo and symptoms likely attributable to OME (e.g. balance problems, poor school performance, ear discomfort, etc)
- At-risk children (permanent hearing loss, speech/language delay, autism-spectrum disorder, syndromes/craniofacial disorders, blindness, cleft palate, developmental delay) with unilateral or bilateral OME with type B tympanogram or persistent effusion > 3 mo
- RAOM (>3 episodes in 6 mo or >4 in 12 mo) with unilateral or bilateral middle ear effusion

Clinical practice guidelines: Tympanostomy tubes in children. *Otolaryng Head Neck* 2013;149:S1-S35

Diagnosis

- history
 - acute onset of otalgia or ear tugging in a preverbal child, otorrhea, decreased hearing
 - unexplained irritability, fever, upper respiratory symptoms, poor sleeping, anorexia, N/V, and diarrhea
- physical
 - febrile
 - MEE on otoscopy: immobile tympanic membrane, acute otorrhea, loss of bony landmarks, opacification of TM, air-fluid level behind TM
 - MEI on otoscopy: bulging TM with marked discoloration (hemorrhagic, red, gray, or yellow)

Management

- observation for 48-72 h without antimicrobials may be appropriate since >80% of AOM in children resolve spontaneously
- criteria for watchful waiting approach
 - child is >6 mo old
 - child does not have immunodeficiency, chronic cardiac or pulmonary disease, anatomical abnormalities of the head or neck, a history of complicated otitis media (suppurative complications of chronic perforation) or Down syndrome
 - the illness is not severe: otalgia appears to be mild and fever is <102.2°F in the absence of antipyretics
 - parents are capable of recognizing signs of worsening illness and can readily access medical care if the child does not improve
- antimicrobials are indicated if child does not meet the criteria for watchful waiting or does not improve/worsens during observation
- maintain hydration
- symptomatic relief: acetaminophen, ibuprofen
- referral to otolaryngology for myringotomy and tympanostomy tubes may be warranted for recurrent infections

Treatment

- **antimicrobial agents for AOM**
 - 1st line treatment (no penicillin allergy)
 - ♦ amoxicillin: 75 mg/kg/d to 90 mg/kg/d divided 3x/d
 - 2nd line treatment
 - ♦ cefprozil: 30 mg/kg/d divided 2x/d
 - ♦ cefuroxime axetil: 30 mg/kg/d divided 2x/d
 - ♦ ceftriaxone: 50 mg/kg intramuscularly (or intravenously) x 1 dose
 - ♦ azithromycin: 10 mg/kg OD x 1 dose, then 5 mg/kg OD x 4 doses
 - ♦ clarithromycin: 15 mg/kg/d divided 2x/d
 - if initial therapy fails (i.e. no symptomatic improvement after 2-3 d)
 - ♦ amoxicillin-clavulanate: 90 mg/kg/d amoxicillin, 6.4 mg/kg/d clavulanate divided 2x/d for 10 d
 - if AOM-related symptoms do not resolve with amoxicillin/clavulanate, a course of ceftriaxone 50 mg/kg/d intramuscularly (or intravenously) 1/d x 3 doses could be considered

Complications

- extracranial
 - hearing loss and speech delay (secondary to persistent MEE), TM perforation, extension of suppurative process to adjacent structures (mastoiditis, petrositis, labyrinthitis), cholesteatoma, facial nerve palsy, middle ear atelectasis, ossicular necrosis, vestibular dysfunction, persistent effusion (often leading to hearing loss)
- intracranial
 - meningitis, epidural and brain abscess, subdural empyema, lateral and cavernous sinus thrombosis, carotid artery thrombosis, facial nerve paralysis
- other
 - mastoiditis, labyrinthitis, sigmoid sinus thrombophlebitis

Otitis Media with Effusion

Definition

- presence of fluid in the middle ear without signs or symptoms of ear infection

Epidemiology

- most common cause of pediatric hearing loss
- not exclusively a pediatric disease
- follows AOM frequently in children
- middle ear effusions have been shown to persist following an episode of AOM for 1 mo in 40% of children, 2 mo in 20%, and >3 mo in 10%

Risk Factors

- same as AOM

Clinical Features

- conductive hearing loss \pm tinnitus
 - confirm with audiogram and tympanogram (flat) (see Figure 16B, OT10 and Figure 17B, OT11)
- fullness – blocked ear
- \pm pain, low grade fever
- otoscopy of tympanic membrane:
 - discoloration – amber or dull gray with “glue” ear
 - meniscus fluid level behind TM
 - air bubbles
 - retraction pockets/TM atelectasis
 - most reliable finding with pneumotoscopy is immobility

Treatment

- expectant: 90% resolve by 3 mo
- document hearing loss with audiogram
- no clinical evidence that antihistamines, decongestants, or antibiotics clear disease faster
- surgery: myringotomy \pm ventilation tubes \pm adenoidectomy (if enlarged or on insertion of second set of tubes after first set falls out)
- ventilation tubes to equalize pressure and drain ear

Complications of Otitis Media with Effusion

- hearing loss, speech delay, learning problems in young children
- chronic mastoiditis
- ossicular erosion
- cholesteatoma especially when retraction pockets involve pars flaccida
- retraction of tympanic membrane, atelectasis, ossicular fixation

Adenoid Hypertrophy

- size peaks at age 5 and resolves by age 12
- increase in size with repeated URTI and allergies

Clinical Features

- nasal obstruction
 - adenoid facies (open mouth, high arched palate, narrow midface, malocclusion)
 - history of hypernasal voice and snoring
 - long-term mouth breather; minimal air escape through nose
- choanal obstruction
 - chronic rhinosinusitis/rhinitis
 - obstructive sleep apnea
- chronic inflammation
 - nasal discharge, post-nasal drip, and cough
 - cervical lymphadenopathy

Diagnosis

- enlarged adenoids on nasopharyngeal exam (usually with flexible nasopharyngoscope)
- enlarged adenoid shadow on lateral soft tissue x-ray

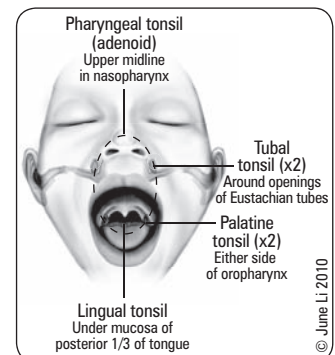
Complications

- Eustachian tube obstruction leading to serous otitis media
- interference with nasal breathing, necessitating mouth-breathing
- malocclusion
- sleep apnea/respiratory disturbance
- orofacial developmental abnormalities

Adenoidectomy

Indications for Adenoidectomy

- chronic upper airway obstruction with sleep disturbance/apnea \pm cor pulmonale
- chronic nasopharyngitis resistant to medical treatment
- chronic serous otitis media and chronic suppurative otitis media (with 2nd set of tubes)
- recurrent acute otitis media resistant to antibiotics
- suspicion of nasopharyngeal malignancy
- persistent rhinorrhea secondary to nasal obstruction

**Figure 20. Waldeyer's ring**

An interrupted circle of protective lymphoid tissue at the upper ends of the respiratory and alimentary tracts

Contraindications

- uncontrollable coagulopathy
- recent pharyngeal infection
- conditions that predispose to velopharyngeal insufficiency (cleft palate, impaired palatal function, or enlarged pharynx)

Complications

- bleeding, infection
- velopharyngeal insufficiency (hypernasal voice or nasal regurgitation)
- scarring of Eustachian tube orifice

Sleep-Disordered Breathing in Children

Definition

- spectrum of sleep-related breathing abnormalities ranging from snoring to OSA

Epidemiology

- peak incidence between 2-8 yr when tonsils and adenoids are the largest relative to the pharyngeal airway

Etiology

- due to a combination of anatomic and neuromuscular factors
 - adenotonsillar hypertrophy
 - craniofacial abnormalities
 - neuromuscular hypotonia (i.e. cerebral palsy, Down syndrome)
 - obesity

Clinical Features

- heavy snoring, mouth breathing, pauses or apnea, enuresis, excessive daytime sleepiness, behavioral/learning problems, diagnosis of ADHD, morning headache, failure to thrive

Investigations

- flexible nasopharyngoscopy for assessment of nasopharynx and adenoids
- polysomnography (apnea-hypopnea index >1/h considered abnormal)

Treatment

- surgical: bilateral tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy
- nonsurgical: CPAP, BiPAP, sleep hygiene

Acute Tonsillitis

- see [Pediatrics](#), P59

Peritonsillar Abscess (Quinsy)

Definition

- cellulitis of space behind tonsillar capsule extending onto soft palate leading to abscess

Etiology

- bacterial: Group A strep (GAS) (50% of cases), *S. pyogenes*, *S. aureus*, *H. influenzae*, and anaerobes

Epidemiology

- can develop from acute tonsillitis with infection spreading into plane of tonsillar bed
- unilateral
- most common in 15-30 yr age group

Clinical Features

- fever and dehydration
- sore throat, dysphagia, and odynophagia
- extensive peritonsillar swelling but tonsil may appear normal
- edema of soft palate
- uvular deviation
- trismus (due to irritation and reflex spasm of the medial pterygoid)
- dysphonia (edema → failure to elevate palate) 2° to CN X involvement
- unilateral referred otalgia
- cervical lymphadenitis

Complications

- aspiration pneumonia 2° to spontaneous rupture of abscess
- airway obstruction
- lateral dissection into parapharyngeal and/or carotid space
- bacteremia
- retropharyngeal abscess

Treatment

- secure airway
- surgical drainage (incision or needle aspiration) with C&S
- warm saline irrigation
- IV penicillin G x 10 d if cultures positive for GAS
- add PO/IV metronidazole or clindamycin x 10 d if culture positive for *Bacteroides*
- consider tonsillectomy after second episode

Other Sources of Parapharyngeal Space Infections

- pharyngitis
- acute suppurative parotitis (see *Salivary Glands*, OT30)
- AOM
- mastoiditis (Bezold's abscess)
- odontogenic infection

**Quinsy Triad**

- Trismus
- Uvular deviation
- Dysphonia ("hot potato voice")

Tonsillectomy

Absolute Indications

- most common indication: sleep-disordered breathing
- 2nd most common indication: recurrent throat infections
- tonsillar hypertrophy causing upper airway obstruction, obstructive sleep apnea, severe dysphagia, or cardiopulmonary complications such as cor pulmonale
- suspicion of malignancy (e.g. lymphoma, squamous cell carcinoma)
- orofacial/dental deformity
- hemorrhagic tonsillitis

Relative Indications (To Reduce Disease Burden)

- recurrent throat infection with a frequency of at least 7 episodes in the past year, at least 5 episodes per year for 2 yr, or at least 3 episodes per year for 3 yr, with documentation in the medical record for each episode of sore throat and 1 or more of the following: temperature $>38.3^{\circ}\text{C}$, cervical adenopathy, tonsillar exudate, or positive test for Group A β -hemolytic *streptococcus* (Paradise Criteria)
- chronic tonsillitis with halitosis (bad breath) or sore throat \pm tonsilloliths (clusters of calcified material that form in the crevices of the tonsils)
- complications of tonsillitis: quinsy/peritonsillar abscess, parapharyngeal abscess, retropharyngeal abscess
- failure to thrive

Relative Contraindications

- velopharyngeal insufficiency: overt or submucous/covert cleft of palate, impaired palatal function due to neurological or neuro-muscular abnormalities
- hematologic: coagulopathy, anemia
- infectious: active local infection without urgent obstructive symptoms

Complications

- hemorrhage: early – within 24 h; delayed – 7-10 d
- odynophagia and/or otalgia; dehydration 2° to odynophagia
- infection
- atlantoaxial subluxation (Grisel's syndrome): rare

Airway Problems in Children

DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS BY AGE GROUP**Neonates (Obligate Nose Breathers)**

- extralaryngeal
 - choanal atresia (e.g. CHARGE syndrome)
 - nasopharyngeal dermoid, glioma, encephalocele
 - glossoptosis: Pierre-Robin sequence, Down syndrome, lymphatic malformation, hemangioma
- laryngeal
 - laryngomalacia: most common cause of stridor in children
 - laryngocele

- vocal cord palsy (due to trauma or Arnold-Chiari malformation)
- glottic web
- subglottic stenosis
- laryngeal cleft
- tracheal
 - tracheoesophageal fistula
 - tracheomalacia
 - vascular rings

2-3 Months

- congenital
 - laryngomalacia
 - vascular: subglottic hemangioma (more common), innominate artery compression, double aortic arch
 - laryngeal papilloma
- acquired
 - subglottic stenosis: post-intubation
 - tracheal granulation: post-intubation
 - tracheomalacia: post-tracheotomy and TEF repair

Infants – Sudden Onset

- foreign body aspiration
- croup
- bacterial tracheitis
- caustic ingestion
- epiglottitis

Children and Adults

- infection
 - Ludwig's angina
 - peritonsillar/parapharyngeal abscess
 - retropharyngeal abscess
- neoplastic
 - squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) (adults): larynx, hypopharynx
 - retropharyngeal: lymphoma, neuroblastoma
 - nasopharyngeal: carcinoma, rhabdomyosarcoma
- allergic
 - angioneurotic edema
 - polyps (suspect cystic fibrosis in children)
- trauma
 - laryngeal fracture, facial fracture
 - burns and lacerations
 - post-intubation
 - caustic ingestion
- congenital
 - lingual thyroid/tonsil

Signs of Airway Obstruction

Stridor

- note quality, timing (inspiratory or expiratory)
- body position important
 - lying prone: subglottic hemangioma, double aortic arch
 - lying supine: laryngomalacia, glossoptosis
- site of stenosis
 - vocal cords or above: inspiratory stridor
 - subglottis and extrathoracic trachea: biphasic stridor
 - distal tracheobronchial tree: expiratory stridor

Respiratory Distress

- nasal flaring
- supraclavicular and intercostal indrawing
- sternal retractions
- use of accessory muscles of respiration
- tachypnea
- cyanosis
- altered LOC

Feeding Difficulty and Aspiration

- supraglottic lesion
- laryngomalacia
- vocal cord paralysis
- laryngeal cleft → aspiration pneumonia

Acute Laryngotracheobronchitis (Croup)

- inflammation of tissues in subglottic space ± tracheobronchial tree
- swelling of mucosal lining and associated with thick, viscous, mucopurulent exudate which compromises upper airway (subglottic space narrowest portion of upper airway)
- normal function of ciliated mucous membrane impaired

Etiology

- viral: parainfluenzae I (most common), II, III, influenza A and B, RSV

Clinical Features

- age: 4 mo-5 yr
- preceded by URTI symptoms
- generally occurs at night
- biphasic stridor and croupy cough (loud, sea-lion bark)
- appear less toxic than epiglottitis
- supraglottic area normal
- rule out foreign body and subglottic stenosis
- “steeples-sign” on AP x-ray of neck
- if recurrent croup, think subglottic stenosis

Treatment

- racemic epinephrine via MDI q1-2h, prn (only if in respiratory distress)
- systemic corticosteroids (e.g. dexamethasone, prednisone)
- adequate hydration
- close observation for 3-4 h
- intubation if severe
- hospitalize if poor response to steroids after 4 h and persistent stridor at rest
- consider alternate diagnosis if poor response to therapy (e.g. bacterial tracheitis)
- if recurrent episodes of croup-like symptoms, consider bronchoscopy several weeks after acute episode settles to rule out underlying subglottic stenosis

**Signs of Croup****The 3 Ss**

Stridor
Subglottic swelling
Seal bark cough

Acute Epiglottitis

- acute inflammation causing swelling of supraglottic structures of the larynx without involvement of vocal cords

Etiology

- *H. influenzae* type b
- relatively uncommon condition due to Hib vaccine

Clinical Features

- any age, most commonly 1-4 yr
- rapid onset
- toxic-looking, fever, anorexia, restlessness
- cyanotic/pale, inspiratory stridor, slow breathing, lungs clear with decreased air entry
- prefers sitting up (“tripod” posture), open mouth, drooling, tongue protruding, sore throat, dysphagia

Investigations and Management

- investigations and physical exam may lead to complete obstruction, thus preparations for intubation or tracheotomy must be made prior to any manipulation
- stat ENT/anesthesia consult(s)
- WBC (elevated), blood and pharyngeal cultures after intubation
- lateral neck radiograph (only done if patient stable)

Treatment

- secure airway
- IV access with hydration
- antibiotics: IV cefuroxime, cefotaxime, or ceftriaxone
- moist air
- extubate when leak around tube occurs and afebrile
- watch for meningitis



Acute epiglottitis is a medical emergency



When managing epiglottitis, it is important not to agitate the child, as this may precipitate complete obstruction



Thumb sign: cherry-shaped epiglottic swelling seen on lateral neck radiograph

Subglottic Stenosis

Congenital

- diameter of subglottis <4 mm in neonate (due to thickening of soft tissue of subglottic space or maldevelopment of cricoid cartilage)

Acquired

- following prolonged, repeated, or traumatic intubation
 - most commonly due to endotracheal intubation; nasal intubation is less traumatic and preferred in long-term intubation as it puts less pressure on the subglottis (tube sits at different orientation) and there is less movement
 - subglottic stenosis is related to duration of intubation and pressure of the endotracheal tube cuff
- can also be due to foreign body, infection (e.g. TB, diphtheria, syphilis), or chemical irritation

Clinical Features

- biphasic stridor
- respiratory distress
- recurrent/prolonged croup

Diagnosis

- rigid laryngoscopy and bronchoscopy

Treatment

- if soft stenosis: divide tissue with knife or laser, dilate with balloon \pm steroids
- if firm stenosis: laryngotracheoplasty

Laryngomalacia

- short aryepiglottic folds, omega-shaped epiglottis, pendulous mucosa
- caused by indrawing of supraglottis on inspiration leading to laryngopharyngeal reflux of acid

Clinical Features

- high-pitched inspiratory stridor at 1-2 wk
- constant or intermittent and more pronounced supine and following URTI
- usually mild but when severe can be associated with cyanosis or feeding difficulties, leading to failure to thrive

Treatment

- observation is usually sufficient as symptoms spontaneously subside by 12-18 mo in >90% of cases
- if severe, division of the aryepiglottic folds (supraglottoplasty) provides relief



Laryngomalacia is the most common cause of stridor in infants

Foreign Body

Ingested

- usually stuck at cricopharyngeus
- coins, toys, batteries (emergency)
- presents with drooling, dysphagia, stridor if very large

Aspirated

- usually stuck at right mainstem bronchus
- peanuts, carrot, apple core, popcorn, balloons
- presentation
 - stridor if lodged in trachea
 - unilateral "asthma" if bronchial, therefore often misdiagnosed as asthma
 - if totally occludes airway: cough, lobar pneumonia, atelectasis, mediastinal shift, pneumothorax, death

Diagnosis and Treatment

- any patient with suspected foreign body should be kept NPO immediately
- inspiration-expiration chest x-ray (if patient is stable)
- bronchoscopy or esophagoscopy with removal
- rapid onset, not necessarily febrile or elevated WBC



Foreign body inhalation is the most common cause of accidental death in children



Batteries **MUST** be ruled out as a foreign body (vs. coins) as they are lethal and can erode through the esophagus. Batteries have a halo sign around the rim on AP x-ray and a step deformity on lateral x-ray

Deep Neck Space Infection

- most commonly arise from an infection of the mandibular teeth, tonsils, parotid gland, deep cervical lymph nodes, middle ear, or the sinuses
- often a rapid onset and may progress to fatal complications

Etiology

- usually mixed aerobes and anaerobes that represent the flora of the oral cavity, upper respiratory tract, and certain parts of the ears and eyes

Clinical Features

- sore throat or pain and trismus
- dysphagia and odynophagia
- stridor and dyspnea
- late findings may include dysphonia and hoarseness
- swelling of the face and neck, erythema
- asymmetry of the oropharynx with purulent oral discharge
- lymphadenopathy

Diagnosis

- lateral cervical view plain radiograph
- CT
- MRI

Treatment

- secure the airway
- surgical drainage
- maximum doses of IV systemic antimicrobials regimens according to the site of infection



These investigations should be obtained carefully and the surgeon should consider accompanying the patient as the worst place to lose an airway is during imaging



Ludwig's angina is the prototypical infection of the submandibular and sublingual space

Common Medications

Table 21. Antibiotics

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Dose	Indications	Notes
amoxicillin (Amoxil®)	Adult: 500 mg PO tid Children: 75-90 mg/kg/d in 2 divided doses	<i>Streptococcus</i> , <i>Pneumococcus</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i> , <i>Proteus</i> coverage	May cause rash in patients with infectious mononucleosis
piperacillin with tazobactam (Zosyn®)	3 g PO q6h	Gram-positive and negative aerobes and anaerobes plus <i>Pseudomonas</i> coverage	May cause pseudomembranous colitis
ciprofloxacin (Cipro®, Ciloxan®)	500 mg PO bid	<i>Pseudomonas</i> , <i>Streptococci</i> , MRSA, and most Gram-negative; no anaerobic coverage	Do not give systemic quinolones to children
erythromycin (Erythrocin®, EryPed®, Staticin®, T-Stat®)	500 mg PO qid	Alternative to penicillin	Ototoxic

Table 22. Otic Drops

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Dose	Indications	Notes
ciprofloxacin (Ciprodex®)	4 gtt in affected ear bid	For otitis externa and complications of otitis media <i>Pseudomonas</i> , <i>Streptococci</i> , MRSA, and most Gram-negative; no anaerobic coverage	
neomycin, polymyxin B sulfate, and hydrocortisone (Cortisporin®)	5 gtt in affected ear tid	For otitis externa Used for inflammatory conditions which are currently infected or at risk of bacterial infections	May cause hearing loss if placed in inner ear
hydrocortisone and acetic acid (VoSol HC®)	5-10 gtt in affected ear tid	For otitis media	Bactericidal by lowering pH
tobramycin and dexamethasone (TobraDex®)	5-10 gtt in affected ear bid	For chronic suppurative otitis media	Risk of vestibular or cochlear toxicity

Table 23. Nasal Sprays

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Indications	Notes
Steroid		
flunisolide (Nasalide®)	Allergic rhinitis	Requires up to 4 wk of consistent use to have effect
budesonide (Rhinocort®)	Chronic sinusitis	Long-term use
beclomethasone (Beconase®)		Dries nasal mucosa; may cause minor bleeding
mometasone furoate, monohydrate (Nasonex®)		Patient should stop if epistaxis
fluticasone furoate (Veramyst®)		May sting
		Flonase® and Nasonex® not absorbed systemically
Antihistamine		
levocabastine (Livostin®)	Allergic rhinitis	Immediate effect
		If no effect by 3 d then discontinue
		Use during allergy season
Decongestant		
oxymetazoline (Visine L.R.®)	Acute sinusitis	Careful if patient has HTN
phenylephrine	Rhinitis	Short-term use (<5 d)
		If long-term use, can cause decongestant addiction (i.e. rhinitis medicamentosa)
Antibiotic/Decongestant		
gramicidin	Acute sinusitis	
Anticholinergic		
ipratropium bromide (Atrovent®)	Vasomotor rhinitis	Careful not to spray into eyes as can cause burning or precipitation of narrow angle glaucoma
		Increased rate of epistaxis when combined with topical nasal steroids
Lubricants		
saline, Polysporin®, Vaseline®	Dry nasal mucosa	Use prn
		Rhinaris® and Secaris® may cause stinging

Source: Dr. MM Carr

References

- Abdallah C. Acute epiglottitis: Trends, diagnosis and management. *Saudi J Anaesth* 2012;6(3):279-281.
- American Academy of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery Committee on Hearing and Equilibrium. Committee on hearing and equilibrium guidelines for the diagnosis and evaluation of therapy in Meniere's disease. *Otolaryngol Head and Neck Surg* 1995;113:181-185.
- Ang K, Harris J, Wheeler R, et al. Human papillomavirus and survival of patients with oropharyngeal cancer. *NEJM* 2010;363:24-35.
- Bailey BJ. *Head and neck surgery-otolaryngology*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1998.
- Becker W, Naumann HH, Pfaltz CR. *Ear, nose, and throat diseases*, 2nd ed. New York: Thieme Medical Publishers, 1994.
- Berman S. Current concepts: otitis media in children. *NEJM* 1995;332:1560-1565.
- Bonner JA, Harari PM, Giralt J, et al. Radiotherapy plus cetuximab for squamous-cell carcinoma of the head and neck. *NEJM* 2006;354:567-568.
- Casey JR, Pichichero ME. Changes in frequency and pathogens causing acute otitis in 1995-2003. *Pediatr Infect Dis J* 2004;23(9):824-828.
- Chang WH, Tseng HC, Chao TK, et al. Measurement of hearing aid outcome in the elderly: comparison between young and old elderly. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2008;138:730.
- Coker TR, Chan LS, Newberry SJ, et al. Diagnosis, microbial epidemiology, and antibiotic treatment of acute otitis media in children: a systematic review. *JAMA* 2010;304:2161-169.
- Cooper DS, Doherty GM, Haugen BR, et al. Revised American Thyroid Association management guidelines for patients with thyroid nodules and differentiated thyroid cancer. *Thyroid* 2009;19:1167-1214.
- Desrosiers M, Evans GA, Keith PK, et al. Canadian clinical practice guidelines for acute and chronic rhinosinusitis. *Allergy Asthma Clin Immunol* 2011;7:2.
- Dhillon RS, East CA. *Ear, nose, and throat, and head and neck surgery: an illustrated color text*, 2nd ed. New York: Churchill & Livingston, 1999.
- D'Souza G, Kreimer AR, Viscidi R, et al. Case-control study of human papillomavirus and oropharyngeal cancer. *NEJM* 2007;356:1944-1956.
- Fakhry C, Westra WH, Li S, et al. Improved survival of patients with human papillomavirus-positive head and neck squamous cell carcinoma in a prospective clinical trial. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2008;100:261-269.
- Finn DG, Buchalter IH, Sarti E, et al. First branchial cleft cysts: clinical update. *Laryngoscope* 1987;97:136-140.
- Forastiere A, Koch W, Trotti A, et al. Head and neck cancer. *NEJM* 2001;345:1890-1900.
- Frisina A, Piazza F, Pasanisi E, et al. Cleft palate and dysfunction of the Eustachian tube. *Acta Biomed Ateneo Parmense* 1998;69(5-6):129-132.
- Furman JM, Cass SP. Benign paroxysmal positional vertigo. *NEJM* 1999;341:1590-1596.
- Venekamp RP, Sanders S, Glasziou PP, et al. Antibiotics for acute otitis media in children. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2013;1:CD000219.
- Glasziou PP, Del Mar CB, Sanders SL, et al. Antibiotics for acute otitis media in children. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2004;1:CD000219.
- Grégoire V, Maignon P. Intensity modulated radiation therapy in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma: state of the art and future challenges. *Cancer Radiother* 2005;9:42-50.
- Hilton M, Pinder D. The Epley (canalith repositioning) maneuver for benign paroxysmal positional vertigo. *Cochrane ear, nose, and throat disorders group*. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2004;Issue 4.
- Jackson CG, von Doersten PG. The facial nerve: current trends in diagnosis, treatment, and rehabilitation. *Otolaryngol for Internist* 1999;83:179-195.
- Jafek BW, Murrow BW. *ENT secrets*, 2nd ed. Philadelphia: Hanley & Belfus, 2001.
- Kaselas CH, Tsikopoulos G, Chortis CH, et al. Thyroglossal duct cyst's inflammation. When do we operate? *Pediatr Surg Int* 2005;21(12):991.
- Kotecha S, Bhatia P, Rout PG. Diagnostic ultrasound in the head and neck region. *Dent Update* 2008;35(8):529.
- Layland MK (editor). *Washington manual otolaryngology survival guide*. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2003.
- Lee KJ (editor). *Essential otolaryngology: head and neck surgery*, 8th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2003.
- Li X, Gao L, Li H, et al. Human papillomavirus infection and laryngeal cancer risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Infect Dis* 2013;207:479-488.
- Lieberthal AS, Carroll AE, Chonmaitree T, et al. The diagnosis and treatment of acute otitis media. *Pediatrics* 2013;e964-e999.
- Low DE, Desrosiers M, McSherry J, et al. A practical guide for the diagnosis and treatment of acute sinusitis. *CMAJ* 1997;156:S1-14.
- Lucente FE, Har-El G (editors). *Essentials of otolaryngology*, 4th ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 1999.
- MacCallum PL, Parnes LS, Sharpe MD, et al. Comparison of open, percutaneous and translaryngeal tracheostomies. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2000;122:686-690.
- McIsaac WJ, Coyte PC, Croxford R, et al. Otolaryngologists' perceptions of the indications for tympanostomy tube insertion in children. *CMAJ* 2000;162:1285-1288.
- Pasha R. *Otolaryngology head and neck surgery clinical reference guide*, 3rd ed. San Diego: Plural Publishing, 2010.
- Patel ND, van Zante A, Eisele DW, et al. Oncocytoma: the vanishing parotid mass. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol* 2011;32(9):1703-1706.
- Pohar S, Gay H, Rosenbaum P, et al. Malignant parotid tumors: presentation, clinical/pathologic prognostic factors, and treatment outcomes. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2005;61(1):112-118.
- Prasad HK, Bhojwani KM, Shenoy V, et al. HIV manifestations in otolaryngology. *Am J Otolaryngol* 2006;27(3):179.
- Quesnel AM, Lindsay RW, Hadlock TA. When the bell tolls on Bell's palsy: finding occult malignancy in acute-onset facial paralysis. *AM J Otolaryngol* 2010;31(5):339-342.
- Rosenfield RM, Schwartz SR, Pynnonen MA, et al. Clinical practice guideline: tympanostomy tubes in children. *Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg* 2013;149:S1-S33.
- Strafford ND, Wilde A. Parotid cancer. *Surg Oncol* 1997;6:209-213.

Julia DiLabio, David Kodama, Josip Marcinko, and Allison Yantzi, chapter editors

Evan Lilly, Jillian Bardsley, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor

Dr. Nirit Bernhard, Dr. Katherine Layton, Dr. Sharon Naymark, Dr. Angela Punnett, and

Dr. Gabrielle Weiler, staff editor

Acronyms	3	Hyperthyroidism and Hypothyroidism	
Pediatric Quick Reference Values	3	Sexual Development	
Primary Care	3	Gastroenterology	33
Visit Overview		Vomiting	
Routine Immunization		Gastroesophageal Reflux	
Vaccine Administration		Tracheoesophageal Fistula	
Growth and Development		Pyloric Stenosis	
Nutrition		Duodenal Atresia	
Injury Prevention Counseling		Malrotation of the Intestine	
Common Complaints	8	Diarrhea	
Breath Holding Spells		Gastroenteritis	
Circumcision		Toddler's Diarrhea	
Crying/Fussing Child		Lactase Deficiency (Lactose Intolerance)	
Infantile Colic		Irritable Bowel Syndrome	
Dentition and Caries		Celiac Disease	
Enuresis		Milk Protein Allergy	
Encopresis		Inflammatory Bowel Disease	
Toilet Training		Cystic Fibrosis	
Failure to Thrive		Constipation	
Obesity		Abdominal Pain	
Poison Prevention		Chronic Abdominal Pain	
Rashes		Abdominal Mass	
Sleep Disturbances		Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding	
Toilet Training		Lower Gastrointestinal Bleeding	
Sudden Infant Death Syndrome		Genetics, Dysmorphisms, and Metabolism . . . 41	
Child Abuse and Neglect	14	Genetics	
Physical Abuse		Genetic Anomalies	
Sexual Abuse		Approach to the Dysmorphic Child	
Neglect		Genetic Syndromes	
Adolescent Medicine	15	Metabolic Diseases	
Cardiology	16	Hematology	47
Congenital Heart Disease		Approach to Anemia	
Acyanotic Congenital Heart Disease		Physiologic Anemia	
Cyanotic Congenital Heart Disease		Iron Deficiency Anemia	
Congestive Heart Failure		Vitamin K Deficiency	
Dysrhythmias		Anemia of Chronic Disease	
Heart Murmurs		Sickle Cell Disease	
Infective Endocarditis		Thalassemia	
Development	22	Hereditary Spherocytosis	
Approach to Global Developmental Delay		Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase Deficiency	
Intellectual Disability		Bleeding Disorders	
Language Delay		Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura	
Fetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorder		Hemophilia	
Learning Disabilities		von Willebrand's Disease	
Motor Delay		Oncology	51
Endocrinology	26	Lymphadenopathy Leukemia	
Antidiuretic Hormone		Lymphoma	
Diabetes Mellitus		Brain Tumors	
Growth		Wilms' Tumor (Nephroblastoma)	
Hypercalcemia/Hypocalcemia/Rickets		Neuroblastoma	
		Bone Tumors	

Infectious Diseases	54	Transient Synovitis of the Hip	
Fever		Septic Arthritis and Osteomyelitis	
Acute Otitis Media		Juvenile Idiopathic Arthritis	
Otitis Media with Effusion		Reactive Arthritis	
Gastroenteritis		Lyme Arthritis	
HIV Infection		Systemic Lupus Erythematosus	
Infectious Pediatric Exanthems		Vasculitides	
Infectious Mononucleosis			
Infectious Pharyngitis/Tonsillitis		Neurosurgery	NS34
Meningitis		Spinal Dysraphism	
Mumps		Hydrocephalus	
Pertussis		Dandy-Walker Malformation	
Pneumonia		Chiari Malformations	
Periorbital (Preseptal) and Orbital Cellulitis		Craniosynostosis	
Sexually Transmitted Disease		Brain Tumors	
Sinusitis			
Urinary Tract Infection		Orthopedics	OR39
Neonatology	65	Fractures in Children	
Gestational Age and Size		Stress Fractures	
Routine Neonatal Care		Epiphyseal Injury	
Neonatal Resuscitation		Slipped Capital Femoral Epiphysis	
Approach to the Depressed Newborn		Developmental Dysplasia of the Hip	
		Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease	
Common Conditions of Neonates	68	Osgood-Schlatter Disease	
Apnea		Congenital Talipes Equinovarus (Club Foot)	
Bleeding Disorders in Neonates		Scoliosis	
Bronchopulmonary Dysplasia			
Cyanosis		Otolaryngology	OT39
Diaphragmatic Hernia		Acute Otitis Media	
Hypoglycemia		Otitis Media with Effusion	
Intraventricular Hemorrhage		Adenoid Hypertrophy	
Jaundice		Adenoidectomy	
Necrotizing Enterocolitis		Sleep-Disordered Breathing	
Persistent Pulmonary Hypertension of the Newborn		Peritonsillar Abscess (Quinsy)	
Respiratory Distress in the Newborn		Tonsillectomy	
Retinopathy of Prematurity		Airway Problems	
Sepsis in the Neonate		Signs of Airway Obstruction	
Skin Conditions of the Neonate		Acute Laryngotracheobronchitis (Croup)	
		Acute Epiglottitis	
Fluids and Electrolytes	78	Subglottic Stenosis	
Approach to Infant/Child with Dehydration		Laryngomalacia	
		Foreign Body	
Nephrology	80	Deep Neck Space Infection	
Common Pediatric Renal Disease			
Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome		Plastic Surgery	PL35
Nephritic Syndrome		Craniofacial Anomalies	
Nephrotic Syndrome		Congenital Hand Anomalies	
Hypertension in Childhood			
Neurology	85	Psychiatry	PS30
Seizure Disorders		The Child Psychiatric Interview	
Febrile Seizures		Developmental Concepts	
Recurrent Headache		Mood Disorders	
Hypotonia		Anxiety Disorders	
Cerebral Palsy		Childhood Schizophrenia	
Neurocutaneous Syndromes		Pervasive Developmental Disorders	
		Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder	
Respirology	89	Oppositional Defiant Disorder	
Approach to Dyspnea		Conduct Disorder	
Upper Respiratory Tract Diseases			
Lower Respiratory Tract Diseases		Urology	U35
Pneumonia		Congenital Abnormalities	
Bronchiolitis		Nephroblastoma (Wilms' Tumor)	
Asthma		Cryptorchidism/Ectopic Testes	
Cystic Fibrosis		Disorders of Sexual Differentiation	
		Circumcision	
Rheumatology	93		
Evaluation of Limb Pain		Common Medications	97
Growing Pains		References	97

Pediatric Quick Reference Values

Table 1. Average Vitals at Various Ages

Age	Pulse (bpm)	Respiratory Rate (br/min)	sBP (mmHg)
Neonate	90-170	40-60	70-90
3-12 mo	80-165	30-55	80-100
1-2 yr	80-125	25-45	90-100
3-11 yr	70-115	18-30	100-110
12-15 yr	60-100	12-18	110-130

Primary Care

Visit Overview

- schedule:
 - newborn (within 1 wk post-discharge), 1, 2, 4, 6, 9, 12, 15, 18, 24 mo
 - annually between age 2 to 6; every other year between age 6 to 11
- content:
 - history and physical exam including growth, development, and nutrition
 - routine immunizations
 - counseling and anticipatory guidance

Routine Immunization

Table 2. U.S. Recommended Immunization Schedule 0-18 Years Old (2014)

Age	DTaP (IM)	Tdap (IM)	IPV (IM)	Hib (IM)	PCV-13 (IM)	Rot-1 (PO)	Men-C-C (IM)	MMR (SC)	Var (SC)	MMRV (SC)	Men-C-ACYW (IM)	HepB (IM)	HPV (IM)	HepA (IM)	Inf (IM)
Birth												✓			
1 mo												✓			
2 mo	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓									
4 mo	✓		✓	✓	✓	✓									
6 mo	✓				✓										
12 mo			✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓			✓		✓ ^	
15 mo	✓														
18 mo															
4-6 yr	✓		✓					✓	✓	✓					
11-12 yr		✓									✓		✓		
14-16 yr															
16-18 yr											✓				
Every autumn															✓ *

IM = intramuscular; PO = per oral; SC = subcutaneous, *starting at 6 mo of age, ^ 2 dose series (second dose given 6-18 mo after first)

Acronyms

AAP	American Academy of Pediatrics
ABG	arterial blood gas
ACE	angiotensin converting enzyme
ALL	acute lymphoblastic leukemia
ALPS	autoimmune lymphoproliferative syndrome
ALTE	acute life-threatening event
AML	acute myelogenous leukemia
ANA	antinuclear antibody
AOM	acute otitis media
ARB	angiotensin receptor blocker
ARBD	alcohol-related birth defects
ARND	alcohol-related neurodevelopmental disorder
ASD	atrial septal defect
ASOT	antistreptolysin-o titer
ATN	acute tubular necrosis
AVM	arteriovenous malformation
CAH	congenital adrenal hyperplasia
CF	cystic fibrosis
CHD	congenital heart defect
CML	chronic myelogenous leukemia
CMV	cytomegalovirus
CP	cerebral palsy
CPS	Child Protective Services
DDAVP	1-desamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin
DI	diabetes insipidus
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
DKA	diabetic ketoacidosis
DMARD	disease modifying antirheumatic drug
DS	Down syndrome
DSD	disorder of sexual differentiation
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus
Echo	echocardiogram
EMG	electromyography
FAS	fetal alcohol syndrome
FASD	fetal alcohol spectrum disorder
FISH	fluorescent <i>in situ</i> hybridization
FSH	follicle stimulating hormone
FTT	failure to thrive
G6PD	glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase
GA	gestational age
GBM	glomerular basement membrane
GBS	group B <i>Streptococcus</i>
GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease
GH	growth hormone
GN	glomerulonephritis
GSD	glycogen storage disease
HDNB	hemorrhagic disease of the newborn
Hib	<i>Haemophilus influenzae</i> type b
HIDA	hepatobiliary iminodiacetic acid
HIE	hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy
HPA	human platelet antigen
HRV	human rotavirus
HSP	Henoch-Schönlein purpura
HUS	hemolytic uremic syndrome
IBW	ideal body weight
ICH	intracranial hemorrhage
ITP	immune thrombocytopenic purpura
IUGR	intra-uterine growth restriction
IVH	intraventricular hemorrhage
IVig	intravenous immunoglobulin
JIA	juvenile idiopathic arthritis
LAH	left atrial hypertrophy
LGA	large for gestational age
LH	luteinizing hormone
LLSB	lower left sternal border
LOC	level of consciousness
LP	lumbar puncture
LRTI	lower respiratory tract infection
LVI	left ventricular hypertrophy
MAAS	meconium aspiration syndrome
MCAD	medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase
MCD	minimal change disease
MDI	metered dose inhaler
MSUD	maple syrup urine disease
NCS	nerve conduction study
NEC	necrotizing enterocolitis
NF	neurofibromatosis
NICU	neonatal intensive care unit
NS	normal saline
OCP	oral contraceptive pill
ORT	oral rehydration therapy
PAC	premature atrial contraction
PDA	patent ductus arteriosus
PKU	phenylketonuria
PPHN	persistent pulmonary hypertension of newborn
PPV	positive pressure ventilation
PVU	psoralen + UVA
RAD	right axis deviation
RAS	renal artery stenosis
RBBB	right bundle branch block
RDS	respiratory distress syndrome
RF	rheumatoid factor
RL	Ringer's lactate
RSV	respiratory syncytial virus
RUSB	right upper sternal border
RVH	right ventricular hypertrophy
RVOTO	right ventricular outflow tract obstruction
SEM	systolic ejection murmur
SGA	small for gestational age
SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
SVT	supraventricular tachycardia
TEF	tracheo-esophageal fistula
TM	tympenic membrane
TPN	total parenteral nutrition
TTN	transient tachypnea of the newborn
UMN	upper motor neuron
URTI	upper respiratory tract infection
UVA	ultraviolet A
VCUG	voiding cystourethrogram
VSD	ventricular septal defect
VUR	vesicoureteral reflux
WPW	Wolff-Parkinson-White

Table 2. U.S. Recommended Immunization Schedule 0-18 Years Old (2014) (continued)

Vaccine	Adverse Reaction	Contraindication
DTaP-IPV	Prolonged crying Hypotonic unresponsive state (rare) Seizure on day of vaccine (rare)	Evolving unstable neurologic disease Hyporesponsive/hypotonic following previous vaccine Anaphylactic reaction to neomycin or streptomycin
Rot-1	Cough Diarrhea, vomiting	History of intussusception Immunocompromised Abdominal disorder (e.g. Meckel's diverticulum) Received blood products (e.g. immunoglobulin) within 42 d
MMR	Measle-like rash (7-14 d) Lymphadenopathy, arthralgia, arthritis Parotitis (rare) Especially painful injection	Pregnancy Immunocompromised infants (except healthy HIV positive children) Anaphylactic reaction to gelatin
Var	Mild varicella-like papules or vesicles	Pregnant or planning to get pregnant within 3 mo Anaphylactic reaction to gelatin
HepB		Anaphylactic reaction to Baker's yeast
MMRV	Same as MMR and Var vaccines	Same as MMR and Var vaccines
dTAP		1st trimester pregnancy
Inf	Malaise, myalgia Febrile seizure Hypersensitivity reaction	Egg-allergic individuals – unless the risk of the disease outweighs the small risk of a systemic hypersensitivity reaction; referral to an allergy specialist is recommended, as vaccination might be possible after careful evaluation, skin testing, and graded challenge or desensitization
HPV-4	Pruritis	

dTAP = diphtheria, tetanus, acellular pertussis vaccine; DTaP-IPV = diphtheria, tetanus, acellular pertussis, inactivated polio vaccine (i.e. Pentacel®, Pentavax®); HepB = hepatitis B vaccine; Hib = *Haemophilus influenzae* type b conjugate vaccine; HPV-4 = human papillomavirus vaccine; Inf = influenza vaccine; MMR = measles, mumps, rubella vaccine; Men-C-C = meningococcal c conjugate vaccine; MMRV = measles, mumps, rubella, varicella vaccine; Pneu-C-13 = pneumococcal 13-valent conjugate vaccine; Rot-1 = rotavirus oral vaccine; Var = varicella vaccine

**Any Vaccine****Adverse Reactions**

Local: induration, tenderness, redness, swelling

Systemic: fever, rash, irritability

Allergic: urticaria, rhinitis, anaphylaxis

Contraindications

Moderate/severe illness \pm fever

Allergy to vaccine component

No need to delay vaccination for mild URTI

**Vaccination in Cases of Asplenia or Hyposplenia (such as Sickle Cell Disease)**

- Should receive all routine immunizations, including the yearly influenza vaccine
- No vaccines are contraindicated
- Susceptible to infection by encapsulated bacteria (*S. pneumoniae*, *H. influenzae*, *N. meningitidis*)
- For meningococcal, pneumococcal, and *Haemophilus influenzae* b vaccines: regular vaccination in infancy according to recommended immunization schedules PLUS
- Meningococcal vaccination: Meningococcal-C-Conjugate at age ≥ 2 yr + Quadravalent Men-P-ACYW at least 2 wk later
- Booster of Men-P-ACYW q2-5 yr
- Pneumococcal vaccination: Pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine (Pneu-P-23) at age ≥ 2 yr
- Single booster of Pneu-P-23 at age ≥ 3 yr
- *Haemophilus influenzae* type b vaccination: Consider single booster at age > 5 yr



According to the CDC, the weight of currently available scientific evidence does not support the hypothesis that MMR vaccine causes either autism or IBD. The landmark paper linking autism to the MMR vaccine (*Lancet* 1998;351:637-641) was retracted due to false claims in the article (*Lancet* 2010;375:445)

**Safety and Efficacy of an Attenuated Vaccine Against Severe Rotavirus Gastroenteritis**

NEJM 2006;354:11-22

Study: Randomized, double-blind, phase 3 trial.

Patients: 63,225 healthy infants from Latin America and Finland.

Intervention: Two oral doses of HRV vaccine vs. placebo at 2 and 4 mo of age.

Outcome: Episodes of gastroenteritis and severity.

Results: The vaccine is 85% efficacious against severe rotavirus gastroenteritis and hospitalizations associated with gastroenteritis and 100% efficacious against more severe gastroenteritis.

Vaccine Administration

- injection site
 - infants (<12 mo): anterolateral thigh
 - children: deltoid, subcutaneous tissue of the upper triceps area of the arm (IM injections should be given at 90° angle; SC injections should be given at 45° angle)
- timing of injection
 - varicella and MMR vaccines can be given at either the same visit or separated by > 4 wk (MMRV at 4-6 yr)
 - HPV vaccine given in 3 doses to all adolescents aged 11-12 yr old (HPV-2 or HPV-4 for females; only HPV-4 for males) (0, 2, 6 mo)

Growth and Development

Growth

- growth is not linear
 - most rapid growth during first two years and at puberty
 - tissues grow at different times
 - ♦ first two years = CNS; mid-childhood = lymphoid tissue; puberty = gonads
- measurement of growth
 - premature infants (<37 wk) use corrected GA until age 2 yr
 - body proportion = upper/lower segment ratio (use symphysis pubis as midpoint)
 - ♦ newborn = 1.7, adult male = 0.9, adult female = 1.0

Average Growth Parameters

Table 3. Parameter of Average Growth at Birth

	Normal	Growth	Comments
Birth Weight	3.25 kg (7 lbs)	Gain 20-30 g/d (term neonate) 2 x birth wt by 4-5 mo 3 x birth wt by 1 yr 4 x birth wt by 2 yr	Weight loss (up to 10% of birth weight) in first 7 d of life is normal Neonate should regain birth weight by ~10-14 d of age
Length/Height	50 cm (20 in)	25 cm in 1st yr 12 cm in 2nd yr 8 cm in 3rd yr then 4-7 cm/yr until puberty 1/2 adult height at 2 yr	Measure supine length until 2 yr of age, then measure standing height
Head Circumference	35 cm (14 in)	2 cm/mo for 1st 3 mo 1 cm/mo at 3-6 mo 0.5 cm/mo at 6-12 mo	Measure around occipital, parietal, and frontal prominences to obtain the greatest circumference

Reflexes

Table 4. Reflexes

Reflex	Maneuver to Elicit Reflex	Appropriate Reflex Response
Moro	Infant placed semi-upright, head supported by examiner's hand, sudden withdrawal of supported head with immediate return of support	Abduction and extension of the arms, opening of the hands, followed by flexion and adduction of arms
Galant	Infant held in ventral suspension and one side of back is stroked along paravertebral line	Pelvis will move in the direction of stimulated side
Grasp	Placement of examiner's finger in infant's palm	Flexion of infant's fingers
ATNR	Turn infant's head to one side	"Fencing" posture (extension of ipsilateral leg and arm and flexion of contralateral arm)
Placing	Dorsal surface of infant's foot placed touching edge of table	Flexion followed by extension of ipsilateral limb up onto table (resembles primitive walking)
Rooting	Tactile stimulus near mouth	Infant pursues stimulus with face
Parachute	Tilt infant to side while in sitting position	Ipsilateral arm extension, present by 6-8 mo

ATNR = asymmetric tonic neck reflex

Developmental Milestones

Table 5. Developmental Milestones

Age*	Gross Motor	Fine Motor	Speech and Language	Adaptive and Social Skills
1 mo	Turns head side to side when supine	Hands fisted, thumb in fist	Cries, startles to loud noises	Calms when comforted
2 mo	Briefly raises head when prone, holds head erect when upright	Pulls at clothes	Variety of sounds (e.g. coos, gurgles)	Smiles responsively, recognizes and calms down to familiar voice, follows movement with eyes
4 mo	Lifts head and chest when prone, holds head steady when supported sitting, rolls prone to supine	Briefly holds object when placed in hand, reaches for midline objects	Turns head towards sounds	Laughs responsively, follows moving toy or person with eyes, responds to people with excitement (e.g. leg movement)
6 mo	Tripod sit, pivots in prone position	Ulnar or raking grasp, transfers objects from hand to hand, brings objects to mouth	Babbles	Stranger anxiety, beginning of object permanence
9 mo	Sits well without support, crawls, pulls to stand, stands with support	Early pincer grasp with straight wrist	"Mama, dada" – appropriate, imitates 1 word, responds to "no" regardless of tone	Plays games (e.g. peek-a-boo), reaches to be picked up
12 mo	Gets into sitting position without help, stands without support, walks while holding on	Neat pincer grasp, releases ball with throw	2 words, follows 1-step command, uses facial expression, sounds, actions to make needs known	Responds to own name, separation anxiety begins

*Use corrected GA until 2 yr



Scoliosis Screening

Despite mass school screening implemented in parts of the USA and Canada in the 1970s-90s, the Canadian (1994) and American (2004) Task Forces on Preventive Health Care do NOT currently recommend routine screening using the Forward Bend Test (FBT). Cohort studies indicate that the Forward Bend Test has poor sensitivity for identifying pathological curves. Furthermore, there is no evidence to suggest that screening and increased bracing lead to better outcomes.



Abnormal Reflex Response

- Absence may suggest CNS abnormality
- Persistence after 4-6 mo may indicate abnormality (e.g. cerebral palsy)
- Asymmetry suggests focal motor lesions (e.g. brachial plexus injury)
- Upgoing plantar reflex (Babinski's sign) normal in infants up to age 2 yr



Pediatric Developmental Milestones

- 1 yr: single words
- 2 yr: 2-word sentences; understands 2 step commands
- 3 yr: 3-word combinations; rides tricycle
- 4 yr: counts 4 objects
- See the Nipissing District Developmental Screen for a checklist of important 18 mo milestones: <http://www.ndds.ca>

Table 5. Developmental Milestones (continued)

Age*	Gross Motor	Fine Motor	Speech and Language	Adaptive and Social Skills
15 mo	Walks without support, crawls up stairs/steps	Picks up and eats finger foods, scribbles, stacks 2 blocks	Says 4-5 words, points to needs/wants	Looks to see how others react (e.g. after falling)
18 mo	Runs, walks forward pulling toys or carrying objects	Tower of 3 cubes, scribbling, eats with spoon	10 words, follows simple commands	Shows affection towards others, points to show interest in something
24 mo	Climbs up 2 feet per step, runs, kicks ball, walks up and down steps	Tower of 6 cubes, undresses	2-3 word phrases, uses "I, me, you", 50% intelligible, understands 2-step commands	Parallel play, helps to dress
3 yr	Tricycle, climbs up 1 foot per step, down 2 feet per step, stands on one foot briefly	Copies a circle, turns pages one at a time, puts on shoes, dress/undress fully except buttons	Combines 3 or more words into sentence, recognizes colors, prepositions, plurals, counts to 10, 75% intelligible	Knows sex and age, shares some of the time, plays make-believe games
4 yr	Hops on 1 foot, down 1 foot per step	Copies a cross, uses scissors, buttons clothes	Speech 100% intelligible, uses past tense, understands 3-part directions	Cooperative play, fully toilet-trained by day, tries to comfort someone who is upset
5 yr	Skips, rides bicycle	Copies a triangle and square, prints name, ties shoelaces	Fluent speech, future tense, alphabet, retells sequence of a story	Cooperates with adult requests most of the time, separates easily from caregiver

*Use corrected GA until 2 yr

**Developmental Red Flags**

- Gross motor: not walking at 18 mo
- Fine motor: handedness at <10 mo
- Speech: <3 words at 18 mo
- Social: not smiling at 3 mo; not pointing at 15-18 mo

Nutrition

Dietary Requirements

Weight	<10 kg	10-20 kg	>20 kg
Needs	100 kcal/kg/d	1,000 cal + 50 kcal/kg/d for each kg >10	1,500 cal + 20 kcal/kg/d for each kg >20

Dietary Recommendations

- 0-6 mo: breast milk or formula
 - exclusive breast milk during first 6 mo recommended over formula unless contraindicated
 - breastfed infants require supplements: vitamin K (all babies get at birth, breastfed or not), vitamin D (400-800 IU/d), fluoride (after 6 mo if not sufficient in water), iron (6-12 mo, only if not receiving fortified cereals/meat/meat alternatives)
- >6 mo: solid food introduction – do not delay beyond 9 mo
 - 2-3 new foods per week with a few days in between each food to allow time for adverse reaction identification
 - suggested order of introduction
 - ♦ meat, meat alternatives, and iron-enriched cereal (rice cereal is least allergenic)
 - ♦ pureed vegetables
 - ♦ fruit
- 9-12 mo: finger foods and switch to homogenized (3%) milk
 - foods to avoid
 - ♦ honey until past 12 mo (risk of botulism)
 - ♦ added sugar, salt
 - ♦ excessive milk (i.e. no more than 16 oz/d after 1 yr)
 - ♦ juice (not nutritious, too much sugar)
 - ♦ anything that is a choking hazard (chunks, round foods like grapes)

Breastfeeding

- content of breast milk
 - colostrum (first few days): clear, rich in nutrients (i.e. high protein, low fat), immunoglobulin
 - mature milk: 70:30 whey:casein ratio, fat from dietary butterfat, carbohydrate from lactose
- advantages
 - easily digested, low renal solute load
 - immunologic
 - ♦ contains IgA, macrophages, active lymphocytes, lysozymes, lactoferrin (which inhibits *E. coli* growth in intestine)
 - ♦ lower pH promotes growth of lactobacillus in GI tract
 - parent-child bonding
 - economical, convenient

- contraindicated if mother
 - is receiving chemotherapy or radioactive compounds
 - has HIV/AIDS, active untreated TB, herpes in breast region
 - is using >0.5 g/kg/d of alcohol or illicit drugs
 - is taking medications known to cross to breast milk
 - OCPs are *not* a contraindication to breastfeeding (estrogen may decrease lactation, but is not dangerous to infant)
 - MotherRisk – valuable research and counseling on reproductive risk or safety of drugs and chemicals
- complications in infant
 - breastfeeding jaundice (first 1-2 wk): due to lack of maternal milk production and subsequent infant dehydration (see *Jaundice*, P72), likely a mechanical problem
 - breast milk jaundice (0.5% of newborns, persists up to 4-6 mo): rare, not fully understood, thought to be due to substances in breast milk that inhibit conjugation of bilirubin or increase enterohepatic circulation of bilirubin, likely a biochemical problem; check bilirubin to rule out conjugated hyperbilirubinemia
 - ♦ baby presents healthy and thriving, and jaundice resolves
 - poor weight gain: consider dehydration or FTT
 - oral candidiasis (thrush): check baby's mouth for white cheesy material that does not scrape off; treat baby with antifungal such as nystatin (Mycostatin®); can occur in breast or bottle-fed infants

Table 6. Common Formulas Compared to Breast Milk

Type of Nutrition	Indications	Content (as compared to breast milk)
Cow's Milk Based (Enfamil®, Similac®)	Prematurity Transition into breastfeeding Contraindication to breastfeeding	Lower whey:casein ratio Plant fats instead of dietary butterfat
Fortified Formula	Low birth weight Prematurity	Higher calories and vitamins A, C, D, K May only be used in hospital due to risk of fat-soluble vitamin toxicity
Soy Protein (Isomil®, Prosobee®)	Galactosemia Cow milk protein Intolerance/allergy Desire for vegetarian/vegan diet	Corn syrup solids or sucrose in place of lactose
Partially Hydrolyzed Proteins (Good Start®)	Delayed gastric emptying Risk of cow milk protein allergy	Protein is 100% whey with no casein
Protein Hydrolysate (Nutramigen®, Alimentum®, Pregestimil®, Portagen®)	Malabsorption Food allergy	Protein is 100% casein with no whey Corn syrup solids, sucrose, or tapioca starch instead of lactose Expensive
Amino Acid (Neocate®, PurAmino™)	Food allergy Short gut	Free amino acids (no protein) Corn syrup solids instead of lactose Very expensive
Metabolic	Inborn errors of metabolism	Various different compositions for children with galactosemia, propionic acidemia, etc.



Medications that Cross into Breast Milk

- Antimetabolites
- Bromocriptine
- Chloramphenicol
- High dose diazepam
- Ergots
- Gold
- Metronidazole
- Tetracycline
- Lithium
- Cyclophosphamide



Signs of Inadequate Intake

- <6 wet diapers/d after first wk
- <7 feeds/d
- Rule of thumb: ~1 stool/d of age for first wk
- Sleepy or lethargic, sleeping throughout the night <6 wk
- Weight loss >10% of birth weight
- Jaundice



Breastfeeding and the Use of Human Milk

Pediatrics 2012;129:e827

Study: Guidelines by the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP).

Patients: Healthy term infants.

Recommendations: The AAP recommends exclusive breastfeeding for about 6 mo to continue for at least the first year and beyond for as long as mutually desired by mother and child. At about 6 mo, complementary foods rich in iron and other micronutrients should be introduced. AAP recommends 8-12 feedings per 24 h with 400 IU of vitamin D drops daily with no other supplements (such as water or formula).



Dietary Exposures and Allergy Prevention in High-Risk Infants

Paediatr Child Health 2013;18(10):545-549

There is no evidence that restriction of highly allergenic foods is beneficial in the first year of life. Later introduction of peanut, fish, or egg does not prevent, and may increase the risk of developing food allergy. There is also no evidence that dietary restrictions during pregnancy or breastfeeding are protective to the child.

Injury Prevention Counseling

- injuries are the leading cause of death in children >1 yr of age
- main causes: motor vehicle accidents, burns, drowning, falls, choking, infanticide

Table 7. Injury Prevention Counseling

0-6 mo	6-12 mo	1-2 yr	2-5 yr
Do not leave alone on bed, on changing table, or in tub	Install stair barriers	Never leave unattended	Bicycle helmet
Keep crib rails up	Discourage use of walkers	Keep pot handles turned to back of stove	Never leave unsupervised at home, driveway, or pool
Check water temperature before bathing	Avoid play areas with sharp-edged tables and corners	Caution with whole grapes, nuts, raw carrots, hotdogs, etc. due to choking hazard	Teach bike safety, stranger safety, and street safety
Do not hold hot liquid and infant at the same time	Cover electrical outlets	No running while eating	Swimming lessons (>4 yr), sunscreen (from 6 mo), fences around pools
Check milk temperature before feeding	Unplug appliances when not in use	Appropriate car seats	Appropriate car seats (toddler seat)
Appropriate car seats are required before leaving hospital	Keep small objects, plastic bags, cleaning products, and medications out of reach		
	Supervise during feeding		
	Appropriate car seats		

Note: This list is not exhaustive. For more details, see Rourke Baby Record (http://www.rourkebabyrecord.ca/pdf/RBR20110nt_Eng.pdf)

Common Complaints

Breath Holding Spells

- epidemiology: 0.1-5% of healthy children 6 mo-4 yr of age, usually start during first year of life
- etiology: child is provoked (usually by anger, injury, or fear) → holds breath and becomes silent → spontaneously resolves or loses consciousness
- types
 - cyanotic (more common), usually associated with anger/frustration
 - pallid, usually associated with pain/surprise
- management
 - usually resolves spontaneously and rarely progresses to seizure
 - help child control response to frustration and avoid drawing attention to spell

Circumcision

- elective procedure
 - recent evidence shows health benefits outweigh risks and justify access to procedure
 - often for religious or culture reasons
- benefits: prevention of phimosis and slightly reduced incidence of UTI, STD, balanitis, cancer of the penis
- complications (<1%): local infection, bleeding, urethral injury
- contraindications: presence of genital abnormalities (e.g. hypospadias) or known bleeding disorder



Circumcision

Pediatrics 2012;130:e756-e785

Study: Guidelines by the AAP.

Recommendations: The AAP radically changed their position on male circumcision in 2012. The report from the AAP now states that the preventative health benefits outweigh the risks of the procedure and that the procedure is well-tolerated with adequate pain management and sterility. Stated benefits include the prevention of UTIs, penile cancer, and transmission of some STDs, including HIV. There is believed to be no effect on penile sexual function, sensitivity, or sexual satisfaction. Acute complications are rare and more common if the procedure is done by an untrained provider.

Crying/Fussing Child

- history
 - description of baseline feeding, sleeping, crying patterns
 - infectious symptoms: fever, tachypnea, rhinorrhea, ill contacts
 - feeding intolerance: gastroesophageal reflux with esophagitis, N/V, diarrhea, constipation
 - trauma
 - recent immunizations (vaccine reaction) or medications (drug reactions), including maternal drugs taken during pregnancy (neonatal withdrawal syndrome) and drugs that may be transferred via breast milk
 - inconsistent history, pattern of numerous emergency department visits, high-risk social situations all raise concern of maltreatment

Table 8. Physical Exam and Differential Diagnosis

Organ System	Possible Examination Findings	Possible Diagnosis
HEENT	Bulging fontanelle Blepharospasm, tearing Retinal hemorrhage Oropharyngeal infections	Meningitis, shaken baby syndrome, hydrocephalus Corneal abrasion, glaucoma Shaken baby syndrome Thrush, gingivostomatitis, herpangina, otitis media
Neurological	Irritability or lethargy	Meningitis, shaken baby syndrome
Cardiovascular	Poor perfusion Tachycardia	Sepsis, anomalous coronary artery, meningitis, myocarditis, CHF
Respiratory	Tachypnea Grunting	Pneumonia, CHF Respiratory disease, response to pain
Abdominal	Mass, empty RLQ	Intussusception
Genitourinary	Scrotal swelling Penile/clitoral swelling	Incarcerated hernia, testicular torsion Hair tourniquet
Rectal	Anal fissure Hemoccult positive stool	Constipation or diarrhea Intussusception, NEC, volvulus
Musculoskeletal	Point tenderness or decreased movement	Fracture, syphilis, osteomyelitis, toe/finger hair tourniquet

Infantile Colic

- definition: unexplained paroxysms of irritability and crying for >3 h/d, >3 d/wk for >3 wk in an otherwise healthy, well-fed baby (rule of 3s)
- epidemiology: 10% of infants; usual onset 10 d to 3 mo of age with peak at 6-8 wk
- etiology: lag in development of normal peristaltic movement in gastrointestinal tract; other theories suggest a lack of self-soothing mechanisms or extreme of normal
- management
 - parental relief, rest, and reassurance
 - hold baby, pacifier, car ride, music, vacuum, check diaper
 - medications (Ovol® drops, gripe water) have no proven benefit, some evidence for probiotics
 - if breastfeeding, elimination of cow's milk protein from mother's diet (effective in very small percentage of cases)
 - try casein hydrolysate formula (Nutramigen®)
 - time – all resolve, most in the first 2-3 mo of life

Dentition and Caries

Dentition

- primary dentition (20 teeth)
 - first tooth at 5-9 mo (lower incisor), then 1/mo
 - 6-8 central teeth by 1 yr
 - assessment by dentist 6 mo after eruption of first tooth and certainly by 1 yr of age (Grade B recommendation)
- secondary dentition (32 teeth)
 - first adult tooth is 1st molar at 6 yr, then lower incisors

Caries

- milk caries: decay of superior front teeth and back molars in first 4 yr of life
- cause: often due to prolonged feeding (e.g. put to bed with bottle, prolonged breastfeeding)
- prevention
 - no bottle at bedtime, clean teeth after last feed
 - minimize juice and sweetened pacifier
 - clean teeth with soft damp cloth or toothbrush and water
 - water fluoridation

Enuresis

Definition

- involuntary urinary incontinence by day and/or night in child >5 yr

General Approach

- should be evaluated if dysuria, change in color, odor, stream, secondary or diurnal, change in gait, stool incontinence

Primary Nocturnal Enuresis

- definition: involuntary loss of urine at night, bladder control has never been attained
- epidemiology: M>F; 10% of 6 yr olds, 3% of 12 yr olds, 1% of 18 yr olds
- etiology: developmental disorder or maturational lag in bladder control while asleep
- management
 - time and reassurance (~20% resolve spontaneously each yr)
 - behavior modification (limiting fluids, voiding prior to sleep), bladder retention exercises, scheduled toileting overnight has limited effectiveness
 - conditioning: "wet" alarm wakes child upon voiding (70% success rate)
 - medications (considered second line therapy, may be used for sleepovers/camp): DDAVP oral tablets (high relapse rate, costly), imipramine (Tofranil®) (rarely used, lethal if overdose, cholinergic side effects)

Secondary Enuresis

- definition: involuntary loss of urine at night, develops after child has sustained period of bladder control (>6 mo)
- etiology: inorganic regression due to stress or anxiety (e.g. birth of sibling, significant loss, family discord), focused on other activities, secondary to organic disease (UTI, DM, DI, neurogenic bladder, CP, seizures, pinworms)
- management: treat underlying cause



Treatment for primary nocturnal enuresis should not be considered until 7 yr of age due to high rate of spontaneous cure



Antidiuretic Hormone Regulation in Primary Nocturnal Enuresis

Arch Dis Child 1995;73(6):508-11

Treatment of primary nocturnal enuresis using DDAVP is based upon the hypothesis that ADH secretion is insufficient at night. The known efficacy of the treatment on the one hand, and persisting doubts about its theoretical basis on the other, formed the background of the present study. Ten children (mean age 10.5 yr) with primary nocturnal enuresis were compared with a corresponding control group of eight patients. Diurnal and nocturnal urine production, ADH secretion, and plasma osmolality were determined. No differences between the two groups were found for urine production, ADH levels during day and night, or plasma osmolality. However, in order to regulate plasma osmolality the enuretic children required a markedly greater output of ADH: 2.87 pg/ml/mmol/kg compared with 0.56 in the controls ($p < 0.01$). The results are consistent with the established fact that ADH secretion is a function of plasma osmolality, and they contradict the hypothesis that urine production is increased at night in enuretics because of lower ADH secretion.

Diurnal Enuresis

- definition: daytime wetting (60-80% also wet at night)
- etiology: micturition deferral (holding urine until last minute) due to psychosocial stressor (e.g. shy), structural anomalies (e.g. ectopic ureteral site, neurogenic bladder), UTI, constipation, CNS disorders, DM
- management: treat underlying cause, behavioral (scheduled toileting, double voiding, good bowel program), pharmacotherapy

Encopresis

- definition: fecal incontinence in a child >4 yr old, at least once per mo for 3 mo
- prevalence: 1-1.5% of school-aged children (rare in adolescence); M:F = 6:1 in school-aged children
- causes: chronic constipation (retentive encopresis), Hirschsprung disease, hypothyroidism, hypercalcemia, spinal cord lesions, anorectal malformations, bowel obstruction

Retentive Encopresis

- definition: child holds bowel movement, develops constipation, leading to fecal impaction and seepage of soft or liquid stool (overflow incontinence)
- etiology
 - physical: painful stooling often secondary to constipation
 - emotional: disturbed parent-child relationship, coercive toilet training, social stressors
- clinical presentation
 - history
 - ♦ crosses legs or stands on toes to resist urge to defecate
 - ♦ distressed by symptoms, soiling of clothes
 - ♦ toilet training coercive or lacking in motivation
 - ♦ may show oppositional behavior
 - ♦ abdominal pain
 - physical exam
 - ♦ digital rectal exam: large fecal mass in rectal vault
 - ♦ anal fissures (result from passage of hard stools)
 - ♦ palpable stool in LLQ
- management
 - complete clean-out of bowel: PEG 3350 given orally is most effective, enemas and suppositories may be second line therapies, but these are invasive and often less effective
 - maintenance of regular bowel movements (see *Pediatric Gastroenterology, Constipation Treatment, P38*)
 - assessment and guidance regarding psychosocial stressors
 - behavioral modification
- complications: recurrence, toxic megacolon (requires >3-12 mo to treat), bowel perforation

Toilet Training

- 90% of children attain bladder control before bowel control
- generally, females train earlier than males
- 25% by 2 yr (in North America), 98% by 3 yr have daytime bladder control
- signs of toilet readiness
 - ambulating independently, stable on potty, desire to be independent or to please caregivers (i.e. motivation), sufficient expressive and receptive language skills (2-step command level), can stay dry for several hours (large enough bladder), can recognize need to go, able to remove clothing

Failure to Thrive

- definition
 - weight <3rd percentile, falls across two major percentile curves, or <80% of expected weight for height and age
 - inadequate caloric intake most common factor in poor weight gain
 - may have other nutritional deficiencies (e.g. protein, iron, vitamin D)
 - factors affecting physical growth: genetics, intrauterine factors, internal time clock, nutrition, endocrine hormones, chronic infections/diseases, psychosocial factors
- clinical presentation
 - history
 - ♦ nutritional intake
 - ♦ current symptoms
 - ♦ past illnesses

**Energy Requirements**

- 0-10 kg: 100 kcal/kg/d
- 10-20 kg: 1,000 kcal + 50 kcal/kg/d for each kg >10
- >20 kg: 1,500 kcal + 20 kcal/kg/d for each kg >20

- ♦ family history: growth, puberty, parental height and weight including mid-parental height
- ♦ psychosocial history
- physical exam
 - ♦ growth parameters, plotted: height, weight, head circumference, arm span
 - ♦ vital signs
 - ♦ complete head to toe exam
 - ♦ dysmorphic features or evidence of chronic disease
 - ♦ upper to lower segment ratio
 - ♦ sexual maturity staging
 - ♦ signs of maltreatment or neglect
- investigations (as indicated by clinical presentation)
 - CBC, blood smear, electrolytes, T4, TSH
 - bone age x-ray
 - chromosomes/karyotype
 - chronic illness: chest (CXR, sweat Cl⁻), cardiac (CXR, ECG, Echo), GI (celiac screen, inflammatory markers, malabsorption), renal (urinalysis), liver (enzymes, albumin)

Table 9. Failure to Thrive Patterns

Growth Parameters			Suggestive Abnormality	
Decreased Wt	Normal Ht	Normal HC	Caloric insufficiency Decreased intake	Hypermetabolic state Increased losses
Decreased Wt	Decreased Ht	Normal HC	Structural dystrophies Endocrine disorder	Constitutional growth delay (BA < CA) Familial short stature (BA = CA)
Decreased Wt	Decreased Ht	Decreased HC	Intrauterine insult	Genetic abnormality

BA = bone age; CA = chronological age; HC = head circumference; Ht = height; Wt = weight

Non-Organic FTT (90%)

- most common cause of FTT
- results from complex factors in parent-child relationship
 - dietary intake, knowledge about feeding, improper mixing of formula, economic factors
 - feeding environment
 - parent-child interaction, attachment
 - child behaviors, hunger/satiety cues
 - social factors: stress, poverty
- management
 - most as outpatient using multidisciplinary approach: primary care physician, dietitian, psychologist, social work, Child Protection Services
 - medical: oromotor problems, iron-deficiency anemia, gastroesophageal reflux
 - nutritional: educate about age-appropriate foods, calorie boosting, mealtime schedules and environment to reach goal of 90-110% IBW, correct nutritional deficiencies, and promote catch-up growth/development
 - behavioral: positive reinforcement, mealtime environment

Organic FTT (10%)

- inadequate intake: vomiting, oromotor dysfunction, anorexia
- excessive consumption: CHD, CF, hyperthyroidism
- abnormal utilization: inborn errors of metabolism
- excessive output: IBD, celiac, malabsorption
- management: treat specific cause

Energy Requirements

- see *Nutrition, P6*

Obesity

- definition: BMI >95th percentile for age and height
- risk factors: genetic predisposition (e.g. both parents obese – 80% chance of obese child)
- etiology: organic causes are rare (<5%), but may include Prader-Willi, Carpenter, Turner, Cushing syndromes, hypothyroidism
- complications: association with HTN, dyslipidemia, slipped capital femoral epiphysis, type 2 DM, asthma, obstructive sleep apnea, gynecomastia, polycystic ovarian disease, early menarche, irregular menses, psychological trauma (e.g. bullying, decreased self-esteem, unhealthy coping mechanisms, depression)
- childhood obesity is not reliable predictor of adult obesity unless >180% of IBW; adolescent obesity good predictor of adult obesity
- management
 - encouragement and reassurance; engagement of entire family



Upper to Lower Segment Ratio

- **Increased** in achondroplasia, short limb syndromes, hypothyroid, storage diseases
- **Decreased** in Marfan's, Klinefelter's, Kallman's syndromes, and testosterone deficiency
- **Calculation:** upper segment/lower segment
 - Upper segment: top of head to pubic symphysis
 - Lower segment: pubic symphysis to floor



Mid-Parental Height

- Boys target height = (father ht + mother ht + 13) / 2
- Girls target height = (father ht + mother ht – 13) / 2
- Note:** height should be taken in cm



Clinical Signs of FTT

SMALL KID
 Subcutaneous fat loss
 Muscle atrophy
 Alopecia
 Lethargy
 Lagging behind normal
 Kwashiorkor
 Infection (recurrent)
 Dermatitis



Prevalence and Trends in Obesity and Severe Obesity Among Children in the United States, 1999-2012.

JAMA Pediatr 2014;168(6):561-566

Objective: To examine the prevalence of obesity and severe obesity over time for 14 yr of the continuous National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1999-2012, and to examine differences in the trends by age, race/ethnicity, and sex.

Participants: Representative sample (N = 26,690) of children in the United States, ages 2-19 yr, in repeated cross-sections of the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1999-2012.

Main Outcomes: Prevalence of overweight (body mass index [BMI] ≥ 85th percentile), obesity (BMI ≥ 95th percentile for age and sex), class 2 obesity (BMI ≥ 120% of the 95th percentile or BMI ≥ 35), and class 3 obesity (BMI ≥ 140% of the 95th percentile or BMI ≥ 40).

Results: From 2011-2012, 17.3% of children in the United States aged 2-19 yr were obese. Additionally, 5.9% of children met criteria for class 2 obesity and 2.1% met criteria for class 3 obesity. Although these rates were not significantly different from 2009-2010, all classes of obesity have increased over the last 14 yr.

Conclusions: Nationally representative data do not show any significant changes in obesity prevalence in the most recently available years, although the prevalence of obesity may be stabilizing.

- diet: qualitative changes (do not encourage weight loss, but allow for linear growth to catch up with weight), special diets used by adults and very low calorie diets are not encouraged
- behavior modification: increase activity, change eating habits/meal patterns
- education: multidisciplinary approach, dietitian, counseling
- surgery and pharmacotherapy are not frequently used in children
- increase activity, reduce screen time

Poison Prevention

- keep all types of medicines, vitamins, and chemicals locked up in a secure container
- potentially dangerous: medications, illicit drugs, drain cleaners, furniture polish, insecticides, cosmetics, nail polish remover, automotive products
- do not store any chemicals in juice, soft drink, or water bottles
- keep alcoholic beverages out of reach: 3 oz hard liquor can kill a 2 yr old
- always read labels before administering medicine to ensure correct medication drug and dose and/or speak with a pharmacist or healthcare provider

Rashes

Table 10. Common Pediatric Rashes

Type of Rash	Differential	Appearance	Management
Diaper Dermatitis			
	Irritant contact dermatitis	Shiny, red macules/patches, no skin fold involvement	Eliminate direct skin contact with urine and feces, allow periods of rest without a diaper, frequent diaper changes, topical barriers (petrolatum, zinc oxide or paste), short-term low-potency topical corticosteroids (severe cases)
	Seborrheic dermatitis	Yellow, greasy macules/plaques on erythema, scales	Short-term, low-potency topical corticosteroids
	Candidal dermatitis	Erythematous macerated papules/plaques, satellite lesions, involvement of skin folds	Antifungal agents
Other Dermatitis			
	Atopic dermatitis	Erythematous, papules/plaques, oozing, excoriation, lichenification, classic areas of involvement	Eliminate exacerbating factors, maintain skin hydration, corticosteroids, topical calcineurin inhibitor, daily baths
	Nummular dermatitis	Annular erythematous plaques, oozing, crusting	Avoid irritant if identified, potent topical steroid in emollient base, short-term systemic steroids ± antibiotics (severe)
	Allergic contact dermatitis	Red papules/plaques/vesicles/bullae, only in area of allergen	Mild: soothing lotion (e.g. calamine lotion) Moderate: low-to-intermediate potency topical corticosteroids Severe: systemic corticosteroids and antihistamine
	Irritant contact dermatitis	Morphology depends on irritant	Avoid skin contact
	Dyshidrotic dermatitis	Papulovesicular, cracking/fissuring, hands and feet ("tapioca pudding")	Mild/moderate: medium/potent topical corticosteroids Severe: systemic corticosteroids, local PUVA or UVA treatments
Infectious			
	Scabies	Polymorphic (red excoriated papules/nodules, burrows), in web spaces/folds, very pruritic	Permethrin (Nix) 5% cream for patient and family (2 applications, 1 wk apart)
	Impetigo	Honey-colored crusts or superficial bullae	Oral antibiotics (e.g. cephalixin/erythromycin) Topical if mild: fucidic acid or mupirocin cream
	Tinea corporis	Round erythematous plaques, central clearing and scaly border	Topical anti-fungal for skin, systemic anti-fungals for nails/head

Pediatric Exanthems (see *Infectious Pediatric Exanthems*, P57)

Drug Reactions (see *Dermatology*, D21)

Acne (see *Dermatology*, D11)



Sleep Disturbances

Types of Sleep Disturbances

- insufficient sleep quantity
 - difficulty falling asleep (e.g. limit setting sleep disorder)
 - ♦ preschool and older children
 - ♦ bedtime resistance
 - ♦ due to caregiver's inability to set consistent bedtime rules and routines
 - ♦ often exacerbated by child's oppositional behaviors
- poor sleep quality
 - frequent arousals (e.g. sleep-onset association disorder)
 - ♦ infants and toddlers
 - ♦ child learns to fall asleep only under certain conditions or associations (e.g. with parent, held, rocked or fed, with light on, in front of television), and loses ability to self-soothe
 - ♦ during the normal brief arousal periods of sleep (q90-120 min), child cannot fall back asleep because same conditions are not present
 - obstructive sleep apnea
 - ♦ epidemiology: 1-5% of preschool aged children, more common in African American children
 - ♦ definition: partial or intermittent complete airway obstruction during sleep causing disrupted ventilation and sleep pattern
 - ♦ features: snoring/gasping/noisy breathing during sleep and irritable/tired/hyperactive during the day
 - ♦ sequelae: cardiovascular (HTN/LV remodeling due to sympathetic activation), growth, cognitive, and behavioral deficits
 - ♦ risk factors: adenotonsillar hypertrophy, obesity
 - ♦ management: watchful waiting, weight reduction, airway pressure devices, or surgery depending on the cause
 - ♦ adenotonsillectomy does not improve executive function or attention but reduces symptoms and improves behavior, quality of life, and polysomnographic findings
- parasomnias
 - episodic nocturnal behaviors (e.g. sleepwalking, sleep terrors, nightmares)
 - often involves cognitive disorientation and autonomic/skeletal muscle disturbance

Management of Sleep Disturbances

- set strict bedtimes and "wind-down" routines
- do not send child to bed hungry
- positive reinforcement for: limit setting sleep disorder
- always sleep in own bed, in a dark, quiet, and comfortable room
- do not use bedroom for timeouts
- systematic ignoring and gradual extinction for: sleep-onset association disorder

Nightmares

- epidemiology: common in boys, 4-7 yr
- associated with REM sleep (anytime during night)
- features: upon awakening, child is alert and clearly recalls frightening dream ± associated with daytime stress/anxiety
- management: reassurance

Night Terrors

- epidemiology: 15% of children have occasional episodes
- abrupt sitting up, eyes open, screaming
- clinical features: occurs in early hours of sleep, stage 4 of sleep; signs of panic and autonomic arousal, no memory of event, inconsolable, stress/anxiety can aggravate them
- course: remits spontaneously at puberty
- management: reassurance for parents, ensure child is safe (e.g. if sleepwalks)



Daily Sleep Requirement

- <6 mo 16 h
- 6 mo 14.5 h
- 12 mo 13.5 h
- 2 yr 13 h
- 4 yr 11.5 h
- 6 yr 9.5 h
- 12 yr 8.5 h
- 18 yr 8 h

Nap Patterns

- 2/d at 1 yr
- 1/d at 2 yr: 2-3 h
- 0.5/d at 5 yr: 1.7 h

Sudden Infant Death Syndrome



Definition

- sudden and unexpected death of an infant <12 mo of age in which the cause of death cannot be found by history, examination, or a thorough postmortem and death scene investigation

Epidemiology

- 0.5/1,000 (leading cause of death between 1-12 mo of age); M:F = 3:2
- more common in children placed in prone position
- in full term infants, peak incidence is 2-4 mo, 95% of cases occur by 6 mo
- increase in deaths during peak RSV season
- most deaths occur between midnight and 8 AM

Risk Factors

- prematurity, smoking in household, socially disadvantaged, higher incidence in Aboriginals and African Americans
- risk of SIDS is increased 3-5x in siblings of infants who have died of SIDS
- bedsharing: sleeping on a sofa, sleeping with an infant after consumption of alcohol/street drugs or extreme fatigue, infant sleeping with someone other than primary caregiver

Prevention

- “Back to Sleep, Front to Play” (place infant on back when sleeping)
- allow supervised play time daily in prone position (“tummy time”)
- alarms, monitors not recommended – increase anxiety, do not prevent life-threatening events
- avoid overheating and overdressing
- appropriate infant bedding (e.g. firm mattress; avoid loose bedding, pillows, stuffed animals, and crib bumper pads)
- no smoking
- pacifiers appear to have a protective effect; do not reinsert if it falls out during sleep

**Apparent Life-Threatening Events**

A group of conditions often marked by an episode of apnea, cyanosis, change in tone, or change in mental status occurring in a child, where an observer fears the child may be dying. There is no clear connection between most ALTEs and SIDS. Evaluating for a cause of the ALTE (e.g. infection, cardiac, neurologic) is guided by history, physical exam, and period of observation

Child Abuse and Neglect

**Definition**

- an act of commission (physical, sexual, or psychological abuse) or omission (neglect) by a caregiver that harms a child

Legal Duty to Report

- upon reasonable grounds to suspect abuse and/or neglect, physicians are required by legislation to contact the Child Protective Services (CPS) to personally disclose all information relevant to the child safety concern
- duty to report overrides patient confidentiality; physician is protected against liability

Ongoing Duty to Report

- if there are additional reasonable grounds to suspect abuse and/or neglect, a further report to the CPS must be made

Risk Factors

- environmental factors: social isolation, poverty, domestic violence
- caregiver factors: personal history of abuse, psychiatric illness, substance abuse, single parent family, poor social and vocational skills, below average intelligence
- child factors: difficult temperament, disability, special needs (e.g. developmental delay), premature

Physical Abuse

History

- history that is not compatible with physical findings, or history not reproducible
- delay in seeking medical attention that is unexplained by other factors

Physical Exam

- physical findings not explained by underlying medical condition
- growth parameters (weight, height, head circumference)
- recurrent or multiple injuries not explained by accidental injury or child's development level
- patterned skin injuries: belt buckle, hand prints, burns that do not match provided history
- injury location: bruises on areas with abundant soft-tissue cushioning, such as abdomen, buttocks, genitalia, fleshy part of cheek; bruises on ears; posterior rib/metaphyseal/scapular/vertebral/sternal fractures (more suspicious for non-accidental injuries); immersion burns (e.g. hot water)
- altered mental status: head injury, poisoning
- head trauma is the leading cause of death in child maltreatment (e.g. acceleration-deceleration forces [shaking], direct force application [blow or impact])

Investigations

- document all injuries on a body diagram: type, location, size, shape, color, pattern
 - photography of skin injuries is ideal (police or hospital photography preferred; do not use physician's personal camera)
- blood tests to rule out medical causes (e.g. thrombocytopenia or coagulopathy)
- screen for abdominal trauma (transaminases and amylase): if increased, abdo CT recommended
- skeletal survey in children <2 yr
 - bone scan can be beneficial for assessing rib fractures (not helpful for skull or metaphyseal region due to active bone growth) – consider bone scan if equivocal findings on initial skeletal survey
 - dilated eye examination by pediatric ophthalmologist to rule out retinal hemorrhage
 - be aware of “red herrings” (e.g. Mongolian blue spots vs. bruises)
 - neuroimaging: CT and/or MRI



“If no bruising, no bruising”

**Presentation of Neglect**

- FTT, developmental delay
- Inadequate or dirty clothing, poor hygiene
- Child exhibits poor attachment to parents, no stranger anxiety

Sexual Abuse

Epidemiology

- peak ages at 2-6 yr and 12-16 yr
- most perpetrators are male and known to child
 - in decreasing order: family member, non-relative known to victim, stranger

History

- diagnosis usually depends on child disclosing to someone or forensic interview done by a trained individual
- psychosocial: specific or generalized fears, depression, nightmares, social withdrawal, lack of trust, low self-esteem, school failure, sexually aggressive behavior, advanced sexual knowledge, sexual preoccupation or play

Physical Exam

- recurrent UTIs, pregnancy, STDs, vaginitis, vaginal bleeding, pain, genital injury, enuresis

Investigations

- depend on presentation, age, sex, and pubertal development of child
 - sexual assault examination kit within 24 h if prepubertal, within 72 h if pubertal
 - rule out STD, UTI, pregnancy (consider STD prophylaxis or emergency contraception)
 - rule out other injuries (vaginal/anal/oral penetration, fractures, head trauma)

Neglect

History

- from child and each caregiver separately (if possible)

Physical Exam

- head to toe (do not force), growth parameters, nutrition status
- dental care
- emotional state

Investigations

- blood tests to rule out medical conditions (e.g. thrombocytopenia or coagulopathy)

Management of Physical Abuse, Child Abuse, and Neglect

- report all suspicions to CPS; request emergency visit if imminent risk to child or any siblings in the home
- acute medical care: hospitalize for medical evaluation or treatment of injuries if indicated
- arrange consultation to social work and appropriate follow-up
- may need to discharge child directly to CPS or to responsible guardian under CPS supervision

Adolescent Medicine

Adolescent History (HEEADSSS)

- tailor your history according to the clinical context

Home: Who do you live with? What kind of place do you live in?

Education/Employment: What grade are you in? What are your favorite subjects? What was your average on your last report card?

Eating: Tell me about your meals/snacks in a typical day. Have you ever gone on a diet? (for *Eating Disorders* – see [Psychiatry, PS26](#))

Activities: What do you do after school? On the weekends? How much time do you spend on the computer/watching TV every day? Do you use social media (i.e. Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, etc.)?

Drugs: Which seems to be more popular at your school, alcohol or drugs? How often do you drink/smoke marijuana/take other drugs? Do you smoke cigarettes? When you drink, do you usually get drunk? Have you ever passed out or not been able to remember what happened while you were drinking? Has anything bad ever happened to you while you were drunk or stoned? (for *Substance Abuse* – see [Psychiatry, PS18](#))

Sexuality: Are you romantically interested in anyone? When you think about having sex with someone, do you think about girls, boys, or both? Have you ever had sex with anyone? Whether the answer is yes or no, the next question is: What activities would you include in the term 'having sex'? What do you do to prevent getting a STD/getting pregnant/getting someone pregnant? Has anyone ever given you money, drugs, or other stuff in exchange for sex? (for *Sexually Transmitted Diseases* – see [Gynecology, GY25](#))



Adolescent Psychosocial Assessment

HEEADSSS

Home
Education/Employment
Eating
Activities
Drugs
Sexuality
Suicide and depression
Safety/Violence



Rates of drug use in high school students who have used in the past year: alcohol (58.2%), cannabis (25.6%), tobacco (11.7%)



Suicidality/Depression: On a scale of 1 to 10, where 1 is so sad that you might kill yourself and 10 is the happiest you could be, where are you most days? Is there a difference between school days and the weekend? Have you ever thought seriously about suicide? Did you make a plan? (for *Depression/Suicide* – see [Psychiatry](#), PS7, PS2)



Safety/Violence: Do you ever get into a car with a driver who has been drinking? Do you always wear a seatbelt/bicycle helmet? Are you being bullied at school? Has anyone ever touched you in an unwanted way?

For *Normal and Abnormal Pubertal Development*, P31



Prevalence of depression: 1-2% in pre-pubertal children and 6-8% in adolescents



Date rape comprises 80% of sexual assault in teenagers

Cardiology

Congenital Heart Disease

PRENATAL CIRCULATION

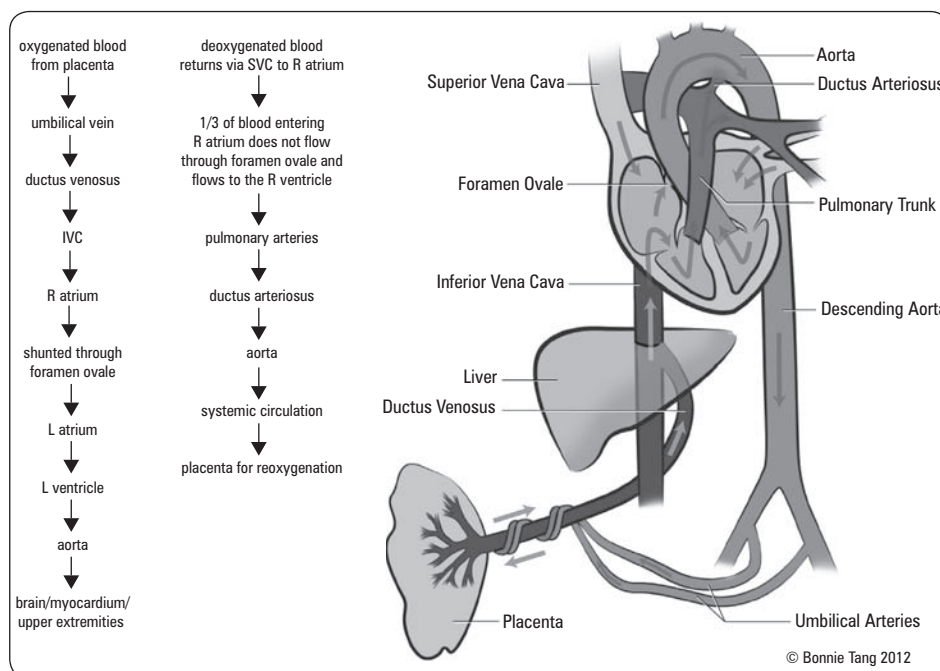


Figure 1. Prenatal circulation

Embryologic Development

- most critical period of fetal heart development is between 3-8 wk gestation
- single heart tube grows rapidly, forcing it to bend back upon itself and assume the shape of a four chambered heart; insults at this time are most likely to lead to CHD

Before Birth

- fetal lungs are bypassed by flow through fetal shunts
 - shunting deoxygenated blood
 - ♦ ductus arteriosus: connection between pulmonary artery and aorta
 - shunting oxygenated blood
 - ♦ foramen ovale: connection between right and left atria
 - ♦ ductus venosus: connection between umbilical vein and inferior vena cava

At Birth

- with first breath, lungs open up → pulmonary resistance decreases → pulmonary blood flow increases
- separation of low resistance placenta → systemic circulation becomes a high resistance system → ductus venosus closure
- increased pulmonary flow → increased left atrial pressures → foramen ovale closure
- increased oxygen concentration in blood after first breath → decreased prostaglandins → ductus arteriosus closure
- closure of fetal shunts and changes in vascular resistance → infant circulation assumes normal adult flow



Fetal circulation is designed so that oxygenated blood is preferentially delivered to the brain and myocardium

Epidemiology

- 8/1,000 live births have CHD, which may present as a heart murmur, heart failure, or cyanosis; VSD is the most common lesion

Investigations

- Echo, ECG, CXR
- pre and postductal oxygen saturations, 4 limb BPs, hyperoxia test

CYANOTIC VS. ACYANOTIC CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

- cyanosis: blue mucous membranes, nail beds, and skin secondary to an absolute concentration of deoxygenated hemoglobin of at least 30 g/dL
- acyanotic heart disease (i.e. L to R shunt, obstruction occurring beyond lungs): blood passes through pulmonary circulation → oxygenation takes place → low levels of deoxygenated blood in systemic circulation → no cyanosis
- cyanotic heart disease (i.e. R to L shunt): blood bypasses the lungs → no oxygenation occurs → high levels of deoxygenated hemoglobin enters the systemic circulation → cyanosis



Characteristic CXR Findings in CHD

- Boot-shaped heart: tetralogy of Fallot, tricuspid atresia
- Egg-shaped heart: transposition of great arteries
- "Snowman" heart: total anomalous pulmonary venous return

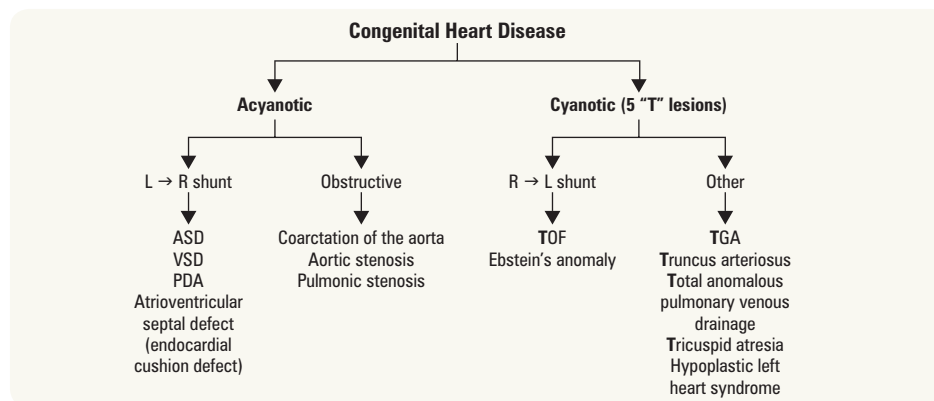


Figure 2. Common congenital heart diseases

Acyanotic Congenital Heart Disease

1. LEFT-TO-RIGHT SHUNT LESIONS

- extra blood is displaced through a communication from the left to the right side of the heart → increased pulmonary blood flow → increased pulmonary pressures
- shunt volume is dependent upon three factors: (1) size of defect, (2) pressure gradient between chambers or vessels, and (3) peripheral outflow resistance
- untreated shunts can result in pulmonary vascular disease, left ventricular dilatation and dysfunction, right ventricular HTN and RVH, and ultimately R to L shunts

Atrial Septal Defect

- 3 types: *ostium primum* (common in DS), *ostium secundum* (most common type, 50-70%), *sinus venosus* (defect located at entry of superior vena cava into right atrium)
- epidemiology: 6-8% of congenital heart lesions
- natural history
 - 80-100% spontaneous closure rate if ASD diameter <8 mm
 - if remains patent, CHF and pulmonary HTN can develop in adult life
- clinical presentation
 - history: often asymptomatic in childhood
 - physical exam: grade 2-3/6 pulmonic outflow murmur, widely split and fixed S2
 - children with large ASDs may have signs of heart failure (tachypnea, FTT, hepatomegaly, pulmonary rales/retractions)
- investigations
 - ECG: RAD, mild RVH, RBBB
 - CXR: increased pulmonary vasculature, cardiac enlargement
 - Echo: test of choice
- management: elective surgical or catheter closure between 2-5 yr of age

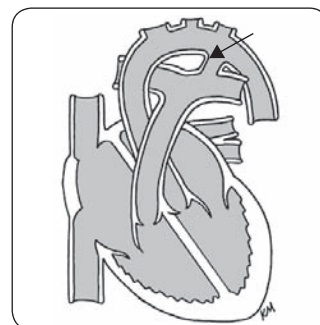
Ventricular Septal Defect

- most common congenital heart defect (30-50%)
- small VSD (majority)
 - clinical presentation
 - history: asymptomatic, normal growth and development
 - physical exam: early systolic to holosystolic murmur, best heard at LLSB, thrill

- investigations: ECG and CXR are normal; Echo to confirm diagnosis
- management: most close spontaneously
- moderate-to-large VSD
 - epidemiology: CHF by 2 mo; late secondary pulmonary HTN if left untreated
 - clinical presentation
 - ♦ history: delayed growth, decreased exercise tolerance, recurrent URIs or “asthma” episodes
 - ♦ physical exam: holosystolic murmur at LLSB, mid-diastolic rumble at apex, size of VSD is inversely related to intensity of murmur
 - investigations
 - ♦ ECG: LVH, LAH, RVH
 - ♦ CXR: increased pulmonary vasculature, cardiomegaly, CHF
 - ♦ Echo: diagnostic
 - management: treatment of CHF and surgical closure by 1 yr old

**Moderate-to-Large VSD**

Size of VSD is inversely related to intensity of murmur

**Figure 3. Patent ductus arteriosus****Patent Ductus Arteriosus**

- patent vessel between descending aorta and left pulmonary artery (normally, functional closure within first 15 h of life, anatomical closure within first days of life)
- epidemiology
 - 5-10% of all congenital heart defects
 - delayed closure of ductus is common in premature infants (1/3 of infants <1,750 g); this is different from PDA in term infants
- natural history: spontaneous closure common in premature infants, less common in term infants
- clinical presentation
 - history: asymptomatic, or have apneic or bradycardic spells, poor feeding, accessory muscle use, CHF
 - physical exam: tachycardia, bounding pulses, hyperactive precordium, wide pulse pressure, continuous “machinery” murmur best heard at left infraclavicular area
- investigations
 - ECG: may show left atrial enlargement, LVH, RVH
 - CXR: normal to mildly enlarged heart, increased pulmonary vasculature, prominent pulmonary artery
 - Echo: diagnostic
- management
 - indomethacin (Indocid®): antagonizes prostaglandin E₂, which maintains ductus arteriosus patency; only effective in premature infants
 - catheter or surgical closure if PDA causes respiratory compromise, FTT, or persists beyond 3rd mo of life

**Physical Exam for PDA (in term infant)**

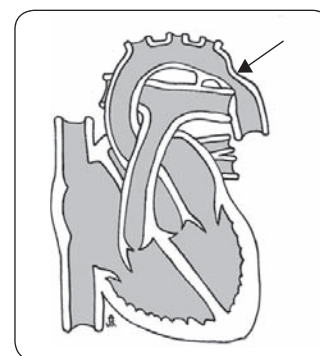
- Heavy “machinery” murmur
- High pulse rate
- Wide pulse pressure
- Hyperactive precordium
- Big bounding pulse

2. OBSTRUCTIVE LESIONS

- present with decreased urine output, pallor, cool extremities and poor pulses, shock or sudden collapse

Coarctation of the Aorta

- definition: narrowing of aorta (almost always at the level of the ductus arteriosus)
- epidemiology: commonly associated with bicuspid aortic valve (50%); Turner syndrome (35%)
- clinical presentation
 - history: often asymptomatic
 - physical exam
 - ♦ blood pressure discrepancy between upper and lower extremities (increased suspicion/severity if >20 mmHg difference)
 - ♦ diminished or delayed femoral pulses relative to brachial (i.e. brachial-femoral delay)
 - ♦ possible systolic murmur with late peak at apex, left axilla, and left back
 - ♦ if severe, presents with shock in the neonatal period when the ductus arteriosus closes
- investigations: ECG shows RVH early in infancy, LVH later in childhood; Echo or MRI for diagnosis
- prognosis: can be complicated by HTN; if associated with other lesions (e.g. PDA, VSD) can lead to CHF
- management: give prostaglandins to keep ductus arteriosus patent for stabilization and perform surgical correction in neonates; for older infants and children balloon arterioplasty may be an alternative to surgical correction. The American Heart Association and the American College of Cardiology recommend that correction of coarctation should be done as early as possible to reduce long-term morbidity and increase survival

**Figure 4. Coarctation of the aorta****Aortic Stenosis**

- 4 types: valvular (75%), subvalvular (20%), supra-valvular, and idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis (5%)
- clinical presentation
 - history: often asymptomatic, but may be associated with CHF, exertional chest pain, syncope, or sudden death
 - physical exam: SEM at RUSB with aortic ejection click at the apex (only for valvular stenosis)
- diagnosis: Echo
- management: valvular stenosis is usually treated with balloon valvuloplasty, patients with subvalvular or supra-valvular stenosis require surgical repair, exercise restriction required

Pulmonary Stenosis

- 3 types: valvular (90%), subvalvular, or supravulvar
- definition of critical pulmonary stenosis: inadequate pulmonary blood flow, dependent on ductus for oxygenation, progressive hypoxia and cyanosis
- natural history: may be part of other congenital heart lesions (e.g. Tetralogy of Fallot) or in association with syndromes (e.g. congenital rubella, Noonan syndrome)
- clinical presentation
 - history: spectrum from asymptomatic to CHF
 - physical exam: wide split S2 on expiration, SEM at LUSB, pulmonary ejection click (for valvular lesions)
- investigations
 - ECG: RVH
 - CXR: post-stenotic dilation of the main pulmonary artery
 - Echo: diagnostic
- management: surgical repair if critically ill or if symptomatic in older infants/children



Causes of Cyanotic Heart Disease – 5T's

Truncus arteriosus
Transposition of the great vessels
Tricuspid atresia
Tetralogy of Fallot
Total anomalous pulmonary venous return

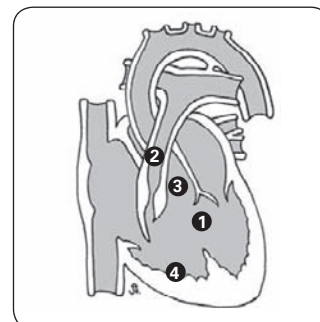


Figure 5. Tetralogy of Fallot



Tetralogy of Fallot

1. VSD
2. RVOTO
3. Aortic root "overriding" VSD
4. RVH



Ebstein's Anomaly

- Septal and posterior leaflets of tricuspid valve are malformed and displaced into the RV
- Potential for RV dysfunction, tricuspid stenosis, tricuspid regurgitation, or functional pulmonary atresia if RV unable to open pulmonic valves
- Accessory conduction pathways (e.g. WPW) are often present

Etiology

- Unknown, associated with maternal lithium and benzodiazepine use in 1st trimester

Treatment

- Newborns: consider closure of tricuspid valve + aortopulmonary shunt, or transplantation
- Older children: tricuspid valve repair or valve replacement + ASD closure

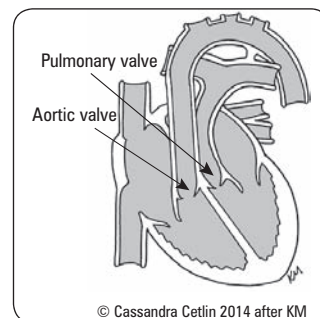


Figure 6. Transposition of the great arteries

Cyanotic Congenital Heart Disease

- systemic venous return re-enters systemic circulation directly
- most prominent feature is cyanosis (O_2 sat <75%)
- hyperoxic test differentiates between cardiac and other causes of cyanosis
 - obtain preductal, right radial ABG in room air, then repeat after the child inspires 100% O_2
 - if PaO_2 improves to greater than 150 mmHg, cyanosis less likely cardiac in origin
- pre-ductal and post-ductal pulse oximetry
 - >5% difference suggests R to L shunt

1. RIGHT-TO-LEFT SHUNT LESIONS

Tetralogy of Fallot

- epidemiology: 10% of all CHD, most common cyanotic heart defect diagnosed beyond infancy with peak incidence at 2-4 mo of age
- pathophysiology
 - embryological defect due to anterior and superior deviation of the outlet septum leading to: VSD, RVOTO (i.e. pulmonary stenosis), over-riding aorta, and RVH
 - ♦ infants may initially have a L → R shunt (therefore no cyanosis); however, RVOTO is progressive, leading to increasing R → L shunting with hypoxemia and cyanosis
 - ♦ degree of RVOTO determines the direction and degree of shunt and, therefore, the extent of clinical cyanosis and degree of RVH
- clinical presentation
 - history: hypoxic "tet" spells
 - ♦ during exertional states (crying, exercise) the increasing pulmonary vascular resistance and decrease in systemic resistance causes an increase in right-to-left shunting
 - ♦ clinical features include paroxysms of rapid and deep breathing, irritability and crying, increasing cyanosis, decreased intensity of murmur (decreased flow across RVOTO)
 - ♦ if severe, can lead to decreased level of consciousness, seizures, death
 - physical exam
 - ♦ single loud S2 due to severe pulmonary stenosis (i.e. RVOTO), SEM at LSB
- investigations
 - ECG: RAD, RVH
 - CXR: boot-shaped heart, decreased pulmonary vasculature, right aortic arch (in 20%)
 - Echo: diagnostic
- management of spells: O_2 , knee-chest position, fluid bolus, morphine sulfate, propranolol
- treatment: surgical repair at 4-6 mo of age; earlier if marked cyanosis or "tet" spells

2. OTHER CYANOTIC CONGENITAL HEART DISEASES

Transposition of the Great Arteries (TGA)

- epidemiology: 3-5% of all congenital cardiac lesions, most common cyanotic CHD in neonates
- pathophysiology: parallel pulmonary and systemic circulations
 - systemic: body → RA → RV → aorta → body
 - pulmonary: lungs → LA → LV → pulmonary artery → lungs
 - survival is dependent on mixing through PDA, ASD, or VSD
- physical exam
 - neonates: ductus arteriosus closure causes rapidly progressive severe hypoxemia unresponsive to oxygen therapy, acidosis, and death
 - VSD present: cyanosis is not prominent; CHF within first weeks of life
 - VSD absent: no murmur

- investigations
 - ECG: RAD, RVH, or may be normal
 - CXR: egg-shaped heart with narrow mediastinum (“egg on a string”)
 - Echo: diagnostic
- management
 - symptomatic neonates: prostaglandin E1 infusion to keep ductus open until balloon atrial septostomy
 - surgical repair: arterial switch performed in the first two weeks in those without a VSD while LV muscle is still strong

Total Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Return

- epidemiology: 1-2% of CHD
- pathophysiology
 - all pulmonary veins drain into right-sided circulation (systemic veins, RA)
 - no direct oxygenated pulmonary venous return to left atrium
 - often associated with obstruction at connection sites
 - ASD must be present for oxygenated blood to shunt into the LA and systemic circulation
- management: surgical repair in all cases and required urgently for severe cyanosis

Truncus Arteriosus

- pathophysiology
 - single great vessel gives rise to the aorta, pulmonary, and coronary arteries
 - truncal valve overlies a large VSD
 - potential for coronary ischemia with fall in pulmonary vascular resistance
- management: surgical repair within first 6 wk of life

Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome

- epidemiology: 1-3% of CHD; most common cause of death from CHD in first month of life
- pathophysiology: LV hypoplasia may include atretic or stenotic mitral and/or aortic valve, small ascending aorta, and coarctation of the aorta with resultant systemic hypoperfusion
- systemic circulation is dependent on ductus patency; upon closure of the ductus, infant presents with circulatory shock and metabolic acidosis
- management
 - intubate and correct metabolic acidosis
 - IV infusion of prostaglandin E1 to keep ductus open
 - surgical palliation (overall survival 50% to late childhood) or heart transplant



4 Features of Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome

- Hypoplastic LV
- Narrow mitral/aortic valves
- Small ascending aorta
- Coarctation of the aorta

Congestive Heart Failure

- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C33](#)

Etiology

- CHD
- cardiomyopathy (primary or secondary)
- high output circulatory states (e.g. anemia, AVMs, cor pulmonale, hyperthyroidism)
- non-cardiac (e.g. sepsis, renal failure)
- pressure overload (e.g. aortic stenosis/coarctation, pulmonary stenosis, HTN)
- volume overload (e.g. L to R shunt, valve insufficiency)

History

- infant: feeding difficulties, early fatigability, diaphoresis while sleeping or eating, respiratory distress, lethargy, FTT
- child: decreased exercise tolerance, fatigue, decreased appetite, respiratory distress, frequent URTIs or “asthma” episodes
- orthopnea, paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea, pedal/dependent edema are all uncommon in children

Physical Findings

- 4 key features: tachycardia, tachypnea, cardiomegaly, hepatomegaly
- FTT
- alterations in peripheral pulses, four limb blood pressures (in some CHDs)
- dysmorphic features associated with congenital syndromes

Investigations

- CXR: cardiomegaly, pulmonary venous congestion
- ECG: sinus tachycardia, signs of underlying cause (heart block, atrial enlargement, hypertrophy, ischemia/infarct)
- Echo: structural and functional assessment
- blood work: CBC, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, LFTs



4 Key Features of CHF

2 Tachy's and 2 Megaly's

- Tachycardia
- Tachypnea
- Cardiomegaly
- Hepatomegaly

Management

- general: sitting up, O₂, sodium and water restriction, increased caloric intake
- pharmacologic: diuretics, afterload reduction (e.g. ACE inhibitor), β -blockers; digoxin rarely used
- curative: correction of underlying cause

Dysrhythmias

- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C15](#)
- can be transient or permanent, congenital (structurally normal or abnormal) or acquired (toxin, infection, infarction)

Sinus Arrhythmia

- phasic variations with respiration (present in almost all normal children)

Sinus Tachycardia

- rate of impulses arising from sinus node is elevated (>150 bpm in infants, >100 bpm in older children)
- characterized by: beat-to-beat heart rate variability with changes in activity, P waves present/normal, PR constant, QRS narrow
- etiology: HTN, fever, anxiety, sepsis, anemia/hypoxia, PE, drugs, etc.
- differentiate from SVT (see below) by slowing the sinus rate (vagal massage, β -blockers) to identify sinus P waves

Premature Atrial Contractions

- may be normal variant or can be caused by electrolyte disturbances, hyperthyroidism, cardiac surgery, digitalis toxicity

Premature Ventricular Contractions

- common in adolescents
- benign if single, uniform, disappear with exercise, and no associated structural lesions
- if not benign, may degenerate into more severe dysrhythmias

Supraventricular Tachycardia

- abnormally rapid heart rhythm originating above the ventricles – most frequent sustained dysrhythmia in children
- no beat-to-beat HR variability, >220 bpm (infants) or >180 bpm (children), P waves absent/abnormal, PR indeterminable, QRS usually narrow
- pre-excitation syndromes (subset of SVT): WPW syndrome, congenital defect (see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery C21](#))

Complete Heart Block

- congenital heart block can be caused by maternal anti-Ro or anti-La (e.g. mother with SLE)
- often diagnosed *in utero* (may lead to development of fetal hydrops)
- clinical symptoms related to level of block (the lower the block, the slower the heart rate and greater the symptoms of inadequate cardiac output)
- symptomatic patients need a pacemaker



Pediatric vs. Adult ECG

Pediatric ECG findings that may be normal:

- HR > 100 bpm
- Shorter PR and QT intervals and QRS duration
- Inferior and lateral small Q waves
- RV larger than LV in neonates, so normal to have:
 - RAD
 - Large precordial R waves
 - Upright T waves
 - Inverted T waves in the anterior precordial leads from early infancy to teen years



Heart Murmurs

- 50-80% of children have audible heart murmurs at some point in their childhood
- most childhood murmurs are functional (e.g. “innocent”) without associated structural abnormalities and have normal ECG and radiologic findings
- in general, murmurs can become audible or accentuated in high output states (e.g. fever, anemia)

Table 11. Differentiating Heart Murmurs

	Innocent	Pathological
History and Physical	Asymptomatic	Symptoms and signs of cardiac disease (FTT, exercise intolerance)
Timing	SEM	All diastolic, pansystolic, or continuous (except venous hum)
Grade	<3/6; soft/blowing/vibratory	$\geq 3/6$ (palpable thrill); harsh
Splitting	Physiologic S2	May have fixed split or single S2
Extra Sounds/Clicks	None	May be present
Change of Position	Murmur varies	Unchanged

Table 12. Five Innocent Heart Murmurs

Type	Description	Age	Differential Diagnosis
Peripheral Pulmonic Stenosis	Neonates, low-pitched, radiates to axilla and back	Neonates, usually disappears by 3-6 mo	PDA Pulmonary stenosis
Still's Murmur	Vibratory, LLSB or apex, SEM	3-6 yr	Subaortic stenosis Small VSD
Venous Hum	Infraclavicular hum, continuous, R>L	3-6 yr	PDA
Pulmonary Ejection	Soft, blowing, LUSB, SEM	8-14 yr	ASD Pulmonary stenosis
Supraclavicular Arterial Bruit	Low intensity, above clavicles	Any age	Aortic stenosis Bicuspid aortic valve

Infective Endocarditis

- see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID17



Development



Approach to Global Developmental Delay

- also known as Early Developmental Impairment

Definition

- performance significantly below average in two or more domains of development
- when persistent, these become developmental disabilities, which are lifelong impairments

Epidemiology

- 5-10% of children have neurodevelopmental delay
- careful evaluation can reveal a cause in 50-70% of cases

Etiology

- CNS abnormalities (meningitis/encephalitis, brain malformation, trauma, etc.)
- sensory deficits (hearing, vision)
- environmental (psychosocial neglect, lead exposure, antenatal drug or alcohol exposure, etc.)
- genetic/chromosomal disorders (DS, Fragile X, etc.)
- metabolic disorders (inborn errors of metabolism, hypothyroidism, etc.)
- obstetrical (prematurity, HIE, TORCH infections, etc.)

Clinical Presentation

- history
 - intrauterine exposures, perinatal events
 - detailed developmental milestones: rate of acquisition, regression of skills
 - associated problems: feeding, seizures, behavior, sleep
 - family history, consanguinity
 - social history
- physical exam
 - dysmorphic features, hepatosplenomegaly, neurocutaneous markers, growth parameters, detailed neurological examination
- investigations
 - neurodevelopmental assessment, vision and hearing test, psychosocial evaluation, OT, PT and/or SLP assessments, genetics consultation
 - laboratory testing and imaging (guided by history and physical exam)
 - ♦ microarray, chromosomes, FISH, Fragile X testing, neuroimaging, metabolic workup, neuroelectrophysiologic testing

Management

- dependent on specific area of delay
- therapy services (e.g. speech and language therapy for language delay, OT and/or PT for motor delay), early intervention services (e.g. infant development services)

Intellectual Disability

Definition

- state of functioning that begins in childhood and is characterized by limitations in both intelligence and adaptive skills
- historically defined as an IQ <70

Epidemiology

- 1% of general population; M:F = 1.5:1

Etiology

- any disorder that interferes with brain development and functioning
- prenatal (majority): TORCH infections, FASD
- genetic/metabolic: DS, Fragile X, PKU, untreated or delayed diagnosis of congenital hypothyroidism, CNS abnormalities, other chromosomal/metabolic disorders

Risk Factors

- male, consanguineous parents, family history, older maternal age, decreasing maternal education, certain ethnicities
- prenatal: pre-eclampsia, maternal malnutrition or DM
- perinatal: prematurity, low birth weight, birth trauma/hypoxia
- postnatal: ICH, CNS or other serious infection, hypoxia, environmental toxins, psychosocial deprivation, malnutrition

Clinical Presentation

- history
 - well below average general intellectual functioning
 - significant deficits in adaptive functioning in at least two of: communication, self-care, home-living, social skills, self-direction, academic skills, work, leisure, health, safety
- physical exam
 - check growth, dysmorphic features, complete physical exam
- investigations
 - standardized psychology assessment (includes IQ test and measure of adaptive functioning)
 - vision, hearing, and neurologic assessment
 - genetic and metabolic testing as indicated

Management

- main objective: enhance adaptive functioning level
- requires an interprofessional team with strong case co-ordination
- emphasize community-based treatment and early intervention
- individual/family therapy, behavior management services, therapy services (e.g. OT, SLP), medications for associated conditions
- education: life skills, vocational training, communication skills, family education
- psychosocial support for individual and family; respite care

Prognosis

- higher rates of sensory deficits, motor impairment, behavioral/emotional disorders, seizures, psychiatric illness



DSM-5 Criteria for Intellectual Disability

- Deficits in intellectual functioning
- Deficits or impairments in adaptive functioning
- These limitations are evident during childhood or adolescence



Classification of Intellectual Disability

Severity	% Cases	IQ
Mild	85	50-70
Moderate	10	35-49
Severe	3-4	20-34
Profound	1-2	<20

Language Delay

Definition

- no universally accepted definition, but often identified around 18 mo of age with enhanced well baby visit
- if formally tested, performance on a standardized assessment of language is at least one standard deviation below mean of age
- can be expressive (ability to produce or use language), receptive (ability to understand language), or both

Epidemiology

- ~10-15% of 2 yr children have a language delay, but only 4-5% remain delayed after 3 yr
- ~6-8% of school-aged children have specific language impairment (many of whom were not identified before school entry)

Etiology

- cognitive disability
- constitutional language delay
- genetic/metabolic: DS, Fragile X syndrome, Williams syndrome, hypothyroidism, PKU, etc.
- hearing impairment
- mechanical problems: cleft palate, cranial nerve palsy
- medical condition: seizure disorder (includes acquired epileptic aphasia), CP, TORCH infection, iron deficiency, lead poisoning, etc.
- autism spectrum disorder
- psychosocial: neglect or abuse
- selective mutism

Risk Factors

- male, positive family history, prematurity, psychosocial (poverty, low parental education, maternal depression)

Clinical Presentation

- history
 - concerns about hearing, delay in language development or regression in previously normal language development
 - delayed language milestones on well-child check up; presence of red flags
 - must determine if language delay is expressive, receptive, or mixed
 - children with expressive language delays may have concurrent behavior problems or drooling (because of abnormal oral musculature)
 - risk factors for hearing loss (hereditary, recurrent AOM) and language delay
- physical exam
 - guided by history: look for abnormal growth, dysmorphisms, unusual social interactions (lack of eye contact, not pointing)
 - include full exam of the external/internal ear (e.g. TM scarring), oral pharynx (e.g. cleft palate), and neurologic system (including tone)
- investigations
 - use of language specific screens in primary care setting: The Early Language Milestone, CAT/CLAMS, MCHAT, etc.
 - all children with suspected language delay MUST be referred to an audiologist for a hearing assessment
 - CBC (to rule out anemia), venous blood lead levels, genetic/metabolic workup as indicated

Management

- specific to etiology
- often multidisciplinary and requires appropriate referrals: early intervention services, special education services, SLP, OHNS and dental professionals, general support services
- primary care provider can help reinforce family's understanding of delay and provide follow-up and care coordination
- prevention: parents can read aloud to their child, engage in dialogic reading, avoid baby talk, narrate daily activities, etc.

Prognosis

- depends on etiology
- if language delay persists beyond 5 yr old, more likely to have difficulties in adulthood
- persistent language delay is associated with poor academic performance, behavioral problems, social isolation

**Risk Factors for Sensorineural Hearing Loss**

- Genetic syndromes/family history
- Congenital (TORCH) infections
- Craniofacial abnormalities
- < 1,500 g birthweight
- Hyperbilirubinemia/kernicterus
- Asphyxia/low APGAR scores
- Bacterial meningitis, viral encephalitis



Bilingual exposure generally does NOT explain a frank delay in language development



Primary care physicians should suspect a receptive language delay in any young child with an expressive language delay

Fetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorder

**Definition**

- term describing the range of effects of prenatal exposure to alcohol, including physical, mental, behavioral, and learning disabilities
- no "safe" level of alcohol consumption during pregnancy has been established
- spectrum includes: FAS, partial FAS, ARBD, and ARND

Epidemiology

- prevalence of FAS and FASD is 0.1% and 1.0%, respectively
- most common preventable cause of intellectual disability

Pathogenesis

- specific mechanism of FASD is unknown, but hypotheses include nutritional deficits, toxic effects of acetaldehyde, alteration of placental transport, abnormal protein synthesis, and altered cerebral neurotransmission

Diagnosis

- often misdiagnosed or missed entirely
- diagnosis of FAS, ARBD, and ARND all require evidence of maternal drinking during pregnancy
- criteria for diagnosis of FAS
 - agrowth deficiency: low birth weight and/or decelerating weight over time not due to nutrition
 - characteristic pattern of facial anomalies: short palpebral fissures, flattened philtrum, thin upper lip, flat midface
 - CNS dysfunction: microcephaly and/or neurobehavioral dysfunction (hyperactivity, fine motor problems, attention deficits, learning disabilities, cognitive disabilities, difficulties in adaptive functioning, etc.)
- criteria for diagnosis of ARBD
 - congenital anomalies, including malformations and dysplasias of the cardiac, skeletal, renal, ocular, and auditory systems
- criteria for diagnosis of ARND
 - CNS dysfunction (similar to FAS)
 - complex pattern of behavioral or cognitive abnormalities inconsistent with developmental level that cannot be explained by familial background or environment alone

Management

- early diagnosis is essential to prevent secondary disabilities
- no cure, but individuals with FASD and their families should be linked to community resources and services to improve outcome

Prognosis

- secondary disabilities include unemployment, mental health problems, difficulties with the law, inappropriate sexual behavior, disrupted school experience, peer problems

Learning Disabilities

Definition

- specific and persistent failure to acquire academic skills despite conventional instruction, adequate intelligence, and sociocultural opportunity
- a significant discrepancy between a child's intellectual ability and their academic performance
- several types: learning disabilities in reading, writing, mathematics

Epidemiology

- prevalence: 2-10%
- high incidence of psychiatric comorbidity: anxiety, dysthymia, conduct disorder, major depressive disorder, oppositional defiant disorder, ADHD

Etiology

- pathogenesis is unknown, likely genetic factors involved
- learning disabilities may be associated with a number of conditions:
 - genetic/metabolic: Turner syndrome, Klinefelter syndrome
 - perinatal: prematurity, low birth weight, birth trauma/hypoxia
 - postnatal: CNS damage, hypoxia, environmental toxins, FAS, psychosocial deprivation (understimulation), malnutrition
- poor visual acuity is NOT a cause

Risk Factors

- positive family history, prematurity, other developmental and mental health conditions, neurologic disorders (e.g. seizure disorders, neurofibromatosis), history of CNS infection/irradiation/traumatic injury

Clinical Presentation

- history and physical exam
 - school difficulties (academic achievement, behavior, attention, social interaction)
 - development of negative self-concept → reluctance to participate even in areas of strength
 - social issues: overt hostility towards parents/teachers; difficulties making friends for several reasons (problems remembering names, difficulties with language to engage in conversations, inability to understand games and complex rules, etc.), bullying, and anxiety
 - look for dysmorphisms, complete physical exam
- investigations
 - standardized tests for IQ
 - individual scores on achievement tests in reading, mathematics, or written expression (WISC III, WRAT) >2 SD below that expected for age, education, and IQ

Management

- provide quality instruction for specific learning disability
- support student by modifying the curriculum and/or providing accommodations (e.g. scribe for writing, extra time for tests, photocopied notes, etc.)
- consider grade retention in certain students
- specialized education placements that can provide educational remediation

Prognosis

- limited information available about persistence of learning disabilities over time
- low self-esteem, poor social skills, 40% school drop-out rate

Motor Delay

- see *Cerebral Palsy*, P87 and *Muscular Dystrophy*, P45

Endocrinology**Antidiuretic Hormone****Diabetes Insipidus**

- see *Endocrinology*, E19 and *Nephrology*, NP11

Syndrome of Inappropriate Antidiuretic Hormone

- see *Endocrinology*, E19 and *Nephrology*, NP9

**Diabetes Mellitus****DIABETES MELLITUS TYPE 1**

- insulin deficiency following destruction of the pancreatic β cells

Epidemiology

- most common form of DM in children, M=F
- variable prevalence internationally, affects ~1.7:1,000 children and adolescents in the US
- can present at any age, but bimodal peaks at 5-7 yr old and at puberty

Etiology

- type 1A: cell-mediated autoimmune destruction of β -cells of the pancreas
- type 1B: rare, non-immune variation; unknown cause
- disease results from some level of genetic predisposition and an environmental trigger
 - human leukocyte antigen locus confers ~50% of genetic susceptibility
 - trigger likely infectious and/or hormonal (as suggested by bimodal peaks in age of onset)

Risk Factors

- positive family history of type 1 DM, personal or family history of other autoimmune diseases

Clinical Presentation

- history
 - initially presents as polyuria, often manifested as nocturia or secondary enuresis
 - polydipsia, weight loss (lack of insulin leading to a catabolic state), and polyphagia
 - DKA on initial presentation (~20%): vomiting, abdominal pain, confusion/lethargy
- physical exam
 - tachypnea, signs of dehydration, \downarrow LOC, Kussmaul's respiration, ketone breath
- investigations
 - initial tests: urine dipstick (glucose, ketones), random blood glucose (200 mg/dL)
 - DKA blood work: venous/arterial blood gas, osmolality, plasma glucose, bicarbonate, HbA1c, serum ketones, BUN, Cr, electrolytes, CBC
 - if etiology is unclear, consider ordering autoimmune antibodies (anti-Gad, anti-islet)

Management

- disclose diagnosis and prompt patient education around survival skills, meal plans, and insulin injections
- refer patient to diabetes team with pediatric expertise for education, ongoing care, and psychosocial support
- management is multidisciplinary and family-centered
- conventional insulin regimen
 - 2/3 of total daily insulin dose in AM (1/3 rapid acting + 2/3 intermediate-acting)
 - 1/3 of total daily insulin dose in PM (1/3 rapid acting + 2/3 intermediate-acting)

**Diagnostic Criteria for DM (Types 1 and 2)**

One of:

- HbA1c $> 6.5\%$ (not validated in children)
- Fasting glucose ≥ 126 mg/dL
- 2 h plasma glucose during OGTT ≥ 200 mg/dL
- Random glucose ≥ 200 mg/dL with classic symptoms of hyperglycemia (polyuria, polydipsia, weight loss)

**Blood Glucose Targets by Age**

Age Range	Pre-Meal Blood Glucose Target	HbA1c Target
<6	100-180 mg/dL	<8.5%
6-12	90-180 mg/dL	<8%
13-19	90-150 mg/dL	<7.5%
>19	As adult	<7%

- intensive insulin regimen (multiple daily injections)
 - studies show increased glycemic control with intensive vs. conventional dosing
 - 1/2 of total daily insulin dose as long-acting insulin (either morning or bedtime)
 - remainder of total daily insulin dose given as short or rapid-acting insulin divided before meals (dosage varies between meals depending on glucose content of meal and exercise/activity pattern)
 - can also use insulin infusion pump
- blood glucose monitoring
 - tight glycemic control decreases rate of long-term complications
 - glycemic targets: age <6 fasting blood glucose (BG) 100-180 mg/dL, HbA1c <8.5%; age 6-12 fasting BG 90-180 mg/dL, HbA1c ≤ 8%; age 13-19 fasting BG 90-150 mg/dL, HbA1c ≤ 7.5%
 - for tighter control, may consider continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII) pump or MDI (multiple daily injections regimen: basal insulin plus analog for meals)
 - young children are more susceptible to hypoglycemia
- if DKA present: ABCs, admit, monitors, correct fluid losses, administer insulin and restore glucose gradually, correct electrolyte disturbances, identify/treat precipitating event, avoid complications (i.e. cerebral edema)
 - low threshold to investigate (CT/MRI) and treat DKA, as cerebral edema is a major concern
 - see [Endocrinology, E11](#)
- screen for micro- and macrovascular complications (regular ophthalmology assessments, blood pressure, microalbuminuria), concurrent autoimmune diseases (thyroiditis, celiac disease, etc.), and mental health issues (depression, eating disorders)

Prognosis

- no cure currently
- short-term complications
 - hypoglycemia
 - ♦ due to missed/delayed meals, excess insulin or exercise, illness
 - ♦ can lead to seizures and/or coma
 - ♦ reversed with PO/IV glucose or IM glucagon
 - hyperglycemia
 - ♦ due to intercurrent illness, diet-to-insulin mismatch
 - ♦ ↑ risk of end-organ damage
 - DKA: due to missed insulin doses, infection; most common cause of death
- long-term complications
 - microvascular: retinopathy, nephropathy, neuropathy
 - macrovascular: metabolic syndrome, CVD, CAD, PVD
 - increased risk of other autoimmune diseases

DIABETES MELLITUS TYPE 2

- see [Family Medicine, FM22](#), [Endocrinology, E6](#)
- impaired glucose metabolism due to increased peripheral insulin resistance
- rare before 10 yr of age, but more common in older children/adolescents
- prevalence is rising mainly due to the increased incidence of childhood obesity
- risk factors: obesity, positive family history, female gender, certain ethnic groups
- clinical presentation may be similar to that of type 1 DM, though most children are asymptomatic
- may present in DKA or hyperglycemic hyperosmotic nonketotic state
- management
 - criteria to start insulin: distinction between type 1 and type 2 DM unclear, child is ketotic or in ketoacidosis, random blood glucose ≥ 250 mg/dL, or HbA1c > 9%
 - initiate lifestyle modification program, including diet, weight loss, physical activity (moderate-to-vigorous activity for at least 60 min/d; screen time less than 2 h/d)
 - start metformin as 1st line therapy at time of diagnosis
 - glycemic target: HbA1c ≤ 7%
 - if glycemic targets not achieved within 3-6 mo from diagnosis with lifestyle intervention alone, either metformin, glimepiride, or insulin should be initiated
 - monitor HbA1c every 3 mo
 - advise patient to monitor finger-stick blood glucose levels if on medication with risk of hypoglycemia, are changing medication regimen, have not met treatment goals, or have intercurrent illness
- prognosis: includes microvascular and macrovascular complications similar to type 1 DM



Management of Newly Diagnosed Type 2 DM in Children and Adolescents

Pediatrics 2013;131(2):364-382

Key Action Statements:

1. Clinicians should ensure that insulin therapy is initiated for children and adolescents with type 2 DM who are ketotic or in DKA and in whom the distinction between types 1 and 2 DM is unclear and, in usual cases, should initiate insulin therapy for patients.
 - a. who have random venous or plasma BG concentrations ≥ 250 mg/dL; or
 - b. whose HbA1c is > 9%.
2. Clinicians should initiate a lifestyle modification program, including nutrition and physical activity, and start metformin as first-line therapy for children and adolescents at the time of diagnosis of type 2 DM.
3. The committee suggests that clinicians monitor HbA1c concentrations every 3 mo and intensify treatment if treatment goals for finger-stick BG and HbA1c concentrations are not being met.
4. Clinicians should advise patients to monitor finger-stick BG concentrations in patients who
 - a. are taking insulin or other medications with a risk of hypoglycemia; or
 - b. are initiating or changing their diabetes treatment regimen; or
 - c. have not met treatment goals; or
 - d. have intercurrent illnesses.
5. Clinicians should incorporate the Academy of Nutrition and Dietetics' Pediatric Weight Management Evidence-Based Nutrition Practice Guidelines in their dietary or nutrition counseling of patients with type 2 DM at the time of diagnosis and as part of ongoing management.
6. Clinicians should encourage children and adolescents with type 2 DM to engage in moderate-to-vigorous exercise for at least 60 min daily and to limit nonacademic "screen time" to less than 2 h/d.



Short Stature DDx

ABCDEFGF

Alone (neglected infant)
 Bone dysplasias (rickets, scoliosis, mucopolysaccharidoses)
 Chromosomal (Turner, Down)
 Delayed growth (constitutional)
 Endocrine (low GH, Cushing, hypothyroid)
 Familial
 GI malabsorption (celiac, Crohn's)



4 Questions to Ask when Evaluating

Short Stature

- Was there IUGR?
- Is the growth proportionate?
- Is the growth velocity normal?
- Is bone age delayed?

Growth

APPROACH TO SHORT STATURE

Definition

- short stature: height < 3rd percentile
- poor growth evidenced by growth deceleration (height crosses major percentile lines, growth velocity < 25th percentile)

Epidemiology

- ~2.5% of the population by definition

Etiology

- see sidebar

Clinical Presentation

- history and physical exam
 - plot on growth curve (special growth charts available for Turner syndrome, achondroplasia, DS)
 - assess for dysmorphic features, disproportionate short stature
 - risk factors for GH deficiency: previous head trauma, history of intracranial bleed or infection, head surgery or irradiation, positive family history, breech delivery
 - decreased growth velocity may be more worrisome than actual height
- investigations
 - calculate mid-parental height: children are usually in a percentile between their parents' height
 - AP x-ray of left hand and wrist for bone age
 - remaining investigations guided by history and physical (e.g. TSH, sweat chloride, etc.)

Management

- depends on severity of problem as perceived by parents/child
- no treatment for non-pathological short stature, except for idiopathic short stature
- GH therapy: if administered at an early age, can help patients achieve adult height
- requirements
 - GH shown to be deficient by 2 different stimulation tests
 - growth velocity <3rd percentile or height <<3rd percentile
 - bone age x-rays show unfused epiphyses/delayed bone age
- support and management of resultant self-image issues, social anxiety, etc.



To check for proportionality, measure upper to lower segment ratio (U/L) using the pubic symphysis as your landmark. Normals are 1.7 for newborn, 1.4 for young child, 0.9 for adult male, 1.0 for adult female

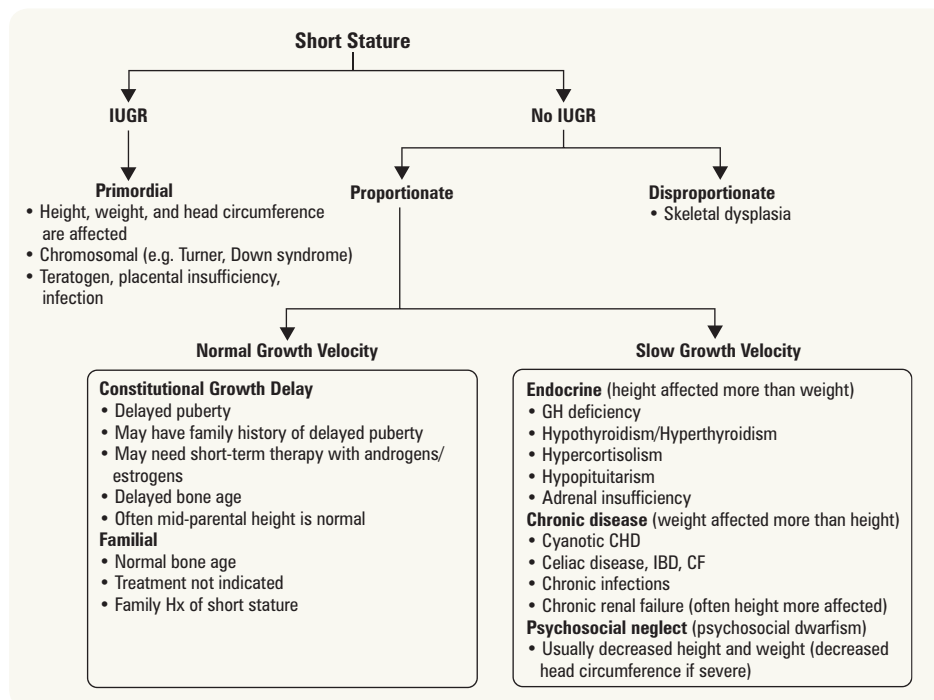


Figure 7. Approach to the child with short stature

TALL STATURE

- height greater than two SD above the mean for a given age, sex, and race

Etiology

- constitutional/familial
- endocrine: Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome, hyperthyroidism, hypophyseal gigantism, precocious puberty
- genetic: homocystinuria, Klinefelter syndrome, Marfan syndrome, Sotos syndrome

Hypercalcemia/Hypocalcemia/Rickets

- see [Endocrinology](#), E39, E40, E45



Hyperthyroidism and Hypothyroidism

- may be congenital or acquired (for acquired causes, see [Endocrinology](#), E20 and E26)



CONGENITAL HYPERTHYROIDISM

- also known as neonatal Graves' disease

Epidemiology

- ~1:25,000 neonates, M=F

Etiology

- results from transplacental passage of maternal thyroid stimulating antibodies from mother with a history of Graves' disease

Clinical Presentation

- history and physical exam
 - clinical manifestations may be masked if mother on antithyroid treatment
 - may present with tachycardia with CHF, heart murmur, goiter, craniosynostosis, irritability, poor feeding, FTT
- investigations
 - serum levels of TSH and free T4 in all infants with suspected congenital hyperthyroidism, or infants born to mothers with Graves' disease

Management

- methimazole until antibodies cleared
- symptomatic treatment as needed (e.g. β -blockers to control tachycardia)

Prognosis

- if prompt and adequate treatment given, most neonates improve rapidly
- antibodies usually spontaneously cleared by 2-3 mo of life
- fetal or neonatal hyperthyroidism may have adverse effects on CNS development, leading to developmental and behavior problems

CONGENITAL HYPOTHYROIDISM

Epidemiology

- incidence: 1:4,000-1:20,000 newborns births; F:M = 2:1
- one of the most common preventable causes of intellectual disability

Etiology

- may be classified as permanent primary, central, or transient hypothyroidism
- ~85% of primary cases are sporadic (mostly thyroid dysgenesis), remaining 15% are hereditary (mostly inborn errors of thyroid synthesis)
- causes of transient hypothyroidism: maternal antibody-mediated, iodine deficiency (rare in developed countries), prenatal exposure to antithyroid medications

Clinical Presentation

- history and physical exam
 - usually asymptomatic in neonatal period because maternal T4 crosses the placenta
 - prolonged jaundice, constipation, sluggish, hoarse cry, lethargy, poor feeding, macroglossia, coarse facial features, large fontanelles, umbilical hernia
- investigations
 - diagnosis through newborn screening of TSH or free T4; abnormal results should be confirmed with serum levels from venipuncture

Management

- thyroxine replacement

Prognosis

- excellent outcome if treatment started within 1-2 mo of birth
- if treatment started after 3-6 mo of age, may result in permanent developmental delay and/or disability (mild to profound)

Sexual Development

AMBIGUOUS GENITALIA**Definition**

- newborn or child whose gender is difficult to assign based on the appearance of genitalia
- subtype of DSD: a condition in which development of chromosomal, gonadal, or anatomic sex is atypical
- subtypes: 46,XX DSD, 46,XY DSD, ovotesticular DSD (true hermaphrodite)

Epidemiology

- incidence of genital abnormalities at birth is as high as 1:300
- prevalence of complex anomalies with true sexual ambiguity much lower at ~1:5,000

Etiology

- 46,XY DSD
 - inborn error of testosterone biosynthesis or Leydig cell hypoplasia
 - 5- α -reductase deficiency, androgen receptor deficiency, or insensitivity
 - LH/hCG unresponsiveness
- 46,XX DSD
 - virilizing CAH (most common)
 - maternal source: virilizing ovarian or adrenal tumors, untreated maternal CAH, placental aromatase deficiency
- ovotesticular DSD
 - both ovarian follicles and seminiferous tubules in the same patient with a 46,XX karyotype
 - mixed gonadal dysgenesis

Risk Factors

- parental consanguinity, positive family history of ambiguous genitalia, early childhood illness/death, or primary amenorrhea, maternal medications during pregnancy (e.g. androgens, progesterones, danazol, phenytoin, aminoglutethimide, endocrine disruptors)

Clinical Presentation

- history
 - thorough obstetrical history, including prenatal screens and maternal medications
 - family history: autosomal recessive pattern may suggest CAH, X-linked recessive pattern may suggest androgen insensitivity syndrome
- physical exam
 - male pseudohermaphrodite (XY): small phallus, hypospadias, undescended testicles
 - female pseudohermaphrodite (XX): clitoral hypertrophy, labioscrotal fusion
 - look for concurrent midline defects, dysmorphic features, and congenital abnormalities
- investigations
 - karyotype and genetic workup as indicated
 - blood work: electrolytes and renin (evidence of salt-wasting in CAH); 17-OH-progesterone, androgens, FSH, and LH
 - imaging: abdominal U/S to look for uterus, testicles, ovaries

Management

- depends on underlying etiology
- avoid announcement of probable sex or use of personal pronouns until all tests are complete
- continuous psychosocial support for parents and child during development
- elective surgical reconstruction of genitalia is sometimes possible

CONGENITAL ADRENAL HYPERPLASIA**Definition**

- autosomal recessive disorder characterized by the partial or total defect of various synthetic enzymes of the adrenal cortex required for cortisol and aldosterone production

Epidemiology

- occurs in ~1:15,000 live births
- most common cause of ambiguous genitalia

Etiology

- for biosynthetic pathways of adrenal cortex, see [Endocrinology, E29](#)
- 21-OH responsible for ~95% of CAH cases
- results in ↓ cortisol and aldosterone production with shunting toward ↑↑ androgens
- cortisol deficiency leads to elevated ACTH, which causes adrenal hyperplasia
- rarer causes include deficiencies in 11-OH, cholesterol desmolase, 17-OH, and 3-HSD

**Clinical Presentation**

- depends on which enzyme in cortisol synthesis pathway is defective
- presentation of 21-OH deficiency can be divided into
 - classic deficiency with salt wasting: inadequate aldosterone resulting in FTT, hyperkalemia, hyponatremia, hypoglycemia, acidosis
 - classic deficiency without salt wasting: simple virilizing type
 - non-classic: signs/symptoms of androgen excess (e.g. amenorrhea, precocious puberty, etc.)
- 21-OH deficiency screening is part of many newborn screening programs across North America
- high serum levels of 17-OH progesterone in random blood sample diagnostic for 21-OH deficiency

Management

- correct any abnormalities in fluids, electrolytes, or serum glucose
- provide glucocorticoids/mineralocorticoids as necessary, extra glucocorticoids in times of stress
- psychosocial support

Prognosis

- complications if untreated include virilization, acne, salt wasting, hypotension

NORMAL PUBERTAL DEVELOPMENT**Physiology**

- puberty occurs with the maturation of the HPG axis
- ↑ pulsatile release of GnRH → ↑ release of LH and FSH → maturation of gonads, release of sex steroids → secondary sexual characteristics
- adrenal production of androgens also required

Females

- onset: age 8-13 yr old (may start as early as 7 yr in girls of African descent)
- usual sequence
 1. thelarche: breast budding
 2. pubarche: axillary hair, body odor, mild acne
 3. growth spurt
 4. menarche: mean age 12.5 yr; indicates that growth spurt is almost complete; menses may be irregular in duration and length of cycle
- early puberty is common and often constitutional, late puberty is rare (rule out organic causes)

Males

- onset: age 9-14 yr old
- usual sequence
 1. testicular enlargement
 2. penile enlargement
 3. pubarche: axillary and facial hair, body odor, mild acne
 4. growth spurt: occurs later in boys
- early puberty is uncommon (rule out organic causes), late puberty is common and often constitutional
- gynecomastia (transient development of breast tissue) is a common self-limited condition seen in 50% of males during puberty (but any discharge from nipple or fixed mass should be investigated)

Tanner Staging

- scale used in pediatrics that defines physical measurements of development based on external primary and secondary sex characteristics

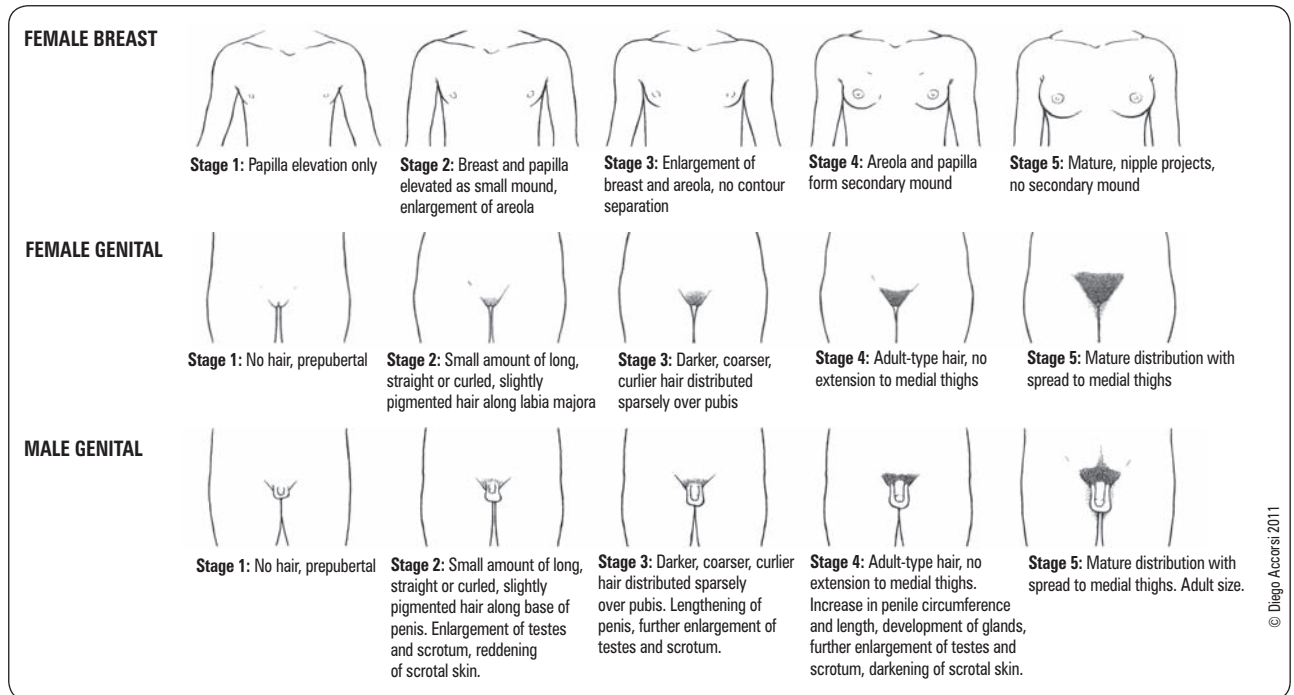


Figure 8. Tanner staging

PRECOCIOUS PUBERTY

Definition

- development of secondary sexual characteristics 2-2.5 SD before population mean
- <8 yr old for females, <9 yr old for males

Epidemiology

- F:M = 1/10,000

Etiology

- usually idiopathic in females (90%), more suggestive of pathology in males (50%)
- central (GnRH dependent)
 - hypergonadotropic hypergonadism; hormone levels as in normal puberty
 - premature activation of the HPG axis
 - differential diagnosis: idiopathic or constitutional (most common in females), CNS disturbances (tumors, hamartomas, post-meningitis, increased ICP, radiotherapy), NF, primary severe hypothyroidism
- peripheral (GnRH independent)
 - hypogonadotropic hypergonadism
 - differential diagnosis: adrenal disorders (CAH, adrenal neoplasm), testicular/ovarian tumor, gonadotropin/hCG secreting tumor (hepatoblastoma, intracranial teratoma, germinoma), exogenous steroid administration, McCune-Albright syndrome, aromatase excess syndrome, rarely hypothyroidism (Van Wyk-Grumbach syndrome)

Clinical Presentation

- history
 - symptoms of puberty, family history of precocious puberty, medical illness
- physical exam
 - growth velocity
 - ♦ prepubertal: 4-6 cm/yr
 - ♦ growth spurt: boys 8-10 cm/yr, girls 6-8 cm/yr
 - complete physical exam, including Tanner staging and neurological assessment
- investigations
 - initial screening tests: bone age, serum hormone levels (estradiol, testosterone, LH, FSH, TSH, free T4, DHEA-S, 17-OH-progesterone)
 - secondary tests: MRI head, pelvic U/S, β -hCG, GnRH, and/or ACTH stimulation test



A child with proven central precocious puberty should receive an MRI of the brain

Management

- indications for medical intervention to delay progression of puberty: rapid advancement of puberty, early age, risk of compromise of final adult height, psychological
- central causes: goals are to preserve height and alleviate psychosocial stress; GnRH agonists (e.g. leuprolide) most effective
- peripheral causes: goal is to limit effects of elevated sex steroids; treat underlying cause; medications that decrease the production of a specific sex steroid or block its effects (e.g. ketoconazole, spironolactone, tamoxifen, anastrozole), surgical intervention

DELAYED PUBERTY**Definition**

- failure to develop secondary sex characteristics by 2-2.5 SD beyond the population mean
 - for males: lack of testicular enlargement by 14 yr old
 - for females: lack of breast development by 13 yr old OR absence of menarche by 16 yr old or within 5 yr of pubertal onset

Epidemiology

- M>F

Etiology

- usually constitutional delay in males, more suggestive of pathology in females
- central causes
 - constitutional delay in activation of HPG axis (most common)
 - hypogonadotropic hypogonadism
- peripheral causes
 - hypergonadotropic hypogonadism (e.g. primary gonadal failure, gonadal damage, Turner syndrome, hormone deficiency, androgen insensitivity syndrome, etc.)

Clinical Presentation

- history: weight loss, short stature, family history of puberty onset, medical illness, high performance athletes (females)
- physical exam: growth velocity (minimum 4 cm/yr), Tanner staging, neurological exam, complete physical exam
- investigations
 - initial screening tests: bone age, serum hormone levels (estradiol, testosterone, LH, FSH, TSH, free T4, IGF-1), CBC, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, LFTs, liver enzymes, ESR, CRP, urinalysis
 - secondary tests: MRI head, pelvic U/S, karyotype, IBD panel, celiac disease panel, LH levels following GnRH agonist

Management

- identify and treat underlying cause
- hormonal replacement: cyclic estradiol and progesterone for females, testosterone for males

Gastroenterology

Vomiting

History

- characteristic of emesis (e.g. projectile, bilious, bloody)
- pattern of emesis (e.g. association with feeds, cyclic, morning)
- associated symptoms (e.g. anorexia, diarrhea, etc.)
- red flags: bilious or bloody emesis, projectile vomit, abdominal distension and tenderness, high fever, signs of dehydration
- note that vomiting without diarrhea is most likely not gastroenteritis

Physical Findings

- vital signs to determine clinical status and hydration state

Investigations

- CBC, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, amylase, lipase, glucose done routinely
- in sick child, add: ESR, venous blood gases, C&S (blood, stool), imaging



Vomiting: forceful expulsion of stomach contents through the mouth

Regurgitation: the return of partially digested food from the stomach to the mouth

Table 13. Common Differential Diagnosis, Associated Findings, and Diagnostic Approach Based on Age

Cause	Suggestive Findings	Diagnostic Approach
NEONATES – NON-BILIOUS		
TEF	Vomiting, excessive secretions soon after birth (e.g. drooling, choking, respiratory distress), inability to feed, inability to advance NG tube	Inability to advance NG tube, CXR, upper GI series with water-soluble contrast
Pyloric stenosis	Projectile vomiting immediately after feeding, dehydrated, palpable “olive” in RUQ, decreased stools, hunger	U/S of pylorus, upper GI study (if U/S not diagnostic) Electrolytes, ABG (hypokalemic, hypochloremic metabolic alkalosis)
GERD	Fussiness after feeds, spit ups, arching of back, poor weight gain	Empiric trial of acid suppression, pH monitoring study, upper GI study, endoscopy
Sepsis	Fever, lethargy, tachycardia, tachypnea, widening pulse pressure	CBC, cultures (blood, urine, CSF), CXR
Inborn error of metabolism	Poor feeding, FTT, jaundice, hepatosplenomegaly, cardiomyopathy, dysmorphism, developmental delay	Electrolytes, ABG (hyponatremic, hyperkalemic metabolic acidosis), lactate, ammonia, LFTs, BUN, Cr, serum glucose, bilirubin, PT/PTT, CBC
NEONATES – BILIOUS		
Malrotation with volvulus	Bilious emesis, abdominal distension, pain, bloody stool, shock	AXR, upper GI series, contrast enema
Duodenal atresia	Bilious emesis, abdominal distension, often seen in DS, jaundice, polyhydramnios during pregnancy	AXR, upper GI series (‘double bubble’ sign)
Hirschsprung’s disease	Bilious emesis, abdominal distension, pain, failure to pass stool	AXR, upper GI series, contrast enema, rectal biopsy
CHILDREN AND ADOLESCENTS		
Gastroenteritis	Diarrhea, fever, sick contact, recent travel	CBC, stool culture
Appendicitis	Periumbilical discomfort that later localizes to RLQ, fever, anorexia	Abdominal U/S
Intussusception	Colicky progressive abdominal pain, drawing of leg up to chest, lethargy, bloody stool	Abdominal U/S
Non-GI infection (e.g. meningitis)	Fever, localized findings depending on cause	Cultures (CSF, blood, urine), brain imaging, CXR
Increased ICP	Nocturnal waking, progressive recurrent headache worse with Valsalva, nuchal rigidity	Brain CT without contrast Therapeutic LP in idiopathic intracranial HTN
Toxic ingestion	Finding possibly varying by substance-toxidrome, often a history of ingestion	Qualitative and sometimes quantitative levels (urine β -hCG, blood)
Pregnancy	Amenorrhea, morning sickness, bloating, breast tenderness	Urine β -hCG
Cyclic vomiting	At least 3 self-limited episodes of vomiting lasting 12 h, 7 d between episodes, no organic cause of vomiting	Diagnosis of exclusion

**Pyloric Stenosis 3 Ps**

- Palpable mass
- Peristalsis visible
- Projectile vomiting (2-4 wk after birth)

Management

- rehydration (see *Fluids and Electrolytes*, P78)
- treat underlying cause

Gastroesophageal Reflux

Epidemiology

- extremely common in infancy (up to 50%)

Clinical Presentation

- vomiting typically soon after feeding, non-bilious, rarely contains blood, small volume (<30 mL)

Investigations

- thriving baby requires no investigation
- investigations required if concomitant FTT, feeding aversion, recurrent cough, pneumonia or bronchospasm, GI blood loss or symptoms persist after 18 mo

Management

- conservative: thickened feeds, frequent and smaller feeds
- medical
 - short-term parenteral feeding to enhance weight gain
 - ranitidine, PPI: decreases gastric acidity, decreases esophageal irritation
 - domperidone, metoclopramide: improves gastric emptying and GI motility; safety concerns and limited efficacy, should be reserved for children with gastroparesis contributing to GERD
- surgical: indicated for failure of medical therapy (Nissen fundoplication)

Complications

- esophagitis, strictures, Barrett's esophagus, FTT, aspiration, oral feeding aversion

Tracheoesophageal Fistula

- see [General Surgery](#), GS64

**Pyloric Stenosis**

- see [General Surgery](#), GS61

**Duodenal Atresia**

- see [General Surgery](#), GS63

**Malrotation of the Intestine**

- see [General Surgery](#), GS62

**Diarrhea**

- definition of diarrhea varies with diet and age (stool normalcy difficult to define in children)
- infants → increase in stool frequency to twice as often per day; older children → 3+ loose or watery stools/d
- duration: acute: <2 wk; chronic: >2 wk

Pathophysiology

- osmotic: due to non-absorbable solutes in GI tract (e.g. lactose intolerance)
- secretory: increased secretion of Cl⁻ ions and water in intestinal lumen (e.g. bacterial toxin)
- malabsorption: decreased GI surface area (e.g. short bowel syndrome)

History

- frequency, duration, quality of diarrhea
- associated symptoms (e.g. fever, abdominal pain, hematochezia, etc.)
- recent antibiotic use or recent travel
- elements of diet

Physical Findings

- vital signs to determine clinical status and hydration state

Investigations

- acute diarrhea
 - stool for C&S, O&P, electron microscopy for viruses, *C. difficile* toxin, microscopy (leukocytes suggestive of invading pathogen), blood and urine cultures, blood work
- chronic diarrhea
 - serial heights, weights, growth percentiles
 - if child growing well and thriving, workup is limited (stool cultures as above, stool reducing substances)
 - red flags: poor growth, chronic rash, other serious infections, hospitalizations for dehydration
 - ♦ require full workup (as per below)
 - stool: consistency, pH, reducing substances, microscopy, occult blood, O&P, C&S, *C. difficile* toxin, 3 d fecal fat, α -1-antitrypsin clearance, fecal elastase
 - urinalysis, urine culture
 - CBC, differential, ESR/CRP, smear, electrolytes, total protein, albumin, carotene, Ca²⁺, PO₄³⁻, Mg²⁺, Fe, ferritin, folate, fat-soluble vitamins, PTT, INR



Diarrhea is defined as an increase in frequency and/or decreased consistency of stools compared to normal

Normal stool volume:
Infants: 5-10 g/kg/d
Children: 200 g/d

**Diarrhea Red Flags**

Bloody stool, fever, petechiae or purpura, signs of severe dehydration, weight loss/FTT

**Indications for Medical Evaluation of Acute Diarrhea**

- Age <6 mo
- Fever
- Visible blood in stool
- Frequent, substantial volume of diarrhea
- Signs of dehydration
- Change in mental status

MMWR Recomm Rep 2003;52(RR-16):1-16

- sweat chloride, celiac screen, thyroid function tests, urine VMA and HVA, HIV test, lead levels
- CXR, upper GI series and follow-through
- specialized tests: endoscopy, small bowel biopsy

Differential Diagnosis

Table 14. Differential Diagnosis of Diarrhea

Infectious				Non-infectious
Acute	Viral Rotavirus Norwalk Enteric adenovirus	Bacterial <i>Salmonella</i> <i>Campylobacter</i> <i>Shigella</i> Pathogenic <i>E. coli</i> <i>Yersinia</i> <i>C. difficile</i>	Parasitic <i>Giardia lamblia</i> <i>Entamoeba histolytica</i>	Antibiotic-induced Non-specific: associated with systemic infection Hirschsprung's disease Toxin ingestion Primary disaccharidase deficiency
Chronic	0 – 3 mo	3 mo – 3 yr	3 – 18 yr	Uncommon
No FTT	GI infection	GI infection Toddler's diarrhea	GI infection Lactase deficiency Irritable bowel syndrome	Drug-induced Chronic constipation UTI
FTT	Disaccharidase deficiency Cow's milk protein intolerance CF	Celiac disease	IBD Endocrine (thyrotoxicosis, Addison's) Neoplastic (pheochromocytoma, lymphoma)	Short bowel syndrome Schwachman-Diamond syndrome

Gastroenteritis

History

- non-specific: diarrhea, vomiting, fever, anorexia, headache, myalgias, abdominal cramps
- bacterial and parasitic agents more common in older children (2-4 yr)
- recent infectious contacts: symptoms usually begin 24-48 h after exposure

Physical Exam

- febrile
- dehydrated: must assess extent (see [Dehydration, P78](#))

Investigations

- not usually necessary in young children
- stool analysis: leukocytes/erythrocytes suggests bacterial or parasitic etiology; pH <6 and presence of reducing substances suggests viral etiology

Complications

- viral gastroenteritis usually self-limiting (lasts 3-7 d in most cases)
- adverse effects related to hypovolemia, shock, tissue acidosis, and rapid onset and over-correction of electrolyte imbalances
- death in severe dehydration (rare in developed countries)

Table 15. Gastroenteritis

	Viral Infection	Bacterial Infection
Etiology	Most common cause of gastroenteritis Commonly: rotaviruses (most common), enteric adenovirus, norovirus (typically older children)	<i>Salmonella</i> , <i>Campylobacter</i> , <i>Shigella</i> , pathogenic <i>E. coli</i> , <i>Yersinia</i> , <i>C. difficile</i>
Clinical Presentation	Associated with URTIs Resolves in 3-7 d Slight fever, malaise, vomiting, vague abdominal pain	Severe abdominal pain High fever Bloody diarrhea
Risk Factors	Day care, young age, sick contacts, immunocompromised Bacterial infection: travel, poorly cooked meat, poorly refrigerated foods, antibiotics	
Management	Prevention and treatment of dehydration most important (see Dehydration, P78) Early refeeding advisable, start with small amounts of easily digested carbohydrates, postpone dairy and fibrous vegetables May return to age-appropriate diet once rehydrated and vomiting stops Anti-emetics improve vomiting, but worsen diarrhea Antibiotic or antiparasitic therapy when indicated, antidiarrheal medications not indicated Notify Public Health authorities if appropriate Promote regular hand-washing and return to school 24 h after last diarrheal episode to prevent transmission Rotavirus vaccine	

Toddler's Diarrhea

Epidemiology

- most common cause of chronic diarrhea during infancy
- onset between 6-36 mo of age, ceases spontaneously between 2-4 yr

Clinical Presentation

- diagnosis of exclusion in thriving child
- 4-6 bowel movements per day
- diet history (e.g. excess juice intake overwhelms small bowel resulting in disaccharide malabsorption)
- stool may contain undigested food particles
- excoriated diaper rash

Management

- reassurance that it is self-limiting
- 4Fs (adequate Fiber, normal Fluid intake, 35-40% Fat, discourage excess Fruit juice)

Lactase Deficiency (Lactose Intolerance)

Clinical Presentation

- chronic, watery diarrhea and abdominal pain, bloating associated with dairy intake
- primary lactose intolerance: crampy abdominal pain with loose stool (older children, usually of East Asian and African descent)
- secondary lactose intolerance: older infant, persistent diarrhea (post viral/bacterial infection, celiac disease, or IBD)

Diagnosis

- trial of lactose-free diet
- watery stool, acid pH, positive reducing sugars
- positive breath hydrogen test if >6 yr

Management

- lactose-free diet, soy formula
- lactase-containing tablets/capsules/drops (e.g. Lacteeze®, Lactaid®)

Irritable Bowel Syndrome

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G23



Celiac Disease

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G18
- in children: presents at any age, usually 6-24 mo with the introduction of gluten in the diet
- FTT with poor appetite, irritability, apathy, rickets, wasted muscles, flat buttocks, rarely distended abdomen
- GI symptoms: anorexia, N/V, edema, anemia, abdominal pain
- non-GI manifestations: iron-deficiency anemia, dermatitis herpetiformis, dental enamel hypoplasia, osteopenia/osteoporosis, short stature, delayed puberty, behavioral changes
- associated with other autoimmune disorders



Celiac disease is associated with an increased prevalence of IgA deficiency. Since tTG is an IgA-detecting test, you must order an accompanying IgA level

Milk Protein Allergy

Pathophysiology

- immune-mediated mucosal injury (IgE- and non-IgE-mediated)

Clinical Presentation

- up to 50% of children intolerant to cow's milk may be intolerant to soy protein as well
- often history of atopy
- can present as
 - proctocolitis: mild diarrhea, small amounts of bloody stools (common presentation in young infant)
 - enterocolitis: vomiting, diarrhea, anemia, hematochezia
 - enteropathy: chronic diarrhea, hypoalbuminemia



A Celiac disease diet must avoid gluten present in "**BROW**" foods

Barley
Rye
Oats (controversial)
Wheat

Management

- casein hydrolysate formula (dairy-free e.g. Nutramigen®, Pregestimil®) or mother may remove all milk protein from diet and continue breastfeeding (with adequate calcium and vit D intake)
- often outgrow by 1 yr of age

Inflammatory Bowel Disease

- see [Gastroenterology, G19](#)

**Cystic Fibrosis**

- see [Respirology, P92](#)

Constipation

- decreased stool frequency (<3 stools/wk) and/or stool fluidity (hard, pellet-like)

FUNCTIONAL CONSTIPATION

- 99% of cases of constipation
- Rome III criteria; ≥ 2 of the following
 - ≤ 2 defecations in the toilet/wk
 - ≥ 1 episode of fecal incontinence/wk
 - history of retentive posturing or excessive volitional stool retention
 - history of painful or hard bowel movements
 - large fecal mass in rectum
 - history of large diameter stools that may obstruct toilet

Pathophysiology

- lack of fiber in diet or change in diet, poor fluid intake, behavioral
 - infants: often occurs when introducing cow's milk after breast milk due to high fat and solute content, lower water content
 - toddlers/older children: can occur during toilet training, or due to pain on defecation, leading to withholding of stool
 - two crucial time periods: toilet training and starting school

Management

- education: explanation of mechanism of functional constipation for parents/older children
- clean out: oral (PEG, mineral oil, or other oral laxatives) or rectal (phosphate soda, saline, or mineral oil enemas), or combination
- maintenance: adequate fluid intake (if <6 mo, 150 mL/kg/d), adequate dietary fiber (fruit, vegetables, whole grains), stool softening (PEG 3350, mineral oil), appropriate toilet training technique (dedicated time for defecation: 3-10 min, 1-2 x/d)
- children should be treated for at least 6 mo, and should not be weaned from maintenance therapy until they are having regular bowel movements without difficulty
- regular follow-up with ongoing support and encouragement is essential

Complications

- pain retention cycle: anal fissures + pain \rightarrow withhold passing stool \rightarrow chronic dilatation \pm overflow incontinence

HIRSCHSPRUNG'S DISEASE (Congenital Aganglionic Megacolon)

- see [General Surgery, GS63](#)

**OTHER ORGANIC DISORDERS CAUSING CONSTIPATION**

- endocrine: hypothyroidism, DM, hypercalcemia
- neurologic: spinal cord abnormalities/trauma, NF
- anatomic: bowel obstruction, anus (imperforate, atresia, stenosis, anteriorly displaced)
- drugs: lead, chemotherapy, opioids
- others

Abdominal Pain



ACUTE ABDOMINAL PAIN

History

- description of pain (location, radiation, duration, constant vs. colicky, relation to meals)
- associated symptoms: N/V, diarrhea, fever

Physical Exam

- abdominal exam, peritoneal signs, bowel sounds, rectal exam, rash

Investigations

- CBC, differential, urinalysis to rule out UTI

Table 16. Differential Diagnosis of Acute Abdominal Pain

Gastrointestinal	Hepatobiliary Tract	Genitourinary	Hematologic	Miscellaneous
Gastroenteritis	Cholecystitis	UTI	Henoch-Schönlein purpura	DKA
Appendicitis	Pancreatitis	Nephrolithiasis	Sickle cell crisis	Pneumonia
Meckel's diverticulum		Testicular torsion		Somatization
Mesenteric adenitis		Ovarian torsion		
Ileus		Ectopic pregnancy		
Intestinal obstruction		PID		
(incarcerated hernia, intussusception, volvulus)		Endometriosis		
Malabsorption		Menstruation		
IBS				
Constipation				

APPENDICITIS

- see [General Surgery](#), GS28
- most common cause of acute abdomen after 5 yr of age
- clinical features: low grade fever, abdominal pain, anorexia, N/V (after onset of pain), peritoneal signs (generalized peritonitis is a common presentation in infants/young children)
- treatment: surgical
- complications: perforation (common in young children), abscess



INTUSSUSCEPTION

- telescoping of segment of bowel into distal segment causing ischemia and necrosis

Epidemiology

- 90% idiopathic, children with CF or GJ tube at significantly increased risk; M:F = 3:1
- 50% between 3-12 mo, 75% before 2 yr of age

Pathophysiology

- usual site: ileocecal junction; jejunum in children with GJ tubes
- lead point of telescoping segment may be swollen Peyer's patches, Meckel's diverticulum, polyp, malignancy, HSP, structural abnormalities

Clinical Presentation

- "classic triad" (<25%) patients – abdominal pain, palpable mass, red currant jelly stools
- often preceded by URTI
- sudden onset of recurrent, paroxysmal, severe periumbilical pain with pain-free intervals
- later vomiting (may be bilious) and rectal bleeding (late finding)
- shock and dehydration; lethargy may be only presenting symptom



Intussusception – Classic Triad

- Abdominal pain
- Palpable mass
- Red currant jelly stools

Diagnosis

- U/S, air enema

Management

- air enema can be therapeutic (reduces intussusception in 75% of cases), reduction under hydrostatic pressure, surgery rarely needed
- recurrence rate 10-15%, need to consider pathologic lead point

Chronic Abdominal Pain

Epidemiology

- prevalence: 10% of school children (peak at 8-10 yr), F>M

Etiology

- organic (<10%)
 - gastrointestinal
 - constipation (cause vs. effect), infectious
 - IBD, esophagitis, peptic ulcer disease, lactose intolerance
 - anatomic anomalies, masses
 - pancreatic, hepatobiliary
 - genitourinary causes: recurrent UTI, nephrolithiasis, chronic PID, Mittelschmerz
 - neoplastic
- functional abdominal pain (90%): can be diagnosed when there are no alarm symptoms or signs, physical exam is normal, and stool sample tests are negative for occult blood; no further testing is required, unless high suspicion for organic cause

Clinical Presentation

- clustering episodes of vague, crampy periumbilical/epigastric pain, vivid pain description
- seldom awakens child from sleep, less common on weekends
- aggravated by exercise, alleviated by rest
- psychological factors related to onset and/or maintenance of pain, school avoidance
- psychiatric comorbidity: anxiety, somatoform, mood, learning disorders, sexual abuse, eating disorders, elimination disorders
- diagnosis of exclusion

Investigations

- fecal occult blood and others based on clinical suspicion (CBC, ESR, urinalysis, etc.)

Management

- continue to attend school
- manage any emotional or family problems, counseling, CBT
- trial of high fiber diet, trial of lactose-free diet
- possible role for amitriptyline
- reassurance

Prognosis

- pain resolves in 30-50% of children within 2-6 wk of diagnosis
- 30-50% of children with functional abdominal pain have functional pain as adults (e.g. IBS)



Chronic Abdominal Pain

Rule of 3s

3 episodes of severe pain
Child >3 yr old
Over 3 mo period



Red Flags for Organic Etiology of Chronic Abdominal Pain

- Age <5 yr old
- Fever
- Localizes pain away from midline
- Anemia
- Evidence of GI blood loss
- Rash
- Pain awakens child at night
- Travel history
- Prominent vomiting, diarrhea
- Weight loss or failure to gain weight
- Deceleration in linear growth
- Joint pain
- Family history of IBD
- Abnormal or unexplained physical exam findings

Abdominal Mass

Table 17. Differential Diagnosis for Abdominal Mass

	Benign	Malignant
Renal (note: 50% of abdominal masses in newborn are renal in origin)	Hydronephrosis Polycystic kidney disease Hamartoma	Nephroblastoma (Wilms' tumor) Renal cell carcinoma
Adrenal		Neuroblastoma
Ovarian	Ovarian cysts	Ovarian tumors
Other	Hepatomegaly/splenomegaly Pyloric stenosis Abdominal hernia Teratoma Fecal impaction	Lymphoma Rhabdomyosarcoma Retroperitoneal sarcoma

Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding

- see [Gastroenterology](#), G25



Lower Gastrointestinal Bleeding

- see [Gastroenterology, G27](#)



Etiology

- acute
 - infectious (bacterial, parasitic)
 - antibiotic-induced (*C. difficile*)
 - NEC in preterm infants
 - anatomic
 - malrotation/volvulus, intussusception
 - Meckel's diverticulitis
 - anal fissures, hemorrhoids
 - vascular/hematologic
 - HSP
 - HUS
 - coagulopathy
- chronic
 - anal fissures (most common)
 - colitis
 - IBD
 - allergic (milk protein)
 - structural
 - polyps (most are hamartomas)
 - neoplasms (rare)
 - coagulopathy

Physical Exam

- hemodynamic status, evidence of FTT, fever
- anal and rectal exam: tags, fissures, anal fistulas, polyps, foreign body, blood per rectum
- stool appearance
- NG aspirate
- lower GI bleed may present as melena (if it involves the small bowel) or hematochezia

Investigations

- stool cultures (C&S, *C. difficile* toxin)
- urinalysis and microscopy
- CBC, smear, differential, ESR, CRP, electrolytes, urea, Cr, INR, PTT, albumin, iron studies, amoeba titers
- radiologic investigations (including abdominal x-ray to rule out obstruction)
- Meckel's radionuclide scan

Management

- acute stabilization: ABCs, volume and blood replacement, bowel rest (NPO, NG tube)
- once stable, endoscopy and/or surgery as indicated

Genetics, Dysmorphisms, and Metabolism

Genetics

MECHANISMS OF INHERITANCE

Mendelian Inheritance

- disorders caused by mutation of one or both copies of a gene, inherited in one of two patterns:
 - autosomal: encoded by genes on one of 22 pairs of autosomes (chromosomes 1-22)
 - X-linked: encoded by a gene on the X chromosome

Triplet Repeat Expansions

- disorder in which trinucleotide repeats in certain genes exceed the normal number and result in altered expression of the gene or production of an abnormal protein (e.g. Fragile X syndrome, spinocerebellar ataxias, myotonic dystrophy, Huntington disease)

Imprinting Disorders

- imprinting: epigenetic process that involves methylation or acetylation of DNA, affecting gene expression
- imprinted genes are expressed differently depending on whether they are inherited from the mother or the father (parent-of-origin gene expression)
- occur when imprinted alleles are silenced (e.g. Prader-Willi syndrome, Angelman syndrome, Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome)

Mitochondrial Inheritance

- disorders caused by mutations of the DNA present in mitochondria
- inheritance pattern: mother passes on the defect to all her children; father does not pass on the defect since embryo only receives mitochondria from the mother (in the egg)

Autosomal Dominant

Disorder is expressed in a heterozygote (inheritance is 'vertical', both males and females are affected and can transmit the trait) e.g. NF-1

Autosomal Recessive

Disorder is manifested if both copies of the gene have mutations (inheritance is 'horizontal', disease not found in multiple generations, parents of an affected child are usually normal) e.g. CF

X-linked

Males have a single X chromosome and are affected by recessive and dominant X-linked disorders, while **females** have two X chromosomes and recessive X-linked disorders are rarely expressed in females e.g. Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy

METHODS OF GENETIC TESTING

- microarray analysis
 - a microarray is a collection of DNA probes attached to a solid surface
 - microarray analysis can identify small deletions or duplications of genetic material anywhere in the genome
 - indicated when there is developmental delay + one or more major malformations
- FISH: usually to identify a gain or loss of chromosomal material
- karyotype: microscopic analysis of all 46 chromosomes with a special stain that shows large changes in the number or structure of chromosomes

Genetic Anomalies

Minor and Major Anomalies

- minor anomaly: an unusual anatomic feature that is of no serious medical or cosmetic consequence to the patient
- major anomaly: anomaly that creates significant medical, surgical, or cosmetic problems for the patient

Mechanism for Anomalies

- malformation: results from an intrinsically abnormal developmental process (e.g. polydactyly)
- disruption: results from the extrinsic breakdown of, or interference with, an originally normal developmental process (e.g. amniotic band disruption sequence)
- deformation: alteration of the final form of a structure by mechanical forces (e.g. Potter deformation sequence)
- dysplasia: abnormal development that results in abnormal organization of cells into tissues (e.g. bone dysplasia)

Multiple Anomalies

- association: non-random occurrence of multiple independent anomalies that appear together more than would be predicted by chance but are not believed to have a single etiology (e.g. VACTERL)
- sequence: related anomalies that come from a single initial major anomaly or precipitating factor that changes the development of other surrounding or related tissues or structures (e.g. Potter sequence)
- syndrome: a pattern of anomalies that occur together and are caused by a single known or unknown cause (e.g. Down syndrome)



VACTERL Association

- V** Vertebral dysgenesis
- A** Anal atresia (imperforate anus)
± fistula
- C** Cardiac anomalies
- T-E** TracheoEsophageal fistula
± esophageal atresia
- R** Renal anomalies
- L** Limb anomalies

Approach to the Dysmorphic Child

- genetic disorders are the most common cause of infant death in developed countries

General Approach to the Dysmorphic Child

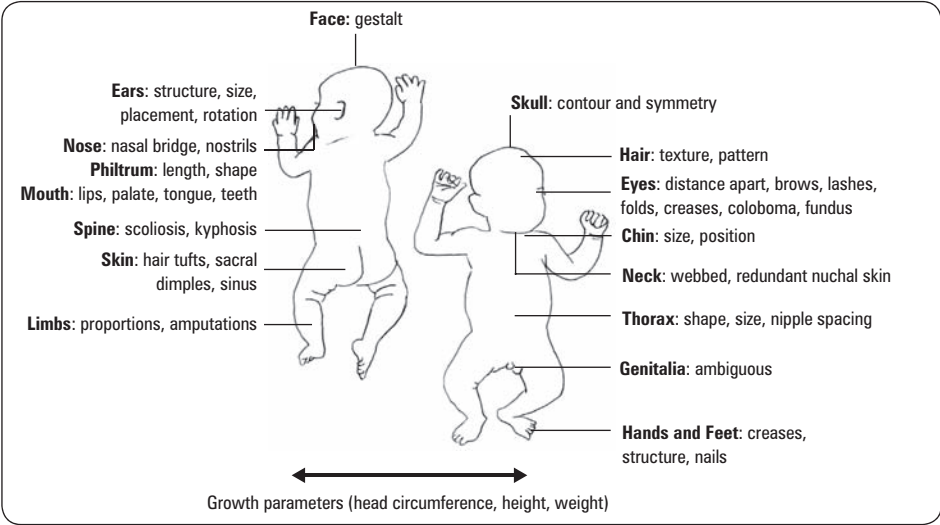
- Are the anomalies major or minor?
- What is the mechanism underlying the anomaly?
- Do the anomalies fit as part of an association, sequence, or syndrome?

History

- prenatal/obstetrical history (see [Obstetrics, OB2](#)) with particular attention to potential teratogenic exposures
- complete 3 generation family pedigree: consanguinity, stillbirths, neonatal deaths, specific illnesses, intellectual disability, multiple miscarriages, ethnicity



Physical Exam



Check the umbilical cord for 2 arteries and 1 vein. The presence of a single umbilical artery may be associated with other congenital anomalies

Figure 9. Physical exam of the dysmorphic child

Investigations

- screening for TORCH infections
- serial photographs if child is older
- x-rays for bony abnormalities
- cytogenetic studies
 - karyotype if recognized syndrome
 - chromosome microarray analysis (array comparative genomic hybridization) if developmental delay with one or more congenital anomalies
 - FISH if microdeletion syndrome or trisomy suspected
- biochemistry: specific enzyme assays
- single gene testing

Management

- prenatal counseling and assessing risk of recurrence
- referral for specialized pediatric or genetic care

Genetic Syndromes

Table 18. Common Genetic Syndromes

	Trisomy 21	Trisomy 18	Trisomy 13
Disease	DS	Edwards' syndrome	Patau syndrome
Incidence	1:600-800 births Most common abnormality of autosomal chromosomes Rises with advanced maternal age from 1:1,500 at age 20 to 1:20 by age 45	1:6,000 live births F:M = 3:1	1:10,000 live births
Cranium/Brain	Mild microcephaly, flat occiput, 3rd fontanelle, brachycephaly	Microcephaly, prominent occiput	Microcephaly, sloping forehead, occipital scalp defect, holoprosencephaly
Eyes	Upslanting palpebral fissures, inner epicanthal folds, speckled iris (Brushfield spots), refractive errors (myopia), acquired cataracts, nystagmus, strabismus	Microphthalmia, hypotelorism, iris coloboma, retinal anomalies	Microphthalmia, corneal abnormalities
Ears	Low-set, small, overfolded upper helix, frequent AOM, hearing loss	Low-set, malformed	Low-set, malformed
Facial Features	Protruding tongue, large cheeks, low flat nasal bridge, small nose	Cleft lip/palate Small mouth, micrognathia	60-80% cleft lip and palate
Skeletal/MSK	Short stature Excess nuchal skin Joint hyperflexibility (80%) including dysplastic hips, vertebral anomalies, atlantoaxial instability	Short stature Clenched fist with overlapping digits, hypoplastic nails, clinodactyly, polydactyly	Severe growth retardation Polydactyly, clenched hand
Cardiac Defect	50%, particularly atrioventricular septal defect	60% (VSD, PDA, ASD)	80% (VSD, PDA, ASD)
GI	Duodenal/esophageal/anal atresia, TEF, Hirschsprung's disease, chronic constipation	Hernia, TEF	
GU	Cryptorchidism, rarely fertile	Polycystic kidneys, cryptorchidism	Polycystic kidneys

Table 18. Common Genetic Syndromes (continued)

	Trisomy 21	Trisomy 18	Trisomy 13
CNS	Hypotonia at birth Low IQ, developmental delay, hearing problems Onset of Alzheimer's disease in 40s	Hypertonia	Hypo- or hypertonia Seizures, deafness Severe developmental delay
Other Features	Transverse palmar crease, clinodactyly, and absent middle phalanx of the 5th finger 1% lifetime risk of leukemia Polycythemia Hypothyroidism	SGA Rocker-bottom feet	Single umbilical artery Midline anomalies: scalp, pituitary, palate, heart, umbilicus, anus Rocker-bottom feet
Prognosis/Management	Prognosis: long-term management per AAP Guidelines (Health Supervision of Children with Down syndrome), recommend chromosomal analysis, CBC, Echo, yearly thyroid test, atlanto-occipital x-ray at 2 yr, sleep study, hearing test, and ophthalmology assessment	44% die in 1st month 10% survive past 1 yr Profound intellectual disability in survivors	33% die in 1st month, 50% by 2nd month, 90% by 1 yr from FTT Profound intellectual disability in survivors

Table 19. Most Common Sex Chromosome Disorders

	Fragile X Syndrome	Klinefelter Syndrome	Turner Syndrome	Noonan Syndrome
Genotype	X-linked Genetic anticipation CGG trinucleotide repeat on X chromosome measurable by molecular analysis	47,XXY (most common) 48,XXXY, 49,XXXXY	45,X (most common)	46,XX or 46,XY Autosomal dominant (not a sex chromosome disorder) with variable expression <i>PTPN11</i> mutation most common cause Higher transmission of affected maternal gene
Incidence	1:3,600 males, 1:6,000 females Most common heritable cause of intellectual disability in boys	1:1,000 live male births Increased risk with advanced maternal age	1:4,000 live female births Risk not increased with advanced maternal age	1:2,000 male and female live births
Phenotype	Overgrowth: prominent jaw, forehead, and nasal bridge with long and thin face, large protuberant ears, macroorchidism, hyperextensibility, and high arched palate Complications: seizures, scoliosis, mitral valve prolapse	Tall, slim, underweight No features prepuberty Postpuberty: male may suffer from developmental delay, long limbs, gynecomastia, lack of facial hair	Short stature, short webbed neck, low posterior hair line, wide carrying angle Broad chest, widely spaced nipples Lymphedema of hands and/or feet, cystic hygroma in newborn with polyhydramnios, lung hypoplasia Coarctation of aorta, bicuspid aortic valve Renal and cardiovascular abnormalities, increased risk of HTN Less severe spectrum with mosaic	Certain phenotypic features similar to females with Turner syndrome; therefore, sometimes called the "male Turner syndrome", although it affects both males and females Short stature, webbed neck, triangular facies, hypertelorism, low set ears, epicanthal folds, ptosis Pectus excavatum Right-sided CHD, pulmonary stenosis Increased risk of hematological cancers
IQ and Behavior	Mild to moderate intellectual disability, 20% of affected males have normal IQ ADHD and/or autism Female carriers may show intellectual impairment Male carriers may demonstrate tremor/ataxia syndrome in later life	Mild intellectual disability Behavioral or psychiatric disorders – anxiety, shyness, aggressive behavior, antisocial acts	Mildly deficient to normal intelligence	Moderate intellectual disability in 25% of patients
Gonad and Reproductive Function	Prepubertal carrier females at risk of developing premature ovarian failure	Infertility due to hypogonadism/hypospermia	Streak ovaries with deficient follicles, infertility, primary amenorrhea, impaired development of secondary sexual characteristics	Delayed puberty
Diagnosis/Prognosis/Management	Molecular testing of <i>FMR1</i> gene: overamplification of the trinucleotide repeat, length of segment is proportional to severity of clinical phenotype (genetic anticipation)	Increased risk of germ cell tumors and breast cancer Management: testosterone in adolescence	Normal life expectancy if no complications Increased risk of X-linked diseases Management: Echo, ECG to screen for cardiac malformation GH therapy for short stature Estrogen replacement at time of puberty for development of secondary sexual characteristics	Molecular testing of <i>PTPN11</i> gene Management: affected males may require testosterone replacement therapy at puberty Echo, ECG

Table 20. Other Genetic Syndromes

	DiGeorge Syndrome	Prader-Willi Syndrome	Angelman Syndrome	CHARGE Syndrome
Genotype	Microdeletions of chromosome region 22q11	Lack of expression of genes on paternal chromosome 15q11-13 due to deletion, maternal uniparental disomy of chromosome 15, or imprinting defect	Lack of expression of genes on maternal chromosome 15q11-13 due to deletion or inactivation or paternal uniparental disomy	2/3 of children with CHARGE have been found to have a <i>CHD7</i> mutation on chromosome 8
Incidence	Second most common genetic diagnosis (next to DS)	1:15,000		1:10,000
Clinical Features	"CATCH 22" Cyanotic CHD Anomalies: craniofacial anomalies typically micrognathia and low set ears Thymic hypoplasia: "immunodeficiency" recurrent infections Cognitive impairment Hypoparathyroidism, hypocalcemia 22q11 microdeletions High risk for psychiatric disorders	"H₃O": Hypotonia and weakness, Hypogonadism, Obsessive Hyperphagia, Obesity Short stature, almond-shaped eyes, small hands and feet with tapering of fingers Developmental delay (variable) Hypopigmentation, type 2 DM	Ataxia with severe intellectual disability, seizures, tremulousness, hypotonia Midface hypoplasia, fair hair, uncontrollable laughter	"CHARGE" C Coloboma H congenital Heart disease A choanal Atresia R mental Retardation G GU anomalies E Ear anomalies

DUCHENNE MUSCULAR DYSTROPHY

Epidemiology

- 1:4,000 males

Etiology

- one type of muscular dystrophy characterized by progressive skeletal and cardiac muscle degeneration
- X-linked recessive: 1/3 spontaneous mutations, 2/3 inherited mutations
- missing structural protein (dystrophin) → muscle fiber fragility → fiber breakdown → necrosis and regeneration

Clinical Presentation

- proximal muscle weakness by age 3, positive Gower's sign, waddling gait, toe walking
- pseudohypertrophy of calf muscles (muscle replaced by fat) and wasting of thigh muscles
- decreased reflexes
- non-progressive delayed motor and cognitive development (dysfunctional dystrophin in brain)
- cardiomyopathy

Diagnosis

- molecular genetic studies of dystrophin gene (DMD) (first line)
- family history (pedigree analysis)
- increased CK (50-100x normal) and lactate dehydrogenase
- elevated transaminases
- muscle biopsy, EMG

Management

- supportive (e.g. physiotherapy, wheelchairs, braces), prevent obesity
- cardiac health monitoring and early intervention
- bone health monitoring and intervention (vitamin D, bisphosphonates)
- steroids (e.g. prednisone or deflazacort)
- surgical (for scoliosis)
- gene therapy trials underway

Complications

- patient usually wheelchair-bound by 12 yr of age
- early flexion contractures, scoliosis, osteopenia of immobility, increased risk of fracture
- death due to pneumonia/respiratory failure or CHF in 2nd-3rd decade



Gower's Sign

Child uses hands to "climb up" the legs to move from a sitting to a standing position



Metabolic disease must be ruled out in any newborn who becomes acutely ill after a period of normal behavior and development or with a family history of early infant death even if the newborn screen is negative

Metabolic Diseases

- inherited disorders of metabolism; often autosomal recessive
- infants and older children may present with FTT or developmental delay
- newborn screening includes metabolic disorders

Table 21. Metabolic Disorders

	Organic and Amino Acid Disorders	Carbohydrate Disorders	Fatty Acid Disorders	Organelle Disorders
Examples of Conditions	PKU Tyrosinemia Homocystinuria MSUD Alkaptonuria Urea cycle defects	Galactosemia GSDs: von Gierke's, Pompe's, Cori's, Andersen, McArdle	MCAD deficiency Carnitine deficiency	Mucopolysaccharidosis Congenital disorders of glycosylation Lysosomal storage diseases: Hurler's, Niemann-Pick, Tay-Sachs, Gaucher, Fabry, Krabbe
Clinical Manifestations	Irritability, lethargy, poor feeding Seizures Intellectual disability Vomiting and acidosis after feeding initiation Sweet-smelling urine (MSUD)	Vomiting and acidosis after feeding initiation Growth retardation, FTT	Lethargy, poor feeding Seizures, coma Symptoms triggered by fasting Liver dysfunction Sudden infant death	Seizures/early-onset severe epilepsy Acute and chronic encephalopathy Developmental delay Bone crises (Gaucher) Deafness, blindness
Laboratory Findings	Hypoglycemic hyperammonemia, high anion gap (organic acidemia) Normoglycemic hyperammonemia, normal anion gap (urea cycle defects)	Hypoglycemia, hyperlipidemia (GSD)	Hypoketotic hypoglycemia Elevated free fatty acids	Elevated urine oligosaccharides (oligosaccharidoses) and glycosaminoglycans (mucopolysaccharidoses)
Physical Exam	Hypotonia/hypertonia Microcephaly, musty odor, eczema, hypopigmentation (PKU) Dark urine, pigmented sclerae, arthralgias (alkaptonuria) Lens subluxation, marfanoid appearance (homocystinuria)	Infantile cataracts (galactosemia) Hepatomegaly Muscle weakness/cramping	Hepatomegaly Hypotonia	Dysmorphic facial features Macrocephaly (Tay-Sachs, Hurler's) Hepatosplenomegaly (not Tay-Sachs) Cherry-red spot on macula (Niemann-Pick, Tay-Sachs, Gaucher's) Corneal clouding (Hurler's) Infantile cataract (Fabry) Peripheral neuropathy (Fabry, Krabbe) Spasticity

Initial Investigations

- important to send lab studies at initial presentation in order to facilitate immediate diagnosis and treatment
- check newborn screening results
- electrolytes, ABGs (calculate anion gap, rule out acidosis)
- CBC with differential and smear
- blood glucose (hypoglycemia seen with organic acidemia, fatty acid oxidation defects, and GSDs)
- lactate, ammonium (hyperammonemia with urea cycle defects), plasma Ca^{2+} and Mg^{2+}
- routine urinalysis: ketonuria must be investigated
- carnitine levels with acylcarnitine profile
- others: urate, urine nitroprusside, plasma amino acid screen, urine organic acids, CSF glycine, free fatty acids (3- β -hydroxybutyrate ratio >4 in fatty acid oxidation defect)
- storage diseases: urine mucopolysaccharide and oligosaccharide screen

Treatment

- varies according to inborn error of metabolism
- dietary restrictions, supplementation, enzyme replacement therapy, gene therapy, liver transplant, stem cell transplant

PHENYLKETONURIA

Epidemiology

- 1:10,000; autosomal recessive disease

Etiology

- deficiency of phenylalanine hydroxylase prevents conversion of phenylalanine to tyrosine leading to build up of toxic metabolites
- mothers who have PKU may have infants with congenital abnormalities

Clinical Presentation

- baby is normal at birth, then develops a musty odor, eczema, hypertonia, tremors, and mental retardation
- hypopigmentation due to low tyrosine (fair hair, blue eyes)

Management

- PKU screening at birth
- dietary restriction of phenylalanine starting within the first 10 d of life
- duration of dietary restriction controversial – lifelong or until end of puberty; should be resumed during pregnancy to maintain normal phenylalanine levels

GALACTOSEMIA

Epidemiology

- 1:60,000; autosomal recessive disease

Etiology

- most commonly due to deficiency of galactose-1-phosphate uridylyltransferase leading to an inability to process lactose/galactose

Clinical Presentation

- signs of liver and renal failure, jaundice, FTT, and cataracts with ingestion of lactose/galactose

Management

- elimination of galactose from the diet (e.g. dairy, breast milk)
- most infants are fed a soy-based diet

Complications

- increased risk of sepsis, especially *E. coli*
- if the diagnosis is not made at birth, liver and brain damage may become irreversible

Hematology

Approach to Anemia

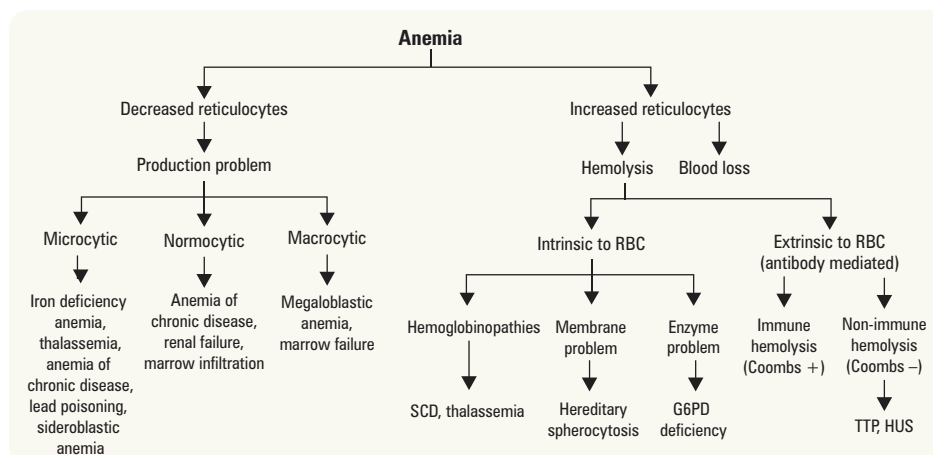


Figure 10. Approach to anemia

Physiologic Anemia

- high Hb (>170 g/L) and reticulocyte count at birth is caused by a hypoxic environment *in utero*
- after birth, levels start to fall due to shorter fetal RBC lifespan, decreased RBC production (during first 6-8 wk of life, there is virtually no erythropoiesis due to new O₂ rich environment), and increasing blood volume secondary to growth
- lowest levels about 100 g/L at 8-12 wk age (earlier and more exaggerated in premature infants); levels rise spontaneously with activation of erythropoiesis
- no treatment usually required

Iron Deficiency Anemia

- most common cause of childhood anemia
- full term infants exhaust iron reserves by 6 mo of age
- premature infants have lower reserves, therefore exhausted by 2-3 mo of age
- common diagnosis between 6 mo-3 yr and 11-17 yr due to periods of rapid growth and increased iron requirements; adolescents also have poor diet and menstrual losses

Etiology

- children at risk (premature, LBW, low SES, First Nations, etc.)
- dietary risk factors: whole cow milk in first year of life



Normal Hb Values by Age

Age	Hb Range (g/L)
Newborn	13.7-20.1
2 wk	13.0-20.0
3 mo	9.5-14.5
6 mo-6 yr	10.5-14.0
7-12 yr	11.0-16.0
Adult female	12.0-16.0
Adult male	14.0-18.0



MCV in childhood varies with age
Rule of thumb: lower normal limit of MCV = 70 + age (yr) until 80 fL (adult standard)

- age >6 mo: <2 servings/d of iron-fortified cereal, red meat, or legumes
- age <12 mo: use of low-iron formula (<10 mg/L), primary diet of cow, goat, or soy milk
- age 1-5 yr: >16-20 oz/d of non-fortified milk
- blood loss
 - iatrogenic: repeated blood sampling (especially in hospitalized neonates)
 - allergic: cow milk protein-induced colitis



Iron deficiency is rare in children <6 mo in the absence of blood loss or prematurity

Clinical Manifestation

- usually asymptomatic until marked anemia, pallor, fatigue, pica (eating non-food materials), tachycardia, systolic murmur, angular cheilitis, koilonychia

Investigations

- CBC: low Hb, MCV, and MCH, reticulocyte count normal or high (absolute number low)
- Mentzer index (MCV/RBC) can help distinguish iron deficiency anemia from thalassemia
 - ratio <13 suggests thalassemia; ratio >13 suggests iron deficiency
- blood smear: hypochromic, microcytic RBCs, pencil shaped cells, poikilocytosis
- iron studies: low ferritin, other (low iron, high total iron binding capacity, high transferrin, low transferrin saturation)
- initial therapy: trial of iron

Prevention

- breastfed term infants: begin iron supplementation (1 mg/kg/d) at 4-6 mo, continuing until able to eat ≥2 feeds/d of iron-rich foods
- non-breastfed (<50% of diet) term infants: give iron-fortified formula from birth
- premature infants: give iron supplements from 1 mo through to 1 yr of age
- no cow's milk until 9-12 mo, early introduction of red meat and iron-rich vegetables: total daily iron should be 11 mg (age 6-12 mo), 7 mg (age 1-3 yr)
- universal screening of Hb levels recommended at 9 mo

Management

- encourage diverse, balanced diet, limit homogenized milk to 16-20 oz/d
- oral iron therapy: 6 mg/kg/d elemental iron, divided bid to tid, for 3 mo
 - increased reticulocyte count in 2-3 d (peaks day 5-7)
 - increased hemoglobin in 4-30 d
 - repletion of iron stores in 1-3 mo
 - repeat hemoglobin levels after 1 mo of treatment
- poor response to oral iron therapy: non-compliance, medication intolerance, ongoing blood loss, IBD, celiac disease, incorrect diagnosis



Ferritin is an acute phase reactant, therefore, normal or high ferritin does not exclude iron deficiency anemia during an infection

Complications

- can cause irreversible effects on development if untreated (behavioral and intellectual deficiencies)
- angular cheilitis, glossitis, koilonychia (spoon nails)

Vitamin K Deficiency

- HDNB due to relative deficiencies of vitamin K-dependent coagulation factors
 - generalized bleeding; GI/intracranial hemorrhage
- IM injection at birth, can also be given orally (3 doses: at birth, 2-4 wk, 6-8 wk) but infants at higher risk of HDNB
- reason for administration at birth
 - human milk contains small amounts of vitamin K, and infants require ingestion of large volumes of human milk to promote GI bacterial colonization
 - until few days after birth, susceptible to vitamin K deficiency

Anemia of Chronic Disease

- see [Hematology](#), H16



Sickle Cell Disease

- see [Hematology](#), H21



Presentation

- newborn screen
- clinical disease presents at 5-6 mo of age after fall in fetal Hb



8% of African Americans carry the HbS trait, 0.2% have the disease

Heterozygotes (trait) are relatively malaria-resistant

- anemia, fever (medical emergency – infection is leading cause of death in SCD), jaundice, splenomegaly, crisis (dactylitis is often the first presentation)
- sickle cell trait: asymptomatic (may have microscopic hematuria and later isothermia)
- vaso-occlusive crisis
 - due to obstruction of blood vessels by rigid, sickled cells → tissue hypoxia → cell death; presents as fever and pain in any organ; most commonly in long bones of arms and legs, chest, abdomen, CNS (stroke), dactylitis (in young children), priapism
 - acute chest crisis: fever, chest pain, progressive respiratory distress, increased WBC count, pulmonary infiltrates
 - aplastic crisis: depression of erythropoiesis (decreased reticulocyte count to <1%, decreased Hb), generally associated with infection (especially parvovirus B19)
- acute splenic sequestration: sudden, massive pooling of red cells in spleen, splenomegaly, tender spleen, acute fall in hemoglobin, shock, increased reticulocyte count; splenic dysfunction (functional asplenia) by 5 yr of age secondary to auto-infarction; risk for sepsis from encapsulated organisms
- risk of osteomyelitis with *Salmonella*

Other Manifestations

- long-term complications: growth delay, bony abnormalities (e.g. avascular necrosis of femoral head), gallstones, retinopathy, restrictive lung disease (screen with PFTs), cardiomyopathy (screen with Echo), and pulmonary HTN

Management

- acute crises
 - admit for supportive and symptomatic treatment
 - fluids (1.5x maintenance; 1x maintenance only if in chest crisis), analgesia (opioid, multi-modal), antibiotics (e.g. 3rd generation cephalosporins), incentive spirometry and ambulation to decrease risk of chest crisis
 - straight transfusions for symptomatic/significant anemia, evolving chest crisis
 - RBC exchange transfusion for impending stroke, severe chest crisis, persistent priapism
 - O₂ if respiratory distress or chest crisis (with incentive spirometry)
 - CBC, reticulocyte counts, cultures if febrile, CXR, or LP if indicated
- chronic
 - early aggressive treatment of infections, prophylactic antibiotics (daily oral penicillin)
 - pneumococcal, meningococcal, hepatitis B, Hib, and influenza vaccines
 - folate supplementation
 - hydroxyurea if frequent crises, history of acute chest syndrome (raises HbF level)
 - transcranial Doppler to assess risk of stroke
 - chronic transfusion program if history of stroke or abnormal transcranial Doppler
 - genetic counseling and education
 - annual fundoscopic exam (after 10 yr old)
 - bi-annual screening for pulmonary HTN (after 12 yr old)
 - bi-annual chemistry and urinalysis to monitor organ dysfunction

Thalassemia

- see [Hematology](#), H19



Hereditary Spherocytosis

- see [Hematology](#), H23



Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase Deficiency

- see [Hematology](#), H23



G6PD deficiency protects against parasitism of RBCs (i.e. malaria)

Bleeding Disorders

- see [Hematology](#), H27



Table 22. Evaluation of Abnormal Bruising/Bleeding

	PFA	PT	PTT	VIII:C	vWF	Platelets	Fibrinogen
Hemophilia A	N	N	↑	↓	N	N	N
Hemophilia B	N	N	↑	N	N	N	N
von Willebrand Disease	↑	N	N or ↑	↓	↓	N	N
DIC	N or ↑	↑	↑	↓	N	↓	↓
Vitamin K Deficiency	N	↑	↑	N	N	N	N
Thrombocytopenia	↑	N	N	N	N	↓	N

DIC = disseminated intravascular coagulation; PFA = platelet function assay; VIII:C = Factor VIII coagulant activity; vWF = von Willebrand's factor;



Extensive bruising in the absence of lab abnormalities: consider child maltreatment



The American Society of Hematology 2011 Evidence-Based Practice Guideline for Immune Thrombocytopenia

Blood 2011;117(16):4190-207

Recommendations

- Bone marrow examination is unnecessary in children and adolescents with the typical features of ITP.
- Bone marrow examination is not necessary in children who fail IVIg therapy (grade 1B).
- Children with no bleeding or mild bleeding (defined as skin manifestations only, such as bruising and petechiae) may be managed with observation alone regardless of platelet count.
- For pediatric patients requiring treatment, a single dose of IVIg (0.8-1 g/kg) or a short course of corticosteroids may be used as first-line treatment.
- IVIg can be used if a more rapid increase in the platelet count is desired.
- Anti-D therapy is not advised in children with a hemoglobin concentration that is decreased due to bleeding, or with evidence of autoimmune hemolysis.

Suggestions

- Bone marrow examination is also not necessary in similar patients prior to initiation of treatment with corticosteroids or before splenectomy.
- Testing for antinuclear antibodies is not necessary in the evaluation of children and adolescents with suspected ITP.
- A single dose of anti-D can be used as first-line treatment in Rh-positive, nonsplenectomized children requiring treatment.

Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura

Epidemiology

- most common cause of thrombocytopenia in childhood
- peak age: 2-6 yr, M=F
- incidence 5:100,000 children per yr

Etiology

- caused by autoantibodies that bind to platelet membranes → Fc-receptor mediated splenic uptake → destruction of platelets

Clinical Presentation

- 50% present 1-3 wk after viral illness (URTI, chicken pox)
- sudden onset of petechiae, purpura, epistaxis in an otherwise well child
- clinically significant bleed in only 3% (severe bleed more likely with platelet count <10) with <0.5% risk of intracranial bleed
- no lymphadenopathy, no hepatosplenomegaly
- labs: thrombocytopenia with normal RBC, WBC
- bone marrow aspirate only if atypical presentation (≥ 1 cell line abnormal, hepatosplenomegaly)
- differential diagnosis: leukemia, drug-induced thrombocytopenia, HIV, infection (viral), autoimmune (SLE, ALPS)

Management

- observation vs. pharmacologic intervention highly debated; spontaneous recovery in >70% of cases within 3 mo
- treatment with IVIg or prednisone if mucosal or internal bleeding, platelets <10, or at risk of significant bleeding (surgery, dental procedure, concomitant vasculitis or coagulopathy)
- life-threatening bleed: additional platelet transfusion ± emergency splenectomy
- persistent (>3-12 mo) or chronic (>12 mo): re-evaluate; treat if symptoms persist
- supportive: avoid contact sports and ASA/NSAIDs

Hemophilia

- see [Hematology](#), H31



von Willebrand's Disease

- see [Hematology](#), H30



Oncology

- cancer is the second most common cause of death after injuries in children after 1 yr of age
- cause is rarely known, but increased risk for children with: chromosomal syndromes (e.g. Trisomy 21), prior malignancy, neurocutaneous syndromes, immunodeficiency syndromes, family history, exposure to radiation, chemicals, biologic agents
- leukemias are the most common type of pediatric malignancy (40%), followed by brain tumors (20%), and lymphomas (15%)
- some malignancies are more prevalent in certain age groups:
 - newborns: neuroblastoma, Wilms' tumor, retinoblastoma
 - infancy and childhood: leukemia, neuroblastoma, Wilms' tumor, retinoblastoma
 - adolescence: lymphoma, gonadal tumors, bone tumors
- unique treatment considerations in pediatrics because radiation, chemotherapy, and surgery can impact growth and development, endocrine function, and fertility
- good prognosis: treatments have led to remarkable improvements in overall survival and cure rates for many pediatric cancers (>80%)

Lymphadenopathy

Clinical Presentations

- features of malignant lymphadenopathy: firm, discrete, non-tender, enlarging, immobile ± suspicious mass/imaging findings ± constitutional symptoms
- fluctuance, warmth, or tenderness are more suggestive of benign nodes (infection)

Differential Diagnosis

- infection
 - viral: URTI, EBV, CMV, adenovirus, HIV
 - bacterial: *S. aureus*, GAS, anaerobes, *Mycobacterium* (e.g. TB), cat scratch disease (*Bartonella*)
 - other: fungal, protozoan, *Rickettsia*
- autoimmune: rheumatoid arthritis, SLE, serum sickness
- malignancy: lymphoma, leukemia, metastatic solid tumors
- storage diseases: Niemann-Pick, Gaucher's
- other: sarcoidosis, Kawasaki disease, histiocytoses



Most common cause of acute bilateral cervical LAD is viral illness

Investigations

- generalized lymphadenopathy
 - CBC and differential, blood culture
 - uric acid, LDH
 - ANA, RF, ESR
 - EBV/CMV/HIV serology
 - toxoplasma titer
 - fungal serology
 - CXR
 - TB tests
 - biopsy
- regional lymphadenopathy
 - period of observation if asymptomatic
 - trial of oral antibiotics
 - ultrasound
 - biopsy (especially if persistent >6 wk and/or constitutional symptoms)

Leukemia

- see [Hematology](#), H37, H40, H43, H48



Epidemiology

- mean age of diagnosis 2-5 yr but can occur at any age
- heterogeneous group of diseases
 - ALL (80%)
 - AML (15%)
 - CML (<5%)
- children with DS are 15x more likely to develop leukemia

Clinical Presentation

- infiltration of leukemic cells into bone marrow results in bone pain and bone marrow failure (anemia, neutropenia, thrombocytopenia)
- infiltration into tissues results in lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, CNS manifestations, testicular disease
- fever, fatigue, weight loss, bruising, and easy bleeding

- hyperleukocytosis (total WBC $>10.0 \times 10^9/\text{dL}$) is a medical emergency
 - presents clinically with respiratory or neurological distress caused by hyperviscosity of blood and leukostasis
 - risk of ICH, pulmonary leukostasis syndrome, tumor lysis syndrome
 - management: fluids, allopurinol/rasburicase, fresh frozen plasma/platelets to correct thrombocytopenia, induction chemotherapy, avoid transfusing RBCs unless symptomatic (and then use very small volumes)

Management

- combination chemotherapy using non-cross resistant chemotherapy agents, allogeneic stem cell transplantation for high-grade or recurrent disease
- supportive care and management of treatment complications
 - febrile neutropenia: see [Infectious Diseases, ID46](#)
 - tumor lysis syndrome: see [Hematology, H52](#)



Prognosis

- 80-90% 5 yr event-free survival for ALL, 50-60% 5 yr survival for AML
- patients are stratified into standard risk and high risk based on WBC and age; other prognostic factors include presence of CNS/testicular disease, immunophenotype, cytogenetics, and initial response to therapy (most important prognostic variable)

Lymphoma

- see [Hematology, H44](#)



Epidemiology

- Hodgkin lymphoma: incidence is bimodal, peaks at ages 15-34 and >50 yr old
- non-Hodgkin lymphoma: incidence peaks at 7-11 yr

Clinical Presentation

- Hodgkin lymphoma
 - most common presentation is persistent, painless, firm, cervical, or supraclavicular lymphadenopathy
 - can present as persistent cough or dyspnea (secondary to mediastinal mass) or less commonly as splenomegaly, axillary, or inguinal lymphadenopathy
 - constitutional symptoms in 30% of children
- non-Hodgkin lymphoma
 - generally categorized into lymphoblastic, large cell, and Burkitt's/Burkitt's-like lymphoma
 - rapidly growing tumor with distant metastases (unlike adult non-Hodgkin lymphoma)
 - signs and symptoms related to disease site: most commonly abdomen, chest (mediastinal mass), head and neck region



Constitutional symptoms = fever, chills, night sweats, unexplained weight loss

Management

- Hodgkin lymphoma
 - combination chemotherapy and radiation
 - aimed at limiting cumulative doses of anthracyclines (toxic to heart) and alkylators (risk of second malignancy, infertility) and limiting dose and field of radiation
 - increasing role for use of PET scanning to assess early disease response and plan therapy
- non-Hodgkin lymphoma
 - combination chemotherapy
 - no added benefit of radiation in pediatric protocols

Prognosis

- Hodgkin lymphoma: $>90\%$ 5 yr survival
- non-Hodgkin lymphoma: 75-90% 5 yr survival

Brain Tumors

- see [Neurosurgery, NS10, NS38](#)



Wilms' Tumor (Nephroblastoma)

Epidemiology

- usually diagnosed between 2-5 yr M=F
 - most common primary renal neoplasm of childhood
 - 5-10% of cases both kidneys are affected (simultaneously or in sequence)

Differential Diagnosis

- hydronephrosis, polycystic kidney disease, renal cell carcinoma, neuroblastoma

Clinical Presentation

- 80% present with asymptomatic, unilateral abdominal mass
- may also present with HTN, gross hematuria, abdominal pain, vomiting
- may have pulmonary metastases at time of diagnosis (respiratory symptoms)

Associated Congenital Abnormalities

- WAGR syndrome (**W**ilms' tumor, **A**niridia, **G**enital anomalies, mental **R**etardation) with 11p13 deletion
- Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome
 - characterized by enlargement of body organs (especially tongue), hemihypertrophy, renal medullary cysts, and adrenal cytomegaly
 - also at increased risk for developing hepatoblastoma, and less commonly adrenocortical tumors, neuroblastomas, and rhabdomyosarcomas
- Denys-Drash syndrome: characterized by gonadal dysgenesis and nephropathy leading to renal failure

Management

- staging ± nephrectomy
- chemotherapy, radiation for higher stages

Prognosis

- 90% long-term survival

Neuroblastoma

Epidemiology

- most common cancer occurring in first year of life
- neural crest cell tumor arising from sympathetic tissues (neuroblasts)

Clinical Presentation

- can originate from any site in sympathetic nervous system, presenting as mass in neck, chest, or abdomen (most common site is adrenal gland)
- signs and symptoms of disease vary with location of tumor
 - thoracic: dyspnea, Horner's syndrome
 - abdomen: palpable mass
 - spinal cord compression
- metastases are common at presentation (>50% present with advanced stage disease):
 - usually to bone or bone marrow (presents as bone pain, limp)
 - can also present with periorbital ecchymoses, abdominal pain, emesis, fever, weight loss, anorexia, hepatomegaly, "blueberry muffin" skin nodules
- paraneoplastic: HTN, palpitations, sweating (from excessive catecholamines), diarrhea, FTT (from vasoactive intestinal peptide secretion), opsomyoclonus
- diagnostic criteria (either of the following)
 - unequivocal histologic diagnosis from tumor tissue biopsy
 - evidence of metastasis to bone marrow ("rosettes") on aspirate analysis, with concomitant elevation of urine or serum catecholamine metabolite (VMA, HVA) levels

Management

- depends on prognostic factors and may include combination of: surgery, radiation, chemotherapy, autologous stem cell transplantation, immunotherapy

Prognosis

- prognosis is often poor due to late detection
- good prognostic factors
 - "age and stage" are important determinants of better outcome: 12-18 mo, stage I, II, IV-S disease ("S" designates a "Special" classification only pertaining to infants)
 - primary site: posterior mediastinum and neck
 - low serum ferritin
 - specific histology
 - tumor cell markers: aneuploidy, absent *MYCN* oncogene amplification

Bone Tumors

- see [Orthopedics](#), OR43



Infectious Diseases

Fever

Definition

- fever: no generally accepted definition, a practical definition is $>100.4^{\circ}\text{F}/38^{\circ}\text{C}$ oral or rectal
- fever without a source/focus: acute febrile illness (typically <10 d duration) with no cause of fever even after careful history and physical
- fever of unknown origin: daily or intermittent fevers for at least 2 consecutive weeks of uncertain cause after careful history and physical, and initial laboratory assessment

Etiology

- infectious: anatomic approach (CNS, ears, upper and lower respiratory tract, GI, GU, skin, soft tissue, bones and joints, etc.)
- inflammatory: mainly autoimmune (Kawasaki disease, JIA, IBD, SLE, etc.)
- malignancy: childhood cancers (leukemia, lymphoma, neuroblastoma, etc.)
- miscellaneous: dehydration, drugs and toxins, post-immunization, familial dysautonomia, factitious disorder, etc.

Diagnosis

- history: duration, height and pattern of fever, associated symptoms, exposures, constitutional symptoms, recent antipyretic use, ethnic or genetic background, day care, sick contacts, travel, tick bites
- physical exam: toxic vs. non-toxic, vitals, growth, complete exam of the skin, HEENT, chest, abdomen, lymph nodes, genitalia
- investigations: guided by history, physical exam, and clinical suspicion

Evaluation of Neonates and Infants with Fever

- several protocols exist that attempt to identify neonates and young infants at low risk of serious bacterial infection (e.g. Rochester criteria)
 - such protocols are not as sensitive in the 1-28 d age group; therefore, febrile neonates should be considered high risk regardless of clinical presentation and laboratory findings

Management

- admit to hospital if appropriate
- treat the source if known
- replace fluid losses (e.g. from vomiting, diarrhea, etc.); maintenance fluid needs are higher in febrile child
- reassure parents that most fevers are benign and self-limited
- antipyretics (acetaminophen and/or ibuprofen) are not necessary in most cases, but can be given if child is uncomfortable



Rochester Criteria – Developed to Identify Infants ≤ 60 d of Age with Fever at Low Risk of Serious Bacterial Infection

Clinically	Well
WBC Count	$5-15 \times 10^9/\text{L}$
Bands	$<1.5 \times 10^9/\text{L}$
Urinalysis	<10 WBC/HPF
Stool (if diarrhea)	5 WBC/HPF
Past Health	Born >37 wk Home with/before mom No hospitalizations No prior antibiotic use No prior treatment for unexplained hyperbilirubinemia No chronic disease

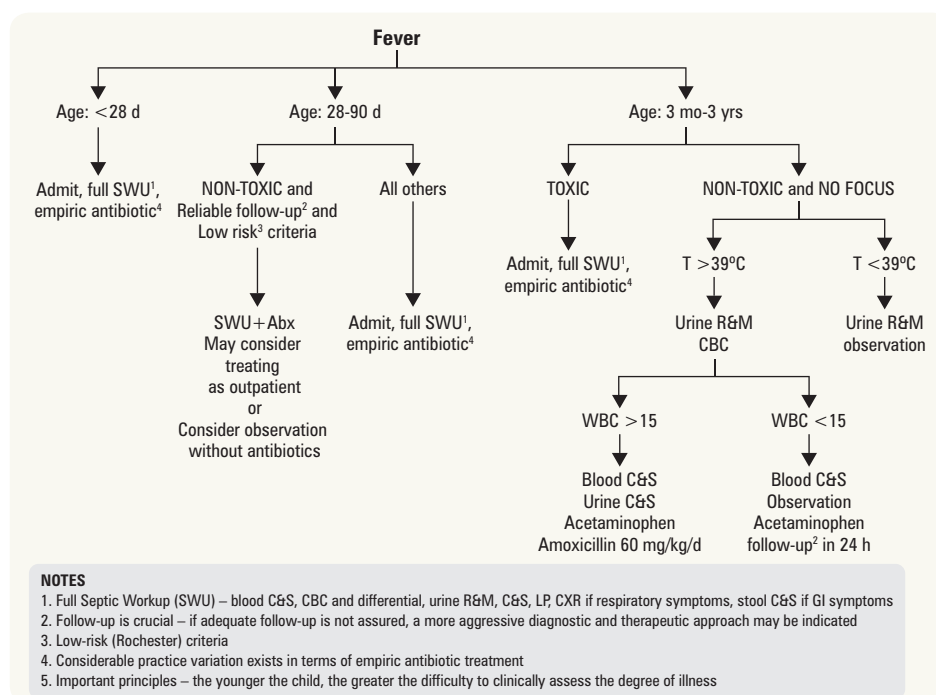


Figure 11. Approach to the febrile child

Acute Otitis Media

Definition

All of

1. presence of middle ear effusion
2. presence of middle ear inflammation
3. acute onset of symptoms of middle ear effusion and inflammation

Epidemiology

- 60-70% of children have at least 1 episode of AOM before 3 yr of age
- 18 mo-6 yr most common age group
- peak incidence January to April
- one third of children have had ≥ 3 episodes by age 3

Etiology

- *S. pneumoniae*: 32% of cases (incidence decreasing due to pneumococcus vaccine)
- *H. influenzae* (non-typeable): 28% of cases
- *M. catarrhalis*: 14% of cases
- *S. aureus* and *S. pyogenes* (all β -lactamase producing)
- anaerobes (newborns)
- Gram-negative enterics (infants)
- viral

Predisposing Factors

- Eustachian tube dysfunction/obstruction
 - swelling of tubal mucosa: URTI, allergic rhinitis, chronic rhinosinusitis
 - obstruction/infiltration of Eustachian tube ostium: adenoid hypertrophy (not due to obstruction but by maintaining a source of infection), barotrauma (sudden changes in air pressure)
 - inadequate tensor palati function: cleft palate (even after repair)
 - abnormal Eustachian tube: DS (horizontal position of Eustachian tube), Crouzon syndrome, cleft palate, and Apert syndrome
- disruption of action of
 - cilia of Eustachian tube: Kartagener's syndrome
 - mucus secreting cells
 - capillary network that provides humoral factors, neutrophils, phagocytic cells
- immunosuppression/deficiency due to chemotherapy, steroids, DM, hypogammaglobulinemia, CF

Risk Factors

- bottle feeding, pacifier use
- second-hand smoke
- crowded living conditions (day care/group child care facilities) or sick contacts
- male
- family history

Pathogenesis

- obstruction of Eustachian tube \rightarrow air absorbed in middle ear \rightarrow negative pressure (an irritant to middle ear mucosa) \rightarrow edema of mucosa with exudate/effusion \rightarrow infection of exudate from nasopharyngeal secretions

Clinical Features

- triad of otalgia, fever (especially in younger children), and conductive hearing loss
- rarely tinnitus, vertigo, and/or facial nerve paralysis
- otorrhea if tympanic membrane perforated
- infants/toddlers: ear-tugging (this alone is not a good indicator of pathology), hearing loss, balance disturbances (rare), irritable, poor sleeping, vomiting and diarrhea, anorexia
- otoscopy of TM: hyperemia, bulging, pus may be seen behind TM, loss of landmarks (e.g. handle and long process of malleus not visible)

Diagnosis and Management

- Diagnose AOM if
 - moderate to severe bulging of TM or new onset of otorrhea not due to otitis externa
 - mild bulging of tympanic membrane and recent (< 48 h) ear pain or intense erythema of TM
 - do not diagnose AOM if no middle ear effusion (based on pneumatic otoscopy or tympanometry)
- antibiotic treatment hastens resolution: 10 d course
 - 1st line
 - ♦ amoxicillin 75-90 mg/kg/d divided into two doses: safe, effective, and inexpensive
 - ♦ if penicillin allergic: macrolide (clarithromycin, azithromycin – high resistance), trimethoprim-sulphamethoxazole (Bactrim®)



Clinical Assessment of AOM in Pediatrics

JAMA 2010;304:2161-2169

In assessment of AOM in pediatrics, ear pain is the most useful symptom with a LR between 3.0-7.3. Useful otoscopic signs include erythematous (LR 8.4, 95% CI 7-11), cloudy (LR 34, 95% CI 28-42), bulging (LR 51, 95% CI 36-73), and immobile tympanic membrane on pneumatic otoscopy (LR 31, 95% CI 26-37).



The Diagnosis and Management of Acute Otitis Media

Pediatrics 2013;131:e964-e999

Strong Recommendations

- Management of AOM should include an assessment of pain; if pain is present, the clinician should recommend treatment to reduce pain.
- Severe AOM in young children:
 - Prescribe antibiotic therapy for AOM (bilateral or unilateral) in children 6 mo and older with severe signs or symptoms (i.e. moderate or severe otalgia or otalgia for at least 48 h or temperature 102.2°F [39°C] or higher).
- Recommend pneumococcal conjugate vaccine to all children according to vaccination schedule.

Recommendations

- Diagnose AOM in children who present with moderate to severe bulging of the TM or new onset of otorrhea not due to acute otitis externa.
- Diagnose AOM in children who present with mild bulging of the TM and recent (< 48 h) onset of ear pain (holding, tugging, rubbing of the ear in a nonverbal child) or intense erythema of the TM.
- Non-severe AOM in young children:
 - Prescribe antibiotic therapy for bilateral AOM in children 6 mo through 23 mo of age without severe signs or symptoms (i.e. mild otalgia for less than 48 h and temperature less than 102.2°F [39°C]).
 - Either prescribe antibiotic therapy or offer observation with close follow-up based on joint decision-making with the parent(s)/caregiver(s) for unilateral AOM in children 6-23 mo of age OR bilateral or unilateral AOM in children ≥ 24 mo without severe signs or symptoms; when observation is used, a mechanism must be in place to ensure follow-up and begin antibiotic therapy if the child worsens or fails to improve within 48-72 h of onset of symptoms.
- Prescribe amoxicillin for AOM when a decision to treat with antibiotics has been made and the child has not received amoxicillin in the past 30 d or the child does not have concurrent purulent conjunctivitis or the child is not allergic to penicillin.
- Prescribe an antibiotic with additional β -lactamase coverage for AOM when a decision to treat with antibiotics has been made, and the child has received amoxicillin in the last 30 d or has concurrent purulent conjunctivitis, or has a history of recurrent AOM unresponsive to amoxicillin.
- Reassess the patient if the caregiver reports that the child's symptoms have worsened or failed to respond to the initial antibiotic treatment within 48-72 h and determine whether a change in therapy is needed.
- Do NOT prescribe prophylactic antibiotics to reduce the frequency of episodes of AOM in children with recurrent AOM.
- Recommend annual influenza vaccine to all children according to vaccination schedule.
- Encourage exclusive breastfeeding for at least 6 mo.
- Encourage avoidance of tobacco smoke exposure.

Option

- Offer tympanostomy tubes for recurrent AOM (3 episodes in 6 mo or 4 episodes in 1 yr with 1 episode in the preceding 6 mo).

- 2nd line
 - ♦ amoxicillin-clavulanic acid (Augmentin®)
 - ♦ cephalosporins: cefuroxime axetil (Zinacef®), ceftriaxone (Rocephin®), cefaclor (Ceclor®), cefixime (Suprax®)
 - ♦ AOM deemed unresponsive if clinical signs/symptoms and otoscopic findings persist beyond 48 h of antibiotic treatment
- symptomatic therapy
 - antipyretics/analgesics (e.g. acetaminophen)
 - decongestants: may relieve nasal congestion but does not treat AOM
- prevention
 - parent education about risk factors
 - antibiotic prophylaxis: amoxicillin or macrolide shown effective at half therapeutic dose
 - pneumococcal and influenza vaccine
 - surgery
 - ♦ choice of surgical therapy for recurrent AOM depends on whether local factors (Eustachian tube dysfunction) are responsible (use ventilation tubes), or regional disease factors (tonsillitis, adenoid hypertrophy, sinusitis) are responsible

Complications

- extracranial: hearing loss and speech delay (secondary to persistent middle ear effusion), TM perforation, extension of suppurative process to adjacent structures (mastoiditis, petrositis, labyrinthitis), cholesteatoma, facial nerve palsy, middle ear atelectasis, ossicular necrosis, vestibular dysfunction
- intracranial: meningitis, epidural and brain abscess, subdural empyema, lateral and cavernous sinus thrombosis, carotid artery thrombosis

Otitis Media with Effusion

Definition

- presence of fluid in the middle ear without signs or symptoms of ear infection

Epidemiology

- most common cause of pediatric hearing loss
- not exclusively a pediatric disease
- follows AOM frequently in children
- middle ear effusions have been shown to persist following an episode of AOM for 1 mo in 40% of children, 2 mo in 20%, and >3 mo in 10%

Risk Factors

- same as AOM

Clinical Features

- conductive hearing loss ± tinnitus
- fullness – blocked ear
- ± pain, low grade fever
- otoscopy of TM
 - discoloration – amber or dull gray with “glue” ear
 - meniscus fluid level behind TM
 - air bubbles
 - retraction pockets/TM atelectasis
 - most reliable finding with pneumatic otoscopy is immobility

Treatment

- expectant: 90% resolve by 3 mo
- document hearing loss with audiogram (see [Otolaryngology](#) Figure 16B and Figure 17B, OT10)
- no statistical proof that antihistamines, decongestants, antibiotics clear disease faster
- surgery: myringotomy ± ventilation tubes ± adenoidectomy (if enlarged or on insertion of second set of tubes after first set falls out)
- ventilation tubes to equalize pressure and drain ear

Complications of OME

- hearing loss, speech delay, learning problems in young children
- chronic mastoiditis
- ossicular erosion
- cholesteatoma especially when retraction pockets involve pars flaccida
- retraction of tympanic membrane, atelectasis, ossicular fixation

Gastroenteritis

- see [Gastroenterology](#), P36

HIV Infection

- see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID29



Infectious Pediatric Exanthems

Table 23. Common Infectious Pediatric Exanthems

Disease	Pathogen(s)	Incubation Period	Communicability	Mode of Transmission	Rash	Associated Features	Management	Outcomes and Complications
Erythema Infectiosum (i.e. Fifth Disease)	Parvovirus B19	4-14 d	Low risk of transmission once symptomatic	Respiratory secretions or infected blood	Appearance: uniform, erythematous maculopapular 'lacy' rash Timing: 10-17 d after symptoms (immune response) Distribution: bilateral cheeks ('slapped cheeks') with circumoral sparing; may affect trunk and extremities	Initial 7-10 d of flu-like illness and fever Rash may be warm, non-tender, and pruritic Less common presentations include 'gloves and socks syndrome' or STAR complex (sore throat, arthritis, rash)	Supportive	Rash fades over days to week, but may reappear months later with sunlight, exercise Aplastic crisis
Gianotti-Crosti Syndrome (i.e. Papular Acrodermatitis)	EBV and Hep B (majority)	Variable	None	—	Appearance: asymptomatic symmetric papules Distribution: face, cheeks, extensor surfaces of the extremities, spares trunk	Viral prodrome May have lymphadenopathy and/or hepatosplenomegaly	Supportive Pain control	Resolves in 3-12 wk
Hand, Foot, and Mouth Disease	Coxsackie group A	3-5 d	Likely 1-7 d after symptoms but may be up to months	Direct and indirect contact with infected bodily fluids, fecal-oral	Appearance: vesicles and pustules on an erythematous base Distribution: acral	Enanthem: vesicles in the POSTERIOR oral cavity (pharynx, tongue)	Supportive	Mainly dehydration
Herpes Simplex	HSV 1,2	1-26 d		Direct contact, often through saliva for HSV-1 and sexual contact for HSV-2	Grouped vesicles on an erythematous base	Enanthem: vesicles/erosions in the ANTERIOR oral cavity (buccal mucosa, tongue) May present with herpetic whitlow (autoinoculation)	Mainly supportive Consider oral or topical antivirals	Local: secondary skin infections, keratitis, gingivostomatitis CNS: encephalitis Disseminated hepatitis, DIC Eczema herpeticum
Kawasaki Disease	See P96							
Measles	Morbillivirus	8-13 d	4 d before and after rash	Airborne	Appearance: erythematous maculopapular Timing: 3 d after start of symptoms Distribution: starts at hairline and spreads downwards with sparing of palms and soles	Prodrome of cough, coryza, conjunctivitis (3 Cs) Enanthem: Koplik's spots 1-2 d before rash Desquamation Positive serology for measles IgM	Infected: supportive Unimmunized contacts: measles vaccine within 72 h of exposure or IgG within 6 d of exposure Respiratory isolation, report to Public Health Prevention: MMR vaccine	Secondary bacterial infections: AOM, sinusitis, pneumonia Encephalitis Rare: myocarditis, pericarditis, thrombocytopenia, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, GN, subacute sclerosing panencephalitis

Table 23. Common Infectious Pediatric Exanthems (continued)

Disease	Pathogen(s)	Incubation Period	Communicability	Mode of Transmission	Rash	Associated Features	Management	Outcomes and Complications
Non-Specific Enteroviral Exanthems	Enteroviruses	Variable	Variable	Direct and indirect contact with infected bodily fluids	Polymorphous rash (macules, papules, vesicles, petechiae, urticaria)	Systemic involvement is rare, but possible	Supportive Diagnosis confirmed using viral cultures (NP and rectal swabs)	Self-limiting
Roseola	HHV 6	5-15 d	Unknown	—	Appearance: blanching, pink, maculopapular Timing: appears once fever subsides Distribution: starts at the neck and trunk and spreads to the face and extremities	High grade fever Common: irritability, anorexia, lymphadenopathy, erythematous TM and pharynx, Nagayama spots (erythematous papules on soft palate and uvula) Less common: cough, coryza, bulging fontanelles	Supportive	CNS: febrile seizures (10-25%), aseptic meningitis Thrombocytopenia
Rubella	Rubivirus	14-21 d	7 d before and after eruptions	Droplet	Appearance: pink, maculopapular Timing: 1-5 d after start of symptoms Distribution: starts on face and spreads to neck and trunk	Prodrome of low grade fever and occipital/retroauricular nodes STAR complex (sore throat, arthritis, rash) Positive serology for rubella IgM	Infected: supportive Prevention: MMR vaccine Report to Public Health	Excellent prognosis with acquired disease Arthritis may last days to weeks Encephalitis Irreversible defects in congenitally infected patients (i.e. congenital rubella syndrome)
Scarlet Fever	See P60							
Varicella	Varicella zoster virus	0-21 d	1-2 d pre-eruptions and 5 d post-eruption	Mainly airborne, but also through direct contact with vesicle fluid	Appearance: groups of skin lesions, polymorphic, from macules to papules to vesicles to crusts Timing: 1-3 d after start of symptoms Distribution: generalized	Significant pruritis Enanthem: vesicular lesions which may become pustular or ulcerate	Supportive Avoid salicylates (due to risk of Reye syndrome) Consider antivirals Respiratory and contact isolation, report to Public Health Prevention: varicella vaccine	Skin: bacterial suprainfection, necrotizing fasciitis CNS: acute encephalitis and cerebellar ataxia Systemic: hepatitis, DIC Congenital varicella syndrome if intrapartum infection

Infectious Mononucleosis

Definition

- systemic viral infection caused by EBV with multivisceral involvement; often called “the great imitator”

Epidemiology

- peak incidence between 15-19 yr old
- ~50% of children in developed countries have a primary EBV infection by 5 yr old, but <10% of children develop clinical infection

Etiology

- EBV: a member of herpesviridae
- transmission is mainly through infected saliva (“kissing disease”) and sexual activity (less commonly); incubation period of 1-2 mo

Risk Factors

- infectious contacts, sexually active, multiple sexual partners in the past

History

- prodrome: 2-3 d of malaise, anorexia
- infants and young children: often asymptomatic or mild disease
- older children and adolescents: malaise, fatigue, fever, sore throat, abdominal pain (often LUQ), headache, myalgia

Physical Exam

- classic triad: febrile, generalized non-tender lymphadenopathy, pharyngitis/tonsillitis (exudative)
- ± hepatosplenomegaly
- ± periorbital edema, ± rash (urticarial, maculopapular, or petechial) – more common after inappropriate treatment with β -lactam antibiotics
- any “-itis” (including arthritis, hepatitis, nephritis, myocarditis, meningitis, encephalitis, etc.)

Investigations

- heterophil antibody test (Monospot® test)
 - 85% sensitive in adults and older children, but only 50% sensitive if <4 yr of age
 - false positive results with HIV, SLE, lymphoma, rubella, parvovirus
- EBV titers
- CBC and differential, blood smear: atypical lymphocytes, lymphocytosis, Downey cells ± anemia ± thrombocytopenia
- throat culture to rule out streptococcal pharyngitis

Management

- supportive: adequate rest, hydration, saline gargles, and analgesics for sore throat
- splenic enlargement is often not clinically apparent so all patients should avoid contact sports for 6-8 wk
- if airway obstruction secondary to nodal and/or tonsillar enlargement is present (especially younger children), admit for steroid therapy
- acyclovir does NOT reduce duration of symptoms or result in earlier return to school/work

Prognosis

- most acute symptoms resolve in 1-2 wk, though fatigue may last for months
- short-term complications: splenic rupture, Guillain-Barré syndrome

Infectious Pharyngitis/Tonsillitis

Definition

- inflammation of the pharynx, especially the tonsils if present, causing a sore throat

Etiology

- viral (~80%): adenoviruses, enteroviruses, coxsackie, upper respiratory tract viruses, EBV, CMV
- bacterial (~20%): mainly GAS, *M. pneumoniae* (older children), *N. gonorrhoeae* (sexually active), *C. diphtheriae* (unvaccinated)
- fungal: *Candida*

Epidemiology

- season: GAS pharyngitis more common in late winter or early spring; viral all year long
- age: GAS pharyngitis peak incidence at 5-12 yr of age and uncommon <3 yr; viral pharyngitis affects all ages

History

- GAS: sore throat (may be severe), fever, malaise, headache, abdominal pain, N/V, absence of other URTI symptoms
- viral: sore throat (often mild), conjunctivitis, cough, rhinorrhea, hoarseness, diarrhea, flu-like symptoms (fever, malaise, myalgias)

Physical Exam

- GAS: febrile, pharyngeal/tonsillar erythema and exudates, enlarged (>1 cm) and tender anterior cervical lymph nodes, palatal petechiae, strawberry tongue, scarlatiniform rash
- viral: afebrile, absent/mild tonsillar exudates, minor and non-tender adenopathy, viral exanthems

Investigations

- no single sign or symptom reliably identifies GAS as the causative organism in children with sore throat
- scores are used to predict if throat culture will be positive (e.g. McIsaac Criteria)
 - these score systems have not been found to be sensitive or specific enough to diagnose GAS in children and adolescents with sore throat
- suspected diagnosis of GAS pharyngitis should be confirmed with a rapid streptococcal antigen test and a follow-up throat culture if the rapid test is negative

Management

- antibiotics (for GAS/*S. pyogenes*)
 - penicillin V or amoxicillin or erythromycin (if penicillin allergy) x 10 d
 - can prevent rheumatic fever if given within 9 d of symptoms; does NOT alter risk of post-streptococcal GN
- supportive: hydration and acetaminophen for discomfort due to pain and/or fever
- follow-up: if uncomplicated course, no follow-up or post-antibiotic throat cultures needed
- prophylaxis: consider tonsillectomy for proven, recurrent streptococcal tonsillitis

Complications

- preventable with antibiotics: AOM, sinusitis, cervical adenitis, mastoiditis, retropharyngeal/peritonsillar abscess, sepsis
- immune-mediated complications: scarlet fever, acute rheumatic fever, post-streptococcal GN, reactive arthritis, pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorder associated with group A *Streptococci* (i.e. PANDAS)

SCARLET FEVER

- diffuse erythematous eruption
- delayed-type hypersensitivity reaction to pyrogenic exotoxin produced by GAS
- acute onset of fever, sore throat, strawberry tongue
- 24-48 h after pharyngitis, rash begins in the groin, axillae, neck, antecubital fossa; Pastia's lines may be accentuated in flexural areas
- within 24 h, sandpaper rash becomes generalized with perioral sparing, non-pruritic, non-painful, blanchable
- rash fades after 3-4 d, may be followed by desquamation
- treatment is penicillin, amoxicillin, or erythromycin x 10 d

RHEUMATIC FEVER

- inflammatory disease due to antibody cross-reactivity following GAS infection
- affects ~1:10,000 children in developed world; much more prevalent in developing nations; peak incidence at 5-15 yr of age
- mainly a clinical diagnosis based on Jones Criteria (revised):
 - requires 2 major OR 1 major and 2 minor PLUS evidence of preceding strep infection (history of scarlet fever, GAS pharyngitis culture, positive rapid Ag detection test, ASOTs)
- treatment: penicillin or erythromycin for acute course x 10 d, prednisone if severe carditis
- secondary prophylaxis with daily penicillin or erythromycin
- complications
 - acute: myocarditis, conduction system aberrations (sinus tachycardia, atrial fibrillation), valvulitis (acute MR), pericarditis
 - chronic: valvular heart disease (mitral and/or aortic insufficiency/stenosis), infectious endocarditis ± thromboembolic phenomenon
 - onset of symptoms usually after 10-20 yr latency from acute carditis of rheumatic fever



McIsaac Criteria (if > 3 yr old)

HOT LACE

Hot (fever > 100.4°F)

Lymphadenopathy (anterior cervical, tender)

Age 3-14 yr

No Cough

Erythematous, exudative tonsils

CMAJ 1998;158(1):75-83



Scarlet Fever

4 Ss and 4 Ps

Sore throat

Swollen tonsils

Strawberry tongue

Sandpaper rash

Perioral sparing

Non-**P**ruritic

Non-**P**ainful

Peeling



Jones Criteria

Major: STREP

Sydenhams chorea

Transient migratory arthritis

Rheumatic subcutaneous nodules

Erythema marginatum

Pancarditis (endocarditis, myocarditis, pericarditis)

Minor: PEACE

PR interval prolonged

ESR elevated

Arthralgias

CRP elevated

Elevated temperature (fever)

POST-STREPTOCOCCAL GLOMERULONEPHRITIS

- most common in children aged 4-8 yr old; M>F
- antigen-antibody mediated complement activation with diffuse, proliferative GN
- occurs 1-3 wk following initial GAS infection (skin or throat)
- clinical presentation varies from asymptomatic, microscopic and macroscopic hematuria (cola-colored urine) to all features of nephritic syndrome (see P81)
- diagnosis is confirmed with elevated serum antibody titers against streptococcal antigens (ASOT, anti-DNAse B), low serum complement (C3)
- management
 - symptomatic: fluid and sodium restrictions; loop diuretics for HTN and edema
 - in severe cases, may require dialysis if renal function significantly impaired
 - treat with penicillin or erythromycin if evidence of persistent GAS infection
- 95% of children recover completely within 1-2 wk; 5-10% have persistent hematuria

Meningitis

Definition

- inflammation of the meninges surrounding the brain and spinal cord

Epidemiology

- peak age: 6-12 mo; 90% of cases occur in children <5 yr old

Etiology

- viral: enteroviruses, HSV
- bacterial: age-related variation in specific pathogens
- fungal and parasitic meningitis also possible
- most often due to hematogenous spread or direct extension from a contiguous site

Risk Factors

- unvaccinated
- immunocompromised: asplenia, DM, HIV, prematurity
- recent or current infections: AOM, sinusitis, orbital cellulitis
- neuroanatomical: congenital defects, dermal sinus, neurosurgery, cochlear implants, recent head trauma
- exposures: day care centers, household contact, recent travel

History

- signs and symptoms variable and dependent on age, duration of illness, and host response to infection
- infants: fever, lethargy, irritability, poor feeding, N/V, diarrhea, respiratory distress, seizures
- children: fever, headache, photophobia, N/V, confusion, back/neck pain/stiffness, lethargy, irritability

Physical Exam

- infants: toxic, hypothermia, bulging anterior fontanelle, respiratory distress, apnea, petechial/purpuric rash, jaundice
- children: toxic, ↓ LOC, nuchal rigidity, Kernig's and Brudzinski's signs, focal neurologic findings, petechial/purpuric rash

Investigations

- blood work: CBC, electrolytes, Cr, BUN, glucose, C&S
- LP required for definitive diagnosis
 - Gram stain, bacterial C&S, WBC count and differential, RBC count, glucose, protein concentration
 - acid-fast stain if suspect TB
 - PCR for specific bacteria if available (helpful if already treated with antibiotics)
 - urinalysis and urine C&S in infants, Gram stain and culture of petechial/purpuric lesions
 - HSV and enterovirus PCR if suspected

**Signs of Meningismus****BONK on the head**

Brudzinski's sign

Opisthotonos*

Nuchal rigidity

Kernig's sign

*Opisthotonos: rigid spasm of the body, with the back fully arched and the heels and head bent back

Table 24. CSF Findings of Meningitis

Component	Normal Child	Normal Newborn	Bacterial Meningitis	Viral Meningitis	Herpes Meningitis
WBC (/μL)	0-6	0-30	>1,000 (cloudy, xanthochromic)	100-500*	10-1,000
Neutrophils (%)	0	2-3	>50	<40	<50
Glucose (mmol/L)	2.2-4.4	1.8-6.7	<1.66	>1.66	>1.66
Protein (mg/dL)	0.2-0.3	0.19-1.49	>1.0	0.50-1.0	>0.75
RBC (/μL)	0-2	0-2	0-10	0-2	10-50

*Lymphocytes predominate Modified from: *Peds in Review* 1993;14:11-18 and *Ped Inf Dis J* 1996;15:298-303

Management

- supportive care
 - preservation of adequate cerebral perfusion by maintaining normal BP and managing ↑ ICP
 - close monitoring of fluids, electrolytes, glucose, acid-base disturbances, coagulopathies
- bacterial meningitis
 - if suspected or cannot be excluded, commence empiric antibiotic therapy while awaiting cultures or if LP contraindicated or delayed
 - adjuvant dexamethasone BEFORE antibiotic for Hib meningitis; consider for those >6 wk with pneumococcal meningitis
 - isolation with appropriate infection control procedures until 24 h after culture-sensitive antibiotic therapy
 - fluid restrict if any concern for SIADH
 - hearing test
 - report to Public Health; prophylactic antibiotics for close contacts of Hib and *N. meningitidis* meningitis

Table 25. Antibiotic Management of Bacterial Meningitis

Age	Main Pathogens	Antibiotics
0-28 d	GBS, <i>E. coli</i> , <i>Listeria</i> Other: Gram-negative bacilli	Ampicillin + cefotaxime
28-90 d	Overlap of neonatal pathogens and those seen in older children	Ampicillin + cefotaxime ± vancomycin
>90 d	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> , <i>N. meningitidis</i>	Ceftriaxone ± vancomycin

- viral meningitis
 - mainly supportive (except for HSV)
 - acyclovir for HSV meningitis
 - report to Public Health
- prophylaxis: appropriate vaccinations significantly decrease incidence of bacterial meningitis (see [Routine Immunization, P3](#))

Complications

- mortality: neonate 15-20%, children 4-8%; pneumococcus > meningococcus > Hib
- acute: SIADH, subdural effusion/empyema, brain abscess, disseminated infection (osteomyelitis, septic arthritis, abscess), shock/DIC
- chronic: hearing loss, neuromotor/cognitive delay, learning disabilities, neurological deficit, seizure disorder, hydrocephalus

Mumps

Definition

- acute, self-limited viral infection that is most commonly characterized by adenitis and swelling of the parotid glands

Epidemiology

- incidence has declined since introduction of two-dose MMR vaccination schedule
- average of 25 reported cases per yr
- majority of reported cases in children between 5-10 yr of age

Etiology

- mumps virus (RNA virus of the genus *Rubulavirus* in the *Paramyxoviridae* family)
- transmission via respiratory droplets, direct contact, fomites
- incubation period: 14-25 d

- infectivity period: 7 d pre-parotitis to 5 d post-parotitis
- upper respiratory tract → lymph nodes → salivary glands, gonads, pancreas, meninges, kidney, heart, thyroid

History

- non-specific prodrome of fever, headache, malaise, myalgias (especially neck pain)
- usually followed within 48 h by parotid swelling secondary to parotitis (bilateral, preauricular, ear pushed up and out)
- parotid gland is tender and pain worsened with spicy or sour foods
- one third of infections do not cause clinically apparent salivary gland swelling and may simply present as an URTI

Investigations

- clinical diagnosis, but may be confirmed with IgM positive serology within 4 wk of acute infection
 - may also use PCR or viral cultures from oral secretions, urine, blood, and CSF
 - blood work: CBC (leukopenia with relative lymphocytosis), serum amylase (elevated)

Management

- mainly supportive: analgesics, antipyretics, warm or cold packs to parotid may be soothing
- admit to hospital if serious complications (meningitis, pancreatitis)
- droplet precautions recommended until 5 d after onset of parotid swelling
- prophylaxis: routine vaccination (see *Routine Immunization*, P3)

Complications

- common: aseptic meningitis, orchitis/oophoritis
- less common: encephalitis, pancreatitis, thyroiditis, myocarditis, arthritis, GN, ocular complications, hearing impairment

Pertussis

Definition

- prolonged respiratory illness characterized by paroxysmal coughing and inspiratory “whoop”

Epidemiology

- ~10 million children <1 yr old affected worldwide, causes up to 400,000 deaths per yr
- greatest incidence among children <1 yr (not fully immunized) and adolescents (waning immunity)

Etiology

- *Bordetella pertussis*: Gram negative pleomorphic rod
- highly contagious; transmitted via respiratory droplets released during intense coughing
- incubation period: 6-20 d; most contagious during catarrhal phase but may remain contagious for weeks after

History

- prodromal catarrhal stage
 - lasts 1-7 d; URTI symptoms (coryza, mild cough, sneezing) with NO or LOW-GRADE fever
- paroxysmal stage
 - lasts 4-6 wk; characterized by paroxysms of cough (“100 day cough”), sometimes followed by inspiratory whoop (“whooping cough”)
 - infants <6 mo may present with post-tussive apnea, whoop is often absent
 - onset of attacks precipitated by yawning, sneezing, eating, physical exertion
 - ± post-tussive emesis, may become cyanotic before whoop
- convalescent stage
 - lasts 1-2 wk; characterized by occasional paroxysms of cough, but decreased frequency and severity
 - non-infectious but cough may last up to 6 mo

Investigations

- NP specimen using aspirate or NP swab
 - gold standard: culture using special media (Regan-Lowe agar)
 - PCR to detect pertussis antigens
- blood work: CBC (lymphocytosis) and serology (antibodies against *B. pertussis*)

Management

- admit if paroxysms of cough are associated with cyanosis and/or apnea and give O₂
- supportive care

- antimicrobial therapy indicated if *B. pertussis* isolated, or symptoms present for <21 d
 - use macrolide antibiotics (azithromycin, erythromycin, or clarithromycin)
- droplet isolation until 5 d of treatment and report to Public Health
- prophylaxis
 - macrolide antibiotics for all household contacts
 - prevention with vaccination in infants and children (Pentacel®), and booster in adolescents (Adacel®) (see [Routine Immunization, P3](#))

Complications

- pressure-related from paroxysms: subconjunctival hemorrhage, rectal prolapse, hernias, epistaxis
- respiratory: sinusitis, pneumonia, aspiration, atelectasis, pneumomediastinum, pneumothorax, alveolar rupture
- neurological: seizures (~3%), encephalopathy, ICH
- mortality: ~0.3%; highest risk in infants <6 mo old

Pneumonia

- see [Pediatric Respiriology, P90](#)

Periorbital (Preseptal) and Orbital Cellulitis

- see [Ophthalmology, OP10](#)

Sexually Transmitted Disease

- see [Family Medicine, FM45](#) and [Gynecology, GY25](#)

Sinusitis

- see [Family Medicine, FM46](#)
- complication of ≤10% of URTIs in children
- clinical diagnosis
- diagnostic imaging is NOT required to confirm diagnosis in children
 - routine CT not recommended, but consider if suspect complications of sinusitis, persistent/recurrent disease, need for surgery
- antibiotic therapy for all children (although nearly half resolve spontaneously within 4 wk)
- complications: preseptal/orbital (preseptal/orbital cellulitis, orbital abscess, osteomyelitis, etc.), intracranial (meningitis, abscess, etc.), Pott's Puffy tumor

Urinary Tract Infection

Definition

- infection of the urinary bladder (cystitis) and/or kidneys (pyelonephritis)

Epidemiology

- overall prevalence in infants and young children presenting with fever is 7%
- <4-6 wk old: more common in boys
- >1 yr old: females have two- to four-fold higher prevalence

Etiology

- majority (>95%) have a monomicrobial cause (~70% *E. coli*)
- Gram-negative bacilli: *E. coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Proteus*, *Enterobacter*, *Pseudomonas*
- Gram-positive cocci: *S. saprophyticus*, *Enterococcus*

Risk Factors

- non-modifiable: female gender, Caucasian, previous UTIs, family history
- modifiable: urinary tract abnormalities (VUR, neurogenic bladder, obstructive uropathy, posterior urethral valve), dysfunctional voiding, repeated bladder catheterization, uncircumcised males, labial adhesions, sexually active, constipation, toilet training



Cardinal Signs of Orbital Cellulitis

- Ophthalmoplegia/diplopia
- Decreased visual acuity
- Pain with extraocular eye movement



Bagged urine specimen not useful for ruling in UTI (high false positive rate >85%), but useful for ruling out UTI (high sensitivity)



Features Suggestive of Pyelonephritis

- High-grade fever
- Flank or high abdominal pain
- CVA tenderness on palpation

History

- infants and young child: often just fever or non-specific symptoms (poor feeding, irritability, FTT, jaundice if <28 d old, vomiting)
- older child: fever, urinary symptoms (dysuria, urgency, frequency, incontinence, hematuria), abdominal and/or flank pain

Physical Exam

- infants and young child: toxic vs. non-toxic, febrile, FTT, jaundice; look for external genitalia abnormalities (phimosis, labial adhesions) and lower back signs of occult myelodysplasia (e.g. hair tufts), which may be associated with neurogenic bladder
- older child: febrile, suprapubic and/or CVA tenderness, abdominal mass (enlarged bladder or kidney); may present with short stature, FTT or HTN secondary to renal scarring from previously unrecognized or recurrent UTIs

Investigations

- sterile urine specimen
 - clean catch, catheterization, or suprapubic aspiration
 - urinalysis (leukocyte esterase, nitrites, erythrocytes, hemoglobin), microscopy (bacteria and leukocytes, erythrocytes), C&S
- diagnosis established if urinalysis suggests infection AND if $\geq 50,000$ colony-forming units per mL of a uropathogen cultured

Management

- admit if: <2 mo old, urosepsis, persistent vomiting, inability to tolerate oral medication, moderate-severe dehydration, immunocompromised, complex urologic pathology, inadequate follow-up, failure to respond to outpatient therapy
- supportive care: maintenance of hydration and adequate pain control
- antibiotics
 - base on local antimicrobial susceptibility patterns
 - commence broad empiric therapy until results of urine C&S known, and then tailor as appropriate
 - neonates: IV ampicillin and gentamicin
 - infants and older children: oral cephalexin if outpatient; IV ampicillin and gentamicin if inpatient
 - duration 7-14 d
- imaging
 - renal and bladder U/S for all febrile infants with UTIs looking for anatomical abnormalities, hydronephrosis, abscess
 - VCUG not recommended after 1st febrile UTI unless U/S reveals hydronephrosis, obstructive uropathies or other signs suggestive of high-grade VUR
- follow-up: outpatients to return in 24-48 h if no clinical response and seek prompt medical evaluation for future febrile illnesses
- prophylaxis: generally not recommended unless higher grades of VUR

Complications

- long-term morbidity: focal renal scarring develops in 8% of patients; long-term significance unknown



Sensitivity and Specificity of Urine Dip in Children

	Sensitivity	Specificity
Microscopy leukocytes	73%	81%
Nitrites	53%	98%
Leukocyte esterase	83%	78%
Microscopy bacteriuria	81%	83%
Leukocyte esterase or nitrites, or microscopy positive	99.8%	70%

Pediatrics 2011;128:595-610



Prophylaxis After First Febrile Urinary Tract Infection in Children? A Multicenter, Randomized Controlled, Noninferiority Trial

Pediatrics 2008;122:1064-1071

Study: Randomized, controlled, open-label, 2 armed, noninferiority trial.

Patients: 338 patients aged 2 mo-<7 yr who had a first episode of febrile UTI.

Intervention: No prophylaxis vs. prophylaxis.

Outcome: Recurrence rate of febrile UTI and rate of renal scarring.

Results: No significant difference in recurrence rate or in the rate of renal scarring between the prophylaxis and no prophylaxis group.

Neonatology

Gestational Age and Size

Definitions

- classification by GA
 - preterm: <37 wk
 - near-term: 35-37 wk
 - term: 37-42 wk
 - post-term: >42 wk
- classification by birth weight
 - SGA: 2 SD < mean weight for GA or <10th percentile
 - AGA: within 2 SD of mean weight for GA
 - LGA: 2 SD > mean weight for GA or >90th percentile



Dubowitz/Ballard Scores

GA can be determined after birth using Dubowitz/Ballard scores:

- Assessment at delivery of physical maturity (e.g. plantar creases, lanugo, ear maturation) and neuromuscular maturity (e.g. posture, arm recoil) translates into a score from -10 to +50
- Higher score means greater maturity (increased GA)
- -10 = 20 wk; +50 = 44 wk
- Ideal = 35-40, which corresponds to GA 38-40 wk
- Only accurate ± 2 wk

Table 26. Abnormalities of Gestational Age and Size

Features	Causes	Problems
Pre-Term Infants <37 wk	Spontaneous: cause unknown Maternal disease: HTN, DM, cardiac and renal disorders Fetal conditions: multiple pregnancy, congenital abnormalities Pregnancy issues: placental insufficiency, placenta previa, uterine malformations, previous preterm birth, infection Behavioral and psychological contributors: smoking, EtOH, drug use, psychosocial stressors Sociodemographic factors: age, socioeconomic conditions	RDS, apnea of prematurity, chronic lung disease, bronchopulmonary dysplasia Feeding difficulties, NEC Hypocalcemia, hypoglycemia, hypothermia Anemia, jaundice Retinopathy of prematurity ICH/IVH PDA
Post-Term Infants >42 wk Leathery skin Meconium staining	Most cases unknown Increased in first pregnancies Previous post-term birth Genetic factors	Increased risk of stillbirth or neonatal death Increased birthweight Fetal "postmaturity syndrome": impaired growth due to placental dysfunction Meconium aspiration
SGA Infants <10 th percentile Asymmetric (head-sparing): late onset, growth arrest	Extrinsic causes: placental insufficiency, poor nutrition, HTN, multiple pregnancies, drugs, EtOH, smoking	Perinatal hypoxia Hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia, hypothermia, hyperviscosity (polycythemia), jaundice, hypomotility
Symmetric: early onset, lower growth	Intrinsic causes: maternal infections (TORCH), congenital abnormalities, syndromal, idiopathic	PDA
LGA Infants >90 th percentile	Maternal DM Racial or familial factors Increasing parity Previous LGA infant, high BMI, large pregnancy weight gain Certain syndromes	Birth trauma, perinatal depression (meconium aspiration) RDS, TTN Jaundice, polycythemia Hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia

Routine Neonatal Care

- erythromycin ointment: applied to both eyes for prophylaxis of ophthalmia neonatorum
- vitamin K IM: prophylaxis against HDNB
- newborn screening tests
 - metabolic disorders (amino acid disorders, organic acid disorders, fatty acid oxidation defects, biotinidase deficiency, galactosemia)
 - blood disorders (SCD, other hemoglobinopathies)
 - endocrine disorders (CAH, congenital hypothyroidism)
 - others (CF, SCID)
 - congenital hearing loss
- if mother Rh negative: send cord blood for blood group and direct antiglobulin test
- if mother hepatitis B surface antigen positive: HBIG and start hepatitis B vaccine series

Neonatal Resuscitation

- assess Apgar score at 1 and 5 min
- if <7 at 5 min then reassess q5min, until >7
- do not wait to assign Apgar score before initiating resuscitation

Table 27. Apgar Score

Sign	0	1	2
Heart Rate	Absent	<100/min	>100/min
Respiratory Effort	Absent	Slow, irregular	Good, crying
Irritability	No response	Grimace	Cough/cry
Tone	Limp	Some flexion of extremities	Active motion
Color	Blue, pale	Body pink, extremities blue (acrocyanosis)	Completely pink



Apgar Score

Appearance (color)
Pulse (heart rate)
Grimace (irritability)
Activity (tone)
Respiration (respiratory effort)
Or: "How Ready Is This Child?"

Initial Resuscitation

- anticipation: know maternal history, history of pregnancy, labor, and delivery
- steps to take for all infants (before ABCs)
 - warm (radiant heater, warm towels) and dry the newborn (remove wet towels)
 - position and clear airway ("sniffing" position)
 - stimulate infant: rub lower back gently or flick soles of feet EXCEPT if meconium present (in which case tracheal suction first)
 - assess breathing and heart rate
- Airway
 - if meconium is present and
 - ♦ baby is vigorous (strong respiratory effort, good muscle tone, HR >100): no further resuscitative interventions required
 - ♦ baby is not vigorous: intubate and suction trachea while monitoring vital signs; if prolonged or unsuccessful intubation, attempt bag mask ventilation
 - if no meconium and suction required, suction mouth first and then nose
- Breathing
 - if HR <100 or apneic, apply PPV
 - PPV at rate of 40-60/min with enough pressure to see visible chest expansion and note increase in HR
 - monitor preductal SpO₂
 - if PPV not effective (no increase in HR, no chest rise, low SpO₂), incorporate corrective actions
- Circulation
 - if HR <60 after 30 s of effective ventilation, start chest compressions ("60 or less, compress")
 - should provide 100% oxygen as soon as chest compressions are required
 - chest compressions at lower 1/3 of the sternum and 1/3 of the AP depth at a rate of 120 events per min (3 compressions:1 ventilation = 120 compressions/min:40 breaths/min)



Targeted Preductal SpO₂ After Birth

1 min	60-65%
2 min	65-70%
3 min	70-75%
4 min	75-80%
5 min	80-85%
10 min	85-95%



Corrective Actions for PPV in Neonatal Resuscitation

MR SOPA

Mask readjustment
 Reposition airway
 Suction mouth and nose
 Open mouth
 Pressure increase
 Alternative airway

Table 28. Interventions Used in Neonatal Resuscitation

Intervention	Schedule	Indications	Comments
Epinephrine (adrenaline)	0.1-0.3 mL/kg/dose of 1:10,000 (0.01-0.03 mg/kg) IV 0.5-1 mL/kg/dose of 1:10,000 (0.05-0.1 mg/kg) endotracheally can be considered while awaiting IV access (IV preferred) Can be repeated q3-5 min prn	HR <60 and not rising	Side effects: tachycardia, HTN, cardiac arrhythmias
Naloxone (Narcan®)	0.1 mg/kg IV/IM	Not recommended as part of initial resuscitation HR and oxygenation should be restored by supporting ventilation	Do not use for chronic opiate exposure – may cause withdrawal symptoms including HTN, irritability, seizures Action of opioid outlasts action of naloxone therefore close monitoring required after administration
Fluid Bolus (NS, whole blood, Ringer's lactate)	10 mL/kg May need to be repeated Avoid giving too rapidly as large volume rapid infusions can be associated with IVH	Evidence of hypovolemia	

Approach to the Depressed Newborn

- a depressed newborn lacks one or more of the following characteristics of a normal newborn
 - pulse >100 bpm
 - cries when stimulated
 - actively moves all extremities
 - has a good strong cry
- approximately 10% of newborn babies require assistance with breathing after delivery

Table 29. Etiology of Respiratory Depression in the Newborn

Etiology	Examples
Respiratory Problems	RDS/hyaline membrane disease Pulmonary hypoplasia CNS depression MAS Pneumonia Pneumothorax Pleural effusions Congenital malformations
Anemia (severe)	Erythroblastosis fetalis Secondary hydrops fetalis
Maternal Causes	Drugs/anesthesia (opiates, magnesium sulphate) DM Maternal myasthenia gravis
Congenital Malformations/Birth Injury	Nuchal cord, perinatal depression Bilateral phrenic nerve injury Potter's sequence
Shock	Antepartum hemorrhage
CHD	Transposition of the great arteries with intact ventricular septum
Other	Hypothermia Hypoglycemia Infection

Diagnosis

- vital signs
- detailed maternal history: include prenatal care, illnesses, use of drugs, labor, previous high risk pregnancies, infections during pregnancy, current infections, duration of ruptured membranes, blood type and Rh status, amniotic fluid status, GA, meconium, Apgar scores
- clinical findings (observe for signs of respiratory distress such as cyanosis, tachypnea, retractions, grunting, temperature instability)
- laboratory results (CBC, ABG, blood type, glucose)
- transillumination of chest to evaluate for pneumothorax
- CXR

Management

- ABCs
- intubation and suction if meconium present
- apply tactile stimulation if no meconium
- provide PPV if apneic or HR <100 bpm
- monitor SpO₂ and HR (if <60 bpm, start chest compressions)
- provide ventilatory support and treat the underlying cause

Common Conditions of Neonates

Apnea

Definition

- “periodic breathing”: normal respiratory pattern seen in newborns in which periods of rapid respiration are alternated with pauses lasting 5-10 s
- “apnea”: absence of respiratory gas flow for >20 s (or less if associated with bradycardia or desaturation) – 3 types
 - central: no chest wall movement, no signs of obstruction
 - obstructive: chest wall movement continues against obstructed upper airway, no airflow
 - mixed: combination of central and obstructive apnea

Differential Diagnosis

- in term infants, apnea requires full workup as it can be associated with sepsis
- other causes
 - CNS
 - ♦ apnea of prematurity (<34 wk): combination of CNS immaturity and obstructive apnea; resolves by 36 wk GA; diagnosis of exclusion
 - ♦ seizures
 - ♦ ICH
 - ♦ hypoxic injury

- infectious: sepsis, meningitis, NEC
- GI: GERD, aspiration with feeding
- metabolic: hypoglycemia, hyponatremia, hypocalcemia, inborn error of metabolism
- cardiovascular: anemia, hypovolemia, PDA, heart failure
- medications: morphine

Management

- O₂, ventilatory support, maintain normal blood gases
- tactile stimulation
- correct underlying cause
- medications: methylxanthines (caffeine) stimulate the CNS and diaphragm and are used for apnea of prematurity (not in term infants)

Bleeding Disorders in Neonates

Clinical Presentation

- oozing from the umbilical stump, excessive bleeding from peripheral venipuncture/heel stick sites/IV sites, large caput succedaneum, cephalohematomas (in absence of significant birth trauma), subgaleal hemorrhage and prolonged bleeding following circumcision

Etiology

- 4 major categories
 - increased platelet destruction: maternal ITP or SLE, infection/sepsis, DIC, neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia, autoimmune thrombocytopenia
 - decreased platelet production/function: pancytopenia, bone marrow replacement, Fanconi anemia, Trisomy 13 and 18
 - metabolic: congenital thyrotoxicosis, inborn error of metabolism
 - coagulation factor deficiencies (see [Hematology, H29](#)): hemophilia A/B, HDNB

NEONATAL ALLOIMMUNE THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Epidemiology

- 1 per 4,000-5,000 live births

Pathophysiology

- platelet equivalent of Rh disease of the newborn
- occurs when mother is negative for HPA and fetus is positive
- development of maternal IgG antibodies against HPA antigens on fetal platelets

Clinical Presentation

- petechiae, purpura, thrombocytopenia in otherwise healthy neonate
- severe disease can lead to intracranial bleeding

Diagnosis

- maternal and paternal platelet typing and identification of platelet alloantibodies

Treatment

- IVIg to mother prenatally starts in second trimester ± steroids ± fetal platelet transfusions
- treat neonate with IVIg
- if transfusion required should be with washed maternal platelets or donor HPA negative platelets

AUTOIMMUNE THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Pathophysiology

- caused by antiplatelet antibodies from maternal ITP or SLE
- passive transfer of antibodies across placenta

Clinical Presentation

- similar presentation to neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia, but thrombocytopenia usually less severe

Treatment

- steroids to mother for 10-14 d prior to delivery or IVIg to mother before delivery
- treat neonate with IVIg (usually if platelets <60,000)
- transfusion of infant with maternal/donor platelets only in severe cases, as antibodies will destroy transfused platelets

HEMORRHAGIC DISEASE OF THE NEWBORN

Pathophysiology

- caused by vitamin K deficiency
- factors II, VII, IX, X are vitamin K-dependent, therefore both PT and PTT are abnormal

Etiology and Clinical Presentation

- neonates at risk of vitamin K deficiency if: vitamin K poorly transferred across the placenta; maternal use of antiepileptics; insufficient bacterial colonization of colon at birth to synthesize vitamin K; breastfed (vitamin K intake inadequate in breastfed infants)
- neonate may present with hematomas, ICH (causing apnea or seizures), internal bleeding, hematuria, bruising, prolonged bleeding (often from mucous membranes, umbilicus, circumcision, and venipunctures)

Prevention

- vitamin K IM administration at birth to all newborns

Bronchopulmonary Dysplasia

Definition

- also known as chronic lung disease
- clinically defined as O₂ requirement for >28 d plus persistent need for oxygen and/or ventilatory support at 36 wk corrected GA
- damage to developing lungs with prolonged intubation/ventilation

Investigations

- CXR findings may demonstrate decreased lung volumes, areas of atelectasis, and hyperinflation

Treatment

- no good treatments
- gradual wean from ventilator, optimize nutrition
- dexamethasone may help decrease inflammation and encourage weaning, but use of dexamethasone is associated with increased risk of adverse neurodevelopmental outcomes

Prognosis

- chronic respiratory failure may lead to pulmonary HTN, poor growth, and right-sided heart failure
- patients with bronchopulmonary dysplasia may continue to have significant impairment and deterioration in lung function late into adolescence
- some lung abnormalities may persist into adulthood including airway obstruction, airway hyper-reactivity, and emphysema
- associated with increased risk of adverse neurodevelopmental outcomes

Cyanosis

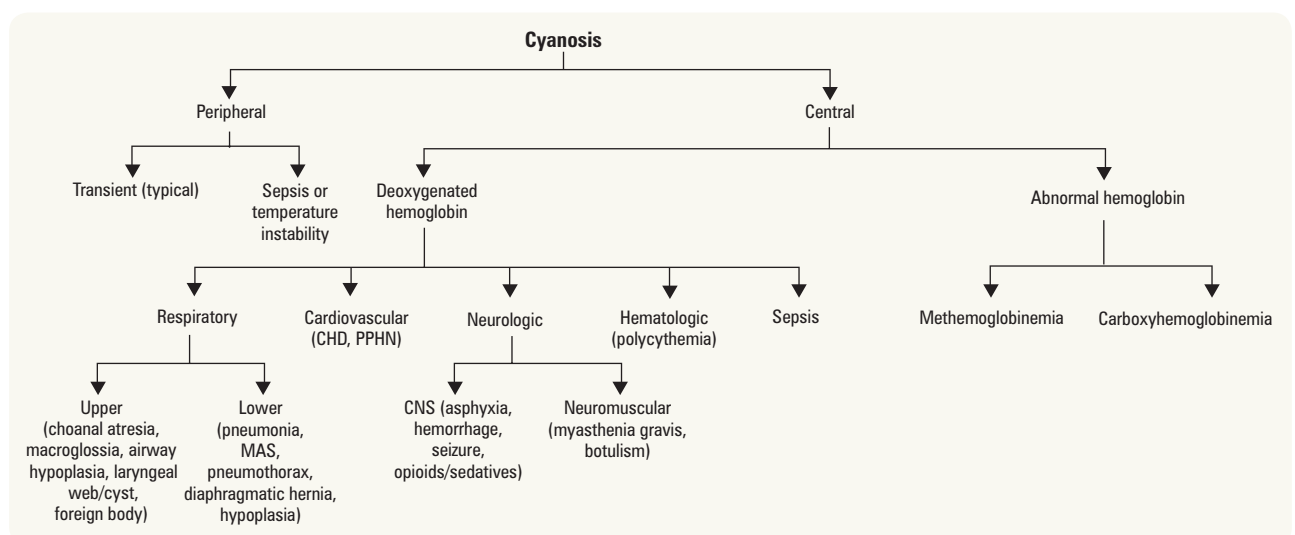


Figure 12. Approach to neonatal cyanosis

Management

- ABGs
 - elevated CO₂ suggests respiratory cause
 - hyperoxia test (to distinguish between cardiac and respiratory causes of cyanosis): get baseline PaO₂ in room air, then PaO₂ on 100% O₂ for 10-15 min
 - ♦ PaO₂ <150 mmHg: suggests cyanotic CHD or possible PPHN (see *Pediatric Cardiology*, P16)
 - ♦ PaO₂ >150 mmHg: suggests cyanosis likely due to respiratory or non-cardiac cause
- CXR: look for respiratory abnormalities (respiratory tract malformations, evidence of shunting, pulmonary infiltrates) and cardiac abnormalities (cardiomegaly, abnormalities of the great vessels)



Carboxyhemoglobinemia (secondary to carbon monoxide poisoning) results in impaired binding of oxygen to hemoglobin but does not discolor the blood. Therefore it may not register on pulse oximetry and cyanosis may not be evident clinically

Methemoglobinemia typically reads higher on pulse oximetry than the true level of oxyhemoglobin. Methemoglobinemia alters the absorption of red light at the two wavelengths that pulse oximetry uses to predict oxygen saturation



Diaphragmatic Hernia

- see [General Surgery](#), GS12

Definition

- developmental defect of the diaphragm with herniation of abdominal organs into thorax
- associated with pulmonary hypoplasia and PPHN

Clinical Presentation

- respiratory distress, cyanosis
- scaphoid abdomen and barrel-shaped chest
- affected side dull to percussion and breath sounds absent, may hear bowel sounds instead
- heart sounds shifted to contralateral side
- asymmetric chest movements, trachea deviated away from affected side
- may present outside of neonatal period
- often associated with other anomalies (cardiovascular, CNS, chromosomal abnormalities)
- CXR: bowel loops in thorax (usually left side), displaced mediastinum

Treatment

- immediate intubation required at birth: DO NOT bag mask ventilate because air will enter stomach and further compress lungs
- place large bore orogastric tube to decompress bowel
- initial stabilization and management of pulmonary hypoplasia and PPHN, hemodynamic support and surgery when stable

Hypoglycemia

Definition

- glucose <40 mg/dL

Etiology

- decreased carbohydrate stores: premature, SGA, RDS, maternal HTN
- endocrine: hormonal deficiencies (GH, cortisol, epinephrine), insulin excess (infant of diabetic mother, Beckwith-Wiedemann syndrome/islet cell hyperplasia), HPA axis suppression (panhypopituitarism)
- inborn errors of metabolism: fatty acid oxidation defects, galactosemia
- miscellaneous: sepsis, hypothermia, polycythemia

Clinical Findings

- signs often non-specific and subtle: lethargy, poor feeding, irritability, tremors, apnea, cyanosis, seizures

Management

- identify and monitor infants at risk (pre-feed blood glucose checks)
- begin oral feeds as soon as possible after birth and ensure regular feeds
- if significant and/or symptomatic hypoglycemia, provide glucose IV and titrate according to blood sugar levels
- if persistent hypoglycemia or no predisposing cause, send “critical blood work” during an episode of hypoglycemia: ABG, ammonia, β-hydroxybutyrate, cortisol, free fatty acids, GH, insulin, lactate, urine dipstick for ketones

Intraventricular Hemorrhage

Definition

- hemorrhage originating in the periventricular subependymal germinal matrix

Epidemiology

- incidence and severity inversely proportional to GA
- 50% of IVH occurs within 8 h of birth; 90% occurs by day 3

Risk Factors

- prematurity (<32 wk), BW <1,500 g, need for vigorous resuscitation at birth, pneumothorax, ventilated preterm infants, hemodynamic instability, RDS, coagulopathy

Clinical Presentation

- many infants with IVH are asymptomatic
- subtle signs: apnea, bradycardia, changes in tone or activity, altered LOC
- catastrophic presentation: bulging fontanelle, sudden drop in hematocrit, acidosis, seizures, hypotension

Classification

- Papile classification
- parenchymal hemorrhage may also occur in the absence of IVH
- routine head U/S screening of all preterm infants <32 wk or <1,500 g gestation throughout NICU stay
- consider MRI at term for extremely LBW infants

Management of Acute Hemorrhage

- supportive care to maintain blood volume and acid-base status
- avoid fluctuations in blood pressure and cerebral blood flow
- follow-up with serial imaging

Prognosis

- outcome depends on grade of IVH
- short-term sequelae for severe IVH: mortality, extension of bleed, posthemorrhagic hydrocephalus, posthemorrhagic infarction, cyst formation
- possible long-term major neurological sequelae: CP, cognitive deficits, motor deficits, visual and hearing impairment
- Grades I and II hemorrhages have a relatively favorable prognosis
- greatest morbidity and mortality is seen with Grade IV hemorrhage and posthemorrhagic hydrocephalus requiring ventriculoperitoneal shunt placement



Papile Classification

Grade I: germinal matrix hemorrhage
Grade II: IVH without ventricular dilatation
Grade III: IVH with ventricular dilatation
Grade IV: IVH with parenchymal extension

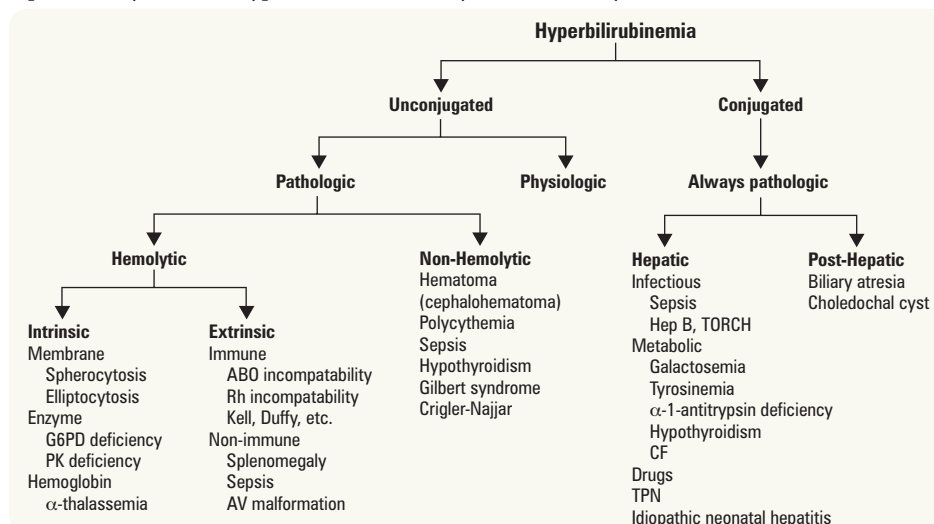
Jaundice

Clinical Presentation

- jaundice is visible at serum bilirubin levels of 5 mg/dL; visual assessment is often misleading
- look at sclera, tip of nose in natural light
- jaundice more severe/prolonged (due to increased retention of bilirubin in the circulation) with: prematurity, acidosis, hypoalbuminemia, dehydration, hemolysis



Jaundice is very common – 60% of term newborns develop visible jaundice



Jaundice in the first 24 h of life and conjugated hyperbilirubinemia are always pathological

Figure 13. Approach to neonatal hyperbilirubinemia

PHYSIOLOGIC JAUNDICE

Epidemiology

- term infants: onset 3-4 d of life, resolution by 10 d of life
- premature infants: higher peak and longer duration

Pathophysiology

- increased hematocrit and decreased RBC lifespan
- immature glucuronyl transferase enzyme system (slow conjugation of bilirubin)
- increased enterohepatic circulation

Breastfeeding Jaundice

- common; due to a lack of milk production → dehydration → exaggerated physiologic jaundice

Breast Milk Jaundice

- 1 per 200 breastfed infants
- glucuronyl transferase inhibitor found in breast milk
- onset 7 d of life, peak at 2-3 wk of life, usually resolved by 6 wk

Table 30. Risk Factors for Jaundice

Maternal Factors	Perinatal Factors	Neonatal Factors
Ethnic group (e.g. Asian, native American) Complications during pregnancy (infant of diabetic mother, Rh or ABO incompatibility) Breastfeeding	Birth trauma (cephalohematoma, ecchymoses) Prematurity	Difficulty establishing breastfeeding Infection (sepsis, hepatitis) Genetic factors Polycythemia Drugs TPN

Table 31. Causes of Neonatal Jaundice by Age

<24 h	24-72 h	72-96 h	Prolonged (>1 wk)
ALWAYS PATHOLOGIC Hemolytic Rh or ABO incompatibility Sepsis Congenital infection (TORCH) Severe bruising/hemorrhage	Physiologic, polycythemia Dehydration (breastfeeding jaundice) Hemolysis G6PD deficiency Pyruvate kinase deficiency Spherocytosis Bruising, hemorrhage, hematoma Sepsis/congenital infection	Physiologic ± breastfeeding Sepsis	Breast milk jaundice Prolonged physiologic jaundice in preterm Hypothyroidism Neonatal hepatitis Conjugation dysfunction e.g. Gilbert syndrome, Crigler-Najjar syndrome Inborn errors of metabolism e.g. galactosemia Biliary tract obstruction e.g. biliary atresia

PATHOLOGIC JAUNDICE

- all cases of conjugated hyperbilirubinemia; some cases of unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia are pathologic

Investigations

- unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia
 - hemolytic workup: CBC, reticulocyte count, blood group (mother and infant), peripheral blood smear, Coombs test
 - if baby is unwell or has fever: septic workup (CBC and differential, blood and urine cultures ± LP, CXR)
 - other: G6PD screen (especially in males), TSH
- conjugated hyperbilirubinemia must be investigated without delay
 - consider liver enzymes (AST, ALT), coagulation studies (PT, PTT), serum albumin, ammonia, TSH, TORCH screen, septic workup, galactosemia screen (erythrocyte galactose-1-phosphate uridylyltransferase levels), metabolic screen, abdominal U/S, HIDA scan, sweat chloride



Jaundice must be investigated if:

- It occurs within 24 h of age
- Conjugated hyperbilirubinemia is present
- Unconjugated bilirubin rises rapidly or is excessive for patient's age and weight
- Persistent jaundice lasts beyond 1-2 wk of age

TREATMENT OF UNCONJUGATED HYPERBILIRUBINEMIA

- to prevent kernicterus
- breastfeeding does not usually need to be discontinued, ensure adequate feeds and hydration
- lactation consultant support, mother to pump after feeds
- treat underlying causes (e.g. sepsis)
- phototherapy (blue-green wavelength, not UV light)
 - insoluble unconjugated bilirubin is converted to excretable form via photoisomerization
 - serum bilirubin should be monitored during and immediately after therapy (risk of rebound because photoisomerization reversible when phototherapy discontinued)

- contraindicated in conjugated hyperbilirubinemia: results in “bronzed” baby
- side effects: skin rash, diarrhea, eye damage (eye shield used routinely for prevention), dehydration
- use published guidelines and nomogram for initiation of phototherapy
- exchange transfusion
 - indications: high bilirubin levels as per published graphs based on age, weeks gestation
 - most commonly performed for hemolytic disease and G6PD deficiency
 - use of IVIg in case of severe hyperbilirubinemia (DAT+) becoming evidence-based practice

**“Bronzed” Baby in Infants with Conjugated Hyperbilirubinemia**

Phototherapy results in the production and accumulation of a toxic metabolite which also imparts a bronze hue on the baby's skin

KERNICTERUS**Etiology**

- unconjugated bilirubin concentrations exceed albumin binding capacity and bilirubin is deposited in the brain resulting in permanent damage (typically basal ganglia or brainstem)
- incidence increases as serum bilirubin levels increase above 19.8 mg/dL
- can occur at lower levels in presence of sepsis, meningitis, hemolysis, hypoxia, acidosis, hypothermia, hypoglycemia, and prematurity

Clinical Presentation

- up to 15% of infants have no obvious neurologic symptoms
- early stage: lethargy, hypotonia, poor feeding, emesis (bilirubin encephalopathy)
- mid stage: hypertonia, high pitched cry, opisthotonic posturing (back arching), bulging fontanelle, seizures, pulmonary hemorrhage
- late stage (first year and beyond)
 - hypotonia, delayed motor skills, extrapyramidal abnormalities (choreoathetoid CP), gaze palsy, mitral regurgitation, sensorineural hearing loss

Prevention

- exchange transfusion, IVIg if indicated

BILIARY ATRESIA

- see [General Surgery](#), GS63

**Definition**

- atresia of the extrahepatic bile ducts which leads to cholestasis and increased conjugated bilirubin after the first week of life
- progressive obliterative cholangiopathy

Epidemiology

- incidence: 1:10,000-15,000 live births
- associated anomalies in 10-35% of cases: situs inversus, congenital heart defects, polysplenia

Clinical Presentation

- dark urine, pale stool, jaundice (persisting for >2 wk), abdominal distension, hepatomegaly

Diagnosis

- conjugated hyperbilirubinemia, abdominal U/S
- HIDA scan (may be bypassed in favor of biopsy if timing of diagnosis is critical)
- liver biopsy

Treatment

- surgical drainage procedure
- hepatoportoenterostomy (Kasai procedure; most successful if <8 wk of age)
- two-thirds will eventually require liver transplantation
- vitamins A, D, E, and K; diet should be enriched with medium-chain triglycerides to ensure adequate fat ingestion

Necrotizing Enterocolitis**Definition**

- intestinal inflammation associated with focal or diffuse ulceration and necrosis
- primarily affecting terminal ileum and colon

Epidemiology

- affects 1-5% of preterm newborns admitted to NICU

Pathophysiology

- postulated mechanism of bowel ischemia: mucosal damage and enteral feeding → bacterial growth → bowel necrosis/gangrene/perforation

Risk Factors

- prematurity (immature defenses)
- asphyxia, shock (poor bowel perfusion)
- hyperosmolar feeds
- enteral feeding with formula (breast milk can be protective)
- sepsis

Clinical Presentation

- usually presents at 2-3 wk of age
- distended abdomen
- increased amount of gastric aspirate/vomit with bile staining
- frank or occult blood in stool
- feeding intolerance
- diminished bowel sounds
- signs of bowel perforation (sepsis, shock, peritonitis, DIC)

Investigations

- AXR: pneumatosis intestinalis (intramural air is a hallmark of NEC), free air, fixed loops, ileus, thickened bowel wall, portal venous gas
- CBC, ABG, lactate, blood culture, electrolytes
- high or low WBC, low platelets, hyponatremia, acidosis, hypoxia, hypercapnea

Treatment

- NPO (7-10 d), vigorous IV fluid resuscitation, decompression with NG tube, supportive therapy
- TPN
- antibiotics (usually ampicillin, gentamicin ± metronidazole if risk of perforation x 7-10 d)
- serial AXRs detect early perforation (40% mortality in perforated NEC)
- peritoneal drain/surgery if perforation
- surgical resection of necrotic bowel and surgery for complications (e.g. perforation, strictures)



Role of Human Milk in Extremely Low Birth Weight Infants' Risk of Necrotizing Enterocolitis or Death

J Perinatol 2009;29:57-62

Purpose: To determine if human milk intake is related to decreased risk of NEC or death.

Study: An association between proportion of human milk to total intake (enteral and parenteral), enteral intake alone, and total volume during the first 14 d after birth to NEC and death was evaluated.

Patients: 1,272 infants with a birth weight between 401 to 1,000 g.

Main Outcome: NEC or death occurring between 14 d after birth to 120 d or hospital discharge.

Results: For each 10% increase in the proportion of human milk to total intake, there was a decrease in likelihood of NEC or death (HR 0.83, 95% CI 0.72-0.96). Infants who developed NEC or died were more likely to receive parenteral nutrition only compared to infants who did not develop NEC or die (19 vs. 7.8%).

Summary: A reduction in the risk of NEC or death among extremely low birth weight infants was associated with human milk feeding. A possible dose-dependent beneficial effect of human milk is suggested in extremely low birth weight infants.

Persistent Pulmonary Hypertension of the Newborn

Epidemiology

- incidence 1.9 per 1,000 live births

Clinical Presentation

- usually presents within 12 h of birth with severe hypoxemia/cyanosis; may have only mild respiratory distress

Pathophysiology

- persistence of fetal circulation as a result of persistent elevation of pulmonary vascular resistance
- R → L shunt through PDA, foramen ovale → decreased pulmonary blood flow and hypoxemia → further pulmonary vasoconstriction

Risk Factors

- secondary PPHN: asphyxia, MAS, RDS, sepsis, pneumonia, structural abnormalities (e.g. diaphragmatic hernia, pulmonary hypoplasia)
- primary PPHN occurs in absence of risk factors
- more common in term or post-term infants

Investigations

- measure pre- and post-ductal oxygen levels
- hyperoxia test to exclude CHD
- ECG (RV strain)
- Echo reveals increased pulmonary arterial pressure and a R → L shunt across PDA and patent foramen ovale; also used to rule out other cardiac defects

Treatment

- maintain good oxygenation (SaO₂ >95%) in at-risk infants
- O₂ given early and tapered slowly, minimize stress and metabolic demands, maintain normal blood gases, circulatory support
- mechanical ventilation, high frequency oscillation in a sedated muscle-relaxed infant
- nitric oxide, surfactant
- extracorporeal membrane oxygenation used in some centers when other therapy fails

Respiratory Distress in the Newborn

Clinical Presentation

- tachypnea: RR >60/min; tachycardia: HR >160/min
- grunting, subcostal/intercostal indrawing, nasal flaring
- duskiness, central cyanosis
- decreased air entry, crackles on auscultation

Differential Diagnosis of Respiratory Distress

- pulmonary: RDS, TTN, MAS, pleural effusion, pneumothorax, congenital lung malformations
- infectious: sepsis, pneumonia
- cardiac: CHD (cyanotic, acyanotic), PPHN
- hematologic: blood loss, polycythemia
- anatomic: TEF, congenital diaphragmatic hernia, mucous or meconium plug, upper airway obstruction (see [Otolaryngology, OT44](#))
- metabolic: hypoglycemia, inborn errors of metabolism
- neurologic: CNS damage (trauma, hemorrhage), drug withdrawal syndromes



Investigations

- CXR, ABG (or venous blood gas from umbilical venous line)
- CBC, blood cultures, blood glucose
- Echo, ECG if indicated

Table 32. Distinguishing Features of RDS, TTN, MAS

	Respiratory Distress Syndrome (RDS)	Transient Tachypnea of the Newborn (TTN)	Meconium Aspiration Syndrome (MAS)
Etiology	Surfactant deficiency → poor lung compliance due to high alveolar surface tension → atelectasis → ↓ surface area for gas exchange → hypoxia + acidosis → respiratory distress “Hyaline membrane disease”	Delayed resorption of fetal lung fluid → accumulation of fluid in peribronchial lymphatics and vascular spaces → tachypnea “Wet lung syndrome”	Meconium is sterile but causes airway obstruction, chemical inflammation, and surfactant inactivation leading to chemical pneumonitis
Gestational Age	Preterm	Usually term and late preterm	Term and post-term
Risk Factors	Maternal DM Preterm delivery Male sex LBW Acidosis, sepsis Hypothermia Second born twin	Maternal DM Maternal asthma Male sex Macrosomia (>4,500 g) Elective Cesarean section or short labor Late preterm delivery	Meconium-stained amniotic fluid Post-term delivery
Clinical Presentation	Respiratory distress within first few hours of life, worsens over next 24-72 h Hypoxia Cyanosis	Tachypnea within the first few hours of life ± retractions, grunting, nasal flaring Often NO hypoxia or cyanosis	Respiratory distress within hours of birth Small airway obstruction, chemical pneumonitis → tachypnea, barrel chest with audible crackles Hypoxia
CXR Findings	Homogenous infiltrates Air bronchograms Decreased lung volumes May resemble pneumonia (GBS) If severe, “white-out” with no differentiation of cardiac border	Perihilar infiltrates “Wet silhouette”; fluid in fissures	Hyperinflation Patchy atelectasis Patchy and coarse infiltrates 10-20% have pneumothorax
Prevention	Prenatal corticosteroids (e.g. Celestone® 12 mg q24h x 2 doses) if risk of preterm delivery <34 wk Monitor lecithin:sphingomyelin (L/S) ratio with amniocentesis, L/S >2:1 indicates lung maturity	Where possible, avoidance of elective Cesarean delivery, particularly before 38 wk GA	If infant is depressed at birth, intubate and suction below vocal cords Avoidance of factors associated with <i>in utero</i> passage of meconium (e.g. post term delivery)
Treatment	Resuscitation Oxygen Ventilation Surfactant (decreases alveolar surface tension, improves lung compliance, and maintains functional residual capacity)	Supportive Oxygen if hypoxic Ventilator support (e.g. CPAP) IV fluids and NG tube feeds if too tachypneic to feed orally	Resuscitation Oxygen Ventilatory support Surfactant Inhaled nitric oxide Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for PPHN



Table 32. Distinguishing Features of RDS, TTN, MAS (continued)

	RDS	TTN	MAS
Complications	In severe prematurity and/or prolonged ventilation, increased risk of bronchopulmonary dysplasia	Hypoxemia Hypercapnea Acidosis PPHN	Hypoxemia Hypercapnea Acidosis PPHN Pneumothorax Pneumomediastinum Chemical pneumonitis Secondary surfactant inhibition Respiratory failure
Prognosis	Dependent on GA at birth and severity of underlying lung disease; long-term risks of chronic lung disease	Recovery usually expected in 24-72 h	Dependent on severity, mortality up to 20%

PNEUMONIA

- see *Pediatric Respiriology*, P90
- consider in infants with prolonged or premature rupture of membranes, maternal fever, or if mother is GBS positive
- suspect if infant exhibits respiratory distress, temperature instability, or WBC is low, elevated, or left-shifted
- symptoms may be non-specific
- CXR: hazy lung and/or distinct infiltrates (may be difficult to differentiate from RDS)

Retinopathy of Prematurity

- see *Ophthalmology*, OP41

**Sepsis in the Neonate****Table 33. Sepsis Considerations in the Neonate**

Early Onset (<72 h)	Late Onset (72 h – 28 d)
Vertical transmission, 95% present within 24 h after birth Risk factors: Maternal infection: UTI, GBS positive, previous child with GBS sepsis or meningitis Maternal fever/leukocytosis/chorioamnionitis Prolonged rupture of membranes (>18 h) Preterm labor Pathogens: GBS, <i>E. coli</i> , <i>Listeria</i> most common Pneumonia more common with early onset sepsis	Acquired after birth Most common in preterm infants in NICU (most commonly due to coagulase negative <i>Staphylococcus</i>) Other pathogens implicated include GBS, anaerobes, <i>E. coli</i> , <i>Klebsiella</i>

Signs of Sepsis

- no reliable absolute indicator of occult bacteremia in infants <3 mo, most specific result has been WBC <5
- temperature instability (hypo/hyperthermia)
- respiratory distress, cyanosis, apnea
- tachycardia/bradycardia
- lethargy, irritability
- poor feeding, vomiting, abdominal distension, diarrhea
- hypotonia, seizures, lethargy
- jaundice, hepatomegaly, petechiae, purpura

**Chronic Perinatal Infections****CHEAP TORCHES**

Chicken pox/shingles
Hepatitis B
Epstein-Barr virus
AIDS (HIV)
Parvovirus B19 (erythema infectiosum)
Toxoplasmosis
Other
Rubella virus
Cytomegalovirus/Coxsackievirus
HSV
Every STD
Syphilis

See *Obstetrics*, OB20

Skin Conditions of the Neonate

Table 34. Common Neonatal Skin Conditions

Neonatal Skin Condition	Description
Vasomotor Response (Cutis Marmorata, Acrocyanosis)	Transient mottling when exposed to cold; usually normal, particularly if premature
Vernix Caseosa	Soft, creamy, white layer covering baby at birth
Congenital Dermal Melanocytosis ('Mongolian Spots')	Slate gray macules over lower back and buttocks (may look like bruises); common in dark skinned infants
Capillary Hemangioma	Raised red lesion, which increases in size after birth and involutes; 50% resolved by 5 yr, 90% by 9 yr
Erythema Toxicum	Yellow-white papules surrounded by erythema, eosinophils within the lesions; common rash, resolves by 2 wk
Milia	Lesions 1-2 mm firm white pearly papules on nasal bridge, cheeks, and palate; self-resolving
Pustular Melanosis	Brown macular base with pustules, seen more commonly in African American infants; may be present at birth
Nevus Simplex (Salmon Patch)	Transient macular vascular malformation of the eyelids and/or neck ("Angel Kiss" or "Stork Bite"); most lesions disappear by 1 yr of life
Neonatal Acne	Inflammatory papules and pustules mainly on face; self-resolving

Fluids and Electrolytes

Approach to Infant/Child with Dehydration

Etiology

- decreased intake: poor oral intake during acute illness, breastfeeding difficulties, eating disorders
- increased losses: common sites include GI tract (diarrhea, vomiting, bleeding), skin/mucous membranes (fever, burns, hemorrhage, stomatitis), urine (osmotic diuresis [e.g. hyperglycemia, DKA], diuretic therapy, DI, post-obstructive/post ATN recovery diuresis), and respiratory tract (tachypnea, bronchiolitis, pneumonia)

Management

- if suspect dehydration based on history (acute illness, decreased number of wet diapers, lethargy, changes in mental status, increased thirst, etc.), you must:

1) Determine degree of extracellular volume contraction

Table 35. Assessment of Degree of Extracellular Volume Contraction Based on Physical Exam

	Mild	Moderate	Severe
<2 yr	5%*	10%*	15%*
>2 yr	3%*	6%*	9%*
Pulse	Normal, full	Rapid	Rapid, weak
Blood Pressure	Normal	Low to normal	Decreased in shock (very late finding in pediatrics and very dangerous)
Urine Output	Decreased	Markedly decreased	Anuria
Oral Mucosa	Slightly dry	Dry	Parched
Anterior Fontanelle	Normal	Sunken	Markedly sunken
Eyes	Normal	Sunken	Markedly sunken
Skin Turgor	Normal	Decreased	Tenting
Capillary Refill	Normal (<3 s)	Normal to increased	Increased (>3 s)

* Note that percentages refer to percent loss of pre-illness body weight

2) Determine the likely electrolyte disturbance

- dependent on etiology of dehydration and type of fluid loss (isotonic vs. hypertonic vs. hypotonic)

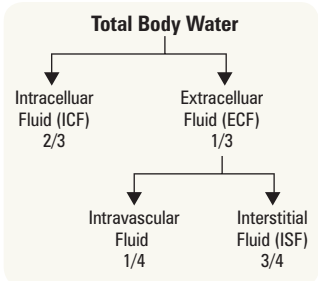


Figure 14. Body fluid compartments

	Electrolyte Concentrations of Na ⁺ and K ⁺ (in mEq/L)		
		ICF	ECF
	Sodium	10	140
	Potassium	150	4

Assessment of Severity of Dehydration

C BASE H₂O

Capillary refill

BP

Anterior fontanelle

Skin turgor

Eyes sunken

HR

Oral mucosa

Output of urine

Table 36. Electrolyte Content of Various Bodily Fluids

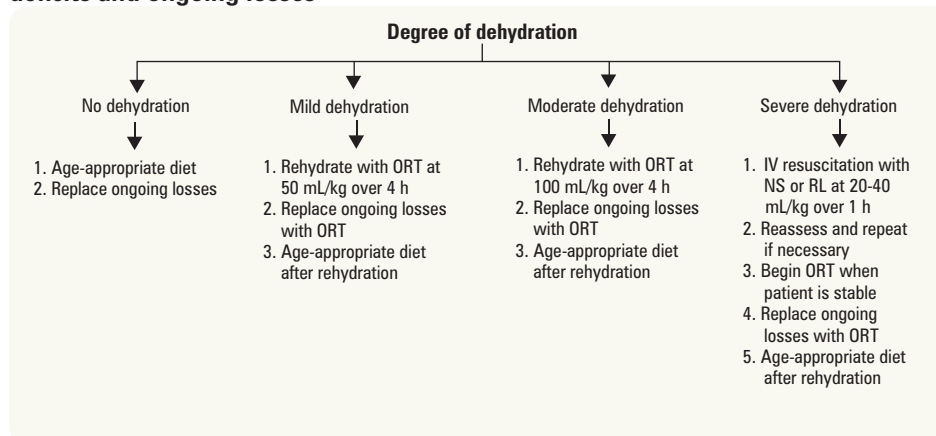
Bodily Fluid	Na ⁺ (mmol/L)	K ⁺ (mmol/L)	Cl ⁻ (mmol/L)	HCO ₃ ⁻ (mmol/L)
Saliva	30-80	20	70	30
Gastric Juice	60-80	15	100	0
Pancreatic Juice	140	5-10	60-90	40-100
Bile	140	5-10	100	40
Small Bowel	140	20	100	25-50
Large Bowel	75	30	30	0
Sweat	20-70	5-10	40-60	0

- for moderate and severe dehydration, initial investigations should include urinalysis and blood work examining electrolyte (Na⁺, K⁺, Cl⁻), glucose, and acid-base (blood pH, pCO₂, HCO₃⁻ disturbances), and impaired renal function (creatinine, BUN)

3) Determine if the child requires PO or IV rehydration

- dehydrated child must receive adequate fluid management, including replacement of ongoing losses and maintenance fluids
- initial management using ORT advantages: ↓ cost, no IV needed, incidence of iatrogenic hyper/hyponatremia, parental involvement in therapy
- indications for IV rehydration therapy: severe dehydration requiring close monitoring and frequent assessment of electrolytes, inability to tolerate ORT (e.g. vomiting, alteration in mental status, ileus, monosaccharide malabsorption, etc.), inability to provide ORT, failure of ORT in providing adequate rehydration (e.g. persistent diarrhea or vomiting)

4) Return the child to a normal volume and electrolyte status by replacing current deficits and ongoing losses

**Figure 15. Algorithm for deficit replacement and replacement of ongoing losses in the dehydrated child**

5) Provide the appropriate fluid and electrolyte maintenance daily requirements

Table 37. Maintenance Fluid Requirements

Body Weight	100:50:20 Rule (24 h maintenance fluids)	4:2:1 Rule (hourly rate of maintenance fluids)
1-10 kg	100 cc/kg/d	4 cc/kg/h
11-20 kg	50 cc/kg/d	2 cc/kg/h
>20 kg	20 cc/kg/d	1 cc/kg/h

- types of fluids used: NS, RL, half NS (0.45% NaCl), 0.2% NS (for neonates only), D5W, and D10W (for neonates only); add potassium chloride if hypokalemic
- in children, all maintenance fluids should have a dextrose component due to their higher risk of hypoglycemia, especially if they are NPO
- common IV fluid combinations used in pediatrics
 - first month of life: D5W/0.2 NS + KCl 20 mEq/L (only add KCl if voiding well)
 - children: D5W/NS + KCl 20 mEq/L or D5W/0.45 NS + KCl 20 mEq/L
 - NS: as bolus to restore circulation in dehydrated children (remains almost entirely distributed in intravascular space)



Special Consideration – SIADH

Clinical Signs: hyponatremia and excretion of concentrated urine

Renal Failure: certain medications (e.g. morphine), post-operative, pain, N/V, pulmonary disease (e.g. pneumonia), CNS disease (e.g. meningitis)

Caution: acute hyponatremia is associated with rapid administration of hypotonic IV, this can lead to cerebral edema and herniation

- most important thing to remember when correcting Na aberrations due to fluid deficits
 - risk of cerebral edema with rapid rehydration with hypotonic or isotonic solutions (i.e. NS), therefore replace fluid slowly with close monitoring; aim to adjust (increase or decrease) plasma [Na⁺] by no more than 12 mmol/L/d
 - management depends on etiology, severity of symptoms, and timing (acute vs. chronic)

6) Continue to monitor fluid and electrolyte status

- accurate monitoring of daily fluid intake (PO and IV) and ongoing losses (urine output, diarrhea, emesis, drains)
- if child receiving >50% of maintenance fluids through IV, serum electrolyte values should be monitored daily and therapy adjusted accordingly
- avoid iatrogenic hyper/hyponatremia, keep the possibility of SIADH in mind

Nephrology

Common Pediatric Renal Diseases

Table 38. Common Manifestations of Renal Disease

Neonate	Common Causes
Flank Mass	Hydronephrosis, polycystic disease (autosomal dominant or recessive subtypes), tumor
Hematuria	Renal vein thrombosis, asphyxia, malformation, trauma
Anuria/Oliguria	Bilateral renal agenesis, obstruction, asphyxia
Child and Adolescent	
Cola/Red-Colored Urine	Acute GN (post-streptococcal, HSP, IgA nephropathy, etc.), hemoglobinuria (hemolysis), myoglobinuria (rhabdomyolysis)
Gross Hematuria	Urologic disease (nephrolithiasis, trauma, etc.), UTI, acute GN
Edema	Nephrotic syndrome, nephritis, acute/chronic renal failure, consider cardiac or liver disease
HTN	GN, renal failure, dysplasia (consider coarctation, drugs, endocrine causes)
Polyuria	DM, central and nephrogenic DI, renal Fanconi's syndrome (genetic/metabolic/acquired causes), hypercalcemia, polyuric renal failure (renal dysplasia)
Proteinuria	Orthostatic, nephrotic syndrome (MCD, etc.), GN
Oliguria	Dehydration, ATN, interstitial nephritis, acute or chronic kidney disease (i.e. renal failure)
Urgency	UTI, vulvovaginitis

Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome

Definition

- simultaneous occurrence of the triad of 1) non-immune microangiopathic hemolytic anemia, 2) thrombocytopenia, and 3) acute renal injury

Epidemiology

- annual incidence of 1-2 per 100,000 in Canada
- most common cause of acute renal failure in children

Etiology

- diarrhea positive HUS: 90% of pediatric HUS from *E. coli* O157:H7, shiga toxin, or verotoxin
- diarrhea negative HUS: other bacteria, viruses, familial, drugs, familial/genetic

Pathophysiology

- toxin binds, invades, and destroys colonic epithelial cells, causing bloody diarrhea
- toxin enters the systemic circulation, attaches, and injures endothelial cells (especially in kidney), causing a release of endothelial products (e.g. von Willebrand factor, platelet aggregating factor)
- platelet/fibrin thrombi form in multiple organ systems (e.g. kidney, pancreas, brain, etc.) resulting in thrombocytopenia
- RBCs are forced through occluded vessels, resulting in fragmented RBCs (schistocytes) that are removed by the reticuloendothelial system (hemolytic anemia)

History and Physical Exam

- history: initial presentation of abdominal pain and diarrhea, followed by bloody diarrhea; within 5-7 d begins to show signs of anemia, thrombocytopenia, and renal insufficiency
- physical exam: pallor, jaundice (hemolysis), edema, petechiae, HTN

Investigations

- CBC (anemia, thrombocytopenia), blood smear (schistocytes), electrolytes, renal function, urinalysis (microscopic hematuria), stool cultures, and verotoxin/shigella toxin assay

Management

- mainly supportive: nutrition, hydration, ventilation (if necessary), blood transfusion for symptomatic anemia
- monitor electrolytes and renal function: dialysis if electrolyte abnormality (hyperkalemia) cannot be corrected, fluid overload, or uremia
- steroids are not helpful
- antibiotics are contraindicated because death of bacteria leads to increased toxin release and worse clinical course

Prognosis

- 5-10% mortality, 10-30% long-term renal damage (HTN, proteinuria, decreased renal function)

Nephritic Syndrome

Definition

- acute or chronic syndrome affecting the kidney, characterized by glomerular injury and inflammation, and defined by hematuria (>5 RBCs per high-powered microscope field) and the presence of dysmorphic RBCs and RBC casts on urinalysis
- often accompanied by at least one of proteinuria (<50 mg/kg/d), edema, HTN, azotemia, and oliguria

Epidemiology

- highest incidence in children aged 5-15 yr old

Etiology

- humoral immune response to a variety of etiologic agents → immunoglobulin deposition → complement activation, leukocyte recruitment, release of growth factors/cytokines → glomerular inflammation and injury → porous podocytes → hematuria + RBC casts ± proteinuria
- HTN secondary to fluid retention and increased renin secretion by ischemic kidneys



Nephritic Syndrome

PHAROH

Proteinuria (<50 mg/kg/d)
Hematuria
Azotemia
RBC casts
Oliguria
HTN

Table 39. Major Causes of Nephritic Syndrome

	Decreased C3	Normal C3
Primary (idiopathic)	Post-infectious GN (most common cause of acute GN in pediatrics) Membranoproliferative <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Type I (50-80%) • Type II (>80%) 	IgA nephropathy Idiopathic rapidly progressive GN Anti-GBM disease
Secondary (systemic disease)	SLE Bacterial endocarditis Abscess or shunt nephritis Cryoglobulinemia	HSP (very common) Polyarteritis nodosa Granulomatosis with polyangiitis Goodpasture's syndrome

Risk Factors

- see *Major Causes of Nephritic Syndrome*, above

History and Physical Exam

- often asymptomatic; some overlap in clinical findings for nephritic and nephrotic syndrome
- gross hematuria, mild-moderate edema, oliguria, HTN
- signs and symptoms suggestive of underlying systemic causes (e.g. fever, arthralgias, rash, dyspnea, pulmonary hemorrhage)

Investigations

- urine
 - dipstick (hematuria, 0 to 2+ proteinuria) and microscopy (>5 RBCs per high-powered microscope field, acanthocytes, RBC casts)
 - first morning urine protein/creatinine ratio (<200 mg/mmol)

- blood work
 - impaired renal function (\uparrow Cr and BUN) resulting in \downarrow pH and electrolyte abnormalities (hyperkalemia, hyperphosphatemia, hypocalcemia)
 - mild anemia on CBC (secondary to hematuria)
 - hypoalbuminemia (secondary to proteinuria)
 - appropriate investigations to determine etiology: C3/C4 levels, serologic testing for recent streptococcal infection (ASOT, anti-hyaluronidase, anti-streptokinase, anti-NAD, anti-DNAse B), ANA, anti-DNA antibodies, ANCA, serum IgA levels, anti-GBM antibodies
- renal biopsy should be considered only in the presence of acute renal failure, no evidence of streptococcal infection, normal and C3/C4

Management

- treat underlying cause
- symptomatic
 - renal insufficiency: supportive (dialysis if necessary), proper hydration
 - HTN: salt and fluid restriction (but not at expense of renal function), ACE inhibitors or ARBs for chronic persistent HTN (not acute cases because ACE inhibitors or ARBs may decrease GFR further)
 - edema: salt and fluid restriction, possibly diuretics (avoid if significant intravascular depletion)
- corticosteroids if indicated: IgA nephropathy, lupus nephritis, etc.

Prognosis

- dependent on underlying etiology
- complications include HTN, heart failure, pulmonary edema, chronic kidney injury (requiring renal transplant)

Nephrotic Syndrome

Definition

- clinical syndrome affecting the kidney, characterized by significant proteinuria, peripheral edema, hypoalbuminemia, and hyperlipidemia

Epidemiology

- highest incidence in children 2-6 yr old, M>F

Etiology

- primary (idiopathic): nephrotic syndrome in the absence of systemic disease (most common cause in pediatrics)
 - glomerular inflammation ABSENT on renal biopsy: MCD (85%), focal segmental glomerular sclerosis
 - glomerular inflammation PRESENT on renal biopsy: membranoproliferative GN, IgA nephropathy
- secondary: nephrotic syndrome associated with systemic disease or due to another process causing glomerular injury (<10% in pediatrics)
 - autoimmune: SLE, DM, rheumatoid arthritis
 - genetic: sickle cell disease, Alport syndrome
 - infections: hepatitis B/C, post-streptococcal, infective endocarditis, HUS, HIV
 - malignancies: leukemia, lymphoma
 - medications: captopril, penicillamine, NSAIDs, antiepileptics
 - vasculitides: HSP, granulomatosis with polyangiitis
- congenital: congenital nephropathy of the Finnish type, Denys-Drash syndrome, etc.

Risk Factors

- family history, certain systemic illnesses and medications (as per *Etiology*)

History and Physical Exam

- non-specific (e.g. irritability, malaise, fatigue, anorexia, diarrhea)
- edema
 - often first sign; detectable when fluid retention exceeds 3-5% of body weight
 - starts periorbital and often pretibial \rightarrow edematous areas are white, soft, and pitting
 - gravity dependent: periorbital edema \downarrow and pretibial edema \uparrow over the day
 - anasarca may develop (i.e. marked periorbital and peripheral edema, ascites, pleural effusions, scrotal/labial edema)
- decrease in effective circulating volume (e.g. tachycardia, HTN, oliguria, etc.)
- foamy urine is a possible sign of proteinuria



PALE

Proteinuria (>50 mg/kg/d)
HypoAlbuminemia (<20 g/L)
HyperLipidemia
Edema



Daily protein excretion can be estimated from a random urine protein/creatinine ratio

Investigations

- urine
 - urine dipstick (3 to 4+ proteinuria, microscopic hematuria) and microscopy (oval fat bodies, hyaline casts)
 - first morning urine protein/creatinine ratio (>200 mg/mmol)
- blood work
 - diagnostic: hypoalbuminemia (<25 g/L), hyperlipidemia/hypercholesterolemia (total cholesterol >5 mmol/L)
 - secondary: electrolytes (hypocalcemia, hyperkalemia, hyponatremia), renal function (↑ BUN and Cr), coagulation profile (↓ PTT)
 - appropriate investigations to rule out secondary causes: CBC, blood smear, C3/C4, ANA, hepatitis B/C titers, ASOT, HIV serology, etc.
- consider renal biopsy if: HTN, gross hematuria, ↓ renal function, low serum C3/C4, no response to steroids after 4 wk of therapy, frequent relapses (>2 in 6 mo), presentation before first year of life (high likelihood of congenital nephrotic syndrome), presentation ≥12 yr (rule out more serious renal pathology than MCD)

Management

- MCD: oral prednisone 2 mg/kg/d (or equivalent) for up to 12 wk → varicella status should be known before starting
- consider cytotoxic agents, immunomodulators, or high-dose pulse corticosteroid if steroid resistant
- symptomatic
 - edema: salt and fluid restriction, possibly diuretic (avoid if significant intravascular depletion); furosemide + albumin for anasarca
 - hyperlipidemia: generally resolves with remission; limit dietary fat intake; consider statin therapy if persistently nephrotic
 - hypoalbuminemia: IV albumin and furosemide not routinely given; consider if refractory edema
 - abnormal BP: control BP; fluid resuscitation if severe intravascular depletion; ACEI or ARBs for persistent HTN
- diet: no added salt; monitor caloric intake and supplement with Ca²⁺ and Vit D if on corticosteroids
- daily weights and BP to assess therapeutic progress
- secondary infections: treat with appropriate antimicrobials; antibiotic prophylaxis not recommended; pneumococcal vaccine at diagnosis and varicella vaccine after remission; varicella Ig + acyclovir if exposed while on corticosteroids
- secondary hypercoagulability: mobilize, avoid hemoconcentration due to hypovolemia, prompt sepsis treatment; heparin if thrombi occur



Long-Term Steroid Use Associations:

- Increased appetite
- Impaired growth
- Behavioral changes
- Risk of infection
- Salt and water retention
- HTN
- Bone demineralization

Prognosis

- generally good: 80% of children responsive to corticosteroids
- up to 2/3 experience relapse, often multiple times; sustained remission with normal kidney function usually by adolescence
- complications: ↑ risk of infections (spontaneous peritonitis, cellulitis, sepsis); hypercoagulability due to decreased intravascular volume and antithrombin III depletion (PE, renal vein thrombosis); intravascular volume depletion, leading to hypotension, shock, renal failure; side effects of drugs

Hypertension in Childhood

Definition

- HTN: sBP and/or dBP ≥95th percentile for sex, age, and height on ≥3 occasions
- pre-HTN: sBP and/or dBP ≥90th percentile but <95th percentile OR BP ≥120/80 irrespective of age, gender, and height

Table 40. 95th Percentile Blood Pressures (mmHg)

Age (Yr)	Female		Male	
	50th Percentile for Height	75th Percentile for Height	50th Percentile for Height	75th Percentile for Height
1	104/58	105/59	102/57	104/58
6	111/73	112/73	114/74	115/75
12	123/80	124/81	123/81	125/82
17	129/84	130/85	136/87	138/88

Adapted from: Update on the 1987 Task Force Report on High Blood Pressure in Children and Adolescents Working Group Report from the National High Blood Pressure Education Program

Epidemiology

- increasing prevalence of both HTN and pre-HTN over the last 25+ yr
- prevalence: 3-5% for HTN, 7-10% for pre-HTN; M>F

Etiology

- primary HTN
 - diagnosis of exclusion
 - most common in older children (≥ 10 yr), especially if positive family history, overweight, and only mild HTN
 - responsible for ~90% of cases of HTN in adolescents, rarely in young children
- secondary HTN
 - identifiable cause of HTN (most likely etiology depends on age)
 - responsible for majority of childhood HTN
- always consider white coat HTN for all ages

Table 41. Etiology of Secondary HTN by Age Group

System	Neonates	1 mo-6 yr	7-12 yr	>13 yr
Endocrine/Metabolic	CAH	Wilms' tumor (\uparrow renin) Neuroblastoma (\uparrow catecholamines)	Endocrinopathies*	Endocrinopathies*
Renal	Congenital renal disease	Renal parenchymal disease	Renal parenchymal disease	Renal parenchymal disease
Vascular	Coarctation of the aorta Renal artery thrombosis	Coarctation of the aorta RAS	Renovascular abnormalities	
Drugs		Corticosteroids Cyclosporine and tacrolimus	Corticosteroids OCP Cyclosporine and tacrolimus	Corticosteroids OCP Cyclosporine and tacrolimus Recreational drugs (amphetamines, cocaine, etc.)

*Note: may include hyperthyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, Cushing's syndrome, primary hyperaldosteronism/Conn's syndrome, pheochromocytoma

Risk Factors

- primary HTN: male gender, positive family history, metabolic syndrome, obstructive sleep apnea, African American, prematurity/LBW
- secondary HTN: history of renal disease, abdominal trauma, family history of autoimmune diseases, umbilical artery catheterization

History

- often asymptomatic, but can include FTT, fatigue, epistaxis
- symptoms of hypertensive emergency
 - neurologic: headache, seizures, focal complaints, change in mental status, visual disturbances
 - cardiovascular: symptoms of MI or heart failure (chest pain, palpitations, cough, SOB)
- symptoms of secondary HTN: guided by etiology; ask about medications and recreational drugs (current and past)

Physical Exam

- BP measurement (make sure correct cuff size is used), plot on growth chart, BMI
- look for signs of hypertensive emergency (e.g. full neurologic exam, ophthalmoscopy, precordial exam, peripheral pulses, perfusion status)
- look for signs of secondary HTN

Investigations

- laboratory
 - urine dipstick for hematuria and/or proteinuria (renal disease), urine catecholamines (pheochromocytoma, neuroblastoma)
 - blood work: renal function tests (electrolytes, Cr, BUN), consider renin and aldosterone levels (RAS, Conn's syndrome, Wilms' tumor)
 - other specific hormones if indicated on history and physical
- imaging: Echo (coarctation, heart function), abdominal U/S (RAS, abdominal mass), renal radionuclide imaging (renal scarring)
- other: ocular exam

Management

- treat underlying cause
- non-pharmacologic: modify concurrent cardiovascular risk factors (weight reduction, exercise, salt restriction, smoking cessation)
- pharmacologic: gradual lowering of BP using thiazide diuretics; no antihypertensives have been formally studied in children; if hypertensive emergencies use hydralazine, labetalol, sodium nitroprusside



Signs of Secondary HTN

- Edema (renal parenchymal disease)
- Abdominal or renal bruit (RAS)
- Differential 4 limb BP/diminished femoral pulses (coarctation)
- Abdominal mass (Wilms', neuroblastoma)
- Goiter/skin changes (hyperthyroidism)
- Ambiguous genitalia (CAH)



Pediatric BP Calculation

$$\text{sBP} = \text{age} \times 2 + 90$$

$$\text{dBP} = 2/3 \times \text{sBP}$$

- management of end-organ damage (e.g. retinopathy, LVH)
- consider referral to specialist

Prognosis

- end-organ damage (similar to adults) including LVH, CHF, cerebrovascular insults, renal disease, retinopathy

Neurology

Seizure Disorders

- see [Neurology](#), N16

Differential Diagnosis of Seizures in Children

- benign febrile seizure
- CNS: infection, tumor, HIE, trauma, hemorrhage
- metabolic: hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia, hyponatremia
- idiopathic epilepsy and epileptic syndromes
- others: neurocutaneous syndromes, AVM, drug ingestions/withdrawal
- seizure mimics

Investigations

- lab tests: CBC, electrolytes, calcium, magnesium, glucose
- toxicology screen if indicated
- EEG
- CT/MRI, if indicated (focal neurological deficit or has not returned to baseline several hours after seizure)
- consider LP if first-time non-febrile seizure (not indicated for determining recurrence risk of benign febrile seizures or to determine seizure type or epileptic syndrome)

CHILDHOOD EPILEPTIC SYNDROMES

Infantile Spasms

- brief, repeated symmetric contractions of neck, trunk, extremities (flexion and extension) lasting 10-30 s
- occur in clusters; often associated with developmental delay; onset 4-8 mo
- 20% unknown etiology (usually good response to treatment); 80% due to metabolic or developmental abnormalities, encephalopathies, or are associated with neurocutaneous syndromes (usually poor response to treatment)
- can develop into West syndrome (infantile spasms, psychomotor developmental arrest, and hyperarrhythmia) or Lennox-Gastaut (see below)
- typical EEG: hyperarrhythmia (high voltage slow waves, spikes and polyspikes, background disorganization)
- management: ACTH, vigabatrin, benzodiazepines

Lennox-Gastaut

- characterized by triad of 1) multiple seizure types, 2) diffuse cognitive dysfunction, and 3) slow generalized spike and slow wave EEG
- onset commonly 3-5 yr of age
- seen with underlying encephalopathy and brain malformations
- management: valproic acid, benzodiazepines, and ketogenic diet; however, response often poor

Juvenile Myoclonic Epilepsy (Janz Syndrome)

- myoclonus particularly in morning; frequently presents as generalized tonic-clonic seizures
- adolescent onset (12-16 yr of age); autosomal dominant with variable penetrance
- typical EEG: 3.5-6 Hz irregular spike and wave, increased with photic stimulation
- management: lifelong treatment (valproic acid); excellent prognosis

Childhood Absence Epilepsy

- multiple daily absence seizures lasting <30 s without post-ictal state that may resolve spontaneously or become generalized in adolescence
- peak age of onset 6-7 yr, F>M, strong genetic predisposition
- typical EEG: 3 Hz spike and wave
- management: valproic acid or ethosuximide



Heart problems, such as long QT syndrome and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, are often misdiagnosed as epilepsy. Include cardiac causes of syncope in your differential diagnosis, particularly when the episodes occur during physical activity.



Seizure Mimics

- Benign paroxysmal vertigo
- Breath holding
- Hypoglycemia
- Narcolepsy
- Night terror
- Pseudoseizure
- Syncope
- TIA
- Tic



Ketogenic Diet and Other Dietary Treatments for Epilepsy

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;3:CD001903

Study: Systematic review of all studies of ketogenic and related diets. Included the review of 4 RCTs, 6 prospective studies, and 5 retrospective studies.

Population: Adults and children with diagnosed epilepsy of any type.

Intervention: Ketogenic diet, control (placebo diet, any treatment with known antiepileptic properties).

Main Outcome Measure: Seizure control at 3, 6, 12 mo.

Results: Studies showed a response rate of at least 38-50% seizure reduction at 3 mo. This response was maintained for up to a year. A range of side effects were reported. The most frequent were gastrointestinal effects (30%).

Conclusion: The ketogenic diet is a valid option for people with medically-intractable epilepsy.

Benign Focal Epilepsy of Childhood with Rolandic/Centrotemporal Spikes

- focal motor seizures involving tongue, mouth, face, upper extremity usually occurring in sleep-wake transition states; remains conscious, but aphasic post-ictally
- onset peaks at 5-10 yr of age; 16% of all non-febrile seizures; remits spontaneously in adolescence without sequelae
- typical EEG: repetitive spikes in centrotemporal area with normal background
- management: frequent seizures controlled by carbamazepine, no medication if infrequent seizures

General Approach to Treatment

- education for patient and parents including education and precautions in daily life (e.g. buddy system, showers instead of baths)
- medication
 - initiate: treatment with drug appropriate to seizure type; often if >2 unprovoked afebrile seizures within 6-12 mo
 - optimize: start with one drug and increase dosage until seizures controlled
 - if no effect, switch over to another before adding a second antiepileptic drug
 - continue antiepileptic drug therapy until patient free of seizures for >2 yr, then wean over 4-6 mo
- ketogenic diet (high fat diet): used in patients who do not respond to polytherapy or who do not wish to take medication (valproic acid contraindicated in conjunction with ketogenic diet because may increase hepatotoxicity)
- legal obligation to report to Ministry of Transportation if patient wishes to drive

Generalized and Partial Seizures

- see [Neurology, N16](#)



Febrile Seizures

Epidemiology

- most common cause of seizure in children (3-5% of children)
- M>F; age 6 mo-6 yr

Clinical Presentation

- often with associated illness or fever and family history
- no evidence of CNS infection/inflammation before or after seizure; no history of non-febrile seizures

Table 42. Comparison of Typical and Atypical Febrile Seizures

Simple/Typical (70-80%)	Complex/Atypical (20-30%)
All of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Duration <15 min (95% <5 min) • Generalized tonic-clonic • No recurrence in 24 h period • No neurological impairment or developmental delay before or after seizure 	At least one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Duration >15 min • Focal onset or focal features during seizure • Recurrent seizures (>1 in 24 h period) • Previous neurological impairment or neurological deficit after seizure

Workup

- history: determine focus of fever, description of seizure, medications, trauma history, development, family history
- physical exam: LOC, signs of meningitis, neurological exam, head circumference, focus of infection
- septic workup including LP if suspecting meningitis (strongly consider if child <12 mo; consider if child is 12-18 mo; only if meningeal sign present if child >18 mo)
- if typical febrile seizure, investigations only for determining focus of fever
- EEG/CT/MRI brain not warranted unless atypical febrile seizure or abnormal neurologic findings

Management

- counsel and reassure patient and parents
 - febrile seizures do not cause brain damage
 - very small risk of developing epilepsy: 9% in child with multiple risk factors; 2% in child with typical febrile seizures compared to 1% in general population
 - 33% chance of recurrence (mostly within 1 yr of first seizure and in children <1 yr old)
- antipyretics and fluids for comfort (though neither prevent seizure)

- prophylaxis with antiepileptic drugs not recommended
- if high risk for recurrent or prolonged seizures, have rectal or sublingual lorazepam at home
- treat underlying cause of fever

Recurrent Headache

- see [Neurology, N43](#)

Differential Diagnosis

- primary headache: tension, migraine, cluster
- secondary headache: see [Neurology, N43](#)

General Assessment

- if unremarkable history and neurological and general physical exam is negative, most likely diagnosis is migraine or tension headache
- CT or MRI if history or physical reveals red flags
- inquire about level of disability, academic performance, after-school activities



Headache – Red Flags

- New headache
- Worst headache of their life
- Acute onset
- Focal neurological deficits
- Constitutional symptoms
- Worse in morning
- Worse with bending over, coughing, straining
- Change in LOC
- Sudden mood changes
- Disturbed sleep
- Fatigue
- Withdrawal from social activities

Hypotonia

- decreased resistance to passive movements – “floppy baby”

Differential Diagnosis

- central: chromosomal (DS, Prader-Willi, Fragile X syndrome), metabolic (hypoglycemia, kernicterus), perinatal problems (asphyxia, ICH), endocrine (hypothyroidism, hypopituitarism), systemic illness (TORCH infection, sepsis, dehydration), CNS malformations, dysmorphic syndromes
- peripheral: motor neuron (spinal muscular atrophy, polio), peripheral nerve (Charcot-Marie-Tooth syndrome) neuromuscular junction (myasthenia gravis), muscle fiber (mitochondrial myopathy, muscular dystrophy, myotonic dystrophy)

History and Physical Exam

- proper assessment of tone requires accurate determination of GA
- differentiate between UMN and LMN lesion: spontaneous posture (spontaneous movement, movement against gravity, frog-leg position); muscle weakness; joint mobility (hyperextensibility); muscle bulk; presence of fasciculations
- postural maneuvers
 - traction response: pull to sit, look for flexion of arms to counteract traction and head lag
 - axillary suspension: suspend infant by holding at axilla and lifting; hypotonic babies will slip through grasp because of low shoulder girdle tone
 - ventral suspension: infant is prone and supported under the abdomen by one hand; infant should be able to hold up extremities; inverted “U” posturing demonstrates hypotonia
- dysmorphic features, cognitive ability, reflexes, strength



Causes of hypotonia that respond to rapid treatment: hypokalemia, hypermagnesemia, acidemia, toxins, drugs, hypoglycemia, seizure, infection, intracranial bleeding, hydrocephalus

Investigations

- rule out systemic disorders (e.g. electrolytes, ABG, blood glucose, CK, and serum/urine investigations for multiple etiologies including mitochondrial causes)
- neuroimaging: MRI/MRA when indicated
- EMG, muscle biopsy/NCS
- chromosome analysis, genetic testing, metabolic testing, neuromuscular testing

Treatment

- depends on etiology: some treatments available for specific diagnosis
- counsel parents on prognosis and genetic implications
- refer patients for specialized care, refer for rehabilitation, OT, PT, assess feeding ability

Cerebral Palsy

Definition

- a symptom complex, not a disease
- non-progressive central motor impairment syndrome due to insult to or anomaly of the immature CNS
- incidence: 1.5-2.5/1,000 live births (industrialized nations)
- life expectancy is dependent on the degree of mobility and intellectual impairment, not on severity of CNS lesion

Etiology

- often obscure, no definite etiology identified in 1/3 of cases
- 10% related to intrapartum asphyxia; 10% due to postnatal insult (infections, asphyxia, prematurity with IVH and trauma)
- association with LBW babies

Clinical Presentation

- general signs: delay in motor milestones, developmental delay, learning disabilities, visual/hearing impairment, seizures, microcephaly, uncoordinated swallow (aspiration)

Table 43. Types of Cerebral Palsy

Type	% of Total	Characteristics	Area of Brain Involved
Spastic	70-80%	Truncal hypotonia in first yr Increased tone, increased reflexes, clonus Can affect one limb (monoplegia), one side of body (hemiplegia), both legs (diplegia), or both arms and legs (quadriplegia)	UMN of pyramidal tract Diplegia associated with periventricular leukomalacia in premature babies Quadriplegia associated with HIE (asphyxia), higher incidence of intellectual disability
Athetoid/Dyskinetic	10-15%	Athetosis (involuntary writhing movements) ± chorea (involuntary jerky movements) Can involve face, tongue (results in dysarthria)	Basal ganglia (may be associated with kernicterus)
Ataxic	<5%	Poor coordination, poor balance (wide based gait) Can have intention tremor	Cerebellum
Mixed	10-15%	More than one of the above motor patterns	

Investigations

- may include metabolic screen, chromosome studies, serology, neuroimaging, EMG, EEG (if seizures), ophthalmology assessment, audiology assessment

Treatment

- maximize potential through multidisciplinary services such as primary care physician, OT, PT, SLP, school supports, etc.
- orthopedic management (e.g. dislocations, contractures, rhizotomy)
- management of symptoms: spasticity (baclofen, Botox®), constipation (stool softeners)

Neurocutaneous Syndromes

- characterized by tendency to form tumors of the CNS, PNS, viscera, and skin

NEUROFIBROMATOSIS TYPE I

- autosomal dominant but 50% are the result of new mutations
- also known as von Recklinghausen disease
- incidence 1:3,000, mutation in *NF1* gene on 17q11.2 (codes for neurofibromin protein)
- learning disorders, abnormal speech development, and seizures are common
- diagnosis of NF-1 requires 2 or more of
 - ≥6 café-au-lait spots (>5 mm if prepubertal, >1.5 cm if postpubertal)
 - ≥2 neurofibromas of any type or one plexiform neurofibroma
 - ≥2 Lisch nodules (hamartomas of the iris)
 - optic glioma
 - freckling in the axillary or inguinal region
 - a distinctive bony lesion (e.g. sphenoid dysplasia, cortical thinning of long bones)
 - a first degree relative with confirmed NF-1

NEUROFIBROMATOSIS TYPE II

- autosomal dominant
- incidence 1:33,000
- characterized by predisposition to form intracranial, spinal tumors
- diagnosed when either bilateral vestibular schwannomas are found, or a first-degree relative with NF-2 and either a neurofibroma, meningioma, glioma, or schwannoma is found
- also associated with posterior subcapsular cataracts
- treatment consists of monitoring for tumor development and surgery



In neurocutaneous syndromes, the younger the child at presentation, the more likely they are to develop mental retardation

Respirology

Approach to Dyspnea

- determine if patient is sick or not sick; ABCs
- history: onset, previous episodes, precipitating events, associated symptoms, past medical/family history of respiratory disease
- physical exam: vitals, SpO₂, evidence of cyanosis, respiratory, cardiovascular
- investigations: CBC and differential, electrolytes, BUN, Cr, NP swab, ABG, CXR, ECG (based on clinical findings)

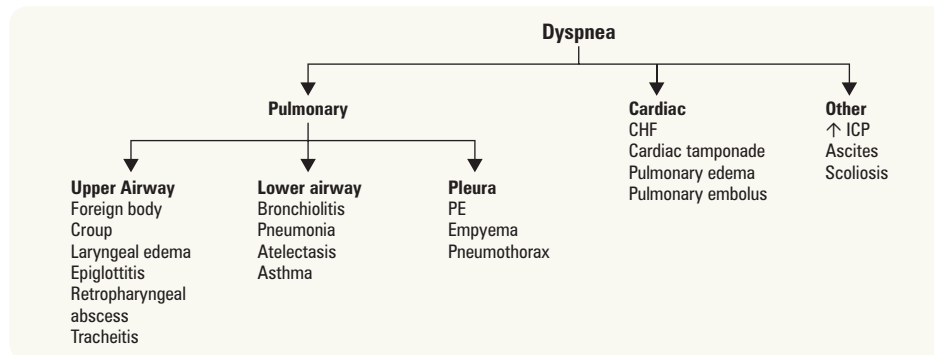


Figure 16. Approach to dyspnea in childhood

Upper Respiratory Tract Diseases

- see [Otolaryngology](#), OT45
- diseases above the thoracic inlet characterized by inspiratory stridor, hoarseness, and suprasternal retractions
- differential diagnosis of stridor: croup, bacterial tracheitis, epiglottitis, foreign body aspiration, subglottic stenosis (congenital or iatrogenic), laryngomalacia/tracheomalacia (collapse of airway cartilage on inspiration)



Table 44. Common Upper Respiratory Tract Infections in Children

	Croup (Laryngotracheobronchitis)	Bacterial Tracheitis	Epiglottitis
Anatomy	Subglottic laryngitis	Subglottic tracheitis	Supraglottic laryngitis
Epidemiology	Common in children <6 yr, with peak incidence between 7-36 mo Common in fall and early winter	Rare All age groups	Very rare – due to Hib vaccination Usually older (2-6 yr)
Etiology	Parainfluenza (75%) Influenza A and B RSV Adenovirus	<i>S. aureus</i> <i>H. influenzae</i> α -hemolytic strep Pneumococcus <i>M. catarrhalis</i>	<i>H. influenzae</i> β -hemolytic strep
Clinical Presentation	Common prodrome: rhinorrhea, pharyngitis, cough \pm low-grade fever Hoarse voice Barking cough Stridor Worse at night	Similar symptoms as croup, but more rapid deterioration with high fever Toxic appearance Does not respond to croup treatments	Toxic appearance Rapid progression 4 Ds – drooling, dysphagia, dysphonia, distress Stridor Tripod position Sternal recession Anxious Fever ($>102.2^{\circ}\text{F}/39^{\circ}\text{C}$)
Investigations	Clinical diagnosis CXR in atypical presentation: “steeple sign” from subglottic narrowing	Clinical diagnosis Endoscopy: definitive diagnosis	Clinical diagnosis Avoid examining the throat to prevent further respiratory exacerbation
Treatment	No evidence for humidified O ₂ Dexamethasone: PO 1 dose Racemic epinephrine: nebulized, 1-3 doses, q1-2h Intubation if unresponsive to treatment	Usually requires intubation IV antibiotics	Intubation Antibiotics Prevented with Hib vaccine

Lower Respiratory Tract Diseases

- obstruction of airways below thoracic inlet, produces more expiratory sounds
- classic symptom: wheezing

Differential Diagnosis of Wheezing

- common: asthma (recurrent wheezing episodes, identifiable triggers, typically over 6 yr), bronchiolitis (first episode of wheezing, usually under 1 yr), recurrent aspiration (often neurological impairment), pneumonia (fever, cough, malaise)
- uncommon: foreign body (acute unilateral wheezing and coughing), CF (prolonged wheezing, unresponsive to therapy), bronchopulmonary dysplasia (often develops after prolonged ventilation in the newborn)
- rare: CHF, mediastinal mass, bronchiolitis obliterans, tracheobronchial anomalies

Pneumonia

Etiology

- inflammation of pulmonary tissue, associated with consolidation of alveolar spaces

Clinical Presentation

- incidence is greatest in first year of life with viral causes being most common in children <5 yr
- cough, wheeze, stridor, fever, tachypnea
- CXR: diffuse, streaky infiltrates bilaterally
- bacterial causes may present with cough, fever, chills, dyspnea, more dramatic CXR changes (e.g. lobar consolidation, pleural effusion)

Management

- supportive therapy: hydration, antipyretics, humidified O₂

Table 45. Common Causes and Treatment of Pneumonia at Different Ages

Age	Bacterial	Viral	Atypical Bacteria	Treatment
Neonates	GBS <i>E. coli</i> <i>Listeria</i>	CMV Herpes virus Enterovirus	<i>Mycoplasma hominis</i> <i>Ureaplasma urealyticum</i>	Ampicillin + gentamicin / tobramycin (add erythromycin if suspect <i>Chlamydia</i>)
1-3 mo	<i>S. aureus</i> <i>H. influenzae</i> <i>S. pneumoniae</i> <i>B. pertussis</i>	CMV, RSV Influenza Parainfluenza	<i>Chlamydia trachomatis</i> <i>Ureaplasma urealyticum</i>	Cefuroxime OR ampicillin ± erythromycin OR clarithromycin
3 mo-5 yr	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> <i>S. aureus</i> <i>H. influenzae</i> GAS	RSV Adenovirus Influenza	<i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i> TB	Amoxicillin (if mild) OR ampicillin OR cefuroxime
>5 yr	<i>S. pneumoniae</i> <i>H. influenzae</i> <i>S. aureus</i>	Influenza Varicella Adenovirus	<i>Mycoplasma pneumoniae</i> <i>Chlamydia pneumoniae</i> TB <i>Legionella pneumophila</i>	Erythromycin OR clarithromycin (1st line) OR ampicillin OR cefuroxime

Bronchiolitis

Definition

- LRTI that has wheezing and signs of respiratory distress

Epidemiology

- the most common LRTI in infants, affects 50% of children in first 2 yr of life; peak incidence at 6 mo, winter or early spring
- increased incidence of asthma in later life

Etiology

- RSV (>50%), parainfluenza, influenza, rhinovirus, adenovirus, *M. pneumoniae* (rare)

Clinical Presentation

- prodrome of URTI with cough and fever
- feeding difficulties, irritability
- wheezing, crackles, respiratory distress, tachypnea, tachycardia, retractions, poor air entry; symptoms often peak at 3-4 d

Investigations

- CXR (only in severe disease, poor response to therapy, chronic episode): air trapping, peribronchial thickening, atelectasis, increased linear markings
- NP swab: direct detection of viral antigen (immunofluorescence)
- WBC can be normal

Treatment

- self-limiting disease with peak symptoms usually lasting 2-3 wk
- mild to moderate distress
 - supportive: PO or IV hydration, antipyretics for fever, regular or humidified high flow O₂
- severe distress
 - as above ± intubation and ventilation as needed
 - consider rebetol (Ribavirin®) in high risk groups: bronchopulmonary dysplasia, CHD, congenital lung disease, immunodeficient
- monthly RSV-Ig or palivizumab (monoclonal antibody against the F-glycoprotein of RSV) is protective against severe disease in high risk groups; case fatality rate <1%
- antibiotics have no therapeutic value unless there is secondary bacterial pneumonia
- indications for hospitalization
 - hypoxia: O₂ saturation <92% on initial presentation
 - persistent resting tachypnea >60/min and retractions after several salbutamol masks
 - past history of chronic lung disease, hemodynamically significant cardiac disease, neuromuscular problem, immunocompromised
 - young infants <6 mo old (unless extremely mild)
 - significant feeding problems
 - social problem (e.g. inadequate care at home)



Bronchodilators for Bronchiolitis

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2010;12:CD001266

Study: Meta-analysis of prospective, randomized, double-blinded, placebo-controlled trials.

Patients: 1,912 infants (28 trials) up to 24 mo old with bronchiolitis.

Intervention: Bronchodilators (including albuterol, salbutamol, terbutaline, ipratropium bromide, and adrenergic agents) given oral, subcutaneous, or nebulized vs. placebo.

Main Outcome: Oxygen saturation.

Results: No clinically significant difference for infants treated with bronchodilators vs. placebo for bronchiolitis. Given the costs and side effects, it is not recommended to use bronchodilators as management for bronchiolitis in infants.



Children with bronchiolitis do not respond to ipratropium bromide (Atrovent®) or steroids

Asthma

Definition

- see [Respirology, R7](#)
- characterized by recurrent episodes of airway hyperreactivity, bronchospasm, and inflammation; reversible small airway obstruction
- very common, presents most often in early childhood
- associated with other atopic diseases such as allergic rhinitis or atopic dermatitis

Clinical Presentation

- episodic bouts of wheezing, dyspnea, tachypnea, cough (usually at night/early morning, with activity, or cold exposure)
- physical exam may reveal hyper-resonant chest, prolonged expiration, wheeze

Triggers

- URTI (viral or *Mycoplasma*), weather (cold exposure, humidity changes), allergens (pets), irritants (cigarette smoke), exercise, emotional stress, drugs (ASA, β-blockers)

Classification

- mild: occasional attacks of wheezing or coughing (<2/wk); symptoms respond quickly to inhaled bronchodilator; never needs systemic corticosteroids
- moderate: more frequent episodes with symptoms persisting and chronic cough; decreased exercise tolerance; sometimes needs systemic corticosteroids
- severe: daily and nocturnal symptoms; frequent ED visits and hospitalizations; usually needs systemic corticosteroids

Management

- acute
 - O₂ (keep O₂ saturation ≥90%) and fluids if dehydrated
 - β₂-agonists: salbutamol (Ventolin®) MDI + spacer 4-8 puffs every 20 min for 3 doses, then every 1-4 h as needed; nebulized 0.15 mg/kg (minimum 2.5 mg) every 20 min for 3 doses then 0.15-0.3 mg/kg every 1-4 h as needed or 0.5 mg/kg continuous nebulization
 - ipratropium bromide (Atrovent®) if severe: MDI + spacer, 4-8 puffs every 20 min as needed up to 3 h; nebulized 0.25-0.5 mg every 20 min for 3 doses, then as needed
 - steroids: prednisone (1-2 mg/kg x 5 d) or dexamethasone (0.3 mg/kg/d x 5 d or 0.6 mg/kg/d x 2 d); in severe disease, use IV steroids
 - continue to observe; can discharge patient if asymptomatic for 2-4 h after last dose
- chronic
 - step-wise approach for management for ages 0-11; ≥12 yr follow adult guidelines
 - step 1 for intermittent asthma; steps 2-6 for persistent asthma requiring daily medication (step up or down based on patient's asthma control):
 - ♦ step 1: short acting β₂-agonists (SABA) PRN



National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute Guidelines for Well-Controlled Asthma

- Daytime symptoms ≤2 d/wk
- Night time symptoms <1 night/mo
- Normal physical activity
- Mild and infrequent exacerbations
- No work/school absenteeism
- Need for β-agonist ≤2 doses/wk
- FEV₁ or peak expiratory flow >80% of personal best
- FEV₁/FVC >80%
- Exacerbations requiring oral systemic corticosteroids 0-1/yr

- step 2: low-dose inhaled corticosteroids (ICS) preferred; alternative: cromolyn or montelukast (or LTRA, nedocromil, or theophylline for ages 5-11)
- step 3: medium-dose ICS (OR low-dose ICS + long acting β 2-agonist (LABA) for ages 5-11)
- step 4: medium-dose ICS + LABA or monteleukast
- step 5: high-dose ICS + LABA or monteleukast
- step 6: high-dose ICS + LABA or monteleukast + oral systemic corticosteroids
- for ages 5-11: may substitute LABA for LTRA or theophylline, do not use monteleukast
- at all steps
 - patient education, environmental control, management of comorbidities
 - quick relief medication: SABA as needed
 - consider injection immunotherapy for steps 2-4
- indications for hospitalization
 - decision to hospitalize is based on duration of symptoms, severity of symptoms, severity of obstruction, response to ED treatment, course and severity of previous exacerbations, medication use at time of exacerbation, access to medical care/medications, adequacy of home support, and presence of psychiatric illness
 - individualized decision to admit to ward: FEV1 or PEF <70%; ongoing mild-moderate symptoms despite ED treatment
 - admit to ICU: FEV1 or PEF <40%, $PCO_2 \geq 42$ mmHg, physical exam shows severe symptoms, drowsiness, confusion

Cystic Fibrosis

- see [Respirology, R12](#)

Etiology

- 1 per 3,000 live births, mostly Caucasians
- autosomal recessive, *CFTR* gene found on chromosome 7 ($\Delta F508$ mutation in 70%, but >1,600 different mutations identified) resulting in a dysfunctional chloride channel on the apical membrane of cells
- leads to relative dehydration of airway secretions, resulting in impaired mucociliary transport and airway obstruction

Clinical Presentation

- neonatal: meconium ileus, prolonged jaundice, antenatal bowel perforation
- infancy: pancreatic insufficiency with steatorrhea and FTT (despite voracious appetite), anemia, hypoproteinemia, hyponatremia
- childhood: heat intolerance, wheezing or chronic cough, recurrent chest infections (*S. aureus*, *P. aeruginosa*, *H. influenzae*), hemoptysis, nasal polyps, distal intestinal obstruction syndrome, rectal prolapse, clubbing of fingers
- older patients: COPD, infertility (males), decreased fertility (female)

Investigations

- sweat chloride test x 2 (>60 mEq/L)
 - false positive tests: malnutrition, atopic dermatitis, hypothyroidism, hypoparathyroidism, GSD, adrenal insufficiency, G6PD, Klinefelter syndrome, technical issues, autonomic dysfunction, familial cholestasis syndrome
 - false negative tests: technical problem with test, malnutrition, skin edema, mineralocorticoids

Management

- nutritional counseling: high calorie diet, pancreatic enzyme replacements, fat soluble vitamin supplements
- management of chest disease: physiotherapy, postural drainage, exercise, bronchodilators, aerosolized DNAase and inhaled hypertonic saline, antibiotics (e.g. cephalosporin, cloxacillin, ciprofloxacin, inhaled tobramycin depending on sputum C&S), lung transplantation
- genetic counseling

Complications

- respiratory failure, pneumothorax (poor prognostic sign), cor pulmonale (late), pancreatic fibrosis with DM, gallstones, cirrhosis with portal HTN, infertility (male)
- early death (current median survival in the US is 37.4 yr)



CF Presenting Signs

CF PANCREAS

Chronic cough and wheezing
FTT

Pancreatic insufficiency (symptoms of malabsorption such as steatorrhea)

Alkalosis and hypotonic dehydration

Neonatal intestinal obstruction

(meconium ileus)/Nasal polyps

Clubbing of fingers/Chest radiograph with characteristic changes

Rectal prolapse

Electrolyte elevation in sweat, salty skin

Absence or congenital atresia of vas deferens

Sputum with *S. aureus* or *P. aeruginosa* (mucoid)

- Pancreatic dysfunction – determined by 3 d fecal fat collection
- Genetics – useful where sweat chloride test is equivocal

Rheumatology

Evaluation of Limb Pain

Table 46. Differential Diagnosis of Limb Pain

Cause	<3 yr	3-10 yr	>10 yr
Trauma	x	x	x
Infectious			
Septic arthritis	x	x	x
Osteomyelitis	x	x	x
Inflammatory			
Transient synovitis	x	x	
JIA	x	x	x
Spondyloarthritis		x	x
SLE		x	x
Dermatomyositis		x	x
HSP		x	x
Anatomic/Orthopedic			
Legg-Calvé-Perthes disease		x	x
Slipped capital femoral epiphysis			x
Osgood-Schlatter disease			x
Neoplastic			
Leukemia	x	x	x
Neuroblastoma	x	x	x
Bone tumor		x	x
Hematologic			
Hemophilia (hemarthrosis)	x	x	x
Sickle cell anemia	x	x	x
Pain Syndromes			
Growing pains		x	x
Fibromyalgia		x	x
Reflex sympathetic dystrophy			x



Red Flags for Limb Pain

Fever, pinpoint pain/tenderness, pain out of proportion to degree of inflammation, night pain, weight loss, erythema

- must rule out infection, malignancy, and acute orthopedic conditions

History

- demographics (age, gender)
- pattern of onset and progression of symptoms (including acuity and chronicity)
- morning stiffness, limp/weight-bearing status, night pain
- joint involvement (type, distribution) ± spine (axial) involvement
- extra-articular manifestations and systemic symptoms
- functional status – activities of daily living
- family history (arthritis, IBD, psoriasis, spondyloarthropathies, uveitis, bleeding disorders, sickle cell anemia)
- past medical illness, intercurrent infection, travel, sick contact history, joint injury

Physical Exam

- growth parameters
- screening examination (pediatric gait, arms, legs, spine exam)
- joint exam: inspection/palpation (swelling, erythema, warmth, tenderness, deformity), ROM
- adjacent structures (bone, tendon, muscle, skin)
- leg length
- neurologic exam

Investigations

- basic: CBC and differential, blood smear, ESR, CRP, x-ray
- as indicated: blood (ANA, RF, culture, viral/bacterial serology, CK, PTT, sickle cell screen, immunoglobulins, complement), urinalysis, synovial fluid (cell count, Gram stain, culture), TB skin test, imaging, bone marrow aspiration, slit lamp exam

Growing Pains

Epidemiology

- age 2-12 yr, M=F

Clinical Presentation

- diagnosis of exclusion
- intermittent, non-articular pain in childhood with *normal physical exam findings*
- pain at night, often limited to the calf, shin, or thigh; typically short-lived and bilateral
- relieved by heat, massage, mild analgesics
- child is well, asymptomatic during the day, no functional limitation
- possible family history of growing pains

Management

- lab investigations not necessary if typical presentation; reassurance and supportive management

Transient Synovitis of the Hip

- benign, self-limited disorder, usually occurs after URTI, pharyngitis, AOM

Epidemiology

- age 3-10 yr, M>F

Clinical Presentation

- afebrile or low-grade fever, pain typically occurs in hips, knees (referred from hip); painful limp but full ROM (pain not as pronounced as in joint or bone infections)
- symptoms resolve over 7-10 d

Investigations

- WBC within normal limits; ESR and CRP may be mildly elevated
- joint effusions may be seen on imaging
- diagnosis of exclusion (rule out septic arthritis and osteomyelitis)

Treatment

- symptomatic and anti-inflammatory medications

Septic Arthritis and Osteomyelitis

- **MEDICAL EMERGENCY**
- see [Orthopedics](#), OR10



Table 47. Microorganisms and Treatment Involved in Septic Arthritis/Osteomyelitis

Age	Pathogens	Treatment
Neonate	GBS, <i>S. aureus</i> , Gram negative bacilli	cloxacillin + aminoglycoside or cefotaxime
Infant (1-3 mo)	<i>Strep. spp.</i> , <i>Staph. spp.</i> , <i>H. influenzae</i> Pathogens as per neonate	cloxacillin + cefotaxime
Child	<i>S. aureus</i> , <i>S. pneumoniae</i> , GAS	cefazolin
Adolescent	As above; also <i>N. gonorrhoeae</i>	cefazolin
Sickle cell disease	As above; also <i>Salmonella</i>	cefotaxime

GAS = group A Strep; GBS = group B Strep

Adapted from: Tse SML, Laxer RM. *Pediatrics in Review* 2006;27:170-179

Juvenile Idiopathic Arthritis

- a heterogeneous group of conditions characterized by persistent arthritis in children <16 yr
- diagnosis: arthritis in ≥1 joint(s); duration ≥6 wk; onset age <16 yr old; exclusion of other causes of arthritis; classification defined by features/number of joints affected in the first 6 mo of onset

Systemic Arthritis (Still's Disease)

- onset at any age, M=F
- once or twice daily fever spikes ($>101.3^{\circ}\text{F}$) ≥ 2 d/wk; children usually acutely unwell during fever episodes
- extra-articular features: erythematous "salmon-colored" maculopapular rash, lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly, leukocytosis, thrombocytosis, anemia, serositis

- arthritis may occur weeks to months later
- high ESR, CRP, WBC, platelet count

Oligoarticular Arthritis (1-4 joints)

- onset early childhood, F>M
- persistent: affects no more than 4 joints during the disease course
- extended: affects more than 4 joints after the first 6 mo
- typically affects large joints: knees > ankles, elbows, wrists; hip involvement unusual
- ANA positive ~60-80%, RF negative
- screening eye exams for asymptomatic anterior uveitis (occurs in ~30%)
- complications: knee flexion contracture, quadriceps atrophy, leg-length discrepancy, growth disturbances

Polyarticular Arthritis (5 or more joints)

- RF negative
 - onset: 2-4 yr and 6-12 yr, F>M
 - symmetrical involvement of large and small joints of hands and feet, TMJ, cervical spine
- RF positive
 - onset: late childhood/early adolescence, F>M
 - similar to the aggressive form of adult rheumatoid arthritis
 - severe, rapidly destructive, symmetrical arthritis of large and small joints
 - may have rheumatoid nodules at pressure points (elbows, knees)
 - unremitting disease, persists into adulthood

Enthesitis-Related Arthritis

- onset: late childhood/adolescence, M>F
- arthritis and/or enthesitis (inflammation at the site where tendons or ligaments attach to the bone)
- weight bearing joints, especially hip and intertarsal joints
- risk of developing ankylosing spondylitis in adulthood

Psoriatic Arthritis

- onset: 2-4 yr and 9-11 yr, F>M
- arthritis and psoriasis OR arthritis and at least two of
 - dactylitis, nail abnormalities, or family history of psoriasis in a 1st degree relative
 - asymmetric or symmetric small or large joint involvement

Management

- goals of therapy: eliminate inflammation, prevent joint damage, promote normal growth and development as well as normal function, minimize medication toxicity
- exercise to maintain ROM and muscle strength
- multidisciplinary approach: OT/PT, social work, orthopedics, ophthalmology, rheumatology
- 1st line drug therapy: NSAIDs, intra-articular corticosteroids
- 2nd line drug therapy: DMARDs (methotrexate, sulfasalazine, leflunamide), corticosteroids (acute management of severe arthritis, systemic symptoms of JIA, topical eye drops for uveitis), biologic agents

Reactive Arthritis

- see [Rheumatology, RH24](#)
- arthritis (typically the knee) follows bacterial infection, especially with *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Yersinia*, *Campylobacter*, *Chlamydia*, and most commonly *Streptococcus* (post-streptococcal reactive arthritis)
- typically resolves spontaneously
- may progress to chronic illness or Reiter's syndrome (urethritis, conjunctivitis)



Lyme Arthritis

- see [Infectious Diseases, ID23](#)
- caused by spirochete *Borrelia burgdorferi*
- incidence highest among 5-10 yr olds
- do not treat children <8 yr old with doxycycline (may cause permanent tooth discoloration)



Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

- see [Rheumatology, RH11](#)
- autoimmune illness affecting multiple organ systems
- incidence 1/1,000, more commonly age >10, F:M = 10:1
- childhood-onset SLE vs. adult-onset SLE: children have more active disease, are more likely to have renal disease, and children receive more intensive drug therapy and have a poorer prognosis



Vasculitides

HENOCH-SCHÖNLEIN PURPURA

- most common vasculitis of childhood, peak incidence 4-10 yr, M:F = 2:1
- vasculitis of small vessels
- often have history of URTI 1-3 wk before onset of symptoms

Clinical Presentation

- clinical triad: 1) palpable purpura, 2) abdominal pain, 3) arthritis
- skin: palpable, non-thrombocytopenic purpura in lower extremities and buttocks, edema, scrotal swelling
- joints: arthritis/arthralgia involving large joints associated with painful edema
- GI: abdominal pain, GI bleeding, intussusception
- renal: microscopic hematuria, IgA nephropathy, proteinuria, HTN, renal failure in <5%

Management

- mainly supportive
- anti-inflammatory medications for joint pain, corticosteroids for select patients
- monitor for protein on urinalysis every month for 6 mo, checking for renal disease, which may develop late (immunosuppressive therapy if severe)

Prognosis

- self-limited, resolves within 4 wk
- recurrence in about one-third of patients
- long-term prognosis dependent on severity of nephritis

KAWASAKI DISEASE

- acute vasculitis of unknown etiology (likely triggered by infection)
- medium-sized vasculitis with predilection for coronary arteries
- most common cause of acquired heart disease in children in developed countries
- peak age: 3 mo-5 yr; Asians > Blacks > Caucasians

Diagnostic Criteria

- fever persisting ≥ 5 d AND ≥ 4 of the following features
 1. bilateral, non-exudative conjunctival injection
 2. oral mucous membrane changes (fissured lips, strawberry tongue, injected pharynx)
 3. changes of the peripheral extremities
 - ♦ acute phase: edema of hands, feet, palms, or soles
 - ♦ subacute phase: periungual desquamation
 4. polymorphous rash
 5. cervical lymphadenopathy >1.5 cm in diameter (usually unilateral)
- exclusion of other diseases (e.g. scarlet fever, measles)
- atypical Kawasaki disease: fever persisting ≥ 5 d and 2-3 of the above criteria
 - further evaluation dictated by CRP, ESR, and supplemental laboratory criteria

Management

- high (anti-inflammatory) dose of ASA while febrile
- low (anti-platelet) dose of ASA in subacute phase until platelets normalize, or longer if coronary artery involvement
- IVIg (2 g/kg) within 10 d of onset reduces risk of coronary aneurysm formation
- baseline 2D-Echo and follow up periodic 2D-Echo (usually at 6 wk)

Complications

- coronary artery vasculitis with aneurysm formation occurs in 20-25% of untreated children, <5% if receive IVIg within 10 d of fever
- 50% of aneurysms regress within 2 yr
- anticoagulation for multiple or large coronary aneurysms
- risk factors for coronary disease: male, age <1 or >9 yr, fever >10 d, Asian or Hispanic ethnicity, thrombocytopenia, hyponatremia



Diagnostic Criteria for Kawasaki Disease

Warm CREAM

Fever ≥ 5 d with ≥ 4 of:

Conjunctivitis

Rash

Edema/Erythema (hands and feet)

Adenopathy

Mucosal involvement

Common Medications

Table 48. Commonly Used Medications in Pediatrics

Drug Name	Dosing Schedule	Indications	Comments
acetaminophen (Tylenol®)	10-15 mg/kg/dose PO q4-6h prn	Analgesic, antipyretic	Not to exceed 60 mg/kg/d in neonates or 75 mg/kg/d in older children to a max of 4 g/d Causes hepatotoxicity at high doses
amoxicillin (Amoxil®)	80-90 mg/kg/d PO divided q8h	Otitis media	
dexamethasone	0.6 mg/kg PO x 1 0.3 mg/kg/d PO for 5 d	Croup Acute asthma	
fluticasone (Flovent®)	Moderate dose – 250-500 µg/d divided bid High dose – > 500 µg/d divided bid	Asthma	
ibuprofen (Advil®)	5-10 mg/kg/dose PO q6-8h	Analgesic, antipyretic	Cautious use in patients with liver impairment, history of GI bleeding or ulcers
iron	6 mg/kg/d elemental iron OD or divided tid	Anemia	SE: dark stool, constipation, dark urine
omeprazole		GERD	SE: headache, diarrhea, nausea, abdominal pain
ondansetron		Post-operative N/V Gastroenteritis Cyclic vomiting	SE: QTc prolongation, orally disintegrating tablets contain phenylalanine (caution in PKU patients)
phenobarbital	3-5 mg/kg/d PO OD or bid	Seizures	SE: CNS depression
polyethylene glycol 3350 (PEG)	Disimpaction: 1-1.5 g/kg/d x 3 d Maintenance: starting dose at 0.4-1 g/kg		
prednisone/ prednisilone	1-2 mg/kg/d PO x 5 d 3-4 mg/kg/d PO then taper to 1-2 mg/kg/d PO once platelet count >30 x 10 ⁹ /L 60 mg/m ² /d PO	Asthma ITP Nephrotic syndrome	Oral prednisone is bitter tasting, consider using prednisilone
salbutamol (Ventolin®)	0.01-0.03 mL/kg/dose in 3 mL NS via nebulizer q0.5-4h prn 100-200 µg/dose prn, max 4-8 puffs frequency q4h	Acute asthma Maintenance treatment for asthma	Can cause tachycardia, hypokalemia, restlessness

Source: Lau E. (2009) The 2010-2011 Formulary – The Hospital for Sick Children

References

Cardiology

- Bhandari A, Bhandari V. Pitfalls, problems, and progress in bronchopulmonary dysplasia. *Pediatrics* 2009;123:1562-1573.
- Ganz L. Sinus tachycardia. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2012.
- National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (Bethesda, Maryland). Task force on blood pressure control in children: report of the second task force on blood pressure control in children. *Pediatrics* 1987;79:1-2.
- Silversides CK, Kiess M, Beauchesne L, et al. Canadian Cardiovascular Society 2009 Consensus Conference on the management of adults with congenital heart disease: outflow tract obstruction, coarctation of the aorta, tetralogy of Fallot, Ebstein anomaly and Marfan's syndrome. *Can J Cardiol* 2010; 26:e80.
- Singh RK, Singh TP. Etiology and diagnosis of heart failure in infants and children. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2013.
- Vick GW, Bezold LI. Classification of atrial septal defects (ASDs), and clinical features and diagnosis of isolated ASDs in children. Rose BD (editor). Waltham: UpToDate. 2014.

Endocrinology

- Lenhard MJ, Reeves GD. Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion: a comprehensive review of insulin pump therapy. *Arch Int Med* 2001;161:2293-3000.
- Muir A. Precocious puberty. *Pediatr Rev* 2006;27:373-380.
- Panagiotopoulos C, Riddell MC, Sellers EAC. Canadian Diabetes Association 2013 Clinical Practice Guidelines for the Prevention and Management of Diabetes in Canada: Type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents. *Can J Diabetes* 2013;37(suppl 1):S163-S167.
- Silverstein J, Kilgusmith G, Copeland K, et al. Care of children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes: a statement of the American Diabetes Association. *Diabetes Care* 2005;28:186-208.
- Styne DM, Glaser NS. Nelson's essentials of pediatrics, 4th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2002. Endocrinology. 711-766.
- Wherrett D, Huot C, Mitchell B, et al. Canadian Diabetes Association 2013 Clinical Practice Guidelines for the Prevention and Management of Diabetes in Canada: Type 1 diabetes in children and adolescents. *Can J Diabetes* 2013;37(suppl 1):S153-S162.

Gastroenterology

- American Academy of Pediatrics Subcommittee on Chronic Abdominal Pain. Chronic abdominal pain in children. *Pediatrics* 2005;115:812.
- Foisy M, Ali S, Geist R, et al. The Cochrane Library and the treatment of chronic abdominal pain in children and adolescents: an overview of reviews. *Evid-Based Child Health* 2011;6:1027-1043.
- Friedman JN. Risk of acute hyponatremia in hospitalized children and youth receiving maintenance intravenous fluids. Canadian Pediatric Society, 2013.
- Kirshner BS, Black DD. Nelson's essentials of pediatrics, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1998. The gastrointestinal tract. 419-458.
- Rowan-Legg A. Oral health care for children: a call for action. Canadian Pediatric Society, 2013.
- Rowan-Legg A. Canadian Pediatric Society, Community Pediatrics Committee. Managing functional constipation in children. *Pediatr Child Health* 2011;16(10):661-665.
- Scott RB. Recurrent abdominal pain during childhood. *Can Fam Phys* 1994;40:539-547.

General Topics

- Albright EK. Pediatric history and physical examination, 4th ed. Current Clinical Strategies Publishing, 2003.
- Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Recommended Immunization Schedule for Persons Age 0 Through 18 Years. United States. January 2014.
- Blank S, Brady M, Buerk E, et al. Male circumcision. *Pediatrics* 2012;130(3):e756-85.
- Chan ES, Cummings C. Dietary exposures and allergy prevention in high-risk infants. *Paediatr Child Health* 2013;18(10):545-549.
- Critch JN. Nutrition for healthy term infants, birth to six months: an overview. Canadian Pediatric Society, 2013.
- D'Augustine S, Flosi T. Tarascon pediatric outpatient pocketbook, 1st ed. Tarascon Publishing, 2008.
- Dipchand A, Friedman J, Bismilla Z, et al. The Hospital for Sick Children handbook of pediatrics, 11th ed. Essential Med: Elsevier Canada, 2009.
- Greer FR, Sicherer SH, Burks AW, et al. Effects of nutritional interventions on the development of atopic disease in infants and children: the role of maternal dietary restriction, breastfeeding, timing of introduction of complementary foods, and hydrolyzed formulas. *Pediatrics* 2008;129:183-191.
- Hospital for Sick Children. Clinical Practice Guidelines: fluid and electrolyte administration in children, 2011.

Hospital for Sick Children handbook of pediatric emergency medicine. Sudbury: Jones and Bartlett, 2008.
Lau E. 2010-2011 Drug handbook and formulary. Essential Med: Hospital for Sick Children Department of Pharmacy, 2009.
McGahren ED, Wilson WG. Pediatrics recall, 3rd ed. Baltimore: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2008.
Pediatric Emergency Medicine. Apparent life-threatening events. Saunders Elsevier, 2008. 269-272.
Scruggs K, Johnson MT. Pediatrics 5-minute reviews. Current Clinical Strategies Publishing, 2001-2002.
Shields M. Measured obesity: overweight Canadian children and adolescents. Nutrition findings from the Canadian Community Health Survey. Statistics Canada, 2005.

Genetic Disorders and Developmental Disorders

Amato RSS. Nelson's essentials of pediatrics, 4th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2002. Human genetics and dysmorphology. 129-146.
Blake KD, Prasad C. CHARGE syndrome, orphanet. J Rare Diseases 2006;1.
Biggar W. Duchenne muscular dystrophy. Pediatr Rev 2006;27:83-88.
Chudley AE, Conry J, Cook JL, et al. Fetal alcohol spectrum disorder: Canadian guidelines for diagnosis. CMAJ 2005;172(5 Suppl):S1-21.
Nicholson JF. Nelson's essentials of pediatrics, 4th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2002. Inborn errors of metabolism. 153-178.
Vissers LE, van Ravenswaaij CM, Admiraal R, et al. Mutations in a new member of the chromodomain gene family cause CHARGE syndrome. Nat Genet 2004;36:955-957.

Hematology

Baker RD, Greer FR. Committee on Nutrition American Academy of Pediatrics. Diagnosis and prevention of iron deficiency and iron-deficiency anemia in infants and young children (0-3 yr of age). Pediatrics 2010;126:1040-1050.
Corrigan J, Boineau F. Hemolytic-uremic syndrome. Pediatr Rev 2001;22:365-369.
Pearce JM, Sills RH. Childhood leukemia. Pediatr Rev 2005;26:96-102.
Provan D, Stasi R, Newland AC, et al. International consensus report on the investigation and management of primary immune thrombocytopenia. Blood 2010;115:168-186.
Segel GB. Anemia. Pediatr Rev 1988;10:77-88.

Infectious Disease and Immunizations

Advisory Committee Statement National Advisory Committee on Immunization. Volume 28. ACS-2.
American Academy of Pediatrics. Committee on quality improvement: subcommittee on urinary tract infection. Practice parameter: the diagnosis, treatment, and evaluation of the initial urinary tract infection in febrile infants and young children. Pediatrics 1999;103(4pt1):843.
American Academy of Pediatrics. Red Book, 28th ed. 2009. *Haemophilus influenzae* infections: 2009 report of the committee on infectious diseases. 324.
American Academy of Pediatrics. Red Book, 28th ed. 2009. Pertussis (whooping cough) 2009 report of the committee on infectious diseases. 504.
Baraff LJ, Lee SI, Schriger DL. Outcomes of bacterial meningitis in children: a meta-analysis. Pediatr Infect Dis J 1993;12:389.
Forgie S, Zhanel G, Robinson J. Canadian Paediatric Society Infectious Diseases and Immunization Committee, 2009. Position statement on management of acute otitis media. Available from: <http://www.cps.ca/documents/position/acute-otitis-media>.
National Advisory Committee on Immunization. Canadian Immunization Guide (CIG), 7th edition. Public Health Agency of Canada, 2006. Last modified 2014. Available at: <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/publicat/cig-gci/>
Special Writing Group of the Committee. Rheumatic fever, endocarditis, and Kawasaki disease of the council on cardiovascular disease in the young of the American Heart Association. Guidelines for the diagnosis of rheumatic fever – Jones criteria, 1992 update. JAMA 1992;268:2069.
Tiwari T, Murphy TV, Moran J, et al. National Immunization Program, CDC. Recommended antimicrobial agents for the treatment and postexposure prophylaxis of pertussis: 2005 CDC guidelines. MMWR Recomm Rep 2005;54(RR-14):1.
Wubbel L, McCracken D, McCracken GH. Management of bacterial meningitis. Pediatr Rev 1998;19(3):78-84.
Zorc JJ, Kiddoo DA, Shaw KN. Diagnosis and management of pediatric urinary tract infections. Clin Microbiol Rev 2005;18:417.

Neonatology

Barrington KJ, Sankaran K. Guidelines for detection, management and prevention of hyperbilirubinemia in term and late preterm newborn infants. Pediatr Child Health 2007;12:1B-12B.
Gomella TL, Cunningham MD, Eyal FG, et al. Neonatology: management, procedures, on-call problems, diseases and drugs, 5th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004. Assessment of gestational age. 21-28, 491-6, 559-62.
Jain L, Douglas E. Physiology of fetal lung fluid clearance and the effect of Labor. Seminars in Perinatology, 2006.
Joseph J, Zorc ZK. A cyanotic infant: true blue or otherwise? Pediatr Ann 2001;30(10):597-601.
Meinzen-Derr J, Poindexter B, Vrage L, et al. Role of human milk in extremely low birth weight infants' risk of necrotizing enterocolitis or death. J Perinatol 2009;29:57-62.
Niemeyer S, Kattwinkel J, Van Reempts P, et al. International guidelines for neonatal resuscitation: an excerpt from the guidelines 2000 for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care: international consensus on science. Pediatrics 2000;106:E29.

Nephrology

Diven SC, Luther BT. A practical primary care approach to hematuria in children. Pediatr Nephrol 2000;14:65-72.
Hogg RJ, Portman RJ, Milliner D, et al. Evaluation and management of proteinuria and nephrotic syndrome in children: recommendations from a pediatric nephrology panel established at the National Kidney Foundation Conference on proteinuria, albuminuria, risk assessment, detection and elimination (PARADE). Pediatrics 2000;105:1242-1249.
Michael RS. Toilet training. Pediatr Rev 1999;20(7):240-245.

Neurology

Bergman I, Painter MJ. Nelson's essentials of pediatrics, 4th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2002. Neurology. 767-820.
Hirtz D, Ashwal S, Berg A, et al. Practice parameter: evaluation of a first nonfebrile seizure in children. Report of the quality standards subcommittee of the American Epilepsy Academy of Neurology, The Child Neurology Society and The American Epilepsy Society. Neurology 2000;55:616-623.
Levy RG, Cooper PN, Giri P. Ketogenic diet and other dietary treatments for epilepsy. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;3:CD001903.
Lewis DW, Ashwal S, Dahl G, et al. Report of the Quality Standards Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the Practice Committee of the Child Neurology Society. Practice parameter: evaluation of children and adolescents with recurrent headaches. Neurology 2002;59:490-498.
Lewis D, Ashwal S, Hershey A, et al. American Academy of Neurology. Practice parameter: pharmacological treatment of migraine headache in children and adolescents. Neurology 2004;63:2215-24.
Tenenbaum S. Clinical neurology and neurosurgery. Elsevier, November 2007. Disseminated encephalomyelitis in children.

Respirology

Cystic Fibrosis Foundation. Patient Registry 2007 Annual Report. September 2009. Available at <http://www.cff.org/research/ClinicalResearch/PatientRegistryReport/>
Gadomski AM, Brower M. Bronchodilators for bronchiolitis. Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2010;12:CD001266.
Garrison MM, Christakis DA, Harvey E, et al. Systemic corticosteroids in infant bronchiolitis: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 2000;105:e44.
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. Expert Panel Report 3: Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of asthma. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. 2007.

Rheumatology

Newburger JW, Takahashi M, Gerber MA, et al. Diagnosis, treatment, and long-term management of Kawasaki disease: a statement for health professionals from the Committee on Rheumatic Fever, Endocarditis and Kawasaki Disease, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, American Heart Association. Circulation 2004;110:2747-71.
Olson JC. Nelson's essentials of pediatrics, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 1998. Rheumatic diseases of childhood. 299-314.
Wormser GP, Dattwyler RJ, Shapiro ED, et al. The clinical assessment, treatment, and prevention of Lyme disease, human granulocytic anaplasmosis, and babesiosis: clinical practice guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 2006;43:1089.

Web-Based Resources

<http://www.medscape.com/home/topics/pediatrics>.
<http://www.icndata.com/health/pedbase>.
<http://www.cda-adc.ca>.
<http://www.aboutkidshealth.ca>.
<http://www.healthychildren.org>.
<http://www.publichealth.gc.ca>.

Neil D'Souza, Mohammed Attia, and Monica Yu, chapter editors

Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Alexa Bramall, EBM editor

Dr. Benjamin Levi, Dr. Melinda Musgrave, and Dr. Kyle R. Wanzel, staff editor

Acronyms	2	Hand	22
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Traumatic Hand	
Skin		General Management	
Hand		Hand Infections	
Brachial Plexus		Amputations	
Face		Tendons	
Skin Lesions and Masses	5	Fractures and Dislocations	
Differential Diagnosis of Skin Lesions/Masses		Dupuytren's Disease	
Surgical Management of Malignant Skin Lesions		Carpal Tunnel Syndrome	
Basic Surgical Techniques	6	Rheumatoid Hand	
Sutures and Suturing		Brachial Plexus	28
Excision		Craniofacial Injuries	28
Skin Biopsy Types and Techniques		Approach to Facial Injuries	
Wounds	8	Mandibular Fractures	
Causal Conditions		Maxillary Fractures	
Principles of Wound Healing		Nasal Fractures	
Contaminated and Infected Wounds		Naso-Orbital Ethmoid Fractures	
Dressings		Zygomatic Fractures	
Reconstruction		Orbital Floor Fractures	
Soft Tissue Infections	14	Breast Surgery	32
Erysipelas		Breast Reconstruction	
Cellulitis		Breast Tissue Expanders	
Necrotizing Fasciitis		Breast Reduction	
Ulcers	15	Aesthetic Surgery	34
Lower Limb Ulcers		Aesthetic Procedures	
Pressure Ulcers		Pediatric Plastic Surgery	35
Burns	16	Craniofacial Anomalies	
Burn Injuries		Congenital Hand Anomalies	
Pathophysiology of Burn Wounds		References	36
Diagnosis and Prognosis			
Indications for Transfer to Burn Center			
Acute Care of Burn Patients			
Special Considerations			

Acronyms

ABI	ankle-brachial index	FDS	flexor digitorum superficialis	PVD	peripheral vascular disease
APL	abductor pollicis longus	FTSG	full thickness skin graft	RA	rheumatoid arthritis
ATLS	advanced trauma life support	GBS	group B <i>Streptococcus</i>	RL	Ringer's lactate
BMR	basal metabolic rate	I&D	incision and drainage	ROM	range of motion
CMC	carpo-metacarpal	ICP	intracranial pressure	SGAP	superior gluteal artery perforator
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid	IGAP	inferior gluteal artery perforator	SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
CVD	cerebrovascular disease	IP	interphalangeal	SIEA	superficial inferior epigastric artery
D5W	5% dextrose in water	IVlg	intravenous immunoglobulin	SLP	speech language pathology
DIEP	deep inferior epigastric perforator	MC	metacarpal	SOF	superior orbital fissure
DIP	distal interphalangeal joint	MCP	metacarpal phalangeal joint	STSG	split thickness skin graft
DM	diabetes mellitus	NCV	nerve conduction velocity	TBSA	total body surface area
EMG	electromyography	NS	normal saline	TMJ	temporomandibular joint
ENT	ear, nose, throat	NSAIDs	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs	TRAM	transverse rectus abdominus myocutaneous
EOM	extraocular movement	OM	otitis media	UCL	ulnar collateral ligament
EPB	extensor pollicis brevis	ORIF	open reduction internal fixation	UV	ultraviolet
FDP	flexor digitorum profundus	PIP	proximal interphalangeal joint		

Basic Anatomy Review

Skin

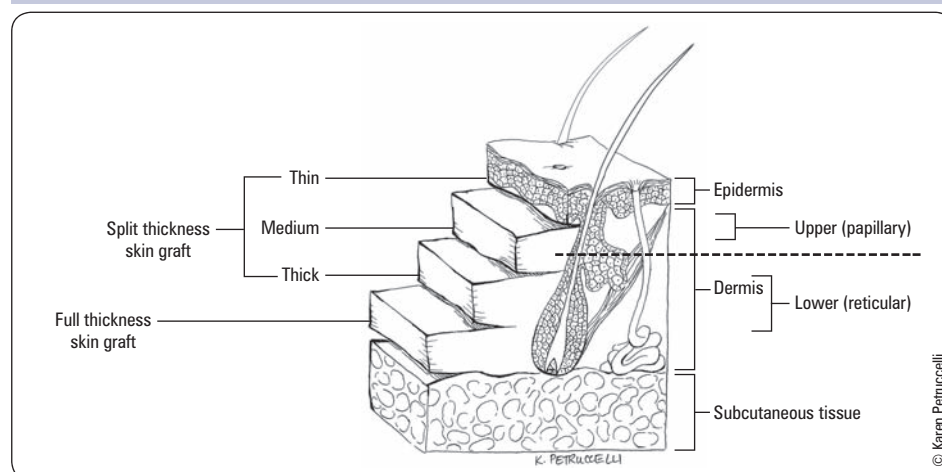


Figure 1. Split and full (whole) thickness skin grafts

Hand

BONES AND NERVES

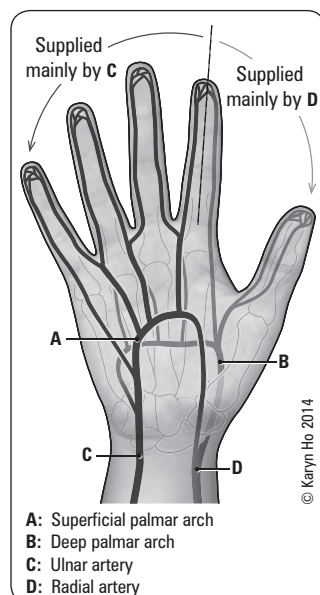


Figure 2. Arterial supply in the hand

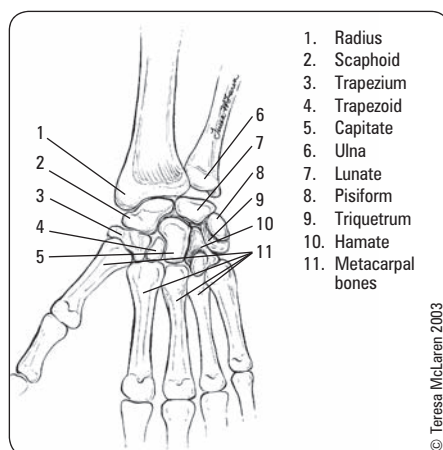


Figure 3. Carpal bones

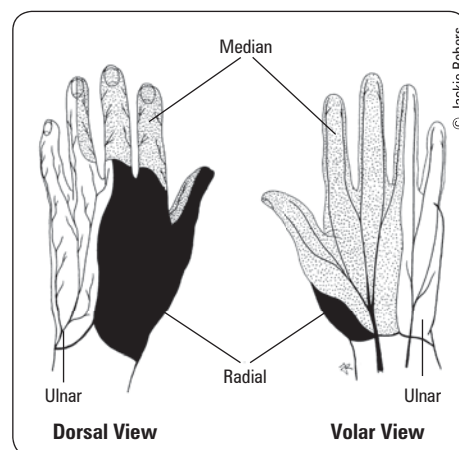


Figure 4. Sensory distribution in the hand

TENDONS

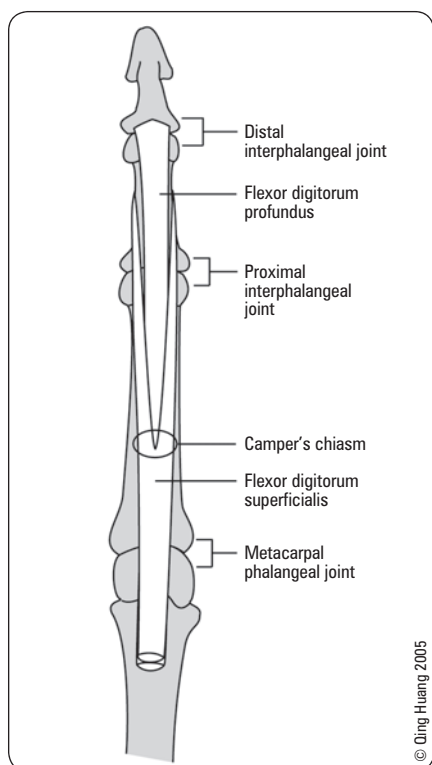


Figure 5. Flexor tendon insertion at PIP and DIP

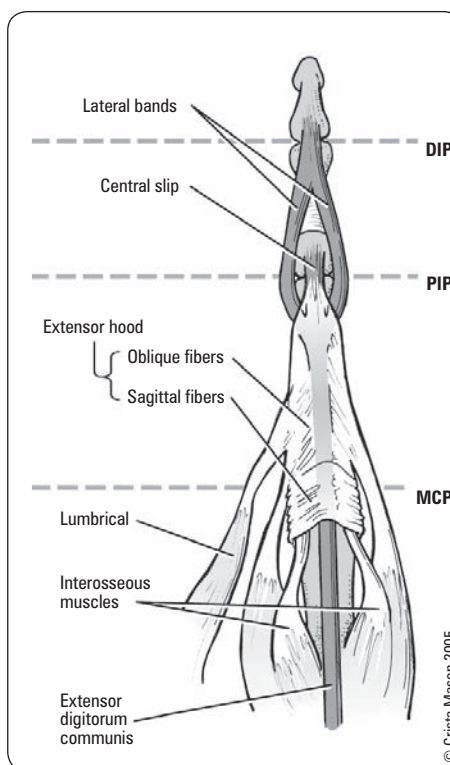


Figure 6. Extensor mechanism of digits



Carpal Bone Mnemonic

So	Scaphoid
Long	Lunate
To	Triquetrum
Pinky	Pisiform
Here	Hamate
Comes	Capitate
The	Trapezoid
Thumb	Trapezium



Flexor Tendons

All require OR repair

Extensor Tendons

ER repair unless proximal/multiple tendons

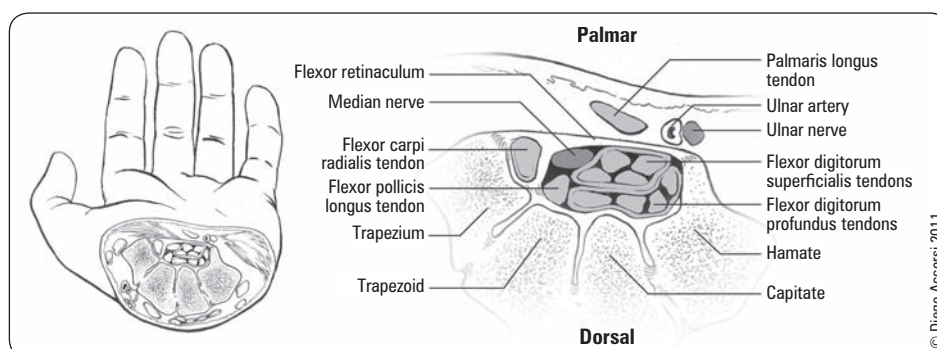


Figure 7. Carpal tunnel

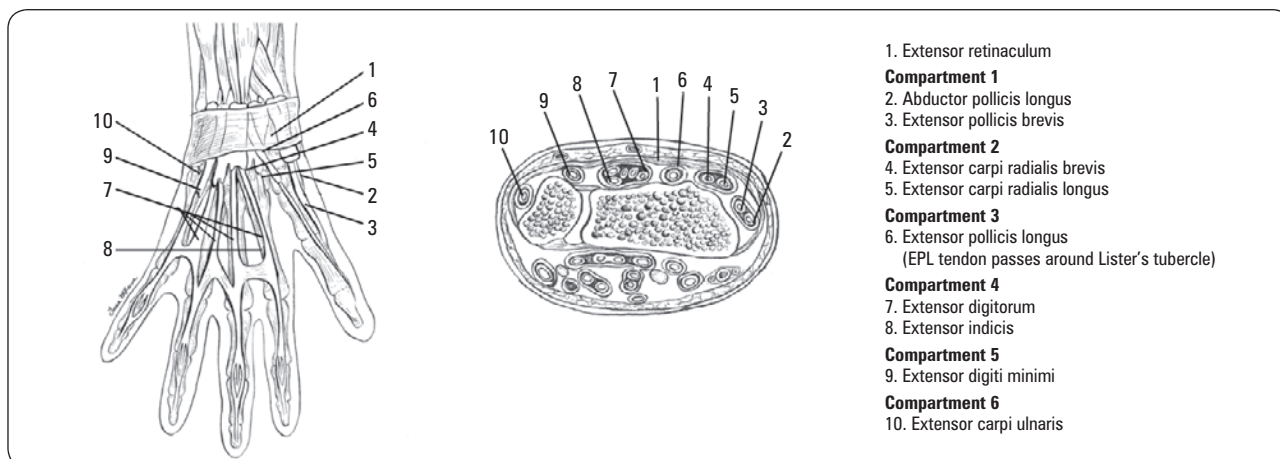
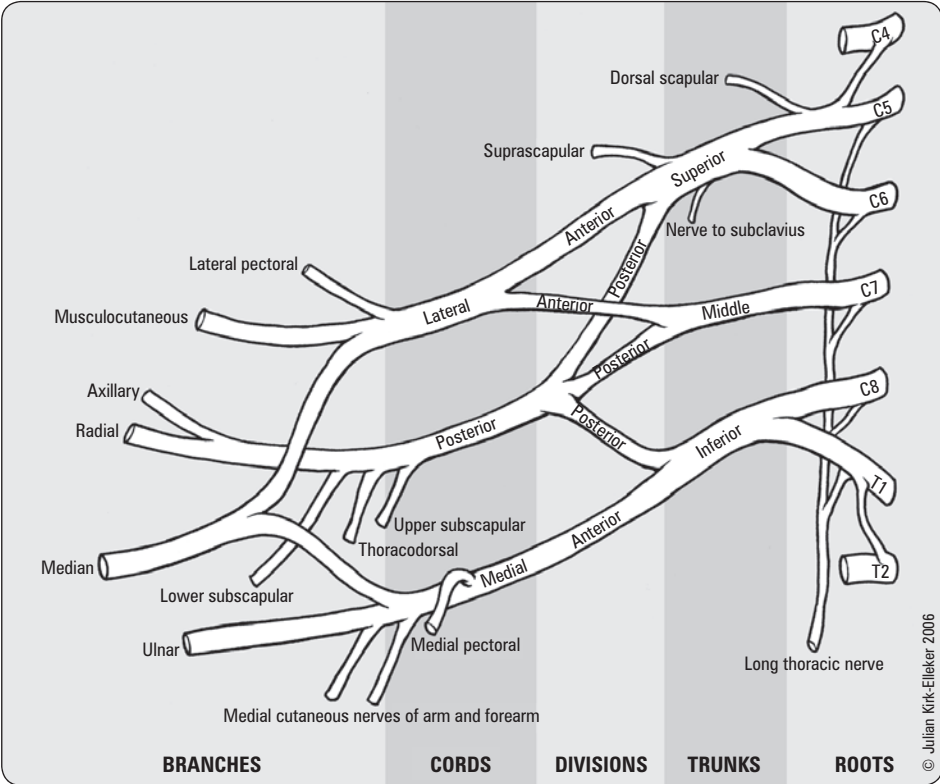


Figure 8. Extensor compartments of the wrist (dorsal view and cross-sectional view)

Brachial Plexus



Brachial Plexus Mnemonic
Rob – Roots
Thomas – Trunks
Drinks – Divisions
Cold – Cords
Beers – Branches

Figure 9. Brachial plexus anatomy

Face

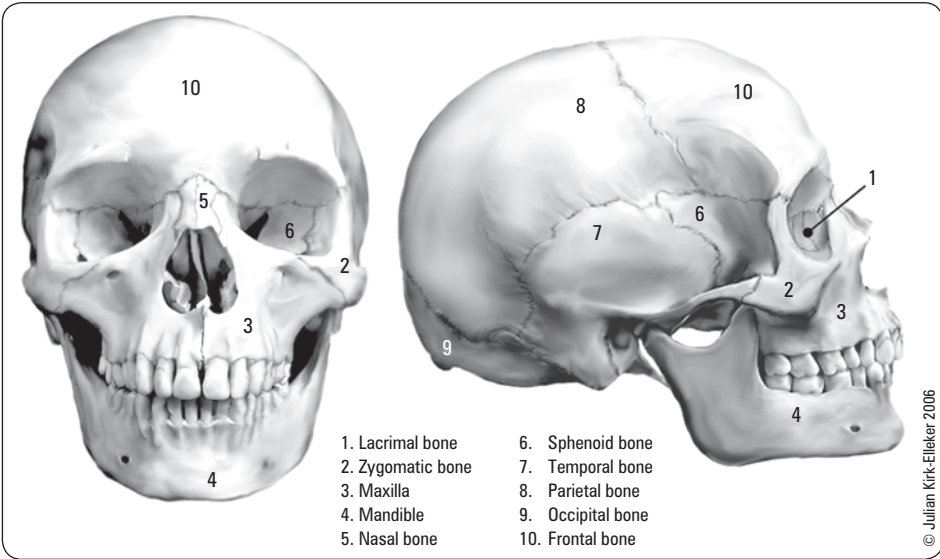


Figure 10. Skull and facial bones

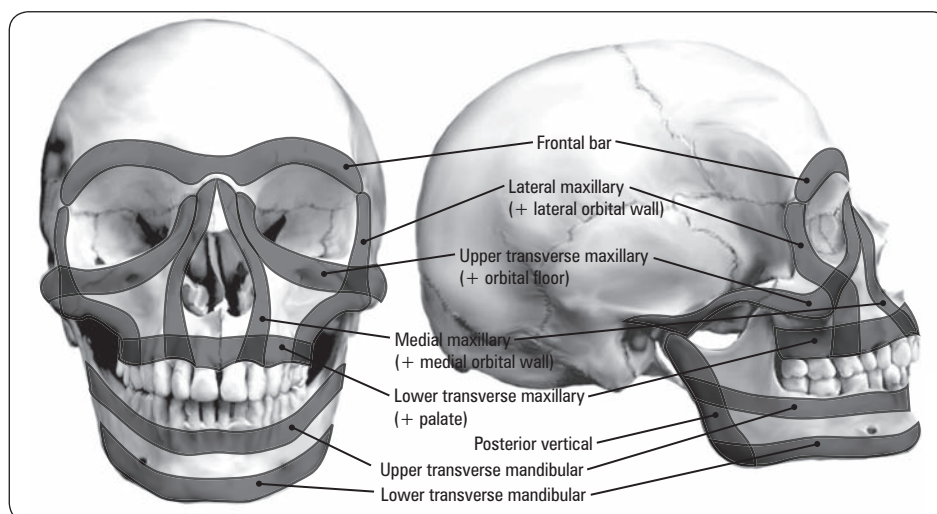


Figure 11. Craniofacial horizontal and vertical buttresses

Skin Lesions and Masses



Differential Diagnosis of Skin Lesions/Masses

- for background information and medical management (see [Dermatology, D5](#))
- for biopsy techniques, see [Skin Biopsy Types and Techniques, PL7](#)



Surgical Management of Malignant Skin Lesions

- surgical treatment for all malignant skin lesions involve total excision of the primary lesion
- excision margin of lesion depends on the diameter and depth
- for decisions regarding reconstruction using flaps or skin grafts, see [Reconstruction, PL11](#)

Precursors of Malignant Lesions

Table 1. Precursors

Basal Cell Carcinoma	Squamous Cell Carcinoma	Malignant Melanoma
Nevus sebaceous of Jadassohn	Actinic keratosis Bowen's disease Bowenoid papulosis Paget's disease Leukoplakia Erythroplasia	Dysplastic nevus Lentigo maligna Giant congenital nevus

Surgical Margins

Table 2. Surgical Margins for Basal Cell Carcinoma

Diameter of Lesion	Surgical Margins
≤2 cm	3 mm
>2 cm	5 mm

Table 3. Surgical Margins for Squamous Cell Carcinoma

Diameter or Location of Lesion	Surgical Margins
≤2 cm*	4 mm*
>2 cm	6 mm
High risk (facial)	6 mm
Low risk (elsewhere)	4 mm

*For a high risk lesion that is <2 cm in diameter, use a 6 mm margin

Table 4. Surgical Margins for Malignant Melanoma

Depth of Lesion	Surgical Margins
<i>In situ</i>	0.5 cm
<1 mm	1 cm
1-4 mm	2 cm
≥2 mm	Minimum 2 cm



Traumatic tattoos are permanent discolorations resulting from new skin growth over foreign material or dirt left behind in the dermis. Copious irrigation and debridement should be done ASAP

Basic Surgical Techniques

Sutures and Suturing

ANESTHESIA

- debride and irrigate before injecting anesthetic
- toxicity of mixtures (i.e. lidocaine + bupivacaine) is no greater than its individual components

Table 5. Toxic Limit and Duration of Action (1 cc of 1% solution contains 10 mg lidocaine)

	Without Epinephrine	With Epinephrine (vasoconstrictor, limits bleeding)
Lidocaine (Xylocaine®)	5 mg/kg, lasts 45-60 min	7 mg/kg, lasts 2-6 h
Bupivacaine (Marcaine®) for longer analgesic effect	2 mg/kg, lasts 2-4 h	3 mg/kg, lasts 3-7 h

IRRIGATION AND DEBRIDEMENT

- irrigate copiously with a physiologic solution such as Ringer's lactate or normal saline to remove surface clots, foreign material, and bacteria
- debride all obviously devitalized tissue, irregular or ragged wounds must be excised to produce sharp wound edges that will assist healing when approximated

SUTURES

- use of a particular suture material is highly dependent on surgeon preference
- suture material divided into absorbable vs. non absorbable and monofilament vs. braided

Table 6. Suture Materials: Absorbable vs. Non-absorbable and Monofilament vs. Multifilament

Suture Materials	Uses	Examples	Notes
Absorbable	Deep sutures under short-term tension Skin closure in children	Plain gut®, Vicryl®, Polysorb®	loses at least 50% of their strength in 4 wk; eventually absorbed
Non-Absorbable	Skin closure (when trauma) Sites of long-term tension	Nylon, polypropylene (Prolene), stainless steel	Lower likelihood of wound dehiscence, more difficult to tie
Monofilament	Contaminated and infected wounds (lower likelihood of bacterial trapping in suture material)	Monosof®, Monocryl®, Biosyn®	Slides through tissue with less friction; more memory/stiffness
Multifilament	AVOID in contaminated wounds (increased likelihood of bacterial trapping)	Vicryl® and Silk	Less memory/stiffness thus easier to work with

BASIC SUTURING TECHNIQUES

Basic Suture Methods

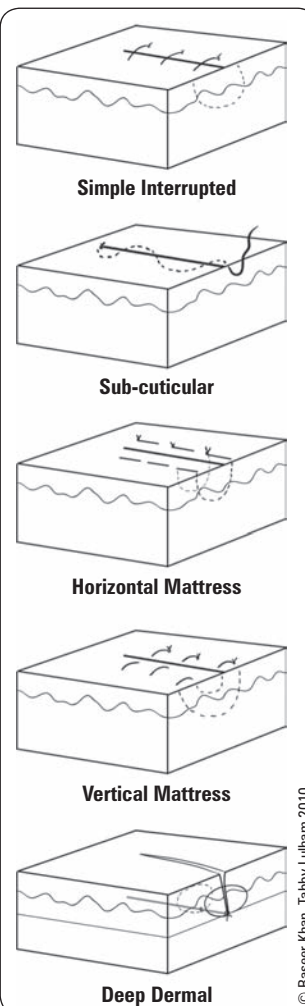
- simple interrupted: can be used in almost all situations
- sub-cuticular: good cosmetic result but weak, used in combination with deep sutures; not used in trauma
- vertical mattress: for areas difficult to evert (e.g. dorsum of the hand)
- horizontal mattress: everting, time saving
- continuous over and over (i.e. "running", "baseball stitch"): time saving, good for hemostasis

Basic Principles

- minimize tissue trauma: follow curve of needle, insert and exit at 90 degrees to the wound edge, handle wound edges gently (use toothed forceps), use just enough tension to approximate edges (do not strangulate)
- use the finest needle and suture possible
- ensure good cosmesis

Other Skin Closure Materials

- tapes: may be indicated for superficial wounds and those with opposable edges. Tape cannot be used on actively bleeding wounds. When placed across the incision, will prevent surface marks and can be used primarily or after surface sutures have been removed. Tape burns may occur if there is excessive tension or swelling around the incision
- skin adhesives: e.g. 2-octylcyanoacrylate (e.g. Dermabond®) works well on small areas without much tension or shearing; may cause irreversible tattooing
- staples: steel-titanium alloys that incite minimal tissue reaction (healing is comparable to wounds closed by suture)

**Figure 12. Basic suture methods**

Steps to Ensuring Good Suturing Cosmesis

- Incisions should be made along relaxed skin tension lines
- Attain close apposition of wound edges
- Minimize tension on skin by closing in layers
- Evert wound edges
- Use appropriately sized suture for skin closure (5-0, 6-0 on face; 3-0, 4-0 elsewhere)
- Ensure equal width and depth of tissue on both sides
- Remove sutures within 5-7 d from the face, 10-14 d from scalp/torso/extremities

Excision

- plan your incision along relaxed skin tension lines to minimize appearance of scar
- use elliptical incision to prevent “dog ears” (heaped up skin at end of incision) so the length of the ellipse should be 3x the width
- if needed, undermine skin edges to decrease wound tension
- use layered closure including dermal sutures when wound is deeper than superficial (decreases tension)

Skin Biopsy Types and Techniques

SHAVE BIOPSY

- used for superficial lesions where sampling of the full thickness of the dermis is not necessary
- most suitable lesions for shave biopsies are either elevated above the skin or have pathology confined to the epidermis (e.g. seborrheic or actinic keratoses, skin tags, warts, and superficial basal cell or squamous cell carcinomas)
- rapid, requires little training, and does not require sutures for closure
- will leave a circular scar
- can leave an indented scar
- heals by secondary intent
- should not be used for pigmented lesions – an unsuspected melanoma cannot be properly staged if partially removed

INCISIONAL BIOPSY

- can either be a punch biopsy
- or can be an ellipse including the lesion
- gives pathologists a portion of the lesion and the border with normal skin too

PUNCH BIOPSY

- involves the removal of a core-shaped piece of tissue, performed with round, disposable knives ranging in diameter from 2-10 mm
- allows sampling of the deep dermis
- can be used for the diagnosis and treatment of small pigmented lesions and atypical moles
- punch biopsy wounds can be closed with suture or left to heal by secondary intention. Punches greater than 3 mm may produce scarring and are best closed with one or two sutures
- has low incidence of infection, bleeding, nonhealing, significant scarring

EXCISIONAL BIOPSY

- performed for lesions that require complete removal for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes
- performed for lesions that cannot be adequately punch biopsied due to size, depth, or location
- requires the greatest amount of expertise and time
- always requires sutures for closure

TECHNIQUE

General

- all biopsies performed in clinic are done using aseptic technique, but are not sterile
- sterile gloves are indicated for biopsies and excisions in all patients

Preparing the Site

- common skin antiseptics (betadine, chlorhexidine) can be used to prepare the biopsy site
- chlorhexidine is used in concentrations ranging from 0.5-4%. This higher concentration cannot be used on the face as it could get into the eyes or ears and may burn or cause damage; most chlorhexidine preps also contain alcohol which can be flammable, so allow to dry before the biopsy and certainly before using any cautery
- mark the intended lesion and surgical margins with a surgical marker since they may be temporarily obliterated following injection of the anesthetic
- for all biopsies, a sterile drape technique is indicated. A fenestrated surgical drape is placed around the biopsy site after the area is cleansed and anesthetized

Anesthesia

- most commonly used local anesthetic is 1% or 2% lidocaine (with epinephrine)
- small amounts of epinephrine are added to constrict blood vessels, decrease bleeding, prolong anesthesia, and limit lidocaine toxicity. The local with epinephrine can be injected directly into the lesion
- local anesthetics with epinephrine may be used anywhere in the body (including the digits – except if the digits have been significantly injured and could have vascular compromise – e.g. saw injury)
- a field block should be performed for larger lesions by placing a ring of anesthetic around the surgical site, advancing and injecting through a site that has been previously anesthetized

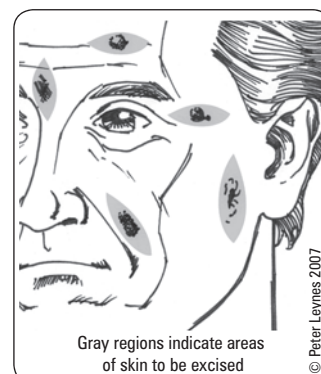


Figure 13. Incision of lesions along relaxed skin tension lines



Relaxed Skin Tension Lines

Natural skin/wrinkle lines with minimal linear tension. Placing incisions parallel to relaxed skin tension lines minimizes widening/hypertrophy, and helps to camouflage scars

Wounds



Causal Conditions

- laceration: cut or torn tissue
- abrasion: superficial skin layer is removed, variable depth
- contusion: injury caused by forceful blow to the skin and soft tissue; entire outer layer of skin intact yet injured
- avulsion: tissue/limb forcefully separated from surrounding tissue, either partially or fully; “de-gloving”
- puncture wounds: opening relatively small as compared with depth (e.g. needle)
 - includes bite wounds
- crush injuries: caused by compression
- thermal and chemical wounds

Principles of Wound Healing

- wound: disruption of the normal anatomical relationships of tissue as a result of injury

STAGES OF WOUND HEALING

- growth factors released by tissues play an important role
- scar is mature once it has completed the final stage, usually after 1 yr



FACTORS INFLUENCING WOUND HEALING

Local (reversible/controllable)

- mechanical (local trauma, tension)
- blood supply (ischemia/circulation)
- temperature
- technique and suture materials
- retained foreign body
- infection
- hematoma/seroma (↑ infection rate)
- venous HTN
- peripheral vascular disease

General (often irreversible)

- age
- nutrition (protein, vitamin C, O₂)
- smoking
- chronic illness (e.g. DM, cancer, CVD)
- immunosuppression (steroids, chemo, radiation)
- collagen vascular disease
- tissue irradiation



Myofibroblasts are the cells responsible for wound contraction; they do this at a rate of less than 0.75 mm/d

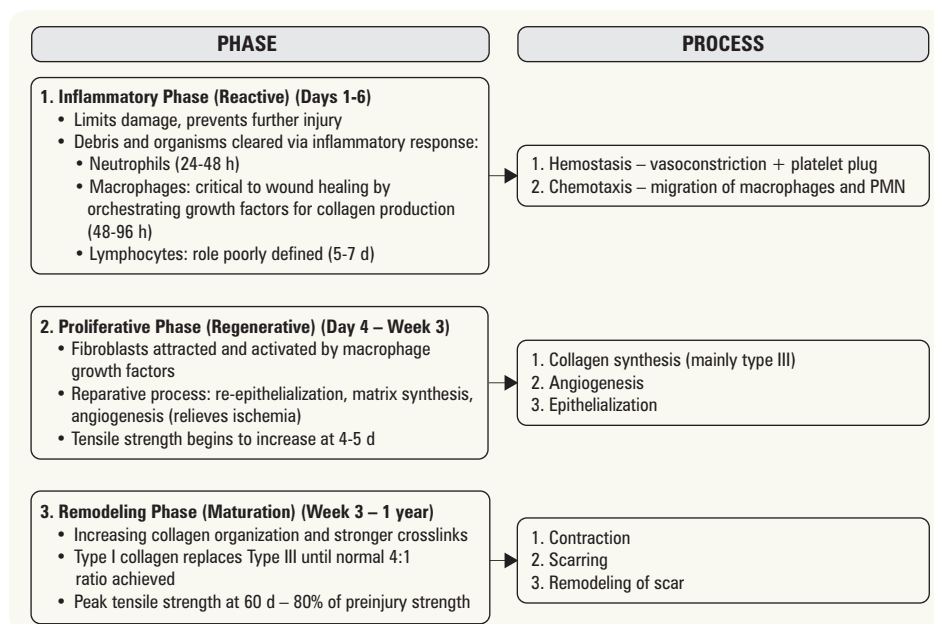


Figure 14. Stages of wound healing

ABNORMAL HEALING

Hypertrophic Scar

- scar remains roughly within boundaries of original injury
- red, raised, widened, frequently pruritic
- usually caused by excess tension on a wound or delayed closure (as in burn wounds)
- common sites: back, shoulder, sternum, angle of mandible
- treatment: pressure garments, silicone gel sheeting, corticosteroid injection, surgical excision if other options fail (however, may still recur), fractional carbon dioxide ablative laser
- typically improves with time

Keloid Scar

- scar extends beyond boundaries of original injury
- frequently pruritic, often painful; collagen in whorls rather than bundles
- common sites: sternum, deltoid, earlobe; more common in darker skinned people
- treatment: pressure garments, silicone gel sheeting, corticosteroid injection, radiation therapy ± surgical excision as a last resort
- unlike hypertrophic scar, this is due to a derangement in normal wound healing caused by over-active fibroblasts due to excessive transforming growth factor-beta expression

Chronic Wound

- fails to heal primarily within 4-6 wk
- common chronic wounds include diabetic, pressure and venous stasis ulcers
- treatment: may heal with meticulous wound care; may also require surgical intervention
- Marjolin's ulcer: squamous cell carcinoma arising in a chronic wound secondary to genetic changes caused by chronic inflammation → consider biopsy of chronic wound

WOUND CLOSURE

Primary (1°) Closure (First Intention)

- definition: wound closure by direct approximation of edges within hours of wound creation (i.e. with sutures, staples, skin graft, etc.)
- indication: recent (<6 h, longer with facial wounds), clean wounds
- contraindications: animal/human bites (except on face), crush injuries, infection, long time lapse since injury (>6-8 h), retained foreign body

Secondary (2°) Closure/Spontaneous Healing (Second Intention)

- definition: wound left open to heal spontaneously (epithelialization 1 mm/d from wound margins in concentric pattern), contraction (myofibroblasts) and granulation – maintained in inflammatory phase until wound closed; requires dressing changes; inferior cosmetic result
- indication: when 1° closure not possible or indicated (see [Primary Closure](#))

Tertiary (3°) Closure/Delayed Primary Closure (Third Intention)

- definition: intentionally interrupt healing process (e.g. with packing), then wound can be closed at 4-10 d post-injury after granulation tissue has formed and there is <10⁵ bacteria/gram of tissue
- indication: contaminated (high bacterial count), long time lapse since initial injury, severe crush component with significant tissue devitalization, closure of fasciotomy wounds
- prolongation of inflammatory phase decreases bacterial count and lessens chance of infection after closure

Contaminated and Infected Wounds

Definitions

- contamination: the presence of non-replicating microorganisms within a wound
- colonization: the presence of replicating microorganisms within a wound
- infection: greater than 10⁵ microorganisms in a wound without intact epithelium, a wound may also be infected with small amounts of a very virulent organism (e.g. GBS)

Management of Acute Contaminated Wound (<24 h)

- cleanse and irrigate open wound with physiologic solution (NS or RL)
- evaluate for injury to underlying structures (vessels, nerve, tendon and bone)
- control active bleeding
- debridement: removal of foreign material, devitalized tissue, old blood
 - surgical debridement: blade and irrigation if indicated
- systemic antibiotics are commonly indicated for obvious infection, wound older than 8 h, severely contaminated, human/animal bites, immunocompromised, involvement of deeper structures (e.g. joints, fractures)
- ± tetanus toxoid 0.5 mL IM ± tetanus immunoglobulin 250 U deep IM (see [Table 7](#) and [Table 8](#))



Risk Factors for Infection

- Virulence of the infecting microorganism
- Amount of bacteria present
- Host resistance

- \pm post-exposure treatment of
 - hepatitis B, HIV, hepatitis C (if titres confirmed at 6 mo)
- re-evaluate in 24-48 h for signs of deep infection
 - open infected portion of wound by removing sutures if evidence of infection (i.e. erythema, warmth, pain, discharge)

Table 7. Risks for Tetanus

Wound Characteristics	Tetanus-Prone	Not Tetanus-Prone
Time since injury	> 6 h	< 6 h
Depth of injury	> 1 cm	< 1 cm
Mechanism of Injury	Crush, burn, gunshot, frostbite, puncture through clothing, farming injury	Sharp cut (e.g. clean knife, clean glass)
Devitalized tissue	Present	Not present
Contamination (e.g. soil, dirt, saliva, grass)	Yes	No
Retained foreign body	Yes	No

Table 8. Tetanus Immunization Recommendations

History of Tetanus Immunization	Clean, Minor Wounds		All Other Wounds	
	Td or Tdap*	Tig**	Td or Tdap	Tig
Uncertain or <3 doses of immunization	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
3 doses received in immunization series	No~	No	No§	No¶

* 0.5 mL of combined tetanus and diphtheria toxoids \pm acellular pertussis

~ Yes, if >10 yr since last booster

¶ Yes, if immunocompromised

** Tetanus immune globulin, 250 U given at a separate site from Td/Tdap

§ Yes, if >5 yr since last booster

Management of Contaminated Wounds (>24 h, including Ulcers)

- irrigation and debridement
 - traumatic tattooing can occur if foreign materials left in wound
- systemic antibiotics indicated if there is concern of infection (e.g. redness, swelling, pain, clinically unwell)
- topical antimicrobials: beneficial for minor wounds, but no additional benefit for wounds requiring systemic antibiotics. May aid in healing of chronic wounds
- closure: final closure via secondary intention (most common), delayed wound closure (3° closure), skin graft or flap; successful closure depends on bacterial count of $\leq 10^5/\text{cm}^3$ prior to closure and frequent dressing changes

BITES

- see [Emergency Medicine, ER46](#)



Dog and Cat Bites

- pathogens: *Pasteurella multocida*, *S. aureus*, *S. viridans*
- investigations: same as for human bites
- treatment: Clavulin® (500 mg PO q8h started immediately – amoxicillin + clavulanic acid)
 - consider rabies prophylaxis if animal has symptoms of rabies or unknown animal
 - ♦ \pm rabies Ig (20 IU/kg around wound, or IM) and 1 of the 3 types of rabies vaccines (1.0 mL IM in deltoid, repeat on days 3, 7, 14, 28)
 - aggressive irrigation with debridement
 - healing by secondary intention is mainstay of treatment
 - only consider primary closure for bite wounds on the face; otherwise primary closure is contraindicated
 - contact Public Health if animal status unknown

Human Bites

- pathogens: *Staphylococcus* > α -hemolytic *Streptococcus* > *Eikenella corrodens* > Bacteroides
- mechanism: most commonly over dorsum of MCP from a punch in mouth; “fight-bite”
- serious, as mouth has 10^9 microorganisms/mL, which get trapped in joint space when fist unclenches and overlying skin forms an air-tight covering ideal for anaerobic growth – can lead to septic arthritis
- investigations
 - radiographs prior to therapy to rule out foreign body (e.g. tooth) or fracture
 - culture for aerobic and anaerobic organisms, Gram stain

- **treatment**

- urgent surgical exploration of joint, drainage and debridement of infected tissue
- wound must be copiously irrigated
- Clavulin® 500 mg PO q8h, clindamycin 300 mg PO q6h + ciprofloxacin 500 mg PO q12h (if allergic to penicillin) + secondary closure
- splint

Dressings

- dressing selection depends on the wound characteristics
 - as the wound progresses through healing it will require different types of dressings, therefore, routine inspection is recommended
 - principles of dressings
 - ♦ moist vs. dry wounds
 - purpose of dressings should be to keep wound appropriately moist (i.e. moistening dry wounds or removing excess exudate/blood from wet wounds)
 - ♦ clean vs. infected wounds
 - clean wounds can be dressed with petroleum based gauze, which is non-adhering to epithelializing tissue; requires secondary dressing
 - infected wounds can be dressed with iodine gauze, silver-containing, or antimicrobial dressings
 - ♦ wide-based vs. cavitary/tunneling wounds
 - cavitary or tunnelling wounds (i.e. through a fascial layer) can be packed with saline-soaked (non-infected), betadine or chlorpactin-soaked (infected) ribbon gauze, or other easily retrievable one-piece moisture providing dressing

Table 9. Recommended Dressings for Wound Type

Wound Depth	Exudate Level	Dressing Material
Superficial	Lightly exuding	Films (Opsite®), hydrogels (Intrasite®, Nu-gel®, Duoderm®)
	Any exudate level	Contact layers
Superficial to Deep	Light to moderately exuding wounds	Amorphous gels, hydrogels, hydrocolloids (Duoderm®, Tegaderm®), collagen, hypertonic saline gauze (Mesalt®)
	Moderately to heavily exuding wounds	Foams (Mepilex®, Allevyn®), alginates (Sorbsan®, Kaltostat®), hypertonic saline gauze, hydrofiber (Aquacel®)

Table adapted from Grabb & Smith's Plastic Surgery, 6th ed. Chapter 3, Table 3.3

Reconstruction

SKIN GRAFTS

Definition

- skin that is harvested from a donor site and transferred to the recipient site and that does not carry its own blood supply. Survival requires diffusion of nutrients during the first 24-48 h (imbibition) followed by blood vessel connection between the donor site and graft (inosculation). They are classified according to the depth of dermis they contain: full thickness (entire epidermis + dermis) vs. split-thickness (epidermis + partial dermis)

Donor Site Selection

- must consider size, hair pattern, texture, thickness of skin, and color (facial grafts best if taken from "blush zones" above clavicle e.g. pre/post auricular or neck)
- partial thickness grafts usually taken from inconspicuous areas (e.g. buttocks, lateral thighs, etc.)

Partial Thickness Skin Graft Survival

- 3 phases of skin graft "take"
 1. plasmatic imbibition: diffusion of nutrition from recipient site (first 48 h)
 2. inosculation: vessels in graft connect with those in recipient bed (day 2-3)
 3. neovascular ingrowth: graft revascularized (day 3-5)
- requirements for survival
 - bed: well-vascularized (unsuitable: bone, tendon, heavily irradiated, infected wounds, etc.)
 - contact between graft and recipient bed: fully immobile (decreased shearing and hematoma formation)
 - staples, sutures, splinting, and appropriate dressings (pressure) are used to prevent movement of graft and hematoma or seroma formation
 - site: low bacterial count ($<10^5/\text{cm}^3$, to prevent infection)



Reconstruction Ladder (in the order of increasing complexity of treatment)

- Dressings
- Primary closure
- Delayed closure
- Split thickness graft
- Full thickness graft
- Tissue expansion
- Random pattern flap
- Pedicle flap
- Free flap

Classification of Skin Grafts

1. by species
 - autograft: from same individual
 - allograft (homograft): from same species, different individual
 - xenograft (heterograft): from different species (e.g. porcine)
2. by thickness

Table 10. Skin Grafts

	Split Thickness Skin Graft	Full Thickness Skin Graft
Definition	Epidermis and part of dermis	Epidermis and all of dermis
Donor Site	More sites	Limited donor sites (full thickness skin loss, must be closed 1° or with STSG)
Healing of Donor Site	Re-epithelialization via dermal appendages in graft and wound edges	Primary closure
Re-harvesting	~10 d (faster on scalp)	N/A
Graft Take	Easier; shorter nutrient diffusion distance	Lower rate of survival (thicker, slower vascularization)
Contraction	Less 1° contraction, greater 2° contraction (less with thicker graft)	Greater 1° contraction, less 2° contraction
Aesthetic	Poor	Good
Comments	Can be meshed for greater area Allows for extravasation of blood/serum	May use on face and fingers
Advantages	Takes well in less favorable conditions, can cover a larger area	Resists contraction, texture/pigment more normal
Disadvantages	Contracts significantly, abnormal pigmentation, high susceptibility to trauma	Requires well vascularized bed Must remove fat from graft before application
Uses	Large areas of skin, granulating tissue beds, burns	Face (color match), site where thick skin or decreased contracture is desired (e.g. finger)



Graft Contraction

- Primary: immediate reduction in size upon harvesting
- Secondary: reduction in size once graft placed on wound bed

- mesh graft
 - **advantages**
 - ♦ prevents accumulation of fluids (e.g. hematoma, seroma)
 - ♦ covers a larger area
 - **disadvantages**
 - ♦ poor cosmesis (“reptilian” appearance)
 - ♦ has significant contractures
- common reasons for graft loss: hematoma/seroma, infection, mechanical force (e.g. shearing, pressure)

OTHER GRAFTS

Table 11. Various Tissue Grafts

Graft Type	Use	Preferred Donor Site
Bone	Repair rigid defects	Cranial, rib, iliac, fibula
Cartilage	Restore contour of ear and nose	Ear, nasal septum, costal cartilage
Tendon	Repair damaged tendon	Palmaris longus, plantaris (present in 85% population)
Nerve	Conduit for regeneration across nerve gap	Sural, antebrachial cutaneous, medial brachial cutaneous
Vessel	Bridge vascular gaps	Forearm or foot vessels for small vessels, saphenous vein for larger vessels
Dermis	Contour restoration (\pm fat for bulk)	Thick skin of buttock or abdomen
Fat	Contour restoration	Abdomen, any area with fat available

FLAPS

- **definition:** tissue transferred from one site to another with a known blood supply (random, pedicled or named); not dependent on neovascularization, unlike a graft
- **may consist of:** skin, subcutaneous tissue, fascia, muscle, bone, other tissue (e.g. omentum)
- **classification:** based on blood supply to skin (random, axial) and anatomic location (local, regional, distant)
- **indications for flaps**
 - reconstruction: replaces tissue loss due to trauma or surgery
 - provides skin and temporary soft tissue coverage through which surgery can be carried out later
 - improves blood supply to poorly vascularized bed (e.g. bone)
- **complications:** flap loss due to hematoma, seroma, infection, poor flap design, extrinsic compression (dressing too tight) or vascular failure/thrombosis, fat necrosis (in free flaps)

Random Pattern Flaps

- blood supply by dermal and subdermal plexus to skin and subdermal tissue with random vascular supply
- limited length:width ratio to ensure adequate blood supply (typically 2:1)
- flap choice is often a combination of available tissue, location of reconstruction site with respect to donor site, and surgeon preference
- **types**
 - **rotation:** cover wounds of various sizes; common use: sacral pressure sores
 - **transposition:** smaller in size compared to rotation flaps and advancement flaps; commonly used on certain areas of the face using adjacent areas of excess skin laxity
 - **Z-plasty:** used to reorient a scar, lengthen the line of a scar or to break up a scar
 - **advancement flaps (V-Y, Y-V)**
 - ♦ single/bipedicle V-Y flaps: wounds with lax surrounding tissue; the pedicle is the deep tissue underlying the flap

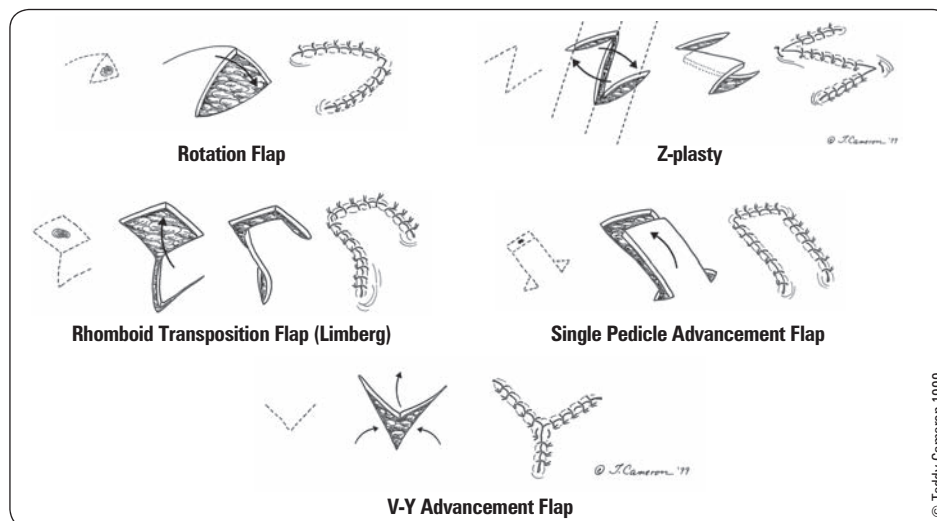


Figure 15. Wound care flaps – random pattern

Axial Pattern Flaps (Arterialized)

- flap contains a well defined artery and vein
- allows greater length:width ratio (5-6:1)
- **types**
 - **peninsular flap:** skin and vessel intact in pedicle
 - **island flap:** vessel intact, pedicle is better defined
 - **free flap:** vascular supply anastomosed at recipient site by microsurgical techniques
- can be sub-classified according to tissue content of flap:
 - e.g. musculocutaneous/myocutaneous (e.g. transverse rectus abdominal myocutaneous) vs. fasciocutaneous

Free Flaps

- transplanting expendable donor tissue from one part of the body to another by isolating and dividing a dominant artery and veins to a flap and performing a microscopic anastomosis between these and the vessels in the recipient wound
- survival rates >95%
- **types:** muscle and skin (common), bone, jejunum, omentum
 - e.g. radial forearm, scapular, latissimus dorsi

Table 12. Free Flap Characteristics

Characteristic	Normal	Arterial Insufficiency	Venous Insufficiency
Color	Pink	Pale	Purple or blue
Temperature	Warm	Cool	Warm or cool
Arterial Pulse (Doppler)	+	±	±
Turgor	Soft, but with tissue turgor	Decreased	Increased (i.e. tense)

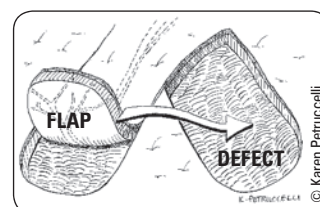


Figure 16. Peninsular axial pattern flap

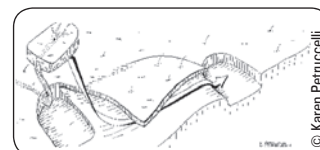


Figure 17. Island axial pattern flap

Soft Tissue Infections

Table 13. Classification of Soft Tissue Infections by Depth

Erysipelas	Superficial with subcutaneous tissue involvement
Cellulitis	Full thickness with subcutaneous tissue involvement
Fasciitis	Fascia
Myositis	Muscle

Erysipelas

Definition

- acute skin infection that is more superficial than cellulitis

Etiology

- typically caused by Group A β -hemolytic *Streptococcus*

Clinical Features

- intense erythema, induration, and **sharply demarcated borders** (differentiates it from other skin infections)

Treatment

- penicillin or first generation cephalosporin (e.g. cefazolin or cephalexin)

Cellulitis

Definition

- non-suppurative infection of skin and subcutaneous tissues

Etiology

- skin flora most common organisms: *S. aureus*, β -hemolytic *Streptococcus*
- immunocompromised: Gram-negative rods and fungi

Clinical Features

- source of infection
 - trauma, recent surgery
 - PVD, DM – cracked skin in feet/toes
 - foreign bodies (IV, orthopaedic pins)
- systemic symptoms (fever, chills, malaise)
- pain, tenderness, edema, erythema with poorly defined margins, regional lymphadenopathy
- can lead to ascending lymphangitis (visible red streaking in skin proximal to area of cellulitis)

Investigations

- CBC, blood cultures
- culture and Gram stain wound/aspirate from wound if open wound
- plain radiographs if suspect foreign body or abscess or to rule out gas (if worried about a deeper infection, e.g. fasciitis) or rule out bone invasion (osteomyelitis)

Treatment

- antibiotics: first line – cephalexin 500 mg PO q6h or cloxacillin 500 mg PO q6h x 7 d; if complicated (e.g. lymphangitis, DM) consider IV cefazolin 1-2 g q8h penicillin
- outline area of erythema to monitor success of treatment
- immobilize and splint (hands)



Cellulitis vs. Erysipelas
Cellulitis: indistinct borders
Erysipelas: sharp borders

Necrotizing Fasciitis

Definition

- rapidly spreading, very painful infection of the deep fascia with necrosis of tissues
- some bacteria create gas that can be felt as crepitus and be seen on x-rays
- infection spreads rapidly along deep fascial plane and is **limb and life threatening**

Etiology

- Type I: polymicrobial (less aggressive)
- Type II: monomicrobial, usually β -hemolytic *Streptococcus*

Clinical Features

- **pain out of proportion to clinical findings and beyond border of erythema**, edema, tenderness, \pm crepitus (subcutaneous gas from anaerobes) \pm fever
- infection spreads very rapidly
- hyponatremia and hyperglycemia are common findings
- patients may look deceptively well at first, but may rapidly become very sick/toxic
- late findings
 - skin turns dusky blue and black (secondary to thrombosis and necrosis)
 - induration, formation of bullae
 - cutaneous gangrene, subcutaneous emphysema

Investigations

- **a clinical diagnosis**
- CT scan only if suspect it is not necrotizing fasciitis (looking for abscess, gas collection, myonecrosis and possible source of infection)
- severely elevated CK: usually means myonecrosis (late sign)
- hemostat easily passed along fascial plane; fascial biopsy to rule out in equivocal situations

Treatment

- vigorous resuscitation (ABCs)
- urgent surgical debridement: remove all necrotic tissue, copious irrigation
- IV antibiotics: as appropriate for clinical scenario; consider penicillin 4 million IU IV q4h and clindamycin 900 mg IV q6h until final cultures available; clindamycin targets the toxin produced
- possible role for IVIg (especially in Group A strep, adjuvant treatment on a case by case basis)
- urgent consultation with infectious disease specialist is recommended

Ulcers



Lower Limb Ulcers

Traumatic Ulcers (Acute)

- failure of lesions to heal, usually due to compromised blood supply and unstable scar
- usually over bony prominence \pm edema \pm pigmentation changes \pm pain
- treatment: debridement of ulcer and compromised tissue, left to heal via secondary intention with dressings, may need reconstruction with local or distant flap in select cases, vascular status of limb must be assessed clinically and via vascular studies (i.e. sonographically)

Non-Traumatic Ulcers (Chronic)

Table 14. Venous vs. Arterial vs. Diabetic Ulcers

Characteristic	Venous (70% of vascular ulcers)	Arterial	Diabetic
Cause	Valvular incompetence Venous HTN	2° to small and/or large vessel disease (be aware of risk factors)	Peripheral neuropathy: decreased sensation Atherosclerosis: decreased regional blood flow
History	Dependent edema, trauma Rapid onset \pm thrombophlebitis, varicosities	Arteriosclerosis, claudication Usually > 45 yr Slow progression	DM Peripheral neuropathy
Common Distribution	Medial malleolus ("Gaiter" locations)	Distal locations (e.g. toes)	Pressure point distribution
Appearance	Yellow exudates Granulation tissue Varicose veins Brown discoloration of surrounding skin	Pale/white, necrotic base \pm dry eschar covering	Necrotic base
Wound Margins	Irregular	Even ("punched out")	Irregular or "punched out" or deep
Depth	Superficial	Deep	Superficial/deep
Surrounding Skin	Venous stasis discoloration (brown)	Thin shiny dry skin, hairless, cool	Thin dry skin \pm hyperkeratotic border Hypersensitive/ischemic
Pulses	Normal distal pulses	Decreased or no distal pulses	Decreased pulses likely
Vascular Exam	ABI > 0.9 Doppler; abnormal venous system	ABI < 0.9 Pallor on elevation, rubor on dependency Delayed venous filling	ABI is inaccurately high Usually associated with arterial disease



ABI in diabetics can be falsely normal due to incompressible arteries secondary to plaques/calcification



All chronic ulcers require vascular studies, and a vascular consult, to assess for venous insufficiency, to rule in/out arterial pathology and to find out the potential role of vascular surgical management

Table 14. Venous vs. Arterial vs. Diabetic Ulcers (continued)

Characteristic	Venous (70% vascular ulcers)	Arterial	Diabetic
Pain	Moderately painful Increased with leg dependency, decreased with elevation No rest pain	Extremely painful Decreased with dependency, increased with leg elevation and exercise (claudication) Rest pain	Painless No claudication or rest pain Associated paresthesia, anesthesia
Treatment	Leg elevation, rest Compression at 30 mmHg (stockings or elastic bandages) Moist wound dressings ± topical, systemic antibiotics ± skin grafts	Rest, no elevation, no compression Moist wound dressing ± topical and/or systemic antibiotics Modify risk factors (smoking, diet, exercise, etc.) Vascular surgical consultation (angioplasty or bypass) Treat underlying conditions (DM, proximal arterial occlusion, etc.)	Control DM Careful wound care Foot care Orthotics Early intervention for infections (topical and/or systemic antibiotics) Vascular surgical consultation



Pressure Ulcers

Common Sites

- over bony prominences; 95% on lower body

Stages of Development

1. hyperemia: disappears 1 h after pressure removed
2. ischemia: follows 2-6 h of pressure
3. necrosis: follows >6 h of pressure
4. ulcer: necrotic area breaks down – N.B. skin is like tip of an iceberg

Classification (National Pressure Ulcer Advisory Panel 2007)

- Stage I: nonblanchable erythema present >1 h after pressure relief, skin intact
- Stage II: partial-thickness skin loss
- Stage III: full-thickness skin loss into subcutaneous tissue, but not through fascia
- Stage IV: through fascia into muscle, bone, tendon, or joint
 - if an eschar is present, must fully debride before staging possible

Prevention

- good nursing care (clean dry skin, frequent repositioning), special beds or mattress (Kin Air®), proper nutrition, activity, early identification of individuals at risk (e.g. immobility, incontinence, paraplegia, etc.)

Treatment

- depends on individual patient and condition
- treat underlying medical issues including nutrition
- continue with preventative measures (pressure relief)
- wound debridement, moisture retentive or antimicrobial dressing, regular reassessment
- topical antimicrobials at treating physician's discretion, systemic antibiotics for infections
- resect osteomyelitis and treat with 6 wk of antibiotics before final flap coverage
- assess for possible reconstruction after infection eradicated and clean wound bed ($<10^5$ colony-forming unit)

Complications

- cellulitis, osteomyelitis, sepsis, gangrene



Burns

Burn Injuries

Causal Conditions

- thermal (flame contact, scald)
- chemical
- radiation (UV, medical/therapeutic)
- electrical

Most Common Etiology

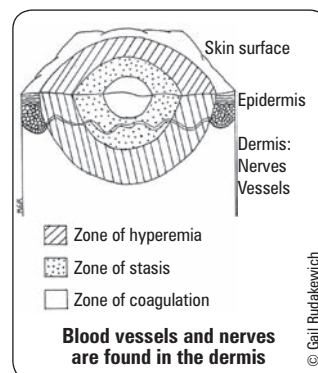
- children: scald burns
- adults: flame burns

Table 15. Skin Function and Burn Injury

Skin Function	Consequence of Burn Injury	Intervention Required
Thermoregulation	Prone to lose body heat	Must keep patient covered and warm
Control of fluid loss	Loss of large amounts of water and protein from the skin and other body tissues	Adequate fluid resuscitation is imperative
Mechanical barrier to bacterial invasion and immunological organ	High risk of infection	Antibiotic ointments (systemic if signs of specific infection present) Tetanus prophylaxis if necessary

Pathophysiology of Burn Wounds

- amount of tissue destruction is based on temperature, time of exposure, and specific heat of the causative agent
- zone of hyperemia:** vasodilation from inflammation; entirely viable, cells recover within 7 d; contributes to systemic consequences seen with major burns
- zone of stasis (edema):** decreased perfusion; microvascular sludging and thrombosis of vessels results in progressive tissue necrosis → cellular death in 24-48 h without proper treatment
 - factors favoring cell survival: moist, aseptic environment, rich blood supply
 - zone where appropriate early intervention has most profound effect in minimizing injury
- zone of coagulation (ischemia):** no blood flow to tissue → irreversible cell damage → cellular death/necrosis

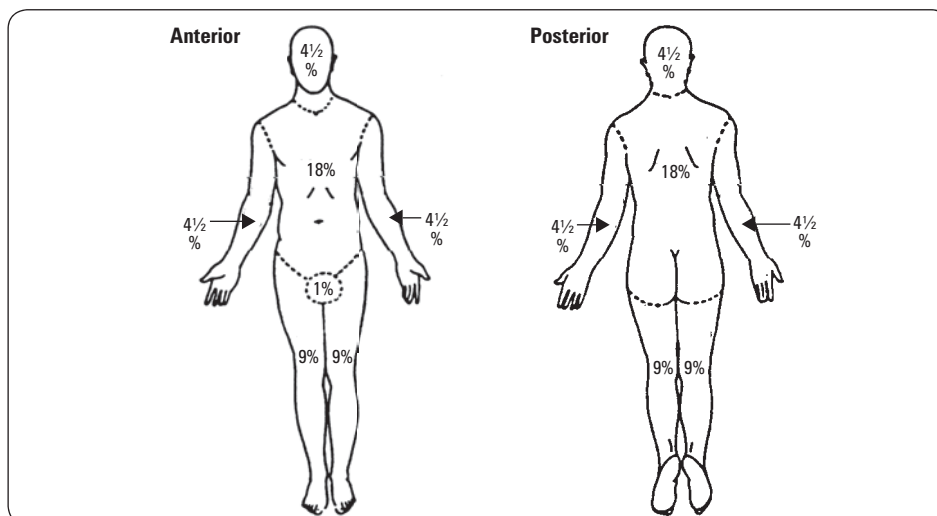
**Figure 18. Zones of thermal injury**

Diagnosis and Prognosis

- burn size
 - % of TBSA burned: rule of 9s for 2° and 3° burns only (children <10 yr old use Lund-Browder chart)
 - for patchy burns, surface area covered by patient's palm (fingers closed) represents approximately 1% of TBSA
- age: more complications if <3 or >60 yr old
- depth: difficult to assess initially – history of etiologic agent and time of exposure helpful (see Table 16)
- location: face and neck, hands, feet, perineum are critical areas requiring special care of a burn unit (see *Indications for Transfer to Burn Center*, PL18)
- inhalation injury: can severely compromise respiratory system due to sloughing of the epithelium that blocks gas exchange at the alveolus; also significant swelling of the intraoral and laryngeal mucosa from the thermal injury as well as during massive resuscitation.
- associated injuries (e.g. fractures)
- comorbid factors (e.g. concurrent disability, alcoholism, seizure disorders, chronic renal failure) can exacerbate extent of injury

Prognosis best determined by:

- burn size (TBSA)
- age of patient
- presence/absence of inhalational injury

**Figure 19. Rule of 9s for TBSA**

Prognosis best determined by burn size (TBSA), age of patient, presence/absence of inhalation injury



Circumferential burns can restrict respiratory excursion and/or blood flow to extremities and require escharotomy



TBSA does not include areas with 1° burns

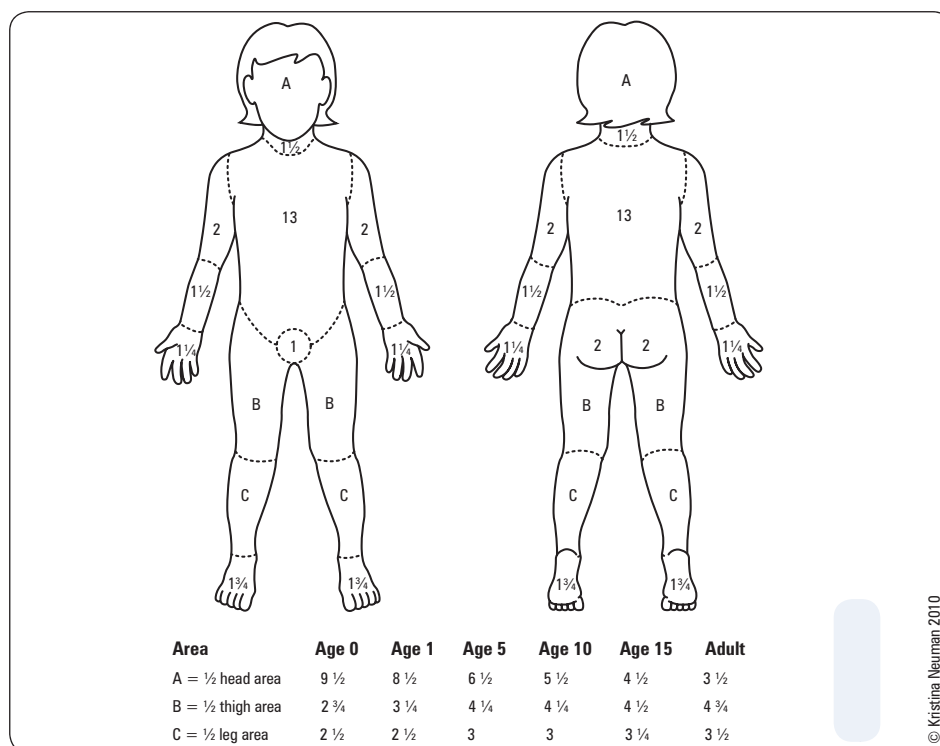


Figure 20. Lund-Browder diagram

Table 16. Burn Depth (1st, 2nd, 3rd degree)

Nomenclature	Traditional Nomenclature	Depth	Clinical Features
Erythema/Superficial	First degree	Epidermis	Painful, sensation intact, erythema, blanchable
Superficial-Partial Thickness	Second degree	Into superficial dermis	Painful, sensation intact, erythema, blisters with clear fluid, blanchable, hair follicles present
Deep-Partial Thickness	Second degree	Into deep (reticular) dermis	Insensate, difficult to distinguish from full thickness, does not blanch, some hair follicles still attached, softer than full thickness burn
Full Thickness	Third degree Fourth degree	Through epidermis and dermis Injury to underlying tissue structures (e.g. muscle, bone)	Insensate (nerve endings destroyed), hard leathery eschar that is black, gray, white, or cherry red in color, hairs do not stay attached, may see thrombosed veins

Indications for Transfer to Burn Center

American Burn Association Criteria

- patients with partial or full-thickness burns that involve the hands, feet, genitalia, face, eyes, ears and/or major joints or perineum
- partial thickness burns $\geq 20\%$ TBSA in patients aged 10-50 yr old
- partial thickness burns $\geq 10\%$ TBSA in children aged ≤ 10 or adults aged ≥ 50 yr old
- full thickness burns $\geq 5\%$ TBSA in patients of all ages
- electrical burns, including lightening (internal injury underestimated by TBSA)
- chemical burns
- inhalation injury (high risk of mortality and may lead to respiratory distress)
- burn injuries in patients with medical comorbidities, could complicate management and recovery
- any patient with simultaneous trauma plus burns should be stabilized for trauma first, then triaged appropriately to burn center
- any patients with burn injury and who will require special emotional, social, and rehabilitation intervention
- children with burns in a hospital not equipped with pediatric care specialists

Acute Care of Burn Patients

- adhere to ATLS protocol
- resuscitation using Parkland formula to restore plasma volume and cardiac output and should only be used in burns 30% or greater TBSA
 - 4 cc RL/kg/% TBSA over first 24 h (1/2 within first 8 h of sustaining burn, 1/2 in next 16 h); if resuscitation is greater than 6cc/kg/%TBSA, reevaluate as this can create significant complications (compartment syndrome of extremities as well as abdomen which can impair ventilation); reasonable to supplement colloid in setting of excessive resuscitation
- extra fluid administration required if
 - burn >80% TBSA
 - 4° burns
 - associated traumatic injury
 - electrical burn
 - inhalation injury
 - delayed start of resuscitation
 - pediatric burns
- monitor resuscitation
 - urine output is best measure: maintain at >0.5 cc/kg/h (adults) and 1.0 cc/kg/h (children <12 yr)
 - maintain a clear sensorium, HR <120/min, MAP >70 mmHg
 - urine output will often lag early in the resuscitation
 - trend other signs of resuscitation, such as lactate, base deficit, CVP, mixed or central venous O₂
- burn specific care
 - relieve respiratory distress: intubation and/or escharotomy (see sidebar)
 - prevent and/or treat burn shock: at least 2 large bore IVs in non-burned area; place early central line and a-line if large burn identify and treat immediate life-threatening conditions (e.g. inhalation injury, CO poisoning)
 - determine TBSA affected first, since depth is difficult to determine initially (easier to determine after 24 h)
- tetanus prophylaxis if needed
 - all patients with burns >10% TBSA, or deeper than superficial partial thickness, need 0.5 cc tetanus toxoid
 - also give 250 U of tetanus Ig if prior immunization is absent/unclear, or the last booster >10 yr ago
- baseline laboratory studies (Hb, U/A, BUN, CXR, electrolytes, ECG, cross-match, ABG, carboxyhemoglobin)
- cleanse, debride, and treat the burn injury (antimicrobial dressings)
- early excision and grafting important for outcome

Respiratory Problems

- 3 major causes
 - burn eschar encircling chest
 - ♦ distress may be apparent immediately
 - ♦ perform escharotomy to relieve constriction
 - CO poisoning
 - ♦ may present immediately or later
 - ♦ treat with 100% O₂ (decreases half-life of carboxyhemoglobin from 210 to 59 min) until carboxyHb <10%;. can use hyperbaric chamber for very high levels if patient is otherwise stable
 - smoke inhalation leading to pulmonary injury
 - ♦ chemical injury to alveolar basement membrane and pulmonary edema (insidious onset)
 - ♦ risk of pulmonary insufficiency (up to 48 h) and pulmonary edema (48-72 h)
 - ♦ watch for secondary bronchopneumonia (3-25 d) leading to progressive pulmonary insufficiency
 - ♦ intubate patient with any signs of inhalation injuries

Burn Wound Healing

Table 17. Burn Shock Resuscitation (Parkland Formula)

Hour 0-24	4 cc RL/kg/% TBSA with 1/2 of total in first 8 h from time of injury and 1/2 of total in next 16 h from time of injury
Hour 24-30	0.35-0.5 cc plasma/kg/%TBSA, or decrease fluids by 1/3 from first 24 h assuming urine output remains stable
>Hour 30	D5W at rate to maintain normal serum sodium

*Do not forget to add maintenance fluid to resuscitation



Signs of CO Poisoning

- Headache
- Confusion
- Coma
- Arrhythmias



Inhalation Injuries 101

- Indicators of inhalation injury
 - Injury in a closed space
 - Facial burn
 - Singed nasal hair/eyebrows
 - Soot around nares/oral cavity
 - Hoarseness
 - Conjunctivitis
 - Tachypnea
 - Carbon particles in sputum
 - Elevated blood CO levels (i.e. brighter red)
- Suspected inhalation injury requires immediate intubation due to impending airway edema; failure to diagnose inhalation injury can result in airway swelling and obstruction, which, if untreated, can lead to death
- Neither CXR or ABG can be used to rule out inhalation injury
- Direct bronchoscopy now used for diagnosis

Table 18. Burn Wound Healing

Depth	Healing
First degree	No scarring; complete healing
Second degree (Superficial partial)	Spontaneously re-epithelialize in 7 to 14 d from retained epidermal structures ± residual skin discoloration Hypertrophic scarring uncommon; grafting rarely required
Deep second degree (Deep partial)	Re-epithelialize in 14-35 d from retained epidermal structures Hypertrophic scarring frequent Grafting recommended to expedite healing
Third degree (Full thickness)	Re-epithelialize from the wound edge Grafting/flap necessary to replace dermal integrity, limit hypertrophic scarring
Fourth degree	Often results in amputations If not requiring amputation, needs flap for coverage after debridement (do not re-epithelialize – cannot graft)

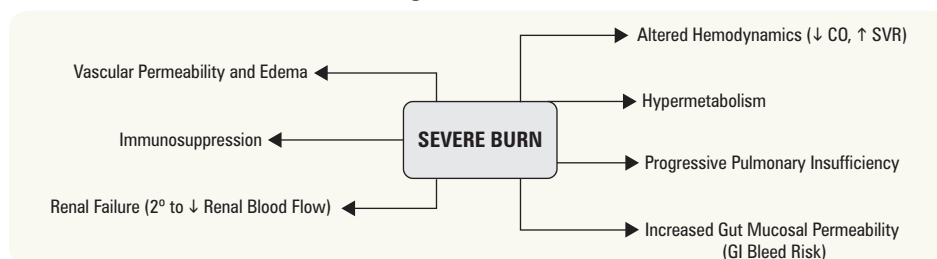
Treatment

- 3 stages
 1. assessment: depth determined
 2. management: specific to depth of burn and associated injuries
 3. rehabilitation
- first degree
 - treatment aimed at comfort
 - ♦ topical creams (pain control, keep skin moist) ± aloe
 - ♦ oral NSAIDs (pain control)
- superficial second degree
 - daily dressing changes with topical antibiotics, polysporin, may use a temporary biological or synthetic covering to close the wound
- deep second degree and third degree
 - prevent infection and sepsis (significant cause of death in burn patients)
 - ♦ most common organisms: *S. aureus*, *P. aeruginosa* and *C. albicans*
 - day 1-3 (rare): Gram-positive
 - day 3-5: Gram-negative (*Proteus*, *Klebsiella*)
 - ♦ topical antimicrobials: prevent bacterial infection (from skin flora, gut flora or caregiver) and secondary sepsis
 - remove dead tissue
 - ♦ surgically debride necrotic tissue, excise to viable (bleeding) tissue

Table 19. Topical Antibiotic Therapy for Burns

Antibiotic	Pain with Application	Penetration	Adverse Effects
Silver nitrate (0.5% solution)	None	Minimal	Stains (black), leaches sodium and magnesium from wounds
Nanocrystalline silver-coated dressing (Acticoat®)	None or transient	Medium, does not penetrate eschar; preferred over silver sulfadiazine and silver nitrate	May stain, producing a pseudoeschar or facial discoloration (argyria-like symptoms); raised liver enzymes
Silver sulfadiazine (cream) (Silvadene®)	Minimal	Medium, does not penetrate eschar	Slowed healing, leukopenia, mild inhibition of epithelialization
Mafenide acetate (solution/cream) (Sulfamylon®)	Moderate	Well, penetrates eschar	Mild inhibition of epithelialization, may cause metabolic acidosis with wide application

- early excision and grafting is the mainstay of treatment
- initial dressing should decrease bacterial proliferation
- indication for skin graft: deep 2° or 3° burn that is > size of a quarter
- prevention of wound contractures: pressure dressings, joint splints, early physiotherapy

Other Considerations in Burn Management**Figure 21. Systemic effects of severe burns**

- nutrition
 - hypermetabolism: TBSA >40% have BMR 2-2.5x predicted
 - calories, vitamin C, vitamin A, Ca^{2+} , Zn^{2+} , Fe^{2+}
- immunosuppression and sepsis
 - must keep bacterial count $<10^5$ bacteria/g of tissue (blood culture may not be positive)
 - signs of sepsis: sudden onset of hyper/hypothermia, unexpected CHF or pulmonary edema, development of ARDS, ileus >48 h post-burn, mental status changes, azotemia, thrombocytopenia, hypofibrinogenemia, hyper/hypoglycemia (especially if burn >40% TBSA)
- oxandralone has been shown to help with burn induced hypermetabolism in burns over 30% TBSA; continue for up to 6 mo
- GI bleed may occur with burns >40% TBSA (usually subclinical)
 - treatment: tube feeding or NPO, antacids, H_2 blockers (preventative)
- renal failure secondary to under resuscitation, drugs, myoglobin, etc.
- progressive pulmonary insufficiency
 - can occur after: smoke inhalation, pneumonia, cardiac decompensation, sepsis
- wound contracture and hypertrophic scarring
 - largely preventable with timely wound closure, splinting, pressure garments and physiotherapy; can be treated with fractional ablative CO_2 laser

Special Considerations

CHEMICAL BURNS

- major categories: acid burns, alkaline burns, phosphorous burns, chemical injection injuries
- common agents: cement, hydrofluoric acid, phenol, tar
- mechanism of injury: chemical solutions coagulate tissue protein leading to necrosis
 - acids → coagulation necrosis
 - alkalines → saponification followed by liquefactive necrosis
- severity related to: type of chemical (alkali worse than acid), temperature, volume, concentration, contact time, site affected, mechanism of chemical action, degree of tissue penetration
- burns are deeper than they initially appear and may progress with time

Treatment (General)

- ABCs, monitoring
- remove contaminated clothing and brush off any dry powders before irrigation
- irrigation with water for 1-2 h under low pressure (contraindicated in heavy metal burns, such as sodium, potassium, magnesium, and lithium; in these cases soak in mineral oil instead)
- inspect eyes, if affected: wash with saline and refer to ophthalmology
- inspect nails, hair and webspaces
- correct metabolic abnormalities and tetanus prophylaxis if necessary
- local wound care 12 h after initial dilution (debridement)
- wound closure same as for thermal burn
- beware of underestimated fluid resuscitation, renal, liver, and pulmonary damage

Special Burns and Treatments

Acid Burn	Water irrigation, followed by dilute solution of sodium bicarbonate
Hydrofluoroic Acid	Water irrigation; clip fingernails to avoid acid trapping; topical calcium gel ± subcutaneous injection of calcium gluconate ± 10% calcium gluconate IV depending on amount of exposure and pain
Sulfuric Acid	Treat with soap/lime prior to irrigation, as direct water exposure produces extreme heat
Tar	Remove with repeated application of petroleum-based antibiotic ointments (e.g. Polysporin®)

ELECTRICAL BURNS

- depth of burn depends on voltage and resistance of the tissue (injury more severe in tissues with high resistance)
- often presents as small punctate burns on skin with extensive deep tissue damage which requires debridement
- electrical burns require ongoing monitoring as latent injuries can occur
- watch for system specific damages and abnormalities
 - abdominal: intraperitoneal damage
 - bone: fractures and dislocations especially of the spine and shoulder
 - cardiopulmonary: anoxia, ventricular fibrillation, arrhythmias
 - muscle: myoglobinuria indicates significant muscle damage → compartment syndrome
 - neurological: seizures and spinal cord damage
 - ophthalmology: ocular compartment syndrome and cataract formation (late complication)
 - renal: ATN resulting from toxic levels of myoglobin and hemoglobin
 - vascular: vessel thrombosis → tissue necrosis (increased Cr, K^+ and acidity), decrease in RBC (beware of hemorrhages/delayed vessel rupture)



Tissue Resistance to Electrical Current:

nerve < vessel/blood < muscle < skin
< tendon < fat < bone

Treatment

- ABCs, primary and secondary survey, treat associated injuries
- beware of cardiac arrhythmias (need to keep for monitoring)
- monitor: cardiac arrhythmia, hemochromogenuria, compartment syndrome, urine output
- wound management: topical agent with good penetrating ability (silver sulfadiazine or mafenide acetate)
- debride non-viable tissue early and repeat prn (every 48 h) to prevent sepsis
- amputations frequently required

FROSTBITE

- see [Emergency Medicine, ER45](#)



High pressure injection injury is deceptively benign-looking (small pinpoint hole on finger pad) often with few clinical signs. Intense pain and tenderness, along the course the foreign material traveled, is present a few hours after the injury. Definitive treatment is exposure and removal of foreign material



Allen's Test: while patient's hand is firmly closed, occlude both radial and ulnar arteries; once fist is open, release either artery and assess collateral flow



Approach to Hand Lacerations

TIN AX

Tetanus prophylaxis
Irrigate with NS (Copious irrigation and debridement in a timely manner)
NPO (only if deeper structures are cut – i.e. needs an operation)
Antibiotic prophylaxis (controversial – most require no ABx)
X-rays

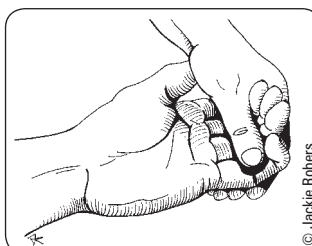


Figure 22. Testing profundus (FDP) – inserts at distal phalanx

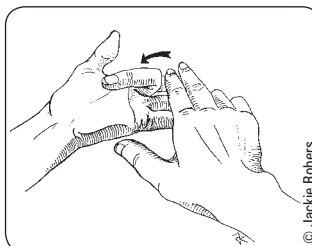


Figure 23. Testing superficialis (FDS) – inserts at middle phalanx

Hand

Traumatic Hand

Table 20. Key Features of the History and Physical Exam of the Injured Hand in the Emergency Department

HISTORY		
Key Questions	Age Hand dominance Occupation Time and place of accident Mechanism of injury Tetanus status	
PHYSICAL EXAM		
	Structure	Examination
Observation	Position of finger Deformity Bruising or swelling Sweating pattern Anatomical structures beneath	Abnormal cadence (fingers normally slightly flexed), scissoring Bony or specific (e.g. mallet, swan neck) May indicate underlying skeletal injury May indicate denervation If open laceration, need to explore within wound (under sterile conditions)
Vascular Status	Radial and ulnar arteries Digital arteries Temperature and skin turgor	Allen's Test Capillary refill (<2-3 s) For each test, need to compare both sides
Sensory (refer to Figure 4)	Median nerve Ulnar nerve Radial nerve Digital nerves	Dorsal radial tip of index finger Dorsal ulnar tip of little finger Dorsal web space of the thumb 2 point discrimination of each finger
Motor Function	Median nerve Ulnar nerve Radial nerve	Extrinsic muscles: flex DIP of index finger ("OK sign") Intrinsic muscles: thumb to ceiling with palm up Extrinsic muscles: flex DIP of little finger Intrinsic muscles: abduct index finger ("Peace sign") or patient able to hold piece of paper between adducted fingers and resist pulling Extrinsic muscles: extend thumb ("thumb's up") and wrist
Range of Motion	Tendons, bones, joints, nerves	Assess active and passive range of motion of wrist extension/flexion/ulnar/radial deviation, finger abduction/adduction/flexion/extension, thumb flexion/extension/abduction/adduction/circumflexion
Tendons	FDP FDS	Stabilize PIP in extension, ask patient to flex fingers (at DIP) Stabilize non-exam fingers in extension (neutralizes FDP) and ask patient to flex examination finger
Palpation	Bones Joints	Focal tenderness or abnormal alignment Instability may indicate ligamentous injury or dislocation

General Management

Nerves

- test the nerve function **BEFORE** putting in local anesthesia
- direct repair for a clean injury within 14 d and without concurrent major injuries → otherwise secondary repair
- epineural repair of digital nerves with minimal tension
- post-operative: dress wound, elevate hand and immobilize
- Tinel's sign (cutaneous percussion over the repaired nerve) produces paresthesias and defines level of nerve regeneration
 - Wallerian degeneration occurs in the first 2 wk, which is why there is no Tinel's sign till after this time period
 - a peripheral nerve regenerates at 1 mm/d
 - paresthesias felt at area of percussion because re-growth of myelin (Schwann cells) is slower than axonal re-growth → percussion on exposed free-end of axon generates paresthesia

Vessels

- often associated with nerve injury (anatomical proximity)
- control bleeding with direct pressure and hand elevation
- if digit devascularized, optimal repair within 6 h
- dress, immobilize, and splint hand with finger tips visible
- monitor color, capillary refill, skin turgor, fingertip temperature post-revascularization

Tendons

- most tendon lacerations require primary repair
- many extensors are repaired in the emergency room, flexors are repaired in the operating room within 2 wk
- avoid excessive immobilization (specific protocols for flexors, 2-3 wk for extensors) to minimize stiffness and facilitate rehabilitation

Bones

- see *Fractures and Dislocations*, PL25

Nailbed

- remove nail to examine underlying nailbed under digital block anesthesia
- irrigate wound and nail thoroughly
- suture repair of nailbed with catgut suture
- replace cleaned nail, which acts as splint for any underlying distal phalangeal fracture and prevents adhesion formation between nail fold and nailbed



Hand Exam

- Never blindly clamp a bleeding vessel as nerves are often found in close association with vessels
- Never explore any volar hand wound in the ER
- Arterial bleeding from a volar digital laceration may indicate nerve laceration (nerves in digits are superficial to arteries)



Compartment Syndrome

Watch out for these signs with a closed or open injury: tense, painful extremity (worse on passive stretch), parasthesia/paralysis, pallor, distal pulselessness (often late in process), and contracture (irreversible ischemia). Intracompartmental pressures can be measured (normal pressure = up to 12 mmHg), but a clinical diagnosis is an indication for an emergent fasciotomy; if untreated, end result is ischemic contracture of the extremity (Volkmann's contracture).

Hand Infections

Principles

- trauma is most common cause
- 5 cardinal signs: *rubor* (red), *calor* (hot), *tumor* (swollen), *dolor* (painful) and *functio laesa* (loss of function)
- 90% caused by Gram-positive organisms
- most common organisms (in order) – *S. aureus*, *S. viridans*, Group A *Streptococcus*, *S. epidermidis*, and *Bacteroides melaninogenicus* (MRSA is becoming more common)

TYPES OF INFECTIONS

Deep Palmar Space Infections

- uncommon, there are 9 spaces in the hand, the most commonly involved are thenar or mid-palm space (treated in the OR)

Felon

- **definition:** subcutaneous abscess in the fingertip that commonly occurs following a puncture wound into the pad of digit; may be associated with osteomyelitis (akin to compartment syndrome and can lead to skin necrosis)
- **treatment:** elevation, warm soaks, cloxacillin 500 mg PO q6h (if in early stage); if obvious abscess then I&D, cultures/gram stain, PO cloxacillin

Flexor Tendon Sheath Infection

- *Staphylococcus* > *Streptococcus* > Gram-negative rods
- **definition:** acute suppurative tenosynovitis commonly caused by a penetrating injury and can lead to tendon necrosis and rupture if not treated
- **clinical features:** Kanavel's 4 cardinal signs
 1. point tenderness along flexor tendon sheath (earliest and the most important)

2. severe pain on passive extension of DIP (second most important)
3. fusiform swelling of entire digit
4. flexed posture (increased comfort)

- **treatment**

- OR incision and drainage, irrigation, IV antibiotics, and resting hand splint until infection resolves

Herpetic Whitlow

- HSV-1, HSV-2
- **definition:** painful vesicle(s) around fingertip
 - often found in medical/dental personnel and children
- **clinical features:** can be associated with fever, malaise and lymphadenopathy
 - patient is infectious until lesion has completely healed
- **treatment:** routine culture and viral prep protection (cover), consider oral acyclovir; do not break blisters, as this can spread infection

Paronychia

- acute = *Staphylococcus*; chronic = *Candida*
- **definition:** infection (granulation tissue) of soft tissue around fingernail (beneath eponychial fold)
- **etiology**
 - acute paronychia: a “hangnail”, artificial nails, and nail biting
 - chronic paronychia: prolonged exposure to moisture
- **treatment**
 - acute paronychia: warm compresses and cephalexin 500 mg PO q6h if caught early and drainage if abscess present – can usually drain with a #11 blade directed into the abscess from underneath the paronychia fold
 - chronic paronychia: anti-fungals with possible debridement and marsupialization, removal of nail plate

Amputations

Hand or Finger

- emergency management: injured patient and amputated part require attention
 - **patient:** x-rays, NPO, clean wound and irrigate with NS, dress stump with nonadherent, cover with dry sterile dressing, tetanus and antibiotic prophylaxis (cephalosporin/erythromycin)
 - **amputated part:** x-rays, gently irrigate with RL, wrap amputated part in a NS/RL soaked sterile gauze and place inside waterproof plastic bag, place in a container, then place container on ice
- **indications for replantation**
 - **age:** children often better results than adults
 - **level of injury:** proximal, thumb and multiple digit amputations are higher priority
 - **nature of injury:** clean cut injuries have higher successful replantation rate; avulsion and crush injuries are relative contraindications to replant
- if replant contraindicated manage stump with revision amputation
 - would only allow a fingertip injury to heal by secondary intention

Tendons

Common Extensor Tendon Deformities

Table 21. Extensor Tendon Deformities

Injury	Definition	Zone	Etiology/Clinical Features	Treatment
Mallet Finger	DIP flexed with loss of active extension	1	Forced flexion of the extended DIP leading to extensor tendon rupture at DIP (e.g. sudden blow to tip of the finger)	Splint DIP in extension for 6 wk followed by 2 wk of night splinting; if inadequate improvement after 6 wk, check splinting routine and recommend 4 more wk of continuous splinting
Boutonniere Deformity	PIP flexed, DIP hyperextended	3	Injury or disease affecting the extensor tendon insertion into the dorsal base of the middle phalanx Associated with RA or trauma (laceration, volar dislocation, acute forceful flexion of PIP)	Splint PIP in extension and allow active DIP motion
Swan Neck Deformity	PIP hyperextended, DIP flexed	3	Trauma (PIP volar plate injury) Associated with RA and old, untreated mallet deformity	Splint to prevent PIP hyperextension or DIP flexion Consider arthrodesis/arthroplasty

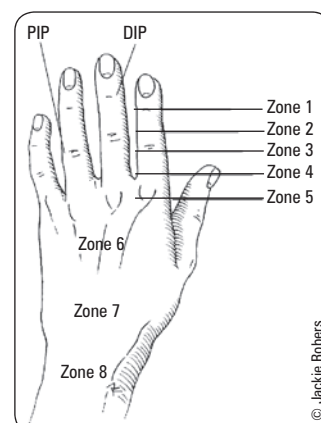


Figure 24. Zone of extensor tendon injury (odd numbered zones fall over a joint)

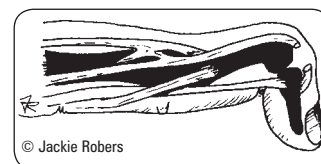


Figure 25. Mallet finger deformity

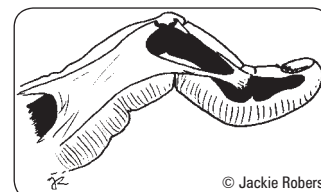


Figure 26. Boutonniere deformity

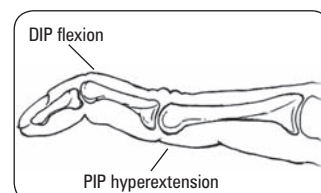


Figure 27. Swan neck deformity

De Quervain's Tenosynovitis (zone 7; most common cause of radial wrist pain)

- **definition:** inflammation in 1st extensor compartment (APL and EPB)
- **clinical features**
 - +ve Finkelstein's test (pain over the radial styloid induced by making fist, with thumb in palm, and ulnar deviation of wrist)
 - pain localized to the 1st extensor compartment
 - tenderness and crepitation over radial styloid may be present
 - differentiate from CMC joint arthritis (CMC joint arthritis will have a positive grind test, whereby crepitus and pain are elicited by axial pressure to the thumb)
- **treatment**
 - mild: NSAIDs, splinting and steroid injection into the tendon sheath (successful in over 60% of cases)
 - severe: surgical release of stenotic tendon sheaths (APL and EPB); remember there may be 2 or more sheaths

Ganglion Cyst (zone 7)

- **definition**
 - fluid-filled synovial lining that protrudes between carpal bones or from a tendon sheath; most commonly carpal in origin
 - most common soft tissue tumor of hand and wrist (60% of masses)
- **clinical features**
 - most common around scapholunate ligament junction
 - 3 times more common in women than in men
 - more common in younger individuals
 - can be large or small – may drain internally so size may wax and wane
 - often non-tender although tenderness increased when cyst smaller (from increased pressure within smaller cyst sac)
- **treatment**
 - conservative treatment: watch and wait
 - aspiration (recurrence rate 65%)
 - consider operative excision of cyst and stalk (recurrence is possible)
 - steroids if painful

Common Flexor Tendon Deformities

- flexor tendon zones (important for prognosis of tendon lacerations)
- "no-man's land"
 - between distal palmar crease and mid-middle phalanx
 - zone where superficialis and profundus lie ensheathed together
 - recovery of glide very difficult after injury

Stenosing Tenosynovitis (trigger finger/thumb)

- **definition:** inflammation of synovium causes size discrepancy between tendon and sheath/pulley (most commonly at A-1 pulley) = locking of thumb or finger in flexion/extension
- **etiology:** idiopathic or associated with RA, DM, hypothyroidism and gout
- **clinical features**
 - thumb, ring and long fingers most commonly affected
 - patient complains of catching, snapping or locking of affected finger
 - tenderness to palpation/nodule at palmar aspect of MCP over A-1 pulley
 - women are 4 times more likely than men to be affected
- **conservative treatment**
 - NSAIDs
 - steroid injection
 - surgical flexor tendon release
 - injections less likely to be successful in patients with DM or symptoms greater than 6 mo
- **surgical treatment**
 - incise A-1 flexor tendon pulley to permit unrestricted, full active finger motion



A-2 and A-4 pulleys are most important for function; prevent bowstringing of tendons

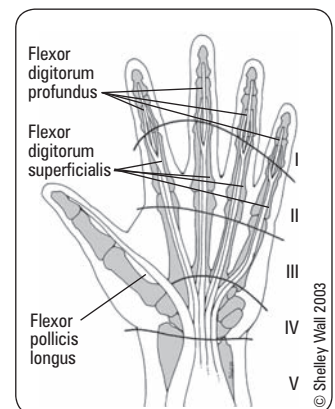


Figure 28. Zones of the flexor tendons

Fractures and Dislocations

- for fracture principles, see [Orthopedics](#), OR5

FRACTURES

- about 90% of hand fractures are stable in flexion (lock/prevent extension)
- **position of function** (like a hand holding a pop can)
 - wrist extension 15°
 - MCP flexion 45°
 - IP flexion (slight)
 - thumb abduction/rotation
 - contraindications: post repair of flexor tendons, median/ulnar nerve injury

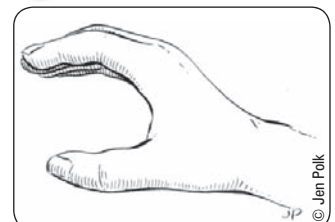


Figure 29. Position of function

- **position of safety**
 - wrist extension 45° (position most beneficial for hand function if immobilized)
 - MCP flexion 60° (maximal collateral ligament stretch)
 - PIP and DIP in full extension (maximal volar plate origin stretch)
 - thumb abduction and opposition (functional position)
- stiffness secondary to immobilization is the most important complication; Tx = early motion

Distal Phalanx Fractures

- most commonly fractured bone in the hand
- usual mechanism is crush injury and thus accompanied by soft tissue injury
- subungual hematoma is common and must be decompressed if painful or nail removed
- treatment consists of 3 wk of digital splinting (with IP joint movement preserved)

Proximal and Middle Phalanx Fractures

- check for: rotation, scissoring (overlap of fingers on making a fist), shortening of digit
- undisplaced or minimally displaced: closed reduction (if extra-articular) buddy tape to neighbouring stable digit, elevate hand, motion in guarded fashion early, splinted for **2-3 wk**
- displaced, non-reducible, not stable with closed reduction, or rotational or scissoring deformity: percutaneous pins (K-wires) or ORIF, and splint

Metacarpal Fractures

- generally accept varying degrees of deviation before reduction required: up to 10° (D2), 20° (D3), 30° (D4), or 40° (D5)
- **Boxer's fracture (extra-articular)**: acute angulation of neck of metacarpal of little finger into palm
 - mechanism: blow on the distal-dorsal aspect of closed fist
 - loss of prominence of metacarpal head, volar displacement of head
 - check for scissoring of fingers on making a fist
 - up to 30-40° angulation may be acceptable
 - closed reduction should be considered to decrease the angle
 - if stable ulnar gutter splint for 2-3 wk with PIP and DIP free
- **Bennett's fracture (intra-articular)**: fracture/dislocation of the base of the thumb metacarpal
 - unstable fracture
 - abductor pollicis longus pulls MC shaft proximally and radially causing adduction of thumb
 - treat with percutaneous pinning, thumb spica x 6 wk
- **Rolando's fracture (intra-articular)**: T- or Y-shaped fracture of the base of the thumb metacarpal
 - treat with ORIF with K-wire

DISLOCATIONS

- must be reduced as soon as possible
- dislocation vs. subluxation
 - dislocation: severe injury where articular surfaces of a joint are no longer in contact with one another
 - subluxation: articular surfaces of a joint are partially out of place, but then go back into place (partial dislocation)

PIP and DIP Dislocations (PIP more common than DIP)

- usually dorsal dislocation (commonly from hyperextension)
- if closed dislocation: closed reduction and splinting (30° flexion for PIP and full extension for DIP) or buddy taping and early mobilization (prolonged immobilization causes stiffness)
- open injuries are treated with wound care, closed or open reduction and antibiotics

MCP Dislocations (relatively rare)

- dorsal dislocations much more common than volar dislocations
- dorsal dislocation of proximal phalanx on metacarpal head; most commonly index finger (hyperextension)
- two types of dorsal dislocation
 - simple (reducible with manipulation): treat with **2-4 wk** of splinting at 30° MCP flexion
 - complex (volar plate blocks reduction): treat with open reduction and A1 pulley release + extension-blocking splint at 30° flexion (2 wk) then 10° flexion (2 wk)

Ulnar Collateral Ligament (UCL) Injury

- forced abduction of thumb (e.g. ski pole injury)
- **skier's thumb**: acute UCL injury
- **gamekeepers thumb**: chronic UCL injury
- **evaluation**: radially deviate joint in full extension and at 30° flexion and compare with non-injured hand. UCL rupture is presumed if injured side deviates more than 30° in full extension or more than 15° in flexion
- **Stener's lesion**: the UCL has bony attachments to the adductor aponeurosis and the proximal ligament can displace while the distal attachment remains deep to the aponeurosis, forming a barrier that blocks healing and leads to chronic instability; requires surgery

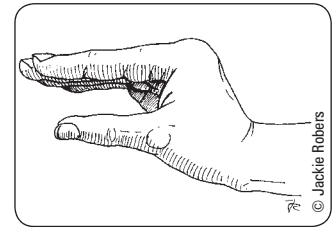


Figure 30. Position of safety

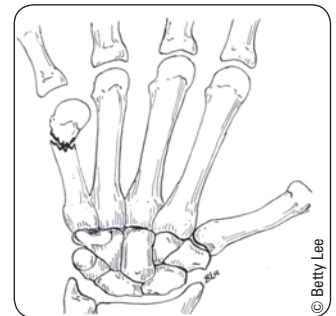


Figure 31. Boxer's fracture

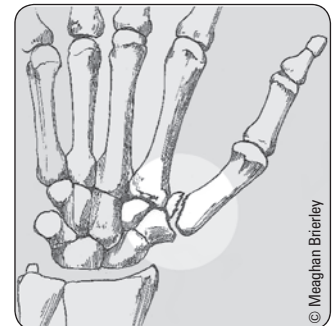


Figure 32. Bennett's fracture

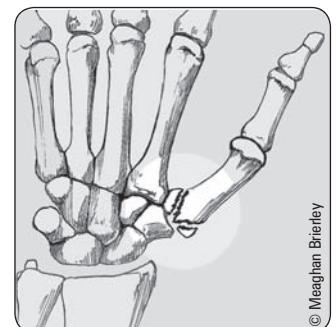


Figure 33. Rolando's fracture

Dupuytren's Disease

Definition

- contraction of longitudinal palmar fascia, forming nodules (usually painless), fibrous cords and eventually flexion contractures at the MCP and interphalangeal joints
- flexor tendons not involved
- Dupuytren's diathesis: early age of onset, strong family history, and involvement of sites other than palmar aspect of hand

Epidemiology

- genetic disorder, unusual in patients from African and Asian countries, high incidence in northern Europeans, men > women, often presents in 5th-7th decade of life, associated with but not caused by alcohol use and DM

Clinical Features

- order of digit involvement (most common to least common): ring > little > long > thumb > index
- may also involve feet (Ledderhose's) and penis (Peyronie's – see [Urology, U29](#))

Treatment

- stages
 1. palmar pit or nodule: no surgery
 2. palpable band/cord with no limitation of extension of either MCP or PIP: no surgery
 3. lack of extension at MCP or PIP: surgical fasciectomy indicated
 4. irreversible periarticular joint changes/scarring: surgical treatment possible but poorer prognosis compared to stage 3
- indications for percutaneous release
 - functional impairment
 - MCP contractures >30°
 - any PIP contracture
 - rapidly progressive disease
- may recur, especially in Dupuytren's diathesis

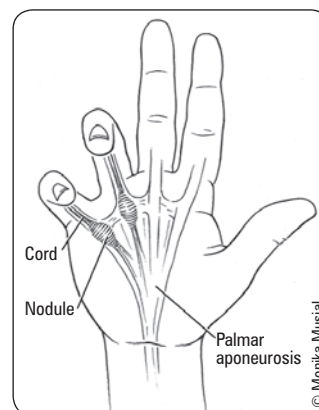


Figure 34. Dupuytren's disease



Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

Definition

- median nerve compression at the level of the flexor retinaculum as opposed to pronator teres syndrome

Etiology

- median nerve entrapment at wrist
- primary cause is idiopathic
- secondary causes: space occupying lesions (tumors, hypertrophic synovial tissue, fracture callus, and osteophytes), metabolic and physiological (pregnancy, hypothyroidism, acromegaly, and RA), infections, neuropathies (associated with DM or alcoholism), and familial disorders
- job/hobby related repetitive trauma, especially forced wrist flexion

Epidemiology

- female:male = 4:1, **most common entrapment neuropathy**

Clinical Features

- sensory loss in median nerve distribution i.e. radial 3.5 digits (see [Figure 4](#))
- discriminative touch often lost first
- classically, patient awakened at night with numb/painful hand, relieved by shaking/dangling/rubbing
- decreased light touch and 2-point discrimination, especially fingertips
- advanced cases: thenar wasting/weakness
- ± Tinel's sign (tingling sensation on percussion of nerve)
- ± Phalen's sign (wrist flexion induces symptoms)

Investigations

- clinical diagnosis
- NCV and EMG may confirm, but do not exclude, the diagnosis

Treatment

- avoid repetitive wrist and hand motion, wrist splints when repetitive wrist motion required
- conservative: night time splinting to keep wrist in neutral position
- medical: NSAIDs, local corticosteroids injection, oral corticosteroids
- surgical decompression: transverse carpal ligament incision to decompress median nerve
- indications for surgery: numbness and tingling ± sensory loss, weakness ± muscle atrophy, unresponsive to conservative measures
- complications of surgery: injury to median motor branch, palmar cutaneous branch or superficial transverse vascular arch, local pain (pillar pain), and scar formation



Accuracy of the Clinical Assessment for Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

- Phalen's:
 - Sensitivity: 0.75 Specificity: 0.47
- Tinel's:
 - Sensitivity: 0.60 Specificity: 0.67
- Carpal Tunnel Compression Test:
 - Sensitivity: 0.87 Specificity: 0.90

Hand Surgery Update 1996;223



Development and Validation of Diagnostic Criteria for Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

J Hand Surg 2006;31:919-924

Purpose: To develop a clinical diagnostic criteria for carpal tunnel syndrome that modeled the clinical diagnostic practices of experts.

Methods: Out of 57 clinical findings associated with CTS, eight were ranked highly by a panel of expert clinicians. Using 256 case histories, a panel of experts decided whether a case did or did not have a diagnosis of CTS. This diagnosis represented the dependent variable for a logistic regression model, to which the eight clinical findings were applied. The regression model was then validated against the consensus of a second panel on the diagnosis of CTS for the case histories.

Results/Conclusions: The correlation between the probability of CTS predicted by the regression model and the panel of clinicians was 0.71. Clinical diagnostic criteria that contributed significantly to the model were:

1. Numbness and tingling in median nerve distribution
2. Nocturnal numbness
3. Weakness and/or atrophy of the thenar musculature
4. Tinel's sign
5. Phalen's test
6. Loss of 2-point discrimination

Rheumatoid Hand

- see [Rheumatology](#), RH5



Radiographic Evolution of the Rheumatoid Hand

Earliest sign: erosion of the ulnar styloid
Progression: characterized by symmetrical joint space narrowing and erosions of the carpal bones, MCP and PIP (with DIP relatively spared)
Late stage: Swan neck and Boutonniere deformities

Brachial Plexus

Etiology

- common causes of brachial plexus injury: complication of childbirth and trauma
- other causes of injury: compression from tumors, ectopic ribs

Common Palsies

Table 22. Named Neonatal Palsies of the Brachial Plexus

Palsy	Location of Injury	Mechanism of Injury	Features
Duchenne-Erb Palsy	Upper brachial plexus (C5-C6)	Head/shoulder distraction (e.g. motorcycle)	Waiter's tip deformity (shoulder internal rotation, elbow extension, wrist flexion)
Klumpke's Palsy	Lower brachial plexus (C7-T1)	Traction on abducted arm	May include Horner's syndrome ("claw hand")

Differential Diagnosis

- trauma (blunt, penetrating)
- thoracic outlet syndrome
 - neurogenic: associated with cervical rib; compression of C8/T1
 - vascular: pain or sensory symptoms without cervical rib; cessation of radial pulse with provocative maneuvers
- tumor
 - schwannoma: well-defined margins makes it easier for total resection
 - neurofibromas: associated with neurofibromatosis type I
 - other: e.g. Pancoast syndrome (apical lung tumor)
- neuropathy (compressive, post-irradiation, viral, diabetic, idiopathic)

Investigations

- EMG
- MRI: gold standard for identifying soft tissue masses
- CT myelogram: better than MRI for identification of nerve root avulsion and identification of pseudomeningocele. Important for pre-operative identification of patients likely to require neurotisation procedures (especially for patients with blunt trauma)

Management

Table 23. Management of Brachial Plexus Injuries

	Type	Treatment
Non-Penetrating Trauma	Concussive/compressive	Usually improves (unless expanding mass, e.g. hematoma)
	Traction/stretch	If no continued insult, follow for 3-4 mo for improvement
	Obstetric palsy	Surgery if no significant improvement and/or residual paresis at 6 mo of age
Penetrating Trauma	Sharp or vascular injury	Explore immediately in OR

Craniofacial Injuries



- low velocity vs. high velocity injuries determine degree of damage
- fractures cause bruising, swelling and tenderness → loss of function
- frequency: nasal > zygomatic > mandibular > maxillary
- management: can wait 5-10 d for swelling to decrease before ORIF required

Approach to Facial Injuries

- ATLS protocol
- inspect, palpate, clinical assessment for injury to underlying structures (e.g. facial nerve)
- visual assessment
- tetanus prophylaxis
- radiological evaluation
- wound irrigation with NS/RL and remove foreign materials
- conservative debridement of detached or nonviable tissue
- repair when patient's general condition allows (soft tissue injury: <8 h preferable)

Investigations

- CT
 - axial and coronal (specifically request 1.5 mm cuts): for fractures of upper and middle face (not good for mandible)
 - indicated for high velocity trauma, complex facial fractures, orbital floor, panface fractures, pre-operative assessment
- panorex radiograph: shows entire upper and lower jaw; best for isolated mandible fracture as patient must be able to sit

Table 24. Imaging of the Craniofacial Skeleton

Structure	Appropriate Imaging
Mandible	Panoramic (panorex)* CT *
Zygomatic and Orbital Bones	CT scan* Water's view (occipitomental, A-P "from below"), Town's, AP
Nasal Bones	No x-ray required – clinical
Maxilla	CT scan* – axial and coronal

*Gold standard

Treatment

- consultation when indicated (dentistry, ophthalmology)
- re-establish normal occlusion
- pursue normal eye function
- restore stability of face and appearance

Complications

- diplopia/enophthalmos/blindness
- intracranial pathology such as CSF leak, bleeding and SIADH
- sinusitis
- functional abnormalities (i.e. malocclusion)
- infection – extremely rare
- poor cosmesis; need for 2^o surgery
- septal hematoma and septal necrosis

Mandibular Fractures

- always two points of injury since it is a ring structure (includes fractures and dislocations)
- commonly at sites of weakness (condylar neck, angle of mandible, region of 3rd molar or canine tooth)

Etiology

- anterior force: bilateral fractures
- lateral force: ipsilateral subcondylar and contralateral angle or body fracture
- note: classified as open if fracture into tooth bearing area (alveolus)

Clinical Features

- pain, swelling, difficulty opening mouth ("trismus")
- malocclusion, asymmetry of dental arch
- damaged, loose, or lost teeth
- palpable "step" along mandible
- numbness in V3 distribution
- intra-oral lacerations or hematoma (sublingual)
- chin deviating toward side of a fractured condyle
- bilateral condyle fractures will have anterior open bite



Patients with major facial injuries are at risk of developing upper airway obstruction (displaced blood clots, teeth or fracture fragments; swelling of pharynx and larynx; loss of support of hyomandibular complex → retroposition of tongue); also at risk of ocular injury



Facial Transplantation: The First 9 Yr

Lancet 2014;S0140:6736

Since the first facial transplantation in 2005, 28 have been done worldwide. The majority are partial facial skin allografts. Indications for facial transplantation include animal bites, neurofibromatosis, burns, trauma, and cancer.

Results/Conclusions: Restoration of motor function generally takes 6-8 mo, whereas sensory recovery may occur in a few weeks. All patients regained motor and sensory function and a high level of independence and improved quality of life. Acute rejection commonly occurs within the first year but is controlled with pulse dose corticosteroids and no cases of chronic rejection or graft-versus-host disease have been reported. Face transplantation has emerged as a viable and successful option to restore appearance and function of patients with severe, devastating facial injuries.



Suspect C-spine injury with any facial trauma. C-spine evaluation before radiographs are ordered



Consider intracranial trauma; rule out skull fracture



Signs of Basal Skull Fracture

- Battle's sign (bruised mastoid process)
- Hemotympanum
- Raccoon eyes (periorbital bruising)
- CSF otorrhea/rhinorrhea



Facial bone injuries with orbit involved require ophthalmology consult

Classification

Table 25. Mandibular Fracture Classifications by Anatomic Region (refer to Figure 35)

	Areas/Boundaries
Symphysis	Midline of the mandible; between the central incisors from the alveolar process through the inferior border of the mandible
Body*	From the symphysis to the distal alveolar border of the third molar
Angle	Triangular region between the anterior border of the masseter and the posterosuperior insertion of the masseter distal to the third molar
Ramus	Part of the mandible that extends posteriosuperiorly into the condylar and coronoid processes
Condylar	Area of condylar process of mandible
Subcondylar	Area below the condylar neck (i.e. sigmoid notch) of the mandible
Coronoid Process	Area of the coronoid process of mandible

*Most common mandibular fracture type

Treatment

- maxillary and mandibular arch bars wired together (intramaxillary fixation) or ORIF
- antibiotics to cover against *S. aureus* and anaerobes

Complications

- malocclusion, malunion
- tooth loss, and possible sensation loss
- TMJ ankylosis

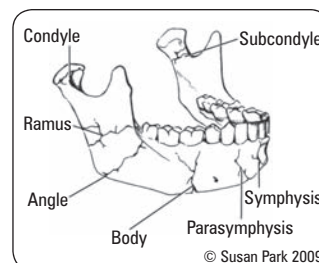


Figure 35. Mandibular fracture

Maxillary Fractures

Table 26. Le Fort Classification (refer to Figure 36)

	Le Fort I	Le Fort II	Le Fort III
Alternative Name	Guérin fracture	Pyramidal fracture	Craniofacial dysjunction
Type of Fracture	Horizontal	Pyramidal	Transverse
Structures Involved	Piriform aperture Maxillary sinus Pterygoid plates	Nasal bones Medial orbital wall Maxilla Pterygoid plates	Nasofrontal suture Zygomatofrontal suture Zygomatic arch Pterygoid plates
Anatomical Result	Maxilla divided into 2 segments	Maxillary teeth separated from face	Detach entire midfacial skeleton from cranial base

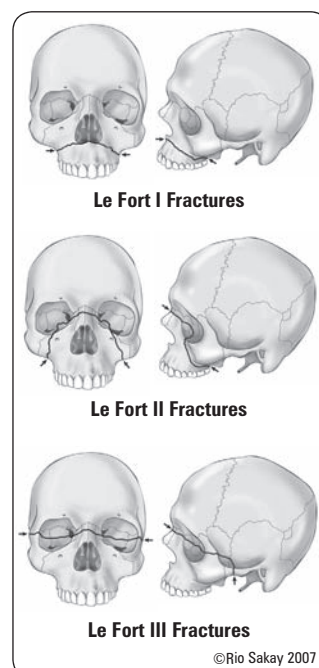


Figure 36. Le Fort fractures

Nasal Fractures

Etiology

- lateral force → more common, good prognosis
- anterior force → can produce more serious injuries
- most common facial fracture

Clinical Features

- epistaxis/hemorrhage, deviation/flattening of nose, swelling, periorbital ecchymosis, tenderness over nasal dorsum, crepitus, septal hematoma, respiratory obstruction, subconjunctival hemorrhage
- depression and splaying of nasal bones causing a saddle deformity
- important to clinically assess for naso-orbital ethmoid fractures

Treatment

- in the absence of complications, no treatment required
- closed reduction with Asch or Walsham forceps under anesthesia, pack nostrils with Adaptic®, nasal splint for 7 d
- best reduction immediately (<6 h) or when swelling subsides (5-7 d)
- rhinoplasty may be necessary later for residual deformity (30%)



Always drain septal hematomas as this is a cause of septal necrosis with perforation (saddle nose deformity)

Naso-Orbital Ethmoid Fractures

Etiology

- fractures of the nasal and ethmoid bones of the medial orbit
- problematic and may lead to greatest change in facial appearance
- Markowitz-Manson classification
 - Type 1: Single, central fragment, medial canthal ligament intact
 - Type 2: Comminuted central fragment, medial canthal ligament intact
 - Type 3: Severe comminution of central fragment and disrupted medial canthal ligament

Clinical Presentation

- telecanthus (increased intercanthal distance secondary to medial canthal ligament disruption)
- orbital rim step-off
- similar to nasal fractures

Treatment

- surgical repair to restore intercanthal distance, nasal projection and orbital anatomy

Zygomatic Fractures

- 3 categories
 1. fracture restricted to zygomatic arch
 2. depressed fracture of zygomatic complex (zygoma)
 3. unstable fracture of zygomatic complex (tetrapod fracture) – separations occur at maxilla, frontal bone, temporal bone and orbital rim

Clinical Features

- flattening of malar prominence (view from above)
- pain over fractures on palpation
- numbness in V2 distribution (infraorbital and superior dental nerves)
- palpable step deformity in bony orbital rim (especially inferiorly)
- often associated with fractures of the orbital floor
- ipsilateral epistaxis; trismus (lock jaw)

Treatment

- if undisplaced, stable and no symptoms, then soft diet; no treatment necessary
- ophthalmologic evaluation if suspected orbital injury
- uncomplicated zygomatic arch fractures can be elevated using Gillies approach: leverage on the anterior part of the zygomatic arch via a temporal incision; stabilization often unnecessary
- ORIF for displaced or unstable fractures of zygomatic complex

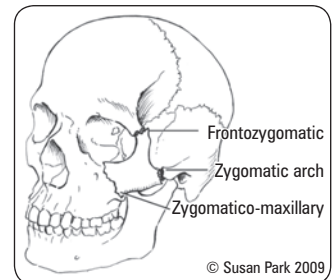


Figure 37. Zygomatic fractures

Orbital Floor Fractures

- see [Ophthalmology, OP43](#)

Definition

- fracture of floor of orbit ± intact infraorbital rim
- may be associated with nasoethmoid fracture

Etiology

- blunt force to eyeball → sudden increase in intra-orbital pressure (e.g. baseball or fist)

Clinical Features

- **check visual fields and acuity for injury to globe**
- periorbital edema and bruising, subconjunctival hemorrhage
- ptosis, exophthalmos, exorbitism, or enophthalmos
- orbital rim step-offs with possible infraorbital nerve anesthesia
- vertical dystopia (abnormal displacement of the entire orbital cone in the vertical plane); diplopia looking up or down (entrapment of inferior rectus), limited EOM
- orbital entrapment
 - clinical diagnosis that is a surgical emergency
 - diplopia with vertical gaze; limited EOM
 - severe pain or nausea and vomiting with eye movement
 - requires urgent ophthalmology evaluation and surgical repair

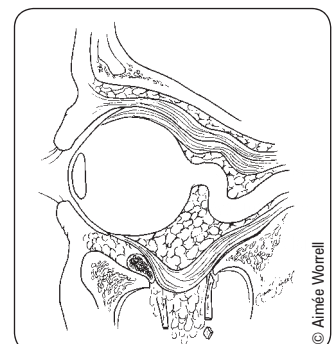


Figure 38. Blow-out fracture

Investigations

- CT (diagnostic): axial and coronal views
- diagnostic manoeuvre for entrapment is **forced duction** test (pulling on inferior rectus muscle with forceps to ensure full ROM) under anesthesia

Treatment

- surgical repair indicated if: urgent repair for entrapment, floor defect >1 cm, any size defect with enophthalmos or persistent diplopia (>10 d)
- reconstruction of orbital floor with bone graft or alloplastic material
- ophthalmologic evaluation suggested

Complications

- persistent diplopia
- enophthalmos

Superior Orbital Fissure Syndrome

- fracture of SOF causing ptosis, proptosis, anesthesia in V1 distribution, and painful ophthalmoplegia (paralysis of CN III, IV, VI)
- uncommon complication seen in Le Fort II and III fractures (1/130)
- recovery time reported as 4.8-23 wk following operative reduction of fractures

Orbital Apex Syndrome

- fracture through optic canal with involvement of CN II at apex of orbit
- symptoms are the same as SOF syndrome plus vision loss
- treatment is urgent decompression of fracture in optic canal or steroids (emergency)



Diplopia can present late in orbital blow-out fractures

Breast Surgery

Breast Reconstruction

- integral part of breast cancer treatment
- two basic methods: implants (1-stage or 2-stage) or autologous tissue
- may also require breast balancing procedure and nipple areola reconstruction

Pre-Reconstruction Considerations

- radiation: treatment before and after mastectomy is a relative contraindication to alloplastic reconstruction
- recipient tissue: skin sparing mastectomy allows for the use of implants without tissue expanders (1-stage process)
- donor tissue: limited availability of suitable donor tissue (lack of tissue, scar, previous surgery that interferes with blood supply) may prevent the use of autologous tissue reconstruction
- timing (immediate vs. delayed)
- contralateral breast: may not be possible to reconstruct a breast of the same size or shape as the contralateral breast. Breast reduction or mastopexy may be considered in opposite breast (see Table 28)
- other considerations: patient's age and comorbidities, prognosis, body weight, characteristics of chest wall and patient's attitude



Patients may require a balancing procedure on contralateral side

Table 27. Options for Breast Reconstruction

Procedure	Definition	Surgical Details	Other Comments
Alloplastic (Implant based)	Use of synthetic material (silicone or saline implants)	<i>With expanders</i> (2 stages): Use tissue expanders before replacement with implants to help facilitate breast ptosis <i>Without expanders</i> (1 stage): In skin-sparing mastectomy, enough skin is available for immediate placement of implant (may require acellular dermal matrix if implant size and muscle size is a mismatch)	Complications: capsular contraction (foreign body reaction to implants), rupture or leakage of implant, increased risk of infection, 35% revision rate over 5 yr
Autologous Tissue	Use of patient's own tissue	Many flap options: DIEP, TRAM, latissimus dorsi, SIEA, SGAP, and IGAP	Offers reduced long-term morbidity and natural consistency
Nipple Areola Reconstruction	Final stage of breast reconstruction	Usually require tattooing for areola reconstruction Local vs. distant flap/graft: 1. Local: fish tail or skate flap most common; these flaps allow simultaneous nipple and areola reconstruction 2. Distant: opposite nipple, earlobe, abdominal skin, costal cartilage, labia	Usually performed 3 mo post-reconstruction

Breast Tissue Expanders

- placement: sub-pectoral, total submuscular (pectoral/serratus)
- size: depends on contralateral breast and desired size
 - generally over-expanded to facilitate ptosis
- timing of expansion: begins when wound fully healed (usually 2 wk post-operative), and implants are expanded weekly or bi-weekly until complete (up to 3 mo); expanders are exchanged for implants after another 3 mo for consolidation of expanded skin

Arterial blood supply to the breast

- internal thoracic*
- external thoracic*
- lateral thoracic
 - thoracoacromial
 - intercostals
 - thoracodorsal

* also provide arterial blood supply to nipple-areola complex

Pedicle Designs

- inferior pedicle technique
- superior pedicle
- central pedicle/mound
- medial pedicle

Breast Reduction

- reduction mammoplasty performed for relief of physical symptoms (e.g. shoulder groove, neck pain, back pain, shoulder pain, mastodynia), and to improve breast size and shape
- key steps of procedure
 - incisions: circular around the areola, vertical from areola incision to infra-mammary fold, along the natural infra-mammary fold
 - removal of fat, breast tissue, and excess skin
 - possible need to move nipple and areola complex to higher position
- complications: infection, hemorrhage, decreased nipple sensation, inability to breast feed, breast/nipple asymmetry, nipple loss (partial or complete), skin loss/necrosis, fat necrosis



Breast Cancer Detection and Survival among Women with Cosmetic Breast Implants: Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Observational Studies

BMJ 2013;346:f2399

Purpose: To determine if breast augmentation for cosmetic purposes affects stage at diagnosis and post-diagnosis survival compared with women with no implants.

Methods: Systematic review of observational studies with two meta-analyses.

Results: Meta-analysis examining breast CA stage: odds ratio 1.26 for non-localized stage breast CA at diagnosis comparing women with and without implants (12 studies, 95% CI 0.99-1.6; $p=0.058$).

Meta-analysis examining post-diagnosis survival: reduced survival after breast CA among women with implants compared with women without implants (5 studies, hazard ratio for breast CA specific mortality 1.38, CI 1.08-1.75).

Conclusions: Although findings need to be interpreted with caution, research published to date suggests that cosmetic breast augmentation may adversely affect survival of women subsequently diagnosed with breast CA.

Aesthetic Surgery

Aesthetic Procedures

Table 28. Aesthetic Procedures

Location	Procedure	Description
Head/ Neck	Hair transplants	Aesthetic improvement of hair growth patterns using grafts or flaps
	Otoplasty	Surgical correction of protruding ears
	Brow lift	Surgical procedure to lift low brows
Face	Rhytidectomy	Surgical procedure to reduce wrinkling and sagging of the face and neck; "face lift"
	Blepharoplasty	Surgical procedure to shape or modify the appearance of eyelids by removing excess eyelid skin ± fat pads
	Rhinoplasty	Intranasal surgical reconstruction of the nose
	Genioplasty	Chin augmentation via osteotomy or synthetic implant to improve contour
	Lip augmentation	Procedure to create fuller lips and to reduce wrinkles around the mouth using collagen injections, fat transferred from other body parts, or implantable materials
Skin	Chemical peel	Application of one or more exfoliating agents to the skin resulting in destruction of portions of the epidermis and/or dermis with subsequent tissue regeneration
	Dermabrasion	Skin re-surfacing by sanding with a rapidly rotating abrasive tool; often used to reduce scars, irregular skin surfaces and fine lines
	Laser resurfacing	Application of laser to the skin which ultimately results in collagen reconfiguration and subsequent skin shrinking and tightening; often used to reduce scars and wrinkles
	Injectable fillers	An injectable substance is used to decrease frown lines, wrinkles, and nasolabial folds; substances include collagen, fat, hyaluronic acid, and calcium hydroxyapatite
Other	Abdominoplasty	Removal of excess skin and repair of rectus muscle laxity (rectus diastasis); "tummy tuck"
	Breast augmentation	Surgical breast enhancement with silicone or saline implants
	Calf augmentation	Augmentation of calf muscle with implants
	Liposuction	Surgical removal of adipose tissue for body contouring (not a weight loss procedure)
	Mastopexy	Surgical breast lift to elevate breast mound and tighten the skin envelope in ptotic breasts
	Breast reduction	Surgical breast reduction for relief of physical symptoms
	Sclerotherapy	Injection with a sclerosant to treat telangiectasias and varicose veins
	Gynecomastia	Excessive development of male mammary glands Treated with traditional or ultrasound-assisted liposuction

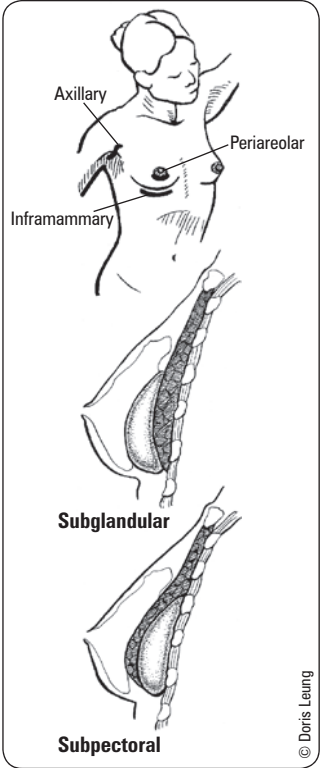


Figure 39. Augmentation mammoplasty: incision lines and implant placement

Pediatric Plastic Surgery

Craniofacial Anomalies

Table 29. Pediatric Craniofacial Anomalies

	Definition	Epidemiology	Clinical Features	Treatment
Cleft Lip	Failure of fusion of maxillary and medial nasal processes M:F = 2:1	1 in 1,000 live births (1 in 800 Caucasians, increased in Asians, decreased in Blacks) More common on the left (cleft of left lip/palate in boys has hereditary component)	Classified as incomplete/complete and uni/bilateral 2/3 cases: unilateral, left-sided, male	Surgery (3 mo): Millard, Tennison-Randall, or Fisher subunit repair corrections usually required later on (especially for nasal deformity)
Cleft Palate	Failure of fusion of lateral palatine/median palatine processes and nasal septum	Isolated cleft palate: 0.5 per 1,000 (no racial variation) F > M	Classified as incomplete/complete and uni/bilateral Isolated (common in females) or in conjunction with cleft lip (common in males)	Special bottles for feeding Speech pathologist Surgery (6-9 mo): Von Langenbeck or Furlow Z-Plasty ENT consult – often recurrent otitis media, requiring myringotomy tubes
Craniosynostosis	Premature fusion of ≥ 1 cranial sutures Primary – abnormal suture, no known cause This may limit brain growth perpendicular to the suture and cause compensatory growth parallel to the fused suture	1 in 2,000 live newborns; M:F = 52:48 Syndromes include: Crouzon's, Apert's, Saethre-Chotzen, Carpenter's, Pfeiffer's Jackson-Weiss and Boston-type syndromes	Syndromic – associated with genetic mutation Secondary (to microcephaly, hyperthyroid, rickets, etc.) Dx: irregular head shape, craniofacial abnormalities, x-ray	Multidisciplinary team (including neurosurgery, ENT, genetics, dentistry, pediatrics, SLP) Early surgery prevents secondary deformities \uparrow ICP is an indication for emergent surgery ICU bed may be required post-surgically

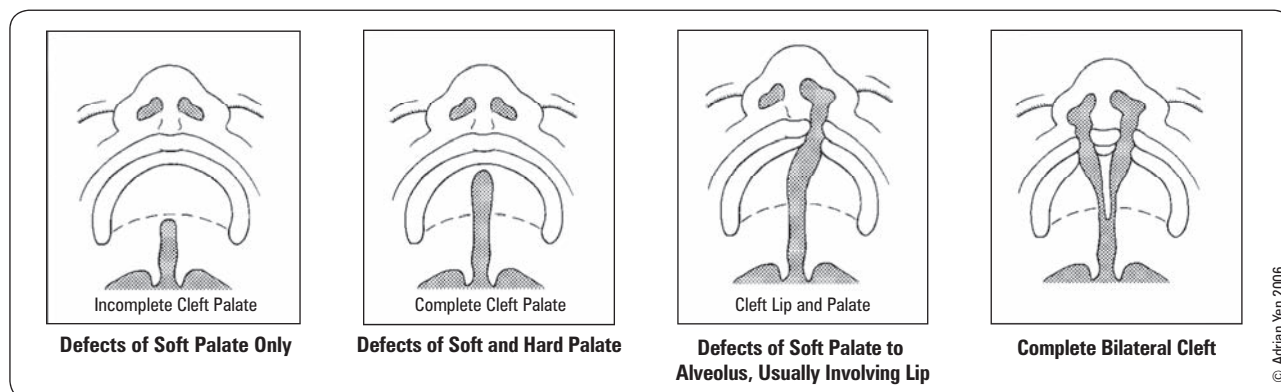


Figure 40. Types of cleft lips and palates

Congenital Hand Anomalies

Table 30. American Society for Surgery of the Hand (ASSH) Classification of Congenital Hand Anomalies

Classification	Example	Features	Treatment
Failure of Formation	Transverse absence (congenital amputation)	At any level (often below elbow/wrist)	Early prosthesis
	Longitudinal absence (phocomelia)	Absent humerus Thalidomide association	
	Radial deficiency (radial club hand)	Radial deviation Thumb hypoplasia M > F	Physiotherapy + splinting Soft tissue release if splinting fails Distraction osteogenesis (Ilizarov) \pm wedge osteotomy Tendon transfer Pollicization
	Thumb hypoplasia	Degree ranges from small thumb with all components to complete absence	Depends on degree – may involve no treatment, webspace deepening, tendon transfer, or pollicization of index finger
	Ulnar club hand	Rare, compared to radial club hand Stable wrist	Splinting and soft-tissue stretching therapies Soft-tissue release (if above fails) Correction of angulation (Ilizarov distraction)
	Cleft hand	Autosomal dominant Often functionally normal (depending on degree)	First web space syndactyly release Osteotomy/tendon transfer of thumb (if hypoplastic)

Table 30. American Society for Surgery of the Hand (ASSH) Classification of Congenital Hand Anomalies (continued)

Classification	Example	Features	Treatment
Failure of Differentiation/ Separation	Syndactyly	Fusion of ≥ 2 digits 1/3,000 live births M:F = 2:1 Classified as partial/complete Simple (skin only) vs. complex (osseous or cartilaginous bridges)	Surgical separation before 6-12 mo of age Usually good result
	Symbrachydactyly	Short fingers with short nails at fingertips	Digital separation (more difficult) Webspace deepening
	Camptodactyly	Congenital flexion contracture (usually at PIP, especially 5th digit)	Early splinting Volar release Arthroplasty (rarely)
	Clinodactyly	Radial or ulnar deviation Often middle phalanx	None (usually); if severe, osteotomy with grafting
Duplication	Polydactyly	Congenital duplication of digits May be radial (increased in Aboriginals and Asians) or central or ulnar (increased in Blacks)	Amputation of least functional digit Usually >1 yr of age (when functional status can be assessed)
Overgrowth	Macrodactyly	Rare	None (if mild) Soft tissue/bony reduction
Undergrowth	Brachydactyly	Short phalanges	Removal of non-functional stumps Osteotomies/tendon transfers Distraction osteogenesis Phalangeal/free toe transfer
	Symbrachydactyly (brachysyndactyly)	Short webbed fingers	As above + syndactyly release
Constriction Band Syndrome	i.e. amniotic (annular) band syndrome	Variety of presentations	Urgent release for acute, progressive edema distal to band in newborn Other reconstruction is case-specific
Generalized Skeletal Abnormality	Achondroplasia, Marfan's, Madelung's	Variety of presentations	Treatment depends on etiology

References

- American Society for Surgery of the Hand. The hand: examination and diagnosis, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Churchill-Livingston, 1990.
- Beredjikian PK, Bozenika DJ. Review of hand surgery. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2004.
- Britt LD, Trunkley DD, Feliciano DV. Acute care surgery: principles and practice. New York: Springer, 2007.
- Borges AF. The rhombic flap. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 1981;67:458-466.
- Bray DA. Clinical applications of the rhomboid flap. *Arch Otolaryngol* 1983;109:37-42.
- Brown DL, Borschel GH. Michigan manual of plastic surgery. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2004.
- Centers B. Guidelines for the operation of burn centers. Resources for Optimal Care of the Injured Patient, 2006.
- Daver BM, Antia NH, Furnas DW. Handbook of plastic surgery for the general surgeon, 2nd ed. New Delhi: Oxford University Press, 1995.
- Department of Health, Western Australia. Guidelines for use of nanocrystalline silver dressing – Acticoat™. Perth: Health Networks Branch, Department of Health, Western Australia, 2011.
- Diehr S, Hamp A, Jamieson B. Clinical inquiries: do topical antibiotics improve wound healing? *J Fam Pract* 2007;56:140-144.
- Fee WE Jr, Gunter JP, Carder HM. Rhomboid flap principles and common variations. *Laryngoscope* 1976;86:1706-1711.
- Georgiade GS, Riefkohl R, Levin LS. Georgiade plastic, maxillofacial and reconstructive surgery, 3rd ed. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1997.
- Gourgiotis S, Villias C, Germanos S, et al. Acute limb compartment syndrome: a review. *J Surg Educ* 2007;64:178-186.
- Graham B, Regehr G, Naglie G, et al. Development and validation of diagnostic criteria for carpal tunnel syndrome. *J Hand Surg* 2006;31:919.e1-919.e7.
- Greene FL, Page DL, Fleming ID, et al. AJCC cancer staging handbook: from the AJCC cancer staging manual, 6th ed. Springer, 2002.
- Gulleth Y, Goldberg N, Silverman R, et al. What is the best surgical margin for a basal cell carcinoma: a meta-analysis of the literature. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2010;126:1222-1231.
- Huang CC, Boyce SM. Surgical margins of excision for basal cell carcinoma and squamous cell carcinoma. *Seminars In Cutaneous Med and Surg* 2004;23:167-173.
- Hunt TK, Doherty GM, Way LW (editors). Current surgical diagnosis and treatment, 12th ed. Norwalk: McGraw-Hill, 2006. Chapter: wound healing.
- Janis JE. Essentials of plastic surgery: a UT Southwestern Medical Center handbook. St. Louis: Quality Medical, 2007.
- Larrabee WF Jr, Trachy R, Sutton D, et al. Rhomboid flap dynamics. *Arch Otolaryngol* 1981;107:755-757.
- Muangman P, Chuntarasakul C, Silthram S, et al. Comparison of efficacy of 1% silver sulfadiazine and acticoat for treatment of partial-thickness burn wounds. *J Med Assoc Thailand* 2006;89:953-958.
- Noble J. Textbook of primary care medicine, 3rd ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 2001.
- Ong YS, Samuel M, Song C. Meta-analysis of early excision of burns. *Burns* 2006;32:145-150.
- Plastic Surgery Educational Foundation. Plastic and reconstructive surgery essentials for students. Arlington Heights: Plastic Surgery Educational Foundation, 2007. Available from: http://www.plasticsurgery.org/medical_professionals/publications/Essentials-for-Students.cfm.
- Richards AM. Key notes in plastic surgery. Great Britain: Blackwell Science, 2002.
- Salzberg CA, Ashikari AY, Koch RM, et al. An 8-year experience of direct-to-implant immediate breast reconstruction using human acellular dermal matrix (Allo Derm). *Plast Reconstr Surg* 2011;127:514-524.
- Sermer NB. Practical plastic surgery for non-surgeons. Philadelphia: Hanley & Belfus, 2001.
- Smith DJ, Brown AS, Cruse CW, et al. Plastic and reconstructive surgery. Chicago: Plastic Surgery Educational Foundation, 1987.
- Stone C. Plastic surgery: facts. London: Greenwich Medical Media, 2001.
- Thome CH. Grabb & Smith's plastic surgery, 6th ed. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2007.
- Townsend CM. Sabiston textbook of surgery – the biological basis of modern surgical practice, 16th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2001. Chapter: plastic and reconstructive surgery.
- Wolff K, Johnson RA. Fitzpatrick's color atlas and synopsis of clinical dermatology, 6th ed. McGraw-Hill, 2009.
- Weinzweig J. Plastic surgery secrets. Philadelphia: Hanley and Belfus, 1999.

Eva Ouyang and Carla Rosario, chapter editors

Jillian Bardsley, Evan Lilly, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor

Dr. Fran E. Scott and Dr. Catherine L. Mah, staff editors

Historical Context of Public Health	2	Health Services Research	17
Determinants of Health	2	Continuous Quality Improvement	
Concepts of Health		Cost Analysis	
Vulnerable Populations		Outbreak of Infectious Diseases	18
Disease Prevention		Definitions	
Health Promotion Strategies		Steps to Control an Outbreak	
Measurements of Health and Disease		Environmental Health	20
in a Population	6	Environmental Health Jurisdiction	
Epidemiology	7	Risk Assessment	
Effectiveness of Interventions		Air	
Types of Study Design	10	Water	
Qualitative vs. Quantitative		Soil	
Quantitative Research Methods		Food	
Observational Study Designs		Heavy Metal Toxicity	
Experimental Study Designs		Occupational Health	23
Methods of Analysis	13	Workplace Health Promotion and Protection	
Distributions		Workplace Disease Prevention	
Data Analysis		Workplace Treatment and Rehabilitation	
Common Statistical Tests		Workplace Legislation	
Causation		Taking an Occupational Health History	
Assessing Evidence		Occupational Hazards	
		Appendix – Reportable Diseases	25
		References	26

Historical Context of Public Health

- see [Ethical, Legal, and Organizational Medicine, ELOAM2](#) for Legal Foundation

Definitions

- **population health**
 - health of the population as measured by health status indicators (e.g. life expectancy, low birth weight rates)
 - influenced by: physical, biological, social, environmental, and economic factors; personal health behaviors; health care services
 - refers to the prevailing or desired level of health in the population of a specific country/region/subset of population
 - considered to be more complex than the aggregate health status of individuals within a population
- **public health**
 - organized collective efforts of society to protect, promote, and restore the health of the public and prevent illness, injury, and premature death
 - refers to the practices, programs, policies, institutions, and disciplines required to achieve the desired state of population health
- **public health and preventive medicine** (formerly called community medicine)
 - the postgraduate study of health and disease in the population or a specified community
 - goal: to identify and address health problems and evaluate the extent to which health services and others address these issues

Source: Last JM. *A Dictionary of Epidemiology*, 4th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001



Historical Perspective

Over the last century, Public Health has evolved through three main epidemiological phases:

- **Infectious diseases:** controlled in the more developed world but an issue in less developed countries (e.g. polio, malaria)
- **Chronic diseases:** chronic diseases and other noncommunicable conditions have increased morbidity and mortality (e.g. heart disease and cancer due to risk factors and/or exposures)
- **Re-emerging infectious diseases:** new or re-emergent infections emerge due to unfamiliar or new pathogens, inefficient or inappropriate antibiotic use, travel, and global warming (e.g. HIV, drug resistant TB and malaria)



Determinants of Health

- Income and social status
- Social support networks
- Education and literacy
- Employment and working conditions
- Social environment
- Physical environment
- Personal health practices and coping skills
- Healthy child development
- Biology and genetic endowment
- Health services
- Gender
- Culture

Source: Public Health Agency of Canada



Equity Assumes Three Elements

1. **Equality:** the movement for women's equality seeks to gain equal access to educational or employment opportunities;
2. **Fairness:** a person of African descent should get a job, not because he is black, but because he has the right qualifications;
3. **Avoidability:** there is recognition that something can and should be done to redress situations in which inequities arise

Determinants of Health

Concepts of Health

- **wellness:** state of dynamic physical, mental, social, and spiritual well-being that enables a person to achieve full potential and have an enjoyable life
- **disease:** abnormal, medically-defined changes in the structure or function of the human body
- **illness:** an individual's experience or subjective perception of a lack of physical or mental well-being and consequent inability to function normally in social roles
- **illness behavior:** an individual's actions in response to their illness, including whether they seek health care and whether they comply with the subsequent recommendations
- **sickness:** socially and culturally held conceptions of health conditions that may influence how the patient reacts
- **impairment:** any loss or abnormality of psychological, physiological, or anatomical structure or function
- **disability:** any restriction or lack of ability to perform an activity within the range considered normal for a human being
- **handicap:** the disadvantage for an individual arising due to impairment and disability
 - limits or prevents the fulfillment of an individual's normal role as determined by society and depends on age, sex, social, and cultural factors
 - changes the individual's relationship with the physical and social environment
- **health equity:** when all people have "the opportunity to attain their full health potential" and no one is "disadvantaged from achieving this potential because of their social position or other socially determined circumstance." Differs from health equality. Health inequities are those which are considered unjust and/or avoidable
- **health equality:** defined as where populations have equal or similar health status. Health inequalities are systematic differences in health status that occur among population groups

Determinants of Health

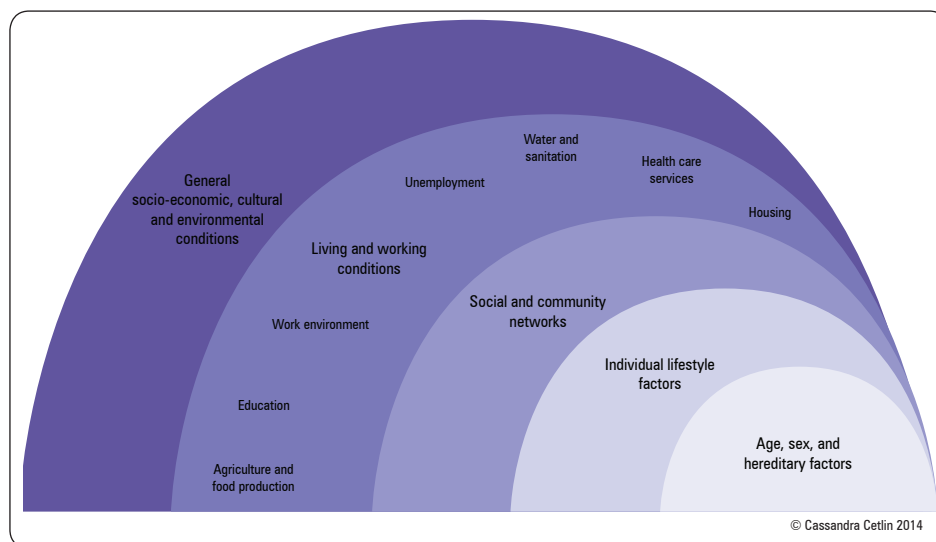


Figure 1. Population health model

Adapted from: Dahlgren G, Whitehead M. European strategies for tackling social inequities in health: Leveling up Part 2. World Health Organization, 2006



Definitions of Health

- First multidimensional definition of health, as defined by the WHO in 1948: "state of complete physical, mental and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity"
- WHO updated the definition (socio-ecological definition) of health in 1986: "The ability to identify and to realize aspirations, to satisfy needs, and to change or cope with the environment. Health is therefore a resource for everyday life, not the objective of living. Health is a positive concept emphasizing social and personal resources, as well as physical capacities" (Ottawa Charter for Health Promotion)
- Other definitions of health have since been proposed that incorporate other dimensions of health (e.g. "Health is a social, economic, and political issue and above all a fundamental human right" – The People's Charter for Health)

Vulnerable Populations

Table 1. Health Determinants of Vulnerable Populations

	Definition	Psychosocial/ Socioeconomic	Physical Environment	Individual Behavior	Population-Specific Interventions
Indigenous Peoples	Persons having origins in any of the original peoples of North America and who maintains tribal affiliation or community attachment	Low income Family violence Low education status Unemployment Homelessness Longer length of disability	Crowded housing Inefficient ventilation Environmental toxins (botulism) TB declining but prevalence higher than rest of population	Smoking Substance misuse Excessive gambling Poor nutrition Sedentary lifestyle High BMI Higher risk of suicide	Mental health awareness Indigenous-specific diabetes initiatives Substance abuse treatment programs
Isolated Seniors	Individuals > 65 yr	Elder abuse Lack of emotional support	Low hazard tolerance Institutionalization Mobility issues	Inactivity Polypharmacy Medical comorbidities	Aging in place of choice Falls and injury prevention Mental health promotion Preventing abuse and neglect
Children in Poverty	Based on Low Income Cut Offs (LICO) LICO is an income threshold below which a family will likely devote a larger share of its income on the necessities of food, shelter and clothing than the average family	Low income Family dysfunction Lack of educational opportunities	Housing availability Unsafe housing Lack of recreational space	Poor supervision Food insecurity High risk behaviors	Improvements in family income most significant Early childhood education
People with Disabilities	Includes impairments, activity limitations, and participation restrictions	Low income Low education status Discrimination	Institutionalization Barriers to access Transportation challenges	Substance misuse Poor nutrition Inactivity Dependency for ADLs	Transportation support Multidisciplinary care Unique support for individuals with specific disabilities (e.g. Trisomy 21)
New Immigrants	Person born outside of the United States who has been granted the right to live in United States permanently by immigration authorities	Access to community services Cultural perspectives	Diseases and conditions in country of origin (e.g. smoke from wood fires, incidence of TB, etc.)	Employment, ESL Healthy Newcomer Effect (health worsens over time to match that of the general population) Cultural or religious expectations	Women's health Mental health Infectious diseases (syphilis blood test, CXR, HIV) Dental and vision screening Vaccinations Cancer screening



New Immigrants to the United States

Mandatory medical exams on entry to the United States by a designated medical practitioner:

- Complete medical examination for all persons of all ages
- Chest x-ray and report for persons 15 yr of age and over
- Urinalysis for persons 5 yr of age and over
- Syphilis serology for persons 15 yr of age and over
- HIV testing no longer be required as of 2010
- Serum creatinine if the applicant has HTN (resting blood pressure greater than 140/90 mmHg), a history of treated HTN, diabetes, autoimmune disorder, persistent proteinuria, or kidney disorder

Table 1. Health Determinants of Vulnerable Populations (continued)

	Definition	Psychosocial/ Socioeconomic	Physical Environment	Individual Behavior	Population-Specific Interventions
Homeless Persons	An individual who lacks permanent housing	Low income Mental illness	Exposure to temperature extremes Infections such as West Nile Virus	Substance misuse Violence	Safe housing Addictions support Mental health
Refugee Health	Forced to flee country of origin because of a well-founded fear of persecution and given protection by the Government of the United States <i>Refugee claimant:</i> Arrive in United States and ask to be considered refugee	Post-traumatic stress disorders Depression Adjustment problems IFH (Interim Federal Health) for refugee claimants, health coverage 1 yr for medical necessities, specifically does not cover screening or preventative care Additionally IFH will restrict coverage for individuals from designated countries of origin (DCO) whose applications were placed after Dec 15, 2012	Diseases and conditions in country of origin (e.g. malaria, TB, onchocerciasis, etc.) Direct and indirect effects of war	Employment ESL Longstanding prior lack of access to health care (chronically neglected problems) Cultural or religious expectations	Vaccinations Women's health Mental health Infectious diseases Dental and vision screening Political advocacy

Note: this chart delineates the major challenges faced by each group, but the issues listed are not unique to each population

Disease Prevention

Disease Prevention Strategies

- measures aimed at preventing the occurrence, interrupting through early detection and treatment, or slowing the progression of disease/mitigating the sequelae

Primary Prevention

- implemented to prevent disease from occurring
- immunization programs exist in most countries to address major causes of pediatric morbidity and mortality that are preventable by vaccines, e.g. measles, diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus, polio, and tuberculosis (not routine in the U.S.)
- additional immunizations are offered in US depending on jurisdiction: mumps, rubella, rotavirus, hepatitis B, *Haemophilus influenzae* type B, varicella, HPV, conjugated pneumococcal and meningococcal vaccines (see [Pediatrics, P3](#))

Secondary Prevention (Screening)

- presumptive identification (not diagnosis) of unrecognized disease or defect by the application of tests, examinations, or other procedures which can be applied rapidly
- types of screening**
 - mass screening: screening all members of a population for a disease (e.g. phenylketonuria (PKU) and hypothyroidism in all newborns)
 - selective screening: screening of a specific subgroup of the population at risk for a disease (e.g. mammography in women >50 yr old)
 - multiphasic screening: the use of many measurements and investigations to look for many disease entities (e.g. periodic health exam)

Table 2. Ideal Criteria for Screening Tests

Disease	Test	Health Care System
Causes significant suffering and/or death Natural history must be understood Must have an asymptomatic stage that can be detected by a test Early detection and intervention must result in improved outcomes Incidence is not too high or too low	High specificity and sensitivity Safe, rapid, easy, relatively inexpensive Acceptable to providers and to population	Adequate capacity for reporting, follow-up, and treatment of positive screens Cost effective Sustainable program Clear policy guidelines

Tertiary Prevention

- treatment and rehabilitation of disease after it has been diagnosed so as to prevent progression and permanent disability (e.g. HbA1c, eye, and foot monitoring for diabetes)



Disease Prevention Strategies

- Primary:** before disease occurs (e.g. immunizations, seatbelt use, smoking cessation programs for lung cancer prevention)
- Secondary:** early detection of disease (e.g. mammography, routine Pap smears)
- Tertiary:** treatment and rehabilitation of existing disease (e.g. ACE inhibitor for HTN)

Within these three stages of prevention there can be both:

- Passive prevention:** measures that operate without the person's active involvement (e.g. airbags in cars)
- Active prevention:** measures that a person must do on their own (e.g. wearing a seatbelt)

Health Promotion Strategies

Table 3. Disease Prevention vs. Health Promotion Approach

Disease Prevention	Health Promotion
Health = absence of disease	Health = positive and multidimensional concept
Medical model (passive role)	Participatory model of health
Aimed mainly at high-risk groups in the population	Aimed at the population in its total environment
One-shot strategy, aimed at a specific pathology	Diverse and complementary strategies aimed at a network of issues/determinants
Directive and persuasive strategies enforced in target groups	Facilitating and enabling approaches by incentives offered to the population
Focused mostly on individuals and groups of subjects	Focused on a person's health status and environment
Led by professional groups from health disciplines	Led by non-professional organizations, civic groups, local, municipal, regional, and national governments

Source: Shah CP. Public Health and Preventive Medicine in Canada, 5th ed. Toronto: Elsevier, 2003

Healthy Public Policy

- characterized by an explicit concern for health and equity in all areas of policy and by an accountability for health impact
- main aim: to create a supportive environment to enable people to lead healthy lives, thereby making healthy choices easier for citizens
- government sectors must take into account health as an essential factor when formulating policy and should be accountable for the health consequences of their policy decisions
- methods
 - fiscal: imposing additional costs (e.g. taxes on tobacco and alcohol)
 - legislative: implementing legal deterrents (e.g. smoking bans, legal alcohol drinking age)
 - social: improving health beyond providing universally funded health care (e.g. providing affordable housing)

Source: International Conference on Health Promotion, Adelaide, South Australia (1998)

Behavior Change

- health education serves to
 - increase knowledge and skills
 - encourage positive behavior changes and discourage unhealthy choices
- health education is an important component of eliciting behavior change
- behavior is a result of three factors
 1. predisposing factors: knowledge, attitude, beliefs, values, intentions
 2. enabling factors: skills, supports
 3. reinforcing factors: health care professionals and the social context of family and community
- **Health Belief Model** (1975)
 - behaviors undertaken by individuals in order to remain healthy are a function of a set of interacting beliefs
 - beliefs include an individual's perception of his or her susceptibility to a disease, the severity of the disease, and the benefits and costs of health-related actions
 - beliefs are modified by socio-demographic and psychosocial variables
 - individuals must believe that the action will have positive consequences
 - individuals must be in a state of readiness
 - behavior can be stimulated by cues to action, which are specific events that can encourage preventive health decisions and actions (e.g. physician recommendation, public advertising)
- **Stages of Change Model**
 - provides a framework in which the Health Belief Model is applied to facilitating behavior change (e.g. quitting smoking)



Jakarta Declaration on Health Promotion into the 21st Century (WHO 1997)

- Reiterated the commitment to health promotion
- First of the health promotion conferences to involve the private sector
- Formally cited poverty as the greatest threat to health
- Priorities for health promotion:
 - Promote social responsibility for health
 - Increase investments for health development
 - Consolidate and expand partnerships for health
 - Increase community capacity and empower the individual
 - Secure an infrastructure for health promotion

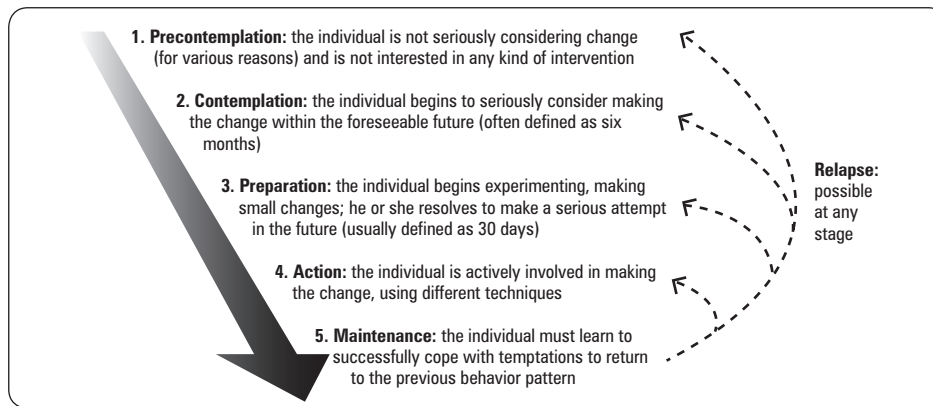


Figure 2. Stages of change model

Source: Prochaska JO, DiClemente CC, Norcross JC. In Search of how people change. Applications to addictive behaviors. *Am Psychol* 1992;47:1102-1114

Risk Reduction Strategies

- **risk reduction:** lower the risk to health without eliminating it (e.g. avoiding sun to lower risk of skin cancer)
- **harm reduction:** tolerance of some degree of risk behavior, while aiming to minimize the adverse outcomes associated with these behaviors (e.g. needle exchange programs)



Example of Harm Reduction Strategy Summary of Findings from the Evaluation of a Pilot Medically Supervised Safer Injecting Facility

CMAJ 2006;175:1399-1404

Background: This study discusses the outcomes among a population of illicit injection drug users (IDUs) after initiating a supervised safe injecting facility in Vancouver, September 2003. Legal exemption by the Canadian government was granted such that an evaluation of its results be conducted over a 3 yr period.

Study Population: IDUs of the Vancouver area were allowed to inject previously obtained illicit drugs under the supervision of nurses and physicians. IDUs were offered addiction counseling and supports for appropriate community resources. A random sample of 670 IDUs was recruited and monitored from Dec 2003-July 2004.

Results: Characteristics of IDUs who used the safe injecting facility included age <30 yr, history of public drug use, homelessness, daily heroin and/or cocaine injection, and recent history of overdose. Mean measures of public order problems were taken 6 wk before and 12 wk after initiation of the safer injection facility. It was found that the mean number of IDUs injecting daily in public, along with the mean number of publically discarded syringes were reduced by approximately half.

Conclusions: Overall it has been found that the safer injecting facility in Vancouver has been successful in attracting IDUs at increased risk of HIV, overdose, and public injection of substances. This has resulted in lower incidences of public drug use, publicly discarded syringes and sharing of needles. Other studies associated with this one have demonstrated that there has been no increase in the drug dealing, drug related crimes, or rates of new IDUs in the area surrounding the safer injecting facility.



Principles of Standardization

- When comparing an outcome (e.g. mortality) in two populations that differ in terms of characteristics known to influence that outcome (e.g. age), standardization is used to control for the effect of that factor
- **Standardization is either direct or indirect:**
 - **Indirect standardization:** expressed as standardized outcome ratio. For example a standardized mortality ratio (SMR) is calculated using age specific rates for a reference population as well as age structure and total cases for a sample/known population e.g. A SMR of 100 signifies that deaths are at the expected level, a SMR of 110 indicates a death rate 10% higher than expected
 - **Direct standardization:** expressed as a rate: using age specific rates in a known/sample population against a standard population

Measurements of Health and Disease in a Population

Life Expectancy

- the expected number of years that an individual will live based on standardized death rates for the population
- usually qualified by country, gender, and age

Crude Death Rate

- mortality rate from all causes of death per 1,000 in the population

Age Standardized Rate

- adjustment of the crude rate of a health-related event using a "standard" population
- standard population is one with a known number of persons in each age and sex group
- standardization prevents bias which could be made by comparing crude rates from two dissimilar populations (e.g. crude death rates over a number of decades are not comparable as the population age distribution has changed with time)

Standardized Mortality Rate

- the ratio of the observed (actual) number of deaths to the expected number of deaths for a group (e.g. age, race, gender, etc.)
- useful for comparing populations that are significantly different in some aspect (e.g. the causes of death in more and less developed countries)

Infant Mortality Rate (IMR)

- number of deaths among children under 1 yr of age reported during a given time period divided by the number of live births reported during the same time period and expressed per 1,000 live births per year

Maternal Mortality Rate (MMR)

- number of deaths of women during pregnancy and due to puerperal causes per 100,000 live births per year

Proportional Mortality Ratio (PMR)

- proportion of all deaths in a specified population over a given period of time attributable to a specific cause
 - each cause is expressed as a percentage of all deaths, with the sum of all causes adding to 100%

Potential Years of Life Lost (PYLL)

- calculated for a population using the difference between the actual age at death and a standard/expected age at death
- increased weighting of mortality at a younger age

Disability Adjusted Life Year (DALY)

- quantitative indicator of the burden of diseases that reflects the total amount of disability-free life years lost
- includes loss from premature mortality and loss due to a degree of disability over a specific period of time; these disabilities can be physical or mental

Quality Adjusted Life Year (QALY)

- a value from 0 to 1 assigned to a year of life based on perceived quality of life; a year in "perfect" health is considered equal to 1 QALY, the value of a year in ill health would be lowered based on the burden of disease
- it is possible to have "states worse than death" for example QALY <0 for extremely serious conditions

Epidemiology

**Population**

- a collection of individuals who share a common trait (most commonly applied to a geographic area but it could be another factor such as ethnic group)

Sample

- a selection of individuals from a population or set of observations
- types
 - random: all are equally likely to be selected
 - systematic: an algorithm is used to select a subset
 - stratified: separate representations of more than one subgroup
 - cluster: grouped in space/time to reduce costs
 - convenience: non-random inclusion, usually volunteers

Sample Size

- sample size contributes to the statistical precision of the observed estimate
- increasing the sample size decreases the probability of type I and type II errors

Bias

- non-random error leading to a deviation of inferences or results from the truth
- any trend in the collection, analysis, interpretation, publication, or review of data that can lead to conclusions that are systematically different from the truth
 - **lead-time:** time between early diagnosis with screening, and when diagnosis would have been made without screening
 - **lead-time bias:** over-estimation of survival when the estimate is made from the time of screening, instead of the later time when the disease would have been diagnosed without screening
 - **incidence-prevalence bias:** when prevalent cases include long-term survivors who have a better prognosis than some incident cases
 - **length-time bias:** overestimation of the survival time due to the sampling of prevalent as opposed to incident cases
 - ♦ selection of prevalent cases will favor the over-inclusion of longer-living cases rather than newly-diagnosed incident cases, some of whom may have short survival times
 - **sampling bias:** occurs with the selection of a sample that does not truly represent the population
 - ♦ sampling procedures should be chosen to prevent or minimize bias
 - **recall bias:** when individuals with a disease are more prone to recalling or believing they were exposed to a possible causal factor than those who are free of disease

**Incidence and Prevalence**

$$\text{Incidence} = \frac{\text{\# of new cases in a time interval}}{\text{total population at risk}}$$

(measures the rate of new infections)

$$\text{Prevalence} = \frac{\text{\# of existing cases at a point in time}}{\text{total population at risk}}$$

(measures the frequency of disease at a point in time)

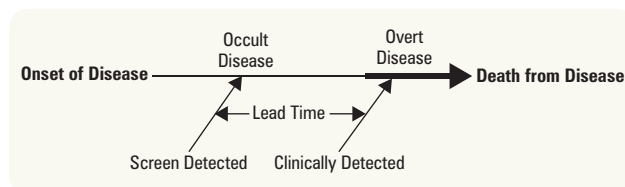


Figure 3. Lead time bias

Confounder

- a variable that is related to both the exposure and outcome but is not measured or is not distributed equally between groups
- distorts the apparent effect of an exposure or risk because it may not be possible to separate/control for the contribution of a single causal factor to an effect (e.g. late maternal age could be a confounder in an investigation of birth order >4 and risk of developing Trisomy 21)

Prevalence

- total number of cases in a population over a defined period of time
- two forms of prevalence
 - point prevalence:** attempts to measure the frequency of all disease at one specific point in time, therefore knowledge of the time of onset of disease is not required
 - period prevalence:** measure constructed from prevalence at a point in time, plus new cases and recurrences over a defined period of time
- depends on **incidence rate** and disease duration from onset to termination (cure or death)
- favors the inclusion of chronic over acute cases and may be used to present a biased picture of the disease
- prevalence studies are cross-sectional and cannot be used for causal inferences
- prevalence figures are useful for determining the extent of a disease and can aid in the rational planning of facilities and services

Sensitivity

- proportion of people with disease who are correctly identified by having a positive test

Specificity

- proportion of people without disease who are correctly identified by having a negative test

Pre-Test Probability

- an estimate of the likelihood a particular patient has a given disease based on known factors

Post-Test Probability

- a revision of the probability of disease after a patient has been interviewed and examined
- calculation process can be more explicit using results from epidemiologic studies, knowledge of the accuracy of tests, and Bayes' theorem
- the post-test probability from clinical examination is the basis of consideration when ordering diagnostic tests or imaging studies
 - after each iteration the resultant post-test probability becomes the pre-test probability when considering new investigations

Disease (e.g. lung CA)				
		Present	Absent	Total
Exposure (e.g. smoking)	Present	A	B	A + B
	Absent	C	D	C + D
	Total	A + C	B + D	A + B + C + D

Case-Control Study

$$\text{odds ratio (OR)} = \frac{A}{B} \div \frac{C}{D} = \frac{A \times D}{B \times C}$$

Cohort Study

$$\frac{A}{A+B} = \text{incidence rate of disease in smokers} \quad \frac{C}{C+D} = \text{incidence rate of disease in non-smokers}$$

$$\text{relative risk (RR)} = \frac{A}{A+B} \div \frac{C}{C+D} \quad \text{attributable risk (AR)} = \frac{A}{A+B} - \frac{C}{C+D}$$

Figure 5. Results tabulation by study design

Numbers from Collins J, Lieberman D, Durbin T, et al. Accuracy of screening for fecal occult blood on a single stool sample obtained by digital rectal examination: a comparison with recommended sampling practice. *Ann Intern Med* 2005;142:81-85



SPIN: use a **SP**ecific test to rule **IN** a hypothesis. Note that specific tests have very few false positives. If you get a positive test, it is likely a true positive

SNOUT: use a **SEN**sitive test to rule **OUT** a hypothesis. Note that sensitive tests have very few false negatives. If you get a negative test, it is likely a true negative

Figure 4. Understanding sensitivity and specificity

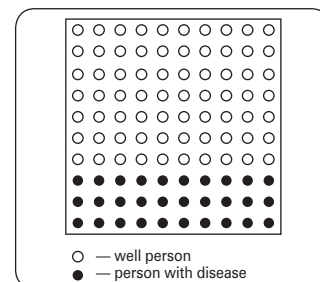


Figure 4a. Hypothetical population

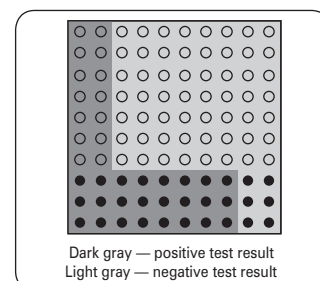


Figure 4b. Results of diagnostic test on hypothetical population

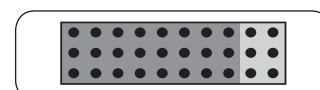


Figure 4c. Sensitivity of test (e.g. 24/30 = 80% sensitive)

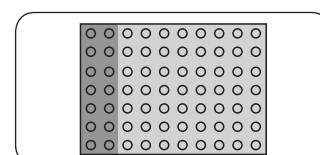


Figure 4d. Specificity of test (e.g. 56/70 = 80% specific)

Source: Loong TW. Understanding sensitivity and specificity with the right side of the brain. *BMJ* 2003;327:716-719



Sensitivity and specificity are characteristics of the test

LR depends on the test characteristics, not the prevalence

PPV and NPV depend on the prevalence of the disease in the population

TP = True positive TN = True negative FP = False positive FN = False negative

		Disease	
		Present	Negative
Test Result	Positive	TP	FP
	Negative	FN	TN

Sensitivity = $TP/(TP+FN)$

Specificity = $TN/(TN+FP)$

Likelihood Ratio (LR)

- Likelihood that a given test result would be expected in a patient with disease compared with the likelihood that the same result would be expected in a patient without disease
- LR+ indicates how much the probability of disease increases if the test is positive
- LR- indicates how much the probability of disease decreases if the test is negative

$$LR+ = \frac{\text{Sensitivity}}{1 - \text{Specificity}} = \frac{TP/(TP+FN)}{FP/(TN+FP)} \quad LR- = \frac{1 - \text{Sensitivity}}{\text{Specificity}} = \frac{FN/(TP+FN)}{TN/(TN+FP)}$$

Positive Predictive Value (PPV)

- Proportion of people with a positive test who have the disease

$$PPV = \frac{TP}{TP + FP}$$

Negative Predictive Value (NPV)

- Proportion of people with a negative test who are free of disease

$$NPV = \frac{TN}{TN + FN}$$

Pre-Test Probability

- An estimate of the likelihood a particular patient has a given disease based on known factors such as clinical assessment prevalence of disease in the population. Together with a post-test probability this can be used to interpret a diagnostic test or a series of tests

$$\text{Pre-Test Odds} = \frac{\text{Prevalence}}{1 - \text{Prevalence}}$$

Post-Test Probability

- A revision of the probability of disease after a patient has been examined or a diagnostic test has been conducted
- Calculation process can be more explicit using results from epidemiologic studies, knowledge of the accuracy of tests and Bayes' theorem
- The post-test probability from clinical examination is the basis of consideration when ordering diagnostic tests or imaging studies
- After each iteration the resultant post-test probability becomes the pre-test probability when considering new investigations

$$\text{Post-Test Odds} = \text{Pre-Test Odds} \times LR$$

$$\text{Post-Test Probability} = \frac{\text{Post-test odds}}{\text{Post-test odds} + 1}$$

Intention-To-Treat (ITT)

- A strategy for analyzing data in which all participants are included in the group to which they were assigned, whether or not they completed the requirements of that group
- This is to limit the bias introduced by issues of compliance and to simulate real world situations in which not all patients/providers adhere to the study allocation protocol

Relative Risk (RR)

- Ratio of the incidence of a health outcome among the exposed population to the incidence of the health outcome in the non-exposed population

$$\text{Relative Risk (RR)} = \frac{PPV}{1 - NPV} = \frac{TP/(TP+FP)}{FN/(TN+FN)}$$

Attributable Risk (AR)

- Rate of a health outcome attributable to a hypothetical risk factor for that outcome
- [incidence in exposed population] - [incidence in non-exposed]
- Attributable risk assumes causation

$$\text{Attributable Risk} = PPV - (1 - NPV) = [TP/(TP+FP)] - [FN/(TN+FN)]$$

		Advanced Neoplasia	
		Present	Negative
Test Result	Positive	68	147
	Negative	216	2234
Total		284	2381

Sensitivity = $68/284 = 23.9\%$

Specificity = $2234/2381 = 93.8\%$

$$LR+ = \frac{0.239}{1 - 0.938} = 3.85$$

$$LR- = \frac{1 - 0.239}{0.938} = 0.81$$

$$PPV = \frac{68}{(68 + 147)} = 31.6\%$$

$$NPV = \frac{2234}{(2234 + 216)} = 91.2\%$$



Odds Ratio (OR)

- Statistic based on the ratio of two odds, used for estimating the strength of association of a factor
- Statistically significant OR above 1.0 indicates an elevated risk among those exposed beyond chance (N.B. Clinical significance set using additional criteria)
- Statistically significant OR lower than 1.0 indicates that the exposure may be protective beyond chance

Figure 6. Clinical epidemiology definitions and practical example using FOBT testing in advanced colon cancer

Effectiveness of Interventions

DEFINITIONS

Relative Risk Reduction (RRR)

- proportional reduction in rates of adverse outcomes between experimental and control participants in a trial

Absolute Risk Reduction (ARR)

- absolute arithmetic difference in rates of adverse outcomes between experimental and control participants in a trial
- it is hypothesized that events will occur more often in control group than in experimental group where the intervention is protective (e.g. a vaccine)

Absolute Risk Increase (ARI)

- absolute arithmetic difference in rates of adverse outcomes between control and experimental participants in a trial
- it is hypothesized that events will occur more often in experimental group than in control group when the intervention is harmful (e.g. alcohol excess)

Number Needed to Treat (NNT)

- number of patients who need to be treated to achieve one additional favorable outcome
- only one of many factors that should be taken into account in clinical or health system decision making (e.g. must take into account cost, ease, feasibility of intervention)
 - a condition with death as a potential outcome can have a higher NNT (and be acceptable), as compared to an intervention to prevent an outcome with low morbidity, in which a low NNT would be necessary

Number Needed to Harm (NNH)

- number of patients who, if they received the experimental treatment, would lead to one additional patient being harmed, compared with patients who received the control treatment

Adherence (Formerly Compliance)

- degree to which a patient follows a treatment plan

Effectiveness, Efficacy, Efficiency

- three measurements indicating the relative value (beneficial effects vs. harmful effects) of an intervention
 - efficacy:** the extent to which a specific intervention produces a beneficial result under ideal conditions
 - ideally, based on the results of a randomized control trial (the theoretical impact)
 - effectiveness:** measures the benefit of an intervention under usual conditions of clinical care
 - considers both the efficacy of an intervention and its actual impact on the real world, taking into account access to the intervention, whether it is offered to those who can benefit from it, its proper administration, acceptance of intervention, and degree of adherence to intervention
 - efficiency:** a measure of economy of an intervention with known effectiveness
 - considers the optimal use of resources (e.g. money, time, personnel, equipment, etc.)



Equations to Assess Effectiveness

CER = control group event rate
 EER = experimental group event rate
 $RRR = (CER - EER) / CER$
 $ARR = CER - EER$
 $ARI = EER - CER$
 $NNT = 1 / ARR$
 $NNH = 1 / ARI$



Beware

Do not be swayed by a large RRR, as it may appear to be large if event rate is small to begin with. In these cases ARR is more important (e.g. a drug which lowers an event which occurs in 0.1% of a population to 0.05% can boast a RRR of 50%, and yet the ARR is only 0.05%, which is not nearly as impressive)

Types of Study Design



Qualitative vs. Quantitative

Table 4. Qualitative vs. Quantitative Study Designs

Qualitative	Quantitative
Generates hypothesis (Why? What does it mean?)	Tests hypothesis (What? How much/many?)
Inductive (specific to general): "bottom up" Observation → pattern → tentative hypothesis → theory	Deductive (general to specific): "top down" Theory → hypothesis → observation → confirmation
Sampling approach to obtain representative coverage of ideas or concepts	Sampling approach to obtain representative coverage of people in the population
Narrative: rich, contextual, and detailed information from a small number of participants	Numeric: frequency, severity, and associations from a large number of participants

Source: Adapted from <http://phprimer.afmc.ca>

Quantitative Research Methods

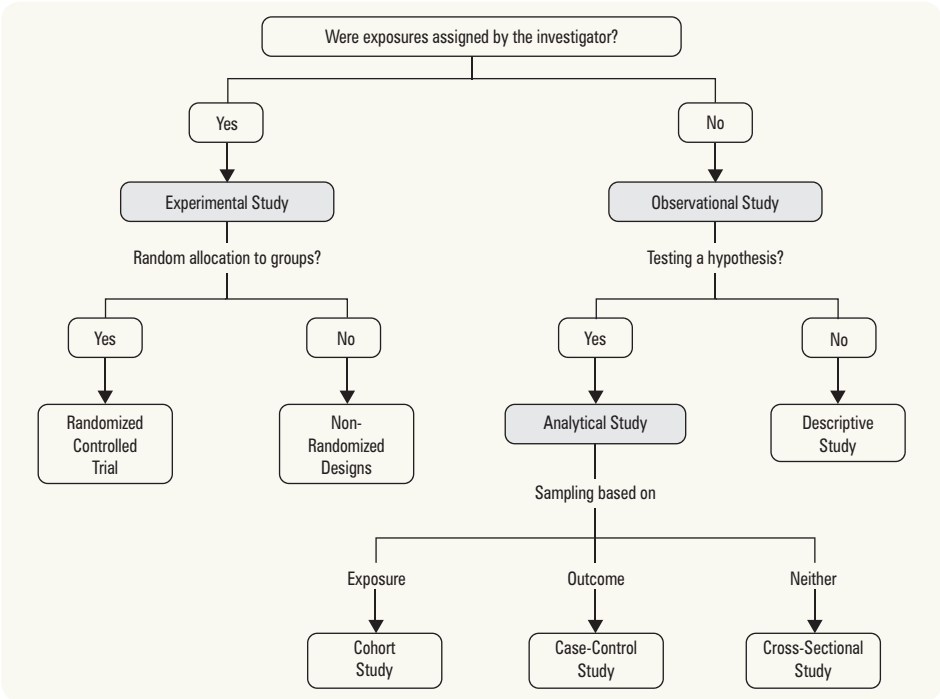


Figure 7. Quantitative study designs Source: Adapted from <http://phprimer.afmc.ca>

Observational Study Designs

- observational studies involve neither the manipulation of the exposure of interest nor randomization of the study subjects
- there are two main subtypes of observational studies: descriptive and analytic studies

Descriptive Studies

- describe the events and rates of disease with respect to person, place and time and to estimate disease frequency and time trends
- first sets of studies and are used to generate an etiologic hypothesis, not test a hypothesis

Analytic Studies

- observational studies used to test a specific hypothesis
- includes ecological studies, cohort studies, case-control studies, and cross-sectional studies

Table 5. Observational Study Designs

Type of Study	Ecological	Cross-Sectional	Case-Control (Figure 8)	Cohort (Figure 9)
Definition	Units of analysis are populations or groups of people, rather than individuals	Assessment of individuals with respect to presence and absence of exposures and diseases at the same point in time	Samples a group of people who already have a particular outcome (cases) and compares them to a similar sample group without that outcome (controls)	Subjects are sampled and, as a group, classified on the basis of presence or absence of exposure to a particular risk factor
Subjects	Population (e.g. geographic areas)	Population (sample)	Two study sample populations are compared: cases and controls	One or more cohorts Cohort: group of people with common characteristics (e.g. year of birth) Divided into measured exposed vs. non-exposed groups



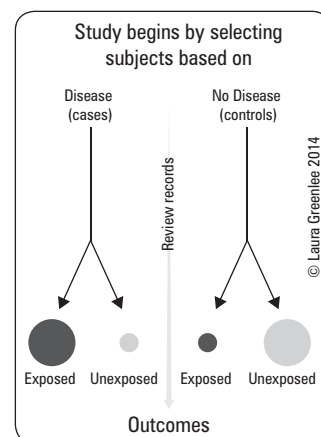
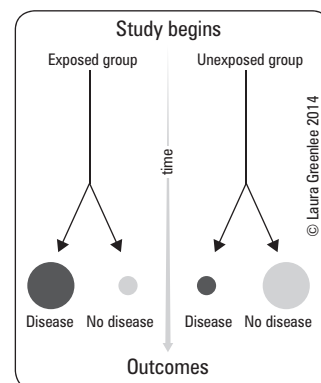
Formulating a Research Question
PICO
Patient Characteristics
Intervention of Interest
Comparison Group or Control Group
Outcome that you are trying to prevent or achieve

Table 5. Observational Study Designs (continued)

Type of Study	Ecological	Cross-Sectional	Case-Control (Figure 8)	Cohort (Figure 9)
Methods	Descriptions of the average exposure or risk of disease for a population	Collect information from each person at one particular time Tabulate the numbers in groups (e.g. by presence or absence of disease/factor of interest) Make 2 x 2 table and compare groups Estimate prevalence	Ask cases and controls about exposures Select all the cases of a specific disease during a specific time frame Representative of spectrum of clinical disease Select control(s) Represent the general population To minimize risk of bias, may select more than one control group and/or match controls to cases (e.g. age, gender) Association can be concluded between the risk factor and the disease (odds ratio) Estimate incidence	Subjects are followed for a specific period of time to determine development of disease in each exposure group Prospective: measuring from the exposure to the future outcomes – looking forward Retrospective: measuring from outcomes to possible risk factors or protective factors – looking back Collect information on factors from all persons at the beginning of the study Tabulate the number of persons who develop the disease or other measured outcomes of morbidity Provides estimates of incidence, relative risk, attributable risk
Advantages	Quick, easy to do Uses readily available data Generates hypothesis	Determines association between variables Quick and uses limited resources Surveys with validated questions allows comparison between studies	Used when disease in population is rare (less than 10% of population) due to increased efficiency Less costly and time consuming	Shows an association between a factor and an outcome/several outcomes Stronger evidence for causation
Disadvantages	Poor generalizability to individual level (not direct assessment of causal relationship) Ecological fallacy: an incorrect inference about individuals in the population	Does not allow for assessment of temporal relationship or causation between variables Recall bias (see PH7)	Recall bias (see PH7) Confounding Selection bias for controls Only one outcome can be measured	By itself, cannot establish causation Confounding factors are common as the cohort self-selects the exposure, or unknown/unmeasured factors are associated with the measured exposure Cost and duration of time needed to follow cohort
Examples	A study looking at the association between smoking rates and lung cancer rates in different countries at the population level without individual data on both factors	A study that examines the distribution of BMI by age in New York at a particular point in time	A famous case control study is by Sir Richard Doll who demonstrated the link between tobacco smoking exposure and lung cancer cases at the individual level	A famous cohort study is the Framingham Heart Study, which assessed the long-term cardiovascular risks of diet, exercise, medications such as ASA, etc.



An example of an ecological fallacy would be concluding that red wine drinking leads to lower risk of death from CVS disease after an ecological study shows that France has a higher rate of red wine consumption and a lower rate of death from CVS causes

**Figure 8. Case-control study**Adapted from <http://phprimer.afmc.ca>**Figure 9. Cohort study**Adapted from <http://phprimer.afmc.ca>

Experimental Study Designs

- not discussed here are non-randomized control trials (e.g. allocation by clinic or other non-random basis – performed when randomization is not possible) and clinical trials (test treatments or laboratory tests in human subjects)

RANDOMIZED CONTROLLED TRIAL (RCT)

Definition

- subjects are assigned by random allocation to two or more groups, one of which is the control group, the other group(s) receive(s) an experimental intervention

Subjects

- individuals are separated into groups by a random process to ensure as much as possible equal distribution of known and unknown factors except for the experimental exposure (e.g. the treatment)

Methods

- random allocation of individuals into two or more treatment groups through a centralized concealed process
- method of assessment to reduce bias
 - **single-blind:** subject does not know group assignment (intervention or placebo)
 - **double-blind:** subject and observer both unaware of group assignment
 - **triple-blind:** subject, observer, and analyst unaware of group assignment (rarely done)
- one group receives placebo or standard therapy
- one or more groups receive(s) the intervention(s) under study
- the outcome is measured and the groups are compared
- all other conditions are kept the same between groups

Advantages

- “gold standard” of studies, upon which the practice of EBM is founded
- provides the strongest evidence for effectiveness of intervention
- with sufficient sample size and appropriate randomization, threats to validity are minimized
- allows prospective assessment of the effects of intervention while minimizing bias

Disadvantages

- some exposures are not amenable to randomization (e.g. cannot randomize subjects to poverty/wealth or to harmful exposures such as smoking) due to ethical or feasibility concerns
- difficult to randomly allocate groups (e.g. communities, neighbourhoods)
- difficult to study rare events, since RCTs would require extremely large sample sizes
- costly



Refer to the Cochrane Collaboration for a glossary of terms. <http://www.cochrane.org/glossary>



An example of an RCT is the SPARCL trial, which demonstrated intense lipid-lowering with atorvastatin reduces the risk of cerebro- and cardiovascular events in patients with and without carotid stenosis when compared to placebo

Methods of Analysis

Distributions

- distribution describes the probability of events
- normal (Gaussian) or non-normal (skewed, bimodal, etc.)
- characteristics of the normal distribution
 - mean = median = mode
 - 67% of observations fall within one standard deviation of the mean
 - 95% of observations fall within two standard deviations of the mean
- measures of central tendency
 - **mean:** sum of all observations divided by total number of variables
 - **median:** value at the 50th percentile, this is a better reflection of the central tendency for a skewed distribution
 - **mode:** most frequently observed value in a series
- measures of dispersion
 - **range:** the largest value minus the smallest value
 - **variance:** a measure of the spread of data
 - **standard deviation:** the average distance of data points from the mean (the positive square root of variance)
- given the mean and standard deviation of a normal or binomial distribution curve, a description of the entire distribution of data is obtained

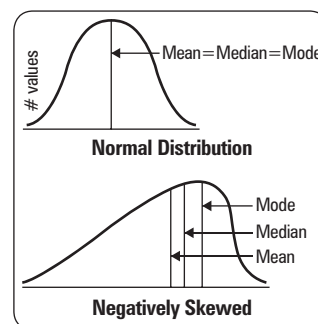


Figure 10. Distribution curves



Example Calculation

Data set: 17, 14, 17, 10, 7
 Mean = $(17 + 14 + 17 + 10 + 7) \div 5 = 13$
 Median (write the list in order, median is the number in the middle)
 = 7, 10, 14, 17, 17 = 14
 Mode (number repeated more often)
 = 17
 Range = $17 - 7 = 10$
 Variance = $[(17 - 13)^2 + (14 - 13)^2 + (17 - 13)^2 + (10 - 13)^2 + (7 - 13)^2] \div 5 = 15.6$
 Standard Deviation = 3.95
 $\sqrt{\text{variance}} = \sqrt{15.6} = 3.95$



Type I (α) Error

“There Is An Effect” where in reality there is none

Data Analysis

Statistical Hypotheses

- **null (H_0)**
 - no relationship exists between the two stated variables (i.e. no association between the hypothesized exposure and the outcome)
- **alternative (H_1)**
 - a relationship does exist between the two stated variables

Type I Error (α Error)

- the null hypothesis is falsely rejected (i.e. concluding an intervention X is effective when it is not, or declaring an observed difference to be real rather than by chance)
- the probability of this error is denoted by the p-value
- studies tend to be designed to minimize this type of error, since a type I error can have larger clinical significance than a type II error

Type II Error (β Error)

- the null hypothesis is falsely accepted (i.e. stating intervention X is not effective when it is, or declaring an observed difference/effect to have occurred by chance when it is present)

- higher level of error is acceptable for most studies
- can also be used to calculate statistical power

Power

- probability of correctly rejecting a null hypothesis when it is in fact false (i.e. the probability of finding a specified difference to be statistically significant at a given p-value)
- power increases with an increase in sample size
- power = $1 - \beta$, and is therefore equal to the probability of a true positive result

Statistical Significance

- the probability that the statistical association found between the variables is due to random chance alone (i.e. that there is no association)
- the preset probability is set sufficiently low that one would act on the result; frequently $p=0.05$
- when statistical tests result in a probability less than the preset limit, the results are said to be statistically significant (i.e. $p<0.05$)

Clinical Significance

- measure of clinical usefulness (e.g. 1 mmHg BP reduction may be statistically significant, but may not be clinically significant)
- depends on factors such as cost, availability, patient compliance, and side effects in addition to statistical significance

Trend

- an observed directional relationship that does not meet criteria for statistical significance and thus should be interpreted with caution

Confidence Interval (CI)

- provides a range of values within which the true population result (e.g. the mean) lies
- frequently reported as 95% CI (i.e. one can be 95% certain that the true value is within this data range)
- bounded by the upper and lower confidence limits



A wider confidence interval implies more variance than a tighter confidence interval

Data

- information collected from a sample of a population
- there are 2 overall classes of data listed with examples
 - **discrete**
 - ♦ categorical (e.g. gender, marital status)
 - ♦ ordinal (e.g. low, medium, high)
 - **continuous** (e.g. serum cholesterol, hemoglobin, age)

Accuracy

- how closely a measurement approaches the true value

Reliability

- how consistent a measurement is when performed by different observers under the same conditions or by the same observer under different conditions

Validity

- extent to which a measurement approaches what it is designed to measure
- determined by the accuracy and reliability of a test

Internal Validity

- degree to which the findings of the sample truly represent the findings in the study population
- dependent on the precision and accuracy

External Validity

- degree to which the results of the study can be generalized to other situations or populations

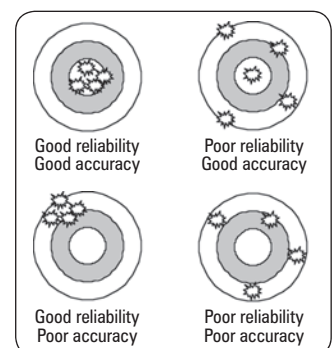


Figure 11. Accuracy vs. reliability

Common Statistical Tests

Table 6. Statistical Tests

	Z-Test (known as T-Test for samples <30)	Analysis of Variance (ANOVA)	Chi-Squared Test (χ^2)	Linear Regression	Logistic Regression
What are you trying to show?	Compare the mean values of an outcome variable between two groups (e.g. difference in average BP between men and women)	Compare the mean values of an outcome variable between two or more groups (e.g. difference in average BP between persons in three towns)	Test the correspondence between a theoretical frequency distribution and an observed frequency distribution (e.g. if one sample of 20 patients is 30% hypertensive and another comparison group of 25 patients is 60% hypertensive, a chi-squared test determines if this variation is more than expected due to chance alone)	Looks at associations between two or more continuous variables (e.g. age and blood pressure)	Shows how a change in one explanatory variable affects the status (e.g. ill vs. non-ill) of the outcome variable
What kind of data do you have in your study?	Data on two groups	Mean of groups (one or more) Overall mean of an entire sample	Data on two or more populations and two or more outcome measures	Data on at least one population	Data on at least one population
What kind of variables do you measure?					
Dependent Variable	Continuous data	Continuous data	Categorical (2 or more)	Continuous	Categorical (discrete outcomes usually dichotomous)
Independent Variable	Categorical (2 only)	Categorical (2 or more)	Categorical (2 or more)	Continuous	Continuous/categorical
Assumptions		"Normal" distribution	None	Dependent variable has "normal" distribution Linear relationship between variables	None

Causation

Criteria for Causation (Sir Bradford Hill)

1. **strength of association:** the frequency with which the factor is found in the disease and the frequency with which it occurs in the absence of disease
2. **consistency:** is it the same outcome with different populations or study design?
3. **specificity:** is the association particular to your intervention and measured outcome?
4. **temporal relationship:** did the exposure occur before the onset of the disease?
5. **biological gradient:** finding a quantitative relationship between the factor and the frequency (e.g. dose response relationship)
6. **biological plausibility:** does the association/causation make biological sense?
7. **coherence:** can the relationship be explained/accounted for based on what we know about the laws of science, logic, etc.?
8. **experimental evidence:** experiment that investigates what happens when the suspected offending agent is removed (e.g. is there improvement?)
9. **analogy:** do other established associations provide a model for this type of the relationship?

Note: Not all criteria must be fulfilled to establish scientific causation, and the modern practice of EBM emphasizes 'experimental evidence' as superior to other criteria for experimental causation review. However many causation questions in health cannot be answered with experimental methods.

- visit <http://phprimer.afmc.ca> and refer to Table 5.4: Criteria for inferring a causal relationship from the AFMC Primer on Population Health



Beware:

Correlation \neq Causation

e.g. There is evidence of a direct correlation between the amount of ice cream sold and the amount of deaths in swimming pools. Of course, ice cream does not cause drowning, rather, they both increase in the summer



Criteria for Causation

ACCESS PTB

Analogy
Consistency
Coherence
Experimental evidence
Strength of association
Specificity
Plausibility
Temporal relationship
Biological gradient



Assessing Evidence

- critical appraisal is the process of systematically examining research evidence to assess validity, results, and relevance before using it to inform a decision

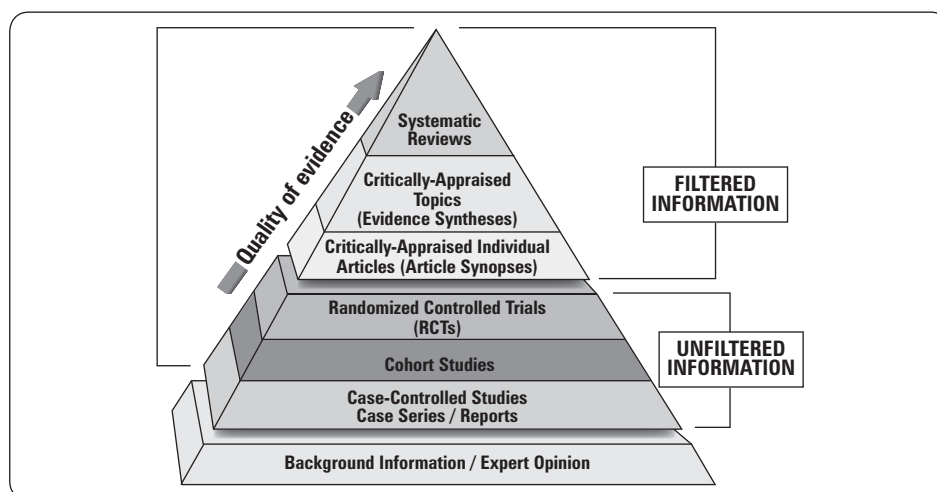


Figure 12. Pyramid of pre-appraised evidence

Produced by Glover J, Izzo D, Odato K, Wang L. Trustees of Dartmouth College & Yale University. All rights reserved. © Copyright 2006

A. Are the results of the study valid?

- see below for classifications of evidence that has already been assessed; see sidebar for assessing primary studies

B. What are the results?

- what was the impact of the treatment effect?
- how precise was the estimate of treatment effect?
- what were the confidence intervals and power of the study?

C. Will the results help me in caring for my patients?

- are the results clinically significant?
- can I apply the results to my patient population?
- were all clinically important outcomes considered?
- are the likely treatment benefits worth the potential harm and costs?



Validity

- The degree to which the outcome observed in the study can be attributed to the intervention

5 Questions About the Validity of Primary Studies

- Were the patients randomized?
- Was the follow-up of patients sufficiently long and complete?
- Were all patients analyzed in the groups to which they were randomized?
- Were the groups treated equally except for the intervention?
- Were the patients and clinicians kept blind to treatment?

Other Questions to Consider

- Were the groups similar (i.e. demographics, prognostic factors) at the start of the trial?
- Were the appropriate and valid exposure and outcome measures obtained?
- Were outcome assessors aware of group allocation?
- Was contamination reported?
- Were ethical issues continuously upheld?



Analysis

Per-Protocol Analysis (PP)

Strategy of analysis in which only patients who complete the entire study are counted towards the results

Intention-to-Treat Analysis (ITT)

When groups are analyzed exactly as they existed upon randomization (i.e. using data from all patients, including those who did not complete the study)

Levels of Evidence: Classifications Cited in Guidelines/Consensus Statements

Level I evidence: based on RCTs (or meta-analysis of RCTs) big enough to have low risk of incorporating FP or FN results

Level II evidence: based on RCTs too small to provide Level I evidence; may show positive trends that are non-significant, or have a high risk of FN results

Level III evidence: based on non-randomized, controlled or cohort studies; case series; case-controlled; or cross-sectional studies

Level IV evidence: based on opinion of respected authorities or expert committees, as published consensus conferences/guidelines

Level V evidence: opinions of the individuals who have written/reviewed the guidelines (i.e. Level IV evidence), based on experience/knowledge of literature/peer discussion

Notes: These 5 levels of evidence are not direct evaluations of evidence quality or credibility; they reflect the nature of the evidence. While RCTs tend to be most credible (with <III), level III evidence gains credibility when multiple studies from different locations and/or time periods report consistent findings. Level IV and V evidence reflects decision-making that is necessary but in the absence of published evidence.

Figure 13. Levels of evidence classifications

Note: this is only one method of classifying evidence. Various systems exist, but operate within the same premise that certain types of evidence carry more weight than others

META-ANALYSIS

Definition

- a form of statistical analysis that combines the results of independent studies addressing a common research hypothesis, as identified through systematic review, into one large study

Subjects

- combination of all the subjects used in original studies

Methods

- selection of relevant studies from the published literature which meet quality criteria
- statistical models used to combine the results of each independent study
- provides a summary statistic of overall results as well as graphic representation of included studies

Advantages

- attempts to overcome the problem of reduced power due to small sample sizes of individual studies
- ability to control for inter-study variation

Disadvantages

- sources of bias may not be controlled for
- reliance on published studies may increase the potential conclusion of an effect as it can be difficult to publish studies that show no significant results (publication bias)
- the decision to include/reject a particular study is subjective



An example of a meta-analysis is one that includes the full set of reported studies based on compiling and analyzing data from eligible RCTs, which compare the effects of ACEI, CCBs, and other antihypertensive agents on mortality and major cardiovascular events

Health Services Research



Continuous Quality Improvement

Quality Improvement

- method of evaluating and improving processes; focusing more on systems and systematic biases, which are thought to be the cause of variation in quality, as opposed to individuals
- taking measures to increase efficiency of action with the purpose of achieving optimal quality

Quality Assurance

- management system to assure the quality of health care provided by workers and received by patients
- constantly aims to improve standards and the frequency of attaining those standards
- **five-stage process of quality assurance**
 1. establishment of functional goals
 2. implementation of procedures to achieve those goals
 3. regular assessment of performance relative to the goals
 4. proposal of solutions to close the gap between performance and goals
 5. documentation and reporting of this assessment activity

Quality Control

- method of maintaining standards by reviewing the quality of all factors involved in the process

Continuous Quality Improvement

- management approach to improve and maintain quality via continuous assessment of potential defects, followed by action to improve process, avoid decrease in quality or correcting process in early stages
- continuous feed-forward process

Quality Management

- encompasses quality assurance, quality control, and quality improvement to achieve consistent quality

Total Quality Management

- management philosophy for improving quality while controlling costs
- focusing on the system rather than the individual, to ensure decisions are made to support quality and remove barriers to quality inherent in bureaucratic, hierarchical systems

Audit

- process of systematic examination of a quality system carried out by internal or external quality auditors
- to determine whether quality processes and results comply with goals, and whether processes have been implemented effectively

Systems Analyses Tools

1. **5 Whys:** brainstorming to simplify the process of change; continue asking 'why' until the root of the problem is discovered
2. **Ishikawa Diagrams (i.e. Fishbone Diagrams):** identify generic categories of problems that have an overall contribution on the effect

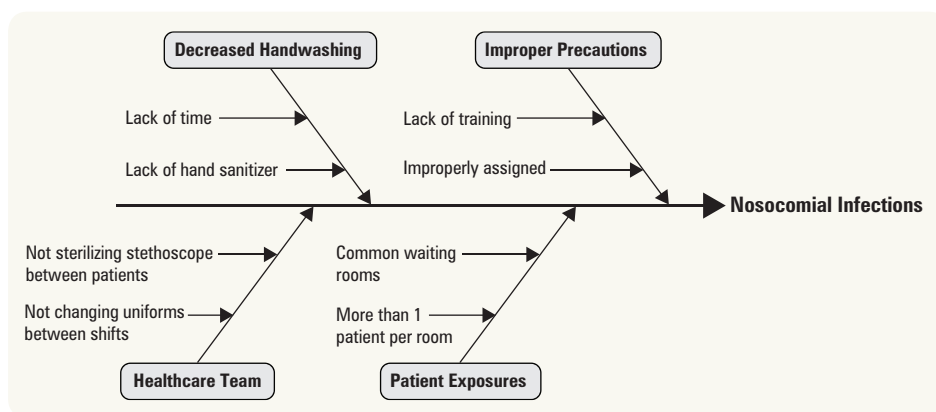


Figure 14. Ishikawa diagram

3. **Defect check sheets:** consider all defects and tally up the number of times the defect occurs

4. **Pareto Chart:** x vs. y chart; x-axis = defect categories, y-axis = frequency; plot cumulative frequency on the right y-axis

- purpose is to highlight most important among large set of factors contributing to defects/poor quality

Precede-Proceed Model

- tool for designing, implementing, and evaluating health interventions/programs

Table 7. Precede-Proceed Model

PRECEDE Phase	PROCEED Phase
Phase 1 – Identify the ultimate desired result	Phase 5 – Implementation (design and conduct the intervention)
Phase 2 – Identify and set priorities among health issues and their behavioural and environmental determinants	Phase 6 – Process Evaluation (determine if the program is implemented as planned)
Phase 3 – Identify the predisposing, enabling, and reinforcing factors that affect the behaviors and environmental determinants	Phase 7 – Impact Evaluation (measure intermediate objectives – predisposing, enabling, and reinforcing factors)
Phase 4 – Identify the administrative and policy factors that influence what can be implemented	Phase 8 – Outcome Evaluation (measure desired result)

Cost Analysis

Cost-Benefit Analysis (CBA)

- a process of, either explicitly or implicitly, weighing the total expected costs against the total expected benefits of one or more actions in order to choose the best or most profitable option
- all costs are adjusted for the time value of money so that costs that may change over time are expressed on a common basis in terms of their present value

Cost Effectiveness Analysis (CEA)

- a comparison of the relative expenditure (costs) and outcomes (effects) of two or more courses of action
- cost effectiveness analysis is often used where a full cost benefit analysis is inappropriate
- a CEA is commonly expressed in terms of a ratio: the denominator is a gain in health from a measure (e.g. years of life, premature births averted, sight-years gained) and the numerator is the cost of the health gain
- the most commonly used outcome measure is quality-adjusted life years (QALY), see PH7

Outbreak of Infectious Diseases



Definitions

Outbreak

- occurrence of new cases clearly in excess of the baseline frequency of the disease in a defined community or population over a given period of time
- synonymous with epidemic, although generally considered to be an epidemic that is localized, has an acute onset, or is relatively short in duration

Epidemic

- any disease, infectious or chronic, occurring at a greater frequency than usually expected in a defined community or institutional population over a given time period (i.e. excessive rate of disease)

Endemic

- constant presence of disease or infectious agent in a given geographic area or population subgroup (i.e. usual rate of disease)

Pandemic

- epidemic over a wide area, crossing international boundaries, and affecting a large number of people

Attack Rate

- cumulative incidence of infection within a defined group observed during a specific period of time in an epidemic
- calculated by dividing the total number of people who develop clinical disease by the population at risk, usually expressed as a percentage

Secondary Attack Rate

- number of cases among contacts occurring within the incubation period following exposure to the primary case, in relation to the total exposed contacts
- infectiousness reflects the ease of disease transmission and is usually measured by the secondary attack rate

Pathogenicity Rate

- power of an organism to produce clinical disease in those that are affected

Virulence

- severity of the disease produced by the organism in a given host
- expressed as the ratio of the number of cases of severe and fatal infection to the total number of clinically affected

Case-Fatality Rate

- proportion of individuals contracting a disease who die as a result of that disease
- most frequently applied to a specific outbreak of acute disease in which all patients have been followed for an adequate period of time to include all attributable deaths
- must be clearly differentiated from the mortality rate

Mortality Rate/Crude Death Rate

- estimation of the portion of the population that dies during a specified period from all causes of death

All-Cause Mortality Rate by Age Group

- estimation of the portion of the population in a given age group that dies during a specified period from all causes of death for that age group

Morbidity Rate

- estimation of the portion of the population that suffers illness or ill health during a specified period

**Infection Control Precautions**
(see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID6)**Contact** (impetigo, chicken pox, warts)

- Wash hands
- Gloves
- Gown
- Wipe equipment after use

Airborne (TB)

- Contact precautions PLUS
- N95 mask (fit tested)
- Negative pressure room

Droplet (influenza, mumps, pneumonia)

- Contact precautions PLUS
- Goggles/face shield
- Surgical mask

Source: Public Health Ontario. http://www.publichealthontario.ca/en/eRepository/IPAC_Clinical_Office_Practice_2013.pdf
<http://www.oahpp.ca/resources/documents/pidac/Routine%20Practices%20and%20Additional%20Precautions.pdf>

Steps to Control an Outbreak

1. Define the Problem

- is it an outbreak?

2. Appraise Existing Data and Institute a Surveillance System

- **case definition:** formulated from the most common symptoms or signs; definition includes the likely date of onset of illness of the first case (e.g. any person with onset of fever higher than 101.3°F and cough within past 28 d)
- **active surveillance:** identify those who may have been exposed to the infectious agent and who fit the case definition through active efforts, including:
 - contacting emergency rooms, physicians' offices, local schools
 - obtaining records from health units, such as mortality or laboratory records

3. Formulate Hypotheses and Implement Initial Control Measures

- track outbreak evolution to develop hypotheses about potential source and populations at risk
- case management depends on symptoms, suspected agent, population at risk, and location

**Active Surveillance**

Outreach such as visits or phone calls by the public health/surveillance authority to detect unreported cases (e.g. an infection control nurse goes to the ward and reviews temperature charts to see if any patient has a nosocomial infection)

Passive Surveillance

A surveillance system where the public health/surveillance authority depends on others to submit standardized forms or other means of reporting cases (e.g. ward staff notify infection control when new cases of nosocomial infections are discovered)

- population management requires public health services in the community and infection control teams in hospitals to disseminate information about
 - risk reduction
 - personal preventative measures (e.g. post-exposure prophylaxis)
 - decreasing risk of propagation (e.g. quarantine)

4. Test the Hypothesis through Analysis of Surveillance Data or Special Studies

- analyze outbreak surveillance data
- generate epidemic curves
 - usually a frequency histogram, with the number of cases plotted on the vertical axis and dates or times of onset along the horizontal axis
 - curve can indicate whether the epidemic (outbreak) has a common source or whether it is propagated
 - **point source epidemic:** exposure is brief and essentially simultaneous
 - **extended source epidemic:** exposure lasts for a period of days to weeks and may be continuous (no irregular peaks) or intermittent (irregularly spaced peaks)
 - **propagated epidemic:** begins with only a few exposed persons but is maintained by person-to-person transmission (e.g. measles/influenza); epidemic curve shows a series of peaks
- use epidemic curves, cross-sectional studies, and/or case-control studies to evaluate hypotheses about cause of outbreak

5. Draw Conclusions and Re-Adjust Hypothesis and Control Measures

- establish cause of outbreak with further epidemiologic investigation and revise initial control measures accordingly

6. Plan for Long-Term Prevention and Control

- implement prevention measures to avoid similar future incidents
 - strengthen resistance of hosts (e.g. immunization)
 - interrupt modes of transmission in environment (e.g. improvements in food processing)
- communicate outbreak prevention and control strategies to the public

Figure 15. Epidemic curves

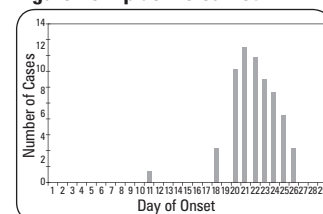


Figure 15a. Point source epidemic curve

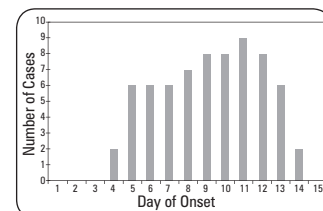


Figure 15b. Extended continuous source epidemic curve

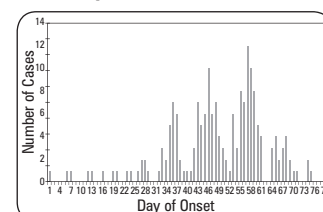


Figure 15c. Propagated source epidemic curve

Environmental Health



Definition

- study of conditions in the natural and human-made environment that influence human health and well-being
- environmental exposures
 - four main reservoirs: air, food, water, and soil
 - three main routes: inhalation, ingestion, or absorption (skin)
 - usually divided into two main settings
 - ♦ workplace (including schools): may see high level exposure in healthy individuals (see *Occupational Health*, PH23)
 - ♦ non-workplace: generally low level but chronic exposure; population at risk includes extremes of age, developing fetuses, and ill or immunocompromised individuals
- health impacts of the environment also include factors such as urban planning and how individuals interact with the built environment (e.g. safe pedestrian and bicycle paths are neighborhood features that can facilitate more active lifestyles among residents)

Environmental Health Jurisdiction

Table 8. Environmental Health Jurisdiction

Public Health Unit	Enforcement of water and food safety regulations (including restaurant food safety) Sanitation Assessment of local environmental risks Monitoring and follow-up of reportable diseases
Municipal Government	Waste disposal Recycling Water and sewage treatment/collection/distribution
State Government	Water and air quality standards Industrial emission regulation Toxic waste disposal
Federal Government	Designating and regulating toxic substances Regulating food products Setting policy for pollutants that can travel across provincial boundaries
International	Multilateral agreements (e.g. Kyoto Protocol, UN Convention on Climate Change, International Joint Commission)

Risk Assessment

Hazard Identification

- what is the hazard involved?
- assess potential hazards by taking an environmental health history

Risk Characterization

- is the identified agent likely to elicit the patient's current symptoms?
- review known health impacts of the hazard and identify specific properties that contribute to or diminish adverse effects (e.g. evaluate threshold levels)

Exposure Assessment

- is the patient's exposure to the environmental agent sufficient to have caused the current symptoms?
- quantify exposure through direct measurement or by reviewing frequency and nature of contact with hazard



Taking an Environmental Health History

CH₂OPD₂

Community

Home

Hobbies

Occupation

Personal habits

Diet

Drugs

Air

Physical Contaminants

- sound waves
 - ionizing radiation
 - radon is naturally produced by soil containing uranium or radium, can contaminate indoor air and is associated with a small proportion of lung cancers
- ultraviolet radiation is increasing due to ozone layer destruction and increases risk of skin cancer
 - non-ionizing radiation
 - visible light, infrared, microwave

Chemical Contaminants

- ground-level ozone
 - main component of smog with levels increasing in major cities
 - worsens asthma, irritates upper airway
- carbon monoxide (fossil fuel-related, common byproduct of combustion)
 - aggravates cardiac disease at low levels
 - headache, nausea, dizziness at moderate levels
 - fatal at high levels
- sulphur dioxide (fossil fuel-related), nitrogen oxides
 - contribute to acid rain and exacerbate breathing difficulties
- organic compounds at high levels (e.g. benzene, methylene chloride, tetrachloroethylene)
 - tend to be fat-soluble, easily absorbed through skin and difficult to excrete
- heavy metals emissions (e.g. nickel, cadmium, chromium)
 - variety of health effects: upper airway disease, asthma, decreased lung function
- second-hand tobacco smoke
 - respiratory problems, increase risk of lung cancer
 - particulates associated with decreased lung function, asthma, upper airway irritation

Biological Contaminants

- molds thrive in moist areas; 10-15% of the population allergic
- bacteria survive as spores and aerosols, can be distributed through ventilation systems (e.g. *Legionella*)
- dust mites (year-round) and pollens (seasonal) can trigger upper and lower-airway symptoms

Climate Change

- anthropogenic greenhouse gas emissions (e.g. carbon dioxide, methane) leading to adverse changes in the global environment
 - increased extreme weather conditions (e.g. floods, hurricanes, heat waves)
 - increased distribution of disease vectors (e.g. mosquitoes and malaria)



Effects of Ionizing Radiation

α -particles are larger and damage the skin and bronchial lining (airway irritation)

β -particles are smaller and cause deeper damage (alveoli)



BPA, the Toxin Concern of 2009

Bisphenol A (BPA) is a chemical compound found in some hard, clear, lightweight plastics and resins. According to the NIH, animal studies suggest that ingested BPA may imitate estrogen and other hormones. In October 2008, Canada became the first country in the world to ban the import and sale of polycarbonate baby bottles containing BPA, stating that although exposure levels are below levels that cause negative effects, current safety margins need to be higher. The US FDA does not consider normal exposure to BPA to be a hazard, however the NIH has some concern that fetuses, infants, and children exposed to BPA may be at increased risk for early-onset puberty, prostate, and breast cancer

Water

Biological Contaminants

- mostly due to human and animal waste
- rural inhabitants at higher risk
- bacteria: *Escherichia coli* (e.g. Walkerton, ON), *Salmonella*, *Pseudomonas*, *Shigella*
- protozoa: *Giardia*, *Cryptosporidium* (e.g. North Battleford, SK)

Chemical/Industrial Contaminants

- chlorination by-products (e.g. chloroform can cause cancer at high levels)
- volatile organic compounds, heavy metals, pesticides, and other industrial waste products can be present in groundwater
- fluoride at high levels (greater than that of municipal fluoridation) can cause skeletal fluorosis

Soil

- contamination sources: rupture of underground storage tanks, use of pesticides and herbicides, percolation of contaminated water runoffs, leaching of wastes from landfills, dust from smelting and coal burning power plants, residue of industrial waste/development (e.g. urban agriculture), lead deposition, leakage of transformers
- most common chemicals: petroleum hydrocarbons, solvents, lead, pesticides, motor oil, other industrial waste products
- health effects
 - infants and toddlers at highest risk of exposure due to hand-mouth behaviors
 - dependent on contaminant: leukemia, kidney damage, liver toxicity, neuromuscular blockade, developmental damage to the brain and nervous system, skin rash, eye irritation, headache, N/V, fatigue
- biological contamination: tetanus, *Pseudomonas*

Food

Table 9. Comparison of Select Biological Contaminants of Food and Effects on Human Health

	Source	Effects
<i>Salmonella</i>	Raw eggs, poultry, meat	GI symptoms
<i>Campylobacter</i>	Raw poultry, raw milk	Joint pain, GI symptoms
<i>Escherichia coli</i>	Various including meat, sprouts Primarily undercooked hamburger meat	Watery or bloody diarrhea, HUS
<i>Listeria monocytogenes</i>	Unpasteurized cheeses, prepared salads, cold cuts	Listeriosis: nausea, vomiting, fever, headache, rarely meningitis or encephalitis
<i>Clostridium botulinum</i>	Unpasteurized honey, canned foods	Dizziness, weakness, respiratory failure, GI symptoms: thirst, nausea, constipation
Prion (BSE)	Beef and beef products	Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease

BSE = bovine spongiform encephalopathy

- other biological food contaminants include
 - viruses, mold toxins (e.g. aflatoxin has been associated with liver cancer), parasites (e.g. Toxoplasmosis, tapeworm), paralytic and shellfish poisoning (rare), genetically modified organisms (controversial as to health risks/benefits)

Chemical Contaminants

many persistent organic pollutants are fat-soluble and undergo bioamplification

- drugs (antibiotics, hormones)
- inadequately prepared herbal medications
- food additives and preservatives
 - nitrites highest in cured meats; can be converted to carcinogenic nitrosamines
 - sulphites commonly used as preservatives; associated with sulphite allergy (hives, nausea, shock)
- pesticide residues
 - older pesticides (e.g. DDT) have considerable human health effects
- polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)
 - effects (severe acne, numbness, muscle spasm, bronchitis) much more likely to be seen in occupationally exposed individuals than in the general population
- dioxins and furans
 - levels highest in fish and marine mammals, also present in breast milk
 - can cause immunosuppression, liver disease, respiratory disease



To Fluoridate or Not

At the recommended concentration of 0.8-1.0 mg/L, fluoride reduces cavities by 18-40%, and there is little risk of fluorosis unless other exposures (e.g. toothpaste, rinses, mouthwash, etc.) are swallowed. Opposition raises concerns that the intake is not easily controlled, and that children, and others may be more susceptible to health problems. However, public health experts strongly support fluoridation as an effective measure to prevent dental caries at the community level and reduce dental health inequities



The Walkerton Tragedy

In May 2000, the drinking water system in the town of Walkerton, ON, became contaminated with *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 and *Campylobacter jejuni*. Over 2,300 individuals became ill; 27 people developed hemolytic uremic syndrome and 7 individuals died in the outbreak

Source: Ministry of the Attorney General. Report of the Walkerton inquiry. Ontario, 2002



Honey and Botulism

Although exceedingly rare, infant botulism has been documented as a form of food poisoning from *C. botulinum* found in honey. When an infant swallows spores of this bacterium, they grow and produce a toxin in the baby's intestine. By the time an infant is 1, its gut has a healthy colony of "good" bacteria that prevents this from occurring



Organic Foods

- Organic foods are not free of synthetic pesticide residues but typically contain smaller amounts compared to conventionally grown foods
- Currently, there has not been strong evidence to suggest that eating organic foods is safer or more nutritious compared to eating conventionally grown food

Source: Organic foods. *Ann Intern Med* 2012; 157:348-66. Health Canada. Pesticides and food, 2011. UpToDate. Organic foods and children, 2009

Heavy Metal Toxicity

Mechanism

- after exposure, superabundant metals bind to proteins, alter their enzymatic activity, and lead to diffuse disease manifestations

Predisposing Factors in At-Risk Groups

- children: hand-to-mouth, incomplete blood-brain barrier
- pregnant women and developing fetus: heavy metals cross placenta; mothers release heavy metal stores at times of calcium stress
- adults: occupation, hobbies, environment (home, country)

Etiology

- iatrogenic (e.g. gold treatment for rheumatoid arthritis, lithium treatment for bipolar affective disorder)
- inhalation (e.g. zinc oxide, lead, gasoline fumes)
- ingestion (e.g. lead paint, mercury in fish, folk remedies)
- industry (e.g. methyl mercury industrial spill caused Minamata disease)

Treatment

- generalized workup: symptoms are usually wide-ranging and non-specific
- chelation therapy (e.g. dimercaprol)

Occupational Health

- occupational health is the maintenance and promotion of health in the work environment
- services encompass health promotion and protection (primary prevention), disease prevention (secondary prevention), and treatment and rehabilitation (tertiary prevention)
- general bias towards reporting occupational injuries vs. occupational disease, as occupational disease is harder to identify

Workplace Health Promotion and Protection

- take action in the workplace so the worker is protected from injury or illness
 - identifying workplace hazards (e.g. through material safety data sheets [MSDS])
 - assessing risk
 - reducing exposure
 - ♦ **source:** substituting a less toxic chemical
 - ♦ **path:** enclosing a source of noise in a sound-proof room
 - ♦ **worker:** personal protection equipment (e.g. reflective vests, helmets)
 - ♦ **worker education:** emergency protocols, material safety education
 - ♦ **rotation of workers:** decrease exposure for each worker but more workers exposed



Occupational Health Statistics

- 4,628 fatal work injuries in the United States in 2012; rate = 3.4/100,000 workers



Reducing Exposure in the Workplace

- Engineering controls – most preferred
- Administrative/work practices
- Personal protective equipment – least preferred due to adherence challenges

Workplace Disease Prevention

- monitor workers' health to prevent the development of disease
 - periodic examinations to facilitate pre-symptomatic diagnosis (e.g. screening for lead exposure); substance misuse screening where performance impairment is suspected

Workplace Treatment and Rehabilitation

- treat injury or illness with safe return to the workplace
- may require rehabilitation, retraining, change in job duties, and/or workers' compensation

Workplace Legislation

- Department of Labor (DOL) administers and enforces more than 180 federal laws that cover many workplace activities for about 10 million employers and 125 million workers
- the Occupational Safety and Health (OSH) Act is administered by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA)
- safety and health conditions in most private and public industries are regulated by OSHA or OSHA-approved state programs

- employers must comply with the General Duty Clause of the OSH Act, which requires employers to keep their workplace free of serious recognized hazards
- compliance duties owed to each employee include the provision of personal protective equipment and training as necessary
- employees retain the right to
 - ask OSHA to inspect their workplace
 - use their rights under the law without retaliation and discrimination
 - receive information and training about hazards, methods to prevent harm, and the OSHA standards that apply to their workplace. The training must be in a language you can understand
 - get copies of test results done to find hazards in the workplace
 - review records of work-related injuries and illnesses
 - get copies of their medical records
- OSHA enforces the Act through workplace inspections and investigations

Taking an Occupational Health History

- current and previous job duties
- exposures
 - identification: screen for chemical, metal, dust, biological, and physical hazards as well as psychological stressors; review relevant workplace MSDS
 - assessment: duration, concentration, route, exposure controls (e.g. ventilation, personal protective equipment)
- temporal relationship: changes in symptoms in relationship to work environment
- presence of similar symptoms in co-workers
- non-work exposures: home, neighborhood, hobbies



Taking an Occupational Health History

WHACS

What do you do?

How do you do it?

Are you concerned about any particular exposures on or off the job?

Co-workers or others with similar problems?

Satisfied with your job?

J Occup Environ Med 1998;40:680-684

Occupational Hazards

Table 10. Occupational Hazards

Physical	Chemical	Biological	Psychosocial
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Trauma (fractures, lacerations) • Noise (hearing loss) • Temperature (heat cramps, heat exhaustion, heat stroke) • Air pressure (barotrauma, decompression sickness) • Ergonomic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repetitive use/overuse injuries, excessive force, awkward postures, poorly designed physical work environment • Tenosynovitis, bursitis, carpal tunnel syndrome • Radiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Non-ionizing: visible light, infrared • Ionizing: UV, x-rays, γ rays • Electricity 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Organic solvents (e.g. benzene, methyl alcohol; most toxic is carbon tetrachloride) • Mineral dusts (e.g. silica leads to silicosis and predisposition to TB, asbestos leads to diffuse fibrosis and mesothelioma, coal leads to pneumoconiosis) • Heavy metals (e.g. nickel, cadmium, mercury, lead) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Lead is ubiquitous and can cause severe disability • Gases (e.g. halogen gases, sulphur dioxide, carbon monoxide, nitrogen oxides) • Second-hand smoke (causal factor for lung cancer, lung disease, heart disease, asthma exacerbations; may be linked to miscarriage) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exposure restricted in most municipal, provincial, and federal jurisdictions • Skin diseases (major portion of compensations, e.g. contact dermatitis, occupational acne, pigmentation disorders) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exposure to bacteria, viruses, fungi, protozoa, Rickettsia • Blood should be considered a potentially toxic substance due to blood-borne infectious diseases (e.g. HIV, hepatitis B) • Consider exposure to disease in endemic countries, travelers from endemic countries, or recent travel history in the setting of acute onset of symptoms (e.g. SARS, TB) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Workload, responsibility, fear of job loss, geographical isolation, shift work, harassment (sexual/non-sexual) • Incurs high cost from absenteeism, poor productivity, mental illness (e.g. post-traumatic stress disorder)

Appendix – Reportable Diseases

As an essential part of the health system, physicians are required by law to report certain diseases to public health for the following reasons:

1. to control the outbreak
 - if the disease presents an outbreak threat (e.g. measles, *Salmonella*, respiratory diseases in institutions)
2. to prevent spread
 - if the disease presents a significant threat to individuals or a subset of the population (e.g. Lassa Fever)
3. for surveillance
 - if the disease is preventable with immunization (e.g. polio, diphtheria, congenital rubella)
4. if infected individuals require education, treatment and/or partner notification (e.g. gonorrhea, TB)
5. reporting details (website, office, etc.)
 - some are more urgent than others (must contact MOH)
 - physicians should also report unlisted diseases that appear in clusters

The following list is based on the reportable diseases in the province of Ontario, Canada for 2014
(Each state will have its own similar legislation)

Source: Health Protection and Promotion Act, O. Reg. 559/91, amended to O. Reg. 49/07.

Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome (AIDS)	<i>Haemophilus influenzae b</i> disease, invasive	Rabies
Acute flaccid paralysis <15 yr	Hantavirus pulmonary syndrome	Respiratory infection outbreaks in institutions
Amoebiasis	Hemorrhagic fevers, including:	Rubella
Anthrax	i. Ebola virus disease	Rubella, congenital syndrome
Botulism	ii. Marburg virus disease	
Brucellosis	iii. Other viral causes	Salmonellosis
	Hepatitis, viral:	Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS)
<i>Campylobacter</i> enteritis	i. Hepatitis A	Shigellosis
Chancroid	ii. Hepatitis B	Smallpox
Chickenpox (Varicella)	iii. Hepatitis C	Streptococcal infections, Group A
<i>Chlamydia trachomatis</i> infections	iv. Hepatitis D (Delta hepatitis)	invasive
Cholera	Herpes, neonatal	Streptococcal infections, Group B
<i>Clostridium difficile</i> associated disease (CDAD) outbreaks in public hospitals	Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV)	neonatal
Cryptosporidiosis	Influenza	Syphilis
Cyclosporiasis		
Cytomegalovirus infection, congenital	Lassa Fever	Tetanus
	Legionellosis	Transmissible spongiform encephalopathy, including:
Diphtheria	Leprosy	i. Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, all types
	Listeriosis	ii. Gerstmann-Sträussler-Scheinker syndrome
Encephalitis, including:	Lyme Disease	iii. Fatal familial insomnia
i. Primary, viral	Malaria	iv. Kuru
ii. Post-infectious	Measles	Trichinosis
iii. Vaccine-related	Meningitis, acute:	Tuberculosis, active and latent
iv. Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis	i. Bacterial	Tularemia
v. Unspecified	ii. Viral	Typhoid Fever
Food poisoning, all causes	iii. Other	
	Meningococcal disease, invasive	Verotoxin-producing <i>E. coli</i> infection
Gastroenteritis, institutional outbreaks	Mumps	indicator conditions, including
Giardiasis, except asymptomatic cases		Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome (HUS)
Gonorrhea	Ophthalmia neonatorum	
		West Nile Virus illness, including:
	Paralytic shellfish poisoning	i. West Nile fever
	Paratyphoid fever	ii. West Nile neurological manifestations
	Pertussis (whooping cough)	
	Plague	Yellow Fever
	Pneumococcal disease, invasive	Yersiniosis
	Poliomyelitis, acute	
	Psittacosis/Ornithosis	
	Q Fever	

References

- AFMC Primer on Population Health. Available from: <http://phprimer.afmc.ca/>.
- Associated Faculties of Medicine of Canada (AFMC). Primer on public health (internet). AFMC, 2011. Available from: <http://phprimer.afmc.ca>.
- BMJ Updates Plus. Available from: <http://plus.mcmaster.ca/evidenceupdates>.
- Braveman PA. Monitoring equity in health and health care: a conceptual framework. *J Health Popul Nutr* 2003;21:181-192.
- Bureau of Labor Statistics. Available from: <http://www.bls.gov>.
- Center for Disease Control and Prevention. Available from: <http://www.cdc.gov>.
- Clinical Evidence. Available from: <http://www.clinicalevidence.com>.
- Cochrane Collaboration Glossary of Terms. Available from: <http://www.cochrane.org/glossary>.
- Hennekens C, Buring J. *Epidemiology in medicine*. Philadelphia: Lippincott, Williams & Wilkins, 1987.
- Hully SB, Cummings SR. *Designing clinical research: an epidemiologic approach*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins, 1988.
- Hill AB. The environment and disease: association or causation? *Proc Royal Soc Med* 1965;58:295-300.
- Institute for Population and Public Health, Canadian Institutes for Health Research. Available from: <http://www.cihr-irsc.gc.ca/e/13970.html>.
- Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. Available from: <http://www.ipcc.ch>.
- Kass NE. An ethics framework for public health. *Am J Public Health* 2001;91:1776-1782.
- Kelsey JL, Whittemore AS, Evans AS, et al. *Methods in observational epidemiology*, 2nd ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 1996.
- Last JM. *A dictionary of epidemiology*, 4th ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.
- McCurdy SA, Morrin LA, Memmott MM. Occupational history collection by third-year medical students during internal medicine and surgery inpatient clerkships. *J Occup Environ Med* 1998;40:680-684.
- MedTerms. Available from: <http://www.medterms.com>.
- National Advisory Committee on Immunization. Available from: <http://www.phac-aspc.gc.ca/naci-ccni/>.
- Ontario Medical Association. Available from: <https://www.oma.org/HealthPromotion/Pages/default.aspx>.
- Ontario Ministry of Labour Health and Safety. Available from: <http://www.labour.gov.on.ca/english/hs/>.
- OVID EBM Reviews. Available from: <http://gateway.ovid.com/ovidweb.cgi>.
- Pan-American Health Organization. Available from: <http://www.paho.org/index.php>.
- Pier (ACP). Available from: <http://www.pier.acponline.org>.
- PubMed – Clinical Queries. Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed>.
- Sackett DL, Strauss SE, Richardson WS, et al. *Evidence-based medicine: how to practice and teach EBM*. 2nd ed. Toronto: Churchill, Livingstone, 2002.
- Shah CP. *Public health and preventive medicine in Canada*, 5th ed. Toronto: Elsevier Canada, 2003.
- Smith-Spangler C, Brandeau ML, Bavinger JC, et al. Are organic foods safer or healthier than conventional alternatives?: a systematic review. *Ann Intern Med* 2012;157:348-366.
- United States Department of Labor Available from: <http://www.dol.gov/opa/aboutdol/lawsprog.htm>.
- UpToDate. Available from: <http://www.uptodate.com>.
- Users' Guide Series. Available from: <http://www.jamaevidence.com/edguides>.
- WHO. World Health Report 2006. Available from: <http://www.who.int/whr/2006/en/index.html>.
- Workplace Safety and Insurance Board. Available from: <http://www.wsib.on.ca>.
- World Bank. Available from: <http://www.worldbank.org>.

Sarah Levitt, Martin Rotenberg, and Robyn Thom, chapter editors

Jillian Bardsley and Evan Lilly, associate editors

Ilya Mukovozov, EBM editor

Dr. Chloe Leon and Dr. Oshrit Wanono, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Somatic Symptom Disorder	23
Suicide	2	Illness Anxiety Disorder (formerly Hypochondriasis)	
Psychotic Disorders	3	Conversion Disorder (Functional Neurological Symptom Disorder)	
Differential Diagnosis of Psychosis		Dissociative Disorders	24
Schizophrenia		Sleep Disorders	24
Schizophreniform Disorder		Nocturnal Myoclonus	
Brief Psychotic Disorder		Narcolepsy	
Schizoaffective Disorder		Primary Insomnia	
Delusional Disorder		Sleep Apnea	
Mood Disorders	6	Sexuality and Gender	25
Mood Episodes		Gender Dysphoria	
Depressive Disorders		Paraphilic Disorders	
Bipolar Disorders		Eating Disorders	26
Anxiety Disorders	10	Anorexia Nervosa	
Panic Disorder		Bulimia Nervosa	
Agoraphobia		Avoidant/Restrictive Food Intake Disorder	
Generalized Anxiety Disorder		Binge-Eating Disorder	
Phobic Disorders		Personality Disorders	28
Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder	13	Child Psychiatry	30
Trauma- and Stressor-Related Disorders	13	Developmental Concepts	
Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder		Mood Disorders	
Adjustment Disorder	15	Anxiety Disorders	
Bereavement	15	Neurodevelopmental Disorders	33
Neurocognitive Disorders	16	Autism Spectrum Disorder	
Delirium		Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder	
Major Neurocognitive Disorder/Dementia	17	Disruptive, Impulse Control, and Conduct Disorders	35
Substance-Related and Addictive Disorders	18	Oppositional Defiant Disorder	
Nicotine		Conduct Disorder	
Alcohol		Pharmacotherapy	36
Opioids		Antipsychotics	
Cocaine		Antidepressants	
Amphetamines		Mood Stabilizers	
Cannabis		Anxiolytics	
Hallucinogens		Electroconvulsive Therapy	
"Club Drugs"		References	44
Somatic Symptom and Related Disorders	23		

Diagnostic Criteria reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition.
© 2013 American Psychiatric Association.

Acronyms

5-HT	serotonin	CT	cognitive therapy	MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor	OCPD	obsessive-compulsive personality disorder
ACh	acetylcholine	CTO	community treatment order	MDD	major depressive disorder	ODD	oppositional defiant disorder
ACT	assertive community treatment	DA	dopamine	MDE	major depressive episode	PD	personality disorder
ADHD	attention deficit hyperactivity disorder	DZ	dizygotic	MET	motivational enhancement therapy	PDD	pervasive developmental disorder
AN	anorexia nervosa	ECT	electroconvulsive therapy	MSE	mental status examination	PTSD	post-traumatic stress disorder
ASD	autism spectrum disorder	EPS	extrapyramidal symptoms	MST	magnetic stimulation therapy	rTMS	repetitive transcranial magnetic stimulation
ASPD	antisocial personality disorder	ERP	exposure with response prevention	MZ	monozygotic	SNRI	serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors
BN	bulimia nervosa	EtOH	ethanol/alcohol	NA	Narcotics Anonymous	SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
CBT	cognitive behavioral therapy	GAD	generalized anxiety disorder	NMS	neuroleptic malignant syndrome	TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
CD	conduct disorder	GMC	general medical condition	NOS	not otherwise specified		
CRA	community reinforcement approach	IPT	interpersonal therapy	OCD	obsessive-compulsive disorder		

Suicide



Epidemiology

- attempted:completed = 20:1
- M:F = 1:4 for attempts, 3:1 for completed

Risk Factors

- epidemiologic factors
 - age: increases after age 14, second most common cause of death for ages 15-24, highest rates in persons >65 yr
 - sex: male
 - marital status: widowed/divorced
 - living situation: alone; no children <18 yr old in the household
 - other: stressful life events, access to firearms
- psychiatric disorders
 - mood disorders (15% lifetime risk in depression; higher in bipolar)
 - anxiety disorders (especially panic disorder)
 - schizophrenia (10-15% risk)
 - substance abuse (especially alcohol – 15% lifetime risk)
 - eating disorders (5% lifetime risk)
 - adjustment disorder
 - conduct disorder
 - personality disorders (borderline, antisocial)
- past history
 - prior suicide attempt
 - family history of suicide attempt/completion

Clinical Presentation

- symptoms associated with suicide
 - hopelessness
 - anhedonia
 - insomnia
 - severe anxiety
 - impaired concentration
 - psychomotor agitation
 - panic attacks

Approach

Every Patient: “Have you had any thoughts of wanting to hurt or kill yourself?”

- passive ideation: would rather not be alive but has no active plan for suicide
 - ♦ e.g. “I’d rather not wake up” or “I would not mind if a car hit me”
- active ideation
 - ♦ e.g. “I think about killing myself”
- plan: “Do you have a plan as to how you would end your life?”
- intent: “You talk about wanting to die, but are you planning to do this?” or “What has stopped you from ending your life?”
- past attempts: highest risk if previous attempt in past year
 - ♦ ask about lethality, outcome, medical intervention

Assessment of Suicidal Ideation

- onset and frequency of thoughts: “When did this start?” or “How often do you have these thoughts?”
- control over suicidal ideation: “Can you stop the thoughts or call someone for help?”
- lethality: “Do you want to end your life?” or “What do you think would happen if you actually took those pills?”
- access to means: “How will you get a gun?” or “Which bridge do you think you would go to?”



Suicide Risk Factors

SAD PERSONS

Sex (male)
 Age >60 yr old
 Depression
 Previous attempts
 Ethanol abuse
 Rational thinking loss (delusions, hallucinations, hopelessness)
 Suicide in family
 Organized plan
 No spouse (no support systems)
 Serious illness, intractable pain



Suicidal Ideation Assessment

- Asking patients about suicide will not give them the idea or the incentive to commit suicide
- The best predictor of completed suicide is a history of attempted suicide
- The most common psychiatric disorders associated with completed suicide are mood disorders and alcohol abuse

- time and place: "Have you picked a date and place? Is it in an isolated location?"
- provocative factors: "What makes you feel worse (e.g. being alone)?"
- protective factors: "What keeps you alive (e.g. friends, family, pets, faith, therapist)?"
- final arrangements: "Have you written a suicide note? Made a will? Given away your belongings?"
- practiced suicide or aborted attempts: "Have you ever put the gun to your head?" "Held the medications in your hand?" "Stood at the bridge?"
- ambivalence: "There must be a part of you that wants to live, after all you came here for help"

Assessment of Suicide Attempt

- setting (isolated vs. others present/chance of discovery)
- planned vs. impulsive attempt, triggers/stressors
- substance use/intoxication
- medical attention (brought in by another person vs. brought in by self to ED)
- time lag from suicide attempt to ED arrival
- expectation of lethality, dying
- reaction to survival (guilt/remorse vs. disappointment/self-blame)

Management

- proper documentation of the clinical encounter and rationale for management is essential
- higher risk (hospitalization needs to be strongly considered)
 - patients with a plan, access to lethal means, recent social stressors, and symptoms suggestive of a psychiatric disorder
 - do not leave patient alone; remove potentially dangerous objects from room
 - if patient refuses to be hospitalized, consider involuntary admission as per state specific statutes
- lower risk
 - patients who are not actively suicidal, with no plan or access to lethal means
 - discuss protective factors and supports in their life, remind them of what they live for, promote survival skills that helped them through previous suicide attempts
 - make a safety plan and an agreement that they will
 - ♦ not harm themselves
 - ♦ avoid alcohol, drugs, and situations that may trigger suicidal thoughts
 - ♦ follow-up with you at a designated time
 - ♦ contact a health care worker, call a crisis line, or go to an emergency department if they feel unsafe or if their suicidal feelings return or intensify
- depression: consider hospitalization if symptoms severe or if psychotic features are present; otherwise outpatient treatment with good supports and SSRIs/SNRIs
- alcohol-related: usually resolves with abstinence for a few days; if not, suspect depression
- personality disorders: crisis intervention/confrontation, may or may not hospitalize
- schizophrenia/psychosis: hospitalization might be necessary
- parasuicide/self-mutilation: long-term psychotherapy with brief crisis intervention when necessary

Psychotic Disorders



Definition

- characterized by a significant impairment in reality testing
 - delusions or hallucinations (with/without insight into their pathological nature)
 - behaving in a disorganized way so that it is reasonable to infer that reality testing is disturbed

Table 1. Differentiating Psychotic Disorders

Disorder	Psychotic Symptoms	Duration
Brief Psychotic Disorder	≥1 positive symptoms of criterion A	<1 mo
Schizophreniform Disorder	Criterion A	1-6 mo
Schizophrenia	Criterion A	>6 mo
Schizoaffective Disorder	≥2 wk (with no mood symptoms)	>1 mo
Delusional Disorder	Non-bizarre delusions, hallucinations	>1 mo
2° to Substance Intoxication/Withdrawal	Criterion A	During intoxication or ≤1 mo after withdrawal
2° to Mood Disorder	Delusions/hallucinations (mood congruent)	Psychosis may be present for the duration of the mood episode

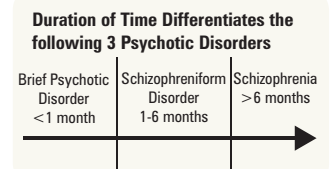


Figure 1. Differentiating psychotic disorders with duration



Delusions: fixed, false beliefs
Hallucinations: perceptual experiences without an external stimulus

Differential Diagnosis of Psychosis

- primary psychotic disorders: schizophrenia, schizophreniform, brief psychotic, schizoaffective, delusional disorder
- mood disorders: depression with psychotic features, bipolar disorder (manic or depressive episode with psychotic features)
- personality disorders: schizotypal, schizoid, borderline, paranoid, obsessive-compulsive
- general medical conditions: tumor, head trauma, dementia, delirium, metabolic, infection, stroke, temporal lobe epilepsy
- substance-induced psychosis: intoxication or withdrawal, prescribed medications, toxins

Schizophrenia

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Schizophrenia

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- two (or more) of the following, each present for a significant portion of time during a 1 mo period (or less if successfully treated). At least one of these must be (1), (2), or (3)
 - delusions
 - hallucinations
 - disorganized speech (e.g. frequent derailment or incoherence)
 - grossly disorganized or catatonic behavior
 - negative symptoms (i.e. diminished emotional expression or avolition)
 - for a significant portion of time since the onset of the disturbance, level of functioning in one or more major areas (e.g. work, interpersonal relations, self-care) is markedly below the level achieved prior to the onset (or when the onset is in childhood or adolescence, there is failure to achieve expected level of interpersonal, academic, or occupational functioning)
 - continuous signs of the disturbance persist for at least 6 mo. This 6 mo period must include at least 1 mo of symptoms (or less if successfully treated) that meet Criterion A (i.e. active-phase symptoms) and may include periods of prodromal or residual symptoms. During these prodromal or residual periods, the signs of the disturbance may be manifested by only negative symptoms or by two or more symptoms listed in Criterion A present in an attenuated form (e.g. odd beliefs, unusual perceptual experiences)
 - schizoaffective disorder and depressive or bipolar disorder with psychotic features have been ruled out because either 1) no major depressive or manic episodes have occurred concurrently with the active-phase symptoms, or 2) if mood episodes have occurred during active-phase symptoms, they have been present for a minority of the total duration of the active and residual periods of the illness
 - the disturbance is not attributable to the physiological effects of a substance (e.g. drug of abuse, a medication) or another medical condition
 - if there is a history of autism spectrum disorder or a communication disorder of childhood onset, the additional diagnosis of schizophrenia is made only if prominent delusions or hallucinations, in addition to the other required symptoms of schizophrenia are also present for at least 1 mo (or less if successfully treated)
- **specifiers:** type of episode (e.g. first episode, multiple episodes, continuous), with catatonia, current severity based on quantitative assessment of primary symptoms of psychosis

Epidemiology

- prevalence: 0.3-0.7%, M:F = 1:1
- mean age of onset: females late-20s; males early- to mid-20s
- suicide risk: 5-6% die by suicide, 20% attempt suicide

Etiology

- multifactorial: disorder is a result of interaction between both biological and environmental factors
 - genetic: 40% concordance in monozygotic (MZ) twins; 46% if both parents have schizophrenia; 10% of dizygotic (DZ) twins, siblings, children affected
 - neurochemistry ("dopamine hypothesis"): excess activity in the mesolimbic dopamine pathway may mediate the positive symptoms of psychosis while decreased dopamine in the prefrontal cortex may mediate negative and cognitive symptoms. GABA, glutamate, and ACh dysfunction are also thought to be involved
 - neuroanatomy: decreased frontal lobe function; asymmetric temporal/limbic function; decreased basal ganglia function; subtle changes in thalamus, cortex, corpus callosum, and ventricles; cytoarchitectural abnormalities
 - neuroendocrinology: abnormal growth hormone, prolactin, cortisol, and ACTH



Management of Acute Psychosis and Mania

- Ensure safety of self, patient, and other patients
- Have an exit strategy
- Decrease stimulation
- Assume a non-threatening stance
- IM medications (benzodiazepine + antipsychotic) often needed as patient may refuse oral medication
- Physical restraints may be necessary
- Do not use antidepressants or stimulants



Relationship Between Duration of Untreated Psychosis (DUP) and Outcome in First-Episode Schizophrenia

Am J Psychiatry 2005;162:1785-1804

Purpose: To review the association between DUP and symptom severity at first treatment contact, and between DUP and treatment outcomes.

Study Characteristics: Critical review and meta-analysis of 43 studies with 4,177 patients.

Participants: Patients with non-affective psychotic disorders at or close to first treatment.

Results: Shorter DUP was associated with greater response to antipsychotic treatment, as measured by global psychopathology, positive symptoms, negative symptoms, and functional outcomes. At the time of treatment initiation, longer DUP was associated with the severity of negative symptoms but not with the severity of positive symptoms, global psychopathology, or neurocognitive function.

Conclusions: DUP may be a potentially modifiable prognostic factor.

- neuropsychology: global defects seen in attention, language, and memory suggest lack of connectivity of neural networks
- environmental: indirect evidence of cannabis use, geographical variance, winter season of birth, obstetrical complications, and prenatal viral exposure

Pathophysiology

- neurodegenerative theory
 - natural history may be a rapid or gradual decline in function and ability to communicate
 - glutamate system may mediate progressive degeneration by excitotoxic mechanism which leads to production of free radicals
- neurodevelopmental theory: abnormal development of the brain from prenatal life
 - neurons fail to migrate correctly, make inappropriate connections, and break down in later life
 - inappropriate apoptosis during neurodevelopment resulting in faulty connections between neurons

Comorbidity

- substance-related disorders
- anxiety disorders
- decreased life expectancy because of associated medical conditions (e.g. weight gain, diabetes, metabolic syndrome, CV/pulmonary disease)

Management of Schizophrenia

- biological
 - acute treatment and maintenance with antipsychotics ± anticonvulsants ± anxiolytics
- psychosocial
 - psychotherapy (individual, family, group): supportive, CBT
 - ACT: mobile mental health teams that provide individualized treatment in the community and help patients with medication adherence, basic living skills, social support, job placements, and community resources
 - social skills training, employment programs, disability benefits
 - housing (group home, boarding home, transitional home)

Course and Prognosis

- the majority of individuals display some type of prodromal phase
- course is variable: some individuals have exacerbations and remissions and others remain chronically ill; accurate prediction of the long-term outcome is not possible
- negative symptoms may be prominent early in the illness and may become more prominent and more disabling later on; positive symptoms appear and typically diminish with treatment
- over time: 1/3 improve, 1/3 remain the same, 1/3 worsen



Good Prognostic Factors

- Acute onset
- Shorter duration of prodrome
- Female gender
- Good cognitive functioning
- Good premorbid functioning
- No family history
- Presence of affective symptoms
- Absence of structural brain abnormalities
- Good response to drugs
- Good support system

Schizophreniform Disorder

- **diagnosis:** criteria A, D, and E of schizophrenia are met; an episode of the disorder lasts for at least 1 mo but <6 mo
 - if the symptoms have extended past 6 mo the diagnosis becomes schizophrenia
 - **specifiers:** with/without good prognostic features (e.g. acute onset, confusion, good premorbid functioning, absence of blunt/flat affect), with catatonia, current severity based on quantitative assessment of primary symptoms of psychosis
- **treatment:** similar to acute schizophrenia
- **prognosis:** better than schizophrenia; begins and ends more abruptly; good pre- and post-morbid function

Brief Psychotic Disorder

- **diagnosis:** criteria A1-A4, D, and E of schizophrenia are met; an episode of the disorder lasts for at least 1 d, but <1 mo with eventual full return to premorbid level of functioning
 - **specifiers:** with/without marked stressors, with postpartum onset, with catatonia, current severity
- can occur after a stressful event or postpartum
- **treatment:** secure environment, antipsychotics, anxiolytics
- **prognosis:** good, self-limiting, should return to pre-morbid function within 1 mo

Schizoaffective Disorder

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Schizoaffective Disorder

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. an uninterrupted period of illness during which there is a major mood episode concurrent with Criterion A of schizophrenia
- B. delusions or hallucinations for 2 or more wk in the absence of a major mood episode during the lifetime duration of the illness
- C. symptoms that meet criteria for a major mood episode are present for the majority of the total duration of the active and residual periods of the illness
- D. the disturbance is not attributable to the effects of a substance or another medical condition
- **specifiers:** bipolar type, depressive type, with catatonia, type of episode, severity
- one-third as prevalent as schizophrenia; schizoaffective disorder bipolar type more common in young adults, schizoaffective disorder depressive type more common in older adults
- depressive symptoms correlated with higher suicide risk
- **treatment:** antipsychotics, mood stabilizers, antidepressants
- **prognosis:** between that of schizophrenia and of mood disorder



Non-bizarre delusions involve situations that could occur in real life (e.g. being followed, poisoned, loved at a distance)

Delusional Disorder

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Delusional Disorder

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. the presence of one (or more) delusions with a duration of ≥ 1 mo
- B. criterion A for schizophrenia has never been met
- **Note:** hallucinations, if present, are not prominent and are related to the delusional theme
- C. apart from the impact of the delusion(s) or its ramifications, functioning is not markedly impaired, and behavior is not obviously bizarre or odd
- D. if manic or major depressive episodes have occurred, these have been brief relative to the duration of the delusional periods
- E. the disturbance is not attributable to the physiological effects of a substance or another medical condition and is not better explained by another mental disorder
- **subtypes:** erotomanic, grandiose, jealous, persecutory, somatic, mixed, unspecified
 - further specify: bizarre content, type of episode (e.g. first episode, multiple episode), severity
- **treatment:** psychotherapy, antipsychotics, antidepressants
- **prognosis:** chronic, unremitting course but high level of functioning; a portion will progress to schizophrenia

Mood Disorders



Definitions

- mood disorders are defined by the presence of mood episodes
- mood episodes represent a combination of symptoms comprising a predominant mood state that is abnormal in quality or duration (e.g. major depressive, manic, mixed, hypomanic)
- types of mood disorders include
 - depressive (major depressive disorder, persistent depressive disorder)
 - bipolar (bipolar I/II disorder, cyclothymia)
 - secondary to GMC, substances, medications

Medical Workup of Mood Disorder

- **routine screening:** physical exam, CBC, thyroid function test, electrolytes, extended electrolytes, urinalysis, drug screen
- **additional screening:** neurological consultation, chest x-ray, ECG, CT

Mood Episodes

DSM-5 Criteria for Major Depressive Episode

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. ≥ 5 of the following symptoms have been present during the same 2-wk period and represent a change from previous functioning; at least one of the symptoms is either 1) depressed mood or 2) loss of interest or pleasure (anhedonia)
 - **Note:** Do not include symptoms that are clearly attributable to another medical condition
 - depressed mood most of the day, nearly every day, as indicated by either subjective report or observation made by others



Criteria for Depression (≥ 5)

MSIGECAPS

Mood: depressed
 Sleep: increased/decreased
 Interest: decreased
 Guilt
 Energy: decreased
 Concentration: decreased
 Appetite: increased/decreased
 Psychomotor: agitation/retardation
 Suicidal ideation

- markedly diminished interest or pleasure in all, or almost all, activities most of the day, nearly every day
 - significant and unintentional weight loss/weight gain, or decrease/increase in appetite nearly every day
 - insomnia or hypersomnia nearly every day
 - psychomotor agitation or retardation nearly every day
 - fatigue or loss of energy nearly every day
 - feelings of worthlessness or excessive or inappropriate guilt (which may be delusional) nearly every day (not merely self-reproach or guilt about being sick)
 - diminished ability to think or concentrate, or indecisiveness, nearly every day
 - recurrent thoughts of death (not just fear of dying), recurrent suicidal ideation without a specific plan, or a suicide attempt or a specific plan for committing suicide
- B. the symptoms cause clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning
- C. the episode is not attributable to the direct physiological effects of a substance or a GMC

DSM-5 Criteria for Manic Episode

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. a distinct period of abnormally and persistently elevated, expansive, or irritable mood and abnormally and persistently increased goal-directed activity or energy, lasting ≥ 1 wk and present most of the day, nearly every day (or any duration if hospitalization is necessary)
- B. during the period of mood disturbance and increased energy or activity, ≥ 3 of the following symptoms have persisted (4 if the mood is only irritable) and have been present to a significant degree and represent a noticeable change from usual behavior:
- inflated self-esteem or grandiosity
 - decreased need for sleep (e.g. feels rested after only 3 h of sleep)
 - more talkative than usual or pressure to keep talking
 - flight of ideas or subjective experience that thoughts are racing
 - distractibility (i.e. attention too easily drawn to unimportant or irrelevant external stimuli)
 - increase in goal-directed activity (either socially, at work or school, or sexually) or psychomotor agitation
 - excessive involvement in pleasurable activities that have a high potential for painful consequences (e.g. engaging in unrestrained shopping sprees, sexual indiscretions, or foolish business investments)
- C. the mood disturbance is sufficiently severe to cause marked impairment in social or occupational functioning or to necessitate hospitalization to prevent harm to self or others, or there are psychotic features
- D. the episode is not attributable to the physiological effects of a substance or another medical condition

Note: A full manic episode that emerges during antidepressant treatment but persists at a fully syndromal level beyond the physiological effect of that treatment is sufficient evidence for a manic episode, and therefore, a bipolar I diagnosis

Note: Criteria A-D constitute a manic episode. At least one lifetime manic episode is required for the diagnosis of bipolar I disorder



Criteria for Mania (≥ 3)

GST PAID

Grandiosity
 Sleep (decreased need)
 Talkative
 Pleasurable activities, Painful consequences
 Activity
 Ideas (flight of)
 Distractible

Hypomanic Episode

- criterion A and B of a manic episode is met, but duration is ≥ 4 d
- episode associated with an uncharacteristic change in functioning that is observable by others
- change in function is not severe enough to cause marked impairment in social or occupational functioning or to necessitate hospitalization
- absence of psychotic features

Depressive Disorders

MAJOR DEPRESSIVE DISORDER

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Major Depressive Disorder (MDD), Single Episode (vs. Recurrent)

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. presence of a single MDE (vs. recurrent, which requires presence of two or more MDEs; to be considered separate episodes, there must be an interval of at least 2 consecutive mo in which criteria are not met for a MDE)
- B. the MDE is not better accounted for by schizoaffective disorder and is not superimposed on schizophrenia, schizophreniform disorder, delusional disorder, or psychotic disorder NOS
- C. there has never been a manic episode or a hypomanic episode

- **Note:** this exclusion does not apply if all of the manic-like, or hypomanic-like episodes are substance or treatment-induced or are due to the direct physiological effects of another medical condition
- **specifiers:** with anxious distress, mixed features, melancholic features, atypical features, mood-congruent psychotic features, mood-incongruent psychotic features, catatonia, peripartum onset, seasonal pattern

Epidemiology

- prevalence: 12.2%
 - lifetime prevalence: male 2.9%, female 5%
 - annual prevalence: peak prevalence age 15-25 yr (M:F = 1:2)

Etiology

- biological
 - genetic: 65-75% MZ twins; 14-19% DZ twins
 - neurotransmitter dysfunction: decreased activity of 5HT, NE, and DA at the level of the synapse; changes in GABA and glutamate; changes in brain circuitry
 - neuroendocrine dysfunction: increased production of corticotropins causing excessive HPA axis activity
 - neuroanatomy: smaller frontal lobes and hippocampal volume; increased ventricle sizes
 - neurophysiologic: decreased REM latency and slow-wave sleep; increased REM length
 - secondary to another medical condition
- psychosocial
 - psychodynamic (e.g. low self-esteem)
 - cognitive (e.g. negative thinking)
 - environmental factors (e.g. job loss, bereavement, history of abuse, early life adversity)
 - comorbid psychiatric diagnoses (e.g. anxiety, substance abuse, developmental disability, dementia, eating disorder)

Risk Factors

- sex: F>M
- age: onset between 25-50 yr of age
- family history: depression, alcohol abuse, sociopathy
- childhood experiences: loss of parent before age 11, negative home environment (abuse, neglect)
- personality: insecure, dependent, obsessional
- recent stressors: illness, financial, legal
- postpartum <6 mo
- lack of intimate, confiding relationships or social isolation

Treatment

- biological: antidepressants primarily; could also consider lithium, antipsychotics, anxiolytics, light therapy, ECT, rTMS
- psychological
 - individual therapy (psychodynamic, interpersonal, CBT), family therapy, group therapy
- social: vocational rehabilitation, social skills training
- experimental: MST, deep brain stimulation, vagal nerve stimulation
- studies suggest CBT with pharmacotherapy results in better outcomes

Prognosis

- one year after diagnosis of a MDE without treatment: 40% of individuals still have symptoms that are sufficiently severe to meet criteria for a full MDE, 20% continue to have some symptoms that no longer meet criteria for a MDE, 40% have no mood disorder

PERSISTENT DEPRESSIVE DISORDER

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Persistent Depressive Disorder

Note: in DSM-IV-TR this was referred to as Dysthymia

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- depressed mood for most of the day, for more days than not, as indicated either by subjective account or observation by others, for ≥ 2 yr
Note: In children and adolescents, mood can be irritable and duration must be at least 1 yr
- presence, while depressed, of ≥ 2 of the following
 - poor appetite or overeating
 - insomnia or hypersomnia
 - low energy or fatigue
 - low self-esteem
 - poor concentration or difficulty making decisions
 - feelings of hopelessness



Antidepressants for Depression in Medical Illness

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2010; Issue 3

This systematic review and meta-analysis of 51 RCTs (3,603 patients) compared antidepressants to placebo in patients with a physical disorder (e.g. cancer, MI) who have been diagnosed as depressed (including major depression, adjustment disorder, and dysthymia).

Conclusions: Antidepressants, including SSRIs and TCAs, cause a significant improvement in patients with a physical illness, as compared to placebo.

- C. during the 2 yr period (1 yr for children or adolescents) of the disturbance, the person has never been without the symptoms in criteria A and B for more than 2 mo at a time
- D. criteria for a major depressive disorder may be continuously present for 2 yr
- E. there has never been a manic episode or a hypomanic episode, and criteria have never been met for cyclothymic disorder
- F. the disturbance is not better explained by a persistent schizoaffective disorder, schizophrenia, delusional disorder, or other specified or unspecified schizophrenia spectrum and other psychotic disorder
- G. the symptoms are not due to the direct physiological effects of a substance or another medical condition
- H. the symptoms cause clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning

Epidemiology

- point prevalence: 3%; life prevalence: 6%; M:F = 1:2-3

Treatment

- psychological
 - principal treatment for persistent depressive disorder
 - individual, group, and family therapy
- biological
 - antidepressant therapy (SSRIs/SNRIs) as an outpatient

Bipolar Disorders

BIPOLAR I / BIPOLAR II DISORDER**Definition**

- Bipolar I Disorder
 - disorder in which at least one manic episode has occurred
 - commonly accompanied by at least 1 MDE but not required for diagnosis
- Bipolar II Disorder
 - disorder in which there is at least 1 MDE and at least 1 hypomanic episode
 - no past manic or mixed episodes

Epidemiology

- prevalence: 0.6-0.9%; M:F = 1:1
- age of onset: teens to 20s

Risk Factors

- high SES
- genetic: 60-65% of bipolar patients have family history of major mood disorders

Classification

- classification of bipolar disorder involves describing the current or most recent mood episode as either manic, hypomanic, or depressed. The same specifiers for MDD can be used

Treatment

- **biological:** lithium, anticonvulsants, antipsychotics, ECT; monotherapy with antidepressants should be avoided
- **psychological:** supportive or psychodynamic psychotherapy, CBT, IPT or interpersonal social rhythm therapy, family focused treatment
- **social:** vocational rehabilitation, consider leave of absence from school/work, assess capacity to manage finances, drug and EtOH cessation, sleep hygiene, social skills training, education for family members

Course and Prognosis

- high suicide rate (15% mortality from suicide)
- relapsing and remitting course with alternating manic and depressive episodes; depressive symptoms tend to occur more frequently and last longer than manic episodes
- patients spend almost half of their lives symptomatic
- may switch rapidly between depression and mania without any period of euthymia in between
- high recurrence rate for mania – 90% will have a subsequent episode in the next 5 yr



Patients with bipolar disorder are at higher risk for suicide when they switch from mania to depression, especially as they become aware of consequences of their behavior during the manic episode



Treatment of bipolar depression must be done extremely cautiously, as a switch from depression to mania can result; monotherapy with antidepressants should be avoided

CYCLOTHYMIA

Diagnosis

- presence of numerous periods of hypomanic and depressive symptoms (not meeting criteria for full hypomanic episode or MDE) for ≥ 2 yr; never without symptoms for >2 mo
- never have met criteria for MDE, manic or hypomanic episodes
- symptoms are not due to the direct physiological effects of a substance or GMC
- symptoms cause clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning

Treatment

- similar to Bipolar I: mood stabilizer \pm psychotherapy

Anxiety Disorders



Definition

- anxiety is a universal human characteristic involving tension, apprehension, or even terror
- serves as an adaptive mechanism to warn about an external threat by activating the sympathetic nervous system (fight or flight)
- manifestations of anxiety can be described through
 - physiology: main brain structure involved is the amygdala (fear conditioning); neurotransmitters involved include 5-HT, cholecystokinin, epinephrine, norepinephrine, DA
 - psychology: one's perception of a given situation is distorted which causes one to believe it is threatening in some way
 - behavior: once feeling threatened, one responds by escaping or facing the situation, thereby causing a disruption in daily functioning
- anxiety becomes pathological when
 - fear is greatly out of proportion to risk/severity of threat
 - response continues beyond existence of threat or becomes generalized to other similar or dissimilar situations
 - social or occupational functioning is impaired

Differential Diagnosis

Table 2. Differential Diagnosis of Anxiety Disorders

Cardiovascular	Post-MI, arrhythmia, congestive heart failure, pulmonary embolus, mitral valve prolapse
Respiratory	Asthma, COPD, pneumonia, hyperventilation
Endocrine	Hyperthyroidism, pheochromocytoma, hypoglycemia, hyperadrenalism, hyperparathyroidism
Metabolic	Vitamin B ₁₂ deficiency, porphyria
Neurologic	Neoplasm, vestibular dysfunction, encephalitis
Substance-Induced	Intoxication (caffeine, amphetamines, cocaine, thyroid preparations, OTC for colds/decongestants), withdrawal (benzodiazepines, alcohol)
Other Psychiatric Disorders	Psychotic disorders, mood disorders, personality disorders (OCPD), somatoform disorders

Medical Workup of Anxiety Disorder

- routine screening: physical exam, CBC, thyroid function test, electrolytes, urinalysis, urine drug screening
- additional screening: neurological consultation, chest x-ray, ECG, CT

Panic Disorder

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Panic Disorder

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. recurrent unexpected panic attacks; a panic attack is an abrupt surge of intense fear or intense discomfort that reaches a peak within minutes, and during which time four (or more) of the following symptoms occur
 - palpitations, pounding heart, or accelerated heart rate
 - sweating
 - trembling or shaking
 - sensations of shortness of breath or smothering
 - feelings of choking
 - chest pain or discomfort
 - nausea or abdominal distress

- feeling dizzy, unsteady, light-headed, or faint
 - chills or heat sensations
 - paresthesias (numbness or tingling sensations)
 - derealization (feelings of unreality) or depersonalization (being detached from oneself)
 - fear of losing control or “going crazy”
 - fear of dying
- B. at least one of the attacks has been followed by ≥ 1 mo of one or both of the following
- persistent concern or worry about additional panic attacks or their consequences
 - a significant maladaptive change in behavior related to the attacks
- C. the disturbance is not attributable to the physiological effects of a substance or another medical condition
- D. the disturbance is not better explained by another mental disorder

Epidemiology

- prevalence: 2-5% (one of the top five most common reasons to see a family doctor); M:F = 1:2-3
- onset: average early-mid 20s, familial pattern

Treatment

- psychological
 - CBT: interoceptive exposure (eliciting symptoms of a panic attack and learning to tolerate the symptoms without coping strategies); cognitive restructuring (addressing underlying beliefs regarding the panic attacks), relaxation techniques (visualization, box-breathing)
- pharmacological
 - SSRIs: fluoxetine, citalopram, paroxetine, fluvoxamine, sertraline
 - SNRI: venlafaxine
 - with SSRI/SNRIs start with low doses, titrate up slowly
 - anxiety disorders often require treatment at higher doses for a longer period of time than depression (i.e. full response may take up to 12 wk)
 - to prevent non-compliance due to physical side effects, explain symptoms to expect prior to initiation of therapy
 - other antidepressants (TCAs, mirtazapine, MAOIs)
 - ♦ consider avoiding bupropion due to stimulating effects
 - benzodiazepines (short-term, low dose, regular schedule, long half-life, avoid prn use)

Prognosis

- 6-10 yr post-treatment: 30% well, 40-50% improved, 20-30% no change or worse
- clinical course: chronic, but episodic with psychosocial stressors



Criteria for Panic Disorder (≥ 4)

STUDENTS FEAR the 3 Cs

Sweating

Trembling

Unsteadiness, dizziness

Depersonalization, Derealization

Excessive heart rate, palpitations

Nausea

Tingling

Shortness of breath

Fear of dying, losing control, going crazy

3 Cs: Chest pain, Chills, Choking



Panic Attack vs. Panic Disorder

Panic disorder consists of panic attacks + other criteria

Panic attack is not a codable disorder and can occur in the context of many different disorders



Starting Medication for Anxiety

Start low, go slow, aim high and explain symptoms to expect prior to initiation of therapy

Agoraphobia

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Agoraphobia

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. marked fear or anxiety about two (or more) of the following five situations
- using public transportation
 - being in open spaces
 - being in enclosed places
 - standing in line or being in a crowd
 - being outside of the home alone
- B. the individual fears or avoids these situations because of thoughts that escape might be difficult or help might not be available in the event of developing panic-like symptoms or other incapacitating or embarrassing symptoms
- C. the agoraphobic situations almost always provoke fear or anxiety
- D. the agoraphobic situations are actively avoided, require the presence of a companion, or are endured with intense fear or anxiety
- E. the fear or anxiety is out of proportion to the actual danger posed by the agoraphobic situations and to the sociocultural context
- F. the fear, anxiety, or avoidance is persistent, typically lasting for ≥ 6 mo
- G. the fear, anxiety, or avoidance causes clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning
- H. if another medical condition is present, the fear, anxiety, or avoidance is clearly excessive
- I. the fear, anxiety, or avoidance is not better explained by the symptoms of another mental disorder and are not related exclusively to obsessions, perceived defects or flaws in physical appearance, reminders of traumatic events, or fear of separation
- Note:** agoraphobia is diagnosed irrespective of the presence of panic disorder. If an individual's presentation meets criteria for panic disorder and agoraphobia, both diagnoses should be assigned
- **treatment:** as per panic disorder

Generalized Anxiety Disorder

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Generalized Anxiety Disorder

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. excessive anxiety and worry (apprehensive expectation), occurring more days than not for at least 6 mo, about a number of events or activities (such as work or school performance)
- B. the individual finds it difficult to control the worry
- C. the anxiety and worry are associated with three (or more) of the following six symptoms (with at least some symptoms having been present for more days than not for the past 6 mo)
 - 1. restlessness or feeling keyed up or on edge
 - 2. being easily fatigued
 - 3. difficulty concentrating or mind going blank
 - 4. irritability
 - 5. muscle tension
 - 6. sleep disturbance (difficulty falling or staying asleep, or restless, unsatisfying sleep)
- D. the anxiety, worry, or physical symptoms cause clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning
- E. the disturbance is not attributable to the physiological effects of a substance or another medical condition
- F. the disturbance is not better explained by another mental disorder



Criteria for GAD (≥ 3)

BE SKIM

Blank mind
Easily fatigued
Sleep disturbance
Keyed up
Irritability
Muscle tension

Epidemiology

- 1 yr prevalence: 3-8%; M:F = 1:2
 - if considering only those receiving inpatient treatment, ratio is 1:1
- most commonly presents in early adulthood

Treatment

- lifestyle: caffeine and EtOH avoidance, sleep hygiene
- psychological: CBT including relaxation techniques, mindfulness
- biological
 - SSRIs and SNRIs are 1st line (paroxetine, escitalopram, sertraline, venlafaxine XL)
 - 2nd line: bupropion (caution due to stimulating effects), buspirone (tid dosing)
 - add-on benzodiazepines (short-term, low dose, regular schedule, long half-life, avoid prn)
 - β -blockers not recommended

Prognosis

- chronically anxious adults become less so with age
- depends on pre-morbid personality functioning, stability of relationships, work, and severity of environmental stress
- difficult to treat

Phobic Disorders

Specific Phobia

- definition: marked and persistent fear that is excessive or unreasonable, cued by presence or anticipation of a specific object or situation
- lifetime prevalence 12-16%; M:F ratio variable
- types: animal/insect, environment (heights, storms), blood/injection/injury, situational (airplane, closed spaces), other (loud noise, clowns)

Social Phobia (Social Anxiety Disorder)

- definition: marked and persistent fear of social or performance situations in which one is exposed to unfamiliar people or to possible scrutiny by others; fearing he/she will act in a way that may be humiliating or embarrassing (e.g. public speaking, initiating or maintaining conversation, dating, eating in public)
- 12 mo prevalence rate may be as high as 7%; F>M

Diagnostic Criteria for Phobic Disorders

- exposure to stimulus almost invariably provokes an immediate anxiety response; may present as a panic attack
- person recognizes fear as excessive or unreasonable
- situations are avoided or endured with anxiety/distress
- significant interference with daily routine, occupational/social functioning, and/or marked distress

Treatment

- psychological
 - cognitive behavior therapy (focusing on both *in vivo* and virtual exposure therapy, gradually facing feared situations)
 - behavioral therapy is more efficacious than medication
- biological
 - SSRIs/SNRIs
 - β -blockers or benzodiazepines in acute situations (e.g. public speaking)

Prognosis

- chronic

Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. presence of obsessions, compulsions, or both
- obsessions are defined by (1) and (2)
 1. recurrent and persistent thoughts, urges, or images that are experienced, at some time during the disturbance, as intrusive and unwanted, and that in most individuals cause marked anxiety or distress
 2. the individual attempts to ignore or suppress such thoughts, urges, or images, or to neutralize them with some other thought or action (i.e. by performing a compulsion)
 - compulsions are defined by (1) and (2)
 1. repetitive behaviors (e.g. hand washing, ordering, checking) or mental acts (e.g. praying, counting, repeating words silently) that the individual feels driven to perform in response to an obsession or according to rules that must be applied rigidly
 2. the behaviors or mental acts are aimed at preventing or reducing anxiety or distress, or preventing some dreaded event or situation; however, these behaviors or mental acts are not connected in a realistic way with what they are designed to neutralize or prevent, or are clearly excessive
- B. the obsessions or compulsions are time-consuming (e.g. take >1 h/d) or cause clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning
- C. the obsessive-compulsive symptoms are not attributable to the physiological effects
- D. the disturbance is not better explained by the symptoms of another mental disorder

Epidemiology

- 12 mo prevalence 1.1-1.8%; females affected at slightly higher rates than males
- rate of OCD in first-degree relatives is higher than in the general population

Treatment

- CBT: exposure with response prevention (ERP) – involves exposure to feared situations with the addition of preventing the compulsive behaviors; cognitive strategies include challenging underlying beliefs
- pharmacotherapy: SSRIs/SNRIs, clomipramine; adjunctive risperidone

Prognosis

- tends to be refractory and chronic

Trauma- and Stressor-Related Disorders

Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. exposure to actual or threatened death, serious injury, or sexual violence in one (or more) of the following ways
1. directly experiencing the traumatic event(s)
 2. witnessing, in person, the event(s) as it occurred to others
 3. learning that the traumatic event(s) occurred to a close family member or close friend. In cases of actual or threatened death of a family member or friend, the event(s) must have been violent or accidental
 4. experiencing repeated or extreme exposure to aversive details of the traumatic event(s) (e.g. first responders collecting human remains; police officers repeatedly exposed to details of child abuse)

**Acute Stress Disorder**

- May be a precursor to PTSD
- Similar symptoms to PTSD
- Symptoms persist 3 d after a trauma until 1 mo after the exposure

- B. presence of one (or more) of the following intrusion symptoms associated with the traumatic event(s), beginning after the traumatic event(s) occurred
1. recurrent, involuntary, and intrusive distressing memories of the traumatic event(s)
 2. recurrent distressing dreams in which the content and/or affect of the dream are related to the traumatic event(s)
 3. dissociative reactions (e.g. flashbacks) in which the individual feels or acts as if the traumatic event(s) were recurring
 4. intense or prolonged psychological distress at exposure to internal or external cues that symbolize or resemble an aspect of the traumatic event(s)
 5. marked physiological reactions to internal or external cues that symbolize or resemble an aspect of the traumatic event(s)
- C. persistent avoidance of stimuli associated with the traumatic event(s), beginning after the traumatic event(s) occurred, as evidenced by one or both of the following
1. avoidance of or efforts to avoid distressing memories, thoughts, or feelings about or closely associated with the traumatic event(s)
 2. avoidance of or efforts to avoid external reminders (people, places, conversations, activities, objects, situations) that arouse distressing memories, thoughts, or feelings about or closely associated with the traumatic event(s)
- D. negative alterations in cognitions and mood associated with the traumatic event(s), beginning or worsening after the traumatic event(s) occurred, as evidenced by two (or more) of the following
1. inability to remember an important aspect of the traumatic event(s)
 2. persistent and exaggerated negative beliefs or expectations about oneself, others, or the world
 3. persistent, distorted cognitions about the cause or consequences of the traumatic event(s) that lead the individual to blame himself/herself or others
 4. persistent negative emotional state (e.g. fear, horror, anger, guilt, or shame)
 5. markedly diminished interest or participation in significant activities
 6. feelings of detachment or estrangement from others
 7. persistent inability to experience positive emotions
- E. marked alterations in arousal and reactivity associated with the traumatic event(s), beginning or worsening after the traumatic event(s) occurred, as evidenced by two (or more) of the following
1. irritable behavior and angry outbursts (with little or no provocation) typically expressed as verbal or physical aggression toward people or objects
 2. reckless or self-destructive behavior
 3. hypervigilance
 4. exaggerated startle response
 5. problems with concentration
 6. sleep disturbance (e.g. difficulty falling or staying asleep or restless sleep)
- F. duration of the disturbance (criteria B, C, D, and E) is >1 mo
- G. the disturbance causes clinically significant distress or impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of functioning
- H. the disturbance is not attributable to the physiological effects of a substance or another medical condition

**Criteria for Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder****TRAUMA**

Traumatic event

Re-experience the event

Avoidance of stimuli associated with the trauma

Unable to function

More than a Month

Arousal increased

+ negative alterations in cognition and mood

Epidemiology

- lifetime prevalence (DSM-IV criteria): 8.7%
- men's trauma is most commonly combat experience/physical assault; women's trauma is usually physical or sexual assault

Treatment

- CBT: exposure therapy, challenge dysfunctional beliefs, emotional regulation techniques (e.g. breathing, relaxation)
- biological
 - SSRIs
 - benzodiazepines (for acute anxiety)
 - adjunctive atypical antipsychotics (risperidone, olanzapine)
- Eye Movement Desensitization and Reprocessing (EMDR): an experimental method of reprocessing memories of distressing events by recounting them while using a form of dual attention stimulation such as eye movements, bilateral sound, or bilateral tactile stimulation (its use is controversial because of limited evidence)

Complications

- substance abuse, relationship difficulties, depression, impaired social and occupational functioning disorders, personality disorders

Adjustment Disorder



DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Adjustment Disorder

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. the development of emotional or behavioral symptoms in response to an identifiable stressor(s) occurring within 3 mo of the onset of the stressor(s)
- B. these symptoms or behaviors are clinically significant as evidenced by either of the following:
 - marked distress that is in excess of what would be expected from exposure to the stressor
 - significant impairment in social or occupational (academic) functioning
- C. the stress-related disturbance does not meet criteria for another mental disorder and is not merely an exacerbation of a pre-existing mental disorder
- D. the symptoms do not represent normal bereavement
- E. once the stressor (or its consequences) has terminated, the symptoms do not persist for more than an additional 6 mo
- **specifiers:** with depressed mood, with anxiety, with mixed anxiety/depression, with conduct disturbance, with mixed disturbance of conduct/emotions, unspecified

Classification

- types of stressors
 - single (e.g. termination of romantic relationship)
 - multiple (e.g. marked business difficulties and marital problems)
 - recurrent (e.g. seasonal business crises)
 - continuous (e.g. living in a crime-ridden neighborhood)
 - developmental events (e.g. going to school, leaving parental home, getting married, becoming a parent, failing to attain occupational goals, retirement)

Epidemiology

- M=F

Treatment

- brief psychotherapy (group, individual), crisis intervention
- biological
 - benzodiazepines may be used for those with anxiety symptoms (short-term, low-dose, regular schedule)
 - SSRIs for both depression and anxiety symptoms

Bereavement

Clinical Presentation

- length and characteristics of “normal” bereavement are variable between individuals/cultures
- may present with symptoms of MDE/MDD but individual regards depressed mood as normal
- presence of following symptoms may indicate abnormal grief/presence of MDD
 - guilt about things other than actions taken or not taken by the survivor at the time of death
 - thoughts of death other than the survivor feeling that they would be better off dead or should have died with the deceased person; morbid preoccupation with worthlessness
 - marked psychomotor retardation; prolonged and marked functional impairment
 - hallucinatory experiences other than thinking that the survivor hears the voice of or transiently sees the image of the deceased person
- after 12 mo, if patient continues to yearn/long for the deceased, experience intense sorrow/emotional pain in response to the death, remain preoccupied with the deceased or with their circumstance of death, then may start to consider a diagnosis of “persistent complex bereavement disorder”



Risk Factors for Poor Bereavement Outcome

- Poor social supports
- Unanticipated death or lack of preparation for death
- Highly dependent relationship with deceased
- High initial distress
- Other concurrent stresses and losses
- Death of a child
- Pre-existing psychiatric disorders, especially depression and separation anxiety

Neurocognitive Disorders



Delirium



- see [Neurology](#), N19 and [Geriatric Medicine](#), GM3

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Delirium

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- a disturbance in attention (i.e. reduced ability to direct, focus, sustain, and shift attention) and awareness (reduced orientation to the environment)
- the disturbance develops over a short period of time (usually hours to a few days), represents a change from baseline attention and awareness, and tends to fluctuate in severity during the course of a day
- an additional disturbance in cognition (e.g. memory deficit, disorientation, language, visuospatial ability, or perception)
- the disturbances in criteria A and C are not better explained by another preexisting, established, or evolving neurocognitive disorder and do not occur in the context of a severely reduced level of arousal, such as coma
- there is evidence from the history, physical exam, or laboratory findings that the disturbance is a direct physiological consequence of another medical condition, substance intoxication or withdrawal (i.e. due to a drug of abuse or to a medication), or exposure to a toxin, or is due to multiple etiologies

Clinical Presentation and Assessment

- common symptoms
 - wandering attention
 - distractibility
 - disorientation (time, place, rarely person)
 - misinterpretations, illusions, hallucinations
 - speech/language disturbances (dysarthria, dysnomia, dysgraphia)
 - affective symptoms (anxiety, fear, depression, irritability, anger, euphoria, apathy)
 - shifts in psychomotor activity (groping/picking at clothes, attempts to get out of bed when unsafe, sudden movements, sluggishness, lethargy)
- Folstein Mini Mental Status Exam is helpful to assess baseline of altered mental state (i.e. score will improve as symptoms resolve)

Risk Factors

- hospitalization (incidence 10-56%)
- nursing home residents (incidence 60%)
- polypharmacy (e.g. anticholinergic)
- childhood (e.g. febrile illness, anticholinergic use)
- old age (especially males)
- severe illness (e.g. cancer, AIDS)
- pre-existing cognitive impairment or brain pathology
- recent anesthesia
- substance abuse

Etiology (I WATCH DEATH)

- Infectious (encephalitis, meningitis, UTI, pneumonia)
- Withdrawal (alcohol, barbiturates, benzodiazepines)
- Acute metabolic disorder (electrolyte imbalance, hepatic or renal failure)
- Trauma (head injury, post-operative)
- CNS pathology (stroke, hemorrhage, tumor, seizure disorder, Parkinson's)
- Hypoxia (anemia, cardiac failure, pulmonary embolus)
- Deficiencies (vitamin B₁₂, folic acid, thiamine)
- Endocrinopathies (thyroid, glucose, parathyroid, adrenal)
- Acute vascular (shock, vasculitis, hypertensive encephalopathy)
- Toxins: substance use, sedatives, opioids (especially morphine), anesthetics, anticholinergics, anticonvulsants, dopaminergic agents, steroids, insulin, glyburide, antibiotics (especially quinolones), NSAIDs
- Heavy metals (arsenic, lead, mercury)

Investigations

- standard: CBC and differential, electrolytes, Ca²⁺, PO₄³⁻, Mg²⁺, glucose, ESR, LFTs, Cr, BUN, TSH, vitamin B₁₂, folate, albumin, urine C&S, R&M
- as indicated: ECG, CXR, CT head, toxicology/heavy metal screen, VDRL, HIV, LP, EEG (typically abnormal: generalized slowing or fast activity), blood cultures
- indications for CT head: focal neurological deficit, acute change in status, anticoagulant use, acute incontinence, gait abnormality, history of cancer

Management

- intrinsic
 - identify and treat underlying cause immediately
 - stop all non-essential medications
 - maintain nutrition, hydration, electrolyte balance and monitor vitals
- extrinsic
 - environment should be quiet and well lit
 - optimize hearing and vision
 - room near nursing station for closer observation; constant care if patient jumping out of bed, pulling out lines
 - family member present for reassurance and re-orientation
 - calendar, clock for orientation cues
- biological
 - low dose antipsychotics
 - haloperidol has the most evidence; reasonable alternatives include risperidone, olanzapine, or quetiapine
 - benzodiazepines only to be used in alcohol withdrawal delirium; otherwise, can worsen delirium
- physical restraints if patient becomes violent

Prognosis

- up to 50% 1 yr mortality rate after episode of delirium

Major Neurocognitive Disorder/Dementia

- see [Neurology, N19](#)

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Major Neurocognitive Disorder

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- evidence of significant cognitive decline from a previous level of performance in one or more cognitive domains (complex attention, executive function, learning and memory, language, perceptual-motor, or social cognition) based on
 - concern of the individual, a knowledgeable informant, or the clinician that there has been a significant decline in cognitive function; *and*
 - a substantial impairment in cognitive performance, preferably documented by standardized neuropsychological testing or, in its absence, another quantified clinical assessment
 - the cognitive deficits interfere with independence in everyday activities (i.e. at a minimum, requiring assistance with complex instrumental activities of daily living such as paying bills or managing medications)
 - the cognitive deficits do not occur exclusively in the context of a delirium
 - the cognitive deficits are not better explained by another mental disorder (e.g. major depressive disorder, schizophrenia)
- **specify** whether due to

Alzheimer's disease	Traumatic brain injury	Huntington's disease
Frontotemporal lobar degeneration	Substance/medication use	Another medical condition
Lewy body disease	HIV infection	Multiple etiologies
Vascular disease	Prion disease	Unspecified
	Parkinson's disease	

Epidemiology

- prevalence increases with age: 10% in patients >65 yr of age; 25% in patients >85 yr of age
- prevalence is increased in people with Down's syndrome and head trauma
- Alzheimer's disease comprises >50% of cases; vascular causes comprise approximately 15% of cases (other causes of dementia neurocognitive disorder – see [Neurology, N19](#))
- average duration of illness from onset of symptoms to death is 8-10 yr

Subtypes

- with or without behavioral disturbance (e.g. wandering, agitation)
- early onset: age of onset <65 yr
- late onset: age of onset >65 yr

Investigations (Rule Out Reversible Causes)

- standard: see *Delirium*
- as indicated: VDRL, HIV, SPECT, CT head in dementia



Most Common Types of Dementia

- Alzheimer's dementia
- Vascular dementia
- Lewy body dementia
- Fronto-temporal dementia



The 4 As of Dementia

Amnesia
Aphasia
Apraxia
Agnosia



- indications for CT head: same as for delirium, plus: age <60, rapid onset (unexplained decline in cognition or function over 1-2 mo), dementia of relatively short duration (<2 yr), recent significant head trauma, unexplained neurological symptoms (new onset of severe headache/seizures)

Management

- see [Neurology, N22](#) for further management
- treat underlying medical problems and prevent others
- provide orientation cues for patient (e.g. clock, calendar)
- provide education and support for patient and family (e.g. day programs, respite care, support groups, home care)
- consider long-term care plan (nursing home) and power of attorney/living will
- inform Ministry of Transportation about patient's inability to drive safely
- consider pharmacological therapy
 - cholinesterase inhibitors (e.g. donepezil [Aricept®]) for mild to severe disease
 - NMDA receptor antagonist (e.g. memantine) for moderate to severe disease
 - low-dose neuroleptics (e.g. risperidone, quetiapine), antidepressants or trazodone if behavioral or emotional symptoms prominent – start low and go slow
 - reassess pharmacological therapy every 3 mo



Table 3. Comparison of Dementia, Delirium, and Pseudodementia of Depression

	Dementia/Major Neurocognitive Disorder	Delirium	Pseudodementia of Depression
Onset	Gradual/step-wise decline	Acute (h-d)	Subacute
Duration	Months-years	Days-weeks	Variable
Natural History	Progressive Usually irreversible	Fluctuating, reversible High morbidity/mortality in very old	Recurrent Usually reversible
Level of Consciousness	Normal	Fluctuating (over 24 h)	Normal
Attention	Not initially affected	Decreased (wandering, easy distraction)	Difficulty concentrating
Orientation	Intact initially	Impaired (usually to time and place), fluctuates	Intact
Behavior	Disinhibition, impairment in ADL/IADL, personality change, loss of social graces	Severe agitation/retardation	Importuning, self-harm/suicide
Psychomotor	Normal	Fluctuates between extremes	Slowing
Sleep Wake Cycle	Fragmented sleep at night	Reversed sleep wake cycle	Early morning awakening
Mood and Affect	Labile but not usually anxious	Anxious, irritable, fluctuating	Depressed, stable
Cognition	Decreased executive functioning, paucity of thought	Fluctuating preceded by mood changes	Fluctuating
Memory Loss	Recent, eventually remote	Marked recent	Recent
Language	Agnosia, aphasia, decreased comprehension, repetition, speech (echolalia, palilalia)	Dysnomia, dysgraphia, speech rambling, irrelevant, incoherent, subject changes	Not affected
Delusions	Compensatory	Nightmarish and poorly formed	Nihilistic, somatic
Hallucinations	Variable	Visual common	Less common, auditory predominates
Quality of Hallucinations	Vacuous/bland	Frightening/bizarre	Self-deprecatory
Medical Status	Variable	Acute illness, drug toxicity	Rule out systemic illness, medications

Substance-Related and Addictive Disorders



Epidemiology

- 47% of those with substance abuse have mental health problems
- 29% of those with a mental health disorder have a substance use disorder
- 47% of those with schizophrenia and 25% of those with an anxiety disorder have a substance use disorder

Substance Use Disorders

- substance use disorders are measured on a continuum from mild to severe; 2-3 criteria is required for a mild substance use disorder diagnosis, 4-5 is moderate, and 6-7 is severe
- each specific substance can be addressed as a separate use disorder (e.g. alcohol use disorder, stimulant use disorder) and diagnosed utilizing the same overarching criteria
- criteria for substance use disorders
 - hazardous use

- social/interpersonal problems related to use
- neglected major roles to use
- withdrawal
- tolerance
- use large amounts/longer
- repeated attempts to quit/control use
- use for longer duration/larger amount than intended
- physical/psychological problems related to use
- activities given up to use
- cravings

Classification of Substances

Depressants	Alcohol, Opioids, Barbiturates, Benzodiazepines, GHB
Stimulants	Amphetamines, Methylphenidate, Cocaine
Hallucinogens	Cannabis, LSD, PCP, Ketamine, Psilocybin

Nicotine

- see [Family Medicine](#), FM10



Alcohol

- see [Family Medicine](#), FM12 and [Emergency Medicine](#), ER53



History

- CAGE: validated screening questionnaire
 - C ever felt the need to Cut down on drinking?
 - A ever felt Annoyed at criticism of your drinking?
 - G ever feel Guilty about your drinking?
 - E ever need a drink first thing in morning (Eye opener)?
 - for men, a score of ≥ 2 is a positive screen; for women, a score of ≥ 1 is a positive screen
 - if positive CAGE, then assess further to distinguish between problem drinking and alcohol dependence

General Assessment

- When was your last drink?
- Do you have to drink more to get the same effect?
- Do you get shaky or nauseous when you stop drinking?
- Have you ever had a withdrawal seizure?
- How much time and effort do you put into obtaining alcohol?
- Has your drinking affected your ability to work, go to school, or have relationships?
- Have you suffered any legal consequences?
- Has your drinking caused any medical problems?

Table 4. Canada's Low-Risk Alcohol Drinking Guidelines

Moderate Drinking		
Men: 3 or less/d (≤ 15 /wk)	Women: 2 or less/d (≤ 10 /wk)	Elderly: 1 or less/d

Alcohol Intoxication

- legal limit for impaired driving is 10.6 mmol/L (50 mg/dL) reached by 2-3 drinks/h for men and 1-2 drinks/h for women
- coma can occur with >60 mmol/L (non-tolerant drinkers) and 90-120 mmol/L (tolerant drinkers)

Alcohol Withdrawal

- occurs within 12-48 h after prolonged heavy drinking and can be life-threatening
- alcohol withdrawal can be described as having 4 stages, however not all stages may be experienced
 - stage 1 (onset 12-18 h after last drink): "the shakes" tremor, sweating, agitation, anorexia, cramps, diarrhea, sleep disturbance
 - stage 2 (onset 7-38 h): alcohol withdrawal seizures, usually tonic-clonic, nonfocal and brief
 - stage 3 (onset 48 h): visual, auditory, olfactory or tactile hallucinations
 - stage 4 (onset 3-5 d): delirium tremens, confusion, delusions, hallucinations, agitation, tremors, autonomic hyperactivity (fever, tachycardia, HTN)
- course: almost completely reversible in young; elderly often left with cognitive deficits
- mortality rate 20% if untreated



Make sure to ask about other alcohols: mouthwash, rubbing alcohol, methanol, ethylene glycol, aftershave (may be used as a cheaper alternative)



A "Standard Drink"

Spirit (40%): 1.5 oz. or 43 mL
 Table Wine (12%): 5 oz. or 142 mL
 Fortified Wine (18%): 3 oz. or 85 mL
 Regular Beer (5%): 12 oz. or 341 mL

OR

1 pint of beer = 1.5 SD
 1 bottle of wine = 5 SD
 1 "mickey" = 8 SD
 "26-er" = 17 SD
 "40 oz." = 27 SD



Delirium Tremens (Alcohol Withdrawal Delirium)

- Autonomic hyperactivity (diaphoresis, tachycardia, increased respiration)
- Hand tremor
- Insomnia
- Psychomotor agitation
- Anxiety
- Nausea or vomiting
- Tonic-clonic seizures
- Visual/tactile/auditory hallucinations
- Persecutory delusions

Management of Alcohol Withdrawal

- monitor using the Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment for Alcohol (CIWA-A) scoring system
 - areas of assessment include
 - ♦ nausea and vomiting
 - ♦ tactile disturbances
 - ♦ tremor
 - ♦ auditory disturbances
 - ♦ agitation
 - ♦ paroxysmal sweats
 - ♦ visual disturbances
 - ♦ anxiety
 - ♦ headache, fullness in head
 - ♦ orientation and clouding of sensorium
 - all categories are scored from 0-7 (except: orientation/sensorium 0-4), maximum score of 67
 - ♦ mild <10
 - ♦ moderate 10-20
 - ♦ severe >20

Table 5. CIWA-A Scale Treatment Protocol for Alcohol Withdrawal

Basic Protocol	Diazepam 20 mg PO q1-2h prn until CIWA-A <10 points Observe 1-2 h after last dose and re-assess on CIWA-A scale Thiamine 100 mg IM then 100 mg PO OD for 3 d Supportive care (hydration and nutrition)
History of Withdrawal Seizures	Diazepam 20 mg PO q1h for minimum of three doses regardless of subsequent CIWA scores
If age >65 or patient has severe liver disease, severe asthma or respiratory failure	Use a short acting benzodiazepine Lorazepam PO/SL/IM 1-4 mg q1-2h
If Hallucinations are present	Haloperidol 2-5 mg IM/PO q1-4h – max 5 doses/d or atypical antipsychotics (olanzapine, risperidone) Diazepam 20 mg x 3 doses as seizure prophylaxis (haloperidol lowers seizure threshold)
Admit to Hospital if	Still in withdrawal after >80 mg of diazepam Delirium tremens, recurrent arrhythmias, or multiple seizures Medically ill or unsafe to discharge home

Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome

- alcohol-induced amnesic disorders due to thiamine deficiency
- necrotic lesions: mammillary bodies, thalamus, brainstem
- Wernicke's encephalopathy (acute and reversible): triad of nystagmus (CN VI palsy), ataxia, and confusion
- Korsakoff's syndrome (chronic and only 20% reversible with treatment): anterograde amnesia and confabulations; cannot occur during an acute delirium or dementia and must persist beyond usual duration of intoxication/withdrawal
- management
 - Wernicke's: thiamine 100 mg PO OD x 1-2 wk
 - Korsakoff's: thiamine 100 mg PO bid/tid x 3-12 mo

Treatment of Alcohol Use Disorder

- **non-pharmacological**
 - psychotherapy: motivational enhancement therapy (MET; increasing motivation to change), CBT (assertiveness training, increasing social support, planning leisure activities), marital and family therapy
 - behavior therapy: contingency management, community reinforcement approach (CRA)
 - supportive services: counseling, detoxification centers, Alcoholics Anonymous
 - inpatient programs (e.g. 28-day programs)
 - ♦ individual readiness for change must always be considered with non-pharmacological interventions (see Prochaska's Stages of Change Model, [Population Health and Epidemiology, PH6](#))
- **pharmacological**
 - naltrexone (Revia®): opioid antagonist, shown to be successful in reducing the "high" associated with alcohol, moderately effective in reducing cravings, frequency or intensity of alcohol binges
 - disulfiram (Antabuse®): blocks oxidation of alcohol (blocks acetaldehyde dehydrogenase); with alcohol consumption, acetaldehyde accumulates to cause a toxic reaction (vomiting, tachycardia, death); if patient relapses, must wait 48 h before restarting Antabuse®
 - acamprostate (Campral®): NMDA glutamate receptor antagonist; useful in maintaining abstinence and decreasing cravings



Opioids

- types of opioids: heroin, morphine, oxycodone, Tylenol #3* (codeine), hydromorphone
- major risks associated with the use of contaminated needles: increased risk of hepatitis B and C, bacterial endocarditis, HIV/AIDS

Acute Intoxication

- direct effect on receptors in CNS resulting in decreased pain perception, sedation, decreased sex drive, nausea/vomiting, decreased GI motility (constipation and anorexia), and respiratory depression

Toxic Reaction

- typical syndrome includes shallow respirations, miosis, bradycardia, hypothermia, decreased level of consciousness
- management
 - ABCs
 - IV glucose
 - naloxone hydrochloride (Narcan®): 0.4 mg up to 2 mg IV for diagnosis
 - treatment: intubation and mechanical ventilation, ± naloxone drip, until patient alert without naloxone (>48 h with long-acting opioids)
- caution with longer half-life; may need to observe for toxic reaction for at least 24 h

Withdrawal

- symptoms: depression, insomnia, drug-craving, myalgias, nausea, chills, autonomic instability (lacrimation, rhinorrhea, piloerection)
- onset: 6-12 h; duration: 5-10 d
- complications: loss of tolerance (overdose on relapse), miscarriage, premature labor
- management: long-acting oral opioids (methadone, buprenorphine), α-adrenergic agonists (clonidine)

Treatment of Opioid Use Disorder

- psychosocial treatment (e.g. Narcotics Anonymous) usually emphasize total abstinence
- naltrexone or naloxone (opioid antagonists) may also be used to extinguish drug-seeking behavior
- long-term treatment may include withdrawal maintenance treatment with methadone or buprenorphine
- Suboxone® formulation includes naloxone in addition to buprenorphine, in an effort to prevent injection of the drug. When naloxone is injected, it will precipitate opiate withdrawal and block the opiate effect of buprenorphine, however it will not have this antagonist action when taken sublingually



Opioid Antagonists: Naltrexone vs. Naloxone

Naltrexone (Revia®)

- Used for opioid and EtOH dependence
- Long half life (h)

Naloxone (Narcan®):

- Used for life-threatening CNS/respiratory depression in opioid overdose
- Short half life (<1 h)
- Very fast acting (min)
- High affinity for opioid receptor
- Induces opioid withdrawal symptoms

Cocaine

- street names: blow, C, coke, crack, flake, freebase, rock, snow
- alkaloid extracted from leaves of the coca plant; blocks presynaptic uptake of dopamine (causing euphoria), norepinephrine and epinephrine (causing vasospasm, HTN)
- self-administered by inhalation or intravenous route

Intoxication

- elation, euphoria, pressured speech, restlessness, sympathetic stimulation (e.g. tachycardia, mydriasis, sweating)
- prolonged use may result in paranoia and psychosis

Overdose

- medical emergency: HTN, tachycardia, tonic-clonic seizures, dyspnea, and ventricular arrhythmias
- treatment with IV diazepam to control seizures and propranolol or labetalol to manage HTN and arrhythmias

Withdrawal

- initial "crash" (1-48 h): increased sleep, increased appetite
- withdrawal (1-10 wk): dysphoric mood plus fatigue, irritability, vivid unpleasant dreams, insomnia or hypersomnia, psychomotor agitation or retardation
- complications: relapse, suicide (significant increase in suicide during withdrawal period)
- management: supportive management

Treatment of Cocaine Use Disorder

- psychotherapy, group therapy, NA, and behavior modification useful in maintaining abstinence



Common Presentations of Drug Use

System	Findings
General	Weight loss (especially cocaine, heroin) Injected conjunctiva (cannabis) Pinpoint pupils (opioids) Track marks (injection drugs)
MSK	Trauma
GI	Viral hepatitis (injection drugs) Unexplained elevations in ALT (injection drugs)
Behavioral	Missed appointments Non-compliance Drug-seeking (especially benzodiazepines, opioids)
Psychological	Insomnia Fatigue Depression Flat affect (benzodiazepines, barbiturates) Paranoia (cocaine) Psychosis (cocaine, cannabis, hallucinogens)
Social	Marital discord Family violence Work/school Absenteeism and poor performance

Complications

- cardiovascular: arrhythmias, MI, CVA, ruptured AAA
- neurologic: seizures
- psychiatric: psychosis, paranoia, delirium, suicidal ideation

Amphetamines

- intoxication characterized by euphoria, improved concentration, sympathetic and behavioral hyperactivity and at high doses can cause coma
- chronic use can produce a paranoid psychosis which can resemble schizophrenia with agitation, paranoia, delusions and hallucinations
- withdrawal symptoms include dysphoria, fatigue, and restlessness
- treatment of stimulant psychosis: antipsychotics

Cannabis

- cannabis (marijuana) is the most commonly used illicit drug
- psychoactive substance: delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (Δ^9 -THC)
- intoxication characterized by tachycardia, conjunctival vascular engorgement, dry mouth, altered sensorium, increased appetite, increased sense of well-being, euphoria/laughter, muscle relaxation, impaired performance on psychomotor tasks including driving
- high doses can cause depersonalization, paranoia, anxiety and may trigger psychosis and schizophrenia if predisposed
- chronic use associated with tolerance and an apathetic, amotivational state
- cessation does produce a significant withdrawal phenomenon
- treatment of cannabis use disorder: behavioral and psychological interventions to maintain an abstinent state

Hallucinogens

- types of hallucinogens: LSD, mescaline, psilocybin mushrooms, PCP, salvia
- LSD is a highly potent drug; intoxication characterized by tachycardia, HTN, mydriasis, tremor, hyperpyrexia, and a variety of perceptual and mood changes
- high doses can cause depersonalization, paranoia, and anxiety
- no specific withdrawal syndrome characterized
- treatment of agitation and psychosis: support, reassurance, diminished stimulation; benzodiazepines or high potency antipsychotics seldom required

“Club Drugs”

Table 6. The Mechanism and Effects of Common “Club Drugs”

Drug	Mechanism	Effect	Adverse Effects
MDMA (“Ecstasy”, “X”, “E”)	Acts on serotonergic and dopaminergic pathways, properties of a hallucinogen and stimulant	Enhanced sensorium; feelings of well-being, empathy	Sweating, tachycardia fatigue, muscle spasms (especially jaw clenching), ataxia, hyperthermia, arrhythmias, DIC, rhabdomyolysis, renal failure, seizures, death
Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB, “G”, “Liquid Ecstasy”)	Biphasic dopamine response (inhibition then release) and releases opiate-like substance	Euphoric effects, increased aggression, impaired judgment	Sweating, tachycardia, fatigue, muscle spasms (especially jaw clenching), ataxia, severe withdrawal from abrupt cessation of high doses: tremor, seizures, psychosis
Flunitrazepam (Rohypnol®, “Roofies”, “Rope”, “The Forget Pill”)	Potent benzodiazepine, rapid oral absorption	Sedation, psychomotor impairment, amnesic effects, decreased sexual inhibition	CNS depression with EtOH
Ketamine (“Special K”, “Kit-Kat”)	NMDA receptor antagonist, rapid-acting general anesthetic used in pediatrics and by veterinarians	“Dissociative” state, profound amnesia/analgesia; hallucinations and sympathomimetic effects	Psychological distress, accidents due to intensity of experience and lack of bodily control, in overdose, decreased LOC, respiratory depression, catatonia



Medical Uses of Marijuana

- Anorexia-cachexia (AIDS, cancer)
- Spasticity, muscle spasms (multiple sclerosis, spinal cord injury)
- Levodopa-induced dyskinesia (Parkinson's Disease)
- Controlling tics and obsessive-compulsive behavior (Tourette's syndrome)
- Reducing intra-ocular pressure (glaucoma)



Cannabis Use and Risk of Psychotic or Affective Mental Health Outcomes: A Systematic Review

The Lancet 2007;370:319-328

Purpose: To review the evidence for cannabis use and occurrence of psychotic or affective mental health outcomes.

Study Characteristics: A meta-analysis of 35 population-based longitudinal studies, or case-control studies nested within longitudinal designs.

Results: There was an increased risk of any psychotic outcome in individuals who had ever used cannabis (pooled adjusted odds ratio = 1.41, 95% CI 1.20-1.65). Findings were consistent with a dose-response effect, with greater risk in people who used cannabis more frequently (2.09, 95% CI 1.54-2.84). Findings for depression, suicidal thoughts, and anxiety outcomes were less consistent. In both cases (psychotic and affective outcomes), a substantial confounding effect was present.

Conclusions: The findings are consistent with the view that cannabis increases risk of psychotic outcomes independent of transient intoxication effects, although evidence is less strong for affective outcomes. Although cannabis use and the development of psychosis are strongly associated, it is difficult to determine causality and it is possible that the association results from confounding factors or bias. The authors did conclude that there is sufficient evidence to warn young people that using cannabis could increase their risk of developing a psychotic illness later in life.



Date Rape Drugs

- GHB
- Flunitrazepam (Rohypnol®)
- Ketamine



Formication

Tactile hallucination that insects or snakes are crawling over or under the skin (especially associated with crystal meth use)



Pharm Party

An increasing trend among teenagers where assorted prescription medications are brought to a party and ingested at random

Table 6. The Mechanism and Effects of Common "Club Drugs" (continued)

Drug	Mechanism	Effect	Adverse Effects
Methamphetamine ("speed", "meth", "chalk", "ice", "crystal")	Amphetamine stimulant, induces norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin release	Rush begins in min, effects last 6-8 h, increased activity, decreased appetite, general sense of well-being, tolerance occurs quickly, users often binge and crash	Short-term use: high agitation, rage, violent behavior, occasionally hyperthermia and convulsions Long-term use: addiction, anxiety, confusion, insomnia, paranoia, auditory and tactile hallucinations (especially formication), delusions, mood disturbance, suicidal and homicidal thoughts, stroke, may be contaminated with lead, and IV users may present with acute lead poisoning
Phencyclidine ("PCP", "angel dust")	Not understood, used by veterinarians to immobilize large animals	Amnestic, euphoric, hallucinatory state	Horizontal/vertical nystagmus, myoclonus, ataxia, autonomic instability (treat with diazepam IV), prolonged agitated psychosis (treat with haloperidol); high risk for suicide; violence towards others High dose can cause coma

Somatic Symptom and Related Disorders

General Characteristics

- physical signs and symptoms lacking a known medical basis in the presence of psychological factors that are judged to be important in the initiation, exacerbation, or maintenance of the disturbance
- cause significant distress or impairment in functioning
- symptoms are produced unconsciously and are not the result of malingering or factitious disorder
- primary gain: somatic symptom represents a symbolic resolution of an unconscious psychological conflict; serves to reduce anxiety and conflict with no external incentive
- secondary gain: the sick role; external benefits obtained or unpleasant duties avoided (e.g. work)

Management of Somatic Symptom and Related Disorders

- brief frequent visits
- limit number of physicians involved in care
- focus on psychosocial not physical symptoms
- minimize medical investigations; coordinate necessary investigations
- psychotherapy: CBT, biofeedback, conflict resolution
- minimize psychotropic drugs: anxiolytics in short-term only, antidepressants for depressive and anxiety symptoms



Malingering: intentional production of false or grossly exaggerated physical or psychological symptoms, motivated by external reward (e.g. avoiding work, obtaining financial compensation, or obtaining drugs)

Factitious Disorder: intentional production or feigning of physical or psychological signs or symptoms

Somatic Symptom Disorder

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Somatic Symptom Disorder

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- one or more somatic symptoms that are distressing or result in significant disruption of daily life
 - excessive thoughts, feelings, or behaviors related to the somatic symptoms or associated health concerns as manifested by at least one of the following
 - disproportionate and persistent thoughts about the seriousness of one's symptoms
 - persistently high level of anxiety about health or symptoms
 - excessive time and energy devoted to these symptoms or health concerns
 - although any one somatic symptom may not be continuously present, the state of being symptomatic is persistent (typically >6 mo)
- symptoms may or may not be associated with another medical condition
 - lifetime prevalence may be around 5-7% in the general adult population
 - females tend to report more somatic symptoms than males do, cultural factors may influence sex ratio
 - complications: anxiety, depression, unnecessary medications or surgery
 - often a misdiagnosis for an insidious illness so rule out all organic illnesses (e.g. multiple sclerosis)

Illness Anxiety Disorder (formerly Hypochondriasis)

- preoccupation with fear of having, or the idea that one has, a serious disease based on a misinterpretation of one or more bodily signs or symptoms
- evidence does not support diagnosis of a physical disorder
- fear of having a disease despite medical reassurance
- belief is not of delusional intensity (as in delusional disorder, somatic type) as person acknowledges unrealistic interpretation
- duration is ≥ 6 mo; onset in 3rd-4th decade of life
- community prevalence 1.1-4.5%; prevalence in general medical practice 4-9%; higher in psychiatric settings
- role for SSRIs due to anxiety

Conversion Disorder (Functional Neurological Symptom Disorder)

- one or more symptoms or deficits affecting voluntary motor or sensory function that mimic a neurological or GMC (e.g. impaired co-ordination, local paralysis, double vision, seizures, or convulsions)
- does not need to be preceded by a psychological event as per previous DSM criteria
- 2-5/100,000 in general population; 5% of referrals to neurology clinics
- more common in rural populations and in individuals with little medical knowledge
- spontaneous remission in 95% of acute cases, 50% of chronic cases (>6 mo)

Dissociative Disorders

Definition

- dissociation so severe that the usually integrated functions of consciousness and perception of self break down
- sudden or gradual onset, transient or chronic course
- symptoms cause distress or impaired functioning
- differential diagnosis: PTSD, acute stress disorder, somatization disorder, substance abuse, GMC (e.g. complex/partial seizures)

Table 7. Dissociative Disorders

	Amnesia	Fugue	Identity Disorder	Depersonalization/Derealization Disorder
Diagnosis	Inability to recall important personal information, usually of a traumatic or stressful nature; may be localized, selective, or generalized	Sudden, unexpected travel away from home or workplace with inability to recall some or all of one's past; may assume new identity	Two or more distinct personalities that take control of an individual's behavior; amnesia regarding personal history (i.e. Multiple Personality Disorder)	Persistent or recurrent experiences of feeling detached from one's mental processes or body (i.e. like being in a dream)
Epidemiology	6% prevalence Increased in survivors of trauma (war, abuse)	0.2% prevalence May occur under traumatic circumstances (combat, rape, natural disasters)	1.3% prevalence, M:F=1.3:9 May have history of physical or sexual abuse	Rare disorder Approximately 50% of adults have experienced a single brief episode of depersonalization, precipitated by extreme stress
Treatment	Psychotherapy, hypnosis No proven role for barbiturates/ pharmacologically-assisted interviewing	Usually spontaneous recovery Psychotherapy, hypnosis Ensure stability and safety No proven role for barbiturates/ pharmacologically-assisted interviewing	Three stages: symptom stabilization, attention to trauma, reintegration Psychotherapy, hypnosis Symptom-oriented adjuvants (antidepressants, anxiolytics) No proven role for barbiturates/ pharmacologically-assisted interviewing	Psychotherapy Pharmacotherapy: clonazepam, fluoxetine, clomipramine

Sleep Disorders

- see [Neurology](#), N45

Criteria for Diagnosis

- causes significant distress or impairment in functioning
- not due to medications, drugs, or a GMC



Nocturnal Myoclonus

- middle-aged and elderly
- myoclonic jerks every 20-40 s
- bed partner complaints
- treatment: benzodiazepines (clonazepam, nitrazepam)

Narcolepsy

- see [Neurology](#), N47



Primary Insomnia

- see [Family Medicine](#), FM47



Sleep Apnea

- see [Respirology](#), R31



Sexuality and Gender



Gender Dysphoria

- refers to the distress that may coincide with conflict between one's experienced/expressed gender and one's assigned gender
- **typical presentation**
 - strong and persistent cross-gender identification
 - desire to be rid of primary/secondary sex characteristics and to gain the primary/secondary sex characteristics of their identified gender
 - repeated stated desire or insistence that one is of the opposite sex
 - preference for cross-dressing, cross-gender roles in make-believe play
 - intense desire to participate in the stereotypical games and pastimes of the opposite sex
 - strong preference for playmates of the opposite sex
 - significant distress or impairment in functioning and persistent discomfort with his or her sex or gender role
- **treatment**
 - psychotherapy
 - hormonal therapy
 - sexual reassignment surgery

Paraphilic Disorders

- **definition:** intense and persistent sexual interest other than sexual interest in genital stimulation or preparatory fondling with phenotypically normal, physically mature, consenting human partners
- **paraphilic disorder:** paraphilia that causes distress or functional impairment to the individual, or a paraphilia whose realization entails personal harm, or risk of harm to others
- **subtypes:** voyeuristic, exhibitionistic, frotteuristic, sexual masochism, sexual sadism, pedophilic, fetishistic, transvestic, other specified paraphilic disorder, unspecified paraphilic disorder
- rarely self-referred; come to medical attention through interpersonal or legal conflict
- person usually has more than one paraphilia; 5% of paraphilias attributed to women
- **typical presentation**
 - begins in childhood or early adolescence; increasing in complexity and stability with age
 - chronic, decreases with advancing age but may increase with stress
- **treatment**
 - anti-androgen drugs
 - behavior modification
 - psychotherapy

SEXUAL DYSFUNCTION

- see [Gynecology](#), GY30 and [Urology](#), U30



Eating Disorders



Epidemiology

- anorexia nervosa (AN): 1% of adolescent and young adult females; onset 13-20 yr old
- bulimia nervosa (BN): 2-4% of adolescent and young adult females; onset 16-18 yr old
- F:M=10:1; mortality 5-10%

Etiology

- multifactorial: psychological, sociological, and biological associations
- individual: perfectionism, lack of control in other life areas, history of sexual abuse
- personality: obsessive-compulsive, histrionic, borderline
- familial: maintenance of weight equilibrium and control in dysfunctional family
- cultural factors: prevalent in industrialized societies, idealization of thinness in the media
- genetic factors
 - AN: 6% prevalence in siblings, with one study of twin pairs finding concordance in 9 of 12 monozygotic pairs vs. concordance in 1 of 14 dizygotic pairs
 - BN: higher familial incidence of affective disorders than the general population

Risk Factors

- physical factors: obesity, chronic medical illness (e.g. DM)
- psychological factors: individuals who by career choice are expected to be thin, family history (mood disorders, eating disorders, substance abuse), history of sexual abuse, homosexual males, competitive athletes, concurrent associated mental illness (depression, OCD, anxiety disorder [especially panic and agoraphobia], substance abuse [specifically for BN])

Anorexia Nervosa

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Anorexia Nervosa

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- restriction of energy intake relative to requirements, leading to a significantly low body weight in the context of age, sex, developmental trajectory, and physical health. Significantly low weight is defined as a weight that is less than minimally normal or, for children and adolescents, less than that minimally expected
 - intense fear of gaining weight or of becoming fat, or persistent behavior that interferes with weight gain, even though at a significantly low weight
 - disturbance in the way in which one's body weight or shape is experienced, undue influence of body weight or shape on self-evaluation, or persistent lack of recognition of the seriousness of the current low body weight
- **specifiers:** partial remission, full remission, severity based on BMI (mild = BMI $>17 \text{ kg/m}^2$, moderate = BMI $16-16.99 \text{ kg/m}^2$, severe = BMI $15-15.99 \text{ kg/m}^2$, extreme = BMI $<15 \text{ kg/m}^2$), type (restricting = during last 3 mo no episodes of binge-eating or purging vs. binge-eating/purging type = in last 3 mo have participated in recurrent episodes of binge-eating/purging)



Athletic Triad

- Disordered eating
- Amenorrhea
- Osteoporosis



Some patients with insulin-dependant diabetes mellitus may stop their insulin in order to lose weight

Management

- outpatient programs and inpatient programs are available
- inpatient hospitalization for treatment of eating disorders is rarely on an acute basis (unless there is a concurrent psychiatric reason for emergent admission e.g. suicide risk)
- admit to a medical ward for hospitalization: $<65\%$ of standard body weight ($<85\%$ of standard body weight for adolescents), hypovolemia requiring intravenous fluid, heart rate $<40 \text{ bpm}$, abnormal serum chemistry or if actively suicidal
- agree on target body weight on admission and reassure this weight will not be surpassed
- psychotherapy (individual/group/family): address food and body perception, coping mechanisms, health effects
- monitor for complications of AN (see Table 8)
- monitor for refeeding syndrome
 - a potentially life-threatening metabolic response to refeeding in severely malnourished patients resulting in severe shifts in fluid and electrolyte levels
 - complications include hypophosphatemia, congestive heart failure, cardiac arrhythmias, delirium, and death
 - prevention: slow refeeding, gradual increase in nutrition, supplemental phosphorus, close monitoring of electrolytes and cardiac status

Prognosis

- early intervention much more effective (adolescent onset has much better prognosis than adult onset)
- 1 in 10 adolescents continue to have anorexia nervosa as adults
- with treatment, 70% resume a weight of at least 85% of expected levels and about 50% resume normal menstrual function
- eating peculiarities and associated psychiatric symptoms are common and persistent
- long-term mortality: 10-20% of patients hospitalized will die in next 10-30 yr (secondary to severe and chronic starvation, metabolic or cardiac catastrophes, with a significant proportion committing suicide)

Bulimia Nervosa

DSM-5 Diagnostic Criteria for Bulimia Nervosa

Reprinted with permission from the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. 2013. American Psychiatric Association

- A. recurrent episodes of binge-eating; an episode of binge-eating is characterized by both of the following
 - eating, in a discrete period of time, an amount of food that is definitely larger than what most individuals would eat during a similar period of time and under similar circumstances
 - a sense of lack of control over eating during the episode
- B. recurrent inappropriate compensatory behavior in order to prevent weight gain, such as self-induced vomiting; misuse of laxatives, diuretics, enemas, or other medications, fasting, or excessive exercise
- C. the binge-eating and inappropriate compensatory behaviors both occur, on average, at least once a week for 3 mo
- D. self-evaluation is unduly influenced by body shape and weight
- E. the disturbance does not occur exclusively during episodes of AN
- **specifiers:** partial remission, full remission, severity (mild = 1-3 inappropriate compensatory behaviors/wk, moderate = 4-7 inappropriate compensatory behaviors/wk, severe = 8-13 inappropriate compensatory behaviors/wk, extreme = 14+ inappropriate compensatory behaviors/wk)

Associated Features

- fatigue and muscle weakness due to repetitive vomiting and fluid/electrolyte imbalance
- tooth decay
- swollen appearance around angle of jaw and puffiness of eye sockets due to fluid retention
- reddened knuckles, Russell's sign (knuckle callus from self-induced vomiting)
- trouble concentrating
- weight fluctuation over time

Management

- admission for significant electrolyte abnormalities
- biological: treatment of starvation effects, SSRIs
- psychological: develop trusting relationship with therapist to explore personal etiology and triggers, CBT, family therapy, recognition of health risks
- social: challenge destructive societal views of women, use of hospital environment to provide external patterning for normative eating behavior

Prognosis

- relapsing/remitting disease
- good prognostic factors: onset before age 15, achieving a healthy weight within 2 yr of treatment
- poor prognostic factors: later age of onset, previous hospitalizations, individual and familial disturbance
- 60% good treatment outcome, 30% intermediate outcome, 10% poor outcome

Avoidant/Restrictive Food Intake Disorder

- **definition:** eating/feeding disturbance to the point that there is persistent failure to meet appropriate nutritional and/or energy needs such that individual experiences significant weight loss/growth failure, have nutritional deficiencies, may become dependent on enteral feeding/oral nutritional supplementation, has a marked interference with psychosocial functioning
- **risk factors:** temperament (e.g. anxiety disorders), environment (e.g. familial anxiety), genetic (e.g. history of GI conditions)
- begins in infancy and can persist into adulthood
- **treatment**
 - watchful waiting
 - behavior modification
 - psychotherapy

Binge-Eating Disorder

- **definition:** recurrent episodes of binge-eating (as defined by criteria A of BN) that are associated with eating much more rapidly than normal, eating until feeling uncomfortably full, eating large amounts when not physically hungry, eating alone because embarrassed by how much one is eating, feeling disgusted with oneself/depressed/very guilty afterwards at least once/wk x 3 mo
- not associated with any compensatory behaviors
- dieting usually follows binge-eating (vs. BN where dysfunctional dieting typically precedes binge-eating)
- **epidemiology:** F:M = 2:1
- associated with health consequences (e.g. increased risk of weight gain, obesity)
- begins in adolescence or young-adulthood
- hallmark of treatment is CBT

Table 8. Physiologic Complications of Eating Disorders

System	Starvation/Restriction	Binge-Purge
General	Low BP, low HR, significant orthostatic changes ± syncopal episodes, low temperature, vitamin deficiencies	Russell's sign (knuckle callus) Parotid gland enlargement Perioral skin irritation Periocular and palatal petechiae Loss of dental enamel and caries Aspiration pneumonia Metabolic alkalosis secondary to hypokalemia and loss of acid
Endocrine	Primary or secondary amenorrhea, decreased T ₃ /T ₄	
Neurologic	Grand mal seizure (decreased Ca ²⁺ , Mg ²⁺ , PO ₄ ³⁻)	
Cutaneous	Dry skin, lanugo hair, hair loss or thinning, brittle nails, yellow skin from high carotene	
GI	Constipation, GERD, delayed gastric emptying	Acute gastric dilation/rupture, pancreatitis, GERD, hematemesis secondary to Mallory-Weiss tear
CVS	Arrhythmias, CHF	Arrhythmias, cardiomyopathy (from use of ipecac), sudden cardiac death (decreased K ⁺)
MSK	Osteoporosis secondary to hypogonadism	Muscle wasting
Renal	Pre-renal failure (hypovolemia), renal calculi	Renal failure (electrolyte disturbances)
Extremities	Pedal edema (decreased albumin)	Pedal edema (decreased albumin)
Lab Values	Starvation: decreased RBCs, decreased WBCs, decreased LH, decreased FSH, decreased estrogen, decreased testosterone, increased growth hormone, increased cholesterol Dehydration: increased BUN	Vomiting: decreased Na ⁺ , decreased K ⁺ , decreased Cl ⁻ , decreased H ⁺ , increased amylase; hypokalemia with metabolic alkalosis Laxatives: decreased Na ⁺ , decreased K ⁺ , decreased Cl ⁻ , increased H ⁺ ; metabolic acidosis

Personality Disorders

- an evolving personality disorder literature describes that personality is better understood using a trait-based dimensional approach rather than discrete categories, however the discrete categories still remain in the current DSM and will be referenced here

General Diagnostic Criteria

- an enduring pattern of inner experience and behavior that deviates markedly from the expectations of the individual's culture; manifested in two or more of: cognition, affect, interpersonal functioning, impulse control
- inflexible and pervasive across a range of situations
- pattern is stable and well established by adolescence or early adulthood
- associated with many complications, such as depression, suicide, violence, brief psychotic episodes, multiple drug use, and treatment resistance
- the mainstay of treatment is psychotherapy with the addition of pharmacotherapy to treat associated axis I disorders (i.e. depression, anxiety, substance abuse)
- main treatment for borderline personality disorder is dialectical behavioral therapy (consists of validating rather than blaming the patient, and replacing maladaptive behavior with adaptive behavior)



Borderline Personality Disorder

DESPAIRER

Disturbance of identity
Emotionally labile
Suicidal behavior
Paranoia or dissociation
Abandonment (fear of)
Impulsive
Relationships unstable
Emptiness (feelings of)
Rage (inappropriate)

*Created by Jason Caplan, MD



Antisocial Personality Disorder

CORRUPT

Cannot conform to law
Obligations ignored
Reckless disregard for safety
Remorselessness
Underhanded (deceitful)
Planning insufficient (impulsive)
Temper (irritable and aggressive)

Table 9. Classification and Diagnosis of Personality Disorders**Note:** For each personality disorder, the most recognizable feature is indicated in *italics*

Diagnostic Cluster	Diagnosis	
Cluster A "Mad" Patients seem odd, eccentric, withdrawn Familial association with psychotic disorders Common defense mechanisms: intellectualization, projection, magical thinking	Paranoid Personality Disorder (0.5-3%) <i>Pervasive distrust and suspiciousness of others, interpret motives as malevolent.</i> Blame problems on others and seem angry and hostile. Diagnosis requires 4 of: 1. Suspicious that others are exploiting or deceiving them 2. Pre-occupied with trustworthiness of acquaintances 3. Reluctant to confide in others 4. Interpret benign remarks as threatening, demeaning 5. Holds grudges 6. Perceives attacks on character and is quick to counterattack 7. Questions fidelity of partner without justification	Schizotypal Personality Disorder (3-5.6%) <i>Pattern of eccentric behaviors, peculiar thought patterns</i> Diagnosis requires 5 of: 1. Ideas of reference 2. Odd beliefs, magical thinking (inconsistent with cultural norms e.g. belief in telepathy, superstitions) 3. Unusual perceptual experiences (e.g. bodily illusions) 4. Suspiciousness 5. Inappropriate or restricted affect 6. Odd, eccentric appearance or behavior (e.g. involved in cults, strange religious practices) 7. Few close friends 8. Odd thinking, odd speech (e.g. vague, stereotyped) 9. Excessive social anxiety
	Schizoid Personality Disorder <i>Neither desires nor enjoys close relationships including being a part of a family; prefers to be alone. Lifelong pattern of social withdrawal. Seen as eccentric and reclusive with restricted affect.</i> Diagnosis requires 4 of: 1. Does not enjoy or desire close relationships 2. Chooses solitary activities 3. Little to no interest in sexual activity with others 4. Takes pleasure in few (if any) activities 5. Few or no close friends 6. Indifference to praise or criticism 7. Emotionally cold, detached, or has flattened affect	
Cluster B "Bad" Patients seem dramatic, emotional, inconsistent Familial association with mood disorders Common defense mechanisms: denial, acting out, regression (histrionic PD), splitting (borderline PD), projective identification, idealization/devaluation	Borderline Personality Disorder (2-4%) <i>Unstable moods and behavior, feel alone in the world, problems with self image. History of repeated suicide attempts, self-harm behaviors.</i> <i>**10% suicide rate**</i> Diagnosis requires 5 of: 1. Frantic efforts to avoid real or imagined abandonment 2. Unstable and intense relationships 3. Unstable sense of self 4. Impulsivity in two potentially harmful ways (sexual, drugs, spending) 5. Recurrent suicidal behavior/self-harm 6. Unstable mood/affect 7. General feelings of emptiness 8. Difficulty controlling anger 9. Transient dissociative symptoms or paranoid ideation associated with stress	Narcissistic Personality Disorder (2%) <i>Sense of superiority, needs constant admiration, lacks empathy, but with fragile sense of self</i> <i>Consider themselves "special" and will exploit others for personal gain</i> Diagnosis requires 5 of: 1. Exaggerated sense of self-importance (grandiosity) 2. Preoccupied with fantasies of unlimited success, power, beauty, love 3. Believes he/she is "special" and should associate with other "special" people 4. Requires excessive admiration 5. Sense of entitlement 6. Takes advantage of others 7. Lacks empathy 8. Envious of others or believes that others are envious of him/her 9. Arrogant attitudes
	Antisocial Personality Disorder (M: 3%, F: 1%) <i>Lack of remorse for actions, manipulative and deceitful, often violate the law. May appear charming on first impression. Pattern of disregard for others and violation of rights of others must be present before the age of 15, however, for the diagnosis of ASPD patients must be at least 18.</i> Diagnosis requires 3 of the following: 1. Failure to conform to social norms by committing unlawful acts 2. Deceitfulness, lying, manipulating others for personal gain 3. Impulsive, fails to plan ahead 4. Irritable, aggressive, repeated fights or assaults 5. Recklessness and disregard for personal safety, safety of others 6. Irresponsible, cannot sustain work 7. Lack of remorse for actions	Histrionic Personality Disorder (1.3-3%) <i>Attention-seeking behavior and excessively emotional. Are dramatic, flamboyant, and extroverted. Cannot form meaningful relationships. Often sexually inappropriate.</i> Diagnosis requires 5 of: 1. Not comfortable unless center of attention 2. Inappropriately sexually seductive 3. Uses physical appearance to attract attention 4. Speech is impressionistic, lacks detail 5. Theatrical and exaggerated expression of emotion 6. Easily influenced by others 7. Perceives relationships as more intimate than they actually are

Table 9. Classification and Diagnosis of Personality Disorders (continued)

Diagnostic Cluster	Diagnosis
Cluster C “Sad” Patients seem anxious, fearful Familial association with anxiety disorder Common defense mechanisms: isolation, avoidance, hypochondriasis	Avoidant Personality Disorder (0.5-1.6%) <i>Timid and socially awkward with a pervasive sense of inadequacy and fear of criticism. Fear of embarrassing or humiliating themselves in social situations so remain withdrawn and socially inhibited.</i> Diagnosis requires 4 of: 1. Avoids occupational activities that involve significant interpersonal contact for fear of criticism or rejection 2. Unwilling to get involved with people unless certain of being liked 3. Restrained in intimate relationships for fear of being shamed or ridiculed 4. Preoccupied with being rejected or criticized in social situations 5. Inhibited in new interpersonal situations due to fear of inadequacy 6. Views him or herself as inferior, socially inept or personally unappealing 7. Reluctant to engage in new activities for fear of embarrassment
	Dependent Personality Disorder (1.6-6.7%) <i>Pervasive and excessive need to be taken care of, excessive fear of separation, clinging and submissive behaviors. Difficulty making everyday decisions.</i> Diagnosis requires 5 of: 1. Difficulty making everyday decisions without advice and reassurance from others 2. Needs others to assume responsibility for most major areas of his/her life 3. Difficulty expressing disagreement 4. Difficulty initiating projects due to lack of self-confidence 5. Goes to excessive lengths to obtain support 6. Uncomfortable or helpless when alone because of fear of being unable to take care of him/herself 7. Urgently seeks another relationship as a source of care and support when a close relationship ends 8. Unrealistically preoccupied with fears of being left to take care of him/herself
	Obsessive-Compulsive Personality Disorder (3-10%) <i>Preoccupation with orderliness, perfectionism, and mental and interpersonal control. Is inflexible, closed-off, and inefficient.</i> Diagnosis requires 4 of: 1. Preoccupation with details, rules, lists, order, organization, or schedules to the extent that the point of an activity is lost 2. Perfectionism interferes with task completion 3. Excessively devoted to work to the exclusion of leisure activities and friendships 4. Inflexible about morality/ethics/values 5. Unable to discard worthless objects of no sentimental value 6. Reluctant to delegate tasks to others 7. Miserly spending style (money is hoarded for future disasters) 8. Rigid and stubborn

**OCPD vs. OCD**

	OCPD	OCD
Ego-Syntonic or Ego-Dystonic	Ego-syntonic	Ego-dystonic
Thought Content	Obsessional thinking, no compulsions, strict routine and rigidity in day-to-day matters	Obsessions and compulsions, rituals

Table 10. Key Differences Among Schizoid, Schizotypal, and Schizophrenia

	Schizoid	Schizotypal	Schizophrenia
Thought Form	Organized	Organized, but vague and circumstantial	Disorganized, tangential, loosening of associations
Thought Content	No psychosis	No psychosis, may have ideas of reference, paranoid ideation, odd beliefs and magical thinking	Psychosis, hallucinations
Relationships	Solitary, NO desire for social relationships	Lacks close relationships, INTERESTED in relationships but socially inept	Socially marginalized, but not by choice

**Obsessive-Compulsive Personality Disorder****SCRIMPER**

Stubborn
Cannot discard worthless objects
Rule obsessed
Inflexible
Miserly
Perfectionistic
Excludes leisure due to devotion to work
Reluctant to delegate to others

*Created by Jason Caplan, MD

**Dependent Personality Disorder****RELIANCE**

Reassurance required
Expressing disagreement difficult
Life responsibilities assumed by others
Initiating projects difficult
Alone (feels helpless and uncomfortable when alone)
Nurturance (goes to excessive lengths to obtain)
Companionship sought urgently
Exaggerated fears of being left to care for self

Child Psychiatry

Developmental Concepts

- **temperament:** innate psycho-physiological and behavioral characteristics of a child (e.g. emotionality, activity, and sociability); spectrum from “difficult” to “slow-to-warm-up” to “easy temperament”
- **parental fit:** the congruence between parenting style (authoritative, authoritarian, permissive) and child’s temperament
- **attachment:** special relationship between child and primary caretaker(s); develops during first year, best predictor of a child’s attachment style is their parent’s attachment style
- **separation anxiety** (10-18 mo): separation from attachment figure results in distress

Table 11. Attachment Models

Parent/Caregiver	Attachment Type	Features in Child
Loving, consistently available, sensitive, and receptive	Secure	Able to use caregiver to calm self
Rejecting, unavailable psychologically, insensitive responses	Insecure (avoidant)	Not reliant on caregiver for soothing
Inconsistent, insensitive responses, role reversal	Insecure (ambivalent/resistant)	
Frightening, dissociated, sexualized, or atypical	Disorganized	



HEADSSS Interview
 Home environment
 Education/Employment
 Activities
 Drugs/Diet
 Sex
 Safety
 Suicide/depression



Attachment type can be assessed in infants 10-18 mo of age using the Strange Situation test, in which the child is stressed by the caregiver being removed from the situation and the stranger staying. Attachment style is measured by the child's behavior during the reunion with the caregiver



Attachment problems may present as a child who is difficult to soothe, has difficulty sleeping, problems feeding, tantrums or behavioral problems



FDA advises that the use of SSRIs in youth <24 yr old associated with increased suicidal ideation; no studies show association to completed suicide



Irritable mood is a diagnostic feature unique to children and adolescents

Mood Disorders

MAJOR DEPRESSIVE DISORDER

Epidemiology

- pre-pubertal 1-2% (no gender differences); post-pubertal 4-18% (F:M = 2:1)

Clinical Presentation

- see *Adult Mood Disorders, PS6*
- physical factors: insomnia (children), hypersomnia (adolescents), somatic complaints, substance abuse
- psychological factors: irritability, boredom, anhedonia, low self-esteem, deterioration in academic performance, social withdrawal, lack of motivation
- comorbid diagnoses of anxiety, ADHD, conduct disorder, and eating disorders

Treatment

- majority never seek treatment
- individual (CBT, IPT)/family therapy and education, modified school program
- SSRIs (strongest evidence for fluoxetine)
- ECT: only in adolescents

Prognosis

- prolonged episodes, up to 1-2 yr
- adolescent onset predicts chronic mood disorder; up to 2/3 will have another depressive episode within 5 yr
- complications
 - negative impact on family and peer relationships
 - school failure
 - significantly increased risk of suicide attempt (10%) or completion (however suicide risk low for pre-pubertal children)
 - substance abuse

BIPOLAR DISORDER

Clinical Presentation

- see *Bipolar Disorder, PS9*
- mixed presentation and psychotic symptoms (hallucinations and delusions) more common in adolescent population than adult population
- unipolar depression may be an early sign of adult bipolar disorder
 - ~30% of psychotic depressed adolescents receive a bipolar diagnosis within 2 yr of presentation
 - associated with rapid onset of depression, psychomotor retardation, mood-congruent psychosis, affective illness in family, pharmacologically-induced mania

Treatment

- 1st line: mood stabilizers and/or antipsychotics
- 2nd line: antidepressants, benzodiazepines (careful of disinhibiting effect)

Anxiety Disorders

- prevalence 2-15%; F:M = 2:1

Clinical Presentation

- school problems, recurrent physical symptoms (abdominal pain, headaches) especially in mornings, social and relationship problems, social withdrawal and isolation, family conflict, irritability and mood symptoms, alcohol and drug use in adolescent

Treatment

- family psychotherapy, predictive and supportive environment
- CBT: child and parental education, relaxation techniques (e.g. deep breathing), exposure/desensitization, recognizing and correcting anxious thoughts
- pharmacotherapy: SSRIs (e.g. fluoxetine), benzodiazepines (e.g. clonazepam – use with caution, may have disinhibiting effect)
 - fluvoxamine and sertraline also have good evidence, particularly for OCD

SEPARATION ANXIETY DISORDER

Epidemiology

- prevalence: 4% of children/adolescents
- average onset is 7.5 yr old; average age at presentation is 10 yr old
- common for mother to have an anxiety or depressive disorder

Differential Diagnosis

- simple or social phobia, depression, learning disorder, truancy, conduct disorder, school-related problems (e.g. bullying)

Clinical Presentation

- excessive and developmentally inappropriate anxiety on separation from primary caregiver with physical or emotional distress for at least 4 wk
- school refusal (75%)
- persistent worry, refusal to sleep, clinging, nightmares, somatic symptoms
- comorbid major depression common (2/3)
- worry about something happening to parent or themselves if separated

Prognosis

- if inadequately treated early on, may present later in a more severe form
- may develop into panic disorder with/without agoraphobia

SOCIAL PHOBIA (SOCIAL ANXIETY DISORDER)

- must distinguish between shy child and child with social anxiety
 - diagnosis only if anxiety interferes significantly with daily routine, social life, academic functioning, or if markedly distressed
- features: temper tantrums, freezing, clinging behavior, mutism, excessively timid, stays on periphery, refuses to be involved in group play
- must be capable of developing social relationships
- must occur in settings with peers, not just adults

SELECTIVE MUTISM

- consistent failure to speak in specific social situations in which there is an expectation for speaking despite speaking in other situations
- the disturbance interferes with educational or occupational achievement or with social communication

PANIC DISORDER

- diagnostic criteria same as adults (see *Panic Disorder*, PS10)
- genetic/parental modeling/identification hypothesized as cause
- often parent with panic or depressive disorder

GENERALIZED ANXIETY DISORDER

- diagnostic criteria same as adults (see *Generalized Anxiety Disorder*, PS12)
 - **Note:** only 1 item is required in children for Criteria C
- often redo tasks, show dissatisfaction with their work, and tend to be perfectionistic
- often require reassurance and support to take on new tasks

SPECIFIC PHOBIA

- common phobias in childhood include a fear of heights, small animals, doctors, dentists, darkness, loud noises, thunder and lightning



Fluoxetine, Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy and Their Combination for Adolescents with Depression: Treatment for Adolescents with Depression Study (TADS) Randomized Controlled Trial

JAMA 2004;292:807-820

Study: Randomized controlled trial at 13 US academic and community clinics between spring 2000–summer 2003.

Patients: 439 patients ages 12–17 with a primary DSM IV diagnosis of major depressive disorder.

Outcomes: Children's Depression Rating Scale-Revised (CDRSR) total score.

Interventions: 12 wk of (1) fluoxetine (10–40 mg/d), (2) CBT, (3) CBT + fluoxetine (10–40 mg/d), or (4) placebo.

Results: Fluoxetine with CBT had a statistically significant CDRSR score as compared to placebo ($p=0.001$) with a 71% response rate. This combination was greater than fluoxetine alone ($p=0.02$), and CBT alone ($p=0.01$). Fluoxetine alone was greater than CBT alone ($p=0.01$).



Newer Generation Antidepressants for Depressive Disorders in Children and Adolescents

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;11:CD004851

Study: Meta-analysis of 19 trials containing 3,335 participants (including RCTs, cross-over trials, and cluster trials).

Population: Children and adolescents aged 6–18 yr with diagnosed depressive disorder.

Interventions: Antidepressants, placebo.

Main Outcome Measure: Depression severity score.

Results: Children treated with an antidepressant had lower depression severity score and higher rates of response/remission. Children on antidepressants were also found to be at increased risk (58%) of suicide-related outcome (RR 1.58; 95% CI 1.02–2.45).

Conclusions: In children and adolescents, antidepressants are effective at treating depression, yet may cause a higher chance of suicide-related outcomes.



The shy child is quiet and reluctant to participate but slowly 'warms up'

Neurodevelopmental Disorders

Autism Spectrum Disorder

- M:F = 3-4:1 (except for Rett's with female predominance)

Diagnosis

- persistent deficits in social communication and interaction, manifested in three areas
 - social-emotional reciprocity, ranging, for example, from abnormal social approach and failure of normal back-and-forth conversation, to reduced sharing of interests, emotions, or affect, to failure to initiate or respond to social interactions
 - nonverbal communicative behaviors, ranging, for example, from poorly integrated verbal and nonverbal communication, to abnormalities in eye contact and body language or deficits in understanding and use of gestures, to a total lack of facial expressions and nonverbal communication
 - developing, maintaining, and understanding relationships, ranging, for example, from difficulties adjusting behavior to suit various social contexts; to difficulties in sharing imaginative play or in making friends, to absence of interest in peers
- restricted, repetitive patterns of behavior, interests, or activities. Two or more of: stereotyped or repetitive motor movements, insistence on sameness, highly restricted fixated interests, hyper/hypo-reactivity to sensory input
- symptoms must be present in early developmental period
- symptoms cause clinically significant impairment in social, occupational, or other important areas of current functioning
- not better explained by intellectual disability or global developmental delay
- **specifiers**
 - current severity: requiring very substantial support, requiring substantial support, requiring support
 - with or without accompanying language impairment
 - with or without accompanying intellectual impairment
 - associated with known medical or genetic condition or environmental factors (i.e. Rett's disorder)

Differential Diagnosis

- developmental disability, childhood schizophrenia, social phobia, OCD, communication disorder, non-verbal learning disorder, ADHD, abuse, hearing or visual impairment, seizure disorder, motor impairment

Management

- hearing test to rule out impairment
- psychological testing to assess intellectual functioning and learning
- chromosomal analysis to rule out abnormalities (e.g. Trisomy 21, Fragile X syndrome)
- rule out psychotic disorders, social problems, depression, anxiety, abuse

Treatment

- team-based: school, psychologist, occupational therapist, physiotherapist, speech and language therapy, audiology, pediatrics, psychiatry
- family education and support
- treat concomitant disorders such as tics, OCD, anxiety, depression, and seizure disorder
- behavior management, school programming
- pharmacotherapy: atypical antipsychotics (for aggression, agitation, self-mutilation, tics), SSRIs (for anxiety, depression), stimulants (for associated inattention and hyperactivity)

Prognosis

- variable, but improves with early intervention
- better if IQ >60 and able to communicate

Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder

- prevalence: 5-12% of school-aged children; M:F = 4:1, although girls may be under-diagnosed
- girls tend to have inattentive/distractible symptoms; boys have impulsive/hyperactive symptoms

Etiology

- genetic: dopamine candidate genes, catecholamine/neuroanatomical hypothesis
- cognitive: developmental disability, inhibitory control and other errors of executive function
- arousal: alterations in the sensory system filters

Diagnosis

- differential: learning disorders, hearing/visual defects, thyroid, atopic conditions, congenital problems (fetal alcohol syndrome, Fragile X), lead poisoning, history of head injury, traumatic life events (abuse)
- diagnosis (3 subtypes)
 - **Combined Type:** 6 or more symptoms of inattention and 6 or more symptoms of hyperactivity-impulsivity
 - **Predominantly Inattentive Type:** 6 or more symptoms of inattention
 - **Predominantly Hyperactive-Impulsive Type:** 6 or more symptoms of hyperactivity-impulsivity
 - for older adolescents (>17 yr) or adults, 5 symptoms required
 - symptoms persist for >6 mo
 - onset before age 12
 - symptoms present in at least two settings (i.e. home, school, work)
 - interferes with academic, family, and social functioning
 - does not occur exclusively during the course of another psychiatric disorder

Table 12. Core Symptoms of ADHD (DSM-5)

Inattention	Hyperactivity	Impulsivity
Careless mistakes	Fidgets, squirms in seat	Blurts out answers before questions completed
Cannot sustain attention in tasks or play	Leaves seat when expected to remain seated	Difficulty awaiting turn
Does not listen when spoken to directly	Runs and climbs excessively	Interrupts/intrudes on others
Fails to complete tasks	Cannot play quietly	
Disorganized	"On the go", driven by a motor	
Avoids, dislikes tasks that require sustained mental effort	Talks excessively	
Loses things necessary for tasks or activities		
Distractible		
Forgetful		

Features

- average onset 3 yr old
- identification upon school entry
- rule out developmental delay, genetic syndromes, encephalopathies or toxins (alcohol, lead)
- risk of substance abuse, particularly cannabis and cocaine, depression, anxiety, academic failure, poor social skills, risk of comorbid CD and/or ODD, risk of adult ASPD
- associated with family history of ADHD, difficult temperamental characteristics

Treatment

- non-pharmacological: parent management, anger control strategies, positive reinforcement, social skills training, individual/family therapy, resource room, tutors, classroom intervention, exercise routines, extracurricular activities
- pharmacological
 - standard treatment
 - ♦ stimulants: methylphenidates (Ritalin®, Concerta® [long-acting]), Biphentin®
 - ♦ amphetamines: dextroamphetamine, mixed amphetamine salts (Adderall®), lisdexamfetamine (Vyvanse®)
 - ♦ SNRI: atomoxetine (Strattera®)
 - for comorbid symptoms: antidepressants, antipsychotics

Prognosis

- 65% continue into adulthood; secondary personality disorders and compensatory anxiety disorders are identifiable
- 70-80% continue into adolescence, but hyperactive symptoms usually abate



Observe child for "ATTENTION" features

Annoying
Temperamental
Energetic
Noisy
Task incompletion
Inattentive
Oppositional
Negativism



A Systematic Review and Analysis of Long-Term Outcomes in Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder: Effects of Treatment and Non-Treatment

BMC Med 2012;10:99

Study: Systematic review of 351 studies.

Purpose: To determine the long-term outcomes of ADHD and whether there is an effect on long-term outcomes with treatment.

Population: Patients with diagnosed or symptomatic presentation of ADHD.

Interventions: No treatment (control), treatment (pharmacological, non-pharmacological, and multi-modal).

Outcome Groups: Drug use/addictive behavior, academic outcomes, antisocial behavior, social function, occupation, self-esteem, driving outcomes, services use, obesity.

Results: Untreated participants with ADHD had poorer outcomes vs. non-ADHD participants in 74% (n=244) of studies, while 26% (n=89) showed similar outcomes. 72% (n=37) of studies showed a benefit from ADHD treatment vs. untreated ADHD and 28% (n=15) showed no benefit. Treatment of ADHD was found to be beneficial in studies looking at driving (100%), obesity (100%), self-esteem (90%), social function (83%), academic outcomes (71%), drug use/addictive behavior (67%), antisocial behavior (50%), and occupation (33%).

Conclusions: Overall, people with ADHD have poorer long-term outcomes than controls (those without ADHD). For those with ADHD, treatment improves long-term outcomes.

Disruptive, Impulse Control, and Conduct Disorder

Oppositional Defiant Disorder

- prevalence: 2-16%

Diagnosis

- pattern of negativistic/hostile and defiant behavior for ≥ 6 mo with ≥ 4 of
 - loses temper, argues with adults, defies adult rules, deliberately annoys, blames others, touchy/easily annoyed, angry and resentful, spiteful or vindictive
- behavior causes significant impairment in social, academic, or occupational functioning
- behaviors do not occur exclusively during the course of a psychotic or mood disorder
- criteria not met for conduct disorder (CD); if 18 yr or older, criteria not met for ASPD
- features that typically differentiate ODD from transient developmental stage: onset < 8 yr, chronic duration (> 6 mo), frequent intrusive behavior
- impact of ODD: poor school performance, few friends, strained parent/child relationships
- may progress to CD

Treatment

- establish boundaries
- parent management training and psychoeducation
- individual/family therapy
- pharmacotherapy for comorbid disorders
- school/day care interventions to help with behavior management



ODD kids "ARE BRATS"

Annoying
Resentful
Easily annoyed
Blames others
Rule breaker
Argues with adults
Temper
Spiteful/vindictive

Conduct Disorder

- prevalence: 1.5-3.4% (M:F = 4-12:1)

Etiology

- parental/familial factors: parental psychopathology (e.g. ASPD, substance abuse), child-rearing practices (e.g. child abuse, discipline), low socio-economic status (SES), family violence
- child factors: difficult temperament, ODD, learning problems, neurobiology

Diagnosis

- differential: ADHD, depression, head injury, substance abuse
- diagnosis: use multiple sources (Achenbach Child Behavioral Checklist, Teacher's Report Form)
 - pattern of behavior that violates rights of others and age appropriate social norms with ≥ 3 criteria noted in past 12 mo and ≥ 1 in past 6 mo
 - ♦ aggression to people and animals (bullying, physical fights, use of weapons, forced sex)
 - ♦ destruction of property, firesetting with intent to damage
 - ♦ deceitfulness or theft (breaking and entering, car theft)
 - ♦ violation of rules (out all night before age 13, runaway ≥ 2 times or for long periods of time, often truant from school before age 13)
 - disturbance causes clinically significant impairment in social, academic, or occupational functioning
 - if individual is 18 yr or older, criteria not met for ASPD
- diagnostic types
 - childhood onset: at least one criterion prior to age 10
 - ♦ poor prognosis: associated with ODD, aggressiveness, impulsiveness
 - adolescent onset: absence of any criteria until age 10
 - ♦ better prognosis; least aggressive, gang-related delinquency
 - mild, moderate, severe

Treatment

- early intervention necessary and more effective; long-term follow-up required
- parent management training, anger replacement training, CBT, family therapy, education/employment programs, social skills training, medications for aggressiveness or comorbid disorders
- pharmacotherapy is insufficient; mainly used for treatment of comorbid disorders

Prognosis

- poor prognostic indicators include early-age onset, high frequency and variety of behaviors, pervasiveness (i.e. in home, school, community), comorbid ADHD, early sexual activity, substance abuse
- 50% of CD children become adult ASPD



Conduct Disorder Diagnosis

TRAP

Theft: breaking and entering, deceiving, non-confrontational stealing
Rule breaking: running away, skipping school, out late
Aggression: people, animals, weapons, forced sex
Property destruction

- see [Pediatrics](#)
 - *Child Abuse*, P14
 - *Chronic Abdominal Pain*, P40
 - *Developmental Delay*, P22
 - *Intellectual Disability*, P23
 - *Learning Disabilities*, P25
 - *Elimination Disorders*, P9
 - *Sleep Disturbances*, P13
- see [Neurology](#)
 - *Tic Disorders*, N32
 - *Tourette's Syndrome*, N33



Pharmacotherapy

Antipsychotics

- “antipsychotics” and “neuroleptics” are terms used interchangeably
- **indications:** schizophrenia and other psychotic disorders, mood disorders with or without psychosis, violent behavior, autism, Tourette's, dementia, OCD
- **onset:** immediate calming effect and decrease in agitation; thought disorder responds in 2-4 wk
- **rational use**
 - no reason to combine antipsychotics
 - choosing an antipsychotic
 - ♦ all antipsychotics are equally effective, except for clozapine (considered to be most effective in treatment-refractory psychosis)
 - ♦ atypical antipsychotics are as effective as typical or first generation antipsychotics but are thought to have better side effect profiles
 - ♦ choose a drug that the patient has responded to in the past or that was used successfully in a family member
 - route: PO, short-acting or long-acting depot IM injections, sublingual
 - duration: minimum 6 mo, usually for life

Long-Acting Preparations

- antipsychotics formulated in oil for IM injection
- received on an outpatient basis
- indications: individuals with schizophrenia or other chronic psychosis who relapse because of non-adherence
- dosing: start at low dosages, and then titrate every 2-4 wk to maximize safety and minimize side effects
- should be exposed to oral form prior to first injection
- side effects: risk of EPS, parkinsonism, increased risk of NMS

Table 13. Common Antipsychotic Agents

	Starting Dose	Maintenance	Maximum	Relative Potency (mg)
Typicals (in order of potency from high to low)				
Perphenazine (Trilafon®)	8-16 mg PO b/tid	4-8 mg PO t/qid	64 mg/d PO	10
Loxapine HCl (Loxitane®)	10 mg PO tid 12.5-50 mg IM q4-6h	60-100 mg/d PO	250 mg/d PO	10
Chlorpromazine (Thorazine®)	10-25 mg PO b/t/qid	400 mg/d PO	1000 mg/d PO	100
Atypicals (in order of potency from high to low)				
Risperidone (Risperdal®), Risperdal Consta® for IM long acting preparation, Risperdal® M-Tab for melting form – placed on tongue)	1-2 mg OD/bid	4-8 mg/d PO 25 mg IM q2wk	8 mg/d PO	2
Paliperidone (Invega®)	3 mg/d PO	3-12 mg/d PO	12 mg/d PO	4
Olanzapine (Zyprexa®), Zyprexa Zydis® for melting form – placed on tongue, Zyprexa Intramuscular®)	5 mg/d PO	10-20 mg/d PO	30 mg/d PO	5
Asenapine (Saphris®)	5 mg SL bid	5-10 mg SL bid	10 mg bid	5
Ziprasidone (Geodon®)	20 mg bid PO	40-80 mg bid PO	160 mg/d PO	6
Aripiprazole (Ablify®)	10-15 mg/d PO	10-15 mg/d PO	30 mg/d PO	7.5
Quetiapine (Seroquel®), Seroquel XR® for extended release)	25 mg PO bid	400-800 mg/d PO	800 mg/d PO	75
Clozapine (Clozaril®)	25 mg PO bid	300-600 mg/d PO	600 mg/d PO	100



Effectiveness of Antipsychotic Drugs in Patients with Chronic Schizophrenia

NEJM 2005;353:1209-23

Study: Randomized, double-blind, active-control trial with median follow-up of 6 mo.

Patients: 1,432 patients with a diagnosis of schizophrenia (as per DSM-IV criteria) and able to take antipsychotic medications (as determined by study doctors). Mean age 41, 74% male, 26% female.

Intervention: 1-4 capsules daily of olanzapine (20.1 mg), quetiapine (543.4 mg), risperidone (3.9 mg), perphenazine (20.8 mg), or ziprasidone (112.8 mg), with dosage at the discretion of the study doctor. Mean modal doses in parentheses.

Main Outcome: Discontinuation of treatment for any cause

Results: Olanzapine group had statistically significant lower rate of discontinuation for any cause (64%) from all others (quetiapine – 82%, risperidone – 74%, perphenazine – 75%, ziprasidone – 79%). There were no significant differences in time until discontinuation due to intolerable side effects, however, olanzapine was associated with a significantly higher rate of metabolic side effects.



Typical vs. Atypical Antipsychotics

	Typical	Atypical
Pros	Inexpensive Plenty of injectable forms available	Fewer EPS Low risk of tardive syndromes Mood stabilizing effects
Cons	More EPS Tardive syndromes in long-term Not mood stabilizing	Expensive Few injectable forms available Metabolic side effects (weight gain, hyperglycemia, lipid abnormalities, metabolic syndrome) Exacerbation (or new onset) of obsessive behavior

Table 14. Commonly Used Atypical Antipsychotics

	Risperidone (Risperdal®)	Olanzapine (Zyprexa®, Zydys®)	Quetiapine (Seroquel®)	Clozapine (Clozari®)	Aripiprazole (Abilify®)
Advantages	Lower incidence of EPS than typical antipsychotics at lower doses (<8 mg) Associated with less weight gain compared to clozapine and olanzapine	Better overall efficacy compared to haloperidol Well tolerated Low incidence of EPS and TD	Associated with less weight gain compared to clozapine and olanzapine Mood stabilizing	Most effective for treatment-resistant schizophrenia Does not worsen tardive symptoms; may treat them Approximately 50% of patients benefit, especially paranoid patients and those with onset after 20 yr	Less weight gain and risk of metabolic syndrome compared to olanzapine and a lower incidence of EPS compared to haloperidol
Disadvantages	SE: insomnia, agitation, EPS, H/A, anxiety, prolactin, postural hypotension, constipation, dizziness, weight gain	SE: mild sedation, insomnia, dizziness, minimal anticholinergic, early AST and ALT elevation, restlessness Weight gain associated with increased risk of DM and hyperlipidemia	SE: H/A, sedation, dizziness, constipation Most sedating of first line atypicals	SE: drowsiness/sedation, hypersalivation, tachycardia, dizziness, EPS, NMS 1% agranulocytosis	SE: H/A, agitation, anxiety, insomnia, weight gain, decreased serum prolactin levels
Comments	Quick dissolve (M-tabs), and long-acting (Consta®) formulations available	Quick dissolve formulation (Zydys®) used commonly in ER setting for better compliance IM form available		Weekly blood counts for at least 1 mo, then q2wk Do not use with drugs which may cause bone marrow suppression due to risk of agranulocytosis	

Note: Risk of weight gain: Clozapine > Olanzapine > Quetiapine > Risperidone

Table 15. Side Effects of Antipsychotics

System	Side Effects
Anticholinergic	Dry mouth, urinary retention, constipation, blurred vision, toxic-confusional states
α-Adrenergic Blockade	Orthostatic hypotension, impotence, failure to ejaculate
Dopaminergic Blockade	Extrapyramidal syndromes, galactorrhea, amenorrhea, impotence, weight gain
Anti-Histamine	Sedation
Hematologic	Agranulocytosis (clozapine)
Hypersensitivity Reactions	Liver dysfunction, blood dyscrasias, skin rashes, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, altered temperature regulation (hypothermia or hyperthermia)
Endocrine	Metabolic syndrome

Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome

- **psychiatric emergency**
- due to massive dopamine blockade; increased incidence with high potency and depot neuroleptics
- **risk factors**
 - medication factors: sudden increase in dosage, starting a new drug
 - patient factors: medical illness, dehydration, exhaustion, poor nutrition, external heat load, male, young adults
- **clinical presentation**
 - mental status changes (usually occur first), fever, autonomic reactivity, rigidity
 - develops over 24-72 h
 - labs: increased creatine phosphokinase, leukocytosis, myoglobinuria
- **treatment:** discontinue drug, hydration, cooling blankets, dantrolene (hydrantoin derivative, used as a muscle relaxant), bromocriptine (DA agonist)
- **mortality:** 5%

Extrapyramidal Symptoms

- incidence related to increased dose and potency
- acute (early-onset; reversible) vs. tardive (late-onset; often irreversible)



Anticholinergic Effects

Red as a beet
Hot as a hare
Dry as a bone
Blind as a bat
Mad as a hatter



Metabolic and Cardiovascular Adverse Effects Associated with Antipsychotic Drugs

Nat Rev Endocrinol 2012;8:114-126

Study: Review.

Conclusions: All antipsychotics can cause cardiovascular and metabolic side effects, such as obesity, dyslipidemia, hyperglycemia and metabolic syndrome. Olanzapine and clozapine are most likely to cause these side effects. The mechanism that underlies the metabolic and cardiovascular effects is not fully understood, however, the histamine, dopamine, serotonin, and muscarinic receptors are implicated.

Table 16. Extrapyramidal Symptoms

	Dystonia	Akathisia	Pseudoparkinsonism	Dyskinesia
Acute or Tardive	Both	Both	Acute	Tardive
Risk Group	Acute: Young Asian and Black males	Elderly females	Elderly females	
Presentation	Sustained abnormal posture; torsions, twisting, contraction of muscle groups; muscle spasms (e.g. oculogyric crisis, laryngospasm, torticollis)	Motor restlessness; crawling sensation in legs relieved by walking; very distressing, increased risk of suicide and poor adherence	Tremor; rigidity (cogwheeling); akinesia; postural instability (decreased/absent arm-swing, stooped posture, shuffling gait, difficulty pivoting)	Purposeless, constant movements, involving facial and mouth musculature, or less commonly – the limbs
Onset	Acute: within 5 d Tardive: >90 d	Acute: within 10 d Tardive: >90 d	Acute: within 30 d	Tardive: >90 d
Treatment	Acute: benztropine or diphenhydramine	Acute: lorazepam, propranolol, or diphenhydramine; reduce or change neuroleptic to lower potency	Acute: benztropine (or benzodiazepine if side effects); reduce or change neuroleptic to lower potency	Tardive: no good treatment; may try clozapine; discontinue drug or reduce dose



Features of Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome

FARM

Fever

Autonomic changes (e.g. increased HR/ BP, sweating)

Rigidity of muscles

Mental status changes (e.g. confusion)

FARM symptoms are also seen in Serotonin Syndrome (SS)

SS can be distinguished from NMS by the following:

SS	NMS
Twitchy, shivering, restless	Severe global rigidity
Flushed, sweaty	Pallor
Vomiting, diarrhea, abdominal pain	No GI symptoms

Antiparkinsonian Agents (Anticholinergic Agents)

- types
 - benztropine (Cogentin®) 2 mg PO, IM or IV OD (~1-6 mg)
 - amantadine (Symmetrel®) 100 mg PO bid (100-400 mg)
 - diphenhydramine (Benadryl®) 25-50 mg PO/IM qid
- do not always prescribe with neuroleptics
 - give antiparkinsonian agents only if at high risk for acute EPS or if acute EPS develops
- do not give for tardive syndromes because they worsen the condition

Antidepressants

- onset of effect
 - relief of neurovegetative symptoms: 1-3 wk
 - relief of emotional/cognitive symptoms: 2-6 wk
- may use mild stimulant (e.g. methylphenidate) for severe neurovegetative symptoms briefly and taper down as antidepressant effect increases
- taper TCAs slowly (over weeks-months) because they can cause withdrawal reactions
- tapering of any kind of antidepressant is usually required and based on the half-life of the medication and the patient's individual sensitivity
- it is important to be particularly vigilant over the first 2 wk of therapy as neurovegetative symptoms may start to resolve while emotional and cognitive symptoms may not (patients may be particularly at risk for suicidal behavior during this time)
- treatment of bipolar depression
 - monotherapy with antidepressants is not advisable as a switch from depression to mania can occur
 - patients with bipolar disorder should only be treated with an antidepressant if it is combined with a mood stabilizer or antipsychotic
 - for patients taking mood stabilizers or antipsychotics, consider adding or switching to lithium or lamotrigine, or adding an SSRI or bupropion



Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors (SSRIs)

vs. Other Antidepressants for Depression

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2004; Issue 3

This systematic review of 98 RCTs compared the efficacy of SSRIs with other kinds of antidepressants in the treatment of patients with depressive disorders.

Conclusions: There is no significant difference in the effectiveness of SSRIs vs. TCAs. Consider relative patient acceptability, toxicity, and cost when choosing.



How Long to Treat?

6-12 mo: if first or second episode

2 yr: if third episode, elderly, psychotic features, refractory depression, >2 episodes in 5 yr

Table 17. Common Antidepressants

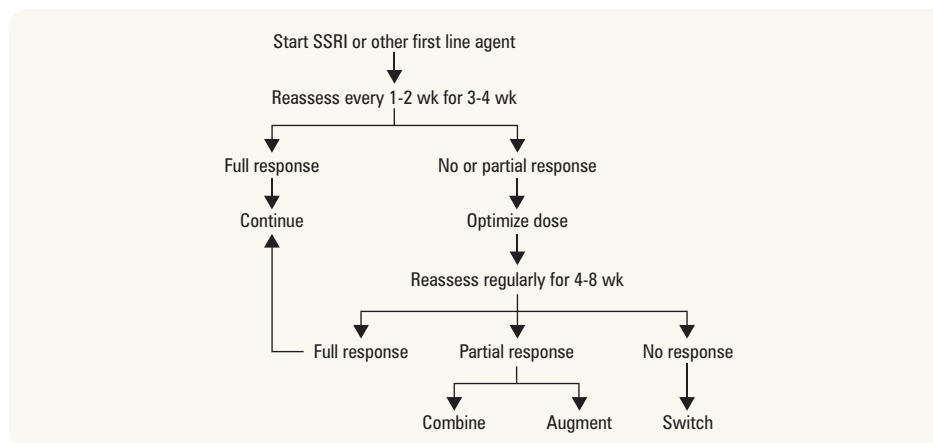
Class	Drug	Daily Starting Dose (mg)	Therapeutic Dose (mg)	Comments
SSRI	fluoxetine (Prozac®)	20	20-80	All SSRIs have similar effectiveness but consider side effect profiles and half-lives Sertraline, citalopram, and escitalopram have the least drug-interactions and are sleep-wake neutral Fluoxetine and paroxetine are the most activating drugs (recommend taking in the AM) Fluvoxamine is sedating (should be taken in PM)
	fluvoxamine (Luvox®)	50-100	150-300	
	paroxetine (Paxil®)	10	20-60	
	sertraline (Zoloft®)	50	50-200	
	citalopram (Celexa®)	20	20-40	
	escitalopram (Lexapro®)	10	10-20	

Table 17. Common Antidepressants (continued)

Class	Drug	Daily Starting Dose (mg)	Therapeutic Dose (mg)	Comments
SNRI	venlafaxine (Effexor®)	37.5-75	75-225	Causes less sexual dysfunction, weight gain, and sedation Increased risk of seizures at higher doses Contraindicated with history of seizure, stroke brain tumor, brain injury, closed head injury Not recommended for anxiety disorder treatment because of stimulating effects
	duloxetine (Cymbalta®)	40	40-60	
NDRI	bupropion (Wellbutrin®)	100	300-450	
TCA (3° Amines)	amitriptyline (Elavil®)	75-100	150-300	
	imipramine (Tofranil®)	75-100	150-300	
TCA (2° Amines)	nortriptyline (Aventyl®)	75-100	75-150	Useful in depression with prominent features of insomnia, agitation, or cachexia
	desipramine (Norpramin®)	100-200	150-300	
MAOI	phenelzine (Nardil®)	45	60-90	
	tranylcypromine (Parnate®)	30	10-60	
NASSA	mirtazapine (Remeron®)	15	15-45	

MAOI = monoamine oxidase inhibitors; NASSA = noradrenergic and specific serotonin antagonists; NDRI = norepinephrine and dopamine reuptake inhibitors; RIMA = reversible inhibition of MAO-A; SNRI = serotonin and norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors; SSRI = selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors; TCA = tricyclic antidepressants

Treatment Strategies for Refractory Depression

**Figure 2. Treatment of depression**

- **optimization:** ensuring adequate drug doses for the individual
- **augmentation:** the addition of a medication that is not considered an antidepressant to an antidepressant regimen (e.g. thyroid hormone, lithium, atypical antipsychotics)
- **combination:** the addition of another antidepressant to an existing treatment regimen (e.g. the addition of bupropion to an SSRI or SNRI)
- **substitute:** change in the primary antidepressant (within or outside a class)
- **note:** it is important to fully treat the symptoms of depression in order to decrease rates and severity of relapses



Psychopharmacology of SSRIs

Post-Synaptic Serotonin Receptor Stimulated	Effect/Side Effect
5HT1A centrally	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relief of depression • Anxiolytic effect
5HT2A in spinal cord	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sexual dysfunction: delayed ejaculation, anorgasmia, decreased interest/libido
5HT2C/5HT2A in brain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activation: anxiety, insomnia • Worst with fluoxetine, paroxetine • Warn patients anxiety may worsen in first 1-2 wk of treatment
5HT3A in gut	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • GI upset: nausea, vomiting, bloating • Take with food

Table 18. Features of Commonly Used Antidepressant Classes

	TCA	SSRI	MAOI	SNRI
Considerations	OCD (clomipramine), melancholic depression	Anxiety states, OCD, eating disorders, seasonal depression, typical and atypical depression	For moderate/severe depression that does not respond to SSRI, atypical depression	Depression, anxiety disorders
Mode of Action	Block norepinephrine and serotonin reuptake	Block serotonin reuptake only	Irreversible inhibition of monoamine oxidase A and B Leads to ↑ norepinephrine and serotonin	Block norepinephrine and serotonin reuptake
Side Effects	Anticholinergic effects: (see Table 14) Noradrenergic effects: tremors, tachycardia, sweating, insomnia, erectile and ejaculation problems α -1 adrenergic effects: orthostatic hypotension Antihistamine effects: sedation, weight gain CNS: sedation, stimulation, ↓ seizure threshold CVS: ↑ HR, conduction delay	Fewer than TCA, therefore increased compliance CNS: restlessness, tremor, insomnia, headache, drowsiness GI: N/V, diarrhea, abdominal cramps, weight loss Sexual dysfunction: impotence, anorgasmia CVS: increased HR, conduction delay, serotonin syndrome, EPS, SIADH	Hypertensive crises with tyramine rich foods (e.g. wine, cheese), headache, flushes, palpitations, N/V, photophobia Dizziness, reflex tachycardia, postural hypotension, sedation, insomnia Weight gain Social dysfunction Energizing Minimal anticholinergic and antihistamine effects	Low dose side effects include insomnia (serotonergic) Higher dose side effects include: tremors, tachycardia, sweating, insomnia, dose-dependent increase in diastolic BP (noradrenergic)
Risk in Overdose	Toxic in OD 3 times therapeutic dose is lethal Presentation: anticholinergic effects, CNS stimulation, then depression and seizures ECG: prolonged QT (duration reflects severity) Treatment: activated charcoal, cathartics, supportive treatment, IV diazepam for seizure, physostigmine salicylate for coma Do not give ipecac, as can cause rapid neurologic deterioration and seizures	Relatively safe in OD	Toxic in OD, but wider margin of safety than TCA	Tachycardia and N/V seen in acute overdose
Drug Interactions	MAOI, SSRI EtOH	SSRIs inhibit P450 enzymes, therefore will affect levels of drugs metabolized by P450 system	EtOH Hypertensive crises with noradrenergic medications (e.g. TCA, decongestants, amphetamines) Serotonin syndrome with serotonergic drugs (e.g. SSRI, tryptophan, dextromethorphan)	MAOI, SSRI Does not seem to inhibit P450 system
	NDRI	RIMA	NASSA	
Considerations	Depression, seasonal depression	Depression unresponsive to other therapies	Useful in patients with insomnia, agitation or depression with cachexia	
Mode of Action	Block norepinephrine and dopamine reuptake	Reversible inhibitor of monoamine oxidase A Leads to ↑ norepinephrine and serotonin	Enhance central noradrenergic and serotonergic activity by inhibiting presynaptic α -2 adrenergic receptors	
Side Effects	CNS: dizziness, headache, tremor, insomnia CVS: dysrhythmia, HTN GI: dry mouth, N/V, constipation, ↓ appetite Other: agitation, anxiety, anaphylactoid reaction	CNS: dizziness, headache, tremor, insomnia CVS: dysrhythmia, hypotension GI: dry mouth, N/V, diarrhea, abdominal pain, dyspepsia GU: delayed ejaculation Other: diaphoresis	CNS: somnolence, dizziness, seizure (rare) Endocrine: ↑ cholesterol, ↑ triglycerides GI: constipation, ↑ ALT	
Risk in Overdose	Tremors and seizures seen in acute overdose	Risk of fatal overdose when combined with citalopram or clomipramine	Mild symptoms with overdose	
Drug Interactions	MAOI Drugs that reduce seizure threshold: antipsychotics, systemic steroids, quinolone antibiotics, antimalarial drugs	MAOI, SSRI, TCA Opioids	MAOI, SSRI, SNRI, RIMA	

Serotonin Syndrome

- thought to be due to over-stimulation of the serotonergic system
- can result from medication combinations such as SSRI+MAOI, SSRI+tryptophan, MAOI+meperidine, MAOI+tryptophan
- rare but potentially life-threatening adverse reaction to SSRIs, especially when switching from an SSRI to an MAOI
- symptoms include nausea, diarrhea, palpitations, chills, restlessness, confusion, and lethargy but can progress to myoclonus, hyperthermia, rigor and hypertonicity
- treatment: discontinue medication and administer emergency medical care as needed
- important to distinguish from NMS (see sidebar, PS38)

Discontinuation Syndrome

- caused by the abrupt cessation of an antidepressant
- observed most frequently with paroxetine, fluvoxamine, and venlafaxine
- symptoms usually begin within 1-3 d and include: anxiety, insomnia, irritability, mood lability, N/V, dizziness, headache, dystonia, tremor, chills, fatigue, lethargy, and myalgia
- treatment: symptoms may last between 1-3 wk, but can be relieved within 24 h by restarting antidepressant therapy at the same dose the patient was taking and initiating a slow taper over several weeks
- consider using a drug with a longer half-life such as fluoxetine



Symptoms of Antidepressant Discontinuation

FINISH

Flu-like symptoms
Insomnia
Nausea
Imbalance
Sensory disturbances
Hyperarousal (anxiety/agitation)



Sequenced Treatment Alternatives to Relieve Depression

Journal of Psychosocial Nursing 2008;46:21-24
Study: Prospective randomized anti-depressant treatment trial.

Patients: 4,000 patients with major depressive disorder.

Objective: To compare the efficacy and tolerability of various antidepressant therapies through four sequential treatment levels.

Intervention: Level 1-citalopram → if relapse → Level 2-citalopram + bupropion SR, sertraline, venlafaxine XR, or cognitive psychotherapy. Level 2A-switch to bupropion or venlafaxine XR. Level 3-either mirtazapine or nortriptyline + lithium, T3. Level 4-tranylcypromine or venlafaxine XR + mirtazapine.

Results: Remission rates were 28% for Level 1, 17% for Level 2, 12-25% for Level 3, and 7-14% for Level 4. When more treatment steps are required, there are lower remission rates, greater degrees of tolerance, and higher rates of relapse.



Long-term lithium use can lead to a nephropathy and diabetes insipidus in some patients



Lithium Side Effects

LITHIUM

Leukocytosis
Insipidus (diabetes)
Tremor, teratogenicity
Hypothyroidism
Increased weight
"V"omiting, nausea
Miscellaneous (e.g. ECG changes, acne)

Mood Stabilizers

First-Line

Lithium or Valproic Acid (± antipsychotic)

- before initiating, get baseline: CBC, ECG (if patient >45 yr old or cardiovascular risk), urinalysis, BUN, Cr, electrolytes, TSH
- before initiating lithium: screen for pregnancy, thyroid disease, seizure disorder, neurological, renal, cardiovascular diseases
- may need acute coverage with benzodiazepines or antipsychotics
- use carbamazepine in non-responders and rapid cycling bipolar disorder
- can combine lithium and carbamazepine or valproic acid safely in lithium non-responders
- olanzapine may be used as a mood stabilizer, in conjunction with other mood stabilizers
- lithium and lamotrigine have established antidepressant efficacy

Lithium Toxicity

- clinical diagnosis as toxicity can occur at therapeutic levels
- **common causes:** overdose, sodium/fluid loss, concurrent medical illness
- **clinical presentation**
 - GI: severe nausea/vomiting and diarrhea
 - cerebellar: ataxia, slurred speech, lack of coordination
 - cerebral: drowsiness, myoclonus, choreiform or Parkinsonian movements, upper motor neuron signs, seizures, delirium, coma
- **management**
 - discontinue lithium for several doses and begin again at a lower dose when lithium level has fallen to a non-toxic range
 - serum lithium levels, BUN, electrolytes
 - saline infusion
 - hemodialysis if lithium >2 mmol/L, coma, shock, severe dehydration, failure to respond to treatment after 24 h, or deterioration

Second-Line/Adjuvant Mood Stabilizers

Lithium, lamotrigine, divalproex, carbamazepine

Table 19. Commonly Used Mood Stabilizers

	Lithium	Lamotrigine (Lamictal®)	Divalproex (Depakote®)	Carbamazepine (Tegretol®)
Indications	Maintenance therapy of bipolar disorder Treatment of acute mania Augmentation of antidepressants in MDE and OCD Schizoaffective disorder Chronic aggression and antisocial behavior Recurrent depression	Maintenance treatment of bipolar disorder Treatment of bipolar depression	Maintenance therapy of bipolar disorder Treatment of acute mania Rapid cycling bipolar disorder Mixed phase/Dysphoric mania	Maintenance therapy of bipolar disorder Treatment of acute mania Rapid cycling bipolar disorder
Mode of Action	Unknown Therapeutic response within 7-14 d	May inhibit 5-HT ₃ receptors May potentiate DA activity	Depresses synaptic transmission Raises seizure threshold	Depresses synaptic transmission Raises seizure threshold
Dosage	Adult: 600-1500 mg/d Geriatric: 150-600 mg/d Usually daily dosing	Starting: 12.5-15 mg/d Daily dose: 100-200 mg/d Dose adjusted in patients taking other anticonvulsants	750-2500 mg/d Usually tid dosing	400-1600 mg/d Usually bid or tid dosing
Therapeutic Level	Adult: 0.8-1.0 mmol/L (1.0-1.25 mmol/L for acute mania) Geriatric: 0.5-0.8 mmol/L	Therapeutic plasma level not established Dosing based on therapeutic response	17-50 mmol/L	350-700 µmol/L
Monitoring	Monitor serum levels until therapeutic (always wait 12 h after dose) Then monitor biweekly or monthly until a steady state is reached, then q2mo Monitor thyroid function q6mo, creatinine q6mo, urinalysis q1yr	Monitor for suicidality, particularly when initiating treatment	LFTs weekly x 1 mo, then monthly, due to risk of liver dysfunction Watch for signs of liver dysfunction: nausea, edema, malaise	Weekly blood counts for first month, due to risk of agranulocytosis Watch for signs of blood dyscrasias: fever, rash, sore throat, easy bruising
Side Effects	GI: N/V, diarrhea, stomach pain GU: polyuria, polydipsia, GN, renal failure, nephrogenic DI CNS: fine tremor, lethargy, fatigue, headache Hematologic: reversible leukocytosis Other: teratogenic (Ebstein's anomaly), weight gain, edema, psoriasis, hypothyroidism, hair thinning, muscle weakness, ECG changes	GI: N/V, diarrhea CNS: ataxia, dizziness, diplopia, headache, somnolence Skin: rash (should discontinue drug because of risk of Stevens-Johnson syndrome), increased lamotrigine levels = increased risk of rash Other: anxiety	GI: liver dysfunction, N/V, diarrhea CNS: ataxia, drowsiness, tremor, sedation, cognitive blurring Other: hair loss, weight gain, transient thrombocytopenia, neural tube defects when used in pregnancy	GI: N/V, diarrhea, hepatic toxicity CNS: ataxia, dizziness, slurred speech, drowsiness, confusion, nystagmus, diplopia Hematologic: transient leukopenia (10%), agranulocytosis, aplastic anemia Skin: rash (5% risk; should discontinue drug because of risk of Stevens-Johnson syndrome) Other: neural tube defects when used in pregnancy
Interactions	NSAIDs decrease clearance		OCP	OCP

Anxiolytics

- anxiolytics mask or alleviate symptoms; they do not cure them
- **indications**
 - short-term treatment of transient forms of anxiety disorders, insomnia, alcohol withdrawal (especially delirium tremens), barbiturate withdrawal, organic brain syndrome (agitation in dementia), EPS and akathisia due to antipsychotics, seizure disorders, musculoskeletal disorders
- **relative contraindications**
 - major depression (except as an adjunct to other treatment), history of drug/alcohol abuse, pregnancy, breast feeding
- **mechanism of action**
 - benzodiazepines: potentiate binding of GABA to its receptors; results in decreased neuronal activity
 - buspirone: partial agonist of 5-HT_{1A} receptors

Benzodiazepines

- should be used for limited periods (weeks-months) to avoid dependence
- all benzodiazepines are sedating; be wary in use for the elderly
- have similar efficacy, so choice depends on half-life, metabolites and route of administration, OD or bid
- taper slowly over weeks-months because they can cause withdrawal reactions
 - low dose withdrawal: tachycardia, HTN, panic, insomnia, anxiety, impaired memory and concentration, perceptual disturbances
 - high dose withdrawal: hyperpyrexia, seizures, psychosis, death
- avoid alcohol because of potentiation of CNS depression; caution with drinking and use of machinery

- **side effects**
 - CNS: drowsiness, cognitive impairment, reduced motor coordination, memory impairment
 - physical dependence, tolerance
- **withdrawal**
 - symptoms: anxiety, insomnia, autonomic hyperactivity (less common)
 - onset: 1-2 d (short-acting), 2-4 d (long-acting)
 - duration: weeks-months
 - complications with above 50 mg diazepam/d: seizures, delirium, arrhythmias, psychosis
 - management: taper with long-acting benzodiazepine
 - similar to but less severe than alcohol withdrawal; can be fatal
- **overdose**
 - commonly used drug in overdose
 - ♦ overdose is rarely fatal
 - ♦ benzodiazepines are more dangerous and may cause death when combined with alcohol, other CNS depressants or TCAs

Benzodiazepine Antagonist – Flumazenil (Romazicon®)

- use for suspected benzodiazepine overdose
- specific antagonist at the benzodiazepine receptor site

Buspirone (Buspar®)

- **primary use:** GAD
- may be preferred over benzodiazepines because are non-sedating, no interaction with alcohol, does not alter seizure threshold, not prone to abuse
- **onset of action:** 2 wk
- **side effects:** dizziness, drowsiness, nausea, headache, nervousness, EPS

Table 20. Common Anxiolytics

Class	Drug	Dose Range (mg/d)	t _{1/2} (h)	Appropriate Use
Benzodiazepines				
Long-acting	clonazepam (Klonopin®)	0.25-4	18-50	Akathisia, generalized anxiety, seizure prevention, panic disorder
	diazepam (Valium®)	2-40	30-100	Generalized anxiety, seizure prevention, muscle relaxant, alcohol withdrawal
	chlordiazepoxide (Librium®)	5-300	30-100	Sleep, anxiety, alcohol withdrawal
	flurazepam (Dalmane®)	15-30	50-160	Sleep
Short-acting	alprazolam (Xanax®)	0.25-4.0	6-20	Panic disorder, high dependency rate
	lorazepam (Ativan®)	0.5-6.0	10-20	Sleep, generalized anxiety, akathisia, alcohol withdrawal, sublingual available for very rapid action
	oxazepam (Serax®)	10-120	8-12	Sleep, generalized anxiety, alcohol withdrawal
	temazepam (Restoril®)	7.5-30	8-20	Sleep
	triazolam (Halcion®)	0.125-0.5	1.5-5	Shortest t _{1/2} , rapid sleep, but rebound insomnia
Azapirones				
	buspirone (Buspar®)	20-60	2-11	Generalized anxiety
	eszopiclone (Lunestra®)	2-3	4-6	Sleep



Geriatric Benzodiazepines

LOT

Lorazepam

Oxazepam

Temazepam

Safe in liver disease because not metabolized by liver



Benzodiazepines used for Alcohol Withdrawal

- Diazepam 20 mg PO/IV q1h prn
- Lorazepam 2-5 mg PO/IV/SL for patients with liver disease, chronic lung disease, or elderly



ECT in Society

Prior to the 1940's, ECT was performed without the use of muscle relaxants, resulting in seizures with full-scale convulsions and rare but serious complications such as vertebral and long-bone fractures. This practice may have led to negative societal perceptions of ECT, further perpetuated by barbaric depictions in popular culture. Despite ongoing stigmatization, ECT as it is practiced today is an effective and safe option for patients struggling with mental illness



Efficacy of ECT in Depression: A Meta-Analytic Review

J of ECT 2004; 20:13-20

Study: Meta-analysis of randomized and non-randomized control trials.

Patients: Individuals with unipolar and bipolar depression.

Methods: MEDLINE search for relevant papers from 1966-2003.

Main Outcomes: The Hamilton Depression Rating scale was used to determine response to treatment. **Results:** ECT was found to be superior to simulated ECT, placebo, TCAs, MAOIs, and anti-depressants in general.

Summary: ECT is an efficacious treatment modality, particularly in severe and treatment-resistant depression.

Electroconvulsive Therapy

- induction of a grand mal seizure using an electrical pulse through the brain while the patient is under general anesthesia with a muscle relaxant
- unilateral vs. bilateral electrode placement
- **indications**
 - depression refractory to adequate pharmacological trial
 - high suicide risk
 - medical risk in addition to depression (dehydration, electrolytes, pregnancy)
 - previous good response to ECT
 - familial response to ECT
 - elderly
 - psychotic depression
 - catatonic features

- marked vegetative features
- acute schizophrenia unresponsive to medication
- mania unresponsive to medications
- **side effects:** risk of anesthesia, memory loss (may be retrograde and/or anterograde, tends to resolve by 6 to 9 mo, permanent impairment controversial), headaches, myalgias
- evidence that unilateral ECT causes less memory loss than bilateral but may not be as effective
- **contraindications:** increased intracranial pressure

References

- Abel KM, Drake R, Goldstein JM. Sex differences in schizophrenia. *Int Rev Psychiatr* 2010;22:417-428.
- American Psychiatric Association. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders, 5th ed. Washington: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2013.
- American Psychiatric Association. Highlights of changes from DSM-IV-TR to DSM-5. Washington: American Psychiatric Publishing, 2013.
- Ball JR, Mitchell PB, Corry JC, et al. A randomized controlled trial of cognitive therapy for bipolar disorder: focus on long-term change. *J Clin Psychiat* 2006;67:277-286.
- Clarke MC, Harley M, Cannon M. The role of obstetric events in schizophrenia. *Schizophr Bull* 2006;32:3-8.
- Clinical Practice Guidelines: treatment of schizophrenia. *Can J Psychiat* 2005;50(Suppl1):19-28.
- Conley RR, Kelly DL. Pharmacologic treatment of schizophrenia, 1st ed. USA: Professional Communications, 2000.
- Croxtall JD. Aripiprazole: a review of its use in the management of schizophrenia in adults. *CNS Drugs* 2012;26:155-183.
- DeRubeis RJ, Hollon SD, Amsterdam JD, et al. Cognitive therapy vs. medications in the treatment of moderate to severe depression. *Arch Gen Psychiat* 2005;62:409-416.
- Ditto KE. SSRI discontinuation syndrome: awareness as an approach to prevention. *Postgrad Med* 2003;114:79-84.
- Folstein MF, Folstein SE, McHugh PR. Mini-mental state: a practical method for grading the state of patients for the clinician. *J Psychiatr Res* 1975;12:189-198.
- Gliatto MF and Rai AK. Evaluation and treatment of patients with suicidal intention. *Am Fam Physician* 1999;59:1500-1514.
- Graham-Knight D, Karch AM. Pharm party. *Am J Nurs* 2007;107:179.
- Hembree EA, Foa EB. Post traumatic stress disorder: psychological factors and psychosocial interventions. *J Clin Psychiat* 2000;61(Suppl7):33-39.
- Herrmann N. Recommendations for the management of behavioral and psychological symptoms of Dementia. *Can J Neurol Sci* 2001;28(Suppl1):96-107.
- Howland RH. Sequenced treatment alternatives to relieve depression (STAR*D). Part 2: study outcomes. *J Psychosoc Nurs Ment Health Serv* 2008;46:21-24.
- Kahan M, Wilson L. Managing alcohol, tobacco and other drug problems: a pocket guide for physicians and nurses. Toronto: Centre for Addiction and Mental Health, 2002.
- Kapur S, Zipursky RB, Remington G. Clinical and theoretical implications of 5-HT₂ and D₂ receptor occupancy of clozapine, risperidone, and olanzapine in schizophrenia. *Am J Psychiat* 1999;156:286-293.
- Koch T. A tour of the psychotropics, 4th ed. Toronto: Mental Health Service, St Michael's Hospital.
- Krupnick JL, Sotsky SM, Simmens S, et al. The role of the therapeutic alliance in psychotherapy and pharmacotherapy outcome: findings in the National Institute of Mental Health treatment of depression collaborative research program. *J Consult Clin Psychol* 1996;64:532-539.
- Kuepper R, van Os J, Lieb R, Wittchen HU, Hoffer M, Henquet C. Continued cannabis use and risk of incidence and persistence of psychotic symptoms: 10 year follow-up cohort study. *BMJ* 2011;342:d738.
- Lieberman JA, Stroup TS, McEvoy JP, et al. Effectiveness of antipsychotic drugs in patients with chronic schizophrenia. *NEJM* 2005;353:1209-1223.
- Linehan MM, Comtois KA, Murray AM, et al. Two-year randomized controlled trial and follow-up of dialectical behavior therapy vs therapy by experts for suicidal behaviors and borderline personality disorder. *Arch Gen Psychiat* 2006;63:757-766.
- Lopez M, Torpac MG. The Texas children's medication algorithm project: report of the Texas consensus conference panel on medication treatment of childhood attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. Part I. *Am Acad Child Adolescent Psychiat* 2000;39:908-919.
- March J, Silva S, Petrycki S, et al. Fluoxetine, cognitive-behavioral therapy, and their combination for adolescents with depression: Treatment for Adolescents With Depression Study (TADS) randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2004;292:807-820.
- Moore TH, Zammit S, Lingford-Hughes A, et al. Cannabis use and risk of psychotic or affective mental health outcomes: a systematic review. *Lancet* 2007;370:319-328.
- MTA Cooperative Group. A 14-month randomized clinical trial of treatment strategies for attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder. *Arch Gen Psychiat* 1999;56:1073-1086.
- National Institute on Drug Abuse. Research report series: methamphetamine abuse and addiction. reprinted 2002 Jan. NIH Publication No.: 02-4210.
- Noble J. Textbook of primary care medicine, 3rd ed. Mosby, 2000. 466-470.
- Pagnin D, de Queiroz V, Pini S, et al. Efficacy of ECT in depression: a meta-analytic review. *J ECT* 2004;20:13-20.
- Patterson CJ, Gauthier S, Bergman H, et al. Canadian Consensus Conference on Dementia: A Physician's Guide to Using the Recommendations. *CMAJ* 1999;160:1738-1742.
- Pliszka SR, Greenhill LL, Crismon ML, et al. Textbook of psychiatry. London: Oxford University Press, 1997.
- Stahl SM. Psychopharmacology of antipsychotics. London: Martin Dunitz, 1999.
- Zimmerman M. Interview guide for evaluating DSM-IV psychiatric disorders and the mental status examination. East Greenwich: Psych Products Press, 1994.

Kaustubh Bal, Justin Chow, and Eric Grayson, chapter editors

Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Tina Hu, EBM editor

Dr. Meyer Balter and Dr. Matthew Binnie, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Respiratory Failure	25
Approach to the Respiratory Patient	2	Hypoxemic Respiratory Failure	
Basic Anatomy Review		Hypercapnic Respiratory Failure	
Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations		Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome	
Pulmonary Function Tests		Neoplasms	28
Chest X-Rays		Lung Cancer	
Arterial Blood Gases		Approach to the Solitary Pulmonary Nodule	
Diseases of Airway Obstruction	7	Sleep-Related Breathing Disorders	31
Pneumonia		Hypoventilation Syndromes	
Asthma		Sleep Apnea	
Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease		Introduction to Intensive Care	32
Bronchiectasis		Intensive Care Unit Basics	
Cystic Fibrosis		Organ Failure	
Interstitial Lung Disease	13	Shock	
Unknown Etiologic Agents		Sepsis	
Idiopathic Pulmonary Fibrosis		Common Medications	35
Sarcoidosis		Landmark Respirology Trials	36
Known Etiologic Agents		References	37
Hypersensitivity Pneumonitis			
Pneumoconioses			
ILD Associated with Drugs or Treatments			
Pulmonary Vascular Disease	17		
Pulmonary Hypertension			
Idiopathic Pulmonary Arterial Hypertension			
Pulmonary Embolism			
Pulmonary Vasculitis			
Pulmonary Edema			
Diseases of the Mediastinum and Pleura . . .	21		
Mediastinal Masses			
Mediastinitis			
Pleural Effusions			
Complicated Parapneumonic Effusion			
Empyema			
Atelectasis			
Pneumothorax			
Asbestos-Related Pleural Disease and			
Mesothelioma			

Acronyms

A-a	alveolar-arterial	CVD	cardiovascular disease	LV	left ventricle	PTT	partial thromboplastin time
A-aDO ₂	alveolar-arterial oxygen diffusion gradient	CVP	central venous pressure	LVEDP	left ventricular end diastolic pressure	PUD	peptic ulcer disease
ABG	arterial blood gas	CWP	coal worker's pneumoconiosis			PVC	premature ventricular contraction
ACEI	angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor	DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation	LVF	left ventricular failure	RA	rheumatoid arthritis
ACV	assist-control ventilation			MAC	<i>Mycobacterium avium</i> complex	RAD	right axis deviation
AECOPD	acute exacerbation of COPD	DL _{CO}	carbon monoxide diffusing capacity of lung	MDI	metered dose inhaler	RAP	right atrial pressure
AFB	acid-fast bacillus	EBUS	endobronchial ultrasound	MEP	maximum expiratory pressure	RBBB	right bundle branch block
AFP	alpha-fetoprotein	ECMO	extracorporeal membrane oxygenation	MIP	maximum inspiratory pressure	RF	rheumatoid factor
AHI	apnea hypopnea index			MSA	mixed sleep apnea	RV	residual volume
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	ERV	expiratory reserve volume	MSK	musculoskeletal	RVEDV	right ventricular end diastolic volume
ANA	antinuclear antibody	ETT	endotracheal tube	NPPV	non-invasive positive pressure ventilation	RVH	right ventricular hypertrophy
ANCA	anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibody	FEF	forced expiratory flow rate			RVSP	right ventricular systolic pressure
APTT	activated partial thromboplastin time	FEV ₁	forced expiratory volume in 1 second	NSCLC	non-small cell lung cancer	SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome			NTT	nasotracheal tube	SCLC	small cell lung cancer
ASA	acetylsalicylic acid (Aspirin®)	FiO ₂	fraction of oxygen in inspired air	OC	oral contraceptive pill	S _{at} O ₂	central venous oxygen saturation
ASD	atrial septal defect	FRC	functional residual capacity	OSA	obstructive sleep apnea	SIMV	synchronous intermittent mandatory ventilation
AV	arteriovenous	GBM	glomerular basement membrane	PA	posteroanterior	SIRS	systemic inflammatory response syndrome
AVM	arteriovenous malformation	GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease	P _a CO ₂	arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide	SV	stroke volume
AVN	avascular necrosis	H/A	headache	P _a O ₂	arterial partial pressure of oxygen	SVC	superior vena cava
BG	blood glucose	HPA	human platelet antigen	P _a O ₂	alveolar partial pressure of oxygen	SVRI	systemic vascular resistance index
BiPAP	bilevel positive airway pressure	HRT	hormone replacement therapy	P _{atm}	atmospheric pressure	TB	tuberculosis
BOOP	bronchiolitis obliterans with organizing pneumonia	IBD	inflammatory bowel disease	PCP	<i>Pneumocystis carinii</i> pneumonia	TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
BSA	body surface area	IC	inspiratory capacity	PCV	pressure control ventilation	TLC	total lung capacity
CA	cancer	ICP	intracranial pressure	PCWP	pulmonary capillary wedge pressure	TNM	tumor, node, metastasis
CCB	calcium channel blocker	ICS	inhaled corticosteroid	PDA	patent ductus arteriosus	TNP	total parenteral nutrition
CD	Crohn's disease	ILD	interstitial lung disease	PEEP	positive end expiratory pressure	UC	ulcerative colitis
CHF	congestive heart failure	IPF	idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis	PEF	peak expiratory flow	URT	upper respiratory tract infection
CI	cardiac index	LAAC	long-acting anti-cholinergic	PFT	pulmonary function tests	V/Q	ventilation-to-perfusion
CO	cardiac output	LABA	long-acting beta-agonist	PMNs	polymorphonuclear cells	VATS	video-assisted thorascopic surgery
COP	cryptogenic organizing pneumonia	LLN	lower limit of normal	PP	pulse pressure	VC	vital capacity
CPAP	continuous positive airway pressure	LMWH	low molecular weight heparin	PSV	pressure support ventilation	VSD	ventricular septal defect
CSA	central sleep apnea	LTRA	leukotriene receptor antagonist	PTH	parathyroid hormone	VTE	venous thromboembolism
						V _T	tidal volume

Approach to the Respiratory Patient

Basic Anatomy Review

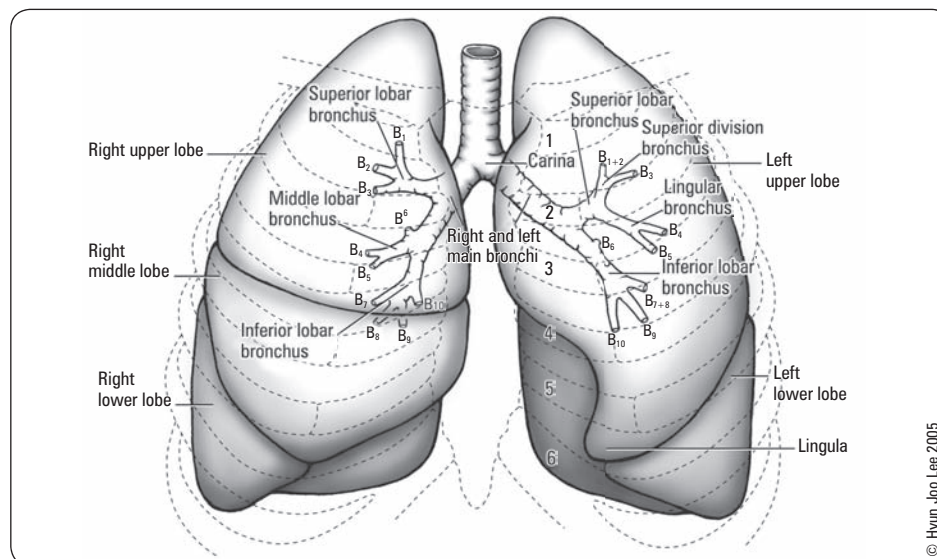


Figure 1. Lung lobes and bronchi

Respiration Pattern

Normal

Obstructive (prolonged expiration)

- Asthma, COPD

Bradypnea (slow respiratory rate)

- Drug-induced respiratory depression
- Diabetic coma (nonketotic)
- Increased ICP

Kussmaul's Breathing (fast and deep)

- Metabolic acidosis
- Exercise
- Anxiety

Biot's/Ataxic (irregular with long apneic periods)

- Drug-induced respiratory depression
- Increased ICP
- Brain damage, especially medullary

Cheyne-Stokes Breathing (changing rates and depths with apneic periods)

- Drug-induced respiratory depression
- Brain damage (especially cerebral)
- CHF
- Uremia

Apneustic (prolonged inspiratory pause)

- Pontine lesion

© Bonnie Tang 2012

Figure 2. Respiration patterns in normal and disease states

Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations

Table 1. Differential Diagnosis of Dyspnea

Acute dyspnea (minutes-hours)
Cardiac causes
Ischemic heart disease
CHF exacerbation
Cardiac tamponade
Pulmonary causes
Upper airway obstruction (anaphylaxis, foreign body)
Airway disease (asthma, COPD exacerbation, bronchitis)
Parenchymal lung disease (ARDS, pneumonia)
Pulmonary vascular disease (PE, vasculitis)
Pleural disease (pneumothorax, tension pneumothorax)
Respiratory control (metabolic acidosis, ASA toxicity)
Psychiatric
Anxiety/psychosomatic
Chronic dyspnea (weeks-months)
Cardiac causes
Valvular heart disease
Decreased CO
Respiratory causes
Parenchymal lung disease (interstitial disease)
Pulmonary vascular disease (pulmonary HTN, vasculitis)
Pleural disease (effusion)
Airway disease – asthma, COPD
Metabolic causes
Severe anemia
Hyperthyroidism
Neuromuscular and chest wall disorders
Deconditioning, obesity, pregnancy, neuromuscular disease

Table 2. Differential Diagnosis of Chest Pain
(see Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery C4 and Emergency Medicine ER21)

Nonpleuritic	Pleuritic
Pulmonary	Pulmonary
Pneumonia	Pneumonia
PE	PE
Neoplastic	Pneumothorax
Cardiac	Hemothorax
MI	Neoplasm
Myocarditis/pericarditis	TB
Esophageal	Empyema
GERD	Cardiac
Spasm	Pericarditis
Esophagitis	Dressler's syndrome
Ulceration	GI
Achalasia	Subphrenic abscess
Neoplasm	Pancreatitis
Esophageal rupture	MSK
Mediastinal	Costochondritis
Lymphoma	Fractured rib
Thymoma	Myositis
Subdiaphragmatic	Herpes zoster
PUD	
Gastritis	
Biliary colic	
Pancreatitis	
Vascular	
Dissecting aortic aneurysm	
MSK	
Costochondritis	
Skin	
Breast	
Ribs	

Table 3. Differential Diagnosis of Hemoptysis

Airway Disease
Acute or chronic bronchitis
Bronchiectasis
Bronchogenic CA
Bronchial carcinoid tumor
Parenchymal Disease
Pneumonia
TB
Lung abscess
Vascular Disease
PE
Elevated pulmonary venous pressure:
LVF
Mitral stenosis
Vascular malformation
Vasculitis
Goodpasture's syndrome
Idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis
Miscellaneous
Impaired coagulation
Pulmonary endometriosis

Table 4. Differential Diagnosis of Cough

Airway Irritants
Inhaled smoke, dusts, fumes
Postnasal drip (upper airway cough syndrome)
Aspiration
Gastric contents (GERD)
Oral secretions
Foreign body
Airway Disease
URTI including postnasal drip and sinusitis
Acute or chronic bronchitis
Bronchiectasis
Neoplasm
External compression by node or mass lesion
Asthma
COPD
Parenchymal Disease
Pneumonia
Lung abscess
Interstitial lung disease
CHF
Drug-induced (e.g. ACEI)

Adapted from: Weinberger SE. Principles of pulmonary medicine, 5th ed. 2008. With permission from Elsevier



Most Common Causes of Chronic Cough in the Non-smoking Patient (cough > 3 mo with normal CXR)

- GERD
- Asthma
- Post-nasal drip
- ACEI



Hemoptysis

- Most common cause is bronchitis
- 90% of massive hemoptysis is from the bronchial arteries
- Considered "massive" if > 600 mL/24 h



Common Causes of Clubbing

- Pulmonary: Lung CA, bronchiectasis, pulmonary fibrosis, abscess, CF, empyema (NOT COPD)
- Cardiac: Cyanotic heart disease, endocarditis, A-V fistula
- GI: IBD, celiac, cirrhosis
- Endocrine: Graves'
- Other: Other malignancy, primary hypertrophic osteoarthropathy



Clubbing is not seen in COPD – if present, think malignancy

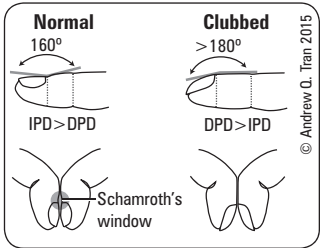


Figure 3. Signs of nail clubbing

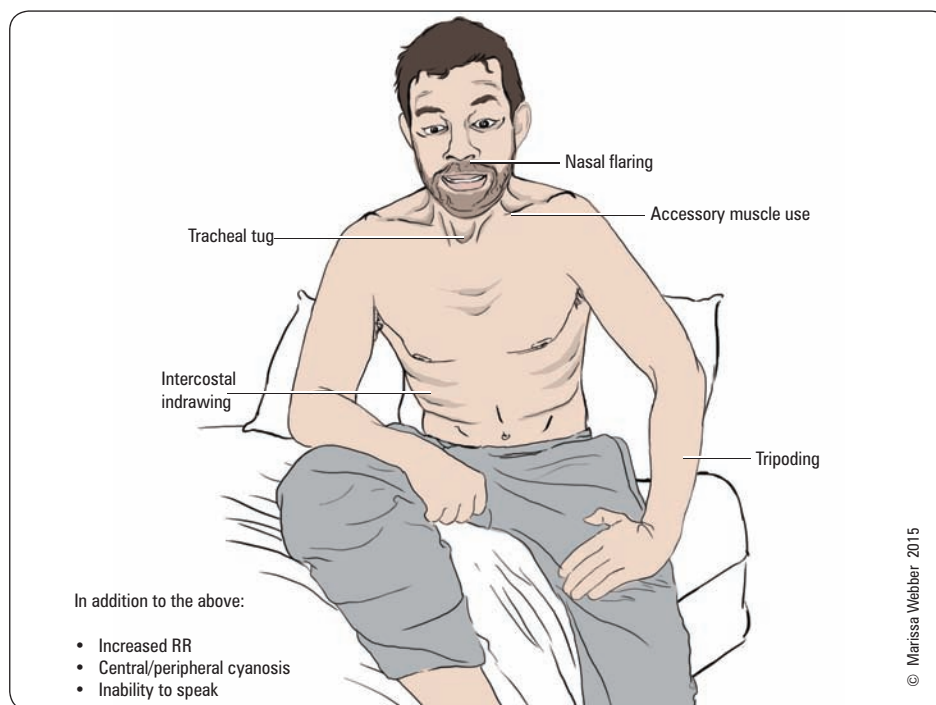


Figure 4. Signs of respiratory distress

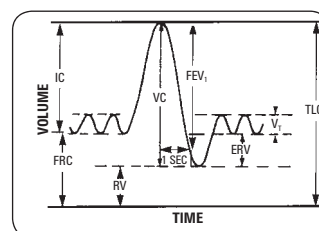


Figure 5A. Subcompartments of lung volumes

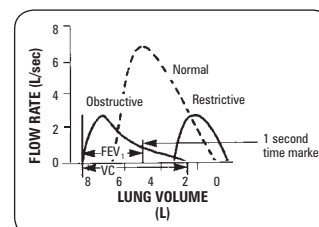


Figure 5B. Expiratory flow volume curves

Adapted with permission from Elsevier. Weinberger SE. Principles of pulmonary medicine, 5th ed. ©2008

Pulmonary Function Tests

- useful in differentiating the pattern of lung disease (obstructive vs. restrictive)
- assess lung volumes, flow rates, and diffusion capacity (see Figures 5A and 5B)
- **note:** normal values for FEV_1 are approximately $\pm 20\%$ of the predicted values (for age, sex, and height); ethnicity may affect predicted values

Table 5. Comparison of Lung Flow and Volume Parameters in Obstructive vs. Restrictive Lung Disease

	Obstructive	Restrictive
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Decreased flow rates (most marked during expiration) • Air trapping (increased RV/TLC) • Hyperinflation (increased FRC, TLC) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Decreased lung compliance • Decreased lung volumes
DDx	Asthma, COPD, CF, bronchitis, bronchiectasis*	ILD, pleural disease, neuromuscular disease, chest wall disease
FEV_1/FVC	↓	↑ or N
TLC	↑ or N	↓
RV	↑ or N	↓
RV/TLC	↑ or N	N
DL_{CO}	↓ or N	↓ or N

*Bronchiectasis can be obstructive or mixed

Table 6. Common Respiriology Procedures

Technique	Purpose	Description
Plethysmography ("body box")	Measure FRC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After a normal expiration the patient inhales against a closed mouthpiece • Resultant changes in the volume and pressure of the plethysmograph are used to calculate the volume of gas in the thorax • Useful for patients with air trapping
He Dilution	Measure FRC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A known amount of helium is diluted into a patient's lungs following inspiration • Since the amount of helium remains constant, FRC is determined based on the final concentration of the helium in the closed system • Only includes airspaces that communicate with the bronchial tree
Bronchoscopy	Diagnosis and therapy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A flexible or rigid bronchoscope is used for visualization of a patient's airways Allows for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tissue washings for culture and cytology • Endobronchial or transbronchial tissue biopsies • Removal of secretions/foreign bodies/blood • Laser resections • Airway stenting • Mediastinal lymph nodes can also be sampled using a special bronchoscope equipped with an U/S probe (EBUS)



Lung Volumes

ERV – Expiratory Reserve Volume
FEF – Forced Expiratory Flow Rate
 FEV_1 – Forced Expiratory Volume (in one second)
FRC – Functional Residual Capacity
IC – Inspiratory Capacity
RV – Residual Volume
TLC – Total Lung Capacity
VC – Vital Capacity
 V_T – Tidal Volume

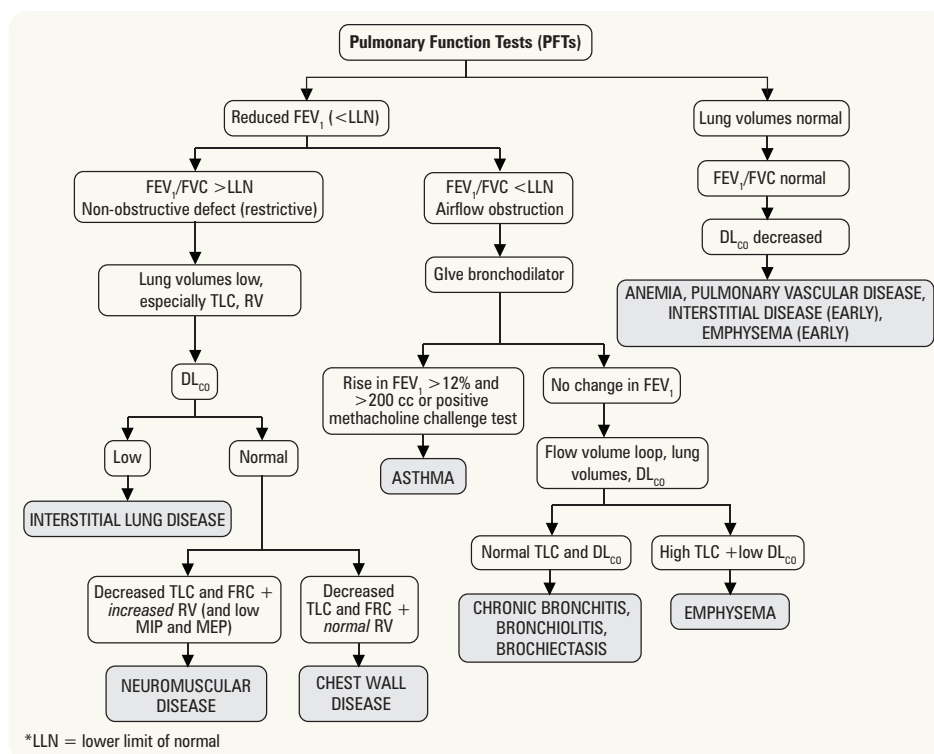


Figure 6. Interpreting PFTs

Chest X-Rays

- see [Medical Imaging](#), MI4

Table 7. CXR Patterns and Differential Diagnosis

Pattern	Signs	Common DDx
Consolidation ("Airspace disease")	Air bronchogram Silhouette sign Less visible blood vessels	<u>Acute</u> : water (pulmonary edema), pus (pneumonia), blood (hemorrhage) <u>Chronic</u> : neoplasm (lymphoma), inflammatory (eosinophilic pneumonia), chronic infection (TB, fungal)
Reticular ("Interstitial disease")	Increased pulmonary markings Honeycombing (IPF)	ILD (IPF, collagen vascular disease, asbestos, drugs)
Nodular	Cavitary vs. non-cavitary	<u>Cavitary</u> : neoplasm (primary vs. metastatic lung cancer), infectious (anaerobic or Gram negative, TB, fungal), inflammatory (RA, Granulomatosis with Polyangiitis [GPA]) <u>Non-cavitary</u> : above + sarcoid, Kaposi's sarcoma (in HIV), silicosis and other pneumoconiosis

Arterial Blood Gases

- provides information on acid-base and oxygenation status
- see [Nephrology](#), NP14

Approach to Acid-Base Status

1. Is the pH acidemic (pH < 7.35), alkalemic (pH > 7.45), or normal (pH 7.35-7.45)?
2. What is the primary disturbance?
 - metabolic: change in HCO_3^- and pH in same direction
 - respiratory: change in HCO_3^- and pH in opposite direction
3. Is there appropriate compensation? (see Table 8)
 - metabolic compensation occurs over 2-3 d reflecting altered renal HCO_3^- production and excretion
 - respiratory compensation through ventilatory control of P_aCO_2 occurs immediately
 - inadequate compensation may indicate a second acid-base disorder



Diffusion Capacity for Carbon Monoxide (DL_{CO})

DL_{CO} decreases with:

- Decreased surface area (e.g. emphysema)
- Decreased hemoglobin
- Interstitial lung disease
- Pulmonary vascular disease

DL_{CO} increases with:

- Asthma
- Pulmonary hemorrhage
- Polycythemia
- Increased pulmonary blood volume



OG = measured osmolality – calculated osmolality; for calculated osmolality think "2 salts and a sticky BUN" ($2\text{Na} + \text{glucose} + \text{urea}$)



Note: Mixed acid-base disturbances can still have a "normal" pH



Anion Gap Metabolic Acidosis

MUDPILES CAT

Methanol
Uremia
Diabetic ketoacidosis/starvation ketoacidosis
Phenformin/Paraldehyde
Isoniazid, Iron, Ibuprofen
Lactate
Ethylene glycol
Salicylates
Cyanide, Carbon dioxide
Alcoholic ketoacidosis
Toluene, Theophylline



Acidosis \leftrightarrow Hyperkalemia
Alkalosis \leftrightarrow Hypokalemia

Table 8. Expected Compensation for Specific Acid-Base Disorders

Disturbance	P _a CO ₂ (mmHg) (normal ~40)	HCO ₃ ⁻ (mmHg) (normal ~24)
Respiratory Acidosis		
Acute	↑ 10	↑ 1
Chronic	↑ 10	↑ 3
Respiratory Alkalosis		
Acute	↓ 10	↓ 2
Chronic	↓ 10	↓ 5
Metabolic Acidosis	↓ 1	↓ 1
Metabolic Alkalosis	↑ 5-7	↑ 10

4. If there is metabolic acidosis, what is the anion gap and osmolar gap?
- anion gap = $[\text{Na}^+] - ([\text{Cl}^-] + [\text{HCO}_3^-])$; normal ≤ 10 -15 mEq/L
 - osmolar gap = measured osmolarity – calculated osmolarity = measured – $(2[\text{Na}^+] + \text{glucose} + \text{urea})$; normal ≤ 10
5. If anion gap is increased, is the change in bicarbonate the same as the change in anion gap?
- if not, consider a mixed metabolic picture

Table 9. Differential Diagnosis of Respiratory Acidosis

Increased P_aCO₂ secondary to hypoventilation**Respiratory Center Depression (Decreased RR)**

Drugs (anesthesia, sedatives, narcotics)
Trauma
Increased ICP
Encephalitis
Stroke
Central apnea
Supplemental O₂ in chronic CO₂ retainers (e.g. COPD)

Neuromuscular Disorders (Decreased Vital Capacity)

Myasthenia gravis
Guillain-Barré syndrome
Poliomyelitis
Muscular dystrophies
ALS
Myopathies
Chest wall disease (obesity, kyphoscoliosis)

Airway Obstruction (Asthma, COPD)**Parenchymal Disease**

COPD
Pulmonary edema
Pneumothorax
Pneumonia
ILD (late stage)
ARDS

Mechanical Hypoventilation (Inadequate Mechanical Ventilation)

Table 10. Differential Diagnosis of Respiratory Alkalosis

Decreased P_aCO₂ secondary to hyperventilation**Hypoxemia**

Pulmonary disease (pneumonia, edema, PE, interstitial fibrosis)
Severe anemia
Heart failure
High altitude

Respiratory Center Stimulation

CNS disorders
Hepatic failure
Gram-negative sepsis
Drugs (ASA, progesterone, theophylline, catecholamines, psychotropics)
Pregnancy
Anxiety
Pain

Mechanical Hyperventilation (Excessive Mechanical Ventilation)**ABG Normal Values**

pH 7.35-7.45
HCO₃⁻ 22-26 mEq/L
P_aCO₂ 35-45 mm Hg
P_aO₂ 80-100 mm Hg

**A-aDO₂ Gradient Calculation**

= P_AO₂ (alveolar) – P_aO₂ (arterial)
= (F_iO₂ [Patm – PH₂O] – [P_aCO₂/RQ])
– P_aO₂

**At Sea Level on Room Air**

FiO₂ = 0.21
P_{atm} = 760 mmHg
PH₂O = 47 mmHg
RQ = 0.8
Thus, A-aDO₂ Gradient on Room Air
A-aDO₂ = (150 – 1.25 [P_aCO₂]) – P_aO₂

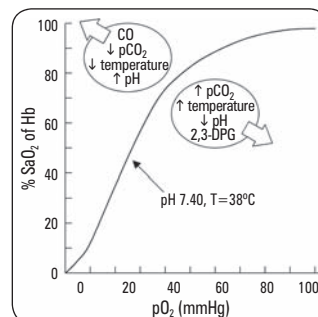


Figure 7. Oxygen-Hb dissociation curve

**Pulmonary Shunt**

Occurs when the capillary networks of the alveoli are perfused, yet there is a lack of adequate ventilation (and thus oxygenation) in that alveolus or group of alveoli. Thus this blood enters the pulmonary venous system without being oxygenated



- see [Nephrology](#), NP15 for differential diagnosis of metabolic acidosis and alkalosis

**Factors that Shift the Oxygen-Hb Dissociation Curve to the Right**

"CADET, face right!"

CO₂
Acid
2,3-DPG
Exercise
Temperature

Approach to Hypoxemia

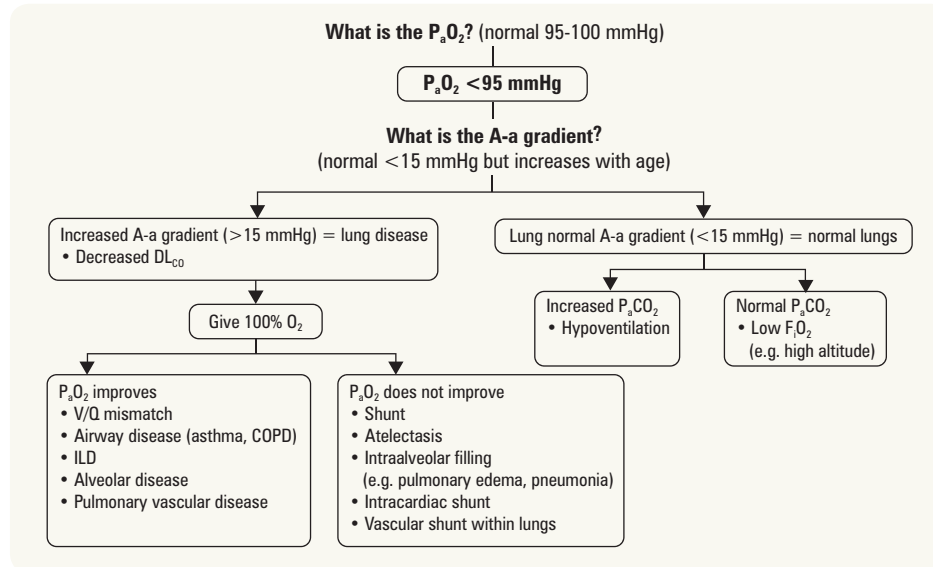


Figure 8. Approach to hypoxemia

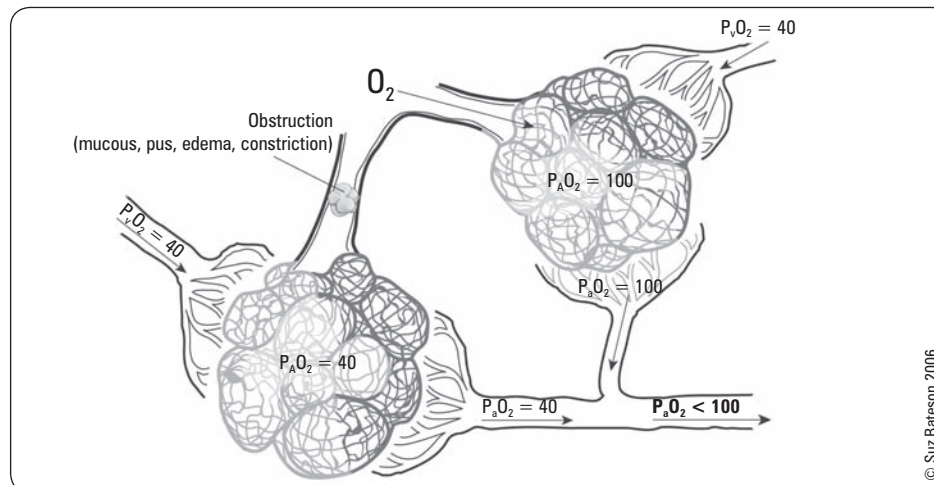


Figure 9. Pathophysiology of shunt



Airway Obstruction (decreased FEV_1)

- Asthma
- COPD (chronic bronchitis, emphysema)
- Bronchiectasis
- Cystic fibrosis



Red Flags

Severe tachypnea/tachycardia, respiratory muscle fatigue, diminished expiratory effort, cyanosis, silent chest, decreased LOC



Central cyanosis is not detectable until SaO_2 is $< 85\%$. It is more easily detected in polycythemia and less readily detectable in anemia



Asthma Action Plan

Is a written plan developed by patients and their physicians which includes signs and symptoms for patients to recognize their current level of respiratory distress (denoted as 'green', 'yellow', or 'red/emergency' zones) and the personalized treatment options for each zone

Diseases of Airway Obstruction

Pneumonia

- see [Infectious Diseases](#), ID8

Asthma

- see [Family Medicine](#), FM15 and [Pediatrics](#), P91

Definition

- chronic inflammatory disorder of the airways resulting in episodes of reversible bronchospasm causing airflow obstruction
- associated with reversible airflow limitation and airway hyper-responsiveness to endogenous or exogenous stimuli

Epidemiology

- common, 7-10% of adults, 10-15% of children
- most children with asthma significantly improve in adolescence
- often family history of atopy (asthma, allergic rhinitis, eczema)
- occupational asthma (organic allergies, isocyanates, animals, etc.)

Pathophysiology

- airway obstruction → V/Q mismatch → hypoxemia → ↑ ventilation → ↓ P_aCO₂ → ↑ pH and muscle fatigue → ↓ ventilation, ↑ P_aCO₂/↓ pH

Signs and Symptoms

- dyspnea, wheezing, chest tightness, cough (especially nocturnal), sputum
- symptoms can be paroxysmal or persistent
- signs of respiratory distress (see Figure 4)
- pulsus paradoxus

Table 11. Criteria for Determining if Asthma is Well Controlled

Daytime symptoms <4 d/wk	No asthma-related absence from work/school
Night-time symptoms <1 night/wk	β ₂ -agonist use <4 times/wk
Physical activity normal	FEV ₁ or PEF >90% of personal best
Exacerbations mild, infrequent	PEF diurnal variation <10-15%

Adapted from *Can Respir J* 2012; 19:127-164

Investigations

- O₂ saturation
- ABGs (consider in acute exacerbation, along with peak flows, in Emergency Department)
 - decreased P_aO₂ during attack (V/Q mismatch)
 - decreased P_aCO₂ in mild asthma (hyperventilation)
 - normal or increased P_aCO₂ is an ominous sign: patient is no longer able to hyperventilate (worsened airway obstruction or respiratory muscle fatigue)
- PFTs (do when stable)

Table 12. Pulmonary Function Criteria for Diagnosis of Asthma

Preferred Measurement	Alternative Measurements
Spirometry Showing Reversible Airway Obstruction (1) ↓ FEV ₁ /FVC below lower limit of normal (<0.75 to 0.8 in adults, <0.8-0.9 in children age 6+)	Peak Expiratory Flow Variability (1) ↑ in PEF after a bronchodilator or course of controller therapy <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adults: PEF ↑ 60 L/min (min. 20%) OR Diurnal variation >8% for twice daily readings (20% for multiple daily readings) Children age 6+: PEF ↑ 20%
AND (2) ↑ FEV ₁ ≥12% (min. 200 mL in adults) after bronchodilator or controller therapy	Positive Challenge Test (1) Methacholine challenge: PC ₂₀ <4 mg/mL (4-16 mg/mL is borderline; >16 mg/mL is negative) OR (2) Post-exercise: ↓ FEV ₁ ≥10-15%

Adapted from *Can Respir J* 2012;19:127-164

Treatment

- environment: avoid triggers
- patient education: features of the disease, goals of treatment, self-monitoring
- pharmacological
 - symptomatic relief in acute episodes: short-acting β₂-agonist, anticholinergic bronchodilators, oral steroids, addition of a long acting β₂-agonist
 - long-term prevention: inhaled/oral corticosteroids, anti-allergic agents, long-acting β₂-agonists, methylxanthine, LTRA, anti-IgE antibodies (e.g. Xolair®)

Emergency Management of Asthma (see [Emergency Medicine, ER30](#))

- inhaled β₂-agonist first line (MDI route and spacer device recommended)
- systemic steroids (PO or IV, if severe)
- if severe, add anticholinergic therapy ± magnesium sulphate
- rapid sequence intubation in life-threatening cases (plus 100% O₂, monitors, IV access)
- SC/IV adrenaline if caused by anaphylaxis, IV salbutamol if unresponsive
- corticosteroid therapy at discharge



Asthma Triggers

- URTIs
- Allergens (pet dander, house dust, molds)
- Irritants (cigarette smoke, air pollution)
- Drugs (NSAIDs, β-blockers)
- Preservatives (sulphites, MSG)
- Other (emotion/anxiety, cold air, exercise, GERD)



Signs of Poor Asthma Control

DANGERS

Daytime Sx ≥4 times/wk
Activities reduced
Nighttime Sx ≥1 time/wk
GP visits
ER visits
Rescue puffer (SABA) use ≥4 times/wk
School and work absences



Consider LABA for night-time symptoms



LTRA in Addition to Usual Care for Acute Asthma in Adults and Children

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;CD006100

Purpose: To determine if the addition of LTRA is beneficial to patients with acute asthma receiving inhaled bronchodilators and systemic corticosteroids.

Methods: RCTs in Cochrane Airway Group's Specialised Register of trials that compared LTRA and standard acute asthma vs. placebo and standard are in people with acute asthma of any age were included.

Results: 8 trials, 1,470 adults and 470 children. For oral treatment, no significant difference between LTRAs and control in hospital admission (RR 0.86; 95% CI 0.21-3.52) or requirement for additional care (RR 0.87; 95% CI 0.60-1.68). LTRAs improved FEV₁ in adults (mean difference 0.08; 95% CI 0.01-0.14) but not in children. No significant difference in adverse events between LTRAs and control (RR 0.81; 95% CI 0.22-2.99). Similar results were found for intravenous treatment.

Conclusions: Currently, there is no evidence to support routine use of LTRAs in acute asthma.



Natural Progression of COPD

- 40s** Chronic productive cough, wheezing occasionally
- 50s** 1st acute chest illness
- 60s** Dyspnea on exertion, increasing sputum, more frequent exacerbations
- Late Stage** Hypoxemia with cyanosis, polycythemia, hypercapnia (morning headache), cor pulmonale, weight loss



Remember, first line therapy for COPD is smoking cessation

Guidelines for Asthma Management

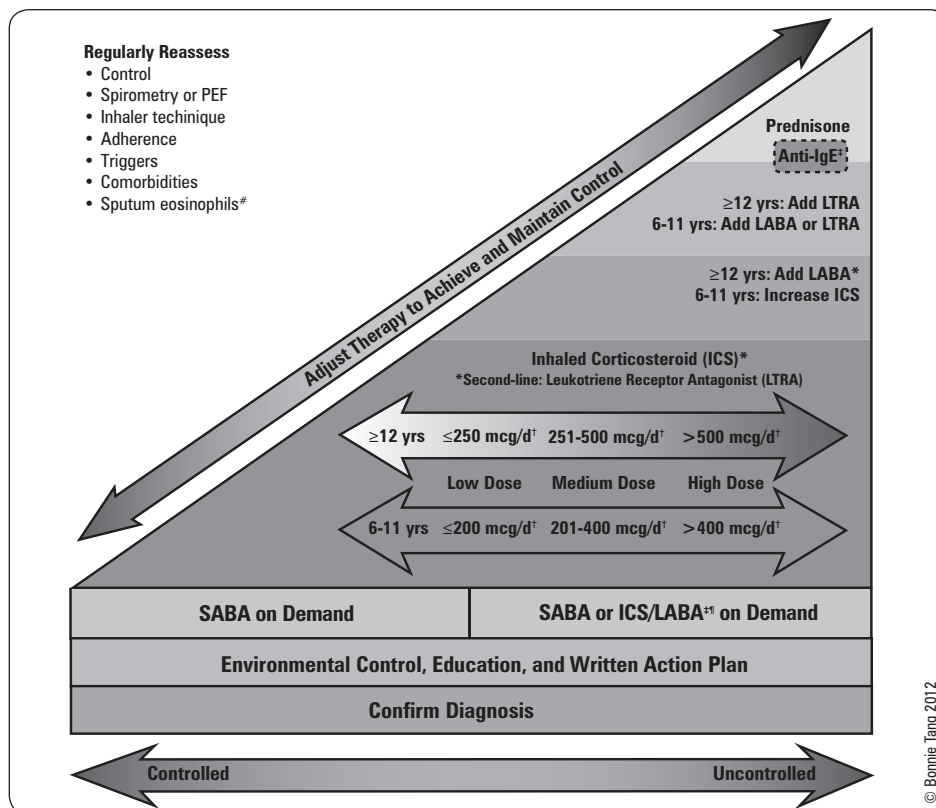


Figure 10. Guidelines for asthma management

†HFA Beclothemason or equivalent; *Second-line: LTRA; ‡Approved for 12 yr and over; †Using a formulation approved for use as a reliever; #In adults 18 yr and older with moderate to severe asthma
Adapted from *Can Respir J* 2012;19:127-164



α₁-Antitrypsin Deficiency

Inherited disorder of defective production of α₁-antitrypsin, a protein produced by hepatocytes. Acts in the alveolar tissue by inhibiting the action of proteases from destroying alveolar tissue. When deficient, proteases can destroy lung alveoli resulting in emphysema



CO₂ Retainers

On ABG, retainers have chronically elevated CO₂ levels with a normal pH. Maintain O₂ Sat between 88-92% to prevent Haldane effect and decreased respiratory drive



Pulmonary Embolism in Patients with Unexplained Exacerbation of COPD: Prevalence and Risk Factors

Ann Intern Med 2006;144:390-396

Study: Prospective cohort study of 211 patients with COPD (all current and former smokers) admitted to hospital for severe COPD exacerbation of unknown origin.

Measurements: All patients received spiral CT angiogram (CTA) and venous compression ultrasonography of both legs.

Results: 25% of patients met diagnostic criteria for PE (+ CTA or + U/S).

Conclusions: Prevalence of PE in patients hospitalized for COPD exacerbation of unknown origin is 25%. Therefore, all patients presenting to hospital with COPD exacerbation without obvious cause require PE workup (leg dopplers or CTA – decision of which to use depends on pre-test probability of the patient).



Non-Invasive Positive Pressure Ventilation for Treatment of Respiratory Failure due to Exacerbations of COPD

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2004;CD004104

Study: Cochrane Systematic Review. 14 RCTs.

Population: 758 adult patients with COPD and acute respiratory failure due to COPD exacerbation.

Intervention: Usual medical care (UMC) and Non-invasive positive ventilation (NPPV) vs. UMC alone.

Primary Outcome: Treatment failure, mortality, and tracheal intubation.

Results: The risks for all primary outcomes were reduced with NPPV use: treatment failure (RR 0.48); mortality (RR 0.52); and intubation use (RR 0.61). Length of hospital stay was a significant mean 3.24 d shorter, but no difference between ICU length of stay. There is a small and significant improvement in pH (weight mean difference (WMD)=0.04), P_aCO₂ (WMD=-0.40 kPa), and respiratory rate (WMD=-3.08 bpm) within 1 h post-treatment with NPPV. Complications associated with treatment were reduced in the NPPV treatment arm (RR 0.38).

Conclusion: For patients in respiratory failure due to a COPD exacerbation, NPPV is effective in reducing treatment failure, mortality, and need for intubation when used as a first time treatment adjunct to UMC.

Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease

- see [Family Medicine, FM15](#)

Definition

- progressive, and irreversible condition of the lung characterized by chronic obstruction to airflow with many patients having periodic exacerbations, gas trapping, lung hyperinflation, and weight loss
- 2 subtypes (chronic bronchitis or emphysema): usually coexist to variable degrees
- gradual decrease in FEV₁ over time with episodes of acute exacerbations

Table 13. Clinical and Pathologic Features of COPD*

Chronic Bronchitis	Emphysema
Defined Clinically Productive cough on most days for at least 3 consecutive months in 2 successive years Obstruction is due to narrowing of the airway lumen by mucosal thickening and excess mucus	Defined Pathologically Dilation and destruction of air spaces distal to the terminal bronchiole without obvious fibrosis Decreased elastic recoil of lung parenchyma causes decreased expiratory driving pressure, airway collapse, and air trapping
	2 Types 1) Centriacinar (respiratory bronchioles predominantly affected) • Typical form seen in smokers, primarily affects upper lung zones 2) Panacinar (respiratory bronchioles, alveolar ducts, and alveolar sacs affected) • Accounts for about 1% of emphysema cases • α ₁ -antitrypsin deficiency, primarily affects lower lobes

*Note that both chronic bronchitis and emphysema can exist without obstruction. Only if obstruction is also present is it termed COPD

Risk Factors

- smoking is #1 risk factor
- others
 - environmental: air pollution, occupational exposure, exposure to wood smoke or other biomass fuel for cooking
 - treatable factors: α₁-antitrypsin deficiency, bronchial hyperactivity
 - demographic factors: age, family history, male sex, history of childhood respiratory infections, low socioeconomic status

Signs and Symptoms

Table 14. Clinical Presentation and Investigations for Chronic Bronchitis and Emphysema

	Symptoms	Signs	Investigations
Bronchitis (Blue Bloater*)	Chronic productive cough Purulent sputum Hemoptysis Mild dyspnea initially	Cyanosis (2° to hypoxemia and hypercapnia) Peripheral edema from RVF (cor pulmonale) Crackles, wheezes Prolonged expiration if obstructive Frequently obese	PFT: ↓ FEV ₁ , ↓ FEV ₁ /FVC N TLC, ↓ or N DL _{CO} CXR: AP diameter normal ↑ bronchovascular markings Enlarged heart with cor pulmonale
Emphysema (Pink Puffer*)	Dyspnea (± exertion) Minimal cough Tachypnea Decreased exercise tolerance	Pink skin Pursed-lip breathing Accessory muscle use Cachectic appearance due to anorexia and increased work of breathing Hyperinflation/barrel chest, hyperresonant percussion Decreased breath sounds Decreased diaphragmatic excursion	PFT: ↓ FEV ₁ , ↓ FEV ₁ /FVC ↑ TLC (hyperinflation) ↑ RV (gas trapping) ↓ DL _{CO} CXR: ↑ AP diameter Flat hemidiaphragm (on lateral CXR) ↓ heart shadow ↑ retrosternal space Bullae ↓ peripheral vascular markings

*Note that the distinction between "blue bloaters" and "pink puffers" is more of historical than practical interest as most COPD patients have elements of both

Table 15. Treatment of Stable COPD

Treatment	Details
PROLONG SURVIVAL	
Smoking cessation	Nicotine replacement, bupropion, varenicline
Vaccination	Influenza, pneumococcal vaccine
Home oxygen	Prevents cor pulmonale and decreases mortality if used > 15h/d; indicated if (1) P _a O ₂ < 55 mmHg or (2) < 60 mmHg with cor pulmonale or polycythemia
SYMPTOMATIC RELIEF (no mortality benefit)	
Bronchodilators (mainstay of current drug therapy, used in combination)	<p>Short-acting anticholinergics (e.g. ipratropium bromide) and short-acting β₂-agonists (e.g. salbutamol, terbutaline)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> SABAs: rapid onset but significant side effects at high doses (e.g. hypokalemia) Short-acting anticholinergics more effective than SABAs with fewer side effects but slower onset; take regularly rather than PRN <p>LABAs (e.g. salmeterol, formoterol, indacaterol) and long-acting anticholinergics (e.g. tiotropium bromide, glycopyrronium bromide)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> More sustained effects for moderate to severe COPD <p>Inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) + LABA combination (e.g. Advair®: fluticasone + salmeterol, Symbicort®: budesonide + formoterol)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ICS/LABA increases effectiveness vs. LABA alone <p>Theophylline: weak bronchodilator; limited evidence to suggest combination with bronchodilator</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Side effects: nervous tremor, nausea/vomiting/diarrhea, tachycardia, arrhythmias, sleep changes <p>PDE4 inhibitor: roflumilast (Daliresp®) anti-inflammatory medication useful in COPD with chronic bronchitis, severe airflow obstruction, frequent exacerbations</p>
Corticosteroids	ICS monotherapy is contraindicated and ICS should only be used with a LABA in combination in patients with a history of exacerbations COPD airways are usually inflamed but often not responsive to steroids, therefore avoid chronic systemic glucocorticoids (although oral steroids are very important when treating exacerbations)
Surgical	Lung volume reduction surgery (resection of emphysematous parts of lung, associated with higher mortality if FEV ₁ < 20%), lung transplant Patient education, eliminate respiratory irritants/allergens (occupational/environmental), exercise rehabilitation to improve physical endurance
Other	Patient education, eliminate respiratory irritants/allergens (occupational/environmental), exercise rehabilitation to improve physical endurance



Remember to step down therapy to lowest doses which control symptoms/signs of bronchoconstriction

**Complications of COPD**

- Polycythemia 2° to hypoxemia
- Chronic hypoxemia
- Pulmonary HTN from vasoconstriction
- Cor pulmonale
- Pneumothorax due to rupture of emphysematous bullae

**Influenza Vaccine for Patients with Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2006;1:CD002733

Study: Cochrane Systematic Review. 11 RCTs included, 6 specifically in COPD patients.

Population: Six of the studies were done on COPD patients in particular, while the others were on elderly and high-risk individuals. Asthma patients were excluded.

Intervention: Live or inactivated virus vaccines vs. placebo.

Outcome: Exacerbation rates, hospitalizations, mortality, lung function and adverse effects.

Results: In patients with COPD, inactive vaccine correlated with fewer exacerbations per vaccinated subject than placebo (weighted mean difference (WMD) -0.37, 95% CI -0.64 to -0.11). Inactivated vaccine resulted in fewer influenza-related infections than placebo (WMD 0.19, 95% CI 0.07-0.48). There was also an increased risk of local mild, transient adverse reactions with the vaccine.

Conclusions: There appears to be a reduction in influenza related infections, as well as exacerbations in patients with COPD receiving the vaccine.

**Systemic Corticosteroids for Acute Exacerbations of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;1:CD001288

Study: Cochrane Systematic Review. 10 RCTs contributed data for analysis.

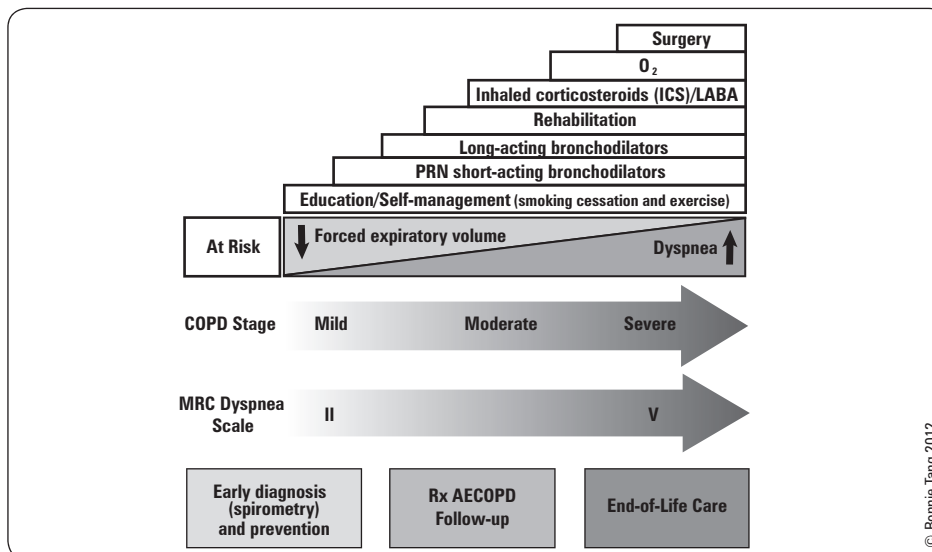
Population: 1,051 total patients with COPD experiencing acute exacerbations.

Intervention: Oral or parenteral corticosteroids vs. placebo.

Outcome: Rate of treatment failure, length of hospitalization, FEV₁.

Results: Patients receiving corticosteroids experienced fewer treatment failures than placebo (OR 0.50, 95% CI 0.36-0.69). The length of stay in hospital was shorter in patients receiving steroids (-1.22 d, 95% CI -2.26 to -0.18). There was also an improvement in FEV₁ at 72 h (140 mL, 95% CI 90-190) and at end of treatment (up to 15 d) (80 mL, 95% CI 10-160). The risk of hypoglycemia was increased (OR 4.95, 95% CI 2.47-9.91).

Conclusions: There appears to be a reduction in rate of treatment failure, reduced length of hospitalization and improved FEV₁ in patients receiving corticosteroid treatment for an acute exacerbation of COPD. However, there is also an increase in significant adverse effects. The ideal length of treatment remains controversial.



© Bonnie Tang 2012

Figure 11. Guidelines for COPD management

Adapted from Canadian Thoracic Society recommendations for management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Can Respir J 2008;(Suppl A):15

Acute Exacerbations of COPD**• definition**

- sustained (>24-48 h) worsening of dyspnea, cough, or sputum production leading to an increased use of medications

• etiology: viral URTI, bacteria, air pollution, CHF, PE, MI must be considered**• management**

- ABCs, consider assisted ventilation if decreasing LOC or poor ABGs
- O₂: target 88-92% SaO₂ for CO₂ retainers
- bronchodilators by MDI with spacer or nebulizer
 - ♦ SABA + anticholinergic, e.g. salbutamol and ipratropium bromide via nebulizers x 3 back-to-back q15min
- systemic corticosteroids: IV solumedrol or oral prednisone
- antibiotics if purulent sputum
 - ♦ simple exacerbation (no risk factors): amoxicillin, 2nd or 3rd generation cephalosporin, macrolide, or TMP/SMX
 - ♦ complicated exacerbation (one of: FEV₁ ≤50% predicted, ≥4 exacerbations per year, ischemic heart disease, home O₂ use, chronic oral steroid use): fluoroquinolone or β-lactam + β-lactamase inhibitor (amoxicillin/clavulanate)
- post exacerbation: rehabilitation with general conditioning to improve exercise tolerance
- ICU admission
 - for life threatening exacerbations
 - ventilatory support
 - ♦ non-invasive: NPPV, BiPAP
 - ♦ conventional mechanical ventilation

Prognosis in COPD

- prognostic factors
 - level of dyspnea is the single best predictor
 - development of complications, e.g. hypoxemia or cor pulmonale
- 5 yr survival
 - FEV₁ <1 L = 50%
 - FEV₁ <0.75 L = 33%
- BODE index for risk of death in COPD
 - greater score = higher probability the patient will die from COPD; score can also be used to predict hospitalization
 - 10 point index consisting of four factors
 - ♦ Body mass index (BMI): <21 (+1 point)
 - ♦ Obstruction (FEV₁): 50-64% (+1), 36-49% (+2), <35% (+3)
 - ♦ Dyspnea (MRC scale): walks slower than people of same age on level surface, stops occasionally (+1), stops at 100 yards or a few minutes on the level (+2), too breathless to leave house or breathless when dressing/undressing (+3)
 - ♦ Exercise capacity (6 minute walk distance): 250-349 m (+1), 150-249 m (+2), <149 m (+3)

Bronchiectasis

Definition

- irreversible dilatation of airways due to inflammatory destruction of airway walls resulting from persistently infected mucus
- usually affects medium sized airways
- P. aeruginosa* is the most common pathogen; *S. aureus*, *H. influenzae*, and nontuberculous mycobacteria also common

Table 16. Etiology and Pathophysiology of Bronchiectasis

Obstruction	Post-infection (results in dilatation of bronchial walls)	Impaired defenses (leads to interference of drainage, chronic infections and inflammation)
Tumor	Pneumonia	Hypogammaglobulinemia
Foreign body	TB	CF
Thick mucus	Measles	Defective leukocyte function
	Pertussis	Ciliary dysfunction (Kartagener's syndrome: bronchiectasis, sinusitis, situs invs.)
	Allergic bronchopulmonary aspergillosis	
	MAC	

Signs and Symptoms

- chronic cough, purulent sputum (but 10-20% have dry cough), hemoptysis (can be massive), recurrent pneumonia, local crackles (inspiratory and expiratory), wheezes
- clubbing
- may be difficult to differentiate from chronic bronchitis

Investigations

- PFTs: often demonstrate obstructive pattern but may be normal
- CXR
 - nonspecific: increased markings, linear atelectasis, loss of volume in affected areas
 - specific: "tram tracking" – parallel narrow lines radiating from hilum, cystic spaces, honeycomb like structures
- high-resolution thoracic CT (diagnostic, gold standard)
 - 87-97% sensitivity, 93-100% specificity
 - "signet ring": dilated bronchi with thickened walls where diameter bronchus > diameter of accompanying artery
- sputum cultures (routine + AFB)
- serum Ig levels
- sweat chloride if cystic fibrosis suspected (upper zone predominant)

Treatment

- vaccination: influenza and Pneumovax®
- antibiotics (oral, IV, inhaled): routinely used for mild exacerbations, driven by sputum sensitivity; macrolides may be used chronically for an anti-inflammatory effect
- inhaled corticosteroids: decrease inflammation and improve FEV₁
- oral corticosteroids for acute, major exacerbations
- chest physiotherapy, breathing exercises, physical exercise
- pulmonary resection: in selected cases with focal bronchiectasis

Cystic Fibrosis

- see [Pediatrics](#), P92



Pathophysiology

- chloride transport dysfunction: thick secretions from exocrine glands (lung, pancreas, skin, reproductive organs) and blockage of secretory ducts

Clinical Features

- results in severe lung disease, pancreatic insufficiency, diabetes, and azoospermia
- other manifestations: meconium ileus in infancy, distal ileal obstruction in adults, sinusitis, liver disease
- chronic lung infections
 - S. aureus*: early
 - P. aeruginosa*: most common
 - B. cepacia*: worse prognosis but less common
 - Aspergillus fumigatus*



Usually presents in childhood as recurrent lung infections that become persistent and chronic

Investigations

- sweat chloride test
 - increased concentrations of NaCl and K⁺ ([Cl⁻] >60 mEq/L is diagnostic in children)
 - heterozygotes have normal sweat tests (and no symptoms)
- PFTs
 - early: airflow limitation in small airways
 - late: severe airflow hyperinflation, gas trapping, decreased DL_{CO} (very late)

- ABGs
 - hypoxemia, hypercapnia later in disease with eventual respiratory failure and cor pulmonale
- CXR
 - hyperinflation, increased pulmonary markings (especially upper lobes)

Treatment

- chest physiotherapy and postural drainage
- bronchodilators (salbutamol ± ipratropium bromide)
- inhaled mucolytic (reduces mucus viscosity), hypertonic saline DNase
- inhaled tobramycin
- antibiotics (e.g. ciprofloxacin)
- lung transplant
- pancreatic enzyme replacements

Prognosis

- depends on: infections (cepacia colonization), FEV₁, acute pulmonary exacerbations, lung transplant vs. non-lung transplant

Interstitial Lung Disease



Definition

- a group of disorders which cause progressive scarring of lung tissue
- this scarring can eventually impair breathing and bloodstream oxygenation

Pathophysiology

- inflammatory and/or fibrosing process in the alveolar walls → distortion and destruction of normal alveoli and microvasculature
- typically associated with
 - lung restriction (decrease in TLC and VC)
 - decreased lung compliance (increased or normal FEV₁/FVC)
 - impaired diffusion (decreased DL_{CO})
 - hypoxemia due to V/Q mismatch (usually without hypercapnia until end stage)
 - pulmonary HTN and cor pulmonale occur with advanced disease secondary to hypoxemia and blood vessel destruction

Etiology

- >100 known disorders can cause ILD
- majority due to unknown agents or cause

Table 17. Interstitial Lung Diseases

UNKNOWN ETIOLOGY		
Idiopathic interstitial pneumonias	Sarcoidosis	
UIP (usual interstitial pneumonia e.g. IPF)	Langerhans-cell histiocytosis (eosinophilic granuloma)	
NSIP (non-specific interstitial pneumonia)	Lymphangioleiomyomatosis	
LIP (lymphocytic interstitial pneumonia)	Tuberous sclerosis	
COP (cryptogenic organizing pneumonia e.g. BOOP)		
KNOWN ETIOLOGY		
ILD Associated with Systemic Rheumatic Disorders	ILD Associated with Drugs or Treatments	Inherited Disorders
Scleroderma	Antibiotics (nitrofurantoin)	Familial IPF
Rheumatoid arthritis	Anti-inflammatory agents (methotrexate)	Telomerase mutations
SLE	Cardiovascular drugs (amiodarone)	Neurofibromatosis
Polymyositis/dermatomyositis	Antineoplastic agents (chemotherapy agents)	Tuberous sclerosis
Anti-synthetase syndromes	Illicit drugs	Gaucher's disease
Mixed connective tissue disease	Radiation	
Environment/Occupation Associated ILD	ILD Associated with Pulmonary Vasculitis	Alveolar Filling Disorders
Hypersensitivity pneumonitis (usually organic antigen)	Granulomatosis with Polyangiitis (GPA)	Chronic eosinophilic pneumonia
Farmer's lung	Goodpasture's syndrome	Pulmonary alveolar proteinosis
Air conditioner/humidifier lung	Idiopathic pulmonary hemosiderosis	
Bird breeder's lung		
Pneumoconioses (inorganic dust)		
Silicosis		
Asbestosis		
Coal worker's pneumoconiosis		
Chronic beryllium disease		
Pneumonitis from gases/fumes/vapour		



In ILD think
FASSTEN and **BAD RASH**

Upper Lung Disease (FASSTEN)

Farmer's lung (hypersensitivity pneumonitis)
Ankylosing spondylitis
Sarcoidosis
Silicosis
TB
Eosinophilic granuloma (Langerhans-cell histiocytosis)
Neurofibromatosis

Lower Lung Disease (BAD RASH)

Bronchiolitis obliterans with organizing pneumonia (BOOP)
Asbestosis
Drugs (nitrofurantoin, hydralazine, INH, amiodarone, many chemo drugs)
Rheumatologic disease
Aspiration
Scleroderma
Hamman Rich (acute interstitial pneumonia) and IPF

Signs and Symptoms

- SOB, especially on exertion
- nonproductive cough
- crackles (dry, fine, end-inspiratory)
- clubbing (especially in IPF and asbestosis)
- features of cor pulmonale
- note that signs and symptoms vary with underlying disease process
 - e.g. sarcoidosis is seldom associated with crackles and clubbing

Investigations

- CXR/high resolution CT (see [Medical Imaging, MI7](#))
 - usually decreased lung volumes
 - reticular, nodular, or reticulonodular pattern (nodular <3 mm)
 - hilar/mediastinal adenopathy (especially in sarcoidosis)
- PFTs
 - restrictive pattern: decreased lung volumes and compliance
 - normal or increased FEV₁/FVC (>70-80%), e.g. flow rates are often normal or high when corrected for absolute lung volume
 - DL_{CO} decreased due to V/Q mismatch less surface area for gas exchange ± pulmonary vascular disease
- ABGs
 - with progression of disease, hypoxemia and respiratory alkalosis may be present
- other
 - bronchoscopy, bronchoalveolar lavage, lung biopsy
 - ESR, ANA (lupus), RF (RA), serum-precipitating antibodies to inhaled organic antigens (hypersensitivity pneumonitis), c-ANCA (GPA)



The CXR can be normal in up to 15% of patients with interstitial lung disease

Unknown Etiologic Agents

**IDIOPATHIC PULMONARY FIBROSIS****Definition**

- also known as usual interstitial pneumonia or cryptogenic fibrosing alveolitis
- a progressive, irreversible condition characterized by fibrosis of lung parenchyma with no known cause
 - chest CT usually shows honeycomb lung, lung biopsy shows UIP (usual interstitial pneumonia) pattern
 - ♦ commonly presents over age 50, incidence rises with age; males > females
- DDx
 - other idiopathic interstitial pneumonia, especially NSIP, but also COP and:
 - ♦ desquamative interstitial pneumonitis (DIP)
 - ♦ lymphocytic interstitial pneumonitis (LIP): usually 2° to immune conditions such as HIV (mostly in children), Sjögren's

**IPF Prevalence**

- Age 35-44: 2-7 per 100,000
- Age >75: 175 per 100,000

Signs and Symptoms

- commonly presents over age 50, incidence rises with age; males > females
- dyspnea on exertion, nonproductive cough, constitutional symptoms, late inspiratory fine crackles at lung bases, clubbing

Investigations

- labs (nonspecific, autoimmune serology usually negative)
- CXR: reticular or reticulonodular pattern with lower lung predominance; may appreciate honeycombing in advanced disease
- high resolution CT: lower zone peripheral reticular markings, traction bronchiectasis, honeycombing, ground glass not prominent in IPF
- biopsy: rarely for UIP as honeycombing makes radiologic diagnosis possible

Treatment

- O₂
- N-acetylcysteine (anti-oxidant)
- lung transplantation for advanced disease
- mean survival of 3 to 5 yr after diagnosis

SARCOIDOSIS**Definition**

- idiopathic non-infectious granulomatous multi-system disease with lung involvement in 90%
- characterized pathologically by non-caseating granulomas
- numerous HLA antigens have been shown to play a role and familial sarcoidosis is now recognized

Epidemiology

- typically affects young and middle-aged patients
- higher incidence among African Americans and people at northern latitudes e.g. Scandinavia, Canada

Signs and Symptoms

- asymptomatic, cough, dyspnea, fever, arthralgia, malaise, erythema nodosum, chest pain
- chest exam often normal
- common extrapulmonary manifestations
 - cardiac (arrhythmias, sudden death)
 - eye involvement (anterior or posterior uveitis)
 - skin involvement (skin papules, erythema nodosum, lupus pernio)
 - peripheral lymphadenopathy
 - arthralgia
 - hepatomegaly ± splenomegaly
- less common extra-pulmonary manifestations involve bone, CNS, and kidney, cardiac (arrhythmias, sudden death)
- two acute sarcoid syndromes
 - Lofgren's syndrome: fever, erythema nodosum, bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy, arthralgias
 - Heerfordt-Waldenstrom syndrome: fever, parotid enlargement, anterior uveitis, facial nerve palsy

Investigations

- CBC (cytopenias from spleen or marrow involvement)
- serum electrolytes, creatinine, liver enzymes, calcium (hypercalcemia/hypercalciuria due to vitamin D activation by granulomas)
- hypergammaglobulinemia, occasionally RF positive
- elevated serum ACE (non-specific and non-sensitive)
- CXR: predominantly nodular opacities especially in upper lung zones ± hilar adenopathy
- PFTs: normal, obstructive pattern, restrictive pattern with normal flow rates and decreased DL_{CO} , or mixed obstructive/restrictive
- ECG: to rule out conduction abnormalities
- slit-lamp eye exam: to rule out uveitis

Diagnosis

- biopsy
 - transbronchial lung biopsy, transbronchial lymph node aspiration, endobronchial ultrasound guided surgical (EBUS) biopsy, or mediastinoscopic lymph node biopsy for granulomas
 - in ~75% of cases, transbronchial biopsy shows granulomas in the parenchyma even if the CXR is normal

Staging

- radiographic, based on CXR
 - Stage 0: normal radiograph
 - Stage I: bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy ± right paratracheal lymphadenopathy
 - Stage II: bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy and diffuse interstitial disease
 - Stage III: interstitial disease only (reticulonodular pattern or nodular pattern)
 - Stage IV: pulmonary fibrosis (honeycombing)

Treatment

- 85% of stage I resolve spontaneously
- 50% of stage II resolve spontaneously
- steroids for symptoms, declining lung function, hypercalcemia, or involvement of eye, CNS, kidney, or heart (not for abnormal CXR alone)
- methotrexate or other immunosuppressives occasionally used

Prognosis

- approximately 10% mortality secondary to progressive fibrosis of lung parenchyma



Most common presentation: asymptomatic CXR finding



Hilar adenopathy refers to enlargement of mediastinal lymph nodes which is most often seen by standard CXR as spherical/ellipsoidal and/or calcified nodes

If unilateral – think neoplasia, TB, or sarcoid

If bilateral – think sarcoid or lymphoma

**Corticosteroids for Pulmonary Sarcoidosis**

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2005;CD001114

Study: Meta-analysis of 13 RCTs involving 1,066 participants examining the use of steroids (oral or inhaled) in sarcoidosis.

Results: Oral steroids demonstrated an improvement in CXR (RR 1.46, 95% CI 1.01-2.09). For inhaled corticosteroids, two studies showed no improvement in lung function and one study showed an improvement in diffusing capacity. No data on side-effects.

Conclusions: Oral steroids improve CXR findings and global scores of CXR, symptoms, and spirometry over 3-24 mo, but do not improve lung function or modify disease course. Oral steroids may be of benefit for patients with Stage 2 and 3 disease.

Known Etiologic Agents

HYPERSENSITIVITY PNEUMONITIS

- also known as extrinsic allergic alveolitis
- non-IgE mediated inflammation of lung parenchyma (acute, subacute, and chronic forms)
- caused by sensitization to inhaled agents, usually organic dust
- pathology: airway-centered, poorly formed granulomas and lymphocytic inflammation
- exposure usually related to occupation or hobby
 - Farmer's Lung (*Thermophilic actinomycetes*)
 - Bird Breeder's/Bird Fancier's Lung (immune response to bird IgA)
 - Humidifier Lung (*Aureobasidium pullulans*)
 - Sauna Taker's Lung (*Aureobasidium spp.*)

Signs and Symptoms

- acute presentation: (4-6 h after exposure)
 - dyspnea, cough, fever, chills, malaise (lasting 18-24 h)
 - CXR: diffuse infiltrates
 - type III (immune complex) reaction
- subacute presentation: more insidious onset than acute presentation
- chronic presentation
 - insidious onset
 - dyspnea, cough, malaise, anorexia, weight loss
 - PFTs: progressively restrictive
 - CXR: predominantly upper lobe reticulonodular pattern
 - type IV (cell mediated, delayed hypersensitivity) reaction (see [Rheumatology, R2](#))
- in both acute and chronic reactions, serum precipitins may be detectable (neither sensitive nor specific)



Calcified diaphragmatic plaques are highly suggestive of asbestosis, especially if bilateral



CXR Fibrotic Patterns

- Asbestosis: lower > upper lobes
- Silicosis: upper > lower lobes
- Coal: upper > lower lobes



Treatment

- early diagnosis: avoidance of further exposure is critical as chronic changes are irreversible
- systemic corticosteroids can relieve symptoms and speed resolution



Remember to involve occupational health at place of work for data collection and treatment plan. Also counsel re: worker's insurance as per jurisdiction (e.g. Workers Safety Insurance Board [WSIB] in Ontario)

PNEUMOCONIOSES

- reaction to inhaled inorganic dusts 0.5-5 µm in size
- no effective treatment, therefore key is exposure prevention through the use of protective equipment
- smoking cessation, annual influenza and pneumococcal vaccination, rehabilitation, lung transplant for endstage disease

Table 18. Pneumoconioses

Diagnosis	Etiology	Symptoms	Investigations	Complications
Asbestosis	Exposure risks: insulation, shipyard, construction, brake linings, pipe fitters, plumbers Slowly progressive diffuse interstitial fibrosis induced by inhaled asbestos fibers Usually > 10-20 yr of exposure; may develop with shorter but heavier exposure; typically prolonged interval (20-30 yr) between exposure and clinical disease	Insidious onset SOB Cough: paroxysmal, non-productive Fine end-respiratory crackles (increased at bases) Clubbing (much more likely in asbestosis than silicosis or CWP)	CXR Lower > upper lobe Reticulonodular pattern, may develop IPF-like honeycombing Asbestos exposure can also cause pleural and diaphragmatic plaques (± calcification), pleural effusion, round atelectasis Microscopic examination reveals ferruginous bodies: yellow-brown rod-shaped structures which represent asbestos fibers coated in macrophages	Asbestos exposure increases risk of bronchogenic CA and malignant mesothelioma Risk of lung cancer dramatically increased for smokers
Silicosis	At risk population: sandblasters, rock miners, stone cutters, quarry and highway workers Generally requires > 20 yr exposure; may develop with much shorter but heavier exposure	Dyspnea, cough, and wheezing	CXR Upper > lower lobe Early: nodular disease (simple pneumoconiosis), lung function usually normal Late: nodules coalesce into masses (progressive massive fibrosis) Possible hilar lymph node enlargement (frequently calcified), especially "egg shell" calcification	Mycobacterial infection (e.g. TB)
Coal Worker's Pneumoconiosis (CWP)	At risk population: coal workers, graphite workers Coal and silica, coal is less fibrogenic than silica	Pathologic hallmark is coal macule Simple CWP No signs or symptoms, usually normal lung function Complicated CWP (also known as progressive massive fibrosis) Dyspnea Course: few patients progress to complicated CWP	Simple CWP CXR: multiple nodular opacities, mostly upper lobe Complicated CWP CXR: opacities larger and coalesce	Caplan's syndrome: rheumatoid arthritis and CWP present as larger nodules

ILD ASSOCIATED WITH DRUGS OR TREATMENTS

Drug-Induced

- antineoplastic agents: bleomycin, mitomycin, busulfan, cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, chlorambucil, BCNU (carmustine)
- antibiotics: nitrofurantoin, penicillin, sulfonamide
- cardiovascular drugs: amiodarone, tocainide
- anti-inflammatory agents: methotrexate, penicillamine
- gold salts
- illicit drugs (heroin, methadone)
- rituximab, anti-TNF-α agents (infliximab, etanercept, adalimumab)

Radiation-Induced

- early pneumonitis: approximately 6 wk post-exposure
- late fibrosis: 6-12 mo post-exposure
- infiltrates conform to the shape of the radiation field

Pulmonary Vascular Disease



Pulmonary Hypertension

Definition

- mean pulmonary arterial pressure >25 mmHg at rest and >30 mmHg with exercise, or a systolic pulmonary artery pressure of >40 mmHg at rest
- in the past, pulmonary HTN was classified as primary or secondary pulmonary HTN, but this classification was modified to a more clinically useful, treatment based classification

Table 19. World Health Organization Classification of Pulmonary HTN

Classification	Some Causes	Treatment Options	Consider in All Patients with PH
I. Pulmonary Arterial HTN	Idiopathic Collagen vascular disease (scleroderma, SLE, RA) Congenital systemic-to-pulmonary shunts (Eisenmenger syndrome) Portopulmonary HTN HIV infection Drugs and toxins (e.g. anorexigens) Pulmonary veno-occlusive disease Schistosomiasis Pulmonary capillary hemangiomatosis Sickle cell disease	No effective treatment CCBs or advanced therapy often needed The latter includes: prostanoids, endothelin receptor antagonists, PDE5 inhibitors Lung transplantation	Oxygen therapy Exercise Consider anticoagulation
II. Pulmonary HTN due to Left Heart Disease	Left-sided atrial or ventricular heart disease (e.g. LV dysfunction) Left-sided valvular heart disease (e.g. aortic stenosis, mitral stenosis)	Treat underlying heart disease	
III. Pulmonary HTN due to Lung Disease and/or Hypoxia	Parenchymal lung disease (COPD, interstitial fibrosis, cystic fibrosis) Chronic alveolar hypoxia (chronic high altitude, alveolar hypoventilation disorders, sleep disordered breathing)	Treat underlying cause of hypoxia and correct with supplemental oxygen (proven mortality benefit)	
IV. Chronic Thromboembolic Pulmonary HTN (CTEPH)	Thromboembolic obstruction of proximal pulmonary arteries Obstruction of distal pulmonary arteries – PE (thrombus, foreign material, tumor, <i>in situ</i> thrombosis)	Anticoagulation, thromboendarterectomy	
V. Pulmonary HTN with Unclear Multifactorial Mechanisms	Hematologic disorders Systemic disorders (e.g. sarcoidosis) Metabolic disorders Extrinsic compression of central pulmonary veins (tumor, adenopathy, fibrosing mediastinitis)	Treat underlying cause	

Adapted from: Simonneau G, et al. J Am Coll Cardio 2009;54(1 Suppl):S43-S54

Mechanisms of Pulmonary HTN (Simplified)

- hypoxic vasoconstriction
 - chronic hypoxia causes pulmonary vasoconstriction by a variety of actions on the pulmonary artery endothelium and smooth muscle cells, such as: down regulation of endothelial nitric oxide synthase and alteration of voltage gated potassium channels leading to vasoconstriction
 - causes: COPD, chronic alveolar hypoxia
- decreased area of pulmonary vascular bed
 - leads to a rise in resting pulmonary arterial pressure
 - causes: collagen vascular disease, HIV infection, drugs and toxins, thrombotic or embolic disease, inflammatory, pulmonary capillary hemangiomatosis, interstitial fibrosis, CF
- volume and pressure overload
 - significant HTN only occurs with excessive volume overload, since pulmonary artery pressure will not rise in otherwise normal lung until pulmonary blood flow exceeds 2.5x the basal rate
 - causes: congenital systemic to pulmonary shunts (e.g. VSD, ASD, PDA), portopulmonary HTN, left-sided heart conditions, pulmonary veno-occlusive disease, extrinsic compression of central pulmonary veins



Pulmonary arterial pressures are measured by pulmonary artery catheters (i.e. Swan-Ganz catheter) which are inserted into a large vein (often internal jugular). A balloon at the end of the catheter tip is inflated causing the catheter to advance through the right side of the heart and into the pulmonary artery. This allows for the measurement of RA, RV, PA, and pulmonary capillary wedge pressures as well as sampling of mixed venous blood. A thermistor near the end of the catheter also allows for assessment of cardiac output by thermodilution

IDIOPATHIC PULMONARY ARTERIAL HTN (i.e. PRIMARY PULMONARY HTN)

Definition

- pulmonary HTN in the absence of a demonstrable cause
- exclude
 - left-sided cardiac valvular disease
 - myocardial disease
 - congenital heart disease
 - any clinically significant parenchymal lung disease
 - systemic connective-tissue disease
 - chronic thromboembolic disease

Epidemiology

- usually presents in young women (20-40 yr); mean age of diagnosis is 36 yr
- most cases are sporadic; familial predisposition in 10% of cases, some linked to mutations in BMPR2
- may be associated with the use of anorexic drugs (e.g. Aminorex®, Fenfluramine®), amphetamines and cocaine

Signs and Symptoms

Table 20. Signs and Symptoms of Pulmonary HTN

Symptoms	Signs
Dyspnea	Loud, palpable P ₂
Fatigue	RV heave
Substernal chest pain	Right-sided S ₄ (due to RVH)
Syncope	Systolic murmur (tricuspid regurgitation [TR])
Symptoms of underlying disease	If RV failure: right sided S ₃ , increased JVP, positive HJR, peripheral edema, TR Reynaud's phenomenon

Investigations

- CXR: enlarged central pulmonary arteries, cardiac changes due to RV enlargement (filling of retrosternal air space)
- ECG
 - RVH/right-sided strain (see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery, C7](#))
- 2-D echo doppler assessment of right ventricular systolic pressure
- cardiac catheterization: direct measurement of pulmonary artery pressures (necessary to confirm diagnosis)
- PFTs to asses for underlying lung disease: DL_{CO} usually reduced; volumes and flows normal
- CT angiogram to assess lung parenchyma and possible PE
- V/Q scan ± pulmonary angiogram to rule out thromboembolic disease
- serology: ANA positive in 30% of patients with primary pulmonary HTN; other serologic markers can be used in the appropriate clinical setting

Treatment

- see [Table 19](#)

Prognosis

- 2-3 yr mean survival from time of diagnosis
- survival decreases to approximately 1 yr if severe pulmonary HTN or right-heart failure

Pulmonary Embolism

Definition

- lodging of a blood clot in the pulmonary arterial tree with subsequent increase in pulmonary vascular resistance, impaired V/Q matching, and possibly reduced pulmonary blood flow

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- one of the most common causes of preventable death in the hospital
- proximal leg thrombi (popliteal, femoral, or iliac veins) are the source of most clinically recognized pulmonary emboli
- thrombi often start in calf, but must propagate into proximal veins to create a sufficiently large thrombus for a clinically significant PE
- fewer than 30% of patients have clinical evidence of DVT (e.g. leg swelling, pain, or tenderness)
- always suspect PE if patient develops fever, sudden dyspnea, chest pain, or collapse 1-2 wk after surgery



Guidelines for Vasodilator Response in Pulmonary Arterial HTN

- Patients with IPAH that respond to vasodilators acutely, have an improved survival with long-term use of CCBs
- Vasoreactivity testing: short-acting agent such as IV epoprostenol, IV adenosine, or inhaled NO
- Positive vasodilator response: mean PAP fall of at least 10 mmHg to ≤40 mmHg with an increased or unchanged cardiac output (European Society of Cardiology)
- Positive vasodilator response: should be considered as candidate for trial of oral CCB therapy

Medical Therapy for Pulmonary Arterial HTN. ACCP Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines. *Chest* 2004;(Suppl)06:126



Virchow's Triad

- Venous stasis
- Endothelial cell damage
- Hypercoagulable states



Multidetector Computed Tomography for Acute Pulmonary Embolism (PIOPED II Trial)

NEJM 2006;354:2317-2327

Study: Multicenter, prospective study investigating accuracy of computed tomography angiography (CTA) alone and combined with venous phase imaging (CTA-CTV) for the diagnosis of PE.

Patients: 824 patients of several thousand eligible for study received reference diagnosis to confirm absence or presence of PE (V/Q scan, venous compression U/S of lower extremities, and pulmonary digital-subtraction angiography [DSA] if necessary). To confirm absence, patients in whom PE was excluded were telephoned 3-6 mo after enrollment. Any deaths were reviewed by an outcome committee. All patients enrolled also underwent clinical assessment of PE (including a Wells score) prior to imaging.

Outcomes: Diagnosis of pulmonary embolism.

Results: 773 of 824 patients had adequate CTAs for interpretation. PE was diagnosed in 192 of the 824 patients. Sensitivity was 83% (150 of 181 patients, 95% CI 0.76-0.92) and specificity was 96% (567 of 592 patients, 95% CI 0.93-0.97). However, the predictive value of CTA-CTV varied when clinical pre-test probability was taken into account. PPV of CTA for high, intermediate and low clinical probability were 96% (95% CI 0.78-0.99), 92% (95% CI 0.84-0.96), and 58% (95% CI 0.40-0.73) respectively. NPV of CTA for high, intermediate and low clinical probability were 60% (95% CI 0.32-0.83), 89% (95% CI 0.82-0.93), and 96% (95% CI 0.92-0.98) respectively.

Conclusion: CTA is effective for diagnosing or excluding PE in accordance with assessment of clinical pretest probability. When clinical probability is inconsistent with imaging results, further investigations are required to rule out PE.

Risk Factors

- stasis
 - immobilization: paralysis, stroke, bed rest, prolonged sitting during travel, immobilization of an extremity after fracture
 - obesity, CHF
 - chronic venous insufficiency
- endothelial cell damage
 - post-operative injury, trauma
- hypercoagulable states
 - underlying malignancy (particularly adenocarcinoma)
 - cancer treatment (chemotherapy, hormonal)
 - exogenous estrogen administration (OCP, HRT)
 - pregnancy, post-partum
 - prior history of DVT/PE, family history
 - nephrotic syndrome
 - coagulopathies: Factor V Leiden, Prothrombin 20210A variant, inherited deficiencies of antithrombin/protein C/protein S, antiphospholipid antibody, hyperhomocysteinemia, increased Factor VIII levels, and myeloproliferative disease
- increasing age

Investigations (if highly suspicious, go straight to CT angiogram)

- see [Emergency Medicine, Figure 13, ER34](#)

Table 21. Common Investigations for Pulmonary Embolism

Investigation	Purpose/Utility
Pulmonary Angiogram (Gold Standard)	Filling defect indicative of embolus; negative angiogram excludes clinically relevant PE More invasive, and harder to perform than CT, therefore done infrequently
D-Dimer	Highly sensitive D-dimer result can exclude DVT/PE if pretest probability is already low Little value if pretest probability is high If D-dimer positive, will need further evaluation with compression U/S
CT Angiogram	Both sensitive and specific for PE Diagnosis and management uncertain for small filling defects CT may identify an alternative diagnosis if PE is not present CT scanning of the proximal leg and pelvic veins can be done at the same time and may be helpful
Venous Duplex U/S or Doppler	With leg symptoms Positive test rules in proximal DVT Negative test rules out proximal DVT Without leg symptoms Positive test rules in proximal DVT Negative test does not rule out a DVT: patient may have non-occlusive or calf DVT
ECG	Findings not sensitive or specific Sinus tachycardia most common; may see non-specific ST segment and T wave changes RV strain, RAD, RBBB, S1-Q3-T3 with massive embolization
CXR	Frequently normal; no specific features Atelectasis (subsegmental), elevation of a hemidiaphragm Pleural effusion: usually small Hampton's hump: cone-shaped area of peripheral opacification representing infarction Westermark's sign: dilated proximal pulmonary artery with distal oligemia/decreased vascular markings (difficult to assess without prior films) Dilatation of proximal PA: rare
V/Q Scan	Very sensitive but low specificity Order scan if CXR normal, no COPD Contraindication to CT (contrast allergy, renal dysfunction, pregnancy) Avoid V/Q scan if CXR abnormal or COPD Inpatient Suspect massive PE Results Normal: excludes the diagnosis of PE High probability: most likely means PE present, unless pre-test probability is low 60% of V/Q scans are nondiagnostic
Echocardiogram	Useful to assess massive or chronic PE Not routinely done
ABG	No diagnostic use in PE (insensitive and nonspecific) May show respiratory alkalosis (due to hyperventilation)

**Clinical Prediction Rule for Pulmonary Embolism**

J Thromb Hemost 2000;83:416-420

Wells' Criteria

Risk Factors	Points
Clinical signs of DVT	3.0
No more likely alternative diagnosis (using HGP, CXR, ECG)	3.0
Immobilization or surgery in the previous 4 wk	1.5
Previous PE/DVT	1.5
HR >100 beats/min	1.5
Hemoptysis	1.0
Malignancy	1.0

Clinical Probability

Low (0-2)	3%
Intermediate (3-6)	28%
High (>6)	78%

Modified Wells: >4 PE likely; ≤4 PE unlikely

JAMA 2006

**PE Rule Out Criteria (PERC)****Prospective Multicenter Evaluation of the Pulmonary Embolism Rule Out Criteria**

J Thromb Hemost 2008;6:772

- Age <50 yr
- Heart rate less than 100 bpm
- Oxyhemoglobin saturation ≥95 percent
- No hemoptysis
- No estrogen use
- No prior DVT or PE
- No unilateral leg swelling
- No surgery or trauma requiring hospitalization within the past 4 wk

Acute PE can probably be excluded without further diagnostic testing if the patient meets all PERC criteria AND there is a low clinical suspicion for PE, according to either the Wells' criteria or a low gestalt probability determined by the clinician prior to diagnostic testing for PE.

**Evaluation of a Suspected Pulmonary Embolism**

Low clinical probability of embolism

D-dimer (+ve) → CT scan (+ve) → ruled in
(-ve) ruled out (-ve) ruled out

Intermediate or high probability

CT scan (-ve) → ruled out
(+ve) ruled in

Notes

- Use D-dimers only if low clinical probability, otherwise, go straight to CT.
- If using V/Q scans (CT contrast allergy or renal failure):
 - Negative V/Q scan rules out the diagnosis
 - High probability V/Q scan only rules in the diagnosis if have high clinical suspicion
 - Inconclusive V/Q scan requires leg U/S to look for DVT or CT.



Classic ECG finding of PE is S₁-Q₃-T₃ (inverted T₃), but most commonly see only sinus tachycardia



D-dimer is elevated in patients with recent surgery, cancer, inflammation, infection, and severe renal dysfunction. It has good sensitivity and negative predictive value, but poor specificity and positive predictive value

Treatment

- admit for observation (patients with DVT only are often sent home on LMWH)
- oxygen: supplemental O₂ if hypoxemic or short of breath
- pain relief: analgesics if chest pain – narcotics or acetaminophen
- acute anticoagulation: therapeutic-dose SC LMWH or IV heparin – start ASAP
 - anticoagulation stops clot propagation, prevents new clots and allows endogenous fibrinolytic system to dissolve existing thromboemboli over months
 - get baseline CBC, INR, aPTT ± renal function ± liver function
 - for SC LMWH: dalteparin 200 U/kg once daily or enoxaparin 1 mg/kg bid – no lab monitoring – avoid or reduce dose in renal dysfunction
 - for IV heparin: bolus of 75 U/kg (usually 5,000 U) followed by infusion starting at 20 U/kg/h – aim for aPTT 2-3x control
- long-term anticoagulation
 - warfarin: start the same day as LMWH/heparin – overlap warfarin with LMWH/heparin for at least 5 d and until INR in target range of 2-3 for at least 2 d
 - LMWH instead of warfarin for pregnancy, active cancer, or high bleeding risk patients
 - dabigatran has been shown to have lower bleeding risk than warfarin
- IV thrombolytic therapy
 - if patient has massive PE (hypotension or clinical right heart failure) and no contraindications
 - hastens resolution of PE but may not improve survival or long-term outcome and doubles risk of major bleeding
- interventional thrombolytic therapy
 - massive PE is preferentially treated with catheter-directed thrombolysis by an interventional radiologist
 - works better than IV thrombolytic therapy and fewer contraindications
- IVC filter: only if recent proximal DVT + absolute contraindication to anticoagulation
- duration of long-term anticoagulation: individualized, however generally:
 - if reversible cause for PE (surgery, injury, pregnancy, etc.): 3-6 mo
 - if PE unprovoked: 6 mo to indefinite
 - if ongoing major risk factor (active cancer, antiphospholipid antibody, etc.): indefinite

Thromboprophylaxis

- mandatory for most hospital patients: reduces DVT, PE, all-cause mortality, cost-effective
- start ASAP
- continue at least until discharge or recommend extending for 35 d post-operatively, if major orthopedic surgery

Table 22. VTE Risk Categories and Prophylaxis (see [Hematology, H35](#))

Risk Group	Prophylaxis Options
Low Thrombosis Risk Medical patients: fully mobile Surgery: <30 min, fully mobile	No specific prophylaxis Frequent ambulation
Moderate Thrombosis Risk Most general, gynecologic, urologic surgery Sick medical patients	LMWH Low dose unfractionated heparin Fondaparinux
High Thrombosis Risk Arthroplasty, hip fracture surgery Major trauma, spinal cord injury	LMWH Fondaparinux Warfarin (INR 2-3) Dabigatran Apixaban Rivaroxaban Low dose unfractionated heparin
High Bleeding Risk Neurosurgery, intracranial bleed Active bleeding	TED stockings, pneumatic compression devices LMWH or low dose heparin when bleeding risk decreases



Workup for Idiopathic VTE

Thrombophilia Workup: recurrent or idiopathic DVT/PE, age <50, FHx, unusual location, massive

Malignancy Workup: 12% of patients with idiopathic VTE will have a malignancy



Extended Use of Dabigatran, Warfarin or Placebo in Venous Thromboembolism

NEJM 2013;368:709-718

Study: Two double blind, RCTs; one comparing against placebo, the other against active treatment. **Population:** 4,199 patients (2,856 in active-control study, 1,343 in placebo-control study) with VTE who had completed at least 3 mo of therapy.

Intervention: In the active-control study, patients randomized to either 150 mg dabigatran or warfarin (INR 2.0-3.0). Patients in the placebo-control study received either 150 mg dabigatran or placebo.

Outcome: Recurrence of VTE, risk of major or clinically relevant bleed.

Results: In the active-control study, there was a hazard ratio (HR) of 1.44 (95% CI 0.78-2.64 for non-inferiority) of recurrent VTE with dabigatran vs. warfarin. HR of major or clinically relevant bleed was 0.54 (95% CI 0.41-0.71). In the placebo-control study, the HR of VTE with dabigatran vs. placebo was 0.08 (95% CI 0.02-0.25). HR of major or clinically relevant bleed was 2.92 (95% CI 1.52-5.60).

Conclusions: Dabigatran appears to be non-inferior to warfarin in the prevention of VTE recurrence. Dabigatran is associated with a lower risk of major or clinically relevant bleed than warfarin, but greater than placebo.



Excluding Pulmonary Embolism at Bedside without Diagnostic Imaging

Ann Intern Med 2001;135:98-107

Study: Multicenter, prospective cohort study. **Patients:** 930 patients with suspected PE at emergency departments at 4 tertiary care hospitals in Canada.

Intervention: A Wells score was used to determine patient's pretest probability (PTP) of PE along with a D-dimer test was performed. Patients with low PTP and a negative D-dimer test had no further testing and the diagnosis of PE was excluded. All other patients had V/Q scanning, and if non-diagnostic, had bilateral deep venous ultrasonography. Further serial ultrasonography and angiography were done depending on the patients PTP and lung-scanning results.



Main Outcomes: Diagnosis of PE and the development of thromboembolic events at 3 mo follow-up.

Results: One of 759 patients in whom PE was initially ruled out developed a thromboembolic event during follow-up (0.1% [CI 0.0%-0.7%]). One of the 437 patients with negative D-dimers and low clinical PTP developed PE during follow-up (NPV 99.5%, CI 99.1-100%).

Conclusion: Managing patients with suspected pulmonary embolism on the basis of PTP and D-dimer results is safe and decreases the need for diagnostic imaging.

Pulmonary Vasculitis

Table 23. Pulmonary Vasculitis

Disease	Definition	Pulmonary Features	Extra-Pulmonary Features	Investigations	Treatment
Granulomatosis with Polyangiitis (Wegener's Granulomatosis) (see Nephrology , NP24)	Systemic vasculitis of medium and small arteries	Necrotizing granulomatous lesions of the upper and lower respiratory tract	Focal necrotizing lesions of arteries and veins; crescentic glomerulonephritis	CXR: nodules, cavities, and alveolar opacities c-ANCA Tissue confirmation	Corticosteroids and cyclophosphamide or rituximab
 Churg-Strauss Syndrome (Granulomatosis with Polyangiitis)	Multisystem disorder characterized by allergic rhinitis, asthma, and prominent peripheral eosinophilia	Asthma Infiltrates	Life-threatening systemic vasculitis involving the lungs, pericardium and heart, kidneys, skin, and PNS (mononeuritis multiplex)	Peripheral eosinophilia is the most common finding p-ANCA may be positive Biopsy involved tissue	Corticosteroids
 Goodpasture's Disease (see Nephrology , NP24)	A disorder characterized by diffuse alveolar hemorrhage and glomerulonephritis caused by anti-GBM antibodies, which cross-react with basement membranes of the kidney and lung	Hemoptysis May follow an influenza infection	Anemia	CXR: may see alveolar infiltrates if hemorrhage is profuse ELISA test with anti-GBM antibodies Renal biopsy/indirect immunofluorescence shows linear staining	Acutely: corticosteroids, plasmapheresis Immunosuppressive therapy Severe cases: bilateral nephrectomy
Systemic Lupus Erythematosus, Rheumatoid Arthritis, Scleroderma	See Rheumatology , RH8				



Pulmonary Edema

- see [Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery](#), C35



Scleroderma is the most common collagen vascular disease affecting the lung

Diseases of the Mediastinum and Pleura

Mediastinal Masses

Definition

- mediastinum: bound by the thoracic inlet, diaphragm, sternum, vertebral bodies, and the pleura
- can be broken down into 3 compartments: anterior, middle, and posterior

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- diagnosis is made by location and patient's age
- anterior compartment: more likely to be malignant
 - "Four Ts" (see sidebar), lymphoma, lipoma, pericardial cyst
- middle compartment
 - pericardial cyst, bronchogenic cyst/tumor, lymphoma, lymph node enlargement, aortic aneurysm
- posterior compartment
 - neurogenic tumors, meningocele, enteric cysts, lymphoma, diaphragmatic hernias, esophageal tumor, aortic aneurysm

Signs and Symptoms

- 50% asymptomatic (mainly benign); when symptomatic, 50% are malignant
- chest pain, cough, dyspnea, recurrent respiratory infections
- hoarseness, dysphagia, Horner's syndrome, facial/upper extremity edema (SVC compression)
- paraneoplastic syndromes (e.g. myasthenia gravis [thymomas])

Investigations

- CXR (compare to previous)
- CT with contrast (anatomic location, density, relation to mediastinal vascular structures)
- MRI: specifically indicated in the evaluation of neurogenic tumors
- U/S (best for assessment of structures in close proximity to the heart and pericardium)
- radionuclide scanning: ^{131}I (for thyroid), gallium (for lymphoma)
- biochemical studies: thyroid function, serum calcium, phosphate, PTH, AFP, $\beta\text{-hCG}$
- biopsy (mediastinoscopy, percutaneous needle aspiration)



Anterior Compartment

4 Ts

Thymoma
Thyroid enlargement (goitre)
Teratoma
Tumors
(lymphoma, parathyroid, esophageal, angiomatous)



Mediastinal Components

Anterior: sternum to posterior aspect of heart and great vessels. Includes: thymus, extrapericardial aorta and branches, great veins, lymphatic tissues
Middle: pericardium (anteriorly) posterior pericardial reflection, diaphragm, thoracic inlet. Includes: heart, intrapericardial great vessels, pericardium, trachea
Posterior: posterior pericardial reflection, posterior border of vertebral bodies, first rib to the diaphragm. Includes: esophagus, vagus nerve, thoracic duct, sympathetic chain, azygous venous system



Horner's Syndrome

Ptoxis, Miosis, Anhidrosis

Management

- excision if symptomatic enlarging benign masses or concerns of malignancy
- resect bronchogenic cysts and localized neurogenic tumors via minimally invasive video assisted procedures
- exploration via sternotomy or thoracotomy
- diagnostic biopsy rather than major operation if mass is likely to be a lymphoma, germ cell tumor, or unresectable invasive malignancy
- \pm post-operative radiotherapy/chemotherapy if malignant

Mediastinitis

- commonest causes: post-operative complications of cardiovascular or thoracic surgical procedures

Acute

- etiology
 - complication of endoscopy (e.g. esophageal perforation providing entry point for infection)
 - esophageal or cardiac surgery
 - tumor necrosis
- signs and symptoms
 - fever, substernal pain
 - pneumomediastinum, mediastinal compression
 - Hamman's sign (auscultatory "crunch" during cardiac systole)
- treatment
 - antibiotics, drainage, \pm surgical closure of perforation

Chronic

- usually granulomatous process or fibrosis related to previous infection (e.g. histoplasmosis, TB, sarcoidosis, syphilis)

Pleural Effusions**Definition**

- excess amount of fluid in the pleural space

Etiology

- disruption of normal equilibrium between pleural fluid formation/entry and pleural fluid absorption/exit
- pleural effusions are classified as transudative or exudative
 - distinguish clinically using Light's Criteria, which has a sensitivity of 98% and specificity of 83% for identifying exudative pleural effusions

Table 24. Laboratory Values in Transudative and Exudative Pleural Effusion

	Light's Criteria	Modified Light's Criteria
Protein – pleural/serum	>0.5	>0.5
LDH – pleural/serum	>0.6	>0.6
Pleural LDH	$>2/3$ upper limit of N serum LDH	>0.45 upper limit of N serum LDH
Exudate = at least one criterion met		

Ann Intern Med 1979;77:507-513 *Chest* 1997;111:970-980

Transudative Pleural Effusions

- pathophysiology: alteration of systemic factors that affect the formation and absorption of pleural fluid (e.g. increased capillary hydrostatic pressure, decreased plasma oncotic pressure)
- etiology
 - CHF: usually right-sided or bilateral cirrhosis
 - nephrotic syndrome, protein losing enteropathy, cirrhosis
 - pulmonary embolism (may cause transudative but more often causes exudative effusion)
 - peritoneal dialysis, hypothyroidism, CF, urinothorax

Exudative Pleural Effusions

- pathophysiology: increased permeability of pleural capillaries or lymphatic dysfunction
- etiology (see Table 25)



Transudative effusions are usually bilateral, not unilateral

Exudative effusions can be bilateral or unilateral



All criteria for transudate must be fulfilled to be considered a transudative effusion. If any one of the criteria for exudates is met – it is an exudate

Table 25. Exudative Pleural Effusion Etiologies

Etiology	Examples
Infectious	Parapneumonic effusion (associated with bacterial pneumonia, lung abscess) Empyema (bacterial, fungal, TB) TB pleuritis Viral infection
Malignancy	Lung carcinoma (35%) Lymphoma (10%) Metastases: breast (25%), ovary, kidney Mesothelioma
Inflammatory	Collagen vascular diseases: RA, SLE Pulmonary embolism Post-CABG Drug reaction
Intra-Abdominal	Subphrenic abscess Pancreatic disease (elevated pleural fluid amylase) Meigs' syndrome (ascites and hydrothorax associated with an ovarian fibroma or other pelvic tumor)
Intra-Thoracic	Esophageal perforation (elevated fluid amylase)
Trauma	Chylothorax: thoracic duct disrupted and chyle accumulates in the pleural space due to trauma, tumor Hemothorax: rupture of a blood vessel, commonly by trauma or tumors Pneumothorax (spontaneous, traumatic, tension)

Signs and Symptoms

- often asymptomatic
- dyspnea: varies with size of effusion and underlying lung function
- pleuritic chest pain
- inspection: trachea deviates away from effusion, ipsilateral decreased expansion
- percussion: decreased tactile fremitus, dullness
- auscultation: decreased breath sounds, bronchial breathing and egophony at upper level, pleural friction rub

Investigations

- CXR
 - must have >200 mL of pleural fluid for visualization on PA film
 - lateral: >50 mL leads to blunting of posterior costophrenic angle
 - PA: blunting of lateral costophrenic angle
 - dense opacification of lung fields with concave meniscus
 - decubitus: fluid will shift unless it is loculated
 - supine: fluid will appear as general haziness
- thoracentesis: indicated if pleural effusion is a new finding; be sure to send off blood work (LDH, glucose, protein) at the same time for comparison
 - risk of re-expansion pulmonary edema if >1.5 L of fluid is removed
 - inspect for color, character, and odor of fluid
 - analyze fluid
- pleural biopsy: indicated if suspect TB, mesothelioma, or other malignancy (and if cytology negative)
- \pm U/S: detects small effusions and can guide thoracentesis
- treatment depends on cause, \pm drainage if symptomatic
- CT can be helpful in differentiating parenchymal from pleural abnormalities

Table 26. Analysis of Pleural Effusion

Measure	Purpose
Protein, LDH	Transudate vs. exudate
Gram stain, Ziehl-Nielsen stain (TB), culture	Looking for specific organisms
Cell count differential	Neutrophils vs. lymphocytes (lymphocytic effusion in TB, cancer, lymphoma, serositis)
Cytology	Malignancy, infection
Glucose (low)	RA, TB, empyema, malignancy, esophageal rupture
Rheumatoid factor, ANA, complement	Collagen vascular disease
Amylase	Pancreatitis, esophageal perforation, malignancy
pH	Empyema <7.2, TB, and mesothelioma <7.3
Blood	Mostly traumatic, malignancy, PE with infarction, TB
Triglycerides	Chylothorax from thoracic duct leakage, mostly due to trauma, lung CA, or lymphoma

**Appearance of Pleural Fluid**

- Bloody: trauma, malignancy
- White: chylothorax, empyema
- Black: aspergillosis, amoebic liver abscess
- Yellow-green: rheumatoid pleurisy
- Viscous: malignant mesothelioma
- Ammonia odor: urinothorax
- Food particles: esophageal rupture

**Role of CT in Pleural Effusion**

- To assess for fluid loculation, pleural thickening and nodules, parenchymal abnormalities and adenopathy
- Helps to distinguish benign from malignant effusion and transudative from exudative effusion
- May not distinguish empyema from parapneumonic effusion

Features of Malignant Effusion

- Multiple pleural nodules
- Nodular pleural thickening

Features of Exudative Effusion

- Loculation
- Pleural thickening
- Pleural nodules
- Extrapleural fat of increased density

Treatment

- thoracentesis
- treat underlying cause
- consider indwelling pleural catheter or pleurodesis in refractory effusions

Complicated Parapneumonic Effusion

- persistent bacteria in the pleural space but fluid is non-purulent
- neutrophils, pleural fluid acidosis (pH <7.00), and high LDH
- often no bacteria grown since rapidly cleared from pleural space
- fibrin layer leading to loculation of pleural fluid
- treatment: antibiotics and drainage, treat as an empyema

Empyema**Definition**

- pus in pleural space or an effusion with organisms seen on a Gram stain or culture (e.g. pleural fluid is grossly purulent)
- positive culture is not required for diagnosis

Etiology

- contiguous spread from lung infection (most commonly anaerobes) or infection through chest wall (e.g. trauma, surgery)

Signs and Symptoms

- fever, pleuritic chest pain

Investigations

- CT chest
- thoracentesis
- PMNs (lymphocytes in TB) ± visible organisms on Gram stain

Treatment

- antibiotic therapy for at least 4-6 wk (rarely effective alone)
- complete pleural drainage with chest tube
- if loculated, more difficult to drain – may require surgical drainage with video-assisted thoroscopic surgery (VATS)

Atelectasis

- see [General Surgery](#), GS10

Pneumothorax**Definition**

- presence of air in the pleural space

Pathophysiology

- entry of air into pleural space raises intrapleural pressure causing partial lung deflation

Etiology

- traumatic: penetrating or non-penetrating chest injuries
- iatrogenic (central venous catheter, thoracentesis, mechanical ventilation with barotrauma)
- spontaneous (no history of trauma)
 - primary (no underlying lung disease)
 - ♦ spontaneous rupture of apical subpleural bleb of lung into pleural space
 - ♦ predominantly tall, healthy, young males
 - secondary (underlying lung disease)
 - ♦ rupture of subpleural bleb which migrates along bronchioalveolar sheath to the mediastinum then to the intrapleural space
 - ♦ necrosis of lung tissue adjacent to pleural surface (e.g. pneumonia, abscess, PCP, lung CA, emphysema)

Signs and Symptoms

- can be asymptomatic
- acute-onset pleuritic chest pain, dyspnea
- tachypnea, tachycardia

**Pleural Effusions****Simple Effusion**

pH > 7.2, LDH < 1/2 serum, glucose > 2.2

Complicated Effusion

pH < 7.2, LDH > 1/2 serum, glucose < 2.2, positive Gram stain
Needs drainage



When possible, organism-directed therapy, guided by culture sensitivities or local patterns of drug resistance, should be utilized

**Need to Rule Out Life-Threatening Tension Pneumothorax**

If pneumothorax with:

- Severe respiratory distress
- Tracheal deviation to contralateral side
- Distended neck veins (↑ JVP)
- Hypotension

Do not perform CXR

Needs immediate treatment

See [Emergency Medicine](#), ER11

- tracheal deviation (contralateral deviation in tension pneumothorax)
- ipsilateral diminished chest expansion
- decreased tactile/vocal fremitus
- hyperresonance
- ipsilateral diminished breath sounds

Investigations

- CXR
 - small: separation of visceral and parietal pleura seen as fine crescentic line parallel to chest wall at apex
 - large: increased density and decreased volume of lung on side of pneumothorax
 - see [Medical Imaging, M18](#)



Treatment

- small pneumothoraces (<20% with no signs of respiratory/circulatory collapse) resolve spontaneously; breathing 100% oxygen accelerates resorption of air
- small intercostal tube with Heimlich valve for most spontaneous pneumothoraces
- large pneumothoraces or those complicating underlying lung disease require placement of a chest tube connected to underwater seal \pm suction
- for repeated episodes: pleurodesis with sclerosing agent or apical bullectomy and abrasion
- treat underlying cause (e.g. antibiotic for PCP)

Asbestos-Related Pleural Disease and Mesothelioma

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- benign manifestations of asbestos exposure
 - “benign asbestos pleural effusion”
 - ♦ exudative effusion, typically ~10 yr after exposure, resolves
 - pleural plaques, usually calcified
 - ♦ marker of exposure; usually an asymptomatic radiologic finding
- mesothelioma
 - primary malignancy of the pleura
 - decades after asbestos exposure (even with limited exposure)
 - smoking not a risk factor, but asbestos and smoking synergistically increase risk of lung cancer

Signs and Symptoms

- persistent chest pain, dyspnea, cough, bloody pleural effusion, weight loss

Investigations

- biopsy (pleuroscopic or open)
- needle biopsy may seed needle tract with tumor

Treatment

- resection (extrapleural pneumonectomy) requires careful patient selection; rarely successful (average survival <1 yr)

Respiratory Failure



Definition

- failure of respiratory system to maintain normal blood gases
- hypoxemic ($P_aO_2 < 60$ mmHg)
- hypercapnic ($P_aCO_2 > 50$ mmHg)
- acute vs. chronic (compensatory mechanisms activated)

Signs and Symptoms

- signs of underlying disease
- hypoxemia: restlessness, confusion, cyanosis, coma, cor pulmonale
- hypercapnia: headache, dyspnea, drowsiness, asterixis, warm periphery, plethora, increased ICP (secondary to vasodilatation)

Investigations

- serial ABGs
- CXR and/or CT, bronchoscopy to characterize underlying cause if unclear

Hypoxemic Respiratory Failure

Definition

- P_aO_2 decreased, P_aCO_2 normal or decreased

Treatment

- reverse the underlying pathology
- oxygen therapy: maintain oxygenation (if shunt present, supplemental O_2 is less effective; see [Anesthesia, A9](#), for oxygen delivery systems)
- ventilation, BiPAP, and PEEP/CPAP (see [Anesthesia, A10](#)): positive pressure can recruit alveoli and redistribute lung fluid
- improve cardiac output: \pm hemodynamic support (fluids, vasopressors, inotropes), reduction of O_2 requirements



Table 27. Approach to Hypoxemia

Type of Hypoxemia	Settings	P_aCO_2	A-a DO_2	Oxygen Therapy	Ventilation, BiPAP and PEEP	Improved Cardiac Output
1. Low F_iO_2	Postop, high altitude	N or ↓	N	Improves	No change	No change
2. Hypoventilation	Drug overdose	↑	N	Improves	Improves with ventilation	No change
3a. Shunt	ARDS, pneumonia	N or ↓	↑	No change	Improves (except if one-sided)	Improves
3b. Shunt (Right to Left)	Pulmonary HTN	N or ↓	↑	No change	Worsens	Worsens
4. Low Mixed Venous O_2 Content	Shock	↓	↑	Improves or no change	Worsens	Improves
5. V/Q Mismatch	COPD	N or ↑	↑	Improves (small amounts)	Often improves	Improves
6. Diffusion Impairment	ILD, emphysema	N	↑	Improves	Improves with positive pressure	No change or worsens

Reprinted with permission from Dr. Ian Fraser

Hypercapnic Respiratory Failure

- P_aCO_2 increased, P_aO_2 decreased

Pathophysiology

- increased CO_2 production: fever, sepsis, seizure, acidosis, carbohydrate load
- alveolar hypoventilation: COPD, asthma, CF, chest wall disorder, dead space ventilation (rapid shallow breathing)
 - inefficient gas exchange results in inadequate CO_2 removal in spite of normal or increased minute volume
- hypoventilation
 - central: brainstem stroke, hypothyroidism, severe metabolic alkalosis, drugs (opiates, benzodiazepines)
 - neuromuscular: myasthenia gravis, Guillain-Barré, phrenic nerve injury, muscular dystrophy, polymyositis, kyphoscoliosis
 - muscle fatigue

Treatment

- reverse the underlying pathology
- if $P_aCO_2 > 50$ mmHg and pH is acidemic consider noninvasive or mechanical ventilation
- correct exacerbating factors
 - NTT/ETT suction: clearance of secretions
 - bronchodilators: reduction of airway resistance
 - antibiotics: treatment of infections
- maintain oxygenation (see above)
- diet: increased carbohydrate can increase P_aCO_2 in those with mechanical or limited alveolar ventilation; high lipids decrease P_aCO_2



Dead Space

- Ventilation without perfusion
- The opposite of shunt



Causes of Hypercapnia

- High Inspired CO_2
- Low Total Ventilation
- High Deadspace Ventilation
- High CO_2 Production



In chronic hypercapnia, supplemental O_2 may decrease the hypoxic drive to breathe, but do not deny oxygen if the patient is hypoxic



In COPD patients with chronic hypercapnia ("CO₂ retainers"), provide supplemental oxygen to achieve target SaO₂ from 88-92%

Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome

- clinical syndrome characterized by severe respiratory distress, hypoxemia, and noncardiogenic pulmonary edema
- The Berlin Criteria (*JAMA* 2012; 307:2526-2533) for ARDS
 - acute onset
 - within 7 d of a defined event, such as sepsis, pneumonia, or patient noticing worsening of respiratory symptoms
 - usually occurs within 72 h of presumed trigger
 - bilateral opacities consistent with pulmonary edema on either CT or CXR
 - not *fully* explained by cardiac failure/fluid overload, but patient may have concurrent heart failure
 - an objective assessment (e.g. echocardiogram) should be performed if no clear risk factors

Etiology

- direct lung injury
 - airway: aspiration (**gastric contents**, drowning), **pneumonia**, inhalation injury (oxygen toxicity, nitrogen dioxide, smoke)
 - circulation: embolism (fat, amniotic fluid), reperfusion injury
- indirect lung injury
 - circulation: **sepsis**, **shock**, **trauma**, blood transfusion, pancreatitis
 - neurogenic: head trauma, intracranial hemorrhage, drug overdose (narcotics, sedatives, TCAs)

Pathophysiology

- disruption of alveolar capillary membranes → leaky capillaries → interstitial and alveolar pulmonary edema → reduced compliance, V/Q mismatch, shunt, hypoxemia, pulmonary HTN

Clinical Course

A. Exudative Phase

- first 7 d of illness after exposure to ARDS precipitant
- alveolar capillary endothelial cells and type I pneumocytes are injured, resulting in loss of normally tight alveolar barrier
- patients develop dyspnea, tachypnea, increased work of breathing
 - these result in respiratory fatigue and eventually respiratory failure (see *Hypoxemic Respiratory Failure*, R26)

B. Fibroproliferative Phase

- after day 7
- may still experience dyspnea, tachypnea, fatigue, and hypoxemia
- most patients clinically improve and are able to wean off mechanical ventilation
- some patients develop fibrotic lung changes that may require long-term support on supplemental oxygen or even mechanical ventilation
- if fibrosis present, associated with increased mortality

Treatment

- based on ARDS network (see *Landmark Respiriology Trials*, R36)
- treat underlying disorder (e.g. antibiotics if infection present)
- mechanical ventilation using low tidal volumes (<6 mL/kg) to prevent barotrauma
 - use optimal amount of PEEP (positive end-expiratory pressure) to keep airways open and allow the use of lower F_iO_2
 - may consider using prone ventilation, and/or inhaled nitric oxide, high frequency oscillator or ECMO (extracorporeal membrane oxygenation) if conventional treatment is failing
- fluids and inotropic therapy (e.g. dopamine, vasopressin) if cardiac output inadequate
- pulmonary-arterial catheter now seldom used for monitoring hemodynamics
- mortality: 30-40%, usually due to non-pulmonary complications
- sequelae of ARDS include residual pulmonary impairment, severe debilitation, polyneuropathy and psychologic difficulties, which gradually improve over time
- most survivors eventually regain near-normal lung function, often with mildly reduced diffusion capacity



ALI vs. ARDS: Definition is the same, except ALI is a $P_aO_2/F_iO_2 \leq 300$, while ARDS is a $P_aO_2/F_iO_2 \leq 200$



Categorization of ARDS as Mild, Moderate or Severe – The Berlin Criteria

ARDS Severity	P_aO_2/F_iO_2 (mmHg)*	Mortality (95% CI)†
Mild	200-300	27 (24-30)%
Moderate	100-200	32 (29-34)%
Severe	<100	45 (42-48)%

*on ≥ 5 cm H_2O PEEP, †P<0.001

JAMA 2012;307:2526-2533



Risk Factors for Aspiration Pneumonia

Categories	Examples
Decreased level of consciousness	Alcoholism
Upper GI tract disorders	Dysphagia, esophageal disorders
Mechanical instrumentation	Intubation, nasogastric tube, feeding tubes
Neurologic conditions	Dementia, Parkinson disease
Others	Protracted vomiting

Neoplasms

Lung Cancer

Classification

- lung tumors can be classified as primary or secondary, benign or malignant, endobronchial or parenchymal
- bronchogenic carcinoma (epithelial lung tumors) are the most common type of primary lung tumor (other types make up less than 1%)
 - small cell lung cancer (SCLC)
 - non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC)
 - squamous cell carcinoma: arise from the proximal respiratory epithelium
 - adenocarcinoma: incidence is increasing; most common subtype in nonsmokers
 - bronchoalveolar carcinoma: grows along the alveolar wall in the periphery; may arise at sites of previous lung scarring
 - large cell undifferentiated cancer: diagnosis of exclusion
- benign epithelial lung tumors can be classified as papillomas or adenomas

Table 28. Characteristics of Bronchogenic Cancer

Cell Type	Incidence	Correlation with Smoking	Location	Histology	Metastasis	5 Year Survival Rates
Adenocarcinoma	M: 35% F: 40%	Weak	Peripheral	Glandular, mucin producing	Early, distant	12% (60% for bronchoalveolar carcinoma, a subtype, with a resectable solitary lesion)
Squamous Cell Carcinoma (SCC)	30%	Strong	Central	Keratin, intercellular bridges	Local invasion and distant spread, may cavitate	25%
SCLC	25%	Strong	Central	Oat cell, neuroendocrine	Disseminated at presentation Origin in endobronchial cells	1% (poorest prognosis)
Large Cell Carcinoma	10-15%	Strong	Peripheral	Anaplastic, undifferentiated	Early, distant	13%

Risk Factors

- cigarette smoking: the relative risk of developing lung cancer is 10-30 times higher for smokers than for nonsmokers
- other risk factors include cigar smoking, pipe smoking, second-hand smoke, asbestos without smoking (relative risk is 5), asbestos with smoking (relative risk is 92), metals (e.g. chromium, arsenic, nickel), radon gas, ionizing radiation, genetics

Signs and Symptoms

- may be due to primary lesion, metastasis, or paraneoplastic syndrome
- primary lesion
 - cough (75%): beware of chronic cough that changes in character
 - dyspnea (60%)
 - chest pain (45%)
 - hemoptysis (35%)
 - other pain (25%)
 - clubbing (21%)
 - constitutional symptoms: anorexia, weight loss, fever, anemia
- metastasis
 - lung, hilum, mediastinum, pleura: pleural effusion, atelectasis, wheezing
 - pericardium: pericarditis, pericardial tamponade
 - esophageal compression: dysphagia
 - phrenic nerve: paralyzed diaphragm
 - recurrent laryngeal nerve: hoarseness
 - superior vena cava syndrome
 - obstruction of SVC causing neck and facial swelling, as well as dyspnea and cough
 - other symptoms: hoarseness, tongue swelling, epistaxis, and hemoptysis
 - physical findings: dilated neck veins, increased number of collateral veins covering the anterior chest wall, cyanosis, edema of the face, arms, and chest, Pemberton's sign (facial flushing, cyanosis, and distension of neck veins upon raising both arms above head)
 - milder symptoms if obstruction is above the azygos vein
 - lung apex (Pancoast tumor): Horner's syndrome, brachial plexus palsy (most commonly C8 and T1 nerve roots)
 - rib and vertebrae: erosion
 - distant metastasis to brain, bone, liver, adrenals
- paraneoplastic syndromes
 - a group of disorders associated with malignant disease, not related to the physical effects of the tumor itself
 - most often associated with SCLC



Summary of Recommendations on Screening for Lung Cancer

American College of Chest Physicians (2013)

Screening with CXR

Not recommended

Screening with low-dose CT

Recommended for high-risk patients (current or former smokers quit within last 15 yr, aged 55-74, ≥ 30 pack yr smoking Hx)

American Lung Association (2013)

Screening with CXR

Not recommended

Screening with Low-Dose CT

Recommended for high-risk patients (current or former smokers aged 55-74, ≥ 30 pack yr smoking Hx, no Hx of lung cancer)



Reduced Lung Cancer Mortality with Low-Dose CT Screening

NEJM 2011;365:395-409

Study: Multicenter, RCT.

Methods: 53,454 participants at high risk for lung cancer (55-74 yr, >30 yr smoking, and smoking cessation for <5 yr) were assigned to undergo three annual screenings with either low dose CT or single-view PA CXR.

Results: A relative reduction in mortality from lung cancer with low-dose CT screening of 20.0% (95% CI 6.8-26.7; $p=0.004$). Rate of death from any cause was reduced in the low-dose CT group as compared to the CXR group by 6.7% (95% CI 1.2-13.6; $p=0.02$).

	Low-dose CT	CXR
Rate of positive screening test	24.2%	6.9%
False positives	96.4%	94.5%
Incidence of lung cancer	645/100 K person yr	572/100 K person yr
Deaths from lung cancer	247/100 K person yr	309/100 K person yr

Conclusions: Screening with low-dose CT reduces mortality from lung cancer



Malignant lung tumors are the most common cause of cancer mortality throughout the world in both men and women



Endobronchial Ultrasound (EBUS)

- Allows visualization of peri-bronchial structures and distal peripheral lung lesions
- Provides detailed assessment of the airway wall layers
- Allows for guided biopsies of lymph nodes and tumors
- Used for diagnosis and staging

Table 29. Paraneoplastic Syndromes

System	Clinical Presentation	Associated Malignancy
Skeletal	Clubbing, hypertrophic pulmonary osteoarthropathy (HPOA)	NSCLC
Dermatologic	Acanthosis nigricans Dermatomyositis	Bronchogenic cancer Bronchogenic cancer
Endocrine	Hypercalcemia (osteolysis or PTHrP) Hypophosphatemia Hypoglycemia Cushing's syndrome (ACTH) Somatostatinoma syndrome SIADH	Squamous cell cancer Squamous cell cancer Sarcoma SCLC Bronchial carcinoid SCLC
Neuromyopathic	Lambert-Eaton syndrome Polymyositis Subacute cerebellar degeneration Spinocerebellar degeneration Peripheral neuropathy	SCLC
Vascular/ Hematologic	Nonbacterial endocarditis Trousseau's syndrome (migratory thrombophlebitis) DIC	Bronchogenic cancer NSCLC
Renal	Nephrotic syndrome	

Investigations

- initial diagnosis
 - imaging: CXR, CT chest + upper abdomen, PET scan, bone scan
 - cytology: sputum
 - biopsy: bronchoscopy, EBUS, CT-guided percutaneous needle biopsy, mediastinoscopy
- staging workup
 - TMN staging system: T – primary tumor (size); N – regional lymph nodes; M – distant metastasis
 - blood work: electrolytes, LFTs, calcium, ALP
 - imaging: CXR, CT thorax and upper abdomen, bone scan, neuroimaging
 - invasive: bronchoscopy (EBUS), mediastinoscopy, mediastinotomy, thoracotomy
 - screen adenocarcinoma for EGFR mutations

Table 30. SCLC vs. NSCLC

	Stage	Definition	Treatment	Median Survival
SCLC	Limited stage	Confined to single radiation port (one hemithorax and regional lymph nodes)	Radiation ± chemotherapy ± prophylactic to brain	1-2 yr (12 wk without treatment)
	Extensive stage	Extension beyond a single radiation port	Chemotherapy	6 mo (5 wk without treatment)
	Stage	TNM	Treatment	5 Yr Survival (%)*
NSCLC	IA	T1a-1bN0M0	1st line is complete surgical resection with possible post-operative adjuvant chemotherapy with stage IB and stage II; radiotherapy for non-surgical candidates	50-73
	IB	T2aN0M0		43-58
	IIA	T1a-T2a,N1M0 or T2bN0M0		36-46
	IIB	T2bN1M0 or T3N0M0	Combined modality approach (concurrent chemotherapy followed by surgery)	25-36
	IIIA	T1a-T2bN2M0 or T3N1-2M0 or T4N0-1M0		19-24
	IIIB	T4N2M0 or T1-4N3M0		7-9
	IV	T1-4N0-3M1a-1b	Systemic therapy or molecularly targeted therapy or symptom-based palliative management (radiation); isolated metastasis may be resected	2-13

* Depends on clinical vs. pathologic stage

Refer to *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual*, 7th ed. (2010) for complete TNM classification

Treatment

- options include surgery, radiotherapy, chemotherapy, and palliative care for end-stage disease
- surgery not usually performed for SCLC since it is generally non-curable
- contraindications for surgery
 - spread to contralateral lymph nodes or distant sites
 - patients with potentially resectable disease must undergo mediastinal node sampling since CT thorax is not accurate in 20-40% of cases
 - poor pulmonary status (e.g. unable to tolerate resection of lung)



Horner has a MAP of the Coast

A **Pancoast** tumor compresses the cervical sympathetic plexus causing a **Horner's** syndrome:

Miosis
Anhydrosis
Ptosis



2/3 of primary lung cancer is found in the upper lung; 2/3 of metastases occur in the lower lung (hematogenous spread secondary to increased blood flow to the base of the lung)



Combination treatment may be superior, giving better response rates



Prevention

Smoking cessation
Avoidance of exposures
Early detection

- chemotherapy (used in combination with other treatments)
 - common agents: etoposide, platinum agents (e.g. cisplatin), ifosfamide, vincristine, anthracyclines, paclitaxel, irinotecan, gefitinib (an endothelial growth factor receptor inhibitor)
 - complications
 - acute: tumor lysis syndrome, infection, bleeding, myelosuppression, hemorrhagic cystitis (cyclophosphamide), cardiotoxicity (doxorubicin), renal toxicity (cisplatin), peripheral neuropathy (vincristine)
 - chronic: neurologic damage, leukemia, additional primary neoplasms

Approach to the Solitary Pulmonary Nodule

- see [Medical Imaging](#), MI7

Definition

- a round or oval, sharply circumscribed radiographic lesion up to 3-4 cm, which may or may not be calcified, and is surrounded by normal lung
- can be benign or malignant

Table 31. Differential Diagnosis for Benign vs. Malignant Solitary Nodule

Benign (70%)	Malignant (30%)
Infectious granuloma (histoplasmosis, coccidiomycosis, TB, atypical mycobacteria)	Bronchogenic carcinoma
Other infections (bacterial abscess, PCP, aspergilloma)	Adenocarcinoma
Benign neoplasms (hamartoma, lipoma, fibroma)	Squamous cell carcinoma
Vascular (AV malformation, pulmonary varix)	Large cell carcinoma
Developmental (bronchogenic cyst)	Small cell carcinoma
Inflammatory (granulomatosis with polyangiitis, rheumatoid nodule, sarcoidosis)	Metastatic lesions
Other (hamartoma, infarct, pseudotumor, rounded atelectasis, lymph nodes, amyloidoma)	Breast
	Head and neck
	Melanoma
	Colon
	Kidney
	Sarcoma
	Germ cell tumors
	Pulmonary carcinoid

Investigations)

- CXR: always compare with previous CXR
- CT densitometry and contrast enhanced CT of thorax
- sputum cytology: usually poor yield
- biopsy (bronchoscopic or percutaneous) or excision (thoracoscopy or thoracotomy): if clinical and radiographic features do not help distinguish between benign or malignant lesion
 - if at risk for lung cancer, biopsy may be performed regardless of radiographic features
 - if a biopsy is non-diagnostic, whether to observe, re-biopsy, or resect will depend on the level of suspicion
- watchful waiting: repeat CXR and/or CT scan at 3, 6, 12 mo
- PET scan can help distinguish benign from malignant nodules

Table 32. CXR Characteristics of Benign vs. Malignant Solitary Nodule

Parameters	Benign	Malignant
Size	<3 cm, round, regular	>3 cm, irregular, spiculated
Margins	Smooth margin	Ill-defined or notched margin
Features	Calcified pattern: central, "popcorn" pattern if hamartoma, usually no cavitation; if cavitating, wall is smooth and thin, no other lung pathology	Usually not calcified; if calcified, pattern is eccentric, no satellite lesions, cavitation with thick wall, may have pleural effusions, lymphadenopathy
Doubling Time	Doubles in <1 mo or >2 yr	Doubles in >1 mo or <2 yr



Carcinoids

- Early onset (40-60 yr)
- Most are central and can produce symptoms and signs of bronchial obstruction
- Hemoptysis is present in ~50% of cases



Hamartomas

- 10% of benign lung lesions
- Composed of tissues normally present in lung (fat, epithelium, fibrous tissue, and cartilage), but they exhibit disorganized growth
- Peak incidence is age 60, more common in men
- Usually peripheral and clinically silent
- CXR shows clustered "popcorn" pattern of calcification (pathognomonic for hamartoma)



Pulmonary neoplasms may present as a solitary pulmonary nodule identified incidentally on a radiographic study (~10% of cases) or as symptomatic disease (most cases)



Adenocarcinoma present in a non-smoker may be due to endothelial growth factor receptor mutation



Corona Radiata Sign on Chest CT

- Fine striations that extend linearly from a nodule in a spiculated fashion
- Highly associated with malignancy



Terminology

- "nodule" <3 cm
- "mass" >3 cm

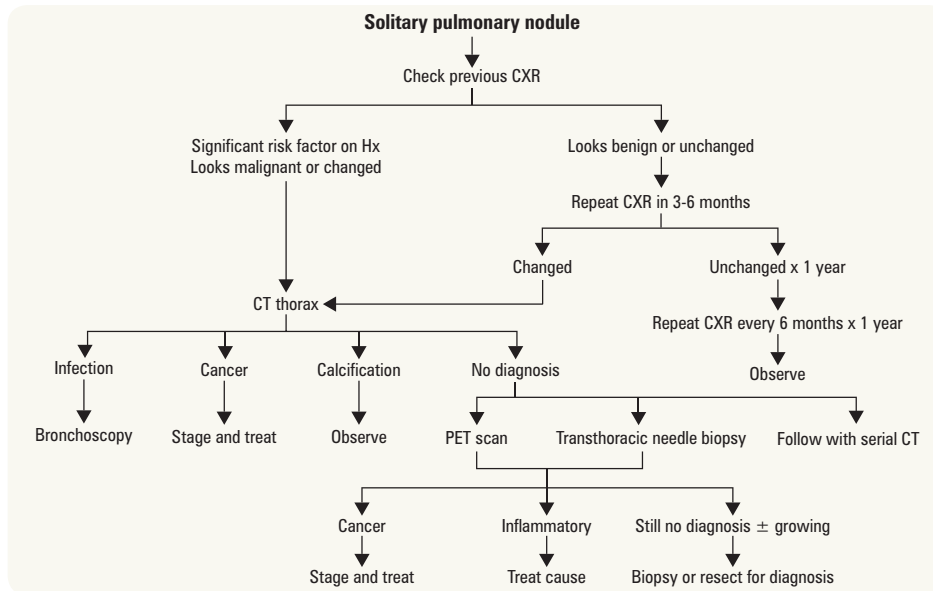


Figure 12. Evaluation of a solitary pulmonary nodule

Sleep-Related Breathing Disorders

Hypoventilation Syndromes

- primary alveolar hypoventilation: idiopathic
- obesity-hypoventilation syndrome (Pickwickian syndrome)
- respiratory neuromuscular disorders

Sleep Apnea

Definition

- episodic decreases in airflow during sleep
- quantitatively measured by the Apnea/Hypopnea Index (AHI) = # of apneic and hypopneic events per hour of sleep
- sleep apnea generally accepted to be present if AHI > 15

Classification

- obstructive (OSA)
 - caused by transient, episodic obstruction of the upper airway
 - absent or reduced airflow despite persistent respiratory effort
- central (CSA) (see [Neurology, N46](#))
 - caused by transient, episodic decreases in CNS drive to breathe
 - no airflow because no respiratory effort
 - Cheyne-Stokes Respiration: a form of CSA in which central apneas alternate with hyperpneas to produce a crescendo-decrescendo pattern of tidal volume; seen in severe LV dysfunction, brain injury, and other settings (see [Figure 2](#))
- mixed (MSA)
 - features of both OSA and CSA
 - loss of hypoxic and hypercapnic drives to breathe secondary to “resuscitative breathing”: overcompensatory hyperventilation upon awakening from OSA induced hypoxia

Risk Factors

- for OSA: obesity, upper airway abnormality, neuromuscular disease, hypothyroidism, alcohol/sedative use, nasal congestion, sleep deprivation
- for CSA: LV failure, brainstem lesions, encephalitis, encephalopathy, myxedema, high altitude

Signs and Symptoms

- obtain history from spouse/partner
- secondary to repeated arousals and fragmentation of sleep: daytime somnolence, personality and cognitive changes, snoring
- secondary to hypoxemia and hypercapnia: morning headache, polycythemia, pulmonary/systemic HTN, cor pulmonale/CHF, nocturnal angina, arrhythmias



Normal Respiratory Changes during Sleep

- Tidal volume decreases
- Arterial CO₂ increases (due to decreased minute ventilation)
- Pharyngeal dilator muscles relax causing increased upper airway resistance



Apnea: absence of breathing for ≥10 s

Hypopnea: excessive decrease in rate or depth of breathing (>50% reduction in ventilation)

Hyperpnea: excessive increase in rate or depth of breathing

- the typical presentation for OSA is a middle-aged obese male who snores
- CSA can be due to neurological disease

Investigations

- sleep study (polysomnography)
 - evaluates sleep stages, airflow, ribcage movement, ECG, SaO₂, limb movements
 - indications
 - ♦ excessive daytime sleepiness
 - ♦ unexplained pulmonary HTN or polycythemia
 - ♦ daytime hypercapnia
 - ♦ titration of optimal nasal CPAP
 - ♦ assessment of objective response to other interventions

Treatment

- modifiable factors: weight loss, decreased alcohol/sedatives, nasal decongestion, treatment of underlying medical conditions
- OSA or MSA: nasal CPAP, postural therapy (e.g. no supine sleeping), dental appliance, uvulopalatopharyngoplasty, tonsillectomy
- CSA or hypoventilation syndromes: nasal BiPAP/CPAP, respiratory stimulants (e.g. progesterone) in select cases
- tracheostomy rarely required and should be used as last resort for OSA

Complications

- depression, weight gain, decreased quality of life, workplace and vehicular accidents, cardiac complications (e.g. HTN), reduced work/social function



Continuous Positive Airways Pressure for Obstructive Sleep Apnea

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2006;CD001106

Study: Pooled analysis of 36 RCTs (n=1,718) comparing nocturnal CPAP with an inactive control or oral appliances in adults with OSA.

Conclusions: The use of CPAP showed significant improvements in objective and subjective measures including cognitive function, sleepiness, measures of quality of life, and a lower average systolic and diastolic blood pressure. People who responded equally well to CPAP and oral appliances expressed a strong preference for oral appliances; however, participants on oral appliances were more likely to withdraw from therapy.



CPAP has been shown to reduce cardiovascular risk and cardiovascular related deaths in patients with obstructive sleep apnea



ICU Psychosis

A form of delirium or acute brain failure that occurs in ICU patients. Signs and symptoms may include anxiety, agitation, paranoia, hallucinations, and disorientation in time and place. Treatment varies with cause

Introduction to Intensive Care

- goal is to provide stabilization for critically ill patients: hemodynamic, respiratory or cardiac instability, or need for close monitoring

Intensive Care Unit Basics

Lines and Catheters

- arterial lines
 - monitor beat-to-beat blood pressure variations, obtain blood for routine ABGs
 - common sites are the radial and femoral arteries
- central venous catheter (central line)
 - administer IV fluids, monitor CVP, insert pulmonary artery catheters
 - administer TPN and agents too irritating for peripheral line
 - common sites: internal jugular vein, subclavian vein, femoral vein
- pulmonary arterial catheter
 - balloon guides the catheter from a major vein to the right heart
 - measures pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP) via a catheter wedged in distal pulmonary artery
 - PCWP reflects the LA and LV diastolic pressure (barring pulmonary venous or mitral valve disease)
 - indications (now used infrequently due to associated complications)
 - ♦ diagnosis of shock states, primary pulmonary HTN, valvular disease, intracardiac shunts, cardiac tamponade, PE
 - ♦ assessment of hemodynamic response to therapies
 - ♦ differentiation of high- vs. low-pressure pulmonary edema
 - ♦ management of complicated MI, multiorgan system failure and/or severe burns, or hemodynamic instability after cardiac surgery
 - absolute contraindications
 - ♦ tricuspid or pulmonary valve mechanical prosthesis
 - ♦ right heart mass (thrombus or tumor)
 - ♦ tricuspid or pulmonary valve endocarditis






Table 33. Useful Equations and Cardiopulmonary Parameters

$BSA = [Ht (cm) + Wt (kg) - 60]/100$	$PCWP = LVEDP$
$SV = CO / HR$	$SVI = CI / HR$
$CI = CO / BSA$	$RV \text{ Ejection Fraction} = SV / RVEDV$
$SVRI = [(MAP - RAP) 80]/CI$	$PP = sBP - dBP$
$P:F \text{ ratio} = P_aO_2 / F_iO_2$	$MAP = 1/3 sBP + 2/3 dBP = dBP + 1/3 PP$

BSA = body surface area; CI = cardiac index; CO = cardiac output; dBP = diastolic blood pressure; HR = heart rate; LVEDP = left ventricular end diastolic pressure; MAP = mean arterial pressure; PCWP = pulmonary capillary wedge pressure; PP = pulse pressure; RAP = right atrial pressure; RVEDV = right ventricular end diastolic volume; sBP = systolic blood pressure; SV = stroke volume; SVI = stroke volume index; SVRI = systemic vascular resistance index

Organ Failure

Table 34. Types of Organ Failure

Type of Failure	Clinical Presentation	Treatment
Respiratory Failure (see <i>Respiratory Failure</i> , R25) 	Hypoxemia Hypercapnea	Treat underlying cause (e.g. lung disease, shunt, V/Q mismatch, drug-related, cardiac) Manage mechanical ventilation settings Supplemental oxygen
Cardiac Failure (see <i>Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery</i> , C33) 	Hypotension Decreased urine output Altered mental status Arrhythmia Hypoxia	Treat underlying cause (e.g. bradycardia, tachycardia, blood loss, adrenal insufficiency) Volume resuscitation Vasopressors Inotropes Intra-aortic balloon pump
Coagulopathy (see <i>Hematology</i> , H32) 	Increased INR or PTT Low platelet count Bleeding, bruising	Treat underlying cause (e.g. thrombocytopenia, drug-related, immune-related, DIC) Transfusion of blood product, clotting factors
Liver Failure (see <i>Gastroenterology</i> , G36) 	Elevated transaminases, bilirubin Coagulopathy Jaundice Mental alteration (encephalopathy) Hypoglycemia	Treat underlying cause (e.g. viral hepatitis, drug related, metabolic) Liver transplant Lactulose
Renal Failure (see <i>Nephrology</i> , NP35) 	Elevated creatinine Reduced urine output Signs of volume overload (e.g. CHF, effusions)	Treat underlying cause (e.g. shock, drug-related, obstruction) Correct volume and electrolyte status, eliminate toxins Diuretics Dialysis



Intensive Insulin Therapy in Critically Ill Patients

NEJM 2001;345:1359-1367

Study: Prospective, randomized controlled clinical outcome study.

Patients: 1,548 patients admitted to the ICU.

Intervention: At admission, patients were randomly assigned to either intensive insulin therapy or conventional therapy. Those in the intensive group had an infusion started if BG exceeded 6.1 mEq/L, and maintained to keep BG between 4.4-6.1 mEq/L. Those in the conventional group were started on insulin only if BG exceeded 11.9, and the infusion was adjusted for a target between 10.0-11.1 mEq/L.

Primary Outcome: Death from any cause during ICU stay.

Results: 35 patients (4.6%) died in the intensive group in the ICU, vs. 63 patients (8.0%) in the conventional group. This represents a 32% mortality reduction ($p=0.04$). Intensive insulin therapy also reduced overall in-hospital mortality, lowered deaths due to sepsis, multi-organ failure. Most of the mortality benefit was seen in long stay patients (>5 d).

Conclusion: Intensive insulin therapy in the ICU reduces mortality by 32%, and improves in-hospital mortality and morbidity.

Shock

- see [Emergency Medicine](#), ER3
- inadequate tissue perfusion potentially resulting in end organ injury
 - categories of shock
 - ♦ hypovolemic: hemorrhage, dehydration, vomiting, diarrhea, interstitial fluid redistribution
 - ♦ cardiogenic: myopathic (myocardial ischemia \pm infarction), mechanical, arrhythmic, pharmacologic
 - ♦ obstructive: massive PE (saddle embolus), pericardial tamponade, constrictive pericarditis, increased intrathoracic pressure (e.g. tension pneumothorax)
 - ♦ distributive: sepsis, anaphylactic reaction, neurogenic, endocrinologic, toxic



Table 35. Changes Seen in Different Classes of Shock

	Hypovolemic	Cardiogenic	Obstructive	Distributive
HR	↑	↑, N, or ↓	↑	↑
BP	↓	↓	↓	↓
JVP	↓	↑	↑	↓
Extremities	Cold	Cold	N or Cold	Warm
Other	Look for visible hemorrhage or signs of dehydration	Bilateral crackles on chest exam	Depending on cause, may see pulsus paradoxus, Kussmaul's sign, or tracheal deviation	Look for obvious signs of infection or anaphylaxis

- treat underlying cause
- treatment goal is to return critical organ perfusion to normal (e.g. normalize BP)
- common treatment modalities include
 - fluid resuscitation
 - inotropes (e.g. dobutamine), vasopressors (e.g. norepinephrine), vasopressin
 - revascularization or thrombolytics for ischemic events

Sepsis

- the leading cause of death in noncoronary ICU settings is multi-organ failure due to sepsis
- the predominant theory is that sepsis is attributable to uncontrollable immune system activation

Definitions

- sepsis: the presence of both infection and SIRS (see [Table 36](#))
- severe sepsis: sepsis associated with organ dysfunction, hypoperfusion or hypotension
- septic shock: sepsis with arterial hypotension despite adequate fluid resuscitation



Shock: Clinical Correlation

Hypovolemic: patients have cool extremities due to peripheral vasoconstriction

Cardiogenic: patients usually have signs of left-sided heart failure

Obstructive: varied presentation

Distributive: patients have warm extremities due to peripheral vasodilation



Causes of SHOCK

Spinal (neurogenic), Septic

Hemorrhagic

Obstructive (e.g. tension pneumothorax, cardiac tamponade, PE)

Cardiogenic (e.g. arrhythmia, MI)

Anaphylactic



Systemic Inflammatory Response Syndrome (SIRS):

generalized inflammatory reaction caused by infectious and noninfectious entities, manifested by two or more of:

- Body temperature $>38^{\circ}\text{C}$ or $<36^{\circ}\text{C}$
- Heart rate $>90/\text{min}$
- Respiratory rate $>20/\text{min}$ or $\text{P}_a\text{CO}_2 <32$ mmHg
- WBC $>12,000$ cells/mL or $<4,000$ cells/mL or $>10\%$ bands

- multiorgan dysfunction syndrome: sepsis in the presence of altered organ function such that homeostasis cannot be maintained without intervention

Signs and Symptoms

Table 36. Clinical Manifestations of Sepsis

General Variables	Organ Dysfunction Variables
Fever ($>38^{\circ}\text{C}$) or hypothermia ($<36^{\circ}\text{C}$)	Arterial hypoxemia ($\text{P}_a\text{O}_2/\text{F}_i\text{O}_2 < 300$)
Heart rate $> 90/\text{min}$	Acute oliguria (urine output $< 0.5 \text{ mL/kg/h}$)
sBP $< 90 \text{ mmHg}$, MAP < 70 , or a sBP decrease $> 40 \text{ mmHg}$	Creatinine increase $> 40 \mu\text{mol/L}$
Tachypnea	Coagulation abnormalities (INR > 1.5 or aPTT $> 60 \text{ s}$)
Altered mental status	Ileus (absent bowel sounds)
Positive fluid balance ($> 20 \text{ mL/kg}$ over 24 h)	Thrombocytopenia (platelet count $< 100,000/\text{L}$)
Hyperglycemia (BG $> 140 \text{ mg/dL}$) in the absence of diabetes	Hyperbilirubinemia (plasma total bilirubin $> 4 \text{ mg/dL}$)
Leukopenia (WBC $< 4,000/\text{L}$)	Leukocytosis (WBC $> 12,000/\mu\text{L}$)
Normal WBC count with $> 10\%$ immature forms	Tissue Perfusion Variables
Plasma C-reactive protein $> 2 \text{ SD}$ above the normal value	Hyperlactatemia ($> 20 \text{ mg/dL}$)
	Decreased capillary refill or mottling

Table adapted with permission from Levy MM, Fink MP, Marshall JC, et al. 2001 SCCM/ESICM/ACCP/ATS/SIS International Sepsis Definitions Conference. *Critical Care Medicine* 2003;31:1250-1256

Treatment

- identify the cause and source of infection: blood, sputum, urine Gram stain and C&S
- initiate empiric antibiotic therapy
- monitor, restore and maintain hemodynamic function

Early Goal Directed Therapy

- adjustments of cardiac preload, afterload, and contractility to balance oxygen delivery with demand
- should be started immediately and completed within 6 h of recognition of severe sepsis or septic shock
- patient should meet SIRS criteria and sBP $< 90 \text{ mmHg}$ or lactate $> 35 \text{ mg/dL}$
 1. supplemental oxygen \pm intubation and mechanical ventilation
 2. central venous and arterial catheterization
 3. maintain CVP 8-12 mmHg with IV crystalloids/colloids
 4. MAP maintained 65-90 mmHg with the use of vasoactive agents
 5. $\text{S}_{\text{cv}}\text{O}_2 < 70\%$ then
 - ♦ transfusion of red cells until Hct $> 30\%$
 - ♦ if $\text{S}_{\text{cv}}\text{O}_2 < 70\%$ after transfusion then use inotropic agents
- supportive oxygenation and ventilation using lung-protective regimen
- early nutritional support: enteral route is used to preserve function of intestinal mucosal barrier
- control hyperglycemia with insulin to decrease infectious complications
- physiologic dose corticosteroid replacement therapy in patients with relative adrenal insufficiency (nonresponders to corticotropin stimulation test)
 - consider in mechanically ventilated septic shock patients with organ dysfunction requiring vasopressors, despite early goal-directed therapy and appropriate antibiotic therapy
- recombinant activated protein C may be considered in patients with severe sepsis or septic shock with an APACHE II score > 25 despite early goal-directed therapy and appropriate antibiotic therapy
- DVT/PE prophylaxis
- advanced care planning, including the communication of likely outcomes and realistic goals of treatment with patients and families



Corticosteroids for Treating Severe Sepsis and Septic Shock

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2010;CD002243

Study: Meta-analysis of 25 RCTs and quasi-RCTs examining the efficacy of corticosteroids on death at one month in patients with severe sepsis and septic shock.

Results: Overall, there was no difference in 28 d all-cause mortality but there was significant heterogeneity in dosing strategy between the studies. Treatment with long course of low dose corticosteroids significantly reduced 28-d mortality, increased the proportion of shock reversal by day 7 and day 28, reduced the sepsis-related organ failure assessment score by day 7, and survivors' length of stay in the ICU, without inducing gastroduodenal bleeding, superinfection, or neuromuscular weakness. Corticosteroids increased the risk of hyperglycemia and hyponatremia.

Conclusions: Corticosteroids did not change mortality in severe sepsis and septic shock. A long course of low dose corticosteroids reduced 28 d mortality without major complications.



Early Goal-Directed Therapy for Severe Sepsis and Septic Shock

NEJM 2001;345:1368-1377

Purpose: To evaluate the efficacy of early goal-directed therapy before ICU admission.

Methods: Randomized assignment of patients who presented to emergency with severe sepsis or septic shock to either 6 h of early goal-directed therapy or standard therapy (hemodynamic support protocol). Clinicians who assumed care subsequently were blinded to treatment assignment. Primary outcomes were mortality and APACHE II scores.

Results: The mortality rate in the early therapy group ($n=130$) and control group ($n=133$) was 30.5% and 46.5% respectively ($p=0.009$). Within the 72 h, early therapy resulted in a significantly higher mean central venous oxygen saturation (70.4% vs. 65.3%), a lower lactate concentration (3.0 vs. 3.9 mEq/L), and a higher pH (7.40 vs. 7.36) compared to standard therapy ($p \leq 0.02$ for all comparisons). APACHE II scores were significantly lower in the early therapy group (13.0 vs. 15.9; $p < 0.001$).

Conclusion: Severe sepsis and septic shock significantly benefit from early goal-directed therapy compared to standard therapy protocols.

Common Medications

Table 37. Common Medications for Respiratory Diseases

	Drug	Typical Adult Dose	Indications	Side Effects
β₂-AGONISTS				
Short-Acting	salbutamol/albuterol (Ventolin®) (light blue/navy), terbutaline (Bricanyl®)	1-2 puffs q4-6h prn	Bronchodilator in acute reversible airway obstruction	CV (angina, flushing, palpitations, tachycardia, can precipitate atrial fibrillation), CNS (dizziness, H/A, insomnia, anxiety), GI (diarrhea, N/V), rash, hypokalemia, paroxysmal bronchospasm
Long-Acting	salmeterol (Serevent®), formoterol (Foradil®) indacaterol (Arcapta Neohaler®)	1-2 puffs bid 1 puff daily	Maintenance treatment (prevention of bronchospasm) in COPD, asthma	
Combination Long-Acting β₂-Agonist and Inhaled Corticosteroid	fluticasone and salmeterol (Advair®) (purple MDI or diskus) Budesonide and formoterol (Symbicort®) (red turbuhaler) Mometasone and formoterol (Zenhale®) (blue MDI)	1 puff bid 2 puffs bid	COPD and asthma	Common: CNS, H/A, dizziness Resp: URTI, GI (N/V, diarrhea, pain/discomfort, oral candidiasis)
ANTICHOLINERGICS				
	ipratropium bromide (Atrovent®) (clear/green), tiotropium bromide (Spiriva®) glycopyrronium bromide	2-3 puffs qid 1 puff qam 1 puff daily	Bronchodilator used in COPD, bronchitis and emphysema	Palpitations, anxiety, dizziness, fatigue, H/A, N/V, dry mucous membranes, urinary retention, increased toxicity in combination with other anticholinergic drugs
CORTICOSTEROIDS				
Inhaled	fluticasone (Flovent®) (orange/peach) budesonide (Pulmicort®) ciclesonide (Alvesco®) beclomethasone (QVAR®, Vanceril®) Mometasone (Asmanex®)	2-4 puffs bid 2 puffs bid 1-4 puffs OD 1-4 puffs bid (40 µg), 1-2 puffs bid (80 µg) 1 puff daily or bid	Maintenance treatment of asthma	H/A, fever, N/V, MSK pain, URTI, throat irritation, growth velocity reduction in children/adolescents, HPA axis suppression, increased pneumonia risk in COPD
Systemic	prednisone (Apo-prednisone®, Deltasone®) methylprednisolone (Depo-Medrol®, Solu-Medrol®)	Typically 40-60 mg per day PO 125 mg q8h IV (sodium succinate) loading dose 2 mg/kg then 0.5-1 mg/kg q6h for 5 d	Acute exacerbation of COPD; severe, persistent asthma, PCP Status asthmaticus	Endocrine (hirsutism, DM/glucose intolerance, Cushing's syndrome, HPA axis suppression), GI (increased appetite, indigestion), ocular (cataracts, glaucoma), edema, AVN, osteoporosis, headache, psychiatric (anxiety, insomnia), easy bruising
ADJUNCT AGENTS				
	theophylline (Uniphyll®)	400-600 mg OD	Treatment of symptoms of reversible airway obstruction due to COPD	GI upset, diarrhea, N/V, anxiety, H/A, insomnia, muscle cramp, tremor, tachycardia, PVCs, arrhythmias Toxicity: persistent, repetitive vomiting, seizures
LEUKOTRIENE ANTAGONISTS				
	montelukast (Singulair®) zafirlukast (Accolate®)	10 mg PO qhs, now only available as once daily slow release 20 mg bid	Prophylaxis and chronic treatment of asthma	H/A, dizziness, fatigue, fever, rash, dyspepsia, cough, flu-like symptoms
MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES				
	omalizumab (Xolair®)	150-375 mg SC q2-4wk	Moderate-severe persistent asthma	H/A, sinusitis, pharyngitis, URTI, viral infection, thrombocytopenia, anaphylaxis
PDE5 INHIBITORS				
	roflumilast (Daliresp®)	500 µg PO OD	Severe emphysema, with frequent exacerbations	Weight loss, suicidal ideation
ANTIBIOTICS – COMMUNITY ACQUIRED PNEUMONIA				
Macrolide	erythromycin azithromycin clarithromycin	250-500 mg PO tid x 7-10 d 500 mg PO x 1 dose, then 250 mg OD x 4 500 mg PO bid x 7-10 d	Alternate to doxycycline or fluoroquinolone	GI (abdominal pain, diarrhea, N/V), H/A, prolonged QT, ventricular arrhythmias, hepatic impairment GI (diarrhea, N/V, abdominal pain), renal failure, deafness Headache, rash, GI (diarrhea, N/V, abnormal taste, heartburn, abdominal pain), increased urea
Doxycycline		100 mg PO bid x 7-10 d	Alternate to macrolide or fluoroquinolone	Photosensitivity, rash, urticaria, anaphylaxis, diarrhea, enterocolitis, tooth discoloration in children
Fluoroquinolone	levofloxacin (Levaquin®) moxifloxacin (Avelox®)	500 mg PO OD x 7-10 d 400 mg PO OD x 7 d	Alternate to macrolide or doxycycline	CNS (dizziness, fever, H/A), GI (N/V, diarrhea, constipation), prolonged QT

Table 37. Common Medications for Respiratory Diseases (continued)

Drug	Typical Adult Dose	Indications	Side Effects	
ANTIBIOTICS – HOSPITAL ACQUIRED PNEUMONIA				
3rd gen Cephalosporin	ceftriaxone (Rocephin®)	1-2 g IV OD x 7-10 d	Combine with fluoroquinolone or macrolide	Rash, diarrhea, eosinophilia, thrombocytosis, leukopenia, elevated transaminases
Fluoroquinolone	levofloxacin moxifloxacin	750 mg PO OD x 5 d 400 mg PO OD x 7 d (5 d for AECOPD)	Combine with 3rd gen cephalosporin	See above
Piperacillin/ Tazobactam (Tazocin®)		4.5 g IV q6-8h x 7-10 d	Suspect Pseudomonas	CNS (confusion, convulsions, drowsiness), rash, Hematologic (abnormal platelet aggregation, prolonged PT, positive Coombs)
Vancomycin (Vancocin®)		1 g IV bid x 7-10 d	Suspect MRSA	CNS (chills, drug fever), hematologic (eosinophilia), rash, red man syndrome, interstitial nephritis, renal failure, ototoxicity
Macrolide	azithromycin	500 mg IV OD x 2 d, then 500 mg PO OD x 5 d	Suspect Legionella	See above
	clarithromycin	500 mg PO bid x 7-10 d		See above
ICU MEDICATIONS				
Pressors/Inotropes	norepinephrine (Levophed®) phenylephrine dobutamine	0.5-30 µg/min IV 0.5 µg/kg/min IV 2-20 µg/kg/min IV	Acute hypotension Severe hypotension Inotropic support	Angina, bradycardia, dyspnea, hyper/hypotension, arrhythmias See above See above
Sedatives/Analgesia	fentanyl (opioid class)	50-100 µg then 50-unlimited µg/h IV	Sedation and/or analgesia	Bradycardia, respiratory depression, drowsiness, hypotension
	propofol (anesthetic)	1-3 mg/kg then 0.3-5 mg/kg/h IV	Sedation and/or analgesia	Apnea, bradycardia, hypotension (good for ventilator sedation)

See [Infectious Diseases](#), ID27 – for the management of pulmonary tuberculosis

Landmark Respiriology Trials

Trial	Reference	Results
ARDS Network	<i>NEJM</i> 2000; 342:1301-8	Mortality decreased in ARDS patients ventilated with a low tidal volume strategy
Berlin Criteria	<i>JAMA</i> 2012; 307:2526-33	The new definition of ARDS, better predicts mortality
CPAP and Apnea	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 353:2025-33	CPAP ameliorates symptoms of sleep apnea but does not affect mortality in CHF
EINSTEIN-PE	<i>NEJM</i> 2012; 366:1287-97	Fixed dose of rivoxabarin was non-inferior to standard therapy (Vit K antagonist) initial and long-term treatment of PE
Emphysema Treatment Trial	<i>NEJM</i> 2003; 348:2059-73	Lung volume reduction surgery benefits patients with upper lobe disease and low exercise capacity
IELCAP	<i>NEJM</i> 2006; 355:1763-71	High survival rate in patients with early stage lung cancer detected by low dose CT screening
Lung Health	<i>JAMA</i> 1994; 272:1497-505	Aggressive smoking intervention significantly decreases the age-related decline in FEV ₁ in middle-aged smokers with mild airways obstruction
Pneumonia	<i>NEJM</i> 1978; 298:801-9	Interstitial lung disease subsets have different prognoses and response to treatment (e.g. desquamative but not usual interstitial pneumonia respond well to corticosteroids)
POET-COPD	<i>NEJM</i> 2011; 364:1093-103	Tiotropium decreases the number of moderate-to-severe exacerbations in comparison to salmeterol
ROFLUMILAST	<i>Lancet</i> 2009; 374:695-703	Leukotriene inhibitors improve FEV ₁ when used as add-on therapy in COPD patients on tiotropium or salmeterol
TORCH	<i>NEJM</i> 2007; 356:775-89	Combination of inhaled steroids and long-acting β ₂ -agonists improves COPD symptoms, reduces exacerbations, and shows a trend to lowers mortality
UPLIFT	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 359:1543-54	Tiotropium improves symptoms of COPD with fewer exacerbations, but does not affect FEV ₁ decline

References

- Aaron SD, Vandemheen KL, Hebert P, et al. Outpatient oral prednisone after emergency treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *NEJM* 2003;348:2618-2625.
- Andreoli TE. *Cecil essentials of medicine*, 8th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2010.
- Anname D, Bellissant E, Bollaert PE, et al. Corticosteroids for treating severe sepsis and septic shock. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2004;1:CD002243.
- ARDS Definition Task Force. Acute respiratory distress syndrome: the Berlin definition. *JAMA* 2012;307:2526-2533.
- Augustinos P, Ouriel K. Invasive approaches to treatment of venous thromboembolism. *Circulation* 2004;110(Suppl1):127-134.
- Bach PB, Brown C, Gelfand SE, et al. Management of acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a summary and appraisal of published evidence. *Ann Int Med* 2001;134:600-620.
- Bach PB, Silvestri GA, Hanger M, et al. Screening for lung cancer: ACCP evidence-based clinical practice guidelines, 2nd ed. *Chest* 2007;132:695-775.
- Badesch DB, Abman SH, Ahearn GS, et al. Medical therapy for pulmonary arterial hypertension. ACCP evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. *Chest* 2004;126(Suppl1):35S-62S.
- Balk RA. Optimum treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock: evidence in support of the recommendations. *Dis Mon* 2004;50:168-213.
- Bartlett JG, Dowell SF, Mandell LA, et al. Practice guidelines for the management of community-acquired pneumonia in adults. *Clin Infect Dis* 2000;31:347-382.
- Bass JB Jr, Farer LS, Hopewell PC, et al. Treatment of tuberculosis and tuberculosis infection in adults and children. American Thoracic Society and The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 1994;149:1359-1374.
- Baumann MH. Treatment of spontaneous pneumothorax. *Curr Opin Pulm Med* 2000;6:275-280.
- Boulet LP, Becker A, Berube D, et al. Canadian asthma consensus report. *CMAJ* 1999;161(Suppl11):S1-61.
- Buller HR, Agnelli G, Hull RD, et al. Antithrombotic therapy for venous thromboembolic disease. *Chest* 2004;126:401S-428S.
- Chunilal SD, Eikelboom JW, Attia J, et al. Does this patient have pulmonary embolism? *JAMA* 2003;290:2849-2858.
- Crapo JD, Glassroth JL, Karlinsky JB, et al. *Baum's textbook of pulmonary diseases*, 7th ed. USA: Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2003.
- Dellinger RP, Carlet JM, Masur H, et al. Surviving sepsis campaign guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock. *Crit Care Med* 2004;32:858-873.
- Esteban A, Frutos F, Tobin M, et al. A comparison of four methods of weaning patients from mechanical ventilation. *NEJM* 1995;332:345-350.
- Ferguson GT, Cherniack RM. Management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *NEJM* 1993;328:1017-1022.
- Ferri F. Ferri's clinical advisor. Mosby/Elsevier Health Sciences, 2002.
- Ferri F. Practical guide to the care of the medical patient, 5th ed. St.Louis: Mosby/Elsevier Sciences, 2001.
- File TM. The epidemiology of respiratory tract infections. *Semin Respir Infect* 2000;15:184-194.
- Fine MJ, Auble TE, Yealy DM, et al. A prediction rule to identify low-risk patients with community-acquired pneumonia. *NEJM* 1997;336:243-250.
- Gaine S. Pulmonary hypertension. *JAMA* 2000;284:3160-3168.
- Garcia D, Ageno W, Libby E. Update on the diagnosis and management of pulmonary embolism. *Brit J Haematol* 2005;131:301-312.
- Geerts WH, Pineo GF, Heit JA, et al. Prevention of venous thromboembolism. *Chest* 2004;126(Suppl3):338S-400S.
- Giles TL, Lasserson TJ, Smith BJ, et al. Continuous positive airways pressure for obstructive sleep apnea in adults. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2006;5:CD001106.
- Górecka D, Gorzelak K, Sliwinski P, et al. Effect of long-term oxygen therapy on survival in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease with moderate hypoxaemia. *Thorax* 1997;52:674-679.
- Gotfried M, Freeman C. An update on community-acquired pneumonia in adults. *Compr Ther* 2000;26:283-293.
- Green DS, San Pedro GS. Empiric therapy of community-acquired pneumonia. *Semin Respir Infect* 2000;15:227-233.
- Hershfield E. Tuberculosis: treatment. *CMAJ* 1999;161:405-411.
- Holleman D, Simel D. Does the clinical examination predict airflow limitation? *JAMA* 1995;273:313-319.
- Hotchkiss RS, Karl IE. The pathophysiology and treatment of sepsis. *NEJM* 2003;348:138-150.
- Kasper DL, Braunwald E, Fauci AS, et al (editors). *Harrison's principles of internal medicine*, 16th ed. USA: McGraw-Hill Professional, 2004.
- Kline JA, Courtney DM, Kabriel C, et al. Prospective multicenter evaluation of the pulmonary embolism rule-out criteria. *J Thromb Haemost* 2008;6:772-780.
- Light RW, Macgregor MI, Luchsinger PC, et al. Pleural effusions: the diagnostic separation of transudates and exudates. *Ann Intern Med* 1972;77:507-513.
- Light RW. The management of parapneumonic effusions and empyema. *Curr Opin Pulm Med* 1998;4:227-229.
- Light RW. Useful tests on the pleural fluid in the management of patients with pleural effusions. *Curr Opin Pulm Med* 1999;5:245-249.
- Long R, Njoo H, Hershfield E. Tuberculosis: epidemiology of the disease in Canada. *CMAJ* 1999;160:1185-1190.
- Lougheed MD, Lemière C, Ducharme FM, et al. Canadian Thoracic Society 2012 guideline update: diagnosis and management of asthma in preschoolers, children and adults. *Can Respir J* 2012;19:127-164.
- Mansharamani NG, Kozel H. Chronic lung sepsis: lung abscess, bronchiectasis, and empyema. *Curr Opin Pulm Med* 2003;9:181-185.
- McLoud TC, Swenson SJ. Lung carcinoma. *Clin Chest Med* 1999;20:697-713.
- McPhee SJ, Papadakis MA, Tierney LM. Current medical diagnosis and treatment 2007, 47th ed. USA: McGraw-Hill Professional, 2006.
- National Lung Screening Trial Research Team. Reduced lung-cancer mortality with low-dose computed tomographic screening. *NEJM* 2011;365:395-409.
- Nguyen HB, Rivers EP, Abrahamian FM, et al. Severe sepsis and septic shock: review of the literature and emergency department management guidelines. *Ann Emerg Med* 2006;48:28-54.
- O'Donnell DE, Hernandez P, Kaplan A, et al. Canadian thoracic society recommendations for management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease – 2008 update – highlights for primary care. *Can Respir J* 2008;15(Suppl A):1A-8A.
- Ost D, Fein A. Evaluation and management of the solitary pulmonary nodule. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2000;162:782-787.
- Ost D, Fein AM, Feinsilver SH. The solitary pulmonary nodule. *NEJM* 2003;348:2535-4252.
- Paramothayan NS, Lasserson TJ, Jones P. Corticosteroids for pulmonary sarcoidosis. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2005;2:CD001114.
- Parfrey H, Chilvers ER. Pleural disease – diagnosis and management. *Practitioner* 1999;243:412,415-421.
- Pauwels RA, Buist AS, Calverly PM. Global strategy for the diagnosis, management, and prevention of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. NHLBI/WHO Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) Workshop Summary. *Am J Resp and Crit Care Med* 2001;163:1256-1276.
- Ram FSF, Picot J, Lightowler J, et al. Non-invasive positive pressure ventilation for treatment of respiratory failure due to exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2004;3:CD004104.
- Reimer LG. Community-acquired bacterial pneumonias. *Semin Respir Infect* 2000;15:95-100.
- Rivers E, Nguyen B, Havstad S, et al. Early goal-directed therapy in the treatment of severe sepsis and septic shock. *NEJM* 2001;345:1368-1413.
- Sabatine MS. Pocket medicine: the Massachusetts general hospital handbook of internal medicine. Philadelphia: Lippincott Williams and Wilkins, 2004. 6-1 and 5-2.
- Scharschmidt, Bruce F. Pocket medicine: internal medicine pulmonary medicine. 2002. PocketMedicine.com.
- Schidlow DV, Taussig LM, Knowles MR. Cystic fibrosis foundation consensus conference report on pulmonary complications of cystic fibrosis. *Peds Pulmonol* 1993;15:187-196.
- Schulman S, Kearon C, Kakkar AK, et al. Extended use of dabigatran, warfarin, or placebo in venous thromboembolism. *NEJM* 2013;368:709-718.
- Simonneau G, Robbins IM, Beghetti M, et al. Updated clinical classification of pulmonary hypertension. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2009;54(Suppl1):S43-54.
- Stein PD, Saltzman HA, Weg JG. Clinical characteristics of patients with acute pulmonary embolism. *Am J Cardiol* 1991;68:1723-1724.
- Stein PD, Fowler SE, Goodman LR, et al. Multidetector computed tomography for acute pulmonary embolism. *NEJM* 2006;354:2317-2327.
- Thrombosis Interest Group of Canada. Clinical guides. 27 brief, evidence-based guides on thrombosis for general practitioners. Available from: www.tigc.org.
- van den Bergh G, Wouters P, Weekers F, et al. Intensive insulin therapy in critically ill patients. *NEJM* 2001;345:1359-1367.
- Walters JAE, Gibson PG, Wood-Baker R, et al. Systemic corticosteroids for acute exacerbations of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2009;1:CD001288.
- Watts K, Chavasse RJ. Leukotriene receptor antagonists in addition to usual care for acute asthma in adults and children. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2012;5:CD006100.
- Wongsurakiat P, Maranetra KN, Wasi C, et al. Acute respiratory illness in patients with COPD and the effectiveness of influenza vaccination: a randomized controlled study. *Chest* 2004;125:2011-2020.

Notes

Dylan Kelly, Lisa Y. Liang, and Bahar Moghaddam, chapter editors

Amanda Huynh, Jessica Huynh, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Tina Hu, EBM editor

Dr. Lori Albert and Dr. Heather McDonald-Blumer, staff editors

Anatomy of Joint Pathology	2	SERONEGATIVE RHEUMATIC DISEASE	
Basics of Immunology	2	Spondyloarthropathies	21
Immune Mechanisms of Disease		Ankylosing Spondylitis	
Immunogenetics and Disease		Enteropathic Arthritis	
Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations	3	Psoriatic Arthritis	
Synovial Fluid Analysis	4	Reactive Arthritis	
Septic Arthritis	5	Crystal-Induced Arthropathies	24
Degenerative Arthritis		Gout	
Osteoarthritis	5	Pseudogout (Calcium Pyrophosphate Dihydrate Disease)	
SEROPOSITIVE RHEUMATIC DISEASE	6	Pediatric Rheumatology	P93
Connective Tissue Disorders	8	Non-Articular Rheumatism	26
Rheumatoid Arthritis		Polymyalgia Rheumatica	
Systemic Lupus Erythematosus		Fibromyalgia	
Antiphospholipid Antibody Syndrome		Adult Onset Still's Disease	
Scleroderma		Common Medications	29
Idiopathic Inflammatory Myopathy		Landmark Rheumatology Trials	31
Sjögren's Syndrome		References	32
Mixed Connective Tissue Disease			
Overlap Syndrome			
Vasculitides	17		
Small Vessel Non-ANCA Associated Vasculitis			
Small Vessel ANCA-Associated Vasculitis			
Medium Vessel Vasculitis			
Large Vessel Vasculitis			

Acronyms

Ab	antibody	EA	enteropathic arthritis	PIP	proximal interphalangeal joint
Ag	antigen	ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate	PM	polymyositis
ANA	antinuclear antibody	GC	<i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i> /gonococcus	PMR	polymyalgia rheumatica
ANCA	antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody	GCA	giant cell arteritis	PsA	psoriatic arthritis
Anti-Sm	anti-Smith antibodies	GPA	granulomatous with polyangiitis	PTT	partial thromboplastin time
APLA	antiphospholipid antibody syndrome	H/A	headache	PUD	peptic ulcer disease
AS	ankylosing spondylitis	Hb	hemoglobin	RA	rheumatoid arthritis
AVN	avascular necrosis	HLA	human leukocyte antigen	RBC	red blood cell
BUN	blood urea nitrogen	IA	intra-articular	ReA	reactive arthritis
CBC	complete blood count	IBD	inflammatory bowel disease	RF	rheumatoid factor
CCP	cyclic citrullinated peptide	IE	infective endocarditis	ROM	range of motion
CMC	carpometacarpal joint	MCP	metacarpal phalangeal joint	SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
CNS	central nervous system	MCTD	mixed connective tissue disease	SS	Sjögren's syndrome
CPPD	calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate	MHC	major histocompatibility complex	TNF	tumour necrosis factor
CRP	C-reactive protein	MPO	myeloperoxidase	U/A	urinalysis
DIP	distal interphalangeal joint	MTP	metatarsal phalangeal joint	ULN	upper limit of normal
DM	diabetes mellitus	MTX	methotrexate	VDRL	venereal disease research laboratory
DMARD	disease-modifying anti-rheumatic drug	OA	osteoarthritis	WBC	white blood cell
DMM	dermatomyositis	PAN	polyarteritis nodosa		

Anatomy of Joint Pathology

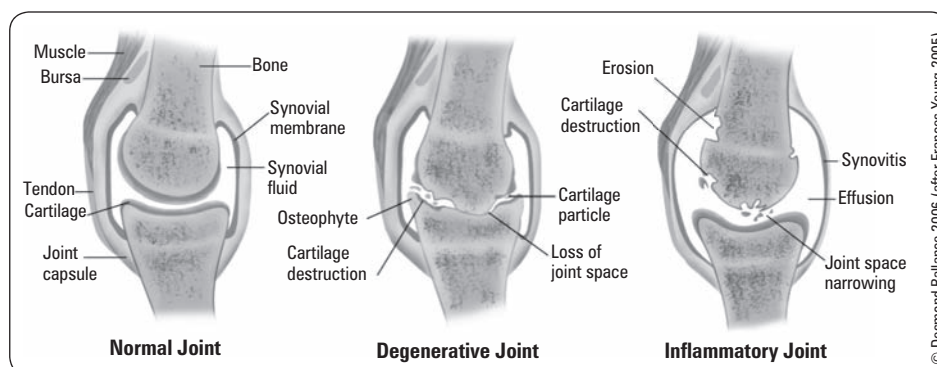


Figure 1. Structure of normal, degenerative, and inflammatory joint



Terminology in Rheumatology

Arthritis

- Joint swelling: effusion/synovial thickening
- Decreased ROM
- Stress pain (pain at the end of ROM)
- Increased warmth

Arthralgia: perception of joint pain without obvious clinical findings

Active joint: swollen joint, joint line tenderness, or stress pain

Basics of Immunology

Immune Mechanisms of Disease

Table 1. Mechanisms of Immunologically Mediated Disorders

Type	Pathophysiology	Examples
Anaphylactic (type I)	Formation of IgE → release of immunologic mediators from basophils/mast cells → diffuse inflammation	Asthma Allergic rhinitis
Cytotoxic (type II)	Formation of Ab → deposit and bind to Ag on cell surface → phagocytosis or lysis of target cell	Autoimmune hemolytic anemia, Goodpasture's syndrome, Graves' disease, pernicious anemia
Immune complex (type III)	Formation of Ag-Ab complexes → activate complement → attract inflammatory cells and release cytokines	SLE, PAN, post-streptococcal glomerulonephritis, serum sickness
Cell-mediated/delayed hypersensitivity (type IV)	Release of cytokines by sensitized T-cells and T-cell mediated cytotoxicity	Contact dermatitis

Immunogenetics and Disease

- cell surface molecules called HLAs play a role in mediating immune reactions
- MHCs are genes on the short arm of chromosome 6 that encode HLA molecules
- there are three classes of MHCs
- discrete domains of hypervariability within MHC molecules thought to represent "susceptibility determinants"
- certain HLA haplotypes are associated with increased susceptibility to autoimmune diseases

Table 2. Classes of MHCs

MHC Class	Types	Location	Function
I	HLA-A, B, C	All cells	Recognized by CD8+ (cytotoxic) T-lymphocytes
II	HLA-DP, DQ, DR	Ag presenting cells (mononuclear phagocytes, B cells, etc.)	Recognized by CD4+ (helper) T-lymphocytes
III	Some components of the complement cascade	In plasma	Chemotaxis, opsonization, lysis of bacteria and cells

Table 3. HLA-Associated Rheumatic Disease

HLA Type	Associated Conditions	Comments
B27	AS	In AS, relative risk = 70-90x
	ReA	In ReA, relative risk = 40x
	EA	
DR4, DR1	RA	In RA, relative risk = 2-10x; found in 93% of patients
DR3	SS	DR3 associated with many non-rheumatic conditions (celiac disease, type 1 DM, Graves' disease, chronic active hepatitis)
	SLE	

Differential Diagnoses of Common Presentations

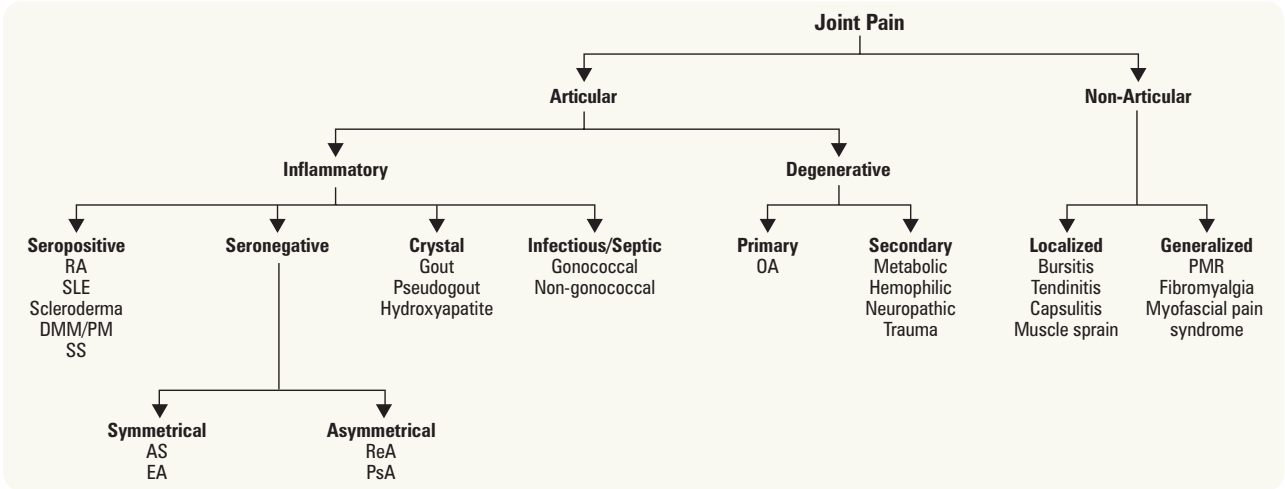


Figure 2. Clinical approach to joint pain

Table 4. Differential Diagnosis of Monoarthritis

Infection	Crystal	Degenerative	Trauma	Neoplastic	Other
Septic arthritis (Staph, GC, fungi, TB)	Gout Pseudogout Hydroxyapatite	OA	Hemarthrosis Osteonecrosis	Tumor	Systemic inflammatory disease Polyarthritis presenting with monoarticular symptoms first

Table 5. Differential Diagnosis of Oligoarthritis/Polyarthritis

Acute (<6 weeks)	Chronic (>6 weeks)		
First presentation of inflammatory arthritis Post-viral (parvovirus B19) Acute rheumatic fever Infectious (GC, non-GC)	Seropositive inflammatory arthritis RA SLE Scleroderma DMM/PM	Seronegative inflammatory arthritis AS EA PsA ReA Crystal (polyarticular gout)	Degenerative OA

Table 6. Symptoms of Inflammatory Arthritis vs. Degenerative Arthritis

Inflammatory	Degenerative
Pain at rest, relieved by motion Morning stiffness >1 h Warmth, swelling, erythema Malalignment/deformity Extra-articular manifestations	Pain with motion, relieved by rest Morning stiffness <½ h Joint instability, buckling, locking Bony enlargement, malalignment/deformity



Causes of Joint Pain

SOFTER TISSUE

Sepsis
OA
Fracture
Tendon/muscle
Epiphyseal
Referred
Tumor
Ischemia
Seropositive arthritides
Seronegative arthritides
Urate (gout)/other crystal
Extra-articular rheumatism (PMR/ fibromyalgia)



Patterns of Joint Involvement

- Symmetrical vs. asymmetrical
- Small vs. large
- Mono vs. oligo (2-4 joints) vs. polyarticular (≥5 joints)
- Axial vs. peripheral

Table 7. Seropositive vs. Seronegative Rheumatic Diseases

	Seropositive	Seronegative
Demographics	F > M	M > F
Peripheral Arthritis	Symmetrical Small (PIP, MCP) and medium joints (wrist, knee, ankle, elbow) common DIP less involved	Usually asymmetrical Usually larger joints, lower extremities (PsA may be the exception) DIP in PsA Dactylitis ("sausage digit") Enthesitis
Pelvic/Axial Disease	No (except for C-spine)	Yes
Enthesitis	No	Yes
Extra-Articular	Nodules Vasculitis Sicca Raynaud's phenomenon	Iritis (anterior uveitis) Oral ulcers Gastrointestinal Dermatologic features



The presence of synovitis often indicates articular as opposed to non-articular joint pain; synovitis presents with: soft tissue swelling, effusion, warmth, and pain with movement

Common Investigations in Rheumatology

- general: CBC, electrolytes, Cr
- acute phase reactants: ESR, CRP, ferritin, albumin, fibrinogen, platelets
- complement (C3, C4)
- U/A to detect disease complications (proteinuria, active sediment)
- serology: autoimmune Abs (ANA, anti-dsDNA, anti-Jo-1, anti-Sm, anti-La, anti-Ro, RF, and anti-CCP)
- synovial fluid analysis
- radiology (plain film, CT, MRI, U/S, bone densitometry, angiography, bone scan)

Synovial Fluid Analysis

- synovial fluid is an ultrafiltrate of plasma plus hyaluronic acid; it lubricates joint surfaces and nourishes articular cartilage

Indications

- diagnostic: mandatory if septic arthritis suspected; advised if crystal arthritis or hemarthrosis suspected; advised if unexplained effusion in accessible joint
- therapeutic: drainage of blood, purulent or tense effusions; corticosteroid injection

Contraindications

- absolute: open lesion or suspected infection of overlying skin or soft tissue
- relative: bleeding diathesis, thrombocytopenia, prosthetic joint

Most Important Tests of Synovial Fluid (3 Cs)

- ensure synovial fluid is described in terms of color, clarity, viscosity, and quantity
- 1. Cell count and differential
- 2. Culture and Gram stain (bacteria, mycobacteria, fungi)
- 3. Crystal examination (microscopy with polarized light)
 - gout (monosodium urate) → needle-shaped, negatively birefringent (bright yellow)
 - pseudogout (calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate) → rhomboid-shaped, positively birefringent (pale blue)



Protein, LDH, glucose less helpful

Table 8. Synovial Fluid Analysis

Parameter	Normal	Non-Inflammatory	Inflammatory	Infectious	Hemorrhagic
Color	Pale yellow	Pale yellow	Pale yellow	Yellow to white	Red/brown
Clarity	Clear	Clear	Opaque	Opaque	Sanguinous
Viscosity	High (due to hyaluronic acid)	High	Low	Low or paradoxically high if purulent	Variable
WBC/mm³	<200	<2000	>2000	Higher cell counts (particularly >50,000) suggestive	Variable
% PMN	<25%	<25%	>25%	>75%	Variable
Culture/ Gram Stain	–	–	–	Usually positive	–
Examples		Trauma OA Neuropathy Hypertrophic – arthropathy	Seropositives Seronegatives Crystal arthropathies	<i>S. aureus</i> Gram negative GC → difficult to culture	Trauma Hemophilia

Septic Arthritis

- for any acute monoarticular arthritis, one must rule out septic etiology; consider empiric antibiotic treatment until septic arthritis is excluded by history, physical exam, and synovial fluid analysis
- poor prognostic factors: older age, immunocompromised, delay in treatment, previously damaged joint, joint prosthesis
- see [Infectious Diseases](#) for *Gonococcal Arthritis*, ID15/[Orthopedics](#), OR10



Septic arthritis is a medical emergency; it leads to rapid joint destruction, and there is a 10-15% risk of mortality



Degenerative Arthritis: Osteoarthritis

Definition

- progressive deterioration of cartilage and bone due to failed repair of joint damage caused by stresses on the joint

Classification (Based on Etiology)

- primary (idiopathic)
 - most common, unknown etiology
- secondary
 - post-traumatic or mechanical
 - post-inflammatory (e.g. RA) or post-infectious
 - heritable skeletal disorders (e.g. scoliosis)
 - endocrine disorders (e.g. acromegaly, hyperparathyroidism, hypothyroidism)
 - metabolic disorders (e.g. gout, pseudogout, hemochromatosis, Wilson's disease, ochronosis)
 - neuropathic (e.g. Charcot joints)
 - ♦ atypical joint trauma due to peripheral neuropathy (e.g. DM, syphilis)
 - AVN
 - other (e.g. congenital malformation)

Pathophysiology

- deterioration of articular cartilage due to local biomechanical factors, which leads to joint trauma and release of proteolytic and collagenolytic enzymes
 - OA develops when cartilage catabolism > synthesis
 - loss of proteoglycans and water exposes underlying bone
- abnormal local bone metabolism further damages joint
- altered joint function and damage
- synovitis is secondary to cartilage damage; therefore, may see small effusions in OA

Epidemiology

- most common arthropathy
- increased prevalence with increasing age (35% of 30 yr olds, 85% of 80 yr olds)

Risk Factors

- genetic predisposition, advanced age, obesity (for knee OA), female, trauma

Signs and Symptoms

- localized to affected joints (not a systemic disease)
- pain is often insidious, gradually progressive, with intermittent flares and remissions

Table 9. Signs and Symptoms of OA

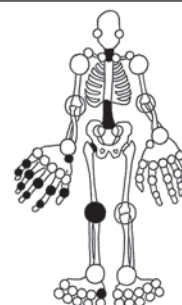
Signs	Symptoms
Joint line tenderness; stress pain ± joint effusion	Joint pain with motion; relieved with rest
Bony enlargement at affected joints	Short duration of stiffness (< 1/2 h) after immobility
Malalignment/deformity (angulation)	Joint instability/buckling
Limited ROM	Joint locking due to "joint mouse" (bone or cartilage fragment)
Crepitus on passive ROM	Loss of function or other internal derangements (e.g. meniscal tear)
Inflammation (mild if present)	
Periarticular muscle atrophy	

Joint Involvement

- asymmetric
- hand
 - DIP (Heberden's nodes = osteophytes → enlargement of joints)
 - PIP (Bouchard's nodes)
 - CMC (usually thumb squaring)
 - 1st MCP (other MCPs are usually spared)



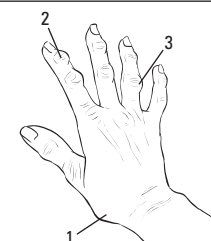
Obesity is linked to OA in the knee as well as CMC, which suggests a systemic inflammatory component to OA



- Hand (DIP, PIP, 1st CMC)
- Hip
- Knee
- 1st MTP
- L-spine (L4-L5, L5-S1)
- C-spine
- Uncommon: ankle, shoulder, elbow, MCP, rest of wrist

© Linda Colati

Figure 3. Common sites of joint involvement in OA



1. Thumb squaring
2. Heberden's nodes
3. Bouchard's nodes

© Tabby Lulham 2011

Figure 4. Hand findings in OA



OA of MCP joints can be seen in hemochromatosis or chondrocalcinosis

- hip
 - usually presents as groin pain \pm dull or sharp pain in the trochanteric area, internal rotation and abduction are lost first
 - pain can radiate to the anterior thigh, but generally does not go below the knee
- knee
 - initial narrowing of one compartment, medial > lateral; seen on standing x-rays, often patellar-femoral joint involved
- foot
 - common in first MTP and midfoot
- lumbar spine
 - very common, especially L4-L5, L5-S1
 - degeneration of intervertebral discs and facet joints
 - reactive bone growth can contribute to neurological impingement (e.g. sciatica, neurogenic claudication) or spondylolisthesis (forward or backward movement of one vertebra over another)
- cervical spine
 - commonly presents with neck pain that radiates to scapula, especially in mid-lower cervical area (C5 and C6)

Investigations

- blood work
 - normal CBC and ESR, CRP
 - negative RF and ANA
- radiology: 4 hallmark findings
- synovial fluid: non-inflammatory (see Table 8)

Treatment

- presently no treatment alters the natural history of OA
- **non-pharmacological therapy**
 - weight loss (minimum 5-10 lb loss) if overweight
 - physiotherapy: heat/cold, low impact exercise programs
 - occupational therapy: aids, splints, cane, walker, bracing
- **pharmacological therapy** (see Table 32)
 - oral: acetaminophen/NSAIDs, glucosamine \pm chondroitin (nutraceuticals not proven)
 - joint injections: corticosteroid, hyaluronic acid (questionable benefit)
 - topical: capsaicin, NSAIDs
- **surgical treatment**
 - joint debridement, osteotomy, total and/or partial joint replacement, fusion (see [Orthopedics](#), OR28)



Hint: Bouchard's is closer to the Body



The Radiographic Hallmarks of OA

- Joint space narrowing
- Subchondral sclerosis
- Subchondral cysts
- Osteophytes



Meta-Analysis: Chondroitin for Osteoarthritis of the Knee and Hip

Ann Intern Med 2007;146:580-590

Study: Meta-analysis of 20 RCTs and quasi-RCTs (n=3,846) examining the efficacy of chondroitin in OA.

Results: The analysis of this review was hampered by significant trial heterogeneity. Trials with poor methodology (small numbers, inadequate randomization concealment, intention to treat analysis) showed larger effect sizes in favor of chondroitin. When the authors restricted analysis to 3 trials with large sample sizes and an ITT analysis, 40% of patients were included and an effect size of -0.03 (95% CI -0.13-0.07) was generated.

Conclusion: There is high quality evidence to suggest there is no difference between chondroitin and placebo. Chondroitin should be discouraged from routine use in clinical practice.



Intra-articular Corticosteroid for Treatment of Osteoarthritis of the Knee

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;CD005328

Population: Patients with osteoarthritis (OA) of the knee.

Intervention: Intraarticular (IA) corticosteroid injection.

Results: 28 RCTs and quasi-RCTs (n=1,973). IA corticosteroids were more effective than placebo for pain reduction and global assessment at 1 wk post-injection. There was significant pain reduction at 2 and 3 wk, but no benefit for pain and function beyond 4 wk post-injection. There was no benefit for global function beyond 1 wk post-injection. There were higher rates of pain reduction at 4 wk post-injection for triamcinolone hexacetonide vs. betamethasone. There was no difference between IA corticosteroids and joint lavage in outcomes or safety. Hyaluronic acid injections showed better response than IA corticosteroids between 5 and 13 wk post-injection.

Conclusion: IA corticosteroid injection is effective for the short-term treatment of OA of the knee with few side effects. Hyaluronic acid therapy can provide more durable results.



Glucosamine Therapy for Treating Osteoarthritis

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;CD002946

Study: Meta-analysis of 25 RCTs (n=4,963) examining the efficacy of glucosamine on OA.

Results: Collectively the 25 RCTs favored glucosamine over placebo for total reduction in pain with 22% improvement as well as improvement in function using the Lequesne index. However, results were not uniformly positive. Only the glucosamine containing Rotta preparation was found to be significant. Rotta preparation also showed that glucosamine was able to slow radiological evidence of OA over a 3 yr period. Glucosamine had an excellent safety profile.

Conclusion: Rotta preparation of glucosamine was superior to placebo in the treatment of pain and functional impairment resulting from OA.

SEROPOSITIVE RHEUMATIC DISEASE

- diagnosis vs. classification in rheumatology
 - diagnostic criteria are often dependent on disease progression and evolution over time, as early objective measures are often unavailable
 - classification criteria are derived from studying patients with long-term diseases and clear diagnoses in order to determine which criteria have good specificity in the early prediction of certain diagnoses
- seropositive arthropathies are characterized by the presence of a serologic marker such as positive RF or ANA
- a small subset of the vasculitides, the small vessel ANCA-associated vasculitides, have a measureable serological component, but even these are often considered a separate entity from seropositive disease by experts

Blood Work

- general: CBC, Cr
- acute phase reactants: ESR, CRP, ferritin, albumin, complement (C3 and C4), fibrinogen,
- note: C3, C4 often decrease in active SLE
- autoantibodies

Urinalysis

- proteinuria, active sediment

Synovial Fluid Analysis

- see Table 8

Radiology

- plain film, CT, MRI, U/S, bone densitometry, angiography, and bone scan

Table 10. Autoantibodies and their Prevalence in Rheumatic Diseases

Autoantibody	Disease	Healthy Controls	Comments
RF	RA 80%	<5%	Autoantibodies (IgM>IgG>IgA) directed against Fc domain of IgG Present in most seropositive diseases Levels correlate with disease severity in RA Non-specific Present in IE, TB, hepatitis C, silicosis, sarcoidosis
	SS 50%	10-20%	
	SLE 20%	>65	
Anti-CCP	RA 80%		In RA: anti-CCP more specific than RF May be useful in early disease and to predict aggressive disease
ANA	SLE 98%	<5% (seen in other CTDs)	Ab against nuclear components (DNA, RNA, histones, centromere) Sensitive but not specific for SLE
	MCTD 95%		
	SS 70-90%		
	CREST 80%		
Anti-dsDNA	SLE 50-70%	0%	Specific for SLE Levels correlate with disease activity
Anti-Sm	SLE <30%	0%	Specific but not sensitive for SLE
Anti-Ro (SSA)	SS 40-95%	0.5%	Subacute cutaneous SLE and mothers of babies with neonatal SLE 25%
Anti-La (SSB)	SS 40% SLE 10%	0%	Usually occurs with anti-Ro
Antiphospholipid Ab (LAC, ACLA)	APLA 100% SLE 31-40%	<5%	By definition present in APLA Only small subset of SLE patients develop clinical syndrome of APLA If positive, will often get a false positive VDRL test
Anti-Histone	Drug-induced SLE >90%	0%	Present in MCTD; present in many other CTD
	Idiopathic SLE >50%	0%	
Anti-RNP	MCTD		Present in MCTD; present in many other CTD
Anti-Centromere	CREST >80%	0%	Specific for CREST variant of systemic sclerosis
Anti-Topoisomerase I (formerly Scl-70)	Diffuse systemic sclerosis 26-76%	0%	
c-ANCA	Active GPA (Wegener's) >90%	0%	Specific and sensitive
p-ANCA	GPA (Wegener's) 10% Other vasculitis	0%	Nonspecific and poor sensitivity (found in ulcerative colitis, PAN, microscopic polyangiitis, Churg-Strauss, rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis)
Anti-Mi-2	DMM 15-20%		Specific but not sensitive (not available in all centers)
Ab Against RBCs, WBCs, or Platelets	SLE		Perform direct Coomb's test Test Hb, reticulocyte, leukocyte and platelet count, antiplatelet Abs

- note: some individuals in the normal population test positive for RF and/or ANA, but do not have the conditions listed in Table 10

**Differential Diagnosis of Elevated ESR**

- RA, PMR, GCA
- Hypoalbuminemia, anemia, multiple myeloma
- Bacterial infections
- Malignancy

ESR (and CRP) is insensitive for polymyositis/dermatomyositis, AS, scleroderma, SLE, viral infections

**OARSI Guidelines for the Non-Surgical Management of Knee Osteoarthritis**

Osteoarthr Cartilage 2014;22:363-388

Objective: To develop concise, updated consensus guidelines for the management of knee OA.

Methods: The OA Guidelines Development Group consisted of 13 physicians from relevant medical specialties and a patient representative. Based on previous OA guidelines and a systematic review of the OA literature, 29 treatment modalities were investigated. Treatments were recommended as Appropriate, Uncertain, or Not Appropriate, for each of four clinical sub-phenotypes and accompanied by 1-10 risk and benefit scores.

Results: Appropriate treatment modalities for all individuals with knee OA included biomechanical interventions, IA corticosteroids, exercise, self-management and education, strength training, and weight management. Treatments appropriate for specific clinical sub-phenotypes included acetaminophen, balneotherapy, capsaicin, canes, duloxetine, oral and topical NSAIDs. Treatments of uncertain appropriateness for specific clinical sub-phenotypes included acupuncture, avocado soybean unsaponifiables, chondroitin, crutches, diacerein, glucosamine, IA hyaluronic acid, opioids, rosehip, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation, and U/S. Treatments voted not appropriate included risperidone and neuromuscular electrical stimulation.

Conclusion: Several mainstream treatments are effective for all patients with knee OA, whereas others are only appropriate for certain subtypes. Treatments of uncertain appropriateness can still be considered as treatment and should be based on risk-benefit profile and individual characteristics, as well as comorbidities and preferences of the patient.

Connective Tissue Disorders

Table 11. Features of Seropositive Arthropathies

	RA	SLE	Scleroderma	Dermatomyositis
CLINICAL FEATURES				
History	Symmetrical polyarthritis (small joint involvement) morning stiffness (>1 h)	Multisystemic disease: rash, photosensitivity, Raynaud's, alopecia, cardiac and pulmonary serositis, CNS symptoms, glomerulonephritis	Skin tightness, stiffness of fingers, Raynaud's, heartburn, dysphagia, pulmonary HTN, renal crisis with new onset HTN or hypertensive urgency/emergency, dyspnea on exertion	Heliotrope rash (periorbital), Gottron's papules (violaceous papules over knuckles and IP joints) ± poikiloderma Shawl sign: macular erythema over chest and shoulder Proximal muscle weakness ± pain Dyspnea on exertion
Physical Examination	Effused joints Tenosynovitis Joint deformities Bone-on-bone crepitus in advanced disease	Confirm historical findings (rash, serositis, renal, CVS, etc.) ± effused (typically small) joints (can be minimal, look for soft tissue swelling)	Skin tightness on dorsum of hand, facial skin tightening, telangiectasia, calcinosis, non-effused joint, inspiratory crackles	Rash, proximal muscle weakness, inspiratory crackles
LABORATORY				
Non-Specific	↑ ESR in 50-60% ↑ platelets ↓ Hb ↓ WBC (Felty's)	↑ ESR ↓ platelets (autoimmune) ↓ Hb (autoimmune) ↓ WBC (leukopenia, lymphopenia)	↑ ESR ↓ Hb Normal WBC	Possible increased ESR ↓ Hb Normal WBC
Specific	RF +ve in ~80% Anti-CCP +ve in ~80%	ANA +ve in 98% Anti-dsDNA +ve in 50-70% Anti-SM +ve in 30% ↓ C3, C4, total hemolytic complement False positive VDRL (in SLE subtypes) ↑ PTT (in SLE subtypes, e.g. APLA)	ANA +ve in >90% Anti-topoisomerase 1 (diffuse) Anti-centromere (usually in CREST, see RH13)	CK elevated in 80% ANA +ve in 33% anti-Jo-1, anti-Mi-2 Muscle biopsy EMG MRI
Synovial Fluid	Inflammation Leukocytosis (>10,000)	Mild inflammation with +ve ANA	Not specific	Not specific
Radiographs	Periarticular osteopenia Joint space narrowing Erosions Absence of bone repair Symmetric/concentric	Non-erosive ± osteopenia ± soft tissue swelling	± pulmonary fibrosis ± esophageal dysmotility ± calcinosis ± interstitial lung disease	± esophageal dysmotility ± interstitial lung disease ± calcifications

Rheumatoid Arthritis

Definition

- chronic, symmetric, erosive synovitis of peripheral joints (e.g. wrists, MCPs, MTPs)
- characterized by a number of extra-articular features

Table 12. Classification Criteria for RA

Criteria	Score	Comments
1. Joint involvement (swollen or tender)		
1 large joint (shoulders, elbows, hips, knees, and ankles)	0	
2-10 large joints	1	
1-3 small joints (MCPs, PIPs, wrists, 2nd-5th MTPs)	2	
4-10 small joints	3	
>10 joints (at least 1 small joint)	5	
2. Serology		
Negative RF and negative Anti-CCP	0	Total score of ≥6: definite RA Must have ≥1 joint with definite clinical swelling, not better explained by other disease
Low-positive RF or low-positive Anti-CCP (<3x ULN)	2	
High-positive RF or high-positive Anti-CCP (>3x ULN)	3	
3. Acute phase reactants		
Normal CRP and normal ESR	0	
Abnormal CRP and abnormal ESR	1	
4. Duration of symptoms		
<6 wk	0	
≥6 wk	1	

Arthritis Rheum 2010;62:2569-2581



RA is an independent risk factor for atherosclerosis and CV disease; RA is associated with increased overall mortality/morbidity from all causes: CV disease, neoplasm (especially lymphoma), infection



Common Presentation

- Morning stiffness >1 h, improves with use
- Symmetric joint involvement
- Initially involves small joints of hands and feet
- Constitutional symptoms



1987 American Rheumatism Association RA Criteria

- At least 4 of:
- Morning stiffness >1 h for >6 wk
 - Arthritis ≥3 joints for >6 wk
 - Arthritis of hand joints for >6 wk
 - Symmetric arthritis for >6 wk
 - Rheumatoid nodules
 - Serum RF positive
 - Radiographic changes (erosions or periarticular osteopenia)

Criteria are 91-94% sensitive and 89% specific for RA

Pathophysiology

- autoimmune disorder, unknown etiology
- hallmark of RA is hypertrophy of the synovial membrane
 - activated rheumatoid synovium (pannus) grows into and over the articular surface; inflammatory mediators lead to release of metalloproteinases and collagenases resulting in destruction of articular cartilage and subchondral bone
- two theories attempt to explain chronic remissions and exacerbations seen in RA
 - **sequestered Ag**
 - ♦ during inflammation, immune complexes (ICs) are deposited at avascular cartilage-bone junction → immune complexes are released as further cartilage breaks down → triggers inflammatory cascade
 - **molecular mimicry**
 - ♦ cartilage damage → altered cartilage resembles undefined offending agent → triggers inflammatory cascade

Epidemiology

- prevalence 1% of adult population
- F:M = 3:1
- age of onset 20-40 yr
- genetic predisposition: HLA-DR4/DR1 association (93% of patients have either HLA type)

Signs and Symptoms

- variable course of exacerbations and remissions
- morning stiffness >1 h, improves with use, increases with rest
- may have joint pain with activity
- symmetric joint involvement
- joint swelling, tender joints
- constitutional symptoms: profound fatigue; rarely myalgia or weight loss
- extra-articular features (EAF)
- limitation of function and decrease in global functional status
- complications of chronic synovitis
 - signs of mechanical joint damage: loss of motion, instability, deformity, crepitus, joint deformities
 - ♦ swan neck deformity, boutonnière deformity
 - ♦ ulnar deviation of MCP, radial deviation of wrist joint
 - ♦ hammer toe, mallet toe, claw toe
 - ♦ flexion contractures
 - atlanto-axial and subaxial subluxation
 - ♦ C-spine instability
 - ♦ neurological impingement (long tract signs)
 - ♦ difficult/dangerous intubation: risk of worsening subluxation and damage to spinal cord
 - limited shoulder mobility, spontaneous tears of the rotator cuff leading to chronic spasm
 - tenosynovitis → may cause rupture of tendons
 - carpal tunnel syndrome
 - ruptured Baker's cyst (outpouching of synovium behind the knee); presentation similar to acute DVT

Table 13. Extra-Articular Features of RA Classified by Underlying Pathophysiology

System	Vasculitic	Lymphocytic Infiltrate
Skin	Periungual infarction, cutaneous ulcers, palpable purpura	Rheumatoid nodules (may have vasculitic component)
Ocular	Episcleritis, scleritis	Keratoconjunctivitis sicca
Head and Neck		Xerostomia, Hashimoto's thyroiditis (see Endocrinology, E27)
Cardiac		Peri-/myocarditis, valvular disease, conduction defects
Pulmonary		Pulmonary fibrosis, pleural effusion, pleuritis, pulmonary nodules
Neurologic	Peripheral neuropathy: sensory stocking-glove, mononeuritis multiplex	
Hematologic		Splenomegaly, neutropenia (Felty's syndrome)
Renal		Amyloidosis – caused by accumulation of abnormal proteins

Classification of Global Functional Status in RA

- **Class I:** able to perform usual ADLs (self-care, vocational, avocational)
- **Class II:** able to perform self-care and vocational activities, restriction of avocational activities
- **Class III:** able to perform self-care, restriction of vocational and avocational activities
- **Class IV:** limited ability to perform self-care, vocational, and avocational activities

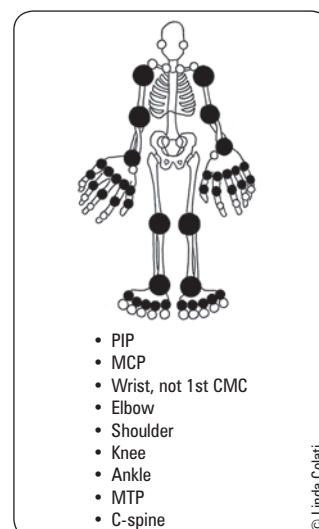


Figure 5. Common sites of joint involvement in RA

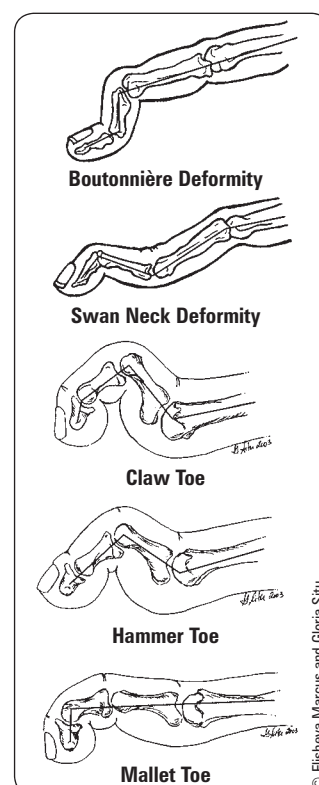


Figure 6. Joint deformities



Syndromes in RA

- **SS (common):** keratoconjunctivitis sicca and xerostomia (dry eyes and mouth)
- **Caplan's syndrome (rare):** multiple pulmonary nodules and pneumoconiosis
- **Felty's syndrome (rare):** arthritis, splenomegaly, neutropenia

Investigations

- blood work
 - RF sensitivity ~80% but non-specific; may not be present at onset of symptoms
 - anti-CCP: sensitivity ~80% but more specific; may precede onset of symptoms
 - increased disease activity is associated with decreased Hb (anemia of chronic disease), increased platelets, ESR, CRP, and RF
- imaging
 - x-rays may be entirely normal at onset
 - first change is periarticular osteopenia, followed by erosions
 - U/S, MRI may be used to image hands to detect early synovitis and erosions

Treatment

- goals of therapy: remission or lowest possible disease activity
 - control disease activity
 - relieve pain and stiffness
 - maintain function and lifestyle
 - prevent or control joint damage
 - key is early diagnosis and early intervention with DMARDs
 - “window of opportunity” = early treatment within first 3 mo of disease may allow better control/remission

Education

- The Arthritis Society (Canada), Arthritis Foundation (U.S.), The Rheumatoid Patient Foundation for educational resources

Behavioral

- exercise program (isometrics and active, gentle ROM exercise during flares, aquatic/aerobic/strengthening exercise between flares), assistive devices as needed
- job modification may be necessary

Pharmacologic

1. DMARDs and Biologics (see Table 33)

- **DMARDs:** standard of care and should be started as soon as possible
- treatments guided by disease severity and prognostic features
- MTX is the gold standard and is first-line unless contraindicated
- delayed onset of action (may take 8-12 wk)
- potential toxicities: GI, hematologic, hepatic (liver enzymes), pulmonary, teratogenic
- if inadequate response (3-6 mo) → combine or switch
- add-ons include: hydroxychloroquine, sulfasalazine, leflunomide
- **biologics:** indicated if inadequate response to DMARDs
 - ♦ can be combined with DMARD therapy
 - ♦ agents include infliximab, etanercept, adalimumab, abatacept, rituximab, tocilizumab
 - ♦ reassess every 3-6 mo and monitor disease severity

2. Reducing Inflammation and Pain

- NSAIDs
 - ♦ individualize according to efficacy and tolerability
 - ♦ contraindicated or cautioned in some patients (e.g. PUD, ischemic cardiac disease, pregnancy); add acetaminophen ± opioid prn for synergistic pain control
- corticosteroids
 - ♦ local
 - IA injections to control symptoms in a specific joint
 - ♦ systemic (prednisone)
 - low dose (5-10 mg/d) useful for short-term to improve symptoms if NSAIDs ineffective, to bridge gap until DMARD takes effect
 - for severe RA, low dose prednisone can be added to DMARDs
 - do baseline DEXA bone density scan and consider bone supportive pharmacologic therapy if using corticosteroids >3 mo at >7.5 mg/d
 - cautions/contraindications: active infection, TB, osteoporosis, HTN, gastric ulcer, DM

Follow-Up Management of Established RA

- follow-up every 3-6 mo, then 6-12 mo after inflammation has been suppressed
- examine joints for active inflammation – if active, consider adjusting medications, referral to specialist, PT/OT
- if assessment reveals joint damage – consider analgesia, referral to PT/OT, surgical options

Surgical Therapy

- indicated for structural joint damage
- surgical options include: synovectomy, joint replacement, joint fusion, reconstruction/tendon repair



Poor prognostic features of RA include: young age of onset, high RF titer, elevated ESR, activity of >20 joints, and presence of extra-articular features



Side Effects of Steroids

- Weight gain
- Osteoporosis
- AVN
- Cataracts, glaucoma
- PUD
- Susceptibility to infection
- Easy bruising
- Acne
- HTN
- Hyperlipidemia
- Hypokalemia, hyperglycemia
- Mood swings



Only DMARDs (not analgesics or NSAIDs) alter the course of RA



Comparison of Treatment Strategies in Early Rheumatoid Arthritis

Ann Intern Med 2007;146:406-415

Study: RCT of 508 patients comparing 4 different treatment strategies for early RA (known as the BEST trial).

Intervention:

- Group 1: Sequential Monotherapy with traditional DMARDs
- Group 2: Step-Up Combination Therapy
- Group 3: Initial Combination Therapy with prednisone (high dose)
- Group 4: Initial Combination Therapy with infliximab

Results: Patients in groups 3 and 4 responded faster and had significantly greater overall change in physical function scores after the first year of treatment. By end of the second year, groups 1 and 2 had achieved a similar response to groups 3 and 4. Groups 3 and 4 also showed significantly less radiologic progression of their disease over 2 yr than groups 1 and 2. There were no significant differences in toxicity levels between the 4 groups.

Conclusions: Initial combination therapy with prednisone or infliximab results in faster response rates. Whether faster initial response rates leads to better long-term disease outcomes has not yet been studied.



Diagnostic Criteria of SLE

MD SOAP BRAIN

Malar rash	Blood
Discoid rash	Renal
Serositis	Arthritis
Oral ulcers	Immune
ANA	Neurologic
Photosensitivity	

Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

- see [Nephrology](#), NP24 and [Dermatology](#), D38 for additional details

Definition

- chronic inflammatory multi-system disease of unknown etiology
- characterized by production of autoantibodies and diverse clinical manifestations

Table 14. Diagnostic Criteria of SLE*

Criteria	Description
CLINICAL	
Malar rash	Classic "butterfly rash", sparing of nasolabial folds, no scarring
Discoid rash	May cause scarring due to invasion of basement membrane
Photosensitivity	Skin rash in reaction to sunlight
Oral/nasal ulcers	Usually painless
Arthritis	Symmetric, involving ≥ 2 small or large peripheral joints, non-erosive
Serositis	Pleuritis or pericarditis
Neurologic disorder	Seizures or psychosis
LABORATORY	
Renal disorder	Proteinuria (>0.5 g/d or 3+) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cellular casts (RBC, Hb, granular, tubular, mixed)
Hematologic disorder	Hemolytic anemia, leukopenia, lymphopenia, thrombocytopenia
Immunologic disorder	Anti-dsDNA or anti-Sm or antiphospholipid Ab (anticardiolipin Ab, SLE anticoagulant) or false positive VDRL with 6 mo confirmatory negative
ANA	Most sensitive test (98%), not specific

*Note: "4, 7, 11" rule \rightarrow 4 (or more) out of 11 criteria (4 lab, 7 clinical) must be present, serially or simultaneously, for diagnosis American College of Rheumatology, 1997 update

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- production of autoantibodies causing multi-organ inflammation
- multi-factorial etiology
- **genetics**
 - common association with HLA-B8/DR3; ~10% have positive family history
- **estrogen**
 - pre-pubertal and post-menopausal women have similar incidence to men
 - men with SLE have higher concentration of estrogenic metabolites
- **infection**
 - viral (non-specific stimulant of immune response)
- **drug-induced**
 - anti-hypertensives (hydralazine), anti-convulsants (phenytoin), anti-arrhythmics (procainamide), isoniazid, biologics, oral contraceptive pills
 - anti-histone Ab are commonly seen in drug-induced SLE
 - symptoms resolve with discontinuation of offending drug

Epidemiology

- prevalence: 0.05% overall
- F:M = 10:1
- age of onset in reproductive yr (13-40)
- more common and severe in African Americans and Asians
- bimodal mortality pattern
 - early (within 2 yr)
 - ♦ active SLE, active nephritis, infection secondary to steroid use
 - late (>10 yr)
 - ♦ inactive SLE, inactive nephritis, atherosclerosis likely due to chronic inflammation

Signs and Symptoms

- characterized by periods of exacerbation and remission



The Safety of Infliximab, Combined with Background Treatments, among Patients with Rheumatoid Arthritis and Various Comorbidities (START)

Arthritis Rheum 2006;54:1075-1086

Study: Multicenter RCT.

Patients: 1,084 patients (mean age 52 yr, 80% female) with active moderate to severe RA despite treatment with MTX.

Intervention: Patients were randomized to receive infusions of placebo, infliximab dosed at 3 mg/kg, or infliximab dosed at 10 mg/kg at 0, 2, 6, and 14 wk, in addition to MTX.

Primary Outcome: Incidence of serious infection within 22 wk.

Results: Compared with the placebo group, the relative risk of developing serious infection at 3 mg/kg and 10 mg/kg of infliximab was 1.0 (95% CI 0.3-3.1, $p=0.995$) and 3.1 (95% CI 1.2-7.9, $p=0.013$) respectively. In addition, 31% of patients receiving infliximab at 3 mg/kg and 32% of patients receiving infliximab at 10 mg/kg were able to achieve remission at 22 wk compared with only 14% of those receiving placebo ($p<0.001$, NNT=6).

Conclusions: Therapy with infliximab 3 mg/kg does not significantly increase the risk of serious infection in patients with active moderate to severe RA already receiving MTX. However, therapy with infliximab 10 mg/kg does significantly increase the risk of serious infection in this population.



ACR 2012 Update for the Use of DMARDs in the Treatment of RA

Arthritis Care & Research 2012;64(5):625-639

Indications for initiating and switching DMARDs and biologic agents:

- In patients with early RA (<6 mo), DMARD monotherapy is recommended in the absence of poor prognostic features, DMARD combination therapy is recommended for moderate/high disease activity and poor prognostic factors, anti-TNF biologic \pm MTX is recommended for high disease activity and poor prognostic factors.
- In patients with established RA (>6 mo):
 - If disease activity progresses in 3 mo, move from monotherapy to DMARD polytherapy.
 - If disease activity remains high after 2 mo of MTX monotherapy or DMARD combination therapy, add or switch to anti-TNF biologic, abatacept, or rituximab.
 - If disease activity persists for 3 mo on anti-TNF biologic, switch to another anti-TNF biologic or non-TNF biologic.
- In patients with hepatitis C, etanercept could be potentially used; biologic agents are not recommended for untreated chronic hepatitis B patients.
- Biologic agents may be used in patients treated for solid malignancies or nonmelanoma skin cancer >5 yr ago.
- Anti-TNF agents should not be used in CHF patients with NYHA III or IV.
- Patients considered for biologic agents should be screened for latent TB infection.
- Vaccinations (pneumococcal, influenza, hepatitis B, HPV, and live attenuated VZV) should be administered prior to starting therapy with DMARDs or biologic agents.

Table 15. Symptoms of SLE

System	Symptoms
Systemic	Fatigue, malaise, weight loss, fever, lymphadenopathy
Renal	HTN, peripheral edema, glomerulonephritis, renal failure
Dermatological	Photosensitivity, malar rash, discoid rash, oral ulcers, alopecia (hair loss), purpura, panniculitis (inflammation of subcutaneous fat and muscle tissue), urticaria
Musculoskeletal	Polyarthralgias, polyarthritis, myalgias, AVN; reducible deformities of hand = Jaccoud's arthritis
Ophthalmic	Keratoconjunctivitis sicca, episcleritis, scleritis, cytooid bodies (cotton wool exudates on fundoscopy = infarction of nerve cell layer of retina)
Cardiac	Pericarditis, CAD, non-bacterial endocarditis (Libman-Sachs) Note: SLE is an independent risk factor for atherosclerosis and CAD
Vascular	Raynaud's phenomenon, livedo reticularis (mottled discoloration of skin due to narrowing of blood vessels, characteristic lacy or net-like appearance), thrombosis, vasculitis
Respiratory	Pleuritis, interstitial lung disease, pulmonary HTN, PE, alveolar hemorrhage
Gastrointestinal	Pancreatitis, SLE enteropathy, hepatitis, hepatomegaly
Neurologic	H/A, depression, psychosis, seizures, cerebritis, transverse myelitis, peripheral neuropathy, stroke

Investigations

- blood work: ANA (sensitivity 98%, but poor specificity → used as a screening test, ANA titres are not useful to follow disease course)
- anti-dsDNA and anti-Sm are specific (95-99%)
- anti-dsDNA titer and serum complement (C3, C4) are useful to monitor treatment response in patients who are clinically and serologically concordant
 - anti-dsDNA increases and C3 and C4 decrease with disease activity
- antiphospholipid Ab (anti-cardiolipin Ab and SLE anticoagulant), may cause increased risk of clotting and increased aPTT

Treatment

- **goals of therapy**
 - treat early and avoid long-term steroid use, if unavoidable see [Endocrinology, E42](#) for osteoporosis management
 - if high doses of steroids necessary for long-term control, add steroid-sparing agents and taper when possible
 - treatment is tailored to organ system involved and severity of disease
 - all medications used to treat SLE require periodic monitoring for potential toxicity
- **dermatologic**
 - sunscreen, avoid UV light and estrogens
 - topical steroids, hydroxychloroquine
- **musculoskeletal**
 - NSAIDs ± gastroprotective agent for arthritis (also beneficial for pleuritis and pericarditis)
 - hydroxychloroquine improves long-term control and prevents flares
 - bisphosphonates, calcium, vitamin D to combat osteoporosis
- **organ-threatening disease**
 - high-dose oral prednisone or IV methylprednisolone in severe disease
 - steroid-sparing agents: azathioprine, MTX, mycophenolate
 - IV cyclophosphamide for serious organ involvement (e.g. cerebritis or SLE nephritis)



Radiographically, the arthritis of SLE is non-erosive (unlike RA)



Consider SLE in a patient who has involvement of 2 or more organ systems

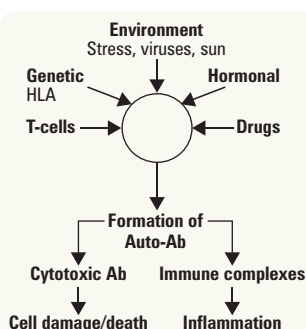


Figure 7. Multi-factorial etiology of SLE



Drug-Induced SLE

Often presents atypically with systemic features and serositis; usually associated with anti-histone Ab



Raynaud's Phenomenon

Vasospastic disorder characteristically causing discoloration of fingers and toes (white → blue → red)
Classic triggers: cold and emotional stress



Manifestations of APLA

- Thromboembolic events
- Spontaneous abortions
- Thrombocytopenia
- Associated with livedo reticularis, migraine headaches



Arterial and venous thrombosis are usually mutually exclusive

Antiphospholipid Antibody Syndrome

Definition

- multi-system vasculopathy manifested by recurrent thromboembolic events, spontaneous abortions, and thrombocytopenia
- often presents with migraine-type headaches
- circulating antiphospholipid autoantibodies interfere with coagulation cascade
- **primary APLA**: occurs in the absence of other disease
- **secondary APLA**: occurs in the setting of a connective tissue disease (including SLE), malignancy, drugs (hydralazine, procainamide, phenytoin, interferon, quinidine), and infections (HIV, TB, hepatitis C, infectious mononucleosis)
- **catastrophic APLA**: development within 1 wk of small vessel thrombotic occlusion in ≥3 organ systems with positive antiphospholipid Ab (high mortality)

Table 16. Classification Criteria of APLA*

Criteria	Description
CLINICAL	
Vascular thrombosis	Arterial: stroke/TIA, multi-infarct dementia, MI, valvular incompetence, limb ischemia Venous: DVT, PE, renal and retinal vein thrombosis Must be confirmed by imaging or histopathology
Pregnancy morbidity	Fetal death (>10 wk GA), recurrent spontaneous abortions (<10 wk GA) or premature birth (<34 wk GA)
LABORATORY	
Labs must be positive on 2 occasions, at least 12 wk apart	
SLE anticoagulant	
Anti-cardiolipin Ab	IgG and/or IgM
Anti- β_2 glycoprotein-I Ab	IgG and/or IgM

*1 clinical and 1 laboratory criteria must be present for diagnosis
J Thromb Haemost 2006;4:295-306

Signs and Symptoms

- see clinical criteria in Table 16
- hematologic
 - thrombocytopenia, hemolytic anemia, neutropenia
- dermatologic
 - livedo reticularis, Raynaud's phenomenon, purpura, leg ulcers, and gangrene

Treatment

- thrombosis
 - lifelong anti-coagulation with warfarin
 - target INR 2.0-3.0 for first venous event, >3.0 for recurrent and/or arterial event
- recurrent fetal loss
 - heparin/low molecular weight heparin \pm Aspirin® during pregnancy
- catastrophic APLA
 - high-dose steroids, anti-coagulation, cyclophosphamide, plasmapheresis



A Systematic Review of Secondary Thromboprophylaxis in Patients with Antiphospholipid Ab

Arthritis Rheum 2007;57:1487-11495

Study: Review of RCTs, prospective and retrospective cohort studies, and subgroup analysis ($n > 15$) that focused on the secondary thromboprophylaxis in patients with antiphospholipid Ab (aPL) were selected.

Results: Sixteen studies were selected. Patients with venous events and a single test for aPL showed a low recurrence rate while receiving oral anti-coagulation at a target INR of 2.0-3.0. Patients with stroke and a single positive aPL test had no increased risk compared with those without aPL. Recurrence rates in patients with definite APLA and previous venous thromboembolism were lower than in patients with arterial and/or recurrent events, both with and without therapy. Only 3.8% of recurrent events occurred at an actual INR >3.0. Mortality due to recurrent thrombosis was higher than mortality due to bleeding (18 patients vs. 1 patient reported).

Conclusion: For patients with definite APLA, the authors recommend prolonged warfarin therapy at a target INR of 2.0-3.0 in APLA patients with first venous events and >3.0 for those with recurrent and/or arterial events. For patients with venous thromboembolism or stroke and a single positive aPL test, the authors recommend further testing to determine if they have a persisting Ab. If they do not, the same therapy as for the general population should be used (warfarin at a target INR of 2.0-3.0 and low-dose Aspirin®, respectively).



Scleroderma

Definition

- a non-inflammatory autoimmune disorder characterized by widespread small vessel vasculopathy and fibrosis

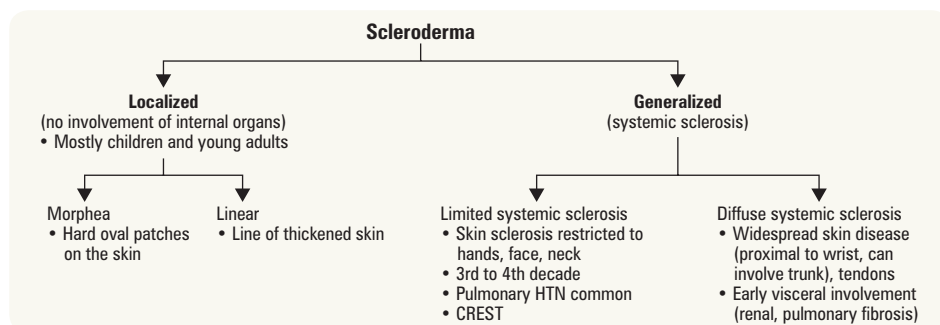


Figure 8. Forms of scleroderma

Table 17. Classification Criteria of Systemic Sclerosis*

Criteria	Description
Major	
Scleroderma proximal to MCPs	Skin tightness, thickening, non-pitting induration
Minor	
Sclerodactyly	Skin changes limited to digits
Digital pitting scars or loss of substance from finger pad	
Bibasilar pulmonary fibrosis	

*Diagnosed if 1 major or 2 minor criteria must be present
 American Rheumatism Association, 1980

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- idiopathic vasculopathy (not vasculitis) leading to atrophy and fibrosis of tissues
 - intimal proliferation and media mucinous degeneration \rightarrow progressive obliteration of vessel lumen \rightarrow fibrotic tissue
 - resembles malignant HTN



CREST Syndrome

Calcinosis: calcium deposits on skin
Raynaud's phenomenon

Esophageal dysfunction: acid reflux

Sclerodactyly: tightening of skin on digits

Telangiectasia: superficial dilated blood vessels

Epidemiology

- F:M = 3-4:1, peaking in 5th and 6th decades
- associated with HLA-DR1
- associated with environmental exposure (silica, epoxy resins, toxic oil, aromatic hydrocarbons, polyvinyl chloride)
- limited systemic sclerosis has a higher survival prognosis (>70% at 10 yr) than diffuse systemic sclerosis (40-60% at 10 yr)

Signs and Symptoms

Table 18. Clinical Manifestations of Scleroderma

System	Features
Dermatologic	Painless non-pitting edema → skin tightening Ulcerations, calcinosis, periungual erythema, hypo/hyperpigmentation, pruritus, telangiectasias Characteristic face: mask-like facies with tight lips, beak nose, radial perioral furrows
Vascular	Raynaud's phenomenon → digital pits, gangrene
Gastrointestinal (~90%)	Distal esophageal hypomotility → dysphagia Loss of lower esophageal sphincter function → GERD, ulcerations, strictures Small bowel hypomotility → bacterial overgrowth, diarrhea, bloating, cramps, malabsorption, weight loss Large bowel hypomotility → wide mouth diverticuli are pathognomonic radiographic finding on barium study
Renal	Mild proteinuria, Cr elevation, HTN "Scleroderma renal crisis" (10-15%) may lead to malignant arterial HTN, oliguria, and microangiopathic hemolytic anemia
Pulmonary	Interstitial fibrosis, pulmonary HTN, pleurisy, pleural effusions
Cardiac	Left ventricular dysfunction, pericarditis, pericardial effusion, arrhythmias
Musculoskeletal	Polyarthralgias "Resorption of distal tufts" (radiological finding) Proximal weakness 2° to disuse, atrophy, low grade myopathy
Endocrine	Hypothyroidism

Investigations

- blood work
 - CBC, Cr, ANA
 - anti-topoisomerase 1/anti-Scl-70: specific but not sensitive for diffuse systemic sclerosis
 - anti-centromere: favors diagnosis of CREST (limited systemic sclerosis)
- PFT
 - assess for pulmonary HTN or interstitial lung disease
- imaging
 - CXR for fibrosis, echo for pulmonary HTN

Treatment

- dermatologic
 - good skin hygiene
 - low-dose prednisone (>20 mg may provoke renal crisis if susceptible), MTX (limited evidence)
- vascular
 - patient education on cold avoidance
 - vasodilators (CCBs, local nitroglycerine cream, systemic PGE₂ inhibitors, PDE5 inhibitors)
- gastrointestinal
 - GERD: PPIs are first line, then H₂-receptor agonists
 - small bowel bacterial overgrowth: broad spectrum antibiotics (tetracycline, metronidazole)
- renal disease
 - ACE inhibitors for hypertensive crisis
- pulmonary
 - early interstitial disease: cyclophosphamide
 - pulmonary HTN: vasodilators e.g. bosentan (Tracleer®), epoprostenol (Flolan®), PDE5 inhibitors
- cardiac
 - pericarditis: systemic steroids
- musculoskeletal
 - arthritis: NSAIDs
 - myositis: systemic steroids



Raynaud's Phenomenon DDx

COLD HAND

Cryoglobulins/Cryofibrinogens
Obstruction/Occupational
SLE erythematosus, other connective tissue disease
Diabetes mellitus/Drugs
Hematologic problems (polycythemia, leukemia, etc.)
Arterial problems (atherosclerosis)/
Anorexia nervosa
Neurologic problems (vascular tone)
Disease of unknown origin (idiopathic)



Scleroderma is the most common cause of secondary Raynaud's phenomenon



Lung disease is the most common cause of morbidity and mortality



Features of Pathologic Raynaud's Syndrome

- New onset
- Asymmetric
- Precipitated by stimuli other than cold or emotion
- Associated with distal pulp pitting or tissue reabsorption
- Digit ischemia
- Capillary dilatation by capillaroscopy

Idiopathic Inflammatory Myopathy



Definition

- autoimmune diseases characterized by proximal muscle weakness \pm pain
- muscle becomes damaged by a non-suppurative lymphocytic inflammatory process
- classification
 - PM/DMM
 - adult and juvenile form
 - associated with malignancy
 - ♦ increased risk of malignancy: age >50, DMM>PM, normal CK, refractory disease
 - ♦ 2.4-6.5 fold increased risk of underlying malignancy usually in internal organs
 - associated with other connective tissue disease, Raynaud's phenomenon, autoimmune disorders
 - inclusion body myositis
 - ♦ age >50, M>F, slowly progressive, vacuoles in cells on biopsy
 - ♦ suspect when patient unresponsive to treatment
 - ♦ distal as well as proximal muscle weakness
 - ♦ muscle biopsy positive for inclusion bodies

POLYMYOSITIS/DERMATOMYOSITIS

Table 19. Classification Criteria for PM/DMM

Criteria	Description
1. Symmetric proximal muscle weakness	Typical involvement of shoulder girdle and hip girdle
2. Elevated muscle enzymes	\uparrow CK, aldolase, LDH, AST, ALT
3. EMG changes	Short polyphasic motor units, high frequency repetitive discharge, insertional irritability
4. Muscle biopsy	Segmental fiber necrosis, basophilic regeneration, perivascular inflammation (DMM), endomysial inflammation (PM) and atrophy
5. Typical rash of dermatomyositis	Required for diagnosis of DMM (see below)

NEJM 1975;292:403-407

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- PM is CD8 cell-mediated muscle necrosis, found in adults
- DMM is B-cell and CD4 immune complex-mediated peri-fascicular vascular abnormalities

Signs and Symptoms

- progressive symmetrical proximal muscle weakness (shoulder and hip) developing over weeks to months
 - difficulty lifting head off pillow, arising from chair, climbing stairs
- dermatological
 - DMM has characteristic dermatological features (F>M, children and adults)
 - ♦ Gottron's papules
 - pink-violaceous, flat-topped papules overlying the dorsal surface of the interphalangeal joints
 - ♦ Gottron's sign
 - erythematous, smooth or scaly patches over the dorsal IPs, MCPs, elbows, knees, or medial malleoli
 - ♦ heliotrope rash: violaceous rash over the eyelids; usually with edema
 - ♦ shawl sign: erythematous rash over neck, upper chest, and shoulders
 - ♦ mechanic's hands: dark, dry, thick scale on palmar and lateral surface of digits
 - ♦ periungual erythema
- cardiac
 - dysrhythmias, CHF, conduction defect, ventricular hypertrophy, pericarditis
- gastrointestinal
 - oropharyngeal and lower esophageal dysphagia, reflux
- pulmonary
 - weakness of respiratory muscles, interstitial lung disease, aspiration pneumonia



Signs of DMM

Gottron's papules and Gottron's sign are pathognomonic of DMM (occur in 70% of patients)



Investigations

- blood work: CK, ANA, anti-Jo-1 (DMM), anti-Mi-2, anti-SRP
- imaging: MRI may be used to localize biopsy site
- EMG, muscle biopsy

Treatment

- non-pharmacological: physical therapy and occupational therapy
- pharmacological treatment
 - high-dose corticosteroid (1-2 mg/kg/d) and slow taper
 - add immunosuppressive agents (azathioprine, MTX, cyclosporine)
 - intravenous immunoglobulin if severe or refractory
 - hydroxychloroquine for DMM rash

- malignancy surveillance
 - detailed history and physical (breast, pelvic, and rectal exam)
 - CXR, abdominal and pelvic U/S, fecal occult blood, Pap test, mammogram ± CT scan (thoracic, abdominal, pelvic)


Malignancies Associated with DMM

- Breast
- Lung
- Colon
- Ovarian

Sjögren's Syndrome

Definition

- autoimmune condition characterized by dry eyes (keratoconjunctivitis sicca/xerophthalmia) and dry mouth (xerostomia), caused by lymphocytic infiltration of salivary and lacrimal glands
- may evolve into systemic disorder with diminished exocrine gland activity in respiratory tract and skin
- primary and secondary form (associated with RA, SLE, DMM, and HIV)
- incidence estimated at 4/100,000 people
- 90% of cases are among females
- mean age of diagnosis is 40-60 yr

Table 20. Classification Criteria for SS*

Criteria	Comments
1. Dry eye symptoms	Dry >3 mo, foreign body sensation, or requiring tear substitutes
2. Dry mouth symptoms	Dry >3 mo, swollen salivary glands, or requiring liquids to swallow food
3. Dry eye signs	Schirmer test (to assess tear flow) or slit lamp exam with Rose Bengal stain
4. Dry mouth signs	Low salivary flow, sialography
5. Salivary gland biopsy	Focal lymphocytic sialoadenitis
6. Autoantibodies	anti-Ro and/or anti-La, ANA, RF

*Diagnosed if 4 of the above criteria present, one of which includes salivary gland biopsy or autoantibodies
Ann Rheum Dis 2002;61:554-558

Signs and Symptoms

- "sicca complex": dry eyes (keratoconjunctivitis sicca/xerophthalmia), dry mouth (xerostomia)
- staphylococcus blepharitis
- dental caries, oral candidiasis, angular cheilitis (inflammation and fissuring at the labial commissures of the mouth)
- systemic complications
 - sinusitis, autoimmune thyroid dysfunction
 - arthralgias, arthritis
 - subclinical diffuse interstitial lung disease, xerotrachea leading to chronic dry cough
 - renal disease, glomerulonephritis
 - palpable purpura, vasculitis
 - peripheral neuropathy
 - lymphoma risk greatly increased

Treatment

- ocular
 - artificial tears or surgical punctal occlusion for dry eyes
- oral
 - good dental hygiene, hydration
 - agents that stimulate salivary flow (e.g. pilocarpine)
 - topical nystatin or clotrimazole x 4-6 wk for oral candidiasis
- systemic
 - e.g. hydroxychloroquine, corticosteroids


Classic Triad (identifies 93% of Sjögren's patients)

- Dry eyes
- Dry mouth (xerostomia) → dysphagia
- Arthritis (small joint, asymmetrical, non-erosive) but may be associated with RA, in which case, the arthritis is erosive



Patients with Sjögren's syndrome are at higher risk of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma

Mixed Connective Tissue Disease

- syndrome with features of 3 different connective tissue diseases (e.g. SLE, scleroderma, PM)
- common symptoms: Raynaud's phenomenon, swollen fingers
- blood work: anti-RNP (see Table 10)
- treatment is generally guided by the severity of symptoms and organ system involvement
- prognosis
 - 50-60% will evolve into SLE
 - 40% will evolve into scleroderma
 - only 10% will remain as MCTD for the rest of their lives
 - cardiac involvement (dysrhythmia) common, renal or lung involvement rare

Overlap Syndrome

- syndrome with sufficient diagnostic features of 2+ different connective tissue diseases

Vasculitides

- inflammation and subsequent necrosis of blood vessels leading to tissue ischemia or infarction
- any organ system can be involved
- keys to diagnosis
 - clinical suspicion: suspect in cases of unexplained multiple organ ischemia or systemic illness with no evidence of malignancy or infection
 - labs non-specific: anemia, increased WBC and ESR, abnormal U/A
 - biopsy if tissue accessible
 - angiography if tissue inaccessible
- treatment generally involves corticosteroids and/or immunosuppressive agents

Table 21. Classification of Vasculitis and Characteristic Features

Classification	Characteristic Features
SMALL VESSEL	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Non-ANCA-Associated <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Predominantly cutaneous vasculitis Henoch-Schönlein purpura (see Pediatrics, P96) Essential cryoglobulinemic vasculitis ANCA-Associated <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Granulomatosis with polyangiitis (GPA, formerly Wegener's) pR3 (c-ANCA) > MPO (p-ANCA) Eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis (Churg-Strauss syndrome) (50% ANCA positive) Microangiopathic polyangiitis (70% ANCA positive, usually MPO) 	<p>Immune complex-mediated (most common mechanism)</p> <p>Also known as hypersensitivity/leukocytoclastic vasculitis</p> <p>Vascular deposition of IgA causing systemic vasculitis (skin, GI, renal), usually self-limiting; most common in childhood</p> <p>Systemic vasculitis caused by circulating cryoproteins forming immune complexes; may be associated with underlying infection (e.g. hepatitis C) or connective tissue disease</p> <p>Granulomatous inflammation of vessels of respiratory tract and kidneys, initially have URTI symptoms; most common in middle age</p> <p>Granulomatous inflammation of vessels with hypereosinophilia and eosinophilic tissue infiltration, frequent lung involvement (asthma, allergic rhinitis), can be associated with MPO or pR3, other manifestations include coronary arteritis, myocarditis and neuropathy, average age 40s</p> <p>Pauci-immune necrotizing vasculitis, affecting kidneys (necrotizing glomerulonephritis), lungs (capillaritis and alveolar hemorrhage), skin, most common in middle age</p>
MEDIUM VESSEL	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Polyarteritis nodosa Kawasaki disease (see Pediatrics, P96) 	<p>Segmental, non-granulomatous necrotizing inflammation</p> <p>Unknown etiology in most cases, any age (average 40-50s), M>F</p> <p>Arteritis and mucocutaneous lymph node syndrome</p>
LARGE VESSEL	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GCA/Temporal arteritis Takayasu's arteritis 	<p>Inflammation predominantly of the aorta and arteries originating from it > 50 yr of age, F>M</p> <p>"Pulseless disease", unequal peripheral pulses, chronic inflammation, most often the aorta and its branches</p> <p>Usually young adults of Asian descent, F>M; risk of aortic aneurysm</p>
OTHER VASCULITIDES	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buerger's disease ("Thromboangiitis Obliterans") Behçet's disease Vasculitis mimicry 	<p>Inflammation secondary to pathological clotting, affects small and medium-sized vessels of distal extremities, may lead to distal claudication and gangrene, most important etiologic factor is cigarette smoking</p> <p>Most common in young Asian males</p> <p>Leukocytoclastic vasculitis, multi-system disorder presenting with ocular involvement (uveitis), recurrent oral and genital ulceration, venous thrombosis, skin and joint involvement, more common in Mediterranean and Asia, average age 30s, M>F</p> <p>Cholesterol emboli, atrial myxoma</p>



c-ANCA: circulating anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic Ab associated with anti-pR3

p-ANCA: perinuclear anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic Ab associated with multiple antigens, e.g. lactoferrin (IBD), myeloperoxidase (microscopic polyangiitis)



Features of Small Vessel Vasculitis

- Palpable purpura
- Vesicles
- Chronic urticaria
- Superficial ulcers



Churg-Strauss Triad

- Allergic rhinitis and asthma (often quiescent at time of vasculitis)
- Eosinophilic infiltrative disease resembling pneumonia
- Systemic vasculitis often mononeuritis multiplex/peripheral neuropathy and peripheral eosinophilia



Features of Medium Vessel Vasculitis

- Livedo reticularis
- Erythema nodosum
- Raynaud's phenomenon
- Nodules
- Digital infarcts
- Ulcers

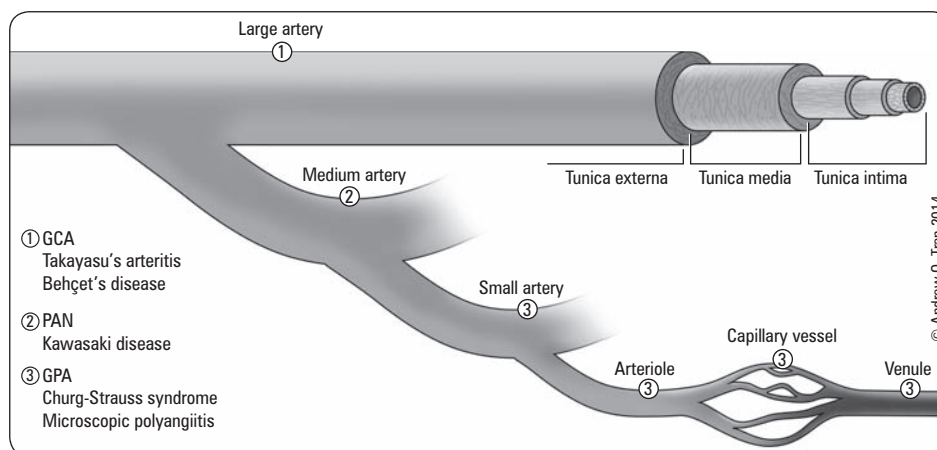


Figure 9. Classification of vasculitides by vessel size

Small Vessel Non-ANCA Associated Vasculitis

PREDOMINANTLY CUTANEOUS VASCULITIS

- subdivided into
 - drug-induced vasculitis
 - serum sickness reaction
 - vasculitis associated with other underlying primary diseases

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- cutaneous vasculitis following
 - drug exposure (allopurinol, gold, sulfonamides, penicillin, phenytoin)
 - viral or bacterial infection
 - idiopathic causes
- small vessels involved (post-capillary vessels most frequently)
- usually causes a leukocytoclastic vasculitis: debris from neutrophils around vessels
- sometimes due to cryoglobulins which precipitate in cold temperatures

Signs and Symptoms

- palpable purpura ± vesicles and ulceration, urticaria, macules, papules, bullae, subcutaneous nodules
 - renal or joint involvement may occur, especially in children

Investigations

- vascular involvement (both arteriole and venule) established by skin biopsy

Treatment

- stop possible offending drug
- corticosteroids ± immunosuppressive agents
- usually self-limiting

Small Vessel ANCA-Associated Vasculitis

GRANULOMATOSIS WITH POLYANGIITIS (GPA, formerly known as Wegener's Granulomatosis)

Definition

- granulomatous inflammation of vessels that may affect the upper airways (rhinitis, sinusitis), lungs (pulmonary nodules, infiltrates), and kidneys (glomerulonephritis, renal failure)
- highly associated with c-ANCA
- incidence 5 per 100,000; more common in Northern latitudes

Table 22. Classification Criteria for GPA*

Criteria	Description
1. Nasal or oral involvement	Inflammation, ulcers, epistaxis
2. Abnormal findings on CXR	Nodules, cavitations, etc.
3. Urinary sediment	Microscopic hematuria ± RBC casts
4. Biopsy of involved tissue	Lungs show granulomas, kidneys show necrotizing segmental glomerulonephritis

*Diagnosed if 2 or more of the above 4 criteria present
American College of Rheumatology, 1990

Etiology

- pathogenesis depends on genetic susceptibility and environmental triggers (e.g. infection)
 - dysregulated immune response due to loss of B and T-cell tolerance
 - acute vascular injury mediated by neutrophils and monocytes

Signs and Symptoms

- systemic
 - malaise, fever, weakness, weight loss
- HEENT
 - sinusitis or rhinitis, nasal crusting and bloody nasal discharge, nasoseptal perforation, saddle nose deformity
 - proptosis due to: inflammation/vasculitis involving extra-ocular muscles, granulomatous retrobulbar space occupying lesions or direct extension of masses from the upper respiratory tract
 - hearing loss due to involvement of CN VIII
- pulmonary
 - cough, hemoptysis, granulomatous upper respiratory tract masses
- renal
 - hematuria
- other
 - joint, skin, eye complaints, vasculitic neuropathy

Investigations

- blood work: anemia (normal MCV), increased WBC, increased Cr, increased ESR, elevated platelet count, ANCA (PR3 > MPO)
- U/A: proteinuria, hematuria, RBC casts
- CXR: pneumonitis, lung nodules, infiltrations, cavitary lesions
- biopsy: renal (segmental necrotizing glomerulonephritis), lung (granulomas, tracheobronchial erosion)
- possible decline in c-ANCA and ESR used to monitor response to treatment in some patients

Treatment

- prednisone 1 mg/kg/d PO for 3-6 mo ± cyclophosphamide 2 mg/kg/d PO for 3-6 mo followed by high dose MTX (20-25 mg PO/SC weekly) or azathioprine (2 mg/kg/d PO OD)
- consider biologic agents (rituximab, IVIg) and plasmapheresis (PEXIVAS trial)
- RAVE trial (*NEJM* 2010;363:221-232): rituximab equivalent or superior to cyclophosphamide in severe or relapsing disease



Classic Features

- Necrotizing granulomatous vasculitis of lower and upper respiratory tract
- Focal segmental glomerulonephritis

Medium Vessel Vasculitis

POLYARTERITIS NODOSA

Definition

- systemic, necrotizing vasculitis of medium sized vessels
- ANCA negative
- often associated with hepatitis B positivity
- incidence 0.7 per 100,000; affects individuals between 40-60 yr; M:F = 2:1

Table 23. Classification Criteria for PAN*

Criteria	Description
1. Weight loss	>4 kg, not due to dieting or other factors
2. Myalgias, weakness, or leg tenderness	Diffuse myalgias or weakness
3. Livedo reticularis	Mottled, reticular pattern over skin
4. Neuropathy	Mononeuropathy, mononeuropathy multiplex, or polyneuropathy
5. Testicular pain or tenderness	Not due to infection, trauma, or other causes
6. dBP >90 mmHg	Development of HTN with dBP >90 mmHg
7. Elevated Cr or BUN	Cr >130 µmol/L (1.5 mg/dL), BUN >14.3 mmol/L (40 mg/dL)
8. Hepatitis B positive	Presence of hepatitis B surface antigen or Ab
9. Arteriographic abnormality	Commonly aneurysms
10. Biopsy of artery	Presence of granulocytes and/or mononuclear leukocytes in the artery wall

*Diagnosed if 3 or more of the above 10 criteria present
American College of Rheumatology, 1990



There is an association between hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg) positivity and PAN



Consider PAN in a non-diabetic patient with mononeuritis multiplex

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- focal panmural necrotizing inflammatory lesions in small and medium-sized arteries
- thrombosis, aneurysm, or dilatation at lesion site may occur
- healed lesions show proliferation of fibrous tissue and endothelial cells that may lead to luminal occlusion

Investigations

- blood work: CBC, ESR, Cr, BUN, p-ANCA, hepatitis B serology
- imaging: angiography
- arterial biopsy

Treatment

- prednisone 1 mg/kg/d PO and cyclophosphamide 2 mg/kg/d PO
- ± anti-viral therapy to enhance clearance of hepatitis B virus

Large Vessel Vasculitis

- see [Neurology, N44](#) and [Ophthalmology, OP38](#) for more details

GCA/TEMPORAL ARTERITIS

Table 24. Classification Criteria for GCA*

Criteria	Description
1. Age at onset ≥50	
2. New headache	Often temporal
3. Temporal artery abnormality	Temporal artery tenderness or decreased pulsations, not due to arteriosclerosis
4. Elevated ESR	ESR ≥50 mm/h
5. Abnormal artery biopsy	Mononuclear cell infiltration or granulomatous inflammation, usually with multinucleated giant cells

*Diagnosed if 3 or more of the above 5 criteria present
American College of Rheumatology, 1990

Epidemiology

- most frequent vasculitis in North America
- patients >50 yr
- F:M = 2:1
- North-South gradient (predominance in Northern Europe/US)
- affects extracranial arteries

Signs and Symptoms

- new onset temporal headache ± scalp tenderness due to inflammation of involved portion of the temporal or occipital arteries
- sudden, painless loss of vision and/or diplopia due to narrowing of the ophthalmic or posterior ciliary arteries (PCA more common); can affect both eyes
- tongue and jaw claudication (pain in muscles of mastication on prolonged chewing)
- PMR (proximal myalgia, constitutional symptoms, elevated ESR) occurs in 30% of patients
- aortic arch syndrome (involvement of subclavian and brachial branches of aorta result in pulseless disease), aortic aneurysm ± rupture are late complications

Investigations

- diagnosis made by clinical suspicion, increased ESR, increased CRP, temporal artery biopsy within 14 d of starting steroids, possible U/S

Treatment

- if suspect GCA, immediately start high dose prednisone 1 mg/kg in divided doses for approximately 4 wk, and then tapering prednisone as symptoms resolve; highly effective in treatment and in prevention of blindness and other vascular complications
- consider low dose ASA

Prognosis

- increased risk of thoracic aortic aneurysm and aortic dissection
- yearly CXR ± abdominal U/S as screening



GCA Criteria
Presence of 3 or more criteria yields sensitivity of 94%, specificity of 91%



Medical Emergency
Untreated, GCA can lead to permanent blindness in 20-25% of patients; treat on clinical suspicion

SERONEGATIVE RHEUMATIC DISEASE

Spondyloarthropathies

Table 25. A Comparison of the Spondyloarthropathies (inflammatory joint disease of the vertebral column)

Feature	AS	PsA	ReA	EA
M:F	3:1	1:1	8:1	1:1
Age of Onset	20s	35-45	20s	Any
Peripheral Arthritis	25%	96%	90%	Common
Distribution	Axial, LE	Any	LE	LE
Sacroiliitis	100%	40%	80%	20%
Dactylitis	Uncommon	Common	Occasional	Uncommon
Enthesitis	Common	Common	Common	Less Common
Skin Lesions	Rare	100% Psoriasis eventually 70% at onset of arthritis	Common Keratoderma	Occasional Pyoderma, erythema nodosum
Uveitis	Common	Occasional	20%	Rare
Urethritis	Rare	Uncommon	Common	Rare
HLA-B27	90%	40%	80%	30%

LE = lower extremities

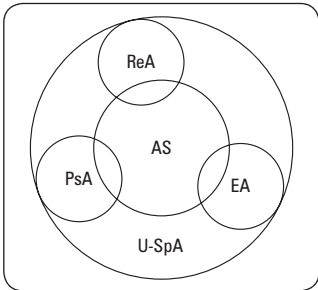


Figure 10. Spondyloarthropathy subsets (U-SpA = undifferentiated spondyloarthropathy)

Ankylosing Spondylitis

Definition

- chronic inflammatory arthritis involving the sacroiliac joints and vertebrae
- AS in women: more peripheral arthritis and upper spine spondylitis
- prototype of the spondyloarthropathies

Table 26. ASAS Classification Criteria for Axial Spondyloarthritis*

Sacroiliitis on imaging plus ≥1 AS feature or HLA-B27 positive plus ≥2 AS features	
AS features: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Inflammatory back pain• Arthritis• Enthesitis (heel)• Uveitis• Dactylitis• Psoriasis• Crohn's disease/colitis• Good response to NSAIDs• Family history of AS• HLA-B27 positive• Elevated CRP	Sacroiliitis on imaging: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Active (acute) inflammation on MRI highly suggestive of sacroiliitis associated with AS• Definite radiographic sacroiliitis ≥ grade 2 bilaterally or grade 3-4 unilaterally

*For patients with ≥3 mo back pain and age at onset <45 yr

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- enthesitis (inflammation of tendon or ligament at site of attachment to bone)
- inflammation → osteopenia → erosion → ossification → osteoproliferation (syndesmophytes)

Epidemiology

- M:F = 5:1; females have milder disease which may be under-recognized
- 95% of patients have HLA-B27 (9% HLA-B27 positive in general population)

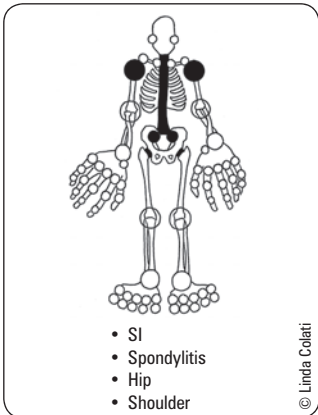


Figure 11. Common sites of involvement of AS



Rule of 2s
AS occurs in
0.2% of the general population
2% of HLA-B27 positive individuals
20% of HLA-B27 positive individuals with affected family member

Table 27. Types of Back Pain

Parameter	Mechanical	Inflammatory
Past History	±	++
Family History	–	+
Onset	Acute	Insidious
Age	15-90 yr	<40 yr
Sleep Disturbance	±	++ (worse during 2nd half of night)
Morning Stiffness	<30 min	>1 h
Involvement of Other Systems	–	+
Exercise	Worse	Better
Rest	Better	Worse
Radiation of Pain	Anatomic (L5-S1)	Diffuse (thoracic, buttock)
Sensory Symptoms	+	–
Motor Symptoms	+	–

Signs and Symptoms

- **axial**
 - mid and lower back stiffness, prolonged morning stiffness, night pain, persistent buttock pain, painful sacroiliac joint (+ Faber test)
 - spinal restriction (decreased ROM): lumbar (decreased Schöber), thoracic (decreased chest wall expansion, normal >5 cm at T4), cervical (global decrease, often extension first)
 - postural changes: decreased lumbar lordosis + increased thoracic kyphosis + increased cervical flexion = increased occiput to wall distance (>5 cm)
- **peripheral**
 - asymmetrical large joint arthritis, most often involving lower limb
 - enthesitis: tenderness over tibial tuberosity, or Achilles tendon and plantar fascia insertions into the calcaneus
- **extra-articular manifestations**
 - ophthalmic: acute anterior uveitis is common (25-30% patients)
 - renal: amyloidosis (late and rare) and IgA nephropathy
 - gastrointestinal: IBD
 - cardiac: aortitis, aortic regurgitation, pericarditis, conduction disturbances, heart failure (rare)
 - respiratory: apical fibrosis (rare)
 - neurologic: cauda equina syndrome (rare)
 - skin: psoriasis

Investigations

- x-ray of SI joint: “pseudowidening” of joint due to erosion with joint sclerosis → bony fusion (late), symmetric sacroiliitis
- x-ray of spine: “squaring of edges” from erosion and sclerosis on corners of vertebral bodies (shiny corner sign) leading to ossification of outer fibers of annulus fibrosis (bridging syndesmophytes) → “bamboo spine” radiographically
- MRI of spine: assess activity in early disease; detection of cartilage changes, bone marrow edema, bone erosions, and subchondral bone changes. Best seen on T2 STIR images (suppress fat and see bone edema)

Treatment

- **conservative/non-pharmacologic**
 - prevent fusion from poor posture and disability through: exercise (e.g. swimming), postural and deep breathing exercises, outpatient PT, smoking cessation
- **medical**
 - NSAIDs (first line of treatment)
 - glucocorticoids (topical eye drops, local injections)
 - DMARDs for peripheral arthritis (sulfasalazine, MTX)
 - biologics for axial and peripheral involvement
 - manage extra-articular manifestations
- **surgical**
 - hip replacement, vertebral osteotomy for marked deformity

Prognosis

- spontaneous remissions and relapses are common and can occur at any age
- function may be excellent despite spinal deformity
- favorable prognosis if female and age of onset >40 yr
- early onset with hip disease may lead to severe disability; may require arthroplasty



Extra-Articular Manifestations of AS

6 As

Atlanto-axial subluxation
Anterior uveitis
Apical lung fibrosis
Aortic incompetence
Amyloidosis (kidneys)
Autoimmune bowel disease (UC)



Consider AS in the differential for causes of aortic regurgitation



The Bath Ankylosing Spondylitis Disease Activity Index (BASDAI) is a self-reported scoring system that focuses on fatigue, axial pain, peripheral pain, enthesitis, and morning stiffness

Enteropathic Arthritis

- see [Gastroenterology](#), *Inflammatory Bowel Disease*, G19
- MSK manifestations in the setting of either ulcerative colitis or Crohn's disease include peripheral arthritis (large joint, asymmetrical), spondylitis, and hypertrophic osteoarthropathy
- non-arthritic MSK manifestations can occur 2° to steroid treatment of bowel inflammation (arthralgia, myalgia, osteoporosis, AVN)
- NSAIDs should be used cautiously as they may exacerbate bowel disease

Table 28. Comparing Features of Spondylitis vs. Peripheral Arthritis in EA

Parameter	Spondylitis	Peripheral Arthritis
HLA-B27 Association	Yes	No
Gender	M>F	M=F
Onset Before IBD	Yes	No
Parallels IBD Course	No	Yes
Type of IBD	UC=CD	CD



Both AS and EA feature symmetric sacroiliitis

Psoriatic Arthritis

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- unclear but many genetic, immunologic, and some environmental factors involved (e.g. psoriatic plaque flora, particularly Group A *Streptococcus*, and trauma)

Epidemiology

- psoriasis affects 1% of population
- arthropathy in 10% of patients with psoriasis
- 15-20% of patients will develop joint disease before skin lesions appear

Signs and Symptoms

- **dermatologic**
 - well-demarcated erythematous plaques with silvery scale
 - nail involvement: pitting, transverse or longitudinal ridging, discoloration, subungual hyperkeratosis, onycholysis, and oil drops
- **musculoskeletal**
 - 5 general patterns
 - ♦ asymmetric oligoarthritis (most common – 70%)
 - ♦ arthritis of DIP joints with nail changes
 - ♦ destructive (mutilans) arthritis (5%)
 - ♦ symmetric polyarthritis (similar to RA)
 - ♦ sacroiliitis and spondylitis (usually older, male patients)
 - other findings: dactylitis, enthesopathy
- **ophthalmic**
 - conjunctivitis, iritis (anterior uveitis)
- **cardiac and respiratory** (late findings)
 - aortic insufficiency
 - apical lung fibrosis
- **neurologic**
 - cauda equina syndrome
- **radiologic**
 - floating syndesmophytes
 - pencil-in-cup appearance at IP joints
 - osteolysis, periostitis

Treatment

- treat skin lesions (e.g. steroid cream, salicylic and/or retinoic acid, tar, UV light)
- NSAIDs or IA steroids
- DMARDs, biologic therapies to minimize erosive disease (use early if peripheral joint involvement)

Table 29. CASPAR Criteria for Psoriatic Arthritis*

Criterion	Description
1. Evidence of psoriasis	Current, past, or family history
2. Psoriatic nail dystrophy	Onycholysis, pitting, hyperkeratosis
3. Negative results for RF	
4. Dactylitis	Current or past history
5. Radiological evidence	Juxta articular bone formation on hand or foot x-rays

*To meet the CASPAR (CIASsification criteria for Psoriatic ARthritis) criteria, a patient must have inflammatory articular disease (joint, spine, or entheses) with ≥3 points from the above 5 categories

Arthritis Rheum 2006;54(8):2665-2673. Classification criteria for psoriatic arthritis: development



Check "hidden" areas for psoriatic lesions (ears, hair line, umbilicus, gluteal cleft, nails)



Risks and Benefits of Tumor Necrosis Factor-Alpha (TNF-α) Inhibitors in the Management of Psoriatic Arthritis (PsA): Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of Randomized Controlled Trials
J Rheumatol 2008;35:883-890

Study: Review of RCTs of adalimumab, etanercept, and infliximab used in patients with PsA.

Results: Six RCTs were included (n=982). All 3 TNF-α inhibitors were significantly more effective than placebo on the basis of Psoriatic Arthritis Response Criteria (PsARC) and American College of Rheumatology response criteria ACR20, ACR50, and ACR70 ratings. There were no significant differences between TNF-α inhibitors and placebo in the proportions of patients who withdrew for any reason (RR 0.48, 95% CI 0.20-1.18), or withdrawal due to adverse events (RR 2.14, 95% CI 0.73-6.27), serious adverse events (RR 0.98, 95% CI 0.55-1.77), or upper respiratory tract infections (RR 0.91, 95% CI 0.65-1.28). Pooled rates for injection site reactions were significantly higher for adalimumab and etanercept than for placebo (RR 2.48, 95% CI 1.16-5.29), but there was no significant difference in the proportion of patients experiencing infusion reactions with infliximab (RR 1.03, 95% CI 0.48-2.20) compared to placebo. Indirect analysis did not demonstrate any significant differences between the TNF-α inhibitors.

Conclusions: TNF-α inhibitors are effective treatments for PsA with no important added risks associated with their short-term use. There is still a need for long-term risk-benefit assessment of use of these drugs for the management of PsA.

Reactive Arthritis

Definition

- two meanings
 1. ReA: a sterile arthritis following an infection (e.g. rheumatic fever, post-viral arthritis, etc.), not used frequently by rheumatologists
 2. ReA: one of the seronegative spondyloarthropathies in which patients have a peripheral arthritis (≥ 1 mo duration) accompanied by one or more extra-articular manifestations that appears shortly after certain infections of the GI or GU tracts

Etiology

- onset following an infectious episode either involving the GI or GU tract
 - GI: *Shigella*, *Salmonella*, *Campylobacter*, *Yersinia* species
 - GU: *Chlamydia* (isolated in 16-44% of ReA cases), *Mycoplasma* species
- acute clinical course
 - 1-4 wk post-infection
 - lasts weeks to years
 - often recurring
 - spinal involvement persists

Epidemiology

- in HLA-B27 patients, axial > peripheral involvement
- M>F

Signs and Symptoms

- **musculoskeletal**
 - peripheral arthritis, asymmetric pattern, spondylitis, Achilles tendinitis, plantar fasciitis, dactylitis
- **ophthalmic**
 - iritis (anterior uveitis), conjunctivitis
- **dermatologic**
 - keratoderma blennorrhagicum (hyperkeratotic skin lesions on palms and soles) and balanitis circinata (small, shallow, painless ulcers of glans penis and urethral meatus) are diagnostic
- **gastrointestinal**
 - oral ulcers, diarrhea
- **urethritis and cervicitis**
 - sterile cultures; presence not related to site of initiating infection

Investigations

- diagnosis is clinical plus laboratory
- blood work: normocytic, normochromic anemia, and leukocytosis
- sterile cultures
- serology: HLA-B27 positive

Treatment

- antibiotics for non-articular infections
- NSAIDs, physical therapy, exercise
- local therapy
 - joint protection
 - IA steroid injection
 - topical steroid for ocular involvement
- systemic therapy
 - corticosteroids, sulfasalazine, MTX (for peripheral joint involvement only)
 - TNF- α inhibitors for spinal inflammation

Prognosis

- self-limited, typically 3-5 mo, varies based on pathogen and patient's genetic background
- chronic in 15-20% of cases



Clinical Triad of Reactive Arthritis

- Arthritis
- Conjunctivitis/uveitis
- Urethritis/cervicitis



"Can't see, can't pee, can't climb a tree":

Triad of conjunctivitis, urethritis, and arthritis is 99% specific (but 51% sensitive) for ReA

Crystal-Induced Arthropathies

Table 30. Gout vs. Pseudogout

Parameter	Gout	Pseudogout
Gender	M>F	M=F
Age	Middle-aged males Post-menopausal females	Age > 60 yr
Onset of Disease	Acute	Acute/insidious
Crystal Type	Monosodium urate (MSU) Negative birefringence (yellow when parallel to compensator filter), needle-shaped	Calcium pyrophosphate dihydrate (CPPD) Positive birefringence (blue when parallel), rhomboid-shaped



Table 30. Gout vs. Pseudogout (continued)

Parameter	Gout	Pseudogout
Distribution	First MTP classically; also midfoot, ankle, knee, or polyarticular	Knee, wrist; monoarticular or polyarticular if chronic
Radiology (note findings are non-specific)	Erosions	Chondrocalcinosis OA (knee, wrist, 2nd and 3rd MCP)
Treatment	NSAIDs, corticosteroids, colchicine Allopurinol, febuxistat (chronic)	NSAIDs, corticosteroids

Gout



Definition

- derangement in purine metabolism resulting in hyperuricemia; monosodium urate crystal deposits in tissues (tophi) and synovium (microtophi)

Etiology and Pathogenesis

- sources of uric acid: diet and endogenous
- synthesis
 - hypoxanthine → xanthine → uric acid
 - both steps catalyzed by xanthine oxidase

Hyperuricemia

- primary or genetic**
 - mostly due to idiopathic renal underexcretion (90%)
 - also idiopathic overproduction or abnormal enzyme production/function
- secondary**
 - dietary excess (particularly high consumption of beer, seafood, and meat)
 - underexcretion (>90%): renal failure, drugs, systemic conditions
 - overproduction (<10%): increased nucleic acid turnover states (e.g. malignancy, post-chemotherapy)
- sudden changes (increasing or decreasing) in uric acid concentration are more important than absolute values
 - acute gout can occur with normal serum uric acid
 - changes in pH, temperature, or initiation of antihyperuricemics may precipitate an acute gouty attack
- common precipitants: alcohol, dietary excess, dehydration, drugs (e.g. thiazide and loop diuretics), trauma, illness, surgery, starting xanthine oxidase inhibitor therapy
- other associated conditions: HTN, obesity, DM, starvation

Epidemiology

- most common in males >45 yr old
- extremely rare in premenopausal females

Signs and Symptoms

- single episode progressing to recurrent episodes of acute inflammatory arthritis
- acute gouty arthritis**
 - severe pain, redness, joint swelling, usually involving lower extremities
 - joint mobility may be limited
 - attack will subside spontaneously within several days to weeks; may recur
- tophi**
 - urate deposits on cartilage, tendons, bursae, soft tissues, and synovial membranes
 - common sites: first MTP, ear helix, olecranon bursae, tendon insertions (common in Achilles tendon)
- kidney**
 - gouty nephropathy
 - uric acid calculi

Investigations

- joint aspirate: >90% of joint aspirates show crystals of monosodium urate (see Table 30) (negatively birefringent, needle-shaped)
- x-rays may show tophi as soft tissue swelling, punched-out lesions – erosion with “overhanging” edge

Treatment

- acute gout**
 - NSAIDs: high dose, then taper as symptoms improve
 - corticosteroids: IA, oral, or intra-muscular (if renal, cardiovascular, or GI disease and/or if NSAIDs contraindicated or failed)
 - colchicine within first 12 h but effectiveness limited by narrow therapeutic range
 - allopurinol can worsen an acute attack (do not start during acute flare)
- chronic gout**
 - conservative
 - avoid foods with high purine content (e.g. visceral meats, sardines, shellfish, beans, peas)
 - avoid drugs with hyperuricemic effects (e.g. pyrazinamide, ethambutol, thiazide, alcohol)

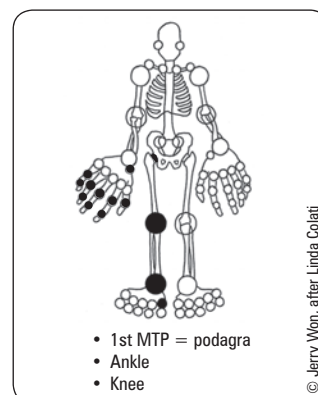


Figure 12. Common sites of involvement in gout
(asymmetric joint involvement)



- An acute gout attack may mimic cellulitis; however, joint mobility is preserved in cellulitis
- Gout often affects more than one joint (i.e. ankle, midfoot, and MTPs)



Precipitants of Gout

Drugs are FACT

Furosemide
Aspirin®/Alcohol
Cytotoxic drugs
Thiazide diuretics

Foods are SALT

Seafood
Alcohol (beer and spirits)
Liver and kidney
Turkey (meat)



- The majority of people with hyperuricemia do not have gout
- Normal or low uric acid levels do not rule out gout



10 Multinational Expert Based Recommendations on the Diagnosis and Management of Gout

Ann of Rheum Dis 2013;73(2):328-335

- Identification of monosodium urate crystals should be performed for a definitive diagnosis of gout.
- Gout/hyperuricemia should prompt investigations of renal function and CV risk factors.
- Acute gout should be treated with colchicine, NSAIDs, and/or glucocorticoids.
- Patients should be counseled about lifestyle.
- Allopurinol is first line for urate lowering therapy, with uricosurics as second line.
- Patients should be informed about the risk of acute gout flare with initiation of urate lowering therapy; colchicine prophylaxis should be considered.
- Allopurinol can be used in patients with mild/moderate renal impairment with slow titration and monitoring.
- Treatment goal is urate <0.36 mM and absence of attacks and resolution of tophi.
- Tophi should be treated medically by lowering serum urate to <0.3 mM. Surgery is only for select cases.
- Prophylactic pharmacological management of asymptomatic hyperuricemia is not recommended.

- medical
 - ♦ antihyperuricemic drugs (allopurinol and febuxostat): decrease uric acid production by inhibiting xanthine oxidase
 - ♦ uricosuric drugs (probenecid, sulfapyrazone): use if failure on or intolerant to allopurinol; do not use in renal failure
 - prophylaxis prior to starting antihyperuricemic drugs (colchicine/low-dose NSAID)
 - in renal disease secondary to hyperuricemia, use low-dose allopurinol and monitor Cr
- indications for treatment with antihyperuricemic medications include:
 - recurrent attacks, tophi, bone erosions, urate kidney stones
 - perhaps in renal dysfunction with very high urate load (controversial)

Pseudogout (Calcium Pyrophosphate Dihydrate Disease)

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- acute inflammatory arthritis due to phagocytosis of IgG-coated CPPD crystals by neutrophils and subsequent release of inflammatory mediators within joint space
- more frequently polyarticular
- slower in onset in comparison to gout, lasts up to 3 wk but is self-limited

Risk Factors

- old age, advanced OA, neuropathic joints
- other associated conditions: hyperparathyroidism, hypothyroidism, hypomagnesemia, hypophosphatasia (low ALP), DM, hemochromatosis

Signs and Symptoms

- affects knees, wrists, MCPs, hips, shoulders, elbows, ankles, big toe
- multiple manifestations
 - asymptomatic crystal deposition (seen on radiograph only)
 - acute crystal arthritis (self-limited flares of acute inflammatory arthritis resembling gout)
 - pseudo-OA (progressive joint degeneration, sometimes with episodes of acute inflammatory arthritis)
 - pseudo-RA (symmetrical polyarticular pattern with morning stiffness and constitutional symptoms)
- acute may be triggered by dehydration, acute illness, surgery, trauma

Investigations

- must aspirate joint to rule out septic arthritis, gout
- CPPD crystals: present in 60% of patients, often only a few crystals
- x-rays show chondrocalcinosis in 75%: radiodensities in fibrocartilaginous structures (e.g. knee menisci) or linear radiodensities in hyaline articular cartilage

Treatment

- joint aspiration, rest, and protection
- NSAIDs: also used for maintenance therapy
- prophylactic colchicine PO (controversial)
- IA or oral steroids to relieve inflammation

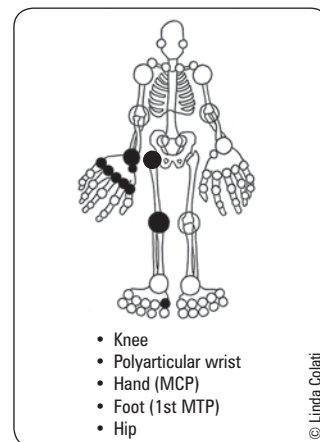


Figure 13. Common sites of involvement in CPPD

Pediatric Rheumatology

- see [Pediatrics](#), P93



Non-Articular Rheumatism

Definition

- disorders that primarily affect soft tissues or periarticular structures
- includes bursitis, tendinitis, tenosynovitis, fibromyalgia, and PMR

Polymyalgia Rheumatica



Definition

- characterized by pain and stiffness of the proximal extremities (girdle area)
- closely related to GCA (15% of patients with PMR develop GCA)
- no muscle weakness

Table 31. PMR Classification Criteria Scoring Algorithm*

	Points without U/S (0-6)	Points with Abnormal U/S** (0-8)
Morning stiffness duration >45 min	2	2
Hip pain or limited ROM	1	1
Absence of RF or ACPA	2	2
Absence of other joint involvement	1	1
At least one shoulder with subdeltoid and/or biceps tenosynovitis and/or glenohumeral synovitis (either posterior or axillary) and at least one hip with synovitis and/or trochanteric bursitis on U/S	N/A	1
Both shoulders with subdeltoid bursitis, biceps tenosynovitis, or glenohumeral synovitis on U/S	N/A	1

*Required criteria: age ≥ 50 yr, bilateral shoulder aching, and abnormal ESR/CRP

**A score of 4 or more is categorized as PMR in the algorithm without U/S and a score of 5 or more is categorized as PMR in the algorithm with U/S

**Optional U/S criteria

Ann Rheum Dis 2012;71:484-492

Epidemiology

- incidence 50 per 100,000 per year in those >50 yr
- age of onset typically >50, F:M = 2:1

Signs and Symptoms

- constitutional symptoms prominent (fever, weight loss, malaise)
- pain and stiffness of symmetrical proximal muscles (neck, shoulder and hip girdles, thighs)
- gel phenomenon (stiffness after prolonged inactivity)
- physical exam reveals tender muscles, but no weakness or atrophy

Investigations

- blood work: often shows anemia, elevated platelets, elevated ESR and CRP, and normal CK; up to 5% of PMR reported with normal inflammatory markers

Treatment

- goal of therapy: symptom relief
- start with prednisone dose of 15-20 mg PO OD
- taper slowly over 2 yr period monitoring ESR and symptoms closely
- relapses should be diagnosed and treated on clinical basis; do not treat a rise in ESR as a relapse
- treat relapses aggressively (50% relapse rate)
- monitor for steroid side effects, glucocorticoid-induced osteoporosis prevention, and follow for symptoms of GCA



Most patients are treated for up to 2 yr



Prednisone Plus MTX for PMR

Ann Intern Med 2004;141:493-500

Study: Multicenter RCT.

Patients: Patients with newly diagnosed PMR.

Intervention: Prednisone dosage (25 mg/d) was tapered to 0 mg/d within 24 wk and was adjusted if flare-ups occurred. Oral MTX (10 mg) or placebo with folic acid supplementation (7.5 mg) was given weekly for 48 wk.

Primary Outcome: The proportion of patients no longer taking prednisone, the number of flare-ups, and the cumulative prednisone dose after 76 wk.

Results: 28 of 32 patients in the MTX group and 16 of 30 patients in the placebo group were no longer taking prednisone at 76 wk ($p = 0.003$). Similar results were obtained after adjustment for C-reactive protein level and duration of symptoms in a multivariate model. 15 of 32 patients in the MTX group and 22 of 30 patients in the placebo group had at least 1 flare-up by the end of follow-up ($p = 0.04$). The median prednisone dose was 2.1 g in the MTX group and 2.97 g in the placebo group ($p = 0.03$). The rate and severity of adverse events were similar.

Limitations: Follow-up was short, and a high dose of folic acid and a relatively high starting dosage of prednisone were used. 10 of 72 patients (14%) discontinued treatment or were lost to follow-up.

Conclusions: Prednisone plus MTX is associated with shorter prednisone treatment and steroid sparing. It may be useful in patients at high risk for steroid-related toxicity.

Fibromyalgia

Definition

- chronic (>3 mo), widespread (axial, left- and right-sided, upper and lower segment), non-articular pain with characteristic tender points

Diagnosis

2010 Diagnostic Criteria for Fibromyalgia

- widespread pain index ≥ 7 and symptom severity score ≥ 5 or WPI 3-6 and SS ≥ 9
- symptoms have been present at a similar level for ≥ 3 mo
- the patient does not have a disorder that would otherwise explain the pain
 - widespread pain index = number of areas in which the patient had pain over the last week (L and R: shoulder girdle, upper arm, lower arm, hip, upper leg, lower leg, jaw, chest, abdomen, upper and lower back, neck = max score 19)
 - symptom severity score = sum of a) severity of fatigue, b) waking unrefreshed, and c) cognitive symptoms over the past week, plus d) extent of somatic symptoms (IBS, H/A, abdominal pain/cramps, dry mouth, fever, hives, ringing in ears, vomiting, heartburn, dry eyes, SOB, loss of appetite, rash, hair loss, easy bruising, etc.); all (a-d) rated on 0-3 scale:
0 = no problem, 1 = mild, 2 = moderate, 3 = severe
- this clinical definition identified 88.1% of American College of Rheumatology classified fibromyalgia and can allow longitudinal assessment of symptom severity

Epidemiology

- F:M = 3:1
- primarily ages 25-45 yr, some adolescents
- prevalence of 2-5% in general population
- overlaps with chronic fatigue syndrome and myofascial pain syndrome
- strong association with psychiatric illness

Signs and Symptoms

- widespread aching, stiffness
- easy fatigability
- sleep disturbance: non-restorative sleep, difficulty falling asleep, and frequent waking
- symptoms aggravated by physical activity, poor sleep, emotional stress
- patient feels that joints are diffusely swollen although joint examination is normal
- neurologic symptoms of hyperalgesia, paresthesias
- associated with irritable bowel or bladder syndrome, migraines, tension headaches, restless legs syndrome, obesity, depression, and anxiety
- physical exam should reveal only tenderness with palpation of soft tissues, with no specificity for trigger/tender points

Investigations

- blood work: includes TSH and ESR; all typically normal unless unrelated, underlying illness present
- serology: do not order ANA or RF unless there is clinical suspicion for a connective tissue disease
- laboratory sleep assessment

Differential Diagnosis

- diagnosis of exclusion
- rule out other disorders by history and physical exam

Treatment

- **conservative**
 - education
 - exercise program (walking, aquatic exercises), physical therapy (good posture, stretching, muscle strengthening, massage)
 - stress reduction, CBT
 - no evidence for alternative medicine such as biofeedback, meditation, acupuncture
- **medical**
 - low dose tricyclic antidepressant (e.g. amitriptyline)
 - ♦ for sleep restoration
 - ♦ select those with lower anticholinergic side effects
 - SNRI: duloxetine, milnacipran
 - anticonvulsant: pregabalin, gabapentin
 - analgesics may be beneficial for pain that interferes with sleep (NSAIDs, not narcotics)

Prognosis

- variable; usually chronic, unless diagnosed and treated early

Adult Onset Still's Disease

Definition

- systemic inflammatory condition (ANA and RF negative) with fevers and characteristic rash, numerous systemic symptoms, and may have severe arthritis

Etiology and Pathophysiology

- idiopathic; infectious triggers likely – various viruses and bacteria have been implicated
- stress increases risk

Epidemiology

- F>M; age of onset typically 16-40, approximately 1 per 100,000

Signs and Symptoms

- classic triad of symptoms
 - high-spiking fevers (95.7% of patients, typically T = 102.2°F/39°C, <4 h duration, quotidian pattern)
 - characteristic "salmon rash" (~72% of patients, on proximal limbs + trunk)
 - arthralgia/arthritis (64-100%)
- sore throat, myalgias and serositis may also occur
- arthritis is symmetric, typically affects large joints, i.e. wrists, knees and ankles, may involve PIP and DIPs, elbow, MTPs
- liver abnormalities ± hepatomegaly (50-75% patients)
- splenomegaly (44%)



A 14 Week, RCT of Pregabalin in Patients with Fibromyalgia

J Pain 2008;9:792-880

Study: Multicenter RCT. 750 patients with fibromyalgia with pain score of <40 mm on the visual analog scale (VAS) were assigned to placebo or pregabalin (300 mg, 450 mg, or 600 mg) daily for 12 wk.

Primary Outcome: Change in the mean pain score derived from the subject's daily pain diary as measured at the patient's baseline to the end point of the study.

Results: Patients treated with 450 and 600 mg/d pregabalin showed a statistically significant improvement in the end point mean pain score compared with placebo-treated subjects by -0.50 and -0.45 respectively.

The 30% responder rate was 30%, 42%, 50%, and 48% in the placebo, 300 mg/d, 450 mg/d, and 600 mg/d respectively. The 50% responder rate was 15%, 24%, 27%, and 30% for placebo, 300 mg/d, 450 mg/d, and 600 mg/d respectively. Discontinuations due to adverse events were 12%, 16%, 22%, and 26% in placebo, 300 mg/d, 450 mg/d, and 600 mg/d respectively. The 450 and 600 mg/d groups were significantly different from placebo (p=0.0001).

Conclusions: Pregabalin at 300 mg/d, 450 mg/d, and 600 mg/d showed statistically significant response rates as compared to placebo although discontinuation rates for the 450 mg/d and 600 mg/d regimens were significantly higher as compared to placebo.



Exercise for Treating Fibromyalgia Syndrome

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2008;CD003786

Study: Systematic review of exercise training including cardiorespiratory endurance, muscle strengthening, and flexibility for global well-being and physical function in patients with fibromyalgia.

Result: 34 studies were included (n=2,276). Aerobic-only exercises improve global well-being, physical function, and possibly pain and tender points. There was insufficient data to evaluate the effect of strength and flexibility on the primary outcomes.

Conclusions: Moderate aerobic cardiorespiratory exercise improves function and well-being in patients with FM. Benefits from muscle strengthening and flexibility require additional research to delineate benefits.



Triad of Still's Disease

FAR

Fever

Arthralgias/Arthritis

Rash

Classification

- numerous classification systems proposed
- Yamaguchi's criteria (*J Rheumatol* 1992;19:424-30): need 5 criteria to diagnose Still's, at least 2 major
 - major criteria
 - ♦ $T > 39^{\circ}\text{C}$, intermittent, >1 wk
 - ♦ typical rash
 - ♦ $\text{WBC} > 10,000$ ($>80\%$ granulocytes)
 - minor criteria
 - ♦ sore throat
 - ♦ lymphadenopathy \pm splenomegaly
 - ♦ abnormal transaminases
 - ♦ negative ANA and RF
 - exclusion criteria: infection, malignancy, rheumatic disease

Investigations

- ANA and RF negative
- markedly elevated ESR, CRP, ferritin (typically >1000 ng/mL, >2200 pmol/L)
 - total ferritin $>5 \times \text{ULN} = 80\%$ sensitive, 41% specific
- anemia, thrombocytosis, leukocytosis may occur
- transaminases, LDH may be elevated

Treatment

- refer to rheumatologist for treatment with biologics (anti-IL1 and anti-IL6 agents)
- begin management with low-dose glucocorticoids \pm MTX

Common Medications

Table 32. Common Medications for OA

Class	Generic Drug Name	Trade Name	Dosing (PO)	Indications	Contraindications	Adverse Effects
Analgesic	acetaminophen	Tylenol®	500 mg tid q4h (4 g daily max)	1st line		Hepatotoxicity Overdose Potentiates warfarin
NSAIDs	ECASA	Entrophen®	325-975 mg qid	2nd line	GI bleed	Nausea, tinnitus, vertigo, rash, dyspepsia, GI bleed, PUD, hepatitis, renal failure, HTN, nephrotic syndrome
	ibuprofen	Advil,® Motrin®	200-600 mg tid		Renal impairment	
	diclofenac	Voltaren®	25-50 mg tid		Allergy to ASA, NSAIDs	
	diclofenac/misoprostol	Arthrotec®	50-75/200 mg tid		Pregnancy (T3)	
	naproxen	Naprosyn®, Aleve®	125-500 mg bid			
	meloxicam	Mobicox®	7.5-15 mg OD			
COX-2 INHIBITORS						
	celecoxib	Celebrex®	200 mg OD	High risk for GI bleed: age >65 Hx of GI bleed, PUD	Renal impairment Sulfa allergy (celecoxib) Cardiovascular disease	Delayed ulcer healing Renal/hepatic impairment Rash
Other Treatments		Comments				
Combination analgesics (acetaminophen + codeine, acetaminophen + NSAIDs)		Enhanced short-term effect compared to acetaminophen alone More adverse effects: sedation, constipation, nausea, GI upset				
IA corticosteroid injection		Short-term (weeks-months) decrease in pain and improvement in function Used for management of an intraarticular inflammatory process when infection has been ruled out				
IA hyaluronic acid q6mo		Used for mild-moderate OA of the knees, however little supporting evidence, and not considered to be effective Precaution with chicken/egg allergy				
Topical NSAIDs		1.5% wt/wt topical diclofenac (Pennsaid®) May use for patients who fail acetaminophen treatment and who wish to avoid systemic therapy				
Capsaicin cream		Mild decrease in pain				
Glucosamine sulfate ± chondroitin		Limited clinical studies				

Table 33. Disease Modifying Anti-Rheumatic Drugs (DMARDs)

Generic Drug Name	Trade Name	Dosing	Contraindications	Adverse Effects
COMMONLY USED				
hydroxychloroquine \$	Plaquenil®	400 mg PO OD initially 200-400 mg PO OD maintenance (6.5 mg/kg ideal body weight per day)	Retinal disease, G6PD deficiency	GI symptoms, skin rash, macular damage, neuromyopathy Requires regular ophthalmological screening to monitor for retinopathy
sulfasalazine \$	Salazopyrim® Azulfidine® (US)	1000 mg PO bid-tid	Sulfa/ASA allergy, kidney disease, G6PD deficiency	GI symptoms, rash, headache, leukopenia
methotrexate \$	Rheumatrex® Folex/Mexate®	7.5-25 mg PO/IM/SC qweekly	Bone marrow suppression, liver disease, significant lung disease, immunodeficiency, pregnancy, EtOH abuse	Oral ulcers, GI symptoms, cirrhosis, myelosuppression, pneumonitis, tubular necrosis
leflunomide \$\$	Arava®	10-20 mg PO OD	Liver disease	Alopecia, GI symptoms, liver dysfunction, pulmonary infiltrates
NOT COMMONLY USED				
cyclosporine \$\$	Neoral®	2.5-3 mg/kg/d divided and given in 2 doses PO	Kidney/liver disease, infection, HTN	HTN, decreased renal function, hair growth, tremors, bleeding
gold (injectable) \$	Solganal® Myocrysine®	50 mg IM q1wk after gradual introduction	IBD, kidney/liver disease	Rash, mouth soreness/ulcers, proteinuria, marrow suppression
azathioprine \$	Imuran®	2/5 mg/kg/d PO once daily	Kidney/liver disease TPMT deficiency	Rash, pancytopenia (especially ↓ WBC, ↑ AST, ALT), biliary stasis, vomiting, diarrhea
cyclophosphamide \$	Cytosan®	1 g/m ² /mo IV as per protocol	Kidney/liver disease	Cardiotoxicity, GI symptoms, hemorrhagic cystitis, nephrotoxicity, bone marrow suppression, sterility
Generic Drug Name	Trade Name	Dosing	Mechanism of Action	
NEWER DMARDs (Biologics)				
etanercept \$\$\$	Enbrel®	25 mg biweekly or 50 mg weekly SC	Fusion protein of TNF receptor and Fc portion of IgG	
infliximab \$\$\$	Remicade®	3-5 mg/kg IV q8wk	Chimeric mouse/human monoclonal anti-TNF-α	
adalimumab \$\$\$	Humira®	40 mg SC q2wk	Monoclonal anti-TNF-α	
abatacept \$\$\$	Orencia®	IV infusion	Costimulation modulator of T-cell activation	
rituximab \$\$\$	Rituxan®	2 IV infusions, 2 wk apart	Causes B-cell depletion, binds to CD20	
certolizumab \$\$\$	Cimzia®	400 mg SC q2wk x3 then 200 mg SC q4wk	PEGylated monoclonal anti-TNF-α	
golimumab \$\$\$	Simponi®	50 mg SC q month	Monoclonal anti-TNF-α	
tocilizumab \$\$\$	Actemra®	4-8 mg/kg IV q4wk	Interleukin-6 receptor antagonist	

**Risks of Biologics**

- Reactivation of TB or hepatitis B; patients require negative TB skin test, chest x-ray, and negative hepatitis B virus serology prior to starting any of these medications
- Increased risk of serious infections
- Worsening heart failure

Landmark Rheumatology Trials

Trial	Reference	Results
RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS		
ATTEST	<i>Ann Rheum Dis</i> 2008; 67:1096-103	Abatacept and infliximab have similar efficacy in RA patients who have failed MTX
ATTRACT	<i>Lancet</i> 1999; 354:1932-9	Infliximab and MTX combined are more effective than MTX alone for patients with active RA
CIMESTRA	<i>Arthritis Rheum</i> 2006; 54:1401-9	Combination of MTX and sulfasalazine is superior to either alone
COMET	<i>Lancet</i> 2008; 372:375-82	Etanercept add-on therapy increases rates of remission in early RA
ERA	<i>NEJM</i> 2000; 343:1586-93	Etanercept more rapidly decreases symptoms in early RA compared to MTX
European Leflunomide Study Group	<i>Lancet</i> 1999; 353:259-66	Leflunomide is equal in efficacy to sulphasalazine
FIN-RACo	<i>Lancet</i> 1999; 353:1568-73	Combination therapy with DMARDs improves remission rates in early RA
Infliximab and MTX	<i>NEJM</i> 2000; 343:1594-602	Infliximab combined with MTX reduces joint damage in RA
Leflunomide RA Investigators Group	<i>Arch Intern Med</i> 1999; 159:2542-50	Leflunomide is equivalent to MTX therapy and superior to placebo
PREMIER	<i>Arthritis Rheum</i> 2006; 54:26-37	Combination therapy with adalimumab and MTX is superior to either alone in patients with early RA
Swefot	<i>Lancet</i> 2009; 374:459-66	Anti-TNF agents are more effective second-line therapy than DMARDs in patients who fail MTX
OSTEOARTHRITIS		
GAIT	<i>NEJM</i> 2006; 354:795-808	Glucosamine, chondroitin, and the combination of both are no more effective than placebo in treatment of knee OA
Hyaluronan	<i>Ann Rheum Dis</i> 2010; 69:1097-102	Hyaluronan injections do not improve disease activity in patients with moderate-severe knee OA
LUPUS		
Belimumab	<i>Lancet</i> 2011; 377:721-31	Treatment with belimumab reduces the incidence of BILAG A and B flares in patients with SLE compared to placebo
BILAG open-RCT	<i>Rheumatology</i> 2010; 49:723-32	Low dose cyclosporine and azathioprine are equivalent in efficacy as maintenance therapy for SLE
Mycophenylate mofetil or intravenous cyclophosphamide	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 353:2219-28	Mycophenylate mofetil is more efficacious than cyclophosphamide in inducing remission of SLE nephritis
CONNECTIVE TISSUE DISEASES		
Azathioprine or MTX maintenance for ANCA-associated vasculitis	<i>NEJM</i> 2008; 359:2790-803	MTX and azathioprine are equally safe and effective as maintenance agents in ANCA vasculitis
Cyclophosphamide in scleroderma lung disease	<i>NEJM</i> 2006; 354:2655-66	Cyclophosphamide therapy leads to transient improvements in lung function, skin scores, and overall health in patients with scleroderma
Etanercept plus standard therapy for granulomatosis with polyangiitis	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 352:351-61	Etanercept is not effective in inducing remission in patients with ANCA vasculitis
Mycophenylate mofetil vs. azathioprine for maintenance in ANCA-associated vasculitis	<i>JAMA</i> 2010; 304:2381-8	Mycophenylate mofetil is less effective than azathioprine for maintaining disease in ANCA-associated vasculitis
Rituximab vs. cyclophosphamide for ANCA-associated vasculitis	<i>NEJM</i> 2010; 363:221-32	Rituximab is not inferior to cyclophosphamide for induction of remission in ANCA vasculitis
GOUT		
Febuxostat vs. allopurinol	<i>NEJM</i> 2005; 353:2450-61	Febuxostat is more effective than allopurinol at lowering serum urate, and has similar effectiveness on flare reduction

Trial	Reference	Results
ANKYLOSING SPONDYLITIS		
Adalimumab	<i>Arthritis Rheum</i> 2006; 54:2136-46	Adalimumab induced partial remission in 22% of AS patients
ASSERT (rituximab)	<i>Arthritis Rheum</i> 2005; 52:582-91	Sixty percent of patients treated with rituximab had a clinical response to the medication
ATLAS (adalimumab)	<i>J Rheumatol</i> 2008; 35:1346-53	Compared to placebo, adalimumab significantly reduces pain and fatigue in AS patients
Infliximab in AS	<i>Lancet</i> 2002; 359:1187-93	Infliximab induces regression of symptoms in 50% of patients and is superior to placebo
SPINE (etanercept)	<i>Ann Rheum Dis</i> 2011; 70:799-804	Etanercept has short-term efficacy for patients with advanced AS and reduces disease severity
Sulfasalazine	<i>Arthritis Rheum</i> 1995; 38:618-27	Sulfasalazine is superior to placebo in treatment of patients with seronegative spondyloarthropathy

References

ACR. Guidelines for the medical management of osteoarthritis of the hip. November 1995.

ACR. Guidelines for the medical management of osteoarthritis of the knee. November 1995.

ACR. Guidelines for referral and management of systemic lupus erythematosus in adults. September 1999.

ACR Subcommittee on Rheumatoid Arthritis Guidelines, 2002. Guidelines for the management of rheumatoid arthritis, 2002 Update.

Aletaha D, Neogi T, Silman AJ, et al. 2010 rheumatoid arthritis classification criteria. *Arthritis Rheum* 2010;62:2569-2581.

Arnett FC, Edworthy SM, Bloch DA, et al. The American Rheumatism Association 1987 revised criteria for the classification of rheumatoid arthritis. *Arthritis Rheum* 1988;31:315-324.

American College of Rheumatology Subcommittee on Rheumatoid Arthritis Guidelines. Guidelines for the management of rheumatoid arthritis: 2002 Update. *Arthritis Rheum* 2002;46:328-346.

Bathon JM, Martin RW, Fleischmann RM, et al. A comparison of etanercept and methotrexate in patients with early rheumatoid arthritis. *NEJM* 2000;343:1586-1593.

Bohan A, Peter JB. Polymyositis and dermatomyositis (second of two parts). *NEJM* 1975;292:403-407.

Bombardier C, Laine L, Reicin A, et al. Comparison of upper gastrointestinal toxicity of rofecoxib and naproxen in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. The VIGOR Study Group. *NEJM* 2000;343:1520-1528.

Brady OH, Masri BA, Garbuz DS, et al. Joint replacement of the hip and knee – when to refer and what to expect. *CMAJ* 2000;163:1285-1291.

Brater DC, Harris C, Redfern JS, et al. Renal effects of COX-2-selective inhibitors. *Amer J Nephrol* 2001;21:1-15.

Bykrek VP, Akhavan P, Hazlewood GS. Canadian rheumatology association recommendations for pharmacological management of rheumatoid arthritis with traditional and biologic disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs. *J Rheumatol* 2011;39:1559-1582.

Cibere J. Acute monoarthritis. *CMAJ* 2000;162:1577-1583.

Clark BM. Physical and occupational therapy in the management of arthritis. *CMAJ* 2000;163:999-1005.

Ensworth S. Is it arthritis? *CMAJ* 2000;162:1011-1016.

Healey LA. Long-term follow-up of polymyalgia rheumatica: evidence for synovitis. *Semin Arthritis Rheum* 1984;13:322-328.

Hochberg MC. Updating the American College of Rheumatology revised criteria for the classification of systemic lupus erythematosus [letter]. *Arthritis Rheum* 1997;40:1725.

Hunder GG, Bloch DA, Michel BA, et al. The American College of Rheumatology 1990 criteria for the classification of giant cell arteritis. *Arthritis Rheum* 1990;33:1122-1128.

Huang SHK. Basics of therapy. *CMAJ* 2000;163:417-423.

Kippel JH, Weyand CM, Wortmann RL. Primer on Rheumatic Diseases, 11th ed. Arthritis Foundation, 1997.

Klinkhoff A. Diagnosis and management of inflammatory polyarthritis. *CMAJ* 2000;162:1833-1838.

Kremer JM. Rational use of new and existing disease-modifying agents in rheumatoid arthritis. *Ann Intern Med* 2001;134:695-706.

Lacaille D. Advanced therapy. *CMAJ* 2000;163:721-728.

Leavitt RY, Fauci AS, Bloch DA, et al. The American College of Rheumatology 1990 criteria for the classification of Wegener’s granulomatosis. *Arthritis Rheum* 1990;33:1101-1017.

Lightfoot RW Jr, Michel BA, Bloch DA, et al. The American College of Rheumatology 1990 criteria for the classification of polyarteritis nodosa. *Arthritis Rheum* 1990;33:1088-1093.

McAlindon TE, Bannuru RR, Sullivan MC, et al. OARS! guidelines for the non-surgical management of knee osteoarthritis. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage* 2014;22:363-388.

Miyakis S, Lockshin MD, Atsumi T, et al. International consensus statement on an update of the classification criteria for definite antiphospholipid syndrome (APS). *J Thromb Haemost* 2006;4:295-306.

Puttick MPE. Evaluation of the patient with pain all over. *CMAJ* 2001;164:223-227.

Reid G, Esdaile JM. Getting the most out of radiology. *CMAJ* 2000;162:1318-1325.

Shojania K. What laboratory tests are needed? *CMAJ* 2000;162:1157-1163.

Sivera F, Andres M, Carmona L, et al. Recommendation: Multinational evidence-based recommendations for the diagnosis and management of gout: integrating systematic literature review and expert opinion of a broad panel of rheumatologists in the 3e initiative. *Ann of Rheum Dis* 2013;73:328-335.

Smetana GW, Shmerling RH. Does this patient have temporal arteritis? *JAMA* 2002;287:92-101.

Subcommittee for Scleroderma Criteria of the American Rheumatism Association Diagnostic and Therapeutic Criteria Committee. Preliminary criteria for the classification of systemic sclerosis (scleroderma). *Arthritis Rheum* 1980;23:581-590.

Taunton JE, Wilkinson M. Diagnosis and management of anterior knee pain. *CMAJ* 2001;164:1595-1601.

Tsang I. Pain in the neck. *CMAJ* 2001;164:1182-1187.

van der Linden S, Valkenburg HA, Cats A. Evaluation of diagnostic criteria for ankylosing spondylitis. A proposal for modification of the New York criteria. *Arthritis Rheum* 1984;27:361.

Vitali C, Bombardieri S, Jonsson R, et al. Classification criteria for Sjögren’s syndrome: a revised version of the European criteria proposed by the American-European Consensus Group. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2002;61:554-558.

Wade JP. Osteoporosis. *CMAJ* 2001;165:45-50.

Wing PC. Minimizing disability in patients with low-back pain. *CMAJ* 2001;164:1459-1468.

Wolfe F, Smythe HA, Yunus MB, et al. The American College of Rheumatology 1990 criteria for the classification of fibromyalgia: report of the multicenter criteria committee. *Arthritis Rheum* 1990;33:160-172.

Wolfe F, Clauw DJ, Fitzcharles MA, et al. The American College of Rheumatology preliminary diagnostic criteria for fibromyalgia and measurement of symptom severity. *Arthritis Care and Research* 2010;62:600-610.

Udi Blankstein and Zachary Longarini, chapter editors

Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Alexa Bramall, EBM editor

Dr. Sender Herschorn, Dr. Armado Lorenzo, Dr. Sri Sivalingam, and

Dr. Phillip M. Pierorazio, staff editors

Acronyms	2	Penile Complaints	29
Basic Anatomy Review	2	Erectile Dysfunction	
Abdominal Wall		Trauma	31
Anatomy of Scrotum		Renal Trauma	
Genitourinary Tract Anatomy		Bladder Trauma	
Penis Anatomy		Urethral Injuries	
Male Pelvis and Perineum		Infertility	33
Urologic History	3	Female Factors	
Hematuria (Blood in the Urine)	4	Male Factors	
Macroscopic (Gross) Hematuria		Pediatric Urology	35
Microscopic Hematuria		Congenital Abnormalities	
Voiding Dysfunction	5	Nephroblastoma (Wilms' Tumor)	
Voiding		Cryptorchidism/Ectopic Testes	
Urinary Incontinence		Disorders of Sexual Differentiation	
Urinary Retention		Enuresis	
Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia		Selected Urological Procedures	39
Urethral Stricture		Bladder Catheterization	
Neurogenic Bladder		Circumcision	
Dysuria		Cystoscopy	
Hydronephrosis		Radical Prostatectomy	
Post Obstructive Diuresis		Transurethral Resection of the Prostate	
Infectious and Inflammatory Diseases	11	Extracorporeal Shock Wave Lithotripsy	
Urinary Tract Infection		Common Medications	42
Recurrent/Chronic Cystitis		References	43
Interstitial Cystitis (Painful Bladder Syndrome)			
Acute Pyelonephritis			
Prostatitis/Prostatodynia			
Epididymitis and Orchitis			
Urethritis			
Stone Disease	16		
Approach to Renal Stone			
Urological Neoplasms	19		
Approach to Renal Mass			
Benign Renal Neoplasms			
Malignant Renal Neoplasms			
Carcinoma of the Renal Pelvis and Ureter			
Bladder Carcinoma			
Prostate Cancer			
Prostate Cancer Screening			
Testicular Tumors			
Penile Tumors			
Scrotal Mass	28		

Acronyms

β-hCG	beta-human chorionic gonadotropin	ED	erectile dysfunction	MET	medical expulsive therapy	TRUS	transrectal ultrasound
ABx	antibiotics	EPS	expressed prostatic secretions	MS	multiple sclerosis	TUIP	transurethral incision of the prostate
AFP	alpha-fetoprotein	ESWL	extracorporeal shockwave lithotripsy	NSGCT	non-seminomatous germ cell tumor	TUNA	transurethral needle ablation
AST	assisted reproductive technologies	FNA	fine needle aspiration	PCNL	percutaneous nephrolithotomy	TURBT	transurethral resection of bladder tumor
AUA	American Urology Association	GA	general anesthesia	PDE	phosphodiesterase	TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
BCG	Bacillus Calmette-Guérin	GAG	glycosaminoglycan	PID	pelvic inflammatory disease	U/A	urinalysis
BPH	benign prostatic hyperplasia	HIFU	high-intensity focused ultrasound	PMC	pontine micturition center	U/O	urine output
CAH	congenital adrenal hyperplasia	HPF	high power field	POD	post-obstructive diuresis	U/S	ultrasound
CaP	prostatic carcinoma	HPTA	hypothalamic-pituitary-testicular axis	PSA	prostate specific antigen	UCC	urothelial cell carcinoma
CBI	continuous bladder irrigation	ICSI	intracytoplasmic sperm injection	PUV	posterior urethral valve	UMN	upper motor neuron
CF	cystic fibrosis	IFN-α	interferon-alpha	PVD	peripheral vascular disease	UPJ	ureteropelvic junction
CFU	colony-forming unit	IL-2	interleukin-2	PVR	post-void residual	URS	ureteroscopy
CIS	carcinoma <i>in situ</i>	IPSS	International Prostate Symptom Score	QOL	quality of life	UVJ	ureterovesicular junction
CMG	cystometrogram	ISD	intrinsic sphincter deficiency	r/o	rule out	VB1	voided bladder, initial (urethra)
CIC	clean intermittent catheterization	IUI	intrauterine insemination	RCC	renal cell carcinoma	VB2	voided bladder, midstream (bladder)
CPPS	chronic pelvic pain syndrome	IVF	<i>in vitro</i> fertilization	RFA	radio-frequency ablation	VB3	voided bladder, post-massage/digital rectal exam
CTU	CT urography	IVP	intravenous pyelogram	RP	radical prostatectomy	VCUG	voiding cystourethrogram
CUA	Canadian Urological Association	KUB	kidneys, ureters, bladder	RPLND	retroperitoneal lymph node dissection	VIU	visual internal urethrotomy
CVA	costovertebral angle	LFT	liver function test	RTA	renal tubular acidosis	VUR	vesicoureteral reflux
d/c	discharge	LMN	lower motor neuron	RUG	retrograde urethrogram		
DHT	dihydrotestosterone	LUTS	lower urinary tract symptoms	SA	semen analysis		
DMSA	dimercaptosuccinic acid	MAG3	mercaptoacetyltriglycine	SCC	squamous cell carcinoma		
DRE	digital rectal exam			SUI	stress urinary incontinence		
DSD	detrusor sphincter dyssynergia			TMP/SMX	trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole		
EBRT	external beam radiation therapy						

Basic Anatomy Review

- recall that the anatomical position of the penis is erect; therefore, the anatomical ventral side of the penis appears to be the dorsal side of the flaccid penis

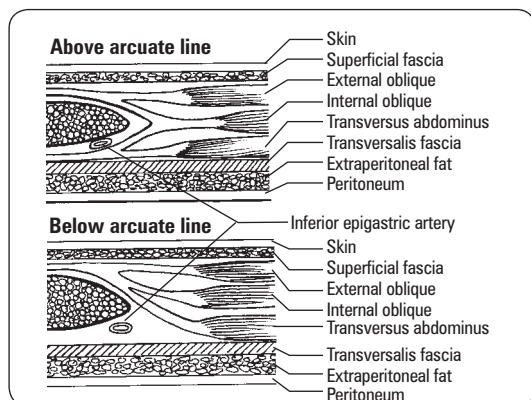


Figure 1. Midline cross-section of abdominal wall

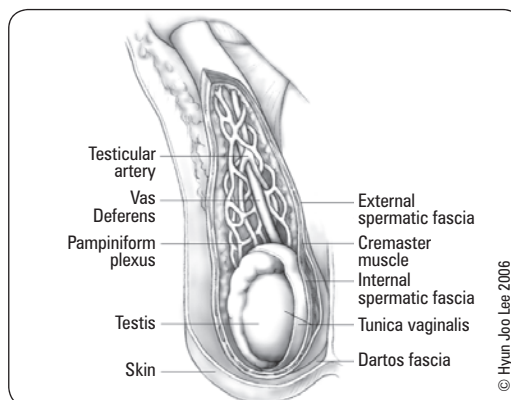


Figure 2. Anatomy of scrotum

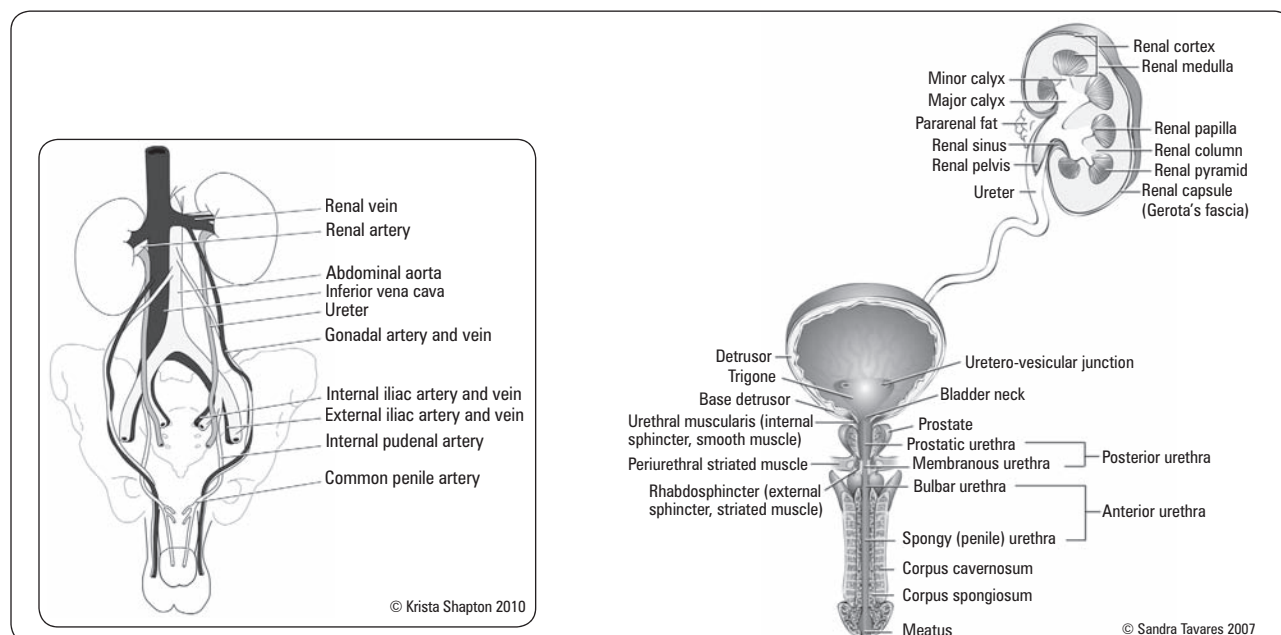


Figure 3. Essential genitourinary tract male anatomy

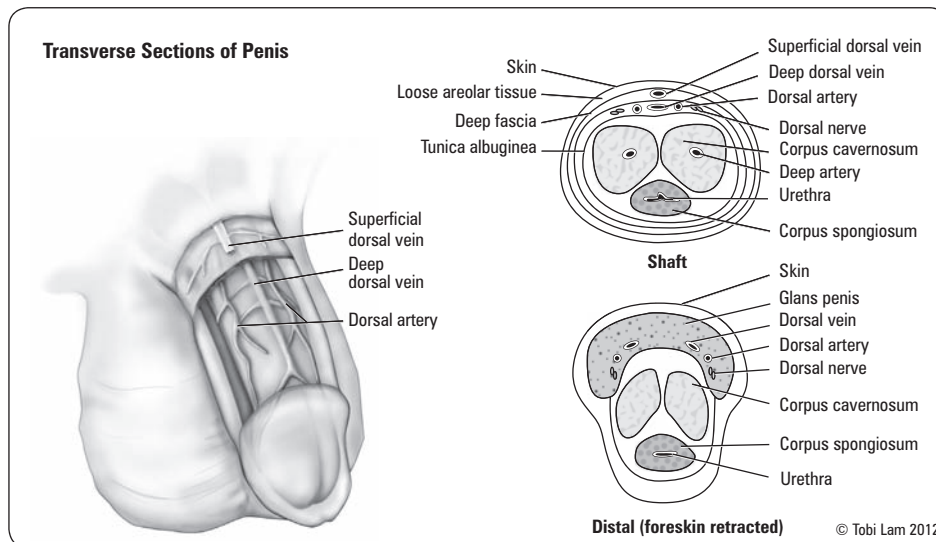


Figure 4. Cross section of the penis

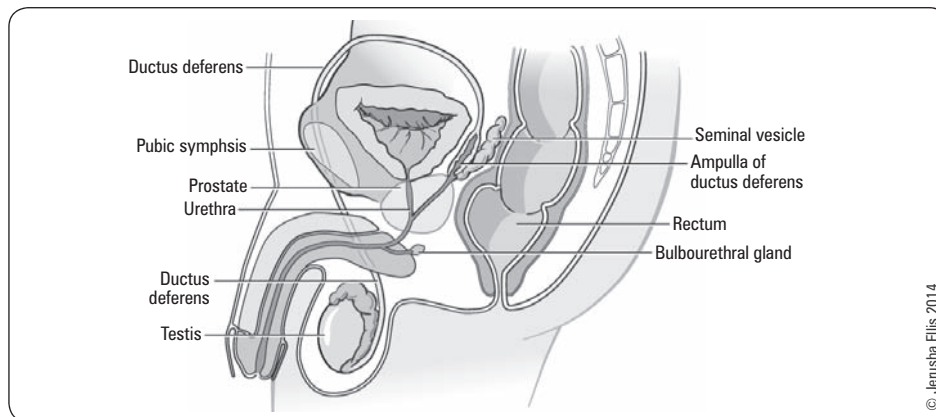


Figure 5. Median sagittal section of the male pelvis and perineum

Urologic History

- follow the OPQRSTUVW approach
 - note that pain may not be limited to the genital region (e.g. lower abdomen, CVA)
- inquire about risk factors: past urologic disease (e.g. UTI, stones, STD, cancers, anatomic abnormalities, family Hx, medications, lifestyle factors, trauma, previous surgical procedures)
- urinary habits
 - frequency of voiding, quality of urine, volume of voids, incontinence, nocturia
 - specific urinary symptoms include
 - ♦ storage symptoms: frequency, nocturia, urgency
 - ♦ voiding symptoms: straining, hesitancy, dysuria, intermittency, post-void dribbling, reduced stream, feeling of incomplete voiding
 - ♦ hematuria: part of stream during which bleeding occurs, blood clots
 - ♦ incontinence: rushing to washroom (urge); leakage with coughing, sneezing, laughing (stress); constant dribbling (overflow)
- sexual function
 - scrotal mass: see *Scrotal Mass*, U28
 - ED: see *Erectile Dysfunction*, U30
 - infertility: see *Infertility*, U33
- risk factors
 - past urologic disease (e.g. UTI, stones, cancers, STD), anatomic abnormalities, trauma, previous surgical procedures, medications, family Hx, lifestyle factors
- associated symptoms
 - N/V
 - bowel dysfunction
- constitutional symptoms
 - fever, chills, unintentional weight loss, night sweats, fatigue, malaise



Always ask about sexual function on history. Change in erectile function can be one of the first symptoms that there is concomitant vascular disease. If there is new onset ED, consider screening for diabetes and CAD risk factors

Hematuria (Blood in the Urine)

Macroscopic (Gross) Hematuria

Definition

- blood in the urine that can be seen with the naked eye

Classification

- see [Nephrology](#), NP21

Etiology

Table 1. Etiology by Age Group

Age (Years)	Etiology	
0-20	UTI, glomerulonephritis, congenital abnormalities	
20-40	UTI, stones, bladder tumor	
40-60	Male: bladder tumor, stones, UTI	Female: UTI, stones, bladder tumor
>60	Male: BPH, bladder tumor, UTI, RCC	Female: bladder tumor, UTI, RCC

Table 2. Etiology by Type

Pseudo-hematuria	Infectious/ Inflammatory	Malignancy	Benign	Structural	Hematologic
Vaginal bleeding Dyes (beets, rhodamine B in candy and juices) Hemoglobin (hemolytic anemia) Myoglobin (rhabdomyolysis) Drugs (rifampin, phenazopyridine, phenytoin) Porphyria Laxatives (phenolphthalein)	Pyelonephritis Cystitis Urethritis Glomerulonephritis Interstitial nephritis Tuberculosis	RCC (mainly in adult population) UCC Wilms' tumor (mainly in pediatric population) Leukemia	BPH Polyps Exercise-induced	Stones Trauma Foreign body Urethral stricture Polycystic kidneys Arteriovenous malformation Infarct	Anticoagulants Coagulation defects Sickle cell disease Thromboembolism

History

- inquire about timing of hematuria in urinary stream
 - initial: anterior urethra
 - terminal: bladder neck and prostatic urethra
 - total: bladder and/or above

Investigations

- CBC (r/o anemia, leukocytosis), electrolytes, Cr, BUN, INR, PTT
- urine studies
 - U/A, C&S, cytology
- imaging
 - CT (with contrast) has largely replaced IVP to investigate upper tracts
 - consider contraindications to contrast; allergy, renal insufficiency
 - U/S alone is not sufficient
 - cystoscopy to investigate lower tract (possible retrograde pyelogram)

Acute Management of Severe Bladder Hemorrhage

- manual irrigation via catheter with normal saline to remove clots
- CBI using large (22-26 Fr) 3-way Foley to help prevent clot formation
- cystoscopy if active bleeding
 - identify resectable tumors
 - coagulate obvious sites of bleeding
- refractory bleeding
 - intravesical agents
 - continuous intravesical irrigation with 1% aluminum potassium sulfate solution as needed
 - intravesical instillation of 1% silver nitrate solution
 - intravesical instillation of 1-4% formalin (requires GA and pre-procedure cystogram to rule out reflux)
 - embolization or ligation of iliac arteries
 - cystectomy and diversion (rarely performed)



Gross, painless hematuria in adults is bladder cancer until proven otherwise



Common Urologic Causes of Hematuria Can Be Classified as:

TICS

Trauma/Tumor/Toxins
Infection/Inflammatory
Calculi/Cysts
Surgery/Sickle cell and other hematological causes



Upper Tract Imaging Options

Intravenous Pyelogram (IVP)

Traditional option but rarely used (replaced by CTU). Reasonable sensitivity for UCC, but poor sensitivity for RCC

U/S: Superior to IVP for evaluation of renal parenchyma and renal cysts. Limited sensitivity for UCC and small renal masses. U/S alone is not sufficient for upper tract imaging

CT Urography (CTU): Optimal test for renal parenchyma, calculi, and infections. Involves exposure to radiation and IV contrast. Assess kidney function, allergies prior to use of contrast

Microscopic Hematuria

Definition

- blood in the urine that is not visible to the naked eye
- >3 RBCs/HPF on urinalysis of at least two separate samples

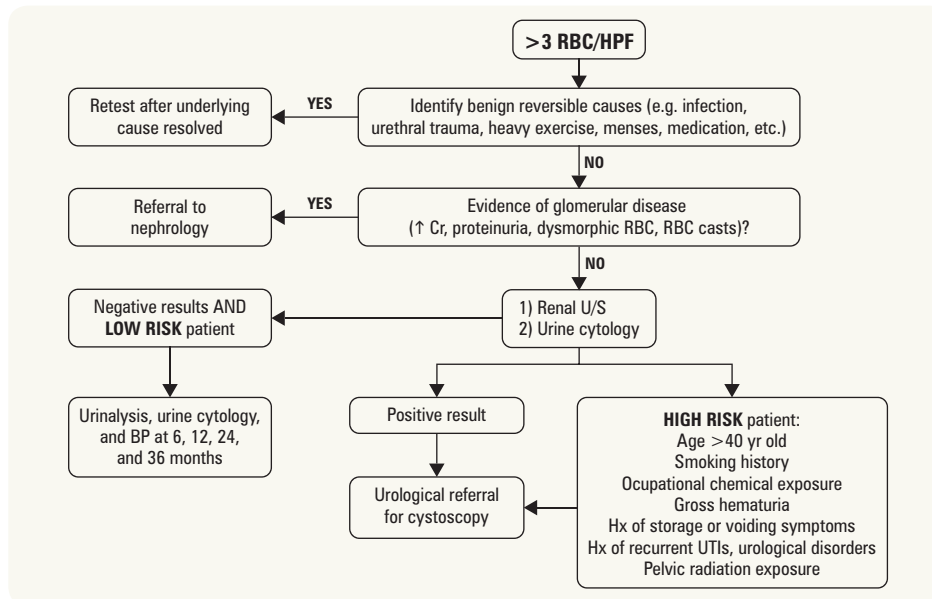


Figure 6. Workup of asymptomatic microscopic hematuria

Based on CUA Guidelines. Alternatively, the AUA recommends cystoscopy and CT urogram for all patients with confirmed microscopic hematuria; follow-up for negative workup is urinalysis yearly for two years, with repeat anatomic evaluation if microscopic hematuria persists

Voiding Dysfunction

- see [Gynecology](#), GY34 for relevant female topics



Voiding

- two phases of lower urinary tract function
 1. storage phase (bladder filling and urine storage)
 - ♦ accommodation and compliance
 - ♦ no involuntary contraction
 2. voiding phase (bladder emptying)
 - ♦ coordinated detrusor contraction
 - ♦ synchronous relaxation of outlet sphincters
 - ♦ no anatomic obstruction
- voiding dysfunction can therefore be classified as
 - failure to store: due to bladder or outlet
 - failure to void: due to bladder or outlet
- three types of symptoms
 - storage (formerly known as irritative)
 - voiding (formerly known as obstructive)
 - post-voiding

Urinary Incontinence



Definition

- involuntary leakage of urine

Etiology

- urgency incontinence
 - detrusor overactivity
 - ♦ CNS lesion, inflammation/infection (cystitis, stone, tumor), bladder neck obstruction (tumor, stone), BPH, idiopathic



Lower Urinary Tract Symptoms (LUTS)

Storage (FUND)

Frequency
Urgency
Nocturia
Dysuria

Voiding (SHED)

Stream changes
Hesitancy
Incomplete Emptying
Dribbling

- decreased compliance of bladder wall (inability to store urine)
 - CNS lesion, fibrosis
 - sphincter/urethral problem
- stress urinary incontinence (SUI)
 - common in women; seen in men after prostate cancer treatment or pelvic operations
 - urethral hypermobility
 - weakened pelvic floor and musculofascial urethral and vaginal supporting mechanisms allows bladder neck and urethra to descend with increased intra-abdominal pressure
 - urethra is pulled open by greater motion of posterior wall of outlet relative to anterior wall
 - associated with childbirth, pelvic surgery, aging, levator muscle weakness, obesity
 - intrinsic sphincter deficiency (ISD): weakness of the urethra and associated smooth and striated muscle elements
 - pelvic surgery, neurologic problem, aging and hypoestrogen state
 - ISD and urethral hypermobility can co-exist
- mixed incontinence
 - combination of stress and urgency incontinence
- overflow incontinence
 - is a term sometimes used to describe urinary incontinence as a complication of urinary retention; for causes of urinary retention see Table 4
 - use of the term is used it should be accompanied by the associated pathophysiology (e.g. BPH with overflow incontinence)

Epidemiology

- variable prevalence in women: 25-45%
- F:M = 2:1
- more frequent in the elderly, affecting 5-15% of those living in the community and 50% of nursing home residents

Table 3. Urinary Incontinence: Types and Treatments

Type	Urgency	Stress	Mixed
Definition	Involuntary leakage of urine preceded by a strong, sudden urge to void	Involuntary leakage of urine with sudden increases in intra-abdominal pressure	Urinary leakage associated with urgency and increased intra-abdominal pressure
Etiology	Bladder (detrusor overactivity)	Urethra/sphincter weakness, post-partum pelvic musculature weakness	Combination of bladder and sphincter issues
Diagnosis	Hx Urodynamics	Hx Urodynamics Stress test (have patient bear down/cough)	Hx Urodynamics Stress test
Therapy	Lifestyle changes (fluid alterations, diet, etc.) Bladder habit training Anticholinergics β3 agonist Neuromodulation Botulinum toxin A	Weight loss Kegel exercises Bulking agents Surgery (slings, tension-free vaginal tape, transobturator tape, artificial sphincters)	Combination of management of urge and stress incontinence



Causes of Reversible Urinary Incontinence

DIAPERS

Delirium
Inflammation/Infection
Atrophic vaginitis/urethritis
Pharmaceuticals/Psychological
Excess U/O
Restricted mobility/Retention
Stool impaction



Urgency is the symptom of a strong need to void; it is not necessarily associated with incontinence

Urinary Retention

Table 4. Etiology of Urinary Retention

Outflow Obstruction	Bladder Innervation	Pharmacologic	Infection
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bladder neck or urethra: calculus, clot, foreign body, neoplasm, neurological (DSD) Prostate: BPH, prostate cancer Urethra: stricture, phimosis, traumatic disruption Miscellaneous: constipation, pelvic mass 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Intracranial: CVA, tumor, Parkinson's, cerebral palsy Spinal cord: injury, disc herniation, MS DM Post-abdominal or pelvic surgery 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Anticholinergics Narcotics Antihypertensives (ganglionic blockers, methyldopa) OTC cold medications containing ephedrine or pseudoephedrine Antihistamines Psychoactive substances (e.g. ecstasy) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> GU: UTI, prostatitis, abscess, genital herpes Infected foreign body Varicella zoster

Clinical Features

- suprapubic pain
- palpable and/or percussible bladder (suprapubic)
- possible purulent/bloody meatal D/C
- increased size of prostate or reduced anal sphincter tone on DRE
- neurological: presence of abnormal or absent deep tendon reflexes, reduced "anal wink," saddle anesthesia



Acute vs. Chronic Retention

Acute retention is a medical emergency characterized by suprapubic pain and anuria with normal bladder volume and architecture

Chronic retention can be painless with greatly increased bladder volume and detrusor hypertrophy followed by atony (late)



If a trauma patient is unable to void, has blood at urethral meatus, a scrotal hematoma, or a high riding prostate, there is urethral injury until proven otherwise so catheterization is CONTRAINDICATED unless performed by urology staff or resident

Investigations

- CBC, electrolytes, Cr, BUN, U/A and urine C&S, U/S, cystoscopy, urodynamic studies, PVR

Treatment

- treat underlying cause
- catheterization
 - acute retention
 - ♦ immediate catheterization to relieve retention; leave Foley in to drain bladder; follow-up to determine cause; closely monitor fluid status and electrolytes (risk of POD)
 - chronic retention
 - ♦ intermittent catheterization by patient may be used; definitive treatment depends on etiology
- suprapubic tube placement
- for post-operative patients with retention:
 - encourage ambulation
 - α -blockers to relax bladder neck outlet
 - may need catheterization
 - definitive treatment will depend on etiology



Patients with ascites may have a falsely elevated PVR measured by bladder scan

Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia

Definition

- periurethral hyperplasia of stroma and epithelium in prostatic transition zone
- prostatic smooth muscle cells play a role in addition to hyperplasia

Etiology

- etiology unknown
 - DHT required (converted from testosterone by 5- α reductase)
 - possible role of impaired apoptosis, estrogens, other growth factors
 - genetic: increased risk in 1st degree relatives and twin studies

Epidemiology

- age-related, extremely common (50% of 50 yr olds, 80% of 80 yr olds)
- 25% of men will require treatment

Clinical Features

- result from outlet obstruction and compensatory changes in detrusor function
- voiding and storage symptoms
- DRE
 - prostate is smooth, rubbery, and symmetrically enlarged
- complications
 - retention
 - overflow incontinence
 - hydronephrosis
 - renal insufficiency
 - infection
 - gross hematuria
 - bladder stones

Investigations

- Hx, assessing LUTS and impact on QOL
 - may include self-administered questionnaires (IPSS or AUA symptom index for severity, progression, and treatment response)
- P/E, including DRE
- U/A to exclude UTI
- Cr to assess renal function
- uroflowmetry to measure flow rate (optional)
- PVR (optional)
- consider cystoscopy or transrectal ultrasound prior to potential surgical management to evaluate outlet and prostate volume
- biopsy if suspicious for malignancy, i.e. elevated PSA or abnormal DRE

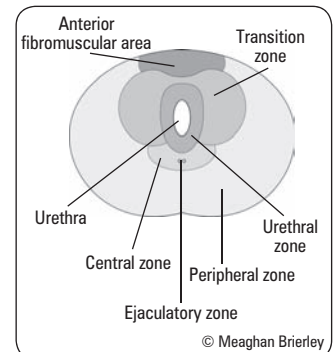


Figure 7. Cross-section of prostate



Prostate size does not correlate well with symptoms in BPH



Approximate Prostate Sizes

- 20 cc – chestnut
- 25 cc – plum
- 50 cc – lemon
- 75 cc – orange
- 100 cc – grapefruit



AUA BPH Symptom Score

FUNWISE

Frequency
Urgency
Nocturia
Weak stream
Intermittency
Straining
Emptying, incomplete feeling of

Each symptom graded out of 5
0-7: Mildly symptomatic
8-19: Moderately symptomatic
20-35: Severely symptomatic

Note: dysuria not included in score but is commonly associated with BPH

Treatment

Table 5. Treatment of BPH

	Conservative	Medical	Surgical	Minimally Invasive Surgical Therapies
When to Use	Asymptomatic patients	Moderate to severe symptoms that are distressing for patient	Significant symptom burden, acute urinary retention, refractory hematuria, recurrent infections	Patients who wish to avoid or may not tolerate surgery
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Watchful waiting: 50% of patients improve spontaneously • Lifestyle modifications (e.g. evening fluid restriction, planned voiding) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • α-adrenergic antagonists: reduce stromal smooth muscle tone • 5-α reductase inhibitor: block conversion of testosterone to DHT; act to reduce prostate size • Combination is synergistic • Anti-cholinergic agents (for storage LUTS, without elevated PVR) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TURP (see U41) • Laser ablation • TUIP (prostate <30 g) • Open prostatectomy 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Microwave therapy • TUNA • Prostatic stent (not commonly used)



Men with planned cataract surgery should avoid starting α -adrenergic antagonists until after their surgery due to the risk of intraoperative floppy iris syndrome



BPH Surgery Absolute Indication

- Renal failure with obstructive uropathy
- Refractory urinary retention

Relative Indications

- Recurrent UTIs
- Recurrent hematuria refractory to medical treatment
- Renal insufficiency (r/o other causes)
- Bladder stones



Finasteride for Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2010;10:CD006015

Purpose: To examine the effectiveness and safety of finasteride vs. placebo or other active controls for the treatment of urinary tract symptoms.

Summary of Findings:

1. Finasteride improved urinary symptoms more than placebo in trials >1 yr duration and significantly lowered the risk of BPH progression.
2. Compared with alpha blockers, finasteride was less effective than either doxazosin or terazosin, but equally as effective as tamsulosin.
3. Symptom improvement with finasteride + doxazosin is equal to doxazosin alone.
4. Finasteride treatment resulted in an increased risk of ejaculation disorder, impotence and lowered libido compared with placebo.
5. Compared with doxazosin and terazosin, finasteride had a lower risk of asthenia, dizziness, and postural hypotension.



Microwave Thermotherapy for Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2012;9:CD004135

Purpose: To evaluate the efficacy and safety of microwave thermotherapy for the treatment of benign prostatic obstruction.

Selection Criteria: RCTs evaluating transurethral microwave therapy (TUMT) for men with symptomatic BPH with multiple comparison groups.
Results/Conclusions: 15 studies, 1,585 patients, mean age 66.8 yr, 3-60 mo duration. Mean urinary symptom scores decreased by 65% with TUMT and 77% with TURP. The pooled mean peak urinary flow increased by 70% with TUMT and 119% with TURP. Compared with TURP TUMT was associated with decreased risks for retrograde ejaculation, treatment for strictures, hematuria, blood transfusions and transurethral resection syndrome, but increased risk for dysuria, urinary retention and retreatment for BPH symptoms. Overall, microwave thermotherapy techniques are effective alternatives to TURP and alpha blockers for treating symptomatic BPH, although less effective than TURP in improving symptom score and urinary flow.

Urethral Stricture

Definition

- decrease in urethral calibre due to scar formation in urethra (may also involve corpus spongiosum)
- M>F

Etiology

- congenital
 - failure of normal canalization (i.e. posterior urethral valves)
- trauma
 - instrumentation/catheterization (most common)
 - external trauma (e.g. burns, straddle injury)
 - foreign body
- infection
 - long-term indwelling catheter
 - STD (gonococcal or chlamydial disease)
- inflammation
 - balanitis xerotica obliterans (BXO); lichen sclerosis or chronic progressive sclerosing dermatosis of the male genitalia) causing meatal and urethral stenosis

Clinical Features

- voiding symptoms
- urinary retention
- hydronephrosis
- related infections: recurrent UTI, secondary prostatitis/epididymitis

Investigations

- laboratory findings
 - flow rates <10 mL/s (normal ~20 mL/s) on uroflowmetry
 - urine culture usually negative, but U/A may show pyuria
- radiologic findings
 - RUG and VCUG will demonstrate location
- cystoscopy

Treatment

- urethral dilatation
 - temporarily increases lumen size by breaking up scar tissue
 - healing will often reform scar tissue, recurrence of stricture
- visual internal urethrotomy (VIU)
 - endoscopically incise stricture
 - equal success rates to dilation with mid bulbar strictures <2 cm
 - high rate of recurrence (30-80%), avoid in younger patients
- open surgical reconstruction
 - complete stricture excision with anastomosis, \pm urethroplasty depending on location and size of stricture

Neurogenic Bladder

Definition

- malfunctioning urinary bladder due to deficiency in some aspect of its innervation

Neurophysiology

Table 6. Efferent Sympathetic, Parasympathetic, and Somatic Nerve Supply

Nerve Fibers	Nerve Roots	Neurotransmitter/Receptor	Target
Sympathetic	T10-L2	NA/Adrenergic	Trigone, internal sphincter, proximal urethra (α) Bladder body (β)
Somatic (pudendal)	S2-4	ACh/Nicotinic	External sphincter
Parasympathetic	S2-4	ACh/Muscarinic (M2, M3)	Detrusor

- stretch receptors in the bladder wall relay information to PMC and activate micturition reflex (normally inhibited by cortical input)
 - micturition
 - stimulation of parasympathetic neurons (bladder contraction)
 - inhibition of sympathetic and somatic neurons (internal and external sphincter relaxation, respectively)
 - urine storage
 - opposite of micturition
- voluntary action of external sphincter (pudendal nerve roots S2-S4) can inhibit urge to urinate
- cerebellum, basal ganglia, thalamus, and hypothalamus all have input at PMC in the brainstem

Classification of Neurologic Voiding Dysfunction

- neuropathic detrusor overactivity (formerly termed detrusor hyperreflexia)
 - lesion above PMC (e.g. stroke, tumor, MS, Parkinson's disease)
 - loss of voluntary inhibition of voiding
 - intact pathway inferior to PMC maintains coordination of bladder and sphincter
- detrusor sphincter dyssynergia (DSD)
 - suprasacral lesion of spinal cord (e.g. trauma, MS, arteriovenous malformation, transverse myelitis)
 - loss of coordination between detrusor and sphincter (detrusor contracts on closed sphincter and vice versa)
 - component of detrusor overactivity as well
- detrusor atony/areflexia
 - lesion of sacral cord or peripheral efferents (e.g. trauma, DM, disc herniation, MS, congenital spinal cord abnormality, post abdominoperineal resection)
 - flaccid bladder which fails to contract
 - may progress to poorly compliant bladder with high pressures
- peripheral autonomic neuropathy
 - deficient bladder sensation \rightarrow increasing residual urine \rightarrow decompensation (e.g. DM, neurosyphilis, herpes zoster)
- muscular lesion
 - can involve detrusor, smooth/striated sphincter

Neuro-Urologic Evaluation

- hx and P/E (urologic and general neurologic)
- U/A, renal profile
- imaging
 - U/S to r/o hydronephrosis and stones
- cystoscopy
- urodynamic studies
 - uroflowmetry to assess flow rate, pattern
 - filling CMG to assess capacity, compliance, detrusor overactivity
 - voiding CMG (pressure-flow study) to assess bladder contractility and extent of bladder outflow obstruction
 - video study to visualize bladder/bladder neck/urethra during CMG using x-ray contrast
 - EMG ascertains presence of coordinated or uncoordinated voiding, allows accurate diagnosis of DSD

Treatment

- goals of treatment
 - prevent renal failure
 - prevent infections
 - achieve social continence



4Cs of Bladder

Capacity: 350-500 cc;

Compliance: Δ Pressure/ Δ Volume

Contractility: voluntary and sustained

Cooperation: of bladder and sphincter



Nerve roots in micturition

"S2-3-4 keeps the urine off the floor"



"Spinal shock", initially manifests as atonic bladder

- clean intermittent catheterization (CIC)
- treatment options depend on status of bladder and urethra
 - bladder hyperactivity → anticholinergic medications to relax bladder (see *Urinary Incontinence, U5*)
 - ♦ if refractory
 - botulinum toxin injections into bladder wall
 - occasionally augmentation cystoplasty (enlarging bladder volume and improving compliance by grafting section of detubularized bowel onto the bladder)
 - occasionally urinary diversion (ileal conduit or continent diversion) in severe cases if bladder management unsuccessful
 - flaccid bladder → CIC

Dysuria

Definition

- painful urination

Etiology

Table 7. Differential Diagnosis of Dysuria

Infectious	Cystitis, urethritis, prostatitis, epididymitis/orchitis (if associated with lower tract inflammation), cervicitis, vulvovaginitis, perineal inflammation/infection, TB, vestibulitis
Neoplasm	Kidney, bladder, prostate, penis, vagina/vulva, BPH
Calculi	Bladder stone, urethral stone, ureteral stone
Inflammatory	Seronegative arthropathies (reactive arthritis: arthritis, uveitis, urethritis), drug side effects, autoimmune disorders, chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CPPS), interstitial cystitis
Hormonal	Endometriosis, hypoestrogenism
Trauma	Catheter insertion, post-coital cystitis (honeymoon cystitis)
Psychogenic	Somatization disorder, depression, stress/anxiety disorder
Other	Contact sensitivity, foreign body, radiation/chemical cystitis, diverticulum

Investigations

- focused Hx and P/E to determine cause (fever, d/c, conjunctivitis, CVA tenderness, back/joint pain)
 - any d/c (urethral, vaginal, cervical) should be sent for gonococcus/chlamydia testing; wet mount if vaginal d/c
 - U/A and urine C&S
 - if suspect infection, may start empiric Antibiotic treatment
 - ± imaging of urinary tract (tumor, stones)

Hydronephrosis

Definition

- dilation of the renal pelvis and calyces caused by the impairment in antegrade urine flow

Etiology

- mechanical
 - congenital: see *Congenital Abnormalities, U35*
 - acquired
 - ♦ intrinsic: trauma, inflammation and bleeding, calculi, urologic neoplasms, BPH, urethral stricture, phimosis, previous urological surgery
 - ♦ extrinsic: trauma, neoplasms (uterine fibroid; colorectal, uterine, and cervical malignancies; lymphoma), aortic aneurysm, pregnancy (gravid uterus)
- functional
 - neuropathic: neurogenic bladder, diabetic neuropathy, spinal cord disease
 - pharmacologic: anticholinergics, α-adrenergic agonists
 - hormonal: pregnancy (progesterone decreases ureteral tone)

Investigations

- focused Hx, inquiring about pain (flank, lower abdomen, testes, labia), U/O, medication use, pregnancy, trauma, fever, Hx of UTIs, calculi, and PID and urological surgery

- CBC, electrolytes, Cr, BUN, U/A, C&S
- imaging studies (U/S is >90% sensitive and specific)
 - MAG3 diuretic renogram: evaluates differential renal function and demonstrates if functional obstruction exists

Treatment

- hydronephrosis can be physiologic
- treatment should be guided at improving symptoms, treating infections, or improving renal function
- urgent treatment may require percutaneous nephrostomy tube or ureteral stenting to relieve pressure

Post-Obstructive Diuresis

Definition

- polyuria resulting from relief of severe chronic obstruction
- >3 L/24 h or >200 cc/h over each of two consecutive hours

Pathophysiology

- **physiologic POD** secondary to excretion of retained urea, Na⁺, and H₂O (high osmotic load) after relief of obstruction
 - self-limiting; usually resolves in 48 h with PO fluids but may persist to pathologic POD
- **pathologic POD** is a Na⁺-wasting nephropathy secondary to impaired concentrating ability of the renal tubules due to
 - decreased reabsorption of NaCl in the thick ascending limb and urea in the collecting tubule
 - increased medullary blood flow (solute washout)
 - increased flow and solute concentration in the distal nephrons

Management

- admit patient and closely monitor hemodynamic status and electrolytes (Na⁺ and K⁺ q6-12h and replace prn; follow Cr and BUN to baseline)
- monitor U/O q2h and ensure total fluid intake <U/O by replacing every 1 cc U/O with 0.5 cc 1/2 NS IV (PO fluids if physiologic POD)
- avoid glucose-containing fluid replacement (iatrogenic diuresis)

Infectious and Inflammatory Diseases

Table 8. Antibiotic Treatment of Urological Infections

Condition	Drug	Duration
Urethritis	Non-Gonococcal:	
	azithromycin (1 g PO)	x 1
	OR	
	doxycycline (100 mg PO bid)	7 d
Gonococcal:		
	ceftriaxone (250 mg IM) AND treat for <i>Chlamydia trachomatis</i>	x 1
Simple, Uncomplicated UTI	TMP-SMX (160 mg/800 mg PO bid)	3 d
	OR	
	nitrofurantoin (100 mg PO bid)	5 d
Complicated UTI (see <i>Classification</i> , U12 for features)	ciprofloxacin (1 g PO daily OR 400 mg IV q12h)	up to 2-3 wk
	OR	
	ampicillin (1 g IV q6h) + gentamicin (1 mg/kg IV q8h)	up to 2-3 wk
	OR	
	ceftriaxone (1-2 g IV q24h)	up to 2-3 wk
Recurrent/Chronic Cystitis	*prophylactic treatment	
	continuous: TMP-SMX (40 mg/200 mg PO qd OR 3x/wk)	6-12 mo
	OR	
	nitrofurantoin (50-100 mg PO qd)	6-12 mo
	post-coital: TMP-SMX (40 mg/200 mg-80 mg/400 mg)	within 2 h of coitus
	OR	
	nitrofurantoin (50-100 mg PO qd)	within 2 h of coitus

Table 8. Antibiotic Treatment of Urological Infections (continued)

Condition	Drug	Duration
Acute Prostatitis	ciprofloxacin (500-750 mg PO bid)	2-4 wk
	OR	
	TMP-SMX (160 mg/800 mg PO bid)	4 wk
	OR	
	IV therapy with gentamicin and ampicillin, penicillin with β -lactamase inhibitor, 3rd gen cephalosporin, OR a fluoroquinolone	4 wk total (IV and oral step-down)
Chronic Prostatitis	ciprofloxacin (500 mg PO bid)	4-6 wk
Epididymitis/Orchitis	<35 yr:	
	ceftriaxone (200 mg IM)	x 1
	AND	
	doxycycline (100 mg PO bid)	10 d
	≥ 35 yr:	
	ofloxacin (300 mg PO bid)	10 d
Acute Uncomplicated Pyelonephritis	ciprofloxacin (500 mg PO bid)	7 d
	\pm ceftriaxone (1 g IV) OR ciprofloxacin (400 mg IV)	x 1
	OR	
	IV therapy with a fluoroquinolone, gentamicin and ampicillin, extended spectrum cephalosporin, extended spectrum penicillin, OR a carbapenem	14 d total (IV and oral step-down)



Antibiotic therapy should always be based on local resistance patterns and adjusted according to culture and sensitivity results



IV antibiotics should be stepped down to oral when the patient is afebrile and clinically stable



Acute uncomplicated pyelonephritis: suspected or confirmed enterococcus infection requires treatment with ampicillin



Urinary Tract Infection

- for UTIs during pregnancy, see [Obstetrics](#), OB19

Definition

- symptoms suggestive of UTI + evidence of pyuria and bacteriuria on U/A or urine C&S
 - if asymptomatic + 100,000 CFU/mL = asymptomatic bacteriuria; only requires treatment in certain patients (e.g. pregnancy)

Classification

- uncomplicated: lower UTI in a setting of functionally and structurally normal urinary tract
- complicated: structural and/or functional abnormality, male patients, immunocompromised, diabetic, iatrogenic complication, pregnancy, pyelonephritis, catheter-associated
- recurrent: see [Recurrent/Chronic Cystitis](#), U13

Risk Factors

- stasis and obstruction
 - residual urine due to impaired urine flow e.g. PUVs, reflux, medication, BPH, urethral stricture, cystocele, neurogenic bladder
- foreign body
 - introduce pathogen or act as nidus of infection e.g. catheter, instrumentation
- decreased resistance to organisms
 - DM, malignancy, immunosuppression, spermicide use, estrogen depletion, antimicrobial use
- other factors
 - trauma, anatomic abnormalities, female, sexual activity, fecal incontinence

Clinical Features

- storage symptoms: frequency, urgency, dysuria
- voiding symptoms: hesitancy, post-void dribbling
- other: suprapubic pain, hematuria, foul-smelling urine
- pyelonephritis – if present: typically presents with more severe symptoms (e.g. fever/chills, CVA tenderness, flank pain)

Organisms

- typical organisms
- atypical organisms
 - tuberculosis (TB)
 - Chlamydia trachomatis*
 - Mycoplasma (*Ureaplasma urealyticum*)
 - fungi (*Candida*)

Indications for Investigations

- pyelonephritis
- persistence of pyuria/symptoms following adequate antibiotic therapy
- severe infection with an increase in Cr
- recurrent/persistent infections
- atypical pathogens (urea splitting organisms)
- hx of structural abnormalities/decreased flow



Cystitis: Common Pathogens

KEEPS

Klebsiella sp.
E. coli (90%), other Gram-negatives
Enterococci
Proteus mirabilis, *Pseudomonas*
S. saprophyticus

Investigations

- U/A, urine C&S
 - UA: leukocytes \pm nitrites \pm hematuria
 - C&S: midstream, catheterized, or suprapubic aspirate
- if hematuria present, retest post-treatment, if persistent need hematuria workup (see *Microscopic Hematuria*, U5)
- U/S, CT scan if indicated

Treatment

- see Table 8 for approach to ABx therapy
- if febrile, consider admission with IV therapy and r/o obstruction

Recurrent/Chronic Cystitis

Definition

- ≥ 3 UTIs/yr

Etiology

- bacterial reinfection (80%) vs. bacterial persistence (relapse)
 - **bacterial reinfection**
 - ♦ recurrence of infection with either 1) a different organism, 2) the same organism if cultured >2 wk following therapy, or 3) with any organism with an intermittent sterile culture
 - **bacterial persistence**
 - ♦ same organism cultured within 2 wk of sensitivity-based therapy

Investigations

- assess predisposing factors as described above
- investigations may include cystoscopy, U/S, CT

Treatment

- lifestyle changes (limit caffeine intake, increase fluid/H₂O intake)
- ABx: continuous vs. post-coital
- post-menopausal women: consider topical or systemic estrogen therapy
- no treatment for asymptomatic bacteriuria except in pregnant women or patients undergoing urinary tract instrumentation

**Prevention of UTIs**

- Maintain good hydration (try cranberry juice)
- Wipe from front to back to avoid contamination of the urethra with feces from the rectum
- Avoid feminine hygiene sprays and scented douches
- Empty bladder immediately before and after intercourse

Interstitial Cystitis (Painful Bladder or Bladder Pain Syndrome)

Definition

- bladder pain, chronic urgency and frequency without other reasonable causation

Classification

- non-ulcerative (more common)
- ulcerative

Etiology

- unknown
 - theories: increased epithelial permeability, autoimmune, neurogenic, defective GAG layer overlying mucosa
 - associations: severe allergies, IBS, fibromyalgia

Epidemiology

- prevalence: 20/100,000
- 90% of cases are in females
- mean age at onset is 40 yr (non-ulcerative tends to affect a younger to middle-aged population, while ulcerative tends to be seen in middle-aged to older)

Clinical Features

- pain associated with the bladder
- glomerulations (submucosal petechiae) or Hunner's lesions (ulcers) on cystoscopic examination
- urinary urgency
- negative U/A, urine C&S, and urine cytology

Differential Diagnosis

- UTI, vaginitis, bladder tumor
- radiation/chemical cystitis
- eosinophilic/TB cystitis
- bladder calculi



Cystoscopic evaluation is not necessary to make a diagnosis

Treatment

- first-line: patient empowerment (diet, lifestyle, stress management), pain management
- second-line
 - oral: pentosan polysulfate sodium, amitriptyline, cimetidine, hydroxyzine
 - intravesical: dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO), heparin, lidocaine
- third-line: cystoscopy with bladder hydrodistention (traditionally diagnostic) under GA, treat Hunner's lesions if present
- fourth-line: neuromodulation, pain management
- fifth-line: cyclosporine A, intradetrusor BTX
- sixth-line: diversion w/ or w/out cystectomy, substitution cystoplasty
- surgery (last resort): augmentation cystoplasty, or urinary diversion ± cystectomy


Four Symptom Scores Exist to Evaluate and Monitor Patients with Interstitial Cystitis

- Interstitial Cystitis Symptom Index (ICSI)
- Interstitial Cystitis Problem Index (ICPI)
- Wisconsin Interstitial Cystitis (UW-IC) Scale
- Pain, Urgency and Frequency (PUF) Score

Acute Pyelonephritis

Definition

- infection of the renal parenchyma with local and systemic manifestations
- clinical diagnosis of flank pain, fever and elevated WBC

Etiology

- ascending (usually GN bacilli) or hematogenous route (usually GP cocci)
- causative microorganisms
 - gram positives: *Enterococcus faecalis*, *S. aureus*, *S. saprophyticus*
 - gram negatives: *E. coli* (most common), *Klebsiella*, *Proteus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Enterobacter*
- common underlying causes of pyelonephritis
 - stones, strictures, prostatic obstruction, vesicoureteric reflux, neurogenic bladder, catheters, DM, sickle-cell disease, PCKD, immunosuppression, post-renal transplant, instrumentation, pregnancy

Clinical Features

- rapid onset (<24 h)
- LUTS including frequency, urgency, hematuria; NOT dysuria unless concurrent cystitis
- fever, chills, nausea, vomiting, myalgia, malaise
- CVA tenderness or exquisite flank pain

Investigations

- U/A, urine C&S
- CBC and differential: leukocytosis, left shift
- imaging indicated if suspicious of complicated pyelonephritis or symptoms do not improve with 48-72 h of treatment
 - abdominal/pelvic U/S
 - CT
- nuclear medicine: DMSA scan can be used to help secure the diagnosis
 - a photopenic defect indicates active infection or scar; if normal alternative diagnoses should be considered

Treatment

- hemodynamically stable
 - outpatient oral ABx treatment ± single initial IV dose (see Table 8)
- severe or non-resolving
 - admit, hydrate, and treat with IV ABx (see Table 8)
- emphysematous pyelonephritis
 - percutaneous nephrostomy tube and antibiotics first line
 - consider early nephrectomy after IV ABx started and patient stabilized
- renal obstruction
 - admit for emergent stenting or percutaneous nephrostomy tube



Nitrofurantoin has poor tissue penetration and therefore is not used to treat pyelonephritis (requires post-renal uroconcentration)



4-Glass Test: Prostatic source is suggested when colony counts in EPS and VB3 exceed those of VB1 and VB2 by 10x



Prostatic massage may cause extreme tenderness and increased risk of inducing sepsis, abscess, or epididymo-orchitis



It is not recommended to do a serum PSA during acute bacterial prostatitis

Prostatitis/Prostatodynia

Epidemiology

- most common urologic diagnosis in men <50 yr
- prevalence 2-12%

Classification

Table 9. Comparison of the Three Types of Prostatitis

	Category I: Acute Bacterial Prostatitis	Category II: Chronic Bacterial Prostatitis	Category III: Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome (CPPS) (Abacterial)
Etiology	Ascending urethral infection with KEEPS (see U12 sidebar): 80% <i>E. coli</i> Often associated with outlet obstruction, recent cystoscopy, prostatic biopsy Most infections occur in the peripheral zone (see Figure 7, U7)	Recurrent exacerbations of acute prostatitis-like signs and symptoms Recurrent UTI with same organism	Divided into inflammatory (IIIA) and non-inflammatory (IIIB) Intraprostatic reflux of urine \pm urethral hypertonia Multifactorial (immunological, neuropathic, neuroendocrine, psychosocial)
Clinical Features	Acute onset fever, chills, malaise Rectal, lower back, and perineal pain LUTS	Pelvic pain, storage LUTS, ejaculatory pain, post-ejaculatory pain	Pelvic pain, storage LUTS, ejaculatory pain, post-ejaculatory pain
Investigations	P/E: abdomen, external genitalia, perineum, prostate U/A Blood CBC, C&S Transrectal U/S if non-resolving/suspect prostatic abscess	P/E: as per Category I + pelvic floor Urine C&S: 4-glass test VB1 (voided bladder): initial (urethra) VB2: midstream (bladder) EPS (expressed prostatic secretions): not usually performed VB3: post-massage/DRE	Same as per Category II NIH-CPSI score* Consider psychological assessment
Treatment	Supportive measures PO or IV ABx depending how sick (see Table 8) May consider catheterization in patients with severe obstructive LUTS or retention I&D of abscess if present	ABx (see Table 8) Consider addition of an α -blocker	Supportive measures Trial of ABx therapy if newly diagnosed Multimodal treatment strategy may include: α -blocker Anti-inflammatories Phytotherapy (quercetin, cernilton)

*NIH-CPSI: National Institute of Health Chronic Prostatitis Symptom Index

Epididymitis and Orchitis



Etiology

- common infectious causes
 - <35 yr: *N. gonorrhoeae* or *Chlamydia trachomatis*
 - ≥ 35 yr or penetrative anal intercourse: GI organisms (especially *E. coli*)
- other causes
 - mumps infection may involve orchitis, post-parotitis
 - TB
 - syphilis
 - granulomatous (autoimmune) in elderly men
 - amiodarone (involves only head of epididymis)
 - chemical: reflux of urine into ejaculatory ducts

Risk Factors

- UTI
- unprotected sexual contact
- instrumentation/catheterization
- increased pressure in prostatic urethra (straining, voiding, heavy lifting) may cause reflux of urine along vas deferens \rightarrow sterile epididymitis
- immunocompromise

Clinical Features

- sudden onset scrotal pain and swelling \pm radiation along cord to flank
- scrotal erythema and tenderness
- fever
- storage symptoms, purulent d/c
- reactive hydrocele

Investigations

- U/A, urine C&S
- \pm urethral d/c: Gram stain/culture
- if diagnosis uncertain, must do
 - color-flow Doppler U/S to r/o testicular torsion

Treatment

- r/o torsion (see *Investigations* and Table 23, U28)
- see Table 8 for ABx therapy
- scrotal support, bed rest, ice, analgesia

Complications

- if severe \rightarrow testicular atrophy
- 30% have persistent infertility problems



Prehn's Sign: pain may be relieved with elevation of testicles in epididymitis but not in testicular torsion. Poor sensitivity, especially in children



If unsure between diagnoses of epididymitis and torsion, always go to OR
Remember: torsion > 6 h has poor prognosis



Inadequately treated acute epididymitis may lead to chronic epididymitis or epididymo-orchitis

Urethritis

Etiology

- infectious or inflammatory (e.g. reactive arthritis)

Table 10. Infectious Urethritis: Gonococcal vs. Non-Gonococcal

	Gonococcal	Non-gonococcal
Causative Organism	<i>Neisseria gonorrhoeae</i>	Usually <i>Chlamydia trachomatis</i>
Diagnosis	Hx of sexual contact, thick, profuse, yellow-gray purulent d/c, LUTS Gram stain (GN diplococci), urine PCR and/or culture from urethral specimen	Hx of sexual contact, mucoid whitish purulent d/c, \pm storage LUTS Gram stain demonstrates >4 PMN/oil immersion field, no evidence of <i>N. gonorrhoeae</i> , urine PCR and/or culture from urethral specimen
Treatment	see Table 8	see Table 8



If culture negative or unresponsive to treatment consider: *Ureaplasma urealyticum*, *Mycoplasma genitalium*, *Trichomonas vaginalis*, HSV, or adenovirus



Reactive Arthritis (formerly known as Reiter's syndrome)
Urethritis, uveitis (or conjunctivitis), and arthritis
(can't pee, can't see, can't climb a tree)



Stone Disease

Epidemiology

- prevalance of 2-3%
- M:F = 3:1
- peak incidence 30-50 yr of age
- recurrence rate: 10% at one yr, 50% at 5 yr, 60-80% lifetime

Risk Factors

- hereditary: RTA, Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, cystinuria, xanthinuria, oxaluria, etc.
- lifestyle: minimal fluid intake; excess vitamin C, oxalate, purines, calcium
- medications: loop diuretics (furosemide, bumetanide), acetazolamide, topiramate, and zonisamide
- medical conditions: UTI (with urea-splitting organisms: *Proteus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Providencia*, *Klebsiella*, *Mycoplasma*, *Serratia*, *S. aureus*), myeloproliferative disorders, IBD, gout, DM, hypercalcemia disorders (hyperparathyroidism, tumor lysis syndrome, sarcoidosis, histoplasmosis), obesity (BMI >30)

Clinical Features

- urinary obstruction \rightarrow upstream distention \rightarrow pain
 - flank pain from renal capsular distention (non-colicky)
 - severe waxing and waning pain radiating from flank to groin, testis, or tip of penis due to stretching of collecting system or ureter (ureteral colic)
- writhing, never comfortable, nausea, vomiting, hematuria (90% microscopic), diaphoresis, tachycardia, tachypnea
- occasionally symptoms of trigonal irritation (frequency, urgency)
- bladder stones result in: storage and voiding LUTS, terminal hematuria, suprapubic pain
- if fever, r/o concurrent pyelonephritis and/or obstruction

Table 11. Differential Diagnosis of Renal Colic

GU	Abdominal	Neurological
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pyelonephritis Ureteral obstruction from other cause: UPJ obstruction, clot colic secondary to gross hematuria, sloughed papillae Gynecological: ectopic pregnancy, torsion/rupture of ovarian cyst, PID 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AAA Bowel ischemia Pancreatitis Other acute abdominal crisis 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Radiculitis (L1): herpes zoster, nerve root compression

Location of Stones

- calyx: may cause flank discomfort, persistent infection, persistent hematuria, or remain asymptomatic
- pelvis: tend to cause obstruction at UPJ, may cause persistent infection
- ureter: <5 mm diameter will pass spontaneously in 75% of patients

Stone Pathogenesis

- supersaturation of stone constituents (at appropriate temperature and pH)
- stasis, low flow, and low volume of urine (dehydration)
- crystal formation and stone nidus
- loss of inhibitory factors
 - citrate (forms soluble complex with calcium)
 - magnesium (forms soluble complex with oxalate)
 - pyrophosphate
 - Tamm-Horsfall glycoprotein



Key Points in Stone Hx

- Diet (especially FLUID INTAKE)
- Predisposing medical conditions
- Predisposing medications
- Previous episodes/investigations/treatments
- Family Hx (1st degree relative)



The four narrowest passage points for upper tract stones are:

- UPJ
- Pelvic brim
- Under vas deferens/broad ligament
- UVJ



	Radiopaque	Radiolucent
KUB	Calcium Struvite Cystine	Uric acid Indinavir Atazanavir
CT	Calcium Struvite Cystine Uric acid	Indinavir Atazanavir

Approach to Renal Stone

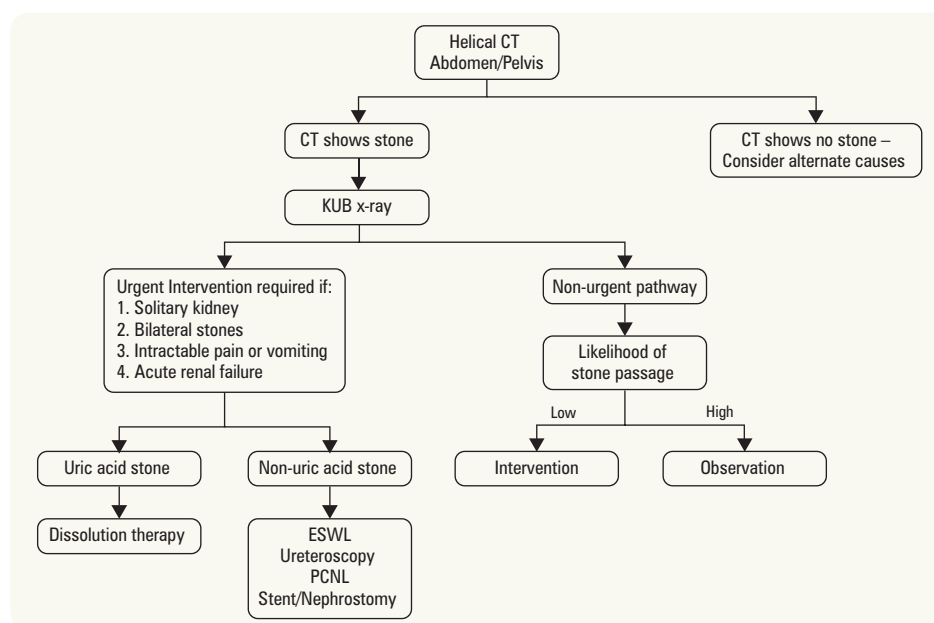


Figure 8. Approach to renal stone

Investigations

Table 12. Investigations for Renal Stones

	CBC, uric acid, U/A, urine C&S	KUB x-ray	CT scan	Abdominal ultrasound	Cystoscopy	PTH, 24 h urine x 2 for volume, Cr, Ca ²⁺ , Na ⁺ , PO ₄ ³⁻ , Mg ²⁺ , oxalate, citrate, ± cystine
Who gets it?	Everyone	Most	First episode renal colic	Pediatric cases or those concerning for obstruction	± Those concerning for bladder stone	Recurrent Ca ²⁺ stone formers ± pediatric cases
Why is it done?	May show signs of infection, ± sensitivities	90% of stones are radiopaque Good for follow-up	Distinguish radiolucent stone from soft tissue filling defect X-ray comparison	Identify and follow-up stone without radiation exposure Visualize hydronephrosis	Visualize bladder	Need to rule out metabolic cause for stones
Cautions	–	Do not mistake phleboliths for stones!	Radiation (especially if female of child bearing age) Must be a non-contrast scan	Not good at visualizing stones in ureter	–	–

Treatment – Acute

- medical
 - analgesic ± antiemetic
 - NSAIDs help lower intra-ureteral pressure
 - medical expulsion therapy (MET)
 - ♦ α-blockers: increase rate of spontaneous passage in distal ureteral stones
 - ♦ calcium channel blockers
 - ± Abx for bacteriuria
 - IV fluids if vomiting (note: IV fluids do NOT promote stone passage)
- interventional
 - required if obstruction endangers patient, e.g. sepsis, renal failure
 - first line: ureteric stent (via cystoscopy)
 - second line: image-guided percutaneous nephrostomy
- admit if necessary
 - see sidebar: *Indications for Admission to Hospital*

Treatment – Elective

- medical
 - likely conservative if ureteral stone <10 mm or kidney stone <5 mm and no complications/symptoms well controlled
 - ♦ stones <5 mm especially likely to pass spontaneously
 - PO fluids to increase urine volume to >2 L/d (3–4 L if cystine) and MET
 - specific to stone type (see Table 13)
 - periodic imaging to monitor stone position and assess for hydronephrosis
 - progress to interventional stone removal methods if symptoms worsen or fail to improve (indicating stone passage)



Detailed metabolic studies are NOT recommended unless complex patient (recurrent stone formers, pregnancy, pediatrics, strong family hx, underlying kidney or systemic disease, etc.)



24 h urine collections must be done AFTER discontinuing stone preventing/promoting medications



Indications for Admission to Hospital

- Intractable pain
- Intractable vomiting
- Fever (suggests infection)
- Compromised renal function (including single kidney, bilateral obstructing stone)
- Pregnancy



Stones and Infection

If septic, urgent decompression via ureteric stent or percutaneous nephrostomy is indicated. Definitive treatment of the stone should be delayed until the sepsis has cleared



Alpha-Blockers as Medical Expulsive Therapy for Ureteral Stones

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2014;4:CD008509

Purpose: To determine whether or not alpha blockers compared with other pharmacological treatments or placebo improve stone clearance rates and other clinically relevant outcomes in patients presenting with symptoms of stones less than 10 mm confirmed by imaging.

Results/Conclusions: 32 RCTs, 5,864 participants. Although patients using α-blockers were more likely to experience adverse effects compared to standard therapy, stone-free rates were significantly higher in the α-blocker group (RR 1.48, 95% CI 1.33–1.64), expulsion time was 2.91 d shorter, and there was a reduction in the number of pain episodes (MD -0.48, 95% CI -0.94 to -0.01), the need for analgesic medication (MD -38.17, 95% CI -74.93 to -1.41), and hospitalization (RR 0.35, 95% CI 0.13–0.97). α-blockers should therefore be offered as a primary treatment modality for ureteral stones.

- interventional
 - kidney
 - ♦ may stent prior to ESWL if stone is 1.5-2.5 cm
 - ♦ ESWL if stone <2 cm
 - ♦ PCNL if stone >2 cm
 - ureteral stones >10 mm
 - ♦ ESWL and URS are both first line treatment modalities for all locations
 - URS has significantly greater stone-free rates for stones at all locations in ureter, but also has higher complication rates (ureter perforation, stricture formation, etc.)
 - ♦ PCNL is second line treatment
 - ♦ laparoscopic or open stone removal (very rare)
 - bladder
 - ♦ transurethral stone removal or cystolitholapaxy
 - ♦ remove outflow obstruction (TURP or stricture dilatation)

Prevention

- dietary modification
 - increase fluid (>2 L/d), K⁺ intake
 - reduce animal protein, oxalate, Na⁺, sucrose, and fructose intake
 - avoid high-dose vitamin C supplements
- medications
 - thiazide diuretics for hypercalciuria
 - allopurinol for hyperuricosuria
 - potassium citrate for hypocitraturia, hyperuricosuria



Indications for PCNL

- Size >2 cm
- Staghorn
- UPJ obstruction
- Calyceal diverticulum
- Cystine stones (poorly fragmented with ESWL)
- Anatomical abnormalities
- Failure of less invasive modalities



Although hypercalciuria is a risk factor for stone formation, decreasing dietary calcium is NOT recommended to prevent stone formation. Low dietary calcium leads to increased GI oxalate absorption and higher urine levels of calcium oxalate



Consideration must be given to monitoring stone formers with periodic imaging (i.e. at 1 yr and then q2-4yr based on likelihood of recurrence)

Table 13. Stone Classification

Type of Stone	Calcium (75-85%)	Uric Acid (5-10%)	Struvite (5-10%)	Cystine (1%)
Etiology	Hypercalciuria Hyperuricosuria (25% of patients with Ca ²⁺ stones) Hyperoxaluria (<5% of patients) Hypocitraturia (12% of patients) Other causes <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hypomagnesemia – associated with hyperoxaluria and hypocitraturia • High dietary Na⁺ • Decreased urinary proteins • High urinary pH, low urine volume (e.g. GI water loss) • Hyperparathyroidism, obesity, gout, DM 	Uric acid precipitates in low volume, acidic urine with a high uric acid concentration <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hyperuricosuria alone • Low urinary pH, low urine volume (e.g. GI water loss) • Drugs (ASA, thiazides) • Diet (purine rich red meats) • Hyperuricosuria with hyperuricemia • Gout • High rate of cell turnover or cell death (leukemia, cytotoxic drugs) 	Infection with urea-splitting organisms (<i>Proteus</i> , <i>Pseudomonas</i> , <i>Providencia</i> , <i>Klebsiella</i> , <i>Mycoplasma</i> , <i>Serratia</i> , <i>S. aureus</i>) results in alkaline urinary pH and precipitation of struvite (magnesium ammonium phosphate)	Autosomal recessive defect in small bowel mucosal absorption and renal tubular absorption of dibasic amino acids results in “COLA” in urine (cystine, ornithine, lysine, arginine)
Key Features	Radiopaque on KUB Reducing dietary Ca ²⁺ is NOT an effective method of prevention/treatment	Radiolucent on KUB Radiopaque on CT Acidic urine, pH <5.5 (NOT necessarily elevated urinary uric acid)	Perpetuates UTI because stone itself harbours organism Stone and all foreign bodies must be cleared to avoid recurrence Associated with staghorn calculi Positive urine dip and cultures Note: <i>E. coli</i> infection does not cause struvite stones M:F = 3:1, UTI more common in female	Aggressive stone disease seen in children and young adults Recurrent stone formation, family Hx Often staghorn calculi Faintly radiopaque on KUB Positive urine sodium nitroprusside test, urine chromatography for cystine
Treatment Medical if stone <5 mm and no complications Procedural/Surgical treatment if stone >5 mm or presence of complications (see U17 for treatment)	Fluids to increase urine volume to >2 L/d For calcium stones: cellulose phosphate, orthophosphate for absorptive causes Calcium oxalate: thiazides, ± potassium citrate, ± allopurinol Calcium struvite: ABx (stone must be removed to treat infection)	Increased fluid intake Alkalinization of urine to pH 6.5 to 7 (bicarbonate, potassium citrate) ± allopurinol	Complete stone clearance ABx for 6 wk Regular follow-up urine cultures	Increased fluid intake (3-4 L of urine/d) Alkalinize urine (bicarbonate, potassium citrate), Penicillamine/α-MPG or Captopril (form complex with cystine) ESWL not effective

Urological Neoplasms

Approach to Renal Mass

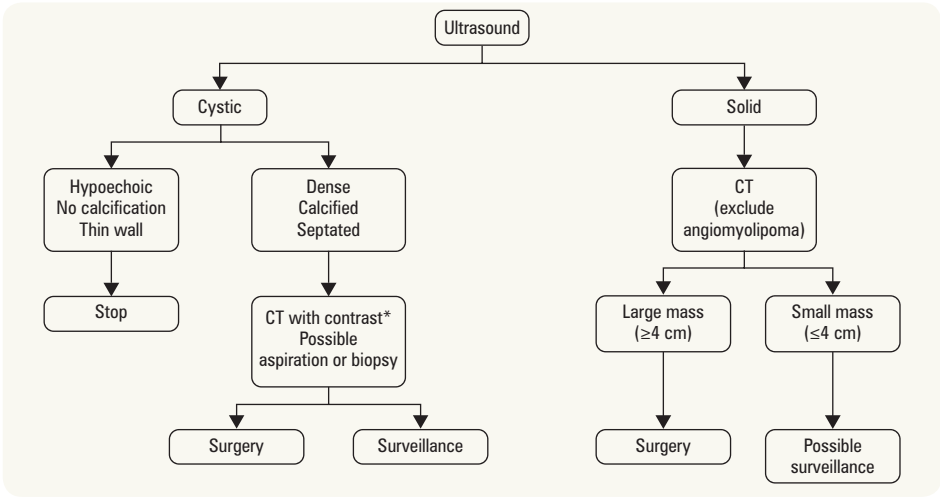




Figure 9. Workup of a renal mass
*Imaging modality may be different in cases of contrast allergy or elevated creatinine

 There is controversy over optimal management of small renal masses

Benign Renal Neoplasms

CYSTIC KIDNEY DISEASE

- **simple cysts:** usually solitary or unilateral
 - very common: up to 50% at age 50
 - usually incidental finding on abdominal imaging
 - **Bosniak Classification** is used to stratify for risk of malignancy based on cyst features from contrast CT
- **polycystic kidney disease**
 - autosomal recessive: multiple bilateral cysts, often leading to early renal failure in infants
 - autosomal dominant: progressive bilateral disease leading to HTN and renal failure, adult-onset
- **medullary sponge kidney:** cystic dilatation of the collecting ducts
 - usually benign course, but patients are predisposed to stone disease
- **von Hippel-Lindau syndrome:** multiple bilateral cysts or clear cell carcinomas (50% incidence of RCC)
 - renal cysts, cerebellar, spinal and retinal hemangioblastomas, pancreatic and epididymal cysts, pheochromocytomas

 **Tuberous Sclerosis**
Syndrome characterized by mental retardation, epilepsy, and adenoma sebaceum. 45-80% of patients also present with angiomyolipomas which are often multiple and bilateral


 Percutaneous needle biopsies of cystic renal masses may lead to peritoneal seeding

Table 14. Bosniak Classification of Renal Cysts

Class	Description	Features	Risk of Malignancy	Management Plan
I	Simple cyst	Round, no septations, no calcifications, no solid component	Near zero	Follow-up usually not required
II	Simple cyst	A few thin septa, no true enhancement, well-marginated, uniform high attenuation, <3 cm	Minimal	Follow-up usually not required
IIF	Minimally complex cyst with extra features that require follow-up	Still well-marginated and non-enhancing, but now multiple thin septa or some thickening/ calcification of septa/wall, >3 cm	5-20%	Requires follow-up with imaging q6-12 mo If the lesion evolves, may require surgical resection
III	Complex cyst	Thicker or more irregular walls with measurable enhancement	>50%	Requires surgical resection
IV	Clearly malignant	Class III + enhancing soft-tissue components	>90%	Requires surgical resection

Table 15. Benign Renal Masses

	Angiomyolipoma (Renal Hamartoma)	Renal Oncocytoma	Renal Adenoma
Epidemiology	<1% of adult renal tumors F>M 20% associated with tuberous sclerosis (especially if multiple, recurrent)	3-7% of renal tumors M>F Oncocytomas also found in adrenal, thyroid and parathyroid glands	Most common benign renal neoplasm M:F = 3:1 Incidence increases with age Found in 7-23% of all autopsies
Characteristics	Clonal neoplasm consisting of blood vessels (angio-), smooth muscle (-myo-), and fat (-lipoma) May extend into regional lymphatics and other organs and become symptomatic	Spherical, capsulated with possible central scar Histologically organized aggregates of eosinophilic cells originating from intercalated cells of collecting duct	Small cortical lesions <1 cm Majority are solitary but can be multifocal
Diagnosis	Incidental finding on CT Negative attenuation (-20 HU) on CT is pathognomonic Rare presentation of hematuria, flank pain, and palpable mass (same as RCC)	Incidental finding on CT Difficult to distinguish from RCC on imaging – treated as RCC until proven otherwise Biopsy may be performed to r/o malignancy	Incidental finding on CT Rarely symptomatic Controversy as to whether this represents benign or pre-malignant neoplasm
Management	May consider surgical excision or embolization if symptomatic (pain, bleeding) or higher risk of bleeding (e.g. pregnancy) Potential role for mTOR inhibitors in unresectable/metastatic disease Follow with serial U/S	Partial/radical nephrectomy for large masses HIFU or RFA for smaller masses	If mass >3 cm, likely not a benign adenoma; will require partial/radical nephrectomy due to increased likelihood of malignancy

Malignant Renal Neoplasms



RENAL CELL CARCINOMA

Etiology

- cause unknown
- originates from proximal convoluted tubule epithelial cells in clear cell subtype (most common)
- hereditary forms seen with von Hippel-Lindau syndrome and hereditary papillary renal carcinoma

Epidemiology

- 8th most common malignancy (accounts for 3% of all newly diagnosed cancers)
- 85% of primary malignant tumors in kidney
- M:F = 3:2
- peak incidence at 50-60 yr of age

Pathology

- histological subtypes: clear cell (75-85%), papillary (10-15%), chromophobic (5-10%), collecting duct
- sarcomatoid elements in any subtype is a poor prognostic factor

Risk Factors

- top 3 risk factors: smoking, HTN, obesity
- miscellaneous: horseshoe kidney, acquired renal cystic disease
- role of environmental exposures (aromatic hydrocarbons, etc.) remains an unproven risk factor for development of RCC

Clinical Features

- usually asymptomatic: frequently diagnosed incidentally by U/S or CT
- poor prognostic indicators: weight loss, weakness, anemia, bone pain
- classic “too late triad” found in 10-15%
 - gross hematuria 50%
 - flank pain <50%
 - palpable mass <30%
- was called the “internist’s tumor” because of paraneoplastic symptomatology – now called the “radiologist’s tumor” because of incidental diagnosis via imaging
- metastases: seen in 1/3rd of new cases; additional 20-40% will go on to develop metastases
 - bone, brain, lung and liver most common site
 - may invade renal veins and inferior vena cava lumen. This may result in ascites, hepatic dysfunction, right atrial tumor, and pulmonary emboli

Investigations

- routine labs for paraneoplastic syndromes (CBC, ESR, LFTs, extended electrolytes)
- U/A (60-75% have hematuria)
- renal U/S: solid vs. cystic lesion

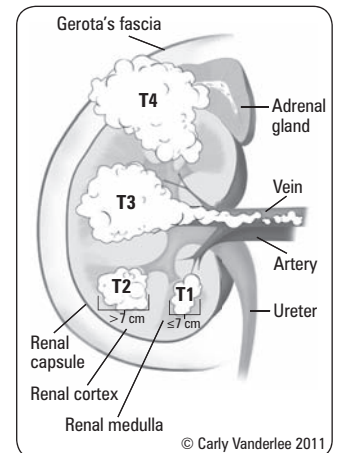


Figure 10. RCC staging



Role of environmental exposures (aromatic hydrocarbons, etc.) remains an unproven risk factor for development of RCC



RCC Systemic Effects: paraneoplastic syndromes (10-40% of patients)

- Hematopoietic disturbances: anemia, polycythemia, raised ESR
- Endocrinopathies: hypercalcemia (increased vitamin D hydroxylation), erythrocytosis (increased erythropoietin), HTN (increased renin), production of other hormones (prolactin, gonadotropins, TSH, insulin, and cortisol)
- Hepatic cell dysfunction or Stauffer syndrome: abnormal LFTs, decreased WBC count, fever, areas of hepatic necrosis; no evidence of metastases; reversible following removal of primary tumor
- Hemodynamic alterations: systolic HTN (due to AV shunting), peripheral edema (due to caval obstruction)

- contrast-enhanced CT: higher sensitivity than U/S for detection of renal masses and for staging purposes
- MRI: useful for evaluation of vascular extension
- renal biopsy: to confirm diagnosis if considering observation or other non-surgical therapy

Staging

- involves CT, CXR, liver enzymes and LFTs, bone/head imaging (if symptoms dictate)

Table 16. 2010 TNM Classification of Renal Cell Carcinoma

T	N	M
T1: tumor <7 cm, confined to renal parenchyma T1a: <4 cm T1b: 4-7 cm T2: tumor >7 cm, confined to renal parenchyma T2a: tumor >7 cm but ≤10 cm in greatest dimension, limited to the kidney T2b: tumor >10 cm, limited to the kidney T3: tumor extends into major veins or perinephric tissues, but NOT into ipsilateral adrenal or beyond Gerota's fascia T3a: into renal vein or sinus fat T3b: into infradiaphragmatic IVC T3c: into supradiaphragmatic IVC T4: tumor extends beyond Gerota's fascia including extension into ipsilateral adrenal	N0: no regional nodes N1: metastasis to a single node, <2 cm N2: metastasis to a single node between 2 and 5 cm or multiple nodes <2 cm N3: node >5 cm	M0: no evidence of metastasis M1: presence of distant metastasis

Treatment

- surgical
 - radical nephrectomy: en bloc removal of kidney, tumor, ipsilateral adrenal gland (in upper pole tumors) and intact Gerota's capsule and paraaortic lymphadenectomy
 - partial nephrectomy (parenchyma-sparing): small tumor (roughly <4 cm) or solitary kidney/bilateral tumors
 - surgical removal of solitary metastasis may be considered
- ablative techniques (cryoablation, RFA)
- palliative radiation to painful bony lesions
- therapy for advanced stage
 - tyrosine kinase inhibitors for metastatic disease (e.g. sunitinib, sorafenib)
 - anti-angiogenesis/anti-VEGF (e.g. bevacizumab)
 - mTOR inhibitors (e.g. temsirolimus, everolimus)
 - high-dose IL-2 (high toxicity but able to induce long-term cure in 5-7% of patients)
 - IFN α: monotherapy has been largely replaced by molecularly targeted agents listed above



Tumor may invade renal veins and inferior vena cava lumen. This may result in ascites, hepatic dysfunction, right atrial tumor, and pulmonary emboli

Prognosis

- stage at diagnosis most important prognostic factor
 - T1: 90-100% 5 yr survival
 - T2-T3: 60% 5 yr survival
 - metastatic disease: <5% 10 yr survival

Carcinoma of the Renal Pelvis and Ureter

Etiology

- risk factors include
 - smoking
 - chemicals/dietary exposures (industrial dyes and solvents; aristolochic acid)
 - analgesic abuse (acetaminophen, ASA, and phenacetin)
 - Balkan nephropathy

Epidemiology

- rare: accounts for 5% of all urothelial cancers
- frequently multifocal, 2-5% are bilateral
- M:F = 3:1
- relative incidence: bladder:renal:ureter = 100:10:1

Pathology

- 85% are papillary UCC; others include SCC and adenocarcinoma
- UCC of ureter and renal pelvis are histologically similar to bladder UCC

Clinical Features

- gross/microscopic hematuria
- flank pain
- storage or voiding symptoms (dysuria only if lower urinary tract involved)
- flank mass ± hydronephrosis (10-20%)



Axitinib vs. Sorafenib as Second-Line Treatment for Advanced Renal Cell Carcinoma: Overall Survival Analysis and Updated Results from a Randomized Phase 3 Trial

Lancet Oncol 2013;14:552-562

Study: Phase 3 trial of patients with clear cell metastatic renal cell carcinoma randomized to receive axitinib 5 mg twice daily (n=361) or sorafenib 400 mg twice daily (n=362).

Results: Median overall survival was 20.1 mo with axitinib (16.7-23.4) and 19.2 mo with sorafenib (17.5-22.3) (HR 0.969, 95% CI 0.800-1.174). Median progression-free survival was 8.3 mo with axitinib (6.7-9.2) and 5.7 mo with sorafenib (4.7-6.5) (HR 0.656, 95% CI 0.552-0.779).

Conclusions: Axitinib should be a second-line treatment option for patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma.

Investigations

- IVP/CT urogram
- cystoscopy and retrograde pyelogram

Treatment

- radical nephroureterectomy with cuff of bladder
- distal ureterectomy for distal ureteral tumors
- emerging role for endoscopic laser ablation in patients with low grade disease, poor baseline renal health

Bladder Carcinoma**Etiology**

- unknown, but environmental risk factors include
 - smoking (main factor – implicated in 60% of new cases)
 - aromatic amines: naphthylamines, benzidine, tryptophan, phenacetin metabolites
 - cyclophosphamide
 - prior Hx of radiation treatment to the pelvis
 - *Schistosoma hematobium* infection (associated with SCC)
 - chronic irritation: cystitis, chronic catheterization, bladder stones (associated with SCC)
 - aristolochic acid: associated with Balkan Nephropathy (renal failure, upper tract urothelial cancer) and Chinese Herbal Nephropathy

Epidemiology

- 2nd most common urological malignancy
- M:F = 3:1, more common among whites than blacks
- mean age at diagnosis is 65 yr

Pathology

- classification
 - UCC >90%
 - SCC 5-7%
 - adenocarcinoma 1%
 - others <1%
- stages and prognoses of urothelial carcinoma at diagnosis
 - non-muscle invasive (75%) → >80% overall survival
 - ♦ 15% of these will progress to invasive UCC
 - ♦ the majority of these patients will have recurrence
 - invasive (25%) → 50-60% 5 yr survival
 - ♦ 85% have no prior hx of superficial UCC (i.e. *de novo*)
 - ♦ 50% have occult metastases at diagnosis, and most of these will develop overt clinical evidence of metastases within 1 yr – lymph nodes, lung, peritoneum, liver
- carcinoma *in situ* → flat, non-papillary erythematous lesion characterized by dysplasia confined to urothelium
 - more aggressive, worse prognosis
 - usually multifocal
 - may progress to invasive UCC

Clinical Features

- asymptomatic (20%)
- hematuria (key symptom: 85-90% at the time of diagnosis)
- pain (50%) → location determined by size/extent of tumor (i.e. flank, suprapubic, perineal, abdominal, etc.)
- clot retention (17%)
- storage urinary symptoms → consider carcinoma *in situ*
- palpable mass on bimanual exam → likely muscle invasion
- obstruction of ureters → hydronephrosis and uremia (nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea)

Investigations

- U/A, urine C&S, urine cytology
- U/S
- CT scan with contrast → look for filling defect
- cystoscopy with biopsy (gold standard)
- biopsy to establish diagnosis and to determine depth of penetration
- specific bladder tumor markers (e.g. NMP-22, BTA, Immunocyt, FDP)

Grading

- low grade: <=10% invasive, 60% recur
- high grade: 50-80% are invasive or should progress to invasive over time

Staging

- for invasive disease: CT or MRI, CXR, LFTs, extended electrolytes (Ca^{2+} , Mg^{1+} , PO_4^{-3}) (metastatic workup)

**Differential Diagnosis of Filling Defect**

- Urothelial carcinoma (differentiate via cytology and CT scan)
- Uric acid stone (differentiate via cytology and CT scan)
- Blood clot
- Pyelitis cystica
- Papillary necrosis
- Fungus ball
- Gas bubble from gas producing organisms



The “field defect” theory helps to explain why UCC has multiple lesions and has a high recurrence rate. The entire urothelium (pelvis to bladder) is bathed in carcinogens

**Radiotherapy with or without Chemotherapy in Muscle-Invasive Bladder Cancer**

NEJM 2012;366:1477-1488

Study: Phase 3 trial with random assignment of 360 patients with muscle-invasive bladder cancer to radiotherapy with or without chemotherapy.

Results: At 2 yr, rates of locoregional disease-free survival were 67% in the chemoradiotherapy group and 54% in the radiotherapy group (HR 0.68, 95% CI 0.48-0.96). Five year overall survival rates were 48% in the chemoradiotherapy group and 35% in the radiotherapy group (HR 0.82, 95% CI 0.63-1.09).

Conclusions: Chemotherapy with fluorouracil and mitomycin C in combination with radiotherapy improves locoregional control of bladder cancer compared to radiotherapy alone, with no significant increase in adverse events.



The ENTIRE urinary tract must be evaluated in patients with hematuria unless there is clear evidence of glomerular bleeding (e.g. red cell casts, dysmorphic RBCs, etc.)



Unexplained hematuria in any individual >40 yr old must be investigated to r/o a malignancy



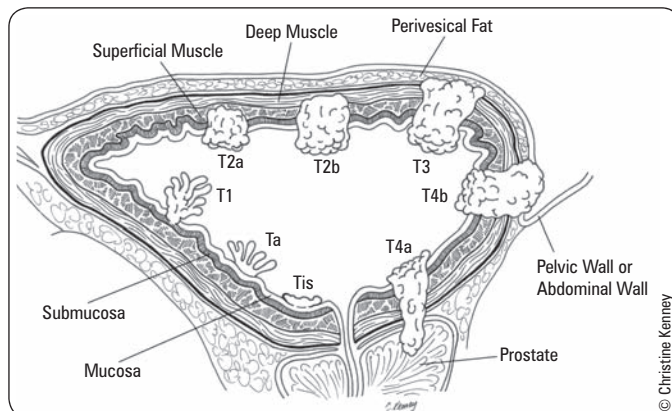
Cystoscopy is the initial procedure of choice for the diagnosis and staging of urothelial malignancy



Tumor grade is the single most important prognostic factor for progression

Table 17. 2010 TNM Classification of Bladder Carcinoma

T	N	M
TX: Primary tumor cannot be assessed	NX: Lymph nodes cannot be assessed	M0: No distant metastasis
T0: No evidence of primary tumor		
Ta: Noninvasive papillary carcinoma Tis: Carcinoma <i>in situ</i> : "flat tumor"	N0: No lymph node metastasis	M1: Distant metastasis
T1: Tumor invades subepithelial connective tissue	N1: Single regional lymph node metastasis in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral lymph node)	
T2: Tumor invades muscularis propria pT2a: Tumor invades superficial muscularis propria (inner half) pT2b: Tumor invades deep muscularis propria (outer half)	N2: Multiple regional lymph node metastasis in the true pelvis (hypogastric, obturator, external iliac, or presacral lymph node metastasis)	
T3: Tumor invades perivesical tissue: pT3a: Microscopically pT3b: Macroscopically (extravesical mass)	N3: Lymph node metastasis to the common iliac lymph nodes	
T4: Tumor invades any of the following: prostatic stroma, seminal vesicles, uterus, vagina, pelvic wall, abdominal wall T4a: Tumor invades prostatic stroma, uterus, vagina T4b: Tumor invades pelvic wall, abdominal wall		

**Figure 11. Urothelial carcinoma of bladder****Treatment**

- superficial (non-muscle invasive) disease: Tis, Ta, T1
 - low-grade disease
 - ♦ single dose mitomycin c within 24 h of resection reduces recurrence rates
 - high-grade
 - ♦ TURBT ± intravesical chemo/immuno-therapy (e.g. BCG, mitomycin C) to decrease recurrence rate
 - ♦ maintenance with intravesical chemotherapy with BCG for 3 cycles every 3 mo, may be continued for 2-3 yr
- invasive disease: T2a, T2b, T3
 - radical cystectomy + pelvic lymphadenectomy with urinary diversion (e.g. ileal conduit, Indiana pouch, ileal neobladder) or TURBT + chemo-radiation (bladder sparing) for small tumors with non-obstructed ureters
 - neo-adjuvant chemotherapy prior to cystectomy may also be done
 - use of adjuvant chemotherapy after definitive local treatment is controversial
- advanced/metastatic disease: T4a, T4b, N⁺, M⁺
 - initial combination of systemic chemotherapy ± irradiation ± surgery

Prognosis

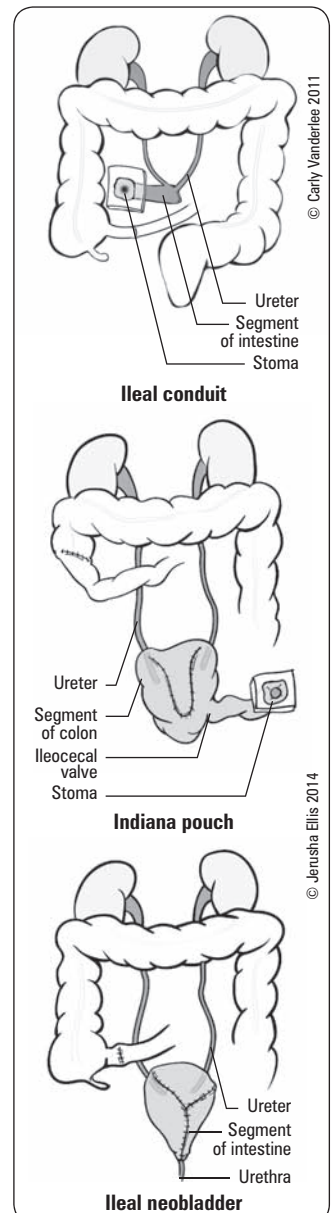
- depends on stage, grade, size, number of lesions, recurrence and presence of CIS
 - T1: 90% 5 yr survival
 - T2: 55% 5 yr survival
 - T3: 20% 5 yr survival
 - T4/N⁺/M⁺: <5% 5 yr survival

Prostate Cancer**Etiology**

- not known
- risk factors
 - increased incidence in persons of African descent
 - high dietary fat = 2x risk

**Neoadjuvant Chemotherapy plus Cystectomy Compared with Cystectomy Alone for Locally Advanced Bladder Cancer**

NEJM 2003;349:859-866

Study: Randomized clinical trial.**Patients:** 317 patients with transitional-cell carcinoma of the bladder (T2N0M0 to T4aN0M0).**Intervention:** Randomized to undergo radical cystectomy or to receive three cycles of combined chemotherapy (methotrexate, vinblastine, doxorubicin, and cisplatin) followed by radical cystectomy.**Main Outcome:** Survival. Secondary objective was to quantify down-staging of tumor following chemotherapy.**Results:** At 5 yr after treatment initiation, 57% of the combination-therapy group vs. 43% of the cystectomy group were alive (p=0.06). In the combination-therapy group, 38% of the patients were pathologically free of cancer at the time of cystectomy vs. 15% of the cystectomy-only group at the time of surgery (p<0.001).**Conclusions:** For locally advanced bladder carcinoma, neoadjuvant chemotherapy significantly reduces tumor volume and also improves survival.**Figure 12. Ileal conduit, Indiana pouch, ileal neobladder**

- family Hx
 - ♦ 1st degree relative = 2x risk
 - ♦ 1st and 2nd degree relatives = 9x risk

Epidemiology

- most prevalent cancer in males
- 3rd leading cause of male cancer deaths (following lung and colon)
- up to 50% risk of CaP at age 50
- lifetime risk of death from CaP is 3%
- 75% diagnosed between 60-85 yr; mean age at diagnosis is 72

Pathology

- adenocarcinoma
 - >95%, often multifocal
- urothelial carcinoma of the prostate (4.5%)
 - associated with UCC of bladder; does NOT follow TNM staging below; not hormone-responsive
- endometrial (rare)
 - carcinoma of the utricule

Anatomy (see Figure 7, U7)

- 60-70% of nodules arise in the peripheral zone
- 10-20% arise in the transition zone
- 5-10% arise in the central zone

Clinical Features

- usually asymptomatic
- most commonly detected by DRE, elevated PSA, or as an incidental finding on TURP
 - DRE: hard irregular nodule or diffuse dense induration involving one or both lobes
 - PSA: see *Prostate Cancer Screening, U25*
- locally advanced disease
 - storage and voiding symptoms, ED (all uncommon without spread)
- metastatic disease
 - bony mets to axial skeleton common
 - visceral mets are less common (liver, lung, and adrenal gland most common sites)
 - leg pain and edema with nodal mets obstructing lymphatic and venous drainage

Methods of Spread

- local invasion
- lymphatic spread to regional nodes
 - obturator > iliac > presacral/para-aortic
- hematogenous dissemination occurs early

Investigations

- DRE
- PSA elevated in the majority of patients with CaP
- TRUS-guided needle biopsy
- bone scan may be omitted in untreated CaP with PSA <10 ng/mL
- CT scanning to assess metastases
- MRI: being investigated for possible role in detection, staging, MRI-guided biopsying and active surveillance

Table 18. 2010 TNM Classification of Prostate Carcinoma

T	N	M
T1: clinically undetectable tumor, normal DRE and TRUS T1a: tumor incidental histologic finding in <5% of tissue resected T1b: tumor incidental histologic finding in >5% of tissue resected T1c: tumor identified by needle biopsy (due to elevated PSA level)	NX: regional lymph nodes were not assessed N0: no regional lymph node metastasis N1: spread to regional lymph nodes	M0: no distant metastasis M: distant metastasis M1a: nonregional lymph nodes M1b: bone(s) M1c: other site(s) with or without bone disease
T2: palpable, confined to prostate T2a: tumor involving ≤ one half of one lobe T2b: tumor involving > one half of one lobe, but not both lobes T2c: tumor involving both lobes		
T3: tumor extends through prostate capsule T3a: extracapsular extension (unilateral or bilateral) T3b: tumor invading seminal vesicle(s)		
T4: tumor invades adjacent structures (besides seminal vesicles)		

Table 19. Prostate Cancer Mortality Risk

	Low Risk	Intermediate Risk (if any of following)	High Risk (if any of following)
PSA	<10	10-20	>20
Gleason Score	<7	7	8-10
Stage	pT1-2a	pT2b-T2c	pT3/4

Treatment

- T1/T2 (localized, low-risk)
 - if adequate life expectancy or no other significant comorbidities, consider active surveillance vs. definitive local treatment (RP, brachytherapy, or EBRT)
 - no difference in cure rate between definitive treatment modalities
 - in older population: watchful waiting + palliative treatment for symptomatic progression
- T1/T2 (intermediate or high-risk)
 - definitive therapy over active surveillance
- T3, T4
 - EBRT + androgen deprivation therapy or RP + adjuvant EBRT
- N >0 or M >0
 - requires hormonal therapy/palliative radiotherapy for metastases; may consider combined androgen blockade
 - bilateral orchiectomy – removes 90% of testosterone
 - GnRH agonists (e.g. leuprolide, goserelin)
 - GnRH antagonist (e.g. degarelix)
 - estrogens (e.g. diethylstilbestrol [DES])
 - antiandrogens (bicalutamide)
 - local irradiation of painful secondaries or half-body irradiation
- hormone-refractory prostate cancer
 - chemotherapy: docetaxel, cabazitaxel, sipuleucel-T

Table 20. Treatment Options for Localized Prostate Cancer

Modality	Population Considered	Limitations
Watchful Waiting	Short life expectancy (<5-10 yr); will likely only receive non-curative hormonal therapy if disease progresses	Disease progression
Active Surveillance (Serial PSA, DRE, and Biopsies)	Low grade disease, good follow-up; is still considering more curative treatment if disease progresses	Disease progression; decrease in QOL associated with serial testing; risks associated with biopsies; no optimal monitoring schedule has been defined to date
Brachytherapy	Low volume, low PSA (<10), low grade	ED (50%), long-term effectiveness not well-established
EBRT	Locally advanced disease, older patients	Radiation proctitis (5%), ED (50%), risk of rectal cancer
RP	Young patients (<75 yr), high-risk disease	Incontinence (10%), ED (30-50%)

*Other options include cryosurgery, HIFU, hormonal ablation

Prognosis

- T1-T2: comparable to normal life expectancy
- T3-T4: 40-70% 10 yr survival
- N+ and/or M+: 40% 5 yr survival
- prognostic factors: tumor stage, tumor grade, PSA value, PSA doubling time

Prostate Cancer Screening

Digital Rectal Exam

- should be included as part of initial screening
- suspicious findings: abnormal feeling, nodularity, focal lesion, discrete change in texture/fullness/symmetry

Prostate Specific Antigen

- glycoprotein produced by epithelial cells of prostate gland
- leaks into circulation in setting of disrupted glandular architecture
- value of <4 ng/mL traditionally considered as cut-off to differentiate normal from pathologic value, but no single justifiable cutpoint
- measured serum PSA is a combination of free (15%) and bound PSA (85%)
- PSA velocity, PSA density, and free:total PSA: all intended to increase sensitivity and specificity of serum PSA values
 - association of increased CaP rates with decreased free:total PSA, elevated PSA velocity and density

Screening Recommendations

- conflicting evidence regarding mortality reduction with PSA-based screening and debate regarding overdiagnosis/overtreatment



Radical Prostatectomy vs. Watchful Waiting in Early Prostate Cancer (Scandinavian Prostate Cancer Group Study)

NEJM 2011;364:1708-1717

Study: Randomized clinical trial comparing watchful waiting with radical prostatectomy for localized prostate cancer.

Methods: 695 men from 14 centers in Finland, Sweden, and Iceland with newly diagnosed, localized prostate cancer were included in this study.

Main Outcomes: Mortality, distant metastases, local progression.

Results: For men with low-risk prostate cancer (PSA <10, Gleason score <7), at 15 yr after treatment initiation, the relative risk of death due to prostate cancer in the radical prostatectomy group vs. watchful waiting was 0.62 (p=0.01). The cumulative incidence of death from prostate cancer after radical prostatectomy was high as compared with other studies.

Conclusions: Radical prostatectomy was associated with reduced rate of death due to prostate cancer.



Radical Prostatectomy vs. Observation for Localized Prostate Cancer. (Prostate Cancer Intervention vs. Observation Trial (PIVOT) Study Group)

NEJM 2012;367:203-213

Study: Randomized clinical trial comparing observation with radical prostatectomy for localized prostate cancer.

Methods: 731 men at 52 United States centers with localized prostate cancer participated.

Main Outcomes: Mortality, bone metastases, surgical morbidity.

Results: Radical prostatectomy did not reduce all-cause or prostate cancer mortality relative to observation (relative risk 0.60, p=0.09), through at least 12 yr of follow-up.

Conclusions: Observation is recommended for localized prostate cancer, especially in men with low PSA and low-risk disease.



PSA is specific to the PROSTATE, but NOT to prostate cancer



Causes of Increased PSA

BPH, prostatitis, prostatic ischemia/infarction, prostate biopsy/surgery, prostatic massage, acute urinary retention, urethral catheterization, cystoscopy, TRUS, strenuous exercise, perineal trauma, ejaculation, acute renal failure, coronary bypass graft, radiation therapy

- Ontario Ministry of Health and Long-Term Care and United States Preventative Services Task Force both recommend against PSA testing as a population-wide screening tool
- however, serum PSA screening recommended in any man with >10 yr life-expectancy and any of the following:
 - suspicious finding on DRE
 - moderate-severe LUTS
 - high risk individuals
 - investigating secondary carcinoma of unknown origin to r/o CaP as primary

American Urological Association Guidelines (2013) re: Prostate Cancer Screening

- men under age 40 yr should not have PSA screening (Grade C)
- men aged 40-54 yr should not be screened, unless they have high risk factors (e.g. positive family history or African American race), screening decisions should be individualized (Grade C)
- men aged 55-69 yr should proceed with screening only after shared decision-making on the basis of their values and preferences (Grade B)
- routine screening interval of two years or more may be preferred over annual screening in those men who have participated in shared decision-making and decided on screening (Grade C)
- men aged 70+ years or any man with less than a 10-15 yr life expectancy should not have PSA screening



Screening for Prostate Cancer

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2013;1:CD004720

Background: Screening for prostate cancer has an unclear benefit for reducing prostate cancer-specific mortality and morbidity.

Study: Systematic review of randomized clinical trials of screening vs. no screening. A total of 31 trials were retrieved for this review.

Results: A meta-analysis of 5 RCTs with 341,342 participants was done. Collectively, there was no significant reduction in prostate cancer-specific mortality within 10 yr of follow-up. Screening procedures and biopsies were commonly associated with bleeding, bruising, and short-term anxiety; subsequent over-diagnosis and overtreatment resulted in additional harms, some severe.

Conclusions: Men who have a life expectancy less than 10-15 yr should be informed that screening for prostate cancer is unlikely to be beneficial. Significant harms are associated with screening, over-diagnosis, and overtreatment.

Testicular Tumors

Etiology/Risk Factors

- cryptorchidism, atrophy, sex hormones, HIV infection, infertility, family hx, past hx of testicular cancer

Epidemiology

- rare, but most common solid malignancy in young males 15-34 yr
- any solid testicular mass or acute hydrocoele in young patient – must r/o malignancy
- slightly more common in right testis (corresponds with slightly higher incidence of right-sided cryptorchidism)
- 2-3% bilateral (simultaneously or successively)

Pathology

- primary
 - 1% of all malignancies in males
 - cryptorchidism has increased risk (10-40x) of malignancy
 - 95% are germ cell tumors (all are malignant)
 - ♦ seminoma (35%) → classic, anaplastic, spermatocytic
 - ♦ NSGCT → embryonal cell carcinoma (20%), teratoma (5%), choriocarcinoma (<1%), yolk sac (<<1%), mixed cell type (40%)
 - 5% are non-germ cell tumors (usually benign) → Leydig (testosterone, precocious puberty), Sertoli (gynecomastia, decreased libido)
- secondary
 - male >50 yr
 - usually lymphoma or metastases (e.g. lung, prostate, GI)

Clinical Features

- **painless** testicular enlargement (painful if intratesticular hemorrhage or infarction)
- dull, heavy ache in lower abdomen, anal area or scrotum
- associated hydrocele (10%)
- coincidental trauma (10%)
- infertility (rarely presenting complaint)
- gynecomastia due to secretory tumor effects
- supraclavicular and inguinal lymphadenopathy
- abdominal mass (retroperitoneal lymph node mets)

Methods of Spread

- local spread follows lymphatics
 - right → medial, paracaval, anterior and lateral nodes
 - left → left lateral and anterior paraaortic nodes
 - “cross-over” metastases from right to left are fairly common, but no reports from left to right
- hematogenous most commonly to lung, liver, bones, and kidney

Investigations

- diagnosis is established by pathological evaluation of specimen obtained by radical inguinal orchiectomy
- tumor markers (β-hCG, LDH, AFP)
 - β-hCG and AFP are positive in 85% of non-seminomatous tumors
 - elevated marker levels return to normal post-operatively if no metastasis
 - β-hCG positive in 7% of pure seminomas, AFP never elevated with seminoma
- testicular U/S (hypoechoic area within tunica albuginea = high suspicion of testicular cancer)
- evidence of testicular microlithiasis is not a risk factor for testicular cancer
- needle aspiration contraindicated

Staging

- Clinical: CXR (lung mets), markers for staging (β -hCG, AFP, LDH), CT abdomen/pelvis (retroperitoneal lymphadenopathy)
 - Stage I: disease limited to testis, epididymis, or spermatic cord
 - Stage II: disease limited to the retroperitoneal nodes
 - Stage III: disease metastatic to supradiaphragmatic nodal or visceral sites

Table 21. 2010 TNM Classification of Testicular Carcinoma

T	N	M
Tis: intratubular germ cell neoplasia T1: limited to testis and epididymis without vascular/lymphatic invasion T2: limited to testis and epididymis with vascular/lymphatic invasion T3: invasion of the spermatic cord \pm vascular/lymphatics T4: invasion of the scrotum \pm vascular/lymphatics	N status: same as RCC	M0: no distant mets M1: distant mets M1a: nonregional lymph node(s) or pulmonary mets M1b: distant mets other than to regional lymph nodes and lung

Management

- orchiectomy through inguinal ligament for all stages
- consider sperm banking, testicular prosthesis
- adjuvant therapies

Prognosis

- 99% cured with stage I and II disease
- 70-80% complete remission with advanced disease

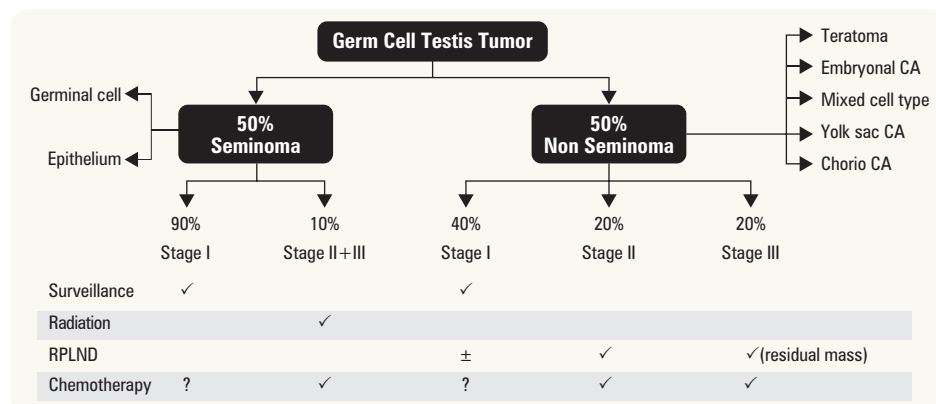


Figure 13. Adjuvant management of testicular cancer post-orchiectomy

Adapted from Dr. MAS Jewett



Orchiopexy

Surgical descent (orchiopexy) of undescended testis does not eliminate the risk of malignancy, but allows for earlier detection by self-examination and reduces the risk of infertility



Testes and scrotum have different lymphatic drainage, therefore trans-scrotal approach for biopsy or orchiectomy should be avoided

Penile Tumors

Epidemiology

- rare (<1% of cancer in males in U.S.)
- most common in 6th decade

Benign

- cyst, hemangioma, nevus, papilloma

Pre-Malignant

- balanitis xerotica obliterans, leukoplakia, Buschke-Lowenstein tumor (large condyloma)

Pre-Invasive Cancer

- carcinoma *in situ* (CIS)
 - Bowen's disease \rightarrow crusted, red plaques on the shaft
 - erythroplasia of Queyrat \rightarrow velvet red, ulcerated plaques on the glans
 - treatment options: local excision, laser, radiation, topical 5-fluorouracil

Malignant

- risk factors
 - chronic inflammatory disease
 - STD
 - phimosis
 - uncircumcised penis
- 2% of all urogenital cancers
- SCC (>95%), basal cell, melanoma, Paget's disease of the penis (extremely rare)
- definitive diagnosis requires full thickness biopsy of lesion
- lymphatic spread (superficial/deep inguinal nodes \rightarrow iliac nodes) >> hematogenous

Treatment

- wide surgical excision with tumor-free margins (dependent on extent and area of penile involvement) ± lymphadenectomy
- consider less aggressive treatment modalities in CIS (cryotherapy, laser therapy, etc.) if available

**Differential of a Benign Scrotal Mass****HIS BITS**

Hydrocele
Infection (epididymitis/orchitis)
Sperm (spermatocele)
Blood (hematocele)
Intestines (hernia)
Torsion
Some veins (varicocele)



Acute scrotal swelling/pain in young boys is torsion until proven otherwise



Transillumination refers to if light is able to transmit through tissue (i.e. due to excess fluid)

**Varicocele Grading**

- Grade 1: Palpable only with Valsalva manoeuvre
- Grade 2: Palpable without Valsalva
- Grade 3: Visible through scrotal skin

Scrotal Mass

Table 22. Differentiating between Scrotal Masses

Condition	Pain	Palpation	Additional Findings
Torsion	+	Diffuse tenderness Horizontal lie of testicle	Absent cremaster reflex, negative Prehn's sign
Epididymitis (U15)	+	Epididymal tenderness	Present cremaster reflex, positive Prehn's sign
Orchitis (U15)	+	Diffuse tenderness	Present cremaster reflex, positive Prehn's sign
Hematocele	+	Diffuse tenderness	No transillumination
Hydrocele	–	Testis not separable from hydrocele, cord palpable	Transillumination, Hx of trauma
Spermatocele	–	Testis separable from spermatocele, cord palpable	Transillumination
Varicocele	–	Bag of worms	No transillumination, increases in size with Valsalva, decrease in size if supine
Indirect Inguinal	– (+ if strangulated)	Testis separable from hernia, cord not palpable, cough impulse may transmit, may be reducible	No transillumination
Tumor	– (+ if hemorrhagic)	Hard lump/nodule	
Generalized/Dependant Edema	–	Diffuse swelling	Often post-operative or immobilized, check for liver dysfunction
Idiopathic	–		

Table 23. Benign Scrotal Masses

Type	Varicocele	Spermatocele	Hydrocele	Testicular Torsion	Inguinal Hernia
Definition	Dilatation and tortuosity of pampiniform plexus	A benign, sperm filled epididymal retention cyst	Collection of serous fluid that results from a defect or irritation in the tunica vaginalis	Twisting of the testicle causing venous occlusion and engorgement as well as arterial ischemia and infarction	Protrusion of abdominal contents through the inguinal canal into the scrotum
Etiology	15% of men Due to incompetent valves in the testicular veins 90% left sided	Multiple theories, including: Distal obstruction Aneurysmal dilations of the epididymis Agglutinated germ cells	Usually idiopathic Found in 5-10% testicular tumors Associated with trauma/infection Communicating: patent processus vaginalis, changes size during day (peds) Non-communicating: non-patent processus vaginalis (adult)	Trauma Cryptorchidism "Bell clapper deformity" Many occur in sleep (50%) Necrosis of glands in 5-6 h	Indirect (through internal ring, often into scrotum): congenital Direct (through external ring, rarely into scrotum): abdominal muscle weakness
Hx/P/E	"Bag of worms" Often painless Pulsates with Valsalva	Non-tender, cystic mass Transilluminates	Non-tender, intrascrotal mass Cystic Transilluminates	Acute onset severe scrotal pain, swelling GI upsets cases Retracted and transverse testicle (horizontal lie) Negative Phren's sign Absent cremasteric reflex	A small bulge in the groin that may increase in size with Valsalva and disappear when lying down Can present as a swollen or enlarged scrotum Discomfort or sharp pain – especially when straining, lifting, or exercising
Investigations	P/E Valsava	P/E U/S to r/o tumor	U/S to r/o tumor	U/S with color flow Doppler probe over testicular artery Decrease uptake on ^{99m} Tc-pertechnetate scintillation scan (doughnut sign)	Hx and P/E Invagination of the scrotum Valsalva
Treatment	Conservative Surgical ligation of testicular veins Percutaneous vein occlusion (balloon, sclerosing agents) Repair may improve sperm count/motility 50-75%	Conservative Avoid needle aspiration as it can lead to infection, reaccumulation and spilling of irritating sperm within scrotum Excise if symptomatic	Conservative Needle drainage Surgical	Emergency surgical exploration and bilateral orchiopexy Orchiectomy if poor prognosis	Surgical repair

TORSION OF TESTICULAR APPENDIX

- twisting of testicular/epididymal vestigial appendix

Signs and Symptoms

- clinically similar to testicular torsion, but vertical lie and cremaster reflex preserved
- “blue dot sign”
 - blue infarcted appendage seen through scrotal skin (can usually be palpated as small, tender lump)

Treatment

- analgesia – most will subside over 5-7 d
- surgical exploration and excision if refractory pain

HEMATOCELE

- trauma with bleed into tunica vaginalis
- U/S helpful to exclude fracture of testis which requires surgical repair

Treatment

- ice packs, analgesics, surgical repair



Suspect a Retroperitoneal Mass/Process in a Patient with a Varicocele if:

- Acute onset
- Right sided (isolated)
- Palpable abdominal mass
- Does not reduce while supine



Indications for Treatment of Varicocele

- Impaired sperm quality or quantity
- Pain or dull ache affecting QOL
- Affected testis fails to grow in adolescents
- Cosmetic indications (especially in adolescents)

Penile Complaints

Table 24. Penile Complaints

Type	Peyronie's Disease	Priapism	Paraphimosis	Phimosis	Premature Ejaculation
Definition	Benign curvature of penile shaft secondary to fibrous thickening of tunica albuginea	Prolonged erection lasting >4 h in the absence of sexual excitement/desire	Foreskin caught behind glans leading to edema → inability to reduce foreskin	Inability to retract foreskin over glans penis	Ejaculation prior to when one or both partners desire it, either before or soon after penetration
Etiology	Etiology unknown Trauma/repeated inflammation Familial predisposition Associated with DM, vascular disease, autoimmunity, Dupuytren's contracture, erectile dysfunction	50% idiopathic Ischemic (common) • Thromboembolic (sickle cell) Non-Ischemic • Trauma • Medications • Neurogenic	Iatrogenic (post cleaning/instrumentation) Trauma Infectious (balanitis, balanoposthitis)	Congenital (90% natural separation by age 3) Balanitis Poor Hygiene	Psychological factors Primary: no period of acceptable control Secondary: symptoms after a period of control, not associated with general medical condition
Hx/P/E	Penile curvature/shortening Pain with erection Poor erection distal to plaque	Painful erection ± signs of necrosis	Painful, swollen glans penis, foreskin Constricting band proximal to corona Dysuria, decreased urinary stream in children	Limitation and pain when attempting to retract foreskin Balanoposthitis (infection of prepuce)	Ejaculatory latency ≥1 min Inability to control or delay ejaculation Psychological distress
Investigations	Hx and P/E	Hx and P/E Cavernosal blood gas analysis	Hx and P/E	Hx and P/E	Hx and P/E Testosterone levels if in conjunction with impotence
Treatment	Watchful waiting (spontaneous resolution in up to 50%) Intralesional or topical verapamil Incision/excision of plaque Shortening of less affected side ± penile prosthesis	Treat reversible causes High-flow • Self-limited • Consider arterial embolization Low-flow • Needle aspirated decompression • Phenylephrine intracorporeal injection q3-5min • Surgical shunt no response within 1 h	Manual pressure (with analgesia) Dorsal slit Circumcision (urgent or electively to prevent recurrence)	Proper hygiene Topical corticosteroids Dorsal slit Circumcision	r/o medical condition Address psychiatric concerns, counseling Medication • SSRI or clomipramine • Topical lidocaine, prilocaine

Erectile Dysfunction

Definition

- consistent (>3 mo duration) or recurrent inability to obtain or maintain an adequate erection for satisfactory sexual performance

Physiology

- erection involves the coordination of psychologic, neurologic, hemodynamic, mechanical, and endocrine components
- nerves: sympathetic (T11-L2), parasympathetic (S2-4), somatic (dorsal penile/pudendal nerves [S2-4])
- erection ("POINT")
 - parasympathetics → release of nitric oxide (NO) → increased cGMP levels within corpora cavernosa leading to:
 - arteriolar dilatation
 - sinusoidal smooth muscle relaxation → increased arterial inflow and compression of penile venous drainage (decreased venous outflow)
- emission ("SHOOT")
 - sensory afferents from glans
 - secretions from prostate, seminal vesicles, and ejaculatory ducts enter prostatic urethra (sympathetics)
- ejaculation ("SHOOT")
 - bladder neck closure (sympathetic)
 - spasmodic contraction of bulbo-cavernosus and pelvic floor musculature (somatic)
- detumescence
 - sympathetic nerves, norepinephrine, endothelin-1 → arteriolar and sinusoidal constriction → penile flaccidity

Classification

Table 25. Classification of Erectile Dysfunction

	Psychogenic	Organic
Proportion	10%	90%
Onset	Sudden	Gradual
Frequency	Sporadic	All circumstances
Variation	With partner and circumstance	No
Age	Younger	Older
Organic Risk Factors (HTN, DM, Dyslipidemia)	No organic risk factors	Risk factors present
Nocturnal/AM Erection	Present	Absent

Etiology ("IMPOTENCE")

- Iatrogenic: pelvic surgery, pelvic radiation
- Mechanical: Peyronie's, post-priapism
- Psychological: depression, stress, anxiety, PTSD, widower syndrome
- Occlusive vascular: arterial HTN, DM, smoking, hyperlipidemia, PVD, venous (impaired veno-occlusion)
- Trauma: penile/pelvic, bicycling
- Extra factors: renal failure, cirrhosis, COPD, sleep apnea, malnutrition
- Neurogenic: CNS (e.g. Parkinson's, MS, spinal cord injury, Guillain-Barré, spina bifida, stroke), PNS (e.g. DM, peripheral neuropathy)
- Chemical: antihypertensives, sedatives, antidepressants, antipsychotics, anxiolytics, anticholinergics, antihistamines, anti-androgens (including 5- α reductase inhibitors), statins, GnRH agonists, illicit drugs
- Endocrine: DM, hypogonadism, hyperprolactinemia, hypo/hyperthyroid

Diagnosis

- complete Hx (include sexual, medical, and psychosocial aspects)
- self-administered questionnaires (e.g. International Index of Erectile Function, Sexual Health Inventory for Men Questionnaire, ED Intensity Scale, ED Impact Scale)
- focused P/E, including vascular and neurologic examinations, secondary sexual characteristics
- lab investigations, dependent on clinical picture
 - risk factor evaluation: fasting blood glucose or HbA1c, cholesterol profile
 - optional: TSH, CBC, U/A, testosterone (free and total), prolactin, LH
- specialized testing including nocturnal penile tumescence monitoring usually unnecessary
- evaluation of penile vasculature only relevant with past history of trauma (i.e. pelvic fracture)



Erections POINT AND SHOOT
parasympathetics = **point**; and
sympathetics/somatics = **shoot**

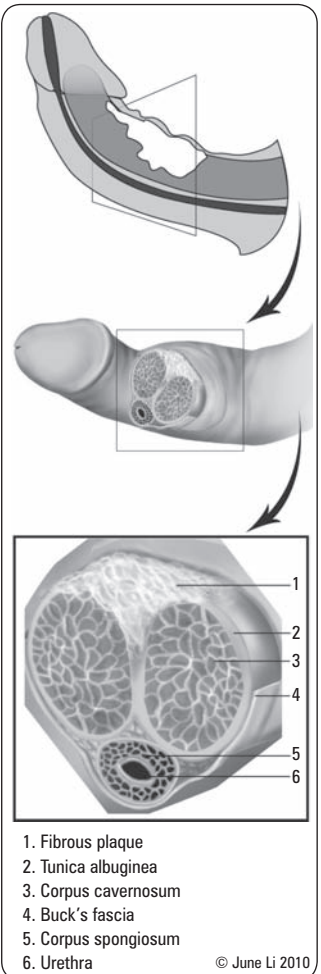


Figure 14. Peyronie's disease



Penile vascular abnormalities may be a marker of risk for CV disease. Young men with vascular ED have 50x higher risk of having a CV event



Testosterone deficiency is an uncommon cause of ED

Treatment

- can often be managed by family doctor, see sidebar for when to refer
- must fully inform patient/partner of options, benefits and complications
- non-invasive
 - lifestyle changes (alcohol, smoking), psychological (sexual counseling and education)
 - change precipitating medications
 - treat underlying causes (diabetes, CVD, HTN, endocrinopathies)
- minimally invasive
 - oral medication (see *Common Medications*, U42)
 - ♦ sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, avanafil: inhibits PDE-5 to increase intracavernosal cyclic GMP levels
 - all four have similar effectiveness, but tadalafil has certain advantages: earlier onset, longer half-life, no cyanopsia, can be taken on empty or full stomach (others better on empty stomach)
 - vacuum devices: draw blood into penis via negative pressure, then put ring at base of penis once erect
 - MUSE: male urethral suppository for erection – vasoactive substance (PGE1) capsule inserted into urethra
- invasive
 - intracavernous vasodilator injection/self-injection
 - ♦ triple therapy (papaverine, phentolamine, PGE1) or PGE1 alone
 - ♦ complications: priapism (overdose), thickening of tunica albuginea at site of repeated injections (Peyronie's plaque) and hematoma
- surgical
 - penile implant (last resort): malleable or inflatable
 - penile artery reconstruction (in young men with isolated vascular lesion – investigational)

**When to Consider Referral****FAT PEN**

Failed medical therapy
 penile **A**natomic abnormality
 pelvic/perineal **T**rauma
Psychogenic cause
 Endocrinopathy
 vascular/**N**eurologic assessment



PDE-5 inhibitors are contraindicated in patients on nitrates/nitroglycerin due to severe hypotension



Initial trial of MUSE® or intracavernosal injection should be done under medical supervision

Trauma

- see *Emergency Medicine*, ER14



Renal Trauma

Classification According to Severity

- minor
 - contusions and superficial lacerations/hematomas: 90% of all blunt traumas, surgical exploration seldom necessary
- major
 - laceration that extends into medulla and collecting system, major renal vascular injury, shattered kidney

Etiology

- 80% blunt (MVC, assaults, falls) vs. 20% penetrating (stab wounds and gunshots)

Clinical Features

- mechanism of injury raises suspicion
- can be hemodynamically unstable secondary to renal vascular injury and/or other sustained injuries: ABCs
- upper abdominal tenderness, flank tenderness, flank contusions, lower rib/vertebral transverse process fracture

Investigations

- U/A
 - hematuria: requires workup but degree does not correlate with the severity of injury
- imaging
 - CT (contrast, triphasic) if patient stable: look for renal laceration, extravasation of contrast, retroperitoneal hematoma, and associated intra-abdominal organ injury

Staging (Does Not Necessarily Correlate Well with Clinical Status)

- I: contusion/hematoma
- II: <1 cm laceration without urinary extravasation
- III: >1 cm laceration without urinary extravasation
- IV: urinary extravasation
- V: shattered kidney or avulsion of pedicle

Treatment

- microscopic hematuria + isolated well-staged minor injuries → no hospitalization
- gross hematuria + contusion/minor lacerations → hospitalize, bedrest, repeat CT if bleeding persists
- surgical intervention/minimally invasive angiography and embolization:
 - absolute indications
 - ♦ hemorrhage and hemodynamic instability
 - relative indications
 - ♦ non-viable tissue and major laceration
 - ♦ urinary extravasation
 - ♦ vascular injury
 - ♦ expanding or pulsating peri-renal mass
 - ♦ laparotomy for associated injury
- follow-up with U/S or CT before d/c, and at 6 wk

Complications

- HTN in 5% of renal trauma

Bladder Trauma

Classification

- contusions: no urinary extravasation, damage to mucosa or muscularis
- intraperitoneal ruptures: often involve the bladder dome
- extraperitoneal ruptures: involve anterior or lateral bladder wall in full bladder

Etiology

- blunt (MVC, falls, and crush injury) vs. penetrating trauma to lower abdomen, pelvis, or perineum
- blunt trauma is associated with pelvic fracture in 97% of cases

Clinical Features

- abdominal tenderness, distention, peritonitis, and inability to void
- can be hemodynamically unstable secondary to pelvic fracture, other sustained injuries: ABCs
- suprapubic pain

Investigations

- U/A: gross hematuria in 90%
- imaging (including CT cystogram and post-drainage films for extravasation)

Treatment

- penetrating trauma → surgical exploration
- contusion → urethral catheter until hematuria completely resolves
- extraperitoneal bladder perforations → typically non-operative with foley insertion, and follow with cystograms
 - surgery if: infected urine, rectal/vaginal perforation, bony spike into bladder, laparotomy for concurrent injury, bladder neck involvement, persistent urine leak and failed conservative management
- intraperitoneal rupture usually requires surgical repair and suprapubic catheterization

Complications

- complications of bladder injury itself are rare
- mortality is around 20%, and is usually due to associated injuries rather than bladder rupture

Urethral Injuries

Etiology

- posterior urethra
 - common site of injury is junction of membranous and prostatic urethra due to blunt trauma, MVCs, pelvic fracture
 - shearing force on fixed membranous and mobile prostatic urethra
- anterior urethra
 - straddle injury can crush bulbar urethra against pubic rami
- other causes
 - iatrogenic (instrumentation, prosthesis insertion), penile fracture, masturbation with urethral manipulation
- always look for associated bladder rupture



All patients with suspected urethral injury should undergo RUG

Clinical Features

- blood at urethral meatus
- high-riding prostate on DRE
- swelling and butterfly perineal hematoma
- penile and/or scrotal hematoma
- sensation of voiding without U/O
- distended bladder

Investigations

- must perform RUG or cystoscopy prior to catheterization

Treatment

- simple contusions
 - no treatment
- partial urethral disruption
 - very gentle attempt at catheterization by urologist
 - with no resistance to catheterization → Foley x 2-3 wk
 - with resistance to catheterization → suprapubic cystostomy or urethral catheter alignment in OR
- periodic flow rates/urethrograms to evaluate for stricture formation
- complete disruption
 - immediate repair if patient stable, delayed repair if unstable (suprapubic tube in interim)

Complications

- stricture

Infertility

Definition

- failure to conceive after one year of unprotected, properly timed intercourse
- incidence
 - 15% of all couples
 - ~ 35-40% female, 20% male, 25-30% combined problem

Female Factors

- see [Gynecology, GY20](#)



Male Factors

Male Reproduction

- hypothalamic-pituitary-testicular axis (HPTA)
 - pulsatile GnRH from hypothalamus acts on anterior pituitary stimulating release of LH and FSH
 - LH acts on Leydig (interstitial) cells → testosterone synthesis and secretion
 - FSH acts on Sertoli cells → structural and metabolic support to developing spermatogenic cells
 - FSH and testosterone support germ cells (responsible for spermatogenesis)
 - sperm route: epididymis → vas deferens → ejaculatory ducts → prostatic urethra

Etiology

- idiopathic (40-50% infertile males)
- testicular
 - varicocele (35-40% infertile males)
 - tumor
 - congenital (Klinefelter's triad: small, firm testes, gynecomastia, and azoospermia)
 - post-infectious (epididymo-orchitis, STDs, mumps)
 - uncorrected torsion
 - cryptorchidism (<5% of cases)
- obstructive
 - iatrogenic (surgery: see below)
 - infectious (gonorrhea, chlamydia)
 - trauma
 - congenital (absence of vas deferens, CF)

**Male Infertility Factors****SPERM COUNT**

Systemic factor/Smoking

Psychological illness

Endocrinopathy

Retrograde ejaculation

Medications

Chronic disease

Obstructive

Unexplained

Narcotics

Testicular

- bilateral ejaculatory duct obstruction, epididymal obstructions
- Kartagener's syndrome (autosomal recessive disorder causing defect in action of cilia)
- endocrine (see [Endocrinology, E47](#))
- HPTA (2-3%) e.g. Kallmann's syndrome (congenital hypothalamic hypogonadism), excess prolactin, excess androgens, excess estrogens
- other
 - retrograde ejaculation secondary to surgery
 - medications
 - drugs: marijuana, cocaine, tobacco, alcohol
 - increased testicular temperature (sauna, hot baths, tight pants or underwear)
 - chronic disease: e.g. liver, renal
 - unexplained infertility

History

- age of both partners
- medical: past illness, DM, trauma, CF, genetic syndromes, STDs, cryptorchidism
- surgical: vasectomy, herniorrhaphy, orchidopexy, prostate surgery
- fertility: pubertal onset, previous pregnancies, duration of infertility, treatments
- sexual: libido, erection/ejaculation, timing, frequency
- family Hx
- medications: cytotoxic agents, GnRH agonists, anabolic steroids, nitrofurantoin, cimetidine, sulfasalazine, spironolactone, α -blockers
- social hx: alcohol, tobacco, cocaine, marijuana
- occupational exposures: radiation, heavy metals

Physical Exam

- general appearance: sexual development, gynecomastia, obesity
- scrotal exam: size, consistency, and nodularity of testicles; palpation of cord for presence of vas deferens; DRE; Valsalva for varicocele

Investigations

- semen analysis (SA) at least 2 specimens, collected 1-2 wk apart
 - delivery to lab within 1 h, 2-7 d of abstinence prior to collection
- hormonal evaluation
 - indicated with abnormal SA (rare to be abnormal with normal SA)
 - testosterone and FSH
 - serum LH and prolactin are measured if testosterone or FSH are abnormal
- genetic evaluation
 - chromosomal studies (Klinefelter's syndrome – XXY)
 - genetic studies (Y-chromosome microdeletion, CF gene mutation)
- immunologic studies (antisperm antibodies in ejaculate and blood)
- testicular biopsy
- scrotal U/S (varicocele, testicular size)
- vasography (assess patency of vas deferens)

Treatment

- assessment of partner
- lifestyle
 - regular exercise, healthy diet
 - eliminate alcohol, tobacco and illicit drugs
- medical
 - endocrine therapy (see [Endocrinology, E48](#))
 - treat retrograde ejaculation
 - discontinue anti-sympathomimetic agents, may start α -adrenergic stimulation (phenylpropanolamine, pseudoephedrine, or ephedrine)
 - treat underlying infections
- surgical
 - varicolectomy (if indicated)
 - vasovasostomy (vasectomy reversal) or epididymovasostomy
 - transurethral resection of blocked ejaculatory ducts
- assisted reproductive technologies (ART)
 - refer to infertility specialist
 - sperm washing + intrauterine insemination (IUI)
 - *in vitro* fertilization (IVF)
 - intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) after CF screening of patient and partner in patients with congenital bilateral absence of vas deferens



WHO Guidelines

Normal Semen Values

- Volume: 2-5 mL
- Concentration: > 15 million sperm/mL
- Morphology: 30% normal forms
- Motility: > 40% adequate forward progression
- Liquefaction: complete in 20 min
- pH: 7.2-7.8
- WBC: < 10/HPF or < 10⁶ WBC/mL semen



Mutation of cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR) gene is associated with congenital bilateral absence of vas deferens and epididymal cysts, even if patient manifests no symptoms of CF



Common Terminology on SA

- Teratospermia: Abnormal morphology
- Asthenospermia: Abnormal motility
- Oligospermia: Decreased sperm count
- Azoospermia: Absent sperm in semen
- Mixed types, i.e. oligoasthenospermia



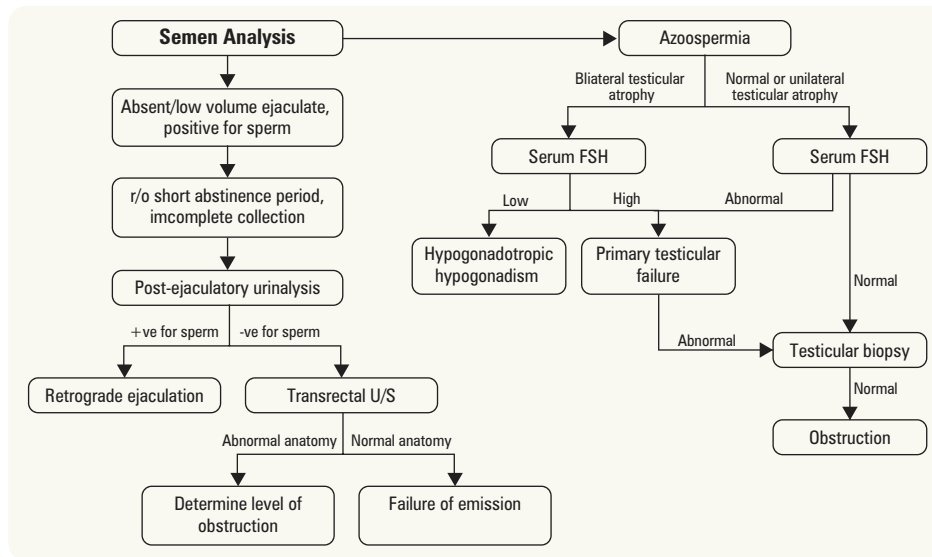


Figure 15. Infertility workup

Pediatric Urology

Congenital Abnormalities

- not uncommon; 1/200 have congenital abnormalities of the GU tract
- six common presentations of congenital urological abnormalities

1. ANTENATAL HYDRONEPHROSIS

Epidemiology

- 1-5% fetal U/S, detectable as early as first trimester
- most common urological consultation in perinatal period and one of most common U/S abnormalities of pregnancy

Differential Diagnosis

- UPJ or UVJ obstruction
- multi-cystic dysplastic kidney
- VUR
- PUVs (only in boys)
- duplication anomalies
- ureterocele
- ectopic ureter

Treatment

- antenatal *in utero* intervention rarely indicated unless evidence of PUVs with oligohydramnios



Majority of antenatal hydronephroses resolve during pregnancy or within the first year of life

2. POSTERIOR URETHRAL VALVES

Epidemiology

- the most common congenital obstructive urethral lesion in male infants

Pathophysiology

- abnormal mucosal folds at the distal prostatic urethra causing varying degrees of obstruction

Clinical Presentation

- dependent on age
 - antenatal: bilateral hydronephrosis, distended bladder, oligohydramnios
 - neonatal (recognized at birth): palpable abdominal mass (distended bladder, hydronephrosis), ascites (transudation of retroperitoneal urine), respiratory distress (pulmonary hypoplasia from oligohydramnios), weak urinary stream
 - neonatal (not recognized at birth): within weeks present with urosepsis, dehydration, electrolyte abnormalities, failure to thrive

- toddlers: UTIs or voiding dysfunction
- school-aged boys: voiding dysfunction → urinary incontinence
- associated findings include renal dysplasia and secondary VUR

Investigations

- most commonly recognized on prenatal U/S → bilateral hydronephrosis, thickened bladder, dilated posterior urethra (“keyhole sign”), oligohydramnios in a male fetus
- VCUG → dilated and elongated posterior urethra, trabeculated bladder, VUR

Treatment

- immediate catheterization to relieve obstruction, followed by cystoscopic resection of PUV when baby is stable
- if resection of PUV is not possible, vesicostomy is indicated

3. URETEROPELVIC JUNCTION OBSTRUCTION

Etiology

- unclear: adynamic ureteral segment, stenosis, strictures, extrinsic compression, stenosis, strictures, aberrant blood vessels
- can rarely be secondary to tumor, stone, etc. in children

Epidemiology

- the most common congenital defect of the ureter
- M:F = 2:1
- up to 40% bilateral, which may be associated with worse prognosis

Clinical Presentation

- symptoms depend on severity and age at diagnosis (mostly asymptomatic finding on antenatal U/S)
 - infants: abdominal mass, urinary infection
 - children: pain, vomiting, failure to thrive
- some cases are diagnosed after puberty and into adulthood
 - in adolescents and adults, the symptoms may be triggered by episodes of increased diuresis, such as following alcohol ingestion (Dietl’s crisis)

Investigations

- antenatal U/S most common, Doppler U/S (rare), IVP (rare), and renal scan ± furosemide

Treatment

- surgical correction (pyeloplasty), consider nephrectomy if <15% differential renal function

4. VESICoureTERAL REFLUX

Definition

- retrograde passage of urine from the bladder, through the UVJ, into the ureter

Classification

- primary reflux: incompetent or inadequate closure of UVJ
 - lateral ureteral insertion, short submucosal segment
- secondary reflux: abnormally high intravesical pressure resulting in failure of UVJ closure
 - often associated with anatomic (PUV) or functional (neuropathic) bladder obstruction

Epidemiology

- estimated ~1% of newborns, but not well known
- incidence and clinical relevance higher in children with febrile UTIs and prenatal hydronephrosis
- risk factors: race (white > black), female gender, age (<2 yr), genetic predisposition

Investigations

- focused Hx, particularly of voiding dysfunction (frequency, urgency, diurnal enuresis, constipation, encopresis)
 - also screen for signs of infection (UTI, pyelonephritis, urosepsis) and renal failure (uremia, HTN)
- initial evaluation of renal status, growth parameters, and blood pressure is warranted in any child with VUR due to high incidence of renal scarring
 - height, weight, blood pressure
 - Cr



VUR Grading (based on cystogram)

- **Grade I:** ureters only fill
- **Grade II:** ureters and pelvis fill
- **Grade III:** ureters and pelvis fill with some dilatation
- **Grade IV:** ureters, pelvis, and calyces fill with significant dilatation
- **Grade V:** ureters, pelvis, and calyces fill with major dilatation and tortuosity

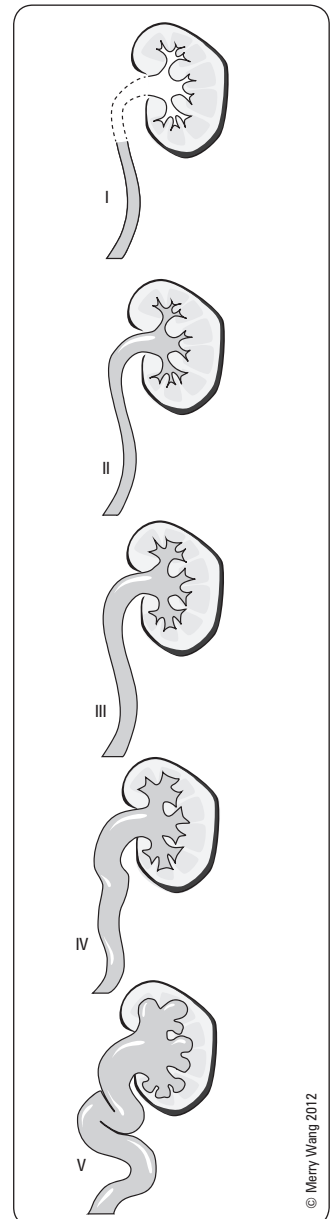


Figure 16. VUR grading (based on cystogram)

- U/A, C&S
- renal U/S
- DMSA renal scan if at high risk (greater sensitivity in detecting structural defects associated with dysplasia, renal scarring or pyelonephritis; entails radiation exposure)
- family screening is controversial

Treatment

- spontaneous resolution in 60% of primary reflux
 - in lower grades (I-III), goal is to prevent infection or renal damage via medical treatment and monitoring
- medical treatment: daily ABx prophylaxis at half the treatment dose for acute infection (see Table 8, U12 - TMP/SMX, trimethoprim, amoxicillin, or nitrofurantoin)
- surgical treatment: ureteral reimplantation ± ureteroplasty, or subureteral injection with bulking agents (Deflux® or Macroplastique®)
 - indications include failure of medical management, renal scarring (e.g. renal insufficiency, HTN), breakthrough UTIs, persistent high grade (IV or V) reflux

5. HYPOSPADIAS

Definition

- a condition in which the urethral meatus opens on the ventral side of the penis, proximal to the normal location in the glans penis
- depending on severity, may result in difficulty directing urinary stream, having intercourse or depositing sperm in vagina

Epidemiology

- very common; 1/300 live male births
- distal hypospadias more common than proximal
- white >> black
- may be associated with ventral penile curvature, disorders of sexual differentiation, undescended testicles or inguinal hernia

Treatment

- early surgical correction; optimal repair before 2 yr
- neonatal circumcision should be deferred because the foreskin may be utilized in the correction

6. EPISPADIAS-EXSTROPHY COMPLEX

Definition

- a spectrum of defects depending on the timing of the rupture of the cloacal membrane
 - bladder exstrophy: congenital absence of a portion of lower abdominal and anterior bladder wall, with exposure of the bladder lumen
 - cloacal exstrophy
 - ♦ exposed bladder and bowel with imperforate anus
 - ♦ associated with spina bifida in >50%
 - epispadias (least severe)
 - ♦ urethra opens on dorsal aspect of the penis, often associated with penile curvature

Etiology

- represents failure of closure of the cloacal membrane, resulting in the bladder and urethra opening directly through the abdominal wall

Epidemiology

- rare: incidence 1/30,000, M:F = 3:1 predominance
- high morbidity → multiple reconstructive surgeries, incontinence, infertility, reflux

Treatment

- surgical correction at birth
- later corrections for incontinence, VUR, and low bladder capacity may be needed



Defer circumcision in patients with hypospadias

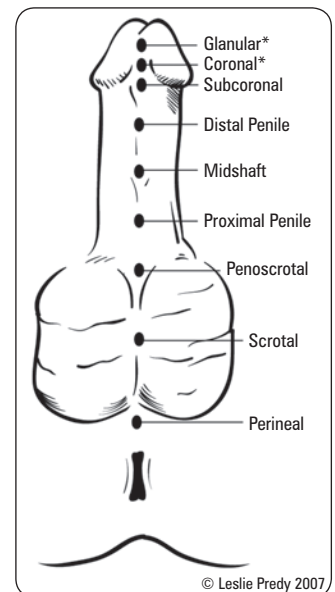


Figure 17. Classification of hypospadias (*account for 75%)

Nephroblastoma (Wilms' Tumor)

Etiology

- arises from abnormal proliferation of metanephric blastema

Epidemiology

- 5% of all childhood cancers, 5% bilateral
- most common primary malignant renal tumor of childhood
- average age of incidence is 3 yr

Clinical Features

- abdominal mass: large, firm, unilateral (80%)
- HTN (25%)
- flank tenderness
- microscopic hematuria
- nausea/vomiting

Treatment

- always investigate contralateral kidney and renal vein (for tumor thrombus)
- unilateral disease: radical nephrectomy ± radiation ± chemotherapy
- bilateral disease: nephron-sparing surgery following neoadjuvant chemotherapy

Prognosis

- 5 yr survival 80%

Cryptorchidism/Ectopic Testes

Definition

- abnormal location of testes somewhere along the normal path of descent (external inguinal ring > inguinal canal > abdominal)
- ectopic testis (testis found outside its normal path of descent) is most commonly located within a superficial pouch between the external oblique fascia and Scarpa's fascia (Denis Browne pouch)
- differential diagnosis
 - retractile testes
 - atrophic testes
 - disorders of sexual differentiation (bilateral impalpable gonads)

Epidemiology

- 2.7% of full term newborns
- 0.7-0.8% at 1 yr old

Treatment

- orchiopexy
- hormonal therapy not proven to be of benefit over standard surgical treatment

Prognosis

- reduction in fertility
 - untreated bilateral cryptorchidism: ~100% infertility
 - paternity rates: 53%, 90%, and 93% in formerly bilateral cryptorchid, formerly unilateral cryptorchid, and normal men, respectively
- increased malignancy risk
 - intraabdominal > inguinal
 - surgical correction facilitates testicular monitoring and may reduce malignancy risk
- increased risk of testicular torsion (reduced by surgical correction)



Normal Testicular Development and Descent *in Utero*

2nd mo: Testicle begins to form

4th mo: Begins to take on its normal appearance and migrates from its origin at the kidney to the internal inguinal ring

7th mo: The testis, surrounded in peritoneal covering, begins to descend through the internal ring, inguinal canal and external ring to terminate in the scrotum

Disorders of Sexual Differentiation

Definition

- formerly known as intersex disorders
- abnormal genitalia for chromosomal sex due to the undermasculinization of males or the virilization of females
- considered a social emergency

Classification

1. 46 XY DSD
 - defect in testicular synthesis of androgens
 - androgen resistance in target tissues
 - palpable gonad



A phenotypic male newborn with bilateral non-palpable testicles should be considered 46XX with salt-wasting CAH and must undergo proper evaluation prior to discharge

2. 46 XX DSD

- most due to CAH (21-hydroxylase deficiency most common enzymatic defect) → shunt in steroid biosynthetic pathway leading to excess androgens
- undiagnosed and untreated CAH can be associated with life-threatening electrolyte abnormalities in the newborn (salt-wasting CAH)

3. ovotesticular DSD

4. mixed gonadal dysgenesis (46 XY/45 XO most common karyotype)

- presence of Y chromosome → partial testis determination to varying degrees

Diagnosis

- thorough family Hx noting any consanguinity
- maternal Hx, especially medication/drug use during pregnancy (maternal hyperandrogenemia)
- P/E: palpable gonad (= chromosomal male), hyperpigmentation, evidence of dehydration, HTN, stretched phallus length, position of urethral meatus
- laboratory tests
 - plasma 17-OH-progesterone (after 36 h of life) → increased in 21-hydroxylase deficiency (CAH)
 - plasma 11-deoxycortisol → increased in 11-β-hydroxylase deficiency
 - basal adrenal steroid levels
 - serum testosterone and DHT pre- and post-hCG stimulation (2,000 IU/d for 4 d)
 - serum electrolytes
 - chromosomal evaluation including sex karyotype
- U/S of adrenals, gonads, uterus, and fallopian tubes
- endoscopy and genitography of urogenital sinus

Treatment

- steroid supplementation as indicated (e.g. CAH)
- sex assignment after extensive family consultation
 - must consider capacity for sexually functioning genitalia in adulthood, fertility potential, and psychological impact
- reconstruction of external genitalia between 6 and 12 mo
- long-term psychological guidance and support for both patient and family

Enuresis

- see [Pediatrics](#), P9

**Selected Urological Procedures****Bladder Catheterization**

- catheter size measured by the French (Fr) scale – circumference in mm
- each 1 mm increase in diameter = approximately 3 Fr increase (standard size 16-18 Fr)
- should be removed as soon as possible to reduce the risk of UTI

Continuous Catheterization

- indications
 - accurate monitoring of U/O
 - relief of urinary retention due to medication, neurogenic bladder, or intravesical obstruction
 - temporary therapy for urinary incontinence
 - perineal wounds
 - clot prevention (24-28 Fr) for CBI
 - post-operative

Alternatives to Continuous Catheterization

- intermittent catheterization
 - PVR measurement
 - to obtain sterile diagnostic specimens for U/A, urine C&S
 - management of neurogenic bladder or chronic urinary retention
- condom catheter
- suprapubic catheter

Causes of Difficult Catheterizations and Treatment

- patient discomfort → use sufficient lubrication (± xylocaine)
- collapsing catheter → lubrication as above ± firmer or larger catheter (silastic catheter)

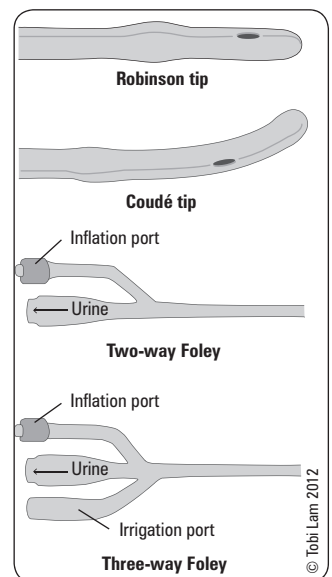


Figure 18. Transurethral (Foley) catheters

- meatal/urethral stricture → dilate with progressively larger catheters/balloon catheter
- BPH → use coude catheter as angled tip can help navigate around enlarged prostate
- urethral disruption/obstruction → filiform and followers or suprapubic catheterization
- anxious patient → anxiolytic medication

Complications of Catheterization

- infection: UTI
- meatal/urethral trauma

Contraindications

- urethral trauma: blood at the meatus of the urethra, scrotal hematoma, pelvic fracture, and/or high riding prostate

Circumcision

Definition

- removal of some or all of the foreskin from the penis

Epidemiology

- 30% worldwide
- frequency varies depending on geographic location, religious affiliation, socioeconomic classification

Medical Indications

- phimosis and recurrent paraphimosis
- recurrent UTIs (particularly in infants and in association with other urinary abnormalities)
- balanitis xerotica obliterans or other chronic inflammatory conditions

Contraindications

- unstable or sick infant
- congenital genital abnormalities (hypospadias)
- family Hx of bleeding disorders warrants laboratory investigation prior to circumcision

Complications

- bleeding
- infection
- penile entrapment, skin bridges
- fistula
- glans injury
- penile sensation deficits

Cystoscopy

Objective

- endoscopic inspection of the lower urinary tract (urethra, prostate, bladder, and ureteral orifices), samples for cytology
- scopes can be flexible or rigid

Indications

- gross hematuria
- LUTS (storage or voiding)
- urethral and bladder neck strictures
- bladder stones
- bladder tumor surveillance
- evaluation of upper tracts with retrograde pyelography (ureteric stents, catheters)

Complications

- during procedure
 - bleeding
 - anesthetic-related
 - perforation (rare)
- post-procedure (short-term)
 - infections, e.g. epididymo-orchitis (rare)
 - urinary retention
- post-procedure (long-term)
 - stricture



Male Circumcision for Prevention of Heterosexual Acquisition of HIV in Men

Cochrane DB Syst Rev 2009;2:CD003362

Purpose: To evaluate the effectiveness and safety of male circumcision for preventing acquisition of HIV in heterosexual men.

Methods: The analyzed data is from three randomized controlled trials to assess the efficacy of male circumcision for preventing HIV acquisition in men in Africa.

Results: Medical male circumcision reduces the acquisition of HIV by heterosexual men (38%-66% over 24 mo).



Circumcision Status and Risk of HIV and Sexually Transmitted Diseases among Men who have Sex with Men: A Meta-Analysis

JAMA 2008;300:1674-1684

Purpose: To describe the association between male circumcision and HIV infection and other Sexually Transmitted Diseases (STDs) among men who have sex with men (MSM).

Methods: Meta-analysis of 15 studies (n=53,567)

Results: The associations between circumcision and HIV-positive and STDs were not statistically significant. Male circumcision had a protective association with HIV in studies of MSM conducted before the introduction of highly active antiretroviral therapy.

Conclusions: There is insufficient evidence to support that male circumcision protects against HIV infection or other STDs.



Male Circumcision

Pediatrics 2012;130:e756-e785

Study: Guidelines by the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP).

Recommendations: The American Academy of Pediatrics radically changed their position on male circumcision in 2012. The report from the AAP now states that the preventative health benefits outweigh the risks of the procedure and that the procedure is well-tolerated with adequate pain management and sterility. Stated benefits include the prevention of urinary tract infection, penile cancer, transmission of some sexually transmitted diseases, including HIV. There is believed to be no effect on penile sexual function, sensitivity or sexual satisfaction. Acute complications are rare and more common if the procedure is done by an untrained provider.

Note: The Canadian Pediatric Society (CPS) has not yet updated their position on male circumcision since 1996, which stated that the CPS is opposed to routine circumcision. A new statement is expected soon.

Radical Prostatectomy

Objective

- the removal of the entire prostate and prostatic capsule via a lower midline abdominal incision, laparoscopically or robotically
 - internal iliac and obturator vessel lymph nodes may also be dissected and sent for pathology (dependent on risk: clinical stage, grade, PSA)
 - seminal vesicle vessels are also partially or completely removed

Indications

- treatment for localized prostate cancer

Complications

- immediate (intraoperative)
 - blood loss
 - rectal injury (extremely rare)
 - ureteral injury (extremely rare)
- perioperative
 - lymphocele formation
- late
 - moderate to severe urinary incontinence (3-10%)
 - mild urinary incontinence ($\leq 20\%$)
 - ED (~50%, depending on whether one, both, or neither of the neurovascular bundles are involved in extracapsular extension of tumor)



Retropubic, Laparoscopic, and Robot-Assisted Radical Prostatectomy: A Critical Review of Outcomes Reported by High-Volume Centers

J Endourology 2010;24:2003-2015

Study: A systematic review to compare perioperative outcomes, positive surgical margin (PSM) rates, and functional outcomes in retropubic radical prostatectomy (RRP) laparoscopic RP (LRP) and robot-assisted radical prostatectomy (RARP).

Methods: Medline database was searched. Weighted means (based on number of participants in each study) were calculated for all outcomes.

Results: 58 articles were reviewed. LRP and RARP were associated with better perioperative outcomes compared to RRP. RRP, LRP, and RARP had similar post-operative complication rates ranging from 10.3-10.98%. RARP had a lower overall PSM rate than LRP, and RRP. RARP had the highest continence rate and mean potency rates.

Conclusion: In high-volume centers, RRP, LRP and RARP are safe options for treating patients with localized prostate cancer. LRP and RARP are associated with better perioperative outcomes and RARP showed lower PSM rates, higher potency and continence compared to RRP and LRP.

Transurethral Resection of the Prostate

Objective

- to partially resect the periurethral portion of the prostate (transition zone) to decrease symptoms of urinary tract obstruction
- accomplished via a transurethral (cystoscopic) approach using an electrocautery loop, irrigation (glycine), and illumination

Indications

- obstructive uropathy (large bladder diverticula, renal insufficiency)
- refractory urinary retention
- recurrent UTIs
- recurrent gross hematuria
- bladder stones
- intolerance/failure of medical therapy

Complications

- acute
 - intra- or extraperitoneal rupture of the bladder
 - rectal perforation
 - incontinence
 - incision of the ureteral orifice (with subsequent reflux or ureteral stricture)
 - hemorrhage
 - epididymitis
 - sepsis
 - transurethral resection syndrome (also called "post-TURP syndrome")
 - caused by absorption of a large volume of the hypotonic irrigation solution used, usually through perforated venous sinusoids, leading to a hypervolemic hyponatremic state
 - characterized by dilutional hyponatremia, confusion, nausea, vomiting, HTN, bradycardia, visual disturbances, CHF, and pulmonary edema
 - treat with diuresis and (if severe) hypertonic saline administration
- chronic
 - retrograde ejaculation (>75%)
 - ED (5-10% risk increases with increasing use of cautery)
 - incontinence (<1%)
 - urethral stricture
 - bladder neck contracture

Extracorporeal Shock Wave Lithotripsy

Objective

- to treat renal and ureteral calculi (proximal, middle or distal) which cannot pass through the urinary tract naturally
- shockwaves are generated and focused onto stone → fragmentation, allowing stone fragments to pass spontaneously and less painfully

Indications

- potential first-line therapy for renal and ureteral calculi <2.5 cm
- individuals with calculi in solitary kidney
- individuals with HTN, DM or renal insufficiency
- *patient preference and wait-times play a large role in stone management

Contraindications

- acute UTI or urosepsis
- bleeding disorder or coagulopathy
- pregnancy
- obstruction distal to stone

Complications

- bacteriuria
- bacteremia
- post-procedure hematuria
- ureteric obstruction (by stone fragments)
- peri-nephric hematoma



A Comparison of Treatment Modalities for Renal Calculi Between 100 and 300 mm²: Are Shockwave Lithotripsy, Ureteroscopy, and Percutaneous Nephrolithotomy Equivalent?
J Endourol 2011;25:481-485

Purpose: To describe the outcomes of a series of patients who underwent shockwave lithotripsy (SWL), ureteroscopy (URS) or percutaneous nephrolithotomy (PCNL).

Methods: Patients treated for intermediate-sized upper tract calculi (100-300 mm²) at a single tertiary center were included. Demographic and clinical data were collected from a prospectively maintained database.

Results: Of 137 patients, 38.7%, 29.9%, and 31.4% were treated with SWL, URS, and PCNL, respectively. Stone-free rate (95.3%) and single treatment success rate (95.3%) were highest for PCNL compared to SWL and URS ($p < 0.001$). When allowing for up to two SWL treatments, success rates became equivalent for the three treatment groups ($p = 0.66$). Auxiliary treatments were more frequent after SWL compared to URS and PCNL. Clavien grade complications did not differ between the three groups.

Conclusion: Up to two SWL treatments have equivalent success rate as compared to URS and PCNL. Hence, multiple SWL treatments may be a reasonable therapeutic option for patients who prefer SWL or who are not good candidates for alternative therapies.

Common Medications

Table 26. Erectile Dysfunction Medications

Drug	Class	Mechanism	Adverse Effects
sildenafil tadalafil vardenafil (PDE5s for use when some erection present)	Phosphodiesterase 5 inhibitor	Selective inhibition of PDE5 (enzyme which degrades cGMP) Leads to sinusoidal smooth muscle relaxation and erection	Severe hypotension (very rare) Contraindicated if hx of priapism, or in conditions predisposing to priapism (leukemia, myelofibrosis, polycythemia, sickle cell disease) Contraindicated with nitrates
alprostadil (MUSE®), PGE ₁ + phentolamine + papaverine mixture	Prostaglandin E ₁	Activation of cAMP, relaxing sinusoidal smooth muscle Local release (capsule inserted into urethra)	Penile pain Presyncope
alprostadil, papaverine (intracavernosal injection)	See above	See above	Thickening of tunica albuginea at site of repeated injections (Peyronie's plaque) Painful erection Hematoma Contraindicated if hx of priapism, or in conditions predisposing to priapism
triple therapy also used: papaverine, phentolamine, PGE ₁			

Table 27. Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia Medications

Drug	Class	Mechanism	Adverse Effects
terazosin doxazosin	α_1 blockers	α -adrenergic antagonists reduce stromal smooth muscle tone Reduce dynamic component of bladder outlet obstruction	Presyncope Leg edema Retrograde ejaculation
tamsulosin alfuzosin silodosin	α_{1A} selective		Headache Asthenia Nasal congestion
finasteride dutasteride	5- α reductase inhibitor	Blocks conversion of testosterone to DHT Reduces static component of bladder outlet obstruction Reduces prostatic volume	Sexual dysfunction PSA decreases

Table 28. Prostatic Carcinoma Medications (N>0, M>0)

Drug	Class	Mechanism	Adverse Effects
leuprolide, goserelin	GnRH agonist	Initially stimulates LH, increasing testosterone and causing "flare" (initially increases bone pain) Later causes low testosterone	Hot flashes Headache Decreased libido
*diethylstilbestrol (DES)	Estrogens	Inhibit LH and cytotoxic effect on tumor cells	Increased risk of cardiovascular events (no longer available commercially in North America)
*cyproterone acetate	Steroidal antiandrogen	Competes with DHT for intracellular receptors: 1. Prevent flare produced by GnRH agonist 2. Use for complete androgen blockade 3. May preserve potency	
flutamide, bicalutamide	Non-steroidal antiandrogen	As above	Hepatotoxic: AST/ALT monitoring
*ketoconazole, spironolactone	Steroidogenesis inhibitors	Blocks multiple enzymes in steroid pathway, including adrenal androgens	GI symptoms Hyperkalemia Gynecomastia

*Very rarely used

Table 29. Continence Agents and Overactive Bladder Medications

Drug	Class	Mechanism	Indication	Adverse Effects
oxybutynin	Antispasmodic	Inhibits action of ACh on smooth muscle Decreases frequency of uninhibited detrusor contraction Diminishes initial urge to void	Overactive bladder Urge incontinence + urgency + frequency	Dry mouth Blurred vision Constipation Supraventricular tachycardia
oxybutynin, tolterodine, trospium, solifenacin, darifenacin, fesoterodine	Anticholinergic	Muscarinic receptor antagonist Selective for bladder Increases bladder volume Decreases detrusor pressure	Overactive bladder Urge incontinence + urgency + frequency	As above
mirabegron	β3 agonist	Beta sympathetic receptor blocker in the bladder; relaxes bladder during storage phase	Overactive bladder Urge incontinence + urgency + frequency	Blood pressure should be monitored
imipramine	Tricyclic antidepressant	Sympathomimetic effects: urinary sphincter contraction Anticholinergic effects: detrusor relaxation	Stress and urge incontinence	As above Weight gain Orthostatic hypotension Prolonged PR interval

Note: All anti-cholinergics are equally effective and long-acting formulations are better tolerated. Newer muscarinic M3 receptor specific agents (solifenacin, darifenacin) are equally efficacious as older drugs, however, RCTs based on head-to-head comparison to long acting formulations are lacking.

References

General Information

American Urological Association. Available from: <http://www.auanet.org/guidelines/>.
 Canadian Urological Association. Available from: http://www.cua.org/guidelines_e.asp.
 Ferri F. Practical guide to the care of the medical patient, 6th ed. St. Louis: Mosby, 2006.
 Goldman L, Ausiello D. Cecil textbook of medicine, 23rd ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2007.
 Macfarlane MT. House officer series: Urology, 3rd ed. Philadelphia: Lippincott, 2001.
 Montague DK, Jarow J, Broderick GA, et al. Guideline on the management of priapism. American Urological Association Education and Research, Inc. ©2003. Available from: <http://www.auanet.org/education/guidelines/priapism.cfm>.
 Tanagho EA, McAninch JW. Smith's general urology, 17th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill, 2007.
 Wein AJ, Kavoussi LR, Novick AC, et al. Campbell's urology, 10th ed. Philadelphia: WB Saunders, 2011.
 Wieder JA. Pocket guide to urology, 4th ed. Oakland: Wieder, 2010.

Common Presenting Problems

Bremner JD, Sadovsky R. Evaluation of dysuria in adults. Am Fam Phys 2002;65:1589-1597.
 Cohen RA, Brown RS. Microscopic hematuria. NEJM 2003;348:2330-2338.
 Morton AR, Iliescu EA, Wilson JW. Nephrology: investigation and treatment of recurrent kidney stones. CMAJ 2002;166:213-218.
 Teichman JMH. Acute renal colic from ureteral calculus. NEJM 2004;350:684-693.

Benign Renal Neoplasm

Israel GM, Bosniak MA. An update of Bosniak renal cyst classification system, Urology 2005;66:484-488.

Urological Emergencies

Galejs LE. Diagnosis and treatment of the acute scrotum. *Am Fam Phys* 1999;5:817-824.

Medications

Bill-Axelsson A, Holmberg L, Ruutu M, et al. SPCG-4 Investigators. Radical prostatectomy vs. watchful waiting in early prostate cancer. *NEJM* 2011;364:1708-1717.

Compendium of Pharmaceuticals and Specialties. Available from: <http://www.e-therapeutics.ca>.

Micromedex health care series. Available from: <http://www.micromedex.com>.

Rini B, Halabi S, Rosenberg J, et al. Bevacizumab plus interferon alfa compared with interferon alfa monotherapy in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma: CALGB 90206 trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2008;26:5422-5428.

EBM

Bill-Axelsson A, Holmberg L, Ruutu M, et al. Radical prostatectomy vs. watchful waiting in early prostate cancer. *NEJM* 2011;364:1708-1717.

Campschroer T, Zhu Y, Duijvesz D, et al. Alpha-blockers as medical expulsive therapy for ureteral stones. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2014;4:CD008509.

Coelho RF, Rocco B, Patel MB, et al. Retropubic, laparoscopic, and robot-assisted radical prostatectomy: a critical review of outcomes reported by high-volume centers. *J Endourol* 2010;24:2003-2015.

Escudier B, Eisen T, Stadler WM, et al. Sorafenib in advanced clear-cell renal-cell carcinoma. *NEJM* 2007;356:125-134.

Grossman HB, Natale RB, Tangen CM, et al. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy plus cystectomy compared with cystectomy alone for locally advanced bladder cancer. *NEJM* 2003;349:859-866.

Hoffman RM, Monga M, Elliott SP, et al. Microwave thermotherapy for benign prostatic hyperplasia. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2012;9:CD004135.

Ilic D, O'Connor D, Green S, et al. Screening for prostate cancer. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2013;1:CD004720.

James ND, Hussain SA, Hall E, et al. Radiotherapy with or without chemotherapy in muscle-invasive bladder cancer. *NEJM* 2012;366:1477-1488.

Kim SC, Seo KK. Efficacy and safety of fluoxetine, sertraline and clomipramine in patients with premature ejaculation: a double-blind, placebo controlled study. *J Urol* 1998;159:425-427.

McDonnell JD, Roehrborn CG, Bautista OM, et al. The long-term effect of doxazosin, finasteride, and combination therapy on the clinical progression of benign prostatic hyperplasia. *NEJM* 2003;349:2387-2398.

Millett GA, Flores SA, Marks G, et al. Circumcision status and risk of HIV and sexually transmitted infections among men who have sex with men: a meta-analysis. *JAMA* 2008;300:1674-1684.

Motzer RJ, Escudier B, Tomczak P, et al. Axitinib vs. sorafenib as second-line treatment for advanced renal cell carcinoma: overall survival analysis and updated results from a randomized phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2013;14:552-562.

Outerbridge E, Canadian Paediatric Society, Fetus and Newborn Committee. Position statement: neonatal circumcision revisited. *CMAJ* 1996;154:769-780.

Parsons JK, Hergan LA, Sakamoto K, et al. Efficacy of alpha-blockers for the treatment of ureteral stones. *J Urol* 2007;177:983-987.

Schröder FH, Hugosson J, Roobol MJ, et al. Screening and prostate-cancer mortality in a randomized European study. *NEJM* 2009;360:1320-1328.

Siegfried N, Muller M, Deeks JJ, et al. Male circumcision for prevention of heterosexual acquisition of HIV in men. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2009;2:CD003362.

Tacklind J, Fink HA, Macdonald R, et al. Finasteride for benign prostatic hyperplasia. *Cochrane DB Syst Rev* 2010;10:CD006015

Wiesenthal JD, Ghiculete D, D'A Honey RJ, et al. A comparison of treatment modalities for renal calculi between 100 and 300 mm²: are shockwave lithotripsy, ureteroscopy, and percutaneous nephrolithotomy equivalent? *J Endourol* 2011;25:481-485.

Wilt TJ, Brawer MK, Jones KM, et al. Radical prostatectomy vs. observation for localized prostate cancer. *NEJM* 2012;367:203-213.

Caleb CJ Zavitz, chapter editor

Khaled Ramadan, Karim Virani, and Vahagn Karapetyan, associate editors

Alexa Bramall, EBM editor

Dr. George Oreopoulos and Dr. Graham Roche-Nagle, staff editors

Acronyms	1
Vascular Disease	2
Peripheral Arterial Disease	2
Peripheral Vascular Anatomy	
Acute Arterial Occlusion/Insufficiency	
Chronic Arterial Occlusion/Insufficiency	
Aortic Disease	5
Aortic Anatomy	
Aortic Dissection	
Aortic Aneurysm	
Peripheral Venous Disease	8
Deep Venous Thromboembolism	
Superficial Venous Thrombosis	
Varicose Veins	
Chronic Venous Insufficiency	
Carotid Stenosis	
Lymphedema	
References	12

Acronyms

AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm	CVI	chronic venous insufficiency	MCA	middle cerebral artery
ABI	ankle-brachial index	CXR	chest x-ray	MRA	magnetic resonance angiography
ACEI	angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor	DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation	MSK	musculoskeletal
AFib	atrial fibrillation	DM	diabetes mellitus	OCP	oral contraceptive pill
AKA	above-knee amputation	DVT	deep vein thrombosis	PE	pulmonary embolism
AKI	acute kidney injury	ECASA	enteric coated ASA	PT	prothrombin time
aPTT	activated partial thromboplastin time (i.e. PTT)	ECG	electrocardiogram	PTT	partial thromboplastin time (i.e. aPTT)
ASA	acetylsalicylic acid (Aspirin®)	Echo	echocardiogram	PVD	peripheral vascular disease
AT	anterior tibial artery	ET	essential thrombocythemia	RIND	reversible ischemic neurologic deficit
BKA	below-knee amputation	EVAR	endovascular aortic aneurysm repair	SFA	superficial femoral artery
BP	blood pressure	EVLV	endovenous laser therapy	SVA	superficial venous thrombosis
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft	GSV	greater saphenous vein	TAA	thoracic aortic aneurysm
CAD	coronary artery disease	HITT	heparin-induced thrombocytopenia with thrombosis	TEE	transesophageal echocardiography
CBC	complete blood count	HTN	hypertension	TEVAR	thoracic endovascular aortic aneurysm repair
CCB	calcium channel blocker	IBD	inflammatory bowel disease	TIA	transient ischemic attack
CLI	critical limb ischemia	INR	international normalized ratio	TTE	transthoracic echocardiography
CTA	computed tomography angiography	LMWH	low molecular weight heparin		
CVD	cerebrovascular disease	LSV	lesser saphenous vein		

VASCULAR DISEASE

- see ESC Guidelines on the Diagnosis and Treatment of Peripheral Artery Diseases: Document Covering Atherosclerotic Disease of Extracranial Carotid and Vertebral, Mesenteric, Renal, Upper and Lower Extremity Arteries. "The Task Force on the Diagnosis and Treatment of Peripheral Artery Diseases of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC)." *Eur Heart J* 2011;32(22):2851-2906 for details

Peripheral Arterial Disease

Peripheral Vascular Anatomy

- see Figure 1

Acute Arterial Occlusion/Insufficiency

Definition

- acute occlusion/rupture of a peripheral artery, usually without a history of claudication
- urgent management required: treat within 6 h or irreversible ischemia and myonecrosis may result. Exception is in acute-on-chronic occlusion, because the buildup of collaterals allows time to investigate
- tends to be lower extremity > upper extremity; femoropopliteal > aortoiliac
- etiology embolic vs. thrombotic

Etiology and Risk Factors

Table 1. Clinical Categories of Acute Limb Ischemia

Grade	Category	Sensory loss	Motor Deficit	Prognosis
I	Viable	None	None	No immediate threat
IIA	Marginally threatened	None or minimal (toes)	None	Salvageable if promptly treated
IIB	Immediately threatened	More than toes	Mild/moderate	Salvageable if promptly revascularized
III	Irreversible	Profound, anesthetic	Profound, paralysis (rigor)	Major tissue loss Amputation Permanent nerve damage inevitable

Pro-Embolic States

- cardiac arrhythmias (AFib)
- endocarditis
- aneurysms

Hypercoagulable States

- congenital
 - group I (reduced anti-coagulants): anti-thrombin, protein C, protein S
 - group II: factor V Leiden, prothrombin, factor VIII, hyper-homocysteinemia
- acquired (increased coagulants): immobility, cancer, pregnancy/OCP, anti-phospholipid antibody syndrome, inflammatory disorders (e.g. IBD), myeloproliferative disorders (e.g. ET), nephrotic syndrome (acquired deficit in protein C and S), disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), heparin-induced thrombocytopenia with thrombosis (HITT)
- for presentation of embolus vs. thrombus (see Table 2)

Investigations

- history and physical exam: depending on degree of ischemia may have to forego investigations and go straight to OR
- ABI: extension of physical exam, easily performed at bedside
- ECG, troponin: rule out recent MI or arrhythmia
- CBC: rule out leukocytosis, thrombocytosis or recent drop in platelets in patients receiving heparin
- PT/INR: patient anticoagulated/sub-therapeutic INR
- Echo: identify wall motion abnormalities, intracardiac thrombus, valvular disease, aortic dissection (type A)
- CT angiogram: underlying atherosclerosis, aneurysm, aortic dissection
- conventional catheter based angiography: can be obtained in OR; prelude to thrombolytics

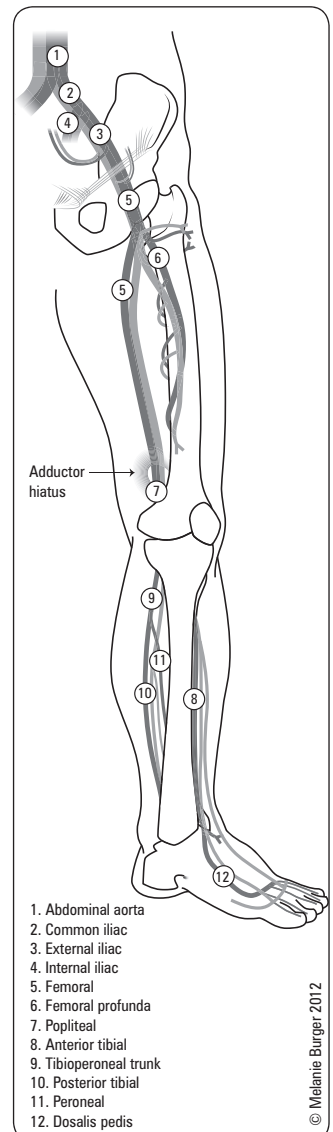


Figure 1. Peripheral vascular anatomy



Hypercoagulable State

Congenital

- Group I (reduced anticoagulants)
 - Antithrombin
 - Protein C
 - Protein S
- Group II (increased coagulants)
 - Factor V Leiden
 - Prothrombin
 - Factor VIII
 - Hyper-homocysteinemia

Acquired

- Immobility
- Cancer
- Pregnancy/Systemic hormonal contraceptives/HRT
- Antiphospholipid antibody syndrome
- Inflammatory disorders (e.g. IBD)
- Myeloproliferative disorders (e.g. ET)
- Nephrotic syndrome (acquired deficit in Protein C and S)
- DIC
- HITT

Treatment

- immediate heparinization with 5000 IU bolus and continuous infusion to maintain PTT >60 s
- if impaired neurovascular status: emergent revascularization
- if intact neurovascular status: time for workup (including angiogram)
- definitive treatment
 - embolus: embolectomy
 - thrombus: thrombectomy ± bypass graft ± endovascular therapy
 - irreversible ischemia (complete loss of power or sensation, absent venous and arterial dopplers, rigor): primary amputation
- identify and treat underlying cause
- continue heparin post-operative, start warfarin post-operative day 1 x 3 mo depending on underlying etiology

Table 2. Arterial Embolism vs. Thrombosis

Presentation	Embolus	Thrombus
Onset	Acute	Progressive, acute-on-chronic
Loss of function/sensation	Prominent	Less profound (due to underlying collaterals)
Hx of claudication	No	Maybe
Atrophic changes	No	Maybe
Contralateral limb pulses	Classically normal	Decreased or absent

Complications

- compartment syndrome with prolonged ischemia; requires 4-compartment (anterior/lateral/superficial and deep posterior) fasciotomy
- risk of arrhythmia and death with reperfusion injury
- renal failure and multi-organ failure due to toxic metabolites from ischemic muscle

Prognosis

- 12-15% mortality rate
- 5-40% morbidity rate (amputation)



Symptoms of Acute Limb Ischemia

6 Ps – all may not be present

Pain: absent in 20% of cases

Pallor: within a few hours becomes mottled cyanosis

Paresthesia: light touch lost first then sensory modalities

Paralysis/Power loss: most important, heralds impending gangrene

Polar/Poikilothermia (cold)

Pulselessness: not reliable



Differential Diagnosis of Claudication

Vascular

- Atherosclerotic disease
- Vasculitis (e.g. Buerger's disease, Takayasu's arteritis)
- Diabetic neuropathy
- Venous disease (e.g. DVT, varicose veins)
- Popliteal entrapment syndrome (e.g. Baker's cyst, tumor)

Neurologic

- Neurospinal disease (e.g. spinal stenosis)
- Reflex sympathetic dystrophy

MSK

- Osteoarthritis
- Rheumatoid arthritis/connective tissue disease
- Remote trauma

	Vascular claudication	Neurogenic claudication
Palliating Factors	Stop walking	Bending over/sitting
Provoking Factors	Walking uphill	Walking downhill
Pulses/ABIs	Reduced	Normal
Pain on Bicycling	Present	Absent
Motor Weakness after Walking	Absent	Present
Skin Changes	Present	Absent

Chronic Arterial Occlusion/Insufficiency

Etiology

- predominantly due to atherosclerosis; primarily lower extremities

Risk Factors

- major: smoking, DM
- minor: HTN, hyperlipidemia, family history, obesity, sedentary lifestyle, PMHx or FMHx CAD/CVD

Clinical Features

- claudication
 1. pain with exertion: usually in calves or any exercising muscle group
 2. relieved by short rest: 2-5 min, and no postural changes necessary
 3. reproducible: same distance to elicit pain, same location of pain, same amount of rest to relieve pain
- critical limb ischemia (CLI)
 1. includes rest pain, night pain, tissue loss (ulceration or gangrene)
 2. pain most commonly over the forefoot, waking person from sleep, and often relieved by hanging foot off bed
 3. ankle pressure <40 mmHg, toe pressure <30 mmHg, ABI <0.40
- pulses may be absent at some locations, bruits may be present
- signs of poor perfusion: hair loss, hypertrophic nails, atrophic muscle, skin ulcerations and infections, slow capillary refill, prolonged pallor with elevation and rubor on dependency, venous troughing (collapse of superficial veins of foot)
- other manifestations of atherosclerosis: CVD, CAD, impotence, splanchnic ischemia

Investigations

- non-invasive
 - routine blood work, fasting metabolic profile
 - ABI: take highest brachial and highest ankle (dorsalis pedis artery or posterior tibial artery) pressures for each side generally
 - ♦ ABI <0.90 abnormal, rest pain appears at <0.30 (see Table 3)

- CTA and MRA: excellent for large arteries (aorta, iliac, femoral, popliteal), may have difficulty with tibial arteries (especially in the presence of disease). Both require IV injection of nephrotoxic contrast (iodinated contrast for CT, gadolinium for MR)
- invasive
 - arteriography: superior resolution to CTA/MRA, better for tibial arteries, can be done intraoperatively

Table 3. Ankle-Brachial Indices

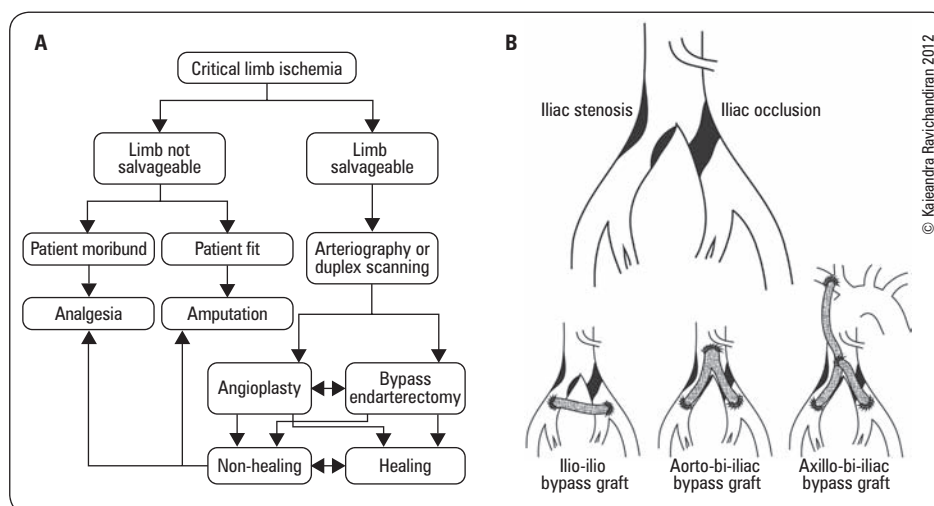
ABI Recording	Degree of Ischemia
>1.20	Suspect wall calcification (most common in diabetics)
>0.95	Normal/no ischemia
0.50-0.80	Claudication range
<0.40	Possible critical ischemia

Treatment

- conservative
 - risk factor modification (smoking cessation, HbA1c control, treatment of HTN (ACEI), hyperlipidemia (statin), antiplatelet therapy (ECASA))
 - exercise program (30 min 3 times per wk): improves collateral circulation, oxygen extraction at the muscle level
 - foot care (especially in DM): keep wounds clean/dry, avoid trauma and pressure on wounds
- pharmacotherapy
 - antiplatelet agents (e.g. ECASA, clopidogrel)
 - cilostazol (cAMP-phosphodiesterase inhibitor with antiplatelet and vasodilatory effects): improves walking distance for some patients with claudication
- surgical/endovascular
 - indications: severe lifestyle impairment, vocational impairment, critical ischemia
 - surgical options
 - ♦ endovascular (stenting/angioplasty)
 - ♦ endarterectomy: removal of plaque and repair with patch (usually distal aorta or common/profunda femoral)
 - ♦ bypass graft sites: aortofemoral, axillofemoral, femoropopliteal, distal arterial
 - graft choices: vein graft (reversed or *in situ*), synthetic (polytetrafluoroethylene graft (e.g. Gore-Tex®) or Dacron®)
 - ♦ chemical sympathectomy: sympathetic plexus destroyed with EtOH injection into nerve plexus, may stimulate vasodilation (rarely effective)
 - ♦ amputation: if not suitable for revascularization, persistent serious infections/gangrene

Prognosis

- claudication: conservative therapy: 60-80% improve, 20-30% stay the same, 5-10% deteriorate, 5% will require intervention within 5 yr, <4% will require amputation
- for patients with CLI (rest pain, night pain, ulceration or gangrene): high risk of limb loss (which carries 25% risk of death at 1 yr)

**Figure 2. Treatment options for CLI**

(A) Algorithm for the treatment of CLI

(B) Surgical treatment options for the treatment of aortoiliac disease

Modified from Beard JD. Chronic lower limb ischemia. *BMJ* 2000;320:854-857

Aortic Disease

- see 2010 ACCF/AHA/AATS/ACR/ASA/SCA/SCAI/SIR/STS/SVM Guidelines for the Diagnosis and Management of Patients With Thoracic Aortic Disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2010;55(14):e27–e129 for details

Aortic Anatomy

- see Figure 3

Aortic Dissection

Definition

- tear in aortic intima allowing blood to dissect into the media
- Stanford classification: Type A (involve the ascending aorta) vs. Type B (do not)
- DeBakey Classification: Type I (involves the ascending aorta, aortic arch, and descending aorta), Type II (confined to the ascending aorta) and Type III (confined to the descending aorta distal to the left subclavian artery)
- acute <2 wk (initial mortality 1% per hour for type A dissections)
- chronic >2 wk (mortality levels up to 75-80%)

Etiology

- most common: HTN → degenerative/cystic changes → damage to aortic media
- other: connective tissue disease (e.g. Marfan's, Ehlers-Danlos), cystic medial necrosis, atherosclerosis, congenital conditions (e.g. coarctation of aorta, bicuspid aortic valves, patent ductus arteriosus), infection (e.g. syphilis), trauma, arteritis (e.g. Takayasu's)

Epidemiology

- incidence of 5.2 in 1,000,000
- M:F = 3.2:1
- small increased incidence in African-Americans (related to higher incidence of HTN)
- lowest incidence in Asians
- peak incidence 50-65 yr old; 20-40 yr old with connective tissue diseases

Clinical Features

- sudden onset tearing chest pain that radiates to back with:
 - HTN (75-85% of patients)
 - asymmetric BPs and pulses between arms (>30 mmHg difference indicates poor prognosis)
 - ischemic syndromes due to occlusion of aortic branches: coronary (MI), carotids (ischemic stroke, Horner's syndrome), splanchnic (mesenteric ischemia), renal (AKI), peripheral (ischemic leg), intercostal vessels (spinal cord ischemia)
 - "unseating" of aortic valve cusps (new diastolic murmur in 20-30%) in Type A dissection
 - rupture into pleura (dyspnea, hemothysis) or peritoneum (hypotension, shock) or pericardium (cardiac tamponade)
 - syncope

Investigations

- CXR
 - pleural cap (pleural effusion in lung apices)
 - widened mediastinum
 - left pleural effusion with extravasation of blood
- TEE: can visualize aortic valve and thoracic aorta but not abdominal aorta
- ECG: LVH ± ischemic changes, pericarditis, heart block
- CT (gold standard), aortography, MRA: 100% sensitive and specific
- blood work: lactate (rule out ischemic gut), amylase (rule out pancreatitis), troponin (rule out MI)

Treatment

- pharmacologic
 - β-blocker to lower BP and decrease cardiac contractility
 - use nondihydropyridine CCB if there is a clear contraindication to β-blockers
 - target sBP of 110 mmHg and HR <60 bpm
 - ACEI and/or other vasodilators if insufficient BP or HR control
- surgical
 - urgent surgical consult if thoracic aortic dissection diagnosed or highly suspected
 - Type A to cardiac surgery, Type B to vascular surgery

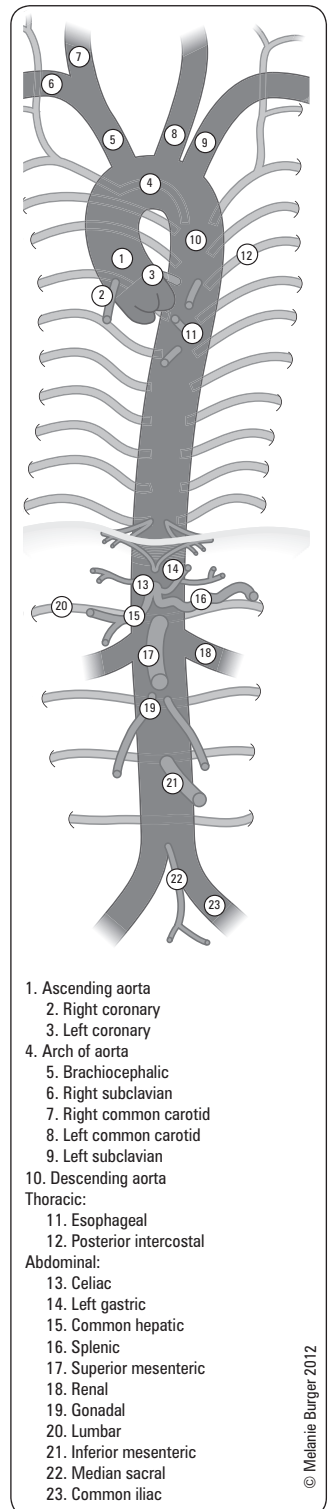


Figure 3. Aortic anatomy

- resection of segment with intimal tear
- reconstitution of flow through true lumen
- replacement of the affected aorta with prosthetic graft
- correction of any predisposing factors
- post-operative complications: renal failure, intestinal ischemia, stroke, paraplegia, persistent leg ischemia, death
- 2/3 of patients die of operative or post-operative complications
- Type A: requires emergent surgery with cardiopulmonary bypass
 - ♦ may require
 - hypothermic circulation for transverse arch dissections
 - resuspension of aortic valve
 - aortic valve replacement
 - coronary re-implantation for aortic root involvement
 - ♦ initial mortality rate without surgery is 3% per h for first 24 h, 30% 1 wk, 80% 2 wk
- Type B: managed medically in absence of spinal/mesenteric/limb malperfusion syndrome
 - ♦ <10-20% require urgent operation for complications
 - ♦ treatment can be surgical or endovascular
 - ♦ require follow-up over time to monitor for dilation
 - ♦ role for early endovascular intervention controversial (2013 INSTEAD trial)
- with treatment, 60% 5 yr survival, 40% 10 yr survival



Does This Patient have an Acute Thoracic Aortic Dissection

JAMA 2002;287:2262-2272

	LR + (95% CI)	LR - (95% CI)
History		
HTN	1.6 (1.2-2.0)	0.5 (0.3-0.7)
Sudden onset of pain*	1.6 (1.0-2.4)	0.3 (0.2-0.5)
"Tearing" or "ripping" pain	1.2-11	0.4-1.0
Migratory pain	-7.6	0.6-1.0
Physical Exam		
Pulse deficit*	5.7 (1.1-7.6)	0.7 (0.6-0.9)
Focal neurologic deficits	6.6-33	0.7-0.9
Diastolic murmur	1.4 (1.0-2.0)	0.9 (0.8-1.0)
Investigation		
Enlarged aorta or wide mediastinum*	2.0 (1.4-3.1)	0.3 (0.2-0.4)

*Combination of findings increases LR+: if no findings LR+ 0.1, if one LR+ 0.5, if two LR+ 5.3, if three LR+ 6.6

Aortic Aneurysm

Definition of Aneurysm

- localized dilatation of an artery having a diameter at least 1.5x that of the expected normal diameter
 - true aneurysm: involving all vessel wall layers (intima, media, adventitia)
 - false aneurysm (also known as pseudo-aneurysm): disruption of the aortic wall or the anastomotic site between vessel and graft with containment of blood by a fibrous capsule made of surrounding tissue
- aneurysms can rupture, thrombose, embolize, erode, and fistulize

Classification

- thoracic aortic aneurysm (TAA): ascending, transverse arch, descending
- thoracoabdominal
- abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA): 90-98% are *infrarenal*
 - suprarenal: involves one or more visceral arteries, but does not involve the chest
 - pararenal: renal arteries arise from aneurysmal aorta, but the SMA origin is not aneurysmal
 - juxtarenal: the renal arteries originate from normal aorta, but are immediately adjacent to aneurysmal aorta (there is no nonaneurysmal aorta distal to the origin of the renal arteries)
 - infrarenal: The aneurysm originages distal to the renal arteries (there is nonaneurysmal aorta distal to the origins of the renal arteries)

Etiology

- degenerative (atherosclerotic)
- traumatic
- mycotic (*Salmonella*, *Staphylococcus*, usually suprarenal aneurysms)
- connective tissue disorder (Marfan syndrome, Ehlers-Danlos syndrome)
- vasculitis
- infectious (syphilis, fungal)
- ascending thoracic aneurysms are associated with bicuspid aortic valve
- risk factors: smoking, HTN, age >70, family history

Epidemiology

- incidence 4.7 to 31.9 per 100,000 for AAA and 5.9 per 100,000 for TAA
- high risk groups
 - ≥65 yr
 - M:F = 3.8:1
 - PVD, CAD, CVD
 - family history of AAA

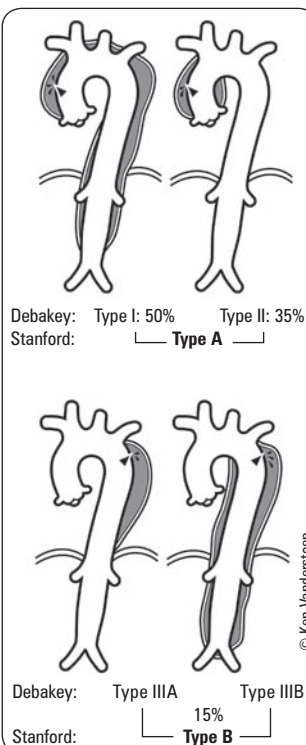


Figure 4. Classification of aortic dissection (black arrow indicates where the dissection begins)



ACC/AHA 2005 Guidelines define an AAA when the minimum AP diameter of abdominal aorta ≥3.0 cm

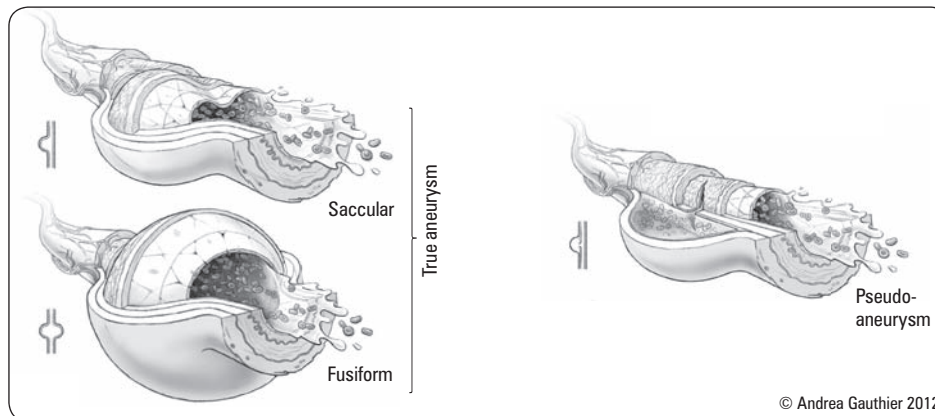


Figure 5. Classification of aneurysms

Clinical Features

- associated diseases: HTN, PVD, CAD, COPD, renal insufficiency
- most commonly in the abdominal aorta (50% abdominal aorta, 40% thoracic aorta, 10% ascending aorta)
- common presentation: due to acute expansion or disruption of wall
 - syncope
 - pain (chest, abdominal, flank, back)
 - hypotension
 - palpable pulsatile mass above the umbilicus, pulsatile abdominal mass in two directions (expandable)
 - airway or esophageal obstruction, hoarseness (left recurrent laryngeal nerve paralysis), hemoptysis, or hematemesis (indicates thoracic or thoracoabdominal aortic aneurysm)
 - distal pulses may be intact
- 75% asymptomatic (discovered incidentally)
- uncommon presentation
 - ureteric obstruction and hydronephrosis (often with inflammatory aortic aneurysm)
 - gastrointestinal bleed (duodenal mucosal hemorrhage, aortoduodenal fistula)
 - ♦ aortocaval fistula
 - distal embolization (blue toe syndrome)

Investigations

- blood work: CBC, electrolytes, urea, creatinine, PTT, INR, type and cross
- abdominal U/S (100% sensitive, up to ± 0.6 cm accuracy in size determination)
- CT (accurate visualization, size determination)
- MRI (accurate visualization, limited access)
- aortogram (only for EVAR)
- Doppler/duplex (rule out vascular tree aneurysms elsewhere, e.g. popliteal)

Treatment

- conservative
 - cardiovascular risk factor reduction: smoking cessation; control of HTN, DM, and hyperlipidemia
 - regular exercise
 - watchful waiting, U/S every 6 mo to 3 yr depending on size and location
- surgical
 - when risk of rupture greater than or equal to risk of surgery (>5.5 cm)
 - risk of rupture depends on
 - ♦ size
 - ♦ family history of rupture
 - ♦ rate of enlargement (if >0.4 cm/yr): >1 cm diameter expansion per year defines "rapid expander"
 - ♦ symptoms, comorbidities (HTN, COPD, dissection), smoking
 - elective AAA repair mortality 2-5% for open repair (1-2% for EVAR); elective TAA repair mortality $<10\%$ (highest with proximal aortic and thoracoabdominal repairs)
 - consider revascularization for patients with symptomatic or 3-vessel CAD before elective repair of aneurysm
 - indications
 - ♦ general: ruptured, symptomatic, mycotic, associated with acute Type A dissection or complicated Type B dissection or when risk of rupture is greater than risk of surgery (size >5.5 cm or >2 x normal lumen size)



Classic Triad of Ruptured AAA

Congenital

- Hypotension/collapse
- Back/abdominal pain
- Palpable, pulsatile abdominal mass



CCS PAD Guidelines 2006

Recommend AAA Screening Among:

- Men aged 65-74
- Women aged 65 with cardiovascular disease and positive family history of AAA
- Men aged 50 and above with a positive family history

CCS PAD Guidelines 2006 recommend AAA Follow-Up Based on Initial Size

Size	Guideline
<3.0 cm	Repeat ultrasound follow-up in 3-5 yr
3.1-3.4 cm	Repeat ultrasound in 3 yr
3.5-3.9 cm	Repeat ultrasound in 2 yr
4.0-4.5 cm	Repeat ultrasound in 1 yr
≥ 4.5 cm	Referral to vascular surgeon and repeat ultrasound every 6 mo
If >1 cm growth in one yr	Referral to vascular surgeon for consideration of repair



Management of Ruptured AAA

- ABCs
- No imaging (hemodynamically unstable)
- Straight to OR (confirm diagnosis by laparotomy)
- Crossmatch 10 units packed RBCs



Risk of AAA Rupture

Size (diameter)	1 yr Rupture Risk
<4 cm	0%
4-4.9 cm	1%
5-5.9 cm	5-10%
6-6.9 cm	10-20%
7-7.9 cm	20-40%



Endoleak Types

Definition: persistent blood flow into the aneurysm sac

Type I: ineffective seal at ends of graft

Type II: backflow from collateral vessels

Type III: ineffective seal of graft joints or rupture of graft fabric

Type IV: flow through pores of graft fabric

Type V: endotension, with continued expansion of the aneurysm without apparent flow into the sac

- ♦ ascending thoracic aortic aneurysms
 - symptomatic, enlarging, diameter >6 cm or >2x normal lumen size, >4.5 cm and aortic regurgitation (annuloaortic ectasia); ≥4.5-5 cm in Marfan syndrome
- contraindications: life expectancy <1 yr, terminal disease (e.g. cancer), significant comorbidities (e.g. recent MI, unstable angina), decreased mental acuity, advanced age
- surgical options
 - ♦ open surgery (laparotomy or retroperitoneal) with graft replacement
 - possible complications
 - early: renal failure, spinal cord injury (paraparesis or paraplegia), impotence, arterial thrombosis, anastomotic rupture or bleeding, peripheral emboli
 - late: graft infection/thrombosis, aortoenteric fistula, anastomotic (pseudo) aneurysm
 - ♦ endovascular aneurysm repair (EVAR)
 - newer procedure; high success rates in patients with suitable anatomy and experienced centers
 - advantages: preferred to open surgery in ruptured AAA for patients with suitable anatomy, decreased morbidity and mortality, procedure time, need for transfusion, ICU admissions, length of hospitalization, and recovery time
 - disadvantages: endoleak rates as high as 20-30%, device failure increasing as longer follow-up periods are achieved, re-intervention rates 10-30%, cost-effectiveness is an issue (devices are very expensive), radiation exposure
 - complications
 - early: immediate conversion to open repair (<1%), groin hematoma, arterial thrombosis, iliac artery rupture, and thromboemboli
 - late: endoleak, severe graft kinking, migration, thrombosis, rupture of aneurysm

Peripheral Venous Disease

Deep Venous Thromboembolism

- see [Hematology](#), H33



Superficial Venous Thrombosis

Definition

- erythema, induration, and tenderness along the superficial vein; usually spontaneous but can follow venous cannulation

Etiology

- infectious: suppurative phlebitis (complication of IV cannulation; associated with fever/chills)
- trauma
- inflammatory: varicose veins, migratory superficial thrombophlebitis, Buerger's disease, SLE
- hematologic: polycythemia, thrombocytosis
- neoplastic: occult malignancy (especially pancreatic)
- idiopathic

Clinical Features

- most common in greater saphenous vein and its tributaries
- pain and cord-like swelling along course of involved vein
- areas of induration, erythema, and tenderness correspond to dilated and often thrombosed superficial veins
- complications
 - simultaneous DVT (up to 20% of cases), PE (rare unless DVT)
 - recurrent superficial thrombophlebitis

Investigations

- non-invasive tests (e.g. Doppler) to exclude associated DVT

Treatment

- conservative
 - moist heat, compression bandages, mild analgesic, anti-inflammatory and anti-platelet (e.g. ASA), LMWH, ambulation
- surgical excision of involved vein
 - indication: failure of conservative measures (symptoms that persist over 2 wk)
 - suppurative thrombophlebitis: broad-spectrum IV antibiotics and excision

Type I



Type II



Type III



Type IV



Type V



© Marissa Webber 2015

Figure 6. EVAR endoleak



Migratory superficial thrombophlebitis is often a sign of underlying malignancy ("Trousseau's disease")

Varicose Veins

Definition

- distention of tortuous superficial veins resulting from incompetent valves in the deep, superficial, or perforator systems
- distribution: greater or short saphenous veins and tributaries

Etiology

- primary varicosities: venous valve incompetence or obstruction
 - contributing factors: increasing age, systemic hormonal contraceptive use, occupations requiring long hours of standing, pregnancy, obesity
- secondary varicosities: DVT, malignant pelvic tumors with venous compression, congenital anomalies, arteriovenous fistulae

Epidemiology

- primary varicose veins are the most common form of venous disorder of lower extremity
- 10-20% of population

Clinical Features (Not Correlated with Varicosity Size)

- diffuse aching, fullness/tightness, nocturnal cramping
- aggravated by prolonged standing (end of day), premenstrual
- visible long, dilated and tortuous superficial veins along thigh and leg
- ulceration, hyperpigmentation, and induration (secondary varicosities)
- Brodie-Trendelenburg test (valvular competence test)
 - with patient supine, raise leg and compress saphenous vein at thigh, have patient stand – if veins fill quickly from top down then incompetent valves; use multiple tourniquets to localize incompetent veins

Complications

- recurrent superficial thrombophlebitis
- hemorrhage: external or subcutaneous
- ulceration, eczema, lipodermatosclerosis, and hyperpigmentation

Treatment

- largely a cosmetic problem
- conservative: elevation of leg and/or elastic compression stockings
- surgical: high ligation and stripping of the long saphenous vein and its tributaries, ultrasound-guided foam sclerotherapy, endovenous laser therapy
- indications for surgery: symptomatic varix (pain, bleeding, recurrent thrombophlebitis), tissue changes (hyperpigmentation, ulceration), failure of conservative treatment, cosmetics

Prognosis

- benign course with predictable complications
- almost 100% symptomatic relief with treatment if varicosities are primary
- good cosmetic results with treatment
- significant post-operative recurrence, especially with sclerosing agent injection

Chronic Venous Insufficiency

Definition

- venous insufficiency and skin damage

Etiology

- calf muscle pump dysfunction and valvular incompetence (valvular reflux) due to phlebitis, varicosities, or DVT
- venous obstruction

Clinical Features

- pain (most common), ankle and calf edema – relieved by foot elevation
- pruritus, brownish hyperpigmentation (hemosiderin deposits)
- stasis dermatitis, subcutaneous fibrosis if chronic (lipodermatosclerosis)
- ulceration: shallow, above medial malleolus, weeping (wet), painless, irregular outline
- signs of DVT/varicose veins/thrombophlebitis

Investigations

- Doppler U/S (most commonly used)
- venography (gold standard), or ambulatory venous pressure measurement (not often used)

Treatment

- conservative
 - elastic compression stockings, ambulation, periodic rest-elevation, avoid prolonged standing
 - ulcers: multilayer compression bandage, antibiotics PRN
- endovenous: laser or radiofrequency ablation, or foam sclerotherapy
- surgical
 - if conservative measures fail, or if recurrent/large ulcers
 - surgical ligation of perforators in region of ulcer (GSV/LSV ligation and stripping)

Carotid Stenosis

Definition

- narrowing of the internal carotid artery lumen due to atherosclerotic plaque formation, usually near common carotid bifurcation into internal and external carotids

Risk Factors

- for atherosclerosis: HTN, smoking, DM, CVD or CAD, dyslipidemia

Clinical Features

- may be asymptomatic
- symptomatic stenosis may present as TIA, RIND, or stroke
- retinal insufficiency or infarct permanently or temporarily (ipsilateral amaurosis fugax), (see [Ophthalmology, OP37](#))
- MCA contralateral occlusive symptoms

Investigations

- CBC, PTT/INR (hypercoagulable states)
- fundoscopy: cholesterol emboli in retinal vessels (Hollenhorst plaques)
- auscultation over carotid bifurcation for bruits (do not correlate with degree of stenosis)
- carotid duplex: determines severity of disease (mild/moderate/severe stenosis or occlusion)
- angiogram: "gold standard" but invasive and 1/200 risk of stroke (not for screening)
- MRA: safer than angiogram, may overestimate stenosis
- CTA

Treatment

- control of HTN, lipids, diabetes
- antiplatelet agents (ASA ± dipyridamole, clopidogrel) ~25% relative risk reduction
- carotid endarterectomy (generally if symptomatic and >70% stenosis)
- endovascular angioplasty ± stenting

Prognosis

Table 4. Symptomatic Carotid Stenosis: North American Symptomatic Carotid Endarterectomy Trial (NASCET)

% Stenosis on Angiogram	Risk of Major Stroke or Death	
	Medical Rx	Medical + Surgical Rx
70-99%	26% over 2 yr	9% over 2 yr
50-69%	22% over 5 yr	16% over 5 yr
<50%	Surgery has no benefit with 5% complication rate	

Table 5. Asymptomatic Carotid Stenosis: Asymptomatic Carotid Atherosclerosis Study (ACAS) and Asymptomatic Carotid Surgery Trial (ACST)

% Stenosis on Angiogram	Risk of Major Stroke or Death	
	Medical Rx	Medical + Surgical Rx
70-99%	26% over 2 yr	9% over 2 yr
60-99%	11% over 5 yr	5.1% over 5 yr (ACAS)
50-69%	11.8% over 5 yr	6.4% over 5 yr (ACST)



Prevention of Disabling and Fatal Strokes by Successful Carotid Endarterectomy in Patients Without Recent Neurological Symptoms: Randomized Controlled Trial

Lancet 2004;363:1491-1502

Study: Asymptomatic Carotid Surgery Trial (ACST), a RCT with follow-up at 5 yr.

Patients: 3,120 asymptomatic patients with significant carotid artery stenosis were randomized equally between immediate carotid endarterectomy (CEA) and indefinite deferral of CEA and were followed for up to 5 yr (mean 3.4 yr).

Main Outcome: Any stroke (including fatal or disabling).

Conclusions: In asymptomatic patients with significant carotid artery stenosis, immediate CEA reduced the net 5 yr stroke risk from about 12% to about 6%. Half of this 5 yr benefit involved disabling or fatal strokes.

Lymphedema

Definition

- obstruction of lymphatic drainage resulting in edema with high protein content

Etiology

- primary:
 - Milroy's syndrome: congenital hereditary lymphedema
 - lymphedema praecox (75% of cases): starts in adolescence
 - lymphedema tarda: starts >35 yr
- secondary:
 - infection: filariasis (#1 cause worldwide), post-operative
 - malignant infiltration: axillary, groin or intrapelvic
 - radiation/surgery (axillary, groin lymph node removal): #1 cause in North America

Clinical Features

- classically non-pitting edema
- impaired limb mobility, discomfort/pain, psychological distress

Treatment

- avoid limb injury (can precipitate or worsen lymphedema)
- skin hygiene
 - daily skin care with moisturizers
 - topical treatment of fungal infection; systemic treatment of bacterial infection
- external support
 - intensive: compression bandages
 - maintenance: lymphedema sleeve
- exercise
 - gentle daily exercise of affected limb, gradually increasing ROM
 - must wear a compression sleeve/bandages when doing exercises
- massage and manual lymph drainage therapy

Prognosis

- if left untreated becomes resistant to treatment due to subcutaneous fibrosis
- cellulitis causes rapid increase in swelling; can lead to sepsis and death

References

Guidelines

- ACC/AHA guidelines for percutaneous coronary intervention. *Circulation* 2001;103:3019-3041.
- Beard JD. Chronic lower limb ischemia. *BMJ* 2000;320:854-857.
- Bell AD, Roussin A, Cartier R, et al. The use of antiplatelet therapy in the outpatient setting: CCS guidelines. *Can J Cardiol* 2011;27:S1-S59.
- Canadian Cardiovascular Society 2005 Consensus Conference Peripheral Arterial Disease (Draft). Available from: <http://www.ccs.ca>.
- CCS focused 2012 update of the CCS atrial fibrillation guidelines: recommendations for stroke prevention and rate/rhythm control. *Can J Cardiol* 2012;28:125-136.
- European Stroke Organisation, Tendera M, Aboyans V, et al. ESC guidelines on the diagnosis and treatment of peripheral artery diseases: document covering atherosclerotic disease of extracranial carotid and vertebral, mesenteric, renal, upper and lower extremity arteries. *Eur Heart J* 2011;32(22):2851-2906.
- Harrington RA, Becker RC, Ezekowitz M, et al. Antithrombotic therapy for coronary artery disease: the seventh ACCP conference on antithrombotic and thrombolytic therapy. *Chest* 2004;126(3 suppl):513s-584s.
- May J, White GH, Harris JP. The complications and downside of endovascular therapies. *Adv Surg* 2001;35:153-172.
- Rutherford RB. Vascular surgery, 4th ed. Toronto: WB Saunders, 1995. Chapter: Atherogenesis and the medical management of atherosclerosis. p222-234.
- Schmieder FA, Comerota AJ. Intermittent claudication: magnitude of the problem, patient evaluation, and therapeutic strategies. *Am J Card* 2001;87(Suppl):3D-13D.
- Task Force on the Diagnosis and Treatment of Peripheral Artery Diseases of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). *Eur Heart J* 2011;32:2851-2906.
- Way LW, Doherty GM (editors). Current surgical diagnosis and treatment, 11th ed. Lange Medical Books/McGraw-Hill, 2004.
- Yang SC, Cameron DE (editors). Current therapy in thoracic and cardiovascular medicine. McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Vascular Surgery

- Alexander P, Giangola G. Deep venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism: diagnosis, prophylaxis, and treatment. *Ann Vasc Surg* 1999;13:318-327.
- American College of Cardiology (clinical guidelines, etc). Available from: <http://www.acc.org>.
- Beard JD. Chronic lower limb ischemia. *BMJ* 2000;320:854-857.
- Bojar RM. Manual of perioperative care in cardiac surgery, 3rd ed. Massachusetts: Blackwell Science, 1999.
- Cardiology Online (requires registration). Available from: <http://www.theheart.org>.
- Cheng DCH, David TE. Perioperative care in cardiac anesthesia and surgery. Austin: Landes Bioscience, 1999.
- Coulam CH, Rubin GD. Acute aortic abnormalities. *Semin Roentgenol* 2001;36:148-164.
- Cronenwett JL, Johnston W (editors). Rutherford's vascular surgery, 7th ed. Philadelphia: Saunders/Elsevier, 2014.
- Fuchs JA, Rutherford RB (editors). Vascular surgery, 4th ed. Toronto: WB Saunders, 1995. Chapter: Atherogenesis and the medical management of atherosclerosis. p222-234.
- Hallett JW Jr. Abdominal aortic aneurysm: natural history and treatment. *Heart Dis Stroke* 1992;1:303-308.
- Hallett JW Jr. Management of abdominal aortic aneurysms. *Mayo Clin Proc* 2000;75:395-399.
- Harlan BJ, Starr A, Harwin FM. Illustrated handbook of cardiac surgery. New York: Springer-Verlag, 1996.
- Hiratzka LF, Bakris GL, Beckman JA, et al. 2010 ACCF/AHA/AATS/ACR/ASA/SCA/SCAI/SIR/STS/SVM guidelines for the diagnosis and management of patients with thoracic aortic disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol* 2010;55:e27-e129.
- May J, White GH, Harris JP. The complications and downside of endovascular therapies. *Adv Surg* 2001;35:153-172.
- Pitt MPI, Bonser RS. The natural history of thoracic aortic aneurysm disease: an overview. *J Card Surg* 1997;12(Suppl):270-278.
- Powell JT, Brown LC. The natural history of abdominal aortic aneurysms and their risk of rupture. *Adv Surg* 2001;35:173-185.
- Rabi D, Clement F, McAlister F, et al. Effect of perioperative glucose-insulin-potassium infusions on mortality and atrial fibrillation after coronary artery bypass grafting: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Can J Cardiol* 2010;26:178-184.
- Rosen CL, Tracy JA. The diagnosis of lower extremity deep venous thrombosis. *Emerg Med Clin N Am* 2001;19:895-912.
- Schmieder FA, Comerota AJ. Intermittent claudication: magnitude of the problem, patient evaluation, and therapeutic strategies. *Am J Cardiol* 2001;87(Suppl):3D-13D.
- Veith FJ, Hobson RW, Williams RA, et al. Vascular surgery: principles and practices: 2nd ed. Toronto: McGraw-Hill, 1994.
- Verma S, Szmikto PE, Weisel RD, et al. Clinician update: should radial arteries be used routinely for coronary artery bypass grafting? *Circulation* 2004;110:e40-e46.
- Way LW, Doherty GM. Current surgical diagnosis and treatment, 11th ed. Lange Medical Books/McGraw-Hill, 2004.
- Yang SC, Cameron DE. Current therapy in thoracic and cardiovascular medicine. McGraw-Hill, 2004.

- A**
- Abdominal Computed Tomography; MI13
 - Abdominal Hernia; GS22
 - Abdominal Imaging; MI10
 - Abdominal Mass; GS5, P40
 - Abdominal Pain; ER18, ER58, FM13, GS4, P39
 - Abdominal Trauma; ER13
 - Abdominal Wall; U2
 - Abdominal X-Ray; MI10
 - Abducens Nerve; N9
 - Abrasions; ER18
 - Abruptio Placentae; OB26
 - Abscess Drainage; MI29
 - Absolute Risk Increase; PH10
 - Absolute Risk Reduction; PH10
 - Acalculous Cholecystitis; GS47
 - Accelerated Atherosclerosis; NP29
 - Accessory Nerve; N11
 - Achilles Tendonitis; OR38
 - Achilles Tendon Rupture; OR38
 - Acid-Base Disorders; NP14, R6
 - Acid-Base Status; R5
 - Acidosis; R6
 - Acne; D11
 - Acneiform Eruptions; D11
 - Acne Vulgaris; D11, FM44
 - Acoustic Neuroma; NS13, OT15
 - Acoustic Stapedial Reflexes; OT11
 - Acrocyanosis; P78
 - Acromioclavicular; OR14
 - Actinic Keratosis; D7, D31
 - Acute Abdominal Pain; GS4
 - Acute Angle Closure Glaucoma; ER42
 - Acute Appendicitis; MI15
 - Acute Arterial Occlusion; VS2
 - Acute Bacterial Prostatitis; U15
 - Acute Bacterial Rhinosinusitis; OT26
 - Acute Bloody Diarrhea; ID12
 - Acute Cholangitis; GS48
 - Acute Cholecystitis; MI15
 - Acute Confusional State; N19
 - Acute Coronary Syndromes; C27
 - Acute Diarrhea; G15, ID11, ID12, P35
 - Acute Diverticulitis; MI15
 - Acute Epiglottitis; OT45
 - Acute Interstitial Nephritis; NP28
 - Acute Kidney Injury; NP33
 - Acute Laryngotracheobronchitis; OT45
 - Acute Liver Failure; G36
 - Acute Lymphoblastic Leukemia; H43
 - Acute Myocardial Infarction; ER23
 - Acute Otitis Media; OT39, P55
 - Acute Pancreatitis; G45, GS50, MI15
 - Acute Prostatitis; U12
 - Acute Pyelonephritis; U14
 - Acute Renal Artery Occlusion; NP17
 - Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome; R27
 - Acute Rhinitis; FM18
 - Acute Tubular Necrosis; NP28
 - Acute Uncomplicated Pyelonephritis; U12
 - Acute Viral Hepatitis; G29
 - Acyanotic Congenital Heart Disease; P17
 - Addison's Disease; E35
 - Adenocarcinoma; GS29
 - Adenoidectomy; OT41
 - Adenoid Hypertrophy; OT41
 - Adenoma; E25
 - Adenomyosis; GY15
 - Adhesive Capsulitis; OR15
 - Adie's Tonic Pupil; OP32
 - Adjustment Disorder; PS15
 - Adrenal Cortex; E29
 - Adrenal Gland; GS59
 - Adrenal Mass; MI18
 - Adrenal Medulla; E36
 - Adrenocortical Adenoma; MI18
 - Adrenocortical Carcinoma; MI18
 - Adrenocortical Hormones; E29
 - Adrenocortical Insufficiency; E35
 - Adrenocorticotrophic Hormone; E29
 - Adverse Drug Reactions; CP9, GM14
 - Aesthetic Surgery; PL34
 - Asymptomatic Urinary Abnormalities; NP22
 - Age-Related Macular Degeneration; OP26
 - Age Standardized Rate; PH6
 - Agnosia; N26
 - Agonists; CP7, CP8
 - Agoraphobia; PS11
 - Agranulocytosis; H11
 - Air; PH21
 - Contaminants; PH21
 - Air Bronchograms; MI6
 - Airway Injuries; ER12
 - Airway Management; A7, ER2
 - Difficult Airway; A9
 - Oxygen Therapy; A9
 - Ventilation; A10
 - Airway Obstruction; ER11, R6, R7
 - Akathisia; N28
 - Alcohol; ER53, FM12, PS19
 - Intoxication; ER53, PS19
 - Withdrawal; ER53, PS19
 - Alcoholic Liver Disease; G35
 - Aldosterone; E29
 - Alkalosis; R6
 - Allergic Contact Dermatitis; D15
 - Allergic Reactions; ER30
 - Allergic Rhinitis; FM14, OT24
 - Alloplastic; PL32
 - Alopecia; D36
 - Alopecia Areata; D37
 - Altered Level of Consciousness; ER20
 - Alzheimer's Disease; N21
 - Amaurosis Fugax; OP37
 - Ambiguous Genitalia; P30
 - Amblyopia; OP40
 - Amenorrhea; GY9
 - Amino Acid Disorders; P46
 - Aminoglycosides; ID48
 - Amnesia; PS24
 - Amniocentesis; OB7
 - Amniotic Fluid Embolus; OB44
 - Amoebas; ID37
 - Amphetamines; PS22
 - Amputations; PL24
 - Amyloidosis; NP23
 - Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis; N35
 - Anaerobes; ID53
 - Anagen Effluvium; D36
 - Anal Fissures; GS38
 - Analgesia; A18
 - Analgesic Nephropathies; NP28
 - Analgesics; A23
 - Anal Neoplasms; GS41
 - Anaphylaxis; ER30
 - Anatomical Triangles of the Neck; OT5
 - ANCA-Associated Vasculitis; NP24, RH18
 - Androgenetic Alopecia; D36
 - Androgen Regulation; E47
 - Anemia; H6, H15, H17, H18, H24, OB13, P47
 - Anemia of Chronic Inflammation; H16
 - Anesthesia; A2
 - Local; A21
 - Monitoring; A6
 - Obstetrical; A24
 - Overview; A2
 - Pediatric; A25
 - Pre-Operative; A2
 - Assessment; A2
 - Investigations; A3
 - Optimization; A4
 - Regional; A19
 - Anesthesia Monitor; A6
 - Aneurysmal Bone Cyst; OR45
 - Aneurysms; VS7
 - Angelman Syndrome; P45
 - Angiodysplasia; GS36
 - Angioedema; D39
 - Angiography; C13, MI28
 - Angiomyolipoma; U20

Anion Gap Metabolic Acidosis; R5
 Anisocoria; OP30
 Anisometropia; OP9
 Ankle; OR36
 Ankle-Brachial Indices; VS4
 Ankle Fractures; ER16, OR36
 Ankylosing Spondylitis; RH21
 Anorectal Abscess; GS39
 Anorectum; GS38
 Anorexia Nervosa; PS26
 Antagonists; CP7, CP8
 Antenatal Hydronephrosis; U35
 Antepartum Hemorrhage; OB24
 Anterior Chamber Depth; OP6
 Anterior Shoulder Dislocation; ER16
 Antiarrhythmics; C50
 Antibiotics; ID48, ID49
 Anticholinergic Agents; PS38
 Antidepressants; PS38
 Antidiuretic Hormone; E19, P26
 Antifungals; ID54
 Anti-Helminthics; ID57
 Anti-Herpesvirus; ID53
 Antihyperglycemic Agents; E6, E8
 Antimalarials; ID56
 Anti-Metabolite; ID52
 Antimicrobials; ID49
 Anti-Mycobacterials; ID53
 Antiparkinsonian Agents; PS38
 Antiphospholipid Antibody Syndrome; RH12
 Antiplatelet Regimens; C32
 Antiplatelet Therapy; H56
 Anti-Protozoal; ID57
 Antipsychotics; PS36
 Anxiety; FM14
 Anxiety Disorders; PS10, PS12, PS31
 Anxiolytics; PS42
 Aortic Aneurysm; VS6
 Aortic Disease; VS5
 Aortic Dissection; VS5
 Aortic Regurgitation; C43
 Aortic Stenosis; C43, P18
 Aortic Tear; ER12
 Apgar Score; P66
 Aphasia; N25
 Aplastic Anemia; H17
 Apnea; P68
 Appendicitis; GS28, P39
 Appendix; GS28, MI15
 Apraxia; N26
 Arcus Senilis; OP19
 Argyll-Robertson Pupil; OP33
 Arrhythmias; C15, C16
 Arterial Blood Gases; R5
 Arterial Embolism; VS3
 Arterial Injury; NS30
 Arterial Occlusion
 Chronic; VS3

Arteriovenous Malformations; NS22
 Arthritis; MI23
 Articular Cartilage; OR6
 Asbestos-Related Pleural Disease; R25
 Ascending Cholangitis; G44
 Ascites; G40
Aspergillus spp.; ID37
 Aspiration; A5
 Assessing Evidence; PH15
 Asteatotic Dermatitis; D13
 Asterixis; N28
 Asthma; ER30, FM15, P91, R7
 Astigmatism; OP9
 Astrocytoma; NS12
 Atelectasis; GS10, MI6
 Atheroembolic Renal Disease; NP18
 Atherosclerotic Heart Disease; C25
 Athetosis; N28
 Atopic Dermatitis; D13, FM44
 Atrial Fibrillation; C19, ER32
 Atrial Flutter; C18
 Atrial Septal Defect; P17
 Atrophic Vaginitis; GY24
 Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder;
 PS33
 Auditory Acuity; OT9
 Auditory Brainstem Response; OT12
 Augmentation Mammoplasty; PL34
 Augmentation of Labor; OB36
 Aural Rehabilitation; OT12
 Autism; PS33
 Autoimmune Chronic Active Hepatitis; G32
 Autoimmune Hemolytic Anemia; H22
 Autoimmune Inner Ear Disease; OT20
 Autoimmune Pancreatitis; G48
 Autoimmune Thrombocytopenia; P69
 Autologous Tissue; PL32
 Autonomic Neuropathy; NP29
 Autosomal Dominant; P41
 Autosomal Recessive; P41
 Autosomal Recessive Polycystic Kidney
 Disease; NP32
 AV Conduction Blocks; C17, ER31
 Axial Pattern Flaps; PL13

B

Back Pain; FM40, RH22
 Bacterial Infections; D24
 Bacterial Meningitis; P62
 Bacterial Pneumonia; MI7
 Bacterial Tracheitis; ER56, P89
 Bactericidal Antibiotics; ID49
 Bacteriology; ID2
 Bacteriostatic Antibiotics; ID49
 Balloon Angioplasty; C31
 Bariatric Surgery; GS20
 Barium Enema; MI13
 Barrett's Esophagus; G7
 Barriers; CP4
 Bartholin Gland Abscess; GY28
 Bartholinitis; GY28
 Basal Cell Carcinoma; D32, PL5
 Basal Ganglia; N28
 Bed Bugs; D27
 Behavior Change; PH5
 Benign Focal Epilepsy; P86
 Benign Paroxysmal Positional Vertigo; OT13
 Benign Prostatic Hyperplasia; FM16, U7
 Benign Renal Masses; U20
 Bennett's Fracture; PL26
 Bereavement; PS15
 Bifascicular Block; C6
 Biliary Atresia; P74
 Biliary Cirrhosis; G43
 Biliary Colic; GS46
 Biliary Tract; G3, G41, GS45
 Biliary Tree; MI14
 Binge-Eating Disorder; PS28
 Bioavailability; CP3
 Biological Contaminants; PH21
 Bioprosthetic Valve; C42
 Biotransformation; CP4
 Bipolar Disorder; PS9, PS31
 Bishop Score; OB35
 Bites; ER46, PL10
 Human Bites; PL10
 Insect Bites; ER47
 Mammalian Bites; ER46
 Bladder
 Carcinoma; U22
 Neurogenic; U9
 Painful
 Pain Syndrome; U13
 Bladder Carcinoma; U22
 Bladder Catheterization; U39
 Bladder Hemorrhage; U4
 Bladder Innervation; U6
 Bladder Pain Syndrome; U13
 Bladder Trauma; U32
 Bleeding; P50
 Bleeding Disorders; P50
 Blepharitis; OP14
 Blood; NS15
 Blood Glucose Monitoring; P27
 Blood Pressure; A12
 Blood Pressure Regulation; NP2
 Blood Products; A15, H52
 Blood Transfusion; H54
 Blow-Out Fracture; OP43, PL31
 Blunt Myocardial Injury; ER12
 Blunt Trauma; ER13, OP42
 Bodily Fluids; P79
 Bone Abscess; MI24

Bone Lesions; MI24
 Bone Metastases; OR46
 Bones; PL23
 Bone Scan; MI27
 Bone Tumors; MI23, OR43
 Bone X-Rays; MI22
 Botulism; N38
 Boutonniere Deformity; PL24
 Bowel Obstruction; GS24
 Bowen's Disease; D33
 Boxer's Fracture; PL26
 Brachial Plexus; PL4, PL28
 Bradycardias; C16
 Bradydysrhythmias; ER31
 Bradykinesia; N28
 Brain Injury; ER8, ER9, N27, NS31
 Brain Lesions; NS4
 Branchial Cleft Cysts; OT33
 Branch Retinal Artery Occlusion; OP24
 Branch Retinal Vein Occlusion; OP24
 Breaking Bad News; ELOAM9
 Breast; GS54
 Breast Cancer; GS55
 Breastfeeding; P6
 Breastfeeding Jaundice; P73
 Breast Imaging; MI30
 Breast Masses; MI31
 Breast Milk Jaundice; P73
 Breast Surgery; PL32
 Breast Reconstruction; PL32
 Breast Reduction; PL33
 Breast Tissue Expanders; PL33
 Breath Holding Spells; P8
 Breathing Assessment; ER3
 Breech Presentation; OB39
 Brief Psychotic Disorder; PS3
 Bronchi; R2
 Bronchiectasis; R12
 Bronchiolitis; P90
 Bronchitis; FM17, R10
 Bronchogenic Cancer; R28
 Bronchopulmonary Dysplasia; P70
 Brown Macule; D5
 Bruising; ER18, P50
 Bulimia Nervosa; PS27
 Bulla; D5
 Bullous Pemphigoid; D19
 Bunions; OR39
 Burns; ER45, PL16

C
 CABG; C32
 Calcaneal Fracture; ER17, OR37
 Calcineurin Inhibitor Nephropathy; NP19
 Calcium Homeostasis; E38

Calcium Pyrophosphate Dihydrate Disease; RH26
 Campbell De Morgan Spot; D10
 Campbell Telangiectasia; D10
 Canadian C-Spine Rule; ER10
Candida albicans; ID36
 Candidal Intertrigo; D29
 Candidal Paronychia; D29
 Candidiasis; D29
 Cannabis; PS22
 Capacity; ELOAM5
 Capillary Hemangioma; P78
 Carbapenems; ID48
 Carbohydrate Disorders; P46
 Carbon Monoxide; R5
 Carbuncles; D25
 Carcinoma
 Bladder; U22
 Renal Pelvis; U21
 Ureter; U21
 Cardiac Arrest; A12, C31
 Cardiac Biomarkers; C11
 Cardiac Cycle; C3
 Cardiac Dysrhythmias; ER31
 Cardiac Infections; ID17
 Cardiac Tamponade; C47, ER12
 Cardiac Transplant; C37
 Cardinal Movements; OB32
 Cardiomyopathy; C39
 Caries; P9
 Milk; P9
 Carotid Stenosis; I0
 Carpal Bones; PL2
 Carpal Tunnel; PL3
 Carpal Tunnel Syndrome; PL27
 CASPAR Criteria; RH23
 Casts; NP6
 Cataracts; OP21
 Catecholamine Metabolism; E36
 Catheter Ablation; C24
 Catheterization; C13
 Cat Scratch Disease; ID25
 Cauda Equina Syndrome; NS26
 Causation; PH15
 Cavernous Malformations; NS23
 Celiac Disease; G18, P37
 Cellulitis; D24, ID10, PL14
 Cell Wall Inhibitors; ID50
 Central Hip Dislocation; OR27
 Central Retinal Artery Occlusion; OP23
 Central Venous Catheter; MI10
 Cephalosporins; ID48
 Cerebellar Ataxias; N34
 Cerebral Abscess; NS14
 Cerebral Angiography; MI19
 Cerebral Blood Flow; NS5
 Cerebral Hemorrhage; N51
 Cerebral Palsy; P87, P88

Cerebrovascular Disease; MI20, NS17
 Cerumen Impaction; OT16
 Cervical Disc Syndrome; NS24
 Cervical Ripening; OB36
 Cervical Spine; OR22
 Cervical Spondylosis; NS24
 Cervical Stenosis; NS24
 Cervix; GY41, OB30
 Cesarean; OB46
 Cesarean Incisions; OB46
 Cestodes; ID42
 Chalazion; OP14
 Charge Syndrome; P45
 Chemical Burns; ER42, OP43, PL21
 Chemical Contaminants; PH21
 Cherry Angioma; D10
 Chest Imaging; MI4
 Chest Pain; C4, ER21, FM18, R3
 Chest Trauma; ER11
 Chest Tube; MI10
 Chest X-Ray; MI4, R5
 Chiari Malformations; NS36
 Child Abuse; ER59, P14
 Childhood Absence Epilepsy; P85
 Childhood Epileptic Syndromes; P85
 Child Neglect; ER59
 Child-Pugh Score; G37
 Child with Dehydration; P78
 Chlamydia; GY25
 Cholangiocarcinoma; GS49
 Cholecystitis; GS46
 Cholecystostomy; MI29
 Choledocholithiasis; GS47
 Cholelithiasis; GS45
 Cholesteatoma; OT18
 Chondromalacia Patellae; OR34
 Chondrosarcoma; OR46
 Chorea; N28
 Chorioamnionitis; OB44
 Chorionic Villus Sampling; OB7
 Chronic Abdominal Pain; P40
 Chronic Bacterial Prostatitis; U15
 Chronic Cystitis; U13
 Chronic Diarrhea; G16
 Chronic Fatigue Syndrome; FM32
 Chronic Interstitial Nephritis; NP28
 Chronic Laryngitis; OT29
 Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia; H48
 Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease; ER32, GS16, R9
 Chronic Pain; A24
 Chronic Pancreatitis; G47, GS51, MI16
 Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome; U15
 Chronic Prostatitis; U12
 Chronic Rhinosinusitis; OT26
 Chronic Stable Angina; C25
 Chronic Venous Insufficiency; VS9
 Chronic Wound; PL9

Churg-Strauss Syndrome; R21
 Circadian Rhythm; N47
 Circle of Willis; NS17
 Circulation; C2
 Circumcision; P8, U40
 Cirrhosis; G37
 Clearance; CP6
 Cleft Lip; PL35
 Cleft Palate; PL35
 Climate Change; PH21
 Clinical Testing; CP2
 Club Drugs; PS22
 Club Foot; OR42
 CN I: Olfactory Nerve; N8
 CN II: Optic Nerve; N9
 CN III: Oculomotor Nerve; N9
 CN IV: Trochlear Nerve; N9
 CN V: Trigeminal Nerve; N9
 CN VI: Abducens Nerve; N9
 CN VII: Facial Nerve; N10
 CN VIII: Vestibulocochlear Nerve; N10
 CN IX: Glossopharyngeal Nerve; N10
 CN X: Vagus Nerve; N11
 CN XI: Accessory Nerve; N11
 CN XII: Hypoglossal Nerve; N11
 Cocaine; PS21
 Cockcroft-Gault Formula; NP4
 Cold Injuries; ER44
 Collateral Ligament Tears; OR31
 Colles' Fracture; ER16, OR20
 Colonic Pseudo-Obstruction; GS26
 Colorectal Carcinoma; GS34
 Colorectal Neoplasms; GS33
 Colorectal Polyps; GS33
 Color Vision; OP6
 Coma; ER20, NS34
 Common Cold; FM18
 Common Warts; D29
 Compartment Syndrome; ER16, OR9
 Complete Heart Block; P21
 Complete LBBB; C6
 Complete RBBB; C6
 Computed Tomography; MI2
 Computed Tomography Chest; MI6
 Concussion; FM19
 Conduct Disorder; PS35
 Conduction Abnormalities; C6
 Conductive Hearing Loss; OT9
 Condyloma Acuminata; D29
 Confidentiality; ELOAM4
 Congenital Adrenal Hyperplasia; P30
 Congenital Aganglionic Megacolon; P38
 Congenital Dermal Melanocytosis; P78
 Congenital Glaucoma; OP42
 Congenital Heart Disease; P16
 Congenital Hyperthyroidism; P29
 Congenital Hypothyroidism; P29
 Congenital Neck Masses; OT33

Congenital Sensorineural Hearing Loss; OT19
 Congenital Talipes Equinovarus; OR42
 Congestive Heart Failure; C33, ER33, P20
 Conjunctiva; OP14
 Conjunctivitis; OP15
 Connective Tissue Disorders; OP37, RH8
 Consent; ELOAM5
 Constipation; G24, GM3, P38
 Constricted Pupil; OP32
 Constrictive Pericarditis; C47
 Contact Dermatitis; D15
 Contraception; FM19, GY16
 Contrast-Enhanced CT; C15
 Contrast Enhancement; MI3
 Contrast Studies; MI13
 Conversion Disorder; PS24
 Cornea; OP17
 Corneal Abrasion; OP17
 Corneal Ulcer; OP18
 Corns; D7
 Coronary Angiogram; C14
 Coronary Angiography; C14
 Coronary Arteries; C2
 Coronary Artery Bypass Graft Surgery; C31
 Coronary Artery Disease; A4; E4
 Coronary Circulation; C2
 Coronary Revascularization; C31
 Cost Analysis; PH18
 Cough; FM20, R3
 Coxa Plana; OR42
 Cranial Nerve Deficits; N8
 CN I: Olfactory Nerve; N8
 CN II: Optic Nerve; N9
 CN III: Oculomotor Nerve; N9
 CN IV: Trochlear Nerve; N9
 CN V: Trigeminal Nerve; N9
 CN VI: Abducens Nerve; N9
 CN VII: Facial Nerve; N10
 CN VIII: Vestibulocochlear Nerve; N10
 CN IX: Glossopharyngeal Nerve; N10
 CN X: Vagus Nerve; N11
 CN XI: Accessory Nerve; N11
 CN XII: Hypoglossal Nerve; N11
 Cranial Nerve Injury; NS30
 Cranial Nerves Exam; N2
 Craniofacial Anomalies; PL35
 Craniofacial Injuries; PL28
 Craniosynostosis; NS37, PL35
 Crescentic Glomerulonephritis; NP22
 Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease; N25
 Crohn's Disease; G20, GS30
 Croup; ER56, OT45, P89
 Cruciate Ligament Tears; OR31
 Crude Death Rate; PH6
 Cryoglobulinemia; NP24
Cryptococcus spp.; ID36
 Cryptorchidism; U38
Cryptosporidium spp.; ID38

Crystal-Induced Arthropathies; RH24
 C-Spine Injury; OR22
 Cushing's Syndrome; E33
 Cutaneous Cancers; D35
 Cutaneous Glands; D2
 Cutaneous T-Cell Lymphoma; D35
 Cutaneous Vasculitis; RH18
 Cutis Marmorata; P78
 Cyanosis; P70
 Cyanotic Congenital Heart Disease; P19
 Cyclothymia; PS10
 Cystic Diseases of the Kidney; NP31
 Cystic Fibrosis; P92, R12
 Cystic Kidney Disease; U19
 Cystitis
 Chronic; U13
 Cystoscopy; U40
 Cysts; D5

D

Dacryoadenitis; OP12
 Dacryocystitis; OP12
 Dandy-Walker Malformation; NS36
 Data Analysis; PH13
 Date Rape Drugs; PS22
 Debridement; PL6
 Deep Neck Space Infection; OT47
 Deep Palmar Space Infections; PL23
 Deep Vein Thrombosis; ER33
 Defibrillators; C24
 Degenerative Arthritis; RH3, RH5
 Degenerative Disc Disease; OR23
 Dehydration; A14, P78
 Delayed Puberty; P33
 Delirium; GM3, N19, PS16, PS18
 Delusional Disorder; PS3, PS6
 Dementia; FM20, GM3, N19, PS17
 Dementia with Lewy Bodies; N23
 Denervation Hypersensitivity; OP30
 Dentition; P9
 Depersonalization/Derealization Disorder; PS24
 Depressed Newborn; P67
 Depression; FM21, GM3
 Depressive Disorders; PS7
 De Quervain's Tenosynovitis; PL25
 Dermal Decontamination; ER50
 Dermal Melanocytosis; D8
 Dermatitis; D13
Dermatitis Herpetiformis; D20
 Dermatofibroma; D6
 Dermatomyositis; RH15
 Dermatophytoses; D25
 Dermatoses; ER42
 Dermoid Cyst; D5

Developmental Delay; P22
 Developmental Milestones; P5
 Diabetes; A4, E8, NP28
 Diabetes Insipidus; E19, NP11, P26
 Diabetes Mellitus; E6, FM22, OB13, OP35, P26
 Diabetic Emergencies; ER35
 Diabetic Foot Infections; ID16
 Diabetic Ketoacidosis; ER35, E11
 Diabetic Nephropathy; E13
 Diabetic Neuropathy; E13, N42
 Diabetic Retinopathy; E12, OP35
 Dialysis; NP36
 Diaper Dermatitis; P12
 Diaphragmatic Hernia; P71
 Diarrhea; FM26, G15, ID11, P35
 Diastolic Heart Failure; C38
 Dietary Requirements; P6
 DiGeorge Syndrome; P45
 Digital Mucous Cyst; D5
 Dilated Cardiomyopathy; C39
 Dilated Pupil; OP32
 Diplopia; N14, OP4, OP7
 Disability Adjusted Life Year; PH7
 Dislocated Knee; OR32
 Dislocated Lens; OP21
 Dislocations; PL26
 Dissociative Disorders; PS24
 Distal Femoral Fracture; OR29
 Distal Phalanx Fracture; PL26
 Diuresis; U11
 Diurnal Enuresis; P10
 Diverticular Disease; GS31
 Diverticulitis; GS31
 Diverticulosis; GS31
 Dix-Hallpike Positional Testing; OT13
 Dizziness; FM26, OT6
 Dog and Cat Bites; PL10
 Domestic Violence; ER29, FM28
 Dose-Response; CP7
 Double Vision; OP4
 Dressings; PL11
 Driving Competency; GM10
 Drowning; ER47
 Drug Absorption; CP3
 Drug Administration; CP2
 Drug Distribution; CP4
 Drug Elimination; CP5
 Drug Eruptions; D21
 Drug Hypersensitivity Syndrome; D21
 Drug-Induced Liver Disease; G33
 Drug Interactions; CP10
 Drug Metabolizing Pathways; CP5
 Drug Nomenclature; CP2
 Drug Ototoxicity; OT21
 Drug Sensitivity; GM14
 Dry Eye Syndrome; OP11
 DSM-5 Criteria; PS6

Duchenne Muscular Dystrophy; P45
 Duke Criteria; ID18
 Duodenum; G2
 Dupuytren's Disease; PL27
 Duty to Protect; ELOAM5
 Dyshidrotic Dermatitis; D15
 Dyskinesia; N28
 Dyslipidemia; E2, E4, E5, FM8
 Dysmenorrhea; GY6, GY13
 Dysmorphic Child; P42
 Dysmorphisms; P41
 Dyspareunia; GY8
 Dyspepsia; FM28, G10
 Dysphagia; G8
 Dyspnea; C5, FM29, P89, R3
 Dysrhythmias; ER31
 Dystocia; OB42
 Dystonia; N28, N32
 Dysuria; FM29, U10

E

Eating Disorders; PS26
 ECG; C5
 ECG Lead; C5
 ECG Waveforms; C5
 Echocardiography; C12
 Eclampsia; OB17
 Ectoparasites; ID43
 Ectopia Lentis; OP21
 Ectopic Pregnancy; OB22
 Ectopic Testes; U38
 Ectropion; OP13
 Eczema; D13
 Edema; C4
 Efficacy; CP7
 Efflux Pump; CP3
 Elbow Dislocation; OR17
 Elder Abuse; FM28, GM4
 Electrical Burns; PL21
 Electrical Pacing; C24
 Electrocardiography; C5
 Electrolyte
 Balance; NP2
 Disorders; NP7
 Disturbances; C8, ER36
 Electronic FHR Monitoring; OB33
 Elevated ICP; NS5
 Elimination Kinetics; CP6
 Elliptocytosis; H23
 Embolization; MI28
 Embryologic Development; P16
 Emmetropia; OP9
 Emphysema; R10
 Empiric Antibiotic Therapy; ID49
 Encephalitis; ID20
 Enchondroma; OR44
 Encopresis; P10
 Endemic; PH19
 Endemic Mycoses; ID34
 Endocarditis; ID17
 Endocrine System; E2
 End-of-Life Care; ELOAM12, GM12
 Endoleak Types; VS7
 Endolymphatic Hydrops; OT13
 Endometrial Biopsy; GY8
 Endometrial Carcinoma; GY35
 Endometriosis; GY13
 Endometritis; OB49
 Endophthalmitis; OP23
 Endotracheal Intubation; ER3
 Endotracheal Tube; A7, MI10
 End Stage Renal Disease; NP23, NP35
 Enlarged Cardiac Silhouette; MI9
 Enophthalmos; OP10
Entamoeba histolytica; ID37
 Enteral Nutrition; G48
 Enterococcus; ID53
 Enteropathic Arthritis; RH23
 Enthesitis-Related Arthritis; P95
 Entropion; OP13
 Enuresis; P9, U39
 Environmental Health; PH20
 Eosinophilia; H11
 Eosinophils; NP6
 Ephelides; D8
 Epicondylitis; OR18
 Epidemic; PH19
 Epidemiology; PH7
 Epidermal Cyst; D5
 Epididymitis; U12, U15
 Epidural; A19
 Epidural Hematoma; MI18
 Epiglottitis; ER56, P89
 Epilepsy; N16, NS39
 Epileptic Syndromes; P85
 Epiphora; OP12
 Epiphyseal Injury; OR40
 Episcleritis; OP16
 Episiotomy; OB46
 Epispadias-Exstrophy Complex; U37
 Epistaxis; ER23, OT27
 Erectile Dysfunction; FM30, U30
 Erysipelas; D24, PL14
 Erythema Infectiosum; P57
 Erythema Multiforme; D21
 Erythema Nodosum; D40
 Erythema Toxicum; P78
 Erythrocytes; NP6
 Erythrocytosis; H6
 Erythrodermic Psoriasis; D19
 Esophageal
 Carcinoma; GS14
 Diverticula; G9

Injury; ER12
 Motor Disorders; G8
 Perforation; GS14
 Varices; G26
 Esophagitis; G10
 Esophagus; G2
 Essential Thrombocythemia; H42
 Ethics; ELOAM4
 Euthanasia; ELOAM12
 EVAR Endoleak; VS8
 Ewing's Sarcoma; OR46
 Exanthematous Eruptions; D22
 Excision; PL7
 Excisional Biopsy; PL7
 Exercise; FM9
 Exercise Testing; C12
 Exophthalmos; OP10
 Exostoses; OT16
 Extensor Compartments; PL3
 Extracorporeal Shock Wave Lithotripsy; U42
 Extradural Lesion; NS23
 Extraocular Muscles; OP6
 Extrapyramidal Symptoms; PS37
 Extubation; A18

F

Facial Nerve; N10
 Facial Nerve Paralysis; OT22
 Factor IX Deficiency; H31
 Factor VIII Deficiency; H31
 Factor XI Deficiency; H31
 Failure to Thrive; GM6, P10
 Fallopian Tube; GY3, GY44
 Falls; ER7, GM5
 Familial Colon Cancer Syndromes; GS33
 FAST; ER5
 Fasting; A6
 Fasting Glucose; E6
 Fatigue; FM31
 Fatty Acid Disorders; P46
 Febrile Child; P54
 Febrile Infant; ER57
 Febrile Neutropenia; ID46
 Febrile Seizures; ER57, P86
 Felon; PL23
 Femoral Arteriogram; MI29
 Femoral Diaphysis Fracture; OR29
 Femur; OR29
 Fetal
 Alcohol Spectrum Disorder; P24
 Death; OB41
 Heart Rate; OB33
 Monitoring; OB33
 Movements; OB12
 Oxygenation; OB35

Scalp Blood Sampling; OB33
 Tissue; ELOAM11
 Fetus; OB30
 Fever; FM33, P54
 Fever in the Returned Traveler; ID43
 Fever of Unknown Origin; ID45
 Fibroids; GY15
 Fibromyalgia; RH27
 Fibrous Cortical Defect; OR44
 First Degree AV Block; C17
 First-Pass Effect; CP3
 Fistula; GS37, OT33
 Fistula-In-Ano; GS39
 Fixed Drug Eruptions; D22
 Flail Chest; ER12
 Flaps; PL12
 Flashes of Light; OP4
 Flatworms; ID42
 Flexor
 Tendon Deformities; PL25
 Tendon Sheath Infection; PL23
 Floaters; OP4
 Flukes; ID42
 Fluoroquinolones; ID48
 Fluoroscopy; MI2
 Focal Segmental Glomerulosclerosis; NP23
 Folate Deficiency; H25, OB13
 Follicle Stimulating Hormone; E18
 Food; PH22
 Contaminants; PH22
 Foot; OR37
 Foot Fractures; ER16
 Forceps; OB45
 Foreign Body; OP17, OT46
 Fractures; OR5
 Distal Femoral Fracture; OR29
 Distal Phalanx Fracture; PL26
 Open; OR8
 Fragile X Syndrome; P44
 Frailty; GM6
 Freckles; D8
 Free Flaps; PL13
 Frontotemporal Dementia; N23
 Frontotemporal Neurocognitive Disorder; N23
 Frostbite; ER45
 Fugue; PS24
 Functional Constipation; P38
 Functional Neurological Symptom Disorder;
 PS24
 Fundoscopy; OP8
 Fungal Disease; ID5
 Fungal Infections; ID34
 Furuncles; D25
 Fussing Child; P8

G

Gait Disturbances; N34
 Galactosemia; P47
 Galeazzi Fracture; OR19
 Gallbladder; MI15
 Gallstone Ileus; GS48
 Gamekeepers Thumb; PL26
 Ganglion Cyst; PL25
 Garden Classification; OR27
 Gastric Acid Secretion; G11
 Gastric Carcinoma; GS18
 Gastric Surgery; GS20
 Gastritis; G11
 Gastroenteritis; P36
 Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease; G6, P34
 Gastrointestinal Bleeding; GS5
 Gastrointestinal Decontamination; ER50
 Gastrointestinal Infections; ID11
 Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumor; GS19
 Gastrointestinal Tract; G2
 Gastrojejunostomy; MI29
 Gastrostomy; MI29
 Gender Dysphoria; PS25
 Generalized Anxiety Disorder; PS12, PS32
 Generalized Tetanus; ID21
 Genetic
 Anomalies; P42
 Syndromes; P43
 Testing; ELOAM11, P42
 Genetics; P41
 Genital Warts; D29
 Genitourinary System; MI16
 Genitourinary Tract
 Anatomy; U2
 Injuries; ER14
 Geriatric Pharmacology; GM13
 Gestational Diabetes Mellitus; OB14
 Gestational Hypertension; OB15
 Gestational Trophoblastic Disease; GY45
 Gianotti-Crosti Syndrome; P57
 Giant Cell Arteritis; OP38
 Giant Cell Tumors; OR45
 Giant Papillary Conjunctivitis; OP15
Giardia lamblia; ID38
 Gilbert's Syndrome; G42
 Glasgow Coma Scale; ER4
 Glaucoma; OP27
 Globe Displacement; OP10
 Glomerular Diseases; NP19
 Glomerular Syndromes; NP22
 Glomerulus; NP2
 Glossopharyngeal Nerve; N10
 Glucose-6-Phosphate Dehydrogenase
 Deficiency; H23
 Glucose Homeostasis; NP2
 Glucose Metabolism; E6
 Glucose Tolerance; E6

Glycemic Targets; E8
 Goiter; E28
 Gonococcal Arthritis; ID15
 Gonococcemia; D31
 Gonorrhea; GY26
 Goodpasture's Disease; NP24, R21
 Gout; RH25
 Gower's Sign; P45
 Granulomatosis With Polyangiitis; R21, RH18
 Graves' Disease; E23, OP37
 Groin Hernias; GS23
 Group B *Streptococcus* Screen; OB8
 Growing Pains; P94
 Growth Hormone; E17
 Guillain-Barré Syndrome; N37
 Gustilo Classification; OR9
 Guttate Psoriasis; D18
 Gynecological Imaging; MI17
 Gynecomastia; E49

H

HAART Recommendations; ID32
 Hair Growth; D36
 Hair Loss; D36
 Half-Life; CP6
 Hallucinogens; PS22
 Hallux Valgus; OR39
 Hand; PL22
 Amputations; PL24
 Carpal Tunnel Syndrome; PL27
 Dupuytren's Disease; PL27
 Fractures and Dislocations; PL25
 Infections; PL23
 Tendons; PL24
 Hand, Foot, and Mouth Disease; P57
 Hand Infections; PL23
 Hansen's Disease; ID23
 Hashimoto's Thyroiditis; E27
 Hay Fever; OT24
 Headache; ER24, FM34, N43
 Head Injury; NS30
 Head Trauma; ER7
 Health Care
 Institutions; GM11
 Reform; ELOAM3
 System; ELOAM2
 Health Promotion; PH5
 Health Services; ELOAM3
 Healthy Public Policy; PH5
 Hearing; OT9
 Hearing Impairment; FM35
 Hearing Loss; OT7
 Heart Failure; C33
 Heart Murmurs; P21
 Heat Exhaustion; ER43

Heat Stroke; ER43
 Heavy Metal Toxicity; PH23
 Heel Spur Syndrome; OR38
 Helminths; ID41
 Hemangiomas; D10
 Hematocele; U29
 Hematoma; NS16
 Hematoma Blocks; A22
 Hematopoiesis; H2
 Hematuria; NP21, U4
 Macroscopic; U4
 Microscopic; U5
 Hemiballismus; N28
 Hemiptera; D27
 Hemochromatosis; G34
 Hemodialysis; ER50, NP36
 Hemolytic Anemia; H18
 Hemolytic Uremic Syndrome; H30, P80
 Hemophilia A; H31, P50
 Hemophilia B; H31, P50
 Hemoptysis; R3
 Hemorrhagic Disease of the Newborn; P70
 Hemorrhoids; GS38
 Hemostasis; H25, H27
 Henoch-Schönlein Purpura; NP24, P96
 Heparin-Induced Thrombocytopenia; H29
 Hepatic Encephalopathy; G39
 Hepatitis; G29
 Hepatitis A; G29
 Hepatitis B; G30, NP25
 Hepatitis C; G31, NP25
 Heritable Disorders; D23
 Hernia; GS22
 Herniation Syndromes; NS6
 Herpes Simplex; D27, P57
 Keratitis; OP18
 Virus of Vulva; GY27
 Herpes Zoster; D28, OP19
 Herpetic Whitlow; PL24
 Heterophoria; OP39
 Heterotropia; OP38
 Hiatus Hernia; GS12
 HIDA Scan; MI27
H. influenzae; ID53
 Hip; OR26
 Dislocation; OR26
 Fracture; OR27
 Hirschsprung's Disease; P38
 HIV and AIDS; ID29, OP34
 HIV-Associated Renal Disease; NP25
 HIV Infection; ID33
 Prevention; ID33
 Replications; ID33
 Testing; ID34
 Hoarseness; OT8, OT28
 Hodgkin Lymphoma; H45
 Hordeolum; OP13
 Hormonal Synthesis; NP2

Hormone Replacement Therapy; FM42, GY32
 Horner's Syndrome; OP32
 Hospitalization; GM8
 Hazards; GM8
H. pylori-Induced Peptic Ulceration; G13
 Human Bites; PL10
 Human Papillomavirus; GY26
 Humeral Shaft Fracture; OR16
 Humerus; OR15
 Huntington's Disease; N31
 Hydatidiform Mole; GY45
 Hydrocele; U28
 Hydrocephalus; NS7, NS36
 Hydronephrosis; U10
 Hyperaldosteronism; E32
 Hyperandrogenism; E34
 Hypercalcemia; ER36, E39
 Hypercapnea; A11
 Hypercapnic Respiratory Failure; R26
 Hypercholesterolemia; E3
 Hypercoagulable
 Disorders; H36
 State; VS2
 Hypercortisolism; E33
 Hyperemesis Gravidarum; OB18
 Hypergonadotropic Hypogonadism; E18
 Hyperkalemia; C8, ER36, NP12
 Hyperlipidemia; E4
 Hypermagnesemia; E42
 Hyponatremia; ER36, NP10
 Hyperopia; OP9
 Hyperosmolar Hyperglycemic State; ER35, E11
 Hyperparathyroidism; MI25
 Hyperphosphatemia; E41
 Hyperplasia; FM16
 Hyperprolactinemia; E18
 Hypersensitivity Pneumonitis; R15
 Hypertension; A4, FM35, GM8, NP30, OB15, OP37, P83
 Hypertensive Emergency; ER36
 Hypertensive Nephrosclerosis; NP31
 Hyperthermia; A26
 Hyperthyroidism; A5, P29
 Hypertriglyceridemia; E4
 Hypertrophic
 Cardiomyopathy; C40
 Scar; PL9
 Hyperviscosity Syndrome; H51
 Hyphema; OP43
 Hypocalcemia; ER36, E40
 Hypocapnea; A11
 Hypochondriasis; PS24
 Hypoglossal Nerve; N11
 Hypoglycemia; ER36, E14, P71
 Hypogonadism; E47
 Hypogonadotropic Hypogonadism; E18
 Hypokalemia; C8, ER36, NP11

Hypomagnesemia; E42
 Hypomanic Episode; PS7
 Hyponatremia; ER36, NP8
 Hypophosphatemia; E41
 Hypopituitarism; E20
 Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome; P20
 Hypospadias; U37
 Hypothermia; C8, ER44
 Hypothyroidism; E26, P29
 Hypotonia; P87
 Hypoventilation Syndromes; R31
 Hypoxemia; R6, R7
 Hypoxemic Respiratory Failure; R26
 Hysterectomy; GY8
 Hysterosalpingogram; MI17

I

Ichthyosis Vulgaris; D23
 Identity Disorder; PS24
 Idiopathic

- Inflammatory Myopathy; RH15
- Intracranial Hypertension; NS9
- Myelofibrosis; H42
- Pulmonary Arterial; R18
- Pulmonary Fibrosis; R14

 Ileum; G3
 Illness Anxiety Disorder; PS24
 Immobility; GM9
 Immune Reconstitution Syndrome; ID47
 Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura; H27, P50
 Immunizations; GM9, OB10, P3
 Immunology; RH2
 Impedance Audiometry; OT11
 Impetigo; D24
 Implantable Cardioverter Defibrillators; C24
 Impotence; U30
 Imprinting Disorders; P41
 Impulse Conduction; C16
 Incisional Biopsy; PL7
 Inclusion Conjunctivitis; OP16
 Incontinence; GM7

- Fecal Incontinence; GM7
- Urinary Incontinence; GM8

 Incretin Therapy; E8
 Induced Abortion; ELOAM11
 Induction; A16

- Agents; A16
- Routine; A16

 Induction of Labor; OB35, OB36
 Infantile Colic; P9
 Infantile Hemangioma; D10
 Infantile Spasms; P85
 Infant Mortality Rate; PH6
 Infarction; C7

Infections in the Immunocompromised Host; ID46
 Infectious

- Diarrhea; ID13
- Esophagitis; G10
- Mononucleosis; P59
- Pharyngitis; P59
- Vulvovaginitis; GY24

 Infective Endocarditis; C41, ID17, NP25
 Infertility; E47, GY20, U33

- Female; U33
- Male; U33

 Inflamed Appendix; MI15
 Inflamed Gallbladder; MI15
 Inflammatory

- Arthritis; RH3
- Bowel Disease; G19, GS29
- Diseases; U11

 Influenza; ID10

- Influenza A; ID10
- Influenza B; ID10

 Inguinal Hernia; U28
 Inhalation Injury; ER46
 Innocent Heart Murmurs; P22

- Peripheral Pulmonic Stenosis; P22
- Pulmonary Ejection; P22
- Still's Murmur; P22
- Supraclavicular Arterial Bruit; P22
- Venous Hum; P22

 Insect Bites; ER47
 Insomnia; N46
 Insular Ribbon; MI20
 Insulin; E10
 Insulin Regimens; E10
 Intellectual Disability; P23
 Intensive Care; R32
 Intensive Insulin Regimen; P27
 Internuclear Ophthalmoplegia; N13
 Interstitial Cystitis; U13
 Interstitial Disease; MI7
 Interstitial Lung Disease; MI7, R13
 Interventional Radiology; MI28
 Intestinal Ischemia; GS28
 Intoxication; ER53
 Intra-Abdominal Abscess; GS12
 Intracerebral Hemorrhage; NS20
 Intracoronary Stenting; C31
 Intracranial Aneurysms; NS21
 Intracranial Hemorrhage; NS17
 Intradural Intramedullary Lesions; NS27
 Intraoperative Bradycardia; A12
 Intraoperative Monitoring; A11

- Blood Pressure; A12
- Blood Products; A15
- Fluid Balance; A13
- Heart Rate; A11
- IV Fluids; A14
- Resuscitation; A13

Temperature; A11
 Intraoperative Tachycardia; A11
 Intraparenchymal Hemorrhage; MI19
 Intrapartum Fetal Monitoring; OB33
 Intrauterine

- Device; GY19
- Fetal Death; OB41

 Growth Restriction; OB28
 Intravenous Agents; A16
 Intraventricular Hemorrhage; P72
 Intubation

- Landmarks; A7

 Intussusception; P39
 Inverse Psoriasis; D19
 Iritis; OP32
 Iron

- Absorption; H14
- Indices; H14
- Intake; H13
- Levels; H14
- Metabolism; H13
- Storage; H14

 Iron Deficiency Anemia; G26, H15, P47
 Irritable Bowel Syndrome; G23
 Irritant Contact Dermatitis; D15
 Ischemia; C7
 Ischemic

- Cerebral Infarction; NS17
- Heart Disease; C25
- Renal Disease; NP17
- Stroke; N49

 Isoimmunization Screening; OB7
 "itis" Imaging; MI15
 IV Fluids; A14

- Solutions; A15

J

Janz Syndrome; P85
 Jaundice; G41, P72

- Breast Milk Jaundice; P73
- Breastfeeding Jaundice; P73

 Jehovah's Witnesses; ER6
 Jejunum; G3
 Joint Pain; ER24, FM39, OR4
 Joint Pathology; RH2
 Juvenile Idiopathic Arthritis; P94
 Juvenile Myoclonic Epilepsy; P85
 JVP Waveform; C3

K

Kawasaki Disease; P57, P96
Kayser-Fleischer Ring; OP19
Keloids; D6
 Keloid Scar; PL9
Keratoacanthoma; D33
Keratoconjunctivitis Sicca; OP11
Keratoconus; OP19
Kernicterus; P74
Kidney Disease; NP34
Klinefelter Syndrome; P44
Knee; OR30
Knee Injuries; ER16

L

Labor; OB30
Labyrinthitis; OT14
Lacerations; ER18
Lacrimal Apparatus; OP3, OP11
Lactase Deficiency; P37
Lactose Intolerance; P37
Lambert-Eaton Myasthenic Syndrome; N38
Language Delay; P23
Large Bowel; G3
Large Bowel Obstruction; GS25
Large Intestine; GS36
Large Vessel Disease; NP17
Large Vessel Vasculitis; RH20
Laryngeal Mask Airway; A7
Laryngeal Papillomas; OT30
Laryngitis; OT28
Laryngomalacia; OT46
Laryngotracheobronchitis; P89
Lead Poisoning; H17
Learning Disabilities; P25
Leber's Congenital Amaurosis; OP25
Left Anterior Fascicular Block; C6
Left Atrial Enlargement; C7
Left Bundle Branch Block; C6
Left Heart Catheterization; C14
Left Posterior Fascicular Block; C6
Left Ventricular Hypertrophy; C7
Legg-Calvé-Perthes Disease; OR42
Leiomyomata; GY15
Lennox-Gastaut; P85
Leopold's Maneuvers; OB5
Leprosy; ID23
Lesions; D3
Leukemia; P51
Leukemoid Reactions; H11
Leukocoria; OP41
Leukocytes; NP6
Leukoplakia; D32
Lewy Bodies; N23

Lice; D27
Lichen Planus; D17
Lichen Simplex Chronicus; D16
Lid Carcinoma; OP34
Lid Swelling; OP12
Life Expectancy; PH6
Life Support; A32
Life-Threatening Injuries; ER16
Ligamentous Injuries; OR36
Limb Ischemia; VS2
Limb Pain; P93
Limb-Threatening Injuries; ER16
Lipid Pathways; E3
Lipid Transport; E2
Lipodystrophy; ID32
Lipoproteins; E3
Liver; G3, G28, MI14
Liver Abscesses; GS42
Liver Cysts; GS42
Liver Disease; H32
Liver Masses; MI14
Liver Spot; D8
Liver Transplantation; GS44
Loading Dose; CP7
Local Anesthesia; A21
Local Disorders of Iris; OP30
Local Infiltration; A22
Loss of Consciousness; C4
Lou Gehrig's Disease; N35
Low Back Pain; FM40
Lower Extremity Injuries; ER16
Lower Gastrointestinal Bleeding; G27, P41
Lower Limb Ulcers; PL15
Lower Respiratory Tract Diseases; P90
Lumbar Disc Herniation; OR24
Lumbar Disc Syndrome; NS25
Lumbar Puncture; N7
Lumbar Spinal Stenosis; NS26
Lund-Browder; PL18
Lung Cancer; R28
Lung Disease; R4
 Obstructive; R4
 Restrictive; R4
Lung Lobes; R2
Lung Nodule; MI7
Lung Transplantation; GS16
Lung Volumes; R4
Luteinizing Hormone; E18
Lyme Arthritis; P95
Lyme Disease; ID23
Lymphadenopathy; H12, P51
Lymphatic Malformation; OT35
Lymphedema; 11
Lymphocytosis; H10
Lymphomas; H44, P52
Lymphopenia; H10
Lymphoplasmacytic Lymphoma; H51

M

Macrocytic Anemia; H24
Macrolides; ID48
Macrosomia; OB29
Macular Degeneration; OP26
Magnetic Resonance Imaging; C15, MI3, NS2
Maintenance Dose; CP7
Major Depressive Disorder; PS7
Major Depressive Episode; PS6
Major Neurocognitive Disorder; FM20, N19, PS17
Malaria; ID39
Malignant Melanoma; D34, OP34, PL5
Malignant Renal Neoplasms; U20
Mallampati; A3
Mallet Finger; PL24
Mallory-Weiss Tear; G27
Malnutrition; GM9
Mammalian Bites; ER46
Mammography; MI30
Mandibular Fractures; PL29
Manic Episode; PS7
Massive Hemothorax; ER12
Mastitis; OB49
Mastoiditis; OT18
Maternal Mortality Rate; PH6
Maxillary Fractures; PL30
Measles; P57
Mechanical Back Pain; OR24
Mechanical Hyperventilation; R6
Mechanical Hypoventilation; R6
Mechanical Valve; C42
Mediastinal Masses; MI9, R21
Mediastinitis; R22
Medical Error; ELOAM9
Medical Ethics; ELOAM4
Medium Vessel Vasculitis; RH19
Medullary Sponge Kidney; NP32
Melasma; D9
Membranoproliferative Glomerulonephritis; NP23
Membranous Glomerulopathy; NP23
Mendelian Inheritance; P41
Menière's Disease; OT13
Meningioma; NS12
Meningitis; ID19, P61, P62
Meningitis Sepsis; ER58
Meningocele; NS35
Meniscal Tears; OR32
Menopause; FM42, GY31
Menstrual Cycle; GY4
Menstruation; GY3
Mesothelioma; R25
Meta-Analysis; PH16
Metabolic Acidosis; NP15, NP16, R6
Metabolic Alkalosis; NP16, R6

Metabolic Bone Disease; E42, MI24
Metabolic Diseases; P45
Metabolic Syndrome; E15
Metabolism; CP4
Metacarpal Fractures; PL26
Metastases; MI18, OP34
Metastatic Tumors; NS11
Metatarsal Fracture; OR39
Microangiopathic Hemolytic Anemia; H22
Microcytic Anemia; H13
Migraine; N45
Mild Traumatic Brain Injury; FM19
Milia; P78
Milium; D5
Milk Protein Allergy; P37
Mineralocorticoid Excess Syndromes; E32
Minimum Alveolar Concentration; A17
Miosis; OP32
Mitochondrial Inheritance; P41
Mitral Regurgitation; C43
Mitral Stenosis; C43
Mitral Valve Prolapse; C44
Mixed Connective Tissue Disease; RH16
Mixed Hearing Loss; OT9
Modified Glasgow Coma Score; ER56
Molluscum Contagiosum; D29
Monoarthritis; RH3
Mononucleosis; P59
Monteggia Fracture; OR19
Mood Disorder; PS3
Mood Stabilizers; PS41
Motor Deficits; N3
Motor Exam; N2
Motor Vehicle Collision; ER7
Multidose Activated Charcoal; ER50
Multinodular Goiter; E25
Multiple Endocrine Neoplasm; E36
Multiple Gestation; OB27
Multiple Myeloma; H49, NP30, OR46
Multiple Sclerosis; MI21, N52, OP37
Mumps; P62
Muscle Relaxants; A17
Musculoskeletal System; MI22
Myasthenia Gravis; N37
Mycology; ID5
Mydriasis; OP32
Myelodysplastic Syndromes; H38
Myelography; MI19
Myeloid Leukemia; H37, H40
Myelomeningocele; NS35
Myocardial Disease; C38
Myocardial Infarction; GS11
Myocardial Perfusion Scanning; MI27
Myocarditis; C38
Myoclonus; N28
Myokimia; N28
Myopathies; N39
Myopia; OP9

Myotonic Dystrophy; N40
Myxedema Coma; E28

N

Nail Clubbing; R3
Narcolepsy; N47
Nasal Fractures; PL30
Nasal Obstruction; OT8
Nasal Septum; OT3
Nasogastric Tube; MI10
Nasolacrimal System Defects; OP41
Naso-Orbital Ethmoid Fractures; PL31
Neck Mass; OT9, OT32
 Congenital; OT33
Necrotizing Enterocolitis; P74
Necrotizing Fasciitis; ID11, PL14
Neglect; P15
Negligence; ELOAM9
Nematodes; ID41
Neonatal Acne; P78
Neonatal Alloimmune Thrombocytopenia; P69
Neonatal Hyperbilirubinemia; P72
Neonatal Resuscitation; P66
Neoplasia; GY45
Neoplasms; GS43, R28
 Urological; U19
Neovascular Glaucoma; OP29
Nephritic Syndrome; NP22, P81
Nephroblastoma; P52, U38
Nephrolithiasis; ER40
Nephron; NP2
Nephrotic Syndrome; NP23, P82
Nerves; PL23
Neuroblastoma; P53
Neurocognitive Disorder; PS17
Neurocognitive Disorders; PS16
Neurocutaneous Syndromes; P88
Neurodevelopmental Disorders; PS33
Neurofibromatosis; D23
 Type I; P88
 Type II; P88
Neurogenic Bladder; U9
Neurogenic Claudication; NS27
Neuroleptic Malignant Syndrome; PS37
Neurological Infections; ID19
Neuromuscular Disorders; R6
Neuropathic Pain; A24
Neuroradiology; MI18
Neurotrauma; NS29
Neutropenia; H9
Neutrophilia; H9
Nevi Classification; D8
Nevomelanocytic Nevi; D8
Nevus Flammeus; D10

Nevus Simplex; D11, P78
Nightmares; P13
Nightstick Fracture; OR19
Night Terrors; P13
Nipple Areola Reconstruction; PL32
Nocturnal Myoclonus; PS25
Nodular Glomerulosclerosis; NP23
Noise-Induced Sensorineural Hearing Loss; OT21
Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease; G36
Non-ANCA Associated Vasculitis; RH18
Non-Articular Rheumatism; RH26
Non-Hodgkin Lymphoma; H46
Non-Scarring (Non-Cicatricial) Alopecia; D36
Non-Specific Enteroviral Exanthems; P58
Non-Toxic Goiter; E28
Noonan Syndrome; P44
Normal Pubertal Development; P31
Normal Tension Glaucoma; OP28
Normocytic Anemia; H17
Nosocomial Infections; ID7
NSAID-Induced Ulceration; G14
Nuclear Medicine; MI19
Nummular Dermatitis; D15
Nutrition; FM6, OB9, P6
Nystagmus; N14

O

Obesity; FM7, P11
Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder; PS13
Obstetrical Anesthesia; A24
Obstructive Sleep Apnea; A5
Occupational Hazards; PH24
Occupational Health; PH23
Ocular Decontamination; ER50
Ocular Examination; OP5
Ocular Pain; OP4
Ocular Trauma; OP42
Oculomotor Nerve; N9
Off-Pump Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery; C33
Ogilvie's Syndrome; GS27
Olecranon Fracture; OR17
Olfactory Nerve; N8
Oligoarthritis; RH3
Oligoarticular Arthritis; P95
Oligohydramnios; OB29
Onychomycosis; FM44
Open Fractures; ER16
Open Pneumothorax; ER12
Ophthalmia Neonatorum; OP42
Ophthalmologic Foreign Body; ER41
Ophthalmoplegia; N13
Ophthalmoscopy; OP8
Opioids; PS21

Opportunistic Fungi; ID35
 Oppositional Defiant Disorder; PS35
 Optic Disc Edema; N12
 Oral Ulcer; D5
 Orbital Apex Syndrome; PL32
 Orbital Cellulitis; ER42, OP10, OP11
 Orbital Floor Fractures; PL31
 Orchitis; U12, U15
 Organelle Disorders; P46
 Organ Failure; R33
 Orthopedic Injuries; ER15
 Osborne J Waves; C8
 Osgood-Schlatter Disease; OR42
 Osteoarthritis; FM42, RH5
 Osteoblastoma; OR45
 Osteochondroma; OR44
 Osteoid Osteoma; OR44
 Osteomalacia; E45, MI25
 Osteomyelitis; MI24, OR10, P94
 Osteoporosis; E42, FM43, MI24
 Osteosarcoma; OR45
 Otalgia; ER25, OT6
 Otitis Externa; OT16
 Otitis Media; ER58, OT17, P55
 with Effusion; OT17, OT40, P56
 Otoacoustic Emissions; OT12
 Otosclerosis; OT19
 Ottawa Ankle and Foot Rules; ER17
 Ottawa Knee Rules; ER17
 Outbreak; PH18
 Outerbridge Classification; OR7
 Outflow Obstruction; U6
 Oval Fat Bodies; NP6
 Ovarian Tumors; GY37
 Ovaries; GY3
 Overdose; ER54
 Overlap Syndrome; RH16

P

Pacemaker; C24
 Paget's Disease; E46, MI25
 Painful Bladder; U13
 Pain Management; A23
 Pain Syndromes; N40
 Palliative; GM12
 Palmar Warts; D29
 Palpitations; C5
 Pancreas; G3, G45, GS50, GS60, MI15
 Pancreatic Cancer; GS51
 Pancreatitis; G45, GS50
 Pancytopenia; H8
 Pandemic; PH19
 Panic Disorder; PS10, PS32
 Papillary Necrosis; NP29
 Papulosquamous Diseases; D17

Paralytic Ileus; GS27
 Paraneoplastic Syndromes; E51, R29
 Paraphilic Disorders; PS25
 Paraphimosis; U29
 Parapneumonic Effusion; R24
 Parasitic Infections; D26, ID37
 Parasitology; ID5
 Parasomnias; N47
 Parasympathetic Nervous System; CP11
 Parathyroid Hormone; E38
 Parenchymal Disease; R6
 Parenteral Nutrition; G49
 Parkinson's Disease; N30
 Parkland Formula; PL19
 Paronychia; PL24
 Parotid Gland Neoplasms; OT32
 Paroxysmal Positional Vertigo; OT13
 Patella; OR33
 Patellar Dislocation; OR33
 Patellar Fracture; OR33
 Patellar Tendon Rupture; OR32
 Patellofemoral Syndrome; OR34
 Patent Ductus Arteriosus; P18
 Pathogenicity Rate; PH19
 Pedestrian-Automobile Impact; ER7
 Pediatric Anesthesia; A25
 Pediatric Rashes; P12
 Pediculosis; D27
 Pelvic Fracture; OR25
 Pelvic Inflammatory Disease; GY28
 Pelvic Mass; GY7
 Pelvic Pain; ER19, GY7
 Pelvic Relaxation; GY33
 Pelvis; OR25, U3
 Male; U3
 Pemphigus Vulgaris; D20
 Penetrating Neck Trauma; ER12
 Penetrating Trauma; ER14, OP42
 Penicillins; ID48
 Penile Tumors; U27
 Penis
 Cross Section; U3
 Peptic Stricture; G9
 Peptic Ulcer Disease; G12, GS17
 Percutaneous Biliary Drainage; MI29
 Percutaneous Biopsy; MI29
 Percutaneous Coronary Intervention; C31
 Percutaneous Nephrostomy; MI29
 Percutaneous Transluminal Angioplasty;
 MI28
 Peribronchial Cuffing; MI8
 Pericardial Disease; C46
 Pericardial Effusion; C46
 Pericarditis; C8, C46
 Perineum; U3
 Male; U3
 Periodic Health Examination; FM2
 Perioral Dermatitis; D12

Peripheral Arterial Disease; VS2
 Peripheral Arthritis; RH23
 Peripheral Facial Paralysis; OT23
 Peripheral Nerve Blocks; A20
 Peripheral Nerves; NS28
 Peripheral Pulmonic Stenosis; P22
 Peripheral Vascular Anatomy; VS2
 Peripheral Venous Disease; VS8
 Peritoneal Dialysis; NP36
 Peritonsillar Abscess; OT42
 Persistent Depressive Disorder; PS8
 Persistent Pulmonary Hypertension; P75
 Personality Disorders; PS28, PS29
 Pertussis; P63
 Peyronie's Disease; U29
 Phalanx Fractures; PL26
 Pharmacodynamics; CP7, GM14
 Pharmacokinetics; CP6, GM13
 Pharyngitis; FM49, P59
 Phenylketonuria; P46
 Pheochromocytoma; E36, MI18
 Phimosis; U29
 Phobic Disorders; PS12
 Photophobia; OP4
 Photopsia; OP4
 Photosensitivity Eruptions; D22
 Physical Abuse; P14
 Physical Contaminants; PH21
 Physician-Assisted Suicide; ELOAM12
 Physician Competence; ELOAM12
 Physician-Industry Relations; ELOAM13
 Pigmented Lesions; D8
 Pilar Cyst; D5
 Pilonidal Disease; GS40
 Pinguecula; OP14
 Pituitary Adenoma; E19, NS13
 Pituitary Gland; E16
 Pituitary Hormones; E16
 Pityriasis Rosea; D17
 Pityriasis (Tinea) Versicolor; D30
 Placenta; OB2, OB48
 Placenta Previa; OB25
 Plain Films; MI2
 Plantar Fasciitis; OR38
 Plantar Warts; D29
 Plasma Protein Binding; CP4
Plasmodium spp.; ID39
 Platelets; H5, H53
 Pleural Effusions; MI8, R22
Pneumocystis jiroveci; ID35
 Pneumonia; ER58, GS10, ID8, P77, P90
 Pneumothorax; MI8, R24
 Poison Prevention; P12
 Polyarteritis Nodosa; RH19
 Polyarthritis; RH3
 Polyarticular Arthritis; P95
 Polycystic Kidney Disease; NP31
 Polycystic Ovarian Syndrome; GY22

Polycythemia Vera; H41
 Polyhydramnios; OB29
 Polymyalgia Rheumatica; RH26
 Polymyositis; RH15
 Polypharmacy; GM14
 Porphyria Cutanea Tarda; D21
 Portal Hypertension; G39
 Port-Wine Stain; D10
 Positive Lavage; ER13
 Positron Emission Tomography Scans; MI3
 Posterior Urethral Valves; U35
 Posterior Vitreous Detachment; OP22
 Postherpetic Neuralgia; N42
 Postmenopausal Vaginitis; GY24
 Post-Obstructive Diuresis; U11
 Post-Operative Care; A22
 Post-Operative Dyspnea; GS10
 Post-Operative Fever; GS7
 Postpartum Blues; OB50
 Postpartum Care; OB50
 Postpartum Depression; OB50
 Postpartum Hemorrhage; OB47
 Postpartum Psychosis; OB50
 Postpartum Pyrexia; OB49
 Post-Streptococcal Glomerulonephritis; P61
 Post-Test Probability; PH8
 Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder; PS13
 Potassium Homeostasis; NP11
 Potency; CP7
 Potential Years of Life Lost; PH6
 Powers of Attorney; ELOAM8
 Prader-Willi Syndrome; P45
 Precede-Proceed Model; PH18
 Precocious Puberty; P32
 Preeclampsia; OB16
 Pre-Excitation Syndromes; C21
 Pregnancy; OB2
 Diagnosis of Pregnancy; OB2
 Maternal Physiology; OB3
 Physical Signs; OB2
 Prehn's Sign; U15
 Premature Atrial Contractions; P21
 Premature Beats; C18
 Premature Ejaculation; U29
 Premature Rupture of Membranes; OB38
 Premature Ventricular Contractions; P21
 Premenstrual Dysphoric Disorder; GY5
 Premenstrual Syndrome; GY5
 Prenatal Care; OB4
 Investigations; OB4
 Physical Exam; OB4
 Risk Modification; OB4
 Screening Tests; OB5
 Supplementation; OB4
 Prenatal Circulation; P16
 Prenatal Screening; OB5
 Diagnostic Tests; OB7
 Gestation-Dependent Screening; OB6

High-Risk Population Screening Tests; OB5
 Ultrasound Screening; OB6
 Presbycusis; OT20
 Presbyopia; OP9
 Preseptal Cellulitis; OP10, OP11
 Pressure Ulcers; GM10, PL16
 Preterm Labor; OB37
 Pre-Test Probability; PH8
 Priapism; U29
 Primary Angle-Closure Glaucoma; OP29
 Primary Lesions; D3
 Primary Nocturnal Enuresis; P9
 Primary Open-Angle Glaucoma; OP28
 P-R Interval; C10
 Pro-Embolic States; VS2
 Progressive Glomerulosclerosis; NP29
 Prolactin; E18
 Prolapse; GY33
 Prophylactic Vaccinations; ID47
 Prophylaxis; OB8
 Proportional Mortality Ratio; PH6
 Proptosis; OP10
 Prostate; U7
 Transurethral Resection; U41
 Prostate Cancer; U23
 Screening; U25
 Prostatectomy; U41
 Prostatic Hyperplasia; U7
 Prostatitis; U14
 Prostatodynia; U14
 Protein Synthesis Inhibitors; ID51
 Proteinuria; NP20
 Proximal Humeral Fracture; OR15
 Pruritus; D41, GY6
 Pseudocholinesterase; A27
 Pseudodementia of Depression; PS18
 Pseudogout; RH26
Pseudomonas; ID53
 Pseudotumor Cerebri; NS9
 Psoriasis; D17
 Psoriatic Arthritis; D19, P95, RH23
 Psychiatric Emergencies; ER55
 Psychosis; ER55, PS4
 Psychotic Disorders; PS3, PS5
 Pterygium; OP15
 Ptosis; OP13
 Pubertal Development; P31
 Puberty; GY3
 Public Health; PH2
 Pulmonary Contusion; ER12
 Pulmonary Edema; GS11, MI8
 Pulmonary Ejection; P22
 Pulmonary Embolism; ER33, MI8, R18
 Pulmonary Function Tests; R4
 Pulmonary Hypertension; R17
 Pulmonary Nodules; MI8
 Pulmonary Regurgitation; C44

Pulmonary Stenosis; C44, P19
 Pulmonary Vascular Disease; R17
 Pulmonary Vasculitis; R21
 Pulsus Paradoxus; ER12
 Punch Biopsy; PL7
 Pupillary Light Reflex; OP30
 Pupils; OP6, OP30
 Pure Tone Audiometry; OT10
 Pus; NS14
 Pustular Melanosis; P78
 Pustular Psoriasis; D19
 Pustule; D5
 P Wave; C9
 Pyelonephritis; U14
 Pyogenic Granuloma; D10

Q

QRS Complex; C10
 Q-T Interval; C11
 Qualitative; PH10
 Quality Adjusted Life Year; PH7
 Quality Assurance; PH17
 Quality Control; PH17
 Quality Improvement; PH17
 Quality Management; PH17
 Quantitative; PH10
 Quinsy; OT42

R

Rabies; ID21
 Radial Head Fracture; OR17
 Radical Prostatectomy; U41
 Radioactive Iodine Uptake; MI26
 Radiofrequency Ablation; MI29
 Radioiodine Ablation; MI26
 Radiology; MI28
 Radionuclide Ventriculography; MI27
 Radius Fracture; OR18
 Randomized Controlled Trial; PH12
 Random Pattern Flaps; PL13
 Rapidly Progressive Glomerulonephritis; NP22
 Rash; FM44, P12
 RBC Scan; MI27
 Reactive Arthritis; P95, RH24
 Rectal Prolapse; GS40
 Recurrent Erosions; OP18
 Recurrent Headache; P87
 Red Blood Cells; H53
 Red Eye; ER41, OP4
 Red Scales; D5
 Red Urine; NP21

Reflexes; P5
 Refractive Eye Surgery; OP8
 Refusing Treatment; ELOAM15
 Regional Anesthesia; A19
 Relative Afferent Pupillary Defect; OP33
 Relative Risk Reduction; PH10
 Renal Adenoma; U20
 Renal Artery Stenosis; NP17
 Renal Cell Carcinoma; U20
 Renal Colic; ER40, U16
 Renal Function; NP4
 Renal Hemodynamics; NP4
 Renal Infarction; NP17
 Renal Mass; U19
 Renal Neoplasms
 Benign; U19
 Malignant; U20
 Renal Nuclear Scan; MI17
 Renal Oncocytoma; U20
 Renal Osteodystrophy; E46
 Renal Parenchymal Hypertension; NP31
 Renal Stones; U17
 Renal Transplantation; NP37
 Renal Trauma; U31
 Renal Tubules; NP3
 Renal Vein Thrombosis; NP18
 Reproductive Technologies; ELOAM10
 Research Ethics; ELOAM13
 Respiratory Acidosis; R6
 Respiratory Alkalosis; R6
 Respiratory Center Depression; R6
 Respiratory Center Stimulation; R6
 Respiratory Distress; ER56
 Respiratory Distress in the Newborn; P76
 Respiratory Failure; GS11, R25
 Restless Leg Syndrome; N47
 Restrictive Cardiomyopathy; C41
 Restrictive Food Intake Disorder; PS27
 Resuscitation; A13, ER4
 Retentive Encopresis; P10
 Retina; OP23
 Retinal Artery Detachment; ER42
 Retinal Artery Occlusion; ER42
 Retinal Detachment; OP24
 Retinitis Pigmentosa; OP25
 Retinoblastoma; OP41
 Retrograde Pyelography; MI17
 Retrograde Urethrogram; MI17
 Revascularization Procedure; C32
 Reversing Agents; A17
 Rheumatic Fever; C42, P60
 Rheumatoid Arthritis; R21, RH8
 Rhinitis; OT23
 Rhinosinusitis; OT25
 Rickets; E45, MI25
 Right Atrial Enlargement; C7
 Right Axis Deviation; C6
 Right Bundle Branch Block; C6

Right Ventricular Hypertrophy; C7
 Risk Assessment; PH21
 Rockwood Classification; OR14
 Rocky Mountain Spotted Fever; ID25
 Rolando's Fracture; PL26
 Root Compression; NS24
 Rosacea; D12
 Roseola; P58
 Rotator Cuff; OR12
 Rotator Cuff Muscles; OR12
 Rotator Cuff Tests; OR13
 Roundworms; ID41
 Rubella; P58
 Rule of 9s; PL17
 Ruptured Diaphragm; ER12

S

Salivary Gland Neoplasms; OT31
 Salivary Glands; OT30
 Salmon Patch; D11
 Sarcoidosis; OP38, R14
S. aureus; ID53
 Scabies; D26
 Scalp Injury; NS30
 Scaphoid Fracture; ER16, OR21
 Scarlet Fever; P58, P60
 Scarring (Cicatricial) Alopecia; D37
Schistosoma spp.; ID42
 Schizoaffective Disorder; PS3, PS6
 Schizoid; PS30
 Schizophrenia; PS3, PS4, PS30
 Schizophreniform Disorder; PS3, PS5
 Schizotypal; PS30
 Scintiscan; MI26
 Sclera; OP16
 Scleritis; OP16
 Scleroderma; NP30, R21, RH13
 Sclerosing Cholangitis; G42
 Scoliosis; OR43
 Screening; FM4
 Breast Cancer; FM4
 Colorectal Cancer; FM4
 Scrotal Mass; U28
 Scrotum
 Anatomy; U2
 Seatbelt Injuries; ER13
 Seborrheic Dermatitis; D16, FM44
 Seborrheic Keratosis; D7
 Secondary Angle-Closure Glaucoma; OP29
 Secondary Enuresis; P9
 Secondary Morphological Lesions; D3
 Secondary Open Angle Glaucoma; OP29
 Second Degree AV Block; C17
 Seizures; ER26, N16, P85
 Selective Mutism; PS32

Senile Miosis; OP32
 Seniors; GM2
 Sensitivity; PH8
 Sensorineural Hearing Loss; OT9, OT20
 Sensory Exam; N3
 Separation Anxiety Disorder; PS32
 Sepsis; ID22, P77, R33
 Sepsis in the Neonate; P77
 Septic Arthritis; ID15, P94, RH5
 Septic Joint; OR10
 Septic Shock; ID22
 Seronegative Rheumatic Disease; RH21
 Seropositive Rheumatic Disease; RH6
 Serum Creatinine Concentration; NP4
 Serum Sickness-Like Reaction; D23
 Sex Chromosome Disorders; P44
 Sexual Abuse; P15
 Sexual Assault; ER28
 Sexual Development; P30
 Sexual Dysfunction; GY30
 Sexually Transmitted Diseases; D30, FM45, GY25
 Shave Biopsy; PL7
 Shingles; D28
 Shock; R33
 Shortness of Breath; ER27
 Short Stature; P27
 Shoulder; OR11
 Clavicle Fracture; OR14
 Dislocation; OR11
 Frozen Shoulder; OR15
 Shoulder Dislocation; OR11
 Shoulder Dystocia; OB42
 Shoulder Maneuvers; OR12
 Shunt; R7
 Shunt Complications; NS9
 Shunt Nephritis; NP24
 Sialadenitis; OT30
 Sialolithiasis; OT31
 Sick Euthyroid Syndrome; E28
 Sickle Cell Disease; H21, P48
 Sick Sinus Syndrome; C17
 Sideroblastic Anemia; H16
 Sinus Arrhythmia; P21
 Sinus Bradycardia; C16
 Sinusitis; FM46, P64
 Sinus Tachycardia; C18, P21
 Sjögren's Syndrome; RH16
 Skier's Thumb; PL26
 Skin; D2
 Skin Biopsy; PL7
 Excisional Biopsy; PL7
 Incisional Biopsy; PL7
 Punch Biopsy; PL7
 Shave Biopsy; PL7
 Skin Grafts; PL11
 Skin Lesions; PL5
 Skin Tags; D6

Skin Ulcer; D5
 Skull Films; MI19
 Skull Fractures; NS30
 Sleep Apnea; A5, N46, R31
 Obesity; A5
 Obstructive; A5
 Sleep-Disordered Breathing; C37
 Sleep Disorders; FM47, N45, PS24
 Sleep Disturbances; P13
 Slit-Lamp Examination; OP7
 Small Bowel Obstruction; GS25
 Small Intestine; GS21
 Small Vessel Disease; NP18
 Smith's Fracture; OR20
 Smoking Cessation; FM10
 Snake Bites; ER47
 Social Anxiety Disorder; PS12, PS32
 Social Phobia; PS12, PS32
 Sodium Homeostasis; NP7
 Soft Tissue Infections; ID10, PL14
 Soil; PH22
 Contaminants; PH22
 Solar Keratosis; D7
 Solar Lentigo; D8
 Solitary Pulmonary Nodule; R30
 Somatic Symptom Disorder; PS23
 Sonohysterogram; MI18
 Sore Throat; FM49
 Specificity; PH8
 Specific Phobia; PS12, PS32
 Speech Audiometry; OT11
 Speech Discrimination Test; OT11
 Speech Reception Threshold; OT11
 Spermatocele; U28
 Spherocytosis; H23
 Spider Angioma; D10
 Spina Bifida Aperta; NS35
 Spina Bifida Occulta; NS34
 Spinal Anesthesia; A19
 Spinal Cord Injury; NS32
 Spinal Cord Syndromes; NS27
 Spinal Cord Trauma; ER9
 Spinal Dysraphism; NS34
 Spinal Stenosis; OR24
 Spine; OR21
 Spleen; GS53, MI14
 Splenectomy; GS53
 Splenomegaly; H13
 Spondylitis; RH23
 Spondyloarthropathies; RH21
 Spondylolisthesis; OR25
 Spondylolysis; OR25
 Spontaneous Abortions; OB22
 Squamous Cell Carcinoma; D33, PL5
 Stab Wounds; ER14
 Standardized Mortality Rate; PH6
 Stasis Dermatitis; D16
 Static Compliance; OT11

Statistical Hypotheses; PH13
 Status Epilepticus; ER26, N17
 Steady State; CP6
 STEMI; C28
 Stener's Lesion; PL26
 Stenosing Tenosynovitis; PL25
 Stents; MI28
 Stevens-Johnson Syndrome; D21
 Still's Disease; P94, RH28
 Still's Murmur; P22
 Stomach; G2
 Stomas; GS37
 Stone Disease; U16
 Strabismus; OP38
 Strep Pharyngitis; ER58
 Stress Fractures; OR40
 Stress-Induced Ulceration; G14
 Stressor-Related Disorders; PS13
 Stress Testing; C12
 Stroke; ER38, N47
 ST Segment; C10
 Study Design; PH10
 Styte; OP13
 Subarachnoid Hemorrhage; MI19, NS18
 Subconjunctival Hemorrhage; OP15
 Subcutaneous Fungal Infection; ID34
 Subdural Hematoma; MI19, NS16
 Subglottic Stenosis; OT46
 Substance Intoxication; PS3
 Substance Use Disorders; PS18
 Sudden Cardiac Arrest; C31
 Sudden Infant Death Syndrome; P13
 Suicidal Patient; ER56
 Suicide; PS2
 Sunburn; D41
 Sunscreens; D41
 Superficial Folliculitis; D25
 Superficial Venous Thrombosis; VS8
 Superior Orbital Fissure Syndrome; PL32
 Supraclavicular Arterial Bruit; P22
 Supracondylar Fracture; OR16
 Supraventricular Tachyarrhythmias; C18
 Supraventricular Tachycardia; P21
 Supraventricular Tachydysrhythmias; ER31
 Surgical Margins; PL5
 Surrogate Decision-Makers; ELOAM8
 Sutures; PL6
 Swan-Ganz Catheter; C14, MI10
 Swan Neck Deformity; PL24
 Sympathetic Nervous System; CP11
 Syncope; ER27
 Syndrome of Inappropriate Antidiuretic
 Hormone; P26
 Syndrome X; C26
 Synovial Fluid; RH4
 Synovial Fluid Analysis; RH4
 Syphilis; D30, GY27, ID26, NP25
 Syringomyelia; NS27

Syrinx; NS27
 Systemic Arthritis; P94
 Systemic Infections; ID22
 Systemic Lupus Erythematosus; NP24, P96,
 R21, RH11
 Systemic Toxicity; A21
 Systolic Dysfunction; C34
 Systolic Heart Failure; C38

T

Tachyarrhythmias; C18
 Tachykinesia; N28
 Talar Fracture; OR37
 Tall Stature; P28
 Tanner Staging; P31
 Telogen Effluvium; D36
 Temporal Arteritis; OP38
 Temporal Bone Fractures; OT22
 Tendons; PL3, PL24
 Tension Pneumothorax; ER11
 Termination of Pregnancy; OB11
 Testicular Appendix; U29
 Testicular Torsion; U28
 Testicular Tumors; U26
 Tetanus Prophylaxis; ER17
 Tetralogy of Fallot; P19
 Thalassemia; H19
 Therapeutic Index; CP9
 Thermal Injury; PL17
 Third Degree AV Block; C18
 Thoracolumbar Spine; OR22
 Thrombocytopenia; H7, P50
 Thrombocytosis; H8
 Thrombolytic Therapy; MI28
 Thrombosis; VS3
 Thrombotic Microangiopathy; NP19
 Thrombotic Thrombocytopenic Purpura; H30
 Thyroglossal Duct Cysts; OT34
 Thyroid; E20
 Thyroid Carcinoma; OT38
 Thyroid Hormones; E20
 Thyroid Imaging; MI26
 Thyroiditis; E24
 Thyroid Nodules; E29
 Thyroid Storm; E25
 Thyrotoxic Crisis; E25
 Thyrotoxicosis; E22
 Thyrotoxic Phase; E24
 Tibia; OR35
 Tibial Plateau Fracture; OR35
 Tibial Shaft Fracture; OR35
 Tic Disorders; N32
 Tic Douloureux; N41
 Tics; N28
 Time-Course; CP6

Tinea Capitis; D25
Tinea Corporis; D25
Tinea Cruris; D26
Tinea Mannum; D26
Tinea Pedis; D26
Tinea Unguium; D26, FM44
Tinnitus; OT7, OT15
Tissue Grafts; PL12
Toddler's Diarrhea; P37
Toilet Training; P10
Tonometry; OP8
Tonsillectomy; OT43
Tonsillitis; P59
Topical Anesthetics; A22
Topical Steroids; D42
Topoisomerase Inhibitors; ID52
Torsades de Pointes; C23
Torsion of Testicular Appendix; U29
Total Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Return; P20
Tourette's Syndrome; N33
Toxic Adenoma; E25
Toxic Epidermal Necrolysis; D21
Toxic Gaps; ER49
Toxic Megacolon; GS26
Toxic Multinodular Goiter; E25
Toxicology; ER48
Toxic Shock Syndrome; GY30, ID24
Toxidromes; ER51
Toxoplasma gondii; ID40
Tracheal Intubation; A7, A30
Trachoma; OP16
Transient Synovitis of the Hip; P94
Transposition of the Great Arteries; P19
Transurethral (Foley) Catheters; U39
Transurethral Resection
Prostate; U41
Trauma
Bladder; U32
Renal; U31
Traveler's Diarrhea; ID14
Travel Medicine; ID43
Trematodes; ID42
Tremor; N28
Trichiasis; OP13
Trichomonas vaginalis; ID38
Tricuspid Regurgitation; C44
Tricuspid Stenosis; C44
Trigeminal Nerve; N9
Trigeminal Neuralgia; N41, NS40
Triglycerides; E4
Trimester Bleeding; OB21
Triplet Repeat Expansions; P41
Trisomy 13; P43
Trisomy 18; P43
Trisomy 21; P43
Trochlear Nerve; N9
Tropism Testing; ID33

Truncus Arteriosus; P20
Truth-Telling; ELOAM9
Trypanosoma cruzi; ID39
Tuberculosis; ID27
Tuberculous Polyserositis; ID27
Tuberous Sclerosis; U19
Tube Thoracostomy; GS15
Tubular Necrosis; NP27
Tubulointerstitial Disease; NP25
Tubulointerstitial Nephritis; NP25
Tumor
Penile; U27
Testicular; U26
Tumor Lysis Syndrome; H52
Tumors; NS10
Tuning Fork Tests; OT10
Turner Syndrome; P44
T Wave; C10
Twin Pregnancies; OB27
Twin-Twin Transfusion Syndrome; OB28
Type I Error; PH13
Type II Error; PH13

U

Ulceration; G14
Ulcerative Colitis; G22, GS30
Ulcers; PL15
Ulna Fracture; OR18
Ulnar Collateral Ligament; PL26
Ultrasound; MI2, MI17
Umbilical Cord Prolapse; OB43
Uncomplicated Pyelonephritis; U12
Unconjugated Hyperbilirubinemia; P73
Upper Extremity Injuries; ER16
Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding; G25
Upper Respiratory Tract Diseases; P89
Urea Concentration; NP5
Ureteropelvic Junction Obstruction; U36
Urethral Injuries; U32
Urethral Stricture; U8
Urethritis; U16
Urinalysis; NP5
Urinary Incontinence; GY34, U5
Urinary Retention; GS9, U6
Urinary Tract Infection; OB19, P64, U12
Urine Alkalinization; ER50
Urine Biochemistry; NP7
Urine Electrolyte Abnormalities; NP7
Urine Microscopy; NP6
Urological Imaging; MI16

Urological Infections; U11
Urticaria; D39
Uterine Bleeding; GY6
Uterine Inversion; OB48
Uterine Rupture; OB43
Uterine Sarcoma; GY36
Uterus; GY2, GY35
Uveal Tract; OP20
Uveitis; OP20, OP29
U Wave; C11

V

Vaccine; P4
Vacuum Extraction; OB45
Vagina; GY2
Vaginal Bleeding; ER39
Vaginal Discharge; GY6
Vaginal Exam; OB33
Vagus Nerve; N11
Valve Prosthesis; C42
Valve Repair; C42
Valve Replacement; C42
Valvular Disease; C43
Valvular Heart Disease; C41
Variant Angina; C26
Varicella; P58
Varicocele; U28
Varicose Veins; VS9
Vasa Previa; OB26
Vascular Disease; VS2
Anatomy; VS2
Vascular Injuries; ER16
Vascular Lesions; D10
Vascular Malformations; D10
Vascular Neurocognitive Disorder; N24
Vasculitides; P96, RH17
Vasculitis; RH18
Large Vessel; RH20
Medium Vessel; RH19
Small Vessel; RH18
Vasomotor Response; P78
Vasomotor Rhinitis; OT25
Vegetative State; NS34
Venous Hum; P22
Venous Insufficiency; VS9
Venous Thromboembolism; H33, OB20
Venous Thrombosis; VS8
Ventilation; A10
Ventricular Assist Devices; C38
Ventricular Fibrillation; C23
Ventricular Septal Defect; P17
Ventricular Tachyarrhythmias; C22
Ventricular Tachycardia; C22
Ventricular Tachydysrhythmias; ER32
Vernal Conjunctivitis; OP15

Vernix Caseosa; P78
Verruca Palmaris; D29
Verruca Plantaris; D29
Verruca Vulgaris; D29
Vertebrobasilar Circulation; MI19
Vertigo; OT12
Vesicle; D5
Vesicobullous Diseases; D19
Vesicoureteral Reflux; U36
Vessels; PL23
Vestibular Neuronitis; OT14
Vestibular Schwannoma; NS13, OT15
Viral Disease Patterns; ID4
Viral Infections; D27
Virology; ID4
Visceral Organ Imaging; MI14
Vision Loss; OP4
Visual Acuity; OP5
Visual Fields; OP6
Vitamin B12 Deficiency; H24
Vitamin K Deficiency; H32, P48, P50
Vitiligo; D9
Vitreous Detachment; OP22
Vitreous Hemorrhage; OP22
Vitritis; OP23
Vocal Cord Nodules; OT29
Vocal Cord Polyps; OT29
Voiding; U5
Voiding Cystourethrogram; MI17
Volatile Inhalational Agents; A17
Volvulus; GS36
Vomiting; P33
von Willebrand Disease; H30, P50
V/Q Scan; MI26
Vulnerable Populations; PH3
Vulvovaginitis; GY23

W

Waldenstrom's Macroglobulinemia; H51
Warts; D29
Waste Excretion; NP2
Water; PH22
 Contaminants; PH22
Wegener's Granulomatosis; NP24
 See Granulomatosis with Polyangiitis
Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome; N33, PS20
West Nile Virus; ID25
Wheezing; P90
White Blood Cells; H5
Wilms' Tumor; P52, U38
Wilson's Disease; G33
Wolff-Parkinson-White Syndrome; C21
Workplace Health; PH23
 Disease Prevention; PH23
 Legislation; PH23
 Promotion and Protection; PH23
 Rehabilitation; PH23
 Treatment; PH23
Wounds; ER17, PL8
 Contaminated; PL9
 Chronic; PL9
 Delayed Primary Closure; PL9
 Dressings; PL11
 Infected; PL9
 Management; ER17
 Primary Closure; PL9
 Secondary Closure; PL9
 Spontaneous Healing; PL9
 Stab Wounds; ER14
 Tertiary Closure; PL9
 Wound Healing; PL8
Wrist; OR20

X

Xanthelasma; OP14
X-linked; P41
X-Ray Imaging; MI2

Y

Yeast Infections; D29

Z

Zygomatic Fractures; PL31

ESSENTIAL MED NOTES 2015

COMPLETE, CONCISE, AND UP-TO-DATE INFORMATION

Essential Med Notes is a premier study resource for the USMLE Step II and MCCQE medical licensing exams. This edition provides concise and comprehensive information on the objectives covered by these exams, including the most recent best practice guidelines and up-to-date trials for clinical practice. Essential Med Notes is an excellent resource for clinical rotations and this text contains 30 subject-specific chapters:

Anesthesia and Perioperative Medicine

Cardiology and Cardiac Surgery

Clinical Pharmacology

Dermatology

Emergency Medicine

Endocrinology

Ethical, Legal, and Organizational Medicine

Family Medicine

Gastroenterology

General Surgery

Geriatric Medicine

Gynecology

Hematology

Infectious Diseases

Medical Imaging

Nephrology

Neurology

Neurosurgery

Obstetrics

Ophthalmology

Orthopedics

Otolaryngology

Pediatrics

Plastic Surgery

Population Health and Epidemiology

Psychiatry

Respirology

Rheumatology

Urology

Vascular Surgery